Joel Rodriguez-Saldana
Editor

The Diabetes Textbook

Clinical Principles, Patient Management and Public Health Issues

Springer

Joel Rodriguez-Saldana
Editor

The Diabetes Textbook

Clinical Principles, Patient Management and Public Health Issues

Springer

Editor
Joel Rodriguez-Saldana
Multidisciplinary Diabetes Center
Mexico City
Mexico

ISBN 978-3-030-11814-3 ISBN 978-3-030-11815-0 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface

This book is the result of three decades of endeavors in outpatient diabetes management, starting with the creation of a diabetes clinic in a public hospital in Mexico City. Shortly afterward, we had the privilege of meeting Donnell Etzwiler and his colleagues from the International Diabetes Center in Minneapolis. Don was one of the pioneering supporters of structured diabetes care, the importance of teamwork between health professionals and patients, with a patient-centered approach at the center. He was also aware of the need to improve the quality of diabetes care based on the principles established by Shewhart, Deming, Juran, and many other brilliant minds in the history and evolution of quality in industry, and he guided us to develop and implement a model of diabetes management based on these principles. Starting in 1991, we have presented a diabetes conference in which we have had the opportunity of meeting more than a hundred experts from multiple areas of diabetes from all over the world, from basic science to clinical management. Many of them are collaborators of this book or have supported its creation. We have also came to understand and respect the importance of the multidisciplinary approach to confront, in the words of Professor Paul Zimmet, "the largest epidemic in human history" [1] in a globalized world where social determinants of health are crucially linked to clinical outcomes.

The Diabetes Textbook was conceived to address and recognize the expertise and efforts of countless people, from multiple disciplines and from all over the world, devoted to improve the life of persons with diabetes. I am extremely grateful for the contributions and enthusiasm of more than a hundred experts from five continents. Their leadership and experience in the most diverse professional areas reflect the importance of diabetes and the multiple needs arisen for its management. All the coauthors of *The Diabetes Textbook* are kindly and forever recognized, but special thanks are for Barry Ginsberg, Maggie Powers, and Sanjay Kalra. Their guidance and support were essential to achieve the final work. Thank you so much to all.

We should never ignore the patients [2]. Above and beyond, this book is dedicated to persons with diabetes and their families. Our greatest challenge is to honor the compromise and the privilege to support them.

Mexico City, Mexico — Joel Rodriguez-Saldana

References

1. Zimmet PZ. Diabetes and its drivers: the largest epidemic in human history? Clin Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017;31:1.
2. Etzwiler DD. Don't ignore the patients. Diabetes Care. 2001;24:1840–41.

Contents

Part IX Chronic Complications

Part X Diabetes in Special Populations

Contributors

Arturo Abundes-Velasco National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

Sameer Aggarwal Division of Endocrinology, Department of Medicine, Pandit Bhagwat Dayal Sharma Post-graduate Institute of Medical Sciences (PGIMS), Rohtak, Haryana, India

Mohammed K. Ali Emory Global Diabetes Research Center, Hubert Department of Global Health, Rollins School of Public Health, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Department of Epidemiology and Nutrition/Health Sciences Program, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Department of Family and Preventive Medicine, School of Medicine, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

M. A. Jalil Ansari Department of Endocrinology, Dhaka Medical College & Hospital (DMCH), Dhaka, Bangladesh

L. R. Aravind Public Health Foundation of India, Gurgaon, Haryana, India

Armando Arredondo National Institute of Public Health, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

University La Salle, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

Jose Carlos Arroyo-Kuribreña Hospital Ángeles de Puebla, Puebla, Mexico

Atulya Atreja Department of Pulmonary Medicine, MMIMSR, Mullana, Haryana, India

Alejandra Azar National Institute of Public Health, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

University La Salle, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

Luis Arturo Baiza-Gutman Laboratorio de Biología del Desarrollo, Unidad de Morfofisiología, Facultad de Estudios Superiores Iztacala, Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Mexico City, Mexico

Yatan Pal Singh Balhara Department of Psychiatry, National Drug Dependence Treatment Centre (NDDTC), WHO Collaborating Centre on Substance Abuse, All India Institute of Medical Sciences (AIIMS), New Delhi, India

Napoleón Bernard-Fuentes Department of Psychiatry and Mental Health, Faculty of Medicine (UNAM), Mexico City, Mexico

Paul Bloch Health Promotion Research, Steno Diabetes Center, Copenhagen, Gentofte, Denmark

Paula Bracco Division of Diabetes Translation, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

Lisa D. Breshars College of Podiatric Medicine, Western University of Health Sciences, Pomona, CA, USA

Chino Valley Medical Center, Chino, CA, USA

Christina Brock Department of Rheumatology, Aarhus University Hospital, Aarhus, Denmark

Mech-Sense, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Clinical Institute, Aalborg University Hospital, Aalborg, Denmark

Susanne Buhse Universität Hamburg, Institut für Pharmazie, Gesundheitswissenschaften, Hamburg, Germany

Stephania Casco Departamento de Ciencias de la Salud, Universidad Popular Autónoma del Estado de Puebla, Puebla, Mexico

Tracy J. Cheun Division of Vascular and Endovascular Surgery, Department of Surgery, Long School of Medicine, University of Texas Health San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

South Texas Center for Vascular Care, South Texas Medical Center, San Antonio, TX, USA

Simeon Pierre Choukem Department of Internal Medicine and Pediatrics, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Buea, Douala, Buea, Cameroon

Health and Human Development (2HD) Research Network, Douala, Cameroon

Rebecca A. G. Christensen The Wharton Medical Clinic, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Lauren H. S. Clarine Scripps Green Hospital, San Diego, CA, USA

Ankia Coetzee Division of Endocrinology, Department of Medicine, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, Stellenbosch University, Tygerberg, Cape Town, South Africa

Christy Costanian York University, School of Kinesiology and Health Science, Toronto, ON, Canada

Daniel Coutiño-Castelán National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

Miguel Cruz Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Nuevo Laredo, Mexico

Centro Médico Nacional Siglo XXI IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

José Luis Briseño de la Cruz National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

Silvia Magali Cuadra National Institute of Public Health, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

University La Salle, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

George Dailey III The Scripps Whittier Diabetes Institute, La Jolla, CA, USA

J. Damman Department of Pathology, Erasmus University Medical Center, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Asma Deeb Mafraq Hospital, Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates

Margarita Díaz-Flores Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Centro Médico Nacional, Siglo XXI IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

Rosa Maria Díaz-Romero Faculty of Dentistry, UNITEC, Mexico City, Mexico

Jane K. Dickinson Teachers College, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Christian Akem Dimala Health and Human Development (2HD) Research Network, Douala, Cameroon

Anne Mohr Drewes Department of Rheumatology, Aarhus University Hospital, Aarhus, Denmark

Asbjørn Mohr Drewes Mech-Sense, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology and Clinical Institute, Aalborg University Hospital, Aalborg, Denmark

Maria Beatriz Duarte National Institute of Public Health, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico
University La Salle, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

Deep Dutta Department of Endocrinology, Diabetology & Metabolic Disorders, Venkateshwar Hospital, Dwarka, New Delhi, India

Alison Evert Nutrition and Diabetes Programs, University of Washington Neighborhood Clinics, Seattle, WA, USA

Raquel N. Faradji Clinica EnDi, Mexico City, Mexico
RENACED Diabetes Tipo 1, Mexico City, Mexico
Pathophysiology of the Endocrine System, Escuela de Medicina TEC-ABC, Tecnologico de Monterrey, Centro Medico ABC, Mexico City, Mexico
Sociedad Mexicana de Nutrición y Endocrinología, Mexico City, Mexico

Gergely Feher Centre for Occupational Medicine, Medical School, University of Pécs, Pécs, Baranya, Hungary

Wuwei Feng Department of Neurology, Medical University of South Carolina, Charleston, SC, USA

Edwin B. Fisher Department of Health Behavior, Gillings School of Global Public Health, University of North Carolina-Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Eugenia Flores-Alfaro Laboratorio de Investigación en Epidemiología Clínica y Molecular, Facultad de Ciencias Químico Biológicas, Universidad Autónoma de Guerrero, Chilpancingo, Guerrero, Mexico

César Eduardo Hernández Fonseca National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

Karla I. Galaviz Emory Global Diabetes Research Center, Hubert Department of Global Health, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

María Isabel García-Argueta 72 Regional Hospital, Mexican Institute of Social Services, Mexico City, Mexico

Carlos A. Garza-García Instituto Nacional de Cardiología Ignacio Chávez, Mexico City, Mexico

Talia Gershon The Wharton Medical Clinic, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Todd P. Gilmer University of California San Diego, San Diego, CA, USA

Barry H. Ginsberg Diabetes Technology Consultants, Wyckoff, NJ, USA

Rita A. Gómez-Díaz UIME, Centro Médico Nacional Siglo XXI IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

Jaime Gomez-Zamudio Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Centro Médico Nacional Siglo XXI IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

Celso Mendoza González National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

Juan Antonio Paniagua González Insulin Resistance, Metabolism and Adipose Tissue Unit, Maimonides Institute of Biomedical Research, University Hospital Reina Sofia, Córdoba, Spain
Endocrinology and Nutrition Services, University Hospital Reina Sofia, Cordoba, Spain

Maricela González-Espejel 72 Regional Hospital, Mexican Institute of Social Services, Mexico City, Mexico

Dimitrios G. Goulis Unit of Reproductive Endocrinology, First Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Medical School, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, Thessaloniki, Greece

Edward W. Gregg Division of Diabetes Translation, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

Diana Guizar-Sánchez Department of Psychiatry and Mental Health, Faculty of Medicine (UNAM), Mexico City, Mexico

Georges M. Haidar Division of Vascular and Endovascular Surgery, Department of Surgery, Long School of Medicine, University of Texas Health San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

South Texas Center for Vascular Care, South Texas Medical Center, San Antonio, TX, USA

Lawrence B. Harkless College of Podiatric Medicine, Western University of Health Sciences, Pomona, CA, USA

Hideki Hashimoto Health and Social Behavior, The University of Tokyo School of Public Health, Bunkyo, Tokyo, Japan

Gerhard Heinze Department of Psychiatry and Mental Health, Faculty of Medicine (UNAM), Mexico City, Mexico

José Henriques Retina Department – Surgical Retina Unit – Dr. Gama Pinto Ophthalmology Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

Lisbon Retina Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

Susana Henriques Hospital Doutor Fernando da Fonseca, Amadora, Portugal

J. Hong Diabetes and Cardiovascular Center, Department of Medicine and Physiology, University of Missouri, Columbia, MO, USA

Harry S Truman VA Hospital, Columbia, MO, USA

William B. Horton, MD, FACP Division of Endocrinology and Metabolism, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, VA, USA

Edtna Jáuregui-Ulloa Institute of Applied Sciences for Physical Activity and Sport, Department of Human Movement Sciences, Education, Sport, Recreation and Dance, University Health Sciences Center, University of Guadalajara, Guadalajara, Mexico

Fatema Jawad Department of Diabetology, Sindh Institute of Urology and Transplantation, Karachi, Pakistan

Sanjay Kalra Department of Endocrinology, Bharti Hospital, Karnal, Haryana, India

Sadishkumar Kamalanathan Department of Endocrinology, JIPMER, Puducherry, India

Jothydev Kesavadev Jothydev's Diabetes Research Center, Trivandrum, Kerala, India

Deepak Khandelwal Department of Endocrinology, Maharaja Agrasen Hospital, Punjabi Bagh, New Delhi, India

D. Khangura Diabetes and Cardiovascular Center, Department of Medicine and Physiology, University of Missouri, Columbia, MO, USA

Harry S Truman VA Hospital, Columbia, MO, USA

Evangelia Kintiraki Unit of Reproductive Endocrinology, First Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Medical School, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, Thessaloniki, Greece

Miguel Klünder Klünder Hospital Infantil de México Federico Gómez, Mexico City, Mexico

Wojciech Krajewski Department and Clinic of Urology, Wrocław Medical University Hospital, Wrocław, Poland

R. Kurukulasuriya Diabetes and Cardiovascular Center, Department of Medicine and Physiology, University of Missouri, Columbia, MO, USA

Harry S Truman VA Hospital, Columbia, MO, USA

Nathalie Carvalho Leite Clementino Fraga Filho University Hospital, Internal Medicine Division, Federal University of Rio de Janeiro, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil

Juan López-Taylor Institute of Applied Sciences for Physical Activity and Sport, Department of Human Movement Sciences, Education, Sport, Recreation and Dance, University Health Sciences Center, University of Guadalajara, Guadalajara, Mexico

América Liliana Miranda Lora Research Unit of Evidence-Based Medicine, Hospital Infantil de México Federico Gómez, Mexico City, Mexico

Forrest Justin Lowe Department of Neurology, University of Cincinnati Medical Center, Cincinnati, OH, USA

Camille Maadjhou Department of Internal Medicine and Specialties, Faculty of Medicine and Biomedical Sciences, University of Yaoundé 1, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Laboratory of Molecular and Metabolic Medicine, Biotechnology Center, University of Yaoundé 1, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Rebeca García Macedo Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Centro Médico Nacional, Siglo XXI, Mexico City, Mexico

Magdalena Madero Instituto Nacional de Cardiología Ignacio Chávez, Mexico City, Mexico

Melinda Downie Maryniuk Care Programs, Joslin Innovations, Joslin Diabetes Center, Boston, MA, USA

Richard Mauseth Dose Safety, Seattle, WA, USA

Roger S. Mazze AGP Clinical Academy, Portsmouth Hospitals NHST, Portsmouth, UK

Nanjing Medical University, Nanjing, China

University of Minnesota Medical School and WHO Collaborating Center, International Diabetes Center and Mayo Clinic, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Jean Claude Mbanya Department of Internal Medicine and Specialties, Faculty of Medicine and Biomedical Sciences, University of Yaoundé 1, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Laboratory of Molecular and Metabolic Medicine, Biotechnology Center, University of Yaoundé 1, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Marco Medeiros Lisbon Retina Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

Retina Department – Surgical Retina Unit, (CHLC) Centro Hospitalar Lisboa Central, Lisbon, Portugal

NOVA Medical School, Universidade NOVA de Lisboa, Lisbon, Portugal

Portuguese Diabetes Association (APDP), Lisbon, Portugal

Ana Paula Díaz Barriga-Menchaca Instituto Nacional de Ciencias Médias y Nutrición "Salvador Zubirán", Mexico City, Mexico

Justine Mestdagh Department of Dermatology, Erasmus University Medical Center, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Gesthimani Mintziori Unit of Reproductive Endocrinology, First Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Medical School, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, Thessaloniki, Greece

Tannaz Moin Division of Endocrinology, Diabetes and Metabolism, and General Internal Medicine/Health Services Research, David Geffen School of Medicine, University of California at Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA

HSR&D Center for the Study of Healthcare Innovation, Implementation & Policy, VA Greater Los Angeles Healthcare System, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Arshag D. Mooradian Department of Medicine, University of Florida College of Medicine, Jacksonville, FL, USA

José L. Morales National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

Ingrid Mühlhauser Faculty of Mathematics, Informatics and Natural Sciences, Unit of Health Sciences and Education, University of Hamburg, Hamburg, Germany

Lakshmana Perumal Nandhini Department of Endocrinology, JIPMER, Puducherry, India

João Nascimento Lisbon Retina Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

Cristiane A. Villela Nogueira School of Medicine, Internal Medicine Department, Federal University of Rio de Janeiro, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil

Patrick J. O'Connor Center for Chronic Disease Innovation, HealthPartners Institute, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Emanuel Orozco National Institute of Public Health, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

University La Salle, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

Clara Ortega-Camarillo Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Centro Médico Nacional Siglo XXI, Instituto Mexicano del Seguro Social, Mexico City, Mexico

Arturo Méndez Ortiz Instituto Nacional de Cardiología, Mexico City, Mexico

Martha Beauregard Paz Research Unit of Evidence-Based Medicine, Hospital Infantil de México Federico Gómez, Mexico City, Mexico

Margaret Powers International Diabetes Center, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Lakshmy Ramachandran Jothydev's Diabetes Research Center, Trivandrum, Kerala, India

Ana Lucía Recamán National Institute of Public Health, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

University La Salle, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

Jo-Anne Rizzotto Educational Services, Joslin Diabetes Center, Boston, MA, USA

Manuel Salvador Robles-Andrade Faculty of Dentistry, UNITEC, Mexico City, Mexico

DSD, Stomatology Service Coordinator at the National Institute of Perinatology, Ministry of Health, Mexico City, Mexico

Renil Marie Rodriguez-Martinez Diabetes and Endocrinology Training Program, Scripps Clinic/Scripps Green Hospital, San Diego, CA, USA

Joel Rodriguez-Saldana Multidisciplinary Diabetes Centre, Mexico City, Mexico

José de Jesús Peralta Romero Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Centro Medico Nacional Siglo XXI, IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

Paulo Caldeira Rosa Lisbon Retina Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

Retina Department – Medical Retina Unit – Dr. Gama Pinto Ophthalmology Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

Jayaprakash Sahoo Department of Endocrinology, JIPMER, Puducherry, India

Eduardo A. Arias Sánchez National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

Piero Custodio Sánchez National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

Félix Damas de los Santos National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

Haiko Schlögl University Hospital Leipzig, Department of Internal Medicine, Endocrinology/Diabetes, Leipzig, Germany

Alexandr Serhiyenko Ostrozskogo str. Department of Endocrinology, Lviv National Medical University named after Danylo Galytskiy, Lviv, Ukraine

Viktoria Serhiyenko Ostrozskogo str. Department of Endocrinology, Lviv National Medical University named after Danylo Galytskiy, Lviv, Ukraine

Megha K. Shah Department of Family and Preventive Medicine, School of Medicine, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Jarrod Shapiro College of Podiatric Medicine, Western University of Health Sciences, Pomona, CA, USA

Chino Valley Medical Center, Chino, CA, USA

Aarti Sharma Department of Rheumatology, All India Institute of Medical Sciences, New Delhi, India

Meha Sharma Department of Rheumatology, Venkateshwar Hospitals, Dwarka, New Delhi, India

William Sherlaw Department of Human and Social Sciences, Ecole des Hautes Études en Santé Publique (EHESP), Paris, France

Roopa Shivashankar Public Health Foundation of India (PHFI), CVD Epidemiology Unit, Centre for Chronic Disease Control (CCDC), Gurgaon, Haryana, India

Dina Shrestha Department of Endocrinology, Norvic International Hospital, Kathmandu, Nepal

Kavita Singh Public Health Foundation of India, Gurgaon, Haryana, India

Rajiv Singla Department of Endocrinology, Kalpavriksh Healthcare, Dwarka, New Delhi, India

Noel Somasundaram National Hospital of Sri Lanka, Colombo, Sri Lanka

Virgilia Soto-Abraham Instituto Nacional de Cardiología Ignacio Chávez, Mexico City, Mexico

Elena Soto-Vega Departamento de Ciencias de la Salud, Universidad Popular Autónoma del Estado de Puebla, Puebla, Mexico

Centro de Investigación Oncológica, Una Nueva Esperanza- UPAEP, Puebla, Mexico

James R. Sowers Diabetes and Cardiovascular Center, Department of Medicine and Physiology, University of Missouri, Columbia, MO, USA

Harry S Truman VA Hospital, Columbia, MO, USA

Jo Ann M. Sperl-Hillen Center for Chronic Disease Innovation, HealthPartners Institute, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Michael Stumvoll University Hospital Leipzig, Division of Endocrinology/Diabetes and Nephrology, Leipzig, Germany

Fernando Suarez-Sanchez Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Centro Médico Nacional Siglo XXI IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

Nikhil Tandon Department of Endocrinology and Metabolism, All India Institute of Medical Sciences, New Delhi, India

H. Bing Thio Department of Dermatology, Erasmus University Medical Center, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Boulos Toursarkissian Division of Vascular and Endovascular Surgery, Department of Surgery, Long School of Medicine, University of Texas Health San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

South Texas Center for Vascular Care, South Texas Medical Center, San Antonio, TX, USA

Guillermo E. Umpierrez Emory University, Section Head, Diabetes & Endocrinology, Grady Health System, Atlanta, GA, USA

Ana C. Uribe-Wiechers Clinica EnDi, Mexico City, Mexico

Escuela de Medicina TEC-ABC, Tecnologico de Monterrey, Centro Medico ABC, Monterrey, Mexico

Sociedad Mexicana de Nutrición y Endocrinología, Mexico City, Mexico

Willy Marcos Valencia-Rodrigo ABIM Internal Medicine, Geriatric Medicine, Endocrinology, Diabetes & Metabolism, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Miami VA Healthcare System – Geriatric Research, Education and Clinical Center (GRECC), Miami, FL, USA

Florida International University – Department of Humanities, Health and Society, Miami, FL, USA

University of Miami Miller School of Medicine – Department of Public Health Sciences, Miami, FL, USA

Adán Valladares-Salgado Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Centro Medico Nacional Siglo XXI, IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

Sara Vaz-Pereira Department of Ophthalmology, Hospital de Santa Maria, Lisbon, Portugal

Department of Ophthalmology, Faculty of Medicine, Universidade de Lisboa, Lisbon, Portugal

María Elena Sainz de la Maza Viadero Clinica EnDi SC, Mexico City, Mexico

RENACED Diabetes Tipo 1, Mexico City, Mexico

Didactic Resources for Nutrition, Escuela de Dietetica y Nutricion ISSSTE, Mexico City, Mexico

Antonio Vidal-Puig Wellcome Trust MRC Institute Metabolic Science, MRC MDU, University of Cambridge, Cambridge, UK

Wellcome Trust Sanger Institute, Hinxton, UK

Sean Wharton The Wharton Medical Clinic, Hamilton, ON, Canada

York University, School of Kinesiology and Health Science, Toronto, ON, Canada

Joanna Krajewska (Wojciechowska) Department and Clinic of Otolaryngology, Head and Neck Surgery, Wrocław Medical University, Wrocław, Poland

Tomasz Zatoński Department and Clinic of Otolaryngology, Head and Neck Surgery, Wrocław Medical University, Wrocław, Poland

Preface: A New Disease?

1

Joel Rodriguez-Saldana

At the Scientific Sessions of the American Diabetes Association in 1992, Professor Gian Franco Bottazzo delivered the Banting Lecture, in which he announced that diabetes was "a new disease," based on criteria originally described by Mirko D. Grmek in his classical book about the history of AIDS:

Criteria to define a new disease [1, 2]:

1. Previously nonexistent
2. Previously existent but rare
3. Only occurring in regions
4. Only occurring in animals

In his book, Grmek explained that "a disease can appear to be new in at least five different settings: (1) it already existed but it was unrecognized as a clinical entity, (2) it already existed, but did not appear until changes occurred in its manifestations; (3) it did not exist in one region of the world; (4) it did not exist in humans; (5) it is absolutely new" [2, p108]. Diabetes was recognized as a clinical entity since early times, but its magnitude worldwide and its phenotype have remarkably changed during the last 50 years.

The ancient history of diabetes started in Egypt, Asia, and Arabia 3500 years ago [3–5]. The first recorded description appeared in 1552 BC in the Ebers Papyrus, the oldest and most complete medical record from ancient Egypt. In the second century AD, Aretaeus of Cappadocia in Greece coined the term "diabetes" to describe polyuria as the most common symptom of the disease "a melting down of the flesh and limbs into urine," and he also gave the most detailed account of diabetes ever published (Bliss, Galmer). In the fifth to sixth centuries AD, Sushruta and Charaka in India described the sweetness of urine, the use of ants to diagnose the urine of a person with diabetes, and the distinction of two types of diabetes, one affecting thin, young individuals and another in the obese elderly (Galmer).

Reports of persons with diabetes were scarce in the ancient period, but nevertheless, arising worldwide interest. Hippocrates made no mention of it, Galen regarded as a kidney disease ("diarrhea of the urine") associated with "dipsakos" (violent thirst) [5]. In those days, Galen admitted that it was a very rare disease, which he had only observed twice, but at the same time proposed tasting the urine as probably the first diagnostic method in the world (Tattersall). The contributions to diabetes of Avicenna in Arabia are multiple: he gave an accurate description of the clinical features of the disease; he listed some of its vascular and infectious complications (sexual dysfunction, gangrene, carbuncles, and tuberculosis); he noted that when the urine evaporated, it left a residue like honey; and he recommended treatments based on mixtures of seeds with mild hypoglycemic activity [3]. Advances in the diagnosis of diabetes started to appear centuries later in Europe, including the description of a powder-like deposition in the urine of diabetic persons by Paracelsus in the sixteenth century; the sweet taste of urine of persons with diabetes by Thomas Willis in the seventeenth century; the measurement of glucose in the urine by Dobson in the eighteenth century; the description of excess sugar in the blood and urine by Rollo, who first used the term "mellitus" as the Latin and Greek root for honey; and identification of glucose as the type of sugar in blood and urine in the nineteenth century by Chevreuil [3–6]. Diabetes was still a rare disease in this period, and like almost all other patients, persons with diabetes received more harm than good by doctors' orders, including bleeding, blistering, and doping with opium, which was still in use in the early twentieth century and was very difficult to discontinue (Bliss). Therapeutic interventions were mostly related to diet, exercise, and "behavior" including eating large quantities of sugar (Piorry), reducing food intake and exercising (Bouchardat), starvation dieting (Allen) or specific types of carbohydrates (von Noorden), and even isolating patients under lock and key to obtain "sugar freedom" (Cantoni and Naunyn)(Bliss, Galmer, Hurley, Tattersall). Despite all these efforts, life

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (✉)
Multidisciplinary Centre of Diabetes, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_1

expectancy for persons with diabetes, especially children, was very low.

The etiology of diabetes started to be pursued in the nineteenth century. Proposed factors were multiple and disparate, including "grief," "chills" and "excess of venery" (Elliotson), "exposure to cold," "rheumatism and gout," "mental anxiety and distress" (Prout), "sexual excess," and "hereditary predisposition." Based on his assumption that sugar was formed in the stomach from vegetables, Rollo made one of the first proposals of a diabetic diet in which greens were eliminated and consisted mostly of animal food, emetics, ammonia, and narcotics [4](Tattersall). A "thunderbolt" in the physiological world disclaiming these assumptions, occurred when Claude Bernard showed that blood glucose levels are regulated not just by the absorption of dietary carbohydrate but also by the liver, from glucose and non-glucose precursors, its storage as glycogen, and the involvement of the central nervous system in controlling blood glucose concentration [4]. In persons with diabetes, he stressed that the cause of the disease was disequilibrium between sugar formation and disintegration.

Early speculations about the source of diabetes located the disease in the stomach, frequently in the kidneys, and even as a derangement of the central or autonomic nervous system [3–5] (Farmer, Hurley, Tattersall).Traditionally considered a supportive cushion in which the surrounding visceral organs rested, anatomic dissection allowed identification of its ducts and its role in digestion [5]. Advances in "the experimental period in the history of diabetes" included the microscopic description of the pancreas by Langerhans and the endocrine function of the islets by Laguesse [3]. Cawley was the first to suggest a relationship between the pancreas and diabetes, and Minkowski and Mering confirmed the role of the pancreas in diabetes when they showed that pancreatectomized dogs developed "real permanent diabetes, which corresponded in every detail to the most severe form of the disease in man" and which could be reversed by subcutaneous implantation of pancreatic fragments [4, 5]. The race to isolate the hypothesized glucose-regulating hormone which in 1909 was named insulin by Jean de Meyer (Tattersall) was on. Between 1900 and 1921, at least five investigators came close to its discovery, including Nicholai Paulescu from Romania, who described a pancreatic extract that cured diabetes in pancreatectomized dogs in 1916, but for lack of resources, he could not produce in large quantities. The discovery and purification of insulin by Banting and Best from bovine pancreases with the support of MacLeod and Collip, and the first injection on a human being on January 111,922, "was (and still is) one of the most dramatic events in the history of the treatment of the disease (Bliss)," the crowning event of the race started by Mering and Minkowski in 1899 [5–6](Tattersall). Its therapeutic use quickly spread around the world and became a remarkable example of the rapid translation of basic science into a benefit for patients [6]. Beyond its landmark achievement, the discovery of insulin had not solved the problem of diabetes (Bliss).

Almost one century afterward, countless advances in the understanding of normal glucose metabolism, the pathogenesis of diabetes, and the discovery of many effective therapies to treat hyperglycemia and its complications have occurred [3, 6]. Controlled clinical trials have shown the benefits of glycemic control and traditional cardiovascular risk factors (blood pressure, lipoproteins) on reducing the risk of macrovascular and microvascular complications in type 1 and type 2 diabetes [7–10], but implementation "in the real world" is still a huge challenge after one century of efforts [11]. At the same time, the magnitude of diabetes as a worldwide health problem has increased to epidemic levels. The "diabesity" (obesity and type 2 diabetes) epidemic is likely to become the largest epidemic in human history [12]. The burden of suffering and death is unprecedented and in many countries surpasses the impact of scientific achievements.

The Ascent of Diabetes Mortality

The frequency of diabetes started to be measured through gathering of death certificates in Europe and America in 1850 when it was still a rare disease [13]. For example, in 1866, New York City's death rate from diabetes was 1.4 per 100,000 residents, and Charles B. Brigham found only 40 death reports from diabetes between 1854 and 1866 (Hurley). Diabetes became a worldwide health problem in the twentieth century: in the USA, it was the 27th cause of death in 1900, and 45 years later, it became the eight cause despite the fact that insulin was prolonging life for hundreds of thousands of patients [14, 15]. International standardization and the creation of the mortality data system by the World Health Organization raised the awareness about the importance of diabetes as a cause of death and the differences in mortality rates among countries and regions [13]. In 1943, the last year in which statistics for the USA were available before the World War II, the number of recorded deaths due to diabetes was 36,314, 35,000 on average per year [16]. One of the best sources of information on mortality in diabetes was assembled by E.P. Joslin and his colleagues through collaborations with the Metropolitan Insurance Company and the Massachusetts Department of Public Health[13]. In consecutive reports, they showed increases in the age of death because of improvements in survival, refinements in registration of causes of death, and rates of cardiovascular disease and glomerulosclerosis [13]. Starting in the 1960s, multiple studies about mortality and its causes in persons with diabetes appeared in the USA, Scandinavia, England, Asia, and Africa [13]. Estimating mortality due to diabetes continues

to be challenging for two reasons: more than one third of the countries of the world have no reliable data and routine statistics underestimate diabetes deaths resulting from cardiovascular disease and renal failure (or infection) [17]. Despite limitations in the availability of information, diabetes mortality continues to advance at alarming rates: for example, in Mexico, only 368 deaths attributed to diabetes were reported in 1922, representing one death per one thousand people dying [18]. These numbers have continued to increase in the second half of the twentieth century to 105,500 deaths in 2016 and no decrease in sight [19]. By comparison to people without diabetes, having diabetes increases almost twice the risk of mortality, even in developed countries, as documented by a recent report from the German National Health Interview [20]. Based on the WHO life tables for 2010 and 2015, the International Diabetes Federation (IDF) estimated that approximately five million deaths attributable to diabetes occurred among people aged 20–99 years in 2017, accounting for almost 10 percent of the global all-cause mortality in this age group [21].

Prevalence and Costs

Also in 1943, the estimated diabetes prevalence was 3.5 per 1000; prior to 1946, all available estimates were based on interview or testing of selected groups [13]. Pioneer surveys from the USA showed that diabetes was not uncommon [14]. Rates of glycosuria in men were above 2.0% among recipients of life insurance from New York in 1909, but mass screening started to be carried out after the World War II in the USA and Europe [13]. In 1947, Wilkerson and Krall published the results of the first series of mass screening and detection enterprises in Oxford Massachusetts, the birthplace of E.P. Joslin, a native-born resident of the town who supported and sponsored them [13, 22, 23]. Seventy years ago, the prevalence for diabetes in this region of the USA was 1.65 percent [14]. Surveys carried out in Europe reported similar prevalence rates in the range of 0.5%–2–4% [22, 23]. Even in those years, higher prevalence rates, above 30 percent, were reported among aboriginal subpopulations, like the Nauru, the Pima Indians, and other American Indian tribes [24]. In sharp contrast and beyond the challenges involved in collecting accurate data, the prevalence of diabetes has literally soared worldwide. The report of the Non-Communicable Disease Risk Factor Collaboration is eloquent: global age-standardized diabetes prevalence increased from 4.3% in 1980 to 9.0% in men and from 5.0% to 7.9% in women [25]. Accordingly, the number of adults with diabetes in the world increased from 108 million in 1980 to 422 million in 2014 [25]. Estimates from the IDF put the number of people with diabetes at 451 million in 2017, and the projection is that almost 21.3 million live births were affected by some form of hyperglycemia in pregnancy [25]. In conclusion, diabetes directly affects approximately half a billion people worldwide, probably twice as much relatives, inflicting a non-precedent personal and economic burden estimated at $1.31 trillion USD, or 1.8% of the global gross domestic product in 2015 [26]. Direct costs of illness are important drivers, but indirect costs account for 34.7%, ranging from one fifth to almost three fifths of the total economic burden [26].

Trends in diabetes prevalence are heterogeneous: they are lower in northwestern Europe and highest in Polynesia and Micronesia [21], but the sustained increase in the largest populated countries is of great concern. In China, for example, the prevalence of diabetes ascended from 0.67% in 1980 to 10.9% in 2013, and the prevalence of prediabetes increased from 2.09% in 1994 to 15.5% in 2008 [27, 28]. In the USA, the prevalence and incidence of diabetes increased by 90% in the first decade of the twentieth century and tripled in some states [29]. Between 2002 and 2012, the adjusted annual incidence of type 1 diabetes increased by 1.8% per year, and the incidence of type 2 diabetes increased 4.8% per year [30]. The prevalence doubled from 3.5% in 1990 to 7.9% in 2008, while the incidence increased from 3.2/1000 persons in 1990 to 8.3/1000 persons in 2008 [31]. Despite reaching a plateau in 2008–2012, national trends among African-American and Hispanic subpopulations continue to increase [31]. The most recent data from the National Health Interview Survey based on self-report estimated that 0.55% of US adults had diagnosed type 1 diabetes, representing 1.3 million adults, and 8.6% had diagnosed type 2 diabetes, representing 21 million adults [32]. Despite limitations resulting from self-report, validation, and overestimating type 2 diabetes, this first study provided information to track the prevalence by type of diabetes, to assess the burden of disease and the huge challenge of education and prevention programs [32]. In 2014, the estimated number of adults with diabetes in China, India, and the USA was 189.4 million, representing 45% of the total population with diabetes in the world [21].

To complicate the scenario, the incidence of type 1 and type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents is increasing worldwide, along with its consequences (Hurley) [33, 34]. For example, in the USA, the incidence of type 1 increased at a rate of 1.4% annually, from 19.5 cases/100,000 youths per year in 2002–2003 to 21.7 cases/100,000 youths per year in 2011–2012, but the incidence of type 2 diabetes more than doubled in the same period at 7.1% per year [33]. The resulting changes of type 2 incidence in persons younger than 20 ascended from 9.0/100,000 in 2002–2003 to 12.5/100,000 in 2011–2012 [33]. Having diabetes in youth elevates the risk of complications at earlier ages: the study by Amutha and colleagues in India shows that the frequency of hypertension and hypercholesterolemia and the incidence of retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy, and ischemic heart disease are 2.1

times higher in patients with type 2 diabetes [34]. The results of this study data are concerning and suggest that 60% of the participants would develop one or more complications of diabetes in one decade and therefore may lose 15 years of the remaining life expectancy [34]. Venkat-Narayan is accurate when he stated that some countries are gaining battles against diabetes [35], while others are losing the war and unable or unwilling to do anything about it [36].

The "Wrong" Lifestyle

The drivers of the diabetes epidemic have been described for decades and involve genetic and environmental risk factors which induce inflammation, autoimmunity, and metabolic stress [37]. Beyond the genetic background of every type of diabetes, the prevalence of type 1 and type 2 diabetes is increasing globally at rates that surpass genetic variation and revealing the key role of environmental factors in both types of diabetes [37]. The pioneering work of David J.P. Barker challenged the idea that chronic diseases like diabetes are explained by bad genes and unhealthy adult lifestyles and proposed that their roots lie in the early life environment [38]. Using old birth records, he showed that people of lower birth and infant weight had more cardiovascular disease, impaired glucose tolerance, beta-cell dysfunction, and diabetes in middle age and proposed a thrifty genotype hypothesis, in which type 2 diabetes is the outcome of the fetus and early infant having to the nutritionally thrifty as a result of impaired growth of beta cells [39, 40]. His statement was visionary: "as long as the individual persists in the undernourished state there is no need to produce much insulin." However, a sudden move to good or overnutrition exposes the reduced state of beta-cell function and diabetes results [40]. Recent research has refined Hales and Barker's hypothesis and demonstrated the role of environmental factors in the etiology of obesity, type 1 and type 2 diabetes, and current strong data supporting a genetic-epigenetic predisposition in type 2 diabetes [41–43].

Despite brilliant efforts showing stabilization and even decline in some countries, worldwide trends in overweight and obesity in children [41, 42], adolescents, and adults continue to rise [44–46]. From 1975 to 2016, the global age standardized prevalence of obesity increased from 0.7% to 5.6% in 2016 in girls and from 0.9% to 7.8% in boys. From 1975 to 2014, age-standardized prevalence of obesity increased from 3.2% in 1975 to 10.8% in men and from 6.4% to 14.9% in women, and the prevalence of morbid obesity continues to increase [47]. Rising trends in children's and adolescents' body mass index have stabilized in many high-income countries, especially at high socioeconomic levels, but have accelerated in East, South, and Southeast Asia [46]. If post-2000 trends continue, the bad news is that moderate and severe infant underweight will be surpassed by obesity in 2022 [46]. In addition to their established roles in type 2 diabetes, obesity and insulin resistance are environmental determinants of type 1 diabetes [37, 48]. Increased childhood growth and weight gain increases peripheral insulin demand, which could place greater stress on beta cells and make them more vulnerable to autoimmune attack; reduction in type 1 diabetes is a potential additional benefit of preventing childhood obesity [49].

Obesity, Syndemics, and Diabetes

Far fewer people globally are underweight than becoming obese; as economic inequalities have increased worldwide, so have inequalities in weight [50]. Beyond violence and substance abuse, social inequalities create syndemics: aggregations of two or more diseases or health conditions in populations with some level of deleterious biological or behavior interface that exacerbates the negative health effects of any or all of the diseases involved [51]. The syndemics framework was described by Merrill Singer in the mid-1990s and refers to the adverse interactions of all types of diseases (infectious, chronic noncommunicable, mental health, behavioral, from toxic exposure and malnutrition) which emerge under conditions of health inequality caused by poverty, stigmatization, stress, or structural violence [51]. Three elements interact in syndemics: disease concentration (genetic predisposition), disease interaction (e.g., obesity and insulin resistance), and the large-scale social forces that give rise to them [52]. Syndemics provides an innovative and important alternative to interpret the co-occurrence of noncommunicable diseases like obesity and diabetes, addressing the importance of social conditions in the emergence and medical outcomes [53]. The concept of syndemics departs from traditional medical approaches that treat diseases as distinct entities, detached from the social context of the people suffering from them (Mendenhall). It moves beyond the common medical conceptualization of comorbidity: concerns the consequences of disease interaction and the social, environmental, or economic factors that cluster with the diseases and shape their interaction [51]. The role of syndemics in persons with diabetes was brilliantly described by Emily Mendenhall in 2012 in a study about the social context of clustering of diabetes and depression among Mexican immigrant women in Chicago, in which she demonstrated the parallelism between syndemics and the embodiment construct that states that "we literally incorporate, biologically, the material and social world in which we live (Mendenhall, Krieger)."

Beyond the undeniable role of genetic traits in the pathogenesis of diabetes, environmental and social determinants have become preeminent in its ascent and the response at

every level, including people with diabetes, providers, and society. In a highly cited study, Christakis and colleagues analyzed the possible contribution of person-to-person spread of obesity in a densely connected social network of 12,067 people assessed as part of the Framingham Heart Study from 1971 to 2003 [54]. The results showed that clusters of obese persons were present in this network at all time points, albeit did not seemed to be solely attributable to the formation of social ties. Among the obese, a person's chances of becoming obese increased by 57% if he or she had a friend who became obese; by comparison, if one sibling became obese, the chance that other would become obese was 40%, 20 percent lower [54]. This study suggests that social networks are even more important than genes on a person's risk to become obese and became a milestone in the story of network medicine [55]. The revolutionary work of Albert Barabasi has shown the existence of networks pervading all aspects of human health [55]. Network-based systems may account not only for the genetic but also for the environmental and social influences of disease [55]. Recent trends of obesity and diabetes have led the WHO and the scientific community to describe them as epidemics [12, 56]. Traditionally, until today, diseases like obesity and diabetes have been described as "noncommunicable," but current evidence indicates that this formulation is inaccurate [57]. As the study of social networks has demonstrated, behavioral risk factors are acquired through social mechanisms and are thus communicable [57]. A recent report from the Israeli IDDM Registry Study Group shows that between 1997 and 2014, familial cases of type 1 diabetes increased 1.9% per year, while sporadic cases decreased 0.2% per year in the same period [58]. The authors conclude that the rapid rise in the proportion of familial cases of type 1 diabetes suggests that environmental factors impose higher diabetogenic pressures in patients with susceptible genetic background [58].

The Social Environment of Diabetes

The inverse care law states that availability of good medical care tends to vary inversely with the needs of the population served [59]. Social and geographical inequalities in morbidity and mortality persist worldwide, with direct effects in the lifestyle and the outcomes of persons with diabetes. The hardships of people with diabetes to achieve effective, multidisciplinary care have been repeatedly documented, even in developed countries, in every age group. For example, children with diabetes in Canada have worse levels of glycemic control if they live in areas of highest neighborhood index, defined by indicators evaluating economic, social, environmental, and lifestyle factors [60]. Food insecurity, defined as limited or uncertain availability of nutritionally adequate and safe foods owing to cost or distance, is associated with increased consumption of inexpensive food alternatives, frequently calorically dense and nutritionally deficient [61]. Food insecurity increases the risk of obesity and diabetes [61]. Compared to people living in food secure households, food insecurity increases the risk of poor glycemic control (A1c >9.0%), hospitalizations, and emergency department visits [59]. In the USA, two studies have estimated that one fifth of people with diabetes have to deal with food insecurity [62, 63]. Social determinants of health continue to prevail in the outcomes of people with diabetes from every age group [64]. Daneman and the realities of clinical practice show the most common cause of death in youth with type 1 diabetes worldwide continues to be lack of access to insulin and that in some countries, life expectancy of a child with type 1 diabetes is less than 1 year [64]. The five fundamental requirements for diabetes care (availability of food and clear water, availability of insulin and glucose or urine testing, prevention of hyper or hypoglycemia, and protection against harm) [64] are still and increasingly unavailable to a large number of people.

The Disease, the Illness, and the Predicament

As a result of its global burden, diabetes is perceived from multiple perspectives. The most important nevertheless is from persons and their families. In 1979, David C. Taylor brilliantly described three different ways of being sick: diseases, physical entities discernible through diagnostic tests; illnesses, or the experience of being sick; and predicaments, or the complex of psychosocial ramifications, contacts, meanings, and ascriptions which bear on the individual [65]. The predicament and the positive or negative way in which it is faced and solved by persons with diabetes and their families are crucially linked to the outcomes. Bob Anderson described it as "the personal meaning of diabetes" and the levels of personal responsibility, from absolute denial to total commitment that every individual has the option to assume [66]. Tinetti and Fried eloquently claimed that:

> Time has come to abandon disease as the focus of medical care. The changed spectrum of health, the complex interplay of biological and non-biological priorities render medical care centered on the diagnosis and treatment of individual diseases at best out of date and at worst, harmful…clinical decision making should (achieve to) attainment of individual goals and identification and treatment of all modifiable biological and non-biological factors, rather than solely on the diagnosis, treatment or prevention of individual diseases [67].

We hypothesize that although the conversation has shifted, paternalism in health care has not changed [68]. Health-care systems continue to focus on engaging patients in behaviors that are desirable from a biomedical perspective, with no space left for patient (concerns) goals, needs, desires,

abilities, and backgrounds that make humans so rich and diverse [68]. Health-care organizations and providers should consider the use of language more appropriate for their role in the user's care such as coach, guide, counselor, or advocate [68]. Reductionist approaches seek to build holistic constructs for disease etiology, pathophysiology, epidemiology, and therapeutics without including the multiple insertion points of the social world and reduce the "whole person" to pieces that can be coded into data and fed into network analysis [69]. In the twenty-first century, biomedical research and clinical practice have begun to shift from close examination of disease parts (beta cells, endothelium) toward a "personalized approach" that focuses on the whole person as a unit of analysis [69]. This task will be complex, time-consuming, and arduous but is essential to the advancement of medicine [69].

New Approaches to an "Old" Disease diabetes has changed in many ways, each representing a challenge. The "old disease" described in Egypt 35 centuries ago in a small number of patients has become a worldwide health problem affecting directly one sixth of the general population and indirectly at least another sixth of siblings and relatives [70]. The social distribution of the disease leads to large inequalities in management; most of even the "reasonably" expected benefits go to a small fraction of the patients, the ones who have access and can afford the progress [70]; a huge mismatch exists between countries and regions with the largest diabetes burdens and the sites of research and clinical excellence [35]. Even people with economic resources have to endure individualistic, vertical physician approaches and low quality of services. Improvements in quality of diabetes care [71] and reductions in complication rates among people with type 2 diabetes in the USA and high-income countries [72] are exemplary but contrast with the inability of countries like Mexico, where despite high levels of obesity and diabetes, glycemic control continues to be poor, diabetes is associated with a far worse prognosis than in high-income countries, and complications continue ascending [73]. Achievements in the science of diabetes are unprecedented, and the future looks even more promising [73–76]. The paradox is unprecedented: never before has there been so much knowledge and resources about diabetes, but never before has there been so much suffering.

The concept of a "cascade of care" proposed by Ali and colleagues is a powerful tool to visualize gaps and disparities across groups to improve engagement and the quality of diabetes care, including awareness, and effectiveness of prevention programs for people with prediabetes [77]. Years ago, Frank Vinicor summarized the challenges in the future of diabetes [78]. Besides new medicines, it is essential to (1) continue the improvements in diabetes care; (2) recognize and address the complexities of diabetes management; (3) improve the system of care; (4) broaden the definition of "office"; (5) address the dual impact of the diabetes epidemic, maintaining the efforts to improve the management of people with diabetes, and develop and implement primary prevention programs; (6) recognize and deal with "non-health forces" influential on diabetes prevention and control; (7) look for special opportunities for health professionals; (8) empower patients; (9) achieve a balance between individuals and communities; and (10) accept and embrace globalization [78]. The challenge is formidable, and the stakeholders are multiple.

References

1. Botazzo GC. Banting lecture. On the honey disease. A dialogue with Socrates. Diabetes. 1993;42:778–800.
2. Grmek MD. History of AIDS: emergence and origin of a new pandemic. Princeton: Princeton University Press; 1990.
3. Lasker SP, McLachlan CS, Wang L, Jelinek HF. Discovery, treatment and management of diabetes. Journal of Diabetology. 2010;1:1–8.
4. Farmer L. Notes on the history of diabetes mellitus. Views concerning its nature and etiology up to the discovery of the role of the pancreas. Bull NY Acad Med. 1952;28:408–16.
5. Eknoyan G, Nagy J. A history of diabetes mellitus and how a disease of the kidneys evolved into a kidney disease. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis. 2005;12:223–9.
6. Polonsky KS. The past 200 years in diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:1332–40.
7. DCCT Research Group. The effect of intensive diabetes treatment on the development and progression of long-term complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 1993;329:978–86.
8. UK Prospective Diabetes Study Group. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). Lancet. 1998;352:837–53.
9. UK Prospective Diabetes Study Group. Tight blood pressure control and risk of macrovascular and microvascular complications in type diabetes: UKPDS 38. Br Med J. 1998;317:703–13.
10. Bebu I, Braffett BH, Pop-Busui R, Orchard TJ, Nathan DM, Lachin JM, et al. The relationship of blood glucose with cardiovascular disease in mediated over time by traditional risk factors in type 1 diabetes: the DCCT/EDIC study. Diabetologia. 2017;60:2084–91.
11. Edelman SV, Polonsky WH. Type 2 diabetes in the real world: the elusive nature of glycemic control. Diabetes Care. 2017;40:1425–32.
12. Zimmet PZ. Diabetes and its drivers: the largest epidemic in human history? Clinical Diabetes and Endocrinology. 2017;3:1. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40842-016-0039-3.
13. West KM. Epidemiology of diabetes and its vascular lesions. New York NY: Elsevier; 1978.
14. Joslin EP, Root HF, Bailey C. Diabetes Mellitus. N Engl J Med. 1941;225:410–7.
15. Blotner H, Marble A. Diabetes control: detection, public education and community aspects. N Engl J Med. 1951;245:567–75.
16. Marks HH. Statistics in diabetes. N Engl J Med. 1946;235:289–94.
17. Roglic G, Unwin N. Mortality attributable to diabetes: estimates for the year 2010. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2010;87:15–9.
18. Instituto Nacional de Estadística, Geografía e Informática. Estadísticas Históricas de México, Tomo I. Aguascalientes Ags: INEGI; 1985.

19. Secretaría de Salud. Salud en Números. Accessed on 29 Mar 2018 at http://www.dgis.salud.gob.mx/contenidos/sinais/s_index.html.
20. Röckl S, Brinks R, Baumert J, Paprott R, Du Y, Heidemann C, Scheidt-Nave C. All-cause mortality in adults with and without type 2 diabetes: findings from the national health monitoring in Germany. BMJ Open Diab Res Care. 2017;5:e000451. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjdrc-2017-000451.
21. Cho NH, Shaw JE, Karuranga S, Huang Y, da Rocha Fernandes JD, Ohlrogge AW, et al. IDF diabetes atlas: global estimates of diabetes prevalence for 2017 and projections for 2045. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2018;138:271–81.
22. O'Sullivan JB, Wilkerson HLC, Krall LP. The prevalence of diabetes mellitus in Oxford and related epidemiologic problems. Am J Public Health Nations Health. 1966;56:742–54.
23. Wilkerson HLC, Krall LP. Diabetes in a New England Town. A study of 3,516 persons in Oxford Mass. JAMA. 1947;135:209–16.
24. Jarrett RJ. Lessons in the epidemiology of diabetes. BMJ. 1970;3:270–17.
25. NCD Risk Factor Collaboration (NCD-RisC). Worldwide trends in diabetes since 1980: a pooled analysis of 751 population-based studies with 4.4 million participants. Lancet. 2016;387:1513–30.
26. Bommer C, Heesemann E, Sagalova V, Manne-Goehler J, Atun R, Bäminghausen T, et al. The global economic durden of diabetes in adults aged 20-79 years: a cost-of-illness study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017;5:423–30.
27. Zuo H, Shi Z, Hussain A. Prevalence, trends and risk factors for the diabetes epidemic in China: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;104:63–72.
28. Wang L, Gao P, Zhang M, Huang Z, Zhang D, Deng Q, et al. Prevalence and ethnic patterns of diabetes and prediabetes in China in 2013. JAMA. 2017;317:2515–23.
29. Klonoff DC. The increasing incidence of diabetes in the 21st century. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2009;3:1–2.
30. Ingelfinger JR, Jarcho JA. Increase in the incidence of diabetes and its implications. N Engl J Med. 2017;376:1473–4.
31. Geiss LS, Wang J, Cheng YJ, Thompson TJ, Barker L, Li Y, et al. Prevalence and incidence trends for diagnosed diabetes among adults aged 20 to 79 years, United States, 1980–2012. JAMA. 2014;312:1218–26.
32. Bullard KM, Cowie CC, Lessem SE, Saydah SH, Menke A, Geiss LS, et al. Prevalence of diagnosed diabetes in adults by diabetes type – United States, 2016. MMWR. 2018;67:359–61.
33. Mayer-Davis EJ, Lawrence JM, Dabelea D, Divers J, Isom S, Dolan L, et al. Incidence trends of type 1 and type 2 diabetes among youths, 2002–2012. N Engl J Med. 2017;376:1419–29.
34. Amutha A, Mohan Anjana R, Venkatesan U, Ranjani H, Unnikrishnan R, Km VN, et al. Incidence of complications in young-onset diabetes: comparing type 2 with type 1 (the young diab study). Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2017;123:1–8.
35. Venkat Narayan KM. Type 2 diabetes: why we are winning the Battle but losing the war. 2015 Kelly West Award Lecture. Diabetes Care. 2016;39:653–63.
36. Meza R, Barrientos-Gutierrez T, Rojas-Martinez R, Reynoso-Noverón N, Palacio-Mejia LS, Lazcano-Ponce E, et al. Burden of type 2 diabetes in Mexico: past, current and future prevalence and incidence rates. Prev Med. 2015;81:445–50.
37. Skyler JS, Bakris GL, Bonifacio E, Darsow T, Eckel RH, Groop L, et al. Differentiation of diabetes by pathophysiology, natural history, and prognosis. Diabetes. 2017;66:241–55.
38. Fall C, Osmond C. Commentary: the developmental origins of health and disease: an appreciation of the life and work of Professor David J.P. Barker, 1938-2013. Int J Epidemiol. 2013;42:1231–2.
39. Hales CN, Barker DJP, Clark PMS, Cox LJ, Fall C, Osmond C, Winter PD. Fetal and infant growth and impaired glucose tolerance at age 64. BMJ. 1991;303:1019–22.
40. Hales CN, Barker DJP. Type 2 (non-insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus: the thrifty phenotype hypothesis. Diabetologia. 1992;35:595–601.
41. Slomko H, Heo HJ, Einstein FH. Epigenetics of obesity and diabetes in humans. Endocrinology. 2012;153:1025–30.
42. Jerram ST, Dang MN, Leslie RD. The role of epigenetics in type 1 diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2017;17:89. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11892-017-0916-x.
43. Feinberg AP. The key role of epigenetics in human disease prevention and mitigation. N Engl J Med. 2018;378:1323–34.
44. Nichols MS, de Silva-Sanigorski AM, Cleary JE, Goldfeld SR, Colahan A, Swinburn BA. Decreasing trends in overweight and obesity among an Australian population of preschool children. Int J Obes. 2011;35:916–24.
45. Pan L, Park S, Slayton R, Goodman AB, Blanck HM. Trends in severe obesity among children aged 2 to 4 years enrolled in special supplemental nutrition program for women, infants, and children from 2000 to 2014. JAMA Pediatr. 2018;172:232–8.
46. NCD Risk Factor Collaboration (NCD-RisC). Worldwide trends in body-mass index, underweight, overweight, and obesity from 1975 to 2016: a pooled analysis of 2416 population-based measurement studies in 128.9 million children, adolescents, and adults. Lancet. 2017;390:2627–42.
47. NCD Risk Factor Collaboration (NCD-RisC). Trends in adult body-mass index in 200 countries from 1975 to 2014: a pooled analysis of 1698 population-based measurement studies with 19.2 million participants. Lancet. 2016;387:1377–96.
48. Islam ST, Srinivasan S, Craig ME. Environmental determinants of type 1 diabetes: a role for overweight and insulin resistance. J Pediatr Child Health. 2014;50:874–9.
49. Verbeeten KC, Elks CE, Daneman D, Ong KK. Association between childhood obesity and subsequent type 1 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabet Med. 2011;28:10–8.
50. Davey-Smith G. A fatter, healthier but more unequal world. Lancet. 2017;387:1349–50.
51. Singer M, Bulled N, Ostrach B, Mendenhall E. Syndemics and the biosocial conception of health. Lancet. 2017;389:941–50.
52. Tsai AC, Mendenhall E, Trastle JA, Kawachi I. Co-occurring epidemics, syndemics, and population health. Lancet. 2017;389:978–82.
53. Mendenhall E, Kohrt BA, Norris SA, Ndetei D, Prabhkaran D. Non-communicable disease syndemics: poverty, depression, and diabetes among low-income populations. Lancet. 2017;389:951–63.
54. Chrisakis NA, Fowler JH. The spread of obesity in a large social network over 32 years. N Engl J Med. 2007;357:370–9.
55. Barabási AL. Network Medicine – from obesity to the "Diseasome". N Engl J Med. 2007;357:404–7.
56. Huang H, Yan Z, Chen Y, Liu F. A social contagious model of the obesity epidemic. Sci Rep. 2016;6:37961.
57. Demmer RT, Barondness JA. On the communicability of chronic diseases. Ann Intern Med. 2018;168(1):69–70. https://doi.org/10.7326/M17-1734.
58. Zung A, Naámnih W, Bluednikov Y, Mery N, Blumenfeld O. The proportion of familial cases of type 1 diabetes is increasing simultaneously with the disease incidence: eighteen years of the Israeli Pediatric Diabetes Registry. Pediatr Diabetes. 2018;19(4):693–8.
59. Hart JT. The inverse care law. Lancet. 1971;1:405–12.
60. Clarke ABM, Daneman D, Curtis JR, Mahmud FH. Impact of neighborhood-level inequity on paediatric diabetes care. Diabet Med. 2017;34:794–9.
61. Seligman HK, Bindman AB, Vittinghoff E, Kanaya AM, Kushel MB. Food insecurity is associated with diabetes mellitus: results from the National Health Examination Survey (NHANES) 1999–2002. J Gen Intern Med. 2007;22:1018–23.
62. Mendoza JA, Haaland W, D'Agostino RB, Martini L, Pihoker C, Frongillo EA, et al. Food insecurity is associated with high risk

glycemic control and higher health care utilization among youth and youth adults with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2018;138:128–37.
63. Berwowitz SA, Karter AJ, Corbie-Smith G, Seligman HK, Ackroyd SA, Barnard LS, et al. Food insecurity, food "deserts" and Glycemic control in patients with diabetes: a longitudinal analysis. Diabetes Care. 2018;41(6):1188–95.
64. Daneman D. State of the world's children with diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes. 2009;10:120–6.
65. Taylor DC. The components of sickness: diseases, illnesses and predicaments. Lancet. 1979;2:1008–10.
66. Anderson RM, Genthner RW, Alogna M. Diabetes patient education: from philosophy to delivery. Diabetes Educ. 1982;8:33–6.
67. Tinetti ME. The end of the disease era. Am J Med. 2004;116:179–85.
68. Jethwani K. Who Gives us the Right to "Empower" Patients? Accessed 5 Apr 2018 at: https://catalyst.nejm.org/gives-right-patient-empowerment/?utm_campaign=Connect%20Weekly&utm_source=hs_email&utm_medium=email&utm_content=61844886&_hsenc=p2ANqtz%2D%2DbSrLNcxWpkP5ZBktHJPohCu58VWN3cvqsnprqo9ikItylQKkRNu6JoeIlKaoL_ghEYI6JqJ1X0Wdt0P-3jEobp-V6T_g-_Ras8t4eEnRc14qdC-4&_hsmi=61844886.
69. Greene JA, Loscalzo J. Putting the patient Back together – social medicine, network medicine, and the limits of reductionism. N Engl J Med. 2017;377:2493–9.
70. Zinman B, Skyler JS, Riddle MC, Ferrannini E. Diabetes research and care through the ages. Diabetes Care. 2017;40:1302–13.
71. Ali MK, McKeever Bullard K, Saadine JB, Cowie CC, IMperatore G, Gregg EW. Achievement of goals in U.S. diabetes care, 1999-2010. N Engl J Med. 2013;368:1613–24.
72. Gregg EW, Li Y, Wang J, Burrows NR, Ali MK, Rolka D, Williams DE, et al. Changes in diabetes-related complications in the United States, 1990–2010. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:1514–23.
73. Alegre-Díaz J, Herrington W, López-Cervantes M, Gnatiuc L, Ramírez R, Hill M, et al. Diabetes and cause-specific mortality in Mexico City. N Engl J Med. 2016;375:1961–71.
74. Kahn SE, Buse JB. Medications for type 2 diabetes: how will we be treating patients in 50 years? Diabetologia. 2015;58:1735–9.
75. Ahrén B. Creative use of novel glucose-lowering drugs for type 2 diabetes: where will we head in the next 50 years? Diabetologia. 2015;58:1740–4.
76. Meier JJ, Nauck MA. Incretin-based therapies: where will we be 50 years from now? Diabetologia. 2015;58:1745–50.
77. Ali MK, McKeever Bullard K, Gregg EW, del Rio C. A Cascade of Care for Diabetes in the United States: visualizing the gaps. Ann Intern Med. 2014;161:681–9.
78. Vinicor F. The future of diabetes: what is there besides new medicines? Clin Diabetes. 2004;22:94–6.

Suggested Reading

Bliss M. The Discovery of Insulin. 25th Anniversary Edition. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press; 2007.
Galmer A. Biographies of disease. Diabetes. Westport: Greenwood Press; 2008.
Hurley D. Diabetes rising. How a rare disease became a modern pandemic, and what to to about it. New York: Kaplan Publishing; 2010.
Krieger N. Embodying inequality: epidemiologic perspectives. Amityville: Baywood Publishing Company; 2016.
Mendenhall E. Syndemic suffering. Social distress, depression and diabetes among Mexican immigrant women. New York: Taylor and Francis; 2012.
Tattersall R. Diabetes. The biography. New York: Oxford University Press; 2009.

Part I

Magnitude of the Problem from an Individual and Social Context

The Dynamics of Diabetes Prevalence, Morbidity, and Mortality

2

Edward W. Gregg and Paula Bracco

Introduction

Diabetes mellitus has caught the attention of the world as a major public health problem due to the explosive increases in prevalence that have occurred, affecting virtually all regions of the world, and within regions, affecting all age and demographic subgroups and across the full range of socioeconomic status [1–3]. The global prevalence is now estimated at around 420 million, affecting 9% of men and 8% of women, with lowest regional prevalence in Northeastern Europe (6%) and highest prevalence in Polynesia and Macronesia (25%) [1]. This growth has included both type 1 and type 2 diabetes, although between 90 and 95 percent of the cases and the predominant increase in prevalence has been driven by type 2 cases [4]. Dozens of individual-level genetic and environmental factors have been prospectively associated with type 2 diabetes, but the increases in prevalence in most societies have likely been driven by a smaller set of trends, including increasing prevalence of overweight and obesity, declining levels of physical activity, poor-quality carbohydrate in our diets, sugary drinks, increased fast food and portion sizes, aging and longer lifespan, and increasingly diverse socioeconomics [5, 6]. There is also increasing recognition of heterogeneity in diabetes types, even within the classic categories of type 2 and type 1 diabetes, that likely have different patterns of risk factors that may further vary by region and context [7].

The growth of diabetes prevalence has ominous implications for numerous health and economic-related reasons. Ultimately, diabetes places an enormous burden on individuals, families, health systems, and societies because of the treatment required, the acute and chronic complications, its demand for health services, the direct impact on quality of life, and the loss of years of life [8]. In addition to the effects of diabetes on traditionally recognized macrovascular and microvascular conditions, the complications of diabetes may be further diversifying due to the long-term reductions in cardiovascular mortality in many settings [9].

While the growth of diabetes is most apparent in prevalence trends, there are numerous dynamics in the epidemic underway, with important implications for the clinical and public health priorities that follow. We have synthesized primary findings from population studies of the burden and trends in prevalence, incidence, morbidity, and mortality, with a particular focus on the status in North America and Latin America.

Current Burden of Prevalence and Incidence

Prevalence

Countries of the Americas tend to be around the median of worldwide prevalence of adult diabetes, now estimated at 8.3% diagnosed [1]. The highest estimates from the Americas region come from the Caribbean Islands and Belize, where prevalence ranges from 10 to 15%, making it one of the higher diabetes prevalence regions of the world. Similarly, the Central America region contains countries of particularly high prevalence (Guatemala, Nicaragua, and Belize), of between 10.5 and 12.5% [10, 11]. Prevalence estimates modeled for subregions of the Americas from the Global Burden of Disease Study are generally highest in Mexico, the Caribbean, Central Latin America, and high-income North America and lowest in the Southern Latin America, Tropical

The findings and conclusions in this report are those of the authors and do not necessarily represent the official position of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

E. W. Gregg (✉)
Division of Diabetes Translation, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA
e-mail: edg7@cdc.gov

P. Bracco
Division of Diabetes Translation, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

School of Medicine and Hospital de Clínicas, Universidade Federal do Rio Grande do Sul, Porto Alegre, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_2

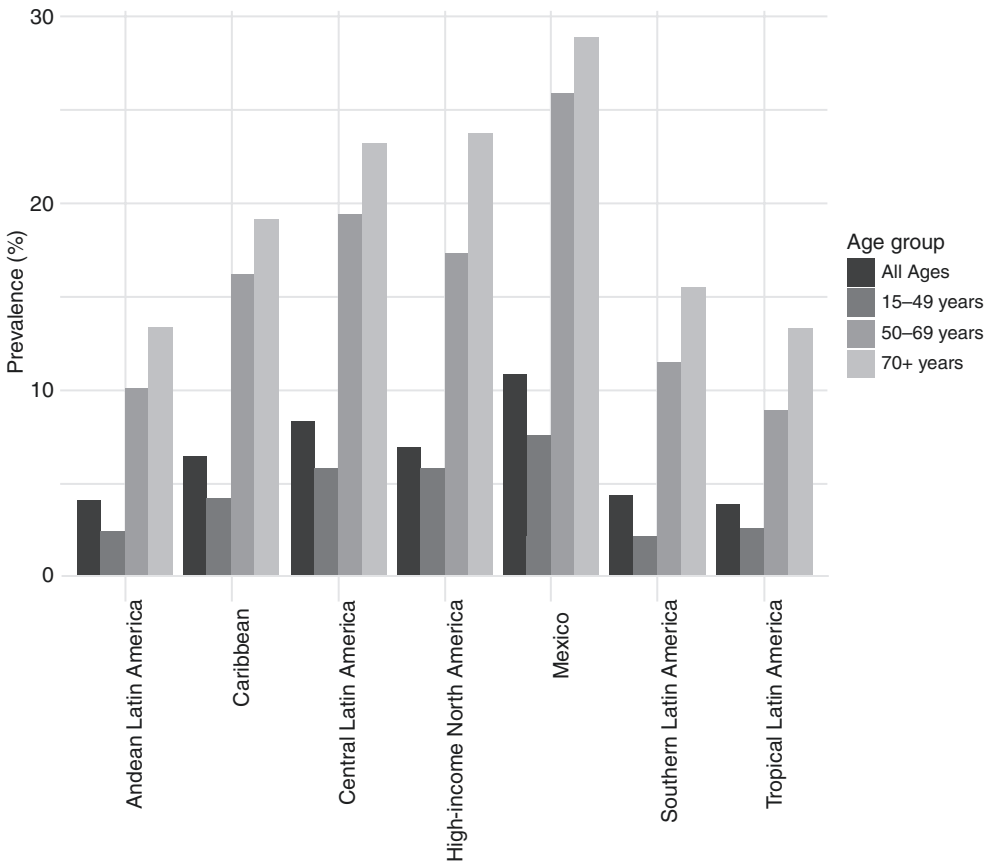


Fig. 2.1 Estimated prevalence of diabetes in subregions of the Americas, by age, 2016

Latin America, and Andean South America (Fig. 2.1). Other estimates within the past 10 years suggest that prevalence is similar for Canada (6.7% diagnosed diabetes in 2014 and an additional 3% undiagnosed in 2007–2009) and Brazil (6.2%) but higher for Mexico (8.9% diagnosed in 2012) and Colombia (12.3% diagnosed in 2016–2017) [12, 13]. Prevalence is strongly associated with age, ranging from 2 to 7% across subregions among young adults (age 15 to 49 years), from 8% to 25% in adults aged 50–69, and from 12% to almost 30% in those aged >70 years.

In the USA, 9.3% of adults have diagnosed diabetes and 2.9% have undiagnosed diabetes, for a total of 12.2% [14, 15]. The national prevalence in the USA conceals considerable geographic variation, ranging from less than 5% in low prevalence areas of the USA to greater than 16% in high prevalence areas, including areas of concentration in the Mississippi Valley and Deep South, the Appalachian Mountain chain, and selected areas of the West and Midwest corresponding to Native American lands [16–18]. Prevalence is also notably high in areas corresponding to areas of high concentration of Native Americans and in Canada, areas with large populations of First Nations residents.

In the USA, diabetes prevalence is similar across genders but increases steeply with age, such that young adults (age 18–44), middle-aged (45–64), older (≥65 years), and very old have prevalence of 2.6, 12.7, and 20.8, respectively (Fig. 2.2). Prevalence also has a strong association with race/ethnicity in the USA, as compared to whites women, American Indians and Alaska Natives and non-Hispanic blacks have prevalence that is about twice that of whites, while Hispanics and Asians have prevalence that is about 80% higher than whites [15]. Education level is also a key factor, as adults with less than a high school education have a prevalence (15.5%) that is about 60% higher than those with more than a high school education (9.65). Within Latin America, indigenous populations have historically low prevalence but now represent the populations with the greatest magnitude of recent increase, as evident in indigenous populations in Brazil and Chile [11].

Undiagnosed Diabetes

Because early stages of diabetes are usually without symptoms, many individuals have several years with diabetes before detection and diagnosis, and thus a large proportion of the population with diabetes is undiagnosed. In the USA, prevalence of undiagnosed diabetes is about 3%, representing about one-fourth of the population with diabetes [19]. Older adults, Mexican Americans, and persons with lower education are somewhat less likely to be diagnosed. Although it is commonly believed that awareness and detection of diabetes is increasing over time, changes in the proportion of the population with undiagnosed diabetes converting to the diagnosed

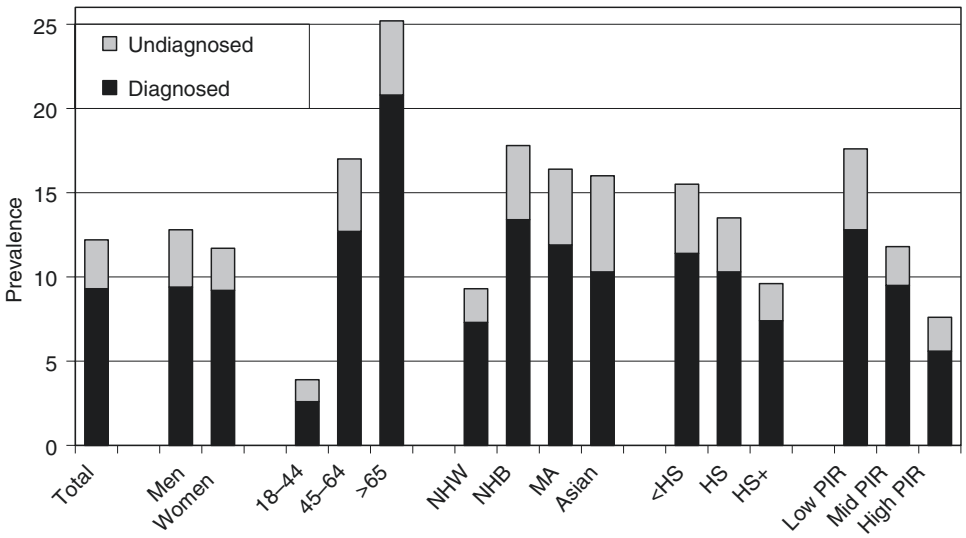


Fig. 2.2 Prevalence of total diabetes (diagnosed diabetes and undiagnosed diabetes) in the US adult population, age ≥ 20, 2011–2014. Legend: Reference; National NHW non-Hispanic whites, NHB non-Hispanic blacks, MA Mexican American, HS high school, PIR poverty-income ratio

state have been relatively unchanged over time, with exception of recent improvements in detection in older adults, non-Hispanic whites, and wealthy individuals and worsening detection in Mexican Americans [19]. Few other studies in the Americas have reported undiagnosed diabetes. Considerably higher proportions of cases remaining undiagnosed have been documented in many other regions of the world. Although diagnostic definitions and time periods vary across studies, the proportion of undiagnosed diabetes has been reported to range from 20% to 49% in the South and Central American regions [20]. However, national data from Mexico suggests that up to 50% of cases remain undiagnosed and in Canada 20 to 40% depending on the glycemic definition [21].

Incidence

Incidence, or the rate of new cases per population, is less directly affected by mortality rates than is prevalence and is thus a more sensitive indicator of the trajectory of the epidemic. Current adult incidence of diagnosed diabetes is about 7 per 1000 adults, with similar estimates for men and women and race/ethnic patterns that parallel the estimates for prevalence [14, 22]. Like prevalence, incidence increases steeply with age, from 3 per 1000 in young adults (age 18–44) to 11 per 1000 in middle age (45–64 years), but there is no further age-related increase thereafter, as incidence is 9 per 1000 among persons aged ≥65, reflecting the age-related incidence peak in the early 60s. Incidence estimates from population-based studies only include the detected cases and thus do not reflect true incidence. When undiagnosed cases are included, estimates in the USA approach 1 percent per year and can be used as a general benchmark of the risk of a population, as subpopulations with different designations of prediabetes, such as impaired fasting glucose and impaired glucose tolerance, have incidence estimates that range from 1 to 5 percent per year [23].

Prediabetes

Estimates of prediabetes vary considerably with the definition that is used, which remains an area of debate because of the high degree of discordance that exists across different glycemic markers, including fasting plasma glucose, post-challenge glucose response, and HbA1c. Using the American Diabetes Association-like prediabetes definition of fasting plasma glucose or elevated HbA1c, 33.9% of adult Americans have prediabetes, with estimates ranging from 23.7% among young adults (age 18 to 44) to 48.3% among adults age ≥ 65 years. It is noteworthy that only about 10 percent of persons with prediabetes are aware of their risk status. Since risk of progression from prediabetes to diabetes with the ADA definition is relatively low, the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) has adopted a definition of FPG > 110 mg/dl or HbA1c > 5.7%.

Trends and Trajectories in the Epidemic

Prevalence and Incidence

Prevalence of diagnosed and total diabetes has been increasing in most regions for as long as population-based estimates have existed [1, 24, 25]. From 1980 to 2014, worldwide prevalence increased from 3.6% to 8.8% in men and from 4.7% to 8.2% in women, corresponding to an increase in total numbers from 108 to 422 million adults. Diabetes prevalence increased in virtually all regions of the world except for women in mainland Europe and men in northwestern Europe, while the greatest absolute increases have occurred in Polynesia, Micronesia, and the Middle East. Although the growth of mega-urban areas in the low- and middle-income countries are often regarded as an accel-

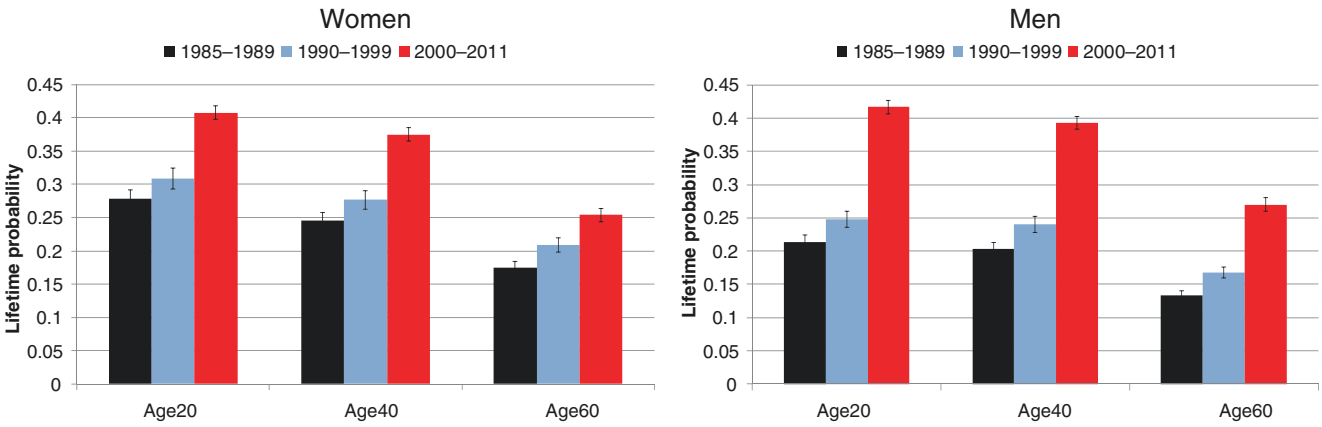


Fig. 2.3 Lifetime risk of developing diabetes, according to age in the USA, according to sex and cohort. (From Gregg et al. [33])

erator of the diabetes epidemic, large increases have also been observed in rural areas [26].

In the USA, national-level prevalence was first recorded in 1960 at less than 1% of the population and grew steadily in the 1960s through the 1980s to about 3.5% in 1980 (Diabetes in America, 1995) [27, 28]. However, in the 1990s prevalence and incidence increased more rapidly, with a dramatic 50% increase in prevalence from 1990 to 2010 and continued increase until a peak incidence of 9 per 1000 in 2008 [22]. These trends followed large increases in the prevalence of overweight and obesity occurring during the same period. The increases in prevalence of diagnosed diabetes were paralleled by increases in total diabetes, as small increases in undiagnosed diabetes paralleled the changes in known diabetes [28]. Throughout this period, the increases in prevalence were paralleled by increases in incidence from around 4 cases per 1000 per year in the 1980s and early 1990s to almost 10 cases per 1000 adults in 2009 [14, 22].

Prevalence increased in both men and women and all age groups; the greatest relative increases were observed in youth and young adults, and the greatest absolute increases occurred in older adults [29, 30]. However, the greatest increase in total numbers was observed among middle-aged adults, driven by the US baby boom generation, born between 1945 and 1965, reaching the ages of peak diabetes incidence. The increases in diagnosed diabetes increased in virtually all other demographic subgroups of the population but were particularly notable in those of low education and socioeconomic status, leading to a particular widening of prevalence by social class [22, 31]. This is also evident in the trends in geographic trends, wherein the poorest areas of the USA saw the greatest increase in diabetes prevalence [32].

Impact on Lifetime Risk and Years of Life

The enormous increases in incidence, combined with large decreases in mortality, described in more detail below, have had a large impact on the lifetime risk of diabetes, the number of years spent with and lost due to the disease [33]. Lifetime risk, or the probability of developing diabetes before death, increased from 27% in women and 21% in men in the late 1980s to 40% for both sexes in the 2000s. For persons who arrive at the age of 60 without diabetes, their remaining lifetime risk is lower than from birth but remains high, at 26% for men and 25% for women (Fig. 2.3). Lifetime risk in the USA is highest among Latinos (52% for both men and women) and non-Hispanic blacks (55% in women and 45 in men). The large decreases in mortality in the population with diabetes mean that there has also been a decrease in the number of years lost to the condition. For the average person diagnosed at age 40, the number of years lost to diabetes decreased from 8 to 6 for men and from 9 to 7 years for women. However, this also means that there has been an increase in the number of years spent with the disease, from an average of 13 to 18 years for men and from 19 to 21 years for women. When applied to an entire community, combining the number of years spent with the condition with the growth in prevalent cases, this translates to a more than doubling of the number of years of life in men and 70% increase in women. This metric of number of total years per community of 1000 adults is particularly ominous in light of the association of duration of diabetes with an erosion of quality of life and increased health service use. Although this changing burden is a function of both increasing incidence and declining mortality in the diabetic population, the increases and sustained incidence is the predominant factor, underscoring the continued need for effective prevention strategies at policy, community, clinical, and individual levels.

A Turn of the Tide?

Following the large increases in prevalence in the 1990s and 2000s, data from the US National Health Interview Survey (NHIS) described a peak at an incidence level of 8.5 per 1000 in 2008 followed by a 25% decline through 2015

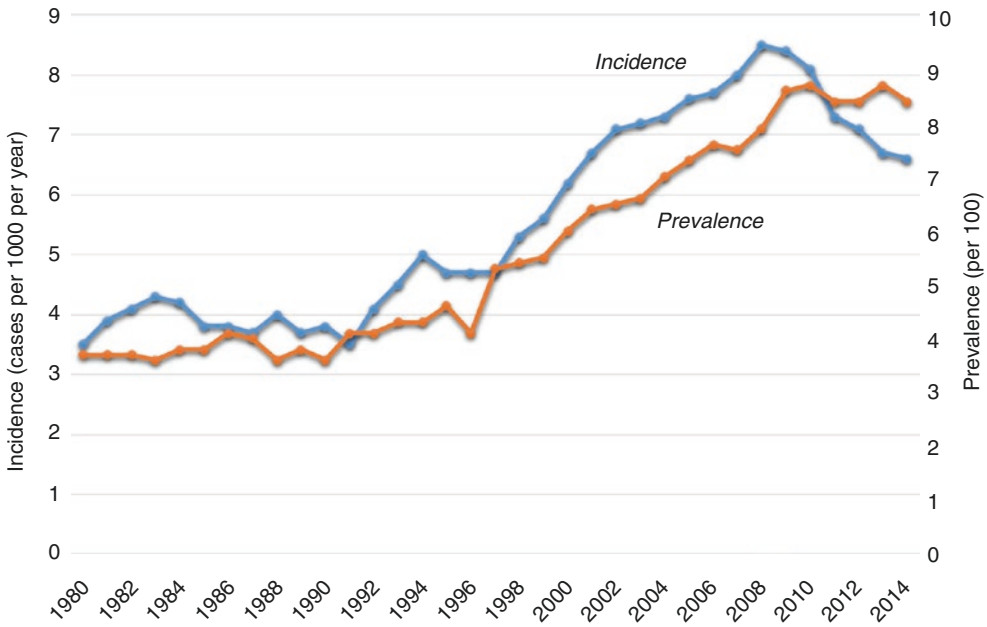


Fig. 2.4 Trends in incidence and prevalence of diagnosed diabetes among adults aged 20 to 79, USA, 1980–2014

to 6.5% [14] (Fig. 2.4). In contrast with incidence, prevalence of diagnosed diabetes did not decline, but reached a peak and plateau during the same period. Similar trends have been reported in state-level prevalence from a separate survey (the Behavior Risk Factor Surveillance System), confirming the encouraging reduction observed in the NHIS. The reductions appear to have generally affected all major subgroups of the population [29]. Youth and young adults stand out as a remaining area of concern, however, as prevalence and incidence continues to grow [34, 35]. The most recent findings from the SEARCH Study (SEARCH for Diabetes in Youth) revealed a 4.8% yearly increase in incidence of type 2 diabetes from 2003 to 2012. The increases in incidence were greatest for American Indians and Alaska Natives (8.9% increase), Asian or Pacific Islanders (8.5%), non-Hispanic Blacks (6.3%), and Hispanics (3.1%), as whites were the only group with no change (Fig. 2.5). The increases in type 2 diabetes incidence were also paralleled by increases in type 1 diabetes of about 2 percent per year, paralleling concerning trends observed in other areas of the world [35]. The continued increases in prevalence and incidence in youth is a discouraging harbinger for the future given the implications of such early diabetes diagnosis on long-term cumulative diabetes-related complications.

Several explanations for the reduction in incidence have been raised, ranging from true reductions in the rate of the disease due to declining underlying risk of the population to measurement biases stemming from changes in detection, diagnosis, or definitions of diabetes [22]. Midway through the past decade, surveillance reports also described peaks and decreases in total dietary intake, sugared beverage intake, and plateaus in prevalence of obesity and

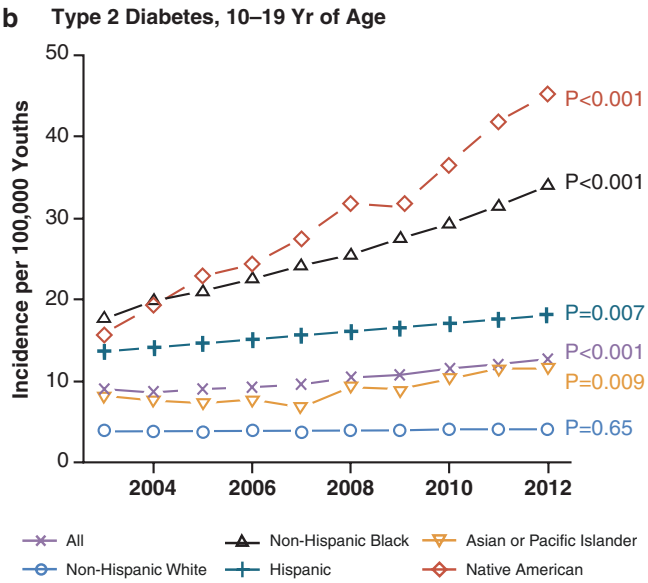


Fig. 2.5 Trends in type 2 diabetes incidence in youth in the USA. The SEARCH Study in Youth

physical inactivity. The year 2010 American Diabetes Association recommendation to use HbA1c for the diagnosis of diabetes is another potential factor, because the HbA1c threshold of 6.5% selects fewer people than the fasting glucose threshold of 126 mg/dl. Thus, a shift from FPG to HbA1c for diagnostic purposes would lower incidence and prevalence [36]. However, if healthcare providers use both tests, it could actually increase prevalence and incidence. As no surveillance systems measure the actual rates of diagnostic testing or the method of diagnosis, it is unclear how testing or changing awareness of diabetes is affecting incidence rates.

The Burden and Trends in Diabetes Complications

Prevalence and Incidence

Diabetes is notorious for its systemic effect on a diverse array of diabetes-related complications including macrovascular, microvascular, neuropathic conditions, and infections with coronary heart disease, stroke, foot ulcers, vision loss, kidney failure, amputations, and death regarded as many of the most feared outcomes [9, 37, 38]. Diabetes is also increasingly associated with nontraditional complications, including cancers, liver disease, dementia, disability, and other geriatric syndromes [9, 39]. The etiology of diabetes is believed to be multifactorial with genetic and environmental influences and a key influence of level of glycemic and blood pressure control on most complications.

Diabetic retinopathy is recognized as the signature complication of diabetes and, being the complication that is most specific to diabetes, has been used to guide diagnostic thresholds for diabetes. Prevalence of any diabetic retinopathy has been estimated at 28.5% of the US adult diabetic population, with 4.4% of them having vision-threatening retinopathy [40]. However, no nationally representative estimates of retinopathy exist within the past decade. While it is conceivable that the reductions in incidence of diabetes complications (described in detail below) have served to reduce prevalence of retinopathy, it is also possible that the concomitant reductions in mortality have resulted in a maintenance of similar or even higher levels of retinopathy.

Chronic kidney disease and coronary heart disease are prevalent at similarly concerning levels in the adult diabetic population, with 19% of adults having stage 3 or stage 4 chronic kidney disease and 18.3% of adults having coronary heart disease [41]. CKD is notably higher in African-Americans than in whites, and although coronary heart disease prevalence is similar across race/ethnic groups, a strong gradient with education level has been noted for coronary heart disease, wherein persons with less than a high school education have a prevalence that is 8 percentage points higher (26%) than those with more than a high school education (18%). Although recent estimates of CKD represent a reduction relative to the early 2000s, when prevalence was around one-fourth, there has been no significant reduction in prevalence between 2003–2004 and 2011–2012. Finally, estimates of prevalence of specific complications do not reveal the full burden of diabetes-related morbidity; when prevalence of the full range of vascular, musculoskeletal, neurologic conditions and cancers are considered, most persons with diabetes have multiple chronic conditions present, and the mean number of comorbid conditions is already 3 at the time of diagnosis [42].

Trends in Complications

Despite the high prevalence of morbidity among patients with diagnosed diabetes, there have been large reductions in the incidence rates of diabetes complications over recent decades [27]. In a report of nationally representative data from 1990 to 2010 in the USA, there were substantial declines in a diverse spectrum of diabetes complications, including myocardial infarction, stroke, lower extremity amputation, end-stage renal disease, and hyperglycemic death, resulting in an overall halving of rates of complications for the average US adult with diagnosed diabetes [27]. The magnitude of decline in was greatest for myocardial infarction, declining 68% to draw even with stroke, which also declined by 53%. Rates of amputation declined 51%, end-stage renal disease by 28% (Fig. 2.6).

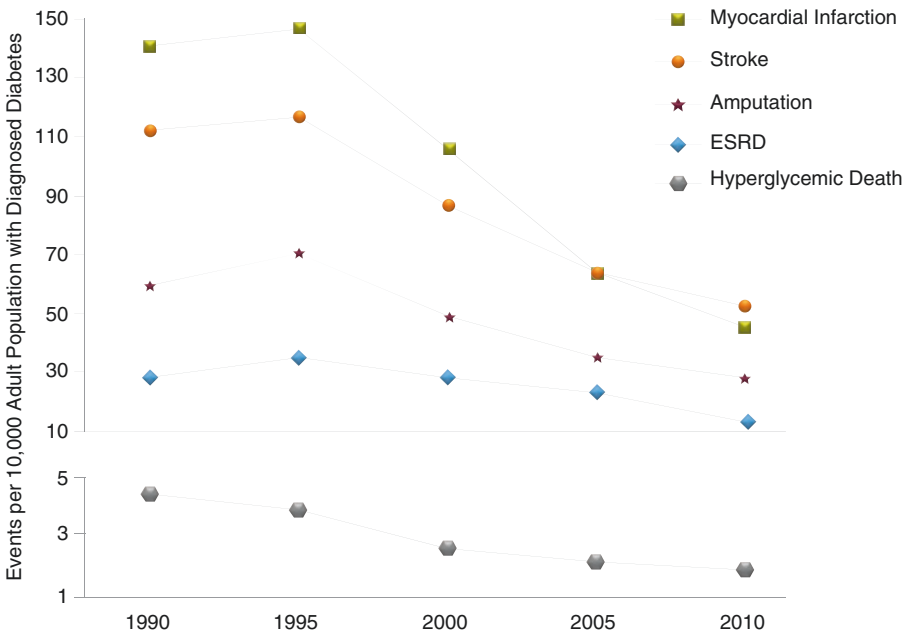


Fig. 2.6 Trends in age-standardized rates of diabetes-related complications from 1990 to 2010 among US adults with diagnosed diabetes. (Gregg et al. [27])

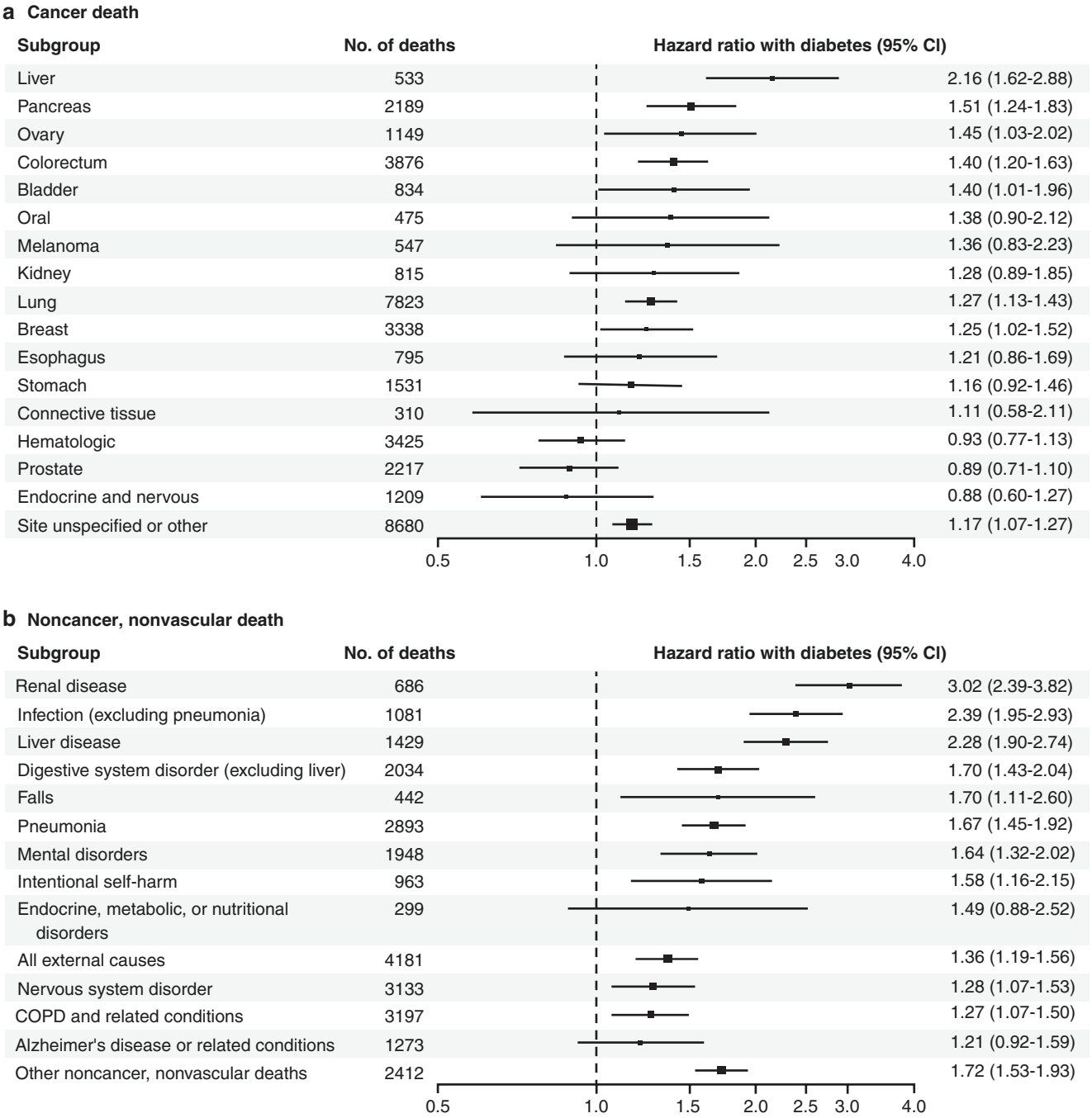


Fig. 2.7 Hazard ratios for deaths from cancer and non-cancer, nonvascular causes among participants with diabetes. The Emerging Risk Factors Collaboration (Seshasai et al. [46])

Rates of death due to hyperglycemia, which was less common in absolute terms, also declined substantially. These reductions in complications generally included men and women and both whites and nonwhites. However, the declines in complications were substantially greater in older adults (age > 65 years), moderate in middle-aged adults, and either modest or nonexistent in young adults. Although no national data exists on rates of diabetic retinopathy, the prevalence of vision impairment in the USA declined by 25%, from 24% to 18%, generally paralleling the other improvements in rates [14] (Fig. 2.7).

While the long-term perspective on trends in diabetes complications has clearly been positive, more recent reporting of results from the 2010 to 2015 period from the US National Diabetes Surveillance System suggests that the improvements in complications may have stalled or in some

populations even increased [14]. Rates of lower extremity amputations increased overall, particularly among men, the middle-aged population, and potentially driven by an increase in amputations of the toe, as trends in amputations above the foot have been stable. Similarly, trends in myocardial infarction, stroke, and end-stage kidney disease appear to have plateaued [43, 44]. No in-depth published reports have examined most recent shifts in trends in complications, and thus it remains unclear whether such apparent shifting trends are related to changing characteristics of the population with diagnosed diabetes, changes in self-care, risk factor management or treatment, health policy effects, or even broader secular trends in the health of the population.

The encouraging trends in incidence of diabetes-related complications described above take the perspective of the average risk for a person with diagnosed diabetes. When trends in diabetes-related events are expressed as the absolute number of events, wherein the increases in diabetes prevalence over time are permitted to influence rates, the trends have been less encouraging [27]. From this general population burden perspective, rates of diabetes-related MI declined by 32% and hyperglycemic death declined by 42%, perhaps reflecting the impressive gains that have been made in smoking and management of hypertension hyperlipidemia in recent decades. However, trends in amputation stroke have been flat, and ESRD increased when viewed from this population perspective, reflecting the continued wave of new diabetes cases and perhaps an indication that there has been less success in reducing microvascular disease risk than macrovascular disease risk in many countries.

Despite the large reductions in the incidence of diabetes complications, the excess rates of complications associated with diabetes remain substantial, and areas of important disparities remain. Relative risks for lower extremity amputation and ESRD were 10.5 and 6.1, respectively, and adults with diabetes still have 80% increased risk of myocardial infarction and 60% increased risk of stroke, respectively [27]. Considerable disparities still exist across subgroups, as non-Hispanic blacks still have twice the risk of amputation and ESRD and one-third higher rates of stroke, Hispanics have a 33% increased risk of ESRD, and Asians have an elevated risk of stroke [14]. In addition, compared to women men have 30% higher rates of MI and twice the rate of lower extremity amputation.

Limited population-based data on trends in other areas of the world exists to confirm whether the encouraging trends from the USA are also occurring elsewhere. Although reviews of international data have revealed reductions in rates of lower extremity amputations in numerous settings, these data generally come from Canada, Europe, and Australia. There is limited data on the trends in complications in the Americas or the remainder of middle- or lower-income countries around the world.

Diabetes and Mortality

Adults with diabetes in the USA, Canada, and several countries of Europe have been shown to have overall mortality rates that are approximately 60–80% higher than equivalent-aged adults without diabetes [45, 46]. However, recently published data from a Mexico City cohort finding considerably higher relative risk of death, ranging from 1.9 in persons aged 75–84 to 3.1 in those aged 60–74 and to 5.4 for adults aged 35–59 years, serves as a reminder that there may be considerable variation across populations in excess mortality associated with diabetes [47].

Cardiovascular disease is the leading cause of death among adults with diabetes in the USA, accounting for 34% of the total, followed by cancers (20%), diabetes itself, and renal disease (5% of total). In addition to the five most common causes of death described above, diabetes is associated with an increased risk of several other causes, including unintentional injuries, lower respiratory diseases, septicemia, influenza, and liver diseases. Comprehensive data from the Emerging Risk Factors Collaboration reveals several other specific causes of death that are notably increased in adults with diabetes including cancers of the liver, pancreas, ovary, and colorectum [46]. These differential rates likely reflect multiple factors, including the chronic hyperglycemia associated with diabetes, as well as the underlying risk factors, including hypertension, insulin resistance, and inflammation commonly recognized in persons with diabetes.

The association of diabetes with mortality varies considerably by demographic subgroup. For example, the relative risk of all-cause, CVD, and renal disease mortality decreases steeply with age. In the USA, among young adults (age 20–44) and middle-aged adults (age 45–64), diabetes is associated with about 3 times the death rate of those without diabetes. Among those aged 65–74, diabetes is associated with twice the death rate and about a 25% increased rate among adults aged >75 years. The lower relative risk among older age likely reflects several factors, including the possibility that type 2 diabetes onset in young adulthood is a more severe form that is more difficult to manage for physiological as well as environmental and behavioral reasons.

A Diversification of Long-term Diabetes Associated with Diabetes

Several dynamics in the diabetes epidemic may be leading to relative shifts and diversification in the character of diabetes-related complications [9]. First, the proportionately greater declines in diabetes complications among older adults mean that proportionately more diabetes-related complications now occur in middle age than in previous decades. This is particularly evident in the USA, where adults aged 45–64

accounted for only one-third of amputations in 1990 and now account for more than half. Second, this may be further compounded by the greater relative increase in diabetes incidence in youth and the earlier exposure to long-term hyperglycemia and development of diabetes-related complications [48, 49]. The large reductions in cardiovascular disease events and related mortality may be responsible for the relative persistence of end-stage renal disease, as people with diagnosed diabetes are living longer to develop renal disease. Similarly, the reduction in cardiovascular disease mortality observed in most populations with diagnosed diabetes is now accompanied by a proportional increase in deaths due to other causes. Among the US population with diabetes, the proportion of total deaths that were due to cardiovascular causes declined from almost 50% in the early 1990s to 33% in 2010. During the same period, deaths due to cancer in the population with diabetes stayed stable around 18, and deaths due to all non-CVD, non-cancer causes increased from 33% to 50% of the total. This latter group of "other causes" included several causes, including influenza, pneumonia, septicemia, renal disease, and chronic liver disease, that have an increased association with diabetes. For these latter causes, there has been no improvement in recent decades, and for x of them, there was actually an increase in the rates of diabetes-related complications.

Primary Conclusions and Implications

This synthesis of the epidemiology and trends of diabetes and its complications reveals the following general observations:

1. Changes in underlying risk of most societies has led to large increases in the incidence and prevalence of diabetes over recent decades, leading to an enormous burden for individuals, families, health systems, and societies.
2. Signs of a peak in the epidemic are apparent in the USA and selected other countries of the world, with recent decreases in incidence and a plateau in prevalence. However, the explanations for these trends are unclear, and the encouraging news is offset by continued increases in diabetes incidence in youth.
3. Diabetes leads to an extensive and diverse array of morbidity, including macrovascular, microvascular, and neuropathic complications, and health outcomes that results.
4. Rates of diabetes-related complications have declined in the USA and other selected countries, likely due to improved risk factor management and organization of care.
5. The disproportionate reduction in cardiovascular disease mortality and increasing lifespan among adults with diabetes, combined with the continued growth of diabetes prevalence in youth, may be fueling a diversification of diabetes-related complications and continued population-wide exposure to hyperglycemia that will drive high rates of diabetes-related morbidity into the figure.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. The global prevalence of diabetes is currently estimated to be:
   (a) 100 million
   (b) 220 million
   (c) 310 million
   (d) 420 million
   (e) 500 million
2. The region with the lowest worldwide prevalence of diabetes:
   (a) Middle East
   (b) Northeastern Europe
   (c) North America
   (d) Africa
   (e) Australia
3. Increases in diabetes prevalence are likely been driven:
   (a) By autosomal dominant genetic traits
   (b) By Mendelian inheritance
   (c) By increasing prevalence of obesity and overweight
   (d) By aging and longer lifespan
   (e) By socioeconomic factors
4. Current estimated prevalence of adult diabetes in the Americas:
   (a) 2.0%
   (b) 4.5%
   (c) 6.0%
   (d) 8.3%
   (e) 10.0%
5. Regarding ethnicity, diabetes prevalence in the USA is higher among:
   (a) Native Americans
   (b) Afro-Americans
   (c) Caucasians
   (d) Mexican Americans
   (e) Asians
6. Estimated prevalence of persons with prediabetes aware of their risk status:
   (a) 100%
   (b) 75%
   (c) 50%
   (d) 20%
   (e) 10%
7. Greatest relative increases of diabetes have been observed:
   (a) In newborns

(b) In youth and young adults
(c) In pregnant females
(d) In middle-aged adults
(e) In the elderly

8. Largest absolute increases of diabetes in the USA have been observed:
   (a) In newborns
   (b) In youth and young adults
   (c) In pregnant females
   (d) In middle-aged adults
   (e) In the elderly
9. Lifetime risk of developing diabetes before death increased in women and men up to:
   (a) 100%
   (b) 80%
   (c) 60%
   (d) 40%
   (e) 20%
10. The signature, most specific complication of diabetes:
   (a) Coronary heart disease
   (b) Renal failure
   (c) Diabetic retinopathy
   (d) Diabetic foot
   (e) Stroke

Correct Answers

1. (d) 420 million
2. (b) Northeastern Europe
3. (c) By increasing prevalence of obesity and overweight
4. (d) 8.3%
5. (a) Native Americans
6. (e) 10%
7. (b) In youth and young adults
8. (d) In middle-aged adults
9. (d) 40%
10. (c) Diabetic retinopathy

References

1. NCD Risk Factor Collaboration (NCD-RisC). Worldwide trends in diabetes since 1980: a pooled analysis of 751 population-based studies with 4.4 million participants. Lancet. 2016;387(10027):1513–30.
2. Zimmet P, Alberti KG, Shaw J. Global and societal implications of the diabetes epidemic. Nature. 2001;414:782–7.
3. Diabetes Atlas [article online], 2015. Available from www.diabetesatlas.org.
4. Menke A, Orchard TJ, Imperatore G, Bullard KM, Mayer-Davis E, Cowie CC. The prevalence of type 1 diabetes in the United States. Epidemiology. 2013;24:773–4.
5. Ley SH, Schulze MB, Hivert M, Meigs JB, Hu FB. Risk Factors for Type 2 Diabetes. In: CS CCC, Menke A, Cissell MA, Eberhardt MS, Meigs JB, Gregg EW, Knowler WC, Barrett-Connor E, Becker DJ, Brancati FL, Boyko EJ, Herman WH, Howard BV, KMV N, Rewers M, Fradkin JE, editors. *Diabetes in America*, NIH Pub No. 17–1468. Bethesda: National Institutes of Health; 2017.
6. Ford ES, Williamson DF, Liu S. Weight change and diabetes incidence: findings from a national cohort of US adults. Am J Epidemiol. 1997;146:214–22.
7. Tuomi T, Santoro N, Caprio S, Cai M, Weng J, Groop L. The many faces of diabetes: a disease with increasing heterogeneity. Lancet. 2014;383:1084–94.
8. Bommer C, Heesemann E, Sagalova V, Manne-Goehler J, Atun R, Barnighausen T, Vollmer S. The global economic burden of diabetes in adults aged 20–79 years: a cost-of-illness study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017;5:423–30.
9. Gregg EW, Sattar N, Ali MK. The changing face of diabetes complications. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2016;4:537–47.
10. Yisahak SF, Beagley J, Hambleton IR, Narayan KM. Diabetes in North America and the Caribbean: an update. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;103:223–30.
11. Aschner P, Aguilar-Salinas C, Aguirre L, Franco L, Gagliardino JJ, de Lapertosa SG, Seclen S, Vinocour M. Diabetes in South and Central America: an update. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;103:238–43.
12. Rosella LC, Lebenbaum M, Fitzpatrick T, Zuk A, Booth GL. Prevalence of prediabetes and undiagnosed diabetes in Canada (2007–2011) according to fasting plasma glucose and HbA1c screening criteria. Diabetes Care. 2015;38:1299–305.
13. Meza R, Barrientos-Gutierrez T, Rojas-Martinez R, Reynoso-Noveron N, Palacio-Mejia LS, Lazcano-Ponce E, Hernandez-Avila M. Burden of type 2 diabetes in Mexico: past, current and future prevalence and incidence rates. Prev Med. 2015;81:445–50.
14. National Diabetes Surveillance System [article online], 2016. Available from http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/statistics/index.htm. Accessed 2016/02/25.
15. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National Diabetes Statistics Report, 2017. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, U.S. Dept of Health and Human Services; 2017.
16. Barker LE, Kirtland KA, Gregg EW, Geiss LS, Thompson TJ. Geographic distribution of diagnosed diabetes in the U.S. A diabetes belt. Am J Prev Med. 2011;40:434–9.
17. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Estimated county-level prevalence of diabetes and obesity – United States, 2007. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2009;58:1259–63.
18. Cunningham SA, Patel SA, Beckles GL, Geiss LS, Mehta N, Xie H, Imperatore G. County-level contextual factors associated with diabetes incidence in the United States. Ann Epidemiol. 2018;28(1):20–25.e2.
19. Geiss LS, Bullard KM, Brinks R, Hoyer A, Gregg EW. Trends in type 2 diabetes detection among adults in the USA, 1999–2014. BMJ Open Diabetes Res Care. 2018;6:e000487.
20. Beagley J, Guariguata L, Weil C, Motala AA. Global estimates of undiagnosed diabetes in adults. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;103:150–60.
21. Beagley J, Guariguata L, Weil C, Motala AA. Global estimates of undiagnosed diabetes in adults. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;103:150–60.
22. Geiss LS, Wang J, Cheng YJ, Thompson TJ, Barker L, Li Y, Albright AL, Gregg EW. Prevalence and incidence trends for diagnosed diabetes among adults aged 20 to 79 years, United States, 1980–2012. JAMA. 2014;312:1218–26.
23. Gerstein HC, Santaguida P, Raina P, Morrison KM, Balion C, Hunt D, Yazdi H, Booker L. Annual incidence and relative risk of diabetes in people with various categories of dysglycemia: a systematic overview and meta-analysis of prospective studies. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2007;78:305–12.
24. King H, Aubert RE, Herman WH. Global burden of diabetes, 1995-2025: prevalence, numerical estimates, and projections. Diabetes Care. 1998;21:1414–31.

25. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Trends in the prevalence and incidence of self-reported diabetes mellitus – United States, 1980–1994. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 1997;46:1014–8.
26. Hwang CK, Han PV, Zabetian A, Ali MK, Narayan KM. Rural diabetes prevalence quintuples over twenty-five years in low- and middle-income countries: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2012;96:271–85.
27. Gregg EW, Li Y, Wang J, Burrows NR, Ali MK, Rolka D, Williams DE, Geiss L. Changes in diabetes-related complications in the United States, 1990–2010. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:1514–23.
28. Menke A, Casagrande S, Geiss L, Cowie CC. Prevalence of and trends in diabetes among adults in the United States, 1988–2012. JAMA. 2015;314:1021–9.
29. Geiss LS, Kirtland K, Lin J, Shrestha S, Thompson T, Albright A, Gregg EW. Changes in diagnosed diabetes, obesity, and physical inactivity prevalence in US counties, 2004–2012. PLoS One. 2017;12:e0173428.
30. Cheng YJ, Imperatore G, Geiss LS, Wang J, Saydah SH, Cowie CC, Gregg EW. Secular changes in the age-specific prevalence of diabetes among U.S. adults: 1988–2010. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(9):2690–6.
31. Beckles GL, Chou CF. Disparities in the prevalence of diagnosed diabetes – United States, 1999-2002 and 2011-2014. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2016;65:1265–9.
32. Shrestha SS, Thompson TJ, Kirtland KA, Gregg EW, Beckles GL, Luman ET, Barker LE, Geiss LS. Changes in disparity in county-level diagnosed diabetes prevalence and incidence in the United States, between 2004 and 2012. PLoS One [Electronic Resource]. 2016;11:e0159876.
33. Gregg EW, Zhuo X, Cheng YJ, Albright AL, Narayan KM, Thompson TJ. Trends in lifetime risk and years of life lost due to diabetes in the USA, 1985–2011: a modelling study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2014;2(11):867–74.
34. Dabelea D, Stafford JM, Mayer-Davis EJ, D'Agostino R Jr, Dolan L, Imperatore G, Linder B, Lawrence JM, Marcovina SM, Mottl AK, Black MH, Pop-Busui R, Saydah S, Hamman RF, Pihoker C. Association of type 1 diabetes vs type 2 diabetes diagnosed during childhood and adolescence with complications during teenage years and young adulthood. JAMA. 2017;317:825–35.
35. Mayer-Davis EJ, Lawrence JM, Dabelea D, Divers J, Isom S, Dolan L, Imperatore G, Linder B, Marcovina S, Pettitt DJ, Pihoker C, Saydah S, Wagenknecht L. Incidence trends of type 1 and type 2 diabetes among youths, 2002–2012. N Engl J Med. 2017;376:1419–29.
36. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes – 2010. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(Suppl 1):S11–61.
37. Gerstein HC, Werstuck GH. Dysglycaemia, vasculopenia, and the chronic consequences of diabetes. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2013;1:71–8.
38. Donnelly R, Emslie-Smith AM, Gardner ID, Morris AD. ABC of arterial and venous disease: vascular complications of diabetes. BMJ. 2000;320:1062–6.
39. Wong EBK, Gearon E, Harding J, Freak-Poli R, Stevenson C, Peeters A. Diabetes and risk of physical disability in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2013;1:106–14.
40. Zhang X, Saaddine JB, Chou CF, Cotch MF, Cheng YJ, Geiss LS, Gregg EW, Albright AL, Klein BE, Klein R. Prevalence of diabetic retinopathy in the United States, 2005–2008. JAMA. 2010;304:649–56.
41. Murphy D, McCulloch CE, Lin F, Banerjee T, Bragg-Gresham JL, Eberhardt MS, Morgenstern H, Pavkov ME, Saran R, Powe NR, Hsu CY. Trends in prevalence of chronic kidney disease in the United States. Ann Intern Med. 2016;165:473–81.
42. Luijks H, Schermer T, Bor H, van Weel C, Lagro-Janssen T, Biermans M, de Grauw W. Prevalence and incidence density rates of chronic comorbidity in type 2 diabetes patients: an exploratory cohort study. BMC Med. 2012;10:128.
43. Burrows NR, Li Y, Gregg EW, Geiss LS. Declining rates of hospitalization for selected cardiovascular disease conditions among adults aged ≥35 years with diagnosed diabetes, U.S., 1998–2014. Diabetes Care. 2018;41(2):293–302.
44. Burrows NR, Hora I, Geiss LS, Gregg EW, Albright A. Incidence of end-stage renal disease attributed to diabetes among persons with diagnosed diabetes – United States and Puerto Rico, 2000-2014. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2017;66:1165–70.
45. Gregg EW, Cheng YJ, Srinivasan M, Lin J, Geiss L, Imperatore P. Shifting causes of mortality among the U.S. population with and without diagnosed diabetes. Diabetes. 2017;66(Suppl 1):A432.
46. Seshasai SR, Kaptoge S, Thompson A, Di AE, Gao P, Sarwar N, Whincup PH, Mukamal KJ, Gillum RF, Holme I, Njolstad I, Fletcher A, Nilsson P, Lewington S, Collins R, Gudnason V, Thompson SG, Sattar N, Selvin E, Hu FB, Danesh J. Diabetes mellitus, fasting glucose, and risk of cause-specific death. N Engl J Med. 2011;364:829–41.
47. Alegre-Diaz J, Herrington W, Lopez-Cervantes M, Gnatiuc L, Ramirez R, Hill M, Baigent C, McCarthy MI, Lewington S, Collins R, Whitlock G, Tapia-Conyer R, Peto R, Kuri-Morales P, Emberson JR. Diabetes and cause-specific mortality in Mexico City. N Engl J Med. 2016;375:1961–71.
48. Viner R, White B, Christie D. Type 2 diabetes in adolescents: a severe phenotype posing major clinical challenges and public health burden. Lancet. 2017;389:2252–60.
49. Lascar N, Brown J, Pattison H, Barnett AH, Bailey CJ, Bellary S. Type 2 diabetes in adolescents and young adults. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2018;6:69–80.

3 Economic Costs, from Individuals to Health Systems: Evidence from a Middle-Income Country

Armando Arredondo, Emanuel Orozco, Maria Beatriz Duarte, Silvia Magali Cuadra, Ana Lucía Recamán, and Alejandra Azar

Introduction

In the current context of health system reforms, there is a need to generate and promote models for comprehensive analysis that will advance the generation of a critical mass that will direct and sustain the changes that, in terms of production and financing, are taking place in the different subsystems of health in Latin America. Indeed, it is not surprising that health system reform programs are central to health analysis and action, particularly when it is explicitly stated that the challenge of such reforms is to achieve a balance between supply and demand of health of the different population groups [1].

Health market imbalances are one of the major challenges to overcome in the rethinking of health systems, mainly due to the disparities that exist in contrasting the available health services versus the demands, required from the epidemiological changes. As health reform projects move forward, the cost of providing services only to the demand for hospital cases of chronic-degenerative diseases will be higher, relative to the cost of providing service to the demand for outpatient and hospital cases of infectious diseases, so to further progress of the epidemiological transition, it will have greater financial implications in the production of health-care services for the short-, medium-, and long-term demands [1, 2].

In this context, health economics is defined as the application of economics to the study, production, distribution, and consumption of health-care services. Its main task is to contribute to the improvement of health without subordinating the ethical values inherent to the health of populations [1].

A. Arredondo (✉) · E. Orozco · M. B. Duarte · S. M. Cuadra
A. Azar · A. L. Recamán
National Institute of Public Health, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

University La Salle, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico
e-mail: armando.arredondo@insp.mx

In economic terms, the meaning of changes in the epidemiological and demographic profile represents an increase in the demand for care for costly diseases (treatment of chronic-degenerative diseases and accidents) that will compete with the budget allocated for the treatment of infectious diseases still unresolved.

Health economics contributes to the field of health its theoretical and methodological body to support decision-making in the allocation and use of resources. It is important to recognize the need to choose better alternatives for the allocation of resources for health care, since they are scarce to meet the new or changing needs of society. It is for this reason that cost analysis tends to be an increasingly important tool for decision of planners, managers, politicians, and providers, especially in setting priorities, funding, and regulation of services of health [1, 2].

The cost of care raises the need to develop broader perspectives for the study and resolution of priority health problems, particularly chronic-degenerative problems that require ongoing attention in the short, medium, and long term depending on the phase of the natural history of disease in patients who are at the time of diagnosis. Indeed, the economic burden in managing a health problem varies depending on the quality standards that make the economic valuation of attention to a specific health claim.

The usefulness of economic evaluation evidence in health care can sometimes increase uncertainty for decision-making. For example, it is not the same as saying that the management of chronic damage to health costs 100 US$ and that was controlled with minimum quality standards, than the same damage cost 120 US$ plus not controlled with minimum quality standards [3].

In the first case we have a comprehensive evidence, solid and very relevant to make decisions for the management of health damage to the high degree of certainty and confidence to make strategic decisions that enable more efficient and effective use of resources. In the second case, where the economic valuation does not control the quality of care, we have a situation with no conclusive evidence or relevant to make

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_3

correct decisions, so that decisions in this context does not guarantee high levels of efficiency and effectiveness interventions to meet the demand for health with a specific damage such as diabetes or hypertension, as a priority public health problems not only in Mexico but throughout the world.

Regarding the epidemiological history and cost of diabetes, we note that the diabetes is a health problem that requires an integral approach, since its tendency to increase has not been addressed with the developed efforts and assigned economic resources for its resolution. The high costs in health and the demographic behavior of Mexico, in which a change in the population pyramid is noticed, will add risks for the adult population that adding to the existing cases will increase the demand of health services in the near future [4, 5].

Mexico at the moment occupies the ninth worldwide place in the diabetes prevalence. This is a truly alarming site, but the projections of the international specialists refer that for year 2025, the country will occupy the seventh place. This disease has become a worldwide epidemic due to the high rates of deaths that have been registered in the last 10 years. For example, in Mexico one third of heart attacks and half of the chronic renal failures are direct consequences of diabetes [6, 7]. For this reason, the diverse institutions of health in the country have begun to reinforce their preventive campaigns to avoid even higher costs. Indeed, by the time the diagnosis of diabetes and its complications is made, the costs for the treatment are very high, and practically the patient is gradually losing his productive life years, with important repercussions in terms of indirect costs attributable to the diabetes [8, 9]. In addition, the costs in the quality of life of these patients are very high, and at the same time, the financial burden for the health sector to control the problems associated with diabetes is not known in the majority of the countries, making difficult an efficient allocation of resources and strategic planning to face the high demand of health services [10–12].

In addition to the epidemiological background of diabetes, it is also noteworthy the increase in health services demand and health-care costs of this type of patients. Indeed, it is quite evident that the increased costs of health services and, by consequence, the need to increase the health expenditures and changes in the methods of resource allocation for the diabetes have provoked multiple restlessness in decisions-makers. Accordingly, it becomes imperative to incorporate the economic perspective for the analysis of the health sector [13, 14]. In economic terms the meaning of the changes in the epidemiologic and demographic profile means an increase in the demand of health care of expensive diseases (treatment of chronic-degenerative diseases and accidents) that will still compete with the budget assigned for the treatment of infectious diseases. Thus, it is important to remember that there will be a need to reassess health priorities and to establish the strategic actions that will allow optimal use and organization of health resources for each health problem, in this case for diabetes mellitus [15, 16].

In summary, the observed and estimated changes in the morbidity and mortality for diabetes mellitus will generate constant increasing changes in the expected tendencies for the health services demand for diabetes. On the other hand, the constant increasing costs of the medical care and the unknown costs of handling ambulatory case management and handling of diabetes hospital cases, as well as the unknown economic resources needed to satisfy the future health services demand, justify in a pertinent and urgent way the development of research studies of applied investigation. It will allow the measurement, development, and determination of indicators of the increasing changes in the demand, of costs of case management controlling by quality of care, and of the financial amounts that will be required to be able to face the problem of diabetes mellitus in Mexico in the next years.

Methodology

The results that are presented here were generated from a study of annual monitoring on the costs and the financial consequences of the epidemiological changes in chronic-degenerative diseases in Mexico. For the case of the diabetes, we make the following methodological precisions:

- The changes in the health services demand for diabetes were determined by means of analysis of series of time from cases observed for period 1990–2013. The estimated models of prognosis of the demand are referred to the period of time 2014–2016. The estimation method was based on the methodology of Box–Jenkins for health prognosis [17]. The expected cases for diabetes were estimated for the health system as a whole and for each sector. For the estimation of expected direct and indirect costs for diabetes, we took the year 2015 as a cutoff year since it corresponds to half of the projection period of time.
- The quality of care was controlled from the definition of minimum quality standards of care for case management at each institution in accordance with the standards and protocols for health care for patients with chronic-degenerative diseases. The case management was determined by means of the technique of times and movements, and its validation was made by consensus with clinical experts in the management of diabetes mellitus in different institutions of the health sector. For this task we designed seven instruments to gather information according to the functions of production and inputs required to

satisfy the health sector demand (see Appendix 1 with a model format to determine costs of case management).
- The direct costs of the case management were determined from the functions of production, the combination of inputs, the standards of quality, and the costs of the inputs for each sector.
- The indirect costs were determined using the capital human model developed for Latin America, making the necessary adjustments for the case of Mexico. The model is based on indicators of premature mortality and temporary handicap and permanent handicap attributable to diabetes [18].
- The financial requirements for future years, like in similar studies, were considered from the expected cases, the costs of case management taking as period of reference the last year of observed cases and applying an adjustment econometric factor to control the expected inflationary process for health services in the short, medium, and long term [19].

Results

After making the estimation cases for period 2014–2016, it was decided to take as point of cutoff the year 2015 to determine the costs of diabetes mellitus care for each sector of the health system. The national annual average cost of case management was of 711 US$, and the base population estimate was 4,854,689 patients diagnosed with diabetes and treated in different institutions of the health system. The direct costs represent 46% vs 54% of indirect costs from the total costs of diabetes mellitus in Mexico. Figure 3.1 shows the distribution of the direct costs among the main items of economic impact in the management of the diabetes for different institutions of the health system.

In relation to the cost of the different functions of production, it is worth noting that the inputs with the greater impact refer to medications, followed by costs of outpatient services and in smaller degree the costs of hospitalization in the cases of acute complications due to diabetes mellitus, without considering the management of chronic complications (see Fig. 3.1).

For the relative weight of the cost in the overall management of the main complications of diabetes, in all the institutions, the greater impact is in the costs for managing diabetic nephropathy, followed from largest to smallest impact by retinopathy, cardiovascular disease, diabetic neuropathy, and finally peripheral vascular disease.

With respect to the relative weight of the economic impact per origin of the costs, of the total of direct costs, the greater economic impact corresponds to the pocket of the heath service users, that is to say for each 100 US$ that are spent in diabetes in Mexico, 55 come from the pocket of the users. It follows in order of importance by its relative weight: the IMSS (27 US$ for each 100), the SSA (12 US$), and finally the ISSSTE (6 US$). What is necessary to stand out on the economic impact of diabetes among the different health institutions of the public sector is that the economic impact for the IMSS is more than double than that of the SSA and four times more than that for the ISSSTE (see Figs. 3.1 and 3.2). The same tendencies were observed when determining the costs of diabetic complications for all institutions.

With regard to the indirect costs of diabetes mellitus health care, in this dimension of costs, we were only able to estimate the indirect costs for users that sought care in the three main institutions of the public sector. These costs rep-

ITEM	SSA	IMSS	ISSSTE	USERS	PHI	TOTAL
Consultations/ Diagnostics	82,372,917	185,937,437	43,503,483	360,318,202	20,787,582	692,919,621
Drugs	183,434,640	414,698,553	96,877,117	803,123,025	46,334,005	1,544,467,340
Hospitalization	55,072,978	124,314,284	29,085,628	240,902,002	13,898,171	463,273,063
Complications	152,255,027	343,679,838	80,410,206	665,998,732	38,422,992	1,280,766,795
TOTAL CD	**473,135,561**	**1,068,630,112**	**249,876,434**	**2,070,341,961**	**119,442,750**	**3,981,426,819**

Fig. 3.1 Direct costs attributable to diabetes mellitus in Mexico, 2015: SSA. IMSS, ISSSTE, users, private health insurance (DLS). (Source: Arredondo A. (2016) Costos y consecuencias financieras del cambio en el perfil epidemiológico en México. INSP–Update of probabilistic models, January 2016). Exchange rate: January 2016, 1 US$ = 13.35 Mexican $. 95% CIs. Box–Pierce statistical test ($p < 0.05$). IMSS Mexican Institute for Social Security, ISSSTE Institute for Social Security and Services for State Workers, na not available, PHI private health insurance, SSA Ministry of Health

ITEM	SSA	IMSS	ISSSTE	USERS	PHI	TOTAL
Retinopathy	16,748,045	37,804,790	8,845,121	53,279,911	3,073,840	119,751,707
CVD	15,225,528	34,367,988	767,819	93,239,814	5,379,222	148,980,371
Nephropathy	111,146,157	250,886,309	58,699,468	499,499,044	28,817,234	949,048,213
Neuropathy	5,481,180	12,372,472	2,894,763	10,655,982	614,769	32,019,164
PVD	3,654,116	8,248,315	1,929,840	9,323,992	537,927	23,694,189
TOTAL	**152,255,026**	**343,679,873**	**73,137,011**	**665,998,743**	**38,422,991**	**1,273,493,644**

Fig. 3.2 Direct costs disagregated by type of complication attributable to diabetes mellitus in Mexico, 2015: SSA. IMSS, ISSSTE, users, private health insurance (DLS). (Source: Arredondo A. (2016) Costos y consecuencias financieras del cambio en el perfil epidemiológico en México. INSP–Update of probabilistic models, January 2016). Exchange rate: January 2016, 1 US$ = 13.35 Mexican $. 95% CIs. Box–Pierce statistical test ($p < 0.05$). IMSS Mexican Institute for Social Security, ISSSTE Institute for Social Security and Services for State Workers, na not available, PHI private health insurance, SSA Ministry of Health

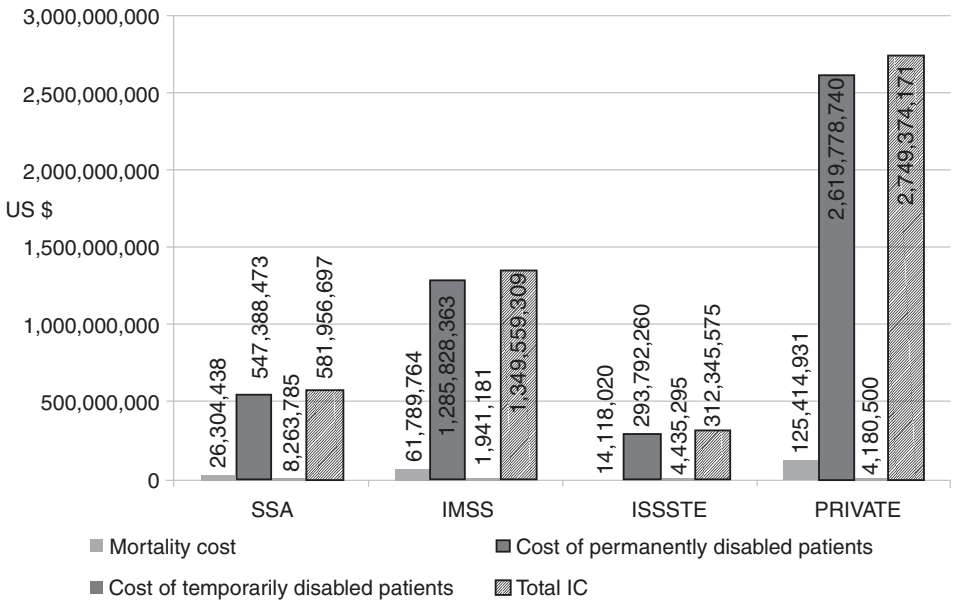


Fig. 3.3 Indirect costs attributable to diabetes mellitus in Mexico, 2015: SSA. IMSS, ISSSTE, and private sector (DLS). (Source: Arredondo A. (2016) Costos y consecuencias financieras del cambio en el perfil epidemiológico en México. INSP–Update of probabilistic models, January 2016). Exchange rate: January 2016, 1 US$ = 13.35 Mexican $. 95% CIs. Box–Pierce statistical test ($p < 0.05$). IMSS Mexican Institute for Social Security, ISSSTE Institute for Social Security and Services for State Workers, na not available, PHI private health insurance, SSA Ministry of Health

resent 56% of the total cost of diabetes mellitus in Mexico. They are distributed in three categories of estimation: costs by premature mortality (5%), costs by permanent handicap (95%), and costs by temporary handicap (1%) (see Figs. 3.3 and 3.4).

Discussion

With respect to the costs of case management in the three public health-care institutions of interest, the results show important differences among the institutions and the hospitalized case management and outpatient cases. Before discussing the details of the results about the economic evaluation, it is important to mention that all costs were expressed in American dollars for any international comparison. From these findings it is possible to establish minimum and maximum ranges by type of disease from the three main institutions of the health system in Mexico. Indeed, on the cost of case management of hospitalized patients, the results are in a range from $675.00 to $751.00 US$. The smallest cost corresponded for the SSA and the greatest cost for the IMSS. The same tendencies are observed for the cost of the case management as outpatient cases.

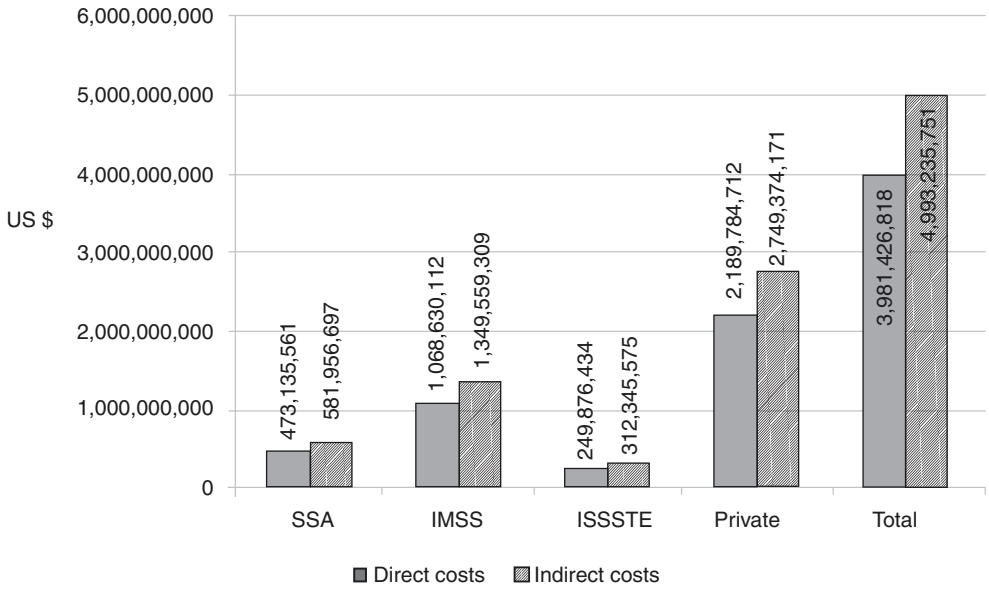


Fig. 3.4 Total costs attributable to diabetes mellitus in Mexico, 2014: SSA. IMSS, ISSSTE, private sector (DLS). (Source: Arredondo A. (2016) Costos y consecuencias financieras del cambio en el perfil epidemiológico en México. INSP–Update of probabilistic models, January 2016). Exchange rate: January 2016, 1 US$ = 13.35 Mexican $. 95% CIs. Box–Pierce statistical test ($p < 0.05$). IMSS Mexican Institute for Social Security, ISSSTE Institute for Social Security and Services for State Workers, na not available, PHI private health insurance, SSA Ministry of Health

The differences between costs of case management and total costs attributable to the diabetes in Mexico, observed among the different institutions of interest, are explained due to the significant differences in the specific populations that demand their services, in the cost of inputs, and in the way to combine these inputs at the time of producing the demanded service; but also the quality of the heath care whereupon each institution offers the services is an intervening and determining variable which relates to the actual cost of diabetes care for each of the main institutions of health care in Mexico. In relation to the effects of the observed epidemiological changes for the health demand of hospitalized and ambulatory services for period 2014–2016, it is expected a tendency toward an increase in the costs, although the increase is more relevant for the insured population in comparison with the uninsured population.

In the case of the insured population (IMSS and ISSSTE), they take the major amounts of financial resources. This increase responds not only due to the increase in the health demand from the changes in the epidemiological profile, but in addition to this factor, it is important to also consider the increase in the percentage rate of the projected inflationary index for period 2014–2016. It is also important to stand out that in the case of the uninsured population (SSA), it not only represents the smallest financial requirement, but also tendencies of the required financial resources are much more moderate than in the case of the insured population. From a quality of medical care perspective, social security institutions like IMSS used to provide access to their users to costly interventions, especially complications of acute diseases like those analyzed in this chapter.

When comparing the results of the direct costs for the different health-care models according to the type of institution, it is the IMSS health-care model the one that will pay the greatest cost, followed by SSA and finally ISSSTE with the smallest direct cost. The same type of tendency was observed for the case of the direct costs of the ambulatory health-care model. This pattern can be influenced by the amount of demand of medical care in each institution and by the type of utilized resources. For the uninsured, the current public insurance policy has not included yet in the medical interventions catalogue medical attention to acute kidney failure, for instance. If interventions like this were included, the costs tendency for the SSA could be modified.

With respect to the indirect costs by type of disease, it is important to stand out that the obtained cost is the minimum amount that would appear in each type of institution in agreement with the projected demand for the year 2015 as point of cutoff. On the average of the costs to the pocket of the users, it is noteworthy the high relative weight of the origin of the expenses for diabetes from the family income and its implications in the matter of equity and access to health care in Mexico. Indeed, from each 100 US$ that are spent in diabetes in Mexico, approximately 55 US$ come from the patients' household income. This situation represents a social burden of very high impact that evidently will have a considerable effect in the measurement of the catastrophic health expenditures in the country, more importantly because it is a very expensive and of a high-priority disease that has become a public health problem in Mexico.

In relation to health-care coverage in Mexico, this is distributed more or less in the following form: 48% of the population is taken care by social security institutions; 42% of the population is taken care by institutions that serve the uninsured; and 10% of the population utilizes private care institutions. According to our results, this means that, with respect to the direct costs, out of each 100 pesos that are spent in diabetes in Mexico, 52 are spent in 10% of the population,

33 in 48% (insured) of the population, and 15 pesos in the 42% rest of the population (uninsured). With these data it is evident that there's an equity problem and poor health-care access for the poorest population in Mexico.

Undoubtedly, it is quite evident that the problem of diabetes in Mexico not only represents a high economic and epidemiological impact. Public health-care organizations should improve their medical processes and resource allocation schemes in order to become more efficient according to their care demand and population characteristics. Under this perspective, medical services for diabetes in the social security should analyze costs reductions for high-cost interventions, while medical services for the uninsured should implement ambulatory and preventive care. For these organizations, quality improvement of medical care will be an important support to achieve efficiency and effectiveness. The economic evaluation of diabetes impacts rises in a pertinent way in terms of economic resource flow and allocation analysis. This approach could be helpful to reduce inequity and health-care accessibility for the patients with diabetes and to protect their family assets in case of economic need derived of out-of-pocket health expenditure.

With respect to the indirect costs, although they do not constitute a direct impact on the heath budget, in terms of cost and social impact, they do represent a high burden that society in general will have to assume, mainly in terms of lost productivity by premature death and handicap whether it is temporary or permanent.

The relevance to incorporate economic, epidemiological and quality of medical care aspects to the clinical perspective constitutes an integral proposal for the analysis and evaluation of the performance of the health system in the context of health system reforms. Indeed, the results of health systems research with an approach that combines economic, clinical, and epidemiological perspectives become relevant for identifying greater financial consequences in the production of health-care services for future health-care demands of chronic-degenerative diseases, particularly for the case of the diabetes mellitus.

The observed and expected changes in the epidemiological profile of diabetes, both in the public sector and in the pocket of health-care users, will lead to a financial competition in the use of resources. In such a way, the financial resource allocation for the demand or production of health services directed to diabetes will be affected by the production or demand of services for infectious diseases and other chronic diseases like hypertension. In this sense, the internal competition in the use and allocation of the economic resources requires data to estimate the approximated financial requirements to produce the services that will be demanded in short and medium terms. Therefore, the production and financing of health services for diabetes will require the incorporation of clinical, economic, and epidemiological indicators, integrated under diverse efficiency criteria.

If the risk factors and the different health-care models for ambulatory and hospitalized care remain as they are at the moment in the three institutions of analysis, the financial consequences of diabetes would be of greater impact for the IMSS, following in order of relevance the SSA and finally the ISSSTE. On the other hand, the financial requirements for the treatment of diabetes, both in the health-care demand of ambulatory and hospitalized services, would represent approximately 9% of the total budget assigned for the uninsured population and approximately the 16.5% of the assigned total budget for the insured population.

The generated analysis constitutes a tool for defining in which type of health interventions and levels of medical care to invest within the context of transformations, adjustments, or reforms of the health sector, as it is suggested in several studies. On the other hand, the estimated financial requirements constitute a base of fundamental information for strategic planning. Indeed, given the financial consequences of the expected epidemiological change, not only the need to invest greater financial resources is fundamental and justified for activities of health promotion and prevention, so that the damage to health can be diminished and controlled, avoiding the economic burden for the health systems. In summary, the economic gain in productivity and efficiency will be able to happen at the same time that the unitary costs by production functions are known for the different stages of health care. In this way it is possible to establish both the patterns of equipment needs and the patterns of productivity and efficiency of the used resources, justifying them in relation to the quality of medical care that they will generate.

With regard to equity, it is possible to affirm that every time resources are wasted, patients' health care is compromised, and a lack of quality has been observed. In this sense, the integral planning of the costs, as an indicator of efficiency, is intimately related with the principle of equity in access to health care. The relative weight of the different inputs required in the process of care by disease allows the selection of critical inputs in health-care services, in such a way that this set of inputs must be covered in the financial resource allocation for the problem of diabetes. In addition to this type of inputs, there should be implemented preventive and quality of medical care measurements so that the conditions for a better use of the budget occur. For example, knowing that some of the critical inputs are in the expenses of hotel or hospital daybed, human resources, drugs, and solutions, the preventive and control measurements must be directed to avoid that the patients with diabetes become ill so that they require hospitalized care.

It is necessary to indicate that for greater trustworthiness, validity, and relevance of these results, it is recommended to implement systems of monitoring costs that allow to update

annually or biennially the average cost of case management of diabetes to adjust in agreement with inflationary changes and changes in the costs of the inputs and more importantly changes in the tendencies of the health services demand for diabetes. Certainly to evaluate the changes in the health services demand from the expected epidemiological transition, it is also recommended that the probabilistic models are updated annually with the observed data. In this way, we will see a greater impact in the decision-making in the matter of efficient allocation and use of resources destined to the health sector. On the other hand, as regards the relative weight of diabetes costs, our direct versus indirect costs results are within similar cost ranges for other countries that have developed the economic burden of diabetes analysis [11, 20–23].

The evidence presented in this chapter constitutes a relevant input to decision-makers in order to define in which type of health interventions and levels of medical care to invest within the context of adjustments or reforms of the health sector. The estimated financial requirements constitute a base of fundamental information for strategic planning. Indeed, given the financial consequences of the epidemiological changes, not only the need to invest greater financial resources is fundamental; it also justify more activities and programs for health promotion and prevention.

In summary, the economic gain in productivity and efficiency will be able to happen at the same time that the unitary costs by production functions are known for the different stages of health care. In this way it is possible to establish both the patterns of equipment needs as well as the patterns of productivity and efficiency of the used resources, justifying them in relation to the quality of medical care that they will generate.

With regards to equity, it is possible to say that every time resources are wasted, patients' health care is compromised, and a lack of quality has been observed. In this sense, the integral planning of the costs and quality, as an indicator of efficiency, is intimately related with the equity in access to health care.

The relative weight of the different inputs required in the process of health care by disease allows the selection of critical inputs in health-care services, in such a way that this set of inputs must be covered in the financial resource allocation for disease. In addition to these critical inputs, there should be implemented preventive and quality of medical care measurements to generate the conditions for a better use of resources. For example, knowing that some of the critical inputs are in the expenses of hospital daybed, human resources, drugs, and solutions, the preventive and control measurements must be addressed to avoid that the patients with diabetes become with complications that require hospitalized care and more expensive services.

Finally, it is necessary to indicate that for greater trustworthiness, validity, and relevance of these results, it is recommended to implement systems of monitoring costs that allow to update annually or biennially the average cost of case management of diabetes to adjust in agreement with inflationary changes and changes in the costs of the inputs and, more importantly, in concordance with changes in the trends of the health services demand for diabetes. Certainly, to evaluate the changes in the health services demand from the epidemiological transition, it is also recommended that the probabilistic models are updated annually with the observed cases by institution. In this way, we will see a greater impact in the decision-making in the matter of efficient allocation and use of resources addressed to chronic diseases.

Conclusions

With regard to the implications and to the impact for the health system and to patients, we conclude and suggest the following:

1. The economic burden and financial consequences for diabetes health care constitute the fundamental basis of the information for strategic planning. Indeed, given the financial consequences of the expected epidemiological changes, not only is it essential to invest greater financial resources, but it also justifies the implementation of health prevention strategies.
2. The evidence on changes in costs and in the demand for health care in diabetes patients can be used as a reference for the allocation of resources directed toward diabetes by different types of public institution. With a knowledge of likely financial requirements, each institution could then target the necessary resources for promotion, prevention, healing, and rehabilitation effectively and efficiently.
3. A consequence of the implementation of cost-monitoring systems is the design and application of strategies for cost containment for weight-by-cost items. For example, knowing that the cost of medicines is high, it will be necessary for each institution to review its agreements with the pharmaceutical industry on the consolidated buying of medicines for diabetes.
4. As regards the equity and diabetes care, development of economic indicators would enable the design of patterns of resource allocation based on efficiency criteria with regard to clinical, epidemiological, economic, and administrative aspects. Each institution could develop models for the distribution of resources in accordance with the changes in costs and epidemiological factors expected in future years.
5. As a "Citizen Observatory of Diabetes," social organizations could suggest and develop follow-up programs for the costs of diabetes in different public and private health

institutions. The Observatory should function as a checking system that would monitor how much is being spent on managing diabetes and what the money is being spent on.
6. Knowledge of the relative weight of the management of diabetes based on the annual family income, as well as precise knowledge of the cost of complications to the users, should be made available through a bulletin sent to diabetic patients and their relatives and to the community as a whole. Knowledge of the high costs of diabetes per family could lead to a greater self-awareness, as well as to effort in avoiding complications caused by diabetes.
7. To avoid further impoverishment by health expenditures attributable to diabetes, a list of recommendations is needed to promote greater self-care, control of risk factors, and the benefits of carrying out these measures, and more importantly to avoid falling into a catastrophic cost situation because of diabetes (to avoid an impact >30% of the family income).

In the context of health system reforms and particularly as regards the universal coverage strategy, our results allow us to put a greater emphasis on the need to allocate more resources to health promotion and prevention, with important changes in the social aspects of diabetes as a high-priority public health problem. The treatment of diabetes should be approached from a transdisciplinary perspective: sociological (social determinants and governance indicators), clinical, economic, epidemiological, and organizational. In other words, an integrated approach to the problem of diabetes requires the development of indicators of clinical and economic efficiency, expected epidemiological changes, and social determinants associated with diabetes, as well as identifies the actors, roles, and rules for greater equity and equality of opportunity in solving the problem of diabetes. From this perspective is that it could advance to ensure effective universal coverage where patients and families would not have to pay so much for dealing with the problem of diabetes.

Concluding Remarks

- Comparing the economic impact in 2013 versus 2015 ($p < 0.05$), there is a 26% increase in financial requirements. The total amount for diabetes in 2015 (US dollars) was $ 8,974,662,570. It includes $ 3,981,426,810 in direct costs and $ 4993,235,752 in indirect costs.
- The total direct costs expected are $ 473,135,561 for the Ministry of Health (SSA), serving to uninsured population, $ 1318,506,546 for insured population (Mexican Institute for Social Security (IMSS) and Institute for Social Security and Services for State Workers (ISSSTE)), $ 2070,341,961 to users, and $ 119,442,750 to private health insurance (PHI).
- If the risk factors and the different health-care models remain as they are currently in the institutions analyzed, the financial consequences would be of major impact for the pockets of the users, following in order of importance, IMSS, SSA, and finally ISSSTE. We suggest rethinking the process of planning, organization and allocation of resources, in terms of demand for hospital and outpatients services for patients with diabetes.
  - The diabetes in Mexico in 2015 was on average 16% of total health expenditure.
  - The analysis of different findings shows that catastrophic expenditures attributable to diabetes have a greater impact in the pockets of patients and their families in relation to the expenditure for health systems. Of every 100 US$ spent on diabetes in Mexico, 55 are from users pocket and 47 from health institutions.
  - Comparing trends in 2014 vs 2016, we show evidence that there is an increase of 9–13% on number of new cases and an increase of 26% on the economic burden.
  - The societal diabetes-attributable costs of diabetes in Mexico 2015 were estimated to be 8.9 billion US$, corresponding to 721 US$ per patient year.
  - Nearly 35% of diabetes-attributable costs were to the patients with major complications.
  - By 2015, the amount of indirect costs of disability and premature death (4.9 billion) than the direct costs of care (3.9 billion).
  - Urgent call for a strategic alliance between government, health care, businessmen, civil society, and patients with diabetes.

Multiple-Choice Questions (Note That Some Questions May Have More Than One Answer)

1. What consequences can the late diagnosis of diabetes have?
   (a) Increases treatment costs
   (b) It improves the prognosis of the disease
   (c) It reduces the productive years of the person with diabetes
   (d) All of the above
   (e) Options 1 and 3

2. In what area is the largest out-of-pocket expense of patients with diabetes and their families in Mexico?
   (a) In drugs
   (b) In treatment of complications
   (c) In consultations and diagnosis
   (d) In hospitalization
   (e) By transport
3. Why is it important to invest in health promotion prevention of diabetes and its complications?
   (a) Because the damage to health is reduced and controlled
   (b) Because it avoids excessive economic burdens for health systems
   (c) To avoid the suffering of diabetes and its complications, for patients and families
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
4. For the integral approach to diabetes, which of the following perspectives should work together (can mark more than one)?
   (a) Sociological
   (b) Economic
   (c) Epidemiological
   (d) Organizational
   (e) Clinical
5. Which of the following actors are considered key to lower costs and the prevalence of diabetes and its complications?
   (a) The health system in its role of rectory
   (b) Organized civil society
   (c) Health-related industry (pharmaceuticals, equipment and technology)
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
6. Which are the major tendencies in resources expenditure for diabetes in the Mexican case?
   (a) Resources expenditure tends to be the same for public and private medical care providers.
   (b) Costs of medical care tend to be higher for insured populations, with a considerable burden of out-of-pocket expenditure for patients.
   (c) Costs of medical care tend to be higher for insured populations, without out-of-pocket expenditure for patients.
   (d) Costs for medical care remain constant in time for all providers.
   (e) Nevertheless costs for medical care of diabetes tend to be higher; there's no need to be concerned about.
7. Why is it urgently necessary to incorporate economic evidence to improve health systems' capacities in response to the described diabetes challenges?
   (a) Economics and management should not be related, because of theoretical and practical reasons.
   (b) Economic evidence is hard to translate for managerial purposes.
   (c) The medical care for diabetes is complex and hazardous; it is difficult to establish adequate resources planning.
   (d) Economic evidence is helpful for reducing uncertainty in the planning and decision-making processes.
   (e) Variations in direct and indirect costs are not relevant for an adequate planning
8. What reasons could explain that spending resources for diabetes care used to be higher in insured populations for the Mexican case?
   (a) Social security health providers have developed an economic platform that creates strong commitment of health-care provision.
   (b) The health financing has three different sources; availability of resources tends to be higher for these providers.
   (c) Infrastructure and human resources for social security tend to be wider and more aligned to health needs.
   (d) All previous.
   (e) None.
9. What is the rate of increase in the financial trends of the epidemiological changes for the period under study?
   (a) 9–13%
   (b) 10–12%
   (c) 13–16%
   (d) 14–17%
   (e) 8–13%
10. What is the rate of increase in epidemiological trends for the period under study?
    (a) 23%
    (b) 20%
    (c) 24%
    (d) 26%
    (e) 28%

Correct Answers

1. (e) Options 1 and 3
2. (a) In drugs
3. (d) All of the above
4. (a–e)
5. (d) All of the above
6. (c) Costs of medical care tend to be higher for insured populations, without out-of-pocket expenditure for patients.
7. (d) Economic evidence is helpful for reducing uncertainty in the planning and decision-making processes.
8. (e) None.
9. (a) 9–13%
10. (d) 26%

Appendix 1. Model Format to Determine Production Costs by Diabetes Case Management

Institution---------- Production function----------

Type of input	Measure unit	Unit cost	Quantity by case management	Average cost	Equation of depreciation	Total cost
Human resources						
Equipment and furniture						
Drugs						
Diagnostic studies, etc. Infrastructure Maintenance services General services Total cost						

References

1. Arredondo A, Orozco E. Libro Gerencia y Economía en Salud. Indicadores epidemiológicos y económicos: Aportes de la economía de la salud. Centro Interamericano de Estudios en Seguridad Social. Mexico, DF. ISBN: 968-6748-39-3; 2014. p. 91–112.
2. Pinzón Flórez CE, Chapman E, Panisset U, Arredondo A, Fitzgerald J, Reveiz L. Disponibilidad de indicadores para el seguimiento del alcance de la "Salud Universal" en América Latina y el Caribe. Rev Panam Salud Pública. 2016;39(6):330–40.
3. Arredondo A, Barceló A. The economic burden of out-of-pocket medical expenditures for patients seeking diabetes care in Mexico. Diabetologia. 2007;50:435–6.
4. Instituto Nacional de Salud Pública. Métodos de estimación de demanda esperada de enfermedades crónico-degenerativas. Informe Técnico de Memoria Metodológica. Cuernavaca, México. Febrero del 2017. p. 63–78.
5. Arredondo A, Zuñiga A. Economic burden of diabetes in middle-income countries: the Mexican case. Diabetes Care. 2004;29:104–9.
6. Secretaría de Salud, Información básica sobre recursos y servicios del Sistema Nacional de Salud. Informe Técnico. 2016. p. 68–76.
7. Panamerican Health Organization, Health Analysis and Information Systems, Regional Mortality Database. 2016. p. 23–37.
8. Caro J, Ward A, O'Brien J. Lifetime Costs of Complications Resulting From Type 2 Diabetes in the U.S. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:476–81.
9. Brown JB, Pedula KL, Bakst AW. The progressive cost of complications in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Arch Intern Med. 1999;159:1873–80.
10. International Diabetes Federation. Direct cost to the health care sector. Brussels: Diabetes Health Economics, International Diabetes Federation; 2015. p. 13–5.
11. Dawson KG, Gomes D, Gerstein H, Blanchard JF, Kahler KH. The economic cost of diabetes in Canada. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:1303–7.
12. Barcelo A, Daroca MC, Ribera R, Duarte E, Zapata A, Vohra M. Diabetes in Bolivia. Rev Panam Salud Publica. 2001;10:318–23.
13. International Diabetes Federation. Direct cost to the health care sector. Brussels: Diabetes Health Economics, International Diabetes Federation; 2015. p. 29–35.
14. Wild S, Roglic G, Green A, Sicree R, King H. Global prevalence of diabetes. Estimates for the year 2000 and projections for 2030. Diabetes Care. 2014;27:1047–53.
15. Herman WH, Eastman RC. The effects of treatment on the direct cost of diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1998;21(Suppl 3):19–24.
16. Arredondo A. Out-of-pocket costs to users: medicine options for hypertension. Am J Hypertension. 2008;21:443.
17. Murray A. Chap. 2: Statistical modelling and statistical inference: measurement error in the explanatory variables. Box-Jenkins technique. In: Statistical modelling in GLIM. 3rd ed. New York: Oxford Science Publications, Ox. Uni. Press; 2005. p. 112–32.
18. Barceló A, Aedo C, Rajpathak S, Robles S. The cost of diabetes in Latin America and the Caribbean. Bull World Health Organ. 2003;81:19–27.
19. Banco de México, editor. Indice Nacional de Precios por Servicios Médicos en México. Cuadernos Mensuales, Base 1998=100. La Actividad Económica en México. 1983–2012. Gerencia de Investigación Económica. México, DF: Banco de México Ed; 2016. p. 46–68.
20. Arredondo A. Changing paradigms and challenges: evidence from epidemiological and economic burden of diabetes in Latin America. Diabet Med. 2017;34(7):1009–10.
21. American Diabetes Association. Economic costs of diabetes in the US in 2002. Diabetes Care. 2003;26:917–32.
22. Zhang P, et al. Global healthcare expenditure on diabetes for 2010 and 2030. Diabetes Res. 2010;87:293–301.
23. Bommer C, et al. The global economic burden of diabetes in adults aged 20–79 years: a cost-of-illness study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017;5(6):423–30.

The Ecological Approach to Self-Management in Diabetes

4

Edwin B. Fisher, Paul Bloch, and William Sherlaw

Interaction and Multi- and Interdeterminacy at All Levels

Whether our lives are directed by events around us or events within us, "not in our stars, but in ourselves,"[1] is of concern in ethics, aesthetics, law, religion (the Old Testament of laws and the New Testament of "faith as a mustard seed"[2] within us), and, of course, behavioral science, biology, and health. The present paper emphasizes the importance of contexts – ecological, social, organizational, community, policy – in health and health behavior; describes peer or social, community, and policy approaches to addressing contexts; and considers all of these with reference to the challenges of diabetes prevention and management.

Epidemiology of Social and Ecological Determinants of Health

Contexts play a large role in health disparities. Examples abound. Since the middle of the twentieth century in many high-income countries, smoking has evolved from a privilege of the well-to-do to a problem among those who are poorly educated, poorly paid, and/or burdened by a variety of personal and psychological problems such as depression, schizophrenia, or divorce [1]. In the United States, African Americans, Latinos/Latinas, and American Indians are about twice as likely to have diabetes as the rest of the population. Internationally, infectious diseases, especially HIV/AIDS, are much more prevalent in poor nations and, within all nations, among poor people. Diabetes along with other noncommunicable diseases are also socially stratified. Socioeconomic factors along with the production, marketing, and drawing profit from the sale of food all contribute to the sharply increasing levels of obesity both within the United States and globally [2]. At the same time, health problems can have enormous impacts on the social and economic environment as shown by the impact of HIV/AIDS in many countries in Africa.

The social determinants of health – "the circumstances in which people are born, grow up, live, work and age" (WHO 2008, 2010a) – have received great attention in recent decades. Differences in health may be revealed and characterized through statistical analysis linking health and illness and disease and death to latent variables of social inequity such as income, education, and socioeconomic status. Typically a social gradient emerges. Increases in income, education, or socioeconomic status are associated with improved health status and decreases in mortality and morbidity across a range of diseases. Reduction in income, education, and socioeconomic status is associated with worse health and increases in mortality and morbidity across a range of diseases. Causality may occur in both directions, however, such that poor health may also lead to lower socioeconomic status, income, or education, so-called health selection. Nevertheless the overriding tendency and bulk of evidence tend to show that social position determines population health status, and for this reason we may speak of social determinants of health and health inequities.

Cross-national analyses support the view that disparities in health reflect variability in socioeconomic characteristics of countries [3]. Michael Marmot's analysis of this global variability in health extends, however, beyond socioeconomic contexts per se. For example, the populations of the United States, Greece, Costa Rica, and Cuba have life expectancies ranging from 76.5 years (Cuba) to 78.1 years

[1] Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar,* Act 1, Scene 2

[2] Luke, Chap. 17, verse 6

E. B. Fisher (✉)
Department of Health Behavior, Gillings School of Global Public Health, University of North Carolina-Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC, USA
e-mail: edfisher@unc.edu

P. Bloch
Health Promotion Research, Steno Diabetes Center, Copenhagen, Gentofte, Denmark

W. Sherlaw
Department of Human and Social Sciences, Ecole des Hautes Études en Santé Publique (EHESP), Paris, France

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_4

(Greece). However, their 2016 GNPs in US dollars range much more widely, from $7815 per person (Cuba) and $11,825 (Costa Rica) to $57,808 (United States) [4]. Marmot interprets such data as indicating that, along with income poverty and material conditions, social determinants must also play roles in the development of health risks and the paths of infectious disease transmission. Key social determinants include stress, early life circumstances, social exclusion, unemployment, poor education, lack of social support, and various addictions [5]. If obesity and other risks such as smoking and hypercholesterolemia and hypertension are the causes of noncommunicable diseases, then social determinants are among the "causes of the causes" [5], attention to which is likely to reduce population disease burden.

Articulating a Broad View of Experience and Environment: Ecological Perspectives

Several different models have been put forward to frame how social determinants in constant interaction are linked to health status and how they produce a social gradient of health. Certain approaches underline the importance of proximal factors (lifestyles and behaviors), while others place greater emphasis on distal fundamental or structural determinants such as socioeconomic conditions, "the causes of the causes" of health and disease [6]. Whitehead and Dahlgren, for instance, famously represent "the main determinants of health as a set of concentric arcs around the individual" [7]. Health is represented as "the outcome of a web of social influences" [8].

In ecological approaches [9–11], the behavior of the individual is viewed as guided by layers of influences including the family, proximal social influences such as social networks or neighborhoods, organizational influences such as worksite or community systems or healthcare systems, and larger social influences such as government, policy, or large economic structures.

Different models may specify different layers of influence and different components of each, but they share two important emphases: (1) that the behavior of the individual reflects the influence of all the layers and (2) that the layers interact in their influence so that, e.g., communities may influence families but families may also influence communities [12].

Habitually there has been a tendency to think of social determinants of health acting through different levels in a cascade, the distal impinging on intermediate factors and finally on individuals through proximal factors. But as Krieger (2008) has argued, it is important to understand that interventions at nonadjacent levels may have direct impacts. A new national law restricting or granting rights or cutting or attributing welfare taken at the macro-governmental level may have immediate implications for individuals subject to it. Furthermore different factors may operate at different levels simultaneously in consort. This is especially evident in the case of the accumulation of disadvantages within vulnerable or marginal groups and individuals. The same factors may differ in their impact at different moments in the life course, and unexpected effects may emerge. Such impacts on health and well-being do not occur in a vacuum but are mediated through the wielding of political and economic power. Discussing Pierre Bourdieu's rich but complex sociology, Ghassan Hage speaks of an "political economy of being" [13]. We may consider that different groups and individuals through social, economic, and cultural capital may have the possibility to deploy their social being to a lesser or greater extent. The real meaning of accessibility for disabled people lies here. When services and resources in the community are less easily accessible, it will be difficult for disabled people and indeed other marginal groups to fully deploy their social being, that is, to be able to exert choices which they have reason to value. Such capabilities [14] are dependent on political and economic power which both enables and obstructs choices of groups and individuals.

Relationships Among Influences: The Example of Genetic Expression and the Environment

Gene-environment interactions illustrate well how interactions among levels of ecological models are fundamental to health and well-being. Many think of genes as causes that obviate other influences on behavior. Old controversies as to whether one or another disease, e.g., schizophrenia, is *either* genetic *or* learned presumed that the one trumps the other. The reality is that genetic, other biological, behavioral, and environmental variables interact in complex ways to lead to behaviors and health states [15].

The importance of environment to whether or not a gene will have any effect is illustrated in the work of Michael Meaney and his colleagues with rat pups and their dams. It turns out that the frequency with which rat dams lick their pups and other maternal behaviors influence expression of genes related to stress response in adults. "Epimutations" (specific changes in methylation of cytosines on genes) mediate the relationship between rearing and adult stress response [16]. A large number of studies of Meaney and his colleagues and other groups show that this epigenetic structuring of gene expression is the result of a series of intracellular processes that can be set in motion by external contextual influences such as maternal nurturance [17]. The expression of a cell's genes is thereby dependent on the environment within the cell, an interdependence between gene and the intracellular environment that sets a model for gene X environment interactions at the levels of whole animals and populations.

The role of central nervous system serotonin in cardiovascular disease illustrates well the complexities surrounding gene X environment interaction. As contributed to and summarized by Williams and his colleagues [18–20], there is considerable evidence that long and short alleles of the serotonin transporter gene promoter polymorphism appear to affect CNS serotonin activity in ways that impact CVD risk. But this is not a simple relationship in which, for example, one or the other allele lowers serotonin and raises CVD risk. Among rhesus monkeys reared by their parents, for example, there is no difference between those with long and short alleles in CNS serotonin levels. However, among those reared among peers, the short allele is associated with reduced CNS serotonin and greater risk [21].

Socioeconomic and social factors surely may influence the pathways from the serotonin transporter gene to CVD risk. For example, overstressed parents or neighborhood crime may be analogous in humans to the levels of a rat dam's nurturance or to the peer vs parental rearing that moderates gene expression in monkeys. There are also several broad contextual factors that influence the pathway from genotype to CVD risk. The prevalence of the long allele genotypes varies by country of origin, from less than 30% in China and Japan to over 70% among populations originating in Africa [22].

But what is most interesting and most illustrative of the complexities of gene X environment interaction are perplexing inconsistencies regarding the serotonin transporter gene. It turns out that the same genotype can have both advantageous and disadvantageous effects. In some studies, the long alleles are the "bad actors" [18, 23]; those with one or two long alleles have significantly greater blood pressure responses to stress and greater CVD risk. However, in a longitudinal study of depression among young adults, the number of *short* alleles (either one or two) was related to greater likelihoods of depression and suicidality [24].

If we think of genes as conferring a simple advantage or vulnerability to some disease or condition, it is confusing that a particular genotype is associated with benefit in some studies and vulnerability in others. Williams and his colleagues have suggested another way of framing these influences, as conferring a greater or lesser *sensitivity* to environmental influences [25]. Thus, in a study of depression among young adults, those with two short alleles of the serotonin transporter gene reported greater depression than those with other genotypes *if* they had been exposed to early adversity in childhood or recent negative life events. Among those exposed to positive early environment or recent events, on the other hand, those with two short alleles reported least depression [26]. It seems that the two short alleles confer not advantage or disadvantage, per se, but greater responsiveness to the environment, for good or ill.

Others have noted a similar pattern of greater sensitivity to environment. In one study, observers' measures of poor home and neighborhood quality during adolescence predicted lower self-esteem in young adulthood among those with short alleles. In contrast, there were no effects of home and neighborhood quality among those with two long alleles [27]. In a study of those exposed to a series of hurricanes in Florida in 2004, county-level indices of joblessness and crime moderated the effects of the transporter gene in a remarkable interaction. In counties with high crime/high unemployment, the short allele was associated with higher levels of post-traumatic stress disorder, but in counties with low crime/low unemployment, the short allele was associated with lower risk of post-traumatic stress [28]. Putting these findings together, it seems that short alleles confer greater sensitivity to environmental influences, either positive or negative. That is, sensitivity to environment may be, itself, influenced by genetic variation. Thus, genotype is far from destiny, independent of context. Rather, sensitivity to context is itself embedded in some genotypes – no doubt further influenced by other contexts in the external, phenotypic, and intracellular environments.

What Meaney and Williams and their colleagues point out at the level of the cell is parallel to what others have called "reciprocal determinism" [29] in the relationships between human behavior and its environmental surround. Just as the cell phenotype acts as an environment that influences the expression of the cell's genetic material and the further emergence of the cell's phenotype, so our environment governs our actions which, in turn, influence the environment that will govern our next actions. Continuing up the ladder of complexity, one can see the same kind of reciprocity in the influence of:

- The group on the individual and the individual on the group
- The organization on the division and the division on the organization
- Policies on organizations and organizations on policies

This pattern of reciprocal influence of surround on agent and of agent on surround appears an important dynamic across living systems. It poses an important counterpoint to more primitive models such as those which get lost in debate over whether genes *or* environment is important, models that seek a single cause and in which a single thing can be only a cause or an effect but not both.

The Illusion of the Fundamental It is worth noting that we can see either party to such a reciprocal relationship as fundamental. We might say the work unit is the fundamental determinant of employee performance as moderated by the organization, or we might say that organization is the funda-

mental determinant, as moderated by the work unit. Both may be equally true. Both illustrate the illusion of "fundamental" amidst the reality of multiple, multi-level, interacting determinants. Diabetes provides a classic example. Pima Indians in the United States show "the highest prevalence of type 2 diabetes mellitus … of any population in the world" [30]. Yet, Pimas living in Mexico have relatively low levels of diabetes. Ample evidence links genetics to diabetes *within* the Pima population [30]. Thus, the relationships among genes, environment, and diabetes among the Pimas can be stated in either of two ways:

- Genetic factors associated with membership in the Pima population have a strong influence on prevalence of diabetes among a population exposed to the obesigenic environment of US diet and food distribution.
- The obesigenic environment of the United States has a strong influence on prevalence of diabetes among a population genetically predisposed to high rates of diabetes.

Genetics as Model for Analyzing Social and Ecological Influences

In genomics, causal relationships are inferred through cluster analysis and related statistical techniques that compare differences in probabilities of hundreds or even thousands [31] of genes among those with varied phenotypes. As an example, Fig. 4.1 shows gene arrays characterizing women with poor or good "signatures" for likelihood of subsequent metastases following incident breast cancer [32]. In such analyses, no one gene is the cause or indicator of the phenotype. Instead, the relationship between phenotype and all the genetic markers in the analysis is probabilistic, not all or none.

This approach to characterizing genetic influences is descriptive but persuasive as to the likely causal relationship between profiles and outcomes. To what extent does it provide a model for making judgments about causal influences in a multilevel approach to complex behavior, such as might be arrayed by genetic, personal, social, organizational, and geographic influences?

From the perspective of the individual, we can envision complex webs of influence including genetic and other individual characteristics as well as, outside the individual, the ecologic layering of family, neighborhood, community, worksite, government, and policy, all arrayed in a spatial analysis. These multilevel complexes could be examined as they explain, for example, likelihood of smoking and its relationship with rates of cardiovascular disease and cancer or BMI and its relationship with diabetes, obesity, and other related diseases.

Ecological Analysis and Diabetes

Consider adults with diabetes. Even if they spend 6 hours a year in a professional's office – certainly more than average – that still leaves over 8760 hours a year they are "on your own." The ecological perspective provided a basis for program planning of the Diabetes Initiative of The Robert Wood Johnson Foundation that demonstrated successful implementation of diabetes self-management programs in "real world," ethnically and economically diverse primary care, and community settings around the United States [33, 34]. To guide program development across 14 different project sites, an ecological perspective was used to identify the resources and supports for self-management that people with diabetes need to manage their disease in their daily lives.

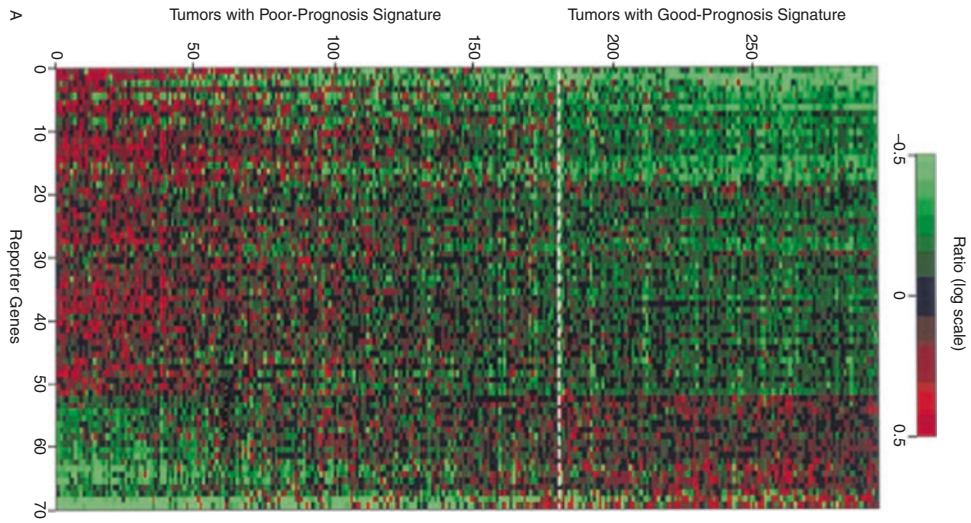


Fig. 4.1 Gene arrays among women with poor or good prognosis signatures for subsequent metastasis following incident breast cancer (from van de Vijver et al. [32])

These include (i) continuity of quality clinical care; (ii) individualized assessment; (iii) collaborative goal-setting; (iv) opportunities to learn skills both specific to diabetes (e.g., measuring blood sugar) and for addressing challenges, including negative emotions, that may interfere with management; (v) ongoing follow-up and support; and (vi) community resources such as for regular physical activity and healthy diet [33–35]. The last two, ongoing follow-up and support and community resources, especially illustrate the contributions of an ecological perspective to diabetes management.

Sustaining Health Behaviors: Follow-Up and Support

Sustaining diabetes self-management is of key importance. We all have great respect for intervention studies that include follow-up of 1, 2, or 3 years. Consider now that the average individual with type 2 diabetes will live 20, 30, or 40+ years with the disease. How do we make the extension from studying maintenance of change over a year or two to developing systematic ways of supporting individuals needing to maintain changes for decades?

Major guidelines [36] of the American Diabetes Association, the American Association of Diabetes Educators, and the American Dietetic Association distinguish between diabetes self-management education, the results of which often deteriorate by 6-month follow-up, and diabetes self-management support to "assist the individual … to implement and sustain the ongoing behaviors needed to manage their illness." This reflects reviews in diabetes self-management that showed that length of time over which intervention is maintained is the best predictor of changes in blood sugar control [37].

The importance of sustained contact is not limited to diabetes. It was recognized in early meta-analytic reviews of research on smoking, for example. In their 1988 review, Kottke and colleagues noted that "Success was … the product of personalized smoking cessation advice and assistance, repeated in different forms by several sources over the longest feasible period" [38]. More recent reviews have continued to document the importance of duration of interventions in smoking cessation [39]. In research on weight loss and weight management as well, duration of interventions emerges as a key predictor of success [40–42].

The *Diabetes Initiative* of the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation came to recognize that the most important characteristic of type 2 diabetes and self-management of it is that it is "for the rest of your life." [43] It sounds simple, but it is striking how this consideration reframes thinking about self-management programs. As an example consider the goals in working with a 45-year-old adult whose diabetes is in poor control. Is the goal getting that control improved in the next 3 months? Or is the goal establishing an approach to living with diabetes that will help the individual attain the best possible control over the next three or four decades? Does the choice of goal have implications for the approach to helping the individual? Clearly, the life-span is an important context of behavioral medicine and one we are just beginning to grasp [44].

In 1968, early leaders in the field of behavior modification, Donald Baer, Montrose Wolf, and Todd Risley, noted that maintenance of behavior changes needed to be arranged or planned, as they put it, to be "programmed rather than wished for or lamented" [45]. An April 2018 search of PubMed for papers with "diabetes" (or "diabetic") and self-management in their titles or abstracts yielded 4287 responses. A subsequent search with these terms and cognates of "sustain" or "maintenance" yielded only 504, 8.51%[3]. A parallel search just of "self-management" yielded 14,506, while that with "self-management" as well as cognates of "sustain" or "maintenance" yielded 1730, again 8.38%. Clearly our research has focused on and indeed made progress in developing approaches to initiating change in health behaviors. A major challenge now entails sustaining them.

From the perspective of "programming" maintenance of behavior, contexts take a central role. Behavior will be sustained to the extent that daily lives of individuals provide opportunities for the behavior, facilitate it, and reinforce it. It is the contexts of neighborhoods, workplaces, communities, families, and friends that must sustain the healthy behaviors that prevent or manage disease and enrich lives.

The content of follow-up may include continued assistance in refining problem-solving plans and skills, encouragement in the face of challenges, and assistance in responding to new problems that may emerge, assistance that may entail linking patients back to primary care providers or other parts of the disease management team. The Diabetes Initiative grantees identified a number of strategies for providing follow-up and support [43], including nurse follow-up by telephone [46–51] as well as through community health workers, lay health workers, *promotoras*, or health coaches [52–55].

The structure of clinical care may also contribute to ongoing support through group medical visits [56, 57]. In these, all patients in a particular category (e.g., those with diabetes, cancer survivors, or, perhaps, those with any of several chronic diseases) are scheduled for a group visit in a 2- or 3-hour block of time. Physicians and other staff carry out individual medical visits within this group visit that also includes educational and supportive discussions or other activities.

[3]Search syntax: ((diabetes [tiab] OR diabetic [tiab]) AND self-management [tiab]) AND (sustain* [tiab] OR maintain* [tiab] OR maintenance [tiab]). Date of search: 26 April, 2018

In spite of the importance of sustaining key behaviors, *ongoing* follow-up and support for *good self-management* are not recognized as an important service. For example, Medicare and, in most states, Medicaid provide 10 hours of DSME but only with physician certification and only for 1 year after diagnosis [58]. After that year, services are limited to 2 hours of DSME unless further worsening triggers eligibility for another 10 hours of DSME. Additionally, education by a dietitian, "medical nutrition therapy," is also covered but also only with a physician's order. In a variety of programs, health "coaches" are often made available for those whose HbA1c measures exceed some criterion (e.g., 8%) but not to help those who are below that criterion to maintain their good management. Our systems of providing healthcare are still slow to recognize what Baer, Wolf, and Risley noted in 1968, which maintenance of changes in behavior "… needs to be programmed rather than wished for or lamented" [45].

Community Resource Access to Healthy Food

An early study examined the distribution of supermarkets and fast-food restaurants in St. Louis in the United States [59]. Supermarkets were audited and sorted into tertiles according to their offering fresh fruits and vegetables and lean, low-fat, and fat-free meat, poultry and dairy products. Of 21 supermarkets in census tracts with greater than 75% African American population, none were in the highest tertile. In contrast, 17 of 30 (57%) of census tracts with less than 10% population below the poverty level and more than 75% white population were in the top tertile.

Do neighborhood resources make a difference? Obesity rates vary between neighborhoods within cities such as New York. A range of factors would seem to be involved including the presence of supermarkets and food stores and the area income [60]. Earlier research examined the relationships among obesity and supermarkets and convenience stores in neighborhoods [61]. After adjusting for gender, race, age, income, education, and physical activity, it turns out the presence of supermarkets in a census tract is associated with a lower prevalence of obesity (prevalence ratio = 0.83 relative to census tracts with no supermarkets), while the prevalence of convenience stores was associated with a higher prevalence of obesity (prevalence ratio = 1.16 relative to neighborhoods with no convenience stores). Those in census tracts with only convenience stores were 1.45 times as likely to be obese as those in tracts with only supermarkets.

This is an area in which the view of self-management as the individual's own responsibility can be especially damaging. The benefits of teaching about physical activity and healthy diet are compromised if people live in neighborhoods in which it is dangerous to walk alone, in which food sellers offer little healthy food, and with little public transportation to access better resources. Studies indicate that such deprivation of community resources is more common in low-income and minority neighborhoods [59].

The Ecology of Professionals

A critical feature of application of the ecological model is to recognize that it applies as much to providers as to recipients of care. For example, the network analyses of influences of social networks and ties on obesity [62], cigarette smoking [63], depression [64], and other features of health and quality of life have been extended to physicians' prescription of medications [65]. This leads to recognition of the importance of systems that facilitate good clinical care and professional services, not just the training and commitment of individual providers.

Wagner's Chronic Care Model articulates the organizational and system features that support integration of Resources and Supports for Self- Management with key components of clinical care [66]. One health system instituted a comprehensive approach to improving a range of diabetes care services, including handouts and manuals, outpatient programs, web-based programs, telephone/nurse case management, financial incentives for physicians' meeting testing guidelines, and patient incentives for annual eye exams. These were followed by improvements in a variety of outcomes [67]. But the emphasis on such integration of comprehensive clinical and self-management services is not widely shared in healthcare. Audits of health plans utilized by major companies [68] show little support for such elements of care, and 60% to 70% of patients with diabetes report not having received self-management interventions [69].

Another ecological approach to systems of care is the Patient- Centered Medical Home (PCMH). A recent review of evaluated demonstration projects showed encouraging evidence for the benefits of PCMH in diabetes care [70]. At the organizational level, the PCMH includes resources such as electronic medical records, evidence-based algorithms and care plans, and ties to referral sources and other community-based resources for patients. In many presentations of the Patient- Centered Medical Home, the interdisciplinary, collaborative team – i.e., the social or organizational level of the ecological model – is emphasized as its central characteristics.

A Social Strategy: Peer Support

The chapter now turns to three areas of application corresponding to three key levels of the ecological model, the social, community, and policy levels. At the social level, peer

support programs – as known by varied terms, e.g., "community health workers," "*promotores de salud*," "lay health advisors," and "health coaches" – are widespread and supported by a diverse literature [71–77]. There are many ways in which peer supporters can encourage health. Among these are helping individuals sustain important health behaviors.

Peer support may be an especially promising approach to providing ongoing support for disease management and sustained changes in health behaviors, such as in smoking cessation and weight management. To begin, peers have time, a critical ingredient in all of healthcare [78]. Whether volunteer or paid staff, nonprofessionals trained to assist and encourage ongoing efforts at disease management and prevention can be readily available to those they help and spend time with them to get to know them and their circumstances, thus increasing the credibility of their assistance. Additionally, peers gain the advantage of being "like me." Research shows that individuals rely on experts to understand what is important and set priorities but to peers and "peer coping models" [79] to gain confidence that they, themselves, can implement a plan of action. Adding to their credibility, peer supporters have the advantage oftentimes of having the health problem with which they are assisting. Also, they often come from similar neighborhoods and so share the perspectives and experience of those they are seeking to help.

Extending the advantages of time and similarity, peer supporters can work with individuals on the details of implementing important health behaviors. For example, it is one thing to set as an objective physical activity for 150 minutes a week. It is another thing to work out exactly what activity, how often, and where and to organize how that activity will fit in with other responsibilities and daily routines. In a report of qualitative analyses aptly titled "*Teaching How, Not What*," [55] a participant noted that her peer supporter "taught me a lot about how to control my diabetes, how to eat healthy, and how to do my exercise."

A 2014 review in the *Annual Review of Public Health* [80] identified contributions of community health workers to basic health needs (e.g., reducing childhood undernutrition), to primary care and health promotion, and to disease management. Another review [81] included peer support interventions from around the world that addressed a wide variety of prevention and health objectives entailing sustained behavior change (in contrast to relatively isolated acts such as cancer screening). It identified papers from the United States (34 papers); Canada (7); Bangladesh, England, Pakistan, and Scotland (4 each); and Australia, Brazil, Denmark, Ireland, Mozambique, New Zealand, South Africa, and Uganda (1 each). The health issues papers addressed included pre- and postnatal care (17 papers), cardiovascular disease (10), diabetes (9), asthma (6), HIV (6), mental health (8), cancer (4), substance use (3), and chronic fatigue syndrome and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (1 each). Across all 65 papers, 54 (83%) reported significant between-group or pre-post changes showing benefits of peer support. Among the 48 papers reporting RCTs, 39 (81%) reported significant between-group or pre-post changes. The review also included summary of 19 reviews of peer support interventions. Across these 19 reviews, a median of 64.5% of papers reviewed reported significant effects of peer support.

Nineteen papers reviewed provided pre- and post-intervention measures of hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c) as a measure of glucose control [82–95]. Using the individual publication as the unit of analysis, the average HbA1c declined by 0.76 points (e.g., from 8.76% to 8.00%; $p = 0.001$). In diabetes circles, a reduction of HbA1c by half a percentage point, e.g., from 8.5% to 8.0%, is generally considered clinically meaningful. The average reduction across these 19 studies of 0.76 points is thus very striking and adds considerably to the evidence for the benefits of peer support in diabetes management [81].

Peers for Progress (peersforporgress.org) is a program at the University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill (led by coauthor EF), that is dedicated to promoting peer support in health, healthcare, and prevention [96]. In addition to effectiveness, projects sponsored by Peers for Progress have shown real-world applicability. Among 14 funded in 9 countries – Argentina, Australia, Cameroon (2 projects), China, England, South Africa, Thailand, Uganda, and the United States (5 projects) – all 14 were able to be implemented, often in under-resourced settings and/or with disadvantaged populations. Based on data provided in progress reports, average baseline HbA1c in these 14 was 8.71%; clearly the projects were not "cherry picking." Across peer support interventions, projects retained 81.9% of their participants, again quite impressive especially considering the underserved settings and disadvantaged populations of many of the projects. The average decline in HbA1c was 1.18 points, well above the 0.5 point reduction generally considered clinically meaningful. Other indicators of benefits included reduced hospitalizations. Two years after the end of funding from Peers for Progress, group programs in Uganda and South Africa had continued and reported *increased* participation and attendance. Similarly, a private, not-for-profit healthcare company adopted the program as routine care for diabetes in all of its clinical sites [97].

Strategic Advantages of Peer Support

Peer support is especially beneficial for PWD with high needs and those that are hardly reached by conventional healthcare services. Two meta-analyses have shown an association between higher baseline HbA1c and larger effect size [98, 99]. Compared to usual care, peer support is an effective strategy for improving glycemic control for underserved, low-income, minority populations [100–102]. For example, a program for ethnic minority patients of safety-net clinics in

San Francisco reported significantly greater reductions in HbA1c with peer support in addition to usual care, compared to usual care alone [103]. These benefits of peer support were significantly greater for patients categorized as *low* on medication adherence and self-management at baseline [104]. Similarly, in support exchanged within dyads of US veterans with diabetes, improvements in blood glucose relative to controls were greatest among those with initially low levels of diabetes support or health literacy [87]. In an underserved Chicago population, a low-intensity, home-based community health worker intervention was more effective at decreasing HbA1c among participants that had lower levels of diabetes self-care at baseline [105]. These are important observations: intervention worked across all individuals but worked especially well relative to controls for individuals whose diabetes management was in most need of improvement (as suggested by various indicators). This pattern of peer support reaching and benefitting those whom we would expect are most difficult to reach and benefit was sustained in a systematic review of peer support programs across a variety of health conditions [106]. Therefore, peer support is a viable strategy to address one of the major challenges in population health management: benefitting high-need groups that experience disproportionate burdens and costs of care.

Peer support has also demonstrated strong potential to address diabetes and comorbidities [100, 107]. The co-occurrence of diabetes and depression is quite common; PWD are twice as likely to be depressed as those without diabetes, and symptoms of depression are present among almost one third of PWD [108]. Psychological problems, from heightened distress to serious psychopathology, compromise self-management behaviors and exacerbate disease. Among PWD, depression is associated with poor glycemic control and decreased adherence to medical treatments [107]. Peer support directly mitigates depressive symptoms by providing social and emotional support through regular, affirming contacts. Even if recipients of peer support do not change their behaviors, they still experience emotional benefits from having someone to talk to [109]. Additionally, peer support addresses diabetes and depression together by helping PWD overcome socioeconomic barriers and teaching common skills to cope with both conditions. Peer supporters can help identify safe places to exercise and ways of buying affordable food, as well as coach PWD to develop healthy coping skills when facing stressful situations and setbacks. For example, a CHW stress management intervention for US Latinos with type 2 diabetes found a dose-response relationship between attendance at stress management sessions and improvements in HbA1c and diabetes distress [110].

In some cases, psychological improvements have been observed as a by-product of peer support programs designed principally for diabetes. With support from *Peers for Progress*, the PEARL project in Hong Kong examined the impacts of peer support on diabetes-related distress [111]. The study found that peer support reduced distress and lowered hospitalization rates to normal among patients with high levels of depression, anxiety, and/or stress at baseline. In the control condition, these patients accounted for a disproportionate amount of hospital care. PEARL was designed to assist diabetes management, not to reduce emotional distress. Nevertheless, the peer support model was able to achieve substantial effects on distress and associated hospitalizations. Another example is the REACH program, a CHW diabetes lifestyle intervention for African Americans and Latinos with type 2 diabetes in Detroit [112]. Although the intervention was not intended to reduce symptoms of mental health problems, it was able to reduce diabetes-related distress by encouraging positive lifestyle changes and coping skills that could be applied to both diabetes and mental health.

A Community Strategy: Community Action

Recognition of the diverse types and levels of influence on behavior and health can leave one discouraged as to the possibility of changing such influences as the built environment, culture, or social networks. Surely interventions in such arenas are challenging. Nevertheless, promising approaches have been developed. Here, we focus on broad community campaigns to combat cardiovascular disease (CVD), smoking cessation, and diabetes prevention. These provide models for community approaches to diabetes management but ones that have been too little pursued.

North Karelia: CVD Risk Reduction in Finland

The North Karelia project [113] sets a strong example for incorporation of multiple channels and intervention approaches, from mass media to cooperation with agricultural, dairy, and food merchandising groups to improve the availability of healthy foods such as low-fat milk [113]. The program was developed through the Department of Epidemiology of the National Public Health Institute within the Finnish region of North Karelia with field offices at the level of county departments of health and local advisory boards. Community organization in North Karelia included collaboration with existing official agencies and voluntary health organizations so that "the new health service activities initiated by the Project became part of formal public health activities in the area." [113], p. 166. Mass media interventions interacted with local newspapers and community organizations and campaigns as well as including the production of health education materials. Training activities included doctors and nurses but also social workers, representatives of voluntary health organizations, and informal opinion leaders. Training was organized through county-level or other

local organizations. Training and development of treatment guidelines in the health system included reorganizing treatment for hypertension and care following myocardial infarction. Cooperation with other local organizations included not only the voluntary health agencies but also the critical food industry (e.g., including dairies and sausage factories) and grocery stores [113], pp. 166–167.

In comparison to other parts of Finland, the North Karelia campaign led to significant reductions in cardiovascular risk factors [114] and mortality [115] as well as reductions of cancer risk factors [116]. Two characteristics appear critical in the North Karelia community organization: (1) the variety of activities and channels included and (2) the attention in all areas to implementation through and in collaboration with local organizations.

Since the days of the North Karelia project, numerous population and community-based interventions on health promotion and diabetes prevention have been carried out around the world, and important learnings and recommendations for optimizing intervention and evaluation processes have been published [117].

A Danish research group (coauthor PB and colleagues) has developed a conceptual framework, the supersetting approach, to integrate the breadth of community resources, including citizens and professional stakeholders, for social action and health promotion. It involves the coordinated engagement of multiple stakeholders in multiple community settings to implement multiple actions at multiple levels [118]. The supersetting approach includes five principles:

1. *Context* to ensure that everyday life challenges of citizens and professionals are respected and considered in planning activities
2. *Participation* to ensure that people are motivated to take ownership of processes of developing and implementing interventions
3. *Action competence* to ensure that people acquire skills and competences to express and act on their visions and aspirations
4. *Integration* to ensure that activities are implemented across the boundaries of specific settings
5. *Knowledge* to ensure that scientific knowledge is used to inform action and produced from action.

Moreover, the supersetting approach includes three highly participatory, structured, and research-based phases of (1) describing the context, (2) developing and implementing the intervention, and (3) conducting the evaluation. These phases have been optimized methodologically through iterative processes of co-creation with citizens, social workers, health professionals, and researchers. Although generally acknowledged that complex interventions are difficult to evaluate [119], there is now sufficient evidence from meta-analyses of intervention studies on community engagement to conclude that they may positively impact on a range of health outcomes [120].

An important extension of community approaches is their integration with life course perspectives. Type 2 diabetes provides a case in point, as conventional approaches targeting high-risk adults will not efficiently ameliorate this growing disease burden. It is therefore essential robustly to identify determinants across the entire life course and, subsequently, appropriate interventions at every stage to reduce an individual's disease risk [121]. A life course approach has the potential to prevent noncommunicable diseases, from before conception through fetal life, infancy, childhood, adolescence, adulthood, and into older age. Epidemiological research in cardiovascular disease has shown health benefits resulting from the cumulative effects of health behavior over an individual's lifetime, not from a change in lifestyle [122]. On this basis it is important also to involve children and youth in decisions pertaining to the shaping of the social and built environments of their everyday lives. This was done within the framework of a large community-based intervention project in Denmark by addressing school children's perceptions and visions for a socially and physically improved school environment [123]. Guided by an everyday life perspective and applying participatory action research methods including social imagination and visual techniques, the study observed that children were very capable of articulating their thoughts, ideas, and visions for a better and healthier school environment. Identified challenges and solutions differed widely and represented a broad perspective of health including social, physical, environmental, and emotional aspects. The paper concluded that children can be visionary and creative stakeholders and important agents of change in community development efforts if methods to include them are interactive, participatory, and carefully adapted to the age of the target group.

Cigarette Smoking

Although apparently a simple behavior, cigarette smoking illustrates well the broad range of contexts emphasized in this chapter. As detailed in an integrative review in 2004 [1], influences on smoking range from the brain physiology of nicotine addiction to broad economic factors. At the individual level, addiction to nicotine and genetic factors contribute to long-term smoking [124, 125]. Psychological conditioning is also important. The average smoker of a pack a day for 20 years has inhaled over a million times, establishing diverse conditioned associations of smoking with work, relaxation, drinking coffee, and other routines and various moods like anxiety and depression [1].

Research from Scotland and France [126] shows that people at the lower end of the social gradient are more likely to smoke and smoke longer than those from higher

up on the social gradient. However it is not only social position that will determine whether one becomes a smoker and one's smoking habits. These will also depend on which neighborhood one lives in. It has been shown that the practice of smoking is favored by the proximity and density of points of sale for tobacco (Henriksen et al., 2008, McCarthy et al., 2009, Cantrell et al., 2015). These have often found to be concentrated in deprived areas. Van Lenthe and Mackenbach (2006) have also found that people from deprived communities are more likely to smoke but even more so if they live in stressful neighborhoods. Stressors included "physical quality (decay), required police attention, noise pollution from traffic, and population density in neighborhoods." Similarly, objective and perceived measure of neighborhood crime have also been correlated with smoking.

Smoking also illustrates well the reciprocal and complex relationships among influences. As lower socioeconomic status may incline people to smoking, better economic and social prospects and associated better health, increased life expectancy, and security that go with them provide incentives for quitting smoking or not taking it up in the first place [126].

Other determinants among the broad range of social and environmental influences on smoking include:

- Parents' and peers' smoking are major predictors of youth smoking [127].
- Marketing and advertising – cigarettes are one of the most heavily marketed consumer products in the United States: tobacco companies spent $12.49 billion in 2006, even with restrictions on electronic, print, and billboard ads (American Lung Association) [128]. Youth with greatest exposure to tobacco marketing are more likely to start smoking and to become frequent smokers [129].
- Influence on government regulations through contributions to candidate campaigns for office [130] and influence on media coverage of risks of smoking through advertising in major media [131], all driven by the profitability of cigarettes.

The many determinants of smoking across multiple levels of influence illustrate well the concept that influences at different ecological levels interact with each other. For example, the genetics of nicotine metabolism and the addictive nature of nicotine create strong markets for cigarettes. Profitability of selling cigarettes drives both (a) enormous advertising and marketing campaigns that promote the anxiety-reducing and mood-elevating benefits of nicotine as well as (b) political contributions to control restrictions on harmful tobacco products. The cycle continues as the success in addicting large numbers of smokers and keeping them addicted ensures the profitability of the cigarette business.

Comprehensive Intervention Programs to Reduce Tobacco Use Smoking rates among adults in the United States have declined from 42% in 1965 to 15.5% in 2016 [132]. This reduction in smoking rate has been achieved through the best example of a multi-level population-based health behavior interventions to date. Highlights at the several ecological levels include individualized smoking cessation programs, nicotine replacement therapy, and counseling by health professionals (intrapersonal level); workplace and community-based programs as well as programs tailored to reach different groups (social and cultural level); clean indoor air restrictions (physical environments), news coverage, government reports, and anti-smoking campaigns of various health agencies (population-level mass communication); and restricting access to cigarettes and raising taxes on their sale (policy level) [1]. Clearly, interactions among these levels are numerous. For example, clean indoor air policies have driven changes in the physical environment of smoking as well as workplace programs. As another example, creation of desire to quit through mass communication and social marketing has created markets for the development of improved individual cessation interventions.

There has been considerable development of organizational- and community-level interventions to promote nonsmoking. At the organizational level, reductions in smoking have been reported through programs restricting smoking at the workplace [133]. Community-based studies that emphasized community participation in program development have been successful in low-income city neighborhoods and at the county level [134, 135]. COMMIT was a large trial of community organization designed to improve access to numerous options for smoking cessation throughout the entire cities. It achieved appreciable impacts among light and moderate smokers but failed to show benefits among heavy smokers [136, 137]. Commentaries that accompanied publication of these results noted the importance of broad, public health approaches to reducing population prevalence of smoking [138] as well as ways in which intervention planning might have more broadly and effectively engaged communities, their organizations, and leaders [139].

Extending beyond the organization or community, comprehensive statewide programs have created substantial reductions in smoking. These programs embody broad campaigns of public education, including "counter-marketing" TV advertisements and billboards, increased taxes on cigarettes, support services for cessation, smoking prevention programs for youth, and multicultural approaches, all coordinated through community coalitions [140]. The scope of tobacco policy has expanded to include international initiatives such as the World Health Organization's Tobacco Free Initiative and Framework Convention on Tobacco Control (www.who.org).

Amidst the many contributors to reductions in population smoking, Livingood, Allegrante, and Green have also suggested that mass communication on the harms of cigarettes has had a role to play in this irrefutable normative "culture change of accommodation to intolerance of smoking" seen in the United States [141]. This is seen to operate through indirect effects through secondary transmission within groups of people rather than being attributed directly to the influence of mass campaigns. This reinforces the message from North Karelia that multi-level and diversity of interventions contribute to bringing about such a change in norms and indeed behavior change.

Finally, the broad ecological approach to smoking cessation is underscored by the recognition that no one type of smoking cessation intervention is reliably effective for 50% or more of those to whom it is delivered [1], and only a small proportion of smokers ever participated in a formal program. Tobacco use is a social and public health problem, not just an individual behavior. Smoking reductions *require* an ecological perspective; population-level changes reflect the aggregate of the many influences promoting nonsmoking, not a single "magic bullet."

Community Organization for Diabetes Prevention in India

The Kerala Diabetes Prevention Program (K-DPP) was a cluster RCT conducted in 60 polling areas (clusters) of Neyyattinkara sub-district in in Trivandrum district, Kerala state in India [142]. Polling areas are well-defined and identifiable locations demarcated with landmarks such as hills, roads, etc. Participants included those at risk according to age, family history, low level of physical activity, and waist circumference as included in the Indian Diabetes Risk Score. The intervention extended over a year and included group sessions held on weekends in community settings. After an introductory meeting, two half-day sessions led by local experts covered key information about prediabetes, diabetes, and ways to prevent it. Trained peer leaders were chosen in conjunction with group members. They then led meetings to discuss how to apply the information about diabetes prevention in their daily lives. These discussions were held twice in the first month and then monthly for the remainder of the 12-month intervention. Sessions lasted 60–90 minutes and included 10–23 participants with family members also encouraged to attend.

In addition to the structured sequence of educational and discussion sessions, participants were encouraged to participate in a variety of group activities to support healthy lifestyles and diabetes prevention. These included yoga and walking groups, kitchen gardens, etc. Additionally, the organization of the program at the local, community level of polling places facilitated casual contact of peer leaders with group members. Through these contacts, peer leaders provided encouragement of individuals' prevention plans, information about missed sessions, reinforcement of progress, and the opportunity to share and discuss other questions or concerns of participants.

At 24-month follow-up, incidence of diabetes was 17.1% among participants from control polling places who received an educational booklet and advice for lifestyle change and 14.9% in the intervention polling places (RR = 0.88, $p = 0.36$). The two groups differed significantly, however, in several important areas. Those from the intervention polling places achieved greater reductions on the Indian Diabetes Risk Score ($p = 0.022$). Most notably, among those with impaired glucose tolerance, the relative risk of diabetes in the program relative to control polling places was 0.66 ($p = 0.03$). It should be noted that incidence among those with impaired glucose tolerance was the primary outcome of the major efficacy studies of diabetes prevention in China [143], Finland [144], and the United States [145]. That is, the K-DPP, developed with substantial community input and implemented in rural polling places in a low-/middle-income country, replicated the results of major international efficacy trials, reduction of incidence of diabetes among those with impaired glucose tolerance.

A Policy Strategy: Health in All Policies

If you wish to markedly improve population health in an equitable way, it will be necessary to orient policy toward the non-health sector such as housing and to take into account the environment, and especially the built environment, in which people live, work, and play. Social, economic, and cultural conditions should be considered as a significant part of our environments. The bulk of evidence from social determinant research and informed practice suggests that in order to improve health and reduce health inequities, it is necessary to act on areas of life and activity lying beyond the health sector [146, 147].

The idea of Health in All Policies (HIAP) is not new. The first article of the Alma Ata declaration proclaims that "… the attainment of the highest possible level of health is a most important world-wide social goal whose realization requires the action of many other social and economic sectors in addition to the health sector." More recently, the Adelaide Statement [148] has argued strongly for Intersectoral Action for Health (IAH). This stressed how cross-sector collaboration and joined-up government were not only a key to better health and equity but may also be linked to sustainable development, citizen participation, and more efficient economies. The Adelaide Statement singled out the following non-health sector areas and issues: economy and employment, security and justice, education and early life, agriculture and food, infrastructure, planning and transport, environments and sus-

Table 4.1 Sectors in which actions can be taken to reduce key risk factors for NDCs

	Tobacco	Poor diet, nutrition	Physical inactivity	Alcohol	Unhealthy environment	Pathogens	Injuries and violence
Health	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Education	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓
Finance	✓	✓		✓	✓		
Urban planning			✓	✓	✓		✓
Agriculture	✓	✓			✓		
Industry	✓	✓		✓	✓		
Transport			✓		✓		✓

Adapted from Figure 6 in Meiro-Lorenzo et al. [149]

tainability, housing and community services, and land and culture. As can be easily appreciated, all these areas are related to social determinants of health and tackling inequities. The logical policy follow-up to such initiatives, "Health in All Policies," highlights the necessity for intersectoral initiatives including the health sector.

Table 4.1, adapted from a World Bank report [149], indicates how different sectors such as education, finance, urban planning, agriculture, industry and transport, and health itself may have a significant role to play in reducing risk factors for chronic and noncommunicable diseases.

Healthy Cities

Perhaps the best examples of health in all policies and a "beacon of hope" may be seen in the WHO Healthy Cities movement [150]. Its evolving agenda and philosophy initiated in 1986 incorporate health into urban policy and planning to create healthy sustainable and economically prosperous environments and just communities. The Working Cities movement is epitomized by the WHO European Healthy Cities Network involving some 100 flagship cities and 31 national networks across the WHO European region. [151] This comprises some 1500 cities (some 90 in France alone). Twenty networks have been accredited formally by the WHO. These represent 1137 local governments and a population of 156 million people Healthy Cities endeavor to foster health in all policies through highlighting the importance of improving leadership for health, participatory governance, intersectoral collaboration, and upstream action at the local level to improve population health and tackle health inequities [152]. Different cities and their municipal councils fix priorities and initiate projects in a wide range of environmental and health domains. In France these include projects on Radon and indoor air pollution, physical and sporting activities to tackle obesity, school transport schemes encouraging walking to school or environmentally friendly vehicles, healthy nutrition, and carrying out a Health Impact Assessment in order to inform decisions about such initiatives. Healthy Cities teaches us that such initiatives need long-term vision and planning. It may take 30 years to reverse the taken-for-granted dependency on cars. Planning may involve thinking, participation, and implementation of policy changes in successive phases to reach long-term goals [150, 153].

A study of the members of the French Healthy Cities Network investigated how health was taken into account by city authorities through different non-health sectors such as transport, green spaces, social action, youth, education, culture, sport, and housing. Although it was featured less strongly within some sectors, e.g., housing policy, health was featured prominently in connection with green space policy, urban design and transport, and active travel or mobility policy. There is now good evidence that such urban policies prevent disease and impairment, and, important for sustainability, save energy, money, and lives.

City of Well-being: A radical guide to planning [150] provides a wide range of evidence suggesting that "spatial arrangement of towns can influence active travel and recreational activity to a significant extent – and in certain situations it can influence diet" [150]. Walkable, safe environments, and in particular distance from stores and services are key factors in fostering walking and cycling. The fact that this varies substantially from country to country and city to city and neighborhood to neighborhood indicates that urban design taking into account spatial factors and distance can influence norms and reduce dependency on cars. Thus a joint Canadian and American study [154] cited by Heritage [152] suggests that people living in neighborhoods adapted to walking and in proximity to stores move four times more than those living in areas adapted to cars. However living in a walkable district or a car-friendly area may not always be a matter of individual choice.

Evidence cited from the United States, China, and India suggests that cycling rather than driving can reduce obesity, diabetes, and hypertension significantly [150]. It is estimated that increasing cycling in the Paris area to 4% of all travel will produce benefits in terms of mortality 20 times greater than the risks due to accidents or accidents caused by cyclists or the effects of air or noise pollution and stress [155].

The WHO recently championed a system for assessing the economic impact of changing urban mobility patterns. The Health Economic Assessment Tool (HEAT) which may

contribute to broader assessments of health impact allows municipalities to make estimates of the amount of money and lives saved that could be gained through switching from driving to cycling and walking. The value of a statistical life is fixed at 4 million Euros for France, but it is also possible to simply reflect on benefits in terms of number of lives saved [156]. As an example of such estimates, the French city of Nantes hopes that 12% of all journeys in 2030 will be by bike. If this is achieved, the HEAT calculation shows that 67 lives will be saved each year or 670 over 10 years. In monetary terms the estimate is made that 2,682,000,000 € will be saved over the next 10-year period if the 12% target is reached. Currently this stands at 4.5% in the Nantes metropolitan area. This in itself represents a saving of some 1,005,000,000 € and 260 lives over 10 years.

In addition to walking and cycling, urban planning may consider distances needed to walk to stores and services. Other effective policies include car sharing/pooling promoted through strategically placed carpooling parks, transport zoning with 20 km and 30 km zones coupled to the designation of cycle lanes, bike parks with credit card renting of both regular and electric bicycles (especially important in hilly cities), chaperoned walking of children to their local school by volunteer parents, signage indicating not distance but time necessary to walk from one point to another, and general interchangeability in public transport so that transfers from bike to rail to bus are cost-free. Coupled to encouraging active mobility, there are also parallel efforts made to render all public places and spaces accessible to physically disabled people using wheelchairs or parents pushing baby carriages, tactile paving guidelines and studs in foot pavement for blind people, traffic signals equipped to give oral cues, and even instructions to blind people guided by personal GPS controllers. If well-planned, cities will not just favor more walking but also chance encounters with people from the neighborhood thus fostering social support and community ties and impacting on mental health.

Behavior change is not just about education and providing information to individuals but is also about creating new physical, sociocultural, and attitudinal environments which favor healthy behaviors and habits. The Healthy Cities movement embodies this idea well and illustrates how a holistic view of health and health promotion such as in the following statement of the International Union of Health Promotion and Education's may reap great benefits if applied with intelligence:

> Health is a basic human need. It is fundamental to the successful functioning of individuals and of societies…./… The main determinants of health are people's cultural, social, economic and environmental living conditions, and the social and personal behaviours that are strongly influenced by those conditions. [157]

As much as research may guide and show the value of HiAP and related approaches, evaluation such as through Health Impact Assessment can never be a substitute for political decisions. It will never replace the necessity for politicians to take difficult decisions and have the vision and political will necessary to tackle sources of disease in our environment to develop opportunities for health and well-being especially where these would seem to run counter to short-term institutional prerogatives or market opportunities [158]. Barton and his co-workers have put forward a Settlement Health Map [150, 159] to explain and analyze the interplay of different factors impacting on health and well-being in the built environment. As Barton suggests this offers a useful tool for generating discussion and debate, thus situating different stakeholders' responsibility within the urban environment, and for shaping intersectoral and multi-stakeholder involvement in creating healthier conditions for urban living [150]. Health Impact Assessment and other evaluation approaches may provide data for consideration in such processes, but they cannot replace them.

Globalization

Globalization and the trends associated with it provide an important context for HiAP. Globalization typically describes changes in production and its organization associated with neoliberalism, the free circulation of information, capital, and goods and the primacy of financial markets over other aspects of the economy [160]. However as Scholte argues [161], it should not be conflated with liberalization as such since other economic policy agendas could be pursued which would highlight positive benefits of globalization and supra-territorial relations. These are according to Scholte "social connections that substantially transcend territorial geography": [161] a new way of configuring and handling social space. In recent years, such supraterritoriality is epitomized by the Internet and by the fact that local events may become instantly global and have global consequences. This may be seen in communication campaigns such as the response to terrorism "Je suis Charlie" or the current "Me Too" campaign in denouncing sexual violence toward women. Trans-world travel and migration and how business, financial operations, and markets are organized globally working as a network also highlight that we are living in a supraterritorial world. Territorial space can also be bridged, for example, in telemedicine or online trans-world training such as MOOCs.

Arguably, globalization is not new. There has always been movement of goods and labor, but distances are being shrunk, and travelling times across the world have grown progressively shorter. Current global connections are characterized by transplanetary flows with simultaneity and instantaneity. The premier property of successful modern commerce is its capacity to create universally transferable objects which circulate through frontiers and borders with utmost ease. This

aligns well with a neoliberal agenda which espouses the free movement of information, goods, and financial capital, together with the nonintervention of states in the economy, private and business affairs. This agenda after some resistance from non-aligned developing countries has been taken up by an overwhelming majority of countries in both the developed and developing worlds who now organize or have to organize their economies in conformity with such neoliberal principles [160]. It is associated with changes in management, work organization, and practices. It has led to the delocalization of industry, reduced wages, and wage costs for multinational companies within a globalized economy.

Geertz [162] has noted that, along with globalization, people living in different communities are also subject to an opposing movement emphasizing the uniqueness of nations, and nationalistic ideologies, and regions, local products, customs, and beliefs perhaps as a bulwark against threats to local identities. Thus people from different countries may not only find similar globalized goods, modes, and beliefs in their countries but also be united by a sense that they must respect their local traditions and ways of doing things. Again people may strive to be as connected to the contemporary as much as possible while at the same time falling back on and upholding tradition. Recent political changes may confirm this dialectic and the current move toward political isolationism and a backlash against free trade and political cooperation, e.g., Brexit in the United Kingdom or the recent emphasis in the United States on "America First." Such apparently contradictory movements (which may be harnessed politically) uphold the idea, nevertheless, that ultimately we live in both globalized and localized worlds.

Locality and local cultures should not be opposed to globality and universalism, since both are intermeshed and interact with each other to produce new forms of social organization, space, and sociocultural being. Thus it is more fruitful in line with the overall socio-ecological model of this chapter to avoid dichotomies and to conceptualize social space as not being made up of discrete entities but incorporating both the global and the local and similarly characterizing the people living in them as having plural identities influenced through both their global and local cultures. Furthermore it is also wise not to demonize globalization since it also allows the transfer of knowledge and experience quickly to enable and emancipate people.

We live in a global world on one planet, and ultimately we are all affected by planetary phenomenon such as global climatic change, migration, widening inequities, emergence of infectious disease, and noncommunicable disease epidemics. The latter, for instance, are associated with the spread of tobacco and obesity. These however are driven not by globalization as such, but rather by the neoliberal harnessing of this phenomenon for private profit.

Globalization and Health

Bearing such complexities in mind with respect to different contexts, globalization has been argued to produce both positive and negative impacts on health [163, 164]. In 2001 Feacham claimed that "Globalisation is good for your health, mostly." [165] Dollar maintained that "the higher growth that accompanies globalization in developing countries generally benefits poor people … globalization has indirect positive effects on nutrition, infant mortality and other health issues related to income" [163]. Among negative aspects cited were the spread of disease (AIDS) due to increased migration and travel as well as the impact of tobacco through free trade [163]. Huynen, Martens, and Hilderink [166] citing Fidler [167]suggest that the World Trade Organization has more influence on the governance of global health than the WHO and that it is unclear whether World Trade Organization agreements may protect health.

Globalization appears to have affected some countries, such as Asian countries, more positively than others (African, Latin American, and Eastern European countries). On one hand slow and uneven growth was associated with stagnation in health indicators, and on the other, economic crises in middle-income countries such as the former Soviet Union produced economic instability, sharp rises in unemployment, and dramatic effects on health and life expectancy. Additional negative claims have included that globalization has had deleterious impacts on health and health inequities, especially in poor developing countries and among poor households [168–170]. Of particular interest with respect to health and inequity is the observation that "high income inequity reduces the pace of growth and of poverty reduction." [164]

Income Distribution and Other Effects of Globalization

Recent work on austerity shows that recessions can impact on people's health negatively, as one would intuitively suspect, but also positively [171]. This may largely depend on whether support from social protection systems is maintained or cut. Ironically however recession in itself may have less effect than the austerity measures taken to combat it, measures that arguably are bad for health and kill massively [172].

"Population health tends to be better in societies where income is more equally distributed. Recent evidence suggests that many other social problems, including mental illness, violence, imprisonment, lack of trust, teenage births, obesity, drug abuse, and poor educational performance of schoolchildren, are also more common in more unequal societies." [173] The measure of inequity taken is how much richer the top 20 percent than the bottom 20 percent are in each country. Significantly in richer countries what counts is not absolute wealth but whether the wealth is distributed more or less equally. As Wilkinson has stressed [173], it

makes little difference how a degree of equality is achieved. Countries such as Sweden and Japan are vastly different in many respects and have different social protection and fiscal systems, but their relatively low degree of income inequity correlates well with health and may be contrasted with the situation in less equal societies. The situation with respect to inequity and health and other social indicators seen between countries is also mirrored among states in the United States. States with the highest degree of inequity also have high levels of poor social outcomes including health.

Of particular importance is the labor market. Bambra [174] reminds us that "work (paid wage labor) and worklessness (lack of paid work) are not the discreet activities of individuals, but are essential parts of the way in which the totality of society is politically, socially and economically organized." Being in work is an important condition for health, having an income and for social inclusion, but can also lead to bad health through the impact of an adverse physical or indeed psychosocial working environment. These risks follow a social gradient, lower-paid workers being more vulnerable to workplace hazards and accidents as well as having less control over their work and related stress in the workplace.

Supranational Policy

One example of the influence of European policy on national policy is the regulatory context on urban planning and environmental health of the European Union (EU). The Green Paper and the Leipzig Charter put forward an integrated sustainable urban development to overcome demographic, social, and environmental problems in European cities. Two EU Directives have been implemented to address the issues related to ambient air quality (2008/50/EC) and environmental noise (2002/49/EC). The Parma Declaration (5th Ministerial Conference on Environment and Health in 2010) [175] described the way forward in the work of environment and health in Europe. It set out concrete targets to tackle key urban environmental risk factors, paying special attention to children's health, inequities, and emerging environmental health challenges.

The influence of supranational policy agendas sets the scene for national legislation and implementation and can have both positive and negative effects on health. This can easily be seen in another important non-health field within Europe, namely, agriculture and food policy. The Common Agricultural Policy provides a strict regulatory framework and subsidies for farmers in Europe. This has important impacts on land use, the form of agriculture practiced, its impact on employment and the environment, and the type and price of food available favoring either health or disease [176]. Thus on one hand, subsidizing beef and dairy production favors high saturated fat intake, and on the other hand, the lack of support for fruit and vegetables favors comparatively high prices and lower consumption, all with obvious implications for health. Consequently recommendations have been made for public health policy and agricultural policy goals to be aligned to favor higher and more equitable consumption of fruit and vegetables and less sugar, dairy produce, and meat [176, 177].

Interactions Among Determinants and Sectors

A central point of most writing in these areas is that different environmental or contextual determinants often interact in their influences on health. Good examples include the relationships between air pollution and poverty. Irrespective of the levels of exposure, there is a correlation between being poor and the resultant harmful effects of pollution. This would seem to be related to the second mechanism of differential susceptibility. Through having been exposed to repeated insults of their environment during certain periods of their life (windows of exposure) [178], poorer populations have developed a greater susceptibility to resultant health effects. As Deguen and Zmirou conclude, in the case of ambient air quality, long-term multipolar urban planning and diversity-sensitive housing policy may be the best way to tackle environmental and social inequities and to mitigate differential health impacts [179].

Examples: Housing and Urban Life

To further the discussion of HIAP, we will now take a more detailed look at two of the most important non-health sector areas: housing and urban planning and development and how these impact on people's lives.

National and local government policy with respect to issues such as mortgages, local housing taxes (rates), and rent fixing will largely determine whether the supply of social housing is high or low. As this is written, the US federal government is considering raising rentals on low-income housing. Access to social housing (housing owned and rented out by local authorities to people with low incomes or specific needs) will for the most part be determined by residence in the community and recognized need such as being a lone woman with children. In France, a country with a tradition of strong social policies, it is estimated that more than 500,000 people do not have a home. Among those, 133,000 are actually homeless, others are living on sofas of friends, hostels, squats, etc. [180] If the number of people living in very "difficult housing" (chronic overpopulation, dangerous buildings, lack of basic amenities) is added, the number rises to 3.6 million, more than 5% of the French population. Another 5 million people are considered to have a very fragile housing

situation (lack of house maintenance, large unpaid rents, etc.), and nearly 3.5 million face fuel poverty [180].

Even if appropriate and affordable housing has been heralded as a fundamental human right, it remains one which is far from being upheld in many developing and developed countries alike. The WHO "Closing the gap in a generation" report warns that "One of the biggest challenges facing cities is access to adequate shelter for all. … This crisis (of housing) will worsen social inequities in general, and in health in particular." [181] The US Surgeon General's 2009 Call to Action asserted that "To improve the nation's overall health, we must improve the health of the nation's homes and ensure that safe, healthy, affordable, accessible and environmentally friendly homes are available to everyone." [182]

Closely related to housing, indoor air pollution can be caused by both chemical and biological sources. Interventions directed to these can be effective, however. Lead hazard control in the United States has shown to be a very effective intervention, decreasing dust lead levels by 78% over a 3-year period (Sandel et al., 2010). In France, exposure to radon is the second leading cause of lung cancer after tobacco causing up to 2900 deaths per year [183]. Radon mitigation is effective in reducing individuals' risk of lung cancer and is cost-effective compared to other healthcare and environmental interventions [184].

Examples: Urban Environmental Impacts, Planning, and Development

More than half of the human population worldwide now lives in towns and cities. This is likely to increase to 60% by the year 2030. In Europe and the United States, 75% and 80% of people, respectively, live in urban areas [185, 186]. In the developing world, this is likely to lead to megacities in Asia and other large cities in Africa and 2 billion people living in slum conditions worldwide. Thus it is important to draw lessons from the Healthy Cities movement to prepare for an increasingly urban world [187].

From a physical perspective, the urban environment has also assumed considerable importance due to its high population density, the size of buildings, and the existence of a considerable technical infrastructure coupled to diverse industries having high potential for different kinds of environmental pollution impacting on human health. These may aggregate or intensify the chemical and biological hazards associated with housing described above. Additionally, the health impact of noise is strongly related to the proximity of the population concerned and the source of noise emission. Thus an increase of 10 dB of sound intensity corresponds to an increase in prescribed sleeping pills and cardiovascular disease medications [188].

The Chicago, 1996, and French, 2003, heatwaves illustrate how the urban environment may also exacerbate risks to health. Built-up environments lacking trees, hedges, bushes, and other plants tend to conserve heat (or cold). The impact of such events on mortality and morbidity is exacerbated, vulnerable isolated members of the population being trapped in veritable islands of heat within the urban environment [189].

The design of the neighborhood and the provision of urban green spaces have an impact on health risks, influencing aesthetic perceptions and physical constraints and determining the degree of social mixing. Poorly maintained and deteriorated urban environments lacking of green areas are associated with lower levels of physical activity and increased rates of overweight, partly explained through people's perception as a reaction to the aesthetic impression, which also affects mental health and social isolation. The presence of accessible municipal services, public gathering places, and green areas can counteract some of these effects. In addition, environments mimicking natural conditions (green corridors, parks, etc.) help by reducing ambient air pollution, cooling urban areas, and providing a barrier against noise and may even have an influence on preventing the development of some forms of cancer [190].

Capabilities go beyond achieving a set goal to encompass the idea that what matters is possessing the freedom to envisage and choose from a range of possibilities in relation to the projects and life plans that people have reason to value. Neighborhoods structure the health practices that people engage in, notably through the unequal distribution of resources. The idea of resources may be widened to include not just physical resources but also intangible resources which may be seen as relational processes. Neighborhoods are not just passive geographical spaces, but living dialectics of structure and agency in which people adapt to constraints and embrace freedoms in different domains over time, places where individuals and communities engage in practices producing health on a daily basis [191].

Given that low-income populations are disproportionately found in environments with worse urban features (less green spaces, poor urban design, etc.), many different approaches have been developed in the last decades to address health inequities by changing the neighborhood characteristics of low-income people. One approach to changing neighborhood characteristics is to move people from high- to low-poverty neighborhoods. Moving neighborhood can improve mental health, reduce obesity, and impact positively on some wider determinants of health [192]. Several studies have examined the effects of giving people housing vouchers to change home and neighborhood. "Moving to Opportunity" permitted families to move from public housing in high-poverty neighborhoods to private housing in lower-poverty or nonpoor New York neighborhoods. Moving out of the

public housing/high-poverty neighborhoods was associated with lower distress among parents and lower anxious/depressive and dependency problems among their sons [193]. Similarly a randomized environmental experimental intervention carried out in Chicago [194] has shown that obesity and diabetes risk may be reduced by moving to different neighborhoods. Three groups were constituted. One group was offered housing vouchers provided they changed address and moved to another neighborhood. Another group was offered the equivalent sum but was given no instructions or advice on moving, and a third, control group, was offered neither advice nor money. Over a 7-year period, there was no significant difference between the latter two groups, but the objectively measured risks of developing obesity and diabetes were reduced in the group who moved home. Positive effects were seen 10 to 15 years later in prevalence of obesity and diabetes [194].

Evaluation of the effects of moving inhabitants out of unhealthy neighborhoods shows benefits that might be achieved but not a feasible approach for general application. Urban regeneration programs, aiming at the whole neighborhood level, are argued to be more cost-effective than the movement of individuals to better areas, including because they benefit the community as a whole [195]. Yet the evidence supporting this idea is still weak. A systematic review in the United Kingdom [192] found small positive impacts on socioeconomic determinants of health but potential negative impacts as well. Mixed tenure has also been promoted in many European countries as a means to tackle social exclusion and create sustainable communities. However the evidence is inconclusive on whether it actually promotes social cohesion and residential sustainability or improves people's perceptions of the neighborhood. Nor has it been found to provide better job opportunities or changes in income mix [195].

Other interventions that have the potential to improve health and health inequities include the demolition of distressed housing and relocation of residents; universal design standards to favor the elderly and people with disabilities; crime prevention through environmental design; smart growth and connectivity designs; zoning (regulating how land or a site may be or not used for certain purposes, e.g., prohibiting alcohol outlets near schools); and interventions concerning green space around housing [196].

Urban environments are already home to two-thirds of people with diabetes. This makes cities the front line in the fight against type 2 diabetes. In 2014, three global partners, Steno Diabetes Center Copenhagen, University College London, and Novo Nordisk, launched the Cities Changing Diabetes (CCD) program to accelerate the global fight against urban diabetes. Today, the program has established partnerships with key stakeholders in ten cities around the world to address the social factors and cultural determinants that increase type 2 diabetes vulnerability among those cities residents [197]. The CCD partners have modelled what it will take to hold the rise of diabetes prevalence at 10.0% globally. A 25% reduction in obesity from 2017 levels is required by 2045. This is the long-term global target for CCD.

Neighborhood Design and Social Isolation

A rapidly emerging area of research that epitomizes the ecological perspective is that regarding the impact of our physical and built environment on our social relationships and behavior. As background, there is ample evidence about the association among mortality, health, and social isolation.

A meta-analysis of 148 studies involving 300.000 persons documented that individuals with strong social relationships had a 50% increased likelihood of survival over an average study period of 7.5 years compared to individuals with weak social relationships [198]. Moroever, associations between social isolation and type 2 diabetes have been documented in several studies [199, 200].

Research suggests that architectural design impacts social isolation and integration. Among older adults in Chicago, Illinois, in the United States, social isolation was more common in dilapidated, run-down areas [201]. In addition, elderly people who lived in high-rise public housing buildings were less likely to venture into neighborhoods than those who lived in low-rise public housing buildings (after controlling for other environmental aspects and personal characteristics) [201].

The influence of neighborhood design on perceived social isolation can also be understood on a population-level basis. Wu and Chan conducted a cross-sectional study among approximately 4500 Singaporeans over the age of 60 to determine how public housing influenced older urban residents' social interactions [202]. In Singapore, almost 90% of residents reside in Housing Development Board (HDB) public housing, which function as a neighborhood block in which residents are able to access social support services for the elderly and children and public spaces such as playgrounds, markets, and cafes [202]. The remaining 10% with higher household incomes reside in private housing. In their study, Wu and Chan found that the strongest predictors for decreasing the likelihood of isolation were residence in the HDB public housing and daily social participation in HDB neighborhood events. Accordingly, they hypothesized that the HDB built environment functioned as a community and encouraged social care, social support, and social interaction among residents. In contrast, those who resided in private condominiums or gated communities were at greater risk of social isolation because of less frequent social interaction and proximity to others [202].

As the built environment may discourage social interaction, several features have also been linked to increased social interaction. In particular, indoor and outdoor common spaces have been shown to support social ties among older individuals [203]. By offering opportunities for informal face-to-face contact, common spaces allow individuals to foster and maintain casual social relationships that have been found associated with health, including among older adults [204]. In a study of older individuals aged 60–90 in Chicago Public Housing buildings [203], those who lived in the closest proximity to trees and vegetation experienced higher levels of social support and integration than those with little nearby vegetation. Moreover, in a study of 273 Hispanic elders living in East Little Havana in Miami, Florida [205], researchers found that architectural features such as porches and stoops encouraged greater person-to-person contact and were positively associated with perceived social support and negatively associated with psychological distress. On the other hand, architectural features, such as windows, allowed for broader observation of the surrounding area but removed individuals from close person-to-person contact and resulted in lower levels of perceived social support. This suggests that common spaces that actually allow individuals to engage with others are more beneficial in increasing support than those that simply increase observation of surroundings [205].

In addition to common spaces and architectural design, social interaction may also be influenced by perceived accessibility of resources. Richard and colleagues [206] conducted a study to assess neighborhood correlates of social participation among older adults living in an urban environment in Montreal, Quebec. They found that a significant predictor for social participation was perceived accessibility to key resources, in that greater access to key resources within a 5-minute walk was associated with increased social participation. This has been confirmed by several other studies, which have found that higher levels of participation occur in places where people hold a positive image of their environment [201, 207]. For instance, Bowling and Stafford [207] conducted a cross-sectional study of perceptions of neighborhood infrastructure and social engagement among older adults. They found that perceptions of poor local facilities in the area, particularly poor facilities for people aged 65 an older, were associated with greater likelihood of low social activities. This suggests that the accessibility of social resources, services, and facilities is an important determinant of social participation and interaction. This emerging field of evidence thus points to an association between the built environment and social support, whereby neighborhood design, architectural features, and perceived accessibility of resources influence individuals' levels of social support and participation. However, research is still needed to document how these components can be manipulated in existing settings to reduce social isolation.

HiAP and Community Organization

It has been argued that HiAP approaches are distinguishable from other intersectoral initiatives to advance health equity in two important ways [208]. First, because they emphasize health in all *policies*, HiAP approaches are coordinated primarily by formal structures and mechanisms of governments that are responsible for policies. Second, initiatives adopted under HiAP approaches are explicitly linked to structural or long-term governmental policies or agendas, rather than focusing on specific problems. While recognizing the importance of applying the HiAP approach at governmental level, it has also been argued that intersectoral collaboration and action should also be nurtured at more local levels. The Sundsvall Statement on Supportive Environments for Health that emerged from the 3rd International Conference on Health Promotion in Sundsvall, Sweden, in 1991 thus recommended the building of alliances and strengthening cooperation between health and environment campaigns and strategies to advance supportive environments at the community level [209]. Health in All *local* Policies is thus a meaningful concept in the context of local community development when referring to the polices and strategies of all stakeholder organizations involved in decision-making and agenda setting and not just local government institutions [210]. The meta-message of this chapter clearly applies here. Because of the multiple layers and sectors of multiple determinants of health behaviors and health, the broadest possible range and diversity of sectors and influences should be brought into campaigns to address important health problems and challenges. We should reject analyses or rhetorics that incline to privileging one or another approach.

A Key Change in Perspective

Increasing emphasis on non-health policy flies in the face of representations of health that are taken for granted in the general population. Health is often reduced to healthcare, and this is how governments and citizens traditionally represent health, dividing up the world into health and non-health. Similarly, health is often viewed as determined by individual characteristics – e.g., "good genes" – and individual choices. This may lead to viewing the individual as responsible for her/his own health [211]. In contrast, the ecological perspective casts such views as imposing an unreasonable attribution of responsibility to the individual – a sort of victim blaming – by ignoring the diversity of forces that shape each individual's behavior. Some may see such "robbing" the individual of responsibility as a reduction of individual and human dignity. This concern about dignity may represent a Western view that individual dig-

nity and recognition of external influence are somehow opposed. In other cultures, influence of the surround is assumed and not seen as detracting from the dignity of the individual [212].

A 2015 French study [213] suggests that local stakeholders involved in a community project may perceive health more broadly than might have been anticipated. They were described as seeing health "as a global resource for life, determined by a large number of factors (behaviors, social life, work conditions, education, transportation, etc.) and for which every local actor has a responsibility." Similarly, the success of a Healthy Cities initiative in Portland in the US state of Oregon shows that such policies can be acceptable and effective outside Europe's strong tradition of social and health protection.

The example of Penwerris, in Falmouth, Cornwall in the United Kingdom provides a model for changing perspectives and achieving intersectoral collaboration at the community level. In 1995, this socially deprived area had the highest number of poor households, the highest proportion of children in households with no wage earners, and the second highest number of lone parents. More than 50% of homes lacked central heating and the illness rate was 18% "above the national average" [214]. Community health nurses, known as "health visitors," pinpointed 20 residents who they felt could work constructively on the estate's problems with the authorities. Five agreed to participate. The health visitors went on to initiate intersectoral action inviting the representatives of health, social services, education, local government, and the police to a series of meetings. Most importantly, in parallel with an injection of funds following a successful application for an energy improvement grant for the area, a shift in power was granted by the authorities to allow the community partnership to fix priorities and take decisions about their own community and lives. Problems were discussed and "discovered" between the actors, and different solutions are being explored. This was not based on classical needs analysis carried out from above but emerged and relied on local knowledge, ideas, and initiative. Regeneration was not planned from outside but emerged from within [214].

Five years on, the situation had undergone a spectacular radical transformation. Improvements of a whole series of community indicators had occurred including a 50% drop in crimes, a 42% fall in child protection registrations, and a drop of 70% in postnatal depression. Furthermore there were no unwanted teenage pregnancies, educational achievement had hugely improved, and the unemployment rate had fallen by 71% in both men and women [214]. Interviews and two focus groups to understand the process of change suggested that, in line with complexity theory, the downward spiral of social deprivation and urban decline was reversed through acting at a critical point, developing trust and self-confidence, favoring self-organization within the community, and leading to a reconfiguring of social relationships among residents, different statutory agencies, and new actors. This success has led to similar initiatives with other deprived communities based on similar principles of trust and self-organization being set up in other urban areas in the United Kingdoms [215].

Implicit in the emphases on ecological determinants and, especially, Health in All Policies is a focus on general health and well-being, not one or a particular disease. As agricultural policy, for example, will affect diet and all the diseases that nutrition influences, the breadth of impacts on health will be necessary to justify proposals to alter policies not directly related to health. Surely a proposal for major changes in national agricultural policy to benefit a small number of people with a specific disease would have much less likelihood of adoption than one that may be justified as benefitting all children and adults in a society. So too and consistent with considering the many determinants of health, it is important also to consider health beyond the prevention of disease and incorporate salutogenesis and resources for health and well-being favoring a sense of coherence and quality of life [216–218]. Again, the broader focus makes excellent conceptual and policy sense and also recruits additional reasons in support of policy proposals that may emerge from it.

Extension to Diabetes

We have presented a range of ways non-health sector factors and policies may impact on human health. We have also sketched a number of different policies that may reduce or mitigate deleterious health impacts. We have also stressed that health should be seen positively and that physical and sociocultural environment have the potential to promote and improve health. Increasingly non-health policy is taking up the gauntlet and addressing a number of these issues at the macro and micro level. At the macro level, this has been tackled notably through adapting recommendations from Health in All Policies within national and supranational government policy agendas. At the micro or local level, numerous initiatives tackle proximal lifestyle issues. At the local level, the practice of carrying out systematic health impact assessments on new infrastructure development projects has become increasingly frequent. Also at the community and city level, collaborative community organization such as in the supersetting approach has been shown effective.

As a way of summarizing the many topics the chapter has addressed, Table 4.2 sets out advantages or contributions each of the approaches can make toward diabetes prevention and management.

Table 4.2 Examples of application to diabetes prevention and management of multilevel, multi-sectoral interventions

Peer support	A major approach to dissemination of the Diabetes Prevention Program in the United States is group-based, implemented by trained nonprofessionals [221] Substantial evidence for benefits of group, individual, and dyad-based peer support in diabetes management [81]
Community organization	Kerala Diabetes Prevention Program [142] in rural communities in India utilized community engagement in program development and implementation and replicated results of major diabetes prevention programs [143–145] while reducing CVD risk
Health in All Policies	Urban, agricultural, housing, economic, transportation, and business policies of local, regional, national, and international governments all influence activity levels, diet, stress and emotional well-being, as well as access to care and adherence to preventive and treatment regimens for diabetes and other chronic diseases
Multi-sector, multilevel engagement	The global prevalence and burdens of diabetes in terms of health impacts, complications, quality of life, and costs of care of the disease and its many complications all justify engagement of all sectors of society and government in prevention and improving its treatment

Concluding Thoughts

In contrast to old oppositions of nature versus nurture, genetics versus environment, or biology versus psychology, twenty-first century science is clear that causes of health, illness, and well-being are complex, multidimensional, and interactive. Those with serious diseases need good medical care, but it is also clear that economics, policies, environments, organizational and social factors, personality, and a host of other contextual features play major roles in the etiology of health problems, their prevention, and their management. Moreover, despite frequent pessimism as to population trends in health, a broad range of community, health education, and health promotion approaches addressing community, policy, economic, social, and personal factors can be successful in reducing populations' health problems, such as with cigarette smoking in the United States [1, 138] or cardiovascular disease in Finland [113–115].

At least since Villermé's writings of the nineteenth century, e.g. [219], we have known that the places we live in are not equal as regards health, well-being, and indeed death. Here we have emphasized social, community, and non-health policy over clinical care. In line with Health in All Policies, it will become more and more necessary for government, policymakers, and indeed stakeholders to accept that all these segments have important parts to play in making the world a healthier and safer place. Such a realization however is also linked to our values and views on the sources of inequity and health. It is clear that inequity is a major source of poor health and disease. It is also abundantly clear from the evidence we have at our disposal that the social, community, and non-health sectors could have a substantial role in righting such inequities. In the field of environmental health, a sea change has occurred through the recognition that we all live in the same world with finite resources, and this has opened the way for greater sustainable development and more friendly environmental policy. We believe it will be necessary for a comparable change of representations to occur accepting that the health and welfare of individuals are deeply tied to the circumstances and environments in which they work, live, and play.

The time has perhaps come when it will become habitual to think of people being embedded in sociocultural and economic contexts with habitual practices rather than as decontextualized individuals within statistical populations with free choice of behaviors and free choice of dwelling and neighborhood [220]. Once this way of thinking has become normative, then the determining role of the social, community, and non-health sectors and the necessity for different sectors and the health sector itself to work together will be very apparent. Furthermore the idea that insalubrious, rundown, unhealthy, unsafe, non-accessible, or segregated environments are acceptable will become unthinkable, a thing from the past.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Reduction in income, education, and socioeconomic status is associated with:
   (a) Improved health and decreases in mortality and morbidity
   (b) No changes in health, mortality, and morbidity
   (c) Better health and increases in mortality and morbidity
   (d) Worse health and increases in mortality and morbidity
   (e) Worse health and decreases in mortality and morbidity
2. Social determinants of health:
   (a) Are irrelevant in the development of health risks
   (b) Play key roles in the development of health risks
   (c) Can be corrected with the use of new medications
   (d) Are important, but only secondary to genetic traits
   (e) Are irrelevant in the paths of infectious disease transmission
3. Epimutations refer to:
   (a) The relationship between rearing and the adult stress response
   (b) Abnormalities resulting from environmental factors
   (c) Acute changes in DNA methylation

(d) Prenatal disorders of genetic development
(e) Major causes of stillbirth

4. Socioeconomic and social factors:
   (a) Are irrelevant to CVD risk
   (b) Probably are related to CVD risk, but it has not been documented
   (c) Influence the pathways from the serotonin transporter gene to CVD risk
   (d) Are the leading contributors of CVD risk
   (e) Are not influential for health status at all
5. Resources and supports for self-management that people with diabetes need to manage their disease in daily life include all of the following except:
   (a) Continuity of quality clinical care
   (b) Individualized assessment
   (c) Collaborative goal-setting
   (d) Community resources
   (e) Access to the latest, most-expensive medications
6. Sustaining diabetes self-management:
   (a) Is secondary to the level of professional expertise of health providers
   (b) Is a component of key importance in the ecological approach
   (c) Is not important because intervention studies include follow-up of 1–3 years
   (d) Is based on a 1-week admission to a specialized diabetes center
   (e) Has negative consequences in physician-patient relationship
7. Diabetes self-management support:
   (a) Is exactly the same as self-management education
   (b) Is exclusively provided by specialists in the medical office
   (c) Is provided by other patients with expertise
   (d) Is the ability to assist the individual to implement and sustain ongoing behaviors needed to manage their illness
   (e) Is unnecessary in diabetes management
8. The best predictor of changes in blood glucose control:
   (a) Medical expertise
   (b) Number and cost of medications
   (c) Absolute compliance with doctor's orders
   (d) Length of time over which interventions are maintained by patients
   (e) Self-monitoring of blood glucose
9. The most important characteristic of type 2 diabetes and self-management:
   (a) It is "for the rest of your life."
   (b) It is impossible to achieve.
   (c) It has to comply with protocols of randomized controlled trials.
   (d) It is feasible for all patients.
   (e) It is totally dependent on new technologies.
10. Patients rely on peers:
    (a) To understand the pathophysiology of diabetes
    (b) To learn how to best comply with doctor's orders
    (c) To gain confidence to implement a plan of action
    (d) To understand what is important and set priorities
    (e) To endure the increasing burden of suffering

Correct Answers

1. (d) Worse health and increases in mortality and morbidity
2. (b) Play key roles in the development of health risks
3. (a) The relationship between rearing and the adult stress response
4. (c) Influence the pathways from the serotonin transporter gene to CVD risk
5. (e) Access to the latest, most-expensive medications
6. (b) Is a component of key importance in the ecological approach
7. (d) Is the ability to assist the individual to implement and sustain ongoing behaviors needed to manage their illness
8. (d) Length of time over which interventions are maintained by patients
9. (a) It is "for the rest of your life."
10. (d) To understand what is important and set priorities

Acknowledgments We wish to thank especially our colleagues with whom we have previously written on these subjects and who have greatly influenced our thinking regarding them Timothy Daaleman, D.O.; Cyrille Harpet, Ph.D.; Zoe Heritage, Ph.D.; Sarah Kowitt, Ph.D.; Hairong Nan, M.D.; Yao Patrick Tang, M.P.H.; and Xuefeng Zhong, M.D., Dr.P.H.

Preparation of this chapter has been supported by the Michigan-UNC Peer Support Research Core of the Michigan Center for Diabetes Translational Research (P30DK092926 from the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases, PI: William Herman) and by funding from the Healthcare Foundation of New Jersey, the Merck Foundation, Novo Nordisk, and Sanofi China.

References

1. Fisher EB, Brownson RC, Luke DA, Sumner WI, Heath AC. Cigarette Smoking. In: Raczynski J, Bradley L, Leviton L, editors. Health behavior handbook. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association; 2004.
2. Brownell KD, Horgen KB. Food fight: the inside story of the food industry, America's obesity crisis, and what we can do about it. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2004.
3. Marmot MG, McDowall ME. Mortality decline and widening social inequalities. Lancet. 1986;2:274–6.
4. Per capita GDP at current prices – US dollars. Accessed 29 Apr 2018, at http://data.un.org/Data.aspxq=GDP+per+capita&d=SNAAMA&f=grID%3a101%3bcurrID%3aUSD%3bpcFlag%3a1.
5. Marmot M. Social determinants of health inequalities. Lancet. 2005;365:1099–104.

6. Link BG, Phelan J. Social conditions as fundamental causes of disease. J Health Soc Behav. 1995;Spec No:80–94.
7. Whitehead M, Dahlgren G. What can be done about inequalities in health? Lancet. 1991;338:1059–63.
8. Graham H. Social determinants and their unequal distribution: clarifying policy understandings. Milbank Q. 2004;82:101–24.
9. McLeroy K, Bibeau D, Steckler A. An ecological perspective on health promotion programs. Health Educ Q. 1988;15:351–77.
10. Sallis JF, Owen N. Ecological models of health behavior. In: Glanz K, Rimer BK, editors. Health behavior and health education: theory, research, and practice. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 2002. p. 462–84.
11. Stokols D. Establishing and maintaining healthy environments: toward a social ecology of health promotion. Am Psychol. 1992;47:6–22.
12. Sallis J, Owen N, Fisher EB. Ecological models of health behavior. In: Glanz K, Rimer BK, Viswanath K, editors. Health behavior and health education: theory, research, and practice. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 2008. p. 462–84.
13. Hage G. Eavesdropping on Bourdieu's philosophers. Thesis Eleven. 2013;114:76–93.
14. Sen A. Development as freedom. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 1999.
15. Gosden R, Feinberg A. Genetics and epigenetics – Nature's pen -and pencil set. N Engl J Med. 2007;357:731–3.
16. Meaney MJ, Szyf M. Maternal care as a model for experience-dependent chromatin plasticity. Trends Neurosci. 2005;28:456.
17. Zhang TY, Labonte B, Wen XL, Turecki G, Meaney MJ. Epigenetic mechanisms for the early environmental regulation of hippocampal glucocorticoid receptor gene expression in rodents and humans. Neuropsychopharmacology. 2013;38:111–23.
18. Williams RB, Marchuk DA, Gadde KM, et al. Central nervous system serotonin function and cardiovascular responses to stress. Psychosom Med. 2001;63:300–5.
19. Williams RB. Lower central nervous system serotonergic function and risk of cardiovascular disease: where are we, what's next? Stroke. 2007;38:2213–4.
20. Williams RB, Surwit RS, Siegler IC, et al. Central nervous system serotonin and clustering of hostility, psychosocial, metabolic, and cardiovascular endophenotypes in men. Psychosom Med. 2010;72:601–7.
21. Bennett AJ, Lesch KP, Heils A, et al. Early experience and serotonin transporter gene variation interact to influence primate CNS function. Mol Psychiatry. 2002;7:118–22.
22. Gelernter J, Cubells JF, Kidd JR, Pakstis AJ, Kidd KK. Population studies of polymorphisms of the serotonin transporter gene. Am J Med Genet. 1999;88:61–6.
23. Williams RB, Marchuk DA, Siegler IC, et al. Childhood socioeconomic status and serotonin transporter gene polymorphism enhance cardiovascular reactivity to mental stress. Psychosom Med. 2008;70:32–9.
24. Caspi A, Sugden K, Moffitt T, et al. Influence of life stress on depression: moderation by a polymorphism in the 5-HTT gene. Science. 2003;301:386–9.
25. Belsky J, Jonassaint C, Pluess M, Stanton M, Brummett B, Williams R. Vulnerability genes or plasticity genes? Mol Psychiatry. 2009;14:746–54.
26. Taylor SE, Way BM, Welch WT, Hilmert CJ, Lehman BJ, Eisenberger NI. Early family environment, current adversity, the serotonin transporter promoter polymorphism, and depressive symptomatology. Biol Psychiatry. 2006;60:671–6.
27. Jonassaint CR, Ashley-Koch A, Whitfield KE, et al. The serotonin transporter gene polymorphism (5HTTLPR) moderates the effect of adolescent environmental conditions on self-esteem in young adulthood: a structural equation modeling approach. Biol Psychol. 2012;91:111–9.
28. Koenen KC, Aiello AE, Bakshis E, et al. Modification of the association between serotonin transporter genotype and risk of posttraumatic stress disorder in adults by county-level social environment. Am J Epidemiol. 2009;169:704–11.
29. Bandura A. Social cognitive theory: an agentic perspective. Annu Rev Psychol. 2001;52:1–26.
30. Pratley R. Gene-environment interactions in the pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes mellitus: lesson learned from the Pima Indians. Proc Nutr Soc. 1998;57:175–81.
31. Herbst RS, Lippman SM. Molecular signatures of lung cancer--toward personalized therapy. N Engl J Med. 2007;356:76–8.
32. van de Vijver MJ. A gene-expression signature as a predictor of survival in breast cancer. N Engl J Med. 2002;347:1999–2009.
33. Fisher EB, Brownson CA, O'Toole ML, et al. The Robert Wood Johnson Foundation diabetes initiative: demonstration projects emphasizing self management. Diabetes Educ. 2007;33:83–94.
34. Brownson CA, Hoerger TJ, Fisher EB, Kilpatrick KE. Cost-effectiveness of diabetes self-management programs in community primary care settings. Diabetes Educ. 2009;35:761–9.
35. Fisher EB, Brownson CA, O'Toole ML, Shetty G, Anwuri VV, Glasgow RE. Ecologic approaches to self management: the case of diabetes. Am J Public Health. 2005;95:1523–35.
36. Funnell MM, Brown TL, Childs BP, et al. National Standards for diabetes self-management education. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(Suppl 1):S89–96.
37. Norris SL, Lau J, Smith SJ, Schmid CH, Engelgau MM. Self-management education for adults with type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis of the effect on glycemic control. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:1159–71.
38. Kottke TE, Battista RN, DeFriese GH. Attributes of successful smoking cessation interventions in medical practice: a meta-analysis of 39 controlled trials. J Am Med Assoc. 1988;259:2882–9.
39. Fiore MC, Jaen CR, Baker TB, et al. Treating tobacco use and dependence: 2008 update. Clinical practice guideline. Service PH, editor. Rockville: US Department of Health and Human Services; 2008.
40. Wing RR, Hill JO. Successful weight loss maintenance. Annu Rev Nutr. 2001;21:323–41.
41. Wing RR, Tate DF, Gorin AA, Raynor HA, Fava JL. A self-regulation program for maintenance of weight loss. N Engl J Med. 2006;355:1563–71.
42. Wadden TA, West DS, Neiberg RH, et al. One-year weight losses in the look AHEAD study: factors associated with success. Obesity. 2009;17:713–22.
43. Fisher EB, Brownson CA, O'Toole ML. Ongoing follow up and support for chronic disease management in the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation Diabetes Initiative. Diabetes Educ. 2007;33:201S–7S.
44. Daaleman TP, Preisser J. A Life Course Perspective on Behavior and Health. In: Fisher EB, Cameron LD, Christensen AJ, et al., editors. Principles and concepts of behavioral medicine: a global handbook. New York: Springer; 2018. p. 471–85.
45. Baer DM, Wolf MM, Risley TR. Some current dimensions of applied behavior analysis. J Appl Behav Anal. 1968;1:91–7.
46. Kim HS, Oh JA. Adherence to diabetes control recommendations: impact of nurse telephone calls. J Adv Nurs. 2003;44:256–61.
47. Weinberger M, Kirkman MS, Samsa GP, et al. A nurse-coordinated intervention for primary care patients with non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus: impact on glycemic control and health-related quality of life. J Gen Intern Med. 1995;10:59–66.
48. Piette JD, McPhee SJ, Weinberger M, Mah CA, Kraemer FB. Use of automated telephone disease management calls in an ethnically diverse sample of low-income patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1999;22:1302–9.

49. Piette JD, Weinberger M, McPhee SJ. The effect of automated calls with telephone nurse follow-up on patient-centered outcomes of diabetes care: a randomized, controlled trial. Med Care. 2000;38:218–30.
50. Piette JD, Weinberger M, McPhee SJ, Mah CA, Kraemer FB, Crapo LM. Do automated calls with nurse follow-up improve self-care and glycemic control among vulnerable patients with diabetes? Am J Med. 2000;108:20–7.
51. Piette JD, Weinberger M, Draemer FB, McPhee SJ. Impact of automated calls with nurse follow-up on diabetes treatment outcomes in a Department of Veterans Affairs Health Care System. Diabetes Care. 2001;24:202–8.
52. Swider SM. Outcome effectiveness of community health workers: an integrative literature review. Public Health Nurs. 2002;19:11–20.
53. Corkery E, Palmer C, Foley ME, Schechter CB, Frisher L, Roman SH. Effect of a bicultural community health worker on completion of diabetes education in a Hispanic population. Diabetes Care. 1997;20:254–7.
54. Zuvekas A, Nolan L, Tumaylle C, Griffin L. Impact of community health workers on access, use of services, and patient knowledge and behavior. J Ambul Care Manage. 1999;22:33–44.
55. Davis KL, O'Toole ML, Brownson CA, Llanos P, Fisher EB. Teaching how, not what: the contributions of community health workers to diabetes self-management. Diabetes Educ. 2007;33:208S–15S.
56. Trento M, Passera P, Borgo E, et al. A 5-year randomized controlled study of learning, problem solving ability, and quality of life modifications in people with type 2 diabetes managed by group care. Diabetes Care. 2004;27:670–5.
57. Trento M, Passera P, Tomalino M, et al. Group visits improve metabolic control in type 2 diabetes: a 2-year follow-up. Diabetes Care. 2001;24:995–1000.
58. Your Medicare Coverage: Diabetes self-management training. Accessed 28 Apr 2018, at https://www.medicare.gov/coverage/diabetes-self-mgmt-training.html.
59. Baker EA, Schootman M, Barnidge E, Kelly C. The role of race and poverty in access to foods that enable individuals to adhere to dietary guidelines. Prev Chronic Dis [serial online]. 2006;3(3):A76.
60. Black JL, Macinko J, Dixon LB, Fryer GE Jr. Neighborhoods and obesity in New York City. Health Place. 2010;16:489–99.
61. Morland K, Diez Roux AV, Wing S. Supermarkets, other food stores, and obesity: the atherosclerosis risk in communities study. Am J Prev Med. 2006;30:333–9.
62. Christakis NA, Fowler JH. The spread of obesity in a large social network over 32 years. N Engl J Med. 2007;357:370–9.
63. Christakis NA, Fowler JH. The collective dynamics of smoking in a large social network. N Engl J Med. 2008;358:2249–58.
64. Rosenquist JN, Fowler JH, Christakis NA. Social network determinants of depression. Mol Psychiatry. 2011;16:273–81.
65. Nair HS, Manchanda P, Bhatia T. Asymmetric social interactions in physician prescription behavior: the role of opinion leaders. J Mark Res. 2010;47:883–95.
66. Wagner EH, Glasgow RE, Davis C, et al. Quality improvement in chronic illness care: a collaborative approach. J Jt Comm Health Care Qual. 2001;27:63–80.
67. Larsen DL, Cannon W, Towner S. Longitudinal assessment of a diabetes care management system in an integrated health network. J Manag Care Pharm. 2003;9:552–8.
68. Cooksey C, Lanza AP. Examining diabetes health benefits in health plans of large employers. J Public Health Manag Pract. 2003;Suppl:S30–S5.
69. Austin M. Diabetes educators: partners in diabetes care and management. Endocr Pract. 2006;12(Suppl 1):38–41.
70. Bojadzievski T, Gabbay RA. Patient-centered medical home and diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2011;34:1047–53.
71. Rosenthal EL, Macinko J. JACM special issue on community health workers and community health worker practice. J Ambul Care Manage. 2011;34:208–9.
72. Brownstein JN, Andrews T, Wallm H, Mukhtar Q. Addressing chronic disease through community health workers: a policy and systems-level approach. Atlanta: U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Division for Heart Disease and Stroke Prevention; 2011.
73. Bhutta Z, Lassi Z, Pariyo G, Huicho L. Global experience of community health workers for delivery of health related millennium development goals: a systematic review, country case studies, and recommendations for integration into national health systems. Geneva: Global Health Workforce Alliance; 2010.
74. Haines A, Sanders D, Lehmann U, et al. Achieving child survival goals: potential contribution of community health workers. Lancet. 2007;369:2121–31.
75. Lehmann U, Sanders D. Community Health Workers: What do we know about them? The state of the evidence on programmes, activities, costs and impact on health outcomes of using community health workers. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2007.
76. Peer Support Programmes in Diabetes: report of a WHO consultation. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2008.
77. One Million Community Health Workers: technical task force report. Earth Institute, Columbia University; 2011.
78. Ludmerer KM. Time to heal: American Medical Education from the turn of the century to the era of managed care. New York: Oxford University press; 1999.
79. Meichenbaum DH. Examination of model characteristics in avoidance behavior. J Pers Soc Psychol. 1971;17:298–307.
80. Perry HB, Zulliger R, Rogers MM. Community health workers in low-, middle-, and high-income countries: an overview of their history, recent evolution, and current effectiveness. Annu Rev Public Health. 2014;35:399–421.
81. Fisher EB, Boothroyd RI, Elstad EA, et al. Peer support of complex health behaviors in prevention and disease management with special reference to diabetes: systematic reviews. Clin Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017;3:4.
82. Babamoto KS, Sey KA, Camilleri AJ, Karlan VJ, Catalasan J, Morisky DE. Improving diabetes care and health measures among hispanics using community health workers: results from a randomized controlled trial. Health Educ Behav. 2009;36:113–26.
83. Beckham S, Bradley S, Washburn A, Taumua T. Diabetes management: utilizing community health workers in a Hawaiian/Samoan population. J Health Care Poor Underserved. 2008;19:416–27.
84. Culica D, Walton JW, Harker K, Prezio EA. Effectiveness of a community health worker as sole diabetes educator: comparison of CoDE with similar culturally appropriate interventions. J Health Care Poor Underserved. 2008;19:1076–95.
85. Dale J, Caramlau I, Sturt J, Friede T, Walker R. Telephone peer-delivered intervention for diabetes motivation and support: the telecare exploratory RCT. Patient Educ Couns. 2009;75:91–8.
86. Greenhalgh T, Campbell-Richards D, Vijayaraghavan S, et al. New models of self-management education for minority ethnic groups: pilot randomized trial of a story-sharing intervention. J Health Serv Res Policy. 2011;16:28–36.
87. Heisler M, Vijan S, Makki F, Piette JD. Diabetes control with reciprocal peer support versus nurse care management: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2010;153:507–15.
88. Mayes PA, Silvers A, Prendergast JJ. New direction for enhancing quality in diabetes care: utilizing telecommunications and paraprofessional outreach workers backed by an expert medical team. Telemed J E Health. 2010;16:358–63.
89. McElmurry BJ, McCreary LL, Park CG, et al. Implementation, outcomes, and lessons learned from a collaborative primary health care program to improve diabetes care among urban Latino populations. Health Promot Pract. 2009;10:293–302.

90. McEwen MM, Pasvogel A, Gallegos G, Barrera L. Type 2 diabetes self-management social support intervention at the U.S.-Mexico border. Public Health Nurs. 2010;27:310–9.
91. Otero-Sabogal R, Arretz D, Siebold S, et al. Physician-community health worker partnering to support diabetes self-management in primary care. Qual Prim Care. 2010;18:363–72.
92. Ruggiero L, Moadsiri A, Butler P, et al. Supporting diabetes self-care in underserved populations: a randomized pilot study using medical assistant coaches. Diabetes Educ. 2010;36:127–31.
93. Sacco WP, Malone JI, Morrison AD, Friedman A, Wells K. Effect of a brief, regular telephone intervention by paraprofessionals for type 2 diabetes. J Behav Med. 2009;32:349–59.
94. Smith SM, Paul G, Kelly A, Whitford DL, O'Shea E, O'Dowd T. Peer support for patients with type 2 diabetes: cluster randomised controlled trial. BMJ. 2011;342:d715.
95. Walton JW, Snead CA, Collinsworth AW, Schmidt KL. Reducing diabetes disparities through the implementation of a community health worker-led diabetes self-management education program. Fam Community Health. 2012;35:161–71.
96. Acheson LS, Fisher EB. Peers for Progress. Ann Fam Med. 2015;13:S1–S86.
97. Fisher EB, Ayala GX, Ibarra L, et al. Contributions of peer support to health, health care, and prevention: papers from peers for progress. Ann Fam Med. 2015;13(Suppl 1):S2–8.
98. Palmas W, March D, Darakjy S, et al. Community Health Worker interventions to improve glycemic control in people with diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Gen Intern Med. 2015;30:1004–12.
99. Qi L, Liu Q, Qi X, Wu N, Tang W, Xiong H. Effectiveness of peer support for improving glycaemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. BMC Public Health. 2015;15:471.
100. Lynch EB, Liebman R, Ventrelle J, Avery EF, Richardson D. A self-management intervention for African Americans with comorbid diabetes and hypertension: a pilot randomized controlled trial. Prev Chronic Dis. 2014;11:E90.
101. Lynch CP, Egede LE. Optimizing diabetes self-care in low literacy and minority populations—problem-solving, empowerment, peer support and technology-based approaches. J Gen Intern Med. 2011;26:953–5.
102. Little TV, Wang ML, Castro EM, Jimenez J, Rosal MC. Community health worker interventions for Latinos with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14:558.
103. Thom DH, Ghorob A, Hessler D, De Vore D, Chen E, Bodenheimer TA. Impact of peer health coaching on glycemic control in low-income patients with diabetes: a randomized controlled trial. Ann Fam Med. 2013;11:137–44.
104. Moskowitz D, Thom DH, Hessler D, Ghorob A, Bodenheimer T. Peer coaching to improve diabetes self-management: which patients benefit most? J Gen Intern Med. 2013;28:938–42.
105. Hughes MM, Yang E, Ramanathan D, Benjamins MR. Community-based diabetes community health worker intervention in an underserved Chicago population. J Community Health. 2016;41:1249–56.
106. Sokol R, Fisher E. Peer support for the hardly reached: a systematic review. Am J Public Health. 2016;106:1308.
107. Fisher EB, Chan JCN, Kowitt S, Nan H, Sartorius N, Oldenburg B. Conceptual perspectives on the co-occurrence of mental and physical disease: diabetes and depression as a model. In: Sartorius N, Maj M, Holt R, editors. Comorbidity of mental and physical disorders. Basel: Karger; 2015.
108. Roy T, Lloyd CE. Epidemiology of depression and diabetes: a systematic review. J Affect Disord. 2012;142(Suppl):S8–21.
109. Liu Y, Han Y, Shi J, et al. Effect of peer education on self-management and psychological status in type 2 diabetes patients with emotional disorders. J Diabetes Investig. 2015;6:479–86.
110. Wagner JA, Bermudez-Millan A, Damio G, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of a stress management intervention for Latinos with type 2 diabetes delivered by community health workers: outcomes for psychological wellbeing, glycemic control, and cortisol. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2016;120:162–70.
111. Chan JC, Sui Y, Oldenburg B, et al. Effects of telephone-based peer support in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus receiving integrated care: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA Intern Med. 2014;174:972–81.
112. Spencer MS, Hawkins J, Espitia NR, et al. Influence of a community health worker intervention on mental health outcomes among low-income Latino and African American adults with type 2 diabetes. Race Soc Probl. 2013;5:137–46.
113. Puska P, Nissinen A, Tuomilehto J, et al. The community-based strategy to prevent coronary heart disease: conclusions from the ten years of the North Karelia Project. Annu Rev Public Health. 1985;6:147–93.
114. Vartiainen E, Puska P, Jousilahti P, Korhonen HJ, Tuomilehto J, Nissinen A. Twenty-year trends in coronary risk factors in North Karelia and in other areas of Finland. Int J Epidemiol. 1994;23:495–504.
115. Puska P, Vartiainen E, Tuomilehto J, Salomaa V, Nissinen A. Changes in premature deaths in Finland: successful long-term prevention of cardiovascular diseases. Bull World Health Organ. 1998;76:419–25.
116. Luostarinen T, Hakulinen T, Pukkala E. Cancer risk following a community-based programme to prevent cardiovascular diseases. Int J Epidemiol. 1995;24:1094–9.
117. Excellence NIfHaC. Preventing type 2 diabetes: population and community level interventions in high risk groups and the general population. National Health Service; United Kingdom; 2011.
118. Bloch P, Toft U, Reinbach HC, et al. Revitalizing the setting approach – supersettings for sustainable impact in community health promotion. Int J Behav Nutr Phys Act. 2014;11:118.
119. Craig P, Dieppe P, Macintyre S, et al. Developing and evaluating complex interventions: the new Medical Research Council guidance. BMJ. 2008;337:a1655.
120. O'Mara-Eves A, Brunton G, Oliver S, Kavanagh J, Jamal F, Thomas J. The effectiveness of community engagement in public health interventions for disadvantaged groups: a meta-analysis. BMC Public Health. 2015;15:129.
121. Baird J, Jacob C, Barker M, et al. Developmental origins of health and disease: a lifecourse approach to the prevention of non-communicable diseases. Healthcare (Basel) 2017;5.
122. Olsen MH, Angell SY, Asma S, et al. A call to action and a lifecourse strategy to address the global burden of raised blood pressure on current and future generations: the Lancet Commission on hypertension. Lancet. 2016;388:2665–712.
123. Clausen LT, Schmidt C, Aagaard-Hansen J, Reinbach HC, Toft U, Bloch P. Children as visionary change agents in Danish school health promotion. Health Promot Int. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1093/heapro/day049. [Epub ahead of print] PMID: 30124857.
124. US Department of Health and Human Services. The health consequences of smoking: nicotine addiction. A report of the Surgeon General. DHHS publication: Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, Center for Health Promotion and Education, Office on Smoking and Health; Rockville Maryland 20857, 1988. Report No.: 88–8406.
125. True WR, Heath AC, Scherrer JF, et al. Genetic and environmental contributions to smoking. Addiction. 1997;92:1277–87.
126. Lawlor DA, Frankel S, Shaw M, Ebrahim S, Smith GD. Smoking and ill health: does lay epidemiology explain the failure of smok-

ing cessation programs among deprived populations? Am J Public Health. 2003;93:266–70.
127. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Preventing tobacco use among youth and young adults: a report of the Surgeon General. Atlanta: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention NCfCDPaHP, Office on Smoking and Health, ed; 2012.
128. Tobacco Industry Marketing. Accessed 29 Apr 2018, at http://www.lung.org/stop-smoking/smoking-facts/tobacco-industry-marketing.html.
129. Pierce JP, Choi WS, Gilpin EA, Farkas AJ, Berry CC. Tobacco industry promotion of cigarettes and adolescent smoking. JAMA. 1998;279:511–5.
130. Luke DA, Krauss M. Where there's smoke there's money: tobacco industry campaign contributions and U.S. Congressional voting. Am J Prev Med. 2004;27:363–72.
131. Warner K, Goldenhar L, McLaughlin C. Cigarette advertising and magazine coverage of the hazards of smoking: a statistical analysis. N Engl J Med. 1992;326:305–9.
132. Current Cigarette Smoking Among Adults in the United States. Accessed 29 Apr 2018, at https://www.cdc.gov/tobacco/data_statistics/fact_sheets/adult_data/cig_smoking/index.htm.
133. Brownson RC, Hopkins DP, Wakefield MA. Effects of smoking restrictions in the workplace. Annu Rev Public Health. 2002;23:333–48.
134. Fisher EB Jr, Auslander WF, Munro JF, Arfken CL, Brownson RC, Owens NW. Neighbors for a smoke free north side: evaluation of a community organization approach to promoting smoking cessation among African Americans. Am J Public Health. 1998;88:1658–63.
135. Secker-Walker RH, Flynn BS, Solomon LJ, Skelly JM, Dorwaldt AL, Ashikaga T. Helping women quit smoking: results of a community intervention program. Am J Public Health. 2000;90:940–6.
136. The COMMIT Research Group. Community Intervention Trial for Smoking Cessation (COMMIT): I. Cohort results from a four-year community intervention. Am J Public Health. 1995;85:183–92.
137. The COMMIT Research Group. Community Intervention Trial for Smoking Cessation (COMMIT): II. Changes in adult cigarette smoking prevalence. Am J Public Health. 1995;85:193–200.
138. Susser M. The tribulation of trials: intervention in communities. Am J Public Health. 1995;85:156–8.
139. Fisher EB Jr. Editorial: the results of the COMMIT trial. Am J Public Health. 1995;85:159–60.
140. Siegel M. The effectiveness of state-level tobacco control interventions: a review of program implementation and behavioral outcomes. Annu Rev Public Health. 2002;23:45–71.
141. Livingood WC, Allegrante JP, Green LW. Culture change from tobacco accommodation to intolerance: time to connect the dots. Health Educ Behav. 2016;43:133–8.
142. Thankappan KR, Thirunavukkarasu S, Tapp RJ, et al. A peer-support lifestyle intervention for preventing type 2 diabetes in India: a cluster randomised controlled trial of the Kerala Diabetes Prevention Program. PLoS Med. 2018;15(6):e1002575. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.1002575. eCollection 2018 Jun.
143. Pan XR, Li GW, Hu YH, et al. Effects of diet and exercise in preventing NIDDM in people with impaired glucose tolerance: the Da Qing IGT and Diabetes Study. Diabetes Care. 1997;20:537–44.
144. Tuomilehto J, Lindstrom J, Eriksson JG, et al. Prevention of type 2 diabetes mellitus by changes in lifestyle among subjects with impaired glucose tolerance. N Engl J Med. 2001;344:1343–50.
145. Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group. Reduction of the incidence of type 2 diabetes with lifestyle intervention or metformin. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:393–403.
146. Kelly MP, Morgan A, Bonnefoy J, Butt J, Bergman V, Mackenbach JP. The social determinants of health: developing an evidence base for political action. Final report to the World Health Organization Commission on the social determinants of health from the measurement and evidence knowledge network. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 2007.
147. Marmot M, Friel S, Bell R, Houweling TA, Taylor S, Commission on Social Determinants of H. Closing the gap in a generation: health equity through action on the social determinants of health. Lancet 2008;372:1661–1669.
148. Government of South Australia, World Health Organization. Implementing health in all policies: Adelaide 2010. Department of Health, Government of South Australia; Rundle Mall SA 5000; 2010.
149. Meiro-Lorenzo M, Villafana TL, Harrit MN. Effective responses to non-communicable diseases: embracing action beyond the health sector. Geneva: World Bank; 2011.
150. Barton H. City of well-being: a radical guide to planning. Oxon: Routledge; 2017.
151. World Health Organization Regional Office for Europe. National Healthy Cities Network in the WHO European Region; 2015.
152. Heritage Z. Promotion de la santé dans les villes santé OMS in Stratégies axées sur les milieux de vie. In: Sherlaw BJP, editor. La promotion de la santé – Comprendre pour agir dans le monde francophone. Rennes: Presses de l'EHESP; 2017. p. 165–7.
153. WHO Regional Office for Europe. WHO Healthy Cities project: review of the first 5 years (1987–1992). A working tool and a reference framework for evaluating the project. Copenhagen: Healthy Cities Project, World Health Organization, Regional Office for Europe; 1993.
154. Frank LD, Saelens BE, Powell KE, Chapman JE. Stepping towards causation: do built environments or neighborhood and travel preferences explain physical activity, driving, and obesity? Soc Sci Med. 2007;65:1898–914.
155. Réseau français des villes-santé de l OMS. Mobilites actives au quotidien Le rôle de collectivités. 2013.
156. World Health Organization Europe Regional O. Health economic assessment tool (HEAT) for walking and for cycling methods and user guide on physical activity, air pollution, injuries and carbon impact assessments. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2017.
157. International Union of Health Promotion and Education. Statement: shaping the future of health promotion: priorities for action. Health Promot Int. 2007;23:98–102.
158. Kemm J. Health impact assessment and Health in all policies. In: Stahl T, Wismar M, Ollila E, Lahtinen E, Leppo K, editors. Health in all policies: prospects and potentials. Helsinki: Finnish Ministry of Social Affairs and Health; 2008.
159. Barton H, Grant M. A health map for the local human habitat. J R Soc Promot Heal. 2006;126:252–3.
160. Abélès M. Anthropologie de la globalisation. Paris: Payot & Rivages; 2008.
161. Scholte JA. Globalization: a critical introduction: Macmillan international higher education; 2005.
162. Geertz C. After the fact — Clifford Geertz|Harvard University Press. Cambridge: Harvard Univ. Press; 1996.
163. Dollar D. Is globalization good for your health? Bull World Health Organ. 2001;79:827–33.
164. Cornia GA. Globalization and health: results and options. Bull World Health Organ. 2001;79:834–41.
165. Feachem RG. Globalisation is good for your health, mostly. BMJ. 2001;323:504–6.
166. Huynen MM, Martens P, Hilderink HB. The health impacts of globalization: a conceptual framework. Glob Health. 2005;1:14.
167. Fidler D. Global health governance: overview of the role of international law in protecting and promoting global public health. London: Centre on Global Change and Health, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine; 2002.

168. Labonte R, Schrecker T. Globalization and social determinants of health: promoting health equity in global governance (part 3 of 3). Glob Health. 2007;3:7.
169. Labonte R, Schrecker T. Globalization and social determinants of health: the role of the global marketplace (part 2 of 3). Glob Health. 2007;3:6.
170. Labonte R, Schrecker T. Globalization and social determinants of health: introduction and methodological background (part 1 of 3). Glob Health. 2007;3:5.
171. Suhrcke M, Stuckler D. Will the recession be bad for our health? It depends. Soc Sci Med. 2012;74:647–53.
172. Stuckler D, Basu S. The body economic: why austerity kills. Basic Books; 2013.
173. Wiklinson RG, Pickett K. Income inequality and social dysfunction. Annu Rev Sociol. 2009;35:493–511.
174. Bambra C. Work, worklessness and the political economy of health inequalities. J Epidemiol Community Health. 2011;65:746–50.
175. World Health Organization. Parma declaration on environment and health. Parma: World Health Organization; 2010.
176. Andreasson S, Colliander S, Von F, et al. Health impact assessment of the EU common agricultural policy contributors 1996.
177. Birt C. A CAP on health? The impact of the EU common agricultural policy on public health. London: Faculty of Public Health; 2007.
178. Deguen S, Petit C, Delbarre A, et al. Neighbourhood characteristics and long-term air pollution levels modify the association between the short-term nitrogen dioxide concentrations and all-cause mortality in Paris. PLoS One. 2015;10:e0131463.
179. Deguen S, Zmirou-Navier D. Social inequalities resulting from health risks related to ambient air quality – a European review. Eur J Pub Health. 2010;20:27–35.
180. Fondation Abbé Pierre. Rapport sur l'état du mal-logement en France. 2011.
181. Commission on Social Determinants of Health. Closing the gap in a generation: health equity through action on the social determinants of health. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2008.
182. Meyer PA. Healthier homes for a healthier nation. J Public Health Manag Pract. 2010;16:S1–2.
183. Ministère du travail de l'emploi et de la santé. Les effets du radon sur la santé. 2008.
184. Sandel M, Baeder A, Bradman A, et al. Housing interventions and control of health-related chemical agents: a review of the evidence. J Public Health Manag Pract. 2010;16:S24–33.
185. European Environmental Agency. About the urban environment. Annual Report 2011 and Environmental Statement 2012. Copenhaguen; 2011.
186. Northridge ME, Sclar ED, Biswas P. Sorting out the connections between the built environment and health: a conceptual framework for navigating pathways and planning healthy cities. J Urban Health. 2003;80:556–68.
187. Rydin Y, Bleahu A, Davies M, et al. Shaping cities for health: complexity and the planning of urban environments in the 21st century. Lancet. 2012;379:2079–108.
188. Franssen EA, van Wiechen CM, Nagelkerke NJ, Lebret E. Aircraft noise around a large international airport and its impact on general health and medication use. Occup Environ Med. 2004;61:405–13.
189. Klinenberg E. Heat wave: a social autopsy of disaster in Chicago. Chicago: University of Chicago Press; 2003.
190. WHO Regional Office for Europe. Urban planning, environment and health: from evidence to policy action. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2010.
191. Bernard P, Charafeddine R, Frohlich KL, Daniel M, Kestens Y, Potvin L. Health inequalities and place: a theoretical conception of neighbourhood. Soc Sci Med. 2007;65:1839–52.
192. Gibson M, Petticrew M, Bambra C, Sowden AJ, Wright KE, Whitehead M. Housing and health inequalities: a synthesis of systematic reviews of interventions aimed at different pathways linking housing and health. Health Place. 2011;17:175–84.
193. Leventhal T, Brooks-Gunn J. Moving to opportunity: an experimental study of neighborhood effects on mental health. Am J Public Health. 2003;93:1576–82.
194. Ludwig J, Sanbonmatsu L, Gennetian L, et al. Neighborhoods, obesity, and diabetes – a randomized social experiment. N Engl J Med. 2011;365:1509–19.
195. Bond L, Sautkina E, Kearns A. Mixed messages about mixed tenure: do reviews tell the real story? Hous Stud. 2011;26:69–94.
196. Lindberg RA, Shenassa ED, Acevedo-Garcia D, Popkin SJ, Villaveces A, Morley RL. Housing interventions at the neighborhood level and health: a review of the evidence. J Public Health Manag Pract. 2010;16:S44–52.
197. Cities Changing Diabetes. Accessed 28 Apr 2018, at www.citieschangingdiabetes.com.
198. Holt-Lunstad J, Smith TB, Layton JB. Social relationships and mortality risk: a meta-analytic review. PLoS Med. 2010;7:e1000316.
199. Brinkhues S, Dukers-Muijrers N, Hoebe C, et al. Socially isolated individuals are more prone to have newly diagnosed and prevalent type 2 diabetes mellitus – the Maastricht study. BMC Public Health. 2017;17:955.
200. Hempler NF, Joensen LE, Willaing I. Relationship between social network, social support and health behaviour in people with type 1 and type 2 diabetes: cross-sectional studies. BMC Public Health. 2016;16:198.
201. Wen M, Hawkley LC, Cacioppo JT. Objective and perceived neighborhood environment, individual SES and psychosocial factors, and self-rated health: an analysis of older adults in Cook County, Illinois. Soc Sci Med. 2006;63:2575–90.
202. Wu T, Chan A. Families, friends, and the neighborhood of older adults: evidence from public housing in Singapore. J Aging Res. 2012;2012:659806.
203. Kweon B-S, Sullivan WC, Wiley AR. Green common spaces and the social integration of inner-city older adults. Environ Behav. 1998;30:832–58.
204. Jetten J, Haslam C, Haslam SA, editors. The social cure: identity, health and well-being. New York: Psychology Press; 2012.
205. Brown SC, Mason CA, Lombard JL, et al. The relationship of built environment to perceived social support and psychological distress in Hispanic elders: the role of "eyes on the street". J Gerontol B Psychol Sci Soc Sci. 2009;64:234–46.
206. Richard L, Gauvin L, Gosselin C, Laforest S. Staying connected: neighbourhood correlates of social participation among older adults living in an urban environment in Montreal, Quebec. Health Promot Int. 2009;24:46–57.
207. Bowling A, Stafford M. How do objective and subjective assessments of neighbourhood influence social and physical functioning in older age? Findings from a British survey of ageing. Soc Sci Med. 2007;64:2533–49.
208. Freiler A, Muntaner C, Shankardass K, et al. Glossary for the implementation of Health in All Policies (HiAP). J Epidemiol Community Health. 2013;67:1068–72.
209. Sundsvall Statement on Supportive Environments for Health. 1991. At http://www.who.int/healthpromotion/conferences/previous/sundsvall/en/.
210. Christensen J, Bloch P, Møller SR, et al. Health in all local policies: lessons learned on intersectoral collaboration in a community-based health promotion network in Denmark. Int J Health Plann Manage. 2019;34:216–31.
211. Knowles JH. Responsibility for health. Science. 1977;198:1103.
212. Kim HS, Sherman DK, Taylor SE. Culture and social support. Am Psychol. 2008;63:518–26.

213. You C, Simons S, Porcherie M, Azzedine F, Breton E. How do local actors perceive health within a multisectoral program addressing living conditions?. 8th European Public Health Conference. Milan; 2015.
214. Durie R, Wyatt K. New communities, new relations: the impact of community organization on health outcomes. Soc Sci Med. 2007;65:1928–41.
215. Tamber PS. Interview with Jonathan Stead on transforming disadvantaged communities. thebmjopinion; 2015.
216. Lindstrom B, Eriksson M. Salutogenesis. J Epidemiol Community Health. 2005;59:440–2.
217. Frohlich KL, Abel T. Environmental justice and health practices: understanding how health inequities arise at the local level. Sociol Health Illn. 2014;36:199–212.
218. Antonovsky A. The salutogenic model as a theory to guide health promotion. Health Promot Int. 1996;11:11–8.
219. Villermé LR. Mémoire sur la mortalité en France dans la classe aisée et dans la classe indigente. Paris: J.-B. Baillière; 1828.
220. Krieger N. Who and what is a "population"? Historical debates, current controversies, and implications for understanding "population health" and rectifying health inequities. Milbank Q. 2012;90:634–81.
221. Albright AL, Gregg EW. Preventing type 2 diabetes in communities across the U.S.: the National Diabetes Prevention Program. Am J Prev Med. 2013;44:S346–51.

Social Determinants of Health and Diabetes Outcomes

5

Hideki Hashimoto

Introduction

Throughout this textbook, the disease burden of diabetes is taken as a major threat to global health [1, 2]. Understanding of the biomedical mechanisms of diabetes, such as insulin resistance and beta cell dysfunction, has dramatically deepened in the past few decades [3], and new pharmaceutical strategies (e.g., DPP-4 inhibitors) have been developed to better counter the disease. Despite all of the advancements in technology and science, however, diabetes remains a social challenge because the process and consequence of the disease's development are rooted in the very context of human behavior and life experiences. Indeed, accumulated evidence has confirmed that the burden of the disease is distributed unequally across populations and countries [4], as this chapter will review. This chapter aims to introduce readers to the concept of the "social determinants of diabetes" and to articulate the significance of this concept for policy discussions about confronting the social challenge of diabetes.

The following section presents a short review of the existing evidence regarding the societal distribution of diabetes morbidity and mortality. In the third section, theoretical frames relevant to explaining the societal distribution of the disease, including the concept of the "social determinants of health," are introduced. This section also articulates the negative impact caused by social stigma to the patients with diabetes that may interfere with effective self-care and treatment of diabetes. The fourth section discusses how the social determinants of diabetes could be translated into policy interventions to address the disparity in the burden of diabetes across populations, and the chapter concludes with some policy and research implications of the social determinants of diabetes.

This chapter focuses mainly on type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), although different effects for type 1 diabetes have also been observed in terms of mortality, morbidity, and access/adherence to high-quality diabetes care among people with different socioeconomic conditions reflected in occupational class, educational attainment, and income levels [5]. The mechanism through which type 1 diabetes affects people with lower socioeconomic positions more seriously remains open to academic and clinical debate, and whether the mechanism of the disparity is distinct from that of T2DM is unclear. Although access to quality health care is suspected to contribute, some have argued that the "opportunity costs" of properly conducting self-care management, in terms of psychological, economic (including time), and social costs, may be higher for those with lower socioeconomic positions, and this likely prohibits them from effectively protecting their own health. We return to this point later in the chapter.

Social Disparity in the Diabetes Burden

A large body of evidence has been accumulated on the unequal distribution of the incidence, comorbidity, and mortality of T2DM among people, depending on income level, occupational class, educational attainment, gender, race/ethnicity, and the economic development stage of the country where they live [4]. Of these factors, socioeconomic position, measured as household income, occupational class, educational attainment, or the combination of these attributes, has been the most widely studied in terms of its association with diabetes outcomes. In general, diabetes incidence, or the population rate of new development of diabetes, is consistently reported to be higher among those with lower socioeconomic positions in developed countries, and limited empirical findings indicate that this is possibly also the case in middle-low-income countries [6].

However, the association may vary by gender. A study using data from a European cross-country panel survey of the aged population showed no consistent association between diabetes incidence and education among men, whereas a significant and negative association between these variables among women remained even after adjusting

H. Hashimoto (✉)
Health and Social Behavior, The University of Tokyo School of Public Health, Bunkyo, Tokyo, Japan
e-mail: hidehashimoto-circ@umin.ac.jp

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_5

for body mass index and lifestyle-related behaviors such as physical activity [7]. Another cross-country study of existing cohorts in European countries found a consistently higher diabetes incidence rate in subgroups with lower education for both genders; this effect remained significant but was substantially attenuated by including body mass index in the model [8]. A study using data from the Canadian Community Health Survey also found an education gradient in diabetes incidence that was clearer among women than among men and was partially explained by body mass index [9]. A nationally representative study using the US National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey also showed a stronger relationship between diabetes incidence and education among women than among men [10]. An exceptional result was reported for a recent Chinese population-based survey: This study revealed a negative relationship between diabetes incidence and education among men, but not among women [11].

As for diabetes mortality, a US study showed that lower income and lower education were related to higher diabetes-related mortality [12]. In a similar vein, a number of studies in developed countries have shown that lower socioeconomic position was related to a higher chance of diabetes-related comorbidities (e.g., retinopathy and nephropathy), even among patients with diabetes [13–15].

Turning to diabetes prevalence or the proportion of current patients with diabetes among the general population, several studies in middle-low-income countries have demonstrated that subpopulations with higher socioeconomic positions have a higher prevalence of diabetes [16, 17], whereas reports from high-income countries consistently show that diabetes prevalence is higher among those with lower socioeconomic status [7, 18, 19]. In Ghana, the associations of diabetes prevalence with socioeconomic positions have been found to differ between urban and rural regions [20, 21].

Mixed results for diabetes prevalence by socioeconomic position could be explained by the associations of socioeconomic position with diabetes incidence and mortality varying across regions and countries by level of economic development. Where the higher incidence of diabetes among those in lower socioeconomic positions has been overwhelmed by the higher mortality of diabetes in that stratum, it may lead to a lower diabetes prevalence among those in lower socioeconomic positions. If the disparity in mortality by socioeconomic position is compensated for by access to diabetes care and the survivorship of patients in lower socioeconomic positions is relatively improved, it may result in a higher prevalence of diabetes among those in lower socioeconomic positions, simply reflecting the higher incidence of the disease among that subpopulation.

A series of recent studies has focused on socioeconomic conditions in early life. A review of ten existing studies indicated that experiencing low socioeconomic conditions during early childhood was related to current diabetes morbidity, though the association varied by gender and conditional adult risk factors (e.g., obesity) [21]. Very few studies have shown a protective effect of low childhood socioeconomic position on adult diabetes status (ibd).

More recently, a US-based cohort study reported that early socioeconomic position predicted current diabetes (measured as blood glucose and HbA1c), and the association was significantly mediated by current waist circumference, physical activity, and depressive symptoms [22]. Along the same lines, a population-based study in the Netherlands found self-reported economic difficulties during childhood and parental educational attainment to be significantly associated with current diabetes status, although these associations were attenuated after adjustment for current socioeconomic conditions [23]. Taken together, these results imply that early socioeconomic hardship may increase the risk of diabetes-related risk factors in adulthood, indicating the significance of life-course trajectories and critical windows during childhood for the later onset of diabetes in adulthood.

Some studies have even explored the association of child abuse experience with diabetes outcomes in adulthood. A study using data from the Canadian Community Health Survey showed that the experience of childhood abuse was related to self-reported diabetes status and the association was substantially mediated by diabetes risk factors such as obesity and smoking [24]. Similar findings were obtained in the US Nurses' Health Study, in which the participants were registered nurses and were therefore relatively homogenous in their current socioeconomic position. Despite the relatively higher and homogenous educational attainment of the study participants, adverse experience during childhood showed a significant impact on diabetes incidence [25].

These observational studies indicate that development, disease control, and subsequent prognosis of diabetes are highly dependent on the social context in which people are situated throughout their lives.

Supposed Mechanism of Social Disparity in Diabetes

Individual risk factors for diabetes are related to lifestyle behaviors (e.g., obesity and physical activity), and the control of diabetes requires the healthy modification of these behaviors. Indeed, observed socioeconomic disparities in diabetes incidence, morbidity, and mortality were substantially explained by socioeconomic differences in lifestyle behaviors—especially obesity [6, 26]. However, this does not yet explain why such differences in lifestyle behaviors by

socioeconomic position and gender occur at all or how they are translated into disparities in the burden of diabetes.

Brown et al. proposed a model to help us comprehend the complex mechanism of diabetes development within a social context. In this model, lifestyle behaviors, access to care, and the process of care are set as proximal causes that link socioeconomic conditions and diabetes outcomes [27]. Brown et al. further advocated the inclusion of individual's health literacy, psychological stress, demands competing with self-care activities (e.g., time constraints), and availability of social support as mediating factors linking socioeconomic conditions to lifestyle behavioral choices and effective negotiation with health-care professionals for diabetes care. In addition, environmental factors such as the local availability of healthy food, walkability, and safety may also influence whether people make healthier behavioral choices. However, the most recent review on T2DM and environmental risk factors [28] and other related review articles on obesity [29] and nutrition [30] have concluded that, although the built environment (e.g., food access, walkability, and crime) is potentially associated with the chance of diabetes and related risk factors, the strength of the evidence for these associations is currently limited because of heterogeneity in measurement and study design, precluding comparison across studies.

Another conceptual model and literature review criticized the existing literature on socioeconomic conditions and diabetes outcomes for focusing too much on individual-level factors, such as behaviors and literacy, and emphasized the significance of the larger social context, such as family, health-care system, and society as a whole, which shapes an individual's likelihood of engaging in diabetes-related risk behaviors [31].

As seen earlier in this chapter, several studies have indicated that socioeconomic conditions affect the access to and the process quality of diabetes care [13–15]. Notably, the majority of these reports have been from countries with universal public health insurance coverage, suggesting that universal health insurance coverage may not be enough to close the socioeconomic gap in diabetes outcomes. Indeed, a study using the UK-based cohort of the Whitehall II study found that universal health insurance coverage may not be enough [26]. Among civil servants in the United Kingdom, this study found that the socioeconomic gradients in diabetes-related morbidity and mortality were substantially mediated by cardiovascular risk factors such as blood pressure and smoking. Most striking was the finding that such socioeconomic gradients in diabetes outcomes were found even among civil servants, who had relatively good job security, and even in the United Kingdom, where public health care is widely available without copayment.

Social relationships in the family and community are powerful structures that influence the distribution of obesity in society [32]. Social networks are supposed to provide a norm about obesity, psychological support, conflict-influencing behaviors, and/or social selection processes where "birds of a feather flock together" [33].

Recent studies have focused on the social influence of the stigma faced by patients with diabetes [33–37]. Patients with diabetes are often stereotyped as lazy and undisciplined, and they are blamed as responsible for their own diabetes condition. Prevailing social stigma, even among health-care professionals, causes psychological and social isolation and excludes patients with diabetes from social participation and effective self-care management.

Culture is another aspect of the social context that hinders effective communication and shared decisionmaking between patients with diabetes and health-care professionals. Although studies focusing specifically on cultural aspects of patients with diabetes are scarce, the existing literature suggests that cultural norms about the body, food, and physical activity influence people's lifestyle-related choices [27].

In addition to macro-social mechanisms, biological mechanisms also need to be understood to see the whole picture of how social context gets "under the skin." The most influential biological mechanism is the intrauterine programming and thrifty phenotype hypothesis (also known as the Barker hypothesis) [38]. This hypothesis views exposure to low nutrient intake during the fetal stage as causing adaptation for survival, which, in turn, causes diabetes in adulthood when the nutritional environment becomes richer. Several epidemiological studies support the idea in that those who experienced poor nutrition during early life have higher risks of obesity, insulin resistance, and diabetes [39–41]. Recent epigenetic research has further investigated how the early environment becomes inscribed on the epigenome as "metabolic memory" that reveals itself later in life as metabolic dysfunction [42].

Another series of studies has suggested a possible role of chronic inflammation. A UK-based longitudinal survey revealed that about 50% of the excess risk of T2DM incidence associated with low socioeconomic position was explained by lifestyle behaviors, whereas a quarter of this excess risk was explained by chronic inflammation markers such as C-reactive protein and interleukin-6 [43, 44]. The role of chronic inflammation may indicate a biological mechanism that translates social stress related to low socioeconomic position into a pathological path leading to insulin resistance and beta cell dysfunction.

As we have reviewed so far, no single theory can tell the whole story about how social context gets "under the skin" and results in differential diabetes outcomes. This is why two larger frameworks are needed to comprehend diabetes as a social challenge—namely, the ecological perspective and the life-course perspective.

The ecological perspective regards individuals as nested within families, which are further nested within communities, which are further nested within larger social contexts, such as states. All of these levels (individual–family–community–society) interact with each other. For example, an individual's behavioral choices may be enhanced if he/she has a supportive relationship with his/her family and community. A supportive relationship is more likely to be available if the community environment is safe and has relatively less deprivation—factors that will be further determined by a nation's economy and social policies.

The life-course perspective examines the sequence of life stages from the fetal period to childhood, adolescence, young adulthood, midlife, and later stages of life. Each stage exhibits a unique window, with specific vulnerabilities to biological, behavioral, and psychosocial risk factors for chronic disease, and the impact in a certain stage will echo in the later stages [45]. For example, life difficulties in early stages affect an individual's chances of getting diabetes in later life through biological programming, reduced opportunities to nurture health literacy, and smaller changes of obtaining a secure job and income, which will further impede access to necessary health-care resources.

Bridging the ecological and life-course perspectives is the concept of the "social determinants of health." This concept sees health as determined not only by medical systems but also by daily life conditions where people are born, live, learn, and work [46]. The concept of the social determinants of health can be applied to diabetes. As the above review shows, to achieve equity in diabetes outcomes, it is important—but not sufficient—to provide equal access to quality health care. The social determinants of health concept indicates that changes should be made in the root cause of the biological, behavioral, psychosocial, and socioeconomic causes of health gaps (ibid; Figures A and B). For this purpose, the social determinants of health concept require interventions that are multilevel, multi-domain, and longitudinal.

Health-care sectors are important, but it is not only institutes that enable a reduction in the health gap. For example, a study from Scotland based on a nationwide clinical database reported that diabetes incidence declined from 2004 to 2013 in all socioeconomic strata except the lowest decile—the most deprived group. This group showed a resurgence in diabetes incidence beginning in 2010, after the global economic shock, resulting in widening socioeconomic disparity in diabetes incidence, especially among women [47]. Apparently, macroeconomic policy is a strong social structural determinant of health. Attention to the social determinants of health calls for inter-sectorial collaboration across health, finance, labor and industry, education, civil engineering, and other sectors in government and global institutes [46].

Social Determinants of Diabetes Interventions to Close the Social Gap in Diabetes Outcomes

What can be done to close the social gap in diabetes outcomes? Good quality of diabetes care should be available to all, regardless of socioeconomic status, ethnicity/race, or gender. The introduction of universal health coverage is a high priority policy for closing the gap [1, 2]. However, this is not sufficient; quality care availability may help to close the gap in diabetes mortality, but it will do little to prevent a gap in diabetes morbidity and, especially, incidence.

Lifestyle and related behaviors are strong risk factors for diabetes outcomes, and the provision of information through community education to support people in making healthier choices is promising. Indeed, a large randomized clinical trial showed intensive health education will have a significant preventive impact on diabetes incidence, if the intervention is properly prepared [48]. However, a longer follow-up of the same randomized clinical trial revealed that the difference originally observed between the treatment and control groups gradually declined over time [49]. This decline was not simply because the program effectiveness attenuated over time after the intervention ended; rather, it was because behavioral change among the control group caught up with that of the treatment group patients over time, suggesting that factors other than the educational program influenced behaviors among patients with prediabetes afterward. Social changes in the norms about healthy diet and habitual exercise, improvements in access to supportive information, and environments facilitating the maintenance of behavioral modifications are the suspected explanation. This supports the idea that behavioral choices are not completely volitional; instead, behaviors are influenced by social, economic, cultural, and other structures. Creating supportive environments for behavioral modification toward healthier lifestyles is promising. However, existing reviews on the effectiveness of policy interventions such as the development of walkable cities and improving access to heathier food in the community concluded that the current evidence is mixed and further research on the effectiveness of environmental architecture and other interventions on the social determinants of diabetes is required [28, 29, 31].

Among the possible policy interventions, accumulating evidence has begun to show that sugar taxes, or the taxation of sugar-sweetened beverages, are a promising policy on obesity prevention [50]. The sugar tax and the subsequent price increase of sugar-sweetened beverages are expected to provide disincentives for consumers' purchasing decisions. By nature, this intervention is regressive: The disincentives have a stronger influence on the poor, who have lower income, suggesting that the impact of the sugar tax on obesity prevention should be largest among the poor, who are also at higher

risk of obesity. Currently, the policy has already been introduced in several countries, including Mexico, where the consumption of sugar-sweetened beverages has been considered a major target for reducing caloric intake for obesity prevention, especially among children and poor adults. In April 2014, the Mexican government enacted a policy to incur a 1 peso-per-liter excise tax on all sugar-sweetened beverages. This has resulted in a reduction in the consumption of sugar-sweetened beverages, and, as expected, the impact was observed to be larger among low-income households than among high-income households [51, 52]. More recent studies using simulation models have suggested that the impact of this policy on reducing consumption will result in a considerable reduction in obesity and related diabetes incidence [53]. Although the Mexican case seems to have been highly successful, the introduction of taxes for health promotion is not always effective or politically feasible [54, 55]. Additionally, because of the regressive nature of this type of policy, such a "sin tax" for health promotion should be accompanied by alternative, healthy choices at affordable prices for the poor.

Despite its challenges, the sugar tax provides a good example of the "proportional universalism" approach or the universal inclusion of people in health promotion, with resource allocation proportional to needs or risks [56]. As we argued earlier, patients with diabetes are vulnerable to social stigma, and high-risk approaches that target people with high diabetes risks (e.g., targeted educational interventions for patients with prediabetes) often induce discrimination and subsequent social exclusion among targeted vulnerable people. Instead, universalism approach will provide a wider range of community people with the opportunity for self-management of their own health without selection. In addition to offering community campaigns to reduce social stigma by providing precise information on the etiology and control of diabetes, health-care professionals should be aware of the significance of structural interventions for changing the social environment to help people achieve healthier lifestyles in a socially inclusive manner (Figs. 5.1, 5.2, and 5.3).

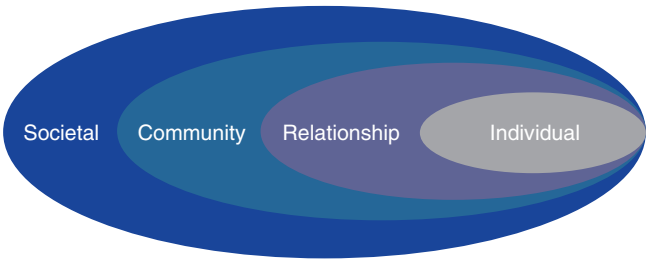


Fig. 5.1 Ecological structure. (Source: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. The Social-Ecological Model: A Framework for Prevention. Downloaded on June 15, 2018 at https://www.cdc.gov/violenceprevention/overview/social-ecologicalmodel.html)

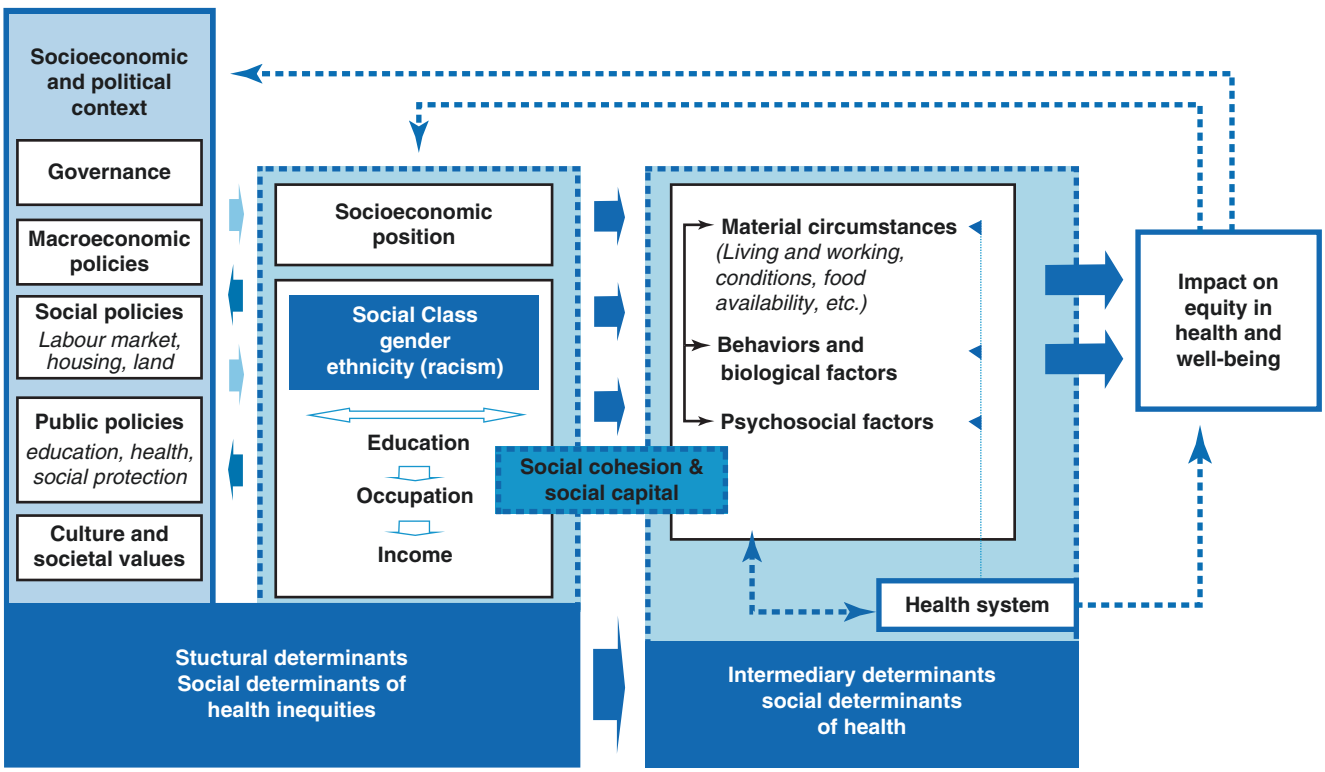


Fig. 5.2 Structural and intermediary social determinants of health and health impact. (Source: World Health Organization (2010a), Conceptual Framework of Social Determinants of Health, Paper 2, Figure A, p. 6)

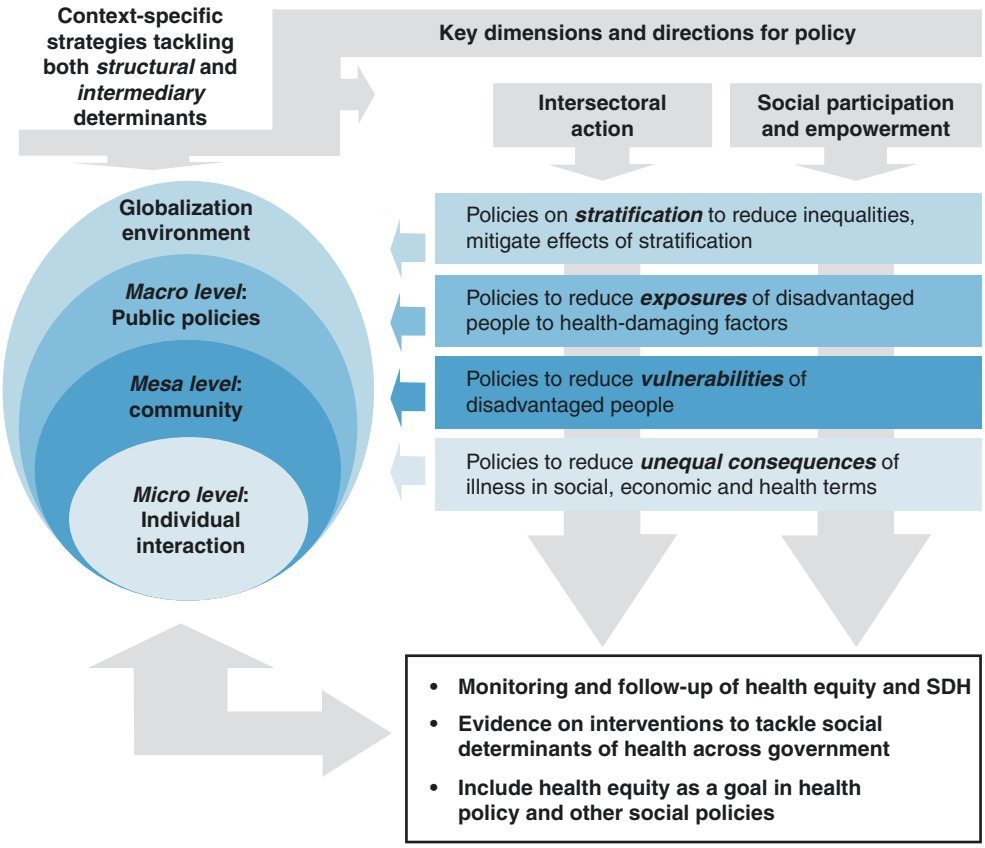


Fig. 5.3 Levels of policy to address social determinants of health. (Source: World Health Organization (2010a), Conceptual Framework of Social Determinants of Health, Paper 2, Figure B, p. 8)

Conclusion

Epidemiological and clinical studies have convincingly demonstrated that the disease burden of diabetes is disproportionally distributed across society because the incidence, mortality, and morbidity of diabetes are influenced by the socioeconomic and environmental determinants of diabetes. Lifestyle behaviors such as diet and exercise are significant factors in diabetes control, and they are shaped not only by individual capacity but also by the social environment surrounding individuals. Interventions to improve diabetes control among selective high-risk groups through lifestyle modification have been shown to be effective. However, this selective approach may run the risk of inducing social stigma toward people with high diabetes risk, which may seriously hinder effective self-care. As an alternative, the proportionate universalism approach, putting forward structural interventions to change the social environmental determinants of diabetes, is promising, although it will require further research and policy evaluation to effectively translate the concept into action, helping people to overcome the social challenges of diabetes.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Which of the following statements best fits the concept of the social determinants of diabetes? (Choose one that fits best.)
   (a) Patients' rights to quality of diabetes care should be addressed.
   (b) Patients are responsible for modifying their lifestyles to improve diabetes control.
   (c) The government health sector should provide community education to improve knowledge about diabetes risks.
   (d) All social, economic, and health policies related to people's life-course experiences should be considered in terms of their potential leverage to close the gap among people in the diabetes burden.
   (e) None of the above.
2. What determines the prevalence of diabetes? (Choose one.)
   (a) Genomic predisposition
   (b) Local availability of healthy food
   (c) Education
   (d) Motorization (transportation by car driving)
   (e) All of the above

3. Which subpopulation is more vulnerable to diabetes incidence? (Choose one.)
   (a) Richer men
   (b) Poorer men
   (c) Richer women
   (d) Poorer women
   (e) This depends on the local stage of economic and social development.
4. Which of the following options describes a policy intervention that is in the frame of the social determinants of diabetes? (Choose all correct responses.)
   (a) Research and development of genetic treatments for diabetes
   (b) Patient education to improve adherence to diabetes care regimens
   (c) Introduction of a sugar tax
   (d) Improvement of health literacy among community dwellers
   (e) Civil engineering to design a walkable city
5. Why is the incidence of diabetes higher among people with lower socioeconomic status in low-middle-income countries as well as in high-income countries? (Choose all correct responses.)
   (a) Limited availability of healthy food
   (b) Limited affordability of resources to sustain healthy lifestyles
   (c) Lower health literacy to support heathy lifestyles
   (d) Early life experience with deprivation and the related physical manifestations
   (e) Social influence of close peers with poor diets and prevalent smoking
6. Which of the following statements fits the ecological model of health and diabetes? (Choose one.)
   (a) An individual's dietary habits are influenced by family and close friends.
   (b) Walking habits are facilitated if the community is safe and walkable.
   (c) Healthy diets are discouraged if the availability of fresh vegetables is limited in the community.
   (d) The national economy affects an individual's chances of having suitable resources to protect their own health.
   (e) All of the above.
7. How does the social stigma of patients with diabetes affect their self-management of the disease? (Choose one.)
   (a) Social stigma blames patients with diabetes, considering them responsible for their own disease.
   (b) Social stigma socially excludes patients with diabetes from necessary social support.
   (c) Social stigma discourages self-esteem and self-efficacy related to self-management among patients with diabetes.
   (d) Patients with diabetes are forced to conceal their diabetes status in public because of fear of stigmatization.
   (e) All of the above.
8. Which of the following options best fits the concept of the "proportionate universalism" approach to tackling social disparity in the diabetes burden?
   (a) Screening for obesity to provide publicly subsidized education programs for behavioral modification
   (b) Targeting people with low incomes or low educational attainment to provide free vouchers for fresh and healthy food
   (c) The introduction of a sugar tax on sweetened beverages to reduce the sugar intake in the general population
   (d) Free provision of diabetes care for people living in targeted communities, with means testing
   (e) All of the above
9. What are the strengths and weaknesses of the population approach compared with the high-risk approach? (Discuss.)

Correct Answers

1. (d) All social, economic, and health policies related to people's life-course experiences should be considered in terms of their potential leverage to close the gap among people in the diabetes burden.
2. (e) All of the above
3. (e) This depends on the local stage of economic and social development.
4. (c, d, and e)
5. Correct answers were all (a, b, c, d, and e)
6. (e) All of the above.
7. (e) All of the above
8. (c)

References

1. Bommer C, Heesemann E, Sagalova V, Manne-Goehler J, Atun R, Barnighausen T, Vollmer S. The global economic burden of diabetes in adults aged 20–79 years: a cost-of-illness study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017;5:423–30.
2. World Health Organization. Global report on diabetes 2016. http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/204871/9789241565257_eng.pdf?sequence=1.
3. Kahn SE, Cooper ME, Del Prato S. Pathophysiology and treatment of type 2 diabetes: perspectives on the past, present, and future. Lancet. 2014;383:1068–83.
4. World Health Organization. Equity, social determinants and public health programmes 2010. http://www.who.int/iris/handle/10665/44289.
5. Scott A, Chambers D, Goyder E, O'Cathain A. Socioeconomic inequalities in mortality, morbidity and diabetes management

for adults with type 1 diabetes: a systematic review. PLoS One. 2017;12:e0177210. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0177210.
6. Agardh E, Allebeck P, Hallqvist J, Moradi T, Sidorchuk A. Type 2 diabetes incidence and socio-economic position: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Int J Epidemiol. 2011;40:804–18.
7. Espelt A, Arriola L, Borrell C, Larranaga I, Sandin M, Escolar-Pujolar A. Socioeconomic position and type 2 diabetes mellitus in Europe 1999–2009: a panorama of inequalities. Curr Diabetes Rev. 2011;7:148–58.
8. Sacerdote C, Ricceri F, Rolandsson O, Baldi I, Chirlaque MD, Feskens E, et al. Lower educational level is a predictor of incident type 2 diabetes in European countries: the EPIC–InterAct study. Int J Epidemiol. 2012;41:1162–73.
9. Smith PM, Smith BT, Mustard CA, Lu H, Glazier RH. Estimating the direct and indirect pathways between education and diabetes incidence among Canadian men and women: a mediation analysis. Ann Epidemiol. 2013;23:143–9.
10. Robbins JM, Vaccarino V, Zhang H, Kasl SV. Socioeconomic status and diagnosed diabetes incidence. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2005;68:230–6.
11. Shang X, Li J, Tao Q, Li J, Li X, Zhang L, et al. Educational level, obesity and incidence of diabetes among Chinese adult men and women aged 18–59 years old: an 11-year follow-up study. PLoS One. 2013;8:e66479. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0066479.
12. Saydah S, Lochner K. Socioeconomic status and risk of diabetes-related mortality in the U.S. Public Health Rep. 2010;125:377–88.
13. Funakoshi M, Azami Y, Matsumoto H, Ikota A, Ito K, Okimoto H, et al. Socioeconomic status and type 2 diabetes complications among young adult patients in Japan. PLoS One. 2017;12:e0176087. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0176087.
14. Grintsova O, Maier W, Mielck A. Inequalities in health care among patients with type 2 diabetes by individual socioeconomic status (SES) and regional deprivation: a systematic literature review. Int J Equity Health. 2014;13:43. https://doi.org/10.1186/1475-9276-13-43.
15. Lamy S, Ducros D, Dimeglio C, Colineaux H, Fantin R, Berger E, et al. Disentangling the influence of living place and socioeconomic position on health services use among diabetes patients: a population-based study. PLoS One. 2017;12:e0188295. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0188295.
16. Corsi DJ, Subramanian SV. Association between socioeconomic status and self-reported diabetes in India: a cross-sectional multilevel analysis. BMJ Open. 2012;2:e000895. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2012-000895.
17. Tareque MI, Koshio A, Tiedt AD, Hasegawa T. Are the rates of hypertension and diabetes higher in people from lower socioeconomic status in Bangladesh? Results from a nationally representative survey. PLoS One. 2015;10:e0127954. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0127954.
18. Jaffiol C, Thomas F, Bean K, Jego B, Danchin N. Impact of socioeconomic status on diabetes and cardiovascular risk factors: results of a large French survey. Diabetes Metab. 2013;39:56–62.
19. Wikstrom K, Lindstrom J, Tuomilehto J, Saaristo TE, Korpi-Hyovalti E, Oksa H, et al. Socio-economic differences in dysglycemia and lifestyle-related risk factors in the Finnish middle-aged population. Eur J Pub Health. 2011;21:768–74.
20. Addo J, Agyemang C, de-Graft Aikins A, Beune E, Schulze MB, Danquah I, et al. Association between socioeconomic position and the prevalence of type 2 diabetes in Ghanaians in different geographic locations: the RODAM study. J Epidemiol Community Health. 2017;71:633–9.
21. Tamayo T, Christian H, Rathmann W. Impact of early psychosocial factors (childhood socioeconomic factors and adversities) on future risk of type 2 diabetes, metabolic disturbances and obesity: a systematic review. BMC Public Health. 2010;10:525. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2458-10-525.
22. Tsenkova V, Pudrovska T, Karlamangla A. Childhood socioeconomic disadvantage and prediabetes and diabetes in later life: a study of biopsychosocial pathways. Psychosom Med. 2014;76:622–8.
23. Derks IP, Koster A, Schram MT, Stehouwer CD, Dagnelie PC, Groffen DA, et al. The association of early life socioeconomic conditions with prediabetes and type 2 diabetes: results from the Maastricht study. Int J Equity Health. 2017;16:61. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12939-017-0553-7.
24. Shields ME, Hovdestad WE, Pelletier C, Dykxhoorn JL, O'Donnell SC, Tonmyr L. Childhood maltreatment as a risk factor for diabetes: findings from a population-based survey of Canadian adults. BMC Public Health. 2016;16:879. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12889-016-3491-1.
25. Rich-Edwards JW, Spiegelman D, Lividoti Hibert EN, Jun HJ, Todd TJ, Kawachi I, et al. Abuse in childhood and adolescence as a predictor of type 2 diabetes in adult women. Am J Prev Med. 2010;39:529–36.
26. Chaturvedi N, Jarrett J, Shipley MJ, Fuller JH. Socioeconomic gradient in morbidity and mortality in people with diabetes: cohort study findings from the Whitehall Study and the WHO Multinational Study of Vascular Disease in Diabetes. BMJ. 1998;316:100–5.
27. Brown AF, Ettner SL, Piette J, Weinberger M, Gregg E, Shapiro M, et al. Socioeconomic position and health among persons with diabetes mellitus: a conceptual framework and review of the literature. Epidemiol Rev. 2004;26:63–77.
28. Dendup T, Feng X, Clingan S, Astell-Burt T. Environmental risk factors for developing type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2018;15 https://doi.org/10.3390/ijerph15010078.
29. Feng J, Glass TA, Curriero FC, Stewart WF, Schwartz BS. The built environment and obesity: a systematic review of the epidemiologic evidence. Health Place. 2010;16:175–90.
30. Black C, Moon G, Baird J. Dietary inequalities: what is the evidence for the effect of the neighbourhood food environment? Health Place. 2014;27:229–42.
31. Gary-Webb TL, Suglia SF, Tehranifar P. Social epidemiology of diabetes and associated conditions. Curr Diab Rep. 2013;13:850–9.
32. Christakis NA, Fowler JH. The spread of obesity in a large social network over 32 years. N Engl J Med. 2007;357:370–9.
33. Powell K, Wilcox J, Clonan A, Bissell P, Preston L, Peacock M, Holdsworth M. The role of social networks in the development of overweight and obesity among adults: a scoping review. BMC Public Health. 2015;15 https://doi.org/10.1186/s12889-015-2314-0.
34. Browne JL, Ventura A, Mosely K, Speight J. 'I call it the blame and shame disease': a qualitative study about perceptions of social stigma surrounding type 2 diabetes. BMJ Open. 2013;3:e003384. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2013-003384.
35. Browne JL, Ventura A, Mosely K, Speight J. 'I'm not a druggie, I'm just a diabetic': a qualitative study of stigma from the perspective of adults with type 1 diabetes. BMJ Open. 2014;4:e005625. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2014-005625.
36. Kato A, Fujimaki Y, Fujimori S, Isogawa A, Onishi Y, Suzuki R, et al. Psychological and behavioural patterns of stigma among patients with type 2 diabetes: a cross-sectional study. BMJ Open. 2017;7:e013425. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2016-013425.
37. Kato A, Fujimaki Y, Fujimori S, Izumida Y, Suzuki R, Ueki K, et al. A qualitative study on the impact of internalized stigma on type 2 diabetes self-management. Patient Educ Couns. 2016;99:1233–9.
38. Hales CN, Barker DJ. Type 2 (non-insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus: the thrifty phenotype hypothesis. Diabetologia. 1992;35:595–601.

39. Painter RC, Roseboom TJ, Bleker OP. Prenatal exposure to the Dutch famine and disease in later life: an overview. Reprod Toxicol. 2005;20:345–52.
40. Singhal A, Fewtrell M, Cole TJ, Lucas A. Low nutrient intake and early growth for later insulin resistance in adolescents born preterm. Lancet. 2003;361:1089–97.
41. Symonds ME, Sebert SP, Hyatt MA, Budge H. Nutritional programming of the metabolic syndrome. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2009;5:604–10.
42. Waki H, Yamauchi T, Kadowaki T. The epigenome and its role in diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2012;12:673–85.
43. Stringhini S, Zaninotto P, Kumari M, Kivimaki M, Batty GD. Lifecourse, socioeconomic status and type 2 diabetes: the role of chronic inflammation in the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing. Sci Rep. 2016;6:24780. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep24780.
44. Stringhini S, Batty GD, Bovet P, Shipley MJ, Marmot MG, Kumari M, et al. Association of lifecourse socioeconomic status with chronic inflammation and type 2 diabetes risk: the Whitehall II prospective cohort study. PLoS Med. 2013;10:e1001479. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.1001479.
45. Kuh D, Ben-Shlomo Y. A life-course approach to chronic disease epidemiology. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 1997.
46. World Health Organization. A Conceptual Framework for Action on the Social Determinants of Health 2010. http://www.who.int/sdhconference/resources/ConceptualframeworkforactiononSDH_eng.pdf.
47. Read SH, Kerssens JJ, McAllister DA, Colhoun HM, Fischbacher CM, Lindsay RS, for Scottish Diabetes Research Network Epidemiology Group. Trends in type 2 diabetes incidence and mortality in Scotland between 2004 and 2013. Diabetologia. 2016;59:2106–13.
48. Knowler WC, Barrett-Connor E, Fowler SE, Hamman RF, Lachin JM, Walker, EA, et al., for Diabetes Prevention Program Research, Group. Reduction in the incidence of type 2 diabetes with lifestyle intervention or metformin. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:393–403.
49. Knowler WC, Fowler SE, Hamman RF, Christophi CA, Hoffman HJ, Nathan DM. 10-year follow-up of diabetes incidence and weight loss in the Diabetes Prevention Program Outcomes Study. Lancet. 2009;374:1677–86.
50. Backholer K, Sarink D, Beauchamp A, Keating C, Loh V, Ball K, et al. The impact of a tax on sugar-sweetened beverages according to socio-economic position: a systematic review of the evidence. Public Health Nutr. 2016;19:3070–84.
51. Colchero MA, Guerrero-Lopez CM, Molina M, Rivera JA. Beverages sales in Mexico before and after implementation of a sugar sweetened beverage tax. PLoS One. 2016;11:e0163463. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0163463.
52. Colchero MA, Popkin BM, Rivera JA, Ng SW. Beverage purchases from stores in Mexico under the excise tax on sugar sweetened beverages: observational study. BMJ. 2016;352:h6704. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.h6704.
53. Barrientos-Gutierrez T, Zepeda-Tello R, Rodrigues ER, Colchero MA, Rojas-Martinez R, Lazcano-Ponce E, et al. Expected population weight and diabetes impact of the 1-peso-per-litre tax to sugar sweetened beverages in Mexico. PLoS One. 2017;12:e0176336. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0176336.
54. Bodker M, Pisinger C, Toft U, Jorgensen T. The rise and fall of the world's first fat tax. Health Policy. 2015;119:737–42.
55. Wright A, Smith KE, Hellowell M. Policy lessons from health taxes: a systematic review of empirical studies. BMC Public Health. 2017;17:583. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12889-017-4497-z.
56. Carey G, Crammond B, De Leeuw E. Towards health equity: a framework for the application of proportionate universalism. Int J Equity Health. 2015;14:81. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12939-015-0207-6.

6 Definition, Diagnostic Criteria, Screening, Diagnosis, and Classification of Diabetes and Categories of Glucose Intolerance

Lakshmana Perumal Nandhini,
Sadishkumar Kamalanathan, and Jayaprakash Sahoo

Abbreviations

AACC	American Association of Clinical Chemistry
ABCC8	ATP-binding cassette, subfamily C, member 8
ACOG	American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists
ADA	American Diabetes Association
CVD	Cardiovascular disease
DCCT	Diabetes Control and Complications Trial
DM	Diabetes mellitus
FCPD	Fibrocalculous pancreatic diabetes
FPG	Fasting plasma glucose
GAD	Glutamic acid decarboxylase
GCT	Glucose challenge test
GDM	Gestational diabetes mellitus
GLUT	Glucose transporter
HAPO	Hyperglycemia and pregnancy outcome
HbA1C	Hemoglobin A1c
IA-2	Islet antigen 2
IADPSG	International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups
IFCC	International Federation of Clinical Chemistry and Laboratory Medicine
IFG	Impaired fasting glucose
IGT	Impaired glucose tolerance
KCNJ11	Potassium inwardly rectifying channel, subfamily J, member 11
MODY	Maturity-onset diabetes of the young
NDDG	National Diabetes Data Group
NGSP	National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program
NICE	National Institute for Health and Care Excellence
NODAT	New-onset diabetes after transplantation
OGTT	Oral glucose tolerance test
PDAC	Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma
PG	Plasma glucose
SSA	Somatostatin agonists
UKPDS	United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study
WHO	World Health Organization
ZnT8	Zinc transporter 8

Objectives of the Chapter

- The aim of this chapter is to delineate the definition of diabetes mellitus and its diagnostic criteria. Following a brief discussion on evolution of the current diagnostic criteria, the recent ADA criteria and recommendations for screening will be discussed.
- The section on the diagnostic criteria for gestational diabetes compares and contrasts the various criteria recommended by different professional bodies and their merits. This section will also discuss the utility and fallacies of HbA1C as a measure of glycemic status.
- The section on classification of diabetes lists the various aetiologies of diabetes mellitus based on the pathophysiology or common mechanisms for better understanding. Few subsections like "endocrinopathies" and "drugs causing diabetes" are discussed in brief.

Definition

The word diabetes is derived from its Greek root which means "to pass through," referring to polyuria – the hallmark symptom of diabetes mellitus (DM). The word mellitus means "from honey," denoting glycosuria, differentiating it from its close mimic, diabetes insipidus [1].

DM is defined by the World Health Organization (WHO) as a metabolic syndrome characterized by chronic hyperglycemia resulting from any of the several conditions that cause defective insulin secretion and/or action. Prediabetes is a state characterized by metabolic abnormalities that increases the risk of developing DM and its complications.

L. P. Nandhini · S. Kamalanathan · J. Sahoo (✉)
Department of Endocrinology, JIPMER, Puducherry, India

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_6

Diagnostic Criteria

The diagnostic criterion for DM has undergone a sea change over the last several decades with improved understanding of its pathophysiology and complications. Though the association between chronic hyperglycemia and its complications is well established, the specific cutoff points for diagnosing DM still remain a matter of intense debate.

The WHO, in the year 1965, published the first guidelines for diagnosing DM [2]. The National Diabetes Data Group (NDDG) proposed a criterion based on the observation of bimodal distribution of plasma glucose (PG) in Pima Indians and Nauruan populations and the risk of progression to DM and development of complications. The NDDG also recognized an intermediate group of individuals with raised PG above normal, but not satisfying the criterion for diagnosing DM. This group faced a risk of progression to DM at the rate of 1–5% annually and also had higher prevalence of atherosclerotic disease. The terminology "impaired glucose tolerance (IGT)" was introduced to identify this important group of persons in whom early intervention could avert DM and its complications [3].

The subsequent modifications of the diagnostic criteria by WHO saw revision of the fasting and 2-h post glucose load venous PG thresholds to 7.8 mmol/L and 11.1 mmol/L, respectively, based on the observations that complications of DM rarely occurred below these PG levels.

In 2003, the American Diabetes Association (ADA) made a controversial change to its existing guideline by reducing the cutoff point for defining the upper limit fasting plasma glucose (FPG). This modification was based on data from four population-based epidemiological studies which showed that the ideal FPG cutoff point fell between 5.22 and 5.72 mmol/L and the cutoff of 5.55 mmol/L was arbitrarily chosen [4].

Glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) was included as a modality to diagnose DM by the ADA in 2010 and the WHO in 2011.

The latest ADA criteria for diagnosing DM are given below: in asymptomatic individuals, these tests need to be repeated on another day for confirmation of diagnosis [5].

- FPG ≥ 7.0 mmol/L. Fasting is defined as no caloric intake for at least 8 h.
  or
- 2-hour PG ≥ 11.1 mmol/L during an oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT). The test should be performed as described by the WHO, using a glucose load containing the equivalent of 75-g anhydrous glucose dissolved in water.
  or
- HbA1c ≥6.5% (48 mmol/mol). The test should be performed in a laboratory using a method that is National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program (NGSP) certified and standardized to the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) assay.
  or
- In a patient with classic symptoms of hyperglycemia or hyperglycemic crisis, a random PG ≥ 11.1 mmol/L.

ADA Criteria for Diagnosis of Prediabetes

In addition to fasting and post glucose load PG levels, HbA1c is also recommended as a screening test for prediabetes.

The cutoff points recommended for the diagnosis of prediabetes are given below:

(a) FPG – 5.6 to 6.9 mmol/L [impaired fasting glucose (IFG)]
(b) 2-hour PG in the 75-g OGTT – (7.8 to 11.0 mmol/L) (IGT)
(c) HbA1c 5.7% (39 mmol/mol)

Criteria for Screening for Diabetes or Prediabetes in Asymptomatic Adults

The ADA 2017 guidelines have laid down certain risk factors for screening for diabetes and prediabetes. These include:

1. Overweight or obese (BMI ≥ 25 kg/m^2 or ≥23 kg/m^2 in Asian Americans) adults who have one or more of the following risk factors:
   - HbA1c > 5.7% (39 mmol/mol), IGT, or IFG on previous testing
   - First-degree relative with diabetes
   - High-risk race/ethnicity (e.g., African American, Latino, Native American, Asian American, Pacific Islander)
   - Women who were diagnosed with gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM)
   - History of cardiovascular disease
   - Hypertension (≥140/90 mmHg or on therapy for hypertension)
   - High-density lipoprotein cholesterol level ˂0.90 mmol/L and/or a triglyceride level ≥ 2.82 mmol/L
   - Women with polycystic ovary syndrome
   - Physical inactivity
   - Other clinical conditions associated with insulin resistance, e.g., severe obesity and acanthosis nigricans
2. For all patients, testing should begin at age 45 years.
3. If results are normal, testing should be repeated at a minimum of 3-year intervals, with consideration of more frequent testing depending on initial results (e.g., those with prediabetes should be tested yearly) and risk status.

Screening for Prediabetes and Diabetes

Prediabetes is an intermediate state of hyperglycemia characterized by elevated PG levels above normal though not qualifying for the diagnosis of DM. Its significance lies in the fact that 5–10% of patients can progress to develop DM annually without intervention [6, 7]. The dreaded complications of DM are also observed in this group of patients, stressing the need for early recognition and reversal of this state.

According to the WHO, prediabetes constitutes two distinct entities, namely, IFG and IGT. Different pathogenic mechanisms are believed to underlie these two distinct entities, and persons with a combination of both the abnormalities have more advanced metabolic abnormalities than those with either of the two. Similar to the increasing prevalence of DM globally, the prevalence of prediabetes is also expected to rise with an estimated 472 million people to be affected by this condition by the year 2030 [8]. Although a significant proportion of people progress to develop DM, several remain static and many go on to revert to normal state, although the rate of conversion has been reported to be different in various studies [7, 9].

It is well recognized that beta cell dysfunction and insulin resistance are already present in patients at the time of detection of prediabetes [10, 11]. It thus represents a phase in the continuum of worsening beta cell dysfunction and insulin resistance. Insulin resistance is a feature of both IFG and IGT, though the site of resistance varies. IFG is characterized by hepatic insulin resistance, while in IGT, resistance is mainly at the level of skeletal muscles. The beta cell dysfunction is however seen in both [10, 12]. This difference in the pathophysiology is reflected in the PG changes following a glucose load with persons with IFG demonstrating impaired early response in contrast to those with IGT who show impairment of both early and late phases of insulin secretion [12–14].

The ADA recommends screening for DM and prediabetes in asymptomatic people in those who are obese or overweight and have one or more additional risk factors as listed above. For all others, testing should begin at 45 years of age, and repeat testing in those with normal results is to be done at a minimum interval of 3–5 years [5].

Diagnostic Methods

Glycated Hemoglobin

With sustained exposure to hyperglycemia, proteins undergo nonenzymatic glycation. Hemoglobin A (HbA), the predominant fraction of hemoglobin in normal adults, also undergoes a similar modification. Three minor fractions of glycosylated hemoglobin are known to occur, namely, HbA1a, HbA1b, and HbA1c, based on their elution properties during electrophoresis. The HbA1c fraction that has been widely employed as a diagnostic test has a hexose moiety attached covalently to the NH2-terminal valine residue of the β-chain of HbA [15]. Several methods have been used to separate this fraction from the nonglycated hemoglobin. These techniques exploit the differences in structure (affinity chromatography and immunoassay), charge (ion-exchange chromatography, high-performance liquid chromatography [HPLC] electrophoresis, and isoelectric focusing), or chemical nature (photometry and spectrophotometry) of the various fractions. HbA1c is a measure of average plasma glucose levels over preceding 3 months [16]. There are several advantages of HbA1c over the measurement of plasma glucose. HbA1c estimation can be done regardless of the time of day or fasting status. It also shows less day-to-day variability and analytical stability [17]. HbA1c also predicts the development of micro- and macrovascular complications of DM as observed in clinical trials like the DCCT and United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS). However, it is not free from limitations and can be influenced by other non-glycemic factors (Table 6.1). Diseases affecting red blood cell turnover rate can result in imprecise values.

Table 6.1 Factors affecting HbA1c estimation

Physiological characters	Change expected
Age	HbA_{1c} increases by approximately 0.1% with every 10 years of age – not relevant clinically
Race	Variably reported
Hematological conditions	
Iron deficiency anemia [18, 19]	Falsely elevated in most studies Mechanism – not clear
Hemolytic anemia	Falsely low due to shortened life span of RBCs
Hemoglobin variants (HbF, HbS, HbD, HbE) [20]	Variable based on assay methodology
Analytical interference	
Hyperbilirubinemia	Variably reported interference [20, 21]
Hypertriglyceridemia [20]	Falsely low
Others	
Malaria	Falsely low [22]
Transfusions [23]	Falsely low
Splenectomy	Increases life span of RBC in conditions like hereditary spherocytosis resulting in elevated HbA1c after splenectomy [24]
Renal failure	Falsely low due to shortened erythrocyte life span, frequent blood transfusions, erythropoietin-promoted erythrocytosis, and drug-induced anemia [25]
Alcohol abuse	Falsely low [26]
Aspirin [27]	Modest increase – not clinically relevant

Standardization of HbA1c

The clinical utility of HbA1c largely hinges on the quality of the analytical method used. A plethora of tests are available today for estimating HbA1c. In order to establish uniformity in testing, reporting, and interpreting the HbA1c results, the American Association of Clinical Chemistry (AACC) and the NGSP (National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program) developed a protocol to standardize the HbA1c test results to those of the DCCT [28].

In 1995, the International Federation of Clinical Chemistry and Laboratory Medicine (IFCC) sought to establish a true reference method for HbA1c estimation instead of standardizing to a comparison method like the NGSP. Here, hemoglobin is digested using enzymes that cleaves a hexapeptide off the amino terminal of the β-chain. The glycated and nonglycated hexapeptide components are then separated and quantified. HbA1c was calculated as the ratio of two fractions and was reported as a percentage [29]. This method is expensive and laborious making it unsuitable for routine analysis of samples.

Classification of Diabetes Mellitus

It is prudent to try and classify the type of DM in order to identify the best management plan, screen for associated complications and comorbidities, and also screen other members of the family. However, this may not be straightforward in all scenarios. DM can be classified based on the underlying pathogenic mechanisms into the following categories: type 1 DM, type 2 DM, GDM, and secondary DM (Table 6.2) [5, 30].

Table 6.2 Secondary causes of diabetes mellitus

A. Genetic defects of β-cell function
Maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY) 3 (HNF-1α)
MODY 1 (HNF-4α)
MODY 2 (glucokinase)
Other rarer forms of MODY
Transient neonatal diabetes
Permanent neonatal diabetes
Mitochondrial DNA
B. Genetic defects in insulin action
Type A insulin resistance
Leprechaunism
Rabson-Mendenhall syndrome
Lipoatrophic diabetes
C. Diseases of the exocrine pancreas
Pancreatitis
Pancreatectomy
Neoplasia
Cystic fibrosis
Hemochromatosis
Fibrocalculous pancreatopathy
D. Endocrinopathies
Acromegaly
Cushing's syndrome
Glucagonoma
Pheochromocytoma
Hyperthyroidism
Somatostatinoma
Aldosteronoma
E. Drug or chemical induced
Glucocorticoids
Thiazides
Statins
Antipsychotic medication
Antiretroviral therapy
Phenytoin
Thyroid hormone
F. Infections
Congenital rubella
Cytomegalovirus
G. Other genetic syndromes
Down syndrome
Klinefelter syndrome
Turner syndrome
Wolfram syndrome
Friedreich ataxia
Huntington chorea

Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

Type 1 DM is characterized by complete cellular-mediated destruction of the β-cells resulting in insulinopenia and insulin replacement therapy for survival. Majority of patients present with the constitutional symptoms of DM, namely, polyuria, polydipsia, and polyphagia. One third of the patients can present with diabetic ketoacidosis as the first manifestation [31]. The disease is believed to be precipitated by an environmental insult in a genetically predisposed individual. Type 1 DM is known to be strongly associated with human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-DR3-DQ2 and HLA-DR4-DQ8 haplotypes, alone or in combination [32, 33]. Some HLA haplotypes can offer protection from type 1 DM [34]. In addition, several other putative genes like cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4, protein tyrosine phosphatase, non-receptor type 22, and insulin variable number tandem repeat affecting disease susceptibility have been identified [35]. Autoantibody against islet antigens like glutamic acid decarboxylase 65, insulin, insulinoma-associated antigen 2, and zinc transporter 8 are seen in majority of patients [36, 37]. The number of antibody positivity correlates with the rate of progression of β-cell failure with 70% of children with two or more antibodies progressing to develop DM [38]. In addition to islet cell autoimmunity, these patients are also predisposed to the development of other autoimmune disorders like Hashimoto thyroiditis, Graves' disease, Addison disease, celiac disease, vitiligo, autoimmune hepatitis, myasthenia gravis, and pernicious anemia [5].

A number of environmental triggers have been studied including cow's milk, certain viruses and gut microbiota, although none have been conclusively identified to influence the pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes mellitus [39–43]. A minority of patients with clinical picture consistent with type 1 DM do not have evidence of autoimmunity. This is particularly common in patients of Asian and African ancestry and is not HLA associated [44].

Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

In contrast to type 1 diabetes, type 2 DM is characterized by relative insulin deficiency due to β-cell dysfunction and resistance to the action of insulin in target tissues. Unlike patients with type 1 DM, patients with type 2 DM at least initially are amenable with oral hypoglycemic agents. Beta-cell loss occurs progressively and can result treatment failure with oral hypoglycemic agents and requirement of insulin for control of hyperglycemia, especially in younger individuals [45]. The global epidemic of type 2 diabetes mellitus parallels that of its prime risk factors - obesity, physical inactivity, and lifestyle modifications. Excessive abdominal adiposity, prior history of GDM, and certain ethnicity (like Asian, African American, Hispanic) are other strong risk factors for developing type 2 DM [5].

Gestational Diabetes Mellitus

GDM has traditionally been defined as any degree of glucose intolerance that is first detected during pregnancy regardless of whether the condition may have predated the pregnancy or persisted after the pregnancy [46]. This definition of GDM, which is based on PG level alone, does not distinguish the underlying pathological process. Hence, this heterogeneous group comprises women with pre-existing insulin resistance and insulin deficiency worsened by deteriorating glucose homeostasis in pregnancy and women with short-term alterations in glucose homeostasis resulting from pregnancy-related physiological changes. Irrespective of the aetiology, the management of these patients remains more or less the same, though women with pregestational diabetes need screening for long-term complications of dysglycemia, which can worsen further as pregnancy progresses [47].

The very first diagnostic criterion for GDM was proposed by O'Sullivan and Mahan in 1964. The authors had suggested a 50 g, 1-h glucose challenge test (GCT) for screening and follow-up of women with a 1-h post glucose load exceeding 140 mg/dl with a confirmatory test. A 100 gram, 3-h OGTT was suggested to confirm the diagnosis. The cutoff levels were validated for the risk of the mother developing diabetes in the future and not for the pregnancy outcomes [48].

This criterion was subsequently modified by the NDDG in the United States and later by Carpenter and Coustan to account for the changes in the methodology of glucose estimation and for using plasma samples instead of whole blood [3]. This modified criterion was widely accepted and endorsed by professional bodies like the ADA and WHO, until the International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups (IADPSG) criterion was proposed, following the results of the pathbreaking hyperglycemia and pregnancy outcomes (HAPO) study. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) still recommends the Carpenter and Coustan criterion [49].

HAPO was a large multinational, multicenter study which included over 23,000 pregnant women of diverse ethnicity. OGTT was administered between 24 and 32 weeks of gestation using 75 g of glucose. A linear relationship was noted between PG levels following OGTT and several primary (umbilical cord-blood C peptide level, birth weight, neonatal hypoglycemia, and rate of cesarean delivery) and secondary outcomes (delivery before 37 weeks of gestation, shoulder dystocia or birth injury, need for intensive neonatal care, hyperbilirubinemia, and preeclampsia). The outcomes were directly related to FPG level and independently to 1-h and 2-h PG values [50].

Based on the results of the HAPO trial, IADPSG suggested a single-step, 75 g OGTT to be performed in all pregnant women at 24–28 weeks of gestation. The defined diagnostic cut points for diagnosing GDM were those levels at which odds for adverse outcomes reached 1.75 times the estimated odds of these outcomes at the mean fasting, 1-h, and 2-h PG levels of the study population. A single value above the suggested cutoff was enough to make a diagnosis of GDM unlike the two-abnormality criteria earlier followed [51].

Universal implementation of the stringent IADPSG criteria is likely to increase the prevalence of GDM as many women with mild GDM are likely to be included. The cost-effectiveness of this approach and its impact on improving maternal and fetal outcome has been questioned. A few studies have however shown that the additional patients diagnosed using the IADPSG criterion when compared to other criteria are at risk for GDM-related complications [52–54]. The IADPSG also recommends diagnostic cutoff values to diagnose GDM in the first trimester. This recommendation was not based on any hard data and was an extrapolation of the results of HAPO study. In 2011, the ADA also adopted the IADPSG criteria.

The NICE in 2015 published its guidelines for diagnosing GDM and had suggested higher FPG cutoff values when compared to that of the IADPSG. The prime reason quoted for choosing higher FPG levels was to reduce the economic burden imposed by the application of lower FPG cutoff on the health-care system. Though this criterion strives to strike

a middle ground, it has not been tested clinically, and its impact on maternal and fetal health will be seen in coming years [55]. The cutoff values for diagnosing GDM using the one-step and two-step strategies according to the ADA are given below [5].

One-Step Strategy

75-g OGTT is recommended with PG measurement when patient is fasting and, at 1 h and 2 h, at 24–28 weeks of gestation in women not previously diagnosed with overt diabetes. The OGTT should be performed in the morning after an overnight fast of at least 8 h. The diagnosis of GDM is made when any of the following plasma glucose values are met or exceeded:

- FPG: 92 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L)
- 1-hour PG: 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L)
- 2-hour PG: 153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L)

Two-Step Strategy

Step 1: Perform a 50-g GCT (non-fasting), with PG measurement at 1 h, at 24–28 weeks of gestation in women not previously diagnosed with overt diabetes. If the PG level measured 1 h after the load is ≥130 mg/dL, ≥135 mg/dL, or ≥140 mg/dL (7.2 mmol/L, 7.5 mmol/L, or 7.8 mmol/L), proceed to a 100-g OGTT. The ACOG recommends either 135 mg/dL (7.5 mmol/L) or 140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L).

Step 2: The 100-g OGTT should be performed when the patient is fasting. The diagnosis of GDM is made if at least two of the following four plasma glucose levels (measured at fasting and 1 h, 2 h, 3 h after the OGTT) are met or exceeded:

- FPG: 95 mg/dL (5.3 mmol/L)
- 1-hour PG: 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L)
- 2-hour PG: 155 mg/dL (8.6 mmol/L)
- 3-hour PG: 140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L)

Screening for GDM

Recommendations for choosing the target population for GDM screening are shrouded by controversies and lack of uniformity among the existing guidelines. The WHO and ADA recommend universal screening of all pregnant women, while the NICE guidelines recommend a selective screening strategy [55, 56]. The selective screening approach is likely to miss a significant proportion of women who develop GDM in the absence of traditional risk factors [57, 58]. The ADA recommends screening for diabetes in women with risk factors for diabetes at the first prenatal visit using its standard diagnostic criteria. Those who are not known to have diabetes are to be screened at 24–28 weeks of gestation using a one-step or a two-step approach [5].

Screening for Persistent Diabetes After Pregnancy

The majority of women diagnosed with GDM will revert to normalcy in the immediate postpartum period leaving a small proportion with continuing hyperglycemia. The lifetime risk of developing type 2 DM is as high as 50–70% [59]. The immediate postnatal period provides a window of opportunity to identify this precarious cohort of at-risk women. The ADA recommends screening at 4–12 weeks postpartum using the OGTT and advises lifelong follow-up and screening at least every 3 years [5]. The NICE guidelines recommend using FPG or HBA1c after 13 weeks, and an annual testing with HbA1c is recommended if the first test is normal [55].

Specific Types of Diabetes Due to Other Causes

This heterogeneous group includes monogenic forms of diabetes and others with an underlying genetic defect affecting insulin secretion and action, diseases affecting the pancreas, diabetes associated with endocrine disorders, drug-induced diabetes, and post-transplantation diabetes.

Monogenic Diabetes Syndromes

Single gene defects causing β-cell dysfunction constitute around 1–2% of all cases of DM [60]. MODY is characterized by defective insulin secretion with intact insulin action. Thirteen different genetic loci have been identified so far and are inherited in an autosomal dominant fashion [5]. The most commonly reported types include MODY 2, MODY 3, and MODY 1. There is wide variation in severity and clinical course of the disease among the various types. Some forms show excellent response to sulfonylurea, and certain subtypes require insulin therapy for management. Identification of additional malformations or multisystem involvement helps in arriving at a diagnosis and also necessitates a multipronged approach to the management of these patients.

Neonatal Diabetes

Infants developing DM within the first 6 months of life should undergo genetic testing for identifying potential genetic defects. Neonatal diabetes can be transient or permanent and in patients who have an initial transient presentation can develop DM later in life. Making the correct diagnosis in these patients cannot be overemphasized as switching to oral hypoglycemic agents is possible in a subset of them with potassium inwardly rectifying channel, subfamily J, member 11 (KCNJ11) and ATP-binding cassette, subfamily C, and member 8 (ABCC8) mutations, thus greatly reducing the burden of management on the afflicted family [61, 62].

Diabetes Mellitus Secondary to Pancreatic Disorders

Acute and Chronic Pancreatitis

Acute pancreatitis often results in defective glucose metabolism at presentation. In many patients this defect is transient. However, the risk of developing DM is increased during follow-up of these patients. Chronic inflammation and destruction of pancreatic tissue can occur due to several aetiologies. Although the islets are more resistant to the destructive process in the earlier stages, significant β-cell loss eventually ensues resulting in varying degree of dysglycemia.

Fibrocalculous Pancreatitis

Tropical chronic pancreatitis or fibrocalculous pancreatic diabetes (FCPD) is a specific form of chronic pancreatitis which is encountered in several tropical countries as the name suggests. The aetiology of this condition is elusive, and a number of hypotheses exist to explain its occurrence. The earlier popular theories linking consumption of cassava with FCPD have been challenged [63]. Familial clustering of cases makes genetic predisposition a plausible risk factor. Several candidate genes have been explored in this context with the most prominent ones being serum protease inhibitor Kazal type 1 (SPINK1), cationic trypsinogen (PRSS1), anionic trypsinogen (PRSS2), and chymotrypsinogen C [64, 65]. Increased oxidative stress has also been reported in patients with FCPD [66].

Almost 90% of patients develop diabetes eventually due to β-cell destruction [67]. Although defective insulin secretion is the cardinal defect, development of insulin resistance is also known [68]. Defects in shifting of glucose transporter 2 (GLUT2) into the hepatocyte membranes during the postabsorptive phase have been shown in animal models of chronic pancreatitis. This can result in postprandial glucose excursions [69]. Also, pancreatic polypeptide secreted by the islet cells plays a role in the expression of insulin receptor gene in the liver. Deficiency of pancreatic polypeptide along with insulin deficiency could contribute to the development of diabetes [70]. Glucagon levels on the other hand have been postulated to be relatively unaffected or even elevated in a few studies indicating a selective destruction of the islet cells [71, 72]. However, not all studies corroborate this theory and it needs further analysis.

In patients presenting with symptoms of chronic pancreatitis, typical large ductal calcifications and dilatation of the pancreatic ducts visualized on imaging point to a diagnosis of FCPD. Diabetes in this scenario is generally ketosis resistant with most patients requiring insulin therapy [68, 72]. Most patients also have evidence of exocrine pancreatic insufficiency at the time of diagnosis, and enzyme replacement therapy can worsen glycemic control by improving malabsorption.

Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma

The relationship between pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) and DM is complex. DM is believed to be a risk factor for developing PDAC, while the malignancy per se has been postulated to affect glucose homeostasis. Around 85% of patients with PDAC have IGT or DM [73]. A meta-analysis of 36 studies indicated that risk of developing PDAC is two-fold higher in patients with DM [74]. Also, studies show that 25–50% of patients with PDAC develop diabetes in the preceding 1–3 years of their diagnosis [75]. Pancreatitis related to the tumor, destruction of islets, and development of insulin resistance are the postulated mechanisms to explain the development of diabetes. Animal studies suggest that secretory products of the tumor cells can impair glucose metabolism [76]. New-onset DM in these patients is known to improve with resection of the tumor, further strengthening the link between the two [73].

Endocrinopathies

Acromegaly

Majority of patients with acromegaly are diagnosed to have either prediabetes or diabetes at presentation. The reported prevalence of prediabetes varies between 16% and 46% [77–79] and that of DM is between 15% and 38% [80]. The risk of developing diabetes is strongly associated with higher growth hormone (GH) levels, family history of diabetes, hypertension, increasing age and disease duration [79, 80]. Identification and appropriate management of diabetes is essential to prevent the increased cardiovascular morbidity and mortality associated with it.

GH plays an important role in regulating intermediary metabolism. It stimulates lipolysis, suppresses lipogenesis and also antagonizes the insulin-induced suppression of gluconeogenesis, resulting in increased hepatic glucose output [81, 82]. Increased levels of free fatty acids induce a state of insulin resistance at the liver and peripheral tissues [83]. Inability of the β-cells to compensate this state of insulin resistance results in the development of diabetes. Direct inhibition of insulin signaling by interfering with the downstream signaling molecules like insulin receptor substrate-1 (IRS-1) and phosphatidylinositol 3 (Pi-3) kinase also contributes to the development of diabetes [84]. Most patients with acromegaly undergo surgical resection and radiotherapy. Some in addition require medical management for ameliorating disease activity. The treatment modality chosen can also influence glycemic status. Surgical removal of the tumor and subsequent reduction of GH and insulin-like growth factor-1 levels are associated with improvement of glycemic status [85, 86]. Dopamine agonists have a modest effect on reducing PG levels, and the effect of somatostatin agonists

(SSA) on glucose metabolism is conflicting [87]. SSA can inhibit insulin and incretin secretion and worsen glucose levels, especially in those with an underlying insulin secretion defect, though this is often offset by the reduction in GH level and improvement of disease status [87]. Among the SSA, pasireotide seems to have a greater propensity to alter glycemic control and its effect is dose dependent. This tendency can be explained by its greater affinity for somatostatin receptor subtype 5 expressed in the islet cells when compared to other SSA [88]. Pegvisomant is another agent which can improve glycemic control by containing disease activity. There is a reduction in FPG levels and improved insulin sensitivity has been noted in most studies [87].

Cushing's Syndrome

Glucocorticoids exert a multitude of effects on the various organs involved in carbohydrate metabolism. It stimulates lipoprotein lipase activity and lipolysis [89]. At the liver, increased glucose output results from increased rate of gluconeogenesis. These actions, in addition to reduced glucose uptake by muscles and increased proteolysis, result in a state of insulin resistance [90, 91]. Reduced expression of glucokinase and GLUT2 in the pancreatic β-cells results in reduced insulin secretion, which compounds the diabetogenic action of glucocorticoids [92]. Glucocorticoids can interfere with the action of insulin directly by inhibiting downstream signaling molecules like IRS-1 and Pi-3 kinase [93, 94]. Disordered glucose metabolism is seen in 50% of patients with endogenous Cushing's syndrome with two third of them developing diabetes [95, 96]. Increased prevalence of diabetes and prediabetes is also observed in cases of adrenal incidentaloma associated with subclinical Cushing's syndrome [97]. Glucose metabolism generally improves with cure, though these patients seem to have a continuing greater risk of cardiovascular morbidity. Most drugs used in the management of Cushing's syndrome like ketoconazole, dopamine agonists, and metyrapone have a favorable effect on glycemic control. Pasireotide on the other hand is known to worsen hyperglycemia [87]. The frequency of hyperglycemia-related adverse effects is lower in patients with acromegaly who are treated with pasireotide long-acting release (57.3–67%) than those with Cushing's syndrome who are treated with the subcutaneous formulation (68.4–73%) [98].

Treatment with metformin is recommended as first-line therapy for patients on pasireotide with persistent hyperglycemia. Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitor can be added on in patients failing monotherapy with metformin. Glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist should be added in place of the dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitor if HbA1C continues to remain above 7.0%. Insulin is started as a final resort if adequate glycemic control is not achieved with above measures [98].

Other Endocrine Disorders

Glucagonoma

Islet cell tumors secreting glucagon are rare with a reported incidence of 0.04–0.12 per million per year [99]. They are exclusively seen in the pancreas with the tail being the most common location [100]. In two third of the cases, the tumor is malignant and half of them have evidence of metastasis at the time of diagnosis [101]. DM is known to occur in 40–95% of patients, along with other symptoms like weight loss, gastrointestinal manifestations, and neurological symptoms like ataxia, dementia, optic atrophy, and proximal muscle weakness [102, 103]. The characteristic dermatological lesion called necrolytic migratory erythema is seen in 90% of patients. Glucagon increases hepatic gluconeogenesis and also increases lipolysis and fatty acid oxidation [104]. Diabetes mellitus is generally mild and nonketotic.

Somatostatinoma

Somatostatinomas are rarer than glucagonomas and occur in less than 1 in 40 million people [105]. They produce excess somatostatin which directly suppresses insulin and glucagon secretion causing diabetes. The most common clinical manifestation is related to mass effects, and metabolic manifestations occur in a minority [103, 106].

Drug-Induced Diabetes Mellitus

Thiazide Diuretics

Studies reporting the incidence of diabetes with thiazide diuretics have been conflicting. A recent meta-analysis of 22 studies showed an increased risk of diabetes with thiazides and beta blockers when compared to other antihypertensive agents like angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers [107]. Hypokalemia caused by thiazides has been linked to impaired insulin secretion in addition to other mechanisms like decreased insulin sensitivity, increased hepatic glucose production, alteration in body fat composition, and stimulation of glucagon [108, 109].

Statins

Statins are widely used as the first choice for their potent low-density lipoprotein-lowering effect. Evidence for their diabetogenic potential was first demonstrated in the Prospective Study of Pravastatin in the Elderly at Risk (PROSPER) trial in which 32% increased risk of new-onset diabetes was noted in the statin arm [110]. Subsequently, similar risk for diabetes has been reported for other statins, prompting the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2012 to add a warning of the increased risk of diabetes with statin use. A meta-analysis of 113,394 subjects showed a 15%

added risk of new-onset diabetes with 80 mg of atorvastatin and 25% with rosuvastatin at a dose of 20 mg [111]. Statins are also known to worsen glycemic control in patients with DM. The risk for DM with statins is more pronounced in those who already have the traditional risk factors. Mechanisms by which statins induce and aggravate diabetes include impaired pancreatic secretion of insulin (by blocking calcium channels), reduced expression of glucose transporter 4 (GLUT4) interfering with glucose uptake and disposal by skeletal muscle, and exacerbation of insulin resistance in liver and peripheral tissues [112]. Lipophilic statins like simvastatin and atorvastatin are transported across cellular membranes with ease, explaining their greater propensity to cause diabetes [113].

Beta Blockers

β-Blockers impair insulin secretion, increase hepatic glucose production, and impair lipoprotein clearance. The risk of diabetes is higher with nonselective beta blockers [108, 114].

Antipsychotic Medications

Weight gain is a common adverse effect of almost all antipsychotic medications. The magnitude of weight gain varies with the different drugs, and the greatest risk is associated with clozapine and olanzapine [115]. Aripiprazole has minimal effect on weight gain [116]. Maximum weight gain occurs in the first year of therapy and is related to the duration of exposure. Increased appetite and consequent food intake, reduced satiety, and effects on adipose tissue like increased lipogenesis contribute to weight gain [117, 118].

The risk for diabetes is also greater, especially with second-generation antipsychotics. It is estimated to be 32% higher in this group. Drugs causing increased weight gain are associated with greater risk for diabetes. In some patients, this effect seems to be independent of the change in body weight. Blockage of muscarinic receptor 3 by the antipsychotic medication is known and this can hamper insulin secretion [119]. Impaired insulin sensitivity at the peripheral tissues is also known to occur, possibly by interfering with functioning of glucose transporters [118].

Antiretroviral Therapy

Risk of new-onset diabetes is a well-known complication of antiretroviral therapy, particularly with stavudine, indinavir, and didanosine. The drugs per se and lipodystrophy associated with their use contribute to metabolic derangements. PG abnormalities are seen in 25% of patients following initiation of protease inhibitors. Redistribution of adipose tissue is the key factor contributing to increased insulin resistance. Age, body mass index, and waist circumference are additional risk factors [120–122].

Post-transplantation Diabetes Mellitus

New-onset diabetes after transplantation (NODAT) refers to the occurrence of diabetes in previously nondiabetic persons after organ transplantation. Twenty to fifty percent of patients following kidney transplant, 9–21% after liver transplants, and approximately 20% after lung transplants are diagnosed to have NODAT at 12 months post-transplant [123]. NODAT increases the risk of allograft loss, infections, and mortality in post-renal transplant recipients [124–127]. Patients with NODAT also develop microvascular complications associated with diabetes at an accelerated rate and are at an increased risk for cardiovascular morbidity and mortality [128]. In addition to the traditional risk factors for DM, exposure to immunosuppressive agents, CMV and hepatitis C infection, and acute rejection post-transplantation augment the risk of developing NODAT [129–132].

The ADA recommends screening for hyperglycemia in all patients post-transplantation using OGTT. A diagnosis of NODAT can be made using the standard criteria if the patient is on a stable immunosuppressive regimen and is free from infections [5].

Concluding Remarks

- Diabetes mellitus is a global epidemic and is associated with multiple morbidities and mortality. The importance of adequate glycemic control in order to circumvent these complications is proven beyond doubt. However, there still exists a controversy over the appropriate diagnostic criteria for diabetes mellitus and prediabetes, which is constantly evolving.
- Diabetes mellitus is the final common outcome of disrupted insulin secretion and/or action. An array of aetiologies is known to cause this disruption, ranging from monogenic and polygenic predisposition to endocrinopathies and drug therapy.
- Prediabetes is an intermediate state of hyperglycemia and includes the states of impaired fasting glucose and impaired glucose tolerance. The rise in the incidence of prediabetes globally, mirrors that of diabetes mellitus. Screening for and detection of prediabetes is an opportunity to intervene and prevent the progression to diabetes mellitus and its complications.
- Gestational diabetes mellitus is defined as any degree of hyperglycemia that is first detected during pregnancy and encompasses true gestational mellitus and pre-existing diabetes mellitus. There is no one universal criteria for diagnosing GDM. Several countries have adopted differing criteria that best meet the needs of their population.

Glossary

Diabetes mellitus Diabetes is derived from its Greek root which means "to pass through," and the word mellitus means "from honey." Diabetes mellitus is defined by the World Health Organization as a metabolic syndrome characterized by chronic hyperglycemia resulting from any of the several conditions that cause defective insulin secretion and/or action.

Prediabetes It is a state characterized by metabolic abnormalities that increase the risk of developing diabetes mellitus and its complications.

Impaired glucose tolerance Defined as an intermediate state where blood glucose levels are above normal but do not satisfy the criteria for diagnosing diabetes mellitus.

Gestational diabetes mellitus Defined as any degree of glucose intolerance that was first detected during pregnancy regardless of whether the condition may have predated the pregnancy or persisted after the pregnancy.

Neonatal diabetes Development of diabetes in the first 6 months of life.

NODAT (new-onset diabetes after transplantation) Defined as occurrence of diabetes in previously nondiabetic persons after organ transplantation.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Falsely low HBA1c levels can be seen in all of the following conditions except:
   (a) Hemolytic anemia
   (b) Hypertriglyceridemia
   (c) Postsplenectomy
   (d) Renal failure
   (e) Malaria
2. Maturity-onset diabetes of the young is inherited in _____ fashion.
   (a) Autosomal recessive
   (b) Autosomal dominant
   (c) X-linked dominant
   (d) X-linked recessive
   (e) Mitochondrial
3. Which of the following treatment modalities for acromegaly can worsen glycemic control:
   (a) Surgery
   (b) Radiotherapy
   (c) Dopamine agonists
   (d) Pasireotide
   (e) Pegvisomant
4. Glucocorticoid excess results in diabetes mellitus through which of the following mechanisms?
   (a) Stimulating lipolysis
   (b) Increasing rate of gluconeogenesis
   (c) Inducing a state of insulin resistance
   (d) Interfering with action of insulin by affecting downstream signaling molecules
   (e) All of the above
5. Which of the following drugs are known to cause or worsen diabetes mellitus?
   (a) Dopamine agonists
   (b) Thiazides
   (c) Loop diuretics
   (d) Alpha adrenergic blockers
   (e) All of the above
6. Genetic syndrome associated with diabetes mellitus is
   (a) Turner syndrome
   (b) Edward syndrome
   (c) Patau syndrome
   (d) Cri du chat syndrome
   (e) Down syndrome
7. Endocrinopathy associated with secondary diabetes is
   (a) Adrenal insufficiency
   (b) Somatostatinoma
   (c) Hyperthyroidism
   (d) Hypoparathyroidism
   (e) Insulinoma
8. ADA recommendations to begin screening for diabetes mellitus for all patients at _____ years of age.
   (a) 40 years
   (b) 45 years
   (c) 50 years
   (d) 35 years
   (e) 55 years
9. The rate of progression of prediabetes to diabetes mellitus in the absence of intervention is
   (a) 1–2% per year
   (b) 5–10% per year
   (c) 20% per year
   (d) 40% per year
   (e) 60% per year
10. The HbA1c cutoff recommended by the ADA for diagnosing diabetes mellitus is
    (a) ≥5.7%
    (b) ≥6.7%
    (c) ≥7%
    (d) ≥7.5%
    (e) ≥6.5%

Correct Answers

1. (c) Postsplenectomy
2. (b) Autosomal dominant
3. (d) Pasireotide
4. (e) All of the above

5. (b) Thiazides
6. (a) and (e)
7. (b) and (c)
8. (b) 45 years
9. (b) 5–10% per year
10. (e) ≥6.5%

References

1. Lakhtakia R. The history of diabetes mellitus. Sultan Qaboos Univ Med J. 2013;13:368–70.
2. Diabetes mellitus. Report of a WHO expert committee. World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser. 1965;310:1–44.
3. National Diabetes Data Group. Classification and diagnosis of diabetes mellitus and other categories of glucose intolerance. Diabetes. 1979;28:1039–57.
4. Genuth S, Alberti KGMM, Bennett P, Buse J, Defronzo R, Kahn R, et al. Follow-up report on the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 2003;26:3160–7.
5. American Diabetes Association. 2. Classification and diagnosis of diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2017;40:S11–24. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc17-S005.
6. Nathan DM, Davidson MB, DeFronzo RA, Heine RJ, Henry RR, Pratley R, et al. Impaired fasting glucose and impaired glucose tolerance: implications for care. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:753–9. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc07-9920.
7. Forouhi NG, Luan J, Hennings S, Wareham NJ. Incidence of Type 2 diabetes in England and its association with baseline impaired fasting glucose: the Ely study 1990–2000. Diabet Med J Br Diabetes Assoc. 2007;24:200–7. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1464-5491.2007.02068.x.
8. Aguirre F, Brown A, Cho NH, Dahlquitt G, Dodd S, Dunning T. IDF diabetes atlas. Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2013.
9. Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group, Knowler WC, Fowler SE, Hamman RF, Christophi CA, Hoffman HJ, et al. 10-year follow-up of diabetes incidence and weight loss in the Diabetes Prevention Program Outcomes Study. Lancet Lond Engl. 2009;374:1677–86. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(09)61457-4.
10. Abdul-Ghani MA, Tripathy D, DeFronzo RA. Contributions of beta-cell dysfunction and insulin resistance to the pathogenesis of impaired glucose tolerance and impaired fasting glucose. Diabetes Care. 2006;29:1130–9. https://doi.org/10.2337/diacare.2951130.
11. Gastaldelli A, Ferrannini E, Miyazaki Y, Matsuda M, DeFronzo RA, San Antonio metabolism study. Beta-cell dysfunction and glucose intolerance: results from the San Antonio metabolism (SAM) study. Diabetologia. 2004;47:31–9. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-003-1263-9.
12. Ferrannini E, Gastaldelli A, Iozzo P. Pathophysiology of prediabetes. Med Clin North Am. 2011;95:327–39, vii–viii. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mcna.2010.11.005.
13. Defronzo RA. Banting Lecture. From the triumvirate to the ominous octet: a new paradigm for the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes. 2009;58:773–95. https://doi.org/10.2337/db09-9028.
14. Kanat M, Mari A, Norton L, Winnier D, DeFronzo RA, Jenkinson C, et al. Distinct β-cell defects in impaired fasting glucose and impaired glucose tolerance. Diabetes. 2012;61:447–53. https://doi.org/10.2337/db11-0995.
15. Bookchin RM, Gallop PM. Structure of hemoglobin AIc: nature of the N-terminal beta chain blocking group. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1968;32:86–93.
16. Goldstein DE, Little RR, Lorenz RA, Malone JI, Nathan D, Peterson CM, et al. Tests of glycemia in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27:1761–73.
17. Sacks DB. A1C versus glucose testing: a comparison. Diabetes Care. 2011;34:518–23. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc10-1546.
18. Coban E, Ozdogan M, Timuragaoglu A. Effect of iron deficiency anemia on the levels of hemoglobin A1c in nondiabetic patients. Acta Haematol. 2004;112:126–8. https://doi.org/10.1159/000079722.
19. Sinha N, Mishra TK, Singh T, Gupta N. Effect of iron deficiency anemia on hemoglobin A1c levels. Ann Lab Med. 2012;32:17–22. https://doi.org/10.3343/alm.2012.32.1.17.
20. Wu X, Chao Y, Wan Z, Wang Y, Ma Y, Ke P, et al. A comparative evaluation of the analytical performances of Capillarys 2 Flex Piercing, Tosoh HLC-723 G8, Premier Hb9210, and Roche Cobas c501 Tina-quant Gen 2 analyzers for HbA1c determination. Biochem Med. 2016;26:353–64. https://doi.org/10.11613/BM.2016.039.
21. Martin M, Leroy N, Sulmont V, Gillery P. Evaluation of the In2it analyzer for HbA1c determination. Diabetes Metab. 2010;36:158–64. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.diabet.2009.11.005.
22. Eberentz-Lhomme C, Ducrocq R, Intrator S, Elion J, Nunez E, Assan R. Haemoglobinopathies, malaria, and other interferences with HBA1 assessment. Diabetes Metab. 1984;10:304–10.
23. Sugimoto T, Hashimoto M, Hayakawa I, Tokuno O, Ogino T, Okuno M, et al. Alterations in HbA1c resulting from the donation of autologous blood for elective surgery in patients with diabetes mellitus. Blood Transfus Trasfus Sangue. 2014;12(Suppl 1):s209–13. https://doi.org/10.2450/2013.0271-12.
24. McCready F, Cundy T. Effects of splenectomy for hereditary spherocytosis on glycated haemoglobin in a woman with Type 2 diabetes. Diabet Med J Br Diabetes Assoc. 2009;26:570–1. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1464-5491.2009.02706.x.
25. Trask LE, Abbott D, Lee H-K. Low hemoglobin A(1c)–good diabetic control? Clin Chem. 2012;58:648–9. https://doi.org/10.1373/clinchem.2011.174300.
26. Hong JW, Noh JH, Kim D-J. Association between alcohol intake and hemoglobin A1c in the Korean adults: the 2011–2013 Korea National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. PLoS One. 2016;11:e0167210. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0167210.
27. Camargo JL, Stifft J, Gross JL. The effect of aspirin and vitamins C and E on HbA1c assays. Clin Chim Acta Int J Clin Chem. 2006;372:206–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cca.2006.03.031.
28. Little RR, Rohlfing CL, Wiedmeyer HM, Myers GL, Sacks DB, Goldstein DE, et al. The national glycohemoglobin standardization program: a five-year progress report. Clin Chem. 2001;47:1985–92.
29. Jeppsson J-O, Kobold U, Barr J, Finke A, Hoelzel W, Hoshino T, et al. Approved IFCC reference method for the measurement of HbA1c in human blood. Clin Chem Lab Med. 2002;40:78–89. https://doi.org/10.1515/CCLM.2002.016.
30. Association AD. Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 2014;37:S81–90. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc14-S081.
31. Dabelea D, Rewers A, Stafford JM, Standiford DA, Lawrence JM, Saydah S, et al. Trends in the prevalence of ketoacidosis at diabetes diagnosis: the SEARCH for diabetes in youth study. Pediatrics. 2014;133:e938–45. https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2013-2795.
32. Sanjeevi CB, Lybrand TP, DeWeese C, Landin-Olsson M, Kockum I, Dahlquist G, et al. Polymorphic amino acid variations in HLA-DQ are associated with systematic physical property changes and occurrence of IDDM. Members of the Swedish Childhood Diabetes Study. Diabetes. 1995;44:125–31.
33. Graham J, Hagopian WA, Kockum I, Li LS, Sanjeevi CB, Lowe RM, et al. Genetic effects on age-dependent onset and

islet cell autoantibody markers in type 1 diabetes. Diabetes. 2002;51:1346–55.
34. Erlich H, Valdes AM, Noble J, Carlson JA, Varney M, Concannon P, et al. HLA DR-DQ haplotypes and genotypes and type 1 diabetes risk: analysis of the type 1 diabetes genetics consortium families. Diabetes. 2008;57:1084–92. https://doi.org/10.2337/db07-1331.
35. Polychronakos C, Li Q. Understanding type 1 diabetes through genetics: advances and prospects. Nat Rev Genet. 2011;12:781–92. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrg3069.
36. Bingley PJ. Clinical applications of diabetes antibody testing. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2010;95:25–33. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2009-1365.
37. Ziegler A-G, Nepom GT. Prediction and pathogenesis in type 1 diabetes. Immunity. 2010;32:468–78. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2010.03.018.
38. Ziegler AG, Rewers M, Simell O, Simell T, Lempainen J, Steck A, et al. Seroconversion to multiple islet autoantibodies and risk of progression to diabetes in children. JAMA. 2013;309:2473–9. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2013.6285.
39. Stene LC, Rewers M. Immunology in the clinic review series; focus on type 1 diabetes and viruses: the enterovirus link to type 1 diabetes: critical review of human studies. Clin Exp Immunol. 2012;168:12–23. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2249.2011.04555.x.
40. Brown CT, Davis-Richardson AG, Giongo A, Gano KA, Crabb DB, Mukherjee N, et al. Gut microbiome metagenomics analysis suggests a functional model for the development of autoimmunity for type 1 diabetes. PLoS One. 2011;6:e25792. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0025792.
41. de Goffau MC, Luopajärvi K, Knip M, Ilonen J, Ruohtula T, Härkönen T, et al. Fecal microbiota composition differs between children with β-cell autoimmunity and those without. Diabetes. 2013;62:1238–44. https://doi.org/10.2337/db12-0526.
42. Wahlberg J, Vaarala O, Ludvigsson J, ABIS-study group. Dietary risk factors for the emergence of type 1 diabetes-related autoantibodies in 21/2 year-old Swedish children. Br J Nutr. 2006;95:603–8.
43. Virtanen SM, Nevalainen J, Kronberg-Kippilä C, Ahonen S, Tapanainen H, Uusitalo L, et al. Food consumption and advanced β cell autoimmunity in young children with HLA-conferred susceptibility to type 1 diabetes: a nested case-control design. Am J Clin Nutr. 2012;95:471–8. https://doi.org/10.3945/ajcn.111.018879.
44. Gianani R, Campbell-Thompson M, Sarkar SA, Wasserfall C, Pugliese A, Solis JM, et al. Dimorphic histopathology of long-standing childhood-onset diabetes. Diabetologia. 2010;53:690–8. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-009-1642-y.
45. TODAY Study Group, Zeitler P, Hirst K, Pyle L, Linder B, Copeland K, et al. A clinical trial to maintain glycemic control in youth with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2012;366:2247–56. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1109333.
46. Report of the expert committee on the diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 1997;20:1183–97.
47. Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. Effect of pregnancy on microvascular complications in the diabetes control and complications trial. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. Diabetes Care. 2000;23:1084–91.
48. O'sullivan JB, Mahan CM. Criteria for the oral glucose tolerance test in pregnancy. Diabetes. 1964;13:278–85.
49. Committee on Practice Bulletins–Obstetrics. Practice Bulletin No. 137: gestational diabetes mellitus. Obstet Gynecol. 2013;122:406–16. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.AOG.0000433006.09219.f1.
50. HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group, Metzger BE, Lowe LP, Dyer AR, Trimble ER, Chaovarindr U, et al. Hyperglycemia and adverse pregnancy outcomes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358:1991–2002. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0707943.
51. International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups Consensus Panel, Metzger BE, Gabbe SG, Persson B, Buchanan TA, Catalano PA, et al. International association of diabetes and pregnancy study groups recommendations on the diagnosis and classification of hyperglycemia in pregnancy. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:676–82. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc09-1848.
52. Benhalima K, Hanssens M, Devlieger R, Verhaeghe J, Mathieu C. Analysis of pregnancy outcomes using the new IADPSG recommendation compared with the Carpenter and Coustan criteria in an area with a low prevalence of gestational diabetes. Int J Endocrinol. 2013;2013:248121. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/248121.
53. O'Sullivan EP, Avalos G, O'Reilly M, Dennedy MC, Gaffney G, Dunne F, et al. Atlantic Diabetes in Pregnancy (DIP): the prevalence and outcomes of gestational diabetes mellitus using new diagnostic criteria. Diabetologia. 2011;54:1670–5. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-011-2150-4.
54. Meek CL, Lewis HB, Patient C, Murphy HR, Simmons D. Diagnosis of gestational diabetes mellitus: falling through the net. Diabetologia. 2015;58:2003–12. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-015-3647-z.
55. National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health (UK). Diabetes in pregnancy: management of diabetes and its complications from preconception to the postnatal period. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (UK); 2015.
56. Colagiuri S, Falavigna M, Agarwal MM, Boulvain M, Coetzee E, Hod M, et al. Strategies for implementing the WHO diagnostic criteria and classification of hyperglycaemia first detected in pregnancy. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;103:364–72. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.diabres.2014.02.012.
57. Dahanayaka NJ, Agampodi SB, Ranasinghe OR, Jayaweera PM, Wickramasinghe WA, Adhikari AN, et al. Inadequacy of the risk factor based approach to detect gestational diabetes mellitus. Ceylon Med J. 2012;57:5–9. https://doi.org/10.4038/cmj.v57i1.4193.
58. Miailhe G, Kayem G, Girard G, Legardeur H, Mandelbrot L. Selective rather than universal screening for gestational diabetes mellitus? Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 2015;191:95–100. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejogrb.2015.05.003.
59. Noctor E, Dunne FP. Type 2 diabetes after gestational diabetes: the influence of changing diagnostic criteria. World J Diabetes. 2015;6:234–44. https://doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v6.i2.234.
60. Owen K, Hattersley AT. Maturity-onset diabetes of the young: from clinical description to molecular genetic characterization. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2001;15:309–23. https://doi.org/10.1053/beem.2001.0148.
61. Hattersley AT, Ashcroft FM. Activating mutations in Kir6.2 and neonatal diabetes: new clinical syndromes, new scientific insights, and new therapy. Diabetes. 2005;54:2503–13.
62. Rubio-Cabezas O, Flanagan SE, Damhuis A, Hattersley AT, Ellard S. KATP channel mutations in infants with permanent diabetes diagnosed after 6 months of life. Pediatr Diabetes. 2012;13:322–5. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-5448.2011.00824.x.
63. Girish BN, Rajesh G, Vaidyanathan K, Balakrishnan V. Assessment of cassava toxicity in patients with tropical chronic pancreatitis. Trop Gastroenterol. 2011;32:112–6.
64. Reddy DN, Prasad SS. Genetic basis of chronic pancreatitis in Asia Pacific region. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2011;26(Suppl 2):2–5. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1440-1746.2010.06598.x.
65. Pfützer RH, Barmada MM, Brunskill AP, Finch R, Hart PS, Neoptolemos J, et al. SPINK1/PSTI polymorphisms act as disease modifiers in familial and idiopathic chronic pancreatitis. Gastroenterology. 2000;119:615–23.
66. Braganza JM, Schofield D, Snehalatha C, Mohan V. Micronutrient antioxidant status in tropical compared with temperate-zone chronic pancreatitis. Scand J Gastroenterol. 1993;28:1098–104.

67. Vannasaeng S, Nitiyanant W, Vichayanrat A, Ploybutr S, Harnthong S. C-peptide secretion in calcific tropical pancreatic diabetes. Metabolism. 1986;35:814–7.
68. Yajnik CS, Shelgikar KM, Sahasrabudhe RA, Naik SS, Pai VR, Alberti KG, et al. The spectrum of pancreatic exocrine and endocrine (beta-cell) function in tropical calcific pancreatitis. Diabetologia. 1990;33:417–21.
69. Nathan JD, Zdankiewicz PD, Wang J, Spector SA, Aspelund G, Jena BP, et al. Impaired hepatocyte glucose transport protein (GLUT2) internalization in chronic pancreatitis. Pancreas. 2001;22:172–8.
70. Brunicardi FC, Chaiken RL, Ryan AS, Seymour NE, Hoffmann JA, Lebovitz HE, et al. Pancreatic polypeptide administration improves abnormal glucose metabolism in patients with chronic pancreatitis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1996;81:3566–72. https://doi.org/10.1210/jcem.81.10.8855802.
71. Mohan V, Snehalatha C, Ramachandran A, Chari S, Madanagopalan N, Viswanathan M. Plasma glucagon responses in tropical fibrocalculous pancreatic diabetes. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 1990;9:97–101.
72. Yajnik CS, Shelgikar KM, Naik SS, Kanitkar SV, Orskov H, Alberti KG, et al. The ketosis-resistance in fibro-calculous-pancreatic-diabetes. 1. Clinical observations and endocrine-metabolic measurements during oral glucose tolerance test. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 1992;15:149–56.
73. Pannala R, Leirness JB, Bamlet WR, Basu A, Petersen GM, Chari ST. Prevalence and clinical profile of pancreatic cancer-associated diabetes mellitus. Gastroenterology. 2008;134:981–7. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2008.01.039.
74. Huxley R, Ansary-Moghaddam A, Berrington de González A, Barzi F, Woodward M. Type-II diabetes and pancreatic cancer: a meta-analysis of 36 studies. Br J Cancer. 2005;92:2076–83. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.bjc.6602619.
75. Chari ST, Leibson CL, Rabe KG, Timmons LJ, Ransom J, de Andrade M, et al. Pancreatic cancer-associated diabetes mellitus: prevalence and temporal association with diagnosis of cancer. Gastroenterology. 2008;134:95–101. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2007.10.040.
76. Pannala R, Basu A, Petersen GM, Chari ST. New-onset diabetes: a potential clue to the early diagnosis of pancreatic cancer. Lancet Oncol. 2009;10:88–95. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(08)70337-1.
77. Colao A, Ferone D, Marzullo P, Lombardi G. Systemic complications of acromegaly: epidemiology, pathogenesis, and management. Endocr Rev. 2004;25:102–52. https://doi.org/10.1210/er.2002-0022.
78. Biering H, Knappe G, Gerl H, Lochs H. Prevalence of diabetes in acromegaly and Cushing syndrome. Acta Med Austriaca. 2000;27:27–31.
79. Kreze A, Kreze-Spirova E, Mikulecky M. Risk factors for glucose intolerance in active acromegaly. Braz J Med Biol Res Rev Bras Pesqui Med E Biol. 2001;34:1429–33.
80. Fieffe S, Morange I, Petrossians P, Chanson P, Rohmer V, Cortet C, et al. Diabetes in acromegaly, prevalence, risk factors, and evolution: data from the French Acromegaly Registry. Eur J Endocrinol. 2011;164:877–84. https://doi.org/10.1530/EJE-10-1050.
81. Ottosson M, Vikman-Adolfsson K, Enerbäck S, Elander A, Björntorp P, Edén S. Growth hormone inhibits lipoprotein lipase activity in human adipose tissue. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1995;80:936–41. https://doi.org/10.1210/jcem.80.3.7883853.
82. Rizza RA, Mandarino LJ, Gerich JE. Effects of growth hormone on insulin action in man. Mechanisms of insulin resistance, impaired suppression of glucose production, and impaired stimulation of glucose utilization. Diabetes. 1982;31:663–9.
83. Møller N, Butler PC, Antsiferov MA, Alberti KG. Effects of growth hormone on insulin sensitivity and forearm metabolism in normal man. Diabetologia. 1989;32:105–10.
84. Dominici FP, Cifone D, Bartke A, Turyn D. Loss of sensitivity to insulin at early events of the insulin signaling pathway in the liver of growth hormone-transgenic mice. J Endocrinol. 1999;161:383–92.
85. Kasayama S, Otsuki M, Takagi M, Saito H, Sumitani S, Kouhara H, et al. Impaired beta-cell function in the presence of reduced insulin sensitivity determines glucose tolerance status in acromegalic patients. Clin Endocrinol. 2000;52:549–55.
86. Kinoshita Y, Fujii H, Takeshita A, Taguchi M, Miyakawa M, Oyama K, et al. Impaired glucose metabolism in Japanese patients with acromegaly is restored after successful pituitary surgery if pancreatic {beta}-cell function is preserved. Eur J Endocrinol. 2011;164:467–73. https://doi.org/10.1530/EJE-10-1096.
87. Baroni MG, Giorgino F, Pezzino V, Scaroni C, Avogaro A. Italian Society for the Study of Diabetes (SID)/Italian Endocrinological Society (SIE) guidelines on the treatment of hyperglycemia in Cushing's syndrome and acromegaly. J Endocrinol Investig. 2016;39:235–55. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40618-015-0404-6.
88. Petersenn S, Schopohl J, Barkan A, Mohideen P, Colao A, Abs R, et al. Pasireotide (SOM230) demonstrates efficacy and safety in patients with acromegaly: a randomized, multicenter, phase II trial. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2010;95:2781–9. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2009-2272.
89. Rondinone CM. Adipocyte-derived hormones, cytokines, and mediators. Endocrine. 2006;29:81–90. https://doi.org/10.1385/ENDO:29:1:181.
90. Pivonello R, De Leo M, Vitale P, Cozzolino A, Simeoli C, De Martino MC, et al. Pathophysiology of diabetes mellitus in Cushing's syndrome. Neuroendocrinology. 2010;92(Suppl 1):77–81. https://doi.org/10.1159/000314319.
91. Cassuto H, Kochan K, Chakravarty K, Cohen H, Blum B, Olswang Y, et al. Glucocorticoids regulate transcription of the gene for phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase in the liver via an extended glucocorticoid regulatory unit. J Biol Chem. 2005;280:33873–84. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M504119200.
92. Gremlich S, Roduit R, Thorens B. Dexamethasone induces post-translational degradation of GLUT2 and inhibition of insulin secretion in isolated pancreatic beta cells. Comparison with the effects of fatty acids. J Biol Chem. 1997;272:3216–22.
93. Giorgino F, Almahfouz A, Goodyear LJ, Smith RJ. Glucocorticoid regulation of insulin receptor and substrate IRS-1 tyrosine phosphorylation in rat skeletal muscle in vivo. J Clin Invest. 1993;91:2020–30. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI116424.
94. Giorgino F, Pedrini MT, Matera L, Smith RJ. Specific increase in p85alpha expression in response to dexamethasone is associated with inhibition of insulin-like growth factor-I stimulated phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase activity in cultured muscle cells. J Biol Chem. 1997;272:7455–63.
95. Clore JN, Thurby-Hay L. Glucocorticoid-induced hyperglycemia. Endocr Pract. 2009;15:469–74. https://doi.org/10.4158/EP08331.RAR.
96. Friedman TC, Mastorakos G, Newman TD, Mullen NM, Horton EG, Costello R, et al. Carbohydrate and lipid metabolism in endogenous hypercortisolism: shared features with metabolic syndrome X and NIDDM. Endocr J. 1996;43:645–55.
97. Mazziotti G, Gazzaruso C, Giustina A. Diabetes in Cushing syndrome: basic and clinical aspects. Trends Endocrinol Metab TEM. 2011;22:499–506. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tem.2011.09.001.
98. Silverstein JM. Hyperglycemia induced by pasireotide in patients with Cushing's disease or acromegaly. Pituitary. 2016;19:536–43. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11102-016-0734-1.
99. Halfdanarson TR, Rubin J, Farnell MB, Grant CS, Petersen GM. Pancreatic endocrine neoplasms: epidemiology and prognosis of pancreatic endocrine tumors. Endocr Relat Cancer. 2008;15:409–27. https://doi.org/10.1677/ERC-07-0221.

100. Wermers RA, Fatourechi V, Wynne AG, Kvols LK, Lloyd RV. The glucagonoma syndrome. Clinical and pathologic features in 21 patients. Medicine (Baltimore). 1996;75:53–63.
101. Wermers RA, Fatourechi V, Kvols LK. Clinical spectrum of hyperglucagonemia associated with malignant neuroendocrine tumors. Mayo Clin Proc. 1996;71:1030–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0025-6196(11)63274-6.
102. Ito T, Igarashi H, Jensen RT. Pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors: clinical features, diagnosis and medical treatment: advances. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol. 2012;26:737–53. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bpg.2012.12.003.
103. Metz DC, Jensen RT. Gastrointestinal neuroendocrine tumors: pancreatic endocrine tumors. Gastroenterology. 2008;135:1469–92. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2008.05.047.
104. Habegger KM, Heppner KM, Geary N, Bartness TJ, DiMarchi R, Tschöp MH. The metabolic actions of glucagon revisited. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2010;6:689–97. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrendo.2010.187.
105. House MG, Yeo CJ, Schulick RD. Periampullary pancreatic somatostatinoma. Ann Surg Oncol. 2002;9:869–74.
106. Nesi G, Marcucci T, Rubio CA, Brandi ML, Tonelli F. Somatostatinoma: clinico-pathological features of three cases and literature reviewed. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2008;23:521–6. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1440-1746.2007.05053.x.
107. Elliott WJ, Meyer PM. Incident diabetes in clinical trials of antihypertensive drugs: a network meta-analysis. Lancet Lond Engl. 2007;369:201–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60108-1.
108. Ong KL, Barter PJ, Waters DD. Cardiovascular drugs that increase the risk of new-onset diabetes. Am Heart J. 2014;167:421–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ahj.2013.12.025.
109. Zillich AJ, Garg J, Basu S, Bakris GL, Carter BL. Thiazide diuretics, potassium, and the development of diabetes: a quantitative review. Hypertens Dallas Tex 1979. 2006;48:219–24. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.HYP.0000231552.10054.aa.
110. Shepherd J, Blauw GJ, Murphy MB, Bollen ELEM, Buckley BM, Cobbe SM, et al. Pravastatin in elderly individuals at risk of vascular disease (PROSPER): a randomised controlled trial. Lancet Lond Engl. 2002;360:1623–30.
111. Navarese EP, Buffon A, Andreotti F, Kozinski M, Welton N, Fabiszak T, et al. Meta-analysis of impact of different types and doses of statins on new-onset diabetes mellitus. Am J Cardiol. 2013;111:1123–30. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjcard.2012.12.037.
112. Nakata M, Nagasaka S, Kusaka I, Matsuoka H, Ishibashi S, Yada T. Effects of statins on the adipocyte maturation and expression of glucose transporter 4 (SLC2A4): implications in glycaemic control. Diabetologia. 2006;49:1881–92. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-006-0269-5.
113. Baker WL, Talati R, White CM, Coleman CI. Differing effect of statins on insulin sensitivity in non-diabetics: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2010;87:98–107. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.diabres.2009.10.008.
114. Lee P, Kengne A-P, Greenfield JR, Day RO, Chalmers J, Ho KKY. Metabolic sequelae of β-blocker therapy: weighing in on the obesity epidemic? Int J Obes 2005. 2011;35:1395–403. https://doi.org/10.1038/ijo.2010.284.
115. DE Hert M, Correll CU, Bobes J, Cetkovich-Bakmas M, Cohen D, Asai I, et al. Physical illness in patients with severe mental disorders. I. Prevalence, impact of medications and disparities in health care. World Psychiatry. 2011;10:52–77.
116. Bak M, Fransen A, Janssen J, van Os J, Drukker M. Almost all antipsychotics result in weight gain: a meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2014;9:e94112. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0094112.
117. Gonçalves P, Araújo JR, Martel F. Antipsychotics-induced metabolic alterations: focus on adipose tissue and molecular mechanisms. Eur Neuro Psychopharmacol. 2015;25:1–16. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.euroneuro.2014.11.008.
118. Deng C. Effects of antipsychotic medications on appetite, weight, and insulin resistance. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am. 2013;42:545–63. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecl.2013.05.006.
119. Correll CU, Detraux J, De Lepeleire J, De Hert M. Effects of antipsychotics, antidepressants and mood stabilizers on risk for physical diseases in people with schizophrenia, depression and bipolar disorder. World Psychiatry. 2015;14:119–36. https://doi.org/10.1002/wps.20204.
120. Carr A, Samaras K, Thorisdottir A, Kaufmann GR, Chisholm DJ, Cooper DA. Diagnosis, prediction, and natural course of HIV-1 protease-inhibitor-associated lipodystrophy, hyperlipidaemia, and diabetes mellitus: a cohort study. Lancet Lond Engl. 1999;353:2093–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(98)08468-2.
121. Capeau J, Bouteloup V, Katlama C, Bastard J-P, Guiyedi V, Salmon-Ceron D, et al. Ten-year diabetes incidence in 1046 HIV-infected patients started on a combination antiretroviral treatment. AIDS Lond Engl. 2012;26:303–14. https://doi.org/10.1097/QAD.0b013e32834e8776.
122. Samaras K. Prevalence and pathogenesis of diabetes mellitus in HIV-1 infection treated with combined antiretroviral therapy. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 1999. 2009;50:499–505. https://doi.org/10.1097/QAI.0b013e31819c291b.
123. Lane JT, Dagogo-Jack S. Approach to the patient with new-onset diabetes after transplant (NODAT). J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2011;96:3289–97. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2011-0657.
124. Valderhaug TG, Hjelmesæth J, Jenssen T, Røislien J, Leivestad T, Hartmann A. Early posttransplantation hyperglycemia in kidney transplant recipients is associated with overall long-term graft losses. Transplantation. 2012;94:714–20. https://doi.org/10.1097/TP.0b013e31825f4434.
125. Valderhaug TG, Hjelmesæth J, Hartmann A, Røislien J, Bergrem HA, Leivestad T, et al. The association of early post-transplant glucose levels with long-term mortality. Diabetologia. 2011;54:1341–9. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-011-2105-9.
126. Pietrzak-Nowacka M, Safranow K, Dziewanowski K, Debska-Slizień A, Głyda M, Gołembiewska E, et al. Impact of post-transplant diabetes mellitus on graft function in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease patients after kidney transplantation. Ann Acad Med Stetin. 2008;54:41–8.
127. von Kiparski A, Frei D, Uhlschmid G, Largiadèr F, Binswanger U. Post-transplant diabetes mellitus in renal allograft recipients: a matched-pair control study. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 1990;5:220–5.
128. Hjelmesaeth J, Hartmann A, Leivestad T, Holdaas H, Sagedal S, Olstad M, et al. The impact of early-diagnosed new-onset post-transplantation diabetes mellitus on survival and major cardiac events. Kidney Int. 2006;69:588–95. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.ki.5000116.
129. Porrini E, Delgado P, Bigo C, Alvarez A, Cobo M, Checa MD, et al. Impact of metabolic syndrome on graft function and survival after cadaveric renal transplantation. Am J Kidney Dis. 2006;48:134–42. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.ajkd.2006.04.078.
130. Hjelmesaeth J, Hartmann A, Kofstad J, Stenstrøm J, Leivestad T, Egeland T, et al. Glucose intolerance after renal transplantation depends upon prednisolone dose and recipient age. Transplantation. 1997;64:979–83.
131. Hjelmesaeth J, Sagedal S, Hartmann A, Rollag H, Egeland T, Hagen M, et al. Asymptomatic cytomegalovirus infection is associated with increased risk of new-onset diabetes mellitus and impaired insulin release after renal transplantation. Diabetologia. 2004;47:1550–6. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-004-1499-z.
132. Pham PT, Pham PM, Pham SV, Pham PA, Pham PC. New onset diabetes after transplantation (NODAT): an overview. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes Targets Ther. 2011;4:175–86. https://doi.org/10.2147/DMSO.S19027.

Suggested Reading

Edwards CM, Cusi K. Prediabetes: a worldwide epidemic. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am. 2016;45(4):751–64. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecl.2016.06.007.

Hattersley AT, Patel KA. Precision diabetes: learning from monogenic diabetes. Diabetologia. 2017;60(5):769–77. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-017-4226-2.

Mack LR, Tomich PG. Gestational diabetes: diagnosis, classification, and clinical care. Obstet Gynecol Clin N Am. 2017;44(2):207–17. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ogc.2017.02.002.

Mazziotti G, Formenti AM, Frara S, Maffezzoni F, Doga M, Giustina A. Diabetes in Cushing disease. Curr Diab Rep. 2017;17(5):32. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11892-017-0860-9.

Rickels MR, Bellin M, Toledo FG, Robertson RP, Andersen DK, Chari ST, Brand R, Frulloni L, Anderson MA, Whitcomb DC, PancreasFest Recommendation Conference Participants. Detection, evaluation and treatment of diabetes mellitus in chronic pancreatitis: recommendations from PancreasFest 2012. Pancreatology. 2013;13(4):336–42. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pan.2013.05.002.

Part II

Diagnosis, Classification and Mechanisms of Disease

Pathophysiology of Type 1 Diabetes

7

Rita A. Gómez-Díaz

Introduction

Type 1 diabetes (T1D) is a chronic disease measured by immunity with a silent period that lasts for a varied time before clinically manifesting, characterized by selective loss of insulin-producing cells in the pancreatic islets of genetically susceptible individuals.

It is known that the pathogenesis of this disease occurs in stages, with variations among individuals, who have different genetic susceptibilities. The environmental factors may come into play as early as during gestation and would continue through early childhood. Immune dysregulation leads to beta-cell destruction long before the classical autoantibodies are detected. C-peptide response is diminished at least 2 years before disease diagnosis [1].

In the last 10 years, new knowledge has been added in both pathogenesis and treatment of this disease. The search is ongoing for new tools that can identify the earliest stages of autoimmune activation in type 1 diabetes. A better understanding of the physiopathology of this disease can change the approach to treatment and prevention.

Etiopathogenesis of Type 1 Diabetes

There is evidence that type 1 diabetes is considered an organ-specific autoimmune disease in which genetic (such as a strong association with HLA haplotypes, genetic linkage with immune system genes), immunological (such as specificity for beta cells and the presence of antigen-specific T cells), environmental factors (such as age at onset) and gut microbiota participate.

It is also known that type 1 diabetes onset is triggered by an inappropriate activation of both the innate and adaptive immune systems, which causes a cascade that results in pancreatic islet destruction. Invariant natural killer T (NKT) cells interact with both systems and serve as a junction between them. Since they function through the production of cytokines, it has been suggested that they would be intrinsically involved in the disease. Figure 7.1 shows the pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes. The upper portion shows the various stages, as described by Eisenbarth [1]. Stage 1 involves genetic susceptibility. In stage II, an environmental factor triggers the immune process. During stage III, beta-cell antibodies and active self-autoimmunity are present. In stage IV, metabolic abnormalities appear, leading to the symptoms manifested in stage V. Finally, in stage VI, insulin dependency results. The lower portion of the figure shows the participation of $CD4^+$, $CD8^+$, and NKT cells in the onset of T1D.

The role of NKT cells in the physiopathology of type 1 diabetes will be discussed below.

Genetic Factors

The family histories observed in epidemiological studies have sustained the search for genetic causes of T1D. The major histocompatibility complex (MHC) holds a unique position as the link that unites clinical, immunological, and genetic medicine; many diseases, including T1D, have been associated with genes located in the MHC. The most important genes are coded to the group of leukocyte antigens (HLA), a family of surface proteins essential for immunological function. HLA genes present a great variety that has given rise to the diversity in immune response and susceptibility to various diseases. Overexpression of HLA molecules is considered a principal characteristic of type 1 diabetes pathogenesis and earmarks a chronic inflammatory state.

The HLA molecules associated with T1D are class II and are coded in the short arm of chromosome 6p21 (IDDM1) [2, 3]; they are responsible for the selection in the thymus of the repertory of T cells and participate directly in the presentation of antigens in the T CD4+ cells. The genetic region of

R. A. Gómez-Díaz (✉)
UIMEC, UMAE Hospital de Especialidades. Centro Médico Nacional Siglo XXI IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_7

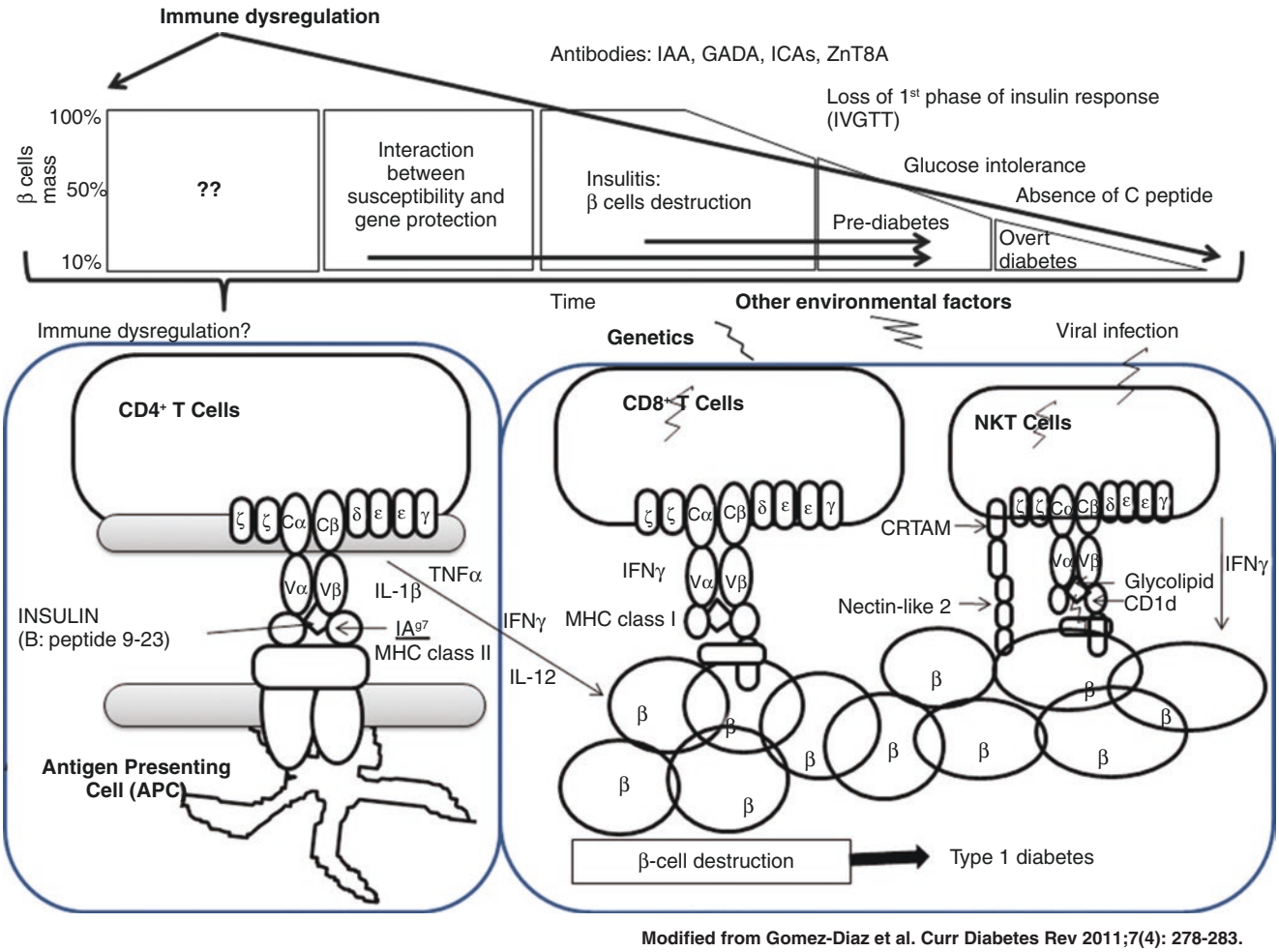


Fig. 7.1 Pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes

class II HLA contains alleles DP, DQ, and DR, which in turn are divided into subregions.

The genes of the HLA system are the most important in conferring protection or susceptibility for type 1 diabetes, and it is believed they contribute to between 30 and 50% of risk in the development of the disease. There are two combinations of HLA genes (or haplotypes): HLADR3-DQ2/DR4-DQ8 have a 20 times greater risk of developing type 1 diabetes compared with general population and are present in 90% of the children with type 1 diabetes. A third protector haplotype, DR15-DQ6, is found in less than 1% of children with T1D and 20% of the general population. The genotype that combines the two susceptibility haplotypes (DR4-DQ8/DR3-DQ2) increases the risk of contracting the disease and is most frequent in children that present at an early age [4]. It has been suggested that, in the presence of these haplotypes, the first signs of beta-cell autoimmunity might appear as early as during the first year of life [5]. Likewise, protection alleles have been reported in Caucasian population as being DRB1-DQB1 DRB1*1602-DQB1*0602, DRB1*07-DQB1*0303, DRB1*13-DQB1*0603, and DRB1*14-DQB1*0503 [6]. First-degree relatives with positive antibodies but protector alleles delay or nullify its debut, which might indicate that the protector effect exerted by these genes occurs after the immunological process has begun.

On the other hand, the DIAMOND Project of the World Health Organization (WHO) tested the hypothesis that the variation in the expression of some risk genes for type 1 diabetes influenced the incidence of the disease according to the participating country (mainly alleles DQA1 and DQB1 with sequence codes for arginine in position 52 of the alpha chain for DQ and another amino acid apart from aspartic acid in position 57 in the beta chain of DQ, respectively). Mexico was included among the countries reporting a low incidence at the time of the study, being that DQA1*0301 was the only allele consistently associated with type 1 diabetes [7].

In Mexican-American population, DRB1*0302 is a risk allele, while the protector is DRB1*1402. In contrast, in Mexican Mestizos the protection haplotype is DR5/DQ6 (DRB1*0501, DQA1*0102, DQB1*0602), and for risk it is

DR4/DQ8 (DRB1*0405, DQA1*0301, DQB1*0302) [8–10]. However, the fact that 38% of the population has DR3 or DR4 indicates that there must be other factors. Effectively, it has been observed that 95% of the DR4 that have allele DQB1*0302 have diabetes, while the DR4/DQB1*0301 do not. These data suggest that HLA DQ molecules are more important in susceptibility to diabetes and the association with DR is due to the linkage disequilibrium (association between alleles) that exists between HLA DR and HLA DQ genes [11, 12].

In addition, evidence of the participation of class II HLA in physiopathology has been observed in the murine model, since these molecules participate in the trimolecular complex that involves a peptide and the T cell receptor of autoreactive cells that escape from the thymus. One of the peptides recognized is the I-Ag-7 molecule (part of the insulin B chain) [13].

Nevertheless, even when the association of HLA alleles and haplotypes is strong, these loci represent less than 50% of the genetic contribution to susceptibility to the disease; this is due to the fact that the alleles are not totally penetrating, implying that not all who have inherited them develop the disease. This has pushed T1D research to new immunological and genetic horizons.

The other 50% of susceptibility for developing type 1 diabetes is given by non-HLA genes. Genomic association studies have identified around 40 non-HLA polymorphisms and other candidate loci in population studies. One of the most important is a polymorphism in the region of the insulin promotor gene, in chromosome 11p15.5 (locus IDDM2, polymorphism that consists in the number of tandem repetitions: VNTR) [14–17]. The insulin gene is transcribed and translated in the thymus and regulates glucose metabolism through insulin tolerance.

Many other susceptibility loci have been proposed after genome scanning (IDDM3-15). Another of the non-HLA genes that has been associated with T1D is the gene located in chromosome 1p13: protein tyrosine phosphatase, non-receptor type 22 (PTPN22). PTPN22 codes a specific lymphocyte phosphatase that inhibits T cell activity; the variant that changes arginine for a tryptophan in position 620 alters the B and T cell response, which is accompanied by a reduction in T cell inhibition, promoting multi-organic autoimmunity; but the specific genes responsible have not yet been identified [18–20].

The genetic evidence for the participation of peripheral B cell compartment and production of cytokines (IL-10) was measured by flow cytometry by Thompson et al., who did not find evidence of changes in IL-10 production through in vitro stimulation with IL-21, suggesting that the pathogenetic role of the B cells is limited to the early stages of the disease in the isles of Langerhans and in the draining pancreatic lymph nodes [21].

IDDM12, located on chromosome 2q33, is one of the confirmed susceptibility loci for T1D [22]. This 300-kilobase region contains at least three genes: CD28, cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen (CTLA-4: cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein A), and the inducible gene costimulatory molecule (ICOS). CTLA-4 codifies a molecule that is expressed on the surface of activated T cells, so polymorphism A49G has been associated with a reduction in the activation and proliferation of T cells. Genetic mapping has suggested that CTLA-4 or a closely related gene may be implicated in susceptibility for type 1 diabetes [23]. Other non-HLA risk genes include the interleukin 2 receptor alpha chain (IL2RA) as well as induced interferon with dominion 1 helicase C (IFIH1) [24, 25]. However, it was recently found that there was a significant association between the non-HLA risk genes and positivity for autoimmune antibodies. For example, PTPN22 associates with anti-GAD autoantibody, while ERBB3 associates with anti-IA-2 antibody (p = 0.042). By the same token, IL2RA and INS-VNTR associate with anti-insulin antibodies [26].

Other non-HLA genes not yet linked with specific antibody positivity include TFPR3, which mediates the release of intracellular calcium; BACH2, which coordinates the activation and repression of MAFK; and UBASH3A, which promotes the accumulation of target receptors, including T cell receptors [27].

Immunological Factors

Very little has been definitively proven concerning the immunological factors involved in T1D. But, as noted by Mannering et al., "an absence of evidence should not be confused with evidence of absence" [28]. To date, the known participation of the autoimmune component comes from various kinds of evidence. Insulitis is defined as an inflammation of the islets of Langerhans that results in the destruction of insulin-producing beta cells. Primary damage is due to an immune response mediated by cells, where Th1 cells (CD4+) collaborate during activation of specific in situ Tc cells (CD8+, associated with Th2) and are directed against the beta cell.

Thus, chronic autoimmune response is manifested clinically with the destruction of 60 to 80% of pancreatic β insulin-producing cells [29]. The insulitis observed in the islets, as well as their surroundings, is constituted mainly of macrophages, B and T lymphocytes [30], and dendritic cells. Various studies have shown that inflammation appears from stages prior to the manifestation of tissue damage and the destruction of beta cells activates the dendritic cells, which trigger the T cells in the pancreas [31].

Insulitis is diagnosed with the presence of at least 15 CD45+ cells per islet, in at least three islets. Long consid-

ered the pathologic characteristic of type 1 diabetes, it is usually, but not always, detected together with insulin-positive beta cells [32].

Although normally associated with younger patients, it has been suggested that this association is overestimated. Nevertheless, the presence of insulitis has been found in a majority of recent-onset type 1 diabetes patients [33]. However, the presence of insulitis has been shown to have an inverse correlation with time with diabetes, but not with age at onset [32]. Insulitis is probably the main cause of destruction of T γδ lymphocytes even after 1 year of insulin treatment, which might explain part of the evolution of the disease [34].

It was recently found that islet-invading T cells differ from allogeneic T cells. There are even differences between type 1 diabetes patients and patients with allograft rejection. Those with diabetes show very low levels of cytokines and chemokines [33].

Interferon-stimulated genes (ISGs) are upregulated by interferon to put cells into an antiviral state. These include GBP1, TLR3, OAS1, EIF2AK2, HLA-E, IFI6, and STAT1. In type 1 diabetes and/or insulitis, the levels of these genes are increased. The presence of insulitis in the peri-islet area has been found to increase the levels of ISGs up to fivefold. However, the actual role of this overexpression in the progression of type 1 diabetes remains to be clarified [35].

Nevertheless, there are differences in youth and adult onset of T1D. In youth, there is a rapid loss of beta cells (75–85%), offset by a high potential for beta-cell regeneration. The autoantibodies presented are mainly anti-insulin. In contrast, in adult-onset T1D, the loss of beta cells is more gradual (60–75%) but with a lower possibility for regeneration. There are more anti-GAD antibodies. The loss of C-peptide production varies greatly, and the reasons are not yet understood [36].

There is a direct correlation with the presence of T lymphocytes producing interferon gamma (IFN-δ) in the infiltrates located in the islets [37–41]. In fact, Gomez-Tourino et al. indicate that CD4 T cells can be considered as characterized by the secretion of either IFN-δ or IL-17, as opposed to the secretion of IL-10 in healthy subjects. They support the important role that T1 (IFN-δ) and T17 (IL-17) play in the development of type 1 diabetes [42]. On the other hand, Mannering et al. not only showed that $CD4^+$ T cells are associated with HLA risk genotypes for T1D; they also noted that clones of these T cells could recognize epitopes from the proinsulin C-peptide [28, 43].

A secondary effect is that specific autoantibodies are produced against autoantigens of the pancreatic islets. The quantification of antibodies against autoantigens has been useful in knowing the activity of the disease, determining its degree of progression, and contributing to the classification and prediction of the clinical status of the patients. From 60 to 80% of patients recently diagnosed present antibodies against glutamic acid decarboxylase (anti-GAD); a similar percentage (60 to 70%) show anti-tyrosine (anti-IA2) of zinc cation transporter (ZnT8) and only 30% to 50% have anti-insulin antibodies [44–46]. Nevertheless, the sensitivity and specificity of these autoantibodies varies with ethnicity and with follow-up time. However, as shown by Velluzzi et al., while positivity for one of these antibodies has a hazard ratio of 55.3, this drops to 14.5 with two positive antibodies and 3.0 for three [47].

In this regard, $CD8^+$ T cells have been suggested as the final cause of beta-cell death. This has been supported by the presence of antigen-specific (GAD65) and HLA-restricted forms. $CD8^+$ T cells can be specific for various epitopes, including insulin, insulinoma antigen 2 (IA 2), and GAD-65, and are pathogenic to beta cells [43]. Another study has suggested that $CD8^+$ T cells are autoreactive against such autoantigens as GAD65, ZnT8, and IA-2 [28, 34].

Environmental Factors

The rapid increase in the prevalence of type 1 diabetes, both in our country and worldwide, cannot be explained solely by the genetic component (in subjects with risk HLA haplotypes), epigenetic modifications being those that may be key regarding environmental risk factors and which are probably in line with the hygiene hypothesis, which proposes that environmental exposure to microbes and other pathogens and their sub-products early in life induce immunological tolerance and a reduction in atopy and autoimmune diseases.

One link between the genetic and environmental factors may lie in IFIH1, also known as MDA5, or the gene associated with differentiation of melanoma 5, detection of intracellular RNA of the picornavirus, virus family that includes enterovirus. Detection of intracellular RNA leads to activation of IFIH1 and the interferon route. It has been hypothesized that enterovirus leads to the activation of IFIH1 in the β cells of the pancreas, elevated interferon levels, and an increase in expression of MHC class I expression, activating CD8 T cells and the death of pancreatic β cells. The variants that result from less function of IFIH1 are protectors from type 1 diabetes [28].

Some other viruses [48] (*Coxsackie B*, *parotitis* [49], and rubella [50]) have been implicated as possible initiators, accelerators, or precipitators of the disease. The virus with the most demonstrated role is congenital rubella syndrome (children that acquire the infection in utero), where there is a 30% risk of presenting type 1 diabetes between 5 and 30 years later; however, this only explains a small proportion of the cases.

Many of the viruses use different mechanisms to ultimately lead to beta-cell death. In the case of rubella virus, it

causes two-way reactions between the antigens and GAD, stimulating T lymphocyte activity and leading to beta-cell infection. Cytomegalovirus also causes infection of beta cells, but using clonal activation of T cells to induce the recruitment of macrophages to the pancreas. However, in the case of mumps, there is increased expression of class I and II HLA in the beta cells, while rotavirus uses molecular imitation to infect the cells. In contrast, parvovirus does not infect beta cells, but rather uses macrophages to activate a Th1 immune response while at the same time increasing Th2 responses [51].

It has been suggested that the inability to quickly cure viral infections could be part of the reason that beta cells, but not alpha cells, suffer apoptosis during the development and progression of type 1 diabetes [52]. The "bystander hypothesis" infers that the infection of pancreatic cells leads to the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines, which may explain the aforementioned cell death [53, 54]. However, the "molecular mimicry" mechanism attributed to rotavirus, among others, remains controversial, due to conflicting experimental results [53, 55].

In fact, infection may delay or avoid the development of type 1 diabetes through various mechanisms. Over time, there is a mutual adaptation. Infections which trigger immunoregulatory cytokines, such as IL-10, help control inflammation and also reinforce regulatory T cell activity while sparking NKT cell activity. On the other hand, activated macrophages and "tolerogenic" dendritic cells inhibit Th1 responses through a variety of mechanisms, such as rerouting the response to Th2, prompting T cells, and producing amino acid-catabolizing enzymes. This activity limits tissue pathology [56].

Nevertheless, the *Enterovirus* genus has been given special attention in regard to type 1 diabetes, thanks to advances in techniques to identify it. Enteroviruses are the most common viruses causing disease in humans, including foot-and-mouth disease and poliomyelitis. Most are extremely resistant to antibiotics, as well as to the chlorine usually added to treated water, meaning they can be transmitted by water, food, or soil. This genus includes the *Coxsackie* family, most notoriously *Coxsackie B*. One study found enteroviral genomes in the islets in pancreatic biopsies of patients with type 1 diabetes [57]. In the Diabetes Virus Detection Study (DiViD), enterovirus was found in all of the insulin-containing islets of pancreas samples of patients with recent-onset (<10 weeks) type 1 diabetes [58]. This supports the idea that the viral infection precedes the appearance of diabetes. Several other studies in children have reached the same conclusions, such as VirDiab [59] and the study conducted by Laitinen et al. [60], both of which were carried out in children with type 1 diabetes against apparently healthy controls. With the growing body of evidence, it has been suggested that the enterovirus infection, and possibly other virus infections as well, may be the last straw and push an already unbalanced metabolism into a critical loss of beta cells [61].

On the other hand, among the environmental risk factors studied is diet, especially during the lactation period, which can modulate intestinal microbiota and is among the mechanisms that influence type 1 diabetes. Various studies have considered early exposure to cow's milk and highly hydrolyzed casein formula as the trigger for autoimmunity in some genetically susceptible individuals [62–65]. However, studies of the association between vitamin D, another suspected factor, and the development of type 1 diabetes remain controversial [66, 67]. Nevertheless, a recent study has found a significant inverse relationship between vitamin D and C-reactive protein, as well as with various cytokines, including IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-6, IL-1β, IL-4, and IL-10 [68].

Microbiota

The development of intestinal microbiota is influenced by many factors, including diet, lifestyle, use of antibiotics, type of birth (natural or cesarian), and breast-feeding. It is known that a balance in intestinal microbiota is fundamental for a wide variety of physiological mechanisms, including the function of the immune system. It has been suggested that an imbalance in intestinal microbiome, called dysbiosis, is related with the pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes. The development of gut microbiota is influenced by changes in diet, as evidenced by the close association between T1D and celiac disease. These facts may help explain the fact that T1D is increasing worldwide, as diets change and become "westernized" [69].

In light of these facts, several recent studies have examined the microbiome profile of healthy individuals compared with those with T1D. One such study, conducted in Spain, found significant differences in *Bifidobacterium, Lactobacillus* and *Clostridium.* Patients had higher levels of *Clostridium* and lower levels of *Bifidobacterium* than controls, suggesting a relationship with glycemic level. In addition, they found that the quality of the bacteria was lower in T1D children than in healthy controls [70]. Another study in Mexican children in Sonora found that newly diagnosed cases of T1D showed high levels of *Bacteroides*, while healthy children had high levels of *Prevotella*. However, after 2 years of treatment, the levels of both bacteria had returned to those of the healthy children, suggesting not only the involvement of dietary changes but also the possibility of using therapies with microbiota to reduce the possibility of developing diabetes [71].

Nevertheless, whereas children with T1D have high levels of *Bacteroidetes*, children with obesity have reduced levels, but increased *Lactobacillus*, which indicates an important difference in the two conditions [71, 72]. However, this dif-

ference may depend on other factors, such as genetic risk, in addition to the gut microbiotic profile. In a portion of the TEDDY study, which included American and European children, it was found that probiotic supplementation associated with a decreased probability of islet autoimmunity but only in those with the high-risk genotype (DR3/4). The absence of any benefit in other genotypes may indicate a therapeutic strategy for high-risk individuals [73]. However, more research will be needed before implementing this kind of treatment, including genetics, the effect of infections, and the influence of the many other factors that affect microbiota profiles.

The Role of NKT Cells in the Physiopathology of Type 1 Diabetes

Finally, the participation of the autoimmune response in type 1 diabetes is due to an alteration in the regulatory mechanisms of acquired autoimmunity, which corresponds to the expansion and/or function of populations of regulatory T lymphocytes.

The interaction of the innate and adaptive immune systems is definitive in the genesis of the disease. Immune system responses are complex and have evolved to protect multicellular organisms from aggressors; evolutionary pressure has specialized the effecting functions that may also damage the organism's tissue. The immune system specialized in two arms: one innate capable of mounting nonspecific responses quickly and the adaptive, capable of promoting longer-lasting, specific responses. Evolution has given rise to specialized cells to carry out these functions. There are some cells that have mixed abilities, that is, both innate and adaptive. This cellular group may be key to understanding the physiopathology of various autoimmune diseases, including T1D. They have recently been linked to type 2 diabetes as well [74]. They share functions and cellular surface markers of both arms. In addition, their evolutionary permanence among species makes them an important link in the homeostatic regulation of the immune system.

To date, the regulatory cell population has not been accurately identified, but there are various candidates, including T lymphocytes CD4+CD25+ and natural killer lymphocyte-type (NKT) cells. NKT were identified in 1987 in mice [75] and later their counterpart was described in humans [76]. They are a population of lymphocytes that express the receptor for T lymphocyte antigen (TCR), as well as the common marker of NK cells (NK 1.1 for mice and CD161 in humans). The said heterogeneous population can be $CD4^+$, or $CD4^-CD8^-$ (double negatives), or even $CD8^+$; these express a repertoire of conserved TCR [77], in humans made up of variable regions Vα24 and Vβ11. Unlike most T cells, NKT recognize lipids in the presence of CD1d molecules. They respond to antigens presented in the context of CD1d molecules, and their important regulatory function is mediated by the secretion of cytokines: INF-δ or IL-4 [78]. NKT cells are found in significant numbers at the site of inflammation and may be a marker of diabetes risk. The frequency of NKT cells is associated with the relative frequency of specific tolerogenic dendritic cell subsets. It appears that NKT cells regulate diabetes, then, by influencing the frequency and possibly the function of dendritic cell subsets, as suggested by Naumov et al. in their work with non-obese diabetic mouse models (NOD) [79]. In addition to a key role against bacteria, viruses, and parasites, they are involved in the body's defense against tumors, as well as immune regulation.

In terms of autoimmunity and inflammation, the main results come from the prevention of diabetes in NOD mice [80]. Various studies show a defect in the number and function of NKT cells in these mice, so the disease may be reduced through the adoptive transfer of populations rich in NKT cells [81–84].

The numerical and functional deficiency of NKT cells (detected in the thymus and spleen of NOD mice at 3 weeks of age) mediates the pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes, but the phase of development of T cells in which this deficiency occurs is still unknown. Wagner et al. propose that conventional T cells and doubly negative NKT have a common lineage and that this lineage in the development of the thymus of NOD mice is defective [85]. Some evidence suggests that a deficiency in NKT cells may be coded by risk genes IDD9 and IDD6 (locus Idd9.1, Idd6, Nkt1, and NKt2) for the disease [86–88].

In the last 10 years, studies in humans have documented a decrease in the number and production capability of IL-4 [89] of NKT cells in patients with T1D, while others have described an increase in the frequency of these cells [90–92].

On the other hand, both the frequency of NKT and the production of IL-4 are maintained during the course of type 1 diabetes. Recently, in Colombian patients, upon comparing a healthy control group with type 1 and type 2 diabetes and autoimmune thyroid alterations, no differences were found between the group with type 1 diabetes and healthy controls, but the levels of NKT cells were found to be elevated in type 2 diabetes [93].

The discrepancy in the data seems to come from the type of population selected for the study, as well as the status of the patient in relation to the natural history of the disease, or the subpopulation of NKT cells quantified in those studies, since it has recently been suggested that the subset of CD4+ NKT cells may be activated in the prevention of autoimmunity, while the subset of double negative NKT (CD4- CD8-) may be pathogenic; to prove this hypothesis, a new, monoclonal antibody (6B11) was used to identify the subpopula-

tions of NKT and thus evaluate the individuals at risk and with type 1 diabetes. The results showed an increase and expansion of double negative NKT cells ($CD4^{-}CD8^{-}$) in patients at risk [94].

In working with children with type 1 diabetes and their first-degree relatives, our work group found a reduction in NKT cells, in addition to identifying in these cells two populations, a majority one that expressed an elevated quantity of invariant TCR (Vα24/Vβ11) and another minority population that expressed low density of invariant TCR [95–97]. In this subpopulation we found that they expressed activation marker CRTAM (class I-restricted T cell-associated molecule) [95]. CRTAM is also expressed on $CD4^{+}$ and $CD8^{+}$ T cells and is associated with the inflammatory process. Both CRTAM and CD69 are expressed in the NKT cells with low invariant TCR, suggesting a state of activation [96]. In addition, a clear association has been observed between the expression of CRTAM and the production of IFN-γ in NKT cells in both healthy individuals and those with type 1 diabetes, which suggests that CRTAM can be used as a marker to identify the NKT cells [98].

On the other hand, in class II MHC molecules, cathepsin-L lysosomal protease (CTSL) exercises broad influence on the immune system and has an important role in the expression of antigen-presenting cells. In CTSL nkt/nkt mice, it has been shown that the activity of the CTSL gene impacts the positive selection of CD4+ thymocytes and regulates the level of expression of various components of the extracellular matrix in lymphoid organs, influencing the number and composition of central and peripheral T lymphoids [99]. However, to date the role of NKT cells and CTSL gene expression has not been clearly established in humans as a biomarker in the physiopathology of type 1 diabetes. In the belief that CTSL is involved in the promotion of the survival of cytotoxic T lymphocytes, it was recently shown that the percentage and absolute numbers of NKT cells correlate with low levels of expression of the CTSL gene in T1D in humans [100].

To date, the complete pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes remains unknown. What is known that the process of developing this disease involves a myriad of factors.

Genetically, 50% of susceptibility to T1D can be associated with HLA genes, and the other 50% to non-HLA genes, such as PTPN22, CTLA-4, and IFIH1. Research continues to identify new candidates of the latter. The alleles that indicate risk or protection from the development of T1D vary with country and ethnicity. In addition, the presence of two or more autoantigen antibodies is an important indicator of risk.

It is possible that the drastic increase in the prevalence of T1D is largely due to the implicated environmental factors. Technological advances have helped identify genetic overexpression in reaction insulitis. Dysbiosis is involved in alterations in the immune system and has been linked to the pathogenesis of T1D. Current studies are focusing on this important aspect of the epigenetics of the disease.

Finally, NKT cells are found in significant numbers at the site of inflammation and may be a marker of diabetes risk. Their participation in both innate and adaptive autoimmunity has made them a target of interest. The clinical value of this tool remains under investigation.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Type 1 diabetes
   (a) Is diagnosed only in children
   (b) Has a silent period before manifestation and diagnosis
   (c) Is diagnosed during pregnancy
   (d) Is often confused with type 2 diabetes
2. Which of the following is *not* a factor in the development of T1D?
   (a) Microbiota
   (b) Environmental factors
   (c) Immunological factors
   (d) Alterations in insulin secretion
3. The genotype that combines the two susceptibility haplotypes (DR4-DQ8/DR3-DQ2)
   (a) Increases the risk of T1D
   (b) Has no effect on the disease
   (c) Never appears in relatives
   (d) Always appears in relatives
4. HLA genes
   (a) Are responsible for all of T1D genetic susceptibility
   (b) Are not responsible for T1D genetic susceptibility
   (c) Are partially responsible for T1D genetic susceptibility
   (d) Have no connection with T1D susceptibility
5. Which of the following non-HLA genes is associated with T1D?
   (a) PTPN22
   (b) TCF7L2
   (c) SCL16A11
   (d) DRB1-DQB1
6. Insulitis has been associated with
   (a) Age at disease onset
   (b) Elderly patients
   (c) Time with diabetes
   (d) Patient siblings
7. All of the following has/have been associated with T1D except
   (a) Rubella
   (b) Coxsackie B
   (c) Enterovirus
   (d) Parvovirus

8. In children with type 1 diabetes, NKT cell populations usually
   (a) Are increased
   (b) Are not present
   (c) Are reduced
   (d) Are hyperactive
9. CRTAM is associated with
   (a) The production of IFN-γ in NKT cells
   (b) Cell apoptosis
   (c) Patients with type 2 diabetes
   (d) Age at onset of T1D
10. Quantification of antibodies against autoantigens in T1D helps us know all of the following *except*
   (a) The activity of the disease
   (b) Time since the onset of the disease
   (c) The degree of progression of the disease
   (d) Prediction of the clinical status of disease

Correct Answers

1. (b) Has a silent period before manifestation and diagnosis
   It has a silent period before manifestation and diagnosis.
2. (d) Alterations in insulin secretion
   Alterations in insulin secretion are a factor for type 2 diabetes.
3. (a) Increases the risk of T1D
   The genotype that combines the two susceptibility haplotypes (DR4-DQ8/DR3-DQ2) increases the risk of contracting the disease.
4. (c) Are partially responsible for T1D genetic susceptibility
   T1D is a multi-factorial disease, where HLA genes have around 50% of the genetic responsibility for T1D susceptibility. The other 50% comes from non-HLA genes.
5. (a) PTPN22
   PTPN22 associates with T1D.
6. (c) Time with diabetes
   Insulitis has an inverse correlation with time with diabetes.
7. (d) Parvovirus
   Parvovirus has not been shown to have an association with human T1D.
8. (c) Are reduced
   NKT cells are usually reduced in frequency in children with T1D.
9. (a) The production of IFN-γ in NKT cells
   A clear association has been observed between the expression of CRTAM and the production of IFN-γ in NKT.
10. (b) Time since the onset of the disease
   Quantification of antibodies against autoantigens has been useful to establish the activity of the disease, determining its degree of progression and contributing to the classification and prediction of the clinical status of the patients.

Glossary

Anti-GAD	Antibodies against glutamic acid decarboxylase
Anti-IA2	Anti-tyrosine
CRTAM	Class I-restricted T cell-associated molecule
CTLA-4	Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen
CTSL	Cathepsin-L lysosomal protease
IA2	Insulinoma antigen 2
ICOS	Inducible gene costimulatory molecule
IFIH1	Induced interferon with dominion 1 helicase C
IFN-δ	Interferon gamma
IL2RA	Interleukin-2 receptor alpha chain
ISGs	Interferon-stimulated genes
MHC	Major histocompatibility complex
NKT	Natural killer lymphocyte-type
NOD	Non-obese diabetic mouse models
PTPN22	Protein tyrosine phosphatase, non-receptor type 22
T1D	Type 1 diabetes
TCR	Receptor for T lymphocyte antigen
WHO	World Health Organization
ZnT8	Zinc cation transporter

References

1. Atkinson MA, Eisenbarth GS, Michels AW. Type 1 diabetes. Lancet. 2014;383(9911):69–82.
2. Todd JA, Bell JI, McDevitt HO. HLA-DQ gene contributes to susceptibility and resistance to IDDM. Nature. 1987;329:599–604.
3. Undlien DE, Lie BA, Thorsby E. HLA complex genes in type 1 diabetes and other autoimmune diseases. Which genes are involved? Trends Genet. 2001;17:93–100.
4. Caillat-Zucman S, Garchon HJ, Timsit J, et al. Age-dependent HLA genetic heterogeneity of type 1 insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Clin Invest. 1992;90:2242–50.
5. Knip M, Siljander H. Autoimmune mechanisms in type 1 diabetes. Autoimmun Rev. 2008;7:550–7.
6. Lambert AP, Gillespie KM, Thomson G, et al. Absolute risk of childhood-onset type 1 diabetes defined by human leukocyte antigen class II genotype: a population-based study in the United Kingdom. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2004;89:4037–43.
7. Dorman JS, McCarthy B, McCanlies E, et al. Molecular IDDM epidemiology: international studies. WHO DiaMond Molecular Epidemiology Sub-Project Group. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 1996;34 Suppl:S107–16.
8. Notkins AL. Immunologic and genetic factors in type 1 diabetes. J Biol Chem. 2002;277:43545–8.
9. Erlich HA, Zeidler A, Chang J, et al. HLA class II alleles and susceptibility and resistance to insulin dependent diabetes mellitus in Mexican-American families. Nat Genet. 1993;3:358–64.
10. Godoresky C, Olivares A, Debezo H, et al. MHC-dependent molecular mechanisms of susceptibility and protection in type 1 diabetes in Mexicans. Gac Med Mex. 1995;131:395–402.

11. Thorsby E, Gjertsen HA, Lundin KE, Rønningen KS. Insulin dependent diabetes mellitus susceptibility or protection may be determined by certain HLA-DQ molecules. Bailliere Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1991;5:361–73.
12. Vicario JL, Martinez-Laso J, Corell A, et al. Comparison between HLA-DRB and DQ DNA sequences and classic serological markers as type 1 (insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus predictive risk markers in the Spanish population. Diabetologia. 1992;35:475–81.
13. Eisenbarth GS. Banting lecture 2009: an unfinished journey: molecular pathogenesis to prevention of type 1A diabetes. Diabetes. 2010;59:759–74.
14. Thomson G, Robinson W, Kuhner M, et al. HLA and insulin gene associations with IDDM. Genet Epidemiol. 1989;6:155–60.
15. Bennett ST, Lucassen AM, Gough SCL, et al. Susceptibility to human type 1 diabetes at IDDM2 is determined by tandem repeat variation at the insulin gene minisatellite locus. Nat Genet. 1995;9:284–92.
16. Bell GI, Horita S, Karam JH. A polymorphic locus near the human insulin gene is associated with insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Diabetes. 1984;33:176–83.
17. Todd JA, Farrall M. Panning for gold: genome-wide scanning for linkage in type 1 diabetes. Hum Mol Genet. 1995;5:1443–8.
18. Pugliese A, Miceli D. The insulin gene in diabetes. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2002;18:13–25.
19. Davies JL, Kawaguchi Y, Bennett ST, et al. A genome-wide search for human type 1 diabetes susceptibility genes. Nature. 1994;371:130–6.
20. Bottini N, Musumeci L, Alonso A, et al. A functional variant of lymphoid tyrosine phosphatase is associated with type I diabetes. Nat Genet. 2004;36:337–8.
21. Thompson WS, Pekalski ML, Simons HZ, et al. Multi-parametric flow cytometric and genetic investigation of the peripheral B cell compartment in human type 1 diabetes. Clin Exp Immunol. 2014;177:571–85.
22. Marron MP, Zeidler A, Raffel LJ, et al. Genetic and physical mapping of a type 1 diabetes susceptibility gene (IDDM12) to a 100-kb phagemid artificial chromosome clone containing D2S72-CTLA4-D2S105 on chromosome 2q33. Diabetes. 2000;49:492–9.
23. Ueda H, Howson JMM, Esposito L, et al. Association of the T cell regulatory gene CTLA4 with susceptibility to autoimmune disease. Nature. 2003;423:506–11.
24. Tang W, Cui D, Jiang L, et al. Association of common polymorphisms in the IL2RA gene with type 1 diabetes: evidence of 32,646 individuals from 10 independent studies. J Cell Mol Med. 2015;19:2481–8.
25. Liu S, Wang H, Jin Y, et al. IFIH1 polymorphisms are significantly associated with type 1 diabetes and IFIH1 gene expression in peripheral blood mononuclear cells. Hum Mol Genet. 2009;18:358–65.
26. Maziarz M, Hagopian W, Palmer JP, Swedish Childhood Diabetes Register, et al. Diabetes incidence in Sweden study group; type 1 diabetes genetics consortium. Non-HLA type 1 diabetes genes modulate disease risk together with HLA-DQ and islet autoantibodies. Genes Immun. 2015;16:541–51.
27. http://www.t1base.org/page/Welcome/display. Accessed 9 Dec 2016.
28. Mannering SI, Pathiraja V, Kay TW. The case for an autoimmune aetiology of type 1 diabetes. Clin Exp Immunol. 2016;183:8–15.
29. Foulis AK, Liddle CN, Farquharson MA, et al. The histopathology of the pancreas in type 1 (insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus: a 25 years review of deaths in patients under 20 years of age in the United Kingdom. Diabetologia. 1986;29:267–74.
30. Willcox A, Richardson SJ, Bone AJ, et al. Analysis of islet inflammation in human type 1 diabetes. Clin Exp Immunol. 2009;155:173–81.
31. Barcala Tabarrozzi AE, Castro CN, Dewey RA, et al. Cell-based interventions to halt autoimmunity in type 1 diabetes mellitus. Clin Exp Immunol. 2013;171:135–46.
32. Pugliese A. Insulitis in the pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes. 2016;17(Suppl 22):31–6.
33. Krogvold L, Wiberg A, Edwin B, et al. Insulitis and characterisation of infiltrating T cells in surgical pancreatic tail resections from patients at onset of type 1 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2016;59:492–501.
34. Zubkiewicz-Kucharska A, Noczyńska A. Abnormal distribution of gamma-delta T lymphocytes and their subsets in type 1 diabetes. Adv Clin Exp Med. 2016;25:665–71.
35. Lundberg M, Krogvold L, Kuric E, et al. Expression of interferon-stimulated genes in insulitic pancreatic islets of patients recently diagnosed with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes. 2016;65:3104–10.
36. von Herrath MG, Korsgren O, Atkinson MA. Factors impeding the discovery of an intervention-based treatment for type 1 diabetes. Clin Exp Immunol. 2016;183(1):1–7.
37. Hannirn A, Jalkanen S, Salmi M, et al. Macrophages, T cell receptor usage, and endothelial cell activation in the pancreas at the onset of insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Clin Invest. 1992;90:1901–10.
38. Imagawa A, Hanafusa T, Tamura S, et al. Pancreatic biopsy as a procedure for detecting in situ autoimmune phenomena in type 1 diabetes. Close correlation between serological markers and a histological evidence of cellular autoimmunity. Diabetes. 2001;50:1269–73.
39. Rabinovitch A, Suares-Pinzon WL, Sorensen O, et al. INF-γ gene expression in pancreatic islet-infiltrating mononuclear cells correlates with autoimmune diabetes in nonobese diabetic mice. J Immunol. 1995;154:4878–82.
40. Foulis AK, McGill M, Farquharson MA. Insulitis in type 1 (insulin- dependent) diabetes mellitus in ma-macrophages, lymphocytes, and interferon-gamma containing cells. J Pathol. 1991;165:97–103.
41. Fowlkes BJ, Kruisbeek AM, Ton-That H, et al. A novel population of T-cell receptor alpha beta-bearing thymocytes which predominantly expresses a single V beta gene family. Nature. 1987;329:251–4.
42. Gomez-Tourino I, Arif S, Eichmann M, et al. T cells in type 1 diabetes: instructors, regulators and effectors: a comprehensive review. J Autoimmun. 2016;66:7–16.
43. Pathiraja V, Kuehlich JP, Campbell PD, et al. Proinsulin-specific, HLA-DQ8, and HLA-DQ8-transdimer-restricted CD4+ T cells infiltrate islets in type 1 diabetes. Diabetes. 2015;64:172–82.
44. Verge CF, Gianani R, Kawasaki E, et al. Prediction of type I diabetes in first-degree relatives using a combination of insulin, GAD, and ICA512bdc/IA-2 autoantibodies. Diabetes. 1996;45:926–33.
45. Leslie D, Lipsky P, Notkins AL. Autoantibodies as predictors of disease. J Clin Invest. 2001;108:1417–22.
46. Wenzlau JM, Juhl K, Yu L, et al. The cation efflux transporter ZnT8 (Slc30A8) is a major autoantigen in human type 1 diabetes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104:17040–5.
47. Velluzzi F, Secci G, Sepe V, Sardinian Autoimmunity Study Group, et al. Prediction of type 1 diabetes in Sardinian schoolchildren using islet cell autoantibodies: 10-year follow-up of the Sardinian schoolchildren type 1 diabetes prediction study. Acta Diabetol. 2016;53(1):73–9.
48. Von Herrath MG, Holz A, Homann D, et al. Role of viruses in type I diabetes. Semin Immunol. 1998;10:87–100.
49. Hyoty H, Hiltunen M, Reuranen A, et al. Decline of mumps antibodies in type 1(insulin-dependent) diabetic children with a plateau in the rising incidence of type 1 diabetes after introduction of the mumps-measles-rubella vaccine in Finland. Diabetologia. 1993;36:1303–8.

50. McIntosh EDG, Menser M. A fifty-year follow-up of congenital rubella. Lancet. 1992;340:414–5.
51. Tavares RG, Trevisol RB, Comerlato J, et al. Enterovirus infections and type 1 diabetes mellitus: is there any relationship? J Venom Anim Toxins Incl Trop Dis. 2012;18:3–15.
52. de Beeck AO, Eizirik DL. Viral infections in type 1 diabetes mellitus – why the β cells? Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2016;12:263–73.
53. Petzold A, Solimena M, Knoch KP. Mechanisms of Beta cell dysfunction associated with viral infection. Curr Diab Rep. 2015;15:73.
54. Seewaldt S, Thomas HE, Ejrnaes M, et al. Virus-induced autoimmune diabetes: most beta-cells die through inflammatory cytokines and not perforin from autoreactive (anti-viral) cytotoxic T-lymphocytes. Diabetes. 2000;49:1801–9.
55. Honeyman MC, Stone NL, Falk BA, Nepom G, Harrison LC. Evidence for molecular mimicry between human T cell epitopes in rotavirus and pancreatic islet autoantigens. J Immunol. 2010;15(184):2204–10.
56. Cooke A. Review series on helminths, immune modulation and the hygiene hypothesis: how might infection modulate the onset of type 1 diabetes? Immunology. 2009;126:12–7.
57. Ylipaasto P, Klingel K, Lindberg AM, et al. Enterovirus infection in human pancreatic islet cells, islet tropism in vivo and receptor involvement in cultured islet beta cells. Diabetologia. 2004;47:225–39.
58. Krogvold L, Edwin B, Buanes T, et al. Pancreatic biopsy by minimal tail resection in live adult patients at the onset of type 1 diabetes: experiences from the DiViD study. Diabetologia. 2014;57:841–3.
59. Oikarinen S, Tauriainen S, Hober D, VirDiab Study Group, et al. Virus antibody survey in different European populations indicates risk association between coxsackie virus B1 and type 1 diabetes. Diabetes. 2014;63:655–62.
60. Laitinen OH, Honkanen H, Pakkanen O, et al. Coxsackievirus B1 is associated with induction of β-cell autoimmunity that portends type 1 diabetes. Diabetes. 2014;63:446–55.
61. Rodriguez-Calvo T, von Herrath MG. Enterovirus infection and type 1 diabetes: closing in on a link? Diabetes. 2015;64:1503–5.
62. Nucci AM, Virtanen SM, Becker DJ. Infant feeding and timing of complementary foods in the development of type 1 diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2015;15:62.
63. Griebler U, Bruckmüller MU, Kien C, et al. Health effects of cow's milk consumption in infants up to 3 years of age: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Public Health Nutr. 2016;19:293–307.
64. Krishna CS, Srikanta S. Type 1 diabetes pathogenesis – prevention??? Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2015;19(Suppl 1):S58–63.
65. Lamb MM, Miller M, Seifert JA, et al. The effect of childhood cow's milk intake and HLA-DR genotype on risk of islet autoimmunity and type 1 diabetes: the diabetes autoimmunity study in the young. Pediatr Diabetes. 2015;16:31–8.
66. Liu C, Lu M, Xia X, et al. Correlation of serum vitamin D level with type 1 diabetes mellitus in children: a meta-analysis. Nutr Hosp. 2015;32:1591–4.
67. Mäkinen M, Mykkänen J, Koskinen M, et al. Serum 25-hydroxyvitamin D concentrations in children progressing to autoimmunity and clinical type 1 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2016;101:723–9.
68. Talaat IM, Nasr A, Alsulaimani AA, et al. Association between type 1, type 2 cytokines, diabetic autoantibodies and 25-hydroxyvitamin D in children with type 1 diabetes. J Endocrinol Investig. 2016;39(12):1425–34.
69. Gianchecchi E, Fierabracci A. On the pathogenesis of insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus: the role of microbiota. Immunol Res. 2017;65(1):242–56.
70. Murri M, Leiva I, Gomez-Zumaquero JM, Tinahones FJ, Cardona F, Soriguer F, Queipo-Ortuño MI. Gut microbiota in children with type 1 diabetes differs from that in healthy children: a case-control study. BMC Med. 2013;11:46. https://doi.org/10.1186/1741-7015-11-46.
71. Mejía-León ME, Petrosino JF, Ajami NJ, Domínguez-Bello MG, de la Barca AM. Fecal microbiota imbalance in Mexican children with type 1 diabetes. Sci Rep. 2014;4:3814. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep03814.
72. Armougom F, Henry M, Vialettes B, Raccah D, Raoult D. Monitoring bacterial community of human gut microbiota reveals an increase in lactobacillus in obese patients and methanogens in anorexic patients. PLoS One. 2009;4(9):e7125. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0007125.
73. Uusitalo U, Liu X, Yang J, TEDDY Study Group, et al. Association of early exposure of probiotics and islet autoimmunity in the TEDDY study. JAMA Pediatr. 2016;170(1):20–8.
74. Tard C, Rouxel O, Lehuen A. Regulatory role of natural killer T cells in diabetes. Biom J. 2015;38:484–95.
75. Porcelli S, Yockey CE, Brenner MB, et al. Analysis of T cell antigen receptor (TCR) expression by human peripheral blood CD4-8- alpha/beta T cells demonstrates preferential use of several Vß genes and an invariant TCR alpha chain. J Exp Med. 1993;178:1–16.
76. Lantz O, Bendelac A. An invariant T cell receptor alpha chain is used by a unique subset of MHC class I-specific CD4+ and CD4-8- T cells in mice and humans. J Exp Med. 1994;180:1097–106.
77. Baxter AG, Hammond KJ, Scollay R, et al. Association between alphabeta TCR+CD-CD- T-cell deficiency and IDMM in NOD/Lt mice. Diabetes. 1997;46:572–82.
78. Kronenberg M, Gapin L. The unconventional lifestyle of NKT cells. Nat Rev Immunol. 2002;2:557–8.
79. Naumov YN, Bahjat KS, Gausling R, et al. Activation of CD1d-restricted T cells protects NOD mice from developing diabetes by regulating dendritic cell subsets. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98:13838–43.
80. Hammond KJ, Pellicci DG, Poulton LD, et al. CD1d-restricted NKT cells: an interstrain comparison. J Immunol. 2001;167:1164–73.
81. Lehuen A, Lantz O, Beaudoin L, et al. Overexpression of natural killer T cells protects Va14-Ja281 transgenic nonobese mice against diabetes. J Exp Med. 1998;188:1831–9.
82. Falcone M, Brian Y, Tucker L, et al. A defect in interleukin 12-induced activation and interferon-gamma secretion of peripheral natural killer T cells in nonobese diabetic mice suggests new pathogenic mechanism for insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Exp Med. 1999;190:963–72.
83. Poulon LD, Smyth MJ, Hawke CG, et al. Cytometric and functional analysis of NK- and NKT cell deficiencies in NOD mice. Int Immunol. 2001;13:887–96.
84. Berzins SP, Kyparissoudis K, Pellicci DG, et al. Systemic NKT cell deficiency in NOD mice is not detected in peripheral blood: implications for human studies. Immunol Cell Biol. 2004;82:247–52.
85. Wagner MJD, Hussain S, Mehan M, et al. A defect in lineage fate decision during fetal thymic invariant NKT cell development may regulate susceptibility to type 1 diabetes. J Immunol. 2005;174:6764–71.
86. Carnaud C, Gombert J, Donnars O, et al. Protection against diabetes and improved NK/NKT cell performance in NOD.NK1.1 mice congenic at the NK complex. J Immunol. 2001;166:2404–11.
87. Esteban LM, Tsoutsman T, Jordan MA, et al. Genetic control of NKT cell numbers maps to major diabetes and lupus loci. J Immunol. 2003;171:2873–8.
88. Rocha-Campos AC, Melki R, Zhu R, et al. Genetic and functional analysis of the Nkt1 locus using congenic NOD mice: improved Vα14-NKT cell performance but failure to protect against type 1 diabetes. Diabetes. 2006;55:1163–70.

89. Kent S, Chen Y, Clemmings SM, et al. Loss of IL-4 secretion from human type 1a diabetic pancreatic draining lymph node NKT cells. J Immunol. 2005;175:4458–64.
90. Kukreja A, Cost G, Marker J, et al. Multiple immuno-regulatory defects in type 1 diabetes. J Clin Invest. 2002;109:131–40.
91. Rodacki M, Svoren B, Butty V, et al. Altered natural killer cells in type 1 diabetic patients. Diabetes. 2007;56:177–85.
92. Janos K, Engelmann P, Farkas K, et al. Reduced CD4- subset and Th1 bias of the human iNKT cells in type 1 diabetes mellitus. J Leukoc Biol. 2006;81:654–62.
93. Roman-Gonzalez A, Moreno ME, Alfaro JM, et al. Frequency and function of circulating invariant NKT cells in autoimmune diabetes mellitus and thyroid diseases in Colombian patients. Human Immunol. 2009;70:262–8.
94. Montoya CJ, Pollard D, Martinson J, et al. Characterization of human invariant natural killer T subsets in health and disease using a novel invariant natural killer T cell-clonotypic monoclonal antibody, 6B11. Immunology. 2007;122:1–14.
95. Ortiz-Navarrete V, Canche-Pool E, Gómez-Díaz R, et al. CRTAM molecule is expressed at the cell surface of NKT cells from patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus. Clin Immunol. 2009;131:S145.
96. Beristain-Covarrubias N, Canche-Pool E, Gomez-Diaz R, et al. Reduced iNKT cells numbers in type 1 diabetes patients and their first-degree relatives. Immun Inflamm Dis. 2015;3:411–9.
97. Gómez-Díaz RA, Aguilar MV, Meguro EN, et al. The role of natural killer T (NKT) cells in the pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes. Curr Diabetes Rev. 2011;7:278–83.
98. Beristain-Covarrubias N, Canche-Pool EB, Ramirez-Velazquez C, et al. Class I-restricted T cell-associated molecule is a Marker for IFN-γ-producing iNKT cells in healthy subjects and patients with type 1 diabetes. J Interf Cytokine Res. 2017;37(1):39–49.
99. Lombardi G, Burzyn D, Mundiñiano J, et al. Cathepsin-L influences the expression of extracellular matrix in lymphoid organs and plays a role in the regulation of thymic output and of peripheral T cell number. J Immunol. 2005;174:7022–32.
100. Gómez-Díaz RA, Medina-Santillán R, Castro Magdonel BE, et al. Association of NKT cells with expression of the CTSL gene in Mexican pediatric population with recently-diagnosed type 1 diabetes. Gac Med Mex. 2016;152:14–21.

Pathophysiology of Type 2 Diabetes

8

Jothydev Kesavadev, Fatema Jawad, Asma Deeb, Ankia Coetzee, M. A. Jalil Ansari, Dina Shrestha, Noel Somasundaram, and Sanjay Kalra

Introduction

While in the earlier times type 2 diabetes (T2D) was only considered as a disease related to a disturbance in the functioning of the pancreas, lots of evidences accumulated during the past few decades revealed a plethora of additional factors that contribute to this devastating disease. The understanding of T2D has evolved from recognizing the duo of pancreatic β-cell failure with defective insulin secretion and insulin resistance (IR), to the triumvirate with the addition of hepatic gluconeogenesis. Recently, the ominous octet (addition of deranged adipocyte metabolism, incretin defect, increased glucagon secretion, increased renal glucose reabsorption, and neurotransmitter dysfunction and central appetite dysregulation) and of later the dirty dozen (addition of dopamine, vitamin D, testosterone and renin-angiotensin system) elaborated on the prior simplistic disease models. Furthermore, with the addition of the gut, the unlucky thirteen, suggests that the contributing factors toward T2D pathogenesis are still in the process of being identified [1–9]. In this chapter, we will explore the various factors that have been identified or are being proposed as the underlying contributors to the pathogenesis and pathophysiology of T2D.

J. Kesavadev (✉)
Jothydev's Diabetes Research Center, Trivandrum, India

F. Jawad
Department of Diabetology, Sindh Institute of Urology and Transplantation, Karachi, Pakistan

A. Deeb
Mafraq Hospital, Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates
e-mail: adeeb@seha.ae

A. Coetzee
Division of Endocrinology, Department of Medicine, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, Stellenbosch University, Tygerberg, Cape Town, South Africa

M. A. Jalil Ansari
Department of Endocrinology, Dhaka Medical College & Hospital (DMCH), Dhaka, Bangladesh

D. Shrestha
Department of Endocrinology, Norvic International Hospital, Kathmandu, Nepal

N. Somasundaram
National Hospital of Sri Lanka, Colombo, Sri Lanka

S. Kalra
Department of Endocrinology, Bharati Hospital, Karnal, Haryana, India

Glucose Homeostasis

In healthy individuals, a normal glucose homeostasis in the basal or postabsorptive state is maintained, despite wide fluctuations in supply and demand, by means of a highly regulated and dynamic interaction between tissue sensitivity to insulin and insulin secretion. While maintenance of plasma and tissue glucose levels are required for vital functions of the brain, elevated glucose levels are deleterious or toxic to vascular endothelium and a myriad of other vital tissues. Normally in the postabsorptive state, most of the glucose utilization occurs in the insulin-independent tissues like the brain (50%) and splanchnic areas (25%) while the rest in the insulin-dependent tissues like muscles and adipose tissue. The insulin secretion during the next 2 hours depends on the glucose disposal rate and the degree of suppression of hepatic glucose production (HGP). Additionally, insulin stimulates lipoprotein lipase in the vascular endothelium and promotes lipolysis and removal of chylomicrons and VLDL from the circulation. A derangement in the appropriate β-cell insulin secretion or insulin action at the level of the muscle, liver, and adipose tissue foregoes the hyperglycemic states of prediabetic and diabetic states [10, 11].

Pathophysiology of Type 2 Diabetes

Individuals at risk of T2D are thought to inherit a genetic predisposition to insulin resistance [2, 12]. Chronic fuel excess is the chief pathogenic event that triggers the T2D development in these genetically and/or epigenetically

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_8

susceptible individuals [9]. In states of normal insulin sensitivity, HGP is suppressed by insulin. However, in the event of hepatic IR, gluconeogenesis continues during the basal state even when the fasting insulin level is high and leads to hyperglycemia [13]. During the fed state, suppression of HGP in response to insulin is impaired as well [14]. With peripheral tissue IR, post-meal glucose uptake ensues and postprandial hyperglycemia sets in [14]. The current epidemic of obesity and physical inactivity [15] are IR states [16] that unmask the pancreatic β-cell defect when they fail to augment insulin secretion to offset the effects of IR [2, 3]. As long as the β-cells are able to enhance their insulin secretion to compensate for the impact of IR, glucose tolerance/euglycemia is maintained [17]. However, with time β-cells become unable to compensate for the IR and initially the postprandial plasma glucose (PPG) levels and later the fasting plasma glucose (FPG) levels begin to rise, leading to overt diabetes. Individuals in the upper tertile of impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) are highly insulin-resistant and would have lost 80% of their β-cell function [3, 18].

In 1987 DeFronzo put forward the concept that T2D resulted from deficits in the pancreatic β-cell, the muscle, and the liver, which were collectively referred to as the "triumvirate" (see Fig. 8.1) [1, 18].

In addition to the triumvirate, numerous other factors have been demonstrated to contribute to T2D pathophysiology. In his Banting Lecture, Defronzo revealed some of the other players, viz., adipocytes (accelerated lipolysis), incretin defect, α-cells (hyperglucagonemia), kidney (increased glucose reabsorption), and brain (neurotransmitter dysfunction and central appetite dysregulation), that play important roles in development of glucose intolerance in T2D individuals [3]. Collectively, these eight players were named as the "ominous octet" [18].

The cast list in T2D pathophysiology is still being unraveled. In 2013, Kalra et. al. suggested another four factors responsible for T2D to be added to the list of ominous octet, viz., dopamine, vitamin D, testosterone, and the renin-angiotensin system (RAS), and labeled all the 12 factors as the "dirty dozen" [6]. In 2016, Somasundaram and Wijesinghe proposed a thirteenth mechanism—the role of gut and gut microbiota in T2D [7]. Other factors such as iron overload and gut-derived serotonin have also been proposed to have a role in T2D development [5].

The "Ominous Octet"

β-Cell Dysfunction

β-Cell dysfunction plays a major role in T2D development, across the spectrum of hyperglycemia, from prediabetes to overt diabetes. These cells are in a constant state of dynamic change, with continued regeneration of islets and simultaneous apoptosis. This delicate balance can be disrupted by multiple abnormalities. As the β-cell failure progresses, insulin secretion becomes inadequate to avert the rising blood glucose levels [10]. Although the plasma insulin response to IR is usually increased during the natural history of T2D, this does not imply that the β-cell is functioning normally. In fact, the onset of β-cell failure is found to occur much earlier, and the contribution to hyperglycemia is, in fact, more severe than previously appreciated [3]. For as long as the β-cells are able to augment insulin secretion

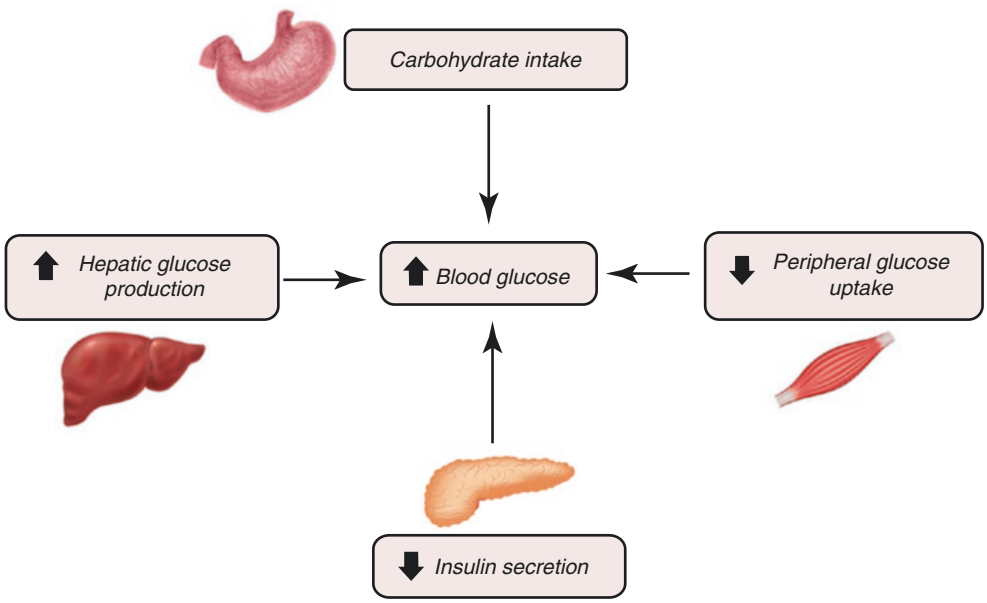


Fig. 8.1 The triumvirate: the core physiological defects that were earlier proposed to be involved in type 2 diabetes pathogenesis [3]. (Adapted from: Chawla [11])

sufficiently to overcome IR, glucose tolerance remains within limits. β-Cell responds to an increment in glucose (ΔG) with an increment in insulin (ΔI), and ΔI/ΔG was initially considered as the measure of β-cell function. The β-cell also takes into account the severity of IR and accordingly adjusts insulin secretion. Thus the gold standard to measure β-cell function is the insulin secretion/IR, i.e., ΔI/ΔG ÷ IR, known as the glucose disposition, index [19]. In individuals susceptible to T2D, there is a limitation to this hypersecretion of insulin. The insulin secretion/IR index seen in normal glucose-tolerant (NGT), IGT, and T2D individuals as a function of the 2-hour PPG during an oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) is shown in Fig. 8.2. The onset of T2D is not associated with a further deterioration in insulin sensitivity but rather insulin secretion that wanes and fails to compensate for the prevailing IR [20]. Individuals in the upper tertile of "normal" glucose tolerance (2-h PG = 120–139 mg/dL, i.e., 6.7–7.7 mmol/l) would have lost two-thirds of their β-cell function (see first arrow in Fig. 8.2), while subjects in the upper tertile of IGT (2-h PG = 180–199 mg/dL, i.e., 10.0–11.1 mmol/l) would have lost 80–85% of their β-cell function (see second arrow in Fig. 8.2) [3, 21–23]. Concisely, although IR in the liver/muscle is well established early in the natural history of T2D, overt diabetes will not develop in the absence of progressive β-cell failure [18]. Also, with acquisition of recent knowledge, it appears that β-cells may become dedifferentiated in people with T2DM and that these dedifferentiated cells may convert to other cell types such as glucagon-secreting α-cells [24].

Age and genes are two well-known non-modifiable factors which influence the state of β-cell health. A progressive age-related decline occurs in the β-cell function [25], and the incidence of diabetes is found to increase with advancing age. β-Cell failure clusters in families and a number of genes have been associated with T2D in people from multiple ethnic backgrounds. Most common are the transcription factors associated with β-cell dysfunction (e.g., the T-allele of single-nucleotide polymorphism rs7903146 of the TCF7L2 gene) [12, 26, 27]. However, the modifiable contributors to insulin secretion and IR, e.g., lipotoxicity, glucotoxicity, and incretin defects, can improve β-cell function and should be sought [3, 28]. Hypersecretion of islet amyloid polypeptide (co-secreted with insulin) gives way to subsequent amyloid deposition within the pancreas, and it is speculated to be involved with disease progression rather than initiation [29, 30] (see Fig. 8.3).

Insulin Resistance

Insulin resistance is the diminished ability of insulin to exert its biological action across a broad range of concentrations [31]. Relatively high insulin levels observed during fasting and in response to insulin secretagogues are indicative of IR. Insulin resistance is a consistent finding in T2D, and it may appear many years before the disease onset. It is also a well-known associate of obesity, and many obese individuals develop T2D. Interestingly, some patients, despite being obese, never develop T2D highlighting the significant contribution of the β-cell deficit in the individuals who develop T2D. Important to note, physical activity has a significant positive effect on insulin sensitivity, even when correcting for confounding factors such as being overweight. What's more, during the latter half of pregnancy, even in women with normal glucose homeostasis, IR increases due to the production of placentally derived hormones like human placental lactogen. Gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM) ensues if the maternal β-cells are unable to produce sufficient insulin to overcome the IR. Insulin resistance is mediated at three organ levels—the liver, muscle, and adipose tissue. Much more than the mere IR, the triad of factors contributes to the biochemical potpourri of diabetes [5, 10].

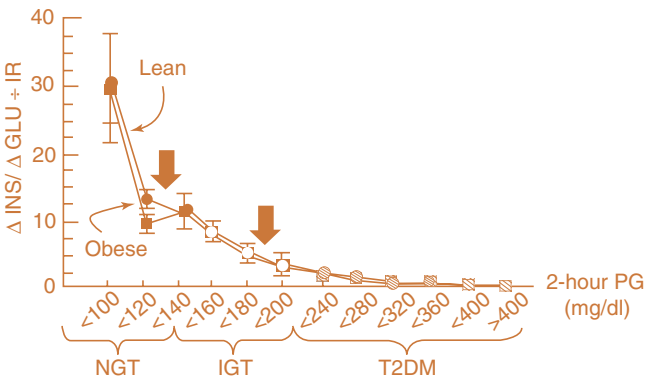


Fig. 8.2 Insulin secretion/insulin resistance (disposition) index in subjects with normal glucose tolerance (NGT), impaired glucose tolerance (IGT), and type 2 diabetes (T2D) as a function of 2-hour PPG in lean (closed circle) and obese (open circle) individuals [3]. (Adapted from: DeFronzo [3])

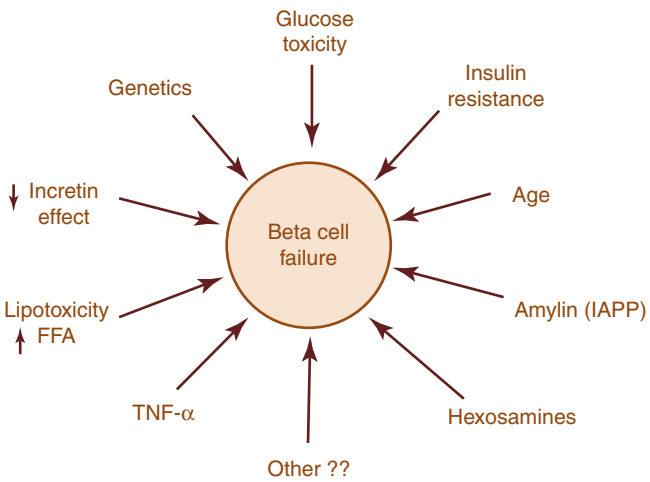


Fig. 8.3 Pathogenic factors implicated in progressive β-cell failure [28]. (Adapted from: DeFronzo et al. [28])

Hepatic Insulin Resistance

Insulin resistance in the liver is manifested by glucose overproduction during the basal state despite fasting hyperinsulinemia [13] and impaired suppression of HGP by insulin [32], following a meal [14]. Due to its obligate need for glucose, brain uses up more than half of the glucose produced. This glucose demand is met primarily by the liver and to a lesser extent by the kidneys [33]. Normally, the liver produces 2 mg/kg per min of glucose, whereas in diabetes-affected individuals, this basal rate of HGP is increased to 2.5 mg/kg per min. This increased HGP occurs even when the fasting plasma insulin levels are increased 2.5 to 3-fold, indicating severe resistance to the suppressive effect of insulin on HGP.

In the early stages of T2D, postprandial hyperglycemia is attributed to reduced glucose uptake by the muscles, and during the postabsorptive period, the fasting levels are maintained by HGP. Both sources of HGP, glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis are under insulin control. But in IR state, the latter accounts for nearly the entire increase in hepatic glucose output. Around one-fourth of the glucose derived from a meal is extracted by the liver during recycling of portal and systemic blood, and insulin is suggested to facilitate the storage of this glucose as glycogen. Gluconeogenesis accounts for even greater amounts of glycogen. Moreover, during active gluconeogenesis, glycogenolysis is inhibited and results in excess hepatic glycogen [34] in uncontrolled diabetes. The accelerated gluconeogenesis in T2D can be due to elevated circulating levels of precursor molecules like lactate and alanine from the muscles and glycerol from the adipose tissue. Simultaneous upsurge in free fatty acids (FFA) and concomitant hyperglucagonemia facilitate gluconeogenesis. Insulin resistance also stimulates VLDL and apo-B synthesis in the liver, while HDL is lowered due to greater exchange of cholesterol ester transport protein. An increase in small dense low-density lipoprotein particles is also noted during the process [1].

Muscle Insulin Resistance

In the muscle, IR is manifested by impaired glucose uptake after carbohydrate ingestion, resulting in postprandial hyperglycemia [32, 35, 36]. In the insulin-stimulated postprandial state, the skeletal muscle accounts for more than 75% of the excess glucose uptake [37], and in diabetes patients, it accounts for the largest part of impairment of glucose disposal. Adipose tissue mass being smaller in size accounts for the rest, whereas there may not be any change in the case of brain and splanchnic tissues [10]. In T2D the muscle IR accounts for more than 85–90% of the impairment in total body glucose disposal [1, 2, 35, 36].

Adipose Tissue Insulin Resistance

Though deranged adipocyte metabolism was initially not considered to play a significant role in T2D pathogenesis, later on, evidences supported the adipose tissue to be considered as the "fourth musketeer" along with the triumvirate [3, 38, 39]. In healthy individuals, insulin exerts an anti-lipolytic effect on fat cells, whereas in T2D individuals, IR prevents insulin from exerting its anti-lipolytic effect. The result is sustained lipolysis with day-long elevation in plasma free fatty acid (FFA) levels. This, in turn, stimulates gluconeogenesis, induce hepatic and muscle IR, and impair β-cell function (lipotoxicity). FFAs also enhance the activity of glucose-6-phosphatase that ultimately controls the release of glucose by the liver [40]. Dysfunctional adipocytes produce proinflammatory adipocytokines in excess (IL-6, TNF-α, leptin, visfatin, etc.) which induce IR and atherosclerosis. This also induces a feed-forward process in which activation of transcription factors leads to further proinflammatory cytokine production [8, 41]. Deranged adipocytes also tend to secrete subnormal amounts of insulin-sensitizing adipocytokines (e.g., adiponectin). Enlarged fat cells are insulin-resistant and have lesser capacity to store fat. When the storage capacity of adipocyte is exceeded, lipid "overflows" into the muscle, liver, β-cells, and arterial vascular smooth muscle cells leading to muscle and hepatic IR, impaired insulin secretion, and acceleration of atherosclerosis [42].

Meanwhile, the discovery of functional brown adipose tissue raised the possibility for its involvement in human energy homeostasis and in preventing T2D. The detectability of this tissue lessens with age, high BMI and high FPG [9, 43]. A healthy obese state has been entertained, and the theory is based on the existence of differences in IR between adipose deposition sites. In other words, adipose site-specific IR by intra-abdominal adipose tissue seemingly more insulin resistant and harmful than subcutaneous adipose tissue (SAP). The former has particularities related to higher lipolysis, higher release of adipokines, etc. which are longitudinally associated with an increased risk of incident metabolic syndrome (MetS) [44]. In individuals who remain resistant to T2D, excess calories are safely partitioned to SAP rather than to the muscle, liver, heart, and β-cells, thus avoiding damages to the key organs. Major mechanisms for such protective effects include β-cell compensation, maintenance of near-normal blood nutrient levels, development of minimal IR, increased expansion of SAT relative to visceral adipose tissue, and limited increase in liver fat [9].

Alpha Cells (Increased Glucagon Secretion)

In as early as 1970s, it has been established that T2D individuals have elevated plasma glucagon levels [45–47]. While a reduction in β-cell mass is seen in diabetes patients as compared to normal individuals, there occurs no reduction in the α-cell mass. It is also proposed that β-cells dedifferentiate in T2D individuals and get converted to other cell types like glucagon-secreting α-cells [24]. Substantiating these, even when insulin levels progressively decline over the course of T2D, basal glucagon levels tend to remain elevated [48, 49].

The role of hyperglucagonemia in the maintenance of increased rates of HGP in T2D was demonstrated by Baron et al. [50]. In T2D, fasting glucagon levels are elevated, and the postprandial glucagon levels are not suppressed but paradoxically elevated. This raised blood glucagon levels increase the HGP leading to an elevation in FPG and PPG levels resulting in worsening of diabetes [49, 51].

Upon somatostatin infusion, there were declines in plasma glucagon levels by 44% and in basal HGP by 58%. When somatostatin was administered to alloxan-diabetic dogs [52] or to insulin-deprived T2D subjects [53], hyperglucagonemia was suppressed and hyperglycemia was reduced, even though insulin had been reduced or discontinued. Many other studies also support the prime role played by glucagon in T2D pathogenesis [45, 54, 55]. The drugs capable of inhibiting glucagon secretion or blocking the glucagon receptor are now proven effective in treating T2D [56–58].

Incretin Defect

Glucose ingestion can elicit a higher insulin response than an intravenous infusion which is explained by the incretin effect. The incretin hormones, Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) secreted by the L-cells of the distal small intestine and Glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide (GIP) by the K-cells of the more proximal small intestine, collectively act on the pancreatic islet [3, 8, 59, 60]. Of these, the GLP-1 acts on the β-cells to increase insulin and on the α-cells to suppress glucagon secretion [59]. GLP-1 thus imparts an indirect benefit on β-cell workload, since a reduction in glucagon levels leads to a reduced postprandial HGP. Gut hormones, including GLP-1, also have roles in central nervous system (CNS) regulation of energy balance and appetite [9, 61]. GLP-1 delays the rate of gastric emptying, results in a feeling of fullness and satiety, and is therefore associated with control of weight gain [3, 62, 63]. In T2D, the incretin effect is substantially impaired possibly due to impaired GLP-1 production and reduced sensitivity of β-cells to GIP [9, 64, 65]. Dysfunction in the glucagon secretion due to impaired incretin action is also suggested [66]. In subjects with NGT, IGT, or T2D, plasma GLP-1 levels do not seem to differ much [66] which suggests that the β-cell response to GLP-1 following meal ingestion is deficient, as seen during intravenous administration of GLP-1 under controlled conditions [67]. Elevations in GLP-1 levels are reported after bariatric surgery, which might partially explain the multiple beneficial effects of this intervention, especially among T2D individuals [8]. Numerous pharmacologic approaches are available nowadays that effectively harness the potential of incretins to treat diabetes, which include GLP-1 agonists and DPP4 inhibitors [68].

Kidneys (Increased Glucose Reabsorption)

The kidney's adaptive response to conserve glucose, which enables to meet the energy demands of the body, especially the brain and other neural issues, which have an obligate need for glucose, becomes maladaptive in diabetes. Rather than draining out the glucose into urine to correct the hyperglycemia, the kidney retains the glucose. Normally the kidney filters around 162 g of glucose daily, and the high-capacity SGLT2 transporter in the convoluted segment of the proximal tubule reabsorbs almost 90% of the filtered glucose, and the remaining 10% is reabsorbed by the SGLT1 transporter in the straight segment of the descending proximal tubule [69]. In both T1D and T2D, the maximum renal tubular reabsorptive capacity (Tm) for glucose is higher [70–73]. Therefore, in normal individuals, no glucose appears in the urine until the plasma glucose level is >180 mg/dL [74], whereas in T2D this threshold is much higher [72]. Medications to inhibit renal proximal tubular glucose reabsorption were thus thought out to treat T2D [69]. SGLT 2 inhibitors impart multiple benefits like better glycemic control by improving β-cell function and insulin sensitivity, reductions in body weight and blood pressure, etc. [75]. Currently, therapies aimed at inhibiting the SGLT1 receptors in the gut and downstream from SGLT2 receptors in the kidney are also underway [4, 76, 77].

Brain (Neurotransmitter Dysfunction and Central Appetite Dysregulation)

The nervous system also plays a key role in T2D pathogenesis. Sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems control glucose metabolism directly through the neuronal input and indirectly via the circulation to regulate insulin and glucagon release and HGP [8, 78]. Severing the vagus nerve impaired the insulin secretion revealing its important role in regulating the islet [79]. Ablation of the hypothalamus leads to β-cell dysregulation and subsequent hyperinsulinemia [80]. Insulin has a powerful appetite suppressing effect [81]. However, in obese individuals with or without diabetes, even though IR results in compensatory hyperinsulinemia, food intake seems to be higher indicating that the appetite centers are also IR. In a functional magnetic resonance imaging study where the cerebral response to ingested glucose was examined [82], consistent inhibition was noted in the lower posterior (which contains the ventromedial nuclei) and upper posterior (which contains the paraventricular nuclei) hypothalamus upon glucose ingestion. Both these areas are key appetite regulation centers, and the extent of inhibitory response upon glucose ingestion was decreased in these areas in obese, insulin-resistant, subjects even when euglycemic. A delay was also observed in the time taken to reach the maximum inhibitory response in these individuals even in the presence of a high plasma insulin response. Further studies have also indicated that cerebral IR leads to increased HGP and reduced muscle glucose uptake [83, 84]. High-fat diet-fed rodents are prone to inflammation-induced neuronal injury, and in humans, structural changes in the hypothalamus

have been observed in keeping with gliosis in obese compared to lean individuals [85]. Reduced dopamine levels in the hypothalamus and increased catecholamine levels in the CNS also contribute to the appetite dysregulation and are suggested to directly cause IR in liver and peripheral tissues [84, 86]. The neuroendocrine hormone amylin is also deficient in T1D and T2D [7], and its effect on appetite dysregulation is suggested to be chiefly mediated via central pathways that include high-affinity binding sites in the area postrema in the hindbrain [87]. It also has direct gut effects through a decrease in the rate of gastric emptying [88]. Clock genes located in the brain which are major determinants of circadian rhythmicity, together with sleep, are now being investigated due to their role in metabolic processes [89, 90].

The "Dirty Dozen," the "Unlucky Thirteen" and Much More

Dopamine

Dopamine the most abundant catecholamine in the brain has been nicknamed as the "forgotten felon" of diabetes [5], and along with the other catecholamines of the autonomic nervous system, this neurotransmitter modulates glycemia. It was Kalra et al. who proposed the specific addition of dopaminergic system as a ninth contributor to the T2D development [91]. Mammalian species have an inherent capacity to alter their metabolism from the insulin-sensitive/glucose-tolerant state to the insulin-resistant/glucose-intolerant state at exactly the right time of the year to meet the varying energy demands. Such seasonal metabolic changes are governed by the changes in monoaminergic concentrations/activity in the suprachiasmatic nuclei (SCN) of the hypothalamus—the mammalian circadian pacemaker—and in the ventromedial hypothalamus (VMH). Development of an IR state during such seasonal changes exactly mimics the T2D state: muscle and hepatic IR, increased HGP/gluconeogenesis, hyperglycemia, adipocyte IR and enhanced lipolysis, increased plasma FFA and triglyceride levels, and obesity. Evidences implicate endogenous dopaminergic and serotonergic rhythms in SCN and VMH in the transition from the insulin-sensitive to insulin-resistant state. In the animals that undergo seasonal changes in metabolism, within the VMH, during the insulin-resistant state, both serotonin and noradrenergic levels and activity are enhanced and decrease to normal levels upon returning to the insulin-sensitive state. On the contrary, dopamine levels are decreased during the IR state and increase to normal following return of the insulin-sensitive state. A selective destruction of dopaminergic neurons in SCN of the hypothalamus resulted in severe IR [86, 92, 93].

Both systemic [94, 95] and intracerebral [96] bromocriptine (a sympatholytic D2-dopamine agonist) administration to insulin-resistant animals decreased the elevated VMH noradrenergic and serotonergic levels with a resultant decline in HGP, reduced adipose tissue lipolysis, and improved insulin sensitivity. In T2D and obese nondiabetic individuals, systemic bromocriptine administration improved glycemic control and dyslipidemia without changes in body weight [97]. It was postulated that in T2D patients hypothalamic dopamine reduces in the early morning leading to elevated HGP and lipolysis resulting in glucose intolerance, IR, and dyslipidemia. Timed bromocriptine (quick release formulation) administration within 2h of awakening augmented low hypothalamic dopamine levels and decreased the sympathetic tone within the CNS, leading to an increase in insulin sensitivity, suppression of HGP, and thereby a reduction in PPG levels [86].

Vitamin D

Vitamin D subserves a range of biological functions like cell differentiation, inhibition of cell growth, and immunomodulation. Both direct and indirect effects of vitamin D on various mechanisms related to the T1D and T2D pathophysiology have been postulated including pancreatic β-cell dysfunction, impaired insulin action, systemic inflammation, and apoptosis. Vitamin D receptors occur in all tissues and organs that are involved in these diseases, and the machinery for producing vitamin D locally is also present in islets, immune cells, and other tissues involved [6, 98–100]. Children receiving recommended dose of vitamin D during the first year of life had an 80% reduced T1D risk [101]. Lower vitamin D levels might result in impaired β-cell function with lowered insulin secretion and sensitivity and with higher IR [102] and might also pose a risk for developing macrovascular and microvascular complications [103]. Among Caucasian children and adolescents, low vitamin D levels were associated with total adiposity, MetS, and hypertension [104]. Vitamin D supplementation to T2D and nondiabetic subjects impart beneficial effects on glucose homeostasis and other markers of MetS like improving β-cell function and insulin secretion and reducing IR [105, 106].

Renin-Angiotensin System

Evidences suggest a role for the RAS in the development of IR and T2D [107, 108]. Detrimental effects that RAS has on insulin secretion is mediated by a decrease in pancreatic blood flow and induction of islet fibrosis, oxidative stress, and inflammation, whereas both impaired skeletal muscle function (disturbances in skeletal muscle blood flow, insulin signaling, and mitochondrial function) and adipose tissue

(AT) dysfunction (adipocyte hypertrophy, inflammation, and impairments in AT blood flow and lipid metabolism) may contribute to RAS-induced IR [108]. Frequent association of T2D with hypertension, retinopathy, nephropathy, and cardiovascular disease (CVD) has also implicated RAS in the initiation and progression of these disorders.

RAS blockade significantly improves insulin sensitivity [109–111] and significantly reduces the incidence of vascular complications in T2D [112–114]. Such improvements are postulated to be due to the improvement of blood flow and microcirculation in skeletal muscles, decrease in adipocyte size, protective actions on pancreatic islets, etc., thereby facilitating insulin signaling at the cellular level and improvement of insulin secretion by pancreatic β-cells [7, 115–118]. Among high-risk populations, RAS blockade using either angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARB) or angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEI) led to a 22% reduction in the incidence of new-onset T2D [119]. The DREAM study in individuals without CVD but with impaired fasting glucose levels or IGT showed that the ACEI ramipril did not significantly reduce the diabetes incidence or death but significantly increased the regression to normoglycemia [120]. The NAVIGATOR study among individuals with IGT and CVD or risk factors showed that ARB (valsartan) use, along with lifestyle modification, caused a relative 14% reduction in the diabetes incidence but did not reduce the rate of CVD events [121]. Despite the lack of consistency in the findings between many of these trials, sub-analyses of some of them have shown that RAS inhibitors improve glucose levels and reduce the risk for diabetes in higher-risk populations [107, 122, 123].

Testosterone

An association between low testosterone and T2DM risk in men is well-proven [124–126]. Morbid obesity imposes negative effects on the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis in men [127]. A bidirectional relationship between visceral fat and testosterone is suggested, which sets up a self-perpetuating cycle promoting IR and diabetes. High visceral fat increases secretion of proinflammatory cytokines, estradiol, insulin, and leptin, all of which may inhibit the hypothalamo-pituitary gonadal axis activity at multiple levels [128, 129]. Decreased testosterone levels also build up IR via mechanisms involving the muscle [130], liver [131], and bone [132]. Testosterone decreases IR by regulating mature adipocytes and myocytes. Testosterone also increased catecholamine-induced lipolysis in vitro [133] and decreased lipoprotein lipase activity and triglyceride uptake in abdominal adipose tissue in humans [134]. A positive correlation exists between testosterone levels and insulin sensitivity, and the individuals with hypogonadal testosterone levels had higher BMI and higher prevalence of the MetS than their eugonadal counterparts [130]. Other studies, including the landmark studies like Massachusetts Male Aging Study (MMAS) and Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial (MRFIT), have all demonstrated an inverse association between low testosterone levels and risk for MetS and diabetes [126, 135–137]. Further, low sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG) may lead to IR and to lower total testosterone [138]. Among prostate cancer patients subjected to androgen deprivation therapy (ADT), lower testosterone levels were associated with increased IR [139, 140] and an increased diabetes risk [141]. Testosterone substitution in hypogonadal men improved insulin sensitivity and glycemic control [142, 143]. In men with newly diagnosed diabetes, the addition of testosterone to a regimen of diet and exercise significantly improved the outcomes on glycemic control and reversal of the MetS [143, 144].

Interestingly, the effect of testosterone on IR and T2D is opposite between males and females. Its low concentrations in males but high concentrations in females favor IR and T2D [145–147]. In a systematic review and meta-analysis by Ding et.al, endogenous levels of testosterone and SHBG were found to exhibit sex-dependent relations with the risk of T2D. Elevated testosterone levels were linked to greater T2D risk in females but lower risk in males. Meanwhile, SHBG was more protective in females than in males [147]. Polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), characterized by chronic anovulation and hyperandrogenism, was also suggested to have partly contributed to this observed positive testosterone association in females. Insulin resistance with compensatory hyperinsulinemia is the key pathogenic factor in PCOS and can lead to the onset of hyperandrogenism by stimulating ovarian androgen production and by decreasing the SHBG levels. Females of reproductive age with PCOS are thus prone to metabolic disorders and T2D [147, 148].

Gut and Gut Microbiota

Gut

Centuries back, the ancient Greek physician Hippocrates had said: “All Disease Begins in the Gut.” Mounting evidence strongly supports the above-quoted hypothesis, and in 2016 Somasundaram et.al. proposed the role played by gut as the thirteenth mechanism in diabetes pathogenesis [7]. Even though the contribution of gastrointestinal (GI) carbohydrate absorption toward T2D pathogenesis had long been known, its contribution was rather underutilized as a target for therapy. Alpha-glucosidase inhibitor (AGI) is the only class of drug that effectively utilizes this mechanism for the treatment

of diabetes and has clear beneficial effects on glycemic control and post-load insulin levels [149]. SGLT1 plays a distinct and complementing role to SGLT2 in glucose homeostasis. Within the GI tract, SGLT1 is responsible for glucose absorption and is also involved in 10% of renal glucose reabsorption. Inhibition of SGLT1 and combined inhibition of SGLT1/SGLT2 is thus a new anti-hyperglycemic concept [4, 76, 77], which further implies the contribution of GI carbohydrate absorption in T2D pathogenesis.

Bile acids also play a significant role in modulating glucose homeostasis, and bile acid homeostasis is altered in T2D. Bile acids act as signaling molecules through receptor-dependent and receptor-independent pathways [150]. They act as endogenous ligands of the farnesoid X receptor (FXR), and their activation of FXR leads to the release of fibroblast growth factor (FGF) [151]. Through FXR, bile acids suppress the in vitro expression of fructose-1, 6-biphosphatase-1, gluconeogenic phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase and glucose-6-phosphatase [152]. G-protein-coupled receptors TGR5 (also termed GPR131) located on intestinal L-cells are activated by bile acids, resulting in GLP-1 secretion [153]. Intraduodenal bile acid infusion dose-dependently enhanced the plasma FGF19 concentrations, with smaller effects on GLP-1 and CCK [154, 155]. FGF19 possess insulin-like effects inducing glycogen and protein synthesis while suppressing glucose production [8]. A second-generation bile acid sequestrant colesevelam modestly reduces glucose in T2DM when used as an adjunct to other agents. Suggested mechanisms include its effect on bile acid receptors in the intestine as well as in the liver to reduce endogenous glucose production [7, 156].

Gut Microbiota

Besides the gut, the gut microbiome is also involved in the T2D pathogenesis [7, 8, 157, 158]. Gut dysbiosis, intestinal barrier dysfunction, and subsequent metabolic endotoxemia are all closely related to the inflammation, IR, and finally CVD events in T2D [159, 160]. Individuals with prediabetes or T2D have a moderate degree of gut microbial dysbiosis in terms of a reduction in the abundance of certain universal butyrate-producing bacteria (*Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Roseburia intestinalis*, etc.) and an increase in various opportunistic pathogens (like *Lactobacillus* sp.) [160, 161]. In individuals with MetS, vancomycin treatment decreased the abundance of butyrate-producing gram-positive bacteria, which correlated well with impaired insulin sensitivity [162]. Decreased levels of butyrate-producing gut microbes in T2D individuals were thus suggested to lead to disease pathogenesis. Among the short-chain fatty acids, butyrate acts as a prominent energy source for intestinal epithelial cells and influences a variety of colonic mucosal functions, reinforcing the colonic defense barrier and attenuating oxidative stress [163]. Butyrate also enhances the intestinal barrier by modulating the assembly of tight junctions (TJs) via AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) activation [164]. Feces of T2D subjects were relatively enriched with endotoxin-producing gram-negative bacteria (phyla *Bacteroidetes* and *Proteobacteria*) which suggested the role played by these phyla in T2D pathogenesis through an endotoxin-induced inflammatory response pathway [161]. In the liver, cholic acid and chenodeoxycholic acid constitute primary bile acids produced from cholesterol, and the gut microbiota transforms these primary bile acids into secondary bile acids [165]. In line with these facts, 6 weeks after the infusion of intestinal microbiota from lean subjects, an improvement in insulin sensitivity was noted in subjects with MetS [166].

Iron Overload

There is no active mechanism for iron excretion in humans, and the amount of iron absorbed into the body is balanced by the iron lost by means of sloughing of the intestinal mucosa and skin and also lesser amounts that are excreted in the urine and bile [167]. Iron overload is thus a risk factor for T2D [168], whereas its depletion has a protective effect against T2D.

The foremost evidences for this were obtained from studies related to pathologic iron overload disease conditions like hereditary hemochromatosis (HH) [169] and transfusional iron overload [170]. Both insulin deficiency and IR can contribute to the T2D pathophysiology associated with HH [171, 172]. Individuals with HH have an inherent insulin secretory defect, making them highly prone to develop diabetes especially when IR from an independent mechanism such as obesity intervenes [173]. HH individuals have extremely high ferritin levels (1,000–10,000 ng/ml), and around 25–60% of them develop "secondary" T2D [174, 175]. Transfusional iron overload is usually seen in transfusion-dependent chronic hemolytic anemia such as β-thalassemia. Due to the numerous transfusions that are required to maintain adequate erythrocyte levels and the resultant increased iron absorption, these patients become iron overloaded [176]. Individuals with β-thalassemia mostly develop IGT during the second decade of life, and a diabetes prevalence is reported among 6–14% of the patients [177, 178]. T2D is also prevalent among survivors of pediatric bone marrow transplantation [179] and allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation [180]. Some rare inherited diseases that cause diabetes such as Friedreich ataxia are associated with iron imbalance and with mutations in the proteins involved in iron metabolism [181].

Positive associations between elevated body iron stores (measured as circulating ferritin), and the risk of T2D and of other IR states such as the MetS, GDM, PCOS, and possibly CVD, have been demonstrated [174, 182, 183]. Moderate increases in iron stores (lower than the levels found in HH subjects) were associated with increases in blood glucose and insulin levels. Furthermore, moderately increased body iron stores at baseline were associated with an elevated risk of developing T2D in the future [175]. In a National Health and Nutrition Education Survey (NHANES), the odds ratios for newly diagnosed diabetes in individuals with higher serum ferritin levels were 4.94 for males and 3.61 for females [184]. A link has also been established between increased dietary iron intake (particularly heme iron) and the risk for T2D and GDM [185–188]. No significant association of dietary intakes of total iron, non-heme, and supplemental iron intake was found with the risk of T2DM, whereas heme iron intake showed a positive association, after adjustment for potential confounders. Individuals who consume meat (a major source of heme iron) are thus reported to be more IR compared to the vegetarians [174, 175].

Iron overload is also implicated in the pathogenesis of many diabetes-associated vascular complications including diabetic nephropathy (DNP) and CVD [185]. In individuals with DNP, an increased proximal tubular lysosomal iron concentration has been observed. In iron-loaded subjects with thalassemia, an early development and accelerated course of DNP is reported. Similarly, mutations for HH appeared to predict the development of DNP [189]. Iron has an adverse effect on endothelium and accelerates the development of atherosclerosis. Elevations have been observed in ferritin gene expression during the course of atherosclerotic plaque formation [189, 190].

Multiple mechanisms have been proposed toward the association between iron and abnormal glucose metabolism, like β-cell dysfunction and IR, possibly mediated through oxidative stress [185, 191]. Being a redox-active transitional metal, excess iron is potentially hazardous. It catalyzes several cellular reactions that lead to the production of reactive oxygen species and thereby to an elevated oxidative stress, which is proposed to contribute to an increased risk of T2D. Pancreatic β-cells, due to their weak antioxidant defense system, are highly susceptible to oxidative damage, and thus iron deposition in these cells can result in impaired insulin secretion. In the muscle, iron overload may diminish glucose utilization, thereby leading to a shift from glucose to fatty acid oxidation, resulting in an increased IR. Increased substrate recycling to the liver may contribute to an elevated HGP. Iron may also impair the action of insulin and interfere with glucose uptake in adipocytes. Elevations in systemic inflammation may also modify iron metabolism. Inflammatory cytokines are found to induce the synthesis of ferritin [174, 175]. As iron influences the action of insulin, insulin also is in turn known to influence iron metabolism. Insulin plays a role in redistributing transferrin receptor (TfR) to the cell surface and thereby increasing the cellular uptake of iron in adipose tissue and the liver. Thus in the IR states, inherent hyperinsulinemia leads to elevations in levels of circulating soluble form of TfR (sTfR), a marker of iron status [174].

The potential benefit of iron depletion on insulin sensitivity and/or T2D has been evaluated by many. Phlebotomy enhanced insulin sensitivity and glycemia, in normal as well as T2D subjects with elevated ferritin levels [174, 192]. In HH patients, phlebotomy and/or iron chelation therapy (to decrease body iron stores) improved their glycemic control, and 30–40% of them achieved either elimination of oral diabetes therapy or a substantial decrease in dosage [193]. Blood donations reduce the circulating ferritin levels and frequent blood donors seem to have a better insulin sensitivity than the non-donors. Increased number of lifetime blood donations was found to be associated with decreased prevalence of T2D [194]. Among T2D individuals who were negative for common HH but had increased serum ferritin concentration, bloodletting improved their insulin sensitivity and reduced their C-peptide levels [189].

Conclusion

With the ever-increasing epidemic of obesity, physical inactivity, and an aging population, the prevalence of T2D is reaching pandemic proportions. This demands rigorous efforts to improve our understanding of this devastating disease. Valiant research endeavors have led to an improved understanding of the causality and pathophysiological aspects of T2D. From humble beginnings, with the recognition of only two factors, defective insulin secretion and IR, we are now able to appreciate the complexity and heterogeneity of the role-players in the pathogenesis of T2D (see Fig. 8.4). It is likely that many more factors are yet to be unveiled. While addressing the modifiable risk factors to prevent T2D, this knowledge empowers us to utilize the existing therapies efficiently and inspires us to explore and develop newer effective therapies. The complexity of T2D demands, a multifaceted therapeutic approach, which combines pharmacological and non-pharmacological interventions in an individualized way.

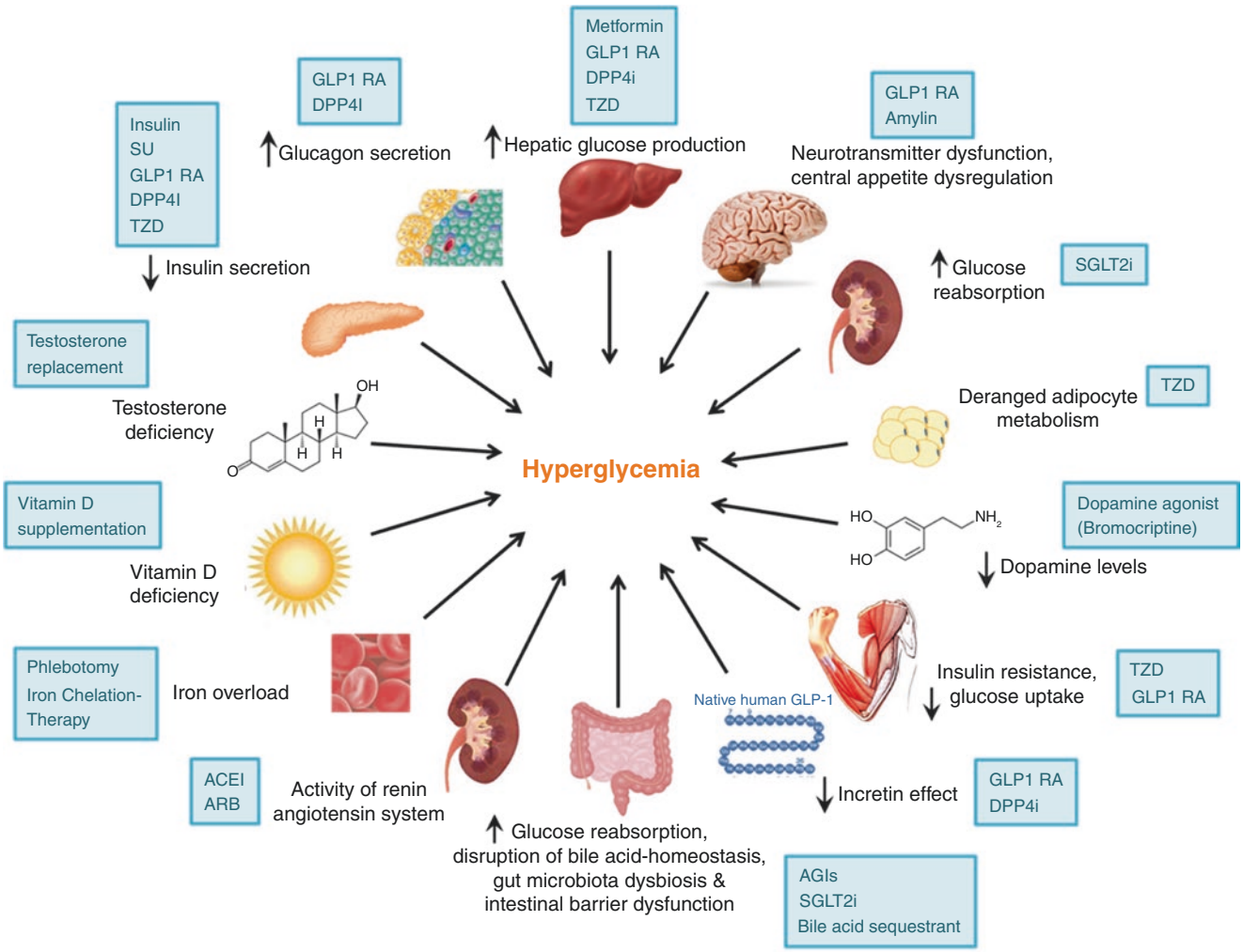


Fig. 8.4 Players in the pathophysiology of T2D

Multiple Choice Questions

1. In the postabsorptive state, most of the glucose utilization occurs:
   (a) In the muscle
   (b) In the brain
   (c) In adipose tissue
   (d) In beta cells
   (e) In red cells
2. Regarding lipoprotein metabolism:
   (a) Insulin has not demonstrated effects.
   (b) Insulin increases circulating VLDL levels.
   (c) Insulin stimulates lipoprotein lipase in adipocytes, promotes lipolysis and removal of chylomicrons.
   (d) Insulin stimulates lipoprotein lipase in vascular endothelium, promotes lipolysis and removal of chylomicrons.
   (e) Insulin increases triglyceride levels.
3. In the event of hepatic insulin resistance:
   (a) Hepatic glucose production is suppressed by low fasting insulin levels.
   (b) Hepatic glucose production initially continues but is suppressed as insulin levels increase.
   (c) Hepatic glucose production is stable.
   (d) Hepatic glucose production continues even when fasting insulin levels are high.
   (e) Hepatic glucose production is suppressed.
4. Postprandial hyperglycemia results:
   (a) From hepatic insulin resistance
   (b) From peripheral tissue insulin resistance
   (c) From beta-cell insulin resistance
   (d) From increased hepatic glucose production
   (e) From decreased transport of glucose in the central nervous system

5. The core physiological defects proposed in the triumvirate concept include the following except:
   (a) The central nervous system
   (b) Pancreatic alpha-cells
   (c) Pancreatic beta-cells
   (d) The liver
   (e) Skeletal muscle
6. Individuals in the upper tertile of "normal" glucose tolerance:
   (a) Maintain 100 percent of beta-cell function
   (b) Have lost 20 percent of beta-cell function
   (c) Have lost 50 percent of beta-cell function
   (d) Have lost 70 percent of beta cell-function
   (e) Have lost 100 percent of beta-cell function
7. Amyloid deposits within the pancreas:
   (a) Have a protective effect on beta-cell function
   (b) Are crucial to initiate type 2 diabetes
   (c) Are involved with disease progression
   (d) Are associated with disease remission
   (e) Indicate glucose toxicity
8. Insulin resistance
   (a) Appears year before the onset of type 2 diabetes
   (b) Is an unusual manifestation of type 2 diabetes
   (c) Is a late manifestation of type 2 diabetes
   (d) Occurs at the same time as beta-cell failure
   (e) Always evolve to type 2 diabetes
9. Hepatic gluconeogenesis is facilitated by:
   (a) The incretin effect
   (b) By overactivity of the beta-cells
   (c) By basal insulin secretion
   (d) By high levels of VLDL lipoproteins
   (e) By high levels of free fatty acids
10. In persons with type 2 diabetes, the largest impairment of glucose disposal occurs:
   (a) In the central nervous system
   (b) In adipose tissue
   (c) In the kidney
   (d) In skeletal muscle
   (e) In erythrocytes

Correct Answers

1. (a) In the muscle
2. (d) Insulin stimulates lipoprotein lipase in vascular endothelium, reduces lipolysis and removal of chylomicrons
3. (d) Hepatic glucose production continues even when fasting insulin levels are high
4. (b) From peripheral tissue insulin resistance
5. (a) The central nervous system
6. (c) Have lost 50 percent of beta-cell function
7. (c) Are involved with disease progression
8. (a) Appears years before the onset of type 2 diabetes
9. (e) By high levels of free fatty acids
10. (d) In skeletal muscle

References

1. DeFronzo RA. The triumvirate: β-cell, muscle, liver: a collusion responsible for NIDDM. Diabetes. 1988;37(6):667–87.
2. DeFronzo RA. Pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes: metabolic and molecular implications for identifying diabetes genes. Diabetes Rev. 1997;5:177–269.
3. DeFronzo RA. From the triumvirate to the ominous octet: a new paradigm for the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes. 2009;58(4):773–95.
4. DeFronzo RA, Triplitt CL, Abdul-Ghani M, Cersosimo E. Novel agents for the treatment of type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Spectr. 2014;27(2):100–12.
5. Kalra S. Recent advances in pathophysiology of diabetes: beyond the dirty dozen. J Pak Med Assoc. 2013;63(2):277–80.
6. Kalra S, Chawla R, Madhu S. The dirty dozen of diabetes. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2013;17(3):367.
7. Somasundaram NP, Wijesinghe AM. Therapy for type 2 diabetes mellitus: targeting the 'Unlucky Thirteen'. Jacobs J Diabetes Endocrinol. 2016;2(1):12.
8. Kahn SE, Cooper ME, Del Prato S. Pathophysiology and treatment of type 2 diabetes: perspectives on the past, present, and future. Lancet. 2014;383(9922):1068–83.
9. Nolan CJ, Damm P, Prentki M. Type 2 diabetes across generations: from pathophysiology to prevention and management. Lancet. 2011;378(9786):169–81.
10. Tripathy D, Thripathy BB, Chandalia HB. Pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes. In: Chandalia HB, editor. RSSDI textbook of diabetes mellitus. New Delhi: Jaypee Brothers, Medical Publishers Pvt. Limited; 2014.
11. Chawla R. Type 2 diabetes: etiology and pathogenesis. In: Chawla R, editor. Manual of diabetes care. New Delhi: Jaypee Brothers, Medical Publishers Pvt. Limited; 2014.
12. Groop L, Lyssenko V. Genes and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Curr Diab Rep. 2008;8(3):192.
13. DeFronzo RA, Ferrannini E, Simonson DC. Fasting hyperglycemia in non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus: contributions of excessive hepatic glucose production and impaired tissue glucose uptake. Metabolism. 1989;38(4):387–95.
14. Ferrannini E, Simonson DC, Katz LD, Reichard G Jr, Bevilacqua S, Barrett EJ, et al. The disposal of an oral glucose load in patients with non-insulin-dependent diabetes. Metabolism. 1988;37(1):79–85.
15. James W. The fundamental drivers of the obesity epidemic. Obes Rev. 2008;9(s1):6–13.
16. Defronzo RA, Soman V, Sherwin RS, Hendler R, Felig P. Insulin binding to monocytes and insulin action in human obesity, starvation, and refeeding. J Clin Invest. 1978;62(1):204–13.
17. Diamond MP, Thornton K, Connolly-Diamond M, Sherwin RS, DeFronzo RA. Reciprocal variations in insulin-stimulated glucose uptake and pancreatic insulin secretion in women with normal glucose tolerance. J Soc Gynecol Investig. 1995;2(5):708–15.
18. DeFronzo RA, Eldor R, Abdul-Ghani M. Pathophysiologic approach to therapy in patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(Suppl 2):S127–S38.
19. De Fronzo RA, Ferrannini E, Keen H, Zimmet P. International textbook of diabetes mellitus. Chichester, West Sussex UK; Wiley, 2004.
20. Reaven G, Hollenbeck C, Chen Y-D. Relationship between glucose tolerance, insulin secretion, and insulin action in non-obese

individuals with varying degrees of glucose tolerance. Diabetologia. 1989;32(1):52–5.
21. Saad M, Pettitt D, Mott D, Knowler W, Nelson R, Bennett P. Sequential changes in serum insulin concentration during development of non-insulin-dependent diabetes. Lancet. 1989;333(8651):1356–9.
22. Weyer C, Tataranni PA, Bogardus C, Pratley RE. Insulin resistance and insulin secretory dysfunction are independent predictors of worsening of glucose tolerance during each stage of type 2 diabetes development. Diabetes Care. 2001;24(1):89–94.
23. Ferrannini E, Natali A, Muscelli E, Nilsson P, Golay A, Laakso M, et al. Natural history and physiological determinants of changes in glucose tolerance in a non-diabetic population: the RISC Study. Diabetologia. 2011;54(6):1507–16.
24. Cinti F, Bouchi R, Kim-Muller JY, Ohmura Y, Sandoval PR, Masini M, et al. Evidence of β-cell dedifferentiation in human type 2 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2016;101(3):1044–54.
25. De Tata V. Age-related impairment of pancreatic Beta-cell function: pathophysiological and cellular mechanisms. Front Endocrinol. 2014;5:138.
26. Vauhkonen I, Niskanen L, Vanninen E, Kainulainen S, Uusitupa M, Laakso M. Defects in insulin secretion and insulin action in non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus are inherited. Metabolic studies on offspring of diabetic probands. J Clin Invest. 1998;101(1):86–96.
27. Lyssenko V, Lupi R, Marchetti P, Del Guerra S, Orho-Melander M, Almgren P, et al. Mechanisms by which common variants in the TCF7L2 gene increase risk of type 2 diabetes. J Clin Invest. 2007;117(8):2155–63.
28. DeFronzo RA, Ferrannini E, Alberti KGMM, Zimmet P, Alberti G. International textbook of diabetes mellitus, 2 Volume Set. New York: Wiley; 2015.
29. Montane J, Klimek-Abercrombie A, Potter K, Westwell-Roper C, Bruce VC. Metabolic stress, IAPP and islet amyloid. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2012;14(s3):68–77.
30. Westermark P, Andersson A, Westermark GT. Islet amyloid polypeptide, islet amyloid, and diabetes mellitus. Physiol Rev. 2011;91(3):795–826.
31. Matthaei S, Stumvoll M, Kellerer M, Häring H-U. Pathophysiology and pharmacological treatment of insulin resistance. Endocr Rev. 2000;21(6):585–618.
32. Groop LC, Bonadonna RC, DelPrato S, Ratheiser K, Zyck K, Ferrannini E, et al. Glucose and free fatty acid metabolism in non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Evidence for multiple sites of insulin resistance. J Clin Invest. 1989;84(1):205–13.
33. DeFronzo R, Davidson J, Del Prato S. The role of the kidneys in glucose homeostasis: a new path towards normalizing glycaemia. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2012;14(1):5–14.
34. Müller C, Assimacopoulos-Jeannet F, Mosimann F, Schneiter P, Riou J, Pachiaudi C, et al. Endogenous glucose production, gluconeogenesis and liver glycogen concentration in obese non-diabetic patients. Diabetologia. 1997;40(4):463–8.
35. DeFronzo RA, Gunnarsson R, Björkman O, Olsson M, Wahren J. Effects of insulin on peripheral and splanchnic glucose metabolism in noninsulin-dependent (type II) diabetes mellitus. J Clin Invest. 1985;76(1):149–55.
36. Pendergrass M, Bertoldo A, Bonadonna R, Nucci G, Mandarino L, Cobelli C, et al. Muscle glucose transport and phosphorylation in type 2 diabetic, obese nondiabetic, and genetically predisposed individuals. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab. 2007;292(1):E92–E100.
37. Tripathy D, Eriksson K-F, Orho-Melander M, Fredriksson J, Ahlqvist G, Groop L. Parallel manifestation of insulin resistance and beta cell decompensation is compatible with a common defect in Type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2004;47(5):782–93.
38. Reaven G. The fourth musketeer—from Alexandre Dumas to Claude Bernard. Diabetologia. 1995;38(1):3–13.
39. Bays HE, González-Campoy JM, Bray GA, Kitabchi AE, Bergman DA, Schorr AB, et al. Pathogenic potential of adipose tissue and metabolic consequences of adipocyte hypertrophy and increased visceral adiposity. Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther. 2008;6(3):343–68.
40. Massillon D, Barzilai N, Hawkins M, Prus-Wertheimer D, Rossetti L. Induction of hepatic glucose-6-phosphatase gene expression by lipid infusion. Diabetes. 1997;46(1):153–7.
41. Johnson AM, Olefsky JM. The origins and drivers of insulin resistance. Cell. 2013;152(4):673–84.
42. Rebrin K, Steil GM, Getty L, Bergman RN. Free fatty acid as a link in the regulation of hepatic glucose output by peripheral insulin. Diabetes. 1995;44(9):1038–45.
43. Cypess AM, Lehman S, Williams G, Tal I, Rodman D, Goldfine AB, et al. Identification and importance of brown adipose tissue in adult humans. N Engl J Med. 2009;360(15):1509–17.
44. Kwon H, Kim D, Kim JS. Body fat distribution and the risk of incident metabolic syndrome: a longitudinal cohort study. Sci Rep. 2017;7(1):10955.
45. Matsuda M, DeFronzo RA, Glass L, Consoli A, Giordano M, Bressler P, et al. Glucagon dose-response curve for hepatic glucose production and glucose disposal in type 2 diabetic patients and normal individuals. Metabolism. 2002;51(9):1111–9.
46. Unger RH, Aguilar-Parada E, Müller WA, Eisentraut AM. Studies of pancreatic alpha cell function in normal and diabetic subjects. J Clin Invest. 1970;49(4):837–48.
47. Reaven G, Chen Y-D, Golay A, Swislocki A, Jaspan J. Documentation of hyperglucagonemia throughout the day in nonobese and obese patients with noninsulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol. 1987;64(1):106–10.
48. Henquin J-C, Rahier J. Pancreatic alpha cell mass in European subjects with type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2011;54(7):1720–5.
49. Müller WA, Faloona GR, Aguilar-Parada E, Unger RH. Abnormal alpha-cell function in diabetes: response to carbohydrate and protein ingestion. N Engl J Med. 1970;283(3):109–15.
50. Baron AD, Schaeffer L, Shragg P, Kolterman OG. Role of hyperglucagonemia in maintenance of increased rates of hepatic glucose output in type II diabetics. Diabetes. 1987;36(3):274–83.
51. Müller WA, Faloona GR, Unger RH. Hyperglucagonemia in diabetic ketoacidosis: its prevalence and significance. Am J Med. 1973;54(1):52–7.
52. Dobbs R, Sakurai H, Sasaki H, Faloona G, Valverde I, Baetens D, et al. Glucagon: role in the hyperglycemia of diabetes mellitus. Science. 1975;187(4176):544–7.
53. Gerich JE, Lorenzi M, Bier DM, Schneider V, Tsalikian E, Karam JH, et al. Prevention of human diabetic ketoacidosis by somatostatin: evidence for an essential role of glucagon. N Engl J Med. 1975;292(19):985–9.
54. Stevenson RW, Steiner KE, Davis M, Hendrick G, Williams P, Lacy WW, et al. Similar dose responsiveness of hepatic glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis to glucagon in vivo. Diabetes. 1987;36(3):382–9.
55. Lee Y, Wang M-Y, Du XQ, Charron MJ, Unger RH. Glucagon receptor knockout prevents insulin-deficient type 1 diabetes in mice. Diabetes. 2011;60(2):391–7.
56. Htike ZZ, Zaccardi F, Papamargaritis D, Webb DR, Khunti K, Davies MJ. Efficacy and safety of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists in type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and mixed-treatment comparison analysis. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2017;19(4):524–36.
57. Mu J, Qureshi SA, Brady EJ, Muise ES, Candelore MR, Jiang G, et al. Anti-diabetic efficacy and impact on amino acid metabolism of GRA1, a novel small-molecule glucagon receptor antagonist. PLoS One. 2012;7(11):e49572.
58. Scheen AJ, Paquot N, Lefèbvre PJ. Investigational glucagon receptor antagonists in Phase I and II clinical trials for diabetes. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2017;26(12):1373–89.

59. Drucker DJ. The biology of incretin hormones. Cell Metab. 2006;3(3):153–65.
60. Meier JJ, Nauck MA. Incretins and the development of type 2 diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2006;6(3):194–201.
61. Suzuki K, Simpson KA, Minnion JS, Shillito JC, Bloom SR. The role of gut hormones and the hypothalamus in appetite regulation. Endocr J. 2010;57(5):359–72.
62. Baggio LL, Drucker DJ. Biology of incretins: GLP-1 and GIP. Gastroenterology. 2007;132(6):2131–57.
63. Schwartz JG, Green GM, Guan D, McMahan CA, Phillips WT. Rapid gastric emptying of a solid pancake meal in type II diabetic patients. Diabetes Care. 1996;19(5):468–71.
64. Nauck M, Vardarli I, Deacon C, Holst JJ, Meier J. Secretion of glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) in type 2 diabetes: what is up, what is down? Diabetologia. 2011;54(1):10–8.
65. Meier JJ, Nauck MA. Is the diminished incretin effect in type 2 diabetes just an epi-phenomenon of impaired β-cell function? Diabetes. 2010;59(5):1117–25.
66. Nauck M, Stöckmann F, Ebert R, Creutzfeldt W. Reduced incretin effect in type 2 (non-insulin-dependent) diabetes. Diabetologia. 1986;29(1):46–52.
67. Quddusi S, Vahl TP, Hanson K, Prigeon RL, D'Alessio DA. Differential effects of acute and extended infusions of glucagon-like peptide-1 on first-and second-phase insulin secretion in diabetic and nondiabetic humans. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(3):791–8.
68. Nauck M. Incretin therapies: highlighting common features and differences in the modes of action of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2016;18(3):203–16.
69. Abdul-Ghani M, DeFronzo R. Inhibition of renal glucose reabsorption: a novel strategy for achieving glucose control in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Endocr Pract. 2008;14(6):782–90.
70. Noonan W, Shapiro V, Banks R. Renal glucose reabsorption during hypertonic glucose infusion in female streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. Life Sci. 2001;68(26):2967–77.
71. Dominguez JH, Camp K, Maianu L, Feister H, Garvey WT. Molecular adaptations of GLUT1 and GLUT2 in renal proximal tubules of diabetic rats. Am J Physiol-Renal Physiol. 1994;266(2):F283–F90.
72. Mogensen C. Maximum tubular reabsorption capacity for glucose and renal hemodynamics during rapid hypertonic glucose infusion in normal and diabetic subjects. Scand J Clin Lab Invest. 1971;28(1):101–9.
73. Farber SJ, Berger EY, Earle DP. Effect of diabetes and insulin on the maximum capacity of the renal tubules to reabsorb glucose. J Clin Invest. 1951;30(2):125–9.
74. Hanley AJ, Williams K, Stern MP, Haffner SM. Homeostasis model assessment of insulin resistance in relation to the incidence of cardiovascular disease: the San Antonio Heart Study. Diabetes Care. 2002;25(7):1177–84.
75. Scheen AJ. Pharmacodynamics, efficacy and safety of sodium–glucose co-transporter type 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors for the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Drugs. 2015;75(1):33–59.
76. Song P, Onishi A, Koepsell H, Vallon V. Sodium glucose cotransporter SGLT1 as a therapeutic target in diabetes mellitus. Expert Opin Ther Targets. 2016;20(9):1109–25.
77. Cariou B, Charbonnel B. Sotagliflozin as a potential treatment for type 2 diabetes mellitus. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2015;24(12):1647–56.
78. Nonogaki K. New insights into sympathetic regulation of glucose and fat metabolism. Diabetologia. 2000;43(5):533–49.
79. Miller RE. Pancreatic neuroendocrinology: peripheral neural mechanisms in the regulation of the islets of Langerhans. Endocr Rev. 1981;2(4):471–94.
80. Berthoud H-R, Jeanrenaud B. Acute hyperinsulinemia and its reversal by vagotomy after lesions of the ventromedial hypothalamus in anesthetized rats. Endocrinology. 1979;105(1):146–51.
81. Plum L, Belgardt BF, Brüning JC. Central insulin action in energy and glucose homeostasis. J Clin Invest. 2006;116(7):1761–6.
82. Matsuda M, Liu Y, Mahankali S, Pu Y, Mahankali A, Wang J, et al. Altered hypothalamic function in response to glucose ingestion in obese humans. Diabetes. 1999;48(9):1801–6.
83. Obici S, Feng Z, Karkanias G, Baskin DG, Rossetti L. Decreasing hypothalamic insulin receptors causes hyperphagia and insulin resistance in rats. Nat Neurosci. 2002;5(6):566.
84. Obici S, Feng Z, Tan J, Liu L, Karkanias G, Rossetti L. Central melanocortin receptors regulate insulin action. J Clin Invest. 2001;108(7):1079–85.
85. Thaler JP, Yi C-X, Schur EA, Guyenet SJ, Hwang BH, Dietrich MO, et al. Obesity is associated with hypothalamic injury in rodents and humans. J Clin Invest. 2012;122(1):153–62.
86. DeFronzo RA. Bromocriptine: a sympatholytic, D2-dopamine agonist for the treatment of type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(4):789–94.
87. Young A, Gedulin B, Vine W, Percy A, Rink T. Gastric emptying is accelerated in diabetic BB rats and is slowed by subcutaneous injections of amylin. Diabetologia. 1995;38(6):642–8.
88. Ryan G, Briscoe TA, Jobe L. Review of pramlintide as adjunctive therapy in treatment of type 1 and type 2 diabetes. Drug Des Devel Ther. 2008;2:203.
89. Bass J, Takahashi JS. Circadian integration of metabolism and energetics. Science. 2010;330(6009):1349–54.
90. Hanlon EC, Van Cauter E. Quantification of sleep behavior and of its impact on the cross-talk between the brain and peripheral metabolism. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2011;108(Supplement 3):15609–16.
91. Kalra S, Kalra B, Agrawal N, Kumar S. Dopamine: the forgotten felon in type 2 diabetes. Recent Pat Endocr Metab Immune Drug Discov. 2011;5(1):61–5.
92. Luo S, Luo J, Meier AH, Cincotta AH. Dopaminergic neurotoxin administration to the area of the suprachiasmatic nuclei induces insulin resistance. Neuroreport. 1997;8(16):3495–9.
93. Cincotta AH. 16. Hypothalamic Role in the insulin resistance syndrome. Insulin resistance and insulin resistance syndrome. 2002;5:271.
94. Luo S, Meier AH, Cincotta AH. Bromocriptine reduces obesity, glucose intolerance and extracellular monoamine metabolite levels in the ventromedial hypothalamus of Syrian hamsters. Neuroendocrinology. 1998;68(1):1–10.
95. Scislowski P, Tozzo E, Zhang Y, Phaneuf S, Prevelige R, Cincotta A. Biochemical mechanisms responsible for the attenuation of diabetic and obese conditions in ob/ob mice treated with dopaminergic agonists. Int J Obes (Lond). 1999;23(4):425.
96. Luo S, Liang Y, Cincotta A. Intracerebroventricular administration of bromocriptine ameliorates the insulin-resistant/glucose-intolerant state in hamsters. Neuroendocrinology. 1999;69(3):160–6.
97. Pijl H, Ohashi S, Matsuda M, Miyazaki Y, Mahankali A, Kumar V, et al. Bromocriptine: a novel approach to the treatment of type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2000;23(8):1154–61.
98. Harinarayan CV. Vitamin D and diabetes mellitus. Hormones (Athens). 2014;13(2):163–81.
99. Mathieu C. Vitamin D and diabetes: where do we stand? Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2015;108(2):201–9.
100. Rabinovitch A, Suarez-Pinzon WL, Sooy K, Strynadka K, Christakos S. Expression of calbindin-D28k in a pancreatic Isletβ-Cell line protects against cytokine-induced apoptosis and necrosis. Endocrinology. 2001;142(8):3649–55.
101. Hyppönen E, Läärä E, Reunanen A, Järvelin M-R, Virtanen SM. Intake of vitamin D and risk of type 1 diabetes: a birth-cohort study. Lancet. 2001;358(9292):1500–3.
102. Teegarden D, Donkin SS. Vitamin D: emerging new roles in insulin sensitivity. Nutr Res Rev. 2009;22(1):82–92.

103. Herrmann M, Sullivan DR, Veillard A-S, McCorquodale T, Straub IR, Scott R, et al. Serum 25-hydroxyvitamin D: a predictor of macrovascular and microvascular complications in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(3):521–8.
104. Pacifico L, Anania C, Osborn JF, Ferraro F, Bonci E, Olivero E, et al. Low 25 (OH) D3 levels are associated with total adiposity, metabolic syndrome, and hypertension in Caucasian children and adolescents. Eur J Endocrinol. 2011;165(4):603–11.
105. Talaei A, Mohamadi M, Adgi Z. The effect of vitamin D on insulin resistance in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetol Metab Syndr. 2013;5(1):8.
106. Mitri J, Dawson-Hughes B, Hu FB, Pittas AG. Effects of vitamin D and calcium supplementation on pancreatic β cell function, insulin sensitivity, and glycemia in adults at high risk of diabetes: the Calcium and Vitamin D for Diabetes Mellitus (CaDDM) randomized controlled trial. Am J Clin Nutr. 2011;94(2):486–94.
107. Underwood PC, Adler GK. The renin angiotensin aldosterone system and insulin resistance in humans. Curr Hypertens Rep. 2013;15(1):59–70.
108. Goossens GH. The renin-angiotensin system in the pathophysiology of type 2 diabetes. Obes Facts. 2012;5(4):611–24.
109. Grassi G, Seravalle G, Dell'Oro R, Trevano FQ, Bombelli M, Scopelliti F, et al. Comparative effects of candesartan and hydrochlorothiazide on blood pressure, insulin sensitivity, and sympathetic drive in obese hypertensive individuals: results of the CROSS study. J Hypertens. 2003;21(9):1761–9.
110. Jin H-M, Pan Y. Angiotensin type-1 receptor blockade with losartan increases insulin sensitivity and improves glucose homeostasis in subjects with type 2 diabetes and nephropathy. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2007;22(7):1943–9.
111. Santoro D, Natali A, Palombo C, Brandi LS, Piatti M, Ghione S, et al. Effects of chronic angiotensin converting enzyme inhibition on glucose tolerance and insulin sensitivity in essential hypertension. Hypertension. 1992;20(2):181–91.
112. Investigators HOPES. Effects of ramipril on cardiovascular and microvascular outcomes in people with diabetes mellitus: results of the HOPE study and MICRO-HOPE substudy. Lancet. 2000;355(9200):253–9.
113. Brenner BM, Cooper ME, de Zeeuw D, Keane WF, Mitch WE, Parving H-H, et al. Effects of losartan on renal and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes and nephropathy. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(12):861–9.
114. Lewis EJ, Hunsicker LG, Clarke WR, Berl T, Pohl MA, Lewis JB, et al. Renoprotective effect of the angiotensin-receptor antagonist irbesartan in patients with nephropathy due to type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(12):851–60.
115. Müller M, Fasching P, Schmid R, Burgdorff T, Waldhäusl W, Eichler H. Inhibition of paracrine angiotensin-converting enzyme in vivo: effects on interstitial glucose and lactate concentrations in human skeletal muscle. Eur J Clin Invest. 1997;27(10):825–30.
116. Frossard M, Joukhadar C, Steffen G, Schmid R, Eichler H, Müller M. Paracrine effects of angiotensin-converting-enzyme-and angiotensin-II-receptor-inhibition on transcapillary glucose transport in humans. Life Sci. 2000;66(10):PL147–PL54.
117. Lupi R, Del Guerra S, Bugliani M, Boggi U, Mosca F, Torri S, et al. The direct effects of the angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, zofenoprilat and enalaprilat, on isolated human pancreatic islets. Eur J Endocrinol. 2006;154(2):355–61.
118. Furuhashi M, Ura N, Takizawa H, Yoshida D, Moniwa N, Murakami H, et al. Blockade of the renin–angiotensin system decreases adipocyte size with improvement in insulin sensitivity. J Hypertens. 2004;22(10):1977–82.
119. Gillespie EL, White CM, Kardas M, Lindberg M, Coleman CI. The impact of ACE inhibitors or angiotensin II type 1 receptor blockers on the development of new-onset type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(9):2261–6.
120. Investigators DT. Effect of ramipril on the incidence of diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2006;355(15):1551–62.
121. Group NS. Effect of valsartan on the incidence of diabetes and cardiovascular events. N Engl J Med. 2010;362(16):1477–90.
122. Hansson L, Lindholm LH, Ekbom T, Dahlöf B, Lanke J, Scherstén B, et al. Randomised trial of old and new antihypertensive drugs in elderly patients: cardiovascular mortality and morbidity the Swedish Trial in Old Patients with Hypertension-2 study. Lancet. 1999;354(9192):1751–6.
123. Lindholm LH, Ibsen H, Borch-Johnsen K, Olsen MH, Wachtell K, Dahlöf B, et al. Risk of new-onset diabetes in the Losartan Intervention For Endpoint reduction in hypertension study. J Hypertens. 2002;20(9):1879–86.
124. Daubresse J, Meunier J, Wilmotte J, Luyckx A, Lefebvre P. Pituitary-testicular axis in diabetic men with and without sexual impotence. Diabete Metab. 1978;4(4):233–7.
125. Kapoor D, Aldred H, Clark S, Channer KS, Jones TH. Clinical and biochemical assessment of hypogonadism in men with type 2 diabetes: correlations with bioavailable testosterone and visceral adiposity. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(4):911–7.
126. Corona G, Monami M, Rastrelli G, Aversa A, Sforza A, Lenzi A, et al. Type 2 diabetes mellitus and testosterone: a meta-analysis study. Int J Androl. 2011;34(6pt1):528–40.
127. Giagulli VA, Kaufman JM, Vermeulen A. Pathogenesis of the decreased androgen levels in obese men. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol. 1994;79(4):997–1000.
128. Grossmann M, Gianatti EJ, Zajac JD. Testosterone and type 2 diabetes. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes. 2010;17(3):247–56.
129. Zitzmann M. Testosterone deficiency, insulin resistance and the metabolic syndrome. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2009;5(12):673.
130. Pitteloud N, Mootha VK, Dwyer AA, Hardin M, Lee H, Eriksson K-F, et al. Relationship between testosterone levels, insulin sensitivity, and mitochondrial function in men. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(7):1636–42.
131. Völzke H, Aumann N, Krebs A, Nauck M, Steveling A, Lerch MM, et al. Hepatic steatosis is associated with low serum testosterone and high serum DHEAS levels in men. Int J Androl. 2010;33(1):45–53.
132. Oury F, Sumara G, Sumara O, Ferron M, Chang H, Smith CE, et al. Endocrine regulation of male fertility by the skeleton. Cell. 2011;144(5):796–809.
133. Xu X, Pergola GD, Bjorntorp P. Testosterone increases lipolysis and the number of β-adrenoceptors in male rat adipocytes. Endocrinology. 1991;128(1):379–82.
134. Mårin P, Oden B, Björntorp P. Assimilation and mobilization of triglycerides in subcutaneous abdominal and femoral adipose tissue in vivo in men: effects of androgens. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol. 1995;80(1):239–43.
135. Stellato RK, Feldman HA, Hamdy O, Horton ES, Mckinlay JB. Testosterone, sex hormone-binding globulin, and the development of type 2 diabetes in middle-aged men: prospective results from the Massachusetts male aging study. Diabetes Care. 2000;23(4):490–4.
136. Selvin E, Feinleib M, Zhang L, Rohrmann S, Rifai N, Nelson WG, et al. Androgens and diabetes in men: results from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES III). Diabetes Care. 2007;30(2):234–8.
137. Wang C, Jackson G, Jones TH, Matsumoto AM, Nehra A, Perelman MA, et al. Low testosterone associated with obesity and the metabolic syndrome contributes to sexual dysfunction and cardiovascular disease risk in men with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(7):1669–75.
138. Ding EL, Song Y, Manson JE, Hunter DJ, Lee CC, Rifai N, et al. Sex hormone–binding globulin and risk of type 2 diabetes in women and men. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(12):1152–63.

139. Smith MR, Finkelstein JS, McGovern FJ, Zietman AL, Fallon MA, Schoenfeld DA, et al. Changes in body composition during androgen deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol. 2002;87(2):599–603.
140. Hamilton E, Gianatti E, Strauss B, Wentworth J, Lim-Joon D, Bolton D, et al. Increase in visceral and subcutaneous abdominal fat in men with prostate cancer treated with androgen deprivation therapy. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 2011;74(3):377–83.
141. Keating NL, O'malley AJ, Smith MR. Diabetes and cardiovascular disease during androgen deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24(27):4448–56.
142. Boyanov M, Boneva Z, Christov V. Testosterone supplementation in men with type 2 diabetes, visceral obesity and partial androgen deficiency. Aging Male. 2003;6(1):1–7.
143. Kapoor D, Goodwin E, Channer K, Jones T. Testosterone replacement therapy improves insulin resistance, glycaemic control, visceral adiposity and hypercholesterolaemia in hypogonadal men with type 2 diabetes. Eur J Endocrinol. 2006;154(6):899–906.
144. Heufelder AE, Saad F, Bunck MC, Gooren L. Fifty-two—week treatment with diet and exercise plus transdermal testosterone reverses the metabolic syndrome and improves glycemic control in men with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes and subnormal plasma testosterone. J Androl. 2009;30(6):726–33.
145. Oh J-Y, Barrett-Connor E, Wedick NM, Wingard DL. Endogenous sex hormones and the development of type 2 diabetes in older men and women: the Rancho Bernardo study. Diabetes Care. 2002;25(1):55–60.
146. Fukui M, Kitagawa Y, Nakamura N, Yoshikawa T. Association between elevated testosterone and development of microalbuminuria during puberty in female subjects with type 1 diabetes. Response to Amin et al. 2003;26(10):2966–7.
147. Ding EL, Song Y, Malik VS, Liu S. Sex differences of endogenous sex hormones and risk of type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA. 2006;295(11):1288–99.
148. Apridonidze T, Essah PA, Iuorno MJ, Nestler JE. Prevalence and characteristics of the metabolic syndrome in women with polycystic ovary syndrome. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol. 2005;90(4):1929–35.
149. Joshi SR, Standl E, Tong N, Shah P, Kalra S, Rathod R. Therapeutic potential of α-glucosidase inhibitors in type 2 diabetes mellitus: an evidence-based review. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2015;16(13):1959–81.
150. Prawitt J, Caron S, Staels B. Bile acid metabolism and the pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2011;11(3):160.
151. Potthoff MJ, Kliewer SA, Mangelsdorf DJ. Endocrine fibroblast growth factors 15/19 and 21: from feast to famine. Genes Dev. 2012;26(4):312–24.
152. Yamagata K, Daitoku H, Shimamoto Y, Matsuzaki H, Hirota K, Ishida J, et al. Bile acids regulate gluconeogenic gene expression via small heterodimer partner-mediated repression of hepatocyte nuclear factor 4 and Foxo1. J Biol Chem. 2004;279(22):23158–65.
153. Pols TW, Noriega LG, Nomura M, Auwerx J, Schoonjans K. The bile acid membrane receptor TGR5: a valuable metabolic target. Dig Dis. 2011;29(1):37–44.
154. Meyer-Gerspach A, Steinert R, Keller S, Malarski A, Schulte F, Beglinger C. Effects of chenodeoxycholic acid on the secretion of gut peptides and fibroblast growth factors in healthy humans. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol. 2013;98(8):3351–8.
155. Sonne DP, Hansen M, Knop FK. Mechanisms in endocrinology: bile acid sequestrants in type 2 diabetes: potential effects on GLP1 secretion. Eur J Endocrinol. 2014;171(2):R47–65.
156. Staels B. A review of bile acid sequestrants: potential mechanism (s) for glucose-lowering effects in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Postgrad Med. 2009;121(Suppl 1):25–30.
157. Aw W, Fukuda S. Understanding the role of the gut ecosystem in diabetes mellitus. J Diabetes Investig. 2018;9(1):5–12.
158. Sohail MU, Althani A, Anwar H, Rizzi R, Marei HE. Role of the gastrointestinal tract microbiome in the pathophysiology of diabetes mellitus. J Diabetes Res. 2017;2017
159. Fukui H. The gut impacts diabetic management tomorrow: the recent messages from intestine and microbiota. J Clin Nutr Diet. 2016;2(4):20.
160. Zhang X, Shen D, Fang Z, Jie Z, Qiu X, Zhang C, et al. Human gut microbiota changes reveal the progression of glucose intolerance. PLoS One. 2013;8(8):e71108.
161. Larsen N, Vogensen FK, van den Berg FW, Nielsen DS, Andreasen AS, Pedersen BK, et al. Gut microbiota in human adults with type 2 diabetes differs from non-diabetic adults. PLoS One. 2010;5(2):e9085.
162. Vrieze A, Out C, Fuentes S, Jonker L, Reuling I, Kootte RS, et al. Impact of oral vancomycin on gut microbiota, bile acid metabolism, and insulin sensitivity. J Hepatol. 2014;60(4):824–31.
163. Hamer HM, Jonkers D, Venema K, Vanhoutvin S, Troost F, Brummer RJ. The role of butyrate on colonic function. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2008;27(2):104–19.
164. Peng L, Li Z-R, Green RS, Holzman IR, Lin J. Butyrate enhances the intestinal barrier by facilitating tight junction assembly via activation of AMP-activated protein kinase in Caco-2 cell monolayers. J Nutr. 2009;139(9):1619–25.
165. Lefebvre P, Cariou B, Lien F, Kuipers F, Staels B. Role of bile acids and bile acid receptors in metabolic regulation. Physiol Rev. 2009;89(1):147–91.
166. Vrieze A, Van Nood E, Holleman F, Salojärvi J, Kootte RS, Bartelsman JF, et al. Transfer of intestinal microbiota from lean donors increases insulin sensitivity in individuals with metabolic syndrome. Gastroenterology. 2012;143(4):913–6. e7.
167. Anderson GJ. Mechanisms of iron loading and toxicity. Am J Hematol. 2007;82(S12):1128–31.
168. Simcox JA, McClain DA. Iron and diabetes risk. Cell Metab. 2013;17(3):329–41.
169. Buysschaert M, Paris I, Selvais P, Hermans M. Clinical aspects of diabetes secondary to idiopathic haemochromatosis in French-speaking Belgium. Diabetes Metab. 1997;23(4):308–13.
170. Merkel PA, Simonson DC, Amiel SA, Plewe G, Sherwin RS, Pearson HA, et al. Insulin resistance and hyperinsulinemia in patients with thalassemia major treated by hypertransfusion. N Engl J Med. 1988;318(13):809–14.
171. Hramiak IM, Finegood DT, Adams PC. Factors affecting glucose tolerance in hereditary hemochromatosis. Clin Invest Med. 1997;20(2):110.
172. Mendler M-H, Turlin B, Moirand R, Jouanolle A-M, Sapey T, Guyader D, et al. Insulin resistance–associated hepatic iron overload. Gastroenterology. 1999;117(5):1155–63.
173. McClain D, Abraham D, Rogers J, Brady R, Gault P, Ajioka R, et al. High prevalence of abnormal glucose homeostasis secondary to decreased insulin secretion in individuals with hereditary haemochromatosis. Diabetologia. 2006;49(7):1661–9.
174. Rajpathak SN, Crandall JP, Wylie-Rosett J, Kabat GC, Rohan TE, Hu FB. The role of iron in type 2 diabetes in humans. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2009;1790(7):671–81.
175. Bao W, Rong Y, Rong S, Liu L. Dietary iron intake, body iron stores, and the risk of type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Med. 2012;10(1):119.
176. Weatherall D. Pathophysiology of thalassaemia. Ballière's Clin Haematol. 1998;11(1):127–46.
177. Borgna-Pignatti C, Rugolotto S, De Stefano P, Zhao H, Cappellini MD, Del Vecchio GC, et al. Survival and complications in patients with thalassemia major treated with transfusion and deferoxamine. Haematologica. 2004;89(10):1187–93.
178. Vogiatzi MG, Macklin EA, Trachtenberg FL, Fung EB, Cheung AM, Vichinsky E, et al. Differences in the prevalence of growth, endocrine and vitamin D abnormalities among the various

thalassaemia syndromes in North America. Br J Haematol. 2009;146(5):546–56.
179. Hoffmeister PA, Storer BE, Sanders JE. Diabetes mellitus in long-term survivors of pediatric hematopoietic cell transplantation. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol. 2004;26(2):81–90.
180. Baker KS, Ness KK, Steinberger J, Carter A, Francisco L, Burns LJ, et al. Diabetes, hypertension, and cardiovascular events in survivors of hematopoietic cell transplantation: a report from the bone marrow transplantation survivor study. Blood. 2007;109(4):1765–72.
181. Radisky DC, Babcock MC, Kaplan J. The yeast frataxin homologue mediates mitochondrial iron efflux evidence for a mitochondrial iron cycle. J Biol Chem. 1999;274(8):4497–9.
182. Jehn M, Clark JM, Guallar E. Serum ferritin and risk of the metabolic syndrome in US adults. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(10):2422–8.
183. Iwasaki T, Nakajima A, Yoneda M, Yamada Y, Mukasa K, Fujita K, et al. Serum ferritin is associated with visceral fat area and subcutaneous fat area. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(10):2486–91.
184. Ford ES, Cogswell ME. Diabetes and serum ferritin concentration among US adults. Diabetes Care. 1999;22(12):1978–83.
185. Swaminathan S, Fonseca VA, Alam MG, Shah SV. The role of iron in diabetes and its complications. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(7):1926–33.
186. White DL, Collinson A. Red meat, dietary heme iron, and risk of type 2 diabetes: the involvement of advanced lipoxidation end-products. Adv Nutr. 2013;4(4):403–11.
187. Bowers K, Yeung E, Williams MA, Qi L, Tobias DK, Hu FB, et al. A prospective study of prepregnancy dietary iron intake and risk for gestational diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(7):1557–63.
188. Shaaban MA, Dawod AEA, Nasr MA. Role of iron in diabetes mellitus and its complications. Menoufia Med J. 2016;29(1):11.
189. Fernández-Real JM, López-Bermejo A, Ricart W. Cross-talk between iron metabolism and diabetes. Diabetes. 2002;51(8):2348–54.
190. Lekakis J, Papamichael C, Stamatelopoulos K, Cimponeriu A, Voutsas A, Vemmos K, et al. Hemochromatosis associated with endothelial dysfunction: evidence for the role of iron stores in early atherogenesis. Vasc Med. 1999;4(3):147–8.
191. Shah SV, Fonseca VA. Iron and diabetes revisited. Am Diabetes Assoc; 2011.
192. Facchini FS. Effect of phlebotomy on plasma glucose and insulin concentrations. Diabetes Care. 1998;21(12):2190.
193. Adams P, Reboussin D, Barton J, McLaren C, Eckfeldt J, McLaren G, et al.; Hemochromatosis and Iron Overload Screening (HEIRS) Study Research Investigators. Hemochromatosis and iron-overload screening in a racially diverse population. N Engl J Med. 2005;352:1769–78.
194. Ascherio A, Rimm EB, Giovannucci E, Willett WC, Stampfer MJ. Blood donations and risk of coronary heart disease in men. Circulation. 2001;103(1):52–7.

Genetic Determinants of Type 2 Diabetes

9

Miguel Cruz, Adán Valladares-Salgado,
Eugenia Flores-Alfaro, and José de Jesús Peralta Romero

Definition of Genetic Polymorphisms

The genetic information of modern man, or *Homo sapiens*, is kept along 23 pairs of chromosomes located in the nucleus of every diploid cell. Diploid is understood as the cells that have in their nucleus a double number of chromosomes, that is, two complete copies of the genomes inherited from the parents, which correspond to maternal and paternal alleles.

Sequencing studies have described that the human haploid genome is made up of approximately 3300 million pairs of bases (3300 Mb), of which approximately 25,000 genes have a coding function and, of these, only 8% (8000) have a known function and/or action mechanism [1].

Genes are considered the unit of genetic information that codes a functional product and as a unit of inheritance, which are distributed throughout the chromatids of the chromosomes, is a specific position of DNA, known as the locus. During the process of transcription, a copy is made of the DNA, which is known as the heterogeneous nuclear RNA, which proceeds to form mRNA, which codes for structural and functional proteins.

Approximately a 99.9% of the DNA sequence is identical in humans, and the remaining 0.01% represents genetic or allelic variations, also called SNPs. The presence of SNPs varies in different populations and can explain evolution theories, migrations, and even the ethnic origin of different populations. In addition, it offers information about the phenotypical diversity within the same species, which describes a proportion of relative susceptibility to certain diseases among individuals.

The Importance of Studying Genetic-Environmental Variant Interaction and Its Perspective in Clinical Application

There are various kinds of polymorphisms which are characterized by their presence or absence and their shape or size, the largest being insertions and deletions. In addition there are other genetic variants known as repetitions of the copy number (CNV, copy number variation) and SNPs. Unlike mutations, SNPs are changes with a frequency greater than 1% of the population. If SNPs are characterized by a simple exchange of nucleotides of adenine, cytosine, thymine, or guanine in the alleles, they are extremely important due to the fact that they are responsible for almost 90% of human phenotypical diversity. In 2008, for the first time, "1000 Genomes Project" initiative was proposed, to analyze the genetic material of 1000 people around the world and to study genetic variability. Finally, in 2015, the number of subjects analyzed reached 2500; the data suggested that in every healthy individual, there are around 150 variants that cause premature ending of proteins and another 30 implicated in the appearance of rare diseases. In addition to the presence of more than 84 million SNPs in the human genome, they located between 100 and 300 pairs of bases throughout the genome [2, 3], generated by the genetic recombination or missense. (http://www.internationalgenome.org/data#download).

It has been reported that approximately 88% of the SNPs associated with disease are located in intronic and intergenic noncoding regions, which are found in areas not related with sequences that contain essential information for the expression of a gene [4]. The remaining 12% of the SNPs are called "coding," integrated in exonic areas, giving way, in the majority of cases, to proteins that can differ in their composition and biological functions. Also, exonic SNPs may be synonymous and not produce a change in amino acid or not synonymous and change the sequence of amino acids that would alter the

M. Cruz
Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Nuevo Laredo, Mexico

Centro Médico Nacional Siglo XXI IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

A. Valladares-Salgado (✉) · J. de Jesús Peralta Romero
Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Centro Medico Nacional Siglo XXI, IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

E. Flores-Alfaro
Laboratorio de Investigación en Epidemiología Clínica y Molecular, Facultad de Ciencias Químico Biológicas, Universidad Autónoma de Guerrero, Chilpancingo, Guerrero, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_9

structure, conformation, and shape of the protein. Due to the fact that SNPs are genetically stable, they are maintained for various generations and can act as true biological signals. Currently SNPs are considered ancestral risk or protector markers for diseases, from the clinical point of view. Nevertheless, their analysis is complex due to the fact that clinical phenotypes are the result of the interaction between the genotype and the exome that involves personal pathological background and unhealthy lifestyle, which contribute to the metabolic alteration present in T2D. Therefore, the evaluation of the gene-environment correlation in cohorts will allow a better understanding and interpretation of the physiopathology of the genic behavior of complex metabolic diseases, which hold first place in global morbi-mortality. In addition they will create useful tools in early detection, prevention, and more effective treatment in order to reach adequate therapeutic goals [5].

Genome-Wide Association Study (GWAS)

Identifying the genetic determinants associated with T2D has been a complex task, due to the role that is also played by the environment in the development of the disease. Nevertheless, currently there are various genetic markers, distributed throughout the genome. Analysis of previously reported candidate genes has allowed confirmation of the association of the genes with the disease in various populations; however, replication is not always successful due to phenotypical variation and ancestry. GWAS is a method that bases its analysis on statistical and biological associations among various SNPs and phenotypes of the diseases.

The rapid development of genotyping techniques and the reduction in costs has allowed a greater number of GWAS. These studies use microarrays with more than 1,000,000 SNPs and have transformed research into the genetics of complex diseases, diabetes being outstanding. GWAS are characterized by possession of a greater power to discover variants with a modest effect, whose association is not previously known. The first studies confirmed the associations between T2D and various genetic variants located on *PPARG* genes, adding six new loci (*CDKAL1*, *HHEX*, *SLC30A8*, *IGF2BP2*, *CDKNA2A*, and *FTO*). Typically, each copy of these susceptibility alleles increases the risk of suffering diabetes by 10–15% [6].

Initially, GWAS was performed on European population and later in other populations from the African and American continents with different ethnic groups, which has contributed to identification of a greater number of genes associated with T2D. Table 9.1 shows the association of various SNPs with susceptibility to developing T2D in a trans-ethnic meta-analysis that included 1000 of cases and controls with European, East Asian, South Asian, Mexican, and Mexican American ancestry groups [7]. To date, there are more than 80 SNPs, among which variants in genes *WFS1*, *HNF1A*, *HNF1B*, *IRS1*, and *MTNR1B*. The importance of the genetic

Table 9.1 Association of SNPs with susceptibility to developing T2D in a trans-ethnic meta-analysis that included 1000 of cases and controls with ancestry group European, East Asian, South Asian, Mexican, and Mexican American

			Alleles		Trans-ethnic meta-analysis	
Locus	Lead SNP	Chr	Risk	Other	*p*-value	Cochran's *Q p*-value
TCF7L2	rs7903146	10	T	C	7.8E-75	5.5E-04
PEPD	rs3786897	19	A	G	3.3E-04	5.5E-04
KLF14	rs13233731	7	G	A	7.0E-04	6.4E-04
CDKAL1	rs7756992	6	G	A	1.6E-26	2.6E-03
VPS26A	rs1802295	10	T	C	1.4E-03	4.4E-03
GCC1	rs6467136	7	G	A	2.0E-01	5.6E-03
TSPAN8	rs7955901	12	C	T	1.6E-03	6.1E-03
GCKR	rs780094	2	C	T	1.0E-05	8.7E-03
GRB14	rs3923113	2	A	C	1.5E-06	1.3E-02
BCAR1	rs7202877	16	T	G	5.7E-04	1.3E-02
ZFAND3	rs9470794	6	C	T	3.6E-03	1.4E-02
PSMD6	rs831571	3	C	T	3.7E-04	1.5E-02
CILP2	rs10401969	19	C	T	9.7E-03	2.0E-02
RASGRP1	rs7403531	15	T	C	1.5E-01	2.1E-02
RBMS1	rs7593730	2	C	T	4.7E-04	2.7E-02
TLE4	rs17791513	9	A	G	3.2E-08	3.0E-02
ZBED3	rs6878122	5	G	A	6.3E-05	3.1E-02
HHEX/IDE	rs1111875	10	C	T	3.2E-19	3.4E-02
CDC123	rs11257655	10	T	C	2.6E-09	4.3E-02
ARAP1 (CENTD2)	rs1552224	11	A	C	1.2E-07	5.5E-02
KCNQ1	rs163184	11	G	T	1.7E-14	5.8E-02
NOTCH2	rs10923931	1	T	G	1.7E-02	6.8E-02
JAZF1	rs849135	7	G	A	1.7E-09	6.9E-02
KCNJ11	rs5215	11	C	T	3.2E-11	7.2E-02
DGKB	rs17168486	7	T	C	3.4E-07	7.6E-02
THADA	rs10203174	2	C	T	4.8E-05	8.3E-02
KCNK16	rs1535500	6	T	G	7.5E-06	9.2E-02
ST64GAL1	rs16861329	3	C	T	8.5E-06	1.1E-01
MTNR1B	rs10830963	11	G	C	2.0E-07	1.2E-01
PTPRD	rs17584499	9	T	C	6.0E-01	1.2E-01
PROX1	rs2075423	1	G	T	2.2E-06	1.4E-01
HNF4A	rs4812829	20	A	G	4.6E-08	1.5E-01
GIPR	rs8108269	19	G	T	4.9E-06	1.5E-01
HMGA2	rs2261181	12	T	C	3.6E-08	1.8E-01
SPRY2	rs1359790	13	G	A	5.8E-06	2.2E-01
AP3S2	rs2028299	15	C	A	5.2E-07	2.4E-01
ADAMTS9	rs6795735	3	C	T	2.1E-04	2.5E-01
GCK	rs10278336	7	A	G	1.3E-01	2.6E-01
ZFAND6	rs11634397	15	G	A	1.4E-05	2.8E-01
FTO FTO	rs9936385	16	C	T	1.2E-12	3.0E-01
GLIS3	rs7041847	9	A	G	5.4E-06	3.1E-01
CCND2	rs11063069	12	G	A	7.5E-04	3.2E-01
IGF2BP2	rs4402960	3	T	G	9.5E-18	3.3E-01
TMEM163	rs6723108	2	T	G	4.0E-01	3.3E-01
PPARG	rs1801282	3	C	G	5.7E-10	3.5E-01
HNF1B	rs4430796	17	G	A	8.9E-10	3.6E-01
PRC1	rs12899811	15	G	A	5.7E-07	3.9E-01
CDKN2A/B	rs10811661	9	T	C	1.1E-27	3.9E-01
HNF1A	rs12427353	12	G	C	3.9E-06	3.9E-01
GRK5	rs10886471	10	C	T	6.1E-01	4.3E-01

Table 9.1 (continued)

Locus	Lead SNP	Chr	Alleles		Trans-ethnic meta-analysis	
			Risk	Other	*p*-value	Cochran's *Q p*-value
ANK1	rs516946	8	C	T	1.5E-07	4.4E-01
SRR	rs391300	17	C	T	6.8E-01	5.1E-01
KLHDC5	rs10842994	12	C	T	7.9E-06	5.3E-01
TP53INP1	rs7845219	8	T	C	6.4E-08	5.4E-01
C2CD4A	rs7163757	15	C	T	3.6E-06	5.5E-01
BCL11A	rs243088	2	T	A	3.2E-06	5.5E-01
DUSP8	rs2334499	11	T	C	1.0E-03	5.6E-01
SLC30A8	rs3802177	8	G	A	1.8E-18	6.2E-01
WFS1	rs4458523	4	G	T	2.1E-09	6.2E-01
ANKRD55	rs459193	5	G	A	8.9E-04	6.7E-01
TLE1	rs2796441	9	G	A	1.6E-06	7.7E-01
IRS1	rs2943640	2	C	A	7.2E-09	7.9E-01
UBE2E2	rs7612463	3	C	A	6.7E-09	8.3E-01
HMG20A	rs7178572	15	G	A	1.5E-11	8.4E-01
ZMIZ1	rs12571751	10	A	G	2.4E-10	9.3E-01
ADCY5	rs11717195	3	T	C	2.2E-08	9.4E-01
MC4R	rs12970134	18	A	G	2.6E-08	9.5E-01
RND3	rs7560163	2	C	G	4.7E-01	9.9E-01
MAEA	rs6815464	4	C	G	4.4E-04	N/A

Taken from Mahajan et al. [7]

component of T2D is clear when a concordance of 70–90% of the disease is observed between identical twins.

GWAS has allowed us to understand with greater precision the physiopathology of T2D, in order to establish better opportunities for treatment, diagnosis, and patient monitoring. From the genetic viewpoint, T2D is a multifactorial disease where the phenotype of a group of genes is modulated by environmental factors. The action mechanisms involved in the majority of signs associated with T2D offered by GWAS are involved in reduction in the secretion of insulin (be it due to dysfunction of the pancreatic beta cells or through reduction of cellular mass) or insulin resistance (associated with obesity). In conclusion, GWAS has offered important knowledge of the genetic variants most associated with T2D in the world [8]. Another focus for complex diseases is whole-exome sequencing. This has been successful in the study of low frequency variants.

The Importance of Ancestry in Association Studies

It is known that in populations native to the American continent, there was a process of miscegenation that took place when the Amerindians and Europeans met in the New World five centuries ago. The latest studies show that the genetic composition is different in each country, and within the same country, there are regional differences. For example, in Mexico it has been shown that Mexico City has the following percentages: 65% native American, 30% European, and 5% African, while Monterrey City, N.L. the percentage was 56% native American, 38% European, and 6% African [9, 10]. Even, in Mexico City there are variations in the proportions of ancestry when we compare the IMSS vs INMEGEN studies [11]. Recently, a high prevalence of Amerindian ancestry was reported in the Montaña region of the State of Guerrero, reaching 80% of Amerindian [12].

In Mexico there is a very high degree of stratification, where the differences in allele frequencies between groups and controls can lead to false associations [9]. The admixture mapping method avoids these false associations and requires markers that may be informative concerning ancestry, that is, those for which allele frequencies differ between mixed populations. With this method data is combined from all the markers to obtain information about ancestral alleles of each marker locus and then for the association of the disease with ancestral background. We can combine the information from multiple markers in a multivariate analysis to obtain information about the ancestral alleles of each locus of each individual in the admixture.

The importance of this chapter is to describe the most important genetic variants associated with T2D (Table 9.1), for more information about frequencies, haplotypes, etc. can be consulted in http://www.internationalgenome.org/ and variants associated with diseases like T2D in the link with the ENCODE Project, https://www.genome.gov/10005107/.

Genes Associated with T2D

Variants of the *TCF7L2* gene

The *TCF7L2* gene has a clinical relevance because it is implicated in a wide variety of signals, insulin resistance, and T2D, specifically the variant rs7903146 in European populations, later also in Latin peoples. In 2006, the first gene implicated in susceptibility to T2D was identified through microsatellite markers, being identified without previous biological knowledge and with an important power of association, which was named *transcription factor 7-like 2 gene* (*TCF7L2*; *TCF4*). It is known that *TCF7L2* is a transcription factor that influences the transcription of various genes, thus exercising a great variety of functions within the cell. This transcription factor is a member of the signaling pathways of Wingless Int (WNT), located on chromosome 10q25. Stimulation of the WNT pathway goes along with the association of β-catenine with BCL9 and its translocation to the nucleus associated with *TCF7L2*, which results in the activation of WNT target genes, specifically in the repression of synthesis of proglucagon in enteroendocrine cells. The noncoding area contains cis-regulatory elements that lead to expression of *TCF7L2* in various tissues involved in the

homeostasis of glucose, which suggests that the variants are probably regulating the expression of this gene. The T risk allele of *rs7903146* presents greater expression in the pancreas than the C protector allele [13]. Markers located on intron 3, *DG10S478*, and SNPs *rs12255372* (allele G > T) and *rs7903146* (allele C > T) were the first markers associated with T2D in individuals in Iceland [14]. Later, this association was replicated in various populations of the world, so that this gene susceptible to T2D has become the most important worldwide. In European population, each copy of the susceptibility allele increases the risk of developing T2D 1.4–1.5 times. In Mexican population, the risk is 1.78 for each copy of the T allele for rs12255372, after adjusting with ancestral markers [15].

Lyssenko et al. showed that the risk given by the T allele of *rs7903146* associates with a lack of insulin secretion, with the effect of incretin and increase in the production of hepatic glucose. In addition, a cohort in Bosnia and another in Malmö showed how diabetes-free survival is greater in individuals with genotype CC than in individuals with CT/TT del *rs7903146* [12].

Variants of Genes *ABCC8* and *KCNJ11*

Genes of the family *ABCC8* (union cassette ATP, subfamily C, member 8; SUR1) and *KCNJ11* (inwardly rectifying potassium channel, subfamily J, member 11; KIR 6.2) are located on chromosome 11p15.1; it has been observed that both are expressed in beta cells, and it has been reported that various polymorphism versions on these genes associate with insulin secretion disorders [16].

It has been noted that carriers of the variant *p.Arg1420His* of gene *ABCC8* have twice the risk of developing T2D, mainly among Pima Indians, although this also applies to subjects with mostly Native American ancestry [17].

In Europeans the association has been reported with variant *KCNJ11 E23K* (OR 1.23), but not with *ABCC8* (15). Nevertheless, between these two genes, there is a high degree of linkage disequilibrium (LD), which makes it harder to identify the variant causing the risk of the disease [18].

Variants of the *CAPN10* Gene

Calpain is a cysteine protease, which participates in various functions such as apoptosis, exocytosis, mitochondrial metabolism, and remodeling of the cytoskeleton and insulin secretion. Its expression is very high in metabolically important organs such as the heart, liver, pancreas islets, and muscle. Known as the common gene in diabetes, it is located on chromosome 2q37.3, formed by 15 exons and showing 8 isoforms [19]. The most recent meta-analysis showed that the C allele of *rs2975760* of *CAPN10* was the best associated with increased risk of T2D [20]. However, an analysis by haplotypes showed that individuals with haplotype 1121/1121 for SNP-44, SNP-43, SNP-19, or SNP-63 presented twice the risk of T2D than only SNP-*43* [21]. This haplotype is not associated in other populations, which means that the genetic structure of each population is important and should be considered, as in other SNPs.

Variants of the *PPARγ* Gene (*Peroxisome Proliferator-Activated Receptor Gamma*)

PPAR is a protein, member of a superfamily of nuclear receptors, which has a weight of approximately 56 kD. PPAR affects mechanisms present in the control of steroid hormones, of glucocorticoids, or thyroxine, of retinoic acid and of vitamin D, but mainly acts in the regulation of the expression of specific genes through a mechanism that is common to members of the nuclear receptor superfamily. It has been reported that the PPAR family is comprised of various subtypes, known as PPARα, PPARβ/δ, and PPARγ. This latter is coded by three different genes: *PPARγ1*, *PPARγ2*, and *PPARγ3*. The main function is the regulation of genes that participate in lipid and glucose metabolism. Variant of *PPARγ2* in 3p25 only is expressed in adipose tissue and regulates the differentiation, storage of lipids, and control of the transcription of various genes implicated in the metabolism, and it also participates in insulin sensitivity [22]. Various studies have shown that PPAR antagonists improve hyperlipidemia and glucose levels.

Pro12Ala (*rs1801282*) has been associated with T2D in different populations. *Pro12Ala* has a prevalence of 12% in Caucasian population, 10% in Native Americans, and 1% in Chinese. This change in amino acid near the extreme amino terminal (NH2-terminus) modulates the transcriptional activity. Alanine favors the formation of alpha-helix, which does not occur with proline, which forms alanine isoforms and stimulates deficiency in the target genes of the gene, carrying to the individual carriers a lesser accumulation of adipose tissue. In the latest meta-analysis, an OR of 0.86 was calculated, but unfortunately, the majority of the population at the global level carries the allele Pro12, which generates a high risk of T2D [23].

On the other hand, it has been noted that *PPARγ* has been highly studied, due to the fact that its ligands interact with thiazolidinediones, drugs used in the treatment of T2D. The effects of ligands of *PPARγ* are diverse, but the total effect is improvement in insulin sensitivity, in addition to regulation of other genes that have functions in glucose homeostasis and adipocyte differentiation.

Variants of the *CDKN2A/B* Gene

CDKN2A/B gene is located in region 9p21 and codifies for a protein p16, which has the function of inhibiting cyclin-dependent kinase p16 (INK4A) and p15 (INK4B), coded by the gene *CDKN2A* and a long noncoding RNA known as *ANRIL* (*CDKN2B-AS*) [24]. It participates in the cellular cycle and helps maintain pancreas beta cell mass, but the mechanism by which *CDKN2A/B* influences diabetes risk is not yet clear. The risk allele of marker *rs10811661* has been associated with reduced insulin secretion in European population [25], while genes *MTNR1B*, *TCF7L2*, and *KCNJ11* associate with the dysfunction of β cells; both pathways are related with reduction of insulin secretion [16].

Variants of the *FTO* Gene

Association of the fat mass and obesity-associated (*FTO)* gene with obesity was first reported in a European GWAS performed in individuals with T2D [26]. The power of association of the variant of the *FTO* gene with T2D was lost when correcting for body mass index (BMI), which suggested that susceptibility was being measured through obesity. Other studies have reported that the association between the variant and risk of T2D is maintained after adjusting for BMI. It appears that the main cause for the variability of results is related to the time when BMI was measured. The association has been demonstrated, before the development of T2D, when BMI is more elevated, and is reduced or lost with greater time of evolution of the disease.

Studies confirm the association between the variant *rs9939609 (T/A)* of *FTO* and obesity as the main risk factor for developing T2D. In other populations, such as the Mexican, the association is not as evident, particularly in children [27]. European homozygote populations for the risk allele (AA) of *rs9939609* have 1.7 times the risk of developing obesity and on average have 3 Kg more weight than the average population. Some studies have tried to identify the mechanism by which this association exists. In a metabolomic focus, metabolites have been identified, such as valine amino acid, a hexose, and other metabolites relevant to the phosphatidylcholine pathway. The alteration of valine metabolism leads to the accumulation of branched-chain amino acid in relation with the risk allele of *FTO*. The branched-chain amino acids and their derivatives seem to be an early manifestation of insulin resistance, probably via *mTOR/S6K1* kinase, which results in the phosphorylation of various residues of serine in the substrate of the insulin receptor (IRS-1). Metabolites of phosphatidylcholine are associated with apolipoprotein B, and it has been demonstrated that the risk allele of *FTO* is associated with the particles that form part apolipoprotein B.

Variants of the *IRS-1* Gene

The molecules of IRS are important mediators in the signaling of insulin, in addition to playing an important role in metabolism, growth, and survival of the cell. The IRS family is formed by four members, IRS-1 to IRS-4, presenting a different tissue distribution and therefore different expression. IRS-1 and IRS-2 are key for insulin action and glucose homeostasis. IRS-1 is coded in chromosome 2q36.3. Polymorphism *Gly972Arg* of *IRS-1* has been the most associated with the development of T2D. The union of insulin to its active phosphorylated receptor to *IRS-1*, phosphorylating tyrosine residue, serine threonine) (Ser/Thr), which join and activate PI3K, which contains the subunit p85, and p110 phosphorylates PI, and this allows it to join with akt and PDK1. The phosphorylation of tyrosine residue accompanies the mobilization of glucose transporters (GLUT 4) that mediate the internalization of the same. However, when the serines or threonines are phosphorylated, it leads to an accelerated degradation of the IRS protein, which generates an alteration in insulin signaling and insulin resistance and a decrease in the translocation of GLUT4.

As mentioned earlier, the polymorphism *Gly972Arg* has been the most reported in studies of association with T2D, in combination with environmental factors such as diet, age, and physical activity. Like other genes and depending on the population, important associations have also been reported (such as in Europeans), weak ones as with the Japanese, or absence of, as with the Pimas [28]. In Mexican population, variant *Arg* has been observed in 2.6% in controls and 7.9% in cases [29].

Variants of the Hepatocyte Nuclear Factor 1-Alpha (*HNF1A)* Gene

HNF1A is coded on chromosome 12q24.31. The protein joins inverted palindrome 5′-GTTAATNATTAAC-3′ for the activation and regulation of gene expression, mainly in the cells of the pancreatic islets and the liver. Some variants of the gene have been found to be associated with maturity-onset diabetes of the young 3 (MODY3). Through the study of exome sequencing, the variant pE508K has been identified and associated with T2D. This variant generates a reduction in the function of the protein, unlike MODY3 diabetes, where function is almost lost. The mechanism related with the affinity of the protein for joining DNA sequence does not appear to be altered. It seems the reduction in activity occurs mainly through a reduction in expression and the protein shows altered localization in the nucleus.

The effect of the variant on European populations is very high, with results similar to two studies in Latin population.

Carriers of the variant have up to fivefold increased prevalence of T2D. Interesting from a clinical viewpoint, carriers of the variant respond better to treatment with sulfonylureas than with metformin, a drug of choice in the treatment of T2D [30].

Variants of the *Solute Carrier Family 30 Member 8 (SLC30A8)* Gene

This transporter, coded on chromosome 8q24.11 and expressed importantly in the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas, participates in the packaging of proinsulin in secretory granules and liberation. These processes require the presence of ions Zn^{2+} and Ca^{2+}, which form complexes with proinsulin. The ions of Zn^{2+} are transported by transporter 8, which is found in abundance in the pancreas beta cells, also located in alpha cells, and participates in the liberation of glucagon. GWAS have associated the gene with susceptibility to developing T2D. A recent study showed that the marker associated with greatest frequency in European, Asian, and African population is rs13266634 [31]. However, other authors have not found this gene to be associated with T2D [32].

Other Variants Associated with Insulin Resistance and Dyslipidemias

Variant *R230C* of gene *ABCA1* of the HDL receptor participates in the reverse transport of cholesterol, associated with early-onset diabetes and obesity, particularly in Mexican population, with values of $p = 10^{-6}$ [11]. Also, in Japanese population, the presence of a haplotype with an OR of 2.59 has been reported associated with T2D [33].

In a meta-analysis of Mexican and Mexican-American samples to characterize genes associated with T2D in Hispanics, the following genes were identified, with values of $<10^{-5}$: gene *ATP2B2*, located on chromosome 3, *UNC5C* on chromosome 4, and *PIWIL4* on chromosome 11, in addition to three independent intergenic regions located on chromosome 10 and an *EST* (expressed sequence tag) located near the area of gene *RXRA* on chromosome 9. Upon adjusting for BMI, two additional groups of markers were observed, one in the intergenic area of chromosome 20 and the other within genes *C22orf30/DEPDC5*, located on chromosome 22. This meta-analysis showed SNPs with a high level of significance in ten genomic areas. In addition, two additional regions were identified when BMI was incorporated, in particular an intronic variant of *ANK2* gene and two intronic variants of *MCPH* gene [34, 35]. Other population studies have identified genes such as *HNF1A*, *KCNQ1*, and *PTPRD*. Also, two other genes identified, *CSMD1* and *ANK2*, were relevant due to their functionality in metabolic regulation. Other regions associated with T2D showed statistical significance, with *CDKN2A/CDKN2B* and *IGF2BP2* genes.

Biological Validation Studies

After the identification of the genes associated with a disease, what is sought is to know their biological function, so that the genes mentioned above have been studied for their expression in adipose tissue, skeletal muscle, and lymphoblast cell lines. One of the most significant signals of SNP *rs202983*, located within *CIT* gene (chromosome 12), showed an important effect on the regulation of gene *WFS1*. It has been documented that mutations of *WFS1* gene cause monogenic diabetes and common variants of this gene have associated with T2D. Lineal regression analysis of these genetic markers with five parameters (BMI, total cholesterol, HDL-C, LDL-C, and triglycerides) showed values of association at the genomic level in polymorphisms near *APOA5* gene, which is located on chromosome 11. The variant *rs964184* showed the lowest value at $p = 2.3 \times 10^{-9}$. Other variants of interest are those of *SYNE1* gene, which is found on chromosome 6, for triglycerides (*rs998147*, $p = 5.3 \times 10^{-7}$) and an area near *MAD2L1* gene on chromosome 4 for HDL-C (*rs4568220*, $p = 7.1 \times 10^{-7}$) [34, 35].

Conclusions

T2D is a complex disease that presents differences in prevalence between populations. Epidemiological data indicate that the risk of suffering the disease is higher in Amerindian populations than those of European origin. There is evidence on the influence of genetic factors in populations; to date, over 80 loci associated with T2D have been identified, which do not always replicate among populations. Analysis by admixture mapping has been specifically designed to identify genes involved in complex diseases that show differences in prevalence among populations. Given the history of miscegenation in Mexican population, admixture mapping is an ideal method for identifying the genetic factors that increase the risk of suffering T2D. The first GWAS performed in patients with T2D in Mexico showed that less than 10% of the 46 candidate genes reported in 2011 in European population were found associated in our population. These populations are characterized mainly by low levels of HDL-C, high levels of LDL-C, and elevated triglycerides. The genetic factors most associated with these alterations have been variants of *ZNF259/APOA5* genes, such as rs964184, associated with triglycerides, rs2367970 of the same gene, and rs2472386 of *ABCA1* gene associated with HDL.

It is a priority to establish the genetic history of the Mexican, in order to have risk markers for developing T2D, markers associated with complications and metabolic disorders, a condition very evident in our population thanks to current lifestyles.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. A gene is considered as:
   (a) A sequence of nitrogenated bases
   (b) The unit of genetic and inherited information
   (c) The chromatid unit that forms chromosomes
   (d) A sequence of nucleosides
   (e) Triplets of bases
2. What percentage of DNA sequence is identical among humans?
   (a) 99.9
   (b) 98.0
   (c) 95.0
   (d) 98.5
   (e) 99.0
3. The main difference between mutation and a SNP is:
   (a) A mutation is lethal and a SNP no
   (b) In mutation there is a change of various bases
   (c) SNPs occur only in introns
   (d) The frequency of a SNP is greater than 1%
   (e) A SNP is presented at any stage of life
4. All are characteristics of SNPs except:
   (a) They are generally biallelic
   (b) They are presented throughout the structure of the gene
   (c) They are only present in exons and introns
   (d) They are inherited
   (e) They allow identification of an individual
5. The gene most frequently associated with T2D worldwide is:
   (a) IRS-1
   (b) CAPN10
   (c) TCF7L2
   (d) PPARg
   (e) FTO
6. Which is the action mechanism of variant rs1801282 of the gene *PPARγ*?
   (a) Transcriptional modulation in the change of alanine
   (b) Oxidation of free fatty acids
   (c) Transcriptional modulation of the signaling pathways of TZD
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
7. What is the main problem of low replication of the association of obesity with T2D of the various genetic variants of the gene *FTO* upon analyzing it in different populations?
   (a) The loss of statistical power in meta-analysis
   (b) The ancestry of various populations
   (c) The time of evolution of the disease and the difficulty in performing metabolomics studies
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
8. Why is it important to determine the genetic component in metabolic diseases?
   (a) To identify risk or protector markers associated with the disease
   (b) To perform studies in metabolomics
   (c) All of the above
   (d) None of the above
9. What is the function of the gene of *CAPN10*?
   (a) Participate in apoptosis, exocytosis, mitochondrial metabolism, and remodeling of the cytoskeleton
   (b) The gene codes for calpain-10, an atypical cysteine-protease that participates in the mechanism of insulin secretion
   (c) Participate in the oxidative use of glucose for skeletal muscle
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
10. Characteristics of gene *SLC30A8* include:
    (a) The transporter is coded on chromosome 8q24.11. It is expressed at high level in the pancreas, particularly in the Islets of Langerhans
    (b) It participates mainly in the packaging of proinsulin in secretory granules, the hepatic liberation and elimination of insulin
    (c) It processes and requires the presence of ions Zn2+ and Ca2+ which form complexes with proinsulin
    (d) All of the above
    (e) None of the above

Correct Answers

1. (b) The unit of genetic and inherited information
2. (a) 99.9
3. (d) The frequency of a SNP is greater than 1%
4. (c) They are only present in exons and introns
5. (c) *TCF7L2*
6. (a) Transcriptional modulation in the change of alanine
7. (d) All of the above
8. (d) All of the above
9. (d) All of the above
10. (d) All of the above

Glossary

Some definitions are found on the page: https://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/.

Ancestry refers to the geographical origin of populations, for example, "individuals of European ancestry" or the line of heritage or descent of a group.

Diabetes is a group of metabolic diseases characterized by hyperglycemia resulting from defects in insulin secretion, insulin action, or both. The chronic hyperglycemia of diabetes is associated with long-term damage, dysfunction, and failure of different organs, especially the eyes, kidneys, nerves, heart, and blood vessels (American Diabetes Association).

Genetic marker is a gene or (a fragment of) DNA sequence having a known location on a chromosome. It has an easily identifiable phenotype and whose inheritance pattern can be followed. Genetic markers act as chromosomal landmarks. They are used to trace or identify specific region of a gene (especially one that is associated with an inherited disease) on a chromosome. They are also used to determine a linkage group or a recombination event.

Genome-wide association study (GWAS) is a relatively new way to identify genes involved in human disease. This method searches the genome for small variations, called single nucleotide polymorphisms or SNPs (pronounced "snips") that occur more frequently in people with a particular disease than in people without the disease. Each study can look at 100 or 1000 of SNPs at the same time. Researchers use data from this type of study to pinpoint genes that may contribute to a person's risk of developing a certain disease.

Microarrays is a hybridization of a nucleic acid sample (target) to a very large set of oligonucleotide probes, which are attached to a solid support, to determine sequence or to detect variations in a gene sequence or expression or for gene mapping.

Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) are the most common type of genetic variation among people. Each SNP represents a difference in a single-DNA building block, called a nucleotide. For example, a SNP may replace the nucleotide cytosine (C) with the nucleotide thymine (T) in a certain stretch of DNA.

References

1. International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium. Finishing the euchromatic sequence of the human genome. Nature. 2004;431(7011):931–45.
2. Auton A, Brooks LD, Durbin RM, Garrison EP, Kang HM, Korbel JO, et al. A global reference for human genetic variation. Nature. 2015;526(7571):68–74.
3. Sudmant PH, Rausch T, Gardner EJ, Handsaker RE, Abyzov A, Huddleston J, et al. An integrated map of structural variation in 2,504 human genomes. Nature. 2015;526(7571):75–81.
4. ENCODE Project Consortium. An integrated encyclopedia of DNA elements in the human genome. Nature. 2012;489(7414):57–74.
5. Franks PW, Pare G. Putting the genome in context: gene-environment interactions in type 2 diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2016;16(7):57.
6. Scott LJ, Mohlke KL, Bonnycastle LL, Willer CJ, Li Y, Duren WL, et al. A genome-wide association study of type 2 diabetes in Finns detects multiple susceptibility variants. Science. 2007;316(5829):1341–5.
7. Mahajan A, Go MJ, Zhang W, Below JE, Gaulton KJ, Ferreira T, et al. Genome-wide trans-ancestry meta-analysis provides insight into the genetic architecture of type 2 diabetes susceptibility. Nat Genet. 2014;46(3):234–44.
8. Parra EJ, Below JE, Krithika S, Valladares A, Barta JL, Cox NJ, et al. Genome-wide association study of type 2 diabetes in a sample from Mexico City and a meta-analysis of a Mexican-Amerian sample from Starr County, Texas. Diabetologia. 2011;54:2038–46.
9. Martinez-Marignac VL, Valladares A, Cameron E, Chan A, Perera A, Globus-Goldberg R, et al. Admixture in Mexico City: implications for admixture mapping of type 2 diabetes genetic risk factors. Hum Genet. 2007;120(6):807–19.
10. Martinez-Fierro ML, Beuten J, Leach RJ, Parra EJ, Cruz M, Rangel-Villalobos H, et al. Ancestry informative markers and admixture proportions in northeastern Mexico. J Hum Genet. 2009;54:504–9.
11. Villarreal-Molina MT, Flores-Dorantes MT, Arellano-Campos O, Villalobos-Comparan M, Rodriguez-Cruz M, Miliar-Garcia A, et al. Association of the ATP-binding cassette transporter A1 R230C variant with early-onset type 2 diabetes in a Mexican population. Diabetes. 2008;57(2):509–13.
12. Cahua-Pablo JA, Cruz M, Tello-Almaguer PV, del Alarcón-Romero LC, Parra EJ, Villerías-Salinas S, Valladares-Salgado A, Tello-Flores VA, Méndez-Palacios A, Pérez-Macedonio CP, Flores-Alfaro E. Analysis of admixture proportions in seven geographical regions of the State of Guerrero, Mexico. Am J Hum Biol. 2017;29. (Submitted).
13. Lyssenko V, Lupi R, Marchetti P, Del Guerra S, Orho-Melander M, Almgren P, et al. Mechanisms by which common variants in the TCF7L2 gene increase risk of type 2 diabetes. J Clin Invest. 2007;117(8):2155–63.
14. Grant SF, Thorleifsson G, Reynisdottir I, Benediktsson R, Manolescu A, Sainz J, et al. Variant of transcription factor 7-like 2 (TCF7L2) gene confers risk of type 2 diabetes. Nat Genet. 2006;38(3):320–3.
15. Parra EJ, Cameron E, Simmonds L, Valladares A, McKeigue P, Shriver M, et al. Association of TCF7L2 polymorphisms with type 2 diabetes in Mexico City. Clin Genet. 2007;71(4):359–66.
16. Gloyn AL, Weedon MN, Owen KR, Turner MJ, Knight BA, Hitman G, et al. Large-scale association studies of variants in genes encoding the pancreatic beta-cell KATP channel subunits Kir6.2 (KCNJ11) and SUR1 (ABCC8) confirm that the KCNJ11 E23K variant is associated with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2003;52(2):568–72.
17. Baier LJ, Muller YL, Remedi MS, Traurig M, Piaggi P, Wiessner G, et al. ABCC8 R1420H loss-of-function variant in a southwest American Indian community: association with increased birth weight and doubled risk of type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2015;64(12):4322–32.
18. Florez JC, Burtt N, de Bakker PI, Almgren P, Tuomi T, Holmkvist J, et al. Haplotype structure and genotype-phenotype correlations of the sulfonylurea receptor and the islet ATP-sensitive potassium channel gene region. Diabetes. 2004;53(5):1360–8.
19. Horikawa Y. Calpain-10 (NIDDM1) as a susceptibility gene for common type 2 diabetes. Endocr J. 2006;53(5):567–76.

20. Yan ST, Li CL, Tian H, Li J, Pei Y, Liu Y, et al. Association of calpain-10 rs2975760 polymorphism with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis. Int J Clin Exp Med. 2014;7(10):3800–7.
21. Orho-Melander M, Klannemark M, Svensson MK, Ridderstrale M, Lindgren CM, Groop L. Variants in the calpain-10 gene predispose to insulin resistance and elevated free fatty acid levels. Diabetes. 2002;51(8):2658–64.
22. Estivalet AA, Leiria LB, Dora JM, Rheinheimer J, Bouças AP, Maia AL, et al. Thr92Ala and PPARγ2 Pro12Ala polymorphisms interact in the modulation of insulin resistance in type 2 diabetic patients. Obesity. 2011;19:825–32.
23. Gouda HN, Sagoo GS, Harding AH, Yates J, Sandhu MS, Higgins JP. The association between the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma2 (PPARG2) Pro12Ala gene variant and type 2 diabetes mellitus: a HuGE review and meta-analysis. Am J Epidemiol. 2010;171(6):645–55.
24. Kong Y, Sharma RB, Nwosu BU, Alonso LC. Islet biology, the CDKN2A/B locus and type 2 diabetes risk. Diabetologia. 2016;59(8):1579–93.
25. Hribal ML, Presta I, Procopio T, Marini MA, Stancakova A, Kuusisto J, et al. Glucose tolerance, insulin sensitivity and insulin release in European non-diabetic carriers of a polymorphism upstream of CDKN2A and CDKN2B. Diabetologia. 2011;54(4):795–802.
26. Frayling TM, Timpson NJ, Weedon MN, Zeggini E, Freathy RM, Lindgren CM, et al. A common variant in the FTO gene is associated with body mass index and predisposes to childhood and adult obesity. Science. 2007;316(5826):889–94.
27. Mejía-Benítez A, Klünder-Klünder M, Yengo L, Meyre D, Aradillas C, Cruz E, et al. Analysis of the contribution of FTO, NPC1, ENPP1, NEGR1, GNPDA2 and MC4R genes to obesity in Mexican children. BMC Med Genet. 2013;14:21.
28. Sesti G. Insulin receptor substrate polymorphisms and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Pharmacogenomics. 2000;1(3):343–57.
29. Burguete-Garcia AI, Cruz M, Madrid-Marina V, Lopez-Ridaura R, Hernández-Avila M, Cortina B, et al. Association of Gly972Arg polymorphism of IRS1 gene with type 2 diabetes mellitus in lean participants of a national health survey in Mexico: a candidate gene study. Metabolism. 2010;59:38–45.
30. SIGMA Type 2 Diabetes Consortium, Estrada K, Aukrust I, Bjørkhaug L, Burtt NP, Mercader JM, et al. Association of a low-frequency variant in HNF1A with type 2 diabetes in a Latino population. JAMA. 2014;311(22):2305–14.
31. Fan M, Li W, Wang L, Gu S, Dong S, Chen M, Yin H, Zheng J, Wu X, Jin J, Jiang X, Cai J, Liu P, Zheng C. Association of SLC30A8 gene polymorphism with type 2 diabetes, evidence from 46 studies: a meta-analysis. Endocrine. 2016;53(2):381–94.
32. Kulkarni H, Mamtani M, Peralta JM, Diego V, Dyer TD, Goring H, Almasy L, Mahaney MC, Williams-Blangero S, Duggirala R, Curran JE, Blangero J. Lack of association between SLC30A8 variants and type 2 diabetes in Mexican American families. J Diabetes Res. 2016;2016:6463214.
33. Daimon M, Kido T, Baba M, Oizumi T, Jimbu Y, Kameda W, et al. Association of the ABCA1 gene polymorphisms with type 2 DM in a Japanese population. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2005;329(1):205–10.
34. Parra EJ, Below JE, Krithika S, Valladares A, Barta JL, Cox NJ, et al. Genome-wide association study of type 2 diabetes in a sample from Mexico City and a meta-analysis of a Mexican-American sample from Starr County, Texas. Diabetologia. 2011;54(8):2038–46.
35. Below JE, Gamazon ER, Morrison JV, Konkashbaev A, Pluzhnikov A, McKeigue PM, et al. Genome-wide association and meta-analysis in populations from Starr County, Texas, and Mexico City identify type 2 diabetes susceptibility loci and enrichment for expression quantitative trait loci in top signals. Diabetologia. 2011;54(8):2047–55.

Gene Expression Modifications in Type 2 Diabetes

10

Fernando Suarez-Sanchez and Jaime Gomez-Zamudio

Chapter Objectives

- Understand changes in gene expression that underlie the phenotype of T2D.
- Review the deregulation of inflammation, oxidative phosphorylation, carbohydrate and lipid metabolism, and mitochondrial function in four key organs in the development of T2D.
- Discuss the emerging role of micro RNAs as local and distant regulatory molecules in T2D.

Introduction

The pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes (T2D) is not completely clear, and it has been shown that environmental factors such as obesity, physical inactivity, unhealthy diet, and aging, in addition to genetic factors, play important roles in the genesis of T2D. The evolution of the technology in genomic analysis has made possible to find T2D susceptibility genes using genome-wide association study (GWAS) approaches. To date, more than 90 loci has been identified related to T2D susceptibility or T2D-related glycemic traits. Many of these loci have been associated with impaired β-cell function and insulin secretion. However, T2D is a complex metabolic disorder and is clear that several genes play important roles in this polygenic disease. It is not completely understood how those genomic variants (SNPs) are associated with T2D, if they are involved in the pathogenesis of the disease or act simply like risk markers. Only about 10% of the total variance of T2D is explained by the common variants identified by GWAS, and interestingly, most of the identified variants (>85%) fall in noncoding regions of the genome. This finding highlights their potential role in gene regulation.

Adipose Tissue

The participation of adipose tissue in the development of insulin resistance and T2D is tightly linked to two distinct groups of cells: adipocytes and immune cells. Adipose tissue has been recognized as an organ whose function is not limited to the sole storage of fat but has endocrine functions. The complex and still not well-understood communication between these two groups of cells during obesity triggers changes that end up with alterations in glucose homeostasis. These modifications are accompanied by the release of several signaling molecules such as adipokines and cytokines that can travel through the bloodstream allowing them to reach local and distant organs where they may exert their effects. Among an ample range of effects, these molecules may be able to modulate cell signaling and regulate expression of single or most often groups of genes in response to certain stimuli.

One of the most recognized molecules that is expressed differentially between lean and obese people is adiponectin. The concentration of this protein in circulation is inversely proportional to the body mass index (BMI). Furthermore, it has been reported that adiponectin gene expression is downregulated in obesity due to DNA hypermethylation of a region in its promoter [1]. This regulation is mediated by the DNA methyltransferase 1 (DNMT1) whose expression is elevated in adipocytes of obese individuals. Other studies have indicated that the leptin gene (its product has been classified as an adipokine which increases in concentration in obesity) may be regulated by DNA methylation [2]. In addition, protein-DNA affinity studies have identified the transcription factor *FOSL2* as an important regulator of *LEP* [3]. Leptin is a hormone that inhibits food intake and stimulates energy expenditure in lean individuals, but its function is lost or decreased in obesity where an increase in concen-

F. Suarez-Sanchez (✉) · J. Gomez-Zamudio
Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Centro Médico Nacional Siglo XXI IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_10

tration is observed to try to compensate for the development of leptin resistance. However, this increase in leptin levels generally does not improve obesity. The same pattern of expression has been observed with resistin which is a hormone that can cause insulin resistance and decrease adipocyte differentiation. The transcriptional regulation of this gene is related to the transcription factor FOXO1. The non-phosphorylated, active form of FOXO1 can activate the resistin promoter by binding to two regions upstream of the transcription start site (−1539 to −1366 bp and −1016 to −835 bp) [4].

There are a number of other genes whose expression is modified in obesity. For example, Hoggard et al. [5] performed a study in which they compared the gene expression between visceral adipose tissue (VAT) and subcutaneous adipose tissue (SAT) obtained from obese individual. They found 22 genes that showed gene expression differences equal or greater than 5x in omental adipose tissue compared with SAT. Three of them codify secreted proteins (*GREM1*, *PTN* y *SLPI*), but their function in adipose tissue has not been completely elucidated. However, recent data indicates that *GREM1* blocks *BMP4* which in turn decreases the expression of *PPARγ* and *C/EBPα*. These two transcription factors are key regulators in adipocyte differentiation. Thus, impairment of adipocyte differentiation in subject with fat-rich diets promotes the storage of excess of energy in enlarged adipocytes. Adipose tissue hypertrophy is generally viewed as more negative than storage of energy in hyperplastic adipose tissue [6]. Indeed, it has been observed that adipose tissue hypertrophy is more frequent in diabetic subjects compared to nondiabetic subjects [7]. Regarding the PTN gene, one association study has found that the SNP rs161339 near the PTN gene is significantly associated with BMI [8]. PTN is able to induce the production of inflammatory cytokines thus it may be involved in the inflammatory response classically observed in obesity [5]. Recently, it has been reported that PTN and ADAMS1 inhibit the initiation of adipocyte differentiation which may further contribute to adipose tissue impairment [9]. The third differentially expressed gene, SLPI, codify a protein with anti-inflammatory properties which may be produced to counteract the obesity-associated adipose tissue inflammation. This is supported by reports showing a positive association between circulating levels of SLPI and progression of metabolic dysfunction [10].

Other studies have shown that the genes *CIDEC/FSP27* (whose gene expression correlated with insulin sensitivity) and *PLIN1* (its dephosphorylated form inhibits lipolysis) are mainly expressed in the SAT, and their levels in the VAT are negatively regulated by BMI, fat in depots, homeostatic model assessment (HOMA), and fasting glucose and are positively associated with genes that play a role in adipogenesis such as *PPARγ*, *GLUT4*, *FASN*, and *ACACA* and mitochondria biogenesis such as *PPARGC1A*, *PPARGC1B*, *TFAM*, and *MT-CO3* [11]. It has been demonstrated that TNF-α, a proinflammatory molecule usually found in obesity, decrease the expression of *CIDEC* by modifying the activation of the transcription factor PPARγ [12].

A study in subcutaneous adipose tissue from postmenopausal woman subjected to a loss weight regime for 6 months indicates that a greater weight loss is associated with a decrease in 17b-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase-1 (*HSD17B1*) and leptin (*LEP*) expression and marginally significant increased expression of estrogen receptor-1 (*ESR1*) and insulin-like growth factor binding protein-3 (*IGFBP3*) [13]. HSD17B1 is an important component of the estrogen metabolism pathway because it catalyzes the conversion of less active estrone to estradiol [13]. Other pathways that were regulated during weight loss in postmenopausal woman were the mTOR and IGF-1 signaling pathway [13].

Changes in expression of transcription factors during obesity and T2D excerpt broad effects in the cells since a single transcription factor is able to regulate several other genes. However, due to its broad effect, it is sometimes challenging to fully understand its functions. For example, in adipogenesis, the expression of the transcription factor MAFB is upregulated. It increases with BMI in WAT and correlated with adverse metabolic features such as proinflammatory gene expression in adipocytes and macrophages of the adipose tissue. Weight loss decreases its expression [14]. However, these results do not agree with observations in mice where deficiency of this transcription factor lead to increased body fat due to larger adipocyte size and serum cholesterol levels. Possibly, this association is mediated by a reduction in AIM (apoptosis inhibitor of macrophages), which is an inhibitor of lipogenesis in adipocytes [15]. Another transcription factor which is regulated by hypoxic conditions in obesity is the HIF1. Reports by Jiang et al. (2011) showed that HIF1 inactivation in the adipose tissue reduced obesity and insulin resistance [102]. These results point to this transcription factor as a potential therapeutic target to treat T2D and obesity. Other transcription factors that are regulated in obesity are PPARγ and C/EBPα; both are important regulators of adipocyte differentiation and inflammation.

It is well established that low-grade chronic inflammation is a hallmark of obesity and T2D. However, the signals that trigger the inflammation in the adipose tissue are not well understood, but one molecule that has shown a great capacity to elevate expression levels of chemokines and cytokines in subcutaneous adipose tissue is the nutrient-induced intestinal hormone glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide (GIP). Reports indicate that GIP may be involved in the crosstalk of adipocytes and macrophages by the stimulation of the GIP receptor in monocytes and the increase of *MCP-1* mRNA expression

[16]. Other genes whose expression was elevated were *MCP-2*, *IL-6*, *IL-6R*, and *TNF-α* [16, 17]. This observation was confirmed in co-cultures of 3T3L1 adipocytes and RAW 264.7 macrophages but not in isolated cell lines which further supports the hypothesis of a crosstalk between macrophages and adipocytes [16]. Expression of IL-6 and its receptor in subcutaneous adipose tissue (SAT) is positively modulated by obesity and correlates with the expression of *CD11b* (subunit of a complex involved in leukocyte adhesion and migration), *CD163* (marker of the monocyte/macrophage lineage), *TNF-a, MCP-1*, and *IP-10* (or *CXCL10*) (role in chemoattraction of immune cells in response to IFN-γ) [17]. Adipose tissue accounts for the expression of approximately 30% of systemic IL-6 [18]. Higher concentration is associated with insulin resistance and T2D development [18].

Another molecule that has been demonstrated that is able to positively regulate the expression of inflammatory genes such as *TNF*, *IL6*, *STAMP2*, *LBP*, *MCP1*, and *NF-κB* in adipose tissue is *DBC1* [19]. Particularly, regulation of *NF-κB* is mediated through the interaction of DBC1 with sirtuin 1 and inhibition of its deacetylase activity [20]. Decrease in sirtuin 1 action is also associated with macrophage recruitment in adipose tissue [20]. In humans, expression of *DBC1* is associated with adipose tissue senescence in morbid obese subjects [19]. Other inflammation-related genes expressed in adipocytes of obese patients are part of the NOD-like receptor pathway which has been identified as one group of genes associated with inflammation in adipose tissue. NOD-like receptors are intracellular sensors of pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) or damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) which regulate caspase-1-mediated IL-1β secretion. Particularly, it has been reported that the expression of *NLRP3* and *PYCARD* (two important proteins required for the NLRP3 inflammasome activity) and the class II major histocompatibility complex (MHCII) correlate with adiposity phenotypes [21]. Activation of the NLRP3 inflammasome in hypertrophic adipocytes may be partially responsible of the adipocyte death by pyrosis which is an inflammation programmed cell death which is observed in adipose tissue of obese individuals. The important role of NLRP3 in the development of T2D becomes clear in experiments where attenuation of the NLRP3 inflammasome was performed. The results showed a delay in the progression of diabetes, improved hyperglycemia, insulin signaling, and attenuated IL-1b secretion [22, 23]. When NLRP3 is not present, a reduction in the expression of other proinflammatory genes as well as the chemokine *CCL2*, *MCP-1*, and its receptor *CCR2*, which play an important role in macrophage chemotaxis, was observed [24]. On the other hand, recent findings point to an important role of MHCII in the CD4(+) T-cell activation and induction of IFNγ-dependent adipocyte IL-1β secretion which results in a diet-induced early insulin resistance in adipose tissue [25–27]. Interestingly, expression of MHCII is higher in hypertrophic adipocytes which are commonly found in metabolically abnormal obese when compared to metabolically healthy obese patients [27].

Whole gene expression studies by van Greevenbroek et al. [28] performed in SAT obtained from subjects with familial dyslipidemia showed higher expression of genes of the complement system and genes that regulate such system. The activation of the complement system by local cues in adipose tissue could facilitate the recruitment of immune cells and induce inflammation and insulin resistance in the adipose tissue. Involvement of the complement system in immune cell recruitment is supported by studies with C3a receptor knockout mice which are protected from high-fat diet insulin resistance and decreased macrophage infiltration.

Studies performed in adipose tissue from subject with insulin resistance have identified the increase in the expression of *SELS*. This correlated with expression levels of cytokines in the adipose cells. It has been suggested that this protein is a serum amyloid-A protein receptor (which is bound to high-density lipoprotein, HDL) which can trigger the onset of insulin resistance. However, the exact functional relationship of this protein with insulin resistance is still under debate [29, 30]. Another protein regulated during insulin resistance and T2D is GSTA4 which plays a role in the elimination of lipid peroxidation products. Levels of GSTA4 decrease with the onset of insulin resistance and T2D since the primary enzymatic method for lipid aldehyde detoxification is via GSTA4-dependent glutathionylation. In part, it may explain the increase in protein carboxylation, reactive oxygen species (ROS) production, and mitochondrial dysfunction observed in such metabolic diseases [31].

Intake of n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid (PUFA) by mice also downregulates the expression of proinflammatory genes such as caspase 1, *Nlrp3*, and *Il1b*, and it is thought that something similar occurs in humans [32].

Other studies have reported increase in gene expression of oxidative phosphorylation and ribosome genes and decrease in expression of genes coding proteins participating in the WNT and MAPK signaling pathways in adipose tissue in response to exercise, which is recommended to persons with risk of developing metabolic alterations and obesity [33].

Another study in patients that underwent two steps bariatric surgery (BS) separated by 12 months indicated an increased expression of cell death-inducing DFFA-like effector A (CIDEA) and LPIN1. Both genes are involved in the formation of lipid droplets in fat depots in response to significant weight loss as well as after treatment with the PPARγ agonist rosiglitazone [34]. Adequate triacylglycerides (TG) deposition in adipose tissue is necessary to prevent fatty acid overload in skeletal muscle and liver [35]. Another gene associated with TG metabolism whose

expression is augmented in adipose tissue of patients that underwent loss weight due to laparoscopic gastric banding surgery is the gene *PNPLA3*. This gene negatively correlated with BMI, fasting glucose, and fasting insulin and encodes a triacylglycerol lipase that mediates triacylglycerol hydrolysis in adipocytes and has been associated with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) [36]. It has been demonstrated that Lpin-1 expression levels in adipose tissue correlate with a favorable metabolic profile and expression of fatty acid oxidation genes [37]. Those two genes correlate positively with whole-body insulin sensitivity [34]. The same study observed that expression of the genes associated with metabolic reactions involved in NAD+ (NMNAT2) and glutathione (NNT) is significantly increased in adipose tissue depots after surgery-induced weight loss. This can explain the better response toward ROS which is observed after BS [34]. Another distinctive observation was the modulation of expression of genes associated with branched chain amino acid metabolism (*BCAT1* and *BCAT2*). Both genes participate in the catabolism of chain branch amino acids (BCAA) whose levels increase in plasma from obese patients.

In animal models with rats which underwent Roux-en-Y gastric bypass (RYGB), the improvement of metabolic parameters was accompanied by a decrease in the expression of *NLRP3* and other inflammation-related genes (*IL-6*, *MCP-1*, *IL-18*, caspase-1, and apoptosis-associated speck-like protein) in omental fat [38]. This observation straightens the role of inflammation in the downregulation of glucose homeostasis. This coincides with the observations of diabetes remission accompanied with an improvement of inflammation, insulin resistance (IR), and other relevant parameters reported in diabetic patients that underwent the same surgery [39].

In adipose tissue of diabetic patients, similarities with the gene expression profile of obese individuals were found. Decrease in the expression of genes related to oxidative phosphorylation (carbohydrate, amino acid, and lipid metabolism) and an increase in expression of genes involved in inflammation and glycan degradation were found [40]. Among all the differentially expressed genes, *ELOVL6*, *GYS2*, *FADS1*, *C12orf39*, *SAA1*, *STOX1*, *CASQ2*, *AGPAT9*, *FADS2*, and *B4GALT6* show a lower expression in diabetic patients, while *SPP1 (OPN)*, *TM4SF19*, *MMP9*, *CCL18*, *PRG4*, *IL1RN*, *PLA2G7*, *MSR1*, *VSIG4* and *LGI2* show a higher expression in diabetic compared with nondiabetic patients [40]. This same study reported that the most regulated pathways in diabetic patients are genes participating in the amino acid metabolism, carbohydrate metabolism, lipid metabolism, and energy metabolism, and some basal transcription factors are downregulated, while genes in the glycan biosynthesis, immune system, and signaling molecules pathways were upregulated [40]. These results in gene expression are very similar to the profiles described with diet, BMI, IR, exercise, and bariatric surgery. This shows the strong relationship between T2D, bad dietary and exercise habits, and the increase in risk factors.

Pancreas

The pancreas is an endocrine gland which has important roles in glucose homeostasis. It has the capacity of producing hormones such as insulin, glucagon, somatostatin, and pancreatic polypeptide but also secretes other enzymes involved in digestion. This gland contains specialized cells such as β-cells, α-cells, and γ-cells, PP cells, and epsilon cells; each can secrete certain hormones. Failure in the functions of this gland leads to the development of type 1 and 2 diabetes. T1D is characterized by a complete ablation of insulin secretion, while T2D is characterized by partial impairment of insulin secretion and insulin resistance that worsens with time. In this chapter, we will focus on the review of gene expression changes that occur in human pancreas when T2D develops.

Although pancreas is a highly specialized organ, one study indicates that only 0.7% of all the genes coded in the genome are enriched in pancreas. This represents approximately 146 genes, but its expression accounts for up to 68% of all the mRNA found in pancreas. A significant quantity of these expressed genes is secreted proteins and involved in digestive metabolism. Forty three additional genes mainly associated with neuroendocrine functions were enriched specifically in Langerhans islets [41]. Some of the genes that show the most elevated expression of mRNA are shown in Table 10.1.

The same study found that gene expression in β-cells is responsive to inflammatory cytokines. When exposed to proinflammatory molecules, 20% of the transcripts showed modification in expression levels [41]. Many of these regulated transcripts were related to apoptosis and inflammation. This is highly relevant since diabetes is characterized by the development of low-grade chronic inflammation which provides a proinflammatory environment in several tissues. Inflammation is accompanied by a decrease in the production of insulin which in turn may be secondary of β-cell death. This is in agreement with observations that T2D patients have a reduced β-cell mass, partially due to an increased apoptosis rate which is the results of factors such as gluco- and lipotoxicity and increase in inflammatory cytokines. It has been reported that during the evolution of T2D, the pancreatic stone protein/regenerating protein (PSP/reg) is upregulated in β-cells, and its levels correlated with the duration of diabetes. This protein is related to islet cell regeneration and diabetogenesis [42]. Another gene whose product participates in the regulation of

Table 10.1 Genes whose expression is most elevated in the islets of Langerhans

Gene	Description	Function
INS	Insulin	Lowering blood glucose
GCG	Glucagon	Elevating blood glucose
SST	Somatostatin	Regulation of endocrine system
PPY	Pancreatic polypeptide	Regulation of pancreatic and gastrointestinal functions
NKX6-1	NK6 homeobox 1	Transcription regulation in β-cells
PAX6	Paired box 6	Development and differentiation of α-cells
NPTX2	Neuronal pentraxin II	Excitatory synapse formation
SCG5	Secretogranin V (7B2 protein)	Regulation of secretory pathways
SCGN	Secretagogin, EF-hand calcium binding protein	Calcium influx and cell proliferation
GAD2	Glutamate decarboxylase 2 (pancreatic islets and brain, 65 kDa)	Autoantigen in diabetes
PTPRN	Protein tyrosine phosphatase, receptor type, N	Autoantigen in diabetes
IAPP	Islet amyloid polypeptide	Inhibition of insulin-stimulated glucose utilization and glycogen deposition
CFC1	Cripto, FRL-1, cryptic family 1	Embryonic development
FAM159B	Family with sequence similarity 159, member B	Unknown
RBPJL	Recombination signal binding protein for immunoglobulin kappa J region-like	Putative transcription factor
RGS9	Regulator of G-protein signaling 9	Regulation of dopamine/opioid signaling

Adapted from [41]

β-cell apoptosis is *MST1* which under diabetologic conditions is transcribed and translated. Its activation leads to the ubiquitination of the important transcription factor PDX1 and induces the mitochondrial-dependent pathway of apoptosis. Downregulation of *PDX1* has an impact in the expression of insulin and *GLUT2* [43]. The potential of the transcription factor Pdx1 to induce the differentiation of acinar cells into β-cells was tested by creating transgenic mouse where *Pdx1* expression was inducible. The result was the generation of endocrine precursor cells which migrate into the pancreatic islets and differentiate into insulin-, somastatin-, and PP (pancreating polypeptide)-producing endocrine cells [44]. Thus, deregulation of this transcription factor results in hyperglycemia worsening [45].

In β-cell fractions from diabetic patients, the expression of *UCHL1* (an important component of the deubiquitin system) is lower than in cells from nondiabetic individuals. This results in endoplasmic reticulum stress due to an additional reduction in proteasomal activity. Higher expression of the endoplasmic reticulum stress proteins *BIP*, *CHOP*, and *GADD34* was found in β-cell fractions from T2D patients which is in agreement with the observed reduction in β-cell function and survival described in diabetic patients [46]. Inflammatory cytokines produced during the development of T2D are other source of damage to the pancreas. It has been demonstrated that treatment of nondiabetic human islets with palmitate (saturated fatty acid associated with cardiovascular risk) results in the development of an inflammatory response characteristic in T2D patients. This comprises the induction of chemokines and cytokines such as IL-1β, TNF-α, IL-6, IL-8, chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligand 1 (CXCL1), and chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 2 (CCL2). It is proposed that palmitate-induced NF-kB activation and signaling through IL-1β is key to the inflammatory process [47]. In addition, some data indicate that during fatty acid-induced β-cell apoptosis, NF-kB activation is responsible for the downregulation of *PGC-1α* expression which acts as a transcriptional coactivator in the regulation of energy metabolism genes [48].

One feature of T2D is an abnormal lipid profile. Particularly, lipotoxicity due to exposure to saturated fatty acids is a predictor of development of insulin resistance and T2D. Chronic exposure to palmitate, the most common saturated fatty acid, impairs β-cell function in part by inhibition of the expression of the insulin gene [49]. However, this is not the only gene whose expression is altered due to continuous exposure. Pathway analysis showed upregulation of genes belonging to functions such as cell death, cellular movement (mainly chemokines), cellular development, gene expression, and lipid metabolism, while downregulated genes correspond to categories of cellular movement, cell morphology, lipid metabolism, molecular transport, and small molecule biochemistry. Palmitate inhibited expression of important transcription factors in β-cells such as *PDX1*, *PAX4*, *PAX6*, *FOXA2*, *MAFA*, *MAFB*, and *NEUROD1* [50]. PDX1 and PAX4 have important roles in development and maintaining pancreatic islet function [43, 51], and SNPs in these genes have been associated with maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY) [52]. Mutations in *PAX6* cause abnormal glucose metabolism by deregulating the proinsulin processing via modulation of *PC1/3* production which is a protein cleaving enzyme [53]. *FOXA2* and *FOXA1* are major regulators of glucose homeostasis, the first by controlling the expression of glucagon, *MAFB*, and the ATP-sensitive channel KIR6.2 which controls insulin secretion in β-cells [54]. Other observations indicate that alleviation of hyperglycemia in mouse models is beneficial for the expression of the transcription factors *Pdx1* and *Mafa* and their targets insulin 1, glucose transported (*Slc2a2*), and Glp-1 receptor (*Glp1r*) in islets [55].

Palmitate inhibited expression of other genes associated with T2D (*ASB9*, *GLRA1*, *MIA2*, *PRSS35*, *RAB15*, *RASGRP1*, *SEMA6D*, *TBC1D4*, *TSPAN4*, *TSPAN8*, *KCNK16*, *ADCY5*, *ADRA2A*, *TP53INP1*, *CDC123*, *PRC1*, *TCF7L2*, *GLIS3*, *HNF1B*, and *SLC30A8*). On the contrary, palmitate upregulated the expression of *LOC388022*, *C2CD4A*, *ADAMTS9*, and *SPRY2* [50, 56–58]. Islets exposed to palmitate also showed a reduction of proteasome activity, lower stimulated insulin secretion, and higher caspase activity [46, 57]. To counteract the negative impact of lipotoxicity in β-cell survival, they have evolved a mechanism in which the enzyme prohormone convertase 1/3 (*PC1/3*) is upregulated. This enzyme is key in the processing of proglucagon into GLP-1 peptides in α-cells which is able to enhance cell survival through its interaction with its receptor GLP-1R [59, 60].

Hall[57] found that a short exposure of islets to palmitate have an impact in the expression of genes in the glycolysis/gluconeogenesis, pyruvate metabolism, and biosynthesis of unsaturated fatty acid pathways. Downregulation of several genes that are part of the respiratory chain was described too. This may have a negative impact in ATP production and insulin secretion [57]. Palmitate also has an impact on the overall methylation of DNA which has been demonstrated to have a close correlation with gene expression [57]. In fact, studies comparing DNA methylation between diabetic and nondiabetic T2D donors have identified candidate genes that influence insulin secretion which is a hallmark of T2D. Hypermethylation of CpG sites was found in 853 genes. Some of those are demonstrated T2D susceptibility genes such as *TCF7L2*, *FTO*, and *KCNQ1*. From the differentially methylated genes, *CDKN1A*, *PDE7B*, *SEPT9*, and *EXOC3L2* also showed differential expression in islets from T2D and nondiabetic donors. Overall, the study found that many of the hypermethylated regions that showed difference between T2D and nondiabetic donors are located in the intergenic regions, around the transcription start site (TSS) and the 3′UTR region. It is worth to notice that several of the SNPs associated with T2D that have been found in GWAS are located in intergenic regions where silencers or enhancers are regularly placed. This may be an indication of a link between these variants, methylation of DNA and gene expression [61].

Alterations in epigenetic regulation influence insulin secretion as well. Previous studies have shown that epigenetic regulation in islets from T2D patients leads to a lower expression of *PPARGC1A* which results in decreased insulin secretion [62]. Other genes that have been associated with a decrease in insulin secretion are *CHL1*, *LRFN2*, *RASGRP1*, *PPM1K*, *TSPAN33*, *NT5E*, *TMED6*, and *PAK7* [63].

T2D is characterized by an increase in glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1c) which is an indicator of historic glucose levels in the patients. Thus, HbA1c values are a good indicator of noncontrolled T2D and indirectly could be related to pancreatic function. To date, efforts to identify variants associated with HbA1c allow explaining only a small portion of the increase in HbA1c, but gene expression analysis comparing islets from diabetic and nondiabetic patients has allowed identification of ten genes which in conjunction can explain 24% of the variance in HbA1c. These genes are *JAZF1*, *CHL1*, *LRNF2*, *RASGRP1*, *ABCC8*, *RASGRF1*, *KLHDC5*, *ELAVL4*, *KCNJ11*, and *SLC2A2* [50]. This is highly significant since a detailed study of the function of these few genes may render clues on the pathophysiology of T2D.

No protein-coding genes have been implicated in pancreatic damage as well. Multiple studies have demonstrated that long noncoding RNAs (lncRNAs) have a role in gene regulation, mainly by controlling the transcription of protein-coding genes in *cis*. These transcripts are synthetized by the cell, but they do not contain any protein-coding sequence. When ill-regulated, they are associated with pathogenic roles. Particularly, it has been shown that expression of the lncRNA *KCNQ1OT1* is increased, while *HI-LNC45* is decreased in T2D islets. *HI-LNC45* regulates the expression of the transcription factor *GLIS3* which contains variants in the gene body that are associated with T2D. *GLIS3* is mutated in a form of monogenic diabetes as well [64]. *GLIS3* can regulate the expression of *MAFA*, *INS2*, and *GLUT2* and inhibit glucose oxidation and insulin secretion and is involved in the development of β-cells and modulates pancreatic β-cell apoptosis [65]. On the other hand, *KCNQ1OT1* is involved in the silencing of the *KCNQ1* gene which has variants associated with T2D, gestational diabetes, and glucose levels [66–68]. The conserved long noncoding RNA *βlinc1* is able to regulate hormones such as insulin and somatostatin as well as a number of nearby islet-specific transcription factors needed for the proper development and function of Langerhans islets [69]. Although lncRNAs are regulators of other genes, it has been demonstrated that some lncRNA genes are subjected to epigenetic modifications and transcriptional regulation as well [70]. microRNAs (miRNAs) have also been associated with transcriptional regulation of several genes in pancreas. This double layer of gene regulation may reflect its importance of such genes in the right function of processes such as insulin production and secretion, differentiation and proliferation, and apoptosis and survival.

Skeletal Muscle

The skeletal muscle is considered the major site of glucose uptake in the organism, approximately 75% of glucose uptake after a meal occurs and is metabolized in the skeletal muscle where insulin play a key role. In normal conditions,

insulin binds to the insulin receptor (IR) which is self-phosphorylated and activates the signaling pathway which results in the glucose transporter 4 (GLUT4) translocation to the membrane. The presence of GLUT4 in the membrane is required to transport glucose into the cells of organs with sensitivity to insulin such as skeletal muscle and adipose tissue. However, T2D is characterized by a phenomenon called insulin resistance which is characterized by the loss of the insulin capacity to trigger the glucose uptake into the cells, despite normal or high serum insulin concentrations. Multiple pathways have been described to contribute to the pathogenesis of insulin resistance: alterations in the insulin signaling, mitochondrial oxidative metabolism and ATP production, fatty acid oxidation, proinflammatory signaling, as well as modifications in β-cell development and metabolism.

It is known that T2D is a multigenic disease and involves changes in the expression of several genes in different biological pathways. For this reason, the transcriptomic analysis has been useful to identify gene expression profiles on specific tissues that are related to the pathogenesis of this disease to predict possible complications or provide new therapeutic targets for the treatment of T2D. However, due to the large list of genes that are reported to change their expression in T2D and that the gene expression can vary depending of several factors such as diabetes model, ethnicity, age, gender, pharmacological treatment, stage of diabetes, etc., it is difficult to interpret the results obtained by transcriptomic studies. In Table 10.2, we summarized the most commonly expressed genes in skeletal muscle, arranged by metabolic pathway, from studies with diabetic patients or murine models of diabetes [71–76].

Carbohydrate Metabolism Most of the studies in gene expression of skeletal muscle have found an impaired expression of important genes involved in transport of glucose, insulin pathway, and metabolism of glucose, for example, insulin receptor substrate-1 (*IRS1*), glycogen synthase (*GYS1*), uncoupling protein 3 (*UCP-3*), GLUT4 (*SLC2A4*), hexokinase II (*HK2*), phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (*PI3K*), mitogen-activated protein kinase (*MAPK*), and serine-threonine kinase (*AKT*). Although several of these genes have showed changes in their expression in T2D in previously studies, none has emerged as the leading candidate for causing diabetes. Several authors have proposed that the study of coordinated pattern of gene expression could be more useful to identify the mechanisms involved in the pathogenesis of the disease and to propose potential new targets for therapy of diabetes.

Lipid Metabolism The metabolism in skeletal muscle in T2D involves an increased demand of fatty acid oxidation for its energy needs when glucose is not available. This alteration in lipid metabolism has been related to accumulation of lipids in skeletal muscle, a key mechanism involved in insulin resistance development. The expression profiles observed in different studies on skeletal muscle samples from human or murine models of diabetes were controversial; some of them agree with a significant increase in the mRNA for proteins involved in the fatty acid oxidation pathways, whereas some others described a significant decrease on the same genes. Similar discrepancies were found on the expression of β-oxidation pathway genes.

An altered lipid metabolism is also present in obesity, which has been considered one of the main factors related to insulin resistance and T2D development. In this regard, the fat mass and obesity-associated gen (*FTO*), a well-characterized gene associated with the increase in obesity risk in GWAS, is expressed in tissues related to metabolic diseases, including skeletal muscle and adipose tissue. However, there are many inconsistences when the *FTO* expression in adipose tissue is related to obesity. On the other hand, some gene polymorphisms in the *FTO* gene have been associated with T2D in several populations, and their expression was related to defects in glucose and lipid metabolism in skeletal muscle and adipose tissue. In a study where the *FTO* expression in skeletal muscle from obese nondiabetic subjects was compared with T1D and T2D patients, it was found that in T2D patients, *FTO* increase their expression at mRNA and protein levels, whereas the expression in obese nondiabetic subjects and T1D patients was unchanged. To probe the specific actions of *FTO* expression, it was overexpressed in myotubes, resulting in decrease expression of oxidative phosphorylation and antioxidant genes, increased lipid accumulation, and increased oxidative stress, similar to what was observed in diabetic skeletal muscle, suggesting that FTO may contribute to the muscle alterations observed in T2D. Interestingly, *PGC-1α* gene was downregulated in diabetic patients, as was reported previously, but *FTO* overexpression did not modify the expression of *PGC-1α* in human myotubes [77].

Mitochondrial Function It is important to note that despite the differences in experimental methods and ethnicity in the analyzed subjects from several studies, they agree that there is a significant decrease in the expression of genes involved in mitochondrial function. These studies in muscle biopsies from diabetic patients have reported a decrease of multiple components of the mitochondrial respiratory chain and, mainly, the oxidative phosphorylation (OXPHOS) pathway. Mitochondrial OXPHOS is an important source of reactive oxygen species (ROS) such as superoxide anions, hydrogen peroxide, and hydroxyl radicals that are formed by products of cellular metabolism. The ROS have been implicated in the development of insulin resistance. Interestingly, patients

Table 10.2 Summary of genes with altered expression in skeletal muscle samples from diabetic patients or animal models of diabetes

Gene	Description	Function	Expression
Carbohydrate metabolism			
SLC2A4	Solute carrier family 2 member 4 (GLUT4)	Glucose transport into the cells	↓
INSR	Insulin receptor	Insulin pathway	↓
AKT1	Serine/threonine kinase	Insulin pathway	↓
IRS-1/2	Insulin receptor substrate 1/2	Insulin pathway	↓
PIK3	Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase	Insulin pathway	↓
GYS1	Muscle glycogen synthase	Glucose storage	↓
PTPN11	Protein tyrosine phosphatase, non-R type 11	Insulin pathway	↓
MAPK 4, 8, 12	Mitogen activated protein kinases	Insulin pathway	↓
PKC-ζ	Protein kinase C (PKC)-ζ	GLUT4 translocation	↓
HK2	Hexokinase II.	Phosphorylates the glucose after uptake by the cell	↓
FBP2	Fructose-1,6 bisphosphatase 2	Glucose metabolism	↑↓
Lipid metabolism			
FABP1	Fatty acid transporter type 1	Regulates the uptake of long chain fatty acids to muscle cells	↑
LIPE	Hormone sensitive lipase	Contributes to increase the pool of nonsterified fatty acids in the cytosol	↑↓
LPL	Lipoprotein lipase	Hydrolyses triglycerides	↑↓
MGLL	Monoglyceride lipase	A key enzyme in triglyceride hydrolysis	↑↓
ACADM	Acetyl-CoA dehydrogenase	It is a rate-limiting enzyme catalyzing the first dehydrogenation of fatty acids	↑
ETFB	Electron transfer flavoprotein-β	It is an electron acceptor protein for many dehydrogenases in the mitochondria	↑
ECI	Δ^3, Δ^2-enoyl-CoA isomerase	Required for β-oxidation of unsaturated fatty acids	↑↓
SCD	Stearoyl-CoA desaturase	A rate-limiting enzyme in unsaturated fatty acid synthesis	↓
LOC51706	Cytochrome b_5 dehydrogenase.	A rate-limiting enzyme in unsaturated fatty acid synthesis	↓
OXCT1	Succinyl-CoA:3-oxoacid-CoA transferase.	A rate-limiting first step in extra hepatic metabolism of ketone bodies	↓
PPARα	Peroxisome proliferator activated receptor α	Lipid metabolism	↓
Mitochondrial function			
PKM	Pyruvate kinase	Protein involved in glycolysis	↓
PDHA	Pyruvate dehydrogenase	Catalyzes conversion of pyruvate to acetyl-CoA and CO_2	↓
ATP5B	ATP synthase, H+ transporting, mitochondrial F1 complex, beta polypeptide	Synthesis of ATP	↓
SLC25A4	Solute Carrier family 25 member 4	Involved in ADP/ATP flux between cytosol and mitochondria	↓
PGC1α.	PPARγ coactivator 1α	Transcriptional coactivator that regulates genes involved in energy metabolism	↓
PGC1β.	PPARγ coactivator 1 β	Transcriptional coactivator that regulates genes involved in energy metabolism	↑↓
UCP3.	Uncoupled protein 3	Mitochondrial protein expressed mainly in skeletal muscle, participate in the fatty acid metabolism	↓
SOD2	Superoxide dismutase 2	Mitochondrial protein with antioxidant properties	↓
NDUFB2	NADH dehydrogenase-ubiquinone 1 beta subcomplex, 2	Electron transport chain	↓
NDUFB5	NADH dehydrogenase-ubiquinone 1 beta subcomplex, 5	Electron transport chain	↓
NDUFC2	NADH dehydrogenase-ubiquinone 1, subcomplex, 2	Electron transport chain	↓
SDHB.	Succinate dehydrogenase cytochrome b subunit	Electron transport chain	↓
NNT	Nicotinamide nucleotide transhydrogenase	NADPH production and involved in the antioxidant system	↓
UQCRC2	Ubiquinol-cytochrome c reductase core protein II	Electron transport chain	↓
HSP70	Heat shock protein 70	Involved in protein folding process	↑↓
NRF-1	Nuclear respiratory factor 1	Transcription factor	↓

The arrows represent up (↑)- or down (↓)-regulated genes, whereas the red arrows (↑↓) are controversial results observed between published works [71–76]

without T2D but with a family history of diabetes have a decrease expression in genes of OXPHOS pathway, suggesting that alterations in gene expression of this pathway could be related to the initial steps for T2D development [76].

Most of the genes involved in OXPHOS pathway are encoded in the nuclear genome, and their expression is regulated by transcription factors. Particularly, the expression of the nuclear respiratory factor-1 (NRF-1) has demonstrated a key role in diabetes. In skeletal muscle from diabetic patients, the expression of the nuclear respiratory factor-1 (NRF-1) was decreased as well as genes regulated by the NRF transcription factor family. The promoter region from several OXPHOS genes has been reported to contain binding sites for NRF-1, suggesting that this gene contributes to the diabetes-related expression pattern in diabetes. In this regard, NRF-1 has been proposed as an important gene that modulates mitochondrial biogenesis, respiratory capacity, and the glucose transporter protein GLUT4 [76].

In addition, the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor (PPAR) gamma coactivator-1 (*PGC-1α*) gene has been proposed as a master regulator of mitochondrial gene expression that mediates the oxidative phosphorylation expression phenotype in prediabetic and diabetic patients. The PGC-1α is a transcriptional regulator that does not bind directly to the DNA but influence transcription by interacting with other transcription factors, modifying the chromatin or altering protein-protein interactions within the transcriptional complex. In diabetes, PGC-1 not only activates NRF but also PPARα, PPARγ, hepatocyte nuclear factor 4, and other transcription factors critical for the metabolic function [76, 78]. Interesting, members of the PGC-1 family, PGC-1α and PGC-1β had a significantly reduction on their expression that correlates with a decrease in OXPHOS genes expression in patients with T2D [79]. On the contrary, when the PGC-1α was overexpressed in a muscle cell line, an upregulation of OXPHOS genes were observed in a time-dependent manner [78].

Role of Insulin in Gene Expression The changes in glucose metabolism observed in T2D are related to insulin resistance, which has been proposed as one of the initial steps related to T2D development. Insulin is a hormone released by the pancreas, specifically by β-cells, which has an extensive capability to regulate gene expression. Some paper indicate that insulin action in skeletal muscle may modify the expression of around 800 genes related to signal transduction, vesicular traffic and cytoskeletal function, and fuel metabolic pathways [80, 81]. These effects have been related with changes on at least 70 transcription factors related to insulin response. Some of them that stand out are *RRAD*, *IGFBP5*, *INSIG1*, and NGF1-B (*NR4A1*), which were upregulated in L6 skeletal muscle cells [81].

As was mention before, the action of insulin on gene expression is very important to regulate genes on specific metabolic pathways. To determine the direct contribution of insulin on the altered expression in T2D, the group of Yechoor et al. analyzed the gene expression profiles on a muscle insulin receptor knockout mice (MIRKO) and compared it to controls (Lox-controls) under three different conditions: (1) at basal state, (2) after streptozotocin (STZ)-induced diabetes, and (3) after STZ-induced diabetes rendered euglycemic with insulin treatment. The results obtained demonstrated that insulin action has a role in maintaining basal expression levels in 1% of the genes in comparison to 4% of genes that are altered in diabetes. Although insulin is not associated with these changes at basal state, it was observed that insulin receptor is required to reverse the effects induced by diabetes. Suggesting that the presence of an intact insulin-signaling system is needed to return its expression toward normal [75]. This phenomenon was also observed in humans where at early stages of T2D, high serum insulin levels are commonly observed and were related to an increase in the expression of insulin pathway genes, possibly as a mechanism to compensate elevated serum levels of glucose. However, this compensatory effect is lost in people with T2D where the expression of insulin signaling molecules is reduced [72].

Liver

The liver is an important organ that participates in the homeostasis and metabolism of glucose. Hepatic glucose metabolism includes glucose transport, glycolysis, gluconeogenesis, glycogen synthesis, and glycogenolysis. In fed state, the liver synthesizes and stores glycogen in response to insulin stimulation, whereas, in fasting state, the liver activates the gluconeogenesis and releases glucose in response to glucagon stimulation. An imbalance in the metabolism of hepatic glucose has been related to the T2D development, where hyperglycemia correlates with hepatic insulin resistance.

The hepatic glucose homeostasis is maintained by many enzymes involved in hepatic glucose metabolism that have been proposed as potential targets in diabetes, for example, glucokinase (*GCK*) the key enzyme of glycolysis, fructose-1,6-biphosphatase (*FBP1*), phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase (*PCK1* and *PKC2*), and glucose 6-phosphatase (*G6PC*) control key points in the gluconeogenesis pathway. Glycogen phosphorylase (*PYGL*) is a rate-limiting enzyme of glycogenolysis [82]. G6PC and GCK act in opposition to regulate the intracellular levels of free glucose. An increased ratio of G6PC/GCK promotes a glucose efflux to the bloodstream, whereas a decreased ratio causes glucose influx. The GCK activity has been reported to decrease in patients with T2D. A

decrease of 60% in *GCK* expression has been observed in diabetic subjects with HbA1c > 7.0, which also correlates negatively with Hb1Ac and fasting glucose, suggesting an important dysregulation of hepatic *GCK* expression in diabetes [83]. On the other hand, in fasting conditions, normoglycemia is maintained by hepatic gluconeogenesis, controlled by rate-limiting enzymes such as *FBP1*, *PCK1*, and *G6PC* that are regulated by insulin. An alteration in gluconeogenesis is observed in T2D. It has been related to an increased expression of *FBP1*, *PCK1*, and *G6PC* due to the incapacity of insulin to suppress their expression due to hepatic insulin resistance.

It has been described that transcriptional activation of *PCK* requires the coactivation of the glucocorticoid receptors and the liver-enriched transcription factor hepatic nuclear factor-4α (*HNF4A*) by *PGC-1α* [84]. The *PGC-1α*, as mentioned before, is a key regulator of the OXPHOS-related genes in other tissues such as skeletal muscle, producing a downregulation of the OXPHOS pathway in T2D. On the contrary, several genes in the OXPHOS pathway appear to be upregulated in liver from diabetic patients (Table 10.3). However, no correlation was observed between the expression of *PGC-1α* and the upregulation of genes involved in OXPHOS in the liver of patients with T2D [85].

Like OXPHOS pathway, other metabolic pathways have been shown to differ in their expression pattern when compared with other insulin-sensitive tissues. For example, several genes co-expressed in the liver, skeletal muscle, and adipose tissue related to glycolysis/gluconeogenesis, fatty acid beta oxidation, tricarboxylic acid cycle, and electron transport chain pathways are downregulated in skeletal muscle and in adipose tissue but are upregulated in liver from diabetic patients [74].

The lipid metabolism is well known to be altered in diabetic liver. Interestingly, none of the expression enzymes related to fatty acid metabolism, including fatty acid oxidation, fatty acid synthesis, and fatty acid storage, were downregulated in the liver of diabetic mice. On the contrary, enzyme genes involved in fatty acid oxidation (*CPT1a*, *CPT2*, *EHHADH*, ACOT2, *ACOT3*, *ACOT4*, *ACOT5*, *ACOT6*, and *PPARα*) and fatty acid storage (*ELOVL6*, *SCD1*, *GPAT*, *DGAT1*, and *DGAT2*) were significantly upregulated, whereas the enzyme genes involved in fatty acid synthesis (*ACLY* and *FASN*) showed no significant changes. In addition, genes related to fatty acid transport (*CD36* and *SLC27a2*) were also upregulated in the liver of diabetic mice, showing that enhanced fatty acid transport is consistent with the increased expression of enzyme genes in fatty acid storage. These data suggest that diabetes enhances liver fatty acid oxidation, which has been reported to stimulate gluconeogenesis and suppress glycolysis. In this sense, it was reported that key enzymes in glycolysis such as pyruvate kinase, phosphofructokinase, and glucokinase enzyme activity and mRNA expression are decreased in diabetes. However, in the liver of diabetic mice, non-changes in pyruvate kinase or phosphofructokinase expression were observed. On the contrary, the *PKLR* gene that encodes the rate-limiting enzyme pyruvate kinase was significantly upregulated, suggesting an increased glycolysis activity in the liver. But this enhanced glucose consumption is not sufficient to decrease the hepatic glucose levels because gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis were also enhanced to produce more glucose [82].

On the other hand, the inflammation is one important factor that leads to diabetes. Surprisingly the downregulated genes found in diabetic mice liver were mainly enriched in immune-related process, such as adaptive immune response and lymphocyte-mediated immunity. However, the results showed that besides inflammatory signaling, another hepatic immune-related pathway is also correlated to T2D. For example, the downregulated genes in diabetic mouse liver were also enriched in pathways related to cancer, hepatitis, adenovirus infection, and liver tumor. These data are consistent with previously reported data that reported an increase in the frequency of hepatitis B and C virus infection in diabetic patients. That is in line with the association of hepatitis with T2D. Furthermore, epidemiological studies have reported that liver cancer is increased in diabetic patients; however, the biological mechanism is still unknown [82].

Table 10.3 OXPHOS genes upregulated in patients with T2D [85]

Gene	Description	Function
NDUFA6	NADH: ubiquinone oxidoreductase subunit A6	Electron transport chain
SDHC	Succinate dehydrogenase complex subunit C	Electron transport chain
UQCRB	Ubiquinol-cytochrome c reductase binding protein	Electron transport chain
COX4i1	Cytochrome c oxidase subunit 4i1	Electron transport chain
ATP5B	ATP synthase, H+ transporting, mitochondrial F1 complex, beta polypeptide	ATP synthesis

Whole Blood Gene Expression in T2D

Studies of gene expression in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) have identified changes in more than 1000 genes which are differentially expressed in diabetic patients. Those genes were grouped according to their function, and changes in profile expression of several signaling pathways were observed when compared with subjects without diabetes.

The most important pathways altered in T2D patients were OXPHOS, MAPK, electron transport chain pathways,

Table 10.4 Genes expressed in WBC, adipose tissue, liver, and skeletal muscle related to the progress of T2D

Gene	Description	Function
FABP5	Fatty acid binding protein 5	Protein involved in the fatty acid uptake, transport, and metabolism has been associated with development of insulin resistance and T2D in obesity
CFD	Complement factor D	Serine peptidase protein secreted by adipocytes that has been implicated with insulin secretion in mice
PC-1	Ectonucleotide pyrophosphatase/phosphodiesterase 1	Transmembrane protein that acts as an inhibitor of the insulin pathway and has been related to insulin resistance
UCP3	Uncoupling protein 3	Mitochondrial protein expressed mainly in skeletal muscle, it participates in the fatty acid metabolism and has been observed a decrease in their expression in patients with T2D

fatty acid metabolism, inflammatory response, and DNA repair [84, 86]. However, some of the altered genes were involved among two or more biological process, such as *RELA*, *UCP3*, *STAT5B*, *PLD2*, *PSEN2*, *IL17A*, and *CRCP* (upregulated genes involved in inflammation, response to hypoxia and oxidative stress, and fatty acid response), as well as *ARNT*, *CAT*, and *MDH2* (downregulated genes implicated in response to oxidative stress, DNA repair, and response to hypoxia) [86]. Interestingly, the pathways involved in stress response, such as MAPK, TNF signaling, apoptosis, and mTOR signaling, were significantly altered after glycemic control [84].

The ceramide and adipocytokine signaling pathways were significantly upregulated in T2D patients, probably as a result of the presence of obesity in the patients. In the case of ceramides, they are lipids related to structural components of the cell membrane. However, an increase of ceramide production has been associated with different stress stimuli such as inflammatory mediators, heat, UV radiation, hypoxia, chemotherapeutics, and oxidative stress. High levels of ceramides are involved to the inhibition of AKT/PKB, resulting in insulin resistance. It suggests an important link between obesity and diabetes. In addition, the adipose tissue releases several factors including FFA and proteins called adipocytokines (TNF-α, IL-6, and resistin) that control various metabolic functions. Those adipocytokines and the proinflammatory cytokines secreted by the macrophages residing in adipose tissue have been related to insulin resistance development. This phenomenon occurs by the activation of JNK and NF-κB pathways that impair the insulin action by interfering with the insulin binding to its receptor [86]. In this sense, genes related to the JNK pathway were coordinately upregulated by diabetes; however, after glycemic control a downregulation in this pathway was observed. The gene expression of JNK genes was also significantly correlated to fasting glucose levels and HbA1c. It suggests that the upregulation of the JNK genes in the PBMCs may be associated with hyperglycemia. In this regard, diabetes and hyperglycemia have been related to oxidative stress which causes activation of the JNK pathway by endoplasmic reticulum stress in pancreatic β-cells and hepatocytes. Besides, JNK activation suppresses insulin biosynthesis and impairs insulin action.

On the other hand, the OXPHOS pathway was significantly downregulated in diabetes. However, it was not altered by glycemic control. The altered expression in OXPHOS pathway was correlated with neither fasting glucose nor HbA1c. It suggests that OXPHOS may predict the existence of diabetes, because it was coordinately downregulated in PBMCs of patients with T2D but was not altered by glycemic control. These data are in agreement with the profile expression observed in skeletal muscle and adipose tissue, where the OXPHOS is one of the main pathways that suffer alteration in gene expression in diabetes [84].

To compare if the gene expression observed in WBC was related to the gene expression in insulin-sensitive tissues such as the liver, adipose tissue, and skeletal muscle, a microarray analysis was performed in OLETF rats. The results showed that more than 300 genes were differentially expressed in blood cells, and only 4 genes were related to the insulin-signaling pathway: *Pc-1*, *Sihps-1*, and *Grb2* were upregulated, and *Pten* was downregulated. In addition, 57 genes were concurrently expressed in the analyzed tissues with the adipose tissue showing the best correlation with WBC, sharing 41 genes. It was followed by the liver with 25 genes and 14 genes with the skeletal muscle. From these 57 genes, only 4 genes have been well related to the progress of T2D (Table 10.4) [87].

Whole Blood Gene Expression as a Possible Tool for Early Detection of T2D

The Otsuka Long-Evans Tokushima Fatty (OLETF) rat is an animal model of spontaneous type 2 diabetes.

This rat model of T2D is characterized by mild obesity with visceral fat accumulation and late-onset insulin resistance, it resembles human obese patients with type 2 diabetes.

The diagnosis of T2D is generally obtained by measuring fasting glucose levels, oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT), or percent of HbA1c. However, these methods do not determine the risk to develop T2D at early stages. The expression profile has been proposed as a very good tool to evaluate the risk to develop T2D. However, lack of samples from specific tissues makes difficult this kind of studies. It is not ethically

correct to obtain tissue samples from organs involved in the pathogenesis of the disease from healthy humans only for an early diagnosis. For this reason, recent studies have been focused to determine the expression profile on whole blood cells (WBC), which are very accessible. This is a tissue that may show the oxidative stress caused by high levels of glucose, insulin, free fatty acids, and tissue-derived circulating bioactive mediators.

The studies on WBC have demonstrated that gene expression profile in diabetes is different from other pathologies such as metabolic syndrome or coronary artery disease. Suggesting that gene expression profiles in WBC can be useful to identify the altered pathways involved in the pathophysiology of T2D and preclinical symptoms of T2D. Gene expression technology can also be used as a new diagnosis method that could predict the progression of the disease.

miRNAs in Blood Samples

Today it is widely recognized that not all the RNAs are traduced to proteins; there are noncoding RNAs named microRNAs (miRNAs). They are involved in gene regulation of specific target genes. The miRNAs are a class of 19–24 nucleotides of RNA, which mediate posttranscriptional gene silencing by binding to the 3′-UTR or open reading frame (ORF) region of target mRNAs. The involvement of miRNAs has been reported in several biological activities including cell proliferation, cell differentiation, cell migration disease initiation, and disease progression [88]. Increased levels of specific miRNAS have been associated with a variety of diseases including cancer, obesity, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease. In the case of diabetes, several studies have reported that miRNAs play a critical role in glucose homeostasis and T2D pathogenesis, because a vast number of miRNAs are implicated in pancreatic development (miR-124a, miR-15a/b, miR-192, miR-375), insulin secretion (miR-9, miR-124a, miR-375), glucose transport (miR-29a/b), and β-cell dysfunction (miR-124a). In addition to the hyperglycemia, miRNAs also participate in the inflammatory response, vascular endothelial damage, and fibrosis processes that are involved in T2D complications. There is evidence that demonstrate that T2D complications are associated with miRNA dysregulation in various target tissues, especially the brain, eyes, nerves, and kidneys. For example, the miR-133 highly expressed in diabetic hearts has been associated with long QT syndrome and cardiac hypertrophy, whereas upregulation of miR-192 has been implicated in diabetic nephropathy [89].

In addition to the expression of miRNAs in tissues, they are expressed in many biological fluids such as saliva, urine, breast milk, and blood where its expression is stable. They are found packed into exosomes or microvesicles and as extracellular miRNAs that are loaded into high-density lipoprotein (HDL) or bound to an argonaute protein (AGO2) outside of the vesicles. These conformations protect the miRNAs from degradation and confer them stability in those fluids. The work published by Wang et al. [90] investigates whether there were differences in the serum miRNA expression profiles between T2D patients with or without diabetic microvascular complications, in comparison with nondiabetic patients. The results showed that serum miRNA expression profiles varied among diabetic patients and the healthy group. From the 754 miRNAs evaluated in the array, 25 miRNAs were upregulated, and 118 were downregulated in the 2 T2D patient groups compared with the nondiabetic controls. The validation analysis showed that five miRNAs (showed in Table 10.5) were significantly increased in both T2D patients with and without complications relative to healthy controls. Furthermore, those five miRNAs were higher in T2D patients with complications than in those who were free of complications [90].

Table 10.5 Significantly upregulated miRNAs found in T2D patient groups in comparison with nondiabetic group [90]

miRNAs	Diabetic complication
miR-661	Regulation of insulin biogenesis and the SNAIL-triggered epithelial to mesenchymal transition that has been related to microvascular complications
miR-571	Chronic liver disease by their participation in fibrogenic and inflammatory process in the liver Contribute to kidney fibrosis that is related to diabetic nephropathy
miR-770-5p	Retinopathy and neurological diseases
miR-892-b	Retinopathy and neurological diseases
miR-1303	Tumor/cell cycle-related miRNAs

Recently, a study in adipose tissue of Dicer KO mice (AdicerKO) demonstrated that miRNAs released to the circulation can act by regulating gene expression in other tissues. For example, the miR99b produced and released to the circulation by the adipose tissue was responsible to modulate the expression of the fibroblast growth factor 21 (FGF21) gene in adipose tissue, as well as in the liver, muscle, and pancreas, suggesting that miRNAs secreted by the adipose tissue may act at paracrine and endocrine levels [91]. Interestingly, the Dicer KO mice used in this study showed an alteration in glucose levels and insulin resistance. Thus, the miRNAs released by the adipose tissue may affect the glucose metabolism possibly by their influence in insulin-sensitive tissues.

To summarize, the publications reviewed propose that miRNAs detected in the circulation can be used as potential noninvasive biomarkers for various diseases, including T2D and its complications. However, more studies are necessary to validate this hypothesis.

Concluding Remarks

- Changes in the expression of several genes arise before phenotype changes are observed.
- Insulin resistance and insulin secretion are linked to modification of gene expression in pancreas, liver, adipose tissue, and muscle.
- Inflammation, oxidative phosphorylation, carbohydrate and lipid metabolism, and mitochondrial function are distinctive pathways that are deregulated during T2D progression.
- Gene regulation in distant organs can be achieved by secreted hormones as well as micro RNAs.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Two transcription factors that participate in the regulation of adipocyte differentiation.
   (a) PPARγ and C/EBPα (Both molecules coordinately regulate the expression of many 100 of genes responsible for establishment of the mature adipocyte phenotype)
   (b) FOXO1 and HIF1
   (c) PDX1 and PGC-1α
   (d) FOXO1 and PDX1
   (e) HIF1 and PDX1
2. One role of NOD-like receptors in adipocytes of obese individuals is:
   (a) Decrease the expression of inflammation-related genes
   (b) Induce adipocyte death by pyrosis (activation of caspase-1 leading to membrane breakdown and pro-inflammatory cytokine processing)
   (c) Increase lipid-uptake
   (d) Increase adipogenesis
   (e) Sense blood glucose
3. A main difference in the expression of inflammation-related genes in obese vs lean individuals is:
   (a) Inflammation-related gene expression is lower in obese than in lean individuals
   (b) Inflammation-related gene expression is the same in obese than in lean individuals
   (c) Inflammation-related gene expression is higher in obese than in lean individuals (this enhanced expression of inflammatory genes is linked to the development of insulin resistance)
   (d) Inflammation-related gene expression is not related to obesity
   (e) Inflammation-related gene expression is not relevant
4. Saturated fat consumption exerts the following effects in the pancreas:
   (a) Increases the expression of transcription factors such as PDX1 and PAX4
   (b) Positively regulates ATP production in the pancreas
   (c) It decreases the expression of insulin and induces apoptosis of β-cells (inflammation and saturated fat consumption inhibit the expression of important transcription factors in β-cells)
   (d) Induces macrophage recruitment
   (e) Triggers mechanism to protect from inflammation-induced damage
5. The most distinctive pathways deregulated in type 2 diabetes.
   (a) Inflammation, urea cycle, carbohydrate, lipid metabolism, and mitochondrial function
   (b) Inflammation, oxidative phosphorylation, carbohydrate metabolism, nucleotide metabolism, and mitochondrial function
   (c) Xenobiotics degradation, oxidative phosphorylation, nucleotide metabolism, lipid metabolism, and mitochondrial function
   (d) Inflammation, oxidative phosphorylation, carbohydrate, lipid metabolism, and mitochondrial function (Deregulation of genes in these pathways has been observed in the main tissues associated with T2D)
   (e) Inflammation, oxidative phosphorylation, urea cycle, lipid metabolism, and polar amino acids
6. Which two genes are considered key regulators of the expression of OXPHOS pathway related genes?
   (a) *GLUT4* and *FTO*
   (b) *PGC1α* and *SOD2*
   (c) *NRF-1* and *PGC-1α* (downregulation of OXPHOS genes in diabetes is associated with low expression of NRF-1 and PGC1α genes)
   (d) *PGC-1β and IRS*
   (e) *PPARα* and *FASN*
7. How PGC-1α can influence gene transcription?
   (a) Direct binding to DNA and activate transcription in target genes
   (b) Interacting with other transcription factors such as *PPARα*, *PPARγ*, and *HNF4* (The *PGC-1α* is a transcriptional regulator that does not bind directly to DNA but influence transcription by interacting with other transcription factors including *NRF-1*, *PPARα*, *PPARγ*, and *HNF4*)
   (c) Activating directly specific sites of the RNA polymerase II increasing their affinity to DNA
   (d) Inhibiting the union site of the transcription factors in the DNA
   (e) Stabilizing mRNA and inhibiting its degradation

8. Besides of expression pattern in the OXPHOS pathway, what other pathways are downregulated in skeletal muscle and adipose tissue but upregulated in the liver of diabetic patients?
   (a) Fatty acid beta oxidation, tricarboxylic acid cycle, glycolysis/gluconeogenesis, and electron transport
   (b) Inflammation, urea cycle, carbohydrate, lipid metabolism, and mitochondrial function
   (c) Inflammation, carbohydrate metabolism, nucleotide metabolism, and mitochondrial function
   (d) Xenobiotics degradation, oxidative phosphorylation, nucleotide metabolism, lipid metabolism, and mitochondrial function
   (e) Fatty acid transport, urea cycle, glycogenolysis, insulin transport, and glucose uptake
9. What is the tissue with the best expression pattern correlation with whole blood cells in diabetes?
   (a) Skeletal muscle
   (b) Pancreas
   (c) Liver
   (d) Brain
   (e) Adipose tissue (adipose tissue and WBC share the expression of 41 genes, followed by the liver with 25, and skeletal muscle with 14)
10. What is the reason why miRNA detection in the bloodstream would be a potential risk marker of diabetes?
    (a) Because they are small noncoding RNAs that can be detected in blood samples
    (b) Because miRNAS are very stable to degradation in blood sample
    (c) Because miRNAs expression is increased in blood samples from DT2 patients
    (d) Because some miRNAs detected in the circulation are related to gene regulation in altered pathways in diabetes and diabetes complications
    (e) Because adipose tissue can release miRNAs to bloodstream

Correct Answers

1. (a) PPARγ and C/EBPα (Both molecules coordinately regulate the expression of many hundreds of genes responsible for establishment of the mature adipocyte phenotype)
2. (b) Induce adipocyte death by pyrosis (Activation of caspase-1 leading to membrane breakdown and proinflammatory cytokine processing)
3. (c) Inflammation-related genes expression is higher in obese than in lean individuals (This enhanced expression of inflammatory genes is linked to the development of insulin resistance)
4. (c) It decreases the expression of insulin and induces apoptosis of β-cells (inflammation and saturated fat consumption inhibit the expression of important transcription factors in β-cells)
5. (d) Inflammation, oxidative phosphorylation, carbohydrate, lipid metabolism and mitochondrial function (Deregulation of genes in these pathways has been observed in the main tissues associated with T2D)
6. (c) *NRF-1* and *PGC-1α* (down regulation of OXPHOS genes in diabetes are associated with low expression of NRF-1 and PGC1α genes)
7. (b) Interacting whit other transcription factors such as *PPARα, PPARγ* and *HNF4*. (The *PGC-1α* is a transcriptional regulator that does not bind directly to DNA but influence transcription by interacting with other transcription factors including *NRF-1, PPARα, PPARγ* and *HNF4)*
8. (a) Fatty acid beta oxidation, tricarboxylic acid cycle, glycolysis/gluconeogenesis and electron transport
9. (e) Adipose tissue (adipose tissue and WBC share the expression of 41 genes, followed by the liver with 25, and skeletal muscle with 14)
10. (d) Because some miRNAs detected in the circulation are related to gene regulation in altered pathways in diabetes and diabetes complications

Glossary

3′-UTR region Untranslated regions (UTRs) at the 3′end of mRNA contain important sequences that are related to the regulation of gene translation. The 3′-UTR plays a critical role in the stability of mRNA and in posttranscriptional regulation.

Apoptosis Is a process of programmed cell death, which is considered to be important in several processes including normal cell turnover, development and function of immune system, hormone-dependent atrophy, embryonic development, and chemical-induced cell death. Human conditions such as neurodegenerative diseases, ischemic damage, autoimmune disorders, and many types of cancer are related to inappropriate apoptosis.

Bariatric surgery Is a surgical process employed to reduce weight in obese patients, by restricting the amount of food the stomach can hold, causing malabsorption of nutrients. The most common bariatric surgery procedures are gastric bypass, sleeve gastrectomy, adjustable gastric band, and biliopancreatic diversion with duodenal switch.

Damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) Are cell-derived molecules that can initiate and perpetuate immunity in response to trauma, ischemia, and other setting of tissue damage in the absence of overt pathogenic infection. DAMPs can be found into the nucleus and cytoplasm (HMGB1), cytoplasm alone (S100 pro-

teins), exosomes (HSP), extracellular matrix (hyaluronic acid), and in plasma such as complement (C3a, C4a, and C5a). Examples of nonprotein DAMPs include ATP, uric acid, heparin sulfate, RNA, and DNA. Increased levels of DAMPs are associated with inflammatory diseases such as sepsis, arthritis, atherosclerosis, systemic lupus erythematosus, Crohn's disease, and cancer.

Deacetylation Histones acetylation has been linked to transcriptional activation. The enzymes regulating the histone acetylation are the histone acetyltransferases (HATs). On the contrary, the deacetylation by histone deacetylases (HDACs) is related to transcriptional repression.

DNA hypermethylation DNA methylation is a heritable epigenetic mark that involves the covalent transfer of a methyl group to a cytosine ring of DNA. The methylation reaction is catalyzed by a family of DNA methyltransferases (DNMTs). DNA methylation is associated with decreased transcriptional activity.

Enhancer Is a DNA sequence that activators or transcriptional factors bind and increase gene transcription. Its location is variable in the gene; it can be present in the 5′-UTR, 3′-UTR, or into the coding region of the gene.

Epigenetics Epigenetics is the study of biological mechanisms that switch genes on and off. There are three major levels of epigenetic changes: (1) chemical modification at nucleotide level (DNA methylation and RNA interference), (2) modifications at histone level, and (3) nucleosome remodeling.

Glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1c) Is also known as glycated hemoglobin. The glycation of hemoglobin consists in a nonenzymatic interaction between glucose and the amino groups of the valine and lysine residues in hemoglobin. This interaction is irreversible and is a test that indicates the exposition of the proteins to glucose for the last 3 months.

Genome-wide association studies (GWAS) Are studies that identify DNA markers (SNPs) in the whole genome that are common to the human genome and to determine how these SNPs are distributed across different populations. GWAS are used to determine genetic risk markers associated with a disorder, for example, diabetes, obesity, hypertension, or cancer.

Knockout mice Is a model used in the laboratory in which a mouse has inactivated or "knocked out" an existing gene by replacing it or disrupting it with an artificial piece of DNA.

Maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY) Is a rare form of diabetes different from both type 1 and type 2 diabetes and runs strongly in families. It is caused by a mutation in a single gene.

OLEFT rats The Otsuka Long-Evans Tokushima Fatty (OLETF) rat is an animal model of spontaneous T2D. This rat model of T2D is characterized by mild obesity with visceral fat accumulation and late-onset insulin resistance. It resembles human obese patients with T2D.

Pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) Are derived from microorganisms and recognized by pattern recognition receptor (PPR)-bearing cells of the innate immune system as well as many epithelial cells. Major PAMPs are microbial nucleic acids, including DNA, double-stranded RNA (dsRNA), single-stranded RNA (ssRNA), and 5′-triphosphate RNA, as well as lipoproteins, surface glycoproteins, and membrane components (peptidoglycans, lipoteichoic acid, lipopolysaccharide, and glycosylphosphatidylinositol).

Promoter The promoters are sequences in the DNA that define the start point in the transcription of a gene.

Reactive oxygen species (ROS) Are radical and non-radical oxygen species formed by the partial reduction of oxygen, for example, superoxide anion (O_2^-), hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), and hydroxyl radical (HO•). They are generated endogenously by the oxidative phosphorylation process in the mitochondria or are produced from interactions with exogenous sources such as xenobiotic compounds.

Roux-en-Y gastric bypass (RYGB) Is often called gastric bypass and is considered the "gold standard" of weight loss surgery. This surgery consists to create a new stomach pouch, using a small portion of the stomach. The smallest stomach is connected directly to the middle portion of the small intestine (jejunum), bypassing the rest of the stomach and the upper portion of the small intestine (duodenum).

Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) Are a variation in a single position in a DNA sequence among individuals. This variation has to be present in almost 1% of a population to be considered as a SNP.

Streptozotocin (STZ)-induced diabetes Streptozotocin is a glucosamine-nitrosourea compound derived from *Streptomyces achromogenes*. STZ is employed to induce cellular damage specifically in β-cells, resulting in hypoinsulinemia and hyperglycemia.

Transcriptomic The transcriptome is the complete set of expression products transcribed from the genome in a specified tissue or populations of cells. Transcriptomic has emerged as a powerful technic that analyzes 1000 of genes in one sample using RNA microarrays. This technic has allowed the study of gene expression patterns on several tissues involved in the pathogenesis of the T2D and to identify genetic markers for the early diagnosis of T2D.

References

1. Kim AY, Park YJ, Pan X, Shin KC, Kwak SH, Bassas AF, et al. Obesity-induced DNA hypermethylation of the adiponectin gene mediates insulin resistance. Nat commun. 2015;6:7585.
2. Houde AA, Legare C, Hould FS, Lebel S, Marceau P, Tchernof A, et al. Cross-tissue comparisons of leptin and adiponectin: DNA methylation profiles. Adipocytes. 2014;3(2):132–40.

3. Wrann CD, Rosen ED. New insights into adipocyte-specific leptin gene expression. Adipocytes. 2012;1(3):168–72.
4. Liu CW, Yang SY, Lin CK, Liu HS, Ho LT, Wu LY, et al. The forkhead transcription factor FOXO1 stimulates the expression of the adipocyte resistin gene. Gen Comp Endocrinol. 2014;196:41–51.
5. Hoggard N, Cruickshank M, Moar KM, Bashir S, Mayer CD. Using gene expression to predict differences in the secretome of human omental vs. subcutaneous adipose tissue. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2012;20(6):1158–67.
6. Gustafson B, Hammarstedt A, Hedjazifar S, Hoffmann JM, Svensson PA, Grimsby J, et al. BMP4 and BMP antagonists regulate human white and beige adipogenesis. Diabetes. 2015;64(5):1670–81.
7. Muir LA, Neeley CK, Meyer KA, Baker NA, Brosius AM, Washabaugh AR, et al. Adipose tissue fibrosis, hypertrophy, and hyperplasia: correlations with diabetes in human obesity. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2016;24(3):597–605.
8. Laramie JM, Wilk JB, Williamson SL, Nagle MW, Latourelle JC, Tobin JE, et al. Multiple genes influence BMI on chromosome 7q31–34: the NHLBI family heart study. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2009;17(12):2182–9.
9. Wong JC, Krueger KC, Costa MJ, Aggarwal A, Du H, McLaughlin TL, et al. A glucocorticoid- and diet-responsive pathway toggles adipocyte precursor cell activity in vivo. Sci Signaling. 2016;9(451):ra103.
10. Zhong QQ, Wang X, Li YF, Peng LJ, Jiang ZS. Secretory leukocyte protease inhibitor promising protective roles in obesity-associated atherosclerosis. Exp Biol Med (Maywood). 2017;242(3):250–7.
11. Moreno-Navarrete JM, Ortega F, Serrano M, Rodriguez-Hermosa JI, Ricart W, Mingrone G, et al. CIDEC/FSP27 and PLIN1 gene expression run in parallel to mitochondrial genes in human adipose tissue, both increasing after weight loss. Int J Obes. 2013;38(6):865–72.
12. Sarkaria IS, Rizk NP, Grosser R, Goldman D, Finley DJ, Ghanie A, et al. Attaining proficiency in robotic-assisted minimally invasive esophagectomy while maximizing safety during procedure development. Innovations (Phila). 2016;11(4):268–73.
13. Campbell KL, Foster-Schubert KE, Makar KW, Kratz M, Hagman D, Schur EA, et al. Gene expression changes in adipose tissue with diet- and/or exercise-induced weight loss. Cancer Prev Res (Phila). 2013;6(3):217–31.
14. Pettersson AM, Acosta JR, Bjork C, Kratzel J, Stenson B, Blomqvist L, et al. MAFB as a novel regulator of human adipose tissue inflammation. Diabetologia. 2015;58(9):2115–23.
15. Tran MT, Hamada M, Nakamura M, Jeon H, Kamei R, Tsunakawa Y, et al. MafB deficiency accelerates the development of obesity in mice. FEBS Open Bio. 2016;6(6):540–7.
16. Gogebakan O, Osterhoff MA, Schuler R, Pivovarova O, Kruse M, Seltmann AC, et al. GIP increases adipose tissue expression and blood levels of MCP-1 in humans and links high energy diets to inflammation: a randomised trial. Diabetologia. 2015;58(8):1759–68.
17. Sindhu S, Thomas R, Shihab P, Sriraman D, Behbehani K, Ahmad R. Obesity is a positive modulator of IL-6R and IL-6 expression in the subcutaneous adipose tissue: significance for metabolic inflammation. PLoS One. 2015;10(7):e0133494.
18. Qatanani M, Lazar MA. Mechanisms of obesity-associated insulin resistance: many choices on the menu. Genes Dev. 2007;21(12):1443–55.
19. Moreno-Navarrete JM, Moreno M, Vidal M, Ortega F, Ricart W, Fernandez-Real JM. DBC1 is involved in adipocyte inflammation and is a possible marker of human adipose tissue senescence. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2015;23(3):519–22.
20. Gillum MP, Kotas ME, Erion DM, Kursawe R, Chatterjee P, Nead KT, et al. SirT1 regulates adipose tissue inflammation. Diabetes. 2011;60(12):3235–45.
21. Yin Z, Deng T, Peterson LE, Yu R, Lin J, Hamilton DJ, et al. Transcriptome analysis of human adipocytes implicates the NOD-like receptor pathway in obesity-induced adipose inflammation. Mol Cell Endocrinol. 2014;394(1–2):80–7.
22. Kim Y, Wang W, Okla M, Kang I, Moreau R, Chung S. Suppression of NLRP3 inflammasome by gamma-tocotrienol ameliorates type 2 diabetes. J Lipid Res. 2016;57(1):66–76.
23. Healy NP, Kirwan AM, McArdle MA, Holohan K, Nongonierma AB, Keane D, et al. A casein hydrolysate protects mice against high-fat diet induced hyperglycemia by attenuating NLRP3 inflammasome-mediated inflammation and improving insulin signaling. Mol Nutr Food Res. 2016;60:2421.
24. Ahmad F, Chung YW, Tang Y, Hockman SC, Liu S, Khan Y, et al. Phosphodiesterase 3B (PDE3B) regulates NLRP3 inflammasome in adipose tissue. Sci Rep. 2016;6:28056.
25. Zhang SY, Lv Y, Zhang H, Gao S, Wang T, Feng J, et al. Adrenomedullin 2 improves early obesity-induced adipose insulin resistance by inhibiting the class II MHC in adipocytes. Diabetes. 2016;65(8):2342–55.
26. Cho KW, Morris DL, DelProposto JL, Geletka L, Zamarron B, Martinez-Santibanez G, et al. An MHC II-dependent activation loop between adipose tissue macrophages and CD4+ T cells controls obesity-induced inflammation. Cell Rep. 2014;9(2):605–17.
27. Xiao L, Yang X, Lin Y, Li S, Jiang J, Qian S, et al. Large adipocytes function as antigen-presenting cells to activate CD4(+) T cells via upregulating MHCII in obesity. Int J Obes. 2016;40(1):112–20.
28. van Greevenbroek MM, Ghosh S, van der Kallen CJ, Brouwers MC, Schalkwijk CG, Stehouwer CD. Up-regulation of the complement system in subcutaneous adipocytes from nonobese, hypertriglyceridemic subjects is associated with adipocyte insulin resistance. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012;97(12):4742–52.
29. Olsson M, Olsson B, Jacobson P, Thelle DS, Bjorkegren J, Walley A, et al. Expression of the selenoprotein S (SELS) gene in subcutaneous adipose tissue and SELS genotype are associated with metabolic risk factors. Metabolism. 2011;60(1):114–20.
30. Lee YH, Tharp WG, Maple RL, Nair S, Permana PA, Pratley RE. Amyloid precursor protein expression is upregulated in adipocytes in obesity. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2008;16(7):1493–500.
31. Curtis JM, Grimsrud PA, Wright WS, Xu X, Foncea RE, Graham DW, et al. Downregulation of adipose glutathione S-transferase A4 leads to increased protein carbonylation, oxidative stress, and mitochondrial dysfunction. Diabetes. 2010;59(5):1132–42.
32. Monk JM, Liddle DM, De Boer AA, Brown MJ, Power KA, Ma DW, et al. Fish-oil-derived n-3 PUFAs reduce inflammatory and chemotactic adipokine-mediated cross-talk between co-cultured murine splenic CD8+ T cells and adipocytes. J Nutr. 2015;145(4):829–38.
33. Ronn T, Volkov P, Tornberg A, Elgzyri T, Hansson O, Eriksson KF, et al. Extensive changes in the transcriptional profile of human adipose tissue including genes involved in oxidative phosphorylation after a 6-month exercise intervention. Acta physiologica (Oxf). 2014;211(1):188–200.
34. Mardinoglu A, Heiker JT, Gartner D, Bjornson E, Schon MR, Flehmig G, et al. Extensive weight loss reveals distinct gene expression changes in human subcutaneous and visceral adipose tissue. Sci Rep. 2015;5:14841.
35. Puri V, Ranjit S, Konda S, Nicoloro SM, Straubhaar J, Chawla A, et al. Cidea is associated with lipid droplets and insulin sensitivity in humans. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(22):7833–8.
36. Wieser V, Adolph TE, Enrich B, Moser P, Moschen AR, Tilg H. Weight loss induced by bariatric surgery restores adipose tissue PNPLA3 expression. Liver Int. 2016;37(2):299–306.
37. Donkor J, Sparks LM, Xie H, Smith SR, Reue K. Adipose tissue lipin-1 expression is correlated with peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor alpha gene expression and insulin sensitivity in healthy young men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2008;93(1):233–9.
38. Mocanu AO, Mulya A, Huang H, Dan O, Shimizu H, Batayyah E, et al. Effect of Roux-en-Y gastric bypass on the NLRP3 inflammasome in adipose tissue from obese rats. PLoS One. 2015;10(10):e0139764.
39. Monte SV, Caruana JA, Ghanim H, Sia CL, Korzeniewski K, Schentag JJ, et al. Reduction in endotoxemia, oxidative and inflam-

matory stress, and insulin resistance after Roux-en-Y gastric bypass surgery in patients with morbid obesity and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Surgery. 2012;151(4):587–93.
40. Nilsson E, Jansson PA, Perfilyev A, Volkov P, Pedersen M, Svensson MK, et al. Altered DNA methylation and differential expression of genes influencing metabolism and inflammation in adipose tissue from subjects with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2014;63(9):2962–76.
41. Danielsson A, Ponten F, Fagerberg L, Hallstrom BM, Schwenk JM, Uhlen M, et al. The human pancreas proteome defined by transcriptomics and antibody-based profiling. PLoS One. 2014;9(12):e115421.
42. Yang J, Li L, Raptis D, Li X, Li F, Chen B, et al. Pancreatic stone protein/regenerating protein (PSP/reg): a novel secreted protein up-regulated in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Endocrine. 2015;48(3):856–62.
43. Pedica F, Beccari S, Pedron S, Montagna L, Piccoli P, Doglioni C, et al. PDX-1 (pancreatic/duodenal homeobox-1 protein 1). Pathologica. 2014;106(4):315–21.
44. Miyazaki S, Tashiro F, Miyazaki J. Transgenic expression of a single transcription factor Pdx1 induces transdifferentiation of pancreatic acinar cells to endocrine cells in adult mice. PLoS One. 2016;11(8):e0161190.
45. Ardestani A, Paroni F, Azizi Z, Kaur S, Khobragade V, Yuan T, et al. MST1 is a key regulator of beta cell apoptosis and dysfunction in diabetes. Nat Med. 2014;20(4):385–97.
46. Bugliani M, Liechti R, Cheon H, Suleiman M, Marselli L, Kirkpatrick C, et al. Microarray analysis of isolated human islet transcriptome in type 2 diabetes and the role of the ubiquitin-proteasome system in pancreatic beta cell dysfunction. Mol Cell Endocrinol. 2013;367(1–2):1–10.
47. Igoillo-Esteve M, Marselli L, Cunha DA, Ladriere L, Ortis F, Grieco FA, et al. Palmitate induces a pro-inflammatory response in human pancreatic islets that mimics CCL2 expression by beta cells in type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2010;53(7):1395–405.
48. He TT, Cao XP, Chen RZ, Zhu XN, Wang XL, Li YB, et al. Down-regulation of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma coactivator-1alpha expression in fatty acid-induced pancreatic beta-cell apoptosis involves nuclear factor-kappaB pathway. Chin Med J. 2011;124(22):3657–63.
49. Kelpe CL, Moore PC, Parazzoli SD, Wicksteed B, Rhodes CJ, Poitout V. Palmitate inhibition of insulin gene expression is mediated at the transcriptional level via ceramide synthesis. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(32):30015–21.
50. Taneera J, Lang S, Sharma A, Fadista J, Zhou Y, Ahlqvist E, et al. A systems genetics approach identifies genes and pathways for type 2 diabetes in human islets. Cell Metab. 2012;16(1):122–34.
51. Bonnavion R, Jaafar R, Kerr-Conte J, Assade F, van Stralen E, Leteurtre E, et al. Both PAX4 and MAFA are expressed in a substantial proportion of normal human pancreatic alpha cells and deregulated in patients with type 2 diabetes. PLoS One. 2013;8(8):e72194.
52. Jo W, Endo M, Ishizu K, Nakamura A, Tajima T. A novel PAX4 mutation in a Japanese patient with maturity-onset diabetes of the young. Tohoku J Exp Med. 2011;223(2):113–8.
53. Liu T, Zhao Y, Tang N, Feng R, Yang X, Lu N, et al. Pax6 directly down-regulates Pcsk1n expression thereby regulating PC1/3 dependent proinsulin processing. PLoS One. 2012;7(10):e46934.
54. Heddad Masson M, Poisson C, Guerardel A, Mamin A, Philippe J, Gosmain Y. Foxa1 and Foxa2 regulate alpha-cell differentiation, glucagon biosynthesis, and secretion. Endocrinology. 2014;155(10):3781–92.
55. Shimo N, Matsuoka TA, Miyatsuka T, Takebe S, Tochino Y, Takahara M, et al. Short-term selective alleviation of glucotoxicity and lipotoxicity ameliorates the suppressed expression of key beta-cell factors under diabetic conditions. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2015;467(4):948–54.
56. Cnop M, Abdulkarim B, Bottu G, Cunha DA, Igoillo-Esteve M, Masini M, et al. RNA sequencing identifies dysregulation of the human pancreatic islet transcriptome by the saturated fatty acid palmitate. Diabetes. 2014;63(6):1978.
57. Hall E, Volkov P, Dayeh T, Bacos K, Ronn T, Nitert MD, et al. Effects of palmitate on genome-wide mRNA expression and DNA methylation patterns in human pancreatic islets. BMC Med. 2014;12:103.
58. Guo S, Dai C, Guo M, Taylor B, Harmon JS, Sander M, et al. Inactivation of specific beta cell transcription factors in type 2 diabetes. J Clin Invest. 2013;123(8):3305–16.
59. Huang C, Yuan L, Cao S. Endogenous GLP-1 as a key self-defense molecule against lipotoxicity in pancreatic islets. Int J Mol Med. 2015;36(1):173–85.
60. Yang Y, Tong Y, Gong M, Lu Y, Wang C, Zhou M, et al. Activation of PPARbeta/delta protects pancreatic beta cells from palmitate-induced apoptosis by upregulating the expression of GLP-1 receptor. Cell Signal. 2014;26(2):268–78.
61. Dayeh T, Volkov P, Salo S, Hall E, Nilsson E, Olsson AH, et al. Genome-wide DNA methylation analysis of human pancreatic islets from type 2 diabetic and non-diabetic donors identifies candidate genes that influence insulin secretion. PLoS Genet. 2014;10(3):e1004160.
62. Ling C, Del Guerra S, Lupi R, Rönn T, Granhall C, Luthman H, et al. Epigenetic regulation of PPARGC1A in human type 2 diabetic islets and effect on insulin secretion. Diabetologia. 2008;51(4):615–22.
63. Fadista J, Vikman P, Laakso EO, Mollet IG, Esguerra JL, Taneera J, et al. Global genomic and transcriptomic analysis of human pancreatic islets reveals novel genes influencing glucose metabolism. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2014;111(38):13924–9.
64. Morán I, Akerman İ, van de Bunt M, Xie R, Benazra M, Nammo T, et al. Human β cell transcriptome analysis uncovers lncRNAs that are tissue-specific, dynamically regulated, and abnormally expressed in type 2 diabetes. Cell Metab. 2012;16(4):435–48.
65. Nogueira TC, Paula FM, Villate O, Colli ML, Moura RF, Cunha DA, et al. GLIS3, a susceptibility gene for type 1 and type 2 diabetes, modulates pancreatic beta cell apoptosis via regulation of a splice variant of the BH3-only protein Bim. PLoS Genet. 2013;9(5):e1003532.
66. Ao D, Wang HJ, Wang LF, Song JY, Yang HX, Wang Y. The rs2237892 polymorphism in KCNQ1 influences gestational diabetes mellitus and glucose levels: a case-control study and meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2015;10(6):e0128901.
67. Wang H, Miao K, Zhao J, Liu L, Cui G, Chen C, et al. Common variants in KCNQ1 confer increased risk of type 2 diabetes and contribute to the diabetic epidemic in East Asians: a replication and meta-analysis. Ann Hum Genet. 2013;77(5):380–91.
68. Thakur N, Tiwari VK, Thomassin H, Pandey RR, Kanduri M, Gondor A, et al. An antisense RNA regulates the bidirectional silencing property of the Kcnq1 imprinting control region. Mol Cell Biol. 2004;24(18):7855–62.
69. Arnes L, Akerman I, Balderes DA, Ferrer J. betalinc1 encodes a long noncoding RNA that regulates islet beta-cell formation and function. Gene Dev. 2016;30(5):502–7.
70. Arnes L, Sussel L. Epigenetic modifications and long noncoding RNAs influence pancreas development and function. Trends Genet. 2015;31(6):290–9.
71. Montoya-Morales DS, de los Angeles Tapia-Gonzalez M, Alamilla-Lugo L, Sosa-Caballero A, Munoz-Solis A, Jimenez-Sanchez M. Alterations of the thyroid function in patients with morbid obesity. Rev Med Inst Mex Seguro Soc. 2015;53(Suppl 1):S18–22.
72. Palsgaard J, Brons C, Friedrichsen M, Dominguez H, Jensen M, Storgaard H, et al. Gene expression in skeletal muscle biopsies from people with type 2 diabetes and relatives: differential regulation of insulin signaling pathways. PLoS One. 2009;4(8):e6575.
73. Sreekumar R, Halvatsiotis P, Schimke JC, Nair KS. Gene expression profile in skeletal muscle of type 2 diabetes and the effect of insulin treatment. Diabetes. 2002;51(6):1913–20.

74. Wang M, Wang XC, Zhao L, Zhang Y, Yao LL, Lin Y, et al. Oligonucleotide microarray analysis reveals dysregulation of energy-related metabolism in insulin-sensitive tissues of type 2 diabetes patients. Genet Mol Res. 2014;13(2):4494–504.
75. Yechoor VK, Patti ME, Saccone R, Kahn CR. Coordinated patterns of gene expression for substrate and energy metabolism in skeletal muscle of diabetic mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2002;99(16):10587–92.
76. Patti ME, Butte AJ, Crunkhorn S, Cusi K, Berria R, Kashyap S, et al. Coordinated reduction of genes of oxidative metabolism in humans with insulin resistance and diabetes: potential role of PGC1 and NRF1. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100(14):8466–71.
77. Bravard A, Lefai E, Meugnier E, Pesenti S, Disse E, Vouillarmet J, et al. FTO is increased in muscle during type 2 diabetes, and its overexpression in myotubes alters insulin signaling, enhances lipogenesis and ROS production, and induces mitochondrial dysfunction. Diabetes. 2011;60(1):258–68.
78. Mootha VK, Lindgren CM, Eriksson KF, Subramanian A, Sihag S, Lehar J, et al. PGC-1alpha-responsive genes involved in oxidative phosphorylation are coordinately downregulated in human diabetes. Nat Genet. 2003;34(3):267–73.
79. Patti ME. Gene expression in humans with diabetes and prediabetes: what have we learned about diabetes pathophysiology? Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care. 2004;7(4):383–90.
80. Rome S, Clement K, Rabasa-Lhoret R, Loizon E, Poitou C, Barsh GS, et al. Microarray profiling of human skeletal muscle reveals that insulin regulates approximately 800 genes during a hyperinsulinemic clamp. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(20):18063–8.
81. Wu X, Wang J, Cui X, Maianu L, Rhees B, Rosinski J, et al. The effect of insulin on expression of genes and biochemical pathways in human skeletal muscle. Endocrine. 2007;31(1):5–17.
82. Zhang F, Xu X, Zhang Y, Zhou B, He Z, Zhai Q. Gene expression profile analysis of type 2 diabetic mouse liver. PLoS One. 2013;8(3):e57766.
83. Haeusler RA, Camastra S, Astiarraga B, Nannipieri M, Anselmino M, Ferrannini E. Decreased expression of hepatic glucokinase in type 2 diabetes. Mol Metab. 2015;4(3):222–6.
84. Takamura T, Honda M, Sakai Y, Ando H, Shimizu A, Ota T, et al. Gene expression profiles in peripheral blood mononuclear cells reflect the pathophysiology of type 2 diabetes. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2007;361(2):379–84.
85. Misu H, Takamura T, Matsuzawa N, Shimizu A, Ota T, Sakurai M, et al. Genes involved in oxidative phosphorylation are coordinately upregulated with fasting hyperglycaemia in livers of patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2007;50(2):268–77.
86. Manoel-Caetano FS, Xavier DJ, Evangelista AF, Takahashi P, Collares CV, Puthier D, et al. Gene expression profiles displayed by peripheral blood mononuclear cells from patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus focusing on biological processes implicated on the pathogenesis of the disease. Gene. 2012;511(2):151–60.
87. Hayashi Y, Kajimoto K, Iida S, Sato Y, Mizufune S, Kaji N, et al. DNA microarray analysis of whole blood cells and insulin-sensitive tissues reveals the usefulness of blood RNA profiling as a source of markers for predicting type 2 diabetes. Biol Pharm Bull. 2010;33(6):1033–42.
88. Zhang J, Li S, Li L, Li M, Guo C, Yao J, et al. Exosome and exosomal microRNA: trafficking, sorting, and function. Genomics Proteomics Bioinformatics. 2015;13(1):17–24.
89. Tang X, Tang G, Ozcan S. Role of microRNAs in diabetes. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2008;1779(11):697–701.
90. Wang C, Wan S, Yang T, Niu D, Zhang A, Yang C, et al. Increased serum microRNAs are closely associated with the presence of microvascular complications in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Sci Rep. 2016;6:20032.
91. Thomou T, Mori MA, Dreyfuss JM, Konishi M, Sakaguchi M, Wolfrum C, et al. Adipose-derived circulating miRNAs regulate gene expression in other tissues. Nature. 2017;542(7642):450–5.

Suggested/Further Reading

Bugliani M, Liechti R, Cheon H, Suleiman M, Marselli L, Kirkpatrick C, et al. Microarray analysis of isolated human islet transcriptome in type 2 diabetes and the role of the ubiquitin-proteasome system in pancreatic beta cell dysfunction. Mol Cell Endocrinol. 2013;367(1–2):1–10. (This paper highlights the importance of the ubiquitin-proteasome system in beta cell dysfunction in human T2D).

Danielsson A, Ponten F, Fagerberg L, Hallstrom BM, Schwenk JM, Uhlen M, et al. The human pancreas proteome defined by transcriptomics and antibody-based profiling. PLoS One. 2014;9(12):e115421. (They employed genome-wide RNA sequencing to identify genes with elevated expression in pancreas).

Hayashi Y, Kajimoto K, Iida S, Sato Y, Mizufune S, Kaji N, et al. DNA microarray analysis of whole blood cells and insulin-sensitive tissues reveals the usefulness of blood RNA profiling as a source of markers for predicting type 2 diabetes. Biol Pharm Bull. 2010;33(6):1033–42. In this paper compare the expression pattern of different insulin sensitive tissues with RNA expression in blood samples from diabetic patients.

Hoggard N, Cruickshank M, Moar KM, Bashir S, Mayer CD. Using gene expression to predict differences in the secretome of human omental vs. subcutaneous adipose tissue. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2012;20(6):1158–67. This paper get light into the proteins that are secreted by adipose tissue and their putative role as signaling molecules.

Igoillo-Esteve M, Marselli L, Cunha DA, Ladriere L, Ortis F, Grieco FA, et al. Palmitate induces a pro-inflammatory response in human pancreatic islets that mimics CCL2 expression by beta cells in type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2010;53(7):1395–405. This paper highlights the role of saturated fatty acids in inflammation and its effect on beta cell.

Jenkinson CP, Göring HH, Arya R, Blangero J, Duggirala R, DeFronzo RA. Transcriptomics in type 2 diabetes: Bridging the gap between genotype and phenotype. Genomics Data. 2016;8:25–36. This paper described the importance of the transcriptome to identify genes related to diabetes development.

Patti ME. Gene expression in humans with diabetes and prediabetes: what have we learned about diabetes pathophysiology? Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care. 2004;7(4):383–90. This paper review about gene expression of genes related to diabetes pathogenesis.

Wang M, Wang XC, Zhao L, Zhang Y, Yao LL, Lin Y, et al. Oligonucleotide microarray analysis reveals dysregulation of energy-related metabolism in insulin-sensitive tissues of type 2 diabetes patients. Genet Mol Res. 2014;13(2):4494–504. In this paper compare the expression pattern of different insulin sensitive tissues from diabetic patients.

Wang C, Wan S, Yang T, Niu D, Zhang A, Yang C, et al. Increased serum microRNAs are closely associated with the presence of microvascular complications in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Sci Rep. 2016;6:20032. This paper focuses on the importance to study the miRNAs expression in blood circulation created to diabetes and vascular complications.

Yin Z, Deng T, Peterson LE, Yu R, Lin J, Hamilton DJ, et al. Transcriptome analysis of human adipocytes implicates the NOD-like receptor pathway in obesity-induced adipose inflammation. Mol Cell Endocrinol. 2014;394(1–2):80–7. This paper describes the role of NOD-like receptor pathway in adipose inflammation.

Jiang C, Qu A, Matsubara T, Chanturiya T, Jou W, Gavrilova O, Shah YM, Gonzalez FJ. Disruption of hypoxia-inducible factor 1 in adipocytes improves insulin sensitivity and decreases adiposity in high-fat diet-fed mice. Diabetes. 2011;60(10):2484–95.

The Immune System and Inflammation in Type 2 Diabetes

11

Rebeca García-Macedo

Chapter Objectives

- Obesity-associated inflammation as a major contributor toward the progression to IR and T2D.
- Relevance of adipocytes and some classes of immune cells in obese adipose tissue as mediators of inflammatory state.
- Several proinflammatory markers expressed by immune cells have been considered as potential risk factors for developing T2D.
- Anti-inflammatory therapeutic approaches to alleviate IR and T2D.

Introduction

This chapter focuses on immune cells participation during type 2 diabetes (T2D) development. Obesity is a major driver of T2D. However, obesity per se does not necessarily lead to T2D, but rather to individual differences regarding body composition, fat distribution, and adipose tissue (AT) function.

Most findings demonstrating the correlation between AT dysfunction and T2D have been observed on mouse models or obese subjects and/or those with impaired insulin sensitivity. It is also known that increasing overweight and obesity incidence have been linked to increasing amounts of T2D cases. It is a well-recognized fact that chronic low-grade inflammation is correlated to obesity-associated comorbidities. Furthermore, adipose tissue (AT) is an important immunologically active organ that contributes during inflammation processes.

R. García-Macedo (✉)
Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Centro Médico Nacional, Siglo XXI, Mexico City, Mexico

The development of T2D results from a combination of IR and pancreatic beta cell failure, thus resulting in hyperglycemia. A chronic activation of the innate immune system is associated with T2D, and there is evidence suggesting that both IR and beta cell failure are regulated by this inflammatory status in humans [1–3].

Some intervention studies have shown that therapies for obesity-induced T2D relying on immune markers include those approaches intended to increase insulin sensitivity by blocking the activity of inflammatory mediators, e.g., interleukin (IL)-1α, IL-1β, IL-6, tumor necrosis factor (TNF-α), and macrophage chemoattractant protein 1 (MCP-1) [4–6].

Increased adipocyte size is associated with a decreased population of precursor cells able to differentiate into adipocytes. Large adipocytes are more frequently found in subjects with impaired glucose tolerance and T2D in comparison to those with a similar degree of adiposity but with normal glucose tolerance. Impaired adipocyte differentiation appears to be one of the most important factors for T2D progression [1]. The presence of proinflammatory cytokines in blood hampers the capacity of the insulin receptor to convey signals within insulin-sensitive tissues.

Insulin has several functions in its target tissues including nutrient transport as well as the regulation of gene expression and energy homeostasis. It acts on a several target tissues and through many different intracellular signaling cascades. Elevated levels of intracellular free fatty acids (FFAs) may blunt the response toward insulin and its subsequent metabolic effects. The insulin receptor substrate (IRS)-1 is a key molecule in this signaling pathway and failure to activate it leads to systemic IR [7]. Inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α and IL-6 may induce an inhibitory phosphorylation of IRS-1. A similar response is achieved by activating the receptors of the innate immune system, such as the Toll-like receptors (TLR), or by the presence of intracellular molecules, e.g., lipids and reactive oxygen species (ROS). By interacting with their respective receptors, TNF-α and IL-6 activate the nuclear transcription factor κB (NFκB) and the Janus kinase (JNK), both of them important inflam-

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_11

mation activators. JNK is also activated by FFAs and endoplasmic reticulum stress. Interestingly, these factors are associated with obesity [8]. The regulator of cytokine function known as the suppressor of cytokine signaling (SOCS) inhibits insulin effects on IRS-1, either by interfering with tyrosine phosphorylation or by targeting IRS-1 for proteasomal degradation [9].

Ectopic lipid accumulation in the pancreas, concomitantly with a decreased activation of the insulin receptor in adipocytes, minimizes insulin production and impairs insulin-stimulated glucose transport, its anti-lipolytic effect, as well as lipoprotein lipase production and activity, whereas it increases the release of FFA and hampers pre-adipocyte differentiation. All these effects will lead to IR and T2D development, including cardiovascular diseases.

Types of Adipose Tissue

Systemic inflammation induced by obesity is predominantly originated at the AT. Mammalian body contains several types of fat reservoirs, classified as white and brown fat. White adipose tissue (WAT) is in turn classified as subcutaneous and visceral adipose tissue (VAT). The former stores the calorie surplus, and it may be further classified as upper and lower body obesity. On the other hand, VAT (omental and mesenteric) supplies energy to all organs. Subcutaneous AT predominates over VAT by a 3–4 factor [10].

WAT stores nutrients within a single large fat droplet. This tissue is one of the main endocrine organs in the organism. VAT is located in the abdominal cavity, it is the main source of chronic systemic inflammation, and it is of utmost importance for T2D establishment. When the perigonadal fat pads from obese mice fed with a high-fat diet (HFD) (a model of obesity-induced T2D) were removed, a significant decrease of glucose intolerance and IR was observed. The content of specific immune cells in VAT is modified when obesity develops [11–13].

Brown adipose tissue (BAT) is mostly found in newborn humans, even though adults possess small amounts of this type of fat. In spite that WAT and BAT share many metabolic features, the former stores energy, whereas the latter dissipates energy and produces body heat [14]. In BAT, the signaling mediated by the mammalian target rapamycin complex 2 (mTORC2) stimulates cold-induced glucose uptake and glycolysis [15].

Ectopic Fat Accumulation

Fat is accumulated in specific regions along the body when obesity develops. Normally, the abundance of AT is low in these zones.

Ectopic fat is defined as a triglyceride deposition within non-adipose tissue cells that normally contain small amounts of fat. Liver, skeletal muscle and pancreas contain an excessive lipid accumulation. In skeletal muscle, this fat accumulation is correlated with IR and cardiovascular disease [16].

Lipid accumulation in the liver and muscle is an early sign of T2D, whereas it has been shown to precede the suppression of glucose-mediated insulin production by the pancreas [17]. In cardiac tissue a lipid overload has been shown to produce a metabolic deregulation, and it may induce IR resulting in impaired glucose oxidation and, consequently, heart failure [18].

Epicardial Adipose Tissue

This specific tissue possesses some anatomical and metabolic features that distinguish it from other visceral fat depots, such as increased fatty acid metabolism and a transcriptome including genes associated with inflammation and endothelial functions. Some bioactive adipokines such as adiponectin, TNF-α, IL-1, IL-6, neural growth factor (NGF), and resistin, as well as FFA from epicardial AT, may impact on cardiovascular function and morphology. Therefore, they may directly contribute to cardiovascular complications and IR [19].

Perivascular Fat

The perivascular adipose tissue surrounding blood vessels is produced from vascular lamina adventitia in response to circulating factors and local stimuli. This fat tissue has been considered a largely passive structural support for arteries. Nevertheless, it can play an active role to regulate vascular tone and the release of adipocyte-derived vascular relaxing factors into the blood vessels [20].

Obesity, Acute, and Chronic Inflammation

Inflammation is a series of cellular and molecular responses in order to protect the body from infections or other insults. The inflammation process is continuous over a time period. Acute and chronic are terms used to describe different inflammation stages. This event is triggered by a stimulus, and, when it ceases, inflammation is attenuated. If it does not remain in the acute period, it becomes chronic.

When compared to acute inflammation induced by bacteria or viruses, chronic inflammation may be driven by an abnormal reaction toward the presence of endogenous factors, including metabolic factors as advanced glycation end products (AGES), modified lipoproteins, type 2 T helper cells (Th2), cytokines, hyperglycemia, and others [21–23].

Monocytes, one of the key cell types on the innate immune system, recognize the presence of these factors in the bloodstream, they migrate to the respective tissues, and they may recruit macrophages with pathological functions. Obesity-associated inflammation is characterized by an increased amount of macrophages and proinflammatory cytokines in the AT.

It has been shown that one type of monocytes (CD16+) was increased in patients with metabolic disorders, and it positively correlates with body mass index, insulin resistance, diabetes, and intima-media thickness. Conversely, when severe obese patients lose weight after being submitted to a bypass surgery, this type of monocytes decreases significantly [24, 25].

Inflammation is the response of living tissue towards injury. It involves a well-organized cascade of humoral and cellular changes within living tissue. Blood is the primary delivery system for inflammatory components such as adipokines TMF-α, IL-6, leptin, resistin and adiponectin.

Obesity and its associated metabolic pathologies such as IR, T2D, and atherosclerosis [26] are chronic and concomitant with inflammatory responses such as increased acute-phase reactants as the C-reactive protein (CRP); activation of inflammatory signaling pathways; high levels of circulating inflammation biomarkers as interleukin (IL)-6, IL-1β, and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1); and low adiponectin levels (an anti-inflammatory adipokine). The latter may predict the future establishment of T2D [27–31]. The inflammatory response is mainly located in adipose tissue, and it is triggered therein, although other tissues may be involved when T2D is developing.

In the AT, immune cells participate on tissue remodeling and homeostasis, and these roles are controlled by inflammation. AT is considered a complex endocrine tissue containing multiple cell types, including its precursors, vascular, immune, and neuronal cells. All of them contribute to the inflammatory response occurring in obesity. A nutrient excess promotes adipocyte expansion, resulting in its dysfunction. Cytokines, chemokines, and adipokines secreted by adipocytes induce immune cell accumulation in the AT and trigger local and systemic inflammation, being one of the causes contributing to IR [32, 33].

Type 2 Diabetes and Immune Cells

Immune function has been classified as innate and adaptive immunity. The former represents a rapid response toward some stimuli, and it is characterized by physical, chemical, and biological barriers, specialized cells, and soluble molecules. They occur in all individuals, regardless of their previous contact with harmful agents or immunogens, and they do not qualitatively or quantitatively change after contact [34].

The human leukocyte antigen (HLA) constitutes a system also known as the major histocompatibility complex MHC. This is a protein set derived from highly polymorphic genes linking innate and adaptive responses. The human genes are allocated in classes I, II, and III. Only those of classes I and II participate to present antigen proteins to T cells. All MHC molecules found on the cell's surface contain an associated peptide.

Those from class I possess one α-chain coded by the HLA-A, HLA-B, or HLA-C genes and a small non-variable chain: the β2-microglobulin. HLA class II possess two chains: α and β. HLA discriminates between intrinsic and foreign elements, and they ensure a suitable immune response in order to protect against external agents capable to generate an infection.

Adaptive or acquired immune response depends on the activation of specialized cells and the soluble molecules produced by them. The main features of the acquired response are memory, specificity and diversity of recognition, self-restraint, specialized response, and tolerance to the components of the organism itself. The cells that are mainly involved on the acquired immune response are lymphocytes. Antigen-presenting cells (APCs) play a key role during lymphocyte activation by presenting them with antigens bound to the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules [35]. Lymphocytes type T recognize antigenic fragments derived from pathogens that previously entered the cells, but only when are associated with the major histocompatibility complex proteins. In humans, the latter is termed the human leukocyte antigen (HLA). Concomitantly with the innate immune system signs, it triggers the T cell-mediated immune response.

Macrophages, neutrophils, dendritic cells, and natural killer (NK) cells are the main effectors of innate immunity. The central mechanisms of innate immunity comprise phagocytosis, the release of inflammatory mediators, activation of the complement system proteins, as well as synthesis of acute-phase proteins, cytokines, and chemokines. These are activated by specific stimuli, such as the lipopolysaccharides commonly found on the outer membrane of microorganisms.

AT is comprised of mature adipocytes (≈50%) and other cells (≈50%) from the stromal vascular fraction (SVF) that contains pre-adipocytes, fibroblasts, endothelial cells, and immune cells, e.g., macrophages [36–43].

After analyzing several adipose reservoirs, it was observed that immune cells represent approximately two thirds of the SVF, containing approximately 2–5 million cells/g of tissue [44]. In morbidly obese subjects, AT represents up to 50% of total body mass, and it is the main compartment of the immune system having an effect on systemic inflammation.

Cell populations within the AT display a plasticity that is regulated by both acute and chronic stimuli including body weight status, diet, feeding, and fasting [8, 36, 42, 45, 46]. Mice fed with a HFD recruit immune cells to AT in distinct time periods. It appears that neutrophils are recruited within 3 days and macrophages within 2 weeks, whereas B and T cells increase within 4 weeks [42].

Xu et al. (2003) and Weisberg et al. (2003) [36, 47] demonstrated that obesity and insulin resistance are concomitant with macrophages infiltrating the AT. In addition to these, other immune cell populations change in obese AT, and they affect insulin sensitivity. Some of them have an impact on inflammation by altering AT macrophage recruitment or activation. Lean AT also contains regulatory cells such as eosinophils and invariant natural killer (iNK) cells. These preserve tissue homeostasis by excreting type 2 cytokines, such as IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13, whereas they keep AT macrophages in an anti-inflammatory status (M2). When diet-induced obesity develops, AT homeostasis is disrupted, and a type 1 inflammatory response in VAT is engaged. This is characterized by the presence of interferon gamma (IFN-γ), a shift toward a proinflammatory profile (MI) by most of the recruited macrophages [48], and the loss of regulatory T cells (Treg) [49]. Further sections show the interrelation of major immune cells and obesity-related T2D.

Macrophages

In vertebrates, innate immunity greatly depends on myeloid cells as they engulf and destroy pathogens. Mononuclear phagocytes, macrophages derived from blood monocytes, and polymorphonuclear phagocytes are comprised within myeloid cells. Macrophages are distributed throughout the body, and in some cases, they are located within the parenchyma of some major organs (e.g., the heart, brain, lungs, and liver) adopting diverse morphologies such as spindle-shaped tissue histiocytes, Küpffer cells of hepatic sinusoids, and stellate microglial cells of the central nervous system. Macrophages are within the periphery of invasive organism or at the site where a chemical or biological insult occurs. As such, they are also involved on IR, T2D, and atherosclerosis development.

> Histiocytes are derived from the bone marrow; they circulate throughout the body to subsequently infiltrate some organs where they undergo differentiation into histiocytes (e.g., macrophage or dendritic cells).

In lean mice, approximately 10–15% of all cells express the macrophage marker F4/80+, whereas they constitute about 45–60% of cells in adipose tissues of obese animals. This indicates that obesity significantly modifies the macrophage/adipocyte ratio. Macrophages are normally located in lean AT in which they participate in normal remodeling; they are the primary source of TNF-α and significant amounts of inducible nitric oxide synthase and IL-6. Approximately 30% of the encoded proteins by the perigonadal AT genome are typical of macrophages. Nutrient overlap triggers AT remodeling and inflammation in this tissue. Macrophage-specific gene expression is markedly upregulated in WAT from obese mice. When diet-induced obesity occurs, this phenomenon precedes to an increase of circulating insulin levels [50].

The macrophage proportion on the SVF is estimated to increase from ≈10% in lean conditions to ≈40–50% in obese AT [51]. Furthermore, obesity induces a macrophage phenotype switch from M2 (producing anti-inflammatory cytokines as IL-10) to the M1 type (producing proinflammatory cytokines as IL-12, inducible nitric oxide synthase, and major histocompatibility complex class II). The latter is associated with IR in both mice and humans [48, 52, 53]. Endoplasmic reticulum stress or hypoxia may contribute to the M2-M1 transition of macrophages. In addition to increased inflammatory responses, the factors released by macrophages also modulate adipokine production, and they inhibit adipogenesis [51, 54, 55].

Infiltration of proinflammatory macrophages in association with obesity does not only occur in WAT but also on the skeletal muscle, bone (osteoclasts), liver (Küpffer cells), and pancreas. In the latter, they contribute to IR and to β-pancreatic cells dysfunction by activating inflammatory processes [56, 57]. During T2D development, macrophage recruitment seems to occur in several tissues, implying a general inflammation status rather than a WAT-specific inflammation.

Mast Cells

Mast cells contribute to antimicrobial defense by secreting granules rich in histamine, serine proteases, and cytokines, mainly TNF-α and IL-1β. These cells have a role in anaphylaxis and allergy. In obesity models fed with a HFD, mast cells are recruited to AT, and they contribute to inflammation,

whereas they participate in IR by secreting inflammatory cytokines [39, 58]. Mast cell deficiency in diet-induced obese mice protects from weight gain and IR, possibly because of a decrease of inflammatory cytokines, MCP-1, and matrix metalloprotease-9 in both VAT and serum [39]. Additionally, human mast cells cultured in vitro in presence of high glucose levels are activated and highly express proinflammatory cytokines, including TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6 [59]. Nevertheless, a recent work has presented contradictory conclusions regarding mast cell involvement in IR, as phenotypes may be more dependent on the Kit mutation used in those mouse models rather than a mast cell deficiency per se [60]. WAT obtained from morbidly obese patients displays a mast cell increase regardless of IR. Furthermore, mast cells do not contribute neither to inflammation caused by obesity, glucose intolerance, or IR, as these were observed on mast cell-deficient mice with diet-induced obesity [61].

Eosinophils

The stromal vascular fraction (SVF) of lean AT contains eosinophils, although they rapidly decline during obesity onset, as shown in a DIO model. In the lean state, eosinophils repress AT inflammation by producing IL-4, a key driver of alternative M2 macrophage polarization in order to preserve a "lean phenotype." When fed with a HFD, eosinophil-deficient mice exhibit a significant weight gain, impaired glucose tolerance, and IR. Conversely, transgenic mice engineered to content high eosinophil levels were protected against obesity and IR when a HFD was supplemented. This highlights the importance of eosinophils in order to prevent IR [43, 62].

Lymphocytes

A lymphocyte is a white blood cell that triggers an immune response when activated by a foreign molecule (antigen). The different T lymphocyte types are distinguished by a differential expression of their transmembrane proteins or co-receptors known as CD. T lymphocytes are generated in thymus, and they are responsible for cell-mediated immunity. They comprise innate (γδ T, NK) and adaptive immune (CD4+, CD8+ T lymphocytes, and B lymphocyte) cell subpopulations. CD4+ T lymphocytes are further subclassified as T helper (Th) type 1 (Th1) (they secrete IFN-γ and IL-2), Th2 (they secrete IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13), Th17 (a subset of Th CD4 cells that mainly express IL-17, IL-21, and IL-22), and T regulatory cells (Treg). Th cells display the CD28 co-receptor on its surface. Additionally, activated Th cells express a CD40 ligand on its surface, but not in their nonactivated form [63–66].

In adult animals, T and B lymphocytes in secondary lymphoid organs are comprised of a mixture of cells in at least three maturation stages. They are designated as virgin (or naïve cells), memory cells, and activated cells. When virgin cells are exposed to an antigen for the first time, some of them are stimulated in order to multiply and mature to become activated cells. These are defined as those cells engaged in a response (activated T cells carry out cell-mediated responses, or they secrete mediators, whereas activated B cells secrete antibodies).

During the inflammatory events occurring in obesity, IR, and T2D, some lymphocyte subpopulations display abnormalities. In patients undergoing T2D onset, IL-22(+) CD4(+) T cell populations were higher when compared to healthy individuals, and they may contribute to the early stages of the disease [67]. Proinflammatory γδ T, Th1, and CD8+ T cells were increased in response to a HFD, including a decrease of anti-inflammatory NK, Th2, and Treg cells [68–70]. Th1 and Th17 cells expressed the IFN-γ and IL-17proinflammatory cytokines, previously associated with IR [68, 71, 72]. In morbidly obese subjects, there was a selective increase of CD4+ T cells concomitant with increased IL-17 plasma levels [73]. Impaired activation of NK cell receptor has been also reported in patients diagnosed with T2D [41]. Differentiation of Treg and Th17-cell are events that often counteract each other, whereas Treg cells abundance is decreased in obesity.

When compared to lean conditions, CD8+ T cell proliferation was induced in vitro in the AT of obese subjects and the amount of CD4+ and CD8+ T cells increased in response to diet-induced obesity (DIO) to become the predominant lymphocytes in VAT. After the first weeks of DIO treatment, CD4+ T cells preserve a Th2 phenotype that contributes to inhibit VAT inflammation. CD8+ T cells promote macrophage recruitment mediated by MCP-1 production, and its deletion significantly decreases systemic inflammation and IR in mice submitted to DIO. T and NK cells are an important source of IFN-γ in VAT [37, 71, 74, 75].

Immune cells may increase glucose utilization during diabetes progression. Possibly they control their own activation and polarization in order to acquire proinflammatory phenotypes. For instance, T helper 17 (Th17) cells are dependent on glycolysis, and its inhibition shifts T cell differentiation from proinflammatory Th17 cells to anti-inflammatory Treg cells [76]. Similarly, glucose metabolism is required by mouse macrophages in order to secrete IL-1β [77].

The abundance of CD8+ effector T cells as well as that of proinflammatory macrophages infiltrating adipose tissues increased in mice receiving a HFD. Simultaneously, regulatory and CD4+ Th cell levels were decreased [49, 71]. In T2D patients the Treg/Th1 and Treg/Th17 ratios significantly decreased when compared to healthy controls. T2D patients with coronary heart disease (CHD) showed a significant

decrease of Treg/Th1 regarding T2D patients without a CHD diagnosis [78]. Subsequently, AT in obesity conditions exhibit some typical symptoms of chronic inflammation, thus leading to systemic IR, T2D, and cardiovascular diseases.

Cipolleta et al. (2012) [74] have shown that Treg cells in AT express high PPARγ levels. When mice receiving a HFD were treated with pioglitazone, a PPARγ agonist, the number of Treg cells increased in TA along with an inflammation decrease. In obesity conditions Treg may be critical regulators of immune cell components in the VAT. The evidence reveals that their modulation may represent a potential novel strategy to treat obesity-related metabolic disorders, such as IR and T2D.

B Cells

In mammals, B cells or B lymphocytes are produced in the bone marrow, and they secrete circulating antibodies. B cells are responsive to bacterial products such as lipopolysaccharide (LPS), and thus they are considered one of the first lines of defense against bacterial pathogens. Similar to T cells, B cells are comprised of different subsets with distinct surface phenotypes, functions, and cytokine secretion profiles. B cells may be classified into two broad types, B-1 or B-2 cells, based on their development, phenotypes, functions, and cytokine secretion profiles.

B-1 cells have been found in fatty tissues such as omentum, in the fat pads near the peritoneal cavity, and in mucosal tissues. B-1a cells are major producers of natural IgM antibody, and they are responsible for adaptive humoral immune responses toward T cell-independent antigens. In the steady state, there is constant B-1 cell trafficking between the peritoneal cavity and the abdominal VAT, such as the omentum [79, 80].

B cell populations infiltrate inflamed tissues such as VAT in mice fed with a HFD, and they subsequently undergo functional and phenotypic changes. B cell infiltration is thought to precede that of T cells into VAT. Once in there, they may regulate systemic and local inflammation, concomitant with antibodies and cytokines secretion. Similar to macrophages, B cells express the major histocompatibility complex II (MHCII), and they possess the ability to present antigens to T cells [47, 81].

B-2 cells produce several cytokines, and some populations are able to produce proinflammatory cytokines such as IFN-γ, IL-12, and TNF-α, whereas other populations produce IL-2, IL-4, and IL-13 [82]. More recently, the presence of regulatory B cells ("Breg" cells) that possess the ability to suppress inflammatory responses has been described [83]. One subset of these includes a type of B cells termed "B10" that produce a high amount of IL-10.

B cells may modulate T cell and macrophage polarization and cytokine production at multiple levels; thus they represent a potential attractive target for immune therapy to treat insulin resistance. During the early stages of the disease, the depletion of B cell co-receptor caused by a CD20 antibody induces a therapeutic and beneficial effect on glucose metabolism. Additionally, T cell activation was hampered, and both IFN-γ and TNF-α levels were decreased in VAT. Conversely, detrimental effects on metabolic disease are mediated by B cells by producing pathogenic IgG [84, 85].

Natural Killer T Cells

Natural killer (NK) T cells are a subtype of innate T lymphocytes, they exhibit both innate and adaptive features, and they mediate the consequent immune responses. NK cells are the body's sentinels searching for signs of cellular stress, activating the immune system in response to viral infection or oncogenic transformation. They recognize peptides presented by the MHC molecules. NK cells also recognize lipids presented by CD1d molecules. The latter is a non-polymorphic MHC class I-like molecule that is mainly expressed by dendritic cells (DCs) and other cell types. NK lymphocytes are classified into three groups, invariant (iNK), type II, and NK-like lymphocytes, based on their antigen specificity and the expression of their T cell receptor (TCR) [86].

NK cells are located within the AT. It has been recently shown that NK cells are associated with obesity and diabetes. In several obesity models and in obese patients, NK cells are increased, and they drive proinflammatory M1 macrophage polarization mediated by IFN-γ production, and subsequently they promote IR [87, 88].

When activated, NK cells promote the death of a target cell by releasing cytolytic granules [89]. NK cell activity is controlled by the balance of signals received from receptors on the cell's surface that convey either activating or inhibitory signals. Under normal physiological conditions, NK cell activation is inhibited by ligands expressed by healthy cells that engage the inhibitory NK receptors. In stressed cells the expression of these ligands is decreased leading to NK cell activation. Furthermore, diet-induced IR may be delayed by preventing NK cell activation using a soluble NK cell-activating receptor (NCR1). Mice fed with a HFD exhibit an increased number of NK cells concomitantly with an enhanced production of proinflammatory cytokines, particularly TNF-α in epididymal but not in subcutaneous fat depots. Additionally, NK cells are an important source of IFN-γ in VAT [71].

Invariant Natural Killer T

iNKT cells are a specialized subset of innate T cells highly abundant in the liver, and they are readily activated by lipid antigens. These cells are potent transactivators of other immune cells, and they serve as a bridge between innate and adaptive immunities. They are highly conserved in mam-

mals, they are part of human and murine AT, and they display a unique phenotype characterized by a surface marker. iNKT recognize glycolipids presented by CD1d, and they participate to preserve AT homeostasis through both immune and metabolic pathways. These cells have an anti-inflammatory role in VAT as they produce IL-4 and IL-13. In obese patients iNKT cells are decreased when compared to lean controls. This effect has been also observed in DIO and genetic obesity models. The activation of iNKT cells mediated by the lipid agonist α-galactosylceramide (αGC) led to macrophage polarization to a M2 phenotype, and it improved glucose sensitivity through anti-inflammatory cytokine signaling. Furthermore, the number of iNK cells is recovered after weight loss, whereas proinflammatory macrophage infiltration is decreased [90–93].

The decreased amount of iNKT cells in the liver of obese mice contributes to hepatic IR. Conversely, their increase in obese liver results in improved hepatic steatosis and glucose tolerance [94, 95].

Bendelac et al. (2007) point out that iNKT cells are linked to obesity-induced IR [96]. However, the role of iNKT cells during HFD-induced inflammation and IR is still controversial as previous reports showed that iNKT cells are not necessary to suppress the HFD-induced inflammation IR [75, 97].

iNKT cells are decreased in obesity, although their activation leads to improved glucose control, insulin sensitivity, and even weight loss, and they represent a therapeutic possibility to restore homeostasis in obese adipose tissue [98].

Dendritic Cells

There are three subpopulations of dendritic cells (DC): myeloid, CD4+, and CD8+. DCs play an important role for the transition between innate and adaptive immunity by presenting antigens to the T cell receptors (TRs) of CD4 Th cells via MHC II [99]. In AT of obese animals it has been observed a decrease of DC population. Dendritic cells isolated from AT of obese animals and humans may induce Th17 cell differentiation in vitro [40]. Murine adipose tissue contains a novel CD11c+ dendritic cell subset that is distinguished by an immature phenotype. AT from mice fed with a HFD contained an increased number of CD11c+ DCs and CD4+IL-17+T cells regarding lean controls. A link between CD11c+ DCs and AT inflammation caused by Th17 cells may exist in obesity conditions [100].

Markers of Inflammation

T2D as an inflammatory process is concomitant with increased levels of circulating proinflammatory immune mediators that lead to impaired insulin signaling and the selective destruction of insulin producing β-cells, a process in which cytokines play an important role. Generally, some of the inflammatory markers playing a pathogenic role in T2D are expressed in both adipocytes and immune cells. Among these are proinflammatory molecules as TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-4, IL-6, IL-18, resistin, and leptin. Anti-inflammatory molecules are also involved such as the IL-1 inhibitor or IL-1 receptor antagonist A (IL-1RA), transforming growth factor-β1 (TGF-β1), IL-10, and adiponectin [33, 101, 102].

Regarding the activation status of WAT macrophages, mice with DIO display a M2 to M1 shift, as previously indicated. The former is characterized by the expression of anti-inflammatory cytokines (e.g., IL-10, IL-1Ra), whereas the latter are distinguished by an elevated production of proinflammatory cytokines (e.g., TNF-α and IL-6) [102].

Some of the proinflammatory and anti-inflammatory proteins have been implicated in obesity, IR, and T2D, and their respective functions are described below.

The cytokines expressed by adipocytes and immune cells, such as TMF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6, either impair insulin signaling or induce β-cell apoptosis [103, 104]. TNF-α and IL-18 are considered potential risk factors for T2D development and its associated metabolic complications [105, 106].

TNF-α

TNF-α is a classical proinflammatory cytokine that actively participates during the development of obesity-related diseases. It is secreted by mature adipocytes, although it is also expressed by macrophages. It has been implicated in obesity and T2D development. The expression of TNF-α mRNA increases in AT reservoirs, and it correlates with IR, body mass index, percentage of body fat, and hyperinsulinemia. On the other hand, a short-term treatment with a TNF-α inhibitor decreased systemic inflammatory markers without improving insulin sensitivity in obese patients. Moreover, this cytokine is not increased in the serum of obese subjects who lost weight [107–109].

High TNF-α levels were also found in the AT from obesity experimental models: rat (fa/fa), mouse (ob/ob), and mice fed with a HFD. In obese fa/fa rats, the impairment of TNF-α expression increased insulin effect on glucose uptake. Similar results were observed in two murine obesity models: significantly improved insulin sensitivity was detected in animals lacking TNF-α or its receptors when compared to their obese wild-type counterparts. The mechanisms underlying insulin resistance mediated by TNF-α may involve the phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrate (IRS)-1 on its serine residues, as they inhibit normal phosphorylation of IRS-1 on tyrosine residues, thereby

blocking insulin signaling. In vivo studies with mouse models clearly show that inhibition of TNF-α function improves obesity-induced inflammation [110–112].

TNF-α contributes to the development of peripheral insulin resistance on AT and liver by stimulating lipolysis mediated by cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) and by stimulating the activity of the hormone-sensitive lipase. In WAT, TNF-α induces a decrease of lipoprotein lipase as well as GLUT-4 expression and activity. In liver, TNF-α stimulates the expression of genes involved in cholesterol and FA de novo synthesis, whereas it inhibits those genes involved in glucose uptake and metabolism as well as FA oxidation. The effects promoted by this cytokine on lipid metabolism result in high FFA plasma levels and fatty acid deposition in non-adipose fat reservoirs, including muscle. Therefore, they might contribute to IR observed in obesity [113, 114].

TNF-α-mediated processes may be involved in complications associated with T2D such as cardiovascular disease [115].

IL-1β

IL-1 family is a group of cytokines that play a central role to regulate immune and inflammatory responses. Additionally, other circulating inflammatory markers and high IL-1β levels have been reported on humans with IR [116].

IL-1β may drive sterile inflammation, and it is considered a metabolic disease initiator. Studies conducted on humans and animal have found that IL-1β or inflammasome (a complex required for the IL-1β secretion) is increased in metabolic diseases. Moreover, treatment with IL-1β antagonists can improve glycemia in T2D animal models and in adults diagnosed with the disease.

Human pancreatic β-cells are able to produce the proinflammatory cytokine (IL-1β) when cultured in presence of high glucose levels, thus impairing its function and inducing apoptosis. In a clinical trial, it was observed that the administration of an IL-1-receptor antagonist (IL-1Ra) improved glycemia on T2D patients [117, 118].

IL-1β interferes with insulin signaling in both adipocytes and hepatocytes, it suppresses insulin-induced glucose uptake, and it inhibits lipogenesis and decreases adiponectin release [119, 120]. Some contradictory results have been observed on beta cells as low IL-1β doses improve insulin secretion, enhance β-cell replication, and decrease β-cell apoptosis. Conversely, high IL-1β levels induced by high glucose and/or FFA levels have the opposite effects on islets [121]. These effects must be taken into account, as possible diabetes treatments using IL-1β blocking as a strategy may cause a severe abrogation of its signaling pathway that will have severe consequences and they may compromise insulin secretion even further in patients with severely damaged or destroyed beta cells.

Pancreas from T2D patients, but not from control subjects, expresses IL-1β. The treatment with the IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1Ra) improved beta cell insulin secretion in patients with T2D [122].

IL-6

IL-6 is a single polypeptide chain comprised of 185 amino acids; its molecular weight ranges from 21 to 28 kDa depending on its phosphorylation and glycosylation status. It is a pleiotropic cytokine secreted by a wide variety of cells: endothelial cells, β-pancreatic cells, keratinocytes, osteoblasts, myocytes, adipocytes, fibroblasts, activated leukocytes, monocytes, macrophages, and other cells, including a few tumor cells [123–125]. IL-6, expressed by type 2 T helper cell (Th2), specifically regulates the Th1/Th2 balance [126].

The main progression step toward T2D is insulin resistance, and it has been linked to increased circulating cytokine levels. One of them is IL-6, an inflammatory marker induced by TNF-α in cultured subcutaneous adipose cells. High IL-6 levels have been correlated with IR [127]. Additionally, IL-6 serum levels increase in T2D, in mice with DIO and in obese individuals [126, 128–131]. IL-6 is an important inflammation mediator, and it has an essential role during the acute phase of the inflammatory response by stimulating CRP synthesis in liver [130].

The basal circulating IL-6 levels are released from the subcutaneous AT in healthy humans, mainly from macrophages [131, 132]. The latter express higher amounts of TNF-α and IL-6 when compared to adipocytes in the AT of obese mice (ob/ob). These facts contribute to a chronic low-grade inflammation status in obesity [47].

IL-6 in obesity is generally considered to be a proinflammatory mediator, and it antagonizes insulin action by inhibiting insulin-stimulated glucose transport [127]. Mice deficient in IL-6 develop obesity that is associated with altered carbohydrate and lipid metabolism as well as leptin resistance, and it is partially reversed by a treatment with IL-6 [133].

IL-6 functions are consequence of its interaction with its receptor, comprised of the gp130 and IL-6R subunits. IL-6 may directly bind to this receptor complex, or it can bind to a soluble form of gp130 in order to be presented to cells expressing only IL-6R. In this regard, macrophages express high levels of this receptor. IL-6 bound to gp130 has an important participation for macrophage accumulation in AT [134, 135]. Conversely, IL-6-deficient mice develop late-onset glucose tolerance. IL-6 also stimulates the expression of the IL-4 receptor (IL-4R) on macrophages, thereby promoting M2 polarization. Thus, IL-6 appears to function as

anti-inflammatory mediator by preventing M1 macrophage formation in homeostasis. Therefore, IL-6 effects for T2D development seem to be time- and concentration-dependent [133].

The presence of IL-6 has been shown to correlate with a risk of vascular complications or mortality in T2DM, probably because of its participation regulating lipid metabolism and CRP production, both of them are known risk factors for cardiovascular disease (CVD) [131, 136]. IL-6 is also linked to risks of cardiovascular events only in T2D patients with renal dysfunction. In addition, IL-6 levels showed a significant correlation with macrovascular complications in T2D patients [137].

IL-6 mediates several steps during the activation of inflammatory responses by regulating proinflammatory cytokines synthesis. However, it also promotes that of anti-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-1Ra and IL-10 [138, 139]. Therefore, IL-6 exhibits dual properties.

An acute transient IL-6 increment along with other inflammatory markers also occurs during physical activity [140] concomitantly with their release. However, unlike sepsis and infection, an increase of proinflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α and IL-1β is not typical [141, 142]. Plasma IL-6 concentrations increased approximately 100-fold during exercise, and the extent of such increase depends on its duration and intensity [143]. In this case, the transient IL-6 increase does not have negative effects on tissues, and the endogenous upregulation of this cytokine in response to exercise improves insulin sensitivity.

IL-18

IL-18 is a member of the IL-1 cytokine family. It is produced by several hematopoietic and non-hematopoietic cells. IL-18 was identified in human atheroma tissues, and it is an important regulator of innate and acquired immune responses. It induces the expression of several inflammatory molecules in vascular smooth muscle, endothelial cells, and macrophages. The regulation of IL-18 synthesis, its effect on cytokine release, and its mechanisms are still unknown [144].

IL-18-deficient mice develop obesity as consequence of increased food intake [145]. They also developed insulin resistance in liver, muscle, and adipose tissue because of an enhanced glucose production. Replacement of IL-18 in the brain reduced food intake and reversed hyperglycemia [145].

In addition to its role during the inflammatory response toward microorganisms, IL-18 is an important factor in human autoimmune and metabolic diseases. IL-18, IL-4, and IL-12 were significantly higher in diabetic patients regarding healthy subjects. High serum IL-18 levels were correlated with poor glycemic control (assessed as HbA1c), prolonged diabetes, and atherogenic index. Furthermore, IL-18 may be used as a predictor for preclinical atherosclerosis and poor glycemic control in T2D [146].

IL-18, TNF-α, and CRP are considered potential risk factors for T2D and its associated metabolic complications [105, 106]. IL-18 has been directly implicated in renal injury induction on diabetic nephropathy [147].

The increased IL-18 levels observed on adipocytes from individuals with regular and morbid obesity declined after weight loss [148–150]. After considering age, gender, body mass index, and insulin, IL-18 was also independently correlated with MetS, a known risk factor for CVD [151]. A prospective study showed that IL-18 was correlated with coronary events in males, regardless of age, body mass index, inflammatory biomarkers, and classic lipid predictors [152].

TGF-β1

Initially, TGF-β is produced as an intracellular inactive protein complex that is modified before its secretion. One of the most relevant modifications is the C-terminal pro-region cleavage from the N-terminal. The pro-region is known as the latency-associated peptide (LAP), whereas the N-terminal region is the mature or active TGF- β. The latter belongs to a molecule family displaying a wide of roles in several cell types. More than 40 protein members of this family are known, they have a dimeric structure, and they are clustered in several subfamilies. The TGF-β subfamily includes six isoforms, three of them are expressed in mammals [153, 154]. Among these isoforms, TGF-β1 is involved in embryogenesis, and it has a prominent role in the immune system by controlling several aspects of inflammatory responses, T cell differentiation, and switching between B cell isotypes.

TGF-β and retinoic acid are produced by CD103+ DCs located at the small intestine, and they are inducers of Treg cells. TGF-β also induces naive T cell differentiation into pathogenic TH17 cells while inhibiting the generation of Th1 and Th2 cells [155–157].

TGF-β1 is synthesized as a precursor protein. As it has been associated with the pathogenesis of numerous diseases, the multiple mechanisms of latent (L)-TGF-β activation represent an opportunity to control TGF-β activity within an organ involved in a specific disease process. It is difficult to retrieve reliable epidemiological data on TGF-β1 as it circulates in the bloodstream mainly as its latent form that needs to be proteolytically modified to its active form [158].

In the MONICA/KORA study, high serum TGF-β1 levels were correlated with a high risk of T2D, after adjustment for age, sex, BMI, lifestyle factors, hypertension, lipids, and parental diabetes history [159].

Resistin

Resistin was discovered in 2001, and it is a small peptide (12.5 kDa) comprised of 108 amino acids containing several cysteine residues. It is a member of a small family of secreted proteins characterized by a unique spacing of 10–11 cysteine residues on their structure. They are known as resistin-like molecules (RELMs) or as found in inflammatory zone (FIZZ) proteins. Resistin is a cytokine almost exclusively expressed in white adipocytes in rodents, whereas human resistin is predominantly expressed in macrophages, and it is regulated by the nutritional status [160, 161]. It is also expressed by the non-adipocyte stromal vascular fraction in WAT and fibrotic liver and also on atherosclerotic lesions. These findings support the role of macrophages as the main source of resistin in humans [162, 163].

Resistin levels are decreased during human adipocyte differentiation [164], and they represent a link between obesity, insulin resistance, and T2D. The antidiabetic drugs thiazolidinediones (TZD) downregulate human resistin expression in macrophages, or they induced a decrease of resistin levels in serum [165].

In obese mice models, circulating resistin levels are higher when compared to lean controls [166]. They increase in diet-induced and genetic forms of obesity. The administration of exogenous resistin or its transgenic overexpression leads to decreased insulin sensitivity. Conversely, blocking resistin activity or by genetically decreasing its levels improves insulin sensitivity and restores glucose homeostasis [167].

There are contradictory reports regarding the correlation between resistin and obesity or between resistin and T2D in humans [168, 169]. Some reports show that resistin levels are higher in subjects with T2D, but other studies show no correlation with IR or fasting insulin levels [170–172]. Serum resistin does not change significantly between obese and normal children, and it is not affected by body mass index over time [173, 174].

On the other hand, resistin levels were correlated with increased risk for T2D, even after adjusting for known diabetes risk factors in three large American case-control studies (Nurses' Health Study and both the Women's Health Study and the Physicians' Health Study) with follow-ups after 12, 10, and 8 years [175, 176].

Additionally, resistin also stimulates endothelial cells to secrete substances such as inflammatory cytokines, monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1), vascular cell adhesion molecule 1 (VCAM-1), and intercellular adhesion molecule 1 (ICAM-1). Thus, it seems that resistin acts as an adiponectin antagonist [177, 178]. In human vascular cells, resistin impairs insulin signaling, modifies the oxidative stress response, and stimulates cell proliferation. These effects involve the activation of the p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) [179–181]. Furthermore, plasma resistin levels correlate with inflammation markers, and they may be predictive of coronary calcification, an indicator of the atherosclerosis extent [182].

The resistin receptor remains unidentified, although a recent report has suggested that resistin may bind to the endotoxin receptor TLR-4 [183].

Leptin

Leptin is involved in inflammation, immune cells, obesity, and T2D. This peptide is one of the most important WAT-derived hormones, it is the product of the ob gene, and structurally and functionally, it may be classified as a cytokine. Leptin has a wide range of biological functions including both innate and adaptive immunity [184, 185]. In combination with cytokines and other molecules, it acts on the central nervous system partially regulating food behavior and energy balance. It has an effect on energy metabolism in other tissues such as liver and muscle [186].

Leptin controls food intake by interacting with anorexigenic molecules in the hypothalamus. These molecules are produced by cells secreting proopiomelanocortin (POMC) and by neurons releasing cocaine- and amphetamine-regulated transcript (CART), orexigenic molecules such as neuropeptide Y (NPY), and agouti protein (AgRP) [187]. Animal models fed with a HFD show hyperleptinemia that generates a blockade of hormone functions resulting in resistance toward leptin, higher food consumption, and obesity [188].

Leptin acts by binding to a receptor (Ob-R). The latter is a class I cytokine receptor that was isolated for the first time from murine choroid plexus [188]. Leptin receptors have been also detected in hypothalamic regions such as the arcuate and both paraventricular and ventromedial nuclei. These regions regulate energy balance [189]. The human leptin LEP-R receptors are coded by at least six homologue genes producing several mRNA variants [190]. It is also expressed on most immune cells, including neutrophils, macrophages, and NK cells. In the hypothalamus, leptin binds to its receptor on the plasma membrane thus triggering a phosphorylation cascade. One important function of leptin in the hypothalamus is to regulate body weight.

Obesity animal models lacking leptin or its receptor develop obesity due to hyperphagia caused by abnormal leptin/leptin receptor signaling, and subsequently T2D-like manifestations appear. These effects are secondary to genetic mutations that do not reflect the disease's etiology in humans, as leptin or leptin receptor deficiency is nor relevant for T2D. For more details, see review [191].

During food intake, leptin expression is stimulated in the TA. Conversely it is decreased during fasting and diabetes.

Leptin synthesis is positively regulated by insulin, glucocorticoids, and estrogens, whereas catecholamines (through their β3-adrenergic receptors), androgens, and long-chain fatty acids inhibit its synthesis [187, 192–194]. Insulin-stimulated leptin secretion and the consequent stimulation of lipolysis and fatty acid release are suppressed by several agents: lipolytic hormones (adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)), phosphodiesterase inhibitors (caffeine, theophylline), adenylate cyclase modulators (forskolin and pertussis toxin), and non-hydrolyzable cAMP analogs [195].

Leptin and insulin are mutually regulated. Thus, leptin inhibits insulin production in pancreatic β cells, whereas insulin stimulates leptin production by adipocytes. When resistance toward leptin occurs, as characterized by hyperleptinemia, the homeostatic balance between these molecules is disrupted. Consequently, insulin production is not affected by leptin, and this results in hyperinsulinemia and resistance to this hormone [196, 197].

In human and mice, blood leptin levels closely correlate with AT mass [185]. In addition to its central effects, leptin may modulate the immune response. This hormone affects both the innate and adaptive branches of the immune system. Regarding innate immunity, leptin modulates the activity of NK cells, macrophages, and neutrophils by enhancing their function and promoting the production of proinflammatory cytokines [198, 199]. Regarding adaptive immunity, several in vitro and in vivo experiments demonstrate that leptin positively impacts T cell proliferation and increases Th1 cytokine production while suppressing that of Th2 [200]. In monocytes, leptin increases the expression and release of the IL-1Ra anti-inflammatory cytokine [201] and vice versa: IL-1Ra decreases leptin expression at both mRNA and protein levels [202]. In healthy individuals, it preserves the balance between inflammatory markers. However, when resistance to leptin occurs, this cytokine has a proinflammatory effect, and the balance is shifted toward the chronic inflammatory state particular of T2D and obesity.

Leptin-deficient mice (ob/ob) and those lacking its receptor (db/db) are obese because of their increased food intake resulting from impaired satiety. Additionally, they exhibit an important decrease of functional immune cell populations, such as NK cells, dendritic cells, and Treg cells [203, 204]. T and B cells have been shown to increase LEP-R expression when activated. Moreover, when leptin is included in the cell culture media, it increased survival of activated lymphocytes [205].

Macrophage and NK cell populations increase during the first weeks after feeding a HFD, specifically in VAT. Conversely, this is not observed in ob/ob mice [206]. Furthermore, leptin promotes NK cell survival in the bone marrow; it attenuates macrophage infiltration and inflammatory gene expression in AT, in spite of weight gain and adiposity [207]. However, leptin does not affect weight gain and macrophage infiltration in this tissue [205, 206]. Different background strains, potential effects caused by gut microbiota, different body weight baselines, and differing fat percent in the diet may be the underlying cause of such contrasting results [207]. These elements must be considered to further evaluate the role of leptin in macrophages.

Finally, all results support the concept that inflammation plays a role for T2D pathogenesis and proinflammatory mediators produced by adipocytes and immune cells actively participate in this phenomenon.

IL-1Ra

The IL-1Ra cytokine is a natural IL-1β inhibitor. The expression and release of the former are induced by the latter, so this cytokine is usually controlled by its antagonist. Several cell types and tissues throughout the body express IL-1Ra; thus its high levels are probably needed in order to suppress the deleterious effects generated by the potent proinflammatory activity of IL-1β. When IL-1Ra competitively binds to the IL-1 receptor, IL-1β binding is blocked, and the conveying of proinflammatory signals from its receptor is hampered. Some evidences suggest that anti-inflammatory IL-1Ra counteracts the inflammatory effects mediated by IL-1β, and it preserves cell function in both types of diabetes [208].

Elevated circulating IL-1Ra levels are correlated with T2D incidence. In a nested case-control study, those subjects who developed T2D during the 11.5-year follow-up period displayed higher IL-1Ra levels when compared to individuals who remained diabetes-free. The authors hypothesized that individuals with high risk of T2D are characterized by the presence of an early compensatory, anti-inflammatory response preceding the full development of the disease [209]. The correlation between IL-1Ra levels and risk of T2D was also observed in subjects with metabolic syndrome in both cohorts. After adjustment for multiple confounders, IL-1Ra was significantly associated with metabolic syndrome (MetS) to T2D progression in males from both cohorts and in females from the FINRISK 97 cohort only. IL-1Ra displayed a significant correlation with risk of T2D in both cohorts when the data obtained from males and females was pooled [210].

IL-1Ra improved β-cell function and glycemic control in patients with T2D. These positive effects of IL-1Ra were also observed on Goto Kakizaki (GK) rats (a spontaneous, no obese T2D model) and mice, as treatment with exogenous IL-1Ra protected them from increased proinflammatory cytokine expression in islets (IL-1β, IL-6, and TNF-α), chemokine expression, and macrophage infiltration in islets, and they also exhibited improved insulin processing. Treatment

with IL-1Ra is not linked to body weight changes, either in patients or in animal models [211–213]. Probably the exogenous IL-1Ra does not have an effect on the hypothalamus.

Thus, when the IL-1β activity is blocked during T2D, both pancreatic β-cell function and insulin resistance are protected from the direct toxic effects caused by this cytokine and/or by antagonizing its inflammatory response. Therefore, IL-1Ra could be a new therapeutic agent to treat T2D.

IL-4

IL-4 is an anti-inflammatory cytokine secreted by Th2 lymphocytes, basophils, and mast cells. It has pleiotropic functions as it promotes the Th1/Th2 balance, B cell proliferation, and immune responses by regulating the proinflammatory mediators (IL-1β, TNF-α, and IL-6) produced by macrophages. IL-4 secreted by adipocytes and hepatocytes is able to modulate the local immune response and insulin sensitivity [214–217].

IL-4 may regulate insulin sensitivity, glucose tolerance, and lipid metabolism, and it could be involved in diabetic susceptibility and its complications. IL-4 regulates energy metabolism by promoting catabolism rather than energy storage through its anti-lipogenic effect, by suppressing adipocyte differentiation and by promoting lipolysis in mature adipocytes. Some proteins were upregulated, and others were downregulated by IL-4 in 3 T3-L1 cells [218–220].

Insulin sensitivity and glucose tolerance were improved in mice overexpressing IL-4. Triglyceride accumulation in fat tissues was also inhibited, leading to decreased weight gain and fat mass [221]. Additionally, there is a correlation between IL-4/IL-4 receptor (R) genotypes and T2D and also between IL-4 genotypes and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) [222, 223]. This data reveals the previously overlooked roles of IL-4 in metabolism.

IL-10

IL-10 possesses multiple anti-inflammatory properties, including macrophage and T cell inactivation, and it has a protective effect against atherogenesis. Adiponectin displays antiatherogenic effects, partially by inducing IL-10 expression in human macrophages [224–226].

Initially they were described as a product from Th2 cells that inhibits Th1 cell function. Currently, it has been identified that IL-10 is produced by most lymphocyte populations and the cells of the innate immune system, such as the antigen-presenting cells (DCs and macrophages), B cells, monocytes, and granulocytes affecting most hematopoietic cell types [224, 227–229].

In lean adipose tissue, iNKT cells and Tregs are abundant, and they produce IL-10. During the adipose expansion occurring in obesity, iNKT cells and Treg populations are depleted thus resulting in less IL-10 and a more inflammatory environment. This correlates with a proinflammatory macrophage accumulation. The decrease of iNKT and Tregs cells in obese AT contributes to local and systemic inflammation and eventually to T2D [230].

IL-10 may protect against diabetes. In this regard, it was demonstrated that IL-10 overexpression in mice skeletal muscle prevented macrophage infiltration into the AT caused by a HFD. Subsequently, IL-10 restricted the expression of proinflammatory cytokines, and it promoted insulin sensitivity regarding control mice [231]. The data obtained from humans attempting to correlate IL-10 and T2D are limited to a few cross-sectional studies. In a study conducted on 85-year-old subjects, it was observed that an elevated capacity of IL-10 production in whole blood was correlated with lower HbA1c levels and lower T2D prevalence [232]. Additionally, serum IL-10 inversely correlated with BMI and body fat, whereas a positive correlation was observed with insulin sensitivity when a euglycemic-hyperinsulinemic clamp was performed on subjects with impaired glucose tolerance or T2D [233]. Conversely, no associations between serum IL-10 and BMI or T2D were found by other two studies [234, 235].

In a cohort of the Prospective Study of Pravastatin in the Elderly at Risk (PROSPER), baseline blood IL-10 levels were positively correlated with the CRP and IL-6 proinflammatory mediators. During the follow-up period, IL-10 levels were increased, and they were associated with higher risk of cardiovascular events (death from coronary heart disease, myocardial infarction, and stroke) [235].

T2D patients showed increased numbers of circulating IL-10- and IL-17-producing CD3+ T cells when compared to controls, although there was no difference regarding the frequency of lymphocyte subsets. The authors suggest that these cytokines are involved on the immune pathology of this disease [236].

IL-10 is an interesting cytokine because of its potent anti-inflammatory effects. However, the reported data are contradictory, and currently it is not clear whether elevated circulating IL-10 levels are effective to negatively regulate proinflammatory reactivity and to confer protection against T2D or whether increased IL-10 levels are merely indicative of proinflammatory processes without providing a metabolic benefit.

Adiponectin

Adiponectin is highly expressed by adipocytes displaying potent anti-inflammatory properties. The ADIPOQ gene codes for adiponectin. This protein possesses a collagen-like

domain N-terminal and a complement factor C1q-like globular domain C-terminal. It is highly expressed during adipocyte differentiation, and it is one of the main products secreted by adipocytes. In the bloodstream, it seems to occur as several isoforms: as a low molecular weight (LMW) trimer, as a medium molecular weight (MMW) hexamer (trimer-dimer), and as a high molecular weight multimeric (HMW) isoform [237, 238].

Many studies have revealed that plasma adiponectin levels are significantly decreased in obesity, IR, and T2D, being a key component for the interplay between adiposity, IR, and inflammation [239, 240]. Adiponectin improves whole-body insulin sensitivity, and its decreased levels occurring in obese rodents and humans are caused by the presence of proinflammatory factors such as TNF-α, IL-6, ROS, and hypoxia, as they suppress adiponectin expression in adipocytes [237]. Conversely, PPARγ antagonists stimulate this expression [241]. Independently, a meta-analysis study showed that increased risk of T2D was strongly associated with low adiponectin levels and high of inflammatory cytokine levels (TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-6, IL-18, CRP) [242].

Several studies described a significant negative correlation between adiponectin and obesity parameters [243, 244]. The chromosome 3q27 locus, where ADIPOQ is located, is linked to T2D, and it is considered a key MetS component [245]. Serum adiponectin levels decrease when MetS components increase [246]. Additionally, urinary excretion of HMW-adiponectin is an independent predictor of kidney disease progression in T2D patients affected by early kidney disease [247].

Adiponectin beneficial effects on lipid and glucose homeostasis are caused by multiple mechanisms, mainly by ceramidase activity and adenosine monophosphate-dependent kinase (AMPK)/sirtuin 1 (SIRT1)-dependent activation of the PPAR cofactor 1α (PGC-1α) [248, 249]. In obesity models, fatty acid oxidation and glucose uptake in skeletal muscle and AT are stimulated by adiponectin, and it was shown that they are dependent on AMPK signaling. Adiponectin is also involved in hepatic glucose outsuppression mediated by AMPK activation [250].

Obesity is correlated with increased cardiovascular risk, especially when it is concomitant with T2D. Patients with coronary artery disease (CAD) significantly showed reduced adiponectin levels when compared to controls with matching ages and body mass indexes [251]. It was also correlated with a low risk of myocardial infarction, although it was attenuated when adjusted for HDL-C and low-density lipoproteins cholesterol (LDL-C) [252].

In addition to its antidiabetic functions, adiponectin also suppresses atherosclerosis, fatty liver diseases, and liver fibrosis [253, 254]. Adiponectin administration blocked the effect of proinflammatory agents, e.g., TNF-α and IL-6, and it directly improved endothelial dysfunction by increasing the production of nitric oxide (NO) [245, 255].

Adiponectin acts as an immunomodulator; it promotes the differentiation of anti-inflammatory M2 macrophages and phagocytosis in order to remove apoptotic cells [256, 257]. This adipokine also modulates T cell activation and the inflammatory function of NK cells. Adiponectin receptors are upregulated on the surface of human T cells after an antigen-mediated stimulation, and they mediate apoptosis of antigen-specific T cells, subsequently suppressing T cells expansion [258]. Furthermore, adiponectin suppresses TLR-mediated IFN-γ production in NK cells without affecting cytotoxicity [259]. Adiponectin inhibits LPS-induced TNF-α production in macrophages by inhibiting NF-κB activation and by stimulating anti-inflammatory IL-10 secretion [260, 261]. Therefore, adiponectin may contribute to this role by reducing inflammation within AT.

Two adiponectin receptors have been identified: AdipoR1 and AdipoR2. They possess seven transmembrane domains, although they differ structurally and functionally. Liver expresses AdipoR2, whereas skeletal muscle contains AdipoR1 and AdipoR2. The biological effects caused by these receptors depend not only on adiponectin blood levels but also on tissue specificity. By interacting with its receptors, ADIPO R1/2, adiponectin activates AMPK to enhance fatty acid oxidation and glucose uptake in muscle and to suppress gluconeogenesis in liver [262]. Moreover, adiponectin regulates energy expenditure by activating AMPK in the hypothalamus, where AdipoR1 and AdipoR2 co-localize with the leptin receptor, Ob-R [263]. It has been previously demonstrated that adiponectin stimulates appetite and decreased energy expenditure. These effects were eliminated following the ablation of AdipoR1 small interfering RNA (siRNA) or AMPK signaling (AMPK dominant negative) [264].

Perspectives onT2D Immunotherapy

The use of several anti-inflammatory methods has been implemented on obese subjects with IR. Based on this, salsalate (a salicylate analogue) has been shown to improve insulin sensitivity [265, 266]. The thiazolidinediones antidiabetics (e.g., rosiglitazone and pioglitazone) induced a decrease of adipose tissue macrophage populations [267] and increased adiponectin and fibroblast growth factor 21 (FGF21) blood levels, thereby mediating the redistribution of lipid reservoirs in AT [268, 269].

In patients with T2D, after a 12-week treatment with trelagliptin (an oral dipeptidyl peptidase (DPP)-4 inhibitor), serum adiponectin levels significantly increased [270]. Anti-TNF antibodies were proved to decrease blood glucose in obese subjects [5]. Anti-IL-1β monoclonal antibody therapy improved glycemic condition and β-cell insulin secretion [271, 272].

Inflammation, improved insulin sensitivity, and normalized glucose tolerance were observed on obese mice fed with a HFD supplemented with ω-3 fatty acids [273]. In human studies, a supplementation with fish oil yielded mixed results regarding metabolic end points. A limitation of some of these studies has been the lack of discrimination between fatty and lean fish [274, 275].

IL-1 β, the main macrophage-derived cytokine, increases in T2D obese subjects, and it enhances IL-17 and IL-22 release by AT CD4+ T cells. IL-22 stimulated pro-IL-1β transcription leading to enhanced IL-1 β production by human VAT macrophages. Early clinical data describe promising effects caused by blocking IL-17 in several autoimmune diseases. An immunotherapy has been proposed by using an anti-IL-1 β and anti-IL-22 antibodies mixture in order to improve inflammation in human obesity-linked T2D [276].

Concluding Remarks

- Obesity, through adipose tissue expansion, may contribute to the development of insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes.
- Adipose tissue is considered an important immunologically active organ and is constituted by adipocytes and immunological cells as macrophages, eosinophils, lymphocytes, etc.
- Immune cells participate on inflammatory processes, and they are the most represented cell types within adipose tissue.
- IL-1β, TNF-α, IL-6, and other cytokines expressed in immune cells and in adipocytes are promoters of inflammation.
- Insulin signaling is altered by proinflammatory cytokines and adipokines, and they are important key targets to control or delay the T2D advance.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. The inflammation associated with type 2 diabetes and obesity is mainly generated in this tissue or organ.
   (a) Heart
   (b) Kidney
   (c) Adipose
   (d) Muscle
   (e) Brain
2. Immune cells involved in diabetes.
   (a) Myocytes
   (b) Cardiomyocytes
   (c) Astrocytes
   (d) Lymphocytes
   (e) Hepatocytes
3. Proinflammatory markers occurring in inflamed tissue.
   (a) Glucose and sucrose
   (b) Gamma interferon and interleukins
   (c) Phospholipids and HDL
   (d) Leucine and proline
   (e) Insulin and glucagon
4. Change that TNF-α undergoes between the lean and obese status.
   (a) Inhibition
   (b) Activation
   (c) Inflammation
   (d) Polarization
   (e) Suppression
5. Effect caused by adiponectin on the arteries.
   (a) Antiatherogenic
   (b) Proinflammatory
   (c) Insulin receptor-serine phosphorylation
   (d) Adipocyte dysfunction
   (e) Insulin deficiency
6. Functions of mast cells.
   (a) Secrete anti-inflammatory cytokines
   (b) Protect tissues from inflammation
   (c) Secrete granules rich in histamine and serine proteases
   (d) Express adiponectin mRNA
   (e) Protect from weight gain
7. This effect has been demonstrated during development of type 2 diabetes.
   (a) Inhibition of adipocytes accumulation
   (b) Macrophage recruitment in adipose tissue
   (c) Decreased adiponectin expression in adipocytes
   (d) Increased serum IL-R1a
   (e) Inhibition of TNF-α activity
8. Invariant NKT (iNKT) cells.
   (a) Innate immune cells activated by lipids
   (b) Cells that express INFγ
   (c) The level of these cells increases in obesity
   (d) These cells produce high amount of IL-10
   (e) These cells are suppressed during obesity outset
9. Is a mouse macrophage marker?
   (a) CD28
   (b) CD40
   (c) F4/80+
   (d) CD4+
   (e) Th2
10. Regulation of this subtype of T cell is considered a novel target to treat type 2 diabetes.
    (a) B cells
    (b) Th1
    (c) Th2
    (d) Treg
    (e) Th17
    (f) Mast cells

Correct Answers

1. (c) Adipose
   Inflammatory molecules are derived mainly on adipocytes and immune cells that constitute the adipose tissue.
2. (d) Lymphocytes
   In obesity-associated diabetes the number of lymphocytes increases.
3. (b) Gamma interferon and interleukins
   Here, only interferon and interleukins are markers associated with inflammation.
4. (b) Activation
   TNF-α is activated during obesity and participates on insulin resistance development.
5. (a) Antiatherogenic
   Adiponectin is considered antiatherogenic due to its effects on endothelial function by inhibition of ROS production and on monocyte adhesion.
6. (c) Secrete granules rich in histamine and serine proteases
   Mast cells secrete granules rich in histamine, serine proteases, and cytokines as a defense mechanism.
7. (b) Macrophage recruitment in adipose tissue
   There is a significant increase in the number of macrophages on adipose tissue from subjects with type 2 diabetes, which contributes to inflammatory process.
8. (a) Innate immune cells activated by lipids
   iNKT cells are innate lipid sensors, and their activation, using their prototypic ligand α-galactosylceramide.
9. (c) F4/80+
   F4/80+ are molecules found only on macrophage surface.
10. (d) Treg
    Regulatory T cells (Tregs) are essential negative regulators of inflammation.

Glossary

Adipokine A cytokine or hormone that is secreted by adipose tissue.

Chemokines Are signaling proteins secreted by cells, whose main function is to act as a chemoattractant to guide the migration of near cells. They are implicated in various diseases, such as cancer, autoimmune disorders, and diabetes.

Cytokine Small proteins secreted and released by cells, they have a specific effect on the interactions and communications between cells.

Diet-induced obesity (DIO) Obesity mouse model induced by high-fat diet.

FA A carboxylic acid with aliphatic chains of 4–28 carbons, which can be esterified with glycerol to form triacylglycerols, the main stored form of lipids.

IgG, IgM Are members of immunoglobulin (Ig) superfamily; they are ubiquitously present in several cells and tissues of vertebrates and share structural homology with cell adhesion molecules and some cytokines.

Innate immune cells Are white blood cells that mediate innate immunity and include basophils, dendritic cells, eosinophils, mast cells, monocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, and natural killer cells.

Mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) a mammalian Ser/Thr protein kinase.

NF-κB (Nuclear factor-κB) is a ubiquitous transcription factor involved in the control of processes, such as immune and inflammatory responses, developmental, cellular growth, and apoptosis. The NF-κB pathway has been considered as proinflammatory signaling pathway, based on the role of NF-κB in the expression of proinflammatory genes including cytokines, chemokines, and adhesion molecules.

Omental adipose tissue The fat depot found within the peritoneum, in close association with the stomach and other internal organs.

PPARγ (Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma) is an essential transcription regulator of the adipocyte differentiation and is required for mature adipocyte function.

Salicylates A group of derivatives of salicylic acid, including aspirin and acetylsalicylic acid, which are widely used as analgesics, and anti-inflammatory medicaments

Thiazolidinediones Antidiabetic drugs used therapeutically, which are known to be high-affinity ligand activators of PPARγ.

White adipose tissue (WAT) The predominant fat storage tissue in animals, consisting mostly of adipocytes but also other cell types as mast cells and macrophages.

References

1. Donath MY, Schumann DM, Faulenbach M, et al. Islet inflammation in type 2 diabetes: from metabolic stress to therapy. Diabetes Care. 2008;31(Suppl 2):S161–4.
2. Wellen KE, Hotamisligil GS. Inflammation, stress, and diabetes. J Clin Invest. 2005;115:1111–9.
3. Shoelson SE, Goldfine AB. Getting away from glucose: fanning the flames of obesity-induced inflammation. Nat Med. 2009;15:373–4.
4. Boni-Schnetzler M, Donath MY. How biologics targeting the IL-1 system are being considered for the treatment of type 2 diabetes. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2013;76:263–8.
5. Stanley TL, Zanni MV, Johnsen S, Rasheed S, Makimura H, Lee H, et al. TNF-alpha antagonism with etanercept decreases glucose and increases the proportion of high molecular weight adiponectin in obese subjects with features of the metabolic syndrome. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2011;96:E146–50.
6. Lackey DE, Olefsky JM. Regulation of metabolism by the innate immune system. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2016;12:15–28.
7. Hotamisligil GS. Inflammation and metabolic disorders. Nature. 2006;444:860–7.

8. Shoelson SE, Lee J, Goldfine AB. Inflammation and insulin resistance. J Clin Invest. 2006;116:1793–801.
9. Aguirre V, Werner ED, Giraud J, Lee YH, Shoelson SE. White MF Phosphorylation of Ser307 in insulin receptor substrate-1 blocks interactions with the insulin receptor and inhibits insulin action. J Biol Chem. 2002;277:1531–7.
10. Yang X, Smith U. Adipose tissue distribution and risk of metabolic disease: does thiazolidinedione-induced adipose tissue redistribution provide a clue to the answer? Diabetologia. 2007;50:1127–39.
11. Sanchez-Gurmaches J, Guertin DA. Adipocytes arise from multiple lineages that are heterogeneously and dynamically distributed. Nat Commun. 2014;5:4099. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms5099.
12. Johnson AR, Milner JJ, Makowski L. The inflammation highway: metabolism accelerates inflammatory traffic in obesity. Immunol Rev. 2012;249:218–38.
13. Wensveen FM, Jelencic V, Valentic S, Sestan M, Wensveen TT, Theurich S, Glasner A, et al. NK cells link obesity-induced adipose stress to inflammation and insulin resistance. Nat Immunol. 2015a;16:376–85.
14. Nedergaard J, Bengtsson T, Cannon B. Unexpected evidence for active brown adipose tissue in adult humans. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab. 2007;293:E444–52.
15. Olsen JM, Sato M, Dallner OS, Sandstrom AL, Pisani DF, Chambard JC, Amri EZ, Hutchinson DS, Bengtsson T. Glucose uptake in brown fat cells is dependent on mTOR complex 2-promoted GLUT1 translocation. J Cell Biol. 2014;207:365–74.
16. Heilbronn L, Smith SR, Ravussin E. Failure of fat cell proliferation, mitochondrial function and fat oxidation results in ectopic fat storage, insulin resistance and type II diabetes mellitus. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 2004;28(Suppl 4):S12–21.
17. Carpentier A, Mittelman SD, Bergman RN, Giacca A, Lewis GF. Prolonged elevation of plasma free fatty acids impairs pancreatic beta-cell function in obese nondiabetic humans but not in individuals with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2000;49:399–408.
18. Sharma S, Adrogue JV, Golfman L, Uray I, Lemm J, Youker K, Noon GP, Frazier OH, Taegtmeyer H. Intra-myocardial lipid accumulation in the failing human heart resembles the lipotoxic rat heart. FASEB J. 2004;18:1692–700.
19. Kremen J, Dolinkova M, Krajickova J, Blaha J, Anderlova K, Lacinova Z, et al. Increased subcutaneous and epicardial adipose tissue production of proinflammatory cytokines in cardiac surgery patients: possible role in postoperative insulin resistance. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2006;91:4620–7.
20. Yudkin JS, Eringa E, Stehouwer CD. "Vasocrine" signalling from perivascular fat: a mechanism linking insulin resistance to vascular disease. Lancet. 2005;365:1817–20.
21. Van Puyvelde K, Mets T, Njemini R, Beyer I, Bautmans I. Effect of advanced glycation end product intake on inflammation and aging: a systematic review. Nutr Rev. 2014;72:638–50.
22. Ramji DP, Davies TS. Cytokines in atherosclerosis: key players in all stages of disease and promising therapeutic targets. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2015;26:673–85.
23. Jovanovic K, Siebeck M, Gropp R. The route to pathologies in chronic inflammatory diseases characterized by T helper type 2 immune cells. Clin Exp Immunol. 2014;178:201–11.
24. Hilgendorf I, Swirski FK. Making a difference: monocyte heterogeneity in cardiovascular disease. Curr Atheroscler Rep. 2012;14:450–9.
25. Poitou C, Dalmas E, Renovato M, Benhamo V, Haj-duch F, Abdennour M, et al. CD14dimcd16+ and CD14+CD16+ monocytes in obesity and during weight loss: relationships with fat mass and subclinical atherosclerosis. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2011;31:2322–30.
26. Donath MY, Shoelson SE. Type 2 diabetes as an inflammatory disease. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11:98–107.
27. Festa A, D'Agostino R Jr, Howard G, Mykkanen L, Tracy RP, Haffner SM. Chronic subclinical inflammation as part of the insulin resistance syndrome: the Insulin Resistance Atherosclerosis Study (IRAS). Circulation. 2000;102:42–7.
28. Festa A, D'Agostino R Jr, Tracy RP, Haffner SM. Elevated levels of acute-phase proteins and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 predict the development of type 2 diabetes: the insulin resistance atherosclerosis study. Diabetes. 2002;51:1131–7.
29. Spranger J, Kroke A, Mohlig M, Hoffmann K, Bergmann MM, Ristow M, et al. Inflammatory cytokines and the risk to develop type 2 diabetes: results of the prospective population-based European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC)-Potsdam Study. Diabetes. 2003;52:812–7.
30. Pradhan AD, Manson JE, Rifai N, Buring JE, Ridker PM. C-reactive protein, interleukin 6, and risk of developing type 2 diabetes mellitus. JAMA. 2001;286:327–34.
31. Cruz L, Garcia-Macedo R, Garcia-Valerio Y, Gutierrez M, Medina-Navarro R, Duran G, Wacher N, Kumate J. Low adiponectin levels predict type 2 diabetes in Mexican children. Diabetes Care. 2004;27:1451–3.
32. Mathis D. Immunological goings-on in visceral adipose tissue. Cell Metab. 2013;17:851–9.
33. Ouchi N, Parker JL, Lugus JJ, Walsh K. Adipokines in inflammation and metabolic disease. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11:85–97.
34. Medzhitov R, Janeway C Jr. Innate immunity. N Engl J Med. 2000;343:338–44.
35. Delves PJ, Roitt D. The Immune System – First of two parts. N Engl J Med. 2000;343:37–50.
36. Xu H, Barnes GT, Yang Q, Tan G, Yang D, Chou CJ, et al. Chronic inflammation in fat plays a crucial role in the development of obesity-related insulin resistance. J Clin Invest. 2003;112:1821–30.
37. Nishimura S, Manabe I, Nagasaki M, Eto K, Yamashita H, Ohsugi M, et al. CD8+ effector T cells contribute to macrophage recruitment and adipose tissue inflammation in obesity. Nat Med. 2009;15:914–20.
38. Winer DA, Winer S, Shen L, Wadia PP, Yantha J, Paltser G, et al. B cells promote insulin resistance through modulation of T cells and production of pathogenic IgG antibodies. Nat Med. 2011;17:610–7.
39. Liu J, Divoux A, Sun J, Zhang J, Clement K, Glickman JN, et al. Genetic deficiency and pharmacological stabilization of mast cells reduce diet-induced obesity and diabetes in mice. Nat Med. 2009;15:940–5.
40. Bertola A, Ciucci T, Rousseau D, Bourlier V, Duffaut C, Bonnafous S, et al. Identification of adipose tissue dendritic cells correlated with obesity-associated insulin-resistance and inducing Th17 responses in mice and patients. Diabetes. 2012;61:2238–47.
41. Berrou J, Fougeray S, Venot M, Chardiny V, Gautier JF, Dulphy N, et al. Natural killer cell function, an important target for infection and tumor protection, is impaired in type 2 diabetes. PLoS One. 2013;8:e62418. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0062418.
42. Talukdar S, Oh DY, Bandyopadhyay G, Li D, Xu J, McNelis J, et al. Neutrophils mediate insulin resistance in mice fed a high-fat diet through secreted elastase. Nat Med. 2012;18:1407–12.
43. Wu D, Molofsky AB, Liang HE, Ricardo-Gonzalez RR, Jouihan HA, Bando JK, et al. Eosinophils sustain adipose alternatively activated macrophages associated with glucose homeostasis. Science. 2011;332:243–7.
44. Grant R, Youm YH, Ravussin A, Dixit VD. Quantification of adipose tissue leukocytosis in obesity. Methods Mol Biol. 2013;1040:195–209.
45. Kosteli A, Sugaru E, Haemmerle G, Martin JF, Lei J, Zechner R, et al. Weight loss and lipolysis promote a dynamic immune response in murine adipose tissue. J Clin Invest. 2010;120:3466–79.

46. Nguyen KD, Qiu Y, Cui X, Goh YP, Mwangi J, David T, et al. Alternatively activated macrophages produce catecholamines to sustain adaptive thermogenesis. Nature. 2011;480:104–8.
47. Weisberg SP, McCann D, Desai M, Rosenbaun M, Leibel RL, Ferrante AW Jr. Obesity is associated with macrophage accumulation in adipose tissue. J Clin Invest. 2003;112:1796–808.
48. Lumeng CN, Bodzin JL, Saltiel AR. Obesity induces a phenotypic switch in adipose tissue macrophage polarization. J Clin Invest. 2007;117:75–184.
49. Feuerer M, Herrero L, Cipolletta D, Naaz A, Wong J, Nayer A, et al. Lean, but not obese, fat is enriched for a unique population of regulatory T cells that affect metabolic parameters. Nat Med. 2009;15:930–9.
50. Chawla A, Nguyen KD, Goh YP. Macrophage-mediated inflammation in metabolic disease. Nat Rev Immunol. 2011;11:738–49.
51. McNelis JC, Olefsky JM. Macrophages, immunity, and metabolic disease. Immunity. 2014;41:36–48.
52. Fujisaka S, Usui I, Bukhari A, Ikutani M, Oya T, Kanatani Y, et al. Regulatory mechanisms for adipose tissue M1 and M2 macrophages in diet-induced obese mice. Diabetes. 2009;58:2574–82.
53. Wentworth JM, Naselli G, Brown WA, Doyle L, Phipson B, Smyth GK, et al. Pro-inflammatory CD11cCCD206C adipose tissue macrophages are associated with insulin resistance in human obesity. Diabetes. 2010;59:1648–56.
54. Kotnik P, Keuper M, Wabitsch M, Fischer-Posovszky P. Interleukin-1β downregulates RBP4 secretion in human adipocytes. PLoS One. 2013;8:e57796. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0057796.
55. Constant VA, Gagnon A, Landry A, Sorisky A. Macrophage-conditioned medium inhibits the differentiation of 3T3-L1 and human abdominal preadipocytes. Diabetologia. 2006;49:1402–11.
56. Patsouris D, Cao JJ, Vial G, Bravard A, Lefai E, Durand A, et al. Insulin Resistance is Associated with MCP1-Mediated Macrophage Accumulation in Skeletal Muscle in Mice and Humans. PLoS One. 2014;9:e110653. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0110653.
57. Eguchi K, Manabe I, Oishi-Tanaka Y, Ohsugi M, Kono N, Ogata F, et al. Saturated fatty acid and TLR signaling link beta cell dysfunction and islet inflammation. Cell Metab. 2012;15:518–33.
58. Divoux A, Moutel S, Poitou C, Lacasa D, Veyrie N, Aissat A, et al. Mast cells in human adipose tissue: link with morbid obesity, inflammatory status, and diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012;97:E1677–85.
59. Nagai K, Fukushima T, Oike H, Kobori M. High glucose increases the expression of proinflammatory cytokines and secretion of TNFalpha and beta-hexosaminidase in human mast cells. Eur J Pharmacol. 2012;687:39–45.
60. Gutierrez DA, Muralidhar S, Feyerabend TB, Herzig S, Rodewald HR. Hematopoietic kit deficiency, rather than lack of mast cells, protects mice from obesity and insulin resistance. Cell Metab. 2015;21:678–91.
61. Chmelar J, Chatzigeorgiou A, Kyoung-Jin C, Prucnal M, Voehringer D, Roers A, et al. No role for mast cells in obesity-related metabolic dysregulation. Frontiers Immunol. 2016;7:524. eCollection 2016. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2016.00524.
62. Goh YPS, Henderson NC, Heredia JE, Red Eagle A, Odegaard JI, Lehwald N, et al. Eosinophils secrete IL-4 to facilitate liver regeneration. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110:9914–9.
63. Schipper HS, Rakhshandehroo M, van de Graaf SF, et al. Natural killer T cells in adipose tissue prevent insulin resistance. J Clin Invest. 2012;122:3343–54.
64. Cipolleta D. Adipose tissue-resident regulatory T cells: phenotypic specialization, functions and therapeutic potential. Immunology. 2014;142(4):517–25.
65. Wensveen FM, Valentic S, Sestan M, Turk Wensveen T, Polic B. The "Big Bang" in obese fat: Events initiating obesity-induced adipose tissue inflammation. Eur J Immunol. 2015b;45(9):2446–56.
66. Bruce A, Bray D, Lewis J, Raff M, Roberts K, Watson JD. Chapter 23: The immune system. In: Molecular biology of the cell. 3rd ed. New York: Garland Publishing, Inc; 1994. p. 1204.
67. Guo H, Xu BC, Yang XG, Peng D, Wang Y, Liu XB, et al. A High Frequency of Peripheral Blood IL-22(+) CD4(+) T Cells in Patients With New Onset Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus. J Clin Lab Anal. 2016;30:95–102.
68. Winer S, Chan Y, Paltser G, Truong D, Tsui H, Bahrami J, et al. Normalization of obesity-associated insulin resistance through immunotherapy. Nat Med. 2009a;15(8):921–9.
69. Mehta P, Nuotio-Antar AM, Smith CW. γδ T cells promote inflammation and insulin resistance during high fat diet-induced obesity in mice. J Leukoc Biol. 2015;97:121–34.
70. Caspar-Bauguil S, Cousin B, Galinier A, Segafredo C, Nibbelink M, Andre M, et al. Adipose tissues as an ancestral immune organ: site-specific change in obesity. FEBS Lett. 2005;579:3487–92.
71. Winer S, Paltser G, Chan Y, Tsui H, Engleman E, Winer D, et al. Obesity predisposes to Th17 bias. Eur J Immunol. 2009b;39:2629–35.
72. Rocha VZ, Folco EJ, Sukhova G, Shimizu K, Gotsman I, Vernon AH, et al. Interferon-gamma, a Th1 cytokine, regulates fat inflammation: a role for adaptive immunity in obesity. Circ Res. 2008;103:467–76.
73. van der Weerd K, Dik WA, Schrijver B, Schweitzer DH, Langerak AW, Drexhage HA, et al. Morbidly obese human subjects have increased peripheral blood CD4+ T cells with skewing toward a Treg- and Th2-dominated phenotype. Diabetes. 2012;61:401–8.
74. Cipolletta D, Feuerer M, Li A, Kamei N, Lee J, Shoelson SE, Benoist C, et al. PPAR-gamma is a major driver of the accumulation and phenotype of adipose tissue Treg cells. Nature. 2012;486:549–53.
75. Wu L, Parekh VV, Gabriel CL, Bracy DP, Marks-Shulman PA, Tamboli RA, et al. Activation of invariant natural killer T cells by lipid excess promotes tissue inflammation, insulin resistance, and hepatic steatosis in obese mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012;109:E1143–52.
76. Shi LZ, Wang R, Huang G, Vogel P, Neale G, Green DR, et al. HIF1alpha-dependent glycolytic pathway orchestrates a metabolic checkpoint for the differentiation of TH17 and Treg cells. J Exp Med. 2011;208:1367–76.
77. Tannahill GM, Curtis AM, Adamik J, Palsson-McDermott EM, McGettrick AF, Goel G, et al. Succinate is an inflammatory signal that induces IL-1beta through HIF-alpha. Nature. 2013;496:238–42.
78. Mahmoud F, Al-Ozairi E. Inflammatory cytokines and the risk of cardiovascular complications in type 2 diabetes. Dis Markers. 2013;35:235–41.
79. Kaminski DA, Randall TD. Adaptive immunity and adipose tissue biology. Trends Immunol. 2010;31:384–90.
80. Haas KM, Poe JC, Steeber DA, Tedder TF. B-1a and B-1b cells exhibit distinct developmental requirements and have unique functional roles in innate and adaptive immunity to *S. pneumoniae*. Immunity. 2005;23:7–18.
81. Duffaut C, Galitzky J, Lafontan M, Bouloumie A. Unexpected trafficking of immune cells within the adipose tissue during the onset of obesity. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2009;384:482–5.
82. Lund FE. Cytokine-producing B lymphocytes-key regulators of immunity. Curr Opin Immunol. 2008;20:332–8.
83. Yoshida T, Mei H, Dorner T, Hiepe F, Radbruch A, Fillatreau S, et al. Memory B and memory plasma cells. Immunol Rev. 2010;237:117–39.
84. Defuria J, Belkina AC, Jagannathan-Bogdan M, Snyder-Cappione J, Carr JD, Nersesova YR, et al. B cells promote inflammation in obesity and type 2 diabetes through regulation of T-cell function

and an inflammatory cytokine profile. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110:5133–8.
85. Winer DA, Winer S, Chng MH, Shen L, Engleman EG. B Lymphocytes in obesity-related adipose tissue inflammation and insulin resistance. Cell Mol Life Sci. 2014;71:1033–43.
86. Simoni Y, Diana J, Ghazarian L, Beaudoin L, Lehuen A. Therapeutic manipulation of natural killer (NK) T cells in autoimmunity: are we close to reality? Clin Exp Immunol. 2013;171:8e19.
87. Dungan LS, McGuinness NC, Boon L, Lynch MA, Mills KH. Innate IFN-gamma promotes development of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis: a role for NK cells and M1 macrophages. Eur J Immunol. 2014;44:2903–17.
88. O'Rourke RW, Meyer KA, Neeley CK, Gaston GD, Sekhri P, Szumowski M, et al. Systemic NK cell ablation attenuates intraabdominal adipose tissue macrophage infiltration in murine obesity. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2014;22:2109–14.
89. Lanier LL. Up on the tightrope: natural killer cell activation and inhibition. Nat Immunol. 2008;9:495–502.
90. Lynch L, O'Shea D, Winter DC, Geoghegan J, Doherty DG, O'Farrelly C. Invariant NKT cells and CD1d+ cells amass in human omentum and are depleted in patients with cancer and obesity. Eur J Immunol. 2009;39:1893–901.
91. Lynch L, Nowak M, Varghese B, Clark J, Hogan AE, Toxavidis V, et al. Adipose tissue invariant NKT cells protect against diet-induced obesity and metabolic disorder through regulatory cytokine production. Immunity. 2012;37:574–87.
92. Schipper HS, Rakhshandehroo M, van de Graaf SF, Koppen A, Stienstra R, Prop S, et al. Natural killer T cells in adipose tissue prevent insulin resistance. J Clin Invest. 2012;122:3343–54.
93. Ji Y, Sun S, Xu A, Bhargava P, Yang L, Lam KS, et al. Activation of natural killer T cells promotes M2 macrophage polarization in adipose tissue and improves systemic glucose tolerance via interleukin-4 (IL-4)/STAT6 protein signaling axis in obesity. J Biol Chem. 2012;287:13561–71.
94. Ma X, Hua J, Li Z. Probiotics improve high fat diet-induced hepatic steatosis and insulin resistance by increasing hepatic NKT cells. J Hepatol. 2008;49:821–30.
95. Elinav E, Pappo O, Sklair-Levy M, Margalit M, Shibolet O, Gomori M, et al. Adoptive transfer of regulatory NKT lymphocytes ameliorates non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and glucose intolerance in ob/ob and is associated with intrahepatic CD8 trapping. J Pathol. 2006;209:121–8.
96. Bendelac A, Savage PB, Teyton L. The biology of NKT cells. Annu Rev Immunol. 2007;25:297–336.
97. Mantell BS, Stefanovic-Racic M, Yang X, Dedousis N, Sipula IJ, O'Doherty RM. Mice lacking NKT cells but with a complete complement of CD8+ T-cells are not protected against the metabolic abnormalities of diet-induced obesity. PLoS One. 2011;6:e19831.
98. Lynch L. Adipose invariant natural killer T cells. Immunology. 2014;142:337–46.
99. Steinman RM. Dendritic cells in vivo: a key target for a new vaccine science. Immunity. 2008;29:319–24.
100. Chen Y, Tian J, TianX TX, Rui K, Tong J, et al. Adipose tissue dendritic cells enhances inflammation by prompting the generation of Th17 cells. PLoS One. 2014;9:e92450.
101. Donath MY, Böni-Schnetzler M, Ellingsgaard H, Halban PA, Ehses JA. Cytokine production by islets in health and diabetes: cellular origin, regulation and function. Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2010;21:261–7.
102. Lumeng CN, DelProposto JB, Westcott DJ, Saltiel AR. Phenotypic switching of adipose tissue macrophages with obesity is generated by spatiotemporal differences in macrophage subtypes. Diabetes. 2008;57:3239–46.
103. Nieto-Vazquez I, Fernandez-Veledo S, Kramer DK, Vila-Bedmar R, Garcia-Guerra L, Lorenzo M. Insulin resistance associated to obesity: the link TNF-alpha. Arch Physiol Biochem. 2008;114:183–94.
104. Vanderford NL. Defining the regulation of IL-1beta- and CHOP-mediated beta-cell apoptosis. Islets. 2010;2:334–6.
105. Nakamura A, Shikata K, Hiramatsu M, Nakatou T, Kitamura T, Wada J, et al. Serum interleukin-18 levels are associated with nephropathy and atherosclerosis in Japanese patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2005;28:2890–5.
106. Esser N, Legrand-Poels S, Piette J, Scheen AJ, Paquot N. Inflammation as a link between obesity, metabolic syndrome and type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;105:141–50.
107. Kern PA, Ranganathan S, Li C, Wood L, Ranganathan G. Adipose tissue tumor necrosis factor and interleukin-6 expression in human obesity and insulin resistance. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab. 2001;280:E745–51.
108. Lo J, Bernstein LE, Canavan B, Torriani M, Jackson MB, Ahima RS, Grinspoon SK. Effects of TNF-alpha neutralization on adipocytokines and skeletal muscle adiposity in the metabolic syndrome. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab. 2007;293:E102–9.
109. Dandona P, Weinstock R, Thusu K, Abdel-Rahman E, Aljada A, Wadden T. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha in sera of obese patients: fall with weight loss. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1998;83:2907–10.
110. Hotamisligil GS, Shargill NS, Spiegelman BM. Adipose expression of tumor necrosis factor-alpha: direct role in obesity-linked insulin resistance. Science. 1993;259:87–91.
111. Rui L, Aguirre V, Kim JK, Shulman GI, Lee A, Corbould A, et al. Insulin/IGF-1 and TNF-alpha stimulate phosphorylation of IRS-1 at inhibitory Ser307 via distinct pathways. J Clin Invest. 2001;107:181–9.
112. Ventre J, Doebber T, Wu M, MacNaul K, Stevens K, Pasparakis M, et al. Targeted disruption of the tumor necrosis factor-alpha gene: metabolic consequences in obese and nonobese mice. Diabetes. 1997;46:1526–31.
113. Zhang HH, Halbleib M, Ahmad F, Manganiello VC, Greenberg AS. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha stimulates lipolysis in differentiated human adipocytes through activation of extracellular signal-related kinase and elevation of intracellular cAMP. Diabetes. 2002;51:2929–35.
114. Guilherme A, Virbasius JV, Puri V, Czech MP. Adipocyte dysfunctions linking obesity to insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2008;9:367–77.
115. Koleva-Georgieva DN, Sivkova NP, Terzieva D. Serum inflammatory cytokines IL-1beta, IL-6, TNF-alpha and VEGF have influence on the development of diabetic retinopathy. Folia Med (Plovdiv). 2011;53:44–50.
116. Kolb H, Mandrup-Poulsen T. An immune origin of type 2 diabetes? Diabetologia. 2005;48:1038–50.
117. Maedler K, Sergeev P, Ris F, Oberholzer J, Joller-Jemelka HI, et al. Glucose-induced beta cell production of IL-1beta contributes to glucotoxicity in human pancreatic islets. J Clin Invest. 2002;110:851–60.
118. Larsen CM, Faulenbach M, Vaag A, Volund A, Ehses JA, Seifert B, et al. Interleukin-1-receptor antagonist in type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2007;356:1517–26.
119. De Nardo D, Latz E. NLRP3 inflammasomes link inflammation and metabolic disease. Trends Immunol. 2011;32:373–9.
120. Stienstra R, Tack CJ, Kanneganti TD, Joosten LA, Netea MG. The inflammasome puts obesity in the danger zone. Cell Metab. 2012;15:10–8.
121. Arous C, Ferreira PG, Dermitzakis ET, Halban PA. Short term exposure of beta cells to low concentrations of interleukin-1β improves insulin secretion through focal adhesion and actin remodeling and regulation of gene expression. J Biol Chem. 2015;290:6653–69.
122. Larsen CM, Faulenbach M, Vaag A, Ehses JA, Donath MY, Mandrup-Poulsen T. Sustained effects of interleukinreceptor antagonist treatment in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2009;32:1663–8.

123. May LT, Santhanam U, Tatter SB, Bhardwaj N, Ghrayeb J, Sehgal PB. Phosphorylation of secreted forms of human beta 2-interferon/hepatocyte stimulating factor/interleukin-6. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1988;152:1144–50.
124. Kamimura D, Ishihara K, Hirano T. IL-6 signal transduction and its physiological roles: the signal orchestration model. Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol. 2003;149:1–38.
125. Carey AL, Febbraio MA. Interleukin-6 and insulin sensitivity: friend or foe? Diabetologia. 2004;47:1135–42.
126. Paul WE, Seder RA. Lymphocyte responses and cytokines. Cell. 1994;76:241–51.
127. Rotter V, Nagaev I, Smith U. Interleukin-6 (IL-6) induces insulin resistance in 3T3-L1 adipocytes and is, like IL-8 and tumor necrosis factor-alpha, overexpressed in human fat cells from insulin-resistant subjects. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:45777–84.
128. Eder K, Baffy N, Falus A, Fulop AK. The major inflammatory mediator interleukin-6 and obesity. Inflamm Res. 2009;58:727–36.
129. Starr ME, Evers BM, Saito H. Age-associated increase in cytokine production during systemic inflammation: adipose tissue as a major source of IL-6. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2009;64:723–30.
130. Heinrich PC, Castell JV, Andus T. Interleukin-6 and the acute phase response. Biochem J. 1990;265:621–36.
131. Mohamed-Ali V, Goodrick S, Rawesh A, et al. Subcutaneous adipose tissue releases interleukin-6, but not tumor necrosis factor-alpha, in vivo. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1997;82:4196–200.
132. Fain JN, Madan AK, Hiler ML, Cheema P, Bahouth SW. Comparison of the release of adipokines by adipose tissue, adipose tissue matrix, and adipocytes from visceral and subcutaneous abdominal adipose tissues of obese humans. Endocrinology. 2004;145:2273–82.
133. Wallenius V, Wallenius K, Ahren B, Rudling M, Carlsten H, Dickson SL, et al. Interleukin-6- deficient mice develop mature-onset obesity. Nat Med. 2002;8:7–9.
134. Scheller J, Chalaris A, Schmidt-Arras D, Rose-John S. The pro and anti-inflammatory properties of the cytokine interleukin-6. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1813;2011:878–88.
135. Kraakman MJ, Kammoun HL, Allen TL, Deswaerte V, Henstridge DC, Estevez E, et al. Blocking IL-6 trans-signaling prevents high-fat diet-induced adipose tissue macrophage recruitment but does not improve insulin resistance. Cell Metab. 2015;21:403–16.
136. Herder C, Schöttker B, Rothenbacher D, et al. Interleukin-6 in the prediction of primary cardiovascular events in diabetes patients: results from the ESTHER study. Atherosclerosis. 2011;216:244–7.
137. Lowe G. Mark Woodward, Graham Hillis,2 Ann Rumley,1 Qiang Li,2 Stephen Harrap, Circulating Inflammatory Markers and the Risk of Vascular Complications and Mortality in People With Type 2 Diabetes and Cardiovascular Disease or Risk Factors: The ADVANCE Study. Diabetes. 2014;63:1115–23.
138. Starkie R, Ostrowski SR, Jauffred S, Febbraio M, Pedersen BK. Exercise and IL-6 infusion inhibit endotoxin-induced TNF-alpha production in humans. FASEB J. 2003;17:884–6.
139. Steensberg A, Fischer CP, Keller C, Møller K, Pedersen BK. IL-6 enhances plasma IL-1ra, IL-10, and cortisol in humans. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab. 2003;285:E433–7.
140. Bruunsgaard H. Physical activity and modulation of systemic low-level inflammation. J Leukoc Biol. 2005;78:819–35.
141. Pedersen BK, Hoffman-Goetz L. Exercise and the immune system: regulation, integration, and adaptation. Physiol Rev. 2000;80:1055–81.
142. Brandt C, Pedersen BK. The role of exercise-induced myokines in muscle homeostasis and the defense against chronic diseases. J Biomed Biotechnol. 2010;2010:520258. https://doi.org/10.1155/2010/520258.
143. Pedersen BK, Steensberg A, Fischer C, Keller C, Keller P, et al. Searching for the exercise factor: is IL-6 a candidate? J Muscle Res Cell Motil. 2003;24:113–9.
144. Gracie JA, Robertson SE, McInnes IB. Interleukin-18. J Leukoc Biol. 2003;73:213–24.
145. Netea MG, Joosten LA, Lewis E, Jensen DR, Voshol PJ, Kullberg BJ, et al. Deficiency of interleukin-18 in mice leads to hyperphagia, obesity and insulin resistance. Nat Med. 2006;12:65–6.
146. Dezayee ZM. Interleukin-18 can predict pre-clinical atherosclerosis and poor glycemic control in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Int J Appl Basic Med Res. 2011;1:109–12.
147. Miyauchi K, Takiyama Y, Honjyo J, Tateno M, Haneda M. Upregulated IL-18 expression in type 2 diabetic subjects with nephropathy: TGF-β 1 enhanced IL-18 expression in human renal proximal tubular epithelial cells. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2009;83:190–9.
148. Skurk T, Kolb H, Muller-Scholze S, et al. The proatherogenic cytokine interleukin-18 is secreted by human adipocytes. Eur J Endocrinol. 2005;152:863–8.
149. Esposito K, Pontillo A, Ciotola M, et al. Weight loss reduces interleukin-18 levels in obese women. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2002;87:3864–6.
150. Schernthaner GH, Kopp HP, Kriwanek S, et al. Effect of massive weight loss induced by bariatric surgery on serum levels of interleukin-18 and monocyte-chemoattractant- protein-1 in morbid obesity. Obes Surg. 2006;16:709–15.
151. Schernthaner J, McQuillan BM, Chapman CM, Thompson PL, Beilby JP. Elevated interleukin-18 levels are associated with the metabolic syndrome independent of obesity and insulin resistance. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2005;25:1268–73.
152. Blankenberg S, Luc G, Ducimetiere P, Arveiler D, Ferrières J, Amouyel P, et al. Interleukin-18 and the risk of coronary heart disease in European men: the Prospective Epidemiological Study of Myocardial Infarction (PRIME). Circulation. 2003;108:2453–9.
153. Li MO, Flavell RA. TGF-β: a master of all T cell trades. Cell. 2008;134:392–404.
154. Tran DQ. TGF-β: the sword, the wand, and the shield of FOXP3+ regulatory T cells. J Mol Cell Biol. 2012;4:29–37.
155. Ghoreschi K, Laurence A, Yang XP, Tato CM, McGeachy MJ, Konkel JE, et al. Generation of pathogenic TH17 cells in the absence of TGF-beta signalling. Nature. 2010;467:967–71.
156. Gutcher I, Donkor MK, Ma Q, Rudensky AY, Flavell RA, Li MO. Autocrine transforming growth factor-β1 promotes in vivo Th17 cell differentiation. Immunity. 2011;34:396–408.
157. Li MO, Wan YY, Flavell RA. T cell-produced transforming growth factor-beta1 controls T cell tolerance and regulates Th1- and Th17-cell differentiation. Immunity. 2007;26:579–91.
158. Khali N. TGF-beta: from latent to active. Microbes Infect. 1999;1:1255–63.
159. Herder C, Zierer A, Koening W, Roden M, Meisinger C, Thorand B. Transforming growth factor-beta1 and incident type 2 diabetes: results from the MONICA/KORA case-cohort study, 1984-2002. Diabetes Care. 2009;32:1921–3.
160. Steppan CM, Brown EJ, Wright CM, Bhat S, Banerjee RR, Dai CY, Enders GH, et al. A family of tissue-specific resistin-like molecules. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98:502–6.
161. McTernan PG, McTernan CL, Chetty R, Jenner K, Fisher FM, Lauer MN, et al. Increased resistin gene and protein expression in human abdominal adipose tissue. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2002;87:2407–10.
162. Bertolani C, Sancho-Bru P, Failli P, Bataller R, Aleffi S, De-Franco R, et al. Resistin as an intrahepatic cytokine: overexpression during chronic injury and induction of proinflammatory actions in hepatic stellate cells. Am J Pathol. 2006;169:2042–53.
163. Jung HS, Park KH, Cho YM, Chung SS, Cho HJ, Cho SY, et al. Resistin is secreted from macrophages in atheromas and promotes atherosclerosis. Cardiovasc Res. 2006;69:76–85.
164. Janke J, Engeli S, Gorzelniak K, Luft FC, Sharma AM. Resistin gene expression in human adipocytes is not related to insulin resistance. Obes Res. 2002;10:1–5.

165. Samaha FF, Szapary PO, Iqbal N, Williams MM, Bloedon LT, Kochar A, et al. Effects of rosiglitazone on lipids, adipokines, and inflammatory markers in nondiabetic patients with low high-density lipoprotein cholesterol and metabolic syndrome. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2006;26:624–30.
166. Lee JH, Bullen JW Jr, Stoyneva VL, Mantzoros CS. Circulating resistin in lean, obese, and insulin-resistant mouse models: lack of association with insulinemia and glycemia. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab. 2005;288:E625–32.
167. Lazar MA. Resistin- and Obesity-associated metabolic diseases. Horm Metab Res. 2007;39:710–6.
168. Azuma K, Katsukawa F, Oguchi S, Murata M, Yamazaki H, Shimada A, et al. Correlation between serum resistin level and adiposity in obese individuals. Obes Res. 2003;11:997–1001.
169. Silha JV, Krsek M, Skrha JV, Sucharda P, Nyomba BL, Murphy LJ. Plasma resistin, adiponectin and leptin levels in lean and obese subjects: correlations with insulin resistance. Eur J Endocrinol. 2003;149:331–5.
170. Youn BS, KY YU, Park HJ, Roberts CK, JAE M, Rifai N, et al. Plasma resistin concentrations measured by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay using a newly developed monoclonal antibody are elevated in individuals with type 2 diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2004;89:150–6.
171. McTernan PG, Fisher FM, Valsamakis G, Chetty R, Harte A, MCternan CL. Resistin and type 2 diabetes: Regulation of resistin expression by insulin and rosiglitazone and the effects of recombinant resistin on lipid and glucose metabolism in human differentiated adipocytes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2003;88:6098–106.
172. Heilbronn LK, Rood J, Janderova L, Albu JB, Kelley DE, Ravussin E, et al. Relationship between serum resistin concentrations and insulin resistance in nonobese, obese, and obese diabetic subjects. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2004;89:1844–8.
173. Zou CC, Liang L, Hong F, Zhao ZY. Serum adiponectin, resistin levels and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in obese children. Endocr J. 2005;52:519–24.
174. Reinehr T, Roth CL, Menke T, Andler W. Resistin concentrations before and after weight loss in obese children. Int J Obes. 2006;30:297–301.
175. Chen BH, Song Y, Ding EL, Roberts CK, Manson JE, Rifai N, et al. Circulating levels of resistin and risk of type 2 diabetes in men and women: results from two prospective cohorts. Diabetes Care. 2009 Feb;32(2):329–34.
176. Heidemann C, Sun Q, van Dam RM, Meigs JB, Zhang C, Tworoger SS, et al. Total and high-molecular-weight adiponectin and resistin in relation to the risk for type 2 diabetes in women. Ann Intern Med. 2008;149:307–16.
177. Lehrke M, Reilly MP, Millington SC, Iqbal N, Rader DJ, Lazar MA. An inflammatory cascade leading to hyperresistinemia in humans. PLoS Med. 2004;1:e45.
178. Burnett MS, Lee CW, Kinnaird TD, Stabile E, Durrani S, Dullum MK, et al. The potential role of resistin in atherogenesis. Atherosclerosis. 2005;182:241–8.
179. Chen C, Jiang J, Lü JM, Chai H, Wang X, Lin PH, et al. Resistin decreases expression of endothelial nitric oxide synthase through oxidative stress in human coronary artery endothelial cells. Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol. 2010;299:H193–201.
180. Mu H, Ohashi R, Yan S, Chai H, Yang H, Lin P, et al. Adipokine resistin promotes in vitro angiogenesis of human endothelial cells. Cardiovasc Res. 2006;70:146–57.
181. Shen YH, Zhang L, Gan Y, Wang X, Wang J, LeMaire SA, et al. Up-regulation of PTEN (phosphatase and tensin homolog deleted on chromosome ten) mediates p38 MAPK stress signal-induced inhibition of insulin signaling. A cross-talk between stress signaling and insulin signaling in resistin-treated human endothelial cells. J Biol Chem. 2006;281:7727–36.
182. Reilly MP, Lehrke M, Wolfe ML, Rohatgi A, Lazar MA, Rader DJ. Resistin is an inflammatory marker of atherosclerosis in humans. Circulation. 2005;111:932–9.
183. Tarkowski A, Bjersing J, Shestakov A, Bokarewa MI, et al. Resistin competes with lipopolysaccharide for binding to toll-like receptor 4. J Cell Mol Med. 2010;14:1419–31.
184. Zhang F, Basinski MB, Beals JM, Briggs SL, Churgay LM, Clawson DK, et al. Crystal structure of the obese protein leptin-E100. Nature. 1997;387:206–9.
185. Zhang Y, Proenca R, Maffei M, Barone M, Leopold L, Friedman JM. Positional cloning of the mouse obese gene and its human homologue. Nature. 1994;372:425–32.
186. Katagiri H, Yamada T, Oka Y. Adiposity and cardiovascular disorders: disturbance of the regulatory system consisting of humoral and neuronal signals. Circ Res. 2007;101:27–39.
187. Frühebeck G. Intracellular signaling pathways activated by leptin. Biochem J. 2006;393:7–20.
188. Wang M, Orci L, Ravazzola M, Unger RH. Fat storage in adipocytes requires inactivation of leptin's paracrine activity: Implications for treatment of human obesity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005;102:18011–6.
189. Courtier C, Sarkis C, Séron K, Belouzard S, Chen P, Lenain A, et al. Silencing of OB-RGRP in mouse hypothalamic arcuate nucleus increases leptin receptor signaling and prevents diet-induced obesity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2007;104:19476–81.
190. Peelman F, Zabeau L, Moharana K, Savvides SN, Tavernier J. 20 years of leptin: insights into signaling assemblies of the leptin receptor. J Endocrinol. 2014;223:T9–T23.
191. Wang B, Chandrasekera PC, Pippin JJ. Leptin- and leptin receptor-deficient rodent models: relevance for human type2 diabetes. Curr Diabetes Rev. 2014;10:131–45.
192. Wauters M, Considine M, Van Gaal L. Human leptin: From an adipocyte hormone to an endocrine mediator. Eur J Endocrinol. 2000;143:293–311.
193. Ceddia RB, Heikki AK, Zierath JR, Sweeney G. Analysis of paradoxical observations on the association between leptin and insulin resistance. FASEB J. 2002;16:1163–76.
194. Ziotopoulou M, Erani DM, Hileman SM, Bjorbaek C, Mantzoros CS. Unlike leptin, ciliary neurotrophic factor does not reverse the starvation-induced changes of serum corticosterone and hypothalamic neuropeptide levels but induces expression of hypothalamic inhibitors of leptin signaling. Diabetes. 2000;49:1890–6.
195. Camisotto PG, Bukowiecki LJ. Mechanisms of leptin secretion from white adipocytes. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol. 2002;283:C244–50.
196. Morioka T, Asilmaz E, Hu J, Dishinger JF, Kurpad AJ, Elias CF, et al. Disruption of leptin receptor expression in the pancreas directly affects beta cell growth and function in mice. J Clin Invest. 2007;117:2860–8.
197. Seufert J. Leptin effects on pancreatic beta-cell gene expression and function. Diabetes. 2004;53:152–8.
198. Sánchez-Margalet V, Martín-Romero C, Santos-Alvarez J, Goberna R, Najib S, Gonzalez-Yanes C. Role of leptin as an immunomodulator of blood mononuclear cells: mechanisms of action. Clin Exp Immunol. 2003;133:11–9.
199. Zarkesh-Esfahani H, Pockley AG, Wu Z, Hellewell PG, Weetman AP, Ross RJ. Leptin indirectly activates human neutrophils via induction of TNF-alpha. J Immunol. 2004;172:1809–14.
200. Farooqi IS, Matarese G, Lord GM, Keogh JM, Lawrence E, Agwu C, et al. Beneficial effects of leptin on obesity, T cell hyporesponsiveness, and neuroendocrine/metabolic dysfunction of human congenital leptin deficiency. J Clin Invest. 2002;110:1093–103.
201. Meier CA, Bobbioni E, Gabay C, Assimacopoulos-Jeannet F, Golay A, Dayer JM. IL-1 receptor antagonist serum levels are increased in human obesity: A possible link to the resistance to leptin? J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2002;87:1184–8.

202. Bruun JM, Pedersen SB, Kristensen K, Richelsen B. Effects of proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines on leptin production in human adipose tissue in vitro. Mol Cell Endocrinol. 2002;190:91–9.
203. La Cava A, Matarese G. The weight of leptin in immunity. Nat Rev Immunol. 2004;4:371–9.
204. Moraes-Vieira PM, Larocca RA, Bassi EJ, Peron JP. Andrade-Oliveira V, Wasinski F, et al. Leptin deficiency impairs maturation of dendritic cells and enhances induction of regulatory T and Th17 cells. Eur J Immunol. 2014;44:794–806.
205. Papathanassoglou E, El-Haschimi K, Li XC, Matarese G, Strom T, Mantzoros C. Leptin receptor expression and signaling in lymphocytes: kinetics during lymphocyte activation, role in lymphocyte survival, and response to high fat diet in mice. J Immunol. 2006;176:7745–52.
206. Tian Z, Sun R, Wei H, Gao B. Impaired natural killer (NK) cell activity in leptin receptor deficient mice: leptin as a critical regulator in NK cell development and activation. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2002;298:297–302.
207. Lo CK, Lam QL. Yang, Ko KH, Sun L, Ma R, Wang S. et al., Leptin signaling protects NK cells from apoptosis during development in mouse bone marrow. Cell Mol Immunol. 2009;6:353–60.
208. Volarevic A, Al-Qahtani A, Arsenijevic N, Pajovic C, Lukic ML. Interleukin-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1Ra) and IL-1Ra producing mesenchymal stem cells as modulators of diabetogenesis. Autoimmunity. 2010;43:255–63.
209. Herder C, Brunner EJ, Rathmann W, Strassburger K, Tabák AG, Schloot NC, et al. Elevated levels of the anti- inflammatory interleukin-1 receptor antagonist precede the onset of type 2 diabetes: the Whitehall II study. Diabetes Care. 2009;32:421–3.
210. Salomaa V, Havulinna A, Saarela O, Zeller T, Jousilahti P, Jula A, et al. Thirty-one novel biomarkers as predictors for clinically incident diabetes. PLoS One. 2010;5:e10100. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0010100.
211. Larsen CM, Faulenbach M, Vaag A, Vølund A, Ehses JA, Seifert B, Mandrup-Poulsen T, et al. Interleukin-1-receptor antagonist in type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2007;356:1517–26.
212. Ehses JA, Lacraz G, Giroix MH, Schmidlin F, Coulaud J, Kassis N, et al. IL-1 antagonism reduces hyperglycemia and tissue inflammation in the type 2 diabetic GK rat. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2009;106:13998–4003.
213. Sauter NS, Schulthess FT, Galasso R, Castellani LW, Maedler K. The anti-inflammatory cytokine interleukin-1 receptor antagonist protects from high-fat diet-induced hyperglycemia. Endocrinology. 2008;149:2208–18.
214. Paul WE. Interleukin 4: signaling mechanisms and control of T cell differentiation. Ciba Found Symp. 1997;204:208–16.
215. Garcia-Zepeda EA, Combadiere C, Rothenberg ME, Sarafi MN, Lavigne F, Hamid Q, et al. Human monocyte chemoattractant protein-4 is a novel CC chemokine with activates on macrophage, eosinophils, and basophils induced in allergic and non-allergic inflammation that signals through the CC chemokine receptors (CCR)–2 and-3. J Immunol. 1996;157:5613–26.
216. Kang K, Reilly SM, Karabacak V, Gangl MR, Fitzgerald K, Hatano B, et al. Adipocyte-derived Th2 cytokines and myeloid PPARdelta regulate macrophage polarization and insulin sensitivity. Cell Metab. 2008;7:485–95.
217. Nelms K, Keegan AD, Zamorano J, Ryan JJ, Paul WE. The IL-4 receptor: signaling mechanisms and biologic functions. Annu Rev Immunol. 1999;17:701–38.
218. Odegaard JI, Ricardo-Gonzalez RR, Red Eagle A, Vats D, Morel CR, Goforth MH, et al. Alternative M2 activation of Kupffer cells by PPARδ ameliorates obesity-induced insulin resistance. Cell Metab. 2008;7:496–507.
219. Tsao CH, Shiau MY, Chuang PH, Chang YH, Hwang J. Interleukin-4 regulates lipid metabolism by inhibiting adipogenesis and promoting lipolysis. J Lipid Res. 2014;55:385–97.
220. Shiau MY, Lu HF, Chang YH, Chiu YC, Shih YL. Characterization of proteins regulated by interleukin-4 in 3T3-L1 adipocytes. Springerplus. 2015;4:242. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40064-015-0980-0.
221. Chang YH, Ho KT, Lu SH, Huang CN. Shiau MY Regulation of glucose/lipid metabolism and insulin sensitivity by interleukin-4. Int J Obes. 2012a;36:993–8.
222. Chang YH, Huang CN, Shiau MY. Association of IL-4 receptor gene polymorphisms with high density lipoprotein cholesterol. Cytokine. 2012b;59:309–12.
223. Ho KT, Shiau MY, Chang YH, Chen CM, Yang SC, Huang CN. Association of IL-4 promoter polymorphisms in Taiwanese patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Metabolism. 2010;59:1717–22.
224. Moore KW, de Waal MR, Coffman RL, O'Garra A. Interleukin-10 and the interleukin-10 receptor. Annu Rev Immunol. 2001;19:683–765.
225. Han X, Boisvert WA. Interleukin-10 protects against atherosclerosis by modulating multiple atherogenic macrophage function. Thromb Haemost. 2015;113:505–12.
226. Kyriazi E, Tsiotra PC, Boutati E, Ikonomidis I, Fountoulaki K, Maratou E. Effects of adiponectin in TNF-α, IL-6, and IL-10 cytokine production from coronary artery disease macrophages. Horm Metab Res. 2011;43:537–44.
227. O'Garra A, Barrat FJ, Castro AG, Vicari A, Hawrylowicz C. Strategies for use of IL-10 or its antagonists in human disease. Immunol Rev. 2008;223:114–31.
228. Sabat R, Grütz G, Warszawska K, Kirsch S, Witte E, Wolk K, et al. Biology of interleukin-10. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2010;21:331–4.
229. Li MO, Flavell RA. Contextual regulation of inflammation: a duet by transforming growth factor-β and interleukin-10. Immunity. 2008;28:468–76.
230. Lynch L. Adipose invariant natural killer T cells. Immunol. 2014;142:337–46.
231. Hong EG, Ko HJ, Cho YR, Kim HJ, Ma Z, Yu TY, et al. Interleukin-10 prevents diet-induced insulin resistance by attenuating macrophage and cytokine response in skeletal muscle. Diabetes. 2009;58:2525–35.
232. Van Exel E, Gussekloo J, de Craen AJ, Frölich M, Bootsma-Van Der Wiel A, Westendorp RG. Low production capacity of interleukin-10 associates with the metabolic syndrome and type 2 diabetes: the Leiden 85-Plus Study. Diabetes. 2002;51:1088–92.
233. Blüher M, Fasshauer M, Tönjes A, Kratzsch J, Schön MR, Paschke R. Association of interleukin-6, C-reactive protein, interleukin-10 and adiponectin plasma concentrations with measures of obesity, insulin sensitivity and glucose metabolism. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes. 2005;113:534–7.
234. Pham MN, Hawa MI, Pfleger C, Roden M, Schernthaner G, Pozzilli P, et al. Pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokines in latent autoimmune diabetes in adults, type 1 and type 2 diabetes patients: Action LADA 4. Diabetologia. 2011;54:1630–8.
235. Welsh P, Murray HM, Ford I, Trompet S, de Craen AJ, Jukema JW, et al. Circulating interleukin-10 and risk of cardiovascular events: a prospective study in the elderly at risk. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2011;31:2338–44.
236. Francisco CO, Catai AM, Moura-Tonello SCG, Arruda LCM, Lopes SLB, Benze BG, et al. Cytokine profile and lymphocyte subsets in type 2 diabetes. Braz J Med Biol Res. 2016;49:e5062.
237. Li S, Shin HJ, Ding EL, VanDam RM. Adiponectin levels and risk of type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA. 2009;302:179–88.
238. Scherer PE, Williams S, Fogliano M, Baldini G, Lodish HF. A novel serum protein similar to C1q, produced exclusively in adipocytes. J Biol Chem. 1995;270:26746–9.
239. Calle MC, Fernandez ML. Inflammation and type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Metab. 2012;38:183–91.

240. Silva TE, Colombo G, Schiavon LL. Adiponectin: A multitasking player in the field of liver diseases. Diabetes Metab. 2014;40:95–107.
241. Maeda N, Takahashi M, Funahashi T, Kihara S, Nishizawa H, Kishida K, et al. PPAR gamma ligands increase expression and plasma concentrations of adiponectin, an adipose-derived protein. Diabetes. 2001;50:2094–9.
242. Liu C, Feng X, Li Q, Wang Y, Li Q, Hua M. Adiponectin, TNF-α and inflammatory cytokines and risk of type 2 diabetes: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Cytokine. 2016;86:100–9.
243. Weyer C, Funahashi T, Tanaka S, Hotta K, Matsuzawa Y, Pratley RE, et al. Hypoadiponectinemia in obesity and type 2 diabetes: Close association with insulin resistance and hyperinsulinemia. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2001;86:1930–5.
244. Cnop M, Havel PJ, Utzschneider KM, Carr DB, Sinha MK, Boyko EJ, et al. Relationship of adiponectin to body fat distribution, insulin sensitivity and plasma lipoproteins: Evidence for independent roles of age and sex. Diabetologia. 2003;46:459–69.
245. Fisman EZ, Tenenbaum A. Adiponectin: a manifold therapeutic target for metabolic syndrome, diabetes, and coronary disease? Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2014;13:103. https://doi.org/10.1186/1475-2840-13-103.
246. Vionnet N, Hani EH, Dupont S, Gallina S, Francke S, Dotte S, et al. Genome wide search for type 2 diabetes-susceptibility genes in French whites: evidence for a novel susceptibility locus for early-onset diabetes on chromosome 3q27-qter and independent replication of a type 2-diabetes locus on chromosome 1q21-q24. Am J Hum Genet. 2000;67:1470–80.
247. Kopf S, Oikonomou D, von Eynaten K, Kiesser M, Zdunek D, Hess G, et al. Urinary excretion of high molecular weight adiponectin is an independent predictor of decline of renal function in type 2 diabetes. Acta Diabetol. 2014;51:479–89.
248. Iwabu M, Yamauchi T, Okada-Iwabu M, Sato K, Nakagawa T, Funata M, et al. Adiponectin and adipoR1 regulate PGC-1a and mitochondria by Ca2+ and AMPK/ SIRT1. Nature. 2010;464:1313–9.
249. Holland WL, Miller RA, Wang ZV, Sun K, Barth BM, Bui HH, et al. Receptor- mediated activation of ceramidase activity initiates the pleiotropic actions of adiponectin. Nat Med. 2011;17:55–63.
250. Viollet B, Foretz M, Guigas B, Horman S, Dentin R, Bertrand L, et al. Activation of AMP-activated protein kinase in the liver: a new strategy for the management of metabolic hepatic disorders. J Physiol. 2006;574(Pt 1):41–53.
251. Luo S, Lei H, Liu Q. Correlation between serum adiponectin and risk factors in patients with coronary artery disease. Clin Lab. 2013;59:121–6.
252. Hirata A, Kishida K, Nakatsuji H, Kobayashi H, Funahashi T, Shimomura I. High serum C1q-adiponectin/total adiponectin ratio correlates with coronary artery disease in Japanese type 2 diabetics. Metabolism. 2013;62:578–85.
253. OkamotoY KS, Ouchi N, Nishida M, Arita Y, Kumada M, et al. Adiponectin reduces atherosclerosis in apolipoprotein E-deficient mice. Circulation. 2002;106:2767–70.
254. Xu A, Wang Y, Keshaw H, Xu LY, Lam KS, Cooper GJ. The fat-derived hormone adiponectin alleviates alcoholic and nonalcoholic fatty liver diseases in mice. J Clin Invest. 2003;112:91–100.
255. Deng G, Long Y, Yu YR, Li MR. Adiponectin directly improves endothelial dysfunction in obese rats through the AMPK-eNOS Pathway. Int J Obes. 2010;34:165–71.
256. Ohashi K, Parker JL, Ouchi N, Higuchi A, Vita JA, Gokce N, et al. Adiponectin promotes macrophage polarization toward an anti-inflammatory phenotype. J Biol Chem. 2010;285:6153–60.
257. Takemura Y, Ouchi N, Shibata R, Aprahamian T, Kirber MT, Summer RS, et al. Adiponectin modulates inflammatory reactions via calreticulin receptor-dependent clearance of early apoptotic bodies. J Clin Invest. 2007;117:375–86.
258. Wilk S, Scheibenbogen C, Bauer S, Jenke A, Rother M, Guerreiro M, et al. Adiponectin is a negative regulator of antigen-activated T cells. Eur J Immunol. 2011;41:2323–32.
259. Wilk S, Jenke A, Stehr J, Yang CA, Bauer S, Goldner K, et al. Adiponectin modulates NK-cell function. Eur J Immunol. 2013;43:1024–33.
260. Yokota T, Oritani K, Takahashi I, Ishikawa J, Matsuyama A, Ouchi N, et al. Adiponectin, a new member of the family of soluble defense collagens, negatively regulates the growth of myelomonocytic progenitors and the functions of macrophages. Blood. 2000;96:1723–32.
261. Kumada M, Kihara S, Ouchi N, Kobayashi H, Okamoto Y, Ohashi K, et al. Adiponectin specifically increased tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase-1 through interleukin-10 expression inhuman macrophages. Circulation. 2004;109:2046–9.
262. Yamauchi T, Kamon J, Ito Y, Tsuchida A, Yokomizo T, Kita S, et al. Cloning of adiponectin receptors that mediate antidiabetic metabolic effects. Nature. 2003;423:762–9.
263. Koch CE, Lowe C, Legler K, Benzler J, Boucsein M, Böttiger G, et al. Central adiponectin acutely improves glucose tolerance in male mice. Endocrinology. 2014;155:1806–16.
264. Coope A, Milanski M, Araújo EP, Tambascia M, Saad MJ, Geloneze B, et al. AdipoR1 mediates the anorexigenic and insulin/leptin-like actions of adiponectin in the hypothalamus. FEBS Lett. 2008;582:1471–6.
265. Goldfine AB, Conlin PR, Halperin F, Koska J, Permana P, Schwenke D, et al. A randomised trial of salsalate for insulin resistance and cardiovascular risk factors in persons with abnormal glucose tolerance. Diabetologia. 2013;56:714–23.
266. Barzilay JI, Jablonski KA, Fonseca V, Shoelson SE, Goldfine AB, Strauch C, et al. The impact of salsalate treatment on serum levels of advanced glycation end products in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2014;37:1083–91.
267. Koppaka S, Kehlenbrink S, Carey M, Li W, Sanchez E, Lee DE, et al. Reduced adipose tissue macrophage content is associated with improved insulin sensitivity in thiazolidinedione-treated diabetic humans. Diabetes. 2013;62:1843–54.
268. Ahmadian M, Suh JM, Hah N, Liddle C, Atkins AR, Downes M, et al. PPARgamma signaling and metabolism: the good, the bad and the future. Nat Med. 2013;19:557–66.
269. Dutchak PA, Katafuchi T, Bookout AL, Choi JH, Yu RT, Mangelsdorf DJ, et al. Fibroblast growth factor-21 regulates PPARgamma activity and the antidiabetic actions of thiazolidinediones. Cell. 2012;148:556–67.
270. Ida S, Murata K, Betou K, Kobayashi C, Ishihara Y, Imataka K. Effect of trelagliptin on vascular endothelial functions and serum adiponectin level in patients with type 2 diabetes: a preliminary single-arm prospective pilot study. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2016;15:153. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12933-016-0468-4.
271. Hensen J, Howard CP, Walter V, Thuren T. Impact of interleukin-1beta antibody (canakinumab) on glycaemic indicators in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: results of secondary endpoints from a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. Diabetes Metab. 2013;39:524–31.
272. Sloan-Lancaster J, Abu-Raddad E, Polzer J, Miller JW, Scherer JC, De Gaetano A, et al. Double-blind, randomized study evaluating the glycemic and anti-inflammatory effects of subcutaneous LY2189102, a neutralizing IL-1beta antibody, in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:2239–46.
273. Oh DY, Talukdar S, Bae EJ, Imamura T, Morinaga H, Fan W, et al. GPR120 is an omega-3 fatty acid receptor mediating potent anti-inflammatory and insulin-sensitizing effects. Cell. 2010;42:687–98.
274. Tousoulis D, Plastiras A, Siasos G, Oikonomou E, Verveniotis A, Kokkou E, et al. Omega-3 PUFAs improved endothelial function

and arterial stiffness with a parallel antiinflammatory effect in adults with metabolic syndrome. Atherosclerosis. 2014;232:10–6.
275. Rylander C, Sandanger TM, Engeset D, Lund E. Consumption of lean fish reduces the risk of type 2 diabetes mellitus: a prospective population based cohort study of Norwegian women. PLoS One. 2014;9:e89845.
276. Dalmas E, Venteclef N, Caer C, Poitou C, Cremer I, Aron-Wisnewsky J, et al. T cell-derived IL-22 amplifies IL-1-driven inflammation in human adipose tissue: relevance to obesity and type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2014;63:1966–77.

Suggested/Further Reading

Bai Y, Sun Q. Macrophage recruitment in obese adipose tissue. Obes Rev. 2015;16:127–36.

Eljaafari A, Robert M, Chehimi M, Chanon S, Durand C, Vial G, et al. Adipose tissue–derived stem cells from obese subjects contribute to inflammation and reduced insulin response in adipocytes through differential regulation of the Th1/Th17 balance and monocyte activation. Diabetes. 2015;64:2477–88.

Ferrante AW Jr. The immune cells in adipose tissue. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2013;15:34–8.

Grant RW, Dixit VD. Adipose tissue as an immunological organ. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2015;23:512–8.

Ip B, Cilfone N, Belkina AC, DeFuria J, Jagannathan-Bogdan M, Zhu M, et al. Th17 cytokines differentiate obesity from obesity-associated type 2 diabetes and promote TNF-α production. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2016;24:102–12.

Olson NC, Doyle MF, de Boer IH, Huber SA, Jenny NS, Kronma RA, et al. Associations of circulating lymphocyte subpopulations with type 2 diabetes: cross- sectional results from the Multi-Ethnic Study of Atherosclerosis (MESA). PLoS One. 2015;10:e0139962. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0139962.

Pirola L, Ferraz JC. Role of pro- and anti-inflammatory phenomena in the physiopathology of type 2 diabetes and obesity. World J Biol Chem. 2017;8:120–8.

Dysfunction and Death of Pancreatic Beta Cells in Type 2 Diabetes

12

Clara Ortega-Camarillo

Abbreviations

$^{\circ}$OH	Hydroxyl radical
8-OHdG	8-hydroxy-2′-deoxyguanosine
AGE	Advanced glycation end products
AIF	Apoptosis-inducing factor
Apaf-1	Apoptotic protease-activating factor 1
ATF6	Activating transcription factor 6
ATM	ATM serine/threonine kinase protein
Bak	Bcl-2 homologous antagonist killer
Bax	Bcl-2-associated X protein
Bcl-2	B-cell lymphoma 2
Bcl-xl	B-cell lymphoma-extra large
BH (1–4)	Bcl-2 homology 1–4 domains
Bok	Bcl-2 related ovarian killer
Caspase	Cysteine-aspartic proteases, cysteine aspartases
CHOP	C/EBP homologous protein
ChREBP	Carbohydrate response element binding protein
Drp1	Dynamin-related protein 1
eif2α	Eukaryotic translation initiation factor 2α
ER	Endoplasmic reticulum
ERS	Endoplasmic reticulum stress
EZH2	Enhancer of zeste homologue 2
FADD	Fas-associated death domain
Fas	Death receptor
FFA	Free fatty acids
Fis1	Mitochondrial fission 1 protein
FOXA1/2	Forkhead box A1/2
G3P	Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate
GADD34	Downstream growth arrest and DNA damage-inducible protein
GAPDH	Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase
GATA4/6	GATA-binding protein 4/6
GLUT	Glucose transporter
GSIS	Glucose-stimulated insulin secretion
H3K27me3	Histone H3 tri methyl K27
HNF1β	Hepatocyte nuclear factor 1β
IAPP	Islet amyloid polypeptide
IFNγ	Interferon gamma
IGF1	Insulin-like growth factor 1
IL-1β	Interleukin 1 beta
iNOS	Inducible nitric oxide synthases
Ins	Insulin gene
INS1	Insulin-secreting beta cell-derived line
IRE1α	Inositol-requiring enzyme 1α
IRS-2	Insulin receptor substrate-2
Isl	Islet
MafA	Musculoaponeurotic fibrosarcoma protein A
Mdm2	Murine double minute 2
Mff	Mitochondrial fission factor
Mfn	Mitofusin
Mouse *db/db*	Model of obesity, diabetes, and dyslipidemia with a mutation in leptin receptor
mTOR	Mammalian target of rapamycin
NAD^+	Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide
NADH	Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide reduced
NADPH oxi	Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate-oxidase
NeuroD1	Neurogenic differentiation 1
NF-κB	Nuclear factor kappa B
Nkx	Homeobox protein
NLRP3	NACHT, LRR, and PYD domains-containing protein 3
NLRs	Nucleotide oligomerization domain (NOD)-like receptors
NO	Nitric oxide
NOD	Nucleotide oligomerization domain
Notch	Transcription factor
O^{-2}	Superoxide anion
O-GlcNAc	O-linked β-N-acetylglucosamine
Opa1	Opa1 mitochondrial dynamin like GTPase
P/CAF	P300/CBP-associated factor
p16	Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A, multiple tumor suppressor 1

C. Ortega-Camarillo (✉)
Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Centro Médico Nacional Siglo XXI, Instituto Mexicano del Seguro Social, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_12

p21	Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 1 or CDK-interacting protein 1
p27	Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 1B
p300/CBP	E1A binding protein p300/CREB-binding protein
p38 MAPK	P38 mitogen-activated protein kinases
p53	Tumor protein p53
PARP	Poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase
Pax4	Transcription factors paired box gene 4
Pdx1	Pancreatic and duodenal homeobox 1
PERK	Protein kinase-like ER kinase
PI3k	Phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase
PKC	Protein kinase C
PP-1	Protein phosphatase-1
Ptf1α	Pancreas transcription factor 1α
RAMP1	Receptor activity-modifying protein 1
Rfx 6	Regulatory factor x 6
RING finger	Really Interesting New Gene
RINm5F	Rat insulinoma cells
ROS	Reactive oxygen species
Sox9 SRY	Sex-determining region Y-box 9
SPT	Serine C-palmitoyltransferase
T2D	Type 2 diabetes
TLRs	Toll-like receptors
TNFRI	Tumor necrosis factor receptor type I
TNFα	Tumor necrosis factor alpha
TXNIP	Thioredoxin-interacting protein
UCP2	Uncoupling protein 2
UDP-GlcNAc	Uridine diphosphate N-acetylglucosamine
UPR	Unfolded protein response
ΔΨm	Mitochondrial membrane potential

Chapter Objectives

- To briefly describe the embryonic development of pancreatic β
- To analyze the universal literature on the mechanisms that underlie the loss of pancreatic β-cell mass
- To provide information on the regulation of p53 by hyperglycemia and its participation in the induction of pancreatic β-cell apoptosis

Introduction

Insulin produced and secreted by β-cells is responsible for blood glucose level regulation. The major stimulus for insulin secretion is glucose itself. When the latter is taken by β-cells in a process mediated by the glucose transporter 2 (GLUT 2), it enters the glycolytic pathway, the Krebs cycle, and oxidative phosphorylation, and it promotes the increase of the ATP/ADP ratio. Subsequently, this leads to the closure of the ATP-dependent potassium channels, to membrane depolarization, and to Ca^{2+} influx through the voltage-dependent Ca^{2+} channels. An increase of cytosolic Ca^{2+} is the signal that triggers glucose-stimulated insulin secretion (GSIS). Alterations of insulin secretion and glycemia increases lead to the settlement of type 2 diabetes (T2D). Additionally, this disease depends on external factors such as diet, body weight, and genetic background that may delay or enhance all clinical sings of the disease. It is known that, in modern society, an increased carbohydrate intake and the lack of exercising lead to the development of obesity. This condition increases insulin demand in order to maintain normal glycemia, thus the ability of β-cells in order to fulfill the insulin requirements is critical to preserve glucose homeostasis. The initial response toward an increased insulin demand is adaptive *hyperplasia* and an increased synthesis of the hormone. However, if *insulin resistance* persists during extended time periods, β-cells become exhausted and their mass decreases due to an increase of the apoptotic rate and consequently hyperglycemia appears. This latter condition activates several metabolic pathways impairing β-cells, such as glucolipotoxicity, mitochondrial alterations, reactive oxygen species (ROS) as well as oxidative stress and endoplasmic reticulum stress (ERS), proinflammatory cytokines, deposition of amyloid polypeptide, and p53 translocation to mitochondria (Fig. 12.1). Recently, it has been proposed that p53 protein is a major apoptosis trigger in β-cells during hyperglycemia conditions [1, 2]. These events impair β-cells by hampering their proliferative ability and also by decreasing insulin expression and secretion and promoting their death. Several of these alterations, either separate or combined, may be observed in T2D models, thus it is likely that β-cell loss in humans is linked to the activation of the aforementioned mechanisms and not to just one of them [3].

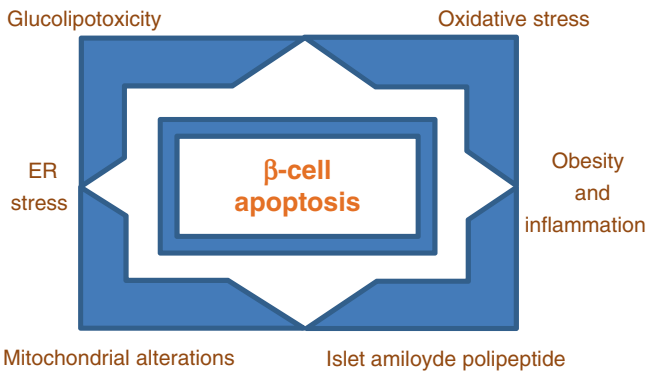


Fig. 12.1 Metabolic pathways by hyperglycemia-induced β-cell death. ER endoplasmic reticulum

The contribution from each one of such mechanisms to the decrease of pancreatic β-cell amounts will be reviewed in this chapter.

The Origin of β-Cells

Embryonic Development and Differentiation

During embryonic development or even during the first postnatal days, β-cell may be generated by stem or progenitor cells within the pancreatic ducts, bone marrow, or even pancreatic islets. Islet genesis initiates on the week 12 of gestation in humans. In weeks 13–16, the early endocrine precursor cells on the duct's wall form cell aggregates and generate an early islet. In weeks 17–20, the connection between islets and duct is lost and the islets are properly formed. At this stage, they contain only pancreatic polypeptide, somatostatin and glucagon derived from immature precursor cells. In weeks 21–26, β-cells are located at the islet center [4].

Studies conducted on rodents have allowed the identification of the molecular mechanisms regulating pancreatic β-cell establishment and differentiation. In mouse, it begins on the E8.5 day of development, and it depends on several factors secreted by neighboring early gut cells and mainly from vessels. During pancreas development several transcription factors intervene, such as the pancreatic transcription factor (Ptf1a) and the pancreatic and duodenal homeobox (Pdx1). Other factors such as SRY (sex-determining region Y)-box 9 (SOX9), forkhead box (FOX) A1/2, hepatocyte nuclear factor (HNF) 1β, and GATA4/6 have a critical participation during the establishment of the pancreatic progenitor cell pool. The development of endocrine progenitors requires Notch activation, whereas the formation of β-cells depends on Nkx 6.1, NeuroD1, the regulatory factor x (Rfx) 6, islet 1(Isl), Nkx2.2, and Pax4. The first hormone-producing cells are detected on E9.5 and their numbers increase by E13.5. At that time, the expression of β-cell-specific genes may be observed, such as GLUT 2 [5, 6].

Postnatal Development of the Pancreas

After birth, when feeding initiates, pancreatic mass increases because of the rapid expansion of the exocrine tissue. During the first 2 years of life, β-cell population keeps a 3–4% replication rate, and the pancreas reaches its maximum volume by 5–10 years old due to a decreased replication rate (0.05–0.1%) [7]. By the third decade of life, pancreatic mass is stabilized and constant until approximately 60 years of age. From that moment on, pancreas size begins to decrease [8] because of an increase of cell proliferation inhibitors such as p16, p26, p27, and cyclin D3, whereas Pdx1 decreases. The latter is needed for β-cell differentiation [4]. In rodents, the β-cell population is established during the first 4 weeks of life. In rats, between postnatal days 3 and 24, a proliferation rate of 3% occurs, and during this period apoptosis also contributes to β-cell population curtailing. However, this stage is highly influenced by the prevailing nutritional environment [9].

In adults, during physiological conditions such as pregnancy or during adaptation toward weight increase, it is possible to observe an increase of β-cell replication rates [10]. It has been demonstrated that β-cell replication may be induced in rodents by providing a high-fat diet or a chronic glucose in*fusion* [11]. Hyperglycemia also stimulates cell proliferation by activating glycolysis and by shortening the quiescence period of the cell cycle and also by promoting the G1-S transition through the activation of the ChREBP (carbohydrate response element binding protein) transcription factor [3]. This confirms β-cell adaptive ability when facing a metabolic demand.

β-Cell Dysfunction and the Loss of Pancreatic B-Cell Mass

Chronic exposition of β-cells to high glucose levels impairs their functions, and it may induce dedifferentiation and even death and a decreased pancreatic β-cell mass (β-cell failure). The onset of β-cell progressive deterioration and loss of function occurs at an earlier stage, before TD2 symptoms even appear, which are evident due to decreased insulin synthesis and secretion [12]. Postmortem studies on human pancreas from patients with a clinical history of fasting glucose alterations demonstrated approximately a 50% decrease of β-cell mass caused by apoptosis [13]. Similarly, an increased glucose-stimulated insulin secretion was observed due to the remaining 50% [14]. However, the decreased β-cell mass is not only induced by an enhanced apoptosis as alterations of cell proliferation rates have also been documented. Additionally, during hyperglycemia conditions other studies have reported that β-cell undergo dedifferentiation or regression processes characterized by a decreased expression of the specific genes for these cells [15].

β-Cell Apoptosis

Apoptosis is a physiological mechanism for cell suppression that enables the elimination of some cells without affecting neighboring cells and without releasing the cell contents, unlike *necrosis* that is concomitant with an inflammatory reaction (Table 12.1). Apoptosis may be triggered through the activation of two major pathways: intrinsic or extrin-

Table 12.1 Apoptosis vs. necrosis

Apoptosis	Necrosis
Single cells	Cells group
Cell shrinkage	Cell swelling
Lysosomal enzymes are not involved	Involvement of lysosomal enzymes
Oligonucleosomal nucleus fragmentation	Complete nucleus dissolution
Apoptotic bodies	Cell disintegration
Phagocytosis by adjacent cells	Intracellular content release

sic. The latter is activated by death ligands that bind to cell surface receptors, thus transmitting death signals. Fas and TNFRI are the best described death receptors. They possess a cysteine-rich extracellular domain and a cytoplasmic death domain. Fas ligand (FasL) binds to one of three Fas molecules, and it promotes receptor oligomerization and FADD (Fas-associated protein with death domain or Mort-1) interaction with the receptor's death domain. Subsequently, FADD binds to procaspase-8 leading to its activation. In turn, *caspase*-8 leads to the activation of other caspases, such as caspase-9. These are located within cytoplasm as inactive *proenzyme*s, and they may be activated by other caspases, death receptors, or *cytochrome c* [16] through its interaction with the apoptosis protease-activating factor 1 (Apaf-1) and procaspase-9, thus leading to *apoptosome* formation and the triggering of the caspase-activating cascade.

The extrinsic pathway initiates with the release of several proapoptotic factors, such as cytochrome c, from the mitochondrial intermembrane space toward cytosol. As mentioned above, this event leads to caspase activation through the formation of the apoptosome, the activation of caspase-9, and the subsequent activation of executing caspases 3, 6, and 7 and with these the apoptosis proteolytic cascade. Mitochondria also release the apoptosis-induced factor (AIF), a *flavoprotein* that translocate to the nucleus where it triggers chromatin condensation and DNA fragmentation. Mitochondrial membrane potential ($\Delta\Psi m$) alterations are also observed as well as respiratory chain uncoupling, all of them identified as early dysfunctions leading to cell death. Ceramides, oxidative agents, and pathologic increases of cytosolic Ca^{2+} may also induce the disruption of mitochondrial external membrane. Other proteins involved in permeabilization the mitochondrial membrane are those belonging to the Bcl-2 family. All of its members possess one to four preserved residues, known as the Bcl-2 homology domains (BHI to BH4). The apoptosis inhibitors Bcl-2 and BcI-xl possess BH1 and BH2, whereas apoptosis inducers such as Bax, Bak, and Bok display BH1, BH2, and BH3. There are some other proteins that only possess BH3 also known as death proteins. The Bcl-2 family members either promote or inhibit apoptosis in response to different stimuli such as lack of growth factors, Apaf-1 sequestration, and oxidative stress, among others [17].

At physiologic level, apoptosis is crucial for pancreas remodeling in newborns [18]. In adults, β-cell mass may increase and subsequently return to their normal size during some physiologic situations such as pregnancy and depending on the organism requirements. In other conditions as obesity and insulin resistance, it has been proposed that β-cell hyperplasia may be reverted by body weight decreases and the increase of the apoptosis rate [19].

Whereas glucose-mediated stimulation is essential for physiologic maintenance of β-cells, chronic hyperglycemia induces severe damage to these cells, and it creates a vicious cycle contributing to the progressive loss of functional β-cell mass. Chronic hyperglycemia decreases β-cell sensibility toward glucose and induces exhaustion and toxicity. Desensitizing is a reversible protective mechanism facing a steady demand for insulin. When glycemia levels are restored and stimulation ceases, β-cells may regain their sensibility toward glucose [20]. Conversely, if hyperglycemia persists, β-cells become exhausted, thus implicating the loss of insulin granules and that of two transcriptional factors regulating insulin expression: the musculoaponeurotic fibrosarcoma protein A (MafA) and PDX-1. It is important to mention that these effects may also be restored when glycemia decreases [21, 22]. However, if insulin resistance is persistent and glycemia increases, an overstimulation of β-cells occurs, thereby altering their functions and mainly the mechanisms for insulin synthesis and secretion [1, 19, 23–25]. If hyperglycemia is not adequately controlled, persistent stimulation of β-cells may eventually lead to degranulation, exhaustion, and apoptosis. In vitro studies have shown that culturing insulin-producing cells (RINm5F) in the presence of high glucose levels, an increased ROS production is observed and it triggers apoptosis [1]. In these conditions, Bax oligomerization also increases along with cytochrome c release and caspase-3 activation [19], but the precise mechanisms involved in β-cell apoptosis have not been completely elucidated.

Glucolipotoxicity

However, free fatty acids (FFA) in physiologic levels contribute to preserve glucose-stimulated insulin secretion (GSIS), exposition toward high FFA levels for prolonged periods, along with hyperglycemia, affects the expression of the *Ins* gene and induces insulin resistance and also pancreatic β-cell dysfunction. FFA contribute to apoptosis triggering in β-cells through activation of protein kinase C (PKC, apoptosis mediator), increases in ceramide synthesis and Bcl-2 inhibition [26], as well as increased levels of the type 2 uncoupling protein (UCP2) [27], thus decreasing ATP production [28]

and glucose-stimulated insulin secretion, besides contributing to both oxidative stress and endoplasmic reticulum stress [29, 30]. It has been observed that unsaturated fatty acids (e.g., palmitic acid) are more toxic when compared to their monounsaturated counterparts (e.g., palmitoleic acid), as the latter may even exhibit a protective effect because they are rapidly esterified in order to form *triacylglycerols* [31]. However, it is currently accepted that FFA-induced damage depends on concentration, exposure time, and blood glucose levels [30, 32]. When these factors converge, fatty acids and glucose compete for metabolism through the glycolytic pathway. During hyperglycemia, oxidative phosphorylation becomes saturated with glycolytic products, thus promoting the formation of malonyl-CoA that inhibits the β-oxidation of fatty acids. This effect forces β-cells to divert fatty acids to other metabolic pathways in order to metabolize them; thereby it increases the production of esterified fatty acids such as *ceramides* [33]. Accumulation of the latter occurs from sphingomyelin cleavage and/or de novo ceramide synthesis by condensing serine and non-oxidized palmitoyl-CoA through the activity of serine C-palmitoyltransferase (SPT) located in mitochondria and endoplasmic reticulum. Ceramides affect mitochondrial membrane potential and permeability and they represent a ROS production mechanism. They also enable the release of apoptosis induction factors such as cytochrome c and procaspases, thus leading to β-cell death [34]. Some experiments have demonstrated apoptosis induction mediated by ceramides after inhibiting their synthesis. In such conditions fatty acid-induced apoptosis also decreases [33]. Additionally, ceramides induce the activation of the NF-κB transcription factor that increases inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) and nitric oxide (NO) production. The interaction between NO and superoxide anion (O_2) produces peroxynitrite, thus inducing DNA damage and the activation of poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP), a NAD^+-dependent enzyme [34]. Therefore, its over-activation decreases both the NAD^+ pool and glycolytic rate and electron transport and ATP synthesis. Besides negatively affecting insulin secretion, this situation may lead to pancreatic β-cell death [35].

Oxidative Stress

Whereas low ROS levels exert a beneficial effect on β-cells [9], their overproduction causes oxidative damage to proteins, lipids, and nucleic acids, and it induces oxidative stress. In hyperglycemia conditions, ROS are mainly generated by glucose auto-oxidation and also through an increased electron flow in mitochondrial respiratory chain [36]. However, in recent years it has been demonstrated an important participation of the NADH oxidase complex [1], as their components have been identified in rat pancreatic β-cells [37]. An increased mitochondrial pathway initially accelerates NADH production. The latter participates in the mitochondrial respiratory chain, and it represents the first step for $O^{\circ-}_2$ production that also generates other radicals such as hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) and the hydroxyl radical ($^{\circ}OH$), one of the most potent oxidants. An increased $O^{\circ-}_2$inhibits glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) inducing accumulation of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P) within the glycolytic pathway. This leads to the activation of others ROS-producing pathways and to oxidative stress [38, 39] as: advanced glycation end products (AGE), as their precursor (methylglyoxal) is generated from G3P. It also leads to PKC activation as glycerol (its activator) is also produced from G3P [40] (Fig. 12.2).

The alterations induced by oxidative stress range from synthesis modifications and insulin secretion, endoplasmic reticulum stress, and activation of the apoptotic intrinsic pathway [7]. ROS lead to activation mechanisms that reinforce β-cell death and their decreased cell mass. They also induce mitochondrial membrane potential alterations, thus modifying permeability and the release of proapoptotic proteins (cytochrome c, apoptosis-inducing factor, among others) and activating the apoptotic proteolytic cascade [1]. β-Cell susceptibility toward the damage induced by free radicals and their low abundance of *antioxidant* mechanisms have been previously demonstrated [39]. Therefore, it is considered that oxidative stress is greatly responsible for pancreatic β-cell death after being exposed to hyperglycemia. The ROS-induced damage on β-cells has been quantified by the presence of 8-hydroxy-2′-deoxyguanosine (8-OHdG) on subjects affected by T2D, in animal models [30], and in vitro

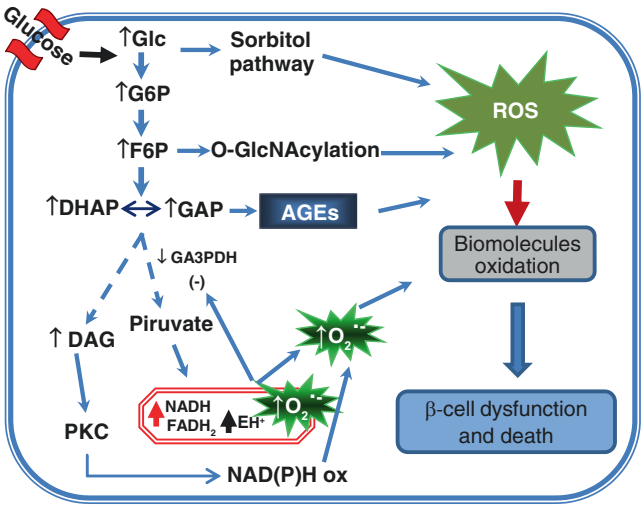


Fig. 12.2 Hyperglycemia induces ROS production and oxidative stress by increasing glycolysis and oxidative phosphorylation pathways. This situation induces biomolecule oxidation and β-cell exhaustion and death. ROS reactive oxygen species, O-GlcNAcylation, AGE advanced glycation end products

on insulin-secreting cells [1, 41]. It has been demonstrated that H_2O_2 addition to rat and mouse β-cells cultures alters mitochondrial membrane potential; it decreases ATP levels as well as glucose-stimulated insulin secretion (GSIS) [42]. This effect is abolished when the expression of antioxidant enzymes is increased. GSIS decrease induced by ROS has been linked to GAPDH and glycolysis, and, as previously mentioned, it consequently decreases ATP levels.

In addition to direct damage induced on biomolecules, oxidative stress favors the activation of other pathways such as O-glycosylation, poly(ADP-ribosylation), and O-linked β -N-acetylglucosaminilation (OGlcNAcylation). All of them may modify or inhibit the function of proteins. Approximately 2–3% of glucose entering β-cells is diverted to the hexosamine biosynthesis pathway in order to synthesize uridine diphosphate N-acetylglucosamine (UDP-GlcNAc); thus O-GlcNAcylation regulates protein function depending on glucose availability. Among the proteins prone to modification by OGT are Pdx1, FoxO1, NeuroD1, IRS2, Akt, and p53; thus it regulates glucotoxicity and β-cell apoptosis [9].

Mitochondrial Alterations

Mitochondrial physiology plays a very important role on the regulation of the insulin secretion mechanism. When exposed to hyperglycemia, β-cell mitochondria exhibit important functional and morphological changes that affect the ATP/ADP ratio required for insulin release. ROS increased due to hyperglycemia modifies mitochondrial permeability and induces apoptosis. ROS oxidizes *cardiolipin*, a phospholipid responsible to preserve mitochondrial architecture and membrane potential maintenance, and it also provides support for proteins involved in mitochondrial bioenergetics. Through hydrophobic and electrostatic interactions, cardiolipin keeps cytochrome c attached to the inner membrane. During early apoptosis, ROS oxidize cardiolipin, and they disrupt its interaction with cytochrome c that becomes detached from inner membrane, and it is released to cytoplasm [43], where it participates for apoptosome formation in order to activate proapoptotic caspases (intrinsic pathway). Cardiolipin is also the target of the proapoptotic protein t-Bid that is activated by caspase-8 (extrinsic pathway). tBid promotes pore formation on the external membrane mediated by Bax and Bak [44]. Thus, cardiolipin is a central regulator to achieve the activation of both apoptotic pathways.

Mitochondrial integrity and abundance are also regulated by *fission* and fusion mechanisms. These processes, although opposite, are coordinated in order to preserve mitochondrial morphology, size, and abundance. Mitochondrial fusion is regulated by *mitofusins* 1 and 2 (Mfn1 and Mfn2) as well as by the Opa1 mitochondrial dynamin like GTPase (Opa1). Mitochondrial fusion allows the exchange and merging of the organelle's content, including membranes, genetic material, and other metabolites. It also contributes for mitochondrial function preservation in metabolic stress conditions and during glucolipotoxicity [45]. Conversely, mitochondrial fission is mediated by several proteins such as the mitochondrial fission 1 protein (Fis1), the mitochondrial fission factor (Mff) on the external membrane, and the GTPase dynamin-related protein 1 (Drp1). Fission is essential in order to segregate damaged or dysfunctional mitochondria [46]. Alterations of mitochondrial dynamics balance mediated by the loss or gain of proteins regulating fusion or fission events impact on mitochondria structure (fragmentation) and their function as well as glucose-dependent insulin secretion [45].

In response to glucose, cell energy and mitochondrial membrane function are also regulated by *uncoupling proteins* (UCPs) located at their external membrane. UCPs are mitochondrial transporters on the inner membrane that regulate the coupling status of the respiratory chain as well as ATP synthesis. Thus, they keep the necessary ATP/ADP needed for glucose-stimulated insulin secretion. They also contribute to the mitochondrial antioxidant defense by inducing physiologic uncoupling that accelerates metabolism and decreases ROS and oxidative stress [27]. Five uncoupling proteins have been identified in humans as important regulators of corporal weight gain, the energy balance, and T2D. The most important are UCP-2 and UCP-3 because of their participation for mitochondrial membrane potential maintenance and ATP production. UCP-2 protects β-cells against oxidative stress. INS1 cells cultured in presence of H2O2 increase UCP-2 expression as well as survival rate; they also decrease ROS and caspase activation. However, hyperglycemia and *hyperlipidemia* increase UCP2 activation; consequently they reduce ATP synthesis and insulin secretion. UCP-2 also promotes mitochondrial membrane potential alterations along with the consequent release of proapoptotic factors and β-cell dysfunction that may lead to apoptosis [47].

Endoplasmic Reticulum Stress

Oxidative stress and endoplasmic reticulum stress (ERS) are interlinked regarding β-cell dysfunction because of their direct effects on insulin biosynthesis and secretion [48]. The endoplasmic reticulum (ER) ensures the appropriate folding and processing of proteins that will be secreted, among them insulin, as well as the degradation of *misfolded proteins* or those exhibiting alterations. Thus, the organelle's overload leads to misfolded protein accumulation and ERS. The latter triggers the unfolded protein response (UPR) in order to restore ER homeostasis and to decrease protein synthesis. It also increases the expression

of genes involved in protein folding and ER-linked protein degradation. UPR is mediated by proteins bound to the ER membrane: PERK (protein kinase-like ER kinase), IRE1α (inositol-requiring enzyme 1α), and ATF6 (activating transcription factor 6) [49]. When stress occurs, PERK autophosphorylation induces eif2α (eukaryotic translation initiation factor 2α) phosphorylation, a factor that inhibits protein synthesis, whereas it promotes ATF-4 transcription. The latter positively regulates the expression of ERS target genes such as the C/EBP homologous protein (CHOP) and the downstream growth arrest and DNA damage-inducible protein (GADD34). These two proteins activate protein phosphatase-1 (PP-1) that in turn dephosphorylates eif2α, thereby restoring transcription. Acute exposition of β-cells to high glucose levels induces an intermediate UPR signaling characterized by IRE1α phosphorylation and activation as well as glucose-stimulated insulin secretion. However, excessive UPR stimulation induces β-cell death and diabetes. In patients displaying insulin resistance and in islets isolated from *ob/ob* mice, it has been demonstrated that a constant and steady demand for insulin represent ER constant stimulation and it eventually leads to stress [49]. Additionally, the increase of FFA also induces ER stress as it affects protein processing and trafficking, Ca^{2+} regulation, and oxidative stress in mouse insulin-producing cells (INS1) and in human cell lines [50]. Palmitate activates the UPR response through phosphorylation of IRE1 and PERK as well as β-cell apoptosis mediated by caspase-12 and caspase-3 activation [51].

Obesity and Inflammation

Currently, obesity stands out as a risk factor to develop T2D. Nevertheless, if obesity actually causes diabetes, most obese individuals sooner or later would develop hyperglycemia and T2D. In spite of this, approximately 20% of all obese individuals are diabetic [52]. This suggests that obesity and resistance toward insulin are factors that increase the risk to develop diabetes, but they are not inductors. Thus, it has been proposed that, in obese individuals, hyperglycemia may be more related to β-cell impaired function and decreased mass [53] and/or their inability to adapt themselves toward the new metabolic demand [54]. Even though some of these studies have demonstrated a decreased β-cell mass in obese humans affected by T2D (postmortem donors) and in those who displayed alterations of fasting glucose levels by 65% and 40%, respectively [10], in obese individuals not affected by T2D, β-cell mass and insulin secretion are increased by 50% in order to cope with resistance to insulin [55]. In obese rodents a physiologic adaptive expansion of β-cells is observed due to increased generation, decreased death, and β-cell hypertrophy [56]. Through this adaptation, β-cells preserve normal glycemia until they become exhausted and eventually die, thus leading to T2D development. Cell expansion is a complex process involving the activation of several pathways that converge to regulate proliferation, survival, cell size, and insulin secretion. Apparently, proliferation and hypertrophy are most important during the β-cell expansion phase, whereas apoptosis may participate in the final phases, during β-cell failure caused by hyperglycemia. Some evidence shows that, in animals displaying resistance toward insulin, the IGF1/PI3k/Akt/mTOR pathway participates during β-cell adaptation induced by a high-fat diet. mTOR (mammalian target of rapamycin) mediates protein synthesis in response to nutrients and growth factors, and it stimulates the phosphorylation of some components of the protein synthesis machinery such as p70S6K (ribosomal S6 kinase protein) and 4E-BP (IF4E binding protein). Akt also participates in cell cycle regulation by inducing phosphorylation and degradation of the cyclin-dependent kinases inhibitors such as p21 and p27. Apparently, the increased β-cell mass in obese individuals may be a reversible event, similarly to pregnancy. Some studies have reported that insulin secretion decreases concomitantly with weight loss or caloric restriction, whereas sensibility toward insulin is regained as well as β-cell function. Furthermore, caloric restriction enhances mitochondrial biogenesis and respiratory efficiency, and it decreases ROS production and promotes metabolic homeostasis [57].

Additionally, because of FFA increase, obesity predetermines a chronic inflammation state in adipose tissue that is characterized by increased proinflammatory *adipokines* and cytokines. These attract B cells, T cells, and macrophages toward the pancreas and adipose tissue where they secrete even more proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines, thereby contributing to inflammatory reaction and to autoimmune elimination of β-cells. The presence of reactive T cells in islets is observed in patients affected by T2D exhibiting severe β-cells lesions and low insulin secretion [58]. Obesity implies an increased amount of adipocytes and also of their fat content, a vascularization decrease, hypoxia, and cell necrosis. Signal molecules derived from cell elimination may bind to Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and to nucleotide-binding oligomerization domains (NOD) in order to induce a local or generalized immune response. The latter consists on the assembly of cytosolic protein complexes comprised by bound nucleotides, leucine-rich repeats sequences (NLRs) and caspase-1. Once active, they initiate IL-1β production [59]. Hyperglycemia increases the production of the NLRP3 *inflammasome*, whereas FFA activate TLR2 and TLR4, thus promoting macrophage recruitment and β-cell stress [58].

Plenty of evidence exists on the importance of proinflammatory cytokines (IL-1β, TNFα, and interferon-γ (IFNγ)) to activate signaling cascades in β-cells, such as NF-κB, the

mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), and the Janus kinase/signal transducer and activator of transcription (JAK/STAT). β-Cell elimination by the proinflammatory cytokines IL-1β, TNFα, and IFNγ begins by their binding to specific receptor in β-cells and to the endoplasmic reticulum [59]. The consequences of increased ROS were previously mentioned. Conversely, in the presence of cytokines, the 12/15-lipoxygenase (12/15-LO) induces the cleavage of arachidonic acid to produce highly reactive metabolic such as 12-hydroxyeicosatetraenoic that may induce oxidative stress and mitochondrial dysfunction [30]. It has been also demonstrated that thioredoxin-interacting protein (TXNIP) interacts with NLRP3 and contributes to IL-1β production induced by hyperglycemia [60]. The latter contributes to β-cell dysfunction and apoptosis in T2D. TNFα negatively regulates the insulin receptor substrate-2 (IRS-2) in β-cells by inducing its phosphorylation and modifying insulin signaling. In obesity leptin secretion by adipose tissue also predominates. Leptin inhibits glucose-stimulated insulin secretion in β-cell lines and normal mice [61], and it also contributes to intolerance toward glucose in diabetes.

β-Islet Amyloid Polypeptide (IAPP)

Amylin is synthesized by pancreatic islets and it is secreted along with insulin. Amylin is comprised by 37 amino acids, although it may produce polypeptides and be accumulated in islets in response to stress. IAPP effects initiate after binding to its receptors. Only three of them are known. They contain the calcitonin receptor in their inner structure and one of the following three receptor activity-modifying proteins: RAMP1, RAMP2, or RAMP3. The accumulation of intracellular amylin has been linked to both oxidative and endoplasmic reticulum stresses. β-Amyloid plates are a common feature in patients affected by T2D. During hyperglycemia/hyperlipidemia, IAPP synthesis also increases in β-cells along with proinsulin, and they reach enough levels in order to allow for oligomer formation [18]. They also stimulate IL-1β, islet inflammation, and β-cell apoptosis. IAPP soluble peptides have been detected, they represent early intermediates for fibril formation and they are also responsible for cell death. In peripheral tissues, IAPP modifies glucose metabolism [62], it suppresses glucose uptake induced by insulin in muscle cells [63] and digestive secretion (gastric acid, pancreatic enzymes), and it delays gastric emptying. IAP administration to rats decreases food intake [64], but when an IAPP antagonist is provided, food intake increases as well as body weight [65].

β-Cell Apoptosis and p53

β-Cell apoptotic death after being exposed to high glucose levels has been associated with p53 protein translocation toward mitochondria [1]. Furthermore, β-cell population recovery and the rescue from the diabetic phenotype was demonstrated in p53-knockout mice, thus highlighting the importance of this protein for diabetes establishment [2].

p53 protein is a transcription factor engaged in DNA damage monitoring. Depending on the severity of the damage, p53 triggers apoptosis or arrests the cell cycle until the DNA repairing mechanisms are activated. p53 activation occurs in response to several types of stress, mainly those damaging DNA, and this leads to its stabilization and accumulation in cells submitted to stress conditions. p53 is also involved in apoptosis triggering by interacting and forming complexes with Bcl-2 and Bcl-XL through its DNA-binding domain, thus allowing Bax-Bax oligomerization and the release of cytochrome c [66].

Apoptosis onset induced by p53 at mitochondria level is associated with oxidative stress. In insulin-producing cells (RINm5F) cultured on glucose 30 mM, p53 translocation to mitochondria, cytochrome c release, and apoptosis were induced because of oxidative stress [1]. Taking this into account, it was proposed that glucose increase modifies intracellular p53 distribution and it promotes its mitochondrial localization besides inducing p53 phosphorylation, impairing its degradation, and increasing its biologic activity [67]. The presence of p53 in mitochondria is correlated with a decreased Bcl-2/Bax ratio, a decreased mitochondrial membrane potential [1], p53 activation, and increases of p21, Bax, and apoptosis [68]. This emphasizes p53 participation during the decrease of β-cell mass induced by hyperglycemia.

Hyperglycemia regulates p53 stability and function by inducing posttranslational modifications such as phosphorylation, poly(ADP-ribosylation), and N-acetylglucosamination [69].

p53 Phosphorylation

Hyperglycemia promotes p53 mitochondrial localization and its phosphorylation at serine 392 (homologous to Ser289 in mouse). This correlates with a Bcl-2 decrease, Bax increase, and β-cell apoptosis. The inhibition of the p38 MAPK hampered p53 phosphorylation, and it curtailed β-cell apoptosis induced by hyperglycemia, thereby suggesting its participation during the decrease of pancreatic β-cell mass. As in mitochondria p53 is engaged in complex formation with other antiapoptotic and/or proapoptotic proteins and as it triggers the mitochondrial permeation process, it is likely that its phosphorylation is a requirement that may

enable its interaction with such proteins and to induce cell death. Additionally this process stimulates the interaction between p53 and the p300/CBP and P/CAF coactivators that promote its acetylation, thereby inhibiting its ubiquitination and degradation [70]. These results indicate the importance of p53 phosphorylation as one of the factors contributing to β-cell elimination as consequence of hyperglycemia through mitochondria (Fig. 12.3). Hyperglycemia also leads to ATM activation in cytosol, which in turn phosphorylates p53 at serine 15, thus avoiding its recognition by Mdm2, its ubiquitination, and nuclear degradation and also contributing to apoptosis triggering in response to hyperglycemia in β-cells [71].

p53 O-N-Acetylglucosamination

Hyperglycemia promotes O-GlcNAcylation of several proteins, including p53. This consists on the addition of an N-acetylglucosamine moiety in serine or threonine residues. O-GlcNAcylation is analogue to phosphorylation, and it regulates the stability, activity, or subcellular localization of target proteins. This modification depends on glucose availability, and it represents a cellular regulation mechanism according to nutritional environment. In a glucose-rich environment, the O-N-acetylglucosamination of p53 has been observed and it is liked to its stability and it prevents its degradation. O-GlcNAc in p53 at Ser149 enhances its stability by interfering with phosphorylation

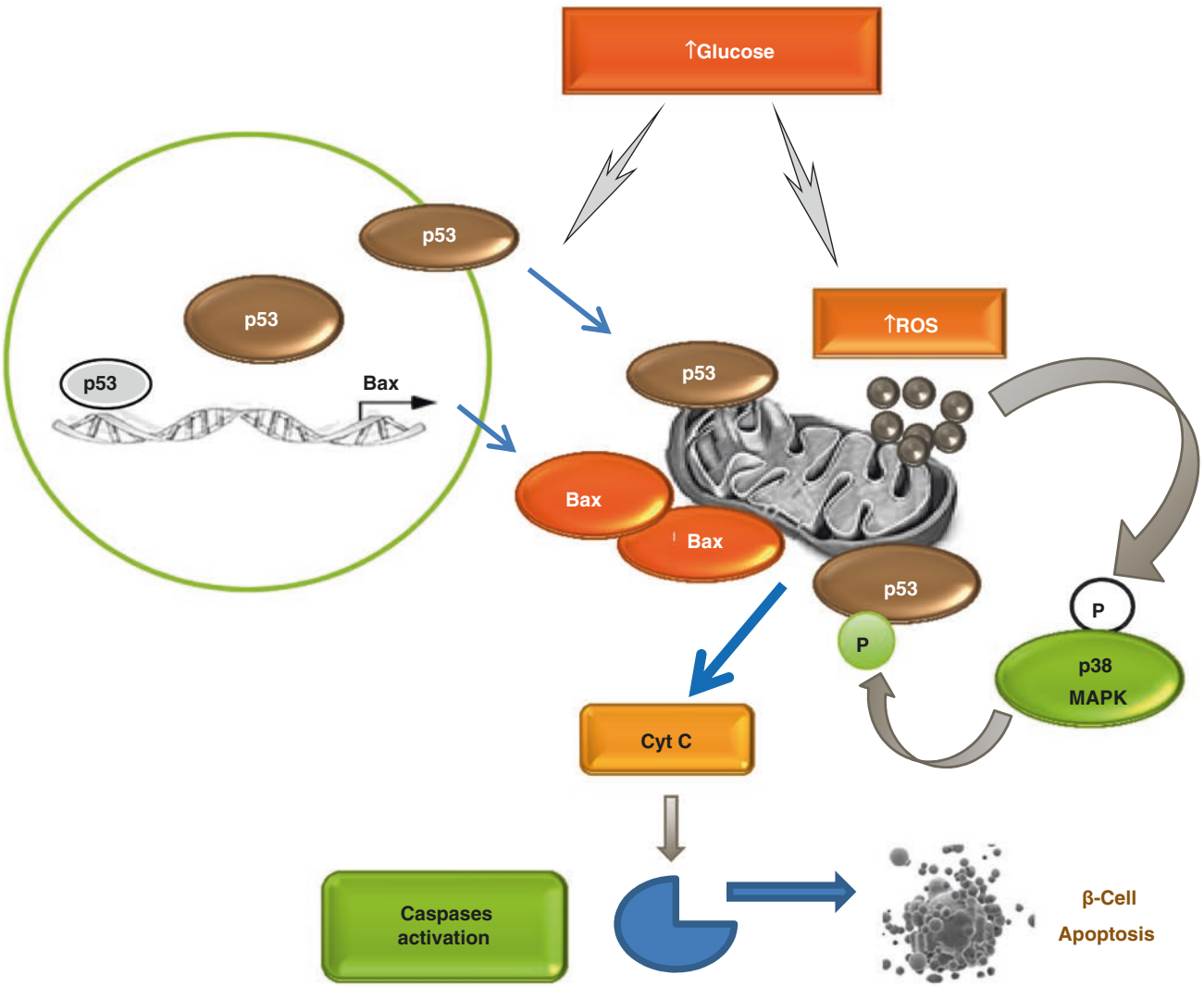


Fig. 12.3 Hyperglycemia promotes p53 translocation to mitochondria and its phosphorylation. There, p53 contributes to mitochondrial permeability, cytochrome c release, and β-cell apoptosis. P: phosphorylation, ROS: reactive oxygen species, Cyt c: cytochrome c

at Thr155, by overcoming its interaction with Mdm2 and its ubiquitination and its subsequent proteolysis. All of this results in higher p53 stability [72]. Thus, it has been proposed that O-GlcNAc stabilizes p53 and may represent a signal for its translocation to mitochondria [71], where it may contribute to the release of proapoptotic factors [73].

p53 Poly(ADP-Ribosylation)

Another protein that becomes active when DNA suffers damage is poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP). This enzyme catalyzes the transfer of ADP-ribose units from NAD^+, an essential cofactor for ATP synthesis and redox potential balance, to the carboxylic residues glutamic and aspartic acids of several nuclear proteins. Poly(ADP-ribosylation) is important for DNA replication and repair, transcription, inflammatory response, and cell death mainly caused by genotoxic agents, infection, and stress. PARP fragmentation is concomitant with β-cell apoptosis triggering induced by hyperglycemia. These results are in agreement with previous reports showing that hyperglycemia triggers apoptosis in β-cells and pancreatic cell lines such as RINm5F. Poly(ADP-ribosylation) of p53 in presence of high glucose levels is an early response that may contribute for protein stabilization and probably to its translocation to mitochondria as well as to the increased apoptotic rate of RINm5F cells caused by high glucose levels [73].

p53 Regulation by Mdm2

Cell survival depends in great extent on the balance between synthesis and degradation of p53. Among the mechanisms regulating p53, the expression and activation of Mdm2 (murine double minute 2) is of great importance. Mdm2 is an E3 ubiquitin ligase that binds p53 and it transfers *ubiquitin* to the latter residues, thereby enabling its recognition by *proteasome*s for targeted degradation. Depending on the amount of ubiquitin residues attached to p53, this protein will be degraded or exported to the cytosol. Mono- and/or poly-ubiquitination of p52 is defined by the concentration and activation status of Mdm2.

As previously mentioned, the interaction between p53 and Mdm2 depends on intracellular environment impacting on those posttranslational modifications displayed by these proteins. In the case of Mdm2, ubiquitination, *sumoylation*, and phosphorylation disrupt the formation of the p53-Mdm2 diene, and they stabilize p53 levels. It has been demonstrated that Mdm2 phosphorylation on Ser395 mediated by ATM decrease its ability to target p53 for degradation. Previously it was demonstrated that p53 phosphorylation by Akt participates in its regulation as it attenuated transactivation and increased p53 ubiquitination [74]. High glucose concentration decreases the expression of Mdm2 mRNA and its protein levels on both nucleus and cytosol [75]. Mdm2 expression is regulated by p53. Although we previously demonstrated its stabilization in presence of high glucose levels, this protein is not targeted toward nucleus, but it translocates to other organelles such as mitochondria; thus it cannot stimulate Mdm2 expression. Additionally, DNA fragmentation induced by hyperglycemia also may affect the expression of Mdm2 mRNA [1].

Formation of the p53-Mdm2 complex increased in presence of high glucose, although its ubiquitination was not observed. The latter demonstrates that glucose increased levels induce Mdm2 activation in cytosol and its interaction with p53 is also promoted, whereas its ubiquitination is inhibited [71]. It is known that the E3 ubiquitin ligase activity of Mdm2 depends on other domains comprising this protein. The latter activity is located within the *RING finger domain* at the C-terminal. This region also contains the substrate lysine acceptor and its main function is to label p53 for degradation. The central acid domain of Mdm2 binds to the RING finger domain and it stimulates catalytic activity, thereby promoting ubiquitin release from the E3 enzyme. The interaction between the acid domain and the RING finger domain depends on its phosphorylation by ATM [76]. An increase of ATM-mediated phosphorylation has been also observed in hyperglycemia. Thus, it is not excluded that stress and the phosphorylation cascade induced by high glucose levels may phosphorylate some residues on the RING finger domain and/or on nearby regions and on the acid central domain in Mdm2 leading to the inhibition of p53 polyubiquitination and degradation.

Conversely, p53 ubiquitination also depends on ATP levels. In hyperglycemia conditions, ATP decreases due to increased ROS and mitochondrial uncoupling. Therefore, if ATP decreased levels occur, ubiquitin ligases are unable to condensate the glycine residues on their C-terminal region with the lysine residues on p53. Thus, it is necessary to analyze these factors in hyperglycemia conditions in order to know about its participation for p53 ubiquitination in RINm5F cells.

Alterations in the Cell Cycle

Cell Proliferation Rate

In obese subjects, β-cell failure to compensate for insulin resistance has been related to either an inappropriate cell mass expansion or the inability of preexisting cells to respond toward glucose. This may be generated from defects of insulin signaling or the absence of insulin receptors and IGF-I in these cells [62]. For instance, *knockout* mice for these receptors exhibit a decreased cell mass and develop diabetes from an early age. It has been pointed out that progression through the cell cycle is also altered. It has been observed that cyclin

inhibitor p27kip1 is progressively accumulated inside β-cell nucleus in mice lacking the insulin receptor substrate-2 (IRS-2) and also in *db/db* mice. p27kip1 accumulation in oxidative stress and hyperglycemia conditions may be another pathway by which ROS decrease β-cell mass as the deletion of its gene hampers hyperglycemia effects and induce β-cell proliferation [77]. Another important regulator of β-cell replication is the cell cycle inhibitor p21, which is expressed at high levels in adult β-cells, and it has been linked to proliferation decrease during senescence. It is known that β-cell replication potential is lost with age and it is correlated with the loss of expression of genes such as EZH2 (enhancer of zeste homologue 2), a histone methyl transferase that represses the transcription of cell cycle inhibitors when histone 3 is trimethylated in its lysine 27 residue (H3K27me3). EZH2 decreases H3K27me3 and increases p16 and p19 expression and it inhibits β-cell proliferation [78].

β-Cell Dedifferentiation

During recent years it has been observed that pancreatic β-cells undergo a *dedifferentiation process* when metabolic demand increases and also during hyperglycemia and inflammation. In mouse, hyperglycemia modifies the expression of transcription factors and insulin secretion. For instance, the loss of FOXO1 leads to β-cell dedifferentiation, decreases insulin content, and reverts its phenotype toward progenitor-like cells, characterized by the expression of Ngn3. Although changes in transcriptional factors have been observed on humans and primates affected by diet-induced prediabetes, a dedifferentiation process has not been demonstrated. β-cell dedifferentiation induced by hyperglycemia is reverted when blood glucose values are restored. Insulin immunostaining loss correlates with an increased glucagon staining in several diabetic mouse models. In one of these, it was observed that small β-cells begin to express glucagon, although it is not known if these cells will transform into α-cells or if they represent an intermediate cell type expressing glucagon [54, 79]. The Pax4 gene also participates in β-cell dedifferentiation. The latter is an embryonic development regulator of pancreatic islets, and its presence on adult β-cells from animals confers protection against stress-induced apoptosis, and it stimulates cell proliferation. However, the sustained Pax4 expression promotes β-cell dedifferentiation and hyperglycemia. Pax4 overexpression is concomitant with Ngn3 expression. This suggests that an acute Pax4 increase protects cells, but its steady or chronic expression induces β-cell dedifferentiation into progenitor cells apparently as a protective mechanism against deleterious environmental effects [80].

Conclusions

Obesity, insulin resistance, and glucose intolerance affect pancreatic β-cell functional status. Particularly, generation of new cells (*neogenesis*, replication) is decreased, whereas the apoptotic death rate increases. Among the mechanisms leading to β-cell alterations, it has been observed the participation of several proteins synthesized by the cell itself, such as amyloid polypeptide and the type 2 uncoupling protein, the molecules expressed and released by adipose tissue (free fatty acids and cytokines), the presence of high glucose levels, and the reactive oxygen species produced by glucolipotoxicity. It was recently proposed that high ROS appearing levels during hyperglycemia promote phosphorylation, poly(ADP-ribosylation), and/or O-GlcNAcylation, and they may interfere with p53 degradation by inhibiting the Mdm2 E2 ubiquitin ligase. Therefore, p53 degradation is avoided, and its recruitment to mitochondria and the apoptotic mechanisms are promoted along with β-cell dysfunction.

Loss of β-cell mass may reach a critical point in which the deleterious effects mediated by the aforementioned molecules might not be reverted, thus decreasing insulin production and release and contributing to diabetes development. Several treatments exist in order to attenuate β-cell deterioration. Changes of dietary routine and increased physical activity are among them. The objective is to promote weight loss and specially to decrease abdominal fat and insulin resistance. Thus, eventually β-cell mass may be regained.

Concluding Remarks

- Activating hyperglycemia metabolic pathways induces β-cells apoptosis.
- Free fatty acids are more toxic when hyperglycemia is present.
- Oxidative and endoplasmic reticulum stress, mitochondrial alterations, inflammatory cytokines, islet amyloid polypeptide, together or separate, can decrease pancreatic β-cell mass.
- Hyperglycemia induces posttranslational changes in p53 that inhibits its degradation and promotes mitochondrial location.
- Many factors trigger the death of pancreatic β-cells and decrease β-cell mass. However, most appear to have their origin in hyperglycemia, so control of glucose levels is of great importance in preserving the mass and function of pancreatic β-cells.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. At what stage of embryonic life is β-cell mass set?
   (a) Before birth
   (b) At 2 years old
   (c) While breastfeeding
   (d) Between 5 and 10 years old
   (e) At 5 years old
2. A decrease of β-cell mass was observed in persons without diabetes but with:
   (a) Chronic hyperglycemia
   (b) Metabolic syndrome
   (c) Impaired glucose tolerance
   (d) Obesity
   (e) Type 2 diabetes
3. All are apoptotic cellular death characteristics, except:
   (a) DNA oligonucleosomal fragmentation
   (b) Phosphatidylserine exposition
   (c) Death cell phagocytosis
   (d) Intracellular content release
   (e) Formation of apoptotic bodies
4. Increased production of reactive oxygen species in hyperglycemic conditions is due to
   (a) Microsomes
   (b) Oxidative phosphorylation
   (c) Macrophages
   (d) Endoplasmic reticulum
   (e) NADPH oxidase
5. Endoplasmic reticulum stress is characterized by:
   (a) DNA oligonucleosomal fragmentation
   (b) Increased insulin demand
   (c) Unfolded protein response
   (d) Oxidative stress
   (e) Changes in mitochondrial permeability
6. In hyperglycemic conditions, p53-induced apoptotic β-cell pathway:
   (a) Releases intracellular content
   (b) Changes mitochondrial permeability
   (c) Activates death receptors
   (d) Expresses proapoptotic proteins
   (e) Inhibits cell cycles
7. Hyperglycemia induces the activation of metabolic pathways related to β-cell death as:
   (a) An increase in reactive oxygen species
   (b) Accumulation of amyloid polypeptide
   (c) Stress of the endoplasmic reticulum
   (d) A hexosamine pathway
   (e) All of the above
8. What mitochondrial alterations contribute to the dysfunction of β-cells in diabetes?
   (a) Fission and fusion events
   (b) Loss of glucose sensitivity
   (c) Changes in ATP/ADP rate
   (d) Increased proinflammatory cytokines
   (e) Modification of NAD/NADH+ rate
9. Chronic hyperglycemia affects the survival of β-cells by:
   (a) Decreasing beta-cell mass in diabetes by apoptosis
   (b) Causing β-cell hyperplasia and exhaustion
   (c) Causing cell dedifferentiation
   (d) Creating a loss of glucose sensitivity
   (e) All of the above

Correct Answers

1. (d) Between 5 and 10 years old
   At this stage of development, the rate of cell replication is reduced and the pancreas reaches its full size
2. (c) Impaired glucose tolerance
   Postmortem studies in humans showed a decrease in pancreatic cell mass of up to 50% in people with impaired fasting glucose
3. (d) Intracellular content release
   An important characteristic of apoptosis is the formation of apoptotic bodies, which consists of the invagination of the plasma membrane that surrounds the subcellular remains and prevents the release of intracellular material
4. (b) Oxidative phosphorylation
   Mitochondria are the main sources of endogenous ROS in hyperglycemic conditions. Of the oxygen consumed by mitochondria, ∼1–5% is converted to ROS as by-products of the flow of electrons in the respiratory chain
5. (c) Unfolded protein response
   Constant requirements of insulin during glucose intolerance and insulin resistance lead to alterations in the processing of proteins in the RE. This situation stimulates an ER response known as unfolded protein response and ER stress
6. (b) Changes mitochondrial permeability
   P53 in the mitochondria releases Bax from Bcl-2, allowing Bax oligomerization and pore formation to release proapoptotic factors as cyt c
7. (e) All of the above
   During hyperglycemia, the activation of all these metabolic pathways was observed, which concluded with the activation of the intrinsic pathway of apoptosis
8. (a) Fission and fusion events
   Hyperglycemia alters the expression of the proteins that regulate mitochondrial fusion/fission events, which modifies the $\Delta\Psi m$ and allows the output of proapoptotic factors
9. (e) All of the above
   Chronic hyperglycemia decreases pancreatic β-cell mass by activating apoptosis and inhibiting the cell cycle, in addition to inducing the dedifferentiation of β-cells and the sensitivity to glucose is lost

Glossary

Adipokines Cytokines (cell signaling proteins) secreted by adipose tissue.

Amylin A 37-amino acid peptide hormone, discovered in 1987, which is co-located and co-secreted with insulin by the pancreatic beta cells in response to nutrient stimuli.

Antioxidant Molecule that inhibits the oxidation of other molecules.

Apoptosis (a-po-toe-sis) Was first used by Kerr, Wyllie, and Currie in 1972 to describe a morphologically distinct form of cell death and energy-dependent biochemical mechanisms.

Apoptosome Molecular complex of two major components – the adapter protein apoptotic protease-activating factor 1 (Apaf1) and the procaspase-9. These are assembled during apoptosis upon Apaf1 interaction with cytochrome c. Apoptosome assembly triggers effector caspase activation.

Cardiolipin Phospholipid important of the inner mitochondrial membrane, where it constitutes about 20% of the total lipid composition.

***Caspase* (cysteine-aspartic proteases, cysteine aspartases or cysteine-dependent aspartate-directed proteases)** Family of protease enzymes playing essential roles in apoptosis and inflammation.

Ceramides Family of waxy lipid molecules. A ceramide is composed of sphingosine and a fatty acid.

Cytochrome c Heme protein serving as electron carrier in respiration. Cytochrome c is also an intermediate of apoptosis.

Cytokines Cell signaling small proteins. Involved in autocrine signaling, paracrine signaling, and endocrine signaling as immunomodulating agents.

Dedifferentiation process Processes by which cell that were specialized for a specific function lose their specialization.

Fission Division of mitochondria into new mitochondria.

Flavoprotein Proteins that contain a nucleic acid derivative of riboflavin: the flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD) or flavin mononucleotide (FMN).

Fusion Process mediated by several large GTPases whose combined effects lead to the dynamic mitochondrial networks seen in many cell types.

Glucolipotoxicity Combined, deleterious effects of elevated glucose and fatty acid levels on pancreatic beta-cell function and survival.

Hyperlipidemia Elevation of fats or lipids in the blood.

Hyperplasia Enlargement of an organ or tissue caused by an increase in the cell proliferation rate.

Inflammasome A multiprotein cytoplasmic complex which activates one or more caspases, leading to the processing and secretion of proinflammatory cytokines – e.g., IL-1 beta, IL-18, and IL-33. Assembly of inflammasomes depends on the NOD-like receptor family members, such as the NALP protein kinase: enzyme catalyzing phosphorylation of an acceptor molecule by ATP.

Misfolded proteins Are proteins structurally abnormal and thereby disrupt the function of cells, tissues, and organs. Proteins that fail to fold into their normal configuration; in this misfolded state, the proteins can become noxious in some way and can lose their normal function.

Mitofusins Proteins that participate in mitochondrial fusion.

Necrosis Morphological changes in cell death caused by enzymatic degradation.

Neogenesis Generation of new cells.

Oxidative stress Pathological changes in living organisms in response to excessive levels of intracellular free radicals.

Proenzyme Precursor of an enzyme, requiring some change (hydrolysis of an inhibiting fragment that masks an active grouping) to render it active form.

Proteasome An intracellular complex enzymatic that degrades misfolded or damaged proteins (proteolysis), after damaged proteins are tagged by ubiquitin.

Resistance to insulin Pathological condition in which cells fail to respond normally to the hormone insulin.

RING finger domain Really Interesting New Gene finger is a proteins domain that plays a key role in the ubiquitination process.

Stem cells Undifferentiated biological cells that can differentiate into specialized cells and can divide.

Sumoylation Small Ubiquitin-like Modifier (or SUMO) proteins are a family of small proteins that are covalently attached to and detached from other proteins in cells to modify their function. Posttranslational modification involved in various cellular processes.

Triacylglycerol Ester of glycerol with three molecules of fatty acid.

Ubiquitin Small (8.5 kDa) regulatory protein that has been found in almost all tissues (ubiquitously) of eukaryotic organisms and regulated proteolysis.

Ubiquitin ligase Protein that recruits, recognizes a protein substrate, and catalyzes the transfer of ubiquitin from the E2 enzyme to the protein substrate.

Uncoupling proteins Proteins that uncouple phosphorylation of ADP from electron transport.

References

1. Ortega-Camarillo C, Guzmán-Grenfell AM, García-Macedo R, Rosales-Torres AM, Ávalos-Rodríguez A, Duran-Reyes G, et al. Hyperglycemia induces apoptosis and p53 mobilization to mitochondria in RINm5F cells. Mol Cell Biochem. 2006;281:163–70.
2. Hinault C, Kawamori D, Liew CW, Maier B, Hu J, Keller SR, et al. D40 isoform of p53 controls β-cell proliferation and glucose homeostasis in mice. Diabetes. 2011;60:1210–22.
3. Jurczyk A, Bortell R, Alonso LC. Human β-cell regeneration: progress, hurdles, and controversy. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes. 2014;21(2):102–8.

4. Yagihashi S, Inaba W, Mizukami H. Dynamic pathology of islet endocrine cells in type 2 diabetes: β-cell growth, death, regeneration and their clinical implications. J Clin Invest. 2016;7:155–65.
5. Oliver-Krasinski JM, Stoffers DA. On the origin of the β cell. Genes Dev. 2008;22(15):1998–2021.
6. Gittes GK, Rutter WJ. Onset of cell-specific gene expression in the developing mouse pancreas. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1992;89:1128–32.
7. Meier JJ, Butler AE, Saisho Y, Monchamp T, Galasso R, Bhushan A, et al. β-Cell replication is the primary mechanism subserving the postnatal expansion of β-cell mass in humans. Diabetes. 2008;57(6):1584–94.
8. Mizukami H, Takahashi K, Inaba W, Osonoi S, Kamata K, Tsuboi K, et al. Age-associated changes of islet endocrine cells and the effects of body mass index in Japanese. J Diabetes Investig. 2014;5(1):38–47.
9. Alejandro EU, Gregg B, Blandino-Rosano M, Cras-Méneur C, Bernal-Mizrachi E. Natural history of β-cell adaptation and failure in type 2 diabetes. Mol Asp Med. 2015;42:19–41. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mam.2014.12.002.
10. Butler AE, Janson J, Bonner-Weir S. β-cell deficit and increased β-cell apoptosis in humans with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2003;52:102–10.
11. Khadra A, Schnell S. Development, growth and maintenance of β-cell mass: models are also part of the story. Mol Asp Med. 2015;42:78–90.
12. Ward W, Bolgiano D, McKnight B, Halter J, Porte DJ. Diminished β cell secretory capacity in patients with noninsulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Clin Invest. 1984;74:1318–28.
13. Meier JJ. Beta cell mass in diabetes: a realistic therapeutic target? Diabetologia. 2008;51:703–13.
14. Unger RH. Minireview: weapons of lean body mass destruction: the role of ectopic lipids in the metabolic syndrome. Endocrinology. 2003;144(12):5159–65.
15. Kjørholt C, Åkerfeldt MC, Biden TJ, Laybutt DR. Chronic hyperglycemia, independent of plasma lipid levels, is sufficient for the loss of β-cell differentiation and secretory function in the db/db mouse model of diabetes. Diabetes. 2005;54(9):2755–63.
16. Thornberry AN, Lazebnik Y. Caspases: enemies within. Science. 1998;281:1312–6.
17. Schwartzman RA, Cidlowski JA. Apoptosis: the biochemistry and molecular biology of programmed cell death. Endocr Rev. 1993;14(2):133–51.
18. Höppener JW, Ahrén B, Lips CJ. Islet amyloid and type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2000;343(9):411–9.
19. Tomita T. Apoptosis in pancreatic β-islet cells in type 2 diabetes. Bosn J Basic Med Sci. 2016;16(3):162–79. https://doi.org/10.17305/bjbms.2016.919.
20. Kilpatrick ED, Robertson RP. Differentiation between glucose-induced desensitization of insulin secretion and β-cell exhaustion in the HIT-T15 cell line. Diabetes. 1998;47(4):606–11.
21. Robertoson RP. β-cell deterioration during diabetes: what's in the gun? Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2009;20(8):388–93.
22. Kajimoto Y, Watada H, Matsuoka T-a, Kaneto H, Fujitani Y, Miyazaki J-i, et al. Suppression of transcription factor PDX-1/IPF1/STF-1/IDX-1 causes no decrease in insulin mRNA in MIN6 cells. J Clin Invest. 1997;100(7):1840–6.
23. Federici M, Hribal M, Perego L, Ranalli M, Caradonna Z, Perego C, et al. High glucose causes apoptosis in cultured human pancreatic islets of Langerhans. A potential role for regulation of specific Bcl family genes toward an apoptotic cell death program. Diabetes. 2001;50:1290–300.
24. Donath MY, Gross DJ, Cerasi E, Kaiser N. Hyperglycemia-induced -cell apoptosis in pancreatic islets of *Psammomys obesus* during development of diabetes. Diabetes. 1999;48:738–44.
25. Kim W-H, Lee JW, Suh YH, Hong SH, Choi JS, Lim JH, et al. Exposure to chronic high glucose induces β-cell apoptosis through decreased interaction of glucokinase with mitochondria. Diabetes. 2005;54:2602–11.
26. Piro S, Anello M, Pietro CD, Lizzio MN, Patanè G, Rabuazzo AM, et al. Chronic exposure to free fatty acids or high glucose induces apoptosis in rat pancreatic islets: possible role of oxidative stress. Metabolism. 2002;51(10):1340–7.
27. Chan CB, Saleh MC, Koshkin V, Wheeler MB. Uncoupling protein 2 and islet function. Diabetes. 2004;53:S136–S42.
28. Joseph JW, Koshkin V, Saleh MC, Sivitz WI, Zhang C-Y, Lowell BB, et al. Free fatty acid-induced -cell defects are dependent on uncoupling protein 2 expression. J Biol Chem. 2004;279(49):51049–56.
29. Laybutt DR, Preston AM, Åkerfeldt MC, Kench JG, Busch AK, Biankin AV, et al. Endoplasmic reticulum stress contributes to beta cell apoptosis in type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2007;50(4):752–63.
30. Ogihara T, Mirmira RG. An islet in distress: β cell failure in type 2 diabetes. J Diabetes Investig. 2010;1(4):123–33.
31. Kelpe CL, Moore PC, Parazzoli SD, Wicksteed B, Rhodes CJ, Poitout V. Palmitate inhibition of insulin gene expression is mediated at the transcriptional level via ceramide synthesis. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:30015–21.
32. Stein DT, Esser V, Stevenson BE, Lane KE, Whiteside JH, Daniels MB, et al. Essentiality of circulating fatty acids for glucose-stimulated insulin secretion in the fasted rat. J Clin Invest. 1996;97(12):2728–35.
33. Véret J, Coant N, Berdyshev EV, Skobeleva A, Therville N, Bailbé D, et al. Ceramide synthase 4 and de novo production of ceramides with specific N-acyl chain lengths are involved in glucolipotoxicity-induced apoptosis of INS-1 β-cells. Biochem J. 2011;438:177–89.
34. Galadari S, Rahman A, Pallichankandy S, Galadari A, Thayyullathil F. Role of ceramide in diabetes mellitus: evidence and mechanisms. Lipids Health Dis. 2013;12:98–114.
35. Unger RH, Zhou Y-T. Lipotoxicity of b-cells in obesity and in other causes of fatty acid spillover. Diabetes. 2001;50(1):S118–S21.
36. Brownlee M. Biochemistry and molecular cell biology of diabetic complications. Nature. 2001;414:813–20.
37. Oliveira HR, Verlengia R, Carvalho CRO, Britto LRG, Curi R, Carpinelli AR. Pancreatic β-cells express phagocyte-like NAD(P)H oxidase. Diabetes. 2003;52(6):1457–63.
38. Yan L-J. Pathogenesis of chronic hyperglycemia: From reductive stress to oxidative stress. Journal of Diabetes Research. 2014;2014:137919.
39. Grankvist K, Marklund SL, Täljedal I-B. CuZn-superoxide dismutase, Mn-superoxide dismutase, catalase and glutathione peroxidase in pancreatic islets and other tissues in the mouse. Biochem J. 1981;199:393–8.
40. Brownlee M. The pathology of diabetic complications: a unifying mechanism. Diabetes. 2005;54:1615–25.
41. Nishikawa T, Edelstein D, Du JX, Yamagishi S, Matsumura T, Kaneda Y, et al. Normalizing mitochondrial superoxide production blocks three pathways of hyperglycaemic damage. Nature. 2000;404:787–90.
42. Maechler P, Wollheim CB. Mitochondrial function in normal and diabetic β-cells. Nature. 2001;414:807–12.
43. Orrenius S, Zhivotovsky B. Cardiolipin oxidation sets cytochrome c free. Nat Chem Biol. 2005;1(4):188–9.
44. Ma ZA, Zhao Z, Turk J. Mitochondrial dysfunction and β-cell failure in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Exp Diabetes Res. 2012;2012(703538):1–11.
45. Kaufman BA, Li C, Soleimanpour SA. Mitochondrial regulation of β-cell function: maintaining the momentum for insulin release. Mol Asp Med. 2015;2015(42):91–104.

46. Yoon Y, Krueger EW, Oswald BJ, McNiven MA. The mitochondrial protein hFis1 regulates mitochondrial fission in mammalian cells through an interaction with the dynamin-like protein DLP1. Mol Cell Biol. 2003;23(15):5409–20.
47. Maassen JA, Romijn JA, Heine RJ. Fatty acid-induced mitochondrial uncoupling in adipocytes as a key protective factor against insulin resistance and beta cell dysfunction: a new concept in the pathogenesis of obesity-associated type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetologia. 2007;50:2036–41.
48. Hasnain SZ, Prins JB, McGuckin MA. Oxidative and endoplasmic reticulum stress in b-cell dysfunction in diabetes. J Mol Endocrinol. 2016;56:R33–54.
49. Karunakaran U, Kim H-J, Kim J-Y, Lee I-K. Guards and culprits in the endoplasmic reticulum: glucolipotoxicity and β-cell failure in type II diabetes. Exp Diabetes Res. 2012;2012(Article ID 639762):9 pages https://doi.org/10.1155/2012/639762.
50. Sharma RB, Alonso LC. Lipotoxicity in the pancreatic beta cell: not just survival and function, but proliferation as well? Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14(6):492–508.
51. Cui W, Ma J, Wang X, Yang W, Zhang J, Ji Q. Free fatty acid induces endoplasmic reticulum stress and apoptosis of β-cells by Ca2+/Calpain-2 pathways. PLoS One. 2013;8(3):e59921.
52. Meigs JB, Wilson PWF, Fox CS, Vasan RS, Nathan DM, Sullivan LM, et al. Body mass index, metabolic syndrome, and risk of type 2 diabetes or cardiovascular disease. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2006;91(8):2906–12.
53. Meier JJ, Bonadonna RC. Role of reduced B-cell function in the pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(2):S13–S9.
54. Cantley J, Ashcroft FM. Q&A: insulin secretion and type 2 diabetes: why do β-cells fail? BMC Biol. 2015;13:33–40.
55. Saisho Y, Butler AE, Manesso E, Elashoff D, Rizza RA, Butler PC. β-cell mass and turnover in humans: effects of obesity and aging. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:111–7.
56. Hull RL, Kodama K, Utzschneider KM, Carr DB, Prigeon RL, Kahn SE. Dietary-fat induced obesity in mice results in beta cell hyperplasia but not increased insulin release: evidence for specificity of impaired beta cell adaptation. Diabetologia. 2005;48(7):1350–8.
57. Cheng Z, Almeida FA. Mitochondrial alteration in type 2 diabetes and obesity. Cell Cycle. 2014;13(6):890–7.
58. Itariu BK, Stulnig TM. Autoimmune aspects of type 2 diabetes mellitus – a mini-review. Gerontology. 2014;60:189–96.
59. Araki E, Oyadomari S, Mori M. Impact of endoplasmic reticulum stress pathway on pancreatic β-cells and diabetes mellitus. Exp Biol Med. 2003;228:1213–7.
60. Chen J, Saxena G, Mungrue IN, Lusis AJ, Shalev A. Thioredoxin-interacting protein: a critical link between glucose toxicity and beta cell apoptosis. Diabetes. 2008;57(4):938–44.
61. Teff KL, Elliott SS, Tschöp M, Kieffer TJ, Rader D, Heiman M, et al. Dietary fructose reduces circulating insulin and leptin, attenuates postprandial suppression of ghrelin, and increases triglycerides in women. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2004;89(6):2963–72.
62. Lowell B, Shulman I. Mitochondrial dysfunction and type 2 diabetes. Science. 2005;307:384–7.
63. Ritzel RA, Meier JJ, Lin C-Y, Veldhuis JD, Butler PC. Human islet amyloid polypeptide oligomers disrupt cell coupling, induce apoptosis, and impair insulin secretion in isolated human islets. Diabetes. 2007;56:65–71.
64. Arnelo U, Permert J, Larsson J, Reidelberger RD, Arnelo C, Adrian TE. Chronic low dose islet amyloid polypeptide infusion reduces food intake, but does not influence glucose metabolism, in unrestrained conscious rats: studies using a novel aortic catheterization technique. Endocrinology. 1997;138:4081–5.
65. Hull RL, Westermark GT, Westermark P, Kahn SE. Islet amyloid: a critical entity in the pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2004;89:629–3643.
66. Mihara M, Erster S, Zaika A, Petrenko O, Chittenden T, Pancoska P, et al. p53 has a direct apoptogenic role at the mitochondria. Mol Cell. 2003;11(3):577–90.
67. Ortega-Camarillo C, Flores-López LA, Ávalos-Rodríguez A. The role of p53 in pancreatic β-cell apoptosis. Immunoendocrinology. 2015;2:E1075. https://doi.org/10.14800/Ie.1075.
68. Balmanno K, Cook SJ. Tumour cell survival signalling by the ERK1/2 pathway. Cell Death Differ. 2009;16:368–77.
69. Elkholi R, Chipuk JE. How do I kill thee? Let me count the ways: p53 regulates PARP-1 dependent necrosis. BioEssays. 2014;36(1):46–51.
70. Lavin MF, Gueven N. The complexity of p53 stabilization and activation. Cell Death Differ. 2006;13:941–50.
71. Flores-López LA, Díaz-Flores M, García-Macedo R, Ávalos-Rodríguez A, Vergara-Onofre M, Cruz M, et al. High glucose induces mitochondrial p53 phosphorylation by p38 MAPK in pancreatic RINm5F cells. Mol Biol Rep. 2013;40(8):4947–58.
72. Yang WH, Kim JE, Nam HW, Ju JW, Kim HS, Kim YS, et al. Modification of p53 with O-linked N-acetylglucosamine regulates p53 activity and stability. Nat Cell Biol. 2006;8:1074–83.
73. Flores-López LA, Cruz-López M, García-Macedo R, Gómez-Olivares JL, Díaz-Flores M, Konigsberg-Fainstein M, et al. Phosphorylation, ON-acetylglucosaminylation and poly-ADP-ribosylation of p53 in RINm5F cells cultured in high glucose. Free Radical Biol Med. 2012;53:S95.
74. Ogawara Y, Kishishita S, Obata T, Isazawa Y, Suzuki T, Tanaka K, et al. Akt enhances Mdm2-mediated ubiquitination and degradation of p53. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(24):21843–50.
75. Barzalobre-Gerónimo R, Flores-López LA, Baiza-Gutman LA, Cruz M, García-Macedo R, Ávalos-Rodríguez A, et al. Hyperglycemia promotes p53-Mdm2 interaction but reduces p53 ubiquitination in RINm5f cells. Mol Cell Biochem. 2015;405:257–64. https://doi.org/10.1007/S11010-015-2416-0.
76. Fang S, Jensen JP, Ludwig RL, Vousden KH, Weissman AM. Mdm2 is a RING finger-dependent ubiquitin protein ligase for itself and p53. J Biol Chem. 2000;275:8945–51.
77. Zhong L, Georgia S, Tschen S-i, Nakayama K, Nakayama K, Bhushan A. Essential role of Skp2-mediated p27 degradation in growth and adaptive expansion of pancreatic β cells. J Clin Invest. 2007;117(10):2869–76.
78. Vetere A, Choudhary A, Burns SM, Warner BK. Targeting the pancreatic β-cell to treat diabetes. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2014;13:278–89.
79. Wang Z, York NW, Nichols CG, Remedi MS. Pancreatic β-cell dedifferentiation in diabetes and re-differentiation following insulin therapy. Cell Metab. 2014;19(5):872–82.
80. Lorenzo PI, Fuente-Martín E, Brun T, Cobo-Vuilleumier N, Jimenez-Moreno CM, Gomez IGH, et al. PAX4 defines an expandable β-cell subpopulation in the adult pancreatic islet. Sci Rep. 2015;5:15672.

Suggested/Further Reading

Brownlee M. The pathobiology of diabetic complications: a unifying mechanism. Diabetes. 2005;54(6):1615–25. The author presents a unified mechanism that links overproduction of superoxide by the mitochondrial electron-transport chain to high glucose-mediated damage and diabetes complications. This paper provides the basis for understanding of the origin of ROS and oxidative stress in diabetes.

Hasnain SZ, et al. Oxidative and endoplasmic reticulum stress in b-cell dysfunction in diabetes. J Mol Endocrinol. 2016;56:R33–54. https://doi.org/10.1530/JME-15-0232. Here, the importance of deleterious

effects of oxidative stress and endoplasmic reticulum stress-induced unfolded protein response is evaluated on β-cell insulin synthesis and secretion as well as on inflammatory signaling and apoptosis. Additionally, the authors describe recent findings on how inflammatory cytokines contribute to β-cell dysfunction and protect interleukin 22.

Kaufman B, et al. Mitochondrial regulation of β-cell function: maintaining the momentum for insulin release. Mol Aspects Med. 2015;42:91–104. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mam.2015.01.004. Pancreatic β-cell function and insulin release is mitochondria dependent. In this work, the authors review mitochondrial metabolism and control of mitochondrial mass as they relate to pancreatic β-cell function.

Ortega-Camarillo C, et al. The role of p53 in pancreatic β-cell apoptosis. Immunoendocrinology. 2015;2:e1075. https://doi.org/10.14800/ie.1075; © 2015. This paper examines p53 mobilization to a mitochondrion and its phosphorylation, as well as the activation of the intrinsic route of β-cell apoptosis by hyperglycemia. They also describe how hyperglycemia affects the p53 degradation pathways.

Sharma RB, Alonso LC. Lipotoxicity in the pancreatic beta cell: not just survival and function, but proliferation as well? Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14(6):492. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11892-014-0492-2. This paper reviews free fatty acids' (FFAs) positive and negative effects on beta cell survival and insulin secretion. It also examines strong new findings that lipids may also impair compensatory beta cell proliferation.

Strycharz J, et al. Is p53 involved in tissue-specific insulin resistance formation? Oxid Med Cell Longev 2017; Article ID 9270549, 23 p. https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/9270549. The protein p53 is connected with metabolic defects underlying cellular aging, obesity, inflammation and β-cells apoptosis. Additionally, the authors discuss p53 regulation of multiple biochemical processes such as glycolysis, oxidative phosphorylation, lipolysis, lipogenesis, *β*-oxidation, gluconeogenesis, and glycogen synthesis.

Obesity in the Pathophysiology of Diabetes

13

Juan Antonio Paniagua González and Antonio Vidal-Puig

Obesity as a Public Health Problem

Obesity and overweight states are characterized by an excessive accumulation of body fat. Depending on the amount of fat accumulated, but also on the individual's genetic and exposure to specific environmental factors, the obese patient can develop several health problems. The increase in the prevalence of obesity and associated complications is considered a major public health issue that affects all demographic groups, irrespective of age, sex, race, education, or economic level [1]. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that more than 1.9 billion adults (≥18 years old) were overweight, and of these over 600 million were obese, according to worldwide data registered in 2014 [2]. In the United States, obesity rates have been rising in both, adults and children in recent years [3–5]. The maintenance of a healthy weight, usually achieved between 18 and 25 years of age, requires a life-long sustained energy equilibrium between energy intake and energy expended, which is affected not only by diet but also age, stage of development, genetic makeup as well as epigenetic, level of nutritional education, as well as physical and psychosocial interactions [6, 7].

A useful tool to define a person as obese or underweight is the body mass index (BMI), estimated by the relationship between weight and height. The age-standardized death rate, from any reason, was generally lowest in subjects with a BMI of 22.5–24.9 kg/m^2 [8–10]. Moreover, deaths associated with high BMI are ranked fourth, behind deaths from hypertension, smoking, and unhealthy diets and ahead of deaths related to hyperglycemia, sedentary lifestyle, high salt intake, alcoholism, and high blood cholesterol levels [11]. Lastly, it is also of relevance that the association between nutrient intake and diseases, such as cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular disease (CVD) [12, 13], obesity, body fat distribution, hypertension, insulin resistance, and hyperglycemia, is well established [14–16].

Deaths from CVD, cancer, and diabetes account for approximately 65% of all deaths, and obesity, mainly abdominal adiposity, increases the risk of all these disorders. BMIs higher than 25 kg/m^2 have a direct relationship with mortality due to CVD [6, 17–21]. CVD accounts for about 38.5% of all deaths in United States. Of relevance, this figure has declined since the 1940s and 1960s [8], associated with several primary prevention activities, improved treatment for acute ischemic phase, and secondary intervention [22, 23].

Deaths from all cancers accounted for about 23% of the total [8]. As high BMI increases mortality from cancer in most specific sites [10, 24, 25], compared to people with normal weight, obesity could increase cancer incidence about 14% in men and 20% in women. People with BMI ≥ 40 kg/m^2 could increase risk of death from cancer up to 52% in men and 62% in women [26]. Higher circulating glucose levels, low-grade inflammatory state, increased oxidative stress, and an altered bioavailability of hormones, mainly insulin, estrogens, and androgens, could be implicated in the rise in current cancer rates obesity-related. Finally, during the 1990s, in the United States, there was an increase of diabetes prevalence to 61%, and of this ≈90% were type 2 diabetes (T2D), in parallel with increase in the obesity rates [27]. Diabetic patients have 2–4 times higher risk of incidents of CVD [28]. Recently, global mortality directly related to diabetes was observed to be 2.9 million, about 5.2% of all deaths. Of this 2–3% was observed in the poorest countries, and over 8% was in the United States, Canada, and the Middle East. In people aged 35–64, this rates increased from 6% to 27% [29].

In the United States, approximately 70% of T2D patients are overweight and obese, and over a period of 10 years, the risk of diabetes rose to 27% in people who gained 5 kg or

J. A. Paniagua González (✉)
Insulin Resistance, Metabolism and Adipose Tissue Unit, Maimonides Institute of Biomedical Research, University Hospital Reina Sofia, Córdoba, Spain

Endocrinology and Nutrition Services, University Hospital Reina Sofia, Cordoba, Spain

A. Vidal-Puig
Wellcome Trust MRC Institute Metabolic Science, MRC MDU, University of Cambridge, Cambridge, UK

Wellcome Trust Sanger Institute, Hinxton, UK

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_13

more [30]. Specifically, central obesity is strongly related with metabolic disorders associated with insulin resistance and diabetes [31, 32]. The current advice to prevent and treat T2D includes maintaining an ideal body weight (BMI < 27–30 kg/m^2), physical activity, limiting the intake of sugar and saturated fat, and increasing the consumption of mono- and PUFA, as well as whole grains and fiber [33–35].

Obesity: Measurements and Assessment

Measuring body weight provides a sense of the degree of obesity; however, a more accurate and comparable measure of obesity is obtained by relating body weight to height [36]. The BMI is calculated as the ratio between weight and height squared ratio and expressed as kg/m^2. Based on the BMI measurement, it can be discriminated low, normal weight, overweight, and obese states in adults. The WHO has standardized BMI as (1) lower than 18 kg/m^2 as low weight; (2) between 18 and 25 kg/m^2 is normal weight; (3) between 25 and 29.9 kg/m^2 is overweight; and (4) greater than or equal to 30 kg/m^2 is obese [37, 38]. However, the BMI does not provide information about body composition (fat-free muscle mass/fat mass) nor about the pattern of body fat distribution. Thus, a better measure of obesity that overcomes these limitations is the measurement of percentage of body fat (BF%), which relates total weight to the weight of the fat mass. Of course, this is more difficult to measure than the BMI limiting its daily clinical use, but several accurate methods exist [39]. Body composition can be estimated from anthropometric measurements of skinfold thicknesses in several anatomical regions [40]. In research, BF% is determined by hydrostatic weighing (body weight by immersion) as the gold standard [41]. Alternatively, the bioelectrical impedance analysis technique can directly estimates the amount of the fat-free mass (FFM) and indirectly the body fat by subtracting from total body weight [42]. Individuals with normal weight or overweight, but that also have a high BF%, exhibit a cardiovascular risk which is comparable to those with obesity estimated by BMI. Of note, it is observed that at the age of 20, a BMI equal to 30 kg/m^2 implies a 30% of BF%. However at the age of 60, the same BMI represents a 40% BF% in men and up to 40–50% BF% in older women [43].

BMI informs neither the location nor distribution of the excess body fat. Central obesity occurs when the excess of fat accumulates in the intra-abdominal area, even at the expense of a decreased fat accumulation in the peripheral adipose tissue. Several parameters can be used to measure central obesity. The most widely used requires measuring the waist circumference (WC) and hip ratio (HR) to create the waist-HR (WHR). Subjects having a large WC have increased mortality [44] despite having a BMI < 30. Thus, high-risk individuals are better identified by incorporating WC and WHR measurements to BMI [45]. The WC measurement of central obesity varies with race and is currently accepted as >88 cm in women and >102 cm in men in the United States [46]. Finally, the relationship of waist circumference to height (WHtR) can also be used to identify adults at high cardiometabolic risk [47–49]. All these parameters help also to predict the risk of metabolic diseases such as T2D [50].

In research intensive settings, more complex and accurate techniques are available, such as dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry (DEXA), computed tomography (CT), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). DEXA estimates body fat distribution by scanning arms, legs, and trunk [51, 52]. Differentiation between abdominal subcutaneous fat and intra-abdominal fat, which is composed of visceral adipose tissue (VAT) and intraperitoneal and retroperitoneal fat, is better seen by MRI and CT [53, 54]. Finally, single-voxel magnetic resonance spectroscopy is the gold standard for measuring ectopic fat, outside anatomically defined fat depots. Ectopic fat can be estimated after separating water and fat signals within each voxel (using software such as jMRUI) [55, 56].

Adipocyte and Adiposity Development

Types of Adipocytes and Differentiation

When describing fat depots, it is important to differentiate two types of well-differentiated adipose tissues, which have specific distribution and function and are referred to as white adipose tissue (WAT) and brown adipose tissue (BAT) (Fig. 13.1). The WAT main function is the deposit of surplus energy as triacylglycerol (fat), which could be mobilized and offered to other metabolically relevant organs through hormonal signaling. The WAT is designed to be plastic and expand. In fact, WAT accounts from 5% to 50% of human body weight. However, WAT is also a main source of endocrine signaling [57]. One of the key hormones is adiponectin, typically associated with metabolically "healthy" expansion of adipose tissue facilitating adipocyte lipid storage and consequently preventing ectopic lipid accumulation. Conversely, leptin prevents lipogenesis while facilitating lipolysis and fatty acid oxidation. These actions may be mediated centrally by activation of sympathetic efferent signals to both brown adipose tissue and WAT to induce lipolysis. Leptin has recently been suggested as therapy for individuals with generalized lipodystrophy, who frequently develop severe metabolic syndrome characterized by hepatic steatosis, insulin resistance, and diabetes mellitus.

Physiological expansion of WAT involves different degrees of hypertrophy and/or hyperplasia of adipocytes and active remodeling of vascular and mesenchymal stromal cells.

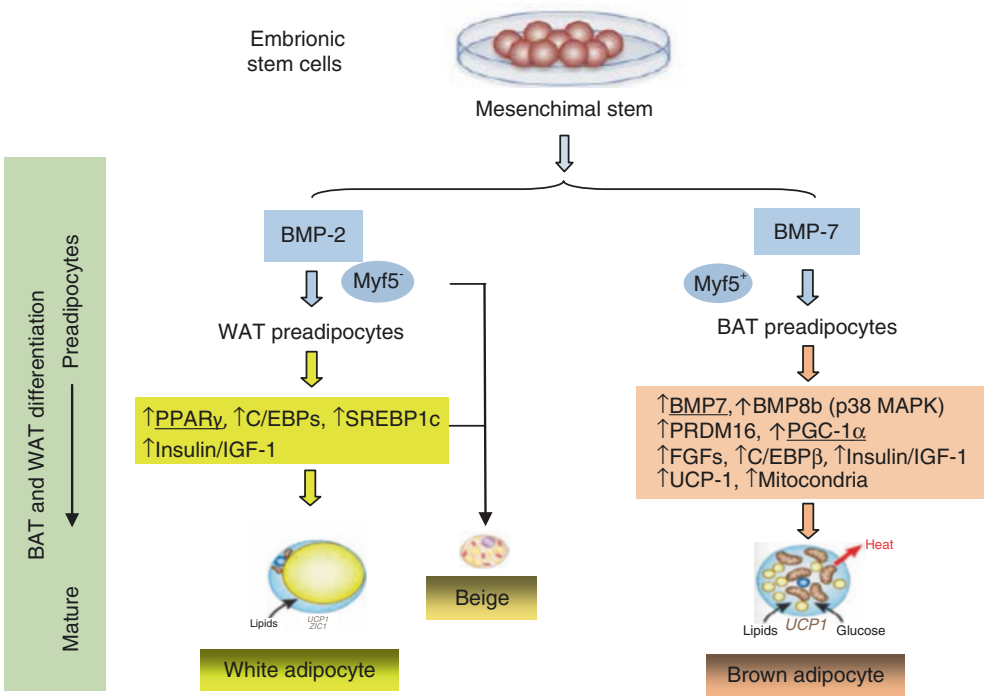


Fig. 13.1 Adipose tissue expands to store excess energy as fat and regulates fuel needs to other tissues. In WAT growth transcriptional factors such as the binding proteins CCAAT/enhancer-binding protein (C/EBP) and PPAR-γ are fundamental. Sterol regulatory element-binding transcription protein-1c (SREBP-1c) activates PPAR-γ expression [256] and mediates lipid biosynthesis by insulin [257]. Mature WAT is characterized by the expression of glucose transporter 4 (GLUT4) sensitive to insulin and enzymes like fatty acid synthase (FAS) and glycerol-2-phosphate dehydrogenase [258, 259]. During adipose tissue expansion, inappropriate vascular tissue development results in hypoxia, and death of adipocytes and macrophage infiltration is induced [260]. On the other hand, BAT derived from Myf5⁺ mesoderm progenitors shares a common origin with skeletal myoblasts [261]. The development of BAT requires that PRDM16 activates PPAR-γ coactivator (PGC-1α/β) or CtBPs and inhibits transcriptional factors that induce WAT [262, 263]. In addition, bone morphogenetic protein 7 (BMP-7) turns on a full program of brown adipogenesis involving induction of PRDM16 and PGC-1α and expression of UCP-1 which is a feature of brown cells [264]. Last, beige fat cells adapt functions, either like "WAT" when energy balance is exceeded or like "BAT" in response to stimuli similar to BAT activation. Today, research in identifying the main genes that control differentiation, development, and activation of BAT is highly active. (This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) International License [231])

Also immune cells, endothelial cells, and undifferentiated or adipocyte precursor (AP) cells must also be coordinately developed [58]. Storage of excessive fat in WAT causes mechanical overload and contributes to increased risk of metabolic disorders. The repertoire of molecules secreted by adipocytes is not exhausted. Recently asprosin was described to be abundantly expressed in mature white adipocytes, accumulated in excess in the blood of humans with obesity and proportional to insulin levels, which has suggested asprosin levels may be associated with insulin resistance [59].

The role of BAT is thermogenesis contributing to energy expenditure and body weight regulation (Fig. 13.2) [60, 61]. In mammals, BAT is the primary site of thermogenesis in the absence of muscle contraction. BAT thermogenic function is mediated by the activation of a specific mitochondrial uncoupling protein 1 (UCP1) (Fig. 13.2). In humans, BAT function is particularly important for the control of body temperature after birth and in early childhood [62]. However, data from adipose tissue samples together with evidence provided by positron emission tomography coupled with computed tomography have established the existence of functionally active brown adipose tissue in adult humans [63–66]. Furthermore, some of these studies also relate the degree of activation of these sites with BAT and lower BMI, increased basal energy expenditure, and decreased onset of diabetes [67]. BAT in adult humans can be found in the cervical and supraclavicular [68] regions, depots identified as canonical BAT exhibiting similarities with the BAT in rodents. Lastly, recent studies have reported on secretory molecules from BAT, so-called batokines, which include fibroblast growth factor 21 (FGF21), neuregulin 4 (NRG4), vascular endothelial growth factor A (VEGFA), and bone morphogenetic protein 8B (BMP8B). These studies indicate that similarly to WAT, the BAT may also play a physiological role as an endocrine organ [69].

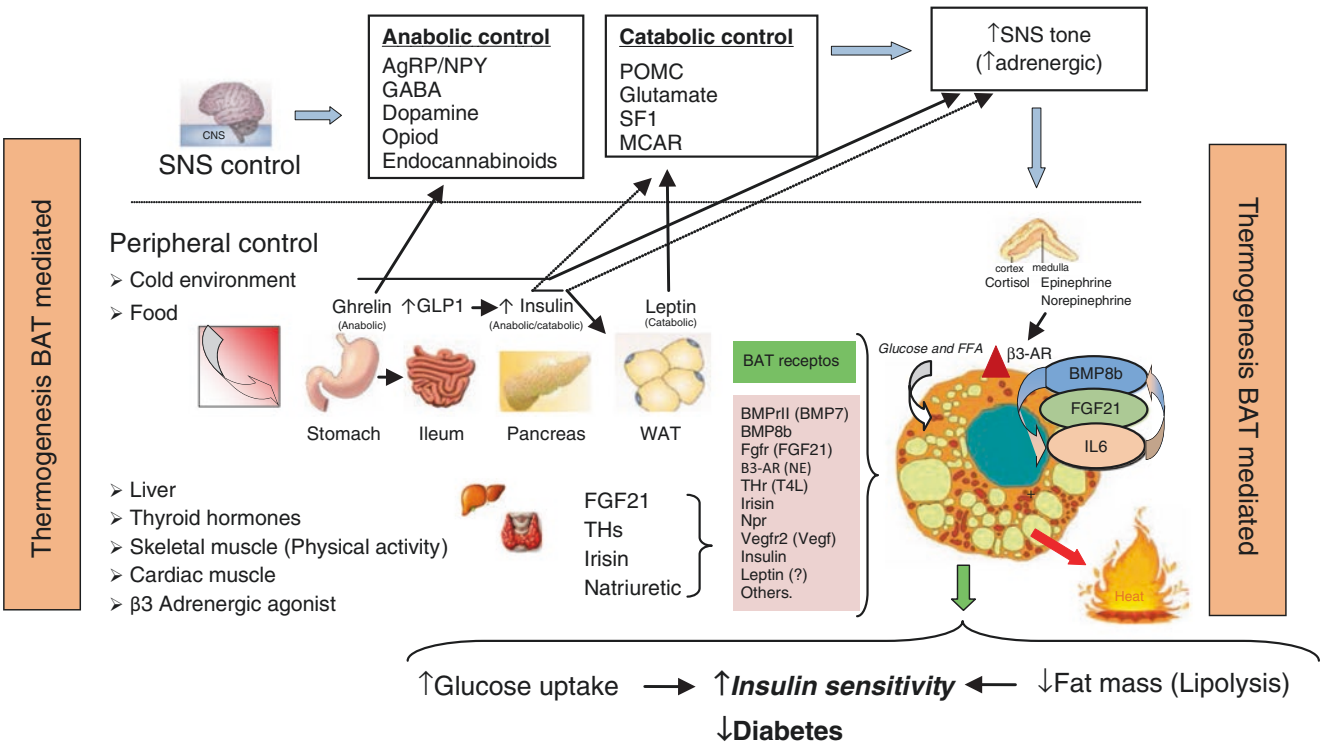


Fig. 13.2 *By contrast to WAT, brown adipose tissue* (BAT) was developed especially for energy expenditure (thermogenesis) mainly controlled by the SNS, which highly innervates brown fat cells. BAT is regulated in response to cold temperatures, hormones, and diet. BAT abundance and activation is highest in children and decreases with age. BAT activity decreases with BMI, body fat, and visceral obesity. Of note, BAT activity is lower in diabetics than nondiabetic subjects. Thyroid hormones play a key role in controlling BAT activation, such as the cold-induced deiodinates thyroxine (T4) to the more active T3. Norepinephrine binds to β-ARs inducing PGC1α and expression of UCP1. Whereas β1-AR mediates precursors of BAT proliferation, β3-AR plays a key role in the thermogenic function of BAT. Another signal, irisin hormone, released from muscle to fat tissue, mediates the beneficial effects of exercise reducing diet-induced obesity and improving insulin resistance. In addition, FGF21 is secreted by adipose tissue, liver, and skeletal muscle, through regulating lipolysis in WAT as well as increasing substrate utilization by increasing fatty acid oxidation in the liver. This actions may be mediated increasing activity of adiponectin. WAT white adipose tissue, BAT brown adipose tissue, PRDM16 PR domain containing 16, PPAR-γ peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ, PGC-1α peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ coactivator 1α, SNS sympathetic nervous system, BMI body mass index, FGF21 fibroblast growth factor 21. (This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 International License [231])

On top of white and brown adipocytes, a third fat cell named beige/brite, which shares similarities with brown adipocytes, are found infiltrating skeletal muscle as well as in diverse areas of WAT [70]. Of note, beige cells are Myf5-positive cells, a classical feature of BAT, and appear dispersed in WAT [71]. The term "beige" describes their similar morphology with white adipocytes but the inducibility of features similar to brown adipocytes including UCP1 activity with β-adrenergic stimulation [72, 73]. There is also evidence that beige mature adipocytes can be interconvert between typical white and brown adipocytes, without the need for "de novo" cell differentiation from precursor cells [73]. A priori, this could mean that the rate of lipid storage or lipid oxidation could be adapted and adjusted in response to external stimuli such as a decrease or increase in temperature. Results from mice indicate that activated beige cells may contribute to improve carbohydrate metabolism and prevent/reverse fatty liver [74]. In any case, the physiological relevance of these cells in humans is far from being confirmed.

Effects of Hormones and Adipokines on Adipogenesis and Glucose Metabolism

Adipose tissue development and function are modulated by hormones, growth factors, secreted molecules by adipose tissue cells, nutritional factors, and pharmacological drugs (Fig. 13.2).

Hormones and Growth Factors

Insulin is key anabolic hormone that contributes to adipocyte differentiation and lipogenesis [75]. Brown preadipocyte determination is also regulated by insulin through a necdin-

E2F4 interaction that represses peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ (PPAR-γ) transcription [76]. When in excess, hyperinsulinemia, either exogenously or endogenously, is a major enabler of adipose tissue expansion contributing to weight gain. Several molecules produced by cells from the adipose tissue, such as tumor necrosis factor alfa (TNF-α), leptin, and resistin, interact and inhibit insulin signaling on adipocytes.

Glucocorticoids and sexual hormones also affect the functionality and development of the adipose. For instance, the infusion of hydrocortisone increases levels of circulating free fatty acids (FFAs) by activating the mechanisms of lipolysis [77, 78]. Glucocorticoids promote adipogenesis by increasing the expression of both PPAR-γ transcription factors and C/EBPδ and decreasing the expression of pref-1 [79]. The adipocyte also has a complete arsenal of enzymes that regulate the metabolism of steroid sex hormones [80]. Glucocorticoids control activity of 11-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase 1 and 2 (11 βHSD1 and 2) that can change the active form cortisol to inactive cortisone and vice versa [81]. Of note this enzyme is highly expressed in visceral adipose tissue which may contribute to regional redistribution of fat [82, 83]. Another key aspect related to adipose tissue distribution is in sex steroids. Body fat distribution is different in men and women, and adipose tissue has activity of either cytochrome P450-dependent aromatase or 17-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (17βHSD) enzymes that can modify the repertoire of steroids. Aromatase mainly regulate the rate of transformation of androgens into estrogens, while 17βHSD regulate the formation of a more active form of androgens. Of note, the ratio 17βHSD/aromatase in adipose tissue correlates directly with central obesity [80, 84].

Thyroid hormones are main contributors to global growth and development [85] by exerting an important role controlling energy metabolism and the function of the main metabolic organs such as the adipose tissue, liver, heart, skin tissue, or muscle [86, 87].

Growth hormone and insulin like growth factor 1 Growth hormone (GH) is critical for somatic growth but also has enormous influence of the regulation of body fat composition and distribution, through its lipolytic and anabolic effects [88].

Major Adipokines

Adipose tissue contributes to the metabolic control of energy substrates such as glucose and lipids and interacts with several hormonal systems. The molecules produced by adipose tissue (adipokines) act in many organs including adipose, muscle, and CNS. In obese and insulin-resistant patients, there are qualitative and quantitative changes in the repertoire of adipokines. For example, some adipokines increase (e.g., leptin, resistin), while others decrease (e.g., adiponectin) [89] (Figs. 13.2 and 13.3).

Leptin Leptin is secreted by adipocytes, establishing a negative feedback between the amount of adipose tissue and satiety centers in the brain [90, 91]. Leptin also serves as a sensor of energy availability enabling energy demands such as pregnancy and adaptation to starvation [92]. Leptin levels decrease after weight loss, enabling saving energy adaptive response involving low thyroid activity, sympathetic tone, and decreased basal energy expenditure [93]. Thus, treating leptin deficiency with recombinant leptin not only reduces food intake and body weight [94] but also reverses infertility, prevents lipodystrophy-associated metabolic complications, and reverses impaired glucose metabolism [95–98]. The leptin action appears to be facilitated by insulin, glucocorticoids, TNF-α, estrogens, and C/EBPα and is decreased by androgens, β3-adrenergic activity, GH, FFAs, and PPAR-γ agonist [99].

Leptin also plays an essential role in energy metabolism, by facilitating lipid mobilization and preventing ectopic fat accumulation (lipotoxicity syndrome) [100, 101]. Leptin facilitates lipid oxidation and by doing so can reduce excessive fatty acid accumulation in the liver, pancreas, heart, kidney, and muscle tissue (Figs. 13.2 and 13.3).

Adiponectin Adiponectin is produced in mature adipocytes and is more abundant in peripheral subcutaneous than visceral adipose tissue [102]. Adiponectin receptors are G protein-coupled highly expressed in the muscle (AdipoR1) and liver (AdipoR2) [103]. Through them adiponectin promotes lipid oxidation in skeletal muscle and the liver and reduces hepatic glucose production and postprandial hyperglycemia [104, 105] contributing to maintain metabolic homeostasis.

Adiponectin deficiency, as observed in obesity, plays a role in the development of insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes as suggested by the following: (a) Adiponectin levels have an inverse relationship with degree of obesity, insulin resistance, and T2D [106, 107], which is reversed by adiponectin treatment which results in improvement of IR [108]. (b) Adiponectin reduces FFA levels and is associated with improved lipid profile, glycemic control, and reduced inflammation in T2D patients [109]. (c) TNF-α plasma levels and its hepatic production are decreased by adiponectin treatment, which also improved hepatomegaly, steatosis, and ALT levels related with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) [105] (Fig. 13.3). (d) The PPAR-γ agonists (thiazolidinediones, TZDs) redistribute lipids from central

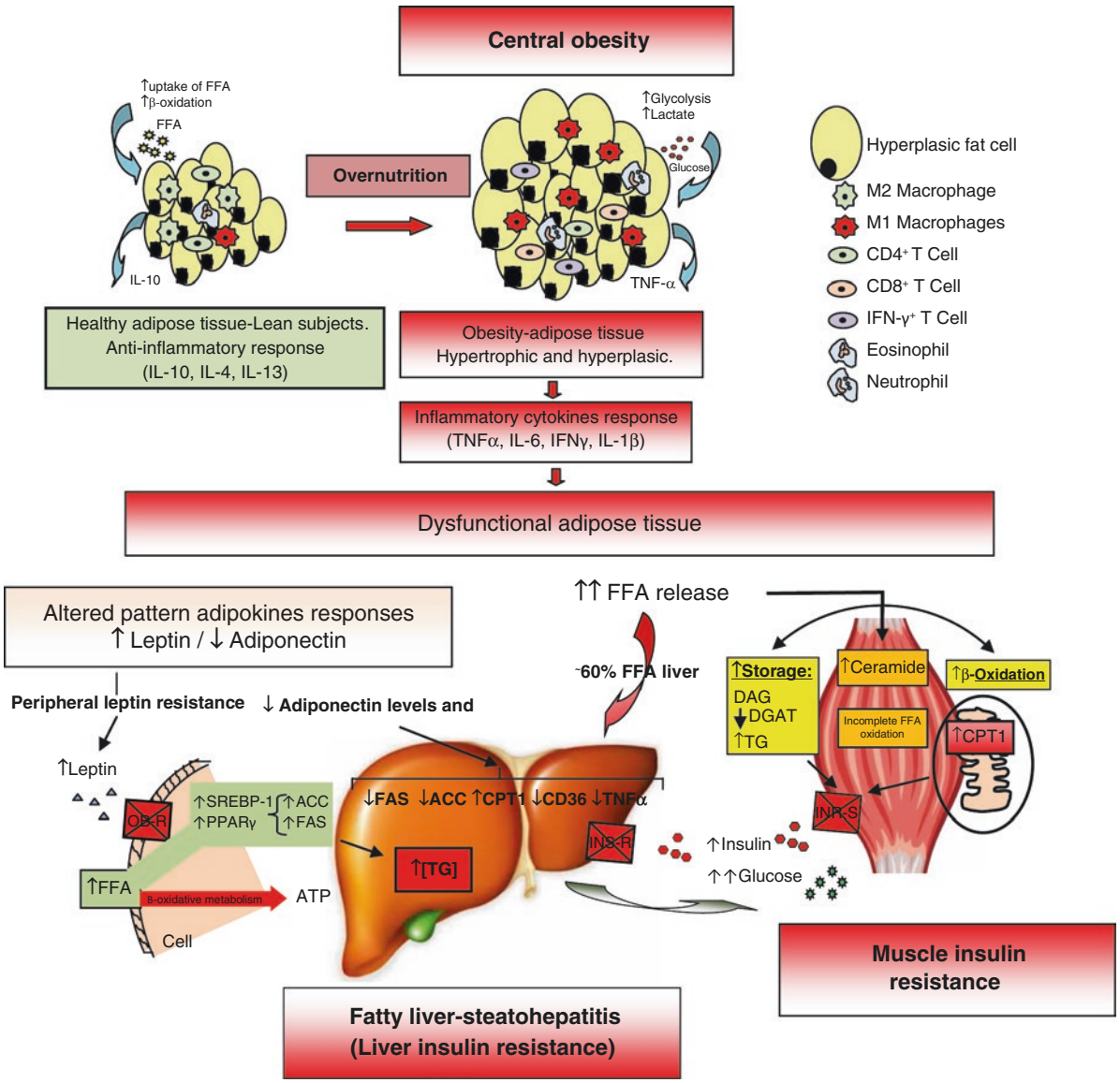


Fig. 13.3 Dysfunctional adipose tissue. When adipose tissue expands, it is slowly infiltrated by macrophages, and a low-grade chronic inflammatory state is developed [193, 265]. Several macrophage subtypes can be seen, which can be divided into pro-inflammatory M1 or alternatively activated M2 [266]. Adipocytes, macrophages, and immune T cells contribute to the production of inflammatory cytokines [127, 174, 193, 267]. The M1 macrophages are induced from precursor M0 macrophages by stimulation of type 1 T-helper (Th1) inflammatory cytokines like IFN-γ and TNF-α and lipopolysaccharide, whereas the M2 macrophages are induced by type 2 T-helper (Th2) cytokines such as IL-4 and IL-13. While adipose tissue of obese subjects shows mainly M1 macrophages, lean subjects have high levels of M2 macrophages. M2 macrophages are involved in remodeling and tissue repair through the action of IL-10, IL-1 receptor antagonist, and arginase-1, which result in better insulin sensitivity. Whereas M1 macrophages use glucose for energy, M2 macrophages activate the β-oxidation of fatty acids [266, 268]. Finally, M1 macrophages are a principal source of TNF-α which, by activating Wnt signaling and suppressing expression of PPAR-γ, interferes with the development and function of adipocyte and reduces the capacity to store triglycerides [269, 270]. Peripheral adipose tissue will expand to an equilibrium point, and when exceeded (inflexibility), glucose and lipid uptake decline, while insulin levels rise in order to maintain serum glucose within the normal range [271]. In addition, inflexibility is associated with early insulin resistance which increases lipolysis in adipose tissue, generating a redistribution of fats with systemic lipotoxic effects in the muscle, liver, β-cell, etc. (lipotoxicity). Furthermore, increased TNF-α and IL-6 levels are inversely related with peripheral and hepatic insulin-mediated glucose uptake [180]. The liver takes up excess released of FFA in serum to capacity by storing with triacylglycerol (TAG) and slowly fatty liver could be developed (NAFLD). Peripheral FFAs contribute ~60% of total TAG stored in the liver, whereas the de novo lipogenesis is ~26%, and ~15% is from food [230]. On the other hand, leptin levels rise with adipose expansion, while adiponectin levels tend to decrease. The elevated leptin levels should increase β-oxidation in non-adipose tissues, decreasing excess fatty acids in these cells. However, this action may be partially blocked by the anabolic effect of hyperinsulinemia, inducing a leptin system dysfunction (peripheral leptin resistance) [89]. In addition, adiponectin action improving peripheral glucose uptake and adiponectin protective action on liver fat accumulation are decreased [105]. Finally, both leptin and adiponectin seem to regulate the deposition of fat in insulin-sensitive tissues by increasing β-oxidation. IFN-γ interferon-γ, TNF-α tumor necrosis factor-α, IL interleukin, PPAR-γ peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ, WAT white adipose tissue, FFA free fatty acids, NAFLD nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, CPT-1 carnitine palmitoyltransferase-1, FAS fatty acid synthase, ACC Acetyl-CoA carboxylase.

to peripheral depots and also increase adiponectin levels and improve lipid profile and insulin sensitivity while improving diabetes and NAFLD [110]. This suggests that maintaining normal levels of adiponectin may help in the treatment of early-stage diabetes. However, the relationship between adiponectin levels and cardiovascular disease is not well established [111].

Others Adipokines

Resistin has also been related to obesity, insulin resistance, and development of T2D. Blocking the action of resistin improves insulin sensitivity [112]; however, the significance of resistin in glucose metabolism in human still is inconclusive.

Visfatin is produced predominantly by abdominal adipose tissue and has been suggested to have insulin-mimetic actions [113, 114]. However, the importance of visfatin in glucose metabolism is still unclear [115].

Omentin-1 Obesity decreases both omentin plasma levels and omentin gene expression in visceral adiposity [116]. In obese women with polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), glucose and insulin levels were negatively related with omentin-1 levels, whereas metformin treatment increased serum omentin levels in parallel with improvements in insulin sensitivity and glycemic control [117, 118].

Obestatin is a hormone that opposes the effects of orexigenic effect of ghrelin. Obestatin decreases in subjects with diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance [119], and its receptors are downregulated in obesity-associated T2D [120].

Retinol-binding protein 4 Retinol-binding protein 4 (RBP4) is released from adipocytes and correlates with the degree of insulin resistance in obesity, T2D, and relatives of T2D patients [121–123]. The specific role of RBP4 in insulin resistance has not been determined.

Asprosin Is a 140-amino-acid polypeptide, recently described, abundantly secreted, and expressed in WAT. Levels of asprosin are increased in fasting situations in healthy humans. Asprosin acts on the liver stimulating hepatic glucose production. Asprosin administration induces a quick increase in plasma levels of glucose and insulin. Blocking asprosin actions might be beneficial for the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus [59].

Inflammatory Adipokines

TNF-α is a transmembrane protein released mostly by activated macrophages and also by other cell types including endothelial cells, adipocytes, etc. [124–126] (Fig. 13.3). Both TNF-α gene and its receptors are present in adipocytes and are expressed at higher levels in WAT [102]. TNF-α contributes to local and systemic inflammation, which limits the proliferation and differentiation of mature adipocytes. Increased release of TNF-α from adipose tissue contributes to the impairment of insulin action [127–129] and treatment with anti-TNF-α antibody led to improvement in glucose utilization in obese rats [127] at least. Similarly, obese mice genetically modified to ablate TNF-α had close to normal insulin sensitivity [129]. Moreover, weight reduction is associated with both improved insulin activity and decreased TNF-α gene expression [130]. The mechanism how TNF-α promotes insulin resistance may involve the decrease in the expression of PPAR-γ and target genes involved in lipid and glucose uptake [131, 132]. A link between fatty acid binding protein 4 (aP2), FFAs, and increased expression of TNF-α in obesity has been suggested [128]. Not only TNF-α but also interleukin-6 (IL-6) were both increased after nutritional fatty acid activation of Toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4) [133].

IL-6 is secreted by adipose tissue, T cells, and macrophages (Fig. 13.3). Adipocytes can produce IL-6, which is associated with C-reactive protein (CRP) levels and inflammatory states typically found in obese patients [134]. About 1/3 of the total concentration of IL-6 is produced in adipose tissue, mainly by visceral adipose tissue compared with peripheral adipose tissue [102]. It has been suggested that IL-6 levels are directly linked to obesity and insulin resistance [135] and to the inhibition of the activity of lipoprotein lipase (LPL) [136].

Chemokine molecules are potent chemoattractants of leucocytes and modulate the formation of reactive oxygen and cytokines. The chemokine molecule 5 (CXC ligand 5, CXCL5) is expressed at high levels by the macrophage of white adipose tissue [137]. Serum levels of CXCL5 are elevated in obese patients independently of their degree of insulin resistance above the levels observed in normal-weight subjects [137]. Furthermore CXCL5 serum levels are reduced after weight loss.

Fatty Acid Metabolism Effects on Adipogenesis and Glucose Metabolism

FFAs are energy-rich molecules fundamental regulators of metabolism. Excess calories ingested as fat, protein, and carbohydrates end up stored as triglycerides in white

adipocytes. FFAs are also essential constituents of the cell membrane, influencing its fluidity and the topology of receptors, transporters, and other membrane proteins. In addition, FFAs can have hormone-like actions and serve as ligands of nuclear receptors controlling gene expression [138]. Although food is the main source of essential fatty acids, de novo endogenous biosynthesis could supply nonessential fatty acids [139].

Both linoleic acid (ω-6 series) and linolenic acid (ω-3 series), have been related to decreased insulin resistance and CVD, must be included in the diet [140]. By contrast, excess saturated fatty acids and trans fats in the diet are associated with increased insulin resistance and risk of CVD [140].

LPL activity is increased by insulin and depends on apo CII and apo CIII being released by adipocytes. LPL is essential for FFA uptake from lipoproteins and storage [141]. In addition, cytoplasmic fatty acid-binding proteins (FABPs) facilitate intracellular transport and partition of FFA to specific compartments and functions [142]. FABPs link lipid metabolism, hormone action, and systemic energy homeostasis involving glucose metabolism [128].

De novo biosynthesis of saturated chain fatty acids is carried out mainly in the liver where acetyl-CoA is formed from pyruvate. Most de novo FFA are synthesized from acetyl-CoA and malonyl-CoA through two enzymatic steps, including acetyl-CoA carboxylase (ACC) and fatty acid synthase (FAS). The ACC controls production of short fatty acids which are elongated until 16-carbon palmitic acid is formed by FAS (cytosol). Nearly all fatty acids required can be synthesized from palmitic acid by several steps of oxidation and elongation [143]. Finally, various enzymes which regulate the synthesis of triglycerides are also implicated in glucose metabolism [144]. Overexpression of diacylglycerol acyltransferase 1 (DGAT1) results in increased adipose tissue without affecting IS but increases the secretion of TNF-α [145]. A remaining question is whether de novo lipogenesis originated from fatty acids may have a specific fate or contribute to specific functions different from the pools of FAs generated from dietary nutrients.

Obesity Effects on Pathogenesis of Type 2 Diabetes

Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2D) is characterized by hyperglycemia, insulin resistance, and inappropriately low secretion of insulin. The prevalence of T2D has increases in parallel with the increased prevalence of obesity [146] and sedentary lifestyle [147]. Pathogenesis of common forms of T2D is complex [148], requiring the combination of different degrees of insulin resistance and insulin deficiency [149]. In addition, insulin resistance and defects in insulin secretion can be determined via genetic and/or varying environmental factors, complexity that makes difficult to isolate a single cause in diabetic patients [150]. However, it is clear that the final development of diabetes requires beta cell failure as suggested by the fact that obese subjects do not necessarily develop T2D.

The potential molecular links between obesity and increased risk of T2D include exacerbated inflammatory response with excessive cytokine secretion (TNF-α and IL-6), insulin resistance, defects in fatty acid metabolism and lipotoxicity, mitochondrial dysfunction, and endoplasmic reticulum stress. However, weight loss is a central intervention working on most forms of prediabetes, because even modest weight loss improves glycemic control and reduces diabetes risk.

The risk of T2D and cardiovascular disease rises with the amount of body fat and more particularly when fat accumulates in central or abdominal depots [151]. Whether subcutaneous fat deposition is less pathogenic than visceral fat is quite likely but requires further investigation. In addition, the contribution of the subtypes of adipose tissue to glucose metabolism is important. For instance, increased level of brown adipose tissue may help to control carbohydrate metabolism and prevent or reverse obesity [63, 152].

Infiltration of immune cells in adipose tissue can alter its metabolic functions. Although the adipose tissue is not the cause of obesity per se, taking advantage of the specific functions of the repertoire of fat cell types and functional characteristics of the depots including the immune cells may help to uncouple obesity from its complications.

The main proposed mechanisms linking obesity to insulin resistance and T2D include (1) increased and altered secretion of adipokines (TNF-α, adiponectin, leptin, etc.) directly to inflammation and insulin resistance; (2) ectopic fat deposition, predominantly in the liver, skeletal muscle, and ß-cell, contribute to altered fat, insulin resistance, and glucose metabolism; and (3) mitochondrial dysfunction causing a bioenergetic cellular defect leading to decreased insulin sensitivity and defective pancreatic ß-cell function.

Effects of Fetal Develop on Adult Glucose Metabolism

The Nurses' Health Study (NHS) of over 69,000 women found an inverse relationship between birth weight and adult diabetes [153]. A meta-analysis with an adjusted odds ratio of diabetes of 0.80, 95% CI 0.72–0.89 for each 1 kg increase in birth weight confirmed this [154]. However, a higher birth weight (>4.0 kg) is also be associated with an increased risk of diabetes [155]. Lastly, a U-shaped relationship between birth weight and the development of T2D was found in a meta-analysis. Thus, high and low birth weight are associated with a similar increased risk of diabetes (ORs 1.36 and 1.47) [156] although not necessarily attributable to the same mechanisms.

Effect of Adult Obesity on Glucose Metabolism

After absorption in the intestine and after synthesis in the liver, triglycerides (TG) are transported in specialized lipoproteins [chylomicron and very low-density lipoprotein (VLDL)] to adipose and other tissues. Intracellular toxic accumulation of diacylglycerol and the input and output flows of FFA and acyl-CoA can be ameliorated by the formation and safe storage as TG [157]. Droplets containing TG are surrounded by a monolayer of phospholipids and proteins, e.g., perilipin (ADRP), which regulates lipid droplet formation, growth, and dissolution [158].

Obesity and Lipotoxicity Syndrome

The main function of the adipose tissue is fat storage. Adipose release of FAs and uptake into non-adipose tissues must be coupled matching demand and supply. For instance, in fasted state or during physical exercise, the lipolysis in adipose tissue is increased, a process that requires the coordination of suppression of plasma insulin and elevation of contrainsulin hormones (glucagon, cortisol, epinephrine, etc.). However, in obesity, it is quite normal to reach a prolonged overfeeding state, where fat load may exceed the functional storage capacity of the adipose tissue determining a state of metabolic inflexibility, where lipid uptake and mobilization is inefficient (inflexibility) (Fig. 13.4).

Another factor contributing to its functional defect is the adipocyte cell size. When adipocytes enlarge in an attempt to increase their capacity, they also become insulin resistant. This makes that the antilipolytic effect of insulin is reduced and that lipolysis of triglycerides from the adipose tissue as a whole increased and the bulk FFA release is increased. This leak of FFA and accumulation in plasma subsequently promotes insulin resistance in the muscle and liver [159] and also inhibits insulin secretion [160], ultimately causing β-cell apoptosis [161].

Among the most important factors controlling adipocyte capacity for storage and functional switch between storage and lipolysis, we identify the nuclear receptor PPAR-γ as a key transcription factor that controls the coupling between lipid storage and adipogenesis and lipolysis [162]. In addition, the direct role of leptin on adipose tissue functionality has been suggested. However, common forms of obesity are typically characterized by leptin resistance predominantly located at central hypothalamic action [163]. Leptin action central and/or peripherally appears to be implicated in processes that prevent lipotoxicity in non-adipose tissues through the regulation of β-oxidation mediated in part by its effects through peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-α (PPAR-α) activity. This proxidative effect helps to minimize the metabolic burden of ectopic accumulation of lipids. Patients with insulin resistance syndrome have lower mRNA leptin abundance in peripheral adipocytes than IS patients (leptin resistance), even though insulin treatment acutely increases leptin levels [89, 164]. Another factor to consider is that a chronic increase of β-oxidation may contribute to oxidative stress and to generate inflammation, which may be potentially harmful [163].

Adiponectin, another adipose tissue derived hormone, also has a major role in improving insulin sensitivity, anti-inflammatory, anti-apoptotic, and pro-angiogenic effects that enhance whole body and adipose metabolic flexibility. Adiponectin action in adipose tissue improves both, the efficiency of the adipose tissue at regulating the releases of FFAs and increases the rate of FFA reesterification during the postprandial state [165]. However, the low serum adiponectin levels typically observed already in the early stages of insulin resistance are not sufficient to prevent the subsequent derail of adipose tissue function [89]. As part of the natural history toward the development of diabetes, there is progressive failure of the adipose tissue homeostatic mechanisms. When they are overwhelmed, lipids cannot be hold efficiently in the adipose tissue and accumulate in tissues that cannot store excess lipids such as the muscle, β-cells, liver, heart, and kidneys [101] without triggering metabolic toxic responses.

In addition with the leak of FAs, the dysfunctional adipose tissue also produces and releases an abnormal pattern of adipocytokine (e.g., decreased adiponectin and increases leptin, TNF-α and IL-6). This promotes an inflammatory state that further compromises the insulin sensitivity and functionality of the adipose tissue depot. Advancing in the natural history, the development of central obesity further exacerbates hyperinsulinemia and hyperglycemia, initially in the postprandial state and finally to global hyperglycemia. This phenotype is typically associated with hypertriglyceridemia, hypoalphalipoproteinemia, hypertension, and fatty liver (dysfunctional metabolism in the liver), a cluster of pathologies commonly diagnosed as metabolic syndrome (MetS) [166].

Pathogenesis of Obese Type 2 Diabetes

Obese T2D is typically associated with four clinical and metabolic defects: obesity, insulin resistance, dysfunction of β-cells, and increased hepatic endogenous glucose production [167]. However, the mechanisms by which these defects progress, the way they affect each other and contribute to the increase of glucose levels in obese T2D, are not fully elucidated. In a landmark longitudinal

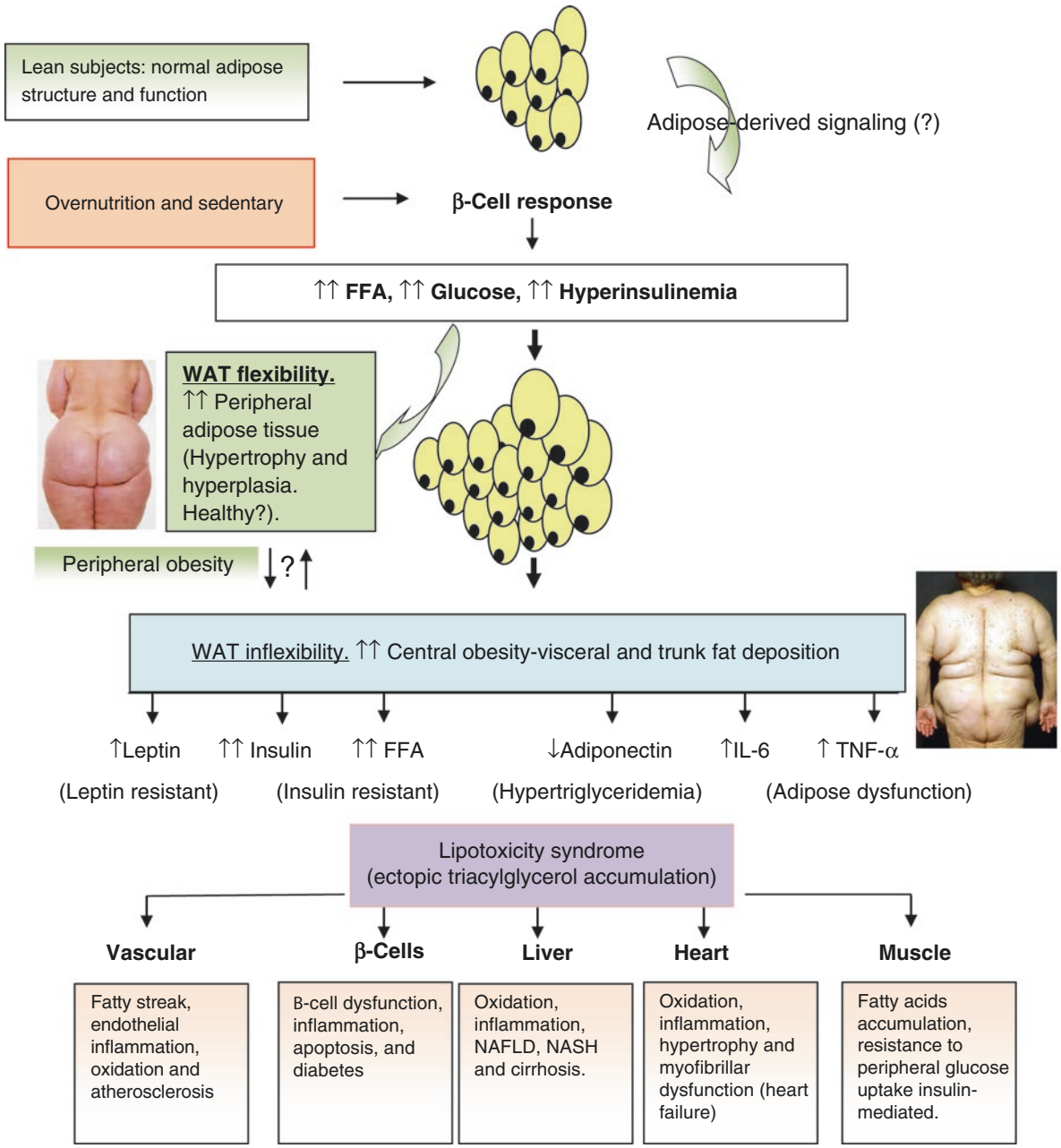


Fig. 13.4 Adipose tissue expandability and metabolic syndrome. After overeating with positive energy balance, adipose tissue increases its storage capacity, which is regulated by several factors. In individuals with a high capacity for storing fat, mainly when WAT is expanded (WAT flexibility), most, despite obesity developing, will remain normal, known as metabolically healthy obese (MHO). However, a low-grade chronic inflammatory response is frequently observed leading to dysfunctional adipose tissue [272]. Therefore, a pro-inflammatory milieu with elevation in IL-6 and mainly TNF-α, an altered adipokines profile with decreased adiponectin and increased leptin levels, will result in a dysfunctional adipose system. Increased release of cytokines and adipokines is related to insulin resistance, hyperglycemia, altered lipid profile, and cardiovascular diseases [89, 273, 274]. Insulin resistance is associated with the accumulation of lipids in non-adipose tissues such as muscle (lipotoxicity), due to increased lipolysis of fatty acids from adipose tissue. On the other hand, when the maximal storage capacity of adipose tissue is achieve, dysfunctional adipose tissue results, and redistribution of fat is initiated. Limitation in fat storage capacity could be necessary and even precedes the development of metabolic factors. Ectopic lipid accumulation in non-adipocyte cells causes lipotoxicity in these organs, including inflammation and apoptosis. Thus, lipotoxicity in β-cells could decrease β-cell mass (β-cell dysfunction) and can cause diabetes. Increased fat in the liver leads to NAFLD and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) and could cause hepatic dysfunction, myocardial dysfunction in the heart, the endothelial fatty streak that could be a precursor of generalized arteriosclerosis, etc. The point at which adipose tissue begins to fail is probably influenced by genetic and epigenetic factors. However, the question is: Can storage capacity in WAT be enhanced to meet an increased demand? [275] One answer in humans is treatment with PPAR-γ agonists (TZDs) that transfer fat from central to peripheral deposits, improve lipid profile and insulin sensitivity, and reduce diabetes and NAFLD [110]. WAT white adipose tissue, MHO metabolically healthy obese, IL interleukin, TNF-α tumor necrosis factor-α, NAFLD nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, NASH nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, PPAR-γ peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ, TZD thiazolidinedione. (This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 International License [231])

study of obese subjects with high incidence of T2D (Pima Indians of Arizona), peripheral insulin effect (euglycemic clamp), acute insulin response (AIR), and endogenous glucose production, in those whom glucose tolerance deteriorated from normal (NGT) to impaired (IGT) to T2D over 5.1 ± 1.4 years, were measured [167]. Patients who developed IGT typically presented increased body weight, decreased insulin sensitivity, and defective acute insulin secretion. In those who developed an open T2D, a greater increase in body weight, coupled with a more severe insulin resistance and deterioration of insulin secretion, and further increase of hepatic glucose production (HGP), was observed. By contrast, overweight patients who maintained normal glucose tolerance still gained weight associated despite decreased insulin-stimulated glucose disposal; however they maintained a robust insulin secretory response (AIR that was increased).

Another organ that is gaining relevance in metabolic failure associated with diabetes is the gut. The gastrointestinal tract should be considered as a large and specialized endocrine organ that releases two major incretin peptides: the glucagon-like peptide1 (GLP-1) by L-cells (distal small intestine) and glucose-dependent insulinotrophic peptide (GIP) by k-cells (early small intestine). GLP-1 and GIP jointly contribute to rise by 60–70% insulin released in response to a mixed meal [168]. In the context of the obese T2D patients, their β-cells generate resistance to GLP-1 and GIP [169]. Thus, despite their levels being normal or minimally reduced, their signaling in beta cells is dysfunctional. Moreover, GLP-1 also reduces glucagon releases by α-cells on the pancreas and reduces appetite. Finally, in these patients the GLP-1 resistance results in hyperglucagonemia and increased HGP and contributes to weight gain by promoting an orexigenic response [170].

The kidney is another point of metabolic control [171]. The kidney generates about 15–20% of the endogenous glucose production, mainly in fasting period, and is controlled by insulin function. But, the kidney in obese T2D is insulin resistant leading to an increase in its glucose production increases. Furthermore, the glucose filtered is efficiently reabsorbed by sodium glucose transporter 2 (SGLT2) (80–90%) and SGLT1 (10–20%). During early stages of hyperglycemia, this capacity of reabsorption is increased and contributes to maintain elevated glucose levels but also to retain sodium and water which may contribute to increase high blood pressure.

Contributing to the phenotype, it could be argued that as insulin and amylin, which is released together with the insulin, have anorectic signaling properties acting in hypothalamus, in obese T2D this signal of insulin is likely to be dysfunctional so that appetite is not suppressed which may contribute to overweight [172, 173].

Underlining Factors of Obesity-Induced Insulin Resistance

(a) *Inflammation and insulin resistance*

Long-time overfeeding and positive energy balance require adipocytes to increase their number and size. Excessive expansion of adipose tissue is associated with metabolic dysfunction, changes in adipokines, increased hypoxia, immune cell infiltration, and attempts to remodel, cell death, and apoptosis. Inflammation is part of an early homeostatic response aimed to repair of damaged tissues (Figs. 13.3 and 13.4).

Enlargement of adipose tissue is associated with secretion by adipocytes of monocyte chemoattractant protein (MCP)-1, which promotes monocyte infiltration in WAT and differentiation in adipose tissue macrophages (ATM) [174]. Moreover, adipocytes also induce the expression of the adhesion molecules ICAM-1 and platelet and endothelial cell adhesion molecule 1 (PECAM-1) on endothelial cells, which further attract monocytes [175]. The physiological role of this process is to facilitate the physiological remodeling of an expanding tissue. In obesity, failure to maintain the homeostasis of the organ results in uncontrolled inflammatory response generating a chronic low-grade inflammatory state. ATM contributes to the release of inflammatory factors. Of relevance macrophages share many adipocyte genes such as fatty acid-binding protein 4 (FABP4) and PPAR-γ, whereas adipocytes can express numerous macrophage factors such as TNF-α, IL-6, and MMPs [176]. Moreover, ATMs have been artificially classified as M1 pro-inflammatory and M2 anti-inflammatory macrophages on the basis of membrane markers. In obesity typically, there is an enrichment with a greater ratio of activated M1 than M2 macrophages [177, 178]. These pro-inflammatory M1 ATMs secrete pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6, whereas M2 ATMs secrete anti-inflammatory cytokines including IL-10 and IL-1 receptor antagonist [178]. Of relevance the preferential type of ATM and degree of infiltration are linked with the progression of insulin resistance [179]. Hence, oversecretion of TNF-α from macrophages and to a lesser extent by adipocytes is a major characteristic of obesity and contributes to insulin resistance of obese humans [127, 180] (Fig. 13.3).

Inflammation of adipose tissue in obesity also involves infiltration of different T cells. Regulatory T cells (T_{reg}) represent 5–20% of the $CD4^+$ T cells and play a major role in controlling immune actions [181]. T_{reg} release anti-inflammatory cytokines, preventing macrophage infiltration and promoting a M2 macrophage phenotype [179]. Of relevance, with weight gain, a decrease in T_{regs} is observed [181], whereas there is an infiltration and activation of $CD8^+$ T cells that contribute to attract macrophages in the early stages of obesity [182].

Another relevant type of immune cells are the eosinophils, main contributors to IL-4-secretion, representing about 4–5% of cells in WAT. Macrophages are the main target of IL4 promoting an anti-inflammatory M2 phenotype which can improve glucose metabolism through preservation of M2 macrophages in WAT [183]. Lastly, neutrophils also seem to participate in the immune cell infiltration of the AT, contributing to obesity-induced insulin resistance [184].

Insulin sensitivity is affected by inflammation through various mechanisms. *TNF-α* inhibits insulin action by altering insulin receptor substrate 1 (IRS-1), though the activation of its p55 receptor [185]. In addition, TNF-α, FFA, ROS, and hypoxia activate IκBα kinase β (IKKβ) and c-Jun N-terminal kinase 1 (JNK1) in WAT and the liver inhibiting insulin activity by changing phosphorylation of IRS-1 [186, 187]. Furthermore, TNF-α also inhibits PPAR-γ function, with it impairs lipid synthesis and fat store in WAT. Moreover, inflammation increases plasma FFA levels through stimulation of lipolysis and reduction of TG synthesis, inducing insulin resistance in adipose tissue [188].

IL-1β activity requires two stress response signals. The first, necessary for production of pro-IL-1β, needs the activation of TLR4 (LPS, SFA, etc.) [189]. The second, which converts pro-IL-1β to active IL-1β, is controlled by the NOD-like receptor (NLRP)3-caspase 1 inflammasome complex [190]. Formation of NLRP3 inflammasome is induced by stressors that include FFAs, glucose, adenosine triphosphate (ATP), uric acid, ROS, etc. [191]. Thus, activation of the NLRP3 induces caspase-1 activity that converts pro-IL-1β to mature IL-1β. The major roles of NLRP3 inflammasome and caspase-1 activity in obesity-induced IR have been recently described [192].

Interleukin-6 is secreted by the WAT, skeletal muscle, and liver [193, 194]. Plasma IL-6 levels increase in overweight patients [195] in response to high levels of insulin and TNF-α. IL-6 inhibits insulin action through phosphorylation of IRS-1 [196]. In addition, raised IL-6 plasma levels are also associated with steatohepatitis and liver dysfunction [194]. However, IL-6 appears to stimulate insulin secretion by increasing the number of GLP-1 receptors in β-cells [197]. Thus, increased IL6 may contribute to the early increase of insulin secretion observed in obese patients. In addition, while elevated IL-6 secretion from WAT and the liver appears to have adverse metabolic effects, increased IL-6 secretion by skeletal muscle seems to be metabolically advantageous. In fact, physical inactivity has been shown to reduce skeletal muscle IL-6 expression and secretion [198]. The difference may be that whereas the increase in plasma IL-6 levels induced by exercise results from glycogen/MAPK activation and activation of anti-inflammatory levels of IL-1RA and IL-10 levels [199], the IL6 secretion from adipose and the liver is mediated by NF-κB, thus emphasizing the pleiotropic role of IL-6.

Finally, *interleukin-10* is an anti-inflammatory cytokine produced by monocytes, M2 ATMs, DCs, T cells, and B cells. Thus it is expected to play a favorable role in obesity-induced IR. Of relevance IL-10 is decreased in T2D [200], whereas weight loss increases IL-10 expression in WAT concurrent with diminished pro-inflammatory gene expression [201].

(b) *Mitochondrial dysfunction and obesity-induced insulin resistance*

Mitochondria is the main site for oxidation of fatty acids and glucose; thus its dysfunction may contribute to FFA and lipid accumulation and favor IR [202]. Mitochondrial biogenesis is activated by insulin and diminished in subjects with IR [203, 204]. In humans the existence of mitochondrial dysfunction in obese T2D who display lower NADH:O_2 oxidoreductase activity and reduced mitochondrial size than lean subjects has been observed [205]. Moreover, mitochondrial dysfunction in obese and insulin-resistant patients decreases lipid metabolism in muscle compared with lean control subjects [205–207]. Therefore, when mitochondria is exposed to excess lipids for β-oxidation, the oxidation of glucose may be impaired contributing to a state of insulin resistance. Furthermore, mitochondrial function improves after exercise training increasing uptake and oxidation of glucose in parallel with an improvement in insulin sensitivity [208]. In addition, molecular studies have found a decrease in peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma coactivator 1-alpha (PGC1α), the key coactivator of mitochondrial biogenesis, and a decrease in phosphorylation pathways in muscle mitochondrial of T2D patients compared with control without diabetes [209, 210]. Thus, these studies have suggested the possibility of a genetic predisposition for mitochondrial dysfunction already observed in the early stages of insulin resistance and diabetes. Although a compensatory attempt to increase mitochondrial oxidative activity that could deal with the increased lipid supply in the short term has been shown [211], a sustained exposure to high-fat diet, prolonged for more than 4–6 weeks, may not be able to be compensated by increasing the mitochondrial activity leading to ectopic lipid accumulation and IR [212, 213]. However these observations are not consistently shown [214, 215]. It still unclear whether the observed defects in mitochondria function could be due primarily to a decrease in their number in muscle or secondary to metabolic defects within the mitochondria. It is known that insulin sensitivity improves after weight loss, an effect that does not require mitochondrial function to improve or even to change. Drugs which inhibit mitochondrial function and ATP production (TZDs, metformin, etc.) improve insulin sensitivity [216]. Lipid infusion-induced insulin resistance also enhances mitochondrial β-oxidation [217]. In nonobese sedentary humans after a period of overfeeding, IR was increased without changes in mitochondrial function [218]. Also muscle mitochondrial function was not distinctively impaired in obese and T2D compared with control subjects [218, 219]. Finally, there is some evidence that decreased mitochondrial function may induce insulin sensitivity, whereas an increase

mitochondria function is associated with insulin resistance in transgenic mice [214, 215]. Thus the relationship between mitochondria and insulin action remains complex and still not well established.

(c) *Oxidative stress and obesity-induced insulin resistance*

Mitochondria are an important source of superoxide generation in cells, having the greatest capacity for production in the electron transport chain (ETC). Under physiological conditions, mitochondrial superoxide contributes to mitochondrial function. Several studies have proposed a relationship between oxidative stress and IR. Lipid infusion increased levels of oxidative damage markers such as plasma thiobarbituric acid reactive substance (TBARS) and was associated with a decrease in insulin sensitivity [220]. A decrease in intracellular reduced glutathione (GSH) is associated with a decreased insulin sensitivity in T2D patients. In addition, infusion of GSH improved oxidative damage and insulin sensitivity [220, 221]. However, the physiological contribution of ROS to insulin sensitivity and metabolic response remains controversial, and several studies have been unable to reproduce consistently these observations [222, 223].

(d) *Endoplasmic reticulum stress and obesity-induced insulin resistance*

Endoplasmic reticulum (ER) is an important biosynthetic organelle that regulates many biological processes required for nutrient storage and metabolization. If the surplus of nutrients is greatly increased, synthesis, processing, and secretion of proteins may need to be increased, generating ER stress and dysfunction. Accumulation of unfolded or misfolded proteins is observed with ER stress [224]. ER stress is also induced by factors such as hyperglycemia, viral infections, hypoxia, and lipid overload or qualitative changes in membrane lipid composition [224]. ER stress has also been linked to the activation of chronic inflammation by activating JNK [225], raised oxidative stress, insulin resistance [226], and leptin resistance in obesity [227]. Moreover, amelioration of ER stress with drugs directly improves insulin sensitivity in obese mice and recently also observed in insulin-resistant obese patients [228]. However, the specific mechanisms and process by which ER stress induces insulin resistance in humans still remain to be fully elucidated.

(e) *Skeletal muscle glucose and lipid metabolism*

Adiponectin exerts direct effects in the skeletal muscle where it promotes fatty acid oxidation, decreases intramuscular lipid accumulation, reduces toxic deposit of ceramides, and results in the improvement of insulin sensitivity [57]. Leptin also may play an insulin sensitizing role in muscle through the CNS or through the leptin receptors which are highly expressed on muscle and participates on its growth. Leptin's effect seem more related to the enhancement in FFA oxidation and amelioration of lipid deposition in muscle mediated by AMPK activation [229].

(f) *Liver insulin resistance and hyperglycemia*

As the key organ regulator of lipid and glucose metabolism, the liver is commonly affected by ectopic lipid accumulation (Fig. 13.4). Fatty acids accumulation in the liver results from imbalance of different sources: dietary fat, increase in lipolysis from adipocytes, and from de novo hepatic lipogenesis, without excluding defects in oxidation and on lipoprotein assembly and secretion. High-fat diets have been shown to produce fatty liver, whereas low-fat/high-carbohydrate diets have been shown to produce hyperinsulinemia in the context of selective insulin resistance and stimulation of de novo lipogenesis via SREBP-1c. Thus, dietary composition can have a major effect by affecting the relative sources of fat in the liver. However, an overproduction of FFAs from adipose tissue in the context of obesity is probably the most likely source of the excess triglyceride accumulating in the liver [230].

When an inflammatory environment is established in the adipose tissue, the whole body lipid metabolism becomes altered, initiating postprandial hypertriglyceridemia, because the liver overproduction of VLDL is not removed in time and remains for longer in plasma (postprandial hyperlipidemia). Further, because lipolysis from peripheral adipose tissue is exacerbated, the interstitial content of FFAs increases, which can be taken up by the adjacent muscle cells (↓ IS) or again transferred into lipoproteins to the plasma and could be taken up by the liver (↑ VLDL production) and other organs (lipotoxicity).

The ectopic accumulation of fat in the liver has been strongly associated with both hepatic and adipose tissue insulin resistance, an almost universal finding in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) [231, 232]. Thus, whereas insulin sensitivity is reduced by ~45–50% (whole glucose disposal), the ability of insulin to inhibit endogenous hepatic glucose production is also decreased. However, not all obese individuals necessarily develop metabolic complications, as some remain insulin sensitive and do not develop fatty liver [89].

On top of all these factors, the link between obesity and associated metabolic abnormalities seems to be better related to the topography, anatomical distribution, and/or the functional peculiarities of the adipose tissue, a phenomenon which seems to be more relevant in patients with relatively normal weight (Figs. 13.3 and 13.4). The mechanism(s) whereby increased visceral adiposity is associated with insulin resistance is unclear, but circulating hormones secreted from adipose tissue have been implicated in modulating insulin sensitivity. Importantly, adiponectin

receptors (AdipoR1 and AdipoR2) are expressed in the liver. Adiponectin is associated positively with insulin sensitivity and associated negatively with intra-abdominal and hepatic fat. Adiponectin stimulates glucose use and fatty acid oxidation in the liver by activating AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) and PPAR-α [57]. Moreover, adiponectin exerts a protective action on liver fat accumulation, favoring lipolysis by promoting the action of CPT-1 and enhancing fatty acid transport into mitochondria to undergo β-oxidation while preventing the action of FAS, ACO, and TNF-α and decreasing the expression and action of CD-36 protein that promotes the transport of fatty acids [105]. Adiponectin induces suppression of Sterol regulatory element-binding protein-1c (SREBP-1c) a key factor regulator of lipogenic gene expression in the liver. In addition, adiponectin lowers toxic hepatic ceramide accumulation by enhancing ceramidase activity. Recently it has emerged that FGF21, released by adipose tissue, liver, and skeletal muscle, increases adiponectin levels. Also treatment of T2D subjects with pioglitazone also increases adiponectin levels, and this has been associated with decreases in hepatic fat and correlated positively with hepatic and peripheral insulin sensitivity both pretreatment and posttreatment [233].

Leptin prevents de novo lipogenesis while activating β-oxidation of fatty acids in the liver and has anti-inflammatory effects on the liver. Leptin increases inclusion of triglycerides into VLDL enabling release of lipid from the liver. Clinical trial is currently ongoing to show the effect of leptin therapy for NAFLD.

With respect to the role of the inflammatory cytokines IL-6 and TNF-α, the plasma levels of these two inflammatory cytokines are increased in subjects with NAFLD and NASH [89]. Moreover, peripheral blood monocyte production of TNF-α and IL-6 is increased in subjects with NASH [234].

β-Cell Dysfunction in Obese T2D Subjects

In obese insulin-resistant subjects, the pancreatic β-cells homeostatically increase insulin secretion to maintain glucose levels. The mechanisms involved in this β-cell compensation are not well known but result in both increased generation of β-cells and enhanced β-cell functional responses (Fig. 13.5) [235, 236]. β-cell mass is increased in obese compared with lean subjects [237]. The signaling for compensatory β-cell mass expansion may include increased glucose and FFAs (probably the most important direct stimulus), insulin, and other growth factors [235]. Glucose is the natural stimulus to release storage granules and to synthesize insulin by β-cells. Glucose must enter β-cell by a special glucose transporter (GLUT2) increasing pyruvate and ATP/ADP ratio (glucose oxidation) which trigger insulin release (first phase) [238]. The maintenance of hyperglycemia stimulates specific β-cell glucokinase (GK) activity which forms glucose 6-P that increases insulin production (second phase) [238]. The expression of GK and GLT2 is directly associated with the differentiation of β-cells, and both are regulated by PDX1 [239].

In addition, FFAs are essential for amplification of glucose-stimulated insulin secretion (GSIS) and other nutrient and non-nutrient stimulus [240]. First, the binding of FFAs to FFAR1/GPR40 receptors increases intracellular Ca2+ necessary for insulin release and, second, through generation of malonyl-CoA (inhibits fatty acid oxidation), which increases intracellular LC-CoA and diacylglycerol levels (DAG), in the malonyl-CoA/LC-CoA pathway [240, 241]. In addition, nutrients stimulate L-cells in ileum, and higher fat content in food raises levels of glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) [242]. GLP-1 and FFAs can have synergistic actions increasing GSIS [243], which may also stimulate β-cell growth [244, 245]. However, the incretin effect gets progressively impaired during the transition from IGT to diabetes. In addition, obesity and glucose tolerance each attenuate the incretin effect on β-cell function and GLP-1 response [246]. Pancreatic cells are connected with the parasympathetic system increasing insulin secretion, and its hyperactivity may be involved in the growth of β-cells [247]. Histological studies of the pancreas from necropsies and surgery have supplied important data for our knowledge of pathogenesis of islet β-cell dysfunction in T2D [237, 248]. An important research focused on the pancreas obtained from necropsies analyzed the total number of beta cells (β-cell mass), the stage of beta cell in regeneration, and those in apoptosis (Fig. 13.5). One hundred and twenty-four pancreases in total from lean and obese subjects were investigated, both groups having normal glucose tolerance and T2D and the obese group having the addition of impaired fasting glucose (IFG) [237]. In patients with normal glucose tolerance, the study found that relative cell volume was increased in obese versus lean cases ($P = 0.05$) increasing the mechanism of neogenesis ($P < 0.05$). However, a decrease of 40% and 63% in β-cell mass in IFG and T2D obese patients compared with obese normal glucose tolerance subject was also observed. Lean T2D patients compared with lean normal glucose tolerance subjects had a reduction of 59% in β-cell mass. The reduction of β-cell mass is evident in patients with impaired fasting glucose suggesting that the loss of β-cell mass starts in the early stages. Finally, the study of mechanisms implicated in this loss of β-cell mass found no significant effect on β-cell neogenesis, but β-cell death by apoptosis was increased [237].

Underlying Mechanisms Implicated in β-Cell Failure in T2D

(a) *Glucotoxicity and glycation stress.* Insulin secretion is reduced during periods of hyperglycemia, while partial recovery of β-cell function is achieved after control of glucose levels in T2D patients. Glucotoxic mechanisms

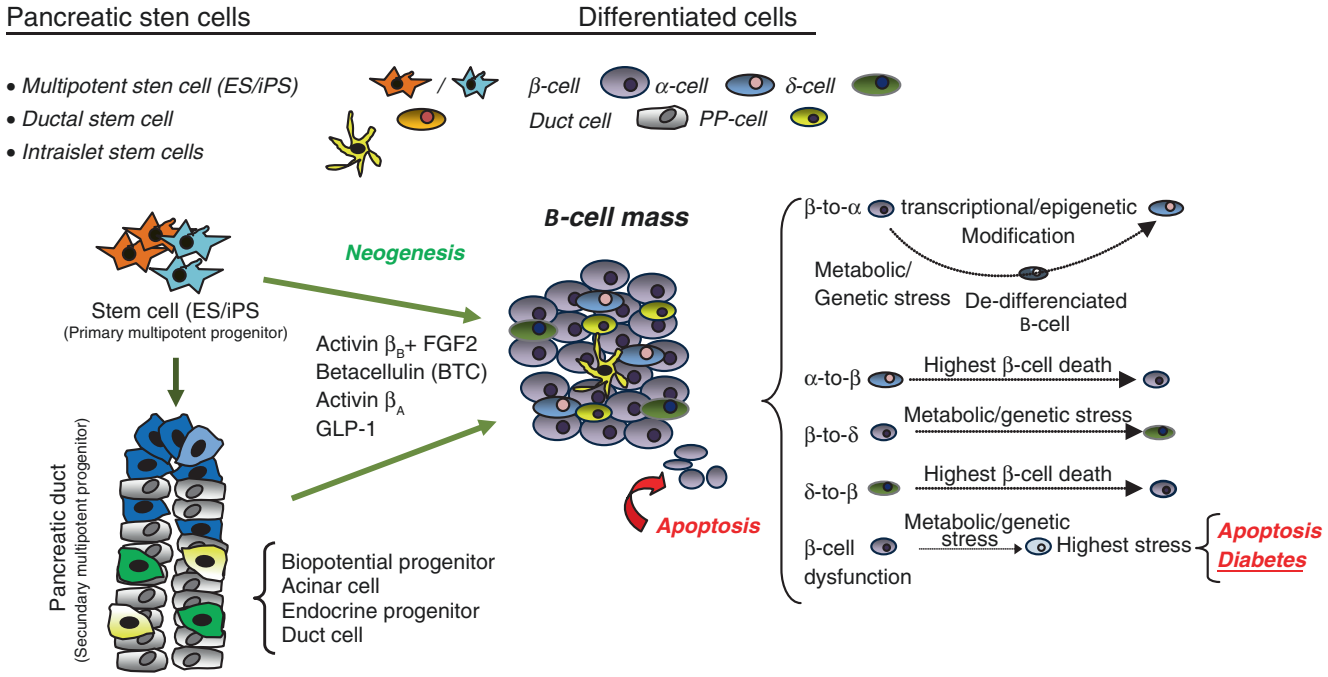


Fig. 13.5 Pancreatic β-cell failure appears as fundamental in the development of hyperglycemia in T2D, although insulin resistance may have been present for many years [276]. Insulin levels increase rapidly in relation with weight gain, probably associated with impaired insulin action; therefore hyperinsulinemia is frequently observed at diagnosis of T2D in obese subjects. However, only ~20% of obese subjects develop diabetes, while the remainder can maintain elevated insulin levels without hyperglycemia for many years. Thus, it appears that β-cell mass could progressively be reduced until it crosses a set point where insulin secretion is no longer sufficient to maintain the normal glycemic range in obese type 2 diabetic patients. Today, an increase in apoptosis of β-cells greater than a decrease in neogenesis is the most accepted cause for the loss of β-cell mass [237] (Fig. 13.5). β-Cell death can be increased by an accumulation of high toxic lipids, a human islet amyloid polypeptide, and finally by the generation of high levels of glucose in the type 2 diabetes with obesity. In addition, in obese individuals a high demand for insulin increases endoplasmic reticulum dysfunction (ER stress) and also hyperglycemia increases reactive oxygen species (oxidative stress) both contributing to apoptosis of β-cells. Thus, if β-cell mass is lower than 50%, the remaining β-cells try to increase their function in order to compensate, which produces chronic β-cell stress. Therefore, proinsulin levels are frequently increased early in developing T2D, probably due to ER stress of β-cells. In addition, proinsulin levels after hemiprancreatectomy determine the risk of developing diabetes, mainly in obese patients. Furthermore, the incretin effect is decreased in type 2 diabetes, affecting insulin secretion rates expressed as a percentage of insulin secretion. The incretin effect on total insulin secretion and β-cell glucose sensitivity and the GLP-1 response to oral glucose were significantly reduced in diabetes compared with NGT or IGT. Glucose tolerance and obesity inhibit the incretin effect independently [246]. In healthy subjects, infusion of physiological levels of GLP-1 increase insulin secretion. However, in patients with type 2 diabetes, physiological levels of GLP-1 had no effect on insulin release, whereas the infusion of GLP-1 at pharmacological levels (1 pmol/kg/min) increased just the "late-phase" (20–120 min) insulin response to levels similar to healthy subjects [277]. Furthermore, inflammatory pathways, such as increased interleukin-1β within islet β-cells, are involved in β-cell apoptosis in type 2 diabetes. Although the half-life and neogenesis rates of β-cells are difficult to establish in humans, it appears that β-cell can take several years to regenerate. However, interventions such as bariatric surgery can improve β-cell function in a few weeks in obese type 2 diabetes patients. In addition, β-cell function improved in obese T2D patients treated with a very-low-calorie diet (VLCD) weeks before insulin sensitivity was changed

implicated in β-cell damage include increased glucosamine pathway activity and glycation stress, raised oxidative stress, increased ER stress, activation of inflammatory, and toxic accumulation of islet amyloid polypeptide (IAPP) [249, 250].

(b) *Mitochondrial dysfunction and reactive oxygen species.* Increased surplus of glucose and FFAs raises its oxidation in mitochondria resulting in increased superoxide generation and production of uncoupling protein 2 (UCP2) in β-cell [251, 252].

(c) *Lipid effects on β-cell function.* An increased surplus of TG/FFA in β-cells induces glucose oxidation by which K+ATP channel pathway can be enhanced [243]. Thus, more than a direct lipotoxicity effect, elevated FFAs and hyperlipidemia can be a major signal for a flexible adaptation of β-cell mass to obese-induced insulin resistance [243]. However, the lipotoxicity effects of increased FFAs on β-cell can be seen more in combination with chronic hyperglycemia (glucolipotoxicity) [100, 241]. During hyperglycemia AMPK/malonyl-CoA signaling is stimulated, which slows down mitochondrial fat oxidation and promotes FFA accumulation in more complex lipids, some of which are lipotoxic [100, 241].

(d) *Islet β-cell exhaustion and ER stress.* The high requirement of insulin synthesis initiates mechanisms for compensating β-cell mass and generates high endoplasmic reticulum (ER) activity for the production of proinsulin. Continuous formation of proteins

including insulin results in stress and dysfunction of ER which affects the normal pattern of insulin secretion, a significant component of β-cell failure in T2D [253].

(e) *Differentiation of undifferentiated cells to pancreatic β-cells*

Hyperplasia, proliferation and neogenesis of pancreatic β-cells, may be adapted in relation to obese-induced insulin resistance and transitory β-cell damage. In humans pancreatic β-cell proliferation in pregnancy and T2D has not been observed. Therefore, similar to factors that induce multipotent stem cells (ES/iPS) to produce β-cells, we may be able to identify factors that inhibit pancreatic β-cell proliferation in various conditions. In humans, hyperglycemia progress is related with β-cell failure associated with a reduction of β-cell mass by increased apoptosis or dedifferentiation of β-cells during metabolic stressors such as is observed with obesity (Fig. 13.5).

Fate change between the different endocrine cells is observed under different conditions of stress. This may occur either directly or through a dedifferentiated state. Continued stress on the β-cell can lead to dedifferentiation that causes diabetes [254]. Future studies of some compounds that regulate endogenous stem-cell differentiation could lead to drugs that stimulate β-cells neogenesis [255].

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Talking about "Obesity: Measurements and Assessment," which one of the following statements is not correct?
   (a) Body mass index (BMI) is currently used to classify from low and normal weight to overweight and obese state in adults and is estimated by the weight/height squared ratio.
   (b) Deaths associated with a high BMI are ranked fourth behind deaths from hypertension, smoking, and unhealthy diets, and ahead of deaths related to hyperglycemia, sedentary lifestyle, high salt intake, alcoholism, and high blood cholesterol level.
   (c) Several clinical parameters can be used to estimate central obesity, with the most widely being waist circumference (WC), hip ratio (HR), and waist-HR (WHR).
   (d) In research, to measure obesity and body fat distribution, more complex and more accurate techniques are used, such as dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry (DEXA), computed tomography (CT), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).
   (e) In research the single-voxel magnetic resonance spectroscopy is the gold standard for measuring distribution of body fat.
2. With respect to the "Adipocyte and Adiposity Development," which one of the following statements is not true?
   (a) In humans there are two types of well-differentiated adipose tissues, which have different distributions and functions and are referred to as white adipose tissue (WAT) and brown adipose tissue (BAT).
   (b) The WAT is mainly related to the function of deposit of surplus energy as triacylglycerol, which could be mobilized and offered through hormonal signaling and has a tremendous ability to expand.
   (c) Adiponectin increases adipocyte lipid storage and prevents ectopic lipid accumulation. In addition, leptin decreases lipogenesis and increases lipolysis and fatty acid oxidation.
   (d) Thermogenic function of BAT is mediated by the activation of a specific mitochondrial uncoupling protein 1 (UCP1), where the saturation of the production of ATP is dissipated as heat. Therefore, activation of these sites with BAT decreases basal energy expenditure and increases onset of diabetes.
   (e) A third fat cell similar to brown adipocytes is also found infiltrating skeletal muscle and in different areas of WAT. This could mean that the rate of lipid storage or lipid oxidation could be adapted and adjusted.
3. Which characteristics or pleiotropic effects of hormones and adipokines on adipogenesis and glucose metabolism are not correct?
   (a) Adipocyte differentiation and lipogenesis require insulin receptors and insulin action.
   (b) The infusion of hydrocortisone increases levels of circulating free fatty acids (FFA) associated with the activation mechanisms of lipolysis.
   (c) The PPAR-γ agonists (thiazolidinediones, TZDs) increase fat central depots, also decrease adiponectin levels, worsen lipid profile and insulin sensitivity, and increase liver fat in NAFLD.
   (d) Leptin is secreted by fat cells, establishing a negative feedback between the amount of adipose tissue and satiety centers in the brain.
   (e) Adiponectin is produced in mature adipocytes and is higher in peripheral adipose tissue than visceral adipose tissue.
4. Talking about inflammatory adipokines all is true less one.
   (a) Both TNF-α gene and its receptors are present in adipocytes and at higher levels in WAT. Increased release of TNF-α from adipose tissue may play a role in the impairment of insulin action.
   (b) TNF-α increases the expression of PPAR-γ and increases expression of genes involved in lipid and glucose uptake.

(c) A fatty acid-binding protein (aP2) could be the link between FFA and increased expression of TNF-α in obesity.
(d) About 1/3 of the total concentration of IL-6 is produced in adipose tissue, mainly in visceral adipose tissue compared with peripheral adipose tissue.
(e) IL-6 levels are directly linked to obesity and insulin resistance and inhibit the activity of lipoprotein lipase (LPL).

5. Which of "Obesity Effects on Pathogenesis of Type 2 Diabetes" is not completely true?
(a) Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2D), at least at the beginning, is characterized by hyperglycemia, insulin resistance, and impairment in insulin secretion. The prevalence has increased related with obesity and sedentary lifestyle but can arise genetic or varying environmental factors, which complicate finding the cause in diabetic patients.
(b) The risk of T2D and cardiovascular disease rises not only with the amount of body fat particularly increases when fat accumulation is in peripheral depots.
(c) Increased and altered secretion of adipokines in obesity (TNF-α, adiponectin, leptin, etc.) contributes to insulin resistance.
(d) Ectopic fat deposition, predominantly in the liver, skeletal muscle, and ß-cell, contributes to altered fat and glucose metabolism.
(e) Mitochondrial dysfunction and endoplasmic reticulum stress could be a link between obesity and diabetes, by decreasing insulin sensitivity and altering ß-cell function.

6. In relation to "Obesity and Lipotoxicity Syndrome," everything is true except one statement:
(a) Adipose tissue is the primary responsible for fat storage. Thus, a correctly functioning adipose tissue is necessary to maintain an adjusted delivery of surplus fuel to other tissues and nontoxic storage of lipids.
(b) When the adipocytes enlarge, it develops insulin resistance, and the antilipolytic effects of insulin is reduced. The increase of FFA in plasma results in more insulin resistance in muscle and liver, inhibits insulin secretion, and induces β-cell apoptosis.
(c) Leptin secretion decreases in parallel with fat accumulation and as a result adipose tissue expands. Leptin action appears to be implicated in processes that increase lipotoxicity in non-adipose tissues.
(d) Leptin regulates and increases β-oxidation through controlling peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-α (PPAR-α) activity by minimizing ectopic accumulation of lipids.
(e) Adiponectin has a major role in improving insulin sensitivity, anti-inflammatory, anti-apoptotic, and pro-angiogenic effects that enhance the metabolic flexibility of adipose tissue.

7. In relation with "Pathogenesis of Obese Type 2 Diabetes," find out the statement that is not true:
(a) There are overweight subjects who maintain normal glucose tolerance. These can gain weight associated with insulin resistance (IR), but their acute insulin response (AIR) could be adjusted upward.
(b) The gastrointestinal tract is a large endocrine organ that releases two major incretin peptides. The glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) by L-cells (distal small intestine) and glucose-dependent insulinotrophic peptide (GIP) by k-cells (early small intestine) jointly rise by 60–70% insulin released in response to a mixed meal.
(c) GLP-1 reduces glucagon releases by α-cells on the pancreas and reduces appetite. In T2D patients, the GLP-1 resistance results in hyperglucagonemia and increased HGP and weight gain by eating.
(d) The kidney generates about a 15–20% of the endogenous glucose production, mainly in fasting period, and is controlled by insulin function. But, kidney in obese T2D is insulin resistant, and glucose production is decreased.
(e) The glucose filtered is reabsorbed by sodium glucose transporter 2 (SGLT2) (80–90%) and SGLT1 (10–20%). When hyperglycemia initiates, this capacity of reabsorption is increased and contributes to maintain elevated glucose levels and retention of sodium and water.

8. In relation with "β-Cell Dysfunction in Obese T2D Subjects," all are correct except one:
(a) In obese insulin-resistant subjects, pancreatic β-cells increase insulin secretion to maintain glucose levels. The mechanisms involved in this β-cell compensation are not well known but implicate both increased generation of β-cells and enhanced β-cell responses.
(b) The signaling for compensatory β-cell mass expansion includes increased glucose, while mainly FFAs, GLP-1, and insulin decrease β-cell mass increasing apoptosis.
(c) Glucose is the natural stimulus to release storage granules and to synthesize insulin by β-cells. Glucose must enter β-cell by a special glucose transporter (GLUT2) increasing pyruvate and ATP/ADP ratio (glucose oxidation) which trigger insulin release (first phase of insulin secretion).
(d) The maintenance of hyperglycemia stimulates specific β-cell glucokinase (GK) activity which

forms glucose 6-P that increases insulin production (second phase of insulin secretion).

(e) Pancreatic cells are connected by the parasympathetic system increasing insulin secretion, and its hyperactivity may be involved in the growth of β-cells.

9. Histological studies of the pancreas from necropsies and surgery have supplied important data for our knowledge of pathogenesis of islet β-cell dysfunction in T2D. Which of the following one is not true?
   (a) In patients with normal glucose tolerance has been found that relative cell volume is decreased in obese versus lean cases decreasing the mechanism of neogenesis.
   (b) A decrease of 40% and 63% in β-cell mass in IFG and T2D obese patients compared with obese normal glucose tolerance subject has been also observed.
   (c) Lean T2D patients compared with lean normal glucose tolerance subjects had a reduction of 59% in β-cell mass.
   (d) The reduction of β-cell mass is evident in patients with impaired fasting glucose suggesting that the loss of β-cell mass starts in the early stages.
   (e) The study of mechanisms implicated in this loss of β-cell mass found no significant effect on β-cell neogenesis, but β-cell death by apoptosis was increased.
10. Talking about "the underlying mechanisms involved in the failure of β-cells in T2D," point out the incorrect one:
   (a) Insulin secretion is reduced during periods of hyperglycemia, while partial recovery of β-cell function is achieved after control of glucose levels in T2D patients (glucotoxic mechanisms).
   (b) Glucotoxic mechanisms implicated in β-cell damage include increased glucosamine pathway activity and glycation stress, raised oxidative stress, and increased ER stress, activation of inflammatory, and toxic accumulation of islet amyloid polypeptide (IAPP).
   (c) An increased surplus of TG/FFA in β-cells induces glucose oxidation. Thus, more than a direct lipotoxicity effect, elevated FFAs and hyperlipidemia can be a major signal for a flexible adaptation of β-cell mass to obese-induced insulin resistance.
   (d) The lipotoxicity effects of increased FFAs on β-cell can be seen more in combination with chronic hyperglycemia (glucolipotoxicity).
   (e) Continuous formation of proteins, including insulin, results in stress and dysfunction of endoplasmic reticulum (ER) activity which not affects the normal pattern of insulin secretion in T2D.
11. The differentiation of undifferentiated cells to pancreatic β-cells plays a key role in the maintenance of the β-cell mass. Point out the incorrect of the following;
   (a) Hyperplasia, proliferation, and neogenesis of pancreatic β-cells may be adapted in relation to obese-induced insulin resistance and transitory β-cell damage.
   (b) In humans, hyperglycemia progress related with β-cell failure is associated with a reduction of β-cell mass by increased apoptosis and/or dedifferentiation of β-cells during metabolic stressors such as is observed with obesity.
   (c) Fate change of differentiation from multipotent stem cells (ES/iPS) between the different endocrine cells is observed under different conditions of stress.
   (d) Continued stress on the β-cell could lead to its dedifferentiation in an α-cell, which will not affect the normal pattern of insulin secretion in T2D.
   (e) Future studies of some compounds that regulate endogenous stem-cell differentiation could lead to drugs that stimulate β-cells neogenesis.

Correct Answers

1. (e) In research the single-voxel magnetic resonance spectroscopy is the gold standard for measuring distribution of body fat.
2. (d) Thermogenic function of BAT is mediated by the activation of a specific mitochondrial uncoupling protein 1 (UCP1), where the saturation of the production of ATP is dissipated as heat. Therefore, activation of these sites with BAT decreases basal energy expenditure and increases onset of diabetes.
3. (c) The PPAR-γ agonists (thiazolidinediones, TZDs) increase fat central depots, also decrease adiponectin levels, worsen lipid profile and insulin sensitivity, and increase liver fat in NAFLD.
4. (b) TNF-α increases the expression of PPAR-γ and increases expression of genes involved in lipid and glucose uptake.
5. (b) The risk of T2D and cardiovascular disease rises not only with the amount of body fat particularly increases when fat accumulation is in peripheral depots.
6. (c) Leptin secretion decreases in parallel with fat accumulation and as a result adipose tissue expands. Leptin action appears to be implicated in processes that increase lipotoxicity in non-adipose tissues.
7. (d) The kidney generates about a 15–20% of the endogenous glucose production, mainly in fasting period, and is controlled by insulin function. But, kidney

in obese T2D is insulin resistant, and glucose production is decreased.

8. (b) The signaling for compensatory β-cell mass expansion includes increased glucose, while mainly FFAs, GLP-1, and insulin decrease β-cell mass increasing apoptosis.
9. (a) In patients with normal glucose tolerance has been found that relative cell volume is decreased in obese versus lean cases decreasing the mechanism of neogenesis.
10. (e) Continuous formation of proteins, including insulin, results in stress and dysfunction of endoplasmic reticulum (ER) activity which not affects the normal pattern of insulin secretion in T2D.
11. (d) Continued stress on the β-cell could lead to its dedifferentiation in an α-cell, which will not affect the normal pattern of insulin secretion in T2D.

Author Contributions Paniagua JA was responsible for drafting and finalizing the manuscript. JAP and A V-P were responsible for final approval.

Conflict-of-Interest Statement The authors do not have potential conflict of interest.

Manuscript Source Invited manuscript

References

1. Berghofer A, Pischon T, Reinhold T, Apovian CM, Sharma AM, Willich SN. Obesity prevalence from a European perspective: a systematic review. BMC Public Health. 2008;8:200. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2458-8-200]. [PMID: 18533989 PMCID: 2441615].
2. World Health Organization. Obesity and overweight, http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs311/en/ WdU, 2016. UJ. Obesity and overweight, 2016. World Health Organization; 2016.
3. Engeland A, Bjorge T, Sogaard AJ, Tverdal A. Body mass index in adolescence in relation to total mortality: 32-year follow-up of 227,000 Norwegian boys and girls. Am J Epidemiol. 2003;157(6):517–23. [PMID: 12631541].
4. Flegal KM, Carroll MD, Ogden CL, Johnson CL. Prevalence and trends in obesity among US adults, 1999–2000. JAMA J Am Med Assoc. 2002;288(14):1723–7. [PMID: 12365955].
5. Flegal KM, Carroll MD, Kuczmarski RJ, Johnson CL. Overweight and obesity in the United States: prevalence and trends, 1960–1994. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord: J Int Assoc Study Obes. 1998;22(1):39–47. [PMID: 9481598].
6. Kopelman PG. Obesity as a medical problem. Nature. 2000;404(6778):635–43. https://doi.org/10.1038/35007508. [PMID: 10766250].
7. Christakis NA, Fowler JH. The spread of obesity in a large social network over 32 years. New Engl J Med. 2007;357(4):370–9. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMsa066082. [PMID: 17652652].
8. Eyre H, Kahn R, Robertson RM, Committee AAACW. Preventing cancer, cardiovascular disease, and diabetes: a common agenda for the American Cancer Society, the American Diabetes Association, and the American Heart Association. CA Cancer J Clin. 2004;54(4):190–207. [PMID: 15253917].
9. Pischon T, Boeing H, Hoffmann K, Bergmann M, Schulze MB, Overvad K, van der Schouw YT, Spencer E, Moons KG, Tjonneland A, Halkjaer J, Jensen MK, Stegger J, Clavel-Chapelon F, Boutron-Ruault MC, Chajes V, Linseisen J, Kaaks R, Trichopoulou A, Trichopoulos D, Bamia C, Sieri S, Palli D, Tumino R, Vineis P, Panico S, Peeters PH, May AM, Bueno-de-Mesquita HB, van Duijnhoven FJ, Hallmans G, Weinehall L, Manjer J, Hedblad B, Lund E, Agudo A, Arriola L, Barricarte A, Navarro C, Martinez C, Quiros JR, Key T, Bingham S, Khaw KT, Boffetta P, Jenab M, Ferrari P, Riboli E. General and abdominal adiposity and risk of death in Europe. N Engl J Med. 2008;359(20):2105–20. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0801891. [PMID: 19005195].
10. Berrington de Gonzalez A, Hartge P, Cerhan JR, Flint AJ, Hannan L, MacInnis RJ, Moore SC, Tobias GS, Anton-Culver H, Freeman LB, Beeson WL, Clipp SL, English DR, Folsom AR, Freedman DM, Giles G, Hakansson N, Henderson KD, Hoffman-Bolton J, Hoppin JA, Koenig KL, Lee IM, Linet MS, Park Y, Pocobelli G, Schatzkin A, Sesso HD, Weiderpass E, Willcox BJ, Wolk A, Zeleniuch-Jacquotte A, Willett WC, Thun MJ. Body-mass index and mortality among 1.46 million white adults. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(23):2211–9. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1000367. [PMID: 21121834 PMCID: 3066051].
11. Ezzati M, Riboli E. Behavioral and dietary risk factors for noncommunicable diseases. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(10):954–64. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra1203528. [PMID: 24004122].
12. Food, nutrition, physical activity, and the prevention of cancer: a global perspective. Washington, D.C.: American Institute for Cancer Research; 2007.
13. Mozaffarian D, Appel LJ, Van Horn L. Components of a cardioprotective diet: new insights. Circulation. 2011;123(24):2870–91. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.110.968735. [PMID: 21690503].
14. He FJ, Li J, Macgregor GA. Effect of longer term modest salt reduction on blood pressure: Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised trials. BMJ. 2013;346:f1325. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.f1325. [PMID: 23558162].
15. Sacks FM, Bray GA, Carey VJ, Smith SR, Ryan DH, Anton SD, McManus K, Champagne CM, Bishop LM, Laranjo N, Leboff MS, Rood JC, de Jonge L, Greenway FL, Loria CM, Obarzanek E, Williamson DA. Comparison of weight-loss diets with different compositions of fat, protein, and carbohydrates. N Engl J Med. 2009;360(9):859–73. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0804748. [PMID: 19246357 PMCID: 2763382].
16. Mozaffarian D, Hao T, Rimm EB, Willett WC, Hu FB. Changes in diet and lifestyle and long-term weight gain in women and men. N Engl J Med. 2011;364(25):2392–404. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1014296. [PMID: 21696306 PMCID: 3151731].
17. Manson JE, Willett WC, Stampfer MJ, Colditz GA, Hunter DJ, Hankinson SE, Hennekens CH, Speizer FE. Body weight and mortality among women. N Engl J Med. 1995;333(11):677–85. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199509143331101. [PMID: 7637744].
18. Willett WC, Manson JE, Stampfer MJ, Colditz GA, Rosner B, Speizer FE. Hennekens CH. Weight, weight change, and coronary heart disease in women. Risk within the 'normal' weight range. JAMA. 1995;273(6):461–5. [PMID: 7654270].
19. Stevens J, Plankey MW, Williamson DF, Thun MJ, Rust PF, Palesch Y, O'Neil PM. The body mass index-mortality relationship in white and African American women. Obes Res. 1998;6(4):268–77. [PMID: 9688103].
20. Lindsted KD, Singh PN. Body mass and 26 y risk of mortality among men who never smoked: a re-analysis among men from the Adventist Mortality Study. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord J Int Assoc Study Obes. 1998;22(6):544–8. [PMID: 9665675].
21. Calle EE, Thun MJ, Petrelli JM, Rodriguez C, Heath CW Jr. Body-mass index and mortality in a prospective cohort of U.S. adults.

N Engl J Med. 1999;341(15):1097–105. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199910073411501. [PMID: 10511607].
22. Association AH. Heart disease and stroke statistics. Update Dallas: American Heart Association; 2004.
23. Association AH. Heart disease and stroke statistics. Update Dallas: American Heart Association; 2003.
24. Lew EA, Garfinkel L. Variations in mortality by weight among 750,000 men and women. J Chronic Dis. 1979;32(8):563–76. [PMID: 468958].
25. Kyrgiou M, Kalliala I, Markozannes G, Gunter MJ, Paraskevaidis E, Gabra H, Martin-Hirsch P, Tsilidis KK. Adiposity and cancer at major anatomical sites: umbrella review of the literature. BMJ. 2017;356:j477. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.j477. [PMID: 28246088].
26. Calle EE, Rodriguez C, Walker-Thurmond K, Thun MJ. Overweight, obesity, and mortality from cancer in a prospectively studied cohort of U.S. adults. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(17):1625–38. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa021423. [PMID: 12711737].
27. Mokdad AH, Ford ES, Bowman BA, Nelson DE, Engelgau MM, Vinicor F, Marks JS. Diabetes trends in the U.S.: 1990–1998. Diabetes Care. 2000;23(9):1278–83. [PMID: 10977060].
28. Laakso M. Hyperglycemia and cardiovascular disease in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 1999;48(5):937–42. [PMID: 10331395].
29. Roglic G, Unwin N, Bennett PH, Mathers C, Tuomilehto J, Nag S, Connolly V, King H. The burden of mortality attributable to diabetes: realistic estimates for the year 2000. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(9):2130–5. [PMID: 16123478].
30. Ford ES, Williamson DF, Liu S. Weight change and diabetes incidence: findings from a national cohort of US adults. Am J Epidemiol. 1997;146(3):214–22. [PMID: 9247005].
31. Landin K, Krotkiewski M, Smith U. Importance of obesity for the metabolic abnormalities associated with an abdominal fat distribution. Metab Clin Exp. 1989;38(6):572–6. [PMID: 2657328].
32. Peiris AN, Mueller RA, Smith GA, Struve MF, Kissebah AH. Splanchnic insulin metabolism in obesity. Influence of body fat distribution. J Clin Invest. 1986;78(6):1648–57. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI112758. [PMID: 3537010 PMCID: 423938].
33. Hu FB, Manson JE, Stampfer MJ, Colditz G, Liu S, Solomon CG, Willett WC. Diet, lifestyle, and the risk of type 2 diabetes mellitus in women. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(11):790–7. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa010492. [PMID: 11556298].
34. American Diabetes A. (4) Foundations of care: education, nutrition, physical activity, smoking cessation, psychosocial care, and immunization. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(Suppl 1):S20–30. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc15-S007. [PMID: 25537702].
35. Kayikcioglu M, Ozdogan O. Nutrition and cardiovascular health: 2015 American Dietary Guidelines Advisory Report. Turk Kardiyoloji Dernegi arsivi: Turk Kardiyoloji Derneginin yayin organidir. 2015;43(8):667–72. https://doi.org/10.5543/tkda.2015.80963. [PMID: 26717326].
36. Magnusson I, Rothman DL, Katz LD, Shulman RG, Shulman GI. Increased rate of gluconeogenesis in type II diabetes mellitus. A 13C nuclear magnetic resonance study. J Clin Invest. 1992;90(4):1323–7. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI115997. [PMID: 1401068 PMCID: 443176].
37. National Institutes of Health. Clinical guidelines on the identification, evaluation, and treatment of overweight and obesity in adults–the evidence report. Obes Res. 1998;6(Suppl 2):51S–209S. [PMID: 9813653].
38. Physical status: the use and interpretation of anthropometry. Report of a WHO Expert Committee. World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser. 1995;854:1–452. [PMID: 8594834].
39. Seidell JC, Flegal KM. Assessing obesity: classification and epidemiology. Br Med Bull. 1997;53(2):238–52. [PMID: 9246834].
40. Wang J, Thornton JC, Kolesnik S, Pierson RN Jr. Anthropometry in body composition. An overview. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2000;904:317–26. [PMID: 10865763].
41. Ferland M, Despres JP, Tremblay A, Pinault S, Nadeau A, Moorjani S, Lupien PJ, Theriault G, Bouchard C. Assessment of adipose tissue distribution by computed axial tomography in obese women: association with body density and anthropometric measurements. Br J Nutr. 1989;61(2):139–48. [PMID: 2706220].
42. Kyle UG, Bosaeus I, De Lorenzo AD, Deurenberg P, Elia M, Gomez JM, Heitmann BL, Kent-Smith L, Melchior JC, Pirlich M, Scharfetter H, Schols AM, Pichard C. Composition of the EWG. Bioelectrical impedance analysis–part I: review of principles and methods. Clin Nutr. 2004;23(5):1226–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.clnu.2004.06.004. [PMID: 15380917].
43. Deurenberg P, Weststrate JA, Seidell JC. Body mass index as a measure of body fatness: age- and sex-specific prediction formulas. Br J Nutr. 1991;65(2):105–14. [PMID: 2043597].
44. Boggs DA, Rosenberg L, Cozier YC, Wise LA, Coogan PF, Ruiz-Narvaez EA, Palmer JR. General and abdominal obesity and risk of death among black women. N Engl J Med. 2011;365(10):901–8. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1104119. [PMID: 21899451 PMCID: 3206314].
45. Lean ME, Han TS, Morrison CE. Waist circumference as a measure for indicating need for weight management. BMJ. 1995;311(6998):158–61. [PMID: 7613427 PMCID: 2550221].
46. Alberti KG, Eckel RH, Grundy SM, Zimmet PZ, Cleeman JI, Donato KA, Fruchart JC, James WP, Loria CM, Smith SC Jr, International Diabetes Federation Task Force on E, Prevention, National Heart L, Blood I, American Heart A, World Heart F, International Atherosclerosis S, International Association for the Study of O. Harmonizing the metabolic syndrome: a joint interim statement of the International Diabetes Federation Task Force on Epidemiology and Prevention; National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; American Heart Association; World Heart Federation; International Atherosclerosis Society; and International Association for the Study of Obesity. Circulation. 2009;120(16):1640–5. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.109.192644. [PMID: 19805654].
47. Ashwell M, Cole TJ, Dixon AK. Ratio of waist circumference to height is strong predictor of intra-abdominal fat. BMJ. 1996;313(7056):559–60. [PMID: 8790002 PMCID: 2351911].
48. Cox BD, Whichelow M. Ratio of waist circumference to height is better predictor of death than body mass index. BMJ. 1996;313(7070):1487. [PMID: 8973270 PMCID: 2352984].
49. Hsieh SD, Yoshinaga H. Waist/height ratio as a simple and useful predictor of coronary heart disease risk factors in women. Intern Med. 1995;34(12):1147–52. [PMID: 8929639].
50. Vazquez G, Duval S, Jacobs DR Jr, Silventoinen K. Comparison of body mass index, waist circumference, and waist/hip ratio in predicting incident diabetes: a meta-analysis. Epidemiol Rev. 2007;29:115–28. https://doi.org/10.1093/epirev/mxm008. [PMID: 17494056].
51. Taylor RW, Jones IE, Williams SM, Goulding A. Evaluation of waist circumference, waist-to-hip ratio, and the conicity index as screening tools for high trunk fat mass, as measured by dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry, in children aged 3–19 y. Am J Clin Nutr. 2000;72(2):490–5. [PMID: 10919946].
52. Paniagua JA, Gallego de la Sacristana A, Romero I, Vidal-Puig A, Latre JM, Sanchez E, Perez-Martinez P, Lopez-Miranda J, Perez-Jimenez F. Monounsaturated fat-rich diet prevents central body fat distribution and decreases postprandial adiponectin expression induced by a carbohydrate-rich diet in insulin-resistant subjects. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(7):1717–23. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc06-2220. [PMID: 17384344].
53. Shuster A, Patlas M, Pinthus JH, Mourtzakis M. The clinical importance of visceral adiposity: a critical review of methods for

visceral adipose tissue analysis. Br J Radiol. 2012;85(1009):1–10. https://doi.org/10.1259/bjr/38447238. [PMID: 21937614 PMCID: 3473928].
54. Wajchenberg BL. Subcutaneous and visceral adipose tissue: their relation to the metabolic syndrome. Endocr Rev. 2000;21(6):697–738. [PMID: 11133069].
55. Hamilton G, Middleton MS, Bydder M, Yokoo T, Schwimmer JB, Kono Y, Patton HM, Lavine JE, Sirlin CB. Effect of PRESS and STEAM sequences on magnetic resonance spectroscopic liver fat quantification. J Magn Reson Imaging JMRI. 2009;30(1):145–52. https://doi.org/10.1002/jmri.21809. [PMID: 19557733 PMCID: 2982807].
56. Kim H, Taksali SE, Dufour S, Befroy D, Goodman TR, Petersen KF, Shulman GI, Caprio S, Constable RT. Comparative MR study of hepatic fat quantification using single-voxel proton spectroscopy, two-point dixon and three-point IDEAL. Magn Reson Med. 2008;59(3):521–7. https://doi.org/10.1002/mrm.21561. [PMID: 18306404 PMCID: 2818363].
57. Stern JH, Rutkowski JM, Scherer PE. Adiponectin, leptin, and fatty acids in the maintenance of metabolic homeostasis through adipose tissue crosstalk. Cell Metab. 2016;23(5):770–84. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2016.04.011. [PMID: 27166942 PMCID: 4864949].
58. Spalding KL, Arner E, Westermark PO, Bernard S, Buchholz BA, Bergmann O, Blomqvist L, Hoffstedt J, Naslund E, Britton T, Concha H, Hassan M, Ryden M, Frisen J, Arner P. Dynamics of fat cell turnover in humans. Nature. 2008;453(7196):783–7. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature06902. [PMID: 18454136].
59. Romere C, Duerrschmid C, Bournat J, Constable P, Jain M, Xia F, Saha PK, Del Solar M, Zhu B, York B, Sarkar P, Rendon DA, Gaber MW, LeMaire SA, Coselli JS, Milewicz DM, Sutton VR, Butte NF, Moore DD, Chopra AR. Asprosin, a fasting-induced glucogenic protein hormone. Cell. 2016;165(3):566–79. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2016.02.063. [PMID: 27087445 PMCID: 4852710].
60. van Marken Lichtenbelt WD, Vanhommerig JW, Smulders NM, Drossaerts JM, Kemerink GJ, Bouvy ND, Schrauwen P, Teule GJ. Cold-activated brown adipose tissue in healthy men. N Engl J Med. 2009;360(15):1500–8. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0808718. [PMID: 19357405].
61. Virtanen KA, Lidell ME, Orava J, Heglind M, Westergren R, Niemi T, Taittonen M, Laine J, Savisto NJ, Enerback S, Nuutila P. Functional brown adipose tissue in healthy adults. N Engl J Med. 2009;360(15):1518–25. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0808949. [PMID: 19357407].
62. Lean ME. Brown adipose tissue in humans. Proc Nutr Soc. 1989;48(2):243–56. [PMID: 2678120].
63. Cypess AM, Lehman S, Williams G, Tal I, Rodman D, Goldfine AB, Kuo FC, Palmer EL, Tseng YH, Doria A, Kolodny GM, Kahn CR. Identification and importance of brown adipose tissue in adult humans. N Engl J Med. 2009;360(15):1509–17. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0810780. [PMID: 19357406 PMCID: 2859951].
64. Schulz TJ, Huang P, Huang TL, Xue R, McDougall LE, Townsend KL, Cypess AM, Mishina Y, Gussoni E, Tseng YH. Brown-fat paucity due to impaired BMP signalling induces compensatory browning of white fat. Nature. 2013;495(7441):379–83. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature11943. [PMID: 23485971 PMCID: 3623555].
65. Ouellet V, Routhier-Labadie A, Bellemare W, Lakhal-Chaieb L, Turcotte E, Carpentier AC, Richard D. Outdoor temperature, age, sex, body mass index, and diabetic status determine the prevalence, mass, and glucose-uptake activity of 18F-FDG-detected BAT in humans. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2011;96(1):192–9. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2010-0989. [PMID: 20943785].
66. Zingaretti MC, Crosta F, Vitali A, Guerrieri M, Frontini A, Cannon B, Nedergaard J, Cinti S. The presence of UCP1 demonstrates that metabolically active adipose tissue in the neck of adult humans truly represents brown adipose tissue. FASEB J. 2009;23(9):3113–20. https://doi.org/10.1096/fj.09-133546. [PMID: 19417078].
67. Cypess AM, Kahn CR. The role and importance of brown adipose tissue in energy homeostasis. Curr Opin Pediatr. 2010;22(4):478–84. https://doi.org/10.1097/MOP.0b013e32833a8d6e. [PMID: 20489634 PMCID: 3593062].
68. Cypess AM, White AP, Vernochet C, Schulz TJ, Xue R, Sass CA, Huang TL, Roberts-Toler C, Weiner LS, Sze C, Chacko AT, Deschamps LN, Herder LM, Truchan N, Glasgow AL, Holman AR, Gavrila A, Hasselgren PO, Mori MA, Molla M, Tseng YH. Anatomical localization, gene expression profiling and functional characterization of adult human neck brown fat. Nat Med. 2013;19(5):635–9. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.3112. [PMID: 23603815 PMCID: 3650129].
69. Villarroya F, Cereijo R, Villarroya J, Giralt M. Brown adipose tissue as a secretory organ. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2017;13(1):26–35. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrendo.2016.136. [PMID: 27616452].
70. Cinti S. The adipose organ at a glance. Dis Model Mech. 2012;5(5):588–94. https://doi.org/10.1242/dmm.009662. [PMID: 22915020 PMCID: 3424455].
71. Shan T, Liang X, Bi P, Zhang P, Liu W, Kuang S. Distinct populations of adipogenic and myogenic Myf5-lineage progenitors in white adipose tissues. J Lipid Res. 2013;54(8):2214–24. https://doi.org/10.1194/jlr.M038711. [PMID: 23740968 PMCID: 3708371].
72. Walden TB, Hansen IR, Timmons JA, Cannon B, Nedergaard J. Recruited vs. nonrecruited molecular signatures of brown, "brite," and white adipose tissues. Am J Phys Endocrinol Metab. 2012;302(1):E19–31. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpendo.00249.2011. [PMID: 21828341].
73. Rosenwald M, Perdikari A, Rulicke T, Wolfrum C. Bi-directional interconversion of brite and white adipocytes. Nat Cell Biol. 2013;15(6):659–67. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncb2740. [PMID: 23624403].
74. Min SY, Kady J, Nam M, Rojas-Rodriguez R, Berkenwald A, Kim JH, Noh HL, Kim JK, Cooper MP, Fitzgibbons T, Brehm MA, Corvera S. Human 'brite/beige' adipocytes develop from capillary networks, and their implantation improves metabolic homeostasis in mice. Nat Med. 2016;22(3):312–8. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.4031. [PMID: 26808348 PMCID: 4777633].
75. Accili D, Taylor SI. Targeted inactivation of the insulin receptor gene in mouse 3T3-L1 fibroblasts via homologous recombination. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1991;88(11):4708–12. [PMID: 2052553 PMCID: 51735].
76. Tseng YH, Butte AJ, Kokkotou E, Yechoor VK, Taniguchi CM, Kriauciunas KM, Cypess AM, Niinobe M, Yoshikawa K, Patti ME, Kahn CR. Prediction of preadipocyte differentiation by gene expression reveals role of insulin receptor substrates and necdin. Nat Cell Biol. 2005;7(6):601–11. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncb1259. [PMID: 15895078].
77. Divertie GD, Jensen MD, Miles JM. Stimulation of lipolysis in humans by physiological hypercortisolemia. Diabetes. 1991;40(10):1228–32. [PMID: 1936585].
78. Xu C, He J, Jiang H, Zu L, Zhai W, Pu S, Xu G. Direct effect of glucocorticoids on lipolysis in adipocytes. Mol Endocrinol. 2009;23(8):1161–70. https://doi.org/10.1210/me.2008-0464. [PMID: 19443609].
79. Smas CM, Chen L, Zhao L, Latasa MJ, Sul HS. Transcriptional repression of pref-1 by glucocorticoids promotes 3T3-L1 adipocyte differentiation. J Biol Chem. 1999;274(18):12632–41. [PMID: 10212243].
80. Belanger C, Luu-The V, Dupont P, Tchernof A. Adipose tissue intracrinology: potential importance of local androgen/estrogen

metabolism in the regulation of adiposity. Horm Metab Res = Hormon- und Stoffwechselforschung = Hormones et metabolisme. 2002;34(11–12):737–45. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-2002-38265. [PMID: 12660892].
81. Pereira CD, Azevedo I, Monteiro R, Martins MJ. 11beta-Hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 1: relevance of its modulation in the pathophysiology of obesity, the metabolic syndrome and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2012;14(10):869–81. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1463-1326.2012.01582.x. [PMID: 22321826].
82. Bujalska IJ, Walker EA, Tomlinson JW, Hewison M, Stewart PM. 11Beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 1 in differentiating omental human preadipocytes: from de-activation to generation of cortisol. Endocr Res. 2002;28(4):449–61. [PMID: 12530648].
83. Stewart PM, Tomlinson JW. Cortisol, 11 beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 1 and central obesity. Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2002;13(3):94–6. [PMID: 11893517].
84. Meseguer A, Puche C, Cabero A. Sex steroid biosynthesis in white adipose tissue. Hormone Metab Res = Hormon- und Stoffwechselforschung = Hormones et metabolisme. 2002;34(11–12):731–6. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-2002-38249. [PMID: 12660891].
85. Morreale de Escobar G, Obregon MJ, Escobar del Rey F. Role of thyroid hormone during early brain development. Eur J Endocrinol/Eur Fed Endocr Soc. 2004;151(Suppl 3):U25–37. [PMID: 15554884].
86. Park EA, Song S, Olive M, Roesler WJ. CCAAT-enhancer-binding protein alpha (C/EBP alpha) is required for the thyroid hormone but not the retinoic acid induction of phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase (PEPCK) gene transcription. Biochem J. 1997;322(Pt 1):343–9. [PMID: 9078282 PMCID: 1218197].
87. Carmona MC, Iglesias R, Obregon MJ, Darlington GJ, Villarroya F, Giralt M. Mitochondrial biogenesis and thyroid status maturation in brown fat require CCAAT/enhancer-binding protein alpha. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(24):21489–98. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M201710200. [PMID: 11940593].
88. Nam SY, Lobie PE. The mechanism of effect of growth hormone on preadipocyte and adipocyte function. Obes Rev. 2000;1(2):73–86. [PMID: 12119989].
89. Paniagua JA, Escandell-Morales JM, Gil-Contreras D, Berral de la Rosa FJ, Romero-Jimenez M, Gomez-Urbano A, Sanchez-Lopez A, Bellido E, Poyato A, Calatayud B, Vidal-Puig AJ. Central obesity and altered peripheral adipose tissue gene expression characterize the NAFLD patient with insulin resistance: role of nutrition and insulin challenge. Nutrition. 2014;30(2):177–85. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nut.2013.07.017. [PMID: 24377452].
90. Friedman JM, Halaas JL. Leptin and the regulation of body weight in mammals. Nature. 1998;395(6704):763–70. https://doi.org/10.1038/27376. [PMID: 9796811].
91. Friedman JM. Leptin, leptin receptors, and the control of body weight. Nutr Rev. 1998;56(2 Pt 2):s38–46; discussion s54–75 [PMID: 9564176].
92. Ahima RS, Prabakaran D, Mantzoros C, Qu D, Lowell B, Maratos-Flier E, Flier JS. Role of leptin in the neuroendocrine response to fasting. Nature. 1996;382(6588):250–2. https://doi.org/10.1038/382250a0. [PMID: 8717038].
93. Chan JL, Heist K, DePaoli AM, Veldhuis JD, Mantzoros CS. The role of falling leptin levels in the neuroendocrine and metabolic adaptation to short-term starvation in healthy men. J Clin Invest. 2003;111(9):1409–21. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI17490. [PMID: 12727933 PMCID: 154448].
94. Farooqi IS, Jebb SA, Langmack G, Lawrence E, Cheetham CH, Prentice AM, Hughes IA, McCamish MA, O'Rahilly S. Effects of recombinant leptin therapy in a child with congenital leptin deficiency. N Engl J Med. 1999;341(12):879–84. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199909163411204. [PMID: 10486419].
95. Welt CK, Chan JL, Bullen J, Murphy R, Smith P, DePaoli AM, Karalis A, Mantzoros CS. Recombinant human leptin in women with hypothalamic amenorrhea. N Engl J Med. 2004;351(10):987–97. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa040388. [PMID: 15342807].
96. Petersen KF, Oral EA, Dufour S, Befroy D, Ariyan C, Yu C, Cline GW, DePaoli AM, Taylor SI, Gorden P, Shulman GI. Leptin reverses insulin resistance and hepatic steatosis in patients with severe lipodystrophy. J Clin Invest. 2002;109(10):1345–50. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI15001. [PMID: 12021250 PMCID: 150981].
97. Oral EA, Simha V, Ruiz E, Andewelt A, Premkumar A, Snell P, Wagner AJ, DePaoli AM, Reitman ML, Taylor SI, Gorden P, Garg A. Leptin-replacement therapy for lipodystrophy. N Engl J Med. 2002;346(8):570–8. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa012437. [PMID: 11856796].
98. Lord GM, Matarese G, Howard JK, Baker RJ, Bloom SR, Lechler RI. Leptin modulates the T-cell immune response and reverses starvation-induced immunosuppression. Nature. 1998;394(6696):897–901. https://doi.org/10.1038/29795. [PMID: 9732873].
99. Kershaw EE, Flier JS. Adipose tissue as an endocrine organ. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2004;89(6):2548–56. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2004-0395. [PMID: 15181022].
100. Unger RH, Zhou YT. Lipotoxicity of beta-cells in obesity and in other causes of fatty acid spillover. Diabetes. 2001;50(Suppl 1):S118–21. [PMID: 11272168].
101. Unger RH, Orci L. Diseases of liporegulation: new perspective on obesity and related disorders. FASEB J. 2001;15(2):312–21. https://doi.org/10.1096/fj.00-0590. [PMID: 11156947].
102. Fain JN, Madan AK, Hiler ML, Cheema P, Bahouth SW. Comparison of the release of adipokines by adipose tissue, adipose tissue matrix, and adipocytes from visceral and subcutaneous abdominal adipose tissues of obese humans. Endocrinology. 2004;145(5):2273–82. https://doi.org/10.1210/en.2003-1336. [PMID: 14726444].
103. Yamauchi T, Kamon J, Ito Y, Tsuchida A, Yokomizo T, Kita S, Sugiyama T, Miyagishi M, Hara K, Tsunoda M, Murakami K, Ohteki T, Uchida S, Takekawa S, Waki H, Tsuno NH, Shibata Y, Terauchi Y, Froguel P, Tobe K, Koyasu S, Taira K, Kitamura T, Shimizu T, Nagai R, Kadowaki T. Cloning of adiponectin receptors that mediate antidiabetic metabolic effects. Nature. 2003;423(6941):762–9. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature01705. [PMID: 12802337].
104. Fruebis J, Tsao TS, Javorschi S, Ebbets-Reed D, Erickson MR, Yen FT, Bihain BE, Lodish HF. Proteolytic cleavage product of 30-kDa adipocyte complement-related protein increases fatty acid oxidation in muscle and causes weight loss in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98(4):2005–10. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.041591798. [PMID: 11172066 PMCID: 29372].
105. Xu A, Wang Y, Keshaw H, Xu LY, Lam KS, Cooper GJ. The fat-derived hormone adiponectin alleviates alcoholic and nonalcoholic fatty liver diseases in mice. J Clin Invest. 2003;112(1):91–100. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI17797. [PMID: 12840063 PMCID: 162288].
106. Lau DC, Dhillon B, Yan H, Szmitko PE, Verma S. Adipokines: molecular links between obesity and atheroslcerosis. Am J Phys Heart Circ Phys. 2005;288(5):H2031–41. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpheart.01058.2004. [PMID: 15653761].
107. Kadowaki T, Yamauchi T, Kubota N, Hara K, Ueki K, Tobe K. Adiponectin and adiponectin receptors in insulin resistance, diabetes, and the metabolic syndrome. J Clin Invest. 2006;116(7):1784–92. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI29126. [PMID: 16823476 PMCID: 1483172].
108. Hotta K, Funahashi T, Bodkin NL, Ortmeyer HK, Arita Y, Hansen BC, Matsuzawa Y. Circulating concentrations of the adipocyte protein adiponectin are decreased in parallel with reduced insulin

sensitivity during the progression to type 2 diabetes in rhesus monkeys. Diabetes. 2001;50(5):1126–33. [PMID: 11334417].
109. Mantzoros CS, Li T, Manson JE, Meigs JB, Hu FB. Circulating adiponectin levels are associated with better glycemic control, more favorable lipid profile, and reduced inflammation in women with type 2 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2005;90(8):4542–8. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2005-0372. [PMID: 15914524].
110. Belfort R, Harrison SA, Brown K, Darland C, Finch J, Hardies J, Balas B, Gastaldelli A, Tio F, Pulcini J, Berria R, Ma JZ, Dwivedi S, Havranek R, Fincke C, DeFronzo R, Bannayan GA, Schenker S, Cusi K. A placebo-controlled trial of pioglitazone in subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. N Engl J Med. 2006;355(22):2297–307. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa060326. [PMID: 17135584].
111. Kanhai DA, Kranendonk ME, Uiterwaal CS, van der Graaf Y, Kappelle LJ, Visseren FL. Adiponectin and incident coronary heart disease and stroke. A systematic review and meta-analysis of prospective studies. Obes Rev. 2013;14(7):555–67. https://doi.org/10.1111/obr.12027. [PMID: 23495931].
112. Steppan CM, Bailey ST, Bhat S, Brown EJ, Banerjee RR, Wright CM, Patel HR, Ahima RS, Lazar MA. The hormone resistin links obesity to diabetes. Nature. 2001;409(6818):307–12. https://doi.org/10.1038/35053000. [PMID: 11201732].
113. Fukuhara A, Matsuda M, Nishizawa M, Segawa K, Tanaka M, Kishimoto K, Matsuki Y, Murakami M, Ichisaka T, Murakami H, Watanabe E, Takagi T, Akiyoshi M, Ohtsubo T, Kihara S, Yamashita S, Makishima M, Funahashi T, Yamanaka S, Hiramatsu R, Matsuzawa Y, Shimomura I. Visfatin: a protein secreted by visceral fat that mimics the effects of insulin. Science. 2005;307(5708):426–30. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1097243. [PMID: 15604363].
114. Fukuhara A, Matsuda M, Nishizawa M, Segawa K, Tanaka M, Kishimoto K, Matsuki Y, Murakami M, Ichisaka T, Murakami H, Watanabe E, Takagi T, Akiyoshi M, Ohtsubo T, Kihara S, Yamashita S, Makishima M, Funahashi T, Yamanaka S, Hiramatsu R, Matsuzawa Y, Shimomura I. Retraction. Science. 2007;318(5850):565. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.318.5850.565b. [PMID: 17962537].
115. Arner P. Visfatin–a true or false trail to type 2 diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2006;91(1):28–30. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2005-2391. [PMID: 16401830].
116. de Souza Batista CM, Yang RZ, Lee MJ, Glynn NM, Yu DZ, Pray J, Ndubuizu K, Patil S, Schwartz A, Kligman M, Fried SK, Gong DW, Shuldiner AR, Pollin TI, McLenithan JC. Omentin plasma levels and gene expression are decreased in obesity. Diabetes. 2007;56(6):1655–61. https://doi.org/10.2337/db06-1506. [PMID: 17329619].
117. Tan BK, Adya R, Farhatullah S, Lewandowski KC, O'Hare P, Lehnert H, Randeva HS. Omentin-1, a novel adipokine, is decreased in overweight insulin-resistant women with polycystic ovary syndrome: ex vivo and in vivo regulation of omentin-1 by insulin and glucose. Diabetes. 2008;57(4):801–8. https://doi.org/10.2337/db07-0990. [PMID: 18174521].
118. Tan BK, Adya R, Farhatullah S, Chen J, Lehnert H, Randeva HS. Metformin treatment may increase omentin-1 levels in women with polycystic ovary syndrome. Diabetes. 2010;59(12):3023–31. https://doi.org/10.2337/db10-0124. [PMID: 20852028 PMCID: 2992762].
119. Qi X, Li L, Yang G, Liu J, Li K, Tang Y, Liou H, Boden G. Circulating obestatin levels in normal subjects and in patients with impaired glucose regulation and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Clin Endocrinol. 2007;66(4):593–7. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2265.2007.02776.x. [PMID: 17371480].
120. Catalan V, Gomez-Ambrosi J, Rotellar F, Silva C, Gil MJ, Rodriguez A, Cienfuegos JA, Salvador J, Fruhbeck G. The obestatin receptor (GPR39) is expressed in human adipose tissue and is down-regulated in obesity-associated type 2 diabetes mellitus. Clin Endocrinol. 2007;66(4):598–601. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2265.2007.02777.x. [PMID: 17371481].
121. Graham TE, Yang Q, Bluher M, Hammarstedt A, Ciaraldi TP, Henry RR, Wason CJ, Oberbach A, Jansson PA, Smith U, Kahn BB. Retinol-binding protein 4 and insulin resistance in lean, obese, and diabetic subjects. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(24):2552–63. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa054862. [PMID: 16775236].
122. Gavi S, Qurashi S, Melendez MM, Mynarcik DC, McNurlan MA, Gelato MC. Plasma retinol-binding protein-4 concentrations are elevated in human subjects with impaired glucose tolerance and type 2 diabetes: response to Cho et al. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(3):e7. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc06-2276; author reply e8 [PMID: 17327302].
123. Gavi S, Stuart LM, Kelly P, Melendez MM, Mynarcik DC, Gelato MC, McNurlan MA. Retinol-binding protein 4 is associated with insulin resistance and body fat distribution in nonobese subjects without type 2 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2007;92(5):1886–90. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2006-1815. [PMID: 17299074].
124. Carswell EA, Old LJ, Kassel RL, Green S, Fiore N, Williamson B. An endotoxin-induced serum factor that causes necrosis of tumors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1975;72(9):3666–70. [PMID: 1103152 PMCID: 433057].
125. Pennica D, Nedwin GE, Hayflick JS, Seeburg PH, Derynck R, Palladino MA, Kohr WJ, Aggarwal BB, Goeddel DV. Human tumour necrosis factor: precursor structure, expression and homology to lymphotoxin. Nature. 1984;312(5996):724–9. [PMID: 6392892].
126. Locksley RM, Killeen N, Lenardo MJ. The TNF and TNF receptor superfamilies: integrating mammalian biology. Cell. 2001;104(4):487–501. [PMID: 11239407].
127. Hotamisligil GS, Shargill NS, Spiegelman BM. Adipose expression of tumor necrosis factor-alpha: direct role in obesity-linked insulin resistance. Science. 1993;259(5091):87–91. [PMID: 7678183].
128. Hotamisligil GS, Johnson RS, Distel RJ, Ellis R, Papaioannou VE, Spiegelman BM. Uncoupling of obesity from insulin resistance through a targeted mutation in aP2, the adipocyte fatty acid binding protein. Science. 1996;274(5291):1377–9. [PMID: 8910278].
129. Uysal KT, Wiesbrock SM, Marino MW, Hotamisligil GS. Protection from obesity-induced insulin resistance in mice lacking TNF-alpha function. Nature. 1997;389(6651):610–4. https://doi.org/10.1038/39335. [PMID: 9335502].
130. Hofmann C, Lorenz K, Braithwaite SS, Colca JR, Palazuk BJ, Hotamisligil GS, Spiegelman BM. Altered gene expression for tumor necrosis factor-alpha and its receptors during drug and dietary modulation of insulin resistance. Endocrinology. 1994;134(1):264–70. https://doi.org/10.1210/endo.134.1.8275942. [PMID: 8275942].
131. Xing H, Northrop JP, Grove JR, Kilpatrick KE, Su JL, Ringold GM. TNF alpha-mediated inhibition and reversal of adipocyte differentiation is accompanied by suppressed expression of PPARgamma without effects on Pref-1 expression. Endocrinology. 1997;138(7):2776–83. [PMID: 9202217].
132. Ruan H, Hacohen N, Golub TR, Van Parijs L, Lodish HF. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha suppresses adipocyte-specific genes and activates expression of preadipocyte genes in 3T3-L1 adipocytes: nuclear factor-kappaB activation by TNF-alpha is obligatory. Diabetes. 2002;51(5):1319–36. [PMID: 11978627].
133. Shi H, Kokoeva MV, Inouye K, Tzameli I, Yin H, Flier JS. TLR4 links innate immunity and fatty acid-induced insulin resistance. J Clin Invest. 2006;116(11):3015–25. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI28898. [PMID: 17053832 PMCID: 1616196].
134. Bastard JP, Jardel C, Delattre J, Hainque B, Bruckert E, Oberlin F. Evidence for a link between adipose tissue interleukin-6 content

and serum C-reactive protein concentrations in obese subjects. Circulation. 1999;99(16):2221–2. [PMID: 10217702].
135. Fernandez-Real JM, Ricart W. Insulin resistance and chronic cardiovascular inflammatory syndrome. Endocr Rev. 2003;24(3):278–301. [PMID: 12788800].
136. Wang B, Jenkins JR, Trayhurn P. Expression and secretion of inflammation-related adipokines by human adipocytes differentiated in culture: integrated response to TNF-alpha. Am J Phys Endocrinol Metab. 2005;288(4):E731–40. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpendo.00475.2004. [PMID: 15562246].
137. Chavey C, Lazennec G, Lagarrigue S, Clape C, Iankova I, Teyssier J, Annicotte JS, Schmidt J, Mataki C, Yamamoto H, Sanches R, Guma A, Stich V, Vitkova M, Jardin-Watelet B, Renard E, Strieter R, Tuthill A, Hotamisligil GS, Vidal-Puig A, Zorzano A, Langin D, Fajas L. CXC ligand 5 is an adipose-tissue derived factor that links obesity to insulin resistance. Cell Metab. 2009;9(4):339–49. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2009.03.002. [PMID: 19356715 PMCID: 2804846].
138. Duplus E, Glorian M, Forest C. Fatty acid regulation of gene transcription. J Biol Chem. 2000;275(40):30749–52. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.R000015200. [PMID: 10934217].
139. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. Fats and fatty acids in human nutrition: report of an expert consultation: 10–14 November 2008, Geneva. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations; 2010.
140. Mozaffarian D, Wu JH. Omega-3 fatty acids and cardiovascular disease: effects on risk factors, molecular pathways, and clinical events. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2011;58(20):2047–67. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2011.06.063. [PMID: 22051327].
141. Gonzales AM, Orlando RA. Role of adipocyte-derived lipoprotein lipase in adipocyte hypertrophy. Nutr Metab. 2007;4:22. https://doi.org/10.1186/1743-7075-4-22. [PMID: 17971230 PMCID: 2174487].
142. Storch J, Thumser AE. The fatty acid transport function of fatty acid-binding proteins. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2000;1486(1):28–44. [PMID: 10856711].
143. Jakobsson A, Westerberg R, Jacobsson A. Fatty acid elongases in mammals: their regulation and roles in metabolism. Prog Lipid Res. 2006;45(3):237–49. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.plipres.2006.01.004. [PMID: 16564093].
144. Coleman RA, Lee DP. Enzymes of triacylglycerol synthesis and their regulation. Prog Lipid Res. 2004;43(2):134–76. [PMID: 14654091].
145. Yu YH, Zhang Y, Oelkers P, Sturley SL, Rader DJ, Ginsberg HN. Posttranscriptional control of the expression and function of diacylglycerol acyltransferase-1 in mouse adipocytes. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(52):50876–84. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M207353200. [PMID: 12407108].
146. Eckel RH, Kahn SE, Ferrannini E, Goldfine AB, Nathan DM, Schwartz MW, Smith RJ, Smith SR, Endocrine S, American Diabetes A. European Association for the Study of D. Obesity and type 2 diabetes: what can be unified and what needs to be individualized? Diabetes Care. 2011;34(6):1424–30. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc11-0447. [PMID: 21602431 PMCID: 3114323].
147. Sullivan PW, Morrato EH, Ghushchyan V, Wyatt HR, Hill JO. Obesity, inactivity, and the prevalence of diabetes and diabetes-related cardiovascular comorbidities in the U.S., 2000–2002. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(7):1599–603. [PMID: 15983307].
148. Stumvoll M, Goldstein BJ, van Haeften TW. Type 2 diabetes: principles of pathogenesis and therapy. Lancet. 2005;365(9467):1333–46. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(05)61032-X. [PMID: 15823385].
149. Kahn CR. Banting Lecture. Insulin action, diabetogenes, and the cause of type II diabetes. Diabetes. 1994;43(8):1066–84. [PMID: 8039601].
150. Beck-Nielsen H, Groop LC. Metabolic and genetic characterization of prediabetic states. Sequence of events leading to non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Clin Invest. 1994;94(5):1714–21. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI117518. [PMID: 7962519 PMCID: 294561].
151. Bjorntorp P. Metabolic implications of body fat distribution. Diabetes Care. 1991;14(12):1132–43. [PMID: 1773700].
152. Frontini A, Cinti S. Distribution and development of brown adipocytes in the murine and human adipose organ. Cell Metab. 2010;11(4):253–6. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2010.03.004. [PMID: 20374956].
153. Rich-Edwards JW, Colditz GA, Stampfer MJ, Willett WC, Gillman MW, Hennekens CH, Speizer FE, Manson JE. Birthweight and the risk for type 2 diabetes mellitus in adult women. Ann Intern Med. 1999;130(4 Pt 1):278–84. [PMID: 10068385].
154. Whincup PH, Kaye SJ, Owen CG, Huxley R, Cook DG, Anazawa S, Barrett-Connor E, Bhargava SK, Birgisdottir BE, Carlsson S, de Rooij SR, Dyck RF, Eriksson JG, Falkner B, Fall C, Forsen T, Grill V, Gudnason V, Hulman S, Hypponen E, Jeffreys M, Lawlor DA, Leon DA, Minami J, Mishra G, Osmond C, Power C, Rich-Edwards JW, Roseboom TJ, Sachdev HS, Syddall H, Thorsdottir I, Vanhala M, Wadsworth M, Yarbrough DE. Birth weight and risk of type 2 diabetes: a systematic review. JAMA. 2008;300(24):2886–97. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2008.886. [PMID: 19109117].
155. Dyck RF, Klomp H, Tan L. From "thrifty genotype" to "hefty fetal phenotype": the relationship between high birthweight and diabetes in Saskatchewan Registered Indians. Can J Public Health = Revue canadienne de sante publique. 2001;92(5):340–4. [PMID: 11702485].
156. Harder T, Rodekamp E, Schellong K, Dudenhausen JW, Plagemann A. Birth weight and subsequent risk of type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis. Am J Epidemiol. 2007;165(8):849–57. https://doi.org/10.1093/aje/kwk071. [PMID: 17215379].
157. Coleman R, Bell RM. Triacylglycerol synthesis in isolated fat cells. Studies on the microsomal diacylglycerol acyltransferase activity using ethanol-dispersed diacylglycerols. J Biol Chem. 1976;251(15):4537–43. [PMID: 947894].
158. Greenberg AS, Egan JJ, Wek SA, Garty NB, Blanchette-Mackie EJ, Londos C. Perilipin, a major hormonally regulated adipocyte-specific phosphoprotein associated with the periphery of lipid storage droplets. J Biol Chem. 1991;266(17):11341–6. [PMID: 2040638].
159. Bajaj M, Pratipanawatr T, Berria R, Pratipanawatr W, Kashyap S, Cusi K, Mandarino L, DeFronzo RA. Free fatty acids reduce splanchnic and peripheral glucose uptake in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2002;51(10):3043–8. [PMID: 12351445].
160. Kashyap S, Belfort R, Gastaldelli A, Pratipanawatr T, Berria R, Pratipanawatr W, Bajaj M, Mandarino L, DeFronzo R, Cusi K. A sustained increase in plasma free fatty acids impairs insulin secretion in nondiabetic subjects genetically predisposed to develop type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2003;52(10):2461–74. [PMID: 14514628].
161. Lupi R, Dotta F, Marselli L, Del Guerra S, Masini M, Santangelo C, Patane G, Boggi U, Piro S, Anello M, Bergamini E, Mosca F, Di Mario U, Del Prato S, Marchetti P. Prolonged exposure to free fatty acids has cytostatic and pro-apoptotic effects on human pancreatic islets: evidence that beta-cell death is caspase mediated, partially dependent on ceramide pathway, and Bcl-2 regulated. Diabetes. 2002;51(5):1437–42. [PMID: 11978640].
162. Rodriguez-Cuenca S, Carobbio S, Velagapudi VR, Barbarroja N, Moreno-Navarrete JM, Tinahones FJ, Fernandez-Real JM, Oresic M, Vidal-Puig A. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma-dependent regulation of lipolytic nodes and metabolic flexibility. Mol Cell Biol. 2012;32(8):1555–65. https://

doi.org/10.1128/MCB.06154-11. [PMID: 22310664 PMCID: 3318581]. MCB.06154–11 [pii]].
163. Martin SS, Qasim A, Reilly MP. Leptin resistance: a possible interface of inflammation and metabolism in obesity-related cardiovascular disease. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2008;52(15):1201–10. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2008.05.060. [PMID: 18926322 PMCID: 4556270].
164. Kolaczynski JW, Nyce MR, Considine RV, Boden G, Nolan JJ, Henry R, Mudaliar SR, Olefsky J, Caro JF. Acute and chronic effects of insulin on leptin production in humans: Studies in vivo and in vitro. Diabetes. 1996;45(5):699–701. [PMID: 8621027].
165. Asterholm IW, Scherer PE. Enhanced metabolic flexibility associated with elevated adiponectin levels. Am J Pathol. 2010;176(3):1364–76. https://doi.org/10.2353/ajpath.2010.090647. [PMID: 20093494 PMCID: 2832156S0002-9440(10)60448-8 [pii]].
166. Marchesini G, Brizi M, Bianchi G, Tomassetti S, Bugianesi E, Lenzi M, McCullough AJ, Natale S, Forlani G, Melchionda N. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a feature of the metabolic syndrome. Diabetes. 2001;50(8):1844–50. [PMID: 11473047].
167. Weyer C, Bogardus C, Mott DM, Pratley RE. The natural history of insulin secretory dysfunction and insulin resistance in the pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes mellitus. J Clin Invest. 1999;104(6):787–94. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI7231. [PMID: 10491414 PMCID: 408438].
168. Holst JJ. The physiology of glucagon-like peptide 1. Physiol Rev. 2007;87(4):1409–39. https://doi.org/10.1152/physrev.00034.2006. [PMID: 17928588].
169. Nauck MA, Homberger E, Siegel EG, Allen RC, Eaton RP, Ebert R, Creutzfeldt W. Incretin effects of increasing glucose loads in man calculated from venous insulin and C-peptide responses. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1986;63(2):492–8. https://doi.org/10.1210/jcem-63-2-492. [PMID: 3522621].
170. Sandoval DA, D'Alessio DA. Physiology of proglucagon peptides: role of glucagon and GLP-1 in health and disease. Physiol Rev. 2015;95(2):513–48. https://doi.org/10.1152/physrev.00013.2014. [PMID: 25834231].
171. DeFronzo RA, Norton L, Abdul-Ghani M. Renal, metabolic and cardiovascular considerations of SGLT2 inhibition. Nat Rev Nephrol. 2017;13(1):11–26. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrneph.2016.170. [PMID: 27941935].
172. Obici S, Zhang BB, Karkanias G, Rossetti L. Hypothalamic insulin signaling is required for inhibition of glucose production. Nat Med. 2002;8(12):1376–82. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm798. [PMID: 12426561].
173. Obici S, Feng Z, Karkanias G, Baskin DG, Rossetti L. Decreasing hypothalamic insulin receptors causes hyperphagia and insulin resistance in rats. Nat Neurosci. 2002;5(6):566–72. https://doi.org/10.1038/nn861. [PMID: 12021765].
174. Xu H, Barnes GT, Yang Q, Tan G, Yang D, Chou CJ, Sole J, Nichols A, Ross JS, Tartaglia LA, Chen H. Chronic inflammation in fat plays a crucial role in the development of obesity-related insulin resistance. J Clin Invest. 2003;112(12):1821–30. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI19451. [PMID: 14679177 PMCID: 296998].
175. Curat CA, Miranville A, Sengenes C, Diehl M, Tonus C, Busse R, Bouloumie A. From blood monocytes to adipose tissue-resident macrophages: induction of diapedesis by human mature adipocytes. Diabetes. 2004;53(5):1285–92. [PMID: 15111498].
176. Wellen KE, Hotamisligil GS. Inflammation, stress, and diabetes. J Clin Invest. 2005;115(5):1111–9. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI25102. [PMID: 15864338 PMCID: 1087185].
177. Fujisaka S, Usui I, Bukhari A, Ikutani M, Oya T, Kanatani Y, Tsuneyama K, Nagai Y, Takatsu K, Urakaze M, Kobayashi M, Tobe K. Regulatory mechanisms for adipose tissue M1 and M2 macrophages in diet-induced obese mice. Diabetes. 2009;58(11):2574–82. https://doi.org/10.2337/db08-1475. [PMID: 19690061 PMCID: 2768159].
178. Lumeng CN, Bodzin JL, Saltiel AR. Obesity induces a phenotypic switch in adipose tissue macrophage polarization. J Clin Invest. 2007;117(1):175–84. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI29881. [PMID: 17200717 PMCID: 1716210].
179. Osborn O, Olefsky JM. The cellular and signaling networks linking the immune system and metabolism in disease. Nat Med. 2012;18(3):363–74. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.2627. [PMID: 22395709].
180. Hotamisligil GS, Arner P, Caro JF, Atkinson RL, Spiegelman BM. Increased adipose tissue expression of tumor necrosis factor-alpha in human obesity and insulin resistance. J Clin Invest. 1995;95(5):2409–15. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI117936. [PMID: 7738205 PMCID: 295872.
181. Feuerer M, Herrero L, Cipolletta D, Naaz A, Wong J, Nayer A, Lee J, Goldfine AB, Benoist C, Shoelson S, Mathis D. Lean, but not obese, fat is enriched for a unique population of regulatory T cells that affect metabolic parameters. Nat Med. 2009;15(8):930–9. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.2002. [PMID: 19633656 PMCID: 3115752.
182. Harford KA, Reynolds CM, McGillicuddy FC, Roche HM. Fats, inflammation and insulin resistance: insights to the role of macrophage and T-cell accumulation in adipose tissue. Proc Nutr Soc. 2011;70(4):408–17. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0029665111000565. [PMID: 21835098].
183. Wu D, Molofsky AB, Liang HE, Ricardo-Gonzalez RR, Jouihan HA, Bando JK, Chawla A, Locksley RM. Eosinophils sustain adipose alternatively activated macrophages associated with glucose homeostasis. Science. 2011;332(6026):243–7. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1201475. [PMID: 21436399 PMCID: 3144160].
184. Talukdar S, Oh DY, Bandyopadhyay G, Li D, Xu J, McNelis J, Lu M, Li P, Yan Q, Zhu Y, Ofrecio J, Lin M, Brenner MB, Olefsky JM. Neutrophils mediate insulin resistance in mice fed a high-fat diet through secreted elastase. Nat Med. 2012;18(9):1407–12. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.2885. [PMID: 22863787 PMCID: 3491143].
185. Peraldi P, Hotamisligil GS, Buurman WA, White MF, Spiegelman BM. Tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha inhibits insulin signaling through stimulation of the p55 TNF receptor and activation of sphingomyelinase. J Biol Chem. 1996;271(22):13018–22. [PMID: 8662983].
186. Yuan M, Konstantopoulos N, Lee J, Hansen L, Li ZW, Karin M, Shoelson SE. Reversal of obesity- and diet-induced insulin resistance with salicylates or targeted disruption of Ikkbeta. Science. 2001;293(5535):1673–7. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1061620. [PMID: 11533494].
187. Zhang J, Gao Z, Yin J, Quon MJ, Ye J. S6K directly phosphorylates IRS-1 on Ser-270 to promote insulin resistance in response to TNF-(alpha) signaling through IKK2. J Biol Chem. 2008;283(51):35375–82. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M806480200. [PMID: 18952604 PMCID: 2602883].
188. Ye J. Regulation of PPARgamma function by TNF-alpha. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2008;374(3):405–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2008.07.068]. [PMID: 18655773 PMCID: 2596979].
189. Wen H, Gris D, Lei Y, Jha S, Zhang L, Huang MT, Brickey WJ, Ting JP. Fatty acid-induced NLRP3-ASC inflammasome activation interferes with insulin signaling. Nat Immunol. 2011;12(5):408–15. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.2022. [PMID: 21478880 PMCID: 4090391].
190. Mills KH, Dunne A. Immune modulation: IL-1, master mediator or initiator of inflammation. Nat Med. 2009;15(12):1363–4. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm1209-1363. [PMID: 19966773].

191. Netea MG, Nold-Petry CA, Nold MF, Joosten LA, Opitz B, van der Meer JH, van de Veerdonk FL, Ferwerda G, Heinhuis B, Devesa I, Funk CJ, Mason RJ, Kullberg BJ, Rubartelli A, van der Meer JW, Dinarello CA. Differential requirement for the activation of the inflammasome for processing and release of IL-1beta in monocytes and macrophages. Blood. 2009;113(10):2324–35. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2008-03-146720. [PMID: 19104081 PMCID: 2652374].
192. Vandanmagsar B, Youm YH, Ravussin A, Galgani JE, Stadler K, Mynatt RL, Ravussin E, Stephens JM, Dixit VD. The NLRP3 inflammasome instigates obesity-induced inflammation and insulin resistance. Nat Med. 2011;17(2):179–88. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.2279. [PMID: 21217695 PMCID: 3076025].
193. Weisberg SP, McCann D, Desai M, Rosenbaum M, Leibel RL, Ferrante AW Jr. Obesity is associated with macrophage accumulation in adipose tissue. J Clin Invest. 2003;112(12):1796–808. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI19246. [PMID: 14679176 PMCID: 296995].
194. Wieckowska A, Papouchado BG, Li Z, Lopez R, Zein NN, Feldstein AE. Increased hepatic and circulating interleukin-6 levels in human nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Am J Gastroenterol. 2008;103(6):1372–9. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1572--0241.2007.01774.x. [PMID: 18510618].
195. Vozarova B, Weyer C, Hanson K, Tataranni PA, Bogardus C, Pratley RE. Circulating interleukin-6 in relation to adiposity, insulin action, and insulin secretion. Obes Res. 2001;9(7):414–7. https://doi.org/10.1038/oby.2001.54. [PMID: 11445664].
196. Ruge T, Lockton JA, Renstrom F, Lystig T, Sukonina V, Svensson MK, Eriksson JW. Acute hyperinsulinemia raises plasma interleukin-6 in both nondiabetic and type 2 diabetes mellitus subjects, and this effect is inversely associated with body mass index. Metab Clin Exp. 2009;58(6):860–6. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.metabol.2009.02.010. [PMID: 19375766].
197. Ellingsgaard H, Hauselmann I, Schuler B, Habib AM, Baggio LL, Meier DT, Eppler E, Bouzakri K, Wueest S, Muller YD, Hansen AM, Reinecke M, Konrad D, Gassmann M, Reimann F, Halban PA, Gromada J, Drucker DJ, Gribble FM, Ehses JA, Donath MY. Interleukin-6 enhances insulin secretion by increasing glucagon-like peptide-1 secretion from L cells and alpha cells. Nat Med. 2011;17(11):1481–9. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.2513. [PMID: 22037645 PMCID: 4286294].
198. Pedersen BK, Febbraio MA. Muscles, exercise and obesity: skeletal muscle as a secretory organ. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2012;8(8):457–65. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrendo.2012.49. [PMID: 22473333].
199. Pedersen BK. A muscular twist on the fate of fat. N Engl J Med. 2012;366(16):1544–5. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMcibr1201024. [PMID: 22512488].
200. van Exel E, Gussekloo J, de Craen AJ, Frolich M, Bootsma-Van Der Wiel A, Westendorp RG, Leiden 85 Plus S. Low production capacity of interleukin-10 associates with the metabolic syndrome and type 2 diabetes: the Leiden 85-Plus Study. Diabetes. 2002;51(4):1088–92. [PMID: 11916930].
201. Cancello R, Henegar C, Viguerie N, Taleb S, Poitou C, Rouault C, Coupaye M, Pelloux V, Hugol D, Bouillot JL, Bouloumie A, Barbatelli G, Cinti S, Svensson PA, Barsh GS, Zucker JD, Basdevant A, Langin D, Clement K. Reduction of macrophage infiltration and chemoattractant gene expression changes in white adipose tissue of morbidly obese subjects after surgery-induced weight loss. Diabetes. 2005;54(8):2277–86. [PMID: 16046292].
202. Lowell BB, Shulman GI. Mitochondrial dysfunction and type 2 diabetes. Science. 2005;307(5708):384–7. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1104343. [PMID: 15662004].
203. Stump CS, Short KR, Bigelow ML, Schimke JM, Nair KS. Effect of insulin on human skeletal muscle mitochondrial ATP production, protein synthesis, and mRNA transcripts. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100(13):7996–8001. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1332551100. [PMID: 12808136 PMCID: 164701].
204. Asmann YW, Stump CS, Short KR, Coenen-Schimke JM, Guo Z, Bigelow ML, Nair KS. Skeletal muscle mitochondrial functions, mitochondrial DNA copy numbers, and gene transcript profiles in type 2 diabetic and nondiabetic subjects at equal levels of low or high insulin and euglycemia. Diabetes. 2006;55(12):3309–19. https://doi.org/10.2337/db05-1230. [PMID: 17130474].
205. Kelley DE, He J, Menshikova EV, Ritov VB. Dysfunction of mitochondria in human skeletal muscle in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2002;51(10):2944–50. [PMID: 12351431].
206. Kelley DE, Goodpaster B, Wing RR, Simoneau JA. Skeletal muscle fatty acid metabolism in association with insulin resistance, obesity, and weight loss. Am J Physiol. 1999;277(6 Pt 1):E1130–41. [PMID: 10600804].
207. Simoneau JA, Veerkamp JH, Turcotte LP, Kelley DE. Markers of capacity to utilize fatty acids in human skeletal muscle: relation to insulin resistance and obesity and effects of weight loss. FASEB J. 1999;13(14):2051–60. [PMID: 10544188].
208. Szendroedi J, Phielix E, Roden M. The role of mitochondria in insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2011;8(2):92–103. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrendo.2011.138. [PMID: 21912398].
209. Hwang H, Bowen BP, Lefort N, Flynn CR, De Filippis EA, Roberts C, Smoke CC, Meyer C, Hojlund K, Yi Z, Mandarino LJ. Proteomics analysis of human skeletal muscle reveals novel abnormalities in obesity and type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2010;59(1):33–42. https://doi.org/10.2337/db09-0214. [PMID: 19833877 PMCID: 2797941].
210. Turner N, Heilbronn LK. Is mitochondrial dysfunction a cause of insulin resistance? Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2008;19(9):324–30. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tem.2008.08.001. [PMID: 18804383].
211. Turner N, Bruce CR, Beale SM, Hoehn KL, So T, Rolph MS, Cooney GJ. Excess lipid availability increases mitochondrial fatty acid oxidative capacity in muscle: evidence against a role for reduced fatty acid oxidation in lipid-induced insulin resistance in rodents. Diabetes. 2007;56(8):2085–92. https://doi.org/10.2337/db07-0093. [PMID: 17519422].
212. Hancock CR, Han DH, Chen M, Terada S, Yasuda T, Wright DC, Holloszy JO. High-fat diets cause insulin resistance despite an increase in muscle mitochondria. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2008;105(22):7815–20. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0802057105. [PMID: 18509063 PMCID: 2409421].
213. Turner N, Hariharan K, TidAng J, Frangioudakis G, Beale SM, Wright LE, Zeng XY, Leslie SJ, Li JY, Kraegen EW, Cooney GJ, Ye JM. Enhancement of muscle mitochondrial oxidative capacity and alterations in insulin action are lipid species dependent: potent tissue-specific effects of medium-chain fatty acids. Diabetes. 2009;58(11):2547–54. https://doi.org/10.2337/db09-0784. [PMID: 19720794 PMCID: 2768163].
214. Pagel-Langenickel I, Bao J, Pang L, Sack MN. The role of mitochondria in the pathophysiology of skeletal muscle insulin resistance. Endocr Rev. 2010;31(1):25–51 [. [PMID: 19861693 PMCID: 2852205]. https://doi.org/10.1210/er.2009-0003].
215. Muoio DM. Intramuscular triacylglycerol and insulin resistance: guilty as charged or wrongly accused? Biochim Biophys Acta. 2010;1801(3):281–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbalip.2009.11.007. [PMID: 19958841 PMCID: 4428562].
216. Brunmair B, Staniek K, Gras F, Scharf N, Althaym A, Clara R, Roden M, Gnaiger E, Nohl H, Waldhausl W, Furnsinn C. Thiazolidinediones, like metformin, inhibit respiratory complex I: a common mechanism contributing to their antidiabetic actions? Diabetes. 2004;53(4):1052–9. [PMID: 15047621].
217. Roden M, Price TB, Perseghin G, Petersen KF, Rothman DL, Cline GW, Shulman GI. Mechanism of free fatty acid-induced insulin resistance in humans. J Clin Invest. 1996;97(12):2859–65.

https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI118742. [PMID: 8675698 PMCID: 507380].
218. Samocha-Bonet D, Campbell LV, Mori TA, Croft KD, Greenfield JR, Turner N, Heilbronn LK. Overfeeding reduces insulin sensitivity and increases oxidative stress, without altering markers of mitochondrial content and function in humans. PLoS One. 2012;7(5):e36320. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0036320. [PMID: 22586466 PMCID: 3346759].
219. Boushel R, Gnaiger E, Schjerling P, Skovbro M, Kraunsoe R, Dela F. Patients with type 2 diabetes have normal mitochondrial function in skeletal muscle. Diabetologia. 2007;50(4):790–6. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-007-0594-3. [PMID: 17334651 PMCID: 1820754].
220. Paolisso G, Gambardella A, Tagliamonte MR, Saccomanno F, Salvatore T, Gualdiero P, D'Onofrio MV, Howard BV. Does free fatty acid infusion impair insulin action also through an increase in oxidative stress? J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1996;81(12):4244–8. https://doi.org/10.1210/jcem.81.12.8954022. [PMID: 8954022].
221. De Mattia G, Bravi MC, Laurenti O, Cassone-Faldetta M, Armiento A, Ferri C, Balsano F. Influence of reduced glutathione infusion on glucose metabolism in patients with non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Metab Clin Exp. 1998;47(8):993–7. [PMID: 9711998].
222. Mielgo-Ayuso J, Barrenechea L, Alcorta P, Larrarte E, Margareto J, Labayen I. Effects of dietary supplementation with epigallocatechin-3-gallate on weight loss, energy homeostasis, cardiometabolic risk factors and liver function in obese women: randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial. Br J Nutr. 2014;111(7):1263–71. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0007114513003784. [PMID: 24299662].
223. Czernichow S, Vergnaud AC, Galan P, Arnaud J, Favier A, Faure H, Huxley R, Hercberg S, Ahluwalia N. Effects of long-term antioxidant supplementation and association of serum antioxidant concentrations with risk of metabolic syndrome in adults. Am J Clin Nutr. 2009;90(2):329–35. https://doi.org/10.3945/ajcn.2009.27635. [PMID: 19491388].
224. Schroder M, Kaufman RJ. ER stress and the unfolded protein response. Mutat Res. 2005;569(1–2):29–63. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mrfmmm.2004.06.056. [PMID: 15603751].
225. Ozcan U, Cao Q, Yilmaz E, Lee AH, Iwakoshi NN, Ozdelen E, Tuncman G, Gorgun C, Glimcher LH, Hotamisligil GS. Endoplasmic reticulum stress links obesity, insulin action, and type 2 diabetes. Science. 2004;306(5695):457–61. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1103160. [PMID: 15486293].
226. de Luca C, Olefsky JM. Stressed out about obesity and insulin resistance. Nat Med. 2006;12(1):41–2. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm0106-41; discussion 42 [PMID: 16397561].
227. Ozcan L, Ergin AS, Lu A, Chung J, Sarkar S, Nie D, Myers MG Jr, Ozcan U. Endoplasmic reticulum stress plays a central role in development of leptin resistance. Cell Metab. 2009;9(1):35–51. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2008.12.004. [PMID: 19117545].
228. Kars M, Yang L, Gregor MF, Mohammed BS, Pietka TA, Finck BN, Patterson BW, Horton JD, Mittendorfer B, Hotamisligil GS, Klein S. Tauroursodeoxycholic Acid may improve liver and muscle but not adipose tissue insulin sensitivity in obese men and women. Diabetes. 2010;59(8):1899–905. https://doi.org/10.2337/db10-0308. [PMID: 20522594 PMCID: 2911053].
229. Muoio DM, Dohm GL, Fiedorek FT Jr, Tapscott EB, Coleman RA. Leptin directly alters lipid partitioning in skeletal muscle. Diabetes. 1997;46(8):1360–3. [PMID: 9231663].
230. Donnelly KL, Smith CI, Schwarzenberg SJ, Jessurun J, Boldt MD, Parks EJ. Sources of fatty acids stored in liver and secreted via lipoproteins in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. J Clin Invest. 2005;115(5):1343–51. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI23621. [PMID: 15864352 PMCID: 1087172.
231. Paniagua JA. Nutrition, insulin resistance and dysfunctional adipose tissue determine the different components of metabolic syndrome. World J Diabetes. 2016;7(19):483–514. https://doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v7.i19.483. [PMID: 27895819 PMCID: 5107710].
232. Utzschneider KM, Kahn SE. Review: The role of insulin resistance in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2006;91(12):4753–61. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2006-0587. [PMID: 16968800].
233. Cusi K, Orsak B, Bril F, Lomonaco R, Hecht J, Ortiz-Lopez C, Tio F, Hardies J, Darland C, Musi N, Webb A, Portillo-Sanchez P. Long-term pioglitazone treatment for patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and prediabetes or type 2 diabetes mellitus: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2016;165(5):305–15. https://doi.org/10.7326/M15-1774. [PMID: 27322798].
234. Kugelmas M, Hill DB, Vivian B, Marsano L, McClain CJ. Cytokines and NASH: a pilot study of the effects of lifestyle modification and vitamin E. Hepatology. 2003;38(2):413–9. https://doi.org/10.1053/jhep.2003.50316. [PMID: 12883485].
235. Steil GM, Trivedi N, Jonas JC, Hasenkamp WM, Sharma A, Bonner-Weir S, Weir GC. Adaptation of beta-cell mass to substrate oversupply: enhanced function with normal gene expression. Am J Phys Endocrinol Metab. 2001;280(5):E788–96. [PMID: 11287362].
236. Chen C, Hosokawa H, Bumbalo LM, Leahy JL. Mechanism of compensatory hyperinsulinemia in normoglycemic insulin-resistant spontaneously hypertensive rats. Augmented enzymatic activity of glucokinase in beta-cells. J Clin Invest. 1994;94(1):399–404. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI117335. [PMID: 8040280 PMCID: 296322].
237. Butler AE, Janson J, Bonner-Weir S, Ritzel R, Rizza RA, Butler PC. Beta-cell deficit and increased beta-cell apoptosis in humans with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2003;52(1):102–10. [PMID: 12502499].
238. Prentki M. New insights into pancreatic beta-cell metabolic signaling in insulin secretion. Eur J Endocrinol/Eur Fed Endocr Soc. 1996;134(3):272–86. [PMID: 8616523].
239. Lebrun P, Montminy MR, Van Obberghen E. Regulation of the pancreatic duodenal homeobox-1 protein by DNA-dependent protein kinase. J Biol Chem. 2005;280(46):38203–10. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M504842200. [PMID: 16166097].
240. Roduit R, Nolan C, Alarcon C, Moore P, Barbeau A, Delghingaro-Augusto V, Przybykowski E, Morin J, Masse F, Massie B, Ruderman N, Rhodes C, Poitout V, Prentki M. A role for the malonyl-CoA/long-chain acyl-CoA pathway of lipid signaling in the regulation of insulin secretion in response to both fuel and nonfuel stimuli. Diabetes. 2004;53(4):1007–19. [PMID: 15047616].
241. Prentki M, Joly E, El-Assaad W, Roduit R. Malonyl-CoA signaling, lipid partitioning, and glucolipotoxicity: role in beta-cell adaptation and failure in the etiology of diabetes. Diabetes. 2002;51(Suppl 3):S405–13. [PMID: 12475783].
242. Paniagua JA, de la Sacristana AG, Sanchez E, Romero I, Vidal-Puig A, Berral FJ, Escribano A, Moyano MJ, Perez-Martinez P, Lopez-Miranda J, Perez-Jimenez F. A MUFA-rich diet improves posprandial glucose, lipid and GLP-1 responses in insulin-resistant subjects. J Am Coll Nutr. 2007;26(5):434–44. [PMID: 17914131].
243. Nolan CJ, Leahy JL, Delghingaro-Augusto V, Moibi J, Soni K, Peyot ML, Fortier M, Guay C, Lamontagne J, Barbeau A, Przybytkowski E, Joly E, Masiello P, Wang S, Mitchell GA, Prentki M. Beta cell compensation for insulin resistance in Zucker fatty rats: increased lipolysis and fatty acid signalling. Diabetologia. 2006;49(9):2120–30. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-006-0305-5. [PMID: 16868750].

244. Yusta B, Baggio LL, Estall JL, Koehler JA, Holland DP, Li H, Pipeleers D, Ling Z, Drucker DJ. GLP-1 receptor activation improves beta cell function and survival following induction of endoplasmic reticulum stress. Cell Metab. 2006;4(5):391–406. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2006.10.001. [PMID: 17084712].
245. Drucker DJ. The biology of incretin hormones. Cell Metab. 2006;3(3):153–65. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2006.01.004. [PMID: 16517403].
246. Muscelli E, Mari A, Casolaro A, Camastra S, Seghieri G, Gastaldelli A, Holst JJ, Ferrannini E. Separate impact of obesity and glucose tolerance on the incretin effect in normal subjects and type 2 diabetic patients. Diabetes. 2008;57(5):1340–8. https://doi.org/10.2337/db07-1315. [PMID: 18162504].
247. Ahren B. Autonomic regulation of islet hormone secretion--implications for health and disease. Diabetologia. 2000;43(4):393–410. https://doi.org/10.1007/s001250051322. [PMID: 10819232].
248. Yoon KH, Ko SH, Cho JH, Lee JM, Ahn YB, Song KH, Yoo SJ, Kang MI, Cha BY, Lee KW, Son HY, Kang SK, Kim HS, Lee IK, Bonner-Weir S. Selective beta-cell loss and alpha-cell expansion in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in Korea. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2003;88(5):2300–8. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2002-020735. [PMID: 12727989].
249. Robertson RP. Chronic oxidative stress as a central mechanism for glucose toxicity in pancreatic islet beta cells in diabetes. J Biol Chem. 2004;279(41):42351–4. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.R400019200. [PMID: 15258147].
250. Donath MY, Ehses JA, Maedler K, Schumann DM, Ellingsgaard H, Eppler E, Reinecke M. Mechanisms of beta-cell death in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes. 2005;54(Suppl 2):S108–13. [PMID: 16306327].
251. Brownlee M. A radical explanation for glucose-induced beta cell dysfunction. J Clin Invest. 2003;112(12):1788–90. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI20501. [PMID: 14679173 PMCID: 297003].
252. Krauss S, Zhang CY, Scorrano L, Dalgaard LT, St-Pierre J, Grey ST, Lowell BB. Superoxide-mediated activation of uncoupling protein 2 causes pancreatic beta cell dysfunction. J Clin Invest. 2003;112(12):1831–42. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI19774. [PMID: 14679178 PMCID: 297000].
253. Oyadomari S, Araki E, Mori M. Endoplasmic reticulum stress-mediated apoptosis in pancreatic beta-cells. Apoptosis. 2002;7(4):335–45. [PMID: 12101393].
254. Puri S, Folias AE, Hebrok M. Plasticity and dedifferentiation within the pancreas: development, homeostasis, and disease. Cell Stem Cell. 2015;16(1):18–31. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.stem.2014.11.001. [PMID: 25465113 PMCID: 4289422].
255. Hosoya M, Kunisada Y, Kurisaki A, Asashima M. Induction of differentiation of undifferentiated cells into pancreatic beta cells in vertebrates. Int J Dev Biol. 2012;56(5):313–23. https://doi.org/10.1387/ijdb.123522mh. [PMID: 22689376].
256. Kim JB, Sarraf P, Wright M, Yao KM, Mueller E, Solanes G, Lowell BB, Spiegelman BM. Nutritional and insulin regulation of fatty acid synthetase and leptin gene expression through ADD1/SREBP1. J Clin Invest. 1998;101(1):1–9. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI1411. [PMID: 9421459 PMCID: 508533].
257. Kim JB, Wright HM, Wright M, Spiegelman BM. ADD1/SREBP1 activates PPARgamma through the production of endogenous ligand. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1998;95(8):4333–7. [PMID: 9539737 PMCID: 22489].
258. Spiegelman BM, Frank M, Green H. Molecular cloning of mRNA from 3T3 adipocytes. Regulation of mRNA content for glycerophosphate dehydrogenase and other differentiation-dependent proteins during adipocyte development. J Biol Chem. 1983;258(16):10083–9. [PMID: 6411703].
259. Mandrup S, Lane MD. Regulating adipogenesis. J Biol Chem. 1997;272(9):5367–70. [PMID: 9102400].
260. Sung HK, Doh KO, Son JE, Park JG, Bae Y, Choi S, Nelson SM, Cowling R, Nagy K, Michael IP, Koh GY, Adamson SL, Pawson T, Nagy A. Adipose vascular endothelial growth factor regulates metabolic homeostasis through angiogenesis. Cell Metab. 2013;17(1):61–72. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2012.12.010. [PMID: 23312284]. S1550-4131(12)00501-3 [pii]].
261. Maroto M, Bone RA, Dale JK. Somitogenesis. Development. 2012;139(14):2453–6. https://doi.org/10.1242/dev.069310. [PMID: 22736241].
262. Seale P, Bjork B, Yang W, Kajimura S, Chin S, Kuang S, Scime A, Devarakonda S, Conroe HM, Erdjument-Bromage H, Tempst P, Rudnicki MA, Beier DR, Spiegelman BM. PRDM16 controls a brown fat/skeletal muscle switch. Nature. 2008;454(7207):961–7. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature07182. [PMID: 18719582 PMCID: 2583329].
263. Kajimura S, Seale P, Tomaru T, Erdjument-Bromage H, Cooper MP, Ruas JL, Chin S, Tempst P, Lazar MA, Spiegelman BM. Regulation of the brown and white fat gene programs through a PRDM16/CtBP transcriptional complex. Genes Dev. 2008;22(10):1397–409. https://doi.org/10.1101/gad.1666108. [PMID: 18483224 PMCID: 2377193].
264. Tseng YH, Kokkotou E, Schulz TJ, Huang TL, Winnay JN, Taniguchi CM, Tran TT, Suzuki R, Espinoza DO, Yamamoto Y, Ahrens MJ, Dudley AT, Norris AW, Kulkarni RN, Kahn CR. New role of bone morphogenetic protein 7 in brown adipogenesis and energy expenditure. Nature. 2008;454(7207):1000–4. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature07221. [PMID: 18719589 PMCID: 2745972].
265. Bullo M, Garcia-Lorda P, Megias I, Salas-Salvado J. Systemic inflammation, adipose tissue tumor necrosis factor, and leptin expression. Obes Res. 2003;11(4):525–31. https://doi.org/10.1038/oby.2003.74. [PMID: 12690081].
266. Prieur X, Mok CY, Velagapudi VR, Nunez V, Fuentes L, Montaner D, Ishikawa K, Camacho A, Barbarroja N, O'Rahilly S, Sethi JK, Dopazo J, Oresic M, Ricote M, Vidal-Puig A. Differential lipid partitioning between adipocytes and tissue macrophages modulates macrophage lipotoxicity and M2/M1 polarization in obese mice. Diabetes. 2011;60(3):797–809. https://doi.org/10.2337/db10-0705. [PMID: 21266330 PMCID: 3046840].
267. Rosen BS, Cook KS, Yaglom J, Groves DL, Volanakis JE, Damm D, White T, Spiegelman BM. Adipsin and complement factor D activity: an immune-related defect in obesity. Science. 1989;244(4911):1483–7. [PMID: 2734615].
268. Kasbi Chadli F, Andre A, Prieur X, Loirand G, Meynier A, Krempf M, Nguyen P, Ouguerram K. n-3 PUFA prevent metabolic disturbances associated with obesity and improve endothelial function in golden Syrian hamsters fed with a high-fat diet. Br J Nutr. 2012;107(9):1305–15. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0007114511004387. [PMID: 21920060].
269. Guilherme A, Virbasius JV, Puri V, Czech MP. Adipocyte dysfunctions linking obesity to insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2008;9(5):367–77. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrm2391. [PMID: 18401346 PMCID: 2886982].
270. Sun K, Kusminski CM, Scherer PE. Adipose tissue remodeling and obesity. J Clin Invest. 2011;121(6):2094–101. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI45887. [PMID: 21633177 PMCID: 3104761].
271. Matthews DR, Hosker JP, Rudenski AS, Naylor BA, Treacher DF, Turner RC. Homeostasis model assessment: insulin resistance and beta-cell function from fasting plasma glucose and insulin concentrations in man. Diabetologia. 1985;28(7):412–9. [PMID: 3899825].
272. Hotamisligil GS. Inflammation, TNF alpha and insulin resistance. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven Publishers; 2003.
273. Hirosumi J, Tuncman G, Chang L, Gorgun CZ, Uysal KT, Maeda K, Karin M, Hotamisligil GS. A central role for JNK in obesity and insulin resistance. Nature. 2002;420(6913):333–6. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature01137. [PMID: 12447443].

274. Despres JP, Lemieux I, Bergeron J, Pibarot P, Mathieu P, Larose E, Rodes-Cabau J, Bertrand OF, Poirier P. Abdominal obesity and the metabolic syndrome: contribution to global cardiometabolic risk. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2008;28(6):1039–49. https://doi.org/10.1161/ATVBAHA.107.159228. [PMID: 18356555].
275. Kim JY, van de Wall E, Laplante M, Azzara A, Trujillo ME, Hofmann SM, Schraw T, Durand JL, Li H, Li G, Jelicks LA, Mehler MF, Hui DY, Deshaies Y, Shulman GI, Schwartz GJ, Scherer PE. Obesity-associated improvements in metabolic profile through expansion of adipose tissue. J Clin Invest. 2007;117(9):2621–37. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI31021. [PMID: 17717599 PMCID: 1950456].
276. Meier JJ, Bonadonna RC. Role of reduced beta-cell mass versus impaired beta-cell function in the pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(Suppl 2):S113–9. https://doi.org/10.2337/dcS13-2008. [PMID: 23882035 PMCID: 3920783].
277. Garber AJ. Incretin effects on beta-cell function, replication, and mass: the human perspective. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(Suppl 2):S258–63. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc11-s230. [PMID: 21525465 PMCID: 3632189].

Pathogenesis of Gestational Diabetes Mellitus

14

Evangelia Kintiraki, Gesthimani Mintziori, and Dimitrios G. Goulis

Introduction

Gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM) constitutes the most common metabolic disease of pregnancy, with a continuously increasing prevalence [1, 2]. It has been associated with several maternal and fetal/neonatal complications [3, 4]. Increased maternal age, increased pre-pregnancy body mass index (BMI), excessive weight gain during pregnancy, Aboriginal Australian, Middle Eastern and Pacific Islander ethnicity, positive family history of GDM, and parity are established risk factors for the development of GDM [5, 6]. GDM, similarly to type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), is a multifactorial disease; its pathogenetic mechanisms are not yet fully understood. Genetic and acquired factors that affect insulin sensitivity and insulin secretion have been implicated to GDM development and determine the disease severity [7]. Hormonal, inflammatory, and immunologic factors contribute to GDM pathogenesis. Suboptimal lifestyle, such as hypercaloric diet, unhealthy nutritional habits, and reduced physical activity, contributes to central obesity, a triggering factor for GDM [8, 9].

Insulin Action and Sensitivity

A major pathogenetic mechanism for GDM is the reduced insulin sensitivity that occurs in normal pregnancy due to placental and maternal hormonal action. Insulin action is impaired at hepatic, muscle, and adipose tissue level [10–12]. Impaired post-receptor insulin signaling is mainly responsible for pregnancy-induced insulin resistance. Experimental studies showed impaired mRNA or protein expression of insulin signaling cascade components, such as insulin receptor substrate (IRS)-1 and (IRS)-2, as well as glucose transporter (GLUT)-1 and (GLUT)-4 in adipose tissue and muscle of women whose pregnancies were complicated by GDM. Decreased IRS-1 tyrosine phosphorylation, decreased GLUT-4 insulin-induced translocation to the cell surface, and decreased glucose transport into the cell were also found in muscle and adipose tissue of women with GDM [13–16]. Similar post-receptor insulin defects have been found in the placenta of GDM-affected pregnancies [17]. Chronic low-grade inflammation that characterizes obesity, which often accompanies GDM pregnancies, contributes to insulin signaling impairment [18], as well as oxidative stress [19].

Placental Hormones

Placental hormones, such as human placental lactogen (HPL) and placental growth hormone (GH), are opposed to insulin action [20]. HPL is produced by syncytiotrophoblast and is gradually increased during pregnancy until about 30th gestational week, when it reaches a plateau. It is correlated to fetal weight and well-being as well as placental function [21]. HPL is the main insulin resistance mediator during pregnancy. It acts as an "anti-insulin" agent in order to ensure adequate glucose supply to the embryo [22, 23]. HPL results in raised maternal blood glucose concentrations by increasing insulin resistance and raised free fatty acids concentrations by increasing lipolysis [24]. A sudden drop to HPL concentrations could indicate fetal distress [25–27]. Growth hormone (GH) is an anabolic hormone, involved in carbohydrate and lipid metabolism, and, when in excess, has diabetogenic properties, opposing insulin action [28]. Human placental GH is the main GH molecule produced during pregnancy, having an effect on maternal insulin sensitivity [29]. It is produced mainly by placental syncytiotrophoblastic cells, and it is gradually increased by midpregnancy to term. Studies in transgenic mice showed severe insulin resistance induction by placental GH [30].

E. Kintiraki · G. Mintziori · D. G. Goulis (✉)
Unit of Reproductive Endocrinology, First Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Medical School, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, Thessaloniki, Greece
e-mail: dgg@auth.gr

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_14

Maternal Hormones

Maternal serum GH, other growth factors, such as insulin like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), their binding proteins, prolactin (PRL), progesterone, and cortisol are altered in women whose pregnancies are complicated by as compared with unaffected pregnant women [31, 32]. PRL is produced, mainly, by anterior pituitary lactotroph cells and, secondary, by the central nervous system, immune cells, nonpregnant uterus, placenta, amnion, decidua, and the mammary gland. The most well-known action of PRL is lactation. Other PRL effects are mammary epithelial proliferation, corpus luteum function, and immune response [33, 34]. Evidence about PRL's effect on insulin sensitivity is contradictory. Hyperprolactinemia, as in patients with a prolactinoma, exacerbates insulin resistance to the nonpregnant state [35, 36]. The latter effect regresses after treatment with dopaminergic receptor agonist [37]. In contrary, studies in nonpregnant healthy women (with normal prolactin concentrations) showed that lower prolactin concentrations were correlated to decreased insulin sensitivity and increased risk for diabetes [38, 39]. During pregnancy, PRL is also produced by decidual cells and fetal pituitary. Maternal PRL is increased gradually by conception to term [40]. In pregnant rats, increased prolactin concentrations have been correlated to a post-receptor insulin defect [20]. In humans, higher concentrations of PRL during the third trimester of pregnancy have been associated with decreased glucose tolerance, implying a causative relationship between hyperprolactinemia and GDM [41]. In contrary, in another study, no difference in PRL concentrations has been found between GDM and controls [42]. Maternal, placental, and fetal adrenal steroids, progesterone, cortisol, estrogen, and androgens, also contribute to pregnancy-induced insulin resistance [43]. Progesterone, produced initially by the corpus luteum and later by the placenta, inhibits insulin action in vivo and in vitro, mainly by inhibiting the PI3-kinase pathway of the insulin signaling cascade in the adipocytes [44]. Cortisol can also induce insulin resistance through post-receptor insulin defect [20]. Androgen receptors are overexpressed in placentas of GDM-affected pregnancies as compared to controls [45]. Although it is known that estrogens regulate carbohydrate metabolism, the underlying mechanisms are not fully understood. In the nonpregnant state, estradiol (E_2) partially affects insulin signaling through modification of mitochondrial function [46]. In GDM-affected pregnancies, estrogen concentrations are lower as compared to unaffected pregnant women [47].

Maternal Adipokines

Maternal adipokines have a significant effect on insulin action. Adiponectin, an adipose tissue-derived plasma protein, has a beneficial effect on carbohydrate metabolism by increasing insulin sensitivity [48, 49]. It is produced mainly by white adipose tissue (WAT). Adiponectin seems to express protective properties for the vascular endothelium and the heart through anti-inflammatory action and suppression of the atherosclerotic processes [50–52]. Higher concentrations of adiponectin have been associated with lower risk of T2DM development in nonpregnant women [53]. In pregnancy, evidence about adiponectin concentrations is not consistent; placental production of adiponectin has not been confirmed by all investigators [54, 55]. Some studies have demonstrated an increase in adiponectin concentrations in early pregnancy and a gradual decrease thereafter compared with the prepregnancy state [56, 57]. Although evidence regarding gestational concentrations of adiponectin and carbohydrate metabolism is less clear, a link between hypoadiponectinemia and insulin resistance exists [57, 58], as pregnant women with GDM have lower adiponectin levels than healthy controls [59].

Another adipokine, leptin, is strongly involved to metabolic issues affecting insulin secretion and action as well as tissue insulin sensitivity [60, 61]. Leptin is produced mainly by WAT adipocytes, proportionally to adipose tissue mass [62]. In a lesser degree, it is produced by brown adipose tissue (BAT), placenta, skeletal muscle cells, ovaries, and gastric cells. Leptin's primary action is the regulation of energy homeostasis [63]. Leptin reduces insulin synthesis and secretion, whereas it increases insulin sensitivity [61, 64]. Obesity is associated with resistance to leptin action [65]. During pregnancy, placenta-derived leptin results in nearly a 100% increase in maternal serum concentrations [66, 67]. Further increased leptin concentrations have been found in GDM-affected women as compared to non-affected pregnant women [68, 69]. Both adiponectin and leptin gene polymorphisms have been correlated to GDM occurrence [70]. Low adiponectin and high leptin concentrations during the first trimester may predict GDM occurrence during later pregnancy [71, 72].

Fetuin B, a recently identified adipokine, impairs insulin action. Women with GDM-affected pregnancies have higher fetuin B concentrations as compared with controls [73]. Data on resistin, visfatin and apelin concentrations, and their association with GDM are not consistent. Other novel adipokines, such as omentin and chemerin, have been associated to GDM development, and a causal effect is implied by some investigators [74].

Immunological Changes and Low-Grade Inflammation

Normal pregnancy is accompanied by immunological changes and a low-grade inflammation that is occurred to the benefit of the fetus [75, 76]. Inflammation is exacerbated by obesity, a common risk factor of GDM, and

affects insulin sensitivity through post-receptor signaling defect. Inflammatory cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), have a direct adverse effect on insulin action in healthy nonpregnant women, inducing insulin resistance [77]. TNF-α is a transmembrane protein produced mainly by activated macrophages in response to immunological stimulus [78]. In a lesser degree, it is expressed by other cells, such as lymphoid cells, cardiac myocytes, endothelial cells, and adipocytes. It expresses a cytotoxic effect on many cells; simultaneously, it has a regenerative effect on tissues [79, 80]. TNF-α induces phosphorylation of the IRS-1, thus preventing the interaction of insulin with the insulin receptor and impairing insulin action. Interleukin-6 (IL-6) is a pro-inflammatory cytokine and an anti-inflammatory myokine expressed by immune cells, such as T-cells and macrophages, visceral adipocytes, osteoblasts, and vascular smooth muscle cells. It is the main stimulator of the production of many acute-phase proteins. It impairs insulin-induced insulin receptor and IRS-1 phosphorylation, resulting to inhibition of the insulin signaling cascade [81]. C-reactive protein (CRP) is an acute-phase protein of hepatic origin that is increased in response to inflammation and IL-6 secretion. It acts through activation of the complement system, triggering phagocytosis by immune cells. CRP is associated to insulin resistance in healthy individuals; high concentrations of high-sensitivity (hs)-CRP are indicative of higher risk for metabolic, cardiovascular, and cerebrovascular disease [82]. The Generation R Study showed that increased CRP concentrations during early gestation are associated to high risk of neonatal complications [83]. During normal pregnancy, low-grade inflammatory markers, such as CRP, IL-6, TNF-α, and GlycA, have found to be increased, suggesting an upregulation of systemic maternal inflammation [75, 84]. In contrast to this normal maternal adaptation, a further increase of some inflammatory markers is considered a risk factor for adverse pregnancy outcomes, including GDM. Specifically, it has been shown that women with GDM-affected pregnancies have increased IL-6 concentrations as compared to controls [85]. In a recent meta-analysis, TNF-α has been found to be higher in GDM pregnancies compared to controls, independently of BMI [69]. CRP has been associated with GDM; an increase in its concentrations during early pregnancy is predictive of GDM development later in pregnancy [86, 87].

Oxidative Stress

Normal pregnancy is considered a condition of increased oxidative stress. Several pathologic conditions during pregnancy, including GDM, are associated with a further aggravation of oxidative stress. It is believed that oxidative stress is caused either by increased reactive oxygen species (ROS) production or by a reduction of the antioxidant capacity [19]. Both an increase in oxidative stress markers and a decrease in antioxidative factors have been found in GDM-affected pregnancies. ROS induce inflammatory response and inflammatory protein expression, aggravating the normal low-grade inflammation and insulin resistance during pregnancy. Furthermore, increased protein oxidation due to enhanced oxidative stress could be implicated to GDM pathogenesis [87, 88].

β-Cell Dysfunction and Insulin Secretion

β-Cell Dysfunction

During normal pregnancy, pancreatic cell adaptation occurs to compensate for the increased need for insulin. β-cell expansion and hyperfunctioning occur early in pregnancy in order to cope with the decreased insulin sensitivity that occurs after the second half of pregnancy [89]. GDM is characterized by decreased insulin response to oral glucose and protein, sluggish first-phase insulin secretion, and delayed peak insulin secretion [90]. Subclinical pre-existing β-cell dysfunction, rather than a gradual decline of β-cell function during pregnancy, and the effect of maternal hormones and inflammatory mediators (see Sect. 2) on β-cell function constitute main mechanisms for the occurrence of GDM [91, 92]. Pre-existing β-cell dysfunction, due to genetic predisposition, does not allow for compensatory pancreatic β-cell hyperfunction to counter-regulate for the increased insulin resistance of pregnancy (Fig. 14.1) [93]. β-cell dysfunction in pregnancies complicated by GDM persists postpartum as compared to controls. Given the normalization of insulin sensitivity after delivery, only a small percentage of women with GDM remain within diabetic ranges; nevertheless, the risk for developing T2DM in later life remains increased (Fig. 14.2) [94].

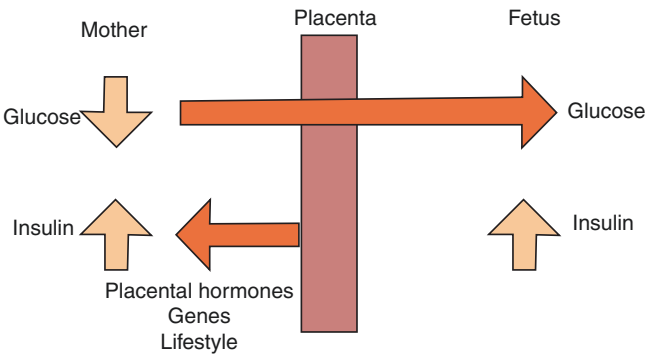


Fig. 14.1 Pathogenesis of GDM: combination of maternal and placental hormonal alteration, genetic predisposition, and suboptimal lifestyle. (Adapted from: Poulakos et al. [93])

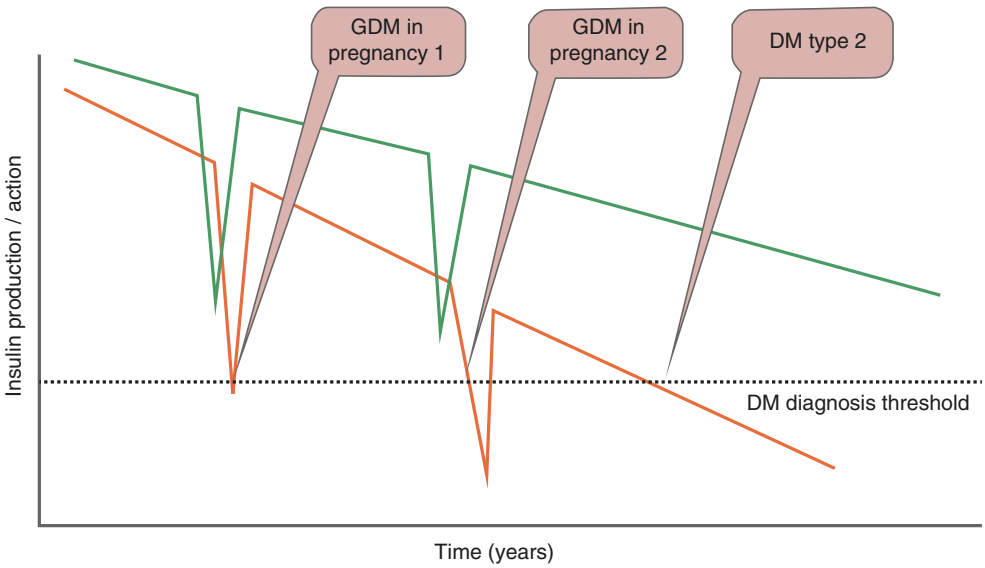


Fig. 14.2 T2DM development in women with prior GDM. Women with a history of GDM have increased probability of developing GDM in later life due to genetic predisposition and suboptimal lifestyle. (Adapted from: Poulakos et al. [93])

Vitamin D Deficiency

Hypovitaminosis D, defined as low serum concentrations of 25-hydroxy- vitamin D_3 [25(OH)D_3], has been correlated to β-cell dysfunction in the nonpregnant state; vitamin D supplementation has been shown to improve insulin secretion in rats [95, 96]. During pregnancy, lower 25(OH)D_3 concentrations have been associated with GDM [97]. Moreover, lower 25(OH)D_3 concentrations postpartum have been associated with impaired β-cell function in women with a history of GDM [98]. Increased parathyroid hormone (PTH) concentrations have been implicated to GDM pathogenesis, partially through insulin secretion impairment [99].

Maternal Hormones

The effect of maternal hormones on β-cell function and proliferation during pregnancy is still not completely understood, and some results are contradictory. Despite that PRL is considered as a major regulator of β-cell expansion and hyperfunction during pregnancy, higher prolactin concentration has been correlated to decreased glucose tolerance during late pregnancy [41, 100]. PRL receptor-null mice have shown β-cell maladaptation during pregnancy [101]. Moreover, PRL has been found to reduce menin concentrations, a known tumor suppression factor that also suppresses β-cell proliferation and may be implicated to GDM development in pregnant mice [102]. 17β-estradiol is seemed to be involved to β-cell adaptation and insulin secretion during pregnancy, specifically β-cell survival [103, 104]. Progesterone receptor-knockout mice have increased insulin secretion probably due to increased β-cell mass [105]. The latter is in accordance with another experimental study that showed an apoptotic action of progesterone to pancreatic β-cells through an oxidative stress-dependent mechanism [106]. HPL stimulates insulin secretion and may have a central role to regulation of islet function during pregnancy [107]. Recent data suggest a leptin-induced decrease of insulin secretion by direct action on β-cells. Moreover, leptin affects β-cell proliferation and apoptosis and inhibits insulin gene expression [108].

Low-Grade Inflammation

As mentioned above, the low-grade inflammation that characterizes GDM affects glucose metabolism through an increase to insulin resistance. Additionally, an impairment on adipokines production, possibly due to this inflammation, has also been correlated to β-cell dysfunction and decreased insulin secretion [69, 109]. Specifically, GDM-affected women have lower adiponectin concentrations as compared with controls [69, 110]. This hypoadiponectinemia of GDM pregnancy has been associated to β-cell dysfunction [111]. As part of the low-grade inflammation, GDM-affected women have increased TNF-α concentrations [69]. Beyond insulin resistance, TNF-α has a pro-apoptotic effect on β-cells [112]. The latter could contribute to the reduced insulin secretion of GDM. As mentioned above, GDM-affected women have lower concentrations of 25(OH)D_3. Vitamin D deficiency has also been associated to increased concentrations of inflammatory markers that could further deteriorate β-cell function [113].

Oxidative Stress

Beyond insulin resistance, oxidative stress per se or as a consequence of inflammation and hyperglycemia has been linked to decreased insulin secretion during the nonpregnant state [114]. GDM is characterized by increased oxidative stress as it is determined by increased concentrations of advanced glycosylated end-products (AGEs) and other markers of oxidative lipid and protein damage [88, 115]. Recently, a furan fatty acid metabolite, 3-carboxy-4-methyl-5-propyl-2-furanpropanoic acid (CMPF), has been recognized as a possible negative regulator of β-cell function, inhibiting insulin synthesis and secretion through oxidative stress and mitochondrial dysfunction in human and mouse islets. Women with GDM have increased concentrations of CMPF as compared with controls [116]. Moreover, in GDM-affected women, CMPF predicted lower β-cell function indices [92].

Autoimmunity

A rare cause of GDM is an autoimmune destruction of pancreatic β-cells, similar to that of type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1DM). Autoimmune GDM consists in less than 10% of cases. GDM-affected women with autoimmune form of diabetes often develop T1DM soon after pregnancy or latent autoimmune diabetes of adulthood (LADA) some years after delivery [117]. In a Swedish population, antibodies implicated in T1DM pathogenesis [glutamic acid decarboxylase antibodies (GADA), islet cell antigen-2 antibodies (ICA)/tyrosine phosphatase antibodies (IA2)] have been detected in 6% of women with GDM [118]. Specifically, the prevalence of GADA in GDM-affected women has been shown to extend between 0% and 11%, of ICAs between 1% and 35%, of insulin autoantibodies (IAA) between 0% and 6%, and that of anti-IA2 between 0% and 6% [119]. Moreover, pancreatic autoantibodies may be developed in some GDM women postpartum [117]. GADA were positively associated with postpartum development of diabetes in women diagnosed with GDM [120]. As a consequence, positive GADA and other pancreatic autoantibodies in GDM-affected women can be predictive of postpartum T1DM development [121]. A recent meta-analysis has shown an association between HLA class II variants, which consists of up to 30–50% of the pathogenesis of T1DM, and GDM. Specifically, DQB1*02 and DRB1*1302 alleles have been significantly associated with increased risk of developing GDM. In contrary, DQB1*0602 seems to be a protective allele against GDM development [122]. HLA-DR6 alleles were also positive correlated to GDM development, whereas other haplotypes, such as HLA-DR2 and HLA-DR51, seem to be protective. Besides HLA-DR3 gene and HLA-DR6/DR9 heterozygote were associated to GDM severity and prognosis [123]. Other studies found no significant differences to the distribution of HLA class II polymorphism between GDM, impaired glucose tolerance (IGT), and unaffected pregnant women [124]. It is obvious that the evidence about the relationship between GDM and autoimmunity is still controversial and more studies are needed to establish it.

Genetic Causes

A rare cause of GDM is maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY) gene mutations. Several MODY gene mutations are present in GDM-affected women. MODY is an inherited form of diabetes resulting by a mutation of a single, autosomic, dominant gene that disrupts insulin secretion. It may be inherited to the offspring by both maternal and paternal origin; less frequently, it can be caused by de novo gene mutation. Nowadays, several types of MODY have been recognized. Genes that are implicated to MODY development are hepatocyte nuclear factor-1 homeobox a (HNF1a) gene that is responsible for MODY 3 development, glucokinase (GCK) gene for MODY 2, hepatocyte nuclear factor-4 homeobox a (HNF4a) gene for MODY 1, hepatocyte nuclear factor-1 homeobox b (HNF1b) gene that cause diabetes and renal cysts (MODY 5), insulin promoter factor (HPF1) gene for MODY 4, insulin gene for MODY 10, ABCC8 gene [sulfonylurea receptor-1 (SUR1) subunit] for MODY 12, potassium inwardly rectifying channel subfamily J member 11 (KCNJ11) gene for MODY 13, neurogenic differentiation-1 gene (NEUROD1) for MODY 6, kruppel-like factor 11 (KLF 11) gene for MODY 7, carboxyl ester lipase (CEL) gene for MODY 8, paired box-4 (PAX4) gene for MODY 9, and BLK gene for MODY 11 [125–133]. These monogenic forms of diabetes constitute less than 10% of GDM; MODY 2 has been recognized as the most frequent type associated with GDM [134]. Several other mutations of MODY genes have been detected in GDM women such as HNF1a, IPF1, insulin gene, and KCNJ11 gene [135–139]. However, a causal relationship between MODY and GDM has not been established yet. Further investigation is needed regarding the possible clinical implications of MODY gene mutations on maternal and fetal health [134].

Conclusions

GDM is the most common metabolic complication of pregnancy. Its prevalence has been increasing over the years and parallels the increasing obesity trend. The main pathogenetic mechanism is insulin resistance as a result of maternal and

placental hormone alteration, maternal adipokine alteration, low-grade inflammation, and oxidative stress that accompany both pregnancy and obesity. An additional pathogenetic mechanism is β-cell dysfunction either pre-existing, as a result of occult genetic predisposition, or due to hormonal and inflammatory effect of pregnancy and obesity. Less frequent causes of GDM are autoimmune destruction of pancreatic β-cells (similarly to T1DM) and impaired insulin secretion caused by gene mutations, such as MODY.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Gestational diabetes mellitus constitutes:
   (a) A rare disease
   (b) The most common metabolic disease of pregnancy
   (c) A disease that begins when healthy blood cells change and grow uncontrollably
   (d) The onset of Type 2 diabetes in pregnancy
   (e) A monogenic form of diabetes occurring in pregnancy
2. In gestational diabetes mellitus-affected pregnancies, estrogen concentrations are:
   (a) Equal as compared to unaffected pregnant women
   (b) Higher as compared to unaffected pregnant women
   (c) Lower as compared to unaffected pregnant women
   (d) Abolished during pregnancy
   (e) Are highly dependent of insulin concentrations
3. The Generation R Study showed that increased CRP concentrations during early gestation are associated to high risk of:
   (a) Asthma
   (b) Neonatal complications
   (c) Weight loss
   (d) Hypoglycemia
   (e) Maternal cardiovascular disease
4. Which is the main pathogenetic mechanism of gestational diabetes mellitus?
   (a) Insulin resistance as a result of maternal and placental hormone alteration, maternal adipokine alteration, low-grade inflammation, and oxidative stress that accompany both pregnancy and obesity
   (b) Insulin as a result of maternal and placental hormone alteration, maternal adipokine, low-grade inflammation and oxidative stress that accompany the obesity
   (c) Autoimmune destruction of pancreatic β-cells (similarly to T1DM) and impaired insulin secretion caused by gene mutations, such as MODY
   (d) Insulin resistance in skeletal muscle resulting from physical inactivity during pregnancy
   (e) High levels of counter-regulatory hormones
   (f) Maternal overweight and obesity
5. Placental hormones, such as human placental lactogen (HPL) and placental growth hormone (GH) are:
   (a) Opposed to insulin action
   (b) Excellent drugs to treat gestational diabetes mellitus
   (c) Acts as a "pro-insulin" agent
   (d) Opposed to glucagon action
   (e) Supportive to insulin action
6. Inflammatory cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), have a direct adverse effect on insulin action in healthy nonpregnant women, inducing:
   (a) Insulin resistance
   (b) Gestational diabetes mellitus
   (c) C-reactive protein decrease
   (d) Lower risk for metabolic, cardiovascular, and cerebrovascular disease
   (e) Beta-cell failure
7. Maternal, placental, and fetal adrenal steroids, progesterone, cortisol, estrogen, and androgens, also contribute to pregnancy-induced insulin resistance.
   (a) False
   (b) True
8. An anabolic hormone, involved in carbohydrate and lipid metabolism, when in excess, has diabetogenic properties, opposing insulin action.
   (a) Growth hormone
   (b) Epinephrine
   (c) Estrogens
   (d) Progesterone
   (e) Leptin
9. Inflammation resulting from impaired adipokine synthesis has been correlated to β-cell dysfunction and decreased insulin secretion.
   (a) False
   (b) True
10. In nonpregnant healthy women (with normal prolactin concentrations), lower prolactin concentrations are associated with:
   (a) Decreased insulin sensitivity and lower risk for diabetes.
   (b) Decreased insulin sensitivity and high risk for diabetes.
   (c) Increased insulin sensitivity and low risk for diabetes.
   (d) Increased insulin sensitivity and high risk for diabetes.
   (e) No associations have been documented.

Correct Answers

1. (b) The most common metabolic disease of pregnancy
2. (c) Lower as compared to unaffected pregnant women
3. (b) Neonatal complications

4. (a) Insulin resistance as a result of maternal and placental hormone alteration, maternal adipokine alteration, low-grade inflammation, and oxidative stress that accompany both pregnancy and obesity
5. (a) Opposed to insulin action
6. (a) Insulin resistance
7. (b) True
8. (a) Growth hormone
9. (b) True
10. (b) Decreased insulin sensitivity and high risk for diabetes

References

1. Ferrara A. Increasing prevalence of gestational diabetes mellitus: a public health perspective. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:141–6.
2. Negrato CA, Gomes MB. Historical facts of screening and diagnosing diabetes in pregnancy. Diabetol Metab Syndr. 2013;5:22.
3. Mitanchez D. Foetal and neonatal complications in gestational diabetes: perinatal mortality, congenital malformations, macrosomia, shoulder dystocia, birth injuries, neonatal complications. Diabetes Metab. 2010;36:617–27.
4. Lowe LP, Metzger BE, Dyer AR, Lowe J, McCance DR, Lappin TR, Trimble ER, Coustan DR, Hadden DR, Hod M, Oats JJ, Persson B. Hyperglycemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcome (HAPO) Study: associations of maternal A1C and glucose with pregnancy outcomes. Diabetes Care. 2012;35:574–80.
5. Di Cianni G, Volpe L, Lencioni C, Miccoli R, Cuccuru I, Ghio A, Chatzianagnostou K, Bottone P, Teti G, Del Prato S, Benzi L. Prevalence and risk factors for gestational diabetes assessed by universal screening. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2003;62:131–7.
6. Yuen L, Wong VW. Gestational diabetes mellitus: challenges for different ethnic groups. World J Diabetes. 2015;6:1024–32.
7. Baz B, Riveline JP, Gautier JF. Endocrinology of pregnancy: gestational diabetes mellitus: definition, aetiological and clinical aspects. Eur J Endocrinol. 2016;174:43–51.
8. Oken E, Ning Y, Rifas-Shiman SL, Radesky JS, Rich-Edwards JW, Gillman MW. Associations of physical activity and inactivity before and during pregnancy with glucose tolerance. Obstet Gynecol. 2006;108:1200–7.
9. Zhang C, Ning Y. Effect of dietary and lifestyle factors on the risk of gestational diabetes: review of epidemiologic evidence. Am J Clin Nutr. 2011;94:1975S–9S.
10. Catalano PM, Huston L, Amini SB, Kalhan SC. Longitudinal changes in glucose metabolism during pregnancy in obese women with normal glucose tolerance and gestational diabetes mellitus. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1999;180:903–16.
11. Qu HM, Ye YH, Peng W, Zhan Y. Relationship between tyrosine phosphorylation and protein expression of insulin receptor substrate-1 and insulin resistance in gestational diabetes mellitus. Zhonghua Fu Chan Ke Za Zhi. 2007;42:249–52.
12. Tumurbaatar B, Poole AT, Olson G, Makhlouf M, Sallam HS, Thukuntla S, Kankanala S, Ekhaese O, Gomez G, Chandalia M, Abate N. Adipose tissue insulin resistance in gestational diabetes. Metab Syndr Relat Disord. 2017;15:86–92.
13. Friedman JE, Ishizuka T, Shao J, Huston L, Highman T, Catalano P. Impaired glucose transport and insulin receptor tyrosine phosphorylation in skeletal muscle from obese women with gestational diabetes. Diabetes. 1999;48:1807–14.
14. Colomiere M, Permezel M, Lappas M. Diabetes and obesity during pregnancy alter insulin signalling and glucose transporter expression in maternal skeletal muscle and subcutaneous adipose tissue. J Mol Endocrinol. 2010;44:213–23.
15. Garvey WT, Maianu L, Hancock JA, Golichowski AM, Baron A. Gene expression of GLUT4 in skeletal muscle from insulin-resistant patients with obesity, IGT, GDM, and NIDDM. Diabetes. 1992;41:465–75.
16. Garvey WT, Maianu L, Zhu J-H, Hancock JA, Golichowski AM. Multiple defects in the adipocyte glucose transport system cause cellular insulin resistance in gestational diabetes: heterogeneity in the number and a novel abnormality in subcellular localization of GLUT4 glucose transporters. Diabetes. 1993;42:1773–85.
17. Colomiere M, Permezel M, Riley C, Desoye G, Lappas M. Defective insulin signaling in placenta from pregnancies complicated by gestational diabetes mellitus. Eur J Endocrinol. 2009;160:567–78.
18. de Luca C, Olefsky JM. Inflammation and insulin resistance. FEBS Lett. 2008;582:97–105.
19. Lappas M, Hiden U, Desoye G, Froehlich J, Hauguel-de Mouzon S, Jawerbaum A. The role of oxidative stress in the pathophysiology of gestational diabetes mellitus. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2011;15:3061–100.
20. Ryan EA, Enns L. Role of gestational hormones in the induction of insulin resistance. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1988;67:341–7.
21. Handwerger S, Freemark M. Role of placental lactogen and prolactin in human pregnancy. In: Mahesh VB, Dhindsa DS, Anderson E, Kalra SP, editors. Regulation of ovarian and testicular function. Boston, MA: Springer US; 1987. p. 399–420.
22. Beck P, Daughaday WH. Human placental lactogen: studies of its acute metabolic effects and disposition in normal man. J Clin Invest. 1967;46:103–10.
23. Walker WH, Fitzpatrick SL, Barrera-Saldana HA, Resendez-Perez D, Saunders GF. The human placental lactogen genes: structure, function, evolution and transcriptional regulation. Endocr Rev. 1991;12:316–28.
24. Mochizuki M, Morikawa H, Ohga Y, Tojo S. Lipolytic action of human chorionic somatomammotropin. Endocrinol Jpn. 1975;22:123–9.
25. Higgins LE, Rey de Castro N, Addo N, Wareing M, Greenwood SL, Jones RL, Sibley CP, Johnstone ED, Heazell AE. Placental features of late-onset adverse pregnancy outcome. PLoS One. 2015;10:e0129117.
26. Bersinger NA, Odegard RA. Second- and third-trimester serum levels of placental proteins in preeclampsia and small-for-gestational age pregnancies. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand. 2004;83:37–45.
27. Olszewski J, Szczurowicz A, Wojcikowski C. Changes in levels of human placenta lactogen (hPL), progesterone, and estriol in blood serum and estrogens in urine during gestational diabetes mellitus. Ginekol Pol. 1995;66:145–50.
28. Moller N, Jorgensen JO, Abildgard N, Orskov L, Schmitz O, Christiansen JS. Effects of growth hormone on glucose metabolism. Horm Res. 1991;36:32–5.
29. McIntyre HD, Zeck W, Russell A. Placental growth hormone, fetal growth and the IGF axis in normal and diabetic pregnancy. Curr Diabetes Rev. 2009;5:185–9.
30. Barbour LA, Shao J, Qiao L, Pulawa LK, Jensen DR, Bartke A, Garrity M, Draznin B, Friedman JE. Human placental growth hormone causes severe insulin resistance in transgenic mice. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2002;186:512–7.
31. Grissa O, Yessoufou A, Mrisak I, Hichami A, Amoussou-Guenou D, Grissa A, Djrolo F, Moutairou K, Miled A, Khairi H, Zaouali M, Bougmiza I, Zbidi A, Tabka Z, Khan NA. Growth factor concentrations and their placental mRNA expression are modulated in gestational diabetes mellitus: possible interactions with macrosomia. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth. 2010;10:7.
32. Luthman M, Stock S, Werner S, Bremme K. Growth hormone-binding protein in plasma is inversely correlated to placental lac-

togen and augmented with increasing body mass index in healthy pregnant women and women with gestational diabetes mellitus. Gynecol Obstet Investig. 1994;38:145–50.
33. Horseman ND, Gregerson KA. Prolactin actions. J Mol Endocrinol. 2014;52:95–106.
34. Freeman ME, Kanyicska B, Lerant A, Nagy G. Prolactin: structure, function, and regulation of secretion. Physiol Rev. 2000;80:1523–631.
35. Serri O, Beauregard H, Rasio E, Hardy J. Decreased sensitivity to insulin in women with microprolactinomas. Fertil Steril. 1986;45:572–4.
36. Yavuz D, Deyneli O, Akpinar I, Yildiz E, Gozu H, Sezgin O, Haklar G, Akalin S. Endothelial function, insulin sensitivity and inflammatory markers in hyperprolactinemic pre-menopausal women. Eur J Endocrinol. 2003;149:187–93.
37. Inancli SS, Usluogullari A, Ustu Y, Caner S, Tam AA, Ersoy R, Cakir B. Effect of cabergoline on insulin sensitivity, inflammation, and carotid intima media thickness in patients with prolactinoma. Endocrine. 2013;44:193–9.
38. Wagner R, Heni M, Linder K, Ketterer C, Peter A, Bohm A, Hatziagelaki E, Stefan N, Staiger H, Haring HU, Fritsche A. Age-dependent association of serum prolactin with glycaemia and insulin sensitivity in humans. Acta Diabetol. 2014;51:71–8.
39. Wang T, Lu J, Xu Y, Li M, Sun J, Zhang J, Xu B, Xu M, Chen Y, Bi Y, Wang W, Ning G. Circulating prolactin associates with diabetes and impaired glucose regulation: a population-based study. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:1974–80.
40. Jabbour HN, Critchley HO. Potential roles of decidual prolactin in early pregnancy. Reproduction. 2001;121:197–205.
41. Ekinci EI, Torkamani N, Ramchand SK, Churilov L, Sikaris KA, Lu ZX, Houlihan CA. Higher maternal serum prolactin levels are associated with reduced glucose tolerance during pregnancy. J Diabetes Investig. 2017;8:697–700.
42. Skouby SO, Kuhl C, Hornnes PJ, Andersen AN. Prolactin and glucose tolerance in normal and gestational diabetic pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol. 1986;67:17–20.
43. Vejrazkova D, Vcelak J, Vankova M, Lukasova P, Bradnova O, Halkova T, Kancheva R, Bendlova B. Steroids and insulin resistance in pregnancy. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol. 2014;139:122–9.
44. Wada T, Hori S, Sugiyama M, Fujisawa E, Nakano T, Tsuneki H, Nagira K, Saito S, Sasaoka T. Progesterone inhibits glucose uptake by affecting diverse steps of insulin signaling in 3T3-L1 adipocytes. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab. 2010;298:E881–8.
45. Uzelac PS, Li X, Lin J, Neese LD, Lin L, Nakajima ST, Bohler H, Lei Z. Dysregulation of leptin and testosterone production and their receptor expression in the human placenta with gestational diabetes mellitus. Placenta. 2010;31:581–8.
46. Gupte AA, Pownall HJ, Hamilton DJ. Estrogen: an emerging regulator of insulin action and mitochondrial function. J Diabetes Res. 2015;2015:916585.
47. Villarroel C, Salinas A, Lopez P, Kohen P, Rencoret G, Devoto L, Codner E. Pregestational type 2 diabetes and gestational diabetes exhibit different sexual steroid profiles during pregnancy. Gynecol Endocrinol. 2016;33:212–7.
48. Karbowska J, Kochan Z. Role of adiponectin in the regulation of carbohydrate and lipid metabolism. J Physiol Pharmacol. 2006;57(Suppl 6):103–13.
49. Stefan N, Vozarova B, Funahashi T, Matsuzawa Y, Weyer C, Lindsay RS, Youngren JF, Havel PJ, Pratley RE, Bogardus C, Tataranni PA. Plasma adiponectin concentration is associated with skeletal muscle insulin receptor tyrosine phosphorylation, and low plasma concentration precedes a decrease in whole-body insulin sensitivity in humans. Diabetes. 2002;51:1884–8.
50. Matsuzawa Y, Funahashi T, Kihara S, Shimomura I. Adiponectin and metabolic syndrome. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2004;24:29–33.
51. Nanayakkara G, Kariharan T, Wang L, Zhong J, Amin R. The cardio-protective signaling and mechanisms of adiponectin. AJCD. 2012;2:253–66.
52. Shehzad A, Iqbal W, Shehzad O, Lee YS. Adiponectin: regulation of its production and its role in human diseases. Hormones (Athens). 2012;11:8–20.
53. Yamamoto S, Matsushita Y, Nakagawa T, Hayashi T, Noda M, Mizoue T. Circulating adiponectin levels and risk of type 2 diabetes in the Japanese. Nutr Diabetes. 2014;4:e130.
54. Caminos JE, Nogueiras R, Gallego R, Bravo S, Tovar S, Garcia-Caballero T, Casanueva FF, Dieguez C. Expression and regulation of adiponectin and receptor in human and rat placenta. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2005;90:4276–86.
55. Corbetta S, Bulfamante G, Cortelazzi D, Barresi V, Cetin I, Mantovani G, Bondioni S, Beck-Peccoz P, Spada A. Adiponectin expression in human fetal tissues during mid- and late gestation. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2005;90:2397–402.
56. Mazaki-Tovi S, Kanety H, Pariente C, Hemi R, Wiser A, Schiff E, Sivan E. Maternal serum adiponectin levels during human pregnancy. J Perinatol. 2007;27:77–81.
57. Catalano PM, Hoegh M, Minium J, Huston-Presley L, Bernard S, Kalhan S, Hauguel-De Mouzon S. Adiponectin in human pregnancy: implications for regulation of glucose and lipid metabolism. Diabetologia. 2006;49:1677–85.
58. Ritterath C, Rad NT, Siegmund T, Heinze T, Siebert G, Buhling KJ. Adiponectin during pregnancy: correlation with fat metabolism, but not with carbohydrate metabolism. Arch Gynecol Obstet. 2009;281:91.
59. Retnakaran R, Hanley AJ, Raif N, Connelly PW, Sermer M, Zinman B. Reduced adiponectin concentration in women with gestational diabetes: a potential factor in progression to type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27:799–800.
60. Tucholski K, Otto-Buczkowska E. The role of leptin in the regulation of carbohydrate metabolism. Endokrynol Pol. 2011;62:258–62.
61. Paz-Filho G, Mastronardi C, Wong M-L, Licinio J. Leptin therapy, insulin sensitivity, and glucose homeostasis. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2012;16:549–55.
62. Fain JN, Madan AK, Hiler ML, Cheema P, Bahouth SW. Comparison of the release of adipokines by adipose tissue, adipose tissue matrix, and adipocytes from visceral and subcutaneous abdominal adipose tissues of obese humans. Endocrinology. 2004;145:2273–82.
63. Margetic S, Gazzola C, Pegg GG, Hill RA. Leptin: a review of its peripheral actions and interactions. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 2002;26:1407–33.
64. Seufert J. Leptin effects on pancreatic β-cell gene expression and function. Diabetes. 2004;53:S152–8.
65. Myers MG, Leibel RL, Seeley RJ, Schwartz MW. Obesity and leptin resistance: distinguishing cause from effect. Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2010;21:643–51.
66. Lepercq J, Hauguel De Mouzo S. Leptin during pregnancy. J Gynecol Obstet Biol Reprod (Paris). 2002;31:167–72.
67. Highman TJ, Friedman JE, Huston LP, Wong WW, Catalano PM. Longitudinal changes in maternal serum leptin concentrations, body composition, and resting metabolic rate in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1998;178:1010–5.
68. Fatima SS, Alam F, Chaudhry B, Khan TA. Elevated levels of chemerin, leptin, and interleukin-18 in gestational diabetes mellitus. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med. 2016:1–6.
69. Xu J, Zhao YH, Chen YP, Yuan XL, Wang J, Zhu H, Lu CM. Maternal circulating concentrations of tumor necrosis factor-

alpha, leptin, and adiponectin in gestational diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis. ScientificWorldJournal. 2014;2014:926–32.
70. Pawlik A, Teler J, Maciejewska A, Sawczuk M, Safranow K, Dziedziejko V. Adiponectin and leptin gene polymorphisms in women with gestational diabetes mellitus. J Assist Reprod Genet. 2017;34:511.
71. Lain KY, Daftary AR, Ness RB, Roberts JM. First trimester adipocytokine concentrations and risk of developing gestational diabetes later in pregnancy. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 2008;69:407–11.
72. Qiu C, Williams MA, Vadachkoria S, Frederick IO, Luthy DA. Increased maternal plasma leptin in early pregnancy and risk of gestational diabetes mellitus. Obstet Gynecol. 2004;103:519–25.
73. Kralisch S, Hoffmann A, Lossner U, Kratzsch J, Bluher M, Stumvoll M, Fasshauer M, Ebert T. Regulation of the novel adipokines/hepatokines fetuin A and fetuin B in gestational diabetes mellitus. Metabolism. 2017;68:88–94.
74. Pan BL, Ma RM. Correlation of serum omentin-1 and chemerin with gestational diabetes mellitus. Nan Fang Yi Ke Da Xue Xue Bao. 2016;36:1231–6.
75. Wang Q, Würtz P, Auro K, Mäkinen V-P, Kangas AJ, Soininen P, Tiainen M, Tynkkynen T, Jokelainen J, Santalahti K, Salmi M, Blankenberg S, Zeller T, Viikari J, Kähönen M, Lehtimäki T, Salomaa V, Perola M, Jalkanen S, Järvelin M-R, Raitakari OT, Kettunen J, Lawlor DA, Ala-Korpela M. Metabolic profiling of pregnancy: cross-sectional and longitudinal evidence. BMC Med. 2016;14:205.
76. Sargent IL, Borzychowski AM, Redman CWG. NK cells and human pregnancy - an inflammatory view. Trends Immunol. 2006;27:399–404.
77. Krogh-Madsen R, Plomgaard P, Moller K, Mittendorfer B, Pedersen BK. Influence of TNF-alpha and IL-6 infusions on insulin sensitivity and expression of IL-18 in humans. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab. 2006;291:E108–14.
78. Locksley RM, Killeen N, Lenardo MJ. The TNF and TNF receptor superfamilies: integrating mammalian biology. Cell. 2001;104:487–501.
79. Sedger LM, McDermott MF. TNF and TNF-receptors: from mediators of cell death and inflammation to therapeutic giants – past, present and future. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev. 2014;25:453–72.
80. Wajant H, Pfizenmaier K, Scheurich P. Tumor necrosis factor signaling. Cell Death Differ. 2003;10:45–65.
81. Senn JJ, Klover PJ, Nowak IA, Zimmers TA, Koniaris LG, Furlanetto RW, Mooney RA. Suppressor of cytokine signaling-3 (SOCS-3), a potential mediator of interleukin-6-dependent insulin resistance in hepatocytes. J Biol Chem. 2003;278:13740–6.
82. Ndumele CE, Pradhan AD, Ridker PM. Interrelationships between inflammation, C-reactive protein, and insulin resistance. J Cardiometab Syndr. 2006;1:190–6.
83. Ernst GDS, de Jonge LL, Hofman A, Lindemans J, Russcher H, Steegers EAP, Jaddoe VWV. C-reactive protein levels in early pregnancy, fetal growth patterns, and the risk for neonatal complications: the Generation R Study. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2011;205:e1–e12.
84. Brewster JA, Orsi NM, Gopichandran N, McShane P, Ekbote UV, Walker JJ. Gestational effects on host inflammatory response in normal and pre-eclamptic pregnancies. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 2008;140:21–6.
85. Kuzmicki M, Telejko B, Szamatowicz J, Zonenberg A, Nikolajuk A, Kretowski A, Gorska M. High resistin and interleukin-6 levels are associated with gestational diabetes mellitus. Gynecol Endocrinol. 2009;25:258–63.
86. Fatema N, Deeba F, Akter S, Sultana N, Nasrin B, Ali L, Begum SA. CRP (C-reactive protein) in early pregnancy predictor for development of GDM. Mymensingh Med J. 2016;25:271–6.
87. Zhu C, Yang H, Geng Q, Ma Q, Long Y, Zhou C, Chen M. Association of oxidative stress biomarkers with gestational diabetes mellitus in pregnant women: a case-control study. PLoS One. 2015;10:e0126490.
88. Li H, Yin Q, Li N, Ouyang Z, Zhong M. Plasma markers of oxidative stress in patients with gestational diabetes mellitus in the second and third trimester. Int J Gynaecol Obstet. 2016;2016:3865454.
89. Baeyens L, Hindi S, Sorenson RL, German MS. beta-Cell adaptation in pregnancy. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2016;18(Suppl 1):63–70.
90. Kühl C. Insulin secretion and insulin resistance in pregnancy and GDM: implications for diagnosis and management. Diabetes. 1991;40:18–24.
91. Buchanan TA, Xiang A, Kjos SL, Watanabe R. What Is gestational diabetes? Diabetes Care. 2007;30:S105–11.
92. Retnakaran R, Ye C, Kramer CK, Connelly PW, Hanley AJ, Sermer M, Zinman B. Evaluation of circulating determinants of beta-cell function in women with and without gestational diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2016;101:2683–91.
93. Poulakos P, Mintziori G, Tsirou E, Taousani E, Savvaki D, Harizopoulou V, Goulis DG. Comments on gestational diabetes mellitus: from pathophysiology to clinical practice. Hormones (Athens). 2015;14:335–44.
94. Xiang AH, Takayanagi M, Black MH, Trigo E, Lawrence JM, Watanabe RM, Buchanan TA. Longitudinal changes in insulin sensitivity and beta cell function between women with and without a history of gestational diabetes mellitus. Diabetologia. 2013;56:2753–60.
95. Kayaniyil S, Vieth R, Retnakaran R, Knight JA, Qi Y, Gerstein HC, Perkins BA, Harris SB, Zinman B, Hanley AJ. Association of vitamin D with insulin resistance and β-cell dysfunction in subjects at risk for type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:1379–81.
96. Cade C, Norman AW. Rapid normalization/stimulation by 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D3 of insulin secretion and glucose tolerance in the vitamin D-deficient rat. Endocrinology. 1987;120:1490–7.
97. Zhang MX, Pan GT, Guo JF, Li BY, Qin LQ, Zhang ZL. Vitamin D deficiency increases the risk of gestational diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis of observational studies. Nutrients. 2015;7:8366–75.
98. Shaat N, Ignell C. Glucose homeostasis, beta cell function, and insulin resistance in relation to vitamin D status after gestational diabetes mellitus. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand. 2017;96:821.
99. Kramer CK, Swaminathan B, Hanley AJ, Connelly PW, Sermer M, Zinman B, Retnakaran R. Vitamin D and parathyroid hormone status in pregnancy: effect on insulin sensitivity, beta-cell function, and gestational diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2014;99:4506–13.
100. Huang C, Snider F, Cross JC. Prolactin receptor is required for normal glucose homeostasis and modulation of beta-cell mass during pregnancy. Endocrinology. 2009;150:1618–26.
101. Sorenson RL, Brelje TC. Prolactin receptors are critical to the adaptation of islets to pregnancy. Endocrinology. 2009;150:1566–9.
102. Karnik SK, Chen H, McLean GW, Heit JJ, Gu X, Zhang AY, Fontaine M, Yen MH, Kim SK. Menin controls growth of pancreatic beta-cells in pregnant mice and promotes gestational diabetes mellitus. Science. 2007;318:806–9.
103. Nadal A, Alonso-Magdalena P, Soriano S, Ropero AB, Quesada I. The role of oestrogens in the adaptation of islets to insulin resistance. J Physiol. 2009;587:5031–7.
104. Ackermann S, Hiller S, Osswald H, Losle M, Grenz A, Hambrock A. 17beta-Estradiol modulates apoptosis in pancreatic beta-cells

by specific involvement of the sulfonylurea receptor (SUR) isoform SUR1. J Biol Chem. 2009;284:4905–13.
105. Branisteanu DD, Mathieu C. Progesterone in gestational diabetes mellitus: guilty or not guilty? Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2003;14:54–6.
106. Nunes VA, Portioli-Sanches EP, Rosim MP, Araujo MS, Praxedes-Garcia P, Valle MM, Roma LP, Hahn C, Gurgul-Convey E, Lenzen S, Azevedo-Martins AK. Progesterone induces apoptosis of insulin-secreting cells: insights into the molecular mechanism. J Endocrinol. 2014;221:273–84.
107. Brelje TC, Scharp DW, Lacy PE, Ogren L, Talamantes F, Robertson M, Friesen HG, Sorenson RL. Effect of homologous placental lactogens, prolactins, and growth hormones on islet B-cell division and insulin secretion in rat, mouse, and human islets: implication for placental lactogen regulation of islet function during pregnancy. Endocrinology. 1993;132:879–87.
108. Marroqui L, Gonzalez A, Neco P, Caballero-Garrido E, Vieira E, Ripoll C, Nadal A, Quesada I. Role of leptin in the pancreatic beta-cell: effects and signaling pathways. J Mol Endocrinol. 2012;49:R9–17.
109. Vrachnis N, Belitsos P, Sifakis S, Dafopoulos K, Siristatidis C, Pappa KI, Iliodromiti Z. Role of adipokines and other inflammatory mediators in gestational diabetes mellitus and previous gestational diabetes mellitus. Int J Endocrinol. 2012;2012:549748.
110. Pala HG, Ozalp Y, Yener AS, Gerceklioglu G, Uysal S, Onvural A. Adiponectin levels in gestational diabetes mellitus and in pregnant women without glucose intolerance. Adv Clin Exp Med. 2015;24:85–92.
111. Retnakaran R, Hanley AJ, Raif N, Hirning CR, Connelly PW, Sermer M, Kahn SE, Zinman B. Adiponectin and beta cell dysfunction in gestational diabetes: pathophysiological implications. Diabetologia. 2005;48:993–1001.
112. Parkash J, Chaudhry MA, Rhoten WB. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha-induced changes in insulin-producing beta-cells. Anat Rec A Discov Mol Cell Evol Biol. 2005;286:982–93.
113. Haidari F, Jalali M-T, Shahbazian N, Haghighizadeh M-H, Azadegan E. Comparison of serum levels of vitamin D and inflammatory markers between women with gestational diabetes mellitus and healthy pregnant control. J Family Reprod Health. 2016;10:1–8.
114. Newsholme P, Cruzat VF, Keane KN, Carlessi R, de Bittencourt PI Jr. Molecular mechanisms of ROS production and oxidative stress in diabetes. Biochem J. 2016;473:4527–50.
115. Pertynska-Marczewska M, Glowacka E, Sobczak M, Cypryk K, Wilczynski J. Glycation endproducts, soluble receptor for advanced glycation endproducts and cytokines in diabetic and non-diabetic pregnancies. Am J Reprod Immunol. 2009;61:175–82.
116. Prentice KJ, Luu L, Allister EM, Liu Y, Jun LS, Sloop KW, Hardy AB, Wei L, Jia W, Fantus IG, Sweet DH, Sweeney G, Retnakaran R, Dai FF, Wheeler MB. The furan fatty acid metabolite CMPF is elevated in diabetes and induces β cell dysfunction. Cell Metab. 2014;19:653–66.
117. Lapolla A, Dalfra MG, Fedele D. Diabetes related autoimmunity in gestational diabetes mellitus: is it important? Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis. 2009;19:674–82.
118. Torn C, Gupta M, Sanjeevi CB, Aberg A, Frid A, Landin-Olsson M. Different HLA-DR-DQ and MHC class I chain-related gene A (MICA) genotypes in autoimmune and nonautoimmune gestational diabetes in a Swedish population. Hum Immunol. 2004;65:1443–50.
119. de Leiva A, Mauricio D, Corcoy R. Diabetes-related autoantibodies and gestational diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:S127–33.
120. Papadopoulou A, Lynch KF, Anderberg E, Landin-Olsson M, Hansson I, Agardh CD, Lernmark A, Berntorp K. HLA-DQB1 genotypes and islet cell autoantibodies against GAD65 and IA-2 in relation to development of diabetes post partum in women with gestational diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2012;95:260–4.
121. Nilsson C, Ursing D, Torn C, Aberg A, Landin-Olsson M. Presence of GAD antibodies during gestational diabetes mellitus predicts type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:1968–71.
122. Guo CC, Jin YM, Lee KK, Yang G, Jing CX, Yang X. The relationships between HLA class II alleles and antigens with gestational diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis. Sci Rep. 2016;6:35005.
123. Song D, Liu Y, Han Y, Shang G, Hua S, Zhang H, Guo S, Jiao S. Study on the gestational diabetes mellitus and histocompatibility human leukocyte antigen DRB allele polymorphism. Zhonghua Fu Chan Ke Za Zhi. 2002;37:284–6.
124. Vambergue A, Fajardy I, Bianchi F, Cazaubiel M, Verier-Mine O, Goeusse P, Fontaine P, Danze PM. Gestational diabetes mellitus and HLA class II (-DQ, -DR) association: the digest study. Eur J Immunogenet. 1997;24:385–94.
125. Yamagata K, Oda N, Kaisaki PJ, Menzel S, Furuta H, Vaxillaire M, Southam L, Cox RD, Lathrop GM, Boriraj VV, Chen X, Cox NJ, Oda Y, Yano H, Le Beau MM, Yamada S, Nishigori H, Takeda J, Fajans SS, Hattersley AT, Iwasaki N, Hansen T, Pedersen O, Polonsky KS, Bell GI, et al. Mutations in the hepatocyte nuclear factor-1alpha gene in maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY3). Nature. 1996;384:455–8.
126. Froguel P, Zouali H, Vionnet N, Velho G, Vaxillaire M, Sun F, Lesage S, Stoffel M, Takeda J, Passa P, et al. Familial hyperglycemia due to mutations in glucokinase. Definition of a subtype of diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 1993;328:697–702.
127. Yamagata K, Furuta H, Oda N, Kaisaki PJ, Menzel S, Cox NJ, Fajans SS, Signorini S, Stoffel M, Bell GI. Mutations in the hepatocyte nuclear factor-4alpha gene in maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY1). Nature. 1996;384:458–60.
128. Horikawa Y, Iwasaki N, Hara M, Furuta H, Hinokio Y, Cockburn BN, Lindner T, Yamagata K, Ogata M, Tomonaga O, Kuroki H, Kasahara T, Iwamoto Y, Bell GI. Mutation in hepatocyte nuclear factor-1 beta gene (TCF2) associated with MODY. Nat Genet. 1997;17:384–5.
129. Stoffers DA, Ferrer J, Clarke WL, Habener JF. Early-onset type-II diabetes mellitus (MODY4) linked to IPF1. Nat Genet. 1997;17:138–9.
130. Meur G, Simon A, Harun N, Virally M, Dechaume A, Bonnefond A, Fetita S, Tarasov AI, Guillausseau P-J, Boesgaard TW, Pedersen O, Hansen T, Polak M, Gautier J-F, Froguel P, Rutter GA, Vaxillaire M. Insulin gene mutations resulting in early-onset diabetes: marked differences in clinical presentation, metabolic status, and pathogenic effect through endoplasmic reticulum retention. Diabetes. 2010;59:653–61.
131. Bonnefond A, Philippe J, Durand E, Dechaume A, Huyvaert M, Montagne L, Marre M, Balkau B, Fajardy I, Vambergue A, Vatin V, Delplanque J, Le Guilcher D, De Graeve F, Lecoeur C, Sand O, Vaxillaire M, Froguel P. Whole-exome sequencing and high throughput genotyping identified KCNJ11 as the thirteenth MODY gene. PLoS One. 2012;7:e37423.
132. Bowman P, Flanagan SE, Edghill EL, Damhuis A, Shepherd MH, Paisey R, Hattersley AT, Ellard S. Heterozygous ABCC8 mutations are a cause of MODY. Diabetologia. 2012;55:123–7.
133. Fajans SS, Bell GI. MODY: history, genetics, pathophysiology, and clinical decision making. Diabetes Care. 2011;34:1878–84.
134. Colom C, Corcoy R. Maturity onset diabetes of the young and pregnancy. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2010;24:605–15.
135. Kleinberger JW, Maloney KA, Pollin TI. The genetic architecture of diabetes in pregnancy: implications for clinical practice. Am J Perinatol. 2016;33:1319–26.

136. Ellard S, Beards F, Allen LI, Shepherd M, Ballantyne E, Harvey R, Hattersley AT. A high prevalence of glucokinase mutations in gestational diabetic subjects selected by clinical criteria. Diabetologia. 2000;43:250–3.
137. Lambrinoudaki I, Vlachou SA, Creatsas G. Genetics in gestational diabetes mellitus: association with incidence, severity, pregnancy outcome and response to treatment. Curr Diabetes Rev. 2010;6:393–9.
138. Weng J, Ekelund M, Lehto M, Li H, Ekberg G, Frid A, Aberg A, Groop LC, Berntorp K. Screening for MODY mutations, GAD antibodies, and type 1 diabetes--associated HLA genotypes in women with gestational diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:68–71.
139. Shaat N, Karlsson E, Lernmark A, Ivarsson S, Lynch K, Parikh H, Almgren P, Berntorp K, Groop L. Common variants in MODY genes increase the risk of gestational diabetes mellitus. Diabetologia. 2006;49:1545–51.

Non-alcoholic Fatty Liver in the Pathogenesis of Diabetes

15

Cristiane A. Villela Nogueira and Nathalie Carvalho Leite

Introduction

Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease [1] is prevalent worldwide and is recently one of the leading causes of chronic liver disease in the occident due to obesity-related epidemic and metabolic syndrome [2]. NAFLD presents with different phenotypes and may progress to cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Moreover, it may be the leading cause for liver transplant in the next decade [3]. NAFLD was formerly identified in 1980, when Ludwig et al. described a small series of patients with liver histology characterized by fat accumulation, hepatic necroinflammation, and, in most cases, fibrosis, in the absence of a history of excessive alcohol consumption [4].

Definition of NAFLD

Currently, NAFLD is defined as the presence of macrovesicular steatosis in ≥5% of hepatocytes in individuals who consume little or no alcohol. NAFLD is divided into two major subtypes that comprise different phenotypes histologically identified: non-alcoholic fatty liver (NAFL, also termed simple steatosis), the non-progressive form of NAFLD that rarely develops into cirrhosis, and NASH, the progressive form of NAFLD that can lead to cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma [1] and is associated with an increase of liver-related mortality. NASH is characterized by the presence of steatosis, ballooning degeneration, and lobular inflammation, with or without peri-sinusoidal fibrosis on liver histology [5].

C. A. Villela Nogueira (✉)
School of Medicine, Internal Medicine Department, Federal University of Rio de Janeiro, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil

N. C. Leite
Clementino Fraga Filho University Hospital, Internal Medicine Division, Federal University of Rio de Janeiro, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil

Epidemiology

The background for the high prevalence of NAFLD is multifactorial, being related to sedentarism, Western lifestyle worldwide, obesity, as well as to genetic factors. It is present in almost 30% of the general population [6]. The prevalence of NAFLD in Europe and the Middle East ranges from 20% to 30% [7]. In the USA, one-third of the population is now obese, and one-third of American adults are thought to have NAFLD (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention *Overweight and Obesity* [online], http://www.cdc.gov/obesity/data/adult.html (2012). NAFLD prevalence in Japan and China is similar to that in Europe (20–30% in Japan and 15–30% in China, respectively) [8]. In the Indian subcontinent, the prevalence of NAFLD in urban populations ranges from 16% to 32%; however, in rural India, where most people have traditional diets and lifestyles, the prevalence is around 9%, lower than in urban population [9]. In Latin America, the prevalence of NAFLD has been reported to range from 17% to 33% [10]. Data is lacking in the African continent; however, one study from Nigeria, which included patients with and without diabetes mellitus, identified a prevalence of 9.7% [11]. Regarding pediatric population, the prevalence of NAFLD varies from 3% to 10%, rising up to 40–70% among obese children [12].

Patients with NAFLD and metabolic syndrome share the same risk factors: obesity, type 2 diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia, and insulin resistance. Diabetes has a huge impact not only on its prevalence worldwide but also on NAFLD severity [13]. The prevalence of ultrasonographic NAFLD in diabetic patients may be as high as 70% [13, 14].

Although cardiovascular death is the most common mortality-related factor among NAFDL population, increasing data regarding liver-related death due to liver dysfunction and hepatocellular carcinoma [1] has been increasingly reported. Although HCC is usually diagnosed in patients with NAFLD-related cirrhosis, it has also been detected in non-cirrhotic NAFLD. However, its true incidence and risk is still unknown [1]. Compared to viral

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_15

hepatitis, the progression of liver fibrosis in NAFLD seems to be slower (patients developing cirrhosis 28–57 years) [15]; however, the burden of patients with NAFLD is higher than those with hepatitis C [16]. At present, NASH cirrhosis is the third leading indication for liver transplantation in the USA [17]. In the forthcoming decades, due to a projected increase in HCC incidence, a change in the burden of related cases of HCC is expected, moving from viral hepatitis to NASH-related cirrhosis as the major risk factor for HCC worldwide [7].

Clinical Manifestations

The clinical presentation of NAFLD is insidious. Most patients are generally asymptomatic at diagnosis and are often referred from an internist with an ultrasound that demonstrates liver steatosis. Indeed, abdominal ultrasonography, owing to its non-invasive profile and easy accessibility, is the main screening and diagnostic method for NAFLD [18], although it is limited for patients that have more than 33% steatosis on liver biopsy. Patients who are symptomatic usually have non-specific symptoms like fatigue and a dull pain or heaviness in the right hypochondria. However, a physical exam with signs of insulin resistance like acanthosis nigricans, an enlarged waist circumference (usually over 88 cm in women and 102 cm in men), and overweight should also be a clinical clue to the diagnosis of NAFLD [19]. It's also important to be aware of some clinical conditions that may be associated with insulin resistance like polycystic ovarian syndrome in young women, which usually presents with obesity, hirsutism, acanthosis, and other diseases like hypothyroidism and sleep apnea disease which are closely related to an increased prevalence of NAFLD (Bano, 2016 #990) [20].

Diagnosis

Most patients with NAFLD are diagnosed by incidental elevated liver enzymes or imaging studies suggesting hepatic steatosis [21]. When NAFLD is suspected, the first step to confirm its diagnosis is to exclude other known etiologies of chronic liver diseases like drug-related steatosis [22, 23], viruses [24], and alcohol. As previously described, a careful history of alcohol ingestion and medications that are related to steatosis must be taken. Of note, some NAFLD patients with excessive alcohol intake may have both alcoholic and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease [25]. The average amount of alcohol that is allowed for patients with NAFLD have been under debate, but so far, although small to moderate amounts of alcohol might be related to a decrease in cardiovascular risk, patients with NAFLD should refrain from drinking alcohol [26]. Generally, for the diagnosis of NAFLD, the upper limit for alcohol intake would be a maximum of 30 g alcohol/day.

The different phenotypes of NAFLD are simple steatosis, steatohepatitis, and fibrosis. However, so far, due to the lack of specific and accurate biomarkers, only liver biopsy can accurately identify steatohepatitis. Steatosis is the most prevalent phenotype, and patients with simple steatosis have a benign course of the disease. Although NAFLD is the most common diagnosis in patients with incidental abnormal liver function tests [27], laboratorial tests are of minor value since most of patients with NAFLD including those with more advanced disease may present normal inflammatory liver enzymes [28]. Another drawback in laboratorial diagnosis of NAFLD is that as fibrosis progresses, both inflammatory enzymes such as AST and ALT and steatosis decrease. On the other hand, patients with persistent abnormal liver enzymes are those who usually present NASH on liver biopsy as well as other liver comorbidities like viral or autoimmune hepatitis. In conclusion, routine AST/ALT do not differentiate steatosis, NASH, or the stage of fibrosis [29].

Liver Biopsy and Non-invasive Markers of Fibrosis

As already stated, the only way to accurately diagnose the different phenotypes of NAFLD is through a liver biopsy. This is an invasive method prone to inter-observer and intra-observer disagreement. In addition, it is painful and difficult to be performed in such a high burden and widespread disease. Due to these drawbacks, the search for non-invasive methods to identify different spectrum of the disease is currently under research. So far, steatosis and fibrosis can be identified by non-invasive methods that vary from serological scores to image methods, and since the presence of fibrosis is the most important prognostic marker of the disease, it is reasonable to develop non-invasive methods that correctly identify or exclude liver fibrosis. At present there are a great number of serological scores that can be used to assess patients with NAFLD. They are usually applied as screening tools to identify patients with higher risk to the progressive forms of NAFLD. The most commonly used is the NAFLD fibrosis score ($1.675 + 0.037 \times$ age $+ 0.094 \times$ BMI $+ 1.13 \times$ IFG/Diabetes $+ 0.99 \times$ AST/ALT ratio $- 0.013 \times$ platelets $- 0.66 \times$ albumin), where a score <-1.455 excludes fibrosis (NPV 88–93%) and >0.676 predicts fibrosis (PPV 82–90%) and FIB-4 [[30]/(Platelets* Sqrt (ALT)] which has been defined as a useful score to predict fibrosis in NAFLD patients as well: a result <1.35 excludes fibrosis (NPV 95%) and >3.25 predicts fibrosis (PPV~ 70%). McPherson et al. compared the performance of simple serological tests to predict fibrosis, and the results are shown in Table 15.1 [31].

Table 15.1 Diagnostic performance of serologic scores to evaluate fibrosis in NAFLD

Test	AUC	Cutoff	Sens (%)	Spec (%)	PPV (%)	NPV (%)
NAFLD fibrosis score	0.81 (0.71–0.91)	−1.45 0.676	78 33	58 98	30 79	92 86
FIB-4	0.86 (0.78–0.94)	1.30 3.25	85 26	65 98	36 75	95 85
BARD	0.77 (0.68–0.87)	2	89	44	27	95
APRI	0.67 (0.54–0.8)	1	27	89	37	84
AST/ALT ratio	0.83 (0.74–0.91)	0.8 1	74 52	78 90	44 55	93 89

Legend: *NAFLD* non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, *BMI* body mass index, *IFG* intolerant fasting glucose, *AST* aspartate aminotransferase, *ALT* alanine aminotransferase, *NPV* negative predictive value, *PPV* positive predictive value

NASH is the phenotype of NAFLD that points to a progressive form of the disease, and so far, only liver biopsy is able to make this diagnosis. The histological definition of NASH comprises the triad of steatosis, cell injury [32], or any amount of lobular or portal inflammation. Of note, fibrosis is not required for the diagnosis of NASH. Semiquantitative histological scoring systems have been proposed for NAFLD, but they are not useful in clinical practice, and each has certain limitations. Recently, Bedossa et al. developed a new histological classification for NAFLD: the FLIP algorithm and the SAF (steatosis, activity, fibrosis) which assesses separately the grade of steatosis [32], the grade of activity [32], and the stage of fibrosis [32]. This algorithm and score may improve the agreement between pathologists when describing fibrosis stage [32].

Other non-invasive tools that have been useful as screening methods for the identification of patients with higher risk of fibrosis are transient elastography (TE) [33], two-dimensional shear wave elastography (2D-SWE), acoustic radiation force impulse (ARFI) which is a type of point shear wave elastography, and elastorressonance. Although elastoressonance has been considered the most accurate method for the identification of liver fibrosis, its use is limited as a screening method by cost and accessibility.

TE uses an ultrasound displacement M-mode and A-mode image produced by the system. It has two probes, M and XL. The XL probe was designed for obese patients, which has increased the success rate of the exam in patients with NAFLD since most are obese and, before the development of the XL probe, most exams were unreliable. Currently, all patients with a skin-to-liver capsule distance (SCD) of >25 mm should be assessed with the XL probe. Measures obtained with the XL probe are generally 1.5 kPA lower than those achieved with the M probe [34]. TE results under 7.9 kPa have a high negative predictive value for advanced fibrosis (97%) and should be employed in daily practice to decide about performing a liver biopsy in patients with NAFLD [35].

Two-dimensional shear wave elastography (2D-SWE) evaluation needs to be performed in a well-visualized area of the right liver lobe, without the visualization of large vessels, liver capsule, ligaments, and the gallbladder [36]. Obesity, which is one of the most prevalent findings in NAFLD patients, might limit a successful exam in addition to poor acoustic window or presence of artifacts and inability of the subjects to hold their breath [37].

In a study that compared the diagnostic performances of supersonic shear imaging (SWE) for the diagnosis of liver fibrosis compared to ARFI and TE in chronic liver disease, SWE, TE, and ARFI correlated significantly with histological fibrosis score; AUROCs of SWE, TE, and ARFI were 0.89, 0.86, and 0.84 for the diagnosis of mild fibrosis; 0.88, 0.84, and 0.81 for the diagnosis of significant fibrosis; 0.93, 0.87, and 0.89 for the diagnosis of severe fibrosis; and 0.93, 0.90, and 0.90 for the diagnosis of cirrhosis, respectively. Hence, all methods might be used to assess liver fibrosis in patients with NAFLD, since the reliability criteria are respected as well as its limitations [37]. Additional studies with 2D-SWE and ARFI are needed in order to better establish the best cutoffs for these methods.

NAFLD and T2DM Interplay

In order to better understand the interplay between NAFLD and T2DM, it is important to review epidemiological data and pathogenetic mechanisms accounting for this relationship. As discussed before, T2DM is a risk factor for NAFLD and its progressive form, NASH, and advanced liver fibrosis [38–40]. Interestingly, in addition to T2DM, a family history of diabetes was independently associated with the presence of NASH and fibrosis in NAFLD patients [41].

In our cross-sectional study, no diabetes-related variable (glycemic control, diabetes duration, or the presence of long-term complications) was associated with the more severe stages of NAFLD [40]. In contrast, data are emerging to suggest that the presence and severity of NAFLD may be associated with the occurrence of macro and microvascular complications in diabetic patients [42–45]. Two hypotheses could explain those conflicting epidemiological observations. First, NAFLD and T2DM may represent two distinct outcomes from insulin resistance, and, in this way, no diabetes-related characteristic would be expected to favor NAFLD progression. The second hypothesis is that both NAFLD and degenerative complications may precede the diagnosis of T2DM, running over time the same and progressive course.

It has demonstrated that over 85% of subjects with NAFLD have impaired glucose tolerance or T2DM by standard oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) [46, 47]. Therefore, another issue to be considered is whether NAFLD is an important precondition for the development of T2DM. In this regard, several studies have shown an increased incidence of T2DM in patients with NAFLD diagnosed by ultrasonography or only by elevated liver enzymes. However, most of them were conducted in Asian countries, and few were properly adjusted for potential confounding variables [48, 49]. In a recent prospective cohort study of 3153 participants from the Multi-Ethnic Study of Atherosclerosis (MESA), high liver fat was independently associated with development of T2DM [50]. Two systematic reviews with different criteria for selecting studies of NAFLD patients obtained similar results. The two independent reviews demonstrated an increased risk for incident diabetes over a period of 4–10 years [51, 52]. Taken together, these observations have implied a role for NAFLD in T2DM pathogenesis.

Pathogenesis

During the course of human evolution, individuals who had more energy stores were more likely to cope with starvation. In modern industrialized societies, with unlimited access to caloric food, this evolutionary adaptation becomes maladaptive. An increased caloric intake exceeding rates of caloric expenditure promotes obesity, dysfunction of white adipose tissue, and accumulation of ectopic lipids. This relationship between the nutritional oversupply and NAFLD is reflected by the high prevalence of NAFLD and insulin resistance (IR) among obese individuals.

Insulin Resistance

There is strong evidence of an association of NAFLD and insulin resistance (IR). Euglycemic hyperinsulinemic clamp studies, coupled with tracer infusion, confirmed that the IR is the rule in main tissues even in non-diabetic and non-obese patients with NAFLD [53]. Insulin is a pleiotropic hormone that regulates different cell functions. Concerning lipid-related metabolism, insulin promotes triglyceride storage and inhibits lipoprotein lipase activity in adipose tissue. Insulin resistance at the level of the adipocyte seems to be the primary defect in NAFLD [54, 55]. Impairment in insulin-mediated suppression of lipolysis leads first to elevated circulating non-esterified fatty acids (NEFAs) and subsequently to a sustained excess delivery of these fatty acids to skeletal muscle and liver. In fact it is the tissue-specific distribution of fat from adipose tissue into ectopic depots that determines liver and muscle insulin resistance, not the whole-body quantity of fat.

As obesity and the deposition of ectopic fat increases, adipose tissue is more likely to be infiltrated with macrophages and undergo inflammation. Thus, the expanded and dysfunctional adipose tissue secretes inflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor α (TNFα) and interleukin 6 (IL-6), which decrease insulin sensitivity at the level of the adipocyte. TNFα activates pro-inflammatory pathways: the nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) and c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) [56]. TNFα-induced attenuation of insulin signaling is mediated by JNK and occurs via serine phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrate [57]. In addition, serum levels of adiponectin, a hepatoprotective adipokine, are reduced in patients with NAFLD. Adiponectin improves insulin sensitivity and decreases both steatosis and inflammation [58].

Insulin resistance also leads to adverse effects on the metabolism of carbohydrates: increased gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis in liver as well as reduction in peripheral glucose uptake. Chronic hyperglycemia induces insulin secretion by the pancreatic beta islet cells, leading to compensatory hyperinsulinemia. The mechanisms of beta cell progressive failure are less well defined; however, elevated levels of glucose as well as increased circulating NEFAs may be responsible for pancreatic beta islet cell dysfunction and apoptosis [59]. With time, as hyperglycemia worsens, fasting and total insulin production begins to decline. It is the progressive loss of beta cell insulin secretion in the setting of insulin resistance (IR)/hyperinsulinemia that predisposes to T2DM development.

Compensatory Hyperinsulinemia

Interestingly, it has been argued that many of the adverse effects due to insulin resistance result much more from compensatory hyperinsulinemia in organs that remain sensitive to its action. In fact, there is selective insulin resistance even in different pathways within the same tissue or organ. In the liver, for instance, while insulin fails to suppress gluconeogenesis, it continues to promote FAs synthesis (de novo lipogenesis, DNL). Both hyperglycemia and hyperinsulinemia activate transcription factors sterol regulatory element-binding protein-1c (SREBP-1c) and carbohydrate response element-binding protein (ChREBP), which upregulates most genes involved in DNL [60].

The synthesis of long-chain FAs is determined by the sequential action of various enzymes: acetyl CoA carboxylase (ACC), fatty acid synthase (FAS), fatty acid elongases, and desaturases [61]. In turn, many of these enzymes are directly controlled by the key regulator SREBP-1c and liver

x receptor, which is also an important component of the nuclear receptor superfamily.

Hence, the action of these upregulated lipogenic enzymes and the increased delivery and uptake of FAs (adipose tissue and diet) play a critical role in the induction of NAFLD. Hepatic steatosis develops when the balance between hepatic triglycerides (TAGs) synthesis from free fatty acids (FAs) exceeds the liver capacity to oxidize FAs or export TG in the form of very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL). FAs may be oxidized in the mitochondria, peroxisomes, and microsomal system. β-oxidation within mitochondria, however, is the most efficient source of energy under normal circumstances. Uptake and oxidation of FAs by mitochondria are both inhibited by a key intermediary of de novo lipogenesis. Decreased disposal of FFA is also the result of reduction in production of apolipoprotein B, leading to a relative impairment of very low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) generation [62].

Hepatic Insulin Resistance

Although hepatic TAGs are thought to be inert or even protective for NAFLD progression, FAs metabolites such as diacylglycerol (DAG) may further contribute to IR and NASH development. The probable causal link between citossolic DAG content and IR is attributed to PKCε activation. Activated PKCε isoform binds and inhibits insulin receptor kinase, leading to reductions in insulin-stimulated tyrosine phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrate IRS-2 and insulin signaling [63]. In contrast to hepatic DAG, other FAs metabolites, such as ceramides, are less important lipid mediators of hepatic IR in NAFLD [64].

Selective insulin resistance (IR) in the liver is a key pathophysiologic event in the development of NAFLD and type 2 diabetes. Differences in insulin receptor (InsR) activation underlie the selective IR of glucose production relative to lipogenesis. Decreased (InsR) activation has been observed in the liver of patients with NAFLD and results from a cell-autonomous downregulation of receptor number and/or activity in response to chronic hyperinsulinemia. It has been shown that a greater degree of intact InsR signaling is required to suppress glucose production than to stimulate lipogenesis, one through forkhead O transcription factor-1 (FOXO1) and the other through SREBP-1c [65]. This "bifurcation" of hepatocyte insulin signaling underlies the mechanisms by which one branch (i.e., glucose metabolism) becomes resistant to the effects of insulin, whereas the other (i.e., lipid metabolism) remains sensitive or even stimulated by hyperinsulinemia. These molecular features of hepatocyte insulin signaling do not rule out the role of excess citossolic DAG in hepatic IR.

Genetics in NAFLD Pathogenesis

During the last years, genome-wide association studies revealed genetic variants associated with NAFLD pathogenesis. Patatin-like phospholipase domain-containing protein 3 (PNPLA3), transmembrane 6 superfamily 2 (TM6SF2), and glucokinase regulator (GCKR) gene polymorphisms were recently validated in large and independent cohorts. The most well-described genetic risk variant is the I148M variant in PNPLA3 gene. The I148M allele leads to a loss of phospholipase lipolytic activity, which predisposes to increased hepatic fat content and progressive liver damage. In the case of TM6SF2, (Lys E167K) T allele has been associated with hepatic retention of TAG and hepatic fibrosis and (Glu E167K) C allele with VLDL secretion and atherogenesis. However, both genetic variants in PNPLA3 and TM6SF2 have not been associated with IR or increased risk of T2DM [66, 67]. The P446L variant in GCKR gene increases glucose uptake and DNL in hepatocytes. In this setting, hepatic lipid accumulation from constant glucose substrate favors liver disease but protects from T2DM development.

Endoplasmic Reticulum Stress and the Innate Immune Response

In normal conditions, the majority of secreted and membrane proteins are folded in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) and transported to the Golgi apparatus. In circumstances of elevated circulating (NEFAs), unfolded proteins can accumulate in this organelle. The "unfolded protein response" [68] or "the ER stress response" (ER) arises from an increased amount of unfolded proteins and impaired capacity to properly fold these proteins in the ER. Accumulation of unfolded proteins in the ER activates transmembrane signal transducers, regulates lipogenesis, and, ultimately, leads to apoptosis-inducing pathways and cell death. Furthermore, a stress-specific transcription factor named X-Box binding protein 1 (XBP1) can also activate c-Jun N-terminal (JNKs) signaling, contributing to the development of IR.

Toll-like receptors (TLRs) are a family of receptors that plays a critical role in innate immune systems. TLR4 received a particular attention because of its ability to recognize free fatty acids and lipopolysaccharides (LPSs) and activate the pro-inflammatory signaling pathway nuclear factor κB (NFκB). Thus, LPSs have an indirect effect on insulin sensitivity and inflammation [69, 70].

Patients with NAFLD have small intestinal bacterial overgrowth and increased intestinal permeability, allowing LPSs and other products to enter the portal circulation. These observations have implied an important role for gut microbiota-induced inflammation in the development of NAFLD and insulin resistance [71, 72].

Conclusion

NAFLD is present in over 30% of the world population. NASH with fibrosis may progress to cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. In addition, the recent alarming rise of obesity, T2DM and components of metabolic syndrome are even more concerning. Regarding NAFLD and T2DM interplay, it is important to highlight that T2DM is a risk factor for NAFLD and its progressive form: NASH with fibrosis. This link would explain why NAFLD in diabetic patients presents with a high prevalence of advanced stages of the disease. As discussed before, there are a wide range of non-invasive methods available for the detection of steatosis and fibrosis. In general, NAFLD score and transient elastography are the most routinely used tools to discriminate patients at risk for advanced fibrosis. However, the major challenge is to identify reliable non-invasive methods in the specific population of T2DM patients.

Another issue addressed in this chapter is the independent contribution of NAFLD to new-onset T2DM. In fact, NAFLD is believed to concur to the pathogenesis of T2DM through multiple mechanisms. The practical implication of this close interaction of NAFLD and T2DM is related to its therapeutic potential. New promising drugs in the pipeline are expected to improve NASH with fibrosis. Besides that, these new therapies may end up decreasing the risk of incident T2DM.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Different phenotypes of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease include:
   (a) Simple steatosis, steatohepatitis, and fibrosis
   (b) Asthma COPD overlap syndrome, frequent exacerbators, and alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency
   (c) Dominant allele and recessive allele
2. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is recently one of the leading causes of:
   (a) Chronic liver disease in the occident due to obesity-related epidemic and metabolic syndrome
   (b) Infections H1n1 flu virus
   (c) Gestational diabetes mellitus
   (d) Autoimmune destruction of pancreatic β cells
3. Selective insulin resistance in the liver is a key pathophysiologic event in the development of:
   (a) Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and type 2 diabetes mellitus
   (b) Latent autoimmune diabetes in adults
   (c) Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
   (d) Cardiovascular disease
4. Which is the first step to confirm the diagnosis when non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is suspected?
   (a) Exclude other known etiologies of chronic liver diseases like drug-related steatosis, viruses, and alcohol.
   (b) Receive an injection of a small amount of radioactive material; it flows through bloodstream and collects in certain bones or organs. A machine called a scanner detects and measures the radioactivity.
   (c) An oral glucose tolerance test measures blood sugar after you have gone at least 8 hours without eating and 2 hours after you drink a glucose-containing beverage.
   (d) Measured with a device known as a sphygmomanometer, which consists of a stethoscope, arm cuff, dial, pump, and valve.
5. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is defined as:
   (a) The presence of macrovesicular steatosis in ≥5% of hepatocytes in individuals who consume little or no alcohol
   (b) The presence of macrovesicular steatosis in −5% of hepatocytes in individuals who consume little or no alcohol
   (c) The presence of macrovesicular steatosis in ≥50% of hepatocytes in individuals who consume little or no alcohol
   (d) The presence of macrovesicular steatosis in ≤5% of hepatocytes in individuals who consume little or no alcohol
6. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is multifactorial, related to sedentarism, Western lifestyle worldwide, obesity, as well as to genetic factors with a frequency of:
   (a) Almost −20% of the general population
   (b) Almost 100% of the general population
   (c) Almost 30% of the general population
   (d) Almost 2% of the general population
7. Insulin resistance at the adipocyte level is the primary defect in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease because:
   (a) Insulin promotes HDL cholesterol storage and promotes lipoprotein lipase activity in adipose tissue.
   (b) Insulin promotes triglyceride storage and inhibits lipoprotein lipase activity in adipose tissue.
   (c) Insulin resistance is a promoter of weight loss.
8. Hyperglycemia and hyperinsulinemia activate transcription factors sterol regulatory element-binding protein-1c (SREBP-1c) and carbohydrate response element-binding protein (ChREBP), which upregulates most genes involved in DNL.
   (a) True
   (b) False
9. Patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease have small intestinal bacterial overgrowth and increased intestinal permeability, allowing LPSs and other products to enter the portal circulation.
   (a) True
   (b) False

10. Type 2 diabetes mellitus is a risk factor for non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and its progressive form, NASH, with fibrosis because:
    (a) There is an established link between diabetes and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease.
    (b) Positive family history of gestational diabetes mellitus and higher parity are established risk factors for the development of gestational diabetes mellitus.
    (c) Subjects with normal glucose metabolism (at various ages and at risk for all forms of diabetes) have shown that normal glucose tolerance is characterized by glucose levels within a very narrow range.
    (d) Physical inactivity is also a leading risk factor for the development of non-communicable diseases and is responsible for substantial economic burdens worldwide.

Correct Answers

1. (a) Simple steatosis, steatohepatitis, and fibrosis
2. (a) Chronic liver disease in the occident due to obesity-related epidemic and metabolic syndrome
3. (a) Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and type 2 diabetes mellitus
4. (a) Exclude other known etiologies of chronic liver diseases like drug-related steatosis, viruses, and alcohol
5. (a) The presence of macrovesicular steatosis in ≥5% of hepatocytes in individuals who consume little or no alcohol
6. (c) Almost 30% of the general population
7. (b) Insulin promotes triglyceride storage and inhibits lipoprotein lipase activity in adipose tissue
8. (a) True
9. (a) True
10. (a) There is an established link between diabetes and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease

References

1. Piscaglia F, Svegliati-Baroni G, Barchetti A, et al. Clinical patterns of hepatocellular carcinoma in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a multicenter prospective study. Hepatology (Baltimore, Md). 2016;63:827–38.
2. Rinella ME. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic review. JAMA. 2015;313:2263–73.
3. Wong RJ, Aguilar M, Cheung R, et al. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis is the second leading etiology of liver disease among adults awaiting liver transplantation in the United States. Gastroenterology. 2015;148:547–55.
4. Ludwig J, Viggiano TR, McGill DB, Oh BJ. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: Mayo Clinic experiences with a hitherto unnamed disease. Mayo Clin Proc. 1980;55:434–8.
5. Kleiner D, Brunt E. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: pathologic patterns and biopsy evaluation in clinical research. Semin Liver Dis. 2012;32:3–13.
6. Browning JD, Szczepaniak LS, Dobbins R, et al. Prevalence of hepatic steatosis in an urban population in the United States: impact of ethnicity. Hepatology (Baltimore, Md). 2004;40:1387–95.
7. Loomba R, Sanyal AJ. The global NAFLD epidemic. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2013;10:686.
8. Hoofnagle JH, Van Natta ML, Kleiner DE, et al. Vitamin E and changes in serum alanine aminotransferase levels in patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2013;38:134–43.
9. Babusik P, Bilal M, Duris I. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease of two ethnic groups in Kuwait: comparison of prevalence and risk factors. Med Princ Pract. 2012;21:56–62.
10. Mendez-Sanchez N. Non alcoholic fatty liver disease. Ann Hepatol. 2009;8(Suppl 1):S3.
11. Onyekwere CA, Ogbera AO, Balogun BO. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and the metabolic syndrome in an urban hospital serving an African community. Ann Hepatol. 2011;10:119–24.
12. Bellentani S, Scaglioni F, Marino M, Bedogni G. Epidemiology of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Dig Dis. 2010;28:155–61.
13. Leite N, Salles G, Araujo A, Villela-Nogueira C, Cardoso C. Prevalence and associated factors of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in patients with type-2 diabetes mellitus. Liver Int. 2009;29:113–9.
14. Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus. Report of the expert committee on the diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(Suppl 1):S5–20.
15. Williamson RM, Price JF, Glancy S, et al. Prevalence of and risk factors for hepatic steatosis and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in people with type 2 diabetes: the Edinburgh type 2 diabetes study. Diabetes Care. 2011;34:1139–44.
16. Sanyal A, Poklepovic A, Moyneur E, Barghout V. Population-based risk factors and resource utilization for HCC: US perspective. Curr Med Res Opin. 2010;26:2183–91.
17. Charlton M, Burns J, Pedersen R, Watt K, Heimbach J, Dierkhising R. Frequency and outcomes of liver transplantation for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis in the United States. Gastroenterology. 2011;141:1249–53.
18. Saadeh S, Younossi ZM, Remer EM, et al. The utility of radiological imaging in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Gastroenterology. 2002;123:745–50.
19. Alberti KG, Zimmet P, Shaw J, IDF Epidemiology Task Force Consensus Group. The metabolic syndrome--a new worldwide definition. Lancet. 2005;366:1059–62.
20. Jeanes YM, Reeves S. Metabolic consequences of obesity and insulin resistance in polycystic ovary syndrome: diagnostic and methodological challenges. Nutr Res Rev. 2017;30(1):97–105.
21. Angulo P. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. N Engl J Med. 2002;346:1221–31.
22. Osman KA, Osman MM, Ahmed MH. Tamoxifen-induced non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: where are we now and where are we going? Expert Opin Drug Saf. 2007;6:1–4.
23. Farrell GC. Drugs and steatohepatitis. Semin Liver Dis. 2002;22:185–94.
24. Debongnie JC, Pauls C, Fievez M, Wibin E. Prospective evaluation of the diagnostic accuracy of liver ultrasonography. Gut. 1981;22:130–5.
25. Scaglioni F, Ciccia S, Marino M, Bedogni G, Bellentani S. ASH and NASH. Dig Dis. 2011;29:202–10.
26. Liangpunsakul S, Chalasani N. What should we recommend to our patients with NAFLD regarding alcohol use? Am J Gastroenterol. 2012;107:976–8.

27. Pendino GM, Mariano A, Surace P, et al. Prevalence and etiology of altered liver tests: a population-based survey in a Mediterranean town. Hepatology (Baltimore, Md). 2005;41:1151–9.
28. Abdelmalek MF, Sanderson SO, Angulo P, et al. Betaine for non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: results of a randomized placebo-controlled trial. Hepatology. 2009;50:1818–26.
29. Sorrentino P, Tarantino G, Conca P, et al. Silent non-alcoholic fatty liver disease-a clinical-histological study. J Hepatol. 2004;41:751–7.
30. Effect of intensive blood-glucose control with metformin on complications in overweight patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 34). UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) Group. Lancet. 1998;352:854–65.
31. McPherson S, Stewart SF, Henderson E, Burt AD, Day CP. Simple non-invasive fibrosis scoring systems can reliably exclude advanced fibrosis in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Gut. 2010;59:1265–9.
32. Bedossa P. Pathology of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Liver Int. 2017;37(Suppl 1):85–9.
33. Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults. Executive summary of the third report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) expert panel on detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults (Adult Treatment Panel III). JAMA. 2001;285:2486–97.
34. de Ledinghen V, Wong VW, Vergniol J, et al. Diagnosis of liver fibrosis and cirrhosis using liver stiffness measurement: comparison between M and XL probe of FibroScan(R). J Hepatol. 2012;56:833–9.
35. Wong VW, Vergniol J, Wong GL, et al. Diagnosis of fibrosis and cirrhosis using liver stiffness measurement in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology (Baltimore, Md). 2010;51:454–62.
36. Samir AE, Dhyani M, Vij A, et al. Shear-wave elastography for the estimation of liver fibrosis in chronic liver disease: determining accuracy and ideal site for measurement. Radiology. 2015;274:888–96.
37. Cassinotto C, Lapuyade B, Mouries A, et al. Non-invasive assessment of liver fibrosis with impulse elastography: comparison of Supersonic Shear Imaging with ARFI and FibroScan(R). J Hepatol. 2014;61:550–7.
38. Younossi Z, Gramlich T, Matteoni C, Boparai N, Mccullough A. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in patients with type 2 diabetes. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2004;2:262–5.
39. Prashanth M, Ganesh HK, Vima MV, et al. Prevalence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. J Assoc Physicians India. 2009;57:205–10.
40. Leite N, Villela-Nogueira C, Pannain V, et al. Histopathological stages of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in type 2 diabetes: prevalences and correlated factors. Liver Int. 2011;31:700–6.
41. Loomba R, Abraham M, Unalp A, et al. Association between diabetes, family history of diabetes, and risk of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and fibrosis. Hepatology (Baltimore, Md). 2012;56:943–51.
42. Targher G, Bertolini L, Padovani R, et al. Prevalence of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and its association with cardiovascular disease among type 2 diabetic patients. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:1212–8.
43. Targher G, Bertolini L, Padovani R, et al. Prevalence of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and its association with cardiovascular disease in patients with type 1 diabetes. J Hepatol. 2010;53:713–8.
44. Targher G, Bertolini L, Rodella S, Lippi G, Zoppini G, Chonchol M. Relationship between kidney function and liver histology in subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2010;5:2166–71.
45. Targher G, Chonchol M, Pichiri I, Zoppini G. Risk of cardiovascular disease and chronic kidney disease in diabetic patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: just a coincidence? J Endocrinol Investig. 2011;34:544–51.
46. Ortiz-Lopez C, Lomonaco R, Orsak B, et al. Prevalence of prediabetes and diabetes and metabolic profile of patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). Diabetes Care. 2012;35:873–8.
47. Willner I, Waters B, Patil S, Reuben A, Morelli J, Riely C. Ninety patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: insulin resistance, familial tendency, and severity of disease. Am J Gastroenterol. 2001;96:2957–61.
48. Kasturiratne A, Weerasinghe S, Dassanayake AS, et al. Influence of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease on the development of diabetes mellitus. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2013;28:142–7.
49. Choi JH, Rhee EJ, Bae JC, et al. Increased risk of type 2 diabetes in subjects with both elevated liver enzymes and ultrasonographically diagnosed nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a 4-year longitudinal study. Arch Med Res. 2013;44:115–20.
50. Shah RV, Allison MA, Lima JA, et al. Liver fat, statin use, and incident diabetes: the multi-ethnic study of atherosclerosis. Atherosclerosis. 2015;242:211–7.
51. Musso G, Gambino R, Cassader M, Pagano G. Meta-analysis: natural history of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and diagnostic accuracy of non-invasive tests for liver disease severity. Ann Med. 2011;43:617–49.
52. Ballestri S, Zona S, Targher G, et al. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease is associated with an almost twofold increased risk of incident type 2 diabetes and metabolic syndrome. Evidence from a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2016;31:936–44.
53. Bugianesi E, Gastaldelli A, Vanni E, et al. Insulin resistance in non-diabetic patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: sites and mechanisms. Diabetologia. 2005;48:634–42.
54. Cusi K. Role of obesity and lipotoxicity in the development of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: pathophysiology and clinical implications. Gastroenterology. 2012;142:711–25.e6.
55. Lomonaco R, Ortiz-Lopez C, Orsak B, et al. Effect of adipose tissue insulin resistance on metabolic parameters and liver histology in obese patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology. 2012;55:1389–97.
56. Fain JN, Bahouth SW, Madan AK. TNF alpha release by the non-fat cells of human adipose tissue. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 2004;28:616–22.
57. Sabio G, Das M, Mora A, et al. A stress signaling pathway in adipose tissue regulates hepatic insulin resistance. Science. 2008;322:1539–43.
58. Polyzos SA, Toulis KA, Goulis DG, Zavos C, Kountouras J. Serum total adiponectin in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Metabolism. 2011;60:313–26.
59. Cnop M, Welsh N, Jonas JC, Jorns A, Lenzen S, Eizirik DL. Mechanisms of pancreatic beta-cell death in type 1 and type 2 diabetes: many differences, few similarities. Diabetes. 2005;54(Suppl 2):S97–107.
60. Horton JD, Goldstein JL, Brown MS. SREBPs: activators of the complete program of cholesterol and fatty acid synthesis in the liver. J Clin Invest. 2002;109:1125–31.
61. Postic C, Girard J. The role of the lipogenic pathway in the development of hepatic steatosis. Diabetes Metab. 2008;34:643–8.
62. Ferre P, Foufelle F. Hepatic steatosis: a role for de novo lipogenesis and the transcription factor SREBP-1c. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2010;12(Suppl 2):83–92.
63. Birkenfeld AL, Shulman GI. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, hepatic insulin resistance, and type 2 diabetes. Hepatology. 2014;59:713–23.
64. Kumashiro N, Erion DM, Zhang D, et al. Cellular mechanism of insulin resistance in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2011;108:16381–5.

65. Cook JR, Langlet F, Kido Y, Accili D. Pathogenesis of selective insulin resistance in isolated hepatocytes. J Biol Chem. 2015;290:13972–80.
66. Pirola CJ, Sookoian S. The dual and opposite role of the TM6SF2-rs58542926 variant in protecting against cardiovascular disease and conferring risk for nonalcoholic fatty liver: a meta-analysis. Hepatology. 2015;62:1742–56.
67. Sookoian S, Pirola CJ. Meta-analysis of the influence of I148M variant of patatin-like phospholipase domain containing 3 gene (PNPLA3) on the susceptibility and histological severity of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology. 2011;53:1883–94.
68. Czupryniak L. Guidelines for the management of type 2 diabetes: is ADA and EASD consensus more clinically relevant than the IDF recommendations? Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2009;86(Suppl 1):S22–5.
69. Konner AC, Bruning JC. Toll-like receptors: linking inflammation to metabolism. Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2011;22:16–23.
70. Cani PD, Amar J, Iglesias MA, et al. Metabolic endotoxemia initiates obesity and insulin resistance. Diabetes. 2007;56:1761–72.
71. Miele L, Valenza V, La Torre G, et al. Increased intestinal permeability and tight junction alterations in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology. 2009;49:1877–87.
72. Ruiz AG, Casafont F, Crespo J, et al. Lipopolysaccharide-binding protein plasma levels and liver TNF-alpha gene expression in obese patients: evidence for the potential role of endotoxin in the pathogenesis of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. Obes Surg. 2007;17:1374–80.

Part III

Examples of Global Experiences in Diabetes Care

Diabetes Management in Asia

16

Roopa Shivashankar, Kavita Singh, L. R. Aravind, and Nikhil Tandon

Chapter Objectives

- To provide an insight into current issues in management of diabetes mellitus in Asian countries
- To understand distinctive health systems factors that influence management of diabetes mellitus
- To present examples of best practices in diabetes care in Asia

Introduction

Asia as a continent is diverse and consists of large low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) [1]. Asian populations are racially heterogeneous and have differing demographic, cultural, and socioeconomic characteristics. A few decades earlier, they were more physically active, and most people followed distinctive sociocultural norms and traditional dietary practices [2]. The prevalence of diabetes mellitus (DM) has sharply increased in Asia due to rapid economic, demographic, and lifestyle transitions that have occurred over the past two decades [3, 4]. Conservative estimates based on population growth, aging, and urbanization rate in Asia suggest that India and China will remain the two countries with the highest numbers of people with DM (150.7 million and 123.5 million, respectively) by 2040 [5]. Also, among the top ten countries, three more are in Asia—Indonesia, Pakistan, and Bangladesh [5].

In 2015, 415 million people worldwide had diabetes, with 193 million people, or close to half (46.5%) of them, being undiagnosed. The global prevalence of DM is predicted to reach 642 million by 2040 [5]. The International Diabetes Federation (IDF) Diabetes Atlas, 7th Edition data for 2015, revealed that the DM prevalence in the Middle East, Southeast Asia, and Western Pacific regions was 9.1%, 8.5%, and 9.3%, respectively [5]. Notably, 60% of the world's diabetic population is from Asia [6, 7]. The unique feature of DM in Asian countries is the rapidly increasing prevalence of diabetes in the younger age group [8]. In China, from 1994 to 2000, there was an 88% increase in prevalence in the 35–44-year age group [9, 10]. Data from southern India show that the people younger than 44 years contributed to 25% of all people with DM in 2000 and that proportion rose to 35.7% in 2006 [11]. Factors that have contributed to the epidemic of obesity and diabetes in younger populations are the rapid transition in dietary habits, reduced physical activity, changing pattern in leisure activities, longer working hours, and decreasing sleep hours [12]. Increasing levels of modernization, industrialization, and economic advancements adversely affect biological and environmental risk factors for diabetes [13]. Further, the literature suggests that Asians have higher propensity to develop diabetes at low thresholds of conventional risk factors such as age, body mass index (BMI), upper-body adiposity, and other metabolic features, when compared to other populations [3, 4, 8, 10]. Diabetes develops at least a decade earlier in Asians than in white Caucasians. Both the thrifty genotype and thrifty phenotype might be operative in Asian groups [2, 12, 14]. Asian populations also have high rates of clustering of cardiovascular risk factors even at a young age [2, 15].

R. Shivashankar (✉) · K. Singh
Public Health Foundation of India (PHFI), Gurgaon, Haryana, India

Centre for Chronic Disease Control, New Delhi, Delhi, India
e-mail: roopa@ccdcindia.org; roopa.shivashankar@phfi.org; kavita@ccdcindia.org; kavita.singh@phfi.org

L. R. Aravind
Public Health Foundation of India (PHFI), Gurgaon, Haryana, India
e-mail: aravind.lr@phfi.org

N. Tandon
Department of Endocrinology and Metabolism, All India Institute of Medical Sciences, New Delhi, India

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_16

Prevalence of Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus (T1DM)

Asia has one of the highest burdens of T1DM in children, with 77,890 affected in 2013. According to the IDF estimates, India has the second largest number of children with type 1 diabetes (67,700) after the United States and the largest proportion of incident cases of T1DM among the Southeast Asia countries [5, 12]. Beta cell autoantibodies are typically present only among 30–40% of patients with T1DM in Asia, compared to the reported prevalence of 70–80% in Western populations [12]. This may reflect differences in underlying pathophysiology. On the other hand, an increasing proportion of patients treated as T2DM is recognized to have evidence of progressive autoimmune destruction of beta cells and latent autoimmune diabetes in adults (LADA) [16, 12].

Prevalence of Young-Onset Diabetes

Population-based and community-based studies of type 2 diabetes in children are few, but several clinic-based studies exist [17]. Increasing prevalence of overweight and obesity in children and adolescents is one of the important causes of young-onset diabetes. The 2002 National Nutrition and Health Survey in China showed that 4.1% of children aged 7–12 years and 5.6% of children aged 12–18 years were overweight, and the obesity prevalence was 2.5% and 1.6%, respectively [12]. In Hong Kong, a community-based survey showed that 8–10% of children aged 12–13 years were obese [18]. A recent study from India reported high prevalence of metabolic syndrome in adolescents aged 10–18 years: 22.3% in girls and 16.6% in boys [19, 20]. Prevalence of overweight (18%) and obesity (5.5%) were also found to be significantly higher among children aged 5–18 years in India [21]. Prevalence of young-onset diabetes is increasing in Asian populations, and their rising trend is linked to epigenetic factors, such as maternal imprinting, and unhealthy lifestyle changes leading to high rates of obesity [14, 22].

Urban and Rural Prevalence of Diabetes

Although the prevalence of diabetes is often higher in urban than in the rural settings, the rates are increasing more rapidly in the rural population. A systematic analysis of long-term trends between 1989 and 2005 showed a 2.2-fold increase in diabetes prevalence in urban populations from 8.3% to 18.6% and a 4.2-fold increase in the rural population from 2.2% to 9.2% [23–25]. In Sri Lanka, between 1990 and 2000, the prevalence of diabetes increased 1.2-fold from 5.3% to 6.5% in the urban population and 3.4-fold from 2.5% to 8.5% in the rural population [26, 27]. In urban Indian adults, diabetes prevalence increased from 3% in 1970 to 12% in 2000, with a narrowing of rural-urban gradient [28]. Furthermore, the prevalence of type 2 diabetes in rural South India was 9.2% and 18.6% in urban area in 2006 [29]. More recently, the ICMR-INDIAB study conducted in 15 states in India reported the overall prevalence of diabetes was 7.3% and higher in urban areas (11.2%) than in rural areas (5.2%) [30]. In rural Bangladesh, prevalence of diabetes increased from 2.3% to 6.8% between 1999 and 2004 [31]. In a national survey in 2001, 8% of Korean adults had diabetes, with little difference between urban and rural areas [32]. Other Asian countries including Japan, Malaysia, Indonesia, Thailand, Nepal, Cambodia, the Philippines, and Vietnam also have experienced a marked increase in prevalence of diabetes [15, 33–38].

Economic Burden of Diabetes Care

Inadequate resources, an insufficient health-care budget, lack of medical reimbursement, and socioeconomic barriers contribute to the sub-optimal management of diabetes, resulting in costly diabetes complications in Asian countries. The cost of diabetes care increases manifold when complications occur or when insulin treatment, admission to hospital, or vascular surgery, or amputation is required [39, 40]. In India, annual mean expenditure by patients on diabetes care is estimated to be $227 in urban areas and $142 in rural areas [41, 42]. Importantly, the low-income group spends nearly 25–35% of their annual income on diabetes care [43]. Annual direct and indirect costs of diabetes care were estimated to be $31.9 billion in 2010 for India [44]. Because of the high economic burden on the patients and their families, people tend to neglect health care, causing severe morbidities and early mortality [40].

Status of Management of Diabetes Mellitus in Asia

Management of diabetes is complex and includes detection, control, and prevention of complications of diabetes [45]. Sufficient evidence is available from research that early detection and appropriate management of diabetes—regular monitoring of cardiac risk factors, screening of complications, and pharmacological treatment of glycemia, blood pressure, and cholesterol and lifestyle modifications including tobacco cessation—reduce complications and deaths and improve quality of life [46–49].

The degree to which diabetes is detected and appropriately managed varies widely not just between countries but

also within different regions within countries. In this section, we will summarize the status of diabetes management in Asia.

Screening/Diagnosis of Diabetes

High prevalence [50], long latent asymptomatic period [51], availability of validated screening tools [52]and effective treatment [47] makes DM a good candidate for screening. Greater than 50% of the persons with diabetes have no symptoms and therefore remain undetected unless actively screened for diabetes [51]. IDF recommends opportunistic screening of high risk individuals in resource poor settings. [53] IDF also suggests that the diagnosis of diabetes should preferably be based on fasting plasma glucose but capillary glucose or even glycosuria may be used for diagnosis if the blood testing facilities are not available [50]. Comprehensive diagnostics including glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) measurement and classification of type of diabetes can be made if higher resources are available. Asia has the largest number of adults with undetected diabetes [50]. The average lag between onset and diagnosis is seven years for diabetes [54–56]. In most Asian countries, a comprehensive plan for detection and management of diabetes either does not exist or is only partially implemented (Table 16.1). Initiatives in the past decade in countries like India (National Program For Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Disease and Stroke [NPCDCS]) [57], Bangladesh (Primary Prevention of Diabetes Mellitus and Non-Communicable Disease [PPDM and NCD's Program]) [58] and Malaysia (national strategic plan for NCDS [NSPNCD]) [59]have resulted in high risk screening at health facilities and communities. Recently, the National Health Mission, India has decided to implement universal screening of all adults ≥ 30 years every three years in 100 districts in India. [60] These initiatives are yet to be scaled up nationally and yet to be evaluated for their cost-effectiveness, and impact at the population level.

Drug Therapy

The most common diabetes prescription in Asia is use of single drugs [61, 62] with recent trend of higher use of combination therapy [63, 64]. Metformin or first generation sulfonylureas [61, 62] are the most commonly used category of drug in both monotherapy and in combination therapy. Thiazolidinediones and Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors use is common in high income countries such as Japan [64]. Though high cost of drug precludes use in low and middle income countries, [61] the use of DPP-4 inhibitors is becoming common in urban centers of LMICs. Insulin use was varied depending on setting and severity of diabetes. Evaluation of Taiwan's National Health Insurance Research Database found the use of insulin to be 7.3% and 8.3% in mono and combination therapy. [63] A large study involving 20554 diabetes patients from India reported use of insulin to be 18% (either alone or with oral hypoglycemic drugs) [65].

Diabetes Complications and Comorbidities

Diabetes patients in Asia are at higher risk of microvascular diabetic complications, in particular nephropathy, compared to the West [66, 67]. Microalbuminuria Prevalence (MAP) survey [68] had recruited 6801 type 2 diabetes patients with hypertension from 103 centers (both primary specialist centers) in 10 Asian countries during 2005. This study found that prevalence of microalbuminuria and macroalbuminuria were 39.8% and 18.8%, respectively. This is alarmingly high compared to the studies done in Western countries, where the prevalence of microalbuminuria ranged from 17% to 21%. However, the prevalence of albuminuria was highly variable within Asian countries [68]. Additionally, an evaluation of diabetes registry of 28,110 diabetes patients registered between 2007 and 2012 from seven countries in Asia (China, Hong Kong, India, Korea, the Philippines, Vietnam, and Taiwan) found that patients with diabetic kidney disease had poorer control of glycemia and blood pressure. Further, less than half of the patients with kidney disease were prescribed renin-angiotensin system inhibitors [69]. As high blood pressure is an important predictor of both albuminuria and renal failure, the synergism with diabetes may prove detrimental [70].

Asian countries also have high prevalence of diabetic retinopathy. Diabetic retinopathy is one of the leading causes of preventable adult blindness in Asia [71]. The evaluation of Joint Asia Diabetes Evaluation (JADE) Program, an electronic registry of patients with diabetes from several Asian countries including Korea, Thailand, Hong Kong, Singapore, and India, found that 20.4% of type 2 diabetes patients had retinopathy [69]. In a population-based survey from rural China, 33.5% of the newly diagnosed diabetes patients had retinopathy [72]. In addition to inadequate control of glycemia and blood pressure [73], anemia also leads to the progression of diabetic retinopathy by aggravating hypoxia [74]. In South Asian countries, anemia is highly prevalent and may be contributing to higher occurrence of retinopathy [75].

Interestingly, risk of diabetic neuropathy is lower in Asians, specifically South Asians. The prevalence of neuropathy in Asian Indians was 4% compared to 13% in Caucasians in UK Prospective Diabetes Study [76]. Shorter height, low levels of smoking, and better skin microcirculation are possible explanation for this low prevalence [76].

Table 16.1 National policies, infrastructure, and expenditure for diabetes in major Asian countries

Country	20–79 population (in 1000s)	DM prevalence estimates (%) [50]	Undetected/ total DM estimates (%) [50]	National operational policy/strategy/action plan for diabetes or NCDs		Adoption of WHO's global monitoring framework [105]	Availability of medicines in primary care facilities [105]			Availability of basic technologies in primary care facilities [105]							Mean expenditure/ person with diabetes in USD [50]	Cost of diabetes covered by central funding/ national insurance [105]
				Exists? [105]	Implementation? [105]		Insulin	Metformin	Sulfonyl urea	Blood glucose	OGTT	HbA_1c	Dilated fundus exam	FVP	FVS	Urine strips[a]		
Afghanistan	14,291	6.6	51.4	No		NA	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	106.2	NA
Bangladesh	95,947	7.4	31.3	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	51.0	<50%
China	1,037,644	10.6	48.4	Yes	Partial	NA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	466.0	50–80%
India	798,988	8.7	45.9	Yes	Partial	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	No	No	94.9	<50%
Indonesia	161,572	6.2	46.2	No		NA	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	171.1	<50%
Iran	54,220	8.5	47.7	Yes	Yes	NA	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	636.0	50–80%
Iraq	17,517	7.2	48.6	Yes	Partial	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	549.6	<50%
Japan	94,519	7.6	49.5	Yes	Partial	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	4085.0	50–80%
Jordan	4100	9.1	47.8	Yes	Partial	NA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	563.1	<50%
Malaysia	19,887	16.6	31.4	Yes	Partial	NA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	565.8	<50%
Nepal	15,750	3.3	56.6	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	68.5	<50%
Pakistan	102,252	6.9	47.6	No		No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	61.5	<50%
The Philippines	57,807	6.1	50.0	Yes	Partial	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	204.2	<50%
Saudi Arabia	19,847	17.6	42.5	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	1145.3	<50%
Singapore	4242	12.8	45.3	Yes	Partial	NA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	2933.0	50–80%
South Korea	38,585	8.7	46.4	Yes	NA	NA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	2294.2	NA
Sri Lanka	13,724	8.5	47.4	Yes	Partial	NA	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	144.6	<50%
Syria	9371	7.0	66.2	No	Partial	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	76.4	<50%
Thailand	50,091	8.0	42.5	Yes	Partial	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	350.7	> 80%
Vietnam	63,021	5.6	51.9	Yes	NA	NA	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	162.7	NA

Notes: Abbreviations—*DM* diabetes mellitus, *NCDs* noncommunicable diseases, *OGTT* oral glucose tolerance test, *HbA_1c* glycated hemoglobin, *FVP* foot vibration perception by tuning fork, *FVS* foot vascular status by Doppler, *USD* US dollars, *NA* no information available, *WHO* World Health Organization

[a]Urine strips for glucose and ketone measurement

However, screening of neuropathy and its management is sub-optimal in South Asia [77]. The rate of foot examination varied between 1.9 and 64% [73]. Physicians considered diagnosis of and treatment of diabetes neuropathy a low priority [78].

Cardiovascular diseases (CVDs) occur at younger ages and lower BMI among Asians [79] and are accelerated in people with diabetes [80]. Among immigrant South Asians in the United Kingdom, certain characteristics such as an earlier disease onset, higher levels of homocysteine, insulin resistance, and low-grade inflammation were responsible for higher cardiovascular diseases [81]. In addition to higher susceptibility, inadequate management of the cardiac risk factors among persons with diabetes leads to a worsening of the situation. DECODA study conducted among Japanese and Indian cohorts with a follow-up period between 5 and 10 years (mean 5.9 years) estimated a hazard ratio of 3.42 (2.23–5.23) for CVD in screened diabetic individuals [82]. It is also worth noting that 78% of all mortality in people with diabetes in this study was associated with either higher blood pressure or raised lipid profiles or both [82].

The bidirectional relationship between diabetes and tuberculosis [83] is a matter of particular concern in Asia as tuberculosis is still a major public health problem in most Asian countries [84]. Diabetes not only weakens the immune system increasing the tuberculosis risk but also leads to higher risk of poor outcomes in tuberculosis. On the other hand, tuberculosis predisposes individuals to impaired glucose tolerance, and antituberculosis drugs such as rifampicin interfere with glucose control. Depression is an under-recognized comorbidity of diabetes [85]. While diabetes increases the risk of depression [86–89], depression affects self-care, compliance to medication, and overall quality of life in diabetes [90]. Depression in individuals with diabetes varied from 15.2% in Malaysia [89] to 47.5% in Iran [91] in Asia.

The literature on diabetes complications in Asia is scarce except for isolated studies from countries such as Japan, China, and India. This precludes comprehensive understanding of the situation of diabetes complications and the reasons for their high occurrence in this region. Early onset of diabetes, long duration with undiagnosed/untreated disease, and presence of comorbidities such as hypertension are possibly the main reasons for Asian patients with diabetes living longer with complications [92–98].

Quality of Care

A review of quality of diabetes care in low- and middle-income countries in Asia found limited information on processes of care (screening of complications and monitoring of risk factors) and outcomes (risk factor control) in Asian countries [73, 99]. The reports on diabetes care processes and outcomes have increased in recent years but are mostly from single, specialist clinics. However, few countries such as Thailand, China, Malaysia, and the Philippines have assessed diabetes outcomes at national level. Further, available limited information suggested unacceptable levels of diabetes care processes and poor control of diabetes in the region [73].

Diabcare-Asia, a multi-country study, provides better insight into the status of diabetes control in select countries from Asia. These studies used standardized protocols to conduct clinic audits of diabetes care [100, 101]. There were two rounds of Diabcare-Asia studies till date. In the first study [100], during 1998, the study recruited a total of 24,317 participants from 230 clinics in Bangladesh, China, India, Indonesia, Korea, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore, Sri Lanka, Taiwan, Thailand, and Vietnam. The clinics were either specialist or referral diabetes clinics except in Singapore where primary health-care clinics were also included. About 95% of recruited participants had type 2 diabetes, average age was 57.7 ± 12.2 years, and duration of diabetes was 9.2 ± 6.8 years. The mean body mass index (BMI) of those who were greater than 18 years of age was 24.4 ± 4.0 kg/m^2. Overall, the study found that the average glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) was 8.6% (± 2.0), and 55% had poor diabetes control (HbA1c ≥ 8%). Further, diabetes complication rates were also high—39% had urine albumin >20 mg/L, 21% had retinopathy, and 34% had neuropathy. The second wave of Diabcare-Asia [101] was conducted during 2003 in 182 centers in China, Indonesia, Korea, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore, Taiwan, Thailand, and Vietnam to measure trends in the diabetes care. The demographic profile was remarkably similar in both studies, and the repeat survey found little difference in the diabetes control and complications compared to the previous one, showing no improvement in diabetes control with time.

In the 2005, International Diabetes Federation management practice study (IDMPS) [102] had collected data on diabetes quality of care in a standardized method from Asia, Eastern Europe, and Latin America. A total of 5888 (Type 1512 and type 25,376) diabetes patients were recruited from Asian countries—Korea, China, Indonesia, India, Hong Kong, Taiwan, Malaysia, and Thailand. The mean HbA1c in Asia was 8.6 ± 2.1% and 7.7 ± 1.7% in type 1 and type 2 diabetes, respectively. These rates were similar across the region. Though IDMPS reported lower HbA1c levels in type 2 diabetes, this needs to be interpreted cautiously as the values were from non-standardized laboratory reports. Further, insulin initiation and its sustained use were below par, and self-management was not optimum in most parts of Asia.

To summarize, there is incomplete reporting of diabetes quality indicators from Asian countries. Available data suggest inadequate risk factor control and lack of monitoring of diabetes and its complications.

Challenges for Diabetes Management in Asia

Being the continent with largest number individuals with diabetes, Asian countries face major challenges in prevention, detection, and management of diabetes. While many constraints are similar to those faced by the rest of the world, Asian countries have unique challenges due to cultural practices, which also vary widely between and within countries [2]. In this section, we will elaborate on some of the challenges.

Health Systems

Table 16.1 summarizes the burden of, and existing policies and infrastructure for, diabetes management in major Asian countries [103–106]. In most Asian countries, a national framework for diabetes or noncommunicable diseases either does not exist or is only partially implemented [104, 105]. The World Health Organization (WHO) has created a global monitoring framework to measure prevention and control of NCDs, consisting of 9 global targets and 25 indicators in 2011. Only six Asian countries have adopted the framework to monitor NCDs in their countries [105].

Most Asian countries consist of mixed health-care system consisting of public-funded (either completely or partly free) and private sector (out-of-pocket expenditures) institutions. As described in Table 16.1, the extent of public funding varies in different countries, and only one country, Thailand, covers >80% expenditure of diabetes [105]. Though most countries are providing diabetes care at primary health-care centers, access to diabetes care is disproportionally available in urban areas compared to rural areas [105]. The primary health-care system lacks human resources (e.g., India, the Philippines) and facilities for basic diabetes monitoring and screening of diabetes complication [104]. Poor availability of insulin has resulted in delayed insulin therapy [104]. Government funds or national insurance covers only fraction of cost of diabetes in most countries, except in Japan, Thailand, Singapore, and China [105].

Physician-Level Factors

Physician adherence to diabetes care processes in Asian countries is sub-optimal [73, 99]. In addition to the system-level factors such as lack of infrastructure and coordinated care and high health-care costs, many physician-level factors contribute to this. Physician inertia, that is, failure to intensify treatment when required, is the most important physician-level barrier across the world [63]. The use of diabetes management guidelines is highly variable and inconsistent in most Asian countries [107, 108]. Most Asian countries have a hierarchical health-care system where physician makes decision for patients and patient engagement in their care is low [109]. Several reasons have been reported in literature for this lack of adherence to guidelines. Firstly, primary care physicians or general practitioners are inadequately trained in diabetes management guidelines [108]. Physicians in Malaysia expressed lack of confidence in starting insulin and were not familiar with various insulin regimens and devices [110]. Secondly, most Asian countries lack country-specific diabetes management guidelines [107]. Physicians showed less interest in international guidelines as they thought these were not applicable or practical in local settings [107]. Thirdly, physicians in Asian countries, such as China and India, have exceptionally high workload, which reduces the time available to spend with their patients [107, 108, 111]. Therefore, physicians are less likely to provide lifestyle advice or support [107]. Fourthly, communication skills are not commonly taught during physicians' training in Asian countries. Therefore, the physician-patient communication depends only on physician's innate ability and/or experiences through their practice [111, 112]. Fifthly, physicians often delayed initiation of insulin due to fear of hypoglycemia and concerns about patient's compliance [112]. Finally, physicians, specifically private practitioners, feared losing patients to another doctor who may convince patient that insulin is not required [110].

Patient-Level Factors (Including Gender and Cultural Issues)

Lack of awareness, limited access, and affordability are the major patient-level barriers for diabetes management in Asia. Family plays very influential role in day-to-day life in Asia and can act both as a barrier and facilitator [113, 114]. In Asia, men are also at an advantage since they receive support from their spouses for managing diabetes, since the cultural dictate is that women should first take care of their husbands and only then look after themselves [115]. Lack of social support may thus result in decreased psychological well-being and higher complication rates in females compared to males [116].

The influence of culture is probably stronger in Asia than elsewhere. Kelleher and Islam report that migrant Bangladeshis who were diabetic were reluctant to make dietary adjustments especially with regard to limiting rice in their diet [117]. In Buddhist Thailand, the idea of moderation favored dietary modification, but preference for rice in diet acted as a hindrance at the same time [118]. Further, strong followers of Buddhist values had better self-care and higher frequency of physician visits [119]. Patients with diabetes from Parsi community find it hard to regulate sugar levels as they frequently took part in ceremonies where sugar- and fat-

rich diets were being served [120]. Honey and dates were perceived as highly beneficial by Muslim community, and their inclusion in diet is known to have a negative impact on sugar levels [121]. In some cultures, people were reluctant to cut down fat and sugar in their diet citing that all happens by the will of God and dietary changes do not have any role in disease management [122]. Fasting for religious and cultural reasons is a real challenge for care providers and subjects [123, 124]. Fasting imposes a need to tweak drug dose to prevent hypoglycemia in diabetic individuals [123, 124].

Low levels of physical activity have been observed in Asian populations which is linked to the societal roles and norms in Asia. Men, being responsible for looking after their family affairs, were working extra hours and consequently were unable to spare time for physical activity [125]. Women on the other hand were confined to household chores with few visits outside home [125]. Women also find it difficult to perform regular exercises due to absence of appropriate amenities [114, 126]. In India, women perceived household activities with physical activity as adequate which however was not the case [127]. Also, walking was the most preferred mode of exercise by women. Physical activity seemed to be better in families where the male members were more supportive of physical activity [128]. Physical activities in females were particularly limited by societal norms in Asia. The limited time spent on leisure and physical activity among Asians has resulted in poor glycemic control.

Additionally, diabetes is viewed as stigmatizing, and this leads to delayed initiation and limited overt use of insulin [129]. As women were more stigmatized, they were less likely to follow self-management practices, finally ending up with poor glycemic regulation [130]. Concerns about the toxicity of drugs were the main reason for non-usage, and multiple drug use was generally abhorred [129]. Patients with diabetes are misguided by friends and relatives not to start insulin as they perceive it to cause weight gain or as a mark of severe form of diabetes [112].

Use of Complementary and Alternate Medicines (CAM)

Asian countries have plethora of traditional medicine with strong linkage to culture [131–133]. These traditional medicines are used either as alternative or complementary to modern methods of diabetes treatment.

Most commonly followed for diabetes management are prayer, massaging, hot tub therapy, biofeedback, yoga, and various herbal therapies [134]. Yoga is widely practiced in Asian countries with Hindu or Buddhist traditions. Studies show that yoga has beneficial effect on the glycemic levels [135, 136]. Yoga along with diet and drugs is suggested to be more effective in diabetes management [136]. Yogic practices have been shown to improve insulin response and lipid profile in several studies [137]. Adjunct Integrated Naturopathy and Yoga (INY) that laid emphasis on the role of diet and physical exercise was associated with a significant beneficial effect on glycemic control and reduced the overall need for antidiabetic medications. In India, other alternative medicines include folk medicines, Ayurveda, Unani, and Siddha for diabetes treatment [138].

Traditional Chinese treatments to manage diabetes include acupuncture, herbal medicine [139], and ginseng [140]. Indigenous medicines generally consist of plant products, minerals, or other biological products [133]. A review identified 86 antidiabetic medicines of indigenous origin, 82 were manufactured from plants, and the rest were obtained from animals or insects in China alone [141]. Spices and vegetables were also part of traditional medicines. In Sri Lanka, both Ayurveda and traditional medicines were used to manage diabetes. In a study from Sri Lanka, 76% diabetes patients used alternative medicine, with bitter gourd, ivy gourd, and crepe ginger being extremely popular [142]. Alternative medicines were also used in diabetes management in hope of obtaining a sense of relief and to counter adverse effects of modern medicine.

The issues mainly seen from studies on alternative medicine use in diabetes were under reporting of use of CAM and low adherence to modern medications [143, 144]. Alternative medicine use was found to negatively affect adherence to diabetic drugs. For instance, an Indonesian study found sixfold reduction in adherence to diabetes medication [145].

Diabetes Care Models

Approach for Diabetes Care Models

To combat the escalating burden of DM requires both successful prevention efforts and better disease management. Robust evidence from systematic reviews and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials (RCTs) has shown that lifestyle modification or glucose-lowering medications can prevent or delay diabetes in high-risk individuals. And, among those with diabetes, good control of risk factors (glucose, blood pressure, and lipids), avoiding tobacco use, and use of cardioprotective medications (e.g., aspirin, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors) [146–149] can substantially reduce the risk and severity of the main diabetes complications. Further, it is well established that multiple risk factor control has the greatest benefits for patients with type 2 DM [150–152]. However, many people living with diabetes in Asian countries are not receiving the care needed to support optimal risk factor control. Diabetes patients in Asian countries receive recommended care only about 20–30% of the time and achieve the recommended targets for glycemia,

blood pressure, and cholesterol less than 10% of the time [23, 153]. Below, we describe the various approaches/models used to improve diabetes care delivery. Most of these reports support the successful delivery of care models in project mode; however scale-up of these models to programmatic delivery is yet to be demonstrated.

(a) *Training health-care providers*: The step-by-step foot program initiated in India [154, 155] focused on preventing lower limb complications in diabetes patients by intensively training physicians and nurses in the use of an algorithm for management of diabetic feet [156]. Training consisted of lectures, practical demonstrations, problem-solving exercises, and hands-on experiences. Three years after program implementation, the percentage of patients with diabetic foot ulcers/complications fell from 24% to 8%, and the amputation rate fell from 22% to 10% [157]. Large-scale capacity building initiatives [158] have trained a large number of primary care physicians, diabetes counselors, and other care providers in India. Examples include certified courses on evidence-based diabetes management, certificate course on diabetes retinopathy, and others (see www.ccebdm.org). But data is not yet available on impact of program at the patient level.

(b) *Peer for progress model (task shifting)*: Several studies and programs have relied on peers (nonprofessionals familiar with diabetes management), instead of health-care providers, to assist with diabetes case management and long-term self-care of diabetes patients with an aim to reduce cost of care. The short-term impact of these "peers for progress" models on risk factor control has been evaluated across several countries (including Thailand). In these programs, peer supporters received training to address the issues of diet, exercise, coping with stress, and diabetes self-management and were assigned a group of patients [10–20] with whom they met regularly. Participants showed significant reduction in weight and blood pressure and mean glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) [159].

(c) *Multifactorial intervention (integrated care model)*: Increasingly, programs that combine several care delivery components are being implemented and evaluated to improve diabetes care delivery. For example, the Centre for Cardiometabolic Risk Reduction in South Asia (CARRS) Translation Trial tested the clinical effectiveness of a low-cost multicomponent quality improvement (QI) diabetes care model in South Asia [160]. Poorly controlled, type 2 DM patients ($n = 1146$) were assigned to usual care or a multicomponent QI strategy consisting of non-physician care coordinators (to improve patients' adherence to therapy) and electronic health records with decision support software (to enhance physicians' responsiveness). The intervention focused on improving patient self-care and facilitating better monitoring and treatment intensification by providers. At a median follow-up of 2.5 years, twice as many patients in the intervention arm compared to usual care participants (17.7% vs. 7.5%; $p < 0.001$) achieved the primary outcome of multiple risk factor control (HbA1c < 7% and either blood pressure < 130/80 mmHg or LDLc <100 mg/dl), and intervention participants reported significantly higher quality of life and treatment satisfaction [161].

In another randomized control trial of 150 patients with diabetes in Shanghai, China, an integrated intervention program consisting of in-depth diabetes education focused on frequent clinic visits and blood glucose monitoring, nutrition counseling, and meal plans (intervention group) was compared to basic diabetes education (control group). At 3 months of follow-up, the intervention group had significantly lowered their fasting blood glucose, systolic and diastolic blood pressures, HbA1c, and waist-to-hip ratio relative to the control group [162].

Diabetes prevention and care model in rural India: *The Chunampet Rural Diabetes Prevention Project* was implemented in rural parts of South India to provide comprehensive diabetes care and promote diabetes prevention through the use of telemedicine [163]. This project used a mobile health-care van equipped with a digital retinal camera, electrocardiography (ECG), Doppler, biothesiometry, and a satellite to communicate with an urban diabetes care center to screen for diabetes complications. Village health workers, trained individuals with high school qualifications, screened for diabetes complications. This program screened 86.5% of the adult population in and around the 42 villages of Chunampet and identified 1138 individuals with diabetes and 3410 with prediabetes. The mean HbA1c levels among individuals with diabetes in the community decreased from 9.3 ± 2.6% to 8.5 ± 2.4% within a year of implementing this project [164].

Diabetes Prevention Models

Prevention efforts are essential for curbing the diabetes epidemic. However, models for diabetes prevention in Asian countries are limited or partially implemented. Lifestyle changes have been shown to have significant and sustained benefits for individuals at high risk for diabetes in Western countries. The data on diabetes prevention in Asian countries is limited compared to high-income countries, but there is evidence of some successes. Early efforts in China and India focused on conducting large randomized controlled trials of lifestyle intervention for diabetes prevention among individuals with impaired glucose tolerance (IGT). Results from

both studies demonstrated major reductions in diabetes incidence among lifestyle intervention participants compared to controls (relative risk reduction, exercise alone, 41.1%; diet alone, 43.8%; and diet + exercise, 46% in the Da Qing IGT and Diabetes Study and 28.5% in the Indian Diabetes Prevention Program (IDPP)) [165–169]. These efficacy trials showed that diabetes prevention efforts were possible to implement with benefits in lower-resource settings.

More recent studies evaluated different strategies to overcome barriers to delivering lifestyle interventions, such as cost, access to at-risk individuals, and health provider shortages. For instance, the Indian Diabetes Prevention Program-3 randomized participants at ten worksites in India to receive either standard lifestyle advice (controls) or a lifestyle intervention delivered by mobile phones. This study reported a significant reduction in diabetes incidence among intervention participants compared with controls (hazard ratio 0.64, 95% confidence interval [CI] 0.45–0.92) [170]. These results showed that a lower-cost intervention could be beneficial for diabetes prevention and utilizing mobile phones may be a promising strategy for delivering lifestyle advice to hard-to-reach populations.

Other studies are testing the delivery of diabetes prevention to a broader at-risk population with the goal of preventing diabetes in the largest number of individuals. To date, the vast majority of prevention efforts have targeted adults at high risk for developing diabetes, but this conventional approach may not be sufficient for slowing the diabetes epidemic, particularly in populations (e.g., South Asians) which display a rapid conversion from prediabetes to diabetes. For example, the DIABRISK-SL [171] RCT in Sri Lanka aims to compare an intensive versus a less-intensive lifestyle change advice on the primary composite cardiometabolic endpoint, in at-risk urban residents aged between 5 and 40 years. Early results suggest a 26% (95% CI 7–28%) relative risk reduction in diabetes incidence among participants in the intensive lifestyle intervention compared to the less-intensive intervention [171].

Similarly, the Diabetes Community Lifestyle Improvement Program (D-CLIP) study [172], an RCT of diabetes prevention in individuals with any form of prediabetes (IGT, impaired fasting glucose or both), compared standard of care to a culturally tailored lifestyle education curriculum based on the DPP plus the stepwise addition of metformin when needed. Each lifestyle class was paired with a community volunteer peer educator, and participants were divided into peer support groups to increase social support for a lifestyle change and improve the sustainability of the program. After 3 years of follow-up, the relative risk reduction for diabetes was 32% (95% CI 7–50) comparing lifestyle participants to controls [173].

Other studies have relied on trained peer educators to deliver diabetes prevention messages as a way to lower the cost of diabetes prevention. Studies in Thailand [174, 175] reported improvements in health promotion behaviors, diabetes risk factors (markers of adiposity, blood pressure), and diabetes prevention knowledge among individuals who participated in peer-led prediabetes screening or diabetes prevention programs. These results are consistent with the findings from a meta-analysis of translational trials of the DPP in the United States, which found that lay educators can be as effective as health professionals in delivering healthy lifestyle messages [176].

Finally, there is an urgent need to identify and implement cost-effective ways to screen individuals at risk of developing diabetes and its complications. Existing screening tools like oral glucose tolerance tests or glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) testing can be expensive or unavailable due to lack of necessary testing equipment or reagents in low-resource settings. Diabetes risk scores (e.g., the Indian Diabetes Risk Score [177]) have been shown to be effective and cost-effective tools for screening. However, much of the evidence only supports the successful delivery of these prevention and care models in project mode, and we need a multi-sectoral approach to scale up the successful prevention and care models to programmatic delivery or adoption of some these care models by national programs or at the state level in Asian countries.

Points to Remember

- Asia has 60% of the world's population with diabetes and the largest number of adults with undetected diabetes.
- Diabetes in Asia occurs at younger ages and lower body mass indices.
- Diabetes management guidelines usage is highly variable and inconsistent in most Asian countries.
- Comprehensive diabetes management in Asia should address number of patient, physician, and health system-level barriers.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following diabetes complication is less prevalent in South Asian population?
   (a) Foot ulcers
   (b) Neuropathy
   (c) Nephropathy
   (d) Cardiovascular diseases
   (e) Hearing impairment
2. The source of data for Joint Asia Diabetes Evaluation (JADE) program was
   (a) Risk Factor Survey

(b) Surveillance data
(c) Clinical registry
(d) Household survey
(e) None of the above

3. According to International Diabetes Federation Atlas report (2015), which country is the highest per capita mean spender on diabetes in Asia?
   (a) Singapore
   (b) Saudi Arabia
   (c) China
   (d) Japan
   (e) India
4. The Asian countries that have adopted World Health Organization's NCD monitoring framework at national level are
   (a) Bangladesh
   (b) India
   (c) Iraq
   (d) Japan
   (e) All of the above
5. The greatest challenge of diabetes management during prolonged religious fasting is
   (a) Hypoglycemia
   (b) Hyperglycemia
   (c) Dyslipidemia
   (d) Electrolyte imbalance
   (e) Hypercalcemia
6. The average lag between the onset and detection of diabetes in Asia is
   (a) 5 years
   (b) 12 years
   (c) 15 years
   (d) 7 years
   (e) 2 years
7. The unique feature of diabetes epidemic in Asia
   (a) Occurs in younger age
   (b) Occurs at older age
   (c) Is prevalent in low body mass index individuals
   (d) Both a and c
8. Poor glycemic control observed in Asia is due to
   (a) Low physical activity level
   (b) Delayed insulin initiation and sustained use
   (c) Alternative treatment
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None
9. Which among the following method is an easily usable and cost-effective screening tool in low-resource settings?
   (a) HbA1C
   (b) OGTT
   (c) FPG
   (d) RPG
   (e) Diabetes risk scores
10. The delayed use of insulin in Asian countries is due to
    (a) Poor availability
    (b) Fear of hypoglycemia
    (c) Concern about compliance
    (d) Lack of familiarity with insulin regimens
    (e) All of the above
11. An under-recognized comorbidity of diabetes in Asia is
    (a) Depression
    (b) Tuberculosis
    (c) Alzheimer's disease
    (d) Arthritis

Correct Answers

1. (b) Neuropathy
2. (c) Clinical registry
3. (d) Japan
4. (e) All of the above
5. (a) Hypoglycemia
6. (d) 7 years
7. (d) Both a and c
8. (d) All of the above
9. (e) Diabetes risk scores
10. (e) All of the above
11. (a) Depression

Glossary

BMI Body mass index
CAM Complementary and alternate medicines
CARRS Centre for Cardiometabolic Risk Reduction in South Asia Translation Trial
D-CLIP Diabetes Community Lifestyle Improvement Program
DM Diabetes mellitus
DPP Diabetes Prevention Program
DPP-4 Dipeptidyl peptidase-4
ECG Electrocardiography
FVP Foot vibration perception by tuning fork
FVS Foot vascular status by Doppler
HbA1c Glycated hemoglobin
IDF International Diabetes Federation
IDMPS International Diabetes Management Practice Study
IDPP Indian Diabetes Prevention Program
IGT Impaired glucose tolerance
INR Indian rupee
INY Integrated naturopathy and yoga
JADE Joint Asia Diabetes Evaluation Program
LADA Latent autoimmune diabetes in adults
LDLc Low-density lipoprotein cholesterol
LMIC Low- and middle-income countries

MAPS Microalbuminuria Prevalence survey
NA No information available
NCD Noncommunicable disease
NPCDCS National Program for Prevention and Control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular Disease and Stroke
NSPNCD National Strategic Plan for NCDS
OGTT Oral glucose tolerance test
PPDM Primary prevention of diabetes mellitus
QI Quality improvement
RCT Randomized controlled trials
SEA Southeast Asia
T1DM Type 1 diabetes mellitus
T2DM Type 2 diabetes mellitus
USD US dollars
WHO World Health Organization

References

1. Asia. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Asia. Accessed 23 Mar 2017.
2. Misra A, Tandon N, Ebrahim S, Sattar N, Alam D, Shrivastava U, et al. Diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and chronic kidney disease in South Asia: current status and future directions. BMJ. 2017;357:j1420.
3. Sharma V, Kumar V. Diabetes in Asia. Lancet. 2010;375(9719):982.
4. Ramachandran A, Ma RC, Snehalatha C. Diabetes in Asia. Lancet. 2010;375(9712):408–18.
5. IDF diabetes atlas. 7th ed. http://www.diabetesatlas.org/atlas/atlas.html. Accessed 15 Mar 2017.
6. Nanditha A, Ma RC, Ramachandran A, Snehalatha C, Chan JC, Chia KS, et al. Diabetes in Asia and the Pacific: implications for the global epidemic. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(3):472–85.
7. Binns C, Low WY. Diabetes in the Asia Pacific region. Asia Pac J Public Health. 2016;28(6):472–4.
8. Low LC. The epidemic of type 2 diabetes mellitus in the Asia-Pacific region. Pediatr Diabetes. 2010;11(4):212–5.
9. Zhu HQ, Yang WY. Prevalence of diabetes in Asia-current status and future. Zhonghua Liu Xing Bing Xue Za Zhi. 2011;32(11):1065–7.
10. Hayashino Y, Fukuhara S. Diabetes in Asia. Lancet. 2010;375(9719):981–2.
11. Viswanathan V, Sathyamurthy S. Global increase in the prevalence of diabetes with special reference to the Middle East and Asia. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2015;17(10):676–8.
12. Ramachandran A, Snehalatha C, Ma RC. Diabetes in South-East Asia: an update. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;103(2):231–7.
13. Chakraborty C, Das S. Dynamics of diabetes and obesity: an alarming situation in the developing countries in Asia. Mini Rev Med Chem. 2016;16(15):1258–68.
14. Praveen PA, Kumar SR, Tandon N. Type 2 diabetes in youth in South Asia. Curr Diab Rep. 2015;15(2):571.
15. Chan JC, Malik V, Jia W, Kadowaki T, Yajnik CS, Yoon KH, et al. Diabetes in Asia: epidemiology, risk factors, and pathophysiology. JAMA. 2009;301(20):2129–40.
16. Guglielmi C, Palermo A, Pozzilli P. Latent autoimmune diabetes in the adults (LADA) in Asia: from pathogenesis and epidemiology to therapy. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2012;28(Suppl 2):40–6.
17. Kesavadev J, Sadikot SM, Saboo B, Shrestha D, Jawad F, Azad K, et al. Challenges in type 1 diabetes management in South East Asia: descriptive situational assessment. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2014;18(5):600–7.
18. Zhang Y, Ning G. Diabetes: young-onset type 2 diabetes mellitus-a challenge for Asia. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2014;10(12):703–4.
19. Tandon N, Garg MK, Singh Y, Marwaha RK. Prevalence of metabolic syndrome among urban Indian adolescents and its relation with insulin resistance (HOMA-IR). J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab. 2013;26(11–12):1123–30.
20. Singh Y, Garg MK, Tandon N, Marwaha RK. A study of insulin resistance by HOMA-IR and its cut-off value to identify metabolic syndrome in urban Indian adolescents. J Clin Res Pediatr Endocrinol. 2013;5(4):245–51.
21. Marwaha RK, Tandon N, Singh Y, Aggarwal R, Grewal K, Mani K. A study of growth parameters and prevalence of overweight and obesity in school children from Delhi. Indian Pediatr. 2006;43(11):943–52.
22. Praveen PA, Madhu SV, Mohan V, Das S, Kakati S, Shah N, et al. Registry of youth onset diabetes in India (YDR): rationale, recruitment, and current status. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2016;10(5):1034–41.
23. Anjana RM, Shanthi Rani CS, Deepa M, Pradeepa R, Sudha V, Divya Nair H, et al. Incidence of diabetes and prediabetes and predictors of progression among Asian Indians: 10-year follow-up of the Chennai Urban Rural Epidemiology Study (CURES). Diabetes Care. 2015;38(8):1441–8.
24. Deepa M, Grace M, Binukumar B, Pradeepa R, Roopa S, Khan HM, et al. High burden of prediabetes and diabetes in three large cities in South Asia: the Center for cArdio-metabolic Risk Reduction in South Asia (CARRS) Study. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2015;110(2):172–82.
25. Cheema A, Adeloye D, Sidhu S, Sridhar D, Chan KY. Urbanization and prevalence of type 2 diabetes in southern Asia: a systematic analysis. J Glob Health. 2014;4(1):010404.
26. Ranasinghe P, Jayawardena R, Katulanda P. Diabetes mellitus in South Asia: scientific evaluation of the research output. J Diabetes. 2013;5(1):34–42.
27. Jayawardena R, Ranasinghe P, Byrne NM, Soares MJ, Katulanda P, Hills AP. Prevalence and trends of the diabetes epidemic in South Asia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Public Health. 2012;12:380.
28. Ramachandran A. Epidemiology of diabetes in India--three decades of research. J Assoc Physicians India. 2005;53:34–8.
29. Ramachandran A, Mary S, Yamuna A, Murugesan N, Snehalatha C. High prevalence of diabetes and cardiovascular risk factors associated with urbanization in India. Diabetes Care. 2008;31(5):893–8.
30. Anjana RM, Deepa M, Pradeepa R, Mahanta J, Narain K, Das HK, et al. Prevalence of diabetes and prediabetes in 15 states of India: results from the ICMR-INDIAB population-based cross-sectional study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017;5:585.
31. Sayeed MA, Hussain MZ, Banu A, Rumi MA, Azad Khan AK. Prevalence of diabetes in a suburban population of Bangladesh. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 1997;34(3):149–55.
32. Park Y, Lee H, Koh CS, Min H, Yoo K, Kim Y, et al. Prevalence of diabetes and IGT in Yonchon County, South Korea. Diabetes Care. 1995;18(4):545–8.
33. Sutanegara D, Budhiarta AA. The epidemiology and management of diabetes mellitus in Indonesia. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2000;50(Suppl 2):S9–S16.
34. Zaini A. Where is Malaysia in the midst of the Asian epidemic of diabetes mellitus? Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2000;50(Suppl 2):S23–8.
35. Aekplakorn W, Abbott-Klafter J, Premgamone A, Dhanamun B, Chaikittiporn C, Chongsuvivatwong V, et al. Prevalence and management of diabetes and associated risk factors by regions of Thailand: third national health examination survey 2004. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(8):2007–12.

36. Baltazar JC, Ancheta CA, Aban IB, Fernando RE, Baquilod MM. Prevalence and correlates of diabetes mellitus and impaired glucose tolerance among adults in Luzon. Philippines Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2004;64(2):107–15.
37. King H, Keuky L, Seng S, Khun T, Roglic G, Pinget M. Diabetes and associated disorders in Cambodia: two epidemiological surveys. Lancet. 2005;366(9497):1633–9.
38. Quoc PS, Charles MA, Cuong NH, Lieu LH, Tuan NA, Thomas M, et al. Blood glucose distribution and prevalence of diabetes in Hanoi (Vietnam). Am J Epidemiol. 1994;139(7):713–22.
39. Png ME, Yoong J, Phan TP, Wee HL. Current and future economic burden of diabetes among working-age adults in Asia: conservative estimates for Singapore from 2010–2050. BMC Public Health. 2016;16:153.
40. Ramachandran A, Ramachandran S, Snehalatha C, Augustine C, Murugesan N, Viswanathan V, et al. Increasing expenditure on health care incurred by diabetic subjects in a developing country: a study from India. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(2):252–6.
41. Diabetes: the cost of diabetes in India. Health Adm. 2009;XXII:110–2.
42. Kumar A, Nagpal J, Bhartia A. Direct cost of ambulatory care of type 2 diabetes in the middle and high income group populace of Delhi: the DEDICOM survey. J Assoc Physicians India. 2008;56:667–74.
43. Yesudian CA, Grepstad M, Visintin E, Ferrario A. The economic burden of diabetes in India: a review of the literature. Glob Health. 2014;10:80.
44. Akari S, Mateti UV, Kunduru BR. Health-care cost of diabetes in South India: a cost of illness study. J Res Pharm Pract. 2013;2(3):114–7.
45. Stellefson M, Dipnarine K, Stopka C. Peer reviewed: the chronic care model and diabetes management in US primary care settings: a systematic review. Prev Chronic Dis. 2013;10:E26.
46. Group AC. Intensive blood glucose control and vascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;2008(358):2560–72.
47. Group UPDS. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). Lancet. 1998;352(9131):837–53.
48. Group UPDS. Tight blood pressure control and risk of macrovascular and microvascular complications in type 2 diabetes: UKPDS 38. BMJ. 1998;317:703–13.
49. Group HPSC. MRC/BHF Heart Protection Study of cholesterol-lowering with simvastatin in 5963 people with diabetes: a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2003;361(9374):2005–16.
50. International Diabetes Federation, editor. IDF diabetes atlas. 7th ed. Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2015. p. 1–136.
51. Ambady R, Chamukuttan S. Early diagnosis and prevention of diabetes in developing countries. Rev Endocr Metab Disord. 2008;9(3):193.
52. Association AD. Screening for type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(suppl 1):s11–s4.
53. Mayor S. International diabetes federation consensus on prevention of type 2 diabetes. Int J Clin Pract. 2007;61(10):1773–5.
54. Bansal D, Boya C, Gudala K, Rambabu V, Bhansali A. Estimating the lag between onset and diagnosis of diabetes from the prevalence of diabetic retinopathy among Indian population. Int J Diabetol Vasc Dis Res. 2017;5(2):189–95.
55. Saudek CD, Herman WH, Sacks DB, Bergenstal RM, Edelman D, Davidson MB. A new look at screening and diagnosing diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol. 2008;93(7):2447–53.
56. Heine RJ, Mooy J. Impaired glucose tolerance and unidentified diabetes. Postgrad Med J. 1996;72(844):67–71.
57. Krishnan A, Gupta V, Ritvik BN, Thakur J. How to effectively monitor and evaluate NCD programmes in India. Indian J Community Med. 2011;36(Suppl 1):S57.
58. Diabetes Association of Bangladesh. Diabetes prevention programme. Available from: http://www.dab-bd.org/dpp.php.
59. Ministry of health Malaysia. National Strategic plan for non communicable diseases. In: Section NCD, editor. Putrajaya: Non-Communicable Disease Section (NCD) Disease Control Division Ministry of Health, Malaysia; 2010.
60. National Health Mission, Ministry of Health & Social Welfare India. Operational Guidelines. Prevention, screening and control of common non-communicable diseases. Hypertension, diabetes and common cancers (oral, breast, cervix). (Part of comprehensive primary health care). New Delhi: Government of India; 2017.
61. Venkataraman K, Kannan AT, Kalra OP, Gambhir JK, Sharma AK, Sundaram KR, et al. Diabetes self-efficacy strongly influences actual control of diabetes in patients attending a tertiary hospital in India. J Community Health. 2012;37(3):653–62.
62. Karim R, Saha R, Rahman MS, Nure A, Etu KA, Jamila U, et al. A survey of prescription pattern of anti-diabetic drugs on diabetic patients with cardiovascular complications within Dhaka metropolis. Int J Basic Clin Pharmacol. 2016;5(6):2397–402.
63. Huang L-Y, Yeh H-L, Yang M-C, Shau W-Y, Su S, Lai M-S. Therapeutic inertia and intensified treatment in diabetes mellitus prescription patterns: a nationwide population-based study in Taiwan. J Int Med Res. 2016;44(6):1263–71.
64. Oishi M, Yamazaki K, Okuguchi F, Sugimoto H, Kanatsuka A, Kashiwagi A. Changes in oral antidiabetic prescriptions and improved glycemic control during the years 2002–2011 in Japan (JDDM32). J Diabetes Invest. 2014;5(5):581–7.
65. Mohan V, Shah S, Saboo B. Current glycemic status and diabetes related complications among type 2 diabetes patients in India: data from the A1chieve study. J Assoc Physicians India. 2013;61(1 Suppl):12–5.
66. Ramachandran A, Snehalatha C, Shetty AS, Nanditha A. Trends in prevalence of diabetes in Asian countries. World J Diabetes. 2012;3(6):110–7.
67. Chowdhury TA, Lasker SS. Complications and cardiovascular risk factors in South Asians and Europeans with early-onset type 2 diabetes. QJM. 2002;95(4):241–6.
68. Wu AY, Kong NC, de Leon FA, Pan CY, Tai TY, Yeung VT, et al. An alarmingly high prevalence of diabetic nephropathy in Asian type 2 diabetic patients: the MicroAlbuminuria Prevalence (MAP) Study. Diabetologia. 2005;48(1):17–26.
69. Chan J, So W, Ko G, Tong P, Yang X, Ma R, et al. The Joint Asia Diabetes Evaluation (JADE) Program: a web-based program to translate evidence to clinical practice in type 2 diabetes. Diabet Med. 2009;26(7):693–9.
70. Yuyun MF, Khaw KT, Luben R, Welch A, Bingham S, Day NE, et al. Microalbuminuria, cardiovascular risk factors and cardiovascular morbidity in a British population: the EPIC-Norfolk population-based study. Eur J Cardiovasc Prev Rehabil. 2004;11:207–13.
71. Ting DSW, Cheung GCM, Wong TY. Diabetic retinopathy: global prevalence, major risk factors, screening practices and public health challenges: a review. Clin Exp Ophthalmol. 2016;44(4):260–77.
72. Wang FH, Liang YB, Peng XY, Wang JJ, Zhang F, Wei WB, et al. Risk factors for diabetic retinopathy in a rural Chinese population with type 2 diabetes: the Handan Eye Study. Acta Ophthalmol. 2011;89(4):e336–e43.
73. Shivashankar R, Kirk K, Kim WC, Rouse C, Tandon N, Narayan KV, et al. Quality of diabetes care in low-and middle-income Asian and Middle Eastern countries (1993–2012)–20-year systematic review. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2015;107(2):203–23.
74. Singh DK, Winocour P, Farrington K. Erythropoietic stress and anemia in diabetes mellitus. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2009;5(4):204–10.
75. Hosseini MS, Rostami Z, Saadat A, Saadatmand SM, Naeimi E. Anemia and microvascular complications in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Nephro Urol Mon. 2014;6(4):e19976.

76. Shah A, Kanaya AM. Diabetes and associated complications in the South Asian population. Curr Cardiol Rep. 2014;16(5):1–16.
77. D'Souza M, Kulkarni V, Bhaskaran U, Ahmed H, Naimish H, Prakash A, et al. Diabetic peripheral neuropathy and its determinants among patients attending a tertiary health care centre in Mangalore, India. J Public Health Res. 2015;4(2):450.
78. Malik RA, Aldinc E, Chan S-P, Deerochanawong C, Hwu C-M, Rosales RL, et al. Perceptions of painful diabetic peripheral neuropathy in South-East Asia: results from patient and physician surveys. Adv Ther. 2017;34:1–12.
79. Prabhakaran D, Jeemon P, Roy A. Cardiovascular diseases in India. Circulation. 2016;133(16):1605–20.
80. Ueshima H, Sekikawa A, Miura K, Turin TC, Takashima N, Kita Y, et al. Cardiovascular disease and risk factors in Asia. Circulation. 2008;118(25):2702–9.
81. Mukhopadhyay B, Sattar N, Fisher M. Diabetes and cardiac disease in South Asians. Br J Diabetes Vasc Dis. 2005;5:253–9.
82. Nakagami T, Qiao Q, Tuomilehto J, Balkau B, Tajima N, Hu G, et al. Screen-detected diabetes, hypertension and hypercholesterolemia as predictors of cardiovascular mortality in five populations of Asian origin: the DECODA study. Eur J Cardiovasc Prev Rehabil. 2005;13:555–61.
83. Baghaei P, Marjani M, Javanmard P, Tabarsi P, Masjedi MR. Diabetes mellitus and tuberculosis facts and controversies. J Diabetes Metab Disord. 2013;12(1):58.
84. Dye C, Scheele S, Dolin P, Pathania V, Raviglione MC. Global burden of tuberculosis: estimated incidence, prevalence, and mortality by country. JAMA. 1999;282(7):677–86.
85. Chou K-L, Chi I. Prevalence of depression among elderly Chinese with diabetes. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry. 2005;20(6):570–5.
86. Poongothai S, Anjana RM, Pradeepa R, Ganesan A, Unnikrishnan R, Rema M, et al. Association of depression with complications of type 2 diabetes--the Chennai urban rural epidemiology study (CURES- 102). J Assoc Physicians India. 2011;59:644–8.
87. Nikibakht A, Moayedi F, Zare S, Mahboobi H, Banaei S, Khorgoei T, et al. Anxiety and depressionamong diabetic patients in Bandarabbas,Southern Iran. Australas Med J AMJ. 2009;1(7):25–8.
88. Larijani B, Bayat MKS, Gorgani MK, Bandarian F, Akhondzadeh S, Sadjadi SA. Association between depression and diabetes. Ger J Psychiatry. 2004;7(4):62–5.
89. Kaur G, Tee GH, Ariaratnam S, Krishnapillai AS, China K. Depression, anxiety and stress symptoms among diabetics in Malaysia: a cross sectional study in an urban primary care setting. BMC Fam Pract. 2013;14(1):69.
90. Zhang Y, Ting RZW, Yang W, Jia W, Li W, Ji L, et al. Depression in Chinese patients with type 2 diabetes: associations with hyperglycemia, hypoglycemia, and poor treatment adherence. J Diabetes. 2015;7(6):800–8.
91. Baradaran HR, Mirghorbani S-M, Javanbakht A, Yadollahi Z, Khamseh ME. Diabetes distress and its association with depression in patients with type 2 diabetes in Iran. Intl J Prev Med. 2013;4(5):580–4.
92. Yoon K-HH, Lee J-HH, Kim J-WW, Cho JH, Choi Y-HH, Ko S-HH, et al. Epidemic obesity and type 2 diabetes in Asia. Lancet. 2006;368:1681–8.
93. Alaboud A, Tourkmani A, Alharbi T, Alobikan A, Abdelhay O, Al Batal S, et al. Microvascular and macrovascular complications of type 2 diabetic mellitus in Central, Kingdom of Saudi Arabia. Saudi Med J. 2016;37(12):1408–11.
94. Shaghaghi A, Ahmadi A, Matlabi H. Iranian patients require more pertinent care to prevent type 2 diabetes complications. Adv Prev Med. 2014;2014:1.
95. Cc Chow F, Chan SP, Hwu CM, Suwanwalaikorn S, Wu AY, Gan SY, et al. Challenges in achieving optimal glycemic control in type 2 diabetes patients with declining renal function: the Southeast Asia perspective. J Diabetes Invest. 2012;3:481–9.
96. Unnikrishnan R, Rema M, Pradeepa R, Mohan D, Shanthirani CS, Deepa R, et al. Prevalence and risk factors of diabetic nephropathy in an urban south Indian population the Chennai Urban Rural Epidemiology Study (CURES 45). Diabetes Care. 2007;30(8):2019–24.
97. Mafauzy M, Hussein Z, Chan SP. The status of diabetes control in Malaysia: results of DiabCare 2008. Med J Malaysia. 2011;66(3):175–81.
98. Yoshida Y, Hagura R, Hara Y, Sugasawa G. Risk factors for the development of diabetic retinopathy in Japanese type 2 diabetic patients. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2001;51(3):195–203.
99. Shivashankar R, Bhalla S, Kondal D, Ali MK, Prabhakaran D, Narayan KV, et al. Adherence to diabetes care processes at general practices in the National Capital Region-Delhi, India. Indian J Endocr Metab. 2016;20(3):329.
100. Nitiyanant W, Tandhanand S, Mahtab H, Zhu XX, Pan CY, Raheja BS, et al. The Diabcare-Asia 1998 study--outcomes on control and complications in type 1 and type 2 diabetic patients. Curr Med Res Opin. 2002;18(5):317–27.
101. Mohamed M, Diabcare-Asia SG. An audit on diabetes management in Asian patients treated by specialists: the Diabcare-Asia 1998 and 2003 studies. Curr Med Res Opin. 2008;24(2):507–14.
102. Chan JCN, Gagliardino JJ, Baik SH, Chantelot JM, Ferreira SRG, Hancu N, et al. Multifaceted determinants for achieving glycemic control the international diabetes management practice study (IDMPS). Diabetes Care. 2009;32(2):227–33.
103. International Diabetes Federation, editor. IDF diabetes atlas. 7th ed. Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2015.
104. WHO. Diabetes country profiles 2016. Geneva: WHO; 2016. Available from https://www.who.int/diabetes/country-profiles/en/.
105. International Diabetes Federation. Global diabetes score card. Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2014. Available from https://www.idf.org/our-activities/advocacyawareness/resources-and-tools/53-global-diabetes-scorecard.html.
106. International Diabetes Federation. IDF diabetes atlas. 7th ed. Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2015. Report No.: 9782930229812.
107. Hashmi NR, Khan SA. Adherence to diabetes mellitus treatment guidelines from theory to practice: the missing link. J Ayub Med Coll Abbottabad. 2016;28(4):802–8.
108. Joshi SR, Das AK, Vijay VJ, Mohan V. Challenges in diabetes care in India: sheer numbers, lack of awareness and inadequate control. J Assoc Physicians India. 2008;56:443–50.
109. Baumann LC, Blobner D, Van Binh T, Lan PT. A training program for diabetes care in Vietnam. Diabetes Educ. 2006;32(2):189.
110. Lee YK, Lee PY, Ng CJ. A qualitative study on healthcare professionals' perceived barriers to insulin initiation in a multi-ethnic population. BMC Fam Pract. 2012;13(1):28.
111. Sun N, Rau P-LP. Barriers to improve physician–patient communication in a primary care setting: perspectives of Chinese physicians. Health Psychol Behav Med. 2017;5(1):166–76.
112. Alkhaifi MA, Khusaibi GA, Theodorson T, Ward MA, Mazrou'I AA. Barriers in initiating insulin treatment in type 2 diabetes mellitus among physicians in Wilayat of Bowsher in Oman. J Family Med Community Health. 2015;2(3):1034.
113. Finucane ML, McMullen CK. Making diabetes self-management education culturally relevant for Filipino Americans in Hawaii. Diabetes Educ. 2008;34(5):841–53.
114. Rafique G, Shaikh F. Identifying needs and barriers to diabetes education in patients with diabetes. J Pak Med Assoc. 2006;56(8):347–52.
115. Mendenhall E, Shivashankar R, Tandon N, Ali MK, Venkat Narayan KM, Prabhakaran D. Stress and diabetes in socioeco-

nomic context: a qualitative study of urban Indians. Soc Sci Med. 2012;75(12):2522–9.
116. Shobhana R, Rao R, Lavanya A, Padma C, Vijay V, Ramachandran A. Quality of life and diabetes integration among subjects with type 2 diabetes. J Assoc Physicians India. 2003;51:363–5.
117. Kelleher D, Islam S. The problem of integration: Asian people and diabetes. J R Soc Med. 1994;87(7):414–7.
118. Sowattanangoon N, Kotchabhakdi N, Petrie KJ. The influence of Thai culture on diabetes perceptions and management. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2009;84(3):245–51.
119. Sowattanangoon N, Kochabhakdi N, Petrie KJ. Buddhist values are associated with better diabetes control in Thai patients. Int J Psychiatry Med. 2008;38(4):481–91.
120. Joshi AS, Varthakavi PK, Bhagwat NM, Chadha MD, Parmar G. Fasts, feasts, and festivals in diabetes: glycemic management during Parsi rituals. Indian J Endocr Metab. 2015;19(5):680–2.
121. Sabra AA, Taha AZ, Al-Zubier AG, Al-Kurashi NY. Misconceptions about diabetes mellitus among adult male attendees of primary health care centres in Eastern Saudi Arabia. S Afr Fam Pract. 2014;52(4):344–9.
122. Naeem AG, Ag N. The role of culture and religion in the management of diabetes: a study of Kashmiri men in Leeds. J R Soc Promot Health. 2003;123(2):110–6.
123. Kalra S, Bajaj S, Gupta Y, Agarwal P, Singh SK, Julka S, et al. Fasts, feasts and festivals in diabetes-1: glycemic management during Hindu fasts. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2015;19(2):198–203.
124. Hassanein M, Belhadj M, Abdallah K, Bhattacharya AD, Singh AK, Tayeb K, et al. Management of type 2 diabetes in Ramadan: low-ratio premix insulin working group practical advice. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2014;18(6):794–9.
125. Lawton J, Ahmad N, Hanna L, Douglas M, Hallowell N. I can't do any serious exercise': barriers to physical activity amongst people of Pakistani and Indian origin with type 2 diabetes. Health Educ Res. 2006;21(1):43–54.
126. Sohal T, Sohal P, King-Shier KM, Khan NA. Barriers and facilitators for type-2 diabetes management in South Asians: a systematic review. PLoS One. 2015;10(9):e0136202.
127. Mathews E, Lakshmi JK, Ravindran STK, Pratt M. Perceptions of barriers and facilitators in physical activity participation among women in Thiruvananthapuram City, India. Glob Health Promot. 2016;23(4):27–36.
128. Ramanathan S, Crocker PR. The influence of family and culture on physical activity among female adolescents from the Indian diaspora. Qual Health Res. 2009;19(4):492–503.
129. Kumar K, Greenfield S, Raza K, Gill P, Stack R. Understanding adherence-related beliefs about medicine amongst patients of South Asian origin with diabetes and cardiovascular disease patients: a qualitative synthesis. BMC Endocr Disord. 2016;16(1):24.
130. Sekhar TV, Shabana S, Bhargav SY. Gender: does it have role has a role in glycaemic control and diabetic distress in type 2 diabetes? IOSR J Dent Med Sci. 2013;4(6):2279–861.
131. Loizzo MR, Saab AM, Tundis R, Menichini F, Bonesi M, Piccolo V, et al. In vitro inhibitory activities of plants used in Lebanon traditional medicine against angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) and digestive enzymes related to diabetes. J Ethnopharmacol. 2008;119(1):109–16.
132. Hamdan II, Afifi FU. Studies on the in vitro and in vivo hypoglycemic activities of some medicinal plants used in treatment of diabetes in Jordanian traditional medicine. J Ethnopharmacol. 2004;93(1):117–21.
133. Umashanker M, Shruti S. Traditional Indian herbal medicine used as antipyretic, antiulcer, anti-diabetic and anticancer: a review. IJRPC. 2011;1(4):1152–9.
134. Dham S, Shah V, Hirsch S, Banerji MA. The role of complementary and alternative medicine in diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2006;6(3):251–8.
135. Chimkode SM, Kumaran SD, Kanhere VV, Shivanna R. Effect of yoga on blood glucose levels in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. J Clin Diagnostic Res. 2015;9(4):CC01–3.
136. Malhotra V, Singh S, Tandon OP, Sharma SB. The beneficial effect of yoga in diabetes. Nepal Med Coll J. 2005;7(2):145–7.
137. Sahay B. Role of yoga in diabetes. JAPI. 2007;55:121–6.
138. Kar A, Choudhary BK, Bandyopadhyay NG. Comparative evaluation of hypoglycaemic activity of some Indian medicinal plants in alloxan diabetic rats. J Ethnopharmacol. 2003;84(1):105–8.
139. Covington MB. Traditional Chinese medicine in the treatment of diabetes. Diabetes Spectr. 2001;14(3):154–9.
140. Hasan SS, Ahmed SI, Bukhari NI, Loon WCW. Use of complementary and alternative medicine among patients with chronic diseases at outpatient clinics. Complement Ther Clin Pract. 2009;15(3):152–7.
141. Li WL, Zheng HC, Bukuru J, De Kimpe N. Natural medicines used in the traditional Chinese medical system for therapy of diabetes mellitus. J Ethnopharmacol. 2004;92:1–21.
142. Medagama AB, Bandara R, Abeysekera RA, Imbulpitiya B, Pushpakumari T. Use of Complementary and Alternative Medicines (CAMs) among type 2 diabetes patients in Sri Lanka: a cross sectional survey. BMC Complementary Altern Med. 2014;14:374.
143. Khalaf AJ, Whitford DL. The use of complementary and alternative medicine by patients with diabetes mellitus in Bahrain: a cross-sectional study. BMC Complementary Altern Med. 2010;10:35.
144. Chang H-YA, Wallis M, Tiralongo E. Use of complementary and alternative medicine among people with type 2 diabetes in Taiwan: a cross-sectional survey. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med. 2011;2011:1.
145. Alfian S, Sukandar H, Arisanti N, Abdulah R. Complementary and alternative medicine use decreases adherence to prescribed medication in diabetes patients. Ann Trop Med Public Health. 2016;9(3):174–9.
146. Chamberlain JJ, Herman WH, Leal S, Rhinehart AS, Shubrook JH, Skolnik N, et al. Pharmacologic therapy for type 2 diabetes: synopsis of the 2017 American Diabetes Association Standards of Medical Care in diabetes. Ann Intern Med. 2017;166(8):572–8.
147. American Diabetes Association. Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes-2017 Abridged for Primary Care Providers. Clin Diabetes. 2017;35(1):5–26.
148. Armstrong C. ADA updates standards of medical care for patients with diabetes mellitus. Am Fam Physician. 2017;95(1):40–3.
149. Marathe PH, Gao HX, Close KL. American Diabetes Association Standards of Medical Care in diabetes 2017. J Diabetes. 2017;9(4):320–4.
150. Gaede P, Lund-Andersen H, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Effect of a multifactorial intervention on mortality in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358(6):580–91.
151. Gaede P, Vedel P, Larsen N, Jensen GV, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Multifactorial intervention and cardiovascular disease in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(5):383–93.
152. Gaede PH, Jepsen PV, Larsen JN, Jensen GV, Parving HH, Pedersen OB. The Steno-2 study. Intensive multifactorial intervention reduces the occurrence of cardiovascular disease in patients with type 2 diabetes. Ugeskr Laeger. 2003;165(26):2658–61.
153. Shivashankar R, Kirk K, Kim WC, Rouse C, Tandon N, Narayan KM, et al. Quality of diabetes care in low- and middle-income Asian and Middle Eastern countries (1993–2012): 20-year systematic review. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2015;107(2):203–23.

154. Pendsey S, Abbas ZG. The step-by-step program for reducing diabetic foot problems: a model for the developing world. Curr Diab Rep. 2007;7(6):425–8.
155. Available from: http://iwgdf.org/step-by-step/.
156. Ramachandran A. Specific problems of the diabetic foot in developing countries. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2004;20(Suppl 1):S19–22.
157. Abbas ZG, Lutale JK, Bakker K, Baker N, Archibald LK. The 'Step by Step' Diabetic Foot Project in Tanzania: a model for improving patient outcomes in less-developed countries. Int Wound J. 2011;8(2):169–75.
158. Bhalla S, Unnikrishnan R, Srivastava R, Tandon N, Mohan V, Prabhakaran D. Innovation in capacity building of primary-care physicians in diabetes management in India: a new slant in medical education. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2016;4(3):200–2.
159. Fisher EB, Boothroyd RI, Coufal MM, Baumann LC, Mbanya JC, Rotheram-Borus MJ, et al. Peer support for self-management of diabetes improved outcomes in international settings. Health Aff (Millwood). 2012;31(1):130–9.
160. Shah S, Singh K, Ali MK, Mohan V, Kadir MM, Unnikrishnan AG, et al. Improving diabetes care: multi-component cardiovascular disease risk reduction strategies for people with diabetes in South Asia--the CARRS multi-center translation trial. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2012;98(2):285–94.
161. Ali MK, Singh K, Kondal D, Devarajan R, Patel SA, Shivashankar R, et al. Effectiveness of a multicomponent quality improvement strategy to improve achievement of diabetes care goals: a randomized. Control Trial Ann Intern Med. 2016;165(6):399–408.
162. Sun J, Wang Y, Chen X, Chen Y, Feng Y, Zhang X, et al. An integrated intervention program to control diabetes in overweight Chinese women and men with type 2 diabetes. Asia Pac J Clin Nutr. 2008;17(3):514–24.
163. Prathiba V, Rema M. Teleophthalmology: a model for eye care delivery in rural and underserved areas of India. Int J Family Med. 2011;2011:683267.
164. Mohan V, Deepa M, Pradeepa R, Prathiba V, Datta M, Sethuraman R, et al. Prevention of diabetes in rural India with a telemedicine intervention. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2012;6(6):1355–64.
165. Pan XR, Li GW, Hu YH, Wang JX, Yang WY, An ZX, et al. Effects of diet and exercise in preventing NIDDM in people with impaired glucose tolerance. The Da Qing IGT and Diabetes Study. Diabetes Care. 1997;20(4):537–44.
166. Saito T, Watanabe M, Nishida J, Izumi T, Omura M, Takagi T, et al. Lifestyle modification and prevention of type 2 diabetes in overweight Japanese with impaired fasting glucose levels: a randomized controlled trial. Arch Intern Med. 2011;171(15):1352–60.
167. Ramachandran A, Arun N, Shetty AS, Snehalatha C. Efficacy of primary prevention interventions when fasting and post-glucose dysglycemia coexist: analysis of the Indian Diabetes Prevention Programmes (IDPP-1 and IDPP-2). Diabetes Care. 2010;33(10):2164–8.
168. Snehalatha C, Mary S, Selvam S, Sathish Kumar CK, Shetty SB, Nanditha A, et al. Changes in insulin secretion and insulin sensitivity in relation to the glycemic outcomes in subjects with impaired glucose tolerance in the Indian Diabetes Prevention Programme-1 (IDPP-1). Diabetes Care. 2009;32(10):1796–801.
169. Ramachandran A, Snehalatha C, Mary S, Mukesh B, Bhaskar AD, Vijay V. The Indian diabetes prevention Programme shows that lifestyle modification and metformin prevent type 2 diabetes in Asian Indian subjects with impaired glucose tolerance (IDPP-1). Diabetologia. 2006;49(2):289–97.
170. Ramachandran A, Snehalatha C, Ram J, Selvam S, Simon M, Nanditha A, et al. Effectiveness of mobile phone messaging in prevention of type 2 diabetes by lifestyle modification in men in India: a prospective, parallel-group, randomised controlled trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2013;1(3):191–8.
171. Wijesuriya M, Gulliford M, Vasantharajah L, Viberti G, Gnudi L, Karalliedde J. DIABRISK-SL prevention of cardio-metabolic disease with life style modification in young urban Sri Lankan's--study protocol for a randomized controlled trial. Trials. 2011;12:209.
172. Weber MB, Ranjani H, Meyers GC, Mohan V, Narayan KM. A model of translational research for diabetes prevention in low and middle-income countries: the Diabetes Community Lifestyle Improvement Program (D-CLIP) trial. Prim Care Diabetes. 2012;6(1):3–9.
173. Weber MB, Harish R, Staimez LR, Anjana RM, Ali MK, Narayan KMV. 180-LB reduction in diabetes incidence differs by prediabetes type in a randomized translational trial of prevention. Diabetes. 2015;64(Suppl 1A):LB46.
174. Oba N, McCaffrey R, Choonhapran P, Chutug P, Rueangram S. Development of a community participation program for diabetes mellitus prevention in a primary care unit, Thailand. Nurs Health Sci. 2011;13(3):352–9.
175. Sranacharoenpong K, Hanning RM. Diabetes prevention education program for community health care workers in Thailand. J Community Health. 2012;37(3):610–8.
176. Ali MK, Echouffo-Tcheugui J, Williamson DF. How effective were lifestyle interventions in real-world settings that were modeled on the Diabetes Prevention Program? Health Aff (Millwood). 2012;31(1):67–75.
177. Mohan V, Anbalagan VP. Expanding role of the Madras diabetes research foundation – Indian diabetes risk score in clinical practice. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2013;17(1):31–6.

Suggested/Further Reading

Chan JC, Malik V, Jia W, Kadowaki T, Yajnik CS, Yoon KH, Hu FB. Diabetes in Asia: epidemiology, risk factors, and pathophysiology. JAMA. 2009;301(20):2129–40.
Misra A, Tandon N, Ebrahim S, Sattar N, Alam D, Shrivastava U, Narayan KM, Jafar TH. Diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and chronic kidney disease in South Asia: current status and future directions. BMJ. 2017;357:j1420.

Diabetes Management in the United States

17

Mohammed K. Ali, Megha K. Shah, and Tannaz Moin

Introduction

Prevalence and Cost Burdens

In the United States, diabetes affects approximately 10% of the population, and in 2017, this equated to an estimated 30.3 million Americans with diabetes [1]. Type 2 or insulin-independent diabetes accounts for the majority (~90–95%) of cases in the United States. Furthermore, approximately one-third of US adults have prediabetes, an identifiable precursor phase in which blood glucose levels are above normal but not yet in the diagnostic range for diabetes, and one's risk of developing type 2 diabetes increases five to twelvefold [2].

The diabetes epidemic has evolved considerably over the last quarter century. At every counting, the growth in prevalence and absolute numbers of people with diabetes have far exceeded statistical projections. Further, over time, larger proportions of those affected by diabetes are people of minority race/ethnicities and from lower socioeconomic backgrounds, and onset and first diagnosis appear to be younger than in decades past [3].

M. K. Ali (✉)
Emory Global Diabetes Research Center, Hubert Department of Global Health, Rollins School of Public Health, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Department of Family and Preventive Medicine, School of Medicine, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA
e-mail: mkali@emory.edu

M. K. Shah
Department of Family and Preventive Medicine, School of Medicine, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

T. Moin
Division of Endocrinology, Diabetes and Metabolism, and General Internal Medicine/Health Services Research, David Geffen School of Medicine, University of California at Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA, USA

HSR&D Center for the Study of Healthcare Innovation, Implementation & Policy, VA Greater Los Angeles Healthcare System, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Diabetes is associated with billions of dollars in health expenditures and lost productivity [4, 5]. Using a compilation of national data sources, diabetes was identified as the leading cause of annual personal health spending in 2013, accounting for over $100 billion in direct healthcare expenditures that year. As a result, diabetes is now the leading contributor to rising healthcare costs in the United States [5, 6].

Health Impacts

Type 2 diabetes typically develops over many years. The slow progression and lack of symptoms in the early stages of disease often delay requests for a screening test, preventive care, and/or medical attention. Other issues, such as lack of insurance or access to timely preventive care, may compound these delays. As such, even in high-income country settings like the United States, approximately 28% of people with diabetes are not aware of their diagnosis [7]. This is problematic as the pathophysiology of diabetes and its impacts on organs continue unabated despite the individual's awareness (or lack thereof) of their glycemic status.

The health impacts of diabetes vary by the type of disease. Type 1 or insulin-dependent diabetes, which accounts for about 5% of cases in the United States, is more commonly associated with acute fluctuations in blood sugar levels. Episodes of severe acute hyperglycemia (e.g., diabetic ketoacidosis [DKA] [8] and hyperosmolar nonketotic coma) or, conversely, severe hypoglycemia most often require immediate medical management. When treated in a timely and appropriate manner, the mortality from acute hyperglycemic episodes such as DKA is extremely low in the United States [9, 10]. Individual patient (e.g., age, additional comorbidities) and resource (e.g., healthcare facilities, experience of staff) characteristics can influence outcomes and risk of mortality.

Both type 1 and 2 diabetes are associated with chronic, progressive damage of the nerves, eyes, kidneys, and/or vasculature [11–13]. Target organ damage of this nature can be

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_17

life-threatening and/or seriously disabling [14]. In a large proportion of persons with diabetes, other cardio-metabolic risk factors (hypertension, dyslipidemia, proinflammatory, and procoagulant states) often co-occur [15] which increases the risk of end-organ damage [16]. The frequency of these end-organ diseases varies according to the underlying phenotype, pathophysiology, as well as care and control of glycemia and other cardio-metabolic risk factors (i.e., blood pressure, cholesterol, and tobacco) [17].

In this chapter, we provide an overview of diabetes management in the United States from a national perspective and examine several aspects of diabetes care including detection, health maintenance, and achievement of cardio-metabolic care goals. We further describe where and how diabetes have been managed over the past few decades in the United States and examine previous and ongoing disparities. We examine and report what local care delivery, payer, and policy interventions have been evaluated to improve quality of care and their respective impacts.

National Trends

Screening

As the national prevalence and absolute numbers of people with diabetes have grown [18], the proportion with undiagnosed disease has not changed dramatically [3]. This has implications for disease burden as undiagnosed people are less likely to have a usual care provider or seek care [7], further lowering their likelihood of being diagnosed; and the progression toward end-organ damage continues. In some cases, recognition of underlying diabetes is only confirmed when diabetes complications are evident. Indeed, national data show that approximately 40% of adults with previously unrecognized diabetes have some form of chronic kidney disease [19].

Similarly, with regard to prevention of diabetes, it is estimated that only about 1 in 10 of the 86 million adults with prediabetes in the United States is aware [20] that they are at high risk of imminently developing diabetes. This awareness gap is likely a major barrier to engaging people at risk of diabetes in evidence-based lifestyle or pharmacotherapeutic interventions to prevent diabetes [21, 22].

There are well-accepted glucose tests to diagnose prediabetes and diabetes and evidence-based lifestyle and pharmaceutical interventions to prevent and manage diabetes. There is also consensus that universal screening – i.e., offering glucose tests to the whole population – is not cost-effective, but rather, targeted screening of individuals at high risk for diabetes is both appropriate and economically sound [23–25]. To promote appropriate testing, expert committees at the American Diabetes Association (ADA) [26] and US Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) [27] have reviewed the evidence and set recommendations for health-care providers regarding whom to test and when.

The ADA [26] recommends glucose testing adults age ≥45 years or at any age with a body mass index (BMI) ≥25 kg/m^2 and one other diabetes risk factor (people who are physically inactive, have a family history of diabetes, are of minority race/ethnicity who did not identify as non-Hispanic white, have history of gestational diabetes or delivering a macrosomic baby, are hypertensive [blood pressure ≥140/90 mmHg or antihypertensive medication use], have dyslipidemia [HDL-cholesterol <35 mg/dL, triglycerides >250 mg/dL, or lipid-lowering medication use], have polycystic ovarian syndrome, have known prediabetes, or have known myocardial infarction, coronary heart disease, or stroke).

The USPSTF previously recommended glucose testing in individuals with blood pressure >135/80 mmHg or antihypertensive medication use [27]. In 2015, the USPSTF changed their guideline and now recommend glucose testing between ages 40 and 70 years in those who are overweight or obese [28]. The USPSTF guidelines also note that clinicians should consider screening earlier in persons with one or more additional risk factors (i.e., family history of diabetes, history of gestational diabetes, members of certain racial/ethnic groups such as African Americans, American Indians or Alaskan Natives, Asian Americans, Hispanics or Latinos, or Native Hawaiians or Pacific Islanders) since they may be at increased risk for diabetes at a younger age or at a lower body mass index.

In terms of the extent to which screening guidelines achieve their intended purpose, a study using national survey data showed that, during the period 2007–2012, only half of all US adults that would be eligible for glucose testing based on either the ADA or the older USPSTF criteria were actually offered a glucose test [29]. There is also a sizeable proportion of people (approximately 15%) that receive glucose tests despite not meeting sufficient criteria. Furthermore, in terms of guideline performance, findings suggest that the ADA and USPSTF guidelines are very different in their ideological focus: the ADA guidelines require a lower threshold for glucose testing with the aim of higher sensitivity, while the USPSTF recommendations are more focused on specificity. Despite this difference, the positive predictive value (or yield of people with dysglycemia of those eligible for screening) associated with each guideline was broadly similar – approximately 54–58% for identifying prediabetes or diabetes and around 5–7% for identifying undiagnosed diabetes.

More recent analyses examining the performance of the newer USPSTF guideline show that only 25% of patients would be eligible for screening. Though the newer guideline is more sensitive (~45%) and less specific (~72%), racial/ethnic minorities are less likely to be eligible for screening,

perhaps due to their higher risk of diabetes at lower weight levels [30].

Management of Cardio-Metabolic Risks

It is encouraging that people with diagnosed diabetes do seek care. Nationally, 95% of adults with diagnosed diabetes report having a healthcare provider, and almost 92% report visiting the care provider twice or more in the past year [7].

Furthermore, over the past four decades, the scientific community has made important advances in clinical research. Large robust randomized controlled trials have shown that comprehensive management of cardio-metabolic risk factors, including glucose, blood pressure, and lipids, and avoiding tobacco, can delay both micro- and macro-vascular diabetes complications [31–36]. It is on the basis of these trials and meta-analyses that diabetes management guidelines are set and revised by professional agencies (e.g., the ADA and the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists [AACE]). Indeed, these same guidelines are used to benchmark quality of care at local and national levels.

Using clinical care goals as targets, national survey data have been used to develop cross-sectional snapshots of how average adult Americans with diabetes are managing their cardio-metabolic risks. The data from consecutive national reports from the 1988–1994 to 2007–2012 surveys show that the proportion of adults with diabetes achieving glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) levels < 7.0% grew from 42.9% to 52.2% (Fig. 17.1). The proportion of adults with diagnosed diabetes with BP <140/90 mmHg stayed stable, 65.7% to 62.5%, while the proportion meeting LDL-cholesterol < 100 mg/dl increased dramatically from 11.0% to 56.6%. The proportion of adults with very poorly controlled glycemia (A1c < 9.0%), blood pressure (BP > 160/100 mmHg), and/or cholesterol (LDL > 160 mg/dl) all declined. Of note, however, smoking prevalence among people with diabetes has changed marginally over this period (21.5% [1988–1994] to 19.4% [2007–2012]).

National- and state-level efforts that drew greater attention to diabetes through measurement and action may have been the drivers of these important successes. Movements like the National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA) and National Quality Forum have made major impacts through setting quality metrics, encouraging accreditation, and establishing performance measurement for healthcare systems. In turn, these processes may have facilitated [37, 38] better achievement of diabetes care goals. Similarly, individual states have used performance measures effectively – in Minnesota, for example, the Community Measurement initiative has reported on healthcare quality annually for a decade and can demonstrate performance for each of 1247 clinics or provider groups [39], and the state's average for meeting diabetes and cardio-metabolic care goals (38%) is higher than the national average (14%). These same successes are unlikely to be ubiquitous across all states, but no formal state-level analyses have examined this.

Other factors that may have contributed to these gains include newer medications; provider education; changes in physician practice norms; use of information technology and electronic health record data, such as clinician decision support; and use of diabetes registries to track management of diabetes and performance measures and to couple audits with feedback. Payers for healthcare and hospital systems have also tracked and offered financial incentives (and disincentives) for care goal achievement (or lack thereof). On the patient side, there have been sustained efforts to educate patients and promote self-management. Each of these quality improvement efforts is discussed in greater detail later in the chapter.

There are limitations to using guideline treatment targets as performance metrics for health systems, localities, and the country at large. Although they are evidence-based, recommended treatment targets are not always what patients desire, and there can sometimes be a tension between quality of care from the health system and provider perspective and patient desires and satisfaction. Treatment targets are subject to change as new evidence is generated (Table 17.1), and these "moving targets" make it hard to understand whether there is any consistency in the patterns being observed. Furthermore, targets are usually dichotomous and can only convey part of the picture – for example, the mean levels of cardio-metabolic indices may be clustered around the target, but because of the single dichotomous metric, they get counted as "good" or "bad." Indeed, patients may also fare worse on specific aspects of their care, but better on others. As such, more "global" measures of disease risk (e.g., Framingham risk score, hospitalizations, quality of life, patient satisfaction, hypoglycemias) may provide alternative indicators than single dichotomous treatment targets.

Screening for Diabetes Complications

Aside from managing glycemia and cardio-metabolic risk factors to prevent diabetes complications, care guidelines [40–42] also recommend regular screenings to detect and treat diabetes complications. Earlier detection is aimed at identifying risk before irreversible target organ damage is incurred. All the microvascular complications of diabetes have a preclinical latent phase and well-accepted, sensitive, and specific eye, foot, and urine checks.

Diabetic retinopathy is very common and occurs in all people with diabetes, given sufficient duration of disease [43, 44]. Retinal screening [45] followed by photocoagulation therapy has been shown to significantly preserve vision [46, 47].

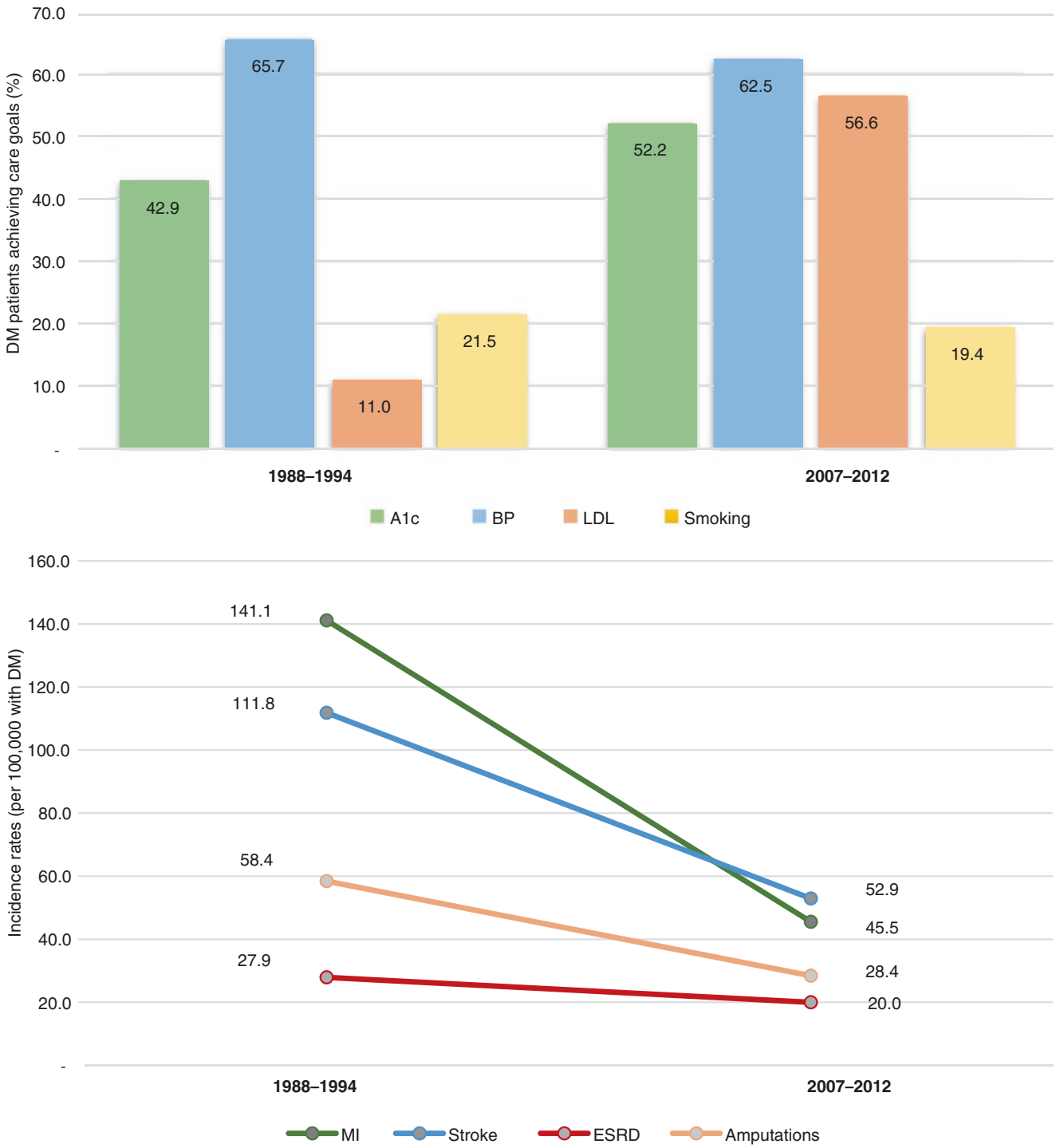


Fig. 17.1 Changes in risk factor control and diabetes complication rates among US adults with diabetes, 1988–1994 to 2007–2012

Neuropathy is also a common consequence of diabetes and, combined with compromised peripheral vascular circulation and poor wound healing [48, 49], ulceration [50], and infections [51, 52], can increase one's risk of gangrene and limb amputation. Regular foot checks and foot care are considered invaluable to prevent foot ulceration and gangrene in people with diabetes [53, 54]. Regarding deterioration of kidney function, annual urine screening and use of ACEi/ARB medications once microalbuminuria sets in are both recommended [54]. Lastly, to lower infections, people with diabetes benefit from annual influenza vaccination and a lifetime pneumococcal vaccination (after age 60) [55–59]. Repeated snapshots of national survey data between 1999 and 2010 show increases

Table 17.1 Evolution of guidelines and care targets

	2010		2016	
	Risk group	2010 target	Risk group	2016 targets[a]
HbA1c (%)	All	<7.0	<45y low risk	<6.5
			45–64y low risk	<7.0
			45–64y med risk	<7.5
			≥65y low risk	<7.5
			≥65y med risk	<8.0
BP (mmHg)	All	<130/80	All	<140/80
LDL (mg/dl)	No CVD	<100	40–75y + DM	Statin
	CVD	<70	High CVD risk	HI statin

CVD cardiovascular disease, *y* years, *HI* high-intensity, *med* medium
[a]Suggested targets by several authors; no formal guideline has endorsed specific targets other than generally supporting individualized glycemic goals [180, 181]

in the proportions of adults with diagnosed diabetes receiving all of these preventive screenings [60].

Incidence of Complications

The limitations of performance metrics notwithstanding, the average 10-year cardiovascular event risk among Americans with diagnosed diabetes has declined over the past three decades, from 16.5% to 11.3%. In keeping with this, between 1990 and 2010, nationally, there were substantial reductions in incidence rates of diabetes complications [61] and increases in life expectancy among people with diabetes [62]. There were marked decreases noted in incidence rates of acute myocardial infarctions (~68% decline), strokes (~53% decline), lower extremity amputations (~51% decline), and hyperglycemic death (~64% decline). The incidence of end-stage renal disease declined more gradually (~28% decline) (Fig. 17.1). Although visual impairment due to cataracts and retinopathy remain an important complication of diabetes, there are no reliable national estimates of trend patterns for these complications to date.

Gaps in Care

The successes described, in quality of care and reductions in incident complications in people with diabetes, should be viewed in context. Over the same period, the absolute number of people with diabetes has grown substantially, nearly threefold [4, 63]. Large numbers of people still do not meet their care goals; the absolute numbers affected by disabling complications have increased; costs of care double every decade; and though excess mortality associated with diabetes has declined, there has been an expansion in the number of years people with diabetes live with disabilities. Many of these concerns are at least partly attributable to gaps in access, suboptimal organization and delivery of healthcare and preventive services, and workforce shortages. We further examine these and other barriers and provide data from program and policy intervention studies as possible future directions for diabetes management to progress toward.

Outpatient Settings in the United States

Over the last 30 years, there has been a shift from hospital-based diabetes management to outpatient primary care. While earlier studies showed that hospital-based care provided better outcomes, health systems began shifting away from hospital-based diabetes management, and several studies showed that diabetes management in primary care setting was as good as hospital-based care and provided greater adherence to guideline-based preventive services [64–66]. Almost all of diabetes management is now in the ambulatory setting by primary care providers, and only 20% of patients with diabetes may be referred to an endocrinologist [67, 68].

Though fewer patients are managed in hospital-based settings for diabetes, admission rates for diabetes-associated complications (such as amputations, cardiovascular disease, and blindness) are still higher in the United States than in comparable countries [69]. Despite the availability and evidence of effective clinical guidelines, wide variation of the treatment of patients with diabetes remains in primary care [70]. Moreover, care gaps remain for many patients with diabetes [71].

Several challenges exist to achieving optimal diabetes care in the outpatient setting, which can be divided in three main areas: the patient, the provider, and the system.

The Patient

Patients must be able to access care, adhere to treatment, afford the care, and have the knowledge and skills to manage their condition on a daily basis. Access to care can often be determined by socioeconomic status and insurance status. Several studies have demonstrated that lower SES is associated with less access to specialist care and to diabetic preventive services and worse control of diabetes [72–74]. Patients with private or public insurance are most likely to have met quality of care measures than those with no insurance [75]. A study using national data over the 1998–2008 period found that an estimated 16% of known patients with diabetes were uninsured and tended to have worse outcomes [76].

Physical access to care continues to be a barrier. Lack of transportation, location in rural areas, and availability of healthcare personnel all play a role in a patient's ability to access care. Rural residents have higher rates of diabetes than urban residents and significantly greater barriers accessing reliable transportation. Moreover, rural residents

can often spend more time trying to access care, thus creating higher cost from missed wages and time spent away from families to have improve quality of care [77].

Treatment adherence continues to be a major challenge in achieving adequate glycemic control. In 1 study of over 160,000 patients in Northern California, over 20% of patients with uncontrolled diabetes had poor medication adherence [78]. While the cause of this can be multifactorial, several challenges exist from the patient's perspective. First, lack of diabetes education can lead to poor understanding of the disease process and empowerment of the patient to play an active role in their care process. While evidence support the efficacy of diabetic education in improving diabetes outcomes, access is still limited. Complex medication regimens and side effects from medications can also lead to poor adherence. Simplifying medication regimens can help address patient barriers to medication adherence [79]. The ADA Standards of Care guidelines recommend that providers address medication factors when reviewing treatment plans with patients to insure that they are simple, affordable, and manageable for the patient [80].

The Provider

Several provider level factors can influence diabetes care. Assessment of adherence can often be overestimated or missed by providers [79]. Patients are often asked to self-report their medication use without any objective assessment of actual medication adherence. In addition, providers are often reluctant to intensify therapy, though it may be clinically indicated; this is known as clinical inertia. Clinical inertia appears to be particularly common with regard to initiating insulin therapy [81, 82].

Though clinical inertia is multifactorial and can be due to system- and patient-level factors, one key area is patient-provider communication. Studies have shown that the quality of provider communication and patient's trust of their providers were associated with better outcomes. Better communication was associated with fewer misconceptions about insulin, thus patients were more likely to begin insulin therapy, and this was associated with improved outcomes [83]. Several studies have also shown that providers who recommend individualized barrier assessment and tailored communication to patients can improve care [84].

The System

Several system-level factors create challenges to optimal diabetes care. First, dissemination of evidence-based practices can be slow. While evidence exists for optimal diabetes care, including processes of care, implementation of these evidence-based guidelines can vary. This can greatly improve through use of guidelines to drive care, structured care management, and performance feedback [83].

Second, coordination of care can greatly improve outcomes. Evidence shows that optimal diabetes management in the outpatient setting requires a coordinated, systematic team-based approach. This strategy can help address several of the processes that create barriers to diabetes management. This is supported by team-based approaches where there are a focus planned visit, education, and appropriate specialty care. Several models have been effective at demonstrating improved care coordination; these are discussed in detail later in this chapter. Many of these system-level factors rely on accurate clinical data; this can also be improved by implementing electronic health records to track diabetes care outcomes and processes of care [83, 85].

Next, addressing financial barriers to patients for medications, health services, and education can greatly improve adherence and outcomes. Studies have consistently found that shifting costs to patients negatively affects outcomes in diabetes care. Increased cost to the patient resulted in lower medication adherence and lower rates of preventive care [86]. Those patients with full cost coverage were more likely to have appropriate diabetes-related care (such as dilated retinal exams), attended diabetes education, and practiced blood glucose monitoring.

Disparities in Diabetes Prevention and Management

Despite considerable evidence for preventing diabetes complications [31–36] and important advances in clinical care, there remain significant gaps in translating this evidence into policy and practice, specifically for vulnerable subpopulations (e.g., some age, race/ethnicity groups, and those with associated comorbid conditions) [7, 62]. Additionally, burdens of diabetes are not uniformly distributed across the United States; the Southeastern United States, for example, is disproportionately affected by diabetes and its complications [4, 87, 88].

Demographic Disparities

With reference to vulnerable populations, African Americans, Hispanics, Native Americans, and Asians/Pacific Islanders all have higher rates of diabetes prevalence as compared to non-Hispanic whites. The prevalence of diabetes among African Americans is around 12% and for Hispanics is around 11%, compared to around 7% for non-Hispanic whites [89]. These disadvantaged groups are less likely to receive diabetes-related preventive care, are less likely to have access to care [7], and have lower health literacy. This lack of care leads to delayed diagnosis, advanced disease, and poor outcomes among these groups [90]. As the US population continues to become more diverse and the number of people with diabetes

increases, addressing disparities in care will be increasingly vital.

While some studies have found no significant difference in most of the processes of care (including periodic hemoglobin A1c, lipid, microalbuminuria testing), those of racial/ethnic minorities and low-income groups tend to have poorer glycemic control [3, 91]. Furthermore, African Americans and Hispanics have higher rates of diabetes-related complications resulting in hospitalizations, end-stage renal disease related to diabetes, and amputation [83, 92, 93].

Disparities also exist in care based on age and gender. Younger adults with diabetes are less likely to receive periodic testing and more likely to have lapses in recommended care [7, 68]. Compared to men, women with diabetes are less likely to be on medication and less likely to receive recommended cardiovascular risk reduction interventions such as aspirin and lipid monitoring [94–97].

Socioeconomic Disparities

Socioeconomic factors contribute greatly to disparities in diabetes. Poverty, low education, and adverse neighborhood characteristics are often interrelated and continue to be concentrated in minority race/ethnic groups [98].

While numerous sources contribute to disparities in diabetes care, there are several potentially modifiable factors. One major contributing factor to poor diabetes outcomes is low health literacy and numeracy among minorities and patients of lower socioeconomic status. Defined as "the degree to which individuals have the capacity to obtain, process, and understand basic information and services needed to make appropriate decisions regarding their health," low health literacy can lead to low self-efficacy and disease knowledge and ultimate low diabetes self-management skills [99, 100]. Inherent to diabetes management is the ability of the patient to comprehend and apply diet and lifestyle instructions, measure and dispense medications, and quantify aspects of their care. Thus low literacy, which is often not assessed, can have major implications for patients' self-efficacy in diabetes management [100].

As mentioned above, access, especially insurance coverage, can greatly affect disparities in care. For example, a national study found that after controlling for demographic and health status characteristics, insurance coverage was more likely to determine whether a patient received diabetes services rather than race/ethnicity or socioeconomic status. It has been argued that expansion of insurance coverage would have the biggest impact of improving the quality of diabetes care and reducing disparities [101]. These studies highlight the implications that health policy can have on addressing disparities [102].

Disparities in Care Delivery

Unconscious bias at the provider and health system level can also contribute to health disparities. Studies have shown that within the same provider panel, white patients had better glycemic control than African American patients, independent of other sociodemographic characteristics, provider performance, or the number of African Americans on their panel [91]. That said, while a majority of providers endorsed that racial disparities exist in diabetes care, only a small percentage of providers acknowledged the presence of racial disparities in their own practice [103]. Thus, unconscious stereotypes may be influencing physician behavior and ultimately the quality of the care provided.

Since the Institute of Medicine's 2002 report, "Unequal treatment: Confronting racial and ethnic disparities in healthcare," the evidence is growing that provider-level and system-level interventions that streamline processes of care and improve cultural competency can improve disparities in care [90]. For example, continuing medical education programs and personal feedback have shown to significantly improve diabetes process measure achievement (e.g., foot exams). Furthermore, assessment of health literacy, provision of culturally competent care, and improved awareness of disparities in care have been shown to be effective strategies improving diabetes care [104]. However, diabetes care disparities persist; further research and work to develop targeted patient-, provider-, and system-level approaches to mitigate disparities in care for vulnerable populations are still needed.

To help address this need, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) created the Racial and Ethnic Approaches to Community Health (REACH) [105] program. The CDC REACH program provides funding to support public and private organizations efforts to address disparities in priority health areas. Between 1999 and 2006, the REACH program supported 40 programs including efforts to improve collaborative relationships between the community and research team [106], diabetes self-management [107], perceptions of body size and shape in a group of black women with diabetes [108], and a comprehensive community diabetes demonstration project in an African American community [109].

Quality Improvement Initiatives in Outpatient Diabetes Care

As mentioned above, there are barriers to achieving diabetes care goals at the patient (e.g., low motivation), provider (e.g., lack of therapy intensification), and/or system level (e.g., fragmented care) [78, 110]. There are a number of patient-, provider-, and practice-level quality improvement (QI) interventions that have been devised to address these barriers [111, 112]. QI interventions include reminders,

audits, and other tools to facilitate better self-management by patients and better care delivery by providers. The literature regarding QI interventions for diabetes management remains dominated by studies testing single interventions, usually focused on patients or providers, but not both. On aggregate, these interventions are associated with incrementally greater clinical benefits than routine care. A meta-analysis of 48 cluster and 94 individual randomized controlled trials [112] showed that, compared to usual care, QI interventions were associated with a 0.37 percentage point larger reductions in HbA1c; 3.1 and 1.6 mmHg larger reductions in systolic and diastolic blood pressures, respectively; and 3.9 mg/dl greater declines in LDL-cholesterol. On aggregate, even control arms experienced benefit, suggesting that more attentive follow-up alone may confer benefit in diabetes care. Similar benefits were noted in a large pragmatic, cluster-randomized, parallel-group trial that assigned European 343 practices to screening and intensive treatment of multiple risk factors (i.e., small group educational meetings with family physicians and nurses to discuss treatment targets, algorithms, and lifestyle advice) versus usual care. Over 5 years of follow-up, the intervention clinic patients experienced greater improvements in cardiovascular risk factors (HbA1c, cholesterol, and blood pressure), but this was not associated with significant reductions in the incidence of cardiovascular events and deaths [113].

Though these single QI interventions are promising, diabetes patients usually face multiple interacting barriers, and sustaining risk factor control is challenging. As such, multicomponent QI interventions or "integrated" care models are recommended [114–120]. Integrated care attempts to address barriers by leveraging existing facilities, infrastructure, and human resources. Integrated clinical care models can be based in primary care or specialist care settings, and some examples of tested models include the chronic care model, collaborative care, and their more formal, contemporary patient-centered medical homes (PCMH) and accountable care organizations.

Clinical Care Models and Practice Redesign

Conceptual Basis

Integrated clinical care models all embody similar principles. For example, collaborative care applies the principles of the chronic care model [114]. Collaborative care interventions have been shown to be of particular benefit in individuals with multi-morbidities like diabetes and depressive symptoms. Key components of the model include (1) focusing on defined patient populations and improving self-care among patients, (2) targeting depressive symptoms with medications and behavioral therapies, and (3) measurement-based treatment ("treating to target," regular review of patient population data, discussion of challenging cases, and recommending treatment modifications until clinical targets are achieved) [121].

A large number of randomized controlled trials have demonstrated that collaborative care is effective in the treatment of depression and anxiety in people with diabetes [122–127]. Collaborative care leads to greater adherence, larger reductions in depressive symptoms, more depression-free days, and better control of cardio-metabolic indicators [122, 127–131]. However, there is a tension in collaborative care models as they have (sometimes conflicting) ideals: that of "treating-to-target" and of being "patient-centered." Very little is known about patient perspectives on these aspects of QI strategies in general – in a review of 554 qualitative research articles related to diabetes over 30 years [132], none used mixed methods to gather patient and provider perspectives on QI.

Regarding the value of multicomponent QI or integrated care models, cost-effectiveness studies have noted that upfront investments are offset by savings for future acute medical care [128, 133]. As such, collaborative care models do incur an upfront cost, but a number of large US health delivery systems and payers view this as a worthy upfront investment [134, 135].

Application of Care Models for Diabetes

The chronic care model [114, 136] and collaborative care [137] concepts have inspired significant practice redesign to enhance diabetes care and outcomes over the past few decades [138]. A notable example has been the growing endorsement of medical homes [139]. Medical homes, also referred to as patient-centered medical homes (PCMHs) [140], were initially used in pediatric practices and later implemented more broadly after the American Academy of Family Physicians (AAFP) and the American College of Physicians (ACP) released position statements in 2004 and 2007 [141]. As mentioned above, the PCMH concept is based on the Chronic Care Model [142] and incorporates several core elements, such as team-based care, information technology, and payment reform, with the goal of providing more patient-centered approaches to the management of chronic health conditions (Table 17.2).

Within the Veterans Administration (VA) Healthcare System, medical homes are referred to as Patient-Aligned Care Teams (PACTs) and have been used to help provide "patient-driven, proactive, personalized, team-based care focused on wellness and disease prevention resulting in improvements in Veteran satisfaction, improved healthcare

Table 17.2 Features of PCMH and applications in diabetes care

PCMH feature	Description	Diabetes example
Team-based care with coordination and continuity	Physician and non-physician providers provide collaborative care Team arranges care with subspecialists and consultants and guides the patient through the health system	Physician refers patient on multiple medications to pharmacist for medication reconciliation and co-management
Information technology and quality tracking	Incorporation of EHR → the use of patient registries and clinical decision support based on updated practice guidelines, quality metrics Checklists to ensure consistency The use of patient registries to review quality and performance data for entire system	Use EHR data to identify patients with poor blood sugar control (i.e., HbA1C > 9.0%) to provide targeted interventions (diabetes education, self-management, etc.) [182]
Enhanced access and comprehensive care	Flexible scheduling system; easy access to the healthcare team Comprehensive care including preventive care, education services, and end-of-life care	Clinic staff contact patient after complicated hospital stay to ensure patient has a follow-up visit within 7 days of hospital discharge
Payment reform	Quality-based payment and fee-for-service reimbursements Sharing of savings from reduced healthcare costs	Payment incentives for meeting specified quality measures for diabetes care

Adapted from [139, 183]

outcomes, and costs" [143]. A typical VA PACT core team consists of a primary provider, a RN care manager, a clinical staff assistant, and an administrative staff member who work with a Veteran patient over time. The core team may also refer the patient to specialists as needed. Previous evaluations have shown that achievement of diabetes care goals in the VA system is as good or even better than in commercially insured programs [144].

In 2008, the NCQA developed a PCMH Recognition Program in collaboration with the AAP, ACP, AOA, and AAFP. An estimated 12,000 practices nationwide have now achieved recognition status [145]. On an annual basis, participating practices use an online platform to submit documentation on their performance in six categories, including (1) patient-centered access, (2) team-based care, (3) population health management, (4) care management, (5) care coordination and care transitions, and (6) performance measurement and quality improvement. The NCQA provides resources, such as training, education, and tools, to groups participating in the program [145].

Evidence

There is now an extensive and growing evidence base to support the PCMH model [146], especially with regard to improving delivery of preventive services, patient satisfaction, and staff experiences, and reductions in emergency room visits [147]. In a study of the Southeast Pennsylvania Multi-Payer Advanced Primary Care Practice Demonstration, which included 25 practices, implementation of the PCMH showed improvements in lipid, blood pressure, and blood sugar control among patients receiving care for cardiovascular disease and diabetes [148]. A 2011 review of medical home demonstration projects also concluded that PCMH have been associated with improvements in quality and cost of diabetes care [139]. For example, the Community Care of North Carolina, one of the first adult care PCMH initiatives beginning in 1998, was associated with improvements NCQA set thresholds for A1C, blood pressure control, and LDL-cholesterol and reductions in emergency room and hospital visits, along with an estimated savings of $161 million dollars [149, 150].

In more recent years, some medical home evaluations have shown less dramatic changes in quality and costs of care. For example, a 2014 study examined changes in the quality, utilization, and costs of care among 32 primary care practices in the Southeastern Pennsylvania Chronic Care Initiative between 2008 and 2011 [151]. Among 11 quality measures, significant differences were only observed in nephropathy screening in diabetes, and there were no significant changes in utilization or costs of care. However, the NCQA notes this study should be interpreted with caution since it was based on the NCQA's "earliest PCMH standards" with "only half of practices achieving the highest recognition level" [146].

Lessons Learned

Demonstration projects have highlighted several important implementation challenges for medical homes [152]. Implementation challenges highlighted in the literature include (1) scheduling issues (i.e., time-limited visits and long wait times), (2) increased staffing needs, and (3) costly investments needed in EHRs [153]. It is worth noting that these challenges are often amplified for smaller practices, where resources may be more limited. A 2010 review also highlighted the "decline of the primary care workforce" (i.e., higher numbers of physicians, physician assistants,

and nurse practitioners pursuing non-primary care specialties) and "lack of full patient engagement" (meaningful participation of patients in their own care) as other important challenges [138].

Policies and Incentives to Address Accountability and Quality in Diabetes Care

Policies and incentives focused on accountability and quality in diabetes care have increased significantly since the late 1990s. In particular, there has been an increased emphasis on the use of standardized performance measures, such as the Health Plan Employer Data and Information Set (HEDIS). HEDIS incorporates 81 measures across 5 domains of care and is used by most healthcare plans to measure performance of care and services [154]. The HEDIS diabetes measures originated from the Diabetes Quality Improvement Project (DQIP), which was a collaboration between the NCQA, the ADA, and the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) in 1997 [155]. The goal of the DQIP was to develop new QI measures for diabetes care and one of the first examples of the application of disease-specific measures on a national level. The DQIP measures included clinical measures of accountability (i.e., proportion with HbA1c testing annually), quality improvement (i.e., self-management care), and patient survey data that are still used today in national assessments.

The HEDIS measures are now assessed annually including several diabetes-specific measures such as the percentage of patients receiving comprehensive diabetes care (i.e., annual HbA1c testing, glycemic control, retinal screening, LDL screening, etc.). Health plans are incentivized to use HEDIS measures since they are required to collect and submit this information in order to receive reimbursement. For example, the CMS requires health maintenance organizations (HMOs) to submit HEDIS data in order to get reimbursed for services provided to Medicare enrollees under the Medicare Advantage program [156, 157].

Pay-for-Performance Policies

Pay-for-performance programs, which also incentivize the use of quality measures, have been increasingly disseminated. The term pay-for-performance describes the use of financial incentives to encourage health systems or providers to increase quality while decreasing costs (i.e., increase value) of healthcare and service delivery [158]. Quality measures may focus on processes, outcomes, structure, and/or patients' experiences with healthcare delivery. These incentives have been delivered in both the private (i.e., between a specific health plan and provider groups) and public (i.e., the CMS Value-Based Purchasing Program to provide incentives for providers) sectors. Financial penalties (i.e., no payment for service that does meet a specified quality metric) have also been included in some instances.

Studies evaluating the effects of pay-for-performance programs have shown mixed results [159, 160]. For example, a study of 1040 matched hospitals (n = 260 pay-for-performance hospitals and n = 780 control hospitals) found that while performance initially improved in pay-for-performance hospitals compared to control hospitals, there were no significant differences between groups at 5 years of follow-up [161]. A recent review of 49 studies examining the effect of pay-for-performance on physicians, hospitals, and other settings also showed mixed results. Out of the 49 included studies, the only study rated as "good quality" did not find any significant improvements in diabetes outcomes (i.e., proportion with HbA1c and lipid control) [162]. Despite these mixed findings, there has been strong support for the use of pay-for-performance incentives as a means of aligning profits with improvements in patient care and "strengthen[ing] the business case for quality and safety" [163].

Several pay-for-performance programs, including accountable care organizations (ACOs) and Medicare's Hospital Readmissions Reduction Program, were expanded under the Affordable Care Act (ACA). Some of the concerns regarding expansion of pay-for-performance programs include scope (i.e., will payments be large enough for providers to recoup their upfront costs in EHR/information technology to support data collection), unintended effects on the physician-patient visits and relationships (i.e., disruptions in clinical flow or forced disenrollment of noncompliant patients), and the potential impact on safety-net providers and existing race/ethnic and socioeconomic disparities (i.e., will providers avoid higher-risk patients which will further exacerbate of disparities in care) [164–167].

In addition to expanding pay-for-performance programs, the ACA also included several important provisions related to diabetes care [168]. A recent review highlighted several potential improvements in (1) diabetes screening rates, (2) access to diabetes care, and (3) structure of diabetes care resulting from ACA provisions [169]. The authors argue that up to 2.3 million out of 4.6 million adults with undiagnosed diabetes between 2009 and 2010 may have gained access to preventive care under the ACA as a result of provisions requiring health plans to provide free diabetes screening to those at risk and the establishment of the health insurance marketplaces, which makes health insurance more accessible. However, many states with higher prevalence rates of diabetes have not

yet expanded Medicaid as of September 2015, and more studies are needed to fully understand ACA impacts on diabetes care.

Electronic Health Record Policies

Another very important change in federal policy with significant implications for diabetes care was the 2009 Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health (HITECH) Act aiming to expand adoption of electronic health records (EHR) in clinical practice [170, 171]. Specifically, the HITECH Act aimed to expand "meaningful use," where EHRs could be leveraged to help increase quality, safety, and efficiency of care [172]. The use of diabetes registries and clinical decision support tools are two examples of "meaningful use" of EHRs to improve diabetes care and outcomes [171, 173, 174]. Health IT tools designed to support diabetes care are increasingly being studied, and there are growing efforts to engage patients in their care using data from the EHR (i.e., secure messaging, self-management programs). However, important limitations persist including challenges of data security, exchanging data between different EHR platforms, and variability in the support and use of more advanced functions [175].

Research Gaps

Ultimately, success in addressing diabetes and related disparities will be contingent upon how rapidly, efficiently, and effectively existing evidence-based care programs can be translated, adopted, and sustained in clinical and community venues. More and rigorous theory-based translation/implementation research is needed. Implementation sciences involve studying the barriers and processes that lead to effectiveness of interventions (already proven in efficacy trials) in real-life clinical and community settings, as well as investigating the adaptations required to embed these interventions into routine practice. These data can help support communities, clinicians, and decision-makers to become increasingly skilled and comfortable with implementing programs and policies [176–178].

It must also be said that, to truly realize the "triple aim" of better health, better care, and lower cost for the nation with regard to diabetes [179], we cannot ignore the importance of prevention and the health policies needed to support this. The current growth in absolute numbers with diabetes and associated healthcare costs is untenable, and bending the cost curve requires greater adoption of individual-level interventions to prevent diabetes. Similarly, more rigorous evaluation of population-based interventions (e.g., soda taxes) is also needed. Studies assessing the long-term impacts of recent policy changes, under both the HITECH Act and ACA, are also needed. The use of rigorous quasi experiments has increased, and it is hoped that these shed light on appropriate and cost-effective policies and programs for employers, communities, counties, states, and even the federal government to adopt and invest in.

Concluding Remarks

The story of diabetes in the United States over the past quarter century is one of good and bad news. The evidence base for diabetes prevention and management has grown, and with that, there have been improvements in care and control of diabetes [60] and associated comorbidities. However, major gaps persist: (1) The proportion of people with undiagnosed diabetes and prediabetes has not improved, (2) engagement in prevention is exceedingly low, and (3) young adults and disenfranchised populations with diabetes fare poorly in terms of control.

Furthermore, while incidence rates of "classical" diabetes complications like myocardial infarction, stroke, and amputations have dramatically declined in the last 20 years, the overall burden continues to rise due to growing numbers with diabetes and its complications. Again, declines in incidence were less impressive for young adults, minorities, and low socioeconomic populations; and there have been increases in other diabetes complications like cognitive decline, depression, and heart failure. As such, it appears that younger people with diabetes will contend with classical complications earlier in life and older Americans with diabetes will contend with more years of physical and mental disability. This has profound implications for US healthcare in terms of the volume, complexity (i.e., multi-morbidity) of cases, and health system costs related to diabetes.

The changing demographics of people with diabetes in the United States has implications for care in terms of how those affected culturally and psychologically view their illness, if and how they access care, and progression of disease. Equally, the changing nature of how and where diabetes is managed will influence the impacts that this devastating disease places on this nation.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Which of the following statements is correct about trends in diabetes in the United States over the period 1990–2015?
   (a) Nearly 90% of people with diabetes remain undiagnosed.

(b) The absolute numbers of people with diabetes complications like heart attacks and strokes have declined.
(c) The proportion of people with diagnosed diabetes achieving individual care goals (like controlling glycemia) has increased.
(d) All of the above are true.

2. Regarding quality of diabetes care in the United States, which of the following statements is false:
   (a) Since the 1990s, there have been concerted state, federal, and nongovernmental efforts to improve diabetes care goals through measurement and action.
   (b) Treatment targets for diabetes are static and do not change as more and newer evidence is uncovered.
   (c) Most of diabetes care is delivered in outpatient settings.
   (d) Comparing outpatient primary vs. specialty care for diabetes, studies have found no major difference in quality of care.
3. True or False: the United States experiences disparities in terms of diabetes-related health outcomes between people of different race/ethnicities, age, gender, and geographies.
4. Regarding the factors related to quality of diabetes care in the United States, which of the following statements is false:
   (a) All gaps in quality are due to patient non-compliance.
   (b) There are reports of unconscious biases that physicians have toward some of their patients which result in some patients doing better than others.
   (c) Clinical inertia is a term to describe how physicians might be reluctant to prescribe certain therapies or intensify certain therapies – for example, insulin.
   (d) System-level barriers to care like limited financial coverage for care have been associated with poorer health outcomes.
5. Which of the following statements best characterizes quality improvement interventions for diabetes?
   (a) Quality improvement interventions have no supporting evidence base and are mostly discovered by trial and error.
   (b) Quality improvement interventions mainly target patients since most of quality gaps are due to patient non-compliance.
   (c) Gaps in diabetes care are usually multifactorial, and so interventions that address several barriers and are "integrated" are more likely to be effective.
   (d) None of the above is correct.
6. Regarding delivering quality improvement interventions for diabetes, which of the following statements is most correct:
   (a) Quality improvement programs are only aimed at specialty care and have no place in primary care.
   (b) Each of the theories (e.g., the chronic care model, collaborative care, etc.) that underpin integrated care delivery is very different and does not have any common features.
   (c) The evidence to support quality improvement interventions for diabetes is weak (i.e., there are no randomized controlled trials or meta-analyses).
   (d) None of the above are true.
7. Patient-centered medical homes (PCMHs) include which of the following features:
   (a) Care coordination using physician and non-physician providers
   (b) Paper-based charting for most patient visits/encounters
   (c) Avoiding costly referrals to subspecialists and consultants
   (d) Enrolling healthier and younger subsets of patients to the practice
8. Challenges for practices considering implementation of patient-centered medical homes (PCMHs) include all of the following except:
   (a) Increased staffing needs
   (b) Costly investment in electronic health records (EHRs)
   (c) Lack of endorsement by professional medical societies and large integrated health systems
   (d) Compliance with accreditation standards to maintain PCMH status
9. Which of the following is false regarding the use of electronic health records (EHRs)?
   (a) EHRs are supported by national policy including the 2009 Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health (HITECH) Act.
   (b) EHRs increase quality of care.
   (c) EHRs decrease efficiency and safety of care.
   (d) EHRs incorporate clinical decision support tools.
10. Regarding pay-for-performance programs, which of the following statements is false:
    (a) Pay-for-performance programs are used to incentivize the use of quality measures.
    (b) Pay-for-performance programs were expanded under the Affordable Care Act (ACA).
    (c) Pay-for-performance programs are used by both private and public insurance programs.
    (d) Pay-for-performance programs have consistently led to improvements in patient care and outcomes.

Correct Answers

1. (c) The proportion of people with diagnosed diabetes achieving individual care goals (like controlling glycemia) has increased.
2. (b) Treatment targets for diabetes are static and do not change as more and newer evidence is uncovered.
3. True
4. (a) All gaps in quality are due to patient non-compliance.
5. (c) Gaps in diabetes care are usually multifactorial, and so interventions that address several barriers and are "integrated" are more likely to be effective.
6. (d) None of the above are true.
7. (a) Care coordination using physician and non-physician providers
8. (c) Lack of endorsement by professional medical societies and large integrated health systems
9. (c) EHRs decrease efficiency and safety of care.
10. (d) Pay-for-performance programs have consistently led to improvements in patient care and outcomes.

References

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National diabetes statistics report: estimates of diabetes and its burden in the United States, 2017. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2017 [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pdfs/data/statistics/national-diabetes-statistics-report.pdf.
2. Gerstein HC, et al. Annual incidence and relative risk of diabetes in people with various categories of dysglycemia: a systematic overview and meta-analysis of prospective studies. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2007;78(3):305–12.
3. Menke A, et al. Prevalence of and trends in diabetes among adults in the United States, 1988-2012. JAMA. 2015;314(10):1021–9.
4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National diabetes statistics report: estimates of diabetes and its burden in the United States, 2014. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2014 [cited 2017 February]; Available from: http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pubs/statsreport14/national-diabetes-report-web.pdf.
5. American Diabetes Association. Economic costs of diabetes in the U.S. in 2012. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(4):1033–46.
6. Thorpe KE, Ogden LL, Galactionova K. Chronic conditions account for rise in Medicare spending from 1987 to 2006. Health Aff (Millwood). 2010;29(4):718–24.
7. Ali MK, et al. A cascade of care for diabetes in the United States: visualizing the gaps. Ann Intern Med. 2014;161(10):681–9.
8. Wills AK, et al. Maternal and paternal height and BMI and patterns of fetal growth: the Pune Maternal Nutrition Study. Early Hum Dev. 2010;86(9):535–40.
9. Lin SF, Lin JD, Huang YY. Diabetic ketoacidosis: comparisons of patient characteristics, clinical presentations and outcomes today and 20 years ago. Chang Gung Med J. 2005;28(1):24–30.
10. Otto MH, et al. Diabetic ketoacidosis in Denmark: incidence and mortality estimated from public health registries. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2007;76(1):51–6.
11. Chaturvedi N. The burden of diabetes and its complications: trends and implications for intervention. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2007;76(1):S3–12.
12. Zimmet P. Preventing diabetic complications: a primary care perspective. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2009;84(2):107–16.
13. Raheja BS, et al. DiabCare Asia–India Study: diabetes care in India–current status. J Assoc Physicians India. 2001;49:717–22.
14. Danaei G, et al. Global and regional mortality from ischaemic heart disease and stroke attributable to higher-than-optimum blood glucose concentration: comparative risk assessment. Lancet. 2006;368(9548):1651–9.
15. Aschner P. Diabetes trends in Latin America. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2002;18(S3):S27–31.
16. Stamler J, et al. Diabetes, other risk factors, and 12-yr cardiovascular mortality for men screened in the Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial. Diabetes Care. 1993;16(2):434–44.
17. Forbes JM, Cooper ME. Mechanisms of diabetic complications. Physiol Rev. 2013;93(1):137–88.
18. Cheng YJ, Imperatore G, Geiss LS, Wang J, Saydah SH, Cowie CC, Gregg EW. Secular changes in the age-specific prevalence of diabetes among U.S. adults: 1988–2010. Diabetes Care 2013;36:2690–96.
19. Plantinga LC, et al. Prevalence of chronic kidney disease in US adults with undiagnosed diabetes or prediabetes. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2010;5:673.
20. Li Y, et al. Awareness of prediabetes – United States, 2005–2010. Morbid Mortal Wkly. 2013;62(11):209–12.
21. Diabetes Prevention Program Research, G. 10-year follow-up of diabetes incidence and weight loss in the Diabetes Prevention Program Outcomes Study. The Lancet. 374(9702):1677–86.
22. Lindstrom J, et al. Improved lifestyle and decreased diabetes risk over 13 years: long-term follow-up of the randomised Finnish Diabetes Prevention Study (DPS). Diabetologia. 2013;56(2):284–93.
23. Hoerger TJ, et al. Screening for type 2 diabetes mellitus: a cost-effectiveness analysis. Ann Intern Med. 2004;140(9):689–99.
24. Gillies CL, et al. Different strategies for screening and prevention of type 2 diabetes in adults: cost effectiveness analysis. BMJ. 2008;336(7654):1180–5.
25. Echouffo-Tcheugui JB, et al. Screening for type 2 diabetes and dysglycemia. Epidemiol Rev. 2011;33(1):63–87.
26. Standards of medical care in diabetes–2013. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(Suppl 1):S11–66.
27. Screening for type 2 diabetes mellitus in adults: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. Ann Intern Med. 2008;148(11):846–54.
28. Siu AL. Screening for abnormal blood glucose and type 2 diabetes mellitus: U.S. preventive services task force recommendation statement screening for abnormal blood glucose and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med. 2015;163(11):861–8.
29. Bullard KM, et al. Receipt of glucose testing and performance of two US diabetes screening guidelines, 2007–2012. PLoS One. 2015;10(4):e0125249.
30. O'Brien MJ, et al. Detecting dysglycemia using the 2015 United States preventive services task force screening criteria: a cohort analysis of community health center patients. PLoS Med. 2016;13(7):e1002074.
31. UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) Group. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). Lancet. 1998;352(9131):837–53.
32. Nathan DM, et al. Intensive diabetes treatment and cardiovascular disease in patients with type 1 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2005;353(25):2643–53.

33. Tandon N, Ali MK, Narayan KM. Pharmacologic prevention of microvascular and macrovascular complications in diabetes mellitus: implications of the results of recent clinical trials in type 2 diabetes. Am J Cardiovasc Drugs. 2012;12(1):7–22.
34. Chalmers J, Arima H. Management of hypertension: evidence from the Blood Pressure Lowering Treatment Trialists' Collaboration and from major clinical trials. Pol Arch Med Wewn. 2009;119(6):373–80.
35. Cholesterol Treatment Trialists, C. Efficacy and safety of LDL-lowering therapy among men and women: meta-analysis of individual data from 174 000 participants in 27 randomised trials. Lancet. 2015;385(9976):1397–405.
36. Mohiuddin SM, et al. Intensive smoking cessation intervention reduces mortality in high-risk smokers with cardiovascular disease. Chest. 2007;131(2):446–52.
37. Ahmann AJ. Guidelines and performance measures for diabetes. Am J Manag Care. 2007;13(Suppl 2):S41–6.
38. Pogach L, Aron DC. Sudden acceleration of diabetes quality measures. JAMA. 2011;305(7):709–10.
39. MN Community Measurement. 2012 health care quality report. 2012 [cited 2013 November]; Available from: http://mncm.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/04/2012_Final_HealthCareQualityReport_2.18.13.pdf.
40. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes—2014. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(Supplement 1):S14–80.
41. International Diabetes Federation. IDF clinical practice guidelines. 2013 [cited 2014 March]; Available from: http://www.idf.org/guidelines.
42. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Preventing type 2 diabetes – risk identification and interventions for individuals at high risk (PH38). Public Health Guidance 2013 [cited 2013 July 25]; Available from: http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/index.jsp?action=byID&o=13791.
43. Klein R, et al., The Wisconsin Epidemiologic Study of Diabetic Retinopathy. IX. Four-year incidence and progression of diabetic retinopathy when age at diagnosis is less than 30 years. Arch Ophthalmol. 1989;107(2):237–43.
44. Klein, R., et al., The Wisconsin Epidemiologic Study of Diabetic Retinopathy. X. Four-year incidence and progression of diabetic retinopathy when age at diagnosis is 30 years or more. Arch Ophthalmol. 1989;107(2):244–9.
45. Echouffo-Tcheugui JB, et al. Screening intervals for diabetic retinopathy and incidence of visual loss: a systematic review. Diabet Med. 2013;30(11):1272–92.
46. The Diabetic Retinopathy Study Research Group, et al. Ophthalmology. 1981;88(7):583–600.
47. Early Treatment Diabetic Retinopathy Study Research Group. Early photocoagulation for diabetic retinopathy. ETDRS report number 9. Ophthalmology. 1991;98(5 Suppl):766–85.
48. Boulton AJ, et al. The global burden of diabetic foot disease. Lancet. 2005;366(9498):1719–24.
49. Boulton AJM. The diabetic foot: a global view. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2000;16(S1):S2–5.
50. Fernando DJ. The prevalence of neuropathic foot ulceration in Sri Lankan diabetic patients. Ceylon Med J. 1996;41(3):96–8.
51. Björk S. The cost of diabetes and diabetes care. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2001;54(Supplement 1):13–8.
52. Oyibo SO, et al. The effects of ulcer size and site, patient's age, sex and type and duration of diabetes on the outcome of diabetic foot ulcers. Diabet Med. 2001;18(2):133–8.
53. Boulton AJM, et al. Comprehensive Foot Examination and Risk Assessment: a report of the Task Force of the Foot Care Interest Group of the American Diabetes Association, with endorsement by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists. Diabetes Care. 2008;31(8):1679–85.
54. Association, A.D. 9. Microvascular complications and foot care. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(Supplement 1):S58–66.
55. Colquhoun AJ, et al. Effectiveness of influenza vaccine in reducing hospital admissions in people with diabetes. Epidemiol Infect. 1997;119(3):335–41.
56. Heymann AD, et al. Reduced hospitalizations and death associated with influenza vaccination among patients with and without diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(11):2581–4.
57. Lau D, et al. Effectiveness of influenza vaccination in working-age adults with diabetes: a population-based cohort study. Thorax. 2013;68(7):658–63.
58. Pozzilli P, et al. The immune response to influenza vaccination in diabetic patients. Diabetologia. 1986;29(12):850–4.
59. Rodriguez-Blanco T, et al. Relationship between annual influenza vaccination and winter mortality in diabetic people over 65 years. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2012;8(3):363–70.
60. Ali MK, et al. Achievement of goals in U.S. diabetes care, 1999–2010. N Engl J Med. 2013;368(17):1613–24.
61. Gregg EW, et al. Changes in diabetes-related complications in the United States, 1990–2010. N Engl J Med. 2014;370(16):1514–23.
62. Gregg EW, et al. Trends in lifetime risk and years of life lost due to diabetes in the USA, 1985–2011: a modelling study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2014;2(11):867–74.
63. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National diabetes surveillance system. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [cited 2017 February]; Available from: http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/data/national.html.
64. Griffin S. Diabetes care in general practice: meta-analysis of randomised control trials. BMJ. 1998;317(7155):390–6.
65. Atlas SJ, et al. Patient-physician connectedness and quality of primary care. Ann Intern Med. 2009;150(5):325–35.
66. Morrison F, et al. Performance of primary care physicians and other providers on key process measures in the treatment of diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(5):1147–52.
67. Saudek CD. The role of primary care professionals in managing diabetes. Clin Diabetes. 2002;20(2):65–6.
68. Ashman J, Talwalkar A, Taylor S. Age differences in visits to office-based physicians by patients with diabetes: United States, 2010. In: NCHS data brief. Hyattsville: National Center for Health Statistics; 2014.
69. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. Paris FR. Health at a Glance 2015. How the United States Compare?
70. Peters AL, et al. Quality of outpatient care provided to diabetic patients. A health maintenance organization experience. Diabetes Care. 1996;19(6):601–6.
71. Ali MK, Bullard KM, Gregg EW. Achievement of goals in U.S. Diabetes Care, 1999–2010. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(3):287–8.
72. Zgibor JC, Songer TJ. External barriers to diabetes care: addressing personal and health systems issues. Diabetes Spectr. 2001;14(1):23–8.
73. Grintsova O, Maier W, Mielck A. Inequalities in health care among patients with type 2 diabetes by individual socio-economic status (SES) and regional deprivation: a systematic literature review. Int J Equity Health. 2014;13:43.
74. Connolly V, et al. Diabetes prevalence and socioeconomic status: a population based study showing increased prevalence of type 2 diabetes mellitus in deprived areas. J Epidemiol Community Health. 2000;54(3):173–7.
75. Zhang JX, et al. Insurance status and quality of diabetes care in community health centers. Am J Public Health. 2009;99(4):742–7.
76. Zhang X, et al. Access to health care and control of ABCs of diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2012;35(7):1566–71.
77. Saaddine JB, et al. A diabetes report card for the United States: quality of care in the 1990s. Ann Intern Med. 2002;136(8):565–74.

78. Schmittdiel JA, et al. Why don't diabetes patients achieve recommended risk factor targets? Poor adherence versus lack of treatment intensification. J Gen Intern Med. 2008;23(5):588–94.
79. Osterberg L, Blaschke T. Adherence to medication. N Engl J Med. 2005;353(5):487–97.
80. Marathe PH, Gao HX, Close KL. American Diabetes Association standards of medical care in diabetes 2017. J Diabetes. 2017;9(4):320–4.
81. Karter AJ, et al. Barriers to insulin initiation: the translating research into action for diabetes insulin starts project. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(4):733–5.
82. Ratanawongsa N, et al. Getting under the skin of clinical inertia in insulin initiation: the Translating Research Into Action for Diabetes (TRIAD) Insulin Starts Project. Diabetes Educ. 2012;38(1):94–100.
83. The TRIAD Study Group. Health Systems, Patients Factors, and Quality of care for diabetes: a synthesis of findings from the TRIAD Study. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(4):940–7.
84. Munshi MN, et al. Assessment of barriers to improve diabetes management in older adults: a randomized controlled study. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(3):543–9.
85. Reed M, et al. Outpatient electronic health records and the clinical care and outcomes of patients with diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med. 2012;157(7):482–9.
86. Karter AJ, et al. Out-of-pocket costs and diabetes preventive services: the Translating Research Into Action for Diabetes (TRIAD) study. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(8):2294–9.
87. Geiss LS, et al. Increasing prevalence of diagnosed diabetes — United States and Puerto Rico, 1995–2010. Morbid Mortal Wkly Rep (MMWR). 2012;61(45):918–21.
88. Geiss LS, et al. Prevalence and incidence trends for diagnosed diabetes among adults aged 20 to 79 years, United States, 1980–2012. JAMA. 2014;312(12):1218–26.
89. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National diabetes statistics report: estimates of diabetes and its burden in the United States, 2014. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 2014; Available from: http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pubs/statsreport14/national-diabetes-report-web.pdf.
90. Institute of, M. In: Brian DS, Adrienne YS, Alan RN, editors. Unequal treatment: confronting racial and ethnic disparities in health care (full printed version). Washington, D.C.: The National Academies Press; 2003.
91. Sequist TD, et al. Physician performance and racial disparities in diabetes mellitus care. Arch Intern Med. 2008;168(11):1145–51.
92. Brown AF, et al. Race, ethnicity, socioeconomic position, and quality of care for adults with diabetes enrolled in managed care: the Translating Research Into Action for Diabetes (TRIAD) study. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(12):2864–70.
93. Gregg EW, Williams DE, Geiss L. Changes in diabetes-related complications in the United States. N Engl J Med. 2014;371(3):286–7.
94. Bird CE, Fremont A, Hanson M. Mapping gender differences in cardiovascular disease and diabetes care: a pilot assessment of LDL cholesterol testing rates in a California health plan. Rand Health Q. 2014;4(1):5.
95. Sarafidis PA, McFarlane SI, Bakris GL. Gender disparity in outcomes of care and management for diabetes and the metabolic syndrome. Curr Diab Rep. 2006;6(3):219–24.
96. Chou AF, et al. Gender and racial disparities in the management of diabetes mellitus among Medicare patients. Womens Health Issues. 2007;17(3):150–61.
97. Ferrara A, et al. Sex disparities in control and treatment of modifiable cardiovascular disease risk factors among patients with diabetes: Translating Research Into Action for Diabetes (TRIAD) Study. Diabetes Care. 2008;31(1):69–74.
98. Gaskin DJ, et al. Disparities in diabetes: the nexus of race, poverty, and place. Am J Public Health. 2014;104(11):2147–55.
99. Bailey SC, et al. Update on health literacy and diabetes. Diabetes Educ. 2014;40(5):581–604.
100. Institute of, M. In: Lynn N-B, Allison MP, David AK, editors. Health literacy: a prescription to end confusion. Washington, D.C.: The National Academies Press; 2004.
101. Hogan DR, et al. Estimating the potential impact of insurance expansion on undiagnosed and uncontrolled chronic conditions. Health Aff. 2015;34(9):1554–62.
102. Hu R, et al. Insurance, racial/ethnic, SES-related disparities in quality of care among US adults with diabetes. J Immigr Minor Health. 2014;16(4):565–75.
103. Sequist TD, et al. Primary-care clinician perceptions of racial disparities in diabetes care. J Gen Intern Med. 2008;23(5):678–84.
104. White RO, Beech BM, Miller S. Health care disparities and diabetes care: practical considerations for primary care providers. Clin Diabetes. 2009;27(3):105–12.
105. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Racial and ethnic approaches to community health (REACH). [cited 2017 June 24]; Available from: https://www.cdc.gov/nccdphp/dnpao/state-local-programs/reach/.
106. Burrus BB, Liburd LC, Burroughs A. Maximizing participation by black Americans in population-based diabetes research: the Project DIRECT pilot experience. J Community Health. 1998;23(1):15–27.
107. Leonard Jack J, et al. Influence of the environmental context on diabetes self-management: a rationale for developing a new research paradigm in diabetes education. Diabetes Educ. 1999;25(5):775–90.
108. Liburd LC, et al. Body size and body shape: perceptions of black women with diabetes. Diabetes Educ. 1999;25(3):382–8.
109. Engelgau MM, et al. A project to reduce the burden of diabetes in the African-American Community: Project DIRECT. J Natl Med Assoc. 1998;90(10):605–13.
110. Brown JB, Nichols GA, Perry A. The burden of treatment failure in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(7):1535–40.
111. Renders CM, et al. Interventions to improve the management of diabetes in primary care, outpatient, and community settings: a systematic review. Diabetes Care. 2001;24(10):1821–33.
112. Tricco AC, et al. Effectiveness of quality improvement strategies on the management of diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet. 2012;379(9833):2252–61.
113. Griffin SJ, et al. Effect of early intensive multifactorial therapy on 5-year cardiovascular outcomes in individuals with type 2 diabetes detected by screening (ADDITION-Europe): a cluster-randomised trial. Lancet. 2011;378(9786):156–67.
114. Wagner EH, Austin BT, Von Korff M. Organizing care for patients with chronic illness. Milbank Q. 1996;74(4):511–44.
115. Gaede P, et al. Multifactorial intervention and cardiovascular disease in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2003;348(5):383–93.
116. Institute of Medicine. In: Committee on Quality of Health Care in America, editor. Crossing the quality chasm: a new health system for the 21st century. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press; 2001.
117. O'Connor PJ, et al. Variation in quality of diabetes care at the levels of patient, physician, and clinic. Prev Chronic Dis. 2008;5(1):A15.
118. Schmittdiel JA, et al. The effectiveness of diabetes care management in managed care. Am J Manag Care. 2009;15(5):295–301.
119. McMahon GT, Dluhy RG. Diabetes report card–time for a winning streak. N Engl J Med. 2013;368(17):1650–1.
120. Stellefson M, Dipnarine K, Stopka C. The chronic care model and diabetes management in US primary care settings: a systematic review. Prev Chronic Dis. 2013;10:E26.
121. Raney LE. Integrating primary care and behavioral health: the role of the psychiatrist in the collaborative care model. Am J Psychiatry. 2015;172(8):721–8.

122. Katon WJ, et al. Collaborative care for patients with depression and chronic illnesses. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(27):2611–20.
123. Rossom RC, et al. Impact of a national collaborative care initiative for patients with depression and diabetes or cardiovascular disease. Gen Hosp Psychiatry. 2017;44:77–85.
124. Lustman PJ, et al. Fluoxetine for depression in diabetes: a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial. Diabetes Care. 2000;23(5):618–23.
125. Lustman PJ, et al. Effects of nortriptyline on depression and glycemic control in diabetes: results of a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Psychosom Med. 1997;59(3):241–50.
126. Lustman PJ, et al. Cognitive behavior therapy for depression in type 2 diabetes mellitus. A randomized, controlled trial. Ann Intern Med. 1998;129(8):613–21.
127. Katon WJ, et al. The Pathways Study: a randomized trial of collaborative care in patients with diabetes and depression. Arch Gen Psychiatry. 2004;61(10):1042–9.
128. Simon GE, et al. Cost-effectiveness of systematic depression treatment among people with diabetes mellitus. Arch Gen Psychiatry. 2007;64(1):65–72.
129. Blumenthal JA, et al. Effects of exercise training on older patients with major depression. Arch Intern Med. 1999;159(19):2349–56.
130. Testa MA, Simonson DC. Health economic benefits and quality of life during improved glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a randomized, controlled, double-blind trial. JAMA. 1998;280(17):1490–6.
131. Wing RR, Phelan S, Tate D. The role of adherence in mediating the relationship between depression and health outcomes. J Psychosom Res. 2002;53(4):877–81.
132. Hennink MM, et al. How are qualitative methods used in diabetes research? A 30-year systematic review. Glob Public Health. 2016;11:1–20.
133. Simon GE, et al. Cost-effectiveness of systematic depression treatment for high utilizers of general medical care. Arch Gen Psychiatry. 2001;58(2):181–7.
134. Kates N, Craven M. Shared mental health care. Update from the Collaborative Working Group of the College of Family Physicians of Canada and the Canadian Psychiatric Association. Can Fam Physician. 2002;48:936.
135. Meadows GN. Establishing a collaborative service model for primary mental health care. Med J Aust. 1998;168(4):162–5.
136. Wagner EH. Chronic disease management: what will it take to improve care for chronic illness? Eff Clin Pract. 1998;1(1):2–4.
137. Von Korff M, et al. Collaborative management of chronic illness. Ann Intern Med. 1997;127(12):1097–102.
138. Kilo CM, Wasson JH. Practice redesign and the patient-centered medical home: history, promises, and challenges. Health Aff (Millwood). 2010;29(5):773–8.
139. Bojadzievski T, Gabbay RA. Patient-centered medical home and diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(4):1047–53.
140. Health Affairs. Patient-centered medical homes. Health Policy Briefs 2010 [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: http://www.healthaffairs.org/healthpolicybriefs/brief.php?brief_id=25.
141. American Academy of Family Physicians (AAFP) American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) American College of Physicians (ACP) American Osteopathic Association (AOA). Joint principles of the patient-centered medical home. 2007 [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: http://www.aafp.org/dam/AAFP/documents/practice_management/pcmh/initiatives/PCMHJoint.pdf.
142. Wagner EH, Austin BT, Von Korff M. Improving outcomes in chronic illness. Manag Care Q. 1996;4(2):12–25.
143. US Department of Veterans Affairs. Patient aligned care team (PACT). 2017 [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: https://www.patientcare.va.gov/primarycare/PACT.asp.
144. Kerr EA, et al. Diabetes care quality in the veterans affairs health care system and commercial managed care: the TRIAD study. Ann Intern Med. 2004;141(4):272–81.
145. National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA). Patient-centered medical home (PCMH) recognition. 2017 [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: http://www.ncqa.org/Programs/Recognition/Practices/PatientCenteredMedicalHomePCMH.aspx.
146. National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA). Latest evidence: benefits of the patient-centered medical home. 2017 [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: http://www.ncqa.org/programs/recognition/practices/pcmh-evidence#_ftn1.
147. Jackson GL, et al. Improving patient care. The patient centered medical home. A systematic review. Ann Intern Med. 2013;158(3):169–78.
148. Gabbay RA, et al. Multipayer patient-centered medical home implementation guided by the chronic care model. Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf. 2011;37(6):265–73.
149. Steiner BD, et al. Community care of North Carolina: improving care through community health networks. Ann Fam Med. 2008;6(4):361–7.
150. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. Medicare health care quality demonstration programs—North Carolina community care networks Fact Sheet. 2010 [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: https://innovation.cms.gov/Files/fact-sheet/MMA646-NC-CCN-Fact-Sheet.pdf.
151. Friedberg MW, et al. Association between participation in a multipayer medical home intervention and changes in quality, utilization, and costs of care. JAMA. 2014;311(8):815–25.
152. Carrier E, Gourevitch MN, Shah NR. Medical homes: challenges in translating theory into practice. Med Care. 2009;47(7):714–22.
153. American College of Physicians. Center for practice improvement & innovation's (CPII) two year study of 34 PCMHs. 2008 [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: https://www.acponline.org/practice-resources/business-resources/payment/models/pcmh/resources/articles-reports-and-abstracts.
154. National Committee for Quality Assurance (NCQA). HEDIS® & performance measurement. [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: http://www.ncqa.org/hedis-quality-measurement.
155. National Diabetes Quality Improvement Alliance. In: NIDDKD (National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases), editor. Performance measurement set for adult diabetes: Chicago; 2005.
156. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. Medicare managed care manual: chapter 11 – medicare advantage application procedures and contract requirements [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: https://www.cms.gov/Regulations-and-Guidance/Guidance/Manuals/downloads/mc86c11.pdf.
157. US department of Health and Human Services. Payment for medicare advantage plans: policy issues and options. Office of the Assistant Secretary for Planning and Evaluation [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: https://aspe.hhs.gov/basic-report/payment-medicare-advantage-plans-policy-issues-and-options.
158. Health Affairs. Pay-for-performance. Health Policy Briefs 2012 [cited 2017 August 3]; Available from: http://www.healthaffairs.org/healthpolicybriefs/brief.php?brief_id=78.
159. Rosenthal MB, Frank RG. What is the empirical basis for paying for quality in health care? Med Care Res Rev. 2006;63(2):135–57.
160. Petersen LA, et al. Does pay-for-performance improve the quality of health care? Ann Intern Med. 2006;145(4):265–72.
161. Werner RM, et al. The effect of pay-for-performance in hospitals: lessons for quality improvement. Health Aff. 2011;30(4):690–8.
162. Damberg CL, et al. Measuring success in health care value-based purchasing programs. RAND Corporation. 2014; Available from:

http://www.rand.org/content/dam/rand/pubs/research_reports/RR300/RR306/RAND_RR306.pdf.
163. Committee on Redesigning Health Insurance Performance Measures, P, Performance Improvement Programs. In: I.o.M.o.t.N. Academies, editor. Rewarding provider performance: aligning incentives in medicare. Washington, D.C.: The National Academies Press; 2006.
164. Casalino LP, et al. Will pay-for-performance and quality reporting affect health care disparities? Health Aff (Millwood). 2007;26(3):w405–14.
165. Doran T, et al. Pay-for-performance programs in family practices in the United Kingdom. N Engl J Med. 2006;355(4):375–84.
166. Eijkenaar F. Key issues in the design of pay for performance programs. Eur J Health Econ. 2013;14(1):117–31.
167. McDonald R, Roland M. Pay for performance in primary care in England and California: comparison of unintended consequences. Ann Fam Med. 2009;7(2):121–7.
168. Thorpe KE. Analysis & commentary: the Affordable Care Act lays the groundwork for a national diabetes prevention and treatment strategy. Health Aff (Millwood). 2012;31(1):61–6.
169. Myerson R, Laiteerapong N. The affordable care act and diabetes diagnosis and care: exploring the potential impacts. Curr Diab Rep. 2016;16(4):27.
170. Ahmad FS, Tsang T. Diabetes prevention, health information technology, and meaningful use: challenges and opportunities. Am J Prev Med. 2013;44(4 Suppl 4):S357–63.
171. Patel V, Reed ME, Grant RW. Electronic health records and the evolution of diabetes care: a narrative review. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2015;9(3):676–80.
172. Blumenthal D, Tavenner M. The "meaningful use" regulation for electronic health records. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(6):501–4.
173. Stroebel RJ, et al. A randomized trial of three diabetes registry implementation strategies in a community internal medicine practice. Jt Comm J Qual Improv. 2002;28(8):441–50.
174. Holbrook A, et al. Individualized electronic decision support and reminders to improve diabetes care in the community: COMPETE II randomized trial. CMAJ. 2009;181(1–2):37–44.
175. Gold M, Mc LC. Assessing HITECH implementation and lessons: 5 years later. Milbank Q. 2016;94(3):654–87.
176. Narayan KM, et al. Diabetes translation research: where are we and where do we want to be? Ann Intern Med. 2004;140(11):958–63.
177. Narayan KM, et al. Translation research for chronic disease: the case of diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2000;23(12):1794–8.
178. Garfield SA, et al. Considerations for diabetes translational research in real-world settings. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(9):2670–4.
179. Haw JS, Narayan KM, Ali MK. Quality improvement in diabetes-successful in achieving better care with hopes for prevention. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2015;1353(1):138–51.
180. Inzucchi SE, et al. Management of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes, 2015: a patient-centered approach: update to a position statement of the American Diabetes Association and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(1):140–9.
181. Ismail-Beigi F, et al. Individualizing glycemic targets in type 2 diabetes mellitus: implications of recent clinical trials. Ann Intern Med. 2011;154(8):554–9.
182. Khan L, Mincemoyer S, Gabbay RA. Diabetes registries: where we are and where are we headed? Diabetes Technol Ther. 2009;11(4):255–62.
183. Rittenhouse DR, et al. Measuring the medical home infrastructure in large medical groups. Health Aff (Millwood). 2008;27(5):1246–58.

Diabetes Management in Africa

18

Simeon Pierre Choukem, Christian Akem Dimala, Camille Maadjhou, and Jean Claude Mbanya

Explanatory Box 18.1: Chapter Objectives

- To discuss the current issues related to diabetes management in Africa
- To review the most frequent treatment strategies and protocols for diabetes in Africa
- To discuss the challenges to the adequate management of diabetes in Africa

Introduction

Beside the fact that Africa is facing the most severe increase in the number of people with diabetes over time as compared with other regions of the world [1], Africans with diabetes face specificities that should be taken into consideration when approaching diabetes management in this area of the world. The most prominent specificities are (1) the absence of global healthcare insurance and coverage and the limited number and distribution of equipped healthcare facilities in most countries, both of which certainly account for the high frequency of acute and chronic complications, and (2) the clinical heterogeneity marked by atypical phenotypes such as ketosis-prone type 2 diabetes [2].

S. P. Choukem
Department of Internal Medicine and Pediatrics, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Buea, Douala, Buea, Cameroon

Health and Human Development (2HD) Research Network, Douala, Cameroon

C. A. Dimala
Health and Human Development (2HD) Research Network, Douala, Cameroon

C. Maadjhou · J. C. Mbanya (✉)
Department of Internal Medicine and Specialties, Faculty of Medicine and Biomedical Sciences, University of Yaoundé 1, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Laboratory of Molecular and Metabolic Medicine, Biotechnology Center, University of Yaoundé 1, Yaoundé, Cameroon

As a chronic disease, the management of diabetes in Africa as in other parts of the world has greatly evolved from the traditional protocols to a more holistic and patient-centered approach. However, the health systems in Africa are often ill-equipped to manage chronic diseases, because these countries still face significant mortality and morbidity from infectious diseases which take priority on most health policy agendas [3, 4]. Nevertheless, there has been significant progress in the types and coverage of diabetes care services.

It is, however, worth noting that despite the aforementioned specificities of diabetes, there are still limited contextualized guidelines, specific to the management of diabetes in Africa, as many countries still rely on guidelines essentially used in developed countries [5, 6]. The integration of diabetes care programs in the health system has been one of the innovative methods adopted by a number of countries in Africa to improve on the management of diabetes. Alongside these programs, associations are being set up in several countries to coordinate actions at national level, all in a bid to control the burden of this disease [4].

Regarding the pharmacological means to treat diabetes, most oral antidiabetic agents are available in Africa, though the newest ones may not be financially accessible to most patients. While traditional formulations of human insulin are more accessible in most countries, insulin analogs in pens, though present in most markets, are still very expensive. Finally, attempts to define the role and include African traditional medicine and phytotherapy in the management strategy of diabetes seem to be of great interest, as these alternatives are often the recourse of many patients, because of their limited financial means and the chronic nature of the disease.

As in other parts of the world, the objectives of management of diabetes in Africa are centered on improving the quality of life of patients, reducing morbidity and mortality through prevention of disease progression and development of complications [7]. Despite the lack of general guidelines for the management of diabetes in Africa as a

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_18

whole due to the specificities of this chronic disease, some countries like South Africa, Tanzania, and Nigeria among others have produced context-specific national guidelines [8–10]. The importance of these guidelines cannot be overemphasized, given the fact that they provide a contextualized framework for rational management decisions and a guide for training healthcare providers on up-to-date evidence-based practices for diabetes management. Overall, these guidelines help to improve on the quality of care delivered to patients and reduce diabetes-related mortality and morbidity [8].

The management of diabetes in Africa can be approached from the following four perspectives:

1. Health beliefs and perceptions relating to diabetes
2. Management of blood glucose
3. Prevention and management of acute metabolic and chronic complications of diabetes
4. Management of comorbidities

Health Beliefs and Perceptions Relating to Diabetes in Africa

For a better approach to the management of diabetes in Africa, it is important to understand the beliefs, knowledge, and perceptions relating to diabetes and related risk factors. In this first section, we shall describe the health-seeking behaviors of people with diabetes in Africa and how this influences the prevention and control of diabetes.

Health-Seeking Behaviors of People with Diabetes in Africa

In Africa, although most patients believe that the ideal place to seek treatment for general healthcare including diabetes is a modern healthcare facility, patients often seek alternative or complementary treatment from folk healers and other sources, mainly because they lack money to pay health service bills. Money is seen as a major determinant of where, when, and which kind of treatment is sought during illness. Patients tend to use traditional therapies because of beliefs about the causes of their ill health and a strong cultural attachment to initial home management and only access modern health services during a crisis. Concerning some of the risk factors for diabetes, some people believe that obesity is a sign of good living and/or good health and that eating healthy is hard to sustain because of practical difficulties. Others consider less strenuous activities such as walking to be a sign of poverty and therefore see this as demeaning.

Figure 18.1 describes the behavioral factors and beliefs associated with the development and progression of diabetes in Africa. This highlights on the relative importance of various health beliefs toward a cultural understanding of diabetes in Africa.

Impact of These Beliefs on the Prevention and Control of Diabetes in Africa

Due to the beliefs described above, many people are not motivated to take action to reduce their risk of diabetes by increasing activity, changing their diet, and losing weight. In addition, home management for symptomatic relief is accepted as essential because patients taken to the hospital are thought to be likely to die. This lack of knowledge, lay beliefs about causation and treatment, and financial barrier increase the likelihood of diabetes and its complications to be managed at home or consultation of traditional healers, thereby delaying presentation to health services. Since the diagnosis of diabetes is late in Africa, most patients already present with complications at the time of diagnosis.

Figure 18.2 illustrates the strong interplay between health beliefs, knowledge, lay perceptions, and health behavior of patients with diabetes in Africa and how this influences its prevention and control. This shows that health outcomes of patients with diabetes in Africa are highly dependent on knowledge and cultural beliefs.

Management of Hyperglycemia

Maintenance of an optimal blood glucose level is fundamental to managing diabetes. This is because the complications of diabetes arise when the chronic hyperglycemia that characterizes diabetes mellitus remains untreated. Normal glycemic control can be achieved using non-pharmacologic and pharmacologic means. Non-pharmacologic means are the first line of treatment, and pharmacologic means are employed in combination. Medical nutrition therapy is the first line of treatment among the non-pharmacologic options [7]. It is worth noting that the therapeutic benefits of pharmacologic therapy are optimal when used alongside medical nutrition therapy.

Explanatory Box 18.2: Objectives of Management of Diabetes Mellitus

- Improve on the early detection of disease in affected individuals.
- Improve the quality of life of patients with diabetes.
- Prevent disease progression to complications.
- Empower patients and encourage self-care practices.

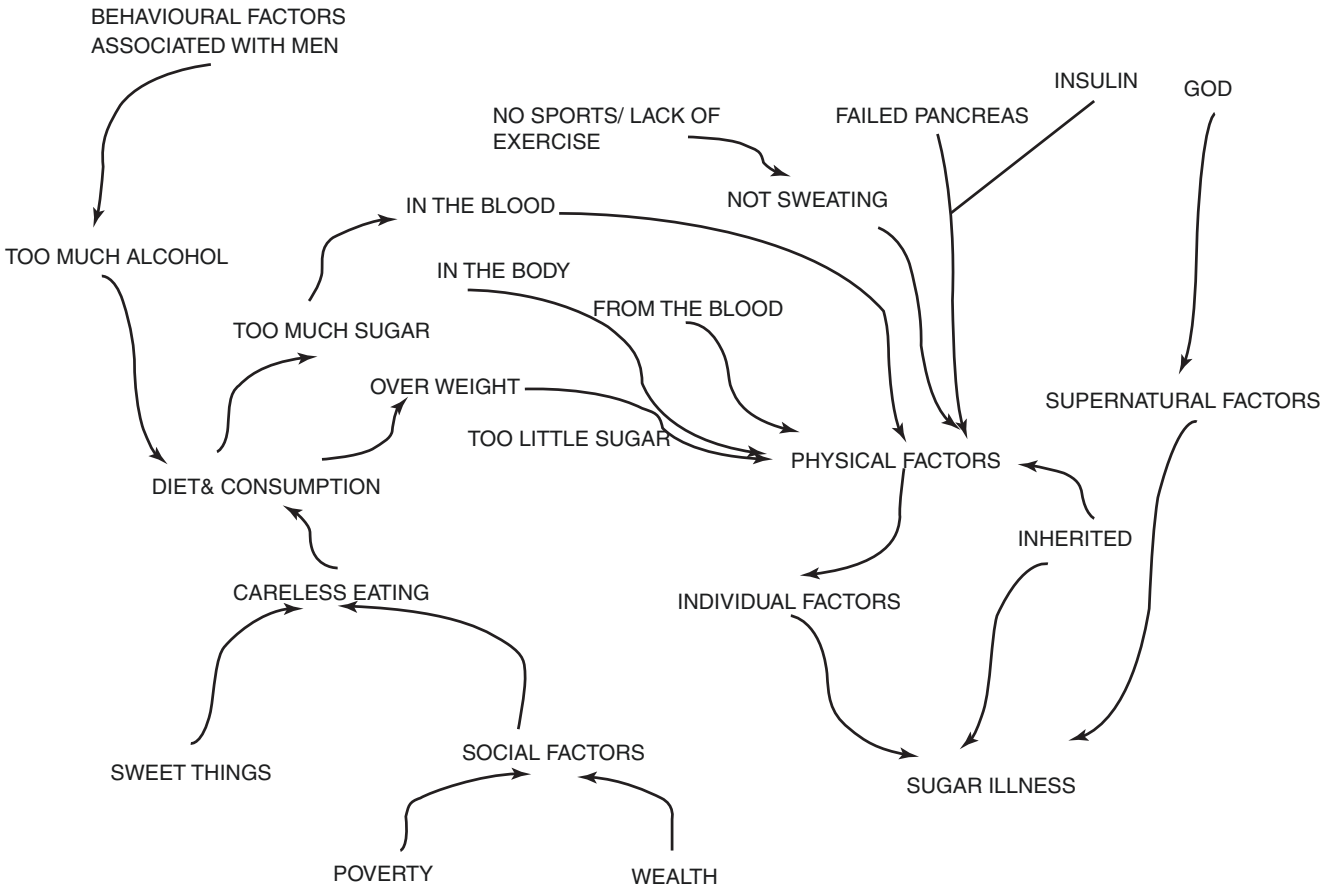


Fig. 18.1 Causal web of diabetes in Africa (Professor Jean Claude Mbanya, personal communications 2014)

Screening and Diagnosis

The asymptomatic presentation of diabetes in its early stages compromises health-seeking behavior, even among susceptible individuals. It has been estimated that a quarter of patients with diabetes at the time they seek medical attention already have complications resulting from the disease [8]. Less than 50% of participants from most studies conducted in sub-Saharan Africa were known to have diabetes with reported within-country variations; the higher percentages were reported in urban areas compared to rural areas [5]. Screening is important in the early detection of disease before the occurrence of complications, thereby reducing disease morbidity and mortality [8]. Even though the Anglo-Danish-Dutch Study of Intensive Treatment in People with Screen-Detected Diabetes in Primary Care (ADDITION)-Cambridge study found that screening for type 2 diabetes is not associated with a reduction in mortality, the careful interpretation of these findings in a resource-limited context as sub-Saharan Africa has been strongly recommended to avoid drawing faulty conclusions and inferences [12]. This is because the socioeconomic context makes Africa the area where screening is most likely to be beneficial.

Nevertheless, the implementation of large-scale population-based screening in the African context is limited by the scarcity of both human and financial resources, since well-organized clinics with suitably trained staff in diabetes screening and care are necessary for an effective screening program. Targeted screening conducted at local healthcare facility level and focused on individuals with increased disease risk is therefore preferred. Logistically less-demanding screening methods, such as risk scoring systems and questionnaires with minimal or no laboratory testing required, have been proposed for identifying people at high risk of developing diabetes [13]. The screening of diabetes is often undertaken alongside other cardiovascular risk factors such as hypertension and hyperlipidemia to ensure a holistic approach to patient care. The Society for Endocrinology, Metabolism and Diabetes of South Africa (SEMDSA) guidelines recommend screening for type 2 diabetes mellitus in all overweight adults at any age so long as they have another risk factor for diabetes and all other adults with no risk factors and aged 45 and above, with rescreening after 3 months to 3 years depending on individual risk [10]. The International Diabetes Federation, however, recommends screening for type 2 diabetes mellitus in individuals aged 40 and above, with familial predisposition, elevated body mass indices, and other cardiovascular risk factors such as high blood pressure and dyslipidemia [14].

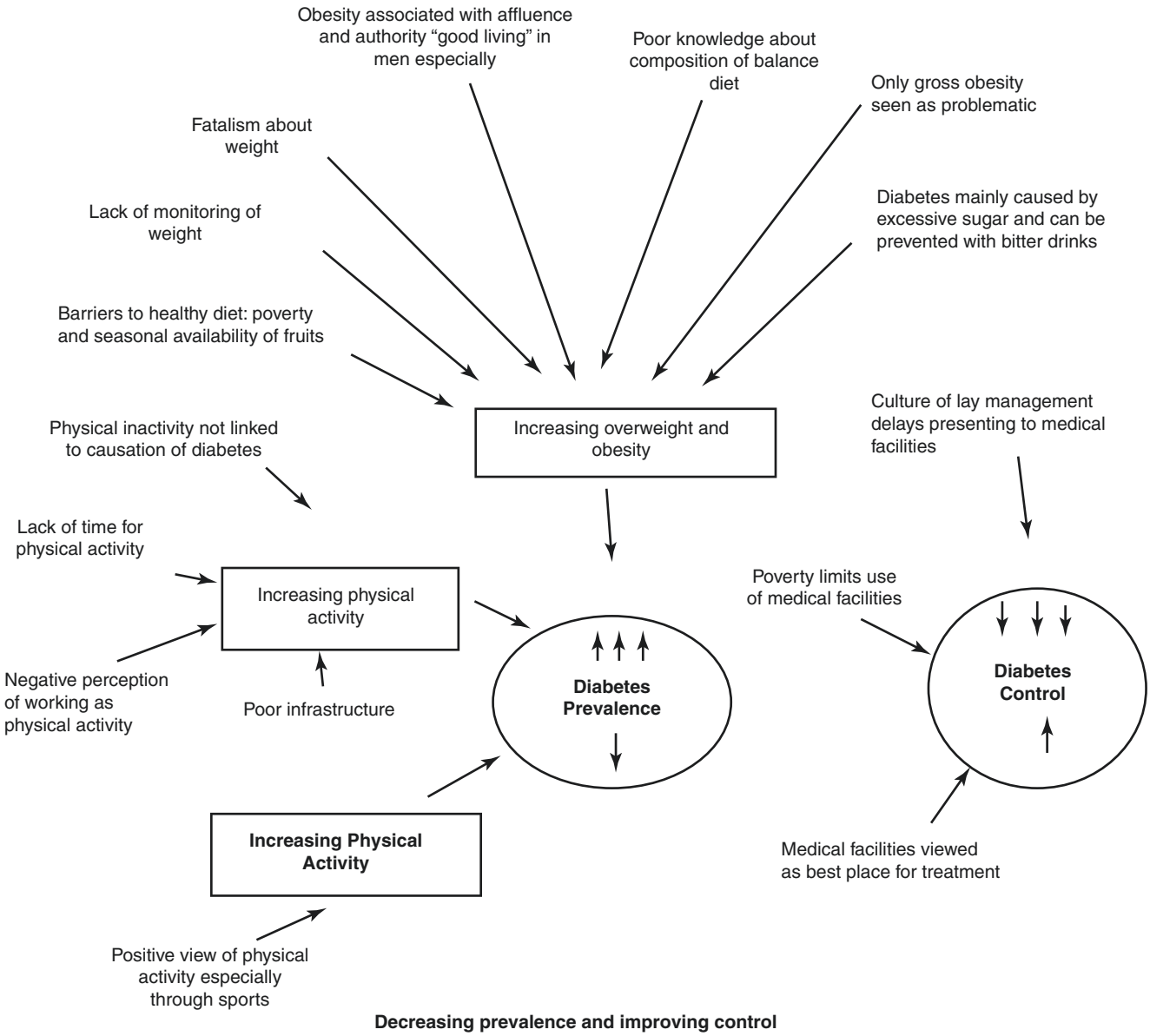


Fig. 18.2 Impact of lay health beliefs on the prevention and control of diabetes in Africa [11]

Explanatory Box 18.3: Screening of Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

For who?

- Age ≥ 45 if no risk factor
- Any age if overweight or obese with one other risk factor:
  - Family history of diabetes mellitus
  - Hypertension
  - Hyperlipidemia
  - Physical inactivity
  - Pregnancy/gestational diabetes

Methods

- Fasting blood glucose measurement
- Two-hour blood glucose (oral glucose tolerance test)
- HBA1c

Review durations

- Three-yearly in case of negative screening test
- Yearly follow-up in case of positive screening test but negative diagnostic test results

Source: Adapted from the 2017 SEMDSA Guidelines for the Management of Type 2 Diabetes [10]

The criteria for diagnosis of diabetes in Africa are similar to those recommended by the international guidelines [15]. Most patients present with acute hyperglycemia with undoubted clinical manifestations; others are diagnosed through campaigns screening or labor health screening. Oral glucose tolerance test is seldom performed, whereas using HbA1c as a means of diagnosis seems illusive because of the absence of the recommended method (high-pressure liquid chromatography) in most African countries.

Lifestyle Modification

The principal components of lifestyle modification in the African context just as in other parts of the world are diet control, weight control, physical activity, cessation of alcohol consumption, smoking, and other factors known to favor hyperglycemia or to increase the risk of complications.

Explanatory Box 18.4: Components of Lifestyle Modification

Healthy diet:

- Reducing carbohydrate, saturated fat, cholesterol, and salt intake

Weight reduction:

- Target BMI: 18.5–24.9 Kg/m^2

Regular physical activity:

- Aerobic exercises (brisk walking, cycling, swimming, dancing, water aerobics)
- Resistance exercises (free-weight lifting, exercises with weight machines)
- At least three times/week and between 20 and 30 minutes per session
- Reconsider insulin and secretagogues dosing to prevent hypoglycemia
- Consider cardiovascular assessment before and contraindications to physical activity

Reduction of alcohol consumption

Cessation of smoking

Source: Adapted from the 2012 and 2017 SEMDSA Guidelines for the Management of Type 2 Diabetes [8, 10]

Medical Nutrition Therapy

The effects and benefits of medical nutrition therapy are two-pronged: to maintain glycemia within normal limits and also to help reduce body weight which is a modifiable risk factor of diabetes. Adjustments of the diet revolve around a personalized diet based on an assessment of the patient's nutritional status within the context of sociocultural and psychological influences and tailored to the patient's needs based on ongoing monitoring of glycemia and patient support to maintenance of this plan with allowance for flexibility. Even though most patients with diabetes in Africa are aware of the importance of a healthy diet in its management, some are not aware of the specific components of the healthy diet [16].

In addition to this, lack of adherence even when the healthy diet is initiated remains common [10]. Regular medical nutrition therapy contact sessions with dietitians specialized in diabetes management are therefore recommended over the generic nutritional advices and messages often given to patients [10]. Restrictive diets consisting of protein-rich, carbohydrate-free, and fat-free items are not recommended due to no proven long-term benefit [8].

Specific dietary requirements in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus are as follows:

1. Healthy diet:
   - Increasing daily water intake and having meals at regular times daily
   - Avoiding binge eating
   - Variety of vegetables and fruits excluding fruit juices
   - Low-fat dairy products, meat alternatives, and fish
   - Limiting processed food
2. Carbohydrate:
   - Constitute 45–60% of total energy intake
   - Monitoring carbohydrate intake and limiting sugar alcohols
   - Reasonable sucrose and fructose and artificial sweeteners intakes are acceptable
3. Fats:
   - Should be <35% of the total energy intake
   - Limiting saturated and poly-saturated fats intake
   - Consume monounsaturated fat and omega-3 fatty acids from both plant (flaxseed, walnuts, and canola) and marine (fatty fish) sources instead of saturated fat
4. Proteins:
   - Should make up 15–20% of total energy intake
5. Salt:
   - Reducing dietary salt intake to control blood pressure (<2300 mg/day)
6. Vitamins and minerals:
   - Routine supplementation not required unless in some specific groups such as elderly patients or lactating pregnant women
7. Alcohol:
   - Moderate alcohol consumption for individuals who consume alcohol (one unit per day for women and two units per day for men)

These dietary requirements often difficult to accurately measure have been simplified in the healthy diabetes plate concept (Fig. 18.3a, b).

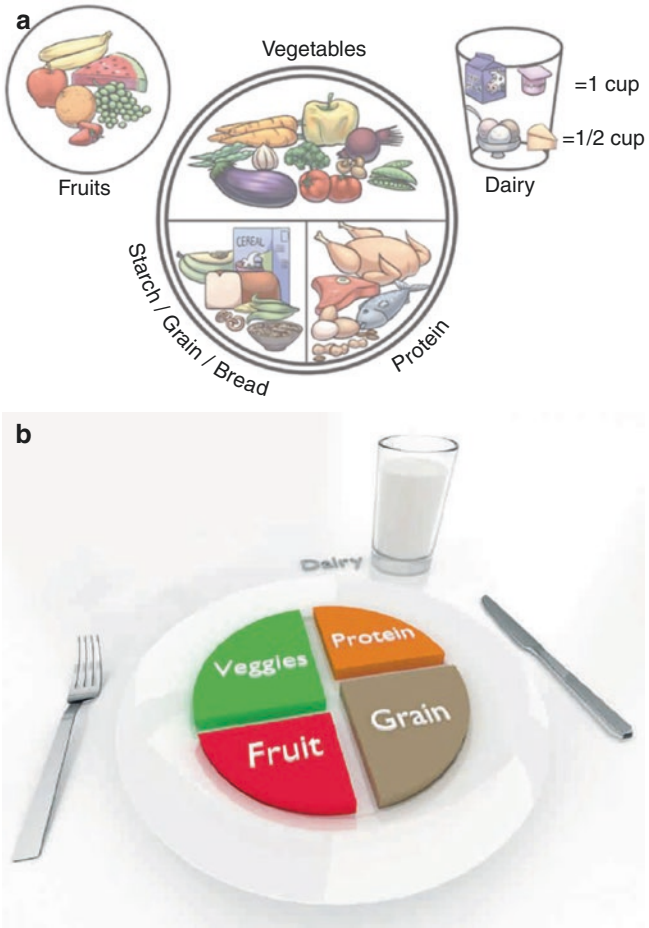


Fig. 18.3 (**a**) The healthy diabetes plate. (Source: The 2012 SEMDSA Guideline for the Management of Type 2 Diabetes [8]). (**b**) The healthy diabetes plate. (Source: Management of Gestational Diabetes in the Community. Training manual for community health workers [17])

Explanatory Box 18.5: The Healthy Diabetes Plate

To constitute the healthy diabetes plate:

- Divide into two equal halves and then divide one of these halves into two equal sections.
- The undivided half section should consist of a variety of non-starchy vegetables, such as spinach, carrots, lettuce and other greens, cabbage, green beans, broccoli, cauliflower, tomatoes, cucumber, beets, mushrooms, and peppers.
- One of the quarters should contain starchy foods, such as whole-grain breads (e.g., whole wheat or rye), whole-grain high-fiber cereal, cooked cereal (e.g., oatmeal), brown or long-grain rice, pasta, baby potatoes, green peas, sweet potatoes, whole-grain crackers, and fat-free popcorn.
- The other quarter section should contain meat and meat substitutes, such as skinless chicken and Turkey portions, fish and other seafood, lean cuts of beef and pork (e.g., sirloin, filet, or pork loin), tofu, soya, eggs, and low-fat cheese. Avoid processed meats (e.g., salami, Vienna sausages, and polony), which are high in fat and salt.
- A glass (240 ml) of nonfat or low-fat milk or 180 ml of light yogurt (at least two servings per day).
- A medium portion of fruit (such as oranges, apples, pears, or small bananas), or two small fruits (such as plums or peaches), or three quarters of a cup of fresh fruit salad. Instead of eating fruit with meals, these are eaten as snacks between meals.

Physical Activity and Other Lifestyle Measures

With obesity and overweight as risk factors for insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes mellitus, weight loss stands out as an important factor to be considered in order to prevent or manage diabetes mellitus. Adjustments in weight should therefore be tailored to match the individual's height to maintain a normal body mass index (18.5 to 24.9 Kg/m^2). The place of patient education on weight loss and its importance in diabetes management cannot be overemphasized, since local perceptions in the African setting consider obesity as an indicator of affluence, status, and good living [11]. Significant reductions in diabetes mellitus-related mortality and morbidity have been reported with regular physical activity [18, 19]. As reported in the findings of a study on a cohort of diabetes mellitus patients in Cameroon, Central Africa, a 12-week aerobic exercise program monitored by a step counter was found to significantly improve the anthropometric and metabolic parameters, alongside the aerobic capacity of patients with diabetes mellitus [19]. The aerobic exercise here consisted of 45-minute sessions holding thrice a week with each session consisting of a warm-up, brisk walking or light running, and a cooldown. Dancing was also introduced at some point during the follow-up period of the aerobic exercise [19]. Despite being aware of the importance of physical activity in preventing or managing diabetes, several patients in sub-Saharan Africa still do not engage into physical activity due to lack of time or access to appropriate infrastructure [11].

Overall, physical activity reduces cardiovascular disease risk; improves insulin sensitivity; controls glycemia, blood pressure, and lipid levels; and reduces the total body weight. It is worth noting that any recommendations to engage in a physical activity regimen should be preceded by an adequate assessment to ensure there are no contraindications to physical activity.

The multicenter Diabcare Africa study conducted in six African countries reported rather low rates of smoking and alcohol consumption among patients with diabetes mellitus in sub-Saharan Africa, with the highest figures detected in Central African regions [20]. Reduction in alcohol consumption to a maximum of one unit per day or less for women and two units per day for men is beneficial in preventing any alcohol-related hyperglycemia [8].

Pharmacologic Therapy

Pharmacologic therapy is considered in addition to lifestyle modifications or when the latter has failed to maintain optimal glycemic levels. In type 1 diabetes, and in any acute metabolic and non-metabolic diabetes presentation, insulin therapy is usually mandatory. As in other parts of the world, the two principal pharmacologic therapies used in Africa are oral antidiabetic medications and insulin therapy, used individually or in combination depending on the type of diabetes and patients' individual circumstances. Over the past decade, however, non-insulin injectable antidiabetic drugs led by glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) have emerged as an essential part of diabetes management [21]. Many patients in Africa, however, believe that diabetes can be treated using traditional therapy, making compliance to recommended pharmacologic therapy occasionally ineffective [11].

Explanatory Box 18.6: Treatment Targets
Blood glucose

- Fasting plasma glucose (FPG): 4–7 mmol/l
- Two-hour postprandial plasma glucose (2-hour PG) 4–8 mmol/l

Glycated hemoglobin [10]

- Glycated hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c)c ≤ 7%
- HbA1c < 6.5% in newly diagnosed patients in good health

Considerations [10]
Involve patient in discussion on glycemic targets
Three-monthly HbA1c monitoring in patients not at target and six-monthly if target achieved

Oral Antidiabetic Medications (OAD)/Oral Hypoglycemic Agents (OHA)

Majority of patients in Africa on pharmacologic therapy for diabetes are on oral antidiabetic medications [20], since they are generally the first line in type 2 diabetes treatment protocols. Monotherapy or combination therapy with different oral antidiabetic agents is used based on the potential factors underlying the hyperglycemia of the patient, and combination therapy should be based on agents from different classes. The multicenter Diabcare Africa study reported that more than half of patients on pharmacologic therapy were receiving two oral antidiabetic agents for treatment of their diabetes, and very few patients had up to three agents [20]. Nevertheless, treatment should be individualized, based on patient sociodemographic and clinical characteristics as well as economic status. The use of generic medications with proven efficacy is highly encouraged in the African context due to their relative affordability compared to proprietary brand [7]. The biguanide metformin and sulfonylureas agents are often used as first-line agents unless contraindicated. The most commonly used oral antidiabetic agents and their respective characteristics are summarized in Table 18.1.

Insulin Therapy

In general, insulin therapy is used in type 2 diabetes: when oral antidiabetic agents are inadequate to maintain optimal blood glucose levels, in cases of acute hyperglycemia requiring rapid correction, and in pregnancy where most oral antidiabetic agents are contraindicated. In type 1 diabetes, insulin is the compulsory treatment. Africa, however, faces the major problem of limited availability of insulin analogs and even unaffordability when available [5] and frequent run out of human insulin formulation which are more accessible. Nevertheless, insulin therapy should begin as soon as indicated in the management of diabetes, whether in combination with oral antidiabetic agents or as monotherapy.

Explanatory Box 18.7: Insulin Therapy
Indications:

- Type 1 diabetes mellitus
- Poor glycemic control with OAD
- Contraindications of OAD
- Hyperglycemic emergency
- Severe glycemia at initial presentation
- Perioperative glycemic control
- Organ failure (cardiorespiratory, hepatic, renal)
- Pregnancy

Regimens:
Combination therapy:

- NPH (0.2 IU/Kg of body weight/day – administered at bedtime) +
- OAD (metformin and reduced or stopped sulfonylureas dose)

Monotherapy:

- Premixed insulin twice daily, given half an hour before morning and evening meals (0.2 IU/Kg of body weight/day)

OAD oral antidiabetic agents, *NPH* neutral protamine hagedorn
Source: Type 2 diabetes mellitus clinical practice guidelines for sub-Saharan Africa [7]

Table 18.1 List of antidiabetic drugs available in Africa

Medication	Starting dose	Maximum dose	Adverse effects	Contraindications
Biguanides				
Metformin	500 mg	2550 mg	Abdominal pain Nausea Loose stool Lactic acidosis	Renal failure Hepatic failure Cardiorespiratory failure Pregnancy
Sulfonylureas				
Glibenclamide Gliclazide Glimepiride Glipizide Chlorpropamide Tolbutamide Tolazamide Acetohexamide	2.5 mg 40 mg 1 mg 5 mg 100 mg 500 mg 100 mg 250 mg	20 mg 320 mg 8 mg 40 mg 500 mg 2500 mg 1000 mg 1500 mg	Hypoglycemia Weight gain Skin rashes	Pregnancy Caution with hepatic and renal disease
Thiazolidinediones[a]				
Rosiglitazone Pioglitazone	4 mg 15 mg	8 mg 45 mg	Hepatic impairment Fluid retention Weight gain Dilutional anemia	Renal failure Hepatic failure Cardiorespiratory failure Pregnancy
Meglitinides				
Nateglinide Repaglinide	180 mg 1.5 mg	360 mg 16 mg	Hypoglycemia Weight gain Dyspepsia	Cardiac failure Hepatic failure Pregnancy
Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors				
Acarbose Miglitol	25 mg 25 mg	300 mg 300 mg	Dyspepsia Loose stool	None

Source: Type 2 diabetes mellitus clinical practice guidelines for sub-Saharan Africa [7]
[a]This class is currently absent in most African countries, because of the issues on the cardiovascular safety of rosiglitazone

Table 18.2 Insulin preparations used in Africa

Insulin preparation	Onset of action (minutes)	Peak action (hours)	Duration of action (hours)	Injections per day
Rapid acting	10–20	1–2	3–5	Immediately before meals
Soluble	30–60	2–4	6–8	30 minutes before meals
Intermediate (NPH)	60–120	5–7	13–18	Once or twice
Lente	60–180	4–8	13–20	Once or twice
Biphasic mixture 30/70	30	2–8	Up to 24	Once or twice

Source: Type 2 diabetes mellitus clinical practice guidelines for sub-Saharan Africa [7]

Insulin preparations most used in the African setting are presented in Table 18.2.

Combination Therapy with Oral Antidiabetic Medications and Insulin

A combination of insulin and oral antidiabetic medications may be necessary to maintain blood glucose levels within optimal ranges. However, this combination therapy is used after failure of monotherapy with OAD, and insulin is required as a supplement to the OAD. An algorithm for the management of type 2 diabetes in Africa is shown below.

Explanatory Box 18.8: Algorithm for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus Management

Step 1: (Lifestyle modification)

1. Lifestyle changes: diet, physical activity, smoking and alcohol consumption cessation
2. Review in 3 months
   Note: If patient is unwell, with severe symptoms or pregnant, then refer to a tertiary hospital or admit patient and consider insulin therapy

Step 2: (Oral monotherapy)
At follow-up visit after 3 months, if glycemic control is:

3. Adequate: continue monitoring
4. Inadequate and patient is overweight: start metformin at low dose and increase three monthly as required until maximum dose is reached
5. Inadequate and patient is not overweight: start a sulfonylurea at low dose and increase every 3 months as required until maximum dose is reached

Step 3: (Oral combination therapy)
At follow-up visit, if glycemic control is:

6. Adequate: continue monitoring
7. Inadequate: add another class of OAD, start at low dose, and increase every 3 months as required until maximum dose is reached

Step 4: (Oral and insulin combination therapy)
At follow-up visit, if glycemic control is:

8. Adequate: continue monitoring
9. Inadequate: continue OAD and add bedtime intermediate-acting insulin
10. Review in 3 months

Step 5: (Insulin therapy in a secondary or tertiary service)
At follow-up visit in 3 months, if glycemic control is:
11. Adequate: continue monitoring
12. Inadequate: more than once daily insulin is required, so refer to secondary or tertiary care

Source: Adapted from Type 2 diabetes mellitus clinical practice guidelines for sub-Saharan Africa [7]

Specificities of the Management of Ketosis-Prone Type 2 Diabetes

Ketosis-prone type 2 diabetes (KPD) is an atypical form of diabetes that is frequently seen in sub-Saharan Africa. Its management mandates some specific measures because of its dichotomic presentation: acute ketotic onset or relapse that resembles the clinical presentation of type 1 diabetes, further course that is similar to that of type 2 diabetes, and the high probability of near-normoglycemic remissions with risk of hypoglycemia if hypoglycemic agents are maintained in the treatment [22]. Though there is no consensual management strategy, expert opinion suggests the following: [2]

1. During the acute phase (onset or relapse)
   - Manage as any diabetes ketoacidosis
   - Assess autoantibodies to rule out type 1 diabetes
2. Early (first to second week) after the acute phase
   - Educate on hypoglycemia, adjustment of insulin doses, and diet
   - Assess insulin secretion if possible
3. Few weeks after the acute phase
   - Close monitoring including close consultations and phone calls
   - Progressive insulin withdrawal, switch to oral antidiabetic drugs
4. Over months and years
   - Education on diet and physical activity, drug adherence, risk of hyperglycemic relapses
   - Standard follow-up similar to classical type 2 diabetes
   - Inpatient management in case of relapses

Prevention and Management of Acute and Chronic Complications of Diabetes

Prevention and Management of Chronic Complications

Populations of African origin are known to be more likely to develop microvascular complications of diabetes compared to the macrovascular complications of diabetes due to the limited access to adequate diabetes care and partly due to the high rates of hypertension in this population [23]. In most instances, the appearance of complications is the reason for patients seeking medical attention, making early detection of the disease very unlikely [24]. As a result of the higher frequency of microvascular complications of diabetes in patients in Africa, complications such as foot ulcerations, blindness, and renal failure are more frequent in these patients compared to complications resulting from large vessel involvement [25]. The African sociocultural context has a tangible impact on the management of these complications as some procedures such as amputations for chronic limb ulcerations are often unwelcomed [26]. The importance of patient education on the complications of diabetes and their management cannot be overemphasized.

As much as 50% of the patients with diabetes in the multicenter Diabcare study had their serum creatinine levels tested within the last year, with the highest percentages noted in Central Africa compared to East and West Africa. Of these patients tested, 54% had significantly raised serum creatinine levels [20]. Likewise, Central Africa compared to East and West Africa registered the highest proportion of patients tested for proteinuria in the last year [20]. These data show that diabetes complications are rare when adequately investigated for and therefore remain a major concern in the African setting.

With the appearance of complications, the risk of developing cardiovascular disease significantly increases, as well as disease-related mortality. Patients presenting with symptoms suggestive of a potential complication of diabetes should be referred to secondary or tertiary care for a proper assessment of complications. All associated complications of diabetes diagnosed following the full assessment should be promptly managed to prevent major sinister outcomes of diabetes that result in significant impairment such as amputation and blindness [7].

Management of Acute Complications of Diabetes

Poorly controlled diabetes can result in acute metabolic emergencies characterized by significant acute derangement in glycemic levels resulting in altered consciousness and even coma. The reported acute metabolic complications of diabetic ketoacidosis and lactic acidosis, hyperosmolar states, and hypoglycemia are also common in Africa [25]. These life-threatening acute metabolic emergencies that require prompt lifesaving interventions carry high mortality rates in Africa due to a constellation of reasons, among which the late presentation at health facilities, delay in diagnosis, and even lack of insulin [7, 25]. Diabetes-related infections such as foot sepsis and hand infections have been proposed as acute complications of diabetes due to their high frequency and mortality in the African setting [25]. Clinicians should therefore be trained in diagnosing and managing these conditions.

Diabetic ketosis presents with elevated blood glucose levels, heavy and rapid breathing, raised serum and urine ketones, and with or without altered consciousness. Nonketotic hyperosmolar state that has a slower development of the hyperglycemic state presents with marked dehydration and uremia, with minimal or no ketonuria. The cornerstone of management of these conditions is prompt initiation of intravenous fluid resuscitation and gradual lowering of the blood glucose level using intravenous insulin [7]. This requires close monitoring of blood glucose levels, serum electrolytes, and creatinine levels, which is often challenging to implement. A protocol consisting of intramuscular insulin and rehydration was therefore proposed as an alternative to intravenous insulin use in the absence of appropriate monitoring facilities, based on its associated significant reduction in early deaths, simplicity, and inexpensive setup [27]. Hypoglycemia in revenge, characterized by extremely low blood glucose levels, often results from overdosing of diabetes medication and/or insufficient carbohydrate intake to maintain an adequate glucose level. In the African setting, this complication has been especially frequent with sulfonylureas agents [25]. Patients initiated on these agents and insulin should therefore be educated on the potential risks of hypoglycemia and how to prevent and/or manage it.

Explanatory Box 18.9: Management of Acute Diabetic Emergencies

Diabetic ketoacidosis and nonketotic hyperosmolar state

- Intravenous fluids: minimum of 1 L in the first hour (if no contraindication)
- Insulin therapy: short-acting insulin intramuscularly
- Immediate referral to an emergency unit (secondary or tertiary care)

Hypoglycemia

For conscious patient

- Oral glucose

For unconscious patient

- Intravenous fluids: 50% glucose bolus (40–50 ml) or 20% dextrose (100–150 ml) followed by 8–10% glucose if required
- Injectable glucagon
- Long-acting carbohydrate snack on recovery
- Continue intravenous dextrose 5–10% for 12–24 hours as required
- Identify possible cause of hypoglycemia
- Review drug therapy and renal function and adjust antidiabetic treatment accordingly

Source: Adapted from Type 2 diabetes mellitus clinical practice guidelines for sub-Saharan Africa [7]

Management of Comorbidities

Management of diabetes entails managing associated comorbidities that tend to worsen the prognosis and overall quality of life of patients with diabetes by favoring disease progression to complications and target organ damage. The principal comorbidities often associated with diabetes are cardiovascular risk factors and components of the metabolic syndrome such as hypertension and dyslipidemia. As much as 65% of patients with diabetes were being treated for hypertension and 13% for hyperlipidemia in the Diabcare Africa study, with regional variations in these percentages [20]. Aggressive management of these comorbidities therefore forms an essential component of the management of diabetes in Africa. In individuals without these comorbidities, reducing their risk of developing these comorbidities is important. As with diabetes mellitus, the management of comorbidities is by both non-pharmacologic and pharmacologic means to achieve the desired treatment targets.

The main non-pharmacologic means for managing diabetes consist of lifestyle modifications and diet, also helping in controlling the major comorbidities of diabetes such as hypertension and dyslipidemia. Failure of the non-pharmacologic means should prompt initiation of pharmacotherapy to control blood pressure, hyperlipidemia, and any other known co-comorbidities. Treatment should be individualized and special considerations taken for potential interaction between drug classes, diabetes, and antidiabetic medications. Regular monitoring of lipid profile and renal function of the patient

should be ensured, and prompt referral to a specialist or for secondary/tertiary care should be done in cases of poorly controlled comorbidities or suspicion of target organ damage [7].

Explanatory Box 18.10: Management of Comorbidities

Non-pharmacologic:

- Lifestyle modification
- Reduced salt and saturated fats in diet, regular physical exercise, weight loss

Pharmacologic:

- Antihypertensives (monotherapy, then combination therapy as required)
- Antihyperlipidemics

Treatment targets:

- Blood pressure:
- Systolic blood pressure < 130 mmHg (<125 if persistent proteinuria on dipstick)
- Diastolic blood pressure < 80 mmHg (<75 if persistent proteinuria on dipstick)

Dyslipidemia:

- Total cholesterol <5.2 mmol/L
- LDL cholesterol ≤2.6 mmol/L
- HDL cholesterol >1.1 mmol/L
- Triglycerides <1.7 mmol/L

Interactions to consider:

- High-dose diuretics inhibit insulin release.
- Beta-blockers may accentuate hypoglycemia.
- Alpha-blockers may accentuate autonomic dysfunction.
- Beta-blockers and diuretics may worsen dyslipidemia.
- ACE inhibitors may exacerbate hypoglycemia.

Source: Adapted from Type 2 diabetes mellitus clinical practice guidelines for sub-Saharan Africa [7]

Follow-Up of Patients

Regular clinic follow-up is mandatory in the treatment and control of diabetes. The follow-up visits can range from weeks to months depending on the stage of the disease and other clinical and patient related factors such as access to healthcare services. This has been a quite deficient arm of the overall diabetes care in Africa with patients often lost to follow-up due to several known and unknown reasons. Factors assessed at follow-up visits are shown in Table 18.3.

Monitoring of blood glucose control is best done by measuring the standard glycated hemoglobin levels (HbA1c). Unfortunately, the awareness and availability of this standard test is low in most African countries. As reported in the Multicenter Diabcare Africa study, access to HbA1c testing was as low as 47%, despite the variations across study centers [20]. There were, however, remarkable regional differences in the overall HbA1c awareness, being higher in the Central African countries compared to the West African countries. It is worth noting that in settings and centers where the HbA1c testing were available for monitoring of diabetes control, a low proportion of patients achieved their HbA1c targets [20]. An acceptable alternative to the HbA1c in the monitoring glucose

Table 18.3 Factors assessed at follow-up visits

Initial visit	3-month visit	Annual visit
Primary level		
History and diagnosis Physical examination Height and weight BMI Waist and hip circumferences Blood pressure Detailed foot examination Tooth inspection Eye examination Visual acuity Fundoscopy Biochemistry Blood glucose Glycated hemoglobin Lipid profile Creatinine Blood electrolytes Urine glucose Urine ketones Urine proteins Education Nutrition advice Medication if needed	Relevant history Weight Blood pressure Foot inspection Biochemistry Blood glucose Glycosylated hemoglobin Urine protein Education advice Nutritional advice Review therapy	History Physical Examination Biochemistry (As at the initial visit)
Secondary level		
All the above Eye examination ECG Biochemistry Blood glucose Glycosylated hemoglobin Lipid profile Creatinine Blood electrolytes	All the above	As at initial visit
Tertiary level		
All of the above Microalbuminuria	All the above	All the above Microalbuminuria

Source: Adapted from Type 2 diabetes mellitus clinical practice guidelines for sub-Saharan Africa [7]

control in Africa is the laboratory measurement of fasting and postprandial blood glucose levels. The use of urine glucose testing, though might be the only alternative available in some resource-poor settings, is not advised [7].

Current Challenges to Diabetes Management in Africa

Despite the progress made in the management of diabetes in Africa, much still needs to be done on the care of patients with diabetes in Africa. Diabetes is an expensive chronic disease not only for the health systems of countries in Africa but also for individual patients given the organization and financing of healthcare systems and payment of healthcare services by patients [3]. The barriers to adequate management of this chronic disease are:

- The unavailability of logistics for diabetes care
- Population awareness about diabetes and its management and complications due to nontreatment or poor compliance
- Poor glycemic control and late presentation to health facilities especially in type 1 diabetes [28]
- Scarcity of health personnel as a whole and those trained in diabetes care
- Access to medications due to their cost [4]

Africa that was initially plagued solely by the communicable diseases burden now faces a double disease burden, with the increasing number of patients with noncommunicable diseases. As such the healthcare systems of countries in this part of the world are faced with the challenge of resource reallocation from the traditional communicable diseases such as malaria, HIV, and tuberculosis toward the management of chronic noncommunicable diseases such as diabetes [3]. This therefore becomes extremely challenging for healthcare systems of these countries which by default are more adapted to managing acute conditions rather than chronic diseases [29].

As with other chronic conditions, cost stands out as a principal determinant of access and adherence to treatment. Access to antidiabetic medication therefore stands out as one of the major challenges faced by patients in Africa [25]. The lack of universal health coverage in most African countries implies out-of-pocket payments are the main way through which individuals pay for healthcare services, making access to treatment difficult given the high proportion of people living below the poverty threshold. This is particularly the case with insulin-based treatment of diabetes which is not always affordable when available [3]. As such the prognosis of this disease in Africa has not often been satisfactory as in other parts of the world [30, 31]. In 2005, insulin was estimated to cost between $4.30 and $4.60 per 10 ml U100 vial, in Mozambique and Zambia, when bought by the national health systems. Insulin was even more expensive when bought by individuals from private wholesalers [3].

Other more specific problems faced with regard to the management of type 1 diabetes mellitus are the quantification of insulin needs, the storage of insulin under optimal temperature conditions, and timely ordering of medication stocks to ensure permanent availability at all levels of patient care [3].

Population awareness and education about diabetes is a major factor. Many people living with diabetes still resort to unconventional and alternative treatment means such as traditional healers who are generally unlikely to refer patients back to healthcare facilities [4, 32]. There is a need to conduct operational research on such alternatives with a bid to define their potential role in the management strategy of diabetes. Knowledge about diabetes, its complications, and how to manage it is still low [33]. This makes the control of this chronic disease difficult in Africa. This lack of awareness is not limited just to the patients and their caregivers but has been reported to extend to healthcare providers as well [34], with reported instances of coma as a result of diabetes being diagnosed as cerebral malaria or HIV/AIDS, all favored by the lack of appropriate diagnostic facilities [3]. Despite the adoption of the westernized lifestyles that could increase risk of developing diabetes in Africa, the sociocultural practices in this part of the world have not made adequate allowances for the accompanying practices that could reduce disease risk such as adequate physical activity and healthy diet [32]. This is even worsened by local perceptions of the African setting such as the fact that obesity is an indicator of affluence and good living [11]. Despite all the challenges and barriers to the effective management of diabetes in Africa, it is worth noting that there exist considerable within-country differences, with urban regions having more satisfactory systems in place to manage diabetes than the rural areas.

Newer Approaches to Diabetes Management in Africa

Newer approaches to diabetes management are increasingly being implemented in Africa such as the social support and self-management of diabetes that are currently in use in developed countries. Several countries in Africa have now created a national diabetes registry and diabetes associations and are implementing national diabetes programs alongside other primary healthcare programs to cater for patients with this disease. The setting-up of diabetes clinics across countries, through joint efforts from national diabetes associations and ministries of health, is consistently adopted due to their efficiency in disease management [35].

These approaches and programs have been aimed at improving on patient education and awareness about diabetes, patient empowerment with regard to diabetes management, health personnel training, medication supply, diagnostic facilities, and overall improvement in healthcare systems across the continent [3].

Patient education and empowerment aims to educate patients on what diabetes is, how to take care of themselves to reduce their risk of having diabetes, and how to self-monitor their glycemia and adopt healthy lifestyles to reduce the risk of developing complications. The diabetes self-management support provided should be patient-centered and individualized, integrate cognitive-behavioral interventions, and involve the patient as much as possible in the decision-making process [10]. Patients should also be provided with the resources to be able to undertake self-care [7]. The adoption of less costly preventive measures such as physical activity and more precisely aerobic exercise known to improve metabolic and anthropometric parameters of patients with diabetes mellitus should be encouraged.

Points to be covered in a self-assessment education of diabetes patients is covered in the table below [8].

Explanatory Box 18.11: Basic Knowledge of Diabetes

- Basic knowledge of diabetes
- Importance of good comprehensive control and methods to achieve this
- Insulin injection techniques and sites of injection
- Self-monitoring of blood glucose
- Recognition and management of acute and chronic complications
- Foot care
- Smoking cessation and responsible alcohol use
- Preconception care
- Pregnancy: preparing, managing diabetes during pregnancy and appropriate postnatal care
- Psychosocial issues, stress management, and coping skills
- Training of caregivers and family of people with diabetes
- Managing diabetes emergencies
- Importance of an identification disc or bracelet
- Children with type 2 diabetes should be referred for specialist assessment and diabetes education
- Management of elderly patients:
  - Assess knowledge and understanding of diabetes.
  - Evaluate ability to learn and apply new self-care skills.
  - Assess nutrition and physical activity.
  - Address poly-pharmacy and comorbidities.
  - Assess for cognitive dysfunction, depression, and physical disability.
  - Address quality of life versus life expectancy.

Source: Adapted from the 2012 SEMDSA Guideline for the Management of Type 2 Diabetes [8]

Healthcare providers should be trained on diabetes as a chronic disease and its management. They should also be trained on how to disseminate this information to the population that make use of the health facilities and through other means of community engagement and communication [33].

Task shifting in the care and management of patients with diabetes is also gaining grounds in sub-Saharan Africa. There are reports of the successful implementation of nurse-led diabetes care [36, 37]. This has turned out to be cost-effective and has helped in solving the shortage of doctors treating patients with diabetes mellitus [38].

Concerning improving diagnostic facilities and medication supply, standardized means of assessing blood glucose levels should be available at the various levels of patient referral of the health system. Medications for treatment should be made available at all times through improvements in the supply chain dynamics of anti-diabetes medications, and these medications have to be made affordable for patients [3].

Another important component of the newer approaches to diabetes management in Africa is the implementation of a monitoring of care system, whereby the quality of care offered to patients is periodically monitored to identify deficiencies and correct them as appropriate [7].

Above all, the availability of adequate data on disease burden and current level of treatment coverage remain fundamental to assessing the actual progress of the management of this disease and planning on measures to improve diabetes-related mortality and morbidity [28]. Likewise, extensive research should be funded to investigate on the presentation and specificities of this condition in this part of the world [28]. This will demand enormous coordinated actions between key stakeholders, ministries of health, and both government and nongovernmental organizations. A multidisciplinary approach to diabetes prevention and treatment is therefore necessary for effective management of diabetes in Africa, with the involvement of all key stakeholders both at patient and community levels [3, 5, 28].

At the international level, the African regional branch of the International Diabetes Federation, through the African Diabetes Declaration, has summoned governments and agencies involved in diabetes care in Africa to uphold standards of diabetes care with regard to prevention, early detection, and availability and affordability of treatment [3].

The International Insulin Foundation has summarized adequate diabetes management in Africa in 11 key points [3].

Explanatory Box 18.12: Diabetes Management in Africa

- Organization of the health system
- Prevention
- Data collection
- Diagnostic tools and infrastructure

- Drug procurement and supply
- Accessibility and affordability of medicines and care
- Training and availability of healthcare workers
- Adherence issues
- Patient education and empowerment
- Community involvement and diabetes associations
- Positive policy environment

Source: Adapted from Diabetes care in sub-Saharan Africa [3]

Explanatory Box 18.13: Concluding Remarks

- The management of diabetes in Africa has significantly improved over the decades with management taking a more holistic approach.
- There are still limited contextualized guidelines, specific to the management of diabetes in Africa, as many countries still rely on guidelines essentially used in developed countries.
- Treatment cost and medication availability remain major barriers to effective treatment in Africa.
- The role of new drugs such as GLP-1 receptor agonists or sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) antagonists is worth evaluating.
- A multidisciplinary approach to diabetes prevention and treatment is necessary for effective management of diabetes in Africa.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Measures aimed at early detection of disease in affected individuals are known as?
   (a) Primary prevention
   (b) Secondary prevention
   (c) Tertiary prevention
   (d) Treatment
   (e) Management
2. The following are major objectives of the management of diabetes, except which one?
   (a) Bring down HbA1c level below 7% for all.
   (b) Early detection of disease in affected individuals.
   (c) Improve the quality of life of patients with diabetes.
   (d) Prevent disease progression to complications.
   (e) Empower patients and encourage self-care practices.
3. All the following apply to the management of ketosis-prone type 2 diabetes, except which one?
   (a) Patients usually require insulin at onset.
   (b) Patients may be insulin-free for years.
   (c) Patients are insulin-dependent for life.
   (d) Patients may keep an excellent glucose control without any treatment.
   (e) Patients are in high risk of hypoglycemia during the remission period.
4. Management of diabetes is centered on which of the following?
   (a) Early screening and diagnosis of diabetes
   (b) Management of blood glucose
   (c) Management of comorbidities
   (d) Prevention and management of acute and chronic complications of diabetes
   (e) All of the above
5. Which of the following is not a routine pharmacologic management option for diabetes?
   (a) Insulin therapy
   (b) Vitamins and minerals
   (c) Biguanides
   (d) Sulfonylureas
   (e) Meglitinides
6. Medical nutrition therapy recommends one of the following except:
   (a) Increasing daily water intake and having meals at regular times daily
   (b) Variety of vegetables and fruits excluding fruit juices
   (c) Restrictive diets consisting of protein-rich, carbohydrate-free, and fat-free items
   (d) Limiting daily fats consumption to <35% of the total energy intake
   (e) Reducing dietary salt intake to control blood pressure (<2300 mg/day)
7. Which of the following oral antidiabetic class is recommended as the first line for outpatient care of type 2 diabetes?
   (a) Insulin
   (b) Sulfonylureas
   (c) Meglitinides
   (d) Biguanides
   (e) Thiazolidinediones
8. Well-known barriers to the management of diabetes in Africa consist of all of the following except:
   (a) The unavailability of logistics for diabetes care
   (b) Population awareness about diabetes and its management and complications due to nontreatment or poor compliance
   (c) The use of oral antidiabetic agents instead of insulin in patient with diabetes
   (d) Late presentation to health facilities
   (e) Access to medications due to their cost
9. Which of the following side effects of antidiabetic treatment is a major barrier to management?
   (a) Gastrointestinal side effects
   (b) Cardiovascular side effects
   (c) Skin side effects

(d) Hematological side effects
(e) Hypoglycemia

10. The following assessments are part of the annual evaluation of patients with diabetes, except which one?
(a) Blood urea nitrogen
(b) Urine dipstick
(c) Serum creatinine
(d) Electrocardiogram
(e) Lipid profile

Correct Answers

1. (b) Secondary prevention
Secondary prevention consists of methods aimed at identifying patients with disease early before the progression of the disease, as opposed to primary prevention which entails adopting measures to reduce the risk of developing the disease and tertiary prevention which entails treating the disease to reduce mortality and morbidity.
2. (a) Bring down HbA1c level below 7% for all.
This question aims at raising the awareness of physicians taking care of diabetes, on the fact that people living with diabetes should not be restricted to HbA1c level. Targeting HbA1c level below 7% is indeed important, and it is part of the objective "prevent disease progression to complications." Also, HbA1c target should be individualized.
3. (c) Patients are insulin-dependent for life.
Ketosis-prone type 2 diabetes is characterized by an acute ketotic onset that usually requires insulin therapy. This phase is usually followed by a long-term insulin-free remission, during which patients may keep an HbA1c level below 6.5% even without any treatment.
4. (e) All of the above
Management of diabetes entails preventing disease occurrence, managing the blood glucose level, preventing the progression of the disease to complications, and preventing or managing its acute and chronic complications in affected individuals.
5. (b) Vitamins and minerals
Body needs in mineral and vitamins are generally obtained from a regular balanced diet. Mineral and vitamin supplements are not routinely administered to patients with diabetes unless they have other conditions requiring their supplementation such as in lactating pregnant women. An affluence of food supplements – -usually merely made up of vitamins and minerals – in Africa over the past two decades has contributed in disturbing diabetes management. The marketing message conveyed by companies selling these products is that food complements can "cure" diabetes and many other epidemics. These food supplements are not recommended in diabetes management.
6. (c) Restrictive diets consisting of protein-rich, carbohydrate-free, and fat-free items
Medical nutrition therapy which is the first-line treatment of diabetes mellitus consists of all the options mentioned in the question except restrictive diets consisting of protein-rich, carbohydrate-free, and fat-free items which are no more recommended due to no proven long-term benefit. Restrictive diet is not recommended and may be dangerous.
7. (d) Biguanides
Metformin, which is a biguanide, is recommended by most guidelines as the first-line pharmacologic agent in the management of type diabetes.
8. (c) The use of oral antidiabetic agents instead of insulin in patient with diabetes
Even though oral antidiabetic agents are the first-line pharmacologic options to use in patient with diabetes, there are instances in which insulin is preferentially used. Nevertheless, using oral antidiabetic agents instead of insulin is not reported as being one of the reasons for sub-optimal management of diabetes in Africa.
9. (e) Hypoglycemia
Hypoglycemia is the major side effect of antidiabetic treatment. Fear of hypoglycemia by patients or healthcare personnel is a factor for nonadherence to treatment and therapeutic inertia.
10. (a) Blood urea nitrogen
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN) is not part of the routine assessment of diabetes. Routine BUN test is a waste of money. The other tests stated in the question are mandatory as they help identify chronic complications or cardiovascular risk factors associated to diabetes.

References

1. International Diabetes Federation. IDF Diabetes Atlas. 7th ed; Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2015.
2. Choukem SP, Sobngwi E, Gautier JF. Les particularités du diabète chez le sujet originaire d'Afrique Noire. Sang Thromb Vaiss. 2007;19(10):513–8.
3. Beran D, Yudkin JS. Diabetes care in sub-Saharan Africa. Lancet. 2006;368(9548):1689–95.
4. Mbanya JC, Kengne AP, Assah F. Diabetes care in Africa. Lancet. 2006;368(9548):1628–9.
5. Mbanya JCN, Motala AA, Sobngwi E, Assah FK, Enoru ST. Diabetes in sub-Saharan Africa. Lancet. 2010;375(9733):2254–66.
6. Pastakia SD, Pekny CR, Manyara SM, Fischer L. Diabetes in sub-Saharan Africa – from policy to practice to progress: targeting the existing gaps for future care for diabetes [Internet]. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes. 2017;10, 247–263. [cited 2017 Aug 7]. Available from: https://www.dovepress.com/diabetes-in-sub-saharan-africa-from-policy-to-practice-to-progress-tar-peer-reviewed-article-DMSO
7. IDF Africa Region Task Force on Type 2 Diabetes Clinical Practice Guidelines. Type 2 diabetes clinical practice guidelines for sub-Saharan Africa. Dar es salaam: International Diabetes Federation Africa Region; 2006.
8. The 2012 SEMDSA guideline for the management of type 2 diabetes. J Endocrinol Metab Diabetes South Afr. 2012;17(1):S1–94.

9. Diabetes Association of Nigeria (DAN). Clinical practice guidelines for diabetes management in Nigeria. Lagos: Diabetes Association Of Nigeria; 2013.
10. The 2017 SEMDSA guidelines for the management of type 2 diabetes. J Endocrinol Metab Diabetes South Afr. 2017;22(1):1–182.
11. Kiawi E, Edwards R, Shu J, Unwin N, Kamadjeu R, Mbanya JC. Knowledge, attitudes, and behavior relating to diabetes and its main risk factors among urban residents in Cameroon: a qualitative survey. Ethn Dis. 2006;16(2):503–9.
12. Choukem S-P, Mbanya J-C. Should we still screen for type 2 diabetes after ADDITION-Cambridge? A low-income world perspective. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2013;100(2):282–4.
13. Echouffo-Tcheugui JB, Mayige M, Ogbera AO, Sobngwi E, Kengne AP. Screening for hyperglycemia in the developing world: rationale, challenges and opportunities. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2012;98(2):199–208.
14. International Diabetes Federation. IDF clinical practice recommendations for managing type 2 diabetes in primary care. Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2017.
15. Association AD. 2. Classification and diagnosis of diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2017;40(Suppl 1):S11–24.
16. Kiage JN, Heimburger DC, Nyirenda CK, Wellons MF, Bagchi S, Chi BH, et al. Cardiometabolic risk factors among HIV patients on antiretroviral therapy. Lipids Health Dis. 2013;12:50.
17. International Diabetes Federation. Management of gestational diabetes in the community. Training manual for community health workers. Brussels: International Diabetes Association; 2015.
18. Sigal RJ, Kenny GP, Boulé NG, Wells GA, Prud'homme D, Fortier M, et al. Effects of aerobic training, resistance training, or both on glycemic control in type 2 diabetes: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2007;147(6):357–69.
19. Dahjio Y, Noubiap JJN, Azabji-Kenfack M, Essouma M, Loni GE, Onana AE, et al. Impact of a 12-week aerobic exercise training program on anthropometric and metabolic parameters of a group of type 2 diabetes Cameroonian women aged ≥50 years. Ann Transl Med [Internet]. 2016 [cited 2017 Sep 4];4(19). Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC5075844/.
20. Sobngwi E, Ndour-Mbaye M, Boateng KA, Ramaiya KL, Njenga EW, Diop SN, et al. Type 2 diabetes control and complications in specialised diabetes care centres of six sub-Saharan African countries: the Diabcare Africa study. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2012;95(1):30–6.
21. Gautier J-F, Choukem S-P, Girard J. Physiology of incretins (GIP and GLP-1) and abnormalities in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Metab. 2008;34(Suppl 2):S65–72.
22. Choukem S-P, Sobngwi E, Fetita L-S, Boudou P, De Kerviler E, Boirie Y, et al. Multitissue insulin resistance despite near-normoglycemic remission in Africans with ketosis-prone diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2008;31(12):2332–7.
23. Mbanya J-C, Sobngwi E. Diabetes microvascular and macrovascular disease in Africa. Eur J Cardiovasc Prev Rehabil. 2003;10(2):97–102.
24. Justin-Temu M, Nondo RSO, Wiedenmayer K, Ramaiya KL, Teuscher A. Anti-diabetic drugs in the private and public sector in Dar es Salaam. Tanzania East Afr Med J. 2009;86(3):110–4.
25. Gill GV, Mbanya J-C, Ramaiya KL, Tesfaye S. A sub-Saharan African perspective of diabetes. Diabetologia. 2009;52(1):8–16.
26. Gulam-Abbas Z, Lutale JK, Morbach S, Archibald LK. Clinical outcome of diabetes patients hospitalized with foot ulcers, Dar es Salaam, Tanzania. Diabet Med J Br Diabet Assoc. 2002;19(7):575–9.
27. Sobngwi E, Lekoubou AL, Dehayem MY, Nouthe BE, Balti EV, Nwatsock F, et al. Evaluation of a simple management protocol for hyperglycaemic crises using intramuscular insulin in a resource-limited setting. Diabetes Metab. 2009;35(5):404–9.
28. Majaliwa ES, Elusiyan BJ, Adesiyun OO, Laigong P, others. Type 1 diabetes mellitus in the African population: epidemiology and management challenges. Acta Bio Medica Atenei Parm. 2009;79(3):255–9.
29. Whiting DR, Hayes L, Unwin NC. Challenges to health care for diabetes in Africa. J Cardiovasc Risk. 2003;10(2):103–10.
30. Makame MH, DERI Study Group. Childhood diabetes, insulin, and Africa. Diabet Med. 1992;9(6):571–3.
31. Castle WM, Wicks ACB. A follow-up of 93 newly diagnosed African diabetics for 6 years. Diabetologia. 1980;18(2):121–3.
32. Hakeem AO. The dynamics of diabetes care in Africa. J Glob Diabetes Clin Metab. 2017:2(2);1–3.
33. Kamel NM, Badawy YA, el-Zeiny NA, Merdan IA. Sociodemographic determinants of management behaviour of diabetic patients. Part II. Diabetics' knowledge of the disease and their management behaviour. East Mediterr Health J. 1999;5(5):974–83.
34. Beran D, Yudkin JS, de Courten M. Access to care for patients with insulin-requiring diabetes in developing countries. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(9):2136–40.
35. Ramaiya K. Tanzania and diabetes—a model for developing countries? BMJ. 2005;330(7492):679.
36. Lekoubou A, Awah P, Fezeu L, Sobngwi E, Kengne AP. Hypertension, diabetes mellitus and task shifting in their Management in sub-Saharan Africa. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2010;7(2):353–63.
37. Joshi R, Alim M, Kengne AP, Jan S, Maulik PK, Peiris D, et al. Task shifting for non-communicable disease management in low and middle income countries – a systematic review. PLoS One. 2014;9(8):e103754.
38. Kengne AP, Sobngwi E, Fezeu L, Awah PK, Dongmo S, Mbanya J-C. Setting-up nurse-led pilot clinics for the management of non-communicable diseases at primary health care level in resource-limited settings of Africa. Pan Afr Med J [Internet]. 2009 [cited 2017 Sep 6];3. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2984281/.

Suggested/Further Reading

Mbanya JC, Assah FK, Saji J, Atanga EN. Obesity and type 2 diabetes in sub-Sahara Africa. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14(7):501. (Emphasizes on the need for concrete interventions on obesity as a major risk factor for type 2 diabetes as a result of changing life style in Africa).

Setel PW. Non-communicable diseases, political economy, and culture in Africa: anthropological applications in an emerging pandemic. Ethn Dis. 2003;13(2):S149–57. (Examines the need for anthropological perspectives on the causes, prevention, and control of NCDs, such as diabetes, in Africa).

Part IV

Basic Components of Management: Patient Centeredness, Evidence-Based Medicine and Outcomes. Challenges for Implementation

The Patient-Centered Medical Home, Primary Care, and Diabetes

19

Joel Rodriguez-Saldana

The sick suffer enough
We must avoid adding insult to injury by denying them a proper role in determining their future
–Jerome P. Kassirer, M.D.

Introduction

The current model of health care continues to be designed to address every type of health problem from an acute disease perspective, based on episodic face-to-face interactions between health-care providers and patients; this approach does not address the multiple needs of patients with chronic diseases like diabetes [1]. In contrast, participation of patients has become increasingly important; they are assuming new roles as active agents, managers, and producers of their own health; involvement of patients is a new way to understand the relationship between patients, health professionals, and health systems, not only to recognize that they are the main responsible of their health control, but they also have an undeniable influence in policy planning [2]. Health-care providers should ensure to meet the information needs of patients because their perceptions of quality of care and quality of life are associated with the physicians' ability to transfer key information to them [3]. Historically, the professional ideal of the physician-patient relationship held that doctors directed care and made decisions about treatment; the patient's principal role was to comply with "doctor's orders"…the patient supposedly had only a minimal role in making decisions [4]. We have come a long way from the paternalistic view of medicine that excluded patients from discussions about their own health [5]. The enhanced capacity to address patients' needs increases loyalty and persistence, reduces complaints, increases the efficiency, and is also profitable [6]. Improvements in health care can be accelerated and evaluated developing patient-based measurement systems able to provide direct measures of success and failure, strengths and weaknesses, and improvements and declines in the provider's capacity to produce the desired health outcomes [7]. In sharp contrast with these realities, examples of doctors who reject patients not because of time limitations, but on far more questionable grounds, including sexual orientation, ethnicity, or specific health problems such as HIV infection, diabetes, and obesity, have been described and highly publicized as causes of rejection [8]. One of the drivers of the health disparities observed in diabetes is discrimination; discrimination is associated with decreased feeling of patient-centeredness and increased dissatisfaction with care [9]. Discrimination affects health through psychological and physiological stress responses; it is associated with loss of trust, lack of adherence, and poor diabetes management, reduces the use of diagnostic tests including A1c testing and cholesterol checks and clinical services such as eye examinations and immunizations, and produces dissatisfaction with care [9]. The results of a study published by Cykert and colleagues reinforce a need for patient-provider communication that is inclusive, eliminates perceptions of discrimination and bias, increases patient-centeredness, and improves overall clinical care [9]. In patients with diabetes, physician empathy is significantly associated with clinical outcomes, including lower rates of acute metabolic complications. Empathy should be considered an important element in patient care and a significant factor of physician competence [10]. Coverage denial, lack of access, or delayed access to health care is highly prevalent: in the United States, Pearson reported a 7% rate of denial of coverage within a mixed model HMO; in other countries like Mexico, the percentage of out-of-pocket medical expenses, even in recipients of social security, has been estimated to be as high as 75% [11–12]. Denial of coverage is associated with lower ratings of quality of health care and less trust on physicians [11]. A report from a nationally representative sample showed that patients with the highest levels of satisfaction had lower rates of visits to emergency departments, at the expense of higher rates of hospitalization, greater expenditures in medications, and higher risks of

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (✉)
Multidisciplinary Centre of Diabetes, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_19

mortality [13]. Patient-centeredness is an important issue in health care; it is highly dependent on values and preferences related to the patient, the expected behavior of professionals, their interactions, and seven key elements including uniqueness, autonomy, compassion, professionalism, responsiveness, partnership, and empowerment [14]. Health beliefs and self-reported capacity to adhere to treatment regimes or to follow general advice are consistently predictive of glycemic control and reduction of cardiovascular risk factors [15]. Understanding the crucial role of patients and their families on the intermediate and long-term outcomes is an essential component of diabetes management. Diabetes has become a representative model of the patient-centered medical home and should be properly addressed in clinical practice.

Milestones of Patient-Centered Care

Western health systems were dominated by a paradigm that considered "diseases" as basic elements of pathology, and since the seventeenth century, diseases were considered as functional or structural abnormalities of cells or body organs, with each abnormality adding in linear fashion, to the extent of illness [16]. Barbara Starfield claimed that "medicine is still practiced this way…in this outdated scheme there is no room to recognize that diseases are not distinct biological entities that exist alone and apart from the person" [16].

The pathological model of disease was challenged in recent decades by a new form of clinical practice that stresses the centrality of the person (not the patient), her or his risk factors and personal priorities, and the need for medical surveillance to understand health and illness. In 1971, DC Taylor brilliantly described three components of sickness: (1) diseases (abnormalities in diagnostic tests), (2) illnesses (the unique combination of symptoms and signs in an individual), and (3) predicaments, the personal, social, and economic consequences of being sick [17]. The paradigm of the pathological model of disease claimed that if mankind could master nature through science, every clinical problem would have a single explanation and solution. Nevertheless, a "whole-patient"-oriented view of disease is more accurate and more equitable than a disease-oriented view [17]. Medical care must evolve to meet the health-care needs of patients in the twenty-first century; clinical decision-making should focus on the attainment of individual (personal) goals and the identification and treatment of all modifiable biological and non-biological factors, instead of solely relying on the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of individual diseases [18].

Primary Care as the Site of the Medical Home

The new paradigm shift in health care was announced by Freyman in 1989; in this new paradigm, the focus of health care would have shifted to the community [19]. Diagnosis and treatment would be managed in ambulatory settings including homes, and the hospitalized fraction of the population needing medical care would be smaller…primary physicians will be the key personnel in vertically integrated systems, they will become the first contact of all the patients, and they will be responsible to coordinate these services; to provide continuing, comprehensive, and up-to-date medical care; and to refer "the relatively few" who need the services of specialists [19]. These visionary predictions met strong resistance in many countries; reasons include the natural resistance to innovate, the perception of this innovative model as a threat to current interests, particularly economic, of physicians and health organizations, and perceptions of low value by providers of "solutions" of high cost [20]. Although some nomadic patients prefer to navigate through episodic encounters with emergency departments and specialists, most people want a medical home, in which responsibility of care and care coordination resides in the personal medical provider working with a health-care team according to patient's needs and including specialists, midlevel providers, nurses, social workers, care managers, dietitians, pharmacists, physical and occupational therapists, family, and community [21]. Primary care, in which physicians address most of the patients' health-care needs through the lifetime, was developed to serve as the medical home [22]. One of the first descriptions of the attributes and the roles of primary care was made by Scheffler and colleagues in 1978 and included (1) accessibility, (2) comprehensiveness, (3) coordination, and (4) continuity, delivered by accountable providers of personal health services, usually associated with the care of the whole person, rather than a particular illness, and distinguished from other levels of health care by the nature of the services provided, not by the particular training of the provider (i.e., not necessarily provided by physicians [22]). In 1998 Barbara Starfield described the four essential functions or major features of accountability of the primary care medical home [23] (Table 19.1).

Table 19.1 Attributes of primary care

Function	Description
1. Accessibility and first contact: gate-keeping	A point of easy access entry for a health problem; the door to start receiving care from a health professional (nurse or physician)
2. Comprehensiveness	Arrange and provide the full range of patient's health-related needs including preventive, acute, chronic, rehabilitative, and palliative services
3. Sustained, longitudinal care	Dealing with changes in the health status of individuals or groups of personas over years from a regular source of care in one place, by one individual or one team
4. Coordination	Harmonized referral: integration of all types of care, regardless of the provider, including specialists and hospitals

Modified from Ref. [23]

Milestones of Patient-Centered Care

Patient-centered medicine had its roots in 1967, when the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), under the leadership of Dr. Calvin Sia, introduced the term "medical home" in the book *Standards of Child Health Care to Describe an Approach to Taking Good Care of Children with Special Care Needs* [24]. The term "patient-centered medicine" was introduced by Balint and colleagues in 1970 in contrast to "illness-centered medicine" [25]. According to Reach and McWhinney, the idea of person- or patient-centered care is a "rediscovery" [26–27]. For example, in 1882 Nothnagel in Vienna said that "medicine is about treating sick people and not diseases," in 1892 Sir William Osler declared that "It is more important to know what sort of patient has a disease than to know what kind of disease has the patient," and in 1926 Crookshank pointed out that "since the origins of the clinical method in ancient Greece, there have been two meanings of diagnosis: to diagnose a disease and to diagnose a patient" [26–28]. Historically, excellence in western medicine was based on the application of anatomy and physiology on the care of patients [29]. The doctor-centered model is the doctor's attempt to interpret the patient's illness in terms of medical explanations, in order to assign the patient's illness to one of the conventional disease categories [27]. From this perspective, success depends on the precise classification of illness, the capacity to link the patient's symptoms and signs with organic pathology and to identify causal agents [27]. These two approaches are clearly different; they represent two ways of thinking, two attitudes to life, two different mental sets, and probably two personality types [27]. Disease-centered recommendations do not address what matters most to patients, who have different health priorities…patient's goals and preferences are rarely translated into actual care decisions [30].

The Link Between Primary Care and Patient-Centered Care

A medical home was defined as the central source of a child's pediatric records and the repository of medical records for chronically ill children, and the definition was expanded to include primary care that is accessible, continuous, comprehensive, coordinated, family centered, and culturally effective [31]. Afterward, the World Health Organization incorporated several concepts currently described as part of the patient-centered medical home (PCMH) as the sixth and seventh declarations of the Primary Care Conference of Alma-Ata in 1978, including access and continuity to care, comprehensiveness and integration of care, patient education and participation, team-based care, and public policies supporting primary care [32]. Primary care probably dates back to the Dawson Report published in the UK in 1920 and introduced the concept of three levels of care – primary and secondary health centers and teaching hospitals – which continues to be the basis of the pyramidal regionalization of health services [33]. In the 1960s and 1970s, primary care found its roots when the vertical approach to health care and the efforts to *transplant* hospital-based health-care systems to developing countries in the absence or lack of emphasis on prevention was critized [34]. At the 1976 World Health Assembly, Halfdan Mahler proposed the goal of "Health for All by the Year 2000," which became crucial in the history of primary care, and that would be confirmed at Alma-Ata in 1978 [34]. Promotion of primary health care since Alma-Ata stressed the need to address the health needs of all people and to recognize family physicians as the primary providers of health care albeit disillusionment about its real contribution to health improvement persists [35]. Achievements have fallen short of expectations, and it is time to launch renewed efforts to strengthen health systems to integrate primary health care [35]. The "missing link" to translate the principles of Alma-Ata from idealism to practical effective public strategies has been the incapacity of health systems to integrate personal and public health, but the challenge continues to be shifting personal health care at the expense of population health [35]. Primary health care contributes to reduce the adverse impact of social inequalities of health and is more effective to achieve better health outcomes, at lower costs, than systems oriented to disease management and specialized care [36]. The turning point in primary care is the inescapable fact that patients with chronic conditions self-manage their illness, and while physicians are experts about diseases, patients are experts about their lives [37]. The literature about the benefits of primary care has shown greater effectiveness, greater efficiency, greater equity, and greater understanding of the mechanisms by which its benefits are achieved [38]. All of the following attributes in combination produce better services: greater first-contact access and use, more continuing person-focused care, greater range of services, and coordination [38]. Primary care is rapidly evolving, but has also become an endangered species: doctor's duties are changing, influenced by advances in medical knowledge and technology, the increasing use of computers, handheld devices and electronic records, and the growing trend to track and measure clinical data [39]. The pressure on physicians to accomplish multiple goals has intensified worldwide; many patients describe their doctors as hurried and unresponsive, and nurse practitioners are perceived more willing to take time, talk to patients, and answer questions; most of the time, physicians' days are spent on administrative tasks, paperwork, and data entry [39]. Overstressed by large patient workloads, many primary care practices are performing poorly: patients are interrupted after 23 seconds trying to explain their problems to a physician, 50% of

patients leave office visits not understanding what the physician has told them, and evidence-based care is provided on a limited basis [40]. Two possible solutions include one very difficult to implement – devoting more time per patient – and one feasible, pioneered by Bodenheimer and colleagues: to reorganize primary care as a team-based endeavor, in which many functions currently in the hands of physicians are provided by other staff members, including nurses or medical assistants [41].

Primary care physicians are central and core components of any high-quality health-care delivery system [42]. According to the Miller-Coulson Academy of Clinical Excellence (MCACE) at Johns Hopkins University, clinical excellence involves achieving distinction in six plus one areas related to patient care [42]:

1. Communication and personal skills to promote successful physician-patient relationships
2. Professionalism and humanism to support the development and maintenance of strong physician-patient relationships
3. Diagnostic acumen, the "science and art" of using information gathered from the history and physical examination to arrive at the correct diagnosis
4. Skillful negotiation within the health-care system, to overcome its increasing fragmentation with many providers, sites of care, and record systems
5. Ability to find, interpret, and apply information to solve clinical problems
6. A scholarly approach to clinical practice to ensure that physicians remain informed about the best practice
   – A passion for patient care

Barriers to Implement the Patient-Centered Medical Home

In the medical home, responsibility for care and care coordination resides in the patient's personal medical provider working with a health-care team needs and including specialists, midlevel providers, nurses, social workers, care managers, dietitians, pharmacists, physical and occupational therapists, family, and community. Patient-centered medical homes and primary care are at crossroads in many countries: family medicine appears to be largely devalued as a professional activity among medical students, who are more interested into specialty care, and primary care physicians are discouraged and even leaving practice [43–44]. In most medical schools, students spend time in the offices of community-based primary care practitioners, where they observe the reality of this type of practice and gain insight into the challenge of caring for patients with a wide range of conditions, including serious chronic diseases [45]. When they observe patients with chronic diseases like diabetes who were hospitalized because of inadequate treatment, medical students cannot help but notice how little attention was devoted to avoid hospitalization through better outpatient management and the scarcity of team-based, patient-centered models of chronic disease management [45]. Time pressures, chaotic work environments, increasing administrative and regulatory demands, an expanding knowledge base, fragmentation of care delivery, and the greater expectations placed on primary care are the multiple contributors to the strain [21]. Burnout is an additional threat to primary care; high levels of emotional exhaustion have been reported by staff and clinicians, resulting in low professional competence, high levels of exhaustion, and cynicism [46]. It has been shown that tight team structure and greater team culture are associated with less clinician stress and burnout [47]. Under the leadership of Thomas Bodenheimer, the Center for Excellence in Primary Care at the University of California in San Francisco has compellingly demonstrated that the current practice model of primary care is unsustainable [48]. They described barriers and limitations to deliver high-quality primary care and have proposed solutions, including (1) expanding the role of health assistants in the delivery of pre-visit and post-visit activities, (2) adding capacity by sharing care with other members of the team, (3) reducing or eliminating time-consuming administrative work, (4) saving time by prescription renewal, (5) returning tasks corresponding to receptionists, pharmacists, and nurses, and (6) improving team communication and functioning through a systems approach redesign [48–49]. The practice of primary care in the future (and already in the present) should provide prompt access to high-quality care that maximizes patient's experiences and minimizes health-care costs and should make primary care more attractive for physicians, while engaging non-physician members in the care process, in the face of growing gap between the supply and demand of primary care [50]. Improvements in the delivery of high-quality primary care result in higher proportions of diabetic patients achieving targets of A1c, triglycerides, and high-density cholesterol, significant reductions in the mean values of A1c, systolic and diastolic blood pressure, LDL cholesterol, triglycerides, and body mass index and decrease in clinical inertia and the incidence of complications [51]. Improving the delivery of high-quality primary care for patients with diabetes is feasible, but requires reinforcements in structure and process that most health systems across the world do not perceive or are unwilling to carry out. Despite all these challenges, primary care is the backbone of many others; for countries aspiring to universal, effective health coverage, a strong primary care system is the essential building block [44].

Transitioning from Primary Care to the PCMH

Patient-centered medical homes represent an updated model of primary care that recognizes and rewards the diverse but necessary activities for a population of patients [44]. Recent steps taken by policy-makers and payers to recognize the essential role of primary care physicians including increased Medicare and Medicaid payments under the Affordable Care Act in the United States have been tempered by continuing divisions between supporters of primary care and specialty care over the relative value of their services and the decreasing interest of medical school graduates for primary care [52]. Most developed nations assure patient access to primary care physicians who are paid based on guidelines and outcomes established by consumers and providers, but in others, a perception that universal access to care is too expensive and unaffordable has been created and nurtured [52]. The results of the National VA Primary Care Survey on Primary Care directors identified 16 moderate to extreme challenges to implement patient-centered medical homes, including access, preventive care screening, chronic disease management, "challenging medical conditions," mental health, special populations, coordination of care, and informatics [44]. A primary care practice that wants to deliver health care effectively must interact with patients where, when, and how they want to be served [53]. According to Berry et al. and Taylor, its building blocks include "physical practice" and "remote practice" components [53]. The former comprise office visits with physicians and health professionals and visits to satellite clinics; remote practice involves at-home visits, telemedicine, and web-based services [53]. Complementing this view, Tayloe identified ten key components of the PCMH: (1) a visionary leadership with an outcome-based approach to health care, (2) a team of providers who are able to provide state-of-the art care, (3) minimization of unnecessary emergency and hospital admissions, (4) integration of hospital and office care, (5) business expertise of physicians and staff, (6) user-friendly electronic medical records, (7) physicians and staff trained and able at implementing quality improvement projects, (8) community-based coordination, (9) support from private and public third-party providers, and (10) a clear understanding of the community needs [54].

The Patient-Centered Care Defined

Table 19.2 summarizes three definitions with complementary components of patient-centered care.

Table 19.2 Evolving definitions of patient-centered care

Year	Author(s)	Definition
2001	Institute of Medicine [55]	Health care that establishes a partnership among practitioners, patients, and their families to ensure that decisions reflect patients' wants, needs, and preferences and that patients have the education and support they need to make decisions and participate in their own care
2010	Epstein et al. [56]	A quality of personal, professional, and organizational relationships; an approach to care perceived as the right thing to do, in order to understand a series of proximal outcomes, including feeling understood, trust, or motivation for change
2012	Valko et al. [57]	A team-based approach to providing comprehensive primary care, involving multiple levels of medical providers, including medical assistants, nurses, physicians, social workers, pharmacists, and behavioral health providers. It is not simply a place, but a model of health care designed to reliably and reproducibly implement the core functions of primary care

Attributes of Patient-Centered Care

Over three decades, several visions about the attributes of centered care have been described, each one with different, enriching patient perspectives (Table 19.3).

The origins of these dimensions are variable; for example, the principles proposed by the Picker Institute Europe were developed from surveys to evaluate patients' experiences with many clinical conditions and in every setting of health care, "with the dream to transform health care systems into a real system that provides effective and compassionate care for everyone" [59]. The American Academy of Family Practice and associated organizations developed their principles based on the chronic care model and the medical home model promoted by the Institute of Medicine [61]; the principles proposed by Battersby and colleagues were organized within the framework of the chronic care model developed by Edward Wagner and colleagues [62]. The Joint Principles of the Patient-Centered Medical Home, formulated and endorsed by the AAFP, the AAP, the ACP, and the AOA in 2007, and integrating behavioral care in 2014, are summarized in Table 19.4 [61, 64].

To be feasible, rewards for change must exceed the cost of change: the American Academy of Family Physicians, the American Academy of Pediatrics, and the American College of Physicians considered a three-component fee consisting of (1) an initial fee for service or visit, (2) a monthly management fee for practices providing medical home services, and (3) an additional bonus for reporting quality performance goals [61].

Table 19.3 Attributes of patient-centered care

Year	1983	1993	2005	2007	2010	2010
Authors	Levenstein et al. [58]	The Picker Institute Europe [59]	Davis et al. [60]	American Academy of Family Physicians [61]	Battersby et al. [62]	Epstein et al. [63]
Attributes or principles	1. Physicians try to enter the patient's world to see the illness through the patients' eyes 2. Invitation and facilitation openness by patients 3. Central objective: allow patients to express all the reasons for the visit 4. Aim: to understand each patient expectations, feelings, and fears 5. The key: to allow as much possible to flow from the patient 6. Crucial skill: to be receptive to verbal and nonverbal cues from the patient	1. Respect for the patient's values, preferences, and expressed needs 2. Coordination and integration of care 3. Information, communication, and education 4. Physical comfort 5. Emotional support and alleviation of fear and anxiety 6. Involvement of family and friends 7. Transition and continuity	11. Superb access to care 12. Patient engagement in care 13. Clinical information systems supporting high quality of care, practice-based learning, and quality improvement 14. Care coordination 15. Integrated, comprehensive care and smooth information transfer 16. Ongoing, routine patient feedback	1. Enhanced access and continuity 2. Identification and management of patient populations 3. Planned and managed care 4. Self-care support and community resources 5. Track and coordinated care 6. Measurement and improved performance	1. Brief targeted assessment 2. Evidence-based information to guide shared decision-making 3. Nonjudgmental approach 4. Collaborative priority and goal setting 5. Collaborative problem-solving 6. Self-management support by diverse providers 7. Self-management interventions by diverse formats 8. Patient self-efficacy 9. Active follow-up 10. Guideline-based case management for select patients 11. Linkages to evidence-based community programs 12. Multifaceted interventions	1. Healing (therapeutic), personal relationships between clinicians, patients, and family members; bridging demographic, social, and economic differences between clinicians and patients. 2. Teamwork from a coordinated community of health-care professionals, including preparations before office visits and eliciting patient's concerns early in the visit 3. Shared tailored information, shared deliberation considering patient's needs and preferences, and shared mind, an approach to care beyond informed consent or treatment

Table 19.4 Joint Principles of the Patient-Centered Medical Home (PCMH) integrating behavioral health care

Principle	Description
Personal physician	To guarantee that each patient has an ongoing relationship with a personal physician trained to provide first-contact, continuous, and comprehensive care, with a whole person orientation
Physician-directed medical practice	Physicians lead the PCMH, supported by a team of health professionals to integrate the physical, emotional, and social aspects of the patient's health needs Facilitative leadership involves shared responsibility, seamless teamwork, honoring the unique abilities of each member, and enabling members to work to their full potential
Orientation to the whole person	Responsibility to provide all the patient's health-care needs and arrange care with other qualified professionals, including care for all the stages of life, acute care, chronic care, preventive services, end-of-life care, psychosocial dimension, and resulting behavior changes in the provision of all the patient's health-care needs
Coordinated and/or integrated care across all the health-care system and the patient's community	Assurance that patients receive the indicated care when and where they need and want it. Avoid fragmentation and separation of primary from behavioral health care Shared registries, medical records, decision-making, revenue streams, and responsibilities. Clarification of real and perceived barriers to communication and regular sharing of information
Quality and safety as hallmarks	Support the attainment of optimal, patient-centered outcomes by care planning processes driven by partnerships between physicians, behavioral health professionals, patients, and their families Support from evidence-based medicine and clinical decision support tools Accountability for continuous quality improvement and performance measurement Active participation of patients in decision-making and feedback to ensure that their expectations are met Appropriate use of information technology to support optimal patient care, performance measurement, patient education, and enhanced communication; incorporate behavioral health, mental health screening, and health outcomes Recognition by nongovernmental entities to document the capacity to provide patient-centered services and behavioral care within the medical home model
Enhanced access	Access to patients, families, and physicians to medical and behavioral care through collaboration, shared problem-solving, flexible team leadership, and enhanced communication
Appropriate payment	Recognition of the added value of behavioral health care; payment in addition, not separate from primary care. Pay per-member and per-month primary care capitation

Modified from Refs. [61, 64]

Effectiveness of the Patient-Centered Medical Home

Evaluations of several patient-centered medical home models have confirmed earlier findings of improved outcomes and satisfaction; patients report very positive experiences with patient-centeredness including being treated with courtesy and respect and communication with providers in a way that is easy to understand [65]. Peer-reviewed literature has documented improvements in quality, reductions in errors, and increased patient satisfaction when they identify with a primary care medical home [66]. Evaluation of peer-reviewed literature has shown that the PCMH improves the quality of health care by reducing and improving care processes and increases satisfaction when patients identify with a medical home, but current evidence is still scarce to determine its effects on clinical and economic outcomes [66–67].

The Patient-Centered Medical Home and Diabetes: The Evidence

Changing the way used to approach patients with diabetes starts with transforming the model of health care [68]. Despite high levels of uncertainty about the effectiveness of the patient-centered medical home, identifying and overcoming the barriers to achieve glycemic targets will become more important, not only to prevent diabetes complications but also to ensure reimbursement for the medical care associated with diabetes management; in this scenario, the role of patients will also change; they will become "health-care consumers" as health systems shift toward a model of value-based care, which seems paramount of the patient-centered medical home [68]. Table 19.5 summarizes the effectiveness of interventions devoted to implement the patient-centered medical home in diabetes management.

Evidence about the effectiveness of the PCMH in diabetes management from meta-analysis and systematic reviews is even more limited. Ackroyd and Wexler selected and described the most effective interventions for diabetes care identified in a meta-analysis of 48 cluster randomized trials and 94 patient-level randomized trials attempting to determine the effect of individual quality improvement strategies for diabetes [79–80]. Albeit the studied strategies were not embedded in PCMH models, they provided some effect about the magnitude of the benefits expected on A1c levels [79]. The study showed larger effects at higher A1c baseline and found that three major components of the PCMH (team changes, case management, and promotion of self-management in addition to clinician education, patient education, facilitated relay of information,

Table 19.5 The patient-centered medical home in diabetes management

Author(s), year, and reference	Intervention	Size	Results
Kinmonth et al. [69]	Parallel group design Randomization between routine care or routine care plus additional training Analysis at 1 year, including practice effects and stratifiers, self-reporting by patients on communication with practitioners, satisfaction with treatment, style of care, and lifestyle	41 practices, 21 in intervention group (250 patients), 20 in comparison group (360 patients)	Patients in the intervention group reported better communication with doctors and greater treatment satisfaction and well-being Differences in lifestyle and glycemic control were not significant
Steiner et al. [70]	Observational study: community health networks organized and operated by community physicians, hospitals, health departments, and departments of social services	1200 primary care practices 750,000 patients Each patient is linked to a medical home: in addition to the usual Medicaid fee, a management fee guarantees ongoing comprehensive primary care, 24-hour on-call coverage, and arrangements with other health professionals	Patients with A1c <7.0%: 47% Patients with A1c >9.0%: 21% Blood pressure control ≥140/90 mm Hg: 34% Blood pressure control <130/80 mm Hg: 37% LDL control ≥130 mg/dl: 19% LDL control <100 mg/dl: 5% Moderate reduction of unnecessary emergency department and specialty care No effect on costs
Paulus RA et al. [71]	Observational study: Analysis of an innovation strategy for care model redesign	55 clinical practices 450 physicians 2.5 million people poorer, older, and sicker than national benchmarks 20,000 diabetic patients Components: Clinical leadership, Dedicated innovation team Electronic record keeping for ambulatory services Financial alignment of incentives	Patients with A1c <7.0%: 34.8% Patients with A1c >9.0%: 21% Blood pressure control <130/80 mm Hg: 43.9% Patients satisfying all nine quality indicators: 6.5% Low applicability
Reid et al. [72]	Observational study Assessment of ambulatory care experiences and chronic illness care	One prototype clinic and two control clinics 6187 adults Quality measures included A1c testing, A1c > 9.0%, retinal examination, LDL-C screening, LDL-C < 100 mg/dl, nephropathy monitoring	Medical home patients reported better care experiences on six scales at 12 and 24 months Quality composite aggregate measures for 22 indicators, including diabetes, showed significant improvements within 2 years Significant lower rates of staff burnout, emergency department visits, and hospitalizations were also observed
Nutting et al. [73]	Observational study Demonstration of the patient-centered medical home through a model with eight categories or domains: access to care and information, practice services, care management, continuity of care, practice-based teams, quality and safety, health information technology, and practice management	From a recruitment of 337 family practices, 36 small independent family practices were selected to become patient-centered medical homes Practices were randomized to two groups: "facilitated intervention" and "self-directed"	Practices adopted more components of the PCMH when using practice coaches A composite score that included A1c, blood pressure, lipoprotein levels, and retinal examination showed improvements in both groups Two years was not enough to implement the entire model and to transform work process Putting discrete model components in place is easier than modifying existing roles and work patterns

Table 19.5 (continued)

Author(s), year, and reference	Intervention	Size	Results
Calman et al. [74]	Observational study Changes in patterns of health-care use throughout a 9-year period of practice transformation including recognition of centers at level 3 PCMH practices	4595 patients with diabetes, including a subsample of 545 patients with A1c improvement	Through the transition to a PCMH, the mean numbers of encounters with outreach, diabetes education, and psychosocial services increased for all patients All patients had visits with a primary care physician Annual levels of A1c decreased steadily during the 9-year period: Patients with A1c ≤9.0% showed increases of outreach services from 59% to 95.3%, diabetes education from 0.0% to 53.3%, psychosocial care from 9.0% to 27.4% and small reductions in primary care from 99.7% to 99.4% Patients with A1c ≥9.0% showed increases of outreach services from 60.2% to 98.5%, diabetes education from 0.0% to 77.8%, psychosocial care from 11.2% to 35.3%, and primary care from 99.4% to 99.5% Patients with A1c ≥9.0% showed decreases from 10.72% to 8.34%
Pagán et al. [75]	Observational study Long-term health and cost outcomes of implementing a PCMH model for adults with poorly controlled diabetes (A1c > 9.0%) based on simulated clinical trial data obtained from the Archimedes model of disease progression and health-care use	Analysis of the cardio-metabolic risk (CMR) data set which includes the results from 19 simulated controlled trials for 100,000 individuals representative of the US population, comparing standard care to interventions targeting diabetes, obesity, and cardiovascular disease	The PCMH model has the potential to not only reduce the proportion of bilateral blindness, foot amputations, myocardial infarction, and death rate, but it is also cost-effective ($7898.00 USD per quality-adjusted life) The PCMH model has potential long-term benefits to both patients with poor diabetes control and health systems and providers
Shah et al. [76]	Retrospective study Comparison of A1c values for patients from clinics with established diabetes registries to patients from clinics without diabetes registries	1038 patients, 713 from clinics with diabetes registries and 325 from clinics without diabetes registries	Patients treated at clinics with diabetes registries did not have greater overall improvement in A1c levels than patients treated without diabetes registries Additional research is needed to determine if diabetes registries are effective tools for the PCMH
Page et al. [77]	Observational study Effectiveness of the PCMH on improving access, quality of care, and changes in compliance for patients with diabetes	10,000 patients treated by a centralized team of nurses and patient navigators who reach out to patients with scheduled appointments, complete motivational reminders and focus on patient encouragement, identification of barriers to keep appointments and communicate patient feedback to care teams	Ten of 11 measures of compliance improved from baseline to 12 month post-implementation, representing a 23.6% increase Significant improvements were observed in the number of patients receiving recommended care Centralized care coordination is effective to improve care for poor and underserved populations with chronic conditions

(continued)

Table 19.5 (continued)

Author(s), year, and reference	Intervention	Size	Results
An [78]	Observational study Associations between PCMH and process measures of diabetes care as well as adherence to oral antidiabetics (OADs)	3334 adult patients with diabetes identified in the Medical Expenditure Panel Survey Patients in the PCMH group were compared with patients without PCMH features Process measures of diabetes care included ≥2 A1c tests, ≥1 cholesterol tests, foot examination, dilated eye examination, and flu vaccination at 1-year follow-up Medication possession rate (MPR) was calculated for patients receiving OADs	11.4% of patients were classified in the PCMH group at baseline, and only 3.6% remained in the PCMH for 2 years Only 26.9% of the patients met all the diabetes care process measures, with a higher proportion in the PCMH (33.8%) versus the non-PCMH group (26.0%) There was no difference in the weighted mean MPR in the two groups The overall adherence rate was 47.7% Patients receiving PCMH had improvements in process measures of diabetes care, but not in adherence to OADs

electronic patient registries, and patient reminders) had significant effects reducing A1c levels [79]. Regarding non-glycemic outcomes, these strategies were associated with increases in aspirin use, use of antihypertensives, lower levels of blood pressure, and LDL cholesterol [79]. A systematic review by Morgan and colleagues analyzed the effect of the use of the seven principles of the PCMH and primary care on A1c levels [81]. Forty three studies were identified, 33 randomized and 10 controlled. The main results per principle are as follows:

- Principle 1 (personal physician): a minimum of two visits to the same physician over 3 years, and continuity of care result in lower A1c levels.
- Principle 2 (physician-directed medical practice): nurse care managers and pharmacist care significantly reduce A1c levels compared to controls.
- Principle 3 (whole person orientation): achieves significant reductions of A1c compared to controls.
- Principle 4 (coordinated and integrated care): (a) two studies using technology enhancements to supplement care coordination showed reductions of A1c from a baseline of 7.35%; two smaller studies had no impact on A1c; (b) two studies providing cognitive behavioral therapy did not reduce A1c; (c) integration of nurse case managers reduced A1c by 2.0% from a baseline level of 10.0%.
- Principle 5 (quality and safety): five studies assessing self-monitoring of blood glucose showed no reductions in A1c.
- Principle 6 (enhanced access): (a) increased frequency of visits (every 2 weeks) achieved fastest control of A1c; (b) each 10% increase in missed appointments increases the odds of poor A1c control.
- Principle 7 (payment): additional payments to physicians reduce A1c levels by 0.55% over 9 years.

This study concludes that applying the PCMH in diabetes management improves glycemic control, and principles 2 and 3 are the most influential [81].

Conclusions

Patient-centered care entered the health policy lexicon until 2001, when it was featured as one of the six aims to improve the quality of health care by the Institute of Medicine of the United States [55]. The IOM described patient-centered care as care that "is respectful to individual patient preferences, needs and values, and ensuring that patient values guide all clinical decisions" [55]. The central role of the PCMH emerges from the growing body of data demonstrating that systems of care based on a strong foundation of primary care outperform systems of care based on specialty practices [57]. Patient-centered care is not simply capitulating to patients' requests, nor is it "throwing information at people and leaving them on their own [56]. Recent advocacy for the patient-centered medical home has arisen worldwide interest, and countless organizations have claimed interest or proposed steps to achieve such type of care, albeit many still do not understand what is the meaning of patient-centered care or are unwilling to accept it and even less implement it. The patient-centered medical home has become a worldwide initiative to reform health care and has moved from pediatrics to involve internal medicine, geriatrics, palliative care, and collaborative disease management in diabetes, cancer, HIV infection, and patients with complex health-care needs. Achieving a 2020 vision of patient-centered care will require champions among primary care leaders, employers, insurers, and politicians [60]. Patient-centered care matters because it

is "the right thing to do," regardless of its contribution to achieve other goals, such as improved quality, patient well-being, or fair distribution of resources [82]. From the perspective of medical ethics, patient-centered care fulfills the obligation of health-care professionals to place the interests of patients above else and to respect their personal autonomy [82]. Leading institutions in the advance of quality of health care such as Virginia Mason Medical Center in Seattle and Planetree, a nonprofit organization devoted to implement a comprehensive, patient-centered model of care with associates in America, Europe, Africa, and Australia, have successfully linked this approach to quality improvement and patient safety and satisfaction [82–83]. In the context of personalized care, patients and physicians work in collaboration to use the available evidence to select between a series of diagnostic and therapeutic options [84]. Shared decision-making implies that patients' preferences and cultural values are influential on clinical decisions; it is demanding and time-consuming and requires the integration of generalists and specialists, who may have competing interests [84]. Elevating the patients' values, preferences, and needs over those of physicians or the health-care organization is absolutely necessary [85]. Patient-centered and person-focused care is important but also different; in contrast with patient-centered care, person-focused care is based on accumulated knowledge of people, to improve the recognition of health problems and needs and facilitate the appropriate care for these needs; it specifically focuses on the whole person [85]. Patient satisfaction is a different concept; it has its roots in consumer marketing, and it is a measure of the capacity of products or services to meet or exceed the anticipated expectations of the customer [84]. The evidence of the effectiveness of the satisfaction-profit chain has stimulated the commercialization of monitoring and measurement of patient satisfaction; if it is accepted as a valid outcome, patient satisfaction should be held in the same standard as any other health intervention [84]. Patient satisfaction should be embraced as a desirable goal, but it must undergo a critical analysis [84]. After more than four decades and despite huge resistance to its principles from the advocates of fragmented, high-cost medical care, the patient-centered medical home has received worldwide recognition, but at the same time, its strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats have been receiving worldwide recognition [86]. Rogers described strengths and weaknesses of the PCMH [86]. Main strengths included (1) commitment to evidence-based medicine, (2) quality improvement, (3) information technology, (4) the efforts to apply them in routine medical care, and (5) understanding the process of change and how to facilitate that process; its main weaknesses lie in the infrastructure principles, including (1) inability to provide universal provision of desired communication skills and shared decision-making, (2) scarcity of health systems to document the personal relationships between physicians and team members, and (3) the absence of formal care planning processes [86]. The PCMH is an opportunity for recognition, increasing compensation and reimbursement to individual physicians that will fund the development of infrastructure; and the perceived threat to family medicine is that programs emphasizing infrastructure focus on cost savings, the emergence of PCMH imposters, and the risk to deviate the focus, a stolen vision in disregard that patient-physician relationships are at the core of the PCMH [86]. In 2013, the Institute of Medicine sponsored a workshop in which it recommended the implementation of "strategies and policies at multiple levels to advance patients, in partnership with providers, as leaders and drivers of care delivery improvement through the protected use of clinical data, informed, shared decisions and value improvement," based on the premise that "prepared, engaged patients are a fundamental precursor to high-quality care, lower costs and better health" [87]. The distinction between patient-centered care and better customer service lies in that it involves actions undertaken in collaboration with patients, not just on their behalf, and requires clinicians to appropriately share power even when sharing feels uncomfortable [88]. According to Millenson, "prepared, engaged patients are not the fundamental precursors to transform health care; patients and providers must change at the same time; a framework that enables a deeper partnership between patients and providers is more important than having 'better patients' [88]. The momentum for widespread adoption of the PCMH has been steadily built, and accumulating empirical evidence has shown that being attentive to the human experience improves quality, empowers patients, lowers costs, and improves health outcomes, and engaging patients and family members as essential partners of the health care team has the potential to reduce costs [89]. Persisting barriers to widespread adoption are based on a relentless demand for solid evidence about the efficacy of the PCHM from the traditional experts who are usually distanced and indifferent from patients and family experiences [89]. The future of the PCMH is uncertain and involves several scenarios: from an increase in patient-centeredness as a function of current trends such as the Joint Principles of the Patient-Centered Medical Home to the extreme where health systems leave behind the PCHM as a result of financial pressures in the pursuit of lowering costs in acceptance of the negative consequences on quality of health care [82]. To become a reality, the PCMH requires adoption of new roles for patients and providers, to achieve balanced levels of collaboration, positive activation, health literacy, and empowerment of patients and their families [90]. Putting patients – our customers – at the center (in our practice, in our use of language, and in our thoughts), the patient-centered medical home accomplishes one of the most legitimate aspects of medical practice and the most important outcomes for patients and their families: from "clinically relevant" to "patient or humanly important [91]." As a moving account of

a dying man by Archie Cochrane, records an act of brotherhood to another person, not medical, just human [92]. Probably above science, this is what patients and their families expect and appreciate the most.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Historically, the professional ideal of the physician-patient relationship is:
   (a) That patients have the most important role in making decisions
   (b) That patients have a minimal role in making decisions
   (c) That patients and physicians have equal roles in making decisions
   (d) That patients have very important roles in making decisions
   (e) That patient's relatives are most important in making decisions
2. The enhanced capacity to address patients' needs:
   (a) Is a waste of time
   (b) Increases the economic burden of health systems
   (c) Distracts physicians from their priorities
   (d) Has no effects on the outcomes
   (e) Increases the efficiency and is also profitable
3. Patient discrimination:
   (a) Is unavoidable and necessary in some cases
   (b) Reinforces the patient's compromise to adhere to therapy
   (c) Increases the use of diagnostic tests and services
   (d) Does not affect satisfaction with care
   (e) Reduces the use of A1c measurements
4. The attributes of primary care include all of the following, except:
   (a) Medical expertise
   (b) Accessibility
   (c) Comprehensiveness
   (d) Longitudinal care
   (e) Coordination
5. A medical home was originally defined:
   (a) As the medical setting were patients are more comfortable
   (b) As the repository of the medical record of children with chronic diseases
   (c) As the patient's home with adaptations according to individual needs
   (d) As a "patient-friendly" medical environment
   (e) As the place within clinical settings were physicians organize meetings
6. By comparison to disease management and specialized care, primary care:
   (a) Is less effective than specialized care
   (b) Is less professional
   (c) Is not supported by academic centers
   (d) Is more effective to achieve better health outcomes
   (e) Is exclusively empiric, not evidence-based
7. Clinical excellence involves all of the following, except:
   (a) Expertise in the use of the most recent medications
   (b) Promoting successful physician-patient relationships
   (c) Ability to find and apply information to solve clinical problems
   (d) Skillful negotiation within the health-care system
   (e) Diagnostic acumen
8. In patients with diabetes, improvements in high-quality primary care result in significant reductions of:
   (a) A1c
   (b) Systolic and diastolic blood pressure
   (c) LDL cholesterol and triglycerides
   (d) None of the above
   (e) All of the above
9. The use of the principles of the patient-centered medical home:
   (a) Increases the costs of medical care
   (b) Reduces A1c levels
   (c) Increases physician burnout at unmanageable levels
   (d) Achieves nonsignificant reductions in A1c levels
   (e) Increases the use of diagnostic tests
10. Strengths of the patient-centered medical home include:
    (a) Commitment to evidence-based medicine
    (b) Quality improvement
    (c) Information technology
    (d) All of the above
    (e) None of the above

Correct Answers

1. (b) That patients have a minimal role in making decisions
2. (e) Increases the efficiency and is also profitable
3. (c) Increases the use of diagnostic tests and services
4. (a) Medical expertise
5. (b) As the repository of the medical record of children with chronic diseases
6. (d) Is more effective to achieve better health outcomes
7. (a) Expertise in the use of the most recent medications
8. (e) All of the above
9. (b) Reduces A1c levels
10. (d) All of the above

References

1. Bojadzievski T, Gabbay RA. Patient-centered medical home and diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2011;34:1047–53.
2. Ruiz-Azarola A, Perestelo-Pérez L. Citizen's participation in health: education and shared decision-making. SESPAS report 2012. Gac Sanit. 2012;26(Suppl 1):158–61.
3. Larson CO, Nelson EC, Gustafson D, Batalden PB. The relationship between meeting patients' information needs and their satisfaction with hospital care and general status outcomes. Int J Qual Health Care. 1996;8:447–56.
4. Brock DW, Wartman SA. When competent patients make irrational choices. N Engl J Med. 1990;322(22):1595–9.
5. Kassirer JP. Adding insult to injury. Usurping patients' prerogatives. N Engl J Med. 1983;308:898–901.
6. Hall MF. Looking to improve financial results? Start by listening to patients. Health Financ Manage. 2008;62:76–80.
7. Nelson EC, Batalden PB. Patient-based quality measurement systems. Qual Manag Health Care. 1993;2:18–30.
8. Fernandez LH. Discrimination at the Doctor's office. N Engl J Med. 2013;368:1668–70.
9. Cykert DM, Williams JS, Walker RJ, Davis KS, Egede LE. The association of cumulative discrimination on quality of care, patient-centered care and dissatisfaction with care in adults with type 2 diabetes. J Diabetes Complicat. 2017;31:175–9.
10. Del Canale S, Louis DZ, Maio V, Wang X, Rossi G, Hojat M, et al. The relationship between physician empathy and disease complications: an empirical study of primary care physicians and their diabetic patients in Parma, Italy. Acad Med. 2012;87:1243–9.
11. Pearson SD. Patient reports of coverage denial: association with ratings of health plan quality and trust in physician. Am J Manag Care. 2003;9:238–44.
12. Gómez Dantés O, Sesma S, Becerril VM, Knaul FM, Arreola H, Frenk J. The health system of Mexico. Salud Publica Mex. 2011;53(Suppl 2):S220–32.
13. Fenton JJ, Jerant AF, Bertakis KD, Franks P. The cost of satisfaction: a national study of patient satisfaction, health care utilization, expenditures and mortality. Arch Intern Med. 2012;172:405–11.
14. Bastemeijer CM, Voogt L, van Ewijk JP, Hazelzet JA. What do patient values and preferences mean? A taxonomy based on a systematic review of qualitative papers. Patient Educ Couns. 2017;100:871–81.
15. Wium von Arx L-B, Gydesen H, Skovlund S. Treatment beliefs, health behaviors and their association with treatment outcome in type 2 diabetes. BMJ Open Diabetes Res Care. 2016;4:e000166.
16. Starfield B. The hidden inequity in health care. Int J Equity Health. 2011;10:15.
17. Taylor DC. The components of sickness: diseases, illnesses and predicaments. Lancet. 1971;2:1008.
18. Tinetti M. The end of the disease are. Am J Med. 2004;116:179–85.
19. Freymann JG. The public's health care paradigm is shifting: medicine must swing with it. J Gen Intern Med. 1989;4:313–9.
20. Christensen CM, Baumann H, Ruggies R, Sadtler TM. Disruptive innovation for social change. Harv Bus Rev. 2006;84:94–101.
21. Grumbach K, Bodenheimer T. A primary care home for Americans. Putting the house in order. JAMA. 2002;288:889–93.
22. Scheffler RM, Weisfeld N, Ruby G, Estes EH. A manpower policy for primary health care. N Engl J Med. 1978;298:1058–62.
23. Starfield B. Primary care. Balancing health needs, services, and technology. New York: Oxford University Press; 1998.
24. Sia C, Tonniges TF, Osterhus E, Taba S. History of the medical home concept. Pediatrics. 2004;113(5 supp):1473–8.
25. Balint M, Hunt J, Joyce D, Marinker M, Woodcock J. Treatment or diagnosis: a study of repeat prescriptions in general practice. Toronto: J.B. Lippincott Company; 1970.
26. Reach G. Simplistic and complex thought in medicine: the rationale for a person-centered care model as a medical revolution. Patient Prefer Adherence. 2016;10:449–57.
27. McWhinney IR. Patient-centred and doctor-centred models of clinical decision-making. In: Sheldon M, Brooke J, Rector A, editors. Decision-making in general practice. New York: Stockton Press; 1985.
28. Osler W. Remarks on specialism. Boston Med Surg J. 1892;126:457–9.
29. Engel GL. The need for a new medical model: a challenge for biomedicine. Science. 1977;196(4286):129–36.
30. Tinetti ME, Naik AD, Dodson JA. Moving from disease-centered to patient goals directed care for patients with multiple chronic conditions. JAMA Cardiol. 2016;1:9–10.
31. Arend J, Tsang-Quinn J, Levine C, Thomas D. The patient-centered medical home: history, components, and review of the evidence. Mt Sinai J Med. 2012;79:433–50.
32. World Health Organization. Declaration of Alma-Ata. International conference on primary health care, Alma-Ata, USSR, 6–12 September 1978. Accessed 18 Apr 2017 at: http://www.who.int/publications/almaata_declaration_en.pdf.
33. Frenk J. Reinventing primary health care: the need for systems integration. Lancet. 2009;374:170–3.
34. Cueto M. The origins of primary health care and selective primary health care. Am J Public Health. 2004;94:1864–74.
35. Van Weel C, Maeseneer D, Roberts R. Integration of personal and community health care. Lancet. 2008;372:871–2.
36. Starfield B. Politics, primary healthcare and health: was Virchow right? J Epidemiol Community Health. 2011;65:653–5.
37. Bodenheimer T, Lorig K, Holman H, Grumbach K. Patient self-management of chronic disease in primary care. JAMA. 2002;288:2469–75.
38. Starfield B. Primary care: an increasingly important contributor to effectiveness, equity, and efficiency of health services. SESPAS report 2012. Gac Sanit. 2012;10(1016):1–7.
39. Okie S. The evolving primary care physician. N Engl J Med. 2012;366:1849–53.
40. Bodenheimer T. Transforming practice. N Engl J Med. 2008;359:2086–7.
41. Bodenheimer T, Grumbach K. Improving primary care. Strategies and tools for a better practice. New York: Lange Medical Books/McGraw Hill; 2007.
42. Lee K, Wright SM, Wolfe L. The clinically excellent primary care physician: examples from the published literature. BMC Fam Pract. 2016;17:169.
43. López-Roig S, Ángeles-Pastor M, Rodríguez C. The reputation and professional identity of family medicine practice according to medical students: a Spanish case study. Aten Primaria. 2010;42:591–603.
44. Farmer M, Rose DE, Rubenstein LV, Canelo IA, Schectman G, Stark R, et al. Challenges facing primary care practices aiming to implement patient-centered medical homes. J Gen Intern Med. 2014;29(Suppl 2):S555–62.
45. Whitcomb ME, Cohen JJ. The future of primary care medicine. N Engl J Med. 2004;351:710–2.
46. Willard-Grace R, Hessler D, Rogers E, Dubé K, Bodenheimer T, Grjumbach K. Team structure and culture are associated with lower burnout in primary care. J Am Board Fam Med. 2014;27:229–38.
47. Ghorob A, Bodenheimer T. Sharing the care to improve access to primary care. N Engl J Med. 2012;366:1955–7.
48. Sinsky CA, Willard-Grace R, Schutzbank A, Sinsky D, Margolius D, Bodenheimer T. In search of joy in practice: a report of 23 high-functioning primary care practices. Ann Fam Med. 2013;11:272–8.
49. Bodenheimer T, Laing BY. The teamlet model of primary care. Ann Fam Med. 2007;5:457–61.

50. Margolius D, Bodenheimer T. Transforming primary care: from past practice to the practice of the future. Health Aff. 2010;29:779–84.
51. Fung C, Wan E, Jiao F, Lam C. Five-year change of clinical and complications profile of diabetic patients under primary care: a population-based longitudinal study on 127,977 diabetic patients. Diabetol Metab Syndr. 2015;7:79.
52. Iglehart JK. Primary care update – light at the end of the tunnel? N Engl J Med. 2012;366:2144–6.
53. Berry LL, Beckham D, Dettman A, Mead R. Toward a strategy of patient-centered access to primary care. Mayo Clin Proc. 2014;89:1406–15.
54. Tayloe DT. Patient-centered medical homes in 2016. NCMJ. 2016;77:279–82.
55. Institute of Medicine. Crossing the quality chasm. A new health system for the 21st century. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press; 2001.
56. Epstein RM, Street RL Jr. The values and value of patient-centered care. Ann Fam Med. 2011;9:100103.
57. Valko G, Wender RC, Zawora MQ. A "how to" guide to creating a patient-centered medical home. Prim Care Clin Office Pract. 2012;39:261–80.
58. Levenstein JH, McCracken E, Stewart M, Brown J, McWhinney IR. A model for the office visit in family medicine. Unpublished paper (cited by McWhinney[99]).
59. Gerteis M, Edgman-Levitan S, Daley J, Delbanco TL. Through the patient's eyes. Understanding and promoting patient-centered care. San Francisco: Jossey Bass; 1993.
60. Davis K. A 2020 vision of patient-centered primary care. J Gen Intern Med. 2005;20:953–7.
61. American Academy of Family Physicians, American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Physicians, American Osteopathic Association. Joint principles of the patient-centered medical home, 2007. Accessed 26 May 2017 at: www.pcpcc.net.
62. Battersby M, Von Korff M, Schaefer J, David C, Ludman E, Greene SM, Parkerton M, Wagner EH. Twelve evidence-based principles for implementing self-management support in primary care. Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf. 2010;36:561–70.
63. Epstein RM, Fiscella K, Lesser CS, Stange KC. Why the nation needs a policy push on patient-centered health care. Health Aff. 2010;29:1489–95.
64. The Working Party Group on Integrated Behavioral Healthcare. The development of joint principles: integrating behavioral health care into the patient-centered medical home. Ann Fam Med. 2014;12:183–5.
65. Cook N, Hollar L, Isaac E, Paul L, Amofah A, Shi L. Patient experience in health center medical homes. J Comminuty Health. 2015;40:1155–64.
66. Rosenthal TC. The medical home: growing evidence to support a new approach to primary care. J Am Board Fam Med. 2008;21:427–40.
67. Jackson GL, Powers BJ, Chatterjee R, Bettger JP, Kemper AR, Hasselblad V, et al. Improving patient care. The patient-centered medical home. A systematic review. Ann Intern Med. 2013;158:169–78.
68. Pantalone KM. Diabetes, patient-centered medical homes, and accountable care organizations, oh my! J Am Osteopathic Assoc. 2015;114(4 suppl):eS3–4. https://doi.org/10.7556/jaoa.2015.056.
69. Kinmonth AL, Woodcock A, Griffin S, Spiegal N, Campbell MJ. Randomised controlled trial of patient centred care of diabetes in general practice: impact on current wellbeing and future disease risk. BMJ. 1998;317:1202–8.
70. Steiner BD, Denham AC, Ashkin E, Newton WP, Wroth T, Dobson LA. Community care of North Carolina: improving care through community health networks. Ann Fam Med. 2008;6:361–7.
71. Paulus RA, Davis K, Steele GD. Continuous innovation in health care: implications of the Geisinger experience. Health Aff. 2008;27:1235–45.
72. Reid RJ, Coleman K, Johnson EA, Fishman PA, Hsu C, Soman MP, et al. The group health medical home at year two: cost savings, higher patient satisfaction, and less burnout for providers. Health Aff. 2010;29:835–43.
73. Nutting PA, Crabtree BF, Miller WL, Stange KC, Stewart EE, Jaén CR. Transforming physician practices to patient-centered medical homes: lessons from the national demonstration project. Health Aff. 2011;30:439–45.
74. Calman NS, Hauser D, Weiss L, Waltermaurer E, Molina-Ortiz E, Chantarat T, Bozack A. Becoming a patient-centered medical home: a 9-year transition for a network of federally qualified health centers. Ann Fam Med. 2013;11:S68–73.
75. Pagán JA, Carlson EK. Assessing long-term health and cost outcomes of patient-centered medical homes serving adults with poor diabetes control. J Prim Care Community Health. 2013;4:281–5.
76. Shah NR, Webb FJ, Hannah LM, Smotherman CR, Kraemer DF. Diabetes registries in patient-centered medical homes. J Registry Manag. 2015;42:3–8.
77. Page TF, Amofah SA, McCann S, Rivo J, Varghese A, James T, et al. Care management medical home center model: preliminary results of a patient-centered approach to improving quality for diabetic patients. Health Promot Pract. 2015;16:609–16.
78. An JJ. The impact of patient-centered medical homes on quality of care and medication adherence in patients with diabetes mellitus. J Manag Care Spec Pharm. 2016;22:1272–84.
79. Ackroyd SA, Wexler DJ. Effectiveness of diabetes interventions in the patient-centered medical home. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14:471–6.
80. Tricco AC, Ivers NM, Grimshaw JM, Moher D, Turner L, Galipeau J, et al. Effectiveness of quality improvement strategies on the management of diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet. 2012;379:2252–61.
81. Morgan TO, Everett DL, Dunlop AL. How do interventions that exemplify the joint principles of the patient centered medical home affect hemoglobin A1c in patients with diabetes: a review. Health Serv Res Manag Epidemiol. 2014;31:1–13.
82. Kenney C. Transforming health care. Virginia Mason Medical Center's pursuit of the perfect patient experience. Boca Raton: CRC Press/Taylor and Francis Group; 2011.
83. Frampton SB, Charmel PA, Guastello S. The putting patients first field guide. Global lessons in designing and implementing patient-centered care. San Francisco: Jossey Bass; 2013.
84. Kupfer JM, Bond EU. Patient satisfaction and patient-centered care. Necessary but not equal. JAMA. 2012;308:139–40.
85. Starfield B. Is patient-centered care the same as person-focused care? Perm J. 2011;15:63–9.
86. Rogers JC. The patient-centered medical home movement – promise and peril for family medicine. J Am Board Fam Med. 2008;21:370–4.
87. Institute of Medicine. Roundtable on value & science-driven health care improvement: workshop proceedings. Washington, D.C.: National Academic Press; 2013. Accessed 26 May 2014 at: http://books.nap.edu/openbook.php?record_id=18397.
88. Millenson ML. New roles and rules for patient-centered care. J Gen Intern Med. 2014;29:979. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11606-014-2788-y.
89. Frampton SB, Guastello S. Time to embrace a new patient-centered care rallying cry: "why not?". Patient. 2014;7:231.
90. Bezold C. The future of patient-centered care: scenarios, visions, and audacious goals. J Altern Complement Med. 2005;11(Suppl 1):S77–84.
91. Guyatt G, Montori V, Devereaux V, Schünemann H, Bhandari M. EBM notebook. Patients at the centre: in our practice, and in our use of language. www.evidence-basedmedicine.com. Accessed 26 May 2017.
92. Hurwitz B. The art of medicine. What Archie Cochrane learnt from a single case. Lancet. 2017;389:594–5.

Outpatient Diabetes Management and the Chronic Care Model

20

Joel Rodriguez-Saldana

Introduction: The Ongoing Story of Diabetes Clinics

In the 1960s, diabetes was considered a common disease, even when being much less common than today; the average practitioner treated 15 or 16 known patients, and hospital clinics admitted approximately 1000 patients each year [1, 2]. The first diabetes clinics were established in North America and Europe in the years following the discovery of insulin with the main objective of teaching patients the technique and principles of its use; only in Britain, 500 had been established in 1973, even in isolated geographical entities [1, 3]. Hospital surveys showed that diabetes was controlled by diet and insulin, early diabetic complications and patient education were overlooked by physicians, and diabetic management by nursing, administrative, and dietetic staff was considered ineffective [4]. Successful clinics prevailing until today were the ones that had the vision, ability, and resources to institute comprehensive diabetic services which coordinated the activities of medical, nursing, and dietetic staffs to deliver multidisciplinary outpatient care, "special services" (dietetic, foot, eye, pregnancy, children, and adolescents), and diabetes education programs as essential components of their services [4–7]. These programs showed marked improvements in all areas of diabetes care, including diagnosis, assessment, hypoglycemia prevention, diet, and referrals [4]. In the majority of hospitals, patients with diabetes admitted to hospitals were seen mostly by specialists, but the sharp rise in the prevalence of type 2 diabetes made this unpractical [8]. Hospital diabetes programs including telephone support for patients, screening by nurses, and a mixture of outpatient and inpatient services showed reductions in emergency room visits, decreases in the incidence of acute complications (ketoacidosis, hypoglycemia) and amputations, lower rates of broken appointments and complaints, and higher levels of patient and professional satisfaction [9, 10]. Most of the other hospitals told a different story: once referred, patients were supposed to be treated for life, doomed to take time out of work and travel, and wait to be seen by a different physician at almost every visit at the diabetes clinic; this approach of fleeting consultations was – and still is – unrewarding from every perspective [1]. Even when the estimated incidence of diabetes was 1.2–1.3% in England, diabetic clinics had such a large load that they became unable to devote sufficient time to difficult cases; medical manpower to deal with the growing workload was (and currently more than ever) met with increasing use of junior staff, resulting in large dropout rates, lack of adherence, high levels of patient dissatisfaction, and abysmal levels of quality of care [1, 2]. Taking into account that the average diabetic required seven to ten clinical visits every year, hospital demands meant establishing huge diabetic clinics with dissatisfaction and depersonalization for patients and staff [1]. In Germany and other countries, hospital diabetes management was paternalistic; patients were admitted to stabilize blood glucose control, and the lack of self-care support had many consequences: glycosuria was preferred to prevent hypoglycemia, the routine therapy was one or two injections of medium-acting insulin per day, self-monitoring and changes in insulin dosage were not allowed, and education was conceived as "obedience training" to follow rigid dietary prescriptions consisting of six to seven meals with fixed amounts of carbohydrates, proteins and fats, and prohibition of sugar [11]. This approach was never assessed, but acute and late complications were evident and frequent [11]. Hospital wards overflowed with patients with diabetes routinely assigned to hospital beds in hallways, timely access to appropriate medical advice was poor, hospital resources were largely devoted to episodic care for acutely and severely ill patients, there was low supervision by specialists, and rates of acute complications were very high [8, 9]. Inpatient hospital care represented >80% of the direct costs of diabetes and was related to higher

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (✉)
Multidisciplinary Centre of Diabetes, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_20

risks of cardiovascular complications and renal disease [12]. On the other hand, understaffing and low resources to outpatient facilities were associated with an excess in hospital admissions and direct costs [13]. With the increasing rates of diabetes in recent decades, the amount of patients admitted to hospitals continues to rise [14]. They are more likely to die in the hospital, to occupy more bed days, and to incur in higher costs than people without diabetes [14]. Health systems, unable or unwilling to reinforce multidisciplinary outpatient management, can only expect to see increases in the financial and health burden of preventable hospitalizations [15]. The title of an article by Simmons and Wenzel is accurate: in many cases, diabetes inpatients are a case of lose, lose, lose [14]. The aim of diabetes care should be enabling patients to lead normal lives, with good metabolic control and free from complications. For many patients across the world, such an ideal is still far away [13].

Lessons Learned and Still Unlearned

Failure of clinics established at hospitals, which rapidly became overwhelmed, increased the role of primary healthcare professionals in the shared care of diabetes management. General physicians became increasingly aware of the importance of tailoring management to patient's lifestyles, their expectation to be actively involved in their treatment, and their unwillingness to continue accepting medical advice without questioning [8]. General practitioners in the United Kingdom were among the first to see that they could manage many aspects of diabetes in their own practice. Albeit the pace to provide ambulatory diabetes care was initially slow, many innovative schemes were described and initiated [16]. Combination of need and opportunity prompted the creation of "small clinics of general practice" where groups of general physicians were organized to assist groups of 80 to 100 patients to stop the flow of patient to hospital-based clinics devoted to difficult cases [2, 18, 19]. Pioneering reports from Wilkes, Thorn, Russell, Hill, Singh, and colleagues showed that:

1. Diabetes could be looked after by the family doctor [1].
2. General practice seemed the proper place to look after many diabetics, allowing general practitioners to become increasingly competent in diabetes care [2].
3. Coordinating and sharing "the diabetic workload" with hospital clinics raised community awareness about diabetes, allowing family physicians to deal with problems for which they were trained [17].
4. "Diabetes care delivered by organized general physicians achieved similar levels of metabolic control to the ones reached in hospital clinics" [18].

To summarize, increases in the number of patients with type 2 diabetes, longer life expectancy, and sophistication of treatment produced overcrowding and inadequacies of delivery in hospital-based diabetes care [20, 21]. Increasingly low rates of access to hospital or university clinics and unsuccessful indices of performance occurred, even in countries with large and comparatively smaller populations of patients [20, 21]. Home and Walford reflected that "though some activities required the expertise and resources only available in hospitals, most of them did not require them, as long as general physicians had access to blood glucose monitoring, dietetic, chiropody and nurse educational services [20]." The need to reappraise the role of diabetes clinics was recognized by Thorn and Russell since 1973, but it was also essential to increase the access to effective diabetes management, because only a small proportion of patients attended hospital and outpatient clinics [20, 21]. Since 1986, it was acknowledged that the huge amount of people with diabetes in the community made it unrealistic to treat them in specialist outpatient clinics [21].

Transforming Diabetes Care

Suboptimal diabetes care was associated with high hospital admission rates and poor diagnostic differentiation between patients with mild and severe metabolic problems. Planning of diabetes services needed to be broader beyond those available in most centers, but surveys at facilities demonstrated (and continue to show) large discrepancies with recommended national and international guidelines [22]. A survey carried out by the Medical Advisory Committee (MAC) in Britain showed a scarcity of diabetes clinics or even examination rooms, resulting in lack of referrals; a variety of deficiencies in access to professional services, including obstetricians, ophthalmologists, dietitians, chiropodists, and nurses; a scarcity in the availability of resources to measure glucose and A1c; and absent or inadequate facilities to deliver diabetes education [23]. Nineteen recommendations were endorsed by the MAC; a follow-up report 10 years later showed significant improvements in all the previously described deficiencies, albeit there was still room for improvement [24]. Even when resources were insufficient, reorganization and integration of services produced great improvements in healthcare standards. From its inception in the 1970s, the concept of diabetes centers evolved to a number of "different breeds in the 1990s" [25]. Dunn and colleagues identified four priority areas to be considered for implementation of the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) in Australia: (1) allocation and effective use of resources, (2) standards of care and quality assurance, (3) training and continuing education, and (4) research and evaluation [25].

Effectiveness of Diabetes Outpatient Management: The Evidence

Diabetes centers evolved from traditional hospitalization of new patients; hospital admission to start insulin was occasionally used, but ambulatory care became the norm. The main objective of diabetes management became preventing or delaying the physical and social consequences of the disorder [19]. Early reports showed that transforming traditional to modern management methods was feasible, acceptable, and effective and produced significant improvements in A1c levels without associated increases in the frequency of hypoglycemia [24]. Recent emphasis on issues of cost-effectiveness came to realize that diabetes is a disorder that rarely warrants hospitalization; awareness to these facts reinforced the concept of diabetes ambulatory care [25]. Nevertheless and despite demonstrations of cost-effectiveness of ambulatory management, funding of ambulatory services remained (and continues to be) in huge disadvantage with hospital care [25]. The 1980s witnessed the emergence of multiple initiatives devoted to shift the focus of diabetes management from hospitals to outpatient clinics in Europe, North America, and Australia. Table 20.1 shows examples of outpatient diabetes programs manually collected or identified in a PubMed search from 1980 thru 2018.

Table 20.1 Experiences of outpatient diabetes management across the world

Year, country, and reference	Objectives	Type of study, patients, health professionals, and intervention	Results
1988, United States [26]	Comparative effectiveness of community diabetes care and education on clinical outcomes	Prospective, randomized study 261 patients treated by 61 primary care physicians from 1980 until 1985 from four large and four small communities randomly selected Intervention: four group sessions delivered by paramedical personnel Five-year follow-up	Patients receiving the intervention showed significant changes in healthcare practices, including increases in the use of multiple injections of insulin and self-monitoring of blood glucose Decrease in hospitalizations related to diabetes, probably representing changes in healthcare practices rather than changes in health status A1c levels unchanged
1988, Germany [27]	Efficacy of a structured treatment and education program on the selection of pharmacological therapy, A1c levels, triglycerides, and body weight	Prospective randomized study 114 patients with type 2 diabetes, 65 in the intervention group and 49 in the control group from five general practices Intervention: preparatory course for physicians and assistants; four group monthly education sessions delivered by paramedical personnel	A1c levels remained unchanged in the intervention group; significant decreases in triglycerides and weight loss The percentage of patients receiving sulfonylureas decreased from 68% to 38%
1993, Germany [28]	Feasibility and efficacy of a structured treatment and teaching program in routine primary healthcare	Observational study of a random sample of 17 physicians and their office staffs Intervention: remunerations to physicians and office staff upon completion of a postgraduate training course 179 patients with type 2 diabetes Four 90–120-minute sessions for groups of 4–10 patients, partly based on the Grady Memorial diabetes medical and education program [10] and previously assessed in a controlled trial [27] Program delivered by the office staff	Acceptance by physicians Significant decreases in A1c levels from 8.11% to 7.47%, body weight (mean 2.8 kg), use, and proportion of patients treated with oral antidiabetics
1994, United States [29]	Follow-up of a structured treatment and education program on the selection of pharmacological therapy, A1c levels, triglycerides, and body weight	Prospective, randomized study 440 patients with type 2 diabetes, 61 in the intervention group and 355 in the control group Ten-year follow-up 1981–1991	Positive changes in diabetes care and education Nonsignificant increases in A1c and total cholesterol, significant increases in HDL cholesterol, significant decreases in hospital admissions, and small increases in the proportion of patients receiving formal diabetes education The majority of patients with type 2 diabetes managed on diet alone had never seen a dietitian Nonsignificant changes in ophthalmologic examinations Less patients managed with insulin

(continued)

Table 20.1 (continued)

Year, country, and reference	Objectives	Type of study, patients, health professionals, and intervention	Results
1997, United States [30]	Effectiveness and safety of intensive insulin therapy (IIT) on outpatient, endocrine-based, multidisciplinary practice in patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes	Longitudinal cohort study, 14-year duration 780 patients, 209 receiving long-term comprehensive treatment including cardiac screening with exercise treadmill tests, noninvasive thallium scan, and cardiology referrals if necessary 571 declined continuing care	Patients with prolonged exposure to comprehensive therapy had significant reductions in overall and cardiac mortality and lower incidence of renal failure Lower comorbidity scores associated with higher survival Two thirds of the patients declined receiving multidisciplinary, intensive care
1998, United Kingdom [31]	Changes in the proportion of patients with diabetes receiving treatment in primary and secondary care over 5 years	Longitudinal study, 1990–1995 Seven general practices, five of them with organized diabetes programs A diabetes review was defined as a contact with a general physician or nurse including examination for at least three potential complications or risk factors	The proportion of patients treated in general practice doubled from 17% in 1990 to 35% in 1995 Patients treated in secondary practice fell from 35% in 1990 to 30% in 1995 Patients treated both in general and secondary practice fell from 6% to 2% Newly diagnosed and treated patients in general practice also increased Albeit theoretically greater activity in primary care would increase the pressure on hospital services, this study showed that this had not occurred
1998, United Kingdom [32]	Effect of training about a patient-centered intervention for general practitioners and nurses on outcomes	Randomized controlled trial 29 general practices receiving training about patient-centered care 252 type 2 diabetic patients Duration: 2 years	High initial levels of professional adoption by professionals Persistence after 2 years: 19% No significant biochemical or functional improvements
1999, Poland [33]	Effect of a disease management program on A1c and fasting blood glucose, the appropriateness of treatment modalities, and timing of therapeutic choices	Pilot prospective study in outpatient clinics, 18-month duration 88 randomly selected patients with type 1 diabetes 132 randomly selected patients with type 2 diabetes 177 pregnant women with type 1 diabetes, 81 receiving the structured program, 74 non-recipients 155 infants from these 2 groups	Patients with type 1 diabetes had significant decreases in A1c, fasting, and postprandial blood glucose, without severe hypoglycemia Body mass changes were nonsignificant Patients with type 2 diabetes had significant decreases in A1c, fasting, and postprandial blood glucose, without severe hypoglycemia Body mass decrease was significant Pregnant women not receiving the structured program had higher rates of hyperglycemia, preeclampsia, ketoacidosis, polyhydramnios, and cesarean sections Higher APGAR scores in infants from recipients of the structured program
2001, United States [34]	Effectiveness of a comprehensive diabetes management program including risk stratification and social marketing on clinical outcomes and patient satisfaction	Prospective trial, 12 months Two outpatient primary care clinics from a managed care organization 370 patients in the intervention group, 193 with available information at 12 months 623 patients in the control group	Significant improvements in glycemic control: Patients at low risk (A1c <7.0%) increased by 51.1% Patients at moderate risk (A1c 7.0–8.0%) increased by 2.5% Patients at high risk (A1c ≥8.0%) decreased by 58.3% and 97.4% had changes in therapy Patients with blood pressure <140/90 mm Hg increased from 38.9% at baseline to 66.8%; 63.0% of patients with blood readings >130/85 mmHg at baseline had changes in medication Patients receiving lipid profile tests increased from 66% at baseline to 100% Patients with LDL >130 mg/dl decreased from 25.4% at baseline to 20.2% 76.7% of patients at the highest risk of nephropathy had a change in medications Patients receiving dilated eye examinations increased from 53.9% to 80.3% Foot examinations increased from 0% to 100.0% 100% of patients and providers were satisfied with the program Patients in the control group remained essentially unchanged

Table 20.1 (continued)

Year, country, and reference	Objectives	Type of study, patients, health professionals, and intervention	Results
2001, Denmark [35]	Effectiveness of a multifaceted intervention for general practitioners on 6-year mortality, morbidity, and risk factors of patients with type 2 diabetes	Open controlled trial randomization of practices to structured personal care or routine care 311 Danish practices, 474 general practitioners 243 in intervention group 231 in comparison group 459 patients randomized to structured care 415 patients randomized to routine care Regular follow-up and individualized goal setting supported by prompting of doctors, clinical guidelines, feedback, and continuing medical education	Equal rates of nonfatal outcomes and mortality in both groups Findings in the intervention group: significantly lower fasting plasma glucose, A1c levels, systolic blood pressure, and cholesterol levels More frequent use of metformin, doctors arranged more follow-up visits, referred fewer patients to hospital clinics, and set more optimistic goals Individualized goals, education, and surveillance in primary care for at least 6 years may bring risk factors of patients with type 2 diabetes to a level that has been shown to reduce diabetic complications without weight gain
2001, Netherlands [36]	Comparative effectiveness of a disease management model to a shared care model for diabetes	Observational non-randomized trial In the traditional care model, patients were seen by endocrinologists at outpatient clinics In the disease management model, patients were seen by nurse specialists delivering direct, organized, and coordinated care with specialists and other providers in general practice 22 general practitioners accepted the shared care model and 29 continued using the traditional model 74 patients agreed to participate in the shared care model and 47 patients continued using the traditional model	No differences were found between groups in quality of life, knowledge of diabetes, patient satisfaction, or consultation with caregivers Glycemic control improved in patients receiving shared care and deteriorated in patients receiving traditional care Factors influencing implementation of the shared care model: project management, commitment, power, and structure
2002, United States [37]	Effectiveness of community-based diabetes care models and use of a diabetes electronic management system (DEMS)	Observational study Three primary care practice sites Implementation of planned care and DEMS with 16 primary care providers	Planned care showed improvements in A1c, cholesterol, microalbuminuria, and tobacco advice DEMS was associated with improvements in all indicators including microalbuminuria, retinal examination, foot examinations, and self-management support The way in which healthcare services are organized and delivered can improve documentation of clinical practice, adherence to performance measures, and metabolic outcomes
2003, United States [38]	Effectiveness of diabetes care directed by nurses and supervised by a diabetologist to meet the American Diabetes Association process and outcome measures versus usual care	Randomized observational trial 504 patients from 2 county clinics: 252 receiving nurse-directed diabetes care 252 patients receiving usual care as controls	Patients under nurse-directed diabetes care received almost all process measures significantly more frequently than control patients A1c levels fell 3.5% by comparison to a 1.5% decrease in patients under usual care After 1 year under nurse-directed care, A1c levels decreased to 7.1%, and the median value fell from 8.3% to 6.6%
2003, United Kingdom [39]	Effectiveness of specialist diabetes clinics receiving patients from primary and secondary care	Observational prospective study, 2-year duration 19 specialist clinics 2415 patients referred to 19 specialist diabetes clinics led by GPs with a special interest in diabetes, to alleviate increasing waiting times for secondary care Training based on 2-day workshops for GPs, follow-up workshops, and case reviews Multidisciplinary support from specialist nurses, podiatrists, dietitians, and retinal screening cameras	Significant increases in overall patient attendance Significant reductions in hospital attendance Main benefits: geographical accessibility, availability in community setting, short waiting times at most clinics, and continuity of staff Reservations included lack of strategic planning in the location of clinics, long waiting times in some of them, and poor communication for referrals Advantages: convenience to patients, acceptability, and increased capacity of physicians

(continued)

Table 20.1 (continued)

Year, country, and reference	Objectives	Type of study, patients, health professionals, and intervention	Results
2004, United States [40]	Effectiveness of community-based, nurse case management and peer education to improve diabetes care, patient knowledge, and satisfaction and reduce health adverse beliefs in undeserved patients	Prospective study, 1-year duration 153 patients from 6 community clinics 76 non-randomized patients from the same clinics with A1c values ≥9.0% as controls	Patients in the intervention group had significant improvements in A1c, total cholesterol, LDL cholesterol, and diastolic blood pressure Nonsignificant changes among patients in the control group
2004, France [41]	Impact of a local adaptation of a structured program on primary care to encourage intensive treatment of diabetes as routine practice	Prospective, randomized, controlled trial in a suburban and semirural area, 12-month Follow-up allocation of all the general physicians from a suburban and semirural area, 35 in the intervention group, 32 in the control group 192 patients in the intervention group 148 patients in the control group Three-day training and follow-up of physicians in the intervention group	Patients in the intervention group were managed more adequately according to guidelines and referrals Significant decreases in A1c in the intervention group (0.86%) No significant differences in other clinical outcomes, incremental costs from the intervention No significant changes in quality of life
2008, South Africa [42]	Effectiveness of a nurse-led protocol and education-based system on diabetes management in a rural setting	Prospective non-comparative intervention 326 patients, 96% with type 2 diabetes Two rural nurses received 12-month training from a diabetes specialist One weekly hospital diabetes clinic and 14 monthly diabetes clinics established in peripheral clinics Cornerstones of the system: patient education, drug dose titration, and clinical outcomes	High levels of acceptance by patients and staff 980 patients enrolled within 9 months Significant decreases of A1c from 11.1 ± 4.2% to 8.7 ± 2.6% at 6 months Patients with baseline A1c >10.0% showed a mean 5.8% fall Diabetes education was associated with significant A1c improvements Rates of hypoglycemia did not increase
2010, United States [43]	Effectiveness of systems-based care in an undeserved population to reduce disparity in care for cultural, ethnic, commercial, and socioeconomic minorities	Implementation of disease registry and management system in four community health centers from a suburban practice network	Community health center patients meeting guidelines showed significant improvements in clinical outcomes except percentage of patients with A1c >9.0% Despite improvements, statistically significant discrepancies persisted between community health clinics and suburban practices in percentage of patients with A1c <7.0%, LDL <100, retinopathy, and microalbuminuria screening Community health centers lagged in all comparisons
2010, United States [44]	Comparative effectiveness of nurse-directed diabetes management between a non-integrated model in which patients were removed from primary care clinics and followed by supervision from an endocrinologist versus an integrated model in which patients were seen by nurses under the supervision of primary care physicians	Observational study, 9–12 months 387 patients randomly assigned to the non-integrated model 178 patients were referred to the integrated model	25% of the patients in the non-integrated model were using insulin (mostly bedtime), and 75% of the patients in the integrated model were using intensified insulin regimes A1c decreased 1.9% in the non-integrated model and 3.9% in the integrated model In the integrated model: 90% of patients met blood pressure goals, 96% met LDL goals, and 47% met the three goals of treatment (A1c, blood pressure, LDL)

Table 20.1 (continued)

Year, country, and reference	Objectives	Type of study, patients, health professionals, and intervention	Results
2010, Mexico [45]	Effectiveness of structured diabetes management on the quality of primary diabetes care	Seven-year statewide diabetes Training, feedback, and reminders to general physicians, nurses, and health professionals to implement 43 outpatient multidisciplinary diabetes clinics at urban and rural health centers Organizational arrangements to reduce waiting times, avoid rotation of staff, and increase time for baseline and follow-up visits Statewide diabetes registry 4393 patients	After five visits, significant increases in the percentage of recorded process indicators were documented in the diabetes registry, including body mass index, blood pressure, A1c, total cholesterol, and foot examination Outcome measures showed significant decreases in A1c and fasting blood glucose Nonsignificant changes in systolic/diastolic blood pressure and lipoprotein levels
2011, Netherlands [46]	Effectiveness of structured diabetes care from the perspective of patients and healthcare professionals in routine practice	Quasi-experimental study, 4-year duration Comparison of structured care (SC) and usual care (UC) SC including organizational components: multidisciplinary cooperation, clear task division, and cooperation between general practitioners, diabetes specialist nurse, and dietitians UC based on clinical guidelines and included three general checks and one extensive check per year, performed by GPs, nurses, or assistants Questionnaires were sent to healthcare professionals and patients in the SC and the UC group	No differences between SC and UC in yearly and three monthly checks More patients in the SC group received diabetes education by diabetes specialist nurses All practices in the SC used the diabetes registry GPs in the SC were significantly more satisfied than GPs in the UC group More patients in the SC group reported contact with GPs, nurses, assistant, and dietitians, received adequate education about diet and foot care, and knew their blood glucose level One year after SC finished, the effects of structured care were still visible
2013, Denmark [47]	Follow-up of study referenced as [34]	Observational study 1381 patients aged ≥40 years and newly diagnosed with type 2 diabetes from national registries 19-year follow-up	Group differences in risk factors from the 6-year follow-up had leveled out Lower rates of microalbuminuria and triglycerides in the intervention group Similar rates in all-cause mortality between the intervention and control group Prompting, feedback, clinical guidelines, continuing medical education, individualization of goal setting, and drug treatment may safely be applied to treat patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes to lower the risk of complications
2013, United Kingdom [48]	Effectiveness of integrated, structured primary diabetes care in partnership with specialists. A challenging vision for two reasons: It challenged the secondary care status quo It would mean a shift of resources within the health economy	Consistent messages tailored and delivered to primary and secondary care providers to persuade them about the need and benefits of change Two phases of implementation: establishment of community diabetes teams changing the secondary care model and establishment of six "super-clinics": pregnancy, renal dialysis, insulin pumps, acute type 1 diabetes, type 1 education, adolescents	Significant improvements of care; 85% of patients discharged from secondary care; estimated savings: £59,940.00 per year 108 patients receiving appropriate treatment in the "super-six" clinic 2996 patients received DESMOND education training 287 clinicians received training Relationships with clinicians and other staff consistently positive Patient feedback overwhelmingly positive

(continued)

Table 20.1 (continued)

Year, country, and reference	Objectives	Type of study, patients, health professionals, and intervention	Results
2013, Australia [49]	Effectiveness on patient outcomes of an integrated primary/specialist model for community care for complex Type 2 diabetes management compared with outcomes for usual care at a tertiary hospital for diabetes outpatients	Prospective, open controlled trial in a primary and tertiary care setting 330 patients with type 2 diabetes ≥18 years old allocated to an intervention (community-based care by general practitioner with advanced skills and endocrinologist partnership) or to usual care in the hospital diabetes outpatient department	Patients in the intervention group showed a 0.8% decrease in A1c, increased from 21% to 42% achieving the A1c target (7.0%), experienced significant improvements in blood pressure and total cholesterol, and achieved significantly higher combined A1c, blood pressure, and LDL cholesterol targets by comparison to the usual care group Community-based, integrated models of complex diabetes care delivered by general practitioners with advanced skills produce clinical and process benefits compared with tertiary diabetes outpatient clinics
2015, United States [50]	Comparative effectiveness of in-clinic health coaching by medical assistants on diabetes and cardiovascular risk factor control versus usual care	Randomized controlled trial 441 patients from 2 primary care clinics Health coaching delivered by three medical assistants who received 40 hours of training and were embedded as part of the care team at the two clinics Patients randomized to usual care had access to any resources available at the clinics except for health coaching Primary outcome: a composite measure of A1c, systolic blood pressure, and LDL cholesterol Secondary outcome: meeting all three goals	Participants in the coaching arm were more likely to achieve goals for one or more uncontrolled conditions at baseline and more likely to achieve control of all conditions Almost twice of the people in the health coaching group achieved the A1c goal and were more likely to achieve LDL cholesterol goals Nonsignificant changes in systolic blood pressure Health coaching by medical assistants has the potential to alleviate nationwide deficiencies in diabetes control in an environment of deepening primary care clinician shortage
2015, Australia [51]	Effectiveness of an integrated model of care for patients with complex type 2 diabetes on potentially preventable hospitalizations	Prospective controlled trial, 36 months duration Multidisciplinary, community-based, integrated primary-secondary diabetes care compared to usual care at a hospital diabetes outpatient clinic 327 patients, 206 of them hospitalized	Compared with the usual care group, patients in the integrated model of care group were nearly half as likely to be hospitalized for a potentially preventable diabetes-related diagnosis after 24 months, even adjusting for age, sex, education, and A1c concentration Integrated diabetes care models reduce hospitalizations
2016, United States [52]	Association between patient-centered care (PCC), diabetes self-care, glycemic control, and quality of life (QOL)	Two adult primary care clinics 615 patients	PCC was significantly associated with QOL, medication adherence, general diet, specific diet, blood sugar testing, and foot care, but was not significantly associated with glycemic control Focusing care around the patient may need to expand throughout the healthcare system before changes in outcomes occur
2017, United Kingdom [53]	Comparative effectiveness of enhanced diabetes primary care with more expensive integrated specialist-community diabetes services	Eight primary care practices and eight matching neighboring practices Enhanced practices had primary care physicians and nurses with an interest in diabetes who attended monthly diabetes education meetings and provided care plans and audits Control practices provided integrated primary-specialist care services	No significant differences were noted between enhanced and primary-specialist services Enhanced primary diabetes care has similar outcomes to that provided by more expensive primary-specialist care
2017, Brazil [54]	Effectiveness of a structured intervention to improve type 2 diabetes management in primary care in a defined region	Comparative observational study 230,448 patients, 124,779 in the intervention group and 105,669 in the control group 61 family strategy team professionals (FHS) from two cities 29 in the intervention group and 32 in the control group One awareness-raising workshop with heads of municipal health departments of the selected cities, with extensive participation of FHS health professionals Constitution of local management teams, reorganization, and local action plans to improve diabetes care Delivery of three training sessions for FHS professionals	Significant differences in staffing the intervention group, including deficiencies in physicians and nurses By comparison with the intervention group, the control group showed better outcomes including: multidisciplinary management, adherence to treatment referrals, diagnostic tests, and educational activities This complex intervention had no detectable impact despite an enormous investment in money and manpower

Outpatient Management of Type 1 Diabetes

Traditional models for type 1 diabetes are organized around a specialist with a multidisciplinary team to deal with education, nutrition, and psychosocial adjustment [55]. A limited number of patients with type 1 diabetes are treated by primary physicians, but even in developed countries, availability and geographical distribution of specialists are real obstacles to refer all these patients to diabetologists [56–58]. Even in the United States, it was estimated that in 2014 the shortage of adult and pediatric endocrinologists was of 1500 and 100, respectively, and that the gap for adult endocrinologists would expand to 2700 [58]. Models of primary care for type 1 diabetes are scarce, but innovative strategies have been conceived and implemented. Based on experiences collected as one of the participating centers in the DCCT, in 1988 the International Diabetes Center organized a team comprising three family physicians, four endocrinologists, a clinical epidemiologist, three nurse specialists, and a dietitian and developed Staged Diabetes Management (SDM), a systematic approach to support clinical decision-making including clinical pathways or DecisionPaths to start, adjust, maintain, or change therapies [55, 59]. Initial experiences with SDM in the United States demonstrated its feasibility and its capacity to standardize clinical practice, reduce clinical inertia, and establish criteria for referral [59]. International dissemination of Staged Diabetes Management has confirmed its feasibility and effectiveness [33, 41, 45].

Challenges of Comorbidity and Multimorbidity in Diabetes Management

Treating chronic diseases like diabetes is often complicated by the coexistence of multiple medical conditions and of social and psychological deterrents; currently, the most common chronic condition among adults is multimorbidity [60, 61], in the words of Kate Lorig, "the Disease of the 21st Century [62]." The contribution of multi-morbidity to the global burden of disease is already huge, but projections are of great concern: it is estimated that during the last 15 years of life, one half of the newborns in industrialized countries will suffer multi-morbidity and its consequences, including poor quality of life, psychological distress, worsening functional capacity, longer hospital stays, higher costs of care, and higher mortality [63–67]. MM also affects processes of care resulting in complex self-care needs; multiple organizational problems; polypharmacy; increased use of emergency facilities; difficulties to apply clinical guidelines; fragmented, costly, and ineffective care; and higher mortality rates [66–71]. Multi-morbidity is important for diabetes management because besides its long-time recognized association with metabolic and cardiovascular risk factors, the frequency of nondiabetes-related (or non-apparently related) comorbidities is starting to be recognized. Negative outcomes associated with multi-morbidity partly result from the fact that healthcare delivery is organized and designed for patients with single diseases [63]. Fortin and colleagues state that "clinical practice is still based on a single disease paradigm which is not appropriate for patients with complex and overlapping health problems [66]". To make matters worse, most clinical trials exclude patients with comorbidity, therefore limiting generalization of research results [71]. Diabetes management clearly applies to these statements: until recently, clinical guidelines failed to recognize the importance of comorbidity, and it has been demonstrated that this is a limiting factor to their implementation [63]. Research about the epidemiology of multi-morbidity, its consequences, and its effects on the process of care is still very limited [71–75].

Definitions and Magnitude

Multi-morbidity (MM) was originally defined by Feinstein in 1970 as "the coexistence of two or more diseases, pathological conditions or clinical entities in the same patient" [76], while comorbidity (CM) is defined as the presence of one index disease and at least one other chronic condition in the same person [77]. MM and CM have become some of the greatest challenges and an additional pressure on healthcare systems. They represent an additional burden on the acute care model which impedes in many cases, even recognizing the main complaint in a hurried visit. Increased effectiveness of healthcare interventions have delayed death by managing (not curing) diseases but have also led to a marked increase in the coexistence of separate diseases in individuals [78]. In less than three decades, the frequency of chronic diseases and associated patterns of comorbidity and multi-morbidity have escalated for several reasons: (1) lowered diagnostic thresholds, (2) new diagnoses, and (3) true increases of some diseases, such as diabetes [78, 79]. Table 20.2 confirms the steady increase in the worldwide prevalence of comorbidity (two or more diseases) in every age group, associated disease patterns, and outcomes.

Table 20.2 Epidemiology of multi-morbidity and comorbidity

Authors, year, and reference	Country	Number	Age group	Prevalence of multi-morbidity (MM) by age groups and additional results
Schellevis et al. [80]	Netherlands	23,534	65 years and older	15% Highest rates of comorbidity for osteoarthritis and diabetes
van den Akker et al. [81]	Netherlands	60,857	Five age groups 0–19 20–39 40–59 60–79 ≥80 years	General prevalence of MM: 29.7%; by age group, males (M) and females (F) 0–19 years: 10.7% and 9.2% 20–39 years: 16% (M) and 18.8% (F) 40–59 years: 33.6% (M) and 35.9 (F) 60–79 years: 60.9% (M) and 64.9% (F) ≥80 years: 74.2% (M) and 79.9% (F) The number of prevalent diseases increased from less than one below 30 years to more than three at 80 years and older
Menotti et al. [82]	Finland (F), Italy (I), Netherlands (N)	F: 716 I: 682 N: 887	65–84 years	10–15%
Westert et al. [83]	Netherlands	13,806	16 years and older	Number of chronic conditions: 1: 80.7% ≥2: 19.3% ≥3: 3.3% Diabetes prevalence: 4.4% Most prevalent comorbid patterns: Lung disease + musculoskeletal disease + neurological disease In addition to being the most common condition, musculoskeletal disease was the most likely to occur in all disease clusters
Woolf et al. [84]	USA	1,217,103	65 years and older	Prevalence of MM: 65% Inpatient admissions for ambulatory care-sensitive conditions and hospitalizations for preventable complications increased with the number of chronic conditions
Beasley et al. [85]	USA	572	Adults	Prevalence of MM: 26% An average of 3.2 problems are managed at each clinical encounter
Fortin et al. [86]	Canada	980	Three age groups 18–44 45–64 65 years and older	Prevalence of MM by age group 18–44 years: 69.3% 45–64 years: 92.8% 65 and older: 98.7% Cumulative index rating scale increases significantly with age
Naughton et al. [87]	Ireland	271,518	70 years and older	2 conditions: 27% 3 conditions: 19% ≥4 conditions: 14% Consistent patterns of disease by age groups
Kadam et al. [88]	UK	9439	50 years and older	1 morbidity: 19% 2–3 morbidities: 36% 4–5 morbidities: 22% ≥6 morbidities: 23% Increasing strength of association between poor physical function and increasing severity of multi-morbidity

Britt et al. [89]	Australia	9156	Five age groups <25 25–44 45–64 65–74 75 years and older	Prevalence of MM <25 years: 2.6% 25–44 years: 14.7% 45–64 years: 46.5% 65–74 years: 74.6% 75 years and older: 83.2% The most common combination was arthritis/chronic back pain + vascular disease
Schramm et al. [90]	Netherlands	Three population studies, two general practitioner registries, one hospital discharge registry, one nursing home registry	55 years and older	Prevalence of MM: Nursing homes: 82% General practice: 72% General population: 56% Hospital setting: 22% Large differences in type of MM between settings
Smith et al. [91]	Ireland	267	45–64 years old	Prevalence of MM: 34.4% Median number of conditions: 4 Mean number of medications: 7.5 Mean number of medical visits per patient: 11.3 in the 12 previous months
Nagel et al. [92]	Germany	13,781	50–75 years old	Prevalence of MM: 67.3% Low educational level was significantly associated with higher prevalence of MM
Marengoni et al. [93, 94]	Sweden	1099	77–100 years old	Prevalence of MM: 55% Median number of diseases among persons with MM: 3 Diabetes was the 12th most prevalent chronic disease occurring independently of CM; when it occurs, it is more frequently associated with hypertension and heart failure Age, gender, and education are independently associated with MM Cardiovascular disease prevalence is not different by age or gender Higher proportion of mental disorders in the oldest old Co-occurrence of diseases exists beyond chance, which clinicians need to take into account in their daily practice; some pathological mechanisms behind identified clusters are well known; others need clarification
Loza et al. [95]	Spain	2192	Adults with MM including rheumatic disease (RhD)	General prevalence of MM: 30% Prevalence of MM including a RhD: 17% MM is associated with impaired daily functioning and lower quality of life Having a RhD worsens the outcomes
Uijen et al. [96]	Netherlands	13,584	Seven age groups, 0 to more than 75 years old	Prevalence of MM, four or more chronic diseases 45–64 years: 7.0% 65–74 years: 30% ≥55% Older age, female sex, and low socioeconomic class associated with higher prevalence of MM

(continued)

Table 20.2 (continued)

Authors, year, and reference	Country	Number	Age group	Prevalence of multi-morbidity (MM) by age groups and additional results
Lee et al. [97]	USA	11,113	65 years and older	Prevalence of MM: 23% Chronic diseases frequently co-occurring: Diabetes: 19.4% Coronary artery disease: 15.9% Congestive heart failure: 4.8% Geriatric syndromes: Falls: 23.2% Urinary incontinence: 25.0% Co-occurrence of chronic diseases and geriatric syndromes is very common
Minas et al. [98]	Greece	20,299	Two age groups: <65 years 65 years and older	Prevalence of MM: <65 years: 7.78% 65 years and older: 11.52%
Glynn et al. [99]	Ireland	3309	50 years and older	Prevalence of MM: 66.2% Healthcare utilization and costs significantly higher in patients with MM Each additional chronic condition is associated with increases in primary care visits, hospital outpatient visits, hospital admissions, and total health costs
Steinman et al. [100]	USA	1.9 million men, 39,000 women	65 years and older	Mean number of chronic conditions: Men: 5.5 ± 2.6 Women: 5.1 ± 2.6 Disease burden increased with advancing age Most common triplet in men: hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and coronary artery disease Most common triplet in women: hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and arthritis Diabetes more frequently associated with hypertension and hyperlipidemia
Barnett et al. [101]	Scotland	1,751,841	Five age groups, 16 years and older	Prevalence of MM: 23.2% The absolute number of people with MM was higher in people younger than 65 years Onset of MM occurred 10–15 years earlier in people living in the most deprived areas and particularly associated with mental health disorders
Paulsen et al. [102]	Denmark	37,651	Patients with hypertension, 25–79 years old	Prevalence of comorbidities: Diabetes: 26.2% Cardiovascular disease: 19.0% Other serious comorbidities, including cancer and mental disorders: 25.7%
Prados-Torres et al. [103]	Spain	275,682	Three age groups 15–44 years 45–64 years ≥65 years	Prevalence of MM 15–44 years: 13% 45–64 years: 43% ≥65 years: 67% Five clinically consistent patterns of MM: Cardio-metabolic Psychiatric Mechanical-obesity-thyroidal Psychogeriatric Depressive

Streit et al. [104]	Switzerland	1002	50–80 years old Assessment of comorbidity with the Charlson index Quality assessment of preventive care and cardiovascular preventive care with 37 indicators from the RAND's Quality Tools	Prevalence of MM: 67.5% Mean Charlson index: 1.8 31.1% of patients had an index of 0 1.4% of patients had an index >8. Quality of care was not associated with higher numbers of comorbidities
Koller et al. [105]	Germany	115,203	65 years and older Five-year follow-up	Prevalence of MM[a]: 57.62% Patients with MM and older than 75 years had higher risk of becoming care dependent than non-multi-morbid people after the first year
van Oostrom et al. [106, 107]	Netherlands	32,583	55 years and older Time trends 2001–2011 in the prevalence of chronic diseases and multi-morbidity	General prevalence of MM: 26% 15% had two diseases 7% had three diseases 3% had four diseases 1% had five or more diseases MM patients received more medical visits, telephone consultations, home visits, diagnostic tests, or minor surgical procedures MM increased from 12.7% to 16.2% in the general practice and from 14.3% to 17.5% on self-reports Aging of population explained part of these trends
Déruaz-Luyet et al. [108]	Switzerland	888	18 years and older; average: 73 years Assessment of clustering of chronic diseases	Four clusters of chronic conditions identified 1 Cardiovascular risk factors and conditions 2 Metabolic and age-related conditions including diabetes, obesity, atherosclerosis, hypertension, neuropathy, osteoarthritis, hearing complaints, and urinary incontinence 3 Alcohol- and tobacco-related conditions 4 Pain, musculoskeletal, and psychological conditions
Nogueira de Carvalho et al. [109]	Brazil	60,202	≥18 years old Prevalence of self-reported MM according to socioeconomic and demographic characteristics	Prevalence of MM: 23.6% Two chronic diseases: 52.8% Three chronic diseases: 25.8% Four chronic diseases: 12.2% Five or more: 9.3% Higher rates in women, people older than 60 years, with low educational level, living in urban areas and unemployed

[a]In the study of Koller et al., multi-morbidity was defined as the coexistence of three or more chronic conditions

Multi-morbidity in Diabetes: The Elephant in the Medical Office

Comorbidity and multi-morbidity are extremely frequent among patients with diabetes; its association with cardiovascular risk factors has been recognized for a long time. From this perspective, Piette and Kerr proposed a framework to consider ways by which associated chronic conditions could influence diabetes medical care, self-management, and outcomes [110]. They classified comorbidities in three groups, (1) clinical dominant conditions, (2) concordant versus discordant chronic conditions, and (3) symptomatic versus asymptomatic chronic conditions, and recognized, in the first place, the preeminence of diseases like cancer, end-stage renal failure, or severe cognitive impairment in the realities of diabetes care and even on life expectancy. Comorbidities in the second group are very common and compete for time in the medical visit and for resources from patients and their families; some of them are inextricably related to the outcomes of diabetes care (hypertension, dyslipidemia), and others are related from their emotional outcomes (depression, stress) or through recently explained pathogenic mechanisms (musculoskeletal diseases). The third group includes chronic conditions which should be managed regardless of being symptoms, worsening, or recurrence [110]. Most reports about diabetes and chronic disease are about associations with single medical disorders or clusters of chronic conditions, in denial of the unifying role of diabetes in the pathogenesis of apparently disparate disorders within the cardiovascular, musculoskeletal, or digestive systems. The study of comorbidity in patients with diabetes is a recent topic and is summarized in Table 20.3.

Table 20.3 Comorbidity in patients with diabetes

Year, author, and reference	Country	Patients	Prevalence of MM and comments
Kerr et al. [111]	United States	1901 diabetes patients who responded to a survey	40% of respondents had at least one microvascular comorbidity 79% had at least one macrovascular comorbidity 61% had at least one nondiabetes comorbidity including arthritis (55%), cancer (14%), and lung disease (10%) Patients with a greater number of comorbidities placed lower priority to diabetes and had worse diabetes self-management scores Type and severity of comorbid conditions, not just the comorbidity count, influence diabetes self-management Patients with comorbidities need additional support to accomplish self-management activities
Ose et al. [112]	Germany	3546 patients with type 2 diabetes	Participation in a diabetes management program, the number of comorbidities, and the interaction between management and comorbidities have a significant impact on quality of life Structured diabetes management may help to counteract the negative effect of comorbidity
Zhang et al. [113]	Australia	17,095 patients with diabetes, 65 years and older	80% of patients had four or more comorbid conditions Only 1.0% had no comorbidity 18.7% were receiving medications for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease or asthma 17.5% were receiving nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs 7.1% had cancer 4.4% were receiving medications for dementia Low utilization of preventive diabetes care services in patients with comorbidity Competing health demands and patients' preferences are very influential in diabetes management
Wermeling et al. [114]	Netherlands	2086 well-controlled patients with type 2 diabetes, including A1c, systolic blood pressure, and total cholesterol	Compared to patients without comorbidities, patients with type 2 diabetes and comorbidities had much lower health status despite good diabetes control Physical limitations and functional impairment are decisive Physicians may take into account patients' health status and integrate the impact of comorbidities into diabetes care
Luijks et al. [115]	Netherlands	712	Prevalence of "any type" of comorbidity: 84.6% 70.6% had one or more discordant comorbid disorders, mostly musculoskeletal and mental, chronic functional somatic symptoms, and deafness 27.2% had three or more comorbid diseases At the date of diabetes diagnosis, patients had between 1.5 and 2.1 comorbidity clusters Diabetes management in general practice is complex in terms of chronic comorbidity "Straightforward" patients without comorbidities are extremely rare" Diabetes management demands management of comorbidities, including discordant diseases Validity of clinical guidelines is questionable if they do not consider comorbidity A patient-centered approach can be of added value

Table 20.3 (continued)

Year, author, and reference	Country	Patients	Prevalence of MM and comments
Pentakota et al. [116]	United States	42,826 patients with new-onset diabetes	Prevalence of comorbidity: 80% Prevalence of discordant illness: 30.1% Prevalence of both concordant and discordant illnesses: 25.5% Prevalence of concordant illness: 13% Prevalence of a dominant illness different to diabetes: 12% Comorbidity from concordant illnesses is associated with increased visit frequency and higher levels of receiving recommended diabetes care Patients with discordant illnesses had decreased diabetes care and patients with dominant illnesses received markedly decreased diabetes care
Teljeur et al. [117]	Ireland	424 patients with type 2 diabetes treated in general practice	Prevalence of comorbidity: 90% 25% of the patients had four or more additional chronic conditions, the most common: Hypertension: 66% Heart disease: 25% Arthritis: 16% Comorbidity significantly increased the number of medical visits and polypharmacy The variety of conditions emphasizes the complexity of diabetes management and the importance of maintaining a generalist and multidisciplinary approach
Alonso-Morán et al. [118]	Spain	126,889 patients with type 2 diabetes	87.6% of men and 92% of women with type 2 diabetes had at least another chronic condition 1.7% of men and 1.9% of women with type 2 diabetes had ten or more chronic conditions By comparison, 54.2% of men and 57% of women without diabetes had at least another chronic condition Ten morbidity clusters were identified in patients with diabetes, the most common related to cardiovascular risk factors and heart disease Patients with diabetes are at higher risk of peripheral vascular disease, heart failure, hypertension, and chronic renal disease
Sancho-Mestre et al. [119]	Spain	491,854 patients with diabetes identified and selected through clinical codes	70% of patients suffered from more than two comorbidities, the most common Hypertension: 68.4% Dyslipidemia: 53.3% Mental disorders: 25.0% Osteoarticular disease: 24.5% Cardiovascular disease: 14.4% Pharmaceutical expenditures increased according to the number of comorbidities
Bralic Lang et al. [120]	Croatia	10,264 patients from 449 primary care practices	77.7% patients had comorbidity The most common Cardiovascular diseases: 69.7% Endocrine and metabolic: 30.1% Musculoskeletal: 14.0% As the number of comorbidities increase, patients were less likely to achieve A1c levels Despite limited time, general physicians are able to deliver proper treatment of patients with type 2 diabetes and comorbidities Comorbidity increases clinical inertia and treatment fragmentation by different physicians, institutions, and therapies
Petrosyan et al. [121]	Canada	861,354 adults with diabetes Compliance with three quality measures according with type of comorbidity	Prevalence of comorbidity: 86% Diabetes-concordant conditions: 20.7% Diabetes discordant: 15.6% Patients with diabetes-concordant and diabetes-discordant conditions: 49.8% Receipt of all recommended monitoring tests in diabetes is higher in patients with diabetes-concordant and diabetes-discordant conditions (30.2%) and lower in patients with diabetes-discordant conditions (19.6%) Hospitalization for diabetes complications is lower in patients with concordant conditions Meeting goals for A1c does not necessarily prevent hospitalizations for diabetes, especially in patients with comorbidities Other factors, including self-monitoring of blood glucose, glycemic control, lifestyle changes, patient education, and drug therapy, are more important

Multi-morbidity in Patients with Diabetes: How Can It Be Explained?

The results of studies described in Tables 20.2 and 20.3 confirm the increasing prevalence of co-morbidity and multimorbidity. In people with diabetes, the prevalence more than doubles the observed rates in people without diabetes, partly explained by the long-time recognized aggregation of cardiovascular risk factors. The concept of multi-morbidity started with a uni-level approach: to the simple counting of co-occurring diseases [122]. Patients are usually managed for each individual disease according to specific guidelines and by different physicians [123]. The logical limitations of this approach have encouraged a shift to integrated, albeit limited, approaches to meet the needs of individual patients [123]. The current view and classification of human disease dates to the late nineteenth century and derive from the observational correlation between pathological analysis and clinical syndromes [124]. Over the years, attention to the interactions of multiple, apparently unrelated diseases occurring at different levels led to a vertical dimension which attempts to clarify the complex interactions of multi-morbidity at the cellular, organizational, and community (even the emotional) levels [117]. In a brilliant essay, Aron addressed the additional burden imposed by multimorbidity on diabetes self-management and the conflicts and potential risks of glycemic control [122]. A new, holistic view suggests that common linked pathophysiological pathways underlie the development of diseases in a non-organ-specific manner and that multiple diseases within one person, regardless of symptoms or organ system, are not necessarily caused by independent mechanisms [123]. Taking into account the highly internal organization of the cell, it would be possible to improve the single gene-one disease approach by developing a conceptual framework to link all genetic disorders with the complete list of disease genes, resulting in a global view of the "diseasome," the combined set of all known disease/gene associations [125]. In the "human disease network," nodes represent diseases, and two diseases are connected if they share at least one gene in which mutations are associated with both diseases [125]. The existence of intricate molecular links between subcellular components and disease genes raises the possibility that diseases may not be as independent of each other as physicians traditionally consider them to be and that diseases form networks in which two of them are connected if they share at least one gene [126]. Diabetes management at one level ignores its complexity, clearly illustrated by its unique aggregation of concordant and discordant conditions… clinicians must think in multiple dimensions! [122].

Addressing Comorbidity in Clinical Practice

Several instruments have been devised to measure comorbidity [127], but the most widely used is the Charlson Comorbidity Index (CCI) [128]. Developed by Mary E. Charlson and colleagues, the CCI assigns a weight of 1 to 10 for a variety of diseases, including diabetes without organ damage [129]. Six diseases have weights of 2, one disease has a weight of 3, and two diseases have weights of 6, in order to calculate the relative risk of 1-year mortality by summing the weights of each condition [129]. Index scores range from 0 to 10, although higher scores are possible for severely ill patients [129]. The CCI has been used to estimate prognosis of comorbidities in a variety of disciplines, from dermatology to oncology, and its power to predict morbidity, mortality, costs, and hospitalizations has been validated and compared with other measures [130]. Its use continues to extend, and it has become available in several versions of online calculators.

Comorbidity is usually managed by different specialists ("as many as necessary"), using independent clinical guidelines. This approach is ineffective and conflicting, increases the demand of professional services and costs, and may even pose risks for the patients. Current disease-oriented guidelines do not account the interactions between different diseases and are designed to manage single chronic conditions [131]. Innovative approaches have been proposed to address the challenge of comorbidity, such as the Adriane principles, a tool to support decision-making during consultations in primary care that involve patients [132, 133]. The Adriane principles were designed as a process aimed to foster an innovative concept in medical decision making for patients with multimorbidity in primary care [132]. This approach establishes realistic goals at the center and three core principles: (1) individualized management, (2) prioritization of patients' preferences, and (3) interactive assessment [132, 133]. The effectiveness of implementing the Adriane principles in comorbidity management remains to be demonstrated.

Challenges of Multi-morbidity in Diabetes Management

Multiple diseases have an additive effect: comorbidity or multi-morbidity has negative effects on mental status and quality of life and increases the frequency of medical visits and the risk of death [67, 134]. Models of integrated, simplified care of comorbidities involving chronic physical disease and mental disorders can decrease disabilities and are associated with significant reductions in total healthcare costs and hospital costs [68, 135]. The challenge to deliver patient-centered care for people with comorbidities is to provide the right care for the right person at the right time, but current medical structures do not support multidimensional care and encourage treating only disease-specific outcomes [136]. The number and type of comorbid diseases have multiple consequences in patients with diabetes, create competing

demands, and promote clinical inertia [137, 138], negatively influencing glycemic and cardiovascular risk control [139, 140]. Comorbidity should be screened at baseline and follow-up visits. The evidence about effective interventions in the management of patients with multi-morbidity is still limited, and remaining uncertainties prevail, despite its high prevalence and impact on patients and healthcare systems [141, 142]. The last two decades have witnessed a steady increase of knowledge about comorbidity in medicine, which has become a challenge for researchers, clinicians, and health policy makers. The current narrow focus on single diseases should be replaced with a holistic view and approach to established patterns of comorbidity and multi-morbidity [143, 144]. Only a radical rethinking of health systems will facilitate the transition and challenges multi-morbidity and its associated disability [145].

The Chronic Care Model and Diabetes

Usual medical care often fails to meet the needs of patients with chronic diseases, even in advanced countries [146]. Meeting the complex needs of patients with chronic illness or disability is the single greatest challenge facing organized medical practice, and usual care is not doing the job [147]. Most of the patients with diabetes either have no access to medical care or receive inadequate treatment [148]. To improve care for patients with chronic diseases, the negative evidence continuing to accumulate about the inefficacy of usual care and the positive evidence about the benefits of innovations in ambulatory care have encouraged new paradigms. Based on their work at Group Health Cooperative of Puget Sound, Washington, literature reviews, and suggestions of an advisory panel, two decades ago, Wagner and colleagues developed a model to improve chronic illness care, a guide to be used to develop effective chronic care by incorporating successful interventions [147]. The chronic care model (CCM) is based on the reality that in chronic diseases, the outcomes are largely dependent on the efforts, resources, and support of patients and their families [149]. The success of treatment requires that patients are well informed about their disease, the place where they can receive treatment, and to have greater control over their treatment [150]. The CCM is not a quick and easy fix or an abstract theory; it is a multidimensional solution to a complex problem, a concrete guide to improve clinical practice [148]. Care for chronic noncommunicable diseases (NCDs) is a global problem; the CCM is a tool to deliver integrated management for NCDs within the context of primary care and provides practical guidance for healthcare program managers, policy makers, and stakeholders to plan and deliver high-quality services for people with NCDs [151].

Taking into account that chronic illness care is largely performed within the primary care setting, the CCM has become a major component [147, 152]. The CCM assumes that medical care is centered in the interaction of patients and practice teams, with support for self-management from the community and organization of healthcare inside and outside the health system [153]. By comparison to usual care, in which isolated physicians give orders to patients, chronic disease management involves collaboration from a group of clinicians from diverse disciplines (nurse case managers, physicians, pharmacists, social workers, dietitians, lay health workers) who communicate regularly and participate in the care of a defined group of patients. Chronic care occurs in three overlapping scenarios: (1) the community, (2) the health system, and (3) the healthcare organization, taking into account that coordination and performance may help or obstruct optimal chronic care. Essential ingredients are research, performance measurement, and quality improvement. The "six pillars of the chronic care edifice" include (1) community resources and policies, (2) healthcare organizations, (3) self-management support, (4) delivery systems design, (5) decision support, and (6) clinical information systems [148, 154, 155]. A systematic review showed that primary care practices are able to implement the CCM and incorporating most or all of its elements is associated with improved quality of care and outcomes in various chronic diseases including diabetes [156].

Glasgow and colleagues developed two scales or surveys to assess the CCM: the Assessment of Chronic Illness Care (ACIC) and the Patient Assessment of Chronic Illness Care [157, 158]. The PACIC and PACIC+ (PACIC extended with six additional multidisciplinary team functioning items to improve content validity) are reliable instruments to measure the chronic care management experiences of patients with diabetes [159, 160]. The PACIC has been translated to other languages [160] and validated in several countries [159, 161, 162] (Fig. 20.1).

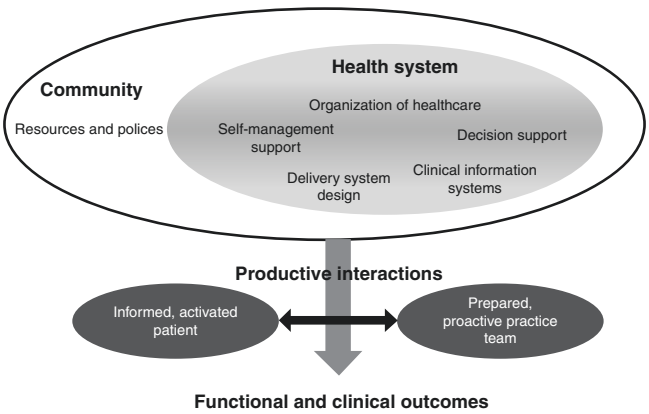


Fig. 20.1 The chronic care model

The CCM in Diabetes

In many ways, diabetes care is the prototype for the CCM and became an emblematic clinical scenario to assess its effectiveness, and increasing evidence shows that the CCM provides a framework for optimal diabetes care [156].Table 20.4 summarizes the results of interventions implementing the CCM since 2001.

To summarize, diabetes represents an ideal clinical setting to implement the CCM. After two decades of being conceived, however, the amount of studies and, most importantly, the number of health organizations and national health systems who have implemented the CCM are still scarce. Beyond endorsement from international agencies [151] and with remarkable exceptions [172], most of the studies and interventions to implement the CCM have occurred in developed countries; adaptations to preexisting models are the rule, instead of studies devoted to implement the CCM "as it is [173]." Most of the studies cited in Table 20.4 continue to appear in systematic reviews, not only because of importance but also because of scarcity of new trials [174, 175]. Available studies show limitations, including non-blinding of participants, brief follow-up, absence of self-report measures for behavior change, small sample size, inadequate training of health professionals, and absence of registries and electronic medical records [176]. Despite these challenges, in less than 20 years, a large amount of experience using the CCM has accumulated worldwide, in every age group and for multiple diseases. More evidence about the effectiveness of the CCM in diabetes management is essential.

Table 20.4 The chronic care model (CCM) in diabetes management

Year, country, and reference	Patients and intervention	Results	Comments
2001, United States [163]	Randomized controlled trial 57 primary care practices serving ≈500,000 people Patients with diabetes ≥30 years attending chronic care clinics at 3–6-month intervals. Components of the CCM: Baseline assessment Individual visits with primary care physicians, nurses, clinical pharmacists, one-group peer support session	Patients receiving the intervention were more likely to receive preventive procedures, foot and retinal examinations, and medication reviews, at no significant differences Rates of participation in diabetes education were significantly higher Nonsignificant differences on physical function, depression measures, days confined in bed, and patient satisfaction Mean A1c levels were equally higher in the two groups, and cholesterol levels were equally lower Chronic care clinic patients visited primary care more frequently; the increase was associated with significant reductions in specialty, emergency room visits, and hospital admissions	Redesign of care including delegation of roles within the practice team, involvement of other disciplines, organization of visits and follow-up, and integration of psychoeducational interventions plays an important role in success
2006, United States [164–166]	Multilevel, cluster design, randomized controlled trial 19 hospitals 166 primary care clinics 1400 academic physicians 90,000 patients with diabetes Implementation of the six elements of the CCM Delivery of diabetes self-management (DSMT) training Stepped approach	Over 4 years, the number of CCM-recognized programs grew from 3 to 21 Significant differences in A1c among patients receiving DSMT in hospital programs versus primary care 2–3 greater proportion of patients received SMDT at primary care offices versus patients referred to hospital-based programs	The CCM is an effective framework to support DSMT With reliable clinical information systems, educators are able to demonstrate the benefits of DSMT on A1c levels Improvements in program and patient outcomes can be sustained, financially self-supporting
2007, United States [167]	Controlled pre- and post-intervention study, 1-year duration 1170 patients with type 2 diabetes 613 assigned to chronic care 557 assigned to usual care	Patients in both groups had improvements in A1c, blood pressure, and lipoprotein levels Participants in the intervention group had a 2.1% greater reduction in cardiovascular risk	Collaborative interventions using the CCM lower cardiovascular risk factors in patients with diabetes

Table 20.4 (continued)

Year, country, and reference	Patients and intervention	Results	Comments
2007, United States [168]	Observational study 30 small, independent primary care practices 90 clinicians, including 60 physicians, 17 nurses, and 13 assistants who completed a questionnaire assessing the use of the CCM 886 patients with diabetes	Use of the CCM was significantly associated with lower A1c levels and ratios of total cholesterol to high-density lipoproteins Every unit increase in the use of the CCM was associated with a 30% A1c reduction and a 0.17% reduction in the lipid ratio	Clinicians in small independent primary care are able to incorporate elements of the CCM in their practice, associated with higher levels of process and intermediate outcomes of diabetes care
2009, 2010, Belgium [169, 170]	Four-year evaluation of a project based on the CCM Implementation based on the ACIC survey Implementation: First stage: 2300 patients with type 2 diabetes Follow-up: 4174 patients	Overall ACIC scores improved from 1.45 at baseline to 5.5 at the end of the study Mean A1c and total cholesterol significantly improved in the intervention group Assessment of long-term complications was insufficient Crucial steps for strengthening primary care included a local steering group, appointment of program managers, and willingness of well-trained and motivated care providers Important barriers include complexity of the intervention, lack of quality data, inadequate information technology, lack of commitment, and unsustainable funding	Adapting the CCM in primary diabetes care has opportunities and bottlenecks Further improvements are required to deliver the CCM components Albeit remarkable improvements were achieved, primary care providers lack the opportunities and resources to take full responsibility for chronic care
2010, United States [171]	Intervention trial 25 practices, 4 physicians per practice Implementation of the CCM measured through staff and clinical management surveys, chart audits, and patient questionnaires	Overall low levels of implementation Sites with higher levels of CCM implementation showed improvements in diabetes assessment and treatment Physical activity counseling for persons with overweight and obesity was associated with CCM implementation, except for people with diabetes	Modest levels of CCM implementation in unsupported primary care is associated with improvements in diabetes care and higher rates of behavioral counseling
2015, Philippines [172]	Observational study Two primary healthcare units in semirural and rural municipalities Adaptation and implementation of the CCM Assessment of chronic illness care (PACIC) and glycemic control	Significant improvements in A1c, glycemic control, and PACIC scores	In resource-limited settings, the CCM improves the quality of primary diabetes care as measured with the PACIC and A1c
2017 Italy [173]	Population-based cohort study 8486 patients exposed to the CCM versus 8486 non-exposed patients Four-year duration	Significant improvements for adherence to clinical guidelines, reduced risk of cardiovascular complications, and protective effects for neurological complications, cardio-cerebrovascular complications, and mortality	Implementation of the CCM-improved diabetes management and reduced cardiovascular outcomes

Diabetes as a Complex Disease

Zimmerman, Lindberg, and Plsek described three kinds of problems in the world: simple, complicated, and complex [177]. Simple problems are clearly defined, with straightforward solutions. Complicated problems don't have straightforward solutions but can be dissected into groups of simple problems. Complex problems have multiple components, commonly not initially perceived and appear during the process of solution. To address complex problems, expertise is important but not sufficient; uncertainty and risk are trademarks. Diabetes management is a complex task. Complexities of diabetic control were recognized five decades ago by Franklin Williams and colleagues, who described the degree in which a variety of continuing intervening factors including (1) biological, (2) psychological, (3) appropriateness

Table 20.5 Main factors affecting outpatient diabetes management

Practice factors	Organizational factors
Partners with interest in diabetes	Diabetes registry
Practice nurses with interest in diabetes	Recall system
Number of practice nurses	Structured diabetes care
Computerized practice	Attachment to diabetes nurses or health visitors
Practice workload	Access to chiropodists
Practice motivation	Access to optometrists
Diabetes education in the general practice	Access to dietitians
Patient factors	Patients self-monitoring
Self-monitoring of patients	Delivery of diabetes education
Frequency of attendance	Diabetes clinical guidelines
Social deprivation	

Modified from Kunthi [179]

(and timeliness referring to clinical inertia) of medical recommendations, (4) adequacy of diabetes education (from a pedagogic to an andragogic approach in adults), (5) patient's resources (cognitive, socioeconomic, motivation, health literacy), and (6) family and social support, converge to achieve the lifetime challenge of day-to-day control [178]. Despite these arguments, reductionist approaches abound and prevail in diabetes management.

To illustrate the complexities of diabetes management, Khunti identified 54 factors associated with effective delivery of care: 23 were practice-related, 14 were patient-related, and 20 were organizational [179]. Table 20.5 summarizes the highest-ranked factors among the 54 original, based on 5 assessment methods: literature review, brainstorming, focus groups, and key informants – general physicians, nurses, and patients.

Countless efforts have failed and continue to fail from denial of this reality. Recognition of complexities of diabetes care starts by identifying the three components of successful diabetes management: (1) patient activation, (2) self-care, (3) support. Each one is essential to achieve the desired outcomes; all of them are directly related to the crucial role and responsibility of people with diabetes and their families. Self-care and support are associated to the capacity to deliver multidisciplinary, patient-centered care, including diabetes self-care education and support. The absence of any one of these components leads to clinical failure, waste of economic resources, and overall dissatisfaction from patients, their families, payers, and providers.

Patient Activation and Its Measurement

Patients unable or unwilling to move in the right direction are very unlikely to achieve the goals of treatment established by evidence-based medicine, even in the best professional environments. Ideally, therefore, it would be desired to explore or assess the level of patient activation. Based on her experience about the unwillingness of health systems to accommodate with her needs as a patient, in 2004 Hibbard and colleagues devised the Patient Activation Measure (PAM), a tool for gauging the capacity of patients to advocate for themselves as they proceed through a medical experience [180]. The original scale had 22 items, which assessed patient self-reported knowledge, skill, and confidence for self-management of one's health or chronic condition [181]. On further analysis, the PAM was reduced to a 13-item measure which has been translated to other languages and validated in the assessment of a variety of chronic conditions [182–185]. Patient activation has been significantly related to health outcomes, in patients with chronic diseases, including diabetes [186, 187]. The PAM has become the gold standard to understand the role of people with chronic conditions in their own health and is likely to be the focus of the next generation of interventions to support informed consumer choices [188].

Self-Care Management

In 1980, Donnell Etzwiler recognized the increased demand of sustained care for chronic disease management, the importance of medical teams, and the main evolution in their development: to include the patients [189]! Don reflected that this had come about not only from the chronic nature of many diseases but also by the number of daily tasks that (patients) are frequently required to carry out. He also stated that to address the health needs of people with diabetes requires developing comprehensive healthcare teams including physicians, health professionals, patients, family members, and involving the community [189]. Self-care was recognized as an essential component of all the pioneering models of diabetes management [5, 6, 10, 11], and a variety of interventions including "teaching machines" (combinations of printed text and still pictures) were proposed since the 1960s [190]. Early efforts were based on prescriptive, pedagogic approaches in which patients were to "be instructed to report" with their physicians; other health professionals were discarded [191]. The consistent failure of traditional diabetes education programs to improve patient self-care, documented since the 1970s, encouraged exploration of innovative approaches [192]. Lorig and Wagner stressed the importance of collaborative relationships between patients and health professionals and the need to share complementary knowledge and authority in the healthcare process, with health services as organizers and financial supporters of these new roles [149, 193]. Many patients are overwhelmed by the multiple, continuous, annoying demands and unpredictable results of diabetes management [194]. Facilitating strategies include asking questions, identifica-

tion of "sticking points" of self-care, goal setting, action planning for change, involvement of family and friends, follow-up, problem-solving, and nourishment of coping skills [194, 195]. Diabetes self-management and support education (DSMSE) has become essential in structured diabetes care and is brilliantly addressed in Chap. 26 of this book. Self-management interventions in people with diabetes receiving self-care management, especially delivered in compact programs with sessions closely grouped together, have shown advantages in glycemic control compared to interventions with an educational approach [196, 197]. Self-management training has higher medium-term efficacy than didactic diabetes education [198]. Self-management is highly dependent from collaborating forces at four levels, according to the ecological model of self-care by Fisher and colleagues: (1) personal factors, reflecting the physical and mental status of patients; (2) immediate relations, with family members and friends, at school and work; (3) health systems; and (4) social determinants of health [199]. After more than three decades, "inclusion of patients" is increasingly recognized but at the same time denied in the real world. The importance of self-care is an undeniable component of success. Integrating DSMSE in routine diabetes care is the essence of person-centered care [200]. "Although the achievement of evidence-based clinical goals reduces the risk of morbidity and mortality in type 2 diabetes, delivery of community practices and referral centers often falls short of these goals [201]." Multiple misconceptions and barriers to integrate self-management support into clinical practice include (1) "we're already doing this"; (2) inability, disinterest, and disdain to address skill deficits; and (3) the need for organizational change [202]. "By comparison to other therapies, DSMSE appears to be the Cinderella of diabetes management...but with greater collaboration, leadership and direction, Cinderella really can become the belle of the ball [200]."

Support

Besides new medicines, main challenges in diabetes outpatient management include (1) recognizing and addressing its complexities; (2) developing, implementing, and sustaining improvements in healthcare systems; and (3) broadening the definition of the "office," reminding that a year has 8760 hours and, in the best possible situation, patients have a very limited amount of time at physician's offices [203]. Essential components of structured diabetes outpatient management include (1) targeting patients at high risk, including intensively reducing A1c levels ≥9.0%, blood pressure ≥160/95 mmHg, and foot care in patients at high risk of foot ulcers [204, 205]; (2) diabetes registries for data collection, reporting, support, and quality improvement [205–209]; (3) local physician champions with specific interest in diabetes and chronic care management, the responsible to coordinate the implementation of the patient-centered medical home [205, 206]; (4) team management involving primary care providers, nurse practitioners, dietitians, and "physician extenders" [210–212]; and (5) health coaching to make sure that patients understand the care plan involving "knowing their numbers," shared decision-making, promoting behavior change, and medication adherence [213]. Health coaching has greatly evolved as an important resource in diabetes self-management and care [214]. Diabetes health coaching improves glycemic control, reduces distress, and increases medication concordance and adherence [215, 216]. Diabetes coaching models comprise (1) personal case management and monitoring; (2) diabetes self-management education and support; (3) behavior modification, goal setting, and reinforcement; and (4) general psychosocial support [214]. Technology has leveraged to facilitate each component of diabetes coaching; its rate of development surpasses advances achieved in other major areas of research [217]. Understanding, development, and implementation of effective interventions for patient support, including diabetes coaching, has become a major challenge and, at the same time, a huge opportunity to link the advances of evidence-based medicine with everyday clinical practice.

Conclusions

> Establishing the best evidence is not the same as implementing the best practice though the former does provide a basis for the latter.
> Philip Davies [218]

Randomized controlled trials, meta-analysis, and systematic reviews have confirmed that unstructured community care is associated with poorer follow-up, worse glycemic control, and greater mortality [176]. This is the case of health systems reluctant and resistant to change the acute care approach in diabetes management like Mexico, where three decades of ill-devised, unstructured, short range, and low resource efforts have not been able to improve clinical outcomes or to reduce diabetes morbidity and mortality [219, 220]. By comparison, worldwide experiences accumulated over three decades have documented the effectiveness of diabetes care in primary practice to reduce risk factors, improve the process of care, decrease referrals to specialized care, and increase the number of consultations when complex, multifaceted interventions and organizational interventions that facilitate structured and regular review of patients are established, in addition to patient education and with support of nurses and health professionals [26–48, 221]. The results of randomized controlled trials have demonstrated that achieving the goals of metabolic control by lowering glucose, blood pressure, and LDL cholesterol reduces the risk of

microvascular and macrovascular diabetes complications [222]. Nevertheless, most diabetic patients do not meet these recommended goals; prevailing and persistent structure and process deficiencies in primary care impede the achievement of outcomes. Studies of the level of diabetes care provided "in the real world" and especially in primary care where the vast majority of patients are seen continue to show that performance levels are highly suboptimal from what is recommended [223]. Challenges of diabetes translation, starting with the urgency to change healthcare systems, were described by Anderson since 1991, but a large proportion of persons with diabetes worldwide continue to be treated "as usual [224]." Establishing effective, sustainable, long-term outpatient diabetes management programs is one of the greatest challenges in this era.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Initial experience of hospital diabetes clinics in Europe showed that:
   (a) It was absolutely feasible to treat all patients with diabetes.
   (b) Every patient could receive treatment from highly trained specialists.
   (c) Nurses and dietitians were not required.
   (d) Physicians were the most important elements of success.
   (e) Clinics became overwhelmed, resulting in long waiting times and dissatisfaction.
2. Successful clinics are the ones:
   (a) With the most qualified medical specialists
   (b) Who had the vision and were able to offer comprehensive services
   (c) Charging the highest fees for their services
   (d) In which patients could be admitted to an hospital
   (e) Having access to the newest medications
3. Diabetes management from a paternalistic approach:
   (a) Is essential to make patients follow physicians' orders
   (b) Has been shown to reduce the risk of acute complications
   (c) Reduces the risk of chronic complications
   (d) Has received high levels of satisfaction from patients and their families
   (e) Has never been assessed and is associated with acute and late complications
4. Planning of diabetes services:
   (a) Needs to be broader beyond those available in most centers
   (b) Requires procuring for new medications
   (c) Must be based on the expertise of specialists
   (d) Occurs exclusively at the medical office
   (e) Is not important, patients may attend whenever they want
5. Implementation of a model based on the DCCT in clinical practice requires all the following except:
   (a) Allocation and effective use of resources
   (b) Standards of care and quality assurance
   (c) Training and continuing education
   (d) Research and evaluation
   (e) Recognition that patients are unable to self-manage
6. Outpatient diabetes management:
   (a) Is feasible, acceptable, and effective
   (b) Produces significant improvements in A1c
   (c) Does not increase the frequency of hypoglycemia
   (d) Is not inferior to management in hospital clinics
   (e) All of the above
7. Comorbidity:
   (a) Should be treated by different specialists
   (b) Is very uncommon
   (c) Has no impact on diabetes management
   (d) Is increasingly frequent, "the disease of the twentieth century"
   (e) Is never been more important than diabetes
8. Compared with people without diabetes, the prevalence of comorbidity in patients with diabetes:
   (a) Is very rare
   (b) Is lower
   (c) Is equal
   (d) Is slightly higher
   (e) Is more than double
9. The chronic care model:
   (a) Recognizes that outcomes are largely dependent on patients and their families
   (b) Depends on the availability of all the necessary medications
   (c) Recognizes the preeminence of physicians in all the decisions of management
   (d) Involves fragmentation of services
   (e) Is important but very expensive and complicated
10. Diabetes management:
    (a) Is simple and straightforward
    (b) Is complex but outcomes are certain
    (c) Is complex and outcomes are uncertain
    (d) Depends exclusively on physicians' expertise
    (e) Is independent of patients' resources

Correct Answers

1. (e) Clinics became overwhelmed, resulting in long waiting times and dissatisfaction.
2. (b) Who had the vision and were able to offer comprehensive services

3. (e) Has never been assessed and is associated with acute and late complications
4. (a) Needs to be broader beyond those available in most centers
5. (e) Recognition that patients are unable to self-manage
6. (e) All of the above
7. (d) Is increasingly frequent, "the disease of the twentieth century"
8. (e) Is more than double
9. (a) Recognizes that outcomes are largely dependent on patients and their families
10. (c) Is complex and outcomes are uncertain

References

1. Wilks JM. Diabetes, a disease for general practice. J R Coll Gen Pract. 1973;23:46–54.
2. Thorn PA, Russell RG. Diabetic clinics today and tomorrow: mini clinics in general practice. BMJ. 1973;2:534–6.
3. Andrews CT. A survey of diabetes in West Cornwall. Br Med J. 1957;1:427–33.
4. McEwen H, McNeil DL, Thorson SB, Longmore WM, Castelli MG. Experience with a diabetic service in an "open" hospital. Can Med Assoc J. 1963;30:1133–7.
5. Stevens AD. Diabetes education program – Joslin Clinic, Boston. In: Steiner G, Lawrence PA, editors. Educating diabetic patients. New York: Springer Publishing Company; 1981. p. 263–71.
6. Etzwiler DD. Diabetes Education Center – Minneapolis. In: Steiner G, Lawrence PA, editors. Educating diabetic patients. New York: Springer Publishing Company; 1981. p. 272–7.
7. Thorn PA, Watkins PJ. Organisation of diabetic care. Br Med J. 1982;285:787–9.
8. Kirby M. Fifty years of diabetes management in primary care. Br J Diab Vasc Dis. 2002;2:457–61.
9. Miller LV, Goldstein J. More efficient care of diabetic patients in a county-hospital setting. N Engl J Med. 1972;286:1388–91.
10. Davidson JK, Alogna M, Goldsmith M, Borden J. Assessment of program effectiveness at Grady Memorial Hospital – Atlanta. In: Steiner G, Lawrence PA, editors. Educating diabetic patients. New York: Springer Publishing Company; 1981.
11. Mülhauser I, Berger M. Patient education – evaluation of a complex intervention. Diabetologia. 2002;45:1723–33.
12. Jacobs J, Sena M, Fox N. The cost of hospitalization for the late complications of diabetes in the United States. Diabet Med. 1991;8:S23–9.
13. Alexander WD, South East Thames Diabetes Physicians Group. Diabetes care in a UK health region: activity, facilities and costs. Diabet Med. 1988;5:577–81.
14. Simmons D, Wenzel H. Diabetes inpatients: a case of lose, lose, lose. Is it time to use a "diabetes-attributable hospitalization cost" to assess the impact of diabetes? Diabet Med. 2011;28:1123–30.
15. Lugo-Palacios DG, Cairns J. The financial and health burden of diabetic ambulatory care sensitive hospitalizations in Mexico. Salud Publica Mex. 2016;58:33–40.
16. Kenny C. Primary diabetes care: yesterday, today and tomorrow. Pract Diabetes Int. 2004;21:65–8.
17. Hill RD. Community care service for diabetics in the Poole area. BMJ. 1976;1:1137–9.
18. Singh BM, Holland MR, Thorn PA. Metabolic control of diabetes in general practice clinics: comparison with a hospital clinic. BMJ. 1984;289:726–30.
19. Beaven DW, Scott RS. Organising and evaluating diabetes care. In: Alberti KGMM, Krall LP, editors. The diabetes annual. New York: Elsevier Science Publishers, B.V; 1987.
20. Home P, Walford S. Diabetes care: whose responsibility? BMJ. 1984;289:713–4.
21. Beaven DW, Scott RS. The organisation of diabetes care. In: Alberti KGMM, Krall LP, editors. The diabetes annual. New York: Elsevier Science Publishers, B.V; 1987.
22. Barnett AH. Diabetic control and the effect of changing a diabetic clinic to modern management. Diabet Med. 1985;2:57–8.
23. Spathis GS. Facilities in diabetic clinics in the UK: shortcomings and recommendations. Diabet Med. 1986;3:131–6.
24. Williams DRR, Spathis GS. Facilities in diabetic clinics in the UK: how much have they changed? Diabet Med. 1992;9:592–6.
25. Dunn SM, Hoskins PL, Constantino M, Overland J, Yue DK, Turtle JR. Diabetic management. The role of the diabetes center. Diabetes Rev. 1994;2:389–402.
26. Anderson RM, Hess GE, Davis WK, Hiss RG. Community diabetes care in the 1980s. Diabetes Care. 1988;11:519–26.
27. Kronsbein P, Mülhauser I, Venhaus A, Jörgens V, Scholz V, Berger M. Evaluation of a structured treatment and teaching programme on non-insulin-dependent diabetes. Lancet. 1988;2:1407–10.
28. Gruesser M, Bott U, Ellermann P, Kronsbein P, Joergens V. Evaluation of a structured treatment and teaching program for non-insulin-treated type II outpatients in Germany after the nationwide introduction of reimbursement policy for physicians. Diabetes Care. 1993;9:1268–75.
29. Hiss RG, Anderson RM, Hess GE, Stepien CJ, Davis WK. Community diabetes care. A 10-year perspective. Diabetes Care. 1994;17:1124–34.
30. Hellman R, Regan J, Rosen H. Effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the risk of death or renal failure in NIDDM and IDDM. Diabetes Care. 1997;20:258–64.
31. Goyder EC, McNally PG, Drucquer M, Spiers N, Botha JL. Shifting of care for diabetes from secondary to primary care, 1990–5: review of general practices. BMJ. 1998;316:1505–6.
32. Pill R, Stott NCH, Rollnick SR, Rees M. A randomized controlled trial of an intervention designed to improve the care given in general practice to type II diabetic patients: patient outcomes and professional ability to change behavior. Fam Pract. 1998;15:229–35.
33. Wilczynski J, Cypryk K, Zawodniak-Szalapska M, Torzecka W, Pertynski T, Nadel I, et al. The role of staged diabetes management in improving diabetes care in Poland. Pract Diabetes Int. 1999;16:137–41.
34. Clark CM, Snyder JW, Meek RL, Stutz LM, Parkin CG. A systematic approach to risk stratification and intervention within a managed care environment improves diabetes outcomes and patient satisfaction. Diabetes Care. 2001;24:1079–86.
35. de Olivarius NF, Beck-Nielsen H, Andreasen AH, Horder M, Pedersen PA. Randomised controlled trial of structured personal care for type 2 diabetes mellitus. BMJ. 2001;323:1–9.
36. Vrijhoef HJM, Spreeuwenberg C, Eijkelberg MJG, Wolffenbuttel BHR, van Merode GG. Adoption of disease management model for diabetes in region of Maastricht. BMJ. 2001;323:983–5.
37. Montori VM, Dinneen SF, Gorman CA, Zimmerman BR, Rizza RA, Bjornsen SS, et al. The impact of planned care and a diabetes electronic management system on community-based diabetes care. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:1952–7.
38. Davidson MB. Effect of nurse-directed diabetes care in a minority population. Diabetes Care. 2003;26:2281–7.
39. Nocon A, Rhodes PJ, Wright JP, Eastham J, Williams DRR, Harrison SR, et al. Specialist general practitioners and diabetes clinics in primary care: a qualitative and descriptive evaluation. Diabet Med. 2003;21:32–8.

40. Philis-Tsimikas A, Walker C, Rivard L, Talavera G, Reimann JOF, Salmon M, Araujo R. Improvement in diabetes care of underinsured patients enrolled in project Dulce. Diabetes Care. 2004;27:110–5.
41. Varroud-Vial M, Simon D, Attali J, Durand-Zaleski I, Bera L, Attali C, et al. Improving glycaemic control of patients with type 2 diabetes in a primary care setting: a French application of the Staged Diabetes Management programme. Diabet Med. 2004;21:592–8.
42. Gill GV, Price C, Shandu D, Dedicoat M, Wilkinson D. An effective system of nurse-led diabetes care in rural Africa. Diabet Med. 2008;25:606–11.
43. Baty PJ, Viviano SK, Schiller MR, Wendling AL. A systematic approach to diabetes mellitus care in underserved populations: improving care of minority and homeless persons. Fam Med. 2010;42:623–7.
44. Davidson MB, Blanco-Castellanos M, Duran P. Integrating nurse-directed diabetes management into a primary care setting. Am J Manag Care. 2010;16:652–6.
45. Rodriguez-Saldana J, Morales de Teresa MA, Rosales Campos AC, Clark CM Jr, Strock E. Effectiveness of staged diabetes management on the quality of diabetes care in Mexico. Pract Diabetes Int. 2010;27:242–7.
46. Fokkens AS, Wiegersma PA, van der Meer, Riejneveld SA. Structured diabetes care leads to differences in organization of care in general practices: the healthcare professional and patient perspective. BMC Health Serv Res. 2011;11:113.
47. Hansen LJ, Siersma V, Beck-Nielsen H, de Fine Olivarius N. Structured personal care of type 2 diabetes: a 19 year follow-up of the study of Diabetes Care in General Practice (DGCP). Diabetologia. 2013;56:1243–53.
48. Goulder T, Kar P. Facilitating diabetes care – a community approach. BMJ Qual Improv Rep. 2013;2:u201112.w708. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjquality.u201112.w708.
49. Russell AW, Baxter KA, Askew DA, Tsai J, Ware RS, Jackson CL. Model of care for the management of complex type 2 diabetes managed in the community by primary care physicians with specialist support: an open controlled trial. Diabet Med. 2013;30:1112–21.
50. Willard-Grace R, Chen EH, Hessler D, DeVore D, Prado C, Bodenheimer T, Thom DH. Health coaching by medical assistants to improve control of diabetes, hypertension, and hyperlipidemia in low-income patients: a randomized controlled trial. Ann Fam Med. 2015;13:130–8.
51. Zhang J, Donald M, Baxter KA, Ware RS, Burridge L, Russell AW, Jackson CL. Impact of an integrated model of care on potentially preventable hospitalizations for people with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabet Med. 2015;32:872–80.
52. Williams JS, Walker RJ, Smalls BL, Hill R, Egede L. Patient-centered care, glycemic control, diabetes self-care, and quality of life in adults with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2016;18:644–9.
53. Seidu S, Bodicoat DH, Davies MJ, Daly H, Stribling B, Farooqi A, et al. Evaluating the impact of an enhanced primary care diabetes service on diabetes outcomes: a before-after study. Prim Care Diabetes. 2017;11:171–7.
54. da Silva Marinho MG, Fontbonne A, Vasconcelos Barbosa JM, de Melo Rodrigues H, Freese de Carvalho E, Vieira de Souza W, et al. The impact of an intervention to improve diabetes management in primary healthcare professionals practices in Brazil. Prim Care Diabetes. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pcd.2017.06.002.
55. Mazze RS, Etzwiler DD. Implications of the DCCT for National Health Care Reform. Diabetes Rev. 1994;2:256–62.
56. Winocour PH, Ford M, Ainsworth A, Association of British Clinical Diabetologists. Association of British Clinical Diabetologists (ABCD): survey of specialist diabetes care services in the UK, 2000. 2. Workforce issues, roles and responsibilities of diabetes specialist nurses. Diabet Med. 2002;19(Suppl. 4):27–31.
57. Winocour PH, Gosden C, Walton C, Nagi D, Turner B, Williams R, et al. Association of British Clinical Diabetologists (ABCD) and Diabetes-UK survey of specialist diabetes services in the UK, 2006. 1. The consultant physician perspective. Diabet Med. 2008;25:643–50.
58. Vigersky RA, Fish L, Hogan P, Stewart A, Kutler S, Ladenson PW, et al. The clinical endocrinology workforce: current status and future projections of supply and demand. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2014;99:3112–21.
59. Mazze R, Etzwiler D, Strock E. Staged diabetes management: toward an integrated model of diabetes care. Diabetes Care. 1994;17(Suppl 1):56–66.
60. DeBusk RF, West JA, Houston Miller N, Taylor CB. Chronic disease management. Treating the patient with disease(s) vs treating disease(s) in the patient. Arch Intern Med. 1999;159:2739–42.
61. Tinetti ME, Fried TR, Boyd CM. Designing health care for the most common chronic condition – multimorbidity. JAMA. 2013;307:2493–4.
62. Lorig K. Personal comment at the multidisciplinary course of diabetes, Mexico City. 2011.
63. Prados-Torres A, Calderón-Larrañaga A, Hancco-Saavedra J, Poblador-Plou B, van den Akker M. Multimorbidity patterns: a systematic review. J Clin Epidemiol. 2014;67:254–66.
64. Bayliss EA, Ellis JL, Steiner JF. Barriers to self-management and quality of life outcomes in seniors with multimorbidities. Ann Fam Med. 2007;5:395–402.
65. Fortin M, Bravo G, Hudon C, Lapointe L, Dubois M-F, Almirall J. Psychological distress and multimorbidity in primary care. Ann Fam Med. 2006;4:417–22.
66. Fortin M, Soubhi H, Bayliss EA, van den Akker. Multimorbidity's many challenges. Time to focus on the needs of this vulnerable and growing population. BMJ. 2007;334:1016–7.
67. Townsend A, Wyke S, Hunt K. Frequent consulting and multiple morbidity: a qualitative comparison of "high" and "low" consulters of GPs. Fam Pract. 2008;25:168–75. https://doi.org/10.1093/famprac/cmn017.
68. Von Korff M, Katon WJ, Lin EBH, Ciechanowski P, Peterson D, Ludman EJ, et al. Functional outcomes of multi-condition collaborative care and successful ageing: results of randomized trial. BMJ. 2011;343:d6612. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.d6612.
69. Lee TA, Shields AE, Vogeli C, Gibson TB, Woong-Sohn M, Marder WD, et al. Mortality rate in veterans with multiple chronic conditions. J Gen Intern Med. 2007;22(Suppl 3):403–7.
70. Fortin M, Hudon C, Lapointe L, Vanasse A. Multimorbidity is common to family practice. Is it commonly researched? Can Fam Physician. 2005;51:244–9.
71. Vogeli C, Shields AE, Lee TA, Gibson TB, Marder WD, Weiss KB, et al. Multiple chronic conditions: prevalence, health consequences, and implications for quality, care management and costs. J Gen Intern Med. 2007;22(Suppl 3):391–5.
72. Fortin M, Stewart M, Poitras ME, Almirall J, Maddocks H. A systematic review of prevalence studies on multimorbidity: toward a more uniform methodology. Ann Fam Med. 2012;10:142–51.
73. Carstensen J, Andersson D, André M, Engström S, Magnusson H, Borgquist LA. How does comorbidity influence healthcare costs? A population-based cross-sectional study of depression, back pain and osteoarthritis. BMJ Open. 2012;2:e000809.
74. Smith SM, Soubhi H, Fortin M, Hudon C, O'Dowd T. Managing patients with multi-morbidity: systematic review of interventions in primary care and community settings. BMJ. 2012;345:e5205.
75. Luijks H, Lucassen P, van Weel C, Loeffen M, Lagro-Janssen A, Schermer T. How GPs value guidelines applied to patients with multimorbidity: a qualitative study. BMJ Open. 2015;5:e007905.
76. Feinstein AR. The pre-therapeutic classification of comorbidity in chronic disease. J Chronic Dis. 1970;23:455–68.

77. Valderas JM, Starfield B, Sibbald B, Salisbury C, Roland M. Defining comorbidity, implications for understanding health and health services. Ann Fam Med. 2009;7:357–63.
78. Starfield B. Challenges to primary care from co- and multimorbidity. Prim Health Care Res Dev. 2011;12:1–2.
79. Hurley D. Diabetes rising. How a rare disease became a modern pandemic, and what to do about it. New York: Kaplan Publishing; 2010.
80. Schellevis FG, van der Velden J, van de Lisdonk E, van Eijk JT, van Weel C. Comorbidity of chronic diseases in general practice. J Clin Epidemiol. 1993;46:469–73.
81. Van den Akker M, Buntinx F, Metsemakers JF, Knottnerus JA. Multimorbidity in general practice: prevalence, incidence, and determinants of co-occurring chronic and recurrent diseases. J Clin Epidemiol. 1998;51:367–75.
82. Menotti A, Mulder I, Nissinen A, Giampaoli S, Feskenes EJ, Kromhout D. Prevalence of morbidity in elderly male populations and their impact on 10-year all-cause mortality: the FINE study (Finland, Italy, Netherlands, Elderly). J Clin Epidemiol. 2001;54:680–6.
83. Westert GP, Satariano WA, Schellevis FG, van den Bos GAM. Patterns of comorbidity and the use of health services in the Dutch population. Eur J Public Health. 2001;11:363–72.
84. Wolff JL, Starfield B, Anderson G. Prevalence, expenditures, and complications of multiple chronic conditions in the elderly. Arch Intern Med. 2002;162:2269–76.
85. Beasley JW, Hankey TH, Erickson R, Stange KC, Mundt M, Elliot M, et al. How many problems do family physicians manage at each encounter? A WReN study. Ann Fam Med. 2004;2:405–10.
86. Fortin M, Bravo G, Hudon C, Vanasse A, Lapointe L. Prevalence of multimorbidity among adults seen in family practice. Ann Fam Med. 2005;3:223–8.
87. Naughton C, Bennett K, Feely J. Prevalence of chronic disease in the elderly based on a national pharmacy claims database. Age Ageing. 2006;35:633–6.
88. Kadam UT, Croft PR. Clinical multimorbidity and physical function in older adults: a record and health status linkage study in general practice. Fam Pract. 2007;24:412–9.
89. Britt HC, Harrison CM, Miller GC, Knox SA. Prevalence and patterns of multimorbidity in Australia. Med J Aust. 2008;189:72–7.
90. Schram MT, Frijters D, van de Lisdonk EH, Ploemacher J, de Craen AJ, de Waal MW, et al. Setting and registry characteristics affect the prevalence and nature of multimorbidity in the elderly. J Clin Epidemiol. 2008;61:1104–12.
91. Smith SM, Ferede A, O'Dowd T. Multimorbidity in younger deprived patients: an exploratory study of research and service implications in general practice. BMC Fam Pract. 2008;9:6.
92. Nagel G, Peter R, Braig S, Hermann S, Rohrmann S, Linseisen J. The impact of education on risk factors and the occurrence of multimorbidity in the EPIC-Heidelberg cohort. BMC Public Health. 2008;11:384.
93. Marengoni A, Winblad B, Karp A, Fratiglioni L. Prevalence of chronic diseases and multimorbidity among the elderly population in Sweden. Am J Public Health. 2008;98:1198–200.
94. Marengoni A, Rizzuto D, Wang H-X, Winblad B, Fratilioni L. Patterns of chronic multimorbidity in the elderly population. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2009;57:225–30.
95. Loza E, Jover JA, Rodriguez L, Carmona L. Multimorbidity: prevalence, effect on quality of life and daily functioning, and variation of this effect when one condition is a rheumatic disease. Semin Arthritis Rheum. 2009;38:312–9.
96. Uijen AA, van de Lisdonk EH. Multimorbidity in primary care: prevalence and trend over the last 20 years. Eur J Gen Pract. 2008;14(Suppl 1):28–32.
97. Lee PG, Cigolle C, Blaum C. The co-occurrence of chronic diseases and geriatric syndromes: the health and retirement study. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2009;57:511–6.
98. Minas M, Koukosias N, Zintzaras E, Kostikas K, Gouroulianis KI. Prevalence of chronic diseases and morbidity in primary health care in central Greece: an epidemiological study. BMC Health Serv Res. 2010;10:252.
99. Glynn LG, Valderas JM, Healy P, Burke E, Newell J, Gillespie P, Murphy AW. The prevalence of multimorbidity in primary care and its effect on health care utilization and cost. Fam Pract. 2011;28:516–23.
100. Steinman MA, Lee SJ, Boscardin WJ, Miao Y, Fung KZ, Moore KL, et al. Patterns of multimorbidity in elderly veterans. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2012;60:1872–80.
101. Barnett K, Mercer S, Norbury M, Watt G, Wycke S, Guthrie B. Epidemiology of multimorbidity and implications for health care, research, and medical education: a cross-sectional study. Lancet. 2012;380:37–43.
102. Paulsen MS, Andersen M, Thomsen JL, Schroll H, Larsen PV, Lykkegaard J, et al. Multimorbidity and blood pressure control in 37,651 hypertensive patients from Danish general practice. J Am Heart Assoc. 2012;2:e004531.
103. Prados-Torres A, Poblador-Plou B, Calderón-Larrañaga A, Gimeno-Leiu LA, González-Rubio F, Poncel-Falcó A, et al. Multimorbidity patterns in primary care: interactions among chronic diseases using factor analysis. PLoS One. 2012;7:e32190.
104. Streit S, da Costa BR, Bauer DC, Collet T-H, Weiler S, Zimmerli L, et al. Multimorbidity and quality of preventive care in Swiss University Primary Care Cohorts. PLoS One. 2014;9:e96142.
105. Koller D, Schön G, Glaeske G, van den Bussche H, Hansen H. Multimorbidity and long-term dependency- a five year follow-up. BMC Geriatr. 2014;14:70.
106. Van Oostrom SH, Picavet HS, de Bruin SR, Stirbu I, Korevaar JC, Schelleveis FG, et al. Multimorbidity of chronic diseases and health care utilization in general practice. BMC Fam Pract. 2014;15:61.
107. van Oostrom SH, Gijsen R, Stirbu I, Korevaar JC, Schellevis FG, Picavet HSJ. Time trends in prevalence of chronic diseases and multimorbidity not only due to aging: data from general practices and health surveys. PLoS One. 2016; https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0160264.
108. Déruaz-Luyet A, N'Goran AA, Senn N, Bodenmann P, Pasquier J, Widmer D, et al. Multimorbidity and patterns of chronic conditions in a primary care population in Switzerland: a cross-sectional study. BMJ Open. 2017;7:e013664.
109. de Carvalho JN, Roncalli AG, de Camargo Cancela M, de Souza DLB. Prevalence of multimorbidity in the Brazilian adult population according to socioeconomic and demographic characteristics. PLoS One. 2017;12:e0174322.
110. Piette JD, Kerr EA. The impact of comorbid chronic conditions on diabetes care. Diabetes Care. 2006;29:725–31.
111. Kerr EA, Heisler M, Krein SL, Kabeto M, Langa KM, Weir D, et al. Beyond comorbidity counts: how do comorbidity type and severity influence diabetes patients' treatment priorities and self-management? J Gen Intern Med. 2007;22:1635–40.
112. Ose D, Wensing M, Szecsenki J, Joos S, Hermann K, Miksch A. Impact of primary care-based disease management on the health-related quality of life in patients with type 2 diabetes and comorbidity. Diabetes Care. 2009;32:1594–6.
113. Zhang Y, Roughead E, Ryan P, Gilbert A. Co-morbidity and the utilization of health care for Australian veterans with diabetes. Diabet Med. 2010;27:65–71.
114. Wermeling PR, Gorter KJ, van Stel HF, Rutten GEHM. Both cardiovascular and non—cardiovascular comorbidity are related to

health status in well-controlled type 2 diabetes patients: a cross-sectional analysis. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2012;11:121.
115. Luijks H, Schermer T, Bor H, van Weel C, Lagro-Janssen T, Biermans M, de Grauw W. Prevalence and incidence density rates of chronic comorbidity in type 2 diabetes patients: an exploratory cohort study. BMC Med. 2012;10:128.
116. Pentakota SR, Rajan M, Fincke BG, Tseng C-L, Miller DR, Christiansen CL, et al. Does diabetes care differ by type of chronic comorbidity? An evaluation of the Piette and Kerr framework. Diabetes Care. 2012;35:1285–92.
117. Teljeur C, Smith SM, Paul G, Kelly A, O'Dowd T. Multimorbidity in a cohort of patients with type 2 diabetes. Eur J Gen Pract. 2013;19:17–22.
118. Alonso-Morán E, Orueta JF, Fraile Esteban JI, Arteagoitia Axpe JM, Márquez González ML, Toro Polanco N, et al. Multimorbidity in people with type 2 diabetes in the Basque Country (Spain): prevalence, comorbidity clusters and comparison with other chronic patients. Eur J Intern Med. 2015;26:197–202.
119. Sancho-Mestre C, Vivas-Consuelo D, Alvis-Estrada L, Romero M, Usó-Talamantes R, Caballer-Tarazona V. Pharmaceutical cost and multimorbidity with type 2 diabetes mellitus using electronic health record data. BMC Health Serv Res. 2016;16:394.
120. Bralic Lang V, Bergman Markovic B. Prevalence of comorbidity in primary care patients with type 2 diabetes and its association with elevated HbA1c: a cross-sectional study in Croatia. Scand J Prim Health Care. 2016;34:66–72.
121. Petrosyan Y, Qing Bai Y, Koné Pefoyo AJ, Gruneir A, Thavorn K, Maxwell CJ, et al. The relationship between diabetes care quality and diabetes-related hospitalizations and the modifying role of comorbidity. Can J Diabetes. 2017;41:17–25.
122. Aron DC. Multimorbidity: an endocrinologist looks at multi-level network disruption and at what gets diabetes? J Eval Clin Pract. 2017;23:225–9.
123. Strumberg JP, Bennett JM, Martin CM, Picard M. "Multimorbidity" as the manifestation of network disturbances. J Eval Clin Pract. 2017;23:199–208.
124. Loscalzo J, Kohane I, Laszlo-Barabasi AL. Human disease classification in the postgenomic era: a complex systems approach to human pathobiology. Mol Syst Biol. 2007;3:124.
125. Goh K, Cusick ME, Valle D, Childs B, Vidal M, Barabási AL. The human disease network. PNAS. 2007;104:8685–90.
126. Barabási AL. Network medicine – from obesity to the "diseasome". N Engl J Med. 2007;357:404–7.
127. Starfield B, Weiner J, Mumford L, Weinwachs D. Ambulatory care groups: a categorization of diagnosis for research and management. Health Serv Res. 1991;26:53–74.
128. Charlson ME, Pompei P, Ales KL, MacKenzie CR. A new method of classifying prognostic comorbidity in longitudinal studies: development and validation. J Chronic Dis. 1987;40:373–83.
129. Peterson JC, Paget SA, Lachs MS, Charlson ME. The risk of comorbidity. Ann Rheum Dis. 2012;71:635–7.
130. Monami M, Lambertucci L, Lamanna C, Lotti E, Marsili A, Masotti G, Marchionni N, Manucci E. Are comorbidity indices useful in predicting all-cause mortality in type 2 diabetic patients? Comparison between Carlson index and disease count. Aging Clin Exp Res. 2007;19:492–6.
131. Goodman RA, Boyd C, Tinetti ME, Kohorn I, Parekh AK, McGinnis JM. IOM and DHHS meeting on making clinical practice guidelines appropriate for patients with multiple chronic conditions. Ann Fam Med. 2014;12:256–9.
132. Muth C, van den Akker M, Blom JW, Mallen CD, Rochon J, Schellevis FG, et al. The Adriane principles: how to handle multimorbidity in primary care consultations. BMC Med. 2014;12:223.
133. Prados-Torres A, del Cura-González I, Prados-Torres JD, Leiva-Fernández F, López-Rodríguez JA, Calderón-Larrañaga A, et al. Multimorbidity in general practice and the Adriane principles. A person-centred approach. Aten Primaria. 2017;49:300–7.
134. Lee TA, Shields AE, Vogelia C, Gibson TB, Woong-Sohn M, Marder WD, et al. Mortality rate in veterans with multiple chronic conditions. J Gen Intern Med. 2007;22(Suppl 3):403–7.
135. Carstensen J, Andersson D, André M, Engström S, Magnusson H, Borgquist LA. How does comorbidity influence healthcare costs? A population-based cross-sectional study of depression, back pain and osteoarthritis. BMJ Open. 2012;2:e00809. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2011-000809.
136. Baylliss EA. Simplifying care for complex patients. Ann Fam Med. 2012;10:3–5.
137. Parchman ML, Pugh JA, Romero RL, Bowers KW. Competing demands or clinical inertia: the case of elevated glycosilated hemoglobin. Ann Fam Med. 2007;5:196–201.
138. Struijs JN, Baan CA, Schellevis FG, Westert GP, van den Bos GA. Comorbidity in patients with diabetes mellitus: impact on medical health care utilization. BMC Health Serv Res. 2006;6:84.
139. Luijks H, Biermans M, Bor H, van Weel C, Lagro-Janssen T, de Grauw W, et al. The effect of comorbidity on glycemic control and sustolic blood pressure in type 2 diabetes: a cohort study with 5 year follow-up in primary care. PLoS One. 2015;10:e0138662.
140. Calderón-Larrañaga A, Abad-Díez JM, Gimeno-Feliu LA, Marta-Moreno J, González-Rubio F, Clerencia-Sierra M, et al. Global health care use by patients with type 2 diabetes: does the type of comorbidity matter? Eur J Intern Med. 2015;26:203–10.
141. Smith S, Soubhi H, Fortin M, Hudon C, O'Dowd T. Managing patients with multimorbidity: systematic review of interventions in primary care and community settings. BMJ. 2012;345:e5205. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.e5205.
142. Smith SM, Wallace E, O'Dowd T, Fortin M. Interventions for improving outcomes in patients with multimorbidity in primary care and community settings. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2016;3:CD006560.
143. Wallace E, Salisbury C, Guthrie B, Lewis C, Fahey T, Smith SM. Managing patients with multimorbidity in primary care. BMJ. 2015;350:h176.
144. Starfield B. Threads and yarns: weaving the tapestry of comorbidity. Ann Fam Med. 2006;4:101–3.
145. Atun R. Transitional health systems for multimorbidity. Lancet. 2015;386:721–2.
146. Wagner EH, Austin BT, Von Korff M. Improving outcomes in chronic illness. Manag Care Q. 1996;4:12–25.
147. Wagner EH. Chronic disease management: what will it take to improve care for chronic illness? Eff Clin Pract. 1998;1:2–4.
148. Bodenheimer T, Wagner EH, Grumbach K. Improving primary care for patients with chronic illness. JAMA. 2002;288:1775–9.
149. Von Korff M, Gruman J, Schaefer J, Curry SJ, Wagner EH. Collaborative management of chronic illness. Ann Intern Med. 1997;127:1097–102.
150. Davis RM, Wagner EH. Advances in managing chronic disease. Research, performance measurement and quality improvement are key. BMJ. 2000;320:525–6.
151. Pan American Health Organization. Innovative care for chronic conditions: organizing and delivering high quality care for chronic noncommunicable diseases in the Americas. Washington DC: PAHO; 2013.
152. Starfield B. Primary care. In: Balancing health needs, services, and technology. New York: Oxford University Press; 1998.
153. Wagner EH. The role of patient care teams in chronic disease management. BMJ. 2000;32:569–72.
154. Epping-Jordan JE, Pruitt SD, Wagner EH. Improving the quality of health care for chronic conditions. Qual Saf Health Care. 2004;13:299–305.
155. Wagner EH, Bennett SM, Austin BT, Greene SM, Schaefer JK, Von Korff M. Finding common ground: patient-centeredness and

evidence-based chronic illness care. J Altern Complement Med. 2005;11(Suppl 1):S7–S15.
156. Clement M, Harvey B, Rabi DM, Roscoe RS, Sherifali D. Organization of diabetes care. Can J Diabetes. 2013;37:S20–5.
157. Bonomi AE, Glasgow RE, Wagner EH, Von Korff M. Assessment of chronic illness care (ACIC): a practical tool for quality improvement. Health Serv Res. 2001;37:791–820.
158. Glasgow RE, Wagner E, Schaefer J, Mahoney L, Reid R, Greene S. Development and validation of the patient assessment of chronic illness care (PACIC). Med Care. 2005;43:436–44.
159. Drewes HW, de Jong-van Til JT, Struijs JN, Baan CA, Tekle FB, Meijboom BR. Measuring chronic care management experience of patients with diabetes: PACIC and PACIC+ validation. Int J Integr Care. 2012;12:e194.
160. Glasgow RE, Whitesides H, Nelson CC, King DK. Use of the patient assessment of chronic illness care (PACIC) with diabetic patients. Diabetes Care. 2005;28:2655–61.
161. Aragones A, Schaefer EW, Stevens D, Gourevitch MN, Glasgow RE. Validation of the Spanish translation of the patient assessment of chronic illness care (PACIC) survey. Prev Chronic Dis. 2008;5:1–10.
162. Gijs E, Zuercher E, Henry V, Morin D, Bize R, Peytremann-Bridevaux I. Diabetes care: comparison of patients' and healthcare professionals' assessment using the PACIC instrument. J Eval Clin Pract. 2017;23(4):803–11. https://doi.org/10.1111/jep.12720.
163. Wagner EH, Grothaus LC, Sandhu N, Galvin MS, McGregor M, Artz K, Coleman EA. Chronic care clinics for diabetes in primary care. A system-wide randomized trial. Diabetes Care. 2001;25:695–700.
164. Siminerio LM, Piatt GA, Emerson S, Ruppert K, Saul M, Solano F, et al. Deploying the chronic care model to implement and sustain diabetes self-management training programs. Diabetes Educ. 2006;32:1–8.
165. Piatt GA, Orchard TJ, Emerson S, Simmons D, Songer TJ, Brooks MM, et al. Translating the chronic care model into the community. Diabetes Care. 2006;29:811–7.
166. Piatt GA, Anderson RM, Brooks MM, Songer T, Siminerio LM, Korytowski MM, et al. 3-year follow-up of clinical and behavioral improvements following a multifaceted diabetes care intervention: results of a randomized controlled trial. Diabetes Educ. 2010;36:301–9.
167. Vargas RB, Mangione CM, Keesey J, Rosen M, Schonlau M, Keeler EB. Can a chronic care model collaborative reduce heart disease risk in patients with diabetes? J Gen Intern Med. 2007;22:215–22.
168. Nutting PA, Dickinson WP, Dickinson LM, Nelson CC, King DK, Crabtree BF, et al. Use of chronic care model elements is associated with higher quality care for diabetes. Ann Fam Med. 2007;5:14–20.
169. Sunaert P, Bastiaens H, Feyen L, Snauwaert B, Nobels F, Wens J, et al. Implementation of a program for type 2 diabetes based on the chronic care model in a hospital-centered health care system: "the Belgian experience". BMC Health Serv Res. 2009;9:152.
170. Sunaert P, Bastianes H, Nobels F, Feyen L, Verbeke G, Vermeire E, et al. Effectiveness of the introduction of a chronic care model-based program for type 2 diabetes in Belgium. BMC Health Serv Res. 2010;10:207.
171. Strickland PA, Hudson SV, Piasecki A, Hahn K, Cohen D, Orzano AJ, Parchman ML. Features of the Chronic Care Model (CCM) associated with behavioral counseling and diabetes care in community primary care. J Am Board Fam Med. 2010;23:295–305.
172. Ku GM, Kegels G. Implementing elements of a context-adapted chronic care model to improve first-line diabetes care: effects on assessment of chronic illness care and glycemic control among people with diabetes enrolled to the First-Line Diabetes Care (FiLD) project in the Northern Philippines. Prim Health Care Res Dev. 2015;16:481–91.
173. Profili F, Bellini I, Zuppiroli A, Seghieri G, Barbone F, Francesconi P. Changes in diabetes care introduced by a Chronic Care Model-based programme in Tuscany: a 4-year cohort study. Eur J Public Health. 2017;27:14–9.
174. Ku GMV, Kegels G. Adapting chronic care models for diabetes care delivery in low-and-middle-income countries: a review. World J Diabetes. 2015;6:566–75.
175. Stellefson M, Dipnarine K, Stopka C. The chronic care model and diabetes management in US primary care settings: a systematic review. Prev Chronic Dis. 2013;10:1–21.
176. Griffin S. Diabetes care in general practice: meta-analysis of randomized control trials. BMJ. 1998;317:390–6.
177. Zimmerman B, Lindberg C, Plsek P. Edgeware. Lessons from complexity science for health care leaders. New Jersey: Plexus Institute; 2008; Curt@PlexusInstitute.org.
178. Williams TF, Martin DA, Hogan MD, Watkins JD, Ellis EV. The clinical picture of diabetic control, studied in four settings. Am J Public Health Nations Health. 1967;57:441–51.
179. Khunti K. Use of multiple methods to determine factors affecting quality of care of patients with diabetes. Fam Pract. 1999;16:489–94.
180. Hibbard J. Understanding human motivation. Forging a tool to guide patients in self-care management. Health Aff. 2012;31:569.
181. Hibbard JHJ, Stockard ER, Mahoney ER, Tusler M. Development of the patient activation measure (PAM): conceptualizing and measuring activation in patients and consumers. Health Serv Res. 2004;39:1005–26.
182. Hibbard JHJ, Mahoney ER, Stockard J, Tusler M. Development and testing of a short form of the patient activation measure. Health Serv Res. 2005;40:1918–30.
183. Steinsbeckk A. Patient activation measure. Tidsskr Nor Laegeforen. 2008;23(128):2316–8.
184. Ngooi BX, Packer TL, Kephart G, Warner G, Koh KW, Wong RC, et al. Validation of the patient activation measure (PAM-13) among adults with cardiac conditions in Singapore. Qual Life Res. 2017;26:1071–80.
185. Moreno-Chico C, González-de Paz L, Monforte-Royo C, Arrighi E, Navarro-Rubio MD, Gallart Fernández-Puebla A. Adaptation to European Spanish and psychometric properties of the Patient Activation Measure 13 in patients with chronic diseases. Fam Pract. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1093/fampra/cmx022.
186. Greene J, Hibbard JHJ. Why does patient activation matter? An examination of the relationships between patient activation and health-related outcomes. J Gen Intern Med. 2010;27:520–6.
187. Sacks RM, Greene J, Hibbard J, Overton V, Parrotta CD. Does patient activation predict the course of type 2 diabetes? A longitudinal study. Patient Educ Couns. 2017;100:1268–75.
188. Hibbard JHJ. Patient activation and the use of information to support informed health decisions. Patient Educ Couns. 2017;100:5–7.
189. Etzwiler DD. Teaching allied health professionals about self-management. Diabetes Care. 1980;3:121–3.
190. Anonymous. Teaching diabetic self-care. N Engl J Med. 1967;272:182.
191. Allan FN. Education of the diabetic patient. N Engl J Med. 1963;268:93–5.
192. Page P, Verstraete DG, Robb JR, Etzwiler DD. Patient recall of self-care recommendations in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1981;4:96–8.
193. Holman H, Lorig K. Patient self-management: a key to effectiveness and efficiency in care of chronic disease. Public Health Rep. 2004;119:239–43.
194. Rubin RR. Facilitating self-care in people with diabetes. Diabetes Spectr. 2001;14:55–7.
195. Bodenheimer T, Davis C, Holman H. Helping patients adopt healthier behaviors. Clin Diabetes. 2007;25:66–70.

196. Sherifali D. Enhancing healthy lifestyle adherence and promoting self care. Can J Diabetes. 2014; https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcjd.2014.10.007.
197. Minet L, Moller S, Vach W, Wagner L, Henriksen JE. Mediating the effect of self-care management intervention in type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis of 47 randomised controlled trials. Patient Educ Couns. 2010;80:29–41.
198. Kulzer B, Hermanns N, Reinecker H, Haak T. Effects of self-management training in type 2 diabetes: a randomized, prospective trial. Diabet Med. 2007;24:415–23.
199. Fisher EB, Brownson CA, O'Toole ML, Shetty G, Anwuri VV, Glasgow RE. Ecological approaches to self-management: the case of diabetes. Am J Public Health. 2005;95:1523–35.
200. Hurley L, O'Donnell M, O'Hara C, Carey ME, Williaing I, Daly H, et al. Is diabetes self-management education still the Cinderella of diabetes care? Patient Educ Couns. 2017;100:1957–60.
201. Peterson KA, Radosevich DM, O'Connor PJ, Nyman JA, Prineas RJ, Smith SA, et al. Improving diabetes care in practice. Diabetes Care. 2008;31:2238–43.
202. McGowan P. The challenge of integrating self-management support into clinical settings. Can J Diabetes. 2013;37:45–50.
203. Vinicor F. The future of diabetes: what is there besides new medicines? Clin Diabetes. 2004;22:94–6.
204. Narayan KMV. How should developing countries manage diabetes? CMAJ. 2006;175:733–6.
205. Peterson KA, Radosevich DM, O'Connor PJ, Nyman JA, Prineas RJ, Smith SA, et al. Improving diabetes care in practice. Findings from the TRANSLATE trial. Diabetes Care. 2008;31:2238–43.
206. New JP, Hollis S, Campbell F, McDowell D, Burns E, Dornan TL, et al. Measuring clinical performance and outcomes from diabetes information systems: an observational study. Diabetologia. 2000;43:836–43.
207. Gudbjörnsdottir S, Cederholm J, Nilsson PM, Eliasson B. The diabetes register in Sweden. An implementation of the St. Vincent declaration for quality improvement in diabetes care. Diabetes Care. 2003;26:1270–6.
208. Khan L, Mincemoyer S, Gabbay RA. Diabetes registries: where we are and where are we headed? Diabetes Technol Ther. 2009;11:255–62.
209. Thomsen RW, Sorensen HT. Using registries to identify type 2 diabetes patients. Clin Epidemiol. 2015;7:1–3.
210. Peterson KA. Diabetes management in the primary care setting: summary. Am J Med. 2002;113(6A):36S–40S.
211. Bodenheimer T, Laing BY. The teamlet model of primary care. Ann Fam Med. 2007;5:457–61.
212. Bodenheimer T, Ghorob A, Willard-Grace R, Grumbach K. The 10 building blocks of high-performing primary care. Ann Fam Med. 2014;12:166–71.
213. Ghorob A. Health coaching: teaching patients to fish. Fam Pract Manag. 2013;20:40–2.
214. Sherif-Ali D. Diabetes coaching for individuals with type 2 diabetes: a state-of-the-science review and rationale for a coaching model. J Diabetes. 2017;9:547–54.
215. Delaney G, Newlyn N, Pamplona E, Hocking SL, Glastras SJ, McGrath RT, et al. Identification of patients with diabetes who benefit most from a health coaching program in chronic disease management, Sydney, Australia, 2013. Prev Chronic Dis. 2017;14:160504.
216. Thom DH, Willard-Grace R, Hessler D, DeVore D, Prado C, Bodenheimer T, et al. The impact of health coaching on medication adherence in patients with poorly controlled diabetes, hypertension, and/or hyperlipidemia: a randomized controlled trial. J Am Board Fam Med. 2015;28:38–45.
217. Zinman B, Skyler JS, Riddle MC, Ferrannini E. Diabetes research and care through the ages. Diabetes Care. 2017;40:1302–13.
218. Davies P. Introducing care. In: Dawes M, Davies P, Gray A, Mant J, Seers K, Snowball R, editors. Evidence-based practice. A primer for health care professionals. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1999.
219. Robles-Silva L, Alcántara-Hernández E, Mercado-Martínez FJ. Patrones de prescripción médica a individuos con diabetes mellitus tipo II en el primer nivel de atención. Salud Pública Méx. 1993;35:161–8.
220. Wacher NH, Silva M, Valdez L, Cruz M, Gómez-Díaz R. Causas de descontrol metabólico en atención primaria. Gac Med Mex. 2016;152:350–6.
221. Renders CM, Valk GD, Griffin SJ, Wagner EH, Eijk Van JT, Assendelft WJJ. Interventions to improve the management of diabetes in primary care, outpatient, and community settings. A systematic review. Diabetes Care. 2001;24:1821–33.
222. Glasgow RE. Translating research to practice. Lessons learned, areas for improvement and future directions. Diabetes Care. 2003;26:2451–6.
223. Davidson MB. How our current medical care system fails people with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2009;32:370–2.
224. Anderson RM. The challenge of translating scientific knowledge into improved diabetes care in the 1990s. Diabetes Care. 1991;14:418–21.

Clinical Practice Guidelines, Evidence-Based Medicine, and Diabetes

21

Joel Rodriguez-Saldana

Box 21.1: General goals of treatment for type 2 diabetes

Organization and year	IDF 2013	CDA 2013	NICE 2015	ADA 2018	AACE 2018	Joslin 2018
A1c	<7.0%	<7.0%	<6.5% <7.0% for patients on drugs associated with hypoglycemia	<7.0%	≤6.5%	<7.0%
Preprandial glucose	<110 mg/dl	70–120 mg/dl	NR	80–130 mg/dl	NR	80–130 mg/dl
Postprandial glucose	<180 mg/dl	90–180 mg/dl	NR	<180 mg/dl	NR	<180 mg/dl
Bedtime glucose	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	90–150 mg/dl
Blood pressure	<130–140/80 mm Hg	<130/80 mm Hg	<140/80 < 130/80 with kidney, eye, or cerebrovascular damage	<140/90 mm Hg	<130/80 mm Hg	≤140/90 mm Hg
LDL cholesterol	<100 mg/dl	<77.3 mg/dl	NR	<100 mg/dl	Low risk: <160 mg/dl Moderate risk: <130 mg/dl High risk: <100 mg/dl Very high risk: <70 mg/dl Extreme risk: <55 mg/dl	<70 mg/dl for patients with ASCVD[a] <100 mg/dl for patients without ASCVD[a]
Triglycerides	NR	132.8 mg/dl	NR	<150 mg/dl	NR	≤150 mg/dl
HDL cholesterol	NR	NR	NR	>40 mg/dl in men >50 mg/dl in women	NR	≥40 mg/dl

[a]*ASCVD* atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease

The Unwarranted Variation in Health Care and Its Consequences

In 1938, Glover reported high variations in the rates of tonsillectomy in small areas of Britain; the probability of undergoing the operation was 20 times higher in children living 7 miles apart [1]. Despite the amount of similar evidence col-

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (✉)
Multidisciplinary Centre of Diabetes, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_21

lected for almost four decades, when John Wennberg published his first article on unwarranted variations in the delivery of health care in 1973, he was largely ignored [2]. Over the next four decades, he and his colleagues collected compelling research against the traditional view of quality of health care as "the best in the world" but at the expense of high variability in costs. Wennberg showed that a large part of the medical services delivered in the United States and other countries is not only unnecessary, but it also inflicts a large burden in costs and is potentially harmful [3]. In 1967, Wennberg and Gittelsohn developed a database to identify and compare the underuse of care among neighboring hospital service areas assuming that lack of access and undertreatment were the most important problems in health care [3]. Surprisingly, they found large unjustified variations in the delivery and use of services among neighboring communities: instead of underservice and undertreatment, they found vast variations in the availability of resources and the use of services in neighboring communities without scientific basis [4–5]. Despite huge variations in health-care delivery, people were homogeneous in health, socioeconomic status, education, and insurance [2]. Wennberg came to the conclusion that medicine had wrapped itself in the mantle of science, yet much of what doctors were doing was based more on hunches than good research [2]. Variations were more linked to professional uncertainty about the best way to practice medicine and physician supply: people living in areas with more surgeons per 10,000 inhabitants had more surgery, and residents in areas with more internists received more diagnostic tests [6]. These landmark studies were not warmly received: the first two reports had to be published in *Science* and *Scientific American* [6–7], because journals with wide clinical readerships rejected them arguing that patient demand was the only explanation for variations in health-care delivery, and those studies would be of no interest to the readers [5]. Despite initial and persistent resistance to accept them, similar variations in hospital admissions, length of stay, and specific surgical procedures had been reported in other countries [8–9]. Differences were too large to be ignored, interpreting results was difficult and at times not in favor of the medical profession; unless they were understood at a clinical level, the risk of policy decisions with adverse effects on health was high [8]. Wennberg's studies led to health-care reforms at the federal and state levels in the United States, but in most places in the world, these proposals are still unacceptable [2]. A patient's odds of undergoing surgery, diagnostic, and therapeutic procedures frequently is more dependent on where he or she lives than on clinical circumstances. Despite substantial advances in medical science, regional variations in surgery have not decreased; the rates of ten common surgical procedures have remained stable worldwide [10–13]. Clinical inertia, personal beliefs, and economic interests are still relevant barriers to standardize medical practice. Instead of "evidence-based," "eminence-based medicine" prevails and rules. "What you get depends on where you live and who you see [14]."

Three main reasons have been advocated to explain substantial variations in diagnostic, medical, and surgical procedures: (1) differences in health systems, (2) practice styles of physicians, and (3) characteristics and preferences of patients [15]. Beyond structural differences and recognizing the role of patients to pursuit and select health care, physicians' beliefs about the effectiveness of clinical interventions and their personal interpretation to what constitutes evidence are main contributing factors; patients in high-intensity areas with high availability of services do not experience better health outcomes [16]. To address this problem, the use of clinical guidelines to apply scientific evidence has become increasingly important.

The Ascent of Clinical Practice Guidelines

One of the most important factors influencing physicians is the collection of clinical policies to guide their actions [17]. In 1989, Robert Brook announced the emergence of the movement leading to practice guidelines when the need for careful evaluation of medical practice became a priority based on (1) high rates of unexplained variation in clinical practice; (2) high rates of inappropriate care, adverse events, and medical errors; (3) escalating financial pressures and cost-containment efforts; (4) rapid introduction of technology; and (5) unprecedented questioning and scrutiny of medical care [18–20]. These deficiencies created a demand to obtain clinical evidence about efficiency, cost-effectiveness, and the impact of medical interventions on quality of life [20]. Failure to identify the best services, the appropriate circumstances, and the indicated patients is a threat to patient safety, contributes to the increasing costs, and impedes the improvement of health care [20]. Attention shifted to development of methods providing valid and reliable guidelines about the best interventions "for the real world," based on high-quality, understandable, and practical evidence-based information, not simply anecdotal, consensus-based, opinionated, nihilistic, or with limited scope [21–22].

Albeit articles about guidelines started to be published in the 1960s and the title "clinical guidelines" was mentioned since the 1970s, 1990 was the emblematic year to their advance. Brooke was accurate in his prediction: the vision and efforts of a distinguished group of leaders, including David Eddy, Stephen H. Woolf, Scott Weingarten, Marilyn Field, and Kathleen Lohr in the United States; Richard Grol in the Netherlands; and Jeremy Grimshaw, Ian Russell, and Martin Eccles in the United Kingdom, and the pioneering work of the Agency for Health-Care Policy and Research (AHCPR), the Institute of Medicine (IOM), the American College of Physicians, the Veterans Health Administration in the United

States, and the National Institute of Clinical Excellence in England (NICE, UK) led to an explosion in the development of clinical guidelines and a worldwide discussion about their methodology, implementation, impact, and quality of health care [23–28]. They understood the roles required to improve an organization and to attain its professional goals to advance from [1] the art of craft stage in which skills are passed from practitioner to apprentice [2] to a stage where experience is collected and systematized to form principles leading to the emergence of an integrated structure of thought [23].

Critical pathways were first used in industry; the critical pathway method was developed in the 1950s to coordinate multiple contractors or people to identify the key sequence of events and the critical path that would drive the timeline of a project and started to be applied to health care in the 1970s to define the optimal sequencing and timing of interventions by physicians, nurses, and other staff for particular diagnosis or procedures [24]. Critical pathways are devoted to (1) improve the health status of significant amounts of individuals; (2) reduce unwarranted variations in patient care; (3) minimize delays and resource utilization; (4) enhance communication; (5) decrease costs; (6) reduce significant variations in outcomes; and (7) maximize the quality of health care [24]. Clinical algorithms are criteria maps in flowchart format initially designed by Greenfield and colleagues to perform chart audits of clinical conditions or management, and they became a preferred method to illustrate management pathways [24–25].

Different definitions of clinical guidelines have been proposed. According to the IOM, clinical guidelines are "all the information relevant to approach the diagnostic and therapeutic management of a clinical problem," whereas the AHCPR declared that clinical guidelines are "systematically developed statements developed to assist practitioners and patient decisions about health care to be provided for specific clinical circumstances," and Margolis defined them as "all the relevant information to approach the diagnostic and therapeutic management of a clinical problem, logically driven by a clinical algorithm" [26–29]. Clinical guidelines evolved from pathways to direct the diagnosis or management of symptoms or signs to graphical descriptions of quality improvement. The primary goals of clinical guidelines are [30]:

1. To improve the quality of care, enforcing professionalism, accountability, and efficiency as part of professional activities.
2. To support systems in decision making for clinicians and patients.

Over the next decades, clinical practice guidelines (CPG) became the preferred methods to influence medical decisions and develop practice policies beyond the traditional approach in which practice policies evolve through collection of "standard and accepted" practices, which are not to be changed [31–32]. Main issues of the traditional approach include (1) the obligation to comply with them (policies and norms) and the expectative that people must perform them without deviation. In this approach, the former defines the latter and creates two problems: (1) it is not anchored on reality; policies are not explicitly described or analyzed and (2) outcomes are subjective [31]. In a series of articles, Eddy proposed substituting global subjective judgment for an evidence-based approach, in which clinical decisions were supported by evidence. The steps that he described to identify the tasks to design practice policies are still valid [31–36]:

1. Formulate the problem to be assessed.
2. Identify and interpret the evidence.
3. Synthesize the evidence, the magnitude of its benefits, and harms.
4. Direct comparison of benefits and risks.
5. Estimate costs.
6. Compare health outcomes and costs.
7. Setting priorities.
8. Design a practice policy.

Clinical guidelines have to be flexible, taking into account that outcomes must be assessed by an appreciable but not uniform audience, including providers, payers, and users [36]. The clinical practice guideline movement is consolidated through the common interest of leaders and institutions from the United States and Europe. Several reviews were published until the 28th Bethesda Conference analyzed their association with quality of care, the methodology of development, and implementation [36–42].

Development of Clinical Guidelines

Clinicians need simple, patient-specific, user-friendly guidelines which included three basic components: (1) identification of the decisions which have to be made and their possible consequences; (2) collection of valid evidence to make informed decisions at key decision points; and (3) presentation of evidence and recommendations in a concise, accessible format [43]. The process starts developing the pathway of the clinical guideline, and recognizing the need to abandon the consensus approach, a method of subjective judgment in which participants "simply decide what to recommend" and privilege the biases of traditional, empirical medical practice. Consensus evolved from collective personal experiences, they are sanctioned by selected, frequently biased groups of experts, in the abscence of explicit criteria to select the evidence supporting specific recommendations, they are open to misuse and reluctant to meet quality standards [20, 44–49]. Approaches to develop clinical guidelines are shown in Table 21.1 [50–69].

Table 21.1 Stages in the development of clinical practice guidelines [20, 29–30, 50–69]

Stage	Description
1	Identifying and refining the subject including clinicians, patients, and potential users or evaluators of the guideline.
	Definition of topics in precise terms including condition or disease, interventions, patient population, scientific evidence, and outcomes to define effectiveness.
	Selection criteria:
	1. Disease prevalence
	2. Burden of illness: avoidable morbidity, premature mortality
	3. Costs of treatment
	4. Guidelines about quality of health care include process measures and evidence about effective interventions
	5. Current evidence about practice variability or inaccurateness
	6. Evidence about potential to improve clinical outcomes and reduce costs
	7. Specific needs of people who will implement the guideline
	8. Cost implications
	9. Time or technology required
	10. Competing demands of other health problems
2	Cost analysis and hidden costs in implementation, which could be detrimental to the patient's interests. Health interventions are not free, people are not infinitely rich, and budgets are limited.
	Information about cost implications of alternative preventive, diagnostic, and management strategies for each clinical situation
3	Target audience and clinical setting:
	1. Scope of the guideline
	2. Evidence to be considered
	3. Panel composition
4	Three groups responsible to develop the guideline: (a) development, (b) continuing medical education, (c) implementation. Types of groups:
	(a) Internal: composed entirely by physicians and health professionals who will use them
	(b) Intermediate: including some clinicians who will use them
	(c) External: none of the clinicians will use them
5	Panel of 10–20 members balancing scientific, practical, and political concerns, including:
	1. Primary care professionals with specific interest
	2. Health authorities
	3. Medical specialists with expertise in the guideline topic
	4. One epidemiologist
	5. Health economist
6	Five alternative methods to develop the guideline:
	1. Informal consensus conference or working party ("global subjective judgment"): expert panel making recommendations from subjective evidence; little description of specific evidence or processes. Contributors present preferences and use scientific evidence to support their statements. Agreement without discussing formal analytical methods. Advantages: simple and flexible. Major problems: easily influenced by dynamics of experts, very limited validity of opinions. Problems to establish validity of conclusions
	2. Formal consensus: expert panel in compliance with appropriateness ratings, two-step Delphi technique. Includes methodologists, clinicians and public representatives, excludes persons with strong advocacy positions regarding the topic. Major limitation: consensus-based, evidence-based medicine not required
	3. Evidence-based: recommendations linked to the quality of scientific evidence, eliminating studies non-rigorous studies. Major problems: absence or scarcity of scientific evidence, disregard of clinical experience and patient's preferences.
	4. Explicit method: built on the evidence-based approach. Systematic estimate of the effects of interventions on health outcomes. Combination of scientific evidence and formal analytic methods, including benefits, dangers, and costs of interventions, probability of outcomes and patient's preferences. Thorough review of published literature including scientific validity, health economic analysis, and ranking of options to choose the preferred one. If there is not a clear winner, patient's preferences are taken into account.
	5. Synthetic method: draft prepared by one specialist and one general practitioner, refined by editorial panel to ensure consistency, understandability, and adequacy by nonspecialists and representative of a broad range of opinions. Circulation of the draft for comments by local doctors to create a refined version to be printed and implemented
7	Causal pathway of the guideline
	1. Algorithmization: standard formats for flowcharts or algorithms to make explicit, logic guidelines.
	2. Explicit method describing the use of indirect evidence to establish effectiveness, positive health outcomes, potential adverse consequences of interventions
8	Analytical framework to define questions to be answered to reach recommendations, types of evidence, and relevant information for analysis, including:
	1. Evidence-based
	2. Expert opinion
	3. Clinical experience
	4. Patient's experiences and preferences

Table 21.1 (continued)

Stage	Description
9	Literature retrieval and review
	Evidence-based assessment of clinical questions or conditions Consult sources of evidence-based medicine (Table 21.3)
	Quality of individual studies, internal and external validity
10	Trade-offs to balance benefits and harms of recommendations:
	1. Discrete and measurable outcomes or benefits for patients:
	Intermediate: leading to clinical outcomes
	Surrogate: equivalent to health outcomes
	Health outcomes: efficacy, morbidity, emotional well-being, mortality
	2. Potential risks and harms, adverse events, fatal and nonfatal complications
	3. Quality-adjusted life years
11	Wording recommendations
	Clarity and precision
	Behavioral, direct, specific terms. "Actionable," clear, and concise statements, in active voice
	Avoid using vague, nonspecific words and passive voice
12	Translate evidence into recommendations
	Based on established hierarchies by the Canadian Task Force of the Periodic Health Examination (CTF-PHE), the US Agency for Health Care Policy and Research (AHCPR), or the US Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF):
	1. Levels of evidence
	I: Evidence from "one well-designed" randomized controlled trial
	II: Evidence from "less well-designed" randomized controlled trials or one well-designed case control study
	III: Evidence from observational studies or case reports
	IV: No evidence – expert opinions, consensus conferences
	2. Categories of evidence
	Ia – Meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials
	Ib – At least one randomized controlled trial
	IIa – At least one controlled study without randomization
	IIb – At least one other type of quasi-experimental study
	III – Descriptive studies: comparative, case-control
	IV – Expert committee reports, opinions of clinical experience or both
	3. Levels of certainty
	High
	Moderate
	Low
	4. Strength of recommendations
	A: Strongly recommended – based on evidence category I
	B: Recommended – based on evidence category II or extrapolated from category I
	C: No recommendation – based on evidence category III or extrapolated from categories I or II
	D: Not recommended – based on evidence category IV or extrapolated from categories I, II, or III
	E: Insufficient evidence to make a recommendation
13	Disclosure of uncertainties in the wording of recommendations and the design of algorithms including:
	1. Lack of scientific evidence
	2. Expert opinion
	3. Special clinical circumstances
14	Physicians' confidence in the correctness of guidelines. Local tailoring or customization to suit local conditions without tinkering with evidence-based recommendations
15	Strategies of implementation
	1. Patients to be covered by the guideline
	2. General reminders for physicians and patients
	3. Quality improvement strategies to reduce clinical and managerial discordances; systematic framework and tools to define, analyze, and improve processes
	4. Specific actions for the majority of the patients
	5. Specific feedback from previous care
	6. Changes in medical records: what was actually done
	7. Monitor patient outcomes
16	Dissemination and learning
	Ascertainment that the guideline reaches the users, learn the guideline, and practice according with it. Learning without transference is a waste of time and resources

(continued)

Table 21.1 (continued)

Stage	Description
17	Internal and external evaluation:
	1. Experts, professional societies, government organizations, consumer groups, health management organizations, insurers, practicing clinicians
	2. Monitoring if the guideline is used
	3. Clinical outcomes
	Intermediate: closely related to the process
	Long term: patient health and function
	4. Quality indicators
18	Effects on quality of health
	1. Percent of patients receiving process measures
	2. Percent of patients achieving outcome measures
	3. Cost-effectiveness
	4. Patient satisfaction
19	Review and updating because of changes in evidence:
	1. Benefits and harms of interventions
	2. Changes in current practice
	3. Outcomes and estimated value
	4. Available interventions
	5. Available resources
20	Feasibility and sustainability: long-term likelihood to operate "in the real world." Take into account that:
	1. Guidelines might be ignored because of non-compliance; most of them are not incorporated into clinical practice
	2. Guidelines may be inadequate to the clinical environment
	3. Unawareness or disregard that using them depends as much on administrative factors as on clinical validity and efficacy
	4. Patient preferences, costs, competing health priorities, magnitude of benefit
	5. When compared with current practice, it is discovered that the guideline did not improve care
	6. Misapplication in clinical practice
	7. Narrow inclusion or exclusion criteria
	8. Unintended effects: Increased costs, adverse events of new interventions
	9. Inefficiencies of health care systems competing with implementation
	10. Inappropriateness for some patients
	1. Acceptance
	2. Institutional and political support
	3. Resources
	4. Continuing leadership
	5. Professional commitment
21	Emerging issues
	1. Strategies to enhance implementation:
	Identification of barriers; anticipative solutions
	Behaviorally specific language
	Multiple formats and channels for dissemination
	Adaptation of educational resources
	Resource implications, to ensure availability
	Data collection tools
	2. The increasing importance of comorbidity

Challenges of Implementation

Despite all the efforts, serious deficiencies persist in the adoption of clinical guidelines as a result of perceived conflicts with clinical freedom; divisive, individualistic personalities; poor planning; lack of resources; and the absence of strategies to change practitioners and patients' behavior [21, 70–77]. Guidelines do not implement by themselves [70]! Publishing a guideline is not enough to produce sustained changes in clinical management [77]. Weingarten stated that "a well-intentioned society puts together a wonderful guideline…they publish it in a journal, and that's where it ends [77]". Implementation requires time, enthusiasm, and resources. Since there is no single effective way to ensure their use in practice, dissemination and implementation require multifaceted interventions [71].

The low rates of adoption of internationally praised guidelines for chronic diseases like diabetes illustrate the complex-

Table 21.2 Approaches to changing clinical practice

Approach	Theories	Focus	Interventions, strategy
Internal processes	Adult learning	Intrinsic professional motivation	Local consensus Interactive learning in small groups Problem-based learning
Epidemiology	Cognitive	Information seeking, decision making	Evidence-based guideline development Disseminating research findings through courses, mailing, journals
Marketing	Health promotion, innovation, social marketing	Adapt to the needs of target audience	Needs assessment, adapt change proposals to local needs Stepwise approach Dissemination through diverse channels (mass media, personal)
Behavioral	Learning	Control by external stimuli	Audit and feedback Reminders, monitoring Economic incentives, sanctions
Social interaction	Social learning and innovation, based on social influence/power	Influence of significant peers/role models	Peer review in local networks Outreach visits, individual instruction Opinion leaders Key people in social networks Patient-mediated interventions
Organizational	Management and system	Structural and organizational conditions to improve care	Reengineering the process of care Total quality management/continuous quality improvement Team building Enhancing leadership Change structures, tasks
Coercive	Economic power and learning	Control and pressure, external motivation	Regulations, laws Budgeting, contracting Licensing, accreditation Complaints/legal procedures

Adapted from Grol [90]

ities of implementation. Profiling (identifying the right person willing to implement a clinical guideline) and detailing (training, support, and follow-up) are still essential. In 1992, Grol described a series of views to change behavior [70]:

- Awareness about the existence of the clinical guideline, interest, and commitment
- Understanding its purpose and contents, recognition of personal gaps or deficiencies, the need to change and improve
- A positive attitude; confidence in performance and success
- Initial and sustained implementation "in the real world", identification and addressing barriers and obstacles [70]

An extensive review about implementation of clinical guidelines in pulmonary medicine addressed the complexities of physician's behavior and the influence of background, ethics, beliefs, and exposure to countless formal and informal guidelines as part of professional training [78–89]. One of these articles stated that (1) education in small doses is ineffective, because it pales in comparison with previous years or decades of education received by physicians; (2) usual methods of passive dissemination are unsuccessful to effect behavior change; (3) multiple strategies are more effective than isolated interventions; (4) implementation "by decree" doesn't work; (5) reminders have shown to be effective; and (6) disregard of situational and environmental factors, pre-existing structure and process deficiencies in health care and the delusion that guidelines by themselves "will improve the situation" are very prevalent [80]."

Grol and colleagues published a classical report about professional barriers to implement clinical guidelines and proposed approaches to change physician behavior (Table 21.2) [90].

In their conclusions, they stated that "when people are planning changes they often adopt a naïve and opportunistic attitude…a strategy is usually chosen quickly and often does not produce the expected results…our understanding of the crucial processes determining whether change will be achieved is still limited [90]."

Clinical Guidelines and Implementation Science

Despite the limited impact of multiple efforts including national standards, norms and regulations, traditional continuing medical education, consensus conferences to influence clinical practice, and waste of time and resources from uncoordinated, decentralized development of guidelines, all these faulty strategies are still preferred and supported [91]. Development, implementation, and evaluation of national

clinical guidelines are very difficult. Local adaptation and effective implementation strategies are keys to success [92]. Gagliardi and colleagues developed and implemented a format that would influence the use of clinical guidelines and examine their contents and dissemination [93]. They found that encouraging their use involves:

1. Easy access
2. Authorship familiarity and trustworthy
3. Short and concise recommendations
4. Additional tools such as checklists, standard orders, summaries, algorithms, diagrams, color-coded tabs, and pocket cards
5. Printed and electronic formats
6. Strong supporting evidence
7. Flexibility of recommendations to the local context
8. Suitability to patient's needs and preferences; auxiliary documents for patients such as leaflets
9. Clinical vignettes describing patient needs and preferences
10. Explicit resource implications
11. Tools to collect evaluative data

In 2013 Grol, Wensing, Eccles, and Davis published a review about the elements of implementation and their effects on quality of health care [94]. In the basic principles of their landmark book, they stated that changes in the organization of institutions or practices can be very important, but improvement of agents of change, including doctors and health professionals, is essential to optimize patient care in terms of quality, safety, and quality improvement [94].

Crossing the Professional Abyss

Despite the current enthusiasm driving the creation of countless clinical guidelines, a large level of unwarranted variation in clinical practice persists even when guidelines based on reputable evidence are available [95]. Clinical guidelines frequently do not affect clinical practice or health outcomes. A national survey of a random sample of members of the American College of Physicians showed that although physicians recognized their potential benefits, many were concerned about the possible effects on clinical autonomy, health-care costs, and satisfaction with clinical practice [96]. Many physicians argue that clinical guidelines are being used for cost containment, instead to improve the quality of care [92, 97]. The potential inability of guidelines to be translated to clinical practice undermines their role as strategies for quality improvement, cost containment, and health system reform [98].

Multiple studies have confirmed the lack of adherence to clinical guidelines by physicians and failure to change clinical practice. Frolkis and colleagues showed that physicians are poorly compliant with clinical guidelines for cholesterol control even in patients at high risk of coronary heart disease. Only 50% of the time they request LDL cholesterol measurements, screening for additional risk factors (hypertension, smoking, diabetes) is suboptimal, and many patients remain untreated [99]. A systematic review by Choudry and associates showed an inverse relationship between the number of years in clinical practice and quality of care: more experience is not associated with better clinical outcomes [100]. Despite the efforts to develop non-biased, evidence-based guidelines, implementation is low, professional compliance is inadequate, and long-term follow-up is limited [101–103]. If patients will benefit from the results of clinical trials, all the steps between research and clinical practice must be effectively delivered. Unfortunately, multiple weaknesses occur at all these steps [104]. Medical factors or barriers reducing adoption or compliance with clinical guidelines include [105–108]:

1. Disregard by physicians and health professionals expected to implement them, lack of familiarity or awareness
2. Factors related to the conservative nature of physicians, including the innovation itself, communication channels, length of time, and characteristics of members of the social environment [108]
3. Individualistic physician judgment resulting in:
   (a) Lack of agreement with specific guidelines
   (b) Lack of agreement with guidelines in general
   (c) Lack of outcome expectancy
   (d) Lack of self-efficacy
   (e) Lack of motivation, clinical inertia
4. Autonomous groups reluctant to introduce innovations or improvements
5. Wandering teams, loss or absence of leadership
6. Overemphasis on the guideline and failure to consider implementation
7. Deficiencies in implementation, poor planning, communication
8. Deficiencies in health-care systems
9. Fragmented information from fragmented groups or institutions
10. Lack of time, poor allocation of resources, and lack of resources
11. Patient factors
    (a) Changes in clinical status
    (b) Patient preferences
12. Plain refusal, "loose cannons"
13. Undetermined reasons

Adoption of clinical guidelines depends on (1) awareness and knowledge about their existence, (2) agreement and self-

efficacy, (3) complexity of structure and sequence, (4) frequency of reminders, (5) self-reported effect in personal versus actual performance and outcomes and measurable improvements in quality of health care, (6) incentives, and (7) removal of disincentives [96, 109–112]. To succeed, physicians, health professionals, and institutions must participate actively in the development of guidelines and commit to their use, and patients should be aware and willing to follow their recommendations [111]. Expectations about their impact on patient care differ and depend on the people involved: physicians and health professionals, payers, administrators, or politicians. The main potential benefit of clinical guidelines is their capacity to improve the outcomes of medical care through intermediate steps of changing knowledge, attitudes, and behavior. As a methodology for process management, adherence to clinical guidelines is the result of a dynamic process influenced by multiple contextual factors, including the barriers and facilitators previously discussed [111].

The development of clinical guidelines has become crucial. They have become a familiar part of clinical practice, but they also have potential benefits and harms [112–113]. Rigorously developed, evidence-based guidelines minimize potential harms and improve the quality of health care [113]. The worldwide interest in clinical guidelines is based on a series of challenges to health-care systems: (1) increasing demand and costs of technologies and treatment; (2) lack of applicability to address relevant issues of clinical practice, associated chronic diseases, safety and risk management, multidisciplinary collaboration, effect on costs or compliance, and patient self-care; (3) persistence of unwarranted variations in clinical practice; (4) the fact that even when evidence is available, final recommendations often reflect personal opinions, local culture, or vested interests of developers or sponsors; and (5) the intrinsic desire to offer the best possible care [113, 114]. Expectations about their impact depend on the people involved in their implementation: clinicians, patients, payers, administrators, and politicians, but their main goal is still to improve the quality of care [115]. Their main potential risk is to be wrong or erroneous, with resulting harms to patients and everyone [113]. Clinical guidelines are criticized when they become "cookbook recipes" in disregard of the variability of clinical situations [113, 116–117]. In addition of their use to assess clinical effectiveness, clinical guidelines also have ethical consequences: either as instruments to direct medical ethics or because their coercive enforcement for other reasons than the patients' benefit [118–119]. Beyond their increase, clinical guidelines have not eclipsed traditional paradigms based on individual expertise [120–121]. Guidelines are important to improve patient care, but innovations are essential to make them relevant and effective [120]. "Without these changes, they will be seen as expensive but unhelpful and ineffective toys for a happy few [114]."

Evidence-Based Medicine and Clinical Guidelines

> Evidence from modern research has a lot to say about the management of diabetes mellitus.
> R. Brian Haynes and Hertzel C. Gerstein [122]

The origins of evidence-based medicine (EBM) date back to the nineteenth century with the development of the numerical method by Pierre Luis in France but are rooted in the history of medicine 2500 years ago, when Hippocrates declared that physicians "need to rely on actual evidence rather than on conclusions resulting solely from reasoning, because arguments in the form of idle words are erroneous and can easily be refuted [123]." In the 1800s Florence Nightingale used evidence from careful record keeping, observation, and statistical measurement to encourage health-care reform, and Ernest A. Codman advocated data collection, patient follow-up and analysis, and interpretation of patient outcomes to improve care and treatment methods [124]. During the Spanish Civil War and the Second World War, a young British physician named Archie Cochrane worried that his advice to colleagues about treating tuberculosis might not be appropriate and feared that some procedures could be harmful [124]. In 1972, he published an influential book in which he suggested that because resources would always be limited, they should be used to provide the type of health care which had been shown to be effective in properly designed evaluations [125–126]. Cochrane championed using randomized controlled trials because they were likely to provide more reliable information than other sources, and he sparked the interest of those who would continue to put them at the top of the research hierarchy [126]. Randomized trials are not always required, available, or feasible to assess the outcomes of health care, but trials with enough numbers of patients are essential to distinguish between the effects of care and the effects of biases or chance [127–128].

EBM gained momentum in the last century, through collaborative efforts of clinical epidemiologists from Canada, the United States, and Europe. The term EBM was coined in the 1990s to label a clinical learning strategy which the staff of the Faculty of Health Sciences at McMaster University in Canada had been developing for over a decade and that was announced in the first edition of their book about clinical epidemiology in 1985 [129]. Its founding fathers, Guyatt, Sackett, Haynes, Tugwell, and Neufeld, were concerned by the reliance of physicians in "their experience," the use of outdated information to resolve clinical problems, and the absence of evidence about medical paradigms of universal acceptance [129]. In 1992 evidence-based medicine was defined "as a shift paradigm, the conscientious, explicit and judicious use of the best evidence in making decisions about the care of individual patients to integrate individual clinical expertise with clinically relevant research, especially patient-

centered" [130–131]. Evidence-based medicine (EBM) is devoted to replace "expert-based" health care, through translation of controlled clinical trials into everyday practice. EBM practitioners must be able to:

1. Understand the patient's circumstances.
2. Identify knowledge gaps and frame questions to fill those gaps.
3. Conduct efficient literature searches.
4. Critically appraise the research evidence.
5. Apply the evidence in patient care [131].

EBM became a watershed in the practice of medicine and has gained increasing acceptance, despite persisting barriers to its implementation and applicability in every clinical setting. EBM was meant to replace intuitive (medical mythology) and authoritarian (opinion-based) attitudes for an authoritative (evidence-based) approach [132]. Incorporating EBM requires training in the skills of finding and applying evidence to patient care within the medical structures [133]. Barriers to use EBM in practice are multiple, including (1) physician's preferences and expertise; (2) clinical inertia and skepticism about the credibility of the evidence; (3) lack of awareness, familiarity with clinical guidelines, or access to information; (4) the clinical setting, including time constraints and pressures to accomplish more tasks during patient visits; (5) a sense of interference with the doctor-patient relationship; (6) lack of education about its principles and techniques; (7) insufficient resources to integrate it in clinical practice; and (8) clinical status and personal preferences of patients [133–134]. Keeping up with advances in medicine has become extremely difficult for most practitioners; finding the best and most valid evidence for a specific clinical question is frequently impossible [133]. On the other hand, a large part of the evidence for medical science has come under scrutiny for its high rate of inaccuracy and bias [135]. In order to change their practice, physicians require a positive attitude toward EBM and to learn and practice its five steps: (1) ask, (2) access, (3) appraise, (4) apply, and (5) audit [134]. Barriers related to the use of EBM arise from the evidence itself, including absence of useful evidence, excessive, contradictory, or outdated information [134]. EBM needs to evolve from the assumption that all clinicians will adopt the best evidence as soon as it appears in clinical guidelines which they will totally follow, to feasible strategies to achieve optimal, streamlined delivery systems.

In EBM, traditional methods to obtain evidence have been discarded [136]. Evidence needs to be relevant and reliable, but science needs to balance the complexities of clinical knowledge, patient's preferences, and health systems. Main empirical sources of evidence come from observations collected in clinical practice, commonly leading to inaccurate associations and surrogate outcomes not representative of true clinical outcomes. Lohr quoted Millenson and Williamson's statement that "more than half of all medical interventions, and probably as many as 85%, have never been validated by clinical trials [136]". Objective sources of evidence include systematic reviews and randomized controlled trials and international collaborations devoted to develop and implement CPG (Table 21.3).

Evidence-based medical practice has a long history reaching back to the seventeenth century, but it has only been systematically applied in the last 40 years; medical practice and health care in disagreement with EBM remains worldwide ubiquitous, even in diabetes management [155].

Table 21.3 Leading sources to rate evidence

Date	Initials, name, and reference	Description
1979	Canadian Task Force (CTF) on the Periodic Health Examination, Canada [137]	Lifetime program to prevent specific diseases and health promotion. Rate of recommendations: A: Good evidence supporting the recommendation B: Fair evidence supporting the recommendation C: Poor evidence to include the recommendation D: Fair evidence to exclude the recommendation E: Good evidence to exclude the recommendation
1992	The Cochrane Collaboration [138–139]	More than 31,000 contributors from 120 countries, more than 5000 systematic reviews to facilitate and extend the creation of systematic reviews of randomized controlled trials (RCT)
1993	Agency for Health-care Research and Quality (AHRQ), USA [140]	Grading system to reply questions about effectiveness
1996	CONSORT (Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials) statement [141]	Unified statement of requirements to report results of randomized controlled trials. The last version is the 2010 checklist, with 25 items and subitems Six items: Title and abstract Methods Randomization Results Discussion Additional information

Table 21.3 (continued)

Date	Initials, name, and reference	Description
2003	AGREE (Appraisal of Guidelines for Research and Evaluation) collaboration [142–144]	International standard for assessment of CPG Valid and reliable; 23 items, 6 quality domains: Scope and purpose Stakeholder involvement Rigor of development Clarity of presentation Applicability Editorial independence Overall guideline assessment Last update December 2017
2003	STARD (Standards for Reporting of Diagnostic Accuracy) initiative [145]	An initiative to improve accuracy and completeness to report studies about diagnostic tests, potential biases, and generalization 25 items and a flow diagram with information about methods of: Patient recruitment Order of tests Number of patients undergoing the test under evaluation Standard of reference
2004	GRADE (Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development, and Evaluation) working group [146–148]	Appraisal of six prominent systems for grading levels of evidence and strength of recommendations including American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP), Australian National Health and Medical Research Council (ANHMRC), Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine (OCEBM), Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN), US Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF), and US Task Force on Community Preventive Services (USTFCPS)
2007	ORION (Outbreak Reports and Interventions on Nosocomial Infection statement) [149]	22-item checklist to raise the standards of quality on research and publication about hospital epidemiology and infection control. A work in progress for successful promotion and dissemination.
2011	OCEBM (Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine) levels of evidence [150]	Six questions about (1) probability, (2) diagnosis, (3) prognosis, (4) treatment benefits, (5) treatment harms,and (6) screening, with four steps based on quality, imprecision, indirectness, inconsistency, or absolute effect
2011	Clinical Practice Guidelines We Can Trust, by The Institute of Medicine [151]	Eight standards of trustworthiness: Transparency Clear statement of conflicts of interest; chair and co-chair should not have conflict, financial ties creating conflicts should be eliminated Multidisciplinary composition of the guideline development group, including methodology experts, clinicians, stakeholders, and patients Systematic reviews Quality and strength of recommendations Articulating recommendations: actions recommended, when it should be used External review Regular updating
2011	RAMESES (Realist and Meta-Review Evidence Synthesis) statement) [152]	Alternative, extended, and supplementary method to Cochrane-style reviews. Principles of good practice in realist and meta-narrative systematic reviews
2012	WHO Handbook for Guideline Development [153]	Technical aspects to develop a WHO guideline. A methodology to provide a clear path and ensure that guidelines have scientific credibility and meet the WHO criteria for content, methods, and presentation remains accessible and useful
2014	CEPI (Center for Evidence and Practice Improvement), depending on the Agency for Health-care Research and Quality (AHRQ) [154]	A new organization within the AHRQ, consisting of five divisions, one of them the evidence-based practice center devoted to produce evidence synthesis by conducting systematic evidence research and advances in the methods of evidence synthesis to ensure scientific rigor and unbiased view

Clinical Guidelines for Chronic Disease

One decade before the first clinical guidelines for diabetes were published, the challenge to develop recommendations for chronic disease management was addressed by the Joint National Committee (JNC) on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure [156]. The first report was consensus-based, established very high blood pressure targets of control (i.e., diastolic 120 or higher), and claimed that "for patients with lower pressures, there are no hard data on the benefits of therapy [156]." On the bright side, this landmark guideline included a stepped-care approach and addressed the need to facilitate long-term control and to adapt treatment patterns according to type of facility. In an

era of limited choices of antihypertensive medications, the authors of the JNC-1 report recognized the importance of patient adherence as a cause of failure, the need to persuade patients to tolerate untoward effects of medications, and the advantages of combined therapy [156]. After 40 years, the JNC reports became a benchmark for hypertension management worldwide. Subsequent reports evolved along with emerging resources and needs of their time and included new targets of therapy, treatment at different age groups, patient education to maintain adherence, non-pharmacologic interventions, using new drugs, greater patient involvement, quality of life, costs, and management in "special groups," including diabetes [157–163]. An important addition to the JNC reports since 1993 were the rates of awareness, treatment, and control reported by the National Health and Nutrition Examination Surveys (NHANES) [160]. Awareness, medication, and blood pressure measures started to be reported in the 1960s in the United States at the community level and were adopted to measure the quality of hypertension management in multiple countries worldwide [164]. Improvements in these rates are consistent with the decline in disability caused by hypertension and have important implications for reducing health-care costs [166]. Starting in 1997 in the sixth JNC report, the authors used an adapted classification of categories of evidence to support the recommendations [161]. This evidence-based approach was maintained in the seventh and eighth JNC reports and in hypertension guidelines developed in other countries [162–163]. The last chapter in the story of hypertension guidelines was the 2017 American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines Guideline for Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Management of High Blood Pressure in Adults [165]. The ACC/AHA hypertension guideline is an outstanding effort to translate evidence-based medicine in clinical practice. Its supplement contains an updated, comprehensive collection of all the randomized clinical trials, meta-analysis, and observational studies addressing diagnosis, treatment, lifestyle changes, monitoring, and prevention of hypertension in every age group [166]. Clinical practice guidelines for other diseases could probably benefit from these examples.

Evolution of Diabetes Clinical Guidelines

Two pathways converge in the ascent of clinical practice guidelines for diabetes management: the surge of the movement of clinical guidelines in the 1980s and the consolidation of evidence-based medicine with the first randomized clinical trials and afterward with the mega-trials on secondary prevention. In 1989, the American Diabetes Association (ADA) published the first version of its "Standards of Medical Care for Patients with Diabetes Mellitus" [167]. Basic medical care included the initial visit, continuing care, intercurrent illness, and special considerations like hyperglycemic crises, hypoglycemia, pregnancy, hypertension, chronic complications, and foot care, a brief comment devoted to children and adolescents; management in pregnancy and in the elderly was not included [167]. Three years later, the Expert Committee of the Canadian Diabetes Advisory Board published its clinical practice guidelines for the treatment of diabetes [168]. This document was more extensive and included definition and classification and a list of patient-centered goals of care [168]. Beyond glycemic targets, the 1992 Canadian diabetes guidelines proposed the following goals: (1) relieve symptoms, (2) prevent and treat acute and long-term complications, (3) promote self-care, (4) treat accompanying disorders, (5) improve the quality of life, and (6) reduce the morbidity and mortality associated with diabetes [168]. The Canadian guideline emphasized the responsibilities of primary care physicians to diagnose and help patients to attain goals, educate and motivate them, and coordinate care and referrals [168]. The Canadian guideline included explanations about diagnosis and management in adults, children and adolescents, the elderly, native Canadians, and pregnant women [168]. This was probably the first effort to present a standardized approach to diabetes care.

Evidence-Based Medicine and Diabetes Guidelines

Starting in 2002, the American Diabetes Association Standards of Medical Care included a grading system developed by the ADA and modeled "after existing methods [169]. The existing methods are not referred in the text, but the grading system originally appeared in the first report of the Canadian Task Force (CTF) on the Periodic Health Examination in 1979 [170]. With the natural chronological evolution in its components, the grading system became a benchmark to establish three major categories of evidence to assess the effectiveness of interventions:

- I or A: Evidence obtained from randomized controlled trials
- II or B: Evidence obtained from cohort studies
- III or D: Opinions of respected authorities, clinical experiences, descriptive studies, or expert consensus

in which I, II, and III refers to the CTF, whereas ABD represent the ADA grading systems. The ADA included a C level for evidence obtained from poorly controlled or uncontrolled studies [169].

Evolution of Diabetes Guidelines

After three decades, diabetes guidelines expanded their scope and aligned in methodology. Management of hyperglycemia continues to be a priority, as reflected in a highly referenced algorithm published by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD) in 2006 [171]. The ADA/EASD algorithm established a "general" glycemic goal <7.0% according to the results of several controlled clinical trials, including the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT), the Stockholm Diabetes Intervention Study, the UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS), and the Kumamoto Study, which demonstrated that decreasing glycemia effectively reduced microvascular and neuropathic complications [171]. The ADA/EASD algorithm included a brief discussion about lifestyle interventions and a detailed review of the antidiabetic drugs available in the United States, Canada, and Europe, one algorithm to initiate and adjust insulin regimens and another "for metabolic management" with focus on pharmacologic alternatives to achieve A1c goals [171]. The 2009 version of the ADA/EASD algorithm and recent guidelines from other countries maintain glycemic control as the main goal. Table 21.4 summarizes glycemic targets for adults with type 2 diabetes established by institutions or medical societies worldwide.

Table 21.4 Glycemic targets for adults with type 2 diabetes

Year	Organization and reference	A1c	Fasting blood glucose	Postprandial blood glucose
2006	American Diabetes Association [171–173]	<7.0%	<130 mg/dl	<180 mg/dl
2013	Canadian Diabetes Association [174]	<7.0%; to reduce risk of microvascular disease <6.5% to further lower the risk of nephropathy and retinopathy, at the expense of higher risk of hypoglycemia 7.1%–8.5% in patients with limited life expectancy, functional dependency, coronary artery disease, comorbidities, severe, recurrent hypoglycemia, hypoglycemia unawareness, long-standing diabetes in which control has not been feasible	4.0–7.0 mmol/L	5.0–10.0 mmol/L
2015	National Institute of Clinical Excellence, NICE, UK [175]	Agreed, individualized A1c target based on the person's needs and circumstances Pharmacologic treatment if A1c rises to 6.5% on lifestyle interventions	Limited evidence to establish optimal targets	Limited evidence to establish optimal targets
2016	22 Institutes and Academic Centers from China [176]	<7.0%	80–126 mg/dl, 4.4–7.0 mmol/L	<180 mg/dl, <10 mmol/L
2017	International Diabetes Federation [177]	<7.0%; a target between 7.5% and 8.0% may be appropriate: in patients using multiple medications, with reduced life expectancy, cognitive impairment, chronic kidney disease, severe cardiovascular disease, or multiple comorbidities; values above 8.0% are unacceptable		
2016–2018	Royal Australian College of General Practitioners, Diabetes Australia [178]	Individualized according to patient circumstances. General: ≤7.0%	6–8 mmol/l	8–10 mmol/l
2018	American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, American College of Endocrinology [179]	<6.5% for patients without serious concurrent illness and low risk of hypoglycemia >6.5% for patients with serious concurrent illness and at risk of hypoglycemia		
2018	American College of Physicians: Clinical Guidelines Committee [180]	Clinicians should: 1. Personalize goals for glycemic control based on benefits and harms of pharmacotherapy, patients preferences, general health, life expectancy, treatment burden, and costs of care 1. Aim to achieve an A1c level between 7.0% and 8.0% in most patients with type 2 diabetes 2. Consider de-intensifying pharmacologic therapy in patients achieving A1c levels <6.5% 3. Minimize symptoms of hyperglycemia, avoid targeting an A1c level in patients with life expectancy less than 7 years, living in nursing homes, or with severe chronic conditions; harms outweigh benefits in this persons		
2018	Joslin Diabetes Center [181]	<7.0% Alternative A1c goals based upon presence or absence of complications, hypoglycemia unawareness, cognitive status, and life expectancy	80–130 mg/dl	<180 mg/dl

Patients at the Center of Clinical Guidelines

In 2012, the ADA and the EASD updated their position statement recognizing that glycemic control needs to be pursued within a multifactorial reduction framework and that aggressive management of cardiovascular risk factors is likely to have more benefits [182]. Based on the results of three cardiovascular trials, the Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) [183], the Action in Diabetes and Vascular Disease: Preterax and Diamicron Modified Release Controlled Evaluation (ADVANCE) [184], and the Veterans Affairs Diabetes Trial (VADT) [185] showing that not everyone benefits from aggressive glucose management, the authors of the 2012 ADA/EASD position statement stressed the importance of individualizing treatment targets. From this perspective, glycemic targets could be more stringent in newly diagnosed, highly motivated, resourceful adherent patients with excellent self-care capabilities, low risk of hypoglycemia, long life expectancy, absence of comorbidities, and vascular complications, while less stringent efforts should be applied to less motivated, non-adherent patients with poor self-care capabilities, high risk of hypoglycemia, long-standing disease, short life expectancy, severe comorbidities and vascular complications, and limited resources [182]. Clinical decisions should also take into account the patients' values and desires [182]. In the following year, the American Diabetes Association convened an expert forum to discuss the concept of personalized medicine in the wake of the 2012 ADA/EASD position statement [186]. The authors recognized that patients' preferences, life expectancy, disease duration, comorbidities, socioeconomic status, and cognitive abilities play a role in the selection of therapeutic options and targets. They concluded that "one size does not fit all," that patient-centered care and standardized algorithmic management are conflicting approaches, but that they can be made more compatible by recognizing instances in which personalized A1c targets and clinical circumstances requiring co-management by primary care and specialty clinicians are warranted [186]. In this approach, A1c targets range from <7.0% in healthy, motivated, and resourceful patients to 7.5–8.5% in patients with social and educational issues, comorbidities, and complications [186]. Trends to recognize the preeminence of persons with diabetes are changing a paradigm that until recently was focused on glycemic targets that even the best candidates are unable or unwilling to pursue or to achieve.

Diabetes Guidelines at the Crossroads: The Evidence Behind the Evidence

During the last three decades, the importance to address all the components of clinical guidelines, including validity, reliability, reproducibility, clinical applicability, clarity, multidisciplinary process, review, and documentation has been emphasized [187]. Guidelines must adhere to increasingly tougher standards of transparency and objectivity and adopt consistent format to make them accessible for clinicians and patients [188]. These requirements are essential to guarantee that clinical guidelines are trustworthy because they set the standard for medical practice, influencing clinical decisions about patients, practice measures, coverage, and reimbursement [189]. Two pathways currently converge to establish the reliability of clinical guidelines: the AGREE II instrument [142–144] and the Institute of Medicine standards for trustworthiness of clinical practice guidelines [151]. As in other clinical disciplines, diabetes guidelines have been carefully reviewed and appraised [187, 190–191]. Two reviews published by Mülhauser and Meyer [187] and Vigersky [190] showed that:

1. Diabetes guidelines have lower scores compared with guidelines on other chronic diseases.
2. Diabetes guidelines show substantial variations in methodological quality.
3. The role of evidence versus expert opinion remains obscure in most diabetes guidelines.
4. Multiple algorithm complexities including a) lack of evidence about selected A1c cutoff points; b) lack of evidence about the effectiveness of starting triple therapy, in disregard of the risk of drug interactions: c) underestimation of the effectiveness of lifestyle interventions: d) rapid obsolescence: and e) disregard of out-of-pocket costs and the near equivalent effectiveness of most classes of therapeutic agents.
5. Absence of peer review. According to the ADA, "once written by the panel, a consensus statement is not subject to subsequent review and does not represent official Association opinion."
6. The most reputed diabetes guidelines fall short of the ideal in key respects including grading of evidence, complexity of algorithms, stratification of patients, disregard of costs, inflexible glucose targets, absence of peer review, and conflicts of interest.

Quality of Evidence of Diabetes Guidelines and Its Consequences

In 2015 the ADA stated that 51% of the recommendations supporting their standards of medical care were based on higher-level evidence and nearly half of recommendations were still of lower level [191]. Two recent systematic reviews confirm this statement [192–193]. Bouchonville and colleagues reviewed all clinical trials with hard cardiovascular (CVD) endpoints cited in the 2016 ADA guidelines and additional studies analyzing CVD endpoints that were omitted in the ADA guidelines [192]. Analysis of 42 studies showed limitations to interpreting the available evidence regarding

the impact of glycemic control on CVD and mortality [192]. The authors state (1) that it is difficult to ascertain to what extent the reported benefits of glycemic control might be attributable to specific lowering agents or to additional reductions in blood pressure and body composition; (2) observation time of many of these studies is insufficient to draw conclusions about CVD events and mortality; and (3) current multifaceted standards for CVD reduction introduce confounding to control groups when endpoints are affected by other factors independent of glycemic control [192]. In their recommendations, the authors state that "while treatment of individual risk factors in isolation is not associated with proven benefits…treatment of multiple risk factors improves CVD outcomes in people with diabetes [192]." Kruse and Vassar performed a systematic review to analyze their fragility index (FI) and the fragility quotient (FQ) of all the randomized controlled trials referenced in the 2017 ADA Standards of Medical Care [193]. Results of 35 out of 172 analyzed studies showed low risks of bias, overall low robustness, and modest FI and FQ levels; this means that only 16 events were required to reverse the significance of a given result [193]. Loss of follow-up is also important: lost participants may have provided enough data to sway the statistical significance of the trials, rendering the result nonsignificant [193]. Their conclusion is compelling: simply collecting the data on participants who were lost to follow-up could alter not only the results of the study but ultimately *the recommendations that guide treatment* [193]. "If we truly aspire to bring evidence based rather than authority-based medicine to clinical decisions, clinical guidelines must be the product of explicit, rigorous, scientific processes; few are [194]." Most statements including recommendations intended to optimize diabetes care are developed by consensus-based panels that move us back toward authority-based medicine [194].

Conflict of Interest, Magnitude, and Consequences

Of all these issues, probably conflict of interest is the most common. In a review of disclosures, 100% of members of the AACE guideline group had conflicts of interest in 2011, compared with 83% in 2010. A similar review showed that 100% of the ADA/EASD had conflicts of interest in 2011 compared with 83% in the previous year [190]. To address this situation, Bennett and colleagues published a systematic review to assess whether guidelines about oral antidiabetics are consistent with current evidence and if consistency of guidelines depends on the quality of guideline development [195]. Two reviewers screened citations to identify English-language guidelines on oral medications for type 2 diabetes in the United States, Canada, and the United Kingdom [195]. The authors assessed if diabetes guidelines addressed and agreed with seven evidence-based conclusions and independently rated guideline quality using the AGREE instrument (Box 21.2) [196]. The results showed that (1) 11 out of 1118

Box 21.2 Items of the AGREE II instrument

Domain	Item or question
Scope and purpose	1 The objectives of the guideline are specifically described 2 Health questions specifically described 3 The population to whom the guideline is meant to be applied specifically described
Stakeholder involvement	4 The guideline development group includes persons from all the relevant professional groups 5 Views and preferences of target population have been pursued 6 Target users of the guideline clearly defined
Rigor of development	7 Evidence obtained by systematic methods 8 Criteria for selecting evidence clearly described 9 Strength and limitations of evidence clearly described 10 Methods for formulating recommendations clearly described 11 Health benefits, side effects, and risks considered in the recommendations 12 Explicit link between recommendations and supporting evidence 13 External peer review before publication 14 Updating procedure
Clarity of presentation	15 Specific, nonambiguous recommendations 16 Management options clearly described 17 Key recommendations easily identifiable
Applicability	18 Facilitators and barriers to implementation 19 Advice and/or tools to put into practice the recommendations 20 Potential resource implications 21 Monitoring or auditing criteria
Editorial independence	22 The guideline is not influenced by the views of the funding source 23 Competing interests of guideline group members recorded and addressed
Guideline assessment	24 Overall quality rating 25 I would recommend it

Modified from [196]

guidelines met the inclusion criteria, (2) only 3 were peer reviewed, (3) most of them made recommendations based on combinations of expert opinion and literature review, (4) the rigor of development summary scores using the AGREE instrument ranged from 0% to 100%, (5) the risk of bias using the independence domain items of the AGREE instrument showed summary scores ranging from 8.3% to 100.0%, (6) 6 of the 11 guidelines reported conflicts of interest among guideline development members, and (7) guidelines with lower editorial independence scores had also lower rigor of development scores, whereas those with higher quality scores scored higher in both domains [195].

The Quest for Quality in Diabetes Guidelines

The AGREE instrument has become the tool to appraise the quality of clinical practice guidelines for many disciplines, including type 2 diabetes [196]. A recent review from Anwer and colleagues assessed the quality of type 2 diabetes guidelines using the AGREE II instrument [197]. The final analysis included seven guidelines and showed that the two domains with highest scores were 1, scope and purpose, and 4, clarity of presentation. Dominion 3, rigor of development, scored high in three guidelines; dominion 3, applicability (implementation), scored high in three guidelines, and six guidelines declared editorial independence. In overall assessment, one guideline was recommended without changes, while six were recommended as long as they were modified according to the health-care context in which they would be implemented [197]. The study addressed the need of clinicians to recognize high-quality, trustworthy diabetes guidelines among the huge amount of available guidelines and the importance of the AGREE II instrument in their design to assess their quality [197]. The methodological quality of diabetes guidelines continues to be disappointingly low and needs to be improved for the benefit of all involved: clinicians, stakeholders, and patients [198].

Challenges and Opportunities Implementing Diabetes Guidelines

Developing high-quality diabetes guidelines and evidence-based medicine is not a guarantee to improve clinical practice. Adherence rates to diabetes guidelines and clinical inertia among physicians are still very low 20 years after it was addressed by El-Kebbi and colleagues [199]. Less than 50% of patients treated by general physicians receive eye examinations, electrocardiograms, A1c measurements, and screening for microalbuminuria [200]; despite favorable attitudes toward guidelines, their use is limited, with only one third report using them often or very often [201]; even at teaching hospitals, treatment targets for A1c, blood pressure, and LDL cholesterol are not met [202]. Non-compliance with clinical guidelines is as high as 70% and occurs across most disciplines and countries [203]. Even in countries with long-standing traditions of using clinical guidelines like the Netherlands, 35% of primary care physicians reported difficulties in changing personal routines, and 6% admitted to being resistant to adhering with clinical guidelines [203]. Multiple arguments to explain physician non-compliance with clinical guidelines have been presented including awareness, complexity, disagreement with contents, overconfidence, time pressures, difficulties in changing clinical practice, and fragmentation of care [203]. Strategies used to implement and improve adherence to diabetes guidelines involve multifaceted interventions directed to practitioners, health professionals, and patients such as audit, feedback, training, and problem-based learning [204–206]. All these interventions combined have shown significant improvements in adherence to diabetes guidelines and the process of diabetes care. Advances in the implementation of diabetes guidelines continue to be reported, mostly in Australia, the United States, and Europe [207]. The challenge resides in the need to receive long-term funding and support to achieve intermediate and long-term clinical outcomes.

New Approaches Beyond Glycemic Targets

Diabetes outpatient management is complex and goes beyond glycemic targets. The analysis of the Steno-2 study demonstrated that intensified multifactorial intervention was more effective to slow progression of retinopathy, nephropathy and neuropathy, macro- and microvascular events, and cardiovascular and overall mortality; increases median life length over 21 years follow-up; and is more cost-effective than conventional treatment [208–212]. Resources for self-monitoring of blood glucose and communication technologies for patient coaching and support have created alternatives to intensify and adjust diabetes management. By comparison, type 2 diabetes management algorithms establish rational sequences for introducing, adjusting, or intensifying pharmacologic alternatives from lifestyle changes to multiple insulin doses every 3 months, reinforcing the need to wait and contributing to clinical inertia [213]. A key barrier to treatment intensification is lack of communication between patients and physicians that would allow patients to understand the consequences of their diagnosis and become engaged in treatment [214]. Despite the universally agreed influence of patients in the outcomes, patient involvement in guidelines is poor, information about lifestyle changes, and diabetes education and nutrition counseling is scarce or absent in type 2 diabetes guidelines [215–216]. Patient and public involvement is highlighted in

multiple guidelines. The third standard of the Institutes of Health emphasizes that guideline development groups should include populations impacted by the guideline and states that "patient and public involvement should be facilitated by including a current or former patient and a patient advocate or patient/consumer organization representative on the guideline development group [215].

Conclusions

The challenges of diabetes management are increased by the complexities of the life of persons with diabetes. Glucose, blood pressure, and lipoproteins are essential targets of therapy, but competing health, social, and economic priorities also have to be addressed. Comorbidity rates in the general population and in persons with diabetes are increasingly higher; some, like cancer, heart failure, or arthritis, are clearly dominant and influential over every aspect of diabetes care and life expectancy [217]. The importance of comorbidities has been recognized and recently addressed in diabetes guidelines [218–219]. Current guidelines focus on individual diseases in isolation; in caring for people with comorbidities, it would be more helpful to develop guidelines that summarized and cross-referenced all the possible recommendations to a particular patient [218]. Assessment of comorbidities has been included as part of the medical evaluation in the 2018 edition of the ADA Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes [220]. Comorbidity is already prevalent and will become more frequent as the population ages and survival from acute disease improves [218]. Developing diabetes guidelines has become increasingly challenging: treatment algorithms need to be personalized and comprehensive at the same time; the individual approach is disconnected with the realities and demands of clinical practice. Although seemingly impossible, new approaches have shown that it is feasible to create personalized, down-to-earth clinical guidelines for type 2 diabetes [220]. The Clinical Guidelines Committee of the American College of Physicians (ACP) and the US Department of Defense recently presented two innovative approaches: instead of glycemic targets, the first statement of the ACP guidance recommends that "clinicians should personalize goals for glycemic control on the basis of a discussion of benefits and harms of pharmacotherapy, patients' preferences, patients' general health and life expectancy, treatment burden and costs of care [180]." Addressing these usually "invisible" factors is decisive to at least explore the possibility to accept and adhere to clinical recommendations. The clinical guideline of the US Department of Veterans provides a detailed algorithm in which before deciding the first pharmacologic alternative, glycemic control should take into consideration the patient's age, reproductive status, comorbidities (including an extensive list of the most important), adverse effects and contraindications of medications, history of severe hyper- or hypoglycemia, social determinants of health, and providing understandable diabetes education [221].

Traditional ABCs of management (A1c, blood pressure, cholesterol) have been expanded and should also include other elements of management: D, diabetes education; E, eye examinations; F, foot examination; G, glucose monitoring; H, health maintenance; and I, indications for special care [222]. Traditional diabetes guidelines stress that patients should receive health care from interdisciplinary teams including physicians, nurse practitioners, physician assistants, nurses, dietitians, exercise specialists, pharmacists, dentists, podiatrists, and mental health professionals, and patients must assume an active role in their care. Fulfilling these recommendations escapes the realities of everyday diabetes care, even in developed, more resourceful countries like Switzerland, where 32% of patients with type 1 diabetes and 44% achieve A1c levels below 7.0% and also low levels of LDL cholesterol [223]. Support for continuing implementation of diabetes guidelines among primary care practitioners is essential to improve the perspectives and reduce the suffering of the increasingly large number of persons with diabetes across the world. Even in good-performing health systems, room for improvement is huge [224].

Multiple Choice Questions

1. According to the American Diabetes Association guideline, the goal for A1c levels in patients with type 2 diabetes is:
   (a) <6.0%
   (b) <6.5%
   (c) <7.0%
   (d) <7.5%
   (e) <8.0%
2. According to the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists guideline, the goal for blood pressure in patients with diabetes is:
   (a) ≤140/90 mm Hg
   (b) <140/80 mm Hg
   (c) <130/90 mm Hg
   (d) <130/80 mm Hg
   (e) <120/80 mm Hg
3. According to the Joslin Guideline, the goal for LDL cholesterol in patients with type 2 diabetes and atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease is:
   (a) < 70 mg/dl
   (b) <100 mg/dl
   (c) <130 mg/dl
   (d) <160 mg/dl
   (e) <200 mg/dl

4. One of the primary goals of clinical guidelines is:
   (a) To promote the use of new medications.
   (b) To establish medical consensus.
   (c) To increase medical knowledge.
   (d) Create norms to be followed.
   (e) To improve the quality of health care.
5. In order to improve the quality of care, clinical guidelines pursue:
   (a) Reducing the unjustified variation of medical care.
   (b) Guarantee obtaining the necessary resources.
   (c) Treating all patients in tertiary care facilities.
   (d) Total patients' compliance.
   (e) Reinforce the role of physicians in chronic care management.
6. One major challenge of clinical guidelines is:
   (a) Adoption and implementation
   (b) Compliance of patients
   (c) Obtaining the required resources
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
7. Implementation of clinical guidelines is associated with all of the following, except:
   (a) Awareness about its existence
   (b) Understanding its purpose and contents
   (c) Recognition of personal gaps and deficiencies
   (d) Publication in a leading medical journal
   (e) Confidence in performance and success
8. Encouraging the use of clinical guidelines involves:
   (a) Easy access
   (b) Additional tools including checklists or algorithms
   (c) Strong supporting evidence
   (d) Flexibility of recommendations to the local context
   (e) All of the above
9. Medical factors or barriers reducing adoption of clinical guidelines include:
   (a) Disregard of physicians expected to implement them
   (b) The conservative nature of physicians
   (c) Autonomy and reluctance to innovate or improve
   (d) Absence of leadership
   (e) All of the above
10. Currently, most diabetes guidelines:
    (a) Are high-quality, evidenced-based
    (b) Are high-quality, consensus-based
    (c) Are medium-quality, evidence-based
    (d) Are low-quality, evidence-based
    (e) Are low-quality, consensus-based

Correct Answers

1. (c) <7.0%
2. (d) <130/80 mm Hg
3. (a) <70 mg/dl
4. (e) To improve the quality of health care.
5. (a) Reducing the unjustified variation of medical care.
6. (a) Adoption and implementation
7. (d) Publication in a leading medical journal
8. (e) All of the above
9. (e) All of the above
10. (e) Are low-quality, consensus-based

References

1. Glover JA. The incidence of tonsillectomy in school children. Int J Epidemiol. 2008;37:9–19.
2. Brownlee S. From Pariah to Pioneer. Dartmouth Med. Fall, 2013:22–9.
3. Brownlee S. Overtreated. Why too much medicine is making us sicker and poorer. Bloomsbury: New York; 2007.
4. Wennberg JE. Forty years of unwarranted variation – and still counting. Health Policy. 2014;114:1–2.
5. Wennberg JE. Tracking medicine. A researcher's quest to understand health care. New York: Oxford University Press; 2010.
6. Wennberg J, Gittelsohn A. Small area variations in health care delivery: a population-based health information system can guide planning and regulatory decision making. Science. 1973;182:1102–8.
7. Wennberg J, Gittelsohn A. Variations in medical care among small areas. Sci Am. 1982;246:120–34.
8. Chassin MR, Brook RH, Park RE, Keesey J, Fink A, Kosecoff J, et al. Variations in the use of medical and surgical services by the Medicare population. N Engl J Med. 1986;314:285–90.
9. Gittelsohn A, Powe NR. Small area variations in health care delivery in Maryland. Health Serv Res. 1995;30:295–317.
10. Pasley B, Gibson G, McCauley M, Andoh J. Geographic variations in elderly hospital and surgical discharge rates, New York State. Am J Public Health. 1987;77:679–84.
11. Mackenbach JP. Regional differences in the frequency of various common surgical procedures, 1985. Ned Tijdschr Geneeskd. 1990;134:953–7.
12. Welch WP, Miller ME, Welch HG, Fisher ES, Wennberg JE. Geographic variation in expenditures for physicians' services in the United States. N Engl J Med. 1993;328:621–7.
13. Birkmeyer JD, Reames BN, McCulloch P, Carr AJ, Campbell WB, Wennberg JE. Understanding of regional variation in the use of surgery. Lancet. 2013;382:1121–9.
14. Koval KJ, Lurie J, Zhou W, Sparks MB, Cantu RV, Sporer SM, Weinstein J. Ankle fractures in the elderly: what you get depends on where you live and who you see. J Orthop Trauma. 2005;19:635–9.
15. Detsky AS. Regional variation in medical care. N Engl J Med. 1995;333:589–90.
16. Fuchs VR. More variation in use of care, more flat-of-the curve medicine. Health Aff. 2004;Suppl Variation:VAR104–7.
17. Eddy DM. Clinical policies and the quality of clinical practice. N Engl J Med. 1982;307:343–7.
18. Brook RH. Practice guidelines and practicing medicine. Are they compatible? JAMA. 1989;262:3027–30.
19. No authors listed. Guidelines for doctors in the new world. Lancet, 1992;339:1197–1198.
20. Onion CWR, Walley T. Clinical guidelines: development, implementation, and effectiveness. Postgrad Med J. 1995;71:3–9.
21. Manchikanti L. Evidence-based medicine, systematic reviews, and guidelines in interventional pain management, part I: introduction and general considerations. Pain Physician. 2008;11:161–86.
22. Mullan F, Jacoby I. The town meeting for technology. The maturation of consensus conferences. JAMA. 1985;254:1068–72.

23. Grant WR. Critical pathways in medicine. Proc Roy Soc Med. 1970;63:671–3.
24. Pearson SD, Goulart-Fisher D, Lee TH. Critical pathways as a strategy for improving care: problems and potential. Ann Intern Med. 1995;123:941–8.
25. Greenfield S, Lewis CE, Kaplan SH. Peer review by criteria mapping: criteria for diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med. 1975;83:761–70.
26. Coffey RJ, Richards JS, Remmert CS, LeRoy SS, Schoville RR, Baldwin PJ. An introduction to critical paths. Qual Manag Health Care. 1992;1:45–54.
27. Field MJ, Lohr KN. Guidelines for clinical practice. From development to use. Washington, D.C.: National Academies Press; 1992.
28. Agency for Health Care Policy Research. Using clinical practice guidelines to evaluate quality of care. Rockville Maryland AHCPR Pub., No. 95–0045. 1995.
29. Margolis CZ. Clinical practice guidelines: methodological considerations. Int J Quality Health Care. 1997;9:303–6.
30. Huttin C. The use of clinical guidelines to improve medical practice: main issues in the United States. Int J Qual Health Care. 1997;9:207–41.
31. Eddy DM. Practice policies – what are they? JAMA. 1990;263:877–80.
32. Eddy DM. Practice policies: where do they come from? JAMA. 1990;263:1265, 1269, 1272, 1275.
33. Eddy DM. Practice policies- guidelines for methods. JAMA. 1990;263:1839–41.
34. Eddy DM. Guidelines for policy statements: the explicit approach. JAMA. 1990;263:2239–40, 2243.
35. Eddy DM. Designing a practice policy. Standards, guidelines and options. JAMA. 1990;263:3077, 3081, 3084.
36. Eddy DM. Assessing health practices & designing practice policies. The explicit approach. American College of Physicians: Philadelphia PA; 1992. p. 1–126.
37. Agency for Health Care Policy and Research. Clinical guideline development. Rockville: Agency for Health Care Policy and Research; 1990.
38. Woolf SH. Manual for clinical practice guideline development: a protocol for expert panels convened by the Office of the Forum for quality and effectiveness in health care. Rockville: DHHS, PHS, Agency for Health Care Policy and Research (AHCPR) Center for Research Dissemination and Liaison; 1991.
39. Spernak SM, Budetti PP, Zweig F. Use of language in clinical practice guidelines. Rockville: Center for Health Policy Research; 1992.
40. Department of Veterans Affairs. Veterans Health Administration. Roles and definitions for clinical practice guidelines and clinical pathways. Washington, D.C.; 1996.
41. Kirk JK, Michael KA, Markosky SJ, Restino MR, Zarowitz BJ. Critical pathways: the time is here for pharmacist involvement. Pharmacotherapy. 1996;16:723–33.
42. Ritchie JL, Forrester JS, Fye WB. 28th Bethesda conference: practice guidelines and the quality of care. JACC. 1997;29:1125–79.
43. Jackson R, Feder G. Guidelines for clinical guidelines. A simple, pragmatic survey for guideline development. BMJ. 1998;317:427–8.
44. Investigations JD. How to get from guidelines to protocols. Firstly, collect the right data. BMJ. 1991;303:323–4.
45. Woolf SH. Practice guidelines: a new reality in medicine. I Recent developments. Arch Intern Med. 1990;150:1811–8.
46. Woolf SH. Practice guidelines, a new reality in medicine. II Methods of developing guidelines. Arch Intern Med. 1992;152:946–52.
47. Feder G. Which guidelines to follow? BMJ. 1994;308:470–1.
48. Hadorn DC, Baker D, Hodges JS, Hicks N. Rating the quality of evidence for clinical practice guidelines. J Clin Epidemiol. 1996;49:749–54.
49. Guallar E, Laine C. Controversy over clinical guidelines: listen to the evidence, not the noise. Ann Intern Med. 2014;160:361–2.
50. Woolf SH. Do clinical practice guidelines define good medical care? The need for good science and the disclosure of uncertainty when defining "best practices". Chest. 1998;113:166S–71S.
51. Shekelle PG, Woolf SH, Eccles M, Grimshaw J. Developing guidelines. BMJ. 1999;318:593–6.
52. Every NR, Hochman J, Becker R, Kopecky S, Cannon CP. Critical pathways. A review. Circulation. 2000;101:461–5.
53. Berg AO, Atkins D, Tierney W. Clinical practice guidelines in practice and education. J Gen Int Med. 1997;12(suppl 2):S25–33.
54. Sox HC, Sox CH, Tompkins RK. The training of physician's assistants: the use of a clinical algorithm system for patient care, audit of performance and education. N Engl J Med. 1973;288:818–24.
55. Sox HC. On standardization of clinical algorithms. Proposal for clinical algorithm standards. Med. Decis Making. 1992;12:149–54.
56. Weingarten S. Practice guidelines and prediction rules should be subject to careful clinical testing. JAMA. 1997;277:1977–8.
57. Berwick DM. Continuous improvement as an ideal in health care. N Engl J Med. 1989;320:53–6.
58. Heffner JE, Alberts M, Irwin R, Wunderink R. Translating guidelines into clinical practice. Recommendations to the American College of Chest Physicians. Chest. 2000;118:70S–3S.
59. Eccles M, Mason J. Executive summary. How to develop cost-conscious guidelines. Health Technol Assess. 2001:5(16).
60. Haycox A, Bagust A, Walley T. Clinical guidelines-the hidden costs. BMJ. 1999;318:391–3.
61. Eccles MP, Grimshaw JM, Shekelle P, Schünemann J, Woolf S. Developing clinical practice guidelines: target audiences, identifying topics for guidelines, guideline group composition and functioning and conflicts of interest. Implement Sci. 2012;7:60.
62. Grimshaw JM, Russell IT. Achieving health gain through clinical guidelines II: ensuring guidelines change medical practice. Qual Health Care. 1994;3:45–52.
63. Eccles M, Freemantle N, Mason J. North of England evidence based guidelines development project: methods of developing guidelines for efficient drug use in primary care. BMJ. 1998;316:1232–5.
64. Weingarten S. How to judge practice guidelines. WJM. 1999;170:352.
65. Barton S. Using clinical evidence. Having the evidence in your hand is just a start – but a good one. BMJ. 2001;322:503–4.
66. Shekelle PG, Ortiz E, Rhodes S, Morton SC, Eccles MP, Grimshaw JM, Woolf SH. Validity of the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality clinical practice guidelines. How quickly do clinical guidelines become outdated? JAMA. 2001;286:1461–7.
67. Shekelle P, Eccles J, Grimshaw JM, Woolf SH. When should clinical guidelines be updated? BMJ. 2001;323:155–7.
68. Woolf S, Schünemann HJ, Eccles MP, Graimshaw JM, Shekelle P. Developing clinical practice guidelines: types of evidence and outcomes; values and economics, synthesis, grading, and presentation and deriving recommendations. Implement Sci. 2012;7:61.
69. Shekelle P, Woolf S, Grimsahw JM, Schünemann HJ, Eccles MP. Developing clinical guidelines: reviewing, reporting, and publishing guidelines; updating guidelines; and the emerging issues of enhancing guideline implementability and accounting for comorbid conditions in guideline development. Implement Sci. 2012;7:62.
70. Grol R. Implementing guidelines in general practice care. Qual Health Care. 1992;1:184–91.
71. Feder G, Eccles M, Grol R, Griffins C, Grimshaw J. Using clinical guidelines. BMJ. 1999;318:728–30.
72. Grimshaw J, Freemantle N, Wallace S, Russell I, Hurwitz I, Watt I, Long A, Sheldon T. Developing and implementing clinical practice guidelines. Qual Health Care. 1995;4:55–64.
73. Conroy M, Shannon W. Clinical guidelines: their implementation in general practice. Br J Gen Pract. 1995;45:371–5.
74. Forrest D, Hoskins A, Hussey R. Clinical guidelines and their implementation. Postgrad Med J. 1996;72:19–22.

75. Wensing M, Van der Weijden T, Grol R. Implementing guidelines and innovations in general practice: which interventions are effective? Br J Gen Pract. 1998;48:991–7.
76. Freemantle N. Implementation strategies. Fam Pract. 2000;17(Suppl 1):S7–S10.
77. Gundersen L. The Efect of clinical practice guidelines on variations in care. Ann Intern Med. 2000;133:317–8.
78. Heffner JE. The Overaching challenge. Chest. 2000;118:1S–3S.
79. Weingarten S. Translating practice guidelines into patient care. Guidelines at the bedside. Chest. 2000;118:4S–7S.
80. Smith WR. Evidence for the effectiveness of techniques to change physician behavior. Chest. 2000;118:8S–17S.
81. Slotnick HB. Physicians' learning strategies. Chest. 2000;118:18S–23S.
82. Borbas C, Morris N, McLaughlin B, Asinger R, Gobel F. The role of clinical leaders in guideline implementation and quality improvement. Chest. 2000;118:24S–32S.
83. Ockene JK, Zapka JG. Provider education to promote implementation of clinical practice guidelines. Chest. 2000;118:33S–9S.
84. Curry SJ. Organizational interventions to encourage guideline implementation. Chest. 2000;118:40S–6S.
85. Payne TH. Computer support systems. Chest. 2000;118:47S–52S.
86. Weiss KB, Wagner R. Performance measurement through audit, feedback, and profiling as tools for improving clinical care. Chest. 2000;118:53S–8S.
87. Tillotson GS. Implementation and physician behavior change. An industry perspective. Chest. 2000;118:59S–61S.
88. Crim C. Clinical practice guidelines vs actual clinical practice. The asthma paradigm. Chest. 2000;118:62–64S.
89. Mitchell JP. Guideline implementation in the Department of Defense. Chest. 2000;118:65S–9S.
90. Grol R. Beliefs and evidence in changing clinical practice. BMJ. 1997;315:418–21.
91. Haines A, Feder G. Guidance on guidelines. Writing them is easier than making them work. BMJ. 1992;305:785–6.
92. Durieux P, Ravaud P. From clinical guidelines to quality assurance: the experience of assistance Publique-Hospitaux de Paris. Int J Qual Health Care. 1997;9:215–9.
93. Gagliardi AR, Brouwers MC, Palda VA, Lemieux-Charles L, Grimshaw JM. How can we improve guideline use? A conceptual framework of implementability. Implement Sci. 2011;6:26.
94. Grol R, Wensing M, Eccles M, Davis D. Improving patient care. The implementation of change in health care. London: Wiley-Blackwell; 2013.
95. Morris AH. Developing and implementing computerized protocols for standardization of clinical decisions. Ann Intern Med. 2000;132:373–83.
96. Tunis SR, Hayward RSA, Wilson MC, Rubin HR, Bass EB, Johnston M, Steinberg EP. Internists' attitudes about clinical practice guidelines. Ann Intern Med. 1994;120:956–63.
97. Inouye J, Kristopatis R, Stone E, Pelter M, Sandhu M, Weingarten S. Physicians' changing attitudes toward guidelines. JGIM. 1998;13:324–6.
98. Gorton TA, Cranford CO, Golden WE, Walls RC, Pawelak JE. Primary care physicians' response to dissemination of practice guidelines. Arch Fam Med. 1995;4:135–42.
99. Frolkis JP, Zyzanskii SJ, Schwartz JM, Suhan PS. Physician noncompliance with the 1993 National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP-ATPII) guidelines. Circulation. 1998;98:851–5.
100. Choudhry NK, Fletcher RH, Soumerai SB. Systematic review: the relationship between clinical experience and quality of health care. Ann Intern Med. 2005;142:260–73.
101. De Carvalho FA, Schwamm LH, Kuster GW, Bueno Alves M, Cendoroglo Neto M, Sampaio SG. Get with the guidelines: stroke performance indicators in a brazilian tertiary hospital. Cerebrovasc Dis Extra. 2012;2:26–35.
102. Van Ganse E, Souchet T, Laforest L, Moulin P, Bertrand M, Le Jeunne P, et al. Ineffectiveness of lipid-lowering therapy in primary care. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2005;59:456–63.
103. Kirchoff AC, Drum ML, Zhang JX, Schlichting J, Levie J, Harrison JF, et al. Hypertension and hyperlipidemia management in patients treated at community health centers. J Clin Outcomes Manag. 2008;15:125–31.
104. Renard LM, Bocquet V, Vidal-Trecan G, Lair ML, Blum-Boisgard C. Adherence to international follow-up guidelines in type 2 diabetes: a longitudinal cohort study in Luxembourg. PLoS One. 2013;8:e80162. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0080162.
105. Ellrodt AG, Conner L, Riedinger M, Weingarten S. Measuring and improving physician compliance with clinical practice guidelines. A controlled interventional trial. Ann Intern Med. 1995;122:277–82.
106. DeRosario JM. Overcoming 10 roadblocks to initiating clinical practice guidelines. J Healthcare Quality. 1998;20:23–7.
107. Cabana MD, Rand CS, Powe NR, Wu AW, Wilson MH, Abboud PAC, Rubin HR. Why don't physicians follow clinical practice guidelines? A framework for improvement. JAMA. 1999;282:1458–65.
108. Rogers EM. Difussion of innovations. New York: The Free Press; 1983.
109. Grilli R, Lomas J. Evaluating the message: the relationship between compliance rate and the subject of a practice guideline. Med Care. 1994;32:202–13.
110. Lomas J, Anderson GM, Domnick-Pierre K, Vayda E, Enkin MW, Hannah WJ. Do practice guidelines guide practice? The effect of a consensus statement on the practice of physicians. N Engl J Med. 1989;321:1306–11.
111. Parker DR, Gramling R, Goldman RE, Eaton CB, Ahern D, Cover RT, et al. Physician's perceptions of barriers and facilitators regarding adoption of the National Cholesterol Education Program Guidelines. Prev Cardiol. 2008;11:29–35.
112. Chassin MR. Practice guidelines: best hope for quality improvement in the 1990s. J Occup Med. 1990;32:1199–206.
113. Woolf SH, Grol R, Hutchinson A, Eccles M, Grimshaw J. Potential benefits, limitations, and harms of clinical guidelines. BMJ. 1999;318:527–30.
114. Grol R. Has guideline development gone astray? Yes. BMJ. 2010;340:c306.
115. Woolf SH. Practice guidelines: a new reality in medicine. III. Impact on patient care. Arch Intern Med. 1993;153:2646–55.
116. Parmley WW. Clinical practice guidelines. Does the cookbook have enough recipes? JAMA. 1994;272:1374–5.
117. Dans PE. Credibility, cookbook medicine, and common sense: guidelines and the college. Ann Intern Med. 1994;120:966–8.
118. Annual BMA. Report of council 1987-8. Appendix V: practical guide to medical ethics. BMJ. 1988;296:40,46–7.
119. Berger JT, Rosner F. The ethics of practice guidelines. Arch Intern Med. 1996;156:2051–6.
120. Nigam A. Changing health care quality paradigms: the rise of clinical guidelines and quality measures in American medicine. Soc Sci Med. 2012;75:1933–7.
121. Kahn R. Guidelines: we'll always need them, we sometimes dislike them, and we have to make them better. Diabetologia. 2010;53:2280–4.
122. Haynes RB, Gerstein HC. What evidence? In: Haynes RB, Gerstein HC, editors. Evidence-based diabetes care. BC Decker Inc: Hamilton; 2001.
123. Mountokalakis TD. Hippocrates and the essence of evidence based medicine. Hosp Chronicles. 2006;1:7–8.
124. Kowalski E, Chung KC. The outcomes movement and evidence based medicine in plastic surgery. Clin Plast Surg. 2013;40:241–7.
125. Matthews DR. Wisdom-based and evidence-based medicine. Diabetes Obes Met. 2012;14(Suppl. 1):1–2.

126. Cochrane AL. Effectiveness and efficiency. Random reflections on health services. London: Nuffield Hospitals Trust; 1972.
127. Chalmers I. The Cochrane collaboration: preparing, Maintaning, and disseminating systematic reviews of the effects of health care. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1993;703:156–63.
128. Chalmers I, Dickersin K, Chalmers TC. Getting to grips with Archie Cochrane's agenda. BMJ. 1992;305:786–8.
129. Sackett DL, Tugwell P, Haynes RB. Clinical epidemiology: a basic science for clinical medicine. Little, Brown and Company: Boston/Toronto; 1985.
130. Evidence-Based Medicine Working Group. Evidence-based medicine. A new approach to teaching the practice of medicine. JAMA. 1992;268:2420–5.
131. Guyatt GH, Haynes RB, Jaeschke RZ, Cook DJ, Green L, Naylor CD, et al. Users' guides to the medical literature XXV. Evidence-based medicine: principles for applying the users' guides to patient care. JAMA. 2000;284:1290–6.
132. Paauw DS. Did we learn evidence-based medicine in medical school? Some common medical mythology. In: Geyman JP, Deyo RA, Ramsey SD, editors. Evidence-based clinical practice. Concepts and approaches. Boston: Butterworth Heinemann; 2000.
133. Zipkin DA, Greenblatt L, Kushinka JT. Evidence-based medicine and primary care: keeping up is hard to do. Mt Sinai J Med. 2012;79:545–54.
134. Zwolsman SE, Te Pas E, Wieringa-de Waard M, van Dijik N, Hooft L. Barriers to GPs' use of evidence-based medicine: knowledge and skills, attitude, and external factors. Perspect Med Educ. 2013;2:4–13.
135. Ioannidis JPA. Why Most published research findings are false. PLoS Med. 2005;2:0696–701.
136. Lohr KN. Rating the strength of scientific evidence: relevance for quality improvement programs. Int J Qual Health Care. 2004;16:9–18.
137. Canadian Task Force on the Periodic Health Examination: the periodic health examination. Can Med Assoc J. 1979;12:1193–254.
138. Herxheimer A. The Cochrane collaboration: making the results of controlled trials properly accessible. Postgrad Med J. 1993;69:867–8.
139. Smith R. The Cochrane collaboration at 20. Much has been achieved, but much remains to be done. BMJ. 2013;347:f7383. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.f7383.
140. United States Department of Health and Human Services, Agency of Health Care Policy and Research. Acute pain management: operative or medical procedures and trauma, 107. Clinical practice guideline No 1, AHCPR publication No 92–0023. Rockville: AHCPR; 1993.
141. Altman DG. Better reporting of randomized controlled trials: the CONSORT statement. BMJ. 1996;313:570–1.
142. The AGREE Collaboration. Development and validation of an international appraisal instrument for assessing the quality of clinical practice guidelines: the AGREE project. Qual Saf Health Care. 2003;12:18–23.
143. Brouwers M, Kho ME, Browman GP, Cluzeau F, Feder G, Fervers B, et al, on behalf of the AGREE Next Steps Consortium. AGREE II: Advancing guideline development, reporting and evaluation in health care. Can Med Assoc J. 2010;182:E839–42.
144. https://www.agreetrust.org/.
145. Bossuyt PM, Reitsma JB, Bruns DE, Gatsonis CA, Glasziou PP, Irwig LM, et al. Towrds complete and accurate reporting of studies of diagnostic accuracy: the STARD initiative. Standards for reporting of diagnostic accuracy. Clin Chem. 2003;49:1–6.
146. Atkins D, Eccles M, Flottorp S, Guyatt GH, Henry D, Hill S, et al. Systems for grading the quality of evidence and the strength of recommendations I: critical appraisal for existing approaches the Grade working group. BMC Health Serv Res. 2004;22:38.
147. Atkins D, Briss PA, Eccles M, Flottorp S, Guyatt GH, Harbour RT, et al. Systems for grading the quality of evidence and the strength of recommendations II: pilot study of a new system the Grade working group. BMC Health Serv Res. 2005;23:25.
148. Grades of Recommendation, Assessment, Development, and Evaluation (GRADE) Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ. 2004;328:1490–4.
149. Stone SP, Cooper BS, Kibbler CC, Cookson BD, Roberts JA, Medley GF, et al. The ORION statement: guidelines for transparent reporting of outbreak reports and intervention studies of nosocomial infection. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2007;59:833–40.
150. OCEBM Levels of Evidence Working Group. The Oxford 2011 Levels of Evidence. Accessed 16 June 2014 at: http://www.cebm.net/.
151. Graham R, Mancher M, Wolman DM, Greenfield S, Steinberg E, editors. Clinical practice guidelines we can trust. Washington, D.C.: National Academies Press; 2011.
152. Greenhalgh T, Wong G, Westhorp G, Pawson R. Protocol-realist and meta-narrative evidence synthesis: evolving standards (RAMESES). BMC Med Res Methodol. 2011;11:115.
153. WHO handbook for guideline development. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2012.
154. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). Center for Evidence and Practice Improvement (CEPI). Accessed 11 Aug 2014, at http://ahrq.gov/cpi/centers/cepi/index.html.
155. Luder AS. Evidence-based clinical practice guidelines: what is the evidence? IMAJ. 2011;13:689–71.
156. The Joint National Committee on Detection. Report of the joint National Committee on detection, evaluation and treatment of high blood pressure. A cooperative study. JAMA. 1977;237:255–61.
157. The Joint National Committee on Detection. The 1980 report of the joint National Committee on detection, evaluation and treatment of high blood pressure. Arch Intern Med. 1980;140:1280–5.
158. The Joint National Committee on Detection. The 1984 report of the joint National Committee on detection, evaluation and treatment of high blood pressure. Arch Intern Med. 1984;144:1045–57.
159. The Joint National Committee on Detection. The 1988 report of the joint National Committee on detection, evaluation and treatment of high blood pressure. Arch Intern Med. 1988;148:1023–38.
160. The Joint National Committee on Detection. The fifth report of the joint National Committee on detection, evaluation and treatment of high blood pressure. Arch Intern Med. 1993;153:154–83.
161. The Joint National Committee on Detection. The sixth report of the joint National Committee on detection, evaluation and treatment of high blood pressure. Arch Intern Med. 1997;157:2413–46.
162. Chobanian AV, Bakris GL, Black HR, Cushman WC, Green LA, Izzo JL, et al. The seventh report of the joint National Committee on detection, evaluation and treatment of high blood pressure. The JNC 7 report. JAMA. 2003;289:2560–72.
163. James PA, Oparil S, Carter BL, Cushman WC, Dennison-Himmelfarb C, Handler J, et al. 2014 Evidence-Based Guideline for the Management of High Blood Pressure in Adults. Report from the Panel Members Appointed by The Eight Joint National Committee (JNC 8). JAMA. 2014;311:507–20.
164. Rodriguez-Saldana J. The components in the improvement of quality of health care. In Rodriguez-Saldana J: Quality of health care, from evidence to implementation. New York: Nova Publishers; 2015.
165. Whelton PK, Carey RM, Aronow WS, Casey DE Jr, Collins KJ, Dennison EJ, et al. ACC/AHA/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/AGS/APhA/ASPC/NMA/PCNA guideline for the prevention, detection, evaluation, and Management of High Blood Pressure in adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on clinical practice guidelines. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2018;71(19):e127–248. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2017.11.006.

166. Hypertension. Hypertension 2017 Guideline Data Supplements 1–283. Downloaded on December 12, 2017.
167. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care for patients with diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 1989;12:365–8.
168. Expert Committee of the Canadian Diabetes Advisory Board. Clinical practice guidelines for treatment of diabetes mellitus. Can Med Assoc J. 1992;147:697–712.
169. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care for patients with diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:S33–49.
170. Canadian Task Force on the Periodic Health Examination. The periodic health examination. CMA J. 1979;121:1193–254.
171. Nathan DM, Buse JB, Heine RJ, Holman RR, Sherwin R, Zinman B. Management of Hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy. Diabetes Care. 2006;29:1963–72.
172. Nathan DM, Buse JB, Davidson MB, Ferrannini E, Holman RR, Sherwin R, Zinman B. Medical Management of Hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy. Diabetes Care. 2009;32:193–203.
173. American Diabetes Association. Glycemic targets: standards of medical Care in Diabetes 2018. Diabetes Care. 2018;41(Suppl 1):S55–64.
174. Canadian Diabetes Association Clinical Practice Guidelines Expert Committee. Targets of Glycemic control. Can J Diabetes. 2013;37:S31–4.
175. National Institute of Clinical Excellence NICE. Type 2 diabetes in adults. NICE guideline. Published 2 December 2015. nice.org.uk/guidance/ng28. Downloaded on February 27, 2018 at https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng28.
176. Weng J, Ji L, Jia W, Lu J, Zhou Z, Zou D, et al. Standards of care for type 2 diabetes in China. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2016;32:442–58.
177. International Diabetes Federation. Recommendations for Managing Type 2 Diabetes in Primary Care 2017. www.idf/managing-type2-diabetes.
178. Royal Australian College of General Practitioners. Diabetes Australia. General Practice Guideline of Type 2 Diabetes 2016–2018.
179. Garber AJ, Abrahamson MJ, Barzilay JI, Blonde L, Bloomgarden ZT, Bush MA. Consensus statement by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of endocrinology on the comprehensive type 2 diabetes management algorithm - 2018 executive summary. Endocr Pract. 2018;24:91–120.
180. Qaseem A, Wilt TJ, Kansagara D, Horwitch C, Barry MJ, Forciea MA. Hemoglobin A1c targets for Glycemic control with pharmacologic therapy for nonpregnant adults with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a guidance statement update from the American college of physicians. Ann Intern Med. 2018;168(8):569–76. https://doi.org/10.7326/M17-0939.
181. Ganda OP, Gabbay RA. Evidence-based diabetes management. Joslin Diabetes Center clinical guidelines. Am J Manag Care. 2018;24:SP203–62.
182. Inzucchi SE, Bergenstal RM, Buse JB, Diamant M, Ferrannini E, Nauck M, et al. Management of Hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes: a patient-Centered approach. Position statement of the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of diabetes (EASD). Diabetes Care. 2012;35:1364–79.
183. Gerstein HC, Miller ME, Byington RP, et al. Action to control cardiovascular risk in diabetes study group. Effects of intensive glucose lowering in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358:2545–59.
184. Patel A, MacMahon S, Chalmers J, et al. ADVANCE collaborative group. Intensive blood glucose control and macrovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358:2560–72.
185. Turnbull FM, Abraira C, Anderson RJ, Byington RP, Chalmers JP, Duckworth WC, et al. Intensive glucose control and macrovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2009;52:2288–98.
186. Raz I, Riddle MC, Rosenstock J, Buse JB, Inzucchi SE, Home PD, et al. Personalized Management of Hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:1779–88.
187. Mülhauser I, Meyer G. Evidence base in guideline generation in diabetes. Diabetologia. 2013;56:1201–9.
188. Kuehn BM. IOM sets out "gold standard" practices for creating guidelines, systematic reviews. JAMA. 2011;305:1846–8.
189. Ransohoff M, Pignone M, Sox HC. How to decide whether a clinical practice guideline is trustworthy. JAMA. 2013;309:139–40.
190. Vigersky RA. A review and critical analysis of professional societies´ guidelines for pharmacologic Management of Type 2 diabetes mellitus. Curr Diab Rep. 2012;12:246–54.
191. Grant RW, Kirkman MS. Trends in the evidence level of the American Diabetes Association's "standards of medical Care in Diabetes" from 2005 to 2014. Diabetes Care. 2015;38:6–8.
192. Bouchonville MF, Matani S, DuBroff JJ, DuBroff RJ. Are diabetes guidelines truly evidence based? Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2017;127:70–9.
193. Kruse BC, Vassar BM. Unbreakable? An analysis of the fragility of randomized trials that support diabetes treatment guidelines. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2017;134:91–105.
194. LeFevre M. From authority to evidence-based medicine: are clinical practice guidelines moving us forward or backward? Ann Fam Med. 2017;15:410–2.
195. Bennett WL, Odelola OA, Wilson LM, Bolen S, Selvaraj S, Robinson KA, et al. Evaluation of guideline recommendations on oral medications for type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review. Ann Intern Med. 2012;156:27–36.
196. https://www.agreetrust.org/.
197. Anwer MA, Al-Fahed O, Arif SI, Amer YS, Titi MA, Al-Rukban MO. Quality assessment of recent evidence-based clinical practice guidelines for management of type 2 diabetes mellitus in adults using the AGREE II instrument. J Eval Clin Pract. 2018;24(1):166–72.
198. Radwan M, Akbari Sari A, Rashidian A, Takian A, Abou-Dagga S, Elsous A. Appraising the methodological quality of the clinical practice guidelines for diabetes mellitus using the AGREE II instrument: a methodological evaluation. J R Soc Med Open. 2017;8:1–8.
199. El-Kebbi IM, Ziemer DC, Musey VC, Gallina DL, Phillips LS. Diabetes in urban African-Americans. IX. Provider adherence to management protocols. Diabetes Care. 1997;20:698–703.
200. Fantini MP, Compagni A, Rucci A, Mimmi S, Longo F. General practitioners´ adherence to evidence-based guidelines: a multilevel analysis. Health Care Manag Rev. 2012;37(1):67–76.
201. Birrenbach T, Kraehenmann S, Perrig M, Berendonk C, Huwendiek S. Physicians' attitudes toward use of, and perceived barriers to clinical guidelines: a survey among Swiss physicians. Adv Med Educ Pract. 2016;7:673–80.
202. Bryant W, Greenfield JR, Chisholm DJ, Campbell LV. Diabetes guidelines: easier to preach than to practice? MJA. 2006;185:305–9.
203. Barth JH, Misra S, Aakre KM, Langlois MR, Watine J, Twomey PJ, Oosterhuis WP. Why are clinical practice guidelines not followed? Clin Chem Lab Med. 2016;54:1133–9.
204. Benjamin EM, Schneider MS, Hinchey KT. Implementing practice guidelines for diabetes care using problem-based learning. Diabetes Care. 1999;22:1672–8.
205. Kirkman MS, Williams SR, Caffrey HH, Marrero DG. Impact of a program to improve adherence to diabetes guidelines by primary care physicians. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:1946–51.
206. Pruthu TK, Majella MG, Nair D, Ramaswamy G, Palanivel C, Subitha L, et al. Does audit improve diabetes care in a primary

care setting? A management tool to address health system gaps. J Nat Sci Biol Med. 2015;6:S58–62.
207. Marahrens L, Röck D, Ziemssen T, Kern R, Ziemssen F, Fritsche A. Implementation of the National Guidelines for the treatment of diabetes mellitus type 2 in secondary diabetes centers. Dtsch Med Wochenschr. 2017;142:e131–9.
208. Gaede P, Vedel P, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Intensified multifactorial intervention in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and microalbuminuria: the Steno type 2 randomized trail. Lancet. 1999;353:617–22.
209. Gaede P, Valentine WJ, Larsen N, Jensen GV, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Multifactorial intervention and cardiovascular disease in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2003;348:383–93.
210. Gaede P, Lund-Andersen H, Parving HR, Pedersen O. Effect of a multifactorial intervention on mortality in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358:580–91.
211. Gaede P, Oellgaard J, Carstensen B, Rossing P, Lund-Andersen H, Parving HH, et al. Years of life gained by multifactorial intervention in patients with type 2 diabetes and microalbuminuria: 21 years follow-up on the Steno-2 randomized trial. Diabetologia. 2016;59:2298–307.
212. Gaede P, Valentine WJ, Palmer AJ, Tucker DM, Lammert M, Parving HH, et al. Cost-effectiveness of intensified versus conventional multifactorial intervention in type 2 diabetes: results and projections from the Steno-2 study. Diabetes Care. 2008;31:1510–5.
213. Pimazoni-Netto A, Zanella MT. Diabetes guidelines may delay timely adjustments during treatment and might contribute to clinical inertia. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2014;16:768–70.
214. Reach G, Pechtner V, Gentilella R, Corcos A, Ceriello A. Clinical inertia and its impact on treatment intensification in people with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Metab. 2017;43:501–11.
215. Armstrong MJ, Bloom JA. Patient involvement in guidelines is poor five years after institute of medicine standards: review of guideline methodologies. Res Involv Engagem. 2017;3:19.
216. Hale K, Capra S, Bauer J. Are nutrition messages lost in transmission? Assessing the quality and consistency of diabetes guideline recommendations on the delivery of nutrition therapy. Patient Educ Couns. 2016;99:1940–6.
217. Piette JD, Kerr EA. The impact of comorbid chronic conditions on diabetes care. Diabetes Care. 2006;29:725–31.
218. Hughes LD, McMurdo ET, Guthrie B. Guidelines for people not for diseases: the challenges of applying UK clinical guidelines to people with multimorbidity. Age Ageing. 2013;42:62–9.
219. American Diabetes Association. 3. Comprehensive medical evaluation and assessment of comorbidities: standards of medical Care in Diabetes – 2018. Diabetes Care. 2018;41(Suppl 1):S28–37.
220. Ceriello A, Gallo M, Candido R, De Micheli A, Esposito K, Gentile S, Medea G. Personalized therapy algorithms for type 2 diabetes: a phenothype-based approach. Pharmacogenomics Pers Med. 2014;7:129–36.
221. Conlin PR, Colburn J, Aron D, Pries RM, Tschanz MP, Pogach L. Synopsis of the 2017 U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs/U.S. Department of Defense clinical practice guideline: Management of Type 2 diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med. 2017;167:655–63.
222. Abbate SL. Expanded ABCs of diabetes. Clin Diabetes. 2003;21:128–33.
223. Schimke KE, Renström F, Meier S, Stettler C, Brändle M. Compliance with guidelines for disease management in diabetes: results from the Swiss Diab registry. BMJ Open Res Care. 2018;6:e000454. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjdrc-2017-000454.
224. Harris SB, Stewart M, Brown JB, Wetmore S, Faulds C, Webster-Bogaert S, Porter S. Type 2 diabetes in family practice. Room for improvement. Can Fam Physician. 2003;49:778–85.

Measuring Diabetes Quality of Care: Clinical Outcomes, Cost-Effectiveness, and Patient Experience of Care

22

Patrick J. O'Connor, Jo Ann M. Sperl-Hillen, and Todd P. Gilmer

Chapter Objectives

- To discuss advantages and challenges of measuring quality of outpatient diabetes care
- To identify and discuss key measures of clinical quality of outpatient diabetes care including glucose, BP, lipid, and tobacco control and appropriate aspirin use
- To identify emerging opportunities and challenges related to measurement of patient experience of diabetes care, shared decision-making, and burden of treatment
- To discuss factors that influence the cost-effectiveness of diabetes care and to discuss the cost-effectiveness of diabetes case management and diabetes-related clinical decision support

Introduction

It is widely recognized worldwide that the quality of care provided to those with diabetes mellitus is far from optimal. In order to improve care in an intentional way, it is of paramount importance to identify key aspects of diabetes care quality to target, develop valid measures of care quality to track changes over time, and use these measures to identify specific types of actions and interventions that are most likely to effectively impact diabetes quality and performance measures. Here we will discuss the strength and weaknesses of current measures of diabetes quality of care and comment on current challenges that face those engaged in this effort, either as developers of quality measures or as users of such measures in care delivery settings or in accountability organizations. For the sake of brevity, we will focus on outpatient care of adults with type 2 diabetes and limit our attention in this chapter to measures of selected clinical outcomes, cost of care, and patient experience of care.

Measuring Clinical Outcomes in Outpatient Diabetes Care

Data from the United States suggest that diabetes leads to about a 5-year loss of life expectancy and a 10-year loss of disability-free life expectancy [1, 2]. A key question for both clinicians and public health leaders is to identify effective prevention or treatment strategies that mitigate these losses both at the population level and for each patient we see.

One very effective way to mitigate the loss of life expectancy and disability-free life expectancy from diabetes is to prevent or delay the onset of type 2 diabetes. This is the topic of several chapters in this book, and it is clear from large randomized trials such as the Diabetes Prevention Program and similar programs in Scandinavia and China that both lifestyle interventions and certain pharmacologic agents such as metformin and others are effective in this regard [3, 4]. It is clear that primary prevention of type 2 diabetes is a very high priority for both clinicians and public health policy makers.

Once a patient develops type 2 diabetes, the question becomes how to prevent or delay downstream diabetes complications. Microvascular complications such as retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy with associated pain and amputations affect a high proportion of adults with type 2 diabetes, and the prevalence of these microvascular complications typically increases with duration of diabetes and is exacerbated by inadequate glucose, blood pressure, and tobacco control.

P. J. O'Connor (✉) · J. A. M. Sperl-Hillen
Center for Chronic Care Innovation, HealthPartners Institute, Minneapolis, MN, USA
e-mail: patrick.j.oconnor@HealthPartners.com

T. P. Gilmer
University of California San Diego, San Diego, CA, USA

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_22

However, while trials of intensive glucose and BP control have shown some benefit on onset and progression of these microvascular complications, there is little hard evidence to show an impact on rates of the end-stage microvascular complications such as blindness, end-stage renal disease (ESRD), or amputation [5–7]. Moreover, lifetime occurrence of these end-stage microvascular complications is much lower than is the lifetime risk of a fatal or nonfatal myocardial infarction or stroke in adults with type 2 diabetes [1, 2].

The occurrence of myocardial infarction and stroke in those with diabetes is about twice as high as in those without diabetes, and these major cardiovascular events account for the majority of excess deaths and excess costs attributable to type 2 diabetes [8, 9]. Thus, in measuring quality of diabetes care, it is control of risk factors for microvascular but especially macrovascular complications that should be the focus of attention. In recent years, a composite quality measure often used to assess care of adults with diabetes consists of the proportion of diabetes patients who simultaneously meet all five of these clinical measures: adequate BP control, smoking control, lipid management, glucose control, and appropriate aspirin use. Many experts argue for combining these five measures into a single "composite" measure of diabetes care quality, calculated as the proportion of diabetes patients seen at least once in 12 months in a given care system who meet all five measures (on most recent measure available): non-smoker, A1c <8%, BP <140/90 mm Hg, on a statin unless contraindications or allowed exceptions are present, and aspirin or antiplatelet use if tolerated in diabetes patients with atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease [10]. The box below describes how this composite measure can be implemented.

Explanatory Box: Implementing a Diabetes Composite Quality of Care Measure

Step I: Identify all adult patients with a diagnosis of diabetes and with two or more visits to the clinic in the last 12 months. This is the denominator.

Step II: (a) Classify each patient in the denominator as meeting or not meeting each of these five clinical goals in the past 12 months. (b) If the patient is excluded (criteria for exclusion noted below), they get credit for that clinical goal. (c) If there is no BP measure, A1c test, documentation of aspirin use, or documentation of smoking status within 12 months, they are classified as not meeting that clinical goal.

1. Most recent glycated hemoglobin (A1c) measure done within 12 months is <8%.
2. Most recent systolic BP measure within 12 months is <140 mm Hg.
3. Patient is currently prescribed a moderate- or high-dose statin. (Exclude those with documented statin intolerance and women of child-bearing age.)
4. The patient is on daily aspirin. (Exclude those with no current diagnosis of cardiovascular disease or a documented aspirin allergy or high risk of gastrointestinal bleed or on other anticoagulant.)
5. Patient is currently a non-smoker.

Step III: The patient is counted in the numerator only if they meet all five clinical goals as specified.

Step IV: Divide the numerator by the denominator to calculate the percentage of diabetes patients at the composite diabetes goal.

When this diabetes composite measure was first introduced in 2003 in Minnesota, less than 5% of adults with diabetes in the United States and other regions had all five components at goal. Since then, the proportion of diabetes patients who have all five components at goal has steadily risen to about 40% in the United States, with major variation from less than 10% to about 65% across care delivery systems, individual clinicians, and subgroups of patients.

There are several factors to consider when comparing clinicians, clinics, or delivery system performance using diabetes or other clinical quality measures. First, if the goal is to incent clinicians to improve care, it may be important to adjust the rates of control for socioeconomic or clinical characteristics of patients, if the patient mix varies greatly by care system or across clinicians, as it often does. Otherwise, clinicians who take care of low-income or less educated patients, who may be more difficult to get to clinical goals for a variety of reasons, will be penalized unfairly by the quality measures. This issue is especially important if quality measures are publicly reported or if performance on the quality measures is linked to financial compensation. The counterargument is that adjusting may lead to or reinforce a double standard of care, where lower quality of care for more challenging patient populations is implicitly accepted.

Another consideration related to the use of a composite measure of care is whether to weight the components of the composite measure equally or unequally. Are they all equally important? In the UKPDS study, more intensive glucose control over a 20-year period only extended quality-adjusted life by 90–180 days. In ACCORD and ADVANCE and the VADT trials, intensive glucose control did not extend life at all and in ACCORD led to higher mortality rates [11, 12]. On the other hand, the impact of BP control, lipid control, and tobacco control on life expectancy and major CV events is usually much greater than the impact of glucose control on these outcomes, unless glucose control is especially poor.

Thus, the relative benefit of A1C, BP, lipid, and smoking control varies across patients, and the further from goal a patient is on a given measure (such as A1c, BP, LDL, or heavy tobacco use), the greater the potential benefit will be if effective control is achieved. These considerations would favor a weighted approach to quality measures, with the weight of each component of the composite measure proportional to the potential benefit of that component. In this scenario, one must consider whether the weights should be fixed based on population data (BP, lipid, and smoking control usually confer the greatest potential benefit) or should vary based on the clinical circumstances of an individual patient (in some patients control of very high A1c may confer the most benefit). Technology to enable prioritization of treatment options for individual patients with and without diabetes has recently become available. However, the use of individualized quality of care measures, although logical and potentially useful, is complex to operationalize and therefore has not yet been widely used.

Just as there is wide variation across clinicians, medical groups, and care delivery system in composite measures of diabetes care quality, so too there is wide variation in quality of specific components of the composite measure, such as glucose, BP, lipid, tobacco control, and appropriate sue of aspirin. For example, some clinicians do a good job with glucose control than BP control. Others clinicians may do well with lipids and BP but do poorly with glucose control. There are few studies that investigate in detail at *why* some clinicians do very poorly with glucose or BP control. Variation in the health literacy, numeracy, or overall educational or poverty level of patients can certainly explain some variation in quality of diabetes care across different groups of patients. In assessing variation in quality of diabetes care across clinicians and delivery systems, credibility requires that the analysis be adjusted for differences in patient characteristics.

Another factor linked to variation in quality of diabetes care is a long delay in provider recognition or management of changing levels of glucose, BP, lipids, or other clinical parameters. Deterioration in glucose control, for example, may be due to progression of diabetes, nonadherence to medications, lapses in dietary practices, stress, occult infections, or other factors. When patients well controlled on glucose, BP, or lipids deteriorate, providers who delay investigation of the situation and fail to address underlying reasons and adjust pharmacotherapy in a timely way will, on average, have lower proportions of their diabetes patients at goal [13]. Delayed changes in treatment, often referred to as "clinical inertia," is clearly linked to poor provider performance on key measures of diabetes quality of care.

Some experts refer to measures of the proportion of a provider's diabetes patients who are at a composite goal, or in good control of glucose, BP, lipids, tobacco, weight, and use aspirin appropriately as "accountability measures," because they are often publicly reported on social media. If a provider is doing poorly on these high-level accountability measures, it may be helpful to consider a set of "diagnostic measures" related to key care processes needed to reach glucose, BP, lipid, or other clinical goals. Table 23.1 lists some selected "diagnostic measures" that can shed light not only on why a particular provider may have suboptimal "accountability" measures but also may identify provider-specific improvement strategies or learning inter-

Table 23.1 Examples of variation in percentages of PCP-specific CIOs in study-eligible patients from a larger algorithmically defined set

CIO topic	CIO description	10th	25th	50th	75th	90th	Ratio
Thiazide diuretic underuse	% of patients with uncontrolled BP and adequate renal function not on a thiazide	16.3	18.9	23.1	27.6	30.3	1.9
ACEI/ARB underuse	% of patients with uncontrolled BP who are not on ACEI/ARB use	13.7	15.5	20.0	24.7	27.9	2.0
Use of three or more BP medications	% of patients with uncontrolled BP on three or more medications	1.0	1.9	3.0	4.3	6.0	6.1
Hypertension recognition	% of patients meeting BP criteria without a problem list diagnosis	9.6	12.6	16.0	19.4	23.9	2.5
Use of moderate or high-intensity statins when indicated	% of patients meeting ACC/AHA criteria for statin use with ASCVD risk > = 10% on less than moderate intensity statin	12.6	16.3	23.7	32.3	42.9	3.4
Statin initiation when indicated	% of patients meeting ACC/AHA criteria for statin use but not on a statin	17.1	21.2	27.8	37.3	47.5	2.8
Aspirin underuse	% of patients meeting primary or secondary criteria for aspirin use but not on aspirin	7.5	9.5	13.0	18.2	22.3	3.0
Aspirin overuse	% of patients not meeting primary or secondary criteria for aspirin but on aspirin	5.0	6.3	9.5	12.3	15.9	3.2
Screening for diabetes when indicated	% of patients meeting USPSTF criteria for diabetes screening without tests in 3 years	6.5	9.2	12.6	17.0	20.3	3.1

Columns represent the percentage of patients with each CIO within PCP percentiles and a ratio of CIOs in 90th to 10th percentile PCPs
Abbreviations: *CIO* care improvement opportunity, *PCP* primary care provider, *BP* blood pressure, *ACEI* angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor, *ARB* angiotensin receptor blocker, *ACC/AHA* American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association, *ASCVD* atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, *USPSTF* United States Preventive Service Task Force

ventions to address provider-specific problems in some very specific aspects of care.

In prior work, we have observed a great deal of provider-specific variation in these "diagnostic" measures. This observed variation in patterns of care across providers suggests the potential usefulness of tailoring improvement or learning strategies to provider-specific diagnostic measures that are lower than observed in peer providers. In settings where electronic health records or other sophisticated health information technology is available, collecting such detailed data on specific patterns of care at the provider level is increasingly feasible.

When diagnostic measures can be assessed, it is important to consider the best way to use such information. Many strategies might be considered to provide feedback of this valuable information to providers or to clinic leaders, medical groups, or health-care systems. Several characteristics of such feedback are known to increase its effectiveness, such as timely feedback, providing ongoing feedback over time, including positive feedback with feedback on suboptimal performance, providing feedback to a supervisor as well as the frontline provider, providing feedback in both verbal and written forms, providing feedback that is actionable, and setting specific goals for improvement with repeat measurement to assess progress [14]. Table 23.2 provides one simple format that might be considered when giving provider's feedback on the quality of their patient care.

It is noteworthy that in the United States, quality of care as measured by A1c, BP, lipid, or tobacco control is not usually any better at endocrinology clinics or diabetes centers than it is in primary care settings. One reason for this is that difficult-to-control patients are often referred by primary care providers to specialty centers. But it is also possible that some specialty centers focus so much on glucose control that other key aspects of diabetes care, such as tobacco, BP, and lipid control, may not be addressed.

There are hundreds of "evidence-based" components of diabetes care, but not all are of equal benefit, and the strength of the supporting evidence form randomized trials varies. Thus all evidence-based aspects of diabetes care are *not* suitable for selection as quality measures. It is best to focus attention on clinical domains that have a major direct impact on important health outcomes, have affordable and available management strategies, and can be easily measured. Some readers may feel that including measures of screening for retinopathy, neuropathy, foot ulcer, or nephropathy or referral for diabetes patient education should be prominent diabetes quality measures. But in primary care, there are many diseases, and it may be wasteful of time and resources to assess too many quality measures for a single disease. Don't forget that primary care providers also may be measured on dozens of things besides diabetes care, and too high measurement burden and cost will erode the effectiveness of quality measurement as a strategy to improve care.

It is important to keep in mind that once a clinical measure is adopted as a measure of quality of diabetes care, health-care systems and accreditation organizations tend to focus on measuring and improving that particular aspect of care. In the 1990s in the United States, the first publicly reported diabetes quality measure was retinopathy screening—because in the pre-electronic medical record era, it could be accurate and inexpensively measured from insurance claim data. Delivery systems devoted resources to improving eye exam rates, rather than to improving glucose or BP control—the clinical factors that fundamentally drive retinopathy. The impact of that early quality measure was not to prevent retinopathy but to *detect* it early and treat it with lasers. Available resources were diverted away from better control of glucose and BP—two ways to *prevent* retinopathy. Thus, selection of quality measures may have unfortunate unintended consequences.

Diabetes patient education is an important component of diabetes care and should be offered to all patients periodically but has minimal impact on glucose, BP, lipid, or tobacco control in randomized trials [15]. Thus, although it is important and can decrease distress related to having diabetes, measuring diabetes patient education as a key quality measure is ill-advised. It is better to focus diabetes quality of care measures on control of clinical risk factors that directly drive adverse outcomes, such as BP, glucose, lipid, and tobacco control.

Table 23.2 Prototype content of PPF feedback to PCP and their supervisor, updated every 2 months

Selected care improvement opportunity (CIO) from a set of 30	You're doing better than this % of PCP peers	Number of patients evaluated in past 2 months	% of your patients with opportunity to improve care	
			You now	Your goal[a]
Use thiazide diuretics	8	50	38%	23%
Initiate statin treatment when indicated	11	24	35%	28%
Refer smokers to cessation programs	23	14	24%	16%
Hypertension recognition	71	61	12%	☺ Great job!
Screening for diabetes when indicated	83	33	9%	☺ Great job!
Aspirin underuse	94	17	8%	☺ Great job!

[a]This is performance level of median PCP

Measuring Patient Experience of Care

Diabetes is a complex chronic disease, and clinicians and public health policy makers are faced with the daunting challenge of dealing with a myriad of effects that diabetes may have on many dimensions of a person's life. In addition to its direct biological, psychological, and financial impact on patients, diabetes also may significantly impact the family, friends, employers, and health-care providers of those with diabetes. The social and economic impact of diabetes on direct medical care costs, indirect costs, and workforce productivity is substantial. A fundamental question related to measurement of diabetes quality of care is this: how wide a net do we want to cast? Can we hold the care delivery system accountable for the myriad impact of diabetes on a person's life? Should governments, employers, schools, or nursing homes be held accountable for accommodating the needs of those with diabetes?

There is increasing attention to integration of health care with social services for vulnerable persons or families, which in some cases would include individuals or families who are vulnerable due to diabetes. Diabetes may be associated with increased work absenteeism or presenteeism, decreased income, high medication costs, high health-care costs, and decreases in physical, emotional, and social function. In many communities, social services are available to provide necessary assistance with income, housing, food, safety, or health-care costs. However, integration of social services with primary health-care services is often incomplete, and better coordination of services is often needed. Creative integration of health-care services with government-sponsored or community-based services such as those available through churches or other community-based membership organizations might benefit many patients. Although integration of health-care services and social services may be beneficial for many patients with diabetes, holding clinicians or clinics responsible for delivery of integrated services may not be well accepted by clinicians, and quality measures to measure such aspects of care are yet to be developed.

On the other hand, quality measures that focus on the "patient's experience of care" are increasingly being used in some care delivery systems. The patient's experience of care can be defined to include a number of important factors such as the patient's ability to access necessary health-care services in a timely way, receive clear and comprehensible communication from providers of care, and be satisfied with the clinical care provided.

Some thought leaders have recently proposed that minimizing the burden of care imposed on the patient by their diabetes treatment is a neglected but important aspect of care. For example, treatment with insulin imposes burdens related to blood glucose monitoring, disruption of daily routines, risks of hypoglycemia, and (in some care systems) high out-of-pocket costs for insulin and its delivery equipment. Minimizing the patient's burden of care may improve treatment adherence, participation in timely follow-up care, and perhaps psychological adjustment to diabetes, as well as reduce patient stress [16, 17]. For these reasons, some experts suggest that measuring burden of care is justified and that development of strategies to reduce burden may improve care and adherence and lead to better long-term clinical outcomes [18].

Other important aspects of patient experience of care include patient-centered care and shared decision-making [19]. It is clear that not all evidence-based recommendations are of equal benefit to a given patient at a given point in time. There is strong evidence, for example, that glucose goals should be individualized based on clinical considerations such as risk of hypoglycemia, comorbidity, and age [20–22]. However, quality measurement is complicated by the need to assess patient-specific clinical goals. One possible solution to this problem is to set clinical goals on quality measure that are more generalizable, such as an A1c goal of <8% rather than A1c <7%, to accommodate patient-specific variation in clinical goals.

Shared decision-making is an intrinsic and necessary part of primary care but is too often neglected. One study found that primary care clinicians provided basic information on newly prescribed medications—the name of the medication, its purpose, frequency of dosing, duration of use, and benefits and side effects—only about 20% of the time [23]. This lack of basic information can lead to low adherence to important medications and has been linked to higher mortality rates in some studies [24]. Shared decision-making, however, goes beyond providing such basic information. Shared decision-making involves eliciting a patient's interest in a particular clinical action and co-selection of specific treatments from a menu of available evidence-based choices [25]. When a change in treatment is indicated, the patient should be informed in an honest and comprehensible way of both the benefits and the risks, costs, and burden of the various treatment options.

It is of particular concern that many clinicians (and patients) overestimate, often by an order of magnitude, what the benefits of treatment are. This may be especially true when estimating the benefits of intensive glucose control. For example, in the UKPDS, intensive glucose treatment for about 18 years led to an additional 90–180 days of quality-adjusted life [26]. In the ACCORD randomized trial, intensive glucose control actually increased death rates 18–20% [11, 27]. How many patients, with this information in mind, would opt for intensive glucose treatment? Moreover, depending on their clinical state, many diabetes patients might benefit much more from smoking cessation, BP control, or lipid control, compared to modest improvements in glucose control, especially when A1c is already <8%. The

use of Web-based decision support algorithms and risk equations can be used to accurately estimate and compare the benefits of various evidence-based treatment options [28]. Observing and understanding the treatment preferences of well-informed patients can, in turn, improve our understanding of what factors influence patient treatment preferences, to improve approaches to shared decision-making.

The resources required to systematically assess patients' experience of care are typically much greater than the resources required to measure control of glucose, BP, lipids, and tobacco. Collecting patient-reported information on experience of care, patient-centered care, or shared decision-making may require surveys, conversations, electronic communication, and analysis of verbal or questionnaire data. This can be quite time-consuming and expensive. Although representative random sampling of patients may reduce the resources required for such measures, accuracy may be compromised if sampling is done in a biased way, the response rates are too low, or the sample size is insufficient to draw reliable conclusions.

Nonetheless, there are a number of survey instruments that have been reasonably well validated to measure patients' experience of care, diabetes distress (Problem Areas in Diabetes/PAID), patient-centered care, shared decision-making, and self-efficacy (Diabetes Empowerment Scale/DES); some of these are available in validated Spanish versions [15, 29, 30].

Measuring Affordability and Cost-Effectiveness of Diabetes Care

There are several studies that document that health-care costs of those with diabetes are at least double what the health-care costs are of age- and sex-matched patients without diabetes [8]. The higher costs are driven by several factors, including higher pharmaceutical and equipment costs, more outpatient visits, and more frequent and longer hospitalizations [31]. The length of hospitalization of a wide range of admitting diagnoses is longer in those with diabetes. From the clinical point of view, the major driver of excess, potentially avoidable costs include myocardial infarction, stroke, peripheral arterial disease, end-stage renal disease, and amputation.

Although cost of care is generally higher for those with diabetes, a number of studies indicate that there is wide variation in costs of care not only across nations but also across care delivery systems. This has led many experts to speculate that more attention should be devoted to identifying optimal "care pathways" that combine clinical success with low costs. For example, suppose a patient requires two glucose-lowering agents to achieve their evidence-based glucose goal. The cost to the care delivery system (insurer) for various combinations of effective glucose-lowering medications may vary as much as tenfold depending what medications are selected. Moreover, the out-of-pocket cost to the patient may range from nothing in some systems to substantial in other scenarios. There would seem to be little reason to use more expensive medications, yet clinical guideline recommendations are often authored by clinicians or professional organizations with financial ties to pharmaceutical or device manufacturing corporations that attempt to influence the content of clinical guidelines. In the United States, a recent report emphasizes that these obvious conflicts of interest undermine the credibility of many clinical guidelines. Authors of clinical guidelines are now often required to declare or divest certain financial ties with industry as a condition of guideline authorship [32].

Insulin acquisition costs are another example of variability in cost to the delivery system and in some cases to patients. Recent analysis indicates a 6-fold to 10-fold variation in insulin costs in the United States based on type of insulin (human versus analog) and delivery system (vial versus cartridges). Thus, judicious use of analog insulins, perhaps reserving them for patients at high risk of serious hypoglycemia, could be a policy that substantially lowers costs [33].

The analysis of cost-effectiveness in diabetes care is even more complicated. The threshold of costs per quality-adjusted life year (QALY) that purchasers are willing to pay varies substantially by country, by payer, and by year. The cost of complications such as an amputation or myocardial infarction also varies greatly across nations and across delivery systems within nations. Moreover, pharmaceutical corporations may agree to very different acquisition costs for a given medication in different countries, and within some countries, in different delivery systems. All these factors complicate efforts to accurately estimate cost-effectiveness of diabetes care across time, nations, and delivery systems.

Despite challenges, it is instructive for delivery systems to estimate cost per QALY gained, for various treatment pathways (human versus analog insulin, vials versus per insulin delivery systems, expensive versus less expensive non-insulin glucose-lowering drugs, various scenarios for lipid-lowering treatment strategies, optimal visit intervals, etc.). Doing so, and using these data to identify optimal treatment pathways for various groups of diabetes patients, and to aggressively negotiate drug acquisition costs with suppliers, may well reduce the cost and improve the cost-effectiveness of diabetes care in defined groups of patients.

The recent demonstration that, in addition to metformin, both GLP-1 agonists and SGLT-9 inhibitors may significantly reduce major CV events, CV mortality, and overall mortality will complicate efforts to assess optimal treatment pathways from the cost and cost-effectiveness point of view. The cost-effectiveness of these new medication classes will be driven both by their clinical benefits and by their acquisi-

tion costs. Also important to consider are cost-sharing arrangements with patients, whose ability to bear various levels of out-of-pocket costs typically varies widely by income.

An additional consideration for cost-effectiveness is whether adequate glycemic control can be achieved at the population level with usual care pathways or whether more intensive interventions are needed to achieve glycemic control and control of other clinical risk factors including BP and LDL for a substantive fraction of patients. Intensive interventions that can be implemented at the population level can range from intensive, individual level interventions such as nurse case management combined with peer-led, collaborative diabetes education and self-management training, to Web-based clinical decision support delivered through the electronic health record. Diabetes case management is more expensive at the individual level but has been shown to produce more significant improvements in clinical risk factors including A1c [34]. Clinical decision support requires a substantial initial investment but that can be spread over a large population resulting in low individual level costs, although with smaller clinical effects [35]. These two interventions have been shown to be similarly cost-effective and can be used in a coordinated way.

Finally, it is important to note that the cost-effectiveness of type 2 diabetes prevention has been thoroughly studied, and in most scenarios is cost-saving, whether accomplished via lifestyle change programs or by using medications such as metformin [36]. Very few things in health care are cost-saving, so investments in type 2 diabetes prevention programs are increasingly recognized as a good investment by various private and public care delivery systems.

Summary

Measurement of quality of diabetes care can identify important gaps in clinical care, enable mapping of variation in quality of care across clinicians and delivery systems, and provide useful information needed to guide effective and efficient efforts to improve care. A wide range of measures of diabetes quality of care are available for consideration. Selection of a parsimonious set of measures that are causally related to key clinical outcomes, patient's experience of care, and cost of care may be considered. However, the resources needed for quality measures can be considerable and may vary from relatively low cost for measures that can be extracted from electronic clinical databases to relatively high cost for patient-reported data. Technical issues related to measuring quality of care, public reporting of quality measures, and strategic use of cost and cost-effectiveness measures to help optimize delivery of care to patients and improve clinical outcomes are important considerations.

Concluding Remarks

- Providing measures of diabetes quality of care to clinicians and to the public has been linked to improved quality of diabetes care in many settings.
- Clinicians and care systems often direct available resources to improve what is measured, so selecting measures of care that are directly and strongly linked to major outcomes is imperative.
- Recent data indicate wide variation in quality of care across clinicians after adjustment for patient factors. This information can be used to guide clinician-specific learning interventions.
- In settings with high-quality diabetes care, there is as much as 300% variation in costs. Thus, identifying maximally cost-effective treatment pathways is a topic of interest.
- Improving patient experience of care and minimizing treatment burden may improve adherence, continuity of care, and clinical outcomes.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Clinical measures that are causally related to major microvascular and macrovascular diabetes complications are often selected for clinical quality of care measures. Such clinical measures might include all of the following except:
   (a) Aspirin use
   (b) Cholesterol control
   (c) Blood pressure control
   (d) Annual diabetes patient education
   (e) Glucose control
   (f) Nonuse of tobacco

   Comment: Diabetes patient education is important but has only a marginal impact on glucose, BP, lipid, or tobacco control and is not casually related to lower rates of major diabetes complications. Thus, the other aspects of care are more suitable for diabetes clinical quality measures.
2. Regarding the cost-effectiveness of electronic health record (EHR)-linked clinical decision support and diabetes case management, which of the following statements is false:
   (a) Case management is much more expensive on a per-patient basis.
   (b) Over the long run, clinical decision support may be cost-saving.
   (c) They are about equally cost-effective.
   (d) Most patients resist active case management as an invasion of privacy.

(e) Clinical decision support has high initial implementation costs.

Comment: In many studies of diabetes case management, about 2/3 of patients engage in the case management process.

3. Reasons to measure quality of diabetes care at the clinician level include all of the following except:
   (a) There is significant variation in patterns of care at the clinician level.
   (b) It is often difficult to link individual patients to a single responsible clinician.
   (c) Many clinicians like to know how they are doing compared to their peers.
   (d) Such information can guide clinician-specific learning interventions.
   (e) Electronic data make this easier to do than in the past.

   Comment: Well over 90% of patients can be linked to a usual primary care clinician in most health-care systems, based on frequency of visits with various clinicians and/or patient designation of a usual primary care clinician in electronic health record systems.
4. Which one of the following statements about the relationship of outpatient cost of diabetes care to outpatient quality of diabetes care is false:
   (a) Quality of care is not related to cost of care at the clinic level.
   (b) High-quality care costs more.
   (c) Low-quality care can be as expensive as high-quality care.
   (d) Cost of care is important both to the patient and the care delivery system.
   (e) Costs of care vary widely across patients with diabetes.

   Comment: There is abundant evidence that there is not a strong association of outpatient costs of diabetes care and quality of outpatient diabetes care.

Correct Answers

1. (d) Annual diabetes patient education
2. (d) Most patients resist active case management as an invasion of privacy
3. (b) It is often difficult to link individual patients to a single responsible clinician
4. (b) High-quality care costs more

References

1. Gregg EW, Li Y, Wang J, Burrows NR, Ali MK, Rolka D, et al. Changes in diabetes-related complications in the United States, 1990–2010. N Engl J Med. 2014;370(16):1514–23.
2. Gregg EW, Zhuo X, Cheng YJ, Albright AL, Narayan KM, Thompson TJ. Trends in lifetime risk and years of life lost due to diabetes in the USA, 1985–2011: a modelling study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2014;2(11):867–74.
3. Knowler WC, Fowler SE, Hamman RF, Christophi CA, Hoffman HJ, Brenneman AT, et al. 10-year follow-up of diabetes incidence and weight loss in the diabetes prevention program outcomes study. Lancet. 2009;374(9702):1677–86.
4. Herman WH, Hoerger TJ, Brandle M, Hicks K, Sorensen S, Zhang P, et al. The cost-effectiveness of lifestyle modification or metformin in preventing type 2 diabetes in adults with impaired glucose tolerance. Ann Intern Med. 2005;142(5):323–32.
5. Montori VM, Fernandez-Balsells M. Glycemic control in type 2 diabetes: time for an evidence-based about-face? Ann Intern Med. 2009;150(11):803–8.
6. Brito JP, Montori VM. ACP Journal Club. Intensive BP control and/or glucose control did not reduce microvascular events in hypertensive type 2 diabetes. Ann Intern Med. 2012;157(8):JC4–7.
7. O'Connor PJ, Ismial-Beigi F. Near-normalization of glucose and microvascular diabetes complications: data from ACCORD and ADVANCE. Ther Adv Endocrinol Metab. 2011;2(1):17–26.
8. Gilmer T, O'Connor P, Manning W, Rush W. The cost to health plans of poor glycemic control. Diabetes Care. 1997;20(12):1847–53.
9. Desai JR, Vazquez-Benitez G, Xu Z, Schroeder EB, Karter AJ, Steiner JF, et al. Who must we target now to minimize future cardiovascular events and total mortality?: lessons from the surveillance, prevention and management of diabetes mellitus (SUPREME-DM) cohort study. Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes. 2015;8(5):508–16.
10. O'Connor PJ, Bodkin NL, Fradkin J, Glasgow RE, Greenfield S, Gregg E, et al. Diabetes performance measures: current status and future directions. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(7):1651–9.
11. Gerstein HC, Miller ME, Genuth S, Ismail-Beigi F, Buse JB, Goff DC Jr, et al. Long-term effects of intensive glucose lowering on cardiovascular outcomes. N Engl J Med. 2011;364(9):818–28.
12. Patel A, MacMahon S, Chalmers J, Neal B, Billot L, Woodward M, et al. Intensive blood glucose control and vascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358(24):2560–72.
13. Phillips LS, Branch WT, Cook CB, Doyle JP, El-Kebbi IM, Gallina DL, et al. Clinical inertia. Ann Intern Med. 2001;135(9):825–34.
14. Ivers N, Jamtvedt G, Flottorp S, Young JM, Odgaard-Jensen J, French SD, et al. Audit and feedback: effects on professional practice and healthcare outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;6:Cd000259.
15. Sperl-Hillen J, Beaton S, Fernandes O, Von Worley A, Vazquez-Benitez G, Parker E, et al. Comparative effectiveness of patient education methods for type 2 diabetes: a randomized controlled trial. Arch Intern Med. 2011;171(22):2001–10.
16. Spencer-Bonilla G, Quinones AR, Montori VM, International Minimally Disruptive Medicine Workgroup. Assessing the burden of treatment. J Gen Intern Med. 2017;32(10):1141–5.
17. Boehmer KR, Shippee ND, Beebe TJ, Montori VM. Pursuing minimally disruptive medicine: disruption from illness and health care-related demands is correlated with patient capacity. J Clin Epidemiol. 2016;74:227–36.
18. Greenfield S, Kaplan SH, Ware JE Jr, Yano EM, Frank HJ. Patients' participation in medical care: effects on blood sugar control and quality of life in diabetes. J Gen Intern Med. 1988;3(5):448–57.
19. Rodriguez-Gutierrez R, Gionfriddo MR, Ospina NS, Maraka S, Tamhane S, Montori VM, et al. Shared decision making in endocrinology: present and future directions. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2016;4(8):706–16.
20. McCoy RG, Van Houten HK, Ross JS, Montori VM, Shah ND. HbA1c overtesting and overtreatment among US adults with controlled type 2 diabetes, 2001–13: observational population based study. BMJ. 2015;351:h6138.
21. Schroeder EB, Xu S, Goodrich GK, Nichols GA, O'Connor PJ, Steiner JF. Predicting the 6-month risk of severe hypogly-

cemia among adults with diabetes: development and external validation of a prediction model. J Diabetes Complicat. 2017;31(7):1158–63.
22. Ismail-Beigi F, Moghissi E, Tiktin M, Hirsch IB, Inzucchi SE, Genuth S. Individualizing glycemic targets in type 2 diabetes mellitus: implications of recent clinical trials. Ann Intern Med. 2011;154(8):554–9.
23. Tarn DM, Heritage J, Paterniti DA, Hays RD, Kravitz RL, Wenger NS. Physician communication when prescribing new medications. Arch Intern Med. 2006;166(17):1855–62.
24. Ho P, Rumsfeld J, Masoudi F, McClure D, Plomondon M, Steiner J, et al. Effect of medication nonadherence on hospitalization and mortality among patients with diabetes mellitus. Arch Intern Med. 2006;166(17):1836–41.
25. Desai JR, Sperl-Hillen JM, O'Connor PJ. Patient preferences in diabetes care: overcoming barriers using new strategies. J Comp Eff Res. 2013;2(4):351–4.
26. Clarke P, Gray A, Adler A, Stevens R, Raikou M, Cull C, et al. Cost-effectiveness analysis of intensive blood-glucose control with metformin in overweight patients with type II diabetes (UKPDS No. 51). Diabetologia. 2001;44(3):298–304.
27. Margolis KL, O'Connor PJ, Morgan TM, Buse JB, Cohen RM, Cushman WC, et al. Outcomes of combined cardiovascular risk factor management strategies in type 2 diabetes: the ACCORD randomized trial. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(6):1721–8.
28. O'Connor PJ, Sperl-Hillen JM, Fazio CJ, Averbeck BM, Rank BH, Margolis KL. Outpatient diabetes clinical decision support: current status and future directions. Diabet Med. 2016;33(6):734–41.
29. Anderson RMFJ, Gruppen LD, Funnell MM, Oh MS. The diabetes empowerment scale - short form (DES-SF). Diabetes Care. 2003;26:1641–3.
30. Welch GWJA, Polonsky WH. The problem areas in diabetes scale: an evaluation of its clinical utility. Diabetes Care. 1997;20:760–6.
31. Selby JV, Ray GT, Zhang D, Colby CJ. Excess costs of medical care for patients with diabetes in a managed care population. Diabetes Care. 1997;20(9):1396–402.
32. Institute of Medicine. Institute of medicine: guidelines we can trust 2012. Available from: http://iom.edu/Reports/2011/Clinical-Practice-Guidelines-We-Can-Trust.aspx.
33. Lipska KJ, Hirsch IB, Riddle MC. Human insulin for type 2 diabetes: an effective, less-expensive option. JAMA. 2017;318(1):23–4.
34. Gilmer TP, Roze S, Valentine WJ, Emy-Albrecht K, Ray JA, Cobden D, et al. Cost-effectiveness of diabetes case management for low-income populations. Health Serv Res. 2007;42(5):1943–59.
35. Gilmer TP, O'Connor PJ, Sperl-Hillen JM, Rush WA, Johnson PE, Amundson GH, et al. Cost-effectiveness of an electronic medical record based clinical decision support system. Health Serv Res. 2012;47(6):2137–58.
36. Herman WH, Edelstein SL, Ratner RE, Montez MG, Ackermann RT, Orchard TJ, et al. Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of diabetes prevention among adherent participants. Am J Manag Care. 2013;19(3):194–202.

Suggested/Further Reading

Greenfield S, Kaplan SH, Ware JE Jr, Yano EM, Frank HJ. Patients' participation in medical care: effects on blood sugar control and quality of life in diabetes. J Gen Intern Med. 1988;3(5):448–57. This pivotal article showed that patient centered care and shared decision-making are linked to better glucose control and better quality of life for diabetes patients. Advances in health informatics now enable shared decision-making to be done at much lower cost and more efficiently than was possible 30-years ago, with potential for substantial further improvement in quality of diabetes care.

O'Connor PJ, Bodkin NL, Fradkin J, Glasgow RE, Greenfield S, Gregg E, et al. Diabetes performance measures: current status and future directions. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(7):1651–9. This article presents an overview of important issues and choices related to measuring diabetes quality of care, with author perspectives representing a wide range of stakeholders.

Clinical Inertia: The Role of Physicians in Diabetes Outcomes

23

Joel Rodriguez-Saldana

Introduction

Healthcare delivery is not the only possible influence on diabetes control [1]. Patients and physicians factors and organization and process of care interact by need and determine the outcomes. Clinical inertia and patient adherence are two main deterrents of the effectiveness in patient-provider encounters. Awareness, prevention, and tailored interventions to reduce their impact are essential to achieve the goals and improve the quality of diabetes management.

Clinical Inertia

Resistance to accept and implement effective innovations has always been characteristic of every human endeavor, and the history of medicine provides many illustrative examples of evidence-based interventions that had to wait years or decades before acceptance by practitioners. A major challenge of healthcare is to increase the uptake of evidence-based medicine in "the real world," i.e., knowledge translation, "the process of taking evidence from research and applying it in clinical practice [2]." Unfortunately, the history of medicine is plagued by multiple examples about the difficulties and delays to introduce evidence into this "real world" [2]. One of the main goals of clinical practice guidelines (CPG) is to accelerate the introduction of medical innovations, but implementation and compliance by physicians are still limited, disregarded, and challenged, and clinical inertia is one of the main causes.

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (✉)
Multidisciplinary Centre of Diabetes, Mexico City, Mexico

Definitions and Evolution

Clinical inertia as an entity was recently described, albeit examples of noncompliance with clinical guidelines or failure to intensify medical treatment have been recognized many years ago. In 1998, for example, Frolkis and colleagues published the results of a chart review of 225 patients admitted to a coronary care unit, in which they showed that despite the wide availability of guidelines for the detection, evaluation, and treatment of hyperlipidemia and the results of major clinical trials of primary and secondary prevention of coronary heart disease, physicians were poorly compliant, even in patients at high risk [3]. Implementation of clinical guidelines, putting evidence-based medicine at work, is still far from accomplished [3–5], and its challenges are addressed in Chap. 26.

Origins and Definition

The term clinical inertia was coined by Cook and colleagues in 1999 to describe the effectiveness of a structured program to improve glycemic control and the importance of self-examination of performance to overcome clinical inertia in 698 African-American patients with type 2 diabetes [6]. Recognizing the importance of clinical inertia, the authors of this study established and measured a quality improvement program with increased emphasis on intensification of therapy, along with perceived barriers to advance treatment [6]. Two years later, this group of physicians authored the landmark review about clinical inertia, which they defined as the inability of physicians to achieve the goals of treatment after repeated visits, or as "the recognition of the problem but failure to act" or, more specifically, as the "failure of healthcare providers to initiate or intensify therapy when indicated" [7]. Recent definitions describe clinical inertia as "an office visit at which no therapeutic move was made (to achieve the goals of treatment) [8]" or as "failure to treat to target or prescribing that is not concordant with clinical

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_23

guidelines [9]," with the additional claim that clinical inertia could be "a clinical safeguard for the drug-intensive style of medicine fueled by current medical literature and pharmaceutical companies [9]," in the best benefit of patients to adopt less aggressive and also less risky and costly approaches [9]. Conversely, Fraenkel et al. defined clinical inertia as "the preference to maintain the status quo, a barrier to implement treat to target protocols in patients with chronic diseases [10]."

Initially and mostly described in the treatment of diabetes, the influence of clinical inertia on the negative results of patient management is increasingly documented in the treatment of other chronic diseases, including hypertension [11–16], dyslipidemia [17, 18], depression [19], osteoporosis [20], hepatic encephalopathy [21], geriatrics [22, 23], kidney transplantation [24], chronic valvular heart disease [25], dentistry [26], osteoarthritis [27], and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [28].

Clinical Inertia in Diabetes

Clinical inertia has been described largely in diabetes outpatient management, but in recent years, it has also been reported in hospitalized patients. Table 23.1 presents a summary of studies published from 1999 until 2018 by a PubMed search under the terms clinical inertia and diabetes and additional studies about failure to intensify diabetes therapy.

Table 23.1 Studies about clinical inertia and diabetes

Year	Country and reference	Patients	Type of study	Results
1999	USA [6]	698 African-American patients with type 2 diabetes	Self-evaluation, proportion of patients in whom therapy was intensified and perceived provided barriers to advance treatment	Average reduction in HbA1c of 1.4%; progressive improvement in the percentage of patients achieving HbA1c targets; 57% at goal in 5 years
2000	USA [29]	4523 patients with HbA1c results, 2892 with at least one follow-up test	Assessment of diabetes care using pharmacy and laboratory data between nine medical groups to determine dispensing patterns and changes of therapy based on HbA1c results	Despite having HbA1c levels above 8.0%, most patients had no changes in therapy Inadequate follow-up was documented in more than 60% of patients The effect of changes in therapy on subsequent HbA1c results could not be assessed
2003	USA [30]	570 patients with type 2 diabetes receiving metformin as additional therapy to sulfonylureas	Retrospective observational study Pace and patterns of therapeutic failure and clinical responses	HbA1c levels inexorably rise before clinicians respond: patients spent months at HbA1c levels above 8.0%, and glucose lowering actions were only established when HbA1c levels were 9.0% or higher Hyperglycemic peaks preceded changes in therapy
2004	USA [31]	7208 complete courses of non-pharmacologic or oral antidiabetics	Retrospective observational study Mean cumulative glycemic burden: months at HbA1c levels above 8.0% or below 7.0%	The average patient accumulated nearly 5 years of excess glycemic burden above 8.0% from diagnosis until starting insulin and 10 years of excess glycemic burden above 7.0%
2004	USA [32]	598 adults with type 2 diabetes receiving primary care in an academic medical center	Prospective observational study Failure to achieve treatment goals for HbA1c, systolic blood pressure (SBP), or low-density cholesterol (LDL) during 1 year	Delays were documented for every treatment goal: 51% of patients with elevated HbA1c, 30% of patients with high SBP, and 30% of patients with high LDL had increases in regimes After 1 year, a decline in the proportion of patients above goal for LDL was observed, but not for HbA1c or blood pressure
2005	USA [33]	1765 adult patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes from 27 primary care and 17 diabetes/endocrinology clinics	Retrospective observational study Measurement and control of HbA1c, blood pressure, cholesterol, and corresponding medical regimen changes	Annual testing rates for HbA1c, for blood pressure, and for total cholesterol were high (97.7%, 96.6%, and 87.6%, respectively) Patients at goal for HbA1c were 34.0%, for blood pressure were 33.0% and for lipoprotein profile were 65.1% for total cholesterol and 46.1% for LDL cholesterol Only 10% of the patients met the recommended goals for all three risk factors Lack of intensification was equal for patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes

Table 23.1 (continued)

Year	Country and reference	Patients	Type of study	Results
2005	Canada [34]	591 patients receiving specialist care and 1911 receiving primary care	Retrospective observational study Differences in clinical inertia between specialists and primary care physicians	45.1% of patients receiving specialist care versus 37.4% of patients primary care had drug intensifications ($P = 0.009$), attributed to more frequent use of insulin among specialists Clinical inertia was highly prevalent in both groups
2005	USA [35]	23,291 patients with diabetes from 13 Department of Veterans Affairs hospitals	Retrospective observational study To develop a valid quality measure to identify clinical inertia and its consequences on glycemic control	Despite 39% of patients having an initial HbA1c level above 8.0%, increases of antidiabetic medications occurred at only 9.8% of visits Patients receiving more intensive therapy had greater improvements in control
2005	USA [36]	438 African-American patients in primary care and 2157 patients from a specialty supervised clinic by endocrinologists	Longitudinal observational study	Average A1c in the medical clinic was 8.6%, in the diabetes clinic 7.7% ($P < 0.0001$) Lower number of drugs and rates of intensification occurred in the medical clinic, but intensification at both sites was associated with improvements in A1c Patients from the medical clinic had worse glycemic control and were less likely to use insulin and to have their therapy intensified if glucose levels were above the target
2006	Australia [37]	531 patients with type 2 diabetes from an urban clinic	Longitudinal observational study who attended a baseline assessment and five annual follow-up visits Assess the effectiveness of management of type 2 diabetes	After a median duration of 4.0 years and 8.1 years, 18% of patients progressed from diet to oral antidiabetics (OAD) 9% progressed from OAD to insulin, respectively Median HbA1c levels to start OAD or insulin were 7.7% and 9.4%
2006	USA [38]	345 residents of internal medicine residents receiving computerized reminders about patient-specific recommendations and/or feedback on performance or participate as controls	Behaviors when glucose was above 150 mg/dl were classified as "did nothing," "did anything," or "did enough" to describe clinical inertia or two levels of intensification	At baseline, residents "did nothing" in 65% of the visits and "did anything" or "did enough" in 35% of visits After 3 years, 52% "did anything" and 30% "did enough" Active interventions were followed by significant increases in trends to intensify therapy during visits Healthcare behavior improved more in the feedback intervention groups than in control groups Improvements were greatest during the first year and then decreased
2006	USA [39]	Random sample of 5% of 1812 hospital records with a discharge diagnosis of hyperglycemia	Magnitude of clinical inertia in the hospital management of diabetes	Albeit a diagnosis of diabetes was recorded in 96% of patients at admission; daily notes mentioned diabetes in 62% of cases and 60% of discharge notes; 20% of discharges included diabetes follow-up 86% of patients had bedside glucose measurements, but only 52% had documented the assessment of glucose severity Despite a high frequency of hyperglycemia (71%), only 34% of patients had changes in therapy
2006	USA [40]	253,238 patients with hypertension, dyslipidemia, and diabetes	Retrospective observational study	64% of patients experienced modifications for poorly controlled systolic blood pressure, 71% for poorly controlled diastolic blood pressure, 56% for poorly controlled LDL cholesterol, and 66% for poorly controlled A1c Intensification included increases in the number of drug classes and increased dosage 3–4% of patients with high A1c values achieved control without therapy modification Patients preferences and adherence were not measured

(continued)

Table 23.1 (continued)

Year	Country and reference	Patients	Type of study	Results
2007	USA [41]	2065 patients with type 2 diabetes newly started on antidiabetics and followed 3 or more years	Prospective observational study Relationship between initial medication adherence and regimen intensification	Baseline medication adherence: 79.8 ± 19.3% By comparison to patients in the highest quartile of adherence, patients in the lowest quartile were significantly less likely to have increases in regime within 1 year of their first elevated A1c Patients in the highest adherence quartile had 53% greatest odd of medication intensification
2007	USA [42]	211 primary care encounters, patients with type 2 diabetes	Cross-sectional observational study Competition of competing demands to changes in antidiabetic medications Return appointment intervals in patients with high HbA1c levels	Each additional patient concern was associated with a 49% reduction in the likelihood of a change in medication, independent of the length of the encounter and the most recent level of HbA1c For each additional increase in HbA1c, the time to the next scheduled appointment decreased 8.6 days The complex of clinical inertia is limited and does not fully characterize the complexity of primary care encounters
2008	USA [43]	254 patients with type 2 diabetes	Prospective observational study Visit-based factors associated with intensification of antihypertensive medications in adults with diabetes	Primary care providers intensified antihypertensive treatment in only 13% of visits at which blood pressure was elevated Higher systolic and diastolic blood pressures were important predictors of intensification Factors associated with failure to intensify treatment include capillary glucose >150 mg/dl, coronary heart disease, or co-management by a cardiologist
2008	USA [44]	105 patients with diabetes hospitalized for cardiothoracic surgery	Retrospective observational study Barriers preventing appropriate glycemic control in an academic center	Only six patients (5.7%) had adequate glucose control, 99 (94.3%) required intervention, 30 barriers to achieve glycemic control were identified, including "therapeutic reluctance," inappropriate titration of medication, lack of basal insulin, lack of weekend staff trained in diabetes management, use of a sliding scale, prescription of inappropriate medications, knowledge deficits of the weekend staff, and omission to restart outpatient diabetes medications
2009	USA [45]	1718 patients discharged from 37 academic medical centers	Retrospective observational study Evaluation of contemporary management of hyperglycemia: assessment of clinical and laboratory data, glucose measurements on 3 consecutive days, glycemic therapy	Wide variations in hospital performance of recommended hospital diabetes care were recorded, including A1c and glucose measurement Median glucose was significantly lower for patients in the intensive care unit compared to other areas On day 3, only 25% of patients had 6:00 AM glucose ≤110 mg/dl 50% of patients had ≥1 glucose measurement ≥180 mg/dl on days 2 and 3 and severe hypoglycemia occurred in 2.8% of all patient days
2009	Netherlands [46]	1283 patients from 30 general practices	Baseline and follow-up data of a randomized controlled trial on the implementation of a locally adapted diabetes guideline	In the intervention and control groups, the percentage of patients with poor diabetes or lipid control who did not receive treatment intensification were 45% and 90%, respectively Clinical inertia was higher in patients above the target in blood pressure (72.7% versus 63.3%) Clinical inertia was less common when nurses participated in the management In both study groups, cholesterol decreased significantly more in patients receiving treatment intensification

Table 23.1 (continued)

Year	Country and reference	Patients	Type of study	Results
2010	Canada [47]	379 type 2 diabetic patients treated with insulin with and without oral antidiabetics	Survey of 109 family physicians including knowledge of the Canadian Diabetes Association HbA1c target levels and perceived barriers to insulin initiation and intensification	Mean time from diagnosis of diabetes to insulin initiation was 9.2 years Mean HbA1c values before insulin initiation were 9.5% and 8.1% at visit 2, and 7.9% at visit 3 At visit 3, 20% of patients continued to have HbA1c above 9.0%
2011	USA [48]	10,743 patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes from an electronic medical record database	Retrospective observational study	Older patients had higher baseline HbA1c values At 2-year follow-up, 59% of younger patients received oral antidiabetics (OAD) compared with 44% in older patients The median time between diagnosis and start treatment with OAD was 350 days for younger patients and more than 2 years for older patients
2012	France [49]	17,493 patients with type 2 diabetes receiving oral antidiabetics	Retrospective observational study Current procedures to intensify hypoglycemic treatment in general practice according with clinical guidelines	18% of patients required treatment intensification Treatment was intensified after the second HbA1c in 39% of patients, immediately in 13%, within 6 months in 39% and within 1 year in 59% Treatment intensification was less likely in older patients and more likely at higher HbA1c levels
2012	USA [50]	1359 patients from a Veterans Affairs hospital	Retrospective observational study Effect of hospital admission on the medical treatment of poorly controlled diabetes	Of 2015 admissions, 454 had some change in diabetes medications at discharge (22.4%) Higher preadmission HbA1c levels, higher mean glucose at admission, inpatient hypoglycemia and use of insulin were associated with greater odds of change in therapy Clinical inertia occurred in 656 admissions (32%), with no change of therapy, no documentation of HbA1c 2 months after discharge, and no follow-up appointment within 1 month of discharge
2012	USA [51]	770 patients with type 2 diabetes	Survey of 508 primary care physicians by Internet Relevant clinical information and reasons about the absence of treatment of older patients	Reasons to omit pharmacologic treatment included the use of diet and exercise (57.5%), mild hyperglycemia (23.8%), patient's concerns (13.4%), specific concerns about antidiabetics (3.0%), comorbidities and polypharmacy (2.3%)
2012	USA [52]	83 primary care physicians	Cross-sectional study Structured interviews Providers perceptions about the importance to initiate insulin therapy, factors, and barriers affecting this decision	Eighty percent of PCPs endorsed glycemic targets 54% individualized targets based on age, life expectancy, comorbidities, self-management capacity, and willingness 64% reported that patients were resistant to new oral or insulin therapies because of fears about them 80% cited patients' nonadherence would dissuade them from initiating insulin 64% cited patients' resistance as a barrier to initiate insulin 43% cited problems of patient self-management
2013	Spain [53]	2783 patients with type 2 diabetes from primary care centers	Cross-sectional observational study	Thirty-five of patients had HbA1c levels above 7.0% Intensification of therapy occurred in 66.8%, including increase in dose (40.5%), addition of oral antidiabetics (45.8%), addition of insulin (3.7%) Clinical inertia was established in 33.2% of patients and diminished along with complexity of therapy and with HbA1c increase For each unit of HbA1c increase, clinical inertia decreased 47%

(continued)

Table 23.1 (continued)

Year	Country and reference	Patients	Type of study	Results
2013	UK [54]	81,573 patients with type 2 diabetes from a national database	Retrospective observational study Time to treatment intensification in patients receiving one, two, or three oral antidiabetics (OADs) and associated levels of glycemic control	Median time from HbA1c above goals (≥7.0, ≥7.5, or ≥8.0%) to intensification with an additional OAD was 2.9, 1.9, or 1.6 years, respectively, for those taking one OAD, and >7.2, >7.2, and >6.9 years for those taking one, two, or three OADs Mean HbA1c at intensification with another OAD or insulin for patients taking one, two, or three OADs was 8.7, 9.1, and 9.7% The probability of intensification in patients with poor glycemic control taking one, two, or three OADs at the end of follow-up with another OAD was 21.1–43.6% and with insulin 5.1–12.0%
2014	UK, Spain, Brazil, India, Japan, USA [55]	652 patients with type 2 diabetes and 337 physicians	Cross-sectional study; 20-minute online survey Opinions related to clinical inertia from patients and physicians perspectives Correlate perceptions and expectations about diagnosis, treatment, diabetes complications, and therapeutic escalation	Important discrepancies were uncovered in terms of patient and physician perceptions Physicians have low expectations for their patients Patients have at best, a rudimentary understanding of the risks of complications and the importance of control Only 25% reported to be worried about developing diabetes complications; the rest were either not concerned or thought the risk was remote A small proportion believe that lifestyle changes are important; only 37% acknowledge that this is a treatment modality The majority do not intend to adhere Impairments in communication are at the heart of clinical inertia
2014	Bahrain [56]	334 patients from a diabetes outpatient clinic	Retrospective observational study Association between clinical inertia with simpler interventions and outcomes	Treatment intensification was greater for raised HbA1c than for high blood pressure or LDL Clinical inertia for hyperglycemia, 29%; hypertension, 68%; high LDL, 80% Omission to increase oral antidiabetics or insulin occurred in 29% of medical visits Omission to increase antihypertensives occurred in 67.5% of medical visits Omission to increase lipid-lowering therapy occurred in 79.7% of medical visits Clinical inertia is greater in blood pressure and lipid management than in control of hyperglycemia
2014	Spain [57]	2971 patients with type 2 diabetes, 1416 controlled (A1c <7.0%) and 1555 not controlled (A1c ≥7.0%)	Retrospective, cross-sectional observational study	Prevalence of partial clinical inertia (PCI) in some medical visits was 52.5% Prevalence of total clinical inertia (TCI), the absence of intensification of therapy in all visits despite A1c ≥7.0% was 12.8% PCI was lower in patients controlled and associated with sedentary lifestyle, hypertension, and a higher prevalence of vascular complications
2015	UK [58]	20 healthcare providers in general practice	Interviews with 20 providers, 19 physicians, and 1 nurse 10 providers worked in general practices with high scores for quality and outcomes framework (QOF) targets and 10 with personnel from lower scoring practices	Most of the interviewed were unaware of the term "clinical inertia" or unclear about its meaning Interviewees from both lower and higher scoring practices were willing to acknowledge limitations in achievements related to glycemic control and a degree of responsibility Participants had inaccurate perceptions about levels of achievement in their primary care centers and sought to lessen their own accountability by highlighting patient and system barriers Addressing clinical inertia was not seen straightforward, as result of a complex and cumulative pattern of barriers at the provider, patient, and system level

Table 23.1 (continued)

Year	Country and reference	Patients	Type of study	Results
2015	Croatia [59]	10,275 patients with diabetes	National, cross-sectional, observational study Rate of clinical inertia to treat diabetes in primary care and association of patient, physician, and health setting factors	Clinical inertia occurred in 57.7% of clinical encounters Mean clinical inertia by practitioner was 55.6%; 9% were clinically inert with all patients Clinical inertia was associated with increases in HbA1c Univariate Patient and physician characteristics associated with clinical inertia: fasting blood glucose, hypertension, high triglycerides, unhealthy dietary habits, chronic comorbidities, number of patients under care, number of daily medical visits, initiation of oral antidiabetics HbA1c levels had the highest association with clinical inertia; patients with worse glycemic control were more likely to experience it
2015	USA [60]	75,000 patients with type 2 diabetes from a managed care claims database (IMPACT©)	Prevalence and predictors of clinical inertia based on personalized goals Three HbA1c targets were used to identify patients who experienced above targets during the index period; clinical inertia was defined as no intensification of treatment during the response period	Regardless of HbA1c target, 70% of the patients experienced clinical inertia over 6 months and remained above 50% up to 3.5 years later Time to intensification by addition of an oral antidiabetic, insulin, or a GLP-1 receptor agonist ranged from 50.5 to 59.0 days at 6 months and from 702 to 738 days at follow-up During the first 6 months, 20% of patients were prescribed an oral antidiabetic, 5.3% received insulin, and 2.0 a GLP-1 analog Predictors of intensification: point of service insurance, mental illness, a visit to an endocrinologist, or higher HbA1c level Intensification was less likely in older patients, patients taking more than one antidiabetic during 6 months or recent HbA1c measurement above target Prevalence of clinical inertia has increased in the managed care setting in the USA
2016	UK [61]	11,696 patients with type 2 diabetes from a clinical practice research database	Retrospective observational study Prevalence of clinical inertia in patients treated with basal insulin	Basal insulin was started in all patients at a mean ± SD HbA1c of 9.7 ± 2.0% 80.3% of patients were receiving ≥2 oral antidiabetics at the start of insulin 36.5% had intensification of treatment Median time to intensification was 3.7 years Delay to intensify was associated with increasing age, duration of diabetes, and use of oral antidiabetics, and Charlson comorbidity index score 32.1% of patients with HbA1c ≥7.5% suspended basal insulin
2016	Finland [62]	1075 adult patients with type 1 diabetes from a regional electronic patient database and medical records	Retrospective observational study To investigate if the targets established in the guidelines for patients with type 1 diabetes are achieved in medical practice	Despite one of the highest worldwide prevalences of type 1 diabetes (0.8%), only 19% of patients reached a HbA1c target of <7.0%, and 45% had LDL levels below 100 mg/dl Overall, 13–16% of patients younger than 60 and 26% of patients older than 60 years achieved targets of glycemic control
2016	Thailand [63]	98 patients with type 2 diabetes and mean HbA1c 10.3%	Retrospective observational study Effects of clinical inertia on glycemic control and diabetes-related complications	Prevalence of clinical inertia: 68.4% Mean decrease in HbA1c in the clinical inertia group was 0.82 ± 1.5% and 3.02 ± 1.8% in the non-inertia group at 6 months and 1.46 ± 1.85% and 3.04 ± 1.76% after 4 years Clinical inertia was associated with a shorter median time to progression and a higher incidence of diabetic retinopathy Adjusted incidence rate ratio of diabetic retinopathy in the clinical inertia group: 4.92

(continued)

Table 23.1 (continued)

Year	Country and reference	Patients	Type of study	Results
2017	Belgium [64]	578 insulin-naive patients with type 2 diabetes	Retrospective cohort study, 8-year analysis, 1.2-year follow-up Clinical inertia defined as equivalent to prolonged inaction (PI): no change in treatment with an A1c level >7.0% for a minimum 12 months	Prevalence of clinical inertia or PI, 59% Associated factors: Moderate to severe chronic kidney disease (CKD) Less frequent A1c measurement Lower A1c values Smaller number of additional medications Physicians lag behind clinical guidelines: the "real trigger for action is not an A1c level of 7.0%; intensification occurs above 7.0% or even at 8.0% Except for CKD, severe comorbidity does not impede adjustment in hypoglycemic treatment Intensive follow-up at the process level is associated with intensive treatment adjustments
2018	France [65]	6045 patients ≥18 years with type 2 diabetes either simultaneously or sequentially treated with two OADs, GLP-1 receptor agonists or basal insulin	Retrospective analysis of a database of commercial claims Clinical and economic outcomes among patients with uncontrolled T2D initiating two OADs, GLP-1 agonists or basal insulin One-year follow-up	Despite A1c lowering following treatment initiation, many patients do not achieve A1c goals <7.0% The percentage of patients with A1c >7.0% 4 years after initiation of a new class of antihyperglycemic medication ranged from 48% with OADs to 74% in patients initiating basal insulin Baseline A1c was highest in patients receiving basal insulin as second drug (10.1%) At the last available follow-up measurement, 47.5% of patients initiatinged OADs, 41.1% of patients initiatinged GLP-1 agonists, and 32.6% of patients initiating basal insulin had A1c levels <7.0%
2018	USA [66]	7389 patients with type 2 diabetes and an A1c value ≥7.0% despite being on a stable regimen of two OADs for at least 6 months	Retrospective analysis of an electronic health record system	62.9% of patients had no evidence of treatment intensification, including 71.7% of patients with A1c 7.0%–7.9%, 53.3% of patients with A1c 8.0–8.9% and 44.4% of patients with A1c ≥9.0% Physicians do not respond quickly enough to evidence of poor glycemic control, even in those with A1c levels far exceeding typical treatment targets

These studies confirm the magnitude, negative consequences, and benefits of interventions to reduce the effect of clinical inertia in diabetes management. The following conclusions can be achieved:

1. The prevalence of clinical inertia for all diabetes goals is very high: 33–70% for HbA1, 30% for hypertension, and 30% for LDL cholesterol.
2. The glucocentric approach prevails: treatment intensification is more likely for high HbA1c than for hypertension or high LDL cholesterol levels.
3. Lack of glycemic control at every clinical setting: outpatient, inpatient, medical and surgical, and low levels of physicians' awareness.
4. Slow response of clinicians to clinical inertia at HbA1c levels of high risk: up to 5 years of excess glycemic burden.
5. Low (less than 10.0%) and slow (up to 5 years) rates of treatment intensification.
6. Low and slow rates of initiation for every therapeutic modality, with insulin at the top (9.2 years).
7. Wide variations in hospital diabetes outcomes: high rates of hyperglycemia (64%) and persistent hyperglycemia in 50% of patients and low rates of diabetes follow-up after hospital discharge (20–22%).
8. Association with low patient adherence, diet and exercise, disregard of glycemia, patient concerns, comorbidity, and polypharmacy.
9. Equally low levels of patients at goal for HbA1c, blood pressure, and lipoprotein levels in type 1 (19%) and type 2 diabetes.
10. Intensification of therapy improves glycemic control and decreases HbA1c, blood pressure, and LDL cholesterol.

Leading Factors Associated with Clinical Inertia

In their classical article, Phillips and colleagues described three groups of factors as main causes of clinical inertia: (1) overestimation of the care provided, physicians consider that patients are improving despite lack of change in clinical results, (2) subjective or soft reasons to avoid intensification of therapy ("the patient is improving"), and (3) lack of train-

Table 23.2 Associated factors with clinical inertia

Authors and references	Description
Phillips et al. [7]	Overestimation of the care provided "Soft reasons" to avoid intensification Lack of training
Fantini et al. [4]	Organization "arrangements": individual versus in-group practice Patient characteristics: older age, comorbidities Location of practice: rural versus urban
Barth et al. [88]	Age of physicians: older clinicians more frequently work in individual practice and rely on experience; younger clinicians more inclined to accept collaborative, team-based medicine, protocols, and clinical guidelines
O'Connor et al. [82]	Physician factors: failure to initiate and titrate treatment until goals are achieved, failure to identify and manage comorbidities, ineffective clinical encounters, insufficient time, reactive, instead of proactive, care Patient factors: denial or belief that the disease is not dangerous, low health literacy, cost and amount of medications, side effects, poor communication or distrust in physicians, depression System factors: absence of clinical guidelines or disease registries, planning deficiencies, absence of outreach, support and team approach, poor communication
Reach [89, 90]	Discrepancy between the technical rationality of evidence-based medicine and the modes of reasoning of physicians "in real life" "Clinical myopia": failure to give preference to the benefits of treatment intensification
Miles [91, 92]	"Fallacious reasoning and cognitive bias": a conscious decision to withhold or omit the use of evidence-based medicine
Safford et al. [93]	Appropriate inaction; potential appropriate decisions resulting from patients' factors: lack of adherence, psychological or physical stress, lack of resources
Aujoulat et al. [94]	Providers' knowledge of and attitudes toward evidence-based guidelines: insufficient knowledge, disagreement or distrust, lack of applicability Providers' clinical judgment and experience within specific situations Sociodemographic characteristics and medical history of patients, values, comorbidities, polypharmacy, concerns, and reluctance Providers' awareness of patients' attitudes, behaviors, preferences, adherence, literacy, and empowerment Providers' ability to make the appropriate decision within a given clinical and organizational context: reluctance or difficulty to change, clinical uncertainty, limited time, absence of multidisciplinary or team-based care
Strain et al. [84]	Physician factors: overrating the quality of care provided, underestimating the number of patients who are not in target, use of soft excuses to avoid intensification, lack of time, blaming patients' noncompliance, paternalistic approach, knowledge or training to manage multiple chronic diseases, lack of clarity of clinical guidelines Systemic contributors: traditional clinical guidelines focused on goal-setting pathology management disregarding the importance of communication between patient, physicians, and multidisciplinary teams (if available); physicians working in isolation within the health system; time constraints, delays Patient factors: nonadherence, socioeconomic factors, lack of understanding and engagement with the treatment
Kunthi et al. [95]	Clinician-level barriers: limited awareness of clinical inertia, clinicians' overestimation of their quality of care and adherence with guidelines Patient-level barriers: lack of health education, disbelief in the efficacy of therapy, concerns about effects of therapy on quality of life, fear of side effects, lack of confidence to adhere to complex regimes

ing and practice limitations to focus on therapeutic goals and deficiencies in clinical practice to perform and deliver the expected results [7]. These factors have been repeatedly documented, and others have been described (Table 23.2).

Clinical Inertia as a Resource in Defense of Patients

Clinical inertia has also been claimed to be a clinical safeguard, based on results of clinical trials showing that tight glycemic control would not achieve the expected effects on prevention of cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes, whereas aggressive lowering of blood glucose has been associated with an increase in all-cause mortality, hypoglycemia, and weight gain. In addition, comorbidities and competing health and personal and social factors are very frequent in persons with diabetes from every age group, and interventions to correct them are essential components of diabetes care [42, 43, 51]. A retrospective analysis to examine physician and patient characteristics associated with clinical inertia showed that nearly all the physicians have practiced clinical inertia, but patient characteristics are stronger predictors, and physicians frequently have to devote their limited time to focus on other medical problems and to take into account priorities and patient's preferences [67]. On the other hand, the concept of quaternary prevention, action taken to identify patients at risk of excessive medical treatment and to protect them from medical interference, is rarely taken into account [68]. The principles of hastening to

help and doing no harm have to be considered when establishing the relative risks of clinical inertia versus overtreatment in patients with diabetes [68].

Contribution of Clinical Guidelines to Clinical Inertia

One of the main goals of clinical guidelines is to overcome clinical inertia to achieve the benefits of therapy, but reluctance to comply with them is highly prevalent among physicians [69]. Clinical practice guidelines may also contribute to clinical inertia, when they focus on limited aspects, in disregard of other components of successful treatment, including patient education and self-monitoring of blood glucose [70]. The four guidance statements recently issued by the American College of Physicians for glycemic targets in adults with type 2 diabetes have reinforced these arguments [71]. They were reported as four guidance statements with the first being the personalization of goals for glycemic control, the second statement suggests an A1c target between 7.0% and 8.0% in most patients, the third statement recommends de-intensifying treatment in patients achieving A1c below 6.5%, and the fourth statement recommends liberalizing control in patients with life expectancy less than years because of advancing age or severe comorbidities [72]. While the message conveyed by the revised ACP guidelines is about safety, it has arisen criticism and concern from experts and academia [72, 73]. One of the main sources of criticism is that newer available antidiabetics facilitate glycemic control at lower risk of hypoglycemia and the concern that the revised ACP statements may stimulate and validate it [72]. Treatment algorithms cannot be truly evidence-based because they are unable to present all the available treatment options [74], but recent guidelines have stressed the importance and, increasingly more frequently, the influence and preeminence of comorbidities and social determinants of health in the selection and intensification of therapies [75]. Awareness and measurement of clinical inertia are increasing, and it has been shown that it is more important than poor adherence to therapy by patients [76, 77]. It has been also shown that educating physicians is less fruitful than educating patients [78]: Roumie and colleagues published a study in which 182 providers were randomly assigned to receive several alternatives of education, including online access to the JNC 7 guidelines on Prevention, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure, and 1341 patients with hypertension received computerized alerts, letters advocating drug adherence, and face-to-face education. After 6 months, patients who received education had better hypertension control and lower systolic blood pressure than patients in whom physicians were the ones who received education [78]. Analysis of physicians' responses to computer alerts to comply with the JNC 7 guidelines showed a list of "soft reasons," including lack of agreement with the guidelines (5%), patient-based factors (17%), environmental factors (105), lack of knowledge (2%), and arguments supporting clinical inertia in 66% ("continue the current medications and I will discuss at the next visit") [78].

Addressing Clinical Inertia

The role of clinical inertia in the poor results to achieve the goals of glycemic control, hypertension, and hypercholesterolemia has been clearly established [79]. Accordingly, several strategies have been proposed to address and modify its negative effects:

1. Raise the awareness: more studies about the epidemiology and consequences of clinical inertia are required to measure its worldwide extent, including individual patient, physician and clinic factors, patient-physician relationship factors, and "complex patient" selection effects including competing health problems and nonadherence [79].
2. Measurement: clinical inertia affects the outcomes and the quality of healthcare. Consequently, application of established methods or the development of new measures to quantify its magnitude is essential. Current measures of clinical inertia in diabetes include (1) the proportion of patients having drug therapy intensification at visits above goals of glycemic control [79], (2) the proportion of patients with high A1c levels after drug intensification [29], and (3) a model to predict the probability that an individual visit would result in an increase of antidiabetic medications based on characteristics at that visit including diabetic complications, cardiovascular risk factors, psychiatric or substance abuse disorders, and comorbidities [35]. The complexities and limitations of this method have been addressed by O'Connor, including poor documentation of interventions, the proposed use of a normative instead of a threshold value, placing excessive emphasis on glucose control and diverting attention from other diabetes quality measures [80].
3. Physician education is a key strategy to facilitate intensification of therapy [81]. Targeted interventions to health providers, including (1) enhanced primary care incorporating key features of clinical trials into routine chronic disease care [81–83]; (2) scheduled, frequent, and carefully planned office visits and increased direct contact time with patients [82, 84]; (3) electronic medical records to provide real-time decision support to physicians during office visits and measure opportunities for intensification and variations by practice and patient characteristics [80–83]; (4) monitoring, prompts, feedback, and decision support for healthcare providers to improve systems [80–83]; (5) continued managerial momentum through a five-stage

process: (a) review the process of diabetes care, (b) identify the highest priority goals and treatment strategies, (c) actionable plans to increase clinical encounters in which clinicians take appropriate action, (d) systematically track progress toward achieving goals, and (e) feedback to responsible to make patient care decisions; (6) incorporate performance measures to improve care and control costs, including process (accountability) and intermediate outcome items [80, 81, 83]; and (7) incentives and pay for performance [80, 81, 83].

4. Effective communication with patients: explanation and risk management in the real world, understanding of the progressive nature of diabetes, and the accompanying need to review and adjust treatments [81, 85]. Suitable interventions to promote patient activation and involvement in decision-making and enhance adherence include feedback, education, and support [61, 79–83, 85, 86]; and delivering patient education *that they can understand*, according to personal values and preferences [75, 81].

In conclusion, despite exhaustive efforts to develop evidence-based, non-biased, and feasible clinical practice guidelines, doctors frequently do not follow them. Clinical inertia is the consequence of a discrepancy between the technical rationality of evidence-based medicine and the reasoning of clinical practice in "real life," marked by uncertainty and risk [87]. Like other human complex problems, reducing clinical inertia requires complex solutions, starting at medical schools, and supported by updated, continuing education and assessment of physicians performance and outcomes. Epidemiology, analysis of responsible factors (awareness, attitude, training, organization), and design of interventions about clinical inertia are clearly areas of opportunity to improve one of the crucial aspects in diabetes care.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Clinical inertia
   (a) Has been recently described
   (b) Is infrequent
   (c) Is the patient's fault
   (d) Has been described for decades
   (e) Is exclusive of primary care
2. Clinical inertia is defined as:
   (a) Promptness to intensify medical treatment
   (b) The trend to align with medical trends
   (c) Inability to achieve the goals of treatment after repeated visits
   (d) Failure to initiate or intensify treatment when indicated
   (e) Recognition of a problem but failure to act
3. Clinical inertia has been reported:
   (a) Only in diabetes management
   (b) In hypertension
   (c) In diabetes and hypertension
   (d) In acute disease care
   (e) In the management of multiple chronic diseases
4. The reported prevalence of clinical inertia in the management of diabetes, hypertension, and LDL cholesterol is around:
   (a) 10%
   (b) 20%
   (c) 30%
   (d) 40%
   (e) 50%
5. Treatment intensification in patients with diabetes may be delayed up to:
   (a) One month
   (b) Three months
   (c) Six months
   (d) One year
   (e) Five years
6. Introduction of insulin in diabetes treatment may be delayed up to:
   (a) One month
   (b) Three months
   (c) One year
   (d) Five years
   (e) More than 9years
7. In hospital patients with diabetes, clinical inertia:
   (a) Is non-existent
   (b) Is associated with persistent hyperglycemia and low rates of follow-up
   (c) Is minimal with no appreciable effects on outcomes
   (d) Has been overemphasized
   (e) Has not been investigated
8. Leading factors associated with clinical inertia include:
   (a) Overestimation of the care provided
   (b) Subjective reasons to avoid intensification
   (c) Lack of training and practice limitations
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
9. Clinical inertia may be a resource in defense of patients:
   (a) True
   (b) False
10. Clinical guidelines may contribute to clinical inertia:
    (a) True
    (b) False

Correct Answers

1. (d) Has been described for decades
2. (c–e)
3. (e) In the management of multiple chronic diseases

4. (c) 30%
5. (e) Five years
6. (e) More than 9years
7. (b) Is associated with persistent hyperglycemia and low rates of follow-up
8. (d) All of the above
9. (a) True
10. (a) True

References

1. Pringle M, Stewart-Evans C, Coupland C, Williams I, Allison S, Sterland J. Influences on control in diabetes mellitus: patient, doctor, practice or delivery of care? BMJ. 1993;306:630–4.
2. Doherty S. History of evidence-based medicine. Oranges, chloride of lime and leeches: Barriers to teaching old dogs new tricks. Emerg Med Australas. 2005;17:314–21.
3. Frolkis JP, Zyzanski SJ, Schwartz JM, Suhan PS. Physician Noncompliance with the 1993 National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP-ATPII) Guidelines. Circulation. 1998;98:851–5.
4. Fantini MP, Compagni A, Rucci P, Mimmi S, Longo F. General practitioners' adherence to evidence-based guidelines: a multilevel analysis. Health Care Manag Rev. 2011;00:1–10.
5. Birrenbach T, Kraehenmann S, Perrig M, Berendonk C, Huwendiek S. Physicians' attitudes toward, use of, and perceived barriers to clinical guidelines: a survey among Swiss physicians. Adv Med Educ Pract. 2016;7:673–80.
6. Cook CB, Ziemer DC, El-Kebbi IM, Gallina DL, Dunbar VG, Ernst KL, Phillips LS. Diabetes in Urban African-Americans. XVI. Overcoming clinical inertia improves glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1999;22:1494–500.
7. Phillips LS, Branch WT, Cook CB, Doyle JP, El-Kebbi IM, Gallina DL, Miller CD, Ziemer DC, Barnes CS. Clinical inertia. Ann Intern Med. 2001;135:825–34.
8. O'Connor PJ. Overcome clinical inertia to control blood pressure. Arch Intern Med. 2003;163:2677–8.
9. Giugliano D, Esposito K. Clinical inertia as a clinical safeguard. JAMA. 2011;305:1591–2.
10. Fraenkel L, Cunnigham M, Peters E. Subjective numeracy and preference to stay with the status quo. Med Decis Mak. 2015;35:6–11.
11. Salisbury C, Fahey T. Overcoming clinical inertia in the management of hypertension. CMAJ. 2006;174:1285–6.
12. Faria C, Wenzel M, Lee KW, Coderee K, Nichols J, Belletti DA. A narrative review of clinical inertia: focus on hypertension. J Am Soc Hypertens. 2009;3:267–76.
13. Viera AJ, Schmid D, Bostrom S, Yow A, Lawrence W, DuBard CA. Level of blood pressure above goal and clinical inertia in a Medicaid population. J Am Soc Hypertens. 2010;4:244–54.
14. Sanchis-Domenech C, Llisterri-Caro JL, Palomo-Sanz V, Alonso-Moreno FJ, López-Rodríguez I, Nevado-Loro A, et al. Inercia Terapéutica en pacientes hipertensos asistidos en atención primaria en España. Estudio Objetivo Kontrol. Aten Primaria. 2011; https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aprim.2010.09.030.
15. Gil-Guillén V, Orozco-Beltrán D, Carratalá-Munuera C, Márquez-Contreras E, Durazo-Arvizu R, Cooper R, et al. Clinical inertia in poorly controlled elderly hypertensive patients: a cross sectional study in Spanish physicians to ascertain reasons for not intensifying treatment. Am J Cardiovasc Drugs. 2013;13:213–9.
16. Risso-Gill I, Balabanova D, Majid F, Ng KK, Yussof K, Mustapha F, et al. Understanding the modifiable health systems barriers to hypertension management in Malaysia: a multi-method health systems approach. BMC Health Serv Res. 2015;15:254.
17. Valle CW, Binns HJ, Quadri-Sheriff M, Benuck I, Patel A. Physicians' lack of Adherence to National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute Guidelines for Pediatric Lipid Screening. Clin Pediatr. 2015;54:1200–5.
18. Willig JH, Jackson DA, Westfall AO, Allison J, Chang PW, Raper J, Saag MS, Mugavero MJ. Clinical inertia in the management of low-density lipoprotein abnormalities in an HIV clinic. Clin Infect Dis. 2008;46:1315–8.
19. Henke RM, Zaslavsky AM, McGuire TG, Ayanian JZ, Rubenstein LV. Clinical inertia in depression treatment. Med Care. 2009;47:959–67.
20. Rabenda V, Reginster JY. Prevention and treatment of osteoporosis: avoiding clinical inertia and promoting therapeutic adherence. Rev Med Liege. 2010;65:358–65.
21. Córdoba Cardona J. Hepatic encephalopathy today: how uncertainty perpetuates clinical inertia. Med Clin (Barc). 2009;132:425–7.
22. Ghosh AK. Care of the elderly: the problem of clinical inertia. Minn Med. 2002;85:6.
23. Suarez AS, Gérard X, Petermans J, Van Hees T. Clinical inertia in geriatrics. Rev Med Liege. 2010;65:256–60.
24. Kiberd J, Panek R, Kiberd B. Strategies to reduce clinical inertia in hypertensive kidney transplant recipients. BMC Nephrol. 2007;27:10.
25. Moonen ML, Leroux A, Lancellotti P, Piérard LA. Clinical inertia and treatment adherence in the management of chronic valvular heart diseases. Rev Med Liege. 2010;65:290–8.
26. Rindal DB, Rush WA, Boyle RG. Clinical inertia in dentistry: a review of the phenomenon. J Contemp Dent Pract. 2008;9:113–21.
27. Sisó AA. Clinical inertia in osteoarthritis. Aten Primaria. 2012;44:72–3.
28. Cooke CE, Sidel M, Belletti DA, Fuhlbrigge AL. Review: clinical inertia in the management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. COPD. 2012;44:72–3.
29. Wetzler HP, Snyder JW. Linking pharmacy and laboratory data to assess the appropriateness of care in patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2000;23:1637–41.
30. Brown JB, Nichols GA. Slow response to loss of glycemic control in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Am J Manag Care. 2003;9:213–7.
31. Brown JB, Nichols GA, Perry A. The burden of treatment failure in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27:1535–40.
32. Grant RW, Cagliero E, Dubey AK, Gildesgame C, Chueh HC, Barry MJ, Singer DE, Nathan DM, Meigs JB. Clinical inertia in the management of type 2 diabetes metabolic risk factors. Diabet Med. 2004;21:150–5.
33. Grant RW, Buse JB, Meigs JB. Quality of diabetes care in U.S. academic medical centers. Diabetes Care. 2005;28:337–42.
34. Shah BR, Hux JE, Laupacis A, Zinman B, van Walraven C. Clinical inertia in response to inadequate glycemic control. Do specialists differ from primary care physicians? Diabetes Care. 2005;28:600–6.
35. Berlowitz DR, Ash AS, Glickman M, Friedman RH, Pogach LM, Nelson AL, Wong AT. Developing a quality measure for clinical inertia in diabetes care. Health Serv Res. 2005;40:1836–53.
36. Ziemer DC, Miller CD, Rhee MK, Doyle JP, Watkins C, Cook CB, et al. Clinical inertia contributes to poor diabetes control in a primary care setting. Diabetes Educ. 2005;31:564–71.
37. Davis TME, Davis WA, Bruce DG. Glycaemic levels triggering intensification of therapy in type 2 diabetes in the community: the Fremantle Diabetes Study. MJA. 2006;184:325–8.
38. Ziemer DC, Doyle JP, Barnes CS, Branch WT, Cook CB, El-Kebbi IM, et al. An intervention to overcome clinical inertia and improve diabetes mellitus control in a primary care setting. Arch Intern Med. 2006;166:507–13.
39. Knecht LA, Gautiher SM, Castro JC, Schmidt RE, Whitaker MD, Zimmerman RA, Mishark KJ, Cook CB. Diabetes care in the hospital: is there clinical inertia? J Hosp Med. 2006;1:151–60.

40. Rodondi N, Peng T, Karter AJ, Bauer DC, Vittinghoff E, Tang S, et al. Therapy modifications in response to poorly controlled hypertension, dyslipidemia and diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med. 2006;144:875–84.
41. Grant R, Adams AS, Trinacty CM, Zhang F, Kleinman K, Soumeral SB, et al. Relationship between patient medication adherence and subsequent clinical inertia in type 2 diabetes glycemic management. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:807–12.
42. Parchman ML, Pugh JA, Romero RL, Bowers KW. Competing demands or clinical inertia: the case of elevated glycosylated hemoglobin. Ann Fam Med. 2007;5:196–201.
43. Bolen SD, SamuelsTA YH-C, Marinouppoulos SS, McGuire M, Abuid M, Brancati FL. Failure to intensify antihypertensive treatment by primary care providers: a cohort study in adults with diabetes mellitus and hypertension. J Gen Intern Med. 2008;23:543–50.
44. Giangola J, Olohan K, Longo J, Goldstein JM, Gross PA. Barriers to hyperglycemia control in hospitalized patients: a descriptive epidemiologic study. Endocr Pract. 2008;14:813–9.
45. Boord JB, Greevy RA, Braithwaite SS, Arnold PC, Selig PM, Brake H, Cuny J, Baldwin D. Evaluation of glycemic control at US academic medical centers. J Hosp Med. 2009;4:35–44.
46. Van Bruggen R, Gorter K, Stolk R, Klungel O, Rutten G. Clinical inertia in general practice: widespread and related to the outcome of diabetes care. Fam Pract. 2009;26:428–36.
47. Harris SB, Kapor J, Lank CN, Willan AR, Houston T. Clinical inertia in patients with T2DM requiring insulin in family practice. Can Fam Physician. 2010;56:e418–24.
48. Zhang Q, Rajagopalan S, Marrett E, Davies MJ, Radican L, Engel SS. Time to treatment initiation with oral antihyperglycaemic therapy in US patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2012; https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1463-1326.2011.01498.x.
49. Balkau B, Bouée S, Avignon A, Vergés B, Chartier I, Amelineau E, et al. Type 2 diabetes treatment intensification in general practice in France in 2008-2009: the DIAttitude Study. Diabetes Metab. 2012;38(Suppl 3):S29–35.
50. Griffith ML, Boord JB, Eden SK, Matheny ME. Clinical inertia of discharge planning among patients with poorly controlled diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012;97:2019–26.
51. Marrett E, Zhang Q, Kanitscheider C, Davies MJ, Radican L, Feinglos MN. Physician reasons for non-pharmacologic treatment of hyperglycemia in older patients newly diagnosed with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Ther. 2012;3:5.
52. Ratanawongsa N, Crosson JC, Schillinger D, Karter AJ, Saha CK, Marrero DG. Getting under the skin of clinical inertia in insulin initiation: the Translating Research Into Action for Diabetes (TRIAD) Insulin Starts Project. Diabetes Educ. 2012;38:94–100.
53. Mata-Cases M, Benito-Badorrey B, Roura-Olmeda P, Franch-Nadal J, Pepió-Villaubi JM, Saez M, et al. Clinical inertia in the treatment of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes patients in primary care. Curr Med Res Opin. 2013;29:1495–502.
54. Khunti K, Wolden ML, Thorsted BL, Andersen M, Davies MJ. Clinical inertia in people with type 2 diabetes: a retrospective cohort study of more than 80,000 people. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:3411–7.
55. Strain WD, Cos X, Hirst M, Vencio S, Mohan V, Vokó Z, et al. Time to do more: addressing clinical inertia in the management of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;105:302–12.
56. Whitford DL, Al-Anjawi HA, Al-Baharna MM. Impact of clinical inertia on cardiovascular risk factors in patients with diabetes. Prim Care Diabetes. 2014;8:133–8.
57. González-Clemente JM, Font B, Lahoz R, Llauradó G, Gambús G. INERTIA STUDY: clinical inertia in non-insulinized patients on oral hypoglycemic treatment. A study in Spanish primary and specialty care settings. Med Clin (Barc). 2014;142:478–84.
58. Zafar A, Stone MA, Davies MJ, Khunti K. Acknowledging and allocating responsibility for clinical inertia in the management of type 2 diabetes in primary care: a qualitative study. Diabet Med. 2015;32:407–13.
59. Bralic-Lang V, Bergman Markovic B, Kranjcevic K. Family physician clinical inertia in glycemic control among patients with type 2 diabetes. Med Sci Monit. 2015;21:403–11.
60. Lin J, Zhou S, Wei W, Pan C, Lingohr-Smith M, Levin P. Does clinical inertia vary by personalised A1c goal? A study of predictors and prevalence of clinical inertia in a US managed care setting. Endocr Pract. 2016;22:151–61.
61. Khunti K, Nikolajsen A, Thorsted BL, Andersen M, Davies MJ, Paul SK. Clinical inertia with regard to intensifying therapy in people with type 2 diabetes treated with basal insulin. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2016;18:401–9.
62. Kekäläinen P, Tirkkonen H, Laatikainen T. How are metabolic control targets of patients with Type 1 Diabetes mellitus achieved in daily practice in the area with high diabetes prevalence? Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2016;115:9–16.
63. Osataphan S, Chalermchai T, Ngaosuwan K. Clinical inertia causing new or progression of diabetic retinopathy in type 2 diabetes: a retrospective cohort study. J Diabetes. 2016; https://doi.org/10.1111/1753-0407.12410.
64. Goderis G, Vaes B, Van den Akker M, Elli S, Mathieu C, Buntinx F, Henrard S. Factors associated with Prolonged Inaction in the hypoglycaemic treatment in people with non-insulin dependent Type 2 Diabetes and elevated glycated haemoglobin: A registry-based cohort study. Prim Care Diabetes. 2017;11:193–8.
65. Blonde L, Raccah D, Lew E, Meyers J, Nikonova E, Ajmera M, et al. Treatment intensification in type 2 diabetes: a real-World Study of 2-OAD Regimens, GLP-1, RAs, or Basal Insulin. Diabetes Ther. 2018;9:1169–84.
66. Pantalone KM, Misra-Hebert AD, Hobbs TM, Ji X, Kong SX, Milinovich A. Clinical inertia in type 2 diabetes management: evidence from a large, real-world data set. Diabetes Care. 2018;41:e113–4.
67. Harle CA, Harman JS, Yang S. Physician and patient characteristics associated with clinical inertia in blood pressure control. J Clin Hypertens. 2013;15:820–4.
68. Khunti K, Davies MJ. Clinical inertia versus overtreatment in glycaemic management. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2018;6:266–8.
69. Vigersky RA, Fitzner K, Levinson J. Barriers and potential solutions to providing optimal guideline-driven care to patients with diabetes in the U.S. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:3843–9.
70. Pimazoni-Netto A, Zanella MT. Diabetes guidelines may delay timely adjustments during treatment and might contribute to clinical inertia. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2014;16:768–70.
71. Qaseem A, Wilt TJ, Kansagara D, Horwitch C, Barry MJ, Forciea MA. Hemoglobin A1c targets for glycemic control with pharmacologic therapy for nonpregnant adults with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a guidance statement update from the American College of Physicians. Ann Intern Med. 2018;168:569. https://doi.org/10.7326/M17-0939. 6 March 2018.
72. Morales J, Assumpcao-Morales M. The 2018 update of the American College of Physicians glycemic management recommendations – an invitation to continued inertia? Diabet Med. 2018;20:1809. https://doi.org/10.1111/dom.13325.
73. Home P. Diabetes: a diabetes mellitus guideline gone wrong – the 2017 ACP update. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2017;13:191–2.
74. Esposito K, Ceriello A, Giugliano D. Does personalized diabetology overcome clinical uncertainty and therapeutic inertia in Type 2 diabetes? Endocrine. 2013;44:343–5.
75. Conlin PR, Colburn J, Aron D, Pries RM, Tschanz MP, Pogach L. Synopsis of the 2017 U.S. department of veterans affairs/U.S. department of defense clinical practice guideline: management of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med. 2017;167:655–63.
76. Pallarés-Carratalá V, Pérez RP. Non-compliance and therapeutic inertia: two unanswered questions in clinical practice. Curr Med Res Opin. 2014;30:839–40.

77. Schmittdel JA, Uratsu CS, Karter AJ, Heisler M, Subramanian U, Mangione CM, et al. Why don't patients achieve recommended risk factor targets? poor adherence versus lack of treatment intensification. J Gen Intern Med. 2008;23:588–94.
78. Roumie CL, Elasy TA, Greevy R, Griffin MR, Liu X, Stone WJ, et al. Improving blood pressure control through provider education, provider alerts and patient education: a cluster randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2006;145:165–75.
79. Guthrie B, Inkster M, Fahey T. Tackling therapeutic inertia: role of treatment data in quality indicators. BMJ. 2007;335:542–4.
80. O'Connor PJ. Commentary – improving diabetes care by combating clinical inertia. Health Serv Res. 2005;40:1854–61.
81. Reach G, Pechtner V, Gentilella R, Corcos A, Ceriello A. Clinical inertia and its impact on treatment intensification in people with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Metab. 2017;43:501–11.
82. O'Connor PJ, Sperl-Hillen JAM, Johnson PE, Rush WA, Biltz G. Clinical inertia and inpatient medical errors. In: Henriksen K, Battles JB, Marks ES, Lewin DI, editors. Advances in patient safety: from research to implementation (Volume 2: concepts and methodology). Rockville: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (US); 2005.
83. Perlin JB, Pogach LM. Improving the outcomes of metabolic conditions: managing momentum to overcome clinical inertia. Ann Intern Med. 2006;144:525–7.
84. Strain WD, Blüher M, Paldánius P. Clinical inertia in individualising care for diabetes: is there time to do more in type 2 diabetes? Diabetes Ther. 2014;5:347–54.
85. Paling J. Strategies to help patients understand risks. BMJ. 2003;327:745–8.
86. Bailey CJ. Under-treatment of type 2 diabetes: causes and outcomes of clinical inertia. Int J Clin Pact. 2016;70:988–95.
87. Reach G. Clinical inertia, uncertainty and individualized guidelines. Diabetes Metab. 2014;40:241–5.
88. Barth JH, Misra S, Aakre KM, Langlois MR, Watine J, Twomey PJ, et al. Why are clinical practice guidelines not followed? Clin Chem Lab Med. 2015; https://doi.org/10.1515/cclm-2015-0871.
89. Reach G. Patient non-adherence and healthcare-provider inertia are clinical myopia. Diabetes Metab. 2008;34:382–5.
90. Reach G. Clinical inertia, uncertainty and individual guidelines. Diabetes Metab. 2014;40:241–5.
91. Miles RW. Fallacious reasoning and complexity as root causes of clinical inertia. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2007;8:349–54.
92. Miles RW. Cognitive bias and planning error: nullification of evidence-base medicine in the nursing home. J Am Dir Assoc. 2010;11:194–203.
93. Safford MM, Shewchuck R, Qu H, Williams JH, Estrada CA, Ovalle F, et al. Reasons for not intensifying medications: differentiating "clinical inertia" from appropriate care. J Gen Intern Med. 2007;22:1648.
94. Aujoulat I, Jacquemin P, Rietzschel E, Scheen A, Tréfois P, Wens J, et al. Factors associated with clinical inertia: an integrative review. Adv Med Educ Pract. 2014;4:141–7.
95. Khunti K, Millar-Jones D. Clinical inertia to insulin initiation and intensification in the UK: a focused literature review. Prim Care Diabetes. 2017;11:3–12.

Patient Adherence: Challenges, Myths, and Realities

24

Joel Rodriguez-Saldana

Introduction

To achieve the desired results of medical interventions, patients need to keep appointments, take medications, and make lifestyle changes. Their capacity to accept and carry out these tasks is unpredictable, and the adherence to medical recommendations is highly variable: some people are unable or unwilling to follow all of them, and only a small proportion have high levels of "compliance, adherence, or concordance" [1]. Patient adherence in diabetes is very important because it is associated with clinical outcomes and costs: it is estimated that for every 25% increase in medication, adherence A1c levels decrease 0.34% [2]. Conversely, nonadherent patients are more likely to require hospitalization and to incur in higher healthcare costs [2]. Adherence is a crucial link in the physician-patient interaction in chronic disease management.

Adherence or compliance with a therapeutic regime has been defined as the extent to which patients take medications as prescribed by their healthcare providers [3]. Adherence and concordance are terms increasingly used, because "compliance" implies that patients have to obey and comply with medical orders [3]. This assumption is unrealistic and results in conflicting differences between patients' and physicians' perspectives. Patients' expectations are derived from past experiences of health and illness at a personal level, and as observed in relatives, neighbors, friends, and colleagues, they are influenced by public and professional attitudes and by the media; *no two patients are the same* [4]. Professional beliefs are also influenced by personal experiences as patients, parents, relatives, observers, professional experience, and personality [4]. When patients do not meet the goals and expectations of healthcare providers, they are labeled as "noncompliant," a pejorative term that implies a moral failure to behave appropriately, from the belief that the correct view of diabetes and its management is exclusive of clinicians [5]. The professional concept of compliance is distant from reality, but it is still deeply rooted among physicians all over the world. Adherence rates are even below the goals in clinical trials, especially in persons with chronic diseases [6]. Lack of adherence or persistence with treatment by patients is a major contributor to poor clinical outcomes, regardless of physician's and health providers' efforts.

A Brief Story of Adherence

As far back as Hippocrates, physicians were concerned that patients followed physicians' advice [7]. Association of risk factors with negative health outcomes increased the authority of physicians' recommendations [7, 8]. Infectious diseases became the first focus of patient's compliance, particularly tuberculosis, which was contagious, was very common, affected people from every social and economic status, and, before the advent of antituberculous drugs, had very high mortality; patients who did not follow or obey doctors' orders were stigmatized. Introduction of the first effective antituberculous drugs in the 1940 increased the blaming of patients unwilling to accept hospitalization to receive an extended course of antimicrobials [8]. The emergence of the AIDS epidemic in the 1980s proved that these assumptions continue to be extrapolated for every disease.

Although the importance of drug compliance was initially recognized in tuberculosis, formally measurement occurred in the prophylaxis against streptococcal infection. Mohler and colleagues showed that the frequency and number of doses was inversely proportional to adherence and to the effectiveness of therapy [9, 10]. A controlled clinical trial and follow-up study published in 1957 and 1959 about 405 children with rheumatic fever who were randomly allocated

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (✉)
Multidisciplinary Centre of Diabetes, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_24

to compare the effectiveness of three antistreptococcal prophylactic regimens showed that penicillin injections were more effective than oral sulfas or penicillin [11, 12]. Adherence to long-term therapies was started to be measured in patients with tuberculosis when it was found that blood measurements of p-aminosalicylic acid were lower than expected [13, 14], and it was recognized that complexity of the regime reduced completion of therapy [15].

The role of social, cultural, and economic factors with compliance with medical regimes started to be suggested and evaluated. Sociologists, anthropologists, psychologists, and scientists from other disciplines began to study the role of personal, family, and environment on the acceptance, willingness, and adherence to medical recommendations and to explain "illness behaviors" (or "sick roles") beyond the medical perspective [16–18]. Early studies showed that the expectation that patients would always follow "medical orders" was unrealistic. In 1959, Eichorn and colleagues emphasized that patients' decision to accept or reject medical recommendations is the result of multiple determinants, including their attitude toward physicians and health, knowledge about the risks associated with the disease, and the personal approach to life [19].

Additional studies in other therapeutic areas supported these findings: in 1966 Johannsen and associates analyzed the acceptance of patients with heart disease to medical recommendations and predisposing variables to reject them [20]. They showed that education level was associated with disregard of medical advice: 83.3% of the patients followed medical recommendations, 84.1% followed restrictions to return to work, and 66.7% followed psychosocial counseling [20]. Caron and Roth analyzed the adherence of 525 patients receiving antacids, replicating the results of previous reports and the current reality of clinical practice: (1) most of the physicians overestimate patients' real adherence to treatment; (2) their estimates of patients' adherence were subjective, not objective; (3) physicians are unable to distinguish patients who actually adhere to treatment from those who do not; (4) physicians' estimates are highly inaccurate, for some patients too high and, for others, too low; and (5) to make matters worse, this study was carried out in hospitalized patients, in which it is assumed that treatment largely depends on the medical staff [21].

These pioneering studies contributed to raise the awareness of clinicians to recognize, attempt to measure the magnitude of patients' noncompliance, to understand its causes, and to intervene. A review by Porter to collect methods to detect defaulters identified three methods to assess medical compliance, still in use: (1) direct interrogation of patients and their families about frequency, dose, and time in which medications were taken; (2) residual tablet counting; and (3) measurement of drug metabolites or markers in urine [22]. Another study by Davis showed that doctors' perceptions of patient behavior are related to their "social distance" with patients and that reasons for noncompliance include (1) the patient's "personality," (2) the doctor's attitude, (3) the capacity of the patients to understand doctor's advice, (4) personal difficulties in the life of patients, and (5) the economic capacity to follow medical advice [23]. Detailed explanation, reminders, and persuasion were most important to influence noncompliant patients, while authoritarian and threatening attitudes reinforced noncompliance [23]. Afterward Davis described ten categories in doctor-patient interaction, ranging from mutual antagonism, disagreement, and tension to interactions in which mutual tensions are released and patients and physicians are satisfied [24]. Deficiencies in communication between physicians and patients were confirmed as the leading limiting factors reducing the response to medical recommendations. In a study of 800 pediatric outpatient visits to explore the effect of verbal interactions between doctor and patients, Francis and colleagues showed that 24% of the patients were grossly dissatisfied with their relationship to their doctors, 42.1% were highly compliant, 38% moderately compliant, and 11.4% totally noncompliant [25]. Doctor's friendliness, professional attitude, and understanding or concern were associated with high compliance, whereas unmet key factors, lack of warmth in the doctor-patient relation, and failure to receive explanations about diagnosis and cause of the child's illness were associated with noncompliance [25]. The problem of adherence to treatment in children continued to be recognized, and its causes were almost identical to the ones described in adults [26].

Further studies about noncompliance and its causes included taking antacids for peptic ulcer disease [27] and digoxin for congestive heart failure [28]. Gillum and Barsky showed that noncompliance is grossly underestimated and disclosed that leading factors were (1) psychological, (2) environmental and social, (3) complexity of the therapeutic regimen, and (4) physician-patient interaction [29, 30]. It became clear that noncompliance "curtails the benefits of therapeutic regimens, produces inestimable costs, and frustrates physicians." In response to the need to recognize the importance of noncompliance, more accurate and sensitive techniques to predict noncompliance were proposed, because the methods used in those days and even today were inaccurate and impractical or may alienate patients [31]. In 1975, Baekeland and Lundwall recognized (1) the importance of dropping out of treatment and its high frequency in the management of chronic disease; (2) the need to identify patients most likely to drop out; (3) patient factors responsible for dropping out, including personality traits and therapeutic styles; (4) understanding the implications of dropping out as treatment failures; and (5) interventions to

reduce the risk of dropping out, including patient selection and changes in treatment settings and approaches [32]. They also asked a crucial question: Do patients simply abandon treatment, or are they abandoned and/or pushed out of treatment? Rosenstock published one of the first reports in which compliance was associated with behavioral characteristics, including: (1) health motivation "or patients' interest and concern" with their health, (2) perceived susceptibility of the threat posed by disease, (3) perceived benefits of medical interventions, and (4) knowledge of the medical condition and understanding of expected effects of treatment, including schedules and doses of medications [33]. He also acknowledged that in many cases, patients do not receive adequate information about treatment because of organization factors, including long waiting times and distancing attitudes between physicians and patients [33]. In Canada, Stewart and associates made the following questions to a group of patients with chronic diseases treated by family physicians: what factors affect the quality of the relationship? And if the doctor-patient relationship affected the outcomes? [34]. Physicians' factors, including number of health problems and recent visits and allowing the patient to start the dialogue during the visit, were positively associated, while patients' factors were not; he concluded that devoting time and attention to identify comorbidities and continuity in healthcare, physicians would increase their performance [34].

Additional reports confirmed the low accuracy of physicians to predict noncompliance and the need to deal not only with the biomedical aspects of diseases but also with the social and behavioral characteristics of patients; when these factors are not integrated into the process of decision-making, it is unlikely that treatment plans based exclusively on technical considerations will be effective [35, 36]. Noncompliance results from a complex interaction of patients' attributes, including health beliefs, social and behavioral characteristics, the disease or health disorder, complexity of treatment, patient and providers, and organizational strengths and deficiencies. All of them exert strong influences amenable to modification, but less studied [37]. In sharp contrast with the medical opinions about causes of nonadherence prevailing until today, more than 30 years ago, it was confirmed that (1) compliance is not related to income, social class, occupation, or education; (2) physicians are unable to predict patients' willingness or ability to comply; and (3) most of the errors in taking medications are unintentional and related to the complexity and duration of therapy, number of medications, degree and modalities of counseling, and the use of dispensers [37].

New methods to measure compliance were introduced, including pill bottles with microprocessors to record every bottle opening as a presumptive dose, confirming that rates of drug compliance were lower in patients receiving higher doses and that pill counts overestimated the frequency of missed doses and serum concentrations achieved by drugs [38]. Petchey and Murphy noted that "(1) compliance is associated with patients' satisfaction; (2) noncompliance cannot simply be attributed to understanding or memory; (3) instead of being passive recipients of medical advice and treatment, patients participate in (the) monitoring of their health problems and the effects of treatment, its adverse effects, and their impact on their normal lives; (4) the word "compliance" implies that patients are either passively obedient or willfully disobedient in the face of medical expertise; and (5) collaboration in terms of doctor-patient relationships might be more constructive [39]."

Early interventions to improve the adherence to medical regimes included (1) letters, telephone, or physical reminders to reduce the frequency of broken appointments [40–45]; (2) awareness and educating medical students about the importance of compliance by experiencing it themselves [46]; and (3) ascertainment of indirect (self-reports, interviews, pill counting, and computerized monitors) and direct methods (biologic markers, tracer compounds, drug concentrations in the patients' biologic fluids) [41]. Strategies and aids to improve compliance included identifying risk factors of lack of adherence, simplified and individualized treatment plans, patient education, and aids to improve compliance, including labeling and packaging of containers and monitoring by health professionals, patients, and their families [47]. In recent years, the ability of patients to self-monitor capillary blood glucose in patients with diabetes [48], blood pressure in people with hypertension [49], body mass index to achieve sustained reductions in body weight [50], and adjust the dose of anticoagulants [51] has been documented, and stages of parallel cooperative monitoring in chronic disease have been described [52]. Patients are the leaders; adherence largely depends on them.

The Evidence Behind Compliance and Adherence

As a result of the importance of patient compliance on clinical outcomes, robust analysis methods were introduced, including meta-analysis and systematic reviews [53]. R Brian Haynes, a pioneer in this field, published a series of systematic reviews which are periodically updated [54–56]. These studies, and two reviews by van Dulmen et al. [57] and Viswanathan et al. [58], summarize the evidence of interventions to improve patients' adherence (Table 24.1).

Table 24.1 Meta-analysis and review of interventions to improve patients' adherence

Date	Author(s) and reference	Methods	Results
1996	Haynes et al. [54]	Systematic review 1553 citations and abstracts screened, 252 reviewed, 13 randomized controlled trials met all the criteria. Diseases analyzed included asthma, hypertension, streptococcal throat infection, acute infections, epilepsy, schizophrenia	Disparity in clinical problems, interventions, measures, and reporting of adherence Seven showed improvements in adherence, and six led to improvements in outcomes Short-term effectiveness using counseling and written information Long-term effectiveness included combinations of quality of care, information, counseling, reminders, self-monitoring, reinforcement, family support, and supervision Substantial improvements in adherence were not documented
1998	Roter et al. [53]	Meta-analysis 153 studies: 116 randomized controlled trials, 37 nonrandom comparisons Interventions or health problems analyzed: Prevention, immunization or periodic screening Patients discharged from the hospital Hypertension Mental health Diabetes Cancer	Small to large effect sizes for all compliance measures No single strategy or intervention has clear advantages with another Comprehensive interventions combining cognitive, behavioral, and affective components are more effective than single, isolated interventions
1998	Haynes et al. [54]	Systematic review 3133 citations and abstracts screened, 345 full text reviewed, 14 randomized controlled trials met all criteria 16 interventions	Eight studies showed improvements in adherence, and six led to improvements in outcomes Most of the studies were small, introducing the possibility of false-negative error Some interventions are highly complex and unlikely that their effects were mediated by adherence to medication Unclear potential to generalize, replicate, and disseminate the interventions Difficulties to be carried out in non-research settings Most studies did not assess the separate effects of complex interventions involved in chronic disease management None of the studies examined major clinical endpoints, short-term follow-up: less than 6 to 18 months To achieve full benefits of medical therapies, further innovations are required, including involving investigators from different clinical disciplines
2002	Mc Donald et al. [56]	Systematic review 6568 citations and abstracts screened, including 101 review articles, 549 full text reviewed, 33 randomized controlled trials met all criteria 39 interventions Disorders studied: Hypertension Schizophrenia, acute psychosis Asthma Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease Depression Human deficiency virus Diabetes Rheumatoid arthritis Epilepsy Hyperlipidemia Acute infections	Number and type of interventions: 1–6, including behavioral, cognitive, or social Interventions for short-term treatments: Counseling about the importance of adherence reinforced by written instructions Interventions for chronic treatments: Changes in dosing schedules Remaining interventions are complex and multifaceted, including care at worksites, pill containers, counseling, reminders, self-monitoring, support groups, feedback, and reinforcement Higher rates of adherence and improvements in blood pressure and glycemic control achieved with innovative interventions, including telephone-linked computer systems for monitoring and counseling patients with hypertension and automated assessment and self-care education calls with nurse follow-up for patients with diabetes
2007	Van Dulmen et al. [57]	Review of 38 systematic reviews of the effectiveness of adherence interventions published between 1990 and 2005	Effective interventions were found in four theoretical approaches: technical, behavioral, educational, and multifaceted or complex Technical solutions simplifying therapeutic regimes increase adherence rates; in some cases they improve clinical outcomes and reduce costs Effective interventions originate from behavioral theories Theoretical models to explain nonadherence are not effective to improve adherence There is still a scarcity of comparative studies about the effectiveness of theoretical models or their components, which needs to be assessed

Table 24.1 (continued)

Date	Author(s) and reference	Methods	Results
2012	Viswanathan et al. [58]	Systematic review of publications assessing the comparative effectiveness of patient, provider, systems, and policy interventions that improve adherence to medications From 4124 abstracts, 62 trials about patient-provider interactions or system performance, including 19 interventions and 4 observational studies were analyzed Clinical conditions amenable to improvement: Hypertension Heart failure Depression Asthma	Factors that increase medication adherence: Lower out of pocket expenses Case management Patient education with behavioral support Limited evidence about applicability of interventions or long-term effectiveness

Hypertension: An Example of Nonadherence and the Role of Deficiencies in Primary Care

At the same time that the decrease in the mortality by high blood pressure was associated with the appearance of new antihypertensive drugs, low persistence in their use and huge percentages of dropouts resulting in hypertensive crisis and visits to emergency rooms were documented [59, 60]: 50% of the patients were lost at 11 months, 74% dropped out at 5 years, and only 17% remained in treatment [60]. Main reasons to discontinue treatment included feeling well, absence of symptoms, absence of instructions or follow-up, lack of resources, medical advice to suspend, lack of family support, dissatisfaction with health providers, adverse effects from medications, and discouragement [60]. Socioeconomic factors showed differences between patients dropping out of treatment and controls, including education, employment, home ownership, and work status [60]. Leading factors to continue treatment included knowledge about the disease, adverse effects of inadequate treatment and consequences for the family, emotional satisfaction, physical improvement, and family support [60]. Another study showed that nurses under medical supervision were capable to operate a hypertension clinic with very low dropout rates; patients educated to self-monitor their blood pressure had better clinical outcomes and significant reductions in diastolic blood pressure [61].

In addition to its clinical efficacy and its importance to reduce the risk of cardiovascular events, antihypertensive treatment is important because it motivated the design of some of the first clinical trials to examine the effectiveness of interventions to improve patient's compliance. In 1975, Sackett et al. published the results of a clinical trial in which 245 Canadian steelworkers with persistent hypertension were randomly assigned to receive usual treatment and follow-up outside working hours or an educational program explaining "the facts of hypertension," its effects on target organs, health and life expectancy, compliance with use of medications, and reminders for pill taking [62]. The results showed that (1) in order to be effective, the lower limit of drug compliance had to be 80%; (2) patients assigned to the "convenience" strategy failed to increase their compliance; and (3) knowledge about a disease is not important to improve compliance, but patients who received it had become "masters" in health information [62]. Another study of the same group showed that reinforcement by high school graduates with no formal health training who taught patients to measure and record their blood pressure and to chart pill taking resulted in a 21.3% increase in medication compliance, by comparison to a decrease of 1.5% in the control group, with improvements in diastolic blood pressure [63].

In 1973, Finnerty, Mattice, and Finnerty published a groundbreaking analysis of causes of discontinuation of antihypertensive treatment at an outpatient clinic in Washington in which they identified three factors associated with healthcare delivery as the main causes: (1) long waiting times (2 and a half hours), (2) deficiencies in doctor-patient relationships (patients were seen by a different physician on each visit); and (3) brief duration of the visit (7.5 minutes) and, to make matters worse, long waiting times to receive medications at the pharmacy (1.8 hours) [64]. In response to these deficiencies, still encountered worldwide, 25% of patients believed they were able to treat themselves, 61% agreed to be treated by medical students, and 54.4% agreed to be treated by nurses [64]. These organizational deficiencies have been repeatedly documented; they still exist as examples of the management of chronic diseases, including diabetes. Some years later, Finnerty reflected that patients dropped out of treatment not because they were uneducated, not

because they did not care about their health, and not because they could not afford paying for medications [65]. They abandoned the clinic because "they were treated like cattle, herded from one room to another, left waiting for hours, to be examined by different doctors on each visit [65]." Major complaints centered on the amount of time they spent at the clinic and the lack of acceptable, effective relationships with physicians [65].

Hypertension became the prototype disease in which of adherence to medical treatment and its causes were described. Peter Rudd was a pioneer in this field; he recognized that it was very frequent, poorly predicted, and imprecisely measured and described three characteristics associated with failure to achieve blood pressure control: (1) behavioral factors, (2) biologic factors related to the unique manifestations of the disease in an individual, (3) pharmacologic factors including the role of side effects to suspend therapy, and combinations of the three [66]. Despite the publication of clinical practice guidelines since the1970s, a huge gap still exists between the evidence published by controlled clinical trials and what clinicians do in practice and between what clinicians recommend to patients and what patients do at home [67]. This gap and two of its major components (lack of effective physician response to uncontrolled hypertension and deficiencies in patient adherence) are crucial obstacles to deliver and receive adequate quality of care [68]. Problems of low adherence are frequently underestimated and not detected by physicians. Compliance of practitioners with practice guidelines for hypertension is very low, and even worse in patients with diabetes, with the associated increase in cardiovascular risk [69]. Even among patients enrolled in phase IV controlled clinical trials of antihypertensive medications and despite informed consent, all the patients on average omit 10% of the doses, including 42% omissions of a single-day dose, 15% on 1 or 2 consecutive days, and 47% on multiple days; 95% of the patients miss one dose each month, 48% omit taking medications for 78 hours or more at least once a year, and 13% omit every 6 months [70].

Recent methods to measure adherence in essential hypertension include the Morisky Medication Adherence Scale (MMAS), an eight-item structured, self-reported measure of adherence in primarily low income, minority patients [71]. Sensitivity and specificity of the MMAS to identify patients with poor blood pressure control are 93% and 53%, respectively, and a score of adherence in which 8 points were defined as highly adherent, 6–7 points as medium adherent, and less than 6 as low adherent patients is significantly associated with blood pressure control [71]. The MMAS is patient centered and addresses the main causes leading to voluntary and involuntary suspension of treatment including knowledge, social support, satisfaction with care, and complexity of medical regimen [71]. It has been internationally validated [72, 73] and has been applied to measure adherence in patients with diabetes [74].

Adherence and the Complexities of Diabetes Self-Management

The history and evolution of adherence in type 1 and type 2 diabetes has provided relevant contributions to understand the crucial role of patients and their families in the outcomes and the contribution of health delivery factors. Decades ago and still in many places, diabetes was managed with a paternalistic approach: in postwar Germany patients had to be admitted to hospitals to stabilize glucose, in the absence of training or resources for self-care, and were not allowed to change insulin dosages [75]. Mülhauser and Berger claimed that patient education "had degenerated to obedience training" including following diabetes diets based on fixed amounts of carbohydrates, proteins and fats, prohibited sugar intake, and had to be consumed as 6–7 times meals at fixed times, every day ("doctors' orders") [75]. This approach was grossly ineffective; acute and chronic complications were frequent. The emotional consequences of diabetes, recognized for centuries, evolved in the construction of a "diabetic personality," in which the daily challenges to confront the disease, its treatment and consequences, were used to explain and attribute poor treatment outcomes on patients; *it was their fault*. The myth of a diabetic personality ignored the enormous scope of expression of individual personalities in adjusting to the daily demands of a healthy lifestyle. This one-dimensional view implies the adoption of an inflexible model of behavioral adjustment, which is rejected by many people [76]. In one of the first studies to estimate the adherence in home management of 60 adults with diabetes, Watkins and colleagues reported that 75% of patients did not adhere to diet, 66% were making errors in urine testing for glucose, more than 50% made errors in insulin dosage, and only 50% were giving themselves good foot care [77]. Only one patient was deemed "acceptable" – completely adherent – in the five areas of management, and there was a negative association between knowledge and effectiveness of self-care. In other words, *patients in poorer control knew more about diabetes than those under control*. By comparison, a diabetes education program addressing roles of physicians, health providers, and patients and the influence of different attitudes, behaviors, and skills by patients and health professionals showed to improve compliance [78]. Essential features of this program included (1) a team, nonthreatening, nonauthoritarian approach; (2) a group process for support, sharing of experiences, and practice according to individual needs; (3) learning by experience rather than conceptual learning to small groups of patients; (4) regular evaluation for education and to raise awareness: and (5) innovative educational techniques *that induced changes in health behavior* [78].

The multiplicity of self-care activities that patients with diabetes have to carry out every day to "adhere to treatment" confirms the need to distinguish the differential difficulties of "adhering" to medications and to lifestyle changes.

Nevertheless, interventions to improve adherence have been largely inadequate: in 1986, Anderson stated that "diabetes educators lack the time and expertise to become familiar with theories of human behavior…diabetes education reflects an extension of the transference of information found in most schools…based on the idea that lack of knowledge and skills accounts for most of poor self-care behaviors [79]." He also claimed that patients' behavior is strongly influenced by their view of diabetes and stressed the need that diabetes educators become skilled designers of patient education programs that facilitate changes *in the personal meaning of diabetes*. This was a pioneering concept associated with the personal model of disease described shortly afterward by Glasgow and colleagues [80].

Complexities in diabetes management are illustrated by the large variation of adherence to medications, ranging from 36% to 93% [81–84]. Adherence to incorporate lifestyle changes, including diet and exercise, is even lower; multiple factors are influential, including (1) comorbidities, (2) cost of therapy and lack of health insurance, (3) adverse family dynamics and codependency, (3) old age, (4) frequency of doses and number of medications, and (5) poor provider-patient relationships and failure to fulfill the patients' health beliefs [85]. Even when patients are willing to adhere to medical therapy, additional barriers involve (1) cost of medications, (2) remembering doses, (3) reading prescription labels, and (4) obtaining refills [86]. Additional barriers in patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes demonstrate that adherence to one aspect of the regimen is not related to others and that psychosocial variables and situational factors are also important [87, 88]. Noncompliance with health regimens is by no means unique to diabetes; the problem exists with all chronic dieases [89], but compliance with diabetes regimens may be even poorer than regimens for other conditions, taking into account that the typical diabetes regimen is complex, of lifelong duration, and requires introducing multiple behavior changes [89]. The role and challenges that persons with diabetes have to confront were summarized by Bush [90]:

> Of all chronic diseases, diabetes is foremost in putting the responsibility for ongoing health on patients. Proper diabetes treatment requires not simply that patients take medications and visit the doctor, but that they ultimately make true lifestyle changes….. major and substantial change in behavior is easy to discuss but hard to achieve, and patients may view the treatment of diabetes worse than the disease itself. The inability of patients to do exactly what we want is so rampant that we have made it a diagnosis: non-compliance [90].

Adherence to diabetes treatment has proven to be a conceptual and empirical enigma; studies related to the health belief model, social learning theory, and the psychology of interpersonal relationships to identify determinants of adherence behaviors have great relevance in clinical practice [91, 92]. Over five decades, several models were proposed to explain individual health-related behaviors, including the "health belief model" (HBM) [93–96]. The basic components of the HBM were developed from psychological and behavioral theories derived from the "value expectancy" approach of Levin in 1944 [96], to describe behavior or decision-making under uncertainty. Its major elements included (1) the individual state of readiness to address a particular health problem and the perception of the threat represented by illness, (2) the belief in the efficacy of a person's behavior to reduce the threat and the consequences and perceived barriers involved in the action, and (3) a "cue to action," i.e., external or internal "triggers" that induce the appropriate health behavior, for instance, adherence to take medications [93–95]. Based on this model, a construct was made to explain and predict compliance with health and medical recommendations (Table 24.2).

The HBM showed that to improve patient adherence, it is important to understand why nonadherence occurs, to move beyond the patients' traditional role, and to consider a variety of demographic, psychological, social, physicians', medical system, disease, and treatment factors [93, 94]. In the traditional approach to health behavior change, the healthcare provider is seen as the expert who knows what is best for the patient, based on the assumption that all the patients should change their behavior, that all have the same willingness to change, and that the disease and its treatment are their most important priorities [97]. This assumption is not valid: lack of concordance between patients and providers and divergences in the approach to health status has been clearly documented in persons with diabetes. Despite agreements in the perception of severity, large disparities exist about the impact of adherence on the cost of treatment and its benefits; patient and physician discordance correlates with higher levels of self-care and lower glucose levels [98]. Low levels of agreement between patients and physicians (kappa = 0.23) about adherence to diabetes treatment have been clearly documented, and physicians' recommendations are poorly understood by patients [98, 99]. Despite the existing evidence, patient-provider discrepancies continue to be reported worldwide until today [100].

Table 24.2 Model to predict and explain compliance behavior

Readiness to change and compliance behavior	Barriers and obstacles	Behavior of compliance
Motivation		
Benefits to treat the disease	Age, access to treatment, complexity, side effects,	Likelihood to carry out the expected behavior
Probability that compliance will reduce the threat		

Adapted from Becker and Maiman [94]

> By identifying discrepancies between their assessment of adherence and that of the patients and avoiding the systematic attribution of poor outcomes to poor adherence, physicians could generate more confident and collaborative relationships…..and facilitate self-management [99].

In addition to patient behavior, multiple facilitating and inhibiting factors influence the level of metabolic control including patient-provider relationships, communication, social support, and must be integrated into diabetes care [101]. Application of theoretical constructs such as the health belief model and the locus of control has shown modest improvements in the perceived severity of diabetes, in the ability to carry out recommended behaviors, and on the benefits of training but not on self-reported adherence to treatment [102, 103].

Psychological Issues and Adherence in Persons with Diabetes

The importance of psychological aspects on diabetes was documented as early as the seventeenth century when Willis and Maudsley noted that prolonged depression or anxiety appeared to cause diabetes [104]. Additional reports from the nineteenth century provided a conceptual framework in support that emotional disruptions antedate metabolic decompensation [104]. Studies about psychological aspects of diabetes increased and identified four important topics that continue to be recognized: (1) association of psychological factors with the onset of the disease, (2) the influence of the environment on its course, (3) the immediate response and long-term personal adjustment, and (4) the reaction of the family to the illness and its impact on the family structure [104–106]. The 1970s saw the emergency of behavioral medicine as a new paradigm to understand disease-behavior interactions, an attempt to work backward from physiology to identify relevant behavioral interventions for disease prevention and management, a major difference between a new behavioral model and the old psychosomatic model [107]. Russell Glasgow, a pioneer and leader in the study of behavioral aspects and management of diabetes and chronic disease, described the limitations of applying traditional compliance terms in patients with diabetes, ignoring the complexity of diabetes self-care [108]. "In addition to taking medicines, persons with diabetes have to carry out multiple activities including lifestyle changes and blood glucose monitoring, which are frequently not communicated or measured [108]." He acknowledged that having diabetes, treating diabetes, and developing diabetic complications all have their own psychological impact and that quantitative measurements are essential to account for the complex interactions between personal and environmental factors that facilitate or hinder adjustment and coping, including adherence [109]. Glasgow and colleagues published a series of studies about the relevance of supportive and non-supportive factors related to adherence and glycemic control, including family influences [110], and psychosocial correlates on self-care behaviors [111–113]. Regimen adherence should be considered in the context of other factors, instead of assuming that adherence and control are simply the result of one-to-one interactions between patients and physicians. Analysis of psychosocial factors related to self-management in diabetes resulted in the description of "personal models of disease," including disease-related beliefs, emotions, knowledge, and experiences [114]. Glasgow and associates described the concept of personal models in persons with diabetes and their predictive value to carry out self-care activities related to adherence to treatment and glycemic control [114, 115]. The consistency of personal models of "perceived treatment efficacy (PTE)" as barriers or facilitators to self-management has been consistently confirmed [116]. Patient "noncompliance" may be the result of impaired PTE. If patients do not believe that a recommended action contributes to a positive impact on their health, it is understandable that they might lose their motivation [116].

The Role of Depression on Adherence

The association of diabetes with depression and its importance on clinical outcomes has been recognized for decades [117–120]. The natural course of depression in people with diabetes is more adverse than depression "in the medically well [118]." Screening and treatment for depression in diabetes remains incomplete and is mostly focused on North American and European healthcare systems [119]. Clinical evidence has demonstrated the association between the severity of depression on adherence to diet and medications, functional impairment, and healthcare costs in patients with diabetes [119]. Coexistence of diabetes and depression increases perception of symptoms, disability, and mortality, impairs self-care behaviors, and is "lethal for adherence [120–123]." Ciechanowski coined the term "diapression" to remark the adverse impact of depression on multiple aspects of diabetes including symptoms, self-care, adherence to treatment, life habits, healthcare utilization, and patient trust and satisfaction with care [124]. People with depression amplify and mimic diabetes symptoms and feel worse. Major depression is associated with lower adherence to antidiabetics, antihypertensives, lipid-lowering drugs, and glucose monitoring [124]. Changes in the use of healthcare in patients with diabetes and depression include more calls, appointments, diagnostic tests, more

visits to emergency services, and 4.5 times higher healthcare costs [124, 125]. Conversely, patients with diabetes and depression may use fewer necessary medical services due to missed or cancelled appointments or avoid scheduled appointments because of lack of motivation, isolation, lower concentration, or general disorganization. Patients with diabetes miss more than twice scheduled and same-day primary care appointments than people without depression [126]. Because of the adverse effects of the interaction between depression and diabetes, treatment goals should focus on the improvement of depression as well as improvement on glycemic control [119].

Emotional Distress and Adherence to Treatment

Inconsistencies in the reported prevalence of depression, association with self-management, and glycemic control have led to consider the role of diabetes distress to understand the association between diabetes, the emotional burden of self-management, the threat of complications, and the potential loss of functioning [127]. Diabetes distress refers to a broader affective experience than depression: it captures the worries, concerns, and fears of patients with progressive and demanding chronic diseases such as diabetes [128]. Diabetes distress is not a proxy for clinical depression; instead, it reflects an emotional response to a demanding health-related condition [127]. Baseline diabetes distress is a significant independent predictor of electronically monitored and self-reported adherence at follow-up [129]. Consequently, diabetes distress should be considered one of the components of a core construct among depression symptoms, "subclinical depression," and major depressive disorder [127].

Behavioral Strategies to Improve Adherence and Self-Care

Motivational Interviewing

Motivational interviewing arose from experiences acquired in the management of alcoholism [130], a complex health problem with interrelated social, personal, and behavioral components in which the directive medical approach had been repeatedly unsuccessful. Motivational interviewing has its roots on Bandura's self-efficacy theory, which he defined as "a judgment of one's ability to organize and execute given types of performances [131]." In his classical book, Bandura explained that people have always striven to control the events that affect their lives and that the growth of knowledge over human history enhanced people's ability to predict events and try to control them; the *belief in supernatural systems of control* (in this case, physician's authority over the patient's everyday behaviors) is surpassed by conceptions that acknowledge the people's power to shape their own destiny [131]. Changing threatening health behaviors and following medical advice are important components of almost every medical interaction, but they can be difficult to accomplish; practitioners commonly end up making cursory attempts to satisfy their perception of the problem or avoiding the subject [132]. Telling or threatening people that they will "pay the consequences" if they don't change their lifestyle or take medications is rarely enough to change behavior [132]. People change and follow doctor's orders under the guidance or influence of individual, unique perceptions. Motivational interviewing has been shown to promote behavior change in a wide range of healthcare settings in which lifestyle changes are required, including the "big four" lifestyle habits (smoking, excessive drinking, lack of exercise, and unhealthy diet [133]), adherence to treatment for obesity, diabetes, and infection with the HIV virus [134]. Motivational interviewing is based on the recognition that advising or ordering patients to change is often unrewarding and ineffective [135]. Instead of a vertical approach, a guiding style is required to engage with patients, identify strengths and limitations, encourage motivation for change, and promote the autonomy of decision-making [135].

Diabetes Empowerment

Martha Funnell and Robert Anderson described two approaches to diabetes patient education: one based in compliance, and the second based on empowerment, and they stressed the importance to recognize that adherence and compliance are dysfunctional concepts [136, 137]. Patient empowerment recognizes the unique role and responsibilities of patients in the daily treatment of diabetes, based on the premise that persons have the capacity to make choices and are responsible for their consequences [138, 139]. Diabetes empowerment is intended to enable patients to make informed decisions about *their personal diabetes care* and to be fully responsible members of the healthcare team [138]. Empowerment offers a practical conceptual framework for diabetes education and provides patients with the knowledge, skills, and responsibility to change, promote health, and maximize the use of available resources [140]. Empowerment is defined as "the discovery and development of one's inborn capacity to be responsible for one's own life [141]." It is designed to help patients develop the knowledge, skills, attitudes, and necessary self-awareness to assume the responsibility for their health-related decisions [139]. People

are empowered when they have (1) enough knowledge to make rational decisions, (2) enough control, (3) enough resources to implement their decisions, and (4) enough experience to evaluate the effectiveness of their actions [141]. To identify a measure of diabetes self-related efficacy for adults that focused on psychosocial areas, Funnell and Anderson developed the Diabetes Empowerment Scale (DES), a 37-item questionnaire that showed improvements in psychosocial status and glycemic control [142]. A professional education program based on diabetes empowerment showed significant improvements in counseling skills [138], and the comparison of an empowerment-based Diabetes Self-Management Consultant with mailed metabolic assessments showed modest improvements in diabetes-related quality of life and satisfaction with diabetes care [143]. Unlike the traditional medical approach, empowerment is not something one does to patients: empowerment begins when healthcare professionals acknowledge that patients are the ones who really have the control of their daily diabetes care. "Empowerment occurs when the health professional's goal is to increase the capacity of patients to think critically and make autonomous, informed decisions." [144]

Adherence and Diabetes: A Long Way to Go

Assessment of patient and physicians' disparities has shown that adherence is not dependent of characteristics traditionally perceived by physicians (observable cues) like sex, race, or age. In addition to information and communication problems, prejudice from clinicians reduces their capacity to understand the patients' needs and their resources and willingness to change [145]. The use of "adherence aids," including pill boxes, putting the pills in special places, and associating pill taking with daily events like meals, has shown limited effectiveness [146]. Failure to attend medical visits or to monitor glucose, blood pressure, and lipoprotein levels is associated with higher levels of glycosylated hemoglobin, systolic blood pressure, and LDL cholesterol, but failure of physicians to intensify therapy in patients not achieving the goals (clinical inertia) is also a contributing factor, probably more important than patients' adherence, on the quality of healthcare [147–149]. Adherence to diabetes treatment depends on a variety of interacting factors, with comorbidity and its consequent polypharmacy, as one of increasing importance [150]. Multiple factors affect the patients' capacity to adhere to medical recommendations, including personal capacities, health beliefs, and locus of control. Family and social support provides immediate practical help and contributes to mitigate the stress of living with illness. Several studies have shown positive and significant relationships between social support, and adherence to diabetes treatment albeit the exact mechanism by which social support affects patients' adherence is not completely understood [151]. Emphatic engagement is also important and may even reduce the frequency of acute complications at least [152]. Competence and skills to overcome clinical inertia and assist patients to increase their adherence to treatment, instead of just reiterating what they should be doing and putting the blame on them if they fail, are key components of success in diabetes care [153].

Measuring Adherence in Diabetes and Beyond

Current metrics used to measure adherence in research settings have been recently reviewed [154, 155]. Indirect metrics include the medication possession ratio (MPR), the adjusted medication possession ratio method (AMPRM), the proportion of days covered (PDC), and persistence and daily average consumption; for example, an MPR of 80% is used as the cutoff to define adherence, and PDC represents the number of days supplied during an interval, divided by the total number of days during that interval based on pharmacy or insurance claims [154]. In clinical settings, adherence is indirectly assessed using patient recall, combined with questionnaires to assess barriers, pill counting, and reviewing pill bottles. Methods of direct measurement include direct observation, measuring drug levels, markers, achievement of therapeutic goals, and adherence instruments such as the Morisky Medication Scale, previously mentioned in this Chapter [154, 155]. Adherence rates to self-care modalities in persons with diabetes including diet, exercise, blood glucose monitoring, medication taking, and foot care have been estimated. Recent examples of adherence to medication are shown in Table 24.3.

These studies show that adherence rates are lower than expected in clinical guidelines, even with innovative medications. Taking into account the low rates of persistence documented in these studies "from the real world," it is also intriguing to consider if these medications will achieve the effectiveness that has been documented in long-term clinical trials. For example, the median follow-up of LEADER with a GLP-1 agonist was 3.8 years; median follow-up of EMPA-REG with an SGLT-2 inhibitor was 4 years, whereas the ELIXA trial is considered of short duration because it only lasted 2 years! Giving the short duration of persistence, these innovative medications can only demonstrate, as stated by the experts, "non-inferiority as compared with placebo…but showing no evidence of clinical benefit beyond HbA1c lowering [164, 165]."

Table 24.3 Studies about adherence in diabetes management

Year	Author(s)	Patients and intervention	Results and conclusions
2009	Yeaw et al. [156]	Retrospective analysis of pharmacy claims in a database of more than 64 million members Proportion of days covered and persistence among new users of six commonly used chronic medication categories	Six-month persistence for oral antidiabetics: 66% Odds of discontinuation of oral antidiabetics were significantly lower than for other therapeutic classes
2009	Van Bruggen et al. [150]	Baseline and follow-up data of a randomized controlled trial comparing usual care with care according to a national guideline 30 general practices, 1283 patients Number of prescribed drugs and adherence indices (AI) for oral glucose, antihypertensives, and lipid lowering drugs	Higher drug prescriptions in the intervention group An inverse relationship between the number of drugs prescribed during the last 6 months and patients' adherence to blood pressure medications
2010	Fischer et al. [157]	Compilation of e-prescriptions written in 1 year to identify filled prescriptions to evaluate primary nonadherence and identify predictors of nonadherence	78% of prescriptions were filled Higher adherence rates for prescriptions written by primary care physicians Nonadherence for newly prescribed antidiabetics: 31.4%
2013	Koro et al. [158]	Retrospective analysis of patients with type 2 diabetes from a national database	Persistence at 6 months: GLP-1 agonists, 31%, and DPP-4 inhibitors, 39% Adherence at 1 year: GLP-1 agonists – 11% DPP-4 inhibitors – 18% Other medications – 16%
2016	Alfian et al. [159]	Cross-sectional survey in 91 patients with type 2 diabetes using the eight-item Morisky Medication Adherence Scale (MMAS)	Adherence rates: Low: 49.4% Medium: 29.7% High: 20.9% Higher adherence contributes to improved quality of life
2017	Al-Keilani et al. [160]	Cross-sectional survey to investigate self-monitoring of blood glucose adherence and predictive factors in 1079 patients with diabetes	Adherence rate: 59% Predictors: Insulin use versus oral antidiabetics Previous diabetes education Knowledge about the use of glucose monitors
2017	He et al. [161]	Retrospective analysis of database insurance claims to assess adherence (≥80.0% possession rate) and persistence (no gaps in insulin therapy during ≥90 days) to insulin therapy and associated factors 24,192 patients with type 2 diabetes	Adherence rate: 30.9% Persistence rate: 53.0% Mean time to non-persistence: 230.3 days Patients initiated with analogs were more likely to be adherent compared with patients initiated with human insulin Lower adherence in patients initiated with basal insulin compared with patients initiated with premixed insulin Patients with hypertension and dyslipidemia or treated with prandial insulin or with severe hypoglycemia were more likely to be nonadherent/nonpersistent
	Lin et al. [162]	Retrospective study to assess treatment persistence and associated outcomes in 7320 patients with type 2 diabetes treated with a GLP-1 agonist in combination with basal insulin	Treatment persistence: 16.9% Median time to discontinuation: 133 days Persistent patients had greater A1c reductions, were more likely to achieve A1c <7.0%, were less likely to experience hypoglycemia, had fewer hospitalizations, and were less likely to experience hypoglycemia Total medical charges were significantly lower for persistent patients
	Flory et al. [163]	Retrospective study of a cohort of 11,067 patients from a database including information on more than 120 million commercially insured and Medicare Advantage enrollees Unit to measure adherence: "daily medication possession probability" (MPP): days of supplied prescription/number of patients in the cohort	Clear separation of adherence between drug classes after 90 days Daily MPPs: Sulfonylureas: 0.49 Metformin: 0.46 Basal insulin: 0.39 Glitazones: 0.36 GLP-1 agonists: 0.30 DPP-4 inhibitors: 0.21 Particular attention needs to be paid to adherence issues with newer drug classes. i.e., GLP-1 agonists and DPP-4 inhibitors Substantial differences between rates at which diabetes drugs are prescribed and rates at which patients actually take them

Understanding Adherence Beyond the Medical Perspective

In a lecture "upon medical ethics," Ingelfinger stated that "if you agree that the physician's primary function is to make the patient feel better, a certain amount of authoritarianism, paternalism and domination are the essence of physician's effectiveness [166]." Millions of doctors worldwide still believe that persuasion and mind bending are necessary to be an effective physician [8]. Seven decades of efforts have been devoted to understand adherence from the patients' perspective, starting with the need to change semantics, to move forward from uncooperativeness or noncompliance to adherence as the most accepted but still inaccurate term [167]. Other expressions to designate medication taking are problematic [167]: they imply that physicians have control over patients' behavior, taking medications as they prescribe them is the only means to obtain benefit, and create an unjustifiable distinction between persons who take all the medications as prescribed and those who deviate by any measure, a biased dichotomy clearly distant to the reality, which ignores the existence of different patient behaviors [167]. A new language of medication taking has been required for decades and will be increasingly important, as the role of patients in decision-making and in the successful management of chronic disease is recognized [168]. Steiner and Earnest suggested that to improve the language of medication taking [168]:

1. Terminology has to change; patients have the most important opinion about the best strategy to increase medication taking.
2. Physicians have to ask about medication taking, to be prepared and willing to reply questions.
3. Outcomes have to be emphasized; the importance of medication taking to achieve the results of therapy has to be clearly explained.

Adherence, Compliance, and Concordance: What's Next?

It is still necessary to find an adequate definition that could explain or at least provide an approximate idea about what is involved when patients respond positively to physicians' recommendations, *when they comply or adhere*. "Compliance" has permeated medical science and implies the existence of a medical-centered model of behavior, while "adherence" implies that patients have more autonomy in defining and following the medical treatment [169]. Glasgow and Anderson argued against this claim, based on (1) the counterproductivity of the terms "compliance and adherence;" (2) the uselessness of these approaches when they send the wrong message to patients and health professionals; (3) the multidimensional nature of behaviors leading to adherence, instead of the traditional idea that it is the result of the unitary patient-physician interaction; and (4) the dynamic, always changing nature of treatment [170]. They proposed alternative terms such as self-care or "self-management" to describe the cluster of daily behaviors that patients perform to manage their (personal) diabetes [170].

Table 24.4 summarizes the evolving definitions of compliance, adherence, and concordance.

In conclusion, the story of definitions used to describe a persons' follow-up behavior in response to "medical orders" shows that (1) there is not still a term that accurately describes the behavioral process and personal components leading to patient's performance, albeit "concordance" is probably the best; (2) definitions have evolved from the reductionist view that "it all comes down" to the authority of physicians, to view adherence as a set of interacting behaviors influenced by social determinants and the ecology of healthcare [178]. In his definition of compliance, Wright asked, With what? and criticized the all-inclusive approach to adhere to "everything that is ordered [173]." The complexities of lifestyle and the role of internal and external influences have been recognized, and multiple behavioral strategies have been devised to encourage and support lifestyle changes, including adherence to medications.

Addressing the Challenge of Adherence

The ability of physicians to recognize and measure the magnitude of adherence to medical therapies is still poor, and interventions to improve it have produced unsatisfactory results [3]. The prevalence of primary nonadherence, in which patients did not have their prescription filled within 30 days of receiving the order, has been estimated to range from 7% to 21%, depending on therapeutic class, from 5% to 28.4% with antihypertensives, from 11% to 31.4% with antidiabetics, and from 5% to 28.2% with lipid lowering drugs and is even higher for new medications [158, 179]. In the United States, 3.8 billion prescriptions are written each year, approximately one in five new prescriptions are never filled, and, among those filled, about one half are taken incorrectly, regarding timing, dosage, frequency, and duration [180]. The first survey on adherence sponsored by the National Community Pharmacists Association in 2013 in American adults 40 years and older showed that 24% were completely adherent, with one nonadherent behavior out of nine, 20% were somewhat adherent, and 15% were largely nonadherent (noncompliant using the time-honored term) [181]. In other words, only one in four people expected to take medications for chronic diseases is adherent as expected. Regression modeling identified six predictors of

Table 24.4 Definitions of compliance, adherence, and concordance

Year	Author(s) and reference	Term	Definition
1976	Sackett and Haynes [7]	Compliance	The extent in which the patient's behavior to take medications, following diets, or implementing lifestyle changes coincides with medical or health advice
1982	Dracup and Meleis [171]	Compliance	Extent to which an individual chooses behaviors that coincide with a clinical prescription and achieved through negotiations between health professionals and patients
1987	Meichenbaum and Turk [172]	Adherence	Degree to which a patient follows instructions and prescriptions of his doctor
1993	Wright [173]	Compliance	Compliance with what? It has different meanings Medication taking? Alterations in diet? Advice on exercise or smoking? Keeping appointments?
1996	Urquart [174]	Compliance	Extent to which the patients' actual history of drug administration corresponds to the prescribed regimen
1997	Houston-Miller et al. [175]	Compliance *with medical recommendations*	Extent to which recommendations are followed as defined
2003	World Health Organization [176]	Adherence	Extent to which a person's behavior corresponds with agreed recommendations from a healthcare provider
2005	Balkrishnan [177]	Adherence	Extent to which a patient participates in treatment after agreeing to that regimen
2012	Steiner [178]	Adherence	A set of interacting behaviors influenced by individual, social, and environmental forces

medication adherence: (1) personal connection with a pharmacist or pharmacy staff, (2) affordability of medications, (3) continuity of healthcare, (4) importance for patients to take medications exactly as prescribed, (5) patients' information about their health status, and (6) extent of side effects from medications.

The impact of adherence on clinical outcomes is increasingly recognized and investigated in diseases and health problems in which patients' involvement is essential, from dieting to dermatologic disorders. Nonadherence is associated with higher rates of hospital admissions, poor health outcomes, increased morbidity and mortality, and increased healthcare costs [180]. Nonadherence represents a threat to patient's health and adds huge costs to healthcare systems, estimated at $290 billion annually in the United States [181].

Despite the explosion of research about the effects of medical advice on behaviors, persistence to take medications or to sustain lifestyle changes continues to be low. Instead of considering that resistance to change depends entirely on patients, the way in which physicians talk to them is more important [182]. Addressing needs, negotiation, and collaboration to identify the patients' willingness to change and their personal, family, and social support to harness positive and intrinsic motivation have become new paradigms to improve the participation of patients in their self-management. Patient-centered counseling is essential to improve adherence to recommended treatments, and models for counseling behavior change have become increasingly used, such as the "5As" model proposed by Glasgow et al., which comprises five dominions: Assess, Advise, Agree, Assist, and Arrange [183].

Adherence or compliance is a complex behavioral process strongly influenced by the health beliefs and the environment in which patients live, by the healthcare providers' practice, and by the delivery of healthcare [183]. More than enough evidence exists to support recommendations to improve patient outcomes addressing adherence or compliance and the importance of a multilevel approach including patients, providers, and healthcare organizations [175]. Examples of interventions include the CDC's Data to Care strategy that identifies and reengages nonadherent patients by linking them through the health department, their care providers or both to improve individuals' health and reduce transmission of HIV virus, and the strategies used by Reliant Medical Group to improve adherence to blood pressure medication, including (1) ensuring that patients understand the benefits, (2) choosing lower-cost medications, (3) minimizing medication complexity, and (4) monitoring side effects [180].

In recognition of the importance of adherence in chronic disease management, the World Health Organization published a report in 2003 which identified five influential interacting dimensions: (a) social and economic factors, (b) health system-related factors, (c) condition-related factors, (d) therapy-related factors, and (e) patient-related factors [176]. Multiple system-related factors have negative effects on adherence and clinical outcomes, including deficiencies of health services, poor medication distribution systems, and limited knowledge and training of healthcare providers about

adherence and effective interventions for improvement [176]. Take-home messages from the WHO report reinforce the role of patients to achieve clinical outcomes [176]:

1. Poor adherence to treatment of chronic diseases is a worldwide problem of striking magnitude.
2. The impact of poor adherence will grow as the burden of chronic disease continues to increase.
3. Consequences of poor adherence to long-term therapies include poor health outcomes and increased healthcare costs.
4. Improving adherence also improves patients' safety.
5. Adherence is an important modifier of the effectiveness of health systems.
6. Increasing the effectiveness of adherence interventions may have a greater impact on the health of population than improvements in specific medical treatments.
7. Patients need to be supported, not blamed.
8. Adherence is simultaneously influenced by several factors.
9. Health professionals need to be trained in adherence.

Modified from [176]

A Change of Paradigm Is Needed but Still Waiting

In a classical review by Blackwell in 1973, he stated that "much effort is spent in the study of the effects of drugs, but little attention is devoted (to confirm) if patients take them as directed [184]." He cited a pioneering study in which Porter concluded that the significance and extent of drug defaulting has been largely ignored and that "drug defaulters" are part of every practice [22]. Blackwell recommended that to prescribe effectively, physicians should be aware of the frequency and types of noncompliance and be able to recognize and reduce the factors contributing to poor compliance, including (1) the illness (acute or chronic), (2) the patient (age and gender), (3) the physician's relation to the patient, (4) the complexity of the medication regimen, and (5) the treatment setting (hospital, ambulatory), and proposed three measures to prevent or reduce noncompliance: (1) recognition of patients at risk, (2) treatment planning, and (3) clearly explaining the treatment, instead of facing the consequences [22]. In his conclusion, he stated that "too often a prescription (or a medical visit) signals the end of an interview rather than the start of an alliance [22]."

Poor adherence increases the risks for hospitalization, morbidity, mortality, and overall healthcare costs [154, 180]. The association between poor adherence and outcomes is independent of the pharmacologic effects of drugs and exceeds the benefits demonstrated by clinical trials [185, 186]. Medical interventions are usually based on the mistaken assumption that adherence is a single behavior that can be predicted and that individual clinicians can improve it; counseling has to be complemented by outreach interventions and removal of structural and organizational barriers. Patient involvement and facilitating physician's behaviors are associated with positive outcomes. It has been shown that being treated with dignity and patients' involvement is independently associated with positive outcomes [187]. Many people with diabetes do not see a doctor, and seeking medical care is influenced by a range of social and psychological factors besides the presence or absence of medical problems [188]. Patients' willingness and capacity to "follow doctors' orders" is also a consequence of these factors, and they have potentially negative effects on medical interventions. Involving patients in decisions is important; it is crucial, it is good for them, and it is challenging and fruitful for physicians and health professionals, who need to substitute the paternalistic view to recognize the active role of patients in the teaching process, in the delivery and outcomes of medical care [189]. Medication taking behavior is complex and requires multifaceted strategies to effect improvement; one of the most important is trust [186]. Providers perceived as competent but uncaring would be respected but not trusted, whereas providers perceived as caring but incompetent would be viewed with affection but not trusted. Excellent treatments are not useful if patients do not take them and if physicians are not able to intensify treatment of poorly controlled patients [190].

Conclusion

Treatment and advice for patients with diabetes is complex and includes (1) diet, (2) medication, (3) testing, (4) lifestyle, (5) foot care, (6) attending clinic visits, and (7) integration with priorities of life [191]. Along with lack of integrated care and clinical inertia, poor adherence is one of the contributing factors of poor glycemic control [192]. The reported incidence of poor medication adherence in type 2 diabetes ranges widely according to the methodological approach but nevertheless is highly prevalent, ranging from 28.7% to 93% [191, 192]. In addition to poor glycemic control, lack of adherence increases the use of health resources, medical costs, and mortality rates [193]. Defining adherence in patients with diabetes is difficult for several reasons: treatment and advice are individual, and there are many components to adhere, with different levels of adherence and variability over time and different types of interventions for each component [190]. Research about effective interventions to increase adherence to pharmacological and non-pharmacological modalities of diabetes treatment is essential to improve implementation of evidence-based medicine "in

the real world." In the meantime, clinicians should be aware about the reality of the gap between their clinical advice and the magnitude of patients' adherence with their recommendations and address the interactions of patient, physician, and systemic factors to implement successful diabetes management models [194]. Adherence to prescribed medications is associated with improved clinical outcomes for chronic disease management and reduces mortality [180]. Higher levels of adherence have improvements in clinical and economic outcomes, particularly among patients from poor or minority communities, the most vulnerable segments of the population [180, 195]. Clinical inertia and patient adherence are two largely unrecognized or misinterpreted challenges and opportunities in diabetes management that should be systematically addressed.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. What is the best term to describe the patients' expected behavior to medical recommendations?
   (a) Obedience
   (b) Compliance
   (c) Adherence
   (d) None of the above
   (e) All of the above
2. Traditional methods to assess adherence include:
   (a) Direct interrogation of patients and their families
   (b) Residual medication counting
   (c) Measurement of drug metabolites
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
3. More than 30 years ago, it was confirmed that compliance is not related to income, social class, occupation, or education.
   (a) True
   (b) False
4. The word "compliance" implies:
   (a) That patients are obeying as expected
   (b) The effectiveness of treatment
   (c) That patients are willfully disobedient in the face of medical expertise
   (d) That results of controlled clinical trials can be replicated "in the real world"
   (e) All of the above
5. It has been shown that patients are able:
   (a) To self-monitor blood glucose levels and adjust insulin doses
   (b) To self-monitor blood pressure levels and adjust antihypertensive doses
   (c) To self-monitor body mass index to achieve sustained body weight loss
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
6. Discontinuation of chronic disease treatment is highly associated with:
   (a) Patients' ignorance
   (b) Long waiting times to receive the medical visit
   (c) Deficiencies in doctor-patient relationships
   (d) The economic status of patients
   (e) Insufficient intelligence to understand physicians' orders
7. The "diabetic personality" refers:
   (a) To the consequences of diabetes on mental health
   (b) To the explanation of poor treatment outcomes on the patients' fault
   (c) To the adaptation process to diabetes and its demands
   (d) To the existence of a single, well-defined personality of all people with diabetes
8. Complete adherence to all the areas of diabetes management has been reported at:
   (a) 100%
   (b) 80%
   (c) 50%
   (d) 25%
   (e) 1%
9. Nonadherence to diabetes diet has been reported at:
   (a) 100%
   (b) 75%
   (c) 66%
   (d) 50%
   (e) 25%
10. Errors in insulin dosage by patients have been reported at:
   (a) 100%
   (b) 75%
   (c) 66%
   (d) 50%
   (e) 25%

Correct Answers

1. (d) None of the above
2. (d) All of the above
3. (a) True
4. (c) That patients are willfully disobedient in the face of medical expertise
5. (d) All of the above
6. (b, c)
7. (b) To the explanation of poor treatment outcomes on the patients' fault
8. (e) 1%
9. (b) 75%
10. (d) 50%

References

1. Fox R. Compliance, adherence, concordance. Circulation. 1998;97:127.
2. Wild H. The economic rationale for adherence in the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Am J Manag Care. 2012;18:S43–8.
3. Osterberg L, Blashke T. Adherence to medication. N Engl J Med. 2005;353:487–97.
4. Howie JGR. The consultation: a multi-purpose framework. In: Sheldon M, Brooke J, Rector A, editors. Decision making in general practice. London: The MacMillan Press Ltd; 1985.
5. Anderson RM, Robins LS. How do we know? Reflections of qualitative research in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1998;21:1387–8.
6. Boudes P. Drug compliance in therapeutics trials: a review. Control Clin Trials. 1998;19:257–68.
7. Haynes RB. Introduction. In: Haynes RB, et al., editors. Compliance with therapeutic regimes. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press; 1976.
8. Lerner BH. From careless consumptives to recalcitrant patients: the historical construction of noncompliance. Soc Sci Med. 1997;45:1423–31.
9. Mohler DN, Wallin DG, Dreyfus EG. Studies in the home treatment of streptococcal disease. I. Failure of patients to take penicillin by mouth as described. N Engl J Med. 1955;252:116–8.
10. Mohler DN, Wallin DG, Dreyfus EG, Bakst HJ. Studies in the home treatment of streptococcal disease. II. A comparison of the efficacy of oral administration of penicillin and intramuscular injection of benzathine penicillin in the treatment of streptococcal pharyngitis. N Engl J Med. 1956;254:45–50.
11. Wood HF, Stollerman GH, Feinstein AR, Hirschfeld I, Rusoff JH, Taranta A, et al. A controlled study of three methods of prophylaxis against streptococcal infection in a population of rheumatic children. I. Streptococcal infections and recurrences of acute rheumatic fever in the first two years of the study. N Engl J Med. 1957;257:394–8.
12. Feinstein AR, Wood HF, Epstein JA, Taranta A, Simpson R, Tursky E. A controlled study of three methods of prophylaxis against streptococcal infection in a population of rheumatic children. II. Results of the first three years of the study, including methods for evaluating the maintenance of oral prophylaxis. N Engl J Med. 1959;260:697–702.
13. Dixon WM, Stradling P. Wooton IDP: outpatient PAS therapy. Lancet. 1957;2:871–2.
14. Maddock RK. Patient cooperation in taking medicines. A study involving isoniazid and aminosalicylic acid. JAMA. 1967;199:137–40.
15. Vere DW. Errors of complex prescribing. Lancet. 1957;1:370–3.
16. Parsons T. The social system. Glencoe: Free Press; 1951.
17. Freidson E. Patients' views of medical practice. New York: Sage; 1961.
18. Mechanic D. The concept of illness behavior. J Chronic Dis. 1962;15:189–94.
19. Eichorn RL, Riedel DC, Morris WHM. Compliance to perceived therapeutic advice. In: Proc Purdue Farm Cardiac Seminar. Lafayette: Purdue Agricultural Station; 1959. p. 65.
20. Johannsen WJ, Hellmuth GA, Sorauf T. On accepting medical recommendations. Experiences with patients in a cardiac classification unit. Arch Environ Health. 1966;12:63–9.
21. Caron HS, Roth HP. Patients' cooperation with a medical regimen. Difficulties in identifying the noncooperator. JAMA. 1968;203:120–4.
22. Porter AMW. Drug defaulting in a general practice. BMJ. 1969;1:218–22.
23. Davis MS. Variations in patients' compliance with doctors' orders: analysis of congruence between survey responses and results of empirical investigations. J Med Educ. 1966;41:1037–48.
24. Davis MS. Variations in patients' compliance with doctors' advice: an empirical analysis of patterns of communication. AJPH. 1968;58:274–88.
25. Francis V, Korsch BM, Morris MJ. Gaps in doctor-patient communication. Patients' response to medical advice. N Engl J Med. 1969;280:535–40.
26. La Greca AM. Issues in adherence with pediatric regimens. J Pediatr Psychol. 1990;15:423–36.
27. Roth HP, Caron HS, His BP. Estimating a patient's cooperation with his regimen. Am J Med Sci. 1971;262:269–73.
28. Weintraub M, Au WYW, Lasagna L. Compliance as a determinant of serum digoxin concentration. JAMA. 1973;224:481–5.
29. Gillum RF, Barsky AJ. Patient noncompliance. JAMA. 1973;225:527.
30. Gillum RF, Barsky AJ. Diagnosis and management of patient noncompliance. JAMA. 1974;228:1563–7.
31. Kellaway GS, McCrae E. Non-compliance and errors of drug administration in patients discharged from acute medical wards. NZ Med J. 1975;81:508–12.
32. Baekeland F, Lundwall L. Dropping out of treatment: a critical review. Psychol Bull. 1975;82:738–83.
33. Rosenstock IM. Patients' compliance with health regimens. JAMA. 1975;234:402–3.
34. Stewart MA, McWhinney IR, Buck CW. The doctor/patient relationship and its effect upon outcome. J R Coll Gen Pract. 1979;29:77–82.
35. Mushlin AI, Appel FA. Diagnosing potential noncompliance. Arch Intern Med. 1977;137:318–21.
36. Deyo RA, Inui TS. Dropouts and broken appointments. A literature review and agenda for future research. Med Care. 1980;18:1146–57.
37. Greenberg RN. Overview of patient compliance with medication dosing: a literature review. Clin Ther. 1984;6:592–9.
38. Cramer JA, Mattson RH, Prevey ML, Scheyer RD, Oulette VL. How often is medication taken as prescribed? A novel assessment technique. JAMA. 1989;261:3273–7.
39. Petchey R, Murphy E. Patient compliance. BMJ. 1992;305:1434–5.
40. Aronson JK, Hardman M. Patient compliance. BMJ. 1992;305:1009–11.
41. Stephenson BJ, Rowe BH, Haynes RB, Macharia WM, Leon G. Is this patient taking the treatment as prescribed? JAMA. 1993;269:2779–81.
42. Horwitz RI, Horwitz SM. Adherence to treatment and health outcomes. Arch Intern Med. 1993;153:1863–8.
43. Shepard DS, Moseley TAE. Mailed versus telephoned appointment reminders to reduce broken appointments in a hospital outpatient department. Med Care. 1976;14:268–73.
44. Gates SJ, Colborn K. Lowering appointment failures in a neighborhood health canter. Med Care. 1976;14:263–7.
45. Macharia WM, Leon G, Rowe BH, Stephenson BJ, Haynes RB. An overview of interventions to improve compliance with appointment keeping for medical services. JAMA. 1992;267:1813–7.
46. Blackwell B, Griffin B, Magill M, Bencze R. Teaching medical students about treatment compliance. J Med Educ. 1978;53:672–5.
47. Bond WS, Hussar DA. Detection methods and strategies for improving medication compliance. AJPH. 1991;48:1978–88.
48. Clark C, Barnard K, Cummins E, Royle P, Waugh N, Aberdeen Health Technology Assessment Group. Self-monitoring of blood glucose in type 2 diabetes: systematic review. Health Technol Assess. 2010;14(12):1–140.
49. McManus RJ, Wood S, Bray EP, Glasziou P, Hayen A, Heneghan C, Mant J, Padfield P, Potter JF, Hobbs FD. Self-monitoring in hypertension: a web-based survey of primary care physicians. J Hum Hypertens. 2013;28:123. https://doi.org/10.1038/jhh.2013.54. [Epub ahead of print].
50. Butryn ML, Phelan S, Hill JO, Wing RR. Consistent self-monitoring of weight: a key component of successful weight loss maintenance. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2007;15(12):3091–6.

51. Heneghan C, Alonso-Coello P, Garcia-Alamino JM, Perera R, Meats E, Glasziou P. Self-monitoring of oral anticoagulation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet. 2006;367(9508):404–11.
52. Glasziou P, Irwig L, Mant D. Monitoring in chronic disease: a rational approach. BMJ. 2005;330:644–8.
53. Roter DL, Hall JA, Merisca R, Nordstrom B, Cretin D, Svarstad B. Effectiveness of interventions to improve patient compliance. A meta-analysis. Med Care. 1998;36:1138–61.
54. Haynes RB, McKibbon KA, Kanani R. Systematic review of randomized trials of interventions to assist patients to follow prescriptions for medications. Lancet. 1996;348:383–6.
55. Haynes RB, McKibbon KA, Brouwers MC, Oliver T. Interventions to assist patients to follow prescriptions for medications. Cochrane Libr. 1998;3:1–20.
56. McDonald HP, Garg AX, Haynes RB. Interventions to enhance patient adherence to medication prescriptions. Scientific review. JAMA. 2002;288:2868–79.
57. Van Dulmen S, Sluijs E, van Dijk L, de Ridder D, Heerdink R, Bensing J. Patient adherence to medical treatment: a review of reviews. BMC Health Serv Res. 2007;7:1–13.
58. Viswanathan M, Golin CE, Jones CD, Ashok M, Blalock SJ, Wines RC, Coker-Schwimmer EJ, Rosen DL, Sista P, Lohr KN. Interventions to improve adherence to self-administered medications for chronic diseases in the United States: a systematic review. Ann Intern Med. 2012;157(11):785–95.
59. Sackett DL. Why won't hypertensive patients take their medicine? Can Fam Physician. 1977;23:72–4.
60. Caldwell JR, Cobb S, Dowling MD, de Jongh D. The dropout problem in antihypertensive treatment. A pilot study of social and emotional factors influencing a patient's ability to follow antihypertensive treatment. J Chronic Dis. 1970;22:579–92.
61. Carnahan JE, Nugent CA. The effects of self-monitoring by patients on the control of hypertension. Am J Med Sci. 1975;269:69–73.
62. Sackett DL, Haynes RB, Gibson ES, Hackett BC, Taylor DW, Roberts RS, et al. Randomized clinical trial of strategies for improving medication compliance in primary hypertension. Lancet. 1975;1:1205–7.
63. Haynes RB, Sackett DL, Gibson ES, Taylor DW, Hackett BC, Roberts RS, et al. Improvement of medication compliance in uncontrolled hypertension. Lancet. 1976;1:1265–8.
64. Finnerty FA Jr, Mattice EC, Finnerty FA 3rd. Hypertension in the inner city. Analysis of clinic dropouts. Circulation. 1973;47:73–5.
65. Finnerty FA. The problem of noncompliance in hypertension. Bull NY Acad Med. 1982;58:95–202.
66. Rudd P, Marton KI. Non-traditional problems of antihypertensive management. West J Med. 1979;131:179–92.
67. Rudd P. Clinicians and patients with hypertension: unsettled issues about compliance. Am Heart J. 1995;130:572–9.
68. Hill MN, Miller NH, DeGeest S. ASH position paper: adherence and persistence with taking medication to control high blood pressure. J Clin Hypertens. 2010;12:757–64.
69. Milchack JL, Carter BL, James PA, Ardery G. Measuring adherence to practice guidelines for the management of hypertension. An evaluation of the literature. Hypertension. 2004;44:602–8.
70. Vrijens B, Vincze G, Kristanto P, Urquhart J, Burnier M. Adherence to prescribed antihypertensive drug treatments: longitudinal study of electronically compiled dosing histories. BMJ. 2008;336:114–117.
71. Morisky DE, Ang A, Krousel-Wood M, Ward HJ. Predictive validity of a medication adherence measure in an outpatient setting. J Clin Hypertens. 2008;10:348–54.
72. Korb-Savoldelli V, Gillaizeau F, Pouchot J, Lenain E, Postel-Vinay N, Plouin P-F, et al. Validation of a French version of the 8-item Morisky medication adherence scale in hypertensive adults. J Clin Hypertens. 2012;14:429–34.
73. Lee GK, Wang HH, Liu KQ, Cheung Y, Morisky DE, Wong MC. Determinants of medication adherence to antihypertensive medications among a Chinese population using Morisky Medication Adherence Scale. PLoS One. 2013;8:e62775. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0062775.
74. Lee WY, Ahn J, Kim JH, Hong YP, Hong SK, Kim YT, Lee SH, Morisky DE. Reliability and validity of a self-reported measure of medication adherence in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in Korea. J Int Med Res. 2013;41(4):1098–110.[Epub ahead of print].
75. Mülhauser I, Berger M. Patient education – evaluation of a complex intervention. Diabetologia. 2002;45:1723–33.
76. Dunn SM, Turtle JR. The myth of the diabetic personality. Diabetes Care. 1981;4:640–6.
77. Watkins JD, Williams F, Martin DA, Hogan MD, Anderson E. A study of diabetic patients at home. AJPH. 1967;57:452–9.
78. Sulway M, Tupling H, Webb K, Harris G. New techniques for changing compliance in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1980;3:108–11.
79. Anderson RM. The personal meaning of having diabetes: implications for patient behavior and education or kicking the bucket theory. Diabet Med. 1986;3:85–9.
80. Hampson SE, Glasgow RE, Toobert DJ. Personal models of diabetes and their relations to self-care activities. Health Psychol. 1990;9:632–46.
81. Bennett-Johnson S. Methodological issues in diabetes research. Measuring adherence. Diabetes Care. 1992;15:1658–67.
82. Cramer JA. A systematic review of adherence with medications for diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27:1218–24.
83. Donnan PT, MacDonald TM, Morris AD. Adherence to prescribed oral hypoglycaemic medication in a population of patients with type 2 diabetes: a retrospective cohort study. Diabet Med. 2002;19:279–84.
84. Hernández-Ronquillo L, Téllez-Zenteno JF, Garduño-Espinoza J, González-Aceves E. Factors associated with therapy noncompliance in type 2 diabetes patients. Salud Pública Mex. 2003;45:191–7.
85. Leichter SB. Making outpatient care of diabetes more efficient: analyzing noncompliance. Clin Diabetes. 2005;23:187–90.
86. Soule-Odegard P, Gray SL. Barriers to medication adherence in poorly controlled diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Educ. 2008;34:692–7.
87. Schafer LC, Glasgow RE, McCaul KD, Dreher M. Adherence to IDDM. Diabetes Care. 1983;6:493–8.
88. Ary DV, Toobert D, Wilson W, Glasgow RE. Patient perspective on factors contributing to non-adherence to diabetes regimen. Diabetes Care. 1986;9:168–72.
89. Rosenstock IM. Understanding and enhancing patient compliance with diabetic regimens. Diabetes Care. 1985;8:610–6.
90. Bush MA. Compliance, education, and diabetes control. Mt Sinai J Med. 1987;54:221–6.
91. Becker MH, Maiman LA. Socio-behavioral determinants of compliance with health and medical care recommendations. Med Care. 1975;13:10–24.
92. Kurtz SM. Adherence to diabetes regimens: empirical status and clinical applications. Diabetes Educ. 1990;16:50–9.
93. Haefner DP, Kirscht JP. Motivational and behavioral effects of modifying health beliefs. Public Health Rep. 1970;85:478–84.
94. Becker MH, Maiman LA, Kirscht JP, Haefner DP, Drachman RH. The health belief model and prediction of dietary compliance: a field experiment. J Health Soc Behav. 1977;18:348–66.
95. Maiman LA, Becker MH. The health belief model: origins and correlates in psychological theory. Health Educ Monogr. 1974;2:336–53.
96. Rosenstock IM. Historical origins of the health belief model. Health Educ Monogr. 1974;2:328–35.
97. Delamater. Improving patient adherence. Clin Diabetes. 2006;24:71–7.
98. Boyer BA, Lerman C, Shipley TE, McBrearty J, Goren E. Discordance between physician and patient perceptions in the

treatment of diabetes mellitus: a pilot study of the relationship to adherence and glycemic control. Diabetes Educ. 1996;22:493–9.
99. Du Pasquier-Fediaevsky L, Tubiana-Rufi N. Discordance between physician and adolescent assessments of adherence to treatment. Influence of HbA1c level. Diabetes Care. 1999;22:1445–9.
100. De Figuereido RC, Snoek FJ, Barreto SM. Do patients and physicians agree on diabetes management? A study conducted in public health centers in Brazil. Patient Educ Couns. 2013;92:107–13.
101. Anderson LA. Health-care communication and selected psychosocial correlates of adherence in diabetes management. Diabetes Care. 1990;13:66–76.
102. Wooldridge KL, Wallston KA, Graber AL, Brown AW, Davidson P. The relationship between health beliefs, adherence, and metabolic control in diabetes. Diabetes Educ. 1992;18:495–500.
103. Tillotson LM, Smith S. Locus of control, social support, and adherence to the diabetes regimen. Diabetes Educ. 1996;22:133–9.
104. Hauser S, Pollets D. Psychological aspects of diabetes mellitus: a critical review. Diabetes Care. 1979;2:227–32.
105. ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines Compendium 2014. Psychological care of children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes. Pediatric Diabetes. 2014;15(Suppl 20):232–44.
106. American Diabetes Association. Lifestyle management in standards of medical care in diabetes 2017. Diabetes Care. 2017;40(Suppl 1):S39–40.
107. Surwitt RS, Scovern AW, Feinglos MN. The role of behavior in diabetes care. Diabetes Care. 1982;5:337–42.
108. Glasgow RE, Wilson W, McCaul KD. Regimen adherence: a problematic construct in diabetes research. Diabetes Care. 1985;8:300–1.
109. Glasgow RE. Psychological issues in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1981;6:656–7.
110. Schafer LC, McCaul KD, Glasgow RE. Supportive and nonsupportive family behaviors: relationships to adherence and metabolic control in persons with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1986;9:179–85.
111. Wilson W, Ary DV, Biglan A, Glasgow RE, Toobert DJ, Campbell DR. Psychosocial predictors of self-care behaviors (compliance) and glycemic control in non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 1986;9:614–22.
112. Glasgow RE, Toobert DJ. Social environment and regimen adherence among type II diabetic patients. Diabetes Care. 1988;11:377–86.
113. Glasgow RE, McCaul KD, Schafer LC. Self-care behaviors and glycemic control in type 1 diabetes. J Chronic Dis. 1987;40:399–412.
114. Hampson SE, Glasgow RE, Foster LS. Personal models of diabetes among older adults: relationship to self-management and other variables. Diabetes Educ. 1995;21:300–7.
115. Glasgow RE, Hampson SE, Strycker LA, Ruggiero L. Personal-model beliefs and social-environmental barriers related to diabetes self-management. Diabetes Care. 1997;20:556–61.
116. Polonsky WH, Skinner TC. Perceived treatment efficacy: an overlooked opportunity in diabetes care. Clin Diabetes. 2010;28:89–92.
117. Lustman PJ, Griffith LS, Clouse RE. Depression in adults with diabetes. Results of 5-yr follow-up study. Diabetes Care. 1988;11:605–12.
118. Lustman PJ, Griffith LS, Gavard JA, Clouse RE. Depression in adults with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1992;11:1631–9.
119. Petrak F, Bameister H, Skinner TC, Brown A, Holt RI. Depression and diabetes: treatment and health-care delivery. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2015;3:472–85.
120. Naicker K, Johnson JA, Skogen JC, Manuel D, Overland S, Siversten B, et al. Type 2 diabetes and comorbid symptoms of depression and anxiety: longitudinal associations with mortality risk. Diabetes Care. 2017;40:352–8.
121. Ciechanowski PS, Katon WJ, Russo JE. Depression and diabetes. Impact of depressive symptoms on adherence, function and costs. Arch Intern Med. 2000;160:3278–85.
122. Huang H, Russo J, Von Korff M, Ciechanowski P, Lin E, Ludman E, et al. The effect of changes in depressive symptoms on disability status in patients with diabetes. Psychosomatics. 2012;53:21–9.
123. Katon WJ, Rutter C, Simon G, Lin EH, Ludman E, Ciechanowski P, et al. The association of co-morbid depression with mortality in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2005;28:2668–72.
124. Ciechanowski P. Diapression: an integrated model for understanding the experience of individuals with co-occurring diabetes and depression. Clin Diabetes. 2011;29:43–9.
125. Egede LE, Zheng D, Simpson K. Co-morbid depression is associated with increased health care use and expenditures in individuals with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:464–70.
126. Ciechanowki P, Russo J, Katon W, Simon G, Ludman E, Von Korff M, et al. Where is the patient? The association of psychosocial factors with missed primary care appointments in patients with diabetes. Gen Hosp Psychiatry. 2006;28:9–17.
127. Fisher L, Gonzalez JS, Polonsky WH. The confusing tale of depression and distress in patients with diabetes: a call for greater clarity and precision. Diabet Med. 2014;31:764–72.
128. Fisher L, Mullan JT, Arean P, Glasgow RE, Hessler D, Masharani U. Diabetes distress and not clinical depression or depressive affect is associated with glycemic control in both cross-sectional and longitudinal analyses. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:23–8.
129. Gonzalez JS, Kane NS, Binko DH, Shapira A, Hoogendoorn CJ. Tangled up in blue: unraveling the links between emotional distress ans treatment adherence in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2016;39:2182–9.
130. Miller WR. Behavioral treatment of problem drinkers: a comparative outcome study of three controlled drinking therapies. J Consult Clin Psychol. 1978;46:74–86.
131. Bandura A. Self-efficacy. The exercise of control. New York: WH Freeman and Company; 1997.
132. Rollnick S, Butler CC, McCambridge J, Kinnersley P, Elwyn G, Resnicow K. Consultations about changing behavior. BMJ. 2005;331:961–3.
133. Rollnick S, Butler CC, Kinnersley P, Gregory J, Mash B. Motivational interviewing. BMJ. 2010;340:1242–5.
134. Miller WR, Rollnick S. Motivational interviewing. Preparing people for change. 2nd ed. New York: The Guilford Press; 2002.
135. Rollnick S, Miller WR, Butler CC. Motivational interviewing in health care: helping patients change behavior. New York: The Guilford Press; 2008.
136. Anderson RM. Patient empowerment and the traditional medical model. A case of irreconcilable differences? Diabetes Care. 1995;18:412–5.
137. Anderson RM, Funnell MM. Compliance and adherence are dysfunctional concepts in diabetes care. Diabetes Educ. 2000;26:597–604.
138. Anderson RM, Funnell MM, Barr PA, Dedrick RF, Davis WK. Learning to empower patients. Results of professional education program for diabetes educators. Diabetes Care. 1991;14:584–90.
139. Feste C, Anderson RM. Empowerment: from philosophy to practice. Patient Educ Couns. 1995;26:139–44.
140. Funnell MM, Anderson RM, Arnold MS, Barr PA, Donnelly M, Johnson PD, Taylor-Moon D, White NH. Empowerment: an idea whose time has come in diabetes education. Diabetes Educ. 1991;17:37–41.
141. Anderson RM, Funnell MM. The art of empowerment. Stories and strategies for diabetes educators. Alexandria: American Diabetes Association; 2000.
142. Anderson RM, Funnell MM, Fitzgerald JT, Marrero DG. The diabetes empowerment scale: a measure of psychosocial self-efficacy. Diabetes Care. 2000;23:239–43.
143. Anderson RM, Funnell MM, Aikens JE, Krein SL, Fitzgerald JT, Nwankwo R, Tannas CL, Tang TS. Evaluating the efficacy of an empowerment-based Self-management consultant intervention:

results of a two-year randomized controlled trial. Ther Patient Educ. 2009;1:3–11.
144. Anderson RM, Funnell MM. Patient empowerment: myths and misconceptions. Patient Educ Couns. 2010;79:277–82.
145. Luftey KE, Ketchman JD. Patient and provider assessments of adherence and the sources of disparities: evidence from diabetes care. Health Serv Res. 2005;40:1803–17.
146. Littenberg B, MacLean CD, Hurowitz L. The use of adherence aids by adults with diabetes: a cross sectional survey. BMC Fam Pract. 2006;7:1–5.
147. Puder JJ, Keller U. Quality of diabetes care: problem of patient or doctor adherence? Swiss Med Wkly. 2003;133:530–4.
148. Samuels TA, Bolen S, Yeh HC, Abuid M, Marinoupoulos SS, Weiner JP, et al. Missed opportunities in diabetes management: a longitudinal assessment of factors associated with sub-optimal quality. J Gen Intern Med. 2008;23:1770–7.
149. Schmittdiel JA, Uratsu CS, Karter AJ, Heisler M, Subramanian U, Mangione CM, Selby JV. Why don't patients achieve recommended risk factor targets? Poor adherence versus lack of treatment intensification. J Gen Intern Med. 2008;23:588–94.
150. Van Bruggen R, Gorter K, Stolk RP, Zuithoff P, Klungel OH, Rutten GEHM. Refill adherence and polypharmacy among patients with type 2 diabetes in general practice. Pharmacoepidemiology Drug Saf. 2009;18:983–91.
151. Miller TA, DiMatteo MR. Importance of family/social support and impact on adherence to diabetic therapy. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes. 2013;6:421–6.
152. Del Canale S, Louis DZ, Maio V, Wang X, Rossi G, Hojat M, Gonella JS. The relationship between physician empathy and disease complications: an empirical study of primary care physicians and their diabetic patients in Parma, Italy. Acad Med. 2012;87:1243–9.
153. Beaser RS, Brown JA. Preventive intervention in diabetes: a new model for continuing medical education. Am J Prev Med. 2013;44:S394–9.
154. Iuga AO, McGuire MJ. Adherence and health care costs. Risk Manag Healthc Policy. 2014;4:35–44.
155. Stolpe S, Kroes MA, Webb N, Wisniewski T. A systematic review of insulin adherence measures in patients with diabetes. J Manag Care Spec Pharm. 2016;22:1224–46.
156. Yeaw J, Benner JS, Walt JG, Sian S, Smith DB. Comparing adherence and persistence across 6 chronic medication classes. J Manag Care Pharm. 2009;15:728–40.
157. Fischer MA, Stedman MR, Lii J, Vogeli C, Shrank WH, Brookhart MA, et al. Primary medication non-adherence: analysis of 195,930 prescriptions. J Gen Int Med. 2010;25:284–90.
158. Koro CE, Chabra P, Stender M, Spain CV, Allen JK, Krzywy HJ. Treatment utilization of GLP-1 Agonists and DPP-4 Inhibitors among Type 2 Diabetics in a U.S. commercially insured population 2005–2011. Diabetes. 2013;62:A365–438.
159. Alfian SD, Sukandar H, Lestari K, Abdulah R. Medication adherence contributes to an improved quality of life in type 2 diabetes mellitus patients: a cross-sectional study. Diabetes Ther. 2016;7:755–64.
160. Al-Keliani MS, Almomani BA, Al-Sawalha NA, Shhabat BA. Self-monitoring of blood glucose among patients in Jordan: perception, adherence and influential factors. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2017;126:79–85.
161. He X, Chen L, Wang K, Wu H, Wu J. Insulin adherence among Chinese patients with type 2 diabetes: a retrospective database analysis. Patient Prefer Adherence. 2017;11:237–45.
162. Lin J, Lingohr-Smith M, Fan T. Real-world medication persistence and outcomes associated with basal insulin and glucagon-like peptide I receptor agonist free-dose combination therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes in the US. Clinicoecon Outcomes Res. 2017;9:19–29.
163. Flory J, Gerhard T, Stempniewicz N, Keating S, Rowan CG. Comparative adherence to diabetes drugs: an analysis of electronic health records and claims data. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2017;19:1184–7.
164. Birnbaum Y, Ye Y, Bajaj M. Type 2 and cardiovascular disease: a metabolic overview of recent clinical trials. J Diabetes Complicat. 2017;31:291–4.
165. Kosiborod M. Following the LEADER – why this and other recent trials signal a major paradigm in the management of type 2 diabetes. J Diabetes Complicat. 2017;31:517–9.
166. Ingelfinger FJ. Arrogance. N Engl J Med. 1980;303:1507–11.
167. Romano PE. Semantics: compliance is a better term than cooperation. Arch Ophtalmol. 1987;105:314–5.
168. Steiner JF, Earnest MA. The language of medication-taking. Ann Intern Med. 2000;132:926–30.
169. Luftey KE, Wishner WJ. Beyond "compliance is adherence". Improving the prospect of diabetes care. Diabetes Care. 1999;22:635–9.
170. Glasgow RE, Anderson RM. In diabetes care, moving from compliance to adherence is not enough. Something entirely different is needed. Diabetes Care. 1999;22:2090–2.
171. Dracup KA, Meleis AI. Compliance: an interactionist approach. Nurs Res. 1982;31:31–6.
172. Meichenbaum D, Turk DC. Facilitating treatment adherence: a practitioner's guidebook. New York: Plenum Publishing Corp; 1987.
173. Wright EC. Non-compliance – or how many aunts has Matilda? Lancet. 1993;342:909–13.
174. Urquart J. Patient non-compliance with drug regimens: measurement, clinical correlates, economic impact. Eur Heart J. 1996;17:8–15.
175. Houston-Miller N, Hill M, Kottke T, Ockene IS. The multilevel challenge: recommendations for a call to action. A statement for healthcare professionals. Circulation. 1997;95:1085–90.
176. World Health Organization. Adherence to long-term therapies: evidence for action. Geneva: WHO; 2003. p. p3.
177. Balkrishnan R. The importance of medication adherence in improving chronic disease related outcomes: what we know and what we need to further know. Med Care. 2005;43:517–20.
178. Steiner JF. Rethinking adherence. Ann Intern Med. 2012;157:580–5.
179. Raebel MA, Ellis JL, Carroll NM, Bayliss EA, McGinnis B, Schroeder EB, et al. Characteristics of patients with primary non-adherence to medications for hypertension, diabetes and lipid disorders. J Gen Intern Med. 2011;27:57–64.
180. Neiman AB, Ruppar T, Garber L, Weidle PJ, Hong Y, George MG, et al. CDC grand rounds: improving medication adherence for chronic disease management – innovation and opportunities. Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2017;66:1248–51.
181. National Community Pharmacist Association. Medication adherence in America: a National Report 2013. Accessed 10 July 2018 at www.ncpa.co.
182. Butler C, Rollnick S, Stott N. The practitioner, the patient and resistance to change: recent ideas on compliance. Can Med Assoc J. 1996;154:1357–62.
183. Glasgow RE, Emont S, Miller DC. Assessing delivery of the five "As" for patient-centered counseling. Health Promot Int. 2006;21:245–55.
184. Blackwell B. Patient compliance. N Engl J Med. 1973;289:249–52.
185. LaFleur J, Nelson RE, Sauer BC, Nebeker JR. Overestimation of the effects of adherence outcomes: a case study in healthy user bias and hypertension. Heart. 2011;97:1862–9.
186. Brown MT, Bussell J, Dutta S, Davis K, Strong S, Mathew S. Medication adherence: truth and consequences. Am J Med Sci. 2016;351:387–99.

187. Beach MC, Sugarman J, Johnson RL, Arbelaez JJ, Duggan PS, Cooper LA. Do patients treated with dignity report higher satisfaction, adherence, and receipt of preventive care? Ann Fam Med. 2005;3:331–8.
188. Campbell SM, Roland MO. Why people consult the doctor? Fam Pract. 1996;13:75–83.
189. Fiddes PJ, Brooks PM, Komesaroff P. The patient is the teacher: ambulatory patient-centered student-based inter-professional education where the patient is the teacher who improves patient care outcomes. Int Med J. 2013;43:747–50.
190. Pallarés-Carratalá V, Pérez RP. Non-compliance and therapeutic inertia: two unanswered questions in clinical practice. Curr Med Res Opin. 2014;30:839–40.
191. Hearnshaw H, Lindenmeyer A. What do we mean by adherence to treatment and advice for living with diabetes? A review of the literature on definitions and measurements. Diabet Med. 2006;23(7):720–8.
192. Polonsky WH, Henry RR. Poor medication adherence in type 2 diabetes: recognizing the scope of the problem and its key contributors. Patient Prefer Adherence. 2016;10:1299–307.
193. Krass I, Schieback P, Dhippayom T. Adherence to diabetes medication: a systematic review. Diabet Med. 2015;32:725–37.
194. Brown JB, Harris SB, Webster-Bogaert S, Wetmore S, Faulds C, Stewart M. The role of patient, physician and systemic factors in the management of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Fam Pract. 2002;19:344–9.
195. Jha AK, Aubert RE, Yao J, Teagarden JR, Epstein RS. Greater adherence to diabetes drugs is linked to less hospital use and could save nearly $5 billion annually. Health Aff. 2012;31:1836–44.

Part V

Resources of Support for Persons with Diabetes

Challenges and Opportunities in Diabetes Education

25

Jane K. Dickinson, Melinda Downie Maryniuk, and Margaret Powers

Introduction

Diabetes education started with Elliott P. Joslin's efforts to provide comprehensive care for people with diabetes. In the early insulin era, he developed the role of the diabetes teaching nurse or nurse educator [1]. Diabetes education has grown significantly since that time, with excellent and diverse models evolving around the world. This chapter outlines the components of diabetes education and describes various methods of delivery. This chapter also presents the evidence for diabetes education as a vital resource for people with diabetes in reducing acute and chronic diabetes-related complications and improving other health measures. In addition, existing challenges and future opportunities are discussed.

Definition of Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support

The National Standards for Diabetes Self-Management Education were first developed in the United States in 1995 [2]. These Standards serve as guidance for those providing diabetes education and set the standard for best practice in developing, implementing, and evaluating a diabetes self-management education program. In 2011 a task force representing the American Association of Diabetes Educators and the American Diabetes Association changed the name to National Standards for Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support [3]. In the most recent version, the Standards include the following definition:

> Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support: The ongoing process of facilitating the knowledge, skills, and ability necessary for prediabetes and diabetes self-care, and the activities that assist the person with diabetes or prediabetes in implementing and sustaining the behaviors needed to manage his or her condition on an ongoing basis beyond or outside of formal self-management training. This process incorporates the needs, goals, and life experiences of the person with diabetes or prediabetes and is guided by evidence-based standards. Support (whether behavioral, educational, psychosocial, or clinical) helps implement informed decision making, self-care behaviors, problem solving, and active collaboration with the health care team and to improve clinical outcomes, health status, and quality of life. [4]

Diabetes Canada states the following:

> Access to high-quality self-management education supported by an interprofessional health-care team with specialized knowledge of diabetes, current clinical practice guidelines and best practices has evidence for improvements in the wellness of the person living with diabetes and a decrease in utilization of the health system for ambulatory sensitive conditions. [5]

Other countries have comparable definitions that can often be found on their websites.

Evidence Supporting the Effectiveness of Diabetes Education

Structured diabetes self-management education and support programs lead to reduced A1C [6–11], reduced all-cause mortality in people with type 2 diabetes [12], and improved self-care activity [11] and sometimes result in weight loss [8]. An integrative review that studied pediatric diabetes self-management education and support programs showed that mixed programs containing both self-care aspects and psychosocial aspects, and delivered online, were most likely to

J. K. Dickinson (✉)
Teachers College, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA
e-mail: dickinson@tc.columbia.edu

M. D. Maryniuk
Care Programs, Joslin Innovations, Joslin Diabetes Center, Boston, MA, USA
e-mail: melinda@melindamaryniuk.com

M. Powers
International Diabetes Center, Minneapolis, MN, USA
e-mail: margaret.powers@parknicollet.com

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_25

influence psychosocial competencies in children and adolescents [13]. Diabetes self-management education and support has also demonstrated cost-effectiveness [12, 14] and improved quality of life in people with diabetes [7, 15, 16].

Recommendations for Diabetes Education

The American Diabetes Association recommends diabetes self-management education and support for all people with diabetes, as well as those with prediabetes. In their Standards of Medical Care, the American Diabetes Association states that diabetes self-management education and support that is person-centered and tailored to the individual's needs and goals should be delivered at diagnosis and as needed [17]. The International Diabetes Federation also includes "the right to information and education" in their Charter of Rights and Responsibilities for People with Diabetes. In addition, an individualized medical nutrition therapy program, preferably by a registered dietitian, is recommended for all people with diabetes.

Diabetes Australia recommends structured diabetes education to consumers as soon as possible after diagnosis, ongoing, and on request. They also recommend diabetes education that is person-centered, promotes active learning, and has the flexibility to meet individual needs, choices, and learning styles [18]. Diabetes UK published a report titled, Diabetes Education: The Big Missed Opportunity in Diabetes Care, highlighting their view that diabetes education is an essential part of managing diabetes and avoiding long-term complications [19]. According to National Institute for Health and Care Excellence guidelines, structured diabetes education programs should be offered and aimed at empowering people with diabetes to manage successfully [20].

The American Diabetes Association, the American Association of Diabetes Educators, and the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics recommend diabetes education at four critical times (described later).

The DAWN2 Study sought cross-national comparisons across 17 countries of perceptions on healthcare provision for benchmarking and sharing of clinical practices to improve diabetes care. Results of quantitative surveys of over 15,000 people with diabetes, family members and health care professionals drew attention to the large number of people who feel the burden of the disease, and made the case for improved psychosocial care and diabetes self-management education. Specifically, about half of the people with diabetes surveyed reported diabetes has a negative impact on their physical health and emotional well-being. Just less than half (45%) reported experiencing diabetes-related distress. Education resources are available on the DAWN2 website for healthcare providers to use in facilitating a dialogue-based approach to education and care for people with diabetes [21].

While standards from major diabetes organizations are recognized worldwide, how do these recommendations get interpreted and operationalized? Access to diabetes education and diabetes educators varies greatly around the globe. This section includes highlights from some of the major position papers and practice guidelines, which can be tailored for diverse practice settings.

Standards for Diabetes Education

The process and quality of diabetes education is guided by standards and guidelines. In the United States, the National Standards for Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support [4] define quality diabetes self-management education and support and assist those who educate to implement evidence-based programs and services. The National Standards are reviewed and updated every 5 years by a multidisciplinary group representing the American Diabetes Association and the American Association of Diabetes Educators. The Standards define such things as who can provide diabetes education, content areas to be assessed and taught as needed, importance of providing ongoing support, and quality.

While the National Standards highlight the benefit of a team approach to diabetes education, they also acknowledge that a team is not always possible or available. To meet quality standards, it is recommended diabetes education be delivered by a nurse, dietitian, or pharmacist with relevant background and experience. For example, in the United States, 15 hours of continuing education per year in diabetes-related topics is considered a minimum acceptable level of instruction. Qualification as a Certified Diabetes Educator may be obtained by a wide variety of clinicians within the United States, including nurses, dietitians, pharmacists, physicians, clinical social workers, and master's level exercise physiologists [22]. Based on a survey of the American Association of Diabetes Educators members, in the United States, 50% of diabetes educators are nurses, 35% dietitians, 6% pharmacists, and 6% others, which include exercise physiologists, clinical social workers, master's level health educators, physicians, and podiatrists. In a recent survey of diabetes educators, 86% reported having the Certified Diabetes Educator credential [23].

Eight core content areas are defined within the National Standards. An assessment of each individual's needs determines which elements of the curriculum are required. Content areas include the following:

- Diabetes pathophysiology and treatment options
- Healthy eating
- Physical activity
- Medication use
- Monitoring and using patient-generated health data
- Preventing, detecting, and treating acute and chronic complications
- Healthy coping with psychosocial issues and concerns
- Problem-solving

Other recommended content areas include navigating the healthcare system, self-advocacy, and e-health education.

The National Standards highlight the importance of person-centered, interactive, and evidence-based diabetes education. The most successful approach is one in which patients and providers work together to develop an individualized education plan. Evidence-based communication and behavior change strategies are also recommended, including collaborative goal setting, motivational interviewing, and interactive teaching techniques. In addition the Standards address the need for ongoing support, measuring participant progress, and continuous quality improvement. Within the United States, diabetes education programs and services must be able to demonstrate that each of the standards are met in order to be eligible for payment – both by Medicare, a government insurance plan, and by most private insurers.

Healthcare providers can look for diabetes education standards that may have been written for a country or health system in a specific region, as a variety of them do exist. Notably, the International Diabetes Federation has published a detailed collection of 32 standards that describe not only structure and process standards (recommended elements of a diabetes program similar to those described in the US National Standards document) but also content standards (describing what to assess and teach) and outcomes standards (what to measure) [24].

The roles and expectations for diabetes educators vary greatly around the world. In the United States, many diabetes educators with advanced credentialing work closely with the physician – and other healthcare providers – as a co-manager of the patient's care. This may involve reviewing blood glucose patterns (from meter or continuous glucose monitoring downloads) and making recommendations to the physician for treatment changes and/or adjusting insulin within established guidelines. Some diabetes educators are expected only to deliver information about diabetes to patients, having little interaction with the physician or even input from the patient. The latter is not an ideal model. Instead, collaboration and communication among all team members is most beneficial for the best outcomes.

The American Association of Diabetes Educators has defined five levels of practice for diabetes educators (see Tables 25.1 and 25.2). There are three levels of licensed or certified healthcare professionals (such as a nurse, dietitian, or pharmacist): beginner, intermediate, and advanced. There are also two levels of paraprofessional, which include medical office assistants, community health workers, and peer counselors, who may participate in the formal diabetes education process. For each of these five levels, competencies (minimal skills and knowledge) have been recommended in five domains (see Table 25.3):

Table 25.1 Diabetes educator provider levels

	Diabetes educator level 1	Diabetes educator level 2	Diabetes educator level 3
Educational background	Level 1 educators are healthcare providers who interact professionally with diabetes patients to provide the essential knowledge and skills needed for safe self-care Level 1 designation includes but is not limited to registered nurses (from any accredited entry-level education program), advanced-practice nurses, registered dietitians (licensed or registered), pharmacists (licensed or registered), exercise physiologists, physical therapists, physician assistants, and physicians	Level 2 educators are healthcare providers who have achieved an advanced body of core knowledge and skills related to diabetes education and/or management above that which is required by the profession of origin Level 2 incorporates those providers who meet the academic, professional, and experiential criteria to qualify for and maintain the CDE® credential. A distinction is made between the newly credentialed educator who is competent in all and proficient in some areas of diabetes knowledge and the level 3 educators who are at the highest level of expertise in the field	Level 3 educators are advanced-level experts in diabetes education, clinical management, and/or research Level 3 educator encompasses those involved in integrated, comprehensive, and global management of people with diabetes. This includes but is not limited to clinicians, researchers and academics, program managers, healthcare administrators, and consultants. The educator at this level may hold the CDE® credential; meets the academic, professional, and experiential criteria to qualify for and maintain the BC-ADM credential; and may be recognized as a Fellow of the American Association of Diabetes Educators. This level of practice is characterized by care coordination and management, autonomous assessment, problem identification, planning, implementation, and evaluation of diabetes care Additionally, it involves excellent communication as well as complex critical thinking and clinical decision-making skills. High-level clinical and nonclinical practice is characteristic of this level
Educator/clinician level of practice	Beginner/advanced beginner Basic	Competent/proficient Intermediate	Expert Advanced

(continued)

Table 25.1 (continued)

	Diabetes educator level 1	Diabetes educator level 2	Diabetes educator level 3
Expected and domain-specific knowledge, skills, and adaptation (KSA) for delivery of diabetes education/support	Competencies for diabetes educators Scope of practice, standards of practice, and standards of professional performance for diabetes educators The educator's focus is on transmitting knowledge related to essential skills for safe self-management	Competencies for diabetes educators Scope of practice, standards of practice, and standards of professional performance for diabetes educators The educator/clinician's focus is on both knowledge and skills to create individualized self-management plans, coordinate care, interpret personal data, conduct focused and/or complete educational assessments, and promote successful self-management through adaptation	Competencies for diabetes educators Scope of practice, standards of practice, and standards of professional performance for diabetes educators The clinician/educator's focus is on higher-level counseling, regimen adjustment (as appropriate for scope of practice), recognizing and prioritizing complex data, and therapeutic problem-solving Focused and/or complete clinical and educational assessments are used to guide decision-making
Non-diabetes foundational skills for the delivery of diabetes education	Bloom's taxonomy: remembering, understanding, applying teaching, and learning skills Preprocessed delivery models	Bloom's taxonomy: applying, analyzing, and evaluating teaching and learning skills: Individualized assessment and delivery Educator-facilitated group discussion. Differentiate teaching from learning objectives	Bloom's taxonomy: analyzing, evaluating, and creating teaching and learning skills – creative, individualized teaching for self-management Developing and evaluating new models of education
Novice to expert continuum (Dreyfus model): Expertise develops over time	Entry-level clinician/educator	CDE®/experienced clinician	BC-ADM/CDE®/FAADE/Expert
Years in direct diabetes education and/or management	0–2 years of direct care experience in diabetes (percentage of time devoted to diabetes specialty practice)	3–5 years post achievement of CDE® or more experienced in diabetes clinical/educational care	More than 5 years of direct engagement in the diabetes as a specialty practice

Source (used with permission): American Association of Diabetes Educators, Chicago, Illinois [26]

Table 25.2 Diabetes paraprofessional provider levels

	Diabetes paraprofessional level 1	Diabetes paraprofessional level 2
Background and criteria	Level 1 diabetes paraprofessionals are complementary workers who interact with those who have or are affected by diabetes Level 1s have various roles in the dissemination of information, acquisition of baseline skills, and provision of self-management support Level 1 designation includes but is not limited to lay health, community health workers, peer counselors, health navigators, health promoters, health coaches, and assistive school personnel with some level of preparation in a recognized healthcare field	Level 2 diabetes paraprofessionals are complementary healthcare workers who have a defined role in a certified or recognized diabetes education or prevention program They may also be aligned with practices that serve a dedicated or focused proportion of diabetes patients Level 2 designation includes, but is not limited to, certified community health workers, certified nursing assistants, medical assistants, registered dietetic technicians, pharmacy technicians, physical therapy assistants, and licensed practical nurses
Dreyfus model Level	Novice to expert specific to role	Novice to expert specific to role
Expected and domain-specific knowledge, skills, and adaptation (KSA) for diabetes paraprofessionals	Competencies for diabetes paraprofessionals Scope of practice, standards of practice, and standards of professional performance for diabetes educators Minimal knowledge Practical problem-solving Advocacy	Competencies for diabetes paraprofessionals Scope of practice, standards of practice, and standards of professional performance for diabetes educators

Source (used with permission): American Association of Diabetes Educators, Chicago, Illinois [26]

Table 25.3 Competencies for diabetes educators and paraprofessionals

Domain 1: Pathophysiology, epidemiology, and clinical practice of prediabetes and diabetes Competency statement: demonstrates familiarity with pathophysiology, epidemiology, and clinical practice consistent with practice level
Domain 2: Cultural competency across the life span Competency statement: provides diabetes support and care in a culturally competent manner across the life span
Domain 3: Teaching and learning skills Competency statement: applies current principles of teaching and learning and/or behavior change to facilitate self-management skills. Pursues ongoing professional development
Domain 4: Self-management education Competency statement: works with an interdisciplinary diabetes care team to tailor interventions to individual self-management education needs
Domain 5: Program and business management Competency statement: applies principles of program and/or business management to create a climate that supports successful self-management of diabetes

Source: American Association of Diabetes Educators, Chicago, Illinois, USA [25]

1. Pathophysiology, epidemiology, and clinical practice of prediabetes and diabetes
2. Cultural competency across the life span
3. Teaching and learning skills
4. Self-management education
5. Program and business management

Guidebooks, available on the American Association of Diabetes Educators website, are useful for individuals or hospital systems setting up teaching programs for diabetes educators at each different level. Program coordinators can refer to these when defining learning objectives for staff education and tailor them to the specific setting [25, 26].

In the past, there was a lack of clarity regarding when to refer patients for diabetes education. A recent joint position statement between the American Diabetes Association, the American Association of Diabetes Educators, and the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics defined four critical times for referral to a diabetes educator [27]. These times are at diagnosis, annually (to assess certain situations such as elevated A1C, unexplained highs or lows, or planning a pregnancy), when complicating factors influence self-management (such as a diagnosis of retinopathy or cancer or the occurrence of a stroke) and when transitions in care occur (such as moving to another provider or insurance plan or transitioning from a hospital or rehab stay to home care). The joint position statement defines both what the referring provider needs to do and what may be expected from the diabetes educator. Table 25.5 provides an overview of the referral recommendations (the full algorithm is available at https://www.diabeteseducator.org/practice/practice-documents/position-statements).

Challenges in Meeting Diabetes Education Needs: Addressing the Problem

Each individual with diabetes benefits from initial and ongoing diabetes education and support to address the day-to-day behaviors that impact health and quality of life. One hundred eight million people diagnosed with diabetes worldwide require this intervention, so each can self-manage their diabetes on a daily basis [17, 28]. Diabetes education includes much more than medication teaching; therefore, it is a valuable intervention regardless of when diabetes medications are started. At diagnosis diabetes education involves collaborative discussion and decision-making related to medications, monitoring, physical activity, complications, nutrition, risk reduction, and developing personal strategies to address psychosocial issues and concerns and to promote health and behavior change [27]. A unique comparison of diabetes education and support to metformin highlights the many medical, nutritional, and behavioral benefits of education and support [29] (see Table 25.4).

Challenges in meeting an individual's diabetes education and support needs include knowing what education and support is needed, having qualified staff to engage in this clinical care, and ensuring patients continually access this care as their diabetes care needs change.

Identify Education and Support Needs

There are a number of position statements, consensus papers, standards of care, and curricula that detail topics to address in diabetes care. Many of these highlight the need to offer education in a person-centered, collaborative, engaging, and respectful manner. There are basic needs that should be addressed immediately upon diagnosis by the diabetes care team and then other needs that can be addressed soon after either through a diabetes education program or by dedicated education staff within the clinic [27]. The diabetes education position statement discussed earlier details the breadth of decisions required for daily self-management of diabetes at four critical times (see Table 25.5).

Table 25.4 Scorecard: diabetes self-management education versus metformin

	Benefits rating	
Criteria	Diabetes education	Metformin
Efficacy	High	High
Hypoglycemia risk	Low	Low
Weight	Neutral/loss	Neutral/loss
Side effects	Low/savings	Low
Psychosocial benefits	High	N/A

Table 25.5 Diabetes education and support care at four critical times[a]

Areas of focus and action steps for primary care provider, endocrinologist, and clinical care team
At diagnosis
Answer questions and provide emotional support regarding diagnosis
Provide overview of treatment and treatment goals
Teach survival skills to address immediate requirements (safe use of medication, hypoglycemia treatment if needed, introduction of eating guidelines)
Identify and discuss resources for education and ongoing support
Make referral for diabetes education and medical nutrition therapy
At annual medical visits
Assess all areas of self-management
Review problem-solving skills
Identify strengths and challenges of living with diabetes
When new complicating factors influence self-management
Assess all areas of self-management, and refer for personalized education as required
Review problem-solving skills
Identify strengths and challenges of living with diabetes
When transitions in care occur
Develop diabetes transition plan
Communicate transition plan to new healthcare team members
Establish diabetes education regular follow-up care

Adapted from Powers et al. [27]
[a]See reference for details of action steps and areas of focus for diabetes education

Employ Qualified Staff

Key to successful diabetes education are the method of delivery and engagement of each individual in their care. The focus of diabetes education is to address the clinical, psychosocial, and behavioral needs of individuals. Historically preparation of educators has been more focused on teaching them facts about diabetes rather than emphasizing principles of behavior change. Clinicians who commit to offering diabetes education and support require a unique blend of the art and science of diabetes care as well as resources to meet the needs of each individual.

The diabetes educator's role was developed to address the scope of diabetes self-management education and support needs of individuals with diabetes. In the United States, the Certified Diabetes Educator credential identifies those who meet specific knowledge and practice criteria related to diabetes education [22]. A Certified Diabetes Educator may be a nurse, dietitian nutritionist, pharmacist, social worker, psychologist, nurse practitioner, or other clinician. Different clinics in different locations around the world address the coordination and offering of diabetes education and support in various ways. Research highlights the value of a team-based approach to providing diabetes education; thus the inclusion of a Certified Diabetes Educator or designated diabetes educator on the typical healthcare team is recommended to provide and/or coordinate diabetes education [6, 27].

With this in mind, clinical teams can plan how they address the ever-increasing incidence of diabetes and corresponding need for specialized staff to educate those with diabetes. In the United States, there are 19,484 Certified Diabetes Educators [30]. With over 30 million people in the United States having diabetes [31], each Certified Diabetes Educator would be responsible for the education needs of approximately 1540 people. Worldwide this lack of diabetes educators is likely even more staggering and highlights the need for increased preparation for diabetes educators and other clinicians who accept the responsibility of addressing the initial and ongoing education and support needs of individuals with diabetes.

Ensure Ongoing Access

To address the diabetes education and support needs of people with diabetes, the clinical team can review the needs listed in Table 25.5 (see also Appendix I) and assign staff to each topic. Through discussion and consideration of other resources, teams can identify how to meet the individual needs of patients. In the United States, a referral from a provider is necessary to access a formal diabetes education program. A list of credentialed education programs can be found at www.diabeteseducator.org/deap or www.diabetes.org/erp. In other countries, national diabetes organizations typically list available resources.

It is essential that providers advocate for the education and support needs of their patients. Patients may not be aware of the value and outcomes associated with diabetes education, and some may not understand its necessity in addition to medication they take. It is especially important to highlight the ongoing need for diabetes education and support throughout one's lifetime, including when other complicating factors influence diabetes care and when transitions in care occur. It may be easy to become distracted or focused on a new situation, allowing diabetes care to suffer and become a greater burden on the patient. Diabetes education does not occur in a single session; rather it is an ongoing collaboration with the diabetes team. Lack of follow-up can diminish previous behavior change and successes.

Communication among staff is critical whether or not the team is utilizing the services of a designated, formal diabetes education program. A continuous review of responsibilities, challenges, and successes can lead to many positive outcomes.

Who Are the Diabetes Educators?

The diabetes self-management education and support staff may be a team of professionals representing multiple disciplines, or it may include just one discipline. Often the location and size of the organization determine the size of the leadership and education team. Members of the healthcare team can contribute to an effective diabetes self-management education and support program by collaborating and providing clear communication [27].

In the United States, the first group of diabetes educators started a professional organization, the American Association of Diabetes Educators, which currently has over 14,000 members and represents multiple disciplines [32]. Diabetes education certification (Certified Diabetes Educator or CDE) was first granted in 1986, and the National Certification Board for Diabetes Educators was founded in the same year [33]. Diabetes education is often considered a "specialty" or "specialization"; however, it is not considered its own profession or discipline. Diabetes educators are prepared in their specific discipline and often land in the specialty serendipitously. More recently academic preparation for diabetes educators has become an option.

The American Association of Diabetes Educators has established three levels of diabetes educators and two levels of diabetes paraprofessionals (see Tables 25.1 and 25.2). The practice levels were developed in order to delineate roles and responsibilities, suggest a career path, and clarify the contributions of diabetes educators with different levels of experience, education, and skills in a variety of settings.

The American Association of Diabetes Educators also provides Competencies for Diabetes Educators and Diabetes Paraprofessionals on their website [25]. These competencies were originally developed to provide the minimum knowledge and skills needed for practicing diabetes educators at each level. The competencies are reviewed and revised approximately every 5 years and can be used to develop job descriptions, conduct performance reviews, and create educational curriculum, among other things (see Table 25.3).

Diabetes educators originally assumed this role "on the job" – seeing and responding to a need. Today the need for diabetes education is greater than ever, and there are multiple paths to becoming a diabetes educator. Several universities have certificates and specialties in diabetes, and there is at least one graduate degree in Diabetes Education and Management [34]. Continuing education is available on diabetes topics through several universities and organizations around the world. There are also national and international meetings where people can learn about diabetes education topics (see Table 25.6).

Table 25.6 Preparation for diabetes educators

Name of program	Type of preparation	Organization/school	Website
Career Path Certificate Program	Training for healthcare providers in the delivery of diabetes self-management education and support	American Association of Diabetes Educators	https://www.diabeteseducator.org/education-career/career-path-certificate
Diabetes Education Graduate Certificate	Continuing education	Conestoga	https://www.conestogac.on.ca/parttime/diabetes-education
Diabetes Education Certificate Course	Continuing education	Emory University School of Medicine	http://medicine.emory.edu/endocrinology/diabetes-education/diabetes-educator-certification.html
Diabetes Network for Health Professionals	Discussion, library, education	International Diabetes Federation	https://dnet.idf.org/en/
International Diabetes Educator E-Learning	Course in diabetes self-management education and support for healthcare professionals	Project Hope	http://www.ideel.org/
Diabetes Education and Management	Master of Science in Diabetes Education and Management; Academic Certificate in Advanced Diabetes Topics	Teachers College Columbia University	http://www.tc.columbia.edu/health-and-behavior-studies/diabetes-education-and-management/
Diabetes Educator Graduate Certificate Program	Continuing education	The Michener Institute	http://michener.ca/ce_course/diabetes-educator-graduate-certificate-program-2/
Diabetes Care, Education and Management	Postgraduate Certificate Postgraduate Diploma Postgraduate Master's	University of Dundee	https://www.dundee.ac.uk/study/pg/diabetes-care-education-management/
Diabetes	Postgraduate Certificate Postgraduate Diploma Postgraduate Master's	University of Leicester	https://le.ac.uk/courses/diabetes-msc
Peers for Progress	Seminars, videos, articles	University of North Carolina	http://peersforprogress.org/pfp-presentations/
Diabetes	Postgraduate Certificate Postgraduate Diploma Postgraduate Master's	Warwick Medical School	http://www2.warwick.ac.uk/fac/med/study/cpd/diabetes/b906/
Diabetes Care Concentration	Master of Science in Nursing	Yale University School of Nursing	http://nursing.yale.edu/academics/master-science-nursing/masters-program-concentrations/diabetes-care-concentration

Powers et al. [27]

Diabetes education can range from minimal teaching in a primary or other care provider's office to formal education with a written curriculum and multiple follow-up visits and anything in between. Dietitians, pharmacists, exercise specialists, and other professionals may serve roles separate from or in addition to diabetes education.

Developing a Diabetes Education Program

Diabetes education takes place in a variety of practice settings, including the hospital, clinic, private practice, retail, community, and beyond. There are no limits to where diabetes education can occur. Structured or formal programs typically meet standards for diabetes self-management education.

A needs assessment is a critical first step in developing or improving a diabetes self-management education and support program in any setting [13, 35]. Needs assessments ensure that the education program is effective and appropriate for the target population. Considerations may include age, culture, location, transportation, staffing, time of classes, length of classes, materials, cost, and other resources. It is important to determine at the outset the philosophy or mission of the program, as well as goals and objectives. Making goals measurable allows the program to be evaluated according to goal achievement.

Major organizations have established guidelines for developing, implementing, evaluating, and maintaining diabetes self-management education and support programs that meet high standards. In the United States, the American Diabetes Association oversees the Education Recognition Program [36], and the American Association of Diabetes Educators oversees the Diabetes Education Accreditation Program [37].

Strategies for Successful Diabetes Education

While it is ideal to have access to a diabetes educator, that may not always be possible. Physicians often find themselves having to conduct or lead diabetes education for their patients. Consider the following eight tips to improve patient education and behavior change.

Collaborate with Patients

Engaging patients in their diabetes care plan makes the physician's job easier. When patients actively participate by thinking through and choosing treatment strategies – sharing in the decision of which medicine to take or selecting strategies to lose weight – they are more likely to follow through with behavior changes. Recognize that while the physician is the expert in diabetes care, the patient is the expert in his or her own diabetes and life. Collaboration between patient and provider is essential when designing a treatment plan for long-term success.

Ask, Rather than Tell

Even though time is very limited in a medical visit, the physician can usually learn more about the patient's key concerns or possible barriers to treatment by asking open-ended questions such as "What has been the hardest part about managing your diabetes since your last visit?" or "What questions do you have about your diabetes?" or "Many people have difficulty taking their medicine as prescribed. How often in the last week did you remember to take it?" When it comes to providing information about topics such as diabetes-related behaviors, ask the patient what they *can* do instead of telling them what they *should* do.

Recognize that Words Matter

Diabetes is often associated with stigma, shame, and guilt. The words commonly used in the language of diabetes care can accentuate negative feelings [38]. Frame messages to patients in a positive, hopeful manner. Use strengths-based language focusing on what patients do well ("tell me what you do to keep your numbers in target" vs "what are you doing that gives you so many high blood glucose levels?"). Avoid judgmental, negative words and phrases such as "your diet *failed* to bring down your blood glucose…" or "your blood glucose numbers are not good." Instead, focus on the facts and physiology by saying, "Your glucose level is still elevated. This could be due to a decline in beta cell function. They are the cells that make insulin" or "Your most recent A1C is 9.2%. This is above the goal of 7%" [39].

Gather Educational Resources

Look for teaching aids that are best suited to the educational levels, languages, and literacy needs of your population. While printed handouts may be a common type of teaching aid, remember that the most useful handout might be a blank sheet of paper on which the key messages are written (or drawn) and specifically tailored for that patient. Enlist the help of others in your office to collect additional resources for use in demonstrations, food models or nutrition fact labels, and diabetes supplies such as insulin pens, glucose meters, and hypoglycemia treatment options.

Provide a Written Care Plan

Provide each patient with a written care plan including instructions on when to monitor blood glucose, agreed upon targets, behavioral goals, and action steps as well as any medication changes. Record the results of the patient's blood pressure, weight, and lab tests to help them become familiar with their own biomarkers, know their targets, and recognize what medications and actions help to bring them into the target range.

Identify Resources

Network with diabetes educators. Even if they are not close by, there may be some who are willing to provide phone consultation or teaching for your staff. Talk with representatives from diabetes pharmaceutical, device, and technology companies as they will likely be able to identify educator experts. Learn about diabetes programs or services that may be helpful to your patients, such as diabetes support groups, education programs, community walking groups, and weight management programs.

Use the Teach Back Technique

It is common for patients to forget what they've been taught, even minutes after leaving the healthcare provider's office. In addition to giving them something in writing, ask the patient, "Let's review what we went over. Can you tell me the key points of what you're going to do?" or "Show me how you're going to dial up the insulin dose on your pen and where you will give your first injection." Asking for a "teach back" helps identify misunderstandings of key points prior to the person leaving the office.

Mentor Others

If accessing a diabetes educator is not a realistic possibility, consider mentoring a nurse, medical assistant, or other office employee to be a "diabetes champion." Diabetes champions could also be people living with diabetes (even patients from your office) who are successfully managing their diabetes and have been taught specific guidelines for talking with other patients. Diabetes champions can help busy physicians by obtaining and organizing teaching materials and product samples, locating and listing community resources, and providing patients with accurate information about basic topics. Such topics could include healthy eating using the plate method, tips to increase physical activity, or strategies to remember to take medicines. Using teaching aids such as a handout or a flipchart containing scripted messages can help ensure that key points are made consistently and that the diabetes champion does not exceed his or her scope of practice. Using office staff in this way can have a powerful impact on improving diabetes care as well as providing busy physicians more time to spend with other patients [40].

Examples of Diabetes Education Initiatives Around the Globe

Increasing the Role of the Pharmacist in Community Education in Saudi Arabia

The Middle East is one of the regions where diabetes is escalating most rapidly. In the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (KSA), the prevalence has jumped from 4.3% to 13.4% in the last 30 years. Over 50% of individuals over the age of 65 have diabetes [41]. While the role of the diabetes nurse and dietitian educators is increasing, the supply isn't keeping up with the demand. Taking a cue from initiatives in other parts of the world, including the United States, where retail pharmacists have been taking on greater roles in diabetes education, the Nahdi Medical Company started a program to teach diabetes consultant pharmacists (DCPs) to do in-store diabetes education. A program, "Let's Talk About Diabetes," which included four short, structured lessons on topics including taking medicines and monitoring blood glucose, was developed in a collaborative partnership with Joslin Diabetes Center and under the supervision of the KSA Ministry of Health. The program started as a pilot in 11 stores in four different cities and has expanded to over 40 stores. Numerous beneficial outcomes have been reported including an increase in medication-taking behaviors (with 54% reporting not taking medicines as prescribed over past 7 days at baseline to only 14% reporting this at follow-up) to an increase in those reporting using a meal plan to help manage their diabetes (from 6% to 32%). There were 380 customers with paired A1C results, which demonstrated a reduction from 8.5% (69 mmol/mol) to 7.32% (56 mmol/mol) ($p < 0.001$) [42]. As demonstrated by this project, community pharmacists in the retail setting can play an important and effective role in diabetes education.

Using Conversation Maps® to Facilitate Education in Pakistan

Diabetes education in group settings can be very effective. Research shows participants enjoy the group interaction and also demonstrate improvements in clinical outcomes (A1C). In addition, group education programs are cost-effective [43]. Conversation Maps are a set of large, color-

ful images or pictorial guides, designed to engage small groups of people in discussion about their diabetes. Through the discussions, facilitated by a healthcare professional, people not only learn about diabetes but also discuss their beliefs, clarify misconceptions, and share their personal stories of successes and challenges, thus learning from each other. Conversation Maps have been translated into 35 languages and are available in 110 countries. A study of 172 individuals in Pakistan participating in Diabetes Conversation Maps sessions found a high level of satisfaction with this teaching method with 72% preferring the group method using the maps over individual education. The study also demonstrated a large increase in individuals reporting willingness to make a change in behaviors to improve diabetes outcomes (from 20% at baseline to 66% after the class discussions) [44].

Using Community Health Workers in Diabetes Education and Prevention in Rural India

Recognizing the limited availability of diabetes educators, especially in rural areas, trained community health workers, or peer counselors can be an effective resource and has been effectively demonstrated in India. In two different interventions, community health workers were taught by a diabetes educator to provide lifestyle education aimed at reducing risks for diabetes. Dietary education focused on improving the intake of fiber and protein from low-cost resources such as nutritionally rich drumstick leaves, millets, lentils, and whole grains. Educators emphasized avoidance of sweetened drinks, and nutrition teaching methods included cooking demonstrations, recipe competitions, and model meals. Community health workers promoted and reinforced physical activity with demonstrations, competitive fun events, and dancercise events for the younger respondents. Stress relaxation instruction included the importance of meditation and breathing exercises (familiar to many of the respondents). A Certified Diabetes Educator provided individual education and counseling for blood glucose management to a high-risk group. Interventions showed improvement in obesity- and diabetes-related parameters and dietary intake [45]. As the need for diabetes educators grows, the use of community health workers is an effective and recommended option. The American Association of Diabetes Educators Practice Synopsis on Community Health Workers suggests roles and competencies and offers recommendations for practice [46]. The Peers for Progress website offers many examples of successful interventions as well as resources available for training [47].

Engaging Group Activities for Support in Japan

Activities that bring people with diabetes together, such as support groups, have long been recognized as being helpful, and the Education Center of Kenichi Yamada Internal Medicine Clinic in Sendai, Japan, has successfully initiated several innovative approaches. The clinic is designed as a very warm and welcoming space and even includes an art gallery displaying paintings from a local artist. The clinic's motto, "Hand-in-hand we think and take steps together," reflects their philosophy of the importance of partnership between patient and provider. Their clinic website shows how diabetes education activities go beyond traditional classes, by including walking groups, concerts (offered along with diabetes education), cooking classes (where everyone participates), as well as classes with custom tailored conversation maps. Activities such as these build community and support between participants and their healthcare providers [48].

Online Diabetes Educator Preparation: Certificate and Degree Programs

As the need for diabetes educators increases, different groups have implemented solutions to increase access to instruction programs. For example, a certificate program in India that was originally designed to prepare diabetes educators through live classroom-based lectures has been adapted into a set of interactive, web-based learning modules called "International Diabetes Educator E-Learning" and is available in English and Spanish through its sponsoring organization, Project Hope [49]. The International Diabetes Federation also offers resources in English and Spanish as well as some free online classes for diabetes educators. While the offerings are limited at this time, there appears to be a plan for growth and expansion [24]. In addition, the American Association of Diabetes Educators has several certificate courses available in English [50]. Table 25.6 provides a partial list of academic and continuing education opportunities for diabetes educators and paraprofessionals. An Internet search can also identify the most current programs available.

Additional Roles for the Diabetes Educator

Diabetes educators are often called on for their expertise. Their presence and participation in social media is growing; there are more and more virtual chats and other opportunities

for diabetes educators to share their experience and knowledge. Diabetes educators are also considered thought leaders in the field and are often asked to contribute to papers, meetings, and advisory boards. In addition, diabetes educators are being asked to serve as content experts for published materials. National organizations often ask diabetes educators to serve on committees and lend their expertise to special projects.

Diabetes education is still in its early stages around the world, and diabetes educators have an opportunity to grow this specialty. While there are currently not enough diabetes educators to serve all people with diabetes, they can prepare diabetes paraprofessionals to help meet patients' education needs; they can partner with other professionals and encourage more people to become diabetes educators. Diabetes educators are leaders in using and teaching about mobile apps for diabetes management. They know how to interact successfully with people of all ages and generations. Diabetes educators recognize the value of diabetes technology and are teaching others how to use it. There is a possible role for diabetes educators in retinal screening, which could increase the number of people who have dilated eye exams each year and in turn get referred for care as needed [51].

It is impossible to predict what the future will hold for diabetes educators. The need for well-prepared diabetes educators is unrelenting. The opportunities for online education resources are increasing every day. Diabetes educators are well positioned to oversee that work and ensure timely, relevant, consistent, and accurate information is made available to people with diabetes and their loved ones.

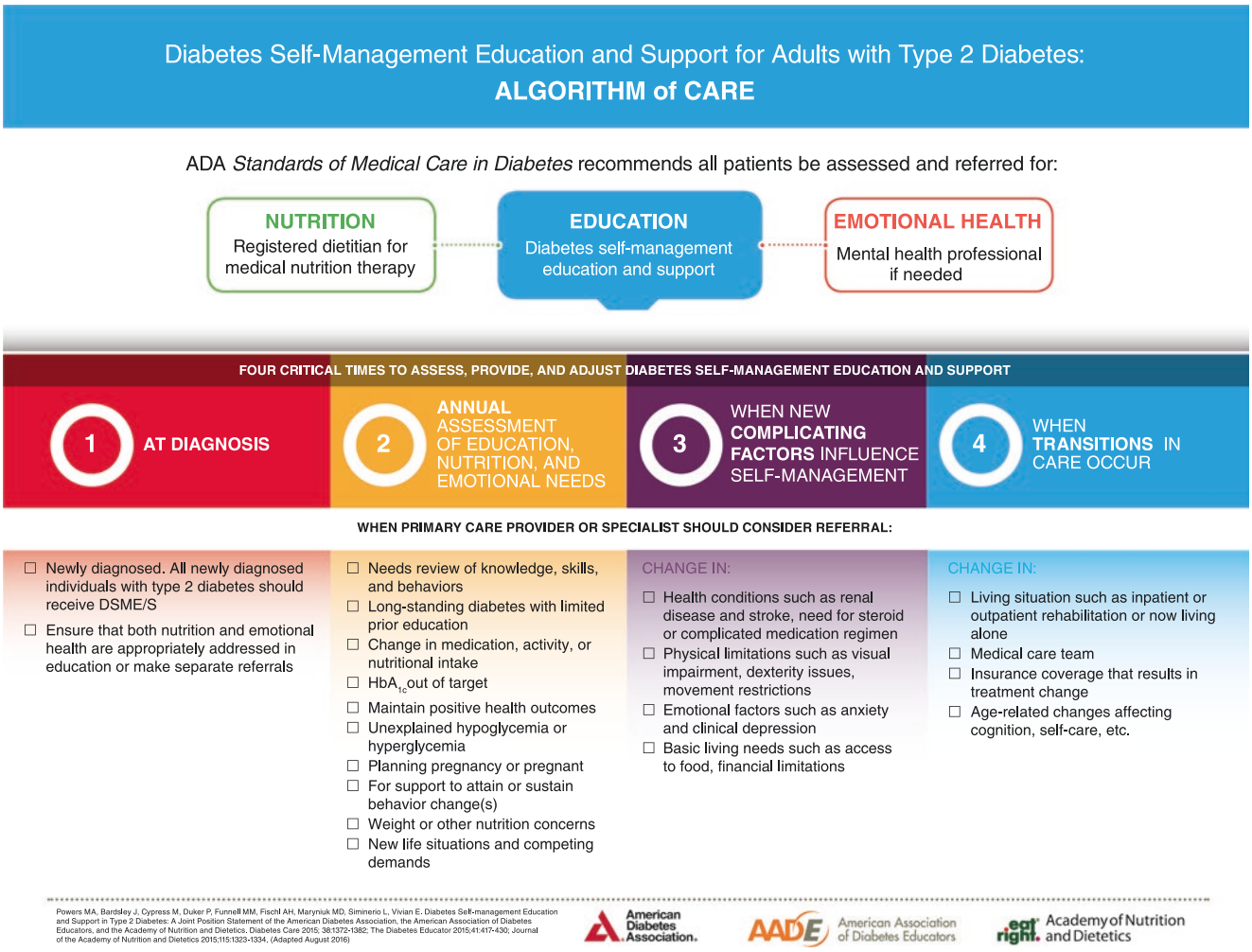
Multiple-Choice Questions

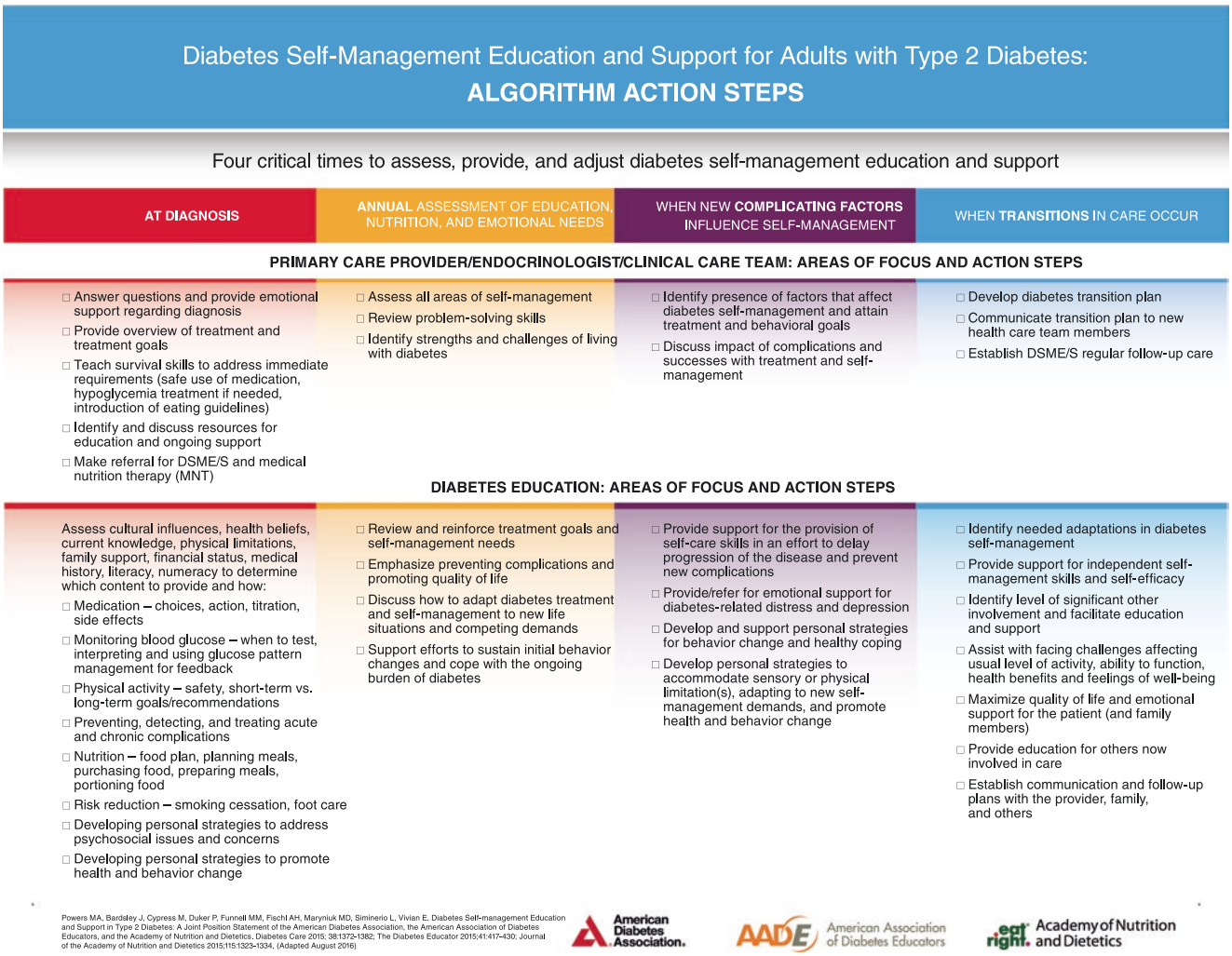
1. Which of the following have been found to improve as a result of diabetes self-management education?
   (a) A1C
   (b) Quality of Life
   (c) Self-care behaviors
   (d) All of the above
2. According to the DAWN2 study, which of the following statements is true?
   (a) About 50% of people report diabetes has a negative impact on their emotional well-being.
   (b) About 25% of people report experiencing diabetes-related distress.
   (c) About 15% of people who attended diabetes classes reported no improvement.
   (d) All of the above.
3. What are considered the critical times for diabetes education?
   (a) At diagnosis and within the first 18 months
   (b) At diagnosis, when A1C is elevated and when insulin is initiated
   (c) At diagnosis, annually, when complicating factors arise and when transitions in care occur
   (d) At diagnosis, when new medications are started, after a hospitalization
4. Diabetes self-management education and support can be provided by:
   (a) Nurse
   (b) Dietitian
   (c) Pharmacist
   (d) All of the above plus others
5. Content areas for diabetes self-management education and support include:
   (a) Healthy eating, exercise, medications, and monitoring
   (b) Pathophysiology, treatment, and acute and chronic complications
   (c) Healthy coping and problem-solving
   (d) All of the above
6. If a Certified Diabetes Educator is not available, the following people can provide diabetes education:
   (a) Physician
   (b) Family members
   (c) Peer educators or community health workers
   (d) (a) and (c)
7. Ongoing preparation in diabetes education and support topics is available through:
   (a) Informal get-togethers with colleagues
   (b) Online academic degree programs and continuing education
   (c) YouTube videos about diabetes
   (d) Working with patients
8. Words and messages are important in diabetes. Recommendations for effective communication include using:
   (a) Strengths-based language
   (b) Empowering language
   (c) Language based on facts and physiology
   (d) All of the above
9. Successful strategies for diabetes education include:
   (a) Telling people what to do.
   (b) Giving people information, sending them home, and hoping for the best.
   (c) Using the teach back technique.
   (d) People have enough to think about; they don't need written handouts.
10. The most important sign of a successful diabetes education program is:
    (a) Lots of money coming in
    (b) Engaged patients
    (c) Lower A1C numbers
    (d) Decreased incidence of hypoglycemia

Correct Answers

1. (d) All of the above
2. (a) About 50% of people report diabetes has a negative impact on their emotional well-being.
3. (c) At diagnosis, annually, when complicating factors arise and when transitions in care occur
4. (d) All of the above plus others
5. (d) All of the above
6. (d) (a) and (c)
7. (b) Online academic degree programs and continuing education
8. (d) All of the above
9. (c) Using the teach back technique.
10. (b) Engaged patients

Appendix





References

1. Allen NA. The history of diabetes nursing. Diabetes Educ. 2003;29(6):976–89.
2. National standards for diabetes self-management education programs. Diabetes Care. 1995;18(1):141.
3. Haas L. National standards for diabetes self-management education and support. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(s1):S100.
4. Beck J, Greenwood DA, Blanton L, Bollinger ST, Butcher MK, Condon JE, et al. 2017 national standards for diabetes self-management education and support. Diabetes Educ. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1177/0145721717722968.
5. Diabetes Canada. Diabetes standards. 2017. Retrieved 07/03/2017, from http://www.diabetes.ca/membership/cda-professional-section/standards-recognition-program/diabetes-educator-section/diabetes-standards-recognition-program/about-standards-for-diabetes-education-in-canada.
6. Chrvala CA, Sherr D, Lipman RD. Diabetes self-management education for adults with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review of the effect on glycemic control. Patient Educ Couns. 2016;99(6):926–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pec.2015.11.003.
7. Cooke D. Structured type 1 diabetes education delivered within routine care: impact on glycemic control and diabetes-specific quality of life. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(2):270.
8. North SL, Palmer GA. Outcome analysis of hemoglobin A1c, weight, and blood pressure in a VA diabetes education program. J Nutr Educ Behav. 2015;47(1):28–35. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jneb.2014.07.006.
9. Rotberg B, Greene R, Ferez-Pinzon AM, Mejia R, Umpierrez G. Improving diabetes care in the Latino population: the Emory Latino diabetes education program. Am J Health Educ. 2016;47(1):1–7. https://doi.org/10.1080/19325037.2015.1111177.
10. Ruiz-González I, Fernández-Alcántara M, Guardia-Archilla T, Rodríguez-Morales S, Molina A, Casares D, De los Santos-Roig M. Long-term effects of an intensive-practical diabetes education program on HbA1c and self-care. Appl Nurs Res. 2016;31:13–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apnr.2015.12.008.
11. Surucu HA, Kizilci S, Ergor G. The impacts of diabetes education on self care agency, self-care activities and HbA1c levels of patients

with type 2 diabetes: a randomized controlled study. Int J Caring Sci. 2017;10(1):479–89.
12. He X. Diabetes self-management education reduces risk of all-cause mortality in type 2 diabetes patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Endocrine. 2017;55(3):712.
13. Colson S. An integrative review of the quality and outcomes of diabetes education programs for children and adolescents. Diabetes Educ. 2016;42(5):549.
14. Luan LL, Yang J, He YF, Huang ZX, Liu L, Huang ZS. Impact of diabetes education and self-management support on the 4D series of diabetes patients. Biomed Res (India). 2017;28(3):1172–7.
15. Cooke D, Bond R, Lawton J, Rankin D, Heller S, Clark M, Speight J. Modeling predictors of changes in glycemic control and diabetes-specific quality of life amongst adults with type 1 diabetes 1 year after structured education in flexible, intensive insulin therapy. J Behav Med. 2015;38(5):817–29. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10865-015-9649-y.
16. Mohamed OMI. Can structured education improve metabolic outcome and quality of life in diabetes? A systematic review of randomised controlled trials. Middle East J Fam Med. 2016;14(2):31.
17. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes – 2017. Diabetes Care. 2017b;40(1):S1–S135.
18. Australia, Diabetes. Education. 2017. Retrieved 07/06/2017, from http://www.diabetes.co.uk/education/.
19. Diabetes UK. Diabetes education: the big missed opportunity in diabetes care. London: Diabetes UK; 2015.
20. NICE. 2017. Retrieved 08/30/2017, from https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/conditions-and-diseases/diabetes-and-other-endocrinal%2D%2Dnutritional-and-metabolic-conditions/diabetes.
21. About DAWN2. 2015. Retrieved 08/26/2017, from http://www.dawnstudy.com/dawn2/about-dawn2.html.
22. National Certification Board for Diabetes Educators. Eligibility requirements. 2017b. Retrieved 08/29/2017, from https://www.ncbde.org/certification_info/eligibility-requirements/.
23. Sherr D, Lipman RD. The diabetes educator and the diabetes self-management education engagement: the 2015 national practice survey. Diabetes Educ. 2015;41(5):616–24. https://doi.org/10.1177/0145721715599268.
24. International Diabetes Federation. Diabetes network for health professionals. 2017. Retrieved 08/29/2017, from https://d-net.idf.org/en/library/159-international-standards-for-education-of-diabetes-health-professionals.html.
25. American Association of Diabetes Educators. Competencies for diabetes educators. 2016a. Retrieved 08/29/2017, from https://www.diabeteseducator.org/practice/practice-documents/competencies-for-diabetes-educators.
26. American Association of Diabetes Educators. Practice levels. 2016b. Retrieved 08/29/2017, from https://www.diabeteseducator.org/docs/default-source/practice/practice-resources/praclev-20168f0edb36a05f68739c53ff0000b8561d.pdf?sfvrsn=6.
27. Powers MA, Bardsley J, Cypress M, Duker P, Funnell MM, Fischl AH, et al. Diabetes self-management education and support in type 2 diabetes: a joint position statement of the American Diabetes Association, the American Association of Diabetes Educators, and the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics. Diabetes Educ. 2015;43(1):40–53. https://doi.org/10.1177/0145721715588904.
28. World Health Organization. Diabetes. 2017. Retrieved 07/24/2017, from http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs312/en/.
29. Powers MA. If DMSE were a pill, would you prescribe it? Diabetes Care. 2016;39:2101–7.
30. National Certification Board for Diabetes Educators. 2017 Count of CDEs by state and other statistics. 2017a. Retrieved 08/30/2017, from https://www.ncbde.org/2017-count-of-cdes-by-state-and-other-statistics/.
31. Centers for Disease Control. Diabetes fact sheets. 2017. Retrieved 08/29/2017, from https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/library/factsheets.html.
32. American Association of Diabetes Educators. About AADE. 2017b. 07/07/2017, from https://www.diabeteseducator.org/about-aade.
33. National Certification Board for Diabetes Educators. History. 2017c. Retrieved 06/30/2017, from https://www.ncbde.org/about/history/.
34. Dickinson JK, Lipman RD, O'Brian CA. Diabetes education as a career choice. Diabetes Educ. 2015;41(6):665–76. https://doi.org/10.1177/0145721715608952.
35. Dehkordi LM. Diabetes self-management education; experience of people with diabetes. J Caring Sci. 2017;6(2):111.
36. American Diabetes Association. Diabetes education. 2017a. Retrieved 07/12/2017, from https://professional.diabetes.org/diabetes-education.
37. American Association of Diabetes Educators. Diabetes education accreditation program. 2017c. Retrieved 07/12/2017, from https://www.diabeteseducator.org/practice/diabetes-education-accreditation-program-(deap).
38. Dickinson JK. The experience of diabetes-related language in diabetes care. Diabetes Spectr. in press.
39. Dickinson JK, Guzman SJ, Maryniuk MD, O'Brian CA, Kadohiro JK, Jackson RA, et al. The use of language in diabetes care and education. Diabetes Care. in press.
40. Celeste-Harris S, Maryniuk M. Educating Medical Office Staff: enhancing diabetes care in primary care practices. Diabetes Spectr. 2006;19(2):84–9.
41. Mokdad AH, Ruffaha M, Hanlon M, El Bcheraoui C, Daoud F, Al Saeedi M, Alrasheedy AA, Al Hussein MA, Memish ZA, Basulaiman M. Cost of diabetes in the kingdom of Saudi Arabia, 2014. J Diabetes Metab. 2015;6:575–81.
42. Armian H, Maryniuk MD, Imershein SG, Bonsignore P, Hsu W, Bayoumi A, Turkistani SA, Alharbi MY. Pharmacist-led diabetes education improves awareness, self-management, and glycemic control. 2016.
43. Rickheim PL, Weaver TW, Flader JL, Kendall DM. Assessment of group versus individual diabetes education. Diabetes Care. 2002;25(2):269–74.
44. Ghafoor E, Riaz M, Eichorst B, Fawwad A, Basit A. Evaluation of diabetes conversation maps education tools for diabetes self-management education. Diabetes Spectr. 2015;28(4):230–5.
45. Balagopal P, Kamalamma N, Patel TG, Misra R. A community based participatory diabetes prevention and management intervention in rural India using community health workers. Diabetes Educ. 2012;38(6):822–34.
46. American Association of Diabetes Educators. Community health workers in diabetes management and prevention. 2015. Retrieved 08/26/2017, from https://www.diabeteseducator.org/docs/default-source/default-document-library/community-health-workers-in-diabetes-management-and-prevention.pdf?sfvrsn=0.
47. Peers for Progress. 2017. Retrieved 08/26/2017, from http://peers-forprogress.org/.
48. Yamada. Diabetes education. 2017. Retrieved 08/26/2017, from http://yamada-ec.jp/en/education
49. IDEEL. International diabetes educator e-learning. 2017. Retrieved 08/26/2017, from http://www.ideel.org/.
50. American Association of Diabetes Educators. AADE career path certificate program. 2017a. Retrieved 08/29/2017, from https://www.diabeteseducator.org/education-career/career-path-certificate.
51. McDonald JE, Dickinson JK. Visualizing change: diabetes educators screening for retinopathy. AADE Pract. 2016;4(1):28032.

Diabetes and Mental Health: From Distress to Depression

26

Gerhard Heinze, Diana Guizar-Sánchez, and Napoleón Bernard-Fuentes

Introduction

The comorbidity between depression and diabetes mellitus was recognized by the British physician Thomas Willis in the seventeenth century; he noted that diabetes frequently appeared in individuals who had previous experiences of stress in their lives, "diabetes is a consequence of prolonged sorrow" [1, 2].

Diabetes mellitus (DM) prevalence is increasing worldwide; the World Health Organization predicts there will be 300 million people having this disease by 2025, and due to an increase in prevalence, diabetes has become an epidemic throughout the world and one of the leading causes of death, affecting approximately 422 million people globally. Depression is a frequent comorbidity of both type 1 (T1D) and type 2 diabetes (T2D) [3, 4]. The high prevalence of the comorbidity worldwide is characterized by high morbidity and mortality in patients who suffer from both diseases [5, 6]. Also the WHO reveals that 49% of the depressed people with type 2 diabetes mellitus (DM2) were misrecognized by the primary care system. The comorbidity of depression and diabetes mellitus is a serious chronic condition that negatively affects quality of life, increases functional disability and reduces life expectancy [7, 8]. The comorbidity represents a major clinical challenge as the outcomes of each condition are worsened by the presence of the other. Today we know that people with type 1 diabetes mellitus (DM1) and DM2 have an increased risk of developing depressive symptoms, and people with depression also have an increased risk of developing diabetes [9]. But the exact mechanisms through which these two conditions affect each other remain uncertain, and there are few integrated approaches to the problem. The American Diabetes Association recommends diabetes screening every 3 years in all subjects above 45 years of age; an earlier and more intensive testing is advised in overweight persons with other risk factors (physical inactivity, family history of diabetes, previous gestational diabetes, hypertension, hypertriglyceridaemia, polycystic ovary syndrome). Depression disorder should be included among the risk factors that should drive diabetes screening [10]. There is also evidence that suggests diabetes mellitus is associated with a higher frequency of suicide, with depression being the most commonly reported psychiatric disorder in patients with diabetes who attempted suicide [11].

Definitions

- *Major depressive disorder.* According to the American Psychiatric Association *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fifth edition (DSM-5) [12], and the tenth revision of the *International Classification of Diseases* (ICD-10) [13], major depressive disorder is a mood disorder, made on the basis of several symptoms and the extent of functional deterioration. The diagnosis according to DSM-5 is made when at least five of nine symptoms (feelings of guilt or worthlessness, fatigue or loss of energy, concentration problems, suicidality or thoughts about death, change in weight, change in activity, change in sleep), including a minimum of one core symptom (a diminished or irritable mood, decreased interest or pleasure), last at least 2 weeks. The different possible combinations of depression symptoms all leading to a diagnosis are large and result in various clinical profiles of depression.
- *Distress.* The term was introduced by Hans Selye in the early 1970s, and he distinguished between stress initiated by negative, unpleasant stressors (distress) and positive stress (eustress) [14]. Ridner defined it as "the unique discomforting, emotional state experienced by an individual in response to a specific stressor or demand that results in harm (irritability, fear, nervousness and sadness), either temporary or permanent to the person" [15].

G. Heinze (✉) · D. Guizar-Sánchez · N. Bernard-Fuentes
Department of Psychiatry and Mental Health, Faculty of Medicine (UNAM), Mexico City, Mexico
e-mail: gerhard@heinzemg.com; guizar.diana@comunidad.unam.mx; napoleon@fmposgrado.unam.mx

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_26

- *Diabetes distress* is an emotional distress that stems from a variety of areas related to living with the burden of a chronic illness [16]. Living with diabetes can be complex, demanding and sometimes confusing. Patients often feel frustrated, angry, overwhelmed and/or discouraged. When the challenges of caring for diabetes affect the individual on an emotional level, it may result in diabetes-related distress [17].

Epidemiology of Comorbid Depression and Diabetes

In 2015, the prevalence of diabetes worldwide was of 1 in 11 adults, and the estimated prevalence of the impaired glucose toleration was of 1 in 15 adults. These numbers are expected to further increase, especially in the urban population, leading to more medical and economic challenges, added on top of the 12% global health expenditure currently spent on diabetes [18]. Depression is a common and serious disease with a lifetime prevalence from 11% to 15% [19]. Depression and anxiety are the fourth cause of disability-adjusted life years (DALYS) in developed countries, whereas diabetes is the eighth [20]. A common cited meta-analysis (including type 1 and type 2 diabetes) showed that the overall odds of depression was twice as high for people with diabetes compared to nondiabetic controls, and no significant differences in prevalence were found between these two types of diabetes [21]. Few years later, Ali and colleagues realized a meta-analysis of ten controlled studies focusing on type 2 diabetes, and the prevalence rate of depression was found higher in people with diabetes compared to controls. Barnard [22] published a systematic review of four controlled studies and reported that the prevalence of clinical depression was 12.0% for people with type 1 diabetes compared to 3.2% in people without diabetes. Moussavi and cols [23] carried out a survey in 60 countries and found that the self-reported 1-year prevalence of depressive symptoms in diabetes was 9.3% compared to 3.2% in people without a comorbid condition. Studies indicate that during the period following the diagnosis of type 2 diabetes, important changes occur that are likely to be associated with the development of depression. Skinner and cols [24] found that the prevalence of depression was not significantly different from a normative sample in the first year after diagnosis, although a significant number of people had persistent depressive symptoms during that year. Use of antidepressant medication was also increased temporarily during the first year after diagnosis of type 2 diabetes [25].

Recently [26], the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) of the National Institutes of Health (NIH), in collaboration with the National Institute of Mental Health and the Dialogue on Diabetes and Depression concluded that the prevalence of this comorbidity varies considerably by method of depression assessment; for example, prevalence rates for elevated depressive symptoms range from 12 to 27% across studies of people with type 1 and type 2 diabetes, while rates of depressive disorders, as assessed by psychiatric interview protocols, range from 8 to 15% in adults with type 1 and type 2 diabetes [27]. Nouwen and colleagues [28] in a recent meta-analysis concluded that the incidence of depression is 24% higher in people with diabetes type 2, and the presence of two or more complications (neuropathy and nephropathy) is associated with a greater than twofold increase in the risk of depression in people with type 2 diabetes.

Meurs and colleagues [29] found that depression was more prevalent in people with diabetes, regardless of the fact that they had diagnosed or undiagnosed diabetes ($n = 90{,}686$).

We can conclude that based on available epidemiological studies, diabetes is associated with increased risk of depression, and in the same way, a depressive disorder increases the risk of metabolic diseases like diabetes. In other words, there is a bidirectional association between diabetes and depression, a complex relation that might share biological mechanisms, whose understanding could provide a better treatment and avoid complications of comorbidity. In 2015, Berge et al. and Moulton et al. [30, 31] indicated three possible directions for the association of diabetes and depression: both diseases might have a common etiology, diabetes increasing the prevalence or risk for future depression and depression increasing the prevalence or risk for future diabetes.

Mechanisms Underlying the Association Diabetes-Distress-Depression (Fig. 26.1)

Depression was an understandable reaction to the difficulties resulting from living with a demanding and life-shortening chronic physical illness that is associated with chronic and debilitating complications. De Ridder and colleagues [32] found that distress is prevalent in medical patients with chronic illness because of the challenges in patients' habitual coping strategies, with most eventually reaching good psychological adjustment, but for about 30%, the adjustment phase is long lasting or unsuccessful. In diabetes distress presents in 10–30%, depending on case mix, and can differ across settings and countries [33]. In an observational study during 18 months in patients with type 2 diabetes in the USA, almost a third of the patients reported increased diabetes-distress at least at one of three measurement time points, with 22% reporting high diabetes-distress at all three measurement points [34]. Fisher and colleagues [35] consider emotional distress as a core, continuous dimension that underlies diabetes-related distress, subclinical depression, elevated depressive symptoms and major depressive disorder.

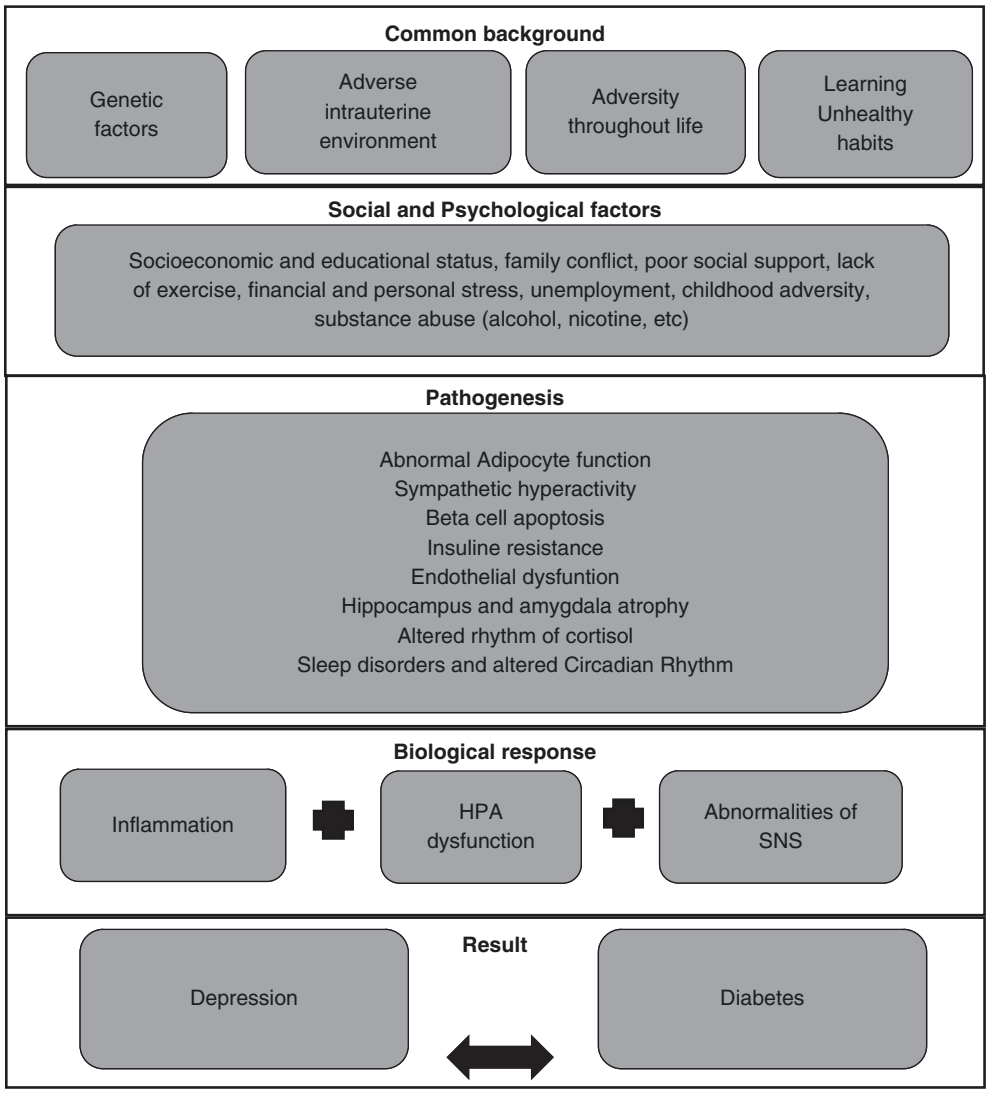


Fig. 26.1 Mechanisms underlying the association diabetes-distress-depression

Adherence to Treatment and Hygiene and Dietetic Measures

Depression and type 2 diabetes share similar environmental and lifestyle risk factors, such as socioeconomic deprivation, social adversity, smoking and reduced physical activity. Recent studies [33–39] showed that childhood adversity (abuse, deprivation and neglect) and work stress have effects on depression and diabetes. Depression is associated to self-neglect and low self-esteem, which might increase risk of unhealthy lifestyles, for example, increased caloric intake, high body mass index (BMI), poor diet, low levels of physical activity and smoking, which generates metabolic changes and incremented the risk of diabetes.

Lustman and colleagues [40] on a meta-analysis showed that depression in diabetes was associated with significantly worse glycaemic control, although the effect size ($r = 0.17$) was small. For depression diagnosed by a standardized clinical interview, the effect size was larger ($r = 0.28$). Evidence suggests that diabetes-related distress, rather than depression, is associated with decreased glycaemic control over time [41]. It is important to know that not all depressive symptoms are equally important. Nefs and colleagues [42] identified anhedonia as the strongest predictor for poor glycaemic control, in contrast with Bot and colleagues [43] who identified depressed mood and somatic symptoms of depression (sleeping difficulties, appetite problems and psychomotor retardation) as best predictors.

The link between depression and type 2 diabetes is bidirectional: type 2 diabetes is associated with a roughly 20% increased risk of incident depression [44, 45], and depression is associated with a 60% increased risk of incident type 2 diabetes. A Gonzalez and colleague meta-analysis found that depression has a moderate to weak association with self-care behaviour (overall $r = 0{\cdot}21$) including missed medical appointments, diet, exercise, medication use, glucose monitoring and foot care [46]. In a primary study, a 1-point increase in depressive symptoms scales was found to result

in a 10% increased risk of non-adherence to fruit and vegetable intake and foot care. Findings of cross-sectional studies [41, 47] of the association depression-diabetes self-care showed that healthy eating, regular exercise and low calorie intake and low-fat food showed a strong negative correlation with depressive symptoms and diabetes-distress, but not with the presence of clinical depression which according with Holt and colleagues [47] suggests the possibility that there may be a mutually reinforcing phenomenon that poorer adherence to self-care may increase blood glucose, which in turn may contribute to depressive symptoms and consequently contribute to decreased adherence to self-care behaviours.

The Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal (HPA) Axis Dysfunction

Stress is a state of threatened homeostasis, evoking adaptive responses. As we already know, the major role of the HPA axis is to mediate the neuroendocrine stress response, in order to re-establish body homeostasis. It is important to briefly recall the HPA axis: (1) the corticotropin releasing factor (CRH) is synthesized by the neurons in the parvocellular cell division of the paraventricular nucleus (PVN), (2) it is secreted in the pituitary portal blood, (3) enters the anterior pituitary and (4) binds to receptors on the surface of CRH type 1 cells; the resulting ACTH acts on the adrenal cortex, to stimulate the secretion of cortisol. Cortisol inhibits the secretion of CRH and ACTH from the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary, respectively. Once cortisol is released from the adrenal cortex in response to ACTH stimulation, it functions to increase blood glucose levels through its action on glycogen, protein and lipid metabolism [48, 49].

Chronic stress and cortisol excess can lead to:

(a) Increased portal and peripheral free fatty acids to be released into the circulation which impairs the ability of insulin to translocate intracellular SLC2A4 glucose transporters to the cell surface and can therefore contribute to metabolic syndrome, insulin resistance, muscle weakness, hirsutism, increased bruisability and type 2 diabetes [50].
(b) Accumulation of visceral fat by promoting differentiation and proliferation of adipocytes, redistributing fat from peripheral to central depots and increasing the size and number of adipocytes [51].
(c) Hindered neurogenesis in the hippocampus and amygdala [52].
(d) Depression [53].

Several biological mechanisms have been proposed for the association between diabetes and depression throughout the life course. Gragnoli [54] hypothesized that may reside at the level of the CRH receptors which may carry genetic variants that determine protein dysfunctions responsible for HPA axis hyper-activation and for impaired cortisol-mediated feedback response in depression. The genetic variant at the level of CRHR1 that contributes to increased CRH levels in the hypothalamus may as a loss of function variant contribute to reduce insulin secretion in the pancreatic beta cell, which, jointly to the prediabetic insulin-resistant state due to hypercortisolism, may lead to type 2 diabetes. In contrast, Horwath and cols [55] hypothesized that atypical depression is associated with a hypoactive HPA axis and hypocortisolism. However, patients with atypical depression also have insulin resistance possibly due to a non-cortisol-mediated increase in visceral fat. These patients in fact have an increased food intake, especially carbohydrates, which may contribute to the decreased insulin sensitivity.

Conventional measures used to assess HPA axis activity showed in depression and diabetes elevated 24-h urine free cortisol levels, failure to suppress cortisol with dexamethasone suppression test, adrenal gland enlargement and performing the dexamethasone-corticotrophin-releasing hormone (CRH) test. The failure to suppress cortisol with the dexamethasone suppression test or the dexamethasone-CRH test suggests injury to the HPA axis negative feedback loop and an inability of the HPA axis to appropriately terminate the stress response, resulting in excessive cortisol exposure.

Abnormalities of the Sympathetic Nervous System (SNS)

Carney and colleagues [56] documented elevated heart rate, lower heart rate variability and high heart rate responses to physical stressors in depressed psychiatric patients compared with healthy controls. Few years later, Udupa and colleagues [57] found that depressed patients vs controls had higher low-frequency/high-frequency ratios and higher basal heart rates, suggesting a shift in SNS activity towards enhanced sympathetic tone. A much larger study of Carol and colleagues [58] suggested that depression is associated with a blunted cardiovascular response to acute stress because they found that depressed patients were negatively associated with systolic blood pressure and heart rate reaction to paced auditory serial arithmetic testing after adjusting for gender, occupation, BMI, stress task performance score, medications (antidepressants and antihypertensives) and baseline cardiovascular activity.

Catecholamines are counterregulatory hormones that induce insulin resistance by acting on β3-receptors found in intra-abdominal and visceral fat and promote lipolysis, leading to increased free fatty acid release [59]. A disease

in which this mechanism is exemplified is pheochromocytoma (a rare neuroendocrine tumour involving overproduction of catecholamines), where insulin resistance, significant improvements in 24-h urine catecholamine levels, fasting plasma glucose and fasting insulin were notable features [60].

Inflammation and Innate Immunity

Depression

Studies in experimental animals and humans identified a close connection between the immune system and neurocircuits in the brain, which may have implications for the role of inflammation in the development of depression [61]. Two meta-analyses of cross-sectional studies [62, 63] provided evidence that patients with depression have higher circulating levels of biomarkers of subclinical inflammation, in particular C-reactive protein (CRP), interleukin (IL)-6, IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1ra) and tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α, than nondepressed individuals. Stewart and cols [64] demonstrated that baseline depression scores and BMI were predictors of increase in IL-6, which suggest that depressive symptoms possibly precede and contribute to the inflammatory processes. Gimeno and cols [65] showed that baseline CRP and IL-6 were predictive of cognitive symptoms of depression. One year later, Weinstein and colleagues [66] found heightened acute mental stress reactivity in depressed individuals with higher IL-6, TNF-α and CRP compared with controls, and their results were supported by the meta-analysis of Dowlati and colleagues [67]. Recently, Khandaker and colleagues [68] found that increased concentrations of CRP and interleukin-6 predicted increased risk of depression.

Diabetes

Many studies support the association of inflammation and diabetes: Bertoni and colleagues [69] found higher CRP, IL-6 and fibrinogen levels; Aso and colleagues [70] found higher CRP, IL-6 and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1; Valle Gotlieb and colleagues [71] found higher high-sensitivity CRP (hs-CRP), oxidized low-density lipoprotein (LDL), oxidized LDL autoantibodies and IL-6 among diabetic patients vs controls. Specifically, T2D and subclinical inflammation are linked in a bidirectional relationship [5]. The extent of chronic low-grade immune activation in T2D is exacerbated by the manifestation of macro- and microvascular complications during the progression of the disease [72]. It is currently not clear to what extent inflammatory processes mediate the increased risk of depression in patients with T2D. Furthermore, it remains unclear whether this association is independent of diabetic complications, which are highly prevalent in patients with longer diabetes duration. Additionally, it is not completely clarified whether associations between inflammation and depression are also present in patients with T1D. Both diabetes types share hyperglycaemia as the diagnostic criterion. However, they represent opposite ends of a continuum with different aetiologies, which extends to the contribution of immune activation and inflammation [73].

Depression-Diabetes-Inflammation

Several studies proved that both depression and diabetes are associated with proinflammatory cytokines and elevation of inflammatory markers [74–78]. Specifically in type 2 diabetes, raised concentrations of proinflammatory cytokines lead to pancreatic β-cell apoptosis and insulin resistance [79]. Epidemiological studies proposed innate immunity (interleukin-6 and CRP) as a possible mechanism by which depression and type 2 diabetes could develop as a result of stressors throughout the life course (abuse, neglect or both before age 16 years, low socioeconomic status) [80]. Laake and colleagues [81] found that patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes and depression were more overweight and younger and had higher concentrations of C-reactive protein (CRP) and interleukin-1 receptor antagonist and higher white cell counts than those with type 2 diabetes who were not depressed.

Sounds logical that if inflammation is involved in pathogenesis of depression and type 2 diabetes, reduction in inflammation might be a novel treatment. Recent placebo-controlled trials with anti-inflammatory agents (interleukin-1 receptor antagonist and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs) found that they improve glycaemic control [82, 83]. But there are no studies have attempted to modify inflammation in treatment of depression in patients with type 2 diabetes.

Recently, Herder and colleagues [84] found that serum high-sensitivity C-reactive protein (hsCRP) and the ratio of high-molecular-weight (HMW)/total adiponectin were positively associated with depression symptoms evaluated by ADS-L (Allgemeine Depressionsskala, Langversion) in T2D, but not in T1D. In contrast, serum levels of soluble intercellular adhesion molecule (sICAM)-1 were positively associated with ADS-L only in T1D. The latter association was significantly different between both diabetes types. No associations were observed for interleukin (IL)-6, IL-18 and soluble E-selectin. Only the association between HMW/total adiponectin and ADS-L in T2D remained significant after correction for multiple testing.

Circadian Rhythms

Sleep architecture variations can be seen before onset of depressive symptoms, suggesting that a subpopulation might

be at increased risk of depressive symptoms and metabolic disturbances. Many studies found that disrupted sleep patterns (decreased slow-wave sleep and increased rapid eye movement density), sleep apnoea, poor sleep quality and altered circadian rhythms are associated with depression, obesity, insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes [85, 86]. There is also an emerging biological pathway that proposes it could be changes in the expression of clock genes (genes that are associated with regulation of circadian rhythm) and by environmental cues (light-dark cycles, food, glucose concentrations, social cues, antidepressant therapy) [87–89]. In patients with type 2 diabetes, clock gene expression has been directly associated with fasting glucose concentrations and on depression, the rapid antidepressant actions of sleep deprivation therapy might be due to resetting of abnormal clock genes and subsequent restoration of circadian rhythms, although further studies are needed.

Antidepressant

A recent study regarding the association between the antidepressant use and the glycaemic control showed that in adults with diabetes, the use of multiple antidepressant subclasses increased significantly the levels of Hb A1C, suggesting that antidepressive treatment may be a risk factor for suboptimal glycaemic control [90]. Prior studies suggested that short-term antidepressive treatment of nondiabetic depressed patients has a beneficial effect and improve insulin sensitivity together with improving depression, but on the long run, the effects might be opposite [91]. Noradrenergic antidepressants are an exception and may lead to impaired insulin sensitivity even in nondiabetic patients [91]. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor treatment may improve the glycaemic control in depressed DM2 patients and is the only class of antidepressants with confirmed favourable effects on glycaemic control on both short- and long-term use [92]. Randomized controlled trials have emphasized that antidepressants vary considerably in their association with weight gain, and both hyperglycaemic and hypoglycaemic effects have been observed [93].

Future research should clarify the relation between baseline antidepressant use and development of prediabetes stages and the extent to which antidepressant use has direct effects on diabetogenic pathways, rather than being a marker of depression itself.

Stage of Development

Childhood

Managing a chronic illness can be challenging, and developing effective coping strategies to overcome difficulties is essential for maintaining health, balance and happiness. Type 1 diabetes is one of the most common chronic illnesses of childhood and requires a complex and demanding treatment regimen. While the large majority of childhood diabetes is type 1, there are increasing numbers of adolescents with type 2 diabetes who, requiring a similar treatment regimen, are subject to comparable risk factors for stress. Some aspects of diabetes management might be done by the children themselves, such as self-administration of insulin, attendance at regularly scheduled diabetes care appointments in clinics and hospitals. These aspects are demanding and can be disruptive and stressful. The adult caregiver is mostly responsible for the complex decision making associated with the treatment, such as dosing insulin on the basis of blood glucose readings and diet. Therefore, living with diabetes can feel overwhelming for parents and children because constant vigilance is required for proper care, the relation between depression and diabetes in childhood take into account both the child and their familial relationships [6].

Some evidence suggests that children with type 1 diabetes who grow up in an environment of high expressed emotion have poor glycaemic control. Critical parenting behaviours increase depressive symptoms, with associated reduction of self-care behaviours [94]. Clinically, addition of structured behavioural group training has been shown to reduce parental stress and maintain improved glycaemic control over time [95]. Children with diabetes experience higher rates of depression and other emotional problems than the general population. Recent studies suggest that children both type of diabetes are at equal risk for psychological challenges. Depressive symptoms are particularly worrisome in youth with type 1 diabetes, given that on the lower end of risk, these symptoms are related to poor self-care and on the higher end of risk are related to suboptimal glycaemic care and even recurrent diabetes hospitalizations [96, 97].

Adolescence

Adolescence is a developmental stage during which youth are developing independence from parents, at the same time that they are experiencing rapid biological and hormonal changes. Depression has been shown to interact adversely during transition from childhood into adolescence, due to the greater independence of the self-control of diabetes [98]. About 15–25% of adolescents with type 1 diabetes experience depression compared to 14.3% in children without a chronic illness, which translates into a rate two to three times that found in the general adolescent population [99, 100]. This increased independence coincides with emergence of risk-taking behaviours, such as experimentation with tobacco and alcohol, and desire for peer approval. In view of these rapid psychological and physiological changes, diabetes-specific distress is well characterized in adolescents with diabetes and is associated with poor glycaemic control, prominent negative beliefs about diabetes and reduced self-efficacy [101].

Adolescence is a key period for development of eating disorders, which are likewise associated with depression and the desire for peer approval. Adolescents with type 1 diabetes and disturbed eating behaviour are far more likely to report depressive symptoms than those with type 1 diabetes alone, but do not consistently have poorer glycaemic control prospectively [102]. Recently Corathers and cols [103] showed that high scores on the Children's Depression Inventory (CDI) were associated with decreased blood glucose monitoring frequency and increased HbA concentrations. However, Zduncyk and cols [104] found that the prevalence of depressive symptoms in patients with poor glycaemic control was similar to those with good glycaemic control. Further studies are needed for longitudinal assessment of potential benefits of depression screening on diabetes outcomes and emphasize the apparent vulnerability of all adolescents.

Impact on Clinical Evolution and Quality of Life of Comorbid Diabetes-Depression

Diabetes produces structural changes in the brain: cerebral atrophy and lacunar infarcts and blood flow changes of both hypo- and hyperperfusion [105]. Reductions in brain volumes restricted to the hippocampus were found in patients with diabetes, while an inverse relationship between glycaemic control and hippocampal volume was present. HbA1C was described as the only significant predictor of hippocampal volume [106]. Similarly, depression is associated with neurodegenerative processes, especially at the level of the prefrontal cortex and hippocampus [107]. Severe hypoglycaemia in patients with DM2 and without antidepressive treatment was positively associated with the severity of depressive symptoms, independent of glycaemic control, insulin therapy, lifestyle factors and diabetic complications [108]. A meta-analysis estimating the association between depression and neuropathy in patients with DM2 could not clarify if the relationship is bidirectional or not. Many studies around the world demonstrate the relation between diabetes complications and depressive symptoms. Heinze and colleagues [109] on a comparative cross-sectional study, with a systematic random sample of 206 DM2 patients (mean age 53.3 ± 8.21 years), of wich 46 patients (22.3%) had depression (34 women and 12 men, mean age 52.0 ± 7.1 years). Depressed patients showed a lower mean in WHO-5 (Well-Being Index) and greater discomfort on PAID (Problem Areas in Diabetes Questionnaire) and presented more complications of diabetes. Within which, neuropathy and retinopathy presented more frequently like complication. This study concluded that patients with comorbid DM2-depression showed a greater number of complications, two of which represent an impact on quality of life. Deschênes and colleagues [110] found that the number of diabetes complications at baseline was positively associated with a greater risk of elevated depressive symptoms, with the highest risk found for those with four to six complications at baseline. Cerebrovascular disease was the complication most strongly associated with incident depressive symptoms. Coronary artery disease, peripheral vascular disease and neuropathy were also associated with the risk of depression, whereas foot problems and eye problems were not. Additionally, a greater number of diabetes complications were associated with recurrent/persistent depression, though with a small effect size. A parallel process latent growth curve model indicated that increases in diabetes complications were associated with increases in depressive symptoms during the course of the follow-up period.

Depression has a synergistic effect in patients with DM1 and DM2, increasing the risk for complications of both micro- and macrovascular nature and increased hyperglycaemia, predicting greater mortality. In older adults, the comorbidity also predicts an earlier incidence of complications [111]. Both diabetes and depression reduce the quality of life for an individual, but together they have a more negative impact [112]. Due to the negative effects on health, the rise in complications, both diseases should be recognized in an individual and treated simultaneously, in order to reduce depression and better control the diabetes. However, depression remains underdiagnosed and untreated in diabetic patients [113].

Implications for Research

There is a growing need to understand the similarities and differences between correlates of depressive symptoms, major depressive disorder and diabetes-specific distress (in both types of diabetes). Particularly in type 1 diabetes, further research is needed to identify risk factors, potential biological and cerebral correlates of depression; and in type 2 diabetes, further basic science research is need to identify the concurrent effects of biological processes and consistent neuroimaging correlates of the comorbidity diabetes-depression.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. What are the most frequent complications of type 2 diabetes in patients with depression?
   (a) Cerebrovascular disease and myocardial infarction
   (b) Myocardial infarction and macular oedema
   (c) Neuropathy and retinopathy
   (d) Macular oedema and retinopathy
   (e) Cerebrovascular incident and neuropathy
2. What are the mechanisms underlying the association diabetes-distress-depression?
   (a) Adherence to treatment and hygiene and dietetic measures

(b) Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis dysfunction
(c) Inflammation and innate immunity
(d) Abnormalities of the sympathetic nervous system
(e) All the answers are correct

3. What are the antidepressants that have a greater positive effect on glucose control?
(a) Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
(b) Tricyclic antidepressants
(c) Serotonin-noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors
(d) Monoamine-oxidase inhibitors
(e) Norepinephrine-dopamine reuptake inhibitors
4. Is depression associated with a neurodegenerative brain process, in which area has it been documented?
(a) Hypothalamus and motor area
(b) Prefrontal cortex and hippocampus
(c) Occipital region and cerebellum
(d) Cerebellum and hippocampus
(e) Temporal and occipital area
5. Patients with comorbidity: type 2 diabetes and depression present:
(a) Less emotional complications
(b) Greater incidence in complications of type 2 diabetes
(c) Low self-esteem
(d) Greater incidence in cardiac and renal alterations
(e) High self-esteem
6. What is the fourth cause of disability-adjusted life years (DALYS) in developed countries?
(a) Cancer
(b) Type 2 diabetes
(c) Depression and anxiety
(d) Bipolar disorder
(e) Renal insufficiency
7. Depressive symptoms increase the risk of:
(a) Diabetes mellitus
(b) Hepatic cirrhosis
(c) Myocardial infarction
(d) Macular oedema
(e) Cerebral infarction
8. Depression is associated to:
(a) Increased caloric intake
(b) Low levels of physical activity
(c) Risk for developing diabetes
(d) Worse glycaemic control
(e) All the answers are correct
9. Type 2 diabetes is associated with:
(a) 0% of risk for developing depression
(b) 10% of risk for developing depression
(c) 20% of risk for developing depression
(d) 30% of risk for developing depression
(e) 40% of risk for developing depression
10. The importance of establishing the diagnosis of comorbidity diabetes-depression is due to the statistics estimate that by the year 2015 the prevalence of diabetes mellitus will be:
(a) 200 million people
(b) 300 million people
(c) 400 million people
(d) 500 million people
(e) 600 million people

Correct Answers

1. (c) Neuropathy and retinopathy
The most frequently complications in type 2 diabetic patients with depression observed are neuropathy and retinopathy.
2. (e) All the answers are correct
The association diabetes-distress-depression is composed of many variables, including adherence to treatment and hygiene and dietetic measures, hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis dysfunction, inflammation and innate immunity and abnormalities of the sympathetic nervous system.
3. (a) Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor treatment may improve the glycaemic control in depressed DM2 patients and is the only class of antidepressants with confirmed favourable effects on glycaemic control on both short- and long-term use.
4. (b) Prefrontal cortex and hippocampus
Diabetes produces structural changes in the brain: cerebral atrophy and lacunar infarcts, blood flow changes of both hypo- and hyperperfusion. Depression is associated with neurodegenerative processes, especially at the level of the prefrontal cortex and hippocampus.
5. (b) Greater incidence in complications of type 2 diabetes
Depression has a synergistic effect in patients with DM1 and DM2, increasing the risk for complications of both micro- and macrovascular nature and increased hyperglycaemia, predicting greater mortality. In older adults, the comorbidity also predicts an earlier incidence of complications.
6. (c) Depression and anxiety
Depression and anxiety are the fourth cause of disability-adjusted life years (DALYS) in developed countries, whereas diabetes is the eighth.
7. (a) Diabetes mellitus
People with type 1 and type 2 diabetes mellitus have an increased risk of developing depressive symptoms,

and people with depression also have an increased risk of developing diabetes.

8. (e) All the answers are correct

   Depression is associated to self-neglect and low self-esteem, which might increase risk of unhealthy lifestyles, for example, increased caloric intake, high body mass index (BMI), poor diet, low levels of physical activity and smoking, which generates metabolic changes and incremented the risk of diabetes.

9. (c) 20% of risk for developing depression

   The link between depression and type 2 diabetes is bidirectional: type 2 diabetes is associated with a roughly 20% increased risk of incident depression [44, 45], and depression is associated with a 60% increased risk of incident type 2 diabetes.

10. (b) 300 million people

    Diabetes mellitus (DM) prevalence is increasing worldwide; the World Health Organization predicts there will be 300 million people having this disease by 2025, and due to an increase in prevalence, diabetes has become an epidemic throughout the world and one of the leading causes of death, affecting approximately 422 million people globally.

References

1. Holt RI. Undoing descartes: integrating diabetes care for those with mental illness. Pract Diabetes. 2011;28:270.
2. Willis T. Pharmaceutice rationalis sive diabtriba de medicamentorum operantionibus in humano corpore. Oxford: Theater of Gloudian; 1675.
3. Korczak DJ, Pereira S, Koulajian K, Matejcek A, Giacca A. Type 1 diabetes mellitus and major depressive disorder: evidence for a biological link. Diabetologia. 2011;54:2483–93.
4. Holt RI, Groot M, Lucki I, Hunter CM, Sartorius N, Golden SH. NIDDK international conference report on diabetes and depression: current understanding and future directions. Diabetes Care. 2011;37:2067–77.
5. Stuart MJ, Baune BT. Depression and type 2 diabetes: inflammatory mechanisms of a psychoneuroendocrine co-morbidity Neurosci. Biobehav. 2011;36:658–76.
6. Moulton CD, Pickup JC, Ismail K. The link between depression and diabetes: the search for shared mechanisms. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2011;3:461–71.
7. Goetzel RZ, Hawkins K, Ozminkowski RJ, Wang S. The health and productivity cost burden of the "top 10" physical and mental health conditions affecting six large U.S. employers in 1999. J Occup Environ. 2003;45:5–14.
8. O'Connor PJ, Crain AL, Rush WA, Hanson AM, Fischer LR, Kluznik JC. Does diabetes double the risk of depression? Ann Fam Med. 2009;7:328–35.
9. Lloyd CE, Pambianco G, Orchard TJ. Does diabetes-related distress explain the presence of depressive symptoms and/or poor self-care in individuals with Type 1 diabetes? Diabet Med. 2010;27(2):234–7.
10. Rotella F, Mannucci E. Depression as a risk factor for diabetes: a meta-analysis of longitudinal studies. J Clin Psychiatry. 2013;74(1):31–7.
11. Sarkar S, Balhara YP. Diabetes mellitus and suicide. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2014;18(4):468–74.
12. WHO. International statistical classification of diseases and related health problems 10th revision (ICD-10). 2008. Accessed 17 Oct 2014. Available: http://apps.who.int/classifications/icd10/browse/2008/en#/V.
13. American Psychiatric Association, editor. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, DSM-5. 5th ed. Washington, DC: APA; 2013.
14. Selye H. Stress without distress. Philadelphia: J.B. Lippincott; 1974.
15. Ridner SH. Psychological distress: concept analysis. J Adv Nurs. 2004;45:536–45.
16. Esbitt S, Tanenbaum M, Gonzalez J. Disentangling clinical depression from diabetes-specific distress: making sense of the mess we've made. In: Screening for depression and other psychological problems in diabetes, vol. 2; 2013. p. 22–47.
17. Polonsky W, Fisher L, Earles J, Dudl R, Lees J, Mullan J, Jackson R. Assessing psychosocial stress in diabetes: development of the diabetes distress scale. Diabetes Care. 2008;28:626–31.
18. International Diabetes Federation. IDF diabetes. 7th ed. Brussels: Brussels International Diabetes Federation; 2015. Available: http://www.diabetesatlas.org.
19. Bromet E, Andrade LH, Hwang I, Sampson NA, et al. Crossnational epidemiology of DSM-IV major depressive episode. BMC Med. 2011;9:90.
20. National Institute of Health Meterics Evaluation. Global burden of disease. 2015. Available: http://vizhub.healthdata.org/gbdcompare.
21. Anderson RJ, Freedland KE, Clouse RE, Lustman PJ. The prevalence of comorbid depression in adults with diabetes: a meta-analysis. Diabetes Care. 2001;24:1069–78.
22. Barnard KD, Skinner TC, Peveler R. The prevalence of co-morbid depression in adults with Type 1 diabetes: systematic literature review. Diabet Med. 2006;23(4):445–8.
23. Moussavi S, Chatterji S, Verdes E, Tandon A, Patel V, Ustun B. Depression, chronic diseases, and decrements in health: results from the World Health Surveys. Lancet. 2011;370:851–8.
24. Skinner TC, Carey ME, Cradock S, Dallosso HM, Daly H, Davies MJ, et al. Depressive symptoms in the first year from diagnosis of type 2 diabetes: results from the DESMOND trial. Diabet Med. 2010;27:965–7.
25. Kivimäki M, Tabák AG, Lawlor DA, Batty GD, Singh-Manoux A, et al. Antidepressant use before and after the diagnosis of type 2 diabetes: a longitudinal modeling study. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:1471–6.
26. Sartorius N, Cimino L. The dialogue on diabetes and depression (DDD): origins and achievements. J Affect Disord. 2012;142(Suppl):S4–7.
27. Pouwer F, Nefs G, Nouwen A. Adverse effects of depression on glycemic control and health out- comes in people with diabetes: a review. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am. 2013;42:529–44.
28. Nouwen A, Winkley K, Twisk J, Lloyd CE, Peyrot M, Ismail K, et al. Type 2 diabetes mellitus as a risk factor for the onset of depression: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetologia. 2010;53:2480–6.
29. Meurs M, Roest AM, Wolffenbuttel BH, Stolk RP, de Jonge P, Rosmalen JG. Association of depressive and anxiety disorders with diagnosed versus undiagnosed diabetes: an epidemiological study of 90,686 participants. Psychosom Med. 2016;78:233–41.

30. Berge LI, Riise T. Comorbidity between type 2 diabetes and depression in the adult population: directions of the association and its possible pathophysiological mechanisms. Int J Endocrinol. 2015;2015:164760.
31. Moulton CD, Pickup JC, Ismail K. The link between depression and diabetes: the search for shared mechanisms. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2015;3:461–71.
32. De Ridder D, Geenen R, Kuijer R, van Middendorp H. Psychological adjustment to chronic disease. Lancet. 2008;372:246–55.
33. Snoek FJ, Kersch NY, Eldrup E, et al. Monitoring of individual needs in diabetes (MIND): baseline data from the cross-national diabetes attitudes, wishes, and needs (DAWN) MIND study. Diabetes Care. 2011;34:601–3.
34. Fisher L, Skaff MM, Mullan JT, Arean P, Glasgow R, Masharani U. A longitudinal study of affective and anxiety disorders, depressive affect and diabetes distress in adults with type 2 diabetes. Diabet Med. 2008;25:1096–101.
35. Fisher L, Gonzalez JS, Polonsky WH. The confusing tale of depression and distress in patients with diabetes: a call for greater clarity and precision. Diabet Med. 2014;31(7):764–72.
36. Scott KM, Von Korff M, Angermeyer MC, et al. Association of childhood adversities and early-onset mental disorders with adult-onset chronic physical conditions. Arch Gen Psychiatry. 2011;68:838–44.
37. Colman I, Jones PB, Kuh D, et al. Early development, stress and depression across the life course: pathways to depression in a national British birth cohort. Psychol Med. 2014;44:2845–54.
38. Heraclides A, Chandola T, Witte DR, Brunner EJ. Psychosocial stress at work doubles the risk of type 2 diabetes in middle-aged women: evidence from the Whitehall II study. Diabetes Care. 2009;32:2230–5.
39. Stansfeld SA, Shipley MJ, Head J, Fuhrer R. Repeated job strain and the risk of depression: longitudinal analyses from the Whitehall II study. Am J Public Health. 2012;102:2360–6.
40. Lustman PJ, Williams MM, Sayuk GS, Nix BD, Clouse RE. Factors influencing glycemic control in type 2 diabetes during acute- and maintenance-phase treatment of major depressive disorder with bupropion. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:459–66.
41. Fisher L, Mullan JT, Arean P, Glasgow RE, Hessler D, Masharani U. Diabetes distress but not clinical depression or depressive symptoms is associated with glycemic control in both cross-sectional and longitudinal analyses. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:23–8.
42. Nefs G, Pouwer F, Denollet J, Kramer H, Wijnands-van Gent CJ, Pop VJ. Suboptimal glycemic control in type 2 diabetes: a key role for anhedonia? J Psychiatr Res. 2012;46:549–54.
43. Bot M, Pouwer F, de Jonge P, Tack CJ, Geelhoed-Duijvestijn PH, Snoek FJ. Differential associations between depressive symptoms and glycaemic control in outpatients with diabetes. Diabet Med. 2013;30:115–22.
44. Bromet E, Andrade LH, Hwang I, et al. Cross-national epidemiology of DSM-IV major depressive episode. BMC Med. 2011;9:90.
45. Boschloo L, Schoevers RA, Beekman AT, Smit JH, Van Hemert AM, Penninx BW. The four-year course of major depressive disorder: the role of staging and risk factor determination. Psychother Psychosom. 2014;83:279–88.
46. Gonzalez JS, Safren SA, Cagliero E, Wexler DJ, Delahanty L, Wittenberg E, et al. Depression, self-care, and medication adherence in type 2 diabetes: relationships across the full range of symptom severity. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:2222–7.
47. Fisher L, Skaff MM, Mullan JT, et al. Clinical depression versus distress among patients with type 2 diabetes: not just a question of semantics. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:542–8.
48. Melmed S, Jameson JL. Disorders of the anterior pituitary and hypothalamus. Chapter 333. P.e. In: Harrison's principles of internal medicine. 17th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical Publishing Division; 2011.
49. Stewart P. The adrenal cortex. Chapter 14. P.e. In: Williams textbook of endocrinology. 11th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders/Elesevier; 2011.
50. Kyrou I, Tsigos C. Stress hormones: physiological stress and regulation of metabolism. Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2009;9:787–93.
51. Gutt M, Davis CL, Spitzer SB, et al. Validation of the insulin sensitivity index (ISI(0,120)): comparison with other measures. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2000;47:177–84.
52. Moulton CD, Costafreda SG, Horton P, Ismail K, Fu CHY. Meta-analyses of structural regional cerebral effects in type 1 and type 2 diabetes. Brain Imaging Behav 2015.
53. Mezuk B, Eaton WW, Albrecht S, Golden SH. Depression and type 2 diabetes over the lifespan. A meta-analysis. Diabetes Care. 2008;31:2383–90.
54. Gragnoli C. Depression and type 2 diabetes: cortisol pathway implication and investigational needs. J Cell Physiol. 2012;227:2318–90.
55. Rosolova H, Podipny J. Anxious-depressive disorders and metabolic syndrome. Vnitr Lek. 2009;55:650–2.
56. Carney RM, Freedland KE, Veith RC. Depression, the autonomic nervous system, and coronary heart disease. Psychosom Med. 2005;67:S29–33.
57. Udupa K, Sathyaprabha TN, Thirthalli J, et al. Alteration of cardiac autonomic functions in patients with major depression: a study using heart rate variability measures. J Affect Disord. 2007;100:137–41.
58. Carroll D, Phillips AC, Hunt K, et al. Symptoms of depression and cardiovascular reactions to acute psychological stress: evidence from a population study. Biol Psychol. 2007;75:68–74.
59. Skrapari I, Tentolouris N, Perrea D, et al. Baroreflex sensitivity in obesity: relationship with cardiac autonomic nervous system activity. Obesity. 2007;15:1685–93.
60. Wiesner TD, Bluher M, Windgassen M, et al. Improvement of insulin sensitivity after adrenalectomy in patients with pheochromocytoma. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2003;88:3632–6.
61. Miller AH, Raison CL. The role of inflammation in depression: from evolutionary imperative to modern treatment target. Nat Rev Immunol. 2016;16:22–34.
62. Hiles SA, Baker AL, Malmanche T, Attia J. A meta-analysis of differences in IL-6 and IL-10 between people with and without depression: exploring the causes of heterogeneity. Brain Behav Immun. 2012;26:1180–8.
63. Haapakoski R, Mathieu J, Ebmeier KP, Alenius H, Kivimäki M. Cumulative meta-analysis of interleukins 6 and 1β, tumour necrosis factor α and C-reactive protein in patients with major depressive disorder. Brain Behav Immun. 2015;49:206–15.
64. Stewart JC, Rand KL, Muldoon MF, et al. A prospective evaluation of the directionality of the depression-inflammation relationship. Brain Behav Immun. 2009;23:936–44.
65. Gimeno D, Kivimaki M, Brunner EJ, et al. Associations of C-reactive protein and interleukin-6 with cognitive symptoms of depression: 12-year follow-up of the Whitehall II study. Psychol Med. 2009;39:413–23.
66. Weinstein AA, Deuster PA, Francis JL, et al. Neurohormonal and inflammatory hyper-responsiveness to acute mental stress in depression. Biol Psychol. 2010;84:228–34.
67. Dowlati Y, Herrmann N, Swardfager W, et al. A meta-analysis of cytokines in major depression. Biol Psychiatry. 2010;67:446–57.
68. Khandaker GM, Pearson RM, Zammit S, Lewis G, Jones PB. Association of serum interleukin 6 and C-reactive protein in childhood with depression and psychosis in young adult life: a population-based longitudinal study. JAMA Psychiat. 2014;71:1121–8.
69. Bertoni AG, Burke GL, Owusu JA, et al. Inflammation and the incidence of type 2 diabetes: the Multi-Ethnic Study of Atherosclerosis (MESA). Diabetes Care. 2010;33:804–10.

70. Aso Y, Wakabayashi S, Nakano T, et al. High serum high- sensitivity C-reactive protein concentrations are associated with relative cardiac sympathetic overactivity during the early morning period in type 2 diabetic patients with metabolic syndrome. Metabolism. 2006;55:1014–21.
71. Valle Gotlieb MG, da Cruz IB, Duarte MM, et al. Associations among metabolic syndrome, ischemia, inflammatory, oxidatives, and lipids biomarkers. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2010;95:586–91.
72. Donath MY. Targeting inflammation in the treatment of type 2 diabetes: time to start. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2014;13:465–76.
73. Leslie RD, Kolb H, Schloot NC, Buzzetti R, Mauricio D, et al. Diabetes classification: grey zones, sound and smoke: action LADA 1. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2008;24:511–9.
74. Taylor CB, Conrad A, Wilhelm FH, et al. Psycho-physiological and cortisol responses to psychological stress in depressed and nondepressed older men and women with elevated cardiovascular disease risk. Psychosom Med. 2006;68:538–46.
75. Brummett BH, Boyle SH, Ortel TL, et al. Associations of depressive symptoms, trait hostility, and gender with C-reactive protein and interleukin-6 response after emotion recall. Psychosom Med. 2010;72:333–9.
76. Elovainio M, Aalto AM, Kivimaki M, et al. Depression and C-reactive protein: population-based health 2000 study. Psychosom Med. 2009;71:423–30.
77. Kobrosly R, Van Wijngaarden E. Associations between immunologic, inflammatory, and oxidative stress markers with severity of depressive symptoms: an analysis of the 2005–2006 National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. Neurotoxicity. 2010;31:126–33.
78. Frasure-Smith N, Lesperance F, Irwin MR, et al. The relation- ships among heart rate variability, inflammatory markers and depression in coronary heart disease patients. Brain Behav Immun. 2009;23:1140–7.
79. Pickup JC, Crook MA. Is type II diabetes mellitus a disease of the innate immune system? Diabetologia. 1998;41:1241–8.
80. Stringhini S, Batty GD, Bovet P, et al. Association of life course socioeconomic status with chronic inflammation and type 2 diabetes risk: the Whitehall II prospective cohort study. PLoS Med. 2013;10:e1001479.
81. Laake JP, Stahl D, Amiel SA, et al. The association between depressive symptoms and systemic inflammation in people with type 2 diabetes: findings from the South London Diabetes Study. Diabetes Care. 2014;37:2186–92.
82. Larsen CM, Faulenbach M, Vaag A, et al. Interleukin-1-receptor antagonist in type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2007;356:1517–26.
83. Goldfine AB, Fonseca V, Jablonski KA, et al. The targeting inflammation using salsalate in type 2 diabetes study team. Salicylate (salsalate) in patients with type 2 diabetes: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2013;159:1–12.
84. Herder C, Fürstos JF, Nowotny B, Begun A, Strassburger K, Müssig K, Szendroedi J, Icks A, Roden M, GDS Group. Associations between inflammation-related biomarkers and depressive symptoms in individuals with recently diagnosed type 1 and type 2 diabetes. Brain Behav Immun. 2017;61:137.
85. Courtet P, Olie E. Circadian dimension and severity of depression. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol. 2012;22(Suppl 3):S476–81.
86. Gangwisch JE. Epidemiological evidence for the links between sleep, circadian rhythms and metabolism. Obes Rev. 2009;10(Suppl 2):37–45.
87. Karthikeyan R, Marimuthu G, Spence DW, et al. Should we listen to our clock to prevent type 2 diabetes mellitus? Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;106:182–90.
88. Stamenkovic JA, Olsson AH, Nagorny CL, et al. Regulation of core clock genes in human islets. Metabolism. 2012;61:978–85.
89. Bunney BG, Li JZ, Walsh DM, et al. Circadian dysregulation of clock genes: clues to rapid treatments in major depressive disorder. Mol Psychiatry. 2015;20:48–55.
90. Kammer JR, Hosler AS, LeckmanWestin E, DiRienzo G, Osborn CY. The association between antidepressant use and glycemic control in the Southern Community Cohort Study (SCCS). J Diabetes Complicat. 2016;30(2):242–7.
91. McIntyre RS, Soczynska JK, Konarski JZ, Kennedy SH. The effect of antidepressants on glucose homeostasis and insulin sensitivity: synthesis and mechanisms. Expert Opin Drug Saf. 2006;5:157–68.
92. Deuschle M. Effects of antidepressants on glucose metabolism and diabetes mellitus type 2 in adults. Curr Opin Psychiatry. 2013;26:60–5.
93. Barnard K, Peveler RC, Holt RI. Antidepressant medication as a risk factor for type 2 diabetes and impaired glucose regulation: systematic review. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:3337–45.
94. Armstrong B, Mackey ER, Streisand R. Parenting behavior, child functioning, and health behaviors in preadolescents with type 1 diabetes. J Pediatr Psychol. 2011;36:1052–61.
95. Sassmann H, de Hair M, Danne T, Lange K. Reducing stress and supporting positive relations in families of young children with type 1 diabetes: a randomized controlled study for evaluating the effects of the DELFIN parenting program. BMC Pediatr. 2012;12:152.
96. Hood KK, Naranjo D, Barnard K. Measuring depression in children and young people. In: Lloyd CE, Pouwer F, Hermanns N, editors. Screening for depression and other psychological problems in diabetes: a practical guide. New York: Springer Press; 2012. p. 119–38.
97. McGrady ME, Laffel L, Drotar D, et al. Depressive symptoms and glycemic control in adolescents with type 1 diabetes: mediational role of blood glucose monitoring. Diabetes Care. 2009;32:804–6.
98. Fonagy P, Moran GS, Lindsay MK, Kurtz AB, Brown R. Psychological adjustment and diabetic control. Arch Dis Child. 1987;62:1009–13.
99. Hood KK, Huestis S, Maher A, et al. Depressive symptoms in children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes: association with diabetes-specific characteristics. Diabetes Care. 2006;29:1389–91.
100. Merikangas KR, He JP, Burstein M, et al. Lifetime prevalence of mental disorders in U.S. adolescents: results from the National Comorbidity Survey Replication--Adolescent Supplement (NCS-A). J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry. 2010;49:980–9.
101. Law GU, Walsh J, Queralt V, Nouwen A. Adolescent and parent diabetes distress in type 1 diabetes: the role of self-efficacy, perceived consequences, family responsibility and adolescent parent discrepancies. J Psychosom Res. 2013;74:334–9.
102. Colton PA, Olmsted MP, Daneman D, Rodin GM. Depression, disturbed eating behavior, and metabolic control in teenage girls with type 1 diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes. 2013;14:372–6.
103. Corathers SD, Kichler J, Jones NH, et al. Improving depression screening for adolescents with type 1 diabetes. Pediatrics. 2013;132:1395–402.
104. Zduńczyk B, Sendela J, Szypowska A. High prevalence of depressive symptoms in well-controlled adolescents with type 1 diabetes treated with continuous subcutane. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2014;30(4):333–8.
105. Van HB, de Leeuw FE, Weinstein HC, Scheltens P, Biessels GJ. Brain imaging in patients with diabetes: a systematic review. Diabetes Care. 2006;29:2539–48.
106. Gold SM, Dziobek I, Sweat V, Tirsi A, Rogers K, Bruehl H, Tsui W, Richardson S, Javier E, Convit A. Hippocampal damage and memory impairments as possible early brain complications of type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2007;50:711–9.
107. Sapolsky RM. Depression, antidepressants, and the shrinking hippocampus. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001;98:12320–2.

108. Kikuchi Y, Iwase M, Fujii H, Ohkuma T, Kaizu S, Ide H, Jodai T, Idewaki Y, Nakamura U, Kitazono T. Association of severe hypoglycemia with depressive symptoms in patients with type 2 diabetes: the Fukuoka Diabetes Registry. BMJ Open Diabetes Res Care. 2015;3:000063.
109. Heinze G, Guízar-Sánchez DP, Bernard N. Impact on clinical evolution and quality of life of comorbid diabetes-depression. 2017, in press.
110. Deschênes SS, Burns RJ, Pouwer F, Schmitz N. Diabetes complications and depressive symptoms: prospective results from the Montreal diabetes health and well-being study. Psychosom Med. 2017;79(5):603–12.
111. Black SA, Markides KS, Ray LA. Depression predicts increased incidence of adverse health outcomes in older Mexican Americans with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2003;26:2822–8.
112. Schram MT, Baan CA, Pouwer F. Depression and quality of life in patients with diabetes: a systematic review from the European depression in diabetes (EDID) research consortium. Curr Diabetes Rev. 2009;5:112–9.
113. Li C, Ford ES, Zhao G, Ahluwalia IB, Pearson WS, Mokdad AH. Prevalence and correlates of undiagnosed depression among U.S. adults with diabetes: the Behavioral Risk Factor Surveillance System 2006. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2009;83:268–79.

Tools of Self-Care: Self-Monitoring of Blood Glucose and Tele-Health Resources

27

Barry H. Ginsberg

Objectives

- Describe how a blood glucose monitoring strip works.
- Describe the methods to describe the accuracy of a blood glucose monitor.
- Describe how a patient might set up and obtain a blood glucose reading.
- Describe how a patient with Type 1 diabetes might use a blood glucose monitor.
- Describe how a patient with Type 2 diabetes might use a blood glucose monitor.
- Describe how a patient might use a computer or smartphone to analyze their blood glucose values.

Introduction

The therapy of diabetes was dramatically changed in the late twentieth century with the development of self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG). Prior to the advent of this technology, the only glucose tool available to patients was to measure urine glucose. This provided only a poor estimate of blood glucose, often representing the value of several hours earlier, and it was unpopular with patients. Today, in the United States, all people with Type 1 diabetes and most with Type 2 diabetes do some SMBG. In this chapter, we will discuss the history, technology, and clinical usage of SMBG and their integration with computers and mobile devices in the emerging field of tele-health.

B. H. Ginsberg (✉)
Diabetes Technology Consultants, Wyckoff, NJ, USA

History

Urine Testing

The earliest testing for glucose was done well before the discovery of glucose. During the dark ages, there were "water tasters" who tasted urine for sweetness in order to make a diagnosis of diabetes. Actual quantitation of glucose did not occur until the twentieth century with the use of Benedict's solution. A few drops of urine were mixed with water and urine and heated. The color formed indicated the amount of reducing sugar (primarily glucose) in the urine. In 1941 Clinitest® tablets were produced that simplified the testing [1]. Still using the principle of Benedict's solution, the tablets were added to a urine-water mixture in a test tube. The tablet contained a chemical to heat the fluid and create the color.

In 1956 the first dip and read strip for urine glucose was developed [1]. The strips contained glucose oxidase and peroxidase. The reactions are shown in Eq. 27.1 and became the method for the initial measurement of blood glucose as well.

Urine monitoring was problematic for several reasons: (1) It only measured glucose levels when they were above the renal threshold for glucose, about 180 mg/dL in the average person, but with significant variation (2). The urine may have been in the bladder for several hours. To be accurate, the patient had to void their bladder and then collect a sample 30 minutes later. This was very hard for patients to do (3). This was a very unfriendly and difficult method overall.

Early Systems

The earliest blood glucose meters were produced by the Ames Company® (became Miles®, then Bayer®, and now Ascencia®). The first was the Ames Reflectance Meter® (ARM) in 1970. Because it was clumsy to use, it was replaced in 1972 by the Eyetone® meter (Fig. 27.1). It used a wall

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_27

Fig. 27.1 The Eyetone meter

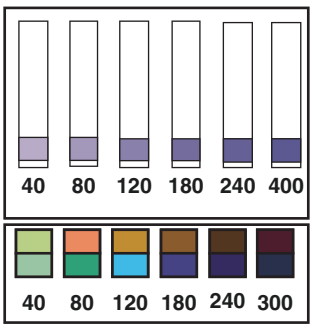


Fig. 27.2 Visual strips *Upper:* Destro strips *Lower:* Chemstrips BG

plug and had to be calibrated with high and low calibrators before each test. Because of this it was generally relegated to testing at Doctor's offices. The Eyetone reads the Dextrostrip®, which used the chemistry of Eq. 27.1. Blood was placed on the strip, allowed to sit for *exactly* 60 seconds, and washed off with water. The color produced was a shade of blue, and quantitation without a meter was difficult (Fig. 27.2 *Upper*).

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Glucose} + O_2 \rightarrow \text{Gluconic Acid} + H_2O_2 \\ &(\text{glucose oxidase}) \\ &2\ H_2O_2 + \text{Dye} \rightarrow 2\ H_2O + O_2 + \text{Colored Dye} \\ &(\text{peroxidase}) \end{aligned} \tag{27.1}$$

A few years later, Boehringer Mannheim® (now Roche®) produced a strip with two pads using different colors and sensitivity (Fig. 27.2 *Lower*). This strip, the Chemstrip bG®, was considerably easier to read, and visual reading of blood glucose with strips became popular. The blood had to sit on the strip for 2 minutes, but it could be wiped off. No water was required. The strips were expensive, so patients often cut them in half before using them. Indeed, one company produced a commercial strip cutter which cut the strips into thirds. In addition, the color was stable, so the patient could bring the strips to their health-care provider.

Visual reading. The strips were visually read by interpolating between the colors. When done by nurses, they were as accurate as the early meters. Patients, however, routinely truncated the values. Thus, patient almost always underestimated the BG values when doing a visual read.

Meters continued to develop, becoming smaller, battery operated and requiring only calibration with a number or a chip (from the strip vial). A major breakthrough occurred in the early 1980s when LifeScan introduced a "no-wipe" strip. It worked by loading a drop of blood onto the top of the strip (on the meter) and reading the reflectance from the bottom of the strip. Because the strip was on the meter from the addition of the blood until the reading, the electronics took care of the timing. This eventually became the "OneTouch" monitoring system from LifeScan®.

Sensors

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Glucose} + \text{Mediator}\ \left(Fe^{+3}\right) \rightarrow \text{Gluconic Acid} + \\ &\text{Mediator}\ \left(Fe^{+2}\right) \\ &\text{Mediator}\ \left(Fe^{+2}\right) \rightarrow \text{Mediator}\ \left(Fe^{+3}\right) + \\ &\text{electron} \end{aligned} \tag{27.2}$$

A major change to glucose monitoring occurred in the early 1990s with the development of glucose sensor. Still using glucose oxidase, the basic reactions changed, substituting a mediator (usually iron based) for the oxygen and oxidizing the mediator directly at an electrode to determine the glucose level:

The first of these meters was the Medisense® Companion® followed by the Companion 2®. Over the next 20 years, meters worked with smaller samples and got smarter and easier to use.

Medisense companion

The earliest of the blood glucose strips required 30–50 μL of blood, about a full drop. By the mid- to late 1980s, this had fallen to about 15 μL, but the majority of the sensor-based meters currently in use require only 0.3–1 μL, an amount of blood about the size of this period "." (Fig. 27.3).

New meters not only inform the patient about the level of his/her blood glucose but now include averages and trends. The meter may keep the average the day, the week, 2 weeks

Fig. 27.3 Ascensia glucose meter with sensor technology. (From Ascensia.com with permission)

or a month. Some meters keep the average at each meal and some the levels before and after meals. Although patients who want this much data often switch to smart meters, this data may be useful.

The earliest meters required the patient to apply a sample, time it, and then wash it off. Later devices required timing and wiping, and still later device required only placing the sample onto the strip. The latest sensor devices allow the strip to suck up the blood from a finger, being the easiest for patients to use and also the most accurate.

Smart Meters

With the development of smartphones, a significant portion of the population was now carrying enormous computing power in their pocket or purse. The first company to take advantage of this was AgaMatrix® with the IStarBG®. This thumb-size meter is attached to the bottom of an iPhone® and transferred the blood glucose data to the phone. The patient then could add data about food and exercise and analyze their blood glucose values to find treatable patterns of high or low blood glucose values (Fig. 27.4).

More recently, with the development of Bluetooth 4, which uses low energy transmission, a series of blood glucose meters have been developed that transmit their data to an iPhone, an Android® phone, or a Microsoft Windows 10 phone or computer.

Technology

Enzymes

Glucose Oxidase

Glucose oxidase was the first enzyme used for blood glucose monitoring. Usually the glycoprotein is extracted from *Aspergillus niger*. It consists of a dimer, with each monomer having a molecular weight of about 80 kilodaltons and having a single cofactor, flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD). The oxidation of glucose is a two-step process. In the first step, shown in Fig. 27.5, glucose oxidase will strip two electrons from glucose, reducing the two FAD molecules and oxidizing glucose to gluconolactone, which will hydrolyze to gluconic acid.

Fig. 27.4 The iBGStar system. (From Agamatrix.com with permission)

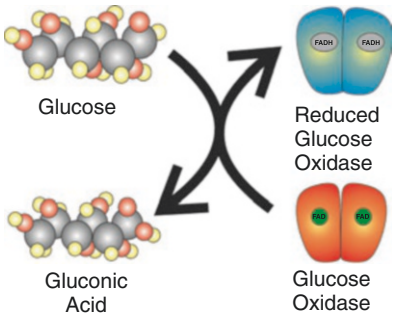


Fig. 27.5 First step in the oxidation of glucose

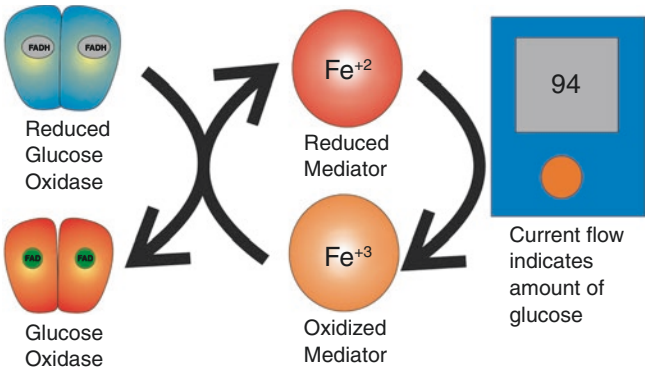


Fig. 27.6 Step 2 in sensor-based glucose reading

The second step is normally the combination of oxygen and water with the reduced glucose oxidase to generate hydrogen peroxide and the oxidized form of glucose oxidase, but when the enzyme is used in a glucose sensor strip, a mediator is used.

The mediator, usually an iron-containing molecule such as ferrocene, steals the electrons from the glucose oxidase, reducing the mediator, as shown in Fig. 27.6. The reduced mediator interacts with the sensor electrode, generating a current and oxidizing the mediator back to its native state. The current generated by the reduced mediator is a measure of the glucose and is calibrated to display a glucose reading on the meter.

As you can imagine from the description above, there is a competition between the mediator and oxygen for the electrons of the FADH. Glucose oxidase meters are calibrated for the oxygen tension of capillary blood, 70–80 mm Hg. In the presence of very low oxygen, as in venous blood, the mediator pulls more electrons from the FADH, and the meter will read too high. In the presence of very high oxygen tension, such as arterial blood or a patient on oxygen, the mediator will pull fewer electrons from the FADH, and the meter will read too low. Thus, oxygen is a major interfering substance for glucose oxidase meters. Glucose oxidase is very specific for glucose, and no other sugars interfere with clinical measurements.

Glucose Dehydrogenase

Glucose dehydrogenase has recently replaced glucose oxidase in many systems. The first step in oxidation of glucose is similar, but in the second step, the reduced glucose dehydrogenase passes its electrons to a cofactor. There are three varieties of glucose dehydrogenase, utilizing pyrroloquinoline quinone (GDH-PQQ), nicotine adenine dinucleotide (GDH-NAD), or flavin adenine dinucleotide (GDH_FAD) as a cofactor [2]. In practice, only the GDH-FAD is utilized, since GDH-PQQ is sensitive to sugars other than glucose, and when used in dialysis, patients can cause severely overestimated glucose values [3].

GDH-FAD has several advantages over glucose oxidase. Since it does not use oxygen, even in its natural state, it is not sensitive to oxygen concentration. This makes it a better product for hospital use, since it can be used for venous and arterial samples, as well as capillary. It can also be used with patients receiving oxygen therapy. Another advantage of GDH-FAD is that it is less sensitive to hematocrit levels.

Structure of a BGM Strip

Strips are constructed in a number of ways, but one common method is lamination. In this method, layers of plastic, with special properties or structure, are laid one on top of another and laminated to form the final structure. A longitudinal section of a strip that could be made by this method is shown in Fig. 27.7.

Each layer is only about 100–125 microns in thickness. The bottom layer contains the electrodes and forms the bottom of the well. The second layer has small circles cut out for the well and forms the sides of the well. The third layer has a channel cut into it for the blood to be drawn into the strip, and the top layer is a cover. A blood drop is shown in the figure for orientation.

Cover

The cover is largely structural. It may have some information about the strip. The single dynamic property of the cover is to provide a vent to allow the strip to pull the blood along the thin channel into the well.

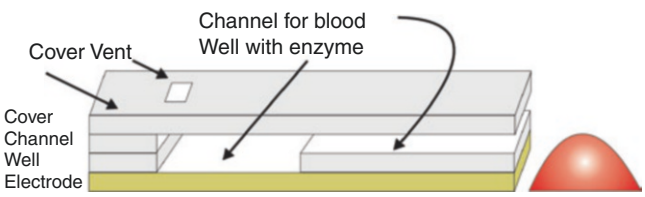


Fig. 27.7 Longitudinal section of a BGM strip

Channel

Blood is drawn into the strip along a thin channel. The surface tension in the thin channel of highly hydrophobic plastic is very high and draws the blood by capillary action into the well. Obviously when the well is full, the blood is no longer drawn into the strip. Some channels have a web in them to capture the erythrocytes. In these systems, the strip will be measuring plasma glucose. In all others, the strip will be measuring whole blood glucose.

Well

The strip may have one or two wells, rarely more. The wells are a cylinder or rectangle bordered on the bottom by the electrode and on the sides by one of the laminated layers. The dimensions of the well are usually 100–150 microns thick and 2–3 mm in diameter. Thus the volume of the well is 0.2–1 μL.

The enzyme and mediator are placed into the well in liquid form and then dried. They are formulated to dissolve very rapidly in the blood as it enters the well.

Most glucose meters have a method of determining if the well is not filled properly (perhaps because the blood drop was too small) and will display an error message.

Electrodes

In early systems the electrodes were formed by silk screening carbon onto the plastic. Less expensive systems are still made this way. Carbon electrodes are intrinsically "noisy," and this adds to the error of the measurement. More recent electrodes are made of noble metals: gold, platinum, or palladium. Obviously, these are very expensive. The cost is minimized by only using a thin layer of metal on a plastic base, like gold leaf, but even thinner. Some of these electrodes are created by sputtering the metal onto the plastic, often only two or three molecules thick. Figure 27.8 shows a cartoon of a sputtered gold and a silk screen carbon electrode.

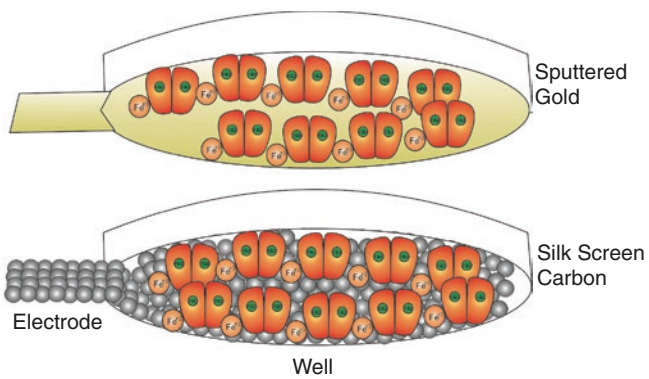


Fig. 27.8 Types of electrodes

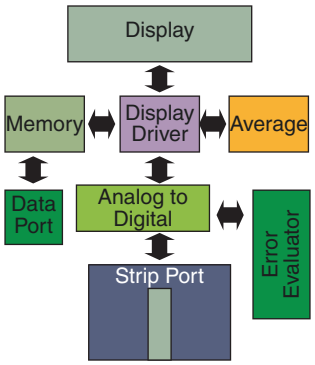


Fig. 27.9 Components of a glucose meter

The Meter

The meter has multiple functions. Its main job is to translate the change in current from the oxidation of the mediator into a glucose reading. Although early meters had an analog read out, all current meters provide a digital readout of the actual glucose reading. Thus, a basic meter consists of a strip port, an analog to digital converter, an error evaluator, and a display, all in a box with an on-off switch (Fig. 27.9).

Meters may also have memories to keep a history of glucose values and calculators to evaluate averages. Almost all meters are based upon a VSLI (very large integrate circuit) chip that does all of their calculations.

Lancing Devices

When BGM first became popular in the 1980s and 1990s, most patients thought that blood glucose monitoring was the most onerous part of diabetes care. Patients objected to the messiness of the large drop of blood and especially the pain of lancing.

After the turn of the century, the sample size required dropped from an initial size of 15–30 μL to 0.3–1 μL. Since the required drop of blood was substantially smaller, the lancing process became less painful.

The reduced pain of the lancing procedure was accomplished with four changes in the lancing:

- Thinner lancets
- Shallower depth of lancing
- Elimination of lancet "wobble"
- Elimination of lancet "bounceback"

Thinner Lancets

Early lancets were simply folded pieces of metal with a sharpened point. Some patients referred to them as harpoons. Newer lancets, like the one shown in Fig. 27.10, have a plastic body and a very fine metal needle. The least painful lancets used today are 33 Ga or about 0.18 mm thick.

Fig. 27.10 Lancet and lancing device

Shallower Depth of Lancing

Early lancets were set to penetrate 2–4 mm into the skin to get a sample of appropriate size. Since the sample size is now smaller, most patients can get a sample with a penetration depth of about 1 mm (setting of "1" on many lancing devices).

Elimination of "Wobble"

Early lancets penetrate the skin and then moved from side to side, a process called wobble. Wobble is very painful, and most modern lancing devices add rails to keep the lancets traveling straight.

Elimination of "Bounceback"

Early lancets penetrated the skin, came out, and re-penetrated the skin as many as five times, a process called bounceback, which is very painful. Most modern lancets mechanically prevent bounceback. Elimination of wobble and bounceback can reduce the pain of lancing by 33–50%.

Clinical Usage of a Blood Glucose Meter

Functions of the Monitoring System

Accuracy of a Glucose Monitor

The most important function of a blood glucose monitor is to be accurate. There are several methods of measuring the accuracy of a blood glucose system. Three of the most important are ISO Standard 15197-2013, MARD, and Error Grid Analysis. The first two measure clinical accuracy and the third clinical relevance of the inaccuracy.

ISO 15193

ISO first issued this standard for accuracy of blood glucose monitors in 2003 and revised it in 2013. It serves as the basis for regulatory approval in Europe and most of the world but not in the United States. The standard lays out the protocols for doing the clinical trials; the necessary number of patients in each blood glucose ranges and sets the standard for accuracy. In the 2013 version, the required accuracy is that 95% of the measured values must be within 15 mg/dL of the reference for values below 100 mg/dL and within 15% of the reference for values above 100 mg/dL. To avoid wildly erroneous values, 99% of the values must fall in the A and B regions of the consensus error grid (see below). The clinical testing is generally done by a third party, called a notified body.

The ISO Standard also allows the manufacturer to provide data on accuracy that exceeds the minimum acceptable accuracy. They may indicate the percent of values with an accuracy within 10 mg/dL/10% and 5 mg/dL/5% of the same ranges.

The FDA has just released a guidance for accuracy of blood glucose monitors that are new to the US market. For use by patients, they need to have 95% of their values within 15% of the reference value over the entire range of glucose for which they are approved. Also, 99% of the values need to be within 20%.

Example of Calculation of MARD

Glucose value		Absolute	
Measured	Reference	difference[a]	Relative difference[b]
105	99	6	6.1%
181	199	18	9.0%
155	143	12	8.4%
58	65	7	10.8%
255	275	20	7.3%
MARD			8.3%

[a]Absolute value (reference-measured)
[b]Absolute difference/reference × 100

MARD

Mean absolute relative error is a measure of the average absolute difference of the measured and the reference value for a glucose reading. For example, as shown in Fig. 27.11, a value that is 10 mg/dL high is counted as plus 10, but so is a value that is 10 points low. Each of these differences is then calculated as a percentage of the reference value, and the average is the MARD. Sometimes, the median is used

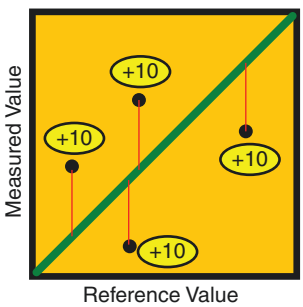


Fig. 27.11 Measuring the absolute error of a blood glucose measurement. (From Ginsberg [30] with permission)

instead of the mean. The median is a better representation of the nonparametric data but, by excluding the extremes, is less sensitive to the dispersion of the data. For example, consider two systems with a median ARD of 6%. The first has a mean ARD of 6.2%, whereas the second has a mean ARD of 8%. Just looking at these numbers tells you that the second system has many more extreme errors than the first system.

Error Grids

The first error grid for glucose monitoring was published by Bill Clarke and his associates in 1987 [4]. This revolutionary concept looked at the clinical consequences of an inaccurate blood glucose value. They set up five zones, A–E, with A being clinically accurate (mostly within 20% of the reference) to E being a value that would lead to the opposite therapy from what would be appropriate. The error grid was based upon their clinical judgment. In 2000, my colleagues and I published a revised error grid based upon the opinion of 100 endocrinologists attending a meeting of the American Diabetes Association [5]. Again, there were five zones, A being clinically perfect and E being clinically dangerous. There is generally a good agreement between the Clarke and the consensus error grids, but in the consensus grid, there is no discontinuity; you cannot go from the A to the D group without passing through the B and C groups (Fig. 27.12). In 2014, an Error Grid Panel of the Diabetes Technology Society published a new error grid, the surveillance error grid, based upon the methods used to create the consensus error grid. They are using this new grid to test current and future blood glucose monitors for accuracy [6].

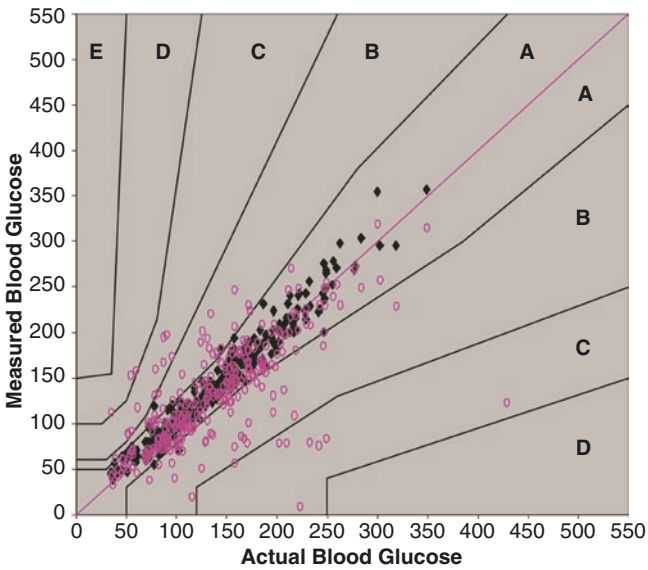


Fig. 27.12 Consensus error grid with data

Setting Up the Monitor

Patients should set up a new monitor. Some data is needed only once. Setting the correct time will allow them and you to use the data in looking for patterns. Unfortunately, many to most meters have the wrong time. Some meters ask the patient to set up time intervals for pre-meal and post-meal values. Others will ask the patient after each reading to select the type of reading. Advanced users, using sophisticated meters, may enter the ratios necessary for a bolus calculator: the carb/insulin ratio, the insulin sensitivity factor, and the target glucose or target range (see below).

Some BGM systems have slight variation in strip lots which are then given different codes. These codes need to be transferred to the meter when the strip vial is changed. Some meters do this automatically, others use a coding strip, and still others ask the patient to enter a code number. Fortunately, many new systems do not require coding by the patients. Either all the lots are the same or they are auto-coded by the system.

Getting a BG Value

The process of getting a blood glucose value has five relatively easy steps that the patient should follow:

1. Prepare all of the tools needed.
2. Wash hands.
3. Lance the finger and get a blood drop.
4. Suck up the blood drop with the glucose strip in the meter.
5. The reading will show up on the meter in 5–15 seconds. You may need to enter it into a logbook.

Prepare the Tools

Patients will gather the meter, vial of strips, lancing device, lancet, and for many their logbook (Fig. 27.13). Most will already have this in a carrying case, often the one that came with their meter. Some systems use a cartridge of strips within the meter, and some lancing devices contain the lancets with the device. One system, the recently FDA-cleared Intuity Pogo®, combines a lance and meter in a single unified device that automatically loads the blood onto the strip.

Fig. 27.13 Prepare the tools for BGM

Wash Hands

The patient must wash their hands in soap and warm water and dry just prior to testing. Although it seems so simple, most patients (80%) fail to do so. Two studies demonstrate that failure to wash hands after peeling fruit may lead to false elevations of blood glucose by 100–200 mg/dL and can elevate the reading by up to 500 mg/dL [7, 8].

Hand washing is effective in eliminating the glucose on fingers from fruit, cookies, chocolate, and other substances. It also warms the hands and promotes circulation, making lancing easier. Alcohol swabs should be avoided. They do not cleanse the hand well and cool the hand, reducing circulation and making lancing harder, and residual alcohol may inhibit the enzyme giving falsely low values [9].

Lancing for a Blood Drop

The patient should load the lancet into the lancing device and set the depth of lancing. Unless the patient has very calloused fingers, the lancing device should be set to its lowest setting. After cocking the device, the patient should place it firmly against the finger and fire it.

With new less painful and destructive lancing systems, all sites on the fingers can be used. Fingertips should probably be avoided since the greater density of nerve fibers makes them more painful.

A small drop of blood should appear after the lancing. Most BGM systems today need only a small drop. If more blood is needed, there are a few techniques for increasing the drop size. The easiest is simply to lower the hand and let the effect of gravity, increasing the venous pressure in the finger, which increases the drop size. If this is not enough, some people "milk" the fingertip. Wrap the thumb and forefinger of the other hand tightly around the base of the lanced finger and slowly move toward the lancing site. I prefer a milder variation of this. Place the thumb and forefinger on the base of the finger, one on each side, occluding the venous drainage of the finger. This may be enough. If it is not, move the thumb and forefinger slowly toward the lancing site. Finally, in very difficult and chronic situations, the patient may use a rubber band as a tourniquet on the finger a few seconds prior to lancing.

Transferring the Blood

With early strips the patient had to place a drop of blood onto the strip. When modern strips, which suck the blood up into the strip, were first developed, patients often incorrectly placed the drop onto the top of the strip. Modern strips have one or two sites, usually well marked, that will draw the blood up into the strip (Fig. 27.14). In most you can view the blood moving along the channel by capillary action. When the blood has reached the wells, the reaction will start, and the meter will give some indication that the process is under way. If there is insufficient blood to fill the well(s), the meter will generate an error code, and no reading will occur. Rarely, in some systems, under-filling may be undetected and will result in a glucose reading substantially lower than the actual value.

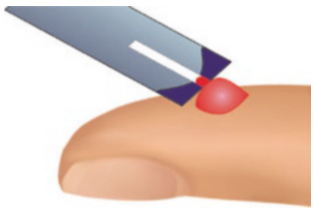


Fig. 27.14 Blood going into the channel of a strip

Fig. 27.15 Glucose meter display. (From Agamatirx.com with permission)

Reading the Meter, Data Entry

Modern meters are much faster than earlier models. Some will have the reading on the display by the time you set the meter on the table. Most will display the results in 4–15 seconds. Also on the display will usually be the time and the units of measurement. In the United States, the units are milligrams per deciliter, but in Canada and much of Europe, the readings are displayed as millimolar (mM). To convert, multiply mM by 18 to get mg/dL or divide mg/dL by 18 to get mM. An example of a typical display is shown in Fig. 27.15. Individual values are useful for making decisions about how much insulin to give now, but patterns of blood glucose are also very useful in picking out patterns of abnormal glucose that can be treated. These patterns are easiest to see with special computer software for BGM analysis, but pattern can also be discerned from a logbook (Fig. 27.16).

NAME:_____ MONTH: _____

DAY OF MONTH	BLOOD GLUCOSE MEASUREMENT								INSULIN TYPE	INSULIN DOSE GIVEN				NOTES
	BREAKFAST		LUNCH		DINNER		BEDTIME	OVERNIGHT		BREAK-FAST	LUNCH	DINNER	BED-TIME	
	Before	After	Before	After	Before	After								
1														
2														
3														
4														
5														
6														
7														
8														
9														

Fig. 27.16 Glucose logbook

BG Readings: Whole Blood Versus Plasma

Glucose in the blood is found in both the plasma and the erythrocytes. Erythrocyte glucose is generally about 70% of the plasma value. That means that whole blood glucose is about 12% lower than plasma glucose, usually reported by laboratories. Most meters measure something between whole blood and plasma glucose. Most are calibrated to report plasma glucose, but the value may be hematocrit dependent. Higher quality monitors often also measure hematocrit and correct the value.

Alternate Site Testing

In 2002 alternate site testing (AST) was introduced by Therasense® (now Abbott®). By sampling from the arm, rather than the finger, there was a dramatic reduction in pain. However, there was a serious problem with AST. The reading seemed to be about 30 minutes old [10]. For many patients with Type 2 diabetes, this was not a major problem. For patients with Type 1 diabetes, however, in whom the blood glucose often changes rapidly, this could be very serious. A patient with hypoglycemia might test and get an AST reading of 125 mg/dL. This is a fine reading to have prior to driving, but the AST reading is from 30 minutes ago, and if the current actual glucose is 65 and falling, driving could be very dangerous.

Alternate site testing never really became popular because of the glucose lag. It became even more insignificant as lancing devices became less painful [11].

Table 27.1 lists the sites for alternate site testing. Not all devices are approved for all sites.

Table 27.1 Sites for alternate site testing

Forearm
Upper arm
Fleshy side of the palm by the pinky
Fleshy area between the thumb and index finger
Thigh
Calf

Error Readings

Some attempts at BG readings will result in an error message. This exact message displayed is specific to each meter, but the causes of the errors are largely the same:

1. Glucose values that are beyond the range of the meter. Most will read from 40 to 600, so values below 40 will generate a reading of "LOW" and above 600 reading of "HIGH."
2. Temperatures that are beyond the capabilities of the meter will be displayed as an error. Because the measurement process uses an enzyme, it will be too slow at low temperatures and too fast at high temperatures. Both of these will yield erroneous data, so most meters will just report a temperature error.
3. Insufficient blood would result in a low reading, so most systems will just report the lack of sufficient blood.
4. Assorted factors are lumped together as a strip error. They include a bad strip, an improperly inserted strip, or a previously used strip.
5. The use of control solution rather than blood.
6. Improper coding indicates a bad coding chip or an improper strip lot code.

7. Weak battery.
8. A meter error indicates that the meter is not working properly.

The first seven errors are usually correctable by the patient. Error 8 is more serious. The patient may try taking the battery out and returning it, but this error usually means the meter needs to be replaced.

Memory and Averages

Many meters will store previous readings. Storage space varies from as few as 10 up to 400 readings. The values are routinely stored with the date and time, but some systems also allow you to add the relationship of the glucose value to the meal (i.e., preprandial), the amount of carbohydrate eaten, the type and amount of insulin taken, and even data about stress and exercise.

When viewed in a linear fashion, these memories provide limited value. Because the patient is looking at the values in the order of how distant they were in the past, it is difficult to establish patterns of poor blood glucose control. The major value of the memory is to provide a record of what has been done for the health-care provider. Mazze and coworkers demonstrated that patients often falsified the data they enter into logbooks [12]. This falsification diminished when the patients learned that the health-care professionals could check on them by viewing the memory.

Averages may be much more useful. Some meters provide a weekly average; others provide the more useful average associated with the pre-meal and post-meal values for each of the three meals and the bedtime snack.

Using BGM Data for Clinical Decisions

Type 1

There is little good data on the frequency of blood glucose monitoring in Type 1 diabetes. A Scandinavian group reports only 39% of patient with Type 1 diabetes monitored daily [13]. In contrast, the T1D exchange reported that patients with Type 1 diabetes tested four to five times per day as judged by self-reporting or glucose monitor downloads [14]. The former measured patients coming to a clinic in 2009, the latter is self-reported data in 2016.

Commonly, patients monitor their blood glucose to get a feel for how well their blood glucose is controlled. Most patients cannot correctly guess their blood glucose (within 30 mg/dL) unless they are very high or very low, and many cannot even tell when they are low (hypoglycemia unawareness) [15]. Patients also monitor for three specific reasons:

1. To be able to dose their insulin properly. To add insulin if they are high as they are about to eat, to take less insulin if they are low entering a meal, or to check if they feel hypoglycemic
2. To establish patterns of glycemic control so that they can alter their pattern of insulin administration
3. To provide data for their health-care professional to help them understand their control and alter therapy if appropriate

Insulin Dosing Using Blood Glucose Values

I personally separate patients with Type 1 diabetes into four therapeutic categories:

1. Intensive insulin therapy (IIT, also called multiple daily insulin or MDI) patients, who adjust their food and insulin at every meal and at bedtime
2. IIT patients who eat a predetermined amount at each meal (the amount at breakfast and lunch may be different, but the amount at breakfast is the same each day)
3. Conventional insulin therapy, consisting of two injections of short and intermediate insulin, pre-breakfast and pre-supper
4. Patients who just guess at their insulin needs

The most complex therapy, also usually the most successful, is practiced by the first group. They calculate their insulin requirements at each meal using a simple equation (Eq. 27.3). About 33–50% of the patients in this group are on insulin pump, and many of the newer pumps have insulin dose calculators that have Eq. 3 or something similar built into them. There are also smartphone apps to do this calculation (Fig. 27.17).

The formula for an insulin dose of short- or rapid-acting insulin is

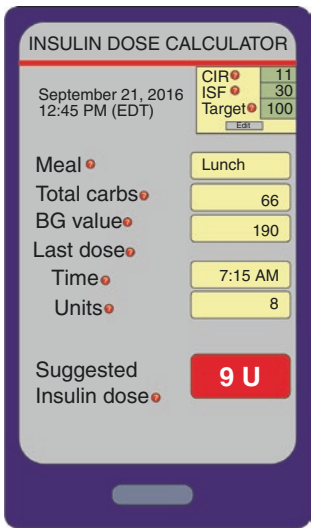


Fig. 27.17 An insulin dose calculator app

$$\text{Insulin dose} = \frac{\text{BG} - \text{target}}{\text{ISF}} + \frac{\text{Carbs}}{\text{CIR}} - \text{IOB}. \quad (27.3)$$

where

Carbs = Total amount of carbohydrate in meal
CIR = Carbohydrate to insulin ratio
Target = Desired blood glucose level
ISF = Insulin sensitivity factor
IOB = Insulin on board

The first expression of the equation is the compensatory dosing: The target is usually a single number, often 100 or 125. Note that if the target is higher than the current BG, the first expression of the equation will be negative and will cause less insulin to be delivered. The goal of therapy is to keep the blood glucose as close to this target as possible. Rarely, people use a target range. With a range of 80–125, the target in Eq. 27.1 would be 125 if the BG were above 125 and 80 if the glucose were below 80. This expression of the equation would drop out if the BG were between 80 and 125. The ISF is the amount of glucose lowering caused by 1 unit of insulin. It may vary by time of day and is often smaller in the morning (perhaps due to a cortisol-induced insulin resistance) than at other times of the day. The smaller the ISF, the less sensitive the patient is to insulin. A first approximation of the ISF is 1500 (for regular insulin) or 1800 (for rapid-acting insulin) divided by the total daily insulin dose. The ISF is not constant over time and should be periodically adjusted using the techniques described below.

If a patient took an evening dose of 20 units of glargine and 10 units of insulin lispro at each meal, the total daily insulin would be 50 units and the ISF 1800/50 or 36.

The second expression of the equation is the meal dosing. Patients are taught to count their carbohydrates. For example, a ham sandwich and a glass of milk would be two slices of bread at 15 grams each and 8 oz of milk at 12 grams for a total of 42 grams of carbohydrate in the meal. The CIR, which is the grams of carbohydrate used by 1 unit of insulin, can be estimated to be about 1/3 of the ISF but also should be corrected over time (see below).

The IOB or insulin on board is a factor to correct for any insulin remaining from the last injection or infusion [16]. Rapid-acting insulin lasts about 5 hours and so as first approximation, about 20% is used each hour. Thus, if the patient took 15 U of lispro 4 hours ago, about 3 units remain. Many believe that the IOB should only be subtracted from the compensatory dose and not from the meal dose, but it is controversial.

The second group takes a much less mathematical approach to therapy giving a compensatory dose without using an insulin dosing equation. They often eat the same amount of carbohydrate at the same time each day and repeat their insulin doses each day. If they think they will eat more, they will take 1 or 2 extra units of insulin and will reduce the insulin if they will eat less. These patients will often monitor their blood glucose 30 minutes prior to each meal and take extra insulin if they are not near their target, often adding one unit for every 30–50 mg/dL high and subtracting one unit for every 10–20 if they are low. With time they get to know their insulin sensitivity and may change to their compensatory dosing. If they are routinely high before any meal, they should raise the rapid-acting insulin at the previous meal.

The third group often monitors less frequently. They don't take insulin at lunch or bedtime, so they will often skip these tests. Some will take extra insulin if high and less if low, but this is much less common with the first two groups. The last group is highly variable and virtually impossible to counsel. Amazingly some of these patients do very well, but most do not.

Hypoglycemia

Patients who feel the symptoms of hypoglycemia should check their blood glucose, but only after instituting therapy for the hypoglycemia. Delaying treatment while waiting for a blood glucose value is much more dangerous than an occasional unnecessary treatment for hypoglycemia. It is important to remember that all glucose monitors have an error associated with them. The best systems will be within 10% of the true value 95% of the time. Most systems will be within 20% of the true values 95% of the time. Thus, a system reading of 72 does not mean there is not hypoglycemia. It could easily be a true value of 60 with an error of 20% (i.e., +12, so the system reads 72).

About 20–25% of patients with Type 1 diabetes have hypoglycemia unawareness; they do not feel the symptoms normally associated with low blood glucose [17]. These patients should test their BG often, perhaps 8–12 times per day or use a continuous glucose monitor. These patients should also have a higher target glucose than someone who feels the symptoms of hypoglycemia. Many authorities believe that someone with hypoglycemia unawareness should not drive. If they do, it is especially important to test before driving and every hour thereafter. All people with Type 1 diabetes should test their BG before driving, and don't drive if it is too low (many agree <90 mg/dL is too low). A severe hypoglycemic event at 65 mph is a dangerous event.

Long-Term Changes and Pattern Recognition

The constants in Eq. 27.3 (ISF, CIR, and target) are not truly constant. They change with the time of day, with stress: medical, physical, and psychological, and for women they may

change with phases of the menstrual cycle. Patient should be looking for clues that the ISF and CIR are incorrect every few days, and health-care professionals should look for these clues at every visit. The clues can come from either the logbook or from a computer download of the data.

The logbook can provide information on the changing constants. If values at the pre-meal glucose check are not returning to the target, the constants may be wrong. A careful analysis of the logbook may show patterns that suggest changes in the ISF and CIR.

Most boluses use both the ISF and the CIR. To correct the constants, you need to compare two adjacent meals. The ISF and CIR at breakfast will affect the glucose values at lunch, the lunch constants affect the glucose values at supper, and the supper constants affect the glucose values at bedtime. The patient needs to be able to count carbs correctly. If they are incorrect but consistent, the CIR will be wrong, but they will actually compensate for their biased carb counting. If they make serious random errors, the method will not work and will be very frustrating.

The easiest way to correct the CIR is to find boluses in which the ISF plays little or no role. Start with breakfast, and find all of the pre-breakfast values that are normal or near normal (±10–20 mg/dL from target). Make a chart of the pre-breakfast and pre-lunch values (Table 27.2a). Note that the pre-lunch values are about 45 mg/dL higher than the pre-breakfast. This patient has a CIR of 10. A conservative approach would be to decrease the CIR by 1; an aggressive approach would be to decrease the CIR by 2. We decrease the CIR because that will raise the insulin dose. Exactly the opposite occurs if the pre-lunch values are low.

It is more difficult to correct the ISF. If the CIR is incorrect, it is extremely difficult, so get the CIR right on all meals first. Again, pre-breakfast and pre-lunch values are shown in Table 27.2b. Note, we are not looking at the difference between breakfast and lunch but rather difference of the lunch value from the target. That is because the ISF is designed to bring an abnormal glucose back to target. On average we are about 43 mg/dL higher than target. So again, a conservative approach would be to decrease the ISF by 2; an aggressive approach would be to decrease the ISF by 4. We decrease the ISF because that will raise the insulin dose. Exactly the opposite occurs if the pre-lunch values are below the target.

You can also take a graphical approach to the data.

The health-care professional should be adjusting the ISF and CIR at each visit. If the patient is motivated and capable, she/he may be taught how to make very conservative changes on their own.

These changes may also be made on graphical data, either from the patient or from programs and apps designed to analyze blood glucose values. Figure 27.18 shows some patterns

Table 27.2 Adjusting constants

A (decrease CIR)		
Pre-breakfast	**Pre-lunch**	**Difference**
98	137	39
104	139	35
119	184	65
102	165	63
86	141	55
108	152	44
B (decrease ISF)		
Pre-breakfast	**Pre-lunch**	**Difference from target**
158	151	51
198	168	30
135	145	45
207	171	71
210	198	98
177	145	45

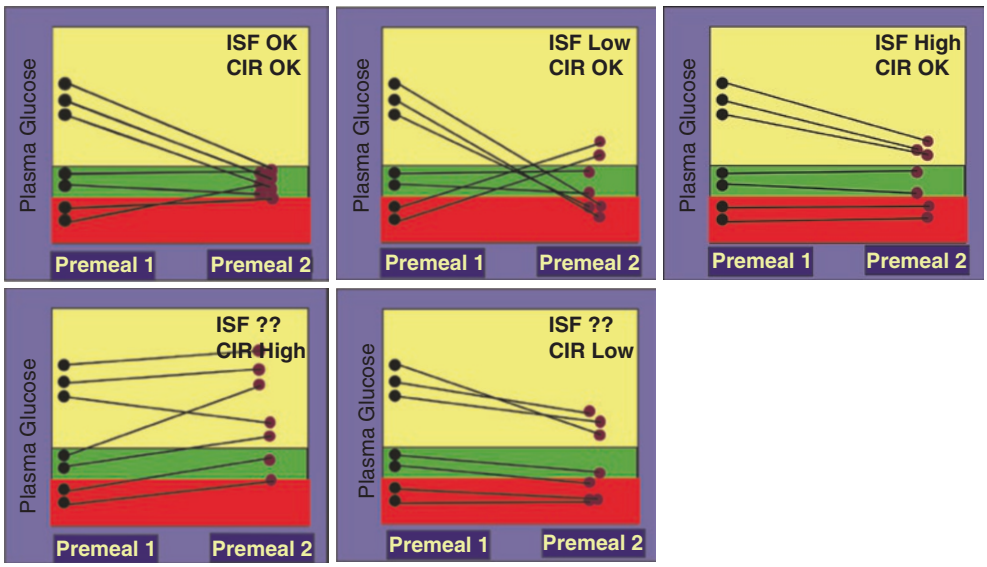


Fig. 27.18 Graphical analysis of glucose constants. (From Ginsberg [32] with permission)

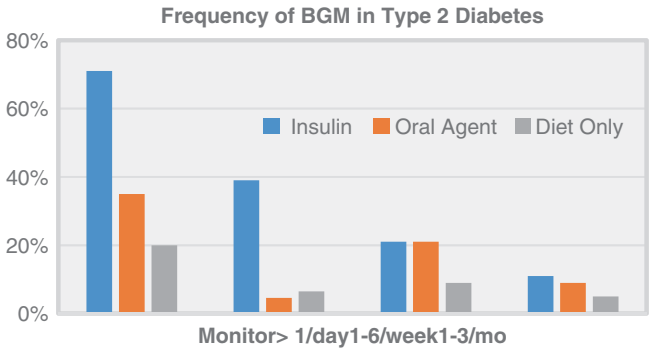


Fig. 27.19 Data from Harris [20]

of blood glucose changes between meals and their potential meaning for the constants.

It is usually safer to teach your patients to make small changes to their CIR and ISF frequently than to make large changes every 3 months when you see them for clinical visits.

Type 2 (Fig. 27.19)

Patients with Type 2 diabetes generally monitor their blood glucose less frequently than patient with Type 1, indeed some may not monitor at all. The appropriate frequency of monitoring and the required accuracy of the monitors depend on the type of therapy. There are a number of excellent reviews of which patients with Type 2 diabetes should monitor their blood glucose, and there is reasonable agreement among them [18, 19]. Patients using insulin need to monitor their glucose. The frequency varies with the exact type of therapy (see below). Patients using oral or injectable medications that may cause hypoglycemia need to monitor their glucose. Patients on oral agents and injectable that do not cause hypoglycemia and patients on diet alone still seem to do better when they monitor their glucose (see below). Interestingly, monitoring in practice is often less than these guidelines suggest. Only 71% of patients on insulin monitor their glucose, and only 39% monitored at least daily [20]. Only 35% of patient on oral agent and 20% of patients on diet alone monitored their blood glucose, and less than 5% monitored at least once per day.

Type 2 Diabetes Using Insulin

Many patients with Type 2 diabetes use intensive insulin therapy; although few use pumps they basically use the same approach to glucose monitoring as patients with Type 1 diabetes. Patients on IIT with Type 2 diabetes should monitor with the same frequency (~3–4 times per day) as those on IIT with Type 1 diabetes. Since they are using the blood glucose value to make adjustments to insulin, they need the same accuracy as patients with Type 1 diabetes and should use the most accurate monitors with the best data analytic tools (see Tele-health).

Table 27.3 Glycemic goals for elderly Type 2

Status	HbA1c goal	BG goal (mg/dL)	Bedtime BG goal (mg/dL)
Healthy	<7.5%	90–130	90–150
Complex	<8.0%	90–150	100–180
Poor health	<8.5%	100–180	110–200

Glucose targets vary with the age and health of the patient [21]. Hypoglycemia is not well-tolerated by older patients with cardiovascular disease or who may fall and hurt themselves. The American Diabetes Association and the American Geriatric Society have consensus guidelines for the appropriate goals for patients with diabetes above age 65 (Table 27.3). Since intensive insulin therapy often has lower glycemic variability than conventional therapy, it may still be the appropriate therapy for these patients, using the modified targets of Table 27.3 [22].

Patients using mixed insulin twice daily (70/30 or 75/35) still need to test frequently, 3–4 times per day. Patients on a single dose of long-acting insulin like glargine should test twice, once in the morning to be certain the overnight effect of the long-acting is appropriate and once at another time of day which should vary daily, covering lunch, supper, and bedtime. The accuracy of the monitors used in patients injecting only once need not be at the cutting edge but should still be high. Although these patients do not make insulin decisions based upon a single glucose value, they still use the monitors to detect hypoglycemia, and less accurate monitors are more likely to have false-negative and false-positive hypoglycemia values [23].

The initial titration of a long-acting insulin requires blood glucose monitoring. The patient is started on a small dose of a long-acting insulin, such a glargine, usually 10 U or 0.1 U/kg, and monitors his/her fasting blood glucose every day. At the end of a week, they look at the "1-week average" function of the monitor and add additional long-acting according to a protocol [24]. Any hypoglycemic episodes result in an immediate reduction in dose.

Type 2 Diabetes Using Oral Agents and Parenteral Agents Other than Insulin

This category is complex because some of the agents can cause hypoglycemia, whereas others cannot. The agents that can cause hypoglycemia include pramlintide (parenteral), sulfonylureas, and mitiglinides. Agents that rarely if ever cause hypoglycemia include GLIP-1 analogs (parenteral), DPP-4 inhibitors, thiazolidinediones, biguanides, and SGLT-2 inhibitors. Details of each of these drugs are found in Chaps. 39, 40, and 41, and so they will be considered as two classes: hypoglycemia and non-hypoglycemia agents.

Blood Glucose Monitoring When Using Hypoglycemic Agents

A personal story: A number of years ago, I went to Florida to meet my father's new wife. She was making supper but seemed to be shaking. She said this happened every day at about 4 PM and started shortly after her doctor gave her this new medicine, glipizide. He had not told her about hypoglycemia nor taught her about SMBG. We fed her and bought a glucose monitor. The next afternoon, when the shaking started, we tested her BG. It was 58 mg/dL. I called her doctor, and we lowered her dose of glipizide.

Sulfonylureas remain a common therapy for Type 2 diabetes. They are effective and inexpensive but have significant side effects including hypoglycemia. Mitiglinides are less commonly used but are similar to sulfonylureas in both action and side effects. Pramlintide slows absorption of food from the stomach and increases satiety but is rarely used alone. Pramlintide exacerbates the hypoglycemia of other medications.

Patients on these hypoglycemic agents should be monitoring their blood glucose regularly. When starting or altering therapy, they should monitor 4 times per day. Once they are stable, they may drop back to twice daily, alternating the time of day they test. For example, on days 1, 3, 5, etc., they may monitor pre-breakfast and pre-supper. On days 2,4, 6, etc., they may monitor pre-lunch and pre-bed. They should check their BG before driving.

The accuracy of the monitors for these patients does not have to be state of the art. It is rare for these patients to have hypoglycemia unawareness. Changes in therapy are usually based on a pattern of hypo- or hyperglycemia, and the pattern is less likely to be affected by the accuracy of the monitor (unless it is biased).

Blood Glucose Monitoring when Using Non-hypoglycemic Agents

Metformin and the newer diabetes medications, thiazolidinediones, GLIP-1 agonists, DPP4 inhibitors, and SGLT 2 inhibitors, rarely if ever cause hypoglycemia, so the use of SMBG by these patients is controversial. The earlier studies of the use of SMBG in these patients were often flawed studies. The patients were given SMBG but little education and were not taught how to make meaningful changes to their therapy based upon SMBG. More recently, better studies have shown SMBG to be effective in lowering HbA1c in these patients [18, 19]. Structured blood glucose monitoring has been shown to be particularly effective [25]. Patients are given a rigid schedule of monitoring, usually 8 times per week. Patterns may be eight times/day, once weekly; two times per day, on 4 days each week, varying the time of day tested; or one time per day, every day, again varying the time of day tested. Patients are also taught how to interpret the data, and their health-care provider goes over the data with them at each clinic visit.

The accuracy of the monitors for these patients does not have to be state of the art. Hypoglycemia is not an issue. Changes in therapy are usually made of a pattern of hypo- or hyperglycemia, and the pattern is less likely to be affected by the accuracy of the monitor (unless it is biased).

Hypoglycemia

Hypoglycemia in Type 2 diabetes is common. Estimates of the incidence of hypoglycemia in Type 2 s are between 50% and 95% of the rate of Type 1 diabetes, almost exclusively in the insulin- and sulfonylurea-using patients [26]. About 75% of the patients that take insulin, however, and 100% of the patients taking sulfonylureas are Type 2, so the absolute amount of hypoglycemia in the Type 2 patients is greater than Type 1 [27, 28]. Although there are some questions about the exact rate of hypoglycemia in Type 2 diabetes, it is no doubt a serious problem, made more serious by the frailty of some of the patients. BGM helps modulate the frequency of hypoglycemia.

Using SMBG in the Therapy of Type 2 Diabetes

Using SMBG with insulin-using patients is similar in Type 1 and Type 2, although you may choose to be less aggressive in the latter. Using SMBG in patients using oral agents and non-insulin parenteral drugs is different. The American Associate of Clinical Endocrinologists has published a set of guidelines for therapy of Type 2 diabetes [29]. The guidelines lay out an algorithm for the therapy of Type 2 diabetes. It is best used with the guiding principles of setting detailed goals and milestones, each with a specific target and time to reach the goal or milestone and intensifying therapy as needed. The goals are generally values of HbA1c, but blood glucose monitoring is incredibly effective in helping to make timely changes in therapy. For example, you may start a patient on 500 mg of metformin, but if you only increase therapy when you see the patient every 3 months, it will take a year to reach a maximal metformin dose. If instead, after a month, you have the patient check the last week's blood glucose average and increase the dose themselves if the BG average is above 150 or call you to increase the dose, it will only take 4 months to reach maximal metformin dose. This can be done with other medications as well, minimizing the time to get the patient on the correct therapy and dose. Engaging patients in this manner requires properly educating them.

Limitations

Interfering Substances

Some substances both normally occurring in blood and medications can interfere with glucose readings. They differ by the chemistry of the BGM strip [30].

Medications: With electrochemical glucose oxidase systems, all seem to interact with the electrode and include acetaminophen, L-DOPA, tolazamide (rarely used today), and ascorbic acid. The error from all these medications is usually small. With glucose dehydrogenase (except GDH-FAD), other sugars can interfere. Maltose and xylose can have a small effect, but the most dangerous substance is icodextrin [19]. The latter is used in some peritoneal dialysis fluids and can increase the glucose value reported by the meter by more than 100 mg/dL.

Naturally occurring substances: Three naturally occurring substances interfere with electrochemical glucose oxidase-based strips: triglycerides, oxygen, and uric acid. Triglycerides, usually at very high levels, cause meters to be inaccurate because they take up volume, decreasing the amount of glucose in the capillary volume. Thus they cause values to be low. Oxygen competes with mediator to take electrons from the enzyme. Since strips are generally calibrated for capillary oxygen concentrations, high oxygen values, such as those found in arterial samples or in patients utilizing oxygen, will cause falsely lower values [16]. Low oxygen levels, such as those found in venous samples or in patients with severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, may cause falsely high values. Finally, uric acid, though only at very high values, can interfere with the reaction. Uric acid is seldom a problem, except in patients with values that would lead to severe gout. GDH electrodes have little interference with exogenous substances except as listed above.

Extremes of Altitude, Temperature, and Humidity [29]

Glucose oxidase biosensor strips are often sensitive to oxygen concentration, as described above and therefore sensitive to altitude. Glucose dehydrogenase sensors are less sensitive. All systems will indicate the maximum altitude at which a correct reading will be obtained. Most systems are accurate up to 10,000 feet.

Enzymes are sensitive to temperature. They will slow down at lower temperatures and speed up at higher temperatures (until they denature at still higher temperatures). The BGM reaction, however, is not usually enzyme limited. The strips contain excess enzyme, so some slowing or speeding up does not influence the reading. Effects of temperature on the mediator are less predictable. Thus, the influence of temperature is less predictable. Most meters have a temperature sensor and will report errors at extreme temperatures. A group of mountain climbers tested the influence of temperature, measuring glucose at 8 °C. The results were brand specific, not technology dependent. The errors were 5–7% but could be either positive or negative.

Humidity does not usually directly influence the glucose reading, but high humidity does limit the stability of most BGM strips.

Other Factors

Although not strictly interfering substances, three other factors may be important in BGM accuracy. Many patients fail to wash their hands prior to checking BGM [7, 8]. Minute amounts of glucose on the finger can significantly raise blood glucose (see section on hand washing). Hematocrit may be a problem with some monitors, especially those using glucose oxidase. High hematocrit may cause low BGM values and low hematocrit, high values (see section on hematocrit). This error may be as large as 20%. Finally, some systems require a calibration code (although many new systems do not). If the patient miscodes the monitor, by either failing to enter a new code with a new vial of strips or incorrectly entering the code, the BGM reading may be incorrect by as much as 30% [31].

Tele-Health

Analyzing Blood Glucose Values

Computerization of BGM Data [32]

People who regularly monitor their blood glucose will accumulate hundreds of glucose data points between clinical visits. Evaluating the 300–400 values brought by the patient in the memory of a meter or in a logbook can be a daunting task, but there is software to help. People with diabetes are usually the ones who collect the data and the ones with the most invested in the proper use of the information. They use the values to make immediate decisions about insulin, food, exercise, and, sometimes, medications. They use the data to:

1. Make immediate decisions about insulin, food, and exercise, including checking for hypoglycemia.
2. Establish patterns of abnormal glucose in order to do "pattern control" of their diabetes.
3. Understand how well or how poorly they are doing by using the 3-day, weekly, or monthly averages provided by the meter [3].

Health-care workers also use the data from SMBG. They may just glance at the data to establish an overall level of control to help them make changes to oral medications. They may also study the data more carefully to establish patterns of abnormal glucose in order to make changes to insulin, other medications, a meal plan, or exercise. Methods of manually doing this were discussed above.

Programs and apps to help analyze a large group of glucose data points provide screens that can be thought of in a few categories:

1. Basic data
2. "How am I doing?"
3. Statistics
4. Graphics

Basic data screens contain the raw data, usually with little manipulation. They include the data list, which is just a listing of all of the data that the computer has for the patient and the logbook, which is the color-coded data listed as they would be in a logbook (Fig. 27.20).

The data screen has little value in exploring patterns of blood glucose and, generally, should be reserved for the end of the analysis. Often it allows you to see if blood glucose values were done by the patient and then deleted from the analysis or not done by the patient and added.

The logbook contains a great deal of information but is very time-consuming to use and has little added value compared with a written logbook. One exception is that you can be certain of the validity of the blood glucose values. A few years ago, I did a personal, unscientific poll of professional users of SMBG software and was surprised that most used the logbook as their main analytic screen. A more recent similar poll showed that most users are now more sophisticated and use the statistics or graphics pages as their main analytic tools.

The "How am I doing?" charts include the trend chart, pie charts, and histograms. The most common of these, and the most useful, is the trend chart. Although it contains too much data that is organized only by date and time, it gives a clear picture of the level of control and the variability over time (Fig. 27.21). The chart shown here depicts the blood glucose values over approximately 10 weeks and includes a rolling average (white curve). Although not an independent indication of variability, the height of the lines is an indication. You can quickly see that the mean glucose has gone from ~200 mg/dL to ~140 mg/dL during this time, and the variability has gone from moderate to small. This patient and his/her health-care team have done an excellent job over these 10 weeks. Using this chart, it is easy to point out to the patient how much better she/he is doing.

This chart can be used for time-series analysis because it displays the glucose values over time. Some programs allow you to magnify a section and show any additional data, such as insulin, food, or exercise, and to analyze the values that are exceptionally high or low. It may be easier to do this, however, on a modern standard day chart, such as that described later.

The statistics page is the most useful page for pattern analysis for number-oriented people. Graphics-oriented people will find the standard day chart (discussed later) to be most useful. The statistics page is shown in Fig. 27.22.

The most important figures are the pre-meal average values. Elevated pre-meal values, such as those shown in Fig. 27.22 for pre-dinner and bedtime, suggest an imbalance

Patient Current ▼ Custome Range 11/26/12-12-15-12 Traget Range 90-139 mg/dL

Legend

	Beakfast			Lunch			Dinner			Bedtime		Night
	Before	Insulin	After	Before	Insulin	After	Before	Insulin	After	Insulin		
	7:00 AM-8:59 AM		9:00 AM-10:59 AM	11:30 AM-12:59 PM		1:00 PM-4:59 PM	5:00 PM 6:59 PM		7:00 PM-8:59 PM	9:00 PM-10:59 PM		11:00 PM-6:59 AM
M 11/26/12	99	10.0 H		97	12.0 H		147	14.0 H		227	2.0 L	
											2.0 H	
T 11/27/12	112	10.0 H		121	12.0 H		221	16.0 H		45	22.0 L	
											0.0 L	
W 11/28/12	126	10.0 H		95	12.0 H		140	15.0 H		91	22.0 L	
											0.0 H	
T 11/29/12	89	10.0 H		172	12.0 H		229	16.0 H		301	22.0 L	
											4.0 H	
F 11830/12	123	10.0 H		119	12.0 H		138	15.0 H		273	22.0 L	
											3.0 H	
S 12/01/12	65	9.0 H		84	12.0 H		202	16.0 H		162	22.0 L	
											0.0 H	
S 12/02/12	129	10.0 H		153	13.0 H		157	15.0 H		210	22.0 L	
											2.0 H	
M 12/03/12	108	10.0 H		141	12.0 H		178	15.0 H		57	22.0 L	
											0.0 H	

Average Blood Glucose = 153 mg/dL Average Insulin Units = 12.8 Humalog 22.0 Lantus

Fig. 27.20 Logbook screen. (From Ginsberg [32] with permission)

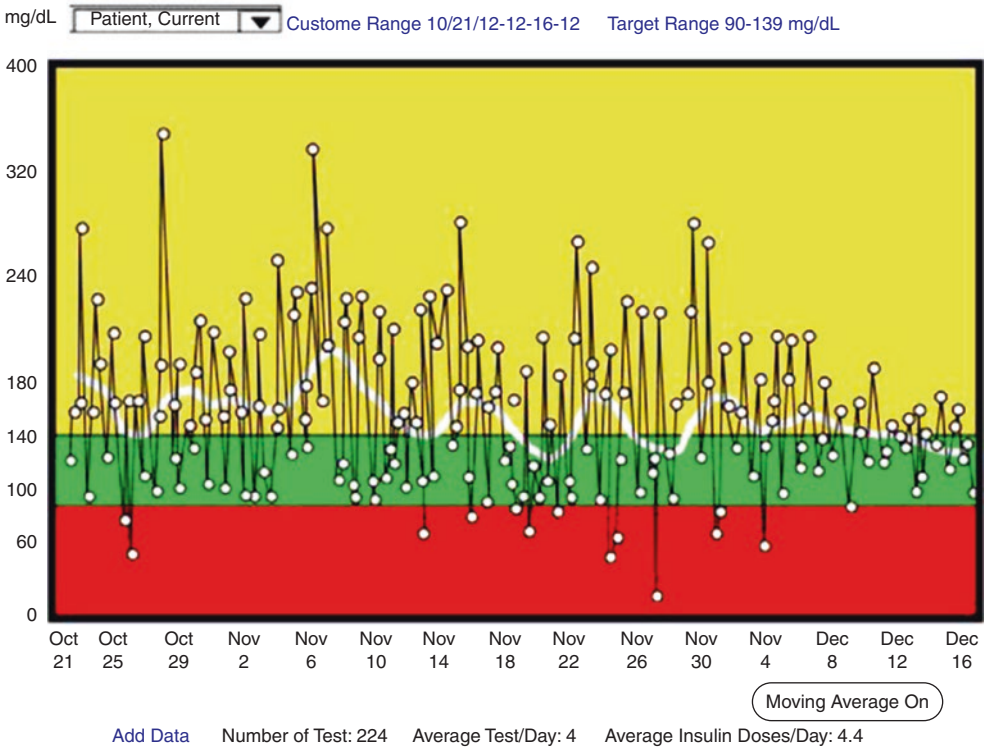


Fig. 27.21 Trend chart. (From Ginsberg [32] with permission)

Patient, Current — Last 2 Month 10/15/12-12-15-12 mg/dL — Target Range 90-140

Legend

	Total	Avg Tests/ Day	Mean	Std Dev	Min	Max	# Below	# In Target	# Above	% Below	% In Target	% Above
All Unmarked	227	3.7	155	65	23	589	20	87	120	8.8	38.3	52.9
Pre-Breakfast	55	0.9	116	24	65	162	7	39	9	12.7	70.9	16.4
Post-Breakfast	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Pre-Lunch	55	0.9	130	25	76	175	3	31	21	5.5	56.4	38.2
Post-Lunch	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Pre-Dinner	55	0.9	187	39	98	265	0	7	48	0	12.7	87.3
Post-Dinner	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bedtime	58	0.9	189	98	23	589	8	10	40	13.8	17.2	69.0
Night	4	0.1	118	59	65	178	2	0	2	50.0	0	50.0
Marked	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Fig. 27.22 Statistics page. (From Ginsberg [32] with permission)

with too little insulin or too much food at the previous meal. Average values that are too low would suggest too much insulin, too little food, or too much exercise. For the elevated values, the next numbers to focus on are the standard deviations. These should be considered as a percentage of the average value, also called the coefficient of variation. If the standard deviation is less than 50% of the pre-meal value, it is probably safe to increase insulin to lower this value. If it is less than 30%, it is generally safe to make a change. For example, in Fig. 27.22 the pre-dinner standard deviation value of 39 is only approximately 20% of the pre-meal average of 187 mg/dL. This patient is on IIT therapy, so it would be safe to increase the pre-lunch rapid-acting insulin by 1 U and perhaps by 2 U. In contrast, the bedtime standard deviation of 98 is

more than 50% of the bedtime average of 189 mg/dL. It is not safe to make a change to the pre-dinner rapid-acting insulin. In this case, the patient was exercising irregularly after dinner. Moving the variable evening exercise to regular exercise during the afternoon increased the bedtime average but decreased the standard deviation, and additional pre-dinner insulin brought the bedtime average to 116 mg/dL. When using the statistics page for decision-making, you should be sure you are looking only at the most recent values (in this case, the last 2 months). For stability, you should have more than 25 values, but they should all be after the last major insulin change. You can always change the reporting period, although the method varies from program to program.

The statistics page also indicates the frequency of testing at each time, the range of values (minimum and maximum), and the percentage of values below the target range, in target range, and above target range. The statistics page provides a lot of information for columnar analysis but is of no use in time-series analysis.

The primary graphics page for analysis is the modal or standard day, initially proposed by Mazze and coauthors [33]. This graphic is available in all glucose monitoring software but not all mobile apps. Its actual format is highly variable. The standard day is most useful for finding patterns of abnormal glucose and making changes to correct them. An example of a standard day is shown in Fig. 27.23. It is the same data shown in statistical form in Fig. 27.22.

In a standard day, all glucose values are plotted as if they all occurred on a single day. The *x* axis is clock time, and the *y* axis is the measured glucose value. Plotting all values this way often demonstrates patterns that might be hard to visualize in other formats. For example, looking at Fig. 27.23, note:

- The pre-breakfast values are basically normal, with a normal average and reasonable standard deviation.
- The pre-lunch values are slightly higher but other-wise similar to breakfast.
- The pre-dinner is elevated with a reasonable standard deviation (you might want to check the statistics page for the exact standard deviation).
- The pre-bedtime values are highly variable, but the average is elevated.
- There are only four overnight values, but two are low and two are slightly high. We need more data, but it might be wise to focus here.
- There are no postprandial values.

Making clinical decisions from these data is straightforward for a patient on IIT therapy. You start by looking at the time period with the highest value, in this case, the bedtime values. These are high but also very variable, with significant hypoglycemia. Increasing the dinner rapid-acting insulin to lower the bedtime values would only lead to more hypoglycemia. Instead, seek patterns of behavior that lead to the variability, most likely, variability in dinner carbohydrates or in exercise. If there is significant variability in all meals, check for poor insulin injection technique. In this case, the patient had variable exercise after dinner. Regularizing the exercise (and reducing it somewhat) led to a higher average value, but with significantly less variability.

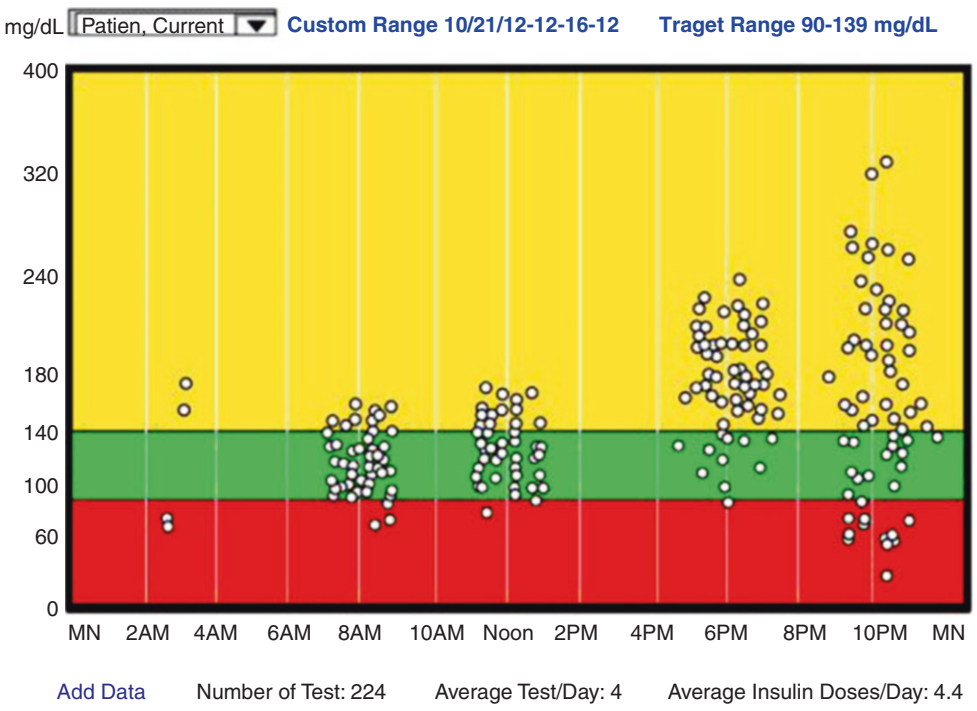


Fig. 27.23 Standard day. (From Ginsberg [32] with permission)

The second highest average value is at dinner. Here the variability is small, so it can be corrected by reducing the carbohydrates at lunch or increasing the lunchtime rapid-acting insulin. We did the latter, and the average value fell from 187 to 139 mg/dL. The breakfast and lunch values are acceptable, and no changes need to be made.

The graphics program is highly adaptable, and some significant analytic techniques may be available in some programs and apps [31].

BGM Apps

There are a number of apps for analysis of blood glucose values and sites that review them [34–36]. Some allow transfer of glucose data from the monitor directly to the smartphone. The main advantage of an app is that it is always with the patient, and it is easy to add food, exercise, and stress and to analyze the data at any time.

Figure 27.24 shows three screens of the Wavesense Diabetes Manager. The left shows a daily trend curve of glucose at the top, insulin doses in the middle, and food below that. The two right screens show details of insulin and food.

Other Diabetes Apps

Food Apps

A second major category is food management. My personal favorite app is MyFitnessPal, which is a general-purpose food diary. It allows "recipes" so the patient can form a complex food the way that they eat it and name it for easy recall. For example, a Barry Chicken Burger would be a large hamburger roll; 4 ounces of grilled chicken; a slice of onion, lettuce, mustard, and ketchup for 386 calories; 28 grams of carbohydrate; 46 grams of protein; and 8 grams of fat. About 50–70 different complex foods make up most of what the average person eats. One of the major problems in diabetes management is the inability of most patients to accurately quantitate the carbohydrate intake. There are several carbohydrate counters for both the Android and iOS systems, both diabetes specific and general. A big problem is the inability of some patients to gauge the quantity of the food they are eating. One company, Palette, is working on a scale, similar in size to the phone, which will transfer the food weight to an app on the phone.

Insulin Dose Calculators

The calculation of an insulin dose, using Eq. 27.3 or a similar equation, obviously lends itself to a smartphone app (Fig. 27.17), and several are available [37] although a recent review found several problems with them [38].

Other Apps [39]

Another interesting app is called "Glucagon," and it allows patients and the friends and family to practice giving glucagon. Because the glucagon is needed so rarely, it is good to be able to practice giving it.

Disease Management

There are several apps, such as BlueStar by WellDoc, which are designed to help patients with Type 2 diabetes achieve better blood glucose control [40]. FDA-cleared BlueStar provides prescription advice based upon an algorithm that the physician has approved. It has been demonstrated to significantly reduce blood glucose.

Regulation of Diabetes Apps

In 2010 the FDA indicated it would regulate medical software and apps and issued a fairly strict draft guidance. In 2015, it softened its approach indicating that it would not regulate apps that transferred data from a device to a smartphone and displayed it, offered dietary advice, or helped with disease self-management. Apps that provide specific treatment advice, however, will be regulated. It is not clear yet if they plan to regulate insulin dose calculators.

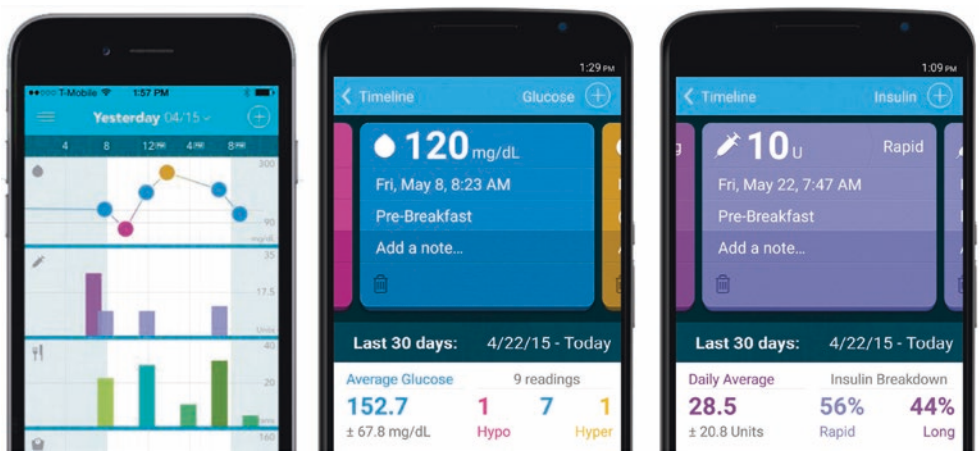


Fig. 27.24 Wavesense diabetes manager. (From Agamatrix.com with permission)

Concluding Remarks

- Self-monitoring of blood glucose is an important component of the therapy of diabetes.
- Glucose monitoring is a well-established technology with a wide assortment of devices available.
- There is already good integration of BGM devices with smartphones and computers. This is likely to expand over the next few years as part of integrated diabetes therapy.

Questions

1. In the early days of blood glucose monitoring, most patients checked their sugar by:
   (a) Using a blood glucose monitor.
   (b) Visually reading a blood glucose strip.
   (c) Measuring their urine glucose.
   (d) Measuring their sweat glucose.
   (e) They could feel the level of blood glucose.
2. Blood glucose strips were initially based upon the enzyme:
   (a) Hexokinase
   (b) Glucose transmutase
   (c) Glucose dehydrogenase
   (d) Glucose oxidase
   (e) Sodium-glucose linked transporter
3. The modern lancing systems for glucose monitors:
   (a) Draw up to 50 *u*L of blood.
   (b) Use ultrathin lancets that are virtually painless.
   (c) Provide blood from alternate sites that is better than a finger stick.
   (d) Are troubled by "wobble" and "bounceback."
   (e) Are still very painful.
4. Sensors have largely replaced reflectance meters for monitoring glucose because:
   (a) They are more accurate.
   (b) They are easier to use.
   (c) They can be smaller.
   (d) They need less cleaning.
   (e) All of the above.
5. The most used standard of accuracy of BGM systems is ISO 15197-2013 which requires
   (a) 99% of all clinical values be with 20% of the reference value
   (b) 95% of all clinical values be with 15% of the reference value
   (c) 99% of all clinical value be within 20% of the reference value for values above 100 mg/dL and with 20 mg/dL for values below 100
   (d) 95% of all clinical value be within 15% of the reference value for values above 100 mg/dL and with 15 mg/dL for values below 100
   (e) 95% of all clinical value be within 10% of the reference value for values above 100 mg/dL and with 10 mg/dL for values below 100
6. All of the following are accepted practice for obtaining a blood glucose value except:
   (a) Assemble the necessary components.
   (b) Wash the finger with alcohol.
   (c) Lance the finger.
   (d) Transfer the blood to a strip.
   (e) Read the glucose monitor.
7. Patient with Type 1 diabetes monitors their glucose to:
   (a) Identify the necessary dose of insulin.
   (b) Check for hypoglycemia.
   (c) Establish patterns of blood glucose control.
   (d) Provide glucose pattern data to their health-care provider.
   (e) All of the above.
8. Which of the following is the correct statement:
   (a) Most patients can accurately feel their blood glucose.
   (b) Patient with Type 2 diabetes never needs to monitor their glucose.
   (c) Patients with type 2 diabetes on insulin should monitor their glucose frequently.
   (d) Structured glucose monitoring provides no clinical benefit.
   (e) All of the above.
9. Factors that may influence a glucose reading are:
   (a) Interfering substance
   (b) Altitude
   (c) Temperature
   (d) Hematocrit
   (e) All of the above
10. There are apps for smartphones for:
    (a) Analyzing blood glucose values
    (b) Selecting and quantitating food
    (c) Calculating an insulin dose
    (d) Managing Type 2 diabetes
    (e) All of the above

Correct Answer

1. (c) Measuring their urine glucose.
2. (d) Glucose oxidase
3. (b) Use ultrathin lancets that are virtually painless.
4. (e) All of the above.
5. (d) 95% of all clinical value be within 15% of the reference value for values above 100 mg/dL and with 15 mg/dL for values below 100

6. (b) Wash the finger with alcohol.
7. (e) All of the above.
8. (c) Patients with type 2 diabetes on insulin should monitor their glucose frequently.
9. (e) All of the above
10. (e) All of the above

Glossary

AST Alternate site testing (sites other than the finger)
BGM Blood glucose monitoring
Carb Total amount of carbohydrate in meal
CIR Carbohydrate to insulin ratio
DPP4 Dipeptidyl peptidase-4
FAD Flavin adenine dinucleotide
FADH Reduced flavin adenine dinucleotide
FDA Food and Drug Administration
Ga Gauge
GDH_FAD Glucose dehydrogenase with the cofactor flavin adenine dinucleotide
GDH-NAD Glucose dehydrogenase with the cofactor nicotine adenine dinucleotide
GDH-PQQ Glucose dehydrogenase with the cofactor pyrroloquinoline quinone
GLIP-1 Glucagon-like intestinal peptide-1
HbA1c Hemoglobin A1c
IIT Intensive insulin therapy, usually an insulin therapy with a long-acting insulin plus rapid-acting insulin at each meal, also called multiple daily insulin
IOB Inulin on board. The amount of insulin remaining in the injection/infusion site
MARD Median (or mean) absolute relative deviation
MDI Multiple daily insulin therapy, see IIT
ISF Insulin sensitivity factor
ISO International Standards Organization
mM Millimolar
SGLT 2 Sodium-glucose linked transporter. The proteins that reabsorb glucose from the renal tubule
SMBG Self-monitoring of blood glucose, a process in which the patient checks their own blood glucose using a blood glucose monitor
Target Desired blood glucose level
VSLI Very large integrated circuit

References

1. American Chemical Society. Al and Helen Free and the development of diagnostic test strips. http://www.acs.org/content/acs/en/education/whatischemistry/landmarks/diagnostictestst rips.html. 8 April 2016. Accessed 1 Sept 2016.
2. Ferri S, Kojima K, Soji K. Review of glucose oxidases and glucose dehydrogenases: a bird's eye view of glucose sensing enzymes. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2011;5(5):1068–76.
3. FDA. Safety: GDH-PQQ (glucose dehydrogenase pyrroloquinoline quinone) Glucose Monitoring Technology. http://www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/SafetyInformation/SafetyAlertsforHumanMedicalProducts/ucm177295.htm. 13 Aug 2009.
4. Clarke WL, Cox D, Gonder-Frederick LA, Carter W, Pohl SL. Evaluating clinical accuracy of systems for self-monitoring of blood glucose. Diabetes Care. 1987;10:622–8.
5. Parkes JL, Slavin SL, Pardo S, Ginsberg BH. A new consensus error grid to evaluate the clinical significance of inaccuracies in the measurement of blood glucose. Diabetes Care. 2000;23(8):1142–8.
6. Klonoff DC, Lias C, Vigersky R, Clarke W, Parkes JL, Sacks DB, Kirkman MS, Kovatchev B, Panel EG. The surveillance error grid. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2014;8(4):658–72.
7. Hirose T, Mita T, Fujitani Y, Kawamori R, Watada H. Glucose monitoring after fruit peeling: pseudohyperglycemia when neglecting hand washing before fingertip blood sampling. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(3):596–7.
8. Hortensius, J, Slingerland, RJ, Kleefstra, N, Logtenberg, SJJ, H. Groenier, K, Houweling, ST, Bilo, HJG. Self-monitoring of blood glucose: the use of the first or the second drop of blood. Diabetes Care 2011; 34(3): 556–560.
9. Dunning PL, Rantzau C, Ward GM. Effect of alcohol swabbing on capillary blood glucose measurements. Pract Diabetes. 1994;11(6):251–4.
10. Koschinsky T, Jungheim K, Heinemann L. Glucose sensors and the alternate site testing-like phenomenon: relationship between rapid blood glucose changes and glucose sensor signals. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2003;5(5):829–42.
11. Ito T, Kamoi K, Minagawa S, Kimura K, Kobayashi A. Patient perceptions of different lancing sites for self-monitoring of blood glucose: a comparison of fingertip site with palm site using the OneTouch Ultra Blood Glucose Monitoring System. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2010;4(4):906–10.
12. Mazze RS, Shamoon H, Pasmantier R, Lucido D, Murphy J, Hartmann K, Kuykendall V, Lopatin W. Reliability of blood glucose monitoring by patients with diabetes mellitus. Am J Med. 1984;77(2):211–7.
13. Hansen MV, Pedersen-Bjergaard U, Heller SR, Wallace TM, Rasmussen AK, Jørgensen HV, Pramming S, Thorsteinsson B. Frequency and motives of blood glucose self-monitoring in Type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2009;85(2):183–8.
14. The T1D Exchange Data Set. www.t1dexchange.org. Queried 21 Sept 16.
15. Frankum S, Ogden J. Estimation of blood glucose levels by people with diabetes: a cross-sectional study. Br J Gen Pract. 2005;55(521):944–8.
16. Bolus on Board. http://www.diabetesnet.com/diabetes-control/rules-control/bolus-board. Accessed 24 Sept 2016.
17. Geddes J, Schopman JE, Zammitt NN, Frier BM. Prevalence of impaired awareness of hypoglycaemia in adults with Type 1 diabetes. Diabet Med. 2008;25(4):501–4.
18. Welschen LMC, Bloemendal E, Nijpels G, Dekker JM, Heine RJ, Stalman WAB, Bouter LM (for the Cochrane Group). Self-monitoring of blood glucose in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus who are not using insulin (Review). The Cochrane Library. 2009(1):1–30.
19. Training, Research and Education for Nurses in Diabetes, UK. Blood glucose monitoring guidelines. http://www.trend-uk.org/documents/TREND_BG_Consensus_May_Final_HIGHRES.pdf. Accessed 27 Sept 2016.
20. Harris MI. Frequency of blood glucose monitoring in relation to glycemic control in patients with Type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2001;24(6):979–82.
21. American Diabetes Association (ADA)/American Geriatrics Society (AGS) Consensus Report on Diabetes in Older Adults

2012. http://www.ndei.org/ADA-AGS-diabetes-older-adults-2012.aspx.html. Accessed 27 Sept 2016.
22. Kramer CK, Choi H, Zinman B, Retnakaran R. Glycemic variability in patients with early type 2 diabetes: the impact of improvement in beta-cell function. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(4):1116–23.
23. Breton MD, Kovatchev BP. Impact of blood glucose self-monitoring errors on glucose variability, risk for hypoglycemia, and average glucose control in type 1 diabetes: an *In Silico* study. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2010;4(3):562–70.
24. Sutter Medical Foundation. Type 2 diabetes adult outpatient insulin guidelines. http://www.srfmr.org/uploads/provider_resource/1331853259-8b5d35db700e0a8b9/Outpatient%20Insulin%20Guidelines%202.17.2011.pdf. Accessed 27 Sept 2016.
25. Polonsky WH, Fisher L, Schikman CH, Hinnen DA, Parkin CG, Jelsovsky Z, Petersen B, Schweitzer M, Wagner RS. Structured self-monitoring of blood glucose significantly reduces A1C levels in poorly controlled, noninsulin-treated type 2 diabetes: results from the Structured Testing Program study. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(2):262–7. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc10-1732.
26. Zammitt NN, Frie SM. Hypoglycemia in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(12):2948–61.
27. Henderson JN, Allen KV, Deary IJ, Frier BM. Hypoglycaemia in insulin-treated type 2 diabetes: frequency, symptoms and impaired awareness. Diabet Med. 2003;20:1016–21.
28. Gurlek A, Erbas T, Gedik O. Frequency of severe hypoglycaemia in type 1 and type 2 diabetes during conventional insulin therapy. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes. 1999;107:220–4.
29. The American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists. AACE/ACE comprehensive type 2 diabetes management algorithm 2016. Endocr Pract. 2016;22:84–113.
30. Ginsberg BH. Factors affecting blood glucose monitoring: sources of errors in measurement. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2009;3(4):903–13.
31. Ginsberg BH. An analysis: to code or not to code—that is the question. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2008;2(5):819–21.
32. Ginsberg BH. Practical use of self-monitoring of blood glucose data. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2013;7(2):532–41.
33. Zimmet P, Lang A, Mazze RS, Endersbee R. Computer-based patient monitoring systems. Use in research and clinical practice. Diabetes Care. 1988;11(Suppl 1):62–6.
34. Schaefer A. The best diabetes apps of 2016. http://www.healthline.com/health/diabetes/top-iphone-android-apps. Accessed 4 Oct 2016.
35. Smith J. Best diabetes apps of 2016. http://www.gottabemobile.com/2016/08/26/best-diabetes-apps/. Accessed 4 Oct 2016.
36. UF Diabetes Institute. Diabetes Tracker Apps. http://diabetes.ufl.edu/patient-care/my-diabetes/diabetes-resources/diabetes-apps/ Accessed 4 Oct 2016.
37. AppCrawlr. Best iOS apps for insulin calculator. http://appcrawlr.com/ios-apps/best-apps-insulin-calculator. Accessed 8 Oct 2016.
38. Huckvale K, Adomaviciute S, Prieto JT, Leow MKS, Car J. Smartphone apps for calculating insulin dose: a systematic assessment. BMC Med. 2015;13:106.
39. Eng DS, Lee JM. Mobile health applications for diabetes and endocrinology: promise and peril. Pediatr Diabetes. 2013;14(4):231. 10.1111.
40. MDDI. 8 FDA-blessed wearables and apps changing healthcare – BlueStar. http://www.mddionline.com/article/8-FDA-blessed-wearables-apps-changing-healthcare-bluestar. Accessed 8 Oct 2016.

Further Reading

History of BGM: American Chemical Society. Al and Helen Free and the development of diagnostic test strips. http://www.acs.org/content/acs/en/education/whatischemistry/landmarks/diagnostictest-strips.html. 8 April 2016. Accessed 1 Sept 2016.

Mazze RS, Shamoon H, Pasmantier R, Lucido D, Murphy J, Hartmann K, Kuykendall V, Lopatin W. Reliability of blood glucose monitoring by patients with diabetes mellitus. Am J Med. 1984;77(2):211–7.

McCullough Dk. Patient education: self-blood glucose monitoring in diabetes mellitus (Beyond the Basics). http://www.uptodate.com/contents/self-blood-glucose-monitoring-in-diabetes-mellitus-beyond-the-basics.

Welschen LMC, Bloemendal E, Nijpels G, Dekker JM, Heine RJ, Stalman WAB, Bouter LM (for the Cochrane Group). Self-monitoring of blood glucose in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus who are not using insulin (Review). The Cochrane Library. 2009;(1):1–30.

28

Continuous Glucose Monitoring in Clinical Practice: Ambulatory Glucose Profile and the Application of Advanced Glucose Sensing Technologies to Clinical Decision-Making

Roger S. Mazze

Previous studies of subjects with normal glucose metabolism (at various ages and at risk for all forms of diabetes) have shown that normal glucose tolerance is characterized by glucose levels within a very narrow range (4–7 mmol/L) and in pregnancy by an even narrower range (3–6 mmol/L). Furthermore, it has been demonstrated that any period of hyperglycemia may be consequential, leading to macro- and microvascular disease as well as accelerated and exaggerated fetal growth in pregnancy [1]. Excessively low glucose may cause brain damage and lead to death. Oscillating glucose levels, alternating between hyper- and hypoglycemia, may be more consequential, fostering oxidative stress and accelerating apoptosis. In fact, glucose variability or oscillation may prove to be more important in terms of risk of complications than hyperglycemia per se. Consequently, it has become increasingly important to measure and manage the volatility or variability in glucose excursions. Therefore, maintenance of glycemic control within a very narrow range becomes paramount in the priorities of diabetes management.

With the advent of CGM, it has become feasible to visualize and potentially manage the diurnal glucose patterns of people with diabetes without confining them to hospitalization in order to detect overnight dysglycemia. It is also possible to characterize diurnal glucose perturbations and to detect the slightest abnormalities in glucose metabolism under conditions of daily living thereby improving the potential to ameliorate them. However, before continuous glucose monitoring could be translated into clinical use, it was subjected to intense scrutiny due to its mechanism of measurement. CGM uses a sensor 5 mm in length placed under the skin in the interstitial fluid. Coated with glucose oxidase, it measures glucose in the interstitial fluid by converting the chemical reaction into electoral current. This "current" is stored in the sensor/transmitter and "sent" (transmitted) wirelessly as an electrical signal to a special receiver. Since the signal between the transmitter and receiver is constant, the receiver must be kept in close proximity, usually within 3 feet of the transmitter. The continuous signal is sent in 1-, 5-, or 10-minute intervals, dependent upon manufacturer. Also manufacturer dependent is the length of time the sensor remains in place—currently up to 7 days. Finally, the receiver can be uploaded to a computer where proprietary software produces a variety of reports.

Because the sensor is placed in the interstitial space, its measurement of glucose differs from a simultaneous measurement of glucose in blood, such as reported by SMBG capillary testing. Interstitial glucose is the result of glucose in the blood stream being transferred into the interstitial fluid (or tissue fluid) via passive diffusion. The interstitial fluid bathes and surrounds all cells. When the volume of glucose in the blood stream (capillary system) is greater than in the interstitial fluid (ISF), the glucose migrates into the ISF. From the interstitial fluid, the glucose moves into the target cells (in insulin-sensitive tissue with the assistance of insulin). Thus, there is a difference between glucose levels found in the blood and the ISF due to the lag time for the passive diffusion. The difference can be conceptualized as time sensitive. If glucose in the blood moved quickly into the ISF, the lag would be an insignificant factor. However, the time lag ranges from 5 to 15 minutes. The difference can be significant if real-time glucose levels were guiding clinical decisions, especially under conditions of rapid change in blood glucose. To mitigate this, CGM device manufacturers use calibration to blood glucose [2]. The patient uses SMBG to

Includes excerpts from Trainer Manual for Teaching and Interpretation of the Ambulatory Glucose Profile (AGP) Using the FreeStyle® Libre Pro Flash Glucose Monitoring System (with permission). Mazze R and Cranston I, AGP Clinical Academy publication 2017, Portsmouth UK

R. S. Mazze (✉)
AGP Clinical Academy, Portsmouth Hospitals NHST, Portsmouth, UK

Nanjing Medical University, Nanjing, China

University of Minnesota Medical School and WHO Collaborating Center, International DIabetes Center and Mayo Clinic, Minneapolis, MN, USA

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_28

obtain the current reading and enters this value into the CGM receiver. The receiver uses a proprietary algorithm to readjust the current CGM reading; consequently, the greater the number of calibrations, the more accurate the CGM reading when compared to SMBG. Thus, current CGM devices require up to four calibrations each day.

The algorithm needs to take into account the time lag and value differences. Because the time lag may be a problem for patients dependent upon real-time blood glucose levels to control insulin administration either by pump to multiple daily injections and because CGM devices sound alarms when glucose levels reach low thresholds, accuracy has become a major issue with regard to routine use of CGM for clinical decisions. Additionally, because calibration values are entered manually and rely on patient skills to obtain the sample and enter the correct value, utilization of CGM for real-time diabetes management has become problematic.

In 2014 a new form of CGM was introduced. Called flash glucose monitoring (FGM), it uses the same chemical glucose oxidase mechanism for glucose measurement as CGM with updated wired enzyme sensors incorporating osmium [3]. Because this sensor technology does not produce as much "drift" as earlier sensors and has a more stable response over time in glucose measurements, it can be calibrated at the time of manufacturing and does not require recalibration by the patient. A second innovation is that the new technology allows the sensor to stay in place for 14 days. In 2018 Dexcom introduced the G6 CGM system with factory calibration and ten-day sensor. By 2019 all major CGM maufacturers included AGP reports in their propriatary software.

How does the factory-calibrated system compare to a patient-calibrated version? When patients simultaneously wore the FGM system with factory calibration and with patient calibration, the difference in glucose values was negligible but favoring the factory-calibrated system [4]. Thus, these innovations when tested against standard CGM (with calibrations by the patient) are more closely correlated to blood glucose measured simultaneously. This is possible because the sensors are calibrated against blood samples in the manufacturing process; consequently, each batch that is produced has the same adjustment to blood glucose. It has been reported that each patient's blood glucose level and interstitial glucose level were different and required ongoing frequent calibrations (essentially SMBG values) to correct for these differences. However, there is an intrinsic problem with SMBG-based calibrations that CGM manufactures overlooked. They made the assumption that patients would accurately, frequently, and correctly calibrate their CGM devices using SMBG meters that were constantly being reassessed for their own accuracy. In practice, however, it was possible that patients skipped SMBG, inaccurately entered calibration values, and used outdated or error-prone SMBG meters. In short, the patient calibrations were subject to more error and greater variability than factory-calibrated sensors. In additional, the wired enzyme technology made for a more stable and consistent measurement, thus reducing the likelihood of sensor-to-sensor variability.

Another significant difference between standard CGM and FGM is how the information (glucose values) is stored, transmitted, and reported. CGM sensors constantly measured glucose and passed electrical signals to the transmitter, which converted the electrical current to a format that could be continuously transmitted to a nearby receiver. The receiver stored the data in a manner that could be uploaded to a computer which, using proprietary software, aggregated the data into a series of reports. Due to the proprietary nature of the software, the reports were not comparable among manufacturers. Some companies accumulated the data in 5-minute intervals, while others used 10-minute intervals. Thus, based on the manufacturer, the graphic displays could have as many as 288 points to produce a 1-day curve.

FGM uses a novel approach to capturing, storing, and reporting glucose data. To understand this best, it is important to know that unlike CGM devices, the FGM receiver (reader) functions to capture sensor data only when the user passes the reader over the sensor, such as when the patient wants to determine how much insulin to take or how a particular meal affected the postprandial glucose level.

Both CGM and the newer FGM are advances on SMBG. Throughout the world, patients are asked to measure glucose by SMBG anywhere from once to multiple times each day. Based on these readings, clinical decisions related to medication adjustments are made by the patient and often by the doctor as well. Taken in isolation these values are often given great clinical value. For example, a single fasting glucose may be used to titrate insulin, determine overnight glucose values, and provide an overall assessment of glycemic control. Similarly, one or two postprandial hyperglycemic values, taken 1 hour after the meal, may lead to a change in diet or medication dose (especially insulin) as would a single hypoglycemic value, which often causes a cascade of events resulting in alterations in medications. Because in most clinical practices patients are seen infrequently, three to four times a year, SMBG values take on even more significance. As based on these data as well as HbA_{1c}, the decision at the clinic may be used to determine the next several months' regimen.

Figure 28.1 depicts this clinical dilemma of using SMBG data to make decisions. Looking at just the SMBG data, a clinician would assume normal fasting and midday postprandial values with evening hyperglycemia. The SMBG provides no indication of overnight hypoglycemia. The consequences for clinical decision-making can be significant. Clearly, the complete diurnal pattern leads to a different interpretation than a single or even multiple SMBG tests. The CGM curve clearly shows that between 4 and 8 AM glu-

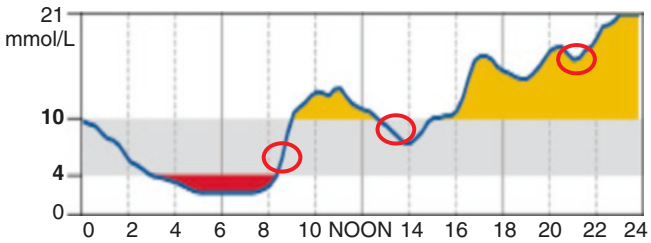


Fig. 28.1 One day of continuous monitoring with circles representing periods of SMBG data. If only the SMBG data are used, then the interpretation would suggest normal fasting glucose (7 mmol/L at 9:00) normal post midday meal glucose (10 mmol/L at 13:00) and significant hyperglycemia in the evening. If the continuous graph were used, it would show overnight hypoglycemia, post breakfast hyperglycemia, and midafternoon to midnight hyperglycemia

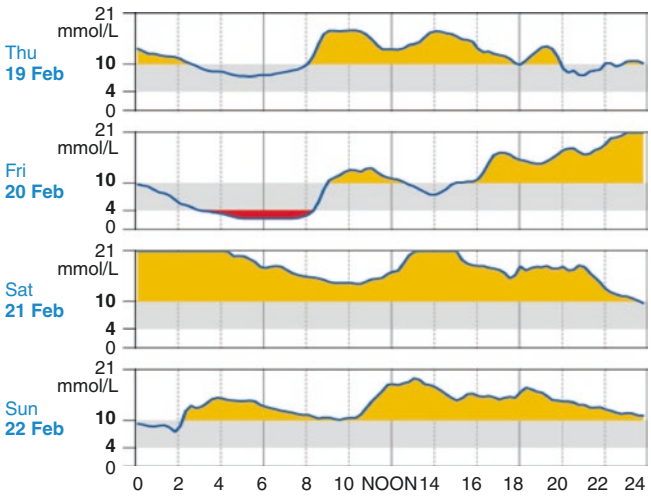


Fig. 28.2 A sequence of 4 days of CGM. In this sequence, while on the first day glucose levels tend to be above the target (gray zone) on the next day there is overnight hypoglycemia, and while on the subsequent 2 days there is almost continuous hyperglycemia

cose dips below 4 mmol/L. Additionally noted in the CGM curve is the degree of instability in glucose level with more than 18 mmol/L difference between nadir and apex.

Figure 28.2 is a sequence of 4 consecutive days using continuous data. The first day's pattern gives no indication of impending overnight hypoglycemia, while the second day's pattern does not suggest the next 2 days of significant hyperglycemia. The first day does not appear to predict the 2 day or the last 2 days in the sequence. The intraday variability is significant, since it suggests that any clinical decision based on these 4 days may be misleading.

Ambulatory glucose profile (AGP): an innovative approach to clinical decision-making using continuous glucose data.

Clearly, as shown in Fig. 28.2, each individual day does not appear to produce an underlying metabolic pattern that characterizes the next day. The curves appear to be unstable, reversing direction several times each day. These changes in direction appear volatile on some days and at other times smooth. This volatility from nadir (between 4:00 and 8:00 to apex (at midnight)) has been associated with *oxidative stress and consequential apoptosis*. Can a clinical decision be made in the face of such volatility? Is there a discernable pattern? The ambulatory glucose profile (AGP) employs the individual glucose values that are collected via CGM and depicts these values as five continuous frequency curves as shown in the top panel of Fig. 28.3 with the 14 days (midday on the first and last days) that comprise the AGP data in the bottom panel.

Looking at the daily graphs, there does not appear to be a clear pattern. However, when the daily graphs are superimposed on one another, a pattern (AGP) emerges. Note that the range of glucose values does not differ throughout the modal day. Also note that the values do not appear to be following a normal distribution about the median (center curve). By plotting the mean, the diurnal glucose pattern would be misrepresented. It would suggest that glucose is normally distributed and that the mean and standard deviation represent both the central tendency and dispersion of glucose values over multiple days. Instead the median is plotted, and the glucose ranges are represented as frequency distributions. In this example, hypoglycemia occurs infrequently, between 20:00 and 24:00 hours on February 19th. This is depicted on the AGP by the inter-decile range curve as dipping into the hypoglycemic range in the diurnal pattern between 20:00 and 24:00 hours. This would suggest that the risk of hypoglycemia is less than 10% between those hours.

Shown on Fig. 28.4 is the same AGP in Fig. 28.3 with each of the five frequency curves labeled. As illustrated in the AGP, the five curves depict the glucose dispersion. From top to bottom, they are 90th percentile, 75th percentile, 50th percentile (median), 25th percentile, and tenth percentile. The area between the 25th and 75th percentile is known as the inter-quartile range (IQR). Fifty percent of all values at each time period fall within this range. As shown in Fig. 28.4, at midday the inter-quartile range is 3 mmol/L (the difference between 9 and 12 mmol/L), while at midnight the IQR widens to 4 mmol/L. While the IQR is one measure of *glucose variability*, a second measure, the inter-decile range (IDR) represents the difference between the tenth and 90th percentile curves. Eighty percent of all values fall between these curves. As both the IQR and IDR narrow, the certainty of where the values will fall improves. In Fig. 28.4, between midday and 16:00 hours, the glucose ranges (or variability) are narrowest, while between 20:00 and 24:00 hours, they are widest. The five curves that comprise the AGP "force" the eye to see the overall pattern lessening the interpretive significance of outlier values. The curves provide insight into the daily perturbations in glucose metabolism that characterizes diabetes.

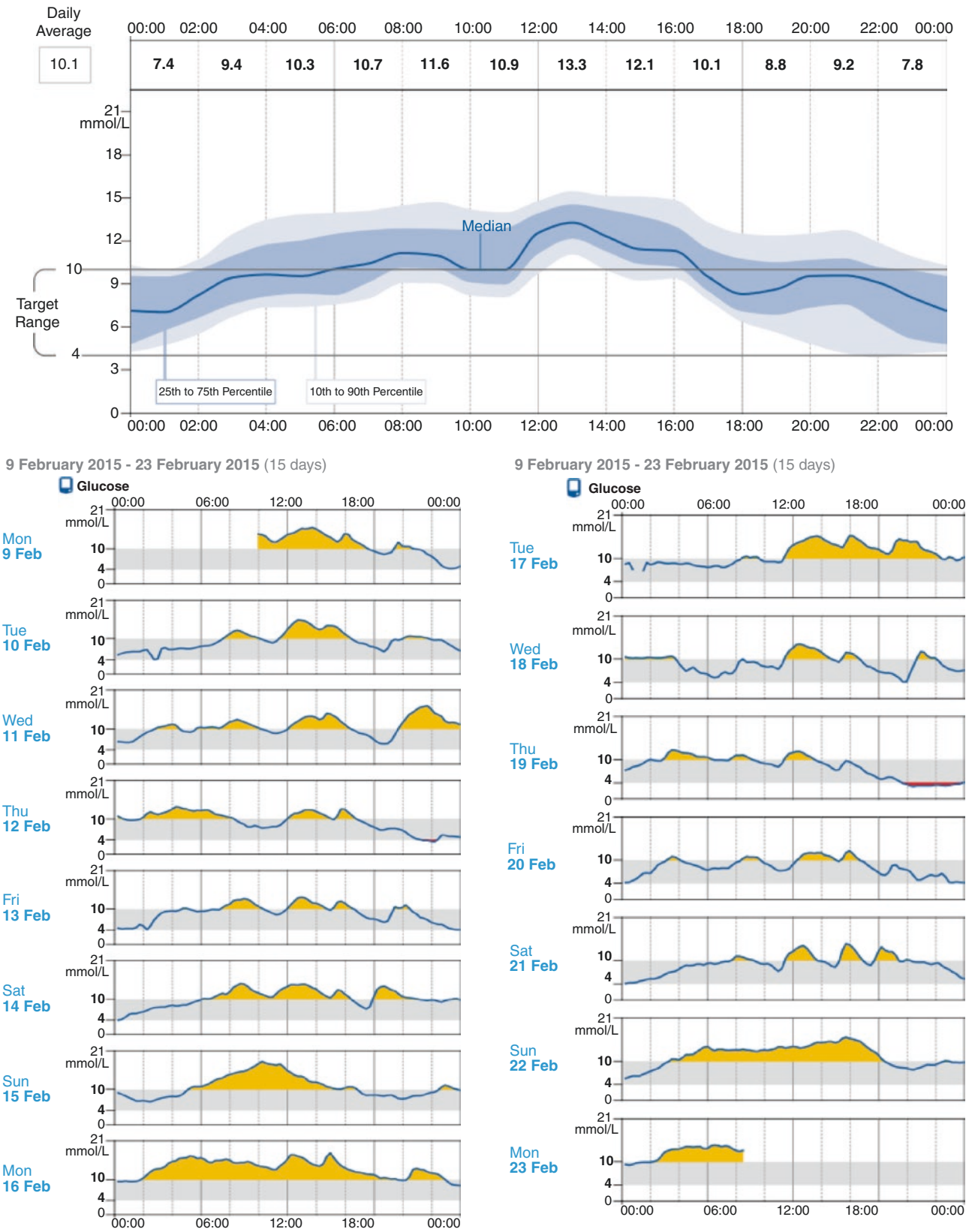


Fig. 28.3 AGP and the 14 days it represent. The top panel is an AGP which is comprised of the 14 days of data collected using CGM. The AGP disregards the dates and plots all values according to time of day. The AGP reflects the overall glucose exposure, variability, and stability for the time period. The light gray zone represents the inter-decile range, the dark gray the inter-quartile range, and the dark single center cure represents the median. The underlying pattern shows a rise in glucose throughout the day time hours with a descent beginning at 2 PM and continuing into the evening. Overnight glucose appears to rise beginning at midnight and continues through early morning

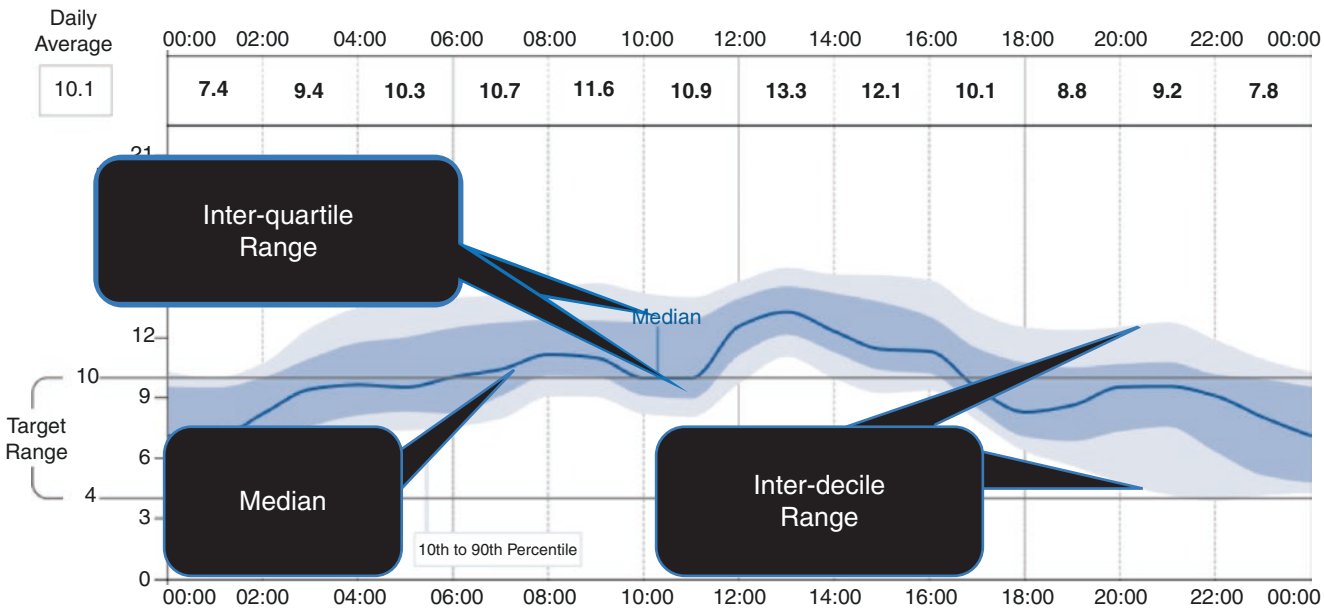


Fig. 28.4 An AGP showing its key components. The AGP, comprised of five frequency distribution curves marked here by the callouts depict the glucose exposure and variability over the 14 days represented in this diurnal pattern

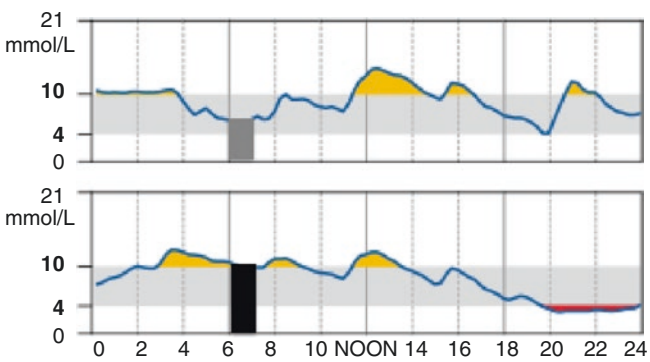


Fig. 28.5 Daily profiles showing the area under the curve between 6:00 and 7:00. The two rectangles represent the area under the curve between the time periods. They are measured as height in glucose and time in hours

In order to assure clinical significance, the AGP must characterize more than glucose variability. Glucose exposure and stability are additional important characteristics of overall glycemia control. Glucose exposure is measured by the area under the time curve (AUC) and is time-dependent. The question that needs to be answered is "How much glucose is the individual exposed to over a typical or modal 24 hour period?" More specifically, "how much *excess* glucose exposure is the individual subjected to, as that constitutes the injurious exposure?" In contrast, glucose stability is a relatively new concept related to the degree of change from moment-to-moment the individual with diabetes is experiencing. Together, these two characteristics aid in the interpretation of the diurnal glucose pattern.

Shown in Fig. 28.5 are two daily profiles for which the area under the curve is measured (using a "modified" trapezoidal method) by segmenting the daily profile into 24 hourly segments. Between 6:00 and 7:00 area under the top panel is 6 mmol/L/hour versus 10 mmol/L/hour for the next day shown in the lower panel. This is repeated for each hour of each day. In terms of the 14 days that comprise the standard AGP, the best representation of these data is the median of the AGP for the time period under examination. Thus, *glucose exposure* is measured by segmenting the AGP median curve into 24 equal parts each representing 1 hour (along the *x*-axis) and the height of the curve (hourly median) as the *y*-axis glucose level. Area under the curve (Fig. 28.6) is therefore: $\mathrm{AUC} = \sum_{i=0}^{24} P_{50_i}$ where i = hour of the day and P_{50i} = the smoothed 50th percentile value for the ith hour of the day. The value is displayed as mmol/L*24 hour.

Normalization of AUC is calculated by dividing the total by the number of hours for the time period (e.g., for a 24 hour period, the total would be divided by 24). To measure glucose exposure over a specific time period, the area under that part of the curve is measured. In this example, the overall exposure is 244 mmol/L*24 hour. Normalized it would be 10.2 mmol/L/hour.

To measure excess glucose exposure, the criteria is set to the median target (6 mmol/L); the targeted 24-hour exposure would therefore be 144 mmol/L*24 hours. The excess exposure is therefore 100 mmol/L*24 hours (normalized to 4.2 mmol/L/hour).

Since the visual evidence shows that a single day does not appear to predict the same diurnal pattern on subsequent days,

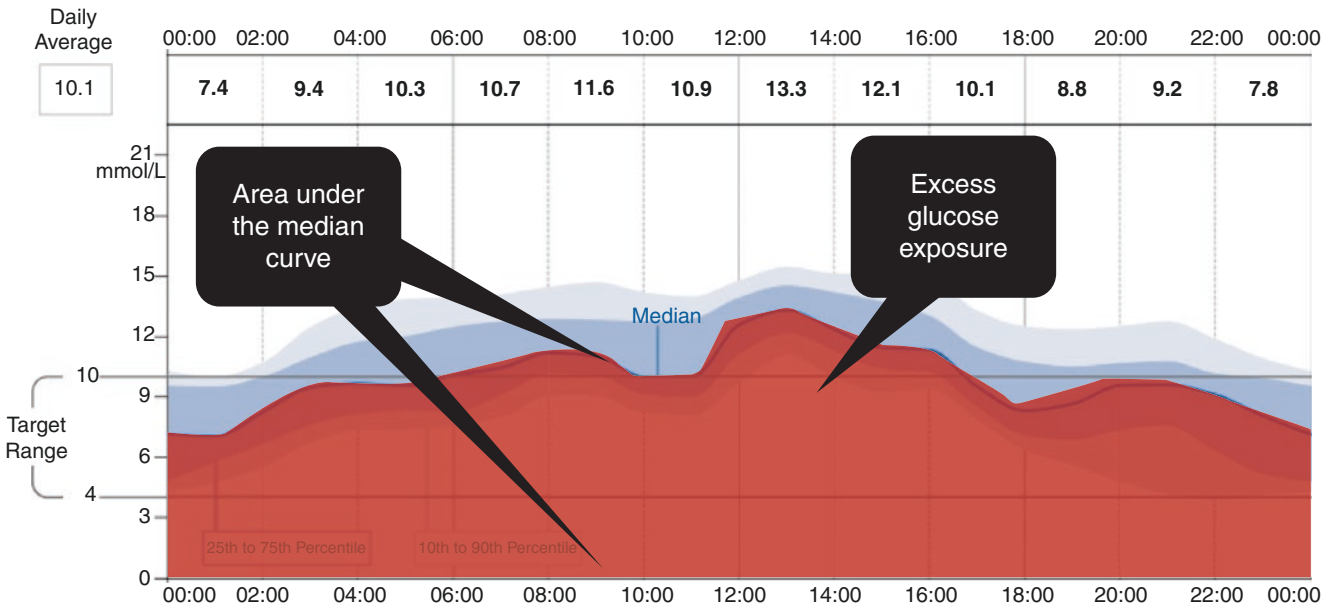


Fig. 28.6 Depiction of glucose exposure as measured by the AUC and excess exposure. Glucose exposure is shown as the darkened area under the median curve. The excess area is shown as the area above 6 mmol/L

what number of days would be required? A major multicenter trial studying this question in 185 subjects with type 1 and type 2 diabetes showed that 14 days of CGM data predicts the pattern for the next 90 days assuming there is no substantial change in treatment [4]. They found that for 3 days of sampling, the r^2 value ranged from 0.32 to 0.47 when considering "…mean glucose, percentage of values 71–180 mg/dL, percentage of values >180 mg/dL, percentage of values ≤70 mg/dL, and coefficient of variation; in contrast, for 13–15 days of sampling, the r^2 values ranged from 0.66 to 0.75. The results were similar when the analysis intervals were stratified by age group (8–14, 15–24, and ≥25 years), by baseline hemoglobin A_{1c} level (<7.0% vs. ≥7.0%), and by CGM device type." Based on these data, they concluded that "a 12–15 day period of monitoring every 3 months may be needed to optimally assess overall glucose control." Thus, it appears that the minimum amount of days of monitoring to predict exposure, variability, and stability for up to the subsequent 90 days is 14 days.

Our own studies have shown that AUC is statistically equivalent to the average of the total daily glucose exposure of the 14 days and thus is the "best fit" representative of the overall glucose exposure that characterizes the period under investigation [3]. Similarly, any time period under the median is a "best" representation of the glucose exposure for that period. To determine the prandial/postprandial glucose exposure, the hourly medians are summed. To determine overnight glucose exposure, the sleeping period is noted, and the AUC for that period is calculated.

Glucose stability is a measure of the moment-to-moment change in the glucose level as depicted on the AGP median curve. It is calculated by segmenting the median into hourly periods. Next, the absolute difference between the hourly values is calculated, summed, and divided by 24. The result is the average hourly change in the median. Reported as mmol/L/hour, it provides an indication of the level of stability in glycemic control.

While exposure, variability, and stability characterize overall glycemic control, hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia characterize specific clinical events. The visual examination of an AGP to detect these two dysglycemic states is dependent upon the clinical criteria established by the clinician. In the examples already presented, below 4 mmol/L is generally used to define hypoglycemia and above 10 mmol/L for hyperglycemia. These are arbitrary, and in practice individual factors should be taken into consideration such as age, duration of diabetes, treatment modality, hypoglycemia unawareness, patient goals, and long-term complications. Nevertheless, the AGP allows for quick detection of these two dysglycemic states. In Fig. 28.7 both states are readily discernible. This subject, with an HbA_{1c} of 6.4%, spent 48% of his time within target with 26% in hypoglycemic and 26% in hyperglycemia. As can also be seen, the patient's overall control shows significant oscillation in the median curve indicative of poor glucose stability. However, overall exposure was 168 mmol/L*24 hours or less than 30 mmol/L*24 hours excess exposure. The questions remain as to whether this profile is sufficient to prevent or reduce the risk of complications.

In 2008 we undertook the first study employing CGM technology with AGP analysis to characterize glycemic control in individuals with normal glucose metabolism [5]. Initially, 62 subjects (32 with normal glucose tolerance and 30 with diabetes) participated employing CGM for 30 days. Prior to the study and following the study, HbA_{1c} was measured as well as insulin levels. HOMA was also

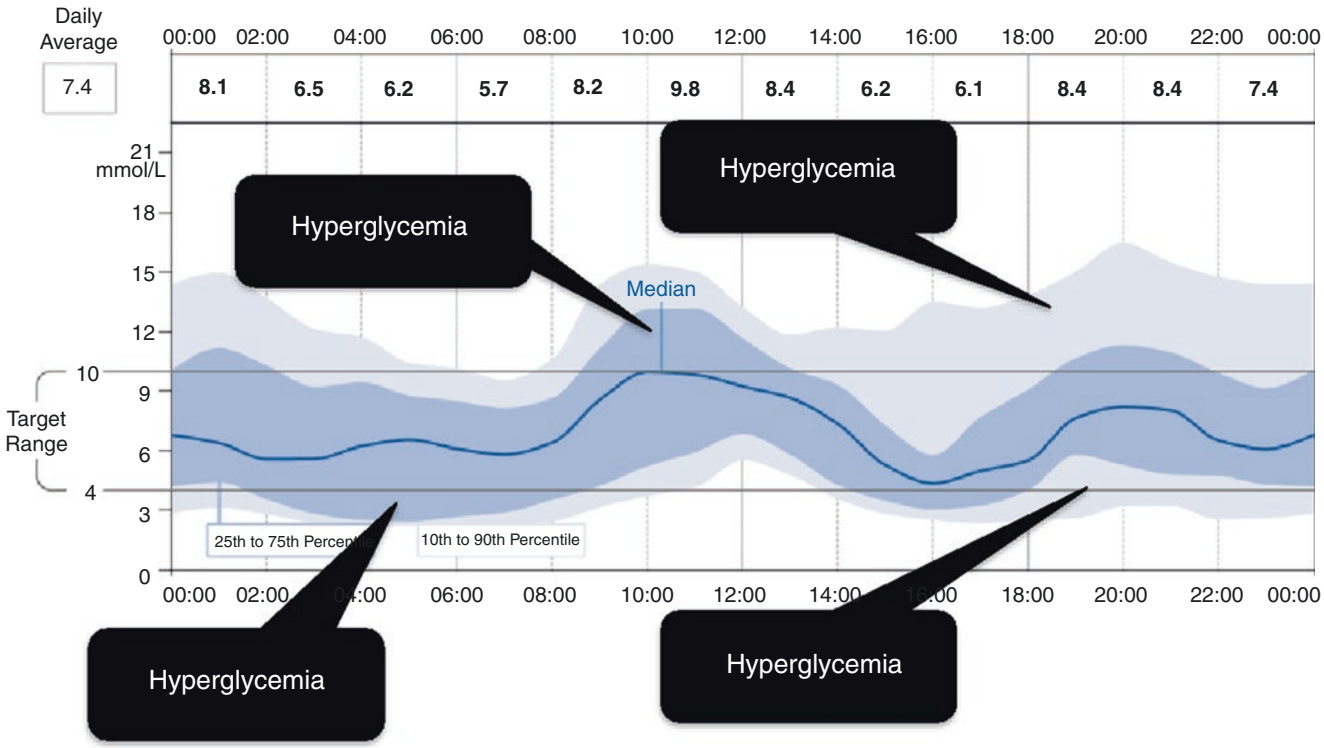


Fig. 28.7 AGP with hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. The target was set at between 4 and 10 mmol/L. The periods marked with the callouts indicate patterns of dysglycemia. The frequency can be determined by the color of the shaded areas. The first hypoglycemic period denoted by dark shading suggests a risk of between 25 and 50% of the time, while the second period suggests less than 25% of the time there will be hypoglycemic episodes. Similarly, the first major period of hyperglycemia between 8:00 and 12:00 has a 50% risk, while after 12:00 the risk drops to less than 25%

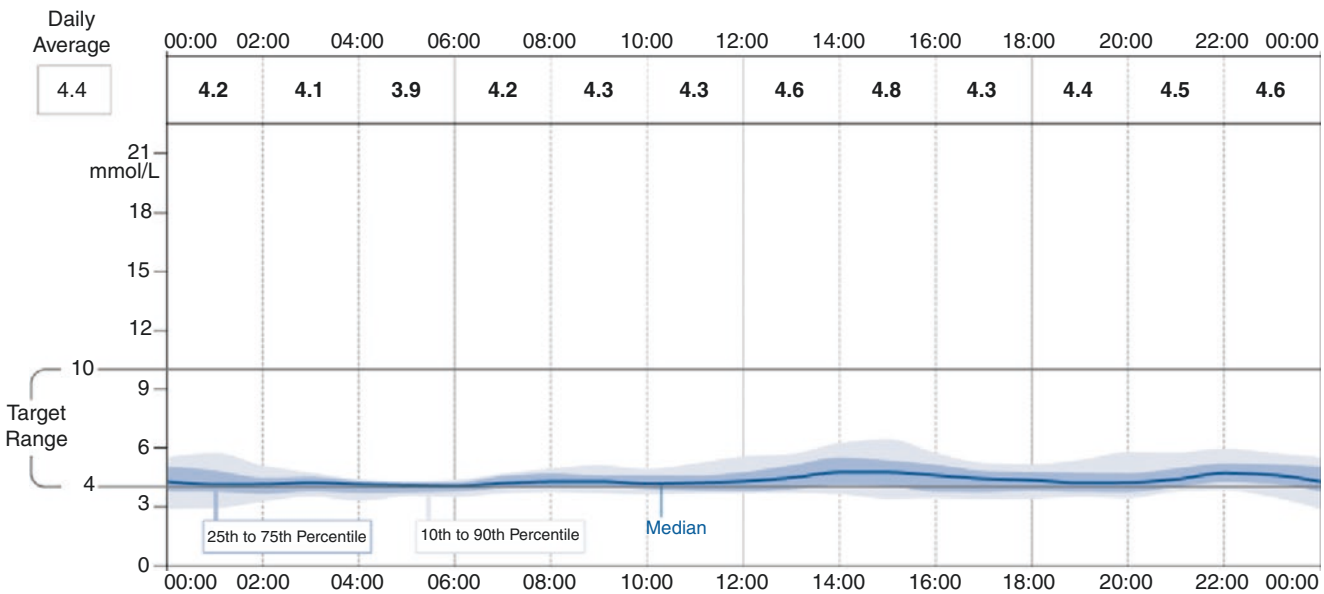


Fig. 28.8 AGP of a subject with normal glucose metabolism. This is the typical profile of a person without diabetes. Note that, glucose variability is between 1 and 2 mmol/L, postprandial rises are minimal, and hypoglycemia is present

completed at initiation to assure that the subjects with normal glucose metabolism had normal insulin resistance. The results (Fig. 28.8), since replicated in more than 250 individuals with normal glucose metabolism who monitored glucose continuously for between 5 and 30 days, give ample evidence that individuals with normal glucose tolerance

share several important AGP characteristics: (1) stable glucose levels, (2) minimal variability, and (3) <4% of values within the hypoglycemic range. It has been almost axiomatic that normal glucose levels are 5.6 mmol/L and that they range from 4 to 8 mmol/L; and, only under rare metabolic stress are these barriers broken. Interestingly, only since the advent of CGM has it been possible to provide a characteristically "normal" diurnal glucose pattern.

If the AGP of an individual with normal glucose tolerance has such tight parameters, what does this suggest about the goals of diabetes management? Have the treatment goals, which rely heavily on normalization of HbA_{1c}, been misleading? Should emphasis be placed on reduction of glucose variability and improved stability rather than primarily on glucose exposure? If so, how can this be accomplished?

When individuals with normal glucose tolerance are compared to individuals with diabetes, among the most salient findings for people without diabetes are (1) hypoglycemia ranges up to 4% in "normal" subjects; (2) glucose exposure remains within a 27 mmol/L*24 hours range between the low and high ends of normal; (3) IQR remains in a narrow range (<2 mmol/L); and change in glucose (glucose stability) hovers at 1–2 mmol/L/hour which is generally two-thirds more stable than subjects with diabetes.

AGP in Clinical Care

Continuous monitoring should provide a physiologic framework for clinical decision-making in three general areas: (1) detection of the underlying dysglycemia; (2) selection of the most efficacious therapy and guiding adjustments; and (3) measuring treatment effectiveness. How can it be assured that normal glycemia is achieved?

For the AGP to be an effective tool in practice, it must be applied in a systematic manner following the principles of evidence-based medicine. Essentially it must identify (diagnose) the problem, lead to clinical decisions (find a response), and attest that the response is effective (evaluate clinical outcomes). In this section, flash glucose monitoring (FGM) is used to illustrate how systematic analysis of AGPs provides a rational approach to clinical decision-making. The patient can retrieve glucose levels by passing a receiver over the sensor that is worn on the arm (Libre FGM System, Abbott Diabetes Care, Alameda, CA). The sensor lasts 2 weeks and does not require self-calibration; it stores up to 8 hours of readings at 15-minute intervals. The receiver stores up to 90 days of data and transmits its results to a PC. The AGP is automatically produced when the data are downloaded to a PC or Mac.

The initial or reference AGP serves to provide an overall depiction of the diurnal glucose pattern and as such has two principal functions: (1) to provide a baseline "measure" against which all future AGPs will be measured and (2) to provide a framework for analysis in which problems can be identified and addressed in systematic manner. Figure 28.9 is the AGP of a person with type 1 diabetes treated by CSII. It represents the first 2 weeks of wearing the FGM sensor. As a baseline measure, it requires a narrative description. The description addresses four primary characteristics: glucose exposure, variability, stability, and hypoglycemia. As descriptors, it adds a quantitative element (reported through the software or interpolated from the graphics) to each dimension. For

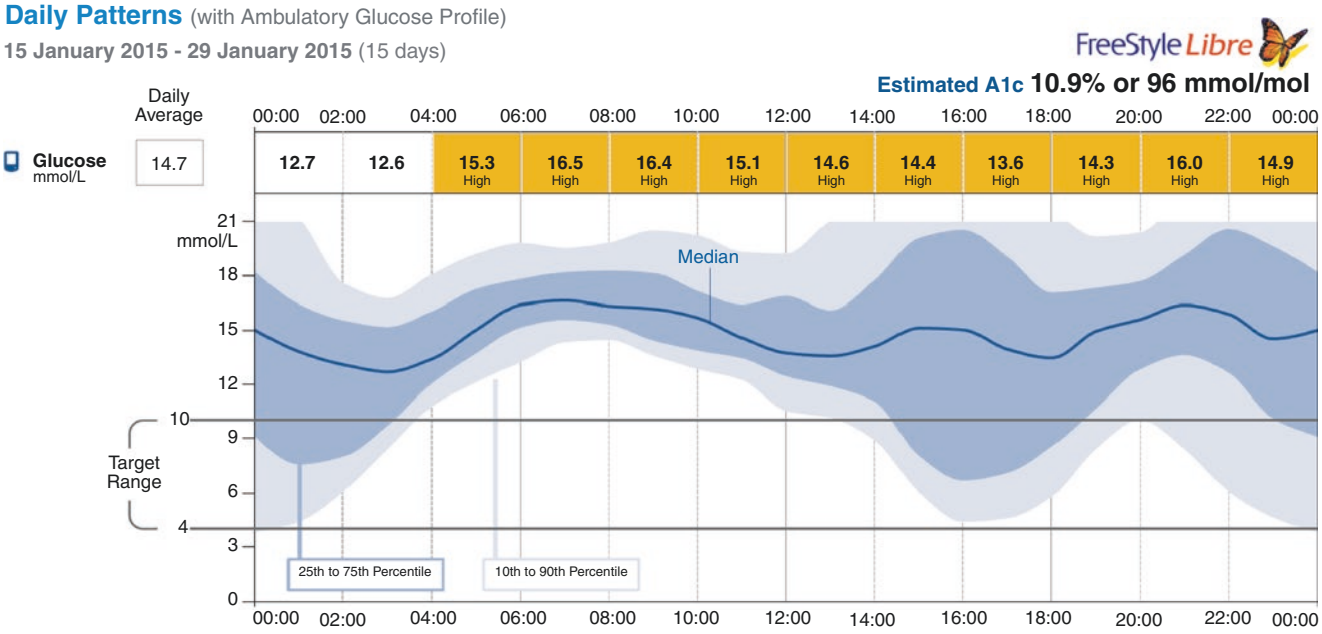


Fig. 28.9 AGP of a subject with type 1 diabetes. The boxed number on the top of the AGP is the values of the median reported in 2-hour intervals. The shaded boxes indicate that the criteria for "high" was set at 14 mmol/L. The target was set at 4–10 mmol/L. The glucose variability shown as IQR (the dark shaded area) and IDR (the lightly shaded area) range from 3 to 18 mmol/L

example, the overall glucose exposure is 320 mmol/L*24 hours which is 152 mmol/L*24 hours in excess of normal glucose levels. IQR and IDR are 66 mmol/L and 72 mmol/L, respectively. The glucose stability, or change in the median curve, averages at 11.5 mmol/L/hour. This can be seen by visual inspection; the median curve does not experience large swings. There appears to be virtually no hypoglycemia.

As a framework for analysis, the same four components take on a different meaning. They become clues as to the nature of the underlying problems causing the dysglycemia. For this dimension of analysis, it is important to segment the AGP into eight time periods: overnight, fasting, post-breakfast, pre-midday meal, post-midday meal, pre-evening meal, post-evening meal, and bedtime. Some of these periods can be reduced when they overlap. Examining the AGP from this perspective while addressing exposure, variability, stability, and hypoglycemia makes for a comprehensive analysis. For example, while we already know that excess glucose exposure is high, we need to know when this occurs. In this case it is throughout the day and overnight. Next, where is glucose variability the widest? Examination suggests 0:00–2:00, 14:00–18:00, and 22:00–24:00. Closer examination reveals that the IDC is widest in the evening and overnight. It also appears that glucose stability and hypoglycemia are not problems. The explanation for much of what is seen lies with the patient. However, before we turn to the patient's information, what conclusions can already be drawn? Without examining the HbA_{1c}, it is already apparent that the patient experiences significant and persistent hyperglycemia, suggesting that insufficient insulin is being delivered. Examining the variability suggests that the glucose levels throughout the night and late in the day are unpredictable from day to day (examining daily profiles would corroborate this). From waking to midafternoon, while the glucose is high, it remains stable and experiences narrow variability. This suggests a more predictable set of behaviors in terms of insulin administration, diet, and exercise. In contrast, the rest of the day and overnight, the patient seems to alter behavior and insulin dose leading to wide variability. A discussion with the patient confirmed that the patient changed meal content and insulin dosing most in the late afternoon and evening as meal timing and content was unpredictable. In contrast, the patient had the same breakfast each day and did not need to adjust the basal or bolus insulin settings.

The multiple issues found in the first AGP can be addressed systematically. First and foremost, is the patient in any imminent danger, especially from hypoglycemia? In this case the answer appears to be a resounding no. However, if one examines the three periods when the IDR dips into the near hypoglycemic range, it suggests that adding insulin throughout the day and overnight is not the initial solution. Therefore, the variability needs to be reduced first, after which the excess glucose exposure can be addressed. How is this accomplished? Since variability is primarily influenced by insulin administration and diet, these two variables must be attended to first. Limiting the number of basal and bolus settings, fixing the dietary intake to be more consistent and educating the patient concerning carbohydrate/insulin ratios are methods of stabilizing behavior.

In the sequence of AGPs shown in Fig. 28.10, the effect of a systematic analysis followed by targeted interventions is

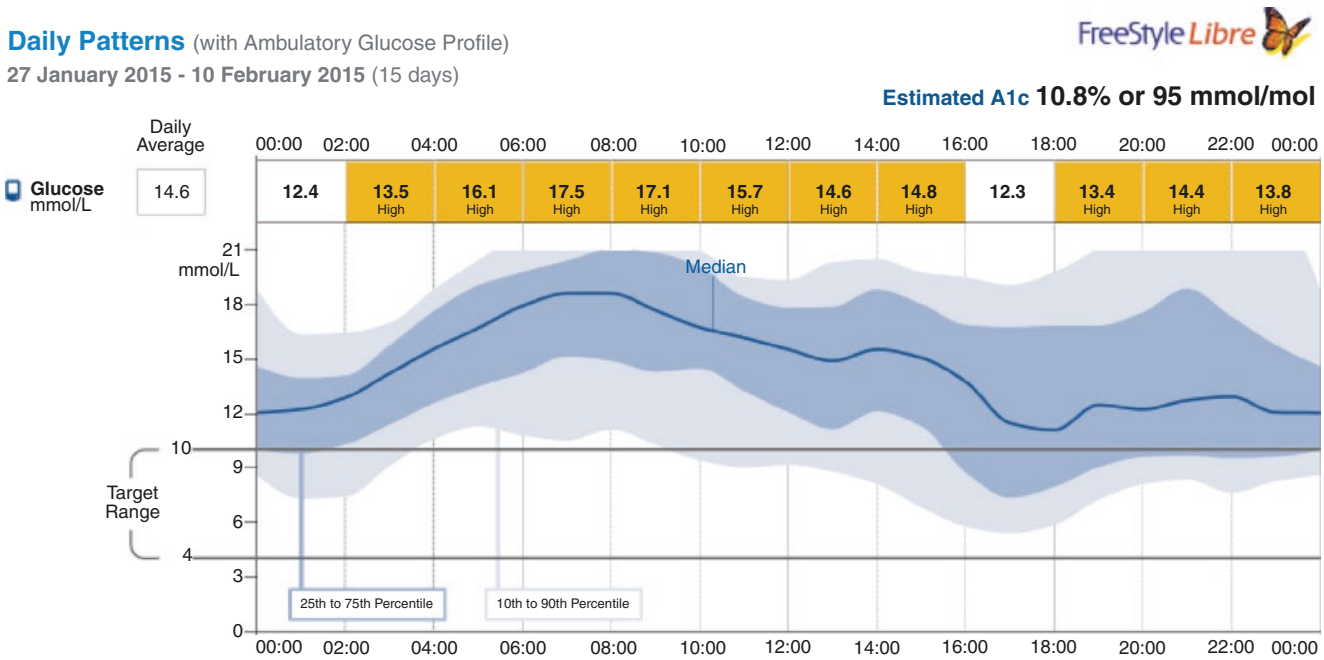


Fig. 28.10 Sequence of AGPs following intervention. The three AGPs are dated showing the impact of treatment over a 4-month period. Note on top of each AGP is the median glucose level for each 2-hour interval. In the first 10 of 12, values were in the high range. In the final AGP, none of the values reached this range. Glucose variability also reduced as did overall glucose exposure. Note that glucose stability was unaffected, and there was no increased risk of hypoglycemia. HbA_{1c} reduced by 2.5 percentage points paralleling reduction in mean and median glucose levels

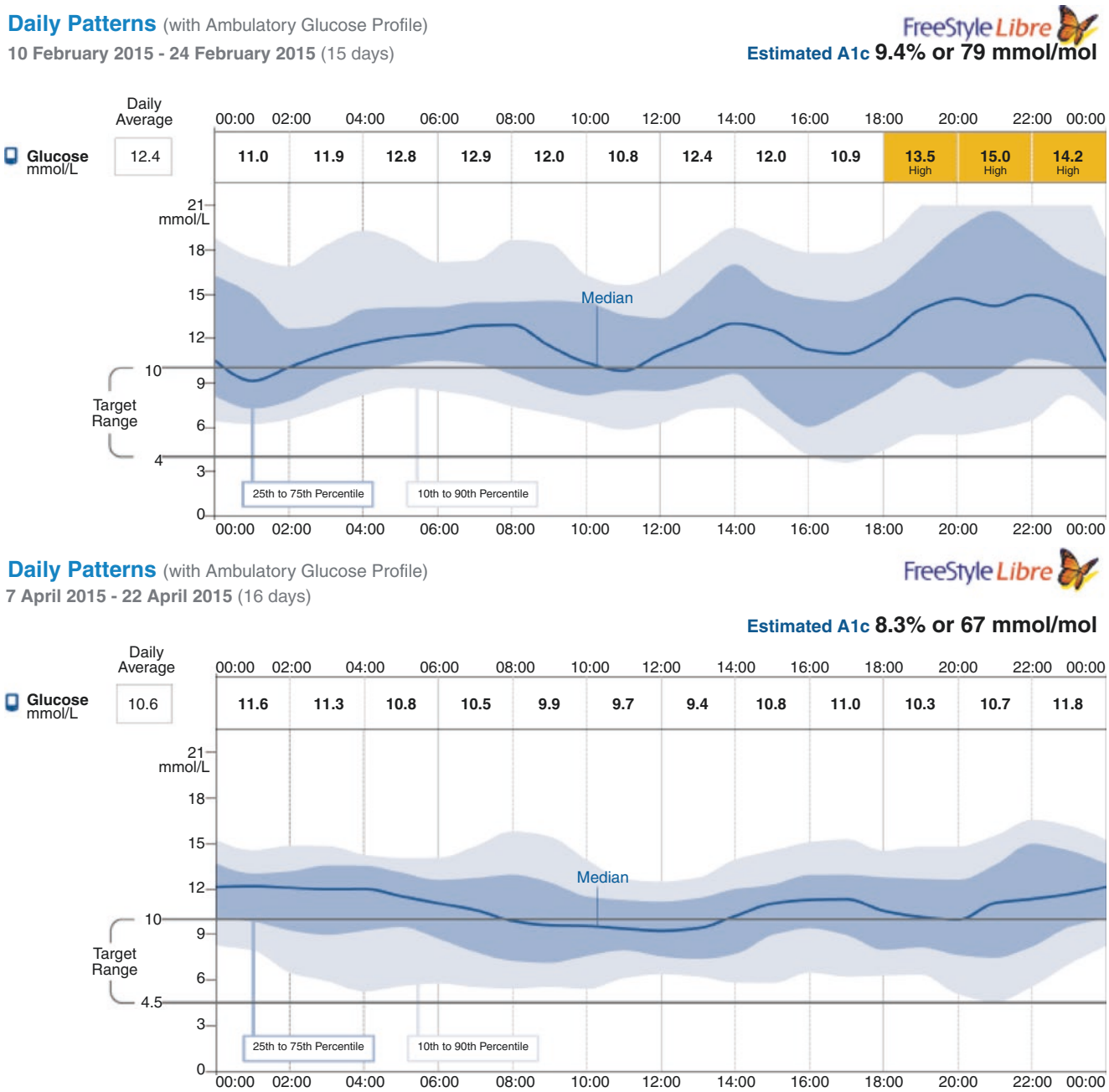


Fig. 28.10 (continued)

shown. The first step was to reduce the variability by stabilizing the diet and reducing the need to adjust insulin infusion rates by improving the calculation of the insulin/carbohydrate ratio. Note that the variability is narrowed, but the HbA_{1c} remained unchanged. The second step was to increase the basal insulin while further improving the insulin/carbohydrate ratio. The final step, once the variability was addressed, was to increase the basal insulin and further adjust the bolus insulin. Note the improvement in the final AGP produced 4 months after the initial FGM.

The advent of continuous glucose monitoring nearly 20 years ago and its continued improvement have led to more efficient and long-lasting sensors reducing a major obstacle to CGM use. Despite these advances, there is one more obstacle to overcome. The translation of this technology into practice requires a standardization of the manner in which the data are reported combined with a systematic approach to their interpretation. Ceriello, in his study of glucose variability and after reviewing AGPs of subject with normal glucose metabolism, wrote "In people with normal

glucose tolerance, blood glucose is maintained in a very narrow range of 3.8–7.7 mmol/L. One can argue that, if the human body spends so much energy to maintain blood glucose levels within such a narrow range, it is because otherwise it would be detrimental" [6]. In the series of AGPs included in the article to which he was referring, it was shown that normal glucose tolerance was a balanced state in which various physiological mechanisms worked to prevent oscillations in glucose in order to maintain gluco-homeostasis [6]. The article brought forth the notion that without a graphic display of the diurnal glucose pattern, it is not possible to visualize the disruptive nature of dysglycemia. As shown throughout this chapter, when compared to the "normal state," individuals with diabetes experience wide variation in diurnal glucose patterns that without CGM could not be detected.

The AGP provides a standard approach to both a graphic and quantitative representation of CGM and FGM data. It allows for systematic analysis and interpretation. Visualization of dysglycemia, combined with measurement of glucose exposure, variability, stability, and hypoglycemia, presents a basis for standardization. AGP intervention, focusing on reducing the risk of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia through initial lessening of glucose variability and improvement in stability followed by lowering excess glucose exposure, provides a framework for clinical decision-making.

Management of diabetes often allows a willingness to permit clinical inertia, rather than seek improvement, in part due to the daunting task of finding an effective therapy. While an HbA_{1c} greater than 9% might alarm the practicing clinician, one less than 7% might be reason to be satisfied with treatment in the absence of an AGP. From its inception CGM with AGP analysis had an underlying purpose, to compel the physician (and patient) to take action. The AGP causes us to examine diurnal patterns suspecting that hidden behind an HbA_{1c} of 7% might be noteworthy hypoglycemia and significant hyperglycemia, as well as considerable variability and instability; all of which are disruptive factors associated with decreased quality of life and increased risk of acute and long-term complications.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Individuals with any degree of dysglycemia are at a higher risk of glucose-related macrovascular, microvascular, maternal, and fetal complications when compared to individuals with normal glucose metabolism.
   (a) True
   (b) False
2. A feasible method to visualize and potentially manage diurnal glucose patterns of people with diabetes without confining them to hospitalization in order to detect overnight dysglycemia.
   (a) Continuous glucose monitoring
   (b) Fasting blood glucose in plasma
   (c) Capillary monitoring of blood glucose
   (d) Postprandial blood glucose
   (e) None of the above
3. Oscillating glucose levels, alternating between hyper- and hypoglycemia, are indicative of:
   (a) Ineffectiveness of drug treatment
   (b) Oxidative stress and apoptosis.
   (c) The effect of counter-regulatory hormones
   (d) The expected response of people with diabetes
   (e) All of the above
4. Continuous glucose monitoring has become feasible:
   (a) To reinforce diabetes management in the hospital
   (b) To visualize and manage glucose patterns at intensive care units
   (c) To detect the slightest abnormalities of glucose metabolism in daily living
   (d) To adequately treat hyperglycemic crises
   (e) To reduce the burden of diabetic complications
5. Continuous glucose measurement:
   (a) Uses a 10 cm sensor intravenously placed
   (b) Uses a 1 mm sensor placed on a patch on the skin
   (c) Uses a 5 mm sensor placed in the intraperitoneal compartment
   (d) Uses a 5 mm sensor placed under the skin in the interstitial fluid
   (e) Is noninvasive
6. Flash glucose monitoring (FGM) uses the same chemical glucose oxidase mechanism for glucose measurement as CGM with updated wired enzyme sensors incorporating osmium.
   (a) True
   (b) False
7. Simultaneous measurement of glucose in blood is important.
   (a) Because these readings are helpful to make clinical decisions related to medication adjustments by patients and often by the doctor as well
   (b) To identify which method is more accurate
   (c) To maintain patients' compliance
   (d) To confirm the ineffectiveness of self-monitoring of glucose
   (e) To detect and treat promptly emergencies
8. When individuals with normal glucose tolerance are compared to individuals with diabetes:
   (a) Hypoglycemia ranges up to 100% in "normal" subjects; glucose exposure remains within a 270 mmol/L*24 hours range between the low and high ends of normal; IQR remains in a narrow range

(<200 mmol/L); and change in glucose (glucose stability) hovers at 100–200 mmol/L/hour which is generally two-thirds more stable than subjects with diabetes.

(b) Hypoglycemia ranges up to 4% in "normal" subjects; glucose exposure remains within a 27 mmol/L*24 hours range between the low and high ends of normal; IQR remains in a narrow range (<2 mmol/L); and change in glucose (glucose stability) hovers at 1–2 mmol/L/hour which is generally two-thirds more stable than subjects with diabetes.

(c) Hypoglycemia ranges up to 1% in "normal" subjects; glucose exposure remains within a 10 mmol/L*24 hours range between the low and high ends of normal; IQR remains in a narrow range (<1 mmol/L); and change in glucose (glucose stability) hovers at 1–2 mmol/L/hour which is generally two-thirds more stable than subjects with diabetes.

(d) Hypoglycemia ranges up to 5% in "normal" subjects; glucose exposure remains within a 28 mmol/L*24 hours range between the low and high ends of normal; IQR remains in a narrow range (=200 mmol/L); and change in glucose (glucose stability) hovers at 1–2 mmol/L/hour which is generally two-thirds more stable than subjects with diabetes.

9. Continuous monitoring should provide a physiologic framework for clinical decision-making in three general areas:
   (a) Detection of underlying dysglycemia
   (b) Selecting the most effective therapy
   (c) Guiding adjustments to treatment
   (d) Measuring treatment effectiveness
   (e) All of the above
10. Compared to factory-calibrated systems, patient calibration by self-monitoring of blood glucose:
   (a) Is more accurate
   (b) Is less accurate
   (c) Is equally accurate
   (d) Is more precise
   (e) Is less precise

Correct Answers

1. (b) False
2. (a) Continuous glucose monitoring
3. (b) Oxidative stress and apoptosis
4. (c) To detect the slightest abnormalities of glucose metabolism in daily living
5. (d) Uses a 5 mm sensor placed under the skin in the interstitial fluid
6. (a) True
7. (a) Because these readings are helpful to make clinical decisions related to medication adjustments by patients and often by the doctor as well
8. (b) Hypoglycemia ranges up to 4% in "normal" subjects; glucose exposure remains within a 27 mmol/L*24 hours range between the low and high ends of normal; IQR remains in a narrow range (<2 mmol/L); and change in glucose (glucose stability) hovers at 1–2 mmol/L/hour which is generally two-thirds more stable than subjects with diabetes.
9. (e) All of the above
10. (b) Is less accurate

References

1. Herranz L, Pallardo L-V, et al. Maternal third trimester hyperglycaemic excursions predict large-for-gestational-age infants in type 1 diabetic pregnancy. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2007;75(1):42–6.
2. Mazze R, Strock E, Borgman S, Wesley D, Stout P, Racchini J. Evaluating the accuracy, reliability, and clinical applicability of continuous glucose monitoring (CGM): is CGM ready for real time? Diabetes Technol Ther. 2009;11(1):11.
3. Hoss U, Budiman E, Liu H, Christiansen H. Continuous glucose monitoring in the subcutaneous tissue over a 14-day sensor wear period. Diabetes Sci Technol. 2013;7(5):1210–9.
4. Xing D, Kollman C, Beck R, et al. Optimal sampling intervals to assess long-term glycaemic control using continuous glucose monitoring. Diab Tech Ther. 2011;13:351.
5. Mazze R, Strock E, Wesley D, Borgman S, Morgan B, Bergenstal R, Cuddihy R. Characterizing glucose exposure for individuals with normal glucose tolerance using continuous glucose monitoring and ambulatory glucose profile (AGP) analysis. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2008;10(3):149.
6. Ceriello A, Ihnat MA. 'Glycaemic variability': a new therapeutic challenge in diabetes and the critical care setting. Diabetic Med. 2010;27(8):862–7.

Type 2 Diabetes and Lifestyle Medicine

29

Karla I. Galaviz and Mohammed K. Ali

What Is Lifestyle Medicine?

Unhealthy lifestyle behaviors are among the leading risk factors for disability and mortality globally [1]. In 2013, dietary risks, tobacco use, and high body mass index (BMI) were among the six main causes of death and disability worldwide [1]. Physical inactivity is also a leading risk factor for the development of noncommunicable diseases [2] and is responsible for substantial economic burdens worldwide [3]. These behavioral risk factors are modifiable, and a strong evidence base supports numerous strategies that can effectively improve these behaviors.

Lifestyle medicine focuses on helping people adopt and maintain healthy behaviors. Kushner and Jeffrey define lifestyle medicine as "the achievement of health in conjunction with the prevention or management of chronic disease by enhancing the power of self-care behaviors" [4]. Although the principles have long been a focus of health promotion and healthcare delivery, the formal designation as a discipline is relatively new and encompasses the application of proven lifestyle interventions that promote patient self-management to maintain well-being, prevent illness, and manage chronic diseases. The discipline has grown significantly in the last 10 years, and growing interest has led to the launch of the American Journal of Lifestyle Medicine and of medical societies in the USA (e.g., the American College of Lifestyle Medicine), Europe (the European Lifestyle Medicine Organization), and Australia (Australasian Society of Lifestyle Medicine).

K. I. Galaviz (✉)
Emory Global Diabetes Research Center, Hubert Department of Global Health, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA
e-mail: karla.galaviz@emory.edu; kgalavi@emory.edu

M. K. Ali
Emory Global Diabetes Research Center, Hubert Department of Global Health, Rollins School of Public Health, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Department of Epidemiology and Nutrition/Health Sciences Program, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Department of Family and Preventive Medicine, School of Medicine, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA
e-mail: mkali@emory.edu

Lifestyle as a Component of Diabetes Management

The overarching goal in diabetes management is to prevent microvascular (retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy) and macrovascular (coronary heart disease, cerebrovascular disease, and peripheral vascular diseases) complications and thereby preserve quality of life. These complications are deemed central avenues of morbidity [5] and result from long-standing or poorly controlled risk factors. These risk factors are embodied in numerous guidelines – as an example, the American Diabetes Association 2017 guidelines recommend people with diabetes should achieve the following treatment goals [6]:

- Hemoglobin **A**1c (HbA1c) levels of <7.0% (53 mmol/mol)
- **B**lood pressure of <140 mmHg (systolic) over <90 mmHg (diastolic)
- LDL **C**holesterol levels <2.6 mmol/L (<100 mg/dL)
- **D**o not smoke tobacco

Many people with diabetes can achieve these **ABCD** goals by following a healthy diet and exercise program, losing excess weight, avoiding tobacco, and taking oral medications, while others may also need insulin. A healthy diet, regular physical activity, and tobacco avoidance are central and first-line management recommendations for every patient with diabetes. Lifestyle measures actually help improve HbA1c, LDL cholesterol, and blood pressure while also promoting weight loss even when medications are needed to lower these parameters. The effects of medication are augmented by lifestyle changes [7], and indeed, patients who diligently adhere to healthy lifestyle behaviors can minimize their need for medications [8]. Unfortunately,

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_29

some patients take medicines in lieu of adopting positive lifestyle changes.

Evidence supports the effectiveness of lifestyle medicine to control diabetes. A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials showed that structured exercise training that consists of aerobic exercise, resistance training, or both is associated with a 0.67% point decline in HbA1c levels in patients with diabetes [9]. Another meta-analysis showed that exercise training can reduce LDL cholesterol by ~5% in people with diabetes [10], though more evidence supporting these findings is still needed. Another evidence summary reports that aerobic exercise training can slightly reduce systolic blood pressure in individuals with diabetes, though reductions in diastolic blood pressure are less common [7]. Breaking sitting time with standing and light-intensity walking has also been found to improve 24-hour glucose levels and improved insulin sensitivity in individuals with diabetes [11]. Regarding diet, a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials showed that low-carbohydrate, low glycemic index, Mediterranean, and high-protein diets all improve glycemic control by reducing HbA1c between 0.12% and 0.47% points [12]. High-fiber diets or supplements containing soluble fiber have also been shown to reduce HbA1c by 0.55% points in people with diabetes [13]. Overall, lifestyle modification interventions are associated with significant benefits in terms of reducing cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk factors in patients with diabetes [14]. Table 29.1 summarizes evidence from these meta-analyses.

Though evidence is insufficient to suggest lifestyle modification lowers CVD and microvascular events [15], some studies show promise. In the PREDIMED trial, participants randomized to consuming a Mediterranean diet supplemented with extra-virgin olive oil or nuts had a 30% lower incidence of major CVD events in people with diabetes after 4.8 years of follow-up [16].

In the Look AHEAD study, obese participants with diabetes were randomized to usual care or intensive lifestyle modification. Those in the lifestyle modification arm experienced greater reductions in weight, blood pressure, and HbA1c; however, since there was no difference in CVD events after 9.6 years of follow-up, active intervention was discontinued [17]. Though the Look AHEAD trial demonstrated no CVD benefit, other health benefits accrued from the intervention: lower disability [18], less need for blood pressure and lipid-lowering medications [19], less obstructive sleep apneas [20], less new depression and greater remission of prevalent depression [21], less kidney disease [22], less erectile dysfunction [23], and less urinary incontinence [24].

The benefits of healthy lifestyle choices are pervasive across the spectrum of glycemia, and people with prediabetes also benefit. There is a potential benefit in slowing the progression to diabetes, but in addition, there are long-term benefits. In the Diabetes Prevention Program Outcomes Study, women receiving a lifestyle modification intervention had less microvascular disease after 15 years of follow-up; no effects were observed in men or for macrovascular complications [25]. Overall, CVD risk factors can be reduced through lifestyle modification in people with diabetes, though lowering the incidence of CVD events may either require stricter CVD risk factor control or longer follow-up to become apparent.

Tobacco use has been found to be higher among adults living with chronic conditions [26] and to be harmful in people with diabetes. Smoking increases insulin resistance and deteriorates glucose control in people with diabetes [27]. Among individuals with diabetes, smokers have been found to have a

Table 29.1 Evidence from meta-analyses estimating lifestyle intervention impact on diabetes treatment goals

Strategy tested	A1c percentage point change [95% confidence interval]	Blood pressure mmHg change [95% confidence interval]	LDL cholesterol mmol/L change [95% confidence interval]	Author (journal, year)
Diet				
Mediterranean	−0.47 [−0.64, −0.30]	–	−0.08 [−0.24, 0.08]	Ajala (*Am J Clin Nutr*, 2013)
Low-carbohydrate	−0.12 [−0.24, −0.00]	–	−0.03 [−0.12, 0.07]	
Low glycemic index	−0.14 [−0.23, −0.03]	–	−0.07 [−0.16, 0.02]	
High-protein	−0.28 [−0.38, −0.18]	–	−0.16 [−0.41, 0.09]	
High-fiber	−0.55 [−0.96, −0.13]	–	–	Silva (*Nutr Rev*, 2013)
Physical activity				
Aerobic exercise	−0.73 [−1.06, −0.40] −0.4 [−0.8, −0 6]	–	−6.4 [−11.8, −1.1]	Umpierre (*JAMA*, 2011)
Resistance training	−0.57 [−1.14, −0.01]	–	–	Kelly (*Public Health*, 2007)
Aerobic and resistance training	−0.51 [−0.79, −0.23]	–	–	
Diet and physical activity	−0.37 [−0.59, −0.14]	Systolic: −0.16 [−0.29, −0.03] Diastolic: −0.27 [−0.41, −0.12]	−0.14 [−0.29, 0.02]	Chen (*Metabolism*, 2015)

higher risk for CVD, microvascular complications, and premature death than nonsmokers [27]. In contrast, smoking cessation among people newly diagnosed with diabetes is associated with reduced blood pressure and albuminuria [28]. Thus, advising patients not to smoke and offering smoking cessation counseling and support to those who smoke are recommended diabetes management strategies [29].

Recognizing the importance of lifestyle modification in diabetes management, several diabetes care guidelines have included lifestyle management in their recommendations. For instance, the American Diabetes Association Standards of Care [6], the NICE diabetes management guidelines [30], the Diabetes Canada Clinical Practice Guidelines [31], the Latin American Diabetes Association Consensus Statement [32], and the International Diabetes Federation Global Guideline for Type 2 Diabetes [33] recommend lifestyle modification. Specific recommendations across guidelines vary, but most include performing aerobic and resistance physical activity, lowering calorie intake for overweight and obese patients, avoiding saturated fats, increasing fiber intake, avoiding added sugars, and avoiding tobacco use and excessive alcohol consumption.

Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support

Self-managing one's diabetes requires engaging in challenging physical activity, dietary, and smoking behavior changes to prevent diabetes complications and improve quality of life. Diabetes self-management education (DSME) and diabetes self-management support (DSMS) are powerful tools to help patients adopt and maintain such lifestyle changes [29]. DSME encompasses facilitating the knowledge and skills necessary for effective self-care, while DSMS involves supporting the adoption and maintenance of lifestyle changes needed to self-manage on an ongoing basis [34]. The overall objectives of DSME and DSMS are to support informed decision-making, build self-care behaviors and problem-solving skills, and establish a collaborative relationship with healthcare providers to improve patient clinical outcomes and quality of life [34].

In the USA, there are national standards to set and assess the quality of DSME/S, assist diabetes educators, identify effective DSME/S strategies, and recognize/certify DSME/S professionals and programs [35]. There are also clinical guidelines that recommend delivering DSME/S at the following critical points: (1) at diagnosis; (2) annually to address education, nutrition, and emotional needs; (3) when barriers that may interfere with self-management arise; and (4) when there are transitions in care [29]. Patients with diabetes receiving DSME/S have been found to have better clinical, psychosocial, and behavioral outcomes. For instance, a meta-analysis found group-based DSME was associated with greater improvements in A1c, diabetes knowledge, self-management skills, and self-efficacy in people with diabetes [36]. Another meta-analysis showed DSME/S can improve quality of life among patients with diabetes [37], while a systematic review found DSME/S can be used to promote healthy coping [38]. Individual studies have also shown that DSME/S is associated with improvements in lifestyle behaviors [39], clinical outcomes [40], and reductions in the presence of diabetes-related distress and depression [41, 42].

DSME/S requires that families, healthcare providers, communities, and healthcare systems provide patients with the education, resources, and support they need to manage their disease. Barriers at each of these levels and the interaction among them make real-world implementation of DSME/S challenging.

Barriers to Lifestyle Diabetes Management

Diabetes control has been found to be suboptimal globally. For instance, in the USA, national data show that approximately 63.7% of adults diagnosed with diabetes met the HbA1c target, 65.5% the blood pressure target, 56.6% the LDL-C target, and 80.6% the nonsmoking goal. Only 26.7% met combined ABC targets, while 21.3% met ABC targets and did not smoke [43]. A systematic review of Asian and middle-income countries found that average A1c (6.5–11%), systolic blood pressure (120–152 mm Hg), and LDL levels (2.4–3.8 mmol/l) varied greatly and that recommended care goals were not being achieved [44]. Data from Central and South America show that the proportion of patients with diabetes not meeting targets ranges from 13.0% to 92.2% for HbA1c, 4.6–92.0% for blood pressure, and 28.2–78.3% for lipids [45]. Disparities in treatment goal achievement have also been observed in the USA, where poorer control has been observed in Hispanics, those with long-standing diabetes (20 years or longer) and those using insulin [46].

Diabetes self-management can be a daunting task. Aside from taking their prescribed medications, people with diabetes should engage in 150 minutes of moderate to vigorous physical activity per week, spread over at least 3 days per week, with no more than 2 consecutive days without activity. Decreasing the amount of time spent in daily sedentary behaviors (e.g., watching TV) is also recommended. People with diabetes should also follow a healthy diet (e.g., Mediterranean, DASH, plant-based diets) and avoid foods high in saturated fat and trans fat, foods with added sugars, and sugar-sweetened beverages. Finally, people with diabetes should avoid smoking and limit their alcohol consumption to 1–2 drinks per day [29]. This 24/7, lifelong diabetes self-management must be adhered to in different settings such as homes, families, neighborhoods, workplaces, clinics,

and organizations in the community. Here, we describe some of the barriers present in these settings that may hinder patient self-management efforts.

Individual Barriers

Individuals with diabetes may have the intention to implement lifestyle changes but may lack the self-regulatory skills or resources needed to implement and maintain such changes. For instance, a national US study showed that people with diabetes report trying to lose weight (75%), increase physical activity (57%), and reduce the number of calories and fat in their diet (71%) [47]. Yet, national data show the percentage of calories from saturated fat people with diabetes consume is above recommendations, while fiber intake is below recommendations [48]. National US data also show the prevalence of obesity and physical inactivity are decreasing, though levels of these risk factors remain high, and some have merely slowed rather than reversing [49].

Data from around the world show people with diabetes exhibiting similar challenges in achieving lifestyle goals. In the DAWN study, participants with diabetes from 13 countries were found to have poor adherence to diet and exercise regimens [50]. A nationwide cross-sectional study in Lebanon also showed that only 10% of participants with diabetes achieved the recommended 150 minutes of moderate to vigorous physical activity per week [51]. In the DAWN2 study, only 48% of participants from 17 countries reported having participated in diabetes educational programs or activities [52].

Individuals with diabetes also face several barriers that may deter lifestyle self-management. For instance, the DAWN study showed that psychological problems such as depression and diabetes-related distress are common in persons with diabetes worldwide and that these may be affecting self-care [50]. A systematic review showed that South Asians with diabetes face barriers to adopting a diabetic diet such as diet not being tailored to their preferences, social pressures to continue with a traditional diet, and misconceptions on the components of the diabetic diet. That same review found that South Asians also face barriers to performing physical activity such as lack of gender-specific exercise facilities and fear of injury or worsening health with exercise [53]. Among Hispanics in the USA, physical and emotional suffering, lack of control over food/eating, and lack of resources and family support are prominent barriers to diabetes self-management [54]. In the USA, low DSME utilization rates have been observed in minority and underserved populations due to high cost and poor accessibility to these services [55]. Societal stigma and discrimination have also been reported as barriers to self-management among individuals with diabetes [52]. Overall, perceived barriers to carrying out self-care behaviors are associated with suboptimal diet and exercise behaviors [56].

Family Barriers

Family members are the most significant source of social support for a person living with diabetes. Family support promotes diabetes treatment adherence [57] and is associated with fewer psychosocial problems and better self-management among diabetes patients [58, 59]. Family support has also been found to promote glucose control among diabetes patients, but its impact on lifestyle management is less clear [58]. However, family members can also negatively impact diabetes self-management. There is evidence that unhealthy lifestyles of marital partners are similar and may increase the risk for cardiovascular disease [60], while competing demands such as family members not wanting to follow the same diet as a diabetic person deter patient self-management [61].

Diabetes and its treatment can burden families and affect the life of its members in several ways [62]. For instance, family members caring for relatives with diabetes report experiencing distress and that diabetes negatively impacts their well-being [63]. Family members also report their work is negatively affected, while some report working part time to be able to help care for a diabetes relative [63]. Caring for diabetes relatives may lead to foregone income by family members, psychosocial problems, and affected family relations.

Family members also experience barriers to support patients with diabetes. Family members report lack of knowledge about diabetes management and feeling frustrated and disappointed when seeing a relative suffer from diabetes and unable to control the disease [54]. In the DAWN2 study, 37% of caregivers from 17 countries also reported frustration of not knowing how to care for their relative with diabetes [63]. A third of family members in the DAWN2 study also perceived supporting a relative with diabetes as a burden [63]. Lack of knowledge, poor diabetes control results, and perceived burden make supporting relatives with diabetes a challenging task.

Provider Barriers

Healthcare providers have a critical role in supporting patient diabetes self-management. These include physicians, nurse practitioners, diabetes educators, physical activity counselors, and dietitians. Providers can support diabetes patients by offering lifestyle modification counseling, empowering patients to self-manage, and referring them to DSME/S resources in the clinic or the community. Overall, the provider role is to effectively communicate relevant information to the patient, collaborate with patient to develop an individualized self-management plan, and support patients to develop the necessary skills to live and cope with diabetes [34]. Effective communication and collaboration among providers involved in a patient's self-management program is imperative for the patient's success [34].

There are some factors that hinder provider involvement in DSME/S. Provider misconception that only few education visits are needed to help patients self-manage can limit access to DSME/S [34]. Specialized personnel like physical activity counselors, diabetes educators, and dieticians are in short supply in many parts of the world, especially in rural settings. Even in urban settings, not every practice has these trained personnel on site, and referrals to these allied health professionals add complexity and fragmentation to challenges that patients already face with their care. Another barrier providers face is that those that are not trained in behavioral therapies and lifestyle counseling do not feel confident in their ability to identify patient psychological problems and lifestyle barriers or to address these effectively [50]. Although physicians want patients to receive self-management support, some fear that they will be replaced by lifestyle or diabetes education coaches [64]. Language and communication discordance between the patient and the healthcare provider can also be a barrier to diabetes education [53]. These factors may limit provider involvement in diabetes education, thereby hindering patient lifestyle self-management.

Community Barriers

For patients with diabetes, eating a healthy diet and doing physical activity may be difficult because healthy food options and physical activity opportunities are not readily available, easily accessible, or affordable in their communities. For instance, lack of recreational facilities in the community or poor accessibility and conditions of facilities can hinder physical activity in adults [65, 66]. The presence of convenience stores has been found to be associated with a higher prevalence of obesity and overweight [67]. Low-income and underserved communities are often the most affected with less supportive environmental conditions for physical activity and limited access to stores that sell healthy foods [65, 68].

System Barriers

Broad policy and system-level factors also impact the likelihood and sustainability of patients engaging in lifestyle management. For instance, in the USA, only 5% of individuals eligible for DSME/S through Medicare and 7% eligible through a private insurance plan actually receive it [69, 70]. A systematic review from several countries found that a reason why people do not attend DSME/S is insufficient health insurance to cover such services or inability to afford the costs of traveling to the program venue [71]. Other factors related to poor participation in self-management programs include the low availability of providers [69]. The lack of efficient referral systems that connect patients with resources in their community to seek lifestyle modification support is also a barrier to patient participation in lifestyle self-management. Finally, reimbursement policies can hinder DSME/S, as some may not support interventions by non-physicians and provide strong disincentives for interventions offered outside the clinic [72]. Rural and underserved communities are particularly affected by current reimbursement and referral models [34]. Figure 29.1 summarizes the barriers discussed here.

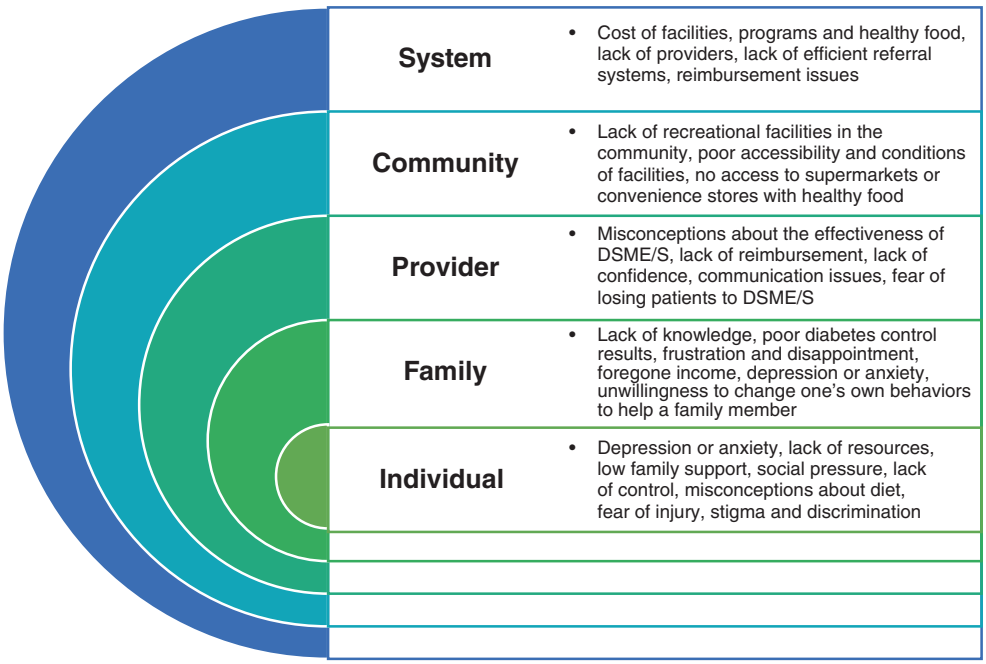


Fig. 29.1 Barriers to lifestyle self-management

Real-World Opportunities

The numerous barriers people living with diabetes face represent opportunities for families, providers, communities, and systems to support patients. In this section, we describe potential options available to support patients at different levels in their ongoing lifestyle self-management.

Empower Patients

Patients should be empowered to effectively manage their diabetes. Patient empowerment is the process of giving patients control over their diabetes and equipping them with the knowledge, skills, and resources they need to self-manage their disease. It requires a collaborative approach focused on helping patients understand their disease, set personal goals, improve their self-efficacy to achieve their goals, and equip them with self-regulatory skills to align their behavior with their goals [73]. Diabetes self-management education programs that provide patients with these skills can improve knowledge, self-management behaviors, and glycemic control [74], even among minorities and rural populations [75, 76].

Diabetes education programs delivered by diabetes specialist nurses or dieticians seem to have the greatest benefits [77], though emerging evidence supports the use of community health workers [78] and peer educators in providing ongoing support [79]. Programs work best when they are cultural and age appropriate [80], when they are tailored to the individual's situation and context [72], when family members are involved [80], and when behavior change strategies are incorporated [81]. In terms of delivery format, individual and group approaches have similar effects [82], while the Internet and health technologies are emerging as promising delivery methods [83–85].

Patient empowerment efforts should also include healthy coping strategies to help them cope with depression and stress brought on by diabetes [73]. Cognitive behavioral therapy, support groups, and problem-solving approaches are strategies that can help improve emotional status among people with diabetes [38]. Patient education and empowerment alone is essential but not sufficient to ensure effective lifestyle self-management; families, providers, communities, and healthcare systems must provide opportunities for patients to successfully manage their disease in all settings.

Support Families and Use Peers

Families may benefit from psychological support and educational opportunities to care for their relatives with diabetes. The DAWN2 study provides indicators that can be used to identify the support required for, and from, families to improve the lives of people with diabetes and their families [86]. Families should be provided with diabetes education opportunities, such as training courses or educational resources, to learn strategies to support their relatives without affecting their life. Behavioral family therapies, training courses, and technologies can all be employed to support families and build positive relations [87]. Since caring for diabetes relatives may lead to foregone income by family members, offering flexible work schedules could help family members miss less work days.

Peers can also be used to support patient lifestyle self-management and ease the burden family members face. Peer support allows patients to share experiences and receive support that busy clinicians cannot provide, which is particularly important when patients are facing the new challenges of living with diabetes [88]. Key activities peers can perform include assisting diabetes patients with daily management, offering social and emotional support, facilitating linkage to clinical and community resources (e.g., help arrange provider visits, accompany patients to visits), and offering ongoing support [89]. Evidence is emerging in support of peer support models that include lifestyle counseling, goal setting, and behavioral and social support [79]. Diabetes care guidelines are also starting to recognize the role of peers in diabetes self-management, and peer training manuals have been developed [90]. Peer support interventions are less resource-intensive than some diabetes management programs, offering a cost-effective option for resource-constrained settings. Peer support models can also help address healthcare access barriers while increasing the quality and quantity of self-care support [88].

Create Multidisciplinary Diabetes Care Teams

Multidisciplinary diabetes care teams can support patients in navigating self-management by providing guidance, education, and psychosocial support. Diabetes care teams may include, but is not limited to, physicians, nurse practitioners, psychologists, dietitians, exercise counselors, and diabetes educators. The role of the diabetes care team is to provide a foundation of support and education and facilitate ways in which the patient may take control over his/her lifestyle self-management decisions [73]. The patient should be a central member of the care team and actively engaged in collaborative goal setting and action plan development; the patient's family and friends should also be involved and considered in self-management plans. The responsibility for effective lifestyle management is shared among patients, families, and the diabetes care team.

To build effective diabetes care teams, three important things should be considered. First, there should be collaborative, non-hierarchical relationships between team mem-

bers and the patient where decisions are made together. Indeed, shared decision-making between patients and primary care providers has been found to improve patient glucose outcomes and treatment adherence [91]. Patients and team members should work together to optimize lifestyle management at diabetes diagnosis and throughout all evaluations and follow-up assessments. Second, continuing medical education should be offered to members of the team to equip them with effective communication skills, address misconceptions about DSME/S, discuss the latest science, and address time and confidence barriers. Training for lay educators, such as community health workers and peers, can also be considered in diabetes care teams as growing evidence supports their role in facilitating diabetes education [78, 79].

Finally, systems that foster coordinated team care, facilitate communication among team members and patients, and allow the provision of ongoing support must be developed. Indeed a study from India and Pakistan shows that care coordinators and clinical decision support systems can be integrated in diabetes care teams to organize work and communication among team members and that such strategy promotes diabetes treatment goal achievement [92]. Further, several effective strategies are available to provide ongoing patient support such as telephone calls or text messages by providers [93], support by community health workers [78], peer support groups [79], and mobile technologies [83]. Overall, effective team care systems can lead to better patient outcomes and increased satisfaction with healthcare practice by both providers and patients [72]. Figure 29.2 summarizes the components of effective diabetes care teams.

Create Clinic-Community Linkages

Clinic-community linkages offer an opportunity to connect patients with self-management resources available in their community, promote sustained behavior change, and lower the cost of diabetes management. Clinic-community linkages can also remove the diabetes education barriers providers face and help reach individuals who do not regularly seek primary care. These linkages can benefit both patients and providers and can lessen the burden of diabetes management on healthcare systems; however, a solid infrastructure, communication system, and network of trusted resources are needed to foster successful linkages.

To develop successful clinic-community linkages, diabetes education resources available in the community should be catalogued. Recognized DSME/S programs are preferred, but other trusted resources such as support groups, exercise facilities, and lifestyle modification programs can also be included. Inventorying trusted resources in the community is critical given that providers are unlikely to refer patients due to lack of knowledge about the quality and accessibility of programs [94]. Where programs and additional resources are not available, although challenging, professional associations (e.g., national diabetes associations) may help by stimulating the development of programs using a seed funding approach and by encouraging the use of recognized models.

Referral systems can also facilitate successful clinical and community linkages [95]. For instance, embedding referral strategies into electronic medical records or having preprinted lists of local resources seems to be feasible avenues to assist in referring patients to DSME/S programs. Clinical

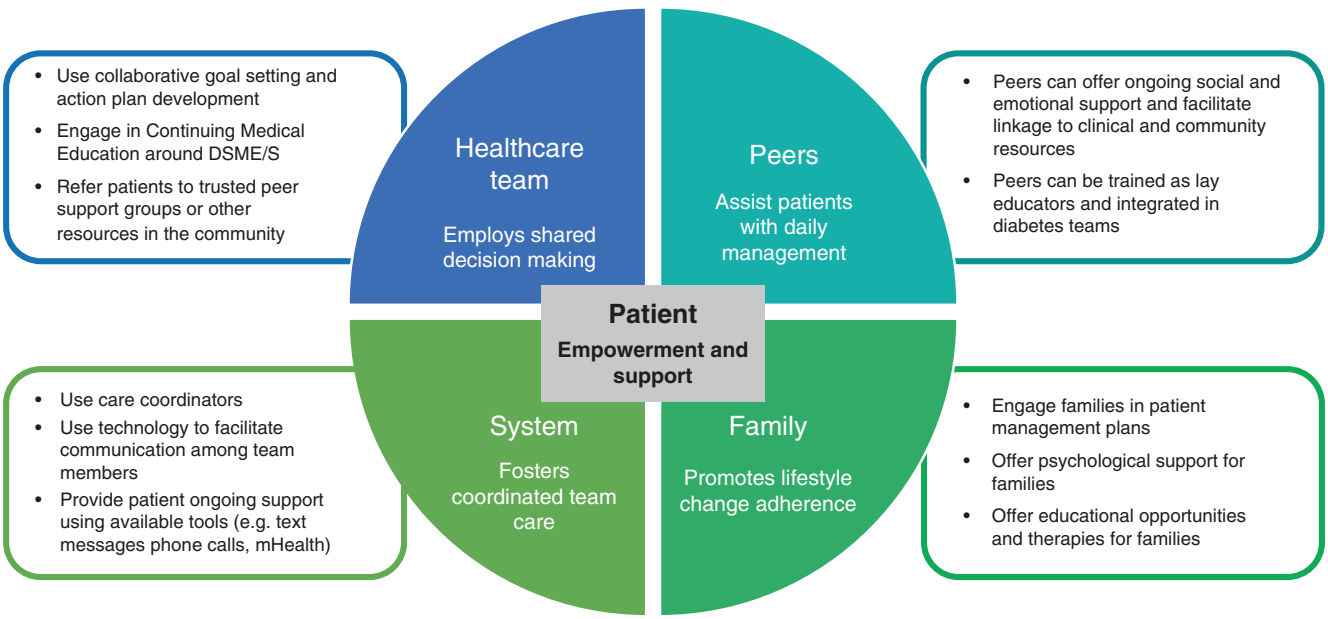


Fig. 29.2 Components of effective diabetes care teams

decision support functions such as pop-up messages can be integrated in electronic records to identify patients with diabetes that should be referred to a self-management education program [96]. Clinic-community linkages can be further facilitated by embedding and updating resource lists into electronic systems and automating communication technologies to refer patients to relevant community resources; these tools have been shown to improve provider referral rates and patient behavior [97]. Referring patients may not be enough to achieve effective patient lifestyle self-management; therefore, monitoring progress to ensure patients follow through and offering ongoing support is imperative.

Incentivizing Adoption and Continued Engagement

Here, we examine financing lifestyle medicine through a crude, rather simplistic, lens. Delivering or covering the costs of lifestyle medicine counseling or exercise sessions has an up-front cost. As such, these short-term and long-term investments have to be balanced against potential benefits and returns. Much of this decision-making depends on how health (and allied health) services are financed and the perspective one is taking. From the perspective of the individual or institution delivering the intervention, some form of payment for their delivery of this service is desired and/or required to continue to remain financially solvent. From the perspective of the user, low-cost, high-value, and (most) easily achievable interventions with good outcomes and low side effects are desired. This is especially true if the user is also paying for the intervention, which is often the case in low- and middle-income countries where financial protections for healthcare (e.g., insurance) do not exist or are not widely used.

In the case of a third-party payer that is involved in "insuring" health service costs for individuals in a society – be this a government (e.g., the United Kingdom's National Health Service or Mexico's Seguro Popular for unemployed persons) or commercial stakeholders (e.g., private insurance companies) – the returns on investing in lifestyle offerings/coverage are (usually) a prerequisite. The returns for third-party payers are usually in the form of offsetting other higher-cost healthcare expenditures like medicines, surgeries, or complications of diabetes that require hospital stays or chronic interventions like dialysis. There is formal evidence of this from the Look AHEAD study which showed lower need for blood pressure- and cholesterol-lowering medications among those in the lifestyle arm [98].

Ultimately, from the perspective of the payer – either the individual paying for his/her own health services or the third party – the value of paying for lifestyle medicine has to be weighed vis-à-vis the costs and potential benefits, as well as competing priorities (e.g., for individuals, this could even be the time required to engage in lifestyle change). Buy-in to covering the costs of lifestyle medicine is possible when the payer(s) can be convinced of the following: (1) that the potential benefits outweigh the up-front costs (and may in fact lower long-term costs like hospitalizations, etc.) and that lifestyle medicine could preserve quality of life for longer and (2) that lifestyle changes are achievable within the context of competing personal, occupational, and social priorities. Sustaining the decision to cover lifestyle medicine is possible if these two motivators are satisfied and remain important to the paying party. For example, motivated individuals paying out of pocket might ask their healthcare provider for assistance in engaging in lifestyle medicine in lieu of medications or other interventions.

The formal "business case" for lifestyle medicine has been developed and embraced by some systems and payers. Two good examples include Discovery Health in South Africa and Kaiser Permanente (KP), an integrated healthcare system and insurer in the USA. Both of these commercial corporations have adopted the notion of wellness into their healthcare insurance approach [99–101]. Either through calculating the potential cost offsets or as an embodiment of their mission and vision (or both), these insurers have decided to cover the costs of lifestyle medicine (e.g., wellness coaching) for members and even do active outreach to members to notify them of these free resources, both directly to individuals affected by chronic conditions like diabetes and through general advertising (e.g., KP's "Thrive" and Discovery's "vitality" campaigns). A good analogy to explain this ethos is home insurance discounting. Home insurers often offer discounts for certain protections (e.g., security system, fire alarms, sprinkler systems, new homes) as these are likely to lower the likelihood of costlier events (e.g., burglaries, fires) that would require the insurer to pay out large sums to insured persons to cover all of the damage. Though these examples offer hope, the reality is that this vision of paying for lifestyle medicine as a way to offset other health costs is not ubiquitous and varies greatly by setting, perspective, and how health financing is set up.

Use of Technology

Technology can be used to complement and support the work of patients and diabetes care teams. At the patient level, available technologies can be used to empower patients with tools to self-manage and to offer ongoing support to self-regulate daily lifestyle behaviors. For instance, a meta-analysis of Mobile health interventions (mHealth) found smartphone applications can be used for delivering behavior

Table 29.2 Strategies to support patient lifestyle self-management

Patient and family strategies	Provider strategies	Community and system strategies
Empower patients by equipping them with the knowledge, self-regulatory skills, ongoing support, and resources they need to self-manage	Develop multidisciplinary diabetes care teams that use a collaborative, shared decision-making approach	Trusted diabetes education resources available in the community should be catalogued
Offer healthy coping interventions to address depression and stress	Continuing medical education can be used to improve provider communication skills and practices	Referral systems can be developed that facilitate linking patients with trusted community resources
Offer families psychological support, educational opportunities, and job flexibility	Lay educators can be trained and integrated in diabetes care teams	Geographic information system (GIS) mapping can be used to identify areas where programs are needed and to inform referral efforts
Use peers to further support patients	Care coordinators help organize work and communication among diabetes care teams	Lists of trusted resources in the community can be published in websites
Smartphone applications can be used for delivering behavior change techniques, patient reminders, remote patient monitoring, and patient coaching	Provider phone calls and text messages can be used to provide ongoing support	Health IT platforms can be used for patient, provider, and community communication
Internet-based strategies can be used to deliver behavior change techniques and to implement peer support groups	Automated self-management interventions can be integrated into primary care	Communication technologies that automate patient referrals to community resources can be used
	Clinical decision support systems can be used to facilitate management and identify patients that need referrals	Investments in delivery or coverage of lifestyle medicine are dependent on perspective, setting, and who pays for healthcare; there are promising examples of systems that offset other costlier health expenditures through lifestyle interventions

change techniques, patient reminders, remote patient monitoring, and patient coaching, achieving moderate effects on lowering HbA1c [84]. Similarly, an integrative review concluded that web-based learning and mobile health applications can improve diabetes self-management behaviors, patient diabetes self-efficacy, and HbA1c levels [83]. Internet-based interventions can also be used to implement behavior change techniques (e.g., goal setting, action planning, coping planning) and to offer peer support to diabetes patients, promoting improvements on lifestyle behaviors [102, 103]. Automated self-management interventions can also be integrated into primary care, while ongoing patient self-management support can be enhanced by linking patients with community resources [103].

At the clinic system level, technology can be used to identify lifestyle modification resources in the community and foster clinic-community linkages. For instance, websites can be used to publish lists of trusted diabetes education resources identified in the community [96]. Further, geographic information system (GIS) mapping can be used to identify areas where self-management programs are needed and to inform referral efforts [96]. Clinical decision support systems can be used to help providers identify patients that need referrals to community resources [96, 104]. Communication technologies that automate patient referrals to community resources can also be used, which have been shown to improve provider referral rates and patient behavior [97]. Internet-based strategies and smartphone applications can be used to reach patients that don't have access to healthcare and link them with providers [83]. Finally, health technologies can be used to facilitate patient-program-provider communication by offering a common platform to securely share data and communicate [105]. Table 29.2 summarizes the strategies discussed here.

The use of health technologies to effectively support patient lifestyle self-management while securely sharing data and protecting patient privacy is still work under progress. Most commercially available smartphone applications are not based on current evidence, and the gap between evidence and functionality of consumer applications is yet to be addressed [106]. Practitioners and researchers should only select trusted tools to support patients, especially tools that tailor advice to patient engagement level, are equipped to respond to health emergencies, and protect data privacy and security [107].

Conclusion

Diabetes lifestyle self-management is a 24/7, lifelong effort that takes place in homes, families, neighborhoods, workplaces, clinics, and organizations in the community. From an ecological perspective, patients are not isolated but part of a complex, multilayered system where barriers in each layer and their interaction may hinder effective lifestyle management. As such, responsibility for effective lifestyle management is shared among patients, families, providers, communities, and healthcare systems and payers. Effective diabetes lifestyle

management thus requires a coordinated team effort focused on empowering patients to ask about and adopt healthy lifestyle behaviors, providing ongoing support and offering opportunities to succeed in their communities. This will require efficient referral systems, coordinated diabetes care teams, availability of DSME/S in a variety of delivery formats, and financing strategies that support diabetes education and referrals. Promising studies have already demonstrated the efficacy and increasingly the real-world effectiveness, of clinical, community, workplace, and broad societal strategies, programs, and policies that can make lifestyle medicine more mainstream, accessible, and cost-effective.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. It is defined as the achievement of health in conjunction with the prevention or management of chronic disease by enhancing the power of self-care behaviors:
   (a) Behavior change
   (b) Lifestyle medicine
   (c) Self-efficacy
   (d) Adherence
2. It encompasses facilitating the knowledge and skills necessary for effective self-care:
   (a) Lifestyle modification
   (b) Diabetes self-management and education
   (c) Diabetes self-management support
   (d) Behavioral counseling
3. The ABCD goals refer to control of:
   (a) Hemoglobin A1c and fasting blood glucose
   (b) Blood pressure and cholesterol
   (c) Tobacco avoidance and hemoglobin A1c
   (d) Hemoglobin A1c, blood pressure, cholesterol and do not smoke
4. This involves supporting the adoption and maintenance of lifestyle changes needed to self-manage on an ongoing basis:
   (a) Diabetes self-management and education
   (b) Group education
   (c) Social support
   (d) Diabetes self-management support
5. Diabetes self-management education and support should be offered at the following critical points:
   (a) At diagnosis and annually
   (b) When self-management barriers arise
   (c) When there are transitions in care
   (d) All of the above
6. The physical activity guidelines for persons with diabetes recommend:
   (a) People living with diabetes should engage in 300 minutes of moderate- to vigorous-intensity physical activity per week, spread over at least 3 days per week.
   (b) People living with diabetes should engage in 150 minutes of vigorous intensity physical activity per week, spread over at least 3 days per week.
   (c) People living with diabetes should engage in 150 minutes of light-intensity physical activity per week, spread over at least 3 days per week.
   (d) People living with diabetes should engage in 150 minutes of moderate- to vigorous- intensity physical activity per week, spread over at least 3 days per week, with no more than 2 consecutive days without activity.
7. These are diets shown to be beneficial for people living with diabetes:
   (a) Mediterranean
   (b) DASH
   (c) Plant-based diets
   (d) All of the above
8. In addition to tobacco avoidance, people with diabetes should limit their alcohol consumption to:
   (a) 5 drinks per day
   (b) 1–2 drinks per day
   (c) 3 drinks per day
   (d) 4 drinks per day
9. It is the process of giving patients control over their diabetes by equipping them with the knowledge, skills, and resources they need to self-manage their disease.
   (a) Motivation
   (b) Education and support
   (c) Behavior change
   (d) Empowerment
10. The role of the diabetes care team is to provide:
    (a) Guidance
    (b) Education
    (c) Psychosocial support
    (d) All of the above

Correct Answers

1. (b) Lifestyle medicine
2. (b) Diabetes self-management and education
3. (d) Hemoglobin A1c, blood pressure, cholesterol and do not smoke
4. (d) Diabetes self-management support
5. (d) All of the above
6. (d) People living with diabetes should engage in 150 minutes of moderate- to vigorous- intensity physical activity per week, spread over at least 3 days per week, with no more than 2 consecutive days without activity.
7. (d) All of the above
8. (b) 1–2 drinks per day
9. (d) Empowerment
10. (d) All of the above

References

1. Forouzanfar MH, Alexander L, Anderson HR, Bachman VF, Biryukov S, Brauer M, et al. Global, regional, and national comparative risk assessment of 79 behavioural, environmental and occupational, and metabolic risks or clusters of risks in 188 countries, 1990–2013: a systematic analysis for the global burden of disease study 2013. Lancet. 2015;386(10010):2287–323.
2. Lee IM, Shiroma EJ, Lobelo F, Puska P, Blair SN, Katzmarzyk PT. Effect of physical inactivity on major non-communicable diseases worldwide: an analysis of burden of disease and life expectancy. Lancet. 2012;280(9838):219–29.
3. Ding D, Lawson KD, Kolbe-Alexander TL, Finkelstein EA, Katzmarzyk PT, van Mechelen W, et al. The economic burden of physical inactivity: a global analysis of major non-communicable diseases. Lancet. 2016;388(10051):1311–24.
4. Kushner RF, Mechanick JI. Lifestyle medicine - an emerging new discipline. US Endocrinol. 2015;11(1):36–40.
5. International Diabetes Federation. IDF diabetes atlas. 7th ed. Available from http://www.Idf.Org/diabetesatlas. Accessed 3 Mar 2017.
6. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes-2017. Diabetes Care. 2017;40(Suppl 1):S4–S132.
7. Colberg SR, Sigal RJ, Fernhall B, Regensteiner JG, Blissmer BJ, Rubin RR, et al. Exercise and type 2 diabetes: the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Diabetes Association: joint position statement. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(12):e147–67.
8. Johansen MY, MacDonald CS, Hansen KB, Karstoft K, Christensen R, Pedersen M, et al. Effect of an intensive lifestyle intervention on glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2017;318(7):637–46.
9. Umpierre D, Ribeiro PA, Kramer CK, Leitao CB, Zucatti AT, Azevedo MJ, et al. Physical activity advice only or structured exercise training and association with hba1c levels in type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA. 2011;305(17):1790–9.
10. Kelley GA, Kelley KS. Effects of aerobic exercise on lipids and lipoproteins in adults with type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis of randomized-controlled trials. Public Health. 2007;121(9):643–55.
11. Duvivier BM, Schaper NC, Hesselink MK, van Kan L, Stienen N, Winkens B, et al. Breaking sitting with light activities vs structured exercise: a randomised crossover study demonstrating benefits for glycaemic control and insulin sensitivity in type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2017;60(3):490–8.
12. Ajala O, English P, Pinkney J. Systematic review and meta-analysis of different dietary approaches to the management of type 2 diabetes. Am J Clin Nutr. 2013;97(3):505–16.
13. Silva FM, Kramer CK, de Almeida JC, Steemburgo T, Gross JL, Azevedo MJ. Fiber intake and glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review with meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Nutr Rev. 2013;71(12):790–801.
14. Chen L, Pei J-H, Kuang J, Chen H-M, Chen Z, Li Z-W, et al. Effect of lifestyle intervention in patients with type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis. Metabolism. 2015;64(2):338–47.
15. Schellenberg ES, Dryden DM, Vandermeer B, Ha C, Korownyk C. Lifestyle interventions for patients with and at risk for type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ann Intern Med. 2013;159(8):543–51.
16. Estruch R, Ros E, Salas-Salvado J, Covas MI, Corella D, Aros F, et al. Primary prevention of cardiovascular disease with a mediterranean diet. N Engl J Med. 2013;368(14):1279–90.
17. Group TLAR. Cardiovascular effects of intensive lifestyle intervention in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(2):145–54.
18. Rejeski WJ, Ip EH, Bertoni AG, Bray GA, Evans G, Gregg EW, et al. Lifestyle change and mobility in obese adults with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2012;366(13):1209–17.
19. Redmon JB, Bertoni AG, Connelly S, Feeney PA, Glasser SP, Glick H, et al. Effect of the look ahead study intervention on medication use and related cost to treat cardiovascular disease risk factors in individuals with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(6):1153–8.
20. Foster GD, Borradaile KE, Sanders MH, Millman R, Zammit G, Newman AB, et al. A randomized study on the effect of weight loss on obstructive sleep apnea among obese patients with type 2 diabetes: the sleep ahead study. Arch Intern Med. 2009;169(17):1619–26.
21. The Look AHEAD Research Group. Impact of intensive lifestyle intervention on depression and health-related quality of life in type 2 diabetes: the look ahead trial. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(6):1544–53.
22. The Look Ahead Research Group. Effect of a long-term behavioral weight loss intervention on nephropathy in overweight or obese adults with type 2 diabetes: the look ahead randomized clinical trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2014;2(10):801–9.
23. Wing RR, Rosen RC, Fava JL, Bahnson J, Brancati F, Gendrano Iii IN, et al. Effects of weight loss intervention on erectile function in older men with type 2 diabetes in the look ahead trial. J Sex Med. 2010;7(1 Pt 1):156–65.
24. Breyer BN, Phelan S, Hogan PE, Rosen RC, Kitabchi AE, Wing RR, et al. Intensive lifestyle intervention reduces urinary incontinence in overweight/obese men with type 2 diabetes: results from the look ahead trial. J Urol. 2014;192(1):144–9.
25. Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group. Long-term effects of lifestyle intervention or metformin on diabetes development and microvascular complications over 15-year follow-up: the diabetes prevention program outcomes study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2015;3(11):866–75.
26. Stanton CA, Keith DR, Gaalema DE, Bunn JY, Doogan NJ, Redner R, et al. Trends in tobacco use among us adults with chronic health conditions: national survey on drug use and health 2005–2013. Prev Med. 2016;92:160–8.
27. Chang SA. Smoking and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Metab J. 2012;36(6):399–403.
28. Voulgari C, Katsilambros N, Tentolouris N. Smoking cessation predicts amelioration of microalbuminuria in newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes mellitus: a 1-year prospective study. Metabolism. 2011;60(10):1456–64.
29. American Diabetes Association. Lifestyle management. Sec. 4. In standards of medical care in diabetes 2017. Diabetes Care. 40(Suppl 1):S33–43.
30. National institute for health and care excellence. Type 2 diabetes in adults: Management. Nice guideline [ng28]. Published date: December 2015. Last updated: May 2017. Available at https://www.Nice.Org.Uk/guidance/ng28. Accessed on 18 May 2017.
31. Canadian Diabetes Association Clinical Practice Guidelines Expert Committee. Canadian diabetes association 2013 clinical practice guidelines for the prevention and management of diabetes in Canada. Can J Diabetes. 2013;37(1):S1–S212.
32. Guzman JR, Lyra R, Aguilar-Salinas CA, Cavalcanti S, Escano F, Tambasia M, et al. Treatment of type 2 diabetes in latin america: a consensus statement by the medical associations of 17 Latin American countries. Latin American Diabetes Association. Rev Panam Salud Publica. 2010;28(6):463–71.
33. Boutayeb W, Lamlili MEN, Boutayeb A, Boutayeb S. Estimation of direct and indirect cost of diabetes in Morocco. J Biomed Sci Eng. 2013;6:732–8.
34. Powers MA, Bardsley J, Cypress M, Duker P, Funnell MM, Fischl AH, et al. Diabetes self-management education and support in type 2 diabetes: a joint position statement of the American Diabetes Association, the American Association of Diabetes Educators, and the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics. Diabetes Care. 2016;34:70–80.

35. Beck J, Greenwood DA, Blanton L, Bollinger ST, Butcher MK, Condon JE, et al. 2017 national standards for diabetes self-management education and support. Draft available at https://professional.Diabetes.Org/sites/professional.Diabetes.Org/files/media/2017_national_standards_for_dsmes_public_comment.Pdf. Accessed on 28 Aug 2017.
36. Steinsbekk A, Rygg L, Lisulo M, Rise MB, Fretheim A. Group based diabetes self-management education compared to routine treatment for people with type 2 diabetes mellitus. A systematic review with meta-analysis. BMC Health Services Research. 2012;12(1):213.
37. Cochran J, Conn VS. Meta-analysis of quality of life outcomes following diabetes self-management training. Diabetes Educ. 2008;34(5):815–23.
38. Thorpe CT, Fahey LE, Johnson H, Deshpande M, Thorpe JM, Fisher EB. Facilitating healthy coping in patients with diabetes: a systematic review. Diabetes Educ. 2013;39(1):33–52.
39. Tang TS, Funnell MM, Brown MB, Kurlander JE. Self-management support in "real-world" settings: an empowerment-based intervention. Patient Educ Couns. 2010;79(2):178–84.
40. Piatt GA, Anderson RM, Brooks MM, Songer T, Siminerio LM, Korytkowski MM, et al. 3-year follow-up of clinical and behavioral improvements following a multifaceted diabetes care intervention: results of a randomized controlled trial. Diabetes Educ. 2010;36(2):301–9.
41. Fisher L, Hessler D, Glasgow RE, Arean PA, Masharani U, Naranjo D, et al. Redeem: a pragmatic trial to reduce diabetes distress. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(9):2551–8.
42. Hermanns N, Schmitt A, Gahr A, Herder C, Nowotny B, Roden M, et al. The effect of a diabetes-specific cognitive behavioral treatment program (diamos) for patients with diabetes and subclinical depression: results of a randomized controlled trial. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(4):551–60.
43. Ali MK, Bullard KM, Gregg EW, Del Rio C. A cascade of care for diabetes in the United States: visualizing the gaps. Ann Intern Med. 2014;161(10):681–9.
44. Shivashankar R, Kirk K, Kim WC, Rouse C, Tandon N, Narayan KM, et al. Quality of diabetes care in low- and middle-income asian and middle eastern countries (1993–2012): 20-year systematic review. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2015;107(2):203–23.
45. Mudaliar U, Kim WC, Kirk K, Rouse C, Narayan KM, Ali M. Are recommended standards for diabetes care met in central and south america? A systematic review. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2013;100(3):306–29.
46. Stark Casagrande S, Fradkin JE, Saydah SH, Rust KF, Cowie CC. The prevalence of meeting A1C, blood pressure, and LDL goals among people with diabetes, 1988–2010. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(8):2271–9.
47. Dorsey R, Songer T. Lifestyle behaviors and physician advice for change among overweight and obese adults with prediabetes and diabetes in the united states, 2006. Prev Chronic Dis. 2011;8(6):A132.
48. Casagrande SS, Cowie CC. Trends in dietary intake among adults with type 2 diabetes: NHANES 1988–2012. J Hum Nutr Diet. 2017;30(4):479–89.
49. Geiss LS, Kirtland K, Lin J, Shrestha S, Thompson T, Albright A, et al. Changes in diagnosed diabetes, obesity, and physical inactivity prevalence in us counties, 2004–2012. PLoS One. 2017;12(3):e0173428.
50. Peyrot M, Rubin RR, Lauritzen T, Snoek FJ, Matthews DR, Skovlund SE. Psychosocial problems and barriers to improved diabetes management: results of the cross-national diabetes attitudes, wishes and needs (dawn) study. Diabet Med. 2005;22(10):1379–85.
51. Sibai AM, Costanian C, Tohme R, Assaa S, Hwalla N. Physical activity in adults with and without diabetes: from the 'high-risk' approach to the 'population-based' approach of prevention. BMC Public Health. 2013;13:1002.
52. Nicolucci A, Burns KK, Holt RI, Comaschi M, Hermanns N, Ishii H, et al. Diabetes attitudes, wishes and needs second study (dawn2): cross-national benchmarking of diabetes-related psychosocial outcomes for people with diabetes. Diabet Med. 2013;30(7):767–77.
53. Sohal T, Sohal P, King-Shier KM, Khan NA. Barriers and facilitators for type-2 diabetes management in south asians: a systematic review. PLoS One. 2015;10(9):e0136202.
54. Hu J, Amirehsani K, Wallace DC, Letvak S. Perceptions of barriers in managing diabetes: perspectives of hispanic immigrant patients and family members. Diabetes Educ. 2013;39(4):494–503.
55. Duncan I, Ahmed T, Li QE, Stetson B, Ruggiero L, Burton K, et al. Assessing the value of the diabetes educator. Diabetes Educ. 2011;37(5):638–57.
56. Aljasem LI, Peyrot M, Wissow L, Rubin RR. The impact of barriers and self-efficacy on self-care behaviors in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Educ. 2001;27(3):393–404.
57. DiMatteo MR. Social support and patient adherence to medical treatment: a meta-analysis. Health Psychol. 2004;23(2):207–18.
58. Rosland A-M, Kieffer E, Israel B, Cofield M, Palmisano G, Sinco B, et al. When is social support important? The association of family support and professional support with specific diabetes self-management behaviors. J Gen Intern Med. 2008;23(12):1992–9.
59. Schiøtz ML, Bøgelund M, Almdal T, Jensen BB, Willaing I. Social support and self-management behaviour among patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabet Med. 2012;29(5):654–61.
60. Macken LC, Yates B, Blancher S. Concordance of risk factors in female spouses of male patients with coronary heart disease. J Cardpulm Rehabil. 2000;20(6):361–8.
61. Gallant MP, Spitze GD, Prohaska TR. Help or hindrance? How family and friends influence chronic illness self-management among older adults. Res Aging. 2007;29(5):375–409.
62. Rintala TM, Jaatinen P, Paavilainen E, Astedt-Kurki P. Interrelation between adult persons with diabetes and their family: a systematic review of the literature. J Fam Nurs. 2013;19(1):3–28.
63. Kovacs Burns K, Nicolucci A, Holt RIG, Willaing I, Hermanns N, Kalra S, et al. Diabetes attitudes, wishes and needs second study (dawn2™): cross-national benchmarking indicators for family members living with people with diabetes. Diabet Med. 2013;30(7):778–88.
64. Peyrot M, Rubin RR, Funnell MM, Siminerio LM. Access to diabetes self-management education: results of national surveys of patients, educators, and physicians. Diabetes Educ. 2009;35(2):246–8, 252–6, 258–63.
65. Sallis JF, Floyd MF, Rodriguez DA, Saelens BE. The role of built environments in physical activity, obesity, and cardiovascular disease. Circulation. 2012;125:729–37.
66. Bauman AE, Reis RS, Sallis JF, Wells JC, Loos JFR, Martin BW. Correlates of physical activity: why are some people physically active and others not? Lancet. 2012;380:258–71.
67. Morland K, Roux AVD, Wing S. Supermarkets, other food stores, and obesity: the atherosclerosis risk in communities study. Am J Prev Med. 2006;30(4):333–9.
68. Powell LM, Slater S, Mirtcheva D, Bao Y, Chaloupka FJ. Food store availability and neighborhood characteristics in the United States. Prev Med. 2007;44(3):189–95.
69. Strawbridge L, Lloyd J, Meadow A, Riley G, Howell BL. Use of medicare's diabetes self-management training benefit. Health Educ Behav. 2015;42:530–8.

70. Li R, Shrestha S, Lipman R, Burrows NR, Kolb L, Rutledge S, et al. Diabetes self-management education and training among privately insured persons with newly diagnosed diabetes - United States, 2011–2012. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2014;63:1045–9.
71. Horigan G, Davies M, Findlay-White F, Chaney D, Coates V. Reasons why patients referred to diabetes education programmes choose not to attend: a systematic review. Diabet Med. 2017;34(1):14–26.
72. Marrero DG, Ard J, Delamater AM, Peragallo-Dittko V, Mayer-Davis EJ, Nwankwo R, et al. Twenty-first century behavioral medicine: a context for empowering clinicians and patients with diabetes: a consensus report. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(2):463–70.
73. McDuffie RH, Struck L, Burshell A. Empowerment for diabetes management: integrating true self-management into the medical treatment and management of diabetes mellitus. Ochsner J. 2001;3(3):149–57.
74. Fan L, Sidani S. Effectiveness of diabetes self-management education intervention elements: a meta-analysis. Can J Diabetes. 2009;33(1):18–26.
75. Lepard MG, Joseph AL, Agne AA, Cherrington AL. Diabetes self-management interventions for adults with type 2 diabetes living in rural areas: a systematic literature review. Curr Diab Rep. 2015;15(6):608.
76. Ricci-Cabello I, Ruiz-Pérez I, Rojas-García A, Pastor G, Rodríguez-Barranco M, Gonçalves DC. Characteristics and effectiveness of diabetes self-management educational programs targeted to racial/ethnic minority groups: a systematic review, meta-analysis and meta-regression. BMC Endocr Disord. 2014;14(1):60.
77. Steinsbekk A, Rygg L, Lisulo M, Rise MB, Fretheim A. Group based diabetes self-management education compared to routine treatment for people with type 2 diabetes mellitus. A systematic review with meta-analysis. BMC Health Serv Res. 2012;12:213.
78. Shah M, Kaselitz E, Heisler M. The role of community health workers in diabetes: update on current literature. Curr Diab Rep. 2013;13(2):163–71.
79. Patil SJ, Ruppar T, Koopman RJ, Lindbloom EJ, Elliott SG, Mehr DR, et al. Peer support interventions for adults with diabetes: a meta-analysis of hemoglobin A1c outcomes. Ann Fam Med. 2016;14(6):540–51.
80. Sarkisian CA, Brown AF, Norris KC, Wintz RL, Mangione CM. A systematic review of diabetes self-care interventions for older, African American, or Latino adults. Diabetes Educ. 2003;29(3):467–79.
81. Naik AD, Palmer N, Petersen NJ, Street RL Jr, Rao R, Suarez-Almazor M, et al. Comparative effectiveness of goal setting in diabetes mellitus group clinics: randomized clinical trial. Arch Intern Med. 2011;171(5):453–9.
82. Duke SA, Colagiuri S, Colagiuri R. Individual patient education for people with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009;(1):CD005268.
83. Hunt CW. Technology and diabetes self-management: an integrative review. World J Diabetes. 2015;6(2):225–33.
84. Cui M, Wu X, Mao J, Wang X, Nie M. T2dm self-management via smartphone applications: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2016;11(11):e0166718.
85. Pereira K, Phillips B, Johnson C, Vorderstrasse A. Internet delivered diabetes self-management education: a review. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2015;17(1):55–63.
86. Nicolucci A, Kovacs Burns K, Holt RIG, Comaschi M, Hermanns N, Ishii H, et al. Diabetes attitudes, wishes and needs second study (dawn2™): cross-national benchmarking of diabetes-related psychosocial outcomes for people with diabetes. Diabet Med. 2013;30(7):767–77.
87. Miller TA, DiMatteo MR. Importance of family/social support and impact on adherence to diabetic therapy. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes. 2013;6:421–6.
88. Heisler M, Vijan S, Makki F, Piette JD. Diabetes control with reciprocal peer support versus nurse care management: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2010;153(8):507–15.
89. Fisher EB, Boothroyd RI, Coufal MM, Baumann LC, Mbanya JC, Rotheram-Borus MJ, et al. Peer support for self-management of diabetes improved outcomes in international settings. Health Aff. 2012;31(1):130–9.
90. International Diabetes Federation. Idf peer leader training manual. Available at https://www.Idf.Org/e-library/education/65-idf-peer-leader-training-manual.Html. Accessed on 27 Aug 2017.
91. Parchman ML, Zeber JE, Palmer RF. Participatory decision making, patient activation, medication adherence, and intermediate clinical outcomes in type 2 diabetes: a starnet study. Ann Fam Med. 2010;8(5):410–7.
92. Ali MK, Singh K, Kondal D, Devarajan R, Patel SA, Shivashankar R, et al. Effectiveness of a multicomponent quality improvement strategy to improve achievement of diabetes care goals: a randomized, controlled trial. Ann Intern Med. 2016;165(6):399–408.
93. Krishna S, Boren SA. Diabetes self-management care via cell phone: a systematic review. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2008;2(3):509–17.
94. Heath GW, Kolade VO, Haynes JW. Exercise is medicine: a pilot study linking primary care with community physical activity support. Prev Med Rep. 2015;2:492–7.
95. Etz RS, Cohen DJ, Woolf SH, Holtrop JS, Donahue KE, Isaacson NF, et al. Bridging primary care practices and communities to promote healthy behaviors. Am J Prev Med. 2008;35(5, Supplement):S390–7.
96. National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion (NCCDPHP). Approaches to promoting referrals to diabetes selfmanagement education and cdc-recognized diabetes prevention program sites. 2016. Available at https://www.Cdc.Gov/diabetes/pdfs/programs/stateandlocal/emerging_practices-promoting_referrals.Pdf. Accessed on 28 Aug 2017.
97. Krist AH, Woolf SH, Frazier CO, Johnson RE, Rothemich SF, Wilson DB, et al. An electronic linkage system for health behavior counseling effect on delivery of the 5a's. Am J Prev Med. 2008;35(5):S350–8.
98. Espeland MA, Glick HA, Bertoni A, Brancati FL, Bray GA, Clark JM, et al. Impact of an intensive lifestyle intervention on use and cost of medical services among overweight and obese adults with type 2 diabetes: the action for health in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(9):2548–56.
99. Lambert EV, Kolbe-Alexander TL. Innovative strategies targeting obesity and non-communicable diseases in South Africa: what can we learn from the private healthcare sector? Obes Rev. 2013;14(Suppl 2):141–9.
100. An R, Patel D, Segal D, Sturm R. Eating better for less: a national discount program for healthy food purchases in South Africa. Am J Health Behav. 2013;37(1):56–61.
101. Valencia MA, Kingston N, Nakamura RB, Rosenfield F, Schwartz ML. The evolution of health education: the Kaiser Permanente Southern California experience. Health Promot Pract. 2004;5(1):20–7.
102. Mckay HG, Glasgow RE, Feil EG, Boles SM, Barrera M. Internet-based diabetes self-management and support: initial outcomes from the diabetes network project. Rehabil Psychol. 2002;47(1):31–48.

103. Glasgow RE, Kurz D, King D, Dickman JM, Faber AJ, Halterman E, et al. Twelve-month outcomes of an internet-based diabetes self-management support program. Patient Educ Couns. 2012;87(1):81–92.
104. Sim LLW, Ban KHK, Tan TW, Sethi SK, Loh TP. Development of a clinical decision support system for diabetes care: a pilot study. PLoS One. 2017;12(2):e0173021.
105. Quinn CC, Shardell MD, Terrin ML, Barr EA, Ballew SH, Gruber-Baldini AL. Cluster-randomized trial of a mobile phone personalized behavioral intervention for blood glucose control. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(9):1934–42.
106. Goyal S, Cafazzo JA. Mobile phone health apps for diabetes management: current evidence and future developments. QJM: Int J Med. 2013;106(12):1067–9.
107. Singh K, Drouin K, Newmark LP, Lee J, Faxvaag A, Rozenblum R, et al. Many mobile health apps target high-need, high-cost populations, but gaps remain. Health Aff (Millwood). 2016;35(12):2310–8.

Evidence and Implementation of Medical Nutrition Therapy in Persons with Diabetes

30

Melinda Downie Maryniuk, Alison Evert, and Jo-Anne Rizzotto

Abbreviations

A1C	Hemoglobin A1C
ADA	American Diabetes Association
AND	Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics
CVD	Cardiovascular disease
DCCT	Diabetes Control and Complications Trial
DSMES	Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support
EAL	Evidence Analysis Library
EBNPG	Evidence-based nutrition practice guidelines
MNT	Medical nutrition therapy
MUFA	Monounsaturated fatty acid
NCP	Nutrition care process
PUFA	Polyunsaturated fatty acids
RDN	Registered dietitian/nutritionist
SFA	Saturated fatty acids
US	United States

Introduction

The overall goal of the medical treatment plan is to provide the individual with diabetes the necessary tools to achieve glucose, lipids, and blood pressure within target ranges to prevent, delay, or manage the microvascular and macrovascular complications while minimizing hypoglycemia and excess weight gain. The foundation of any diabetes treatment plan for type 1 or 2 diabetes is healthful eating, as well as regular physical activity. Due to the progressive nature of type 2 diabetes, in order to meet individual health goals, the treatment plan will evolve over time to include changes in meal planning, glucose monitoring, and medications. Whereas with type 1 diabetes, lifestyle interventions, glucose monitoring, and insulin are all integral components of management plan from diagnosis. But whatever the treatment plan, nutrition interventions continue to be critical aspects of care [1, 2]. In addition to nutrition therapy provided by the registered dietitian nutritionist (RDN), a wide range of health professionals such as registered nurses or pharmacists can provide nutrition education in the context of a diabetes education program. Effective nutrition therapy may be implemented in individualized sessions or in a context of group education sessions. In fact, the American Diabetes Association (ADA) recommends that all individuals be offered an individualized nutrition care plan, preferably provided by a RDN [1].

Diabetes Nutrition Therapy: The Evidence

The Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics (AND), the largest association of nutrition professionals in the world, recently published evidence-based nutrition practice guidelines (EBNPG) for type 1 diabetes and type 2 diabetes in adults in their Evidence Analysis Library (EAL) and in print [3]. ADA have also published nutrition recommendations in a position statement and are briefly updated and summarized in their annual standards of care [1, 4]. Multiple research studies support diabetes nutrition therapy as an effective tactic in achieving diabetes treatment goals.

Based on the systematic review conducted recently by the AND, in adults with type 2 diabetes medical nutrition therapy (MNT) interventions implemented by RDNs resulted in significantly improved hemoglobin A1C (A1C) levels. In studies lasting 3 months, decreases from baseline A1C

M. D. Maryniuk
Care Programs, Joslin Innovations, Joslin Diabetes Center, Boston, MA, USA
e-mail: Melinda@melindamaryniuk.com

A. Evert
Nutrition and Diabetes Programs, University of Washington Neighborhood Clinics, Seattle, WA, USA
e-mail: atevert@uw.edu

J.-A. Rizzotto (✉)
Educational Services, Joslin Diabetes Center, Boston, MA, USA
e-mail: Jo-Anne.Rizzotto@joslin.harvard.edu

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_30

ranged from 0.3% to 2.0%; at 6–12 months reported decreases from baseline in A1C ranged from 0.3% to 1.8%. With ongoing MNT support for more than 12 months, continued decreases ranging from 0.6% to 1.8% [3] were reported. Although MNT interventions were effective throughout the disease process, the reduction in A1C was the greatest in studies in which participants were newly diagnosed with type 2 diabetes and/or had baseline levels >8%. A variety of nutrition therapy interventions such as carbohydrate counting, exchange lists for meal planning, simple meal plans, and the plate method were implemented and effective. All of these nutrition interventions resulted in reduced energy intake. These interventions will be described in more detail later in the chapter.

Regarding A1C outcomes in people with type 1 diabetes, MNT also contributed to significantly reduced A1C levels [3]. MNT provided by RDNs at 6 months reported that individualized MNT utilizing carbohydrate counting to optimize prandial insulin doses contributed to reduction in baseline mean A1C by 1.0–1.9%. Ongoing MNT resulted in sustained A1C reductions at 1 year and improved quality of life [5]. The landmark Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) revealed that ongoing support of the RDN assisted in maintaining the mean A1C level at 6.9% in the intensive treatment arm throughout the 6.5 years of the study [6, 7]. There is strong evidence to support for individuals with type 1 diabetes to utilize the carbohydrate counting meal planning approach to adjust bolus (premeal) insulin doses (insulin-to-carbohydrate ratios) to desired carbohydrate intake. It should be noted that these A1C reductions are similar or greater than what would be expected with treatment with currently available glucose-lowering medications for individuals with type 1 and 2 diabetes [1]. The key differences between nutrition therapy for people with type 1 and type 2 diabetes are summarized in Table 30.1.

In the systematic review published by AND, the effectiveness of MNT and cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk factors was also evaluated [3]. MNT was reported to have mixed effects on blood pressure and lipid profiles. The effectiveness of MNT may have been confounded by the 50–75% of the subjects that were noted to be taking antihypertensive and/or lipid-lowering medications. Additional long-term studies are needed at address the effectiveness of MNT on blood pressure and lipid profiles in adults with type 1 and 2 diabetes and disorders of lipid metabolism and hypertension.

Table 30.1 Nutrition teaching priorities

Type 1	Type 2
Glycemic management	Weight management; calorie reduction
Type and amount of carbohydrate	Glycemic management
Healthful eating patterns	Healthful eating patterns
Fixed insulin regimen: carb consistency	Nutrient modifications (fat, sodium) based on comorbidity risk (CVD, HTN)
MDII/Pump: flexible carb intake	Medication regimen and glucose monitoring drive degree of focus on carb type/amount
Hypoglycemia prevention	Hypoglycemia prevention (based on medication)

Effective Nutrition Therapy Recommendations: Macronutrients, Fiber, Alcohol, Micronutrients/Herbal Supplements and Weight Management

While there has been ongoing research to define optimal levels of particular nutrients in diabetes nutrition therapy, recent attention has focused on diet quality and the importance of a healthful eating pattern containing nutrient-dense foods with less focus on specific nutrients [8]. A recent meta-analysis linked high-quality diets (those rich in fruits and vegetables, whole grains, lean meats, legumes, nuts and seeds, dairy and low in processed foods, sugar-sweetened beverages, and added fats and sodium) with a significant reduction in the risk of all-cause mortality, type 2 diabetes, and cardiovascular disease [9].

Keeping that in mind, recommendations for an optimal macronutrient distribution for the management of diabetes continues to be a popular question. Although many research trials have attempted to identify the optimal percentages of macronutrients for a diabetes eating plan, review of the evidence reveals that there is not an ideal percentage of calories from carbohydrate, protein, and fat for all persons with diabetes [1, 3, 4]. Total energy intake rather than the source of the energy is the priority, especially for individuals with type 2 diabetes. However, even total energy intake is determined by changes that the individual with diabetes is willing and able to make. The meal plan must take into consideration personal preferences and metabolic goals when recommending one eating plan over another [3].

Because macronutrients require insulin for metabolism and influence healthy eating, they still, however, must be discussed with the individual with diabetes. Although numerous factors influence glycemic response to foods, monitoring total grams of carbohydrates, whether by use of carbohydrate counting or experience-based estimation, remains a key strategy in achieving glycemic control [1, 3, 4]. Evidence exists that both the quantity and type of carbohydrate eaten influence blood glucose levels; however, the total amount of carbohydrate eaten is the primary predictor of glycemic response. Day-to-day consistency in the amount of carbohydrate eaten at meals and snacks is reported to improve glycemic control, especially in persons on either MNT alone, glucose-lowering medications, or fixed insulin regimens. Most individuals within the USA report a moderate intake of

carbohydrate (44–46% of total calories), and efforts to modify habitual eating patterns are often unsuccessful over time as people generally go back to their usual eating style [10]. Whereas in persons with type 1 or 2 diabetes who adjust their mealtime insulin doses or who are on insulin pump therapy, insulin doses should be adjusted to match carbohydrate intake [3, 4].

Evidence is lacking to recommend a higher fiber intake for people with diabetes than for the general population. Thus, recommendations for fiber intake for people with diabetes are similar to the recommendations for the general public [3]. While diets containing 44 to 50 grams of fiber daily improve glycemia, more usual fiber intakes (up to 24 grams daily) have not shown beneficial effects [4]. The mean intake of dietary fiber in the USA is reported to be 17 g per day with only 5% of the population meeting the adequate intake (25 g for adult women and 38 g for adult men or 14 g total fiber per 1000 kcal) [11]. In addition, as with the general population, individuals with diabetes should consume at least half of all grains as whole grains [12].

For people with diabetes, evidence is also inconclusive to recommend an ideal amount of protein intake for optimizing glycemic control or improving CVD risk factors; therefore, protein recommendations should be individualized [1, 3, 4]. The amount of protein usually consumed by persons with diabetes is 15–20% of energy intake [13, 14] and has minimal acute effects on glycemic response, lipids, and hormones and no long-term effect on insulin requirements [15].

Evidence is also inconclusive for an ideal amount of total fat for people with diabetes, and, therefore, goals should be individualized [1, 4]. The National Academy of Medicine has defined an acceptable macronutrient distribution of fat for all adults to be 20–35% [16]. The type of fat consumed is more important than total fat in terms of metabolic goals and influencing CVD risk, with the emphasis on decreasing saturated and trans fats and replacing them with unsaturated fats. Individuals should be encouraged, however, to moderate their fat intakes to be consistent with their goals to lose or maintain weight.

Plant-based foods rich in unsaturated fats (oils, nuts, avocados, fish) as a component of the Mediterranean-style eating pattern are associated with improved glycemic control and improved CVD risk factors in persons with type 2 diabetes [1, 4]. Benefits have been demonstrated from both monounsaturated fatty acids (MUFA) and polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs). Controversy exists on the best ratio of omega-6 to omega-3 fatty acids; however, PUFAs and MUFAs are both recommended as substitutes for saturated fatty acids (SFAs) or *trans* fatty acids. The amount of SFAs, cholesterol, and *trans* fat recommended for people with diabetes is the same as for the general population [12]. These recommendations include reducing SFAs to <10% of calories and limiting *trans* fat as much as possible. There is evidence from the general population that foods containing omega-3 fatty acids have beneficial effects on lipoproteins and prevention of heart disease. Therefore, the recommendations for the general public to eat fish (particularly fatty fish) at least two times (two servings) per week are also appropriate for people with diabetes [12]. However, evidence from RCT does not support recommending omega-3 supplements for people with diabetes for the prevention or treatment of CVD despite evidence from observational and preclinical studies [1, 4].

Moderate amounts of alcohol ingested with food have minimum, if any, acute effect on glucose and insulin levels [17]. If individuals choose to drink alcohol, aim to limit daily intake to one drink or less for adult women and two drinks or less for adult men (one drink equivalent is equal to 12 oz beer, 5 oz of wine, or $1^1/_2$ oz of distilled spirits.) Each drink contains approximately 15 g alcohol [4]. The type of alcoholic beverage consumed does not make a difference. The same precautions that apply to alcohol consumption for the general population apply to persons with diabetes. Abstention from alcohol is advised for people with a history of alcohol abuse or dependence, for women during pregnancy, and for people with medical problems such as liver disease, pancreatitis, advanced neuropathy, or severe hypertriglyceridemia.

However, alcohol consumption may place people with diabetes who take insulin secretagogues or insulin at increased risk for delayed hypoglycemia [17]. Consuming alcohol with food can minimize the risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia. Education and awareness of delayed hypoglycemia after consuming alcoholic beverages is important. Alcoholic beverages should be considered an addition to the regular eating plan for all persons with diabetes who choose to drink. No food should be omitted, given the possibility of alcohol-induced hypoglycemia and because alcohol does not require insulin to be metabolized.

In persons with diabetes, light-to-moderate amounts of alcohol (one to two drinks per day; 15–30 g of alcohol) are associated with a decreased risk of coronary heart disease, likely due to improved insulin sensitivity associated with alcohol consumption. Ingestion of light-to-moderate amounts of alcohol does not raise blood pressure or triglycerides; whereas excessive, chronic ingestion of alcohol does raise blood pressure and may be a risk factor for stroke [17].

No clear evidence has been established for benefits from vitamin or mineral supplements in persons with diabetes (compared with the general population) who do not have underlying deficiencies [1, 4]. Long-term metformin use is associated with vitamin B12 deficiency, suggesting that periodic testing should be considered [1]. There has been interest in prescribing antioxidant vitamins in people with diabetes, since diabetes may be a state of increased oxidative stress. Clinical trial data not only indicate the lack of benefit from antioxidants on glycemic control and progression of

complications but also provide evidence of the potential harm [1, 18]. Therefore, routine supplementation is not advised. At this time there is also insufficient evidence to support the routine use of micronutrients such as vitamin D, magnesium, and chromium, as well as use of herbs/supplements or cinnamon for the treatment of diabetes [1, 3, 18]. In addition, herbal products are not standardized and vary in their content of active ingredients and have the potential to interact with and potentiate the effect of other medications. Therefore, it is important that individuals with diabetes report the use of supplements and herbal products to their RDN and/or healthcare provider. Without well-designed clinical trials to prove efficacy, the benefit of pharmacological doses of supplements is unknown, and findings from small clinical and animal studies are frequently extrapolated to clinical practice [3].

For individuals who are overweight or obese and ready to adopt some lifestyle changes, reduced calorie meal plans, physical activity, and behavioral therapy designed to achieve at least a 5% weight loss are recommended. Evidence supports the benefits for both individuals with type 2 diabetes and prediabetes [1]. Studies of reduced calorie interventions show reductions in A1C of 0.3–2.0% in adults with type 2 diabetes as well as improvements in medication doses and quality of life [10]. For most women this translates into a caloric intake of 1200–1500 kcal/day or 1500–1800 kcal for men. The Look AHEAD study showed the feasibility of achieving and maintaining long-term weight loss in patients with type 2 diabetes, and many participants found using a meal replacement product for one or two meals particularly helpful in controlling intake and improving diet quality [19].

In addition to considering meal replacements, long-term success is associated with longer interventions (at least 16 sessions of group or individual counseling) that involves meal planning, increased physical activity (200–300 minutes/week), and behavior change strategies. The ADA recommends for patients who achieve short-term success that a long-term (>1 year) comprehensive weight maintenance program be prescribed [1]. Healthcare providers can show their patients what modest weight loss looks like in terms of a 5–10% decrease from their starting weight. This often makes it look much more achievable than if patients think they have to get down to a seemingly unattainable "ideal" body weight (see Table 30.2).

For decades, healthcare professionals, researchers, and patients have looked for the magic bullet that will melt away unwanted pounds. Very low-calorie or very low-carbohydrate (ketogenic) diets may be linked with short-term success but rarely are sustainable and therefore not recommended [1]. A recent study comparing low-fat (<50 grams/day) and low-carbohydrate diets (<50 grams/day) found that both resulted in similar weight loss with no advantage of one over the other [20].

Table 30.2 Reasonable weight loss goals (5–10%)

If you weigh	Then aim to lose
70 kg (154 lbs)	3.5–7 kg (8–15 lbs)
80 kg (176 lbs)	4–8 kg (9–18 lbs)
90 kg (198 lbs)	4.5–9 kg (10–20 lbs)
100 kg (220 lbs)	5–10 kg (11–22 lbs)
120 kg (264 lbs)	6–12 kg (13–26 lbs)
140 kg (308 lbs)	7–14 kg (15–30 lbs)

Individualization of the Nutrition Prescription and Eating Patterns

The first step in developing a meal plan for the person with diabetes is to base it on an individualized assessment [21]. The RDN will take a detailed history including an analysis of usual eating habits, past diets, comorbidities that affect nutrition, socioeconomic factors, cultural influences, and readiness to change in order to identify, collaboratively with the patient, the best approach to meal planning. Common approaches to meal planning with a RDN usually involve carbohydrate or calorie counting, developing sample menus, incorporating behavioral strategies such as mindful eating all while working within the eating preferences described by the patient such as a vegetarian eating style or avoiding certain food allergens. While a referral to a RDN is ideal, it may not always be realistic, and the physician is often in the position to get a patient started with basic meal planning recommendations. Thus the physician or diabetes counselor should be prepared to ask a few key questions to help understand the patient's usual eating style and be better prepared to offer meaningful guidance. Suggested questions for an abbreviated assessment include:

- *What is your past experience with diet/meal plans?*
- *Tell me what you typically drink?(Focus on learning if there are sources of significant carbohydrates from juices, sodas, or other sugar-sweetened beverages.)*
- *Usual meal pattern (times/locations).*
- *How often do you eat vegetables – and what kinds?*
- *Tell me three things you think are going well with your eating pattern and three things you'd like to improve.*

Several eating patterns are associated with beneficial outcomes for people with diabetes and can be recommended by all members of the healthcare team [22–25] (see Table 30.3). No matter what the eating pattern is, aim for most food choices to focus on high-quality, minimally processed whole grains, vegetables, fruits, lean meats, seafood, legumes, nuts and seeds, dairy products, and heart-healthy unsaturated fats and oils. As much as possible, aim to avoid sugar-sweetened beverages and minimize refined grain products, processed meats, and added sugars, fats, and sodium.

Table 30.3 Eating patterns linked with beneficial outcomes [22–25]

Type of eating pattern	Description and outcomes
Plate method	A guide that serves as a practical visual aid to help individuals choose meals that will control carbohydrates and calories. Typically a moderate size plate (9 inch diameter) is divided such that carbohydrate-containing foods are limited to ¼ of the plate (and one side dish such as fruit or dairy), ¼ is for meat or protein, and the remaining half for non-starchy vegetables. Found to be equally effective to carbohydrate counting for people with type 2 diabetes [24]
DASH (dietary approaches to stop hypertension)	Rich in vegetables, fruits, and low-fat dairy products, including whole grains, poultry, fish, and nuts; lower in saturated fat, red meats, sweets, and sugar-containing beverages; and reduced in sodium. This eating pattern is associated with lower risk of type 2 diabetes, improving glycemia, and reducing CVD mortality [25]
Mediterranean style	Emphasis on selecting minimally processed plant-based foods (vegetables, fruits, whole grains, legumes, nuts), fish, and seafood; moderate intake of eggs, cheese, yogurt, and poultry; low to moderate consumption of wine with meals. Associated with prevention and treatment of type 2 diabetes and CVD [26]

The plate method has been used widely in many parts of the world as a useful method of controlling carbohydrate and calories without overwhelming patients with lists of foods and calculations of calories and carbohydrates. Recently, it's effectiveness was demonstrated in research that randomized 150 adults with type 2 diabetes to either plate method approach or a carbohydrate counting approach. At 6 months, A1C improved within the plate method [−0.83% (−1.29, −0.33), $P < 0.001$] and carbohydrate counting [−0.63% (−1.03, −0.18), $P = 0.04$] groups but not the control group [$P = 0.34$] [23]. Of particular interest were the additional benefits of the plate method seen in patients with lower literacy skills [23]. The ADA has created a variety of tools for healthcare providers to use in teaching patients the plate method [26], and it is particularly useful for physicians, nurses, pharmacists, and other non-dietitians to use when helping patients get started with meal planning. Note that the plate method can be adapted to meet the needs of multiple different cultural eating practices, using a bento box, bowl, or a banana leaf. No matter what is used to hold the food, guide the patient to identify the carbohydrate sources, and keep them limited to one section, with a similar size portion for protein foods and a larger serving allowed for non-starchy vegetables.

Despite the effectiveness of the plate method, many patients ask for more specific guidance when it comes to carbohydrates and calories. Instead of giving a daily range for either, offering per-meal guidelines is more practical. Tables 30.4 and 30.5 offer such guidelines. In the USA, a carbohydrate (carb) serving is defined as the amount of food that yields 15 grams of carbohydrate. Thus 1/3 cup cooked rice or pasta, ½ cup cooked oats, 1 oz slice bread, a small piece of fruit, or 8 oz (240 ml) milk all have about 15 grams of carb. In other countries, the carb servings may be based on a portion size to yield a 10 gram carb serving. Quantities can be adjusted accordingly.

Table 30.4 Calories per meal: suggested ranges

Meal	Women	Men
Breakfast	300–400	400–500
Lunch	400–500	500–600
Dinner	400–500	500–600
Snacks	100–200	100–200

Table 30.5 Carbohydrate per meal: suggested ranges [27]

If you are male and not overweight	4–5 servings[a] 60–75 grams carb
If you are female and not overweight	3–4 servings 30–45 grams carb
If you are overweight (>10 lbs/4.5 kg)	Subtract 1 carb serving (15 grams)
If you exercise 3–5 times/week	Add 1 carb serving (15 grams carb)
Snacks	

[a]1 carb "serving is a portion of food equal to about 15 grams of carb such as one small apple, one small slice bread, 120 ml/4 oz juice, or 240 ml/8 oz milk

No matter what eating pattern is recommended, the success is due in large part to the patient's involvement in helping shape the meal plan, setting specific and realistic goals, and participating in ongoing follow-up and systems of support. Ongoing support may be in the form of face-to-face visits, peer support, phone coaching, or even through the use of social media communities such as on Facebook that bring together people working together for a common goal. The healthcare provider will do well to identify resources within the community or online that can provide such support.

Conclusion

Nutrition therapy is a cornerstone of treatment for people with diabetes. While the RDN is the person best qualified to develop an individualized meal plan, all healthcare team members have a role in giving patients guidance for healthy eating and ongoing support for the many behavior changes involved in maintaining dietary changes, especially those involved in weight management. Meal planning priorities

and diet plans will vary based on type of diabetes, type of medications, other comorbidities, and multiple patient factors including usual eating habits and readiness to change. They will also change over time, making an annual assessment of nutrition needs and possible meal plan revisions important. In order to prepare to meet client's nutritional needs, physicians and other healthcare providers will do well to identify dietitians with whom they can work collaboratively and/or mentor health educators or peer counselors to provide nutrition information for healthy eating using simple guidelines such as the plate method. And finally, remember that healthy eating for people with diabetes follows the same principles of what healthy eating is for everyone.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. For a person with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes, what is a recommended weight loss goal?
   (a) 3%
   (b) 5–10%
   (c) 15%
   (d) 20%
2. Which of the following is a true statement about diabetes and alcohol?
   (a) People with diabetes should not drink alcohol.
   (b) Alcohol recommendations for serving size and amount are the same for both men and women.
   (c) Hypoglycemia risk is increased in people taking insulin and/or insulin secretagogues.
   (d) Alcohol is a good source of glucose.
3. What is the most important factor to consider when individualizing a meal plan for all people with diabetes?
   (a) Medical history and type of diabetes
   (b) Laboratory data and weight
   (c) Cultural background and food-related beliefs
   (d) Readiness to learn new behaviors and interest in changing old ones
4. In the process of providing medical nutrition therapy for a person with diabetes, the goal is to improve overall diabetes control by:
   (a) Providing a written meal plan
   (b) Emphasizing portion control
   (c) Individualizing the meal planning approach
   (d) Using carbohydrate counting
5. For a person with type 1 diabetes who is using multiple daily injections of insulin, nutrition teaching priorities include all of the following, except:
   (a) Education on carbohydrate counting, flexible carbohydrate intake
   (b) Glycemic management
   (c) Hypoglycemia prevention
   (d) Weight management, calorie restriction
6. The American Diabetes Association recommendations include all of the statements except:
   (a) The amount of SFAs, cholesterol, and *trans* fat recommended for people with diabetes is the same as for the general population.
   (b) It is recommended that people with diabetes eat fish (particularly fatty fish) at least two times (two servings) per week.
   (c) Omega-3 supplements should be recommended for people with diabetes for the prevention or treatment of cardiovascular disease.
   (d) Plant-based foods rich in unsaturated fats as a component of the Mediterranean-style eating pattern are associated with improved glycemic control and improved CVD risk factors in persons with type 2 diabetes.
7. Your patient tells you she is taking supplements (such as cinnamon, antioxidants, and Vitamin D) instead of making changes in her eating habits to manage her diabetes. The best response is:
   (a) "These products are a waste of money."
   (b) "Micronutrients and herbal supplements may have the potential to interact with your prescribed medications, please bring them to your next appointment so we can evaluate them together."
   (c) "Folk remedies like what you are describing don't ever work."
   (d) "These are acceptable supplements for people with diabetes to take as long as they are made by a reputable manufacturer."
8. Long-term metformin use has been shown to be associated with:
   (a) Iron-deficiency anemia
   (b) Vitamin B12 deficiency
   (c) Calcium deficiency
   (d) Weight gain
9. In adults with type 2 diabetes medical nutrition therapy (MNT) interventions implemented by registered dietitians lasting longer than 12 months resulted in significantly improved hemoglobin A1C levels:
   (a) 0.3%
   (b) 0.5–0.8%
   (c) 0.3–1.8%
   (d) >2.0%
10. Nutrition teaching priorities for type 2 diabetes include except:
   (a) Focus on the total energy intake rather than the source of the energy.
   (b) Nutrient modifications (such as fat, sodium) based on comorbidity risk (such as cardiovascular disease and hypertension).
   (c) Changes in eating plan that the individual is willing to make.
   (d) Meal plan should include three meals and three snacks at specific times.

Correct Answers

1. (b) 5–10%
2. (c) Hypoglycemia risk is increased in people taking insulin and/or insulin-secretagogues
3. (d) Readiness to learn new behaviors and interest in changing old ones
4. (c) Individualizing the meal planning approach
5. (d) Weight management, calorie restriction
6. (c) Omega-3 supplements should be recommended for people with diabetes for the prevention or treatment of cardiovascular disease
7. (b) "Micronutrients and herbal supplements may have the potential to interact with your prescribed medications, please bring them to your next appointment so we can evaluate them together."
8. (b) Vitamin B12 deficiency
9. (c) 0.3–1.8%
10. (d) Meal plan should include 3 meals and 3 snacks at specific times

References

1. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes-2019. Diabetes Care. 2019;41(Suppl 1):S1–S194.
2. Powers MA, Bardsley J, Cypress M, et al. Diabetes self-management education and support in type 2 diabetes: A joint position statement of the American Diabetes Association, the American Association of Diabetes Educators, and the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics. J Acad Nutr Diet. 2015;115:1323–34.
3. Franz MJ, MacLeod J, Evert A, et al. Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics Nutrition practice guideline for type 1 and type 2 diabetes in adults: systematic review of evidence for medical nutrition therapy effectiveness and recommendations for integration into the nutrition care process. J Acad Nutr Diet. 2017;117:1659–79.
4. Evert AB, Boucher JL, Cypress M, et al. Nutrition therapy recommendations for the management of adults with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:3821–42.
5. DAFNE Study Group. Training in flexible, intensive insulin management to enable dietary freedom in people with type 1 diabetes: dose adjustment for normal eating (DAFNE) randomized controlled trial. BMJ. 2002;325:746–51.
6. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. The effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the development and progression of long-term complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 1993;329:977–86.
7. Delahanty LM, Nathan DM, Lachin JM, et al. Association of diet with glycated hemoglobin during intensive treatment of type 1 diabetes in the diabetes control and complications trial. Am J Clin Nutr. 2009;89:518–24.
8. Maryniuk MD. From pyramids to plates to patterns: perspectives on meal planning. Diabetes Spectr. 2017;30:67–70.
9. Schwingshackl L, Bogensberger B, Hoffmann G. Diet quality as assessed by the healthy eating index, alternative healthy eating index, dietary approaches to stop hypertension score, and health outcomes: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies. J Acad Nutr Diet. 2018;118:74–100.
10. McLeod J, Franz MJ, Handu D, et al. Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics Nutrition practice guideline for type 1 and type 2 diabetes in adults: nutrition intervention evidence reviews and recommendations. J Acad Nutr Diet. 2017;117:1637–58.
11. Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics. Position of the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics: Health implications of dietary fiber. J Acad Nutr Diet. 2015;115:1861–70.
12. Dietary Guidelines Advisory Committee (DGAC) report on the dietary guidelines for Americans, 2015. http://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/2015-scientific-report/pdfs/scientific-report-of-the-2015-dietary-guidelines-advisory-committee.pdf. Accessed 14 Jan 2018.
13. Oza-Frank R, Cheng YJ, Narayan KM, et al. Trends in nutrient intake among adults with diabetes in the United States: 1988–2004. J Am Diet Assoc. 2009;109:1173–8.
14. Vitolin MZ, Anderson AM, Delahanty L, et al. Action for health in diabetes (Look AHEAD) trial: baseline evaluation of selected nutrients and food group intake. J Am Diet Assoc. 2009;109:1367–75.
15. Franz MJ, Evert AB. Medical nutrition therapy for diabetes mellitus and hypoglycemia of nondiabetic origin. In: Mahan KL, Raymond JL, editors. Krause's food and the nutrition care process. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2017. p. 586–618.
16. The National Academies of Science Engineering Medicine. Dietary reference intakes for macronutrients (Released 2002). http://www.nationalacademies.org/hmd/Activities/Nutrition/DRIMacronutrients.aspx. Accessed 18 Feb 2018.
17. Franz MJ. Alcohol and diabetes. In: Evert AB, Franz MJ, editors. American diabetes association guide to nutrition therapy for diabetes. Alexandria: American Diabetes Association; 2017. p. 87–106.
18. Neumiller J. Micronutrients and diabetes. In: Evert AB, Franz MJ, editors. American diabetes association guide to nutrition therapy for diabetes. Alexandria: American Diabetes Association; 2017. p. 57–86.
19. The Look AHEAD Research Group. Four-year weight losses in the Look AHEAD study: factors associated with long-term success. Obesity. 2011;19:1987–98.
20. Gardner CD, Trepanowski JF, Del Gobbo LC, et al. Effect of low-fat vs low-carbohydrate diet on 12 month weight loss in overweight adults and the association with genotype patterns or insulin secretion in the DIETFITS randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2018;319(7):667–79.
21. Lacey K, Pritchett E. Nutrition care process and model: ADA adopts road map to quality care and outcomes management. J Am Diet Assoc. 2003;103:1061–72.
22. AADE Practice Synopsis. Healthy eating. April 29, 2015. https://www.diabeteseducator.org/docs/default-source/default-document-library/practice-synopsis-final_healthy-eating.pdf?sfvrsn=0. Accessed 22 Feb 2018.
23. Bowen ME, Cavanaugh KL, Wolff K, et al. The diabetes nutrition education study randomized controlled trial: a comparative effectiveness study of approaches to nutrition in diabetes self-management education. Patient Educ Couns. 2016;99:1368–76.
24. Campbell AP. DASH eating plan: an eating pattern for diabetes management. Diabetes Spectr. 2017;30:76–81.
25. Boucher JL. Mediterranean eating pattern. Diabetes Spectr. 2017;30:72–6.
26. American Diabetes Association. Plan your portions diabetes placemat http://www.shopdiabetes.org/2353-The-Diabetes-Placemat%2D%2DClassic%2D%2D25-Pkg-.aspx. Accessed 22 Feb 2018.
27. Campbell AP. Nutrition management for diabetes treatment. Chapter 5. In: Beaser RS, editor. Joslin's diabetes deskbook. 3rd ed. Boston: Joslin Diabetes Center; 2014. p. 142.

Evidence and Implementation of Physical Activity and Exercise

31

Edtna Jáuregui-Ulloa and Juan López-Taylor

Introduction

Nowadays, according to the World Health Organization (WHO), global health is influenced by three tendencies, (a) the aging of the population, (b) fast non-planned urbanization, and (c) globalization, all of these resulting in unhealthy conducts and environments. As a consequence, noncommunicable diseases (NCDs) have increased in both high- and medium-income countries. About 45% of the mortality rate in these countries can be attributable to NCDs, and out of these diseases, diabetes is among the first causes of mortality [1, 2].

Physical inactivity is considered as the fourth attributable cause of mortality in the world. Besides, behaviors like smoking and poor nutrition and excessive alcohol consumption are responsible for many of the diseases and the premature deaths related to chronic diseases [3]. Due to this, physical activity is considered relevant in the prevention and control of NCDs [4], in which the role of physical activity has been signaled to have an important role as promoter and health preserver [5, 6].

It is important to emphasize that the physical activity recommendation tendencies of the WHO argue that to reduce premature mortality, policies should focus on getting inactive people to do a little physical activity rather than strive for the entire population to meet current recommendations of physical activity [7].

For physical activity, not all activities are equal from health point of view. Some are safer, others represent greater risks, some provide us with more personal satisfaction, and others can result in an apathetic and disagreeable experience.

Due to this, the practice of physical activity should be a joy, and people should have a real desire to do it for pleasure or for the well-being that it causes. The physical activity recommendations that are proposed are simply that, recommendations, and not something mandatory to comply instantly [8]. All the recommendations of physical activity should be based in that argument and eventually promote healthy lifestyles, wellness (physical, emotional, social, intellectual, spiritual, and occupational), improved functionality, and quality of life (QOL) and help in the control of diabetes. When we recommend exercise, it should improve fitness and physical performance components such as strength, cardiovascular fitness, and flexibility [9] (Table 31.1).

In diabetes management, physical activity and nutritional guidance are two of the most important aspects. It has been shown that the management approach should be directed to changing lifestyle habits by identifying specific components that are associated with a greater impact [10]. This could be achieved through community clinics and environments, delivery formats (IE, individually, groups, or based on technology), and executors (IE, doctors, members of community).

Although every recommendation, guidelines, and studies talks about healthy lifestyles, it is important to highlight what these imply "the expression of health-beneficial behavioral patterns which are learned and emerge from a conscious and unconscious internal individual choice that can be determined or conditioned by intrapersonal, interpersonal, environmental, and sociocultural multilevels" [11]. Therefore, healthy lifestyles are more than just a prescribed diet and exercise, and we should include behavioral, emotional, and social aspects in the management.

E. Jáuregui-Ulloa (✉) · J. López-Taylor
Institute of Applied Sciences for Physical Activity and Sport, Department of Human Movement Sciences, Education, Sport, Recreation and Dance, University Health Sciences Center, University of Guadalajara, Guadalajara, Mexico
e-mail: edtna.jauregui@academicos.udg.mx; taylor@cucs.udg.mx

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_31

Table 31.1 Physical activity and its relationship with lifestyle, exercise, and other common terms related to health and fitness

Physical activity						
Lifestyle				Exercise		
Wellness	Functionality	Quality of life	Health and disease	Physical performance	Fitness	Sports

Table 31.2 Resume of physical activity classification based on METs and behaviors

METs energy	1 MET	Less than 1.5 METs	>1.5 to 3.0 METs	>3 to 6 METs	> 6 to 9 METs	10 METs or more
Behavior	*Sleep*	*Sedentary behavior*	*Light activity*	*Moderate intensity*	*Vigorous activity*	*Intense activity*

MET (metabolic equivalent of energy) is a common unit to express exercise intensity. One MET represents the resting energy expenditure during quiet sitting

Key Concepts About Physical Activity and Exercise

Even a few years ago, we could use interchangeably the different words used for describing human movement, such as physical activity, sport, exercise, and others. But today the prescription for human movement has evolved in such a complex manner, and more if we are talking about health and disease, that is necessary to clarify the different connotations used to describe human movement.

It is necessary that the common reader understands the terms of physical activity, exercise, or physical fitness which should be clarified because these terms have a number of common elements and we should offer the best and adjusted reliable options in diabetes or prediabetic individuals.

Human Movement

Represents a complex behavior that is influenced by personal motivation, health and mobility issues, genetic factors, and the social and physical environments in which people live [12].

Physical Activity

Caspersen and colleagues [13] were the first ones to define physical activity as "the bodily movement produced by the contraction of skeletal muscle that increases energy expenditure (heat) above the basal level." This generic definition for physical activity has endured during all these years and has been supported by different institutions and authors, having, maybe, the maximum exposure by the famous document supported by the US Secretary of Health in 1996, "Physical Activity and Health: Report of the Surgeon General." Since then, this landmark review of research on physical activity and health has been the basis for public policies in many countries [14].

Physical activity has four dimensions which are the type of activity, frequency, duration, and intensity of performing activity. It has four domains: leisure, occupation, transport, and housework. Physical activity can either be classified as structured or incidental [15]. The first one can be considered exercise which is planned, with purpose, and promotes health. The incidental physical activity is not planned and usually is the result of daily activities at work and home or during transport [16].

There is another term related to the *type* of physical activity which has been used frequently like aerobic physical activity in which the body's large muscles move in a rhythmic manner for a sustained period of time. Aerobic activity, also called *endurance activity*, improves cardiorespiratory fitness. Examples include walking, running, swimming, and bicycling. Based on the intensity of the activity, it can be classified as low, moderate, and vigorous physical activity.

Physical activity *intensity* is conceptualized as the rate of physical work performed by an individual and is expressed in terms of resting metabolic equivalents (METs). Maximal MET capacity is not certainly important by itself, but become important when one considers the relative cost of a task or activity. Low physical activity includes light activities such as all incidental movements <3 METs and >1.5 METs, moderate physical activity ≥3–6 metabolic equivalents, and intense or vigorous activity >6 METs [17]. The greatest benefit or regular physical activity is the increase in physical work capacity (PWC) which is defined as the maximal rate at which a person can expend energy. On the other hand, *physical inactivity* is insufficient to meet current physical activity recommendations [18] (Table 31.2).

Exercise

Is a subcategory of physical activity where the activity is planned, structured, and repetitive, with the primary purpose of improving or maintaining physical fitness, physical performance, or health. "Exercise" and "exercise training" frequently are used interchangeably. Another used term is *non-exercise activity thermogenesis* (NEAT) which represents those activities of daily living other than exercise per se and includes such things as sitting, standing, walking, and fidgeting [19].

Physical Fitness

Is a set of attributes that people have. Being physically fit has been defined as the "ability to carry out daily task with vigor and alertness, without undue fatigue and with ample energy to enjoy leisure-time pursuits and to meet unforeseen emergencies". The health-related components of physical fitness are (1) cardiorespiratory endurance, (2) muscular endurance, (3) muscular strength, (4) flexibility, and (5) body composition.

Sedentary Behavior Is any behavior characterized by energy expenditure ≤1.5 metabolic equivalents (METs) while in sitting, reclining, or lying posture (Tremblay, 2017). A group of experts sustain that sedentary behavior has an independent and qualitatively different effect on human metabolism, physical function, and health outcomes (1.5 METs) [18].

As we can see, there are different concepts which are defined by energy expenditure or as a behavior (Fig. 31.1). All this terminology can be revised more profoundly at the Terminology Consensus Project Sedentary Behavior Research Network (SBRN) [20]. But, what do we have to recommend? This is an important question that has to be answered based on main principles: firstly, people have to move more; secondly, they need be more active; thirdly, they have to decrease their sedentary behaviors, and eventually they will be able to improve their fitness by doing more exercise, control their diabetes, and perform a sports activity. In summary *we cannot run if we cannot learn to walk first*. The secondary principle would be that the practice of physical activity should be a joy, a real desire to do it for pleasure or well-being that causes it and what is associated. Therefore, physical activity recommendations should not be considered as something mandatory to comply instantly and not a rule for all goals [8].

Based on this argument, all the recommendations of physical activity particularly in individuals with diabetes should promote healthy lifestyles, wellness (physical, emotional, social, intellectual, spiritual, occupational), improved fitness [21], improved functionality, and quality of life (QOL) [22], but also we should limit physical inactivity [23], avoid sitting for prolonged time [24], walk more [25], and sleep better [26] (Fig. 31.1).

Evidence of Benefits of Physical Activity and Exercise on Diabetes Mellitus

Before evaluating the evidences, it is fundamental to specify and resume the metabolic situation in which the patient with diabetes mellitus (DM) can be found. In individuals with diabetes, energy metabolic processes can be modified by the same pathology. It is important to recognize the alterations caused per se by the disease in the individual with diabetes at the moment of prescribing the exercise, since it can explain the expression of the effects of exercise and the adaptation to them. Of the deleterious effects, we found that the individuals show several enzymatic and metabolic alterations like metabolic stress, pancreatic *B*-cell, adipocyte, myocyte and hepatocyte dysfunctions, insulin resistance, and oxidative

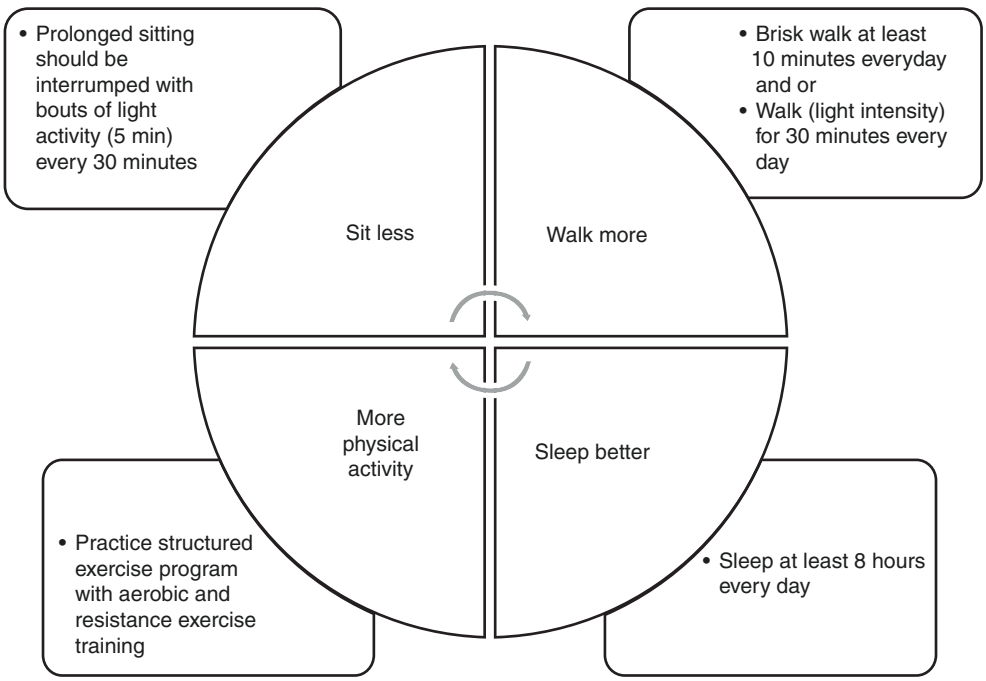


Fig. 31.1 Recommendations for physical activity/exercise in individuals with diabetes mellitus

stress [27]. The basic enzymatic alterations in the individual with diabetes mellitus are:

- Deficiency of phosphofructokinase enzyme. It results in a deficiency in the conversion of glucose to fructose and its effective utilization.
- Deficiency of the glycogen synthetase enzyme. It results in deficiency in synthesizing and protecting the largest source of energy, that is, glycogen.
- Deficiency of the lactate synthetase enzyme that results in deficiency in the normal production of lactate in intense exercises.
- Uncontrolled release of the anti-regulatory hormones such as adrenaline and noradrenaline, which can lead to hyper-responsiveness of vascular tone (increase in BP) and heart rate, as well as increase in glucose [28] (Fig. 31.2).

All these metabolic limitations are modified or eliminated by exercise performed on a regular basis in individuals with diabetes which results in a metabolic stabilization in energy glycemic control. We can conclude that the most significant metabolic modifications that are present are basically in the function and quantity of enzymes and hormones that regulate glucose metabolism all together. In the individual with diabetes, the effects of exercise depend relatively in the insulin availability and the functionality in the organism to facilitate the use of glucose by the cells. The mechanisms responsible for the increase of glucose uptake occurring in exercised skeletal muscle have been associated with insulin sensitivity, glucose tolerance, and the role of cellular receptors (Table 31.3).

All of the cells have specific glucose transporters to accelerate its transit through the membranes; however the only insulin-dependent transporter can only be found in muscle and fat cells, which also have non-insulin-dependent transporters. Since the purpose of the organism during exercise is to provide energy (in the form of carbohydrate – glucose), the effects of exercise are basically at the level of the organs with greater energy storage such as the muscle and liver, where the energy deposits in the forms of glycogen, fructose, and galactose are quickly converted to glucose. Fructose can enter directly into the pathway of glycolysis and adipose (fatty tissue) cells. Muscle cells are large consumers of glucose and are among the most sensitive to insulin, with the glucose transporter GLUT4. GLUT4 is found in heart tissue and fatty tissue. GLUT4 is a glucose transporter that responds to insulin and has a great affinity with glucose. The mechanisms responsible for the uptake of glucose that occur in the exercised skeletal muscle have been associated with (a) insulin sensitivity, (b) glucose tolerance, and (c) the role of the cellular receptors. The increase in insulin sensitivity has been proposed as the main mechanism, which on average is 46%, and pathway increase in muscle mass, and [4] there's an increase in the activity of glucokinase enzymes, glycogen synthetase, and GLUT4 glucagon transporter synthesis. In addition, there is a reduction in abdominal fat that improves insulin sensitivity [28].

Nowadays, most of the evidences about the benefits of exercise have shown that both types of exercise, aerobic and

Table 31.3 Resume of different energy systems and exercise benefits in individuals with diabetes mellitus

Energy system	Characteristics
Anaerobic phosphagen, ATP, creatine phosphate	The exercise benefits the muscle and therefore increases the ATP-CP deposits
Anaerobic glycolysis, lactic acid production	Exercise promotes the increase of lactate synthetase efficiently to better respond to intense and strong exercises. At the same time, it improves the cycle of Cori or the reuse of lactic acid as a source of energy, avoiding its deposit and therefore reducing the effects of deleterious fatigue and pain by the saturation of lactic acid circulating
Aerobic glycolysis	Exercise benefits the cardiovascular system by favoring a greater uptake, transport, and use of oxygen at the cellular level which improves aerobic glycolysis It increases the synthesis of glycogen which is the main energy source for this system to operate and therefore makes it work longer, ultimately favoring a greater expenditure of carbohydrates
Fat oxidation	Exercise increases capillarization and therefore blood supply to the tissue level. It also improves the oxidative beta process in which large amounts of oxygen are used for the degradation of fats and be a source of energy for physical activity
Protein oxidation	Exercise increases previous energy systems, so prolonged activities reduce the chances of great use of proteins as a source of energy. It also promotes the synthesis of new muscle cells of muscle mass (hyperplasia). It occurs in prolonged physical activity and is of great intensity, and it is the last process that is called oxidative deamination producing amino acids which become substrates to give energy

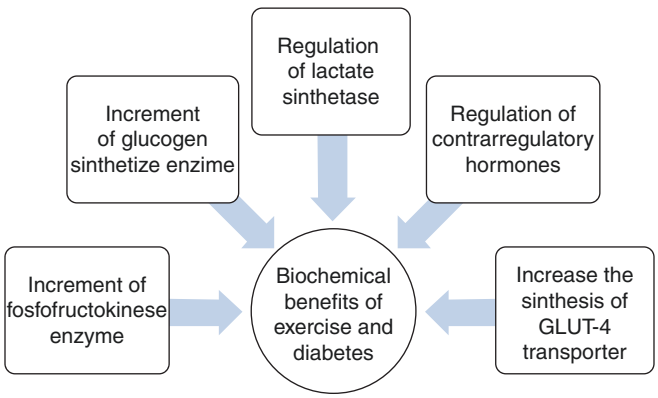


Fig. 31.2 Biochemical benefits with exercise in persons with diabetes mellitus

anaerobic resistances, have positive effects in most metabolic parameters and in cardiovascular risk factors [29–31]. The benefits go from blood glucose control and HbA1c control (evidence level A), lipid profile improvement, reduction of systolic and diastolic blood pressure, reduction of body weight (level B) and adiposity [32], and reduction of total mortality (evidence C) [33, 34]. Recently the evidences show that regular physical exercise can work as an antioxidant and anti-inflammatory [35, 36].

Resistance training have been shown in the last years to beneficial to the metabolic management of the patient [37]. According to the American College of Sports Medicine, the recommendation is to perform muscle work (resistance exercises) consistently [38]. One of the greatest benefits has been shown on the postprandial hyperglycemia which is highly associated with complications of DM. There is evidence that when it is increased the exercise intensity it is decreased the blood glucose levels after meals (BG) [39]. Even more just interrupting prolonged sitting is beneficial for diabetes patients [40] whom has a low energy expenditure [41] (Table 31.4).

The time on when to do exercise is important for individuals with diabetes. The evidence shows that the benefits of performing resistance exercise has been observed in different scenarios, like after eating dinner [42] or any other postprandial situation [39], or after light intensity exercise [43]. But we have to remember that exercise is only one part of the treatment and intensive lifestyle interventions show better results [44–46]. Recently one facet of activity/inactivity of the individuals is sleep time [26, 47].

Implementation of Physical Activity and Exercise at Clinical Practice Setting

The Team

In order to prescribe exercise, just like any other medical activity and due to the complexity of the individual, it requires a multidisciplinary team with very specific function for each one of the pathologies [28]. The recommended actions are described as follows: (a) a physician prescribes or recommends exercise, offers advice, and integrates the actions and its repercussions in the patient; (b) a physical activity professional (physical educator) prescribes exercise, offers counseling, and supervises, applies, and coordinates the exercise program; (c) a dietitian offers nutritional counseling according to the pathology and physical activity to be executed; and (d) a psychologist supports and evaluates behaviors. All the team offer counseling through the application of the five "A"s (Table 31.5) [48] and recommend appropriately physical activity and exercise based on beneficial evidence [49] (Table 31.6).

Table 31.4 Summary of the evidence of the percentage of changes and benefits of exercise in the different metabolic, cardiovascular mortality in individuals with diabetes mellitus

Component	Effect	Level of evidence
Blood glucose control	(a) Aerobic exercise: decreases blood glucose 57 mg/dl (b) Resistance: decreases blood glucose 10 mg/dl	A
HbA1C control	(a) Aerobic exercise: decreases HbA1c between 0.4 to 1.2% (0.66% average) (b) Resistance exercise: decreases HbA1c 0.3% (c) Combined: decreases HbA1c 0.34%	A
Serum lipid profile	(a) Aerobic exercise: decreases total cholesterol from 23 mg/dl a 0; LDL decreases from 14 mg/dl a -1.1 mg/dl with a 6.4 mg/dl average; HDL increases 5 mg/dl or an increase compared with basal of 12%; triglycerides showed no change (b) Resistance exercise: total cholesterol decreased 3 mg/dl; LDL decreased 6 mg/dl; HDL increased 1 mg/dl	B
Reduction of SBP and DBP	(a) Aerobic exercise: SBP decreases in average 19 mmHg. DBP decreases 8 mmHg (b) Resistance exercise: SBP decreases an average of 20 mm hg. DBP decreases 13 mmHg	B
Reduction of body weight, primarily body fat	(a) Performing 1 hour of moderate aerobic exercise reduces body fat [18, 19]; individuals who maintain weight loss for at least 1 year typically perform approximately 7 hours per week of moderate to vigorous exercise intensity	B
Reduction of mortality	(a) It has been shown that exercise is associated with a 1% reduction of HbA1c levels; this is associated with a decreased risk of cardiovascular events in 15–20% and 37% of microvascular events due to this; exercise could reduce mortality by these events Observational studies suggest that the greater the physical activity, the lower the risk of global mortality Additionally, exercise improves cardiopulmonary efficiency and physical and mental health	C

Table 31.5 The five "A"s of general counseling for physical activity as a fundamental part of the prescription of the exercise

Assess	Lifestyle, pathology background that might influence the physical activity performance, medical evaluation Evaluate behavior of physical activity and barriers for doing it Evaluate BMI, body composition, physical fitness, physical activity levels, and attitudes
Advice	Advise on physical activity, informing about the positive effect it will have on his disease and the negative effects of physical inactivity
Agree	Define the SMART goals and exercise program (FITT)
Assist	Supervise indications, limitations of exercise Monitor physical activity
Arrange	Appraise and adjust the recommendations and exercise program Connect to resources of physical activity (helping mutual groups)

Table 31.6 Recommendations of physical activity/exercise for individuals with diabetes. Position statement of the American Diabetes Association

Types of physical activity	Recommendations	Evidence
Daily physical activity	Perform at least 150 minutes per week of moderate to vigorous physical activity or 75 minutes of vigorous or intense physical activity Do not let more than 2 days pass between sessions	The daily exercise dose provides the best metabolic benefits even if it's performed at a low intensity Exercise performed at low intensities can improve insulin sensitivity in adults with DM and obesity; this volume corresponds to approximately 400 Kcal/week
Muscle endurance exercise	A combination of both aerobic and muscle endurance exercise, an optimal glycemic control and general health benefits can be obtained	Moderate-intensity exercise can benefit the glycemic levels High-intensity interval trainings are recommended as they improve the oxidative capacity of muscles
Sitting time	Do not remain seated for more than 30 continuous minutes	Performing constant interruptions of continuous sitting improves and stimulates the lipoprotein lipase (LPL) and decreases the concentration of triglycerides

Medical Assessment of the Individual with Diabetes Mellitus

The initial systemized assessment is fundamental when the individuals are integrated to a physical activity program, since any practice of physical activity involves the realization of a greater physiological effort, which represents greater cardiovascular, muscular-skeletal, and metabolic work and behavioral exposure to an activity that involves integration decisions to an activity in an individualized and programmed way. There are guidelines and findings to be found in individuals with chronic diseases that need to be considered and reviewed before attending patients with a specific disease [50]. It is important to follow a sequence of the clinical prescription process that includes activities and elements to be collected in every patient ending with their exercise plan (Table 31.7).

The exercise program can be adapted and modified according to the six elements, which although seem simple are determinant to adequately and effectively prescribe exercise in the individual with DM [51, 52] (Fig. 31.3).

Table 31.7 Components to evaluate the prescription of exercise in individuals with chronic diseases

Component	Elements
Evaluate background and manifestations of the presence of chronic noncommunicable diseases	Lifestyle Weight, height, waist circumference, blood glucose, BP, and dysautonomias
Determination of the level of physical activity	Inactive (<150 minutes of moderate PA per week) Active (>150 minutes of moderate PA per week) Very active (>300 minutes of moderate PA per week)
Determination of the risk level for the exercise	Low risk: noncommunicable diseases (non-NCDs) Medium risk: two or more NCDs present High risk: presence of two or more pathologies with symptoms
Determine perception-action of physical activity and nutrition Determine conducts toward physical activity	Scale from 1–10 of what they think the importance of physical activity and nutrition is and what they practice in their daily life Joy, motivation, self-efficacy, stage of behavior change toward physical activity; recommendations need to be accomplished = 150 minutes of moderate to vigorous physical activity per week
Assessment of physical fitness for health	Assessment of the five components 1. Aerobic capacity 2. Flexibility 3. Muscle strength 4. Muscle endurance 5. Body composition Evaluation of objective physical activity levels
Determination of postural and skeletal alterations that influence physical activity	Presence of alterations of the spine (kyphosis, scoliosis, hyperlordosis) Presence of knee abnormalities (genus valgo, genu varo) Presence of foot alterations (flat foot, cavus foot) Feet examination (every day)
Determine FITT and SMART goals	SMART = specific, measurable, attainable, realistic, timely FITT = specific frequency, intensity, type, and time of exercise
Provide written prescription and evidence of the exercise prescription on medical files	Provide a plan, continuous support, and follow-up

Before giving the patient the reasons why they should exercise, it is important to determine if there is any risk to their health. The recommendations have been called as pre-participation in physical activity. In persons with diabetes mellitus, we suggested the current American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM) recommendations for exercise pre-participation health screening [53] which are as follows: (1) an individual's current level of physical activity;

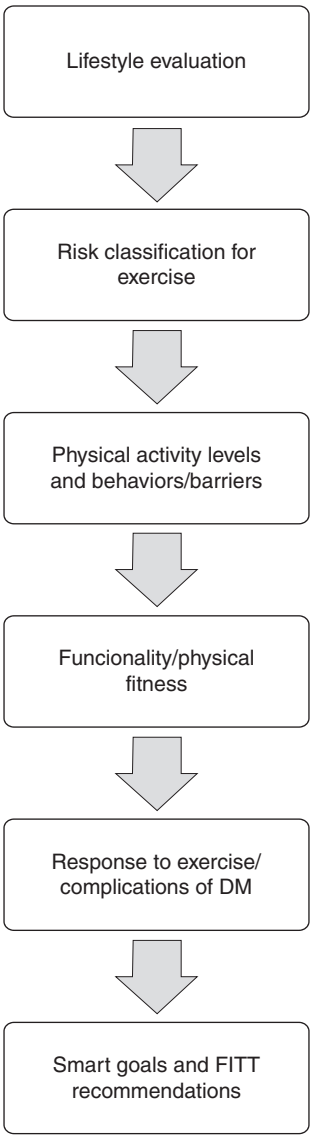


Fig. 31.3 Procedures for the clinical recommendation of physical activity and exercise prescription

(2) presence of signs or symptoms and/or known cardiovascular, metabolic, or renal disease; and (3) preferred exercise intensity as risk modulator variables of exercise-related cardiovascular events. With these new guidelines, the objectives are to eliminate unnecessary barriers for an individual to begin and maintain a regular exercise program and encourage healthy lifestyles through habitual physical activity [54].

Afterward, the patient is approached on their behavioral characteristics that include detecting the presence of conditions that could be aggravated if exercise is performed without previous medical examination through the risk factor assessment and risk factor classification. On a second phase, it's important to inquire attitudes toward physical activity. The individual's behavior determines the increase of physical activity and how exercise is carried out or a sport is practiced. Physical activity is a behavior, and like such, it should be evaluated and approached to achieve positive changes. This conduct is determined by constructs or characteristics that define its particularity, which is why it's important to evaluate the liking toward physical activity like self-determination [55] or self-efficacy [56]. It is necessary to evaluate these aspects that could influence whether an individual adheres or not to an exercise program [57]. The evaluation is done through the application of specific questionnaires designed and reported for this purpose. In addition to this, it is highly advisable to evaluate the psychological well-being, which is realized through the exploration and consideration of the significant predictors of well-being, stress being the most important, followed by strength, sense of coherence, satisfaction with life, humor, and coping [33].

Thereafter, the patient's anthropometric and functional characteristics are evaluated (such as a first- or second-level anthropometric assessment). These include the nutritional status assessment, determining the BMI, and a functional evaluation that includes assessments of at least the minimum physical functional components required of the physical condition for health according to age [58].

Cardiovascular Assessment

Since the cardiovascular system is the most affected system in diabetes and affected by macrovascular complications, this component should be assessed frequently and is a priority [53]. The basic elements for cardiovascular evaluation are:

1. Blood pressure and heart rate pre- and post-aerobic test. At the beginning of an exercise program, it is recommended that blood pressure is taken to recognize its variability in exercise (pre and post).
2. Determination of dysautonomia to detect the effects of microvascular, macrovascular, and neuropathic complications in the person with diabetes. Therefore, it is necessary to evaluate the presence of cardiovascular and hear rate (HR) and blood pressure (BP) alterations to exercise through specific tests called cardiovascular dysautonomic tests. This evaluation is fundamental since most of the manifestations and discomforts are cardiovascular and it is this system that in many ways delimits the comfortable and risk-free exercise. The importance of these tests is to provoke a response from HR and BP and its variability against an effort or stress and its capacity to respond adequately to cardiovascular function. It is important to determine dysautonomia with handgrip maneuvers, Valsalva maneuver, and supination-orthostatic maneuver (Table 31.8).

Table 31.8 Dysautonomy techniques to detect alterations of blood pressure and heart rate in individuals with diabetes mellitus

Test of dysautonomias
1. *Hyperventilation*: In this maneuver the patient will be asked to take a deep inspiration for 5 seconds, followed by a forced exhalation for the same amount of time. The heart rate and blood pressure will be recorded before the procedure, at the end of this process (inspiration-exhalation), and 30 seconds after the procedure
2. *Valsalva*: The patient will be instructed to blow heavily on the hose of an aneroid manometer three times, recording its maximum expiration. The patient will then be asked to hold the needle of the pressure gauge at 40 mm hg for 15 seconds. The heart rate and blood pressure will be recorded before the maneuver, at the end of the maneuver, and 30 seconds after the maneuver
3. *Handgrip*: The patient will be asked to perform isometric exercise with a dynamometer with his right arm on three occasions, recording his maximum strength, then holding it for 30 seconds, and taking the HR and BP after the maneuver
4. *Heart rate variation in the supine position*: The patient will remain in supine rest for 5 minutes, and the heart rate and blood pressure will be recorded before and after the maneuver
5. *Heart rate variation in orthostatic position*: An electrocardiographic tracing of the supine position can be taken, and the patient will be immediately invited to assume the standing position as fast as possible (3–5 seconds), remaining in this position during 5 minutes; during this time the continuous electrocardiographic tracing will be obtained, taking HR and TA until the end of the experimental session. Heart rate and blood pressure will be recorded at the minute and at the end of the beats monitored in the supine position. Between each maneuver there will be 3 minutes rest

There are other tests that are highly recommended such as a stress test determining his/her VO2 max including an electrocardiogram (ECG) if the individual is over 35 to detect electrocardiographically the cardiovascular dysautonomias [50]. This will be indicated in individuals who are considered to be at high cardiovascular risk according to different criteria based on the duration of diabetes, age of the individual, and history of metabolic control. It is recommended to follow the flowchart of detections that are presented below.

Anthropometric and Nutritional Assessment

It's highly recommended to include the assessment of weight, height, skinfolds, body circumferences (especially waist), and body composition. It is convenient to define the nutritional status, body composition, body form, and body size. It is recommended to emphasize the measure of body fat content and distribution, and abdominal adiposity through abdominal circumference measurement. This measurement of waist circumference is following the recommendations of the WHO measurement for waist circumference, measuring the narrowest part between the last rib and the iliac crest rim of the hip. It is recommended that this is done without clothes or with minimum clothes, to detect with more precision the narrowest part of the waist.

Physical Fitness Assessment

The physical fitness assessment for health in the individual with diabetes is fundamental since the individuals manifest the functional state they have. It has been reported that the individual is structurally and energetically affected (decrease in the amount of muscle glycogen, predisposition to lactacidemia, increase of counter regulatory hormones with predominance of adrenergic, less muscle mass). In these tests, it is advisable for a professional to perform the assessment. The following physical fitness components must be evaluated according to the American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM) which are aerobic capacity, muscular strength, muscle resistance, flexibility, and body composition [59]. Other tests can be added if the patient is older [58], and there are many laboratorial and field tests that can be applied [60].

Physical Activity Assessment

The assessment of the physical levels of the patients is necessary because it permits the clinician to provide specific recommendations for patients in order to identify their levels of physical activity. It should be assessed regularly as there are other major risk factors. One of the well-documented guides to the assessment of physical activity has been published and offers a decision matrix of selecting the best method [16].

Recommending Physical Activity and Prescribing Exercise

Regular physical activity and structured exercise are associated with numerous health benefits. One of the major benefits of regular exercise is improved functional capacity. On the other hand, the principles of exercise prescription are based on the dose-response relationship between exercise and physiological adaptation [50].

Physical Activity Recommendations

The physical activity recommendations in the individual with diabetes are based on the recommendations of the ADA [61] and the American College of Sports Medicine [62]. It is recommended that the majority of adults perform ≥30 minutes, 5 days a week of moderate cardiorespiratory physical activity for a total of ≥150 minutes or perform ≥20 minutes of vigorous physical activity per day for 3 or more days per week (≥75 minutes/week) or a combination of moderate- and vigorous-intensity exercise to achieve a total energy expenditure of ≥500–1000 MET minutes/week. The facts to

be monitored are physical activity intensity and activity energy expenditure.

The physical activity that is recommended in individuals with diabetes is the same as the WHO recommendations: at least 150 minutes of physical activity per week. However, it is important to consider the following indications: In adults, it is recommended that they perform 150 minutes daily of moderate physical activity through performing 2.5 hours (150 minutes) per week of moderate aerobic physical activity or 1 hour and 15 minutes (75 minutes) per week of intense physical activity.

Prescribing Exercise

Understanding the exercise recommendations as a physical activity with the intention of modifying physical aptitude and the FITT (frequency, intensity, type, and time) of exercise should be dosified. This aspect is important to modulate because of the future prevention implications [63]. The exercise volume or weight should be modulated and gradually incremented (FITT increment) (Table 31.9).

The objective of recommending exercise with those specifications is to contribute to the metabolic management in diabetes, decrease the risk of micro- and macrovascular complications, and improve the general life quality.

For an adequate recommendation and prescription of physical activity [50], we recommend to consider the individual under a holistic view that includes all aspects related with the individual, such as the body, the mind, and the spirit, with a multidisciplinary approach. The intention is to drive the individual to a process of change in attitude and conduct in the means to preserve and improve their health and create lifestyle changes, defining exercise correctly in all of its elements, such as frequency, intensity, type, and time/duration.

Table 31.9 Elements and characteristics of FITT recommendations of physical exercise

Characteristic	Recommendations
Frequency	At least three times a week
Intensity	Calculate exercise intensity by heart rate
	Karvonen formula or resting heart rate equation
	[a]MHR – RHR × exercise intensity – FCR = % de HR (exercise intensity) Male, age 20 years old Exercise intensity to work = 65% Resting heart rate = 80 beats per minute 200 – 80 × 0.65 + 80 = 158 beats per minute (Work heart rate at 65% of his MHR)
	Calculate: METS or calories expended by the physical activities Calculate counts, steps
Time	At least 10 continuing minutes if they want to improve cardiovascular fitness 150 minutes of moderate physical activity per week Increase to 300 minutes of moderate or vigorous PA per week if they want to have more benefits
Type	Any type while you avoid risk of injuries and cardiovascular and metabolic implications
Increment	Increment exercise volume gradually in order to maintain the beneficial effects

[a]*MHR* maximum heart rate, *RHR* resting heart rate, *FCR* frequency cardiac rate, *HR* heart frequency

The other important aspect is to look for a specific goal on the diabetes metabolic control. Exercise is a fundamental element to achieve basic goals in the management of the individual with diabetes, which include the achievement of normal levels of blood glucose, total cholesterol, triglycerides, blood pressure, HbA1c and weight control. These goals will be monitored and must have the informed participation of the patient in order to achieve them. The goal of exercise and diet in the individual with diabetes is to reduce complications and to offer better life quality by modifying their lifestyle into a healthy one.

The role of physical activity and exercise in the prevention and management of diabetes is to establish and promote changes in behavior. As a result of the treatment triad (medicine, exercise, and diet), the goals for the management of diabetes are to restore the patient's metabolism and restore the patient's lifestyle and decrease acute and chronic complications (Fig. 31.4).

Action Plan of Physical Activity and Exercise

Finally, the purpose is that all the health team who are responsible for the medical service have to know and offer comprehensible and practical messages and tips to patients expressed as indications and limitations for exercise. We encourage all the medical staff to use the five As of counseling [64]. This is a model that can help health workers to deliver messages of physical activity tailored to patients. It is based on five steps to promote and strengthen changes in people's behavior. These consisted of assess, advise, agree, assist, and arrange. The physical activity indicated is based on setting SMART (specific, measurable, attainable, realistic, timely) goals and giving a safe way to perform the load, volume, and progression of a physical activity or exercise, prescribe the indications, and define the limitations and risk management and contraindications [65].

Indications of Exercise

- Remember that the benefits in blood glucose control from exercising are manifested both during and after exercise.
- Effect on glucose control and metabolism. Ideally five times a week. With no more than 2 consecutive days without exercise as it loses the effect on the improvement in insulin resistance. Muscle strengthening work also has benefits and is recommended at least twice a week.

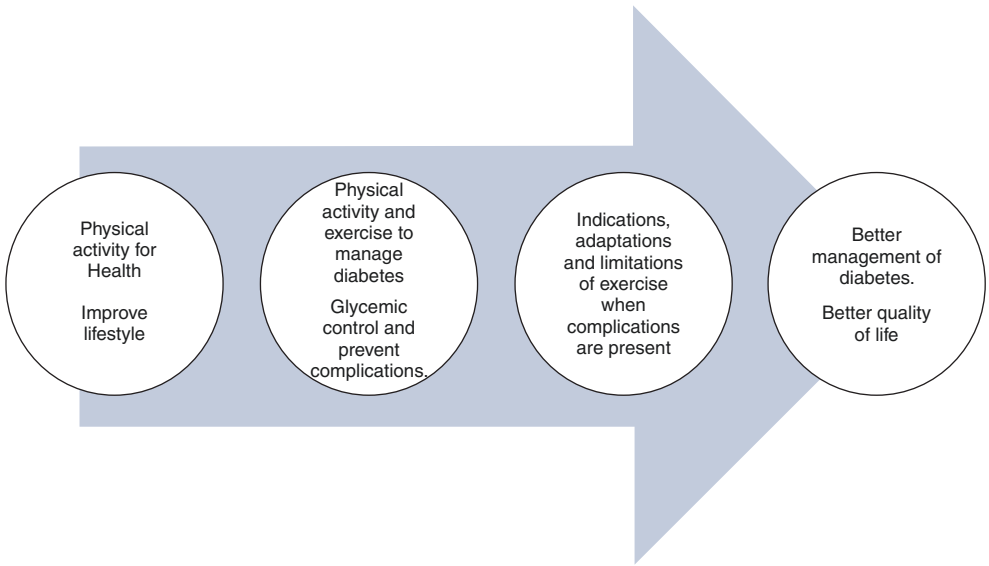


Fig. 31.4 The goals of physical activity and exercise management in persons with diabetes mellitus

- Consider the criteria that 1 minute of vigorous physical activity counts as 2 minutes of moderate intensity physical activity. Additionally, aerobic activities should be performed for at least 10 consecutive minutes.
- In the first sessions, sedentary people should focus more on the frequency of the exercise sessions than on the total time duration.
- Besides aerobic activities, muscle strengthening exercises should be included twice a week. Walking is the ideal exercise for the individual with diabetes who have remained inactive, especially for older patients. Swimming, cycling, and stationary biking are good options for those individuals whose feet are sensible due to peripheral neuropathy.
- Short-distance jogging is only adequate for those few patients with type 2 diabetes who have reduced their weight considerably or who have a normal weight at the beginning and those who have participated in a gradual walking program for some time and who don't show signs of peripheral neuropathy or cardiovascular disease. Obese patients must start with short distances (as short as 200 meters) and gradually increment the distance until reaching a few kilometers per day.
- Support groups are an excellent option because they promote adherence, auto efficacy, and are safe to perform physical activities.

Risk and Limitations

Energetic exercise programs (intense or vigorous) are inadequate for patients with recent diabetes diagnosis:

- Patients who present labile concentrations of blood glucose are always recommended to monitor blood glucose pre and post exercise at least the first 2 weeks.
- Preferably use the Karvonen formula to determine exercise intensity, especially for patients at risk of cardiovascular disease or those who are older than 5 years with DM or who have not shown adequate metabolic control.
- Exercise-induced hypoglycemia should be monitored by checking how blood glucose behaved after 8 hours of exercise.
- Existing diabetes complications (retinopathy, coronary disease, nephropathy, neuropathy) should always be detected and assessed periodically.
- Patients with retinopathy (of lower grade) and uncontrolled hypertension should avoid:
  - Weight lifting
  - Isometric exercises
  - Head positions lower than the heart level
  - Procedures that provoke the Valsalva maneuver (which increase chest pressure by breathing or exercising the upper limbs)
  - Rapid head movements
- Individuals with diabetes and hypertension should also:
  - Regulate intense activity of upper arms and upper body such as tennis or fronton (upper body exercises raise blood pressure more than lower limb activities).
  - Avoid exercise on hot and humid days.
  - Always check their feet on the day physical activity is performed.

In summary, physical activity should be considered a vital component of the management of the individuals with diabetes for accomplishing their goals. Based on all the evidence of the recommendations of physical activity and exercise, we have to promote in individuals with diabetes healthy lifestyles and wellness, assess physical activity, improve fit-

ness, limit physical inactivity, control the diseases, and limit the complications. A multidisciplinary team will need it to promote all the changes that the individuals with diabetes mellitus require to improve their health and control the disease [66]. We encourage extending the management of diabetes to the community through conforming groups of support which has showed a successful impact [67] (Fig. 31.4).

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. The recommendations of the World Health Organization (WHO) concerning about physical activity and exercise *for all the people* should be focused mainly on:
   (a) All the adult people should accomplish the recommendations of 150 minutes of moderate to vigorous physical activity.
   (b) The practice of physical activity should be a joy, promoting to people the desire to do it for pleasure.
   (c) The recommendations of physical activity must be an indication.
   (d) The recommendations of physical activity should be emphasized always on health purpose.
   (e) Only a and b.
2. The physical activity recommendations for health in adult people should include the following aspects:
   (a) Healthy lifestyles are more than just prescribed diet and exercise and should include behavioral, emotional, and social aspects in the management.
   (b) Adult should perform at least 150 minutes of moderate to vigorous physical activity most of the days in order to have health benefits.
   (c) Avoid sedentary behaviors as sitting for long time.
   (d) Include at least two sessions of strength training per week.
   (e) All of them.
3. The current recommendations of exercise and physical activity for persons with DM by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) are the following:
   (a) Most of the patients with diabetes mellitus should focus only on performing aerobic exercise.
   (b) The individual should perform at least 150 minutes per week of moderate physical activity or 75 minutes of vigorous physical activity.
   (c) Combination of both aerobic and muscle endurance exercise can have optimal glycemic control and general health benefits.
   (d) Do not remain seated for more than 30 minutes continuously.
   (e) Only B, C, and D are correct.
4. The benefits of physical activity on diabetes mellitus are based on the following evidence:
   (a) Resistance exercise decreases blood glucose in about minus 10 mg/dl.
   (b) Combined aerobic and anaerobic exercise can decrease the HbA1c levels in 30%.
   (c) Combined aerobic and resistance exercise can decrease systolic blood pressure (SBP) in average 19 to 20 mmhg and diastolic blood pressure (DBP) between 8 and 13 mmhg.
   (d) Only A and C are correct.
   (e) Only C is correct.
5. Steps of exercise prescription. The components to evaluate as a part of the prescription of exercise in patients with diabetes are:
   (a) Determination of postural and skeletal alterations.
   (b) Determination of previous and current physical activity levels and behaviors for physical activity as well.
   (c) Determination of the ACSM risk stratification for exercise.
   (d) Only C is correct for patients with diabetes mellitus.
   (e) A, B, and C are correct.
6. In order to detect some autonomic complications resulting from diabetes, it is highly recommended to explore and apply the following procedures and test:
   (a) Hyperventilation, Valsalva maneuver, handgrip maneuver, and heart rate variation in the supine position and heart rate variation in orthostatic position.
   (b) Electrocardiogram of 12 derivations.
   (c) Only treadmill test is enough.
   (d) A and B are correct.
   (e) Only B is correct.
7. Physical fitness for health is a very important aspect to evaluate when we prescribe an exercise program. Which are the basic health-related components?
   (a) Body composition
   (b) Muscular strength and muscular endurance
   (c) Flexibility
   (d) Cardiorespiratory fitness
   (e) All of them
8. The following are the steps to recommend the physical activity counseling process:
   (a) Assess the individual.
   (b) Advise about the benefits of physical activity and the implications of having sedentary behaviors.
   (c) Agree about the physical activity that the patient can do based on SMART goals and FITT definition of exercise.
   (d) Assist and arrange the physical activity performance by the individual and adjust the recommendations and connect to resources.
   (e) All of them.
9. SMART goals of physical activity and exercise mean that people meet the following objectives:
   (a) Specific, measurable, attainable, realistic, timely goals

(b) Specific, accumulate, accessible, unfailing goals
(c) Goals determined by the physician
(d) Goals defined by the patient

10. In order to have a control of dose effect of the exercise, we should modulate the following aspects about exercise:
(a) Define the intensity of exercise.
(b) Define the type and time of exercise.
(c) Define the frequency of performing the exercise.
(d) All of them.
(e) Only A is correct.

Correct Answers

1. (e) Only a and b
2. (e) All of them
3. (e) Only B, C, and D are correct
4. (e) Only C is correct
5. (e) A, B, and C are correct
6. (e) Only B is correct
7. (e) All of them
8. (e) All of them
9. (e) Goals defined by the patient
10. (e) Only A is correct

References

1. WHO. Global health risks: mortality and burden of disease attributable to selected major risks. Bull World Health Organ [Internet]. 2009;87:646. Available from: http://www.who.int/healthinfo/global_burden_disease/GlobalHealthRisks_report_full.pdf.
2. Ding D, Kolbe-Alexander T, Nguyen B, Katzmarzyk PT, Pratt M, Lawson KD. The economic burden of physical inactivity: a systematic review and critical appraisal. Br J Sports Med [Internet]. 2017;51(19):1392–409. Available from: http://bjsm.bmj.com/lookup/doi/10.1136/bjsports-2016-097385.
3. Henson J, Yates T, Biddle SJH, Edwardson CL, Khunti K, Wilmot EG, et al. Associations of objectively measured sedentary behaviour and physical activity with markers of cardiometabolic health. Diabetologia. 2013;56(5):1012–20.
4. Kyu HH, Bachman VF, Alexander LT, Mumford JE, Afshin A, Estep K, et al. Physical activity and risk of breast cancer, colon cancer, diabetes, ischemic heart disease, and ischemic stroke events: systematic review and dose-response meta-analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2013. Bmj [Internet]. 2016;354:i3857. Available from: http://www.bmj.com/lookup/doi/10.1136/bmj.i3857.
5. Warburton DE, Nicol CW, Bredin SS. Health benefits of physical activity: the evidence. CMAJ. 2006;174(6):801–9. https://doi.org/10.1503/cmaj.051351.
6. Janssen I, LeBlanc AG, Janssen I, Twisk J, Tolfrey K, Jones A, et al. Systematic review of the health benefits of physical activity and fitness in school-aged children and youth. Int J Behav Nutr Phys Act [Internet]. 2010;7(1):40. Available from: http://ijbnpa.biomedcentral.com/articles/10.1186/1479-5868-7-40.
7. World Health Organization. Draft WHO global action plan on physical activity 2018–2030. Vol. 2011. 2018. p. 1–36.
8. de Souto Barreto P. Time to challenge public health guidelines on physical activity. Sports Med. 2015;45:769–73.
9. Bushman B, American College of Sports Medicine. ACSM's complete guide to fitness & health, 2E. Champaign: Human Kinetics; 2017.
10. Greaves CJ, Sheppard KE, Abraham C, Hardeman W, Roden M, Evans PH, et al. Systematic review of reviews of intervention components associated with increased effectiveness in dietary and physical activity interventions. BMC Public Health [Internet]. 2011;11(1):119. Available from: http://bmcpublichealth.biomedcentral.com/articles/10.1186/1471-2458-11-119.
11. Galaviz KI, Narayan K, Lobelo F, Weber MB. Lifestyle and the prevention of type 2 diabetes: a status report. Am J Lifestyle Med. 2015;12(1):4–20. https://doi.org/10.1177/1559827615619159.
12. Katzmarzyk PT. Physical activity, sedentary behavior, and health: paradigm paralysis or paradigm shift? Diabetes. 2010;59(11):2717–25.
13. Caspersen CJ, Powell KE, Christenson GM. Physical activity, exercise, and physical fitness: definitions and distinctions for health-related research. Public Health Rep [Internet]. 1985;100(2):126–31. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3920711%5Cnhttp://www.pubmedcentral.nih.gov/articlerender.fcgi?artid=PMC1424733.
14. Blair SN, Khol HW, Powell KE. Physical activity, physical fitness, and health. In: Rogozkin VA, Maughan R, editors. Current research in sports sciences. Boston: Springer; 1996.
15. Howley ET. Type of activity: resistance, aerobic and leisure versus occupational physical activity. Med Sci Sports Exerc. 2001;33(6):s364–9.
16. Strath SJ, Kaminsky LA, Ainsworth BE, Ekelund U, Freedson PS, Gary RA, et al. Guide to the assessment of physical activity: clinical and research applications: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation. 2013;128(20):2259–79.
17. Tremblay MS, Colley RC, Saunders TJ, Healy GN, Owen N. Physiological and health implications of sedentary lifestyle. Appl Physiol Nutr Metab. 2010;35:725–40.
18. Tremblay MS, Aubert S, Barnes JD, Saunders TJ, Carson V, Latimer-Cheung AE, et al. Sedentary Behavior Research Network (SBRN) – Terminology Consensus Project process and outcome. Int J Behav Nutr Phys Act [Internet]. 2017;14(1):75. Available from: http://ijbnpa.biomedcentral.com/articles/10.1186/s12966-017-0525-8.
19. Levine JA, Vander MW, Hill O, Klesges R. Non-exercise activity thermogenesis: the crouching Tiger hidden dragon of societal weigh gain. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol [Internet]. 2006;26:729–36. Available from: http://atv.ahajjournals.org/cgi/content/full/26/4/729.
20. Tremblay MS, Carson V, Chaput J-P. Introduction to the Canadian 24-Hour Movement Guidelines for Children and Youth: An Integration of Physical Activity, Sedentary Behaviour, and Sleep. Appl Physiol Nutr Metab [Internet]. 2016;41(6 (Suppl. 3)):iii–v. Available from: http://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/10.1139/apnm-2016-0203.
21. Blair SN, Cheng Y, Holder JS. Is physical activity or physical fitness more important in defining health benefits? Med Sci Sports Exerc. 2001;33(6 Suppl):S379–99.
22. Gill DL, Hammond CC, Reifsteck EJ, Jehu CM, Williams RA, Adams MM, et al. Physical activity and quality of life. J Prev Med Public Health [Internet]. 2013;46(Suppl 1):S28–34. Available from: http://www.pubmedcentral.nih.gov/articlerender.fcgi?artid=3567315&tool=pmcentrez&rendertype=abstract.
23. Levine JA. Health-chair reform: your chair: comfortable but deadly. Diabetes. 2010;59(11):2715–6.
24. Katzmarzyk PT, Barreira TV, Broyles ST, Champagne CM, Chaput JP, Fogelholm M, et al. Physical activity, sedentary time, and obesity in an international sample of children. Med Sci Sports Exerc. 2015;47(10):2062–9.
25. Tudor-Locke C, Swift DL, Schuna JM, Dragg AT, Davis AB, Martin CK, et al. WalkMore: a randomized controlled trial of pedometer-based interventions differing on intensity

messages. BMC Public Health [Internet]. 2014;14(1):168. Available from: http://bmcpublichealth.biomedcentral.com/articles/10.1186/1471-2458-14-168.
26. Surani S, Bopparaju S. Sleep and diabetes. Int J Endocrinol. 2010;2010:759509.
27. Praet SF, Rozenberg R, Van Loon L. Type 2 diabetes. In: Exercise and chronic disease: an evidence-based approach. Routledge: Taylor & Francis Group; 2011. p. 265–96.
28. Jauregui-Ulloa E, Lopez-Taylor JR, Navarro I. Prescription of exercise to patients with diabetes mellitus. Evidence, benefits and management. Diabetes Hoy. 2013;19(2):3144–55.
29. Mendes R, Sousa N, Almeida A, Subtil P, Guedes-Marques F, Reis VM, et al. Exercise prescription for patients with type 2 diabetes—a synthesis of international recommendations: narrative review. Br J Sports Med [Internet]. 2016;50(22):1379–81. Available from: http://bjsm.bmj.com/lookup/doi/10.1136/bjsports-2015-094895.
30. Pedersen BK, Saltin B. Exercise as medicine - evidence for prescribing exercise as therapy in 26 different chronic diseases. Scand J Med Sci Sports. 2015;25:1–72.
31. Goedecke JH, Ojuka EO, editors. Diabetes and physical activity. Med Sport Sci. 2014;60:130–40. https://doi.org/10.1159/000357343.
32. Rana JS, Li TY, Manson JE, Hu FB. Adiposity compared with physical inactivity and risk of type 2 diabetes in women. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(1):53–8.
33. McCarthy M, Edwardson CL, Davies MJ, Henson J, Gray L, Khunti K, et al. Change in sedentary time, physical activity, bodyweight, and HbA1c in high-risk adults. Med Sci Sports Exerc. 2017;49(6):1120–5.
34. Mead E, Brown T, Rees K, Azevedo LB, Whittaker V, Jones D, et al. Diet, physical activity and behavioural interventions for the treatment of overweight or obese children from the age of 6 to 11 years. In: Ells LJ, editor. Cochrane Database Syst Rev [Internet]. Chichester: Wiley; 2017 [cited 2017 Aug 15]. Available from: http://doi.wiley.com/10.1002/14651858.CD012651.
35. Karstoft K, Pedersen BK. Exercise and type 2 diabetes: focus on metabolism and inflammation. Immunol Cell Biol [Internet]. 2016;94(2):146–50. Available from: http://www.nature.com/doifinder/10.1038/icb.2015.101.
36. Teixeira-Lemos E, Nunes S, Teixeira F, Reis F. Regular physical exercise training assists in preventing type 2 diabetes development: focus on its antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties. Cardiovasc Diabetol [Internet]. 2011;10:12. Available from: http://www.cardiab.com/content/10/1/12.
37. Bird SR, Hawley JA. Update on the effects of physical activity on insulin sensitivity in humans. BMJ Open Sport Exerc Med [Internet]. 2017;2(1):e000143. Available from: http://bmjopensem.bmj.com/lookup/doi/10.1136/bmjsem-2016-000143.
38. Garber CE, Blissmer B, Deschenes MR, Franklin BA, Lamonte MJ, Lee IM, et al. Quantity and quality of exercise for developing and maintaining cardiorespiratory, musculoskeletal, and neuromotor fitness in apparently healthy adults: guidance for prescribing exercise. Med Sci Sports Exerc. 2011;43(7):1334–59.
39. Takaishi T, Hayashi T. Stair ascending–descending exercise accelerates the decrease in postprandial hyperglycemia more efficiently than bicycle exercise. BMJ Open Diabetes Res Care [Internet]. 2017;5(1):e000428. Available from: http://drc.bmj.com/lookup/doi/10.1136/bmjdrc-2017-000428.
40. Dempsey PC, Larsen RN, Sethi P, Sacre JW, Straznicky NE, Cohen ND, et al. Benefits for type 2 diabetes of interrupting prolonged sitting with brief bouts of light walking or simple resistance activities. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(6):964–72.
41. Hamilton MT, Hamilton DG, Zderic TW. Role of low energy expenditure and sitting in obesity, metabolic syndrome, type 2 diabetes, and cardiovascular disease. Diabetes. 2007;56:2655–67.
42. Heden TD, Winn NC, Mari A, Booth FW, Rector RS, Thyfault JP, et al. Postdinner resistance exercise improves postprandial risk factors more effectively than predinner resistance exercise in patients with type 2 diabetes. J Appl Physiol [Internet]. 2015;118(5):624–34. Available from: http://jap.physiology.org/lookup/doi/10.1152/japplphysiol.00917.2014.
43. Batacan RB Jr, Duncan MJ, Dalbo VJ, Tucker PS, Fenning AS. Effects of light intensity activity on CVD risk factors : a systematic review of intervention studies. Biomed Res Int. 2015;2015:1–10.
44. Dutton GR, Lewis CE. The look AHEAD trial: implications for lifestyle intervention in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Prog Cardiovasc Dis. 2015;58(1):69–75.
45. Angermayr L, Melchart D, Linde K. Multifactorial lifestyle interventions in the primary and secondary prevention of cardiovascular disease and type 2 diabetes mellitus—a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. Ann Behav Med [Internet]. 2010;40(1):49–64. Available from: http://link.springer.com/10.1007/s12160-010-9206-4.
46. Gregg EW, Chen H, Wagenknecht LE, Clark JM, Delahanty LM, Bantle J, Look AHEAD Research Group. Association of an intensive lifestyle intervention with remission of type 2 diabetes. JAMA. 2012;308(23):2489–96. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2012.67929.
47. Zizi F, Jean-Louis G, Brown CD, Ogedegbe G, Boutin-Foster C, McFarlane SI. Sleep duration and the risk of diabetes mellitus: epidemiologic evidence and pathophysiologic insights. Curr Diab Rep. 2010;10(1):43–7.
48. Glasgow RE, Emont S, Miller DC. Assessing delivery of the five "As" for patient-centered counseling. Health Promot Int. 2006;21(3):245–55.
49. Galaviz KI, Jauregui-Ulloa E, Fabrigar LR, Latimer-Cheung A, Lopez Y, Taylor J, Lévesque L. Physical activity prescription among Mexican physicians: a structural equation analysis of the theory of planned behaviour. Int J Clin Pract. 2015;69:375.
50. Moore G, Durstine JL, Painter P, American College of Sports Medicine. ACSM's exercise management for persons with chronic diseases and disabilities, 4E. Champaign: Human Kinetics; 2016.
51. Galaviz KI, Jauregui-Ulloa E, Fabrigar LR, Latimer-Cheung A, Lopez Y, Taylor J, Lévesque L. Physical activity prescription among Mexican physicians: a structural equation analysis of the theory of planned behaviour. Int J Clin Pract. 2015;69(3):375–83.
52. Jauregui-Ulloa E, Lopez-Taylor JR, Navarro I. The physical activity professional role as a provider of exercise prescription in chronic diseases. In: Reynaga-Estrada P, Muñoz-Hernandez T, editors. La actividad física y la salud en la formación básica del profesional de la cultura física y del deporte. Guadalajara, Jalisco. Mexico: Universidad de Guadalajara; 2013. p. 97–105.
53. Riebe D, Franklin BA, Thompson PD, Garber CE, Whitfield GP, Magal M, et al. Updating ACSM's recommendations for exercise preparticipation health screening. Med Sci Sports Exerc. 2015;47(11):2473–9.
54. Galaviz KI, Hutber A. Exercise is medicine. A flexible global model for linking sports medicine to primary and community care. Aspetar Sports. 2017;6:104–8.
55. Deci EL, Ryan RM. The "what" and "why" of goal pursuits: of behavior human needs and the self-determination. Psychol Inq. 2000;11(4):227–68.
56. Glanz K, Rimer BK, Viswanath K, editors. Health behavior and health education: theory, research, and practice. Hoboken: John Wiley & Sons; 2008.
57. Pelmezi D, Jennigs E, Marcus B. Self-efficacy and physical activity. Health Fit J. 2009;13(2):16–21.
58. Rikli RE, Jones CJ. Senior fitness test manual. Leeds: Human Kinetics; 2013.
59. Pescatello LS, Riebe D, Thompson PD, editors. ACSM's guidelines for exercise testing and prescription. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013.
60. Heyward VH, Gibson AL. Advanced fitness assessment and exercise prescription. New Mexico: Human Kinetics; 2014. p. 138–72.
61. Colberg SR, Sigal RJ, Yardley JE, Riddell MC, Dunstan DW, Dempsey PC, et al. Physical activity/exercise and diabetes: a posi-

tion statement of the American Diabetes Association. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(11):2065–79.
62. American College of Sports Medicine. Exercise and type 2 diabetes: American College of Sports Medicine and the American Diabetes Association: joint position statement. Med Sci Sports Exerc. 2010;42(12):2282–303.
63. Barisic A, Scoot BA, Leatherdale MA, Kreiger N. Importance of frequency, intensity, time and type (FITT) in physical activity assessment for epidemiological research. Can J Public Health. 2011;102(3):174–5.
64. Meriwether RA, Lee JA, Lafleur AS, Wiseman P. Physical activity counseling. Am Fam Physician. 2008;77(8):1129–36.
65. Hoffman TC, Maher CG, Briffa T, et al. Prescribing exercise interventions for patients with chronic conditions. CMAJ. 2016;188(7):510–8.
66. Tracy MF, Chlan L. Interdisciplinary research teams. Clin Nurse Spec [Internet]. 2014;28(1):12–4. Available from: http://content.wkhealth.com/linkback/openurl?sid=WKPTLP:landingpage&an=00002800-201401000-00005.
67. Zabaleta AM, Forbes A. Structured group-based education for type 2 diabetes in primary care. Br J Community Nurs [Internet]. 2007;12(4):158–62. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17505331.

Part VI

Drug Therapy

The "Old" Oral Antidiabetics

32

Susanne Buhse and Ingrid Mühlhauser

Introduction

Treatment of patients with type 2 diabetes aims to avoid acute symptoms of hyperglycemia and to prevent macro- and microvascular complications. In recent years, the number of glucose-lowering drugs increased. The American Diabetes Association (ADA) lists more than ten drug classes of available glucose-lowering agents in their standards of medical care in diabetes [1]. All are proven to decrease HbA1c levels or postprandial glucose excursions, but evidence on patient-relevant outcomes, such as cardiovascular mortality, amputations, or retinopathy, is sparse. Reduction of HbA1c values is often used as a surrogate outcome measure to assess the efficacy of antidiabetic medication. However, its appropriateness has been disproven [2, 3]. In the Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) study [4] and the Veterans Affairs Diabetes Trial (VADT) [5], a rigid treatment regime with low HbA1c targets did not result in better patient-relevant outcomes. Patients in the intervention arm of the ACCORD study even had a higher risk of mortality. Consequently, the study was terminated early [4]. Some drugs were withdrawn from markets because of a negative benefit-risk ratio, e.g., phenformin, which increased lactic acidosis or rosiglitazone (in Europe) that reduced HbA1c values but may increase cardiovascular risk. In recent years, pharmaceutical companies decided to withdraw several new antidiabetic agents from the German market, such as vildagliptin and canagliflozin, because no additional benefit over usual care could be demonstrated, and therefore health insurances would not have covered additional costs.

In 2012, the ADA and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD) recommended patient-centered care including shared decision-making (SDM) [6] and reasserted this position in their recent statement [7]. SDM is a particular form of communication between patients and their healthcare professionals. It focuses on the mutual exchange of information in order to involve patients in the decision-making process [8]. Therefore, patients need understandable information on probabilities of benefits and harms of treatment options [9–11]. The question to be answered is: what option is the best to prevent diabetes-related complications and yet in line with individual patient values and preferences? Supportive tools in that process are patient decision aids which help patients to weigh up pros and cons of diabetes treatment [12, 13].

This chapter gives an overview of older classes of antidiabetic agents and their efficacy. It is based on a systematic inventory published in 2015 [3]. Sulfonylureas (SU) and biguanides are the oldest classes of oral glucose-lowering agents. Later, thiazolidinediones (TZDs), alpha-glucosidase inhibitors (AGIs), and meglitinides were approved. Table 32.1 shows the old drug classes and their compounds that are still available in the USA or Europe. Newer classes, such as sodium-glucose cotransporter-2 (SGLT-2) inhibitors and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors, will be described in the following chapters of this book.

According to recent guidelines [1, 7, 14, 15], this chapter focuses on the efficacy of metformin and SU monotherapies compared with other monotherapies as well as comparisons of metformin-based combinations. At the end of this chapter, we give an example of our decision aid for patients with type 2 diabetes and how diabetes educators share evidence-based information with their patients [16, 17].

S. Buhse (✉) · I. Mühlhauser
Faculty of Mathematics, Informatics and Natural Sciences,
Unit of Health Sciences and Education, University of Hamburg,
Hamburg, Germany
e-mail: Susanne.Buhse@uni-hamburg.de;
Ingrid_Muehlhauser@uni-hamburg.de

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_32

Table 32.1 Overview of older classes of antidiabetic agents

Class	Compounds[a]	Mechanism of action
Biguanides	Metformin	Multiple sites of action. Not fully understood. Increase of insulin sensitivity by increasing peripheral glucose uptake, decrease of intestinal glucose absorption, and decrease of hepatic glucose production
Sulfonylurea (SU), 2nd and 3rd generation	Glyburide (Glibenclamide) Glimepiride Glipizide Gliclazide	Stimulation of insulin release in pancreatic beta cells. Decrease in hepatic clearance of insulin. Additional extra-pancreatic mechanisms of actions have been described
Thiazolidinediones	Pioglitazone Rosiglitazone (withdrawn from many markets)	Reduction of insulin resistance in target cells through transcription of several genes involved in glucose and lipid metabolism
Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors (AGIs)	Acarbose Miglitol	Inhibition of alpha-glucosidase, which delays intestinal degradation of complex carbohydrates and thus prolongs postprandial glucose absorption
Meglitinides	Nateglinide Repaglinide	Stimulation of insulin release in beta cells. Rapid-acting stimulation. Weaker binding affinity and faster dissociation than SU

Adapted from [3]
[a]Available in Europe (EMA) or the USA (FDA) [1]

Methods

We updated our search from April 2014 [3]. In a first step, we searched PubMed and the Cochrane library for systematic reviews and meta-analyses published from May 2014 to the end of July 2017. Systematic reviews were considered if they included randomized controlled trials on the efficacy of metformin, sulfonylureas, thiazolidinediones, meglitinides, or alpha-glucosidase inhibitors as monotherapy or combination of two or three drugs. There is a growing number of network analyses. They typically comprise indirect comparisons when there is no head-to-head comparison available. Network analyses are methodologically challenging and can lead to false results and interpretations if differences between studies were not adequately considered [18]. Treatment of type 2 diabetes is complex, and as a result, RCTs in meta-analyses are usually heterogeneous. We therefore excluded network meta-analyses. In addition, inclusion criteria, such as study duration, sample size, target group, and drug classes, vary between systematic reviews. Hence, following our previous methodological approach [3], we extracted RCTs from the reviews that fulfilled our inclusion criteria, (1) patient-relevant primary endpoint, i.e., macro- and microvascular complications, cardiovascular mortality, total mortality, and quality of life; (2) intention-to-treat analysis; (3) follow-up of at least 24 weeks and adequate sample size; and (4) hard clinical endpoints had to be reported. Finally, we searched for further studies and screened the websites of the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE), the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ), and the German Institute for Quality and Efficiency in Health Care (IQWIG) for new reports and guidelines.

Results

The search update for systematic reviews and meta-analyses resulted in 516 records. Most of them were network analyses. Although the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the European Medicines Agency (EMA) changed licensing regulations toward cardiovascular outcome trials for glucose-lowering drugs in 2008, reviews mainly focused on surrogate endpoints, such as HbA1c level. We identified one systematic review on the efficacy of metformin compared to no intervention, placebo, or lifestyle intervention [19]. Another meta-analysis compared metformin and SU as monotherapy [20], and four evaluated the effects of TZDs [21–24]. With respect to alpha-glucosidase inhibitors and meglitinides, no additional review could be identified. A recently updated meta-analysis by the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) evaluated all available glucose-lowering drugs [25, 26]. The report includes RCTs and observational studies on (1) comparisons of monotherapies (metformin, thiazolidinediones, sulfonylureas, DPP-4 inhibitors, SGLT-2 inhibitors, and GLP-1 receptor agonists), (2) comparisons of metformin alone and metformin-based combinations, and (3) comparisons of metformin-based combinations where the second drug was one of the monotherapies or insulin treatment. The evidence was graded separately for both study types. The AHRQ search update was performed through December 2016. Our search for more recent RCTs from January 2016 to July 2017 yielded 222 records. No further eligible RCTs could be identified. Overall, we could not include any new relevant RCTs for this chapter.

Metformin

Metformin belongs to the class of biguanides. It is the only still licensed compound of its class after phenformin was withdrawn from the markets. In the University Group

Diabetes Program (UGDP) [27, 28], the first large RCT that evaluated the efficacy of glucose-lowering drugs on macro- and microvascular outcomes, phenformin was associated with an increase of cardiac mortality. In contrast, metformin is internationally recommended as initial drug treatment for people with type 2 diabetes [1, 7, 15, 29, 30]. This is mainly based on the results of the United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS), published in 1998 [31]. About 4000 patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes were enrolled in this RCT. The study objective was to assess the efficacy of intensive blood glucose-lowering therapy compared to conventional treatment (primarily with diet). Patients in the intensive treatment group were supposed to achieve a fasting plasma glucose level of less than 6 mmol/L. The fasting plasma glucose target of the conventional treatment arm was less than 15 mmol/L with no symptoms of hyperglycemia. Non-overweight patients were randomly assigned to intensive treatment with insulin, intensive treatment with sulfonylurea, or conventional therapy with diet. A subgroup of overweight patients had the additional possibility to be randomized to intensive treatment with metformin [31, 32]. A total of 342 patients were assigned to metformin and 411 patients to conventional control with diet [31].

The median HbA1c level of the intensive treatment group with metformin was 7.4% during the 10 years of follow-up. The conventional group had a median HbA1c level of 8.0%. Compared to conventional treatment, the metformin monotherapy arm showed significant reductions in *any diabetes-related endpoint*, a composite endpoint comprising the following outcome measures: sudden death, death from hyperglycemia or hypoglycemia, fatal or nonfatal myocardial infarction, angina, heart failure, stroke, renal failure, amputation of at least one digit, vitreous hemorrhage, retinopathy requiring photocoagulation, blindness in one eye, or cataract extraction. Moreover, *diabetes-related death*, *all-cause mortality*, and *myocardial infarction* significantly decreased in the intensive treatment group with metformin.

Based on these results, metformin became the first-line drug for patients with type 2 diabetes who do not achieve their HbA1c target with diet and other lifestyle interventions alone. However, the results of the UKPDS have not yet been reproduced [2, 33]. The UKPDS was a study with an open-label design which may lead to overestimated results. The protocol was changed during the study. The initially defined significance threshold of 1% was later changed to 5%. The significant difference in reduction of total mortality and myocardial infarction in the metformin group was above the threshold of 1% [33].

Antihypertensive treatment or statins may have a greater effect on mortality than metformin [34]. This may also explain the results of the UKPDS follow-up study [35] which reported significant reductions in total mortality and cardiovascular mortality for all intensive treatment groups 10 years after the main publication of the UKPDS results. Considering the high risks of bias of the UKPDS, the interpretation of the follow-up results as long-term effect of intensive early glucose control might be misleading [36]. In addition, only about one-third of the initially randomized patients were analyzed in this follow-up study.

A meta-analysis that included 13 studies comparing metformin as monotherapy or add-on therapy to diet, placebo, or no treatment found no significant effects on all-cause mortality, cardiovascular mortality, or microvascular complications [37]. Of the included RCTs that assessed patient-relevant outcomes as primary endpoint [31, 38–40], only UKPDS [31] showed a beneficial effect for treatment with metformin.

In the UKPDS, metformin monotherapy was also associated with a decrease in *any diabetes-related endpoint* and *all-cause mortality* compared to intensive treatment with sulfonylurea or insulin [31]. Data on metformin compared to SU alone were not reported in the UKPDS [20].

The study on the Prognosis and Effect of Antidiabetic Drugs on Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus With Coronary Artery Disease (SPREAD-DIMCAD) [41] compared metformin with the SU glipizide in 304 Chinese people with type 2 diabetes mellitus and coronary artery disease. The targeted HbA1c level was less than 7% for both groups. The primary endpoint was *recurrent cardiovascular events*, a composite outcome measure comprising nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke, arterial revascularization, cardiovascular death, and all-cause mortality. Study results showed a significant reduction in this endpoint in favor of the metformin group. However, there was a substantial risk of bias which limits the validity of the study results. The study was retrospectively registered, and there is no study protocol published. Data from 5 years of follow-up were analyzed, but the study drug was only administered for 3 years. It was not reported whether the study treatment was maintained after this time.

A meta-analysis on the effects of SU monotherapy compared to metformin monotherapy did not find any differences between treatment groups regarding all-cause or cardiovascular mortality [20]. A potential benefit of SU over metformin was identified in nonfatal macrovascular outcomes, but definitions of that composite endpoint were heterogeneous. There were no data on microvascular outcomes for a meta-analysis. Results of that meta-analysis were mainly based on "A Diabetes Outcome Progression Trial" (ADOPT), a multicenter, randomized controlled, double-blind trial with 4 years of follow-up [42]. Patients with untreated diabetes were randomized to metformin, glibenclamide, or rosiglitazone. Primary endpoint was *time to treatment failure*, defined as fasting plasma glucose level of more than 180 mg per deciliter after 6 weeks at maximum tolerated dose of the study

drug. As this is not a clinical hard endpoint, we have excluded this trial from our overview. However, there was no difference regarding all-cause mortality or fatal myocardial infarction between the glibenclamide and metformin groups [20, 42].

Compared to sulfonylurea alone, the combination of metformin and sulfonylurea significantly increased *death from any cause* and *diabetes-related death* in overweight and non-overweight patients in the UKPDS [31]. The meta-analysis by Boussageon et al. [37] confirmed a significant increase in all-cause and cardiovascular mortality for metformin plus SU compared to metformin monotherapy. The results were mainly based on the UKPDS. After excluding this study, no group difference was seen in both endpoints.

The HOME (Hyperinsulinemia: the Outcome of its Metabolic Effects) trial evaluated the efficacy of metformin in the Netherlands [40]. The RCT included 390 overweight and obese patients with type 2 diabetes. Metformin added to insulin therapy was compared to insulin monotherapy. After about 4 years, there was no difference between groups regarding cardiovascular and total mortality or microvascular outcomes (progression of retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy) but a significant reduction in a combined macrovascular endpoint for patients with metformin plus insulin treatment. This composite endpoint included a total of 13 separate outcome measures, e.g., myocardial infarction, heart failure, stroke, diabetic foot, percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, non-traumatic amputation, and sudden death. Patients' characteristics were unequally distributed between the study groups at baseline. For example, in the metformin group, there were fewer smokers (19% vs. 30%) and more patients with antihypertensive medication (47% vs. 39%). In addition, the number of non-completers differed between the metformin plus insulin study arm (n = 65) and the insulin alone arm (n = 48), mainly because of adverse events.

A recent systematic review which analyzed RCTs published until February 2017 [19] found similar results regarding the efficacy of metformin. The authors identified no more recent RCTs than earlier meta-analyses. However, study selection was not completely transparent. The UKPDS [31] was included in the meta-analysis, but only the combination of metformin and SU compared to SU alone, not the comparison of metformin with diet or metformin monotherapy with SU. Moreover, the authors included the 10-year follow-up UKPDS in their analysis. Observational studies were excluded. In fact, the level of evidence of the UKPDS follow-up publication [35] is quite similar to observational studies due to the already mentioned risks of bias [33, 36].

Compared with other interventions, metformin does not increase the risk of mild or severe hypoglycemia. The main adverse events associated with metformin are gastrointestinal side effects, in particular diarrhea. There have been warnings of lactic acidosis due to metformin. The latest Cochrane review [43] and the AHRQ report [25] did not find an increased risk of lactic acidosis with metformin use. Up to 2016, metformin was not recommended for patients with moderate to severe kidney function. Following this advice by practicing physicians might be one reason for a low number of reported cases of lactic acidosis. In 2016, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the European Medicines Agency (EMA) changed recommendations to allow metformin use in patients with moderately reduced kidney function (GFR = 30–59 ml/min) [44, 45]. The FDA explicitly recommends the assessment of benefits and risks in patients with metformin whose GFR fall below 45 mL/minute/1.73 m^2. Starting metformin in patients with eGFR between 30 and 45 mL/minute/1.73 m^2 is not recommended [45].

Sulfonylurea

The first-generation SU tolbutamide and chlorpropamide were introduced in the 1950s. In the UGDP, tolbutamide increased mortality risk. Nonetheless, both substances were extensively used even after publication of the UGDP in many countries. Today, the first-generation SU have been replaced by the second- and third-generation SU. SU are recommended as initial drug therapy if metformin is contraindicated or not tolerated in patients [15, 46]. Effects of SU compared to metformin are already described in the metformin part of this chapter. We additionally searched for systematic reviews and RCTs on the efficacy of SU as monotherapy compared to diet, placebo, or lifestyle interventions.

As in our previous overview [3], the only RCT that met our inclusion criteria was the UKPDS [32]. In the UKPDS 33, effects of intensive blood glucose control with either SU or insulin were compared to conventional treatment. A total of 615 patients were assigned to glibenclamide, and 896 received conventional treatment which comprised dietary advice. Over 10 years, median HbA1c values were 7.2% for glibenclamide and 7.9% for conventional therapy. More patients in the conventional treatment arm had the primary endpoint *any diabetes-related endpoint* and microvascular complications, but there were no significant effects on macrovascular outcomes. The effect on the microvascular outcome was mainly attributed to fewer cases of retinal photocoagulation [32].

Patients of the SU group gained more weight (1.7 kg) than the conventional treatment group, and more had major hypoglycemic events (1.4% vs. 0.7%) over 10 years (Table 32.2).

Thiazolidinediones

Thiazolidinediones were introduced in the 1990s. The first agent of this class, troglitazone, was withdrawn from the

Table 32.2 Metformin and sulfonylurea, identified evidence on efficacy of single RCTs

Comparison	Outcome	Events in groups (%)	Effect RR [95% CI]	ARR [95% CI]	Participants	Study/risk of bias
Intensified therapy with *metformin vs.* conventional therapy with *diet*	Any diabetes-related endpoint	98 (28.7) vs. 160 (38.9)	0.68 [0.58, 0.87]	10.3 [3.55, 17.0][a]	Overweight and obese patients with newly diagnosed T2DM Metformin *n* = 342 Diet *n* = 411 Follow-up: 10.7 years	UKPDS 34 [31] Open-label design, change of protocol and primary endpoint during study, insufficient blinding, limited information on accompanying treatment during the study
	Diabetes-related death	28 (8.2) vs. 55 (13.4)	0.58 [0.37, 0.91]	5.2 [0.8, 9.59][a]		
	All-cause mortality	50 (14.6) vs. 89 (21.7)	RR 0.64 [0.45, 0.91]	7.0 [1.57, 12.5][a]		
	Myocardial infarction	39 (11.4) vs. 73 (17.8)	RR 0.61 [0.41, 0.89]	6.4 [1.36, 11.36][a]		
	Stroke		n.s.			
	Peripheral vascular disease		n.s.			
	Microvascular disease		n.s.			
Intensified therapy with *glyburide (SU) vs.* conventional therapy with *diet*	Any diabetes-related endpoint	221 (35.9) vs.376 (42.0)	0.82 [0.69, 0.97]	6.0[1.04, 11.01][a]	Patients with newly diagnosed T2DM, BMI ~ 27.5 Glyburide *n* = 615 Diet *n* = 896 Follow-up: 11.1 years	UKPDS 33 [32] High risk of bias (see above)
	All-cause mortality		n.s.			
	Myocardial infarction		n.s.			
	Stroke		n.s.			
	Microvascular complications	49 (8.0) vs. 104 (11.6)	0.66 [0.47, 0.93]	3.6[0.64, 6.64][a]		
Intensive therapy with *metformin vs.* intensive control using *chlorpropamide, glyburide, or insulin*	Any diabetes-related endpoint	98 (28.7) vs. 350 (36.8)	0.78 [0.65, 0.94][a]	8.1 [2.46, 13.84][a]	Overweight and obese patients with newly diagnosed T2DM Metformin *n* = 342 Intensive control *n* = 951 Follow-up: 10.7 years	UKPDS 34 [31] High risk of bias (see above)
	Diabetes-related death		n.s.			
	All-cause mortality	50 (14.6) vs. 190 (20.0)	0.73 [0.55, 0.97][a]	5.4 [0.83, 9.89][a]		
	Myocardial infarction		n.s.			
	Stroke		n.s.			
	Peripheral vascular disease		n.s.			
	Microvascular disease		n.s.			
Intensive therapy with *metformin + sulfonylurea vs.* intensive therapy with *sulfonylurea alone*	Any diabetes-related endpoint		n.s.		Non-overweight and overweight patients with newly diagnosed T2DM Met + SU *n* = 268 SU *n* = 269 Follow-up: 10.7 years	UKPDS 34 [31] High risk of bias (see above)
	Diabetes-related death	28 (10.4) vs. 14 (5.2)	RR 1.96 [1.02, 3.75]	−5.2 [−9.77, −0.72][a]		
	All-cause mortality	47 (17.5) vs. 31 (11.5)	RR 1.60 [1.02, 2.52]	−6.0 [−11.95, −0.07][a]		
	Myocardial infarction		n.s.			
	Stroke		n.s.			
	Peripheral vascular disease		n.s.			
	Microvascular disease		n.s.			
Metformin vs. glipizide (SU)	Composite cardiovascular events (nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke, arterial revascularization, cardiovascular death, and all-cause mortality)	43 (27.6) vs. 60 (40.5)	Adjusted HR 0.54 [0.30, 0.90] (adjusted for duration of diabetes, duration of CAD, age, sex, smoking)	13.0 [2.41, 23.55][a]	RCT Patients with T2DM and CAD Metformin *n* = 156 Glipizide *n* = 148 Follow-up: 5 years Treatment target: HbA1c <7.0%	Hong et al. [41] Small sample size, intervention finished after 3 years, but outcome assessment after 5 years
	Hypoglycemia		n.s.			

(continued)

Table 32.2 (continued)

Comparison	Outcome	Events in groups (%)	Effect RR [95% CI]	ARR [95% CI]	Participants	Study/risk of bias
Metformin + insulin vs. placebo + insulin	All-Cause mortality		n.s.		Patients with T2DM Metformin $n = 196$ Placebo $n = 194$ Follow-up: 4.3 years Treatment target: FPG 4–7 mmol/l, postprandial 4–10 mmol/l	Kooy et al. [40] Unequal baseline characteristics between groups, low power, non-completers differed between groups
	Cardiovascular death		n.s.			
	Microvascular outcome		n.s.			
	Macrovascular outcome	(15%) vs. (18%)	Adjusted HR0.60 [0.40, 0.92](Adjusted for age, sex, smoking, cardiovascular history)	−6.1 [−10.5, −1.5]		
	Macro- and microvascular outcomes		n.s.			
	Hypoglycemia		n.s.			

Table adapted from [3]
T2DM Type 2 diabetes mellitus, *n.s.* not significant, *RR* risk ratio, *HR* hazard ratio, *ARR* absolute risk reduction, *CAD* coronary artery disease
[a]Calculated with data from original study publication

market because of increased liver damage and toxicity. The remaining compounds, rosiglitazone and pioglitazone, were under selling restrictions or withdrawn in some countries due to safety issues. Meta-analyses showed an increased risk of myocardial infarction in patients who received rosiglitazone [47, 48]. One of the included studies was the RECORD trial with a mean follow-up of 5.5 years [49]. A total of 4447 patients who were treated with metformin or SU monotherapy were randomized to additional rosiglitazone or additional metformin/SU. Patients of the rosiglitazone group had a twofold greater risk of fatal and nonfatal heart failure compared to patients with metformin plus SU treatment. There was no difference between groups regarding the combined primary endpoint, *cardiovascular death, or cardiovascular hospitalization*. Patients with rosiglitazone therapy reported significantly more bone fractures. Further adverse effects of rosiglitazone comprised weight gain and edema [49]. ADOPT confirmed probable cardiovascular risks and other adverse effects associated with rosiglitazone [42]. The FDA restricted access to rosiglitazone which was part of the Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy (REMS). RECORD had some risk of bias. It was an open-label trial with low statistical power. An unplanned interim analysis was conducted which could have repealed blinding. Patients' compliance to rosiglitazone was low. In December 2015, based on an independent review of the study, the FDA stated that REMS is no longer needed and that the benefits of rosiglitazone outweigh the risks. In their *Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes*, the American Diabetes Association recommends TZD as add-on therapy or monotherapy if metformin is contraindicated [46].

With our updated search, we identified a meta-analysis on the effect of pioglitazone on cardiovascular outcomes which also included participants with prediabetes and insulin resistance [23]. Primary endpoint was MACE (major adverse cardiovascular events) comprising cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, and nonfatal stroke. In patients with diabetes pioglitazone was associated with lower risk of MACE. Incidence of myocardial infarction or stroke did not differ between pioglitazone and control groups. Pioglitazone was also associated with an increased risk of heart failure, bone fracture, edema, weight gain, and hypoglycemia [23]. The largest included RCT was the PROactive trial [50]. Patients with type 2 diabetes and previous stroke were randomized to pioglitazone or placebo. Mean study duration was 34.5 months. There was a reduction in the combined endpoint, *death from any cause*, *nonfatal MI*, and *stroke*, for patients randomized to pioglitazone. However, pioglitazone significantly increased risk of heart failure, edema, and weight gain. In addition, a nonsignificant higher rate of bladder cancer was observed [50]. In the meta-analysis, no significant differences were found in bladder or any cancer risk [23]. Another meta-analysis reported a significantly increased risk [22], but was mainly based on the PROactive trial. A systematic review on the effects of TZD on bone fractures confirmed an increased risk of fractures in women who use rosiglitazone or pioglitazone [21]. The National Institute for Clinical Excellence (NICE) recommends pioglitazone when metformin is contraindicated, but explicitly points out the risks of adverse events [15] (Table 32.3).

Alpha Glucosidase Inhibitors and Meglitinides

ADA and EASD [7] do not explicitly recommend the use of AGIs due to their modest effects. AGIs *may be tried in specific*

Table 32.3 Thiazolidinedione, identified evidence from RCTs

Comparison	Outcome	Events in groups (%)	Effect RR [95% CI]	ARR [95% CI]	Participants	Study/risk of bias
Rosiglitazone + Metformin or SU vs. Metformin + SU	Primary endpoint (CV death or CV hospitalization)		n.s.		Overweight and obese patients with T2DM Rosiglitazone *n* = 2220 Met + SU *n* = 2227 Follow-up: mean 5.5 years Treatment target: HbA1c ≤ 7.0%	RECORD [49] Misleading primary endpoint, high noncompliance, low statistical power, unplanned interim analysis
	All-cause mortality		n.s.			
	Cardiovascular mortality		n.s.			
	Myocardial infarction		n.s.			
	Stroke		n.s.			
	Fatal and nonfatal heart failure	61 (2, 7) vs. 29 (1, 3)	2.11 [1.36, 3.27][a]	−1.4 [−2–27, −0.62][a]		
	Fractures	185 (8, 3) vs. 118 (5, 3)	1.57 [1.26, 1.97]	−3.0[−4.51, −1.57][a]		
Pioglitazone + other glucose-lowering drugs vs. placebo + other glucose-lowering drugs	Primary endpoint (all-cause mortality, nonfatal MI, stroke, acute coronary syndrome, coronary or leg arterial revascularization, amputation above ankle)		n.s.		Obese patients with T2DM and high CV-risk Pioglitazone *n* = 2605 Placebo *n* = 2633 Follow-up: 2.9 years Treatment target: HbA1c <6.5%	PROactive [50] Misleading interpretation of data, definition of secondary endpoint afterward
	Main secondary endpoint (death from any cause, nonfatal MI, stroke)	301 (11.6) vs. 358 (13.6)	0.85 [0.74, 0.98][a]	2.0 [0.25, 3.84][a]		
	Death		n.s.			
	Heart failure	281 (10.8) vs. 198 (7.5)	RR 1.43 [1.21, 1.71][a]	−3.3[−4.83, −1.71][a]		
	Edema without heart failure	562 (21.6) vs. 341 (13.0)	RR 1.67 [1.47, 1.88][a]	−8.6[−10.66, −6.59][a]		

Table adapted from [3]
T2DM type 2 diabetes mellitus, *n.s.* not significant, *RR* relative risk, *ARR* absolute risk reduction, *MI* myocardial infarction, *CV* cardiovascular
[a]Calculated with data from original study publication

situations [7]. Two Cochrane reviews including patients with type 2 diabetes and patients with impaired glucose tolerance did not find significant effects of AGIs on mortality or morbidity [51, 52]. We did not include the STOP-NIDDM trial in this overview because of its high risk of bias which was extensively discussed in the literature. The Acarbose Cardiovascular Evaluation (ACE) Trial [53] evaluated the efficacy of acarbose on cardiovascular death, nonfatal MI, and nonfatal stroke in patients with impaired glucose tolerance and coronary heart disease. As mentioned in our former publication [3], the trial may deliver further information. The RCT has been completed in April 2017. However, results were not published at the time of the preparation of this chapter.

Same as SU, meglitinides belong to the drug class of insulin secretagogues. Compounds of this class are nateglinide and repaglinide. In contrast to SU, they are rapid-acting secretagogues. ADA and EASD stated that meglitinides may be used as an alternative to SU in patients with irregular meal schedules [7]. In case repaglinide is considered as alternative to metformin, the NICE guidance on *type 2 diabetes in adults* suggests physicians to inform patients that there is no licensed non-metformin-based combination with repaglinide [15]. There is no evidence on effects regarding clinically relevant and long-term outcomes [54].

Conclusion

In conclusion, older classes of oral antidiabetic agents still play central roles in diabetes care, but evidence on macro- and microvascular risk is lacking or insufficient.

The applicability of study results is limited due to the short duration of studies [25]. Most studies assess the efficacy of medications on intermediate outcomes rather than long-term hard clinical endpoints. Intermediate outcomes or surrogates must be interpreted with caution. Medication that decreases HbA1c values does not necessarily reduce morbidity or mortality. In some cases of withdrawn drugs, blood glucose levels

decreased, while risks of hard clinical endpoints did not change or even increased. Whenever RCTs included patient-relevant endpoints, they were mostly assessed as secondary endpoints or adverse effects. Available studies were often too small to identify any differences between groups. Composite outcome measures, such as *any diabetes-related endpoint* or *macrovascular complications*, which usually comprise endpoints of varying importance and validity are challenging to interpret and may lead to overinterpretation of single outcomes.

The authors of the AHRQ report [26] concluded that the efficacy of all diabetes medications regarding all-cause mortality, cardiovascular and cerebrovascular morbidity as well as retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy is still uncertain. The report showed moderate strength of evidence that sulfonylurea monotherapy compared with metformin alone was associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular mortality. This result was mainly based on two RCTs: ADOPT with patients with newly diagnosed diabetes and SPREAD-DIMCAD which included patients with coronary heart disease. In contrast, the meta-analysis by Hemmingsen et al. [20] did not find any differences between SU and metformin monotherapy of total or cardiovascular mortality but a potential benefit of SU regarding nonfatal macrovascular outcomes. However, definition of the composite endpoint differed between studies [20].

In the AHRQ report [26], evidence on intermediate outcomes, such as HbA1c values, was graded as high. Effects on HbA1c values were comparable between most oral antidiabetic agents. Monotherapy comparisons of metformin with sulfonylurea and metformin with TZDs showed similar effects with respect to the reduction in HbA1c values. Moreover, metformin monotherapy reduced body weight more than TZDs or SU, though the clinical relevance of these differences may be debatable. Metformin monotherapy showed greater weight reduction when compared with the combination of metformin and SU or metformin plus TZDs, respectively [26]. In addition, metformin was favored over SU monotherapy, the combination of metformin and TZDs, and over the combination of metformin and SU regarding hypoglycemia. Risk of hypoglycemia was higher for SU than for TZDs [26].

Despite that there is only one RCT with a small sample size which demonstrated an effect on hard clinical endpoints, metformin is internationally recommended as first-line drug for patients with type 2 diabetes. It is used as comparator for the evaluation of new medications although high-quality evidence on patient-relevant outcomes is missing. Thus, the role of metformin as "gold standard" is questionable.

Shared Decision-Making

Even though there is no single perfect treatment of hyperglycemia in patients with type 2 diabetes, decisions about treatment policies and diabetes drug therapy are made for thousands of patients every day.

Shared decision-making is a personalized and patient-centered approach [55] that helps patients and clinicians to select the treatment that best fits individual patient needs, values, and preferences. It is a special way of conversation between patients and healthcare professionals comprising various elements, such as clarifying the patient's situation, noticing that there is more than one treatment option, information about benefits and harms of the treatment options, and weighing up the pros and cons considering patient values and expectations. Patient decision aids are tools to promote SDM. They are proved to improve patients' knowledge about treatment options and about probabilities of benefits and adverse effects of each option. Moreover, they help patients to find the option which is most important to them [13]. Decision aids can be used to prepare patients for the consultation with their clinician or within consultations [12]. We have developed an evidence-based patient decision aid on the prevention of myocardial infarction and a corresponding group counseling session in which diabetes educators help patients to understand the information and to define and prioritize own treatment goals regarding statin uptake, smoking cessation, and HbA1c and blood pressure goals [16, 17]. The intervention (informed shared decision-making programme; ISDM) was evaluated in a proof of concept RCT [16]. Patients of the ISDM group achieved higher levels of risk comprehension and realistic expectations about benefits and harms of treatment options. For the following cluster RCT with family practices, we added a structured SDM training for physicians and a patient-held documentation sheet to the intervention in order to optimize the consultation in terms of SDM [56, 57]. Study results showed that the whole ISDM program could be successfully implemented in every day practice. Patients and clinicians of the ISDM group pursued common treatment goals significantly more frequently than the control group [57].

Figure 32.1 displays a 100-stick figure pictogram and bar graphs to visualize probable effects of more or less intensified glucose control on the combined diabetes-related endpoint (UKPDS 34) as used in our patient decision aid and group teaching session [16, 17, 57].

Effects on *any diabetes-related event* can be explained as follows:

- The term "any diabetes-related event" is a collective term for different complications of diabetes. It included death from hyperglycemia (high blood sugar) or hypoglycemia, heart attack, angina, heart failure, stroke, kidney failure, amputation, vitreous hemorrhage in the eye (bleeding from abnormal blood vessels in the eye which can lead to blindness), damage to the retina, blindness of one or both eyes, or eye surgery for cataract.

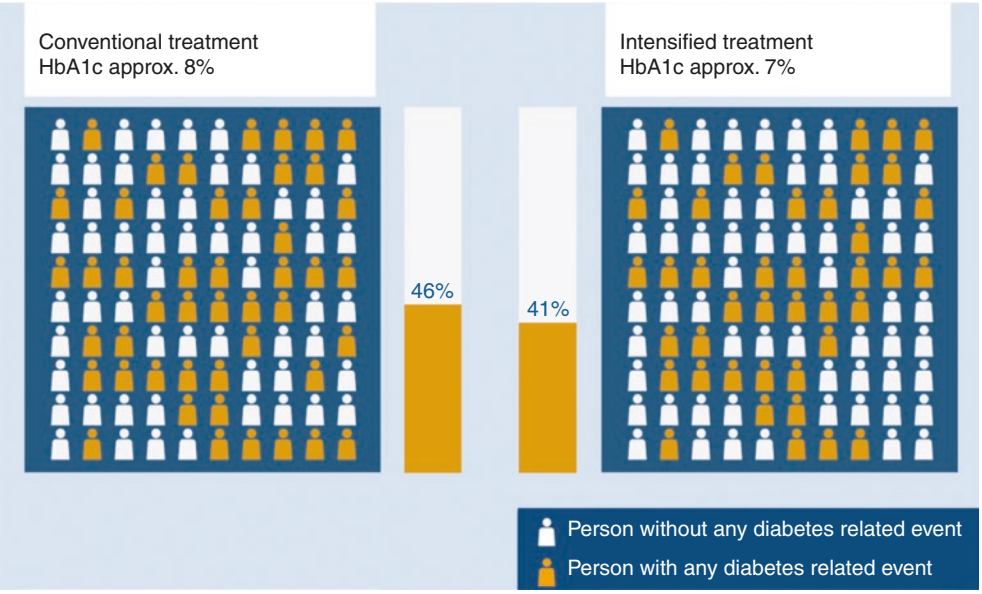


Fig. 32.1 Blood sugar control and "any diabetes-related event"

- In the following you can see the results from the UKPDS [31]. This is a study which was performed in Great Britain and lasted 10 years.
- Imagine two groups, each with 100 patients with type 2 diabetes followed for 10 years.
- One group was treated intensively with medication to control blood sugar levels. Patients of that group achieved an average HbA1c of 7%.
- The comparator (control group) was treated conventionally with less intensive medication and achieved an average HbA1c of 8%.
  - In the group with conventional treatment, "any diabetes-related event" occurred in 46 of the 100 patients during the 10-year period.
  - In the group with intensive control, "any diabetes-related event" occurred in 41 of the 100 patients during the 10-year period.
- That means, intensive blood sugar control over 10 years prevented "any diabetes-related event" in *5 of 100 patients*. The remaining 95 of 100 people had no benefit from the intensive treatment over a period of 10 years because they also experienced a diabetes-related event (41 patients) or because they would not have experienced any event even with conventional treatment (54 patients).

Intensively treated patients also experienced harm due to hypoglycemia. An additional 7 out of 100 people suffered severe hypoglycemia with intensive treatment compared to the comparator group over 10 years [31].

Communication of uncertainties is challenging. No one can say if one particular patient would benefit from intensive treatment. Presenting the data helps patients to weigh up the pros and cons making a decision which meets personal preferences and values. Moreover, the effects of antihypertensive treatment and statin intake should be taken into consideration. For example, intensive blood pressure lowering over 8 years (achieved RR 145/82 mmHg) prevented "any diabetes-related event" in 16 out of 100 patients [58].

According to the recent ADA and EASD recommendations [6, 7], clinicians should talk with their patients about the pros and cons of medications to achieve individual treatment goals. In our ISDM program, diabetes educators explain benefits and harms of evidence-based options to prevent cardiovascular complications. They guide patients to estimate their individual heart attack risk and then calculate their risks with and without statin intake and to estimate comparable effects of hypertensions or blood glucose control [16, 56].

Since efficacy of single diabetes medication seems uncertain [26], information about antidiabetic agents can only focus on intermediate outcomes, such as weight change, HbA1c values, hypoglycemia, and other side effects. Montori's research group developed and evaluated diabetes medication choice decision aid cards on intermediate effects to be used during the clinical encounter [59]. Patients had improved knowledge and were more involved in the decision-making process [59]. Another decision aid addressed statin choice to prevent myocardial infarction in patients with type 2 diabetes [60, 61]. There are also interactive and web-based decision aids which are supposed to foster shared decision-making and goal setting [62] and patient decision aids on special treatments, such as starting insulin [63].

Communication of quality of data is challenging. Patient decision aids are supposed to provide the best available evidence. However, sometimes there is no good evidence but patients have the right to know. Information on level of evidence is provided in guidelines and should be included in the patient information material.

Diabetes care is complex and has to be individualized. Level of evidence of antidiabetic agents on patient-relevant outcomes is low. Treatment of hypertension is more effective than treatment of blood glucose. Thus, involving patients in decision-making and making informed choices should be standard in the medical encounter.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which is the aim of the treatment of type 2 diabetes?
   (a) Fasting blood glucose control
   (b) Avoid acute symptoms of hyperglycemia and to prevent macro and microvascular complications
   (c) Postprandial blood glucose control
   (d) Increase the use of medications
   (e) Weight reduction and control
2. Rigid treatment regimens with low HbA1c targets:
   (a) Have resulted in better patient-relevant outcomes
   (b) Have produced equal patient-relevant outcomes
   (c) Are associated with higher risks of mortality
   (d) Improve health related-quality of life
   (e) Reduce hospital admissions and costs
3. What was the argument to withdraw several new antidiabetic agents from the German market?
   (a) No additional benefit over usual care could be demonstrated and health insurances would not have covered additional costs
   (b) Higher costs compared with traditional medications
   (c) Higher risk of hypoglycemia
   (d) Unacceptable risk of nondiabetic ketoacidosis
   (e) All of the above
4. According to the recent ADA and EASD recommendations, clinicians should not discuss with patients the pros and cons of medications to achieve individual treatment goals
   (a) False
   (b) True
5. What is the mechanism of action of metformin?
   (a) Reduction of insulin resistance in target cells through transcription of several genes involved in glucose and lipid metabolism
   (b) Inhibition of alpha-glucosidase, delaying intestinal degradation of complex carbohydrates and prolonging postprandial glucose absorption
   (c) Multiple sites of action, including increase of insulin sensitivity by increasing peripheral glucose uptake, decrease of intestinal glucose absorption, and decrease of hepatic glucose production
   (d) Stimulation of insulin release in pancreatic beta cells. Decrease in hepatic clearance of insulin. Additional extra-pancreatic mechanisms
   (e) Increase of insulin sensitivity by skeletal muscle
6. What is the mechanism of action of glyburide?
   (a) Reduction of insulin resistance in target cells through transcription of several genes involved in glucose and lipid metabolism
   (b) Inhibition of alpha-glucosidase, delaying intestinal degradation of complex carbohydrates and prolonging postprandial glucose absorption
   (c) Increase of insulin sensitivity by increasing peripheral glucose uptake, decrease of intestinal glucose absorption, and decrease of hepatic glucose production
   (d) Stimulation of insulin release in pancreatic beta cells. Decrease in hepatic clearance of insulin. Additional extra-pancreatic mechanisms
   (e) Increase of insulin sensitivity by skeletal muscle
7. What is the mechanism of action of thiazolidinediones?
   (a) Reduction of insulin resistance in target cells through transcription of several genes involved in glucose and lipid metabolism
   (b) Inhibition of alpha-glucosidase, delaying intestinal degradation of complex carbohydrates and prolonging postprandial glucose absorption
   (c) Increase of insulin sensitivity by increasing peripheral glucose uptake, decrease of intestinal glucose absorption, and decrease of hepatic glucose production
   (d) Stimulation of insulin release in pancreatic beta cells. Decrease in hepatic clearance of insulin. Additional extra-pancreatic mechanisms
   (e) Increase of insulin sensitivity by skeletal muscle
8. What is the mechanism of action of alpha-glucosidase inhibitors?
   (a) Reduction of insulin resistance in target cells through transcription of several genes involved in glucose and lipid metabolism
   (b) Inhibition of alpha-glucosidase, delaying intestinal degradation of complex carbohydrates and prolonging postprandial glucose absorption
   (c) Increase of insulin sensitivity by increasing peripheral glucose uptake, decrease of intestinal glucose absorption, and decrease of hepatic glucose production
   (d) Stimulation of insulin release in pancreatic beta cells. Decrease in hepatic clearance of insulin. Additional extra-pancreatic mechanisms
   (e) Increase of insulin sensitivity by skeletal muscle
9. What is a patient relevant outcome?
   (a) HbA1c
   (b) Weight

(c) Fasting plasma glucose
(d) Hypoglycemia
(e) Cholesterol levels

10. Moderate strength of evidence suggest that the combination of sulfonylurea and metformin compared with metformin alone was associated with:
    (a) Higher risk of death from any cause and diabetes-related death
    (b) An increase in metabolic control
    (c) Lower weight gain
    (d) Reducing oxidative stress and pro-inflammatory molecules
    (e) Lower risk of severe hypoglycemia

Correct Answers

1. (b) Avoid acute symptoms of hyperglycemia and to prevent macro and microvascular complications
2. (c) Are associated with higher risks of mortality
3. (a) No additional benefit over usual care could be demonstrated and health insurances would not have covered additional costs
4. (a) False
5. (c) Multiple sites of action, including increase of insulin sensitivity by increasing peripheral glucose uptake, decrease of intestinal glucose absorption, and decrease of hepatic glucose production
6. (d) Stimulation of insulin release in pancreatic beta cells. Decrease in hepatic clearance of insulin. Additional extra-pancreatic mechanisms
7. (a) Reduction of insulin resistance in target cells through transcription of several genes involved in glucose and lipid metabolism
8. (b) Inhibition of alpha-glucosidase, delaying intestinal degradation of complex carbohydrates and prolonging post-prandial glucose absorption
9. (d) Hypoglycemia
10. (a) Higher risk of death from any cause and diabetes-related death

References

1. Chamberlain JJ, Herman WH, Leal S, et al. Pharmacologic therapy for type 2 diabetes: synopsis of the 2017 American Diabetes Association standards of medical care in diabetes. Ann Intern Med. 2017;166:572–8.
2. Boussageon R, Gueyffier F, Cornu C. Effects of pharmacological treatments on micro- and macrovascular complications of type 2 diabetes: what is the level of evidence? Diabetes Metab. 2014;40:169–75.
3. Buhse S, Mühlhauser I, Lenz M. The 'old' anti-diabetic agents: a systematic inventory. In: Stettler C, Christ E, Diem P (Hrsg.), editors. Novelties in diabetes. Endocr Dev. Basel: Karger. 2015;31:28–42.
4. Gerstein HC, Miller ME, Byington RP, et al. Effects of intensive glucose lowering in type 2 diabetes. NEJM. 2008;358:2545–59.
5. Duckworth W, Abraira C, Moritz T, et al. Glucose control and vascular complications in veterans with type 2 diabetes. NEJM. 2009;360:129–39.
6. Inzucchi SE, Bergenstal RM, Buse JB, et al. Management of hyperglycaemia in type 2 diabetes: a patient-centered approach. Position statement of the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD). Diabetologia. 2012;55(6):1577–96.
7. Inzucchi SE, Bergenstal RM, Buse JB, et al. Management of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes, 2015: a patient-centered approach: update to a position statement of the American Diabetes Association and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2015;38:140–9.
8. Charles C, Gafni A, Whelan T. Shared decision-making in the medical encounter: what does it mean? (or it takes at least two to tango). Soc Sci Med. 1997;44:681–92.
9. Marteau TM, Dormandy E, Michie S. A measure of informed choice. Health Expect. 2001;4:99–108.
10. Bunge M, Mühlhauser I, Steckelberg A. What constitutes evidence-based patient information? overview of discussed criteria. Patient Educ Couns. 2010;78(3):316–28.
11. Mühlhauser I, Berger M. Evidence-based patient information in diabetes. Diabet Med. 2000;17:823–9.
12. Montori VM, Kunneman M, Brito JP. Shared decision making and improving health care: the answer is not in. JAMA. 2017;318:617–8.
13. Stacey D, Legare F, Lewis K, et al. Decision aids for people facing health treatment or screening decisions. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2017;4:Cd001431.
14. Garber AJ, Abrahamson MJ, Barzilay JI, et al. Consensus statement by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology on the comprehensive type 2 diabetes management algorithm – 2017 executive summary. Endocr Pract. 2017;23:207–38.
15. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE). Type 2 diabetes in adults: management. NICE guideline. 2015. Available from nice.org.uk/guidance/ng28.
16. Buhse S, Mühlhauser I, Heller T, et al. Informed shared decision-making programme on the prevention of myocardial infarction in type 2 diabetes: a randomised controlled trial. BMJ Open. 2015;5:e009116.
17. Lenz M, Kasper J, Mühlhauser I. Development of a patient decision aid for prevention of myocardial infarction in type 2 diabetes – rationale, design and pilot testing. Psychosoc Med. 2009;6:Doc05.
18. Higgins JP, Welton NJ. Network meta-analysis: a norm for comparative effectiveness? Lancet. 2015;386:628–30.
19. Griffin SJ, Leaver JK, Irving GJ. Impact of metformin on cardiovascular disease: a meta-analysis of randomised trials among people with type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2017;60:1620. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-017-4337-9.
20. Hemmingsen B, Schroll JB, Wetterslev J, et al. Sulfonylurea versus metformin monotherapy in patients with type 2 diabetes: a Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials and trial sequential analysis. CMAJ Open. 2014;2:E162–75.
21. Zhu ZN, Jiang YF, Ding T. Risk of fracture with thiazolidinediones: an updated meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. Bone. 2014;68:115–23.
22. Turner RM, Kwok CS, Chen-Turner C, Maduakor CA, Singh S, Loke YK. Thiazolidinediones and associated risk of bladder can-

cer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2014;78:258–73.
23. Liao HW, Saver JL, Wu YL, Chen TH, Lee M, Ovbiagele B. Pioglitazone and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with insulin resistance, pre-diabetes and type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ Open. 2017;7:e013927.
24. Lee M, Saver JL, Liao HW, Lin CH, Ovbiagele B. Pioglitazone for secondary stroke prevention: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Stroke. 2017;48:388–93.
25. Maruthur NM, Tseng E, Hutfless S, et al. Diabetes medications as monotherapy or metformin-based combination therapy for type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ann Intern Med. 2016;164:740–51.
26. Bolen S, Tseng E, Hutfless S, et al. AHRQ comparative effectiveness reviews diabetes medications for adults with type 2 diabetes: an update. Rockville: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality; 2016.
27. Meinert CL, Knatterud GL, Prout TE, Klimt CR. A study of the effects of hypoglycemic agents on vascular complications in patients with adult-onset diabetes. II. Mortality results. Diabetes. 1970;19(Suppl):789–830.
28. The University Group Diabetes Program. A study of the effects of hypoglycemic agents on vascular complications in patients with adult-onset diabetes. V. Evaluation of pheniformin therapy. Diabetes. 1975;24(Suppl 1):65–184.
29. Qaseem A, Barry MJ, Humphrey LL, Forciea MA. Oral pharmacologic treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus: a clinical practice guideline update from the American College of Physicians. Ann Intern Med. 2017;166:279–90.
30. German Medical Association, National Association of Statutory Health Insurance Physicians, Association of the Scientific Medical Societies: National Disease Management Guidelines Programme: Typ-2-Diabetes mellitus – Therapy; 2013. Available from: http://www.versorgungsleitlinien.de/themen/diabetes2/dm2_therapie/pdf.
31. U. K. Prospective Diabetes Study Group. Effect of intensive blood-glucose control with metformin on complications in overweight patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 34). Lancet. 1998;352:854–65.
32. U. K. Prospective Diabetes Study Group. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). Lancet. 1998;352:837–53.
33. Boussageon R, Gueyffier F, Cornu C. Metformin as first-line treatment for type 2 diabetes: are we sure? BMJ. 2016;352:h6748.
34. Berger M, Mühlhauser I. Diabetes care and patient-oriented outcomes. JAMA. 1999;281:1676–8.
35. Holman RR, Paul SK, Bethel MA, Matthews DR, Neil HA. 10-year follow-up of intensive glucose control in type 2 diabetes. NEJM. 2008;359:1577–89.
36. Mühlhauser I. Follow-up of intensive glucose control in type 2 diabetes (letter). NEJM. 2009;360:417. author reply 418.
37. Boussageon R, Supper I, Bejan-Angoulvant T, et al. Reappraisal of metformin efficacy in the treatment of type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. PLoS Med. 2012;9:e1001204.
38. Rachmani R, Slavachevski I, Levi Z, Zadok B, Kedar Y, Ravid M. Metformin in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: reconsideration of traditional contraindications. Eur J Intern Med. 2002;13:428.
39. Cryer DR, Nicholas SP, Henry DH, Mills DJ, Stadel BV. Comparative outcomes study of metformin intervention versus conventional approach the COSMIC Approach Study. Diabetes Care. 2005;28:539–43.
40. Kooy A, de Jager J, Lehert P, et al. Long-term effects of metformin on metabolism and microvascular and macrovascular disease in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Arch Intern Med. 2009;169:616–25.
41. Hong J, Zhang Y, Lai S, et al. Effects of metformin versus glipizide on cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes and coronary artery disease. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:1304–11.
42. Kahn SE, Haffner SM, Heise MA, et al. Glycemic durability of rosiglitazone, metformin, or glyburide monotherapy. NEJM. 2006;355:2427–43.
43. Salpeter SR, Greyber E, Pasternak GA, Salpeter EE. Risk of fatal and nonfatal lactic acidosis with metformin use in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009;4:CD002967.
44. European Medicines Agency. Use of metformin to treat diabetes now expanded to patients with moderately reduced kidney function (2016) EMA/603690/2016. Available from http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Press_release/2016/10/WC500214248.pdf, Accessed 15 August 2017.
45. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Metformin-containing drugs: drug safety communication – revised warnings for certain patients with reduced kidney function. 2016. Available from https://www.fda.gov/safety/medwatch/safetyinformation/safetyalertsforhumanmedicalproducts/ucm494829.htm.
46. American Diabetes Association. 8. Pharmacologic approaches to glycemic treatment. Diabetes Care. 2017;40:S64–s74.
47. Nissen SE, Wolski K. Effect of rosiglitazone on the risk of myocardial infarction and death from cardiovascular causes. N Engl J Med. 2007;356:2457–71.
48. Nissen SE, Wolski K. Rosiglitazone revisited: an updated meta-analysis of risk for myocardial infarction and cardiovascular mortality. Arch Intern Med. 2010;170:1191–201.
49. Home PD, Pocock SJ, Beck-Nielsen H, et al. Rosiglitazone evaluated for cardiovascular outcomes in oral agent combination therapy for type 2 diabetes (RECORD): a multicentre, randomised, open-label trial. Lancet. 2009;373:2125–35.
50. Dormandy JA, Charbonnel B, Eckland DJ, et al. Secondary prevention of macrovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes in the PROactive Study (PROspective pioglitAzone Clinical Trial In macroVascular Events): a randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2005;366:1279–89.
51. Van de Laar FA, Lucassen PL, Akkermans RP, Van de Lisdonk EH, De Grauw WJ. Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors for people with impaired glucose tolerance or impaired fasting blood glucose. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2006;4:CD005061.
52. Van de Laar FA, Lucassen PLBJ, Akkermans RP, Van de Lisdonk EH, Rutten GEHM, Van Weel C. Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors for type 2 diabetes mellitus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2005;2:CD003639.
53. Holman RR, Bethel MA, Chan JC, et al. Rationale for and design of the Acarbose Cardiovascular Evaluation (ACE) trial. Am Heart J. 2014;168:23–29 e22.
54. Black C, Donnelly P, McIntyre L, Royle P, Shepherd JJ, Thomas S. Meglitinide analogues for type 2 diabetes mellitus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009;2:CD004654.
55. Kunneman M, Montori VM, Castaneda-Guarderas A, Hess EP. What is shared decision making? (and what it is not). Acad Emerg Med. 2016;23:1320–4.
56. Buhse S, Mühlhauser I, Kuniss N, et al. An informed shared decision making programme on the prevention of myocardial infarction for patients with type 2 diabetes in primary care: protocol of a cluster randomised, controlled trial. BMC Fam Pract. 2015;16:43.

57. Buhse S, Kuniss N, Liethmann K, et al. Informed shared decision-making programme for patients with type 2 diabetes in primary care: cluster randomised controlled trial. BMJ Open. 2018;8(12):e024004.
58. U. K. Prospective Diabetes Study Group. Tight blood pressure control and risk of macrovascular and microvascular complications in type 2 diabetes: UKPDS 38. BMJ. 1998;317:703–13.
59. Mullan RJ, Montori VM, Shah ND, et al. The diabetes mellitus medication choice decision aid: a randomized trial. Arch Intern Med. 2009;169:1560–8.
60. Weymiller AJ, Montori VM, Jones LA, et al. Helping patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus make treatment decisions: statin choice randomized trial. Arch Intern Med. 2007;167:1076–82.
61. Mann DM, Ponieman D, Montori VM, Arciniega J, McGinn T. The statin choice decision aid in primary care: a randomized trial. Patient Educ Couns. 2010;80:138–40.
62. Yu CH, Stacey D, Sale J, et al. Designing and evaluating an interprofessional shared decision-making and goal-setting decision aid for patients with diabetes in clinical care -systematic decision aid development and study protocol. Implement Sci. 2014;9:16.
63. Mathers N, Ng CJ, Campbell MJ, Colwell B, Brown I, Bradley A. Clinical effectiveness of a patient decision aid to improve decision quality and glycaemic control in people with diabetes making treatment choices: a cluster randomised controlled trial (PANDAs) in general practice. BMJ Open. 2012;2:e001469.

Incretin Therapies: Current Use and Emerging Possibilities

33

Haiko Schlögl and Michael Stumvoll

Abbreviations

ATP	Adenosine triphosphate
cAMP	Cyclic adenosine monophosphate
cAMP-GEF-2	cAMP-guanine nucleotide exchange factor 2
CI	95% confidence interval
DPP-4	Dipeptidyl-peptidase 4
fMRI	Functional magnetic resonance imaging
GIP	Gastric inhibitory polypeptide (also: glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide)
GLP-1	Glucagon-like peptide-1
HbA1c	Hemoglobin A1c
HR	Hazard ratio
IgG	Immunoglobulin G
IV	Intravenous
K_{ATP} channel	ATP-sensitive potassium channel
K_V channel	Delayed rectifying potassium channel
LAR	Long-acting release
PYY	Peptide YY
SC	Subcutaneous
T1R	Taste receptor type 1
T2D	Type 2 diabetes
USFDA	United States Food and Drug Administration

Objectives

- Explain the physiological actions of incretins in the human body with a focus on GLP-1, and elucidate the mechanisms of the glucose dependence of the insulinotropic effect of GLP-1
- Introduce the pharmacological properties of available GLP-1 analogs and of other incretins currently under clinical investigation
- Report clinical landmark studies of GLP-1 analogs
- Summarize current knowledge of the effects of incretins on central nervous hunger regulation
- Give an outlook on possible future developments of incretin use in the clinic

History of Incretins

Discovery of the Incretin Effect

In the last decade, analogs of the incretin glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) became an important pillar of the therapy of type 2 diabetes (T2D) and are a fascinating focus of current research. The term "incretin" denotes the entity of hormones that are secreted by the mucosal cells of the intestine and increases the secretion of insulin from the β-cells of the pancreas. The history of studies examining incretin effects goes far. The first comprehensive experiment proving the effects of incretins on the pancreas of animals was reported already as early as in the year 1902 by English physiologists Bayliss and Starling [1]. This was by the way the first description of a hormone at all. In this early research, the jejunum of a dog was cut from all nervous connections, but the blood vessels between the intestine and the pancreas were kept intact. The introduction of a liquid into the jejunum mimicking chyme resulted in an increase of pancreatic secretion. After infusion of the same liquid into the blood vessels supplying the pancreas, this increase of pancreatic secretion was not seen. Authors con-

H. Schlögl
University Hospital Leipzig, Department of Internal Medicine, Endocrinology/Diabetes, Leipzig, Germany
e-mail: haiko.schloegl@medizin.uni-leipzig.de

M. Stumvoll (✉)
University Hospital Leipzig, Division of Endocrinology/Diabetes and Nephrology, Leipzig, Germany
e-mail: michael.stumvoll@medizin.uni-leipzig.de

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_33

cluded absolutely correct that "since this part of the intestine was completely cut off from nervous connection with the pancreas, the conclusion was inevitable that the effect was produced by some chemical substance finding its way into the veins of the loop of jejunum in question and being carried in the blood-stream to the pancreatic cells" [1]. Today we know that incretins belong to the group of these "chemical substances" which are secreted after the ingestion of food.

In the 1960s it could be demonstrated, also in humans, that orally administered glucose induced a greater insulin response than intravenously (IV) administered glucose [2–4]. This effect was then termed the "incretin effect," and in 1971 the first hormone contributing to this effect was isolated: the peptide hormone called gastric inhibitory polypeptide (GIP, later also termed glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide) was identified in the intestinal mucosa of a dog. Already at this early stage, an important characteristic of the incretins could be demonstrated for GIP: its insulinotropic effect is blood glucose dependent. Only if blood glucose is elevated GIP induces insulin secretion [5]. In 1985 a second peptide with the same blood glucose-dependent insulinotropic effects was discovered in rats and later also found in humans and termed glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1). In humans, by comparing insulin secretion of the pancreas after IV glucose administration versus oral glucose administration, it could be demonstrated that in healthy, normal weight adults, incretin action is responsible for at least half of the total insulin secreted [6] (Fig. 33.1). Today we know that circulating GIP concentrations are tenfold higher than GLP-1 concentrations, but GLP-1 seems to be more potent than GIP.

First Clinical Usage

In 2005 the first drug was approved which pharmacologically uses the incretin effect: exenatide is an analog of endogenous GLP-1 and activates the GLP-1 receptor, leading to an increase in insulin secretion of the β-cell if blood glucose is elevated. Shortly after, the first drug of a second drug class using the incretin effect was approved for the treatment of T2D: sitagliptin is an inhibitor of the enzyme dipeptidyl-peptidase 4 (DPP-4) which degrades endogenous GLP-1. By blocking the enzyme, the drug increases endogenous GLP-1 concentrations and thus increases the incretin effect.

In this chapter we will highlight the physiological actions of the incretins GLP-1 and GIP in the human body (with a focus on GLP-1) and summarize and discuss clinical data of drugs using the incretin pathways in the treatment of T2D. Furthermore, we will give an outlook on emerging possibilities of incretin use in diabetes treatment.

Mechanisms of Physiologic Action of Endogenous GLP-1

Stimulation of GLP-1 Secretion

GLP-1 is a 30-amino acid peptide hormone, created by cleavage of the processor peptide proglucagon. Its main sites of secretion are the L-cells of the distal ileum and colon, but GLP-1 is also secreted in other parts of the intestine, in the pancreas, and in the brain. In the intestine, proglucagon is cleaved into several other peptides and GLP-1. The physiologic function of GLP-1 is the mediation of metabolization of ingested nutrients, analog to the function of insulin. Insulin is secreted when blood glucose levels are elevated, but already anticipatory to food consumption, insulin secretion from the pancreas increases to prepare the body for the upcoming carbohydrate load. This anticipatory reaction is termed the cephalic phase. Pavlov et al. already described cephalic phase reactions for several digestive hormones and enzymes and identified the vagal nerve as a mediator for these reactions.

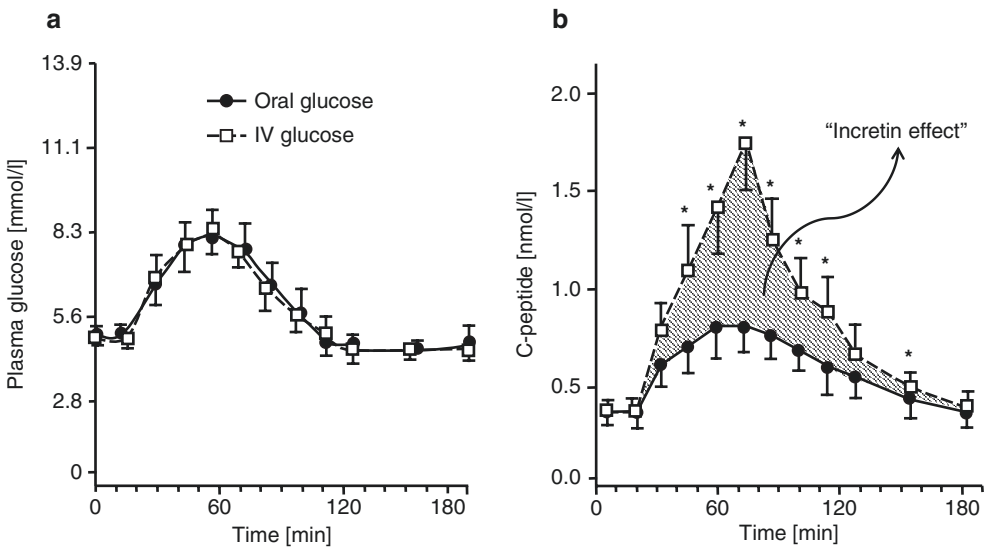


Fig. 33.1 Mean (± standard error of the mean) peripheral venous plasma glucose (**a**) and C-peptide (**b**) concentrations after oral (full circles) and intravenous (IV, empty squares) administration of 50 g glucose in six healthy, normal weight participants aged 28–33 years. IV intravenous, * $p < 0.05$ between oral and IV glucose administration (Modified from Nauck et al. [6])

Cephalic phase secreted insulin peaks within 4 minutes after sensory stimulation (i.e., sight, smell, or taste of food, without yet a consumption of nutrients) and returns to baseline about 10 minutes after a one-time stimulation [7]. New data suggest that GLP-1 secretion has a cephalic phase as well [8]. This would be an indicator that central nervous activation after food cues could also influence incretin secretion of the intestine and be a further mechanism of the control of metabolization of ingested meals. However, the main production of GLP-1 in the L-cells of the distal ileum and the colon happens as a response to intraluminal nutrients. After meal digestion, intraluminal fats in the distal parts of the ileum bind to fatty acid receptors on the surface of L-cells, leading to GLP-1 secretion. Intestinal sugars are most likely detected by the classic sweet taste receptor of the taste receptor type 1 (T1R)-family, the T1R3. Receptor binding on the surface of the intestinal L-cell leads to GLP-1 secretion. Probably also the sodium-glucose cotransporter 1 contributes to intraintestinal sugar-mediated GLP-1 release [9]. Furthermore, digested peptides elicit GLP-1 secretion, whereas the molecular mechanisms are not yet fully understood (Fig. 33.2).

Effects on the Pancreas

Endogenous GLP-1 has several important effects involved in the consumption and digestion of food (Table 33.1). The most important GLP-1 effect for the treatment of diabetes is the stimulation of insulin secretion of the β-cells of the pancreas. GLP-1 independent insulin secretion of the β-cell, briefly summarized, happens as follows: glucose diffuses into the β-cell through the glucose transporter type 2 and is processed to adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which itself leads to a closure of outward ATP-sensitive potassium channels. This elicits a depolarization of the cell membrane, making it more likely for voltage-dependent calcium channels to open. This generates intracellular calcium influx which is the stimulus for the exocytosis of the insulin-carrying vesicles.

The underlying mechanisms how GLP-1 increases insulin secretion in a glucose-dependent manner are complex and not yet fully understood (details in [10, 11]). In short, glucose-dependent GLP-1 effects happen at several points of the intracellular signal cascades (Fig. 33.3). Binding of GLP-1 to its receptor on the β-cell surface leads to the transformation of ATP to cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). The higher the blood glucose, the more ATP is available, and thus the more cAMP is produced. Cyclic AMP then activates protein kinase A and another messenger protein, which leads through several further steps to an increase in cytoplasmic free calcium concentrations. That finally triggers exocytosis of insulin-containing vesicles into the bloodstream (Fig. 33.3).

The glucose-dependent stimulation of insulin secretion of the β-cell is not the only glucose-lowering effect of GLP-1. For example, in patients with type 1 diabetes with C-peptide levels of zero, it was shown that GLP-1 administration also leads to a marked decrease of blood glucose concentration, implicating GLP-1 effects in addition to the insulinotropic effects at the β-cell. GLP-1 also is a strong inhibitor of glucagon secretion from the α-cells of the pancreas [12], a further mechanism of GLP-1 to lower blood glucose. And if there are further mechanism how incretins act on glucose metabolism is subject to current research.

Effects on Intestinal Motility

To the physiologic effects of GLP-1 in human eating behavior and digestion count many more functions than the regulation of pancreatic insulin secretion and glucose metabolism (Table 33.1). A very important physiologic function of gastrointestinal hormones like GLP-1 (other important ones are peptide YY [PYY] and cholecystokinin) is the control of the secretion of digestive enzymes and of gastric and intestinal motility [9]. As described above, intraluminal fats in the distal parts of the ileum bind to fatty acid receptors on the surface of L-cells. This leads to GLP-1 and PYY secretion and via signal transduction from GLP-1 receptors to intestinal nerves and vago-vagal reflexes to the inhibition of gastric emptying and gastric acid secretion. This reflex is termed the ileal break, because nutrients (fats) arriving in the ileum slow the motility of upper parts of the digestive tract.

Effects on the Central Nervous System

In addition to its pancreatic and intestinal location, the GLP-1 receptor is also expressed in many other regions of the human body, suggesting a much broader function than insulinotropic and gastrointestinal effects. From animal data we know that the GLP-1 receptor is also expressed widely in the brain, with highest concentrations in the hypothalamus, the homeostatic center of the brain. In anaesthetized mice, several experiments using manganese-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging were performed. High dosages of intraperitoneally injected GLP-1, which alike in humans also reduces energy intake in mice, showed significant reductions in signal intensity in nuclei of the hypothalamus which are known to mediate hunger: similar signal reductions in these regions occurred when animals were fed with food unrestricted in calories [13]. As a further prove of direct intracerebral action of GLP-1, in a study with free-feeding mice, it was shown that the GLP-1 analog liraglutide suppressed food intake and body weight in a dose-dependent manner not only when administered intraperitoneally or IV but also when injected directly into the third cerebral ventricle [14].

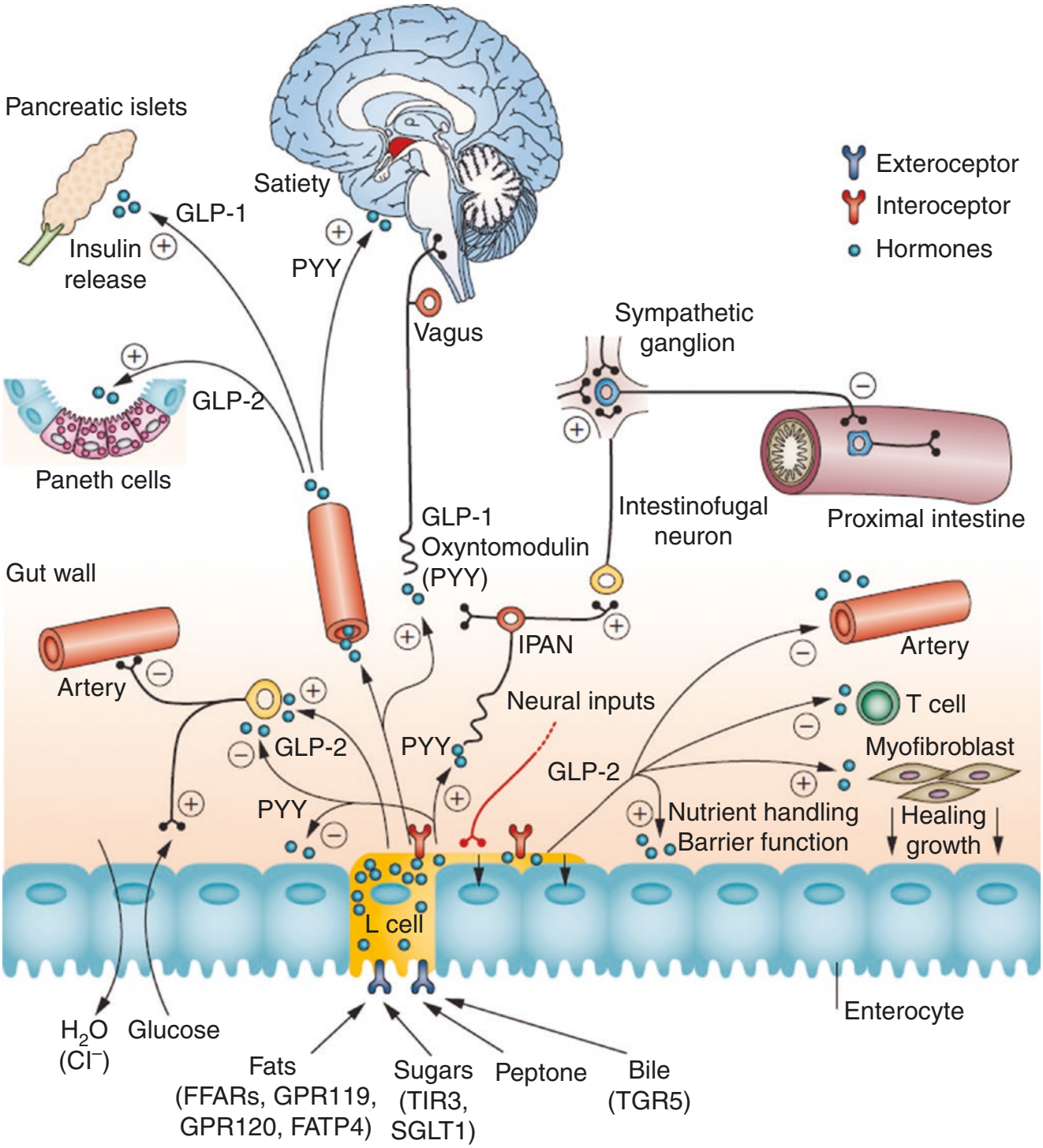


Fig. 33.2 Physiological actions of intraintestinal nutrients (fats, sugars, peptides) and bile on the L-cell of the distal ileum and elicited signal transduction in the regulation of anabolic metabolism. The L-cell expresses exteroceptors for free fatty acids, sugars, protein fragments (peptones), and bile acids. L-cells release the hormones glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1), GLP-2 (another cleavage product of proglucagon, co-secreted with GLP-1, also acting in the intestine, but not yet fully understood), peptide YY, and oxyntomodulin. These hormones have actions on a range of effectors, including enterocytes, enteric neurons, vagal sensory neurons and intrinsic primary afferent neurons, blood vessels, lymphocytes, myofibroblasts, and the hypothalamus. Downstream effects of GLP-1 on vagal afferents include slowed gastric emptying, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, stimulation of insulin release, and satiety. In addition, vagal efferent pathways increase hormone release. L-cells also express interoceptors that receive signals from the internal milieu, including from neurons and hormones. + stimulation, − inhibition, FFARs free fatty acid receptors, GLP glucagon-like peptide, IPAN intrinsic primary afferent neuron, PYY peptide YY (From Furness et al. [9])

Table 33.1 Organ-specific and systemic effects of GLP-1

	Parameter	Effect
Pancreas	Glucose-dependent insulin secretion of the β-cell	↑
	β-cell proliferation	↑
	Glucagon secretion of the α-cell	↓
	Endogenous GLP-1 secretion in patients with T2D	↓
Brain	Somatostatin secretion	↑
	Satiety	↑
	Hunger	↓
	Energy intake	↓
Gastrointestinal tract	Gastric emptying	↓
	Gastric acid secretion	↓
Heart	Heart rate	↑
Systemic	Blood glucose concentration	↓
	Body weight	↓
	Insulin-sensitivity in patients with T2D	↑

GLP-1 glucagon-like peptide-1, *T2D* type 2 diabetes, ↓ decreases, ↑ increases

Also in humans the hypothalamus regulates many vegetative processes, including the control of body homeostasis and metabolism. These effects have already been investigated in human behavioral experiments, and as well with neuroimaging, mainly with functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), in order to localize brain areas involved in this regulation. In a placebo-controlled fMRI study with 24 obese men, participants had a significant decrease in mean energy intake and hunger ratings after a single-dose IV administration of the GLP-1 analog exenatide. It is known that patients can have variable responses to drugs of the GLP-1 analog class, and the effects observed in this study also varied strongly among participants. The participants could be divided into two equally sized groups, one with >10% reduction of energy intake and the other with <10% reduction of energy intake. Functional MRI scans of patients given a food picture presentation task showed that the drug increased connectedness of the hypothalamus only in the group where the

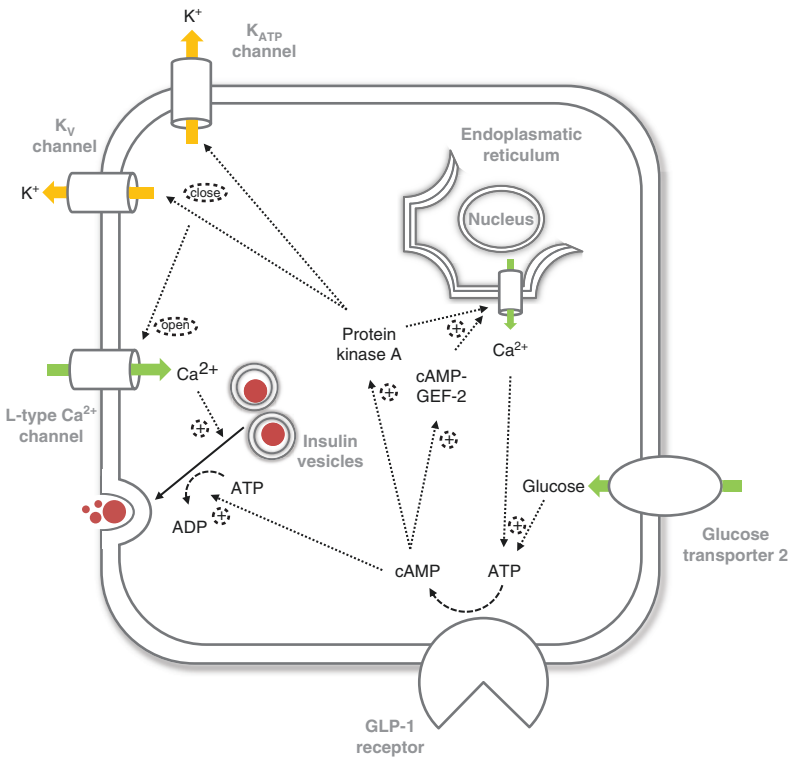


Fig. 33.3 Glucose-dependent insulinotropic glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) effects in the β-cell. An important mechanism of the glucose dependency of GLP-1 action is mediated via intracellular adenosine triphosphate (ATP) concentrations. The higher the blood glucose level, the more glucose enters the β-cell via the insulin-independent glucose transporter type 2 and is metabolized to ATP. Binding of GLP-1 to the GLP-1 receptor on the β-cell surface stimulates the G-protein of the adenylate cyclase, which results in transformation of ATP to cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). Cyclic AMP then activates two central proteins responsible for the further transmission of the GLP-1 signal: protein kinase A and cAMP-regulated guanine nucleotide exchange factor 2 (cAMP-GEF-2). Protein kinase A contributes to closing the ATP-sensitive potassium channel (K_{ATP}) and the delayed rectifying potassium channel. Closure of these two outward potassium channels increases intracellular positive potentials and thus facilitates membrane depolarization and opening of inward L-type calcium channels. Increased cytoplasmic free calcium concentrations trigger exocytosis of the insulin-containing vesicles. This action is further potentiated by increased cAMP levels. Protein kinase A and cAMP-GEF-2 both trigger calcium release from intracellular stores in the endoplasmatic reticulum, again enhancing the calcium-dependent actions leading to insulin release. ADP adenosine diphosphate, ATP adenosine triphosphate, Ca^{2+} ionized calcium, cAMP cyclic adenosine monophosphate, cAMP-GEF-2 cAMP-regulated guanine nucleotide exchange factor 2, GLP-1 glucagon-like peptide-1, K^+ ionized potassium, K_{ATP} channel ATP-sensitive potassium channel, K_V channel delayed rectifying potassium channel (Modified from Holst [10])

drug had a >10% reduction of energy intake. In the absence of a hypothalamic response in this paradigm, no anorectic effect was observed, suggesting that the anorectic effect of the GLP-1 analog is mediated via the hypothalamus [15]. Others have shown with different study designs that also activity in areas of the brain which are part of the dopaminergic reward system is altered by GLP-1 infusions [16].

Mechanism of Action of GIP

GIP was discovered earlier than GLP-1, and the GIP receptor has been characterized. However, no drugs have yet been approved that have a relevant effect on the GIP receptor. The emphasis on GLP-1 therapy derives from several reasons: early positive clinical results were achieved with GLP-1 receptor agonists, which led to a further pursuit of that path. Furthermore, animal research led to the assumption that GIP administration promoted obesity and impaired lipid metabolism. And human single-dose trials with GIP agonists in patients with T2D found worsened postprandial hyperglycemia. But more recent investigations of physiologic GIP actions suggest that the detrimental GIP effects only occur in hyperglycemia and uncontrolled diabetes. In euglycemia and well-controlled diabetes, GIP receptor activation by GIP analogs may well have beneficial effects in the human body. There are reports of increased β-cell survival by GIP through signaling pathways independent of GLP-1. This supports the hypothesis that the two incretins are not redundant and may complement one another. In 2017 a phase-2a clinical study was published which investigated a dual GIP and GLP-1 receptor agonist. The outcome of this early-phase study was promising regarding blood glucose reduction and safety profile, and further studies will follow [17].

Pharmacological Substances

Exenatide

The first GLP-1 analog approved for the treatment of diabetes was exenatide in 2005 in its formulation, which is administered twice daily, making it the lead substance of the GLP-1 analog class. Exenatide is a peptide originally isolated from the saliva of the lizard Gila monster. It has an amino acid homology of about 50% with the endogenous human GLP-1 molecule. Mainly due to the substitution of the amino acid alanine in position two by glycine, the molecule is much more resistant to cleavage by DPP-4 than endogenous GLP-1, increasing plasma half-life from 2–5 minutes to 2.4 hours after subcutaneous (SC) administration. It is licensed to be prescribed with or without oral hypoglycemic agents and with or without additional insulin.

Liraglutide

It was followed by the once-daily administered liraglutide in 2009 (Europe) and 2010 (USA). Liraglutide's peptide structure is much closer to the human GLP-1, having a 97% sequence identity with native GLP-1. The molecule binds to human albumin and has a much longer half-life than exenatide of 13–15 hours after SC administration. The typical initial dose is 0.6 mg injected SC once daily. The dose can be increased to a maximum of 1.8 mg daily in the treatment of T2D. Because of its weight-reducing effect, the drug was also filed for approval for weight reduction in obesity, also in the absence of diabetes, and got an approval in 2014 (USA) and 2015 (Europe). The dose if used for weight reduction is 3 mg per injection, also applied once daily [18].

Liraglutide is one of four GLP-1 analogs for which a cardiovascular outcome trial was published, named the LEADER trial [19] (Table 33.2). The drug met the criteria for cardiovascular safety as defined by the US Food and Drug Administration (USFDA) (Box 33.1). Furthermore, reductions in the primary composite outcome (death from cardiovascular causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or nonfatal stroke) were demonstrated (hazard ratio [HR] 0.87, confidence interval [CI] 0.78–0.97, $p = 0.01$), as well as a decrease in cardiovascular death (HR 0.78, CI 0.66–0.93, $p = 0.007$) and all-cause mortality (HR 0.85, CI 0.74–0.97, $p = 0.02$) as compared to placebo treatment (Table 33.2). Thereby up to now, liraglutide is the only GLP-1 analog to show statistically significantly beneficial effects for all of these three end points. However, the number of patients with T2D and high cardiovascular risk who would need to be treated to prevent one death (death from any cause) in 3 years is relatively high: 98 [19].

Of note, additional monitoring of liraglutide was demanded by regulatory authorities because of a significant increase of medullary thyroid cancer in animals treated with the drug. This risk could not yet be fully ruled out in humans, probably due to the very low incidences of medullary thyroid cancer in observed populations.

Exenatide LAR

In 2011 a long-acting formulation of exenatide was approved for the therapy of T2D and termed exenatide LAR (long-acting release). The exenatide molecule is attached to so-called microspheres, small particles in the case of exenatide

Table 33.2 Key pharmacological and clinical characteristics of available GLP-1 analogs

Drug	Molecular structure	$T_{1/2}$	Dosing	CVOT	Reduction in prim. comp. outc./CV mortality/ all-cause mortality	Specifications of CVOT	Reduction in HbA1c	Reduction in body weight
Exenatide	39-AA peptide	2.4 hours	5 and 10 μg, b.i.d.	None	N.a.	N.a.	0.8–1.2%	1–3 kg
Liraglutide	97% structural homology with native GLP-1	12 hours	1.2 and 1.8 mg, o.d.	LEADER [19]	*Yes* (HR 0.87, CI 0.78–0.97, $p = 0.01$[d])/ *yes* (HR 0.78, CI 0.66–0.93, $p = 0.007$)/ *yes* (HR 0.85, CI 0.74–0.97, $p = 0.02$)	Initial treatment group $n = 4668$, treatment duration mean 3.2 y, max 4.5 y ($n = 484$), prim. Comp. outc.: death from CV causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke	0.8–1.5%	2–3 kg
Exenatide LAR	Polyglactin microspheres releasing exenatide	96 hours	2 mg, weekly	EXSCEL [21]	*No* (HR 0.91, CI 0.83–1.00, $p = 0.06$[d])/ *no* (HR 0.88, CI 0.76–1.02)/ *no* (HR 0.86, CI 0.77–0.97[e])	Initial treatment group $n = 7356$, treatment duration mean 3.2 y, max 5 y ($n = 968$), prim. Comp. outc.: death from CV causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke	1.3–1.9%	2–3.7 kg
Albiglutide[a]	2 GLP-1 analogs bound to albumin	6–8 days	30 and 50 mg, weekly	HARMONY[c]	N.a.	N.a.	0.7–1%	0.8–1.1 kg
Dulaglutide	GLP-1 peptide fused to IgG	90 hours	0.75 and 1.5 mg, weekly	REWIND[c]	N.a.	N.a.	0.8–1.5%	0.8–2.5 kg
Lixisenatide	44-AA derivative of exenatide	4 hours	10 and 20 μg, o.d.	ELIXA [23]	*No* (HR 1.02, CI 0.89–1.17)/ *no* (HR 0.98, CI 0.78–1.22)/ *no* (HR 0.94, CI 0.78–1.13)	Initial treatment group $n = 3034$, median duration of treatment 1.9 y, max follow-up 3.3 y (<10% longer follow-up), primary end point: death from CV causes, nonfatal stroke, nonfatal myocardial infarction, unstable angina	0.6–1%	1.3–2.7 kg
Semaglutide[f]	94% structural homology with native GLP-1	1 week	0.5 and 1.0 mg, weekly	SUSTAIN-6 [24]	*Yes* (HR 0.74, CI 0.58–0.95, $p = 0.02$[d])/ *no* (HR 0.98, CI 0.65–1.48)/ *no* (HR 1.05, CI 0.74–1.50)	Treatment duration 2 y ($n = 1648$), prim. comp. outc.: death from CV causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke	1.0%[b]	4.3 kg

AA amino acid, *b.i.d. bis in die*, twice daily, *CI* 95% confidence interval, *CV* cardiovascular, *CVOT* cardiovascular outcome trial, *GLP-1* glucagon-like peptide-1, *HbA1c* hemoglobin A1c, *IgG* immunoglobulin G, *LAR* long-acting release, *max* maximum, *n.a.* not applicable, *o.d.*, *omni die*, once daily, *prim. comp. outc.* primary composite outcome, *SC* subcutaneously, $T_{1/2}$ half-life, *y* years

[a]maker announced to withdraw drug from worldwide markets in 2018

[b]approval pending

[c]not yet completed, planned in 2018

[d]for superiority

[e]not considered to be statistically significant by authors based on the hierarchical testing plan (i.e., if significant difference was not found for an outcome, formal hypothesis testing was not to be conducted for lower ordered outcomes. Comp. outc. was ranked higher than all-cause mortality)

[f]adjusted for placebo effect

Box 33.1: Cardiovascular Outcome Studies
The United States Food and Drug Administration (USFDA) issued a declaration in 2008 that all new diabetes drugs have to rule out an excess cardiovascular risk. This decision was driven by the high prevalence of cardiovascular disease in diabetes (accounting for approximately 70% of deaths) and by concerns about a study, claiming an increased cardiovascular risk for rosiglitazone, which was published shortly before [28]. In these cardiovascular outcome trials, cardiovascular safety is defined by the USFDA as an upper bound of the two-sided 95% confidence interval for major adverse cardiovascular events of less than 1.8 preapproval and 1.3 postapproval. Furthermore, cardiovascular outcome trials are used to analyze if new diabetes drugs show statistically significantly less cardiovascular events than placebo.

LAR of 0.06 mm size. The exenatide LAR microspheres are made of molecules of lactic and glycolic acid (poly-lactic-co-glycolic acid), which is the most common material from which microspheres are prepared. The drug is loaded onto the surface of and into the microsphere and then released as the matrix materials degrade. The characteristics of the binding of the molecule on the surface and the internalization into the microsphere explain the suboptimal pharmacokinetics of exenatide LAR: after an initial burst of exenatide plasma concentrations in the first 2 days after SC application due to the loosely bound exenatide on the surface, the internalized drug from inside the microsphere is not released until 2 weeks later. It takes up to 7 weeks for the drug to be completely released [20]. In the cardiovascular outcome trial, the EXSCEL trial, initially >7000 patients with T2D were treated for up to 5 years, the mean treatment duration was 3.1 years. A primary composite outcome event (death from cardiovascular causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or nonfatal stroke) occurred in 11.4% of patients in the exenatide LAR group versus 12.2% patients in the placebo group (HR 0.91, CI 0.83–1.00, $p = 0.06$ for superiority) [21]. Thus, the drug proved to be safe, but could not show a significant benefit on cardiovascular outcome despite the high number of included patients.

Albiglutide

Albiglutide is another once-weekly GLP-1 analog which was approved for T2D treatment. Here, another mechanism was used to prolong plasma half-life: two molecules with 95% homology to endogenous GLP-1 are attached to human serum albumin. After SC administration the drug reaches maximal plasma concentrations after 2–4 days; the plasma half-life is 6–8 days [22]. Approval for the treatment of T2D followed, and it was introduced to the markets, but in 2017 the maker informed that it will withdraw the drug from worldwide markets. Referring to the press release, it was not safety concerns leading to this decision. Probably economic considerations in a highly competitive market were the reason for the withdrawal. A cardiovascular outcome study (named HARMONY trial) is being performed, but has not yet been completed.

Dulaglutide

Dulaglutide was the next once-weekly GLP-1 analog approved for diabetes treatment. USFDA approval was granted in 2014. To yield a pharmacokinetic which allows a once-weekly application, a molecule with 90% amino acid sequence homology to endogenous human GLP-1 is linked to an F_c fragment of human immunoglobulin G4 (IgG4). The F_{ab} fragments are substituted by two GLP-1 molecules; at each of the two F_c parts of the heavy chains, one GLP-1 molecule is bound. Binding to the F_c parts of IgG slows absorption due to the larger molecular size. Furthermore, the molecule is relatively resistant to degradation by DPP-4, and renal clearance is slowed. After a single SC administration, maximum serum concentrations are reached after about 2 days. Steady-state concentrations are achieved between 2 and 4 weeks after once-weekly administration. With much interest results of the cardiovascular outcome trial named REWIND are awaited; they are planned for 2018.

Lixisenatide

A further GLP-1 analog was approved in 2016 for the US American market: lixisenatide. It is a polypeptide consisting of 44 amino acids with a single proline substitution and a modified C-terminus of six lysine molecules. Its chemical structure makes it more resistant to degradation by DPP-4 than exenatide and needs to be injected once daily. Still, with a plasma half-life of 2.7–4.3 hours, it is removed from circulation much faster than liraglutide, which is also administered once daily. With lixisenatide a cardiovascular outcome trial was performed (ELIXA) [23]. A total of 6068 patients with T2D and a history of myocardial infarction (83%) or hospitalization for unstable angina (17%) within the last 6 months were randomized to lixisenatide or placebo treatment. The primary composite end point consisted of cardiovascular death, myocardial infarction, stroke, or hospitalization for unstable angina. In the *verum* group, during the time of obser-

vation, an end point occurred in 406 patients (13.4%), in the placebo group in 399 patients (13.2%) (HR 1.02, CI 0.89–1.17). Thus, in this study, no superiority to placebo could be demonstrated, but it proved cardiovascular safety for lixisenatide during the initial 2 years of treatment of patients with T2D and very high cardiovascular risk. In Europe the drug was also approved for clinical use, but, e.g., in Germany, the drug is not available because government and health insurances did not see an additional benefit as compared to already existing diabetes treatments.

Semaglutide

A new GLP-1 analog under current investigation and not yet approved for clinical usage is semaglutide. It shares a 94% structural homology with native GLP-1. It has a similar molecule structure as liraglutide but is more stable in the human body because it is less susceptible to degradation by DPP-4. Its plasma half-life is about 1 week, and the drug shall be administered once weekly. In the phase-3 cardiovascular outcome trial named SUSTAIN [24], semaglutide significantly improved glycemic control during the 2 years of treatment. Hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c) was reduced by 0.7% in the lower-dose group (0.5 mg semaglutide once weekly) and by 1.0% in the higher-dose group (1.0 mg once weekly). The drug also reduced bodyweight significantly by 2.9 kg as compared to placebo in the 0.5 mg group and by 4.3 kg as compared to placebo in the 1.0 mg group. Side effects were similar as compared to other GLP-1 analogs already on the market. The cardiovascular profile was noninferior to placebo. Gastrointestinal disorders such as nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea occurred more frequently in the treatment group, as expected for a drug of the GLP-1 analog class (51.5% of treated patients with 0.5 and 1.0 mg versus 35.5% for placebo). In 11.5% of the 0.5 mg and 14.5% of the 1.0 mg groups, treatment had to be stopped due to gastrointestinal disorders, versus 5.7% and 7.6% for placebo.

As known from all drugs of the GLP-1 analog, class pulse rate was increased by the medication. The mean heart rate in the treatment group, as compared to placebo, increased by 2.0 bpm for 0.5 mg and by 2.5 bpm for 1.0 mg ($p < 0.001$ for both comparisons). Another important negative effect of the treatment was an increase in retinopathy complications (e.g., vitreous hemorrhage or blindness). Diabetic retinopathy complications occurred in 50 patients (3.0%) in the semaglutide group and only in 29 (1.8%) of the placebo group (HR 1.76, CI 1.11–2.78, $p = 0.02$). The authors of the study suggest that the rapid lowering of blood glucose concentrations in the treatment group might be an explaining factor, but cannot rule out direct drug-related effects. Lipase and amylase levels were significantly higher in the semaglutide group than in the placebo group, but acute pancreatitis occurred more frequently in the placebo group than in the semaglutide group (12 versus 9 events).

In this cardiovascular outcome trial, after 2 years of treatment, there was no significant reduction in all-cause mortality (3.8% in the treatment group versus 3.6% in the placebo group) or cardiovascular mortality (2.7 versus 2.8%). But there was a significant reduction in the composite end point of death from cardiovascular causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or nonfatal stroke of 6.6 versus 8.9% (HR 0.74, CI 0.58–0.95, $p = 0.02$ for superiority) [24]. The drug was already filed for approval and a decision is expected in the near future.

Comparisons of Clinical Data from Available Trials and Discussion of Clinical Effects

GLP-1 analogs proved to decrease HbA1c and body weight in long-term treatment (Fig. 33.4). The mean reduction in HbA1c of 0.75–1.5% in the first half year of treatment in phase-3 and cardiovascular outcome trials is seen in all drugs of this class. But as inclusion criteria and study protocols of the clinical studies are not consistent, a direct comparison of the substances is not possible with these data. To compare substances, head-to-head trials have been conducted comparing HbA1c and body weight-lowering effects of GLP-1 analogs (Fig. 33.5). The once-weekly formulation of exenatide was found to reduce HbA1c stronger than the twice-daily formulation, and liraglutide 1.8 mg was superior to both formulations; however, differences were small (0.2% and 0.3% lower HbA1c). There were no differences in HbA1c reduction between liraglutide 1.8 mg and dulaglutide. Lixisenatide was not inferior to exenatide twice daily but inferior to liraglutide 1.8 mg (again small differences in HbA1c effects). Albiglutide was inferior to liraglutide 1.8 mg (Fig. 33.5a). In body weight reduction, liraglutide 1.8 mg elicited stronger weight loss than exenatide (both formulations), albiglutide, lixisenatide, and dulaglutide (Fig. 33.5b).

As of today, only for liraglutide and semaglutide (which is not yet approved for clinical use), a reduction in the primary composite outcome death from cardiovascular causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or nonfatal stroke could be demonstrated. A reduction of cardiovascular and all-cause mortality was only found for liraglutide. The differences in blood glucose control between the pharmacologic agents cannot explain why liraglutide and semaglutide, but not lixisenatide and exenatide LAR, led to a reduction in cardiovascular mortality. Thus, there seems to be different beneficial effects of liraglutide and semaglutide on cardiovascular outcome than mere lowering of blood glucose. Or lixisenatide and exenatide LAR cause other negative effects regarding cardiovascular mortality, but which were not identified in available clinical trials.

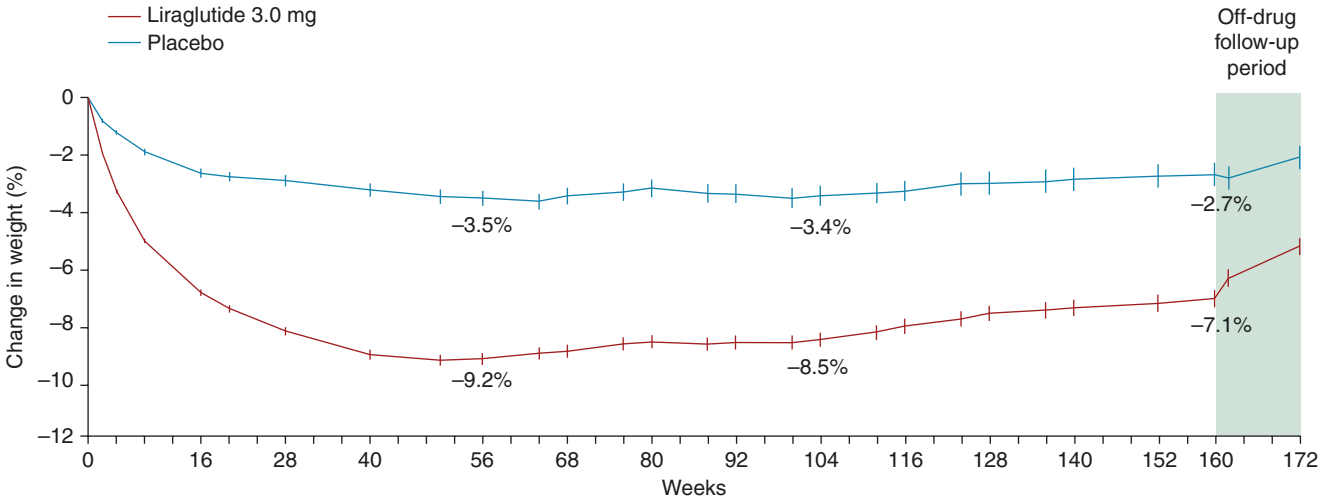


Fig. 33.4 Mean relative change in bodyweight for participants in a randomized, double-blind trial with liraglutide 3 mg and placebo during 3 years of treatment. Data shown are the observed means (with standard error) of the full-analysis set (patients who completed each scheduled visit). * $p < 0.0001$ (From Le Roux et al. [29])

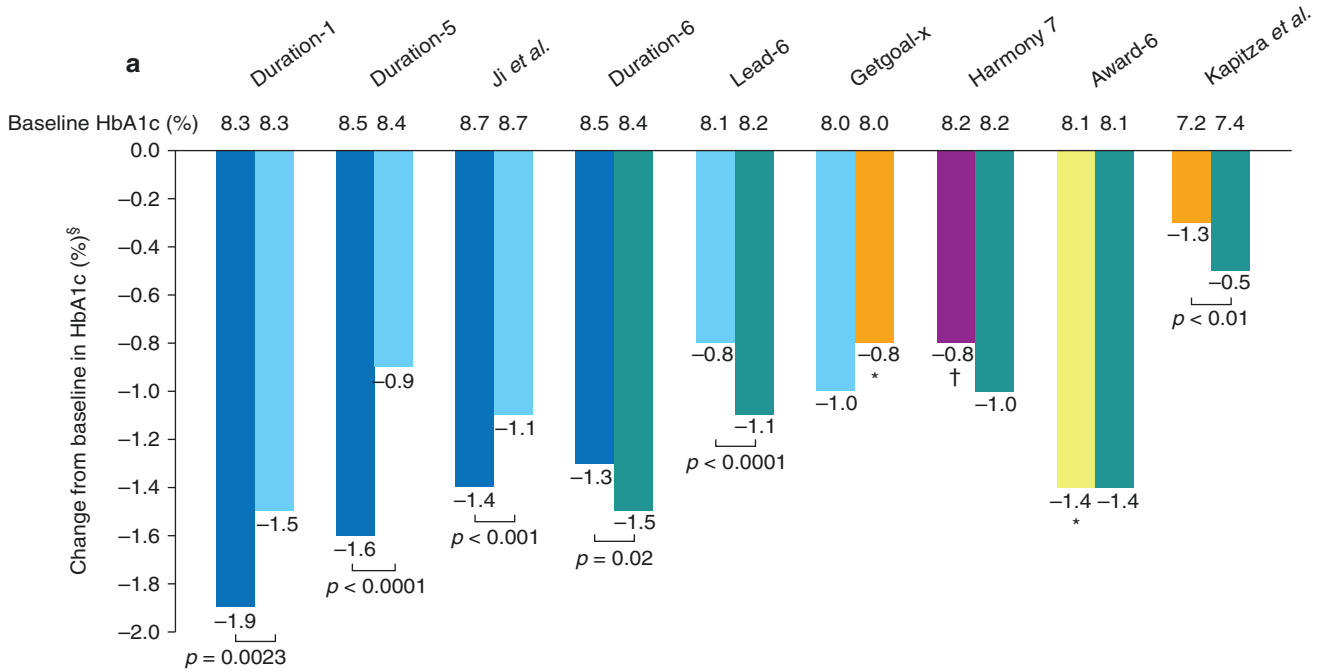


Fig. 33.5 Reductions in (**a**) hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c) and (**b**) body weight in published phase-3 (and one phase-2) randomized head-to-head studies of glucagon-like peptide-1 analogs in type 2 diabetes. Legend (**a**) HbA1c hemoglobin A1c, § 1%-change in HbA1c corresponds to a 10.93 mmol/mol change, * non-inferiority criteria met, † non-inferiority criteria not met, ‡ phase-2 study. Legend (**b**) * difference was not significant at week 24, although it was significant at week 20, † not stated if difference was significant (From Madsbad [30])

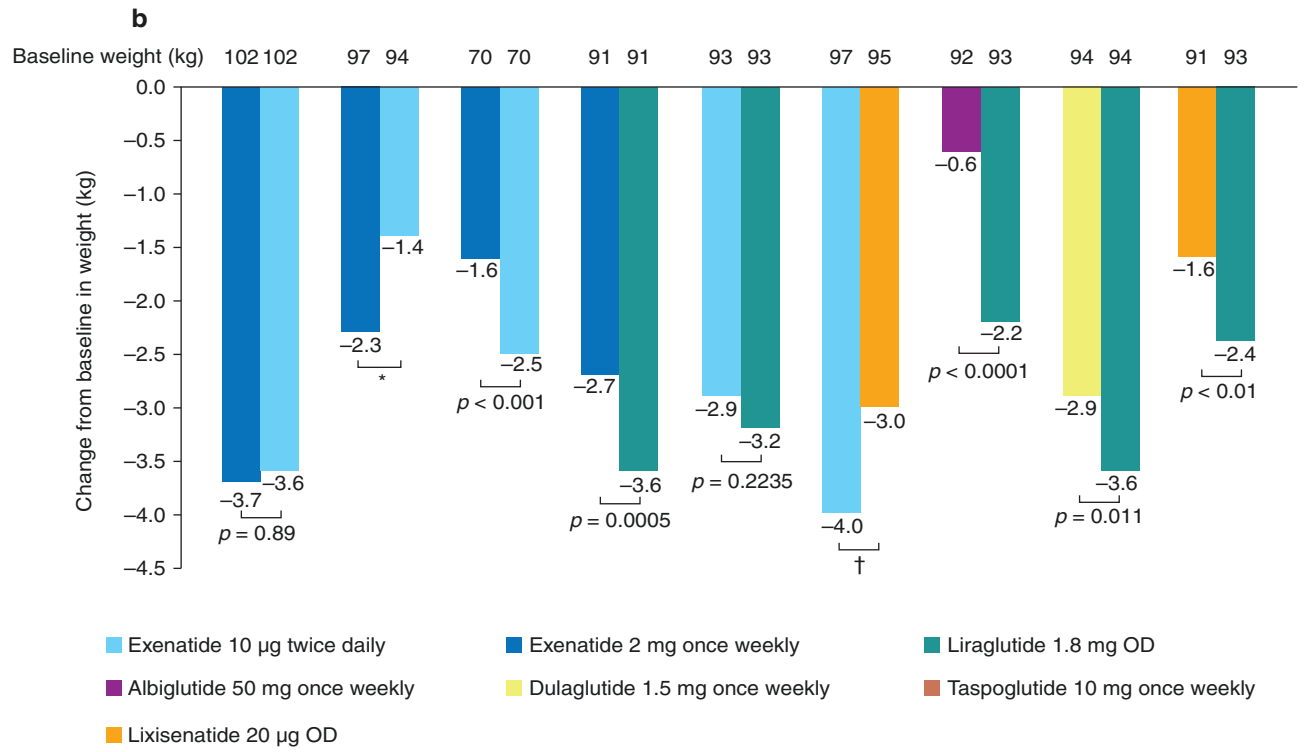


Fig. 33.5 (continued)

Pipeline of GLP-1 Receptor Agonists

Further GLP-1 analogs are under investigation. Efpeglenatide is a GLP-1 analog consisting of a modified exenatide molecule attached to the F_c fragment of IgG, like in dulaglutide. A phase-3 trial with an only once-monthly injection is planned.

All currently available GLP-1 analogs demand SC application, which is a major disadvantage for many patients. For semaglutide, currently an oral formulation is investigated. The oral version is co-formulated with an "absorption enhancer," a molecule which causes a localized increase in pH. This leads to an increased solubility of the drug and to a decreased enzymatic activity in its close environment, thus protecting the drug from intragastric enzymatic degradation. In the phase-2 trial, effects on body weight and HbA1c were similar to the effects of SC administered semaglutide.

As mentioned above, also combination molecules that activate as well as other receptors in addition to the GLP-1 receptor are under investigation. GLP-1 receptor activation is also investigated in combination with glucagon receptor activation, the latter being discussed to promote an even greater hunger-reducing effect than GLP-1 receptor activation.

Side Effects of the GLP-1 Analog Class

Side effects of GLP-1 analogs – unlike classical off-target adverse effects as known from other drugs (e.g., muscle and joint pain in statin therapy) – include physiological effects of GLP-1 receptor activation. The most pronounced side effect is gastrointestinal intolerability. This includes abdominal fullness, meteorism, belching, flatulence, nausea, and vomiting. In the semaglutide cardiovascular outcome trial, the placebo-adjusted rate of gastrointestinal symptoms was 16%. A further frequently discussed side effect of GLP-1 analogs is the increased risk of pancreatitis. Shortly after market introduction of exenatide, the USFDA issued an alert reporting 30 cases of pancreatitis associated with the drug. Several post market surveillance studies have followed up on this issue, and the debate is still ongoing whether GLP-1 analogs (and DPP-4 inhibitors) increase the risk of pancreatitis. Currently, existing data does not support increased risks of pancreas damage due to GLP-1 analogs or DPP-4 inhibitors. But due to the ongoing debate, the USFDA and the European Medicines Agency released a joint letter in 2014. It said: "A pooled analysis of data from 14,611 patients with T2D from 25 clinical trials in the sitagliptin database provided no compelling evidence of an increased risk of pancreatitis or pancreatic cancer… Both agencies agree that assertions concerning a causal association between incretin-based drugs and pancreatitis or pancreatic cancer, as expressed recently in the scientific literature and in the media, are inconsistent with the current data." But both agencies also agreed that pancreatitis will still continue to be considered a risk associated with incretin treatment until more data are available and that they will continue to investigate this safety signal.

DPP-4 Inhibitors

An alternative way of utilizing the beneficial incretin effects on glucose metabolism is inhibiting the GLP-1 degrading enzyme DPP-4 and thus prolonging endogenous GLP-1 plasma half-life. However, the glucose-lowering effect of DPP-4 inhibitors is much smaller than the effect of a direct agonism on the GLP-1 receptor elicited with GLP-1 analogs. The first DPP-4 inhibitor approved for the treatment of diabetes was sitagliptin in 2006. Indication for prescription is poor glycemic control in T2D. It has to be prescribed in combination with diet and exercise, with or without other oral hypoglycemic agents and with or without insulin. Available tablets are of 25, 50, and 100 mg, and there are fixed combinations with metformin available. The usual sitagliptin dose in adults with good renal function is 100 mg once daily. Adverse reactions occur seldom and include headache, nausea, and rash. Hypoglycemia can occur if treatment is combined with other blood glucose-lowering drugs. Excretion happens mainly unchanged; only about 15% of the drug is metabolized in the liver, largely by the cytochrome P450 system (CYP3A4 and 2C8), making liver injury by the drug a rare side effect. A cardiovascular outcome trial was performed (named TECOS) and proved cardiovascular safety [25].

In 2007 the second DPP-4 inhibitor was approved for the treatment of T2D, vildagliptin, and in 2009 the third drug of this class was approved, saxagliptin. However, in the cardiovascular outcome study for saxagliptin, with T2D patients at increased risk for cardiovascular disease (SAVOR-TIMI [26]), there was a warning sign for increased mortality as compared to placebo treatment: there was a trend for increase in all-cause mortality (HR 1.11, CI 0.96–1.27) based on about 800 observed deaths, which was driven by non-cardiovascular deaths [26]. Furthermore, the study showed a statistically significant 27% increased rate for hospitalization due to heart failure in the drug group: 3.5% of patients who were treated with saxagliptin were hospitalized for heart failure as compared to only 2.8% of patients treated with placebo (HR 1.27, CI 1.07–1.51, $p = 0.007$). In 2015 the USFDA released a warning stating "A potential increase in all-cause mortality with saxagliptin was observed." In Germany, the declaration of assumption of additional beneficial effects in the treatment of T2D as compared to established T2D therapies, which is necessary for the reimbursement of therapy costs be health insurances, was withdrawn due to existing clinical data for saxagliptin.

Many other chemical compounds have been developed up-to-date inhibiting DPP-4 by variable molecular mechanism. Approval status in the different countries differs, and many of the substances are only approved in either Asian countries, the European Union or the USA. Among DPP-4 inhibitors approved for the treatment of T2D in the USA, implying the conduction of a cardiovascular outcome study, is alogliptin (which received the same drug safety warning by the FDA as saxagliptin, cardiovascular outcome study, EXAMINE [27]). For other DPP-4 inhibitors, cardiovascular outcome studies are ongoing or planned (linagliptin, study names CARMELINA). For vildagliptin, gemigliptin, anagliptin, teneligliptin, trelagliptin, omarigliptin, and evogliptin, currently no (cost and time-intensive) cardiovascular outcome studies are planned, and accordingly no approval in countries requiring these studies will be possible.

Concluding Remarks

- GLP-1 analogs reduce HbA1c and body weight of patients with type 2 diabetes consistently in clinical studies. HbA1c is reduced by about 0.75–1.5%, body weight by about 1–4 kg. After an initial decrease in both parameters in the first half year of treatment, treatment needs to be continued to maintain this effect.
- Only for liraglutide and semaglutide, positive results of cardiovascular outcome trials are available: liraglutide reduced the primary composite outcome (death from cardiovascular causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or nonfatal stroke), as well as cardiovascular mortality and all-cause mortality. Semaglutide treatment only reduced the occurrence of the primary composite outcome, but not of cardiovascular or all-cause-death.
- The most common side effects of GLP-1 analogs are dyspeptic complaints including abdominal fullness, meteorism, belching, flatulence, nausea, and vomiting. In <10% of patients, these complaints led to a discontinuation of treatment in clinical studies. Still under review are reports of pancreas damage and of medullary thyroid carcinoma. But as seen from current data, it is rather unlikely that both occurrences are related to GLP-1 agonist treatment.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. How do GLP-1 analogs exert their blood glucose lowering effect? By:
   (a) Increasing insulin secretion of the pancreatic β-cell
   (b) Directly acting on glucose transporters (GLUT family)
   (c) Blocking the sodium/glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT-2) in the kidney
   (d) Inhibiting the enzyme alpha-glucosidase in the intestine
   (e) Inhibiting the enzyme dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4)

2. Which effects are not known for GLP-1 analogs? (mark the answer which is not true)
   (a) Increasing insulin secretion
   (b) Reducing blood glucose levels when elevated
   (c) Promoting satiety
   (d) Decreasing intestinal motility
   (e) Reducing pulse rate
3. What is the average HbA1c change yielded by GLP-1 analog therapy in type 2 diabetes?
   (a) Increase of more than 2% points
   (b) Increase of >0–2% points
   (c) No change in HbA1c
   (d) Decrease of >0–2% points
   (e) Decrease of more than 2% points
4. Which of the following diabetes drugs does not directly bind to the GLP-1 receptor? (mark the answer which is not true)
   (a) Exenatide
   (b) Sitagliptin
   (c) Dulaglutide
   (d) Liraglutide
   (e) Albiglutide
5. Typical side effects of the GLP-1 analog class are (mark the answer which is not true):
   (a) Nausea
   (b) Increase in pulse rate
   (c) Hypoglycemia
   (d) Diarrhea
   (e) Vomiting
6. For which GLP-1 analog a reduction in all-cause mortality could be demonstrated?
   (a) Albiglutide
   (b) Lixisenatide
   (c) Liraglutide
   (d) Exenatide
   (e) Dulaglutide
7. What is the mechanism how in exenatide LAR plasma half-life is prolonged?
   (a) Attachment to and incorporation in so-called microspheres
   (b) Binding of exenatide to human albumin
   (c) Binding of exenatide to IgG
   (d) Increasing the exenatide concentration in the drug solution
   (e) Binding of exenatide to an absorption enhancer
8. Which of the following GLP-1 analogs is injected twice daily?
   (a) Exenatide
   (b) Liraglutide
   (c) Dulaglutide
   (d) Exenatide LAR
   (e) Albiglutide
9. Which of the following GLP-1 analogs was approved for the treatment of obesity also in the absence of T2D?
   (a) Exenatide
   (b) Liraglutide
   (c) Dulaglutide
   (d) Exenatide LAR
   (e) Albiglutide
10. For which of the following GLP-1 analogs an oral formulation is currently investigated?
   (a) Exenatide
   (b) Liraglutide
   (c) Dulaglutide
   (d) Semaglutide
   (e) Albiglutide

Correct Answers

1. (a) increasing insulin secretion of the pancreatic β-cell
   GLP-1 analogs bind to the GLP-1 receptor expressed on the surface of pancreatic β-cells and stimulate the adenylyl cyclase pathway, resulting in increased insulin synthesis and increased release of insulin
2. (e) Reducing pulse rate
   GLP-1 analogs do not reduce pulse rate. On the contrary, in clinical studies a slight increase in pulse rate has been noted in GLP-1 treated patients
3. (d) Decrease of >0–2 % points
   In approval studies, GLP-1 analogs reduced HbA1c compared to placebo treatment between 0.7 and 1.9 % points (Table 33.2)
4. (b) Sitagliptin
   Sitagliptin is an inhibitor of the dipeptidyl peptidase 4 (DPP-4) and does not directly bind to the GLP-1 receptor
5. (c) Hypogycemia
   Due to the glucose dependent insulinotropic effect of GLP-1 hypoglycemias are not a typical side effect of GLP-1 analogs
6. (c) Liraglutide
   Liraglitude is the only GLP-1 analog up-to-date which proved to reduce all-cause mortality in a cardiovascular outcome trial
7. (a) attachment to and incorporation in so-called microsperes
   The long acting formulation of exenatide (exenatide LAR) was created by binding the exenatide molecule to the surface of a microsphere, and by incorporating the molecule into the microsphere. This prolongs the absorption of the exenatide molecule after SC application

8. (a) Exenatide
   Exenatide is injected twice daily in the treatment of T2D
9. (b) Liraglutide
   Liraglutide in the formulation of 3 mg, injected once daily was approved for the treatment of obesity also in the absence of T2D
10. (d) Semaglutide
    Semaglutide is currently tested in an oral formulation

Glossary

Cardiovascular outcome study Study demanded from the USFDA since 2008 for all new diabetes drugs to rule out an excess cardiovascular risk. Cardiovascular safety is defined by the USFDA as an upper bound of the two-sided 95% CI for major adverse cardiovascular events of less than 1.8 preapproval and 1.3 postapproval.

Functional magnetic resonance imaging (FMRI) Technique to assess brain perfusion and thus receive information about the activity of different areas of the brain

Gastric inhibitory polypeptide (GIP, later also termed glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide) Peptide hormone produced mainly in the K-cells of the duodenum and the jejunum. Increases insulin secretion of the β-cells of the pancreas when blood glucose is elevated

Glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) Peptide hormone produced mainly in the L-cells of the distal ileum and the colon. Increases insulin secretion of the β-cells of the pancreas when blood glucose is elevated. Analogs of GLP-1 were the first incretin mimetics approved for the treatment of diabetes mellitus type 2.

References

1. Bayliss WM, Starling EH. The mechanism of pancreatic secretion. J Physiol. 1902;28:325–53.
2. Elrick H, Stimmler L, Hlad CJ Jr, Arai Y. Plasma insulin response to oral and intravenous glucose administration. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1964;24:1076–82.
3. McIntyre N, Holdsworth CD, Turner DS. New interpretation of oral glucose tolerance. Lancet. 1964;2:20–1.
4. Perley MJ, Kipnis DM. Plasma insulin responses to oral and intravenous glucose: studies in normal and diabetic subjects. J Clin Invest. 1967;46:1954–62.
5. Kim W, Egan JM. The role of incretins in glucose homeostasis and diabetes treatment. Pharmacol Rev. 2008;60:470–512. https://doi.org/10.1124/pr.108.000604.
6. Nauck MA, Homberger E, Siegel EG, Allen RC, Eaton RP, Ebert R, et al. Incretin effects of increasing glucose loads in man calculated from venous insulin and C-peptide responses. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1986;63:492–8.
7. Teff KL. How neural mediation of anticipatory and compensatory insulin release helps us tolerate food. Physiol Behav. 2011;103:44–50. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.physbeh.2011.01.012.
8. Shestakova EA, Sklyanik IA, Dedova ED, Nikankina LV, Shestakova MV, Dedov II. Influence of meal olfactory and visual stimuli on GLP-1 plasma concentration in healthy volunteers. European association of the Study of Diabetes, 53rd annual meeting, 2017, abstract no. 508 (PS 028).
9. Furness JB, Rivera LR, Cho HJ, Bravo DM, Callaghan B. The gut as a sensory organ. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2013;10:729–40. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrgastro.2013.180.
10. Holst JJ. The physiology of glucagon-like peptide 1. Physiol Rev. 2007;87:1409–39.
11. Roussel M, Mathieu J, Dalle S. Molecular mechanisms redirecting the GLP-1 receptor signalling profile in pancreatic β-cells during type 2 diabetes. Horm Mol Biol Clin Invest. 2016;26:87–95. https://doi.org/10.1515/hmbci-2015-0071.
12. Holst JJ, Christensen M, Lund A, de Heer J, Svendsen B, Kielgast U, et al. Regulation of glucagon secretion by incretins. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2011;13(Suppl 1):89–94. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1463-1326.2011.01452.x.
13. Schloegl H, Percik R, Horstmann A, Villringer A, Stumvoll M. Peptide hormones regulating appetite – focus on neuroimaging studies in humans. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2011;27:104–12. https://doi.org/10.1002/dmrr.1154.
14. Nonogaki K, Kaji T, Yamazaki T, Murakami M. Pharmacologic stimulation of central GLP-1 receptors has opposite effects on the alterations of plasma FGF21 levels induced by feeding and fasting. Neurosci Lett. 2016;612:14–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neulet.2015.12.011.
15. Schlögl H, Kabisch S, Horstmann A, Lohmann G, Müller K, Lepsien J, et al. Exenatide-induced reduction in energy intake is associated with increase in hypothalamic connectivity. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:1933–40. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc12-1925.
16. Van Bloemendaal L, IJzerman RG, Ten Kulve JS, Barkhof F, Konrad RJ, Drent ML, et al. GLP-1 receptor activation modulates appetite – and reward-related brain areas in humans. Diabetes. 2014;63:4186–96. https://doi.org/10.2337/db14-0849.
17. Frias JP, Bastyr EJ 3rd, Vignati L, Tschöp MH, Schmitt C, Owen K, et al. The sustained effects of a dual GIP/GLP-1 receptor agonist, NNC0090-2746, in patients with type 2 diabetes. Cell Metab. 2017;26:343–52. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2017.07.011.
18. Pi-Sunyer X, Astrup A, Fujioka K, Greenway F, Halpern A, Krempf M, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of 3.0 mg of liraglutide in weight management. N Engl J Med. 2015;373:11–22. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1411892.
19. Marso SP, Daniels GH, Brown-Frandsen K, Kristensen P, Mann JF, Nauck MA, et al. Liraglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2016;375:311–22. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1603827.
20. Cai Y, Wei L, Ma L, Huang X, Tao A, Liu Z, et al. Long-acting preparations of exenatide. Drug Des Devel Ther. 2013;7:963–70. https://doi.org/10.2147/DDDT.S46970.
21. Holman RR, Bethel MA, Mentz RJ, Thompson VP, Lokhnygina Y, Buse JB, et al. Effects of once-weekly exenatide on cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2017;377:1228–39. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1612917.
22. Lau J, Bloch P, Schäffer L, Pettersson I, Spetzler J, Kofoed J, et al. Discovery of the once-weekly glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) analogue semaglutide. J Med Chem. 2015;58:7370–80. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jmedchem.5b00726.
23. Pfeffer MA, Claggett B, Diaz R, Dickstein K, Gerstein HC, Køber LV, et al. Lixisenatide in patients with type 2 diabetes and acute

coronary syndrome. N Engl J Med. 2015;373:2247–57. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1509225.
24. Marso SP, Bain SC, Consoli A, Eliaschewitz FG, Jódar E, Leiter LA, et al. Semaglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2016;375:1834–44. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1607141.
25. Green JB, Bethel MA, Armstrong PW, Buse JB, Engel SS, Garg J, et al. Effect of sitagliptin on cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2015;373:232–42. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1501352.
26. Scirica BM, Bhatt DL, Braunwald E, Steg PG, Davidson J, Hirshberg B, et al. Saxagliptin and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2013;369:1317–26. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1307684.
27. White WB, Cannon CP, Heller SR, Nissen SE, Bergenstal RM, Bakris GL, et al. Alogliptin after acute coronary syndrome in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2013;369:1327–35. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1305889.
28. Nissen SE, Wolski K. Effect of rosiglitazone on the risk of myocardial infarction and death from cardiovascular causes. N Engl J Med. 2007;356:2457–71.
29. Le Roux CW, Astrup A, Fujioka K, et al. 3 years of liraglutide versus placebo for type 2 diabetes risk reduction and weight management in individuals with prediabetes: a randomised, double-blind trial. Lancet. 2017;389:1399–409. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)30069-7.
30. Madsbad S. Review of head-to-head comparisons of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2016;18:317–32. https://doi.org/10.1111/dom.12596.

Further Reading

Furness JB, et al. The gut as a sensory organ. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2013;10:729–40. This review provides an excellent overview about the molecular mechanism how the gut sensors the content of the intestinal lumen and how this information is further processed to elicit reactions in the human body. This review also provides further information about the receptors on intestinal L-cells which, when activated, trigger GLP-1-secretion.

Holst JJ. The physiology of glucagon-like peptide 1. Physiol Rev. 2007;87:1409–39. Comprehensive review from 2007 highlighting GLP-1 physiology with detailed descriptions how GLP-1 affects the pancreas, intestine, liver, and other parts of the body and how GLP-1-physiology is altered in conditions like obesity and diabetes.

Madsbad S. Review of head-to-head comparisons of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2016;18:317–32. Good overview of head-to-head trials comparing effects of pharmaceutically available GLP-1 analogs.

Schlögl H, et al. Exenatide-induced reduction in energy intake is associated with increase in hypothalamic connectivity. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:1933–40. First neuroimaging study which investigates the central nervous effects of GLP-1 analog administration in humans with functional MRI, demonstration changes of hypothalamic activity after GLP-1 analog administration which are accompanied by decreased hunger and reduced energy intake.

Sodium-Glucose Cotransporter 2 Inhibitors

34

George Dailey III, Lauren H. S. Clarine, and Renil Marie Rodriguez-Martinez

Introduction

One of the most important entries into the diabetes therapy armamentarium are the sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors (SGLT 2 inhibitors) which first reached the US and European markets in early 2013. The idea for this mechanism of action is derived from the identification of an older drug, phlorizin, originally derived from the bark of an apple tree. It caused marked increase in urinary glucose excretion. It was useful for mechanistic studies in animal models but was too toxic for use in patients. Additionally, there is a naturally occurring mutation in this co-transporter found in less than 1% of the population. These patients have been known for years. They have glycosuria with normal plasma glucose unless they also happen to have diabetes, which occurs rarely in this population. They seem to live perfectly normal lives with the possible exception of increased vaginal moniliasis related to the glycosuria. Work began in the 1990s looking for less toxic analogs of phlorizin. This has led to the currently available marketed drugs.

These drugs have rapidly become an extremely valuable tool in treating diabetes. Most of the data is from type 2 diabetes trials although there are smaller pilot trials with type 1 diabetics as well. Both fasting and postprandial hyperglycemia are reduced. There is also associated weight loss in most patients, presumably related primarily to caloric loss from excreted glucose. The mechanism of action is independent of insulin itself, and there is virtually no risk of hypoglycemia from them unless they are paired with an insulin secretagogue or insulin itself. Several other interesting metabolic consequences have been identified including somewhat elevated plasma glucagon and ketone body production which will be elaborated on further in this chapter.

There are three such agents at present in the Americas and Europe: canagliflozin, dapagliflozin, and empagliflozin.

There are two marketed in Asia and at least two others in development as of this writing. The efficacy and safety data appear similar for the drugs studied to date. However, there are few head-to-head trials available for direct comparison. The efficacy and side effects appear similar in most trials. In general, phase 3 trials have shown a hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c) reduction of 0.7–1.0% as monotherapy or in addition to other antidiabetic agents including insulin.

Mechanism of Action

In nondiabetic individuals, the kidney filters approximately 180 mg of glucose daily. Ninety percent of this is absorbed via the energy-dependent sodium-glucose cotransporter receptor moving from the tubular lumen to the arterioles via GLUT 4 glucose transport back into the circulation. The remaining 10% is reabsorbed in the distal collecting tubule leaving no glucose excreted into the urine. In diabetes, there is an apparently maladaptive *increase* in the tubular threshold from the normal of 180 mg up to 220–240 mg making it even harder to eliminate excess serum glucose. In the presence of SGLT 2 inhibitors, the threshold for glucose elimination is reduced to about 40 mg, permitting much more glucose loss. This tends to reduce both fasting and postprandial glucose levels [1, 2]. As there is caloric loss from increased glucose excretion, weight loss is usually seen as well. This is in the range of 2–3 kg in most studies. Approximately two thirds of the loss is secondary to fat loss and one third from fluid loss. A molecule of sodium is also excreted with each molecule of glucose resulting in a net loss of body sodium. This leads to a small reduction in blood pressure averaging about 5 mmHg systolic. This may be beneficial since most patients tend to have some sodium excess. However, in patients somewhat sodium or volume depleted,

G. Dailey III (✉)
The Scripps Whittier Diabetes Institute, La Jolla, CA, USA
e-mail: Dailey.George@scrippshealth.org

L. H. S. Clarine
Scripps Green Hospital, San Diego, CA, USA

R. M. Rodriguez-Martinez
Diabetes and Endocrinology Training Program, Scripps Clinic/Scripps Green Hospital, San Diego, CA, USA
e-mail: rodriguez.martinez.renil@scrippshealth.org

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_34

this could result in excessive blood pressure reduction and dehydration. In the United States, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has reported approximately 100 cases of acute kidney injury to patients placed on these drugs. Many cases are seen in older patients with some renal dysfunction who are also taking loop diuretics. Therefore, one must be cautious in these patients and start with the lower dose and observe the initial response.

Canagliflozin

Canagliflozin was approved by the FDA in the United States in March of 2013 for use in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. It was the first of the SGLT-2 inhibitors to be released in the market. The initial dose is 100 mg daily and can be increased to 300 mg in those tolerating the medication if GFR is ≥60 ml/min/1.73m^2. Fixed doses of canagliflozin in combination with metformin are available in 50/500, 50/1000, 150/500, and 150/1000 mg [3]. The glucosuric effects are estimated to be an excretion of approximately 100 g of urinary glucose per day. It has the most glucosuric effects of the three approved SGLT-2 inhibitors.

Unique to canagliflozin is its weak inhibition of SGLT-1, which is located in both the gut and renal tubules, in addition to its main SGLT-2 inhibition. With inhibition of SGLT-1, it is thought to have effects in lowering postprandial hyperglycemia by delaying intestinal glucose absorption, but this is an observation from small studies [4].

Efficacy of canagliflozin has been studied as add-on therapy to metformin in comparison with other antihyperglycemic agents such as DPP4-inhibitors and sulfonylureas [5]. A randomized, double-blinded trial was published in 2013 comparing the efficacy of canagliflozin with sitagliptin in patients on monotherapy with metformin ≥1500 mg daily. After 52 weeks, both sitagliptin 100 mg and canagliflozin 100 mg were effective in lowering hemoglobin A1C by an average of 0.73%. Canagliflozin 300 mg decreased hemoglobin A1C by 0.88%. Both canagliflozin doses were superior in weight reduction (3.8% and 4.2%) compared with a decrease of 1.3% in the sitagliptin group.

In 2015, canagliflozin was compared with glimepiride in a phase 3, randomized, double-blinded, 104-week-long study as add-on therapy for diabetic patients already on therapeutic doses (≥ 1500 mg today daily) of metformin. Canagliflozin decreased hemoglobin A1C by an average of 0.65% for the 100 mg dose and 0.74% for the 300 mg dose in comparison to glimepiride which resulted in an average 0.55% reduction. Canagliflozin was also associated with less hypoglycemia, with a prevalence of 40% in the glimepiride group and only 6% and 8% in the canagliflozin 100 and 300 mg groups, respectively. Weight loss was observed with canagliflozin, as opposed to weight gain for patients on glimepiride, with an average loss of 4.1% (3.6 kg) of pretreatment body weight for the 100 mg and 4.2% (3.6 kg) for the 300 mg groups [6].

There is data on canagliflozin with use in patients on insulin treatment. The CANVAS trial compared canagliflozin and placebo to patients on basal or basal-bolus insulin for 18 weeks with a 52-week follow-up. Canagliflozin added to insulin therapy in this trial improved glycemic control. At baseline, hemoglobin A1c was 8.3% in both groups. At 18 weeks, reductions in hemoglobin A1c of 0.62% and 0.73% for canagliflozin 100 and 300 mg, respectively, were observed in comparison to placebo. Differences in hemoglobin A1C persisted after 52 weeks with a reduction of 0.58% in the 100 mg group and 0.73% in the 300 mg group in comparison to placebo. There were differences in weight and blood pressure reduction as well. A weight loss of 1.9% and 2.4% was seen for each canagliflozin dose. Systolic blood pressure decreased by an average of 3.1 and 6.2 mmHg and diastolic blood pressure by 1.2 and 2.4 mmHg in each of the canagliflozin groups [7].

Safety and efficacy of canagliflozin have been evaluated in patients with preexisting chronic kidney disease with GFRs between ≥30 and ≤50 ml/min/1.73 m^2. Placebo-subtracted differences in A1c values were seen for the 100 and 300 mg groups from baseline (0.27% and 0.41%). There were lower body weights and blood pressure for both doses in comparison with placebo as well [8].

Dapagliflozin

Dapagliflozin was approved for treatment in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in the United States in 2014 as an adjunct to diet and exercise. It is a highly selective SGLT-2 inhibitor. The initial dose is 5 mg which can be increased to 10 mg orally daily. It is available in combination with metformin as well [3].

Dapagliflozin has been observed to be non-inferior to sulfonylureas and superior to DPP-4 inhibitors as add-on therapy to metformin. Monotherapy comparing metformin and dapagliflozin has been evaluated in treatment-naïve patients. Results from this study demonstrated non-inferiority between metformin and dapagliflozin. Dapagliflozin as monotherapy decreased hemoglobin A1C by an average range of 0.55–0.9% in comparison to 0.73% with metformin [9]. Dapagliflozin is effective in lowering hemoglobin A1c when added to metformin as well. A 52-week double-blinded trial with patients having hemoglobin A1c values between 8–12% at baseline showed significant improvement. Dapagliflozin added to metformin decreased hemoglobin A1C an average of 1.2% which was significantly lower than the combination

of saxagliptin with metformin (0.9%). This study also compared triple therapy with all three agents and found superiority to dual therapy by reducing hemoglobin A1c by up to 1.5%. Weight loss was superior in the dual-therapy dapagliflozin and metformin group with an average loss of 2.8% (2.1 kg) and the triple therapy group which lost an average of 2.4% (2.1 kg) compared to the saxagliptin and metformin group (no significant change seen) [10]. Efficacy of dapagliflozin has been compared to sulfonylureas. The sulfonylurea, glipizide, was compared to dapagliflozin and resulted in non-inferiority at 52 weeks. This trial was extended for 2 years and a sustained decrement in hemoglobin A1C was observed with dapagliflozin compared with glipizide (0.32% vs 0.14%) [11].

Empagliflozin

The FDA approved empagliflozin as an antihyperglycemic agent to be used in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in the United States in 2014. It is available in a starting dose of 10 mg which can be increased to 25 mg daily in patients with a GFR $\geq$ 45 ml/min/1.73 m^2. Its glucosuric effects are estimated to be 78 grams of glucose per day. Like canagliflozin and dapagliflozin, it also has weight loss and blood pressure-lowering effects.

Empagliflozin has been studied as an add-on therapy to metformin in comparison to sulfonylureas as well as triple therapy with DPP-4 inhibitors and metformin. A double-blinded phase 3, 104-week-long study in patients with poor diabetes control on monotherapy with metformin was randomized to either glimepiride or empagliflozin therapy. With baseline hemoglobin A1c levels between 7% and 10%, empagliflozin 25 mg significantly decreased hemoglobin A1c a mean of 0.11% more than glimepiride. Adverse events were similar in both groups, but there was a marked difference in the frequency of hypoglycemia between the empagliflozin and glimepiride groups (2% vs 24%) [12]. Addition of empagliflozin 10 mg and 25 mg was compared to placebo in a 24-week-long, double-blinded trial with poorly controlled type 2 diabetic patients on linagliptin and metformin combination therapy. In comparison with placebo, the empagliflozin 10 and 25 mg groups were observed to have a – 0.79% and – 0.7% difference in hemoglobin A1c from baseline. Addition of empagliflozin to linagliptin and metformin had no added adverse effects. Weight loss and blood pressure benefits were seen in both empagliflozin groups. Hypoglycemia occurred more frequently in the empagliflozin 25 mg group versus the placebo group in this trial (2.7% vs 0.9%) [13]. Positive outcomes and improvement in glycemic control have been observed with the use of empagliflozin with other agents including sitagliptin, pioglitazone, and insulin therapy (both basal and basal/bolus regimens) [14–17]. Clinical trials are underway assessing the use of empagliflozin with GLP-1 agonists [18].

Cardiovascular Benefits

Approvals for most new antidiabetic agents in the United States have included a requirement for generally large-scale cardiovascular outcome trials primarily to be certain they do not increase cardiovascular risk [19]. The first of these for this new class was presented at the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD) in September 2015. In contrast to previous studies, this one for empagliflozin (EMPA-REG trial) showed striking benefit particularly in cardiovascular mortality (38% relative risk reduction), hospitalizations for congestive heart failure (35% relative risk reduction), and death from any cause (32% relative risk reduction). Death from any cause was reduced by 32% [22]. This was much less striking for myocardial infarctions and nonexistent for stroke benefit. The median duration of this trial was 3.1 years. Remarkably, the survival curves began to diverge within about 3 months of beginning the trial. Although there was expected reduction in plasma glucose, it seems unlikely that this effect could result in a benefit of this magnitude so quickly. A proposed mechanism for such rapid benefits has been reduction in arterial stiffness. Sodium and glucose loss reduces extracellular fluid volume and blood pressure. This reduces cardiac pre- and afterload and myocardial metabolism, improving both systolic and diastolic functions. All of this may play a role in the observed rapid reduction in hospitalizations for heart failure and cardiac death. The large majority of subjects were treated with platelet inhibitors, statins, and adequate blood pressure control. Therefore, the benefits appear to be over and above these standard therapies [20–22] (Fig. 34.1).

What could account for these remarkable improvements? The known effects of the drug are unlikely to account for the magnitude of this effect. Reduction in arterial stiffness had been observed with these drugs verified by arterial ultrasound compression [23]. The onset of heart failure sets in motion a cascade of effects which may lead to a vicious cycle of vasoconstriction with activation of the adrenergic nervous system and the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system including the tubular glomerular feedback in the kidney which may alter this adverse sequence of events. The sum total of the changes likely reduces cardiac preload and afterload and improves myocardial oxygen supply [24].

The results of CANVAS, the cardiovascular outcomes trial for canagliflozin, were reported in June 2017 and confirmed that these benefits are common to other drugs in this class. The dapagliflozin cardiovascular outcome trial is not due to report until 2019.

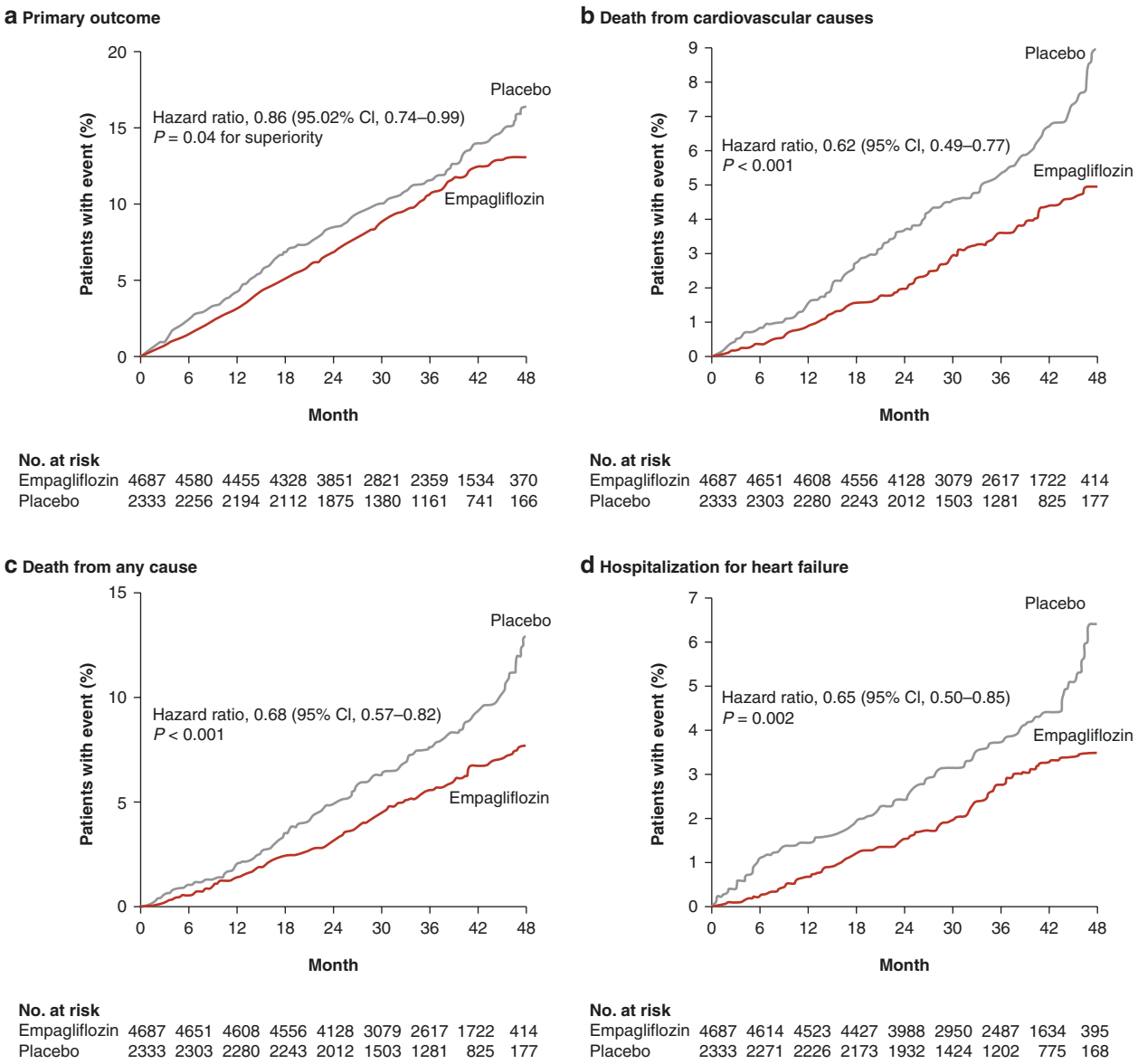


Fig. 34.1 Cardiovascular outcomes and death from any cause. (**a**) Primary outcome, (**b**) Death cardiovascular causes, (**c**) Death from any cause, and (**d**) Hospitalization for heart failure. Shown are the cumulative incidence of the primary outcomes (death from cardiovascular causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or nonfatal stroke) (panel **a**), cumulative incidence of death from cardiovascular causes (panel **b**), the Kaplan-Meier estimate for death from any cause (panel **c**), and the cumulative incidence of hospitalization for heart failure (panel **d**) in the empagliflozin group and the placebo group among patients who received at least one dose of a study drug. Hazard ratios are based on Cox regression analyses. (From Zinman [22])

Renal Effects

In a subsequent preplanned substudy (EMPA_REG Renal), significant benefits were observed in those having renal dysfunction with estimated glomerular filtration rates (GFR) of 30–60 ml/min [25]. There is a transient small drop in GFR seen on initiating these drugs that is possibly related to diuresis and volume contraction. However, as can be readily seen from Figs. 34.2 and 34.3, the net result was positive for preservation of renal function compared to the placebo-treated arm in which there was small continuing loss of eGFR. Renal endpoints of newly appearing or worsening nephropathy and progression to macroalbuminuria were reduced by 29% and 38%,

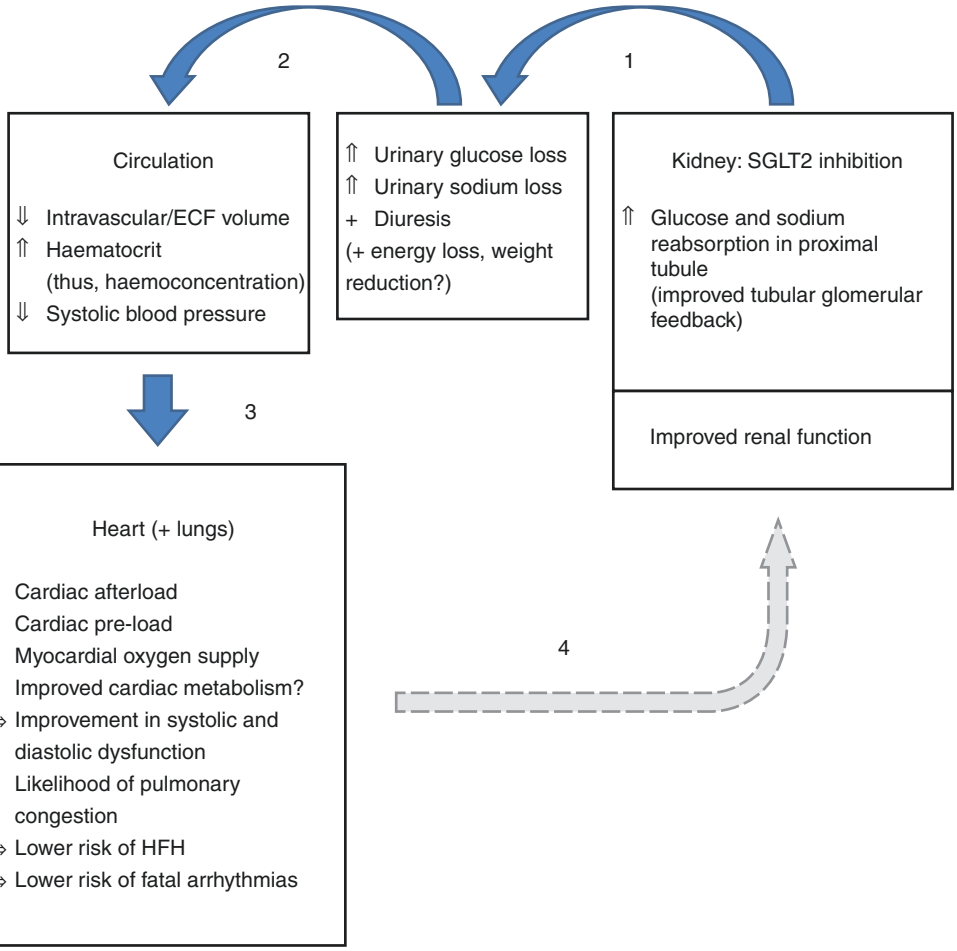


Fig. 34.2 Potential pathway linking empagliflozin and possibly other SGLT2 inhibitors with lower risks for heart failure and cardiovascular disease (From Sattar [24])

a

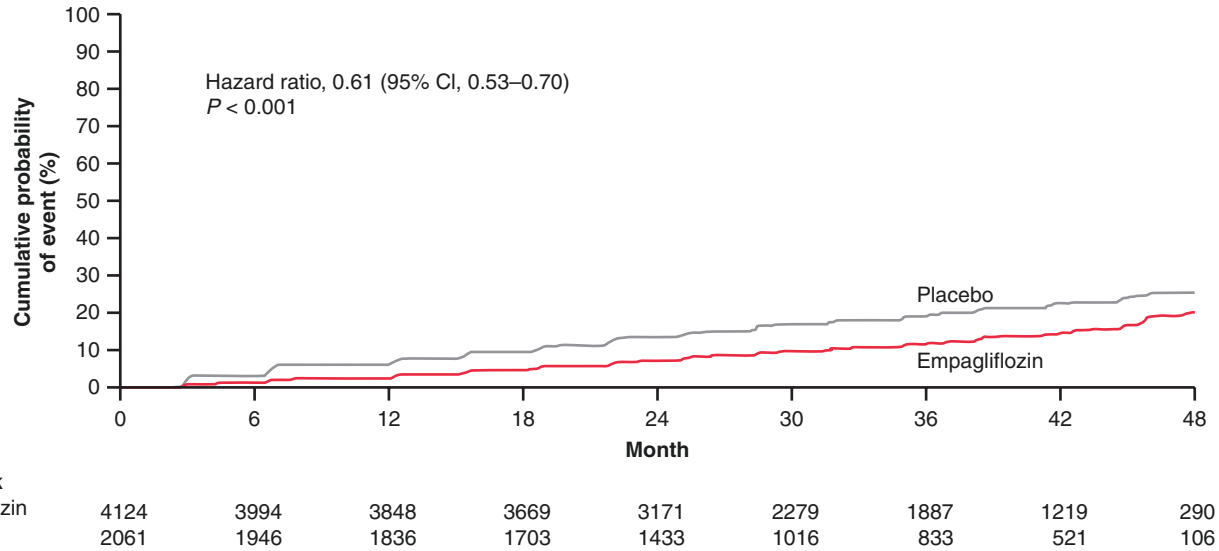


Fig. 34.3 Kaplan-Meier analysis of two key renal outcomes. Panel (**a**) incident or worsening nephropathy and panel (**b**) Post Hoc renal composite outcome. (From Wanner [25])

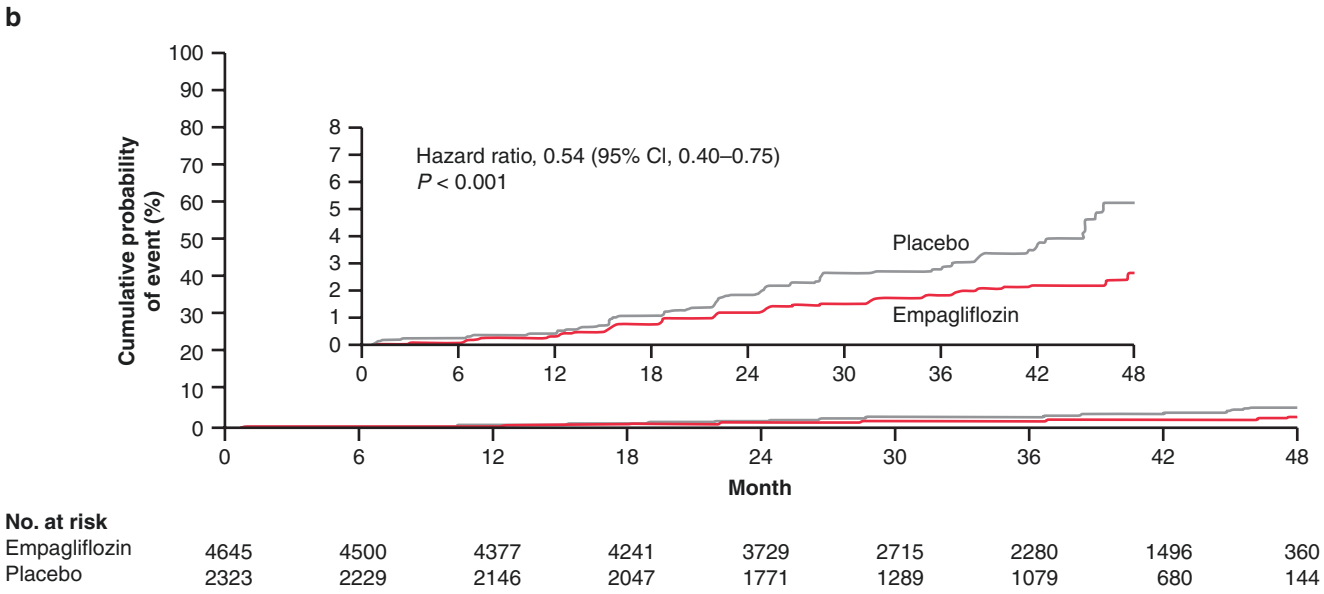


Fig. 34.3 (continued)

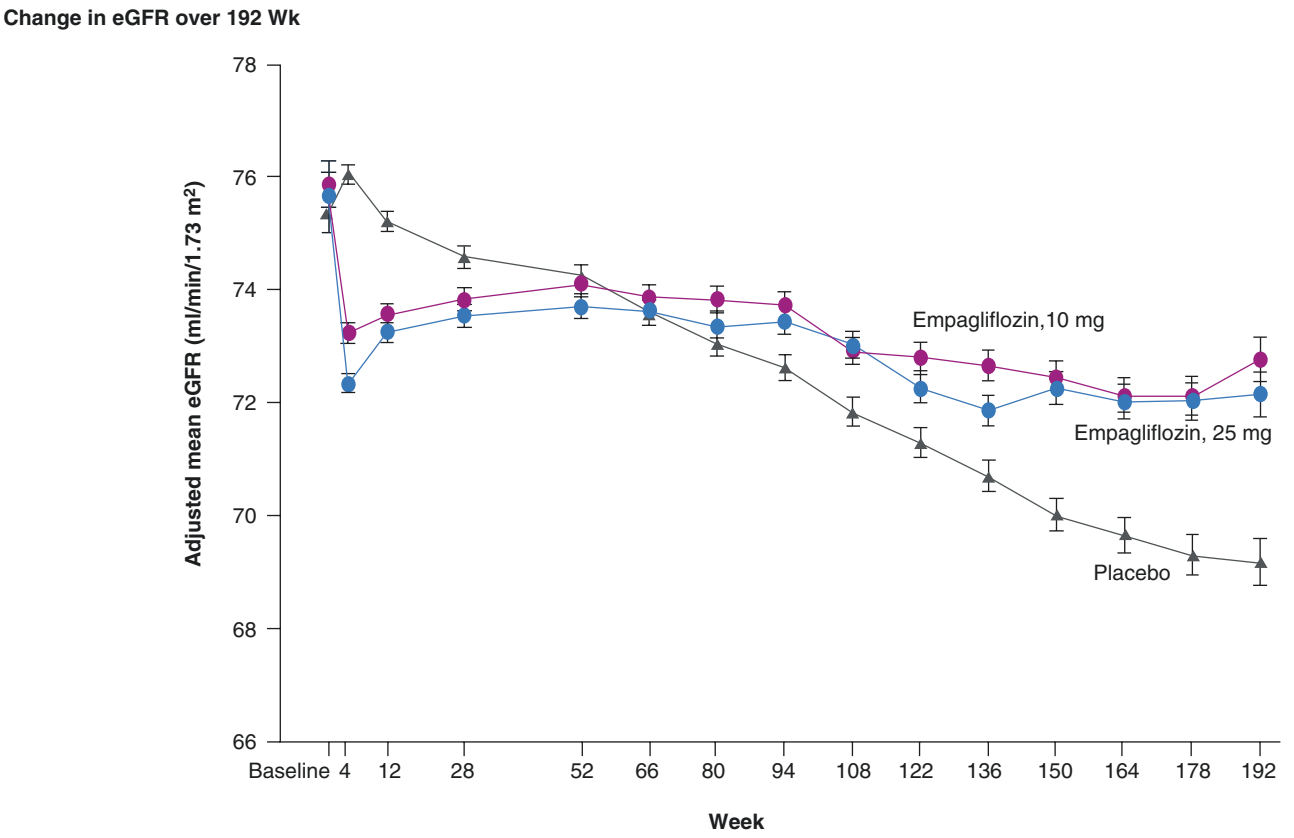
respectively. Hard renal endpoints of doubling of serum creatinine and need for renal replacement were reduced by 44% and 55%, respectively, although the latter endpoint occurred in relatively few subjects. These subjects were treated with standard of care with 79–85% receiving angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or angiotensin receptor blockers. Therefore, the benefits are additive and over and above those seen with treatments known to be effective. The prospect of significantly reducing the decline of GFR in chronic diabetic chronic kidney disease is exciting [30] (Fig. 34.4).

Whether renal benefits of SGLT-2 inhibitors are class related or specific to empagliflozin is unknown. A recent meta-analysis of adverse renal outcomes in published phase 3 clinical trials suggests that there may be some increase in adverse renal outcomes with dapagliflozin compared to some protection with empagliflozin. Thus, we will need more studies to conclude whether these benefits are common to all drugs in the class.

Other Metabolic Effects: Increased Ketogenesis, a "Superfuel"?

SGLT-2 inhibitors are known to increase glucagon, betahydroxybutyrate, and ketone body production. In this sense, they appear to shift metabolism from glucose to fat oxidation. Ketone bodies are readily taken up by the myocardial cells as fuel. Myocardium has the highest myocardial oxygen consumption at 8 ml O2/100 gm of tissue followed by 5 ml O2 for the kidney and 3 ml for brain tissue. It is postulated that an increased availability and use of ketone bodies could be beneficial to metabolically stressed organs [26, 27]. There is experimental evidence that this may result in more efficient oxygen sparing and cardiac work for any given level of demand. This could provide another mechanism for more rapid cardiac benefit.

There has been some concern about increased ketone body production particularly in very insulin-deficient patients such as type 1 diabetics. There are several case series raising this concern of ketoacidosis. The rate appears to be low in type 2 diabetes. The mechanism of action could be related to decreased insulin levels which leads to unopposed glucagon production and lipolysis which leads to ketogenesis. Risk factors and precipitants for diabetic ketoacidosis related to SGLT-2 inhibitors are sepsis, dehydration, surgeries, decrease in insulin dose administration (for those on insulin), and a low carbohydrate diet [28]. The risk of ketoacidosis could be minimized by educating all patients upon initiation of therapy that nausea, vomiting, and dehydration require checking for ketones and such symptoms should prompt them to seek medical attention [29].



No. at risk															
Placebo	2323	2295	2267	2205	2121	2064	1927	1981	1763	1479	1262	1123	977	731	448
Empagliflozin, 10 mg	2322	2290	2264	2235	2162	2114	2012	2064	1839	1540	1314	1180	1024	785	513
Empagliflozin, 25 mg	2322	2288	2269	2216	2156	2111	2006	2067	1871	1563	1340	1207	1063	838	524
No. in follow-up analysis															
Total	7020	7020	6996	6931	6864	6765	6696	6651	6068	5114	4443	3961	3488	2707	1703

Fig. 34.4 Changes in eGFR over 192 Weeks

Conclusion

SGLT-2 inhibitors are the newest pharmacologic resource for management of type 2 diabetes. Since their approval and release into the market in the United States in 2013, multiple studies have proven both efficacy and positive cardiovascular outcomes. Their use has also enhanced our knowledge on fuel metabolism and the use of ketones as a source of energy. Although generally well tolerated, clinicians should be on alert for possible adverse effects of dehydration and even normoglycemic diabetic ketoacidosis. The use of these agents is expected to rise given their marked improvements in hemoglobin A1c in addition to beneficial effects on weight, blood pressure, and cardiovascular outcomes.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. In patients with diabetes, the tubular threshold for the excretion of glucose:
   (a) Is decreased
   (b) Is adapted and increased
   (c) Is maladapted and increased
   (d) Is not different from people without diabetes
   (e) Is able to eliminate excess serum glucose
2. In the presence of SGLT 2 inhibitors, the threshold for glucose elimination is reduced:
   (a) Approximately 10 mg
   (b) Approximately 20 mg
   (c) Approximately 40 mg

(d) Approximately 80 mg
(e) Approximately 100 mg

3. Weight loss with the use of SGLT 2 inhibitors is estimated in the range of:
   (a) 1–3 kg
   (b) 2–3 kg
   (c) 3–4 kg
   (d) 4–5 kg
   (e) 5–6 kg
4. Weight loss from the use of SGLT 2 inhibitors is secondary:
   (a) To fat loss
   (b) To muscle loss
   (c) To fluid loss
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
5. Inhibition of SGLT 1, located in the gut and renal tubules, results in:
   (a) Lowering postprandial hyperglycemia
   (b) Lowering fasting blood glucose
   (c) Lowering blood pressure
   (d) Increasing glucose uptake
   (e) Increasing intestinal glucose absorption
6. Range doses of canagliflozin:
   (a) 5–10 mg daily
   (b) 10–25 mg daily
   (c) 50–100 mg daily
   (d) 100–300 mg daily
   (e) 150–200 mg daily
7. Range doses of dapagliflozin:
   (a) 5–10 mg daily
   (b) 10–25 mg daily
   (c) 50–100 mg daily
   (d) 100–300 mg daily
   (e) 150–200 mg daily
8. Range doses of empagliflozin:
   (a) 5–10 mg daily
   (b) 10–25 mg daily
   (c) 50–100 mg daily
   (d) 100–300 mg daily
   (e) 150–200 mg daily
9. The results of the EMPA-REG trial showed that the use of empagliflozin was associated:
   (a) With a 38% relative risk reduction in cardiovascular mortality
   (b) With a 35% relative risk reduction for congestive heart failure
   (c) With a 32% relative risk reduction of death from any cause
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
10. Cardiovascular benefits from the use of SGLT 2 inhibitors have been attributed to:
   (a) The effect of additional medications standard cardiovascular therapies
   (b) Reduction in arterial stiffness
   (c) Regression of atherosclerotic plaques
   (d) Their antihypertensive effects
   (e) Inhibition synthesis of advanced glycation products (AGEs)

Correct Answers

1. (c) Is maladapted and increased
2. (c) Approximately 40 mg
3. (b) 2–3 kg
4. (a) and (c)
5. (a) Lowering postprandial hyperglycemia
6. (d) 100–300 mg mg daily
7. (a) 5–10 mg daily
8. (b) 10–25 mg daily
9. (d) All of the above
10. (b) Reduction in arterial stiffness

References

1. Mudaliar S, Polidori D, Zambrowicz B, Henry R. Sodium-glucose cotransporter inhibitors: effects on renal and intestinal glucose transport. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(12):2344–53. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc15-0642.
2. Argento NB, Nakamura K. Glycemic effects of SGLT-2 inhibitor canagliflozin in type 1 diabetic patients using the DexCom G4 platinum CGM. Endocr Pract. 2016;22(3):315–22. https://doi.org/10.4158/EP151016.OR.
3. Plodkowski RA, McGarvey ME, Huribal HM, Reisinger-Kindle K, Kramer B, Solomon M, et al. SGLT-2 inhibitors for the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Fed Pract. 2015;32(Suppl 11):10S–7S.
4. Polidori D, Sha S, Mudaliar S, Ciaraldi TP, Ghosh A, Vaccaro N, et al. Canagliflozin lowers postprandial glucose and insulin by delaying intestinal glucose absorption in addition to increasing urinary glucose excretion: results of a randomized, placebo-controlled study. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(8):2154–61. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc12-2391.
5. Lavalle-González FJ, Januszewicz A, Davidson J, et al. Efficacy and safety of canagliflozin compared with placebo and sitagliptin in patients with type 2 diabetes on background metformin monotherapy: a randomised trial. Diabetologia. 2013;56(12):2582–92. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-013-3039-1.
6. Leiter LA, Yoon KH, Arias P, Langslet G, Xie J, Balis DA, et al. Canagliflozin provides durable glycemic improvements and body weight reduction over 104 weeks versus glimepiride in patients with type 2 diabetes on metformin: a randomized, double-blind, phase 3 study. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(3):355–64. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc13-2762.
7. Neal B, Perkovic V, de Zeeuw D, Mahaffey KW, Fulcher G, Ways K, CANVAS Trial Collaborative Group, et al. Efficacy and safety of canagliflozin, an inhibitor of sodium-glucose cotransporter 2, when used in conjunction with insulin therapy in patients with

type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(3):403–11. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc14-1237.
8. Yale JF, Bakris G, Cariou B, Nieto J, David-Neto E, Yue D, et al. Efficacy and safety of canagliflozin over 52 weeks in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and chronic kidney disease. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2014;16(10):1016–27. https://doi.org/10.1111/dom.12348.
9. List JF, Woo V, Morales E, Tang W, Fierdorek F. Sodium-glucose cotransport inhibition with dapagliflozin in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(4):650–7. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc08-1863.
10. Rosenstock J, Hansen L, Zee P, Li Y, Cook W, Hirshberg B, et al. Dual add-on therapy in type 2 diabetes poorly controlled with metformin monotherapy: a randomized double-blind trial of saxagliptin plus dapagliflozin addition versus single addition of saxagliptin or dapagliflozin to metformin. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(3):376–83. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc14-1142.
11. Nauck MA, Del Prato S, Meier JJ, Durán-García S, Rohwedder K, Elze M, et al. Dapagliflozin versus glipizide as add-on therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes who have inadequate glycemic control with metformin. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(9):2015–22. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc11-0606.
12. Ridderstråle M, Andersen KR, Zeller C, Kim G, Woerle HJ, Broedl UC, et al. Comparison of empagliflozin and glimepiride as add-on to metformin in patients with type 2 diabetes: a 104-week randomised, active-controlled, double-blind, phase 3 trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2014;2(9):691–700. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2213-8587(14)70120-2.
13. Søfteland E, Meier JJ, Vangen B, Toorawa R, Maldonado-Lutomirsky M, Broedl UC. Empagliflozin as add-on therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled with linagliptin and metformin: a 24-week randomized, double-blind, parallel-group trial. Diabetes Care. 2017;40(2):201–9. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc16-1347.
14. Ferrannini E, Berk A, Hantel S, Pinnetti S, Hach T, Woerle HJ, et al. Long-term safety and efficacy of empagliflozin, sitagliptin, and metformin: an active-controlled, parallel-group, randomized, 78-week open-label extension study in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(12):4015–21. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc13-0663.
15. Kovacs CS, Seshiah V, Merker L, Christiansen AV, Roux F, Salsali A, et al. Empagliflozin as add-on therapy to pioglitazone with or without metformin in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Clin Ther. 2015;37(8):1773–88.e1. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.clinthera.2015.05.511.
16. Rosenstock J, Jelaska A, Zeller C, Kim G, Broedl UC, Woerle HJ. Impact of empagliflozin added on to basal insulin in type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled on basal insulin: a 78-week randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2015;17(10):936–48. https://doi.org/10.1111/dom.12503.
17. Rosenstock J, Jelaska A, Frappin G, Salsali A, Kim G, Woerle HJ, et al. Improved glucose control with weight loss, lower insulin doses, and no increased hypoglycemia with empagliflozin added to titrated multiple daily injections of insulin in obese inadequately controlled type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(7):1815–23. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc13-3055.
18. De Fronzo R. Effect of combined incretin-based therapy plus canagliflozin on glycemic control and the compensatory rise in hepatic glucose production in type 2 diabetic patients, NCT02324842.
19. Zaccardi F, Webb DR, Htike ZZ, Youssef D, Khunti K, Davies MJ. Efficacy and safety of sodium-glucose co-2 inhibitors in type 2 diabetes mellitus: systematic review and network meta-analysis. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2016;18:783–94. https://doi.org/10.1111/dom.12670.
20. Abdul-Ghani M, Del Prato S, Chilton R, DeFronzo RA. SGLT2 inhibitors and cardiovascular risk: lessons learned from the EMPA-REG OUTCOME Study. Diabetes Care. 2016;39:717–25. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc16-0041.
21. Henry R, Thakkar P, Tong C, Polidori D, Alba M. Efficacy and safety of canagliflozin, a sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitor, as add-on to insulin in patients with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(12):2258–65. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc15-1730.
22. Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin J, Fitchett D, et al. Empagliflozin, cardiovascular outcomes and mortality in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2015;373:2117–27. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoal504720.
23. Chilton R, Tikkanen I, Cannon CP, Crowe S, Woerle HJ, Broedl UC, et al. Effects of empagliflozin on blood pressure and markers of arterial stiffness and vascular resistance in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2015;17(12):1180–93. https://doi.org/10.1111/dom.12572.
24. Sattar N, McLaren J, Fristen SL, Preiss D, McMurray JJ. Sglt2 inhibition and cardiovascular events: why did EMPA-Reg outcomes surprise and what are the likely mechanisms? Diabetologia. 2016;59:1333–9. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-016-3956-x.
25. Wanner C, Inzucchi S, Lachin J, Fitchett D, et al. Empagliflozin and progression of kidney disease in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2016;375(18):1801–2. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMc1611290.
26. Ferrannini E, Mark M, Mayoux E. CV protection in the EMPA-REG OUTCOME trial: a "thrifty substrate" hypothesis. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(7):1108–14. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc16-0330.
27. Mudaliar S, Alloju S, Henry RR. Can a shift in fuel energetics explain the beneficial cardiorenal outcomes in the EMPA-REG OUTCOME study? A unifying hypothesis. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(7):1115–22. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc16-0542.
28. Rosenstock J, Ferrannini E. Euglycemic diabetic ketoacidosis: a predictable, detectable, and preventable safety concern with SGLT2 inhibitors. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(9):1638–42. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc15-1380.
29. Peters A, Baschur EO, Buse J, Cahan P, Diner JC, et al. Euglycemic diabetic ketoacidosis: a potential complication of treatment with sodium -glucose cotransporter inhibition. Diabetes Care. 2015;38:1687–93. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc15-0843.
30. Tang H, Li D, Zhang J, Li Y, Wang T, Zhai S. Sodium-glucose transporter-2 inhibitors and risk of adverse renal outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes: A network meta-analysis of randomized control trials. Diabetes Obes Metab. Published on line Feb 16, 2017. https://doi.org/10.1111/dom.12917.

Use of Insulin in Outpatient Diabetes Management

35

Raquel N. Faradji, Ana Paula Díaz Barriga-Menchaca, and María Elena Sainz de la Maza Viadero

Chapter Objectives

To know:

- The indications for insulin use
- The different insulin types and action times
- The different insulin regimens
  - How to initiate
  - How to adjust
- The insulin adverse effects
- The insulin storage and injection recommendations

Introduction

As time passes clinical practice addresses a greater number of patients with diabetes, and the available drugs for diabetes treatment increase. Insulin is one of the most potent drugs for glucose control. Insulin therapy is a must for all patients with type 1 diabetes (T1D) and those patients with type 2 diabetes (T2D) who do not achieve their goals in glycemic control with antidiabetic oral or other injectable agents. It can be used from T2D diagnosis, in later stages of the disease, or at times of diabetes decompensation.

Understanding insulin management is vital for every physician that treats diabetes and for every patient that lives with diabetes. The best treatment is the one which tends to be most similar to the physiologic pancreatic insulin secretion. This pattern has a peak in insulin secretion stimulated by meals and a basal secretion throughout the rest of the day. Basal insulin secretion is necessary for maintaining optimal glucose regulation in the liver, muscle, and adipose tissue. Basal insulin is essential for modulating hepatic glucose production. The insulin peak after meals stimulates glucose uptake by tissues and stops endogenous production [1].

If there is an absolute insulin deficiency (T1D), a physiological secretion of insulin should be imitated with a multiple daily injection regimen, preferably in a basal-bolus manner.

In case of relative insulin deficiency (T2D), insulin could be indicated to treat the hyperglycemia that occurs at certain times of the day, for example, at dawn, when elevation of cortisol levels leads to an increase in hepatic glucose production. Increase in glucose levels at dawn can be an important cause for basal insulin initiation in T2D patients. Oral medications help stimulate the secretion of endogenous insulin and cover the prandial requirements. When oral drugs fail, prandial insulin therapy may be added to meals where glucose levels are elevated (basal-plus) or at every meal (basal-bolus). In the latter case, metformin is usually continued, but sulfonylureas are suspended. It must be pointed out that before adding prandial insulin, one could add a glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist (GLP-1ra). In the author's experience, the combination of metformin, DPP-4 (dipeptidyl peptidase-4) inhibitors, and basal insulin can be very useful in many patients with low insulin requirements and can provide sustained glycemic control for a long time.

R. N. Faradji (✉)
Clinica EnDi, Mexico City, Mexico

RENACED Diabetes Tipo 1, Mexico City, Mexico

Pathophysiology of the Endocrine System, Escuela de Medicina TEC-ABC, Tecnologico de Monterrey, Centro Medico ABC, Mexico City, Mexico

Sociedad Mexicana de Nutrición y Endocrinología, Mexico, Mexico City, Mexico

A. P. D. Barriga-Menchaca
Instituto Nacional de Ciencias Médias y Nutrición "Salvador Zubirán", Mexico City, Mexico

M. E. Sainz de la Maza Viadero
Clinica EnDi, Mexico City, Mexico

RENACED Diabetes Tipo 1, Mexico City, Mexico

Didactic Resources for Nutrition, Escuela de Dietetica y Nutricion ISSSTE, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_35

Table 35.1 Glycemic targets

	Fasting glucose	Peak postprandial glucose (2 hours after a meal)	HbA1c
No diabetes	70–99 mg/dl (3.88–5.5 mmol/L)	≤139 mg/dl (≤7.7 mmol/L)	≤5.6%
Adults with diabetes	80–130 mg/dl (4.44–7.22 mmol/L)	<180 mg/dl (<10 mmol/L)	<7%
Children with type 1 diabetes	90–130 mg/dl (5–7.22 mmol/L)	<180 mg/dl (<10 mmol/L)	<7.5%
Pregnant women with type 1 or type 2 diabetes	60–99 mg/dl (3.33–5.5 mmol/L)	100–120 mg/dl (5.55–6.66 mmol/L)	<6%

Based on *American Diabetes Association* (2017)

Insulin therapy should always be individualized. The aim is to improve glycemic control of patients living with diabetes. Glycemic control is normally measured through glycosylated hemoglobin A1c levels, preprandial glucose levels, and 2-hour postprandial glucose levels, based on self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG) (Table 35.1). Lately, it can also be measured by continuous or flash glucose monitoring; here, the goal is to have most glucose levels within a specified glucose range (time in range, usually 70–180 mg/dl/ 3.9–10 mmol/L) and with the least glycemic variability. An adequate glycemic control will help decrease the incidence of diabetes complications, which are a severe public health problem.

According to the degree of glycemic control, insulin can be administered with a simple regimen (basal insulin with nocturnal dosage of intermediate-acting (NPH) or a long or ultra-long-acting insulin analogue plus oral antidiabetics or other injectable drugs) or a more complex regimen (multiple daily injection regimen with NPH and regular- or fast-acting insulin analogue twice a day, premixed insulin twice a day, basal-plus prandial or basal-plus GLP1ra or a basal-bolus regimen).

Hypoglycemia is the main adverse effect of insulin use. Self-management education, self-monitoring and recording of blood glucose are vital to adjust insulin dosages and decrease the risk of hypoglycemia.

Patient Selection

Indications for insulin use are:

1. Patients with T1D, due to absolute insulin deficiency (if insulin is stopped, they could develop diabetic ketoacidosis).
2. Patients with T2D. They initially have an insulin resistance predominance; however, over time, they lose the ability to secrete insulin, which leads to different insulin deficiencies/insulin resistance states, having different requirements according to progress in the natural history of the disease.

   Insulin is indicated in patients with type 2 diabetes (T2D):

   A. Newly diagnosed patients who are very symptomatic, with hyperglycemia (> 200 mg/dl or 11.1 mmol/L) and glycosylated hemoglobin A1c (A1c) >9% or >75 mmol/mol.
   B. Newly diagnosed patients in whom there is doubt as to whether they have T1D, T2D, or latent autoimmune diabetes of adults (LADA).
   C. Patients who fail to obtain good glycemic control with oral antidiabetics or GLP-1ra, despite time of diagnosis.
   D. Patients who have transient moderate to severe worsening of glycemic control, such as in the case of surgery, pneumonia, acute myocardial infarction, hospitalization, etc.
   E. Patients with diabetes who start with insulin from diagnosis to decrease the glucotoxicity and lipotoxicity, in order to favor the rest of the insulin-producing beta cell and to try to preserve its function.
   F. Patients who have progression of chronic diabetes microvascular complications. Insulin is used to try to avoid further progression.
3. Pregnancy. Pregnant patients with previous diagnosis of diabetes and patients with gestational diabetes. Detemir and aspart insulin analogues are FDA approved for its use in pregnancy; however, NPH and regular insulin have been traditionally used. Although glargine and lispro insulin have been used safely during pregnancy, they are not FDA approved for its use.

Clinical Guidelines

Many guidelines and algorithms for T2D treatment have appeared in recent years [2, 3]. In general, all guidelines are based on trying to reach glycemic levels closest to normal while trying to avoid hypoglycemia. The goals for each patient with T2D should be individualized, and when glycemic control is not reached, treatment with oral antidiabetics should be scaled. One usually starts with monotherapy, if the A1c goal is not reached after 3 months, the treatment is scaled to dual therapy, and again if the A1c goal is not reached after 3 months, it can be scaled to triple therapy. In most guidelines [2, 3], basal insulin initiation is considered as an option at dual or triple therapy, although one must take into account the risk of hypoglycemia. If with triple therapy the goal is still not reached, then basal insulin therapy or intensification to combination injectable therapy should be considered. Combination injectable therapy includes basal-plus prandial insulin, basal-plus GLP1-ra, basal-bolus, as well as the conventional regimen (Fig. 35.1).

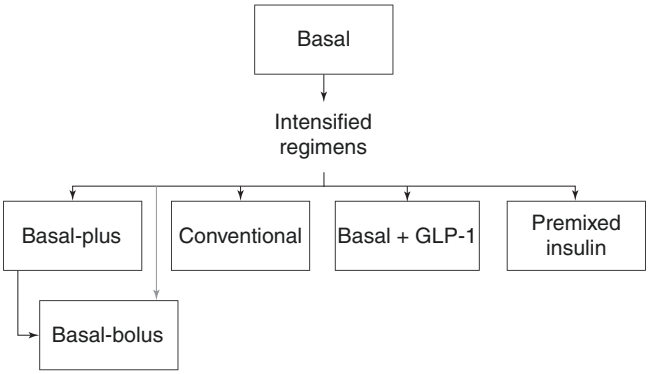
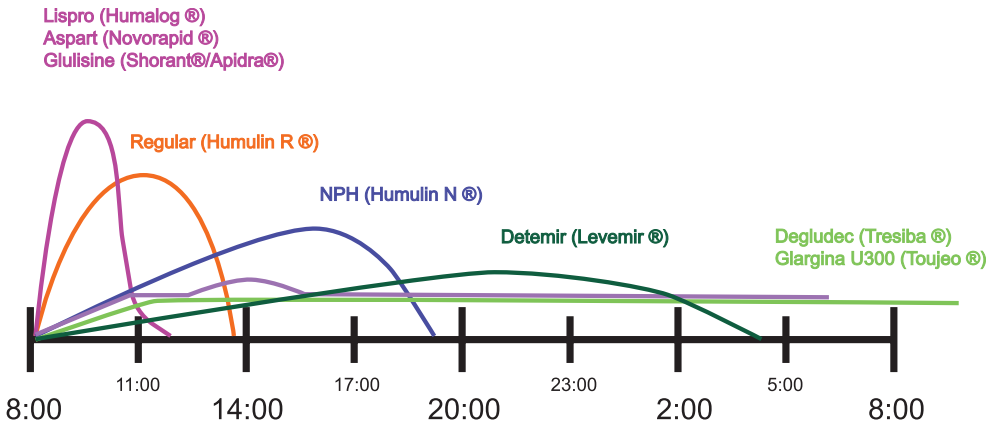


Fig. 35.1 Intensification of insulin regimens

Table 35.2 Types of Insulin and Times of Action

Types of insulin	Class	Start of action	Max peak	Duration
Fast-acting Lispro Aspart Glulisine	Analogues	5–15 minutes	30–90 minutes	3–4 hours
Rapid-acting (Regular)	Human	30–45 minutes	2–3 hours	4–6 hours
Intermediate (NPH)	Human	2–4 hours	8–10 hours	10–14 hours
Long-acting Glargine U100 Detemir				18–24 hours
Ultra Long- acting Degludec Glargine U300	Analogue	1.5–2 hours	No peak	24–40 hours

Fig. 35.2 Times of insulin action



If the patient is symptomatic and catabolic, with glycemia above 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) and/or A1c greater than 9%, then insulin should be started from the beginning.

The new 2017 American Diabetes Association guidelines [2] point out that:

- The progressive nature of T2D should be regularly and objectively explained to the patients.
- It should be avoided to use insulin as a threat, describing it as a failure or punishment.
- In patients who are not achieving glycemic goals, insulin therapy should be promptly initiated.
- It is important for the patient to have a self-titration algorithm, based on SMBG.

Insulin Types and Time of Action (Table 35.2 and Fig. 35.2)

Insulin is a molecule formed by two peptide chains (α and β) linked by two disulfide bridges. The insulin currently available is produced by recombinant DNA technology.

There are human insulins and human insulin analogues. The use of the insulins described below are for subcutaneous administration (regular and aspart insulin can also be administered intravenously in the hospital). Injected insulin is absorbed subcutaneously into the systemic circulation.

Most of the insulin formulations are dispensed in 100 units/ml or U100. If no indication is made, we are referring to U100.

Most of the information, comparing the different types of insulin, has come from several "treat-to-target trials" [4–7], where the insulin dose of the different arms of a study was titrated to achieve a certain glycemic control and the incidence of hypoglycemia and weight gain was compared between the different arms.

Human insulins are rapid- or regular-acting insulins (R) and intermediate-acting insulin (NPH). Rapid- or regular-acting insulin is identical to human endogenous insulin. It is clear in solution. It takes 30 minutes to absorb after being subcutaneously injected. Regular-acting insulin has its peak of action 2–3 hours after being administered and has a time of action of 4–6 hours. This insulin is used as a prandial insulin or bolus, it helps control postprandial glycemia. In cases of

extreme insulin resistance, regular insulin U500 (500 units/ml) is available in the United States.

NPH or intermediate-acting insulin is a regular-acting insulin that is in solution with protamine which makes it appear milky. It has a longer time of action, having its peak at 8–10 hours after being injected and a duration up to 10–14 hours. With NPH insulin, the higher the insulin dose, the higher the duration of action.

The advantages of human insulins (rapid and NPH) are the low costs and high availability in the market. The disadvantages include, due to its peak and duration of action, higher risk for hypoglycemia, specially, if the patient does not have a strict feeding regimen, to match the insulin peak and the duration of action. In addition, NPH insulin has greater variability in its absorption and bioavailability, so it is less predictable and in general there is a higher incidence of hypoglycemia with its use.

In last decades, several insulin analogues have appeared that mimic more physiologically insulin action.

There are three fast-acting insulin analogues: lispro, aspart, and glulisine. Due to molecular modifications, after a subcutaneous injection it takes 0–15 minutes to start their action, peaks at 30–90 minutes, and lasts between 3 and 4 hours. These analogues are used prandially or in bolus.

There is one ultrafast insulin analogue in development, called fast-acting insulin aspart (FiAsp) [8], in a new formulation with two added excipients (niacinamide and L-arginine) in order to obtain accelerated absorption after subcutaneous dosing. It showed a faster onset of action, higher early exposure, and a greater early glucose-lowering effect than insulin aspart. This insulin may be beneficial for insulin pump users.

There are two long-acting insulin analogues: glargine (U100; 100 international units per ml) and detemir. Insulin glargine is in solution at pH 4.0, but when injected at neutral pH forms crystals, and therefore its absorption is slower. Insulin detemir has a 14-carbon fatty acid bound to the amino acid 29 of the beta chain, therefore has a higher affinity to albumin. This increases its half-life. These two insulins take 1.5–2 hours to start their action and generally do not peak (although clinically they appear to have a small peak at 6–8 hours after injection), and their duration of action is between 18 and 24 hours. They are used as basal insulin one or two times per day. Both have shown to cause less hypoglycemia than NPH insulin. If insulin detemir is compared with glargine, the former has shown a discrete lower weight gain. The ORIGIN study [9] showed that insulin glargine given to patients with impaired fasting glucose, impaired glucose tolerance, or T2D had similar cardiovascular outcomes to those patients that received the standard care.

There are two ultra-long-acting insulin analogues: degludec and glargine U-300.

In 2013, insulin degludec appeared in the market. Degludec insulin has a glutamic acid spacer bound to amino acid 29 of the beta chain and then a 16-carbon fatty acid. These changes allow it to be in di-hexamers in solution and, when injected form multi-hexamers. The monomers are then released one by one. Degludec has no peak and has a half-life of 24 hours. It has low variability, can be applied once a day and has flexibility in the injection schedule. In addition, a lower incidence of nocturnal hypoglycemia has been documented with this insulin, when compared to glargine U100. Insulin degludec is available at U100 (100 units per ml) or U200 concentration (200 units/ml). In the United States, both formulations exist. In Mexico, only the U100 exists. Both act similarly. Insulin degludec was approved by the FDA in 2015. The DEVOTE study [10] (Trial Comparing Cardiovascular Safety of Insulin Degludec Versus Insulin Glargine in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes at High Risk of Cardiovascular Events), published in the NEJM in August 24, 2017, showed that degludec was non inferior to glargine U100 with respect to incidence of cardiovascular events and again demonstrated a much lower risk of severe hypoglycemia and nocturnal hypoglycemia.

Recently, another prolonged-acting insulin analogue appeared in the market, insulin glargine U300 [11, 12] (300 international units per ml). By being more concentrated, it forms a compact subcutaneous insulin deposit with a smaller surface area, to produce a more gradual and prolonged release. Compared to glargine U100, it has shown lower event rates of nocturnal hypoglycemia. Glargine U300 can be injected with a 3-hour flexible regimen.

There are pharmacokinetics studies [13] that compare degludec to glargine U300, but the clinical studies have not been published at the time of this writing.

In general, the advantages of insulin analogues are that they are more bioavailable, less variable, more predictable, more physiological, have better glycemic control and are less hypoglycemic.

The disadvantages are that they mean a higher number of injections and have a higher cost.

Premixed insulin has a fixed proportion of intermediate insulin with rapid- or fast-acting insulin. Insulin 70/30 consists of 70% NPH and 30% rapid-acting insulin. There is premixed insulin with 70% intermediate-acting insulin (aspart-protamine, NPA) and 30% insulin aspart. There are two premixed insulin concentrations one with 75% intermediate insulin (lispro-protamine, NPL) and 25% insulin lispro, and the other with 50% insulin NPL and 50% insulin lispro, which is more physiological and could be used three times per day, before each meal. The advantages of premixed insulin are: mistake minimization, ease of use, increased treatment adherence and fewer injections. The disadvantages are: fixed doses, less flexibility and increased risk of hypoglycemia if a fixed meal schedule is not followed.

There is a co-formulation (IDegAsp, Ryzodeg) of 70% insulin degludec and 30% insulin aspart solution in a pen. The advantage of this co-formulation is that it has a significant reduction in the incidence of nocturnal hypoglycemia compared to the premixed insulin with NPA and insulin aspart 70/30. This co-formulation can be applied once or twice per day and is a useful and simple alternative for patients with T2D.

In addition, there are two new combinations between long-acting insulin analogues and GLP-1ra [14]. These are degludec insulin with liraglutide and insulin glargine with lixisenatide.

The combination of degludec insulin with liraglutide (100 units/ml and 3.6 mg/ml, respectively) is indicated once daily, as an adjunct to diet and exercise, to improve glycemic control in adults with T2D inadequately controlled on basal insulin (less than 50 units daily) or liraglutide (less than or equal to 1.8 mg daily).

The combination of insulin glargine and lixisenatide (100 units/ml and 33 mcg/ml, respectively) is indicated for once-daily dosing covering 15–60 units of insulin glargine and 5–20 μg of lixisenatide.

The advantages of these combinations is the lower risk of hypoglycemia, decreased insulin doses, less weight gain, and the possibility of lower cardiovascular risk, when compared to basal-bolus insulin regimens.

Describing further the use of these two combinations is beyond the scope of this chapter, but one should be familiarized with these new options. The reader is invited to review the prescribing information for each country, when available. Both were approved in the United States by the FDA in 2017.

Inhaled Insulin [15–18]

There have been several lines of research work to administer insulin through other routes, being the inhaled form the one that has reached the market. Exubera, an inhaled form of rapid-acting insulin developed by Pfizer, became the first inhaled insulin product to be marketed in 2006. However, due to poor sales it was withdrawn from the market in 2007. Afrezza, developed by Mannkind, uses a different technology (technosphere) and was approved by the FDA in 2014 for use in both T1D and T2D. It contains recombinant human insulin dissolved with powder (fumaryl diketopiperazine). Once inhaled, technosphere insulin is rapidly absorbed upon contact with lung surface. Both components, insulin and powder (fumaryl diketopiperazine), are almost completely cleared from the lungs of healthy individuals within 12 hours of inhalation. As it has rapid absorption, it can be used as prandial insulin. Currently it is dispensed in a small inhaler, and insulin cartridges come in 4, 8, and 12 units. It may cause hypoglycemia, cough, throat pain/irritation, as well as acute bronchospasm in patients with asthma and COPD. As of this writing, it is only available in the United States.

Insulin Management Regimens (Figs. 35.1 and 35.3; Appendix)

As already mentioned, insulin can be used from T2D diagnosis, in its late phases, or at times of diabetes decompensation.

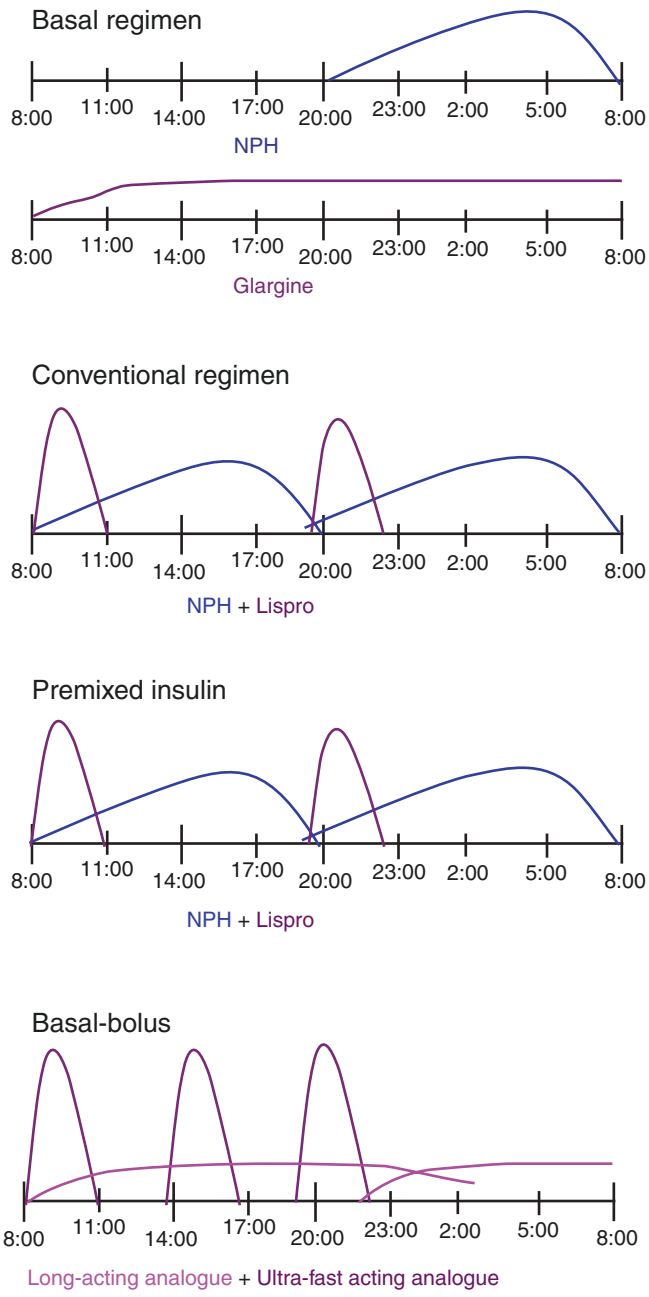


Fig. 35.3 Insulin regimens

All insulin regimens have a "starting" and "adjustment" phase.

In the "starting phase," the prescribed dose is calculated, as it will be seen later in each regimen.

In the "adjustment phase," it is observed through SMBG how the person responded to therapy, and adjustments are made to avoid hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia.

In the adjustment phase:

- The insulin dose that affects fasting or preprandial glucose is adjusted according to whether there is hyper- (>120–130 mg/dl or 7 mmol/L) or hypoglycemia (<70–80 mg/dl or 4 mmol/L).
- The insulin dose that affects postprandial glucose is adjusted according to whether there is hyper- (>180 mg/dl or 10 mmol/L) or hypoglycemia (<100 mg/dl or 5.6 mmol/L).
- Only one dose is adjusted at a time.
- Adjustment is imperative when there is hypoglycemia.
- If there is hyperglycemia, it is preferred to observe the pattern over 3 days. Then, the adjustment consists of increasing or decreasing ≈2 U the dose of insulin which was responsible for that glucose value.

Basal Insulin Regimen [1]

When basal insulin is prescribed, an intermediate-acting, long-acting, or ultra-long-acting nocturnal insulin injection is chosen. However, with some of the long- and ultra-long-acting insulin analogues (detemir, glargine (U100 or U300), degludec), it could also be administered in the morning.

For nocturnal dosing, intermediate-acting insulin (NPH), long-acting insulin (glargine U100, detemir), or ultra-long-acting insulin (degludec, glargine U300) may be chosen. The advantages of insulin analogues are that they cause less nocturnal hypoglycemia. The starting dose is usually 10 units or 0.2 units/kg/day.

When intermediate-acting insulin or detemir insulin is used, dose adjustment should be done every 3 days. The adjustment consists in increasing or decreasing the dose 2–3 units, depending on whether there is hyper- or hypoglycemia according to the monitoring of fasting glucose, until the glycemic control goal is achieved. With these insulins, when the basal total dose is greater than 0.3 units/kg/day (22–26 units), it is advisable to divide the dose into two injections (morning and evening) to avoid nocturnal hypoglycemia.

When glargine or degludec insulin is used, dose adjustment is preferably done every 5–7 days (although it can be adjusted earlier if the person is not controlled). With these insulins, it is generally not necessary to fractionate the dose into two injections, unless the insulin glargine is not lasting 24 hours.

It should be mentioned that if a patient who is already using NPH insulin switches it to glargine U100 (perhaps to avoid an increased risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia), 80% of the NPH dose should be used. That is, if 20 units of NPH insulin were used, when switching to glargine U100, only 16 units should be used. If a patient is changed from insulin glargine U100 to insulin degludec, prescribing information indicates that the same dose should be used, but in the author's experience, patients require a 20% lower dose of degludec. In addition, when changing from insulin glargine U100 to U300, a higher dose may be required.

Intensive Regimens (Figs. 35.1 and 35.3)

Over time, some patients that use basal insulin may require prandial insulin coverage and this can be done with the different insulin regimens:

- Conventional regimen: NPH twice per day plus rapid- or fast-acting insulin analogues two or three times per day
- Premixed insulin: twice or three times daily
- Basal-plus: basal-plus prandial insulin for a single meal coverage
- Basal-plus a GLP-1ra
- Basal-bolus: basal-plus prandial insulin for more than one or for all meals

Conventional Insulin Regimen

In this regimen, the patient uses NPH insulin and rapid-acting insulin or fast-acting insulin analogues twice a day. The advantages of this regimen are: usually only two injections per day are needed, it is cheaper and the morning rapid-acting insulin covers lunch/snack and morning NPH covers the glucose elevation caused by food intake at lunch/late lunch.

The disadvantages are: it is not flexible, the patient must have a strict feeding schedule to avoid hypoglycemia and there is an increased risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia.

The initial dose usually starts in 0.5 units/kg/day.

The total insulin dose is divided in 2/3 in the morning and 1/3 in the evening.

The morning dose (pre-breakfast) is further fractionated in 2/3 for NPH insulin and 1/3 for rapid- or fast-acting insulin.

The evening dose (pre-dinner) is fractionated in two (half for the NPH insulin and half for the rapid- or fast-acting insulin (pre-dinner insulin can also be divided into 2/3 NPH and 1/3 rapid or fast acting insulin)).

Insulin should be injected 30 minutes before meals if it is a rapid-acting insulin and 0–15 minutes prior to meals if it is fast-acting insulin analogue.

In case the conventional regimen is used with NPH and rapid-acting insulin, it is of vital importance for the patient to include snacks:

- In some countries lunch is eaten at noon, and a snack will be required around 3:00 or 4:00 pm.
- In others, the main meal of the day is at around 3:00 pm, so a snack will be required around 11:00 am to 12:00 noon.
- In addition, a snack must be included before going to sleep.

When the conventional regimen is used with NPH and fast-acting insulin analogues, snacks may or may not be needed. However, for countries where lunch is eaten at noon, usually a small snack (15 grams of carbohydrates) will be needed at 3:00 or 4:00 pm. In general, a snack will be required at bedtime.

Example

A 60-year-old male weighs 72 kg. If his dose is calculated at 0.5 units/kg/day, he would need a total of 36 units. Two thirds are going to be injected before breakfast (24 units) and 1/3 before dinner (12 units). Of the 24 units that should be administered before breakfast, 16 units are NPH and 8 units of rapid- or fast-acting insulin. Of the 12 units that have to be injected before dinner, 6 units are NPH and 6 units are rapid- or fast-acting insulin, although this last dose can be adjusted downward if the patient eats a small meal.

Subsequently, treatment adjustments are made.

If there is morning hyperglycemia, it should be ruled out that it is not secondary to a 2:00 to 3:00 in the morning hypoglycemia followed by hyperglycemia (Somogyi phenomenon or excessive carbohydrate intake to correct said hypoglycemia) or because of the dawn phenomenon (surge in cortisol production from 3:00 to 8:00 in the morning, with increased hepatic glucose production). This is ruled out by checking the blood glucose before dinner, after dinner, at 3:00 am, and upon awakening.

If hypoglycemia occurs, the dose of NPH can be reduced by 2–3 units, and see if morning hypoglycemia is avoided. If not, NPH can be administered at night (10:00–11:00 pm), so that its peak of action is at 6:00–7:00 am, when the patient awakes. If nocturnal hypoglycemia cannot be avoided, NPH insulin could be switched to a long- or ultra-long-acting analogue such as glargine U100, detemir, degludec, or glargine U300.

If there is no Somogyi phenomenon and fasting glucose is elevated, then the nocturnal NPH insulin dose should be increased by 2 units every 3 days until the glycemic control goal is reached (80 mg/dl to 130 mg/dl or 4.44 –7.22 mmol/L).

When fasting glucose is controlled, SMBG is required before and 2 hours after each meal for the next 2–3 days, in order to see if there are any glucose patterns and in order to adjust the morning dose of NPH insulin and then the doses of rapid- or fast-acting insulin that are applied before meals.

- If there is hyperglycemia (>130 mg/dl or 7 mmol/L) before lunch or dinner, morning NPH insulin can be increased by 2 units. If there is hypoglycemia, then the dose is reduced by 2 units.
- The rapid- or fast-acting insulin dose applied before meals is adjusted in case of 2 hours postprandial hyperglycemia (>180 mg/dL or 10 mmol/L) or postprandial hypoglycemia (<100 mg/dL or 5.6 mmol/L). The insulin dose is increased or decreased by 2 units, respectively.

Premixed Insulin

Premixed insulins contain a similar proportion to that described above of intermediate insulin (50–75%), and rapid- or fast-acting insulin (25–50%) a "conventional" treatment can be initiated. In this case the dose is calculated in the same way (0.5 units/kg/day) which is divided in 2/3 before breakfast and 1/3 before dinner.

The adjustment is made in a similar manner to that described in the conventional regimen.

The dose of insulin injected before dinner is adjusted by assessing fasting blood glucose.

The dose of insulin that is injected before breakfast is adjusted by assessing premeal glycemia.

If a patient has breakfast at 7:00 in the morning, main meal at 4:00 pm, and dinner at 11:00 pm, the premixed total insulin could be divided into three, and each third is given before breakfast, main meal, and dinner, requiring the appropriate adjustments, depending on the SMBG.

Basal-Plus

The Stepwise study [19, 20] proposes that patients who already use long-acting insulin should initiate fast-acting insulin before a single meal (the most abundant or the one with the highest postprandial glucose levels) to gradually increase injections in different meals to achieve a better glucose control. Although rapid-acting insulin may be used, fast-acting insulin analogues are preferred.

There are four ways to calculate this dose:

(a) An initial dose of 2–4 insulin units of fast-acting insulin analogues could be administered before that meal, and adjust depending on 2 hours postprandial glucose levels. Increase or decrease by 2 units, until an adequate postprandial glucose level is achieved.
(b) Calculating the prandial insulin at 0.1 units/kg.
(c) Calculating the prandial insulin as 10% of the basal dose. If the HbA1c is lower than 8%, one may consider reducing the basal dose, by the same amount of units of the prandial insulin that was started.

(d) Calculating 1 insulin unit for each carbohydrate portion (15 grams), taking into account that the patient shouldn't eat more than four portions of carbohydrates (60 grams) per meal. So, 4 units of insulin would be administered for 60 grams of carbohydrates.

Adjustments should be made, by increasing or decreasing 2 units until the postprandial glycemic target (140–180 mg/dl or 7.8–10 mmol/L) is reached.

A new way to start the basal-plus regimen is by using the co-formulation of degludec insulin (70%) and aspart insulin (30%) called Ryzodeg. This can be started with a dose of 0.2–0.3 units/kg/day. This must be injected before the main meal or the one that most increases the postprandial glucose levels.

Basal-Plus GLP-1ra

One could also have a regimen of basal insulin plus a GLP-1ra, either in combination or given separately. In general, the insulin dose will need to be adjusted downward, when adding a GLP1ra.

Basal-Bolus

The basal-bolus regimen has more schedule flexibility, lower weight gain, and lower risk of hypoglycemia than the conventional regimen. However, for the flexible basal-bolus regimen carbohydrate counting is required and the patient must have the capacity and willingness to do mathematical calculations. With this regimen, it is not necessary for the patient to eat snacks. If the patient does not want to count carbohydrates, he can be given a fixed diet and a fixed amount of fast-acting insulin before each meal (fixed basal-bolus). In the basal-bolus regimen, the patient starts with 0.5 units/kg/day.

Fixed Basal-Bolus

In the fixed basal-bolus regimen, the patient starts with 0.5 units/kg/day. The total insulin dose is fractionated in the following way:

- Fifty percent of the total insulin dose is the basal one. It can be used with insulin glargine U100 or U300, detemir, or degludec. These are usually administered once a day. In the case of glargine U100 or detemir, they may need to be divided into two doses (12 hours apart), if it is observed that a single dose is having a peak or if the effect lasts less than 24 hours.
- Fifty percent of the total dose is for the boluses, which cover meals and correct elevated blood glucose levels. For boluses, fast-acting analogues such as lispro, aspart, or glulisine are usually used, although rapid-acting insulin can also be used. Usually the assigned dose for the boluses is divided between the three meals of the day.

For example, if a patient weighs 72 kg and we calculate his dose at 0.5 units/kg/day, he would need a total of 36 units per day. Half of them, 18 units, are used for the basal and the other half for the bolus. If the 18 units are divided between the three meals of the day, the patient would have to inject 6 units before each meal.

If the patient is going to eat a small meal, he can inject only 4 units, but if it is a large meal, he is going to need 8 insulin units.

In addition, the correction factor can be calculated in case the preprandial glucose is above 150 mg/dl, and an extra dose of fast-acting insulin can be administered to correct glucose levels, for example, 1 unit per 50 mg/dl above 150 mg/dl. That is, if the patient had 250 mg/dl of glucose, in addition to the 6 units of the meal bolus, 2 more should be added to correct glucose levels. A total of 8 insulin units should be injected before said meal.

Flexible Basal-Bolus (Figs. 35.4, 35.5, and 35.6; Appendix)

It also starts with a dose of 0.5 units/kg/day, and also 50% of the insulin is basal and 50% prandial (Fig. 35.4).

To calculate the boluses, the insulin to carbohydrate ratio and the correction factor are used.

The insulin to carbohydrate ratio shows how many grams of carbohydrates are covered by the injection of 1 unit of insulin. Said ratio is usually initially calculated by the 450 rule [21], meaning that it is obtained by dividing 450 by total daily insulin dose (TDD), when fast-acting insulin is used.

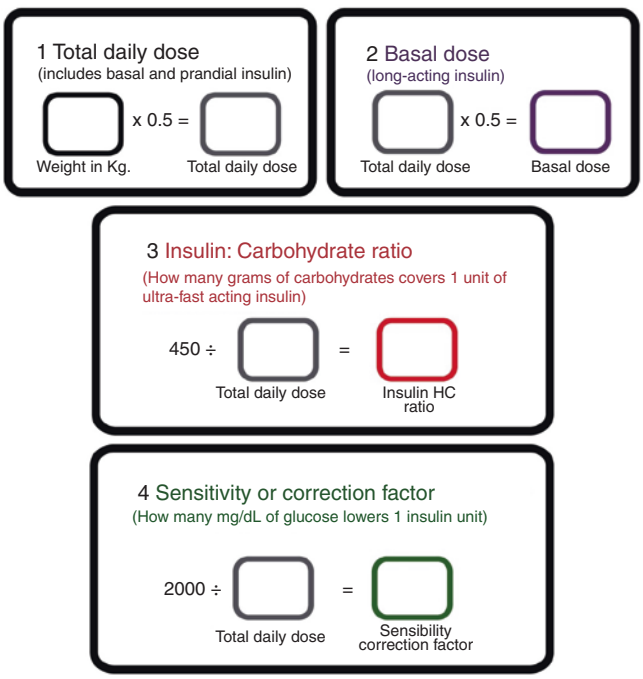


Fig. 35.4 How the initial insulin dose is calculated in a flexible basal-bolus scheme

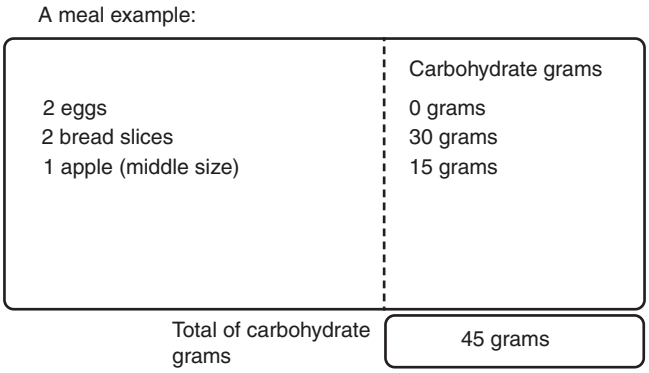


Fig. 35.5 A meal example

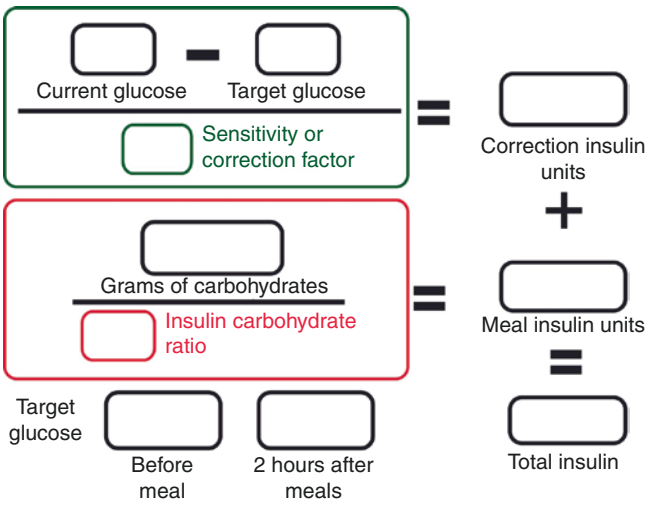


Fig. 35.6 Calculations that the patient makes to decide the insulin bolus (for both correction and meal coverage)

As an example, if the person uses a total of 30 units of insulin per day, then we divide 450/30 = 15. That is, 1 unit of fast-acting insulin would be injected for every 15 grams of ingested carbohydrates. For example, if 45 grams of carbohydrates are eaten, the patient would inject 3 units of fast-acting insulin (45/15 = 3) (Fig. 35.5).

It is important to tell the patient to preferably limit his carbohydrate intake to a maximum of 60 grams per meal, so that insulin works better.

It must be pointed out that the actual insulin to carbohydrate ratio could be calculated by diving 300–500 by the TDD, although starting at 450 is safe.

The sensitivity or correction factor shows how many mg/dl of glucose are lowered by the injection of 1 unit of insulin. This is commonly calculated by dividing 2000/TDD (if using mmol/L, it can be done by dividing 100/TDD).

Continuing with the example: 2000/30 = 66.66 that can be rounded to 70 mg/dl.

The initial goal is 150 mg/dl of glucose. If the patient has 220 mg/dl of glucose and wants to reach 150 mg/dl, the difference is 70 mg/dl. The difference, divided by the correction factor of 70 mg/dl, results in 1 unit. Therefore, the patient has to inject himself 1 unit of extra fast-acting insulin to his prandial insulin dose.

It must be pointed out that the actual sensitivity factor could be calculated by dividing 1500 to 2000 by the TDD, although starting with 2000 as a constant is safer. For deeper reading on the initial insulin-carbohydrate ratio and correction factor, please refer to the papers by John Walsh et al. [22, 23].

Figure 35.6 shows how a patient must do all the calculations to decide the insulin dose he should inject before each meal.

During the adjustment phase, the patient should perform SMBG before all meals and preferably 2 hours postprandial and 2 hours after a correction has been administered.

If the patient presents with hyper- or hypoglycemia 2 hours after a meal, it should be checked if the carbohydrate counting was adequate. If an error was not detected, the insulin to carbohydrate ratio should be changed. For example, in the case of hyperglycemia, the ratio could be changed from 1:15 grams to 1:12 grams of carbohydrates. If the patient was injecting 4 units for 60 grams of carbohydrates, now he will be injecting 5 units for the same quantity of carbohydrates.

In the case of hypoglycemia, the insulin to carbohydrate ratio could be changed from 1:15 grams to 1:20 grams of carbohydrates. If the patient was injecting 4 units every 60 grams, now he is going to inject himself with 3 units.

Also, in the case of hyperglycemia or hypoglycemia after a correction bolus, all factors that contributed to this situation should be reviewed (exercise, stress, illness, fasting, menstruation, etc.). If no reason is found, the correction factor should be changed.

In the case of hyperglycemia after a correction, the sensitivity factor can be changed from 1:70 mg/dl to, for example, 1:50 mg/dl.

In case of hypoglycemia after a correction, the sensitivity factor may be changed from 1:70 mg/dl to 1:100 mg/dl, for example.

It is important to stress out that the insulin to carbohydrate ratios and the sensitivity factors may be different throughout the day.

Basal-Bolus with Sliding Scale

This regimen is a variation of the fixed and flexible basal-bolus regimens, where the total daily dose (TDD), the percentage of the basal dose, and the dose for the boluses are calculated the same way as in the fixed basal-bolus, but a table or sliding scale is given to the patient so that depending on the patient's preprandial glucose, insulin units are injected.

The quantity of insulin is also initiated at 0.5 units/kg/day. This dose is fractionated in 50% basal and 50% for boluses. The bolus dose is also divided by 3 and that is the number of insulin units that should be injected before every meal. The correction factor is also calculated with the formulas

previously described in the flexible basal-bolus. An example of the table for basal-bolus is:

Glucose (mg/dL)	Before breakfast	Before lunch	Before dinner	Two-hour postprandial
<70				
71–100				
101–150				
151–200				
201–250				
251–300				
301–350				
351–400				
>400				

For example, if a patient weighs 72 kg and the starting dose is 0.5 units/kg/day, he would need 36 units per day. He would use 18 units for the basal dose and 18 units for the bolus dose. Eighteen units are further divided by three meals. So he would have to inject himself 6 units of fast-acting insulin before every meal. The correction factor is calculated by dividing 2000/36, which is equal to 55 mg/dl, and this is rounded to 50 mg/dl. It is important to tell the patient to have a fixed amount of carbohydrates per meal (e.g., 45–60 grams).

The table is filled in the following way:

Glucose (mg/dL)	Before breakfast	Before lunch	Before dinner	Two-hour postprandial
<70	3	3	3	0
71–100	4	4	4	0
101–150	6	6	6	0
151–200	7	7	7	0
201–250	8	8	8	2
251–300	9	9	9	3
301–350	10	10	10	4
351–400	11	11	11	5
>400	12	12	12	6

Insulin Pumps

Insulin can be applied with syringes, pens, and insulin pumps. Insulin pumps are electromechanical portable devices that function through batteries and administer rapid- or fast-acting insulin through a catheter connected to a subcutaneous cannula in the patient's abdomen. The cannula is changed every 3 days. The insulin from the insulin pump is located in a deposit or cartridge, and it is automatically administered through a basal dose. Plus, the patient programs a feeding bolus (prandial) or a correction bolus. For more information, please refer to Chap. 45 "Insulin Pump Therapy."

Insulin Adverse Effects

The adverse effects of insulin include hypoglycemia, edema and weight gain. If the patient always injects the insulin in the same place, he could develop lipohypertrophy and lipoatrophy. In order to avoid these situations, the place in which the insulin is injected should be rotated. To avoid hypoglycemia, it is important to educate the patient regarding SMBG technique and tight glucose monitoring, as well as hypoglycemia treatment. For more information, please refer to Chap. 51 "Hypoglycemia, Diagnosis, and Prevention".

Before initiating intensive therapy with insulin, it is important to rule out the presence of proliferative retinopathy through a dilated-pupil fundus examination. If present, the blood glucose target should be reached at a slower rate. It is known that preexistent, diabetic proliferative retinopathy can increase initially with intensive insulin therapy, although it later improves [24].

Storage and Insulin Application Techniques

Insulin is stored in the refrigerator, not in the freezer, and should be taken out 30 minutes before use. If desired, the insulin in use may be maintained at room temperature, as it is stable for 28 days. Insulin degludec is stable for 2 months outside the refrigerator at room temperature.

Insulin can be applied using syringes, pens or insulin pumps. Syringes of 30, 50 and 100 units exist. Most of the 30-unit syringes have the measure of half units, which are very useful for people who are very sensitive to insulin or for children. Those of 50 units go from unit to unit and those from 100 units, from two to two units. Syringe needles range from 6 to 13 mm in length.

There are rechargeable and disposable pens. In the rechargeable ones, the 3 ml cartridge is inserted and can be reused with new cartridges. The disposable ones come with an integrated 3 ml cartridge and are thrown away when finished. The needles for the pens are 4–8 mm long, and the lowest thickness is 32G. Insulin should be injected subcutaneously. To avoid intramuscular injection, it is best to use the shorter needles.

The insulin NPH and the premixed insulins should be mixed by turning the bottle between the hands (like rolling a pen between hands) to bring it to a uniform suspension. Do not shake to avoid bubbles. Once mixed, the lid of the vial is cleaned with a cotton swab moistened with alcohol. The plunger of the insulin syringe is pulled up to the number of insulin units that the patient requires. Air is injected into the insulin vial, to break the vacuum effect and to facilitate the exit of the insulin. Immediately afterward the insulin bottle is turned around, without removing the syringe. Then the syringe is removed, taking care that no bubbles form. The top of the syringe plunger should be in the line of insulin units.

When insulins are mixed up in the same syringe, the rapid-acting insulin or the fast-acting insulin analogues are extracted first and secondly the NPH insulin. NPH mixed with rapid-acting insulin is stable in the syringe and can be left in the refrigerator for later use (e.g., if one prepares insu-

lin for another person to use later). NPH mixed with insulin analogues (lispro, aspart, glulisine) is not stable; therefore it should be injected immediately after it is loaded. Insulin glargine cannot be mixed with any fast-acting or ultra-rapid-acting insulin because of its pH. The syringe needle should not touch the fingers of the patient, cotton swab, or anything else, as it would contaminate and could cause skin infections.

Insulin application techniques are as follows:

1. Select a site for injection.
2. Clean the skin with a cotton swab.
3. Pinch approximately 2–3 cm of the skin.
4. Hold the syringe in the same manner as a pencil is taken.
5. Insert the needle into the fold formed between the fingers in a 45° angle (thin patient) or 90° (obese patient).
    1. The faster the needle is inserted, the less it hurts.
6. Release the crease.
7. Push the plunger gently until all the insulin has passed.
8. Wait 10 seconds before withdrawing the needle.
    1. It is drawn in the same direction as it was introduced, gently pressing with a cotton swab at the injection site. Do not rub or massage the area.

The following factors that affect insulin absorption should be taken into account:

- Site (Fig. 35.7)
- Depth of injection
  - Intramuscular. If injected by mistake, absorption will be faster.
- Dose
  - The higher the dose, the longer the effect of insulin.
  - This does not apply to insulin lispro, aspart, or glulisine.
- Exercise
  - If insulin is injected in a site that it is about to be exercised, absorption will be faster.
- Temperature
  - At higher temperature, insulin absorption is faster and vice versa.

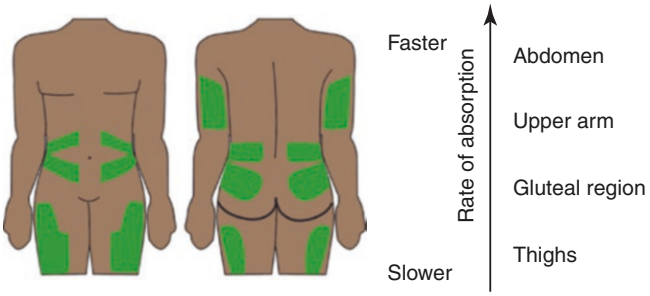


Fig. 35.7 Sites for Insulin injection

Conclusions

The different types of insulin have been reviewed as well as the different regimens of insulin application. When using basal insulin, the initial dose is 0.2 units/kg/day. An insulin titration algorithm should be given to the patient, so that he can reach his glycemic goal faster. If the basal insulin dose reaches 0.3–0.5 units/kg/day, one must divide the basal insulin in two doses per day. Also, one should start considering adding prandial insulin, especially if the glycemic goal has not been reached. One must be careful not to use the basal insulin to cover the prandial requirements.

When a more complex insulin regimen needs to be implemented, one has to decide whether to use the conventional regimen, the premixed insulins, a basal-plus prandial, a basal-plus GLP-1ra, or a basal-bolus regimen.

In general, for the conventional or basal-bolus regimen, the starting dose is 0.5 units/kg/day. This will then be divided between basal and prandial insulin. Basal-bolus insulin can be given in a fixed schedule, in a flexible schedule (insulin to carbohydrate ratio and sensitivity factor), or with a sliding scale.

In patients with T2D, if metformin use can be maintained, lower doses of insulin are required. Sulphonylureas should be discontinued to decrease the risk of hypoglycemia. In addition, if GLP1ra are used, lower insulin doses will be required, and the risk of hypoglycemia will be lower.

Most patients will achieve good glycemic control with 0.5–1.0 units/kg/day. Adolescents may require 1.0–1.5 units/kg/day. When more than 1.5 units/kg/day are required, then there is important insulin resistance.

The physician should analyze and suggest the regimen that will best help the patient achieve the individual goal of glycemic control.

This will decrease the incidence of complications of diabetes, which are already a severe problem in public health because of the high economic, social, and emotional cost that is involved.

Concluding Remarks

- There are several types of insulin, depending on their insulin action time:
  - Fast acting (lispro, aspart, glulisine)
  - Rapid acting (regular)
  - Intermediate acting (NPH)
  - Long acting (detemir, glargine U100)
  - Ultra-long acting (degludec, glargine U300)
- The main insulin adverse effects are hypoglycemia and weight gain.
- Glargine U100 and detemir insulin cause less hypoglycemia than NPH insulin.

- Detemir insulin causes less weight gain than glargine U100 and NPH.
- Degludec and glargine U300 cause less hypoglycemia than glargine U100.
- There are several insulin regimens; each has an initiation phase and an adjustment phase. One should choose the regimen that best fits the patient.
- Insulin regimens include:
  - Basal
  - Intensive regimens:
    - Conventional
    - Premixed Insulin
    - Basal-plus prandial insulin
    - Basal-plus GLP-1ra
    - Basal-bolus
      - Fixed
      - Flexible
      - Sliding scale
      - Insulin pump therapy

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which insulin helps control glucose production by the liver?
   (a) Basal
   (b) Prandial
2. Which type of diabetes is characterized by an absolute insulin deficiency?
   (a) Type 1 diabetes
   (b) Type 2 diabetes
   (c) Neonatal diabetes
   (d) MODY
3. To avoid diabetic ketoacidosis, patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus should continue their treatment with:
   (a) Insulin
   (b) Sulphonylureas
   (c) Metformin
   (d) Thiazolidinediones
4. Which is the main adverse effect of insulin therapy?
   (a) Blindness
   (b) Hyperglycemia
   (c) Hypoglycemia
   (d) Diabetic ketoacidosis
5. Which one is *NOT* an indication for initiation of insulin therapy?
   (a) Patients with type 1 diabetes
   (b) Newly diagnosed patients with type 2 diabetes who are very symptomatic
   (c) Patients with type 2 diabetes which have a glycosylated hemoglobin A1c $\leq$7%
   (d) Patients with type 2 diabetes that have progression of chronic microvascular complications
6. Examples of fast-acting insulin analogues are:
   (a) Rapid insulin
   (b) Insulin lispro, aspart, and glulisine
   (c) Insulin detemir and glargine
   (d) NPH Insulin
7. Are some advantages of insulin analogues EXCEPT:
   (a) Less predictable
   (b) More physiological
   (c) Provide better glycemic control
   (d) Less hypoglycemia
8. Which is usually the starting dose for basal insulin?
   (a) 0.8 units/kg/day
   (b) 0.6 units/kg/day
   (c) 0.4 units/kg/day
   (d) 0.2 units/kg/day
9. Which is NOT an intensive insulin regimen?
   (a) Basal + GLP-1
   (b) Basal-Plus
   (c) Basal
   (d) Premixed insulin
10. Which is NOT true about insulin storage?
    (a) It should be stored in the freezer.
    (b) Should be taken out 30 minutes before its use.
    (c) May be maintained at room temperature for 28 days.
    (d) Should be stored in the central compartments of the refrigerator.

Correct Answers

1. (a) Basal
2. (a) Type 1 diabetes
3. (a) Insulin
4. (c) Hypoglycemia
5. (c) Patients with type 2 diabetes which have a glycosylated hemoglobin A1c $\leq$7%
6. (b) Insulin lispro, aspart, and glulisine
7. (a) Less predictable
8. (d) 0.2 units/kg/day
9. (c) Basal
10. (a) It should be stored in the freezer

Appendix: Initial Doses for Each Regimen

Basal insulin

- 0.2 units/kg/day or 10 units (usually in the evening)

Conventional insulin regimen

- 0.5 units/kg/day

Divide

Option A

- 2/3 in am (2/3 NPH, 1/3 rapid or fast acting)
- 1/3 in pm (1/2 NPH, 1/2 rapid or fast acting)

Option B

- 1/3 before every meal (1/2 NPH, 1/2 rapid or fast acting)

Basal-bolus insulin regimen

Fixed basal-bolus

- 0.5 units/kg/day
  −50% for basal doses
  −50% for prandial doses, divided in three equal doses. One for each meal.

Flexible basal-bolus

- 0.5 units/kg/day (total daily dose: TDD)
  −50% for basal doses
  −50% for prandial doses

Insulin to carbohydrate ratio (I:CHO ratio)

- I:CHO ratio = 450/TDD
- *Prandial bolus:* Total of carbohydrate grams/I:CHO ratio

Correction factor

- mg/dL: correction factor = 2000/ TDD
- mmol/L: correction factor = 100/TDD
- *Pre-meal target glucose:* Initially 150 mg/dL (~8 mmol/L), later on 120 mg/dL (~7 mmol/L). If the patient is stable and is able to identify hypoglycemia, target glucose could be lowered to 100 mg/dL (5.55 mmol/L).
- *Post-meal target glucose:* 180 mg/dL (10 mmol/L)
- *Correction bolus* = (Current glucose − Target glucose)/ Correction factor
- *Total bolus:* Prandial Bolus + Correction Bolus

References

1. Bethel MA, Feinglos MN. Basal insulin therapy in type 2 diabetes. J Am Board Fam Pract. 2005;18(3):199–204. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879567.
2. American Diabetes Association (ADA). Standard of medical care in diabetes - 2017. Diabetes Care. 2017;40(Supplement 1):S4–128.
3. Garber AJ, Abrahamson MJ, Barzilay JI, Blonde L, Bloomgarden ZT, Bush MA, et al. Consensus statement by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology on the comprehensive type 2 diabetes management algorithm – 2017 executive Summary. Endocr Pract. 2017;23(2):207–38. Available from: http://journals.aace.com/doi/10.4158/EP161682.CS.
4. Tibaldi JM. Evolution of insulin: from human to analog. Am J Med. Elsevier Inc. 2014;127(10):S25–38. Available from: https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjmed.2014.07.005.
5. Holman RR, Thorne KI, Farmer AJ, Davies MJ, Keenan JF, Paul S, et al. Addition of biphasic, prandial, or basal insulin to oral therapy in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2007;357(17):1716–30.
6. Holman RR, Farmer AJ, Davies MJ, Levy JC, Darbyshire JL, Keenan JF, et al. Three-year efficacy of complex insulin regimens in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(18):1736–47. Available from: http://www.nejm.org/doi/abs/10.1056/NEJMoa0905479.
7. Riddle M, Rosenstock J, Gerich J. The treat-to-target trial: randomized addition of glargine or human NPH insulin to oral therapy of type 2 diabetic patients. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(11):3080–6.
8. Heise T, Pieber TR, Danne T, Erichsen L, Haahr H. A pooled analysis of clinical pharmacology trials investigating the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic characteristics of fast-acting insulin aspart in adults with type 1 diabetes. Clin Pharmacokinet. Springer International Publishing;. 2017;56(5):551–9.
9. Origin T, Investigators T. Basal insulin and cardiovascular and other outcomes in dysglycemia. N Engl J Med. 2012;367(4):319–28. Available from: http://www.nejm.org/doi/10.1056/NEJMoa1203858.
10. Marso SP, McGuire DK, Zinman B, Poulter NR, Emerson SS, Pieber TR, et al. Efficacy and safety of degludec versus glargine in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2017; NEJMoa1615692. Available from: http://www.nejm.org/doi/10.1056/NEJMoa1615692.
11. Becker RHA, Dahmen R, Bergmann K, Lehmann A, Jax T, Heise T. New insulin glargine 300 units z mL 21 provides a more even activity profile and prolonged glycemic control at steady state compared with insulin glargine 100 Units z mL 21. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(4):637–43.
12. Bailey T, Dahmen R, Pettus J, Roussel R, Bergmann K, Maroccia M, Nassr N, Klein O, Bolli G, Heise T. Insulin glargine 300 u/ml (gla-300) provides more stable and more evenly distributed steady-state pharmacodynamic/pharmacokinetic profiles compared with insulin degludec in type 1 diabetes (T1DM). Endocr Pract. 2017;23(1):48A. Available from: http://www.embase.com/search/results?subaction=viewrecord&from=export&id=L615078040.
13. Heise T, Nørskov M, Nosek L, Kaplan K, Famulla S, Haahr HL. Insulin degludec: lower day-to-day and within-day variability in pharmacodynamic response compared with insulin glargine 300 U/mL in type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2017;19(7):1032–9.
14. Sorli C. New developments in insulin therapy for type 2 diabetes. Am J Med. Elsevier Inc. 2014;127(10):S39–48. Available from: http://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S0002934314005865.
15. Klonoff DC. Afrezza inhaled insulin. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2014;8(6):1071–3. Available from: http://journals.sagepub.com/doi/10.1177/1932296814555820.
16. Weiss S, Cheng S. Inhaled insulin provides improved glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus inadequately controlled with oral agents: a randomized controlled. Arch Intern Med. 2003;163:2277–82. Available from: http://archinte.ama-assn.org/cgi/reprint/163/19/2277.pdf.
17. Arnolds S, Heise T. Inhaled insulin. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2007;21(4):555–71. Available from: http://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S1521690X07000590.
18. Mohanty RR, Das S. Inhaled insulin - current direction of insulin research. J Clin Diagn Res. 2017;11(4):OE01–2.
19. Meneghini L, Mersebach H, Kumar S, Svendsen A, Hermansen K. Comparison of 2 intensification regimens with rapid-acting insulin aspart in type 2 diabetes mellitus inadequately controlled by once-daily insulin detemir and oral antidiabetes drugs: the step-wise randomized study. Endocr Pract. 2011;17(5):727–36. Available from: http://journals.aace.com/doi/abs/10.4158/EP10367.OR.
20. Meneghini LF. Stepwise addition of prandial insulin. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. Elsevier Ltd. 2014;2(1):3–4. Available from: https://doi.org/10.1016/S2213-8587(13)70056-1.
21. Bode, Bruce; Kyllo, Jennifer; Kaufman FR. Pumping Protocl. A Guide to Insulin Pump Therapy Initiation [Internet]. https://s3.amazonaws.com/medtronic-hcp/Pumping%20Protocol%20-%20a%20Guide%20to%20Insulin%20Pump%20Therapy%20Initiation.pdf. 2007. Available from: https://s3.amazonaws.com/medtronic-hcp/Pumping Protocol - a Guide to Insulin Pump Therapy Initiation.pdf.

22. Walsh J, Roberts R, Bailey T. Guidelines for optimal bolus calculator settings in adults. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2011;5(1):129–35.
23. Walsh J, Roberts R, Bailey T. Guidelines for insulin dosing in continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion using new formulas from a retrospective study of individuals with optimal glucose levels. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2010;4(5):1174–81.
24. Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. The effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the development and progression of long-term complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 1993;329(14):977–86. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8366922.

Suggested/Further Reading

American Diabetes Association (ADA). Practical insulin: a handbook for prescribing providers. 3rd ed. Alexandria, VA: American Diabetes Association; 2011.

Faradji Hazán RN. Indicar un Esquema Convencional e Intensivo de Insulina. In: Sociedad Mexicana de Nutrición y Endocrinología: Taller de Atención Integral para Pacientes con Diabetes. Manual para Profesores y Manual para Alumnos. Chapter 14. 1st ed. Editorial Permanyer; 2014.

Faradji Hazán RN, Díaz Barriga Menchaca AP, Antillón Ferreira, CA. Diabetes en la Población Pediátrica. In: Dorantes y Martínez, SMNE: Endocrinología Clínica. 5th ed. Editorial Manual Moderno; 2016. ISBN 9786074485554.

Faradji Hazán RN, E Sainz de la Maza Viadero, Hazán de Jacob y Levy E, Morales Alvarado E, Díaz Barriga Menchaca AP. Chapter 11. Tratamiento integral de la Diabetes Tipo 1. In: Ochoa Martínez C, Madero Fernández del Castillo MA y González Chávez A, SMNE, CMMI: Manual práctico del manejo de la diabetes mellitus y sus complicaciones. 1st ed. Editorial Alfil; 2016. ISBN 9786077411673.

Phillips P. Insulin and type 2 diabetes: a simple guide to prevent'stuff ups'. Aust Fam Physician. 2006;35(12):975–8.

To access useful information and resources about the topic in Spanish consult: http://www.clinicaendi.mx/para-imprimir/.

Insulin Pump Therapy

36

Raquel N. Faradji and María Elena Sainz de la Maza Viadero

Learning Objectives

- To identify the components of continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII) therapy
- To assess the advantages, disadvantages, and considerations of CSII
- To apply how to calculate the initial dose settings and the fine-tuning adjustments step by step
- To describe the key issues of CSII on special situations

Introduction

Insulin pump therapy has been around since the late 1970s. From the "Big Blue Brick" to the sensor-augmented pumps, significant improvements have been made in the technology. The first hybrid close loop device was approved for clinical use by the FDA in the fall of 2016.

Although there are some insulin pumps that deliver insulin in the intraperitoneal space and are more physiological, this chapter will focus on those that deliver insulin in the subcutaneous space.

R. N. Faradji (✉)
Clinica EnDi, Mexico City, Mexico

RENACED Diabetes Tipo 1, Mexico City, Mexico

Pathophysiology of the Endocrine System, Escuela de Medicina TEC-ABC, Tecnologico de Monterrey, Centro Medico ABC, Mexico City, Mexico

Sociedad Mexicana de Nutrición y Endocrinología, Mexico City, Mexico

M. E. Sainz de la Maza Viadero
Clinica EnDi, Mexico City, Mexico

RENACED Diabetes Tipo 1, Mexico City, Mexico

Didactic Resources for Nutrition, Escuela de Dietetica y Nutricion ISSSTE, Mexico City, Mexico

Compared to multiple daily injections (MDI), insulin pump therapy has proven to decrease the rate of severe hypoglycemia, increase the quality of life, and, in some studies, improve metabolic control, measured by hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c).

Although insulin pump therapy has been mostly used by type 1 diabetes (T1D) patients, it can also be prescribed to patients who live with type 2 diabetes (T2D) that are on MDI.

Insulin pumps use only rapid human insulin or fast-acting insulin analogues. The infusion of insulin is programmed to give a basal insulin infusion throughout the day, and when the patient eats, he must enter the information regarding his blood glucose (BG) level and the carbohydrate intake in grams, so that the pump can calculate the insulin bolus to be given at that time. The patient can also check his BG approximately 2 hours after eating, in order to give himself a correction bolus if the BG level is out of range.

Since only fast-acting insulins are used on the pumps, a patient with T1D could rapidly develop diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA), if the delivery of insulin is suspended (i.e., cannula occlusion or dislodgement). For that reason, those patients that choose insulin pump therapy must check BG levels frequently (at least four times a day) and must be willing to take action in case of pump malfunction.

Although insulin pump therapy is a cost-effective device that can help reduce long-term diabetes complications, its use is not widely spread around the world, mainly because of lack of access.

How It Works: The Basics

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII) therapy uses a portable device that delivers rapid human insulin or fast-acting insulin analogues subcutaneously via a cannula. The insulin delivery system tries to mimic the endogenous pancreatic insulin secretion and does this via two different features:

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_36

1. Basal rate – preprogrammed micro-boluses every few minutes throughout the day.
2. Bolus – patient can give extra insulin doses to cover food intake or to correct an elevated blood glucose (BG) level.

   Food bolus: the patient indicates to the pump the BG level at that moment and the carbohydrate intake (in grams or portions), and the pump calculates the insulin amount, based on the insulin-to-carb ratio (ICR).

   Correction bolus: the patient introduces the BG level at that moment, and the pump calculates the insulin amount based on the insulin sensitivity factor (ISF) and the BG target.

Insulin Pump Candidates

- Patients with type 1 diabetes (T1D) or type 2 diabetes (T2D) on intensive insulin therapy.
- Women with diabetes who are pregnant or are planning a pregnancy.
- Patients' age or diabetes duration should not be a determining factor in the transition to this therapy [1–3].

Patient Requirements

- Responsible and psychologically stable.
- Motivated to achieve optimal BG control.
- Able and willing to carry out the tasks of this therapy safely and effectively and to maintain frequent contact with a healthcare team provider with full training and comprehension of CSII therapy.
- Able and willing to check their BG levels at least four times a day.
- Pediatric patients must have a motivated and committed family with a good understanding of diabetes self-management principles [1, 2, 4].

Advantages of CSII Therapy

- The micro-boluses, as low as 0.025 international units (IU) in some devices, allow to adjust with more precision to the requirements of the patient, which reduces hypoglycemia risk.
- The basal infusion can be temporarily augmented, reduced (temporal basal rates), or suspended, which can be useful to maintain BG control during sick days or exercise.
- The significant reduction in the number of insulin injections from four or more each day to one infusion set change every 3 or 4 days.
- Different bolus delivery options, described later in this text.

Disadvantages of CSII Therapy

- Psychosocial issues; as the user has to wear a device attached to his body day and night.
- Most of the available models in the market may be disconnected for periods no longer than 1 hour, for example, taking a bath, swimming, or having high contact sports.
- Running out of insulin infusion for more than 2 hours increases the risk of diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA). This can occur either because of remaining disconnected, air bubbles in the catheter or cannula obstruction, for example. This is the reason why patients have to check their BG often (at least four times a day). And if the BG is higher than 240 mg/dl (13.3 mmol/l), in two occasions they must take action and correct with insulin injection and insulin, insulin reservoir, and infusion set change. They should be trained to always carry with themselves an extra infusion set change and an insulin delivery device like insulin pen or syringes and an insulin vial.

Types of Insulin Pump

There are different kinds of insulin pumps in the market:

- With tubing: insulin pump device connected via a catheter (from 18 to 43 inches length) to a subcutaneous cannula.
- Without tubing (patch pumps): insulin infusion device that includes the cannula, reservoir, and infusion mechanism inside. Some models include the controller components on the pump; others communicate wirelessly with a separate controller device. The insulin pump configuration is set in the controller device, both for the basal rate the bolus calculation. They are waterproof; some are approved for depths of 25 feet for 60 minutes.
- With or without continuous glucose monitoring (CGM): some models are just compatible with a CGM and give hypo- and hyperglycemia alarms, but the device does not take any action with the information the CGM provides. Other models are integrated with the CGM system, and can take some actions to prevent hypoglycemia, such as stopping the infusion at a low glucose reading (low glucose suspend (LGS) feature, Medtronic) or stopping the infusion when a hypoglycemia is predicted in the 30 minutes (PREDICTIVE, Medtronic 640G). There is a new model that has an algorithm for the basal rate and corrects for hyper- or hypoglycemia automatically (Medtronic 670G).

Initial Settings

Initial Total and Basal Insulin Dose

Initial *total daily insulin dose (TDD)* may be calculated (Fig. 36.1):

- With the patient's weight (0.5 × patient's weight in kg or 0.23 × patient's weight in lb)
- Making an adjustment (usually a 25% reduction, if A1c is in target) to his previous total insulin regimen by multiple daily injection (MDI)
- Or a mix of both approaches using the average

Then, 50% of that dose is used as the *total daily basal dose* and can be divided equally in 24 hours (IU/hour).

In addition, if a patient has been reasonably well controlled on MDI, on a basal-bolus regimen, one could do the conversion from the total basal insulin analogue dose to the *total daily basal dose*, by reducing it by 5–25%. It must be pointed out that when converting from glargine insulin to CSII, one must reduce the dose at least 20%. When converting from degludec insulin to CSII, the reduction may be lower (5–15%).

The basal dose may be set in the pump configuration in insulin IU hour by hour; some devices may have the possibility to set different basal rates at each 30-minute interval.

- When initiating the basal rate, one can initiate with a constant basal rate per hour for the 24 hours, for example, 0.5 IU per hour or with different basal rates for different time frames, depending if it is known that the patient presents dawn phenomenon (higher rate) or early morning hypoglycemia (lower rate).

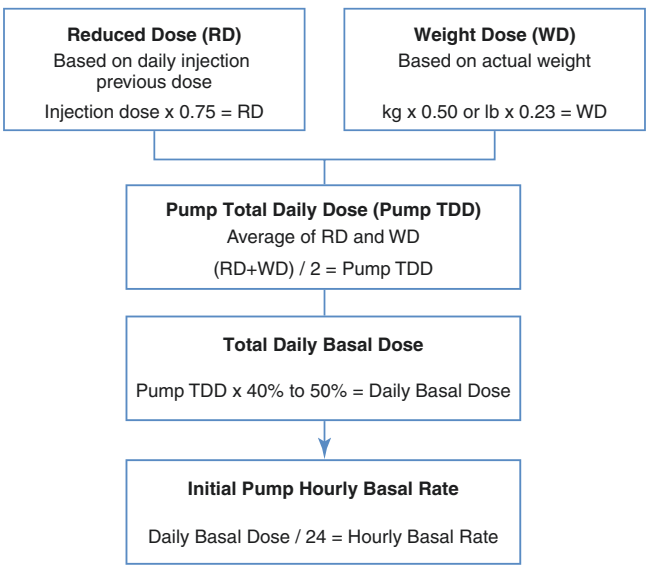


Fig. 36.1 Initial pump hourly basal rate. (Adapted from Medtronic protocol [4])

- Insulin pumps may have the possibility to configure different basal patterns, for example, a higher one for sick days and a lower one for exercise days.
- Another function of CSII devices is to set temporary basal rates anytime, with durations from 30 minutes to 24 hours. Temporal basal infusion may be programed by insulin units or by percentage. For example, if the patient has an unplanned physical activity, he can set a basal reduction of "X%" during "X" hours.

Initial Bolus Calculation

Initial bolus calculation settings include:

- *Insulin-to-carb ratio (ICR)*: this means how many grams of carbohydrate will be covered by the infusion of one unit of fast-acting insulin. For optimal control, a patient may need different ICRs during the day. *If a patient on multiple daily injections has established an ICR that provides reasonable postprandial glucose control, the pump therapy settings can be done using that ICR. If a patient is not yet carb counting or does not have an accurate food log, use the 450 rule (450/total daily dose)* (Fig. 36.2) [4].
- *Insulin sensitivity factor (ISF)*: this factor indicates the mg/dl or mmol/L of BG that is lowered by the infusion of one unit of fast-acting insulin. *If a patient on multiple daily injections has an established ISF that currently provides reasonable correction doses, the pump therapy settings can be started using that ISF. For patients who have frequent hypoglycemia or hypoglycemia unawareness, use the 2000 rule (2000/TDD)* (Fig. 36.3) [4]. Please refer to Chap. 35, "Use of Insulin in Outpatient Diabetes Management," for more details on these calculations.
- *Active insulin (AI)*: some devices include a bolus calculator feature that also considers the active insulin from a previous bolus and estimates the adjustment to reduce the hypoglycemia risk. In order to program that, the settings should include active insulin in hours. *The length of time fast-acting insulin lowers the blood glucose level varies in each individual. Usually it can be set from 3 to 5 hours* [4].

Fig. 36.2 Initial insulin-to-carb ratio (ICR) [4]

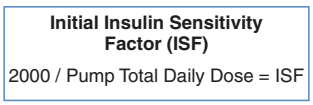


Fig. 36.3 Initial insulin sensitivity factor (ISF). (Adapted from Ref. [4])

- *Blood glucose target range (BGTR)*: this is the range of BG levels that we want the patient to achieve. With this information, the bolus calculator feature will determine if a correction is needed. *When determining target ranges, keep in mind these are not the same as ADA or AACE BG guidelines; instead they are the values the pump "targets" when correcting high or low BGs and should be individualized, especially, in patients with history of severe hypoglycemia or hypoglycemia unawareness* [4].
- *Insulin bolus delivery* can be done in three different ways:
  - *Normal bolus*: the total bolus estimation is delivered at that moment.
  - *Square wave bolus*: the total bolus estimation is delivered during a lapse of time defined by the patient. It can be anywhere from 30 minutes to 8 hours, for example. It is usually used when consuming food high in fat and protein.
  - *Dual wave bolus*: this bolus is a mix between the normal and the square wave bolus. The patient can set a percentage of the bolus to be given now (normal) and a percentage of the bolus to be given over a lapse of time (square wave bolus). This type of bolus can be used for meals high in carbohydrate, fat, and protein, such as pizza.

Adjustments Step by Step

Here is a step-by-step example of fine-tuning adjustments:

Step 1. Calculate Initial Doses

These are total daily dose, basal hourly rate (Fig. 36.4), ICR (Fig. 36.5), and ISF (Fig. 36.6).

Step 2. Patient's BG Registry

Usually, the information regarding BG levels, carbs ingested, insulin boluses, and exercise can be entered in the insulin pump. But sometimes, many patients forget to enter BG levels and carbs during a hypoglycemia event, and that information is lost when downloading the insulin pump information in the computer. If a hypoglycemia is not recorded, then when making adjustments, important information will be omitted. For that reason and for educational purposes, it is recommended that the patients will make their own manual BG registry log (Figs. 36.7, 36.8, and 36.9). When a person does his own BG registry manually, he is more conscious of his own decisions, which can promote engagement.

Suggested BG registry format:

Step 3. Basal Rate Fine-Tuning

Although some patients may achieve good BG control using one constant basal rate, most will need different basal rates during the day to achieve a tight BG control. Once the initial doses are set, the healthcare team should help the patient to evaluate and fine tune the basal rate. There are some guidelines to follow during the evaluation period [5].

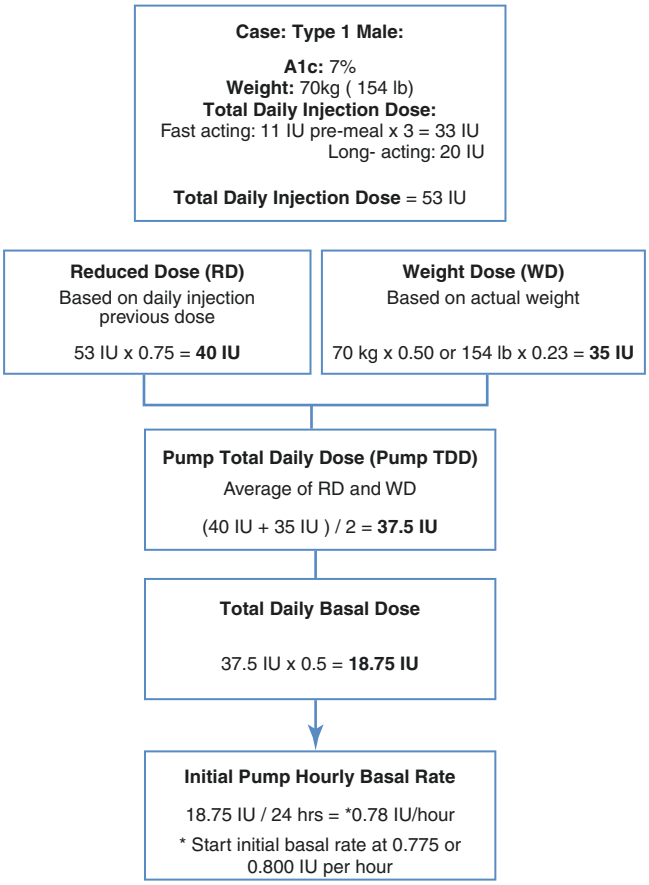


Fig. 36.4 Initial basal hourly rate doses calculation example. (Adapted from Ref. [4])

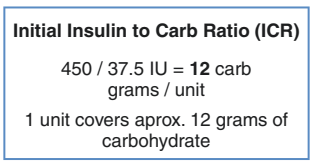


Fig. 36.5 Initial ICR calculation example. (Adapted from Ref. [4])

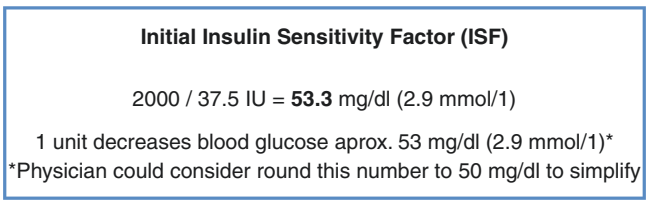


Fig. 36.6 Initial ISF calculation example. (Adapted from Ref. [4])

- The first time frame to be evaluated should be overnight.
- It is preferred to see similar results for 2 days in a row to consider it a pattern and make adjustments. If the blood glucose is dropping during the evaluation, you can consider to change the rate without confirming a pattern.

- The blood glucose should be 100–150 mg/d (5.5–8.3 mmol/l) before starting the evaluation.

The day of the evaluation, the patient should avoid exercising, eating high-fat meals, or drinking alcohol. Do not plan an evaluation if the patient is sick, under unusual stress, or if the patient experienced a severe hypoglycemia that day.

- The last meal before the beginning of the evaluation should be easy to count, preferably with low-fat foods.
- Stop the evaluation if the blood glucose drops or rises out of the target range and treat it.
- Basal evaluation should begin 3–5 hours after the last bolus.
- Check blood glucose every 1–2 hours. For the overnight time frame: before bedtime, midnight, between 02:00 and 03:00 hours and upon awakening.

Time frame/guidelines	Check blood glucose	Evaluation
Overnight Eat dinner earlier: easy to count, low fat Don't eat afterward	3 hours after dinner bolus Midnight 03:00 hours Upon awakening	Basal rates are correct if BG does not increase or decrease more than 30–40 mg/dl (1.7 a 2.2 mmol/l) during the evaluation period If BG increases, basal rate needs to be increased for this time period If BG decreases, basal rate needs to be decreased for this time period
Breakfast time Check your BG upon awakening If BG is between 100 and 150 mg/dl (5.5–8.5 mmol/l) approximately begin evaluation Skip breakfast Eat no food until noon	Every 1–2 hours until noon/lunch time	
Lunch time Eat breakfast at usual time: easy to count, low fat Skip lunch Eat no food until dinner	3 hours after breakfast bolus Every 1–2 hours until dinner	
Dinner time Eat lunch at usual time: easy to count, low fat Skip dinner Eat no food until bedtime Eat a late dinner or bedtime snack if you desire	3 hours after lunch bolus Every 1–2 hours until bedtime snack/late dinner	
Consider that meal time frames are different in different cultures, maybe you will have to adjust these guidelines Each time frame evaluation must be done on different days Keep in mind that basal insulin delivered has its maximum effect 2–3 hours later. For example, if blood glucose is elevated at 3:00 in the morning, the basal rate must be changed starting at 0:00 hrs		

Adapted from [5]

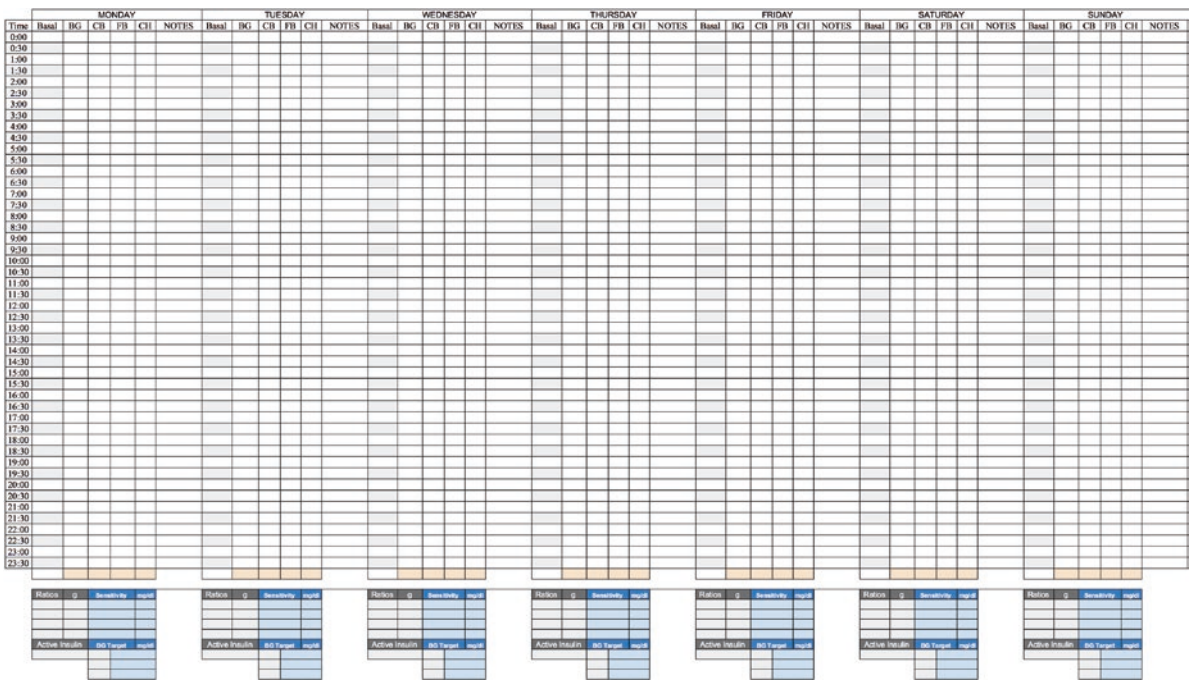


Fig. 36.7 Example of BG registry format. (Faradji R, Sainz E, Clinica EnDi, unpublished)

BG – Blood glucose (mg/dl)
CB – Correction Bolus (insulin units)
FB – Food Bolus (insulin units)
CH – Carbohydrates (grams)
NOTES – Food detail, execercise, cannula change, etc.

	MONDAY					
Time	Basal	BG	CB	FB	CH	NOTES
0:00	**0:800**					
0:30						
1:00	0:800					
1:30						
2:00	0:800					
2:30						
3:00	0:800					
3:30						
4:00	0:800					
4:30						
5:00	0:800					
5:30						
6:00	0:800	200	2	2.5	30	bread
6:30						
7:00	0:800					
7:30						
8:00	0:800					
8:30						
9:00	0:800	160	1.2			
9:30						

Fig. 36.8 Detailed example of BG registry format. (Faradji R, Sainz E, Clinica EnDi, unpublished)

Ratios	g	Sensitivity	mg/dl
0:00	12	0:00	50
Active Insulin		BG Target	mg/dl
3 hrs		0:00	100-110
		6:00	90-100
		20:00	100-110

Fig. 36.9 Detailed example of pump setting summary

Basal rate fine tuning step by step didactic example (Fig. 36.10)**.**

Day 1 Basal evaluation overnight: Monday to Tuesday

- 18:00 hrs – BG before dinner, 120 mg/dl (6.7 mmol/l)
- 22:00 hrs – BG 4 hrs after dinner, 150 mg/dl (8.3 mmol/l)
- 00:00 hrs – BG midnight, 170 mg/dl (9.4 mmol/l)
- 03:00 hrs – BG 3 am, 240 mg/dl (13.3 mmol/l)

BG rises more than 30–40 mg/dl (2 mmol/l approx.) from midnight to 3:00 hrs. The patient should adjust basal rate from 0.800 to 0.850 IU/hr on that time frame.

Day 2 Basal evaluation overnight: Tuesday to Wednesday

- 18:00 hrs – BG before dinner, 110 mg/dl (6.1 mmol/l)
- 22:00 hrs – BG 4 hrs after dinner, 155 mg/dl (8.6 mmol/l)
- 00:00 hrs – BG midnight, 170 mg/dl (9.4 mmol/l)
- 03:00 hrs – BG 3 am, 210 mg/dl (11.6 mmol/l)

BG rises more than 30–40 mg/dl (2 mmol/l approx.) from midnight to 3:00 hrs; even with the last adjustment, patient could adjust basal rate from 0.850 to 0.900 IU/hr on that time frame.

We also observe a 2-day pattern of BG rising moderately from 22:00 to 00:00 hrs. The patient and his healthcare team could consider adjusting the basal rate from 0.800 to 0.850 u/h on that time frame.

Day 3 Basal evaluation overnight: Wednesday to Thursday

- 18:00 hrs – BG before dinner, 120 mg/dl (6.7 mmol/l)
- 22:00 hrs – BG 4 hrs after dinner, 155 mg/dl (8.6 mmol/l)
- 00:00 hrs – BG midnight, 130 mg/dl (7.2 mmol/l)
- 03:00 hrs – BG 3 am, 120 mg/dl (6.7 mmol/l)
- 06:00 hrs – BG wakeup, 110 mg/dl (6.1 mmol/l)

BG remained without big changes during the night.

We can observe another pattern during the day on days 1, 2, and 3: from 9:00 hrs to 12:00 hrs, BG decreases more than 30–40 mg/dl (2 mmol/l approx.). The patient could consider decreasing the basal rate from 0.800 to 0.750 IU/hr during that time frame.

Day 4 Basal evaluation morning and overnight: Thursday morning and Thursday to Friday

Thursday morning:

- 09:00 hrs – BG 3 hrs after breakfast, 160 mg/dl (8.9 mmol/l)
- 12:00 hrs – BG 3 before lunch, 150 mg/dl (8.3 mmol/l)

BG remained without big changes during the morning; the basal reduction to 0.750u/h worked. After analyzing the breakfast postprandial results, the patient with his healthcare team could consider adjusting the breakfast ICR in order to achieve a better postprandial glucose result, from 12 g of carbs to 10 g of carbs per 1 unit of insulin, just for breakfast.

Thursday to Friday:

- 18:00 hrs – BG before dinner, 110 mg/dl (6.1 mmol/l)
- 20:00 hrs – BG 2 hrs after dinner, 170 mg/dl (9.4 mmol/l)
- 23:00 hrs – BG 5 hrs after dinner, 120 mg/dl (6.7 mmol/l)
- 03:00 hrs – BG 3 am, 110 mg/dl (6.1 mmol/l)
- 06:00 hrs – BG wakeup, 110 mg/dl (6.1 mmol/l)

	DAY 1 MONDAY						DAY 2 TUESDAY						DAY 3 WEDNESDAY						DAY 4 THURSDAY						DAY 5 FRIDAY					
Time	Basal	BG	CB	FB	CH	NOTES	Basal	BG	CB	FB	CH	NOTES	Basal	BG	CB	FB	CH	NOTES	Basal	BG	CB	FB	CH	NOTES	Basal	BG	CB	FB	CH	NOTES
0:00	**0.800**						**0.800**	170					0.850	170					0.900	130					0.900					
0:30																														
1:00	0.800						0.800						0.850						0.900						0.900					
1:30																														
2:00	0.800						0.800						0.850						0.900						0.900					
2:30																														
3:00	0.800						0.800	240	2.6				0.850	210	2				0.900	120					0.900	110				
3:30																														
4:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800					
4:30																														
5:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800					
5:30																														
6:00	0.800	200	2	2.5	30	bread	0.800	120	0.4	2.5	30	bread	0.800	100		2.5	30	bread	0.800	110		2.5	30	bread	0.800	110		3	30	bread
6:30						coffee						coffee						coffee						coffee						coffee
7:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800					
7:30																														
8:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800					
8:30																														
9:00	0.800	180	1.2				0.800	190					0.800	170					0.750	160					0.750	120				
9:30																														
10:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.750						0.750					
10:30																														
11:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.750						0.750					
11:30																														
12:00	0.800	60		3.7	55	sandwich	0.800	70		3.7	45	sandwich	0.800	50		3.7	50	sandwich	0.800	150	1	3.7	45	sandwich	0.800	90		3.7	45	sandwich
12:30						fruit						fruit						fruit						fruit						fruit
13:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800					
13:30																														
14:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800					
14:30																														
15:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800	120				
15:30																														
16:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800					
16:30																														
17:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800					
17:30																														
18:00	0.800	120	0.4	5	60	pasta	0.800	110	0.2	5	60	rice	0.800	120	0.4	5	60	pasta	0.800	110	0.2	5	60	rice	0.800	90		5	60	rice
18:30						salad						chicken						salad						chicken						meat ball
19:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800					
19:30																														
20:00	0.800						0.800						0.800						0.800	170					0.800	160				
20:30																														
21:00	0.800	150					0.800	155					0.850	155					0.850						0.850					
21:30																														
22:00	0.800						0.800						0.850						0.850						0.850					
22:30																														
23:00	0.800						0.800						0.850						0.850	120					0.850	110				
23:30																														
	19.2						19.2						19.55						19.6						19.6					

Ratios	g	Sensitivity	mg/dl
0:00	12	0:00	50

Active Insulin	BG Target	mg/dl
3 hrs	0:00	100-110
	6:00	90-100
	20:00	100-110

Ratios	g	Sensitivity	mg/dl
0:00	12	0:00	50
6:00	10		
12:00	12		

Active Insulin	BG Target	mg/dl
3 hrs	0:00	100-110
	6:00	90-100
	20:00	100-110

Fig. 36.10 Didactic sample of BG Registry: days 1 to 5

BG remained without big changes during that night. We already have 2 days without big changes overnight. For now, overnight basal rate is working as expected.

Day 5 Bolus breakfast ratio evaluation: Friday

- 06:00 hrs – BG before breakfast, 110 mg/dl (6.1 mmol/l)
- 09:00 hrs – BG 3 hrs after breakfast, 120 mg/dl (6.7 mmol/l)
- 12:00 hrs – BG before lunch, 90 mg/dl (5 mmol/l)

BG remained without big changes during the morning. After breakfast, postprandial BG result is on a better range, without big changes and without hypoglycemia until lunch.

Step 4. Insulin to Carb Ratio (ICR) Fine-Tuning

Once the basal rate has been evaluated and adjusted, we can continue with ICR and insulin sensitivity factor (ISF) evaluation and adjustments. There are some recommendations:

- ICR evaluation should take place when BG before a meal is in target. If the user needs to add a correction bolus to get the BG down, it won't be the best time to evaluate the ICR.
- The person must choose a low-fat meal moderate in carbs (30–45 g) and prefer a meal that is easy to count.
- The person should estimate the carbs, apply the food bolus according to the pump settings, and eat.
- Then, the user should check his BG every 1–2 hours for the next 4 hours after that meal.
- Four to five hours after the meal, the BG should return to the target range, if the ICR is correct.
- It is recommended to reevaluate the ICR on different days and at different times of the day.
- Consider that the ICR can be different for different times of the day.

An example can be seen on days 4 and 5 as explained before.

Step 5. Sensitivity Factor (ISF) Fine-Tuning

Usually the insulin sensitivity factor (ISF) evaluation occurs naturally when we observe, on the patient BG registry log book, an isolated correction bolus. This correction bolus should have no food, exercise, or other interfering factors at that time. We can then manually calculate how many mg/dl or mmol/l the BG drops with the bolus infusion of one unit of insulin.

The insulin pump user can identify an opportunity to evaluate his own ISF when he needs to take a correction bolus and at least 3 hours have passed since his last food bolus. The person must take a correction bolus based on his pump settings, and then check his BG after 2 hours and then again at 3 to 4 hours without eating during that time frame.

ISF fine tuning, step by step didactic example (Fig. 36.11).

	DAY 6 SATURDAY						DAY 7 SUNDAY					
Time	Basal	BG	CB	FB	CH	NOTES	Basal	BG	CB	FB	CH	NOTES
0:00	**0.900**	110		2.5	30	party	**0.900**					
0:30						dessert						
1:00	0.900						0.900					
1:30												
2:00	0.900						0.900					
2:30												
3:00	0.900						0.900					
3:30												
4:00	**0.800**						**0.800**					
4:30												
5:00	0.800						0.800					
5:30												
6:00	0.800						0.800	90		3	30	bread
6:30												coffee
7:00	0.800	220	2.2				0.800					
7:30												
8:00	0.800						0.800					
8:30												
9:00	**0.750**	90					**0.750**	120				
9:30												
10:00	0.750	65		3	35	bread	0.750					
10:30						coffee						
11:00	0.750						0.750					
11:30												
12:00	**0.800**	150	1	3.7	45	sandwich	**0.800**	100		3.7	45	sandwich
12:30						fruit						fruit
13:00	0.800						0.800					
13:30												
14:00	0.800						0.800					
14:30												
15:00	0.800	140					0.800	150				
15:30												
16:00	0.800						0.800					
16:30												
17:00	0.800						0.800					
17:30												
18:00	0.800	120	0.2	3.7	45	bread	0.800	130	0.2	5	60	rice
18:30						chicken						chicken
19:00	0.800						0.800					
19:30												
20:00	0.800						0.800					
20:30												
21:00	**0.850**	150					**0.850**	160				
21:30												
22:00	0.850						0.850					
22:30												
23:00	0.850						0.850					
23:30												
	19.6						19.6					

Ratios	g	Sensitivity	mg/dl
0:00	12	0:00	50
6:00	10		
12:00	12		
Active Insulin		BG Target	mg/dl
3 hrs		0:00	100-110
		6:00	90-100
		20:00	100-110

Ratios	g	Sensitivity	mg/dl
0:00	12	0:00	50
6:00	10		
12:00	12		
Active Insulin		BG Target	mg/dl
3 hrs		0:00	100-110
		6:00	90-100
		20:00	100-110

Fig. 36.11 Didactic sample of BG registry: days 6 and 7

$$\frac{\text{initial BG - final BG*}}{\text{correction bolus}} = \text{ISF}$$

*BG 3 to 4 hours after correction bolus

Fig. 36.12 ISF estimation based on BG registry results

$$\frac{220 - 65}{2.2\ \text{IU}} = 70\ \text{mg/dl}$$

Fig. 36.13 ISF estimation based on the results of a didactic example

Day 6 Sensitivity factor evaluation. Saturday morning

- 7:00 hrs – BG wake up, 220 mg/dl (12.2 mmol/l), 2.2u insulin correction bolus according to the pump settings: target BG 110 mg/dl (6.1 mmol/l) and ISF 50 mg/dl (2.7 mmol/l)
- 9:00 hrs – BG , 90 mg/dl (5 mmol/l)
- 10:00 hrs – BG 3 hrs after correction bolus, 65 mg/dl (3.6 mmol/l)

We can estimate the adjusted sensitivity factor based on the evaluation results as follows (Figs. 36.12 and 36.13):

.

As we can see, even though the ISF is 50 mg/dl (2.7 mmol/l), the BG drops 70 mg/dl (3.8 mmol/l). Therefore, we can adjust the ISF to 70 mg/dl (3.8 mmol/l) in that time frame.

Keep in mind that the ISF can be different on different time frames during the day. Usually a patient may need an ISF for the night and another one during the day.

Comparison of Initial Pump Settings with Pump Settings After Fine-Tuning Adjustments

Initial pump settings	Pump settings after first adjustments
Basal rate From 00:00 to 24:00 hrs – 0.800 IU/h Total basal insulin: 19.2 units	*Basal rate* From 00:00 to 03:00 hrs – 0.900 IU/hr From 03:00 to 09:00 hrs – 0.800 IU/hr From 09:00 to 12:00 hrs – 0.750 IU/hr From 12:00 to 21:00 hrs – 0.800 IU/hr From 21:00 to 24:00 hrs – 0.850 IU/hr Total basal insulin: 19.6 units
Bolus ratios (ICR) From 00:00 to 24:00 hrs – 12 g	*Bolus ratios (ICR)* From 00:00 to 06:00 hrs – 12 g From 06:00 to 12:00 hrs – 10 g From 12:00 to 24:00 hrs – 12 g
ISF From 00:00 to 24:00 hrs – 50 mg/dl	*ISF* From 00:00 to 11:00 hrs – 70 mg/dl (2.7 mmol/l) From 11:00 to 24:00 hrs – 50 mg/dl (3.8 mmol/l)

Special Situations

Exercise

The normal physiologic response to exercise is the reduction in insulin production and the increase in the secretion of glucagon and sympathetic hormones, as well other counter-regulatory hormones [6–8].

The response to exercise is different depending on the type of exercise:

- Anaerobic exercise (weights, high intensity sprints) – there is more catecholamine secretion, and therefore increased likelihood in BG rises.
- Aerobic (running, swimming, biking) – there is more energy expenditure, and therefore, the risk of hypoglycemia is higher.

In a person living with T1D, where insulin administration is exogenous and subcutaneous, insulin secretion cannot be decreased. In addition, the increase in glucagon associated with exercise may be lost in the first few years after diagnosis. Finally, if the patient has autonomic insufficiency (either organic or because of hypoglycemia-associated autonomic failure, HAAF), the sympathetic response will be attenuated, leaving the person at risk of severe hypoglycemia and hypoglycemia unawareness. As explained in Chap. 51, exercise can worsen this situation [6–8].

The risk of hypoglycemia is not only present during exercise but in the hours following it, because muscle glycogen stores replenishment that normally occurs after exercise. This phenomenon can occur 7 hours after doing exercise and may last for up to 24 hours [9–11]. If exercise is performed on a daily basis, insulin sensitivity increases, and the insulin requirements may decrease.

In a patient with T1D, three responses to exercise may occur, depending on the insulin concentrations and on the level of the counter-regulatory hormones [6–8].

(a) Euglycemia: if circulating insulin is decreased prior to exercise and the response to catecholamines is adequate, there will be appropriate glucose utilization by the muscle.
(b) Hypoglycemia: if there is excess or normal insulin concentrations and a normal or attenuated catecholamine response, the habitual response will be hypoglycemia.
(c) Hyperglycemia: this can occur in patients with uncontrolled diabetes or in patients with good control, if there is relative insulin deficiency.

    If there is insulin deficiency and an excessive catecholamine response, there can be the development of diabetic ketoacidosis.

In those patients treated with CSII, several studies have been carried out to evaluate what to do when exercising and using the pump.

Dr. Moshe Phillip's group published a study in 2005 [12], where the use of the insulin pump at a basal rate of 50% was compared to insulin pump disconnection during exercise in ten kids. There was no significant difference in the rate of hypoglycemia during exercise in the two groups, but there was an increased risk of hypoglycemia several hours after exercise in both groups. A trend toward more hypoglycemia several hours after exercise was seen in the group that used the temporary basal rate, compared to those that disconnected. Their recommendation is to disconnect the pump during exercise and to check BG levels frequently during and after exercise.

DirecNet 2006 [13] studied 49 children, where insulin pump use or not was compared during exercise at 4:00 pm. They found that hypoglycemia during exercise was lower in the group that disconnected (16 vs 43%), but postexercise hyperglycemia was higher (27 vs 4%).

Dr. Ana María Gomez published a study in 2015 [10], where the effect of exercise in BG levels was compared in exercise performed at the fasting state versus exercise performed 4 hours after the main meal in 35 insulin pump adult users. Both groups did aerobic exercise for 1 hour in a running machine. The insulin pump was disconnected immediately before, during, and 45 minutes after finishing the exercise. They found that if exercise is performed in the morning, the rate of hypoglycemia is lower than if performed in the afternoon. Most hypoglycemic events occurred 15–24 hours postexercise. Those patients that performed fasting exercise increased 20% of their euglycemia time the day after exercise. They concluded that early morning exercise decreases the rate of hypoglycemia and improves glucose control.

McAuley et al. in 2016 [14] studied the effect of using a temporary basal rate of 50% 1 hour before and during exercise (30 minutes) versus rest in 14 adult subjects with T1D. They found that even with the basal rate reduction, insulin concentrations rise during exercise, compared to being at

rest. Three of the 14 subjects presented hypoglycemia, even with the temporary basal rate reduction, and required supplemental carbohydrates. Their recommendation is to give supplementary carbohydrates to those patients with BG levels below 126 mg/dl (7 mmol) and to consider basal rate reductions higher than 50% before and during exercise.

Strategies to decrease hypoglycemia during and after exercise in insulin pump users include [15]:

1. Having supplementary carbohydrates before exercise.
2. Reducing basal rate before and during exercise (50% or more).
3. Consider disconnecting insulin pump during and 45 minutes after exercise.
4. Reducing meal bolus if exercise will occur 2 or 3 hours after exercise.
5. Reducing basal rate postexercise to decrease the incidence of late hypoglycemia or nocturnal hypoglycemia (e.g., a 20% reduction, i.e., an 80% basal rate, during the night of the exercise day).
6. Reducing meal bolus after dinner to reduce the incidence of late hypoglycemia or nocturnal hypoglycemia.
7. Performing high resistance and intensity exercise prior and after aerobic exercise.
8. Using CGM to help guide insulin doses and additional carbohydrate intake.

Each patient will need to study his own response to exercise and to the different types of exercise so that he can make the best decisions, together with his healthcare team, to try to prevent exercise-induced hypoglycemia.

Sick Days

It is important that the patient and the healthcare team have a set plan in case of sick days. The patient should understand that during sick days his BG levels may rise, even if he is not eating as much, because of the counter-regulatory hormones. For that reason, he must maintain well hydrated, check his BG levels often, and give himself a correction bolus when needed. He also needs to have urine or glucose ketone test strips and check if the BG is higher than 240 mg/dl (13.3 mmol/l). If positive, he should contact the healthcare team.

In addition, if the BG levels remain higher than normal, he may need to set a temporarily basal rate such as 120–150% for several hours during the day and then reassess.

The patient must understand that if the BG is higher than 240 mg/dl (13.3 mmol/l) in two occasions in a row, even if he has given himself a correction bolus, he must:

1. Check ketones.
2. Look for a possible cause (i.e., cannula occlusion or dislodgement, insulin bubbles in the catheter, spoiled insulin).
3. Correct with an insulin injection (with insulin syringe or pen).
4. Change the insulin, insulin reservoir, and infusion set.

Patients should be trained to always carry with themselves an extra infusion set change and an insulin delivery device like insulin pen or syringes and an insulin vial.

In case there are ketones present, the patient will need to increase his correction dose. He may need up to 15–20% of his total insulin daily dose as correction and check BG and ketones in 1 hour.

Another important consideration is that sometimes the patient will be prescribed corticosteroids, as part of the treatment of his intercurrent disease (i.e., asthma attack, vestibular neuronitis, etc.). In that case, BG levels will rise significantly around 6 hours after the initial dose. He must keep well hydrated, check BG often, and he must make insulin adjustments as needed. He may need a temporary basal rate of 150% or more and may need to change the ICR and ISF to as much as 1:5 g and 1:15 mg/dl (~1:1 mmol/l), respectively.

Finally, if there is nausea and vomiting that cannot be treated with an antiemetic at home, regardless if there are or not ketones present, the patient should be seen in the emergency room for hydration, antiemetic treatment, and diagnosis of the cause of the nausea and vomiting. He may need to be hospitalized.

Fasting

If a patient living with T1D has his basal rate set correctly, fasting should not be a problem. If it is set too high, he may then be at risk of hypoglycemia. To know if a basal rate is set correctly, a basal rate evaluation can be performed as explained above.

Fasting may be required before medical or surgical procedures or may be a personal or religious choice (such as in Yom Kippur or in Ramadan) [16]. Careful monitoring of glucose levels (either capillary, flash, or continuous), avoiding bolus insulin, or, if needed, correcting to a higher BGTR (150 mg/dl, approx. 8 mmol/l instead of 100 mg/dl, approx. 5.5 mmol/l) and temporary reductions in basal insulin may be required to maintain safe glucose levels.

Hospitalizations

T1D patients using an insulin pump, who are conscious, should be able to maintain the use of their pump while in the hospital [1, 3], especially if they have not been admitted for an acute hypo- or hyperglycemic crisis. Ideally, their specialist in insulin pump therapy should be consulted during their hospital stay.

With the increased utilization of insulin pumps by patients, hospitals should be encouraged to have pump experts on staff, especially the anesthesiologists and the ward physicians. As stated in the American Diabetes Association's 2014 Standards of Medical Care [17], "Patients who use CSII pump therapy in the outpatient setting can be candidates for diabetes self-management in the hospital, provided that they have the mental and physical capacity to do so. [The] availability of hospital personnel with expertise in CSII therapy is essential. It is important that nursing personnel document basal rates and bolus doses on a regular basis (at least daily)."

It is important to note that if going to an MRI machine, the pump should be disconnected and the sensor should be removed during the study.

Surgery [1, 3, 16]

During surgery two key situations occur:

- The patient is fasting and therefore is at risk of hypoglycemia.
- The increase in stress hormones from surgery could raise BG levels.

For these reasons, it is important to monitor BG levels before surgery, every hour during surgery and recovery room, and every 3 hours while fasting.

For the most part, patients should be able to continue using their insulin pump during surgery. It is important to note the localization of the cannula (and the sensor, if in place) and to avoid dislodging them.

Since the patient will be anesthetized, it is important to have someone that knows how to manage the pump during that time. It could either be the anesthesiologist, the insulin pump therapy specialist (endocrinologist or registered nurse/diabetes educator), or, if not possible and if allowed in the operating room, a family member (i.e., spouse or parent), who knows how to operate the pump and is in contact with the insulin pump specialist.

During surgery, a temporary basal rate may be required, either a lower rate to prevent hypoglycemia or a higher rate if BG levels start to rise secondary to the stress. Also, correction bolus may be given to a target BG level of around 150 mg/dl (approx. 8 mmol/l).

It is not recommended but if decided by the medical team, the insulin pump could be stopped, and an intravenous insulin infusion should be initiated.

Menstruation [16]

For some women living with T1D, important changes occur during the menstrual cycle. During the premenstrual period, they may experience higher BG levels and increased insulin requirements. In addition, when menstruation starts and progesterone concentrations fall steeply, insulin requirements may fall sharply, and there may be a higher risk of hypoglycemia. For these reasons, different basal rate patterns could be set in the insulin pump for these situations. Or a temporary basal rate could be set.

Some women will report increased insulin requirements when using birth control pills; therefore insulin dose adjustments will need to be made.

Pregnancy [1, 16]

CSII has not yet proven to be superior to MDI for BG control and pregnancy outcomes (macrosomia). A large randomized control trial is necessary to study this. Even then, CSII facilitates BG control on those patients that are already on it when getting pregnant. And on those that are on MDI and are not well controlled, they can be changed to CSII to improve their BG control.

Pregnancy is a state where several changes occur, and one must be familiarized with them, to optimally control BG levels during each trimester.

If teratogenicity occurs, this will occur in the *first 8 weeks of gestation*; therefore, it is very important to have the best possible BG control preconception, with a HbA1c target of <6%, if possible. Afterward, if there is poor glycemic control, the risk is macrosomia, due to glucose passage through the placenta, and increase in insulin secretion by the fetus. If the BG levels are elevated during delivery, the risk is of neonatal hypoglycemia.

In the *first trimester*, there is an estate of increased insulin sensitivity, and the normal BG levels range from 60 to 90 mg/dl, and the postprandial levels are usually below 120 mg/dl. In this trimester, the risk of hypoglycemia increases due to the nausea and vomiting. During this phase, using temporary basal rates or doing basal insulin adjustments if a pattern is seen can be easily done with insulin pump therapy. In addition, giving the insulin bolus after eating can be especially useful if nausea and vomiting are occurring frequently.

In addition, pregnancy is a state of accelerated ketosis [18], just a few hours of insulin interruption can lead to hyperglycemia and ketosis. Therefore, the patient must be extremely careful with insulin infusion site changes.

During the *second trimester*, the insulin requirements slowly start to increase.

After the second trimester, as the abdominal wall starts stretching and the subcutaneous space starts to thin out, special care should be taken with choosing the insulin infusion sites; the arms and thigh can be an option.

After the 24th week (*third trimester*), there is an increase in human placental lactogen and other counter-regulatory hormones, leading to a significant increase in insulin requirements that can occur even twice per week. These can occur up until the 36th week. Using an insulin pump can facilitate doing the changes twice a week.

During labor, there is significant glucose utilization by the uterine muscular contractions that is comparable to intense exercise (2.55 mg/kg/min); therefore an intravenous infusion of 10% glucose will be required at 100 cc/hr. Usually the basal rate is left constant.

Right after the placental delivery, the insulin requirements fall significantly, leading to risk of hypoglycemia for the next 48 hours. In these time, the patient will:

1. Stop the pump until BG levels are above 100 mg/dl (5.5 mmol/l).
2. Require to return to the pregestational insulin pump settings.
3. May not require insulin meal bolus.
4. Require the infusion of dextrose at 5% with normal saline at 100 cc/hr.

In case of a *cesarean section*, the BG levels may temporarily increase due to the surgical stress, and the basal rate should be temporarily increased.

During *breast-feeding*, insulin requirements fall significantly (by up to 25%), as available carbohydrate is used to provide lactose in milk. This, added to the postdelivery decreased insulin requirements, can increase the risk of hypoglycemia. At the beginning, the patient can take 15 g of carbohydrates before lactation and can also use temporary basal rates to reduce the risk of hypoglycemia.

Alcohol [16]

Alcohol inhibits hepatic gluconeogenesis and therefore increases the risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia. Strategies to avoid hypoglycemia after alcohol intake include limiting alcohol intake to one serving for females and two servings for males, eating carbohydrate while drinking alcohol, using a temporary basal rate overnight, and eating carbohydrate before bed.

Travel [16]

When planning a trip, the first thing to consider is if the best option is to go to that particular trip using the insulin pump. If the trip is to the beach and the patient will be in contact with the sand and swimming a lot, the patient may decide to disconnect from the pump for those days. If deciding to do so, please review the next section.

When travelling with the pump, it is important to be prepared. One should instruct the patient to (Adapted from [16] – Chapter 4):

- Ensure you have all your supplies – not just pump supplies and insulin but blood glucose and ketone monitoring, rapid acting glucose supplies, glucagon kit, back-up syringes, and long-acting insulin.
- Keep supplies in a bag that stays with you at all times (cabin baggage). Extra pump reservoirs, infusion sets, and batteries can be kept in check-in luggage. If possible, give a smaller back-up supply to someone travelling with you in case luggage is misplaced.
- For long-distance travel or travel in hot countries, keep insulin in an insulation bag, such as an evaporative cooling case.
- Ensure you keep documentation from your doctor confirming you have T1D and need to carry supplies with you and need to wear your pump at all times – this may be needed for airport security.
- Know where to obtain medical help if needed and keep key contact numbers.
- Locating and obtaining pump supplies can be a problem in some countries.
- Medical travel insurance is advised and ensures it covers your diabetes and pump use.
- If travelling in a group, make sure group members are aware that you have diabetes and what they may need to do in an emergency.
- Keep any reminders you may need, such as your pump settings, sick-day rules, multiple dose injection doses.
- Change the time in the insulin pump and in the blood glucose meter when arriving to the destination.

Insulin Adjustments When Travelling

When travelling through time zones, the circadian rhythm will take time to adjust, and therefore there can be an

increased risk of hypo- or hyperglycemia. For this reason, while waiting for the body to adjust, it might be wise to set a flat basal rate at a slightly lower level (10 to 20% lower) than the usual basal rate for 24 hours and return to the usual basal rate once the body has adjusted.

In addition, if the trip will entail a lot of walking, temporary basal rates may be needed or setting a pattern for travel with lower rates. At the beginning, it will be important to have frequent BG measurements (every 3 hours).

Insulin Pump Therapy on Vacation [16]

On occasions, people with T1D may want to rest from the insulin pump. This can be done when taking a beach vacation, as explained above, or when it is psychologically needed, but it can also occur as an unplanned situation because of pump malfunction. It is important that every patient that is on the pump knows how to go off and back on the pump.

Going Off the Pump

The first thing that needs to be done is to calculate the basal insulin dose that will be required.

In general, it may be safer to switch the total basal CSII dose to the basal insulin analogue dose on a 1:1 ratio and then make adjustments as needed [19].

If changing from the pump to glargine U100, the patient may require the same or an increase of up to 20% of the total basal insulin dose. This may be given in one or two doses.

If changing from the pump to degludec insulin, the patient may require the same amount of basal insulin or a 5–10% increase. And this is usually given once a day.

It is important to note that the pump should be discontinued 2 hours after the first long-acting insulin injection is given. If possible, it is best to do this in the morning to minimize the risk of problems at night.

The patient will need to check the BG and give himself the bolus insulin using his ICR and ISF, as usual. He can use the insulin pump as a bolus calculator or learn how to do the calculations manually. If a bolus calculator app is available in the specific country, then he can use it with the pump settings.

Going Back on the Pump

When resuming pump treatment, the patient should usually return to his previous pump settings, unless significant changes in insulin dose have occurred. The best time to restart the pump is just before the long-acting insulin has worn off (approximately 2 hours prior to the next due dose of long-acting insulin). If possible, it is advisable to do this in the morning. It is important to note that with the new ultra-long-acting insulins (degludec), it may be needed to use a lower temporary basal rate, until all of the ultra-long-acting insulin has been absorbed and metabolized (it may take up to 5 half-lives, though usually this is only necessary for the first 24 hours).

CGM

There are three main ways in which once can monitor glucose levels:

- Blood glucose meters that measure capillary BG levels at a specific time. The glucose meters that are on the market use an enzymatic method to measure BG levels, and it can be either hexokinase or glucose oxidase. There are several BG meters on the market. The patient should ideally measure before each meal, 2 hours after each meal, before bedtime, and occasionally at 3:00 in the morning.
- Continuous glucose monitors that continuously (approx. every 5 minutes) measure interstitial glucose levels. These depend on a sensor (also uses an enzymatic method that is converted to electrons), a transmitter, and a reading device. The ones that are coupled to insulin pump therapy display the CGM graph on the pump. Some glucose monitors can also have their information displayed on a smart phone. There are two main brands in the market: Dexcom and Medtronic. So far, both need to be calibrated twice a day on steady state conditions, with BG reading obtained via a BG meter. Both show a CGM glucose graph and arrows showing the glucose rate of change.
- Flash glucose monitor (Free Style Libre, Abbott). This system measures interstitial glucose levels every minute. It consists of a sensor and a reading device. The sensor is factory calibrated and uses also an enzymatic method (glucose oxidase), to continuously measure the interstitial glucose levels. It can store up to 8 hours of information, if not scanned by the reading device. When scanned, it displays the glucose reading at that time, a graph of the glucose values in the last 8 hours, and an arrow, showing the glucose rate of change.

Integrated Systems

To close the loop is the holy grail of the integrated systems for insulin delivery for the treatment of T1D. Many years ago, this was tried with the biostator and the backpack insu-

lin pump. But these technologies measured intravenous glucose and gave intravenous insulin infusions. Since these were complicated and large in size, they never made it into the market. Medtronic has been a pioneer in integrated systems for insulin delivery that have reached the market. The first system started using a CGM that was able to communicate with the pump and give an alarm in case of hypoglycemia. The second system, also called a sensor-augmented pump, had the CGM communicate with the pump and stop the infusion at a target low glucose reading: this feature is called "low glucose suspend" (LGS). This feature has shown to reduce the time spent in hypoglycemia [20]. The third system that reached the market is the PREDICTIVE control, in which the insulin infusion is stopped when it predicts a hypoglycemic event in the next 30 minutes. It also restarts when the glucose levels stabilize [21] (Medtronic 640G). The newest model, approved by the FDA in the fall of 2016, is a hybrid closed-loop system (Medtronic 670G) that has an algorithm for the basal rate and corrects for hyper or hypoglycemia automatically. The patient still has to check his BG levels and count carbohydrates, in order to give a meal bolus or a correction bolus. In the 3-month study for its approval, no patient had severe hypoglycemia nor DKA.

Several groups are working in the development of the closed-loop system. One particularly interesting is the one by the group of Damiano and Russell, from Boston University, Massachusetts General Hospital, Harvard Medical School. They are developing a bi-hormonal (insulin and glucagon) closed-loop system with great promise [22–26].

Since many patients are not waiting for the institutional regulatory approvals, some (mostly engineers and technology savvy) have created their homemade CGM-insulin pump integrated systems, with great success, increasing their time in blood glucose target range [27, 28].

Conclusion

Insulin pump therapy is an excellent tool to improve glycemic control and quality of life. To obtain the full potential of this therapy, an experienced multidisciplinary team approach should be established. It must be stressed out that continuous close professional advice should be available, specially at the beginning in order to make the adequate adjustments as soon as possible. It may take up to a month or more to adjust all the settings. In addition, when having significant life changes (childhood, puberty, pregnancy, menopause, aging, travelling, exercise), adjustments will need to be made in the therapy.

There have been significant advances in insulin pump therapy technology in the recent years. This chapter focuses mostly in starting insulin pump therapy using capillary BG measurements for the initial adjustments and does not deepen into the use of integrated systems. Although CGM technology can help significantly in doing adjustments and reducing hypoglycemia, these technologies are not available in all the countries. Therefore, it is beyond the scope of this chapter to train in how to take full advantage of CGM technology and integrated systems. If a healthcare professional is interested in further deepening his knowledge, he should reach out to the insulin pump providers in their country.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. What type of insulin can be used on an insulin pump?
   (a) Rapid human insulin and fast-acting insulin analogues
   (b) Long acting insulin analogues
   (c) NPH insulin
   (d) Long and fast-acting insulin analogues
2. How is the total daily insulin dose calculated?
   (a) Weight in kg × 0.5.
   (b) Previous total daily dose × 0.75.
   (c) Taking the average of a and b.
   (d) All of the above are correct.
3. How is the basal rate calculated?
   (a) Total daily dose × 0.5 divided by 24 hours
   (b) Weight in kg × 0.5
   (c) Total daily dose divided by 24 hours
   (d) 2000/total daily dose
4. How is the food insulin bolus calculated?
   (a) By the insulin-to-carbohydrate ratio
   (b) By the insulin sensitivity factor
   (c) By the basal rate
   (d) Using temporary basal rates
5. What is the formula to calculate the insulin to carbohydrate ratio?
   (a) 450/total daily dose
   (b) 2000/ total daily dose
   (c) Weight in kg × 0.5
   (d) Weight in kg × 0.8
6. How is the correction bolus calculated?
   (a) By the insulin to carbohydrate ratio
   (b) By the insulin sensitivity factor
   (c) By the basal rate
   (d) Using temporary basal rates
7. What is the formula to calculate insulin sensitivity factor?
   (a) 450/total daily dose
   (b) 2000/total daily dose
   (c) Weight in kg × 0.5
   (d) Weight in kg × 0.8

8. What kind of delivery bolus options exist?
   (a) Normal, dual, and square
   (b) Manual and dual
   (c) Normal and temporary
   (d) Manual, dual, square, and temporary
9. What does the patient need to do in case of having two consecutive blood glucose values above 240 mg/dl despite correction?
   (a) Measure ketones; look for a possible cause (i.e., cannula occlusion or dislodgement); correct with an insulin injection (with insulin syringe or pen); change the insulin, insulin reservoir, and infusion set.
   (b) Give a correction bolus.
   (c) Wait for insulin to act.
   (d) Set an increase in temporary basal rate.
10. Do the math for initial basal rate, insulin-to-carb ratio and insulin sensitivity factor: 40-year-old, female patient, A1c 7%, weight 60 kg, actual insulin regimen 22 IU glargine, and 8 IU lispro before each meal (three meals)
    (a) Basal rate: 0.625 IU/hr; ICR: 15 g; ISF: 70 mg/dl (calculated by weight).
    (b) Basal rate: 0.700 IU/hr; ICR: 13 g; ISF: 60 mg/dl (calculated by previous dose).
    (c) Basal rate: 0.650 IU/hr; ICR: 14 g; ISF: 60 mg/dl (average of a and b).
    (d) All are valid options to consider to start; if risk of hypoglycemia is a particular concern, start with option a.

Correct Anwsers

1. (a) Rapid human insulin and fast-acting insulin analogues
2. (d) All of the above are correct.
3. (a) Total daily dose × 0.5 divided by 24 hours
4. (a) By the insulin-to-carbohydrate ratio
5. (a) 450/total daily dose
6. (b) By the insulin sensitivity factor
7. (b) 2000/total daily dose
8. (a) Normal, dual, and square
9. (a) Measure ketones; look for a possible cause (i.e., cannula occlusion or dislodgement); correct with an insulin injection (with insulin syringe or pen); change the insulin, insulin reservoir, and infusion set.
10. (d) All are valid options to consider to start; if risk of hypoglycemia is a particular concern, start with option a.

References

1. Grunberger G, Abelseth J, Bailey T, Bode B, Handelsman Y, Hellman R, et al. Consensus Statement by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists/American College of Endocrinology insulin pump management task force. Endocr Pract [Internet]. 2014;20(5):463–89. Available from: http://journals.aace.com/doi/abs/10.4158/EP14145.PS.
2. Phillip M, Battelino T, Rodriguez H, Danne T, Kaufman F. Use of insulin pump therapy in the pediatric age-group: consensus statement from the European Society for Paediatric Endocrinology, the Lawson Wilkins Pediatric Endocrine Society, and the International Society for Pediatric and Adolescent Diabetes, endors. Diabetes Care [Internet]. 2007;30(6):1653–62. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17372151.
3. Peters AL, Ahmann AJ, Battelino T, Evert A, Hirsch IB, Murad MH, et al. Diabetes technology—continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion therapy and continuous glucose monitoring in adults: an Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab [Internet]. 2016;101(11):3922–37. Available from: https://academic.oup.com/jcem/article-lookup/doi/10.1210/jc.2016-2534.
4. Bode B, Kyllo J, Kaufman FR. Pumping protocl. A guide to insulin pump therapy initiation [Internet]. https://s3.amazonaws.com/medtronic-hcp/Pumping%20Protocol%20-%20a%20Guide%20to%20Insulin%20Pump%20Therapy%20Initiation.pdf. 2007. Available from: https://s3.amazonaws.com/medtronic-hcp/PumpingProtocol-aGuidetoInsulinPumpTherapyInitiation.pdf.
5. Wolpert HA. Smart pumping: for people with diabetes: [a practical approach to mastering the insulin pump]. Alexandria, Virginia: American Diabetes Association; 2002. 181 p.
6. Galassetti P, Riddell MC. Exercise and type 1 diabetes (T1DM). Compr Physiol. 2013;3(3):1309–36.
7. Riddell MC, Perkins BA. Type 1 diabetes and vigorous exercise: applications of exercise physiology to patient management. Can J Diabetes [Internet]. 2006;30(416):63–71. Available from: https://doi.org/10.1016/S1499-2671(06)01010-0.
8. Robertson K, Adolfsson P, Scheiner G, Hanas R, Riddell MC. Exercise in children and adolescents with diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes. 2009;10(Suppl 12):154–68.
9. McMahon SK, Ferreira LD, Ratnam N, Davey RJ, Youngs LM, Davis EA, et al. Glucose requirements to maintain euglycemia after moderate-intensity afternoon exercise in adolescents with type 1 diabetes are increased in a biphasic manner. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2007;92(3):963–8.
10. Gomez AM, Gomez C, Aschner P, Veloza A, Muñoz O, Rubio C, et al. Effects of performing morning versus afternoon exercise on glycemic control and hypoglycemia frequency in type 1 diabetes patients on sensor-augmented insulin pump therapy. J Diabetes Sci Technol [Internet]. 2015;(40):2–7. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25555390.
11. Tsalikian E, Mauras N, Beck RW, Tamborlane WV, Janz KF, Chase HP, et al. Impact of exercise on overnight glycemic control in children with type 1 diabetes mellitus. J Pediatr [Internet]. 2005;147(4):528–34. [cited 2017 Jan 22]. Available from: http://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S0022347605004002.
12. Admon G. Exercise with and without an insulin pump among children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes mellitus. Pediatrics. 2005;116(3):e348–55.

13. Children TDRI, Network (Direcnet) Study Group. Prevention of hypoglycemia during exercise in children with type 1 diabetes by suspending basal insulin. Diabetes Care [Internet]. 2006;29(10):2200–4. Available from: http://care.diabetesjournals.org/cgi/doi/10.2337/dc06-0495.
14. Mcauley SA, Horsburgh JC, Ward GM, La Gerche A, Gooley JL, Jenkins AJ, et al. Insulin pump basal adjustment for exercise in type 1 diabetes: a randomised crossover study. Diabetologia. 2016;59:1636–44. Available from: https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-016-3981-9.
15. Thabit H, Leelarathna L. Basal insulin delivery reduction for exercise in type 1 diabetes: finding the sweet spot. Diabetologia [Internet]. Diabetologia. 2016;59(8):1628–31. Available from: https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-016-4010-8.
16. Hussain SS, Oliver N (Endocrinologist). Insulin pumps and continuous glucose monitoring made easy.
17. American Diabetes Association AD. Standards of medical care in diabetes – 2014. Diabetes Care [Internet]. American Diabetes Association; 2014 [cited 2017 Nov 8];37 Suppl 1(Supplement 1):S14–80. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24357209.
18. Buchanan TA, Metzger BE, Freinkel N. Accelerated starvation in late pregnancy: a comparison between obese women with and without gestational diabetes mellitus. Am J Obstet Gynecol [Internet]. 1990 [cited 2017 Nov 8];162(4):1015–20. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2327442.
19. Bode BW, Steed RD, Schleusener DS, Strange P. Switch to multiple daily injections with insulin glargine and insulin lispro from continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion with insulin lispro: a randomized, open-label study using a continuous glucose monitoring system. Endocr Pract [Internet]. 2005;11(3):157–64. Available from: http://view.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16239201.
20. Battelino T, Conget I, Olsen B, Schütz-Fuhrmann I, Hommel E, Hoogma R, et al. The use and efficacy of continuous glucose monitoring in type 1 diabetes treated with insulin pump therapy: a randomised controlled trial. Diabetologia. 2012;55:3155–62.
21. Danne T, Tsioli C, Kordonouri O, Blaesig S, Remus K, Roy A, et al. The PILGRIM Study: in silico modeling of a predictive low glucose management system and feasibility in youth with type 1 diabetes during exercise. Diabetes Technol Ther [Internet]. 2014 [cited 2017 Nov 8];16(6):338–47. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24447074.
22. Russell SJ, El-Khatib FH, Nathan DM, Magyar KL, Jiang J, Damiano ER. Blood glucose control in type 1 diabetes with a bihormonal bionic endocrine pancreas. diabetes care [Internet]. 2012 [cited 2017 Nov 8];35(11):2148–55. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22923666.
23. El-Khatib FH, Russell SJ, Magyar KL, Sinha M, McKeon K, Nathan DM, et al. Autonomous and continuous adaptation of a bihormonal bionic pancreas in adults and adolescents with type 1 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab [Internet]. 2014 [cited 2017 Nov 8];99(5):1701–11. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24483160.
24. Russell SJ, El-Khatib FH, Sinha M, Magyar KL, McKeon K, Goergen LG, et al. Outpatient glycemic control with a bionic pancreas in type 1 diabetes. N Engl J Med [Internet]. 2014 [cited 2017 Nov 8];371(4):313–25. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24931572.
25. Russell SJ, Hillard MA, Balliro C, Magyar KL, Selagamsetty R, Sinha M, et al. Day and night glycaemic control with a bionic pancreas versus conventional insulin pump therapy in preadolescent children with type 1 diabetes: a randomised crossover trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol [Internet]. 2016 [cited 2017 Nov 8];4(3):233–43. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26850709.
26. El-Khatib FH, Balliro C, Hillard MA, Magyar KL, Ekhlaspour L, Sinha M, et al. Home use of a bihormonal bionic pancreas versus insulin pump therapy in adults with type 1 diabetes: a multicentre randomised crossover trial. Lancet [Internet]. 2017 [cited 2017 Nov 8];389(10067):369–80. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28007348.
27. Farrington C. Hacking diabetes: DIY artificial pancreas systems. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol [Internet]. Elsevier; 2017 May 1 [cited 2017 Nov 8];5(5):332. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27913173.
28. Real-World Use of Open Source Artificial Pancreas Systems – Poster Presented at American Diabetes Association Scientific Sessions – OpenAPS.org [Internet]. [cited 2017 Nov 8]. Available from: https://openaps.org/2016/06/11/real-world-use-of-open-source-artificial-pancreas-systems-poster-presented-at-american-diabetes-association-scientific-sessions/.

Suggested Additional Reading

AACE 2014 – [1].
Insulin pumps and CGM made easy – [16].
Medtronic Protocol – [4].
Peters AL. Endocrine Society Guidelines 2016 [3].
Wolpert H. Smart Pumping – [5]

Part VII

Cardiovascular Risk Factors

Diabetes and Hypertension

37

D. Khangura, J. Hong, R. Kurukulasuriya, and James R. Sowers

Chapter Objectives

- To explore the contemporary understanding of the pathophysiology of HTN complicating diabetes
- To review large-scale clinical trials assessing HTN treatment goals and outcomes in diabetes
- To identify the indications for ambulatory BP monitoring
- To interpret HTN guidelines from different organizations
- To review glycemic-lowering drugs that can reduce BP

Introduction

According to the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2014 National Diabetes Statistics Report, 71% of patients over the age of 18 diagnosed with diabetes mellitus (DM) also have hypertension (HTN). DM has been diagnosed in 9.3% or 29.1 million people in the United States. However, this is an underestimate due to under diagnosis of DM. Thus a significant portion of the population has both DM and HTN, which predisposes them to cardiovascular disease (CVD) and chronic renal disease (CRD) [1]. In patients with DM and HTN, CVD is the key cause of premature morbidity and mortality and is the greatest contributor to healthcare costs. Therefore, the importance of screening for HTN is paramount and should be done at every routine office visit [2]. Indeed, the 2014 Canadian HTN guidelines also recommend that newly diagnosed patients with HTN be screened for diabetes using a fasting glucose and/or hemoglobin A1c. In the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention National Diabetes Statistics Report, HTN was defined as BP (BP) greater than or equal to 140/90 mmHg or taking prescription medications for treatment of HTN [3]. Independent of other CVD risk factors, HTN shows a significant increase in CVD that is incremental with each 20 mmHg rise of systolic BP and 10 mmHg rise of diastolic BP across the range of 115/75 to 185/115 mmHg. Patients with DM typically have additional risk factors apart from DM itself such as dyslipidemia, obesity, physical inactivity, and microalbuminuria which further elevate CVD risk [4].

Pathophysiology

The pathophysiology of HTN in DM is multifactorial, involving multiple organ systems, metabolic signaling pathways, and environmental and genetic factors. Adipose tissue in particular, when located disproportionately in the abdomen (visceral adiposity), is associated with insulin resistance, HTN, hyperglycemia, and a pro-inflammatory state [4]. Bioactive molecules and hormones referred to as adipokines have altered secretion in obesity which contributes to obesity-related insulin resistance and HTN. Angiotensinogen, aldosterone-stimulating factor, dipeptidyl peptidase, leptin, adiponectin, resistin, tumor necrosis factor (TNF), interleukin 6, and complement-C1q TNF-related protein 1 (CTRP1) are examples of such pro-inflammatory adipokines that are increased with increased visceral adiposity [5, 6].

Insulin resistance is strongly associated with endothelial dysfunction, which results in impaired vascular relaxation and arterial stiffness, which is a biomarker for increased CVD. Impaired insulin metabolic signaling in insulin-resistant states such as obesity and type 2 DM is characterized by impaired serine phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrate-1 (IRS-1) and downstream phosphoinositide 3-kinase and protein kinase B activation leading to reduced endothelial nitric oxide (NO) synthase activation and NO bioavailability in the vasculature. In insulin resistance there is no impairment of insulin growth factor signaling with activation of extracel-

D. Khangura · J. Hong · R. Kurukulasuriya · J. R. Sowers (✉)
Diabetes and Cardiovascular Center, Department of Medicine and Physiology, University of Missouri, Columbia, MO, USA

Harry S Truman VA Hospital, Columbia, MO, USA
e-mail: sowersj@health.missouri.edu

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_37

lular signal-regulated kinase (ERK1/2) and upregulation of endothelin-1, which contributes to increased vascular contraction and maladaptive growth and remodeling [5, 6].

The systemic and tissue renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS) is often inappropriately activated in insulin-resistant states. In part, this is related to increased angiotensin II (Ang II) and aldosterone production by omental adipose tissue. Ang II and aldosterone may also inhibit insulin metabolic signaling in endothelial cells and vascular smooth muscle cells, as well as classical insulin-sensitive tissues such as skeletal muscle, adipose, and liver tissue. There is increasing evidence that the inappropriate activation of RAAS is a major contributor to progression of CVD and chronic kidney disease (CKD) as it relates to endothelial dysfunction and arterial stiffness in insulin-resistant states [7].

Angiotensinogen and Ang II are produced in increased amounts in adipose tissue under oxidative stress and chronic low-grade inflammation. CTRP1 in rodent models of obesity and insulin resistance promotes the production of aldosterone [5]. Ang II and aldosterone activate nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase, a major source of reactive oxygen species, which promotes oxidative stress and impaired NO-mediated vasodilation. Furthermore, aldosterone has been shown to increase epithelial sodium channel (eNaC) expression on the endothelial cell surface, thereby promoting endothelial cell cytoskeleton cortical stiffness. Increased uric acid, as a result of consumption of diets rich in fructose, also appears to contribute to immune and inflammatory responses leading to RAAS activation, endothelial dysfunction, and increased vascular stiffness [5, 7].

At the level of the nephron, the sodium-glucose cotransporter-2 (SGLT2) is a low-affinity, high-capacity transporter that is primarily responsible for plasma glucose reabsorption in the proximal convoluted tubule. In DM, glucose reabsorption is increased due to increased expression of SGLT2 associated with glomerular hyperfiltration causing glucose toxicity along with sodium reabsorption and retention [6]. Hyperinsulinemia may also cause sodium retention via increased expression of sodium transporters like eNaC in the distal nephron and increased activation of the sodium hydrogen exchanger in the proximal tubule (Fig. 37.1) [5].

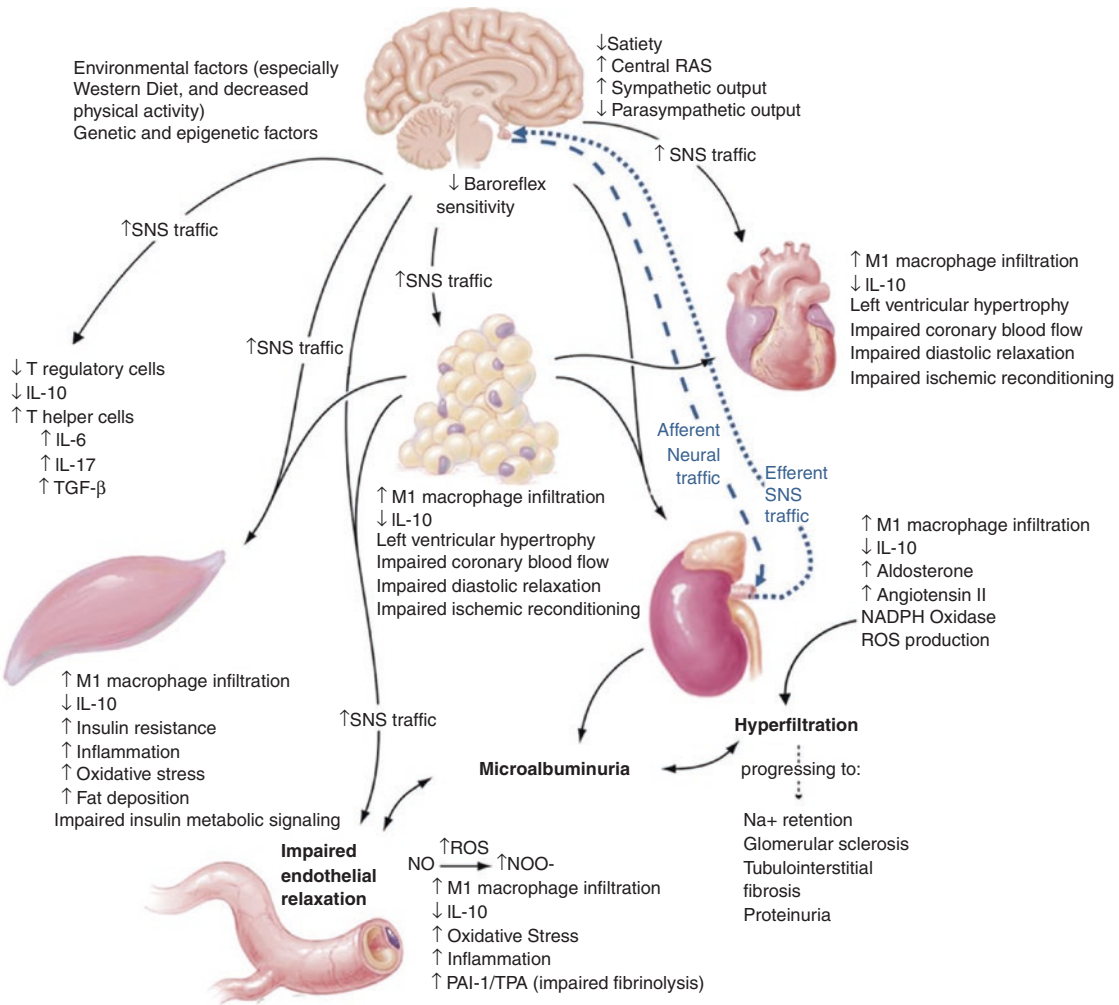


Fig. 37.1 Systemic and metabolic factors that promote coexistent diabetes mellitus, hypertension, and cardiovascular and chronic kidney disease. (Used with permission from Sowers [64])

Large-Scale Trials Assessing HTN

- UK prospective diabetes study (UKPDS)
- Hypertension optimal treatment (HOT)
- The action in diabetes and vascular disease: PreterAx and DiamicroN MR controlled evaluation (ADVANCE)
- Appropriate blood pressure control in diabetes (ABCD)
- Systolic hypertension in Europe (Syst-Eur)
- The action to control cardiovascular risk in diabetes (ACCORD)
- The international verapamil SR–Trandolapril (INVEST)
- The ongoing Telmisartan alone and in combination with Ramipril global endpoint trial (ONTARGET)
- Veterans affairs diabetes trial (VADT)
- Systolic hypertension in the elderly program (SHEP)
- Systolic blood Pressure intervention trial (SPRINT)

Review of the Evidence

Evidence of the management of HTN in diabetic patients was sparse prior to the Hypertension in Diabetes Study (HDS) in 1998. Since then there have been many large-scale trials that have examined BP control and CVD outcomes. The UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) aimed to study the intensity of BP control and its effect on clinical outcomes in a subset of the group. Comparisons were made of intensive control with a goal of <150/85 mmHg versus less intensive control with a goal of <180/105 mmHg. The median follow-up was 8.4 years, mean BP in the intensive group was 144/82 mmHg compared to 154/87 mmHg in the less intensive group. A significant reduction in diabetes-related death, stroke, heart failure, and microvascular disease such as retinopathy was seen in the intensive group [8]. The ADVANCE study showed that reducing systolic BP by 5.6 mmHg and diastolic BP by 2.2 mmHg compared to placebo conferred a risk reduction of 8% for macrovascular events, 9% for microvascular events, and 18% for CVD death. The intervention in this study was adding a fixed dose perindopril/indapamide to existing standard therapy. The ABCD study treated DM patients with HTN and high-normal BP with goal systolic BP of <130 mmHg. The HTN group's mean BP was 132 mmHg, and the high-normal group achieved a mean BP of 128 mmHg. The HTN group had reduced total mortality, and the high-normal group had reduced incidence of stroke and decreased progression of nephropathy. The Syst-Eur study showed a decrease in overall mortality and morbidity related to CVD events in diabetic and nondiabetic populations by lowering systolic BP [9].

The ACCORD study compared intensive BP control (<120 mmHg systolic) versus standard BP control (<140 mmHg systolic) and found no statistically significant difference in CVD but did see a reduction in stroke in the intensive group. However, the intensive group was associated with increased risk of hypotension, bradycardia, hyperkalemia, and renal impairment [10]. After observational analysis, the INVEST study showed that the group with goal systolic BP <130 mmHg compared to goal of 130–139 mmHg had marginally increased all-cause mortality and the group with systolic BP of <110 mmHg had significant increase in all-cause mortality (hazard ratio 2.18) [11]. The ONTARGET study examined CVD risk reduction with particular attention to baseline BP. They found significant reduction in CVD with a baseline systolic BP >140 mmHg [12], less reduction if baseline was <130 mmHg, but continued benefit for stroke reduction with lower baseline BP. The VADT study along with the ONTARGET study showed an increased risk of myocardial infarction and CVD events with low diastolic BP. In the VADT study group, diastolic BP was <70 mmHg with a systolic BP 130–139 mmHg [13]. The SPRINT trial aimed for a target systolic BP of 120 mmHg in adults 50 years of age or older with HTN and saw a significant reduction in CVD. This trial showed an associated 33% reduction of heart attack, heart failure, and stroke and a 25% reduction of death compared to a target systolic BP of 140 mmHg. Diabetic patients were excluded from this trial [14]. It is likely that the SPRINT data is extractable to diabetic patients.

Guidelines and BP Targets

The most recent evidence-based guidelines for the treatment of HTN in adults were released by the panel members from the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High BP (JNC 8) in 2014. They based their recommendations on evidence from randomized control trials (RCT), expert opinion, and the quality of evidence, which differed from the JNC 7 panel that included observational trials. JNC 8 recommends initiating pharmacological therapy to lower BP to a goal of <140/90 mmHg in patients age >18 with DM. The ACCORD-BP study supported this lower systolic BP goal of <140 mmHg in the diabetic population compared to <150 mmHg in the nondiabetic population. Major trials such as Syst-Eur, UKPDS, and SHEP studies supported the conclusion that treatment to a systolic BP of <150 mmHg lowers mortality and improves CVD and cerebrovascular health outcomes. The HOT trial found that a diastolic BP reduced to <80 mmHg was associated with a reduction in major cardiovascular events when compared to <90 mmHg and <85 mmHg by 51% and 24%, respectively. However, JNC 8 determined that this study was not of sufficient quality to recommend a lower diastolic goal, as it was a post hoc analysis of a small subgroup of the study population [9]. The European Society of Hypertension (ESH) and European Society of Cardiology (ESC) recommend initiation

of antihypertensive medication with diabetic patients if systolic BP is >160 mmHg systolic. They strongly recommend maintenance of a systolic BP goal of <140 mmHg when treating DM patients with HTN. However, it is mentioned that it is not clear how far below 140 mmHg patients BP should be, and a diastolic goal of between 80 and 85 mmHg is recommended [15]. The evidence for a BP goal of 135/80 mmHg was reviewed in our editorial [16].

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) 2016 guidelines recommend hypertensive diabetics be treated to a goal of <140/90 mmHg. However, for certain individuals, particularly younger patients, a lower goal of <130/80 is appropriate if it can be achieved without undue treatment burden [2]. The American Association of Clinical Endocrinology (AACE) and American College of Endocrinology (ACE), in their 2015 clinical practice guidelines, recommend a goal of approximately 130/80 mmHg in pre-DM and DM patients with HTN. They also indicate that the goal should be individualized based on patient age, duration of disease, and comorbidities. If patients have complex comorbidities, are frail, or experience adverse effects of medications, a more relaxed goal is supported. If this can be achieved safely without adverse medication effects, a more intensive goal of 120/80 can be used [17].

The appropriate target goal for BP in the diabetic population has been the subject of much debate, as control is related to reduction in CVD and kidney disease events. There have been many large-scale trials with discrepant results, which have led to confusion. The JNC 7 advocated a target of 130/80 mmHg; however, the trials that used these parameters rarely achieved the target systolic BP and were limited to only a few studies. Consideration of more recent trials such as SPRINT, post hoc analysis of ACCORD, and meta-analysis suggests that a more aggressive systolic BP target of <130 mmHg may be more appropriate than the systolic target of 140 mmHg that was recommended by JNC 8. Wu et al. recently analyzed a large Chinese cohort of 101,510 individuals with data from 2006 to 2014. The study involved patients with established DM and excluded those who had a BP >140/90 mmHg, were taking antihypertensives, were previously diagnosed with HTN, or had baseline CVD or cancer, in an effort to reduce confounding of mortality outcomes. This left them with 2311 diabetic, normotensive patients whom they examined whether BP of <120/80 mmHg had increased mortality. Their data suggested an increase in CVD events in patients with BP <120/80 mmHg. It is important to note that in this study the participants were predominantly male and had early-stage DM without complications, whereas the ACCORD and SPRINT trials included high-risk hypertensive patients treated to a goal. Based on the collective data from all of the above trials, it appears that there may be a sweet spot to target between 120 and 135 mmHg systolic BP and that a more aggressive target of <120/80 mmHg may be considered for select diabetic patients at the highest risk for stroke [16]. An individual patient tolerance of medications and comorbidities must be considered when managing HTN.

Lifestyle Modification

Approach to weight loss and maintenance based on National Institutes of Health (NIH) clinical guidelines for treatment of obesity [18, 19]:

- Low calorie diet (800–1200 kcal/day) – 8% weight loss over 6 months, reduces abdominal fat
- Very low calorie diet (250–800 kcal/day) – Similar long-term weight loss, greater initial weight loss compared to low calorie diet
- Aerobic exercises – Modest weight loss, improve cardiorespiratory fitness, may reduce abdominal fat
- Physical activity + reduced caloric intake – Greater weight loss than either alone
- Add behavioral therapy to weight loss approach – Additional short-term benefits
- Initial weight loss goal – 10% reduction from baseline weight
- Target weight loss – 1–2 pounds/week for 6 months
- Start with moderate physical activity – 30–45 minutes at least 3–5 days/week
- Bariatric surgery – BMI >40 kg/m^2 or >35 kg/m^2 with high-risk obesity-related morbidity and failed less invasive measures

The most important therapy whether initial or in combination with pharmacotherapy is lifestyle modification. This involves reduced dietary sodium intake (<2 g/day), weight loss, physical activity, and moderation of alcohol intake. In the NIH-funded Look AHEAD (Action for Health in Diabetes) trial, the impact of intensive lifestyle modification (ILI) including diet, physical activity, and behavioral modification on adults with type 2 DM was evaluated [20]. They compared their intervention to that of usual care of DM using diabetes support and education. At 1 year, the ILI group lost 8.6% of their initial body weight compared to 0.7%, decreased mean hemoglobin A1c −0.64 compared to −0.14, decreased systolic BP −6.8 mmHg compared to −2.8 mmHg, and had a larger decrease in metabolic syndrome 93.6 to 78.9% compared to 94.4 to 87.3%, all of which were statistically significant [21].

Evidence demonstrates that excess dietary consumption of sodium impacts not only one's BP but also a number of other BP-independent effects. Sodium can affect multiple organ systems in the body, including neurologic, cardiac, renal, and vascular. Recent studies have shown that high sodium intake is also associated with increased glucocorti-

coid production, insulin resistance, and metabolic syndrome [22]. In many countries, public health recommendations include sodium restriction to less than 5–6 g/day. However, the Cochrane systemic review and multi-study meta-analysis demonstrated that a further reduction in sodium will lower BP even further [23]. The DASH-Sodium study, a multicenter, 14-week randomized feeding trial, followed three different dietary intakes of sodium for 1 month: (3.3 g, 2.4 g, and 1.5 g). The greatest BP drop was noticeable within the group with the greatest sodium restriction [24]. The US Department of Agriculture and Department of Health and Human Services currently recommend consumption of 2.3 g or less of sodium per day in adults.

In addition to sodium restriction, diet modification can have a positive impact on not only BP but also in the treatment of obesity. Two specific diets that have shown to be particularly effective are the Dietary Approaches to Stop HTN (DASH) diet and the Mediterranean diet. The DASH diet is based on the premise of a diet high in whole grains, fish, poultry, fruits, vegetables, low-fat dairy products, and reduced saturated and total fats. In essence, the diet is rich in potassium, magnesium, calcium, protein, and fiber. In the original DASH studies, carbohydrates supplied 55% of calories, total fats 27% of calories, proteins 18%, and saturated fats 6% [25]. The diet should consist of at least 6–8 daily servings of grains, less than 6 servings of lean meats (poultry and fish), 4–5 daily servings of fruits and vegetables, 2–3 servings of low-fat milk products and fats and oils, and 5 or less servings per week of sweets, nuts, seeds, and legumes [26].

The first DASH feeding trials resulted in participants having lower BP and LDL cholesterol endpoints with statistical significance. Systolic BP was reduced on average by 11.4 mmHg ($P < 0.001$), and diastolic BP was reduced on average by 5.5 mmHg ($P < 0.001$). Seventy percent of participants had normal BP (goal SBP <140 and DBP <90 mmHg) at the end of the trial compared to 23% on the control diet [27]. Compared to controls, the DASH diet also reduced the estimated 10-year CVD risk by 18%. The relative risk ratio compared to controls at 8 weeks with baseline 10-year CVD risk was 0.82 (95% CI, 0.75–0.90, $P < 0.001$). In other studies, the DASH diet also decreased pulse wave velocity (PWV) over time ($p = 0.014$) reaching significance after 2 weeks ($p = 0.026$) [28]. Additional information on PWV will be provided later on in this chapter.

The Mediterranean diet embodies the Mediterranean culture and lifestyle. Although there are now many variants of this diet, the traditional premise comprises consumption of low amounts of saturated fats, meat, and meat products; high amounts of olive oil, fruits, vegetables, cereals, legumes, and nuts; and moderate amounts of fish and dairy products and wine in moderation [29]. Unlike the DASH diet, the Mediterranean diet has an increased consumption of the total amount of fats, up to 40% of caloric intake, with less than 7–8% of caloric intake consisting of saturated fats [30]. In the Greek European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC) prospective cohort study, lower consumption of meat and meat products, higher consumption of vegetables and fruits, and minimization of saturated fats with more monounsaturated fats were considered the most beneficial with a higher predictive score of lower mortality [31]. In addition to diet, regular physical activity and culture-specific psychosocial support played an integral part in the Mediterranean diet. Meals were often consumed with others with frequent rest after meals that presumably reduced overall stress. In addition, mealtime interactions can also be correlated with dietary adherence [32] (Fig. 37.2).

The Mediterranean diet is associated with reduced all-cause mortality and reduced cardiovascular mortality in addition to improved health. A systematic review of 2824 studies with 8 meta-analyses and 5 RCTs was done in 2015 that compared the Mediterranean diet to a control diet in patients with DM2 and prediabetic states. These studies demonstrated remission of metabolic syndrome, favorable effects on body weight, total and LDL cholesterol, and overall reduced risk of future diabetes by 19–23% [33]. The Prevencion con Dieta Mediterranea trial (PREDIMED) was a parallel-group, multicenter, randomized trial that studied primary cardiovascular prevention when comparing Mediterranean diets to a low-fat control diet. Although there was not a noted effect on all-cause mortality, results were suggestive of a protective effect with noted unadjusted hazard ratios of 0.7 ($p = 0.015$) when compared to the control diet. There was an absolute risk reduction in approximately 3 major cardiovascular events per 1000 person-years [34].

Combining the Mediterranean diet with a healthy lifestyle, avoidance of tobacco products and regular exercise have shown to have a positive outcome with reduced mortality rate. The Healthy Ageing Longitudinal study in Europe (HALE) project was conducted between 1988 and 2000 that showed a 50% lower rate of all-cause and cause-specific mortality in individuals aged 70–90 years of age who adhered to the Mediterranean diet with a heathy lifestyle [35]. In the ENCORE study, combining the DASH diet with weight management resulted in larger BP reductions with improved secondary outcomes in vascular and autonomic function and reduced left ventricular mass. Up to 12.5 mmHg systolic and 5.9 mmHg diastolic reduction in BP was observed in the DASH diet combined with a behavioral weight management program [36].

Aerobic exercise is not only effective in weight loss but also thought to lower BP independent of weight loss [37]. According to the recommendations from American College of Sports Medicine and American Heart Association, all healthy adults should engage in moderate-intensity aerobic physical exercise for minimum of 30 minutes for 5 days per week, vigorous-intensity activity minimum of 20 minutes for 3 days per week, or combination of moderate- and vigorous-

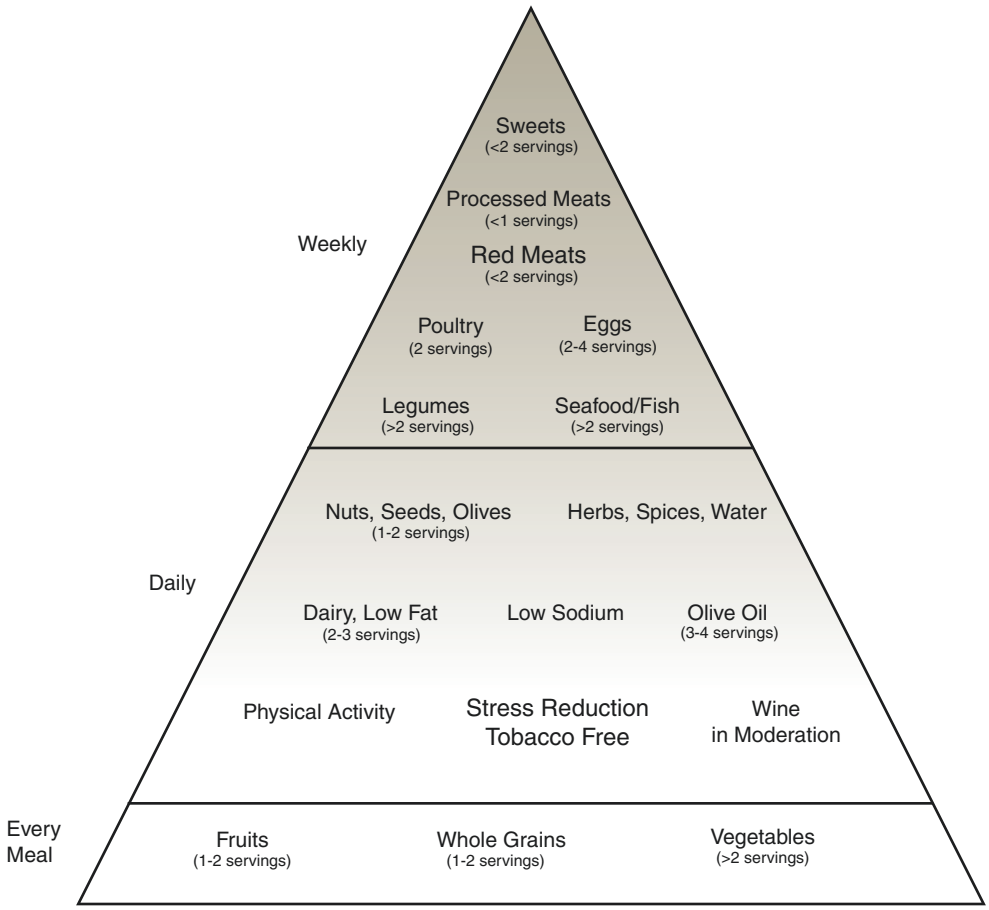


Fig. 37.2 Mediterranean diet pyramid

intensity activity [38]. Moderate-intensity physical activity should target a heart rate of 50–70% of his or her maximum heart rate (MHR). The MHR (calculated as 220 minus your age) is the upper limit of what your cardiovascular system can handle during exercise. For example, a 40-year-old patient should sustain heart rate between 90 and 126 for 30 minutes (0.5 or 0.7 × [220–40]). Vigorous-intensity physical activity should target 70–85% of his or her MHR. However, a 2011 review suggests that the MHR prediction in adults that are overweight or obese can be more accurately determined using a MHR equation: 208–0.7 × age [39]. Per the American College of Sports Medicine Position Stand, a minimum of 150 minutes of moderate-intensity activity per week with an energy deficit of 500–1000 kcal per day is recommended for continued weight loss. With a structured and supervised exercise program, weight loss can be maximized [40].

There are multiple ways in which lifestyle modification can be implemented; however, the common ingredient is significant determination and effort on the part of the patient with the support of a multidisciplinary team. Not only is it effective, as was evidenced by the Look AHEAD trial, but it could also reduce financial burden and adverse events as a result of fewer medications needed for treatment. At 9.6 years of follow-up, the ILI group used less insulin, antihypertensives, and statins compared to the control group [21].

DM Medications

Diabetes medication classes showing decreased BP:

- Thiazolidinedione
- Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) receptor agonist
- Dipeptidyl diphosphatase 4 (DPP4) inhibitor
- SGLT2 inhibitor

The diabetic medication that has the most significant effect on BP is exenatide, a GLP-1 receptor agonist [41]. When studied in 120 patients, after 52 weeks there was a decrease in BP with a greater effect observed when the baseline BP was higher. In patients with a baseline systolic BP >130 mmHg, there was a reduction of 11.4 mmHg in systolic BP and a reduction of 3.6 mmHg in diastolic BP. In patients with a mean BP of 128/78, there was a reduction of 6.2 mmHg in systolic BP and a reduction of 2.8 mmHg in diastolic BP. These reductions were independent of both weight loss and medication changes. Exenatide has the benefit of once

weekly dosing and causes weight loss in a dose-dependent fashion. It has been shown to cause weight loss in 75% of patients at 30 weeks with average loss of 4 kg, and like its effect on BP, greater effect is seen with patients with a higher BMI (>30 kg/m2) at baseline [42]. Exenatide is thought to have both natriuretic and vasodilator properties [43, 44]. In a case series of 12 patients who took exenatide over a 12-week period, noticeable increases in plasma concentrations of vasodilators, cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP), cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), and atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) while suppressing the RAAS suggest vasodilator and natriuretic properties [45]. Further evidence suggests that exenatide may also have diuretic and renal vasodilator effects.

Pioglitazone, a thiazolidinedione, was studied in an observational study of 1170 patients with diabetes mellitus. After 20 weeks, a decrease in systolic BP from 141.1 to 137 mmHg and a diastolic BP from 82.7 to 80 mmHg was seen [46]. Thiazolidinedione's mechanism of action is through activation of peroxisome proliferator-activated nuclear receptors (primarily PPARγ receptor) and subsequent upregulation of genes decreasing insulin resistance. Studies have shown that lowering the expression of PPARγ receptors increased BP [47]. Some evidence suggests vasodilatory effects through inhibition of arginine vasopressin and norepinephrine responses and direct vascular effect through inhibition of calcium uptake of vascular smooth muscle [48, 49].

The DPP4 inhibitors, in addition to hyperglycemic control, have been shown to have a modest effect on BP, as well as a favorable effect on atherosclerosis, stroke, and CVD. Sitagliptin, a DPP4 inhibitor, was used in a small study and showed a statistically significant reduction of −2.0 mmHg to −2.2 mmHg in systolic BP and −1.6 mmHg to −1.8 mmHg in diastolic BP [50]. One proposed mechanism includes upregulation of GLP-1, increasing *no* bioavailability therefore improving overall endothelial function in HTN [51, 52].

In a large-scale multicenter RCT treatment with an SGLT-2 inhibitor, empagliflozin was associated with small reductions in systolic/diastolic BP, weight, waist circumference, and uric acid levels compared to placebo. Results also indicated reduced risk of death from CVD, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke, and death from all causes [53]. Additional study on a larger scale will help further characterize the effects of these medications on BP and CVD.

Antihypertensive Medications

Medication classes used to treat HTN:

- ACEI (ACE inhibitor)
- ARB (angiotensin receptor blocker)
- CCB (calcium channel blocker)
- Diuretics
- Alpha−/beta-adrenergic blockers
- Beta-adrenergic blockers
- Alpha-blockers
- Alpha-2 agonists
- Mineralocorticoid receptor (MR) blockers
- Vasodilators

When initiating pharmacotherapy for the treatment of HTN, it is important to consider patient characteristics, medication tolerability, and desirable protective effects. The preferred initial medication according to the ADA and AACE/ACE is a RAAS blocker (ACEI or ARB) in patients with DM due to the beneficial effect on cardiovascular outcomes. If BP is not controlled, other classes of medications should be added until goal BP is obtained [4]. Evidence including systematic reviews and meta-analysis has shown that RAAS blockers are comparable to other classes of medications in efficacy for treatment of HTN but also reduce the risk of microalbuminuria and creatinine doubling. This suggests that RAAS blockers may be preferred to other antihypertensive agents, as it is well-documented that both HTN and DM are associated with the development of CKD [54, 55]. The combination of an ACEI and ARB is not recommended, as they were associated with increased risk of hypotension, syncope, and renal failure in ONTARGET [56]. In the JNC 8 guidelines, there was no preference given to a particular agent, and it was recommended that a thiazide-type diuretic, CCB, ACEI, or ARB be used as the initial antihypertensive medication. These guidelines were derived solely from RTCs, which are considered the gold standard for evidence-based medicine [9].

Amlodipine, a CCB, has been compared to other medications in large-scale clinical trials in patients with DM and HTN. The Avoiding Cardiovascular Events Through Combination Therapy in Patients Living with Systolic Hypertension (ACCOMPLISH) trial compared the combination of benazepril/amlodipine to benazepril/hydrochlorothiazide and found a 21% relative risk reduction in cardiovascular events with the amlodipine-containing combination. The Anglo-Scandinavian Cardiac Outcomes Trial (ASCOT) found a 14% reduction in cardiovascular events with amlodipine compared to atenolol. CCBs are well tolerated, do not have unfavorable effects on metabolism, and may be the best medication to add to a RAAS blocker if combination therapy is required to reach BP goals in the diabetic population [56].

Diuretics, in particular the thiazide-type diuretics, are a common first choice for the treatment of HTN; however there are some disadvantages to their use in the diabetic population. They can cause metabolic derangements such as hyperuricemia, dyslipidemia, insulin resistance, and hyperglycemia. Despite these side effects, diuretics have been shown to be as effective as CCBs and ACEIs in decreasing

the risk of CVD events and have a significant role in the treatment of HTN in DM [56].

Beta-blockers have been associated with metabolic derangements including dyslipidemia, increased insulin resistance, and weight gain and can mask hypoglycemia symptoms. Like diuretics, beta-blockers have a significant role in the treatment of HTN in DM, particularly when patients have had a previous myocardial infarction, rhythm disorder, or heart failure. The Glycemic Effects in Diabetes Mellitus: Carvedilol-Metoprolol Comparison in Hypertensives (GEMINI) trial studied patients already on a RAAS-blocking agent. Results suggested that if a beta-blocker is indicated, carvedilol might be superior to metoprolol as it was not associated with the increase in hemoglobin A1c or dyslipidemia that was seen with metoprolol [56, 57].

Combination therapy is often necessary, and when compared to monotherapy, regardless of the baseline BP, it may lead to more patients achieving BP goals. In the UKPDS study, three or more medications were required to achieve goals in up to one third of patients [58]. It was the recommendation of the JNC 7 that if BP was >20 systolic and 10 mmHg diastolic above goal that combination therapy be initiated [59]. When patients are not at goal on optimal doses of three antihypertensive agents including a diuretic, it is referred to as resistant HTN. There is a hypothesis that this occurs due to excess sodium retention. Thus, additional diuretic action by adding a mineralocorticoid receptor (MR) blocker such as spironolactone may be beneficial. A study showed that spironolactone was superior to placebo, doxazosin, and bisoprolol in patients with resistant HTN; however this was not done in a solely diabetic population, and patients with CKD with a GFR <45 ml/min were excluded. MR blockers should be used cautiously, as they can lead to hyperkalemia, especially in the DM population, in which CKD is more common [60]. Additional antihypertensive medication classes can be added if not at goal; however, secondary causes of HTN should be excluded, and referral to a HTN specialist should be considered in resistant cases (Fig. 37.3).

Other Monitoring Modalities

Screening and monitoring of treatment for HTN have traditionally been based on evaluation in the healthcare setting. Out-of-office BP monitoring has been used in European guidelines; as of October 2015, the US Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) has endorsed its use for diagnosis and management of HTN. Ambulatory BP monitoring (ABPM) involves placement of a BP cuff on the non-dominant arm that measures BP over the course of a 24-hour period by taking measurements every 15–30 minutes. Compared to in-office BP measurement, ABPM is of higher prognostic value for CKD, CVD, and mortality risks [61].

Suspected white coat HTN, evaluation of resistant HTN, episodic HTN, suspected episodes of hypotension, and evaluation of treatment efficacy are indications for ABPM. Patients with DM who have BP excursions on 24-hour monitoring are at increased risk of complications even before the diagnosis of HTN. Both type 1 DM and type 2 DM in comparison with controls without DM have been found to have higher mean BP values. These elevated means were associated with higher rates of nephropathy, albuminuria, retinopathy, and increased left ventricular mass. BP normally has a physiologic circadian rhythm in which BP drops >10% during the night relative to daytime BP. Patients in which BP decreases by <10% are said to have a non-dipping pattern, which was observed to be more prevalent in those with DM. This non-dipping pattern has been associated with cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy, its contribution to progression of chronic DM complications however is more controversial. Studies thus far have shown some mixed results and may be more relevant and add information to other BP values when related to outcomes with retinopathy. Hyperglycemia has exhibited a role in normal nocturnal BP fall, likely related to its effect on modifying circulating plasma volume, interfering with blood flow distribution and renal hemodynamics. Decreased BP means and increased BP fall during the night have been seen after 1 week of improved glycemic control in type 1 DM. Patients with normal office BP measurements (<140/90 mmHg) with elevated ABPM measurements (>135/85 mmHg) are referred to as having masked HTN. Type 2 DM patients have been shown to have a higher prevalence of masked HTN at 30% versus 10–20% in those without DM. Masked HTN has been associated with increased cardiovascular risk and when studied in type 2 DM patients were associated with albuminuria and increased left ventricular wall thickness. ABPM appears to add significant information that can be used in risk stratification in the DM population and should be utilized more frequently. However, additional clinical study is needed to further explore the parameters obtained with ABPM and their effects on the complications of DM and to develop treatment strategies to benefit such patients [62].

PWV is a noninvasive measure of arterial stiffness with carotid-femoral PWV considered the reference standard measurement of aortic stiffness. It is not used clinically in the United States; however it is suggested in Europe by expert consensus that carotid-femoral PWV greater than 10 m/s is a cardiovascular risk factor for middle-aged adults with HTN. Studies have shown an association between DM and aortic stiffness measured by PWV, which did not vary by gender but was significantly stronger in Caucasians as compared to African-Americans. In more advanced DM, present for more than 10 years, albuminuria and elevated glycosylated hemoglobin were all associated with higher aortic stiff-

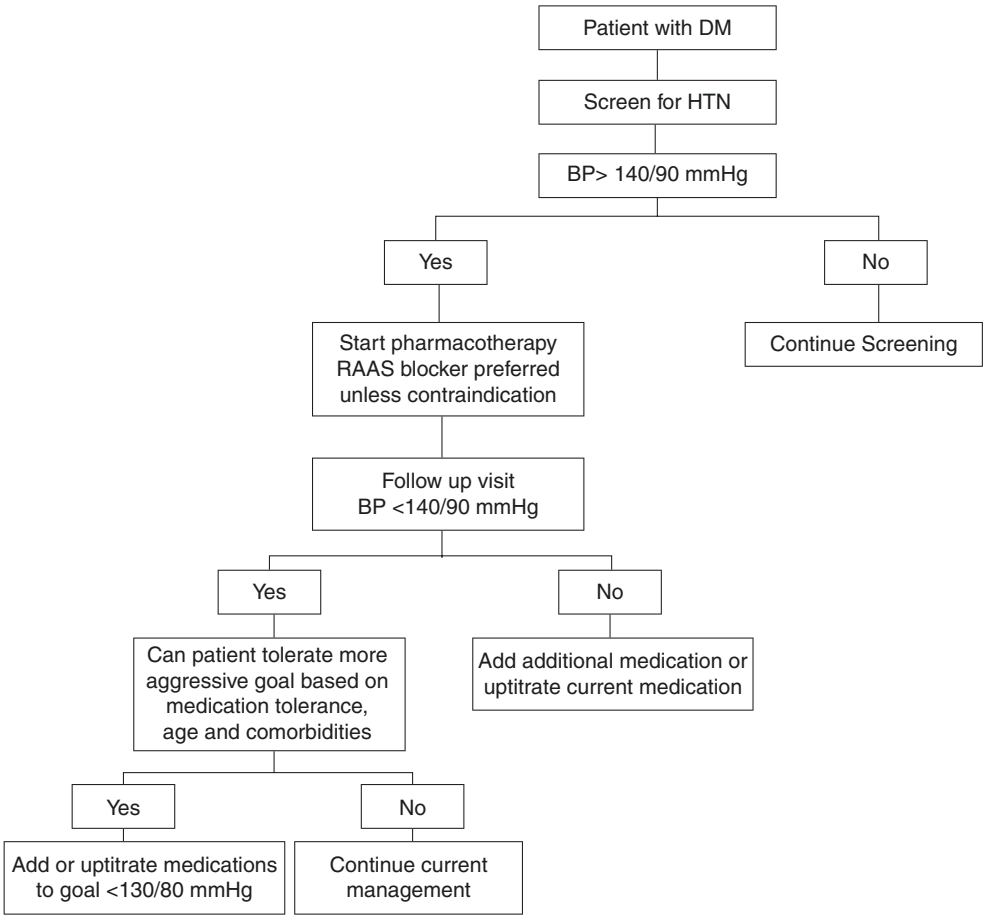


Fig. 37.3 Flowchart for the treatment of HTN in DM

ness measured by PWV. This suggests that PWV measurement may contribute to the currently available methods to risk stratify patients who have more risk of developing cardiovascular events and mortality related to complications of DM. However, further clinical studies are needed to help delineate how this modality for the measurement of arterial stiffness can specifically be used in the diabetic population and if treatment targeting arterial stiffness can improve outcomes [63].

Future Considerations

There should be more awareness about HTN complicating diabetes. Healthcare systems should have more aggressive screening to diagnose these conditions. Every new hypertensive patient should be screened for diabetes. Lifestyle modifications are the cornerstone for management of these two interrelated medical conditions and should be emphasized at a younger age. Schools should have more programs that advocate healthy living

Most of current HTN studies are based on office BP monitoring. ABPM and home BP monitoring should be used more frequently. This technique is a very useful tool in white coat HTN (high BP in clinic but normal in other settings) and masked HTN (normal BP in clinic and high BP at other settings). Additionally, it is also helpful in resistant HTN, episodic HTN, autonomic dysfunction, and hypotension while taking antihypertensive medications. ABPM also identifies patients who have nocturnal HTN – dipper vs non-dippers. This has important implications since non-dippers are at higher cardiovascular risk. Some experts believe that home BP monitoring should be done several times a day, and dosage of BP medications adjusted based on BP at a given time similar to finger stick blood glucose monitoring and adjustment of insulin dosing.

There should be more American Society of Hypertension certified HTN centers that are focused on treating patients who have more complex issues with HTN and related complications so that patients can be referred to these centers for more comprehensive care. Internal medicine and related residency and fellowship training programs should encourage more trainees to become hypertension specialists. More research should be done on genetic analysis to provide more individualized medicine which will help determine the appropriate medication/medications for any given patient.

Conclusion

Over 20 million people in the United States have both HTN and DM. Diagnosis and treatment of these conditions are very important to decrease the risk of CVD, which is a major cause of morbidity, mortality, and healthcare cost. The pathophysiology of HTN in DM is complex with the inappropriate activation of the RAAS system, endocrine action of adipose tissue, oxidative stress, and maladaptive effects on the vascular endothelium being involved. The western diet and obesity play an important role in inducing a pro-inflammatory state contributing to metabolic derangement. There have been multiple large-scale clinical trials that have examined BP control in DM and its effect on CVD outcomes. The data from these studies suggests that targeting a systolic BP between 120 mmHg and 135 mmHg would be most appropriate, reserving a more aggressive target of <120/80 mmHg in select patients that are at highest risk of stroke and can tolerate the target without adverse effects. Lifestyle modification remains the most important intervention including a reduced sodium diet, weight loss, exercise, and moderation of alcohol intake. When treating DM in patients with HTN, it is important to note that the choice of DM medications can have an impact on BP control. Pharmacotherapy for HTN should take into account patient characteristics with an ACEI or an ARB being the preferred initial agent due to a beneficial effect on CVD outcomes. Adding medications or titrating existing medications should be done until BP goals are met. ABPM should be used for further evaluation in cases of resistant HTN, episodic HTN and suspected white coat HTN, or episodes of hypotension. PWV may be an additional tool that can be used to identify patients at risk for developing CVD and complications of DM. There continues to be further studies contributing to the knowledge of these interrelated conditions.

Concluding Remarks

Diabetes and hypertension are frequent coexisting risk factors that are promoted by obesity and increase the risk for both cardiovascular disease and chronic kidney disease. There is increasing evidence that treatment of both conditions should be individualized based on various factors such as age and duration of diabetes. Emerging evidence suggests that an optimal goal for blood pressure control is less than 130/85 mmHg for most patients with diabetes.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Which one of the following studies showed that combination of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor and angiotensin receptor blockers was associated with and increased risk of renal failure?
   (a) UKPD
   (b) ONTARGET
   (c) ADVANCE
   (d) VADT
   (e) Sprint
   The ONTARGET trial – Ongoing Telmisartan alone and in combination with Ramipril global endpoint trial showed that the combination was associated with increased risk of hypotension, syncope, and renal failure.
2. Ambulatory BP monitoring will be helpful in all of the following conditions except:
   (a) 45 years old with uncontrolled HTN on maximum dose of three medications including a diuretic
   (b) 60 years old with well-controlled HTN on two BP medications
   (c) 35 years old with good BP at home and local store but high at the physician office
   (d) 45-year-old diabetic who complains of orthostatic symptoms
   (e) To evaluate masked HTN (normal office BP with elevated home BP)
   Ambulatory BP monitoring should be considered in suspected white coat HTN, resistant HTN, episodic HTN (i.E., pheochromocytoma), autonomic dysfunction, or suspected episodes of hypotension
3. All of the following antidiabetic medications will lower BP except:
   (a) Exenatide
   (b) Sitagliptin
   (c) Pioglitazone
   (d) Empagliflozin
   (e) Insulin
   Antidiabetic medications GLP-1 agonists, DPP4 inhibitors, SGLT-2 inhibitors, and thiazolidinediones have shown to reduce BP.
4. All of the following are true about DASH diet except:
   (a) Has as a positive impact on BP
   (b) DASH diet is high in whole grains, fish, poultry, fruits, and vegetables
   (c) Has shown to reduce cardiovascular risk
   (d) Has been shown to increase pulse wave velocity
   (e) DASH diet will lower LDL cholesterol

DASH diet has shown a positive impact on BP, obesity, and LDL cholesterol. DASH diet has also been shown to reduce cardiovascular risk and reduce pulse wave velocity.

5. When treating diabetics with HTN, which of the following is correct?
   (a) The American diabetic association and American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists recommend RAAS blockers as first-line treatment
   (b) JNC 8 recommends a BP goal of less than 120/80 for all diabetics
   (c) Use of thiazide diuretics are not recommended due to associated metabolic derangements
   (d) Metoprolol is preferred over carvedilol
   (e) There is no additional benefit of using RAAS blockers over other antihypertensives

   The AACE and ADA recommend RAAS blockers as the first line of treatment for diabetics due to beneficial effects on cardiovascular outcome. In addition, it reduces microalbuminuria and the risk of creatinine doubling. Recommended BP goal for diabetics is <140/90. In spite of metabolic derangements associated with thiazide diuretics, they are still used to treat diabetics. Diuretics have shown to reduce cardiovascular risk. Unlike metoprolol, carvedilol will not increase blood sugar or lipids.
6. The 2014 Canadian HTN guidelines recommend that newly diagnosed patients with HTN be screened for what disease?
   (a) Kidney disease
   (b) Cardiovascular disease
   (c) Diabetes mellitus
   (d) Aortic aneurysm
   (e) Dyslipidemia

   The 2014 Canadian HTN guidelines recommend that newly diagnosed patients with HTN be screened for diabetes with a fasting glucose and/or hemoglobin A1c.
7. What is the initial weight loss goal from baseline weight in the National Institutes of Health clinical guidelines for treatment of obesity?
   (a) 5%
   (b) 20%
   (c) 30%
   (d) 10%
   (e) 25%

   Approach to weight loss and maintenance based on National Institutes of Health clinical guidelines for treatment of obesity recommends an initial weight loss goal of a 10% reduction from baseline weight.
8. All of the following are non-desirable side effects of beta-blockers in diabetics except:
   (a) Masking of hypoglycemia symptoms
   (b) Lowering of heart rate
   (c) Dyslipidemia
   (d) Weight gain
   (e) Insulin resistance

   Beta-blockers have been associated with metabolic derangements including dyslipidemia, increased insulin resistance, and weight gain and can mask hypoglycemia symptoms.
9. The following have been postulated to be involved in the pathophysiology of HTN in DM except:
   (a) Sodium retention due to hyperfiltration
   (b) Reduced nitric oxide bioavailability
   (c) Deranged metabolic signaling of insulin
   (d) Reduced sympathetic nervous system activation
   (e) Inappropriate activation of the RAAS system

   The pathophysiology of HTN in DM is multifactorial, involving multiple tissues, organ systems, metabolic signaling pathways, and environmental and genetic factors.
10. Lowering systolic BP to less than what number was shown in multiple major trials to lower mortality and improve CVD outcomes?
    (a) 160
    (b) 150
    (c) 140
    (d) 130
    (e) 120

    Major trials such as Syst-Eur, UKPDS, and SHEP studies supported the conclusion that treatment to a systolic BP of <150 mmHg lowers mortality and improves CVD and cerebrovascular health outcomes.

Correct Answers

1. (b) ONTARGET
2. (b) 60 years old with well-controlled HTN on two BP medications
3. (e) Insulin
4. (d) Has been shown to increase pulse wave velocity
5. (a) The American diabetic association and American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists recommend RAAS blockers as first-line treatment
6. (c) Diabetes mellitus
7. (d) 10%
8. (b) Lowering of heart rate
9. (d) Reduced sympathetic nervous system activation
10. (b) 150

References

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National diabetes statistics report: estimates of diabetes and its burden in the United States, 2014. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 2014.
2. American Diabetes Association. Chapter 8. Cardiovascular disease and risk management. Diabetes Care. 2015;38:S49–57.

3. Dasgupta K, Quinn RR, Zarnke KB, et al. The 2014 Canadian hypertension education program recommendations for blood pressure measurement, diagnosis, assessment of risk, prevention, and treatment of hypertension. Can J Cardiol. 2014;30(5):485–501.
4. Karuparthi PR, Yerram P, Lastra G, Hayden MR, Sowers JR. Understanding essential hypertension from the perspective of the cardiometabolic syndrome. J Am Soc Hypertens. 2007;1(2):120–34.
5. Lastra G, Syed S, Kurukulasuriya RL, Manrique C, Sowers JR. Type 2 diabetes mellitus and hypertension: an update. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am. 2014;43(1):103–22.
6. DeMarco VG, Aroor AR, Sowers JR. The pathophysiology of hypertension in patient with obesity. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2014;10(6):364–76.
7. Aroor AR, DeMarco VG, Jia G, Sun Z, Nistala R, Meinenger GA, Sowers JR. The role of tissue renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system in the development of endothelial dysfunction and arterial stiffness. Front Endocrinol. 2013;161:1–7.
8. Williams B. The hypertension in diabetes study (HDS): a catalyst for change. Diabet Med. 2008;25(Suppl 2):13–9.
9. James PA, Oparil S, Carter BL, et al. 2014 evidence-based guideline for the management of high blood pressure in adults: report from the panel members appointed to the eighth joint national committee (JNC 8). JAMA. 2014;311(5):507–20.
10. The ACCORD study group. Effects of intensive blood pressure control in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2010;362:1575–85.
11. Pepine CJ, Handberg EM, Cooper-DeJoff RM, et al.; for the INVEST Investigators. A calcium antagonist vs a non-calcium antagonist hypertension treatment strategy for patients with coronary artery disease: the international verapamil-trandolapril study (INVEST): a randomized controlled trial. JAMA. 2003;290(21):2805–16.
12. The ONTARGET Investigators. Telmisartan, ramipril, or both in patients at high risk for vascular events. N Eng J Med. 2008;358:1547–59.
13. Duckworth W, Abraira C, Moritz T, et al.; VADT Investigators. Glucose control and vascular complications in veterans with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2009;360:129–39.
14. The SPRINT Research group. A randomized trial of intensive vs standard blood pressure control. NEJM. 2015;373:2103–16.
15. Mancia G, Fagard R, Narkiewicz K, et al. 2013 ESH/ESC guidelines for management of arterial hypertension. Eur Heart J. 2013;34:2159–219.
16. Whaley-Connell A, Sowers JR. Blood pressure-related outcomes in a diabetic population. Hypertension. 2016;68(1):71–7.
17. Handelsman Y, Bloomgarden ZT, Grunberger G, et al. American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology – clinical practice guidelines for developing a diabetes mellitus comprehensive care plan – 2015. Endocr Pract. 2015;21(4):413–37.
18. Clinical guidelines on the identification, evaluation, and treatment of overweight and obesity in adults – The Evidence Report. National Institutes of Health. Obes Res. 1998;6(Suppl 2):51S–209S.
19. Jindal A, Brietzke S, Sowers JR. Obesity and the cardiorenal metabolic syndrome: therapeutic modalities and their efficacy in improving cardiovascular and renal risk factors. Cardiorenal Med. 2012;2:314–27.
20. Look AHEAD Research Group. Reduction in weight and cardiovascular disease risk factors in individuals with type 2 diabetes: one-year results of the look AHEAD trial. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(6):1374–83.
21. The Look AHEAD Research Group. Cardiovascular effects of intensive lifestyle intervention in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2013;369:145–54.
22. Baudrand R, Campino C, Carvajal CA, et al. High sodium intake is associated with increased glucocorticoid production, insulin resistance and metabolic syndrome. Clin Endocrinol. 2014;80(5):677–84.
23. He FJ, Li J, Macgregor GA. Effect of longer term modest salt reduction on blood pressure: Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised trials. BMJ. 2013;346:f1325.
24. Sacks FM, Svetkey LP, Vollmer WM, et al. Effects on blood pressure of reduced dietary sodium and the Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH) diet. DASH-Sodium Collaborative Research Group. N Engl J Med. 2001;344(1):3–10.
25. Miller ER, Erlinger TP, Appel LJ. The effects of macronutrients on blood pressure and lipids: an overview of the DASH and OmniHeart trials. Curr Atheroscler Rep. 2006;8:460–5.
26. Your guide to lowering your blood pressure with DASH. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. National Institutes of Health. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute.
27. Conlin PR, Chow D, Miller ER, et al. The effect of dietary patterns on blood pressure control in hypertensive patients: results from the Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH) trial. Am J Hypertens. 2000;13(9):949–55.
28. Lin PH, Allen JD, Li YJ, Yu M, Lien LF, Svetkey LP. Blood pressure-lowering mechanisms of the DASH dietary pattern. J Nutr Metab. 2012;2012:472396.
29. Dernini S, Berry EM. Mediterranean diet: from a healthy diet to a sustainable dietary pattern. Front Nutr. 2015;2:15.
30. Willett WC, Sacks F, Trichopoulou A, et al. Mediterranean diet pyramid: a cultural model for healthy eating. Am J Clin Nutr. 1995;61(6 Suppl):1402S–6S.
31. Trichopoulou A, Martínez-gonzález MA, Tong TY, et al. Definitions and potential health benefits of the Mediterranean diet: views from experts around the world. BMC Med. 2014;12:112.
32. Patton SR, Dolan LM, Powers SW. Mealtime interactions relate to dietary adherence and glycemic control in young children with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2006;29(5):1002–6.
33. Esposito K, Maiorino MI, Bellastella G, Chiodini P, Panagiotakos D, Giugliano D. A journey into a Mediterranean diet and type 2 diabetes: a systematic review with meta-analyses. BMJ Open. 2015;5(8):e008222.
34. Estruch R, Ros E, Salas-salvadó J, et al. Primary prevention of cardiovascular disease with a Mediterranean diet. N Engl J Med. 2013;368(14):1279–90.
35. Knoops KT, De Groot LC, Kromhout D, et al. Mediterranean diet, lifestyle factors, and 10-year mortality in elderly European men and women: the HALE project. JAMA. 2004;292(12):1433–9.
36. Blumenthal JA, Babyak MA, Hinderliter A, et al. Effects of the DASH diet alone and in combination with exercise and weight loss on blood pressure and cardiovascular biomarkers in men and women with high blood pressure: the ENCORE study. Arch Intern Med. 2010;170(2):126–35.
37. Fletcher GF, Balady G, Blair SN, Blumenthal J, Caspersen C, Chaitman B, Epstein S, Sivarajan Froelicher ES, Froelicher VF, Pina IL, Pollock ML. Statement on exercise: benefits and recommendations for physical activity programs for all Americans. Circulation. 1996;94:857–62.
38. Haskell WL, Lee IM, Pate RR, et al. Physical activity and public health: updated recommendation for adults from the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Heart Association. Med Sci Sports Exerc. 2007;39(8):1423–34.
39. Franckowiak SC, Dobrosielski DA, Reilley SM, Walston JD, Andersen RE. Maximal heart rate prediction in adults that are overweight or obese. J Strength Cond Res. 2011;25(5):1407–12.
40. Donnelly JE, Hill JO, Jacobsen DJ, et al. Effects of a 16-month randomized controlled exercise trial on body weight and composition in young, overweight men and women: the Midwest Exercise Trial. Arch Intern Med. 2003;163(11):1343–50.
41. Bergenstal R, Kim T, Trautmann M, et al. Exenatide once weekly elicited improvements in blood pressure and lipid profile over

52 weeks in patients with type 2 diabetes (abstract no. 1239). Circulation. 2008;1:18LS1086.
42. Kurukulasuriya LR, Sowers JR. Therapies for type 2 diabetes: lowering HbA1c and associated cardiovascular risk factors. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2010;9:45.
43. Mendis B, Simpson E, Macdonald I, Mansell P. Investigation of the haemodynamic effects of exenatide in healthy male subjects. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2012;74(3):437–44.
44. Irace C, De Luca S, Shehaj E, et al. Exenatide improves endothelial function assessed by flow mediated dilation technique in subjects with type 2 diabetes: results from an observational research. Diab Vasc Dis Res. 2013;10(1):72–7.
45. Endocrine Society's 96th Annual Meeting and Expo, June 21–24, 2014 – Chicago LBSU-1074: Exenatide Induces an Increase in Vasodilatory Mediators.
46. Thomson SC, Kashkouli A, Singh P. Glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor stimulation increases GFR and suppresses proximal reabsorption in the rat. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol. 2013;304(2):F137–44.
47. Auclair M, Vigouroux C, Boccara F, et al. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ mutations responsible for lipodystrophy with severe hypertension activate the cellular renin–angiotensin system. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2013;33:829–38.
48. Buchanan TA, Meehan WP, Jeng YY, et al. Blood pressure lowering by pioglitazone. Evidence for a direct vascular effect. J Clin Invest. 1995;96(1):354–60.
49. Verma S, Bhanot S, Arikawa E, Yao L, Mcneill JH. Direct vasodepressor effects of pioglitazone in spontaneously hypertensive rats. Pharmacology. 1998;56(1):7–16.
50. Mistry GC, Maes AL, Lasseter KC, et al. Effect of sitagliptin, a dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitor, on blood pressure in nondiabetic patients with mild to moderate hypertension. J Clin Pharmacol. 2008;48:592–8.
51. Liu L, Liu J, Wong WT, et al. Dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitor sitagliptin protects endothelial function in hypertension through a glucagon-like peptide 1-dependent mechanism. Hypertension. 2012;60(3):833–41.
52. Mason RP, Jacob RF, Kubant R, Ciszewski A, Corbalan JJ, Malinski T. Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibition with saxagliptin enhanced nitric oxide release and reduced blood pressure and sICAM-1 levels in hypertensive rats. J Cardiovasc Pharmacol. 2012;60(5):467–73.
53. Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin JM, et al. Empagliflozin, cardiovascular outcomes, and mortality in type 2 diabetes. NEJM. 2015;373:2117–28.
54. Vijakama P, Thakkinstain A, Lertrattananon D, et al. Renoprotective effects of renin-angiotensin system blockade in type 2 diabetic patients: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. Diabetologia. 2012;55:566–78.
55. Wu HY, Huang JW, Lin HJ, et al. Comparative effectiveness of renin-angiotensin system blockers and other antihypertensive drugs in patients with diabetes: systematic review and Bayesian network meta-analysis. BMJ. 2013;347:f6008.
56. Grossman E, Messerli FH. Management of blood pressure in patients with diabetes. Am J Hypertens. 2011;24(8):863–75.
57. Reboldi G, Gentile G, Angeli F, et al. Optimal therapy in hypertensive subjects with diabetes mellitus. Curr Atheroscler Rep. 2011;13:176–85.
58. Sowers JR, Lastra G, Roca R, et al. Initial combination therapy compared with monotherapy in diabetic hypertensive patients. J Clin Hypertens (Greenwich). 2008;10:668–76.
59. Jeffers BW, Bhambri R, Robbins J. Uptitrating amlodipine significantly reduces blood pressure in diabetic patients with hypertension: a retrospective, pooled analysis. Vasc Health Risk Manag. 2014;10:651–9.
60. Williams B, MacDonald TM, Morant S, et al.; for The British Hypertension Society's PATHWAY Studies Group. Spironolactone versus placebo, bisoprolol, and doxazosin to determine the optimal treatment for drug-resistant hypertension (PATHWAY-2): a randomized, double-blind, crossover trial. Lancet. 2015;386(10008):2059–68.
61. Cohen JB, Cohen DL. Integrating out-of-office blood pressure in the diagnosis and Management of Hypertension. Curr Cardiol Rep. 2016;18:112.
62. Leitao CB, Canani LH, Silveiro SP, Gross JL. Ambulatory blood pressure monitoring and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Arq Bras Cardiol. 2007;88(2):315–21.
63. Loehr LR, Meyer ML, Poon AK, Selvin E, Palta P, et al. Prediabetes and diabetes are associated with arterial stiffness in older adults: the ARIC study. Am J Hypertens. 2016;29(9):1038–45.
64. Sowers JR. Recent advances in hypertension. J Am Heart Assoc. 2013;61:943–7.

Suggested Reading

Sowers JR. Diabetes mellitus and vascular disease. Hypertension. 2013;61:943–7.

Diabetes and Atherogenic Dyslipidemia

38

Arshag D. Mooradian

Introduction

Despite the recent decline in the incidence of cardiovascular mortality in people with diabetes, cardiovascular disease (CVD) continues to be the leading cause of morbidity and mortality in this patient population [1]. The cause of accelerated atherosclerosis and premature emergence of coronary artery disease (CAD) is multifactorial. Nevertheless, dyslipidemia is an important risk factor in diabetes that is modifiable with lifestyle changes and institution of effective pharmacologic agents [2, 3].

People with diabetes can have all the variants of dyslipidemias observed in nondiabetic people [4]. However, in type 2 diabetes where obesity and insulin resistance is common, a typical dyslipidemia is manifested as high plasma triglyceride and low high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol concentrations and increased small dense low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol particles [2, 3].

Prevalence of Dyslipidemia in Diabetes

In the Framingham Heart Study, the prevalence of high LDL cholesterol concentrations in men and women with diabetes mellitus (9% and 15%, respectively) did not differ significantly from the rates in men and women who did not have diabetes (11% and 16%, respectively) [5]. However, people with diabetes had more often high plasma triglyceride concentrations (19% in men and 17% in women) than people without diabetes mellitus (9% of men and 8% of women). In this survey, high levels of total cholesterol, LDL cholesterol, and triglyceride were defined as values above the corresponding 90th percentile for the US population [5]. The prevalence of low plasma HDL cholesterol concentrations (defined as a value below the tenth percentile for the US population) was 21% in men and 25% in women with diabetes, while only 12% nondiabetic men and 10% of nondiabetic women had low HDL cholesterol levels [5]. A similar increase in the prevalence of hypertriglyceridemia and low HDL cholesterol level was observed in the UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) [6].

A. D. Mooradian (✉)
Department of Medicine, University of Florida College of Medicine, Jacksonville, FL, USA
e-mail: arshag.mooradian@jax.ufl.edu

Pathophysiology of Dyslipidemia in Diabetes

One of the major drivers of increased plasma triglyceride concentrations in people with type 2 diabetes is the increased free fatty acid release from insulin-resistant fat cells [2, 3]. The increased flux of free fatty acids into the liver promotes triglyceride production. Subsequently there is increased secretion of apolipoprotein B (apoB) and very low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) cholesterol.

Insulin resistance is also associated with low HDL cholesterol levels [7–9] and increased concentration of small dense LDL cholesterol particles as VLDL-transported triglyceride is exchanged for HDL- or LDL-transported cholesteryl ester through the action of the cholesteryl ester transfer protein (CETP) (Fig. 38.1). This exchange results in increased amounts of both atherogenic cholesterol-rich VLDL remnant particles and triglyceride-rich, cholesterol-depleted HDL and LDL particles. The latter triglyceride-enriched particles are hydrolyzed by hepatic lipase or lipoprotein lipase resulting in dissociated apo A-I that is filtered by the renal glomeruli and degraded in renal tubular cells (Fig. 38.1) [2, 3]. The increased concentration of small dense LDL cholesterol particles is explained by a similar lipid exchange that results in lipid-depletion of the LDL particles (Fig. 38.1).

The lipid exchange pathway cannot entirely explain why low HDL cholesterol levels can also occur in people who do not have hypertriglyceridemia. In these patients, inability of insulin to upregulate the apoA-I production owing either to insulin resistance or increased inflammatory cytokines notably TNF alpha might contribute to low HDL cholesterol levels [8, 9].

Insulin resistance is also associated with a decreased ratio of lipoprotein lipase to hepatic lipase in heparin-

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_38

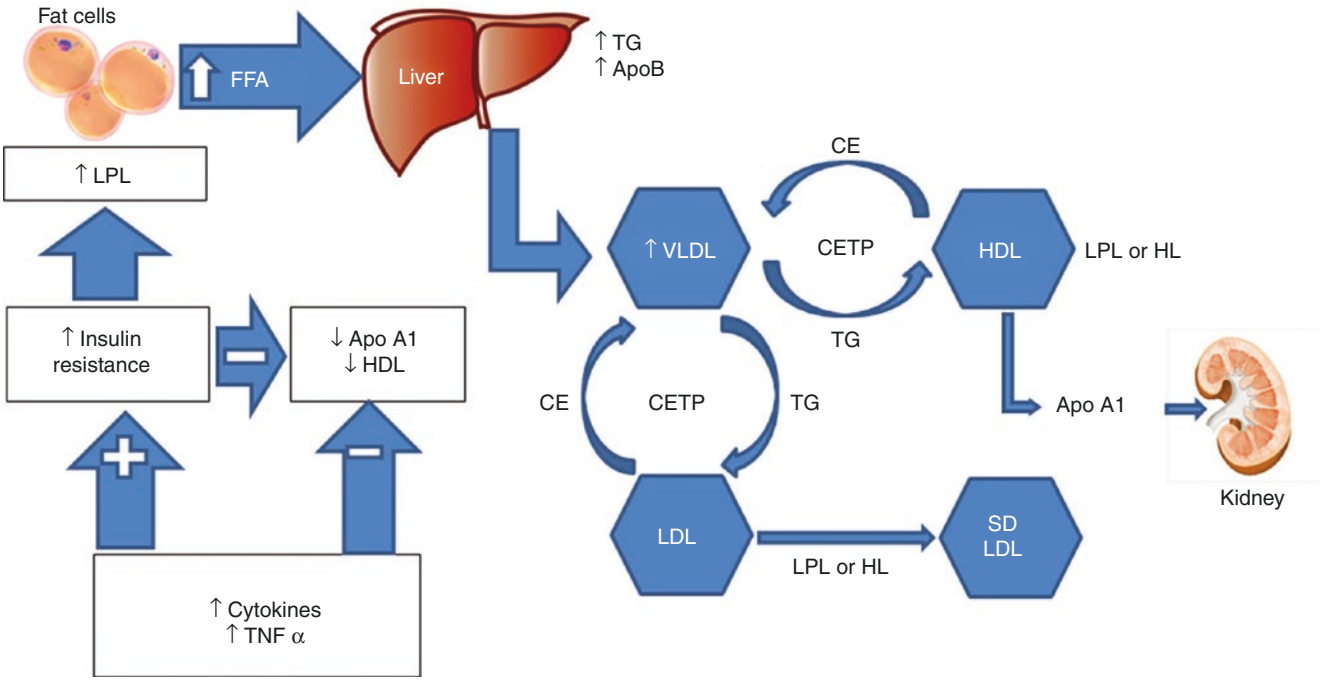


Fig. 38.1 Pathogenesis of diabetic dyslipidemia. Insulin resistance initiates the characteristic triad of high triglyceride level, low HDL cholesterol level, and high small dense LDL level. If the concentration of VLDL transported triglyceride is high, CETP promotes the transfer of LDL cholesteryl ester or HDL cholesteryl ester in exchange for triglyceride. Triglyceride-rich HDL or LDL can undergo hydrolysis by hepatic lipase or lipoprotein lipase. Abbreviations: ↑ increased level, TNF α tumor necrosis factor α, ApoA-1 apolipoprotein A-1, ApoB apolipoprotein B, CE cholesteryl ester, CETP cholesteryl ester transfer protein, FFA free fatty acid, HL hepatic lipase, LPL lipoprotein lipase, SD LDL small dense LDL, TG triglyceride, HDL high-density lipoprotein, LDL low-density lipoprotein VLDL very low-density lipoprotein

treated plasma, which contributes to the low HDL cholesterol level [2, 3]. In addition, the esterification of cholesterol (mediated by lecithin-cholesterol acyltransferase) is either modestly increased or unaltered, whereas increased CETP activity depletes HDL of its cholesteryl ester and therefore contributes to the lowering of HDL cholesterol levels [2, 3].

It is noteworthy that the combination of high triglyceride and low HDL cholesterol levels is observed in familial and sporadic syndromes (e.g., familial combined hyperlipidemia and familial hypertriglyceridemia), and the onset of obesity and insulin resistance would augment the lipid abnormality phenotype in these people [4].

Atherogenicity of Dyslipidemia in Diabetes

Interventional trials with stains have proven the efficacy of statins in reducing CHD events in people with diabetes. In these trials the linear relationships between LDL cholesterol levels and the incidence of cardiovascular events were similar in individuals both with and without diabetes mellitus [10]. However the role of low HDL cholesterol and increased triglyceride levels in CHD is still unproven. The association between hypertriglyceridemia and the increased risk of CHD is not as strong as the association between LDL cholesterol level and CHD risk.

Patients with elevated triglyceride levels especially in the context of familial combined hyperlipidemia or low HDL level might have increased risk for CHD. In addition, severe hypertriglyceridemia (greater than or equal to 5.65 mmol/L (500 mg/dl)) increases the risk of pancreatitis.

Interventional trials that used fibrate therapy to lower triglyceride and increase HDL cholesterol levels have failed to show a reproducible reduction in cardiovascular events. In the HDL Intervention Trial (HIT), gemfibrozil treatment was associated with a 22% reduction in the risk of CHD and a 25% reduction in the risk of stroke [11]. In the latter study, a quarter of the subjects studied had diabetes. The favorable effect of gemfibrozil in the primary prevention of CHD was also demonstrated in previous trials [12].

The Fenofibrate Intervention and Event Lowering in Diabetes (FIELD) study did not show that fenofibrate had a statistically significant effect on the primary outcome (CHD-related death or nonfatal myocardial infarction) [13, 14]. However, fenofibrate reduced the prevalence of nonfatal myocardial infarction and coronary revascularization, but it did not reduce the risk of fatal events [13, 14].

The Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) study examined whether treatment with a statin plus a fibrate, as compared with statin alone, would decrease the risk of cardiovascular events in a population of 5518 patients with T2DM [15]. After a mean follow-up period of

4.7 years, fenofibrate with simvastatin group compared with simvastatin alone did not have reduced cardiovascular events. Further analyses suggested a possible benefit for patients with the combination of a high baseline triglyceride level and low HDL cholesterol [15]. This observation was in agreement with the previous findings in the FIELD trial [14].

The HDL has a central role in reverse cholesterol transport and possesses a number of other cardioprotective properties. However, most trials with agents known to increase HDL levels have not shown any reduction in cardiovascular events except possibly in a subgroup of patients with high serum triglycerides and low HDL cholesterol levels [16–21].

The Atherothrombosis Intervention in Metabolic Syndrome with Low HDL/High Triglycerides Impact on Global Health Outcomes (AIM-HIGH) [16] and the Heart Protection Study 2: Treatment of HDL to Reduce the Incidence of Vascular Events (HPS2-THRIVE) [17] used niacin as the HDL cholesterol-boosting agent, while cholesterol ester transfer protein (CETP) inhibitors were tested in four trials, namely, the Investigation of Lipid Level Management to Understand Its Impact in Atherosclerotic Events (ILLUMINATE) trial [18], the dal-OUTCOMES trial [19], the Assessment of Clinical Effects of Cholesteryl Ester Transfer Protein Inhibition with Evacetrapib in Patients at a High Risk for Vascular Outcomes (ACCELERATE) trial [20], and the Randomized Evaluation of the Effects of Anacetrapib through Lipid Modification (REVEAL) trial [21]. Only the latter showed favorable effects on cardiovascular outcomes, but most of the benefit was attributed to its ability to reduce non-HDL cholesterol levels [21].

It is possible that when HDL levels are increased with enhanced de novo production rather than impaired turnover secondary to CETP inhibition, the quality and functionality of HDL are improved to become a more effective cardioprotective moiety [22].

Management of Dyslipidemia in Diabetes Mellitus

An integral component of the management of dyslipidemia is to exclude secondary aggravating causes notably hypothyroidism and the use of hormone replacement therapy. Although most people with diabetes would require pharmacologic agents, lifestyle modifications are still important cornerstone of therapy. These include dietary restrictions, increased physical activity, and smoking cessation [2]. Glycemic control usually improves the dyslipidemia by either providing insulin or enhancing insulin action, but it may not increase the reduced HDL cholesterol levels [23]. In addition, some agents such as pioglitazone may have direct effects on lipid metabolism [3].

Medical Nutrition Therapy

Dietary interventions should be individualized based on patient's own dietary preferences [2, 3]. While the low-fat diet has been the cornerstone of the dietary guidelines in the past, more recent guidelines emphasize the importance of limiting added sugars to less than 10% of total energy intake. This recommendation is based on a large body of evidence for the association between the consumption of added sugars especially fructose from corn syrup and atherogenic lipid profile [24]. In addition, clinical trials using a diet enriched with monounsaturated fat such as the Mediterranean diet have shown favorable effects on cardiovascular risk [25]. When weight loss is the goal of dieting, there is no clinically meaningful difference between carbohydrate-restricted diets and fat-restricted diets. It is best to limit portion size as all calories count irrespective of their source [26]. At this time, the American Diabetes Association (ADA) recommends modest weight loss for overweight individuals [27]. As little as 5% weight loss can have favorable metabolic effects, and clinical studies have shown that 7% or less weight loss can prevent or delay the onset of diabetes in high-risk individuals [28].

The type of fat consumed is more important than total amount of fat. A reduction in dietary saturated fat to less than 10% of total daily calories, reduced trans-fat intake, limit daily sodium consumption to less than 2300 mg, and Mediterranean style diet rich in monounsaturated fats can improve both glycemic control and lipid profile. Of note is that the previous recommendation of restricting dietary cholesterol intake to less than 300 mg per day has been removed from the 2015 Dietary Guidelines for Americans [24]. People with diabetes should follow the dietary guidelines issued for the general population [27].

It is noteworthy that replacing saturated fat intake with carbohydrate lowers total cholesterol, LDL-c, and HDL-c and may increase triglyceride level [29, 30]. On the other hand, substituting saturated fat with monounsaturated or polyunsaturated fat has more favorable effect on HDL-c and triglyceride levels. Dietary protein or various amino acids do not have clinically significant effects on lipoprotein profile [29, 30].

Effects of Exercise

Staying active and exercising have multiple benefits notably enhanced cardiovascular health. Increased physical activity also helps to maintain the weight loss attained with caloric restriction [31]. In addition, independent of weight loss, exercise can improve insulin sensitivity and increase HDL-c levels [32, 33]. Both aerobic and resistance training improve glycemic control in T2DM, and larger improvement in gly-

cemic control can be achieved with combined resistance and aerobic training [34].

There is a paucity of trials examining the effect of exercise on lipid changes in diabetes. In a study of postmenopausal women with type 2 diabetes, exercise alone, without weight loss, was associated with a reduction in waist circumference and improves visceral adipose tissue [35]. In another study of people with type 2 diabetes, a supervised aerobic exercise program reduced VLDL – apo B pool size [36]. Despite the limitations in these studies, it is a prudent clinical practice to encourage people with diabetes to engage in exercise to the extent possible. Overall, 30 minutes of walking five times a week has been shown to be effective in improving insulin sensitivity and reducing the risk of diabetes in those at risk for developing diabetes [28].

Pharmacologic Interventions

The various classes of lipid-modifying agents are summarized in Table 38.1. Of these agents only statins have been consistently associated with cardiovascular event reduction [10]. Although the efficacy of stains correlates well with their ability in reducing LDL cholesterol, the potential contribution of pleiotropic effects of statin to CVD risk reduction was supported by the observation that therapeutic targeting hsCRP with rosuvastatin was associated with significant improvement in event-free survival and the effect was independent of LDL cholesterol level achieved [37].

The cholesterol hypothesis in contrast to the stain hypothesis was recently supported by the observation that ezetimibe, a selective cholesterol absorption inhibitor, was also associated with reduction in CVD events when used in addition to statins [38]. This latter study is in contrast to earlier studies with ezetimibe, one in patients with aortic stenosis [39] and the other in those with chronic kidney disease (38), where ezetimibe and statin combination did not alter mortality but had some favorable effects on secondary end points such as fewer coronary bypass procedures, reductions in nonhemorrhagic stroke, and arterial revascularization procedures [39, 40]. Thus ezetimibe should be considered when maximal doses of high potency statins are not tolerated [27]. Similarly, a recent interventional trial with PCSK9 inhibitor evolocumab showed a reduction in cardiovascular events in a high-risk population with LDL cholesterol levels of 1.8 mmol/L liter (70 mg/dl) or higher who were receiving statin therapy [41].

At the present time, the bile acid sequestrants (BAS) have a limited role in reducing LDL cholesterol except possibly in women of reproductive age and children where safety of statins and ezetimibe is of concern. Gastrointestinal side effects, increased risk of cholelithiasis, and aggravation of hypertriglyceridemia limit the clinical utility of these agents. In general, colesevelam has a better gastrointestinal side effect profile and has favorable effects on glucose metabolism. In the Glucose-Lowering effect of WelChol Study (GLOWS) in patients with type 2 diabetes, colesevelam added to existing therapy with metformin and/or sulfonylurea lowered LDL cholesterol by 11.7% and HbA1c by 0.5% [42]. The increase in triglyceride level was not significant in the GLOWS, although in other trials when colesevelam was added to sulfonylurea or insulin, the triglyceride levels increased by 17.7% and 21.5%, respectively ($P < 0.05$) [43–45].

Niacin lowers triglyceride, LDL cholesterol, and small dense LDL levels and raises HDL cholesterol. Thus its pharmacologic effect is well suited to target the triad of diabetic dyslipidemia. However, the use of niacin has been limited by its side effects such as flushing, itching, gastrointestinal upset, tachycardia and hypotension, and aggravation of insulin resistance. More importantly, two large clinical trials, one the Heart Protection Study 2 Treatment of High-Density Lipoprotein to Reduce the Incidence of Vascular Events (HPS-2 THRIVE) and the second AIM -HIGH, failed to show any clinical benefit of adding niacin to statin therapy [16, 17]. The combination of statins and niacin in type 2 diabetes should probably be limited to patients with high risk of hypertriglyceridemia-related pancreatitis.

The role of fibrates in the treatment of dyslipidemia of diabetes is also limited as the evidence for reproducible cardiovascular benefit of this class is lacking. However, in review of the available clinical trials, it appears that in the subgroup of patients with moderate dyslipidemia (high TG ≥ 200 mg/dL and low HDL-c < 35–40 mg/dL), fenofibrate treatment compared to placebo was associated with fewer cardiovascular events [14, 15]. Fibrate use can be considered in diabetics with elevated TG level > 500 mg/dL along with dietary modification and improving glycemic control to prevent chylomicronemia and the associated risk of pancreatitis. When used in combination with statins, fenofibrate or bezafibrate seems to convey a minimal risk of rhabdomyolysis, while the combination with gemfibrozil should be avoided.

Fish oil supplements are another option to reduce triglyceride levels. In general, daily supplements of 3–5 g of eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) reduce serum triglyceride levels by an average of 28%. The Combination of Prescription Omega-3 Plus Simvastatin (COMBOS) trial in statin-treated patients who have persistent triglyceride levels between 200 and 499 mg/dL found that omega-3 fatty acid supplementation reduced non-HDL-c by 9% compared with 2.2% with placebo, triglycerides by 30% compared to 6% with placebo, and increased the HDL-c by 3.4% [46]. At the present time, there are no conclusive clinical end point data on omega-3 fatty acids although in the Gruppo Italiano per lo Studio della Infarto Miocardico

Table 38.1 A select list of therapeutic agents available for the management of dyslipidemia

Drug or drug class	Pharmacologic effects	Side effects	Specific agents (trade name) and dosage
I. Single agent formulations:			
HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins)	LDL-c ↓ 18–55% HDL-c ↑ 5–15% TG ↓ 7–30%	Hepatotoxicity, myopathy, risk of diabetes	Lovastatin (Mevacor®) 10–80 mg orally nightly or two divided doses
			Lovastatin extended-release (Altoprev®) 10–60 mg orally nightly Lovastatin extended-release (Altocor®) 10–60 mg orally nightly
			Simvastatin (Zocor®) 5–80 mg orally nightly[a]
			Pravastatin (Pravachol®) 10–80 mg orally once daily
			Fluvastatin (Lescol®) 20–40 mg orally nightly
			Fluvastatin extended-release (Lescol XL®) 80 mg orally up to a maximum daily dose 40 mg twice daily
			Atorvastatin (Lipitor®) 10–80 mg orally once daily
			Rosuvastatin (Crestor®) 5–40 mg orally once daily
			Pitavastatin (Livalo®) 1 mg, 2 mg, and 4 mg orally nightly
Ezetimibe	LDL-c ↓ 15–20% HDL-c ↑ 1% TG ↓ 8%	No major side effects, rare myopathy	Zetia®, Ezetrol® 10 mg orally once daily
PCSK9 inhibitors	LDL-c ↓ 60% HDL-c ↑ 5% TG ↓ 15%	Neurocognitive changes cost	Evolocumab (Repatha®) 140 mg SC Q 2 weeks or 420 mg Q month Alirocumab (Praluent®) 75 mg SC Q 2 weeks or 150 mg Q month
Nicotinic acid (niacin)	LDL-c ↓ 5–25% HDL-c ↑ 15–35% TG ↓ 20–50% Small, dense LDL ↓	Flushing, hyperglycemia, Hyperuricemia, Hepatotoxicity	Nicotinic acid 1–2 g orally two or three times daily
			Extended-release nicotinic acid (Niaspan®) 1000–2000 mg orally nightly
			Sustained-release nicotinic acid (Slo-niacin®) 250–750 mg orally once or twice daily Other trade names include *B-3-50*, *B3–500-Gr*, *Niacin SR*, *Niacor*, *Niaspan ER*, *Neasyn-SR*, *Nialip*, *Nicocin ER*
Fibrates (fibric acid derivatives)	LDL-c ↓ 5–20% HDL-c ↑ 10–35% TG ↓ 20–50% Small, dense ↓ LDL-c	Dyspepsia, gallstones, Hepatotoxicity, myopathy	Fenofibrate, micronized (Antara™) 43 and 130 mg orally once daily
			Fenofibrate, micronized (Lofibra™) 67, 134 and 200 mg orally once daily
			Fenofibrate (Tricor®) 48 and 145 mg orally once daily
			Fenofibric acid delayed-release capsules (Trilipix®) 45 mg and 135 mg orally once daily Other trade names for fenofibrate include *Fenoglide*, *Lipidil EZ*, *Lipidil Micro*, *Lipidil Supra*, *Lipofen*, *Triglide*, *Lipanthyl*, *Tricheck*, *Golip*
			Gemfibrozil (Lopid®, Apo-gemfibrozil®, gen-gemfibrozil®, PMS-gemfibrozil®) 600 mg orally twice daily
			Bezafibrate (Bezalip®, Bezagen®, Fibrazate®, Liparol™, Zimbacol®) 200 mg orally twice daily
			Bezalip® mono 400 mg orally once daily
Bile acid binding agents (or Sequestrants)	LDL-c ↓ 10–20% HDL-c ↓ 1–2% TG ↓ possible ↓ 10%	Gastrointestinal distress, constipation	Cholestyramine (Questran®, Prevalite®) 4–24 g orally two or three times daily
			Colestipol (Colestid®) 5–30 g orally once or twice daily
			Colesevelam (Welchol®) 1.875–3.75 g orally once or twice daily
Omega-3 fatty acid	TG ↓ 25–30% LDL-c ↓ 5–10% HDL-c ↑ 1–3%	Fishy aftertaste, gastrointestinal Disturbances, possible association with frequent recurrences of atrial fibrillation or flutter	Lovaza® 2 g orally twice daily or 4 g once daily[b] OTC: e.g., fish oil, Promega, cardio Omega-3
			Marine Lipid Concentrate, MAX EPA®, SuperEPA 1200, 2–4 g per day of EPA + DHA
II. Double agent formulations:			
Simvastatin and ezetimibe	LDL-c ↓ 45–60% HDL-c ↑ 6–10% TG ↓ 23–31%	As above for individual agents	Ezetimibe/simvastatin (Vytorin™) 10/10 mg,10/20 mg, 10/40 mg, and 10/80 mg orally once daily[c]

(continued)

Table 38.1 (continued)

Drug or drug class	Pharmacologic effects	Side effects	Specific agents (trade name) and dosage
Lovastatin and nicotinic acid	LDL-c ↓ 30–42% HDL-c ↑ 20–30% TG ↓ 32–44%	As above for individual agents	Nicotinic acid/lovastatin (Advicor®) 500 /20 mg, 750/20 mg, 1000/20 mg, 1000/40 mg orally nightly
Niacin extended-release/simvastatin	LDL-c ↓ 25% HDL-c ↑ 24% TG ↓ 36% Non-HDL-c ↓ 27%	As above for individual agents	Niacin extended-release/simvastatin (Simcor®) 500/20 mg to 2000/40 mg orally nightly
Simvastatin and sitagliptin	LDL-c ↓ 20–40% HDL-c ↑ 5–10% TG ↓ 10–20% Hba1c ↓ 0.5–0.07%	As above for statins	Simvastatin/sitagliptin (Juvisync®) 100/10 mg, 100/20 mg, 100/40 mg orally once daily
Atorvastatin and amlodipine	LDL-c ↓ 30–60% HDL-c ↑ or ↓ 5–10% TG ↓ 30% Antihypertensive	As above for statins	Atorvastatin/amlodipine (Caduet®) 2.5, 5 or 10/10, 20, 40, or 80 mg orally once daily

Reprinted from Ref. [3] with some modifications and with permission of the authors and the publisher
DHA docosahexaenoic acid, *EPA* eicosapentaenoic acid, *HDL-c* high-density lipoprotein-cholesterol, *LDL-c* low-density lipoprotein-cholesterol, *OTC* over the counter, *TG* triglyceride
[a]The use of the 80 mg dose should be restricted to patients who have been taking simvastatin 80 mg chronically (e.g., for 12 months or more) without evidence of muscle toxicity
[b]In a study of patients with TG > 500 mg/dl with Lovaza®, they had the following lipid changes: TG ↓ 51.6%, LDL-c ↑ 49.3%, HDL-c ↑ 9.1%, non-HDL-c ↓ 10.2%
[c]The use of the Vytorin™ 10/80-mg dose should be restricted to patients who have been on this strength chronically (e.g., for 12 months or more) without evidence of muscle toxicity

(GISSI-Prevenzione) trial, mortality was reduced by 28% in diabetics and by 18% in nondiabetics randomized to omega-3 fatty acid supplementation [47]. Similarly, in a study of Japanese hypercholesterolemic patients, daily supplementation with1800 mg EPA was associated with a significant reduction in nonfatal coronary events [48]. However, a recent trial in a large cohort of diabetic patients, fish oil supplementation was not associated with any beneficial outcomes [49].

A Rational Approach to Drug Therapy

The current consensus is to recommend high intensity statin to all patients with diabetes and atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease. For those younger than 40 years with additional cardiovascular risk, moderate or high intensity statins are also recommended. For those aged over 40 years without any additional risk, moderate statin is suggested in addition to lifestyle modifications, while those with any additional risk should be on high intensity statin. The various statins are categorized according to their intensity in Table 38.2. The dose and choice of statin can be adjusted based on patient's response, side effects, and tolerability. Addition of ezetimibe to moderate intensity statin may provide additional benefits especially in patients with acute coronary syndrome and LDL cholesterol of 1.29 mmol/L (50 mg/dl) or over or for those who cannot tolerate high intensity statin. Combination of statin and fenofibrate may be considered in men with triglyceride levels of 2.3 mmol/L (204 mg/dl) or more and HDL cholesterol level of 0.9 mmol/L (34 mg/dl) or less. Combination of statin and niacin has no benefit above statin therapy and may increase the risk of stroke and generally should be avoided. Statins are contraindicated in pregnancy [50].

Table 38.2 Classification of statins according to their efficacy in reducing LDL cholesterol

	High intensity	Moderate intensity
Average effect on LDL cholesterol with daily dose	Lowering of LDL cholesterol ≥50%	Lowering of LDL cholesterol 30 to <50%
Examples	(a) Atorvastatin 40–80 mg (b) Rosuvastatin 20–40 mg	(a) Atorvastatin 10–20 mg (b) Fluvastatin 40 mg twice a day or extended-release 80 mg once a day (c) Lovastatin 40 mg (d) Pitavastatin 2–4 mg (e) Pravastatin 40–80 mg (f) Rosuvastatin 5–10 mg (g) Simvastatin 20–40 mg

Lipid profile should be measured before starting statin therapy and periodically thereafter to monitor compliance and efficacy. At the present time, no specific targets are recommended. However if the response to therapy is less than 50% in a very high-risk individual or if the patient cannot

tolerate statins, then addition of ezetimibe and PCSK9 inhibitors such as evolocumab and alirocumab should be considered especially if LDL cholesterol level is above 1.8 mmol/L (70 mg/dl) [41].

Based on the currently available literature, an evidence-based algorithm for the drug therapy of dyslipidemia in patients with diabetes is shown in Fig. 38.2. As lowering LDL cholesterol levels is irrefutably linked to reducing cardiovascular events, the first priority for most patients should be to start statin therapy irrespective of baseline lipid levels (Fig. 38.2). High intensity statins for those with established coronary artery disease or 10 year risk of ≥7.5%. If high-dose statins are not tolerated, moderate intensity statin with ezetimibe can be prescribed.

People who cannot tolerate statins, prescribing other cholesterol-lowering drugs is a pragmatic approach. In this regard an attractive option is colesevelam as it has been shown to have blood glucose-lowering effect in addition to its inhibition of cholesterol absorption [42]. In general, cholesterol-binding resins are an option only if the patient's serum triglyceride concentration is less than 2.83 mmol/L (250 mg/dl) or less than 2.26 mmol/L (200 mg/dl) for those on sulfonylurea or insulin, as this class of agents might exacerbate hypertriglyceridemia. A fibrate (preferably fenofibrate) or ezetimibe is additional option in such cases.

At the present time, the principal rationale for targeting the triglyceride levels is to reduce the risk of pancreatitis. This serious complication rarely occurs when the serum triglyceride levels are less than 1000 mg/dL. However individual variability in triglyceride-related risk should be taken into consideration when determining the threshold level below which the risk of pancreatitis is negligible.

When serum triglyceride level is over 5.65–11.3 mmol/L (500–1000 mg/dl) (the range is to account for differences in individual susceptibility to pancreatitis), fibrate with and without omega-3 fatty acids is recommended. An exception would be patients who have chylomicronemia associated with a profound lipolytic deficiency. It is noteworthy that the combination of a statin and a fibrate or nicotinic acid is well-known to potentiate the risk of rhabdomyolysis, and as such these agents should only be used cautiously.

In rare genetic disorders with severe hypercholesterolemia such as homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia, a novel antisense oligonucleotide inhibitor of apo B100 synthesis, mipomersen, is now available for treatment [51–54]. It is available as a single-use 1-mL vial with a concentration of 200 mg/mL. The average wholesale price (AWP) for 1 week of therapy with mipomersen is $5759.65.

Another option is lomitapide, a microsomal triglyceride transfer protein (MTP) inhibitor. This inhibition leads to a reduction in the synthesis of chylomicrons and very low-density lipoprotein, resulting in a reduction in plasma LDL levels. The drug was approved with a boxed warning for increased risk of hepatotoxicity because of the risk of liver toxicity. Other precautions with lomitapide include reduced absorption of fat-soluble vitamins and serum fatty acids, gastrointestinal adverse events, and numerous drug–drug interactions [51].

Volanesorsen (Isis pharma drug developed by Akcea Therapeutics) is an antisense oligonucleotide inhibitor of apo C-III mRNA that is still in clinical trials. In phase 2 trials, this agent resulted in 71% decrease in triglycerides, 46% increase in HDL cholesterol, and improved glucose in type 2 diabetes [53].

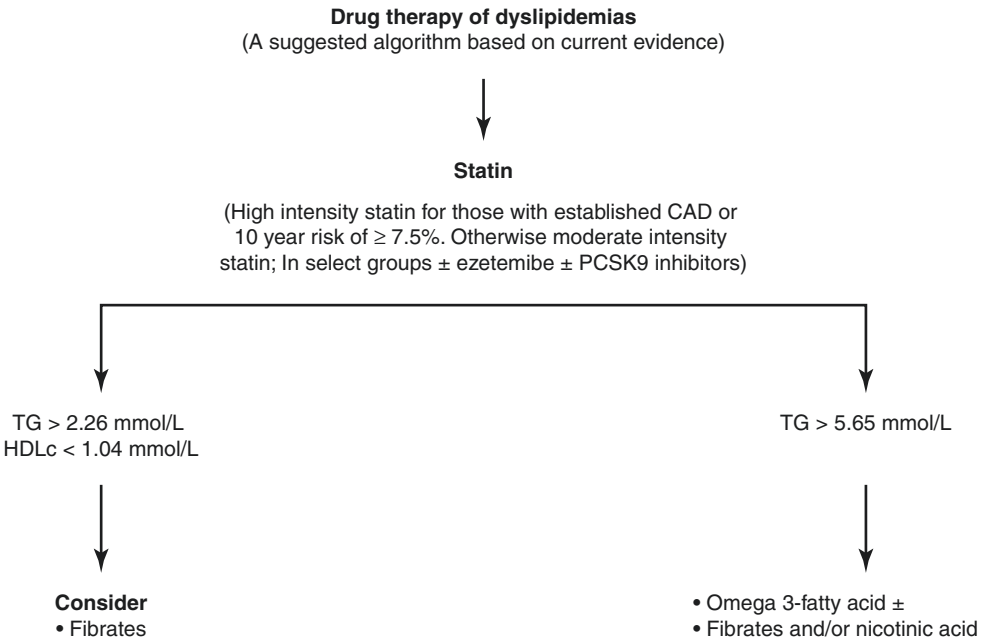


Fig. 38.2 A suggested evidence-based algorithm for drug therapy of dyslipidemia in patients with diabetes mellitus. Abbreviations: LDL-c low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, TG triglycerides

Conclusion

Type 2 diabetes is commonly associated with atherogenic dyslipidemic profile that includes high triglycerides, low HDL, and large number of small LDL particles. However, hitherto the only class of agents with proven clinical benefits is statins that target LDL cholesterol. The 2013 ACC/AHA guidelines did not recommend any LDL cholesterol goals to achieve, but it is prudent to monitor lipid profile at least once after initiation of therapy [50]. This may change given the results of a recent study with a PCSK9 inhibitor as lower targets may prove to be beneficial [41]. Most patients at 40–75 years of age regardless of their basal plasma cholesterol levels require statin therapy, and high intensity stains are recommended for high-risk patients especially those with clinically established coronary artery disease. Some individuals may benefit from combination therapy with fibrates, but the evidence is only from post hoc analyses of available data. Use of ezetimibe in those who cannot tolerate high intensity statins may also be prudent based on clinical outcome data in patients with recent acute coronary syndrome. In select patients PCSK9 inhibitors are an option.

In addition to proper management of the hyperlipidemia, other risk factors frequently associated with diabetes, such as hypertension, obesity, and smoking cessation, should also be addressed in an effective manner.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Compared to people without diabetes, patients with diabetes have:
   (a) High plasma LDL cholesterol concentrations
   (b) High plasma triglyceride concentrations
   (c) High HDL cholesterol concentrations
   (d) Normal plasma triglyceride concentrations
   (e) Normal plasma LDL concentrations
2. One of the major drivers of increased plasma triglyceride concentrations in people with type 2 diabetes is:
   (a) High intake of saturated fat from animal foodstuffs
   (b) Increased free fatty acid release from insulin-resistant fat cells
   (c) Inhibition of lipoprotein lipase activity
   (d) Ectopic fat distribution
   (e) All of the above
3. Diabetic dyslipidemia is characterized by:
   (a) Moderate/high plasma LDL cholesterol
   (b) High plasma triglyceride levels
   (c) Low plasma HDL cholesterol levels
   (d) All of the above
   (e) A and B are correct
4. The increased flux of free fatty acids into the liver promotes:
   (a) Increased triglyceride, apoB, and VLDL production
   (b) Increased total cholesterol, apo A, and LDL production
   (c) Increased triglyceride, apoA, and LDL production
   (d) Decreased triglyceride, apoB, and LDL production
   (e) Increased triglyceride, apoB, and no changes in VLDL production
5. Low HDL cholesterol levels are associated with:
   (a) High levels of small dense LDL cholesterol
   (b) Exchange of triglycerides for HDL
   (c) Increased amounts of atherogenic cholesterol-rich VLDL remnant particles
   (d) Disassociated apo A-1
   (e) All of the above
6. Severe hypertriglyceridemia (greater than or equal to 5.65 mmol/L (500 mg/dl)) increases the risk of:
   (a) Acute myocardial infarction
   (b) Stroke
   (c) Acute pancreatitis
   (d) Peripheral artery disease
   (e) Acute gastritis
7. In the HDL Intervention Trial (HIT), gemfibrozil treatment was associated with:
   (a) A 22% increase in the risk of CHD and a 50% increase in the risk of stroke.
   (b) A 22% reduction in the risk of CHD and a 25% reduction in the risk of stroke
   (c) A 22% increase in the risk of CHD and a 50% increase in the risk of stroke
   (d) A 22% reduction in the risk of CHD and a 50% reduction in the risk of stroke
   (e) A 50% reduction in the risk of CHD and a 50% reduction in the risk of stroke
8. Most people with diabetes would require pharmacologic agents, but lifestyle modifications are still important cornerstone of therapy when they:
   (a) Include high intensity aerobic exercise
   (b) Involve dietary restrictions, increased physical activity, and smoking cessation
   (c) Include ketogenic diets
   (d) Increase the intake of vitamins and minerals
   (e) Are focused on dietary restrictions
9. Lowering LDL cholesterol levels is irrefutably linked to reducing cardiovascular events, the priority for most patients should be:
   (a) Early insulin therapy with the goal to reduce lipolysis
   (b) Start statin therapy irrespective of baseline lipid levels
   (c) Additional therapy with metformin at low doses

(d) The use of antiplatelet adhesion agents
(e) Preparations for cardiovascular management

10. Specific doses for statins:
    (a) Simvastatin 5–80 mg orally thrice daily. Pravastatin 1–8 mg orally once daily Atorvastatin 10–80 mg orally thrice daily. Rosuvastatin 5–40 mg orally once daily
    (b) Simvastatin 50–800 mg orally nightly. Pravastatin 10–80 mg orally once daily Atorvastatin 1–8 mg orally once daily. Rosuvastatin 5–400 mg orally once daily
    (c) Simvastatin 5–80 mg orally nightly. Pravastatin 10–80 mg orally once daily Atorvastatin 10–80 mg orally once daily. Rosuvastatin 5–40 mg orally once daily
    (d) Simvastatin 5–80 mg orally twice daily. Pravastatin 1–8 mg orally once daily Atorvastatin 10–80 mg orally twice daily. Rosuvastatin 5–40 mg orally twice daily
    (e) Simvastatin 10–80 mg orally thrice daily. Pravastatin 10–80 mg orally once daily Atorvastatin 20–80 mg orally thrice daily. Rosuvastatin 5–40 mg orally once daily

Correct Answers

1. (b) High plasma triglyceride concentrations
2. (b) Increased free fatty-acid release from insulin-resistant fat cells
3. (d) All of the above
4. (a) Increased triglyceride, apoB and VLDL production
5. (e) All of the above
6. (c) Acute pancreatitis
7. (b) A 22% reduction in the risk of CHD and a 25% reduction in the risk of stroke
8. (b) Involve dietary restrictions, increased physical activity and smoking cessation
9. (b) Start statin therapy irrespective of baseline lipid levels
10. (c) Simvastatin 5–80 mg orally nightly. Pravastatin 10–80 mg orally once daily. Atorvastatin 10–80 mg orally once daily. Rosuvastatin 5–40 mg orally once daily

References

1. Gregg EW, Li Y, Wang J, Burrows NR, Ali MK, Rolka D, Williams DE, Geiss L. Changes in diabetes-related complications in the United States, 1990–2010. N Engl J Med. 2014;370:1514–23.
2. Mooradian AD. Dyslipidemia in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Nat Clin Pract Endocrinol Metab. 2009;5:150–9.
3. Chehade JM, Gladysz M, Mooradian AD. Dyslipidemia in type 2 diabetes: prevalence, pathophysiology,and management. Drugs. 2013;73:327–39.
4. Hachem SB, Mooradian AD. Familial dyslipidaemias: an overview of genetics, pathophysiology and management. Drugs. 2006;66:1949–69.
5. Jacobs MJ, Kleisli T, Pio JR, Malik S, L'Italien GJ, Chen RS, Wong ND. Prevalence and control of dyslipidemia among persons with diabetes in the United States. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2005;70:263–9.
6. U.K. Prospective Diabetes Study 27. Plasma lipids and lipoproteins at diagnosis of NIDDM by age and sex. Diabetes Care. 1997;20:1683–7.
7. Mooradian AD, Haas MJ, Wehmeier KR, Wong NC. Obesity related changes in high density lipoprotein metabolism. Obesity. 2008;16:1152–60.
8. Mooradian AD, Albert SG, Haas MJ. Low serum high-density lipoprotein cholesterol in obese subjects with normal serum triglycerides: the role of insulin resistance and inflammatory cytokines. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2007;9:441–3.
9. Haas MJ, Mooradian AD. Regulation of high-density lipoprotein by inflammatory cytokines: establishing links between immune dysfunction and cardiovascular disease. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2010;26:90–9.
10. Cholesterol Treatment Trialists' (CTT) Collaborators. Efficacy of cholesterol-lowering therapy in 18,686 people with diabetes in 14 randomized trials of statins: a meta-analysis. Lancet. 2008;371:117–25.
11. Rubins HB, Robins SJ, Collins D, et al. Gemfibrozil for the secondary prevention of coronary heart disease in men with low levels of high-density lipoprotein cholesterol. Veterans affairs high-density lipoprotein cholesterol intervention trial study group. N Engl J Med. 1999;341:410–8.
12. Frick MH, Elo O, Haapa K, Heinonen OP, Heinsalmi P, Helo P, et al. Helsinki heart study: primary prevention trial with gemfibrozil in middle-aged men with dyslipidemia. Safety of treatment, changes in risk factors, and incidence of coronary heart disease. N Engl J Med. 1987;317:1237–45.
13. Keech A, Simes RJ, Barter P, Best J, Scott R, Taskinen MR, et al. Effects of long-term fenofibrate therapy on cardiovascular events in 9795 people with type 2 diabetes mellitus (the FIELD study): randomized controlled trial. Lancet. 2005;366:1849–61.
14. Scott R, O'Brien R, Fulcher G, Pardy C, D'Emden M, Tse D, et al. Effects of fenofibrate treatment on cardiovascular disease risk in 9,795 individuals with type 2 diabetes and various components of the metabolic syndrome: the Fenofibrate Intervention and Event Lowering in Diabetes (FIELD) study. Diabetes Care. 2009;32:493–8.
15. ACCORD Study Group, Ginsberg HN, Elam MB, Lovato LC, Crouse JR 3rd, Leiter LA, Linz P, et al. Effects of combination lipid therapy in type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2010;362:1563–74.
16. AIM-HIGH Investigators, Boden WE, Probstfield JL, Anderson T, Chaitman BR, Desvignes-Nickens P, Koprowicz K, et al. Niacin in patients with low HDL cholesterol levels receiving intensive statin therapy. N Engl J Med. 2011;365:2255–67.
17. HPS2-THRIVE Collaborative Group, Landray MJ, Haynes R, Hopewell JC, Parish S, Aung T, Tomson J, et al. Effects of extended-release niacin with laropiprant in high-risk patients. N Engl J Med. 2014;371:203–12.
18. Barter PJ, Caulfield M, Eriksson M, Grundy SM, Kastelein JJ, Komajda M, ILLUMINATE Investigators, et al. Effects of torcetrapib in patients at high risk for coronary events. N Engl J Med. 2007;357:2109–22.
19. Schwartz GG, Olsson AG, Abt M, Ballantyne CM, Barter PJ, Brumm J, et al. Effects of dalcetrapib in patients with a recent acute coronary syndrome. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:2089–99.

20. Lincoff AM, Nicholls SJ, Riesmeyer JS, et al. Evacetrapib and cardiovascular outcomes in high-risk vascular disease. N Engl J Med. 2017;376:1933–42.
21. The HPS3/TIMI55-REVEAL Collaborative Group. Effects of anacetrapib in patients with atherosclerotic vascular disease. N Engl J Med. 2017;377:1217–27.
22. Mooradian AD, Haas MJ. Targeting high-density lipoproteins: increasing de novo production versus decreasing clearance. Drugs. 2015;75:713–22.
23. Hollenbeck CB, Chen YD, Greenfield MS, Lardinois CK, Reaven GM. Reduced plasma high density lipoprotein-cholesterol concentrations need not increase when hyperglycemia is controlled with insulin in noninsulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1986;62:605–8.
24. Dietary Guidelines Advisory Committee. Scientific Report of the 2015 Dietary Guidelines Advisory Committee. Washington, DC: US Department of Agriculture, US Department of Health and Human Services; 2015:17. US Department of Agriculture. http://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/. Accessed 28 Mar 2017.
25. Nordmann AJ, Suter-Zimmermann K, Bucher HC, Shai I, Tuttle KR, Estruch R, Briel M. Meta-analysis comparing Mediterranean to low-fat diets for modification of cardiovascular risk factors. Am J Med. 2011;124:841–51.
26. Alexandraki I, Palacio C, Mooradian AD. Relative merits of low carbohydrate versus low-fat diets in managing obesity. South Med J. 2015;108:401–6.
27. American Diabetes Association. Foundations of care and comprehensive medical evaluation, Sec. 3. In standards of medical care in diabetes-2016. Diabetes Care. 2016;39((suppl 1)):S23–35.
28. Knowler WC, Barrett-Connor E, Fowler SE, Hamman RF, Lachin JM, Walker EA, Nathan DM, Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group. Reduction in the incidence of type 2 diabetes with lifestyle intervention or metformin. N Engl J Med. 2002;346(6):393–403.
29. Lichtenstein AH. Thematic review series: patient oriented research. Dietary fat, carbohydrate, and protein: effects on plasma lipoprotein patterns. J Lipid Res. 2006;47:1661–7.
30. Mooradian AD, Haas MJ, Wong NC. The effect of select nutrients on serum high-density lipoprotein cholesterol and apolipoprotein A-I levels. Endocr Rev. 2006;27:2–16.
31. Mooradian AD. Obesity: a rational target for managing diabetes mellitus. Growth Horm IGF Res. 2011;11(Suppl A):S79–83.
32. Wilund KR, Ferrell RE, Phares DA, Goldberg AP, Hagberg JM. Changes in high-density lipoprotein-cholesterol subfractions with exercise training may be dependent on Cholesteryl Ester Transfer Protein (CETP) genotype. Metabolism. 2002;51:774–8.
33. Halverstadt A, Phares DA, Ferrell RE, Wilund KR, Goldberg AP, Hagberg JM. High-density lipoprotein cholesterol, its subfractions, and responses to exercise training are dependent on endothelial lipase genotype. Metabolism. 2003;52:1505–11.
34. Sigal RJ, Kenny GP, Boule' NG, et al. Effects of aerobic training, resistance training, or both on glycemic control in type 2 diabetes: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2007;147:357–69.
35. Giannopoulou I, Ploutz-Snyder LL, Carhart R, Weinstock RS, Fernhall B, Goulopoulou S, Kanaley JA. Exercise is required for visceral fat loss in postmenopausal women with type 2 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2005;90:1511–8.
36. Alam S, Stolinski M, Pentecost C, Boroujerdi MA, Jones RH, Sonksen PH, Umpleby AM. The effect of a six-month exercise program on very low-density lipoprotein apolipoprotein B secretion in type 2 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2004;89:688–94.
37. Ridker PM, Danielson E, Fonseca FA, Genest J, Gotto AM Jr, Kastelein JJ, JUPITER Study Group, et al. Rosuvastatin to prevent vascular events in men and women with elevated C-reactive protein. N Engl J Med. 2008;359:2195–207.
38. Cannon CP, Blazing MA, Giugliano RP, McCagg A, White JA, Theroux P, et al. Ezetimibe added to statin therapy after acute coronary syndromes. N Engl J Med. 2015;372:2387–97.
39. Rossebø AB, Pedersen TR, Boman K, Brudi P, Chambers JB, Egstrup K, et al. Intensive lipid lowering with simvastatin and ezetimibe in aortic stenosis. N Engl J Med. 2008;359:1343–56.
40. Baigent C, Landray MJ, Reith C, Emberson J, Wheeler DC, Tomson C, et al. The effects of lowering LDL cholesterol with simvastatin plus ezetimibe in patients with chronic kidney disease (study of heart and renal protection): a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2011;377:2181–92.
41. Sabatine MS, Giugliano RP, Keech AC, Honarpour N, Wiviott SD, Murphy SA, et al.; FOURIER Steering Committee and Investigators. Evolocumab and clinical outcomes in patients with cardiovascular disease. N Engl J Med. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1615664.
42. Zieve FJ, Kalin MF, Schwartz SL, Jones MR, Bailey WL. Results of the Glucose-Lowering effect of Welchol Study (GLOWS): a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled pilot study evaluating the effect of colesevelam hydrochloride on glycemic control in subjects with type 2 diabetes. Clin Ther. 2007;29:74–83.
43. Bays HE, Goldberg RB, Truitt KE, Jones MR. Colesevelam hydrochloride therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus treated with metformin: glucose and lipid effects. Arch Intern Med. 2008;168:1975–83.
44. Fonseca VA, Rosenstock J, Wang AC, Truitt KE, Jones MR. Colesevelam HCl improves glycemic control and reduces LDL cholesterol in patients with inadequately controlled type 2 diabetes on sulfonylurea-based therapy. Diabetes Care. 2008;31:1479–84.
45. Goldberg RB, Fonseca VA, Truitt KE, Jones MR. Efficacy and safety of colesevelam in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and inadequate glycemic control receiving insulin-based therapy. Arch Intern Med. 2008;168:1531–40.
46. Davidson MH, Stein EA, Bays HE, Maki KC, Doyle RT, Shalwitz RA, COMBination of prescription Omega-3 with Simvastatin (COMBOS) Investigators, et al. Efficacy and tolerability of adding prescription omega-3 fatty acids 4 g/d to simvastatin 40 mg/d in hypertriglyceridemic patients: an 8-week, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Clin Ther. 2007;29:1354–67.
47. Marchioli R, Schweiger C, Tavazzi L, Valagussa F. Efficacy of n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids after myocardial infarction: results of GISSI-Prevenzione trial. Gruppo Italiano per lo Studio della Sopravvivenza nell'Infarto Miocardico. Lipids. 2001;36(Suppl):S119–26.
48. Yokoyama M, Origasa H, Matsuzaki M, Matsuzawa Y, Saito Y, Ishikawa Y, Japan EPA Lipid Intervention Study (JELIS) Investigators, et al. Effects of eicosapentaenoic acid on major coronary events in hypercholesterolaemic patients (JELIS): a randomised open-label, blinded endpoint analysis. Lancet. 2007;369:1090–8.
49. ORIGIN Trial Investigators, Bosch J, Gerstein HC, Dagenais GR, Díaz R, Dyal L, Jung H, et al. n-3 fatty acids and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with dysglycemia. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:309–18.
50. American Diabetes Association. Cardiovascular disease and risk management. Sec. 8. In standards of medical care in diabetes-2016. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(suppl 1):S60–71.
51. Gryn SE, Hegele RA. Novel therapeutics in hypertriglyceridemia. Curr Opin Lipidol. 2015;26:484–91.
52. Patel RS, Scopelliti EM, Savelloni J. Therapeutic management of familial hypercholesterolemia: current and emerging drug therapies. Pharmacotherapy. 2015;35:1189–203.
53. Yang X, Lee SR, Choi YS, Alexander VJ, Digenio A, Yang Q, et al. Reduction in lipoprotein-associated apoC-III levels following volanesorsen therapy: phase 2 randomized trial results. J Lipid Res. 2016;57:706–13.
54. Safarova MS, Kullo IJ. My approach to the patient with familial hypercholesterolemia. Mayo Clin Proc. 2016;91:770–86.

Obesity and Diabetes

39

Sean Wharton, Christy Costanian, Talia Gershon, and Rebecca A. G. Christensen

Chapter Objectives

1. To contrast the utility of assessments of obesity and their accuracy in determining health risk
2. To discuss genetic and environmental causes of obesity, and diabetes
3. To summarize different treatment methods for obesity and diabetes

Introduction

The worldwide prevalence of obesity has been increasing since the 1980s, and by 2014 600 million adults had obesity [1]. There are region-specific variations in these rates; nonetheless, rates of obesity have been increasing in both developing and developed nations [1]. Furthermore, it has been estimated that the rates of obesity will continue to rise and reach over 40% of adults in the United Kingdom and over 50% of adults in the United States by 2030 [2].

Obesity has been recognized as a major public health concern owing to the considerable increases in health risks associated with excess weight. Having obesity is associated with an increased risk of having chronic [3] and communicable diseases [4]. Furthermore, having obesity is associated with 4.7–13 years of life lost [5, 6], with the greatest decrease in life expectancy for individuals with a body mass index ≥45 kg/m^2 [5]. This places a considerable burden on healthcare systems.

It has been estimated that more than $100 billion is spent annually in the United States for direct healthcare costs associated with obesity [7, 8]. These costs can affect people both individually and systemically. For example, a study observed that patients with overweight and obesity paid considerably more (22–41%) for an emergency department visit precipitated by shortness of breath and chest pains than those with normal weight, with cost increasing per BMI category [9]. Furthermore, obesity can have considerable costs in relation to loss of productivity. Results from a large observational study in the United States observed that individuals with excess weight are 32–118% more likely to report missing work in the past year with the likelihood increasing with each BMI category [10].

Type 1 diabetes was traditionally associated with individuals with lower weight. However, with improvements in glycemic control and increasing use of insulin, a weight-promoting hormone, now many patients with type 1 diabetes also have obesity [11]. Weight management has been challenging in this group, as insulin is the primary treatment [12] and the fear of hypoglycemic can promote excessive calorie intake [13]. Type 1 diabetes and obesity are not well studied at this stage; therefore this chapter will focus on type 2 diabetes (T2D).

Assessment of Obesity

Body Mass Index (BMI)

Body mass index (BMI) is the most commonly used method for classifying individuals as having obesity and is calculated by dividing weight in kilograms by height in meters squared. The World Health Organization (WHO) has provided guidelines for using BMI to categorize individuals as having underweight, normal weight, overweight, or obesity (Table 39.1). BMI is meant to be a measure of health, and research has suggested that increasing levels of BMI are associated with poorer health outcomes [1]. As such, obesity

S. Wharton (✉)
The Wharton Medical Clinic, Hamilton, ON, Canada

York University, School of Kinesiology and Health Science, Toronto, ON, Canada

C. Costanian
York University, School of Kinesiology and Health Science, Toronto, ON, Canada

T. Gershon · R. A. G. Christensen
The Wharton Medical Clinic, Hamilton, ON, Canada

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_39

Table 39.1 The World Health Organization's weight categories according to body mass index

Category	Body mass index
Normal weight	18.5–24.9 kg/m^2
Overweight	25.0–29.9 kg/m^2
Obesity class I	30.0–34.9 kg/m^2
Obesity class II	35.0–39.9 kg/m^2
Obesity class III	≥40 kg/m^2

can be further subcategorized as Class I, 30.0–34.9 kg/m^2; Class II, 35–39.9 kg/m^2; and Class III, ≥40 kg/m^2.

Although BMI is currently used to track trends in obesity, there are criticisms for its lack of utility in determining body composition, as well as in predicting morbidity and mortality. Additionally, due to differences in the accumulation of central adiposity, BMI thresholds may not be appropriate for all ethnicities. Indeed, a WHO expert committee [14] and other international organizations [15, 16] have recognized this issue and recommend lowering thresholds by 2.5 kg/m^2 for individuals of Asian descent. However, there is considerably variability in the health risk associated with a given BMI in all ethnic groups. For example, individuals who identify as white in the United States have a lower body fat percentage for a given BMI than those in Europe [17]. Thus, to avoid confusion and due to the lack of sufficient concise evidence, WHO guidelines still use the cutoff of a BMI ≥30 kg/m^2 for obesity [14]. Moreover, BMI does not consider a subject's body composition when classifying their health risk [18] and therefore may not be an accurate predictor of cardiovascular disease and other conditions that correlated with adipose percentage, adipose type, and location. Morbidity and mortality staging systems, such as EOSS (Edmonton obesity staging system), have been proposed for use instead of, or along with, BMI.

Body Circumference(s)

Waist Circumference

Excess abdominal adiposity is associated with a greater risk of death [19] and having chronic conditions such as T2D [20, 21] irrespective of BMI. As such, waist circumference can be used to assess health. However, there is considerable disagreement regarding the most optimal site to measure waist circumference. The WHO recommends measuring a person's waist circumference at the midpoint between the lower margin of the last palpable rib and the top of the iliac crest [22].

The National Institutes of Health (NIH) has identified waist circumferences ≥102 cm for men and ≥88 cm for women as an indication of increased risk of morbidity and mortality [22]. However, these thresholds have been criticized due to known ethnic differences in abdominal fat distribution [23]; therefore, ethnic-specific thresholds have been proposed to address this limitation. For example, the use of lower thresholds (87–90 cm for men, 54–77 cm for women) is recommended for South Asians as it was observed that these thresholds were more strongly associated with ill-health in this population [24]. There has also been criticism regarding the use of universal waist circumference thresholds for all BMI categories, since the NIH waist circumference thresholds were developed by taking the average waist circumference for a large sample of white men and women with a BMI of 30 kg/m^2 [25]. Therefore, the NIH thresholds may be more of a surrogate measure for BMI rather than an assessment of health risk. To address this limitation, Ardern et al. [26] developed BMI-specific waist circumference thresholds that are more strongly related to poor health. These new thresholds range from 87 cm (normal weight) to 124 cm (Class II obese) in men and 79 cm (normal weight) to 115 cm (Class II obese) in women.

Waist-to-Hip Ratio

Waist-to-hip ratio is another tool used to measure body fat distribution and evaluate health risks associated with excess weight [27]. Waist-to-hip ratio is calculated by dividing an individual's waist circumference by their hip circumference [18]. While there is no agreement regarding the most optimal site to measure waist circumference, in general protocols recommend that hip circumference be measured around the widest portion of the buttocks. Waist-to-hip ratios are meant to build on solely waist circumference measurements as hip circumferences are thought to provide information regarding key measures of body composition like muscle mass, while waist circumference is used to assess abdominal adiposity [28]. The WHO recommends that waist-to-hip ratios of ≥0.9 for men and ≥0.85 for women be used to identify a substantially increased risk of ill-health [27].

Several criticisms regarding the utility of waist-to-hip ratio in assessing body composition and health have been made. To begin, changes in weight are not consistently correlated with changes in waist-to-hip circumferences. For example, when individuals gain or lose weight, their waist-to-hip ratio tends to increase and decrease, respectively. However, patients can have increases in their waist-to-hip ratio, while their remaining weight is stable [29]. Research has also suggested that changes in waist-to-hip ratios independent of changes of weight are not associated with improvements in cardiovascular health risk [30]. Thus, it may be the change in weight that contributes to the changes in waist-to-hip ratio that is associated with a risk of ill-health rather than changes in the ratio itself [31].

Body Fat

Two types of body fat are present: subcutaneous and visceral. Subcutaneous fat is located directly under the skin and is not associated with poor health [30]. On the other hand, visceral fat, also known as organ fat, surrounds the

organs, and when in excess it is closely associated with metabolic complications [32]. The total of both subcutaneous and visceral fat is considered when measuring an individual's body fat content, which is usually given as a percentage of the total body mass. Many methods exist for evaluating body fat, and these methods include, but are not limited to, skinfold thickness, absorptiometry (DEXA), and the 4-compartment model. While there is criticism regarding the use of universal cutoffs due to ethnic differences in body composition [33, 34], cutoffs of ≥25% and ≥35% are proposed for men and women, respectively [35]. The various methods of measuring body fat are described in further detail below.

Skinfold Thickness

Skinfold thickness is measured using a caliper. The caliper is used to measure the thickness of subcutaneous adipose tissue. Measurements should be taken when an individual is standing in a relaxed position. The caliper is then used to take skinfold measurements, typically along the right side of the body, at various points such as the bicep, tricep, subscapular, and supra-iliac areas. These values are then entered into prediction equations that convert skinfold measures to body fat percentages. However, there can be considerable variability in body fat distribution based on differences in sex [36, 37], ethnicity [23], and age [37]. Thus, rather than universal thresholds, such as those recommended for BMI categorization, various population-specific equations have been suggested [38–41], such as the sex-specific equations proposed by Jackson and Pollock.

Bioelectrical Impedance Analysis (BIA)

Lean tissue is highly conductive due to its increased electrolyte and water content compared to fat which is more of an insulator. BIA uses these differences in the flow of electric current through body tissues to estimate body fat. An electric current is sent through your body, and based on the rate it returns, an individual's total body water can be calculated. This total body water value is then used to estimate fat free (muscle, bone, tissue) and fat mass [42].

BIA is an easy, inexpensive, and quick way to assess body fat. However, many factors can affect the accuracy of this measurement and should be controlled for when using BIA to assess body fat. Dehydration and moderate exercise increases the body's electrical resistance leading to an overestimation of body fat, and consumption of a meal decreases electrical resistance therefore resulting in lower estimates of body fat [43]. Additionally, having excess weight is associated with greater amounts of extracellular fluids. Thus, BIA may not be an appropriate tool to assess body fat in individuals with overweight or obesity as extracellular fluids will contribute to an underestimation of body fat [43].

Dual-Energy X-Ray Absorptiometry (DEXA)

DEXA was initially developed for the measurement of total bone mineral since it uses x-rays to distinguish between and measure three major bodily components: bone mineral, fat mass, and nonbone lean tissue. The advantages of using DEXA are that it operates with a safe radiation level for a whole-body scan [44] and provides a more accurate assessment of body fat than the other methods outlined above [45, 46]. However, the cost associated with the equipment and expertise to run the test often makes the use of DEXA to assess body fat prohibitive. There are also machine specifications that limit the use of DEXA for assessing body fat in individuals with severe obesity. For example, the maximum weight that most machines can hold is 300 pounds with a width of 60 cm [47]. Additionally, DEXA determines an individual's body fat based on underlying assumptions regarding the distribution of bone mineral, fat, and nonbone lean tissue, which may be inaccurate due to person-to-person variability. Similar to other tools used to assess body fat, factors such as level of hydration and age can lead to an altered body composition distribution.

The 4-Compartment Model

To assess an individual's body fat using the 4-compartment model, four measurements must be taken: (1) body weight, (2) body density, (3) total body water, and (4) total body mineral [48, 49]. Various tools can be used to measure these four factors such as water displacement tests or DEXA. Each factor is then put into a prediction equation to estimate body fat. While this method is considered more accurate than other methods for assessing body fat discussed in this chapter and is frequently used to validate more simplistic measures [49], similar to DEXA, specialized laboratory equipment costs and technician expertise mean that this method is often not practical or feasible for the rapid assessment of body fat [49].

Causes of Obesity

In the most basic terms, obesity develops as a result of an energy imbalance, in which an individual consumes a greater amount of calories than they expend. However, obesity is a complex, multifactorial disease, and there are many avenues that contribute to this energy imbalance, without one definitive cause. A system map referred to as the "spaghetti map" was constructed to describe the interplay of factors that result in the development of obesity [50]. Sixteen thematic clusters are represented on this map, which include categories such as the influence media, social, and psychological factors. Each cluster has various sub-factors which make up this diagram, the description of which is far beyond the scope of this textbook and chapter. As such, this section will focus on the factors that are most salient to the development of obesity and T2D.

Hereditable Factors

While obesity is often viewed as a condition resulting from disordered eating, or other patient choice-related cause(s), genetics play a key role in the development of obesity. Genome studies have identified over 200 genes that are associated with body weight and adiposity in mice [51]. In humans, a single-gene mutation in 11 genes was found to be responsible for the development of over 150 cases of obesity. A deficiency of the melanocortin 4 receptor (MC4) gene [52] and Prader-Willi chromosomal abnormalities [53] are the most common congenital single-gene mutations leading to obesity. Furthermore, genes associated with hyperphagia, a characteristic typically defined as a behavioral cause of obesity, have been identified [54]. Taken together, this evidence suggests there is likely a variety of genes and genetic mutations that have contributed to the development of obesity [51, 55].

Population studies have provided additional evidence that supports the notion of a strong hereditable component to obesity. For example, research suggests that children who have one or both parents with a BMI greater than 30 kg/m^2 are at a 2.5–10.4 times greater risk of having childhood obesity [56]. Moreover, studies conducted on monozygotic twins further support the influence of genes on obesity development. Studies have observed a strong correlation in the BMI of separately reared monozygotic twins ranging from 0.61 to 0.70 [57, 58]. However, this is not to discount the effects of environmental factors on the development of obesity. Indeed, when comparing the BMIs of monozygotic and dizygotic twins reared in the same environment, their BMIs were more strongly correlated than those reared apart [57].

Environmental Factors

Diet

Obesity has been referred to as overnutrition in comparison to the energy expenditure, which alludes to the importance of dietary factors in the development of this chronic disease. As energy expenditure is challenging to modify, diet frequently becomes the key modifiable risk factor. An increase in caloric consumption has been observed in most high-income countries from the 1980s through the mid-1990s that appears concomitant with increases in the prevalence of obesity [59]. There were country-specific trends in caloric consumption that further support this notion. For example, the United States had one of the largest increases in BMI over the 10-year period (1.5 kg/m^2 on average) as well as the largest increase in caloric consumption per capita (314 kcal/day). Nonetheless, researchers state that changes in absolute caloric intake alone cannot explain the increase in the rates of obesity that has been occurring over the past four decades [60]. Thus, other factors, such as the macronutrient content of an individual's diet, may also contribute to changes in weight.

The influences of individual macronutrients, such as sugar and fats, have previously been explored with equivocal results. For example, when controlling for differences in total caloric and sugar consumption, each 100 kcal increase in dietary fat has been associated with a 0.21 kg/m^2 increase in BMI [59]. Additionally, research suggests that high dietary fat intake in women with overweight or obesity who have a familial history of obesity is associated with significant increases in their BMI [61]. Conversely, a large meta-analysis observed that increased sugar intake was associated with a 0.75 kg/m^2 increase in BMI. These results are in line with the WHO recommendations to decrease the intake of free sugars to <10% of total caloric intake to decrease an individual's likelihood of having overweight or obesity and to decrease sugar intake to <5% for greater health benefits [62]. Thus, while it still remains unclear exactly how macronutrients contribute to the development of obesity, both the quantity and type of caloric intake appear to play a role.

Physical Activity

When energy expenditure is lower than caloric intake, the balance leans toward increased weight. Theoretically, increases in energy expenditure through the participation in physical activity could result in sufficient caloric deficits to delay or prevent disease onset. Indeed, increased physical activity is often associated with decreases in weight [63] and greater weight loss maintenance over the long term [64]. However, research suggests that individuals with overweight and obesity complete significantly less steps per day than their normal weight counterparts [65]. Moreover, individuals with obesity are unlikely to meet basic public health physical activity recommendations of 30 minutes/day of moderate to vigorous physical activity a minimum of 5 days/week, completing only an average of 17.3 minutes of moderate and 3.2 minutes of vigorous physical activity a day.

Physical inactivity is becoming a major health concern worldwide. While individuals with overweight and obesity participate in less physical activity on average than those with normal weight, overall less than 5% of adults in the United States meet public health physical activity recommendations [65]. While purposeful physical activity, also referred to as exercise, plays a role in weight management, nonpurposeful physical activity may also be contributing to the increased rates of obesity. Indeed, adults spend more than half of their day being sedentary [65]. This is likely in part due to shifts in occupational demands during the twentieth century which led to a decrease in physically intensive jobs, such as labor jobs, and increase in the rate of jobs with significant sedentary time, such as office managers [66]. These trends had the unintended side effect of decreasing the amount of structured nonpurposeful physical activity and therefore decreasing caloric expenditure throughout the course of a workday. Moreover, it is important to consider changes to the built environment, which has also occurred

over this time period that may further contribute to physical inactivity. Research suggests that individuals who live in more walkable neighbors participate in more physical activity and are less likely to have overweight or obesity [67]. Thus, it appears that other factors, beyond personal choices, have contribute to low physical activity levels and, by extension, increase in the rates of obesity.

Type 2 Diabetes (T2D)

Obesity and a genetic predisposition are well-known risk factors for T2D [68]. The relationship between obesity and T2D is mostly described as being interdependent with obesity significantly increasing the risk of T2D, since over 90% of patients with T2D are obese [69]. Four prospective cohort studies examining the role of obesity in cardiovascular risk factors and disease concluded that children with overweight or obesity and who also had overweight or obesity as adults had increased risks of developing T2D, hypertension, dyslipidemia, and carotid artery atherosclerosis. The risks of these outcomes among children with obesity who became nonobese by adulthood were similar to those among children who were never obese [70].

A strong association between increasing BMI and glucose intolerance exists [71]. It has been established that insulin action declines as a function of BMI. This relationship is approximately linear in both men and women, and so obesity can be considered as being in an insulin-resistant state. Moreover, a long duration of obesity is associated with lower fasting insulin levels, indicating pancreatic β-cell exhaustion. Those who had Class III obesity and insulin resistance need a very large amount of insulin to maintain glucose tolerance. It is clear that individuals with obesity and insulin resistance impose a large stress on pancreatic β-cells, and this is maintained for prolonged periods of time [71].

It must be noted that the strong associations between excess body fat and T2D do not necessarily indicate that being overweight or obese will cause T2D, since not all individuals with obesity develop diabetes and not all individuals with T2D have obesity [69]. Therefore, obesity alone is not sufficient to cause T2D. Furthermore, obesity, insulin resistance, and eventually T2D share common risk factors, as they are included in the continuum of risk factors for cardiometabolic disease. Thus, the fundamental shared risk factors for obesity and T2D at the individual level may be poor diet and physical inactivity [72]. The relationship between obesity and T2D is affected by several modifying factors, such as duration of obesity, distribution of body fat, physical activity, diet, and genetics/ethnicity [73]. In the last half century, lifestyles, including dietary habits, have changed across the world, accompanied by the global obesity epidemic. While physical activity has decreased in many regions, especially in low-income countries, in high-income countries such as the United States, overall physical activity has remained stable or even increased over the last 30 years as the obesity epidemic has mounted [72, 74]. This suggests that the main driver of the obesity epidemic in the United States may be a worsening diet, while in most low-income countries, it is likely a combination of decreased physical activity and worsening diet [72, 75, 76].

The excess adiposity accompanying T2D, particularly in a central or visceral location, is thought to be part of the pathogenic process [73]. The pathophysiological mechanism between obesity and T2D relates primarily to the adipose tissue, which has been recognized as an endocrine organ that secretes hormones and communicates with the central nervous system to regulate appetite and metabolism [73]. The increased adipocyte mass leads to increased levels of circulating free fatty acids (FFA) and other fat cell products, called adipokines. Adipocytes secrete a number of biologic products (nonesterified free fatty acids, retinol-binding protein 4, leptin, TNF-, resistin, and adiponectin). Again, studies have generally suggested that circulating levels of these products are elevated in individuals with T2D [73]. In addition to regulating body weight, appetite, and energy expenditure, adipokines also modulate insulin sensitivity. The increased production of free fatty acids and some adipokines may cause insulin resistance in skeletal muscle and liver [73]. For example, free fatty acids impair glucose utilization in skeletal muscle, promote glucose production by the liver, and impair beta cell function. In contrast, the production by adipocytes of adiponectin, an insulin-sensitizing peptide, is reduced in obesity, and this may contribute to hepatic insulin resistance [73]. Adipocyte products and adipokines also produce an inflammatory state and may explain why markers of inflammation such as IL-6 and C-reactive protein are often elevated in T2D [73]. Adipose tissue also can cause insulin resistance by elevating leptin levels [77]. Leptin is a protein produced by adipocytes. The main role of leptin is to regulate food intake and energy expenditure by reducing food intake and increasing sympathetic nervous system outflow, therefore inducing weight loss. Recent evidence showed that leptin levels fall during weight loss and increase brain activity in areas involved in emotional, cognitive, and sensory control of food intake [78]. Restoration of leptin levels maintains weight loss and reverses the changes in brain activity. Thus, leptin is a critical factor linking reduced energy stores to eating behavior. In obesity, the actions of both leptin and insulin within the liver are resistant. Therefore, in individuals with obesity, leptin levels are elevated, and this has been found to positively correlate with insulin resistance [78]. Leptin can impair the production of insulin and reduce the effects of insulin on the liver.

Treatment for Obesity and T2D

A modest weight loss of 5–10% has been shown to result in improvements in morbidity and mortality risks among individuals with overweight and obesity [79]. Thus, weight loss is typically prescribed to individuals with overweight and obesity. Obesity and T2D are comorbid conditions with approximately 85% of patients with T2D having overweight or obesity [69]. Moreover, excess weight has been associated with elevated blood glucose levels [80, 81]. Weight loss has been shown to result in improvements in glucose levels [82–86] and even complete remission of T2D [83, 84]. Therefore, treatments for obesity are often also prescribed for T2D. Treatment options for obesity and T2D are categorized into three domains: lifestyle, pharmacological, and surgical interventions.

Lifestyle Intervention

As with T2D, lifestyle intervention is the first-line treatment option for weight management. Lifestyle interventions for weight management consist of dietary, physical activity, or combined interventions with variable success (range, 2–13% of initial body weight loss [87, 88]). While in the short term (<6 months) dietary and combined interventions appear to be equally more effective than those that are purely physical in nature, over the long term (≥1 year), combined interventions seem to have greater weight loss success [88–90].

The benefits of combined lifestyle interventions for glycemic control in individuals with impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) [91, 92] and T2D [93, 94]have been well established in large-scale randomized control trials. Specifically, the *Diabetes Prevention Program* (DPP) in the United States and *Finnish Diabetes Prevention Study* (DPS) enrolled IGT patients and randomized them to an intensive combined lifestyle intervention program, or control, with the DPP including a third arm prescribed metformin. Patients participating in the intensive lifestyle intervention had greater improvements in key glycemic indicators such as fasting plasma glucose [91, 92] and glycated hemoglobin [92] than controls. Moreover, a smaller proportion of patients progressed to T2D in intensive lifestyle intervention group than controls [91, 92] or those prescribed metformin [91]. In patients who already have T2D, combined lifestyle intervention can also result in significant improvements in glycemic control. The Look AHEAD study randomized patients with T2D to receive an intensive combined lifestyle intervention or a diabetes support and education group and also observed greater decreases in weight and glycated hemoglobin after 1 [93, 94] and 4 year(s) [94] of treatment in the intensive combined intervention group. Unfortunately, these improvements due to the lifestyle intervention decreased overtime [93, 94].

Currently, there is considerable disagreement regarding what is the most optimal diet or physical activity type for weight management. For example, dietary recommendations for weight management once focused on decreasing not only caloric intake but also the intake of dietary fat as this macronutrient was thought to be associated with ill-health. However, results from several meta-analyses suggest that at 1 year there is no significant difference in the weight loss achieved by patients prescribed a low-fat versus low-carbohydrate diet [95–97]. When taking into consideration the management of T2D, certain types of diets may be more optimal as they are associated with not only weight loss but also improvements in glycemic control. Specifically, individuals who consumed a low-carbohydrate diet had greater decreases in their glycated hemoglobin [95] than participants consuming a low-fat diet.

Physical activity can be categorized as aerobic or anaerobic. Aerobic, also referred to as cardio, includes activities like running and dancing. Anaerobic, also referred to as resistance, are types of activities that can only be performed in short bursts due to the muscle oxygen demand, such as weight lifting or sprinting. Research suggests that either aerobic or anaerobic exercise interventions can result in improvements in glycated hemoglobin; however, combined exercise interventions resulted in greater improvements than solely aerobic or anaerobic interventions [98]. Owing to the health benefits associated with physical activity, the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Diabetes Association have released a joint statement which advocates for individuals with T2D to participate in both aerobic and anaerobic physical activity weekly. Specifically, they recommend individuals with T2D participate in a minimum of 3 days per week of aerobic and 2–3 days per week of anaerobic activities for improvement in blood sugar [99]. For weight management, participating in both anaerobic and aerobic physical activity is also more beneficial than aerobic or resistance alone [100, 101]. Furthermore, a greater amount (>250 minutes/week vs. 150 minutes/week) of moderate to vigorous physical activity is recommended for significant weight loss [101].

Patients are able to achieve clinically significant improvements in their T2D and weight when implementing behavioral changes. Yet, these improvements are often transient in nature as patients are prone to regaining weight or returning to previous habits [88, 102, 103]. This can be especially detrimental for patients with T2D as weight (re)gain is associated with a concomitant increases in glycated hemoglobin in populations with [104] and without T2D [105, 106]. Thus, the use of other interventions that can directly counteract physiological changes that make individuals prone to regaining weight, such as pharmacological or surgical interventions, may be advantageous.

Pharmacological Interventions

Pharmacological intervention is recommended for individuals who have attempted and previously failed at losing weight and have a BMI ≥30 or BMI ≥27 with at least 1 other medical condition [107]. Pharmaceuticals have a distinct advantage over lifestyle interventions as they directly target physiological changes that occur with and may inhibit weight loss and weight maintenance. Pharmaceutical intervention for weight can also provide additional benefits in the management of T2D beyond weight loss. Research suggest that taking weight management pharmaceuticals is associated with greater improvements in blood glucose levels, and other metabolic parameters such as waist circumference, and blood pressure than lifestyle intervention alone [108–110]. Moreover, patients who take weight management pharmaceuticals are also less likely to develop T2D [110], and patients with T2D have a greater rate of remission [85, 86]. Thus, effective interventions for weight management should commence as soon as T2D, or impaired glucose tolerance or abdominal obesity, is diagnosed.

Options for weight management for pharmaceuticals remain limited with only two agents available worldwide. Orlistat (Xenical), which has been available for over two decades, is the most widely approved weight management pharmaceutical. Its side effects include oily stools and fecal incontinence, which contribute to the high attrition rates (33–77% [111, 112]) observed among patients taking this agent. Patients prescribed orlistat lose significantly more weight than those just participating in lifestyle interventions, with T2D patients losing on average 4.6–6.2% of their initial body weight, and significantly greater improvements in key diabetes indicators such as glycated hemoglobin and fasting blood glucose [113]. However, it is unclear whether these improvements in T2D indicators are due to the medication's effects or to the amount of weight loss achieved.

A GLP1 analogue, liraglutide 3.0 mg (Saxenda), has been approved for use within the United States, Canada, Mexico, the UAE, and most European countries. Several large randomized control trials, referred to as the *Satiety and Clinical Adiposity – Liraglutide Evidence in Nondiabetic and Diabetic People* (SCALE), have examined the efficacy of this pharmaceutical for weight management. The only SCALE study which examined individuals with T2D observed that after 56 weeks of treatment, individuals taking the medication had a greater weight loss (6% versus 2% weight loss) and improvements in glycemic control than those taking the placebo [114]. It is important to note that liraglutide 3.0 mg was initially prescribed and still remains on the market as a T2D medication (Victoza) at the maximum therapeutic dose of 1.8 mg, which may allude to greater beneficial effects in respective to the management of T2D compared to other weight management pharmaceuticals. Only one study has directly compared the efficacy of orlistat, liraglutide, and lifestyle modification for weight management, but it excluded individuals with T2D [109]. Nevertheless, patients in this study who were prescribed liraglutide 3.0 mg lost more weight and had greater improvements in their blood glucose than patients prescribed orlistat or just a lifestyle intervention after 20 and 56 weeks of treatment [109].

Other pharmaceuticals available for weight management include a phentermine and topiramate combination (Qsymia), a bupropion and naltrexone combination (Contrave), and lorcaserin (Belviq). However, these pharmaceuticals are only approved for weight management in the United States and are under review in Canada, Europe, and other countries. Several studies have examined the efficacy of these medications for glycemic control and weight management in individuals with T2D. All three of these medications resulted in significantly greater weight loss (lorcaserin, −9.3 versus −7.5 kg [82]; phentermine/topiramate, −9.1 versus −2.6 kg [85]; and bupropion/naltrexone, −5.3 versus −1.9 kg [86]) than placebo. Moreover, patients with T2D had greater improvements in their glycated hemoglobin and required the addition of less T2D medication to control their blood sugars than those just participating in the lifestyle intervention [82, 85, 86].

The prescription of pharmaceuticals is much more common in the treatment of T2D than weight. This may be due to the more acute detrimental effects that high blood glucose can have on a patient when the effects of excessive weight tend to occur over the long term. Diabetes medications can have a beneficial (i.e., metformin, liraglutide) or detrimental (i.e., insulin, secretagogues) effect on a patient's ability to lose weight [107, 115, 116]. Thus, it is important to consider the effects that these medications can have on a patient's weight prior to prescribing them. This is in line with recommendations from the Endocrine Society which recommended weight-losing and weight-neutral medications as first- and second-line agents for T2D management in patients with overweight or obesity [107]. Further, if insulin therapy is necessary, it is recommended to co-prescribe a diabetes medication with weight-negative properties to mitigate the weight gain typically associated with insulin [107]. Given the association between weight gain and elevated blood glucose levels [80, 81], it may be advantageous to prescribe weight-neutral and weight-negative T2D medications as first- and second-line treatment of diabetes in lean populations as well as overweight and obese.

Surgical Intervention

Compared to lifestyle and pharmaceutical interventions, patients who undergo bariatric surgery lose more weight and maintain a greater proportion of this loss over the long term,

making bariatric surgery the most effective treatment for obesity [117]. However, there are lifelong dietary changes and potential complications that accompany this intervention [117–119] which had meant that until recently, bariatric surgery was reserved for individuals with severe obesity. Multiple international organizations [15, 16] recommend bariatric surgery for individuals who had previously failed at weight loss and have a BMI ≥40 kg/m^2 or a BMI ≥35 kg/m^2 with at least 1 comorbidity. However, with bariatric surgery being recognized as a metabolic surgery due to the reduction in cardiometabolic risk factor levels observed post-surgery, as well as due to the differences for disease risk attributed to excess weight by ethnicity, these organizations now recommend consideration of patients with lower (i.e., <35 kg/m^2) BMIs for this surgery.

The International Federation for the Surgery of Obesity and Metabolic Disorders surveyed national organizations in 56 countries to determine trends in bariatric surgery. This survey contained 16 possible procedures. Sleeve gastrectomy was the most common procedure (45.9%), followed by Roux-en-Y gastric bypass (39.6%), and then gastric banding (7.4%), with no other procedure accounting for greater than 2% of procedures performed worldwide [120]. Below is a brief description of the three most common surgical procedures:

- Roux-En-Y Gastric Bypass: A small portion of the upper stomach is made into a pouch and is attached to the jejunum, bypassing a portion of the digestive system and making a y shape, which gives this procedure its name [117]. This procedure is referred to as both a restrictive and malabsorptive weight loss procedure. It is considered restrictive, as the resizing of the stomach restricts the amount of food that a patient can consume, and malabsorptive, as bypassing part of the stomach and intestine results in decreased absorption of nutrients.
- Sleeve Gastrectomy: A large portion of the stomach is removed, and the remainder is stapled closed resulting in a smaller tubular shaped stomach [119]. This is a purely restrictive as the new smaller size of the stomach decreases the amount of calories the patient can consume [121], but no bypassing of the digestive system takes place to result in malabsorption.
- Gastric Banding: A small, thin band, typically made of a flexible material such as silicon, is placed around the upper stomach to create a pouch [117]. Similar to the sleeve gastrectomy, this is a purely restrictive procedure. For the majority of patients, frequent adjustments to the band are necessary within the first 2 years to promote and maintain weight loss [122].

Bariatric surgery is a relatively safe procedure, with 30-day mortality rates ranging from 0.05% to 0.5% [119, 123] and 30-day complication rates of 1.4–5.9% [119]. One-year post-surgery, patients who underwent sleeve gastrectomy (range, 68.2–69.7% excess weight [123, 124]) and Roux-en-Y (60.5–62.6% excess weight [118, 123, 124]) appear to lose comparable amounts of weight, and patients who underwent gastric banding (42.6–47.5% excess weight [118, 123]) have considerably less weight loss.

Bariatric surgery may be one of the best tools for the management and treatment of T2D. Patients with T2D typically lose less weight than nondiabetic populations in lifestyle and pharmaceutical interventions. However, a meta-analysis observed that patients in the T2D subsample lost more weight than the full sample of patients with and without T2D. This may suggest the lower mean weight loss in the full sample was due to less optimal weight outcomes in patients without T2D [84]. Moreover 86.6% of patients with T2D experience improved or complete resolution of their diabetes post-surgery [84]. Over half of patients with T2D that undergo bariatric surgery have complete resolution of their diabetes regardless of the procedure; however, the proportion of patients who go into remission is significantly greater for those with sleeve gastrectomy (79.7%) and Roux-en-Y (80.3%) than those with gastric banding (56.7%) [84]. Lastly, patients who undergo bariatric surgery can have additional benefits beyond significant weight loss and improvements or resolution of their T2D or IGT, such as a decrease in mortality risk [125–127] and risk of T2D complications [126, 127].

Gastric banding is now being recognized as an inferior bariatric surgery procedure, likely due to the decreased weight loss and improvements in comorbidities. Furthermore, due to complications and insufficient weight loss, over half of patients who undergo gastric banding will need band removal and conversion to another type of bariatric procedure [128]. Owing to these suboptimal outcomes, the Canadian Diabetes Association has recommended against the use of the gastric band [12]. This may mean that other procedures will increase in popularity as gastric banding falls into disuse. For example, a less common surgery that is gaining traction is the biliopancreatic diversion with the duodenal switch. This procedure is more invasive than the other three procedures discussed but has better results in terms of diabetes remission and long-term weight loss than the more common alternatives (i.e., Roux-en-Y bypass and gastric banding) [84].

Conclusion

Obesity is a chronic disease categorized by excessive weight with ill-health effects. BMI is the most common tool to categorize obesity, with a recommended threshold of ≥30 kg/m^2. There are many different methods to assess obesity; however, due to considerable differences in the associations

of excess weight and ill-health based on age, sex, and ethnicity, heavy criticism exists regarding the use of universal thresholds. Nonetheless, these measurements remain in use due to their ability to assess the potential health impacts of excess weight.

Obesity is a chronic, multifactorial disease. Multiple factors have been identified that are associated with developing obesity, with genetics, diet, and physical activity being the factors that are most salient to obesity and T2D. Mechanistic studies have determined the presence of several genes associated with having obesity, and epidemiological studies have further supported this evidence. Increased caloric intake, macronutrient content, and lack of physical activity also play a role in the development of obesity, but these are modifiable risk factors which can be manipulated in the treatment of these conditions.

Treatment options for obesity, as with T2D, can be categorized as lifestyle, pharmacological, or surgical. Lifestyle intervention is a first line of treatment; however, treatment benefits are often not maintained over the long term. Thus, medications and surgery provide additional opportunities for weight management and have been shown to have greater efficacy for weight loss and improvements in comorbidities than lifestyle interventions alone.

Concluding Remarks

1. Obesity is a chronic medical characterized by excess weight associated with ill-health effects. For trend analysis and owing to the ease of measurement, a BMI $\geq$30 kg/m^2 is the most frequently used definition.
2. A multitude of factors contribute to the development of obesity, however, genetics, diet, and physical activity are the most important. T2D is closely linked to obesity and share similar biological processes and epidemiology.
3. Lifestyle, pharmaceutical, and surgical treatment options all have the potential to improve, and eliminate the negative health effects of T2D or excess weight; however, surgical interventions are the most successful.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Body mass index is a tool commonly used to classify an individual as having obesity. What threshold is used to define obesity?
   (a) Greater than or equal to 27.5 kg/m^2.
   (b) Greater than or equal to 30 kg/m^2.
   (c) Greater than or equal to 35 kg/m^2.
   (d) Greater than or equal to 40 kg/m^2.
   (e) No threshold exists.
2. Which of the following are methods used to assess obesity?
   (a) Skinfold measures
   (b) Dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA)
   (c) Forehead circumference
   (d) A and B
   (e) All of the above
3. What are some common demographics that make the use of absolute thresholds for the assessment of obesity and its ill-health effects difficult?
   (a) Age
   (b) Sex
   (c) Ethnicity
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
4. Which of the following is true regarding the notion that there is hereditary component to the development of obesity?
   (a) Children who have one parent with obesity are at a greater risk for developing obesity than those with two.
   (b) BMIs of monozygotic and dizygotic twins raised together are more similar than those raised apart.
   (c) Genes have been found that are associated with hypophagia.
   (d) All of the above.
   (e) None of the above.
5. Which of the following are patient modifiable risk factors associated with the development of obesity?
   (a) Physical activity
   (b) The built environment
   (c) Genetics
   (d) Type 2 diabetes
   (e) A and B
6. Which of the following diet and physical activity factors contribute to the development of obesity?
   (a) Excessive caloric intake
   (b) Being sedentary
   (c) Macronutrient content of diet
   (d) Employment
   (e) All of the above
7. Adipokines secreted by adipocytes regulate body weight, appetite, and energy expenditure. They also contribute to increasing insulin resistance by?
   (a) Increasing lipid production
   (b) Decreasing leptin levels
   (c) Modulating insulin sensitivity
   (d) Promoting beta cell function
   (e) Reducing markers of inflammation

8. Which of the following statements is true regarding low-fat and low-carbohydrate diets?
   (a) Low-fat diets are more beneficial for weight loss, but low-fat and low-carbohydrate diets are equally effective for diabetes management.
   (b) Low-carbohydrate diets are more beneficial for weight loss, but low-fat and low-carbohydrate diets are equally effective for diabetes management.
   (c) Low fat and low carbohydrates are equally beneficial for weight loss, but low-fat diets are more beneficial for diabetes management.
   (d) Low fat and low carbohydrates are equally beneficial for weight loss, but low-carbohydrate diets are more beneficial for diabetes management.
   (e) Low-fat and low-carbohydrate diets are equally effective in the management of obesity and diabetes.
9. Which of the following statements is false regarding weight management medications?
   (a) Weight management medications decrease weight but do not provide any benefits for the management of diabetes.
   (b) Liraglutide 3.0 mg is more effective for glycemic control than orlistat.
   (c) All approved weight management medications are associated with greater improvements in glycated hemoglobin than lifestyle intervention alone.
   (d) Patients prescribed weight management medications lose significantly more weight than those participating in only lifestyle interventions.
   (e) Liraglutide, a weight management medication, is also available as a T2D medication at a lower therapeutic dose.
10. Which of the following correctly lists the three treatment options for obesity and T2D in order from most to least effective?
   (a) Medication, lifestyle, and surgical.
   (b) Lifestyle, medication, and surgical.
   (c) Surgical, medication, and lifestyle.
   (d) Surgical, lifestyle, medication.
   (e) They are all equally effective treatments for weight and diabetes management.

Correct Answers

1. (b) Greater than or equal to 30 kg/m^2

   Although there is variability in the ill-health effects associated with a given BMI based on ethnicity, the World Health Organization still recommends a threshold of 30 kg/m^2 to define obesity.

2. (d) A and B

   Many circumference measurements are used to assess obesity such as waist, hip, and neck circumferences, but forehead circumference is not one of them.

3. (d) All of the above

   Age, sex, and ethnicity can all change the association that excess weight can have with ill-health. For example, some excess weight may actually be beneficial to elderly populations as it has been shown to decrease frailty. Women are able to have higher body fat percentages than men without ill-health effects. Furthermore, certain ethnicities, for example, people of Asian descent, start to have exhibit ill-health effects at lower levels of body fat than white counterparts.

4. (e) None of the above

   Children who have two parents with obesity are at a greater risk of having obesity, and genes have been identified associated with hyperphagia (excessive eating). Furthermore, while it is true that the BMIs of twins reared together are more similar than those raised apart, there is still a strong association in the BMIs of twins reared apart.

5. (a) Physical activity

   Physical activity is the only factor that listed that individuals have control over. While it is possible for the built environment to be modified to encourage more physical activity, this is not something that an individual would be able to change by themselves.

6. (e) All of the above

   Beyond the typical modifiable factors that are addressed in the treatment of obesity, such as diet and physical activity, other factors, such as your employment, can contribute to weight gain. This is due to occupational shifts that have occurred during the twentieth century that have resulted in an increase in management and decrease in labor-type jobs.

7. (c) Modulating insulin sensitivity

   In addition to regulating body weight, appetite, and energy expenditure, adipokines also modulate insulin sensitivity. The increased production of free fatty acids and some adipokines may cause insulin resistance in skeletal muscle and liver.

8. (d) Low fat and low carbohydrates are equally beneficial for weight loss, but low-carbohydrate diets are more beneficial for diabetes management

   While low fat and low carbohydrates do appear to be equally effective for weight management, diets low in carbohydrates appear to be more beneficial for patients with T2D. Indeed, research has suggested that T2D consuming diets lower in carbohydrates will have greater improvements in glycemic control than consuming a low-fat diet.

9. (a) Weight management medications decrease weight but do not provide any benefits for the management of diabetes

    Each of the available weight management medications has been tested in populations with T2D, and all have been shown to improvement glycemic control. Furthermore, these patients typically require the addition of less glycemic medication than those given a placebo.

10. (c) Surgical, medication, and lifestyle

    Patients who undergo surgical intervention lose more weight and have greater rates in T2D remission than patients taking weight management medications or just lifestyle intervention. Furthermore, patients taking weight management medications have greater improvements than lifestyle alone.

Glossary

Bariatric surgery is a type of surgical procedure that decreases the amount of calories a patient can consume and/or digests to result in significant weight loss. Types of bariatric surgery include Roux-en-Y gastric bypass, sleeve gastrectomy, and gastric banding.

Body fat is the amount of subcutaneous and visceral fat in a person's body which can be presented as an absolute value or percentage.

Body mass index is the most common tool to assess obesity. It is calculated by dividing weight in kilograms by height in meters squared.

Metabolic surgery is a newer term used to refer to bariatric surgery owing to the drastic improvements in metabolic conditions that have been observed post-surgery.

Malabsorptive bariatric surgery is a bariatric surgery procedure that alters a patient's digestive tract to decrease the amount of nutrients they can absorb from calories consumed. Examples of types of bariatric surgery that use this technique include the Roux-en-Y gastric bypass and biliopancreatic diversion with the duodenal switch.

Obesity is excess body weight associated with ill-health. Multiple objective methods exist to classify obesity, with a BMI greater than or equal to 30 kg/m^2 the most common.

Restrictive bariatric surgery is a bariatric surgery procedure that decreases the amount of calories a patient can consume by decreasing the size of the stomach. Examples of types of bariatric surgery that use this technique include the sleeve gastrectomy and gastric banding.

Subcutaneous fat is the type of body fat located just beneath the skin and can be felt by pinching the skin.

Visceral fat is the type of body fat located internally around the organs. As such, visceral fat is also called organ fat.

References

1. The World Health Organization. Overweight and obesity [Internet]. 2015 [cited 2017 Oct 8]. Available from: http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs311/en/.
2. Wang YC, McPherson K, Marsh T, Gortmaker SL, Brown M. Health and economic burden of the projected obesity trends in the USA and the UK. Lancet. 2011;378(9793):815–25.
3. Wilson PWF, D'Agostino RB, Sullivan L, Parise H, Kannel WB. Overweight and obesity as determinants of cardiovascular risk: the Framingham experience. Arch Intern Med. 2002;162(16):1867–72.
4. Christensen RAG, Raiber L, Macpherson AK, Kuk JL. The association between obesity and self-reported sinus infection in non-smoking adults: a cross-sectional study. Clin Obes. 2016;6(6):389–94.
5. Fontaine KR, Redden DT, Wang C, Westfall AO, Allison DB. Years of life lost due to obesity. JAMA. 2003;289(2):187–93.
6. Chang SH, Pollack LM, Colditz GA. Life years lost associated with obesity-related diseases for US non-smoking adults. PLoS One. 2013;8(6):e66550.
7. Tsai AG, Williamson DF, Glick HA. Direct medical cost of overweight and obesity in the USA: a quantitative systematic review. Obes Rev. 2011;12(1):50–61.
8. Kim DD, Basu A. Estimating the medical care costs of obesity in the United States: systematic review, meta-analysis, and empirical analysis. Value Health. 2016;19(5):602–13.
9. Peitz GW, Troyer J, Jones AE, Shapiro NI, Nelson RD, Hernandez J, et al. Association of body mass index with increased cost of care and length of stay for emergency department patients with chest pain and dyspnea. Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes. 2014;7(2):292–8.
10. Cawley J, Rizzo JA, Haas K. Occupation-specific absenteeism costs associated with obesity and morbid obesity. J Occup Environ Med. 2007;49(12):1317–24.
11. Conway B, Miller RG, Costacou T, Fried L, Kelsey S, Evans RW, et al. Temporal patterns in overweight and obesity in type 1 diabetes. Diabet Med. 2010;27(4):398–404.
12. Clement M, Harvey B, Rabi DM, Roscoe RS, Sherifali D. Canadian Diabetes Association 2013 clinical practice guidelines for the prevention and management of diabetes in Canada. Can J Diabetes [Internet]. 2013;37(Suppl 1):S20–5. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcjd.2013.01.014.
13. Goebel-Fabbri AE. Disturbed eating behaviors and eating disorders in type 1 diabetes: clinical significance and treatment recommendations. Curr Diab Rep. 2009;9(2):133–9.
14. World Health Organization Expert Consultation. Appropriate body-mass index for Asian populations and its implications for policy and intervention strategies. Lancet. 2004;363(9403):157–63.
15. Dixon JB, Zimmet P, Alberti KG, Rubino F. Bariatric surgery: an IDF statement for obese type 2 diabetes. Diabet Med. 2011;28(6):628–42.
16. Rubino F, Nathan DM, Eckel RH, Schauer PR, Alberti KGMM, Zimmet PZ, et al. Metabolic surgery in the treatment algorithm for type 2 diabetes: a joint statement by international diabetes organizations. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(6):861–77.
17. Deurenberg P, Yap M, van Staveren WA. Body mass index and percent body fat: a meta analysis among different ethnic groups. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 1998;22(12):1164–71.
18. Dobbelsteyn CJ, Joffres MR, MacLean DR, Flowerdew G. A comparative evaluation of waist circumference, waist-to-hip ratio and body mass index as indicators of cardiovascular risk factors. The Canadian Heart Health Surveys. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 2001;25(5):652–61.

19. Zhang C, Rexrode KM, Van Dam RM, Li TY, Hu FB. Abdominal obesity and the risk of all-cause, cardiovascular, and cancer mortality: sixteen years of follow-up in US women. Circulation. 2008;117(13):1658–67.
20. Wang Y, Rimm EB, Stampfer MJ, Willett WC, Hu FB. Comparison of abdominal adiposity and overall obesity in predicting risk of type 2 diabetes among men. Am J Clin Nutr. 2005;81(3):555–63.
21. Janssen I, Katzmarzyk PT, Ross R. Body mass index, waist circumference, and health risk: evidence in support of current National Institutes of Health guidelines. Arch Intern Med. 2017;162(18):2074–9.
22. National Institutes of Health. The practical guide. Identification, evaluation, and treatment of overweight and obesity in adults. NIH Publ Number 00-4084. 2000:26–7. https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/files/docs/guidelines/prctgd_c.pdf
23. Carroll JF, Chiapa AL, Rodriquez M, Phelps DR, Cardarelli KM, Vishwanatha JK, et al. Visceral fat, waist circumference, and BMI: impact of race/ethnicity. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2008;16(3):600–7.
24. Bodicoat DH, Gray LJ, Henson J, Webb D, Guru A, Misra A, et al. Body mass index and waist circumference cut-points in multi-ethnic populations from the UK and India : the ADDITION-Leicester, Jaipur heart watch and New Delhi cross-sectional studies. PLoS One. 2014;9(3):1–6.
25. Lean ME, Han TS, Morrison CE. Waist circumference as a measure for indicating need for weight management. BMJ. 1995;311(6998):158–61.
26. Ardern CI, Janssen I, Ross R, Katzmarzyk PT. Development of health-related waist circumference thresholds within BMI categories. Obes Res. 2004;12(7):1094–103.
27. World Health Organization. Waist circumference and waist-hip ratio: report of a WHO expert consultation. World Heal Organ. 2008;(December):8–11. https://www.who.int/nutrition/publications/obesity/WHO_report_waistcircumference_and_waisthip_ratio/en/
28. Molarius A, Seidell J. Selection of anthropometric indicators for classification of abdominal fatness--a critical review. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 1998;22(8):719–27.
29. Caan B, Armstrong MA, Selby JV, Sadler M, Folsom AR, Jacobs D, et al. Changes in measurements of body fat distribution accompanying weight change. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 1994;18(6):397–404.
30. Taksali SE, Caprio S, Dziura J, Dufour S, Calı AMG, Goodman TR, et al. High visceral and low abdominal subcutaneous fat. Diabetes. 2008;57(2):367–71.
31. Wing RR, Jeffery RW, Burton LR, Thorson C, Kuller LH, Folsom AR. Change in waist-hip ratio with weight loss and its association with change in cardiovascular risk factors. Am J Clin Nutr. 1992;55(6):1086–92.
32. Matsuzawa Y, Shimomurn I, Nakumura T, Keno Y, Kotani K. Pathophysiology and pathogenesis of visceral fat obesity. Obes Res. 1995;3(Suppl 2):187S–94S.
33. Deurenberg-Yap M, Chew SK, Deurenberg P. Elevated body fat percentage and cardiovascular risks at low body mass index levels among Singaporean Chinese, Malays and Indians. Obes Rev. 2002;3(3):209–15.
34. Deurenberg P. Universal cut-off BMI points for obesity are not appropriate. Br J Nutr. 2001;85(2):135–6.
35. World Health Organization (WHO). Obesity: preventing and managing the global epidemic. Report of a WHO consultation. World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser [Internet]. 2000;894:i–xii, 1–253. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11234459.
36. Sloan A, Burt J, Blyth C. Estimation of body fat in young women. J Appl Physiol. 1962;17:967–70.
37. Durnin JV, Womersley J. Body fat assessed from total body density and its estimation from skinfold thickness: measurements on 481 men and women aged from 16 to 72 years. Br J Nutr. 1974;32(1):77–97.
38. Slaughter MH, Lohman TG, Boileau RA, Horswill CA, Stillman RJ, Van Loan MD, et al. Skinfold equations for estimation of body fatness in children and youth. Hum Biol. 1988;60(5):709–23.
39. Jackson AS, Pollock ML, Ward A. Generalized equations for perdicting body density of women. Med Sci Sports Exerc. 1980;12(3):175–82.
40. Jackson AS, Pollock ML. Generalized equations for predicting body density of men. Br J Nutr. 1978;40(3):497–504.
41. Durnin JV, Rahaman MM. The assessment of the amount of fat in the human body from measurements of skinfold thickness. Br J Nutr. 1967;21(3):681–9.
42. Kushner RF. Bioelectrical impedance analysis: a review of principles and applications. J Am Coll Nutr. 1992;11(2):199–209.
43. Sun SS, Chumlea WC, Heymsfield SB, Lukaski HC, Schoeller D, Friedl K, et al. Development of bioelectrical impedance analysis prediction equations for body composition with the use of a multicomponent model for use in epidemiologic surveys 1–4. Am J Clin Nutr. 2003;77(22):331–40.
44. Roubenoff R, Kehayias JJ, Dawson Hughes B, Heymsfield SB. Use of dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry in body composition studies: not yet a gold standard. Am J Clin Nutr. 1993;58(5):589–91.
45. Bosy-Westphal A, Later W, Hitze B, Sato T, Kossel E, Glüer CC, et al. Accuracy of bioelectrical impedance consumer devices for measurement of body composition in comparison to whole body magnetic resonance imaging and dual X-ray absorptiometry. Obes Facts. 2008;1(6):319–24.
46. Wattanapenpaiboon N, Lukito W, Strauss BJ, Hsu-Hage BH, Wahlqvist ML, Stroud DB. Agreement of skinfold measurement and bioelectrical impedance analysis (BIA) methods with dual energy X-ray absorptiometry (DEXA) in estimating total body fat in Anglo-Celtic Australians. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 1998;22(9):854–60.
47. Rothney MP, Brychta RJ, Schaefer EV, Chen KY, Monica C. Body composition measured by dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry half-body scans in obese adults. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2009;17(6):1281–6.
48. Chouinard LE, Schoeller DA, Watras AC, Clark RR, Close RN, Buchholz AC. Bioelectrical impedance vs. four-compartment model to assess body fat change in overweight adults. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2007;15(1):85–92.
49. Lee SY, Gallagher D. Assessment methods in human body composition. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care. 2008;11(5):566–72.
50. Butland B, Jebb S, Kopelman P, McPherson K, Thomas S, Mardell J, et al. Foresight tackling obesities: future choices – project report. Gov Off Sci. 2007:1–161. https://wiki.cancer.org.au/policy/Citation:Butland_B,_Jebb_S,_Kopelman_P,_McPherson_K,_Thomas_S,_Mardell_J,_et_al_2007.
51. Rankinen T, Zuberi A, Chagnon YC, Weisnagel SJ, Argyropoulos G, Walts B, et al. The human obesity gene map: the 2005 update. Obesity. 2006;14(4):529–644.
52. Mergen M, Mergen H, Ozata M, Oner R, Oner C. A novel melanocortin 4 receptor (MC4R) gene mutation associated with morbid obesity. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2001;86(7):3448–51.
53. Cassidy SB, Schwartz S, Miller JL, Driscoll DJ. Prader-Willi syndrome. Genet Med. 2012;14(1):10–26.
54. Farooqi IS, O'Rahilly S. New advances in the genetics of early onset obesity. Int J Obes. 2005;29(10):1149–52.
55. Farooqi IS, O'Rahilly S. Genetic factors in human obesity. Obes Rev. 2007;8(Suppl 1):37–40.
56. Reilly JJ, Armstrong J, Dorosty AR, Emmett PM, Ness A, Rogers I, et al. Early life risk factors for obesity in childhood: cohort study. BMJ. 2005;330(7504):1–7.
57. Stunkard AJ, Harris JR, Pedersen NL, McClearn GE. The body-mass index of twins who have been reared apart. N Engl J Med. 1990;322(21):1483–7.
58. Price RA, Gottesman II. Body fat in identical twins reared apart: roles for genes and environment. Behav Genet. 1991;21(1):1–7.

59. Silventoinen K, Sans S, Tolonen H, Monterde D, Kuulasmaa K, Kesteloot H, et al. Trends in obesity and energy supply in the WHO MONICA project. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 2004;28(5):710–8.
60. Brown RE, Sharma AM, Ardern CI, Mirdamadi P, Mirdamadi P, Kuk JL. Secular differences in the association between caloric intake, macronutrient intake, and physical activity with obesity. Obes Res Clin Pract. 2015;10(September):1–13.
61. Heitmann BL, Lissner L, Sorensen TIA, Bengtsson C. Dietary fat intake and weight gain in women genetically predisposed for obesity. Am J Clin Nutr. 1995;61(6):1213–7.
62. World Health Organization. Guideline: sugars intake for adults and children. World Heal Organ -WHO. 2014;48:4.
63. Jeffery RW, Wing RR, Sherwood NE, Tate DF. Physical activity and weight loss: does prescribing higher physical activity goals improve outcome? Am J Clin Nutr. 2003;78(4):684–9.
64. Wing RR, Hill JO. Successful weight loss maintenance. Annu Rev Nutr. 2001;21:323–41.
65. Tudor-Locke C, Brashear MM, Johnson WD, Katzmarzyk PT. Accelerometer profiles of physical activity and inactivity in normal weight, overweight, and obese U.S. men and women. Int J Behav Nutr Phys Act. 2010;7:60.
66. Wyatt ID, Hecker DE. Occupational changes during the 20th century. Mon Labor Rev. 2006;129(3):35–57.
67. Frank LD, Sallis JF, Conway TL, Chapman JE, Saelens BE, Bachman W. Many pathways from land use to health: associations between neighborhood walkability and active transportation, body mass index, and air quality. J Am Plan Assoc. 2006;72(1):75–87.
68. Ali O. Genetics of type 2 diabetes. World J Diabetes. 2013;4(4):114.
69. Astrup A, Finer N. Redefining type 2 diabetes: "diabesity" or "obesity dependent diabetes mellitus"? Obes Rev. 2000;1(2):57–9.
70. Juonala M, Magnussen CG, Berenson GS, Venn A, Burns TL, Sabin MA, et al. Childhood adiposity, adult adiposity, and cardiovascular risk factors. Obstet Gynecol Surv. 2012;67(3):156–8.
71. Ferrannini E, Camastra S. Relationship between impaired glucose tolerance, non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus and obesity. Eur J Clin Invest. 1998;28(Suppl 2):3–6.
72. Mozaffarian D, Wilson PWF, Kannel WB. Beyond established and novel risk factors lifestyle risk factors for cardiovascular disease. Circulation. 2008;117(23):3031–8.
73. Al-Quwaidhi A, Critchley J, O'Flaherty M, Pearce M. Obesity and type 2 diabetes mellitus: a complex association. Saudi J Obes. 2013;1(2):49.
74. Murray CJL, Atkinson C, Bhalla K, Birbeck G, Burstein R, Chou D, et al. The state of US health, 1990–2010: burden of diseases, injuries, and risk factors. JAMA. 2013;310(6):591–608.
75. Mozaffarian D. Foods, obesity, and diabetes-are all calories created equal? Nutr Rev. 2017;75:19–31.
76. Lim SS, Vos T, Flaxman AD, Danaei G, Shibuya K, Adair-Rohani H, et al. A comparative risk assessment of burden of disease and injury attributable to 67 risk factors and risk factor clusters in 21 regions, 1990–2010: a systematic analysis for the global burden of disease study 2010. Lancet. 2012;380(9859):2224–60.
77. Lazar MA. How obesity causes diabetes: not a tall tale. Science. 2005;307(5708):373–5.
78. Ahima RS. Revisiting leptin's role in obesity and weight loss. J Clin Invest [Internet]. 2008;118(7):2380–3. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18568083%5Cn, http://www.pubmedcentral.nih.gov/articlerender.fcgi?artid=PMC2430504.
79. Wing RR, Lang W, Wadden TA, Safford M, Knowler WC, Bertoni AG, et al. Benefits of modest weight loss in improving cardiovascular risk factors in overweight and obese individuals with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(7):1481–6.
80. Vittal BG, Praveen G, Deepak P. A study of body mass index in healthy individuals and its relationship with fasting blood sugar. J Clin Diagnostic Res [Internet]. 2010 [cited 2017 Sep 7];4(6):3421–4. Available from: http://www.jcdr.net/article_fulltext.asp?id=990.
81. Innocent O, ThankGod OO, Sandra EO, Josiah IE. Correlation between body mass index and blood glucose levels among some Nigerian undergraduates. HOAJ Biol. 2013;2(1):4.
82. Magkos F, Nikonova E, Fain R, Zhou S, Ma T, Shanahan W. Effect of lorcaserin on glycemic parameters in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Obesity. 2017;25(5):842–9.
83. Mottalib A, Sakr M, Shehabeldin M, Hamdy O. Diabetes remission after nonsurgical intensive lifestyle intervention in obese patients with type 2 diabetes. J Diabetes Res. 2015;2015(2015):4.
84. Buchwald H, Estok R, Fahrbach K, Banel D, Jensen MD, Pories WJ, et al. Weight and type 2 diabetes after bariatric surgery: systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Med. 2009;122(3):248–256.e5.
85. Garvey WT, Ryan DH, Bohannon NJV, Kushner RF, Rueger M, Dvorak RV, et al. Weight-loss therapy in type 2 diabetes: effects of phentermine and topiramate extended release. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(12):3309–16.
86. Hollander P, Gupta AK, Plodkowski R, Greenway F, Bays H, Burns C, et al. Effects of naltrexone sustained- release/bupropion sustained-release combination therapy on body weight and glycemic parameters in overweight and obese patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(12):4022–9.
87. Dakour Aridi HN, Wehbe M-R, Shamseddine G, Alami RS, Safadi BY. Long-term outcomes of roux-en-Y gastric bypass conversion of failed laparoscopic gastric band. Obes Surg. 2017;27(6):1401–8.
88. Curioni CC, Lourenço PM. Long-term weight loss after diet and exercise: a systematic review. Int J Obes. 2005;29(10):1168–74.
89. Johns DJ, Hartmann-Boyce J, Jebb SA, Aveyard P. Diet or exercise interventions vs combined behavioral weight management programs: a systematic review and meta-analysis of directcom parisons. J Acad Nutr Diet. 2014;114(10):1557–68.
90. Miller WC, Koceja DM, Hamilton EJ. A meta-analysis of the past 25 years of weight loss research using diet, exercise or diet plus exercise intervention. Int J Obes. 1997;21(10):941–7.
91. Knowler WC, Barrett-Connor E, Fowler SE, Hamman RF, Lachin JM, Walker EA, et al. Reduction in the incidence of type 2 diabetes with lifestyle intervention or metformin. N Engl J Med. 2002;346(6):393–403.
92. Lindstrom J, Louheranta A, Mannelin M, Rastas M, Salminen V, Eriksson J, et al. The Finnish Diabetes Prevention Study (DPS). Diabetes Care. 2003;26(12):3230–6.
93. Look AHEAD Research Group LAR, Pi-Sunyer X, Blackburn G, Brancati FL, Bray GA, Bright R, et al. Reduction in weight and cardiovascular disease risk factors in individuals with type 2 diabetes: one-year results of the look AHEAD trial. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(6):1374–83.
94. Look AHEAD Research Group, Wing RR. Long-term effects of a lifestyle intervention on weight and cardiovascular risk factors in individuals with type 2 diabetes mellitus: four-year results of the Look AHEAD trial. Arch Intern Med. 2010;170(17):1566–75.
95. Nordmann AJ, Nordmann A, Briel M, Keller U, Yancy WS Jr, Brehm BJ, et al. Effects of low-carbohydrate vs low-fat diets on weight loss and cardiovascular risk factors: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Arch Intern Med. 2006;166(3):285–93.
96. Tobias DK, Chen M, Manson JAE, Ludwig DS, Willett W, Hu FB. Effect of low-fat diet interventions versus other diet interventions on long-term weight change in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2015;3(12):968–79.
97. Hu T, Mills KT, Yao L, Demanelis K, Eloustaz M, Yancy WS, et al. Effects of low-carbohydrate diets versus low-fat diets on metabolic risk factors: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled clinical trials. Am J Epidemiol. 2012;176:S44–54.
98. Davidson LE, Hudson R, Kilpatrick K, Kuk JL, McMillan K, Janiszewski PM, et al. Effects of exercise modality on insulin resistance and functional limitation in older adults: a randomized

controlled trial. Arch Intern Med. American Medical Association. 2009;169(2):122–31.
99. Colberg SR, Sigal RJ, Fernhall B, Regensteiner JG, Blissmer BJ, Rubin RR, et al. Exercise and type 2 diabetes: the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Diabetes Association: joint position statement. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:2692.
100. Arciero PJ, Gentile CL, Martin-Pressman R, Ormsbee MJ, Everett M, Zwicky L, et al. Increased dietary protein and combined high intensity aerobic and resistance exercise improves body fat distribution and cardiovascular risk factors. Int J Sport Nutr Exerc Metab. 2006;16(4):373–92.
101. Donnelly JE, Blair SN, Jakicic JM, Manore MM, Rankin JW, Smith BK. Appropriate physical activity intervention strategies for weight loss and prevention of weight regain for adults. Med Sci Sports Exerc. 2009;41(2):459–71.
102. Brownell KD, Jeffery RW. Improving long-term weight loss: pushing the limits of treatment. Behav Ther. 1987;18(4):353–74.
103. Jeffery RW, Drewnowski A, Epstein LH, Stunkard AJ, Wilson GT, Wing RR, et al. Long-term maintenance of weight loss: current status. Health Psychol. 2000;19(1S):5–16.
104. Jacob AN, Salinas K, Adams-Huet B, Raskin P. Weight gain in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2007;9(3):386–93.
105. Kroeger CM, Hoddy KK, Varady KA. Impact of weight regain on metabolic disease risk: a review of human trials. J Obes. 2014;2014(2014):8.
106. Beavers KM, Case LD, Blackwell CS, Katula JA, Goff DC, Vitolins MZ, et al. Effects of weight regain following intentional weight loss on glucoregulatory function in overweight and obese adults with pre-diabetes. Obes Res Clin Pract. 2015;9(3):266–73.
107. Apovian CM, Aronne LJ, Bessesen DH, McDonnell ME, Murad MH, Pagotto U, et al. Pharmacological management of obesity: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2015;100(2):342–62.
108. Padwal R, Li SK, Lau DCW. Long-term pharmacotherapy for overweight and obesity: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord. 2003;27:1437–46.
109. Astrup A, Carraro R, Finer N, Harper A, Kunesova M, Lean MEJ, et al. Safety, tolerability and sustained weight loss over 2 years with the once-daily human GLP-1 analog, liraglutide. Int J Obes. 2012;36(6):843–54.
110. Pi-Sunyer X, Astrup A, Fujioka K, Greenway F, Halpern A, Krempf M, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of 3.0 mg of liraglutide in weight management. N Engl J Med. Massachusetts Medical Society. 2015;373(1):11–22.
111. Rucker D, Padwal R, Li SK, Curioni C, Lau DCW. Long term pharmacotherapy for obesity and overweight: updated meta-analysis. BMJ. 2007;335(7631):1194–9.
112. Vray M, Joubert J-M, Eschwège E, Liard F, Fagnani F, Montestruc F, et al. Results from the observational study EPIGRAM: management of excess weight in general practice and follow-up of patients treated with orlistat. Therapie. 2005;60(1):17–24.
113. Hollander PA, Elbein SC, Hirsch IB, Kelley D, McGill J, Taylor T, et al. Role of orlistat in the treatment of obese patients with type 2 diabetes: a 1-year randomized double-blind study. Diabetes Care. 1998;21(8):1288–94.
114. Davies MJ, Bergenstal R, Bode B, Kushner RF, Lewin A, Skjoth TV, et al. Efficacy of liraglutide for weight loss among patients with type 2 diabetes: the SCALE diabetes randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2015;314(7):687–99.
115. Hermansen K, Mortensen LS. Bodyweight changes associated with antihyperglycemic agents in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Drug Saf. 2007;30(12):1127–42.
116. Van Gaal L, Scheen A. Weight management in type 2 diabetes : current and emerging approaches to treatment. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(6):1161–72.
117. American Society for Metabolic and Bariatric Surgery. Story of obesity surgery [Internet]. 2004 [cited 2017 Mar 27]. Available from: https://asmbs.org/resources/story-of-obesity-surgery.
118. Garb J, Welch G, Zagarins S, Kuhn J, Romanelli J. Bariatric surgery for the treatment of morbid obesity: a meta-analysis of weight loss outcomes for laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding and laparoscopic gastric bypass. Obes Surg. 2009;19(10):1447–55.
119. Hutter MM, Schirmer BD, Jones DB, Ko CY, Cohen ME, Merkow RP, et al. First report from the American College of Surgeons Bariatric Surgery Center Network: laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy has morbidity and effectiveness positioned between the band and the bypass. Ann Surg. 2011;254(3):410–22.
120. Angrisani L, Santonicola A, Iovino P, Vitiello A, Zundel N, Buchwald H, et al. Bariatric surgery and endoluminal procedures: IFSO worldwide survey 2014. Obes Surg. 2017;27(9):2279–89.
121. Buchwald H, Williams SE. Bariatric surgery worldwide 2003. Obes Surg. 2004;14(9):1157–64.
122. Flint RS, Coulter G, Roberts R. The pattern of adjustments after laparoscopic adjustable gastric band. Obes Surg. 2015;25(11):2061–5.
123. Buchwald H, Avidor Y, Braunwald E, Jensen MD, Proies W, Fahrbach KSK. Bariatric surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA. 2004;292(14):1724–7.
124. Karamanakos SN, Vagenas K, Kalfarentzos F, Alexandrides TK. Weight loss, appetite suppression, and changes in fasting and postprandial ghrelin and peptide-YY levels after roux-en-Y gastric bypass and sleeve gastrectomy. Ann Surg. 2008;247(3):401–7.
125. MacDonald KG, Long SD, Swanson MS, Brown BM, Morris P, Dohm GL, et al. The gastric bypass operation reduces the progression and mortality of non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Gastrointest Surg. 1996;1(3):213–20.
126. Flum DR, Dellinger EP. Impact of gastric bypass operation on survival: a population-based analysis. J Am Coll Surg. 2004;199(4):543–51.
127. Christou NV, Sampalis JS, Liberman M, Look D, Auger S, McLean APH, et al. Surgery decreases long-term mortality, morbidity, and health care use in morbidly obese patients. Ann Surg. 2004;240(3):416–24.
128. DeMaria EJ, Sugerman HJ, Meador JG, Doty JM, Kellum JM, Wolfe L, et al. High failure rate after laparoscopic adjustable silicone gastric banding for treatment of morbid obesity. Ann Surg. 2001;233(6):809–18.

Suggested/Further Reading

Astrup A, Finer N. Redefining type 2 diabetes: “diabesity” or “obesity dependent diabetes mellitus”? Obes Rev. 2000;1(2):57–9. Explores the relationship between obesity and T2D.

Butland B, Jebb S, Kopelman P, McPherson K, Thomas S, Mardell J, et al. Foresight tackling obesities: future choices – project report. Gov Off Sci. 2007;1–161. Section 5 includes an in-depth discussion of the development and treatment of obesity according to the spaghetti map.

Sharma AM, Kushner RF. A proposed clinical staging system for obesity. Int J Obes. 2009;33(3):289–95. Seminal text on the Edmonton Obesity Staging System (EOSS) to evaluate the morbidity and mortality associated with excess weight.

Wharton S, Serodio KJ. Next generation of weight management medications: implications for diabetes and CVD risk. Curr Cardiol Rep. 2015;17(5):35. Discusses the mechanism of action for weight management medications, and their use in the context of diabetes.

Wharton S, Sharma A, Lau D. Canadian Diabetes Association 2013 clinical practice guidelines for the prevention and management of diabetes in Canada: weight management in diabetes. Can J Diabetes. 2013;37(Suppl 1):S61–8. Provides a more in-depth discussion of weight management options for patients with diabetes, including graphical representations of common bariatric procedures.

Diabetes and Smoking: The Burden of Evidence

40

Sameer Aggarwal, Deepak Khandelwal, Deep Dutta, Sanjay Kalra, and Yatan Pal Singh Balhara

Introduction

Perhaps no other addiction has been incriminated with different diseases as smoking. Large volumes of literature are now available linking smoking with cardiovascular morbidity and mortality, diabetes, vascular damage, cancers, and neurocognitive dysfunction, among others. Perhaps every system of the body, from head to toe, is affected by smoking. Smokers die on average 8–10 years younger than nonsmokers, as age is entered into most multi-regression analysis. This chapter intends to highlight the complex relationship between smoking and the occurrence and the associated morbidity related to diabetes.

Smoking and Diabetes: Incidence and Mechanism

The impact of smoking on glycemia is complex. Smoking is strongly linked with both increased incidence and severity of diabetes. However, smoking cessation, at least in the short term, is associated with weight gain, which is also associated with increased incidence of diabetes.

S. Aggarwal
Division of Endocrinology, Department of Medicine, Pandit Bhagwat Dayal Sharma Post-graduate Institute of Medical Sciences (PGIMS), Rohtak, Haryana, India

D. Khandelwal
Department of Endocrinology, Maharaja Agrasen Hospital, Punjabi Bagh, New Delhi, India

D. Dutta
Department of Endocrinology, Venkateshwar Hospital, Dwarka, New Delhi, India

S. Kalra (✉)
Department of Endocrinology, Bharti Hospital, Karnal, Haryana, India

Y. P. S. Balhara
Department of Psychiatry, National Drug Dependence Treatment Centre (NDDTC), WHO Collaborating Centre on Substance Abuse, All India Institute of Medical Sciences (AIIMS), New Delhi, India

The risk of developing diabetes in smokers has been found to be dose dependent. A meta-analysis of 25 studies reported that heavy smokers (smoking ≥ 20 cigarettes/day) were more likely to develop diabetes (relative risk (RR) = 1.61; 95% CI = 1.43–1.80) compared to light smokers (RR = 1.29; 95% CI = 1.13–1.48) compared to former smokers (RR = 1.23; 95% CI = 1.14–1.33) [1]. A study on industrial workers in a large cohort of individuals in Taiwan showed that compared to never-smokers, both current smokers and ex-smokers in their first 2 years of abstinence had higher odds ratios (ORs) for newly diagnosed diabetes mellitus (never-smokers 3.6%, OR = 1; current smokers 5.5%, OR = 1.499, 95% CI = 1.147–1.960, and $p = 0.003$; ex-smokers in their first year of abstinence 7.5%, OR = 1.829, 95% CI = 0.906–3.694, and $p = 0.092$; and ex-smokers in their second year of abstinence 9.0%, OR = 2.020, 95% CI = 1.031–3.955, and $p = 0.040$) [2]. This higher incidence of diabetes in ex-smokers was independent of the associated weight gain [2].

Smoking is found to cause diabetes by insulin resistance as well as decreased insulin release due to pancreatic β-cell damage by inflammatory and oxidative pathway mechanisms [3]. Further, the association between smoking and pancreatic β-cell damage was found to exist only in men. It is interesting as well as concerning that fetal exposure to smoking (maternal smoking during pregnancy) is associated with increased risk of diabetes later in life [4]. The good news in these individuals is that a healthy lifestyle intervention can go a long way in reducing this risk of diabetes [4].

Smoking is associated with increased and differential DNA methylation of type 2 diabetes genes, especially the ANPEP, KCNQ1, and ZMIZ1 genes, which may explain how smoking is associated with long-term increased diabetes risk [5].

Smoking and Non-microvascular or Non-macrovascular Diabetes Complications

Periodontitis is perhaps the most important and the most under-recognized nonvascular complication of diabetes. Diabetes is a risk factor for periodontitis and vice versa.

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_40

Smoking in patients with diabetes is associated with increased periodontal breakdown and a higher incidence as well as prevalence of periodontitis [6]. Poor glycemic control in smokers may indirectly also have adverse impacts on the occurrence as well as severity of periodontitis. Smoking is an independent predictor of atherosclerosis. Smoking has a stronger association with postprandial dyslipidemia and not fasting lipid values. Smoking has been linked with postprandial hypertriglyceridemia [7].

Smoking and Microvascular Complications of Diabetes

Cigarette smoking increases this risk for microvascular complications of diabetes, probably via its metabolic effects in combination with increased inflammation and endothelial dysfunction [8]. This association is strong in type 1 diabetes patients and seen for all microvascular complications. However, the association of smoking with microvascular complications in type 2 diabetes is comparatively weaker except for nephropathy. Studies have clearly supported negative impact of smoking on diabetic kidney disease in type 2 diabetes too, but its independent influence on retinopathy and neuropathy in type 2 diabetes remains unclear [8].

Smoking and Diabetic Nephropathy

Several studies have demonstrated that smoking promotes development and progression of diabetic nephropathy in persons with both type 1 and type 2 diabetes, and smoking is an independent risk factor for diabetic kidney disease. Also, smoking is associated with an increased risk for end-stage renal disease and decreased survival on commencement of dialysis. In a 13-year follow-up study by Biesenbach et al., the progression of diabetic nephropathy was clearly increased in smokers. Other prospective studies have also confirmed more frequent diabetic nephropathy in smokers than nonsmokers. Continued smoking has shown to be associated with further poor renal outcome as compared to persons who quit smoking. Smoking adversely affects renal hemodynamics and protein excretion even in subjects without apparent renal disease. In addition, it impairs the prognosis for renal function in patients with nondiabetic renal disease. Factors implicated in the pathogenesis of smoking-induced renal function impairment are the sympathetic activation, increased endothelin production, increased oxidative stress, and impaired endothelial cell-dependent vasodilatation [9]. Cessation of smoking has been associated with slower progression of the nephropathy and as an alone measure may reduce the risk of progression by 30% in patients with type 2 diabetes.

Smoking and Diabetic Retinopathy (DR)

Smoking has a profound negative impact on overall eye health in diabetes [8]. Smoking has been implicated in development and progression of numerous ocular diseases, including age-related macular degeneration, glaucoma, and cataracts. Chronic smoking has been shown to be associated with decreased retinal circulation as well as abnormalities in the retinal vessel parameters. Smoking leads to a higher incidence of and accelerated progression of diabetic retinopathy (DR) in patients with type 1 diabetes. However, in type 2 disease, evidence is controversial in context of smoking and DR. The Hoorn study demonstrated a nonsignificant trend for increased DR incidence in cigarette smokers as well as ex-smokers. Another, 25-year follow-up study showed a nonsignificant trend of developing more proliferative DR in current smokers. However, there was no statistically significant association between smoking status or pack-years of smoking and proliferative DR. In the same study, mild NPDR was more common among current smokers than former smokers, which may suggest that smoking is indeed related to early forms of diabetic retinopathy. However, many studies have reported no association with smoking and retinopathy in type 2 diabetes. Rather the United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) demonstrated a protective effect of smoking on both new development and progression of DR. Thus in type 2 diabetic patients, the effects of smoking on DR is more complex and yet to be fully elucidated [9].

Smoking and Diabetic Neuropathy

Like the association of smoking and retinopathy, there is evidence that smoking is an independent risk factor of peripheral neuropathy in patients with type 1 diabetes [10]. However, the association of smoking with neuropathy in type 2 diabetes is not clear. Surprisingly, a protective effect of smoking has been reported in few studies. In other studies with patients with type 2 diabetes, smoking was not a risk factor for the polyneuropathy or sensory neuropathy as diagnosed by symptoms and signs. A meta-analysis including 10 prospective and 28 cross-sectional studies has found that smoking had an unadjusted odds ratio of 1.26 for prospectively developing diabetic sensory polyneuropathy. In the cross-sectional studies, the pooled odds ratio for diabetic sensory polyneuropathy due to smoking was 1.42. However, for both analyses, evidence was graded as low-strength. More studies are needed to evaluate the association between smoking and neuropathy [10].

Smoking and Macrovascular Complications of Diabetes

Smoking has been shown to be a significant risk factor for all-cause mortality and for mortality due to cardiovascular disease (CVD) and coronary heart disease (CHD) in patients with diabetes.

Coronary Artery Disease

Smoking is a major risk factor for CVD in nondiabetic subjects, as well as diabetic subjects. In the London cohort of the 8-year prospective, World Health Organization Multinational Study of Vascular Disease in Diabetics, it was shown that smoking is significantly associated with an increased risk for coronary heart disease (CHD) in type 1 and type 2 diabetic patients [11]. In the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT), designed to study the role of intensive insulin treatment and optimized glycemic control in type 1 diabetes, smoking was not a significant risk factor for macrovascular complications [12]. The subjects participating in this study were young, and, thus, DCCT was not optimally designed to study the role of tobacco use in macrovascular complications [12]. Other studies in slightly older type 1 diabetic subjects have shown that smoking does increase the risk for CHD. In type 2 diabetic subjects, the UKPDS clearly showed that cigarette smoking is a significant and independent risk factor for CHD, stroke, as well as peripheral vascular disease [13]. In the Nurses' Health Study, in women with type 2 diabetes, it was demonstrated that cigarette smoking was associated in a dose-dependent manner with an increased mortality and CHD. The risk for mortality from all causes is 1.64 in diabetic women who smoke 15 to 34 cigarettes per day and 2.19 in women who smoke more than 34 cigarettes per day [14]. Ten years after having stopped smoking, the risk for mortality has normalized when compared with nonsmoking diabetic women. Another data has shown that compared with never-smokers, the relative risks for CHD were 1.66 for current smokers of 1–14 cigarettes per day and 2.68 for current smokers of 15 or more cigarettes per day [14].

A meta-analysis in the Asia-Pacific region, in men with diabetes, the hazard ratio for CHD comparing current smokers with nonsmokers was 1.42 [15]. Cigarette cessation strategies can be beneficial in terms of reducing the burden of CVD in men with diabetes [16].

A large prospective study by Chaturvedi et al. studied the effects of smoking cessation on cardiovascular risk in diabetic patients [17]. Mortality risks in previous smokers with diabetes were compared with risks for subjects who have never smoked. All-cause mortality risks was around 50% higher for patients who stopped smoking during the past 1 to 9 years and 25% higher in individuals who quit smoking before that, when compared with subjects who have never smoked [17]. The results from this study show that stopping smoking reduces mortality risk in diabetes but risks still remain high several years after quitting smoking. The mortality risk with smoking in diabetes is highly dependent on the duration of smoking.

Smoking and Cerebrovascular Accident/ Stroke

Smoking also increases the risk of stroke in patients with diabetes, but the association may not be as strong as CHD. Smoking and HbA1c are predictors of stroke among the type 2 diabetic patients without a history of a previous stroke. In the London cohort of the 8-year prospective World Health Organization Multinational Study of Vascular Disease in Diabetics, it was shown that smoking was not significantly associated with stroke [18]. In a study using the general practice research database in the United Kingdom, smoking was an additional risk factor for stroke in type 2 diabetic patients [19]. In the Nurses' Health Study, in smokers who smoked 1 to 14 cigarettes per day, the risk was significant for CHD but not for stroke [14]. In those who smoked 15 cigarettes or more per day, the relative risk for CHD and stroke were 2.68 and 1.84, respectively [14]. Similar trends were shown in a Swedish study, in which the relative risk of smoking was higher in myocardial infarction (2.33) than for stroke (1.12) in 30- to 59-year-old patients [20].

Smoking cessation should be a main target for the prevention of CVDs in patients with type 2 diabetes and is also very cost-effective. Smoking cessation should be integrated in a multiple risk factor control program [21]. This was shown in the Steno-2 trial, where a decrease in smoking rate was combined with a successful decrease in other risk factors in the intensively treated group [22].

Smoking and Peripheral Artery Disease

Smoking is associated with exacerbation of peripheral artery disease in diabetes. Smoking per se is a risk factor for peripheral artery disease (Buerger's disease). The peripheral artery disease associated with smoking per se primarily affects the medium-sized arteries. In contrast diabetes per se affects the more distal arteries and arterioles. Presence of smoking in the background of diabetes has a synergistic effect on the peripheral artery disease occurrence and progression [23]. Smoking at least 1 pack of cigarettes per day ([OR] 2.5; 95% CI 1.1, 6.0) was associated with a signifi-

cant increase in occurrence of symptomatic peripheral artery disease [24]. Presence of diabetes was the strongest predictor of peripheral artery disease in smokers in that study [24]. Ankle-brachial index (ABI) assessment has an important role in disease severity assessment as well as prognostication (predicting cardiovascular and all-cause mortality) [23].

Smoking Cessation, Diabetes, and Technology

One of most difficult jobs is to get patients quit smoking, and it requires a lot of motivation and support from patients, his/her family, friends, diabetic educators, and physician. The "5 A's"—ask, assess, advise, assist, and arrange—are five intervention steps suggested to help patients quit smoking (Box 40.1). Also, interventions to prevent relapse should be undertaken with patients who have quit smoking. Counseling and behavior therapy remains most important in helping patients quit smoking. Pharmacotherapy is often helpful with the use of nicotine replacement therapy (including nicotine patches, gum, and lozenges) and sustained-release bupropion. Patients receiving bupropion must be closely monitored for seizures and hyperglycemia [25, 26]. There is recently growing evidence regarding the safety and efficacy of varenicline in smokers with diabetes [27]. However, the glycemic status must be monitored carefully in patients receiving varenicline as case reports of severe hypoglycemia in patients with type I diabetes exist [26]. A meta-analysis reported that delivering structured smoking cessation interventions or medication for smoking cessation was found to have significantly better smoking abstinence rates compared to counseling or optional medication [28].

It must be highlighted that the weight gain and the associated transient mild increase in risk of diabetes in patients who quit smoking should not be a deterrent for stopping smoking. It must be clearly highlighted to the smokers that quitting overall has a beneficial effect of quality of life and survival. In a large community-based cohort (Framingham Offspring Study data collected from 1984 through 2011), smoking cessation was associated with a lower risk of coronary artery disease events among participants without diabetes, and weight gain that occurred following smoking cessation did not modify this association, which supports a net cardiovascular benefit of smoking cessation, despite subsequent weight gain [29].

The diagnosis and treatment of diabetes or any of its complication is a potential "teachable moment" for smoking cessation as at the time of diagnosis, patients were found to have significantly higher motivation to quit [30, 31].

Recent reports have suggested that the use of Internet- and mobile phone-based technology (mHealth) can go a long way in promoting healthy lifestyle habits and instituting positive feedback mechanism, which can help in smoking cessation as well as ensuring better glycemic control in patients with diabetes [32].

Box 40.1 Five Intervention Steps to Help Patients Quit Smoking

Ask- Identify active smoker/ex-smoker at each visit
Assess- Determine person's willingness to quit smoking
Advise- Strongly advise all tobacco users to quit
Assist- Assist patients in quitting smoking
Arrange- Arrange follow-up visits

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is correct statement regarding relationship of smoking and glycemia?
   (a) Smoking is linked with increased incidence of diabetes.
   (b) Smoking is linked with increased severity of diabetes.
   (c) The risk of developing diabetes in smokers has been found to be dose dependent.
   (d) All of the above.
2. Smoking is associated most evidently with which microvascular complications in type 2 diabetes?
   (a) Retinopathy
   (b) Nephropathy
   (c) Neuropathy
   (d) Gastroparesis
3. Other than retinopathy, smoking has been implicated in development and progression of which other ocular diseases?
   (a) Age-related macular degeneration
   (b) Glaucoma
   (c) Cataract
   (d) All of the above
4. Which of the following is a false statement regarding mortality risks in smokers with diabetes?
   (a) Remains high even several years after quitting smoking
   (b) Dependent on duration of smoking

(c) Increases only in type 2 diabetes persons, not in type 1 diabetes person
(d) Dose-dependent

5. The peripheral artery disease associated with smoking per se primarily affects:
   (a) Medium-sized arteries
   (b) Distal arteries and arterioles
   (c) Large arteries
   (d) Capillaries
6. The peripheral artery disease associated with diabetes per se primarily affects:
   (a) Medium-sized arteries
   (b) Distal arteries and arterioles
   (c) Large arteries
   (d) Capillaries
7. Pharmacological agents helpful in quitting smoking are:
   (a) Nicotine gums/patches
   (b) Sustained-release bupropion
   (c) Varenicline
   (d) All of the above
8. Varenicline use for smoking cessation in type 1 diabetes persons has been reported with which adverse events?
   (a) Hypoglycemia
   (b) Hyperglycemia
   (c) Hypokalemia
   (d) Hyponatremia
9. Smoking cessation in short term may be associated with?
   (a) Weight gain
   (b) Weight loss
   (c) Increased risk of diabetes
   (d) a + c
10. Which of the following statement is incorrect regarding cessation of smoking?
   (a) Smoking cessation may lead to transient increase in body weight.
   (b) Smoking cessation may be associated with transient mild increase in risk of diabetes.
   (c) Smoking cessation may lead to transient increased risk of coronary artery disease.
   (d) b and c.

Correct Answers

1. (d) All of the above.
2. (b) Nephropathy
3. (d) All of the above
4. (c) Increases only in type 2 diabetes persons, not in type 1 diabetes person
5. (a) Medium-sized arteries
6. (b) Distal arteries and arterioles
7. (d) All of the above
8. (a) Hypoglycemia
9. (d) a + c
10. (c) b and c.

References

1. Willi C, Bodenmann P, Ghali WA, Faris PD, Cornuz J. Active smoking and the risk of type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA. 2007;298(22):2654–64.
2. Sung YT, Hsiao CT, Chang IJ, Lin YC, Yueh CY. Smoking cessation carries a short-term rising risk for newly diagnosed diabetes mellitus independently of weight gain: a 6-year retrospective cohort study. J Diabetes Res. 2016;2016:3961756.
3. Xie XT, Liu Q, Wu J, Wakui M. Impact of cigarette smoking in type 2 diabetes development. Acta Pharmacol Sin. 2009;30(6):784–7.
4. Chang CH, Chuang LM. Fetal exposure to parental smoking and the risk of type 2 diabetes: are lifestyle-related factors more important? J Diabetes Investig. 2016;7(4):472–5.
5. Ligthart S, Steenaard RV, Peters MJ, van Meurs JB, Sijbrands EJ, Uitterlinden AG, Bonder MJ; BIOS consortium, Hofman A, Franco OH, Dehghan ATobacco smoking is associated with DNA methylation of diabetes susceptibility genes. Diabetologia. 2016;59(5):998–1006.
6. Gupta N, Gupta ND, Garg S, Goyal L, Gupta A, Khan S, Moin S. The effect of type 2 diabetes mellitus and smoking on periodontal parameters and salivary matrix metalloproteinase-8 levels. J Oral Sci. 2016;58(1):1–6.
7. Valdivielso P, Hidalgo A, Rioja J, Aguilar I, Ariza MJ, González-Alegre T, González-Santos P. Smoking and postprandial triglycerides are associated with vascular disease in patients with type 2 diabetes. Atherosclerosis. 2007;194(2):391–6.
8. Chang SA. Smoking and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Metab J. 2012;36(6):399–403.
9. Haire-Joshu D, Glasgow RE, Tibbs TL. Smoking and diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1999;22(11):1887–98.
10. Ford SK, Shilliday BB. Smoking and diabetes: helping patients quit. Clin Diabetes. 2006;24:133–7.
11. Effect of intensive diabetes management on macrovascular events and risk factors in the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial. Am J Cardiol. 1995;75:894–903.
12. Sinha RN, Patrick AW, Richardson L, et al. A six-year follow-up study of smoking habits and microvascular complications in young adults with type 1 diabetes. Postgrad Med J. 1997;73:293–4. 71. Moy CS, LaPorte RE, Dorman JS, et al. Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus mortality. The risk of cigarette smoking. Circulation. 1990;82:37–43.
13. Turner RC, Millns H, Neil HA, Stratton IM, Manley SE, Matthews DR, Holman RR. Risk factors for coronary artery disease in non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus: United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS: 23). BMJ. 1998;316:823–8.
14. Al-Delaimy WK, Willett WC, Manson JE, Speizer FE, Hu FB. Smoking and mortality among women with type 2 diabetes: the Nurses' Health Study cohort. Diabetes Care. 2001;24:2043–8.
15. Al-Delaimy WK, Manson JE, Solomon CG, Kawachi I, Stampfer MJ, Willett WC, Hu FB. Smoking and risk of coronary heart disease among women with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Arch Intern Med. 2002;162:273–9.
16. Kengne AP, Nakamura K, Barzi F, Lam TH, Huxley R, Gu D, Patel A, Kim HC, Woodward M, Asia Pacific Cohort Study Collaboration. Smoking, diabetes and cardiovascular diseases in men in the Asia Pacific region. J Diabetes. 2009;1:173–81.

17. Chaturvedi N, Stevens L, Fuller JH. Which features of smoking determine mortality risk in former cigarette smokers with diabetes? The World Health Organization Multinational Study Group. Diabetes Care. 1997;20:1266–72.
18. Giorda CB, Avogaro A, Maggini M, Lombardo F, Mannucci E, Turco S, Alegiani SS, Raschetti R, Velussi M, Ferrannini E, DAI Study Group. Incidence and risk factors for stroke in type 2 diabetic patients: the DAI study. Stroke. 2007;38:1154–60.
19. Mulnier HE, Seaman HE, Raleigh VS, Soedamah-Muthu SS, Colhoun HM, Lawrenson RA, De Vries CS. Risk of stroke in people with type 2 diabetes in the UK: a study using the General Practice Research Database. Diabetologia. 2006;49:2859–65.
20. Nilsson PM, Cederholm J, Eeg-Olofsson K, Eliasson B, Zethelius B, Fagard R, Gudbjornsdottir S, Swedish National Diabetes Register. Smoking as an independent risk factor for myocardial infarction or stroke in type 2 diabetes: a report from the Swedish National Diabetes Register. Eur J Cardiovasc Prev Rehabil. 2009;16:506–12.
21. Hokanson JM, Anderson RL, Hennrikus DJ, Lando HA, Kendall DM. Integrated tobacco cessation counseling in a diabetes self-management training program: a randomized trial of diabetes and reduction of tobacco. Diabetes Educ. 2006;32:562–70.
22. Gaede P, Lund-Andersen H, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Effect of a multifactorial intervention on mortality in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358:580–91.
23. Vogt MT, McKenna M, Wolfson SK, Kuller LH. The relationship between ankle brachial index, other atherosclerotic disease, diabetes, smoking and mortality in older men and women. Atherosclerosis. 1993 Jul;101(2):191–202.
24. Eason SL, Petersen NJ, Suarez-Almazor M, Davis B, Collins TC. Diabetes mellitus, smoking, and the risk for asymptomatic peripheral arterial disease: whom should we screen? J Am Board Fam Pract. 2005;18(5):355–61.
25. Yang M, Chen H, Johnson ML, Essien EJ, Peters RJ Jr, Wang X, Abughosh S. Comparative effectiveness of smoking cessation medications to attenuate weight gain following cessation. Subst Use Misuse. 2016;51(5):586–97.
26. Tonstad S. Cigarette smoking, smoking cessation, and diabetes. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2009;85(1):4–13.
27. Tonstad S, Lawrence D. Varenicline in smokers with diabetes: a pooled analysis of 15 randomized, placebocontrolled studies of varenicline. J Diabetes Investig. 2017;8(1):93–100.
28. Nagrebetsky A, Brettell R, Roberts N, et al. Smoking cessation in adults with diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis of data from randomised controlled trials. BMJ Open. 2014;4:e004107.
29. Clair C, Rigotti NA, Porneala B, Fox CS, D'Agostino RB, Pencina MJ, Meigs JB. Association of smoking cessation and weight change with cardiovascular disease among adults with and without diabetes. JAMA. 2013;309(10):1014–21.
30. McBride CM, Emmons KM, Lipkus IM. Understanding the potential of teachable moments: the case of smoking cessation. Health Educ Res. 2003;18(2):156–70.
31. Wilkes S, Evans A. A cross-sectional study comparing the motivation for smoking cessation in apparently healthy patients who smoke to those who smoke and have ischaemic heart disease, hypertension or diabetes. Family Practice. 1999;16:608–10.
32. Rehman H, Kamal AK, Sayani S, Morris PB, Merchant AT, Virani SS. Using mobile health (mHealth) technology in the management of diabetes mellitus, physical inactivity, and smoking. Curr Atheroscler Rep. 2017;19(4):16.

Part VIII

Acute Complications

Diabetic Ketoacidosis

41

Guillermo E. Umpierrez

Epidemiology

DKA most often occurs in patients with type 1 diabetes, but many patients with type 2 diabetes may develop ketoacidosis under stressful medical and surgical conditions [1]. In contrast to popular belief, DKA is more common in adults than in children. Data from the T1D Exchange Clinic Network including 2561 shows that young adults (18–25 years) have the highest occurrence of DKA (~5%) defined as ≥1 event in prior 3 months [2]. In community-based studies (1,2), more than 40% of patients with DKA are older than 40 years, and more than 20% are older than 55 years. Worldwide, infection is the most common precipitating cause for DKA, occurring in 30–50% of cases. Other precipitating causes are intercurrent illnesses (i.e., surgery, trauma, myocardial ischemia, pancreatitis), psychological stress, and noncompliance with insulin therapy.

Treatment of patients with DKA and HHS is associated with substantial mortality and healthcare costs. DKA is the leading cause of mortality among children and young adults with T1D, accounting for ~50% of all deaths in diabetic patients younger than 24 years of age [3]. In the United States, the overall inpatient DKA mortality is <1% [3, 4], but a higher rate is reported among elderly patients with life-threatening illnesses [3–6]. Mortality increases substantially with aging, with mortality rates for those over 65–75 years reaching 20–40%. The cause of death in patients with DKA rarely results from the metabolic complications of hyperglycemia or metabolic acidosis but relates to the underlying medical illness (i.e., trauma, infection) that precipitated the ketoacidosis.

G. E. Umpierrez (✉)
Emory University, Section Head, Diabetes & Endocrinology, Grady Health System, Atlanta, GA, USA
e-mail: geumpie@emory.edu

Pathogenesis

DKA is characterized by uncontrolled hyperglycemia, metabolic acidosis, and increased circulating total body ketone concentration. Ketoacidosis results from the lack of, or ineffectiveness of, insulin with concomitant elevation of counterregulatory hormones (glucagon, catecholamine, cortisol, and growth hormone) [7, 8]. In individuals with and without diabetes, insulin controls hepatic glucose production by suppressing hepatic gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis. In insulin-sensitive tissues such as muscle, insulin promotes protein anabolism, glucose uptake, and glycogen synthesis and inhibits glycogenolysis and protein breakdown. In addition, insulin inhibits lipolysis, ketogenesis, and free fatty acid (FFA) [1, 8]. In contrast, counterregulatory hormones (glucagon, catecholamines, cortisol, and growth hormone) promote metabolic pathways opposite to insulin action, both in the liver and peripheral tissues leading to altered glucose production and disposal, and increased lipolysis and production of ketone bodies.

The pathophysiologic basis for hyperglycemia and ketoacidosis in DKA is shown in Fig. 41.1 [9]. Hyperglycemia results from increased hepatic glucose production and impaired glucose utilization in peripheral tissues. Increased gluconeogenesis results from the high availability of gluconeogenic precursors (alanine, lactate, and glycerol) and from the increased activity of gluconeogenic enzymes (phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase (PEPCK), fructose-1,6-bisphosphatase, and pyruvate carboxylase) [8]. In addition, both hyperglycemia and high ketone levels cause an osmotic diuresis leading to hypovolemia and decreased glomerular filtration rate; the latter further aggravates hyperglycemia [9].

The mechanisms that underlie the increased production of ketones have been recently discussed in several reviews [1, 9]. The association of insulin deficiency and increased concentration of catecholamine, cortisol, and growth hormone causes the activation of hormone-sensitive lipase in adipose tissue. This enzyme causes endogenous triglyceride breakdown with subsequent release of large amounts of fatty acids into the cir-

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_41

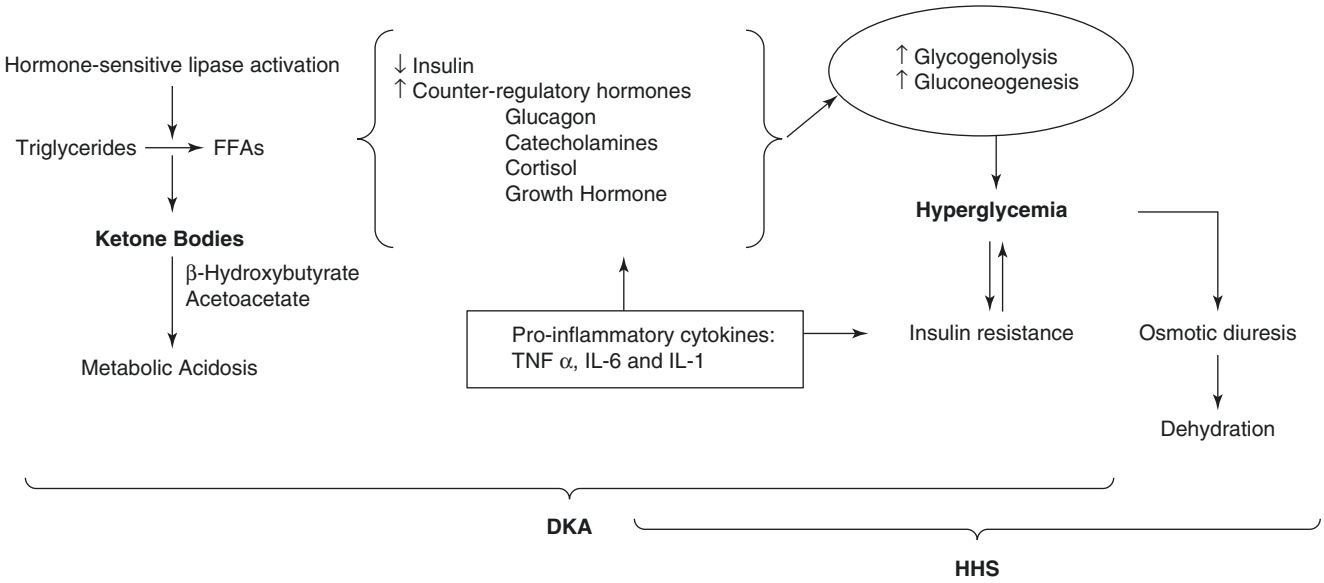


Fig. 41.1 Pathogenesis of hyperglycemic emergencies [9]. Hyperglycemia and accumulation of ketone bodies result from a relative or absolute insulin deficiency and excess counterregulatory hormones (glucagon, cortisol, catecholamines, and growth hormone). *Increased ketone bodies and ketoacidosis*. Decrease in insulin levels combined with increase in counterregulatory hormones, particularly epinephrine, causes the activation of hormone-sensitive lipase in adipose tissue and breakdown of triglyceride into glycerol and free fatty acids (FFAs). In the liver, FFAs are oxidized to ketone bodies, a process predominantly stimulated by glucagon. The two major ketone bodies are β-hydroxybutyrate and acetoacetic acid. Accumulation of ketone bodies leads to a decrease in serum bicarbonate concentration and metabolic acidosis. Higher insulin levels present in HHS inhibit ketogenesis and limit metabolic acidosis. *Increased glucose production in DKA and HHS.* When insulin is deficient, hyperglycemia develops because of three processes: increased gluconeogenesis, accelerated glycogenolysis, and impaired glucose utilization by peripheral tissues. Hyperglycemia causes osmotic diuresis that leads to hypovolemia, decreased glomerular filtration rate, and worsening of hyperglycemia

culation. Elevated FFAs are transported into the hepatic mitochondria where they are oxidized to ketone bodies, a process predominantly stimulated by glucagon. Glucagon lowers the hepatic levels of malonyl coenzyme A (CoA), the first committed intermediate in the synthesis of long-chain fatty acids (lipogenesis), and a potent inhibitor of fatty acid oxidation. Malonyl CoA inhibits carnitine palmitoyl acyltransferase (CPTI), an enzyme that regulates movement of FFA into the mitochondria. Therefore, reduction in malonyl CoA leads to stimulation of CPTI and effectively increases ketoacid production. In addition to increased ketone body production, there is also evidence that decreased clearance of ketoacids also contributes to the development of DKA.

Precipitating Causes

DKA is the initial manifestation of diabetes in 20–30% of patients with type 1 diabetes. In known diabetic patients, precipitating factors for DKA include infections, intercurrent illnesses, psychological stress, and noncompliance with therapy (Table 41.1). Infection is the most common precipitating factor for DKA, occurring in 30–50% of cases [1]. Urinary tract infection and pneumonia account for most infections. Other acute conditions that may precipitate DKA include cerebrovascular accident, alcohol abuse, pancreatitis, pulmonary embolism, myocardial infarction, and trauma. Drugs that affect carbohydrate metabolism such as corticosteroids, thiazides, and sympathomimetic agents may also precipitate the development of DKA. One large retrospective review from the UK reported that hyperglycemic emergencies occurred at a rate of 1–2 per 1000 person-years following initiation of antipsychotics [10]. Of the antipsychotics, olanzapine and risperidone were associated with the highest risk [10].

Recently, the use of sodium glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors, a new class of oral antidiabetic agents that lower plasma glucose by inhibiting proximal tubular reabsorption of glucose in the kidney, has been associated with DKA in patients with T1D and T2D [11, 12]. An atypical presentation

Table 41.1 Causes of DKA and HHS

Precipitating cause	% of admissions	
	DKA[a]	HHS[b]
Infection	30–35	40–60
Failure to take insulin	15–40	0–35
New onset diabetes	20–25	20–25
Medical illnesses	10–20	10–15
Unknown	2–10	---

[a]Data are from Refs. [2, 7]
[b]Data are from Refs. [2, 7, 12]

of DKA, which can lead to delayed recognition and treatment, has been referred to as "euglycemic DKA" due to only mild to moderate elevations in blood glucose reported in many cases. Compiled data from randomized studies with the use of SGLT2 inhibitors reported a very low incidence of DKA in patients with T2D ~0.07% [13, 14]; however, the risk of ketosis and DKA is higher in patients with T1D. About 10% of patients with T1D treated with SGLT2 inhibitors develop ketosis, and 5% require hospital admission for DKA. Potential mechanisms have been proposed, including higher glucagon levels, reduction of daily insulin requirement leading to a decrease in the suppression of lipolysis and ketogenesis, and decreased urinary excretion of ketones [1].

The importance of noncompliance and psychological factors in the incidence of DKA has been emphasized in recent studies [15–17]. In a survey of 341 female patients with type 1 diabetes, Polonsky et al. reported that psychological problems complicated by eating disorders were a contributing factor in 20% of recurrent ketoacidosis in young women. In addition, eating disorders are reported in up to one-third of young women with type 1 diabetes. Factors that may lead to insulin omission in young subjects included fear of gaining weight with good metabolic control, fear of hypoglycemia, rebellion from authority, and diabetes-related stress. Lack of insulin treatment adherence is reported as a major precipitating cause for DKA in urban black and medically indigent patients. Many studies have reported that in urban black patients, poor compliance with insulin accounted for more than 50% of DKA cases admitted to a major urban hospital [1, 18]. Limited resources and lack of health insurance increase hospitalization rates for DKA by two- to threefold higher than comparable rates among diabetic persons with private insurance.

Although the use of continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion by an insulin pump was associated with an increased risk of DKA, recent mechanical improvements of such devices and the use of frequent home glucose monitoring have reduced this complication considerably [1]. In one of the largest prospective studies for therapy and follow-up of type 1 diabetes, the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial, the incidence of DKA was quite low in patients treated with continuous insulin infusion devices.

Diagnosis

Symptoms and Signs

Symptoms of hyperglycemia including polyuria, polydipsia, and weight loss are usually present for several days prior to the development of DKA [3, 9]. Two-thirds of patients present with weakness, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain [19]. Abdominal pain, sometimes mimicking an acute abdomen, is especially common in children; although the cause has not been elucidated, delayed gastric emptying and ileus induced by electrolyte disturbance and metabolic acidosis have been implicated as possible causes of abdominal pain.

Physical examination reveals signs of dehydration, including loss of skin turgor, dry mucous membranes, tachycardia, and hypotension. Mental status can vary from full alertness to profound lethargy; however, fewer than 20% of patients are hospitalized with loss of consciousness [8]. Acetone on breath and labored Kussmaul respiration may also be present on admission, particularly in patients with severe metabolic acidosis.

Laboratory Findings

The syndrome of DKA consists of the triad of hyperglycemia, ketosis, and acidemia (Table 41.2) [8]. Diagnostic criteria for DKA accepted by the American Diabetes Association are a blood glucose greater than 250 mg/dL, pH lower than 7.3, serum bicarbonate lower than 15 mEq/L, and a moderate degree of ketonemia (beta-hydroxybutyrate and acetoacetic acid greater than 3 mmol) [3]. The key diagnostic feature is the elevation in circulating total blood ketone concentration. Assessment of ketonemia can be performed by the nitroprus-

Table 41.2 Diagnostic criteria for DKA

	DKA		
	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Plasma glucose (mg/dL)	>250	>250	>250
Arterial pH	7.25–7.30	7.00–< 7.24	<7.00
Serum bicarbonate (mEq/L)	15–18	10–< 15	<10
Urine ketone[a]	Positive	Positive	Positive
Serum ketone	Positive	Positive	Positive
Effective serum osmolality[b]	Variable	Variable	Variable mOsm/kg
Anion gap	>10	>12	>12
Alteration in sensorium	Alert	Alert/drowsy	Stupor/coma

Modified by permission of Diabetes Care from the American Diabetes Association Consensus Statement on Hyperglycemic Crises, 2009 [3]
[a]Nitroprusside reaction
[b]Effective serum osmolality: 2[measured Na^+ (mEq/L)] + glucose (mg/dL)/18

Table 41.3 Useful formulas for the evaluation of DKA

1. Calculation of anion gap (AG):
$AG = [Na^+] - [Cl^- + HCO_3^-]$
2. Total and effective serum osmolality:
$\text{Corrected}\left[Na^+\right] = \frac{1.6 \times \text{glucose}(\text{mg/dl}) - 100}{100} + \left[\text{measured}\, Na^+\right]$
$\text{Effective} = 2\left[Na^+\right] + \frac{\text{glucose}(\text{mg/dl})}{18}$
3. Corrected serum sodium:
$\text{Corrected}\left[Na^+\right] = \frac{1.6 \times \text{glucose}(\text{mg/dl}) - 100}{100} + \left[\text{measured}\, Na^+\right]$
4. Total body water (TBW) deficit:
$\text{TBW deficit} = \left[\text{wt}(\text{kg}) \times 0.6\right] - \left[\frac{\left[\text{corrected}\, Na^+\right]}{140} - 1\right]$

side reaction, which provides a semiquantitative estimation of acetoacetate and acetone levels, or by direct measurement of beta-hydroxybutyrate, the main ketoacid in DKA.

Accumulation of ketoacids results in an increased anion gap metabolic acidosis. The anion gap is calculated by subtracting the sum of chloride and bicarbonate from the sodium concentration [Na-(Cl + HCO_3)]. The normal anion gap is 12 ± 2 mEq/L (Table 41.3).

Not all patients who present with ketoacidosis have DKA. Patients with chronic ethanol abuse with a recent binge culminating in vomiting and acute starvation may develop alcoholic ketoacidosis (AKA). The key difference between AKA and DKA is the concentration of blood glucose. DKA is characterized by severe hyperglycemia; the presence of ketoacidosis without hyperglycemia in an alcoholic patient suggests AKA. In addition, some patients with decreased food intake lower than 500 calories/day may present with starvation ketosis. The diagnosis of starvation ketosis is suggested by a history of poor intake and the fact that it rarely presents with a serum bicarbonate concentration less than 18 mEq/L [8].

The following laboratory findings should be kept in mind in patients admitted with suspected or confirmed DKA. Leukocytosis is present in most patients with DKA; however, a leukocyte count greater than 25,000 mm [3] or the presence of greater than 10% neutrophil bands is seldom seen in the absence of bacterial infection [8]. The admission serum sodium is usually low because of the osmotic flux of water from the intracellular to the extracellular space in the presence of hyperglycemia. An increase in serum sodium concentration in the presence of hyperglycemia indicates a rather profound degree of water loss. To assess the severity of sodium and water deficit, serum sodium may be corrected by adding 1.6 mg/dL to the measured serum sodium for each 100 mg/dL of glucose above 100 mg/dL (13). The admission serum potassium concentration is usually elevated in patients with DKA. These high levels occur because of a shift of potassium from the intracellular to the extracellular space due to acidemia, insulin deficiency, and hypertonicity.

Treatment

The American Diabetes Association algorithm for the management of hyperglycemic emergencies is shown in Fig. 41.2 [3]. Successful treatment of DKA requires frequent monitoring of patients, correction of hypovolemia and metabolic disorder, and careful search for the precipitating cause for DKA. Most patients with uncomplicated DKA can be treated in the emergency department or in step-down units, if close nursing supervision and monitoring is available. Several studies have failed to demonstrate clear benefits in treating DKA patients in the intensive care unit (ICU) compared to step-down units [20–22]. The mortality rate, length of hospital stay, or time to resolve ketoacidosis is similar between patients treated in ICU and non-ICU settings. In addition, ICU admission has been associated with more laboratory testing and higher hospitalization cost in patients with DKA [20, 23].

Patients with mild to moderate DKA can be safely managed in the emergency department or in step-down units, and only patients with severe DKA or those with a critical illness as precipitating cause (i.e., myocardial infarction, gastrointestinal bleeding, sepsis) [3, 24] should be treated in the ICU. Patients with altered mental status and comatose state have higher mortality than alert patients and should be managed in the ICU.

Fluid Therapy

All patients with DKA are volume depleted (fluid deficit ~ 5–8 liters) requiring aggressive fluid resuscitation to restore intravascular volume and renal perfusion. Isotonic saline (0.9% NaCl) infused at a rate of 500–1000 mL/hours during the first 2 hours, but larger volume may be required in patients with hypovolemic shock to restore normal blood pressure and tissue perfusion. After intravascular volume depletion has been corrected, the rate of normal saline infusion should be reduced to 250 mL/hours or changed to 0.45% saline depending upon the serum sodium concentration. The free water deficit can be estimated, based on corrected serum sodium concentration, using the following equation: water deficit = (0.6)(body weight in kilograms) × (1- [corrected sodium/140]) [8]. The goal is to replace half the estimated water deficit over a period of 12–24 hours.

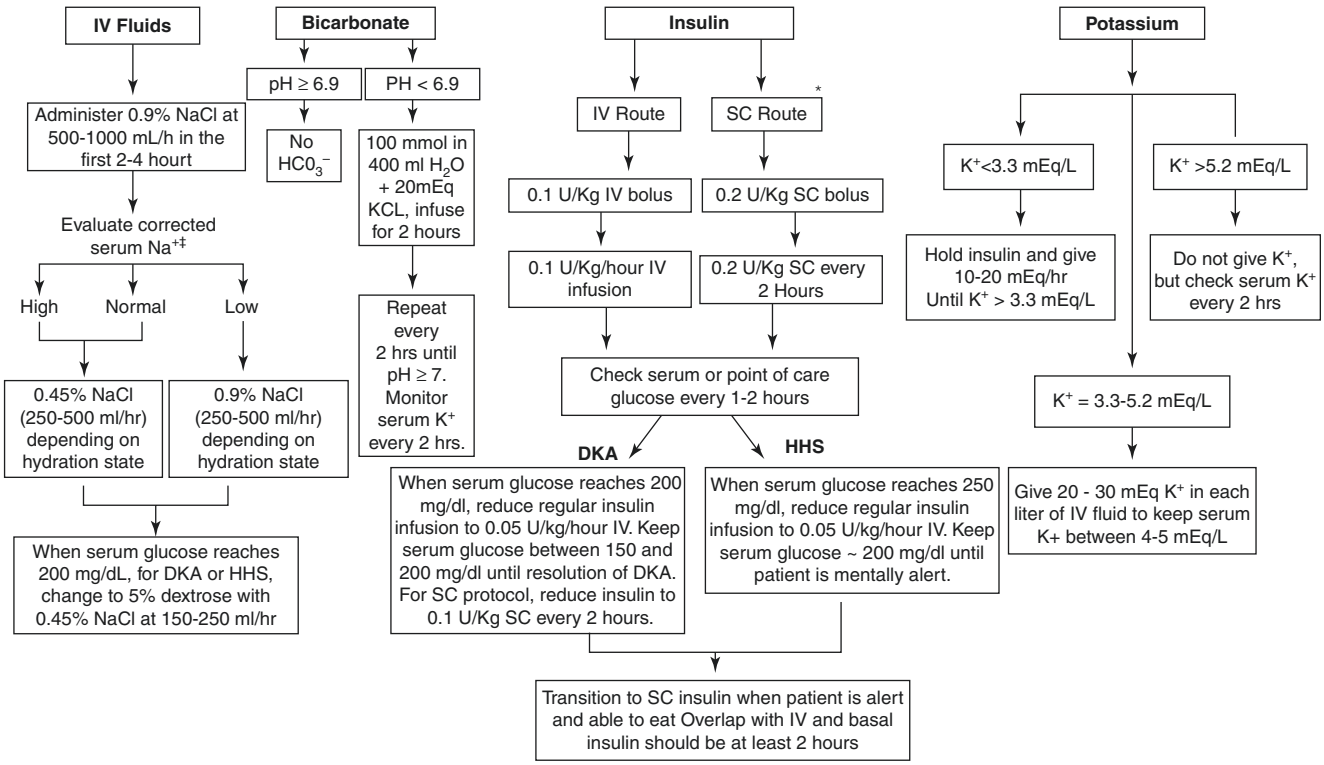


Fig. 41.2 Management of hyperglycemic emergencies [3]. (*Subcutaneous insulin protocol has not been validated for HHS. Modified by permission of Diabetes Care from the American Diabetes Association Consensus Statement on Hyperglycemic Crises, 2009 [3])

Once the plasma glucose reaches 250 mg/dL, replacement fluids should contain 5–10% dextrose to allow continued insulin administration until ketonemia is controlled while avoiding hypoglycemia [3]. An important aspect of fluid management in patients with DKA is to replace the volume of urinary losses. Failure to adjust fluid replacement for urinary losses may delay correction of electrolytes and water deficit.

Capillary blood glucose testing should be determined during treatment every 1–2 hours at the bedside using a glucose oxidase reagent strip; and blood should be drawn every 4 hours for determination of serum electrolytes, glucose, blood urea nitrogen, creatinine, magnesium, phosphorus, and venous pH until resolution of ketoacidosis.

Insulin Therapy

Insulin therapy is the cornerstone of DKA management. Insulin lowers blood glucose concentration by increasing peripheral glucose utilization and reducing hepatic glucose production. In addition, insulin therapy inhibits lipolysis and the release of free fatty acid from adipose tissue and decreases ketogenesis.

Regular insulin given intravenously by continuous infusion remains the drug of choice. Intermittent infusion or hourly boluses of low-dose intravenous insulin should be avoided because of regular insulin's short half-life [3]. The American Diabetes Association recommends an initial intravenous bolus of regular insulin of 0.1 units/kg of body weight, followed by a continuous infusion of regular insulin at a dose of 0.1 units/kg per hour until blood glucose levels reach 250 mg/dL [1]. Once glucose is lower than 250 mg/dl, dextrose should be added to intravenous fluids, and the insulin infusion rate is reduced to 0.05 units/kg per hour. Thereafter, the rate of insulin administration should be adjusted to maintain glucose levels at approximately 150–200 mg/dL and continued until ketoacidosis is resolved. Resolution of hyperglycemia takes about 4–6 hours, but resolution of ketoacidosis takes longer ~10–14 hours; thus dextrose is needed to allow insulin infusion and prevention of hypoglycemia [8].

Several studies and a meta-analysis have reported that the administration of hourly or every 2 hour doses of subcutaneous rapid-insulin analogs (lispro and aspart) represents an effective alternative to the intravenous infusion of regular insulin [25–27]. The administration of an initial subcutaneous bolus of 0.2–0.3 U/kg followed by 0.1–0.2 U/kg every 1–2 hours, respectively, until glucose is <250 mg/dl is advised. The dose is then reduced by half to 0.05 U/kg every 1 hour or 0.01 U/kg every 2 hours until resolution of DKA [25, 28]. Using scheduled subcutaneous insulin allows for safe and effective treatment in the emergency room and step-

down units without the need for ICU care in patients with mild or moderate DKA. The use of intramuscular injections of rapid-acting insulin is also effective in the treatment of DKA, but this route tends to be more painful than subcutaneous injection and might increase the risk of bleeding among patients receiving anticoagulation therapy [1, 29]. The use of rapid-acting subcutaneous insulin analogs is not recommended for patients with severe and complicated DKA.

Potassium

An estimated total body potassium deficit of ~ 3–5 mEq/kg of body weight has been reported in adult patients with DKA [8]; however, most patients present with normal or high serum potassium. With initiation of insulin and fluid therapy, the extracellular potassium concentration invariable falls. Insulin therapy and correction of acidosis decrease serum potassium levels by stimulating cellular potassium uptake in peripheral tissues. Therefore, all patients require intravenous potassium to prevent hypokalemia.

The American Diabetes Association recommends the administration of intravenous potassium chloride (20–30 mEq/L) as soon as the serum potassium concentration is below 5.5 mEq/L. The treatment goal is to maintain serum potassium levels within the normal range of 4–5 mEq/L. A presentation with severe hypokalemia may be aggravated during insulin administration, which can induce life-threatening arrhythmias and respiratory muscle weakness. Thus, if the initial serum potassium is equal or lower than 3.0 mEq/L, potassium replacement should be given for 1–2 hours at a rate of 10–20 mEq per hour, before insulin infusion is started.

Bicarbonate

Bicarbonate administration in patients with DKA is rarely indicated. Several controlled studies have failed to show any benefit from bicarbonate therapy in patients with DKA and arterial pH between 6.9 and 7.1 [3, 8]. Despite the lack of evidence, most experts in the field recommend that in patients with severe metabolic acidosis (pH < 6.9–7.0), 44.6 mEq of sodium bicarbonate should be added to a litter of hypotonic saline until pH rises to at least 7.0. In patients with arterial pH ≥ 7.0, no bicarbonate therapy is necessary.

Phosphate

Total body phosphate deficiency is present in most patients with DKA. Similar to studies with bicarbonate replacement, several studies have failed to show any beneficial effect of phosphate replacement on clinical outcome [3, 8]. Aggressive phosphate therapy may be potentially hazardous, as indicated in case reports of children with DKA who developed hypocalcemia and tetany secondary to intravenous phosphate administration. Careful phosphate replacement may be indicated in patients with cardiac dysfunction, anemia, and respiratory depression and in those with serum phosphate concentration lower than 1.0–1.5 mg/dL. If phosphate replacement is needed, it should be administered as a potassium salt, by giving half as potassium phosphate and half as potassium chloride. In such patients, because of the risk of hypocalcemia, serum calcium and phosphate levels must be monitored during phosphate infusion.

Transition to Subcutaneous Insulin

Patients with DKA should be treated with continuous intravenous or frequent subcutaneous insulin administration until ketoacidosis is resolved. Criteria for resolution of DKA include a blood glucose lower than 200 mg/dL, a serum bicarbonate level equal to or greater than 18 mEq/L, a venous pH greater than 7.3, and a calculated anion gap equal to or lower than 14 mEq/L [3, 8].

The half-life of insulin is brief (<10 minutes) [30]; thus, abrupt cessation of the insulin may result is rebound hyperglycemia, ketogenesis, and recurrent metabolic acidosis. Subcutaneous insulin should be given at least 2 hours before discontinuing the intravenous insulin infusion [3]. The initial dose of NPH should be given 2 hours before stopping insulin infusion. Earlier initiation 3–4 hours before discontinuation of insulin drip should be considered when using basal insulin analogs (glargine, determir, degludec), which have a longer delay in onset of action than NPH insulin. One randomized controlled trial evaluated the effect of co-administration of IV insulin with subcutaneous glargine shortly after the onset of treatment of DKA compared to IV insulin alone [31]. Patients who received glargine had slightly shorter time to resolution of DKA and shorter hospital stay; however, these differences were not statistically significant [31]. Another study found that the administration of basal insulin analogs early during treatment (more than 4 hours) could reduce the frequency of rebound hyperglycemia after transition off insulin drip [32].

Patients with known diabetes may be given insulin at the dosage they were receiving before the onset of DKA. In patients with newly diagnosed diabetes, an initial total insulin dose of 0.6 units/kg/day is usually sufficient to achieve and maintain metabolic control.

The use of insulin analogs in a basal bolus regimen is the preferred insulin regimen and has been shown to reduce the risk of hypoglycemia compared to human insulin (NPH and regular) regimen [33]. If insulin analogs are used, the total daily dose is given 50% as basal (glargine, detemir, degludec) once daily at the same time of the day and 50% as prandial

insulin 150–15 minutes before meals. If a patient is to be treated with NPH/regular insulin combination, the total daily dose should be given two-thirds in the morning and one-third in the evening as a split-mixed dose consisting of 2/3 of NPH and 1/3 of regular insulin.

Prevention

Patient education and the implementation of protocols aiming to acute and maintain insulin administration after discharge may reduce lapses in treatment and are a cost-effective way to reduce future risk of hospitalization for hyperglycemic emergencies [9]. Systems-based methods to reduce preventable causes of hyperglycemic emergencies may represent an important next step in reducing costs and improving patient care.

The frequency of hospitalizations for DKA has been reduced following diabetes education programs, improved follow-up care, and access to medical advice (121). The alarming frequency of insulin discontinuation due to economic reasons as the precipitating cause for DKA in low economic populations illustrates the need for healthcare legislation for reimbursement for medications to treat diabetes.

Home blood ketone monitoring, which measures beta-hydroxybutyrate levels on a finger-stick blood specimen, is commercially available ketones (59). Clinical studies have shown that elevation of beta-hydroxybutyrate levels is common in patients with poorly controlled diabetes and may allow early recognition of impending ketoacidosis, which may help to guide insulin therapy at home, and possibly, may prevent hospitalization for DKA.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Triad that is characteristic of diabetic ketoacidosis:
   (a) Hyperglycemia, ketosis, and acidemia
   (b) Frequent urination, thirst, and hunger
   (c) Hyperglycemia, weight loss, and fatigue
   (d) High levels of hyperglycemia, dehydration, and hyperosmolality
   (e) Hyperglycemia, depression of alert, and unresponsiveness
2. The key diagnostic feature of diabetic ketoacidosis:
   (a) Hyperglycemia
   (b) Dehydration
   (c) Confusion, stupor, and coma
   (d) Polyuria
   (e) Ketonemia
3. Which is the most common precipitating cause for diabetic ketoacidosis?
   (a) Insufficient insulin dose
   (b) Infection
   (c) Excessive food intake
   (d) Psychological stress
   (e) Noncompliance with therapy
4. Ketoacidosis results from:
   (a) Lack of or ineffectiveness of insulin and elevation of counterregulatory hormones
   (b) Accelerated immune attack on beta-cells
   (c) Increasing demands of insulin
   (d) Low C-peptide levels
   (e) Low compliance of patients
5. Antidiabetic agents associated with diabetic ketoacidosis:
   (a) Metformin
   (b) Sulfonylureas
   (c) Glitazones
   (d) DPP-4 inhibitors
   (e) SGLT2 inhibitors
6. Clinical symptoms of diabetic ketoacidosis include:
   (a) Polyuria
   (b) Polydipsia
   (c) Weight loss
   (d) Abdominal pain
   (e) Labored Kussmaul respiration
7. The requirements for the successful treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis include:
   (a) Frequent monitoring
   (b) Rehydration
   (c) Insulin
   (d) Investigating and correcting the cause
   (e) All of the above
8. The correct formula to estimate corrected serum sodium:

(a) $$\text{Corrected}\left[\text{Na}^{+}\right] = \frac{6.1 \times \text{glucose}\left(\text{mg/dl}\right) + 100}{100} + \left[\text{measured}\,\text{Na}^{+}\right]$$

(b) $$\text{Corrected}\left[\text{Na}^{+}\right] = \frac{6.1 \times \text{glucose}\left(\text{mg/dl}\right) - 100}{100} + \left[\text{measured}\,\text{Na}^{+}\right]$$

(c) $$\text{Corrected}\left[\text{Na}^{+}\right] = \frac{1.6 \times \text{glucose}\left(\text{mg/dl}\right) - 100}{100} + \left[\text{measured}\,\text{Na}^{+}\right]$$

(d) $$\text{Corrected}\left[\text{Na}^{+}\right] = \frac{1.5 \times \text{glucose}\left(\text{mg/dl}\right) + 100}{100} + \left[\text{measured}\,\text{Na}^{+}\right]$$

(e) $$\text{Corrected}\left[\text{Na}^{+}\right] = \frac{6.1 \times \text{glucose}\left(\text{mg/dl}\right) + 200}{100} + \left[\text{measured}\,\text{Na}^{+}\right]$$

9. Regarding insulin therapy, the American Diabetes Association recommends
   (a) An initial intravenous bolus of regular insulin of 0.1 units/kg of body weight, followed by a continuous infusion of regular insulin at a dose of 0.1 units/kg per hour until blood glucose levels reach 250 mg/dL
   (b) An initial intravenous bolus of intermediate-acting insulin of 0.1 units/kg of body weight, followed by a continuous infusion of long-acting insulin at a dose of 0.1 units/kg per hour until blood glucose levels reach 250 mg/dL
   (c) An initial intravenous bolus of regular insulin of 1 units/kg of body weight, followed by a continuous infusion of regular insulin at a dose of 1 units/kg per hour until blood glucose levels reach 100 mg/dL
   (d) An initial intravenous bolus of regular insulin of 10 units, followed by a continuous infusion of regular insulin at a dose of 1 units/kg per hour until blood glucose levels reach 150 mg/dL
   (e) An initial intravenous bolus of insulin lispro of 1 units/kg of body weight, followed by a continuous infusion of regular insulin at a dose of 1 units/kg per hour until blood glucose levels reach 250 mg/dL
10. Criteria for resolution of diabetic ketoacidosis include:
   (a) Blood glucose lower than 300 mg/dL, a serum bicarbonate level equal to or greater than 18 mEq/L, a venous pH greater than 3.7, and a calculated anion gap equal to or lower than 41 mEq/L
   (b) A blood glucose lower than 200 mg/dL, a serum bicarbonate level equal to or greater than 18 mEq/L, a venous pH greater than 7.3, and a calculated anion gap equal to or lower than 14 mEq/L
   (c) A blood glucose lower than 200 mg/dL, a serum bicarbonate level equal to or greater than 18 mEq/L, a venous pH greater than 7.4, and a calculated anion gap equal to or lower than 14 mEq/L
   (d) A blood glucose lower than 150 mg/dL, a serum bicarbonate level equal to or greater than 18 mEq/L, a venous pH greater than 7.4, and a calculated anion gap equal to or lower than 14 mEq/L
   (e) A blood glucose lower than 120 mg/dL, a serum bicarbonate level equal to or greater than 18 mEq/L, a venous pH greater than 7.4, and a calculated anion gap equal to or lower than 14 mEq/L

Correct Answers

1. (a) Hyperglycemia, ketosis, and acidemia
2. (e) Ketonemia
3. (b) Infection
4. (a) Lack of or ineffectiveness of insulin and elevation of counterregulatory hormones
5. (e) SGLT2 inhibitors
6. (a–e)
7. (e) All of the above
8. (c) $$\text{Corrected}\left[\text{Na}^{+}\right] = \frac{1.6 \times \text{glucose}\left(\text{mg}/\text{dl}\right) - 100}{100} + \left[\text{measured}\,\text{Na}^{+}\right]$$
9. (a) An initial intravenous bolus of regular insulin of 0.1 units/kg of body weight, followed by a continuous infusion of regular insulin at a dose of 0.1 units/kg per hour until blood glucose levels reach 250 mg/dL
10. (b) A blood glucose lower than 200 mg/dL, a serum bicarbonate level equal to or greater than 18 mEq/L, a venous pH greater than 7.3, and a calculated anion gap equal to or lower than 14 mEq/L

References

1. Umpierrez G, Korytkowski M. Diabetic emergencies – ketoacidosis, hyperglycaemic hyperosmolar state and hypoglycaemia. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2016;12(4):222–32.
2. Miller KM, Foster NC, Beck RW, et al. Current state of type 1 diabetes treatment in the U.S.: updated data from the T1D exchange clinic registry. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(6):971–8.
3. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Miles JM, Fisher JN. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(7):1335–43.
4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Mortality due to Hyperglycemic crises. http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/statistics/complications_national.htm. 11/19/2013. Accessed on 9/2/2016.
5. Basu A, Close CF, Jenkins D, Krentz AJ, Nattrass M, Wright AD. Persisting mortality in diabetic ketoacidosis. Diabet Med. 1993;10(3):282–4.
6. Malone ML, Gennis V, Goodwin JS. Characteristics of diabetic ketoacidosis in older versus younger adults. J Am Geriatr Soc. 1992;40(11):1100–4.
7. Chupin M, Charbonnel B, Chupin F. C-peptide blood levels in keto-acidosis and in hyperosmolar non-ketotic diabetic coma. Acta Diabetol Lat. 1981;18(2):123–8.
8. Kitabchi AE, Umpierrez GE, Murphy MB, et al. Management of hyperglycemic crises in patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2001;24(1):131–53.
9. Fayfman M, Pasquel FJ, Umpierrez GE. Management of hyperglycemic crises: diabetic ketoacidosis and hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state. Med Clin North Am. 2017;101(3):587–606.
10. Lipscombe LL, Austin PC, Alessi-Severini S, et al. Atypical antipsychotics and hyperglycemic emergencies: multicentre, retrospective cohort study of administrative data. Schizophr Res. 2014;154(1–3):54–60.
11. Peters AL, Buschur EO, Buse JB, Cohan P, Diner JC, Hirsch IB. Euglycemic diabetic ketoacidosis: a potential complication of treatment with sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 inhibition. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(9):1687–93.
12. Taylor SI, Blau JE, Rother KI. Perspective: SGLT2 inhibitors may predispose to ketoacidosis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2015; https://doi.org/10.1210/jc20151884.
13. Erondu N, Desai M, Ways K, Meininger G. Diabetic ketoacidosis and related events in the canagliflozin type 2 diabetes clinical program. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(9):1680–6.

14. Tang H, Li D, Wang T, Zhai S, Song Y. Effect of sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors on diabetic ketoacidosis among patients with type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(8):e123–4.
15. Barnard KD, Skinner TC, Peveler R. The prevalence of co-morbid depression in adults with type 1 diabetes: systematic literature review. Diabet Med. 2006;23(4):445–8.
16. Canadian Diabetes Association Clinical Practice Guidelines Expert C, Goguen J, Gilbert J. Hyperglycemic emergencies in adults. Can J Diabetes. 2013;37(Suppl 1):S72–6.
17. Randall L, Begovic J, Hudson M, et al. Recurrent diabetic ketoacidosis in inner-city minority patients: behavioral, socioeconomic, and psychosocial factors. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(9):1891–6.
18. Umpierrez GE, Kelly JP, Navarrete JE, Casals MM, Kitabchi AE. Hyperglycemic crises in urban blacks. Arch Intern Med. 1997;157(6):669–75.
19. Umpierrez G, Freire AX. Abdominal pain in patients with hyperglycemic crises. J Crit Care. 2002;17(1):63–7.
20. May ME, Young C, King J. Resource utilization in treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis in adults. Am J Med Sci. 1993;306(5):287–94.
21. Moss JM. Diabetic ketoacidosis: effective low-cost treatment in a community hospital. South Med J. 1987;80(7):875–81.
22. Umpierrez GE, Latif KA, Cuervo R, Karabell A, Freire AX, Kitabchi AE. Subcutanbeous aspart insulin: a safe and cost effective treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis. Diabetes. 2003;52(Suppl 1):584A.
23. Javor KA, Kotsanos JG, McDonald RC, Baron AD, Kesterson JG, Tierney WM. Diabetic ketoacidosis charges relative to medical charges of adult patients with type I diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1997;20(3):349–54.
24. Glaser NS, Ghetti S, Casper TC, Dean JM, Kuppermann N, Pediatric Emergency Care Applied Research Network DKAFSG. Pediatric diabetic ketoacidosis, fluid therapy, and cerebral injury: the design of a factorial randomized controlled trial. Pediatr Diabetes. 2013;14(6):435–46.
25. Umpierrez GE, Latif K, Stoever J, et al. Efficacy of subcutaneous insulin lispro versus continuous intravenous regular insulin for the treatment of patients with diabetic ketoacidosis. Am J Med. 2004;117(5):291–6.
26. Ersoz HO, Ukinc K, Kose M, et al. Subcutaneous lispro and intravenous regular insulin treatments are equally effective and safe for the treatment of mild and moderate diabetic ketoacidosis in adult patients. Int J Clin Pract. 2006;60(4):429–33.
27. Karoli R, Fatima J, Salman T, Sandhu S, Shankar R. Managing diabetic ketoacidosis in non-intensive care unit setting: role of insulin analogs. Indian J Pharmacol. 2011;43(4):398–401.
28. Umpierrez GE, Cuervo R, Karabell A, Latif K, Freire AX, Kitabchi AE. Treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis with subcutaneous insulin aspart. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(8):1873–8.
29. Kitabchi AE, Ayyagari V, Guerra SM. The efficacy of low-dose versus conventional therapy of insulin for treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis. Ann Intern Med. 1976;84(6):633–8.
30. Hipszer B, Joseph J, Kam M. Pharmacokinetics of intravenous insulin delivery in humans with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2005;7(1):83–93.
31. Doshi P, Potter AJ, De Los Santos D, Banuelos R, Darger BF, Chathampally Y. Prospective randomized trial of insulin glargine in acute management of diabetic ketoacidosis in the emergency department: a pilot study. Acad Emerg Med. 2015;22(6):657–62.
32. Hsia E, Seggelke S, Gibbs J, et al. Subcutaneous administration of glargine to diabetic patients receiving insulin infusion prevents rebound hyperglycemia. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012;97(9):3132–7.
33. Umpierrez GE, Jones S, Smiley D, et al. Insulin analogs versus human insulin in the treatment of patients with diabetic ketoacidosis: a randomized controlled trial. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(7):1164–9.

Hypoglycemia: Diagnosis, Management, and Prevention

42

Raquel N. Faradji, Ana C. Uribe-Wiechers, and María Elena Sainz de la Maza Viadero

Chapter Objectives

To know:

- The definition of hypoglycemia
  - In persons with diabetes
  - In persons without diabetes
- The classification of diabetes
- The normal physiologic counterregulatory response to hypoglycemia and glycemic thresholds
- The altered counterregulatory responses to hypoglycemia
  - T1D
  - Long-standing T2D
  - Hypoglycemia unawareness
  - Hypoglycemia-associated autonomic failure
- The detection, diagnosis, and causes of hypoglycemia
- Recognition of risk factors for hypoglycemia as a key element to prevent further episodes of hypoglycemia
- The treatment strategies to reduce or prevent hypoglycemia, which include structured education, insulin analogue regimens, frequent self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG), and education.

Introduction

Hypoglycemia is one of the most important barriers to achieve optimal glycemic management in the treatment of diabetes. It may cause potentially incapacitating and life-threatening events in patients with type 1 diabetes (T1D) and long-standing type 2 diabetes (T2D). It precludes patients to reach euglycemia limiting the benefits of tight control. Patients may develop unawareness of hypoglycemic symptoms due to blunted responses resulting from recurrent episodes of hypoglycemia posing them into grave danger.

Hypoglycemia Definition

Hypoglycemia in Persons Without Diabetes

In healthy individuals, symptoms of hypoglycemia develop at a mean plasma glucose concentration of approximately 54 mg/dl (3 mmol/L). However, the glycemic thresholds for this and other responses to hypoglycemia shift to lower plasma glucose concentration in patients with recurrent hypoglycemia [1].

Hypoglycemia in Persons with Diabetes

The ADA (American Diabetes Association) has defined hypoglycemia in patients with diabetes as "all episodes of abnormally low plasma glucose concentration that expose the individual to potential harm." A single threshold value for plasma glucose concentration that defines hypoglycemia in diabetes cannot be assigned because glycemic thresholds

R. N. Faradji (✉)
Clinica EnDi, Mexico City, Mexico

RENACED Diabetes Tipo 1, Mexico City, Mexico

Pathophysiology of the Endocrine System, Escuela de Medicina TEC-ABC, Tecnologico de Monterrey, Centro Medico ABC, Mexico City, Mexico

Sociedad Mexicana de Nutrición y Endocrinología, Mexico City, Mexico

A. C. Uribe-Wiechers
Clinica EnDi, Mexico City, Mexico

Escuela de Medicina TEC-ABC, Tecnologico de Monterrey, Centro Medico ABC, Monterrey, Mexico

Sociedad Mexicana de Nutrición y Endocrinología, Mexico City, Mexico

M. E. Sainz de la Maza Viadero
Clinica EnDi, Mexico City, Mexico

RENACED Diabetes Tipo 1, Mexico City, Mexico

Didactic Resources for Nutrition, Escuela de Dietetica y Nutricion ISSSTE, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_42

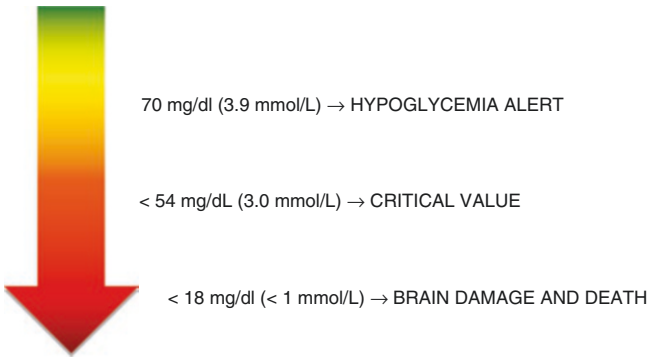


Fig. 42.1 Relevant hypoglycemia values

for symptoms of hypoglycemia shift to lower plasma glucose concentrations after recent antecedent hypoglycemia and to higher plasma glucose in patients with poorly controlled diabetes and infrequent hypoglycemia [2, 3].

The ADA Workgroup on Hypoglycemia recommends that persons with drug-treated diabetes become concerned about developing hypoglycemia at a plasma glucose concentration of 70 mg/dl (3.9 mmol/L) or less. That value approximates the lower limit of the postabsorptive plasma glucose concentration range and the glycemic threshold for activation of the physiologic glucose counterregulatory mechanisms, and it is low enough to reduce glycemic defenses against subsequent hypoglycemia in nondiabetic individuals [2] (Fig. 42.1).

The European Agency and the ADA defines hypoglycemia as a blood glucose level of less than 54 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L), which leads to impaired cognitive function and needs to be avoided because of its immediate and long-term danger to the individual. The International Hypoglycemia Study Group recommends that the frequency of detection of a glucose concentration <54 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L) should be included in reports of glucose trials of glucose-lowering drugs evaluated for the treatment of diabetes mellitus [3]. The new classification of hypoglycemia, according to the American Diabetes Association Standards of Care 2017 [4], includes an episode of more than 20 minutes duration of hypoglycemia <54 mg/dl (3 mmol/L) measured by continuous glucose monitoring (CGM).

Hypoglycemia Classification

The clinical classification of hypoglycemia includes severe, symptomatic, asymptomatic, probable, and pseudohypoglycemia (Table 42.1).

Table 42.1 Clinical classification of hypoglycemia in diabetes

Severe	Requiring assistance of another individual to administer carbohydrates, glucagon, or rescue therapy
Symptomatic	Typical symptoms of hypoglycemia are accompanied by a measured plasma glucose concentration <70 mg/dl (3.9 mmol/dL)
Asymptomatic	Not accompanied by typical symptoms of hypoglycemia but measured plasma glucose of <70 mg/dl (3.9 mmol/dL)
Probable	Symptoms typical of hypoglycemia are present, but a measured plasma glucose of <70 mg/dl (3.9 mmol/dL) could not be determined
Pseudohypoglycemia	A person reports symptoms of hypoglycemia, but the plasma glucose concentration is >70 mg/dl (3.9 mmol/dL)

Adapted from [2]

Physiology and Pathophysiology of Hypoglycemia

Glucose is the predominant metabolic source of energy for the brain, as it requires a constant and adequate supply of glucose. Under normal postabsorptive conditions, the brain accounts for 65% of whole-body glucose. The brain cannot synthesize nor store glucose under normal physiologic conditions but can adapt and utilize other substrates. Thus, during periods of fasting, ketone bodies, lactate, and alanine can be used as alternative brain fuels [5, 6].

Decreased Glucose Uptake by the Brain

- When blood glucose drops to 65–70 mg/dl (3.6–3.0 mmol/L), brain glucose uptake falls.
- At 54 mg/dl (3.0 mmol/L), the blood-to-brain glucose transport becomes rate limiting for brain glucose metabolism [6].

Normal Glucose Counterregulation

In defense against declining plasma glucose concentrations, several physiological mechanisms have evolved to prevent and correct hypoglycemia [5].

First defense Inhibition of endogenous insulin secretion.

Insulin is the principal physiologic factor that lowers plasma glucose. Insulin is secreted primarily in response to glucose, but amino acids, nonesterified fatty acids, adrenergic stimulation, and acetylcholine can also activate its secretion. Insulin secretion can be inhibited by hypoglycemia, insulin itself, somatostatin, and adrenergic activity [6].

Secondary defense Increased glucagon release.

Glucagon is released from the α-cells in the islet of Langerhans. The factors that stimulate its release include hypoglycemia, amino acids, catecholamines (epinephrine and norepinephrine via β-adrenergic mechanisms), and free fatty acids. Inhibition of glucagon release includes insulin

and somatostatin. Glucagon's physiologic actions are restricted almost exclusively by the liver, stimulating a rapid increase in hepatic production over a period of 10–15 minutes. The initial rise in glucose output is provided by an increase in hepatic glycogenolysis. If hypoglycemia continues, glucagon can stimulate hepatic gluconeogenesis; this can only be done if there are three carbon precursors present (glycerol, lactate, amino acids) [6].

Third defense Increased release of epinephrine.

Similar to glucagon, epinephrine can act rapidly to increase hepatic glucose output by stimulating glycogenolysis. If hypoglycemia continues, and three carbon precursors are present, epinephrine will stimulate gluconeogenesis. Epinephrine also decreases glucose utilization by directly inhibiting tissue glucose uptake and by inhibiting insulin release. Epinephrine is approximately 10 times more potent than norepinephrine in producing these effects. Epinephrine stimulates glucose production directly by a β-adrenergic mechanism and indirectly by inhibiting insulin secretion by an α-adrenergic mechanism. Glucose counterregulation from insulin-induced hypoglycemia is primarily by glycogenolysis during the first 2 hours and from gluconeogenesis thereafter. While the effect of both glucagon and epinephrine on glucose production is transient, the effect of epinephrine to limit glucose utilization is sustained [6].

Late defense Release of cortisol and growth hormone.

Increased secretion of cortisol and growth hormone is involved in defense against prolonged hypoglycemia. Both can increase glucose through increases in gluconeogenesis. Both hormones can also inhibit insulin-stimulated peripheral glucose uptake and can increase proteolysis and lipolysis. However, prolonged hypoglycemia (3–5 hours) is needed before the metabolic effects are measurable, and even at that time they only represent 20–25% the action of epinephrine. Thus, cortisol and growth hormone are not critical to recovery from even prolonged hypoglycemia or to the prevention of hypoglycemia after an overnight fast [6, 7].

Key Points

- The release of neuroendocrine counterregulatory hormones and the inhibition of endogenous insulin secretion occur before a healthy adult can feel any symptoms of hypoglycemia.
- In the acute phase of hypoglycemia, there is an increase in the concentrations of glucagon and epinephrine (within minutes), and increases of cortisol and growth hormone occur later.
- Glucagon plays a primary role in the prevention and correction of hypoglycemia. Epinephrine is not normally critical but becomes critical when glucagon is deficient.
- Insulin, glucagon, and epinephrine play a major role in the prevention and correction of hypoglycemia. All of these three factors are impaired in diabetes (Fig. 42.1).

Glycemic Thresholds

Glycemic thresholds for the activation of counterregulatory hormones have been reported to be at or just below the lower limit of normal plasma glucose range and elicit a characteristic sequence of response (Table 42.2) with a defined hierarchy. Symptoms are generated at blood glucose concentrations around 50–58 mg/dl in young adults [6].

Glycemic Mechanisms

Falling plasma glucose concentrations are detected by glucose-responsive neurons in the hypothalamus and other regions of the brain. There is evidence that glucose sensors in the periphery, apart from pancreatic β-cells, have been found in the intestine, hepatoportal vein, and carotid body. Within the central nervous system (CNS), studies have identified a number of areas that contain neurons sensitive to local changes in glucose. One brain region in particular, the VMH (ventromedial hypothalamus), appears to play a crucial role during hypoglycemia. The specialized glucose-sensing neurons in the CNS have been broadly defined as either glucose-exited, which increase their action potential frequency when glucose rises, or glucose inhibited, which increase their action potential frequency when glucose levels

Table 42.2 Glycemic thresholds for hypoglycemia

Counterregulatory action	Glycemic threshold	Response
↓ Insulin	83 ± 3 mg/dl	First initial response
↑ Glucagon	68 ± 2 mg/dl	Early response – critical
↑ Epinephrine	69 ± 2 mg/dl	Early response – critical
↑ Brain uptake	67 ± 2 mg/dl	Decreased blood to brain glucose transport
↑ Growth hormone	66 ± 2 mg/dl	Late response – not critical
↑ Cortisol	58 ± 3 mg/dl	Late response – not critical
Autonomic (neurogenic)	54 mg/dl	Behavioral response (food intake)
Neuroglycopenic Cognitive dysfunction	49 mg/dl	Compromised behavioral response

Adapted from [5, 6]

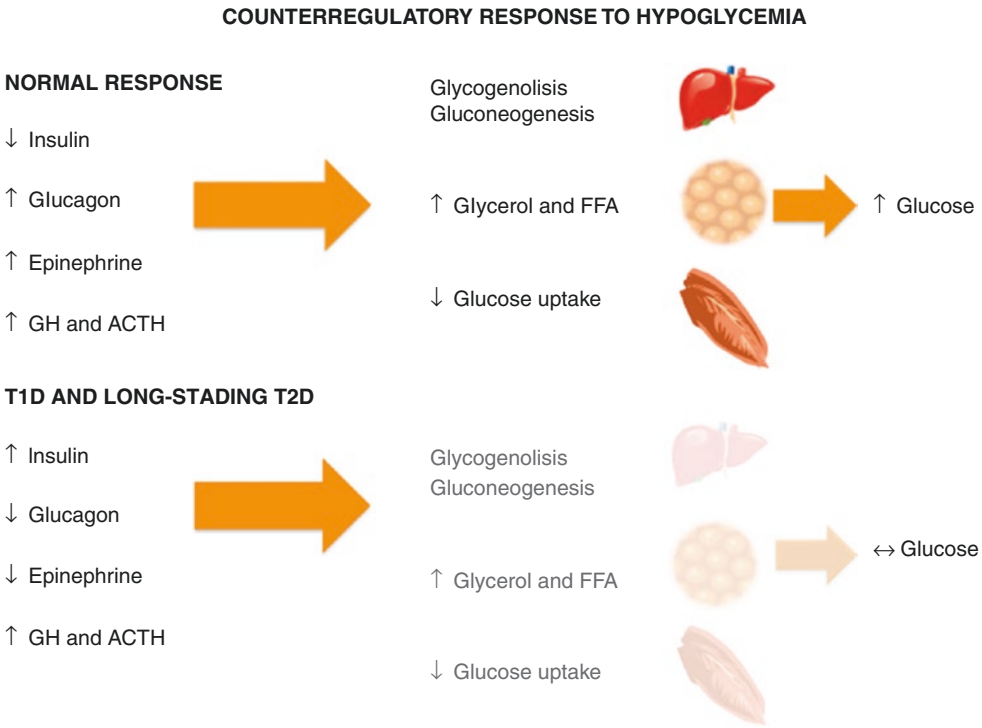


Fig. 42.2 Response to hypoglycemia in normal state and in T1D and long standing T2D. Normal response to hypoglycemia: insulin decreases and the contrarregulatory hormones (glucagon, epinephrine, growth hormone and ACTH) are elevated to ensure glycogenolisis and gluconeogenesis with the subsequent rise in glucose levels. Patients with T1D and long-standing T2D: insulin does not decrease, glucagon does not increase, epinephrine response is blunted, thereby there is no rise in glucose levels

fall. These neurons are liable to react in a coordinated manner to alterations in the glucose level to which they are exposed. The neurons also respond to other metabolites such as lactate and β-hydroxybutyrate, as well as hormones such as insulin, leptin, and possibly glucagon-like peptide 1, reflecting the central role they play in responding to alterations in fuel supply and in maintaining glucose homeostasis [8].

Pathophysiology of Glucose Counterregulation in Diabetes

T1D

The physiology of glucose counterregulation is extensively impaired in patients with T1D. As endogenous insulin secretion becomes completely deficient, the first physiologic line of defense (modulation of endogenous insulin) becomes lost. As the plasma glucose concentration falls, insulin levels do not decrease. In addition, the rise in glucagon secretion (second line of defense) is lost as glucose levels decline. This is an acquired defect, but it develops early in the course of T1D. Glucagon responses to other stimuli are intact; therefore, it cannot be attributed to α-cells and must represent a signal abnormality. The deficient glucagon response is tightly related to absolute insulin deficiency. Insulin levels do not fall, and glucagon levels do not rise as the plasma glucose concentration falls to hypoglycemic levels (Fig. 42.2).

The epinephrine response to failing glucose concentrations is commonly attenuated. This acquired abnormality is also selective in that epinephrine response to other stimuli is intact. However, while the deficient glucagon response to hypoglycemia appears to be absolute, the deficient epinephrine response appears to a threshold abnormality. This epinephrine abnormality has been determined to be due to previous episodes of hypoglycemia [5].

Additional Facts

- Repeated hypoglycemia produces acute reductions (30–50%) in epinephrine, pancreatic polypeptide (a marker of parasympathetic nervous system activity), and muscle sympathetic nerve activity.
- Recent (within 24 hours) antecedent hypoglycemia blunts the release of glucagon, growth hormone, adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), and cortisol during subsequent hypoglycemia [6, 7].

T2D

The glucose counterregulatory mechanisms are generally intact during the initial course of T2D. Although there may

be mild counterregulatory hormonal deficiencies, epinephrine secretion appears to be intact. Several studies have shown that counterregulatory hormonal release occurs at a higher blood glucose levels than in nondiabetic persons. This may confer greater protection against hypoglycemia. The glucagon response to hypoglycemia may be mildly decreased [9].

In many individuals with T2D who have insulin resistance, the lipolytic effects of epinephrine outweigh the effects of insulin on adipose tissue. Plasma free fatty acids increase in response to hypoglycemia in patients with T2D but not T1D. Epinephrine secretion in hypoglycemia may have a greater protective effect in insulin-resistant patients by promoting metabolic substrate release rather than storage. Epinephrine also stimulates the release of glucose from the kidney [9].

Nevertheless, as insulin progressively declines due to failing pancreatic endogenous secretion of insulin, glucagon response to hypoglycemia will progressively decline (Fig. 42.2).

It is important to take into account the effects of aging in the response to hypoglycemia in patients with T2D as the majority of the population is elderly. With increasing age, the symptoms of hypoglycemia become less intense, and the symptom profile is modified. It has been reported that there is a modest attenuation of blood glucose recovery form hypoglycemia in the elderly nondiabetic population, in whom the rise of plasma epinephrine was slower than younger subjects. The elevation of glucagon and epinephrine occurred at lower plasma glucose levels in elderly nondiabetic patients compared to nondiabetic younger patients. The magnitude of the response is also lower in the elderly group. Also, the rate of insulin clearance from the circulation declines with increasing age, which may enhance the risk of hypoglycemia [9].

Hypoglycemia Unawareness

Individuals with intensive glucose control and multiple episodes of hypoglycemia find that activation of the physiologic responses to hypoglycemia is pushed to a lower plasma glucose level. This dangerous condition, called hypoglycemia unawareness, results in inability of patients to recognize falling plasma glucose until the value is <50 mg/dL (2.8 mmol/L). In some individuals, a falling plasma glucose level is not recognized at plasma glucose of 30 mg/dL (1.7 mmol/L). Thus, thresholds for the activation of physiologic defenses against hypoglycemia are labile and can change rapidly [6].

A major defect in the counterregulatory response to hypoglycemia in diabetes is a reduced autonomic response. Hypoglycemia unawareness occurs in 20% of patients with T1D, about half of the patients with long-standing T1D, and estimated to occur in about 25% of patients with long-standing T2D. As glucose declines, there is activation of the autonomic nervous system (ANS) that results in increased glucose production and decreased glucose uptake. The autonomic response is directly related to the generation of a symptomatic response to hypoglycemia. When this response becomes impaired, there is reduced awareness of the symptoms of hypoglycemia as well as reduced catecholamine release. The reduced autonomic response includes the sympathetic neural norepinephrine and acetylcholine, as well as the adrenomedullary epinephrine response (Fig. 42.3). As discussed previously this reduced response becomes critical in patients with T1D and long-standing T2D, as there is no glucagon response, increasing the risk of hypoglycemia [8].

Key Points

- A defective autonomic response usually precedes prior episodes of hypoglycemia.
- This sets up a vicious cycle whereby hypoglycemia increases the likelihood of subsequent hypoglycemia.
- Hypoglycemia unawareness has been found to increase the frequency of hypoglycemia by a factor of seven [6].

Hypoglycemia-Associated Autonomic Failure

The combination of defective glucose counterregulation (decreased glucagon release and attenuated epinephrine release) and hypoglycemia unawareness (reduced autonomic-sympathetic neural and adrenomedullary response) constitutes the clinical syndrome of hypoglycemia-associated autonomic failure (HAAF). It occurs in patients with T1D and long-standing T2D who have had recent antecedent hypoglycemia; it can also occur by sleep or prior exercise (Fig. 42.3) [10].

In patients with T1D, recent hypoglycemia has been shown to shift glycemic thresholds for autonomic and cognitive dysfunction responses to lower plasma glucose concentrations. It has been shown that avoidance of hypoglycemia for 2–3 weeks reverses hypoglycemia unawareness and improves the reduced epinephrine defective response; nevertheless, the glucagon response is not restored [7].

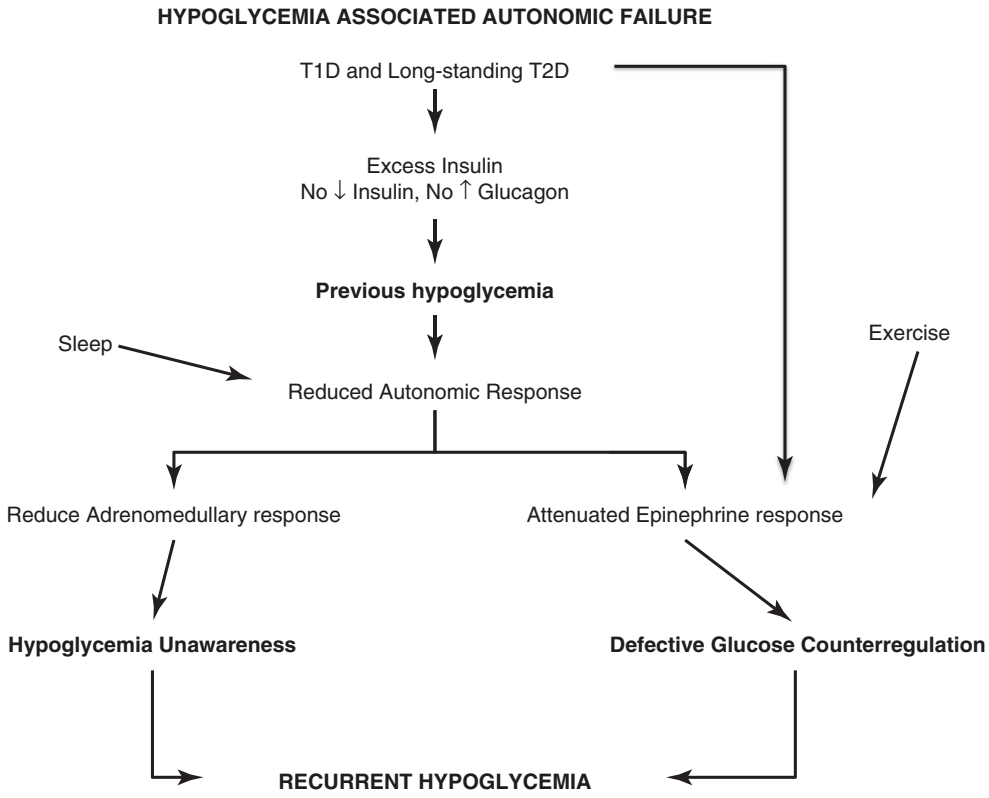


Fig. 42.3 Hypoglycemia Associated Autonomic Failure (Adapted from [10])

Additional Facts

Repeated episodes or relative mild hypoglycemia <70 mg/dl (3.9 mmol/L) and only brief durations (15–20 minutes) of hypoglycemia can independently blunt counterregulatory responses to subsequent hypoglycemia.

One prolonged episode (2 hours) of moderate hypoglycemia <50 mg/dl (2.8 mmol/L) is sufficient to induce HAAF within a few hours on the same day [6].

It has been proposed that repeated hypoglycemia increased cerebral glucose uptake in both healthy individuals and patients with T1D, thereby reducing the stimulus for neuroendocrine counterregulatory responses during subsequent hypoglycemia. Other mechanisms that have been proposed include activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary adrenal axis, increases in neurotransmitters such as GABA, and changes in hypothalamic fuel sensors such as glucokinase or AMP kinase. Additionally, experimental evidence demonstrates that alcohol and opioids can downregulate subsequent ANS and neuroendocrine responses to hypoglycemia.

As mentioned above, sleep and exercise can induce HAAF. Compared to hypoglycemia during waking period, hypoglycemia during sleep (nocturnal hypoglycemia) elicits reduced counterregulatory response. Research has revealed a 60–70% reduction in epinephrine response during nocturnal hypoglycemia. Thus, exercise blunts ANS response (by 30–50%) to subsequent hypoglycemia and vice versa. This feed-forward vicious cycle of blunted ANS responses between exercise and hypoglycemia can occur after only a few hours and persists for at least 24 hours following either stress [6].

Opioid receptor blockade, via treatment with naloxone, during hypoglycemia has been shown to prevent blunting responses (epinephrine and endogenous glucagon production) to next-day hypoglycemia in individuals with T1D [6].

Physiologic Stimuli to Blunted Hormonal Responses to Hypoglycemia

Antecedent hypoglycemia
Nocturnal hypoglycemia
Sleep
Alcohol
Opioids [6]

Epidemiology

Iatrogenic hypoglycemia is more frequent in patients with profound endogenous insulin deficiency, T1D, and advanced T2D (as its incidence increases with the duration of diabetes). The frequency of hypoglycemia is about threefold greater in T1D than in T2D. Ninety percent of all patients who receive insulin have experienced hypoglycemic episodes [11].

In the Hypoglycemia Assessment Tool (HAT) global study, which was a non-interventional, multicenter, 6-month retrospective, and 4-week prospective study involving 27,585 patients with either T1D or T2D treated with insulin, in 24 countries worldwide, it was found that during the prospective period, 83% of patients with T1D and 46.5% of patients with T2D reported hypoglycemia. Overall, there were 73.3 events/patient-year of hypoglycemia in T1D and 19.3 in patients with T2D. There were 11.3 events/patient-year of nocturnal hypoglycemia in T1D and 4.9 in T2D. And finally, there were 4.9 events/patient-year of severe hypoglycemia in T1D and 2.5 events/patient-year in T2D [12].

In the United States, from 1993 to 2005, around 5 million emergency department visits were due to hypoglycemic events, 25% of which lead to hospitalization. This is especially common in elderly patients. Additionally, the NICE-SUGAR (Normoglycemia in Intensive Care Evaluation–Survival Using Glucose Algorithm Regulation) trial demonstrated that critically ill patients who are intensively controlled had an increased risk of moderate-to-severe hypoglycemia and increased risk of death [13].

Recently, a trial involving 33,675 hospitalized patients with and without diabetes found that hypoglycemia, either with insulin or spontaneous, was associated with increased short- and long-term mortality. In this cohort of hospitalized patients to medical wards, 9% of patients had at least one episode of hypoglycemia [14].

T1D

People with T1D are bound to have hypoglycemia, as they attempt to achieve euglycemia, they will suffer numerous episodes of asymptomatic hypoglycemia. Plasma glucose concentrations may be <50 mg/dl (2.8 mmol/L) 10% of the time. They have an average of two episodes of hypoglycemia per week, thousands of such episodes over a lifetime, and an episode of severe hypoglycemia approximately once a year [6]. Population data indicate that 30–40% of people with T1D experience an average of one to three episodes of severe hypoglycemia each year. Older estimates were that 2–4% of patients with T1D die from hypoglycemia. More recent estimates are that 6–7% or 10% of those with T1D die from hypoglycemia [15].

In the DCCT (Diabetes Control and Complications Trial), severe hypoglycemia occurred in 65% of patients with T1D treated intensively and 35% of patients with T1D on the conventional group over 6.5 years. There were no statistical differences in hospitalizations; however there were two fatal motor vehicle accidents in the intensive therapy group, which may be attributed to hypoglycemia. The DCCT also confirmed that the presence of detectable endogenous insulin as measured by residual C-peptide secretion is associated with reduced risk of hypoglycemia [16].

Ninety percent of the surviving cohort of DCCT jointed the EDIC (Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications) which was an observational follow-up study to examine the long-term effects of the original DCCT therapies. Around 50% of participants in each group reported an episode of severe hypoglycemia during the 20 years of EDIC. The main characteristics, HbA1C (glycated hemoglobin) and hypoglycemia events, can be seen in Table 42.3 [17].

Table 42.3 Clinical characteristics DCCT/EDIC (1983–2005)

	Conventional			Intensive treatment		
Characteristics	DCCT 1 year (n = 730)	DCCT/EDIC 6 years (n = 723)	EDIC 12 years (n = 606)	DCCT 1 year (n = 711)	DCCT/EDIC 6 years (n = 698)	EDIC 12 years (n = 620)
Age years	27 ± 7	33 ± 7	46 ± 7	27 ± 7	34 ± 7	46 ± 7
DM duration years	5 ± 4	12 ± 5	24 ± 5	6 ± 4	12 ± 5	25 ± 5
BMI	24 ± 3	25 ± 3	28 ± 5	23 ± 3	27 ± 4	28 ±
HbA1C %	8.9 ± 1.6	9.1 ± 1.5	7.7 ± 1.2	8.9 ± 1.6	7.4 ± 1.1	7.8 ± 1.2
Hypoglycemia coma/seizures[a]	5.4	16.4	9.2	16.3	6.7	13.6
SH[a]	18.7	47.3	39.6	61.2	38.5	48.4

Adapted from [17, 18]
DM diabetes mellitus, *BMI* body mass index (kg/m^2), *HbA1C* hemoglobin A1C, *SH* severe hypoglycemia
[a]Events per 100 patient-year

There was a group of participants who reported four or more episodes of hypoglycemia. During the DCCT study, 54% of the intensive group and 30% of the conventional group experienced more than four episodes of severe hypoglycemia, whereas in the EDIC, 37% of the intensive group and 33% of the conventional group experienced four or more episodes. A subset of participants (14%) experienced nearly one-half of all severe hypoglycemia in DCCT, and 7% in EDIC experienced almost one-third of all episodes of severe hypoglycemia. This observation exposes the possibility that there are certain individuals who are more susceptible to severe hypoglycemia [17].

In a retrospective epidemiological survey of an unselected population with T1D, prevalence of severe hypoglycemia was reported to be 37% over a 1-year recall period, with 130 events occurring per 100 patient-years. In this report 5% of the participants experienced 54% of all severe hypoglycemia [19].

T2D

Overall the frequency of hypoglycemia is substantially lower in T2D than in T1D. Event rates for severe hypoglycemia are approximately tenfold lower in T2D even during aggressive insulin therapy. They are even lower in those treated with oral hypoglycemic agents. Most episodes of hypoglycemia in T2D are considered to be mild to moderate [20].

Miller et al. performed a cross-sectional study on T2D African American population. Hypoglycemia had a prevalence of 24.5%, and severe hypoglycemia had a prevalence of 0.5%. The prevalence of hypoglycemia was highest on patients receiving triple therapy, followed by those receiving insulin alone or with a single oral agent, and infrequent on those receiving hypoglycemic agents alone or diet therapy alone. In all treatment groups, the prevalence of hypoglycemia tended to increase as HbA1C decreased. The highest prevalence was seen in patients receiving insulin therapy who had HbA1C less than 7% [21].

Over 6 years in the UKPDS (the United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study), major hypoglycemia was reported in 2.4% of T2D treated with metformin, 3.3% of patients treated with sulphonylureas, and 11.2% of those treated with insulin. They found a higher frequency of hypoglycemia in the intensive group compared with the conventional group. With intensive treatment, hypoglycemia occurred most frequently in the insulin-treated patients, and the prevalence of hypoglycemia was lower in the first decade of the study than in later years [9].

Oral and Injectable Agents

Hypoglycemia with oral agent medications occurs most frequently with sulphonylureas and meglitinides. Both classes of medications have increased the absolute risk of hypoglycemia by 4–9% compared to placebo or other agents. Sulphonylureas have an 11% higher risk of hypoglycemia than metformin [22].

Metformin When used as monotherapy, metformin has minimal risk of hypoglycemia. When compared with placebo, hypoglycemia was reported in less than 5% of patients taking metformin alone. Since metformin enhances insulin sensitivity, when combined with other medications that increase circulating levels of insulin, the risk of hypoglycemia increases [23].

Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors The risk of hypoglycemia is very low; however, should patients experience hypoglycemia, it cannot be treated with sucrose or fruit juice (which is hydrolyzed to glucose and fructose), since the absorption is inhibited by the mechanism of these medications. Hypoglycemic episodes must be treated with simple sugars such as oral glucose (dextrose), which can be in glucose tablets, or grapes [23].

Sulphonylureas The risk of hypoglycemia is very common with sulphonylureas, even when administered as monotherapy. The rates of hypoglycemia differ with each sulphonylurea based on each agent's pharmacokinetic properties. Glyburide (glibenclamide) has been associated with a higher incidence of hypoglycemia when compared to glipizide. Glyburide should be avoided in patients with creatinine clearance of <50 mL/min.

In randomized clinical trials, sulphonylureas are associated with a significant greater risk of any or severe hypoglycemia when compared to insulin sensitizers or incretin-based therapies. A meta-analysis which included trials with a duration of >24 weeks, enrolling patients with T2D, comparing sulphonylurea with placebo or active drugs different from sulphonylureas, reported that hypoglycemia, including severe hypoglycemia, was frequent in patients treated with sulphonylureas. They also found that the risk of hypoglycemia with sulphonylureas is not different from that of insulin in head-to-head trials. The overall risk of severe hypoglycemia was increased more than threefold with sulphonylureas than with comparators. The cumulative incidence of hypoglycemia with sulphonylureas was 17% and for severe hypoglycemia 1.2% [24].

Amylin Amylin analogues are associated with a high risk of hypoglycemia when it is combined with insulin therapy.

Pramlintide carries a black box warning that when adding pramlintide to insulin, the prandial insulin dose must be reduced by 50% and titrated up to avoid severe hypoglycemia.

Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors DPP-4 inhibitors generally do not cause hypoglycemia when used as monotherapy and are weight neutral and relatively well tolerated.

Sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors SGLT2 inhibitors have been shown to have low risk of hypoglycemia with monotherapy [23].

Insulin

Glargine Insulin glargine is a long-acting insulin analogue, which is less soluble at physiologic pH (potential of hydrogen) than human insulin. Insulin glargine reduces the risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia in T1D compared with insulin NPH (neutral protamine Hagedorn or isophane insulin) when taken either with prandial unmodified human insulin or rapid-acting insulin analogues [19, 25].

Detemir This is a long-acting basal insulin that has extended duration due to molecular modifications leading to increased albumin binding. Detemir has also been associated with reduced nocturnal hypoglycemia in people with T1D compared with NPH insulin, as reported in numerous studies. In studies comparing twice-daily insulin detemir to NPH insulin, where both groups used fast-acting insulin analogue prandially, significant reductions in hypoglycemia had been attained with detemir [19, 25].

Detemir vs glargine U100 A large study including 320 participants comparing detemir and glargine has suggested a significant reduction in severe hypoglycemia favoring detemir in people with T1D [19].

Degludec Insulin degludec is an ultra-long-acting insulin analogue, which forms a subcutaneous depot and is slowly released. Studies comparing insulin degludec with glargine have reported reduced number of nocturnal hypoglycemic episodes in the degludec group.

Insulin degludec was recently compared with insulin glargine U100 in the SWITCH 1 and SWITCH 2 trials. Both studies used a randomized, double-blind, treat-to-target, crossover design. Patients with T1D (N = 501; SWITCH1) or patients with T2D (N = 721; SWITCH 2) who had 1 or more risk factors were enrolled. These patients were randomized to either insulin degludec or insulin glargine U100 for 32 weeks (16-week titration and then 16-week maintenance) and then crossed over to the alternate insulin treatment for an additional 32 weeks (16-week titration and 16-week maintenance). In SWITCH 1 the rate of overall symptomatic hypoglycemia was significantly lower with insulin degludec than insulin glargine U100 (2200.9 vs 2462.7, episodes/100 patient-year of exposure). In SWITCH 2, the rates of severe hypoglycemia were also statistically significantly lower with insulin degludec than insulin glargine U100 (185.6 vs 265.4 episodes/100 patient-years) [26–28].

Fast-acting insulin analogues Fast-acting insulin analogues were developed in order to better stimulate the physiological postprandial insulin response. Data from subsequent clinical trials comparing lispro with human insulin suggest that the more physiologic pharmacokinetics are associated with reduced risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia. A multicenter randomized double-blinded crossover study with 90 participants demonstrated a significantly reduced severe hypoglycemia, as well as improved glycemic control with insulin aspart compared with human insulin. Fast-acting insulin analogues have shown to reduce nocturnal and late postprandial hypoglycemia [19].

Insulin Combined with Other Therapies

Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) mimetic Hypoglycemia has been investigated in patients treated with insulin glargine alone and exenatide plus insulin glargine. A 30-week RCT (randomized controlled trial) with 261 participants used glargine together with placebo or twice daily exenatide. This study showed no significant difference in hypoglycemia rates between groups while demonstrating a significant reduction in HbA1C and reduced weight gain in the glargine plus exenatide group [23].

Basal insulin analogues and continuation with sulphonylurea therapy In a nonrandomized comparison of people continuing or stopping insulin secretagogues when starting a basal insulin, there was more hypoglycemia in the secretagogue group, despite lower insulin doses; however, the change in the HbA1C was not similar.

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII) Commonly known as insulin pump therapy has been recommended by several professional organizations as a therapeutic option for T1D complicated by problematic or severe hypoglycemia [19].

A review and meta-analysis that only included studies of more than 6-month duration, which compared the frequency of severe hypoglycemia and the associated HbA1C during MDI and CSII, revealed a significant reduction in severe

hypoglycemia in people with T1D who used CSII compared with the non-analogue-based MDI. However, most of the trials used NPH insulin as the basal insulin [29].

In multiple trials comparing CSII versus multiple daily injections (MDI), there has been a modest improvement in HbA1c; however, the majority of the systematic reviews have failed to confirm a significant reduction in severe hypoglycemia. A Cochrane review found no relevant benefit of CSII over multiple daily injections (MDI) for reducing non-severe hypoglycemic events, but data indicated a possible benefit of CSII over MDI in terms of reducing severe hypoglycemia [30].

More recently, in the HypoCOMPaSS trial, the authors concluded that the restoration of hypoglycemia unawareness and prevention of hypoglycemia could be achieved with either self-monitoring blood glucose (SMBG) and MDI or CSII and RT-CGM (real-time continuous glucose monitoring). When management is truly optimized using fast-acting and basal insulin analogues with appropriate therapeutic targets and regular SMGB including interval nighttime testing, hypoglycemia can be prevented at the same rate as RT-CGM [31].

Continuous glucose monitoring In recent years, advances in technology have allowed the development of real-time continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) devices that can be programmed to alarm in response to failing glucose or when hypoglycemia or hyperglycemia occurs or is predicted. Although studies of CGM have shown that with this device HbA1C can be reduced effectively without increasing hypoglycemia, benefit in terms of reduced clinically significant hypoglycemia has been difficult to demonstrate.

In a randomized control clinical trial, the use of CGM in patients who were 25 years and older was associated with tighter glycemic control without significant increase in biochemical hypoglycemia [32].

Sensor-augmented pumps (SAP) This insulin pump model is connected to a CGM that automatically suspends basal insulin delivery for a maximum of 2 hours if the individual does not respond to a hypoglycemia alarm. This has been shown to reduce the duration of hypoglycemia in those with very frequent hypoglycemia at baseline. A RCT of 247 participants showed that the use of a sensor-augmented insulin pump therapy with the threshold-suspend feature over a 3-month period reduced nocturnal hypoglycemia, without increasing HbA1C levels [33].

Closed looped systems Attempts have been made to develop algorithms to predict risk of severe hypoglycemia. These take into account HbA1C, hypoglycemia unawareness, ability to mount an autonomic response as glucose levels fall, and the frequency and extent of recent low blood glucose levels on SMBG. Closed looped systems appear to hold great promise for the future as a tool to help prevent hypoglycemia in T1D [19].

One interesting development has been the evaluation of dual-hormone delivery systems with an additional pump delivery the counterregulatory hormone glucagon, potentially increasing the effect in rescuing failing blood glucose.

The development of newer technologies and devices has made it possible to achieve glycemic control while minimizing the risk of hypoglycemia, first with the CGM and then with SAP (Fig. 42.4).

Beta-Cell Replacement

The transplantation of isolated islets or a whole pancreas are both potential therapies for the treatment of T1D, particularly when complicated by recurrent episodes of hypoglycemia. Patients undergoing whole pancreas transplantation require a major surgery and will be on lifelong immunosuppressive therapy with a mortality rate of 3–5%. This is why it is largely performed together with kidney transplantation (simultaneous pancreas-kidney or SPK), as they will need immunosuppressive therapy [19, 34].

Both approaches can restore insulin secretion. The transplantation of islets isolated from more than one donor pancreas is usually necessary to achieve insulin independence. The durability of insulin independence is superior following whole pancreas transplantation, especially when it is SPK.

The magnitude of the β-cell secretory capacity responses following whole pancreas transplantation appears normal and may be sustained for more than a decade despite ongoing immunosuppression drug exposure. In the absence of immunologic graft loss, the β-cell secretory capacity can remain stable for years during longitudinal follow-up, while first-phase insulin response to glucose may decrease coincident with lessening of glucocorticoid doses and improvement in insulin sensitivity.

In T1D recipients of intrahepatic islets transplants, there is recovery of the physiologic islet cell hormonal responses to insulin-induced hypoglycemia whereby endogenous insulin secretion is appropriately suppressed and glucagon secretion is partially restored. Rickels and colleagues have demonstrated normalization of the glycemic thresholds for counterregulatory epinephrine, autonomic symptoms, and growth hormone responses in islet transplant recipients with T1D [34].

Fig. 42.4 Rates of Hypoglycemia and the Use of New Technologies (Adapted from [16, 32, 33])

Clinical Manifestations

For people with diabetes, detection of hypoglycemic symptoms is a critical tool for the recognition and treatment of hypoglycemia. Recognition of hypoglycemia is possible through SMBG, CGM, and detection of hypoglycemic symptoms. Numerous biological and psychological modifiers can either facilitate or interfere with the recognition of hypoglycemia. With experience, individuals develop beliefs concerning their symptoms of hypoglycemia. Nevertheless, personal beliefs have a high incidence of false alarm rates, individuals with poor control may believe that they have hypoglycemia when instead they have hyperglycemia, and individuals with tight control may have hypoglycemia unawareness and not be able to recognize an episode of hypoglycemia. When blood glucose falls too low, then consciousness becomes impaired, making it difficult to accurately interpret the meaning of any symptom. Some people may deny symptoms of hypoglycemia because symptoms represent failure in their self-management [35].

Symptoms of hypoglycemia are divided into two categories (Table 42.4):

- Autonomic (neurogenic) symptoms are the result of perception of physiological changes caused by the autonomic nervous system release triggered by hypoglycemia.

Table 42.4 Symptoms of Hypoglycemia

Autonomic (Sympathoadrenal-adrenal medulla)	Neuroglycopenic
Adrenal	Slowed thinking
Trembling	Abnormal mentation
Shakiness	Irritability
Palpitations	Confusion
Nervousness	Difficulty speaking
Pupil dilation	Ataxia
Anxiety	Paresthesias
Cholinergic	Headaches
Clamminess	Stupor
Sweating	Seizures
Dry mouth	Death (if untreated)
Hunger	
Tingling	

Adapted from [36]

- Neuroglycopenic symptoms occur as a result of brain neuronal glucose deprivation. The patient usually recognizes these symptoms first.

Physical signs that result from activation of the sympathoadrenal system include pallor and diaphoresis, which are often prominent, and an increased heart rate and systolic blood pressure, which are often more subtle. Hypothermia is often present. Transient focal neurological deficit (diplopia, hemiparesis) occurs occasionally [7].

Symptoms of hypoglycemia vary greatly among patients and depend on the individual's personal experience and sensitivity. In mild hypoglycemia symptoms result from an ANS response and usually consist of tremors, palpitations, sweating, blurred vision, mood variations, and excessive hunger. Major cognitive deficits usually do not accompany mild reactions, so patients are generally able to self-treat. These mild symptoms usually respond to an oral ingestion of 10–15grams or carbohydrates and resolve within 10–15 minutes. Moderate hypoglycemia includes neuroglycopenic as well as autonomic symptoms and usually consists of headache, mood changes, irritability, decreased attentiveness, and drowsiness. People often need assistance in treating themselves, and these reactions produce longer-lasting and more severe symptoms usually requiring a second dose of carbohydrates. Severe hypoglycemic symptoms are characterized by unresponsiveness, combativeness, unconsciousness, or seizures and typically require assistance from another individual. Patients who experience seizures with severe hypoglycemia are at risk for recurrence [37, 38].

Diagnosis and Detection

People may recognize hypoglycemia based on their symptoms and experience, although as discussed earlier, individuals may not be aware of an episode of hypoglycemia or may misinterpret their symptoms. It has been reported that patients who are being typically aware of their hypoglycemia on average recognize 50% of their hypoglycemic episodes [35]. Therefore, documentation of a low plasma glucose concentration is very helpful. A hypoglycemic episode is most convincingly documented by Whipple's triad: symptoms compatible with hypoglycemia, a low plasma or blood glucose concentration, and restoration of those symptoms after the glucose concentration are raised to normal [7].

There are two technologies available to measure glucose in outpatient setting: capillary measurement with point-of-care (POC) glucose meters or SMBG and interstitial measurement with CGM both retrospective and real time. The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and FDA standards require that POC meters' analytical accuracy be within 20% of actual value in 95% of samples with blood glucose levels ≥75 mg/dl and ± 15 mg/dl for samples with glucose <75 mg/dl [3].

Additional Facts

- Plasma glucose samples are up to 15% higher than mixed venous whole blood glucose samples.
- Mixed venous blood glucose values can be considerably lower than arterial or capillary levels.
- Glucose meters can be imprecise, especially at low blood glucose levels [13].

Table 42.5 Conventional causes of hypoglycemia

Insulin (or secretagogues or insulin sensitizers) doses are excessive, ill-timed, or of wrong type
Exogenous glucose delivery is decreased
Missed meal
Low-carbohydrate meal
Overnight fast
Vomiting
Endogenous glucose production is decreased
Alcohol ingestion
Glucose utilization is increased
Exercise
Sepsis, trauma, burns
Sensitivity to insulin is increased
Late after exercise
Weight loss
Improved fitness
Insulin clearance is decreased
Renal failure
Liver failure
Hypothyroidism

Adapted from [7]

Causes

The need to identify underlying causes is an important aspect of hypoglycemia evaluation and management. Looking back over the events of several hours preceding the reactions can often identify the factors precipitating an event of hypoglycemia (Table 42.5).

Risk Factors and Determinants

Many factors can put T1D and T2D patients at increased risk of experiencing hypoglycemia (Table 42.6). Severe hypoglycemia is mostly associated with the use of glucose-lowering drugs, especially insulin or insulin secretagogues.

In a large retrospective cohort study in people with T2D, severe hypoglycemia was recorded in 12 cases per 10,000 patient-years. They observed approximately six times higher incidence rate in patients using insulin during follow-up than in non-insulin users. Patients with cardiovascular disease and renal failure had approximately 1.5 times higher incidence rate of severe hypoglycemia. In this study the current use of insulin or sulphonylureas, age ≥ 75, renal failure, and cognitive impairment/dementia were associated with substantially increased risk of developing severe hypoglycemia in the overall population [39].

The Fremantle Diabetes Study was a longitudinal observational cohort study aimed at defining the determinants of severe hypoglycemia complicating T2D. Insulin treatment or its duration, renal impairment, peripheral neuropathy, and higher education proved to be independent predictors of first and multiple episodes of hypoglycemia. Frequency of hypoglycemia was also associated with a lower fasting serum glucose but paradoxically higher HbA1C. A prominent predictor

Table 42.6 Risk factors for hypoglycemia

Insulin deficiency
Negative C peptide
Long-standing diabetes
History of severe hypoglycemia
Hypoglycemia unawareness
Extremes of age (young and elderly)
Cognitive impairment/dementia
Systemic illness
Renal failure
Liver failure
Congestive heart failure
Ethanol use
Autonomic neuropathy
Glucose variability
Aggressive glycemic therapy
Peripheral neuropathy
Lower glycemic goals
Medications
Fixed insulin regimens
Sulphonylureas
Salicylates
Beta-blockers
Coumarin
Fibrates
Nutritional factors
Ethanol consumption
Gastroparesis
Fasting or missed meals
Malnutrition
Low-carb diets
Nocturnal hypoglycemia
Erratic schedules
Exercise (especially irregular)
Hormonal factors
Adrenal insufficiency
Hypothyroidism
Hypopituitarism
Pregnancy/breast-feeding
Allopurinol
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)

of the first episode of hypoglycemia in this cohort was the duration of insulin treatment, with each year increasing the risk by 33%. They also found that a previous history of hospitalization for severe hypoglycemia was a strong independent predictor of the first episode of hypoglycemia [40].

Physical activity and exercise Physical activity may increase glucose transport and utilization by skeletal muscles, acutely and chronically. Hypoglycemia can occur during exercise, 1–2 hours after exercise, or up to 17 hours after exercise. Aerobic exercise results in an increase in both insulin- and non-insulin-mediated glucose uptake [41, 42].

During moderate-intensity exercise in nondiabetic individuals, endogenous insulin secretion is reduced by 40–60% [36]. The increased fuel demands on the working muscle necessitate compensatory metabolic processes in the liver and kidney. Changes in hepatic glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis have been found to be closely coupled to the increase in glucose uptake produced by the working muscle because of the actions of the pancreatic hormones. The exercise-induced increase in glucagon secretion and the concomitant decrease in insulin secretion interact to stimulate hepatic glycogenolysis, whereas the increase in hepatic gluconeogenesis is determined primarily by glucagon's action to increase hepatic gluconeogenic precursor fractional extraction and the efficiency of intrahepatic conversion to glucose. Epinephrine and norepinephrine become important in increasing glucose production during prolonged or heavy exercise. Catecholamines can produce this effect by directly stimulating both hepatic and renal glucose production, by increasing the availability of gluconeogenic precursors (lactate, alanine, or glycerol), and by increasing lipolysis. Catecholamine-induced metabolic effects at the muscle and adipose tissue are rapid, increasing gluconeogenic precursor uptake at the liver within minutes [6].

Recent studies have demonstrated that there is a vicious cycle of counterregulatory failure between exercise and hypoglycemia. Thus, two episodes of prolonged, moderate-intensity exercise can reduce ANS and neuroendocrine responses by 50% during subsequent similar hypoglycemia. Similarly, two episodes of antecedent hypoglycemia can reduce counterregulatory responses during subsequent exercise by 40–50%. Therefore, individuals who have had a previous episode of hypoglycemia are at greater risk of hypoglycemia during exercise [36].

In a randomized crossover study involving subjects with T1D, participants were randomly assigned to morning exercise versus afternoon exercise. They found that morning exercise confers a lower risk of late-onset hypoglycemia than afternoon exercise and improves metabolic control on subsequent day [42].

Alcohol Ethanol induces hypoglycemia by inhibiting gluconeogenesis, as little as 50 grams of alcohol might be sufficient. Alcohol excess, especially in the fasting state, is a major risk factor for severe hypoglycemia. Ethanol and its metabolism influence several pathways vital for the manufacture and production of glucose by the liver [43].

The gluconeogenesis pathway is disrupted with ethanol ingestion by:

- Reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide NADH/NAD ratio – as a result of the oxidation of alcohol to acetaldehyde and acetate, thus reducing the ability of the liver and kidney to oxidize lactate and glutamate to pyruvate and α-ketoglutarate
- Inhibiting the release of alanine from the muscle (a vital precursor of gluconeogenesis)
- Inhibition of lactate, glycerol, and alanine uptake by the liver

Alcohol potentiates the hypoglycemic effect of insulin and sulphonylureas, and because of the inhibition of gluconeogenesis, glucagon and catecholamines are ineffective in raising glucose levels [6].

Studies in animal models have demonstrated that ethanol elicits a substantial stimulation of late-phase insulin secretion, by increasing the microcirculation (intra islet blood flow) in the pancreatic endocrine gland [44].

Medications

- β-Blockers – Propranolol and other nonselective β-blockers decrease the ability of the liver and kidney to increase their release of glucose, enhance peripheral insulin sensitivity, and may mask the symptoms of hypoglycemia. The risk of hypoglycemia becomes even higher in the presence of renal dysfunction. The hypoglycemic effect of β-blockers seems to be directly tied to the diminished adrenergic response to hypoglycemia and to the diminished concentration of circulating free fatty acids. Therefore, propranolol should be used with caution or, if possible, avoided in patients with renal failure. Recent studies indicate that β1-selective blockers do not present an increased risk for severe hypoglycemia and therefore should not be considered as being contraindicated in diabetic patients.
- Salicylates – Salicylates can act by inhibiting hepatic glucose production and increasing insulin secretion.
- Sulfonamides have a chemical structure similar to sulphonylureas and have been known to have blood glucose-lowering properties.
- Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors can increase insulin sensitivity and can decrease the degradation of bradykinin, which has certain, insulin mimetic actions.
- Pentamidine is cytotoxic to pancreatic β-cells, and hypoglycemia occurs with the release of insulin from degenerating cells [6].

Renal failure Renal insufficiency is a very common predisposing condition for hypoglycemia. In fact, it is probably the second most common potentiating factor of hypoglycemia after insulin therapy. Nearly 50% of hospitalized patients who were recognized to have hypoglycemia had chronic renal failure. The mortality rate in patients with chronic renal failure may be related to the degree of hypoglycemia and to the number of risk factor for hypoglycemia. In renal failure, hypoglycemia may result from the use of insulin, antidiabetic agents, certain drugs, or a combination of the above [45].

Hypoglycemia resulting from an oral hypoglycemic agent in patients with renal failure is more likely to occur when other factors such as hepatic dysfunction, hypoalbuminemia, alcoholism, or an associated endocrine deficiency are present. It is usually manifested by neuroglycopenic symptoms rather than neurogenic symptoms, and patients may display atypical symptoms. Hypoglycemia is usually of long duration, particularly when a sulphonylurea is the causal agent.

Congestive heart failure The occurrence of congestive heart failure in patients with renal failure may also precipitate hypoglycemia. The pathogenesis of hypoglycemia in heart failure is varied and involves liver dysfunction resulting from congestion, poor nutrition, cachexia, and poor blood supply to the muscles and liver. Insufficient production or delivery of substrates for adequate gluconeogenesis in the liver, severe depletion of glycogen stores, possibly caused by poor dietary intake, and gastrointestinal malabsorption caused by congestive heart failure are major potentiating factors of hypoglycemia. The coexistence of renal failure and congestive heart failure may place the patient at even higher risk for hypoglycemia.

Sepsis, trauma, and burns Initially the response to the stress of infection is an increase in glucose turnover, with glucose production often exceeding glucose utilization and resulting in mild hyperglycemia. This response involves increases in both glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis and is largely mediated by glucagon. As the infection worsens, increased release of endotoxin and its derivatives, complement activation, endoperoxide activation, and release of endogenous inflammatory mediators (tumor necrosis factor-α, interleukins, and other monokines) compromise cardiovascular integrity and cause central venous pooling, inadequate tissue perfusion, and microvascular protein transudation. At this stage, a decrease in splanchnic and renal blood flow occurs. Despite concomitantly reduced peripheral tissue perfusion, glucose utilization is increased. Decreased tissue oxygenation causes increased anaerobic glycolysis, which perpetuates the increased glucose utilization [6].

The inability of glucose production to keep pace with increased tissue demands results in hypoglycemia. Hepatic glycogen stores are rapidly exhausted; consequently, glucose production becomes solely dependent on gluconeogenesis. However, gluconeogenesis fails, because of a reduction in ANS and neuroendocrine effects.

Glucose variability It has been shown that glucose variability is associated with increased risk of hypoglycemia. In an observational study involving people with T2D, they found that hypoglycemia was positively associated with glucose variability and negatively associated with mean glucose concentration. The risk of hypoglycemia was completely or virtually eliminated when the glucose variability was <30 mg/dL (<1.7 mmol/L), as measured by Standard Deviation (SD). Therefore, lowering glycemia without

reducing glucose variability should be avoided as it places the individual at greater risk of hypoglycemia [46].

Nocturnal hypoglycemia It has been estimated that about one-half of hypoglycemia episodes occur during sleep. Hypoglycemia, including severe hypoglycemia, occurs most commonly during the night in people with T1D. That is typically the longest interdigestive interval, between SMBG, and the time of maximal sensitivity to insulin. Hypoglycemia during sleep is common and leads to one version of HAAF syndrome with a reduction in epinephrine response; also, insulin sensitivity is enhanced during the middle of the night. Furthermore, sleep often precludes recognition of warning symptoms of developing hypoglycemia and thus appropriate response [20, 41].

Pregnancy Normal blood glucose levels during pregnancy are 20% lower than in nonpregnant women. A great number of metabolic changes occur during pregnancy to make women more vulnerable to hypoglycemia. Pregnancy itself is associated with suppression of glucose counterregulatory responses [6].

Maternal hypoglycemia during pregnancy is a risk factor for newborns small for gestational age, which in turn is associated with increased long-term risks such as development of diabetes, coronary artery disease, and hypertension [13].

For women with T1D, severe hypoglycemia occurs 3–5 times more frequently in the first trimester and at a lower rate in the third trimester when compared with the incidence in the year preceding pregnancy. Risk factors for severe hypoglycemia in pregnancy include history of severe hypoglycemia, hypoglycemia unawareness, long duration of diabetes, low HbA1C in early pregnancy, glucose variability, and excessive use of insulin. When pregnant and nonpregnant women are compared with CGM, mild hypoglycemia (defined by the authors as <60 mg/dl or 3.3 mmol/L) is more common in all pregnant women. For women with preexisting diabetes, insulin requirements rise throughout the pregnancy and then drop precipitously at the time of delivery of the placenta, requiring an abrupt reduction in insulin dosing to avoid postdelivery hypoglycemia.

Breast-feeding may also be a risk factor for hypoglycemia in women with insulin-treated diabetes [3].

Elderly Hypoglycemia is a common problem in old people with diabetes. Aging modifies the cognitive, symptomatic, and counterregulatory hormonal responses to hypoglycemia. The effect of aging on increased risk of unawareness or severe episodes of hypoglycemia has also been recognized. Older individuals may have multiple risk factors for hypoglycemia such as renal impairment, chronic heart disease, malnutrition, and polypharmacy.

In older individuals, episodes of hypoglycemia are more likely to be followed by changes in the blood-brain circulation which may further increase the risk of neurological damages in this population [11].

Severe hypoglycemia has a considerable impact on well-being, productivity, and quality of life in old people with diabetes.

Children and adolescents Hypoglycemia is one of the most common acute complications of insulin therapy in children and adolescents with diabetes. The incidence of hypoglycemia is reported to be between 3 and 27 episodes per 100 patient-year in children with T1D.

Children with early onset of diabetes, particularly those diagnosed before age 6, and severe episodes of hypoglycemia have increased range of cognitive dysfunction and brain abnormalities. Repeated hypoglycemic seizures in young children may also cause structural brain damage [11].

Hypoglycemia Impact

There are several major concerns about the risks of hypoglycemia as it may cause severe morbidity and even death. One vulnerable organ is the brain, which is markedly dependent on glucose as a fuel for normal functioning. Brain dysfunction or damage may occur, and it may cause permanent damage. Among the severe manifestations of hypoglycemia is sudden death, which may not be directly linked to the effects of hypoglycemia. Cardiovascular consequences of hypoglycemia include alteration of ventricular repolarization. Hypoglycemia creates a prothrombotic state and may predispose to ischemic injury. Additional studies have established associations between hypoglycemia and the development of cardiac arrest and cerebral ischemia and cardiac arrhythmias [41, 47].

Hypoglycemia and cardiovascular disease Patients with diabetes have an increased risk of cardiovascular disease, as it is the most common cause of diabetes-related deaths. Intensive glucose control increases the risk of hypoglycemia and severe hypoglycemia. Several epidemiological studies have linked hypoglycemia to increased cardiovascular risk, as it will be discussed further [48].

Acute hypoglycemia causes pronounced physiological responses as a consequence of autonomic activation, principally of the sympathoadrenal system, and results in end-organ stimulation and a profuse release of epinephrine. This profound autonomic response provokes hemodynamic changes. The magnitude of the counterregulation is directly proportional to the depth of hypoglycemia. Blood flow is increased to the myocardium, the splanchnic circulation, and

Table 42.7 Clinical characteristics ACCORD/ADVANCE/VADT

		ACCORD		ADVANCE		VADT	
Participants		10,251		11,140		1791	
Age (years)		62		66		60	
Men/women (%)		61/39		58/42		97/33	
BMI (kg/m^2)		32.2 ± 5.5		28 ± 5		6.9 ± 8.5	
Diabetes duration (years)		10		8		11.5	
History of CVD %		32		28		31	
Mean HbA1C%		8.1		7.2		9.4	
HbA1C% intensive	HbA1C% standard	6.4	7.5	6.5	7.3	6.9	8.5
Hypoglycemia intensive %	Hypoglycemia standard %	16.2	5.1	2.7	1.5	21.2	1.5
On insulin at baseline %		35		1.5		52	
Insulin intensive %	Insulin standard %	77	55	40	24	89	74
Mean duration of follow-up		3.5 (terminated early)		5		5.6	
CVD		35%		34%		40%	
Primary CVD end point		↓ 10% ($p = 0.16$)		↓ 6% ($p = 0.37$)		↓ 13% ($p = 0.12$)	
Mortality (overall)		↑ 22% ($p = 0.012$)		↓ 7% (p = NS)		↑ 6.5% ($p = 0.12$)	
CV mortality		↑ 35% ($p = 0.02$)		↓ 12% (p = NS)		↑ 25% (p = NS)	

Based on [49, 50]

the brain. There are also an increase in heart rate and peripheral systolic pressure, a fall in central blood pressure (reducing peripheral resistance), and an increase in myocardial contractility, stroke volume, and cardiac output. The workload of the heart is therefore markedly increased [49].

Increased plasma viscosity occurs during hypoglycemia due to an increase in erythrocyte concentration. Also, coagulation is promoted by platelet activation and increase in factor VIII and von Willebrand factor. Endothelial function may be compromised due to an increase in C-reactive protein. Soluble vascular cell adhesion molecule 1, soluble intracellular adhesion molecule 1, and soluble E-selectin are increased from baseline under hypoglycemic conditions. Soluble P-selectin, plasminogen activator inhibitor 1, tissue plasminogen activator, von Willebrand factor, and platelet-monocyte aggregation were measured by Joy and colleges and found to be significantly increased during hypoglycemia and returned to baseline during normoglycemia [47, 49].

Hypoglycemia in ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VADT These three studies randomized almost 24,000 patients with long-standing T2D to standard or intensive glycemic control for up to 5 years, ensuring HbA1C levels <7%. All three trials were carried out in participants with either known cardiovascular disease or multiple risk factors. Strict glycemic control did not incur a significant cardiovascular benefit, and none of the trials demonstrated a positive effect on cardiovascular events of mortality. In fact, the ACCORD study was interrupted prematurely because of an excess mortality among the intensive group. In all three trials, hypoglycemia was significantly higher in the intensive glucose-lowering arms compared with the standard arm. Symptomatic severe hypoglycemia was associated with an increased risk of death within each study arm. In the VADT study, a recent severe hypoglycemic event was an important predictor of cardiovascular death and all-cause mortality (Table 42.7) [49, 50].

It is possible that severe hypoglycemia could increase the risk of cardiovascular death in patients with underlying cardiovascular risk.

Cardiac arrhythmias Hypoglycemia has been known to cause electrocardiographic changes with lengthening of the corrected QT (QTc) interval and cardiac repolarization, exerting a pro-arrhythmogenic effect. Other electrocardiographic abnormalities observed during hypoglycemia include a decrease in PR interval and depressed T waves [47]. Abnormal cardiac repolarization appears to be related to the sympathoadrenal stimulation and release of catecholamines and to the hypokalemia that results from the insulin effect. In an observational study of patients with T1D, the effect of nocturnal and daytime hypoglycemia was assessed on EKG (electrocardiogram) with CGM. They found that hypoglycemia was common and had different distinct patterns in the EKG. Bradycardia was commonly seen while patients had nocturnal hypoglycemia, while with daytime hypoglycemia, they had more atrial ectopy. Prolonged QTc, T-peak to T-end interval duration, and decreased T wave symmetry were detected during nocturnal and daytime hypoglycemia [51]. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy or impairment is associated with increased mortality.

Cognitive function and dementia Repeated severe hypoglycemia over time may impair cognitive function or damage

the brain. Patients with T1D and a history of severe hypoglycemia have a slight but significant decline in intelligence scores in comparison with matched controls. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) in small studies of patients with T1D with no history of severe hypoglycemia when compared with patients with T1D with a history of five or more episodes of severe hypoglycemia has found cortical atrophy in nearly half of those who had a history of severe hypoglycemia. Severe hypoglycemia has been known to induce focal neurological deficits and transient ischemic attacks, which are reversible with the correction of blood glucose. Recent studies suggest that recurrent and severe hypoglycemia may predispose to long-term cognitive dysfunction and dementia [47, 48].

A number of studies have observed a relationship between dementing illness and diabetes. Both hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia potentially are implicated in the increased risk of dementing illness most commonly observed in elderly patients [11].

Death in bed syndrome and sudden death The "dead-in-bed" syndrome is an uncommon fatal event thought to be responsible for 6% of deaths of patients with T1D who are younger than 40 years old. In 1991, Tattarsall and Gill described 22 cases of unexplained death that they labeled as dead-in-bed syndrome. Possible contributors to dead-in-bed syndrome are hypoglycemic brain damage, autonomic neuropathy, cardiac events such as arrhythmias, and electrolyte abnormalities. Nocturnal hypoglycemia is of substantial concern because patients may be "unaware" and susceptible to serious sequelae. Tanenberg reported a 23-year-old patient with T1D who died in his undisturbed bed from hypoglycemia. Postmortem download of the data in the CGM demonstrated glucose below 30 mg/dl around the time of his death and a vitreous humor glucose of 25 mg/dL [52].

Prolonged, profound hypoglycemia can cause brain death. The mechanism is thought to be sustained increased plasma glutamate release and receptor activation when plasma glucose concentrations are <18 mg/dL (1.0 mmol/L), the electroencephalogram is isoelectric, and brain glucose and glycogen levels are immeasurably low.

Quality of life Hypoglycemia can have a significant impact on patient's health-related quality of life, treatment satisfaction, and cost of diabetic management. The well-being of patients may be affected both directly from the effects of hypoglycemia and indirectly from fear of recurrence. Nocturnal hypoglycemia may impact one's sense of well-being on the following day because of its impact on sleep quality and quantity. Patients with recurrent hypoglycemia have been found to have chronic mood disorders including depression and anxiety. Interpersonal relationships may suffer as a result of hypoglycemia in patients with diabetes. Hypoglycemia also impairs one's ability to drive a car [3, 11].

In the UKPDS, patients reporting more frequent hypoglycemic episodes also reported increased tension, mood disturbances (anger, fatigue), and less work satisfaction. In the RECAP-DM study, participants with hypoglycemia reported significantly lower scores on scales for effectiveness, convenience, and global satisfaction than patients who did not had hypoglycemia, with concomitant barriers to treatment adherence. In this study, patients reporting symptoms of hypoglycemia were in general more markedly affected by their illness, had significantly lower self-rated general health, and had more worries about hypoglycemia than participants without hypoglycemia [53].

Fear of hypoglycemia When people experience hypoglycemia and their unpleasant symptoms, this has been shown to result in fear of future hypoglycemia. This concept may compromise overall glycemic control and impair quality of life. Recent, frequent, or severe hypoglycemia episodes tend to exacerbate this fear, while useful strategies to reduce the frequency of hypoglycemia, such as insulin pump adjustments or CGM, may alleviate such fear. There is clearly concern about the adverse consequences of hypoglycemia. These concerns primarily include damage to the brain and increase cardiovascular risk. Fear of hypoglycemia sometimes leads to deliberate undertreatment with insulin therapy [41].

A large study with 764 participants concluded that frequency of severe hypoglycemia is the most important factor in the development of fear of hypoglycemia.

A retrospective study of 335 participants with either T1D or T2D found that hypoglycemia and fear of future hypoglycemia had an impact upon T1D and T2D patients. Self-treatment was the predominant means of coping with mild or moderate and severe hypoglycemia. Following mild or moderate event, neither T1D nor T2D patients utilized healthcare resources and did little more than mention the episode to their physician. Severe hypoglycemia was shown to have a considerable impact upon patient lifestyle. A major alteration to daily activities was noted with respect to fear of driving [54].

Fear of hyperglycemia is a psychological construct characterized by excessive worry about high blood glucose in combination with acceptance (and non-avoidance) of hypoglycemia – as a necessary evil to evade development of long-term complications. It may lead to inappropriate blood glucose-lowering behaviors, including deliberate overtreatment or overzealous use of insulin, reluctance to attend to early symptoms of hypoglycemia, and inappropriate pursuit of low blood glucose despite recurrent hypoglycemia.

Critical illness and hospitalization Persons with diabetes are three times more likely to be hospitalized than those without diabetes, and approximately 25% of hospitalized patients (including people without a history of diabetes) have hyperglycemia. Inpatient hyperglycemia has been associated with prolonged hospital length of stay and with numerous adverse outcomes including mortality. Several studies have shown that aggressive lowering of glycemia in the ICU is not beneficial, markedly increases the risk of severe hypoglycemia, and may be associated with increased mortality [3].

A cohort of 33,675 hospitalized patients with diabetes and without diabetes, followed for almost 3 years, found that hypoglycemia, insulin related or non-insulin related, was associated with increased short- and long-term mortality. In this study, patients with moderate hypoglycemia during hospitalization had more than twofold increase in mortality compared with patients without hypoglycemia. Severe hypoglycemia was associated with a threefold increase in mortality [13].

Treatment of Hypoglycemia

Treatment is aimed at restoring euglycemia, preventing recurrences, and, if possible, alleviating the underlying cause.

Mild hypoglycemia (when the patient can self-treat) is managed with the oral administration of 15–20 g of oral carbohydrate. This should be repeated every 15–20 minutes until SMBG is >70 mg/dl (3.9 mmol/L). Treatment and follow-up testing should be repeated if hypoglycemia persists. It is important to recognize that the ingestion of added fat may slow the glycemic response. Several sources of short-acting carbohydrate exist (Table 42.8). Employing premeasured glucose products instead of juice or food is recommended, because patients have a tendency to consume more than 15 g of juice or food, and additional calories from fat or protein may cause weight gain. Commercially available glucose tablets have the added benefit of being premeasured to help prevent overtreatment [38].

Table 42.8 Sources of carbohydrates

Glucose products (preferred)	Portion	Carbohydrates
Glucose tablets	1 tablet	4 grams
Glucose gel	1 gel	15 grams
Insta-Glucose gel	1 tube	24 grams
Food/beverage (if above not available)		
Juice	½ cup (200 ml)	15–20 grams
Soft drink (regular)	½ cup (200 m)	15–20 grams
Syrup or honey	1 tbsp	6 grams
Sugar	2 tbsp in water	8 grams

Based on [36, 38]

The glycemic response to oral glucose is transient, typically <2 hours. Therefore, ingestion of a snack or meal shortly after the plasma glucose or SMBG is raised is generally advisable [7].

Key Points

- Rule of thumb – 15 g of carbohydrate will raise blood glucose at around 50 mg/dL.
- Rule of 15 (15 × 15): 15 g of carbohydrate every 15 minutes until the SMBG level is >70 mg/dl (3.9 mmol/L) [36].

Moderate hypoglycemia Individuals with moderate reactions will often respond to oral carbohydrates but may require more than one treatment and take longer to fully recover. These patients may be alert but will frequently be uncooperative or belligerent.

Severe hypoglycemia Severe hypoglycemia requiring assistance of a second or third party should be assessed in the hospital setting. Patients with impaired consciousness or an inability to swallow may aspirate and should not be treated with oral carbohydrate. These patients require either parenteral glucagon or intravenous glucose. If these are not available, glucose gels, applied between the patient's cheek and gum, may be of some help until professional care arrives.

Glucagon Glucagon kits can be prescribed to patients with diabetes, and friends and family members can be trained to administer glucagon. The dose of glucagon needed to treat moderate or severe hypoglycemia for a child <5 years old is 0.25–0.50 mg; for older children (age 5–10 years), 0.50–1 mg; and for those >10 years old, 1 mg. Glucagon should be given intramuscularly or subcutaneously in the deltoid or anterior thigh region. Kits that include a syringe prefilled with diluting fluid are available. Glucagon can cause nausea or vomiting, and patients should be placed on their side to reduce the risk of aspiration. Full doses of glucagon cause nausea or vomiting after recovery from hypoglycemia in some patients. The effects of glucagon are delayed by approximately 10 minutes from time of injection and are only inducible in those with available glycogen stores [13, 38].

Remember

- Family members or responders should avoid sublingual placement of carbohydrate in an unconscious or impaired individual because this can increase the risk of aspiration.
- Place the patient on their side to reduce the risk of aspiration.

Intravenous glucose If medical staff and equipment are available, intravenous glucose should be given as a primary treatment in preference to glucagon. Comatose patients should receive intravenous glucose. The usual dose is 25 g of 50% dextrose in water (D50) over 1–3 minutes. D50 comes in 50 ml; therefore, administration of 25 ml is equivalent to 12.5 g of carbohydrate. Sustained intravenous infusion of dextrose 5% (D5) or dextrose 10% (D10) at 100 cc/hr. should follow, aimed at keeping the blood glucose level at approximately 80–100 mg/dl (4.4–5.6 mmol/L) to avoid hyperglycemia, causing further stimulation of insulin release and setting in motion a vicious cycle. Blood glucose levels should be monitored initially every 15–30 minutes for at least 2 hours or longer depending the etiology [6, 38].

Additional Facts

- D50 is an irritant, and delivery through a large gauge port and vein, followed by a saline flush, is preferable.
- Alternatively, D10 or D5 is less irritating and can be administered via a peripheral vein in a proportionally higher volume [13].

Treatment of hypoglycemia after exercise Several approaches are used to minimize hypoglycemia risk with exercise. In those injecting insulin, meal insulin doses taken a few hours before exercising often are reduced by one-half for moderate activity (such as 30-minute walk) to one-quarter or less for vigorous activity, such as running or swimming. Both the intensity and the duration of activity influence the need for adjustments. The meal immediately after exercising also usually will require some reduction in dose [38].

With insulin pumps, an added benefit is the ability to reduce basal rates using temporary basal infusions. During and for a period of time after vigorous exercise, reductions in 40–90% are not uncommon [38].

Snacks taken before exercise may provide protection against hypoglycemia episodes during exercise or for a short time afterward. Some people prefer not to use fast-acting carbohydrate but instead use a mixed snack with protein, fat, and a carbohydrate. It is important to make the distinction between eating to prevent hypoglycemia and eating to treat hypoglycemia. Mixed snacks are less rapidly effective in raising low blood glucose and should not be preferred to pure dextrose or other rapidly effective treatment when hypoglycemia is occurring [38].

Strategies to Reduce or Prevent Hypoglycemia

Prevention

The prevention of hypoglycemia is preferable to its treatment. Improving glycemic control while minimizing hypoglycemic episodes represents a challenge but can be accomplished safely. Physicians can use this three-step strategy to minimize hypoglycemia [7]:

1. Addressing the issue of hypoglycemia in each patient encounter. This should be addressed in each patient visit.

If patients report a history of hypoglycemia, details regarding the time of episodes need to be identified and the treatment regimen adjusted accordingly [36]. It is important to determine what the patient's symptoms were. When did they occur in relation to the patient's last meal, and what was the patient doing when the episode occurred? Was it an isolated event, or had it occurred before? How frequently do they occur? Is there any pattern to the occurrences? How long have these events been occurring? Did weight gain of weight loss occur during this period? Is the patient taking any other medication? Did the patient lose consciousness? If so, were premonitory sings present? Was the hypoglycemia documented? Did the patient recover spontaneously? What did the patient do to prevent recurrences or relieve symptoms?

2. Applying the principles of aggressive therapy. The principles of aggressive glycemic therapy include:

- Patient education and empowerment
- Frequent SMBG
- Flexible insulin and other drug regimens
- Individualized glycemic goals
- Professional guidance and support

Education regarding all aspects of diabetes care is important in prevention and treatment of hypoglycemia. Carbohydrate counting, insulin and oral medication dosing, concomitant medications, alcohol intake, exercise, and even driving should be included in the discussion. Education will help alleviate fear of hypoglycemia that may impede ideal glycemic control.

The Blood Glucose Awareness Training (BGAT) program is a behavioral intervention designed to improve avoidance, prediction, recognition, and treatment of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. Classically, BGAT consists of eight weekly group sessions during which participants are trained in behavioral techniques (self-monitoring and direct feedback)

and symptoms awareness and educated about food, exercise, and insulin. Studies have reported a significantly improved detection of low blood glucose and reduced frequency of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia, particularly in people with impaired awareness of hypoglycemia from baseline to 6 months. Benefits are maintained at 12-month follow-up with significantly fewer severe hypoglycemic events. In 2008, BGAT was adapted for Internet delivery, with data demonstrating that education can be made easily accessible to large numbers [19].

An education program has been developed in Germany, which focuses specifically on hypoglycemia. HyPOS consist of five weekly 90-minute sessions, during which participants learn about hypoglycemia as a "vicious cycle" and are trained in symptom awareness (using diaries and SMBG). A randomized controlled trial comparing HyPOS to standard T1D education in 164 participants with impaired awareness or severe hypoglycemia found significant improvements in awareness as measured by the validated Clarke questionnaire and a modified version of the Gold score. No difference was detected in either severe hypoglycemic rate or overall glycemic control. At long-term (31 months) follow-up, incidence of severe hypoglycemia was lower in the HyPOS group with 12.5% compared with 26.5% in the controlled group [19].

The Dose Adjustment For Normal Eating (DAFNE) T1D education program that was derived from a training program developed in Dusseldorf provides a holistic approach to improving glycemic control. There is growing evidence suggesting that it reduces severe hypoglycemia and improves hypoglycemia awareness [19].

The four points of the HypoCOMPaSS (Fig. 42.5) are never delay hypoglycemia treatment, recognize personalized times of increased risk, detect subtle symptoms, and detect symptoms through regular self-monitoring, particularly for nocturnal hypoglycemia. In a multicenter randomized controlled clinical trial, the HypoCOMPaSS program was used in 110 adults with negative C-peptide T1D and impaired hypoglycemia awareness. They found that hypoglycemia awareness can be improved and recurrent severe hypoglycemia prevented in adults with long-standing T1D and impaired awareness, through strategies delivered in clinical practice, targeted at rigorous avoidance of biochemical hypoglycemia without relaxation of overall control. Biochemical hypoglycemia was rapidly reduced in all groups within the first 4 weeks, driven by the insulin dose adjustment algorithm and sustained throughout the 24-week trial [31].

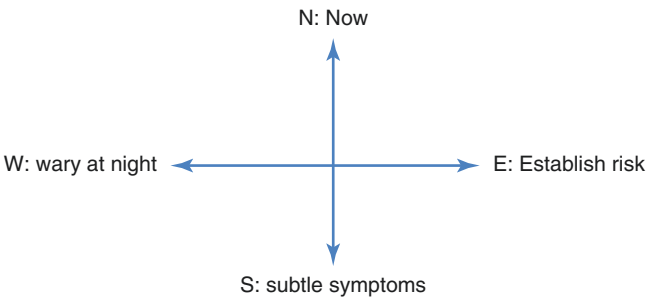


Fig. 42.5 HypoCOMPaSS: Hypoglycemia compass educational tool to reduce hypoglycemia

3. Considering both the conventional risk factors and those indicative of compromise glucose counterregulation [7].

Hypoglycemic episodes that are not readily explained by conventional factors, skipped or irregular meals, unplanned exercise, alcohol ingestion, etc., may be due to excessive doses of medications used to treat diabetes. A thorough review of blood glucose patterns may suggest vulnerable periods of the day that mandate adjustments to current medications.

A history of severe iatrogenic hypoglycemia is a clinical red flag. Unless it was the result of an obviously remediable factor, such as a missed meal after insulin administration or vigorous exercise without appropriate regimen adjustment, a substantive change in the regimen must be made. If it is not, the risk of recurrent severe hypoglycemia is unacceptably high.

In patients injecting insulin, the following strategies can help minimize hypoglycemia. With basal-bolus insulin regimen, morning fasting hypoglycemia implicates the long- or intermediate- acting insulin. Daytime hypoglycemia may be caused by the rapid, fast, or longer-acting insulins. Nocturnal hypoglycemia may also be caused by rapid and longer-acting insulins. Substitution of preprandial regular insulin with fast-acting insulin analogues (lispro, aspart, glulisine) reduces the frequency of daytime hypoglycemia. Similarly, substitution of a long-acting insulin analogue (glargine, detemir, degludec) for intermediate-acting insulins such as NPH or premix 70/30 also reduces the frequency of nocturnal or daytime hypoglycemia [7].

With a CSII regimen using a fast-acting insulin such as lispro, nocturnal and morning fasting hypoglycemia implicate the basal insulin infusion rate, whereas daytime hypoglycemia may implicate the preprandial insulin bolus doses, the basal insulin infusion rate, or both.

Insulin secretagogues can also produce hypoglycemia related to absolute or relative insulin excess. However, sulphonylureas may pose the greatest risk of hypoglycemia in patients with altered renal or hepatic function and in older individuals. Substitution with other classes of oral agents or even GLP-1 receptor agonists (GLP-1ra) should be considered in the event of hypoglycemia.

In patients with clinical hypoglycemia unawareness, a 2- to 3-week period of scrupulous avoidance of hypoglycemia is advisable and can be assessed by return of awareness of hypoglycemia.

Strategies to Reduce Hypoglycemia

Since the first injection of insulin in 1922, interest has increased in replacing insulin in the most physiologic manner for patients with diabetes. In the 1980s, the introduction of recombinant human insulin reduced the formation of antibodies and provided more predictable pharmacokinetic profiles. The next decade produced analogue insulins that initially were designed to provide a faster onset and shorter duration of action. These insulins (lispro, aspart, glulisine) were designed to reproduce more closely the typical physiologic prandial spikes of insulin observed following meals.

The second wave produced long-acting insulin analogues (glargine U100, detemir) and more recently ultra-long-acting insulin analogues (degludec, glargine U300) designed to mimic background constitutive insulin release, with much lowe risk of hypoglycemia. Studies in T1D have demonstrated that hypoglycemia (particularly nocturnal) can be reduced with fast-acting insulin analogues rather than when regular insulins are used. Similarly, long-acting insulin analogues have been demonstrated to reduce hypoglycemia by 20–33% in patients with T2D when compared with NPH-based regimens. Thus, current recommendations are to use analogue-based insulin replacement whenever possible [6].

Insulin pump development began in the 1970s and over the last 20 years has become a major method of insulin replacement. Studies in children and pregnant women have demonstrated reduction in hypoglycemia when compared with MDI regimens [6].

Most recently, CGM has been introduced into clinical practice. In a multicenter, randomized, controlled trial, the use of a CGM has been shown to reduce both HbA1C and, as a secondary end point, the incidence of severe hypoglycemia in T1D in adults and children, when compared with conventional SMBG [6].

Pancreas transplantation has been performed in patients with T1D for >25 years. In general, hypoglycemic rates improve dramatically in the first year after transplantation. Most studies also demonstrate that counterregulatory defenses are improved after pancreatic transplantation. Most notably, glucagon response to hypoglycemia increases, accompanied at an early stage by some improvement in epinephrine and symptomatic responses [6].

Glycemic targets and therapies in diabetic patients should be individualized.

Concluding Remarks

- Patients with T1D and long-standing T2D have an altered counterregulatory response to hypoglycemia making them more susceptible.
- Hypoglycemia is a major limiting factor in the management of diabetes; nonetheless it is possible to improve glycemic control by acknowledging the problem, considering the risk factors, applying the principles of intensive therapy, and individualizing glycemic goals.
- It is possible to achieve optimal glycemic control while minimizing hypoglycemia by structured patient education concerning self-monitoring and appropriate lifestyle and physiologic and flexible insulin regimen.
- As time passes, safer and more physiologic insulin analogues are being manufactured, and novel technologies are being developed which will facilitate achieving normoglycemia.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. A 28-year-old T1D patient is experiencing palpitations, anxiety, shakiness, and hunger 2 hours after running 10 k. He checks his capillary blood glucose and is 48 mg/dl (2.7 mmol/L). How would you classify this hypoglycemia?
   (a) Symptomatic hypoglycemia
   (b) Severe hypoglycemia
   (c) Moderate hypoglycemia
   (d) Hypoglycemia unawareness
   (e) Hypoglycemia-associated autonomic failure
2. An 18-year-old healthy college student is experiencing headaches, palpitations, anxiety, and hunger after 2-hour figure skating practice; she forgot to eat breakfast before her practice. Her coach performs a capillary blood glucose with a value of 54 mg/dl (3 mmol/L). Which of the following is correct regarding the normal counterregulatory response?
   (a) Glucagon stores are depleted therefore cortisol and growth hormone are the principal hormonal response.
   (b) As blood glucose levels falls, there is an increased release of insulin, glucagon, and epinephrine within minutes to increase glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis.
   (c) There is a decreased brain glucose uptake; therefore, epinephrine and cortisol will rise within minutes to increase glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis.
   (d) The first response is a decreased insulin level, followed by an increase in glucagon and epinephrine.

3. A 35-year-old patient with long-standing T1D had a morning capillary blood glucose of 36 mg/dl (2 mmol/L). He denies any symptoms of hypoglycemia, although he has been having difficulty sleeping and nightmares. Which of the following statements is correct regarding his counterregulatory response to hypoglycemia?
   (a) As blood glucose level decreases, his insulin levels will not decrease; therefore glucagon and epinephrine become the critical response and will increase within minutes.
   (b) Cortisol and growth hormone become the principal response, since there is deficient release of glucagon and epinephrine.
   (c) The patient is experiencing hypoglycemia unawareness, with blunted glucagon and epinephrine responses.
   (d) Insulin levels do not decrease, and glucagon response becomes impaired; therefore epinephrine becomes a critical response and will rise within minutes.
4. A 75-year-old patient with long-standing T2D is experiencing frequent hypoglycemias. He has background retinopathy, symmetrical neuropathy, and nephropathy with an estimated GFR of 50 ml/min. The patient states that he sometimes misses his meals. His last HbA1C was 7.5%. He is on glyburide (glibenclamide), metformin, and bedtime insulin NPH. What changes in management will decrease his hypoglycemias?
   (a) Change insulin NPH to a more physiologic long-acting insulin analogue.
   (b) His HbA1C is at goal, ensure patient does not skip meals, and advice to take snacks between meals.
   (c) Advise patient to decrease his NPH the dose by half.
   (d) Discontinue glyburide, but continue the same dose of insulin NPH.
5. A 35-year-old female patient with T1D had an episode of hypoglycemia Sunday morning. Her basal insulin dose was recently increased since her fasting capillary blood glucose was not at goal. She has been experiencing abdominal cramps and fatigue as she started her menstrual period on Friday. On Saturday she had a light dinner with two cups of wine and been administered fast-acting insulin according to her carbohydrate counting. What is the most likely cause of her hypoglycemia?
   (a) The increase in her basal insulin dose.
   (b) Hormonal imbalance due to her menstrual period.
   (c) Fast-acting insulin dose was excessive.
   (d) Alcohol intake.
6. A 59-year-old patient with long-standing T1D with microvascular complications, diabetic proliferative retinopathy, diabetic nephropathy (estimated GFR of 45 ml/min) and distal symmetric neuropathy, autoimmune hypothyroidism, dyslipidemia, and ischemic heart disease, is experiencing frequent episodes of hypoglycemia. The patient is on a flexible insulin regimen with a basal insulin analogue and a fast-acting insulin analogue, aspirin, β1-selective blocker, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor (ACEI), and levothyroxine. His last HbA1C was 7.8%, TSH 3.2 mUI/L, and Cr 1.8 mg/dl. Which of the following confers the greatest risk for hypoglycemia?
   (a) Age
   (b) Background retinopathy
   (c) Diabetic nephropathy
   (d) Ischemic heart disease
   (e) HbA1C level
   (f) Current medications: insulin, salicylate, β1-selective blocker, ACEI
   (g) Hypothyroidism
7. A 65-year-old patient with long-standing T2D with a history of background retinopathy, autonomic neuropathy, diabetic nephropathy, and ischemic heart disease is experiencing frequent episodes of hypoglycemia. He had an acute myocardial infarction with subsequent coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) a few months ago. He is on metformin, NPH insulin, statin, beta-blocker, aspirin, and angiotensin receptor blocker. His HbA1C is 7%. Which of the following is the most appropriate statement?
   (a) He needs tight glycemic control to decrease the progression of microvascular complications.
   (b) His HbA1C is at goal; therefore changing insulin NPH to insulin analogue will decrease the risk of subsequent hypoglycemia while ensuring optimal glycemic control.
   (c) The patient has high cardiovascular risk; therefore his HbA1C goal should be higher, so consider decreasing his insulin NPH dose and changing him to a long acting insulin analogue.
   (d) He has high cardiovascular risk; therefore adding a SGLT2 inhibitor will decrease his cardiovascular risk.
8. What are the clinical implications of hypoglycemia on a patient with long-standing T2D and ischemic heart disease, diabetic nephropathy, diabetic retinopathy, and peripheral neuropathy?
   (a) Hypoglycemia may accelerate the progression of diabetic retinopathy to proliferative retinopathy.
   (b) Hypoglycemia is associated with worsening of glomerular filtration rate and proteinuria.
   (c) Hypoglycemia can increase his cardiovascular risk, by triggering arrhythmias or thromboembolic events.
   (d) Repeated hypoglycemia may worsen his peripheral neuropathy.

9. A 68-year-old patient with T2D is brought to the emergency department with altered mental status. He is awake but very confused and combative. He has a history of alcohol abuse. He is currently on basal insulin analogue, sulphonylureas, and metformin. He has a blood glucose level of 35 mg/dl. Which of the following is the most appropriate treatment for this patient?
   (a) 15–20gr of carbohydrate every 15 minutes until his blood glucose is more than 70 mg/dl and then provide a meal.
   (b) 1 mg of intramuscular glucagon, placing the patient on his side to ensure that he does not aspirate.
   (c) Administer 25gr of 50% dextrose over 1–3 minutes, and discharge the patient when his blood glucose is more than 70 mg/dl.
   (d) Administer a bolus of dextrose 50%, and then continue with IV glucose infusion 5–10% for 2–3 days, checking blood glucose every hour.
10. A 15-year-old patient with T1D is experiencing frequent noon and nocturnal hypoglycemia. The patient frequently misses meals, has erratic schedules, and gets confused with her insulin regimen. Which of the following strategies will most likely decrease her risk of subsequent hypoglycemia?
   (a) Write down a prescription with a detailed insulin regimen, and advise patient to eat at regular basis and avoid missing meals.
   (b) Organize a meeting with her parents addressing the importance of regular meals and explain in detail and writing her insulin regimen.
   (c) Explain to the patient the importance of SMBG, explain in detail and in writing her insulin regimen, explain the importance of regular meals, and schedule an appointment with a diabetes educator.
   (d) Change the insulin regimen to a fixed dose so the patient does not get confused.

Correct Answers

1. (a) Symptomatic hypoglycemia.
2. (d) The first response is a decreased insulin level, followed by an increase in glucagon and epinephrine.
3. (c) The patient is experiencing hypoglycemia unawareness, with blunted glucagon and epinephrine responses.
4. (d) Discontinue glyburide, but continue the same dose of insulin NPH.
5. (d) Alcohol intake.
6. (c) Diabetic nephropathy.
7. (c) The patient has high cardiovascular risk; therefore his HbA1C goal should be higher, so consider decreasing his NPH insulin dose and changing him to a long acting insulin analogue.
8. (c) Hypoglycemia can increase his cardiovascular risk, by triggering arrhythmias or thromboembolic events.
9. (d) Administer a bolus of dextrose 50%, and then continue with IV glucose infusion 5–10% for 2–3 days, checking blood glucose every hour.
10. (c) Explain to the patient the importance of SMBG, explain in detail and in writing her insulin regimen, explain the importance of regular meals, and schedule an appointment with a diabetes educator.

References

1. Cryer PE, Axelrod L, Grossman AB, Heller SR, Montori VM, Seaquist ER, et al. Evaluation and management of adult hypoglycemic disorders: an Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009;94:709–28.
2. Seaquist ER, Anderson J, Childs B, Dagogo-Jack S, Fish L, Heller S, et al. Hypoglycemia and diabetes: a report of a workgroup of the American Diabetes Association and the Endocrine Society. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:1384–95.
3. International Hypoglycaemia Study Group. Glucose concentrations of less than 3.0 mmol/L (54mg/dL) should be reported in clinical trial: a joint position statement of the American Diabetes Association and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2017;40:155–7.
4. American Diabetes Association (ADA). Standard of medical care in diabetes – 2017. Diabetes Care. 2017;40(sup 1):s53.
5. Cryer PE. Banting lecture: hypoglycemia: the limiting factor in the management of IDDM. Diabetes. 1994;43:1378–89.
6. Davis SN, Lamos EM, Younk LM. Chapter 47: Hypoglycemia and hypoglycemic syndromes. In: Jameson JL, De Groot LJ, editors. Endocrinology: adult and pediatric. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders; 2016. p. 816–838e8.
7. Cryer PE, Davis SN, Shamoon H. Hypoglycemia in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2003;26:1902–12.
8. McCrimmon RJ, Sherwin RS. Hypoglycemia in type 1 diabetes. Diabetes. 2010;59:2333–9.
9. Zammitt NN, Frier BM. Hypoglycemia in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(12):2948–61.
10. Cryer PE. Mechanisms of hypoglycemia-associated autonomic failure in diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(4):362–72.
11. Shaffie G, Mohajeri-Tehrani M, Pajouhi M, Larijani B. The importance of hypoglycemia in diabetic patients. J Diabetes Metab Disord. 2012;11(17):1–7.
12. Khunti K, Alsifri S, Aroson R, Cigrovski Berkovik M, Enters-Weijnen C, Forsen T, et al. Rates and predictors of hypoglycemia in 27 585 people from 24 countries with insulin treated type 1 and type 2 diabetes: the global HAT study. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2016;18:907–15.
13. Lamos EM, Younk LM, Davis SN, IX Glucose Disorders. Chapter 25: Hypolgycemia. In: Matfin G, editor. A clinician's guide. Endocrine and metabolic medical emergencies. 1st ed. Washington, DC: Endocrine Press Books; 2014. p. 243–58.
14. Akirov A, Grossman A, Shochat T, Simon I. Mortality among hospitalized patients with hypoglycemia: insulin related and noninsulin related. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2017;102(2):416–24.
15. Cryer PE. Death during intensive glycemic therapy of diabetes: mechanisms and implications. Commentary. Am J Med. 2011;124(11):993–6.
16. The DCCT Research Group. The effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the development and progression of long-term

complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 1998;329:977–86.
17. Gubitosi-Klug RA, Braffet BH, White NH, Sherwin RS, Service FJ, Lachin JM, et al. Risk of severe hypoglycemia in type 1 diabetes over 30 years of follow-up in the DCCT/EDIC study. Diabetes Care. 2017;40:1010–6.
18. Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Intervention and Complications (DCCT/EDIC) Research Group. Modern-day clinical course of type 1 diabetes mellitus after 30 years duration. Arch Intern Med. 2009;169(14):1307–16.
19. Little SA, Leelarathna L, Barandse SM, Walkinshaw E, Tan HK, Solomon L, et al. Severe hypoglycaemia in type 1 diabetes mellitus: underlying drivers and potential strategies for successful prevention. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2014;30:175–90.
20. Cryer PE, Childs BP. Negotiating the barrier of hypoglycemia in diabetes. Diabetes Spectr. 2002;15(1):20–7.
21. Miller DC, Phillips LS, Zimer DC, Gallina DL, Cook CB, El-Kebbi IM. Hypoglycemia in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Arch Intern Med. 2001;161:1653–9.
22. International Hypoglycaemia Study Group. Minimizing hypoglycemia in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2015;38:1583–91.
23. Anderson M, Powell J, Campbell KM, Taylor JR. Optimal management of type 2 diabetes in patients with increased risk of hypoglycemia. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes. 2014;7:85–94.
24. Monami M, Dicembrini I, Kundisova L, Zannoni S, Nreu B, Mannucci E. A meta-analysis of the hypoglycaemic risk in randomized controlled trials with sulphonylureas in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2014;16:833–40.
25. Little S, Shaw J, Home P. Hypoglycemia rates with basal insulin analogs. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2011;13(supplement 1):S53–64.
26. Lane W, Bailey TS, Getery G, Grumprecht J, Philis-Tsimikas A, Thim Hansen C, et al. Effect of insulin degludec vs insulin glargine U100 on hypoglycemia in patients with type 1 diabetes. The SWITCH 1 randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2017;318:33–44.
27. Wysham C, Bhargava A, Chaykin L, de la Rosa R, Handelsman Y, Troelsen LN, et al. Effect of insulin degludec vs insulin glargine U100 on hypoglycemia in patients with type 2 diabetes. The SWITCH 2 randomized clinical trial. JAMA. 2017;318:45–56.
28. Seaquist ER, Chow L. Hypoglycemia in diabetes. Does insulin type matter? JAMA. 2017;318:31–2.
29. Pickup JC, Sutton AJ. Severe hypoglycaemia and glycemic control in type 1 diabetes: meta-analysis of multiple daily insulin injections compared with continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion. Diabet Med. 2008;25(7):765–77.
30. Little S, Chadwick T, Choudhary P, Brennand C, Stickland J, Barendse S, et al. Comparison of optimised MDI versus pumps with or without sensors in severe hypoglycaemia (The Hypo COMPaSS trial). BMC Endocr Disord. 2012;12(33):1–14.
31. Little S, Leelarathna L, Walkinshaw E, Kai Tan H, Chapple O, Lubina-Solomon A, Chadwick TJ, et al. Recovery of hypoglycemia awareness in long-standing type 1 diabetes: a multicenter 2×2 factorial randomized controlled trial comparing insulin pump with multiple daily injections and continuous with conventional glucose self-monitoring (HypoCOMPaSS). Diabetes Care. 2014;37(8):2114–22.
32. The Juvenile Diabetes Research Foundation Continuous Glucose Monitoring Study Group. Continuous glucose monitoring and intensive treatment of type 1 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;359:1464–76.
33. Bergenstal RM, et al. Threshold-based insulin-pump interruption for a reduction of hypoglycemia. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(3):224–32.
34. Rickels MR. Recovery of endocrine function after islet and pancreas transplantation. Curr Diab Rep. 2012;12:587–97.
35. Cox DJ, et al. Perceived symptoms in the recognition of hypoglycemia. Diabetes Care. 1993;16(2):519–27.
36. Briscoe VJ, et al. hypoglycemia in type 1 and type 2 diabetes: physiology, pathophysiology, and management. Clin Diabetes. 2005;24(3):115–21.
37. Ilan G, Shamoon H. Hypoglycemia in diabetes: common, often unrecognized. Cleve Clin J Med. 2004;71(4):335–42.
38. Kaufman FR. Hypoglycemia. In: Kaufman FR, editor. Medical management of type 1 diabetes. 6th ed. Virginia: American Diabetes Association; 2012. p. 150–60.
39. Bruderer SG, Bodmer M, Jick S, Bader G, Schlienger RG, Meier CR. Incidence of and risk factors for severe hypoglycaemia in treated type 2 diabetes mellitus patients in the UK – a nested case – control analysis. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2014;16:801–11.
40. Davis TM, Brown SF, Jacobs IG, Bulsara M, Bruce DG, et al. Determinants of severe hyopoglycemia complicating type 2 diabetes: the fremantle diabetes study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2010;95(5):2240–7.
41. McCall AL. Chapter 40: Hypoglycemia in diabetes. In: Umpierrez GE, editor. Therapy for diabetes mellitus and related disorders. 6th ed. Virginia: American Diabetes Association; 2014. p. 696–728.
42. Gomez AM, Gomez C, Aschner P, Veloza A, Muñoz O, Rubio C, Vallejo S. Effects of performing morning versus afternoon exercise on glycemic control and hypoglycemia frequency in type 1 diabetes patients on sensor-augmented insulin pump therapy. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2015;9(3):619–24.
43. Arky RA. Hypoglycemia associated with liver disease and ethanol. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am. 1989;18:175–90.
44. Huang Z, Sjöholm A. Ethanol acutely stimulates islet blood flow, amplifies insulin secretion, and induces hypoglycemia via nitric oxide and vagally mediated mechanisms. Endocrinology. 2007;149(1):232–6.
45. Arem R. Hypoglycemia associated with renal failure. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am. 1989;18:103–13.
46. Monier L, Wojtusciszyn A, Collete C, Owens D. The contribution of glucose variability to asymptomatic hypoglycemia in persons with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2011;13(8):813–181.
47. Younk LM, Davis ST. Hypoglycemia and vascular disease. Clin Chem. 2011;57(2):258–60.
48. Desouza CV, Bolli GB, Fonseca V. Hypoglycemia, diabetes, and cardiovascular events. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(6):1389–94.
49. Frier BM, Schernthaner G, Heller S. Hypoglycemia and cardiovascular risks. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(2):S132–7.
50. Skyler JS, Bergenstal R, Bonow RO, Buse J, Deedwania P, Gale E, Howard B, et al. Intensive glucose control and the prevention of cardiovascular events: implications if the ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VA diabetes trials: A position statement of the American Diabetes Association and a Scientific Statement of the American College of Cardiology Foundation and the American Heart Association. Circulation. 2009;119:351–7.
51. Novodvorsky P, Chow E, Iqbal A, Sellors L, Williams S, Fawdry RA, et al. Diurnal differences in risk of cardiac arrythmias during spontaneous hypoglycemia in young people with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2017;40:655–62.
52. Tanenberg RJ, Newton CA, Drake AJ. Confirmation of hypoglycemia in the "dead-in-bed" syndrome, as captured by a retrospective continuous glucose monitoring system. Endocr Pract. 2010;16(2):244–8.
53. Guisasola FA, Povedano ST, Krishnarajah G, Lyu R, Mavros P, Yin D. Hypoglycaemic symptoms, treatment satisfaction, adherence and their associations with glycaemic goal in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: findings from the Real-Life Effectiveness and Care Patterns of Diabetes Management (RECAP-DM) Study. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2008;10(Suppl):25–32.
54. Leiter LA, Yale JF, Chaisson JL, Harris SB, Kleinstiver P, Sauriol L. Assessment of the impact of fear of hypoglycemic episodes on glycemic and hypoglycemia management. Can J Diabetes. 2005;29(3):186–92.

Suggested Reading

Books

Davis SN, Lamos EM, Younk LM. Chapter 47: Hypoglycemia and hypoglycemic syndromes. In: Jameson JL, De Groot LJ, editors. Endocrinology: adult and pediatric. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders; 2016. p. 816–838e8.

T1D and Hypoglycemia

Little SA, Leelarathna L, Barandse SM, Walkinshaw E, Tan HK, Solomon L, et al. Severe hypoglycaemia in type 1 diabetes mellitus: underlying drivers and potential strategies for successful prevention. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2014;30:175–90.

Physiology and Pathophysiology of Hypoglycemia:

Cryer PE. Banting lecture: hypoglycemia: the limiting factor in the management of IDDM. Diabetes. 1994;43:1378–89.
Cryer PE. Mechanisms of hypoglycemia-associated autonomic failure in diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(4):362–72.
Cryer PE, Davis SN, Shamoon H. Hypoglycemia in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2003;26:1902–12.
McCrimmon RJ, Sherwin RS. Hypoglycemia in type 1 diabetes. Diabetes. 2010;59:2333–9.

Insulins and Hypoglycemia

Little S, Shaw J, Home P. Hypoglycemia rates with basal insulin analogs. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2011;13(supplement 1):S53–64.

Pancreas Transplantation

Rickels MR. Recovery of endocrine function after islet and pancreas transplantation. Curr Diab Rep. 2012;12:587–96.

HRS – Hypoglycemia Risk Score

www.hyporiskcore.com.

Hypoglycemia in ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VADT

Skyler JS, Bergenstal R, Bonow RO, Buse J, Deedwania P, Gale E, Howard B, et al. Intensive glucose control and the prevention of cardiovascular events: implications if the ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VA diabetes trials: a position statement of the American Diabetes Association and a Scientific Statement of the American College of Cardiology Foundation and the American Heart Association. Circulation. 2009;119:351–7.

Inpatient Management of Diabetes and Hyperglycemia

43

William B. Horton

Introduction

People with diabetes mellitus (DM) are more likely to be hospitalized and have longer durations of hospital stay than those without DM [1]. Approximately one in four patients admitted to the hospital has a known diagnosis of DM [2, 3], and about 30% of patients with DM require two or more hospitalizations in any given year [3]. A 2007 study estimated that 22% of all hospital inpatient days were incurred by people with DM, and costs associated with hospitalization for DM patients accounted for half of all healthcare expenditures for the disease [4]. Given the increasing incidence and prevalence of DM in the Unites States since that time [5], it is likely that these figures have only increased. Uncontrolled hyperglycemia in hospitalized patients, even in those without a previous diagnosis of DM, is associated with many adverse outcomes and longer lengths of hospital stay [6, 7]. It is estimated that one-third of all hospitalized patients will experience significant hyperglycemia [8] and many patients without preexisting DM will experience stress-related hyperglycemia [9].

The association between hyperglycemia in hospitalized patients and increased risk for complications and mortality is well-established [2, 10–14]. This association is observed for both admission blood glucose (BG) and mean BG level throughout hospitalization [15]. Inpatient hyperglycemia has been specifically linked to increased duration of hospital stay, increased incidence of infection, and greater disability after hospital discharge in various studies [2, 16–20]. Observational and randomized controlled studies indicate that improvement in glycemic control leads to lower rates of hospital complications in general medicine and surgery patients [15] and has been associated with decreased length of hospital stay [7].

W. B. Horton (✉)
Division of Endocrinology and Metabolism, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, VA, USA
e-mail: WBH2N@virginia.edu

Inpatient glycemic control is also cost-effective [1]. In the Portland Diabetic Project, initiation of continuous intravenous (IV) insulin therapy to achieve predetermined target BG values in DM patients undergoing open-heart surgical procedures reduced the incidence of deep sternal wound infections by 66%, resulting in a total net savings to the hospital of $4638 per patient [21]. In another study, intensive glycemic control in 1600 patients treated in a medical ICU was associated with a total cost savings of $1580 per patient [22]. With mounting evidence demonstrating the value of managing hyperglycemia appropriately, optimizing glycemic control should be a priority for all healthcare providers in the inpatient setting.

Recognition and Diagnosis of Hyperglycemia and Diabetes on Admission

Inpatient hyperglycemia is defined as any BG value greater than 140 mg/dl (7.8 mmol/l) [1, 15]. Hyperglycemia occurs not only in patients with known DM, but also in those with previously undiagnosed DM and others who experience "stress hyperglycemia" during an acute illness [1, 15, 23, 24]. Various studies have demonstrated hyperglycemia in 32–38% of patients in community hospitals [2, 25], 41% of critically ill patients with acute coronary syndromes [13], 44% of patients with heart failure [13], and 80% of patients post-cardiac surgery [26, 27]. In these studies, approximately one-third of non-critically ill patients and 80% of critically ill patients had no history of DM prior to admission [2, 13, 28–31].

Current guidelines recommend the initiation of BG monitoring for both those with DM and those without a known history of DM who are receiving therapies associated with hyperglycemia [32]. Further sources suggest that an initial BG measurement on admission is appropriate for all hospitalized patients, regardless of the presence of preexisting DM or exposure to known hyperglycemia inducers [15]. Guidelines also recommend that all inpatients with known

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_43

DM or hyperglycemia be assessed with a laboratory measure of hemoglobin A1c (if this has not been performed in the preceding 2–3 months), both for diagnosis of DM and identification of patients at risk for DM [15, 32]. Hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c) values ≥6.5% suggest, in previously undiagnosed patients, that DM preceded hospitalization [33]. Measurement of HbA1c during periods of hospitalization also provides the opportunity to identify patients with known DM who might benefit from intensification of their glycemic control regimen [15]. In patients with newly diagnosed hyperglycemia, HbA1c may help differentiate patients with previously undiagnosed DM from those with stress-induced hyperglycemia [34, 35].

Therapeutic Agents and Regimens for Inpatient Glycemic Control

For many reasons, inpatient hyperglycemia is best managed with insulin therapy. Patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1DM) have an absolute insulin requirement and necessitate treatment with basal plus bolus insulin regimens to avoid severe hyperglycemia and diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) [15]. Patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) are often treated with a variety of therapies in the outpatient setting, including diet, lifestyle modifications, oral agents, non-insulin injectable medications, insulin, and/or any combination of these options [15]. However, the use of oral and other non-insulin therapies presents many challenges in the inpatient setting, as there are frequent contraindications to their use in hospitalized patients (i.e., sepsis, IV contrast dyes, pancreatic disorders, renal dysfunction, etc.) [1]. It should be noted that some select patients may be candidates for continuation of oral antidiabetic agents in the hospital. Clinical judgment should be used by the healthcare provider to evaluate patient criteria for the continued use of these agents in the hospital, including patients who are clinically stable and eating regular meals along with having no contraindications to the use of oral antidiabetic drugs [15]. The majority of hospitalized patients will not be proper candidates for regimens other than insulin therapy, and each class of oral antidiabetic therapies possesses characteristics that limit their desirability for inpatient use. Metformin cannot be used when renal insufficiency is present or there is any possibility of the need for iodinated contrast studies [6]. Sulfonylureas can cause unpredictable hypoglycemia in patients who are eating inconsistently [6]. Thiazolidinediones cause fluid retention (especially in combination with insulin), and parenteral glucagon-like peptide-1 and amylin agonists can cause nausea and should be withheld in acutely ill patients [6].

Insulin works reliably and can be quickly titrated based on changes in diet or glucose levels, making it ideal in the inpatient setting [36]. For insulin-naïve patients with blood glucose (BG) levels greater than 140 mg/dl (7.8 mmol/l) who are eating regular meals, insulin therapy can safely be initiated at a total daily dose (TDD) of 0.2–0.5 units/kg body weight [37–40]. The lower starting dose is advised for leaner patients and those with renal insufficiency, while the higher starting dose is recommended for obese patients and those receiving glucocorticoids [6]. Fifty percent of the calculated TDD should be given as a basal component, and the remaining 50% should be split into thirds and given preprandially as the bolus component [37, 38]. Patients who are NPO may receive basal insulin alone plus correctional doses with a rapid-acting analog every 4 hours or regular insulin every 6 hours [15, 17, 39]. Table 43.1 provides examples of basal plus bolus insulin regimens along with correctional dose protocols for inpatient glycemic control in non-critically ill inpatients.

Patients (either T1DM or T2DM) already receiving treatment with insulin prior to admission should continue treatment with a scheduled subcutaneous (SC) insulin regimen during admission [15]. These patients should have their insulin regimen modified according to clinical status, both upon admission and throughout hospitalization, as a way to reduce the risk for hypo- and hyperglycemia [15]. The home total basal and prandial insulin doses should be reduced on admission for patients with poor nutritional intake, impaired kidney function, or admission BG levels <100 mg/dl (5.6 mmol/l) [15].

Finally, it is important to note that using sliding-scale insulin (SSI) as the sole method for glycemic control of hospitalized patients is an ineffective therapy that should be avoided [15]. Scheduled basal plus bolus (BPB) insulin regimens mimic normal pancreas hormonal physiology and are designed to prevent hyperglycemia, whereas SSI alone only attempts to lower hyperglycemia after it has occurred [6]. SSI as sole management for inpatient hyperglycemia has routinely been shown to provide suboptimal glycemic control [41–44], and its regular use has been described as providing "action without benefit." [45] Despite mounting evidence showing the inferiority of SSI alone, it is still ingrained in the practice of many hospitals [46]. Clinician fear of hypoglycemia, clinical inertia, and resistance to institutional change have all been suggested as factors contributing to the continued use of SSI monotherapy in the inpatient setting [47]. A study comparing scheduled BPB insulin to SSI alone showed a significantly higher percentage of patients achieving goal BG levels in the BPB group than in the SSI group (66% vs. 38%) without an increase in hypoglycemia [40]. In another study [43], the risk for hyperglycemia (BG >200 mg/dl or 11.1 mmol/l) was three times greater in patients managed with aggressive SSI regimens. For inpatients requiring insulin therapy to manage hyperglycemia, BPB insulin regimens are superior to SSI alone and should be the preferred method utilized for glycemic control.

Table 43.1 Basal plus bolus and correctional dose insulin regimens for glycemic control of the non-critically ill patient

A. Basal insulin orders			
Calculate TDD as follows:			
0.2–0.3 units/kg body weight per day in patients: aged ≥70 years and/or GFR <60 ml/min			
0.4 units/kg body weight per day for patients not meeting the criteria above who have BG concentrations of 140–200 mg/dl (7.8–11.1 mmol/l)			
0.5 units/kg body weight per day for patients not meeting the criteria above when BG concentration is 201–400 mg/dl (11.2–22.2 mmol/l)			
Distribute total calculated dose as approximately 50% basal insulin and 50% bolus (prandial) insulin			
Give basal insulin once (glargine/detemir) or twice (detemir/NPH) daily, at same time each day			
Give rapid-acting (prandial) insulin in three equally divided doses before each meal. Hold prandial insulin if patient is unable to eat			
Adjust insulin doses based on bedside POCT BG measurements			
B. Supplemental (correction) rapid-acting insulin analog or regular insulin			
Supplemental insulin orders			
If a patient is able and expected to eat all or most of his/her meals, give regular or rapid-acting insulin before each meal following the "usual" column (*Section C below*)			
If a patient is unable to eat, give regular insulin every 6 hours or rapid-acting insulin every 4–6 hours following the "sensitive" column (*Section C below*)			
Supplemental insulin adjustment			
If fasting and premeal BG are persistently >140 mg/dl (7.8 mmol/l) in the absence of hypoglycemia, increase scale of insulin from the insulin-sensitive to usual or from usual to insulin-resistant columns (*Section C below*)			
If a patient develops hypoglycemia (BG <70 mg/dl or 3.8 mmol/l), decrease regular or rapid-acting insulin from the insulin-resistant to the usual column or from the usual to the insulin-sensitive column (*Section C below*)			
C. Supplemental insulin scale[a]			
BG (mg/dl)	*Insulin-sensitive*	*Usual*	*Insulin-resistant*
>141–180	2	4	6
181–220	4	6	8
221–260	6	8	10
261–300	8	10	12
301–350	10	12	14
351–400	12	14	16
>400	14	16	18

Adapted with permission from Ref. [15]
TDD total daily dose, *GFR* glomerular filtration rate, *BG* blood glucose, *POCT* point-of-care testing
[a]The numbers in each column of Section C indicate the number of units of regular or rapid-acting insulin analog per dose. "Supplemental" dose is to be added to the scheduled insulin dose."

Glycemic Control of the Non-Critically Ill Patient

Management strategies and glycemic target values vary by patient population and location in the hospital setting. Having an appropriate understanding of the protocols, procedures, and system environments needed to optimize inpatient glycemic control for various patient groups is of vital importance for all healthcare facilities and providers. Non-critically ill patients are hospitalized for management of a wide variety of issues and illnesses, though diabetes and/or hyperglycemia are often not the primary reason for admission. Nevertheless, the importance of glycemic control should not be minimized in this scenario.

Glycemic Monitoring

Bedside capillary point-of-care testing (POCT) is the preferred method for guiding ongoing glycemic management of the non-critically ill patient [15]. Recommendations include POCT before meals and at bedtime in patients who are eating regular meals [1, 15]. Matching the timing of POCT with nutritional intake and medication regimen in the hospital is an important aspect of appropriate inpatient glycemic control. Premeal POCT should be obtained as close to time of meal tray delivery as possible and no greater than 1 hour before meals [48, 49]. POCT should be performed every 4–6 hours in patients who are NPO or receiving continuous enteral (EN) or parenteral (PN) nutrition [1, 15]. More frequent POCT is indicated after a medication change that could affect glycemic control (i.e., corticosteroid use or discontinuation of EN or PN) [32, 50, 51], or in patients who experience or at increased risk for frequent episodes of hypoglycemia [17, 29].

Healthcare providers should be aware of the fact that the accuracy of most POCT meters is far from optimal [52]. Consistent BG sampling sites and methods of measurement should be used, because results can vary greatly when alternating between fingerstick and alternative sites or between samples run in the laboratory and a POCT device [15, 52]. There are also potential inaccuracies of POCT testing, including intrinsic issues with technology and variability between different lots of test strips, varying tissue perfusion states and hemoglobin concentrations, and other interfering hematological factors in acutely ill patients [53–55].

Patients may be allowed to bring their personal glucometer device to the hospital, but personal meters should not be used for documentation or treatment of inpatient hyperglycemia [15]. Hospital glucometers should be used to obtain POCT results. Healthcare facilities with data management programs and electronic health records (EHR) can log POCT results into the EHR to allow evaluation of individual and hospital-wide trends and patterns of inpatient glycemic control [15, 56].

Continuous BG monitoring (CGM) is currently being evaluated for effectiveness in the inpatient setting. Several recent studies have shown CGM provides accurate estimation of BG levels in the hospital [57] and may be helpful in detection and reduction of hypoglycemic episodes [57–59]. Further studies are needed to confirm the accuracy and reliability of CGM in hospitalized patients. Although early results are promising, inpatient CGM has not yet been adequately tested to receive recommendation for use in hospitalized patients [15].

Glycemic Target Values

For non-critically ill patients treated with SC insulin, premeal BG targets should generally be <140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/l) in conjunction with random BG targets <180 mg/dL (10 mmol/l), as long as these targets can be safely achieved [1, 15]. Guidelines also recommend that these targets should be modified according to clinical status [1, 15]. Higher glycemic targets may be acceptable in patients with severe comorbidities, those who are terminally ill, or those in patient-care settings where frequent BG monitoring or close nursing supervision are not available [1, 15, 32]. In such patients; however, a reasonable degree of glycemic control (BG <200 mg/dl or 11.1 mmol/l) is still necessary to prevent symptomatic hyperglycemia [15].

Consideration should be given to reassessing the insulin regimen if BG levels are consistently <100 mg/dL (5.6 mmol/l) [1, 15]. For avoidance of hypoglycemia (BG <70 mg/dl), the total basal and prandial insulin dose should be reduced if BG levels are consistently between 70 and 100 mg/dl (3.9–5.6 mmol/l) [15]. Modification of the treatment regimen is necessary when BG values fall below 70 mg/dl (3.9 mmol/l) [1].

Approach to Management

As previously covered, inpatient hyperglycemia is best managed with insulin therapy. The preferred insulin regimen for inpatient glycemic control of non-critically ill patients includes two different insulin preparations administered SC as BPB therapy [15]. The basal component requires administration of an intermediate- or long-acting insulin once or twice daily [15]. The bolus component consists of a short- or rapid-acting insulin given in conjunction with meals or nutrient delivery [15]. The safety and efficacy of BPB insulin regimens in non-critically ill patients has been demonstrated in numerous studies [39, 40, 60–62]. Correctional insulin refers to the administration of supplemental doses of short- or rapid-acting insulin together with the usual dose of bolus insulin for BG values above the target range and is customized to match the insulin sensitivity of each patient [15]. Table 43.1 provides examples of BPB insulin regimens along with correctional dose protocols for glycemic control in non-critically ill inpatients.

Adjustment of scheduled BPB insulin dosing can be based on total doses of correctional insulin administered in the previous 24 hours [15, 40, 60]. When correctional insulin is required before most meals, it is usually the basal insulin dose that should be titrated upward [15]. If BG remains consistently elevated at one time point, the dose of bolus insulin preceding that measurement should be increased [15, 38, 63]. For example, if the premeal BG at lunch is persistently elevated, it should be the breakfast dose of bolus insulin that is titrated upward. Appropriate inpatient glycemic control for many patients will often require daily insulin adjustment to reach glycemic targets and avoid hypoglycemia.

In patients who are NPO or unable to eat, bolus insulin should be held until nutritional intake is resumed. Basal insulin should be continued once daily (glargine or detemir) or twice daily (detemir or neutral protamine Hagedorn [NPH]) [15]. Correctional doses of a rapid-acting insulin analog (aspart, lispro, or glulisine) or regular insulin can be given every 4–6 hours as needed to treat BG above the desired range [15].

Medical nutrition therapy (MNT) should also be included as an essential component of any inpatient glycemic control program [15]. MNT is defined as a process of nutritional assessment and individualized meal planning in consultation with a nutrition professional [15, 32, 64]. The goals of inpatient MNT include optimization of glycemic control, providing adequate calories to balance metabolic demands, and creating a discharge plan for follow-up care [15, 17, 64–67]. Nutrition requirements will often differ between the inpatient and outpatient setting; thus the role of MNT should not be overlooked. Lack of attention to MNT in the hospital setting has been shown to contribute to unfavorable changes in BG [15, 29, 49, 68].

Many variables during hospitalization, such as abrupt discontinuation of meals in preparation for procedures or diagnostic studies, variability in appetite due to acute illness, limitations in food choices, and poor coordination between insulin administration and meal delivery can further complicate nutritional management and create difficulties in predicting the efficacy of glycemic management strategies [15, 49]. A consistent carbohydrate (CHO) meal-planning system, in combination with MNT, may help facilitate inpatient glycemic control and negate some of these variables [15, 17, 49]. This system is based on the total amount of CHO offered as opposed to the specific calorie content at each meal [15]. Most patients receive a total of 1500–2000 calories per day, with a range of 12–15 CHO servings [15]. The majority of CHO foods should be whole grains, fruits, vegetables, and low-fat milk, with restricted amounts of sucrose-containing foods [15, 69]. One advantage to the use

of consistent CHO meal plans is that they facilitate matching the prandial insulin dose to the amount of CHO consumed [17]. Another advantage is that consistent CHO meal-planning allows the opportunity to reinforce education regarding dietary choices for many patients with DM [15]. Studies have also demonstrated a trend toward less hypoglycemia with consistent CHO meal planning [17, 65].

Successful inpatient glycemic control of non-critically ill patients requires a multifactorial approach that includes recognition of appropriate glycemic monitoring practices and target values along with institution of BPB insulin therapy and MNT. Table 43.2 summarizes the procedures and strategies that should be employed to help achieve appropriate glycemic control in this patient population.

Glycemic Control of the Critically Ill Patient

Hyperglycemia is commonly seen in critically ill patients, including those without a known history of DM [70]. Patients receiving treatment for critical illness develop hyperglycemia due to both effects of endogenous stress responses and byproducts of medical interventions [70]. Inflammatory cytokines and stress hormones, such as epinephrine and cor-

Table 43.2 Appropriate strategies for successful inpatient glycemic control in various patient populations

Patient population	Glycemic monitoring	Glycemic targets	Insulin regimen
Non-critically ill	– POCT FSG before meals and at bedtime if eating regular meals – POCT FSG every 4–6 hours in patients who are NPO or receiving continuous EN or PN – More frequent POCT FSG may be considered for patients who experience or have increased risk for frequent hypoglycemia	Premeal BG <140 mg/dl Random BG <180 mg/dl Higher glycemic targets are acceptable in those who are terminally ill or have severe comorbidities	Scheduled subcutaneous basal plus bolus insulin therapy (see Table 43.1 for further details): (a) Intermediate- or long-acting insulin (glargine, detemir, or NPH) given once or twice daily as basal component (b) Short- or rapid-acting insulin (aspart, lispro, or glulisine) given in conjunction with meals as bolus component (c) Correctional doses of short- or rapid-acting insulin given supplementally with usual dose of bolus insulin for premeal BG values above target values
Critically ill	– Patients whose severity of illness justifies invasive vascular monitoring: (a) All blood samples should be drawn from an arterial line (b) If arterial line is unavailable, sample from venous line (c) POCT FSG is inaccurate and should be avoided – Patients whose severity of illness does not justify invasive vascular monitoring: (a) POCT FSG is appropriate	BG levels should be maintained between 140 and 180 mg/dl BG levels <110 mg/dl are not recommended and should be avoided	IV insulin infusion should be administered by means of validated written or computerized protocols Once clinically improved and/or eating regular meals, IV insulin infusion should be transitioned to SC insulin therapy (see Table 43.3 for further details)
Perioperative	Determine level of glycemic control during preoperative evaluation by checking hemoglobin A1c in diabetic patients In stable patients undergoing relatively short outpatient procedures, check BG on admission, before procedure, and at discharge For longer outpatient procedures or patients receiving intraoperative subcutaneous insulin, BG should be monitored every 1–2 hours For extensive surgical procedures or patients receiving insulin infusion therapy, BG should be monitored every 30 minutes	Premeal BG targets <140 mg/dL in conjunction with random BG targets <180 mg/dL in preoperative and postoperative patients who are eating regular meals Intraoperative BG levels should be maintained between 100 and 180 mg/dl If a patient must be monitored in a surgical ICU post-procedure, BG should be maintained between 140 and 180 mg/dL	In ambulatory patients undergoing relatively short procedures, BPB insulin therapy should be used The day of surgery, use 75% to 100% of daily long-acting insulin (glargine or detemir) dose Prandial (bolus) insulin should be withheld while a patient is fasting Once patient resumes eating regular meals, full BPB regimen can be resumed IV insulin therapy is appropriate for patients undergoing long, extensive surgical procedures or those who will need to be monitored in an ICU setting post-procedure

POCT point-of-care testing, *IV* intravenous, *FSG* fingerstick glucose, *ICU* intensive care unit, *EN* enteral nutrition, BPB basal plus bolus, *PN* parenteral nutrition, *BG* blood glucose, *NPH* neutral protamine Hagedorn

tisol, inhibit insulin release and promote insulin resistance, functionally increasing BG levels by stimulating gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis while impeding glucose uptake in peripheral tissues [70–72]. Many medical therapies utilized in treatment of critically ill patients also promote hyperglycemia, including administration of exogenous catecholamines and corticosteroids, infusion of dextrose for parenteral nutrition, and even bedrest itself, which may impair glucose uptake in skeletal muscle [70, 73, 74]. In the past two decades, glycemic control among critically ill patients has been a topic of extensive study, leading to many changes in clinical practice [70]. Employing appropriate management strategies that lead to optimal glycemic control in this patient population is an important practice that should not be overlooked.

Glycemic Monitoring

Measurement of BG concentration in critical care settings is currently most often performed in intermittent fashion, with analysis using either POCT glucometers, laboratory blood draws, or blood gas analyzers [75]. The accuracy of glucometers has been the subject of numerous studies, with the majority concluding that they are insufficiently accurate for exclusive evaluation of BG values in the intensive care unit (ICU) [53, 75–78]. Many current glucometers are susceptible to interference from reducing substances such as ascorbic acid and acetaminophen (paracetamol), and accuracy is also affected by the patient's hematocrit levels [52, 75, 79]. The effect of hematocrit is particularly concerning in the ICU, where levels can fluctuate for many reasons. One study has demonstrated that a patient with a true BG of 80 mg/dl and a hematocrit of 0.25 may have a positive bias of as much as 18 mg/dl [75, 79]. Another consideration is that BG concentration varies in different vascular beds and the site from which blood is sampled may introduce further errors [75]. Sampling capillary blood in ICU patients, particularly those who are hemodynamically unstable and treated with vasopressors, can introduce large errors when compared to a reference method in which BG is measured from central venous or arterial draws [75, 76, 80]. Sampling from indwelling arterial or venous catheters in ICU patients is a reasonable option that is preferable to venipuncture, given the frequency with which BG is measured in the ICU [75].

Alternatives to the use of glucometers are measurements in the hospital's central laboratory or using a blood gas analyzer in the ICU [75]. Although central laboratory measurement is more accurate, the time delay in obtaining results makes this a less than ideal option in most ICU settings [75]. Using a blood gas analyzer to measure BG concentration is a practical solution but may have considerable cost implications [75]. Measurements from a properly maintained blood gas analyzer will have similar accuracy to central laboratory measurements [75, 76].

Current guidelines for BG measurement in the ICU setting recommend that all patients whose severity of illness justifies the presence of invasive vascular monitoring (indwelling arterial and/or central venous catheter) should have samples for measurement taken from the arterial catheter as the primary option [75]. If an arterial catheter is temporarily or permanently unavailable, blood may be sampled from a venous catheter as a secondary option (appropriate attention should be paid to maintaining sterility and avoiding contamination of the sample by flush solution in this case) [75]. When a patient's severity of illness does not require or justify the presence of invasive vascular monitoring, POCT capillary BG samples obtained via glucometer are acceptable [75].

Although intermittent BG measurement is a current standard practice for critical care patients, CGM holds great promise for the future in this patient population. Potential advantages of CGM include the ability to observe trends in BG concentration and intervene before values enter an unacceptable range, and removal of error both in timing of BG measurements and in sampling and analysis of blood [75]. At this time, insufficient data exists to recommend for or against CGM in the ICU. Further studies are needed to confirm that CGM can meet performance standards in a broad range of critical care settings [75].

Glycemic Target Values

Current BG target values for critically ill patients are mainly based on results from the Normoglycemia in Intensive Care Evaluation- Survival Using Glucose Algorithm Regulation (NICE-SUGAR) study, a multicenter and multinational randomized controlled trial which tested the effect of tight glycemic control on outcomes among 6104 critically ill patients, the majority of whom (>95%) required mechanical ventilation [1, 81]. In this study, patients were randomized to intensive or conventional insulin therapy groups. In the intensive insulin therapy group, glycemic target range was 81–108 mg/dl, while in the conventional insulin therapy group, target BG was 180 mg/dl or less, with insulin administration reduced and then discontinued if BG levels fell below 144 mg/dl [81]. Both 90-day mortality (78 more deaths; 27.5% vs. 24.9%; $P = 0.02$) and rates of severe hypoglycemia (6.8% vs. 0.5%; $P = < 0.001$) were significantly higher in the intensively treated versus the conventionally treated group [81]. Subsequently, several randomized controlled trials evaluating intensive insulin therapy among mechanically ventilated neurologic patients [82], patients with traumatic brain injuries [83], and critically ill pediatric patients [84] have all failed to demonstrate a clinical benefit to tight glycemic control in ICU patients [75].

Table 43.3 Transitioning from intravenous to subcutaneous insulin in the patient who is eating regular meals

	Time (hours)								
Patient data	0000	0100	0200	0300	0400	0500	0600	0700	0800
IV insulin infusion rate (units/hr)	2.2	2.2	2.1	2.0	2.0	2.0	1.9	1.8	1.8
Blood glucose (mg/dl)	148	143	145	141	137	139	135	133	131

Adapted with permission from Ref. [90]

The above data demonstrates both good glycemic control and relatively stable insulin infusion rates. To calculate subcutaneous basal plus bolus insulin doses, follow these steps:

1. Calculate the 24-hour intravenous insulin requirement:
   From the example above, patient has average insulin infusion rate of 2 units/hr
   Calculated 24-hour intravenous insulin requirement: 2 units/hr × 24 hours = 48 units
2. Calculate the subcutaneous basal insulin dose:
   Most sources [1, 92] recommend using 80% of the 24-hour intravenous insulin requirement as the subcutaneous basal insulin dose
   80% of 48 units = 38 units
   Since this was calculated from an overnight period of time while patient was not eating, this dose can be administered as 38 units of basal insulin once daily
3. Calculate the subcutaneous bolus (prandial) insulin dose, using a weight-based calculation:
   Given the possibility of decreased appetite, starting with a conservative estimate of 0.2 units/kg for total prandial dose is appropriate
   0.2 units/kg × 80 kg = 16 units; and 16 units/3 meals = approximately 5 units per meal
4. Final orders:
   38 units subcutaneous daily (insulin glargine/detemir)
   5 units subcutaneous three times daily with meals (insulin lispro/aspart/glulisine)

Patient weighs 80 kg; data extracted from overnight period of time when patient is not eating

Based on these findings, current guidelines for glycemic targets in critically ill patients on IV insulin therapy recommend that BG should be maintained between 140 and 180 mg/dL (7.8 and 10 mmol/l), and greater benefit may be realized at the lower end of this range [1]. Somewhat lower glycemic targets may be appropriate in selected patients, but strong evidence is currently lacking and prevents recommendation [1]. Targets less than 110 mg/dl (6.1 mmol/l) are not recommended and should be avoided [1].

Approach to Management

In the ICU setting, continuous IV insulin infusion has proven to be the most effective therapy for achieving recommended glycemic targets [17]. Due to the short half-life of circulating insulin, IV delivery allows for rapid dosing adjustments to address alterations in a patient's clinical status [1].

Current guidelines recommend that IV insulin therapy be administered by means of validated written or computerized protocols that contain predefined adjustments in the insulin infusion rate based on glycemic fluctuations and insulin dose [1]. Several examples of published protocols are available for review [85–88]. Continued education of healthcare staff, along with ongoing review of patient data and alterations to the protocol based on results, is critical for successful implementation of any insulin protocol [1, 85–88]. Table 43.2 summarizes appropriate strategies for successful inpatient glycemic control in critically ill patients.

Critically ill patients receiving IV insulin therapy will typically require transition to SC insulin once they begin eating regular meals or have clinically improved enough to be transferred to lower-intensity care [1]. A safe transition requires appropriate planning and must be carried out systematically. SC basal insulin must be given at least 2–4 hours prior to discontinuation of IV insulin therapy to prevent rebound hyperglycemia [89, 90]. There are currently no consensus guidelines for transitioning from IV to SC therapy, but typically 75–80% of the total daily IV infusion dose is proportionally divided into basal and bolus (prandial) components [1]. The safest method is to find a several-hour period of time during which BG values are at goal and IV insulin rates are not particularly elevated or variable (i.e., the rate is reasonable and stable) [90]. The healthcare provider can then look at the infusion rates during this stable period of time, ideally 6–8 hours in length [91], and extrapolate these data into a 24-hour time period [90]. Utilizing this method allows for a reasonable calculation of the patient's 24-hour IV insulin utilization [90]. Table 43.3 provides an example for calculating the insulin regimen necessary to transition a patient from IV to SC insulin therapy.

Glycemic Control of the Perioperative Patient

Patients with DM are more likely to undergo surgery than patients without DM [17, 39]. Surgery in DM patients is associated with longer length of hospitalization, greater perioperative morbidity and mortality, and increased rates of perioperative complications and healthcare resource utilization than nondiabetic patients [17, 39, 92, 93]. One

retrospective, observational study of 409 cardiac surgical patients demonstrated that intraoperative hyperglycemia was an independent risk factor for perioperative complications (including death) after adjusting for postoperative BG concentrations [94, 95]. The authors of this study also indicated that each 20 mg/dl (1.1 mmol/l) increase in BG concentration greater than 100 mg/dl (5.6 mmol/l) during surgery was associated with a 34% increase in the likelihood of postoperative complications [94]. Another retrospective cohort study of infra-inguinal vascular surgery patients showed that the rise in BG was proportional to an increased frequency of postoperative infections [96].

Surgical patient populations pose many unique challenges to clinicians. Despite the increased risk of perioperative complications, hyperglycemia is frequently overlooked and often inadequately addressed due to fear of hypoglycemia [29, 39]. Given the growing evidence linking perioperative hyperglycemia to many poor outcomes, it is important for healthcare providers to identify and address this issue.

Glycemic Monitoring

Preoperative identification of patients with DM, and those at risk for perioperative dysglycemia, provides a potential opportunity to reduce morbidity and mortality [97]. Early identification facilitates timely intervention and allows arrangement of appropriate perioperative and long-term follow-up [97]. It should also be noted that the incidence of preoperative hyperglycemia might not be related to DM. A prospective study of 493 non-DM patients undergoing elective, non-cardiac surgery found that 25% of patients had elevated fasting plasma glucose the morning of surgery [98].

Glycemic monitoring approaches for perioperative patients are similar to those used for non-critically ill and critically ill patients, depending upon the type and length of surgery performed [95] and whether the patient is monitored in the surgical ICU, general surgical floor, or discharged home after the procedure is completed. General recommendations include determining the level of glycemic control during the preoperative evaluation by checking HbA1c values [95]. Elevated HbA1c, as a marker of poor glycemic control, correlates with increased perioperative risk in DM patients [95]. Further recommendations include obtaining BG level on the patient's arrival before surgery and before discharge home [95]. The recommended frequency of intraoperative BG monitoring depends on many factors. In metabolically stable DM patients undergoing relatively short (<2 hours) outpatient procedures, it is only necessary to check BG on admission, before operation, and at discharge [97]. For longer outpatient procedures or for patients receiving intraoperative SC insulin, BG should be monitored every 1–2 hours [95, 97]. For higher-acuity patients undergoing extensive surgical procedures or those on intraoperative insulin infusion therapy, the American Diabetes Association recommends BG monitoring as frequently as every 30 minutes [32]. If the patient is observed in the hospital after the procedure, POCT is an appropriate monitoring method unless the patient is in the ICU. Once the patient is eating regular meals, recommendations for glycemic monitoring mirror those for non-critically ill patients.

Glycemic Target Values

BG goals for preoperative and postoperative patients who are eating regular meals are similar to those of non-critically ill patients, and recommendations include premeal BG targets <140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/l) in conjunction with random BG targets <180 mg/dL (10 mmol/l), as long as these targets can be safely achieved [1, 15]. Intraoperative BG levels should be maintained between 100 and 180 mg/dl (6–10 mmol/l), with appropriate steps taken to prevent intraoperative hypoglycemia [95, 99]. If a patient must be monitored in a surgical ICU post-procedure, glycemic targets include maintaining BG between 140 and 180 mg/dL (7.8 and 10 mmol/l) [1].

Approach to Management

Patients with a known history of DM should be thoroughly evaluated before entering the operating room to aid in creating a successful perioperative treatment regimen. Healthcare providers should have a detailed understanding of the history of the patient's disease, including specific diagnosis (T1DM, T2DM, gestational DM, etc.), duration of disease, current treatment regimen, adequacy of control, and the presence and severity of any comorbidities [97]. Patients with DM admitted for surgical procedures should generally have their home antidiabetes oral regimen discontinued and may require modification of a preadmission insulin regimen [9]. It should also be noted that recommendations include postponing surgery in patients with significant dehydration, ketoacidosis, and hyperosmolar nonketotic states [95]. Table 43.2 summarizes recommendations for appropriate inpatient glycemic control in perioperative patients.

Consensus guidelines recognize IV insulin therapy as the best method to control hyperglycemia in critically ill and non-critically ill surgical patients [1]; however, many logistical difficulties limit the use of this therapy in most hospital settings, particularly in non-ICU patient populations [95]. In non-ICU settings for ambulatory patients undergoing relatively short procedures, the preferable method for perioperative glycemic control is SC BPB insulin therapy. When SC insulin is continued in patients who are fasting, adjustment of their long-acting basal insulin dose is often not necessary

provided they have been receiving an adequate dose prior to admission [95, 100]. Specifically, recommendations include avoiding alterations of basal insulin (glargine or detemir) the day before surgery unless there is report of hypoglycemia or the patient is on a diet restriction in the preoperative period [95]. The day of surgery, use 75–100% of daily long-acting insulin dose [95]. If NPH is being used as the basal insulin, the evening dose should be reduced to 75% the day before surgery, and 50–75% of the usual morning dose should be given the day of surgery [95]. Prandial (bolus) insulin should be withheld while a patient is fasting [95]. Use of basal insulin in combination with correctional insulin can be effective at maintaining glycemic control in the desired range with low risk of hypoglycemia [39]. Once a patient is eating regular meals and monitored in a non-ICU setting, a BPB insulin regimen can be fully resumed. Finally, the use of SSI as monotherapy for perioperative glycemic control is inadequate and should not be used [95].

IV insulin therapy is appropriate for patients undergoing long, extensive surgical procedures or those who will need to be monitored in an ICU setting post-procedure [95]. IV insulin has the advantage of being quickly titratable with a rapid onset of action [97], allowing for precise glycemic control in the perioperative period. For patients treated with IV infusions, it is important to safely transition to SC insulin while maintaining glycemic control as patients transfer across different hospital units [95]. Table 43.3 details methods for converting IV therapy to an appropriate SC insulin regimen.

Special Considerations

There are many circumstances that may be encountered during routine inpatient care of DM patients that require special consideration. Not all patients are able to tolerate regular PO intake and may require EN or PN. The approach to glycemic control in these patients is a little different than other management strategies previously described. Other special circumstances include patients who are admitted with insulin pumps and those who experience glucocorticoid-induced DM while hospitalized.

Malnutrition is reported in up to 40% of critically ill patients [68] and is associated with many poor outcomes, including increased risk of hospital complications, higher mortality rates, longer length of hospitalization, and increased healthcare costs [15, 101]. Improving the nutritional state is an important goal of inpatient care for malnourished patients; unfortunately, not all patients are able to tolerate PO intake and may require EN or PN therapy. There are several retrospective and prospective studies demonstrating that the use of EN or PN therapy is an independent risk factor for the onset or aggravation of hyperglycemia independent of a prior history of DM [15, 68, 102, 103]. Early intervention to prevent and correct hyperglycemia in these patients may improve clinical outcomes [15]; however, achieving desired glycemic goals in this population poses many unique challenges [60, 68]. Current recommendations include initiating POCT in patients with or without a history of DM receiving PN or EN [15]. Several different management strategies utilizing SC insulin have been suggested. Management recommendations vary by whether the patient is receiving PN or intermittent, continuous, or cycled EN [15]. For those receiving continuous EN, recommendations include administering basal insulin once (glargine, detemir) or twice (NPH, detemir) daily in combination with a short- or rapid-acting insulin analog in divided doses every 4 hours (lispro, aspart, glulisine) to 6 hours (regular insulin) [15]. For patients on cycled EN, guidelines suggest administering basal insulin (glargine, detemir, or NPH) in combination with a short- or rapid-acting insulin analog at the time of initation of EN [15]. Repeating the dose of rapid-acting insulin at 4-hour intervals or short-acting insulin at 6-hour intervals for the duration of EN therapy is also recommended [15]. It is also preferable to give the last dose of rapid-acting insulin approximately 4 hours before and short-acting insulin approximately 6 hours before discontinuation of EN [15]. For those receiving bolus EN, administer short-acting or rapid-acting insulin before each bolus is delivered [15]. Finally, for patients receiving PN, regular insulin administered as part of the PN formulation can be both safe and effective [15]. Subcutaneous correctional dose insulin can be utilized in addition to the insulin that is mixed with the nutrition to treat any hyperglycemic excursions that may occur [15].

Patients treated with continuous insulin infusion (pump) therapy in the outpatient setting require unique attention when hospitalized. With increasing utilization of pump therapy, many institutions allow patients on insulin pumps to continue using these devices in the hospital; however, others express concern regarding use of a device that may be unfamiliar to staff, particularly in patients who are unable to manage their own pump effectively [104]. Patients who utilize pump therapy in the outpatient setting can be considered for diabetes self-management while hospitalized, provided they have the mental and physical capacity to do so [1, 17, 104, 105]. It should be noted that nursing personnel must document basal rates and bolus doses (at least daily) if this occurs [1]. The availability of hospital personnel with expertise in pump therapy is also essential [104, 105]. Clear policies and procedures should be established at the institutional level to guide continued use of this technology in hospitalized patients [15].

Hyperglycemia is a common complication of glucocorticoid therapy, with studies exhibiting a prevalence between 20% and 50% among patients without a previous history of DM [51, 106]. Corticosteroid therapy increases hepatic glucose production, impairs glucose

uptake in peripheral tissue, and stimulates protein catabolism with resulting increased concentrations of circulating amino acids, thus providing precursors for gluconeogenesis [107–109]. Patients being treated with glucocorticoid therapy should be evaluated for hyperglycemia, whether they have a known history of DM or not. Current recommendations include initiating bedside POCT in any patient receiving treatment with glucocorticoids [15]. POCT can be discontinued in nondiabetic patients if all BG results are <140 mg/dl (7.8 mmol/l) without insulin therapy for a period of 24–48 hours [15]. Insulin therapy should be initiated in patients demonstrating persistent hyperglycemia [15]. The majority of patients with steroid-induced hyperglycemia can be treated with SC BPB regimens to achieve glycemic control, with dosage based on a starting dose of 0.3–0.5 units/kg/day [15]. Adjustment of insulin doses is required when the glucocorticoid dose is changed [15]. During glucocorticoid tapers, insulin dosing should be proactively adjusted to avoid hypoglycemia [1].

Transitioning from Hospital to Home

Preparation for transition to the outpatient setting is an important goal of inpatient diabetes management and begins with hospital admission [1]. Hospital discharge itself represents a critical time for ensuring a safe transition to the outpatient setting and reducing the need for emergency department visits and rehospitalization [15]. Poor coordination of patient care at the time of discharge is associated with medical errors and readmission [110]. Successful coordination of this transition requires a team approach that includes physicians, nurses, dietitians, case managers, and social workers [17]. An outpatient follow-up visit with the primary care provider, endocrinologist, or diabetes educator within 1 month after discharge from the hospital is advised for all patients experiencing hyperglycemia while hospitalized [17].

For patients discharged home on insulin therapy as a new medication, it is important that patient education and written information be provided for method and timing of insulin doses and recognition and treatment of hypoglycemia [15, 111]. Initiation of insulin administration should be instituted at least 1 day before discharge to allow assessment of safety and efficacy [15].

Measurement of HbA1c during hospitalization can assist in tailoring the glycemic management of DM patients at discharge. For patients with acceptable preadmission glycemic control (HbA1c <7%), guidelines suggest reinstitution of preadmission insulin regimen or oral and non-insulin injectable antidiabetic drugs at discharge, if there are no contraindications to continued therapy (i.e., metformin and renal failure) [15]. Patients with elevated HbA1c require intensification of the outpatient regimen at discharge [15].

Hypoglycemia

Hypoglycemia (both spontaneous and iatrogenic) has been associated with higher risk of complications among hospitalized patients, including longer and more expensive hospital stays and increased mortality rates [112–114]. The risk for hypoglycemia is higher in hospitalized patients due to variability in insulin sensitivity related to the underlying illness, changes in counter-regulatory hormonal responses to procedures or illness, and interruptions in usual nutritional intake [115, 116]. Hospitalized patients who are elderly or severely ill are especially vulnerable to its adverse effects [112]. Hypoglycemia is defined as any BG <70 mg/dL [115]. This is the standard definition in outpatients and correlates with the initial threshold for release of counter-regulatory hormones [15, 117, 118]. Severe hypoglycemia has been defined as BG <40 mg/dl (2.2 mmol/l) [117], though this is lower than the approximate level at which cognitive impairment begins in normal individuals (<50 mg/dl or 2.8 mmol/l) [118].

For avoidance of hypoglycemia, consideration should be given to reassessing the insulin regimen if BG <100 mg/dL are consistently noted. Modification of the regimen is necessary when BG values are <70 mg/dL, unless the event is easily explained by other factors such as a missed meal [1]. It is also important to avoid routine use of correctional insulin doses at bedtime so as to prevent nocturnal hypoglycemia [1]. Guidelines also suggest that glucose management protocols with specific directions for hypoglycemia avoidance and management be implemented in the hospital, along with implementation of a standardized hospital-wide, nurse-initiated hypoglycemia treatment protocol to prompt immediate treatment of any recognized hypoglycemia [15]. Further recommendations include implementation of a system for tracking frequency of hypoglycemic events with root-cause analysis of events associated with potential for patient harm [15].

Conclusion

Optimal glycemic control throughout hospitalization is a goal all healthcare providers should strive to achieve. Improvement in glycemic control during the hospital stay requires effort on many levels, including physician education to aid in ordering appropriate insulin regimens, nursing coordination on the timing of insulin administration and treatment of hypoglycemia, laboratory personnel measuring BG and reporting results promptly, nutrition services assisting in dietary choices, and the patient being his/her own advocate in treating hyperglycemia. Hospitals should take appropriate steps to achieve euglycemia and make patient safety in glycemic control a reality for all inpatients.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. In the hospital, what blood glucose level is defined as representing hypoglycemia? (values in mg/dl)
   (a) <80
   (b) <70
   (c) <60
   (d) <50
   (e) <40
2. In the hospital, what preprandial (premeal) glucose level should you target in non-critically ill patients?
   (a) <200
   (b) <180
   (c) <160
   (d) <140
   (e) <120
3. In the hospital, what random glucose level should you target in non-critically ill patients?
   (a) <200
   (b) <180
   (c) <160
   (d) <140
   (e) <120
4. In the hospital, what glucose range should you target for critically ill patients?
   (a) 200–240
   (b) 160–200
   (c) 140–180
   (d) 120–160
   (e) 100–140
5. Modification of the treatment regimen is necessary once any blood glucose value below what threshold is observed?
   (a) <80
   (b) <70
   (c) <60
   (d) <50
   (e) <40
6. Inpatient hyperglycemia is *best managed* with what form of therapy?
   (a) Metformin
   (b) Sulfonylureas
   (c) Insulin
   (d) GLP-1 agonists
   (e) SGLT-2 inhibitors
7. In the ICU setting, what form of therapy has proven to be the *most effective* for achieving recommended glycemic targets?
   (a) Sliding-scale insulin
   (b) Metformin
   (c) Sulfonylureas
   (d) IV insulin infusion
   (e) Basal insulin alone
8. If a patient is to initiate insulin therapy prior to hospital discharge, when should this be started to allow for assessment of safety and efficacy?
   (a) One week before discharge
   (b) After discharge
   (c) At least 1 day before discharge
9. What is the preferred method for blood glucose (BG) monitoring in the non-critically ill inpatient?
   (a) Continuous glucose monitor
   (b) Venous BG sample
   (c) Bedside capillary point-of-care testing (POCT)
10. True or False: Patients being treated with glucocorticoid therapy should be evaluated for hyperglycemia, whether they have a known history of DM or not?
    (a) True
    (b) False

Correct Answers

1. (b) <70
2. (d) <140
3. (b) <180
4. (c) 140–180
5. (b) <70
6. (c) Insulin
7. (d) IV insulin infusion
8. (c) At least 1 day before discharge
9. (c) Bedside capillary point-of-care testing (POCT)
10. (a) True

References

1. Moghissi ES, Korytkowski MT, Dinardo M, et al. American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American Diabetes Association consensus statement on inpatient glycemic control. Endocr Pract. 2009;15(4):353–69.
2. Umpierrez GE, Isaacs SD, Bazargan N, et al. Hyperglycemia: an independent marker of in-hospital mortality in patients with undiagnosed diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2002;87(3):978–82.
3. Jiang HJ, Stryer D, Friedman B, Andrews R. Multiple hospitalizations for patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(5):1421–6.
4. American Diabetes Association. Economic costs of diabetes in the US in 2007. Diabetes Care. 2008;31(3):596–615.
5. Geiss LS, Wang J, Cheng YJ, et al. Prevalence and incidence trends for diagnosed diabetes among adult aged 20 to 79 years, United States, 1980–2012. JAMA. 2014;312(12):1218–26.
6. Magaji V, Johnston JM. Inpatient management of hyperglycemia and diabetes. Clin Diabetes. 2011;29(1):3–9.
7. Horton WB, Weeks AQ, Rhinewalt JM, et al. Analysis of a guideline-derived resident educational program on inpatient glycemic control. South Med J. 2015;108(10):596–8.
8. Levetan CS, Passaro M, Jablonski K, Kass M, Ratner RE. Unrecognized diabetes among hospitalized patients. Diabetes Care. 1998;21(2):246–9.

9. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Crude and age-adjusted percentage of civilian, noninstitutionalized population with diagnosed diabetes, United States, 1980–2011 [article online]. Available from http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/statistics/us/index.htm. Accessed 6 Dec 2015.
10. Capes SE, Hunt D, Malmberg K, et al. Stress hyperglycemia and prognosis of stroke in nondiabetic and diabetic patients: a systematic overview. Stroke. 2001;32(10):2426–32.
11. Capes SE, Hunt D, Malmberg K, Gerstein HC. Stress hyperglycemia and increased risk of death after myocardial infarction in patients with and without diabetes: a systematic overview. Lancet. 2000;355(9206):773–8.
12. Falciglia M, Freyberg RW, Almenoff PL, et al. Hyperglycemia-related mortality in critically ill patients varies with admission diagnosis. Crit Care Med. 2009;37(12):3001–9.
13. Kosiborod M, Inzucchi SE, Spertus JA, et al. Elevated admission glucose and mortality in elderly patients hospitalized with heart failure. Circulation. 2009;119(14):1899–907.
14. Kosiborod M, Rathore SS, Inzucchi SE, et al. Admission glucose and mortality in elderly patients hospitalized with acute myocardial infarction: implications for patients with and without recognized diabetes. Circulation. 2005;111(23):3078–86.
15. Umpierrez GE, Hellman R, Korytkowski MT, et al. Management of hyperglycemia in hospitalized patients in non-critical care setting: an endocrine society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012;97(1):16–38.
16. Baker EH, Janaway CH, Philips BJ, et al. Hyperglycemia is associated with poor outcomes in patients admitted to hospital with acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Thorax. 2006;61(4):284–9.
17. Clement S, Braithwaite SS, Magee MF, et al. Management of diabetes and hyperglycemia in hospitals. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(2):553–91.
18. McAlister FA, Majumdar SR, Blitz S, et al. The relation between hyperglycemia and outcomes in 2,471 patients admitted to the hospital with community-acquired pneumonia. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(4):810–5.
19. McAlister FA, Man J, Bisritz L, et al. Diabetes and coronary artery bypass surgery: an examination of perioperative glycemic control and outcomes. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(5):1518–24.
20. Pomposelli JJ, Baxter JK, Babineau TJ, et al. Early postoperative glucose control predicts nosocomial infection rate in diabetic patients. J Parenter Enter Nutr. 1998;22(2):77–81.
21. Furnary AP, Wu Y, Bookin SO. Effect of hyperglycemia and continuous intravenous insulin infusions on outcomes of cardiac surgical procedures: the Portland Diabetic Project. Endocr Pract. 2004;10(Suppl 2):21–33.
22. Krinsley JS, Jones RL. Cost analysis of intensive glycemic control in critically ill adult patients. Chest. 2006;129(3):644–50.
23. Dungan KM, Braithwaite SS, Preiser JC. Stress hyperglycemia. Lancet. 2009;373(9677):1798–807.
24. Mizock BA. Blood glucose management during critical illness. Rev Endocr Metab Disord. 2003;4(2):187–94.
25. Cook CB, Kongable GL, Potter DJ, et al. Inpatient glucose control: a glycemic survey of 126 U.S. hospitals. J Hosp Med. 2009;4(9):E7–E14.
26. Schmeltz LR, DeSantis AJ, Thiyagarajan V, et al. Reduction of surgical mortality and morbidity in diabetic patients undergoing cardiac surgery with a combined intravenous and subcutaneous insulin glucose management strategy. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(4):823–8.
27. van den Berghe G, Wouters P, Weekers F, et al. Intensive insulin therapy in critically ill patients. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(19):1359–67.
28. De La Rosa GDC, Donaldo JH, Restrepo AH, et al. Strict glycaemic control in patients hospitalized in a mixed medical and surgical intensive care unit: a randomized clinical trial. Crit Care. 2008;12(5):R120.
29. Inzucchi SE. Clinical practice. Management of hyperglycemia in the hospital setting. N Engl J Med. 2006;355(18):1903–11.
30. van den Berghe G, Wilmer A, Hermans G, et al. Intensive insulin therapy in the medical ICU. N Engl J Med. 2006;354(5):449–61.
31. Preiser JC, Devos P, Ruiz-Santana S, et al. A prospective randomised multi-centre controlled trial on tight glucose control by intensive insulin therapy in adult intensive care units: the Glucontrol study. Intensive Care Med. 2009;35(10):1738–48.
32. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes- 2015. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(Suppl 1):S1–S93.
33. Saudek CD, Herman WH, Sacks DB, et al. A new look at screening and diagnosing diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2008;93(7):2447–53.
34. Ainla T, Baburin A, Teesalu R, Rahu M. The association between hyperglycaemia on admission and 180-day mortality in acute myocardial infarction patients with and without diabetes. Diabet Med. 2005;22(10):1321–5.
35. Norhammar A, Tenerz A, Nilsson G, et al. Glucose metabolism in patients with acute myocardial infarction and no previous diagnosis of diabetes mellitus: a prospective study. Lancet. 2002;359(9324):2140–4.
36. Horton WB, Subauste JS. Top 10 facts to know about inpatient glycemic control. Am J Med. 2016;129(2):139–42.
37. Schnipper JL, Ndumele CD, Liang CL, Pendergrass ML. Effects of a subcutaneous insulin protocol, clinical education, and computerized order set on the quality of inpatient management of hyperglycemia: results of a clinical trial. J Hosp Med. 2009;4(1):16–27.
38. Maynard G, Lee J, Phillips G, et al. Improved inpatient use of basal insulin, reduced hypoglycemia, and improved glycemic control: effect of structured subcutaneous insulin orders and an insulin management algorithm. J Hosp Med. 2009;4(1):3–15.
39. Umpierrez GE, Smiley D, Jacobs S, et al. Randomized study of basal-bolus insulin therapy in the inpatient management of patients with type 2 diabetes undergoing general surgery (RABBIT 2 surgery). Diabetes Care. 2011;34(2):256–61.
40. Umpierrez GE, Smiley D, Zisman A, et al. Randomized study of basal-bolus insulin therapy in the inpatient management of patients with type 2 diabetes (RABBIT 2 trial). Diabetes Care. 2007;30(9):2181–6.
41. Baldwin D, Villanueva G, McNutt R, Bhatnagar S. Eliminating inpatient sliding scale insulin: a reeducation project with medical house staff. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(5):1008–11.
42. Umpierrez GE, Palacio A, Smiley D. Sliding scale insulin use: myth or insanity? Am J Med. 2007;120(7):563–7.
43. Queale WS, Seidler AJ, Brancati FL. Glycemic control and sliding scale insulin use in medical inpatients with diabetes mellitus. Arch Intern Med. 1997;157(5):545–52.
44. Gearhart JG, Duncan JL 3rd, Replogle WH, et al. Efficacy of sliding scale insulin therapy: a comparison with prospective regimens. Fam Pract Res J. 1994;14(4):313–22.
45. Sawin C. Action without benefit. The sliding scale of insulin use. Arch Intern Med. 1996;157(5):489.
46. Nau KC, Lorenzetti RC, Cucuzzella M, et al. Glycemic control in hospitalized patients not in intensive care: beyond sliding-scale insulin. Am Fam Physician. 2010;81(9):1130–5.
47. Schnipper JL, Barsky EE, Shaykevich S, et al. Inpatient management of diabetes and hyperglycemia among general medicine patients at a large teaching hospital. J Hosp Med. 2006;1(3):145–50.
48. Lubitz CC, Seley JJ, Rivera C, et al. The perils of inpatient hyperglycemia management: how we turned apathy into action. Diabetes Spectr. 2007;20(1):18–21.
49. Curll M, Dinardo M, Noschese M, Korytkowski MT. Menu selection, glycaemic control and satisfaction with standard and patient-controlled consistent carbohydrate meal plans in hospitalised patients with diabetes. Qual Saf Health Care. 2010;19(4):355–9.

50. Seley JJ, D'hondt N, Longo R, et al. AADE position statement: inpatient glycemic control. Diabetes Educ. 2009;35(Suppl 3):64S–8S.
51. Donihi AC, Raval D, Saul M, et al. Prevalence and predictors of corticosteroid-related hyperglycemia in hospitalized patients. Endocr Pract. 2006;12(4):358–62.
52. Dungan K, Chapman J, Braithwaite SS, Buse J. Glucose measurement: confounding issues in setting targets for inpatient management. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(2):403–9.
53. Scott MG, Bruns DE, Boyd JC, Sacks DB. Tight glucose control in the intensive care unit: are glucose meters up to the task? Clin Chem. 2009;55(1):18–20.
54. Vlasselaers D, Herpe TV, Milants I, et al. Blood glucose measurements in arterial blood of intensive care unit patients submitted to tight glycemic control: agreement between bedside tests. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2008;2(6):932–8.
55. Cembrowski GS, Tran DV, Slater-Maclean L, et al. Could susceptibility to low hematocrit interference have compromised the results of the NICE-SUGAR trial? Clin Chem. 2010;56(7):1193–5.
56. Cook CB, Castro JC, Schmidt RE, et al. Diabetes care in hospitalized noncritically ill patients: more evidence for clinical inertia and negative therapeutic momentum. J Hosp Med. 2007;2(4):203–11.
57. Gomez AM, Umpierrez GE. Continuous glucose monitoring in insulin-treated patients in non-ICU settings. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2014;8(5):940–6.
58. Holzinger U, Warszwska J, Kitzberger R, et al. Real-time continuous glucose monitoring in critically ill patients: a prospective randomized trial. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(3):467–72.
59. Holzinger U, Warszawska J, Kitzberger R, et al. Impact of shock requiring norepinephrine on the accuracy and reliability of subcutaneous continuous glucose monitoring. Intensive Care Med. 2009;35(8):1383–9.
60. Korytkowski MT, Salata RJ, Koerbel GL, et al. Insulin therapy and glycemic control in hospitalized patients with diabetes during enteral nutrition therapy: a randomized controlled clinical trial. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(4):594–6.
61. Umpierrez GE, Hor T, Smiley D, et al. Comparison of inpatient insulin regimens with detemir plus aspart versus neutral protamine hagedorn plus regular in medical patients with type 2 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009;94(2):564–9.
62. Umpierrez GE, Smiley D, Hermayer K, et al. Randomized study comparing a basal-bolus with a basal plus correction insulin regimen for the hospital management of medical and surgical patients with type 2 diabetes: basal plus trial. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(8):2169–74.
63. Maynard G, Wesorick DH, O'Malley C, et al. Subcutaneous insulin order sets and protocols: effective design and implementation strategies. J Hosp Med. 2008;3(5 Suppl):29–41.
64. Schafer RG, Bohannon B, Franz MJ, et al. Diabetes nutrition recommendations for health care institutions. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(Suppl 1):S55–7.
65. Gosmanov AR, Umpierrez GE. Medical nutrition therapy in hospitalized patients with diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2012;12(1):93–100.
66. Schafer RG, Bohannon B, Franz MJ, et al. Translation of the diabetes nutrition recommendations for health care institutions. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(Suppl 1):S70–2.
67. Boucher JL, Swift CS, Franz MJ, et al. Inpatient management of diabetes and hyperglycemia: implications for nutrition practice and the food and nutrition professional. J Am Diet Assoc. 2007;107(1):105–11.
68. Ziegler TR. Parenteral nutrition in the critically ill patient. N Engl J Med. 2009;361(11):1088–97.
69. 2002 American Diabetes Association Position Statement: evidence-based nutrition principles and recommendations for the treatment and prevention of diabetes and related complications. J Am Diet Assoc. 2002;102(1):109–18.
70. Clain J, Ramar K, Surani SR. Glucose control in critical care. World J Diabetes. 2015;6(9):1082–91.
71. Kavanagh BP, McCowen KC. Clinical practice. Glycemic control in the ICU. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(26):2540–6.
72. Lena D, Kalfon P, Preiser JC, Ichai C. Glycemic control in the intensive care unit and during the postoperative period. Anesthesiology. 2011;114(2):438–44.
73. McCowen KC, Malhotra A, Bistrian BR. Stress-induced hyperglycemia. Crit Care Clin. 2001;17(1):107–24.
74. Stuart CA, Shangraw RA, Prince MJ, et al. Bed-rest-induced insulin resistance occurs primarily in muscle. Metab Clin Exp. 1988;37(8):802–6.
75. Finfer S, Wernerman J, Preiser JC, et al. Clinical review: consensus recommendations on measurement of blood glucose and reporting glycemic control in critically ill adults. Crit Care. 2013;17(3):229.
76. Kanji S, Buffie J, Hutton B, et al. Reliability of point-of-care testing for glucose measurement in critically ill adults. Crit Care Med. 2005;33(12):2778–85.
77. Hoedermaekers CW, Klein Gunnewiek JM, Prinsen MA, et al. Accuracy of bedside glucose measurement from three glucometers in critically ill patients. Crit Care Med. 2008;36(11):3062–6.
78. Finkielman JD, Oyen LJ, Afessa B. Agreement between bedside blood and plasma glucose measurement in the ICU setting. Chest. 2005;127(5):1749–51.
79. Lyon ME, Baskin LB, Braakman S, et al. Interference studies with two hospital-grade and two home-grade glucose meters. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2009;11(10):641–7.
80. Karon BS, Gandhi GY, Nuttall GA, et al. Accuracy of roche accucheck inform whole blood capillary, arterial, and venous glucose values in patients receiving intensive intravenous insulin therapy after cardiac surgery. Am J Clin Pathol. 2007;127(6):919–26.
81. Finfer S, Chittock DR, Su SY, et al. Intensive versus conventional glucose control in critically ill patients. N Engl J Med. 2009;360(13):1283–97.
82. Green DM, O'Phelan KH, Bassin SL, et al. Intensive versus conventional insulin therapy in critically ill neurologic patients. Neurocrit Care. 2010;13(3):299–306.
83. Coester A, Neumann CR, Schmidt MI. Intensive insulin therapy in severe traumatic brain injury: a randomized trial. J Trauma. 2010;68(4):904–11.
84. Macrae D, Grieve R, Allen E, et al. A randomized trial of hyperglycemic control in pediatric intensive care. N Engl J Med. 2014;370(2):107–18.
85. Goldberg PA, Siegel MD, Sherwin RS, et al. Implementation of a safe and effective insulin infusion protocol in a medical intensive care unit. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(2):461–7.
86. Rea RS, Donihi AC, Bobeck M, et al. Implementing an intravenous insulin infusion protocol in the intensive care unit. Am J Health Syst Pharm. 2007;64(4):385–95.
87. Nazer LH, Chow SL, Moghissi ES. Insulin infusion protocols for critically ill patients: a highlight of differences and similarities. Endocr Pract. 2007;13(2):137–46.
88. DeSantis AJ, Schmeltz LR, Schmidt K, et al. Inpatient management of hyperglycemia: the Northwestern experience. Endocr Pract. 2006;12(5):491–505.
89. Noschese M, Donihi AC, Koerbel G, et al. Effect of a diabetes order set on glycaemic management and control in the hospital. Qual Saf Health Care. 2008;17(6):464–8.
90. Kreider KE, Lien LF. Transitioning safely from intravenous to subcutaneous insulin. Curr Diab Rep. 2015;15(5):23.
91. Furnary AP, Braithwaite SS. Effects of outcome on in-hospital transition from intravenous insulin infusion to subcutaneous therapy. Am J Cardiol. 2006;98(4):557–64.
92. Smiley DD, Umpierrez GE. Perioperative glucose control in the diabetic or nondiabetic patient. South Med J. 2006;99(6):580–9.

93. Marchant MH, Viens NA, Cook C, et al. The impact of glycemic control and diabetes mellitus on perioperative outcomes after total joint arthroplasty. J Bone Joint Surg Am. 2009;91(7):1621–9.
94. Gandhi GY, Nuttall GA, Abel MD, et al. Intraoperative hyperglycemia and perioperative outcomes in cardiac surgery patients. Mayo Clin Proc. 2005;80(7):862–6.
95. Pichardo-Lowden A, Gabbay RA. Management of hyperglycemia during the perioperative period. Curr Diab Rep. 2012;12(1):108–18.
96. Malmstedt J, Wahlberg E, Jorneskog G, Swedenborg J. Influence of perioperative blood glucose levels on outcome after infrainguinal bypass surgery in patients with diabetes. Br J Surg. 2006;93(11):1360–7.
97. Sebranek JJ, Lugli AK, Coursin DB. Glycaemic control in the perioperative period. Br J Anaesth. 2013;111(Suppl 1):i18–34.
98. Hatzakorzian R, Bui H, Carvalho G, et al. Fasting blood glucose levels in patients presenting for elective surgery. Nutrition. 2011;27(3):298–301.
99. World Health Organization. World Health Organization guidelines for safe surgery. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2009.
100. Mucha GT, Merkel S, Thomas W, Bantle JP. Fasting and insulin glargine in individuals with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(5):1209–10.
101. Correia MI, Waitzberg DL. The impact of malnutrition on morbidity, mortality, length of hospital stay and costs evaluated through a multivariate model analysis. Clin Nutr. 2003;22(3):235–9.
102. Pancorbo-Hidalgo PL, Garcia-Fernandez FP, Ramirez-Perez C. Complications associated with enteral nutrition by nasogastric tube in an internal medicine unit. J Clin Nurs. 2001;10(4):482–90.
103. Umpierrez GE. Basal versus sliding-scale regular insulin in hospitalized patients with hyperglycemia during enteral nutrition therapy. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(4):751–3.
104. Cook CB, Boyle ME, Cisar NS, et al. Use of continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (insulin pump) therapy in the hospital setting: proposed guidelines and outcome measures. Diabetes Educ. 2005;31(6):849–57.
105. Bailon RM, Partlow BJ, Miller-Cage V, et al. Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (insulin pump) therapy can be safely used in the hospital in select patients. Endocr Pract. 2009;15(1):24–9.
106. Clore JN, Thurby-Hay L. Glucocorticoid-induced hyperglycemia. Endocr Pract. 2009;15(5):469–74.
107. Felig P, Sherwin RS, Soman V, et al. Hormonal interactions in the regulation of blood glucose. Recent Prog Horm Res. 1979;35:501–32.
108. Schade DS, Eaton RP. The temporal relationship between endogenously secreted stress hormones and metabolic decompensation in diabetic man. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1980;50(1):131–6.
109. Umpierrez GE, Kitabchi AE. ICU care for patients with diabetes. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes. 2004;11(2):75–81.
110. Schnipper JL, Magee M, Larsen K, et al. Society of Hospital Medicine Glycemic Control Task Force summary: practical recommendations for assessing the impact of glycemic control efforts. J Hosp Med. 2008;3(5 Suppl):66–75.
111. Lauster CD, Gibson JM, DiNella JV, et al. Implementation of standardized instructions for insulin at hospital discharge. J Hosp Med. 2009;4(8):E41–2.
112. Boucai L, Southern WN, Zonszein J. Hypoglycemia-associated mortality is not drug-associated but linked to comorbidities. Am J Med. 2011;124(11):1028–35.
113. Garg R, Hurwitz S, Turchin A, Trivedi A. Hypoglycemia, with or without insulin therapy, is associated with increased mortality among hospitalized patients. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(5):1107–10.
114. Turchin A, Matheny ME, Shubina M, et al. Hypoglycemia and clinical outcomes in patients with diabetes hospitalized in the general ward. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(7):1153–7.
115. Smith WD, Winterstein AG, Johns T, et al. Causes of hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia in adult inpatients. Am J Health Syst Pharm. 2005;62(7):714–9.
116. van der Crabben SN, Blumer RM, Stegenga ME, et al. Early endotoxemia increases peripheral and hepatic insulin sensitivity in healthy humans. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009;94(2):463–8.
117. Cryer PE, Axelrod L, Grossman AB, et al. Evaluation and management of adult hypoglycemic disorders: an Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009;94(3):709–28.
118. Mitrakou A, Ryan C, Veneman T, et al. Hierarchy of glycemic thresholds for counterregulatory hormone secretion, symptoms, and cerebral dysfunction. Am J Physiol. 1991;260(1 Pt 1):E67–74.

Diabetes and Infection

44

Atulya Atreja, Sanjay Kalra, and Joel Rodriguez-Saldana

Whether it be the plague or influenza, one thing that we learn at the knee of our "alma mater" is that diabetics are more likely to get it

–Lakin and colleagues, 1985

Introduction

Before the discovery of insulin and antibiotics, it was estimated that infections were the cause of death of one in five diabetic patients [1]. Following the introduction of insulin in diabetes treatment, a decrease in mortality from sepsis and tuberculosis was documented since 1935 [2]; in the late 1960s, the estimated mortality from infections in patients with diabetes was 5% [1]. Nevertheless, it has been shown that diabetes continues to increase the predisposition to infections, especially bacterial, fungal, and viral. Albeit not traditionally recognized, acute infections are among the ten leading clinical characteristics in patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes [3]. For example, Drivsholm and colleagues reported that the prevalence of genital itching, balanitis in men, and recurrent urinary tract and skin infections among 1137 Danish patients newly diagnosed with type 2 diabetes was 27.2%, 12.0%, 5.7%, and 4.3% [3]. Until the 1980s, controversy prevailed about the increased frequency of infections in patients with diabetes; many clinicians believed that people with diabetes had an increased susceptibility to infection, but this belief was not supported by strong evidence [4–6]. Contributing factors increasing the risk of infections in patients with diabetes include comorbidities and chronic complications such as foot ulcers and neurogenic bladder [6]. Beyond a disturbance of glucose metabolism, diabetes is an inflammatory disease in which chronic complications, including neuropathy and chronic vascular and renal diseases, alter the response to pathogens [7].

Magnitude of Risk

The relevance of infections in the morbidity and mortality of people with diabetes has been neglected, is not addressed or reported in clinical trials, and is not recognized in clinical guidelines for diabetes management [8]. Nevertheless, infections impair quality of life and impose short-time and longtime threats on the life of people with diabetes. Despite the belief of higher susceptibility to infections in patients with diabetes, investigations about the risk for infections in these patients are scarce [7]. Two specific studies were carried out in Canada and the Netherlands [6, 9]. The first one was a retrospective study in which risk ratios of infections and death attributable to infectious disease were compared in two groups of 513,749 nondiabetic and diabetic patients [6]. The risk ratio for infections was equal in both groups, but the risk ratio for infectious-related hospitalization was 2.1, and the risk ratio for death attributable to infection was 1.92 in patients with diabetes [6]. Risk ratios for infectious disease hospitalization or physician claims for infectious disease were higher in patients with diabetes; almost half of the patients with diabetes had at least one hospitalization or physician claim [6]. The second was a 12-month prospective study in which the risk ratios of infections and death attributable to infectious disease were compared in 7417 adult patients with type 1 (N = 705) or type 2 (N = 6712) diabetes, with 18,911 patients with hypertension [9]. Patients with diabetes had higher risks of lower respiratory tract infections, urinary tract infection, bacterial and skin and mucous membrane infection, and mycotic skin and mucous membrane infection [9]. Adjusted odds ratios were higher in every category for patients with type 1 diabetes, and the risk increased with recurrences of common infections [9].

A. Atreja
Department of Pulmonary Medicine, MMIMSR, Mullana, Haryana, India

S. Kalra (✉)
Department of Endocrinology, Bharti Hospital, Karnal, India

J. Rodriguez-Saldana
Multidisciplinary Center of Diabetes, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_44

Pathogenesis

The search for "an intrinsic problem" to explain the association of diabetes and infection goes back to Lassar, who postulated in 1904 that organisms thrive in a high-sugar medium [4]. The increased susceptibility to infections may precipitate metabolic complications in patients with diabetes. Acute infections make it difficult or become obstacles to control blood glucose levels, and infection is an important cause of hyperglycemic crisis, including ketoacidosis and non-hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state [10]. Large population-based observational studies have reported strong associations between higher A1c levels and infection risks for patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes [8]. A recent review identified 13 studies in which infections could be associated with glycemic control [8]. With the exception of the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT), all the studies included in this review were observational cohort or case control, identifying associations but not clearly causality [8]. Importantly, all of these studies were carried out in high-income countries, but associations between diabetes and infection could be also important (and higher) in low- and middle-resource countries, where diabetes prevalence is rising most rapidly and glucose control is lower [8]. Despite the limitations of these studies to measure the effect of diabetes on infection, it has been shown that hyperglycemia has a negative effect on the outcomes in people with diabetes and without diabetes. Glycemic control is an essential goal to reduce the risk of infections and to protect maintenance of normal host defense mechanisms that determine resistance and response to infection [10].

The Immune Response

Specific defects in innate and adaptive immune function have been identified in multiple in vitro studies [1]. Reported abnormalities include ineffective functioning of T lymphocytes, neutrophils, oxidant-antioxidant imbalance, and deficient opsonophagocytosis [11]. These infections are often difficult to evaluate and eradicate due to reduced humoral immune responses. Host factors like micro- and macrovascular insufficiency, sensory and autonomic neuropathy, and mucosal colonization with *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Candida albicans* further complicate the scenario [12]. A summary of the immune responses negatively affected by diabetes and hyperglycemia is presented in Table 44.1.

Table 44.1 Pathogenic mechanisms of infection in patients with diabetes

Mechanisms and references	Disorder
Innate immunity [1, 5, 7–8, 13–15]	Disorders in the three steps involved in pathogen elimination, including (1) polymorphonuclear adhesion to vascular endothelium, (2) transmigration through the vessel wall down a chemotactic gradient, (3) phagocytosis and microbial killing [1]
	Defects in neutrophil function, including (1) decreased phagocytosis, (2) diminished respiratory burst capacity and degranulation, (3) glucose-dependent reduction in superoxide production, (4) reduced monocyte proliferation, (5) reduced bactericidal capacity, delayed bacterial clearance, increased severity of infections
	Downregulation of Toll-like receptors: phagocyte inhibition and killing of *Staphylococcus aureus*
	Vascular dysfunction, including (1) upregulation of intercellular cell adhesion molecule-1, vascular cell adhesion molecule-1, and selectin, resulting in limited chemotactic migration out of vessels at sites of inflammation, (2) reduced endothelial-dependent relaxation, (3) blunted nitric oxide response to bradykinin, (4) dysregulation of nitric oxide production and release of prostanoids with resulting vasoconstriction, (5) increased endothelial permeability, tissue edema
	Disorders in the complement cascade, including (1) upregulation of C3 and C4 gene expression resulting in a chronic inflammatory state, (2) inhibition of complement receptor and Fc gamma receptor, (3) reduced opsonization and phagocytosis of microorganisms
	Disturbances in cell signaling pathways, activation of mitogen-activated protein kinases, including nuclear factor-kB and protein kinase C
	Nonenzymatic glycosylation of immunoglobulins
	Bacterial biofilm formation, increased survival of microorganisms
Adaptive immunity [8, 15, 16]	Specific defects in T-lymphocyte function
	Glycosylation and impaired functioning of antibodies in proportion to A1c levels
	Paradoxical hyper-reactive antigen-specific T cell inflammatory response
	High levels of single and double cytokine CD4+ Th1 cells
	High levels of type 1 (tumor necrosis factor-α, IFN-γ, interleukin-2), type 2 (interleukin-5), type 17 (interleukin-17 cytokines), and other proinflammatory cytokines (interleukin-1β, interleukin-6, interleukin-18, C-reactive protein) and an anti-inflammatory cytokine (interleukin-10): oxidative stress and insulin resistance
	Low levels of IL-22
	Decreased frequency and function of natural Treg cells
	Enhanced frequencies of central memory CD4+ and CD8+ T cells resulting in disturbances on central memory, effector memory, and naïve T cells
	Diminished expression of cytotoxic markers perforin, granzyme B, and CD107a, decreased antigen-stimulated CD8+ T cell cytotoxic activity
	Reduction in natural killer (NK) receptor NKG2D
	Higher levels of tissue damage in diabetic patients with tuberculosis

Metabolic Consequences of Infectious Disease

On the other hand, some viral infections are associated with metabolic derangements and predispose to the development of type 2 diabetes. The prevalence of type 2 diabetes in patients with hepatitis C is higher than in the general population. Hepatitis C promotes insulin resistance through multiple pathogenic mechanisms, including (1) defects in post-receptor insulin signaling, (2) high levels of proinflammatory cytokines, (3) high levels of reactive oxygen species, (4) low levels of GLP-1, (5) diminished glucose-stimulated insulin release, and (6) beta-cell apoptosis [17]. Patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) are also at high risk of type 2 diabetes associated with the use of combination antiretroviral therapy. The HIV virus itself has been proposed as a mechanism of hyperglycemia, but the association between obesity and diabetes is strong, as in non-infected patients [18].

Diabetes Parasitic Diseases and "the Hygiene Hypothesis"

By comparison with the high risk of bacterial, fungal, and viral infections, an inverse association between soil-transmitted helminthiasis and diabetes was initially reported by Nazligul and colleagues in 2001 [19]. The evidence is scarce and comprises six experimental studies and seven cross-sectional studies which were summarized by de Ruiter and colleagues [20]. Under the hypothesis that having diabetes would affect the susceptibility to infections, six of these studies showed that the prevalence of intestinal parasites was significantly lower among patients with diabetes; by comparison, only one small study in Brazil reported a positive association between *Strongyloides stercoralis* infection and type 2 diabetes [21]. In this study, the frequency of positive *S. stercoralis* serology in diabetics was 23% versus 7.1% in the control group ($P < 0.05$). The odds ratio for diabetics was 3.9 (CI, 1.6–15.9, $P < 0.05$) [20]. By comparison, the remaining six studies showed a significantly lower prevalence of intestinal helminth infections in patients with type 2 diabetes, metabolic syndrome, or insulin resistance [20]. The inverse relation or "protective effect" of type 2 diabetes and helminth infections could be related to a state of cellular immune hyporesponsiveness induced by parasites mediated by a helminth-induced regulatory network involving regulatory T cells and their associated cytokines IL-10 and transforming growth factor-β [20]. These observations are related to the revised hygiene hypothesis proposed by Strachan in 1989, who proposed that improved hygiene increased the rise of allergic diseases [22]. This hypothesis states that exposure to pathogens is critical to establish immunomodulatory cells to prevent inappropriate responses [20]. Albeit strongly criticized as "a dangerous misnomer which is misleading people away from finding the true causes of the rise in allergic disease" [23] and should not diminish the importance of personal hygiene in every age group, the inverse association between helminth infections and type 2 diabetes is an interesting observation that invites further study.

Categories of Infections in Patients with Diabetes

Three categories of infections have been described: (1) common infections also occurring in persons with diabetes, (2) uncommon infections strongly associated or typical of diabetes, and (3) infections related to therapeutic interventions in people with diabetes [1]. The spectrum of disease and the likely causative organisms identified in people with diabetes are presented in Table 44.2.

Principles of Management

Managing infections in persons with diabetes is always a challenge for physicians. Principles of management include:

Awareness of Diabetes-Associated Diseases

Awareness regarding the variety and severity of diseases, in persons with diabetes, is essential for prevention and prompt treatment. Diabetes education, along with optimal glycemic control, can minimize the risk of life-threatening infections. Simple preventive measures like proper foot care can reduce disease-associated morbidity.

Adequate Choice of Antibiotics

Empirical broad-spectrum antibiotics should be used till microbiologic results can guide treatment; some infections are frequently resolved empirically. Choice of antibiotics should be based on possible causative organisms and local flora. Early suspicion of antibiotic resistance, in people with diabetes with complicated infections, can help in limiting the disease-associated morbidity and mortality. *P. aeruginosa* infections are commonly seen in hospitalized patients with cystic fibrosis, cytotoxic chemotherapy, mechanical ventilation, and broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy. Patients present with fever, shock, hypothermia, acute pneumonia, and occasionally ecthyma gangrenosum. Table 44.3 shows empirical therapies for infections in patients with diabetes, and Table 44.4 presents first and second option choices of

Table 44.2 Disease spectrum, causative microorganisms, and main clinical features

	Spectrum of infections and references	Causative microorganisms	Clinical features	Diagnostic procedure
Head and neck				
	Herpes zoster ophthalmicus [24–27]	Human herpes virus type 3	Risk ratio: 1.31 (95% CI, 1.22–1.41) Represents 10% to 20% of herpes zoster cases, 3.2 cases per 1000 person-years Peak incidence: 50–79 years, higher in patients over 80 years Three clinical phases: (1) Preeruptive, (2) acute eruptive, (3) chronic 1. Preeruptive symptoms and signs: Headache, fatigue, malaise, photophobia and fever; neuralgia around the eye and forehead with pinprick anesthesia and hyperesthesia to light touch (allodynia) 2. The acute eruptive phase commonly involves the skin, eyelids, medial canthal area, conjunctiva, and cornea. Skin lesions manifest as a vesicular eruption along the ophthalmic dermatome of the trigeminal nerve, erythematous coalescing papules evolving into clear vesicles with rupture, secondary bacterial infection, and discharge and crusting over several weeks. The Hutchinson sign refers to involvement of the tip of the nose Eyelid involvement includes a cutaneous macular rash, ptosis, and lagophthalmos Signs of conjunctival involvement include injection and chemosis with papillary reaction, hyperemic mucopurulent conjunctivitis, and petechial hemorrhages 3. Chronic stage: Cornea and anterior segment: punctuate epithelial keratitis and pseudodendrites, nummular stromal keratitis, disciform stromal keratitis, neurotrophic keratopathy corneal neovascularization, lipid extravasation and opacification diminished corneal sensation, corneal ulceration, eye perforation, uveitis, secondary glaucoma Posterior segment: Acute optic neuritis, orbital phlegmon, superior orbital fissure syndrome necrotizing retinopathy and blindness Cranial nerves: Additional compromise includes involvement of the iris, the retina, and the optic nerve, motor palsies of the third, fourth, and sixth, diplopia Late complications: Postherpetic neuralgia in 20% of the patients, higher in the elderly or in patients with involvement beyond the skin	Complete medical history Ophthalmologic examination

	Malignant external otitis [1, 28–30]	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* *Proteus mirabilis* *Klebsiella oxytoca* *Pseudomonas cepacia* *Staphylococcus epidermidis* *Candida* *Aspergillus fumigatus* Polymicrobial infections	Three clinical stages: 1. Infection of the external auditory canal and adjacent soft tissues 2. Extension of infection with osteitis of skull base and temporal bone 3. Dissemination to intracranial structures, neck spaces, and large blood vessels Major obligatory signs: Unrelenting pain, otorrhea, edema, granulations, microabscesses Minor or occasional: Hearing loss, pain at the temporomandibular joint, cellulitis osteomyelitis of the skull base Cranial nerve palsies: Common: facial, glossopharyngeal, vagal, spinal accessory Less common: hypoglossal Rare: trigeminal, abducens, optic	Clinical examination Ear swab culture Positive technetium (^{99}TC) scan of failure of local treatment after more than 1 week Computed tomography Magnetic resonance imaging to assess progression and resolution Culture of drainage material Biopsy from the infection site Histological examination shows non-specific inflammation and hyperplasia of squamous epithelium
	Periodontal infections [31, 32]	Most associated pathogens are indigenous to the oral cavity, but possible superinfecting microorganism may also inhabit periodontal pockets Lesions usually contain a constellation of pathogens, mostly Gram-negative anaerobic but also Gram-negative facultative rods	Pain, gingival swelling	Oral examination
	Oral candidiasis [33]	*Candida albicans*, *Pichia*, Trichosporon, *Geotrichum*	May be asymptomatic Sore throat, dysphagia White patches on the surface of the oral cavity Untreated candidiasis may lead to chronic hyperplastic candidiasis: candidal leukoplakia	Dental examination
	Rhino-orbital or rhinocerebral sinusitis [32–36]	*Rhizopus*, *Mucor*, and *Absidia* species	Preseptal or orbital cellulitis: Facial or ocular pain, fever, headache, nasal discharge, sinus pain Facial erythema or cyanosis Subperiosteal or orbital abscess: Perinasal swelling, edema, proptosis, chemosis, and even blindness Facial numbness from damage to sensory branches of the fifth cranial nerve Black, necrotic eschar on the palate or nasal mucosa, turbinate destruction Intracranial complications: Epidural and subdural abscesses, necrosis of frontal lobes, cavernous and sagittal sinus thrombosis Clinical meningitis is rare	Clinical examination, culturing, magnetic resonance, histopathological evidence of fungal invasion of tissue

(continued)

Table 44.2 (continued)

Respiratory system	Influenza [37, 38]	Type A influenza viruses: H1N1 and H3N2	Six times more frequent in patients with diabetes Wide range of manifestations, including (1) asymptomatic, (2) conjunctivitis, (3) influenza-like illness, (4) viral pneumonia, (5) acute respiratory distress syndrome, (6) respiratory failure, (7) multi-organ failure Sudden onset Fever, cough, malaise, wheezing, pulmonary rales, respiratory failure	Normal or decreased leukocyte count Lymphopenia and thrombocytopenia, high levels of C-reactive protein Chest radiography: ground-glass opacities and consolidation Confirmatory tests for influenza H1N1 including real-time or reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction
	Community-acquired pneumonia [39–51]	Outpatient: *Streptococcus pneumoniae* *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* *Chlamydia pneumoniae* *Klebsiella pneumoniae* *Legionella pneumophila* *Haemophilus influenzae* Respiratory viruses Inpatient, non-intensive care unit *Streptococcus pneumoniae* *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* *Chlamydia pneumoniae* *Haemophilus influenzae* *Legionella* sp. Aspiration Intensive care unit *Streptococcus pneumoniae* *Staphylococcus aureus* *Legionella pneumophila* Gram-negative bacilli *Haemophilus influenzae*	Cough, fever, dyspnea, focal chest signs, respiratory failure Prediction rule for diagnosis: Rhinorrhea −2 Sore throat −1 Night sweats 1 Myalgia 1 Sputum 1 Respiratory rate >25 breaths per minute 2 Temperature ≥100 °F (37.8 °C) 2 Positive likelihood ratio: 3 points, 14.0; 1 point, 5.0; −1 point, 1.5; 0.2 point, ≤1	Clinical examination, chest radiography Pathogens are not detected in half of pneumonia episodes Clinical indications for extensive diagnostic testing include (1) intensive care unit admission, (2) failure of outpatient antibiotic therapy, (3) cavitary infiltrates, (4) leucopenia, (5) alcoholism, (6) chronic liver disease, (7) obstructive/structural lung disease, (8) recent travel, (9) positive *Legionella* urinary antigen result, (10) positive urinary antigen pneumococcal result, (11) pleural effusion

	Pulmonary tuberculosis [39, 52–55]	*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*	Fever, night sweats, weight loss, cough, sputum, hemoptysis Patients with tuberculosis and diabetes are reported to be older and heavier and more likely to be male	Chest radiography usually shows more lung cavities and parenchymal lesions in patients with diabetes than patients without diabetes, Sputum microscopy and culture: bacilloscopy from two samples collected at the same visit Xpert MTB/RIF: *M. tuberculosis* PCR
	Pulmonary coccidioidomycosis [56]	*Coccidioides immitis*, *Coccidioides posadasii*	Asymptomatic or mild respiratory illness in most cases Patients with diabetes may present with diffuse pneumonia Symptoms of severe illness include fever, malaise Pneumonia, chronic structural lung disease or cardiopulmonary disease, respiratory distress syndrome Improvement is slow in these cases	Chest radiography showing segmental or lobar consolidations, hilar or mediastinal adenopathy, pleural effusions, residual nodules, cavities and chronic infiltrates Definitive diagnosis is serological, by means of immunodiffusion to detect immunoglobulin G and IgM-specific antibodies Complement fixation tests for IgG-specific antibodies are useful in immunocompetent patients
	Pulmonary mucormycosis [33–36]	*Rhizopus*, *Mucor*	Pneumonia refractory to antibacterials Hemoptysis Multiple mycotic pulmonary artery aneurisms and pseudoaneurysms, bronchial obstruction, asymptomatic solitary nodules Endobronchial lesions with resulting obstruction of major airways or erosion into pulmonary blood vessels Less common complications include mycetomas in pre-existing lung cavities or slowly necrotizing pneumonia, hypersensitivity syndromes, and allergic alveolitis	Computed tomography Histopathology
Abdomen	Acute emphysematous cholecystitis [5, 57, 58]	*Clostridium perfringens* *Escherichia coli* *Bacteroides fragilis*	Fever, right upper quadrant abdominal pain, vomiting, jaundice, peritonitis, septic shock, sepsis	Radiography Computed tomography
	Pyogenic liver abscess [59–61]	Invasive *Klebsiella pneumoniae* serotypes K1 and K2	Fever, chills, and abdominal pain; nausea and vomiting Higher rates of cryptogenic etiology, gas-forming nature, thrombocytopenia, growth of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in blood cultures, metastatic infection and bacteremia in patients with diabetes Lower rates of right upper quadrant pain, biliary origin	Computed tomography Isolation of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* from blood or liver abscess Multiplex PCR
	Psoas and spinal epidural abscess [62, 63]	Most frequent: *Staphylococcus aureus* but also *Escherichia coli*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *Enterobacter*, and *Klebsiella*	May be primary, from hematogenous spread from an occult source, or secondary, by spreading from contiguous anatomical structures Back pain, in the flank in the buttock or in the leg, fever, malaise	Leukocytosis Computed tomography

(continued)

Table 44.2 (continued)

Genitourinary tract	Asymptomatic bacteriuria [64, 65]	*Escherichia coli* *Staphylococcus saprophyticus* *Enterococcus* sp. *Candida*	Asymptomatic	Urine examination and culture
	Candiduria [66]	*Candida* sp.	Frequently asymptomatic Rare complications include prostatitis and epididymo-orchitis	Clinical examination Urinary dipstick, microscopy, urinary culture
	Acute pyelonephritis [64, 65, 67–69]	Bacterial: *Escherichia coli* Fungal: *Candida* sp.	Presentation of symptoms is variable, ranging from fever, malaise, costovertebral angle pain and tenderness, urgency, and dysuria to intense pain, nausea, vomiting, sepsis, and septic shock in severe cases	Clinical examination Urinary dipstick, microscopy A quantitative count of $\geq 10^3$ colony forming units per mL in the urinary culture Pyuria
	Emphysematous pyelonephritis [69]	*Escherichia coli* *Klebsiella pneumoniae* *Proteus mirabilis* *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* *Citrobacter* *Candida*	Fever, chills, abdominal and flank pain, nausea, vomiting, dysuria, pyuria Associated with poor prognosis: thrombocytopenia, mental status changes, proteinuria	Renal ultrasound, computed tomography
	Perinephric abscess [69, 70]	Common: *Escherichia coli*, *Enterobacter* sp., *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Serratia* sp., *Citrobacter* spp. Less frequent: *Clostridium* spp. *Bacteroides*, *Actinomyces* spp., *Corynebacterium urealyticum* Tuberculosis should always be considered *Proteus mirabilis* in infected calculi	Chronic presentation: Persisting urinary infection, urine culture positive for *Proteus* spp. Flank tenderness, localized rigidity and fullness, scoliosis and palpable mass in some cases Signs in advanced stages: Anemia, malaise empyema, psoas abscess, or pyonephrosis necessitans Acute: Chills interspersed with high fever, loin and flank tenderness, history of bacterial skin infection	Renal ultrasound, computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging
	Bacterial cystitis [64, 65, 68, 69]	*Escherichia coli*	May be asymptomatic More frequent in patients treated with sodium-glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitors Urgency, dysuria, fever	Medical history Urinalysis, urine culture
	Fungal cystitis [66]	*Candida albicans*	Severe urgency, frequency and nocturia Sterile pyuria, microhematuria	Medical history Urine examination and culture

	Emphysematous cystitis [71]	More frequent: *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae* *Enterobacter aerogenes*, *Proteus mirabilis*, *Streptococcus* sp. Less common: *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Candida albicans*, *Clostridium perfringens*, *Enterococcus faecalis*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Clostridium welchii*, *Candida tropicalis*, *Aspergillus fumigatus*	From asymptomatic (7%) to severe sepsis Common symptoms: abdominal pain (80%) and gross hematuria (60%) Less common: fever (30%–50%), pneumaturia, dysuria, urinary frequency and urgency (50%)	Clinical examination: history of neurogenic bladder, complicated urinary tract infections, bladder outlet obstruction Urine examination and culture Blood culture Plain film of the abdomen showing curvilinear areas of increased radiolucency delineating the bladder wall and intraluminal gas Computed tomography
	Vulvovaginal candidiasis [32, 72–77]	*Candida albicans*, *Candida glabrata*, *Candida tropicalis*	May be asymptomatic Risk in patients treated with sodium-glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitors: 3–5 higher Acute pruritus, vaginal discharge, vaginal soreness, irritation, vulvar burning, dyspareunia, dysuria, odor, erythema, swelling of the labia and vulva	Medical history Clinical examination of vaginal secretions including culture and wet mount, KOH microscopy, gram stain, Whiff test, pH measurement
	Balanoposthitis [78]	*Candida glabrata*, *Candida albicans*, *Candida tropicalis* Streptococci, Staphylococci, anaerobic bacteria, *Trichomonas vaginalis*, *Mycoplasma genitalis*, and herpes simplex virus have also been associated	More frequent in uncircumcised men and in patients treated with sodium-glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitors Balanitis involves inflammation of the glans penis; posthitis is defined as inflammation of the prepuce	Medical history Physical examination
	Necrotizing fasciitis [1, 5, 13]	*S. pyogenes* *Clostridium* sp.	Pain, erythema, crepitation, bullous skin lesions Involvement of skin, subcutaneous tissue, and superficial fascia	Medical history Clinical examination Plain radiography, computed tomography, or magnetic resonance imaging of the affected area Biopsy, gram stain, and culture

(continued)

Table 44.2 (continued)

	Fournier's gangrene [79]	Mixed aerobes and anaerobes including *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Bacteroides fragilis*, *Streptococcus*, *Enterococcus*, *Clostridium*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Proteus* Uncommon: *Candida*, *Lactobacillus gasseri*	Male/female ratio: 10 to 1 Sudden pain and swelling in the scrotum Purulence or wound discharge, crepitation, fluctuance, prostration, fever Necrotizing fasciitis of the external genitalia Localized tenderness and wounds in the genitalia and perineum Fetid drainage and sloughing in affected sites Sepsis, multi-organ failure	Clinical examination Imaging rarely necessary to ascertain extension
Upper and lower extremities, skin and appendages	Hand ulceration and infection, "tropical diabetic hand syndrome" [80, 81]	*Staphylococcus* sp.	Underreported, very few physicians are aware of its existence, resulting in late diagnosis and proper treatment Largely reported in African countries but also in the United States More frequent in patients living in tropical and coastal areas History of trauma including mild abrasions, lacerations, and insect bites; poor glycemic control, delayed presentation Clinical presentation variable, ranging from localized swelling, cellulitis, and exudate, with or without ulceration, progressive hand sepsis and gangrene	Clinical examination Wound swab and culture
	Cutaneous zygomycosis [34, 35]	*Rhizopus* sp.	Single, painful area of erythema, induration, and cellulitis Portals of entry include contaminated wounds, traumatic wounds, dressings, burns, and surgical sites Lesions secondary to trauma rapidly develop necrosis and extension to subcutaneous tissues, similar to ecthyma	Clinical examination Skin biopsy
	Cellulitis [1, 5, 13, 82–86]	*Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, gram negatives, and anaerobes less common	Painful, erythematous infection of the dermis and subcutaneous tissues presenting with warmth, edema and advancing borders Fever and leukocytosis Most common sites include legs and digits, the face, feet, hands, the torso, the neck, and buttocks	Biopsy and histology examination
	Foot ulcer infections [85–88]	Usually polymicrobial, including *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Proteus* spp., *Escherichia coli*, *Peptostreptococcus* sp., *Veillonella* sp., *Bacteroides* sp., *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*	Contaminating ulcers in the plantar aspect of the foot, tip of the toe, lateral to fifth metatarsal Presence of purulence or at least ≥2 classic symptoms or signs of inflammation: erythema, edema, warmth, tenderness, pain, or induration In case of neuropathy, secondary signs include discolored granulation tissue, foul odor, non-purulent discharges, delayed wound healing	Culture preferably from tissue specimens rather than swabs Deep tissue sampling; curettage or tissue scraping from the base of the ulcer Gram staining and microscopy examination

	Herpes zoster [87, 88]	Varicella zoster virus	Odds ratio in patients with diabetes: 1.20 (CI 1.17–1.22) Localized pain and paresthesia followed by erythematous macules or papules coalescing into grouped vesicular lesions or bullae usually in one dermatomal distribution, and unilateral Pustules and crusting afterward Complete healing up to 4 weeks Most common sites are the thoracic nerves and the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve Systemic symptoms include fever, headache, malaise, and fatigue	Clinical examination PCR testing for viral DNA from fluid from skin lesions Direct fluorescent antibody testing on scrapings from active lesions
	Cutaneous zygomycosis [34, 35]	*Rhizopus* and *Mucor* sp.	Single, painful area of erythema, induration, and cellulitis Portals of entry include contaminated wounds, minor trauma (insect bites, tattooing), dressings, burns, and surgical sites Lesions secondary to trauma rapidly develop necrosis and extension to subcutaneous tissues, similar to ecthyma	Clinical examination Skin biopsy
	Tinea pedis, intertrigo [32]	*Candida*	Itching and scaling of the affected skin Plantar or intertriginal fissures Paronychial inflammation of the edge surrounding skin	Clinical examination Fungal culturing of skin samples
	Onychomycosis [32, 89, 90]	Dermatophytes: *Trichophyton rubrum*, *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* Non-dermatophytes: *Candida* sp.	Dystrophic, thick, brittle, and discolored nails, distal onycholysis, subungual hyperkeratosis, thickening of the nail bed and nail plate	Fungal culturing of samples from nail plates or subungual debris, direct microscopy Histopathological examination
Hospital-acquired infections [1, 5, 13, 33, 65]				
Local	Postoperative wound infections [1]	*Staphylococcus aureus*	7.7 higher risk Mortality related to time with diabetes, glycemic control at hospital admission and A1c level Postoperative infections have been described in multiple surgical settings, including cardiothoracic, general, orthopedic, and vascular	Clinical examination Swab or biopsy examination
Systemic	Fungemia [33]	*Candida albicans* *Aspergillus fumigates* *Candida glabrata*	Associated with disruption of skin barriers including injections or intravascular access	Clinical suspicion, isolation, and identification of pathogens by culturing and histopathology
	Mycosis in hemodialysis patients [33]	*Candida* spp.	High risk in patients with onychomycosis	Clinical suspicion, isolation, and identification of pathogens by culturing and histopathology
	Urinary tract infection in post-renal transplant patients [65]	*Escherichia coli*	Prevalence: 25%–47%, higher risk in the first year posttransplant Additional risk factors include indwelling devices, immunosuppressive therapy, and urologic abnormalities May be asymptomatic or present with graft tenderness	Clinical examination, urine examination, and culture
	Mycosis in posttransplant patients, including the kidney and pancreas [33]	*Candida* spp. *Cryptococcus neoformans*	May be asymptomatic	Clinical examination Blood culture

Table 44.3 Empirical selection of antimicrobial therapy and dose in adults

Infection	First choice	Alternate choice(s)
Herpes zoster ophthalmicus [24–27]	Acyclovir, 800 mg PO five times daily/7–10 days	Valacyclovir 1000 mg PO three times daily/7–10 days Famciclovir, 500 mg PO/three times a day/7–10 days
Malignant external otitis (MEO) [1, 28–30]	Ciprofloxacin, 1.5 g IV/day, plus ceftazidime 2 g IV/8 hours/10 weeks	Itraconazole, 200 mg PO, or voriconazole 200 mg PO daily/6 weeks, for MEO caused by *Aspergillosis*
Periodontal infections [31, 32]	Tetracycline, 250 mg PO/6 hours or 500 mg PO/bid Clarithromycin, 500 mg PO/day	Azithromycin, 500 mg PO/3 days Amoxicillin, 500 mg PO/bid/10 days Metronidazole, 250 mg PO/6–8 hours/10 days or 500 mg PO/8 hours/10 days
Oral candidiasis [33]	Nystatin, 400,000–600,000 units PO/4 times a day after meals/7–14 days	Fluconazole, 100–200 mg PO once daily/7–14 days after clinical improvement Itraconazole, 200 mg PO day/7–14 days
Rhino-orbital or rhinocerebral sinusitis [34–36]	Amphotericin B, 0.25–0.3 mg/kg IV/24 hours, increasing by 5–10 mg/day to a final dose of 0.5–0.7 mg/kg/day during 12 weeks	Posaconazole, oral solution, 800 mg in 4 divided doses/day during 12 weeks Posaconazole, oral solution, 800 mg in 4 divided doses/day Isavuconazole, 200 mg orally or IV, loading dose, 200 mg/8 hours/2 days; 200 mg/day afterward during 12 weeks
Influenza [37, 38]	Neuraminidase inhibitors Laninamivir one single inhalation of 20 mg for children <10 years, one single inhalation of 40 mg for individuals ≥10 years Oseltamivir 75 mg/12 hours/5 days	M2 inhibitors Amantadine 100 mg/12 h/5 days Rimantadine 100 mg/12 h/5 days
Community-acquired pneumonia [39–51]	Outpatients: β-lactam (i.e., amoxicillin 875–1000 mg/clavulanate, 62.5–125 mg/12 hours) plus macrolide (i.e., clarithromycin, 500 mg/day/5–10 days or azithromycin, 500 mg/day/3 days) within 4–8 hours after diagnosis Inpatients, non-ICU: Respiratory fluoroquinolone (i.e., moxifloxacin or levofloxacin) Inpatients, ICU: A β-lactam (cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, ampicillin-sulbactam) plus azithromycin or respiratory fluoroquinolone (i.e., moxifloxacin, levofloxacin) For penicillin allergic patients: a respiratory fluoroquinolone and aztreonam	Respiratory fluoroquinolone: Moxifloxacin, 400 mg PO once daily/7–14 days Levofloxacin, 500 mg PO once daily/10–14 days or 750 mg once daily/5–7 days or 750 mg IV/24 hours/7 days
Pulmonary tuberculosis [39, 52–55]	Short therapy for isoniazid-sensitive TB: Isoniazid plus rifampicin for 6 months, plus ethambutol and pyrazinamide for the first 2 months	Long therapy for isoniazid mono-resistant TB: Rifampicin, ethambutol, and pyrazinamide for the first 6 months or for 9 months with rifampicin, ethambutol, and pyrazinamide in the intensive phase and for 2 additional months with rifampicin and ethambutol in the continuation phase
Pulmonary coccidioidomycosis [56]	Fluconazole, 800–1200 mg/day Inability of azoles to eradicate the fungus results in the need to continue treatment indefinitely as suppressive rather than curative therapy	Amphotericin B, 5.0 up to 7.5–10.0 mg/kg/day IV during 12 weeks Because of multiple adverse events, it should only be used in patients with refractory disease
Pulmonary mucormycosis [34–36]	Amphotericin B, 5.0 up to 7.5–10.0 mg/kg/day IV during 12 weeks	Posaconazole, oral solution, 800 mg in 4 divided doses/day during 12 weeks Posaconazole, oral solution, 800 mg in 4 divided doses/day Isavuconazole, 200 mg orally or IV, loading dose, 200 mg/8 hours/2 days; 200 mg/day afterward during 12 weeks

Table 44.3 (continued)

Infection	First choice	Alternate choice(s)
Acute emphysematous cholecystitis [5]	Ampicillin-sulbactam, 3 g/IV/6 hours	Ampicillin 2 g/IV/6 hours plus gentamicin 5 mg/kg/24 h plus clindamycin 900 mg/IV/8 hours or Ceftriaxone 1–2 g IM or IV/24 hours plus clindamycin or metronidazole, loading dose 15 mg/kg followed by 7.5 mg/kg IV/6 hours
Pyogenic liver abscess [60, 61]	Multiple combination therapies have been used, including Aminopenicillins Antipseudomonal penicillins First-generation, second-generation, and third-generation cephalosporins Carbapenems Fluoroquinolones Aminoglycosides Metronidazole	
Psoas and spinal epidural abscess [13, 62, 63]	Nafcillin, 1000 mg IV/4 hours; oxacillin, 1000 mg/day IV every 4–6 hours; or cefazolin, 100 mg/kg/day IM or IV/8 hours	Ciprofloxacin 750 mg/12 hours for 6 weeks
Asymptomatic bacteriuria [1, 13, 64]	Screening and treatment unwarranted	
Asymptomatic candiduria [66]	Fluconazole, 400–800 mg/day	Caspofungin 70 mg IV loading dose → 50 mg/day Anidulafungin 200 mg/kf IV loading dose → 100 mg/day Voriconazole 6 mg/kg IV/12 hours; afterward, 4 mg/kg/12 hours Amphotericin B 0.6–0.7 mg/kg/day ± flucytosine 25 mg/kg/6 hours/7–10 days
Bacterial pyelonephritis [67–69]	Uncomplicated: Ciprofloxacin, 500 mg/bid/7 days, or Tobramycin, 3–5 mg/kg IV/24 hours/3 days Complicated: penicillins and aminoglycosides as first line therapy; combination therapy as indicated	Uncomplicated: Levofloxacin, 250–500 mg PO/day/10 days Ceftriaxone, 1 g/IV/24 hours/3 days Complicated: penicillins and aminoglycosides as first line therapy; combination therapy as indicated
Emphysematous pyelonephritis	Prolonged antimicrobial therapy (i.e., trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, 160/800 mg/bid) for weeks or months plus additional surgical measures (see Table 44.5)	
Bacterial cystitis [64, 65, 67–69]	Uncomplicated: Short course of antimicrobial therapy Amoxicillin, 500 mg/tid/7 days; amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, 500 mg/tid/7 days; cephalexin, 250–500 mg/tid/7 days; or norfloxacin, 400 mg/bid/3 days Complicated infections: Prolonged antimicrobial therapy	Uncomplicated: Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole,1600/800 mg/bid/3 days Nitrofurantoin, 50–100 mg/qid/7 days Complicated:
Fungal cystitis [66]	Fluconazole, 400 mg/day/14 days	Flucytosine, 25 mg/kg/6 hours/14 days, or amphotericin B 0.5–0.7 mg/kg/day/14 days
Perinephric abscess [69, 70]	Nafcillin, 1000 mg IV/4 hours; oxacillin, 1000 mg/day IV every 4–6 hours; or cefazolin, 100 mg/kg/day IM or IV/8 hours	Oxacillin, 1000 mg/day IV every 4–6 hours, or cefazolin, 100 mg/kg/day IM or IV/8 hours
Emphysematous cystitis [71]	Fluoroquinolone (i.e., levofloxacin, 250 mg IV/24 hours/10 days or 750 mg IV/5 days; moxifloxacin, 400 mg PO or IV once daily/5–14 days; or ceftriaxone, 1–2 g IM or IV/24 hours/10–14 days)	Carbapenem (i.e., cilastatin/imipenem, 500 mg IV/6 hours or 1000 mg IV/8 hours) or aminoglycoside (i.e., gentamicin, 3 mg/kg IM or IV/8 hours/day/10 days)

(continued)

Table 44.3 (continued)

Infection	First choice	Alternate choice(s)
Vulvovaginal candidiasis [75, 76]	Uncomplicated: Clotrimazole, 200 mg intravaginally/3 days Miconazole, 2 ovules at bedtime/3 days Butoconazole, 500 mg vaginal tablet single dose Recurrent: Fluconazole, 200 mg/8 hours/1 week If symptom-free, fluconazole, 200 mg once a week from weeks 2–8, 200 mg every 2 weeks from months 3–6, and 200 mg every 4 weeks from months 7–12	Uncomplicated: Fluconazole, 150 mg, single dose Recurrent: Fluconazole, 150 mg/week/6 months
Balanoposthitis [78]	Clotrimazole, 1%–2% cream until symptoms subside	Patients with severe symptoms: Fluconazole, 200 mg single dose
Necrotizing fasciitis [1, 5]	Penicillin G, 24 million U IV/day plus clindamycin, 900 mg IV/8 hours, plus gentamicin, 5 mg/kg IV/day, or meropenem, 1 g IV/8 hours, plus clindamycin, 600 mg IV/8 hours, or lincomycin 600 mg IV/8 hours	Ampicillin-sulbactam 1.5–3.0 g IV/6–8 hours or ceftriaxone, 2 g IV/24 hours, plus clindamycin, 900 mg IV/8 hours
Fournier's gangrene [79]	Triple antibiotic therapy including (1) a broad-spectrum penicillin or third-generation cephalosporin, (2) an aminoglycoside, (3) metronidazole or clindamycin	Alternatively, triple antibiotic therapy including (1) a broad-spectrum penicillin or third-generation cephalosporin, (2) an aminoglycoside, (3) chloramphenicol Vancomycin in patients infected with methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* Amphotericin B in patients with fungal infections
Diabetic hand syndrome [80, 81]	Triple antibiotic therapy to cover *Staphylococcus*, Gram-negative organisms, and anaerobes, including (1) third-generation cephalosporin, (2) aminoglycoside, (3) metronidazole or clindamycin	Second-choice therapy based on results of wound swab and culture
Cellulitis [82–86]	Amoxicillin-clavulanate First-generation cephalosporin Macrolides Fluoroquinolone Ceftriaxone	Third-generation cephalosporin with or without aminoglycoside
Foot ulcer infections [1, 85, 86]	Mild to moderate: Amoxicillin-clavulanate, 875/125 mg PO/12 hours, or ampicillin/sulbactam, 3 g IV/6 hours Severe: Ticarcillin-clavulanate, 0.1–0.3 g IV/ hours, or meropenem-cilastatin 500 mg/8 hours	Mild to moderate: Cephalexin, 500 mg PO/6 hours, plus metronidazole, 400 mg PO/8–12 hours, or ciprofloxacin, 500 PO/12 hours, plus clindamycin, 300–450 mg PO/8 hours or 600 mg IV/8 hours Severe: Ciprofloxacin, 750 mg VO/12 hours plus clindamycin, 600 mg IV/8 hours or lincomycin, 600 mg IV/8 hours
Herpes zoster [87, 88]	Acyclovir, 800 mg 5 times a day, 7–10 days	Famciclovir, 500 mg PO/7 days Valacyclovir, 1000 mg/tid/7 days
Onychomycosis [89, 90]	Terbinafine, 250 mg/day/12 weeks Use with caution in patients with liver or kidney disease Fluconazole, 150, 300, or 450 mg/ week/6 months	Itraconazole, 200 mg/bid/1 week on, 3 weeks of/12 weeks Contraindicated in patients with congestive heart failure
Cutaneous zygomycosis [33]	Amphotericin B, 5.0 up to 7.5–10.0 mg/ kg/day IV during 12 weeks	Posaconazole, oral solution, 800 mg in 4 divided doses/day during 12 weeks Posaconazole, oral solution, 800 mg in 4 divided doses/day Isavuconazole, 200 mg orally or IV, loading dose, 200 mg/8 hours/2 days; 200 mg/day afterward during 12 weeks

Table 44.4 Choice of antimicrobial therapy by microorganisms and dose in adults

	First line, dose and duration	Second line, dose and duration		
Microorganisms and references	Oral	Intramuscular or intravenous	Oral	Intramuscular or intravenous
Bacteria				
Streptococcus pneumoniae [1, 39–41]	β-lactam (amoxicillin, 500–875 mg) plus macrolide (clarithromycin, 500 mg/day) within 4–8 hours after diagnosis	Benzylpenicillin 1.2 g IV/6 h Cefuroxime, 750–1500 mg IV/8 hours; for life-threatening infections, 1.5 g IV/6 hours Cefotaxime, for uncomplicated infections: 1 g IM or IV/12 hours for complicated infections, 2 g IV/6–8 hours/7–10 days Ceftriaxone, 1–2 g IM or IV/day/7–10 days, depending on clinical response	Respiratory fluoroquinolone: Moxifloxacin, 400 mg PO once daily/7–14 days Gemifloxacin, levofloxacin, 500 mg PO once daily/10–14 days or 750 mg once daily/5–7 days or 750 mg IV/24 hours/7 days	Vancomycin, 25–30 loading dose for seriously ill patients, then 15–20 mg/kg IV/8–12 hours in combination FDA-approved labeling: 2 g/day IV divided either as 500 mg IV/6 hours or 1 g IV/12 hours Linezolid, 600 mg IV/12 hours/10–14 days Duration of treatment is 7–21 days for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
Haemophilus influenzae	Amoxicillin-clavulanate, 500–875 mg/8–12 h	Respiratory fluoroquinolone: Moxifloxacin, 400 mg PO once daily/7–14 days Levofloxacin, 500 mg PO once daily/10–14 days or 750 mg once daily/5–7 days	Doxycycline, mg 100 mg/12 h Azithromycin, 200 mg/d Clarithromycin, 500 mg/d	Respiratory fluoroquinolone: Levofloxacin, 750 mg IV/24 hours/7 days
Staphylococcus aureus	Dicloxacillin, 125–250 mg PO/6 hours for moderate infections, 250–500 mg PO/6 hours for severe infections	Nafcillin, 500 mg IV/4 hours for moderate infections, 1000 mg IV/4 hours for severe infections Oxacillin, 1 g/day IV every 4–6 hours Cefazolin, 250–500 mg/kg/ IM or IV/8 hours for mild to moderate infections; 100 mg/kg/day IM or IV divided every 8 hours for severe infections	Clindamycin, 150–450 mg PO/6 hours	Clindamycin, 600 mg IM or IV/6–12 hours up to 900 mg/8–12 hours Vancomycin, 25–30 loading dose for seriously ill patients, then 15–20 mg/kg IV/8–12 hours in combination FDA-approved labeling: 2 g/day IV divided either as 500 mg IV/6 hours or 1 g IV/12 hours linezolid, 600 mg IV/12 hours/10–14 days
Mycoplasma pneumoniae	Clarithromycin, 500 mg/day	Respiratory fluoroquinolone: Moxifloxacin, 400 mg PO once daily/7–14 days Levofloxacin, 500 mg PO once daily/10–14 days or 750 mg once daily/5–7 days		
Mycobacterium tuberculosis [39, 51–54]	Short therapy for isoniazid-sensitive TB: Isoniazid plus rifampicin for 6 months, plus ethambutol and pyrazinamide for the first 2 months		Long therapy for isoniazid mono-resistant TB: Rifampicin, ethambutol, and pyrazinamide for the first 6 months or for 9 months with rifampicin, ethambutol, and pyrazinamide in the intensive phase and for 2 additional months with rifampicin and ethambutol in the continuation phase	

(continued)

Table 44.4 (continued)

	First line, dose and duration	Second line, dose and duration		
Legionella sp.	Respiratory fluoroquinolone, i.e., moxifloxacin, 400 mg PO once daily/7–10 days, or levofloxacin, 750 mg PO once daily/5–10 days		Azithromycin, 1000 mg PO/day followed by 500 mg/day/10 days, or doxycycline, 100 mg PO/day	
Klebsiella pneumoniae		Ertapenem, 1 g IM or IV/24 hours/10–14 days Imipenem-cilastatin, 1 g IV/6–8 hours Meropenem, 1 g IV/8 hours		Avibactam/ceftazidime, 2.5 g (2 g ceftazidime, 0.5 g avibactam) IV/8 hours/7–14 days
Escherichia coli		Ertapenem, 1 g IM or IV/24 hours/10–14 days Imipenem-cilastatin, 1 g IV/6–8 hours Meropenem, 1 g IV/8 hours		Aminoglycosides, i.e., amikacin, 15 mg/kg/day IM or IV/8–12 hours; gentamicin, 3 mg/kg IM or IV/day divided into three doses/10 days; or tobramycin, 3–6 mg/kg IM or IV/day divided into 2–3 doses
Acinetobacter		Ertapenem, 1 g IM or IV/24 hours/10–14 days Imipenem-cilastatin, 1 g IV/6–8 hours Meropenem, 1 g IV/8 hours		Aminoglycosides, i.e., amikacin, 15 mg/kg/day IM or IV/8–12 hours; gentamicin, 3 mg/kg IM or IV/day divided into three doses; or tobramycin, 3–6 mg/kg IM or IV/day divided into 2–3 doses Third-generation cephalosporins, including Cefotaxime, 1–2 g IM or IV/12 hours Ceftriaxone 1–2 g IM or IV/24 hours Avibactam/ceftazidime, 2.5 g (2 g ceftazidime, 0.5 g avibactam) IV/8 hours Ampicillin-sulbactam, 1.5 g (1 g ampicillin and 0.5 g sulbactam) IM or IV/6 hours
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Levofloxacin, 250–750 mg PO/day	Cefepime, 0.5–1.0 g IM or IV; ciprofloxacin, 400 mg IV/12 hours; or aztreonam, 500–1000 mg IM or IV/8–12 hours Carbapenem, i.e., imipenem/cilastatin 500–1000 mg IV/6–8 hours or meropenem, 1 g IV/8 hours		Ticarcillin-clavulanate, 3.0 g IV/6 hours or third-generation cephalosporin, i.e., ceftazidime 2 g IV/8 hours plus aminoglycoside, i.e., gentamicin, 4–6 mg/kg IV day Ciprofloxacin, 1.5 g/day; levofloxacin, 500 mg IV/day; ticarcillin, 3.1 g (3 g ticarcillin and 0.1 g clavulanic acid) IV/4–6 hours; or piperacillin/tazobactam, 3.375 g (3 g piperacillin and 0.375 tazobactam) IV/6 hours
Fungi				
Rhizopus and *Mucor* [32–34]	Amphotericin B, 5 mg/kg/day IV during 12 weeks		Posaconazole, oral solution, 800 mg in 4 divided doses/day during 12 weeks for patients who cannot tolerate or nonresponders to amphotericin B	

Table 44.4 (continued)

	First line, dose and duration	Second line, dose and duration		
Candida	Oral: Nystatin 100,000 units/ml after meals Toenail: Terbinafine, 250 mg once daily/12 weeks	Toenail: Itraconazole, 200 mg once daily/12 weeks Topical: Ciclopirox, once daily application, avoiding washing for 8 hours after application Efinaconazole, once daily application for 48 weeks Tavaborole, once daily application for 48 weeks	Fluconazole 200 mg day/3 days	Itraconazole 200 mg day
Aspergillus		Amphotericin B 2 g day IV/3 weeks For invasive *Aspergillosis*	Voriconazole 200 mg day/6 weeks, for invasive *Aspergillosis*	
Histoplasma capsulatum	Itraconazole	Amphotericin B 2 g day IV/3 weeks		Amphotericin B 2 g day IV/3 weeks
Coccidioides [50]	Fluconazole, 800–1200 mg/day Warning: inability of azoles to eradicate the fungus results in the need to continue treatment indefinitely as suppressive rather than curative therapy	Amphotericin B 2 g day IV/3 weeks For invasive coccidioidomycosis	Voriconazole 200 mg day/6 weeks, for invasive coccidioidomycosis Posaconazole, oral solution, 800 mg in 4 divided doses/day during 12 weeks for patients who cannot tolerate or nonresponders to amphotericin B	
Viruses				
Influenza [37]	M2 inhibitors Amantadine 100 mg/12 h/5 days Rimantadine 100 mg/12 h/5 days Neuraminidase inhibitors Laninamivir one single inhalation of 20 mg for children <10 years, one single inhalation of 40 mg for individuals ≥10 years Oseltamivir 75 mg/12 hours/5 days			
Herpes zoster [26]	Acyclovir, 800 mg 5 times a day, 7–10 days In patients with persistent varicella DNA in the cornea, antiviral therapy may extend up to 30 days		Famciclovir, 500 mg 3 times a day, 7–10 days In patients with persistent varicella DNA in the cornea, antiviral therapy may extend up to 30 days Valacyclovir, 1 g 3 times a day, 7–10 days In patients with persistent varicella DNA in the cornea, antiviral therapy may extend up to 30 days	

antibacterials, antimycotics, and antivirals. Microorganisms showing increasing rates of antimicrobial resistance like *Pseudomonas* and *Acinetobacter* are effectively treated combining two antibiotics. Diabetic foot infections, skin and soft tissue infections, and periodontitis along with emphysematous cholecystitis often require polymicrobial cover, especially to include anaerobes.

Glycemic Control

Poor glycemic control, especially in the presence of infection, can lead to metabolic and infection-related complications. Insulin requirements may increase during infections. Insulin is an anabolic agent, and it should be the preferred drug for glycemic control in background of infection.

Source Control

Source control in the form of drainage or debridement of the infective focus can lead to reduction in the bacterial load helping to achieve better glycemic control and reduce the risk of complications. In addition to antimicrobials, complementary interventions for selected infections are presented in Table 44.5.

Table 44.5 Additional therapeutic measures and prognosis

Disease	Therapeutic measure	Prognosis
Herpes zoster ophthalmicus	Oral or topical corticosteroids Frequent artificial tears Monitoring for signs of secondary bacterial infection Prophylactic erythromycin ophthalmic ointment Analgesics in the acute phase and in patients with postherpetic neuralgia	Complications related to bad prognosis: Meningitis, brain abscess, dural sinus thrombophlebitis
Malignant external otitis [1, 5, 28–30]	Six weeks or longer of culture-directed antibiotic therapy, based on the 3–4-week period for bone revascularization Otolaryngology management Repeated debridement of the ear, the infratemporal fossa, or the skull base Radical mastoidectomy with facial nerve decompression	Reported mortality rates in recent series is 30% More aggressive strains and increasing antibiotic resistance are requiring multidrug and long-term antibiotic therapy with extended hospital stays Signs of disease progression and poor outcomes: Lack of glycemic control Cranial nerve involvement Extension to the jugular foramen and petrous apex Erythrocyte sedimentation rate C-reactive protein Causes of death: Meningitis, large vessel septic thrombophlebitis or rupture, septicemia, pneumonia, stroke Predictors of symptom resolution for fungal malignant external otitis: No surgical debridement Absence of facial paralysis *Aspergillus* as causative pathogen Absence of imaging findings Indicator of disease resolution: negative results by Ga-67 citrate scan
Periodontal infections [31]	Systemic antibiotics are important but only in addition to reducing the bacterial load with periodontal scaling and root planning	Because of increasing resistance, combinations of antibiotics are increasingly used
Oral candidiasis [32]	Glycemic control Oral hygiene Avoiding tobacco use	
Rhino-orbital mucormycosis [33–35]	Surgical debridement of infected tissue including removal of the palate, nasal cartilages, and orbit as soon as possible is crucial to prevent dissemination	Mortality rate: 25–62% Poor outcome predictors: dissemination, renal failure, inability to achieve source control, brain or cavernous sinus involvement, lack of response to antifungals
Influenza [36]	In addition to diabetes, higher risks of complications occur in children, the elderly, and pregnant	Worldwide mortality rate for influenza from subgroups H5N1 and H7N9 of influenza A virus: 53% and 39%

Table 44.5 (continued)

Disease	Therapeutic measure	Prognosis
Community-acquired pneumonia [41–50]	Recommended actions to improve the outcomes include (1) using a risk stratification tool like CURB-65 (confusion, urea >7 mmol/L, respiratory rate ≥ 30/min, low blood pressure, and older than 65), (2) procalcitonin to confirm diagnosis and assess treatment response, (3) outpatient treatment, (4) use of empirical antibiotic guidelines in accordance to local microbial etiology, (5) measuring time to achieve clinical stability, step-down to oral antibiotics, early physical therapy, patient and caregiver education, appropriate venous thromboembolism, prophylaxis Criteria to transition from intravenous to oral therapy: (1) absence of mental confusion, (2) ability to take oral medications, (3) hemodynamic stability (heart rate <100 beats/min, systolic blood pressure >90 mm Hg), (4) respiratory rate <25 breaths/min, (5) oxygen saturation >90% Administration of macrolides before beta-lactams is associated with a statistically significant decrease in mortality, even in hospitalized patients. Data from many countries show an increased prevalence of macrolide-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. For example, in the United Sates, the overall rate of macrolide-resistant *S. pneumoniae* is 50%. Nevertheless, resistance does not automatically mean treatment failure. Another important factor is the increasing awareness of respiratory viruses and atypical species as copathogens	Odds ratio for pneumonia: 1.5 Hazard ratio for pneumonia: 2.9 Risk of invasive pneumococcal disease: 1.4–4.6, especially in individuals younger than 40 years Odds ratio for bacteremia: 1.67 Hyperglycemia is independently associated with adverse outcomes in patients with community-acquired pneumonia Pre-existing diabetes and newly discovered hyperglycemia are associated with a higher risk of death, for several years. A pre-pneumonia diagnosis of diabetes is associated with a threefold increase in the risk of death up to 6 years after mild to moderate community-acquired pneumonia. Rather than disruption of the immune response, death may be related to worsening of pre-existing cardiovascular and kidney disease
Tuberculosis [39, 51–54]	Although treatment schedule can be as high 95%–98% under clinical trial conditions (directly observed therapy or DOT), high rates of nonadherence after 4 weeks of therapy (between 7% and 53.6%) are common. Therapeutic drug monitoring has been proposed to optimize treatment outcome and reduce drug resistance Drug-induced liver injury may be caused by isoniazid, rifampicin, or pyrazinamide, in the range of 5% to 33% Treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis includes (1) at least four drugs with proven or likely susceptibility; (2) a later generation fluoroquinolone (moxifloxacin, levofloxacin), plus an aminoglycoside (amikacin, kanamycin, capreomycin); (3) long duration of treatment (21–24 months); (4) oxazolidinones (linezolid) with monitoring for neuropathy and bone marrow toxicity, in patients with fluoroquinolone-resistant TB; (5) bedaquiline or delamanid for patients with toxicity or resistance to multidrug regimens; (6) psychological and economic support	Patients with diabetes are at a higher risk of developing active tuberculosis, drug-resistant disease, treatment failure, and mortality Compared with patients without diabetes, the risk of active tuberculosis is 1.55–3.59 higher Tuberculosis prevalence and incidence are more likely to increase in countries where diabetes prevalence has increased Death rates: for untreated smear-positive TB, 70%; for smear-negative TB, 20% Patients with diabetes and tuberculosis have (1) significantly higher rates of treatment failure and death and (2) higher risk of death during treatment and relapse following treatment and remain sputum positive 2–3 months after starting TB treatment. Infection and treatment for tuberculosis impair glycemic control and peripheral neuropathy in patients receiving isoniazid
Coccidioidomycosis [50]	Exogenous adjunctive interferon-γ has been used in patients with chronic coccidioidomycosis, in addition to antifungal therapy Nikkomycin has shown promise as a cure in murine models of infection	The disease is relatively benign in most cases but for others is debilitating and may be mortal Recurrence is possible in patients with benign disease Extrapulmonary disease occurs through hematogenous or lymphatic spread and may involve the meninges, skeleton, skin, joints, glandular tissue, peritoneum, liver, pancreas, pericardium, bone marrow, kidney, bladder, and male and female reproductive organs. In these cases treatment is prolonged, even for years with close follow-up for relapses
Emphysematous pyelonephritis [62–64]	Percutaneous drainage	Delayed nephrectomy if necessary, once the patient is stable
Psoas abscess [13, 62, 63]	Surgical drainage	Mortality 17%, for primary psoas abscess, 2.5%; for secondary psoas abscess, 18.9% Death largely related to comorbidities, delayed diagnosis, or inadequate therapy
Perinephric abscess [65]	Percutaneous drainage	Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in case of infective stone In patients with chronic abscess, nephrectomy

(continued)

Table 44.5 (continued)

Disease	Therapeutic measure	Prognosis
Fungal urinary tract infections [66]	Correct predisposing factors, including (1) removal of indwelling devices, (2) improving urinary tract drainage, (3) discontinuing systemic antibiotics, (4) treating underlying medical problems	Glycemic control is essential Strategies to reduce funguria include (1) adequate hydration, (2) hygiene, (3) vaginal estrogens
Emphysematous cystitis [71]	90% of cases are treated with medical treatment alone, 10% require medical and surgical intervention, including bladder drainage, surgical debridement, partial cystectomy, total cystectomy, or even nephrectomy	Death rate: 7–12% from septic shock or late presentation
Necrotizing fasciitis [1, 5]	Surgical debridement of necrotic tissue is essential for recovery	
Fournier's gangrene [79]	Early and aggressive surgical debridement improves survival Additional interventions include negative-pressure wound therapy, hyperbaric oxygen therapy, fecal and urinary diversion, and reconstructive surgery	Wide reported mortality rate: 4.0%–88.0%
Diabetic hand syndrome [80, 81]	Comprehensive management includes (1) hospitalization and hand elevation, (2) multiple intravenous antibiotics, (3) optimal glycemic control, (4) adequate and early surgical drainage, (5) prompt amputation if necessary, (6) rehabilitation	Life expectancy of high upper limb amputees may be lower, but the number of reported cases is low to be conclusive
Cellulitis [82]	Most cases improve within 1 day, but thickening of the debris requires parenteral antibiotics before improvement Adjunctive treatment includes cool compresses, analgesics, and immobilization of the affected extremity	Recurrent cellulitis can compromise venous or lymphatic circulation and result in dermal fibrosis, lymphedema, and epidermal thickening Prophylaxis with erythromycin, penicillin, or clindamycin is indicated in these cases
Foot ulcer infections [83, 85, 86]	For mild to moderate infections, antimicrobial therapy for 1–2 weeks is adequate Most severe infections and some moderate require parenteral antimicrobial therapy for 1–2 weeks with a switch to oral therapy according to clinical response Patients with osteomyelitis not undergoing resection require 6 weeks of antimicrobial therapy Patients with osteomyelitis undergoing resection require 1 week of antimicrobial therapy Urgent surgical intervention by certified specialists is necessary in case of deep abscess, compartment syndrome, and necrotizing soft tissue infections Surgical intervention is advisable in cases of osteomyelitis associated with spreading soft tissue infection, destroyed soft tissue envelope, progressive bone destruction, or bone protruding through an ulcer	Factors predicting healing include (1) absence of exposed bone, (2) palpable pedal pulses, (3) blood pressure in the toe >45 mmHg or >80 mmHg in the ankle, (4) peripheral white cell count <12,000/mm^3, (5) lower extremity transcutaneous oxygen tension >40 mmHg Failure to treat diabetes foot infections is associated with progressive tissue destruction, poor wound healing, amputation, sepsis, and death Beyond intervention, healthcare practitioners should focus on prevention in patients at high risk for diabetic foot ulcers
Herpes zoster [87, 88]	Complications include postherpetic neuralgia and secondary bacterial infections; less common complications are neurologic and include aseptic meningitis, peripheral motor neuropathy, transverse myelitis, acute or chronic encephalitis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, and stroke symptoms resulting from vasculitis of cerebral arteries	Postherpetic neuralgia is the most common complication; risk factors include advanced age and severity of rash and pain
Onychomycosis [89–91]	Nail lacquers are an attractive option and include 8% ciclopirox, once daily/48 weeks, and 5% amorolfine, once or twice weekly/6 months Unattached infected nail should be removed once a month Filing of excess horny material should be done by trained professionals Patients should file away loose nail material and trim nails as directed by podologists or every 7 days after weekly removal of medication with alcohol	Risk factors for *Candida* onychomycosis include peripheral vascular disease and female gender. Consider this diagnosis in patients with onycholysis, paronychia, or total dystrophic onychomycosis Onychomycosis is a significant predictor for the development of foot ulcers Rates of mycological cure are low: 31% with azoles, 57% with terbinafine

When to Refer

Any case which appears complex to the treating physician may be referred to a specialist. However priority referrals should be considered in case of diabetes complicating pregnancy, renal impairment, diabetic foot, and life-threatening invasive mucormycosis.

Conclusion

Awareness of micro- and macrovascular complications can help minimize the risk of infections and infection-related complications. Healthcare personnel need to be aware regarding unusual and severe forms of infection associated with diabetes mellitus. Empirical antibiotics are the same as with nondiabetics, but disease-associated complications should be anticipated and early. Immunization with influenza and pneumococcus is often recommended. Optimal glycemic control is essential for successful treatment of infections.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. This class of drugs is associated with a higher risk of pruritus vulvae/balanoposthitis:
   (a) SGLT2i
   (b) Pioglitazone
   (c) Biguanides
   (d) Sulfonylureas
2. This class of drugs has an anabolic effect and is a preferred agent for glycemic control in the background of infection:
   (a) Insulin
   (b) GLP1RA
   (c) DPP4i
   (d) Bromocriptine
3. This parasitic infection may protect against diabetes:
   (a) Helminthiasis
   (b) Malaria
   (c) Mucormycosis
   (d) Lichen planus
4. Hypoglycemia may occur in all of the following setting, except
   (a) Dengue fever
   (b) Malaria
   (c) Insulin use
   (d) Quinine use
5. Anaerobic bacterial coverage is indicated in all of the following settings except
   (a) Pyogenic meningitis
   (b) Lung abscess
   (c) Infected diabetic foot
   (d) Emphysematous pyelonephritis
6. The causative organism of otitis externa is
   (a) Klebsiella sp.
   (b) Proteus
   (c) Staphylococcus aureus
   (d) All of the above
7. This infection is not associated with a higher risk of diabetes:
   (a) Hepatitis A
   (b) Tuberculosis
   (c) HIV
   (d) Hepatitis C
8. This antimicrobial drug may precipitate hypoglycemia:
   (a) Gatifloxacin
   (b) Azithromycin
   (c) Metronidazole
   (d) Streptomycin
9. Historically, this antidiabetic drug was used for the management of influenza:
   (a) Metformin
   (b) Sulfonamides
   (c) Hydroxychloroquine
   (d) Rosiglitazone
10. Immunization is recommended in adults with diabetes for
    (a) Influenza
    (b) Gonococcus
    (c) Typhoid
    (d) All of the above

Correct Answers

1. (a) SGLT2i
2. (a) Insulin
3. (a) Helminthiasis
4. (a) Dengue fever
5. (a) Pyogenic meningitis
6. (d) All of the above
7. (a) Hepatitis A
8. (a) Gatifloxacin
9. (a) Metformin
10. (a) Influenza

References

1. Peleg AY, Weerarathna T, McCarthy JS, Davis TM. Common infections in diabetes: pathogenesis, management and relationship to glycemic control. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2007;23:3–13.
2. Flynn JM. The changing cause of death in diabetes mellitus. Am J Med Sci. 1935;189:157.
3. Drivsholm T, de Fine ON, Nielsen ABS. Symptoms, signs and complications in newly diagnosed type 2 diabetic patients, and their relationship to glycaemia, blood pressure and weight. Diabetologia. 2005;48:210–4.

4. Larkin JG, Frier BM, Ireland JT. Diabetes mellitus and infection. Postgrad Med J. 1985;61:233–7.
5. Joshi N, Caputo GM, Weitekamp MR, Karchmer AW. Infections in patients with diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 1999;341:1906–12.
6. Shah BR, Hux JE. Quantifying the risk of infectious diseases for people with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2003;26:510–3.
7. Knapp S. Diabetes and infection: is there a link? A mini-review. Gerontology. 2012;59:99–104.
8. Pearson-Stuttard J, Blundell S, Harris T, Cook DG, Critchley J. Diabetes and infection: assessing the association with glycaemic control in population-based studies. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2016;4:148–58.
9. Muller LMA, Gorter KJ, Hak E, Goudzwaard WL, Schevellis FG, AIM H. Increased risk of common infections in patients with Type 1 and Type 2 diabetes mellitus. Clin Infect Dis. 2005;41:281–8.
10. Rayfield EJ, Ault MJ, Keusch GT, Brothers MJ, Nechemias C, Smith H. Infection and diabetes: the case for glucose control. Am J Med. 1982;72:439–50.
11. Mazade MA, Edwards MS. Impairment of type III group B streptococcus - stimulated superoxide production and opsonophagocytosis by neutrophils in diabetes. Mol Genet Metab. 2001;73:259–67.
12. Casqueiro J, Alves C. Infections in patients with diabetes mellitus: a review of pathogenesis. Indian J Endocr Metab. 2012;16(Suppl S1):27–36.
13. Gupta S, Koirala J, Khardori R, Khardori N. Infections in diabetes mellitus and hyperglycemia. Infect Dis Clin N Am. 2007;21:617–38.
14. Jafar N, Edriss H. The effect of short-term hyperglycemia on the innate immune system. Am J Med Sci. 2016;351:201–11.
15. Nathella PK, Babu S. Influence of diabetes mellitus on immunity to human tuberculosis. Immunology. 2017;152:13–24.
16. Kumar NP, Sridhar R, Banurekha VV, Jawahar MS, Fay MP, Nutman TB, et al. Type 2 diabetes mellitus coincident with pulmonary tuberculosis is associated with heightened systemic type 1, type 17, and other proinflammatory cytokines. Ann Am Thorac Soc. 2013;10:441–9.
17. Serfaty L. Metabolic manifestations of hepatitis C virus. Diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia. Clin Liver Dis. 2017;21:475–86.
18. Hadigan C, Kattakuzhy S. Diabetes mellitus type 2 and abnormal glucose metabolism in the setting of human immunodeficiency virus. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am. 2014;43:685–96.
19. Nazligul Y, Sabuncu T, Ozbilge H. Is there a predisposition to intestinal parasitosis in diabetic patients? Diabetes Care. 2001;24:1503–4.
20. De Ruiter K, Tahapary DL, Sartono E, Soewondo P, Supali T, Smit JWA, et al. Helminths, hygiene hypothesis and type 2 diabetes. Parasite Immunol. 2017;39:e12404.
21. Mendonca SC, Goncalves-Pires M, Rodrigues RM, Ferreira A Jr, Costa-Cruz JM. Is there an association between positive Strongyloides stercoralis serology and diabetes mellitus? Acta Trop. 2006;99:102–5.
22. Strachan DP. Hay fever, hygiene, and household size. BMJ. 1989;299:1259–60.
23. Scudellari M. Cleaning up the hygiene hypothesis. PNAS. 2017;114:1433–6.
24. Kawai K, Yawn BP. Risk factors for herpes zoster: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Mayo Clin Proc. 2017;92:1806–21.
25. Anderson E, Fantus RJ, Haddadin RI. Diagnosis and management of herpes zoster ophthalmicus. Disease-a-Month. 2017;63:38–44.
26. Vrcek I, Choudhury E, Durairaj V. Herpes zoster ophthalmicus: a review for the internists. Am J Med. 2017;130:21–6.
27. Wollina U. Variations in herpes zoster manifestation. Indian J Med Res. 2017;145:294–8.
28. Carlton DA, Perez EE, Smouha EE. Malignant external otitis: the shifting treatment paradigm. Am J Otolaringol. 2018;39:41–5.
29. Mion M, Bovo R, Marchese-Ragona R, Martini A. Outcome predictors of treatment effectiveness for fungal external otitis: a systematic review. Acta Otorhinolaryngol Ital. 2015;35:307–13.
30. Lee SK, Lee SA, Seon S, Jung JH, Lee JD, Choi JY, Kim BG. Analysis of prognostic factors in malignant external otitis. Clin Exp Otorhinolaryngol. 2017;3:228–35.
31. Teeuw WJ, Kosho MXF, Poland DCW, Gerdes VEA, Loos BG. Periodontitis as a possible early sign of diabetes mellitus. BMJ Open Diabetes Res Care. 2017;5:e000326. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjdrc-2016-000326.
32. Barca E, Cifcibasi E, Cintan S. Adjunctive use of antibiotics in periodontal therapy. J Istambul Univ Fac Dent. 2015;49:55–62.
33. Poradzka A, Jasik M, Karnafael W, Fiedor P. Clinical aspects of fungal infections in diabetes. Acta Pol Pharm. 2013;70:587–96.
34. Farmakoitis D, Kontoyiannis DP. Mucormycoses. Infect Dis Clin N Am. 2016;30:143–63.
35. Long B, Koyfman A. Mucormycosis: what emergency physicians need to know? Am J Emerg Med. 2015;33:1823–5.
36. Riley TT, Muzny CA, Swiatlo E, Legendre DP. Breaking the mold: a review of mucormycosis and current pharmacological treatment options. Ann Pharmacother. 2016;50:747–57.
37. Li H, Cao B. Pandemic and avian influenza A viruses in humans. Epidemiology, virology, clinical characteristics and treatment strategy. Clin Chest Med. 2017;38:59–70.
38. Ison MG. Antiviral treatments. Clin Chest Med. 2017;38:139–53.
39. Klekotka RB, Mizgata E, Król W. The etiology of lower respiratory tract infections in people with diabetes. Pneumonol Alergol Pol. 2015;83:401–8.
40. Mandell LA, Wunderink RG, Anzueto A, Bartlett JG, Campbell GD, Dean NC, et al. Infectious Diseases Society of America/American Thoracic Society consensus guidelines on the management of community-acquired pneumonia in adults. Clin Infect Dis. 2007;44:S27–72.
41. Prina E, Ranzani OT, Torres A. Community-acquired pneumonia. Lancet. 2015;386:1097–108.
42. Kaysin A, Viera AJ. Community-acquired pneumonia in adults: diagnosis and management. Am Fam Physician. 2016;94:698–706.
43. Lee JS, Giesler DL, Gellad WD, Fine MJ. Antibiotic therapy for adults hospitalized with community-acquired pneumonia. A systematic review. JAMA. 2016;315:595–602.
44. Waterer G. Empiric antibiotics for community-acquired pneumonia: a macrolide and a beta-lactam please! Respirology. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1111/resp.13248.
45. Torres A, Blasi F, Dartois N, Akova M. Which individuals are at increased risk of pneumococcal disease and why? Impact of COPD, asthma, smoking, diabetes, and/or chronic heart disease on community-acquired pneumonia and invasive disease. Thorax. 2015;70:984–9.
46. McAlister FA, Majumdar SR, Blitz S, Rowe BH, Romney J, Marrie TJ. The relationship between hyperglycemia and outcomes in 2,471 patients admitted to the hospital with community-acquired pneumonia. Diabetes Care. 2005;28:810–5.
47. Yende S, van der Poll T, Lee MJ, Huang DT, Newman AB, Kong L, et al. The influence of pre-existing diabetes mellitus on the host immune response and outcome of pneumonia: analysis of two multicentre cohort studies. Thorax. 2018;65:870–7.
48. Koskela HO, Salonen PH, Romppanen J, Niskanen L. Long-term mortality after community acquired pneumonia-impacts of diabetes and newly discovered hyperglycaemia: a prospective, observational cohort study. BMJ Open. 2018;4:e005715.
49. Hadfield J, Bennett L. Determining best outcomes from community-acquired pneumonia and how to achieve them. Respirology. 2017;23:138. https://doi.org/10.1111/resp.13218.
50. Mandell LA. Something new for community-acquired pneumonia? Clin Infect Dis. 2017;63:1681–2.

51. Peyrani P, Wiemken TL, Metersky ML, Arnold FW, Mattingly WA, Feldman C, et al. The order of administration of macrolides and beta-lactams may impact the outcomes of hospitalized patients with community acquired pneumonia: results from the community-acquired pneumonia organization. Infect Dis. 2018;50:13–20.
52. Dheda K, Barry CE, Maartens G. Tuberculosis. Lancet. 2015;387:1211–26.
53. Al-Rifai RH, Pearson F, Critchley JA, Abu-Raddad LJ. Association between diabetes mellitus and active tuberculosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2017;12:e0187967.
54. Verbeeck RK, Günther G, Kibuule D, Hunter C, Rennie TW. Optimizing treatment outcome of first-line anti-tuberculous drugs: the role of therapeutic drug monitoring. Eur J Clin Pharmacol. 2016;72:905–16.
55. Riza AL, Pearson F, Ugarte-Gil C, Alisjahbana B, van de Vivjer S, Panduru NM, et al. Clinical management of concurrent diabetes and tuberculosis and the implications for patient services. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2014;2:740–53.
56. Stockamp NW, Thompson GR III. Coccidioidomycosis. Infect Dis Clin N Am. 2016;30:229–46.
57. Abengowe CU, McManamon PJM. Acute emphysematous cholecystitis. Can Med Assoc J. 1974;111:1112–4.
58. Garcia-Sancho Tellez L, Rodriguez-Montes JA, Fernandez de Lis S, Garcia-Sancho ML. Acute emphysematous cholecystitis. Report of twenty cases. Hepato-Gastroenterology. 1999;46:2144–8.
59. Thomsen RW, Jepsen P, Sorensen HT. Diabetes mellitus and pyogenic liver abscess: risk and prognosis. CID. 2007;44:1194–201.
60. Foo NP, Chen KT, Lin HJ, Guo HR. Characteristics of pyogenic liver abscess patients with and without diabetes mellitus. Am J Gastroenterol. 2010;105:328–35.
61. Siu LK, Yeh K-M, Lin J-C, Fung C-P, Chang F-Y. Klebsiella pneumoniae liver abscess: a new invasive syndrome. Lancet Infect Dis. 2012;12:881–7.
62. van den Berge M, de Marie S, Kuipers T, Jansz AR, Bravenboer B. Psoas abscess: report of a series and review of the literature. Neth J Med. 2005;63:413–61.
63. Maines E, Franceschi R, Cauvin V, d'Annunzio G, Pini Prato A, Castagnola E, et al. Iliopsoas abscess in adolescents with type 1 diabetes mellitus. Clin Case Rep. 2015;3:638–42.
64. Geerlings SE. Urinary tract infections in patients with diabetes mellitus: epidemiology, pathogenesis and treatment. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2008;31S:S54–7.
65. Nicolle LE. Urinary tract infections in special populations. Diabetes, renal transplant, HIV infection, and spinal cord injury. Infect Dis Clin N Am. 2014;28:91–104.
66. Thomas L, Tracy CR. Treatment of fungal urinary tract infection. Urol Clin N Am. 2015;42:473–83.
67. Nicolle LE. Uncomplicated urinary tract infection in adults including uncomplicated pyelonephritis. Urol Clin North Am. 2008;35:1–12.
68. Wagenlehner FME, Weidner W, Naber KG. Antibiotics in urology – new essentials. Urol Clin N Am. 2008;35:69–79.
69. Durwood EN. Complicated urinary tract infections. Urol Clin North Am. 2008;35:13–22.
70. Gardiner RA, Gwynne RA, Roberts SA. Perinephric abscess. BJU Int. 2011;107(Suppl 3):20–3.
71. Amano M, Shimizu T. Emphysematous cystitis: a review of the literature. Intern Med. 2014;53:79–82.
72. Hirji I, Andersson SW, Guo Z, Hammar N, Gomez-Caminero A. Incidence of genital infection among patients with type 2 diabetes in the UK General Practice Research Database. J Diabetes Complicat. 2012;26:501–5.
73. Nyirjesy P, Sobel JD. Genital infections in patients with diabetes. Postgrad Med. 2013;125:33–46.
74. Goswami R, Dadhwal V, Tejaswi S, Datta K, Paul A, Haricharan RN, et al. Species-specific prevalence of vaginal candidiasis among patients with diabetes mellitus and its relationship to their glycaemic status. J Infect. 2000;41:162–16.
75. Dovnik A, Golle A, Novak D, Arko D, Takac I. Treatment of vulvovaginal candidiasis: a review of the literature. Acta Dermatoveneorol APA. 2015;24:5–7.
76. Matheson A, Mazza D. Recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis: a review of guideline recommendations. Aust NZJ Obstet Gynaecol. 2017;57:139–45.
77. Rizzi M, Trevisan R. Genitourinary infections in diabetic patients in the new era of diabetes therapy with sodium-glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitors. Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis. 2016;26:963–70.
78. Kalra S, Chawla A. Diabetes and balanoposthitis. J Pak Med Assoc. 2016;66:1039–41.
79. Chennamsetty A, Khourdaji I, Burks F, Killinger KA. Contemporary diagnosis and management of Fournier's gangrene. Ther Adv Urol. 2015;7:203–15.
80. Gill GV, Famuyiwa OO, Rolfe M, Archibald LK. Serious hand sepsis and diabetes mellitus: specific tropical syndrome with Western counterparts. Diabet Med. 1998;15:858–62.
81. Yeika EV, Tchoumi Tantchou JC, Foryoung JB, Tolefac PN, Efie DT, Choukem SP. Tropical diabetic hand syndrome: a case report. Biomed Central. 2017;10:94. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13104-017-2405-3.
82. Stulberg DL, Penrod MA, Blatny RA. Common bacterial skin infections. Am Fam Physician. 2002;66:119–24.
83. Singer AJ, Tassiopoulos A, Kirsner RS. Evaluation and Management of Lower-Extremity Ulcers. N Engl J Med. 2017;377:1559–67.
84. Wijesuriya TM, Weerasekera MM, Kottahachchi J, Ranasinghe K, Dissanayake M, Prathapan S, et al. Proportion of lower limb fungal foot infections in patients with type 2 diabetes at a tertiary care hospital in Sri Lanka. Indian J Endocr Metab. 2014;18:63–9.
85. Noor S, Khan RU, Ahmad J. Understanding foot infection and its management. Diabetes Metab Syndr Clin Res Rev. 2017;11:149–56.
86. Lipski BA, Aragón-Sánchez J, Diggle M, Embil J, Kono S, Lavery L, et al. IWGDF guidance on the diagnosis and management of foot infections in persons with diabetes. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2016;32(Suppl. 1):45–74.
87. Muñoz-Quiles C, López-Lacort M, Ampudia-Blasco J, Díez-Domingo J. Risk and impact of herpes zoster on patients with diabetes: a population-based study, 2009-2014. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2017;13:2606–11.
88. O'Connor KM, Paauw DS. Herpes zoster. Med Clin N Am. 2013;97:503–22.
89. Cathart S, Cantrell W, Elewski BE. Onychomycosis and diabetes. JEADV. 2009;23:1119–22.
90. Zane LT, Chanda S, Coronado D, Del Rosso J. Antifungal agents for onychomycosis: new treatment strategies to improve safety. Dermatol Online J. 2016;22:1–11.
91. Kreijkamp-Kaspers S, Hawke KL, van Driel ML. Oral medications to treat toenail fungal infection. JAMA. 2018;319:397–8.

Part IX

Chronic Complications

Biochemical Mechanisms of Vascular Complications in Diabetes

45

Margarita Díaz-Flores and Luis Arturo Baiza-Gutman

Chapter Objectives

- To analyze the biochemical and molecular mechanism of vascular diabetic complications
- To analyze the role of metabolic alterations induced by hyperglycemia in diabetic complications (altered glycolysis, diacylglycerol production and protein kinase C activation, activation of polyol and hexosamine pathways, and glycation)
- To analyze the role of oxidative stress in diabetic complications, considering reactive oxygen species production and biochemical, metabolic, and morphological alteration induced by them
- To analyze the role of inflammation during diabetes and its participation in vascular diabetic complications
- To analyze the integrative hypothesis that explains the rise and progression of vascular diabetic complications

Diabetes and Vascular Complications

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a heterogeneous pandemic metabolic disorder characterized by a chronically elevated blood glucose concentration (hyperglycemia) due to resistance to insulin action, defective insulin secretion, or both (insulin dysfunction). This disease affects approximately 10% of the adult population in North America. Type 2 diabetes is diagnosed often late, when already 40% of diabetics show complications. Vascular complications of diabetes are frequently responsible of morbidity and mortality in diabetic patients [1, 2].

Diabetic complications are derived from diabetic hyperglycemia or chronic elevation of blood glucose [1]. Persistent exposure of tissues to high concentrations of glucose can lead to damage (glucotoxicity) of endothelium and small blood vessels (microvasculature) followed by alterations of tissues and organs, including kidney (nephropathy), eyes (retinopathy), and nerves and central nervous system (peripheral and autonomic neuropathy), which are known as microvascular complications of diabetes [3, 4]. Additionally hyperglycemia leads to damage of big blood vessels and heart or macrovascular complications, which are associated with cardiovascular diseases such as accelerated atherosclerosis, cardiomyopathy, myocardial infarction, and stroke [5]. Endothelial dysfunction is the initial step in the development of vascular complications.

Although hyperglycemia has been considered as the principal cause of diabetic complications, there are other factors that affect their development and progression such as dyslipidemia and accumulation of lipid metabolites (lipotoxicity) [6], nitric oxide deficiency, hypertension, regulators and cytokine levels, oxidative stress, and inflammation.

Several mechanisms involved in the pathogenesis of diabetic complications induced by hyperglycemia have been proposed, all of them consider how high concentration of glucose is metabolized by different pathways which conduce to the accumulation of metabolites or activation of signaling molecules which induce damage of endothelium, vascular vessels, and other tissues, causing morphological and physiological impairment of several organs leading to functional loss. The proposed mechanism includes (Fig. 45.1):

A. Metabolic stress, caused by the increased flux of glucose in several metabolic pathways (Fig. 45.2), including [7]:
   1. Glycolysis, accumulation of trioses and generation of methylglyoxal. Trioses lead to increased formation of

Margarita Díaz-Flores (✉)
Unidad de Investigación Médica en Bioquímica, Hospital de Especialidades, Centro Médico Nacional, Siglo XXI IMSS, Mexico City, Mexico

L. A. Baiza-Gutman
Laboratorio de Biología del Desarrollo, Unidad de Morfofisiología, Facultad de Estudios Superiores Iztacala, Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Mexico City, Mexico
e-mail: labaiza@unam.mx

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_45

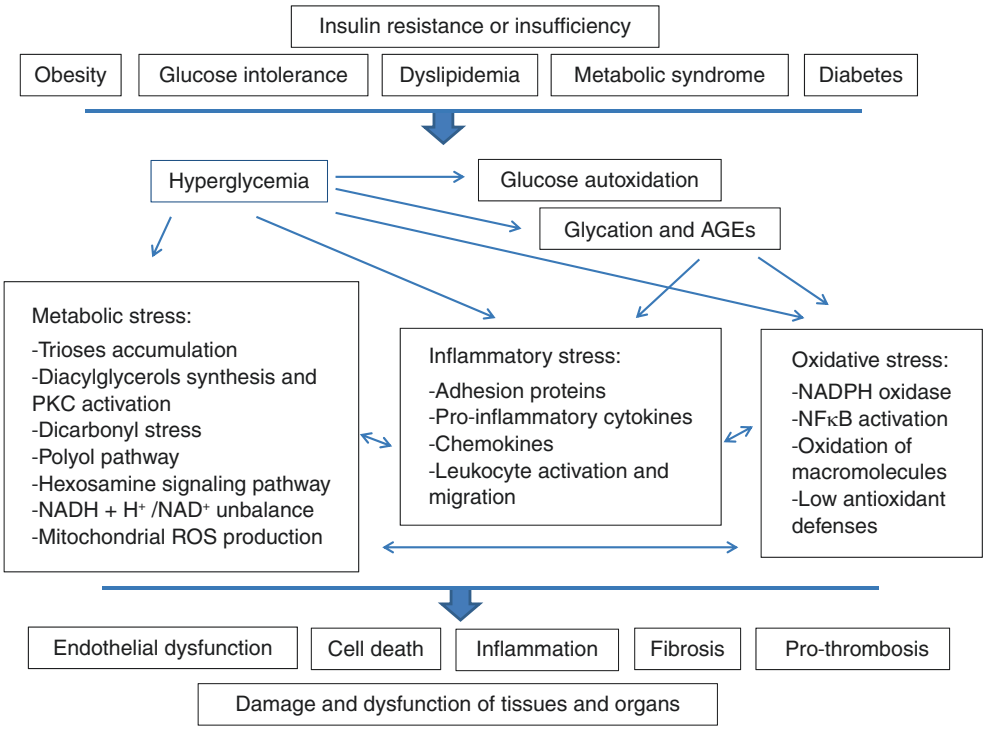


Fig. 45.1 Pathophysiological mechanisms of diabetic complications. Several chronic metabolic conditions lead to chronic or postprandial hyperglycemia, which induces metabolic, inflammatory, and oxidative stress causing tissue and organ alterations characteristic of vascular diabetes complications, NFκB, transcription factor nuclear factor κB

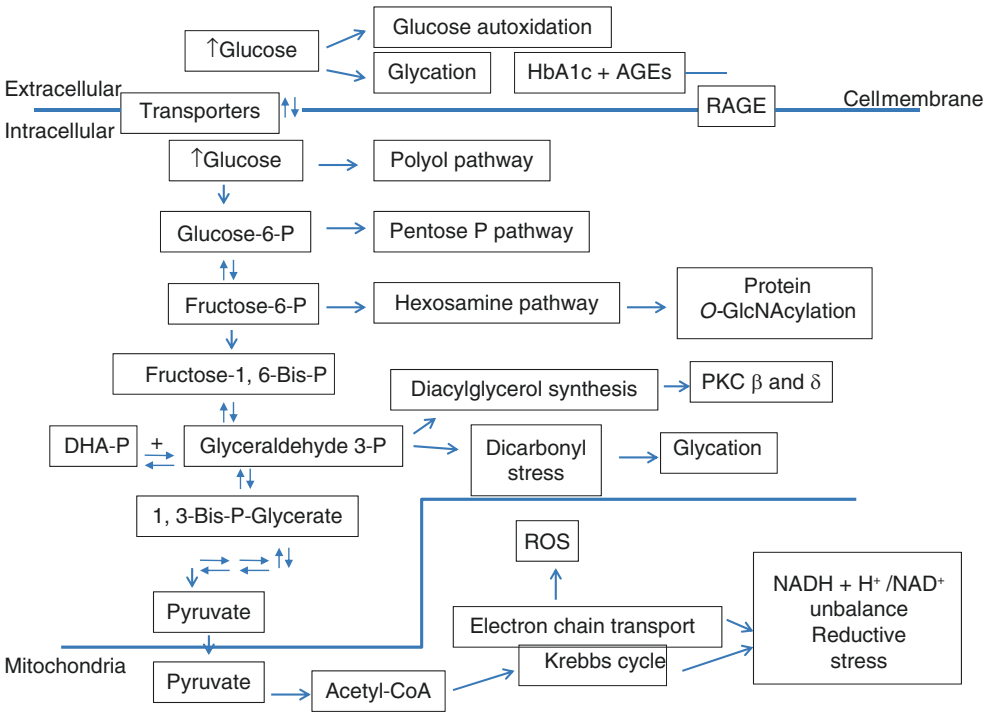


Fig. 45.2 Hyperglycemia and glucose metabolism by multiple pathways. In hyperglycemic condition, there is an overflow of glucose uptake and metabolism in non-insulin-dependent cells; the overflow of glucose induces an NADH + H^+/NAD^+ imbalance and ROS production in the mitochondria, which lead to inhibition of glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase and triose accumulation [dihydroxyacetone-phosphate (DHA-P) and glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate), leading to the activation of several pathways of glucose or glucose metabolite disposal and associated with the induction of vascular complications. P, phosphate; RAGE, receptor for AGEs; *O*-GlcNAcylation, *O*-linked glycosylation with β,N-acetylglucosamine; PKC, protein kinase C

diacylglycerol and methylglyoxal, which are associated with the activation of protein kinase C (PKC) and intracellular glycation, respectively.
2. The polyol pathway and accumulation of sorbitol [8].
3. The hexosamine signaling pathway [9].
4. Nonenzymatic glycation with increased formation of advanced glycation end products (AGEs) and the activation of its receptor (RAGE) [10].

B. Reductive/oxidative stress. Increased flux of metabolites through the citric acid cycle leads to high production of NADH and reductive stress [3], which causes overflow of electron in the electron transport chain and enhanced production of superoxide and other reactive oxygen species (ROS) and oxidative stress [10, 11]. Additionally, ROS are produced by the activation of NADPH oxidase [12].

C. Inflammatory stress. Inflammation is a common pathophysiological mechanism in many diseases, including diabetes mellitus, where several pro-inflammatory mediators are upregulated and contribute to vascular complications [13].

Although multiple processes contribute to vascular complication, two major unifying hypotheses have been described: one considered the dicarbonyl stress as the key of diabetic complications [14, 15]; the other proposes that the oxidative stress induced by hyperglycemia could be a unifying and common mechanism involved in the activation of the other mechanisms; initially it was considered the production of ROS by the mitochondria as the driver of vascular complications [9]; for example, the production of superoxide in the mitochondria mediates the high glucose-induced increased flux in the hexosamine pathway in bovine aorta endothelial cells [9, 16].

The central role of the mitochondrial dysfunction as the initial driver of diabetic complications has been questioned [17]. Some data indicate that reduced mitochondrial activity could be the basis of the progression of diabetic complications mediated by increased inflammation and pro-fibrotic factors [17]. However, the induction of inflammation by high glucose-induced oxidative stress in human vascular cells requires being primed with an inflammatory stimulus such as TNFα or IL-1β (inflammatory preconditioning), and it has been proposed that a background of inflammatory condition is necessary for the deleterious action of excessive glucose environment [18]. The inflammatory preconditioning stimulus promotes the ROS production, inducing the overexpression of an important emergent source of superoxide, the NADPH oxidase, an enzyme that require the coenzyme NADPH, and also inducing the expression of the major supply of this reduced coenzyme, glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase, increasing the flux of glucose in the pentose phosphate pathway [18].

Metabolic Stress

The mechanisms of glucose metabolism involved in diabetic complications include glucose autoxidation, the shunt of glucose to the polyol pathway, formation of AGE, and elevated hexosamine pathway activity [7, 8, 19].

Polyol Pathway

Polyol pathway is linked with the progression of diabetic complications, especially retinopathy because of the formation of a vulnerable intermediate product during its course.

Polyol pathway is activated during hyperglycemia due to saturation of hexokinase (the enzyme that catalyzes the first step of glycolysis). This pathway is activated as blood glucose level rises and involves two enzymatic steps catalyzed by aldose reductase and sorbitol dehydrogenase, present in excess amounts in various body tissues. In the first step, glucose is converted into sorbitol, by the activity of aldose reductase, coupled to the oxidation of reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) cofactor. In the second step, sorbitol is further converted into fructose, by the action of sorbitol dehydrogenase, using NAD^+ as cofactor and producing NADH.

This intracellular metabolic process results in the accumulation of sorbitol as an intermediate product, because the cellular membranes are impermeable to sorbitol and prevent its efflux. Intracellular accumulation of sorbitol induces osmotic imbalance, water intake, and cellular death. It is unknown the exact mechanism of sorbitol-induced cell death but accounts for extensive cellular damage, leading to progression of diabetic retinopathy [20].

Although high quantity of sorbitol remains unchanged, some sorbitol is converted into fructose in the second step of reaction. The NADH produced during the second reaction contributes to the reductive stress and conduces to production of more superoxide radicals in the mitochondria.

An increase in the activity of polyol pathway in tissues like retina, kidney, peripheral nerves, and blood vessels occurs in diabetes, because in these tissues insulin is not required for glucose uptake. The role of polyol pathway in diabetic retinopathy is supported because increased polyol pathway activity is observed in the retina from animal models of diabetic retinopathy and from diabetic human donors with retinopathy [21]. Also the C allele of the polymorphism

at position −106 in the promoter of aldose reductase gene *has been* associated with diabetic retinopathy [22]. However, clinical trials using sorbinil, an inhibitor of aldose reductase, have failed to produce significant protection against retinopathy or distal symmetric polyneuropathy [23–25].

Hexosamine Pathway and O-GlcNAcylation of Proteins (Hexosamine Signaling Pathway)

Increased flux of glucose into the hexosamine signaling pathway has been implicated in diabetic vascular complications and is induced by hyperglycemia. In this case glucose 6-phosphate is isomerized to fructose 6-phosphate in glycolysis, and the overproduction of fructose 6-phosphate under hyperglycemic condition is canalized to this pathway as an alternative to glycolysis [26]. Glucosamine 6-phosphate is produced by the transference of an amino group of glutamine to fructose 6-phosphate catalyzed by the action of the rate-limiting enzyme glutamine: fructose-6-phosphate amidotransferase (GFAT). Finally, in the hexosamine pathway, UDP-N-acetylglucosamine (UDP-GlcNAc) is formed by sequential enzymatic steps. UDP-GlcNAc is a donor molecule that leads to *O*-linked glycosylation with the hexosamine-derived β, N-acetylglucosamine (*O*-GlcNAcylation) by the enzyme O-GlcNAc transferase (OGT) to serine and threonine residues on target proteins, including endothelial nitric oxide (NO) synthase (eNOS), the protein kinase Akt, and the transcription factor specificity protein 1 (Sp1), leading to decreased NO production, attenuated endothelial migration and altered gene expression, respectively.

Activation of hexosamine signaling pathway mediates hyperglycemia-induced increase in gene transcription and also induces apoptosis of endothelial cells and neurons [27]. The modification of gene expression is associated with increased *O*-GlcNAcylation and decreased serine/threonine phosphorylation of the transcription factor Sp1, leading to Sp1-dependent expression of transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), plasminogen activator inhibitor 1 (PAI-1) [9] and vascular endothelial growth factor A (VEGF-A) [28]. These changes in gene expression could be prevented by the inhibition of the rate-limiting enzyme GFAT [29] or inhibitors of OGT [28]. On the other hand, inhibition or overexpression of the enzyme that degrades N-acetylglucosamine, O-GlcNAcase (OGA), increases the expression of VEGF-A in cultured retinal cells [28] or reverses coronary endothelial cell dysfunction in streptozotocin-induced diabetic mice [30].

Synthesis of Diacylglycerols and Protein Kinase C Activation

In hyperglycemic conditions, triose phosphates and glycerol-phosphate are accumulated, resulting in the inhibition of the enzyme glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) by the NADH overproduction and oxidative stress. Both triose phosphate and fructose (end product of polyol pathway) lead to the formation of methylglyoxal and diacylglycerol (DAG). DAG is located in the cell membrane and activates PKC β and δ which induce several cell responses and leads to the production of reactive oxygen species via upregulating the expression of NADPH oxidases.

Activated PKC-δ can accelerate apoptosis of pericyte capillary cells and result in the formation of degenerative capillaries during retinopathy [31] and also induce the apoptosis of podocytes in culture and endothelial dysfunction in renal glomeruli of diabetic rats and mice [32], which is mediated by the p38 MAPK and Src homology-2 domain-containing phosphatase-1 (SHP-1) [31, 32]. The relevance of PKCδ in diabetic complications is supported by the fact that the diabetic PKCδ-knockout (Prkcd(−/−)) mice present decreased expressions of TGF-β, VEGF, and extracellular matrix and less albuminuria than diabetic PKCδ wild-type mice [32]. Poor wound healing in diabetic patients has been attributed to activation of PKCδ in fibroblasts, and pharmacologic inhibition and knockdown of PKCδ in diabetic fibroblasts improved wound healing when fibroblasts are implanted in a wound healing model in nude mice [33].

Activation of the other isoform PKC-β in endothelial cells induces endothelin-1 expression and enhances VEGF action increasing vascular endothelial permeability and endothelial dysfunction [31]. Clinical trials using an isoform-selective inhibitor of PKC-β ruboxistaurin, which ameliorated retinal hemodynamic abnormalities in diabetic patients, have not yielded very promising results [34]. Further additional clinical trials are needed using inhibitors of the PKCδ isoform.

Glycation and Advanced Glycation End Products

Glycation is defined as the nonenzymatic reaction between glucose and reducing sugars with amino groups of proteins, lipids, or nucleic acids. This reaction is promoted under hyperglycemia, oxidative stress, or aging and alters the structure and function of macromolecules.

Glycation begins with the nonenzymatic reaction between aldehyde groups of glucose with amino groups in macromolecules (proteins, lipids, or nucleic acids) forming first a reversible Schiff base adducts, which are rearranged to more stable, covalently bound Amadori products. Over days to weeks, early glycation products undergo further reactions such as rearrangements and dehydration to become irreversibly cross-linked, fluorescent derivatives called advanced glycation end products (AGEs), such as carboxymethyllysine (CML), carboxyethyllysine, pentosidine, or pyralline derived from proteins and N(2)-carboxyethyl-2′-deoxyguanosine (CEdG) derived from DNA [10].

AGEs are accumulated in several tissues of diabetic patients or experimental animals including microvasculature, aorta, retina, kidney, pancreas, colon, or skin [35, 36]. The plasma concentration of glycated hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c), the Amadori adduct of the N-terminal valine of the hemoglobin β-chain, is used as long-term biomarker of glycemic control in clinical practice; there is a linear relationship between HbA1c and mean blood glucose; however, HbA1c reflects the average glucose over ∼120 days, the mean lifetime of the erythrocyte. Plasma, serum, and urinary levels of AGEs are correlated with the severity of complications in diabetic patients [37–39].

AGEs directly affect the function of macromolecules, for example, nucleotide AGEs are associated with DNA single-strand breaks and increased mutation frequencies. Also AGEs bind with AGE-binding receptors (RAGE). RAGE is a multi-ligand cell surface protein, expressed by endothelial cells, monocytes/macrophages, smooth muscle cells, neurons, podocytes, and cardiac myocytes. The binding of AGEs with RAGE leads to the generation of oxidative stress, inducing proliferative, migratory, inflammatory, thrombotic, and fibrotic reactions in a variety of cells, which leads to alterations associated with diabetic vascular complications [40, 41]. Enhanced production of superoxide induced by hyperglycemia in vascular endothelial cells is linked with the production of AGEs and the expression of its receptor; also elevated levels of AGEs induce the expression of its own receptor amplifying the AGE signaling [42].

The fibrotic action of AGEs in renal and vascular cells is mediated by TGF-β-dependent and TGF-β-independent mechanisms, both of which are dependent on AGE-RAGE interaction. In the first case, the expression of TGFβ is induced, and TGFβ induces the activation of the transcription factors Smads, which induce expression of pro-fibrotic proteins (ECM proteins, TGF-β receptor 1 or TGF-βR1, connective tissue growth factor or CTGF and PAI-1). In the second case, Smads are activated secondary to the activation of the ERK/p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signaling pathway [43, 44].

The activation of RAGE also has been associated with sustained activation of the transcription factor NFκB (nuclear factor kappa B) resulting initially from the degradation of its inhibitor IkB and the translocation of NFκB to the nucleus and chronically by NFκB increased de novo synthesis [45].

The signaling mechanism induced by RAGE activation begins to be elucidated. The highly charged cytoplasmic domain of RAGE binds to the formin DAPH1 or diaphanous 1. DAPH1 is required for RAGE signaling, which is blocked by knockdown of *diaph1*. DAPH1 is a cytoplasmic actin-binding protein and after the activation of RAGE signaling leads to the activation of Rho GTPases (Rac 1 and Cdc 42) associated with actin cytoskeleton dynamics and the induction of cell migration in cancer and smooth muscle cells [41, 46].

Recently, RAGE-DIAPH1 interaction has been considered therapeutic targets, and small molecule inhibitors of this interaction suppress the induction of migration and production of inflammatory cytokines by RAGE ligands in cultured smooth muscle cells and TH1 macrophage-like cells [47].

Box 45.1: Nuclear Factor Kappa B (NFκB)

The NFκB family of transcription factors regulates the expression of proteins involved in cell proliferation and survival, inflammation, and immune and oxidative stress responses. In normal physiological conditions, NFκB is induced in an adaptive response to maintain homeostasis; however, the sustained activation of NFκB is thought to have a central role in the pathogenesis of several chronic diseases including diabetes and their complications. NFκB induces the expression of several genes as a response of stressful stimuli like oxidative stress, hyperglycemia, and inflammation. The activation of NFκB is induced by a variety of stimuli including free reactive oxygen species, AGEs, pro-inflammatory cytokines, oxidized low-density lipoproteins, free fatty acids, and bacterial and viral antigens. When NFκB is not activated and is located in the cytoplasm, forming a complex with its inhibitor IκB (inhibitor of NFκB), after the activation of the upstream signal, the inhibitor is phosphorylated by the IκB kinase (IKK) and degraded through the ubiquitin system. As a consequence NFκB is released and translocated into the nucleus, where it activates the expression of target genes. The principal regulatory step in the activation of NFκB is the phosphorylation and activation of IKK. NFκB regulates the expression of pro-inflammatory proteins, including adhesion molecules in endothelial cells, (ICAM and VCAM), cytokines (TNFα, IL-1β), and chemokines. NFκB signaling is a potential target for therapeutic intervention, and several inhibitors of NFκB activation and signaling have been developed.

Dicarbonyl Stress, Methylglyoxal, and Endogenous Glycation

Levels of reactive aldehydes like methylglyoxal, glyoxal, and 3-deoxyglucosone are elevated in diabetes mellitus. Methylglyoxal has been related with diabetes complications for its ability to induce insulin resistance and vascular dysfunction and to cause neuropathic pain, because its generation is induced by chronic hyperglycemia. Also its plasma concentration is elevated in diabetic patients [48]. Methylglyoxal is an α-dicarbonyl and might be the most

important reactive aldehyde in diabetes and its complications. Methylglyoxal is formed as a by-product of glycolysis by fragmentation of triose phosphates accumulated in glycolysis and also is derived from catabolism of threonine and ketone bodies, lipid peroxidation, and degradation of glycated macromolecules.

The accumulation of methylglyoxal and similar compounds also depend on their lower detoxification by the glyoxalase system. This system catalyzes in the cytoplasm the detoxification of reactive dicarbonyls, providing the principal defense against dicarbonyl glycation. The efficiency of this system is reduced by chronic hyperglycemia, because its rate-limiting enzyme, glyoxalase 1 (Glo1) is downregulated in a high glucose environment [49]. Glyoxalase 1 downregulation is induced by RAGE signaling and the pro-inflammatory activation of NFκB [49]; in this case the action of NFκB is through the non-transcriptional inhibition of the antioxidant response [50].

Methylglyoxal through the glycation reaction modifies proteins and nucleic acid, being the precursor of endogenous AGEs, including arginine-derived hydroimidazolones and deoxyguanosine-derived imidazopurinones, and also induces apoptosis in vascular cells fomenting endothelial dysfunction and the progression of vascular complications including atherosclerosis [51].

Recently, it was described that the plasma concentration of methylglyoxal and other oxo-aldehydes (glyoxal and 3-deoxyglucosone) are enhanced after carbohydrate load in type 2 diabetes, which was associated with increased risk of diabetic complications induced by elevations of postprandial glycemia [52].

NADH Overproduction or Reductive Stress

During hyperglycemia increase the uptake of glucose in non-insulin-dependent tissues, with high level of glucose metabolism as glucose entry into the cells is not limited by insulin deficiency. The increased flux of metabolites in glycolysis and the citric acid cycle in the mitochondria lead to an oversupply of NADH; this coenzyme receives electrons derived from oxidative degradation of glucose and provides electrons to the electron transport chain leading to the formation of ATP.

The balance between NADH and NAD^+ is perturbed in hyperglycemic conditions, also by the production of NADH in the activated polyol pathway and by the consumption of NAD^+ by the overactivated poly ADP-ribose polymerase (PARP) that uses NAD^+ as substrate. The redox imbalance of NADH/NAD^+ causes initially reductive stress or pseudohypoxic stress that leads to oxidative stress and oxidative damage to macromolecules. The excess of NADH promotes oxidative stress, because the overflow of electrons in the electron transport chain leads to the leaking of electrons and partial reduction of oxygen with increased production of superoxide and other reactive oxygen species [3, 4].

Accordingly, oxidative damage triggered by redox imbalance might to be a major factor contributing to the development of diabetic complications, and the prevention or restoring of NADH/NAD^+ redox balance could provide further insights into the design of novel antidiabetic strategies.

Oxidative Stress

As we discussed before, the electron overflow in the electron transport chain in non-insulin-dependent tissue under hyperglycemic microenvironment leads to electron leaking and superoxide production in the mitochondria [3, 4]. In diabetes the excessive production of ROS overwhelms endogenous antioxidant defense mechanisms causing an imbalance in the production of ROS and nonenzymatic and enzymatic antioxidant mechanisms in the body which ultimately leads to oxidative stress.

In addition to the production of ROS in the mitochondria, other sources of ROS have been described in diabetic condition, including NADPH oxidase, xanthine oxidase, and uncoupled endothelial nitric oxide synthase (eNOS), being of special importance NADPH oxidases. Several isoforms of O_2-producing NADPH oxidase exist in the endothelium, smooth muscle cells, and adventitia of the vascular wall [53]. The expression of NADPH oxidases is upregulated by PKC.

Enhanced ROS levels induce oxidative modification of macromolecules, including lipids in the membranes (lipid peroxidation), enzymes, and nucleic acids altering their functions and cell integrity. As products of lipid peroxidation, malondialdehyde and 4-hydroxy-2-nonenals (4-HNE), are formed, when ROS react with DNA, 8-dihydro-8-oxo-2′-deoxyguanosine (8-OxodG) is produced and is removed during oxidized DNA repair and excreted in urine. These compounds have been used as markers of oxidative stress. A highly reactive 4-HNE form covalent adducts with nucleophilic functional groups in proteins, nucleic acids and membrane altering their functions conducing to cytotoxicity or modulating a variety of signaling processes. At physiological or low concentration, 4-HNE induce cell survival or antioxidant response, becoming cytostatic and cytotoxic at higher levels. The signaling action of 4-HNE is mediated by transcription factors sensible to stress, including NFkB, nuclear factor erythroid 2-related factor 2 (Nrf2), and activating protein-1 (AP-1) [54].

Oxidative modifications of proteins (carbonylation, intermolecular dityrosine cross-linking, thiol oxidation, etc.) lead to the formation of advanced oxidized protein products (AOPP), which induce pro-inflammatory and pro-fibrotic processes and cell death associated with progression of

nephropathy and atherosclerosis. AOPP activate neutrophils and monocytes and induce inflammation through NF*k*B activation mediated by NADPH oxidase [55]. Some actions of AOPP are induced by their binding to RAGE in endothelial cells and podocytes [56].

DNA damage leads to overactivation of the nuclear enzyme poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase 1 (PARP-1). PARP-1 transfer ADP-ribose from NAD^+ leading to the formation of poly ADP-ribose (PAR) and nicotinamide, the decrease in NAD^+ and ATP levels, causes energy failure and cell necrosis. The mechanism of cell death induced by PAR has been recently elucidated; PAR induce the release of apoptosis-inducing factor (AIF) from the mitochondria, and AIF binds to macrophage inhibitory factor (MIF), a protein with a recently discovered activity of nuclease. This complex translocates to the nucleus, resulting in DNA fragmentation and cell death, through a caspase-independent type of apoptosis, designated parthanatos [57].

The activation of PARP also conduces to an inflammatory condition, since PARP-1 promotes the expression of pro-inflammatory factors, including TNFα and IL-1β, and the inhibition of PARP is a promising strategy for the prevention and treatment of diabetic complications. The inhibition of PARP ameliorates cardiovascular complications and nephropathy in animal model of type 2 diabetes preventing oxidative stress, inflammation, and renal fibrosis [58, 59]. Also attenuates the development of retinopathy in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats [60] and prevents the apoptosis of cultured cardiomyocytes under high glucose concentration [61].

Although supplementation with antioxidants has been considered in the treatment of diabetic complications, interventional trials with supplemented antioxidants have failed to show significant beneficial effects. Conversely, the use of natural foods shows promising results, and the employment of a balanced "Mediterranean diet" helps in the control of free radical production and increases intracellular antioxidant defense [62]. Early intensive glucose control is still the best strategy to avoid oxidative stress and its associated diabetes complications.

Dyslipidemia and Accumulation of Lipids

Dyslipidemia and increased levels of free fatty acids (FFA) in diabetes have been associated with insulin resistance, diabetes mellitus, and their complications [6]. Plasmatic increased levels of FFA lead to lipid peroxidation and its increased uptake in the cells. Intracellular fatty acids are oxidized in the mitochondria producing acetyl-CoA or are used in the synthesis of di- and triacylglycerols, glycerophospholipids, and ceramide precursor of sphingolipids. Diacylglycerols can activate PKC, triacylglycerols can be accumulated in hepatic or cardiomyocytes causing steatosis and functional alterations, and ceramide has been associated with diabetic complications.

Ceramide induces apoptosis in renal mesangial and tubular epithelial cells contributing to diabetic nephropathy and also is related with apoptosis of retinal pericytes and in the development of retinopathy [6].

Inflammatory Stress

Inflammation is induced by oxidative stress and diverse factors and is a common pathophysiological characteristic in many diseases, and diabetes is associated with a chronic pro-inflammatory condition, which is evidenced by increased serum levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines (TNFα) in diabetic patient and in experimental animals [59]. Additionally, the transcription factor sensible to oxidative stress and that regulate the expression of inflammatory mediators, NFκB, is activated in circulating lymphocytes of type 2 diabetic patient [63] and in a variety of tissues in diabetic animals (kidney, heart) [58, 59]. NFκB is activated by oxidative stress, TNFα, or angiotensin II (Ang II) and regulates the expression of a variety of inflammatory-related genes, including pro-inflammatory cytokines like TNFα, interleukin (IL) 1β (IL-1β), IL-6, and monocyte chemotactic protein 1 (MCP-1). Additionally, it induces the expression of cyclooxygenase 2 (Cox 2), an enzyme that controls the synthesis of pro-inflammatory eicosanoids.

Ang II is a key mediator of the renin-angiotensin system (RAS), whose activation is thought to be a major mechanism underlying inflammation in diabetic complications. Ang II induces the activation of NFκB and the synthesis and release of pro-inflammatory mediators, primarily cytokines TNFα, IL-1β, and IL-6. TNFα induces macrophage recruitment and synthesis and secretion of IL-6; in turn IL-6 stimulates the production and secretion of C-reactive protein (CRP), a key risk factor for cardiovascular diseases [64].

TNFα induces the expression of MCP-1 and cellular adhesion molecules in the endothelium, such as intracellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) and vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 (VCAM-1), which lead to recruitment of leukocytes to the surface of endothelium and initiating endothelial dysfunction. Further leukocytes migrated across the endothelium causing endothelial damage and inflammation in the kidney and destruction of blood-retinal barrier, characteristic of nephropathy and retinopathy. IL-1β induces the expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) causing overproduction of nitric oxide, which form peroxynitrite when reacts with superoxide radical, amplifying the inflammatory response and producing nitrosoactive stress.

TNFα and IL-1β can induce apoptosis directly or indirectly in cardiomyocytes and neurons contributing to car-

diac dysfunction, retinopathy, and neuropathy. Additionally, TNFα is associated with cardiomyocyte hypertrophy and cardiac fibrosis leading to heart failure.

TGFβ and Epithelial Mesenchymal Transition in Diabetic Nephropathy

One of the tissue changes of diabetic nephropathy is the excessive deposition of extracellular matrix (ECM) in the glomerulus and in the interstitium tubulo renal associated with the development of glomerulosclerosis and tubulointerstitial fibrosis. The major source of renal ECM is the myofibroblasts, increasing their number in diabetic nephropathy; these cells originated from different sources including activated renal fibroblasts, pericytes, epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition (EMT), endothelial-to-mesenchymal transition (EndoMT), bone marrow-derived cells, and fibrocytes [65].

EMT is one of the sources of matrix-generating fibroblast. During EMT, epithelial cells (proximal tubular cells and podocytes) loss its epithelial characteristics (downregulation of epithelial adhesion protein, E-cadherin) and acquired mesenchymal properties originating myofibroblasts in diabetic nephropathy [65, 66]; during the formation of myofibroblast, the expression of α-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA) is induced.

Different evidences indicate that TGFβ is a major driver for renal fibrosis, and the inhibition of TGFβ signaling significantly reduces renal fibrosis, ameliorating kidney damage and dysfunction. TGFβ induces EMT, EndoMT, and synthesis of EMC proteins (collagen I, collagen IV, and fibronectin). The promotion of fibrosis by TGFβ is mediated by the activation of the transcription factors Smads; therefore, TGF-β/Smad signaling is considered a potential therapeutic target in the prevention and treatment of renal fibrosis [65, 67]. However Smad signaling also can be activated for other factors, including AGEs, ROS, TNFα, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), and chemokines [43, 65].

Recently, it was found that the microRNA, let-7a, negatively regulates the expression of TGF-βR1 preventing the induction of fibrosis by hyperglycemia on kidney mesangial cell, and naringenin (4,5,7-trihydroxy flavanone), a flavanone compound extracted from citrus fruits, upregulates let-7 and prevents the ECM deposition in the kidney of diabetic rats [68].

Endothelial Dysfunction and Nitric Oxide Deficiency

Endothelium is a key tissue in the development of diabetic complications; vascular wall damage initiates as an inflammatory reaction, where the action of inflammatory cytokines and nitric oxide deficiency (NO) plays major role in inducing endothelial dysfunction [69]. Endothelial dysfunction alters the control of vascular properties by endothelium toward reduced vasodilatation and a pro-inflammatory and prothrombotic state.

Reduced vasodilatation is associated with NO deficiency or reduced availability of NO, which, in hyperglycemia and oxidative stress conditions, is induced by the reaction of NO with O_2^{-}* forming peroxynitrite (ONOO). Although the enzyme that synthetizes NO in the endothelium, the endothelial nitric oxide synthase (eNOS), is upregulated by oxidative stress (hydrogen peroxide, product of the dismutation of superoxide) or PKC [70], this enzyme lacks essential cofactor (6R-)5,6,7,8-tetrahydrobiopterin (BH4), which is oxidized by peroxynitrite. When this cofactor is oxidized, the reaction eNOS is uncoupled, and ROS are produced instead of NO, accentuating the vascular oxidative stress [71]. Inhibitors of PKC reduce eNOS expression levels in vascular endothelium.

When the endothelium is damaged, a soluble form of the adhesion protein ICAM (sICAM-1) is released from endothelial surface, and its plasma concentration is evaluated as a marker of endothelial injury. Plasma sICAM-1 concentration is increased in diabetic patients before signals of nephropathy and increase of sICAM-1 are observed in diabetic albuminuric patients. Plasma ICAM-1 concentrations are negatively correlated with the vasodilatory function of endothelium. Because oxidative stress contributes to endothelial dysfunction, a positive correlation was found between plasmatic concentrations of advanced oxidized protein products (AOPPs) and sICAM [72].

Anaerobic Metabolism and Neuropathic Pain

Nowadays, a link between anaerobic metabolism and neuropathic pain of several origin has been established. The pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase (PDK)-lactic acid axis is a critical link that connects metabolic reprogramming and neuropathic pain. Pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH) catalyzes the irreversible oxidative decarboxylation of pyruvate to acetyl-CoA and PDKs (PDK 1 to 4); the regulation of this enzyme drives the conversion of pyruvate either aerobically to acetyl-CoA or anaerobically to lactate. PDKs are upregulated in the tissues of patients and experimental rodents with diabetes. A unexpected role for lactate is recently recognized; lactate is the predominant end product of anaerobic glycolysis. In diabetes some tissues and organs like dorsal root ganglion are exposed to a low oxygen condition (ischemia); in this condition PDK 2 and 4 are upregulated, and these enzymes phosphorylate PDH, which is inactive when phosphorylated; therefore, pyruvate is transformed to lactate by lactate dehydrogenase, and the accumulation of lactate induces the expression of pain-related ion channels and neuro-inflammation, leading to pain hypersensitivity and

diabetic neuropathy. Suppression of *Pdk2 and Pdk4* attenuated the hyperglycemia-induced pain hypersensitivity and induced partial resistance to the diabetes-induced loss of peripheral nerve structure and function in streptozotocin-induced diabetic mice [73].

Box 45.2 Concluding Remarks

- The pathophysiological mechanism leading to vascular diabetic complications includes the metabolic, oxidative, and inflammatory alterations induced by hyperglycemia.
- Increased metabolic flux of glucose leads to activation of polyol and hexosamine pathways and accumulation of trioses, dicarbonyl aldehydes, and diacylglycerols, together with NADH/NAD^+ redox imbalance, oxidative stress, and PKC activation.
- ROS, peroxynitrites, lipid peroxidation, and glycation cause chemical modification of macromolecules, leading to the loss of their function, nucleic acid alterations, and apoptosis.
- The interaction of AGE with its receptor RAGE, oxidative stress, and Ang II activates different signaling pathways and transcription factors, including NFκB, which induce the expression of pro-inflammatory, pro-fibrotic, and prothrombotic proteins, such as TNFα, VEGF, TGFβ, and PAI-1.
- All these processes lead to endothelial dysfunction, tissue alterations (inflammation, hypertrophy, fibrosis, apoptosis, etc.), and organ dysfunction characteristic of neuropathy, retinopathy, neuropathy, and diabetic cardiovascular disease.

Questions and Answers

1. Endothelial dysfunction is considered as the initial step in the development of vascular complications and is induced by:
   (a) Low bioavailability of nitric oxide
   (b) Uncoupling of the endothelial nitric oxide synthase
   (c) Oxidative stress and TNFα
   (d) Glycolysis
   (e) ATP
2. The activation of PKC delta caused by hyperglycemia is dependent on:
   (a) Epithelial mesenchymal transition
   (b) Increased synthesis of diacylglycerols induced by the accumulation of trioses
   (c) Release of the apoptosis-inducing factor (AIF) from the mitochondria
   (d) Increased expression of NADPH oxidase
   (e) Direct action of TGFβ
3. The fibrosis of renal glomerulus associated with diabetic nephropathy is due to:
   (a) Increased synthesis and release and action of TGFβ
   (b) Increased vascular permeability
   (c) Depuration of methylglyoxal
   (d) Increased activity of antioxidant enzymes
   (e) Reduced production of Ang II
4. The role of the activation of polyol pathway in the development of diabetic complications is directly due to:
   (a) Formation of diacylglycerol and activation of PKC
   (b) Formation of AGEs and chemical alteration of macromolecules.
   (c) Induction of the expression of TGFβ and fibrosis
   (d) Osmotic stress by the accumulation of sorbitol and NADH/NAD^+ imbalance
   (e) Induction of the production of ROS by NADPH oxidase
5. The role of the activation of the hexosamine pathway in the development of diabetic complications is mediated by:
   (a) Induction of signaling by activation of RAGE
   (b) Formation of diacylglycerol and activation of PKC
   (c) Induction of the expression of TGFβ and fibrosis
   (d) Osmotic stress by the accumulation of sorbitol and NADH/NAD+ imbalance
   (e) Formation of UDP-N-acetylglucosamine and O-GlcNAcylation of proteins
6. The role of glycation in the development of diabetic complications is due to:
   (a) Production of AGEs and activation of RAGE
   (b) Formation of diacylglycerol and activation of PKC
   (c) Induction of the expression of TGFβ and fibrosis
   (d) Osmotic stress by the accumulation of sorbitol and NADH/NAD^+ imbalance
   (e) Formation of UDP-N-acetylglucosamine and O-GlcNAcylation of proteins
7. Dicarbonyl stress is associated with:
   (a) Accumulation of sorbitol
   (b) Accumulation of diacylglycerols and activation of PKC
   (c) Accumulation of glyoxal and methylglyoxal
   (d) Production of pro-inflammatory cytokines
   (e) Production of AGEs
8. In a microenvironment with excessive concentration of glucose, ROS are produced by:
   (a) Aldose reductase and sorbitol dehydrogenase
   (b) Electron transport chain and NADPH oxidase
   (c) Glutamine:fructose-6-phosphate amidotransferase
   (d) Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase
   (e) Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase
9. Oxidative stress contributes to vascular complications by:
   (a) Activation of the transcription factor NFκB and production of TNFα
   (b) Inhibition of the glycolytic enzyme glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH)

(c) Oxidative modification of macromolecules
(d) Induction of apoptosis by DNA damage
(e) a, b, c, and d.

10. TNFα contributes to diabetic complications by:
(a) NFkB activation
(b) Induction of NADPH oxidase expression
(c) Promotes leukocyte recruitment at the endothelial surface
(d) Induces apoptosis in some cells
(e) a, b, c, and d.

Correct Answers

1. (c) Oxidative stress and TNFα
TNFα induces the expression of MCP-1 and cellular adhesion molecules in the endothelium, which leads to recruitment of leukocytes to the surface of endothelium initiating endothelial dysfunction. Oxidative stress induces the production of TNFα, and ROS reacts with NO, reducing the availability of NO, which is a consequence of endothelial dysfunction and reduced availability of BH4, a coenzyme required for NO synthesis.
2. (b) Increased synthesis of diacylglycerols induced by the accumulation of trioses
Diacylglycerols accumulated in the membrane activate PKCβ and PKCδ; diacylglycerols are produced from trioses accumulated during glycolysis; because of that, the enzyme glyceraldehyde 3-phospate dehydrogenase is inactivated by oxidative stress, and the low availability of its coenzyme NAD^+ is a consequence of the NADH/NAD^+ imbalance.
3. (a) Increased synthesis and release and action of TGFβ
TGFβ is a major driver for renal fibrosis, and the inhibition of TGFβ signaling significantly reduces renal fibrosis. TGFβ induces the synthesis of extracellular matrix proteins. Renal fibrosis also can be induced by AGEs, TNFα, PDGF, and chemokines in a TGFβ-dependent and TGFβ-independent manner.
4. (d) Osmotic stress by the accumulation of sorbitol and NADH/NAD^+ imbalance
In the polyol pathway, sorbitol is accumulated as an intermediate product, because cell membrane is impermeable to sorbitol and prevents its efflux. Sorbitol accumulation induces osmotic imbalance, water intake, and cellular death. In the second step of this pathway catalyzed by sorbitol dehydrogenase, NAD^+ is reduced to NADH, contributing to NADH/NAD^+ imbalance.
5. (e) Formation of UDP-N-acetylglucosamine and O-GlcNAcylation of proteins
Overproduced fructose 6-phospate during glycolysis is used by the hexosamine pathway for the production of UDP-GlcNAc; the N-acetylglucosamine of this compound is transferred during *O*-linked glycosylation of proteins (*O*-GlcNAcylation) altering their functions and inducing the expression of TGFβ, PAI-1, and VEGF-A.
6. (a) Production of AGEs and activation of RAGE
The effects of AGEs are mediated by the chemical modification of macromolecules or by its interaction with their receptor RAGE. The binding of AGEs with RAGE leads to the generation of oxidative stress, inducing proliferative, migratory, inflammatory, thrombotic, and fibrotic reactions, which leads to alterations associated with diabetic vascular complications.
7. (c) Accumulation of glyoxal and methylglyoxal
Glyoxal and methylglyoxal are α-dicarbonyls and reactive aldehydes, produced as by-products of glycolysis by fragmentation of triose phosphates. These aldehydes react with proteins and nucleic acid (glycation) producing endogenous AGEs and also induce apoptosis in vascular cells fomenting endothelial dysfunction and progression of vascular complications.
8. (b) Electron transport chain and NADPH oxidase
In excessive glucose environment, the principal sources of ROS are the electron transfer chain in the mitochondria and NADPH oxidase. There are other sources like uncoupled nitric oxide synthase.
9. (e) a, b, c, and d
Enhanced ROS levels induce oxidative modification of macromolecules altering their functions and cell integrity. DNA damage leads to NADH/NAD imbalance and apoptosis or necrosis. Oxidation and NADH/NAD^+ imbalance inhibits the activity of GAPDH. Also, ROS induce several signaling pathways, including the activation of NFκB and production of TNFα.
10. (e) a, b, c, and d
TNFα contribute to vascular complications through multiple actions, including the induction of NADPH oxidase and increased ROS production, activation of NFκB, transcription factor that induces the expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines, and MCP-1. Also it induces the expression of adhesion molecules promoting leukocyte adhesion at endothelial surface.

Glossary

Advanced oxidized protein products (AOPP) products of oxidative modifications of proteins by ROS and hypochlorite, derived from the action of myeloperoxidase from activated leukocytes

Dicarbonyl stress abnormal accumulation of reactive aldehydes like methylglyoxal and deoxyglucosone, which lead to endogenous glycation of proteins and DNA, associated with cell and tissue damage in chronic diseases and aging

Endothelial dysfunction alteration of the regulatory function of endothelium on the vascular tone and properties that conduce to reduced vasodilatation and a pro-inflammatory or prothrombotic state

Glycation the nonenzymatic reaction between glucose and reducing sugars with amino groups of proteins, lipids, or nucleic acids, which leads to the production of advanced glycation products or AGEs

Hexosamine signaling pathway pathway activated in hyperglycemic condition, where fructose 1-phosfate an intermediate of glycolysis is used in the formation of UDP-GlcNAc (hexosamine pathway), followed by the *O*-GlcNAcylation of proteins

Lipid peroxidation oxidation of polyunsaturated fatty acids by ROS in cellular membranes through free radical chain reactions, with the formation of lipid hydroperoxides as primary products, which may decompose and lead to the formation of reactive lipid electrophiles like 4-hydroxy-2-nonenal

Reductive stress redox imbalance between NADH and NAD+ driven by high metabolic flux in the citric acid cycle and activation of the polyol pathway and of poly ADP-ribose polymerase

Parthanatos mechanism of caspase-independent type of apoptosis, where the DNA fragmentation and cell death result of the translocation to the nucleus and activity of nucleases like the macrophage inhibitory factor

References

1. Bailey CJ, Aschner P, Del Prato S, LaSalle J, Ji L, Matthaei S. Global partnership for effective diabetes management. Individualized glycaemic targets and pharmacotherapy in type 2 diabetes. Diab Vasc Dis Res. 2013;10(5):397–409.
2. Guariguata L, Whiting DR, Hambleton I, Beagley J, Linnenkamp U, Shaw JE. Global estimates of diabetes prevalence for 2013 and projections for 2035. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2014;103(2):137–49.
3. Yan LJ. Pathogenesis of chronic hyperglycemia: from reductive stress to oxidative stress. J Diabetes Res. 2014;2014:137919.
4. Wu J, Jin Z, Zheng H, Yan LJ. Sources and implications of NADH/NAD(+) redox imbalance in diabetes and its complications. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes. 2016;9:145–53.
5. Shah MS, Brownlee M. Molecular and cellular mechanisms of cardiovascular disorders in diabetes. Circ Res. 2016;118(11):1808–29.
6. Chaurasia B, Summers SA. Ceramides - lipotoxic inducers of metabolic disorders. Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2015;26(10):538–50. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tem.2015.07.006.
7. Manda G, Checherita AI, Comanescu MV, Hinescu ME. Redox signaling in diabetic nephropathy: hypertrophy versus death choices in mesangial cells and podocytes. Mediat Inflamm. 2015;2015:604208. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/604208.
8. Hashimoto Y, Yamagishi S-I, Mizukami H, et al. Polyol pathway and diabetic nephropathy revisited: early tubular cell changes and glomerulopathy in diabetic mice overexpressing human aldose reductase. J Diab Invest. 2011;2(2):111–22.
9. Du XL, Edelstein D, Rossetti L, Fantus IG, Goldberg H, Ziyadeh F, Wu J, Brownlee M. Hyperglycemia-induced mitochondrial superoxide overproduction activates the hexosamine pathway and induces plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 expression by increasing Sp1 glycosylation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2000;97(22):12222–6.
10. Yamagishi S, Nakamura N, Suematsu M, Kaseda K, Matsui T. Advanced glycation end products: a molecular target for vascular complications in diabetes. Mol Med. 2015;21(Suppl 1):S32–40.
11. Kowluru RA, Kowluru A, Mishra M, Kumar B. Oxidative stress and epigenetic modifications in the pathogenesis of diabetic retinopathy. Prog Retinal Eye Res. 2015;48:40–61.
12. Chen K, Ho TS, Lin G, Tan KL, Rasband MN, Bellen HJ. Loss of Frataxin activates the iron/sphingolipid/PDK1/Mef2 pathway in mammals. Elife. 2016;30(5):e20732. https://doi.org/10.7554/eLife.20732.
13. Yao H, Hwang JW, Moscat J, Diaz-Meco MT, Leitges M, Kishore N, Li X, Rahman I. Protein kinase C zeta mediates cigarette smoke/aldehyde- and lipopolysaccharide-induced lung inflammation and histone modifications. J Biol Chem. 2010 Feb 19;285(8):5405–16. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M109.041418.
14. Rabbani N, Xue M, Thornalley PJ. Dicarbonyls and glyoxalase in disease mechanisms and clinical therapeutics. Glycoconj J. 2016;33(4):513–25.
15. Nigro C, Leone A, Raciti GA, Longo M, Mirra P, Formisano P, et al. Methylglyoxal-glyoxalase 1 balance: the root of vascular damage. Int J Mol Sci. 2017;18(1) https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms18010188.
16. Giacco F, Brownlee M. Oxidative stress and diabetic complications. Circ Res. 2010;107:1058–70.
17. Hallan S, Sharma K. The role of mitochondria in diabetic kidney disease. Curr Diab Rep. 2016 Jul;16(7):61. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11892-016-0748-0.
18. Peiró C, Romacho T, Azcutia V, Villalobos L, Fernández E, Bolaños JP, et al. Inflammation, glucose, and vascular cell damage: the role of the pentose phosphate pathway. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2016;15:82.
19. Sharma V, Sharma PL. Role of different molecular pathways in the development of diabetes-induced nephropathy. J Diabetes Metab. 2013;1(Suppl 9):article 004.
20. Behl T, Kaur I, Kotwani A. Implication of oxidative stress in progression of diabetic retinopathy. Surv Ophthalmol. 2016;61:187–96.
21. Dagher Z, Park YS, Asnaghi V, Hoehn T, Gerhardinger C, Lorenzi M. Studies of rat and human retinas predict a role for the polyol pathway in human diabetic retinopathy. Diabetes. 2004;53:2404–11.
22. Katakami N, Kaneto H, Takahara M, Matsuoka TA, Imamura K, Ishibashi F, et al. Aldose reductase C-106T gene polymorphism is associated with diabetic retinopathy in Japanese patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2011;92:e57–60.
23. Sorbinil Retinopathy Trial Research Group. A randomized trial of sorbinil, an aldose reductase inhibitor, in diabetic retinopathy. Arch Ophthalmol. 1990;108:1234–44.
24. Sorbinil Retinopathy Trial Research Group. The sorbinil retinopathy trial: neuropathy results. Sorbinil retinopathy trial research group. Neurology. 1993;43(6):1141–9.
25. Safi SZ, Qvist R, Kumar S, Batumalaie K, Ismail IS. Molecular mechanisms of diabetic retinopathy, general preventive strategies, and novel therapeutic targets. Biomed Res Int. 2014;2014:801269. https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/801269.
26. Brownlee M. The pathobiology of diabetic complications: a unifying mechanism. Diabetes. 2005;54:1615–25.
27. Du X, Matsumura T, Edelstein D, Rossetti L, Zsengeller Z, Szabo C, Brownlee M. Inhibition of GAPDH activity by poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase activates three major pathways of hyperglycemic damage in endothelial cells. J Clin Investig. 2003;112:1049–57.
28. Donovan K, Alekseev O, Qi X, Cho W, Azizkhan-Clifford J. O-GlcNAc modification of transcription factor Sp1 mediates hyperglycemia-induced VEGF-A upregulation in retinal cells. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci. 2014;55(12):7862–73.

29. Sayeski PP, Kudlow JE. Glucose metabolism to glucosamine is necessary for glucose stimulation of transforming growth factor-alpha gene transcription. J Biol Chem. 1996;271(25):15237–43.
30. Makino A, Dai A, Han Y, Youssef KD, Wang W, Donthamsetty R, et al. O-GlcNAcase overexpression reverses coronary endothelial cell dysfunction in type 1 diabetic mice. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol. 2015;309(9):C593–9.
31. Geraldes P, Hiraoka-Yamamoto J, Matsumoto M, Clermont A, Leitges M, Marette A, Aiello LP, Kern TS, King GL. Activation of PKC-delta and SHP-1 by hyperglycemia causes vascular cell apoptosis and diabetic retinopathy. Nat Med. 2009;15:1298–306.
32. Mima A, Kitada M, Geraldes P, Li Q, Matsumoto M, Mizutani K, et al. Glomerular VEGF resistance induced by PKCδ/SHP-1 activation and contribution to diabetic nephropathy. FASEB J. 2012;26(7):2963–74.
33. Khamaisi M, Katagiri S, Keenan H, Park K, Maeda Y, Li Q, et al. PKCδ inhibition normalizes the wound-healing capacity of diabetic human fibroblasts. J Clin Invest. 2016;126(3):837–53.
34. Sheetz MJ, Aiello LP, Davis MD, Danis R, Bek T, Cunha-Vaz J, Shahri N, Berg PH, MBDL and MBCU Study Groups. The effect of the oral PKC β inhibitor ruboxistaurin on vision loss in two phase 3 studies. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci. 2013;54(3):1750–7. https://doi.org/10.1167/iovs.12-11055.
35. Li H, Nakamura S, Miyazaki S, Morita T, Suzuki M, Pischetsrieder M, Niwa T. *N* 2-carboxyethyl-2′-deoxyguanosine, a DNA glycation marker, in kidneys and aortas of diabetic and uremic patients. Kidney Int. 2006;69(2):388–92.
36. Jaramillo R, Shuck SC, Chan YS, Liu X, Bates SE, Lim PP, Tamae D, Lacoste S, O'Connor TR, Termini J. DNA Advanced glycation end products (DNA-AGEs) are elevated in urine and tissue in an animal model of type 2 diabetes. Chem Res Toxicol. 2017;30(2):689–98.
37. Aso Y, Inukai T, Tayama K, Takemura Y. Serum concentrations of advanced glycation end products are associated with the development of atherosclerosis as well as diabetic microangiopathy in patients with type 2 diabetes. Acta Diabetol. 2000;37:87–92.
38. Aubert CE, Michel PL, Gillery P, Jaisson S, Fonfrede M, Morel F, Hartemann A, Bourron O. Association of peripheral neuropathy with circulating advanced glycation end products, soluble receptor for advanced glycation end products and other risk factors in patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2014;30(8):679–85.
39. Waris S, Winklhofer-Roob BM, Roob JM, Fuchs S, Sourij H, Rabbani N, Thornalley PJ. Increased DNA dicarbonyl glycation and oxidation markers in patients with type 2 diabetes and link to diabetic nephropathy. J Diabetes Res. 2015;2015:915486. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/915486.
40. Ramasamy R, Yan SF, Schmidt AM. Receptor for AGE (RAGE): signaling mechanisms in the pathogenesis of diabetes and its complications. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2011;1243:88–102.
41. Ramasamy R, Shekhtman A, Schmidt AM. The multiple faces of RAGE--opportunities for therapeutic intervention in aging and chronic disease. Expert Opin Ther Targets. 2016;20(4):431–46.
42. Stefano GB, Challenger S, Kream RM. Hyperglycemia-associated alterations in cellular signaling and dysregulated mitochondrial bioenergetics in human metabolic disorders. Eur J Nutr. 2016;55(8):2339–45.
43. Li JH, Huang XR, Zhu HJ, Oldfield M, Cooper M, Truong LD, et al. Advanced glycation end products activate Smad signaling via TGF-beta-dependent and independent mechanisms: implications for diabetic renal and vascular disease. FASEB J. 2004;18:176–8.
44. Lan HY. Transforming growth factor-β/Smad signalling in diabetic nephropathy. Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol. 2012;39(8):731–8.
45. Bierhaus A, Schiekofer S, Schwaninger M, Andrassy M, Humpert PM, Chen J, et al. Diabetes-associated sustained activation of the transcription factor nuclear factor-kappaB. Diabetes. 2001;50(12):2792–808.
46. Hudson BI, Kalea AZ, Del Mar Arriero M, Harja E, Boulanger E, D'Agati V, Schmidt AM. Interaction of the RAGE cytoplasmic domain with diaphanous-1 is required for ligand-stimulated cellular migration through activation of Rac1 and Cdc42. J Biol Chem. 2008;283(49):34457–68.
47. Schmidt AM. 2016 *ATVB* Plenary Lecture. Receptor for advanced glycation end products and implications for the pathogenesis and treatment of cardiometabolic disorders: spotlight on the macrophage. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2017;37:613–21.
48. Lapolla A, Flamini R, Dalla Vedova A, Senesi A, Reitano R, Fedele D, Basso E, Seraglia R, Traldi P. Glyoxal and methylglyoxal levels in diabetic patients: quantitative determination by a new GC/MS method. Clin Chem Lab Med. 2003;41:1166–73.
49. Nigro C, Leone A, Raciti GA, Longo M, Mirra P, Formisano P, et al. Methylglyoxal-glyoxalase 1 balance: the root of vascular damage. Int J Mol Sci. 2017;18(1):18. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms18010188.
50. Liu GH, Qu J, Shen X. NF-kB/p65 antagonizes Nrf2-ARE pathway by depriving CBP from Nrf2 and facilitating recruitment of HDAC3 to MafK. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2008;1783:713–27.
51. Figarola JL, Singhal J, Rahbar S, Awasthi S, Singhal SS. LR-90 prevents methylglyoxal-induced oxidative stress and apoptosis in human endothelial cells. Apoptosis. 2014;19(5):776–88.
52. Maessen DE, Hanssen NM, Scheijen JL, van der Kallen CJ, van Greevenbroek MM, Stehouwer CD, Schalkwijk CG. Post–glucose load plasma α-dicarbonyl concentrations are increased in individuals with impaired glucose metabolism and type 2 diabetes: The CODAM Study. Diabetes Care. 2015;8(5):913–20.
53. Mueller CF, Laude K, McNally JS, Harrison DG. Redox mechanisms in blood vessels. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2005;25:274–8.
54. Ayala A, Muñoz MF, Argüelles S. Lipid peroxidation: production, metabolism, and signaling mechanisms of malondialdehyde and 4-hydroxy-2-nonenal. Oxidative Med Cell Longev. 2014;2014:360438.
55. Zheng S, Zhong ZM, Qin S, Chen GX, Wu Q, Zeng JH, et al. Advanced oxidation protein products induce inflammatory response in fibroblast-like synoviocytes through NADPH oxidase -dependent activation of NF-κB. Cell Physiol Biochem. 2013;32(4):972–85.
56. Guo ZJ, Niu HX, Hou FF, Zhang L, Fu N, Nagai R, et al. Advanced oxidation protein products activate vascular endothelial cells via a RAGE-mediated signaling pathway. Antioxid Redox Signal. 2008 Oct;10(10):1699–712.
57. Wang Y, An R, Umanah GK, Park H, Nambiar K, Eacker SM, et al. A nuclease that mediates cell death induced by DNA damage and poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase-1. Science. 2016;354(6308) https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aad6872.
58. Zakaria EM, El-Bassossy HM, El-Maraghy NN, Ahmed AF, Ali AA. PARP-1 inhibition alleviates diabetic cardiac complications in experimental animals. Eur J Pharmacol. 2016;791:444–54.
59. Zakaria EM, El-Maraghy NN, Ahmed AF, Ali AA, El-Bassossy HM. PARP inhibition ameliorates nephropathy in an animal model of type 2 diabetes: focus on oxidative stress, inflammation, and fibrosis. Naunyn Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1007/s00210-017-1360-1369.
60. Guzyk MM, Tykhomyrov AA, Nedzvetsky VS, Prischepa IV, Grinenko TV, Yanitska LV, Kuchmerovska TM. Polymerase-1 (PARP-1) inhibitors reduce reactive gliosis and improve angiostatin levels in retina of diabetic rats. Neurochem Res. 2016;41(10):2526–37.
61. Qin WD, Liu GL, Wang J, Wang H, Zhang JN, Zhang F, et al. Poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase 1 inhibition protects cardiomyocytes from inflammation and apoptosis in diabetic cardiomyopathy. Oncotarget. 2016;7(24):35618–31.

62. Ceriello A, Testa R, Genovese S. Clinical implications of oxidative stress and potential role of antioxidants in diabetic vascular complications. Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis. 2016; https://doi.org/10.1016/j.numecd.2016.01.006.
63. Adaikalakoteswari A, Rema M, Mohan V, Balasubramanyam M. Oxidative DNA damage and augmentation of poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase/nuclear factor kappa B signaling in patients with type2 diabetes and microangiopathy. Int J Biochem Cell Biol. 2007;39(9):1673–84.
64. Goldberg RB. Cytokine and cytokine-like inflammation markers, endothelial dysfunction, and imbalanced coagulation in development of diabetes and its complications. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009 Sep;94(9):3171–82. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2008-2534.
65. Sun YB, Qu X, Caruana G, Li J. The origin of renal fibroblasts/myofibroblasts and the signals that trigger fibrosis. Differentiation. 2016;92(3):102–7.
66. Loeffler I, Wolf G. Epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition in diabetic nephropathy: fact or fiction? Cell. 2015;4(4):631–52.
67. Meng XM, Tang PM, Li J, Lan HY. TGF-β/Smad signaling in renal fibrosis. Front Physiol. 2015;6:82.
68. Yan N, Wen L, Peng R, Li H, Liu H, Peng H, et al. Naringenin Ameliorated Kidney Injury through Let-7a/TGFBR1 Signaling in diabetic nephropathy. J Diabetes Res. 2016;2016:8738760. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/8738760.
69. Bauer V, Sotníková R. Nitric oxide - the endothelium-derived relaxing factor and its role in endothelial functions. Gen Physiol Biophys. 2010;29(4):319–40.
70. Li H, Oehrlein SA, Wallerath T, Ihrig-Biedert I, Wohlfart P, Ulshöfer T, et al. Activation of protein kinase C alpha and/or epsilon enhances transcription of the human endothelial nitric oxide synthase gene. Mol Pharmacol. 1998;53:630–7.
71. Hink U, Li H, Mollnau H, Oelze M, Matheis E, Hartmann M, et al. Mechanisms underlying endothelial dysfunction in diabetes mellitus. Circ Res. 2001;88:E14–22.
72. Liang M, Wang J, Xie C, Yang Y, Tian JW, Xue YM, Hou FF. Increased plasma advanced oxidation protein products is an early marker of endothelial dysfunction in type 2 diabetes patients without albuminuria 2. J Diabetes. 2014;6(5):417–26.
73. Rahman MH, Jha MK, Kim JH, Nam Y, Lee MG, Go Y, et al. Pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase-mediated glycolytic metabolic shift in the dorsal root ganglion drives painful diabetic neuropathy. J Biol Chem. 2016;291(11):6011–25.

Suggested/Further Reading

Bernardi S, Michelli A, Zuolo G, Candido R, Fabris B. Update on RAAS modulation for the treatment of diabetic cardiovascular disease. J Diabetes Res 2016;2016:8917578. In this review the role of the renin-angiotensin aldosterone system in diabetic cardiovascular disease is analyzed, with emphasis on the modulation of this system as the first-line therapy for the prevention of the development of cardiovascular disease in diabetic patients.

Nigro C, Leone A, Raciti GA, Longo M, Mirra P, Formisano P et al. Methylglyoxal-glyoxalase 1 balance: the root of vascular damage. Int J Mol Sci 2017 18;18(1). https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms18010188. This review describes the metabolism of methylglyoxal and the molecular mechanism of dicarbonyl stress in the induction of endothelial dysfunction and progression of vascular damage and microvascular diabetic complications.

Ramasamy R, Shekhtman A, Schmidt AM. The multiple faces of RAGE--opportunities for therapeutic intervention in aging and chronic disease. Expert Opin Ther Targets 2016;20(4):431–46. The central role of RAGE in ageing and chronic diseases are discussed, considering its multiple ligands, its signaling mechanism, its role in micro and macro-vascular complications in diabetes and finally the use of RAGE antagonists in preclinical and clinical studies.

Román-Pintos LM, Villegas-Rivera G, Rodríguez-Carrizalez AD, Miranda-Díaz AG, Cardona-Muñoz EG. Diabetic polyneuropathy in type 2 diabetes mellitus: inflammation, oxidative stress, and mitochondrial function. J Diabetes Res 2016;2016:3425617. In this review the mechanism of diabetic polyneuropathy is described, considering inflammation and oxidative stress as major causes of this complication; additional risk factors and methods of diagnosis and treatment of diabetic polyneuropathy are analyzed.

Waris S, Winklhofer-Roob BM, Roob JM, Fuchs S, Sourij H, Rabbani N, Thornalley PJ. Increased DNA dicarbonyl glycation and oxidation markers in patients with type 2 diabetes and link to diabetic nephropathy. J Diabetes Res 2015;2015:915486. In this paper increased markers of DNA damage by glycation in plasma and urine in patients with type 2 diabetes were further increased in patients with diabetic nephropathy.

Diabetes and Cardiovascular Disease

46

Daniel Coutiño-Castelán, Arturo Abundes-Velasco, Félix Damas de los Santos, Eduardo A. Arias Sánchez, Celso Mendoza González, Arturo Méndez Ortiz, José L. Morales, José Luis Briseño de la Cruz, César Eduardo Hernández Fonseca, and Piero Custodio Sánchez

Introduction

There are those who consider diabetes mellitus a cardiovascular disease since the most common and definitive final outcome or with major sequelae is presented and depends on this system. In Mexico, the incidence of diabetic patients in the total number of patients treated by coronary intervention is higher than the world average, accounting for more than 40% of patients treated. Despite progress of contemporary pharmacological therapy in improving the management of diabetes and the more generalized use of statins and aspirin, rates of progression and regression of atherosclerotic plaque remain a prevalent issue among diabetic patients, as described by Raisuke [1] (see Fig. 46.1).

Since the 1980s Collwell described the complexity of this problem in a classic paper [2] where he mentions that vascular disease in the diabetic is multifactorial with a wide myriad of derangements including endothelial, platelet, smooth muscle, lipoprotein, and coagulation abnormalities, all contributing to accelerated atherosclerosis, and has since proposed that a full understanding of the pathogenesis of this process could help design more effective preventive therapeutic approaches. The preventive approach with antiplatelet agents in the diabetic patient seems to be insufficient, since it is only focused on platelet function, forgetting the important contribution of the altered coagulation cascade in the diabetic, thrombo-fibrin and resistance to fibrinolysis. That is why currently there are multiple studies attempting to incorporate into the treatment some component that improves fibrinolysis of the thrombus and thus increase the therapeutic spectrum that decreases the cardiovascular risk by this mechanism [3]. This is especially important in diabetic patients that undergo coronary intervention. Significant advances have been made in the knowledge of pathophysiology in relation to endothelial function, the role of inflammation, lipoproteins, and glucose metabolism, which begin to produce concrete results in the reduction of cardiovascular risk, for example, the use of inhibitors of sodium-glucose transport proteins has shown to decrease the occurrence of cardiovascular disease and mortality, compared to other types of hypoglycemic therapies [4]. It has been possible to modulate excessive vascular response and neointimal hyperplasia after the implantation of drug-eluting stents as demonstrated in multiple studies validated with ultrasound [5]; however, the main problem in the diabetic remains the progression of new plaques in sites not treated with stents. Advances in vascular intervention have been spectacular in the last few years; noninvasive and invasive imaging technology (IVUS, OCT) has greatly aided the understanding of vascular pathology in the diabetic, its evolution, and behavior under diverse therapeutic approaches (pharmacological and stents). There is no doubt that bioabsorbable stents are already a reality as current therapeutic tools [6]; however, there are certain technological improvements that will make the clinical results, especially in diabetic patients, be equated with nondiabetics.

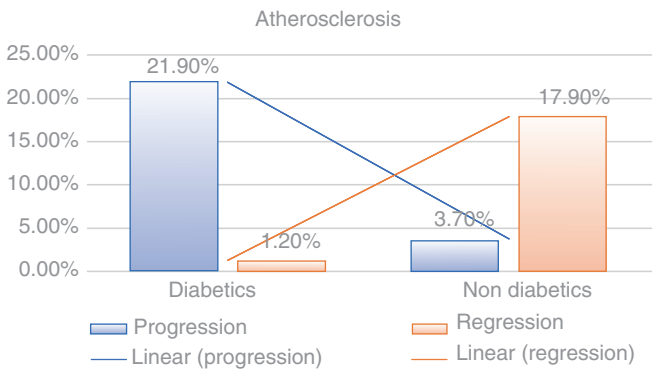


Fig. 46.1 Progression/regression of atherosclerotic plaques with contemporary treatment in patients with and without diabetes

D. Coutiño-Castelán · A. Abundes-Velasco · F. D. de los Santos
E. A. Arias Sánchez · C. M. González (✉) J. L. Morales
J. L. B. de la Cruz · C. E. H. Fonseca · P. C. Sánchez
National Institute of Cardiology, Mexico City, Mexico

A. M. Ortiz
Instituto Nacional de Cardiología, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_46

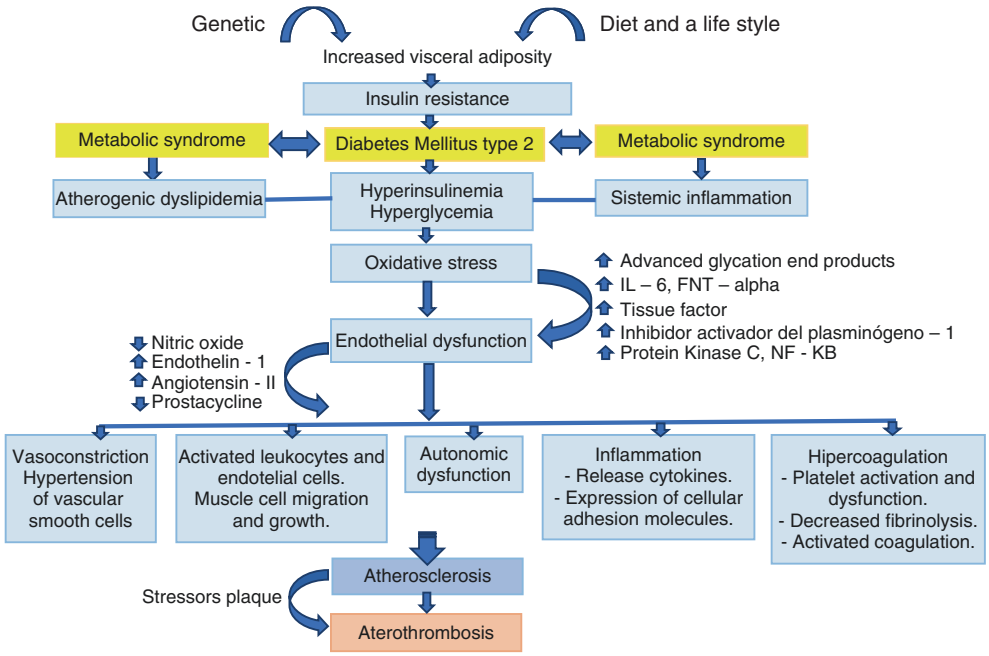


Fig. 46.2 Pathophysiology of atherosclerosis in diabetes mellitus

The bet on this adventure could be the search for a platform that could treat younger or incipient plaques and seek their "cure" preventing coronary lesions from reaching irreversible states in terms of anatomy and function.

We are glimpsing the future on the shoulders of giants.

Ischemic Heart Disease in Diabetic Patients

Epidemiology

Coronary artery disease is the leading cause of death in patients with diabetes mellitus [7]. Diabetes mellitus is associated with a two- to fourfold increased risk of coronary artery disease and stroke [8–10] and with 2–3 times the risk of an acute myocardial infarction [11]. The prevalence of coronary disease increases from 2% to 4% in the general population to as high as 55% in diabetic patients [12]. The excess risk of cardiovascular disease is present in patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus, type 2 diabetes mellitus, prediabetic, obese, and patients with metabolic syndrome [13]. Survival is worse in the presence of coronary artery disease, and their mortality rate is higher after myocardial infarction [14, 15]. Diabetes is present in 18–44% of patients with coronary artery disease [16–18], while in the rest it is usual to find certain degree of dysglycemia; and previously undiagnosed diabetes can be found in up to 14–22% of patients [16]. Diabetic subjects typically have more severe coronary disease, more extensive coronary calcification, a high prevalence of left main disease, and a reduction in the recruitment of collateral circulation [19–21]. In the United States, approximately one-third of all percutaneous coronary interventions are performed in patients with diabetes, and one-quarter of patients undergoing coronary bypass surgery have diabetes [22].

Pathophysiology of Atherosclerosis and Endothelial Dysfunction. Metabolic Syndrome

There are several potential mechanisms through which diabetes causes accelerated formation of atherosclerotic plaques [23]; factors such as hyperglycemia, dyslipidemia, and insulin resistance lead to endothelial dysfunction [24, 25] and alterations in platelet function and coagulation [26]. All these mechanisms converge to promote plaque formation and increase its burden and complexity (Fig. 46.2).

Treatment of Risk Factors and Its Impact on Primary Prevention

Hypertension Treatment

Scientific evidence of antihypertensive treatment in diabetic patients. Lifestyle changes and arterial pressure goals in diabetic patients

Hypertension is twice as common in diabetic patients as in nondiabetic patients [27]; it is postulated that hyperinsulinemia, arterial stiffness, and the expansion of extracellular volume play an important role in its presentation. This association significantly increases the risk of cardiovascular death [9, 28, 29], coronary disease [30], ventricular hypertrophy [31], heart failure [32], stroke [33], retinopathy, and nephropathy [34, 35]. Clinical trials have demonstrated the benefits of improving blood pressure [36]; thus, with each sustained reduction of 10 mmHg in systolic blood pressure,

there is a 15% reduction in the risk of cardiovascular disease, a lower risk of macrovascular and microvascular disease, and a reduction in mortality [37–39]. Diabetic patients have a higher prevalence of isolated systolic hypertension and are more resistant to treatment [40–43]. In the EUROASPIRE IV study, only 54% of patients achieved an adequate blood pressure [44]. Due to dysautonomic disorders, these patients suffer a lower reduction of nocturnal blood pressure, a higher heart rate, and a greater predisposition to orthostatic hypotension. Changes in lifestyle such as weight loss, low-sodium diet, and exercise produce beneficial effects [45]. The DASH diet offers useful recommendations, such as reducing the sodium intake (<1500 mg/day), reducing the excess body weight, increasing consumption of fruits and vegetables and low-fat foods, while avoiding excessive alcohol consumption and increasing the physical activity [46]. Key management guidelines, including the Eighth Joint National Committee (JNC-8) [47] and the European Society of Hypertension and Cardiology [48], suggest that the goal of blood pressure in these patients should be less than 140/90 mmHg. Previous recommendations suggested a pressure goal of less than 130/80 mmHg. In the ACCORD-BP study, they compared intensive blood pressure control (systolic pressure < 120 mmHg) vs standard pressure control (systolic pressure < 140 mmHg). They found a statistically significant reduction in the annual incidence of stroke in the intensive control group, but there were no differences in all-cause mortality and in the primary point of nonfatal myocardial infarction/nonfatal stroke/cardiovascular death. Serious adverse events were reported in the intensive treatment arm, such as a significant increase in serum creatinine above 1.5 mg/dl, hyperkalemia, hypotension, and syncope [49].

Contrastingly, the results of the recent SPRINT study, performed in patients with systolic blood pressure greater than 130 mmHg and high cardiovascular risk, but without diabetes, showed a clear benefit in intensive treatment mortality. These results have again fanned the debate about the optimal blood pressure goal [50]. A meta-analysis, including 31 randomized studies and more than 71,000 hypertensive diabetics, reported that intensive blood pressure control significantly reduces the risk of stroke but fails to reduce the incidence of myocardial infarction or total mortality [51]. Although it is widely acceptable to achieve a systolic blood pressure <130/80 mmHg in most diabetic patients and <140–150/90 mmHg in elderly diabetic patients (>70–80 years), there is a lack of solid evidence to support this [52]. JNC-8 suggests that in adult white patients, the initial antihypertensive regimen should include any of the following drugs: a thiazide diuretic, a calcium channel blocker, an angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor (ACEI), or an angiotensin receptor blocker (BRA). In black adult patients, a thiazide diuretic or a calcium channel blocker should be included [47]. It is usually suggested to start with ACE inhibitors or BRA as a first line because of its cardioprotective and nephroprotective effects. ACE inhibitors or ARBs should be included in the treatment of patients with chronic kidney disease, and they are contraindicated in pregnancy [53]. Generally patients require treatment with two or more drugs to meet the goal [54]. If treatment goals cannot be achieved despite the use of three different antihypertensive drugs (including a diuretic), then secondary hypertension should be ruled out. Finally, it is recommended that blood pressure should be closely monitored and treatment should be adjusted to avoid excessive falls in blood pressure [52].

Antiplatelet Treatment

Platelets have an important role in hemostasis and atherothrombotic disease. They are the first to initiate hemostasis. Three stages are recognized in the formation of the thrombus: (1) platelet adhesion; (2) extension, activation, recruitment, and aggregation; and (3) perpetuation and stabilization of the clot. The damaged endothelium exposes the subendothelial extracellular matrix and initiates the platelet activation mediated by the GP-receptor complex Ib-IX-V which binds to vWF. The exposed collagen also activates the platelets via GP VI and GP Ia/IIa. During the extension phase, platelet factors including ADP, TxA2, epinephrine, serotonin, collagen, and thrombin are activated [55].

ASPIRIN Its mechanism of action is by irreversible inhibition of COX 1 and 2, which decreases the production of TxA2 and PGI2. Mature platelets express only COX-1, releasing it when the TP receptor is stimulated. Current guidelines recommend a loading dose of 150–300 mg of aspirin followed by 100 mg per day for life [56].

CLOPIDOGREL Eighty-five percent of the absorbed drug is hydrolyzed by the carboxylesterase in the liver and subsequently inactivated; the remainder 15% is converted by the CYP in two active metabolites: 2-oxo-clopidogrel and R-130964. Recommended dose is 300–600 mg (loading dose) followed by 75 mg daily [57]. The use of a 150 mg daily dose was considered beneficial; however, the GRAVITAS study did not show benefit in the short or medium term with this dosage [58]. A 12-month clopidogrel treatment in diabetic patients with low bleeding risk who have a first-generation DES has shown to reduce the incidence of myocardial infarction and death [59].

PRASUGREL More efficient biotransformation that depends on CYP3A4/5 and CYP2B6. The loading dose is 60 mg followed by 10 mg daily. It does not have as much variability as clopidogrel. TRITON TIMI 38 concluded higher efficacy when compared to clopidogrel but with a higher bleeding rate including fatal bleeding. It is contraindicated in patients over 75 years of age who weigh less than 60 kg and have a history of CVA [60]. In those weighing less than 60 kg, half the dose can be given safely [61].

TICAGRELOR It is an oral reversible inhibitor of P2Y12 that inhibits red cell recapture of adenosine (produces bradyarrhythmias). Its elimination is hepatic and is metabolized by the CYP3A. The loading dose is 180 mg followed by 90 mg every 12 hours. It has other adverse effects such as dyspnea, hyperuricemia, and ventricular pauses ≥3 sec. in the first week, limiting its use [62]. Dyspnea can be the sole manifestation of angina in diabetic patients, so we need to be careful not to interpret it as a side effect of the drug.

CILOSTAZOL Inhibits PDE III increasing cAMP levels in platelets, endothelium, and smooth muscle, acting as a vasodilator and anti-aggregant. The loading dose is 50 mg twice daily; if tolerated it is increased to 100 mg twice daily. The benefits are more marked in diabetics and patients with diffuse lesions with many stents. It produces headache, tachycardia, palpitations, soft stools, and diarrhea leading to drug withdrawal in up to 15% of patients. It should be avoided in patients with heart failure [63].

European guidelines for myocardial revascularization recommend the use of prasugrel and ticagrelor over clopidogrel, especially in diabetic patients, due to their lower variability and resistance, with a more stable and sustained therapeutic effect [57].

Lipid Treatment

Scientific evidence of lipid-lowering agents in diabetic patients

Multiple studies correlate high glucose and LDL with atherosclerotic coronary disease. Statins are grouped according to their intensity: low intensity (simvastatin 10 mg, pravastatin 10–20 mg, pitavastatin 1 mg), moderate intensity (atorvastatin 10–20 mg, rosuvastatin 5–10 mg, simvastatin 20–40 mg, pravastatin 20–40 mg, pitavastatin 2–4 mg), and high intensity (atorvastatin 40–80 mg, rosuvastatin 20–40 mg).

ATP IV guidelines recommend initiating treatment as primary prevention in diabetic patients with LDL >70 mg/dl between 40 and 75 years of age with a moderate-high dose. The goal of lipid-lowering therapy for secondary prevention is a LDL <70 mg/dl [64]. Statins have shown to reduce LDL levels by 25–35% with a 4% reduction in absolute mortality and relative risk by 30% a 42% reduction for coronary heart disease and 37% for revascularization. There is a linear relationship between LDL reduction and cardiovascular risk [65]. The HEART PROTECTION STUDY demonstrated the magnitude of benefit of statins at any LDL level, reducing the rate of cardiovascular events by 24%, including diabetic patients [66].

STATINS Intensive therapy has been shown to further decrease the risk of cardiovascular death by 1.3% for all-cause mortality. The use of statins is recommended for all patients with atherosclerotic disease. Intensive therapy reduces mortality by 16%. The risk of clinical adverse events is greater in the first 6 months after an ACS. Intensive treatment reduces risk by 24% during the early stage (15–30 days), by reducing CRP and LDL. Patients who tolerate the intensive dose should continue this dose indefinitely [67].

NIACIN HDL goal as a secondary target should be >40 mg/dl. Niacin is useful for raising HDL cholesterol. There is a 1.7% risk reduction for every 1% that the HDL is increased with niacin, but its use is limited by its adverse effects. It can decrease and even reverse atherosclerosis according to the ARBITER study [68].

FIBRATES Little benefit. The ACCORD study demonstrated that they can be combined with statins without significantly increasing adverse effects in diabetic patients, showing only benefit in nonfatal infarction and reduction of revascularization [69].

EZETIMIBE Ezetimibe binds to the Niemann-Pick receptor reducing the absorption of sterols in the intestine. It reduces LDL cholesterol by 20% when combined with statins, but there is still no evidence of benefit. So far its indication is when LDL target levels are not achieved despite intensive treatment with statins [70].

GLITAZONES They stimulate the PPARg receptor improving serum glucose levels and are part of the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Pioglitazone in the PROactive study decreased LDL/HDL by 9.5% with a nonsignificant end point reduction, but relative mortality was reduced by 16%. It increases the risk of heart failure by 41% and is contraindicated when it already exists [71].

Hyperglycemia Treatment

Scientific evidence of the impact of the glucose lowering drugs on the cardiovascular risk of diabetic patients

For the purpose of this section, we will focus on drugs that have been shown to decrease cardiovascular risk in diabetic patients. Metformin, the only drug available in the biguanide class, was studied in the UKPDS trial [72], which randomized 4209 patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes mellitus to receive dietary restriction or sulfonylurea or insulin treatment or metformin in overweight patients. After a 10-year follow-up, there was a significant decrease in the relative risk of death from all causes of 13% with sulfonylurea or insulin versus dietary treatment and 27% with metformin versus dietary restriction. Significant reductions in the incidence of myocardial infarction were also observed in long-term follow-up. Because metformin has been shown to be safe, well tolerated, with low risk of hypoglycemia, and low cost and to decrease cardiovascular events, it has been proposed by international associations to be the first-line drug for type 2 diabe-

tes in the absence of contraindications and that it can be continued after starting insulin treatment [73, 74].

Sulfonylureas are the oldest glucose-lowering drugs. They have the highest rate of hypoglycemia of all oral drugs available and favor weight gain. Tolbutamide is a first-generation sulfonylurea, which has fallen into disuse because of increased cardiovascular and all-cause mortality in a randomized study [75]; the second- and third-generation sulfonylureas have not shown to have cardiovascular adverse effects [76, 77], although some have been associated with deleterious effects in the ischemic preconditioning of the myocardium [78]. One of the more recent sulfonylureas, gliclazide, has been proposed as the best in this group and the only one associated with a lower risk of major adverse cardiovascular events (MACE) and mortality, similar to metformin [79]. Cardiovascular safety of sulfonylureas was also confirmed in the UKPDS1 primary prevention study discussed above. It is important to emphasize that when these drugs are prescribed in patients with known coronary disease, dosages should be carefully adjusted to avoid hypoglycemia, which may exacerbate myocardial ischemia [80].

Regarding the thiazolidinedione group, pioglitazone showed a 16% reduction in all-cause death, myocardial infarction, and stroke at follow-up at 3 years in the PROactive study [81] that included 5238 diabetic patients with evidence of macrovascular disease. The efficacy of this drug in decreasing the MACE compound was corroborated in a meta-analysis of 19 clinical trials [82], with a significantly higher incidence of severe heart failure (2.3% vs 1.8%). Similarly, two meta-analyses showed that rosiglitazone is associated with a higher incidence of myocardial infarction and heart failure, without increasing cardiovascular mortality, which led to severe restrictions in its use in the United States and its withdrawal from the market in other countries [83, 84].

Dipeptidyl peptidase 4 (DPP-4) inhibitors have discrete hypoglycemic potency and pose a low risk of hypoglycemia. In a meta-analysis of 70 Phase II clinical trials of this pharmacological group, a significant reduction in the risk of MACE (OR 0.71, 95% CI 0.59–0.86), myocardial infarction (OR 0.64, 95% CI 0.44–0.94), and all-cause death (OR 0.60, 95% CI 0.41–0.88), but not stroke, during a mean follow-up of 44 weeks was shown [85]. In the SAVOR-TIMI study [86] that included 16,492 diabetic patients randomly assigned to saxagliptin or placebo, the drug had no effect on MACE at follow-up at 2.1 years but significantly increased the risk of heart failure from 2.8% to 3.5%. Alogliptin also failed to reduce MACE in the EXAMINE study [87] in patients with diabetes with acute myocardial infarction or unstable angina.

Recently, an inhibitor of sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) called empagliflozin demonstrated in the EMPA-REG OUTCOME trial [88] to be superior than placebo plus standard therapy in more than 7000 patients with type 2 diabetes and established cardiovascular disease. It also proved to significantly decrease the compound of cardiovascular death, myocardial infarction, and stroke by 14% and in 38% the risk of cardiovascular death, in a median follow-up of 3.1 years.

Liraglutide, a glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) agonist receptor, was compared in the LEADER trial [89] versus placebo plus standard therapy in more than 9000 patients with type 2 diabetes at high risk for cardiovascular disease or with cardiovascular disease and showed a 13% reduction in the primary MACE compound and 22% in cardiovascular death with a median follow-up of 3.8 years. Lixisenatide did not show a benefit when compared with placebo in the ELIXA study [90], as it failed to decrease MACE at 25 months in patients with diabetes and acute myocardial infarction in the previous 6 months.

Inhibitors of α-glucosidase may reduce the incidence of myocardial infarction; however, the evidence is still insufficient [91]. There are other hypoglycemic drugs of new pharmacological groups, available recently or in the last phases of phase III trials [92], whose impact on cardiovascular risk is still unknown.

As for insulin, in the ORIGIN study [93], 12,537 patients with impaired fasting glucose or type 2 diabetes with known cardiovascular risk factors were randomized to receive glargine insulin glargine or the "usual" treatment (which could be insulin, oral hypoglycemic agents, or no drugs according to local practices). The primary point of nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke, or death from cardiovascular causes, after a median follow-up of 6.2 years, was similar in both groups (2.94 vs. 2.85 episodes per 100 patients/year, $p = 0.63$), with higher rates of hypoglycemia and weight gain with insulin glargine, and no effect on the incidence of cancer. The UKPDS [72] study also confirmed cardiovascular safety with insulin therapy. It is currently recommended to start insulin as soon as possible when blood glucose goals are not achieved with standard regimens.

The Steno-2 [94] study evaluated intensive versus conventional care strategy in the treatment of diabetic patients with microalbuminuria, with a mean follow-up of 5.5 years. The more aggressive treatment with a stepwise pharmacotherapeutic approach considering the achievement of the goals of blood glucose, blood pressure, microalbuminuria, total cholesterol and serum triglycerides, and platelet dysfunction decreased the all-cause mortality by a 46% and the composite of cardiovascular events by 59%, both significantly.

In general, in diabetic patients with coronary artery disease, an HbA1c target of less than 7% is recommended according to the current ADA guidelines [73].

Cardiovascular Risk Evaluation in Diabetic Patients

In all patients with diabetes, the risk of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) defined as coronary death or

nonfatal myocardial infarction or stroke (fatal or nonfatal) should be systematically evaluated at least every year. Among the risk factors that predispose to ASCVD are age, gender, race, diabetes, hypertension, dyslipidemia, smoking, family history of premature coronary disease (before 40 years), and the presence of albuminuria [73]. There are numerous cardiovascular risk scores; the most widely used are The American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association (ACC/AHA) ASCVD Risk Estimator, Framingham Risk Score, and UKPDS Risk Engine (which is specific for diabetic patients) named SCORE by its acronym in English Systematic Coronary Risk Evaluation. The ACC/AHA ASCVD risk tool [95] estimates the probability of having a cardiovascular event in the next 10 years. It also offers treatment recommendations and is available online at http://static.heart.org/riskcalc/app/index.html.

The SCORE system [96, 97] is a simple tool that with five clinical variables estimates the risk of cardiovascular death at 10 years but does not take into account diabetes since it is only considered as an independent cardiovascular risk factor after 10 years of diagnosis; this tool is available in an updated electronic version that offers treatment recommendations called HeartScore, which includes HDL cholesterol in its variables (http://www.heartscore.org).

In asymptomatic diabetic patients, routine screening studies are not recommended for coronary artery disease, as this does not improve outcomes whenever the risk factors for ASCVD are addressed [98].

Stable Ischemic Heart Disease

(a) Clinical Manifestations and Risk Stratification

Stable ischemic heart disease (SIHD) is defined as a disease that causes symptoms of angina related to stress or exercise secondary to coronary artery stenosis (≥50% in the case of the left main stem and ≥70% in one or more of the major coronary arteries) [99]. At present, "angina with normal coronary arteries" also known as microvascular angina and coronary vasospasm are also included in this definition. Usually diabetic patients with SIHD present with atypical symptoms such as non-anginal chest pain or unexplained dyspnea. Some diabetic patients may have "silent ischemic heart disease" with positive ischemia tests in the absence of symptoms. All diabetic patients with suspected SIHD should be evaluated with a probability pretest, which are based on simple clinical findings such as the pain characteristics, gender, and age [100]. In general, patients with low probability (<15%) require no additional diagnostic tests; in patients with intermediate probability (15–85%), noninvasive ischemia-inducing studies are suggested (see next section); and in patients with high probability (>85%), invasive coronary angiography (ICA) is recommended as soon as possible, especially in the presence of severe angina at a low exercise level, with decreased LVEF (<50%) or clinical signs of high-risk events.

(b) Diagnosis

Additional studies should be performed in search of SIHD in all diabetic patients with (1) typical or atypical cardiac symptoms; (2) in the presence of signs or symptoms of concomitant vascular disease such as carotid murmur, transient ischemic attack, stroke, claudication, or peripheral arterial disease; and (3) an abnormal resting electrocardiogram (ECG) with pathological Q waves, ST-segment, or T wave alterations suggestive of myocardial ischemia. The study most widely used is exercise ECG; however, its sensitivity is only 50%, so other noninvasive ischemia-inducing studies are currently preferred, such as exercise or vasodilator stress single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT), exercise or dobutamine or vasodilator stress echocardiography, dobutamine or vasodilator stress magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and vasodilator stress positron emission tomography (PET), whose sensitivity, specificity, and positive and negative predictive values can be consulted in the stable coronary European clinical practice guide artery disease [99]. When patients are unable to exercise or have an ECG with complete left bundle branch block or pacemaker, then pharmacological stress with vasodilators such as dipyridamole or adenosine should be considered. Coronary artery calcium can be measured with computed tomography angiography (CTA) which is a noninvasive alternative to ischemia screening that offers a sensitivity of 95–99% and a very high negative predictive value. It also offers a very close correlation with invasive coronary angiography in terms of coronary anatomy [101]. Each of these diagnostic tests can stratify the patients in low, intermediate, or high risk which guides the decision as to whether start optimal medical therapy (BMT) or request ICA with possible revascularization, either percutaneously or surgically.

(c) Therapeutic options

1. Optimal medical treatment patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus have a greater risk of developing coronary artery disease (CAD) than nondiabetic patients [102]. In addition, 75% of patients with T2DM die as a result of cardiovascular diseases, including CAD [12]. In patients with T2DM, CAD tends to be more complex characterized by multivessel disease, small vessels, calcified and diffuse lesions, and occasionally requiring additional coronary revascularization to control angina [103–105]. Current medical management emphasizes the importance of controlling risk factors, including successful blood glucose control and treatment with statins, angiotensin receptor

blockers/angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, and antiplatelet therapy [106]. Guidelines for the management of diabetes mellitus of the American Diabetes Association, The American College of Cardiology, and the American Heart Association recommend the following prevention strategy for coronary artery disease: blood pressure of 130/80 mmHg or less, low-density lipoprotein (LDL-C) below 70 mg/dl for patients with CAD, and immediate smoking cessation [107, 108]. In large-scale studies to assess clinical outcomes comparing revascularization and intensive medical management (COURAGE, BARI-2D, and FREEDOM), the 1-year goal compliance rate to achieve LDL-C levels <100 mg/dl, systolic blood pressure <130 mmHg, glycosylated hemoglobin <7.0%, and smoking cessation was 18%, 23%, and 8%, respectively.

2. Revascularization treatment. Recent advances in techniques and devices used in coronary interventional procedures have extended the indication of PCI toward more complex lesions. Drug-eluting stents (DES) have reduced restenosis and reintervention rates [108–110], although the mortality of CAD in patients with T2DM remains high.

Most clinical trials comparing the outcomes of patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and multivessel coronary artery disease have shown that coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) is superior to balloon angioplasty and angioplasty with bare metal stents (BMS) in terms of target vessel revascularization, myocardial infarction, and mortality.

More recently, the use of new scales to analyze angiographic and clinical variables (SYNTAX II, Euro SCORE II) has been proposed for a better decision-making process in revascularization strategies [111], particularly, in patients with T2DM who will require a multidisciplinary discussion taking into account the patients' coronary anatomy, characteristics of the lesions, age, and comorbidities.

Several clinical trials are currently being conducted in 85 centers in the United States and Europe that compare CABG with percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) with drug-eluting stents. The "SYNergy between coronary intervention and cardiac surgery" (SYNTAX) study was a prospective randomized study comparing the efficacy of CABG and PCI with Paclitaxel-releasing stents in patients with complex coronary artery disease [112]. In this study, 25.1% of the patients were diabetic. In the cohort of diabetic patients, the incidence of major coronary events and cerebrovascular disease at 3 years was 37.0% in the PCI group and 22.9% in the CABG group ($p = 0.002$). The incidence of target vessel revascularization was also higher in the PCI group when compared to CABG (28.0% vs 12.9%, $p < 0.001$) [113].

In 2012, the FREEDOM study randomized a total of 1900 diabetic patients with multivessel coronary disease to CABG and PCI using mainly sirolimus-eluting stents (SES) and paclitaxel-eluting stents (PES) [114]. All-cause mortality and myocardial infarction was significantly lower in the CABG group when compared to the PCI group (18.7% vs 26.6%). However, most patients in the PCI group were treated with first-generation DES. The use of new-generation DES, particularly everolimus-eluting stent, is changing the outcomes mainly because of a reduction in the incidence of stent thrombosis and myocardial infarction [115].

Recently, Banglore et al. published a meta-analysis of 68 randomized trials that compared the clinical outcomes of patients with CAD and diabetes revascularized with CABG vs PCI with DES, including sirolimus, paclitaxel, and everolimus-eluting stents [116]. All-cause mortality was higher in patients who were treated with sirolimus-eluting stents and paclitaxel-eluting stents compared to CABG. Meanwhile mortality rates between everolimus-eluting stents and CABG were similar. Bioabsorbable scaffolds are a new alternative that could have potential advantages over drug-eluting stents in terms of adverse coronary events. Muramatzu and colleagues compared bioabsorbable stents versus everolimus-eluting stents in diabetic patients in different clinical trials and reported that the incidence of cardiac mortality, myocardial infarction related to the treated vessel, and target vessel revascularization was similar with both types of stent (3.9% vs. 6.4%, $p = 0.38$) [117, 118].

Acute Coronary Syndromes

(a) Clinical Manifestations and Diagnosis. Coronary disease is very common in the diabetic population; up to 32% of patients with acute coronary syndrome have diabetes mellitus [119]. Myocardial ischemia diagnosis can be challenging in diabetic patients [120, 121]. Physical examination findings are variable and may be related to hemodynamic instability, electrical instability, or mechanical complications. Physical examination may rule out a different source of chest pain. A fundamental diagnostic aid is the 12-lead electrocardiogram, which must be acquired immediately in these patients [122]. This study may have discrete changes in more than 30% of patients and is less sensitive if there are alterations in intraventricular conduction [123, 124]. Cardiac biomarkers help confirming the diagnosis and guiding the treatment, in addition to stratifying the risk. Troponins are more sensitive and specific, and their determination

is fundamental for decision-making [125–127]. Measurement of CK-MB and copeptin is also useful [128–130]. Angiography is indicated if the suspicion of ACS is high; in other cases, coronary angiotomography may be performed. Other methods, such as echocardiography, magnetic resonance imaging, or cardiac nuclear test, complete the evaluation and diagnosis [131].

(b) Risk Stratification. The initial presentation characteristics are helpful markers for early prognosis; resting chest pain, heart failure, and mitral regurgitation are associated with a poorer prognosis [132]. There are many variables and scales that assess the risk of death; these scales are not always easy to apply. The TIMI risk score is a useful risk assessment tool in cases of myocardial infarction and ST-segment elevation amenable to reperfusion therapy [133]. High levels of high-sensitivity troponin are associated with an increased risk of death. A high serum creatinine and low glomerular filtration rate pose a grim prognosis to these patients; these variables are included in the Global Registry of Acute Coronary Events (GRACE) [134] and assess the risk of death or the combination of death and myocardial infarction at 6 months. This score showed that coronary revascularization is independently associated with better survival at 1 year in cases of acute coronary syndrome without high-risk ST-segment elevation; the same benefit was not observed in low- or intermediate-risk groups [135, 136]. The SYNTAX score uses angiographic criteria to make clinical decisions and thus estimate the likelihood of long-term cardiovascular and cerebral events in patients undergoing surgical or percutaneous revascularization; it predicts outcomes such as death, infarction, CVA, and need for revascularization, or the combination of all, in patients with surgical or percutaneous revascularization, based on the complexity and extent of coronary lesions. A low SYNTAX score is <22 points, intermediate from 23 to 32, and high when it is >33. Higher scores show better long-term outcomes with surgery [137, 138]. It is essential to evaluate the risk of bleeding in the treatment of myocardial infarction without ST-segment elevation. A controlled trial of patients with coronary artery disease of two or three vessels, randomized to revascularization surgery versus percutaneous treatment with drug-eluting stents, showed a significant decrease in all-cause mortality in the surgical revascularization group [139]. This finding was consistent with the SYNTAX trial. The CRUSADE scale quantifies the risk of major intrahospital bleeding [140].

(c) Medical Treatment

1. Glucose control in the context of an ACS. Glucose goals and insulin therapy

   Medical treatment in the acute phase of an acute coronary syndrome is similar in patients with and without diabetes mellitus. Patients with acute coronary syndrome and diabetes mellitus are the group with the highest death rate, myocardial infarction, recurrent ischemia, and CHF during follow-up [141]. There is a close relationship between glucose levels and mortality in this group of patients. Both hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia have adverse effects on in-hospital outcomes and mortality. The NICESUGAR study showed that intensive glucose control increased mortality in adults in intensive care: serum glucose of 180 mg/dl or less resulted in lower mortality than if it was 81 to 108 mg/dl [142]. There is no established role for the administration of glucose-insulin-potassium infusions in NSTE-ACS.

2. Antiplatelet agents. Aspirin should be given to any patient with suspected or diagnosed acute coronary syndrome. When no contraindication exists, it should be started early. If there is any contraindication for its use, then, clopidogrel should be started. Patients treated with early invasive reperfusion should receive the combination of aspirin with some P2Y12 inhibitor. Inhibitors of GP IIb/IIIa receptors in patients with acute coronary syndrome without ST-segment elevation are associated with a reduction in mortality at 30 days, particularly in patients with diabetes mellitus undergoing percutaneous revascularization. Several trials have shown the benefit of oral antiplatelet therapy in these patients with a reduction in ischemic events without an increase in bleeding complications with the use of prasugrel compared to clopidogrel [143]. In PLATO, ticagrelor showed less ischemic events regardless of diabetic state and glycemic control, without increased bleeding than clopidogrel [144].
3. Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone antagonists. Optimal treatment in these patients includes the use of a renin-angiotensin-aldosterone antagonist, particularly in patients with heart failure and ejection fraction less than 40%. Patients intolerant to angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors should receive angiotensin receptor blockers as a Class I indication.
4. Beta-blockers. It should be used in the first hours after the diagnosis of an acute coronary syndrome, provided there are no contraindications to it. If there is contraindication in the acute phase of the infarction, it can be reevaluated in the following hours.
5. Anticoagulation. The combination of anticoagulation with antiplatelet therapy is recommended regardless of the initial treatment. Enoxaparin, bivalirudin, fondaparinux, and unfractionated heparin are among the recommended anticoagulants. Enoxaparin significantly reduces the recurrence of ischemic events and the need for invasive procedures; this benefit was sus-

tained for up to 1 year [145], although other studies did not demonstrate a significant difference in death or myocardial infarction at 30 days when comparing this drug with unfractionated heparin [146]. Anticoagulation with bivalirudin alone suppresses ischemic events similar to the use of heparin plus glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors while at the same time significantly reducing the risk of bleeding complications [147–149].

6. Statins should be initiated or continued in all patients, with and without diabetes mellitus in the context of an acute coronary syndrome, provided there is no contraindication; they reduce the recurrence of infarction, coronary disease mortality, cerebral vascular event, and need for revascularization.
7. Nitrates. If chest pain persists, then sublingual nitroglycerin can be administered; if there is no improvement, it can be administered intravenously, as in the case of heart failure.
8. Calcium channel blockers. They are an alternative to avoid the recurrence of ischemia or when there is contraindication to the use of beta-blockers, provided there is no left ventricular dysfunction or altered atrioventricular conduction. They are also indicated in patients with coronary spasm [150].

(d) Revascularization Therapy in Acute Coronary Syndromes

1. Percutaneous Coronary Intervention (PCI) in ST-Elevated Myocardial Infarction (STEMI)

The frequency of coronary events requiring primary intervention is well known. The impact of diabetes mellitus on the outcomes of patients with ST-segment elevation infarction since the onset of primary angioplasty has been well established. It was first described by the Mayo Clinic and Columbia University group [151], who concluded that despite similar TIMI 3 flow rates in patients with and without diabetes, patients with diabetes are more likely to have perfusion abnormalities assessed with the reduction of the ST-segment and myocardial blush; it is also contemplated that the reduction of myocardial perfusion after primary angioplasty may contribute to an increase in mortality in this population. Persistent ST elevation and abnormal myocardial blush in the presence of normal epicardial flow are indicative of decreased microvascular flow also known as a "non-reflux" phenomenon [152]. These alterations of the microvasculature are much more frequent in the diabetic population. Several mechanisms have been postulated for which diabetes contributes to microvascular damage. First, diabetes is associated with a prothrombotic and inflammatory state, accumulation of leukocytes, and thrombus formation in the capillaries of diabetics which leads to coronary microvascular obstruction [153].

Many studies have compared the impact of type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) on prognosis in postcoronary intervention patients. In a recent meta-analysis published in 2016 [154] which included patients from the HORIZONS-AMI [155] trial and 12 other studies of which 7 were randomized controlled trials, 4163 patients were analyzed for major adverse cardiovascular events (MACE) and myocardial infarction (MI), and 17,015 patients were analyzed for mortality. There was a significant increase in the rate of MACE and MI in the group of non-insulin-treated diabetes mellitus compared to the non-insulin group (OR: 1.63, 95% CI (1.17–2.27) $p = 0.04$) (OR: 1.82, 95% CI (1.08–3.06) $p = 0.02$). These differences are also reflected in mortality. Recently published in 2017, the largest cohort includes patients with STEMI [156], from the United Kingdom and Wales health systems. This cohort of patients with STEMI included 281, 569 patients of which 120, 568 were patients with diabetes mellitus. STEMI with diabetes compared to patients with STEMI without diabetes was more prone to have a previous infarction (34.9 vs 22.5%), heart failure (10.5 vs 5.8%), and chronic renal failure (11.3 vs 4.6%). After this cohort was adjusted for age, sex, and years of diagnosis, DM was associated with a 72% increase in the risk of mortality (1.72, 95% CI 1.66 to 1.79) for STEMI. The reperfusion rates managed for this cohort were 73.1% vs 79% in patients without DM.

In the final analysis, there were over 1, 944,194 person-years at risk, the median time to death was 2.3 (IQR 0.9 to 4.2) years, and 200,360 (28.4%) died. At all-time points from hospitalization with AMI, unadjusted cumulative relative survival was significantly worse among patients with diabetes (log rank tests $p < 0.001$).

2. Percutaneous Coronary Intervention (PCI) in Non-ST-Elevated Myocardial Infarction (NSTEMI)

Diabetics have a higher incidence of multivessel CAD. In the American registry CRUSADE (Can Rapid Risk Stratification of Unstable Angina Patients Suppress Adverse Outcomes with Early Implementation of the ACC/AHA Guidelines), the prevalence of diabetes was 33% among 46,410 patients with non-ST-elevation ACS. The PRESTO [157] trial showed that compared to NDM, patients with T2DM had an advanced age and were mostly female patients, and the majority had a history of heart failure and lower ejection fraction. These patients with T2DM were mainly overweight and obese and had a high rate of comorbidities.

The FREEDOM [158] trial showed that in patients with diabetes and multivessel coronary artery disease, MACEs were higher in patients treated with insulin compared to patients without insulin therapy. Revascularization trends in patients with diabetes and patients with diabetes and multivessel CAD presenting with NSTEMI, were analyzed in the ACTION Registry: 29,769 patients enrolled from July 2008 to December 2014. Overall, 36.4% were treated with CABG, 46.2% received PCI (77.2% with at least one DES), and 17.3% were treated with no revascularization. The proportion of patients receiving any kind of revascularization increased from 81.1% to 83.6% (PP < 0.0001 for trend), driven entirely by hospital-level use of CABG. Despite guidelines recommending CABG over PCI for diabetics with multivessel CAD, only about one-third of them actually receive CABG in the setting of NSTEMI. Accelerated atherosclerosis, atherosclerotic plaque rupture, and increased platelet activity, all increase the incidence of acute MI compared to nondiabetics. In the current propensity-matched analysis of contemporary real-life data, an early invasive strategy was associated with an increased in-hospital survival in NSTE-ACS patients with concomitant DM. These results support the 2014 ACCF/AHA guideline recommendations for an early invasive strategy in diabetics, especially those with high-risk features (e.g., NSTEMI and cardiogenic shock). Meanwhile, the use of this strategy in lower risk patients, such as those with UA, may not be associated with improved survival [159]. The incidence of in-hospital mortality also was lower with an early invasive strategy in the secondary post hoc analysis using a tighter match tolerance (2.5% vs 3.7%; OR, 0.65; 95% CI, 0.56–0.75; $P < 0.0001$) and in the sensitivity analysis after excluding the patients with length of hospital stay less than 48 hours in the propensity-matched cohort (2.1 vs 3.3; OR, 0.63; 95% CI, 0.56–0.72; $P < 0.0001$). On subgroup analysis, the benefit of an early invasive strategy was demonstrated among a wide range of prespecified subgroups except in patients with UA, where there was no apparent evidence of survival benefit with an early invasive strategy (0.5% vs 0.1%; OR, 7.86; 95% CI, 0.82–75.72; $P = 0.07$), with evidence of heterogeneity when compared to NSTEMI patients (P interaction = 0.02). Diabetes was also associated with a significantly higher mortality at 1 year for both presentations (HR 1.7 and 1.2, respectively). At 1 year, patients with diabetes presenting with non-ST-elevation ACS had a risk of death that approached that of nondiabetic individuals presenting with STEMI (7.2% vs. 8.1%). In the TACTICS (Treat Angina with Aggrastat and Determine Cost of Therapy with an Invasive or Conservative Strategy)-TIMI 18 trial, an early invasive strategy was associated with a significant 22% reduction in the relative risk of death, MI, or rehospitalization for ACS at 6 months compared with an early conservative strategy [160].

3. Fibrinolytic Therapy in STEMI
   Regarding fibrinolytic therapy, a meta-analysis of the Fibrinolytic Therapy Trialists' Collaborative Group that included all the large randomized trials of fibrinolytic therapy versus placebo in STEMI demonstrated a greater survival benefit at 35 days among diabetic patients compared with nondiabetic individuals, corresponding to 3.7 lives and 1.5 lives saved per 100 patients treated, respectively. While CABG in the setting of STEMI is typically reserved for failed PCI and for MI-related mechanical complications, primary PCI may be preferred over thrombolytic therapy in diabetic patients. However, the data to support this notion are limited [161]. A pooled analysis of individual patient data from 19 randomized trials comparing primary PCI with fibrinolysis for the treatment of STEMI included 6315 patients, 877 (14%) of whom had diabetes. The 30-day mortality rate (9.4% vs. 5.9%; $P < 0.001$) was higher in patients with diabetes. Mortality was significantly lower after primary PCI compared with fibrinolysis in both patients with diabetes (unadjusted OR 0.49; $P = 0.004$) and those without diabetes (unadjusted OR 0.69; $P = 0.001$) [162].

   Complete ST resolution at 90 minutes after fibrinolytic therapy has been shown to be less prevalent between diabetic patients when compared with nondiabetic patients [163].

4. Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting (CABG)
   The impact of diabetes on morbidity and mortality in patients undergoing surgical coronary revascularization was remarked in a retrospective analysis of the Society of Thoracic Surgeons National Database, including 41,663 diabetic patients among a total population of 146,786. At 30 days, the mortality was significantly higher in the diabetes group (3.7% vs. 2.7%). The unadjusted and adjusted mortality OR for diabetes were 1.4 and 1.2, respectively. With respect to diabetes treatments at presentation, the adjusted mortality OR for patients on oral hypoglycemic drugs and on insulin were 1.1 and 1.4, respectively. In addition, the overall morbidity and the infection rates were significantly higher among diabetic patients. Looking into long-term mortality following CABG, a prospective cohort study including 11,186 consecutive diabetic patients and 25,455 nondiabetic patients undergoing CABG from 1992 to 2001 detected a sig-

nificantly higher annual mortality rate among diabetic patients (5.5%) compared with nondiabetic individuals (3.1%). The annual mortality increased to 8.4%, 16.3%, and 26.3% among diabetic patients with vascular disease, renal failure, or both, respectively. In addition to increased periprocedural morbidity and mortality as well as long-term mortality, diabetic patients must undergo repeat revascularization following CABG more frequently than their nondiabetic counterparts [164].

Heart Failure in Diabetic Patients

Introduction and Epidemiology

Cardiovascular death is the leading cause of death among patients with diabetes mellitus. The diabetic population is at higher risk of developing heart failure (HF) compared to the nondiabetic population, so diabetes mellitus (DM) is considered an independent risk factor for the development of HF, where a 1% increase in glycosylated hemoglobin increases the incidence of heart failure from 8% to 16% [165].

Bell et al. found that of 5757 patients with chronic HF treated with Carvedilol, 25% had diabetes mellitus [166]. In an analysis of the European Heart Failure Pilot Survey which included 3226 patients with chronic HF, the prevalence of diabetes was 29%, and it was associated with older age, higher NYHA functional class, and predominance of ischemic HF etiology. The study concluded that DM is an independent predictor of death and hospitalization due to heart failure [167].

Pathophysiology

The development of heart failure in the diabetic patient is considered multifactorial, associated mainly to coronary disease, accelerated atherosclerosis, metabolic disorders, small vessel disease, and diabetic cardiomyopathy [168].

Diabetic cardiomyopathy was first described in 1972 when Rubler et al. [169, 170] found left ventricular dilation in the absence of ischemic heart disease in autopsies of diabetic patients. In this context, diabetic cardiomyopathy was clinically defined by the presence of structural alterations or abnormal myocardial function in the absence of hypertension, coronary disease, and valvular disease. The presence of diabetic cardiomyopathy is not essential for the development of HF in the diabetic patient.

The key for the development of HF is hyperglycemia, which leads to lipotoxicity, free fatty acid oxidation, oxidative stress, and apoptosis (apoptosis and myocardial cell necrosis are greater in the diabetic patient than in the nondiabetic patient). Another contributing factors are the constant activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, sympathetic nervous system, activation of proinflammatory cytokines, and formation of advanced glycosylation products. All of these in a greater or lesser degree lead to fibroblasts proliferation and collagen deposits ultimately causing interstitial and perivascular fibrosis, the main features of diabetic cardiomyopathy [171–173]. Endomyocardial biopsy studies have found an increase in type III collagen deposits but not of type I and IV collagen in patients with type 2 DM. Others show collagen distribution patterns characterized by collagen type I and III at the perivascular level and IV at the endocardium. In both humans and animals, an increase in cardiac fibrosis has been found even before the onset of hyperglycemia [174, 175].

The end products of advanced glycosylation (EPAG) are derived from a nonenzymatic irreversible reaction between sugars and proteins, called the Maillard reaction. It is considered to play an important role in the pathophysiology of heart failure. It has been associated with endothelial dysfunction, development of atherosclerosis, diastolic dysfunction, and, in advanced stages, systolic dysfunction. EPAG can be covalently bonded to each other, resulting in the formation of additional bonds between matrix proteins such as collagen, laminin, and elastin. This type of binding increases the stiffness of the protein matrix and leads to diastolic dysfunction; the presence of EPAG has been associated with increased isovolumetric relaxation time and left ventricular diameter [176].

The alterations in sympathetic innervation, characteristic of diabetic neuropathy, have been associated with HF, due to alterations in the expression and activation of catecholamines and increased activation of Beta 1 receptors, resulting in apoptosis, fibrosis, and ventricular dysfunction. Markers of diabetic neuropathy such as HRR (altered heart rate recovery) are associated with the development of heart failure in the diabetic [177].

1. Left ventricular hypertrophy and Diabetes mellitus

   The association between left ventricular hypertrophy and DM has been controversial and has been explained by other mechanisms, such as hypertension [178]. In the Northern Manhattan Study (NOMAS) [179], ventricular mass was determined with transthoracic echocardiography. DM was shown to be an independent risk predictor for the development of left ventricular hypertrophy (adjusted odds ratio 1.46, 95% CI, 1.13–1.88, $P = 0.004$), after adjusting for age, sex, race, mass index (BMI), systolic BP, education, history of coronary artery disease (CAD), physical activity, and alcohol consumption. There was also a direct interaction between abdominal circumference and LVH ($P = 0.01$) which translates the close relationship between insulin resistance, activation of SRAA, SNS activation, and left ventricular hypertrophy in the diabetic patient with and without arterial hypertension [180, 181]. Cardiac magnetic resonance has broadened our understanding of diabetic cardiomyopathy, demonstrating fat infiltration, fibrosis, altered ventricular

geometry, and ventricular mass increase. Patients with HF have higher NT-BNP levels than nondiabetic patients, with no difference in other biomarkers.

2. From Diastolic Dysfunction to Symptomatic HF
The spectrum of diabetic heart disease is broad and varies from normal heart, subclinical diastolic dysfunction, systolic dysfunction (detectable only by imaging techniques) to symptomatic heart failure.

Diastolic dysfunction is present in up to 50% of the diabetic population and has a close relationship with the levels of glycosylated hemoglobin and diabetic microangiopathy [181]. Systolic dysfunction is a late appearing condition; Fang et al. found that up to 24% of asymptomatic diabetic patients had systolic dysfunction determined with echocardiographic Doppler and Strain imaging [182].

This subclinical dysfunction in the absence of silent coronary disease and left ventricular hypertrophy has been related to glycosylated hemoglobin levels. In a study that included 219 patients, Flag et al. found that 16% had systolic dysfunction and 21% had diastolic dysfunction. The independent predictors of systolic dysfunction were glycosylated hemoglobin levels ($p < 0.001$) and lack of pretreatment with angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEI) ($p = 0.003$), and for diastolic dysfunction the absence of treatment with insulin ($p = 0.008$), treatment with metformin ($p = 0.01$), age ($p = 0.013$), and arterial hypertension ($p = 0.001$) [183]. Thus, the mechanisms involved with the development of heart failure depend on the control of diabetes, type of treatment implemented for both diabetes control and blockade of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, and other associated factors such as age and hypertension. From and colleagues showed that 23% of 1760 patient cohorts had diastolic dysfunction. The cumulative 5-year HF development in these patients was 36.9%, compared to 16.8% in patients without diastolic dysfunction ($p = 0.001$). Diabetic patients with diastolic dysfunction had a significantly higher mortality rate than those without diastolic dysfunction. This association was independent of the presence of arterial hypertension, coronary disease, or other echocardiographic parameters [184].

The RELAX (Phosphodiesterase-5 Inhibition to Improve Clinical Status and Exercise Capacity in Heart Failure with Preserved Ejection Fraction) trial which included diabetic and nondiabetic patients with HF and preserved systolic function showed that diabetic patients ($n = 93$) were significantly younger, obese, more frequently males, and had a higher prevalence of hypertension, renal failure, lung disease, and vascular disease. Levels of uric acid, C-reactive protein, galectin-3, collagen I, and endothelin-1 were significantly higher in diabetic patients ($p < 0.05$). Diabetic patients had lower functional capacity and a significant increase in the risk of hospitalization for renal and cardiac causes (23.7% vs. 4.9%, $p < 0.001$) [185].

BNP is a good prognostic and diagnostic marker in diabetics with HF; Van Der Horst et al. demonstrated that the diabetic population with HF has higher levels of natriuretic peptides than the nondiabetic population ($p = 0.03$), being a predictor of mortality, along with norepinephrine, in diabetic patients with advanced HF [186].

Prevention and Treatment of HF and DM

HbA1c levels >7% are associated with an increased risk of hospitalization for HF in patients with type 2 DM [187]. The STENO II trial [94] showed that intensive glucose treatment (glycosylated Hb <6.5%) and risk factor treatment (arterial pressure < 130/80 mmHg, triglycerides <150 mg/dl, total cholesterol <175 mg/dl) were associated with a reduction in CV death, infarction, and need for revascularization. However, other studies such as UKPDS, [188] ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VADT showed no benefit between intensive glucose treatment and HF [189].

The blockade of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system is a cornerstone in the high cardiovascular risk patient; in the HOPE study, 38% of the population was diabetic; the use of ramipril was associated with a reduction in the relative risk of HF (9.2vs11.7 OR 0.77, $P < 0.001$), as well as a lesser development of de novo diabetes with a 32% risk reduction ($p = 0.002$) [190]. In the EUROPA study in diabetic patients treated with perindopril, there was a reduction in hospitalization for HF [191].

Empagliflozin is a potent and selective inhibitor of sodium glucose cotransporter (SGLT2) used in the treatment of type 2 DM. By inhibiting SGLT2, empagliflozin reduces renal glucose reabsorption and increases urinary glucose excretion. In addition to reducing hyperglycemia, empagliflozin is associated with osmotic diuresis, natriuresis, weight loss and visceral fat, blood pressure reduction and albuminuria, with neutral effects on the sympathetic nervous system and additional favorable effects on markers of arterial stiffness and vascular resistance [192]. The EMPA-REG OUTCOME study showed that empagliflozin reduced hospitalization and death from heart failure [2.8 vs 4.5%; HR: 0.61 (0.47–0.79); $P < 0.001$] and was associated with a reduction in all-cause hospitalization [36.8% versus 39.6%; HR, 0.89 (0.82–0.96); $P = 0.003$], arousing the discussion of HbA1c as the main therapeutic objective to reduce cardiovascular events, leaving the door open to other mechanisms involved in reducing cardiovascular death and hospitalizations for HF beyond of the strict HbA1c targets [193].

Patients with diabetes and HF in the PARADIGM-HF trial treated with a combination of sacubitril and valsartan had a greater long-term reduction of HbA1c than those receiving enalapril. The de novo use of insulin was 29% lower in patients receiving sacubitril/valsartan ($p = 0.0052$). These data suggest that sacubitril/valsartan may improve glycemic control in patients with diabetes and HF [194].

Pharmacological treatment of the patient with HF with and without diabetes mellitus should include ACE inhibitors, beta-blockers, and aldosterone blockers. Similar benefit has been seen in patients treated with Carvedilol in both diabetic

and nondiabetic patients (RRR 28% $p = 0.03$ and 37% $p < 0.001$, respectively). There was no significant difference between reducing the risk of death or NNT in patients treated with diabetes vs non-diabetics [166].

In the DIG study, 28.4% of the patients had diabetes. In this study the addition of digoxin to the treatment of HF reduced hospitalizations secondary to HF without a substantial increase in the risk of toxicity. However in patients with HF treated with digoxin, it is necessary to identify predictors of toxicity, and strict control of serum levels is important to maintain their benefit [195].

Diseases of the Aorta in Diabetic Patients

Diabetes and Aortic Dissection/Aneurysm

Aortic dissection along with intramural hematoma and penetrating ulcer of the aorta comprises the acute aortic syndromes [196]. Acute aortic dissection is the result of spontaneous tear of the intima, followed by passage of blood between the intima and the aorta. This passage of blood generates a false lumen that progressively compresses the true lumen of the vessel. Clinically it manifests as an acute and penetrating thoracic pain of sudden onset and of immediate maximum intensity with irradiation toward the back. Pathophysiologically, diabetes mellitus contributes to thickening and fibrosis of the intimal layer and degradation and apoptosis of smooth muscle cells in the media. These processes lead to necrosis and fibrosis of the elastic components of the arterial wall, which in turn produces wall stiffness and weakness, from which dissection and rupture may arise [197]. Although diabetes mellitus does not have a direct causal role in aortic dissection, its role in the development of atherosclerosis contributes to the risk of aortic dissection. Interestingly, a recent study published by Xe H. et al. demonstrated a paradoxical inverse relationship between DM and risk of aortic dissection in Chinese patients, suggesting that diabetes may play a protective role in the development of aortic dissection. Despite these findings, further information is necessary to elucidate the role of diabetes in aortic dissection [198, 199].

Aortic aneurysm refers to the pathologic enlargement of an aortic segment which tends to progress over time and generally cause no symptoms until they rupture. Atherosclerosis was believed to be the main factor for the development of aortic aneurysms, but recent evidence has shown that aneurysms represent a systemic disease of the vasculature associated with inflammation, smooth muscle cell apoptosis, and matrix degradation. Male gender, hypertension, smoking, and hypercholesterolemia are the main risk factors associated with aortic aneurysms [200]. Diabetic patients with aortic aneurysms are significantly less likely to present with rupture or to die from aneurysm rupture when compared to nondiabetic patients with aortic aneurysms. It is plausible that DM may have a protective effect on aortic aneurysm rupture. Again, further evidence is needed to prove this [201].

Treatment of both aortic dissection and aneurysms is complex and depends on many factors such as hemodynamic status, localization, and anatomical features, all of which are beyond the scope of this chapter.

Diabetes and Aortic Stenosis

Aortic stenosis is the most common primary valve disease in the developed world. It is characterized by a progressive narrowing of the aortic valve orifice due to degeneration, fibrosis, and calcification of the aortic leaflets [202]. This degenerative process has been associated with advanced age and atherosclerosis. Clinically it manifests with angina, dyspnea, and syncope. One-year survival among patients with severe aortic stenosis is approximately 50% [203].

Echocardiography is the key diagnostic tool. Aortic peak velocities >4 m/s with mean aortic gradients >40 mmHg are consistent with severe aortic stenosis regardless of the aortic valve area (severe is >1 cm^2).

Diabetes mellitus has been associated with multiple aspects of aortic stenosis such as:

1. Increased inflammation: Patients with diabetes mellitus have accelerated inflammation which leads to calcification. This calcification appears earlier and is more severe than in nondiabetic patients.
2. Stenosis progression: Aortic valve area narrowing is faster in diabetic patients as a result of increased calcium and fibrotic deposits on the valve.
3. Heart failure: As mentioned previously in this chapter, diabetes contributes to left ventricular hypertrophy and with time to systolic dysfunction. The aortic valve stenosis potentiates this effect accelerating the decline in the contractile function of the heart [204].

Aortic valve replacement is the treatment of choice for patients with severe aortic stenosis. Diabetic patients with micro- and macrovascular complications (renal failure, coronary heart disease, neuropathy) have a higher surgical risk based on STS and EUROSCORE II than nondiabetic patients. Percutaneous implant of an aortic valve (TAVI) has recently shown to be a safe and effective alternative to surgery in high-risk and intermediate-risk patients [205].

Arrhythmias in Diabetic Patients

Special Features of Arrhythmias and Atrioventricular Blocks in Diabetic Patients

In 1972 Rubler [169] introduced the term diabetic cardiomyopathy (DCM) to refer to structural and functional abnormalities of the myocardium in diabetic patients without coronary artery disease, systemic arterial hyperten-

sion, or any other morbid entity that affected the functioning of the heart. Interstitial and perivascular fibrosis is the histological landmark of the disease; hypertrophy of cardiomyocytes has also been described, although it does not appear to be a requirement [206]. The loss of normal microvasculature and remodeling of the extracellular matrix are involved and the systolic and diastolic contractile dysfunction of diabetic hearts. It is possible that in DM, the increase in fibrosis is involved in the degeneration of the conduction system which may result in an increase in symptomatic bradycardias. Podlaha [207] found the presence of DM in 49.2% of patients with pacemakers and only 38.4% in nondiabetic patients of the same age, gender, and comorbidity. Perhaps more than the degeneration of the conduction system, DCM-related interstitial fibrosis has a greater impact on the progression of ventricular remodeling, which may result in delayed left ventricular depolarization with increased QRS associated with intra- and interventricular dyssynchrony. The response to cardiac resynchronization therapy does not appear to be different between diabetic and nondiabetic patients, but mortality is higher among the first [208]. At the atria, interstitial fibrosis in patients with DCM may also be secondary to oxidative stress, growth factors, and changes in cellular-binding proteins [209]. Overall, fibrosis and atrial remodeling have been identified as primary elements in the generation and maintenance of atrial fibrillation (AF) in patients with DCM [210].

Atrial fibrillation is the most frequent sustained cardiac arrhythmia in clinical practice and is one of the most important determinants of increased cardiovascular morbidity and mortality in patients with heart disease and DM. Numerous studies have shown that poorly controlled DM is associated with new onset AF [211, 212]. Huxley et al. showed that in patients without diabetes, there is a linear trend between the presence of AF and 1% increments in the level of HbA1c [213]. In diabetic patients HbA1c levels above 6.5% are associated with a 40% increase in the risk of AF presentation especially in women [214].

Although DCM contributes to cardiovascular disease, the one factor that directly increases the risk of mortality is the development of autonomic diabetic neuropathy (ADN). In diabetic patients with severe ADN, the sympathetic-parasympathetic innervation imbalance may contribute to death by ventricular arrhythmias both in the absence and in the presence of ischemic heart disease [215]. Also, in diabetic patients, sympathetic denervation has been shown to be predictive of sudden death, due to a decrease in the ventricular arrhythmogenic threshold, which has greater expression during events of hypoglycemia or metabolic alterations related to hyperglycemia [216]. The prevalence of ADN is estimated to be as high as 50% in diabetic patients [217]. It is possible that at the initial stages of ADN, there is an increase in sympathetic tone which manifests as tachycardia, shortening of QRS and QT interval, increase in QT dispersion, and flattening of T wave. In advanced states, neurological denervation can lead to an increase in the parasympathetic tone that subsequently increases the risk of developing bradycardia, prolongation of QTc, and other alterations in repolarization [218]. During iatrogenic hypoglycemia, prolongation of the QT interval associated with calcium overload and potassium depletion may also lead to ventricular fibrillation risk. The poor sympathetic response to hypoglycemia is not enough to counteract the electrocardiac effects; on the contrary, it may represent a synergic proarrhythmic effect by increasing repolarization alterations [219].

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Pathological mechanisms associated with increased risk of coronary atherosclerosis in patients with diabetes include:
   (a) Vasoconstriction and hypertension of vascular smooth muscle
   (b) Activation of leukocytes/endothelial cells, release of cytokines, and expression of cellular adhesion molecules
   (c) Autonomic dysfunction
   (d) Hypercoagulation
   (e) All of the above
2. All of the following statements about diabetic patients are true, except:
   (a) Compared to nondiabetic, patients with diabetes have two- to threefold higher rate of coronary disease and are at increased risk of myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure, and death.
   (b) Compared to nondiabetic, patients with diabetes have a twofold higher rate of systemic arterial hypertension.
   (c) The current guidelines suggest that therapeutic target of blood pressure control is less than 140/90 mmHg.
   (d) Antihypertensive treatment in patients with chronic renal disease should include an angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor or an angiotensin receptor blocker.
   (e) The majority of patients require only one antihypertensive drug to achieve the goal blood pressure.
3. If a patient tolerates the intensive dose of a statin, what is the best option to do next?
   (a) Increase the dose until the patient starts with secondary effects.
   (b) Decrease the dose until LDL is over 70 mg/dl.
   (c) Keep the dose.
   (d) Decrease the dose until HDL starts falling.
   (e) Add ezetimibe in all cases.

4. Dyspnea may be caused by which antiplatelet agent:
   (a) Aspirin
   (b) Clopidogrel
   (c) Prasugrel
   (d) Ticagrelor
   (e) Ticlopidine
5. In diabetic patients, what drug has been approved as first-line hypoglycemic drug to reduce cardiovascular events?
   (a) Gliclazide
   (b) Metformin
   (c) Alogliptin
   (d) Empagliflozin
   (e) Pioglitazone
6. In diabetic patients with known coronary artery disease, an HbA1c target of less than ___ is recommended:
   (a) 6%
   (b) 6.5%
   (c) 6.8%
   (d) 7%
   (e) 7.5%
7. What is the most frequent sustained cardiac arrhythmia and one of the most important factors in the increase of cardiovascular morbidity and mortality in patients with diabetes?
   (a) Ventricular fibrillation
   (b) Atrial fibrillation
   (c) First degree AV block
   (d) Third degree AV block
   (e) Atrial flutter
8. What drug was associated with the reduction of the incidence of heart failure?
   (a) Ramipril
   (b) Sacubitril/valsartan
   (c) Carvedilol
   (d) Spironolactone (aldosterone antagonist)
   (e) All of the above
9. Which of the following risk factors is not associated with aortic aneurysms and may have a protective effect on aortic aneurysm rupture:
   (a) Male gender
   (b) Hypertension
   (c) Smoking
   (d) Hypercholesterolemia
   (e) Diabetes
10. In general, what is the preferred method of coronary perfusion in patients with an acute coronary ischemic syndrome, with or without diabetes?
   (a) Fibrinolytic therapy
   (b) Coronary artery bypass grafting
   (c) Percutaneous coronary intervention
   (d) Aspirin
   (e) Statins

Correct Answers

1. (e) All of the above
2. (e) The majority of patients require only one antihypertensive drug to achieve the goal blood pressure
3. (b) Decrease the dose until LDL is over 70 mg/dl
4. (d) Ticagrelor
5. (d) Empagliflozin
6. (d) 7%
7. (b) Atrial fibrillation
8. (d) Spironolactone (aldosterone antagonist)
9. (e) Diabetes
10. (c) Percutaneous coronary intervention

References

1. Iijima R, Ndrepepa G, Kujath V, Harada Y, Kufner S, Schunkert H, Nakamura M, Kastrati A. A pan-coronary artery angiographic study of the association between diabetes mellitus and progression or regression of coronary atherosclerosis. Heart Vessels. 2017;32:376–84.
2. Colwell JA, Lopes-Virella M, Halushka PV. Pathogenesis of atherosclerosis in diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 1981;4(1):121–33.
3. Kearney K, Tomlinson D, Smith K, Ajjan R. Hypofibrinolysis in diabetes: a therapeutic target for the reduction of cardiovascular risk. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2017;16:34.
4. Birkeland KI, Jørgensen ME, Carstensen B, Persson F, Gulseth HL, Thuresson M, Fenici P, Nathanson D, Nyström T, Eriksson JW, Bodegård J, Norhammar A. Cardiovascular mortality and morbidity in patients with type 2 diabetes following initiation of sodium-glucose co-transporter-2 inhibitors versus other glucose-lowering drugs (CVD-REAL Nordic): a multinational observational analysis. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017;5(9):709–17. www.thelancet.com/diabetes-endocrinology.
5. Sakata K, Waseda K, Kume T, Otake H, Nakatani D, Yock PG, Fitzgerald PJ, Honda Y. Impact of diabetes mellitus on vessel response in the drug-eluting stent era pooled volumetric intravascular ultrasound analyses. Circ Cardiovasc Interv. 2012;5:763–71.
6. Serruys PW, Ormiston JA, Onuma Y, Regar E, Gonzalo N, Garcia-Garcia HM, Nieman K, Bruining N, Dorange C, Miquel-Hébert K, Veldhof S, Webster M, Thuesen L, Dudek D. A bioabsorbable everolimus-eluting coronary stent system (ABSORB): 2-year outcomes and results from multiple imaging methods. Lancet. 2009;373:897–910.
7. Gu K, Cowie CC, Harris MI. Mortality in adults with and without diabetes in a national cohort of the U.S. population, 1971–1993. Diabetes Care. 1998;21(7):1138–45.
8. Garcia M, McNamara P, Gordon T, Kannel W. Morbidity and mortality in diabetics in the Framingham population. Sixteen year follow – up. Diabetes. 1974;23:105–11.
9. Stamler J, Vaccaro O, Neaton J, Wentworth D. Diabetes, other risk factors, and 12 yr cardiovascular mortality for men screened in the multiple risk factor intervention trial. Diabetes Care. 1993;16:434–44.
10. Sawicki P, Berger M. Prognosis and treatment of cardiovascular disease in diabetes mellitus. J Clin Basic Cardiol. 1999;2:22–33.
11. Schnohr P, Lange P, Scharling H, Skov Jensen J. Long-term physical activity in leisure time and mortality from coronary heart disease, stroke, respiratory diseases, and cancer. The Copenhagen City Heart Study. Eur J Cardiovasc Prev Rehabil. 2006;13(2):173–9.

12. Hammoud T, Tanguay JF, Bourassa MG. Management of coronary artery disease: therapeutic options in patients with diabetes. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2000;36:355–65. PMID: 10933343. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0735-1097(00)00732-4.
13. Lteif AA, Mather KJ, Clark CM. Diabetes and heart disease an evidence-driven guide to risk factors management in diabetes. Cardiol Rev. 2003;11:262–74.
14. Aronson D, Rayfield EJ, Chesebro JH. Mechanisms European Association for the Study of Diabetes determining course and outcome of diabetic patients who have had acute myocardial infarction. Ann Intern Med. 1997;126:296–306.
15. Donahoe SM, Stewart GC, McCabe CH, et al. Diabetes and mortality following acute coronary syndromes. JAMA. 2007;298:765–75.
16. Bartnik M, Ryden L, Ferrari R, et al. The prevalence of abnormal glucose regulation in patients with coronary artery disease across Europe. The Euro Heart Survey on diabetes and the heart. Eur Heart J. 2004;25:1880–90.
17. Gholap N, Davies MJ, Mostafa SA, Squire I, Khunti K. A simple strategy for screening for glucose intolerance, using glycated haemoglobin, in individuals admitted with acute coronary syndrome. Diabet Med. 2012;29:838–43.
18. Gyberg V, De Bacquer D, Kotseva K, et al. Screening for dysglycaemia in patients with coronary artery disease as reflected by fasting glucose, oral glucose tolerance test, and HbA1c: a report from EUROASPIRE IV – a survey from the European Society of Cardiology. Eur Heart J. 2015;36:1171–7.
19. Natali A, Vichi S, Landi P, Severi S, L'Abbate A, Ferrannini E. Coronary atherosclerosis in Type II diabetes: angiographic findings and clinical outcome. Diabetologia. 2000;43:632–41.
20. Cariou B, Bonnevie L, Mayaudon H, Dupuy O, Ceccaldi B, Bauduceau B. Angiographic characteristics of coronary artery disease in diabetic patients compared with matched non-diabetic subjects. Diabetes Nutr Metab. 2000;13:134–41.
21. Werner GS, Richartz BM, Heinke S, Ferrari M, Figulla HR. Impaired acute collateral recruitment as a possible mechanism for increased cardiac adverse events in patients with diabetes mellitus. Eur Heart J. 2003;24:1134–42.
22. Berry C, Tardif JC, Bourassa MG. Coronary heart disease in patients with diabetes: part II: recent advances in coronary revascularization. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2007;49:643–56.
23. Pasterkamp G. Methods of accelerated atherosclerosis in diabetic patients. Heart. 2013;99(10):743–9.
24. Suzuki LA, Poot M, Gerrity RG, Bornfeldt KE. Diabetes accelerates smooth muscle accumulation in lesions of atherosclerosis: lack of direct growth-promoting effects of high glucose levels. Diabetes. 2001;50(4):851–60.
25. Williams SB, Cusco JA, Roddy MA, Johnstone MT, Creager MA. Impaired nitric oxide-mediated vasodilation patients with non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Am Coll Cardiol. 1996;27(3):567–74.
26. Vinik AI, Erbas T, Park TS, Nolan R, Pittenger GL. Platelet dysfunction in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2001;24(8):1476–85.
27. Sowers JR. Recommendations for special populations: diabetes mellitus and the metabolic syndrome. Am J Hypertens. 2003;16:S41–5.
28. Turner RC, Millns H, Neil HA, Stratton IM, Manley SE, Matthews DR, et al. Risk factors for coronary artery disease in non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus: United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS: 23). Br Med J. 1998;316(7134):823–8.
29. Usitupa MI, Niskanen LK, Siitonen O, Voutilainen E, Pyorala K. Ten-year cardiovascular mortality in relation to risk factors and abnormalities in lipoprotein composition in type 2 (non-insulin-dependent) diabetic and non-diabetic subjects. Diabetologia. 1993;36:1175–84.
30. Assmann G, Schulte H. The Prospective Cardiovascular Munster (PROCAM) study: prevalence of hyperlipidemia in persons with hypertension and/or diabetes mellitus and the relationship to coronary heart disease. Am Heart J. 1988;116(6 Pt 2):1713–24.
31. Somaratne JB, Whalley GA, Poppe KK, ter Bals MM, Wadams G, Pearl A, Bagg W, Doughty RN. Screening for left ventricular hypertrophy in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in the community. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2011;10:29.
32. Govind S, Saha S, Brodin LA, Ramesh SS, Arvind SR, Quintana M. Impaired myocardial functional reserve in hypertension and diabetes mellitus without coronary artery disease: searching for the possible link with congestive heart failure in the myocardial Doppler in diabetes (MYDID) study II. Am J Hypertens. 2006;19(8):851–7; discussion 858.
33. Grossman E, Messerli FH, Goldbourt U. High blood pressure and diabetes mellitus: are all antihypertensive drugs created equal? Arch Intern Med. 2000;160(16):2447–52.
34. Lea JP, Nicholas SB. Diabetes mellitus and hypertension: key risk factors for kidney disease. J Natl Med Assoc. 2002;94(8 Suppl):7S–15S.
35. Knowler WC, Bennett PH, Ballintine EJ. Increased incidence of retinopathy in diabetics with elevated blood pressure. A 6-year follow-up study in Pima Indians. N Engl J Med. 1980;302(12):645–50.
36. Zanchetti A, Ruilope LM. Antihypertensive treatment in patients with type-2 diabetes mellitus: what guidance from recent controlled randomized trials? J Hypertens. 2002;20:2099.2110.
37. Stratton IM, Adler AI, Neil HA, Matthews DR, Manley SE, Cull CA, et al. Association of glycaemia with macrovascular and microvascular complications of type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 35): prospective observational study. Br Med J. 2000;321:405–12.
38. Barth JH, Marshall SM, Watson ID. Consensus meeting on reporting glycated haemoglobin and estimated average glucose in the UK: report to the National Director for Diabetes, Department of Health. Ann Clin Biochem. 2008;45(Pt 4):343–4.
39. Adler AI, Stratton IM, Neil HA, Yudkin JS, Matthews DR, Cull CA, et al. Association of systolic blood pressure with macrovascular and microvascular complications of type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 36): prospective observational study. Br Med J. 2000;321(7258):412–9.
40. Fogari R, Zoppi A, Malamani GD, Lazzari P, Destro M, Corradi L. Ambulatory blood pressure monitoring in normotensive and hypertensive type 2 diabetes. Prevalence of impaired diurnal blood pressure patterns. Am J Hypertens. 1993;6:1–7.
41. Grossman E, Shemesh J, Motro M. Hypertensive patients with diabetes mellitus have higher heart rate and pulse pressure. J Hypertens. 2002;20:S60.
42. Pop-Busui R. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in diabetes: a clinical perspective. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:434–41.
43. Ozawa M, Tamura K, Iwatsubo K, Matsushita K, Sakai M, Tsurumi-Ikeya Y, et al. Ambulatory blood pressure variability is increased in diabetic hypertensives. Clin Exp Hypertens. 2008;30:213–24.
44. Gyberg V, De Bacquer D, De Backer G, Jennings C, Kotseva K, Mellbin L, Schnell O, Tuomilehto J, Wood D, Ryden L, et al. Patients with coronary artery disease and diabetes need improved management: a report from the EUROASPIRE IV survey: a registry from the EuroObservational Research Programme of the European Society of Cardiology. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2015;14:133.
45. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes-2012. Diabetes Care. 2012;35(Suppl 1):S11–63.
46. Appel LJ, Moore TJ, Obarzanek E, Vollmer WM, Svetkey LP, Sacks FM, et al. A clinical trial of the effects of dietary patterns on blood pressure. DASH Collaborative Research Group. N Engl J Med. 1997;336:1117–24.

47. James PA, Oparil S, Carter BL, Cushman WC, Dennison-Himmelfarb C, Handler J, et al. 2014 evidence-based guideline for the management of high blood pressure in adults: report from the panel members appointed to the Eighth Joint National Committee (JNC 8). JAMA. 2014;311(5):507–20.
48. Mancia G, Fagard R, Narkiewicz K, Redon J, Zanchetti A, Bohm M, et al. 2013 ESH/ESC Guidelines for the management of arterial hypertension: the task force for the management of arterial hypertension of the European Society of Hypertension (ESH) and of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). J Hypertens. 2013;31(7):1281–357.
49. Cushman WC, Evans GW, Byington RP, Goff DC Jr, Grimm RH Jr, Cutler JA, et al. Effects of intensive blood- pressure control in type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2010;362(17):1575–85.
50. Wright JT Jr, Williamson JD, Whelton PK, Snyder JK, Sink KM, Rocco MV, Reboussin DM, Rahman M, Oparil S, Lewis CE, et al. A randomized trial of intensive versus standard blood-pressure control. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(22):2103–16.
51. Reboldi G, Gentile G, Angeli F, Ambrosio G, Mancia G, Verdecchia P. Effects of intensive blood pressure reduction on myocardial infarction and stroke in diabetes: a meta-analysis in 73,913 patients. J Hypertens. 2011;29(7):1253–69.
52. Solini A, Grossman E. What should be the target blood pressure in elderly patients with diabetes? Diabetes Care. 2016;39(Suppl 2):S234–43.
53. Scheen AJ. Renin-angiotensin system inhibition prevents type 2 diabetes mellitus. Part 2. Overview of physiological and biochemical mechanisms. Diabetes Metab. 2004;30(6):498–505.
54. Weber MA, Jamerson K, Bakris GL, Weir MR, Zappe D, Zhang Y, Dahlof B, Velazquez EJ, Pitt B. Effects of body size and hypertension treatments on cardiovascular event rates: subanalysis of the ACCOMPLISH randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2013;381(9866):537–45.
55. Varga-Szabo D, Pleines I, Nieswandt B. Cell adhesion mechanisms in platelets. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2008;28:403–12.
56. Gurbel PA, Bliden KP, DiChiara J, et al. Evaluation of dose related effects of aspirin on platelet function: results from the Aspirin-Induced Platelet Effect (ASPECT) study. Circulation. 2007;115:3156–64.
57. Windecker S, Kolh P, Alfonso F, Collet JP, Cremer J, Falk V, et al. ESC/EACTS Guidelines on myocardial revascularization. Eur Heart J. 2014;54–69:2014. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehu278.
58. Price MJ, Berger PB, Teirstein PS, et al. Standard- vs. high-dose clopidogrel based on platelet function testing after percutaneous coronary intervention: the GRAVITAS randomized trial. JAMA. 2011;205(11):1097–105.
59. Thukkani AK, Agrawal K, Prince L, Smoot KJ, Dufour AB, Cho K, et al. Long-term outcomes in patients with diabetes mellitus related to prolonging clopidogrel more than 12 months after coronary stenting. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2015;66(10). https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2015.06.1339
60. Wiviott SD, Braunwald E, McCabe CH, et al. Prasugrel versus clopidogrel in patients with acute coronary syndromes. N Engl J Med. 2007;357(20):2001–15.
61. Roe MT, Goodman SG, Ohman EM, et al. Elderly patients with acute coronary syndromes managed without revascularization: insights into the safety of long-term dual antiplatelet therapy with reduced-dose prasugrel versus standard-dose clopidogrel. Circulation. 2013;128(8):823–33.
62. Wallentin L, Becker RC, Budaj A, Cannon CP, Emanuelsson H, Held C, et al. Ticagrelor versus clopidogrel in patients with acute coronary syndromes. N Engl J Med. 2009;361:1045–57. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0904327.
63. Angiolillo DJ, Capranzano P, Goto S, et al. A randomized study assessing the impact of cilostazol on platelet function profiles in patients with diabetes mellitus and coronary artery disease on dual antiplatelet therapy: results of the OPTIMUS-2 study. Eur Heart J. 2008;29:2202–11.
64. Stone NJ, Robinson J, Lichtenstein AH, Merz NB, Lloyd-Jones DM, Blum CB, et al. 2013 ACC/AHA guideline on the treatment of blood cholesterol to reduce atherosclerotic cardiovascular risk in adults. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2013. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2013.11.002.
65. Hulten E, Jackson JL, Douglas K, et al. The effect of early, intensive statin therapy on acute coronary syndrome: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Arch Intern Med. 2006;166(17):1814–21.
66. Heart Protection Study Collaborative Group. MRC/BHF Heart Protection Study of cholesterol-lowering with simvastatin in 5963 people with diabetes: a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2003;361(9374):2005–16.
67. Murphy SA, Cannon CP, Wiviott SD, et al. Reduction in recurrent cardiovascular events with intensive lipid-lowering statin therapy compared with moderate lipid-lowering statin therapy after acute coronary syndromes. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2009;54(25):2358–62.
68. Taylor AJ, Sullenberger LE, Lee HJ, et al. Arterial Biology for the Investigation of the Treatment Effects of Reducing Cholesterol (ARBITER) 2: A double-blind, placebo-controlled study of extended-release niacin on atherosclerosis progression in secondary prevention patients treated with statins. Circulation. 2004;110(23):3512–7.
69. ACCORD Study Group. Effects of combination lipid therapy in type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2010;362(17):1563–74.
70. Baigent C, Landray MJ, Reith C, et al. The effects of lowering LDL cholesterol with simvastatin plus ezetimibe in patients with chronic kidney disease (Study of Heart and Renal Protection): a randomized placebo-controlled trial. Lancet. 2011;377(9784):2181–92.
71. Saremi A, Schwenke DC, Buchanan TA, et al. Pioglitazone slows progression of atherosclerosis in prediabetes independent of changes in cardiovascular risk factors. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2013;33(2):393–9.
72. Holman RR, Paul SK, Bethel MA, et al. 10-year follow-up of intensive glucose control in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;359(15):1577–89.
73. American Diabetes Association Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes – 2017. Diabetes Care. 2017;40(Suppl 1):S1–S138.
74. Inzucchi SE, Bergenstal RM, Buse JB, et al. Management of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes: a patient-centered approach: position statement of the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD). Diabetes Care. 2012;35:1364.
75. University Group Diabetes Program. Effects of hypoglycemic agents on vascular complications in patients with adult-onset diabetes. Diabetes. 1982;31(Suppl 5):1–81.
76. Flynn DM, Smith AH, Treadway JL, Levy CB, Soeller WC, Boettner WA, et al. The sulfonylurea glipizide does not inhibit ischemic preconditioning in anesthetized rabbits. Cardiovasc Drugs Ther. 2005;19:337–46.
77. Mocanu MM, Maddock HL, Baxter GF, Lawrence CL, Standen NB, Yellon DM. Glimepiride, a novel sulfonylurea, does not abolish myocardial protection afforded by either ischemic preconditioning or diazoxide. Circulation. 2001;103:3111–6.
78. Cleveland JC, Meldrum DR, Brian S, Cain BS, Banerjee A, Alden H, Harken AH. Oral sulfonylurea hypoglycemic agents prevent ischemic preconditioning in human myocardium: two paradoxes revisited. Circulation. 1997;96:29–32.
79. Schramm TK, Gislason GH, Vaag A, et al. Mortality and cardiovascular risk associated with different insulin secretagogues compared with metformin in type 2 diabetes, with or without a previous myocardial infarction: a nationwide study. Eur

Heart J. 2011;32(15):1900–8. Erratum in: Eur Heart J. 2012 May;33(10):1183.
80. Inzucchi SE, McGuire DK. New drugs for the treatment of diabetes. Circulation. 2008;117:574–84.
81. Dormandy JA, Charbonnel B, Eckland DJ, Erdmann E, Massi-Benedetti M, Moules IK, et al. Secondary prevention of macrovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes in the PROactive Study. Lancet. 2005;366:1279–89.
82. Lincoff AM, Wolski K, Nicholls SJ, Nissen SE. Pioglitazone and risk of cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. JAMA. 2007;12(298):1180–8.
83. Nissen SE, Wolski K. Effect of rosiglitazone on the risk of myocardial infarction and death from cardiovascular causes. N Engl J Med. 2007;356:2457–71.
84. Singh S, Loke YK, Furberg CD. Long-term risk of cardiovascular events with rosiglitazone: a meta-analysis. JAMA. 2007;298:1189–95.
85. Monami M, Ahren B, Dicembrini I, Mannucd E. Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors and cardiovascular risk: a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2013;15(2):112–20.
86. Scirica BM, Bhatt DL, Braunwald E, et al. Saxagliptin and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 2013;369:1317.
87. White WB, Cannon CP, Heller SR, et al.; EXAMINE Investigators. Alogliptin after acute coronary syndrome in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(14):1327–35.
88. Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin JM, et al.; EMPA-REG OUTCOME Investigators. Empagliflozin, cardiovascular outcomes, and mortality in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2015;373:2117–28.
89. Marso SP, Daniels GH, Brown-Frandsen K, et al.; LEADER Steering Committee; LEADER Trial Investigators. Liraglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2016;375:311–22.
90. Pfeffer MA, et al. Lixisenatide in patients with type 2 diabetes and acute coronary syndrome. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(23):2247–57.
91. Chiasson JL, Josse RG, Gomis R, Hanefeld M, Karasik A, Laakso M, for the STOP-NIDDM Trial Research Group. Acarbose treatment and the risk of cardiovascular disease and hypertension in patients with impaired glucose tolerance: the STOP-NIDDM trial. JAMA. 2003;290:486–94.
92. Mann DL, Zipes DP, Libby P, Bonow RO, Braunwald E, editors. Braunwald's heart disease: a textbook of cardiovascular medicine. 10th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders; 2015: Chap. 61. pp. 1375.
93. Gerstein HC, Bosch J, et al. Basal insulin and cardiovascular and other outcomes in dysglycemia. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:319–28.
94. Gaede P, Lund-Andersen H, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Effect of a multifactorial intervention on mortality in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358(6):580–91.
95. Goff DC, Lloyd-Jones DM, Bennett G, Coady S, D'Agostino RB, Gibbons R, et al. 2013 ACC/AHA cardiovascular risk assessment guideline. Circulation. 2014;129(Suppl 2):S49–73. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.cir.0000437741.48606.98.
96. Conroy RM, Pyorala K, Fitzgerald AP, Sans S, Menotti A, De Backer G, et al. Estimation of ten-year risk of fatal cardiovascular disease in Europe: the SCORE project. Eur Heart J. 2003;24:987–1003.
97. Piepoli MF, Hoes A, Agewall S, Albus C, Brotons C, Catapano AL, et al. 2016 European Guidelines on cardiovascular disease prevention in clinical practice. Eur Heart J. 2016;37:2315–81. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehw106.
98. Young LH, Wackers FJT, Chyun DA, et al.; DIAD Investigators. Cardiac outcomes after screening for asymptomatic coronary artery disease in patients with type 2 diabetes: the DIAD study: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA. 2009;301:1547–55.
99. Montalescot G, Sechtem U, Achenbach S, Andreotti F, Arden C, Budaj A, et al. 2013 ESC guidelines on the management of stable coronary artery disease. Eur Heart J. 2013;34:2949–3003. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/eht296.
100. Fihn SD, Gardin JM, Abrams J, Berra K, Blankenship JC, Dallas AP, et al. 2012 ACCF/AHA/ACP/AATS/PCNA/SCAI/STS guideline for the diagnosis and management of patients with stable ischemic heart disease. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2012;60(24):2564–603. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2012.07.013.
101. Paech DC, Weston AR. A systematic review of the clinical effectiveness of 64-slice or higher computed tomography angiography as an alternative to invasive coronary angiography in the investigation of suspected coronary artery disease. BMC Cardiovasc Disord. 2011;11:32.
102. Center for Disease Control and Prevention. National diabetes fact sheet: National estimates and general information on diabetes and prediabetes in the US 2011. Washington, DC: US Department of Health and Human Services; 2011.
103. Norhammar A, Malmberg K, Diderholm E, Lagerqvist B, Lindahl B, Rydén L, Wallentin L. Diabetes mellitus: the major risk factor in unstable coronary artery disease even after consideration of the extent of coronary artery disease and benefits of revascularization. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2004;43:585–91. PMID: 14975468. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2003.08.050.
104. Creager MA, Lüscher TF, Cosentino F, Beckman JA. Diabetes and vascular disease: pathophysiology, clinical consequences, and medical therapy: part I. Circulation. 2003;108:1527–32 [. PMID:14504252. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.CIR.0000091257.27563.32.
105. Dagenais GR, Lu J, Faxon DP, Kent K, Lago RM, Lezama C, Hueb W, Weiss M, Slater J, Frye RL. Effects of optimal medical treatment with or without coronary revascularization on angina and subsequent revascularizations in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and stable ischemic heart disease. Circulation. 2011;123:1492–500. PMID: 21444887. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.110.978247.
106. Hlatky MA, Boothroyd DB, Bravata DM, Boersma E, Booth J, Brooks MM, Carrié D, Clayton TC, Danchin N, Flather M, Hamm CW, Hueb WA, Kähler J, Kelsey SF, King SB, Kosinski AS, Lopes N, McDonald KM, Rodriguez A, Serruys P, Sigwart U, Stables RH, Owens DK, Pocock SJ. Coronary artery bypass surgery compared with percutaneous coronary interventions for multivessel disease: a collaborative analysis of individual patient data from ten randomized trials. Lancet. 2009;373:1190–7 [. PMID: 19303634. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(09)60552-3.
107. American Diabetes Association. Executive summary: standards of medical care in diabetes-2012. Diabetes Care. 2012;35 Suppl 1:S4–S10.
108. Smith SC, Benjamin EJ, Bonow RO, Braun LT, Creager MA, Franklin BA, Gibbons RJ, Grundy SM, Hiratzka LF, Jones DW, Lloyd-Jones DM, Minissian M, Mosca L, Peterson ED, Sacco RL, Spertus J, Stein JH, Taubert KA. AHA/ACCF secondary prevention and risk reduction therapy for patients with coronary and other atherosclerotic vascular disease: 2011 update: a guideline from the American Heart Association and American College of Cardiology Foundation. Circulation. 2011;124:2458–73 [. PMID: 22052934. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIR.0b013e318235eb4d.
109. Stone GW, Ellis SG, Cox DA, Hermiller J, O'Shaughnessy C, Mann JT, Turco M, Caputo R, Bergin P, Greenberg J, Popma JJ, Russell ME. A polymer-based, paclitaxel-eluting stent in patients with coronary artery disease. N Engl J Med. 2004;350:221–31.
110. Stone GW, Rizvi A, Newman W, Mastali K, Wang JC, Caputo R, Doostzadeh J, Cao S, Simonton CA, Sudhir K, Lansky AJ, Cutlip DE, Kereiakes DJ. Everolimus-eluting versus paclitaxel-

eluting stents in coronary artery disease. N Engl J Med. 2010;362:1663–74.
111. Nashef SA, Roques F, Sharples LD, Nilsson J, Smith C, Goldstone AR, Lockowandt U. EuroSCORE II. Eur J Cardiothorac Surg. 2012;41:734–44; discussion 744–745.
112. Serruys PW, Morice MC, Kappetein AP, Colombo A, Holmes DR, Mack MJ, Ståhle E, Feldman TE, van den Brand M, Bass EJ, Van Dyck N, Leadley K, Dawkins KD, Mohr FW. Percutaneous coronary intervention versus coronary-artery bypass grafting for severe coronary artery disease. N Engl J Med. 2009;360:961–72.
113. Mack MJ, Banning AP, Serruys PW, Morice MC, Taeymans Y, VanNooten G, Possati G, Crea F, Hood KL, Leadley K, Dawkins KD, Kappetein AP. Bypass versus drug-eluting stents at three years inSYNTAX patients with diabetes mellitus or metabolic syndrome. Ann Thorac Surg. 2011;92:2140–6.
114. Farkouh ME, Domanski M, Sleeper LA, Siami FS, Dangas G, Mack M, Yang M, Cohen DJ, Rosenberg Y, Solomon SD, Desai AS, Gersh BJ, Magnuson EA, Lansky A, Boineau R, Weinberger J, Ramanathan K, Sousa JE, Rankin J, Bhargava B, Buse J, Hueb W, Smith CR, Muratov V, Bansilal S, King S, Bertrand M, Fuster V. Strategies for multivessel revascularization in patients with diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:2375–84.
115. Baber U, Mehran R, Sharma SK, Brar S, Yu J, Suh JW, Kim HS, Park SJ, Kastrati A, de Waha A, Krishnan P, Moreno P, Sweeny J, Kim MC, Suleman J, Pyo R, Wiley J, Kovacic J, Kini AS, Dangas GD. Impact of the everolimus-eluting stent on stent thrombosis: a meta-analysis of 13 randomized trials. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2011;58:1569–77.
116. Bangalore S, Toklu B, Feit F. Response to letter regarding article, "Outcomes with coronary artery bypass graft surgery versus percutaneous coronary intervention for patients with diabetes mellitus: can newer generation drug-eluting stents bridge the gap?". Circ Cardiovasc Interv. 2014;7:729.
117. Muramatsu T, Onuma Y, van Geuns RJ, Chevalier B, Patel TM, Seth A, Diletti R, García-García HM, Dorange CC, Veldhof S, Cheong WF, Ozaki Y, Whitbourn R, Bartorelli A, Stone GW, Abizaid A, Serruys PW. 1-year clinical outcomes of diabetic patients treated with everolimus-eluting bioresorbable vascular scaffolds: a pooled analysis of the ABSORB and the SPIRIT trials. JACC Cardiovasc Interv. 2014;7:482–93.
118. Onuma Y, Serruys PW. Bioresorbable scaffold: the advent of a new era in percutaneous coronary and peripheral revascularization? Circulation. 2011;123:779–97.
119. Acharya T, Kotak K, Fonarow GC, Cannon CP, Laskey WK, Peacock WF, et al. On behalf of GWTG Steering Committee and Investigators. Compliance with guideline-directed therapy in diabetic patients admitted with acute coronary syndrome: findings from AHA get with the guidelines – Coronary Artery Disease Program. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ahj.2017.02.025
120. Mackay MH, Ratner PA, Johnson JL, Humphries KH, Buller CE. Gender differences in symptoms of myocardial ischaemia. Eur Heart J. 2011;32:3107–14.
121. Gimenez MR, Reiter M, Twerenbold R, Reichlin T, Wildi K, Haaf P, et al. Sex specific chest pain characteristics in the early diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction. JAMA Intern Med. 2014;174(2):241–9.
122. Diercks DB, Peacock WF, Hiestand BC, Chen AY, Pollack CV Jr, Kirk JD, et al. Frequency and consequences of recording an electrocardiogram >10 minutes after arrival in an emergency room in non-ST-segment elevation acute coronary syndromes (from the CRUSADE initiative). Am J Cardiol. 2006;97:437–42.
123. Savonitto S, Ardissino D, Granger CB, Morando G, Prando MD, Mafrici A, et al. Prognostic value of the admission electrocardiogram in acute coronary syndromes. JAMA. 1999;281:707–13.
124. Steg PG, James SK, Atar D, Badano LP, Blomstrom-Lundqvist C, Borger MA, et al. ESC guidelines for the management of acute myocardial infarction in patients presenting with ST-segment elevation. Eur Heart J. 2012;33:2569–619.
125. Mueller C. Biomarkers and acute coronary syndromes: an update. Eur Heart J. 2014;35:552–6.
126. Thygesen K, Mair J, Giannitsis E, Mueller C, Lindahl B, Blankenberg S, et al. How to use high-sensitivity cardiac troponins in acute cardiac care. Eur Heart J. 2012;33:2252–7.
127. Irfan A, Twerenbold R, Reiter M, Reichlin T, Stelzig C, Freese M, et al. Determinants of high-sensitivity troponin T among patients with a noncardiac cause of chest pain. Am J Med. 2012;125:491–8.
128. Raskovalova T, Twerenbold R, Collinson PO, Keller T, Bouvaist H, Folli C, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of combined cardiac troponin and copeptin assessment for early rule-out of myocardial infarction: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur Heart J Acute Cardiovasc Care. 2014;3:18–27.
129. Maisel A, Mueller C, Neath SX, Christenson RH, Morgenthaler NG, McCord J, et al. Copeptin helps in the early detection of patients with acute myocardial infarction: primary results of the CHOPIN trial (Copeptin Helps in the early detection Of Patients with acute myocardial INfarction). J Am Coll Cardiol. 2013;62:150–60.
130. Reichlin T, Twerenbold R, Wildi K, Gimenez MR, Bergsma N, Haaf P, et al. Prospective validation of a 1-hour algorithm to rule-out and rule-in acute myocardial infarction using a high sensitivity cardiac troponin T assay. CMAJ. 2015;187:E243–52.
131. Grenne B, Eek C, Sjoli B, Dahlslett T, Uchto M, Hol PK, et al. Acute coronary occlusion in non-ST-elevation acute coronary syndrome: outcome and early identification by strain echocardiography. Heart. 2010;96:1550–6.
132. Antman EM, Cohen M, Bernink PJ, McCabe CH, Horacek T, Papuchis G, et al. The TIMI risk score for unstable angina/non-ST elevation MI: a method for prognostication and therapeutic decisión making. JAMA. 2000;284:835–42.
133. Morrow DA, Antman EM, Charlesworth A, Cairns R, Murphy SA, de Lemos JA, et al. TIMI risk score for ST-elevation myocardial infarction: a convenient, bedside, clinical score for risk assessment at presentation an intravenous nPA for treatment of infarcting myocardium early II trial substudy. Circulation. 2000;102:2031–7.
134. Fox KA, Dabbous OH, Goldberg RJ, Pieper KS, Eagle KA, de Werf V, et al. Prediction of risk of death and myocardial infarction in the six months after presentation with acute coronary syndrome: prospective multinational observational study (GRACE). BMJ. 2006;333:1091–4.
135. Cakar MA, Sahinkus S, Aydin E, Vatan MB, Keser N, Akdemir R, et al. Relation between the GRACE score and severity of atherosclerosis in acute coronary síndrome. J Cardiol. 2014;63:24–8.
136. Yan AT, Yan RT, Tan M, Eagle KA, Granger CB, Dabbous OH, et al. In-hospital revascularization and one-year outcome of acute coronary syndrome patients stratified by the GRACE risk score. Am J Cardiol. 2005;96(7):913–6.
137. Garg S, Sarno G, Serruys PW, Rodriguez AE, Bolognese L, Anselmi M, et al. Prediction of 1-year clinical outcomes using the SYNTAX score in patients with acute ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction undergoing primary percutaneous coronary intervention: a substudy of the STRATEGY (Single High-Dose Bolus Tirofiban and Sirolimus-Eluting Stent Versus Abciximab and Bare-Metal Stent in Acute Myocardial Infarction) and MULTISTRATEGY (Multicenter Evaluation of Single High-Dose Bolus Tirofiban Versus Abciximab With Sirolimus-Eluting Stent or Bare-Metal Stent in Acute Myocardial Infarction Study) trials. JACC Cardiovasc Interv. 2011;4:66–75.
138. Morice MC, Serruys PW, Kappetein P, Feldman T, Stahle E, Colombo A, et al. Five-year outcomes in patients with left main disease treated with either percutaneous coronary intervention or

coronary artery bypass grafting in the SYNTAX trial. Circulation. 2014;129:2388–94.
139. Farkouh ME, Domanski M, Sleeper LA, Siami FS, Dangas G, Mack M, et al. Strategies for multivessel revascularization in patients with diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:2375–84.
140. Subherwal S, Bach RG, Chen AY, Gage BF, Rao SV, Newby LK, et al. Baseline risk of major bleeding in non–ST-segment–elevation myocardial infarction the CRUSADE (Can Rapid risk stratification of Unstable angina patients Suppress ADverse outcomes with Early implementation of the ACC/AHA guidelines) bleeding score. Circulation. 2009;119:1873–82.
141. Franklin K, Goldberg RJ, Spencer F, Klein W, Budaj A, Brieger D, et al. Implications of diabetes in patients with acute coronary syndromes. The Global Registry of Acute Coronary Events. Arch Intern Med. 2004;164:1457–63.
142. Finfer S, Chittock DR, Su SY, Blair D, Foster D, Dhingra V, et al.; The NICE-SUGAR Study Investigators. Intensive versus conventional glucose control in critically ill patients. N Engl J Med. 2009;360:1283–97.
143. Wiviott SD, Braunwald E, Angiolillo DJ, Meisel S, Dalby AJ, Verheugt FW, et al.; TRITON-TIMI 38 Investigators. Greater clinical benefit of more intensive oral antiplatelet therapy with prasugrel in patients with diabetes mellitus in the trial to assess improvement in therapeutic outcomes by optimizing platelet inhibition with prasugrel-Thrombolysis in Myocardial Infarction 38. Circulation. 2008;118:1626–36.
144. James S, Angiolillo DJ, Cornel JH, Erlinge D, Husted S, Kontny F, et al; PLATO Study Group. Ticagrelor vs. clopidogrel in patients with acute coronary syndromes and diabetes: a substudy from the PLATelet inhibition and patient Outcomes (PLATO) trial. Eur Heart J. 2010;31:3006–16.
145. Goodman SG, Cohen M, Bigonzi F, Gurfinkel EP, Radley DR, Le Iouer V, et al. Randomized trial of low molecular weight heparin (enoxaparin) versus unfractionated heparin for unstable coronary artery disease: one-year results of the ESSENCE Study. Efficacy and Safety of Subcutaneous Enoxaparin in Non-Q Wave Coronary Events. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2000;36:693–8.
146. White HD, Kleiman NS, Mahaffey KW, Lokhnygina Y, Pieper KS, Chiswell K, et al. Efficacy and safety of enoxaparin compared with unfractionated heparin in high-risk patients with non-ST-segment elevation acute coronary syndrome undergoing percutaneous coronary intervention in the Superior Yield of the New Strategy of Enoxaparin, Revascularization and Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa Inhibitors (SYNERGY) trial. Am Heart J. 2006;152:1042–50.
147. Stone GW, White HD, Ohman EM, Bertrand ME, Lincoff AM, McLaurin BT, et al., for the Acute Catheterization and Urgent Intervention Triage strategy (ACUITY) trial investigators. Bivalirudin in patients with acute coronary syndromes undergoing percutaneous coronary intervention: a subgroup analysis from the Acute Catheterization and Urgent Intervention Triage strategy (ACUITY) trial. Lancet. 2007;369:907–19.
148. Feit F, Manoukian SV, Ebrahimi R, Pollack CV, Ohman EM, Attubato MJ, et al. Safety and efficacy of bivalirudin monotherapy in patients with diabetes mellitus and acute coronary syndromes: a report from the ACUITY (Acute Catheterization and Urgent Intervention Triage Strategy) trial. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2008;51:1645–52.
149. Roffi M, Patrono C, Collet JP, Mueller C, Valgimigli M, Andreotti F, et al. 2015 ESC Guidelines for the management of acute coronary syndromes in patients presenting without persistent ST-segment elevation. Task Force for the Management of Acute Coronary Syndromes in Patients Presenting without Persistent ST-Segment Elevation of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). Eur Heart J. 2016;37:267–315.
150. Amsterdam EA, Wenger NK, Brindis RG, Casey DE, Ganiats TG, Holmes DR, et al. 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with non-ST-elevation acute coronary syndromes. A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. Circulation. 2014;130:e344–426.
151. Prasad A, Sotne G, Suckey T, et al. Impact of diabetes mellitus on myocardial perfusion after primary angioplasty in patients with acute myocardial infarction. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2005;45:508–14.
152. Feldman LJ, Coste P, Furber A, et al.; Optimal STenting-2 Investigators. Incomplete resolution of ST-segment elevation is a marker of transient microcirculatory dysfunction after stenting for acute myocardial infarction. Circulation. 2003;107:2684–9.
153. Biondi-Zoccai GG, Abbate A, Liuzzo G, Biasucci LM. Atherothrombosis, inflammation, and diabetes. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2003;41:1071–7.
154. Nuo L, Gui Y, Chen M. Comparing the adverse clinical outcomes in patients with non-insulin treated type 2 diabetes mellitus and patients without type 2 diabetes mellitus following percutaneous coronary intervention: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Cardiovasc Disord. 2016;16:238.
155. Witzenbichler B, Mehran R, Guagliumi G, et al. Impact of diabetes mellitus on the safety and effectiveness of bivalirudin in patients with acute myocardial infarction undergoing primary angioplasty: analysis from the HORIZONS-AMI (Harmonizing Outcomes with RevasculariZatiON and Stents in Acute Myocardial Infarction) trial. JACC Cardiovasc Interv. 2011;4(7):760–8.
156. Alabas OA, Hall M, Rutherford MJ, et al. Long-term excess mortality associates with diabetes following acute myocardial infarction: a population-base cohort study. J Epidemiol Community Health. 2017;71:25–32.
157. Mathew V, Gersh BJ, Williams BA, et al. Outcomes in patients with diabetes mellitus undergoing percutaneous coronary intervention in the current era: a report from the Prevention of REStenosis with Tranilast and its Outcomes (PRESTO) trial. Circulation. 2004;109(4):476–80.
158. Dangas GD, Farkouh ME, Sleeper LA, et al. Long-term outcome of PCI versus CABG in insulin and non-insulin-treated diabetic patients: results from the FREEDOM trial. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2014;64(12):1189–97.
159. Mahmoud A, Elgendy I, Mansoor H, et al. Early invasive strategy and in-hospital survival among diabetic with non-ST-elevation acute coronary syndromes: a contemporary national insight. J Am Heart Assoc. 2017;6:1–14.
160. Cannon CP, Weintraub WS, Demopoulos LA, et al. Comparison of early invasive and conservative strategies in patients with unstable coronary syndromes treated with the glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitor tirofiban. N Engl J Med. 2001;344:1879–87.x.
161. Carson JL, Scholz PM, Chen AY, et al. Diabetes mellitus increases short-term mortality and morbidity in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2002;40:418–23.
162. Timmer JR, Ottervanger JP, de Boer MJ, et al. Primary percutaneous coronary intervention compared with fibrinolysis for myocardial infarction in diabetes mellitus: results from the Primary Coronary Angioplasty vs Thrombolysis-2 trial. Arch Intern Med. 2007;167(13):1353–9.
163. Angeja BG, de Lemos J, Murphy SA, et al. Impact of diabetes mellitus on epicardial and microvascular flow after fibrinolytic therapy. Am Heart J. 2002;144:649–56.
164. Leavitt BJ, Sheppard L, Maloney C, et al. Effect of diabetes and associated conditions on long-term survival after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. Circulation. 2004;110(11 Suppl 1):II41–4.
165. Kannel WB, McGee DL. Diabetes and cardiovascular disease. The Framingham study. JAMA. 1979;241:2035–8.
166. Bell DS, Lukas MA, Holdbrook FK, Fowler MB. The effect of carvedilol on mortality risk in heart failure patients with

diabetes: results of a meta-analysis. Curr Med Res Opin. 2006;22(2):287–96.
167. Van Deursen VM, Urso R, Laroche C, Damman K, Dahlström U, Tavazzi L. Co-morbidities in patients with heart failure: an analysis of the European Heart Failure Pilot Survey. Eur J Heart Fail. 2014;16(1):103–1.
168. Kasznicki J, Drzewoski J. Heart failure in the diabetic population-pathophysiology, diagnosis and management. Arch Med Sci. 2014;10(3):546–56.
169. Rubler S, Dlugash J, Yuceoglu YZ, Kumral T, Branwood AW, Grishman A. New type of cardiomyopathy associated with diabetic glomerulosclerosis. Am J Cardiol. 1972;30:595–602.
170. Sharma V, McNeill JH. Diabetic cardiomyopathy: where are we 40 years later? Can J Cardiol. 2006;22(4):305–8.
171. Aneja A, Tang WH, Bansilal S, Garcia MJ, Farkouh M. Diabetic cardiomyopathy: insights into pathogenesis, diagnostic challenges, and therapeutic options. Am J Med. 2008;121:748–57.
172. Devereux RB, Roman MJ, Paranicas M, et al. Impact of diabetes on cardiac structure and function: the Strong Heart Study. Circulation. 2000;101:2271–6.
173. Young ME, Mcnulty P, Taegtmeyer H. Adaptation and maladaptation of the heart in diabetes: part II potential mechanisms. Circulation. 2002;105:1861–70.
174. Fischer VW, Barner HB, Larose LS. Pathomorphologic aspects of muscular tissue in diabetes mellitus. Hum Pathol. 1984;15:1127–36.
175. Shimizu M, Umeda K, Sugihara N, et al. Collagen remodelling in myocardia of diabetic patients. J Clin Pathol. 1993;46:32–6.
176. Fukushima A, Lopaschuk GA. Cardiac fatty acid oxidation in heart failure associated with obesity and diabetes. Biochim Biophys Acta. 2016;1861:1525–34.
177. Negishi K, Seicean S, Negishi T, Yingchoncharoen T, Aljaroudi W, Marwick TH. Relation of heart-rate recovery to new onset heart failure and atrial fibrillation in patients with diabetes mellitus and preserved ejection fraction. Am J Cardiol. 2013;111:748–53.
178. Kuch B, von Scheidt W, Peter W, Doring A, Piehlmeier W, Landgraf R, Meisinger C. Sex-specific determinants of left ventricular mass in pre-diabetic and type 2 diabetic subjects: the Augsburg Diabetes Family Study. Diabetes Care. 2007;30:946–52.
179. Eguchi K, Boden BA, Jin Z, Rundek T, Sacco R, Homma S, et al. Association between diabetes mellitus and left ventricular hypertrophy in a multi-ethnic population. Am J Cardiol. 2008;101(12):1787–91.
180. Sacco RL, Anand K, Lee H-S, Boden-Albala B, Stabler S, Allen R, Paik MC. Homocysteine and the risk of ischemic stroke in a triethnic cohort: the Northern Manhattan Study. Stroke. 2004;35:2263–9.
181. Brooks BA, Franjic B, Ban CR, Swaraj K, Yue DK, Celermajer DS, et al. Diastolic dysfunction and abnormalities of the microcirculation in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2008;10(9):739–46.
182. Fang ZY, Schull-Meade R, Leano R, Mottram PM, Prins JB, Marwick TH. Screening for heart disease in diabetic subjects. Am Heart J. 2005;149(2):349–54.
183. Fang ZY, Schull-Meade R, Prins JB, Marwick TH. Determinants of subclinical diabetic heart disease. Diabetologia. 2005;48:394–402.
184. From AM, Scott CG, Chen HH. The development of heart failure in patients with diabetes mellitus and pre-clinical diastolic dysfunction a population-based study. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2010;55:300–5.
185. Lindman B, Dávila-Román V, Mann D, Mc Nulty S, Semigran M, Lewis G, et al. Cardiovascular phenotype in HFpEF patients with or without diabetes: a RELAX trial ancillary study. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2014;64:541–9.
186. Van Der Horst IC, De Boer RA, Hillege HL, Boomsma F, Voors AA, Van Veldhuisen DJ. Neurohormonal profile of patients with heart failure and diabetes. Neth Heart J. 2010;18(4):190–6.
187. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes: 2008. Diabetes Care. 2008;31(suppl1):S12–54.
188. UK Prospective Diabetes Study Group. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). Lancet. 1998;352:837–53.
189. Skyler J, Bergenstal R, Bonow R, Buse J, Deedwania P, Gale E, et al. Intensive glycemic control and the prevention of cardiovascular events: implications of the ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VA Diabetes Trials A Position Statement of the American Diabetes Association and a Scientific Statement of the American College of Cardiology Foundation and the American Heart Association. Circulation. 2009;119(2):351–7.
190. Yusuf S, Sleight P, Pogue J, et al. Effects of an angiotensin-converting-enzyme inhibitor, ramipril, on cardiovascular events in high-risk patients. The Heart Outcomes Prevention Evaluation Study Investigators. N Engl J Med. 2000;342:145–53.
191. EURopean trial On reduction of cardiac events with Perindopril in stable coronary Artery disease Investigators. Efficacy of perindopril in reduction of cardiovascular events among patients with stable coronary artery disease: randomised, double blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre trial (the EUROPA study). Lancet. 2003;362:782–8.
192. Pham D, De Albuquerque N, Darren K, Neeland I. Impact of empagliflozin in patients with diabetes and heart failure. Trends Cardiovasc Med. 2017;27:144–15.
193. Fitchett D, Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin JM, Hantel S, Salsali A, et al. Heart failure outcomes with empagliflozin in patients with type 2 diabetes at high cardiovascular risk: results of the EMPA-REGOUTCOME trial. Eur Heart J. 2016;37:1526–34.
194. Seferovic JP, Claggett B, Seidelmann SB, Seely EW, Packer M, Zile MR. Effect of sacubitril/valsartan versus enalapril on glycaemic control in patients with heart failure and diabetes: a post-hoc analysis from the PARADIGM-HF trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017. pii: S2213-8587(17)30087-6.
195. The Digitalis Investigation Group Investigators. The effect of digoxin on mortality and morbidity in patients with heart failure. N Engl J Med. 1997;336:525–33.
196. Coady MA, Rizzo JA, Elefteriades JA. Pathologic variants of thoracic aortic dissections: penetrating atherosclerotic ulcers and intramural hematomas. Cardiol Clin. 1999;17(4):637–57.
197. Nienaber CA. Pathophysiology of acute aortic syndromes. In: Baliga RR, Nienaber CA, Isselbacher EM, Eagle KA, editors. Aortic dissection and related syndromes. New York: Springer; 2007. p. 17–43.
198. He X, Liu X, Liu W, Wang B, et al. Association between diabetes and risk of aortic dissection: a case-control study in a Chinese population. PLoS One. 2015;10(11).
199. Theivacumar NS, Stephenson MA, Mistry H, Valenti D. Diabetes mellitus and aortic aneurysm rupture: a favorable association? Vasc Endovasc Surg. 2014;48(1):45–50.
200. Da Silva ES, Gornati VC, Casella IB, et al. The similarities and differences among patients with abdominal aortic aneurysms referred to a tertiary hospital and found at necropsy. Vascular. 2015;23(4):411–8.
201. Lederle FA. The strange relationship between diabetes and abdominal aortic aneurysm. Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg. 2012;43(3):254–6.
202. Mosch J, Gleissner CA, Body S, Aikawa E. Histopathological assessment of calcification and inflammation of calcific aortic valves from patients with and without diabetes mellitus. Histol Histopathol. 2017;32(3):293–306.
203. Rosenhek R, Binder T, Porenta G, Lang I, Christ G, Schemper M, Maurer G, Baumgartner H. Predictors of outcome in severe, asymptomatic aortic stenosis. N Engl J Med. 2000;343:611–7.
204. Testuz A, Nguyen V, Mathieu T, et al. Influence of metabolic syndrome and diabetes on progression of calcific aortic valve stenosis. Int J Cardiol. 2017;244:248–53.

205. Leon MB, Smith CR, Mack M, Miller DC, Moses JW, Svensson LG, Tuzcu EM, Webb JG, Fontana GP, Makkar RR, Brown DL, Block PC, Guyton RA, Pichard AD, Bavaria JE, Herrmann HC, Douglas PS, Petersen JL, Akin JJ, Anderson WN, Wang D, Pocock S; PARTNER Trial Investigators. Transcatheter aortic-valve implantation for aortic stenosis in patients who cannot undergo surgery. N Engl J Med. 2010;363:1597–607.
206. Miki T, Yuda S, Kouzu H, Miura T. Diabetic cardiomyopathy: pathophysiology and clinical features. Heart Fail Rev. 2013;18:149–66.
207. Podlaha R, Falk A. The prevalence of diabetes mellitus and other risk factors of atherosclerosis in bradycardia requiring pacemaker treatment. Horm Metab Res Suppl. 1992;26:84–7.
208. Sun H, Guan Y, Wang L, Zhao Y, Lv H, Bi X, et al. Influence of diabetes on cardiac resynchronization therapy in heart failure patients: a meta-analysis. BMC Cardiovasc Disord. 2015;15:25.
209. Zhang Q, Liu T, Ng CY, Li G. Diabetes mellitus and atrial remodeling: mechanisms and potential upstream therapies. Cardiovasc Ther. 2014;32:233–41.
210. Goudis CA, Korantzopoulos P, Ntalas I, Kallergis EM, Liu T, Ketikoglou DG. Diabetes mellitus and atrial fibrillation: pathophysiological mechanisms and potential upstream therapies. Int J Cardiol. 2015;184:617–22.
211. Benjamin EJ, Levy D, Vaziri SM, D'Agostino RB, Belanger AJ, Wolf PA. Independent risk factors for atrial fibrillation in a population-based cohort. The Framingham Heart study. JAMA. 1994;271:840–4.
212. Movahed MR, Hashemzadeh M, Jamal MM. Diabetes mellitus is a strong independent risk for atrial fibrillation and flutter in addition to other cardiovascular disease. Int J Cardiol. 2005;105:315–8.
213. Huxley RR, Alonso A, Lopez FL, et al. Type 2 diabetes, glucose homeostasis and incident atrial fibrillation: the Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities study. Heart. 2012;98:133–8.
214. Huxley RR, Filion KB, Konety S, Alonso A. Meta-analysis of cohort and case-control studies of Type 2 diabetes mellitus and a risk of atrial fibrillation. Am J Cardiol. 2011;108:56–62.
215. Codinach Huix P, Freixa PR. Miocardiopatía diabética: concepto, función cardiaca y patogenia. An Med Interna. 2002;19:313–20.
216. Cryer PE. Death during intensive glycemic therapy of diabetes: Mechanisms and Implications. Am J Med. 2011;124:993–6.
217. Tesfaye S, Boulton AJM, Dyck PJ, Freeman R, Horowitz M, Kempler P, et al. Diabetic neuropathies: update on definitions, diagnostic criteria, estimation of severity, and treatments. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:2285–93.
218. Clemente D, Pereira T, Ribeiro S. Ventricular repolarization in diabetic patients: characterization and clinical implications. Arq Bras Cardiol. 2012;99:1015–22.
219. Nordin C. The case for hypoglycaemia as a proarrhythmic event: basic and clinical evidence. Diabetologia. 2010;53:1552–61.

Diabetes and Stroke: The Role of Glucose Regulation

47

Forrest Lowe and Wuwei (Wayne) Feng

Stroke as a Long-Term Complication of Uncontrolled Diabetes Mellitus

The relationship between stroke and diabetes mellitus (DM) though complex is undeniable. Numerous studies have delineated a clear correlate between prediabetes, diabetes mellitus type 1, and diabetes mellitus type 2 as they relate to cerebrovascular disease with decades of research detailing the causality between hyperglycemia and stroke risk. The global prevalence of stroke continues to rise despite the advances in treatment options for cardiovascular risk factors modification such as diabetes. Diabetics represent a subset of the patients who are at two to three times higher risk of mortality from stroke than the general population [1]. The purpose of this chapter is to detail the microvascular and macrovascular mechanisms that promote cerebrovascular disease in diabetics which leads to stroke. Additionally, the importance of glucose control for both primary and secondary stroke prevention will be discussed in terms of the role of therapeutical options for attaining normoglycemia. Finally, there will be in-depth discussion of the optimization of diabetic control as it relates to other stroke risk factors such as atherosclerosis, hypertension, and atrial fibrillation.

Microvascular Complications of Diabetes

Diabetes mellitus is a modifiable risk factor for ischemic stroke and is defined by one of the following: a fasting blood glucose (fbg) of ≥126, a hemoglobin A1C (HbA1C) of ≥6.5%, 2 hours postprandial glucose of ≥200 mg/dl after administration of a 75 g glucose tolerance test, or a random serum glucose ≥200 mg/dl in a patient with classic signs of hyperglycemia/hypoglycemia [2]. The pathophysiology of DM is complex, and its interrelation with the development of cerebrovascular disease is well studied. However, the microvascular and macrovascular changes that occur due to persistent hyperglycemia have not been fully elucidated. Microvascular changes within cerebrovasculature and systemic vasculature occur through multiple cellular pathways that are directly modulated by fluctuations in serum glucose.

Microvascular changes due to hyperglycemia, which are noted on both the cellular and genetic level, occur due to a chronic, systemic, inflammatory state induced by the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) with early changes noted on both the cellular and genetic level. The sources of the ROS are diverse and include excess superoxide production via mitochondria, direct oxidation of serum glucose, endothelial cell nitrogen oxygen synthase (eNOS), NADPH oxidase activation from abundance of advanced glycosylation end products (AGEs) [3], and the upregulation of mitochondrial matrix metalloproteinase (MMP-9) [4]. The dysfunction of microvascular endothelium begins to occur via these pathways in addition to many others that are far less well understood and mimic the changes found in the vasculature exposed to chronic inflammatory processes.

Chronic hyperglycemia causes abnormal production of ROS from normal glycolytic processes that metabolize glucose and results in excess side products which overwhelm the cellular antioxidants such as superoxide dismutase and glutathione peroxidase. To prevent continued production of ROS, many systemic cells will downregulate glucose transporters (GLUTs). However, endothelial cells normally express non-insulin-dependent GLUTs which allows for continued intracellular glycolytic generation of ROS. In addition to continued generation of ROS via glycolysis, mitochondrial dysfunction begins to occur with persistent hyperglycemia inducing a chain reaction during which multiple intracellular pathways are activated leading to further endothelial dysfunction [3].

F. Lowe
Department of Neurology, University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC, USA

W. Feng (✉)
Department of Neurology, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, NC, USA
e-mail: wayne.feng@duke.edu

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_47

Electron transport chain uncoupling within mitochondria propagates unmitigated binding of ROS to available intracellular oxygen further promoting oxidative stress. Indeed in numerous studies, it has been shown that inhibition of ROS production within endothelial mitochondria prevents the cumulative oxidative endothelial cell dysfunction in the setting of hyperglycemia. Apoptotic events, genetic expression of pro-inflammatory markers, and nitrogen oxide inhibition are all decreased by inhibition of mitochondrial free radical production due to hyperglycemia [3]. In one study Mishiro et al. demonstrated that the mitochondrial involvement in endothelial cell dysfunction is more complex than previously discerned in that hyperglycemia not only disrupts normal metabolic processes but also alters mitochondrial membrane permeability to the point of self-induced organelle apoptosis, MMP-9 production, and death of endothelial cells comprising the cerebral microvasculature [4].

Advanced glycation end products (AGEs) are by-products of glycosylated proteins or lipids that normally occur in the presence of hyperglycemia. The exact mechanism by which AGEs are derived is via the Maillard reaction which in short produces ketoamines that form AGEs via a dual pathway. In the setting of sustained hyperglycemia such as that which exists in diabetes mellitus or even in prediabetic states, these AGEs accumulate rapidly and are deposited within various tissues. Receptors for advanced glycosylation end products, RAGE, exist in normal endothelial cells and not only prevent endothelial cell repair but also promote infiltration of the vascular endothelium by inflammatory cells. Activation of RAGE and its promoted binding to AGE in DM causes endothelial cell dysfunction which manifests in some DM patients as diabetic microangiopathy [5]. However, not all AGE-related endothelial cell dysfunction is RAGE dependent [3] (Fig. 47.1).

RAGE independent endothelial dysfunction can occur due to glycation of LDL, extracellular cell matrix proteins, or activation of signaling proteins other than RAGE [3]. Kim et al. noted that AGE overproduction causes excessive LDL modification as well as increased expression of CD36 ligands [6]. This CD36 expression occurs predominantly

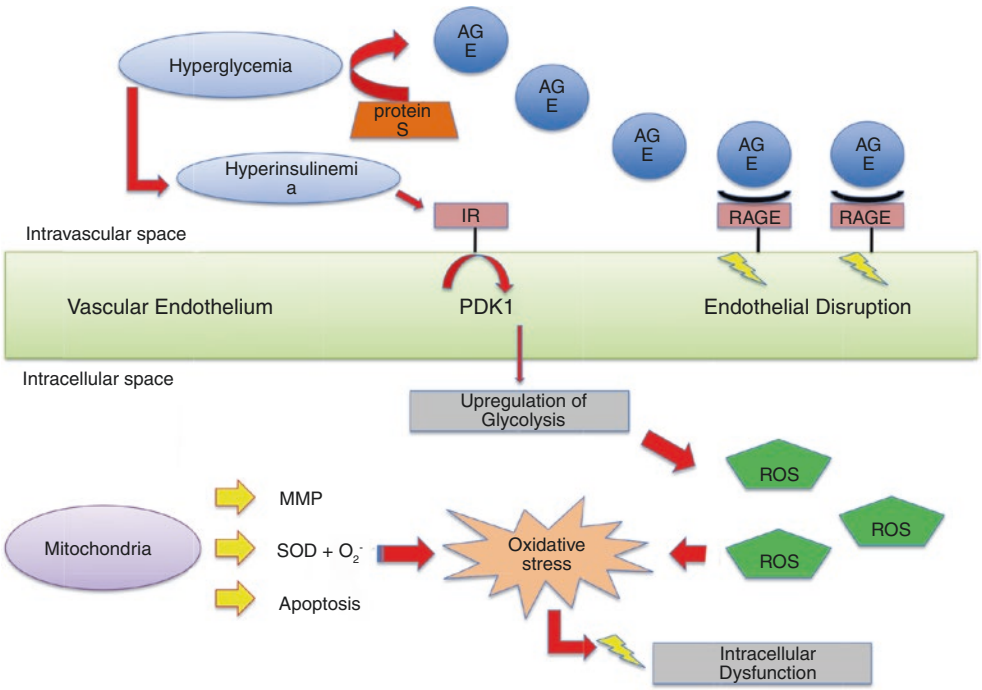


Fig. 47.1 Process of hyperglycemia-induced vascular endothelial dysfunction. Chronic hyperglycemia causes glycosylation of both fats and lipids resulting in the production of advanced glycosylated end products (AGEs). AGEs bind to receptors for advanced glycosylation end products resulting in endothelial disruption. Hyperglycemia results in concomitant hyperinsulinemia that yields oversaturation of insulin receptors as well as overproduction of 3-phosphoinositide-dependent protein kinase (PDK1). PDK1 overproduction causes upregulation of glycolysis and subsequent overproduction of reactive oxygen species (ROS). Mitochondrial dysfunction under the influence of chronic hyperglycemia can result in overproduction of mitochondrial matrix metalloproteinase (MMP-9), superoxide dismutase, and organelle-induced apoptosis. All of these mitochondrial products as well as glycolytic-induced ROS lead to oxidative stress resulting in intracellular dysfunction, abnormal metabolic gene transcription/upregulation allowing for increased rates of glycolysis, lipid synthesis, and GLUT transporter production. *Abbreviations*: AGE advanced glycosylated end products, RAGE receptor for AGEs, PDK1 3-phosphoinositide-dependent protein kinase, IR insulin receptor, MMP mitochondrial matrix metalloproteinase, SOD superoxide dismutase, ROS reactive oxygen species

in monocytes and blunts the inflammatory reaction that occurs in DM patients that experience endothelial cell injury, thereby inhibiting proper endothelial repair [6]. Similarly, in the setting of hyperinsulinemia commonly present in DMII patients, macrophages derived from monocytes demonstrate insulin receptor dysfunction which is pro-atherogenic in the setting of an already compromised endothelial integrity [7].

It is also important to note that other inflammatory proteins such as monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1) and IL-6 are also upregulated in diabetics with the elevation of MCP-1 causing both increased macrophage recruitment and increased adipocyte insulin resistance. In fact, many inflammatory markers such as C-reactive protein (CRP), intracellular adhesion molecule 1 (ICAM-1), and vascular cell adhesion molecule 1 (VCAM-1) are overexpressed in hyperglycemia not only in the diabetic but also in normal subjects who experience impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) or postprandial hyperglycemia [8]. Persistent hyperglycemia in DMII leads to concomitant improper physiologic response yielding a state of chronic hyperinsulinemia due to insulin resistance which in and of itself is disruptive to the integrity of cerebrovascular endothelium [7].

In animal studies involving cardiac endothelium, per Bornfeldt et al., hyperinsulinemia led to downregulation of insulin-mediated endothelial pathways that promote alteration of endothelial gene expression and production of transmembranous proteins [7]. Sustained elevation of serum insulin causes saturation of insulin receptors and increased activation of 3-phosphoinositide-dependent protein kinase (PDK1) which through a series of reactions promotes increased transcription of metabolic genes [7]. The epigenetic and genetic changes induced by chronic hyperglycemia can persist even years after serum glucose is controlled [9]. Consequently, these metabolic genes allow for increased rates of glycolysis, lipid synthesis, and GLUT transporter production. Additionally, when vascular smooth muscle cells are exposed to hyperinsulinemia, they demonstrate activation of pathways influenced by insulin-like growth factor-1 receptors (IGF1R) that are known to be pro-atherogenic [7]. All of these pathways, as noted in Fig. 47.1, lead to ROS overproduction, glycolysis upregulation, and genetic modifications. Furthermore, these pathways cause endothelial dysfunction and microvascular complications which were initially delineated in the landmark UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS).

Disruption of vasculature endothelium at the microvascular level in diabetics is most commonly seen in diabetics in the form of complications such as microangiopathy, arterial retinopathy, nephropathy, and peripheral neuropathy. The role of hyperglycemia as it pertains to the exacerbation of vascular endothelium dysfunction has already been discussed. However, one of the first comprehensive studies to demonstrate that strict regulation of serum glucose levels can prevent microvascular complications of hyperglycemia was in UKPDS. The data derived from this prospective study of DMII patients noted that over a period of 10 years if aggressive glucose control was achieved via sulphonylurea or insulin administration, there was a significant reduction in microvascular complications regardless of intervention. Up to a 25% reduction in nephropathy and ophthalmic complications was noted in the patient arm randomized to receive intensive serum glucose control. Additionally, the final average HbA1C of patients under intensive glucose control was 11% lower with a median value of 7% which directly corresponded to an improved rate of microvascular complications in that study arm. No macrovascular benefit was observed in either study arm nor were significant deleterious macrovascular outcomes [10].

Further studies such as the Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes Mellitus (ACCORD) evaluated whether even more aggressive serum glucose control than that achieved by patients in UKPDS would further prevent microvascular disease. However, the ACCORD study with its target HbA1C of 6% was stopped prematurely due to a significantly increased mortality rate in the intensive therapy treatment arm [11]. Unsurprisingly it was noted in the Heart Outcomes Prevention Evaluation (HOPE) trial that concomitant treatment of hypertension and hyperlipidemia in diabetics leads to improved outcomes with significantly decreased frequency of microvascular complications [12]. These significant interactions between hyperglycemia and hyperlipidemia as they relate to increased risk for ischemic stroke on the microvascular level are complex and exist in both the prediabetic and diabetes mellitus patient.

As mentioned in the preceding paragraphs, persistent hyperglycemia activates the AGE/RAGE complex. Interestingly the blockade of the excess activation of the ligand/receptor complex decreases atherosclerotic formation as well as diabetic nephropathy in hyperglycemia [9]. Increased production of vascular smooth muscle cells (VSMCs) is also encouraged during periods of hyperglycemia and has been demonstrated in DM1 and DMII. Though the pathways responsible for atherosclerotic formation in diabetics is not fully understood, it is likely that vascular endothelial injury is caused by hyperglycemia which is directly responsible for creating a pro-inflammatory state promoting VSMC proliferation, microangiopathy, and microvascular changes [13]. It is this pro-inflammatory state created by hyperglycemia that forces endothelial cells such as those present in the retinal vasculature to overexpress factors such as vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) in order to survive in an ischemic environment [9]. According to Prasad et al., VEGF also was found in animal studies to increase vascular permeability resulting in microvascular changes as well as compromise of the blood-brain barrier itself even in the setting of only transient hyperglycemic events [14].

Macrovascular Complications of Diabetes

Macrovascular changes due to hyperglycemia have been shown to result in neointimal expansion after the initial endothelial injuries have begun to accumulate within the diabetic patient. Normal vascular neointimal healing and formation are adversely affected by hyperglycemia creating systemic vasculature endothelium that is abnormally thickened by abnormally proliferating VSMCs [15] leading to non-compliant vasculature, hypertension, and increased stroke risk. Involvement of multiple cerebrovascular territories including vasculature to the blood-brain barrier is also compromised in the setting of hyperglycemia with dysfunction of arterial smooth muscle elasticity leading to stenosis, ischemia, and stroke [16]. Other animal studies demonstrate that cerebral arterioles likely undergo deleterious changes to endothelium more rapidly than larger cerebrovasculature such as the basilar or carotid arteries [17]. According to Zhou et al., animal studies in which arterial injury was created via balloon dilatation resulted in hyperplasia of the neointima likely due to a pro-inflammatory vascular environment from both hyperglycemia and hyperinsulinemia [18]. In summary, these animal studies demonstrating the microvascular and macrovascular effects of hyperglycemia and atherosclerosis were later partially confirmed in several human trials. The Action in Diabetes and Vascular Disease (ADVANCE) trial showed that microvascular events were significantly decreased in diabetics though the mitigation of macrovascular complication did not reach significance. The targeted HbA1C of the ADVANCE trial was 6.5% in the intensive treatment arm with the most significant benefit evident in the rate of nephropathy complications which were decreased by 21%. Later trials including the Veterans Affairs Diabetes Trial (VADT) as well as the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) also demonstrated similar results in short-term monitoring of the intensive treatment arms in both studies again showing significant improvement in microvascular outcomes with nonsignificant macrovascular event decrements. However, after longitudinal follow-up in the DCCT patients, it was determined that patients in the intensive glucose control arm did, in fact, demonstrate a significant reduction in ischemic cardiac diseases, strokes, or CV deaths (n = 711 patients intensive treatment arm vs n = 730 in conventional treatment arm, p = 0.02) [17]. This was in agreement with prior data that noted diabetics were up to ten times more likely to suffer CAD, peripheral vascular disease (PVD), or stroke compared to nondiabetics [19].

Ischemic stroke is a direct complication of diabetes with a complex interplay of multiple risk factors for cerebrovascular disease including hypertension, atherosclerosis, smoking, atrial fibrillation, and a myriad of less well-studied pathophysiological processes of contributors such as obstructive sleep apnea (Table 47.1). Macrovascular complications of hyperglycemia have been less well studied and more difficult to directly correlate with a specific glucose control target for treatment as has been noted in UKPDS, ACCORD, and ADVANCE trials. Fortunately, microvascular complications as they relate to target HbA1C have been easier to correlate with longitudinal study data, and the cellular pathways by which hyperglycemia affects vascular endothelial cell dysfunction are beginning to be better understood. Primary prevention of ischemic stroke clearly requires hyperglycemic control, but the degree of glycemic control and its effect on other primary stroke risk factors is of equal importance for stroke prevention.

Diabetes and Primary Stroke Prevention

Hyperglycemic diabetic patients admitted to the hospital for acute ischemic stroke are up to two times more likely to die within the first month compared to normoglycemic patients [17]. A review of the most current literatures reveals that primary stroke prevention is dependent on chronic control of hyperglycemia with a target HbA1C of <7% as well as the monitoring of both fasting serum glu-

Table 47.1 AHA/ADA guidelines for primary stroke prevention

Diabetes	Hyperlipidemia	Hypertension	Atrial fibrillation	Other risk factors
BP goal <140/90 mmHg	Statin use for patients with high CV risk	Lifestyle changes and BP screening[b]	Coumadin for CHA_2DS_2-VASc score ≥ 2[c]	Weight reduction if BMI ≥ 25
Statin use for CV risk reduction	Fibric acid derivatives only for elevated triglycerides[a]	Goal BP of <140/90, reduction more important than BP agent used	Nonvalvular AF and CHA_2DS_2-VASc of 0, no anticoagulants	Smoking cessation in all patients
No role for aspirin or fibrates	No role for statin lipid lowering medications	Self measurement of BP	Screening for AF in patients 65 or older with exam and EKG	40 minutes, 3 days/wk. moderate exercise

ADA guidelines per the following: Cefulu et al. [71]

[a]No role for fibric acid derivatives in decreasing future stroke risk

[b]*BP* blood pressure, *CHA2DS2-VASc* congestive heart failure, hypertension, age, diabetes, stroke, vascular disease, *CV* cardiovascular, *AF* atrial fibrillation, *BMI* body mass index

[c]In patients with low hemorrhage risk and valvular AF (atrial fibrillation)

cose and postprandial dysglycemia. What the ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VADT trials helped demonstrate was that all diabetics benefited from a target HbA1C of around 7% regardless of their baseline HbA1C, duration of disease, or baseline comorbidities. More intensive glucose control can lead to increased mortality in some subgroups, while in young patients with DM disease, duration of less than 15 years may in fact benefit from intensive glucose control with a lower target HbA1C [20].

The Nateglinide and Valsartan in Impaired Glucose Tolerance Outcomes Research (NAVIGATOR) trial demonstrated that patients with impaired fasting blood glucose, although not meeting diagnostic criteria for diabetes, were at increased risk of developing DM and subsequently at higher risk for ischemic stroke [19]. According to Mi et al., elevated fasting blood glucose was an independent predictor for first-ever ischemic stroke or recurrent stroke [21]. Additionally, it has been surmised for years that prediabetics or diabetic patients that experience repeated episodes of dysglycemia are at higher risk of cerebrovascular disease and dysfunction of the neurovascular endothelium [22]. However, data from trials to date such as NAVIGATOR are conflicting, and it is not currently understood how to best reduce cardiovascular risks in patients with impaired fasting blood glucose or postprandial glucose [23]. What has been better studied is the impact that various antidiabetic drug classes have on benefiting patients in primary stroke prevention.

Influence of Antidiabetic Drug Classes for Primary Stroke Prevention

Though DMI patients typically use forms of synthetic insulin for glycemic control, it is well known that DMII diabetics have a wide range of oral medications available for the treatment of hyperglycemia. These diabetic drugs (Table 47.2) include multiple medications with varying mechanisms of action and benefit for treating hyperglycemia as it pertains to primary stroke prevention. In addition to reviewing these medications by drug class, it is also important to address the use of these medications around the time of an ischemic stroke as some antihyperglycemics such as thiazolidinediones can potentially improve patient outcomes [24].

The use of parenteral insulin is a well-studied mechanism to control hyperglycemia in DMI patients. In DMI and DMII patients self-administering glargine or NPH compared to basal insulin peglispro, there has been no reported clinically significant difference in preventing

Table 47.2 Diabetic drug classes and primary stroke prevention

Hyperglycemic medication	Mechanism of action	Stroke risk factors	Side effects	Supporting studies	Important findings
IV insulin (glargine, NPH)	Serum glucose absorption	Hyperglycemia, CAD	Hypoglycemia	UKPDS	Macrovascular outcomes similar to oral antihyperglycemics
Biguanides (metformin)	Decreased hepatic gluconeogenesis	HLD, CAD, HTN	Hypoglycemia Weight gain	UKPDS Gejl et al.	Improved outcomes in the obese
Sulfonylureas (glipizide, glyburide)	Pancreatic secretagogue	Hyperglycemia[b]	Cardiac deaths	UKPDS Azimova et al.	↓ Mortality in DM patients
Meglitinides (nateglinide)	Pancreatic secretagogue	Hyperglycemia	Hyperglycemia	NAVIGATOR Azimova et al.	No improvement in CV outcomes in IGT/DM patients
DPP-4 inhibitors (sitagliptin)	Inhibit incretin, GLP-1, GIP degradation[a]	Postprandial hyperglycemia	CKD (rare)	Azimova et al. Fisman et al. Enders et al.	↓ Risk of CV outcomes Rate of MI or stroke in DM patients unchanged
Glucosidase inhibitors (acarbose)	Intestinal α-glucosidase inhibitor	Postprandial hyperglycemia HTN	GI side effects, hepatotoxicity (rare)	STOP-NIDDM	Acarbose can prevent conversion of IGT patients to DM status
Thiazolidinediones (pioglitazone)	PPAR activators	HTN	HLD CAD exacerbation	Azimova et al. White et al.	Pioglitazone ↓risk for macrovascular events in high risk patients
GLP-1 (exenatide, liraglutide)	Inhibits glucagon Insulin secretagogue	Weight loss, HTN, HLD	GI side effects	Azimova et al. Mearns et al.	20% ↓risk of CVD in DM II patients
SGLT2 inhibitors (gliflozins)	Sodium-glucose cotransporter inhibitor	HTN, HLD, weight loss	AKI, CKD	Mearns et al.	Reduces SBP ↑ Weight loss
Bile acid sequestrant (colesevelam)	Binds intestinal bile acids	HLD, CAD	None	Ganda et al. Porez et al.	↓ Future CV events

[a]*GLP-1* glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor, *GIP* glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide, *DPP-4* dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors, *GLP-1* glucagon-peptide 1, *SGLT2* sodium-glucose cotransporter, *GIP* gastric inhibitory polypeptide, *PPAR* peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors, *CAD* cardiac arterial disease, *HLD* hyperlipidemia, *HTN* hypertension, *CKD* chronic kidney disease, *AKI* acute kidney injury, *GI* gastrointestinal, *DM* diabetes mellitus, *CV* cerebrovascular, *IGT* impaired glucose tolerance, *MI* myocardial infarct, *SBP* systolic blood pressure

[b]Did not reach significance for macrovascular outcomes

future ischemic strokes or CV events. There has been associated cardiovascular benefit with insulin use and improvement of comorbid stroke risk factors outside of the documented physiologic benefits of achieving normoglycemia. Interestingly prior studies in type II diabetes mellitus patients have noted that long-acting insulin formulations may be implicated in exacerbating CAD leading to increased risk of myocardial infarcts [25]. A cross-sectional, international cohort study performed by Al-Rubeaan et al. as well as studies derived by data from the Hong Kong Diabetes Registry noted a clinically significant elevation in stroke risk for patients using insulin for control of hyperglycemia [26]. However, this associated stroke risk was possibly due to the fact that type II DM patients that are parenteral insulin users have poorly controlled hyperglycemia [26]. Treating hyperglycemia with oral agents in DMII patients is more complex than just parenteral insulin formulations, however, as many options exist for treating this patient population.

Biguanides such as metformin are a class of oral antihyperglycemics currently available for treating DMII. Metformin was used in the UKPDS trial and demonstrated a 32% relative risk reduction of cardiac ischemia and ischemic stroke in diabetics as well as 42% reduction in all macrovascular deaths related to diabetes. Interestingly the combination of metformin and injected insulin in the same study demonstrated a significantly decreased risk for development of macrovascular disease including ischemic stroke when patients were followed for over 4 years after completion of the study [27]. These data are significant in so far as that it has been shown that newly diagnosed DMII patients have a 10% increased absolute risk of stroke within 5 years of initial diagnosis [28]. Treatment of DMII with metformin not only decreases the increased absolute risk of ischemic stroke but also may help treat comorbid risk factors such as hypertension and hyperlipidemia, thereby further decreasing the risk of future ischemic stroke (Table 47.1) [27].

According to Gejl et al., the biguanide drug class may affect multiple stroke risk factors such as hyperglycemia and hyperlipidemia yielding a decrease in the occurrence of major cardiac or cerebral ischemic events [29]. Similarly in large retrospective cohort studies comparing diabetics treated with metformin and diabetics treated with antihyperglycemics not including metformin, there was a significantly lower risk of stroke with an adjusted hazard ratio of 0.47 in the metformin group [30]. Metformin's mechanism of action in reducing cholesterol levels is not completely understood, but may involve decreasing hepatic secretion of lipoproteins resulting in lower VLDL, plasma triglycerides, and LDL/HDL ratio. The cardioprotective effects of metformin in animal studies have also been well documented, and it is likely that diabetics who have an MI while on metformin have a reduction in both MI size and burden of reperfusion injury [27]. The mechanism by which metformin decreases hypertension in the diabetic is less well understood.

Sulfonylureas such as glipizide and glyburide have been long used to treat DMII, but a large body of evidence has provided conflicting data on this drug class's cardiac profile especially in patients with pre-existing CAD [27]. Per data in the UKPDS trials, intensive treatment of DMII patients with sulfonylurea monotherapy led to a significant decrease in microvascular complications though the decrease in macrovascular complications such as ischemic stroke did not reach significance [10]. Sulfonylureas likely carry an increased risk of cardiovascular complications and are still not considered a first-line monotherapy drug for any DMII patient that has concomitant underlying CAD [27]. Unlike sulfonylureas the cardiac safety profile of meglitinides is not yet known.

Though meglitinides such as repaglinide and nateglinide do not affect lipid levels, they do lower HbA1C levels as well as manage hyperglycemia [27]. In prediabetics or patients with IGT, nateglinide was associated with a significant increase in episodes of hyperglycemia and unfortunately was unable to reduce the incidence of patients suffering cardiovascular or cerebrovascular ischemic events. Interestingly it was noted that prediabetics that used nateglinide compared to placebo were not at lower risk of developing diabetes over the median 5-year period of longitudinal analysis [31]. Conflicting data also exist on repaglinide's ability to decrease stroke risk in diabetics. While repaglinide did demonstrate similar efficacy in controlling hyperglycemia, metformin is more effective in decreasing the risk of CVD in DMII patients [27].

Dipeptidyl peptidase 4(DPP-4) inhibitors are diabetic medications such as sitagliptin and linagliptin that prolong the bioavailability of incretins, thereby better controlling postprandial hyperglycemia. Along with the regulation of postprandial glucose, these medications have been associated with decreasing vascular endothelial inflammation and improvement of endothelial dysfunction existing in diabetic vasculature as discussed earlier [27]. Gliptin-induced changes including a decrease in serum lipid levels and hypertension were also noted in animal studies [32]. However, according to Enders et al., diabetics taking DPP-4 inhibitors in combination with metformin when compared to patients taking metformin and sulfonylureas did not experience significantly reduced risk for future ischemic stroke [33]. Overall, the data concerning DPP-4 inhibitors and their effect on stroke risk is uncertain, and further research is needed.

Acarbose, an alpha-glucosidase inhibitor (AGI), serves a similar role in glycemic control as DPP-4 inhibitors in that they reduce postprandial hyperglycemia. Though its complete cardiovascular safety profile is not known, data from the Study to Prevent Non-Insulin-Dependent Diabetes Mellitus (STOP-NIDDM) trial reflects a positive effect of AGIs in the

management of comorbid stroke risk factors with patients experiencing a hypertension relative risk reduction of 34%. STOP-NIDDM also demonstrated a nearly 50% relative risk reduction in cardiovascular events for patients taking acarbose though a head-to-head comparison study with metformin has yet to be performed [27].

Pioglitazone and rosiglitazone improve the utilization of available serum glucose and decrease the pro-inflammatory state of vascular endothelium in diabetics [27]. These two medications belong to a drug class known as thiazolidinediones. Their ability to help mitigate the oxidative injury from ROS in vascular endothelium may contribute to an overall decrease in future stroke risk in diabetics [24]. However, stroke risk in patients that take rosiglitazone remains uncertain as previous studies have implicated this medication with worsening hyperlipidemia, thereby potentially putting diabetics at increased risk of ischemic stroke. Data is conflicting concerning TZDs, especially rosiglitazone, and their role in risk development or worsening of baseline cardiac disease in diabetics. The thiazolidinediones are not recommended for use in patients with diabetes and concomitant severe congestive heart failure or prior CAD [27].

Glucagon-like peptide 1 agonists are oral antihyperglycemics with a mechanism of action similar to DPP-4 inhibitors in that they work on incretin deficiencies inherited to the pathophysiology of DMII. The GLP-1 agonists including exenatide and liraglutide have been shown to significantly decrease overall HbA1C in diabetics [27]. Additionally, the use of GLP-1 agonists in overweight diabetic patient populations has resulted in significant weight loss greater than five pounds producing improved control of stroke risk factors including hyperlipidemia and hypertension [34]. This class of antihyperglycemics has also been associated with cardiovascular protective effect, regulation of postprandial hyperlipidemia, and improvement of fasting LDL [27].

Other oral antihyperglycemics like sodium-glucose cotransporter-2 (SGLT2) have similar efficacy to other oral diabetic medications in controlling HbA1C. SGLT2s are superior to sulfonylureas in improving hypertension and as a class are associated with significant weight loss in diabetics similar to GLP-1 agonists. Compared to placebo, SGLT2s have not been implicated in hypoglycemic events among diabetics though it should be noted that a majority of the data known about their efficacy and management of hyperglycemia comes from data in which patients used them concomitantly with metformin. No direct relationship between SGLT2s and decreased risk of ischemic stroke has been confirmed; however, data suggest that SGLT2s, when compared to placebo, have clinically significant beneficial effects on controlling major stroke risk factors including hyperlipidemia and hypertension [34].

In terms of combination therapy for control of hyperglycemia in DMII patients, bile acid sequestrants such as colesevelam have also shown to be beneficial in improving glycemic control. Clinically significant reductions in LDL have been observed with colesevelam use especially when combined with statin [35]. Bile acid sequestrants regulate multiple pathways of lipid synthesis and also appear to have an anti-inflammatory effect on endothelial cells. Some retrospective studies have noted a stroke risk reduction of 43% in patients adherent to taking colesevelam with baseline hyperlipidemia and diabetes though this relatively large risk reduction may have been skewed by confounding variables [27]. By mitigating the negative effects of hyperlipidemia, bile acid sequestrants have the potential to reduce the incidence of future ischemic stroke as well as cardiovascular disease [36].

Though the primary purpose of both parenteral insulin and oral diabetic medications is to prevent hyperglycemia, there is data that suggest certain classes of these drugs may improve outcomes during the acute phase of an ischemic stroke. White et al. noted that in a systematic review of animal studies, the administration of TZDs during the time of cerebral ischemic injury was associated with improved neurologic outcomes and a decrement in the overall stroke burden [24]. Though these studies have not yet been extrapolated for validity in human subjects, it is noteworthy that rosiglitazone reduced infarct volume regardless of administration before or after induction of ischemia in rat brains [24]. Per the Trial of Org 10,172 in Acute Stroke Treatment (TOAST), the majority of the aforementioned studies would be categorized as iatrogenic large vessel occlusions [37]. Unfortunately not much data has been generated otherwise on the benefit of other antihyperglycemics on acute ischemic stroke outcomes though as discussed previously the outcome of diabetics who suffer stroke regardless of the subtype is worse than that of the general population [37]. Therefore the key to regulating primary stroke risk factors is to control serum glucose levels acutely and chronically as glycemic control has an effect on the rate of atherosclerotic disease progression, hypertension, and risk of atrial fibrillation.

Optimization of Diabetic Control and Additional Stroke Risk Factors

American Heart Association (AHA) guidelines for secondary stroke prevention set the benchmark for lipid control with a goal LDL of ≤100 [38], but for the primary prevention in stroke in diabetics, the recommendations are less finite (Table 47.3). What is delineated in the AHA guidelines for primary stroke prevention is that all patients with an elevated 10-year stroke risk, which includes all diabetics, benefit from treatment with a statin [39]. Even in diabetics without comorbid cardiovascular disease, the risk of stroke is significantly elevated in patients with uncontrolled LDL

Table 47.3 AHA/ADA guidelines for secondary stroke prevention

Diabetes	Hyperlipidemia	Hypertension	Atrial fibrillation	Other risk factors
DM testing after initial stroke	Statin for patients with stroke and LDL ≥ 100[a]	Treat HTN if patient BP ≥ 140/90 mm Hg	Antithrombotic for non-valvular afib	ASA for all ischemic stroke patients
Goal HbA1c ≤ 6.5% per AHA Goal HbA1c ≤ 7% per ADA[b]	Goal LDL < 100 mg/dL	Goal BP of ≤140/90 mm Hg	Aspirin for stroke patients unable to take anticoagulants	Smoking cessation recommended for all patients
Moderate intensity treatment for stroke prevention	Dietary and lifestyle recommended	Diet, exercise, decreased salt intake recommended	Can delay anticoagulants for 2 weeks if high bleeding risk present	40 minutes, 3 days/wk. moderate exercise

Stroke reduction with statin use in patients with TIA or ischemic stroke of atherosclerotic etiology, high intensity statin unless patient age ≥ 75

[a]Treat hypertension (HTN) if BP over 140/90 mm Hg for the first few days after stroke

[b]ADA guidelines differ from AHA secondary stroke prevention HbA1c goals with less stringent glycemic control recommended based on data from the ACCORD study

compared to diabetics with LDL ≧100 mg/dL [40] with a 24% reduction in ischemic stroke occurrence associated with statin use quoted in prior studies. It is important to note that though increased LDL levels have a direct association with increased risk of ischemic stroke, there is no associated stroke risk for diabetics with elevated total cholesterol and increased HDL [39]. Trials such as the Justification for the Use of Statin in Prevention: An Intervention Trial Evaluating Rosuvastatin (JUPITER) demonstrated that stroke risk is significantly decreased with statin administration even in healthy individuals devoid of increased risk for ischemic stroke [41]. The regulation of atherosclerosis and hyperglycemia are intricately related with an interrelated, complex pathophysiology as discussed earlier in the chapter.

According to current AHA guidelines and based on data derived from the UKPDS trial, it is recommended that aggressive blood pressure management should occur in all patients with DM. The UKPDS trial demonstrated that a goal blood pressure of 140/90 is associated with a 44% relative risk reduction of future ischemic stroke in patients with either DMI or DMII [39]. Which medication regimen to use for achievement of goal blood pressure in patients with DM and baseline increased CAD risk is a point of contention as conflicting data exist as to what constitutes best medical management. Nevertheless DM patients without additional CAD risk factors at baseline have been consistently found to have an elevated risk of future stroke due to poorly controlled hypertension alone despite AHA recommendations [40]. Per Meschia et al., prior studies such as HOPE found that ramipril administration in diabetics with CAD risk factors resulted in a significant decrease in the relative risk of future ischemic stroke (25% RR; 95% CI, 12–36, $p = 0.0004$) as well as a significant reduction in cardiovascular-related death [39]. Other studies including the Anglo-Scandinavian Cardiac Outcomes Trial (ASCOT) found that a blood pressure regimen consisting of both amlodipine and perindopril resulted in a 25% risk reduction in future strokes though more recent studies have provided conflicting data [39].

In the ADVANCE trial, ACE inhibitor use with concomitant indapamide administration did not result in a significant decrease in future stroke risk for DMII patients [39]. Similarly, in the diabetic subset of patients studied in the Avoiding Cardiovascular Events through Combination Therapy in Patients Living with Systolic Hypertension (ACCOMPLISH) trial, it was found that an ACE inhibitor plus diuretic or calcium channel blocker did not result in decreased stroke risk over the 3-year follow-up period [39]. Administration of ARBs such as valsartan have also been investigated for their ability to decrease future stroke risk in diabetics. The NAVIGATOR trial, which compared valsartan to placebo, demonstrated that patients with IGT and increased baseline risk for CAD did not have a significant decrease in future stroke risk [31]. Trials such as GEMINI suggest that β-blockers like carvedilol are effective and safe to use in diabetic patients to reduce blood pressures to goal. However, there have not been substantial investigations into the role of β-blockers and future stroke risk reduction in diabetics leaving this as a gap of knowledge within the literature [42].

Inflammatory changes induced by hyperglycemic states of DM patients have been shown to induce pathophysiologic changes conductive to the development of atrial fibrillation (afib). In fact it is now commonly accepted knowledge that DM is a risk factor for the development of afib [43]. It is also known that patients with afib have a substantially elevated risk of ischemic stroke with diabetics at even higher risk based on the $CHADS_2$ score [39]. According to Dublin et al., treated diabetics have a 3% annual risk of developing afib that is additive based on the duration of diagnosed diabetic state [44]. A 14.9% incidence of afib exists within the diabetic population, and the incidence is nearly 6 times higher than that of the general population [45].

The recommendations for risk reduction of afib in diabetics are multifaceted. Depending on the $CHADS_2$ or CHADS-VASC score, patients with both DM and afib will carry at least a moderate risk of future cardioembolic, ischemic stroke [39]. As noted earlier during the discussion on diabetes and microvascular complications, the risk of peripheral

arterial disease, hypertension, and aortic plaque development is elevated in all diabetics as well as those with IGT. Studies have shown that pathophysiologic changes similar to those that cause endothelial dysfunction in diabetics can also cause autonomic dysregulation which increases the risk for afib. Once these changes occur it is important to decrease the risk of future ischemic stroke by either starting anticoagulation therapy in moderate-to-high-risk patients, rate/rhythm control, or catheter ablation [46]. Unfortunately DM patients often have neuropathy and may be unaware that they have afib, thereby making catheter ablation a less viable option due to higher rates of cardioversion failure [45]. Therefore proper management of hyperglycemia is required to prevent changes on the cellular level that place DM patients at higher risk for development of another ischemic stroke risk factor.

Some studies exist which have assessed whether specific oral antihyperglycemics such as metformin decrease future risk for DM to develop afib. A prospective cohort with 5.4-year median follow-up was performed by Chang et al. and noted that DM patients taking metformin had a significantly lower risk for developing afib than did DM patients not taking metformin [43]. The mechanism of benefit suggested is that metformin may reduce hyperglycemia-induced inflammatory injury to atrial myocyte, thereby preventing tachyarrhythmias known to lead to afib [43]. Moreover it has been established that there is both increased plasma viscosity and increased activation of thrombocytes in DM patients leading to further risk of clot formation in individuals already prone to developing afib [47]. Primary stroke prevention in DM patients is complicated and involves regulation of more than just hyperglycemia, hypertension, and afib to be truly optimal.

Directly smoking tobacco products and second-hand smoke exposure puts patients at increased risk for ischemic stroke as well as increases progression of diseases such as hypertension and atherosclerosis [39]. Nondiabetic smokers have twice the risk of suffering a future ischemic stroke [42], while DM patients that are active smokers carry a 50% higher risk for all-cause mortality and stroke based on data derived from a large meta-analysis [48]. It is likely that smoking acutely causes hypercoagulable states within vasculature and over time causes increased rates of atherosclerotic changes within intracranial and extracranial arteries [39]. AHA recommendations for smoking cessation treatment are similar to those made by O'Keefe et al. and include counseling in combination with medications such as varenicline, clonidine, bupropion, as well as nicotine supplementations [42]. The differences in future stroke risk for smokers who are diabetics versus nondiabetics have not been well delineated.

A risk factor for stroke that is now becoming more recognized is abdominal adiposity more so than patient BMI. However, it should be noted that no current studies have definitively associated increased future stroke risk with increased abdominal adiposity independent of associated comorbidities such as hypertension, DM, and smoking. Olofindayo et al. conducted a prospective cohort study which found that in patients who were both obese and diabetic, the risk for future ischemic stroke was 73% higher than in age-matched individuals with only DM or central obesity alone [49]. It has also been found that regardless of diabetic status, a patient's future stroke risk nearly triples in the setting of obesity with current 2014 AHA guidelines recommending weight loss in patients with BMI ≥25 to prevent future ischemic stroke [39].

According to O'Keefe et al., waist size has proven to be an independent risk factor for the development of DM [42]. Obesity, regardless of adipocyte corporal distribution, has also been linked to the development of tachyarrhythmias with some studies noting a 4.7% increased risk of afib per increase of each unit of 1 kg/m^2 in BMI [47]. It is also well known that a large percentage of patients with DMII or IGT are overweight or obese placing a large percentage of DM patients overall at increased risk of future ischemic events based on BMI and waist circumference alone. Class 1 Level B evidence suggests that modification of lifestyle is necessary for DM patients in order to decrease the risk of ischemic stroke with higher level evidence denoting a clear correlation with weight loss and achieving normotension [39].

DM patients that demonstrate central adiposity and insulin resistance often have metabolic syndrome [21] though other characteristics of the syndrome including IGT (fasting serum glucose ≥110 mg/dL), hyperlipidemia, and hypertension can also be present [39]. Metabolic syndrome is associated with increased risk of ischemic stroke due to the presence of the risk factors which define it rather than by the existence of the syndrome itself [21]. 2014 AHA guidelines currently recognize that up to 38.5% of the general US population meets criteria for metabolic syndrome. Data from large retrospective studies have demonstrated an increased prevalence of metabolic syndrome (43.5%) in patients with a history of ischemic stroke though no direct correlation between metabolic syndrome and increased risk of stroke has been found. Additionally, prospective trials such as Stroke Prevention by Aggressive Reduction in Cholesterol Levels (SPARCL) did not find an increased risk for future stroke in the subset of 642 patients with both metabolic syndrome and prior stroke. Currently, the guidelines for primary prevention of stroke as they pertain to metabolic syndrome are that patients should focus on management of the individual risk factors that define the disease via weight loss and proper medication regimens [39].

Other less studied risk factors for DM as well as ischemic stroke include obstructive sleep apnea (OSA). OSA is not only a risk factor for future ischemic stroke but also has been suggested to have a significant association with the development of DMII. Not surprisingly obese diabetic

patients are at higher risk for developing OSA though obesity itself is an independent risk factor for OSA with some studies quoting prevalence as high as 27% in patients with BMI ≥ 30 [50]. Per Kent et al. a recent prospective cohort comprised of nearly a thousand patients found that patients with moderate to severe OSA were about three times more likely to develop DMII within an average of 2.7 years compared to non OSA participants [51]. Other larger cohort studies with an average follow-up of nearly 5 years demonstrated similar results establishing a clear clinical correlate between OSA and DMII [51].

The Wisconsin Sleep Cohort Study and the Sleep Heart Health Study both demonstrated increased stroke risk in patients with OSA. The Wisconsin study was a comprise of a prospective cohort which demonstrated that severe OSA conferred a triple risk for future ischemic stroke (OR, 3.09; 95% of CI, 0.74–12.81). The Sleep Heart Health Study found that when adjusting for all confounding risk factors, there was still a linear positive correlation between rising apnea-hypopnea index (AHI) and risk of stroke. There have been few randomized trials to test the efficacy of OSA treatment as it relates to primary prevention of ischemic stroke though a recent study by McEvoy et al. did note that CPAP treatment vs sham treatment in patients with moderate to severe OSA and concomitant CAD/cerebrovascular disease did not result in a significant difference in cardiovascular-related deaths including stroke (p = 0.34; HR, 1.1; CI, 0.91–1.32) [52]. Currently screening based on symptoms such as daytime sleepiness, snoring, and clinical suspicion is recommended [39]. However, the link between OSA and primary stroke prevention is becoming more and more clinically relevant with up to 4% of the United State's population now having a form of sleep apnea [39]. The final risk factor for primary stroke prevention that will be discussed is physical inactivity.

Moderate to high intensity physical activity has been shown to decrease risk for future cardiovascular events in patients with diabetes independent of any concomitant stroke risk factors including HLD, HTN, obesity, and smoking [20]. However, in the general population, some studies report that baseline low physical activity level is not associated with increased rates of future stroke when adjusting for confounding stroke risk factors [53]. Conversely based on more recent meta-analysis-derived data, the current AHA guidelines indicate that active men and women have a 30% lower annual risk of stroke than their inactive counterparts. The degree of intensity, duration, and frequency needed to achieve maximal protective effect from the development of future stroke is a point of debate. Overall the current recommendation is for 40 min of moderate to intense, aerobic exercise at least 3 days per week. The data for current recommendations are derived from observational studies as clinical trials delineating clear risk reduction have not been performed [39].

Diabetes and Secondary Stroke Prevention Up to 95% of patient with diabetes mellitus are type II with hyperglycemia preceding DM diagnostic criteria in the form of impaired fasting glucose, impaired glucose tolerance (IGT), and episodic hyperglycemia [38]. Recently Wu et al. conducted a prospective cohort study which found that after initial stroke prediabetic patients with HbA1c ≥ 6.1% had a 61.3% recurrent stroke risk at 3 months that was still elevated at 51.1% after a year [54]. This was a significant finding due to the traditional threshold for HbA1c of 6.5% being diagnostic for DM, but in lieu of the previously discussed initial stroke risk conferred to patients that only have IGT, this is less surprising. Multiple trials have demonstrated that strict glucose control in diabetics has a beneficial effect on progression or occurrence of microvascular complications associated with hyperglycemia. Clearly it would seem that in diabetic patients who suffered an ischemic stroke or TIA, the regulation and degree of hyperglycemic control would be paramount to preventing future strokes, but there is not a large repository of data concerning the relationship between hyperglycemia control and recurrent ischemic stroke [38].

Per Kernan et al. up to 28% of patients who suffer an ischemic stroke have prediabetes and up to 45% has DM [38]. Duration of DM diagnosis at the time of initial stroke may play a role in determining the level of glucose control needed to help prevent future strokes. According to Wu et al., patients with a long-standing history of DM did not benefit from intensive glycemic control as it relates to secondary stroke prevention [54]. However, this contrasted with the benefit found in newly diagnosed DM patients with a history of stroke who were noted to have decreased recurrent stroke risk with a goal of near normoglycemia [54]. 2014 AHA guidelines note that there is no clear target HbA1c that has been associated with a clinically significant decrease in recurrent stroke risk though intensive glycemic control with goal HbA1c around 6.0–6.5% may decrease nonfatal CHD, especially myocardial infarction (17% annual risk reduction; 95% CI, 0.75–0.93) [55]. The benefit of hyperglycemic control and the associated vascular endothelial protective effects seem to be more beneficial in preventing microvascular complications rather than macrovascular complications such as recurrent stroke [38].

Despite the unclear guidelines for goal glycemic control, it remains that DM is highly prevalent in the global population and places patients within all age demographics at risk for poor outcomes after an initial stroke. In fact DM is an independent predictor for both primary lacunar strokes as well as for poor prognosis for recurrent ischemic cerebrovascular events [56]. Even young adults <50 years of age with a history of DMI had a high incidence of recurrent ischemic stroke independent of concomitant risk factors [57]. Recently in a large, cross-sectional multicenter study of

DMII patients, it was noted that in the setting of poststroke recovery, only about 60% of patients achieved an HbA1c of ≤7.5%. Persistently elevated HbA1c values are concerning in terms of hyperglycemia's influence on microvascular outcomes though the relativity to recurrent stroke in DM patients was again indeterminate [58].

Also of importance is the effect of hyperglycemia on peri-stroke outcomes and the treatment goals for the DM and nondiabetic patient acutely presenting with ischemic stroke. Though patients commonly present with hyperglycemia in the acute setting of stroke, it has long been thought that this is a systemic stress reaction. However, more current studies have revealed that acute hyperglycemia during a stroke regardless of diabetic status is both abnormal and poor prognostic. Capes et al. found that, in nondiabetics, the relative risk for 30-day mortality was three times higher when acute stroke presentation was associated with hyperglycemia [22]. Interestingly the relative risk (3.28) calculated for short-term all-cause mortality was substantially higher than the relative risk (2) for short-term mortality for the diabetic subset in the previously mentioned study [22]. More recent studies have indicated that admission HbA1C is more prognostic than acute hyperglycemia at presentation for first-time ischemic stroke with even a prediabetic HbA1c value indicative of poorer outcomes at 1 year [54].

Per AHA guidelines for management of acute stroke, the goal for hyperglycemic stroke patients is to achieve a target blood glucose between 140 and 180 mg/dL within 24 h of presentation. Few trials have evaluated outcomes based on the stringency of hyperglycemic control outside of the Glucose-Insulin-Stroke Trial-UK (GIST-UK) which found no difference in outcome when comparing insulin versus placebo in a group of majority nondiabetic stroke patients. Current AHA recommendations are based on level C evidence, and recently negative clinical research trials such as the Stroke Hyperglycemia Insulin Network Effort (SHINE) trial will further guide clinicians towards hyperglycemia management in the acute and subacute stroke patient [59].

Antihyperglycemic Drug Classes and Recurrent Stroke Prevention

Currently there are no proven hypoglycemic drugs that affect recurrent stroke risk though there have been multiple studies conducted to ascertain this knowledge. According to the Prospective Pioglitazone Clinical Trial in Macrovascular Events (PROactive), there was a 47% relative risk reduction of recurrent strokes in patients treated with pioglitazone [38]. Tanaka et al. conducted a randomized controlled trial comparing the effect of pioglitazone to placebo in patients with newly diagnosed DM or with IGT [60]. The primary endpoint of this trial known as the J-SPIRIT study was for assessment of recurrent stroke risk. However, this study was underpowered, and its findings were not statistically significant requiring further evaluation by well-powered studies evaluating the impact of pioglitazone on recurrent stroke risk reduction [60]. Other earlier studies using animal models evaluated the role of thiazolidinediones and neuroprotective effect during an ischemic stroke, but the results only suggested transient benefit when medication was administered prior to reperfusion of penumbra [61].

Contrastingly the Insulin Resistance after Stroke (IRIS) trial found that insulin-resistant patients with prior stroke had a 2.8% risk reduction for future stroke compared to insulin-resistant patients randomized to placebo. Although all-cause mortality between patient groups was equivalent, the risk of future myocardial infarction was significantly lower in the pioglitazone group [62]. To date, the IRIS trial is one of the few studies to evaluate insulin-resistant patients by treatment with hypoglycemic medications with a primary endpoint of recurrent stroke or MI [63]. Only one other study exists evaluating the relationship between acarbose and macrovascular event recurrence, and the results from the secondary analysis suggested that there may be some protective effects (relative hazard, 0.75; 95% CI, 0.63–0.90) [38]. Several other studies involving oral DM drugs such as biguinides, DDP4 inhibitors, and sulfonylureas as they relate to recurrent stroke and peri-stroke outcomes are still ongoing.

Current studies including the metformin and sitagliptin in patients with impaired glucose tolerance and a recent TIA and minor ischemic stroke (MAAS) trial continue to evaluate oral antihyperglycemics including biguanides like metformin. In the MAAS trial, the primary endpoint is to evaluate the ability of metformin and sitagliptin to improve the IGT of patients with prior TIA or stroke as it relates mortality risk and recurrent stroke. This small, multicenter, randomized controlled trial will hopefully expand the current knowledge of oral diabetic medications as they relate to recurrent stroke risk in patients with IGT [64]. Prior studies evaluating the efficacy of DPP-4 inhibitors like sitagliptin and its effect on cardiovascular outcomes have been performed, and the results were inconclusive [32]. Interestingly sulfonylureas have not been studied in great depth in terms of how they relate to secondary stroke prevention in DM though there has been some data on their association with outcomes after an initial stroke. Kunte et al. noted that patients who took sulfonylureas prior to or during the time of their stroke were likely to have better neurologic outcomes as defined by the NIHSS stroke scale prior to discharge [65]. It should be noted, however, that the study design was a prospective cohort and that randomized clinical trials need be performed [65]. Other trials investigating biguanide monotherapy following ischemic stroke in diabetics demonstrated that metformin could provide macrovascular as well as microvascular neuroprotective effects in DM patients. The anti-inflammatory, neurovascular protective effect pro-

vided by metformin decreased the remodeling of cerebrovasculature in DM animal models though extrapolation to human subjects has yet to occur [66]. There is no data to support any specific peri-stroke hyperglycemic medications to improve outcomes.

Optimization of Glucose Control and Secondary Stroke Prevention

The final part of this chapter will focus on the role for optimization of DM control as well as the additional secondary stroke risk factors as they relate to recurrent stroke prevention. Hyperglycemic control for secondary stroke prevention is multifaceted and has been discussed in detail already. However, it should be mentioned that outside of the recent results of the IRIS trial, there have been very few official recommendations as to the proper management of hyperglycemia to prevent recurrent stroke in terms of targeted HbA1c [38]. However, more clearly delineated recommendations have been made for management of recurrent stroke risk factors including hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and atrial fibrillation among others.

Hypertension is one of the most important modifiable risk factors to regulate in order to prevent the recurrence of ischemic stroke. Studies including the Post-Stroke Antihypertensive Treatments Study (PATS) and Perindopril Protection Against Recurrent Stroke (PROGRESS) both noted lower rates of recurrent strokes when patients randomized to antihypertensive treatment achieved systolic blood pressures of 140 mm Hg. The PROGRESS trial found that further recurrent stroke risk reduction was achieved with systolic blood pressure <140 mm Hg. Confirmation of the importance of antihypertensive administration with goal titration to blood pressures of 140/90 mm Hg was found via meta-analysis of post-stroke individuals though at this time there is no recommendation of specific medication regimen to achieve [38]. Of note β-blockers and diuretics have both been associated with worsening of glucose control in DM patients. A meta-analysis revealed that β-blockers not only increase fasting blood glucose (0.64 mmol) but also raise HbA1C by 0.75% in patients with DM [67]. The same study by Hirst et al. also demonstrated that diuretics also raised fasting blood glucose by 0.77 mmol, but did not have a significant effect on HbA1C [67]. These drugs and their role as antihypertensives in patients with IGT should be taken on a case-by-case basis.

Up to 87% of both primary and recurrent strokes are ischemic. When there is regulation of both hypertension and atherosclerosis, a significant mitigation in recurrent stroke risk has been observed [68]. In accordance with findings from the SPARCL study, it is advised that all individuals be placed on high-dose statin. Results of the SPARCL study showed that there was an absolute risk reduction of 3.5% (p = 0.002) for major cardiovascular events in patients receiving high-dose statin over a 5-year follow-up period. In terms of preventing recurrent stroke, patients receiving atorvastatin 80 mg daily were noted to have an absolute risk reduction of 2.2% (p = 0.03) without significant side effects. Of note in a post hoc exploratory analysis of SPARCL, there was found to be a 28% relative risk reduction of recurrent stroke with an LDL of <70 mg/dL without increased risk for intracerebral hemorrhage. There was also a 35% risk reduction for ischemic stroke if at least a 50% reduction in LDL is achieved. At this time these post hoc analysis findings only exist as recommendations until further ongoing studies such as Treat Stroke to Target complete with current recommendations consisting of a target LDL < 100 mg/dL [38].

In patients with DM, the management of hyperlipidemia is similar in regard to goal LDL, but data from randomized controlled trials have shown statin benefit for all DM patients at increased risk for cerebrovascular disease [38]. However, the use of statins in DM patients is not without elevated risk for hyperglycemia. Macedo et al. conducted a meta-analysis of the available literature to ascertain the statins may pose a risk of DM development [69]. It was shown that there is a slightly increased risk of developing DM in patients who use statins for at least 3 years though the odds ratio was low (OR, 1.31; 95% CI, 0.99–1.73) and the number need to harm was 44 patients for a new diagnosis of DM. Other studies produced contrasting results with no association found between statin and DM risk though many of them were of low quality [69]. Other studies have investigated the secondary role for antihyperglycemics as hyperlipidemia modifiers in DM patients. Both metformin and glipizide have been evaluated in DM patients for their potential anti-atherogenic properties with mixed results. It was noted that metformin more so than glipizide affects the process of lipid metabolism decreasing the rate of atherosclerosis as well as development of future cardiovascular events [70]. This study was performed in patients with pre-existing CAD without specification of prior stroke burden so extrapolation of these results to relative reduction of recurrent stroke risk in DM patients cannot be exact.

The annual risk for recurrent stroke in all patients with untreated afib who have had a recent TIA or ischemic stroke is between 7% and 10%. Anticoagulation is the optimal choice for recurrent stroke prevention regardless of diabetic status though left atrial appendage closure has shown promise via the WATCHMAN trial by demonstrating non-inferiority compared to coumadin in high-risk patient populations [38]. The AHA/ADA recommendations for choice of anticoagulant are case dependent, and the timing to prevent recurrent stroke in the patient with afib is no different in DM patients compared to the nondiabetic patient population [38]. Other

risk factors for recurrent stroke prevention in diabetics include metabolic syndrome and smoking.

Patients with metabolic syndrome may not be at increased risk of recurrent stroke from the syndrome itself, but elevated fasting blood glucose does put DM patients at risk for recurrent stroke [21]. Known risk factors for both recurrent stroke and metabolic syndrome such as HLD, HTN, and DM should be modified to prevent future strokes, but screening for metabolic syndrome is not recommended. Limited data exists concerning recurrent stroke risk and smoking though the Cardiovascular Health Study did demonstrate an increased hazard ratio for recurrent stroke and smoking (HR, 2.06; 95% CI, 1.39–3.56) in the elderly [38]. The data concerning hyperglycemic control in DM patients, smoking, and recurrent stroke risk association is lacking at this time.

This chapter has summarized the microvascular and macrovascular complications of DM as well as the complex pathophysiologic changes that occur at the cellular level which place diabetic patients at high risk for ischemic stroke. Primary prevention of stroke in diabetics centers around the key concept of normoglycemia maintenance which in turn leads to the indirect regulation of concomitant risk factors for ischemic stroke such as hyperlipidemia and hypertension. Optimization of glucose control via oral antihyperglycemic medications is an important facet for hyperglycemia control though only a few trials have shed light onto which medications may decrease future stroke risks or improve peri-stroke outcomes. Secondary stroke prevention in diabetes again centers around achieving euglycemia to reduce recurrent stroke risk though there is even less evidence about optimization of risk factors than in primary stroke prevention. Nevertheless data from trials such as IRIS will continue to help bolster the repository of knowledge used for the improvement of diabetic patient care as it relates to ischemic stroke and the establishment of improved AHA/ADA guidelines moving forward.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. By comparison to the general population, the risk of mortality from stroke in patients with diabetes is:
   (a) Equal
   (b) Lower
   (c) Two times higher
   (d) Three times higher
   (e) Four times higher
2. Microvascular changes due to hyperglycemia occur:
   (a) Due to atherosclerosis
   (b) Due to intracapillary thrombosis
   (c) Due to production of reactive oxygen species at the cellular and genetic level
   (d) Due to persistent hyperglycemia
   (e) Due to intracapillary hypertension
3. By comparison of many systemic cells, endothelial cells:
   (a) Express non-insulin GLUTs which allows for continued generation of ROS
   (b) Downregulate glucose transporters to prevent continued prevention of ROS
   (c) Are highly resistant to the entrance of glucose
   (d) Express insulin-dependent GLUTs
   (e) Express unique GLUTs
4. Endothelial cell dysfunction results from:
   (a) Deposition of AGEs
   (b) Glycation of LDL
   (c) Increased expression of CD36 in monocytes
   (d) Upregulation of inflammatory proteins
   (e) All of the above
5. One of the first studies demonstrating that strict regulation of blood glucose prevented vascular complications was:
   (a) The DCCT trial
   (b) UKPDS
   (c) Accord
   (d) Advance
   (e) VADT
6. Deleterious endothelial changes develop earlier:
   (a) In carotid arteries
   (b) In basilar arteries
   (c) In cerebral arterioles
   (d) In anterior cerebral arteries
   (e) In posterior cerebral arteries
7. Risk factors for ischemic stroke include the following except for:
   (a) Microalbuminuria
   (b) Sleep apnea
   (c) Atrial fibrillation
   (d) Hypertension
   (e) Smoking
8. Primary stroke prevention is dependent on:
   (a) An HbA1C target <7.0%
   (b) Monitoring fasting serum glucose
   (c) Monitoring postprandial glucose
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
9. In the UKPDS trial, patients treated with metformin showed:
   (a) A 24% relative risk reduction in ischemic stroke
   (b) A 32% relative risk reduction in ischemic stroke
   (c) A 40% reduction in ischemic stroke
   (d) A 42% reduction in macrovascular deaths related to diabetes
   (e) A 50% reduction in macrovascular deaths related to diabetes
10. Primary stroke prevention involves:
   (a) *Aggressive blood pressure management should occur in all patients with DM*

(b) *The use of statins*
(c) *Smoking cessation*
(d) Screening and management of atrial fibrillation
(e) All of the above

Correct Answers

1. (c, d)
2. (c)
3. (a) Express non-insulin GLUTs which allows for continued generation of ROS
4. (e) All of the above
5. (b) UKPDS
6. (c) In cerebral arterioles
7. (a) Microalbuminuria
8. (d) All of the above
9. (b, d)
10. (e) All of the above

Acknowledgment We would like to thank Dr. Tarun Girotra for his generous inputs and comments to this book chapter. Dr. Feng would like to acknowledge grant supports from the National Institutes of Health (P20GM109040 and HD086844), from the American Heart Association (14SDG1829003), and from the South Carolina Clinical and Translational Research Institute (UL1 TR001450).

References

1. Lieber B, Taylor B, Appelboom G, et al. Meta-analysis of telemonitoring to improve HbA1c levels: promise for stroke survivors. J Clin Neurosci. 2015;22:807–11.
2. American Diabetes Association. Classification and diagnosis of diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(Suppl. 1):S8–S16. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc15-S005.
3. Funk S, Yurdagul A Jr, Orr A. Hyperglycemia and endothelial dysfunction in atherosclerosis: lessons from type 1 diabetes. J Vasc Med. 2012;2012:Article ID 569654, 19 pages.
4. Mishiro K, Imai T, Sugitani S, et al. Diabetes mellitus aggravates hemorrhagic transformation after ischemic stroke via mitochondrial defects leading to endothelial apoptosis. PLoS One. 2014;9(8):e103818. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0103818, pages 13.
5. Kikuchi K, Tancharoen S, Ito T, et al. Potential of the Angiotensin Receptor Blockers (ARBs) telmisartan, irbesartan, and candesartan for inhibiting the HMGB1/RAGE Axis in prevention and acute treatment of stroke. Int J Mol Sci. 2013;14:18899–924.
6. Kim E, Tolhurst A, Cho S. Deregulation of inflammatory response in the diabetic condition is associated with increased ischemic brain injury. J Neuroinflammation. 2014;11:83, 9 pages.
7. Bornfeldt K, Tabas I. Insulin resistance, hyperglycemia, and atherosclerosis. Cell Metab. 2011;14(5):575–85.
8. Node K, Inoue T, et al. Postprandial hyperglycemia as an etiological factor in vascular failure. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2009;8:23. https://doi.org/10.1186/1475-2840-8-23, pages 10.
9. Kitada M, Zhang Z, Mima A, et al. Molecular mechanisms of diabetic vascular complications. J Diabetes Investig. 2010;1(3):77–89.
10. UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) Group. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). Lancet. 1998;352:837–53.
11. Romero J, Morris J, Pikula A. Stroke prevention: modifying risk factors. Ther Adv Cardiovasc Dis. 2008;2(4):287–303.
12. The Heart Outcomes Prevention Evaluation Study Investigators. Effects of an angiotensin-converting-enzyme inhibitor, ramipril, on cardiovascular events in high-risk patients. N Engl J Med. 2000;342(3):145–53.
13. Chen G-P, Zhang X-Q, Wu T, et al. Alteration of mevalonate pathway in proliferated vascular smooth muscle from diabetic mice: possible role in high-glucose-induced atherogenic process. J Diabetes Res. 2015;2015:Article ID 379287, 11 pages.
14. Prasad S, Sajja R, Naik P, et al. Diabetes mellitus and blood-brain barrier dysfunction: an overview. J Pharm. 2014;2(2):125–38.
15. Sakaguchi T, Yan SF, Yan SD, et al. Central role of RAGE-dependent neointimal expansion in arterial restenosis. J Clin Invest. 2003;111(7):959–72.
16. Tchistiakova E, Anderson ND, Greenwood C, et al. Combined effects of type 2 diabetes and hypertension associated with cortical thinning and impaired cerebrovascular reactivity to hypertension alone in older adults. Neuroimage Clin. 2014;5:36–41.
17. Ergul A, Kelly-Cobbs A, Abdalla M, et al. Cerebrovascular complications of diabetes: focus on stroke. Endocr Metab Immune Disord Drug Targets. 2012;12(2):148–58.
18. Zhou Z, Wang K, Penn MS, et al. Receptor for AGE (RAGE) mediates neointimal formation in response to arterial injury. Circulation. 2003;107:2238–43.
19. Califf RM, Boolell M, Haffner S, et al. Prevention of diabetes and cardiovascular disease in patients with impaired glucose tolerance: rationale and design of the Nateglinide and Valsartan in Impaired Glucose Tolerance Outcomes Research (NAVIGATOR) trial. Am Heart J. 2008;156(4):623–32.
20. Low Wang CC, Reusch JEB. Diabetes and cardiovascular disease: changing the focus from glycemic control to improving the long-term survival. Am J Cardiol. 2012;110:58B–68B.
21. Mi D, Jia Q, Zheng H, et al. Metabolic syndrome and stroke recurrence in Chinese ischemic stroke patients – the ACROSS-China study. PLoS One. 2012;7(12):e51406. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0051406, pages 5.
22. Capes S, Hunt D, Malmberg K, et al. Stress hyperglycemia and prognosis of stroke in nondiabetic and diabetic patients. Stroke. 2001;32:2426–32.
23. Scheen AJ. Pharmacokinetics of dipeptidylpeptidase-4 inhibitors. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2010;12(8):648–58.
24. White AT, Murphy AN. Administration of thiazolidinediones for neuroprotection in ischemic stroke; a preclinical systematic review. J Neurochem. 2010;115(4):845–53.
25. Hoogwerf B, Lincoff A, Rodriquez A, et al. Major adverse cardiovascular events with basal insulin peglispro versus comparator insulins in patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2016;15:78. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12933-016-0393-6.
26. Al-Rubeaan K, Fawaz A-H, Amira MY, et al. Ischemic stroke and its risk factors in a registry-based large cross-sectional diabetic cohort in a country facing a diabetes epidemic. J Diabetes Res. 2016;2016:Article ID 4132589, 9 pages.
27. Azimova K, San Juan Z, Debabrata M. Cardiovascular safety profile of currently available diabetic drugs. Ochsner J. 2014;14:616–32.
28. Jeerakathil T, Johnson J, Simpson S, et al. Short-term risk for stroke is doubled in persons with newly treated type 2 diabetes compared with persons without diabetes. Stroke. 2007;38:1739–43.
29. Gejl M, Starup-Linde J, Scheel-Thomsen J, et al. Risk of cardiovascular disease: the effects of diabetes and anti-diabetic drugs – a nested case – control study. Int J Cardiol. 2015;178:292–6.

30. Cheng Y-Y, Leu H-B, Chen T-J, et al. Metformin-inclusive therapy reduces the risk of stroke in patients with diabetes: a 4-year follow-up study. J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis. 2014;23(2):99–105.
31. Navigator Study Group. Effect of nateglinide on the incidence of diabetes and cardiovascular events. N Engl J Med. 2010;362:1463–90.
32. Fisman EZ, Tenenbaum A. Antidiabetic treatment with gliptins: focus on cardiovascular effects and outcomes. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2015;14:129. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12933-015-0294-0.
33. Enders D, Kollhorst B, Engel S, et al. Comparative risk for cardiovascular diseases of dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors vs. sulfonylureas in combination with metformin: results of a two-phase study. J Diabetes Complicat. 2016; https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jdiacomp.2016.05.015.
34. Mearns ES, Sobieraj DM, White CM, et al. Comparative efficacy and safety of antidiabetic drug regimens added to metformin monotherapy in patients with type 2 diabetes: a network meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2015;10(4):28. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0125879.
35. Ganda O. The role of bile acid sequestrants in the management of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Metab Syndr Relat Disord. 2010;8(1):S15–21.
36. Porez G, Prawitt J, Gross B, et al. Bile acid receptors as targets for the treatment of dyslipidemia and cardiovascular disease. J Lipid Res. 2012;53:1723–37.
37. Pan Y, Wang Y, Li H, et al. Association of diabetes and prognosis of minor stroke and its subtypes: a prospective observational study. PLoS One. 2016;11(4):e0153178. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0153178, pages 12.
38. Kernan W, Ovbiagele B, Black H, et al. Guidelines for the prevention of stroke in patients with stroke and transient ischemic attack. Stroke. 2014;45:2160–236. https://doi.org/10.1161/STR.0000000000000024.
39. Meschia JF, Bushnell C, Boden-Albala B, et al. Guidelines for the primary prevention of stroke. Stroke. 2014;45:3754–832. https://doi.org/10.1161/STR.0000000000000046.
40. Vazquez-Benitez G, Desai J, Xu S, et al. Preventable major cardiovascular events associated with uncontrolled glucose, blood pressure, and lipids and active smoking in adults with diabetes with and without cardiovascular disease: a contemporary analysis. Diabetes Care. 2015;38:905–12.
41. Ridker PM. The Jupiter trial. Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes. 2009;2:279–85.
42. O'Keefe JH, Carter MD, Lavie CJ. Primary and secondary prevention of cardiovascular diseases: a practical evidence-based approach. Mayo Clin Proc. 2009;84(8):741–57.
43. Chang S, Wu L-S, Chiou M-J, et al. Association of metformin with lower atrial fibrillation risk among patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a population-based dynamic cohort and in vitro studies. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2014;13:123.
44. Dublin S, Glazer N, Smith N, et al. Diabetes mellitus, glycemic control, and risk of atrial fibrillation. J Gen Intern Med. 2010;25(8):853–8.
45. De Sensi F, De Potter T, Cresti A, et al. Atrial fibrillation in patients with diabetes: molecular mechanisms and therapeutic perspectives. Cardiovasc Diagn Ther. 2015;5(5):364–73.
46. Lin Y, Li H, Lan X, et al. Mechanism of and therapeutic strategy for atrial fibrillation associated with diabetes mellitus. Sci World J. 2013;2013:Article ID 209428, 6 pages.
47. Asghar O, Alam U, Hayat SA, et al. Obesity, diabetes and atrial fibrillation; epidemiology, mechanisms and interventions. Curr Cardiol Rev. 2012;8:253–64.
48. Pan A, Wang Y, Talaei M, et al. Relation of smoking with total mortality and cardiovascular events among patients with diabetes mellitus. Circulation. 2015;132:1795–804.
49. Olofindayo J, Peng H, Liu Y, et al. The interactive effect of diabetes and central obesity on stroke: a prospective cohort study of inner Mongolians. BMC Neurol. 2015;15:65. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12883-015-0328-y, pages 7.
50. Shim U, Lee H, Oh J, et al. Sleep disorder and cardiovascular risk factors among patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Korean J Intern Med. 2011;26:277–84.
51. Kent B, McNicholas W, Ryan S. Insulin resistance, glucose intolerance and diabetes mellitus in obstructive sleep apnoea. J Thorac Dis. 2015;7(8):1343–57.
52. McEvoy R, Antic N, Heeley E, et al. CPAP for prevention of cardiovascular events in obstructive sleep apnea. N Engl J Med. 2016;375:919–31.
53. McDonnell MN, Hillier SL, Hooker SP, et al. Physical activity frequency and risk of incident stroke in a national US study of blacks and whites. Stroke. 2013;44(9):2519–24. https://doi.org/10.1161/STROKEAHA.113.001538, pages 12.
54. Wu S, Shi Y, Wang C, et al. Glycated hemoglobin independently predicts stroke recurrence within one year after acute first-ever non-cardioembolic strokes onset in a Chinese cohort study. PLoS One. 2013;8(11):e80690. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0080690, pages 12.
55. Ray K, Seshasai S, Wijesuriya S, et al. Effect of intensive control of glucose on cardiovascular outcomes and death in patients with diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. Lancet. 2009;373(9677):1765–72.
56. Palacio S, McClure L, Benavente O, et al. Lacunar strokes in patients with diabetes: risk factors, infarct locations, and prognosis: the SPS3 study. Stroke. 2014;45(9):2689–94.
57. Putaala J, Haapaniemi E, Metso A, et al. Recurrent ischemic events in young adults after first-ever ischemic stroke. Ann Neurol. 2010;68:661–71.
58. Bohn B, Schofl C, Zimmer V, et al. Achievement of treatment goals for secondary prevention of myocardial infarction or stroke in 29,325 patients with type 2 diabetes: a German/Austrian DPV-multicenter analysis. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2016;15(1):72. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12933-016-0391-8.
59. Jauch E, Saver J, Adams H, et al. Guidance for the early management of patients with acute ischemic stroke. Stroke. 2013;44:870–947.
60. Tanaka R, Yamashiro K, Okuma Y, et al. Effects of pioglitazone for secondary stroke prevention in patients with impaired glucose tolerance and newly diagnosed diabetes: the J-SPIRIT study. J Atheroscler Thromb. 2015;22:1305–16.
61. Gamboa J, Blankenship D, Niemi J, et al. Extension of the neuroprotective time window for thiazolidinediones in ischemic stroke is dependent on time of reperfusion. Neuroscience. 2010;170(3):846–57.
62. Kernan W, Viscoli CM, Furie KL, et al. Pioglitazone after ischemic stroke of transient ischemic attack. N Engl J Med. 2016;372(14):1321–31.
63. Viscoli C, Brass L, Carolei A, et al. Pioglitazone for secondary prevention after ischemic stroke and transient ischemic attack: rationale and design of the Insulin Resistance Intervention after Stroke (IRIS) trial. Am Heart J. 2014;168(6):823–9.
64. Osei E, Fonville S, Zandbergen AAM, et al. Metformin and sitagliptin in patients with impaired glucose tolerance and a recent TIA or minor ischemic stroke (MAAS): study protocol for a randomized controlled trial. BioMed Central. 2015;16:332. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13063-015-0882-z, pages 6.
65. Kunte H, Schmidt S, Eliasziw M, et al. Sulfonylureas improve outcome in patients with type 2 diabetes and acute ischemic stroke. Stroke. 2007;38(9):2526–30.
66. Abdelsaid M, Prakash R, Weiguo L, et al. Metformin treatment in the period after stroke prevents nitrative stress and restores angiogenic signaling in the brain in diabetes. Diabetes. 2015;64:1804–17.
67. Hirst A, Farmer J, Feakins B, et al. Quantifying the effects of diabetics and β-adrenoceptor blockers on glycaemic control in diabetes mellitus- a systemic review and meta-analysis. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2014;79(5):733–43.
68. Fleg J, Forman D, Berra K, et al. Secondary prevention of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease in older adults: a scientific

statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation. 2013;128(22):2422–46.
69. Macedo AF, Taylor FC, Casas JP, et al. Unintended effects of statins from observational studies in the general population: systemic review and meta-analysis. BMC Med. 2014;12:51, pages 13.
70. Zhang Y, Hu C, Hong J, et al. Lipid profiling reveals different therapeutic effects of metformin and glipizide in patients with type 2 diabetes and coronary artery disease. Diabetes Care. 2014;37:2804–12.
71. Cefulu W, et al. American Diabetes Association: standards of medical care in diabetes – 2015 l. J Clin Appl Res Educ Diabetes Care. 2015;38(1):S1–S93.

Peripheral Arterial Disease and Diabetes Mellitus

48

Tracy J. Cheun, Georges M. Haidar, and Boulos Toursarkissian

Peripheral arterial disease (PAD) is the partial or total occlusion of peripheral arteries and is usually due to atherosclerotic disease. It can be diagnosed in a variety of ways; however it is objectively most commonly defined as an ankle-brachial index < 0.9. It results in a spectrum of manifestations ranging from asymptomatic disease, intermittent claudication, rest pain, tissue loss, to gangrene. Furthermore the presence of PAD is a coronary artery disease equivalent and puts patients at risk for cardiovascular and cerebrovascular complications and mortality. While PAD and diabetes share many risk factors, they also share the same endpoints; in fact the severity and progression of PAD are accelerated when associated with diabetes. Patients with diabetes are among those most vulnerable to developing PAD, and they suffer the most complications and worst outcomes, making early detection and risk factor modification paramount in their treatment.

Epidemiology

While the prevalence of PAD is not as high as that of diabetes, estimated at 5.9% among Americans age 40 and above, its prevalence is elevated to 20–30% among the diabetic population, according to National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey data. In a prospective cohort study of 48,607 men comparing diabetics and nondiabetics and the incidence of developing PAD, the relative risk was found to be 3.39. Even when adjusted for all other risk factors, the RR remained 2.61. Furthermore, the duration of diabetes was directly linked with the risk of developing PAD [1]. Diabetes has also been linked with the development of critical limb ischemia. The severity of diabetes has also been shown to correlate with PAD risk, with one study in the United Kingdom demonstrating a 28% increased risk of developing PAD with every 1% increase in glycosylated hemoglobin (HgA1c) [2]. Perhaps more importantly, diabetics with diagnosed vascular disease were found to have better management of their cardiovascular risk factors compared to diabetics with occult PAD, highlighting the importance of early recognition [3]. Other risk factors for development of PAD include smoking, older age, male sex, hypertension, and hyperhomocysteinemia [4].

Diagnostic Challenge

Clinical detection of symptomatic PAD can be made through any number of history and physical exam findings, including claudication, diminished or absent pulses, femoral bruit, cool extremities, distal hair loss, nail thickening, or dependent rubor. Pulse exam in diabetics can be difficult to interpret, and a diminished pulse exam may simply be due to calcification of a vessel without a flow-limiting stenosis. Conversely, a palpable distal pulse does not preclude a more proximal flow-limiting stenosis. Vascular claudication is muscular pain, cramping, fatigue, or heaviness that is induced by walking, relieved by rest, and is reproducible [5]. Clinical detection of symptomatic PAD in diabetics may be made more difficult by the presence of diabetic sensory neuropathy which may mask claudication symptoms as well as delay discovery of ischemic tissue loss and motor neuropathy which may limit mobility enough that claudication is never provoked. Therefore a careful exam and conscientious use of diagnostic studies are particularly important in the diabetic subset of PAD patients.

PAD is diagnosed and characterized through a variety of modalities inclusive of ankle-brachial index (ABI), duplex

This chapter received no specific grant support from any funding agency in the public, commercial, or not-for-profit sectors.

T. J. Cheun · G. M. Haidar · B. Toursarkissian (✉)
Division of Vascular and Endovascular Surgery, Department of Surgery, Long School of Medicine, University of Texas Health San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

South Texas Center for Vascular Care, South Texas Medical Center, San Antonio, TX, USA
e-mail: vascular@uthscsa.edu

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_48

Table 48.1 Ankle-brachial index interpretation

ABI	Interpretation
≥1.4	Non-compressible
1.0–1.39	Normal range
0.9–0.99	Borderline
0.7–0.89	Mild disease
0.5–0.69	Moderate disease
<0.5	Severe disease

ultrasonography, continuous wave Doppler, computed tomography and magnetic resonance angiography, and conventional arteriography. The ABI in particular is well-used for its simplicity, noninvasiveness, and reproducibility. ABI is calculated by dividing the larger of bilateral ankle systolic pressures by the larger of bilateral upper arm systolic pressures. Although ranges do not always strictly correlate with the typical interpretations, values help characterize the degree of disease present (Table 48.1).

A report of the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey found that a value greater than 1.4 is associated with PAD as well [6]. The Strong Heart Study determined that ABI carries a U-shaped cardiovascular and mortality risk curve, associating higher mortality with values on either side of the normal range [7].

The diagnostic utility of ABI in diabetics can be more difficult to interpret given that diabetic arteries are not reliably compressible compared to their nondiabetic counterparts due to medial arterial calcification (MAC) particularly in the ankles, resulting in ABI elevation and often normal ABIs in the presence of PAD. In a 2010 study evaluating the validity of ABI in PAD against a multitude of patient characteristics, when compared to lower extremity angiography, diabetic patients had a 4.36 odds ratio for a normal ABI in the presence of proven PAD [8]. Given the distal and microvascular nature of diabetic angiopathy, there is also a component of microvascular ischemia that is missed when using ABI as the sole diagnostic modality. In a study performed in the United Kingdom, microvascular cutaneous responses were measured in diabetics and nondiabetics with and without PAD, and there was a significant subset of diabetic PAD patients in whom ABIs did not capture the presence of distal microvascular functional abnormalities [9]. This highlights the importance of adjunctive diagnostic modalities in diabetics with suspected PAD despite potentially normal ABI values.

The normal triphasic waveform obtained during noninvasive Doppler testing is characterized by a swift upward wave representing antegrade flow during early systole, a downward wave representing brief retrograde flow during late systole and early diastole, and a small slow upward wave in late diastole. The three phases of the triphasic waveform represent normal antegrade flow and pressure against a compliant vessel wall. The full noninvasive vascular study provides segmental pressures, ABI, and Doppler-derived waveforms (Fig. 48.1).

Alternative modalities have been proposed as adjuncts to the ABI for more accurate and prompt diagnosis of PAD in diabetics. The toe-brachial index (TBI) and toe systolic blood pressure (TSBP) have been investigated on the premise that toe arteries are typically spared of MAC relative to ankle arteries [10]. Brooks et al. found that ABI and TBI were essentially comparable in diagnostic accuracy in diabetics except in the case of overtly calcified crural vessels, proposing that ABI be supplemented with TBI or other adjunct diagnostic modalities when ABI is greater than 1.4 [11]. A major limitation of TBI lies in its less well-defined diagnostic criteria. A review of TBIs in the diagnosis of PAD found that 0.7 is commonly recommended as the lower limit of normal and that the sensitivity of detecting PAD ranged from 90% to 100% and specificity from 65% to 100%. These values however require further large-scale studies to firmly validate these limits [12]. The TBI and TSBP have also been studied as indicators of wound healing potential and amputation risk. A TSBP below 30 mmHg is generally considered insufficient for wound healing, conferring a 3.25-fold risk of non-healing or amputation [13].

Other noninvasive adjuncts to diagnosis and lesion localization include pulse volume recordings, continuous wave Doppler, duplex ultrasonography, MR, and CT angiography. Continuous wave Doppler, when studied against ABI and TBI, is significantly more sensitive and specific in PAD diagnosis in both diabetics and nondiabetics [14]. This is true especially in infrapopliteal disease [15].

The gold standard of PAD diagnosis had been invasive angiography, although CT angiography is growing more popular due to its less invasive nature as well as its ability to visualize beyond intraluminal defects and provide cross-sectional imaging. Conventional angiography provides the benefit of being able to demonstrate lesions and flow dynamics in real time as well as the potential for intervention on the spot. However, PAD patients frequently have comorbid CV disease which puts them at higher risk of adverse outcomes with procedural sedation as well as diabetic or hypertensive nephropathy which limits the use of intravenous contrast. The risk of the latter can be mitigated through the use of renoprotective methods or carbon dioxide angiography; however not all centers have the capability for the latter. Furthermore CO_2 angiography's ability to demonstrate infrapopliteal lesions, more common to the diabetic population, is inferior to that of iodinated contrast [16].

Pathophysiology, Natural History, and Outcomes

Diabetes is characterized by hyperglycemia secondary to either an autoimmune impairment of insulin production (type I) or a gradually acquired insulin resistance (type II) and

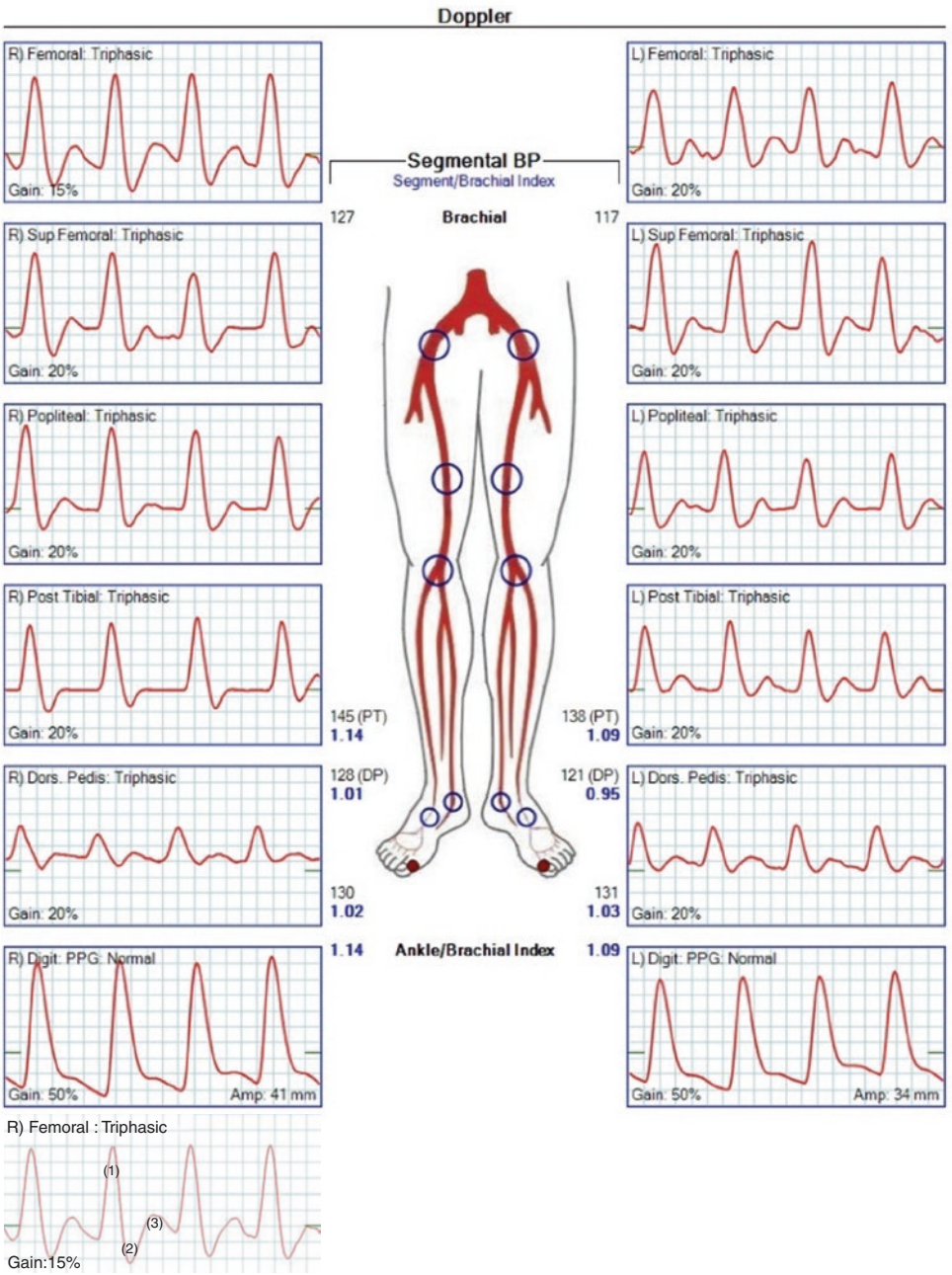


Fig. 48.1 Normal noninvasive study demonstrating Doppler waveforms, segmental pressures, and ABI. Normal triphasic waveforms demonstrate antegrade (1), retrograde (2), and antegrade (3) deflections observed with pulsatile flow through compliant vessels

results in a number of acute and chronic metabolic derangements that ultimately manifest as microvascular and macrovascular disease that closely intertwines with PAD. As noted, PAD is most commonly due to atherosclerosis, which in turn results from a combination of endothelial dysfunction, vascular inflammation, and medial smooth muscle overgrowth which contribute to the development of flow-limiting lesions [17]. Vascular homeostasis relies on a functional endothelium which is largely maintained by a steady production of nitric oxide (NO) which functions widely in vasodilatory, anti-inflammatory, antiplatelet, antioxidant, and anti-atherogenic capacities. When dysfunctional, the vessel becomes vulnerable to atherosclerosis and thrombosis. Hyperglycemia promotes increased production of reactive oxygen species, which in turn blunts NO bioavailability as well as encourages smooth muscle cell hyperplasia and strongly predicts adverse cardiovascular events [17].

Not only on a cellular level do diabetes and PAD overlap, but they also demonstrate closely related clinical sequela. Both diabetes and PAD are coronary artery disease risk equivalents and have well-established relationships with cardiovascular disease. Each disease independently as well as in

Table 48.2 Rutherford classifications of peripheral arterial disease

Grade	Classification	Description
Grade 0	Asymptomatic	Asymptomatic disease may be detected incidentally or as part of a routine screening ABI. This stage is slow and insidious in the majority of patients, and many may not progress out of this. As major limb vessels gradually narrow, a variable amount of collateral disease may develop. It is believed that for every patient with symptomatic PAD, there are six with asymptomatic disease [19]. This unearths two management gaps in that asymptomatic PAD patients with diabetes are grossly underdiagnosed and that asymptomatic PAD patients are significantly undertreated for their cardiovascular risk factors [3].
Grade 1	Mild claudication	As the degree of major limb artery narrowing increases, demand may exceed perfusion to the affected extremity and result in various degrees of intermittent claudication. Patients may begin to complain of exercise-induced cramping, fatigue, or heaviness in the buttock, thigh, or calf. Claudication is highly reproducible and is typically relieved with a couple minutes of rest. With the commonly concomitant presence of diabetes, motor neuropathy, obesity, arthritis, and other comorbidities such as heart failure and coronary artery disease, a patient with diabetes and PAD may not achieve activity levels that are adequate to provoke claudication. Claudication may also be masked by sensory neuropathy. For these reasons, patient history must be actively and thoughtfully evoked, physical exam must be critically obtained, and the comorbidities of the patient carefully weighed in to the diagnostic algorithm.
Grade 2	Moderate claudication	
Grade 3	Severe claudication	
Grade 4	Rest pain	With continued narrowing, ischemic symptoms may occur at rest which marks the beginning of critical limb ischemia. Rest pain is classically described at night when the lower extremities are elevated and perfusion is no longer assisted by gravity. Patient will describe pain with leg elevation that is relieved by dangling the extremity over the edge of the bed or by sleeping in a chair. Again, rest pain may be masked by diabetic sensory neuropathy. The end stage of PAD, beginning with mild ischemic tissue loss to ulceration and gangrene, may result with further progression of PAD or after a minor trauma or infection. Again with diabetic peripheral neuropathy, a mild injury may go unnoticed and enter a vicious cycle of poor wound healing due to poor tissue perfusion.
Grade 5	Minor tissue loss	
Grade 6	Gangrene	

conjunction increases the risk for major cardiovascular and cerebrovascular events as well as major adverse limb events. The Fremantle Diabetes Study of 1294 diabetics found that an ABI less than 0.9 was an independent predictor (HR 2.91) of first-time diabetes-related.

lower extremity amputation over the mean 9.1 years of follow-up [18].

The progression of PAD follows a predictable yet not inevitable course. Two of the most commonly used tools for classifying symptomatic PAD are the Rutherford and the Fontaine classifications which aid in determining the selection of best medical therapy alone versus invasive interventions (Table 48.2).

PAD patients with diabetes are much more likely to present with more severe lower extremity ulcers (Fig. 48.2), and given the common presence of diabetic sensory neuropathy, these ulcers are more difficult to detect and treat at an early stage. In diabetic patients presenting with critical limb ischemia (CLI), 50% will develop CLI in the contralateral limb within the next 5 years [19]. In a prospective cohort study of 1244 male claudicants followed for a period of up to 15 years, diabetes and ABI were the two strongest clinical factors found to be associated with the development of CLI [20]. Both lower extremity amputation rates and survival have been demonstrated to be significantly higher in diabetic PAD patients compared to nondiabetic PAD patients [21]. Worsened disease severity relates not only to concomitant risk factors and diabetic vasculopathy but also to the more distal nature of PAD in diabetics. Diabetics more frequently demonstrate densely calcified infrapopliteal

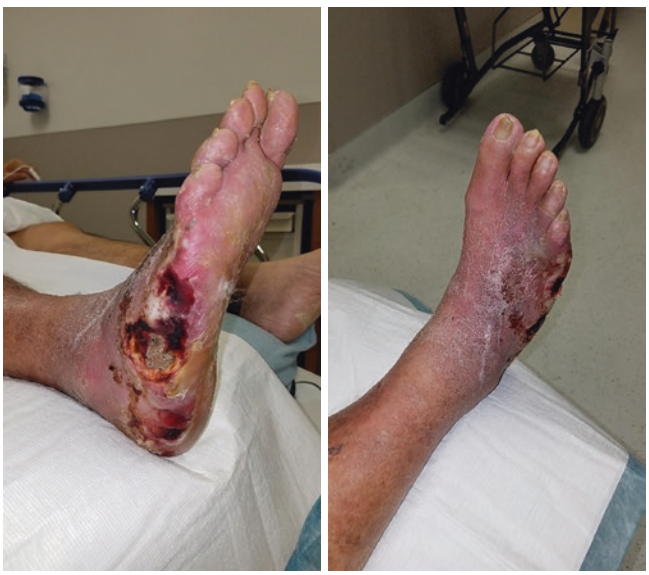


Fig. 48.2 Classic end-stage peripheral arterial disease. Note thickened nails, dependent rubor, and gangrene

disease, making both open and endovascular interventions more challenging. In a study published in 2016 comparing 10-year all-cause mortality in diabetics versus nondiabetics with and without PAD, the relative risk was 2.51 after age- and sex-matching [22].

A population-based cohort study of 444 German subjects who underwent a first-time lower extremity major amputation stratified by diabetes diagnosis demonstrated a time-dependent influence of diabetes on mortality. Early in follow-up, non-

diabetics actually demonstrated slightly worse survival compared to diabetics; however after 2–3 years, the survival curves crossed and diabetic mortality surpassed nondiabetic mortality. The investigators proposed that diagnosed diabetics had better general follow-up and were being closely monitored for their diabetes and incidentally any other comorbidities; therefore any issues with wound healing that arose may have been detected and addressed at earlier stages, suggesting that the more malignant natural history of diabetes could be held at bay with aggressive care. They also noted that the diabetic subset had more transtibial amputations, given their infrapopliteal disease, which are associated with better survival outcomes compared to transfemoral amputations [23].

Management

Better characterization of the association between diabetes and PAD strives toward earlier and more accurate diagnosis and subsequent management to achieve two major goals: improvement of lower extremity symptoms and quality of life (inclusive of avoidance of lower extremity amputations) as well as minimization of risk for adverse cardiovascular and cerebrovascular events. The management of PAD begins with lifestyle and risk factor modification followed by revascularization treatment algorithms when disease persists despite the former.

Risk Factor Modification

Diabetes Interestingly, despite diabetes being one of the strongest predictors of PAD development and severity, there is no data supporting that stringent glycemic control leads to improved outcomes or survival. In a recent meta-analysis, every 1% increase in HbA1c was associated with a 25% increase in CV disease mortality and 15% increase in all-cause mortality. Of the RCTs reviewed, however, intensive glycemic control never demonstrated improved CV or all-cause mortality [24]. For example, the Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) trial was a randomized controlled trial that randomized 10,251 subjects to tight (<6.0%) and standard (7.0–7.9%) glycemic control arms to assess differences in cardiovascular events (nonfatal MI and CVA) and cardiovascular mortality. The tight arm was terminated after only 3.5 years however due to an increased mortality rate noted in this arm [25].

Therefore to date there is no recommendation for tight glucose control in diabetic patients, both with and without cardiovascular disease, and by extension, in those with and without PAD. Current American Diabetes Association guidelines, supported by the American Heart Association, offer a tiered approach to glycemic control, noting 7.0% or lower to be appropriate for most diabetic patients. A goal of 6.5% or lower may be appropriate in younger, healthier patients with less risk factors for hypoglycemia, and conversely a less stringent goal of less than 8.0% is considered appropriate for elder, altered, more frail patients with higher risk for hypoglycemia [26]. No specific recommendations for HgA1c targets in PAD patients exist to this date.

Smoking The association between smoking and PAD and subsequent progression to CLI, amputation, CV events, and death has been well established, and it has time and again been implicated as the strongest and most preventable risk factor for the development of PAD. The Society for Vascular Surgery practice guidelines for management of asymptomatic PAD and claudication identify smoking cessation as a GRADE 1A recommendation [27]. Not only is there a 2.2-fold increased risk of symptomatic PAD in active smokers versus nonsmokers, but there is also a significantly increased prevalence of PAD in former smokes compared to never-smokers, thus further emphasizing the importance of prevention in addition to cessation [28].

There is also a clear survival benefit with cessation. An observational cohort study of 739 patients with symptomatic PAD followed quitters versus nonquitters after lower extremity angiography. Thirty percent were able to quit and maintain cessation 1 year out from angiography, and at 5-year follow-up, quitters demonstrated significantly lower all-cause mortality (14% versus 31%) and higher amputation-free survival (81% versus 60%) compared to nonquitters [29]. Furthermore, patients who smoke and do require lower extremity revascularization of any kind are at higher risk of failed intervention and post-procedural complications. A retrospective study of 15,534 patients who underwent infrainguinal bypass found significantly increased 30-day graft failure rates in smokers versus nonsmokers [8].

Despite the mountains of evidence in support of smoking cessation, tobacco use remains widely prevalent in the PAD population. From 2010 to 2015, 101,055 open and endovascular revascularization procedures were cataloged for smoking prevalence and cessation rates after intervention. At the time of intervention, 44% of patients were active smokers. Smoking was more prevalent among males, younger patients, and private insurance carriers. Smokers were also more likely to have lower overall medication compliance. At 1-year follow-up, 36% of the smokers had quit – of these quitters, they were more likely to be older than 70, have an ABI >0.9, and to have undergone a bypass procedure rather than a percutaneous intervention [30]. Given the demographic findings of PAD patients who are most likely to be active smokers, this gives insight into targeted opportunities

for prevention of disease progression through smoking cessation efforts.

Unfortunately, cessation is difficult to achieve and maintain, as demonstrated by multiple studies observing cessation efforts. A key issue identified is the clinician's preconceived belief that long-time smokers are unlikely to quit and that therefore efforts to promote cessation are futile [31]. A cluster-randomized trial of 156 tobacco-using patients at 8 vascular surgery practices compared standard counseling to protocolized cessation counseling that included surgeon-driven cessation advice, prescriptions for cessation aids, and referral to a cessation hotline. At 3-month follow-up, the intervention group demonstrated higher interest in quitting and better knowledge of the negative health effects of smoking [32]. This demonstrated that even with minimal intervention from the surgeon, there was a significant improvement in patient mindset with regard to smoking cessation.

Positive results have been found with intensive cessation regimens targeted at PAD patients. A study in 2 Minnesota vascular centers randomized 124 active smokers with PAD who expressed a desire to quit to intensive and minimal intervention groups. The intensive intervention group included counseling from the vascular provider to quit smoking, multiple sessions with a smoking cessation counselor providing education about smoking and PAD development and progression, offers of cessation pharmacotherapy, identification of an outside social support person to facilitate cessation efforts. The minimal intervention group received a single admonishment to quit smoking and a list of referrals for outside cessation resources. At 6-month follow-up, the intensive intervention group had biochemically verified quit rates of 21.3% compared to 6.8% in the minimal intervention group [33].

Hypertension Numerous large-scale studies have demonstrated an overall decrease in adverse CV events including stroke and MI, chronic kidney disease, and mortality with improved blood pressure control [34]. Hypertension is also an independent risk factor for PAD; however the association is not as strong as that of smoking and diabetes. The treatment of hypertension is mainly aimed at reducing the risk of adverse cardiovascular and cerebrovascular events and death. That said, the Treatment of Mild Hypertension Study demonstrated that pharmacologic antihypertensive therapy in addition to dietary changes was associated with a decreased prevalence of intermittent claudication compared to dietary changes alone [35]. This is in contradiction to the theoretical concern that decreased systemic pressure may exacerbate symptomatic PAD due to decreased peripheral perfusion. The benefit of antihypertensive medications is clear; the choice of drug class is slightly murkier in the context of PAD. There existed debate about beta blockers and their potential for worsening claudication – to date there is no clear evidence to support this – and in fact a meta-analysis of 11 randomized trials found no association between beta blockers and adverse effects on walking distance or claudication symptoms [36]. In the appropriate cardiac context, beta blockade may be the preferred agent for antihypertensive control in PAD patients. That said, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEIs) also demonstrate clear cardiac and renal protective effects as well as potential for improvement of claudication symptoms. The Heart Outcomes Prevention Evaluation study showed a 25% reduction of cardiac events with ramipril. A double-blind placebo-controlled trial in Australia demonstrated improvements in pain-free walk distance as well as maximum walk distance with ramipril versus placebo; however this finding has not been reproduced in larger, long-term studies [37].

Dyslipidemia Dyslipidemia is associated with a higher risk of adverse cardiovascular events, and reduction of cholesterol similarly reduces this risk. The Scandinavian Simvastatin Survival Study (4S) demonstrated that in patients with coronary artery disease, treatment with simvastatin was associated with a relative risk reduction of 42% for CAD-related death and 30% for all-cause mortality [38]. Many studies in the statin era have corroborated this finding and have even found cardiovascular benefits even in those patients with normal cholesterol levels. The pleiotropic effects of statins have been demonstrated in many large-scale, long-term studies.

Treatment of elevated low-density lipoprotein (LDL) has also been strongly implicated in slowing the progression of peripheral atherosclerotic disease burden as well as symptoms of PAD. In the Heart Protection Study, 6748 adults with PAD were randomized double-blindly to 40 mg of simvastatin daily versus placebo and followed for a mean of 5 years. The simvastatin arm demonstrated a 22% relative reduction in the rate of first major vascular event, defined as coronary artery events, strokes, or peripheral vascular events; and it showed a 16% relative reduction specifically for peripheral vascular events. The subgroup with normal LDL levels was conferred protection from adverse vascular events, suggesting as before that statin therapy's benefits extend beyond lowering serum lipid levels [39]. Some of these cholesterol-independent effects involve restoring endothelial function, stabilizing atherosclerotic plaques, and decreasing oxidative stress and vessel inflammation; however the pleiotropic effects of statin therapy are incompletely understood [40].

The use of statins has also been implicated strongly in improvement of claudication. A prospective study of 392 patients with PAD compared lower extremity functional performance between statin users and nonusers. When controlled for age, sex, comorbidities, health insurance, and edu-

cation, statin users had significantly better lower-extremity functioning compared to statin nonusers. Leg function was measured using 6-minute walking distance, 4-meter walking speed, time to rise from a chair 5 times in a row, and standing balance [41]. A randomized trial of simvastatin versus placebo in symptomatic PAD patients demonstrated significant increases at 6 months and 12 months (24% and 42%, respectively) in treadmill exercise time until onset of claudication symptoms in the simvastatin arm. No significant differences in treadmill times were noted in the placebo arm at 6 or 12 months [42].

A study of 49 patients compared 6-minute walk test and treadmill exercise time until onset of claudication to real-life self-reported outdoor equivalents and noted no significant difference between the treadmill and outdoor values. Interestingly, based on subjects' responses on the Vascular Quality of Life Questionnaire, the 6-minute walk test was the only test modality that correlated with quality of life assessments [43]. Unless patients notice intolerable side effects, statin use is indicated for reduction in disease progression and mortality as well as for improvement in quality of life and amputation-free survival in all PAD patients, regardless of serum cholesterol levels. Current recommendations provide goal LDL of less than 100 mg/dL for patients with PAD and less than 70 mg/dL for very high-risk individuals [44].

Obesity Obesity is most frequently quantified with the body mass index (BMI), which is calculated as weight in kilograms divided by the square of the height in meters (kg/m^2). Being overweight or obese has been associated with increased all-cause mortality [45]. A compilation of 19 prospective study participants totaling 1.46 million subjects found an inverse relationship between BMI and all-cause mortality, with the lowest all-cause mortality rate in the BMI range of 20–24.9 [46]. While obesity has not been directly linked as a risk factor for PAD or adverse lower extremity outcomes, weight loss in obese PAD patients can improve claudication symptoms by reducing weight and stress on the lower extremities.

A prospective study of 297 patients with symptomatic PAD characterized factors associated with various degrees of sedentary lifestyles and noted that the most sedentary subjects had higher BMI and diabetes prevalence as well as lower walking economy and maximum walking distance [47]. Another study of 46 symptomatic PAD patients compared subjects with normal weight and those with risk of obesity (BMI 28 or greater). Investigators compared claudication times and total walking times as well as time to recovery of baseline ABI. The risk of obesity subset had shorter times to onset of claudication as well as longer delays in recovery of baseline ABI after exercise [48]. PAD patients should be counseled to maintain healthy body weight to reduce mortality, to decrease risk of diabetes, and possibly to improve claudication symptoms.

Exercise In an effort to avoid symptoms of claudication, patients may self-limit their activity level. Numerous studies have shown that sedentary lifestyle is not only linked with overall poorer outcomes, but it is also associated with decreased walking distance and quality of life [49]. A study following activity levels of subjects with PAD demonstrated that higher physical activity level was associated with lower all-cause and cardiovascular disease mortality in the studied population [50]. Simple verbal prescription of a home exercise regimen is insufficient. Patients have various obstacles including poor adherence and fear that the pain of mild claudication is deleterious which require supervision and positive feedback from a clinician vital to the success of any walking program.

Similar to smoking cessation, a simple admonishment to continue walking is not as effective as supervised exercise therapy (SET) [51]. The Claudication: Exercise Versus Endoluminal Revascularization (CLEVER) study is a multicenter randomized prospective trial comparing supervised exercise to endovascular revascularization and best medical therapy. It found that both SET and stent revascularization improved peak walking times similarly and both were significantly superior to best medical therapy alone in terms of improved exercise tolerance [52].

The safety of SET has been studied given PAD patients' higher baseline risk of adverse cardiovascular events and mortality. A large-scale review of clinical trials studying SET compiling a collective 82,725 hours of training found that a total of eight adverse events were reported, only six of which were cardiovascular in origin [53]. The safety of SET and its exceedingly low complication rate is likely related to its supervised nature.

Antiplatelets Antiplatelet therapy is recommended to reduce risk of both fatal and nonfatal CV events in patients with symptomatic PAD. The Antiplatelet Trialists' Collaboration, an analysis of combined data from over 135,000 subjects, determined that prolonged antiplatelet therapy with aspirin was associated with a significant 25% reduction in adverse vascular events in high-risk subjects. More to the point, when looking at symptomatic PAD patients specifically, there was an association with significantly reduced overall vascular occlusion rates in the antiplatelet group versus controls (15.7% versus 24.9%), as well as when broken down to native (19.5% versus 39%) and graft (15.8% versus 23.6%) patency rates [54].

While antiplatelet use has been well-supported in the literature for secondary prevention in appropriate patients, its use as a primary preventative measure in PAD and diabetes patients has not yet been as well established.

The Prevention of Progression of Arterial Disease and Diabetes (POPADAD) trial was a blinded, randomized placebo-controlled trial of aspirin and antioxidants (alone and in combination) compared to placebo in diabetics with asymptomatic PAD as defined by abnormal ABI but no symptomatic cardiovascular disease. It demonstrated no difference in primary endpoints (nonfatal MI or CVA, major amputation, death from MI or CVA) in the aspirin and non-aspirin arms, providing no evidence in support of aspirin use for primary prevention of these events in diabetics with subclinical PAD [55]. This ambiguity persists in more recent studies. A 2016 meta-analysis of six studies evaluating aspirin's safety and efficacy in primary prevention of adverse vascular events was unable to find a difference between aspirin and placebo in these vascular endpoints [56].

It is interesting to note that a subset of the population continues to have adverse vascular events despite long-term aspirin therapy. A prospective study of symptomatic PAD patients on long-term aspirin was studied for aspirin responsiveness and adverse vascular outcomes in a follow-up period of up to 2 years. Aspirin responsiveness was determined by performing a platelet function test, and 25.8% of study participants were found to be aspirin-resistant. Primary endpoints were more likely in the aspirin-resistant group compared to the aspirin-responsive group (32.3% versus 14.6%). The secondary endpoint of peripheral revascularization or tissue loss was not significantly different between the two groups. This study suggested that aspirin resistance is not only highly prevalent among the symptomatic PAD population but that it is an independent predictor of adverse vascular events and mortality, raising the question that these patients may be better served with alternative antiplatelet agents [57].

A number of newer antiplatelet agents exist today. Clopidogrel is the oldest and most studied of these alternative antiplatelets. The Clopidogrel Versus Aspirin in Patients at Risk of Ischemic Events (CAPRIE) trial was a blinded, randomized trial that compared efficacy of aspirin and clopidogrel in preventing primary endpoints of major adverse vascular events and mortality in a population of subjects with symptomatic PAD or recent MI or CVA. A relative risk reduction in these primary endpoints was noted in the clopidogrel arm compared to the aspirin arm at a mean follow-up of 1.9 years. In the subset of patients with symptomatic PAD, the relative risk reduction was 23.8% for clopidogrel compared to aspirin [58]. This suggests that clopidogrel, although more costly, may have better efficacy in symptomatic PAD patients. No large-scale prospective studies support dual antiplatelet therapy for primary or secondary prevention of PAD.

Pharmacologic treatment of claudication The principle that peripheral vasodilators should relieve ischemic muscular beds has been addressed with various classes of agents (e.g., calcium channel blockers, alpha blockers, prostaglandin analogues). Effects of these agents on walking distance and claudication have been largely disappointing. The reason for failure of symptomatic relief may be related to the fact that peripheral vascular beds are already maximally dilated during physical exertion. Cilostazol, on the other hand, has shown a positive impact on claudication and walking distance. As phosphodiesterase inhibitor, it decreases smooth muscle tone and platelet aggregation. It is important to note that while it did significantly reduce symptoms of claudication and increase exercise tolerance, it did not have an effect on mortality [59]. According to the 2016 AHA/ACC guidelines on PAD management, 100 mg twice daily of cilostazol is recommended for relief of claudication and improvement in exercise tolerance. The rheologic agent pentoxifylline is no longer recommended as it has failed to demonstrate any benefit in the treatment of claudication [5].

Revascularization

Indications While most patients with symptomatic PAD generally are able to stabilize their disease or decline slowly and gradually with risk factor modification, 20–30% will have lifestyle-limiting or limb-threatening progression of their disease requiring invasive management [27]. Revascularization in PAD is indicated in lifestyle-limiting claudication or critical limb ischemia despite best medical therapy. The decision to perform an intervention should also be weighed against the individual patient's characteristics, i.e., comorbidities, activity level, age, and risks of allowing disease progression.

Quality of life and mobility may be negatively impacted by comorbidities such as arthritis, degenerative disk disease, and cardiac disease and, as such, must be taken into consideration when weighing the potential benefits of a vascular intervention. It is also important to note that objective measures of vascular disease correlate poorly with severity of disability. The ABI, for example, while typically an excellent diagnostic tool for the presence of PAD, has not been found to correlate with patients' subjective assessment of quality of life [60]. Therefore the decision to intervene should not be based solely on objective findings of disease severity, but rather on the patient's reported level of disability which can then be supported by these objective findings. Invasive interventions on minimally symptomatic or asymptomatic patients are unlikely to provide significant benefit and may cause harm. According to Trans-Atlantic Inter-Society Consensus statements, a revascularization procedure should "avoid a general anesthesia, pose a lesser systemic stress,

and have fewer serious complications" [61]. The decision to intervene and the choice of intervention should keep this affirmation in mind.

In multisegment disease, the most proximal significant lesion should be addressed first, which may relieve symptoms without distal interventions. Treatment of isolated infrapopliteal disease is not recommended for relief of intermittent claudication alone, given that crural disease causes pedal tissue loss, not claudication. That said, treatment of infrapopliteal lesions is indicated frequently to heal ulcers and improve quality of life. Even though these therapies often do not remain patent in the long-term, they can allow enough perfusion to heal tissue loss or to bridge a complicated patient for optimization before more definitive surgical bypass. For example, a patient with severe coronary artery disease with a depressed ejection fraction and poorly controlled diabetes presenting with an ischemic foot ulcer secondary to multisegment crural disease may not have the physiologic reserve to tolerate and maintain open bypass, but tibial angioplasty provides improved inflow and a chance for the ulcer to heal and avoid limb loss or sepsis while the patient undergoes coronary artery bypass and gains better glycemic control (Fig. 48.3).

Prior to intervention, a distal wound's healing potential must be taken into consideration. This information may already be obtained during the patient's diagnostic workup. Segmental pressures provide useful information regarding perfusion and healing potential. An ankle pressure of 70 mmHg is typically sufficient to heal a foot wound; however in diabetics 90 mmHg is ideal. A toe pressure of 40 mmHg in nondiabetics and 60 mmHg in diabetics is ideal [62]. Transcutaneous oxygen pressure measurements (TCOM) are also commonly utilized to determine tissue perfusion and wound healing potential. A TCOM greater than 40 mmHg is generally adequate for wound healing [63]. Values may also be decreased due to systemic perfusion issues such as heart failure and cardiac valvular disease.

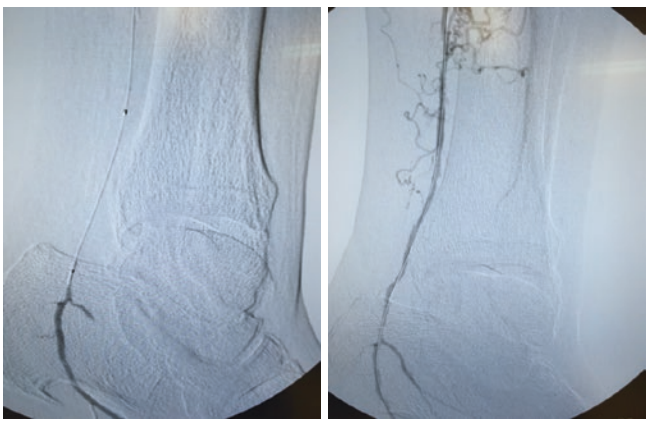


Fig. 48.3 Digital subtraction angiography (DSA) of crural occlusive disease (*left*) with restoration of inline flow to the foot after angioplasty of the posterior tibial artery (*right*)

Interventional challenges As noted previously, interventions on PAD in diabetes provide a particular challenge due in part to disease severity, presence of other comorbidities including CAD and nephropathy, immune suppression predisposing to wound infections, and more distal heavily calcified disease that is both difficult to traverse percutaneously as well as challenging to find a suitable distal bypass target. Presence of diabetes also is a risk factor for restenosis after revascularization procedures [64]. All the above pose challenges to both open and endovascular interventions.

Despite these challenges, revascularization in diabetics with CLI is not only feasible but also associated with lower early amputation rates and higher survival compared to late or no intervention. An analysis of 537 diabetics with CLI found early amputation rates to be significantly lower in those who underwent revascularization compared to those who did not (1.7% versus 51.9%), and those who did not undergo revascularization had severe CV comorbidities that precluded any type of intervention [65]. Therefore, barring any prohibitive systemic comorbidities, prompt intervention as soon as a patient fails best medical therapy is generally recommended in patients with CLI regardless of diabetes status, given that limb salvage is significantly worse without intervention [66]. A study of 376 patients with CLI comparing diabetics to nondiabetics found that early revascularization was associated with higher amputation-free survival in both groups compared to those with delayed interventions. The accelerated form of atherosclerosis and intimal hyperplasia at intervention sites in diabetics makes early intervention critical [67].

Endovascular versus open The choice of revascularization procedure is highly dependent on multiple factors including available resources, operator experience, and patient-specific characteristics such as location and severity of the lesion, presence of infection, activity level, comorbidities, compliance, availability of adequate conduit, and personal preference. Treatment guidelines from the American Heart Association and the revised Trans-Atlantic Inter-Society Consensus document recommend endovascular therapy as the first-line treatment of focal and moderate-length lesions, while bypass is reserved for diffuse or long-segment disease (Fig. 48.4) [68].

More recently, with the development of more advanced endovascular techniques in appropriately selected patients, the choice of revascularization modality has no significant effect on amputation-free survival or all-cause mortality [67]. A systematic review of 57 articles encompassing 9029 patients with diabetic foot ulcers and PAD who had undergone revascularization

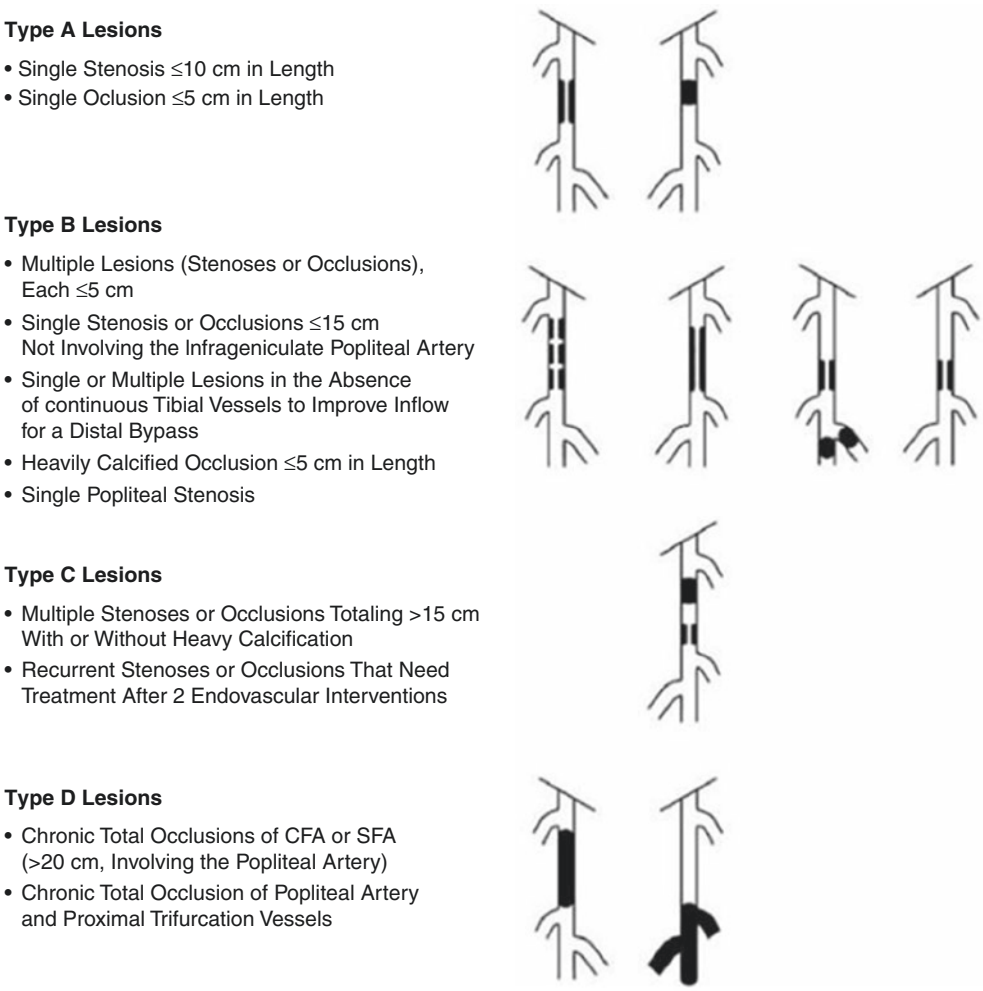


Fig. 48.4 Trans-Atlantic Inter-Society Consensus classifications of femoropopliteal disease

examined outcomes and characteristics of these patients. Ulcer healing rate was 60% at 12-month follow-up with any kind of revascularization. In three studies that utilized a PTA-first strategy, mortality and limb salvage rates were comparable to other studies that did not follow a PTA-first strategy, and there was a reported 11% failure rate of endovascular therapy requiring subsequent open bypass [66]. These studies contradict the older belief that endovascular interventions in diabetics were an exercise in futility because of early disappointing outcomes. In fact, in a study of 1188 diabetics admitted for CLI, PTA was performed as a first-line intervention in 993 consecutive patients. During a mean follow-up period of 26.2 months, primary patency at 5 years was 88%. The 30-day major amputation rate was 1.7%, and 5-year survival was 74%, demonstrating in this series a comparable result to open interventions [69].

Similar results were demonstrated in a European study. The Bypass Versus Angioplasty in Severe Ischemia of the Leg (BASIL) trial found that amputation-free survival and all-cause mortality were similar between PAD patients randomized to endovascular and open surgical arms; however the surgical arm had greater morbidity in the first year. Interestingly, after 2 years, the surgical arm did surpass the endovascular arm in terms of amputation-free survival. This study reinforced that while endovascular and surgical interventions had equivalent results in terms of revascularization and limb salvage, open bypass provided a more durable yet more morbid treatment option [70].

A single-center series in the United Kingdom found that with an aggressive multidisciplinary approach to the diabetic patient with CLI, they were able to yield similar limb salvage and overall survival rates as in the nondiabetic patients [71]. In a retrospective study of 1977 infrainguinal open bypass patients for CLI, in-hospital mortality rates were found to be equivalent between diabetics and nondiabetics. However rates of major adverse events (major amputations, renal insufficiency, MI, dysrhythmia, CHF, and wound infection) were significantly higher in diabetics [72]. The increased perioperative morbidity of bypass surgery must therefore be weighed against its superior long-term durability during the mindful patient selection process.

Percutaneous therapy Endovascular interventions continue to become more widely applicable. Initially only indicated for select, focal, short-segment disease, its use with more advancing techniques is broadening to long-segment total occlusions and multifocal disease.

Endovascular therapy options include percutaneous balloon angioplasty with or without stent placement, atherectomy, and any combination thereof. In general, endovascular procedures are well-tolerated and result in shorter hospital stays, more rapid recovery, and less wound complications with equivalent limb salvage rates compared to open surgical revascularization in most cases. That said, as noted, endovascular interventions are generally less durable than surgical bypass and more frequently require reintervention to maintain patency [73]. A study observing 101 diabetics with CLI who underwent endovascular infrapopliteal intervention noted successful PTA in 87.8%. The seven patients in whom PTA failed had heavily calcified, chronically totally occluded lesions that were not amenable to PTA nor to surgical bypass. The 1-year target vessel restenosis rate was 42%; however over a mean follow-up of 2.9 years, major amputations occurred in only 7%, and all-cause mortality was 5% [74]. The major amputation rate in this series is comparable to that in another series of 508 diabetics with CLI who underwent revascularization, with no distinction between endovascular and open, in which 10.3% underwent major lower extremity amputation [19]. These series demonstrate the utility of endovascular interventions in terms of limb salvage despite high rates of target vessel reocclusion. Diabetes has been shown to be a risk factor for lower long-term patency rates following endovascular revascularization [75]. However infrapopliteal endovascular interventions have a special consideration for diabetics beyond long-term maintenance of patency given that they are aimed at providing immediately improved perfusion to heal ulcers, overcome infection, and improve quality of life.

The 1-year primary patency rate of both endovascular and surgical interventions in diabetic CLI patients has been found to be comparable to that found in a meta-analysis of infrapopliteal PTA in CLI patients with no distinction between diabetic and nondiabetic patients [73]. Therefore, despite the more challenging nature of infrapopliteal diabetic disease, there does exist potential for noninferior patency, amputation, and survival rates with endovascular interventions in well-selected, aggressively treated patients. As mentioned, currently open interventions surpass percutaneous interventions only after 2 years in terms of amputation-free and overall survival, again reiterating the superior durability of surgical bypass (Fig. 48.5).

The technique of subintimal angioplasty wherein the intima is intentionally dissected and the lesion bypassed and balloon angioplastied subintimally has been used with some success in chronic total occlusions which either precluded or failed PTA or open bypass attempts. Technical success rates typically range from 80% to 90%, with notably worse outcomes in CLI compared to claudication, and primary patency rates at 1 year range from 56% to 70% [76]. Ulcer healing rates have been excellent as well, cited at 75% over a mean 23-month follow-up for a series of 60 consecutive diabetic patients with CLI who were deemed unfit for surgical bypass. This is comparable to ulcer healing rates with open bypass surgery [77]. A recent study in China examined the outcomes for subintimal angioplasty in diabetics with chronic distal (dorsalis pedis or plantar artery) occlusive CLI who were deemed poor candidates for open bypass or PTA. Thirty-seven such patients underwent subintimal angioplasty with an 83% success rate and 95% 1-year limb salvage rate. Complications occurred in 13% of these patients, the most common being vessel perforation followed by failed reentry [78]. Further studies comparing subintimal angioplasty to PTA and to patients who are suitable for surgical bypass are needed; however this technique may be particularly well-suited for ischemic tissue loss due to distal calcified disease in complicated diabetic patients who previously had no treatment options outside of amputation.

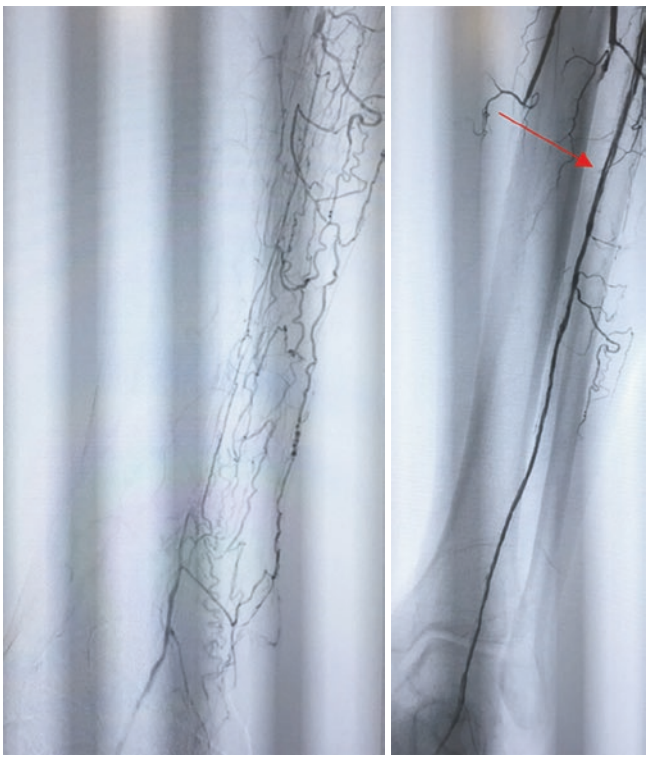


Fig. 48.5 Spidery collateralizations due to infrapopliteal occlusive disease (*left*). Note their disappearance after angioplasty (*right*) of the anterior tibial artery (*arrow*)

Critical to stent patency is the maintenance of lifestyle modifications and antiplatelet therapy. The MIRROR study, a randomized, double-blinded study of 80 patients who

underwent percutaneous intervention (with and without stent placement), studied dual antiplatelet therapy (DAT) with aspirin and clopidogrel versus aspirin alone. Primary endpoints were direct measurements of two platelet activation factors from whole blood samples taken from subjects after loading doses and just before intervention in an ex vivo model (Chandler-Loop vessel) with a nitinol stent to mimic peripheral arterial intervention. Concentrations of B-thromboglobulin and CD40L, two specific markers of platelet activity, were significantly lower in the DAT group. Not only was the biochemical analysis suggestive of better antiplatelet activity in the DAT arm, but the appearance of the nitinol stents under electron microscopy also indicated less platelet and fibrin adhesion in the DAT arm. Interestingly, 30% of the DAT arm participants were found to be clopidogrel resistant, and stents of these participants showed the greatest platelet and fibrin adhesions under electron microscopy [79]. The findings of this study favor DAT over aspirin monotherapy in PAD after endovascular stent therapy.

A review of 14 randomized trials of antiplatelet therapies around the time of peripheral vascular interventions concluded that aspirin should be administered 6–24 hours before PTA and continued afterward to reduce periprocedural thromboembolic events. Regarding DAT versus aspirin alone, a commonly adopted practice was noted to be indefinite use of aspirin as well as 4 weeks of post-procedural clopidogrel given the benefit noted in multiple studies with loading doses of aspirin and clopidogrel [80]. However more long-term studies comparing dual versus monotherapy as well as long-term outcomes with newer antiplatelet agents are needed prior to making recommendation changes regarding antiplatelet therapy in PAD.

Open surgery Bypass surgery is the gold standard intervention for symptomatic PAD, and while it is being supplanted by the rapidly growing use of endovascular therapies, its efficacy in restoring inflow and relieving claudication symptoms and salvaging limbs is undisputed. In fact, despite the growing popularity of utilizing endovascular-first treatment algorithms, a recent retrospective analysis found that in comparing propensity-matched lower extremity bypass versus endovascular intervention for CLI, the former was associated with a significantly lower rate of 30-day major adverse limb events and no higher rate of 30-day major adverse cardiovascular events [81]. Therefore it cannot be dismissed as an unjustifiably risky, invasive intervention in appropriately selected patients. Lower extremity bypass also remains the solution for lesions that are not traversable percutaneously or have failed previous percutaneous interventions. Its use is limited by severe systemic illness (e.g., severe heart failure) that may pose unacceptable operative risk, lack of adequate bypass conduit, and presence of active infection or sepsis (a commonality in diabetic CLI patients).

The best outcomes for open bypass surgery are obtained in relatively robust patients with minimal comorbidities using a greater saphenous vein as the conduit. Conduit choices are as follows in order of preference: ipsilateral greater saphenous vein, contralateral greater saphenous vein, composite (spliced) vein grafts, lesser saphenous vein or arm vein, and nonautologous vein or synthetic graft. Up to 40% of bypass candidates lack adequate ipsilateral greater saphenous vein conduit and require an alternative conduit choice.

Again there exists a correlation between diabetes and treatment complications. In a cohort study of 6112 individuals that underwent open lower extremity bypass, stratified by indication for intervention, insulin-dependent diabetes was associated with a significant 1.27 odds ratio of readmission, the majority (62.9%) of these admissions being for wound complications. This is unsurprising given diabetics' propensity for wound infection [82]. This further emphasizes the importance of perioperative glycemic control in diabetic PAD patients.

Interestingly, diabetes has not been shown to be an independent predictor of decreased bypass graft patency [83]. This finding has been demonstrated in multiple studies, including the Veterans Affairs National Surgical Quality Improvement Program (VA NSQUIP) which identified 14,788 patients who underwent infrainguinal arterial bypass procedures and found that diabetes was in fact significantly protective from early graft failure [84]. The PREVENT III trial, a double-blinded randomized controlled trial of 1404 patients comparing ex vivo application of edifoligide to vein grafts versus placebo just prior to lower extremity bypass for the prevention of graft failure, found that diabetics, while significantly more likely to present with tissue loss, did not have a higher risk of graft failure at any stage through the 12-month follow-up period [85]. Although diabetes in PAD is independently associated with a higher risk of amputation and mortality, it is not a risk factor for graft failure.

A successful graft depends on adequate inflow, outflow, and conduit quality. Bypass graft failure is classically described in three phases: early (0–30 days), intermediate (30 days to 2 years), and late (beyond 2 years). Early failure is typically attributed to technical factors, such as poor conduit, retained venous valves, technical error, and loss of inflow/outflow. Intermediate failure is secondary to intimal hyperplasia. Some degree of intimal hyperplasia occurs in all grafts; however where and why this becomes pathologic and flow-limiting is not well understood. There is a propensity for this to occur in areas of endothelial trauma (e.g., where a valvulotome was utilized), which strongly suggests that this process is related to a dysfunctional endothelium. Late failure is seen as a progression of the primary atherosclerotic process causing graft narrowing as well as deficiency of inflow and/or outflow.

The incidence of vein graft failure is the highest in the first few postoperative days (4–10%), again related to technical failures. This incidence decreases to 1% per month for the first year, and then it further declines to 2–4% per year thereafter. Given this distribution, theoretically early surveillance with duplex ultrasonography can detect stenosis before progression to occlusion; however this is not a certainty. A prospective study of 68 lower extremity vein bypasses in diabetics performed rigorous postoperative surveillance with duplex ultrasonography to determine if this was able to predict graft failure and MALEs. After a mean follow-up of 12 months, duplex US was found to be sensitive for future graft thrombosis and amputation; it was unable to detect early stenosis [86].

Although no concrete surveillance schedule is recommended, the literature suggests some variation of a duplex scan every 3–6 months for the first 1–2 years after bypass, with a follow-up arteriography for abnormal findings. Duplex scan is also indicated specifically if a patient has return of claudication symptoms, ABI decreases by 0.2 from highest postoperative value, or a previously palpable pulse diminishes or disappears. A peak systolic velocity (PSV) greater than 180 cm/sec or velocity ratio (Vr) greater than 2 suggests a focal stenosis, while a mean graft velocity less than 45 cm/sec indicates a low flow state that is conducive to graft thrombosis. According to Tinder et al., a PSV greater than 300 cm/sec or a Vr greater than 3.5 indicates graft revision, and with appropriately tailored surveillance according to an individual graft's risk profile and postoperative duplex scan, this early detection leads to reintervention that prolongs graft patency [87]. While the most recent TASC II guidelines do not recommend routine duplex ultrasonography for lower extremity bypass (instead they support clinical surveillance through palpation and ABI measurements every 6 months for at least the first 2 years after bypass), multiple studies have demonstrated that surveillance with duplex ultrasonography detects early lesions before progression to thrombosis [88, 89]. Tinder et al. found that more aggressive duplex surveillance for those bypasses with high-risk characteristics or an abnormal first postoperative scan was associated with higher primary assisted patency and lower graft failure rates [90].

Patency, while important as a metric of durability, is not the only measure of a revascularization's success. Likewise limb salvage and mortality, while the typical primary outcomes, are not the only measures of patient satisfaction and quality of life. The PREVENT III trial established quality of life as a secondary endpoint and noted that after lower extremity bypass, quality of life as assessed by the Vascular Quality of Life Questionnaire improved progressively at 0, 3, and 12 months postoperatively [85]. Another study comparing objective measures of lower extremity function and patient perceptions of quality of life found that while objective measures such as knee flexion and extension, 6-minute walk distance, walking speed, and balance showed absolute improvements, none reached statistical significance. Despite this, there was a significant improvement of subjective quality of life and pain perception postoperatively [91].

Diabetes and PAD are not only frequently comorbid but also result in an accelerated natural history and more complicated outcomes and mortality after intervention. Therefore treatment of these patients begins with an appreciation of the significance and risk involved with their comorbidity and the importance of early intervention with lifestyle and risk factor modification. That said, once lower extremity disease has progressed to the point of requiring an invasive intervention, the presence of diabetes should not deter attempts at revascularization. Treatment options have and continue to become more sophisticated, and with an aggressive multidisciplinary approach, they have the potential to yield noninferior outcomes in the diabetic population (Fig. 48.6).

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following is *not* a known risk factor for atherosclerotic peripheral arterial disease?
   (a) Smoking
   (b) Age
   (c) Diabetes
   (d) Trauma
   (e) Hyperhomocysteinemia
2. According to NHANES data, what is the prevalence of peripheral arterial disease in the general population?
   (a) 1%
   (b) 6%
   (c) 29%
   (d) 50%
   (e) 85%
3. Which of the following constitutes an abnormal ankle-brachial index?
   (a) 1.0
   (b) 0.6
   (c) 1.5
   (d) A and B
   (e) B and C
4. History and physical exam findings of peripheral arterial disease include all of the following *except*:
   (a) Lower extremity claudication
   (b) Diminished pulse exam
   (c) Hair loss
   (d) Dependent rubor
   (e) Pain with lower extremity elevation
5. Diabetics with peripheral arterial disease
   (a) Should aim for a hemoglobin A1c level of 5%

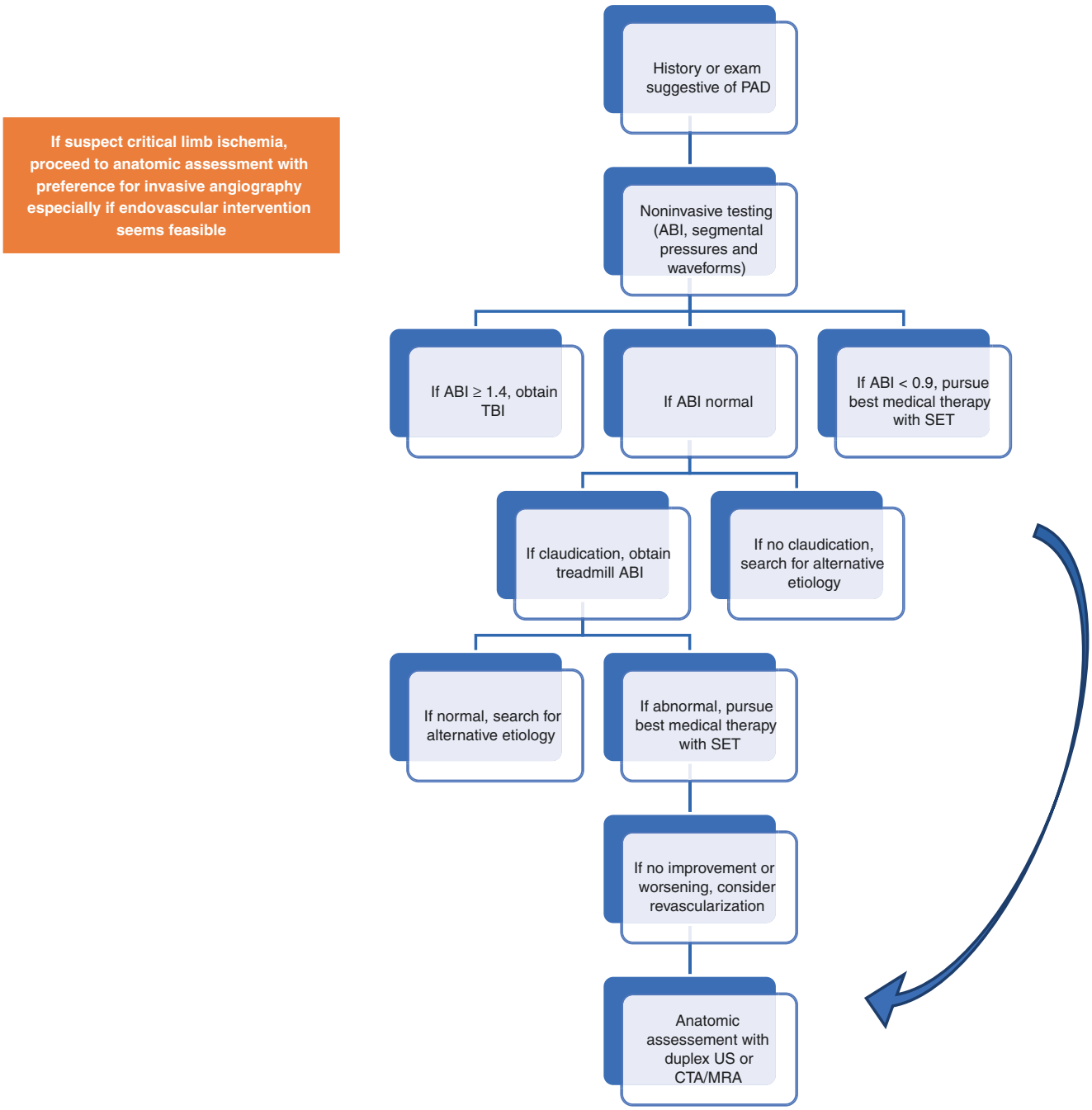


Fig. 48.6 Algorithm for suspected PAD

(b) Are at higher risk for limb loss than nondiabetics with peripheral arterial disease
(c) Should have regular CT angiograms to monitor their disease burden
(d) Have reliable pulse exams for detecting the presence of flow-limiting lesions
(e) Do not benefit from supervised exercise therapy programs because of the risk of falling

6. Critical limb ischemia
   (a) Is defined by the presence of rest pain and/or tissue loss secondary to a flow-limiting lesion
   (b) Represents the end stage of peripheral arterial disease
   (c) Risk increases with comorbid diabetes
   (d) Can be masked by diabetic neuropathy
   (e) All of the above

7. Constitutive production of nitric oxide by a functional endothelium confers upon the vessel antiplatelet, antiatherogenic, vasodilatory, and anti-inflammatory properties.
   (a) True
   (b) False
8. Pharmacotherapy for intermittent claudication has been shown to be effective in reversing atherosclerotic disease progression.
   (a) True
   (b) False
9. Percutaneous intervention for lower extremity peripheral arterial disease is:
   (a) Reserved only for frail patients unfit for the morbidity of open surgical bypass
   (b) Absolutely contraindicated in cases of completely occlusive lesions
   (c) Less durable than open bypass in the long-term
   (d) Not recommended in diabetic patients due to inferior outcomes
   (e) Associated with higher amputation rates compared to open surgical bypass
10. Open surgical bypass
   (a) Is reserved only for severe critical limb ischemia
   (b) Requires adequate inflow and outflow as well as an appropriate conduit
   (c) Can achieve equivalent results using autogenous vein and synthetic grafts
   (d) Is definitive treatment and does not require regular surveillance

Correct Answers

1. (d) Trauma
2. (b) 6%
3. (e) B and C
4. (e) Pain with lower extremity elevation
5. (b) Are at higher risk for limb loss than nondiabetics with peripheral arterial disease
6. (e) All of the above
7. (a) True
8. (b) False
9. (c) Less durable than open bypass in the long-term
10. (b) Requires adequate inflow and outflow as well as an appropriate conduit

References

1. Al-Delaimy WK, et al. Effect of type 2 diabetes and its duration on the risk of peripheral arterial disease among men. Am J Med. 2004;116(4):236–40.
2. Adler AI, et al. UKPDS 59: hyperglycemia and other potentially modifiable risk factors for peripheral vascular disease in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2002;25(5):894–9.
3. Gonzalez-Clemente JM, et al. Cardiovascular risk factor management is poorer in diabetic patients with undiagnosed peripheral arterial disease than in those with known coronary heart disease or cerebrovascular disease. Results of a nationwide study in tertiary diabetes centres. Diabet Med. 2007;25(4):427–34.
4. Selvin E, Erlinger TP. Prevalence of and risk factors for peripheral arterial disease in the United States: results from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1999–2000. Circulation. 2004;110(6):738–43.
5. Gerhard-Herman MD, et al. 2016 AHA/ACC guideline on the management of patients with lower extremity peripheral arterial disease: executive summary. Circulation. 2016;135(12):e686–725.
6. Wu CK, et al. Association of lower glomerular filtration rate and albuminuria with peripheral arterial disease. Atherosclerosis. 2010;209(1):230–4.
7. Resnick HE, et al. Relationship of high and low ankle brachial index to all-cause and cardiovascular disease mortality. Circulation. 2004;109(6):733–9.
8. Selvarajah S, et al. Preoperative smoking is associated with early graft failure after infrainguinal bypass surgery. J Vasc Surg. 2014;59(5):1308–14.
9. Klonizakis M, et al. Effect of diabetes on the cutaneous microcirculation of the feet in patients with intermittent claudication. Clin Hemorheol Microcirc. 2015;61(3):439–44.
10. Young MJ, et al. Medial arterial calicification in the feet of diabetic patients and matched non-diabetic control subjects. Diabetologia. 1993;36(7):615–21.
11. Brooks B, et al. TBI or not TBI: that is the question. Is it better to measure toe pressure than ankle pressure in diabetic patients? Diabet Med. 2001;18(7):528–32.
12. Hoyer C, et al. The toe-brachial index in the diagnosis of peripheral arterial disease. J Vasc Surg. 2013;58(1):231–8.
13. Sonter J, et al. The predictive capacity of toe blood pressure and the toe brachial index for foot wound healing and amputation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Wound Pract Res. 2014;22:208–20.
14. Tehan PE, et al. Non-invasive vascular assessment in the foot with diabetes: sensitivity and specificity of the ankle brachial index, toe brachial index and continuous wave Doppler for detecting peripheral arterial disease. J Diabetes Complicat. 2015;30(1):155–60.
15. Ro du H, Moon HJ, Kim JH, Lee DY. Photoplethysmography and continuous-wave doppler ultrasound as a complementary test to ankle-brachial index in detection of stenotic peripheral arterial disease. Agiology. 2013;64:314–20.
16. Sharafuddin MJ, Marjan AE. Current status of carbon dioxide angiography. J Vasc Surg. 2017;66(2):618–37.
17. Paneni F, et al. Diabetes and vascular disease: pathophysiology, clinical consequences, and medical therapy: part I. Eur Heart J. 2013;34(31):2436–46.
18. Davis WA, et al. Predictors, consequences and cost of diabetes-related lower extremity amputation complicating type 2 diabetes: The Fremantle Diabetes Study. Diabetologia. 2006;49(11):2634–41.
19. Faglia E, et al. Incidence of critical limb ischemia and amputation outcome in contralateral limb in diabetic patients hospitalized for unilateral critical limb ischemia during 1999–2003 and followed-up until 2005. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2007;77(3):445–50.
20. Aquino R, et al. Natural history of claudication: long-term serial follow-up study of 1244 claudicants. J Vasc Surg. 2001;34(6):962–70.
21. Jude EB, et al. Peripheral arterial disease in diabetic and nondiabetic patients. A comparison of severity and outcome. Diabetes Care. 2001;24(8):1433–7.

22. Mueller T, Hinterreiter F, Poelz W, Haltmayer M, Dieplinger B. Mortality rates at 10 years are higher in diabetic than in non-diabetic patients with chronic lower extremity peripheral arterial disease. Vasc Med. 2016;21(5):445–52.
23. Icks A, et al. Time-dependent impact of diabetes on mortality in patients after major lower extremity amputation. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(6):1350–4.
24. Zhang Y, et al. Glycosylated hemoglobin in relationship to cardiovascular outcomes and death in patients with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2012;7(8):e42551.
25. Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes Study Group, et al. Effects of intensive glucose lowering in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358(24):2545–59.
26. Inzucchi SE, et al. Management of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes: a patient-centered approach: position statement of the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD). Diabetes Care. 2012;35(6):1364–79.
27. Society for Vascular Surgery Lower Extremity Guidelines Writing Group, et al. Society for Vascular Surgery practice guidelines for atherosclerotic occlusive disease of the lower extremities: management of asymptomatic disease and claudication. J Vasc Surg. 2015;61(3 Suppl):2S–41S.
28. Willigendael EM, et al. Influence of smoking on incidence and prevalence of peripheral arterial disease. J Vasc Surg. 2004;40(6):1158–65.
29. Armstrong EJ, et al. Smoking cessation is associated with decreased mortality and improved amputation-free survival among patients with symptomatic peripheral artery disease. J Vasc Surg. 2014;60(6):1565–71.
30. Gabel J, et al. Smoking habits of patients undergoing treatment for intermittent claudication in the Vascular Quality Initiative. Ann Vasc Surg. 2016;44:261–8.
31. Goldberg RJ, et al. Physicians' attitudes and reported practices toward smoking intervention. J Cancer Educ. 1993;8(2):133–9.
32. Newhall K, et al. Impact and duration of brief surgeon-delivered smoking cessation advice on attitudes regarding nicotine dependence and tobacco harms for patients with peripheral arterial disease. Ann Vasc Surg. 2017;38:113–21.
33. Hennrikus D, et al. Effectiveness of a smoking cessation program for peripheral artery disease patients: a randomized controlled trial. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2010;56(25):2105–12.
34. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. The seventh report of the Joint national committee on prevention, detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood pressure. s.l. : National Institutes of Health; 2004.
35. Treatment of Mild Hypertension Research Group. Treatment of Mild Hypertension Study. A randomized, placebo-controlled trial of a nutriional-hygienic regimen along with various drug monotherapies. Arch Intern Med. 1991;151(7):1413–23.
36. Radack K, Deck C. Beta-adrenergic blocker therapy does not worsen intermittent claudication in subjects with peripheral arterial disease. A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Arch Intern Med. 1991;151(9):1769–76.
37. Ahimastos AA, et al. Effect of ramipril on walking times and quality of life among patients with peripheral artery disease and intermittent claudication. A randomized controlled trial. JAMA. 2013;309(5):453–60.
38. Pedersen TR, Kjekshus J, Berg K, Haghfelt T, Faergeman O, Faergeman G, et al. Randomised trial of cholesterol lowering in 4444 patients with coronary heart disease: the Scandinavian Simvastatin Survival Study (4S). Atheroscler Suppl 2004;5:81–87.
39. Heart Protection Study Collaborative Group. Randomized trial of the effects of cholesterol-lowering with simvastatin on peripheral vascular and other major vascular outcomes in 20,536 people with peripheral arterial disease and other high-risk conditions. J Vasc Surg. 2007;45(4):645–54.
40. Takemoto M, Liao JK. Pleiotropic effects of 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme areductase inhibitors. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol. 2001;21(11):1712–9.
41. McDermott MM, et al. Statin use and leg functioning in patients with and without lower-extremity peripheral arterial disease. Circulation. 2003;107(5):757–61.
42. Aronow WS, et al. Effect of simvastatin versus placebo on treadmill exercise time until the onset of intermittent claudication in older patients with peripheral arterial disease at six months and at one year after treatment. Am J Cardiol. 2003;92(6):711–2.
43. Nordanstig J, et al. Six-minute walk test closely correlated to "real-life" outdoor walking capacity and quality of life in patients with intermittent claudication. J Vasc Surg. 2014;60(2):404–9.
44. Rooke TW, Hirsch ST, Misra S, Sidawi AN, Beckman JA, Findeiss Lk et al. 2011 ACCF/AHA focused update of the guideline for the management of patients with peripheral artery disease (updating the 2005 guideline): a report of the ACCF/AHA Task Force on Practice Guidelines. Circulation. 2011;58:2020–45.
45. Masters RK, et al. The impact of obesity on US mortality levels: the importance of age and cohort factors in population estimates. Am J Public Health. 2013;103(10):1895–901.
46. Berrington de Gonzalez A, et al. Body-mass index and mortality among 1.46 million white adults. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(23):2211–9.
47. Farah BQ, et al. Factors associated with sedentary behavior in patients with intermittent claudication. Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg. 2016;52(6):809–14.
48. Dias RM, et al. Obesity decreases time to claudication and delays post-exercise hemodynamic recovery in elderly peripheral arterial disease patients. Gerontology. 2009;55(1):21–6.
49. Pinto D, et al. The association between sedentary time and quality of life from the Osteoarthritis Initiative: who might benefit most from treatment? Arch Phys Med Rehabil. 2017;98(12):2485–90.
50. Garg PK, et al. Physical activity during daily life and mortality in patients with peripheral arterial disease. Circulation. 2006;114(3):242–8.
51. Regensteiner JG, et al. Exercise training improves functional status in patients with peripheral arterial disease. J Vasc Surg. 1996;23(1):104–15.
52. Murphy TP, et al. Supervised exercise, stent revascularization, or medical therapy for claudication due to aortoiliac peripheral artery disease. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2015;65 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2014.12.043.
53. Gommans LN, et al. Safety of supervised exercise therapy in patients with intermittent claudication. J Vasc Surg. 2015;61(2):512–518.e2.
54. Collaborative overview of randomised trials of antiplatelet therapy II: maintenance of vascular graft or arterial patency by antiplatelet therapy. Antiplatelet Trialists' Collaboration. Br Med J. 1994;308(6922):159–68.
55. Belch J, et al. The prevention of progression of arterial disease and diabetes (POPADAD) trial: factorial randomised placebo controlled trial of aspirin and antioxidants in patients with diabetes and asymptomatic peripheral arterial disease. Br Med J. 2008;a1840:337.
56. Kokoska LA, et al. Aspirin for primary prevention of cardiovascular disease in patients with diabetes: a meta-analysis. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2016;120:31–9.
57. Pasala T, et al. Aspirin resistance predicts adverse cardiovascular events. Tex Heart Inst J. 2016;43(6):482–7.
58. CAPRIE Steering Committee. A randomised, blinded, trial of clopidogrel versus aspirin in patients at risk of ischaemic events. Lancet. 1996;348(9038):1329–39.
59. Regensteiner JG, et al. Effect of cilostazol on treadmill walking, community-based walking ability, and health-related quality of life in patients with intermittent claudication due to peripheral

arterial disease: meta-analysis of six randomized controlled trials. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2002;50(12):1939–46.
60. Feinglass J, McCarthy WJ, Slavensky R, Manheim LM, Martin GJ. Effect of lower extremity blood pressure on physical functioning in patients who have intermittent claudication. The Chicago Claudication Outcomes Research Group. J Vasc Surg. 1996;24(4):503–11.
61. TransAtlantic Inter-Society Consensus. Management of peripheral arterial disease. Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg 2000:38:208–90.
62. Toursarkissian B. Arterial ulcers: evaluation and treatment. Personal communication.
63. Ruangsetakit C, et al. Transcutaneous oxygen tension: a useful predictor of ulcer healing in critical limb ischaemia. J Wound Care. 2010;19(5):202–6.
64. Capek P, et al. Femoropopliteal angioplasty – factors influencing long-term success. Circulation. 1991;83(2 Suppl):I70–80.
65. Faglia E, et al. Early and five-year amputation and survival rate of diabetic patients with critical limb ischemia: data of a cohort study of 564 patients. Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg. 2006;32(5):484–90.
66. Hinchliffe RJ, et al. Effectiveness of revascularization of the ulcerated foot in patients with diabetes and peripheral artery disease: a systematic review. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2016;32(Suppl 1):136–44.
67. Dick F, et al. Surgical or endovascular revascularization in patients with critical limb ischemia: influence of diabetes mellitus on clinical outcome. J Vasc Surg. 2007;45(4):751–61.
68. Norgren L, et al. Inter-Society consensus for the management of peripheral arterial disease (TASC II). J Vasc Surg. 2007;45(Suppl S):S5–67.
69. Faglia E, et al. Peripheral angioplasty as the first-choice revascularization procedure in diabetic patients with critical limb ischemia: prospective study of 993 consecutive patients hospitalized and followed between 1999 and 2003. Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg. 2005;29(6):620–7.
70. Bradbury AW, et al. Bypass versus angioplasty in severe ischaemia of the leg (BASIL) trial: an intention-to-treat analysis of amputation-free survival and overall survival in patients randomized to a bypass surgery-first or a balloon angioplasty-first revascularization strategy. J Vasc Surg. 2010;51(5 Suppl):5S–17S.
71. Awad S, et al. The impact of diabetes on current revascularisation practice and clinical outcome in patients with critical lower limb ischaemia. Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg. 2006;32(1):51–9.
72. Wallaert JB, et al. The impact of diabetes on postoperative outcomes following lower-extremity bypass surgery. J Vasc Surg. 2012;56(5):1317–23.
73. Romiti M, et al. Meta-analysis of infrapopliteal angioplasty for chronic critical limb ischemia. J Vasc Surg. 2008;47(5):975–81.
74. Ferraresi R, et al. Long-term outcomes after angioplasty of isolated, below-the-knee arteries in diabetic patients with critical limb ischemia. Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg. 2009;37(3):336–42.
75. Clark TW, et al. Predictors of long-term patency after femoropopliteal angioplasty: results from the STAR registry. J Vasc Interv Radiol. 2001;12(8):923–33.
76. Markose G, et al. Subintimal angioplasty for femoro-popliteal occlusive disease. J Vasc Surg. 2010;52(5):1410–6.
77. Bargellini I, et al. Primary infrainguinal subintimal angioplasty in diabetic patients. Cardiovasc Interv Radiol. 2008;31(4):713–22.
78. Zhu YQ, et al. Subintimal angioplasty for below-the-ankle arterial occlusions in diabetic patients with chronic critical limb ischemia. J Endovasc Ther. 2009;16(5):604–12.
79. Tepe G, et al. Management of peripheral arterial interventions with mono or dual antiplatelet therapy – the MIRROR study: a randomised and double-blinded clinical trial. Eur Radiol. 2012;22(9):1998–2006.
80. Visona A, et al. Antithrombotic treatment before and after peripheral artery percutaneous angioplasty. Blood Transfus. 2009;7(1):18–23.
81. Mehaffey JH, et al. Lower extremity bypass for critical limb ischemia decreases major adverse limb events with equivalent cardiac risk compared with endovascular intervention. J Vasc Surg. 2017;66(4):1109–1116.e1.
82. Jones CE, et al. Readmission rates after lower extremity bypass vary significantly by surgical indication. J Vasc Surg. 2016;64(2):458–64.
83. Monahan TS, Owens CD. Risk factors for lower-extremity vein graft failure. Semin Vasc Surg. 2009;22(4):216–26.
84. Singh N, et al. Factors associated with early failure of infrainguinal lower extremity arterial bypass. J Vasc Surg. 2008;47(3):556–61.
85. Conte MS, et al. Results of PREVENT III: A multicenter, randomized trial of edifoligide for the prevention of vein graft failure in lower extremity bypass surgery. J Vasc Surg. 2006;43(4):742–51.
86. Toursarkissian B, et al. Early duplex-derived hemodynamic parameters after lower extremity bypass in diabetics: implications for mid-term outcomes. Ann Vasc Surg. 2002;16(5):601–7.
87. Tinder CN, Bandyk DF. Detection of imminent vein graft occlusion: what is the optimal surveillance program? Semin Vasc Surg. 2009;22(4):252–60.
88. Mattos MA, et al. Does correction of stenoses identified with color duplex scanning improve infrainguinal graft patency? J Vasc Surg. 1993;17(1):54–64.
89. Mills JL, et al. The importance of routine surveillance of distal bypass grafts with duplex scanning: a study of 379 reversed vein grafts. J Vasc Surg. 1990;12(4):379–86.
90. Tinder CN, et al. Efficacy of duplex ultrasound surveillance after infrainguinal vein bypass may be enhanced by identification of characteristics predictive of graft stenosis development. J Vasc Surg. 2008;48(3):613–8.
91. Landry GJ, et al. Objective measurement of lower extremity function and quality of life after surgical revascularization for critical lower extremity ischemia. J Vasc Surg. 2014;60(1):136–42.

Ophthalmic Disease in Diabetes

49

José Henriques, Sara Vaz-Pereira, João Nascimento, Marco Medeiros, Susana Henriques, and Paulo Caldeira Rosa

Abbreviations

DM	Diabetes mellitus
DME	Diabetic macular edema
DR	Diabetic retinopathy
DRS	Diabetic Retinopathy Study
ESR	Erythrocyte sedimentation rate
ETDRS	Early Treatment Diabetic Retinopathy Study
NPDR	Non-proliferative diabetic retinopathy
PDR	Proliferative diabetic retinopathy
PEDF	Pigment epithelium-derived factor
RCP	Reactive C protein
RDR	Referable diabetic retinopathy
VA	Visual acuity
VEGF	Vascular endothelial growth factor
VTDR	Vision-threatening DR

Introduction

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a chronic multisystem metabolic disease that/which is a consequent effect of persistent hyperglycemia and causes deleterious effects in the micro- and macrovasculature [2–5]. It is expected that its incidence and prevalence will continue to increase globally, making it one of the great pandemics of the twenty-first century [6–9].

The eye is one of the main organs affected by this pathology, mainly causing diabetic retinopathy (DR), which is one of the most important microvascular complications of DM [3, 4, 10]. DR has been reported to be one of the leading causes of blindness in the working age population [11–16]. From 1990 to 2010, in England, as a result of the policies of screening and early treatment, DR is no longer considered as the leading cause of blindness and moderate to severe vision loss [17]. Although less known for non-ophthalmologists, there is a spectrum of eye disease related with diabetes that can lead to eye problems or even loss of vision [1, 18–20].

Epidemiology of Diabetes and Diabetic Retinopathy

The diabetic patients are at 25 times more risk of blindness compared to nondiabetic individuals. This was documented

This chapter is an update based on a review article [1]: *Diabetic Eye Disease* published originally on Acta Médica Portuguesa. Permission was properly obtained from Acta Médica Portuguesa.

J. Henriques (✉)
Retina Department – Surgical Retina Unit – Dr. Gama Pinto Ophthalmology Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

Lisbon Retina Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

S. Vaz-Pereira
Department of Ophthalmology, Hospital de Santa Maria, Lisbon, Portugal

Department of Ophthalmology, Faculty of Medicine, Universidade de Lisboa, Lisbon, Portugal

J. Nascimento
Lisbon Retina Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

M. Medeiros
Lisbon Retina Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

Retina Department – Surgical Retina Unit, (CHLC) Centro Hospitalar Lisboa Central, Lisbon, Portugal

NOVA Medical School, Universidade NOVA de Lisboa, Lisbon, Portugal

Portuguese Diabetes Association (APDP), Lisbon, Portugal

S. Henriques
Hospital Doutor Fernando da Fonseca, Amadora, Portugal

P. C. Rosa
Lisbon Retina Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

Retina Department – Medical Retina Unit – Dr. Gama Pinto Ophthalmology Institute, Lisbon, Portugal

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_49

by a study that estimated untreated proliferative diabetic retinopathy (PDR) results in an irreversible visual loss in 50% of individuals at 5 years after diagnosis [21]. The impact of this visual dysfunction is globally recognized [14, 18, 21, 22], involving several countries like the UK that has set up screening programs for early detection and treatment of DR [21]. In the literature, although there is some heterogeneity in the epidemiological data on DR [16, 18], there is an agreement on the fact that this is a current problem with a strong public health impact.

A meta-analysis involving 35 studies carried out worldwide from 1980 to 2008 provided data from 22,896 individuals with diabetes. The estimated global prevalence of DR was 34.6%: 6.96% for PDR, 6.81% for diabetic macular edema (DME), and 10.2% for vision threatening DR (VTDR) [16].

Studies in the European population showed a prevalence of DR of 36.5–93.6% in type 1 diabetes, 16.3–34.2% in type 2, and 16.3–48.8% in mixed cohorts [14], with VTDR prevalence estimated between 6.7% and 34.9% [14].

In population-based studies, the prevalence of DME among patients with type 1 diabetes was between 4.2% and 7.9%. In patients with type 2 diabetes, it was between 1.4% and 12.8% [14]. Non-stereoscopic fundus photography was used in most of the studies, which affected the accuracy of DME assessment. About half of the studies defined macular edema using the clinically significant macular edema (CSME) criteria, and hence, only the more severe spectrum of DME was captured in these studies [14]. A Cochrane review of the prevalence of DME as assessed by optical coherence tomography (OCT) has found a large range of prevalence rates (19–65%) [14]. This should be considered as a new reference standard for assessment of DME, even in some screening settings [23].

Ling et al. [22] indicated a DR prevalence of 49% in type 1 diabetes and 24.2% in type 2 diabetes in the UK, with a global prevalence of 21.4% for NPDR, 2.8% for PDR, and 6.1% for CSME.

An important topic in epidemiological DR-related studies is the prevalence of VTDR – either PDR and/or DME. According to a meta-analysis study by Yau et al. (2012), VTDR prevalence was found to be 10.2% globally. These patients need referral and urgent treatment. Some of the studies do a segmentation of the two forms of VTDR [14].

Variability in the Results of Epidemiological Studies

The analysis results of multiple studies based on a review of Lee et al. [14] stated that the prevalence varies depending on the geography and studies reflecting the precociousness DR or its late identification with more advanced disease. Also, there is a difference between diabetes type 1 and type 2. Depending on the epidemiological studies performed on patients, those who visited hospitals showed a higher prevalence of VTDR compared to those from the community (population-based) who showed lower prevalence of DME and PDR. The wide range of prevalence observed may also be due to the differences in healthcare systems and socioeconomic factors between the studied populations. However, conclusions cannot be drawn as key characteristics, such as known duration of diabetes, which vary significantly between the sampled populations [14]. The studies performed in newly diagnosed patients have a lower prevalence of DR since it increases with the duration of the diabetes [14, 24]. It is also higher in Western countries due to urbanization, diet, obesity, and sedentarism [14]. Eastern populations (except in the surrounding region of Singapore) and the less urbanized and industrialized rural areas have a lower prevalence [14].

Incidence and Progression of DR

In the Wisconsin study, Klein et al. [25] evaluated the progression of DR in individuals with type 1 diabetes over a period of 25 years. The authors have documented a cumulative progression rate of DR of 83%, a progression to PDR of 42%, and improvement of DR in 18%. In addition, the cumulative incidence of macular edema and clinically significant macular edema was 29% and 17%, respectively.

In Portugal, Dutra Medeiros et al. [26] proceeded to assess the incidence and progression of DR in a prospective population-based cohort of type 2 diabetics with 5 years of follow-up. Referral diabetic retinopathy (RDR) was set to all patients classified with moderate to severe NPDR or PDR, with or without maculopathy or mild NPDR with maculopathy (a little more comprehensive than set to VTDR). The annual incidence of any DR in patients without retinopathy at baseline was 4.60% in the first year, reducing to 3.87% in the fifth year; the cumulative incidence at 5 years was 14.47%. The risk of any degree of DR, non-referable DR, or RDR was strongly associated with increased duration of diabetes and earlier age at diagnosis.

Diabetic Retinopathy Physiopathology

Several pathophysiological mechanisms are concerned. It is thought that in the retina, there is a change in response to insulin, such as that exists in the peripheral tissues. As a consequence, there is a decrease in the "signaling" PEDG-derived platelet growth factor, which causes a decrease in the survival of pericytes. The capillary walls disappear [27], which has been marked as an early event in the physiopathology of DR. Microstructural and functional changes appear

at the vascular and neuronal levels because of the chronic inflammatory state of the retina induced by maintained hyperglycemia. Indeed, it is in the context of the neurovascular retinal unit [28] that the chronic hyperglycemia acts as a key factor in the pathogenesis of DR [3, 4, 10].

This leads to activation of a cascade of events that, without treatment, culminates in the accumulation of fluids in the extravascular space, ischemia, proliferation of abnormal vessels, and blindness [10, 29].

In DR, the first histological changes occur at the level of the retinal capillaries with basement membrane thickening, loss of pericytes, and change of the tight junctions. This leads to loss and incompetence of the inner blood-retinal barrier, promoting vascular hyperpermeability, and vaso-occlusive phenomena [10, 29, 30].

At present, the research focuses on the identification of molecular and biochemical mechanisms that contribute to the changes described above [10].

Several potential biochemical mechanisms have been implicated and activated by chronic hyperglycemia, including polyols [10, 31–34], accumulation of advanced glycation products (AGE) [10, 31, 33, 35–38], activation of protein kinase C (PKC) [10, 31, 39], and leukostasis [10, 30, 31]. These channels promote oxidative stress [29, 40], vascular dysfunction, and the emergence of pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as the vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) [10, 29, 30, 41],TNF α [10, 29], nitric oxide (NO) [10], prostacyclin [10], IGF-1 [10, 29], NF-*k*B [29], PlGF [10], and interleukins 1 and 6 [29]. Of these factors, VEGF has assumed a particular importance, having been identified in the vitreous and retina of individuals with DR [10, 41] and being considered as one of the main stimuli for DME and PDR [42].

VEGF is a potent mitogen of endothelial cells with a molecular weight of about 45 kD [42–44] and is one of the main cytokines expressed as a result of persisting hyperglycemia, resulting in pathologic angiogenesis, vascular permeability, and increased expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines [43, 44]. In this way, VEGF is also been targeted as a therapeutic tool in DR, with anti-VEGF drugs being considered the treatment of choice for DME, alone or in combination with corticosteroids and laser therapy [44].

Another mechanism discussed as responsible for edema in DR is related to the deregulation of the activity carrier of water molecules resulting from the retinal metabolic activity. This was carried out by the Muller cells, in particular, by the change in the activity of water channels (Aquaporin-AQP4) and potassium channels (Kir, Kir 2.1 4.1) with potassium accumulation in the cells of Muller and their hydration and retinal edema [45, 46], which can be reversed by corticosteroids [46].

There is some evidence that in the earliest stages of the disease, VEGF is the main factor implicated in the DME. However, with the evolution of the disease into later phases, DME becomes chronic. Other cytokines [47], in particular, IL-1(β), IL-6, IL-8, IP-10 (protein interferon-inducible protein), and MCP-1 (monocyte chemoattractant protein), related to aggravation and chronicity of the inflammation, are considered responsible for the inadequate response of the anti-VEGF.

DR is the result of complex and multifactorial mechanisms that lead to edema and retinal neovascularization.

Classification of Diabetic Retinopathy and Diabetic Macular Edema

Clinical international classification/disease severity level of diabetic retinopathy (Diabetic Retinopathy GDRPG – Global Project Group 2002) is based on the dilated fundoscopic or color fundus photograph examination [48–50] (Tables 49.1 and 49.2).

Table 49.1 GDRPG (Global Diabetic Retinopathy Project Group) 2002: classification of diabetic retinopathy (DR)

Proposed disease severity level	Findings observable
No apparent retinopathy	No abnormalities
Mild non-proliferative DR	Microaneurysms only
Moderate non-proliferative DR	More than just microaneurysms but less than severe NPDR
Severe non-proliferative DR (Alternatively, "and" could be considered instead of "or" for very severe non-proliferative DR)	Any of the following: More than 20 intraretinal hemorrhages in each of the four quadrants Venous anomalies (venous beading) in two or more quadrants Intraretinal abnormalities (IRMA) in at least one quadrant No signs of proliferative retinopathy
Proliferative DR	Neovascularization or Vitreous/preretinal hemorrhage
The Portuguese Retina Study Group believes that any PDR should be subclassified according to gravity as follows [51]:	
Low-risk PDR	Neovascularization in or within 1 □D of the disc (NVD) with area < 1/3 of □D or NV beyond 1 D of the disc (NVE) with an area < 0.5 D
High-risk PDR	Neovascularization in or within 1 □D of the disc (NVD) with area ≥ 1/3 of □D or NV beyond 1 D of the disc (NVE) with area ≥ 0.5 D or any NVD with vitreous hemorrhage
PDR with advanced diabetic eye disease	Any of the following: Vitreous/preretinal hemorrhage Rubeosis iridis Tractional retinal detachment Fibrovascular proliferation with □□ traction

Table 49.2 GDRPG (Global Diabetic Retinopathy Project Group) 2002: classification of EMD

Proposed disease severity level	Findings observable
Macular edema apparently absent	No retinal thickening or hard exudates in the posterior pole
Macular edema apparently present	Retinal thickening or hard exudates in the posterior pole
If macular edema is present, it can be further classified as follows:	
Mild: Some retinal thickening or hard exudates in the posterior pole but distant from the center of the macula	
Moderate: Retinal thickening or hard exudates approaching the center of the macula but not involving the center	
Severe: Retinal thickening or hard exudates involving the center of the macula	

Current Treatment of Diabetic Retinopathy

To address the issue of the treatment, we need to consider both the severity of the disease and the importance of early diagnosis and treatment.

We must take into account that DR can present with different severity levels depending on the time of evolution of the disease which is essential to plan the level and complexity of the intervention. In this way, we can adequately plan and allocate human and financial resources according to the level and complexity of each case [51] (Fig. 49.1).

On the other hand, a screening program for early detection and treatment allows an earlier intervention. It has been estimated that only 10% of resource consumption is needed at this time, instead of what would be required in the advanced stages of the disease and with very encouraging results [51]. Preferably, early detection and treatment programs must be carried out with a standard performance of proximity to the diabetic patient, including screening mobile units and use of telemedicine [51].

It should be noted that, in each patient, DR can manifest with a predominantly ischemic or exudative component, sometimes mixed. In the first case, we are dealing with an evolution toward very severe NPDR or PDR. In this situation, although there are references to positive results with the use of anti-VEGF [52], the therapy of choice continues to be thermal laser. The treatment is carried out to the periphery of the retina, with the panretinal photocoagulation (PRP) [53] technique or, more smoothly, with a technique called targeted retinal photocoagulation (TRP) using a multispot laser [54] (Fig. 49.2). The thermal laser, with a photocoagulation effect, has been a standard therapy of PDR [55] with very long-lasting results. Laser is truly recommended in contexts of low availability of resources, difficulty to follow patients, poor compliance, patients with reduced mobility, PDR in patients with type 1 diabetes, and advanced PDR where it is mostly combined with vitrectomy. In addition to being an effective treatment in the PDR, laser phototherapy has also been used as an efficient eye treatment procedure, thus preventing the onset of

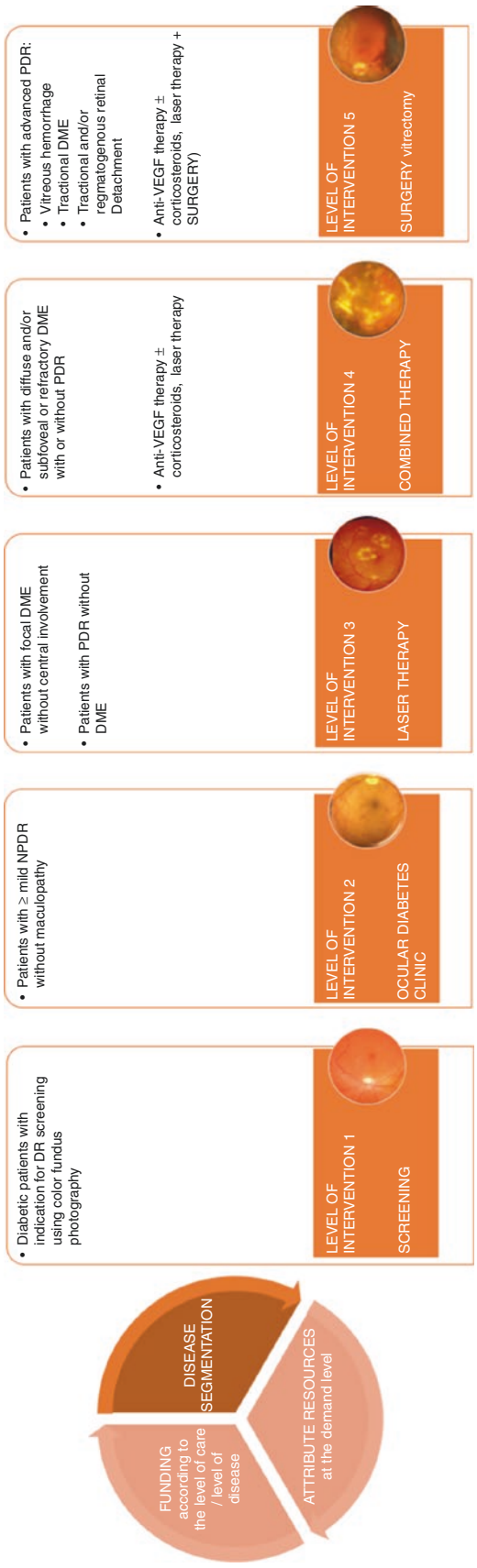


Fig. 49.1 DR levels of intervention and their relevance in health planning. We defined five levels of disease according to the level of severity. Each level of disease corresponds to a level of care. Note that there is an increase in complexity as the level of disease increases

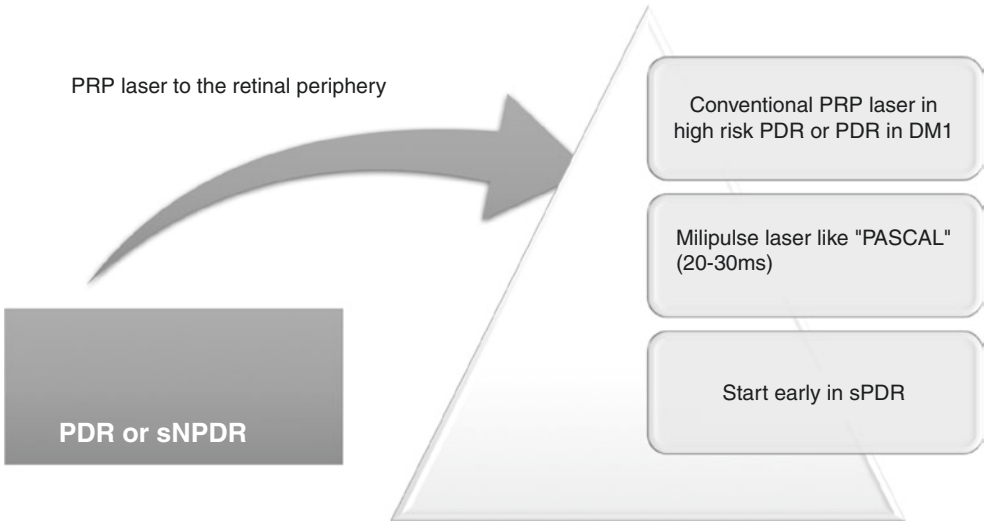


Fig. 49.2 Laser therapy for PDR. Conventional PRP laser should not be avoided in cases of high-risk PDR and PDR in type 1 DM patients. When using a multispot laser, treatment should be more intense so as to be equivalent to conventional PRP laser. Do not wait in severe PDR, particularly in patients with high-risk characteristics

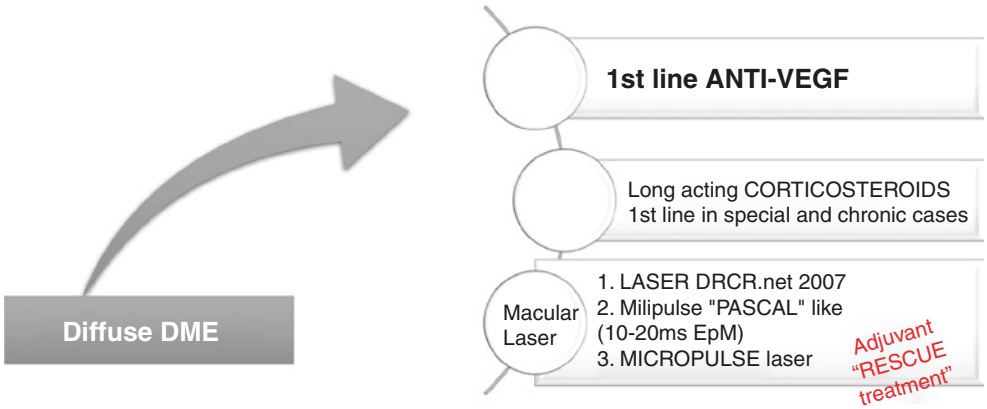


Fig. 49.3 Treatment options for diffuse DME: 1st line is anti-VEGF; 2nd line, long-acting corticosteroids (eventually as 1st line in special and chronic cases); 3rd line, use laser therapy at macular area for DME (with or without PRP at retinal periphery) as rescue or adjuvant therapy

blindness due to hyperglycemic conditions [51, 56–58]. Advanced PDR with vitreous or preretinal hemorrhage and fibrovascular proliferation, particularly associated with retinal or macular detachment, is approached with surgical procedures – vitrectomy associated with intraoperative laser in a PRP pattern [51].

The exudative component predominates in DME. Early stages of vascular edema, either focal or multifocal, do not imminently threaten fovea. In this case, the laser can still lead to better clinical outcomes [51, 56–58]. It should be emphasized that laser treatment performed in the macular area follows the softer parameters and small spot diameter to avoid any damage to the microstructure of the macular retina.

The DRS and ETDRS trials [59, 60] in the 1970s showed that the results of laser phototherapy in DME were not encouraging [59, 60]. Only 3% of the treated patients had a gain of 15 ETDRS scale letters at the end of 3 years, and more than half continued to lose vision despite laser phototherapy treatment [59]. Many of these patients presented with a diffused or subfoveal exudative component (diffuse DME) and with more advanced levels of disease. We can even say that the treatment paradigm of DR has changed, mainly for diffuse and advanced DME with large lipoprotein exudates, where anti-VEGF (Bevacizumab, Ranibizumab, Aflibercept) [61, 62] therapy is now indicated as the first-line therapy (Fig. 49.3).

Combined Therapy: Thermal Laser with VEGF and Prolonged Action Steroids and Surgery

However, the evidence gathered continues to support individualized and multifaceted approach to the patient with DR [63], in which the anti-VEGF agents can be used in combination with the reference treatments, such as corticosteroids [64] and laser phototherapy [62, 65], which act as an adjuvant factor and long-term stabilizer [66] (Fig. 49.4). Currently, the thermal laser with the techniques identified as retinal saving [51, 67, 68] can be combined with an anti-VEGF and/or subtenon or intravitreal triamcinolone [69, 70] or extended release devices of dexamethasone [71] or fluocinolone [72]. The last are particularly indicated in patients who have been vitrectomized [73] and as first line in patients with contraindications to anti-VEGF use.

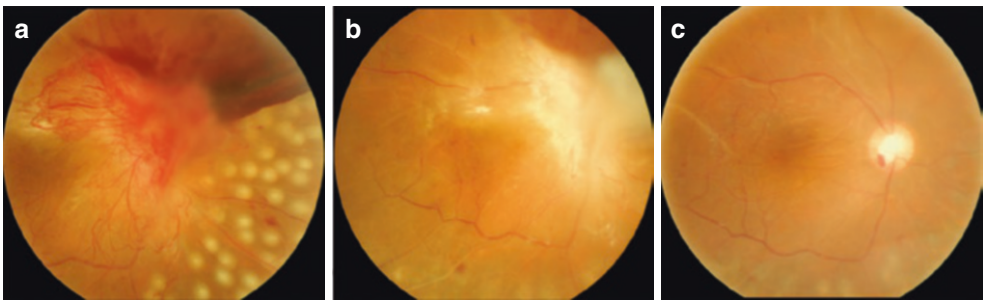


Fig. 49.4 Advanced PDR with vitreous and preretinal hemorrhage in a 35-year-old woman. (**a**) Laser photocoagulation was performed as there was optical transparency. (**b**) 2 days after intravitreal ranibizumab injection: there was total regression of neovascularization and a fibrotic "shift" of fibrovascular tissue. (**c**) 2 days after vitrectomy with "peeling" of the fibrovascular complex. The result was excellent with the maintenance of visual acuity of 0.8 due to early action in combining therapies. However, this was a highly resource-consuming procedure, which included laser, vitreoretinal surgery, anti-VEGF, and corticosteroids. The treatment could have been simpler by using fewer resources if it was held earlier before reaching advanced PDR

This rational approach has demonstrated enhanced efficacy in clinical trials [74–78], and better and more efficient management for healthcare providers. In about 40% of patients, the response to anti-VEGF monotherapy was not satisfactory [78], and it might make sense to change drug class, shifting for a prolonged action corticosteroid [72] and/or associating the laser treatment (and/or macular periphery) [51].

The combination of drugs appears to be a valid option in order to enhance their global beneficial effects. The different drugs and/or laser therapy act synergistically in the various mechanisms of action that cause edema. The gain in efficacy achieved by combining drugs can reduce the total number of required treatments, decrease the adverse effects of the individual drugs [66], and improve the therapeutic *burden* on the patients [51]. Treatment procedures like vitrectomy and phacoemulsification also go along well with the combination therapy.

Laser therapy, like vitrectomy, acts as the stabilizing element of the retina in the long term. This has been demonstrated by the clinical stabilization achieved in laser-treated diabetic patients that lasts for decades.

In the near future, we will continue to use anti-VEGF as well as long-acting steroids in slow-release devices with the features of modulators of neovascularization and edema. The association of genetic therapy opened new frontiers, including the use of viral vectors for transfer of PEDF (pigment epithelium-derived factor) [79–81]. This cytokine has shown to have anti-inflammatory and antioxidant properties [82], as well as the ability to reduce capillary hyperpermeability and edema. The knowledge that laser phototherapy induces retinal environment modeling for production of chemical mediators [83], along with PEDF, either by activation of microglia or the call of medullary stem cells with repair functions, allowed us to further explore this therapy using the laser in earlier phases. Associate methods of improvement of metabolic control [13, 84] and neuroprotection [28] will be the major challenge in treating DM and DR. We anticipate a customized therapy for the individual patient, where the method of treatment will allow to maximize the results and have fewer side effects and fewer visits to the hospital, reducing the burden and treatment cost [84].

Table 49.3 Ocular manifestations of DM other than DR

Ocular manifestations of DM other than DR	
Blepharitis	Non-arteritic ischemic optic neuropathy
Chalazion	Oculomotor nerve palsy
Dry eye	Asteroid hyalosis
Corneal ulcer	Retinal artery occlusion
Neurotrophic keratitis	Retinal vein occlusion
Loss of accommodation	Ocular ischemic syndrome
Refractive fluctuation of vision	Lipemia retinalis
Cataract	Diabetic papillopathy
Glaucoma	Pupillary abnormalities

Ocular Manifestations of DM Other than DR

As mentioned above, diabetic eye disease is not limited to DR, even though DR is the best-known microvascular complication (Table 49.3).

Other ocular manifestations of DM can be divided into vitreoretinal, when affecting the vitreous or retina such as the DR, or non-retinal, if they affect other ocular structures [18, 85].

Vitreoretinal Manifestations

These include the retinal arterial and venous occlusions and the ocular ischemic syndrome, conditions in which DM is a predisposing factor [18, 85].

Retinal vein occlusions correspond to the second most common vascular retinopathy after DR and are characterized

by dilated and tortuous veins associated with intraretinal hemorrhages, cotton-wool spots (localized retinal ischemia), and macular edema. The central retinal vein occlusion involves the whole retina, occurring at the level of the optic disc, and the branch retinal occlusion involves a sector of the retina and is located usually at the level of pathological arteriovenous crossings [18].

The ocular ischemic syndrome (OIS) is a less frequent condition that results from chronic eye hypoperfusion due to significant stenosis/occlusion of the ipsilateral internal carotid or ophthalmic artery. Individuals with this pathology often have multiple systemic risk factors, which include DM, high blood pressure, and dyslipidemia. DM is even considered a major risk factor for carotid disease and consequently, the OIS [18, 86].

The appearance of retinal emboli and the retinal arterial occlusions (RAO) are other complications that reflect multiple cardiovascular risk factors of diabetics, especially hypertension and dyslipidemia. The suspicion of an RAO is an ophthalmic emergency, and individuals should be immediately referred to a high-level ophthalmological care center. Symptoms include sudden and painless loss of vision [18]. Changes in the choroidal circulation have also been described [87].

Non-retinal Manifestations

This group includes disease of eyelids and cornea, crystalline lens, glaucoma, and neuro-ophthalmic disorders.

Eyelids

Blepharitis (inflammation of the eyelids) and chalazion may be the first signs of DM [85].

Cornea

Diabetic patients exhibit reduced corneal sensitivity, resulting in a greater predisposition to infectious keratitis, neurotrophic ulcers, intolerance to contact lenses, erosions, and epithelial defects. There is also a slower healing of the corneal and structural changes in the hemidesmosome of the basal membrane, which leads to persistent epithelial defects even after a minor trauma. Corneal disease symptoms include pain, photophobia, and blurred vision, and the treatment usually consists of lubrication and therapeutic occlusion [18, 85].

Crystalline Lens

Refractive Error

Refractive fluctuation of vision can be a sign of DM and metabolic decompensation due to the change of the power of the lens diopter. This is due to the accumulation of sorbitol by increased activity of the enzyme aldose reductase, which leads to acute lenticular swelling that promotes a hypermetropic shift [85]. It is common when there is a sharp rise in hyperglycemia, often considered an inaugural symptom of DM.

Cataract

Cataracts are also an important cause of impaired vision in diabetic patients, with the risk of cataract increasing with the duration of DM and metabolic control [18]. Patients with type 1 diabetes can sometimes appear with a special type of cataract, a cortical snowflake cataract, which can be rapidly progressive [18]. In individuals with type 2 diabetes, there is worsening of the senile cataract and earlier appearance compared to nondiabetics [18]. Regarding cataract surgery, there are also particularities of DM: (1) preoperative macular edema can compromise visual recovery; (2) DR can rapidly worsen with surgery; (3) there is a prolonged healing time; (4) higher risk of postoperative inflammation and infection; and (5) higher risk of surgical complications [18, 85].

Glaucoma

Glaucoma is a progressive optic neuropathy, usually associated with increased intraocular pressure and changes in the optic disc and visual field [18].

Case-control trials show a relative risk of primary open-angle glaucoma of 1.6–4.7 in diabetics [18, 85]. DM also disturbs the short posterior ciliary arteries self-regulation, exacerbating glaucoma optic neuropathy [18]. Also in DM, there is a greater risk of closed angle glaucoma due to an abnormally large crystalline. Moreover, a crisis of angle closure can also be a complication of an acute hyperglycemia crisis due to the abrupt lenticular edema [85]. Neovascular glaucoma is another type of glaucoma that can arise in diabetics. This type of secondary glaucoma is due to the neovascularization of the iris and angle induced by VEGF, whose production is stimulated by the ischemic retina. In a terminal phase, there is an obstruction of the aqueous humor drainage caused by the fibrovascular tissue in the trabecular meshwork and angle [85].

Neuro-ophthalmic Disorders

Pupillary Abnormalities

Autonomic neuropathy leading to a denervation of the sphincter and pupillary dilator muscles can contribute to myopic pupils in scotopic conditions and an incomplete response to mydriatic agents [85].

Oculomotor Nerve Palsy

DM has been reported to be a cause of oculomotor palsy in 25–30% of individuals aged over 45 years [18, 85]. These are very common, usually isolated paresis of the III, IV, or VI pairs, and result from microvascular occlusion [18, 85].

Symptoms include binocular diplopia. Usually, there is a spontaneous recovery in 3 months, although recurrence may exist. The presence of other focal neurological signs must lead to the exclusion of compressive injury [18, 85].

Non-arteritic Ischemic Optic Neuropathy

This condition results in anterior segment ischemia of the optic nerve, and it is estimated that 25% of people with this problem are diabetics [18].

There is an acute and painless decrease in visual acuity, with the presence of a relative afferent pupillary defect and optic disc edema [56]. There is no proven treatment, and the benefit of aspirin remains limited; but even without treatment, this neuropathy usually remains stable [18]. The arteritic variant should be excluded with erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) and reactive C protein (RCP) and biopsy of the temporal artery due to its reserved prognosis and the need for urgent treatment with intravenous corticosteroids.

Conclusion

This chapter is a review focusing on ocular manifestations of DM, particularly DR, but not neglecting other lesser-known complications. We believe this matter is of particular relevance to the medical doctors who deal with diabetics, sensitizing them on the diabetic eye disease in order to promote a regular ophthalmologic evaluation and enable early detection of these visual debilitating changes.

We live in exciting times, with a constant innovation in prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of DR – the most important ocular complication of DM. However, more evidence with clinical trials on new therapies, clarifying their role, the use of monotherapy or in combination, are required. Other ocular and periocular structures, vessels, and nerves can also be affected by DM. The acquisition of knowledge regarding this issue enables us to diagnose and treat diabetes in a timely manner.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Compared to nondiabetic individuals, the risk of blindness in diabetic patients is:
   (a) 5 times higher
   (b) 10 times higher
   (c) 15 times higher
   (d) 20 times higher
   (e) 25 times higher
2. Estimated global prevalence of vision threatening diabetic retinopathy:
   (a) 5.7%
   (b) 10.2%
   (c) 16.3%
   (d) 21.4%
   (e) 34.5%
3. The reference standard for diabetic macular edema:
   (a) Dilated ophthalmologic examination
   (b) Fundus photography
   (c) Optical coherence tomography
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
4. An early event in the physiopathology of diabetic retinopathy:
   (a) Decrease survival of pericytes
   (b) Oxidative stress
   (c) Advanced glycation products
   (d) A chronic inflammatory state induced by chronic hyperglycemia
   (e) Exudates
5. Histological changes in diabetic retinopathy include:
   (a) Basement membrane thickening
   (b) Loss of pericytes
   (c) Incompetence of the blood-retinal barrier
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
6. An inflammatory cytokine with particular importance in the development of diabetic retinopathy:
   (a) Protein kinase C (PKC)
   (b) Tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF α)
   (c) Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)
   (d) Nitric oxide
   (e) Prostacyclin
7. By comparison to treatment at advanced stages, early detection of diabetic retinopathy would require:
   (a) 50% of the resources to treat this complication
   (b) 40% of the resources
   (c) 30% of the resources
   (d) 20% of the resources
   (e) 10% of the resources
8. First-line therapy in patients with diabetic retinopathy and advanced macular edema:
   (a) Anti-VEGF therapy
   (b) Conventional laser therapy
   (c) Panretinal photocoagulation
   (d) Intraoperative laser
   (e) Vitrectomy
9. The second most common vascular abnormality after diabetic retinopathy in patients with diabetes:
   (a) Ocular ischemic syndrome
   (b) Changes in the choroidal circulation
   (c) Retinal vein occlusions
   (d) Retinal emboli
   (e) Retinal arterial occlusions
10. Non-retinal manifestation associated with diabetic retinopathy:
    (a) Reduced corneal sensitivity

(b) Cataract
(c) Glaucoma
(d) Blepharitis
(e) Oculomotor nerve palsies

Correct Answers

1. (e) 25 times higher
2. (b) 10.2%
3. (c) Optical coherence tomography
4. (d) A chronic inflammatory state induced by chronic hyperglycemia
5. (d) All of the above
6. (c) Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)
7. (e) 10% of the resources
8. (a) Anti-VEGF therapy
9. (c) Retinal vein occlusions
10. (d) Blepharitis

Conflicts of Interest José Henriques declares having carried out consulting work for Novartis-Alcon, Bausch + Lomb, Bayer, Allergan and Alimera.

Sara Vaz-Pereira declares having carried out consulting work for Bayer.

João Nascimento declares having carried out consulting work for Novartis, Bausch + Lomb, Alcon, Zeiss and Bayer.

Marco Dutra Medeiros declares having carried out consulting work for Alcon, Allergan, Zeiss and Bayer.

Susana Henriques has nothing to disclose.

Paulo Caldeira Rosa declares having carried out consulting work for Novartis, Alcon and Bayer.

References

1. Henriques J, Vaz-Pereira S, Nascimento J, Rosa PC. Diabetic eye disease. Acta Medica Port. 2015;28(1):107–13.
2. UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) Group. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). Lancet. 1998;352(9131):837–53.
3. Groeneveld Y, Petri H, Hermans J, Springer MP. Relationship between blood glucose level and mortality in type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review. Diabet Med. 1999;16(1):2–13.
4. Stratton IM, Adler AI, Neil HA, et al. Association of glycaemia with macrovascular and microvascular complications of type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 35): prospective observational study. BMJ. 2000;321(7258):405–12.
5. Klein R. Hyperglycemia and microvascular and macrovascular disease in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1995;18(2):258–68.
6. Harris MI, Flegal KM, Cowie CC, et al. Prevalence of diabetes, impaired fasting glucose, and impaired glucose tolerance in U.S. adults. The Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1988–1994. Diabetes Care. 1998;21(4):518–24.
7. King H, Aubert RE, Herman WH. Global burden of diabetes, 1995–2025: prevalence, numerical estimates, and projections. Diabetes Care. 1998;21(9):1414–31.
8. Wild S, Roglic G, Green A, Sicree R, King H. Global prevalence of diabetes: estimates for the year 2000 and projections for 2030. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(5):1047–53.
9. Shaw JE, Sicree RA, Zimmet PZ. Global estimates of the prevalence of diabetes for 2010 and 2030. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2010;87(1):4–14.
10. Cai J, Boulton M. The pathogenesis of diabetic retinopathy: old concepts and new questions. Eye (Lond). 2002;16(3):242–60.
11. Kempen JH, O'Colmain BJ, Leske MC, et al. The prevalence of diabetic retinopathy among adults in the United States. Arch Ophthalmol. 2004;122(4):552–63.
12. Moss SE, Klein R, Klein BE. The 14-year incidence of visual loss in a diabetic population. Ophthalmology. 1998;105(6):998–1003.
13. Nabais C, Pereira J, Pereira P, Capote R, Morbeck S, Raposo J. Diabetic retinopathy and associated conditions, what relationship? A study in Portuguese patients with type 2 diabetes. Acta Medica Port. 2011;24(Suppl 2):71–8.
14. Lee R, Wong TY, Sabanayagam C. Epidemiology of diabetic retinopathy, diabetic macular edema and related vision loss. Eye Vis. 2015;2(1):17.
15. Bourne RRA, Stevens GA, White RA, et al. Causes of vision loss worldwide, 1990–2010: a systematic analysis. Lancet Glob Health. 2013;1(6):e339–49.
16. Yau JWY, Rogers SL, Kawasaki R, et al. Global prevalence and major risk factors of diabetic retinopathy. Diabetes Care. 2012;35(3):556–64.
17. Liew G, Michaelides M, Bunce C. A comparison of the causes of blindness certifications in England and Wales in working age adults (16–64 years), 1999–2000 with 2009–2010. BMJ Open. 2014;4(2):e004015.
18. Jeganathan VSE, Wang JJ, Wong TY. Ocular associations of diabetes other than diabetic retinopathy. Diabetes Care. 2008;31(9):1905–12.
19. Cavallerano JD. A review of non-retinal ocular complications of diabetes mellitus. J Am Optom Assoc. 1990;61(7):533–43.
20. Stanga PE, Boyd SR, Hamilton AM. Ocular manifestations of diabetes mellitus. Curr Opin Ophthalmol. 1999;10(6):483–9.
21. Williams R, Airey M, Baxter H, Forrester J, Kennedy-Martin T, Girach A. Epidemiology of diabetic retinopathy and macular oedema: a systematic review. Eye (Lond). 2004;18(10):963–83.
22. Ling R, Ramsewak V, Taylor D, Jacob J. Longitudinal study of a cohort of people with diabetes screened by the Exeter Diabetic Retinopathy Screening Programme. Eye (Lond). 2002;16(2):140–5.
23. Virgili G, Menchini F, Casazza G, et al. Optical coherence tomography (OCT) for detection of macular oedema in patients with diabetic retinopathy. In: Virgili G, editor. Cochrane database of systematic reviews, vol. 1. Chichester: Wiley; 2015. p. CD008081.
24. Thomas RL, Dunstan FD, Luzio SD, et al. Prevalence of diabetic retinopathy within a national diabetic retinopathy screening service. Br J Ophthalmol. 2015;99(1):64–8.
25. Klein R, Knudtson MD, Lee KE, Gangnon R, Klein BEK. The Wisconsin Epidemiologic Study of Diabetic Retinopathy: XXII the twenty-five-year progression of retinopathy in persons with type 1 diabetes. Ophthalmology. 2008;115(11):1859–68.
26. Dutra Medeiros M, Mesquita E, Gardete-Correia L, et al. First incidence and progression study for diabetic retinopathy in Portugal, the RETINODIAB study: evaluation of the screening program for Lisbon region. Ophthalmology. 2015;122:2473–81.
27. Enge M, Bjarnegård M, Gerhardt H, et al. Endothelium-specific platelet-derived growth factor-B ablation mimics diabetic retinopathy. EMBO J. 2002;21(16):4307–16.
28. Antonetti D, Klein R, Gardner TW. Diabetic retinopathy. N Engl J Med. 2012;366(13):1227–39.
29. Kowluru RA, Chan P-S. Oxidative stress and diabetic retinopathy. Exp Diabetes Res. 2007;2007:43603.

30. Patel N. Targeting leukostasis for the treatment of early diabetic retinopathy. Cardiovasc Hematol Disord Drug Targets. 2009;9(3):222–9.
31. El-Asrar AMA. Role of inflammation in the pathogenesis of diabetic retinopathy. Middle East Afr J Ophthalmol. 2012;19(1):70–4.
32. Robison WG, Nagata M, Laver N, Hohman TC, Kinoshita JH. Diabetic-like retinopathy in rats prevented with an aldose reductase inhibitor. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci. 1989;30(11):2285–92.
33. Simó-Servat O, Hernández C, Simó R. Genetics in diabetic retinopathy: current concepts and new insights. Curr Genomics. 2013;14(5):289–99.
34. Yoshii H, Uchino H, Ohmura C, Watanabe K, Tanaka Y, Kawamori R. Clinical usefulness of measuring urinary polyol excretion by gas-chromatography/mass-spectrometry in type 2 diabetes to assess polyol pathway activity. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2001;51(2):115–23.
35. Chibber R, Molinatti PA, Kohner EM. Intracellular protein glycation in cultured retinal capillary pericytes and endothelial cells exposed to high-glucose concentration. Cell Mol Biol (Noisy-le-Grand). 1999;45(1):47–57.
36. Stitt AW. The role of advanced glycation in the pathogenesis of diabetic retinopathy. Exp Mol Pathol. 2003;75(1):95–108.
37. Goldin A, Beckman JA, Schmidt AM, Creager MA. Advanced glycation end products: sparking the development of diabetic vascular injury. Circulation. 2006;114(6):597–605.
38. Schmidt AM, Yan SD, Wautier JL, Stern D. Activation of receptor for advanced glycation end products: a mechanism for chronic vascular dysfunction in diabetic vasculopathy and atherosclerosis. Circ Res. 1999;84(5):489–97.
39. Ways DK, Sheetz MJ. The role of protein kinase C in the development of the complications of diabetes. Vitam Horm. 2000;60:149–93.
40. Gürler B, Vural H, Yilmaz N, Oguz H, Satici A, Aksoy N. The role of oxidative stress in diabetic retinopathy. Eye. 2000;14(5):730–5.
41. Wirostko B, Wong T, Simo R. Vascular endothelial growth factor and diabetic complications. Prog Retin Eye Res. 2008;27(6):608–21.
42. Miller JW, Le Couter J, Strauss EC, Ferrara N. Vascular endothelial growth factor A in intraocular vascular disease. Ophthalmology. 2013;120(1):106–14.
43. Dugel PU, Hillenkamp J, Sivaprasad S, et al. Baseline visual acuity strongly predicts visual acuity gain in patients with diabetic macular edema following anti-vascular endothelial growth factor treatment across trials. Clin Ophthalmol. 2016;10:1103–10.
44. Stewart MW. Anti-vascular endothelial growth factor drug treatment of diabetic macular edema: the evolution continues. Curr Diabetes Rev. 2012;8(4):237–46.
45. Iandiev I, Pannicke T, Reichel MB, Wiedemann P, Reichenbach A, Bringmann A. Expression of aquaporin-1 immunoreactivity by photoreceptor cells in the mouse retina. Neurosci Lett. 2005;388(2):96–9.
46. Uckermann O, Kutzera F, Wolf A, et al. The glucocorticoid triamcinolone acetonide inhibits osmotic swelling of retinal glial cells via stimulation of endogenous adenosine signaling. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2005;315(3):1036–45.
47. Funatsu H, Noma H, Mimura T, Eguchi S, Hori S. Association of vitreous inflammatory factors with diabetic macular edema. Ophthalmology. 2009;116(1):73–9.
48. Wu L. Classification of diabetic retinopathy and diabetic macular edema. World J Diabetes. 2013;4(6):290.
49. Wilkinson CP, Ferris FL, Klein RE, et al. Proposed international clinical diabetic retinopathy and diabetic macular edema disease severity scales. Ophthalmology. 2003;110(9):1677–82.
50. International Clinical Diabetic Retinopathy Disease Severity Scale, Detailed Table. 2010. Available at: http://www.icoph.org/resources/45/International-Clinical-Diabetic-Retinopathy-Disease-Severity-Scale-Detailed-Table-.html.
51. Henriques J, Figueira J, Nascimento J, et al. Retinopatia Diabética – orientações clínicas do Grupo de Estudos da Retina de Portugal. Oftalmol rev SPO. 2015;39(4 supl. Out-supl. Dez).
52. Writing Committee for the Diabetic Retinopathy Clinical Research Network. Panretinal photocoagulation vs intravitreous ranibizumab for proliferative diabetic retinopathy: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA Ophthalmol. 2015;314(20):2137–46.
53. Figueira J, Silva R, Raimundo M. Laser treatment for proliferative retinopathy. In: Henriques J, Duarte A, Quintão T, editors. Laser manual in opthalmilogy – fundamentals and laser clinical pratice. 1st ed. Lisboa: SPILM Portuguese Medical Laser Society Publishing; 2017. p. 213–7.
54. Henriques J, Medeiros MD, Pinto R, Rosa PC. Targeted retinal photocoagulation. PRP with PASCAL. In: Henriques J, Duarte A, Quintão T, editors. Laser manual in ophthalmology-fundamentals and laser clinical pratice. 1st ed. Lisbon: SPILM- Portuguese Medical Laser Society; 2017. p. 241–4.
55. The Diabetic Retinopathy Study Research Group. Photocoagulation treatment of proliferative diabetic retinopathy: the second report of diabetic retinopathy study findings. Ophthalmology. 1978;85(1):82–106.
56. Taylor HR, Binder S, Das T, et al. Updated 2017 – ICO guidelines for diabetic eye care. 2017.
57. Hooper P, Boucher M-C, Colleaux K, et al. Contemporary management of diabetic retinopathy in Canada: from guidelines to algorithm guidance. Ophthalmologica. 2014;231(1):2–15.
58. Photocoagulation for Diabetic Macular Edema. Early treatment diabetic retinopathy study report number 1. Early treatment diabetic retinopathy study research group. Arch Ophthalmol (Chicago, Ill 1960). 1985;103(12):1796–806.
59. Early Treatment Diabetic Retinopathy Study Research Group. Early photocoagulation for diabetic retinopathy. ETDRS report number 9. Ophthalmology. 1991;98(5 Suppl):766–85.
60. Ferris F. Early photocoagulation in patients with either type I or type II diabetes. Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc. 1996;94:505–37.
61. Mitchell P, Bandello F, Schmidt-Erfurth U, et al. The RESTORE study: ranibizumab monotherapy or combined with laser versus laser monotherapy for diabetic macular edema. Ophthalmology. 2011;118(4):615–25.
62. Stewart MW. Anti-VEGF therapy for diabetic macular edema. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14(8):510.
63. Pinto R, Henriques J. Retinopatia Diabética – Tratamento: Corticoides, Anti-Angiogénicos e Terapêutica combinada. In: Silva R, Farah ME, editors. Manual de Retina. Lisboa: Lidel; 2015. p. 119–23.
64. Zur D, Loewenstein A. Combination therapy for diabetic macular edema. J Ophthalmol. 2012;2012:1–6.
65. Bandello F, Brancato R, Menchini U, et al. Light panretinal photocoagulation (LPRP) versus classic panretinal photocoagulation (CPRP) in proliferative diabetic retinopathy. Semin Ophthalmol. 2001;16(1):12–8.
66. Vaz F, Siva F, Henriques J. O que se entende por terapêutica combinada no tratamento da Retinopatia Diabética? In: Henriques J, Nascimento J, Silva R, editors. 25 Perguntas e respostas: Retinopatia Diabética – novo paradigma de cuidados. 1ª. Lisboa: GER- Grupo de Estudos da Retina; 2012. p. 123–30.
67. Henriques J, Nascimento J, Rosa P, Vaz F, Amaro M. Laser fototérmico e sua interacção com a retina humana. Oftalmol rev SPO. 2013;36:353–64.
68. Gourier H, Pearce E, Chong V. Micropulse technology and concepts. In: Henriques J, Duarte A, Quintão T, editors. LASER manual in ophthalmology – fundamentals and laser clinical pratice. 1st ed. Lisbon: SPILM Portuguese Medical Laser Society; 2017. p. 197–201.
69. Rosa PC, Pinto R, Guitana M. Antiangiogénicos no tratamento da retinopatia diabética. In: Henriques J, Nascimento J, Silva R, edi-

tors. 25 Perguntas e respostas: Retinopatia diabética – novo paradigma de cuidados. Grupo de E. Lisboa; 2012.
70. Cardillo JA, Melo LAS, Costa RA, et al. Comparison of intravitreal versus posterior sub-Tenon's capsule injection of triamcinolone acetonide for diffuse diabetic macular edema. Ophthalmology. 2005;112(9):1557–63.
71. Haller JA, Kuppermann BD, Blumenkranz MS, Williams GA, Weinberg DV, Chou C, Whitcup SM. Randomized controlled trial of an intravitreous dexamethasone drug delivery system in patients with diabetic macular edema. Arch Ophthalmol. 2010;128(3):289–96.
72. Calvo P, Abadia B, Ferreras A, Ruiz-Moreno O, Verdes G, Pablo LE. Diabetic macular edema: options for adjunct therapy. Drugs. 2015;75(13):1461–9.
73. Meireles A, Goldsmith C, El-Ghrably I, et al. Efficacy of 0.2 µg/day fluocinolone acetonide implant (ILUVIEN) in eyes with diabetic macular edema and prior vitrectomy. Eye. 2017;31(5):684–90.
74. Wells JA, Glassman AR, Ayala AR, et al. Aflibercept, bevacizumab, or ranibizumab for diabetic macular edema. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(13):1193–203.
75. Wells JA, Glassman AR, Ayala AR, et al. Aflibercept, bevacizumab, or ranibizumab for diabetic macular edema: two-year results from a comparative effectiveness randomized clinical trial. Ophthalmology. 2016;123(6):1351–9.
76. Jampol LM, Glassman AR, Bressler NM, Wells JA, Ayala AR, Diabetic Retinopathy Clinical Research Network. Anti–vascular endothelial growth factor comparative effectiveness trial for diabetic macular edema. JAMA Ophthalmol. 2016;134(12):1429.
77. Bressler SB, Glassman AR, Almukhtar T, et al. Five-year outcomes of ranibizumab with prompt or deferred laser versus laser or triamcinolone plus deferred ranibizumab for diabetic macular edema. Am J Ophthalmol. 2016;164:57–68.
78. Dugel P, Campbell J, Holecamp N, et al. Long-term response to anti-VEGF therapy for DME can be predicted after 3 injections. An análises of the protocol I data. In: AAO, editor. AAO annual meeting – sub specialty day. Las Vegas: AAO; 2015.
79. Shen X, Zhong Y, Xie B, Cheng Y, Jiao Q. Pigment epithelium derived factor as an anti-inflammatory factor against decrease of glutamine synthetase expression in retinal Müller cells. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00417-010-1362-5.
80. Tombran-Tink J, Barnstable CJ. Therapeutic prospects for PEDF: more than a promising angiogenesis inhibitor. Trends Mol Med. 2003;9(6):244–50.
81. Vigneswara V, Berry M, Logan A, Ahmed Z. Pigment epithelium-derived factor is retinal ganglion cell neuroprotective and axogenic after optic nerve crush injury. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci. 2013;54(4):2624–33.
82. Henriques J, Quintão T, Páris L. Strutural and functional changes and possible neuroprotective effects induced by photothermal LASER in the retina. In: Henriques J, Duarte A, Quintão T, editors. LASER Manual in Ophthalmology – fundamentals and laser clinical pratice. 1st ed. Lisbon: SPILM Portuguese Medical Laser Society; 2017. p. 187–92.
83. Henriques J, Quintão T, Colaço L, Pinto R. Laser action in the human retina: The therapêutic effect of thermal laser. In: Henriques J, Duarte A, Quintão T, editors. Laser manual in opthalmilogy – fundamentals and laser clinical pratice. 1st ed. Lisbon: SPILM Portuguese Medical Laser Society Publishing; 2017. p. 181–6.
84. Silva R. Perspetivas futuras no tratamento da retinopatia diabética. In: Henriques J, Nasciment J, Silva R, editors. 25 Perguntas e respostas: Retinopatia diabética – novo paradigma de cuidados. Grupo de E. Lisboa; 2012.
85. Negi A, Vernon SA. An overview of the eye in diabetes. J R Soc Med. 2003;96(6):266–72.
86. Ino-ue M, Azumi A, Kajiura-Tsukahara Y, Yamamoto M. Ocular ischemic syndrome in diabetic patients. Jpn J Ophthalmol. 1999;43(1):31–5.
87. Lutty GA. Effects of diabetes on the eye. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci. 2013;54(14):ORSF81-7.

Diabetes and Oral Health

50

Rosa Maria Díaz-Romero
and Manuel Salvador Robles-Andrade

Chapter Objectives

Provide healthcare personnel the necessary elements of the etiology, diagnosis, and treatment of disease in the oral cavity affecting people living with diabetes.

Analyze systemic interaction models of periodontal disease and poor blood glucose control.

Introduction

For decades oral health has not been considered among the priorities of government and international organization agendas, perhaps because most of the time poor oral health has affected morbidity and not mortality. Recently, there has been greater awareness from government organizations and even from the population that oral health is part of a person's general well-being. Also, more comprehensive studies have indicated that oral infections constitute a risk factor that generate or increase harmful health events in individuals. This change started in 2000 with the report of the US Surgeon General that was continued in 2002 in the Oral Health Program of the World Health Organization [1], which approved the resolution that urges the inclusion of oral health in chronic disease prevention programs. That is why we are interested in including this work in this chapter. We will provide the main concepts of the dentistry field to the entire multidisciplinary team allowing them to include this component in the comprehensive care of the diabetic patient.

R. M. Díaz-Romero (✉)
Faculty of Dentistry, UNITEC, Mexico City, Mexico
e-mail: rmdiazro@mail.unitec.mx

M. S. Robles-Andrade
Faculty of Dentistry, UNITEC, Mexico City, Mexico

Stomatology Service Coordinator at the National Institute of Perinatology, Ministry of Health, Mexico City, Mexico

We will start by stating how oral health affects quality of life. We will explain the interaction models of periodontal disease when blood sugar levels are uncontrolled. We will analyze how caries affect the teeth of diabetic people, as well as the repercussions of hyposalivation in the generation of swallowing disorders. We will present how the dentist and/or the periodontist diagnose an oral condition and the different phases that constitute periodontal treatment.

This chapter includes the protocol of diabetic care in the dental office with a clinical guideline followed by the physician, the dietitian, the endocrinologist, the nurse, and the diabetes educator, to detect an oral disease. We will also present the recommendations for the use of antibiotics and antimicrobial prophylaxis useful for the dentist.

Recently there has been greater awareness that oral health is part of a person's general well-being with more in-depth studies of how oral infections constitute a risk factor for health in general.

Oral Health and Quality of Life

Oral health is an essential component of good overall health, and it is also a basic human right. According to the World Health Organization (WHO) [1], oral diseases have a significant impact in individuals and in society due to the pain these cause, leading to a decreased function and quality of life. The effects of oral diseases are considerable and expensive; it is estimated that treatment represents between 5% and 10% of the health expense in industrialized countries and it is above the resources of many developing countries.

Poor oral health can have severe repercussions in overall health, and in the document Vision 2020 of the International Dental Federation in 2016 [2], it is stated that pain, dental abscesses, mastication problems, tooth loss, and pigmented

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_50

or damaged teeth have significant effects in life and in the daily well-being of people. Some of these manifestations can even increase the risk of poor blood sugar control in people living with diabetes. The preservation of oral health is part of the comprehensive well-being of people with diabetes.

Oral health is a basic human right, and its contribution is essential for good quality of life. Oral health is an essential component of good health.

Box 50.1
It is important for the multidisciplinary team involved in the care of diabetic patients to be aware of the most important elements the dentist uses to diagnose and provide dental treatment to patients with diabetes

Periodontal Disease and Systemic Interaction Models

The periodontium is a group of tissues that support the tooth, and it is made up of the bone, periodontal ligament, radicular cementum, and gingiva. The only visible periodontal tissue is the gingiva that in normal healthy conditions, the color is salmon, pink, or coral pink with variations that can be due to the degree of keratinization or to melanic pigmentations; these pigmentations are observed more frequently in black patients. The external gingival portion is made up of a stratified keratinized epithelium that is firmly attached to a dense base of connective gingival tissue whose main function is to protect the underlying periodontal tissue from external stimuli; this epithelium continues to the gingival groove margin that extends from the crest of the gingival margin to the junctional epithelium; the latter maintains direct attachment to the surface of the tooth [3]. The most frequent periodontal disorders are due to the formation of a bacterial biofilm on the tooth surface; once the biofilm comes into contact with the sulcular epithelium at the level of the gingival margin, an inflammatory response begins in the underlying connective tissue that in 3–4 days becomes powerful enough to begin the destruction of connective tissue, losing up to 70% of the collagen within the inflammatory focus [4]. The clinical manifestation of the interaction between the bacterial biofilm that colonizes the tooth surface and that is in contact with the sulcular epithelium (Fig. 50.1) and the junctional epithelium is called periodontal disease; this term encompasses the two main infections that affect the tooth's supporting tissue: gingivitis and periodontitis.

Gingivitis is an inflammatory process that only affects the gingiva, and it is associated with the accumulation of bacterial plaque on the dental surface; when the bacteria of the plaque interact with gingival tissue, there is an inflammatory response characterized by an increase in the volume of the gingival margin, a change in the gingival color that looks erythematous, and gingival bleeding in the presence of a stimulus (Fig. 50.2) [5]; this infectious process is reversible once the bacterial plaque is removed mechanically with the implementation of personal plaque control (PPC) where patients are instructed to follow an appropriate brushing technique and daily use of dental floss to achieve resolution of the clinical picture a few days after the correct PPC [6] (Table 50.1).

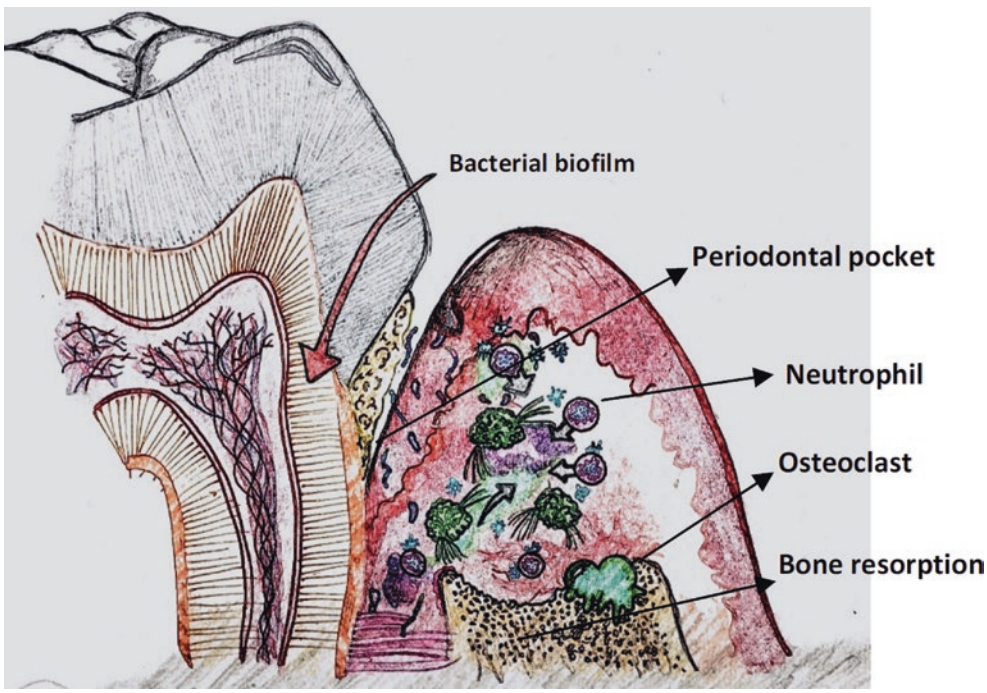


Fig. 50.1 Interaction between the bacterial biofilm and the sulcular and junctional epithelium. The progression of gingivitis to periodontitis involves the proliferation of epithelial cells apically throughout the radicular surface forming periodontal pockets; as these progress, the inflammatory infiltrate increases, starting the bone destruction

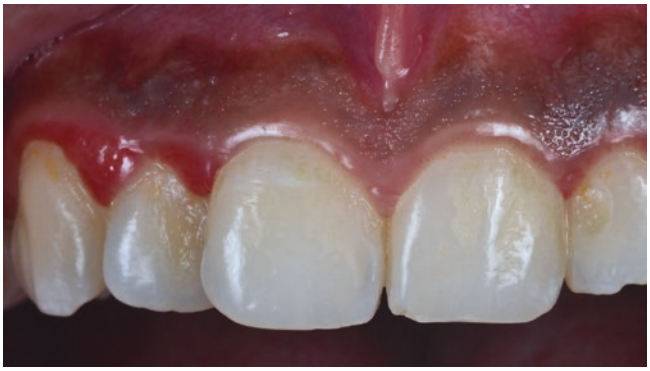


Fig. 50.2 Gingivitis. There is swelling of the gingival margin; it looks erythematous, associated with deposits of bacterial plaque on the teeth

Table 50.1 Strategies suggested to patients for personal plaque control [7]

Strategy	Justification
Teeth brushing at least twice a day	Patients who brush with this frequency keep their teeth for a longer period of time
Use of dental floss once a day	It significantly reduces gingivitis compared to only brushing
Routine use of toothpaste containing triclosan/copolymer	These are more effective in reducing bacterial plaque and gingivitis compared to fluoridated toothpastes
Routine use of mouthwash containing essential oils is suggested	These are effective in reducing bacterial plaque and gingivitis, even in proximal areas

Periodontitis represents the progression of gingivitis to a destructive infectious process associated with the microbiological change of the bacterial biofilm and with a proinflammatory response of the host [8, 9]; this interaction is responsible for the periodontal destruction that causes dental mobility and tooth loss, making this the second cause of tooth loss [10] (Figs. 50.3 and 50.4).

Depending on the individual's susceptibility, the progression of gingivitis to periodontitis may vary; it has been suggested that the progression takes more than 6 months [11, 12]. The main microorganisms associated with periodontitis are *P. gingivalis*, *T. forsythia*, *and T. denticola*; these microorganisms produce enzymes and toxins that damage periodontal tissue and trigger an inflammatory response. Once the inflammatory response is triggered, the red blood cells, fibroblasts, and structural cells of periodontal tissue release proteases, cytokines, and prostaglandins [13]. Proteases degrade collagen fibers giving way to more inflammatory infiltrate. While the connective tissue is destroyed, epithelial cells proliferate apically throughout the radicular surface forming periodontal pockets; as these progress, the inflammatory infiltrate increases, starting the bone destruction mediated by osteocytes [14]. As more plaque accumulates, the microbial density increases, creating a chronic and more destructive response until the tooth is lost at some point [15]. The National

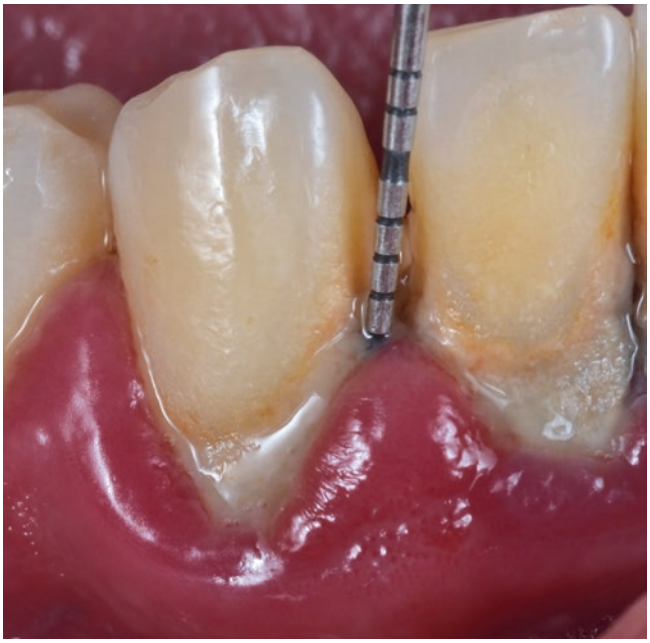


Fig. 50.3 Periodontal probing is a tool used to diagnose periodontitis. Under normal conditions the probe penetrates the gingival groove 0.5–3 mm; in this case the probe penetrates 5 mm, reflecting the presence of a periodontal pocket

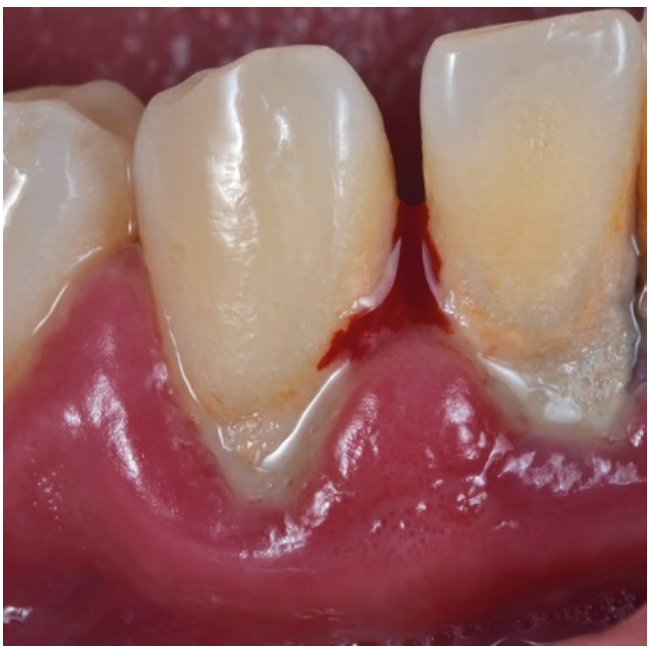


Fig. 50.4 When removing the periodontal probe, we observe bleeding, suggesting an active infection

Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) reported that between 2009 and 2010, 47.2% of the American population over 30 years presented periodontitis [16]. The high prevalence of periodontitis represents a public health issue since it has been identified as a risk factor for the development of cardiovascular diseases [17, 18] and with blood

glucose control in diabetic patients, where the severity of periodontitis has a negative impact on glucose levels [19], on preterm birth, and on low birth weight, among other chronic inflammatory diseases. Periodontal disease is considered as the sixth complication in diabetic patients; in the year 2000 [20], the American Academy of Periodontology stated that "the incidence of periodontitis increases among diabetic patients, increasing the frequency and severity in diabetics with more systemic complications" [21] and the increase in susceptibility is not related to the levels of dental plaque or to dental calculus [22]; collective evidence supports the relationship between both diseases, especially in poorly controlled diabetics [23, 24]. In an epidemiologic study carried out in the United States (NHANES III), individuals with poorly controlled diabetes have 2.9 times higher risk of developing periodontitis, compared to those without diabetes; on the other hand, those who controlled their diabetes properly did not experience any risk increase [25]. It has also been observed that in people with poorly controlled type 2 diabetes, the risk of alveolar bone loss was 11 times greater after 2 years, compared to nondiabetic control individuals [26]. This could be explained by the effect diabetes has in the changing adherence of neutrophils, in chemotaxis and phagocytosis that could favor bacterial persistence in the periodontal pocket increasing periodontal destruction significantly. The formation of advanced glycation end products, a key factor in many diabetic complications, is also produced in the periodontium, and its harmful effects over other organ systems may also be reflected in periodontal tissue [27]. Likewise, another study identified a 50% increase in the messenger RNA for the receptor of end products of advanced glycation in subgingival tissue of people with type 2 diabetes, compared to nondiabetic controls [28].

The systemic impact of periodontitis is due to the fact that the extension of the epithelium of periodontal pockets can reach 44–76 cm^2, and if we put this into perspective, this represents infected tissue the size of the palm of our hand, having the ability to induce bacteremia and cytokinemia, inducing a low-grade systemic chronic inflammatory process [29]. These bacteremias are the result of mechanical stimulation of the periodontal pocket that became ulcerated during routine activities such as brushing or mastication, where not only do bacteria disseminate but also their products and endotoxins such as lipopolysaccharides [30]. Bacteria and bacterial antigens disseminated from periodontal tissue induce a systemic inflammatory response mediated by white blood cells, endothelial cells, and hepatocytes through the production of IL-1b, IL-6, TNF-a, and PGE2; with continued exposure in the systemic circulation, proinflammatory cytokines induce leukocytosis as well as the production of acute-phase proteins such as CRP, fibrinogen, plasminogen, and complement proteins, among others [31, 32]. This bacterial and inflammatory mediator dissemination may have a significant impact in the metabolic condition of a diabetic patient; this is because systemic inflammation can start and disseminate insulin resistance. From an epidemiological standpoint, it has been observed that severe periodontitis is associated with an increase in HbA1C [33] in individuals diagnosed with T2DM [34]. On the other hand, in nondiabetic patients, progression of periodontitis has been associated with an increase in HbA1C and with carbohydrate intolerance; likewise, moderate and severe periodontitis has been linked to a greater risk of triggering diabetic complications like macroalbuminuria, kidney disease, atheroma plaque calcification, and cardiorenal mortality [35].

In a systematic review of controlled clinical trials [36], we observed that when periodontal treatment is performed and periodontal infections are eradicated, the average reduction of HbA1C was 0.36%; one of the trials showed that periodontal treatment can even decrease HbA1C levels from 0.4% to 0.5%; this metabolic effect is similar to the one achieved when adding a second glucose-lowering drug to the therapy of diabetic patients [37].

Based on biological plausibility models and epidemiological and therapeutic evidence that link DM to periodontitis in a bidirectional manner, it is imperative for the attending physician to promote oral health in diabetic patients by requesting in all cases a consultation with the dentist (Table 50.2).

The systematic impact periodontitis can have is because the extension of the epithelium of the periodontal pockets can go from 44 to 76 cm^2, in perspective, this represents infected tissue the size of the palm of our hand, having the ability to induce bacteremia and cytokinemia, inducing a low-grade chronic systemic inflammatory process.

Eradicated periodontitis can decrease levels of HbA1 from 0.4% to 0.5%; this metabolic effect is similar to the one achieved when adding a second glucose-lowering drug to the therapy of diabetic patients.

Based on biological plausibility models and the epidemiologic and therapeutic evidence that link DM bidirectionally to periodontitis, it is essential that the attending physician promote oral health in diabetic patients by requesting an interconsultation in all cases with the dentist.

Table 50.2 Evidence in the literature that supports a bidirectional relationship of periodontal disease and diabetes

Author	Key item
Eke PI, Dye BA, Wei L, Thornton-Evans GO, Genco RJ	The National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) reported that 47.2% of the American population over 30 years presented periodontitis between 2009 and 2010
Khader YS, Albashaireh ZS, Alomari MA	The high prevalence of periodontitis represents a public health issue. It has been associated with a risk factor for the development of cardiovascular diseases
Mealey BL, Rose LF. Diabetes mellitus and inflammatory periodontal disease	The severity of periodontitis has negative impact on glucose levels
Haffajee AD. et al.	Periodontitis is a destructive infectious process linked to a microbiological shift in the bacterial biofilm and to a proinflammatory response of the host
Eke PI et al.	The prevalence of periodontitis in the American population over 30 years is 47.2%
Kinane DF et al.	Periodontitis has the ability to induce bacteremia and cytokinemia, inducing a low-grade chronic system inflammatory process
Löe H	Periodontitis has been considered the sixth complication of diabetes
Mealey BL et al.	The severity of periodontitis has a negative impact on glucose levels
Engebretson S et al.	When periodontal treatment is given and periodontal infections are eradicated, the average HbA1C reduction is 0.36%

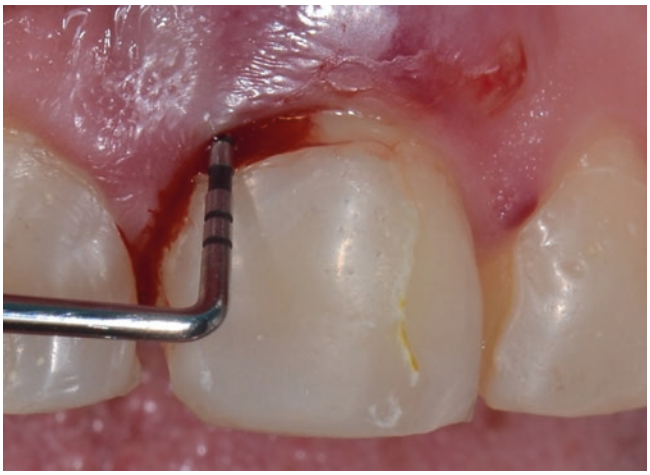


Fig. 50.5 Patient diagnosed with T2DM and periodontitis. We observe that the probe penetrates 9 mm and there are suppuration and bleeding, suggesting an active infection

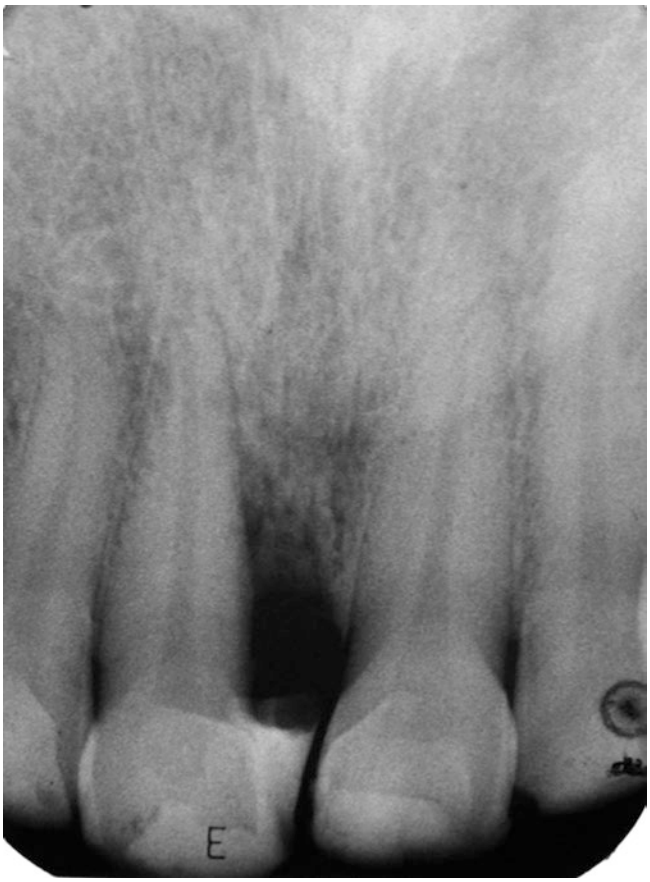


Fig. 50.6 X-ray corroborating the presence of vertical bony defect

Periodontal Diagnosis and Treatment

Diagnosis of periodontitis is clinical and based on the loss of clinical insertion levels, bony loss (Figs. 50.5 and 50.6), periodontal pocket depth, dental mobility, pathological dental migration, and signs of gingival inflammation (change in color, bleeding on probing, volume increase, and exudate on probing) [7]. Overall, periodontal treatment is divided into three phases. In phase 1, therapy focuses on eliminating the causal agent (bacterial plaque), defective repairs that contribute to the retention of plaque are removed, and risk factors are controlled (such as smoking, diabetes mellitus, etc.). One of the most important aspects of periodontal phase 1 is providing patients instructions on personal control of bacterial plaque, instructing them on the proper use of dental floss, an appropriate brushing technique, and the items that could facilitate proper oral hygiene [38]. It is absolutely essential to constantly assess the patient's personal plaque control since the long-term therapeutic success depends on it. Treatment of gingivitis consists of eliminating bacterial plaque through mechanical means, and as was said before, one of its characteristics is that it is reversible once the bacterial plaque is removed; therefore, patients

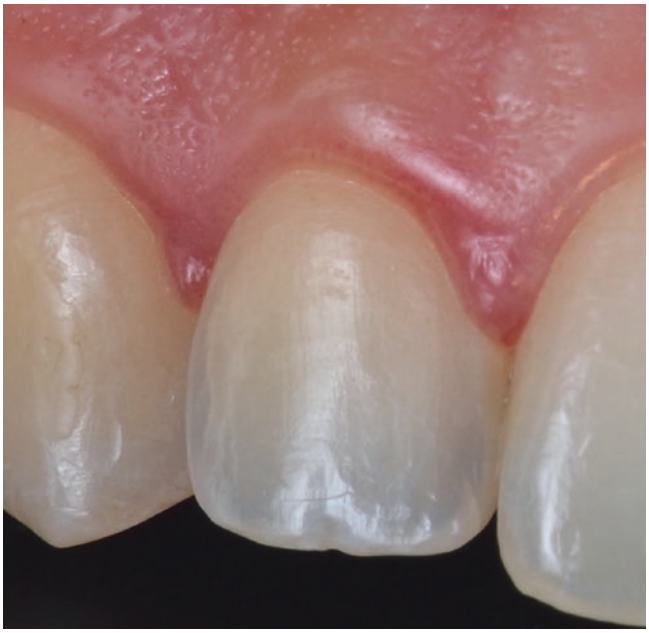


Fig. 50.7 Gingivitis. We observe increased volume of the gingival margin, with an erythematous aspect

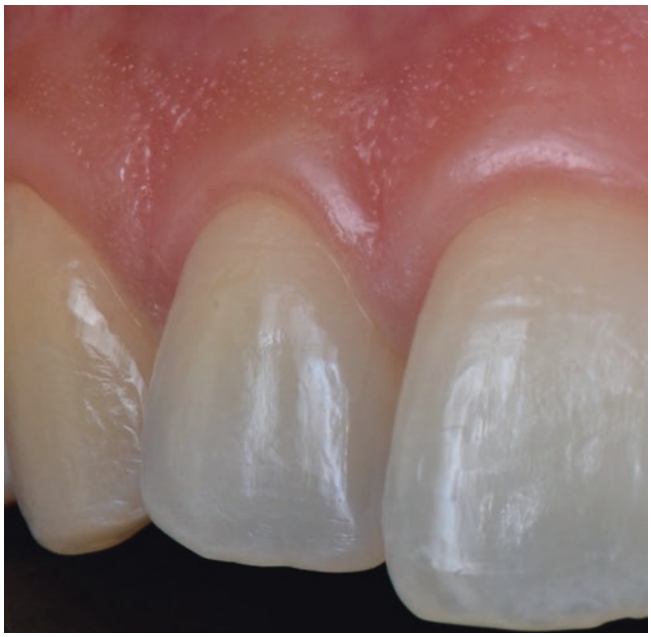


Fig. 50.8 After dental prophylaxis and correct oral hygiene instructions, we observe the resolution of the inflammatory process

diagnosed with gingivitis only require periodontal phase 1 (Figs. 50.7 and 50.8).

Unlike gingivitis, periodontitis has an irreversible destructive pattern that has to be treated first with nonsurgical means like scaling and root planing, a treatment by means of which bacterial plaque and subgingival calculus are removed using curettes and ultrasonic instruments; on specific clinical scenarios, the use of antibiotics as well as mechanical treatment is necessary [39]. If the periodontal pockets persist after the scaling and root planing, periodontal phase 2 is carried out, and this is a surgical phase where a flap is lifted in order to perform a deeper periodontal debridement and therefore eliminate the infectious foci. In this phase, the periodontist can place biomaterials that stimulate the periodontal regenerative process [40].

Once the periodontal disease has been controlled, patients start the periodontal phase 3 or maintenance phase. In this phase, patients are reevaluated at 3–6-month intervals to identify if there is any site that has recurred; if so it is treated at that moment, reinforcing the knowledge so that the patient can follow a good personal plaque control. The maintenance therapy should be carried out for the patient's whole life since the periodontitis can recur.

Periodontal treatment is divided into three phases. In phase 1 therapy focuses on eliminating the causal agent (bacterial plaque), the defective repairs that contribute to the retention of plaque are removed, and risk factors are controlled (like smoking, diabetes mellitus, etc.). Periodontal phase 2 is a surgical phase where a flap is raised to perform a deeper periodontal debridement and thus eliminate the infectious foci. In phase 3 or maintenance phase, patients are reassessed in 3–6-month intervals to identify if there is a recurring site; if so treatment is given at that moment, and the knowledge is reinforced so that the patient can perform a proper personal plaque control.

Dental Caries in Diabetics

According to the World Health Organization (WHO), dental caries can be defined as a pathological process characterized by a series of complex chemical and microbiological reactions that end up destroying the tooth. This destruction is the result of the action of acids produced by bacteria in the environment of the dental plaque. Clinically, a caries is characterized by a change in color, loss of transparency, and decalcification of the affected tissue. As the process advances, the tissue is destroyed, and cavities are formed.

Throughout the world, around 60–90% of school age children and close to 100% of adults have dental caries, often accompanied by pain or a feeling of discomfort.

In diabetics we observe cervical and atypical caries developed in areas that are not often affected in the rest of nondiabetic patients (Fig. 50.9); however, there isn't a unanimous criterion on this theory.

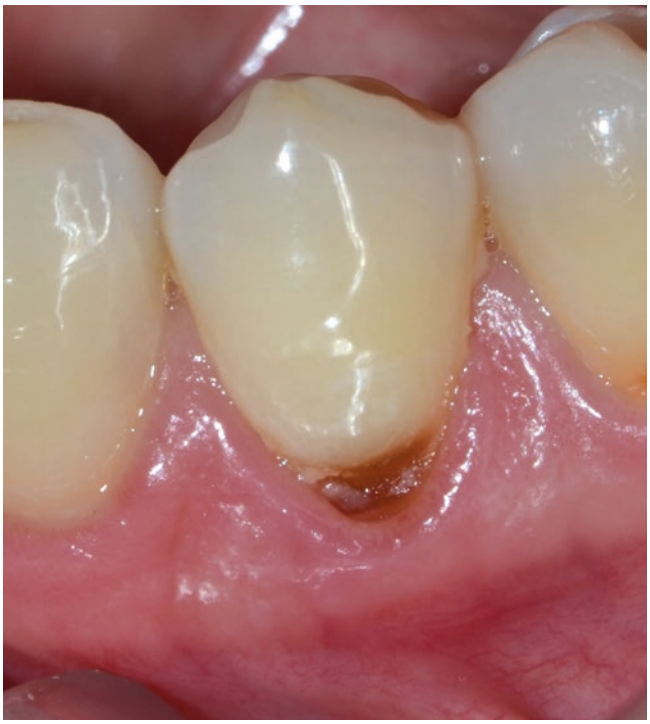


Fig. 50.9 Cervical caries in a diabetic patient

Several reports support the increase in the caries index among diabetics, although there are others who point out a similar risk in nondiabetic patients. These discrepancies have been attributed to the inconsistent characteristics of the clinical evaluations performed, going from the use of several indices like decayed, lost, and filled teeth (CPOD) to bacteriological evaluations; other discrepancies come from the type of populations studied that go from children with type 1 diabetes to elderly patients with type 2 diabetes; however it is a fact that glucose levels in the saliva of nondiabetics are between 0.20 and 2.30 mg/dL, while in diabetics it goes from 0.45 to 6.30 mg/DI [41]; this condition and the decreased saliva secretion are risk factors for the genesis of decaying processes. These factors alter saliva's buffering capacity that has an effect in the pH of bacterial plaque in teeth, and it affects the rate and the development of caries favoring the growth of microorganisms such as *Streptococcus mutans (Sm)* and *Lactobacillus acidophilus (Lb)* [42]. These are considered bacteriological indicators for their acidogenic and aciduric capacity; in fact, the quantification of these microorganisms has shown a correlation with the decaying process. Scientific evidence indicates that *Streptococcus mutans* is the microorganism associated with the onset of the lesion and *Lactobacillus acidophilus* with the progression of the lesion; both bacteria are strong producers of acid; therefore, it is considered that the concentration level in saliva, in colony-forming units (CFU) of *Sm* and *Lb* (>105), is associated with intense cariogenic activity and it is used as an indicator of the high content of fermentable carbohydrates in the oral media, an essential element for greater acidity and, thus, a greater risk factor. On the other hand, a diabetic patient often develops odontalgias with pulpitis, whose genesis is justified by the microangiopathic processes; the presence of these manifestations is a fact reported in the literature, as well as the repercussions that can cause the dissemination of microorganisms of the oral cavity to the rest of the body (CITA), with the generation of bacteremias that can be the initial factor to trigger generalized bacteremias that have led to death in diabetic patients.

Diabetic patients are more prone to infections; therefore we have to take the following into account:

- Dental caries is an infection that as it progresses, it generates the formation of dental abscesses; therefore this disease should be treated.
- Any dental abscess has to be treated actively to prevent dissemination of bacteria to the blood flow.
- Antibiotic coverage will depend on the type of intervention and the degree of control of diabetes. In some cases, to avoid complications, it is recommended to start preoperative antibiotic coverage and especially postoperative [43].

In diabetics we observe cervical and atypical caries developed in areas that we don't often see in nondiabetic patients.

Dental caries is an infection that as it progresses, it generates the formation of dental abscesses; therefore this disease should be treated. Any dental abscess has to be treated actively to prevent dissemination of bacteria to the blood flow.

Hyposalivation and Xerostomia

Another anomaly present in diabetics is xerostomia; according to some authors, this disorder is more exacerbated in females. This feeling of "dryness" is caused by the increase in diuresis and a decrease in the volume of extracellular fluid and the changes in the microcirculation of salivary glands that produce hyposialia; xerostomia is often accompanied by glossodynia, taste disorders, burning in the tongue, and halitosis; the decrease of salivary secretion favors the decrease of salivary pH, and therefore cariogenic aciduric microorganisms like *Streptococcus mutans and Lactobacillus*

acidophilus proliferate easily. The salivary flow rate is lower in diabetic patients, Screeby in Diabetes Care 1992 states that 63% of patients with T2D refer xerostomia; the authors of this chapter reported 35% [44].

The xerostomia observed in diabetic patients is not only conditioned by poor blood sugar control but also by changes in saliva composition (high protein and potassium content) and autonomic neuropathy that deteriorate glandular secretion.

Xerostomia is the subjective feeling of dryness in the mouth, a symptom reported by the patient. It can be the result of decreased salivary secretion, or it can occur in the presence of normal salivary production. Xerostomia is present in 40–60% of diabetic patients who have poor control of the disease with very little salivary production stimulus from the parotid gland compared to patients who are capable of controlling the disease and normal subjects [45].

Hyposalivation in decompensated diabetic patients is explained by the increase in diuresis and polyuria that can affect the production of saliva.

On the other hand, since xerostomia is considered a subjective sensation of dry mouth, it may or may not be attributed to the decrease or interruption of the salivary gland function. Xerostomia not only causes psychological, social, and physical consequences; it also alters food swallowing (Figs. 50.10 and 50.11).

Xerostomia and hyposalivation can be manifestations present in patients with T1D with inappropriate blood glucose control. However, these manifestations can also be related to neuropathy [46].

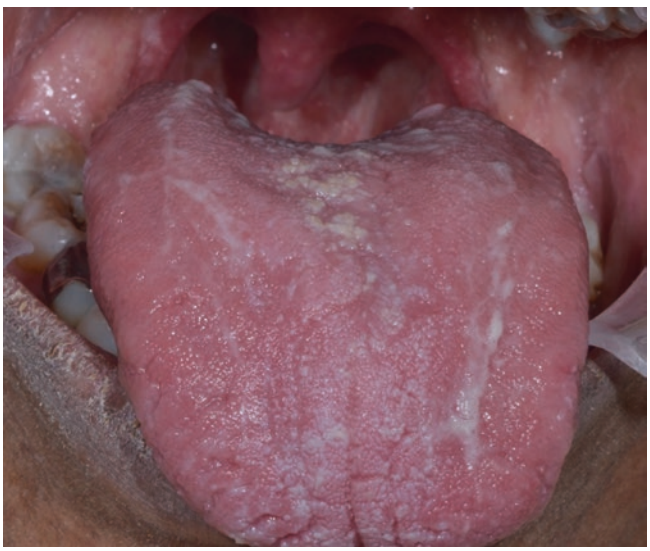


Fig. 50.10 Patient diagnosed with T2DM that presents xerostomia. Clinically we can see a dehydrated oral mucosa, as well as thick saliva

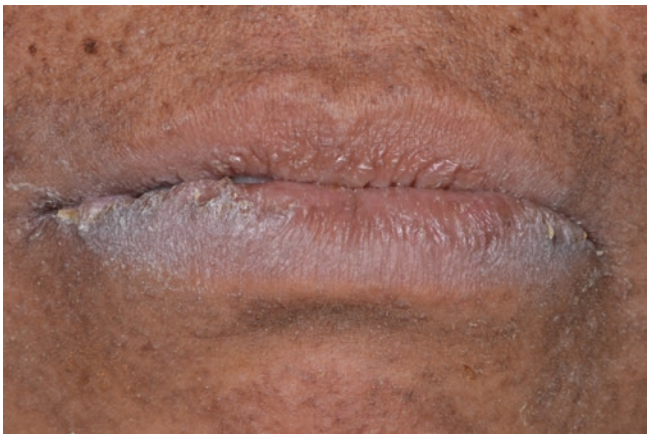


Fig. 50.11 The same patient where we see dehydration of the lip skin

Box 50.2
Xerostomia is a frequent oral condition that can affect oral functions as well as the patient's general well-being.

Given its complexity, its treatment requires an interdisciplinary approach that should be focused on improving quality of life, decreasing possible complications, and promoting palliative care. Its etiology has been associated, among other factors, with the presence of systemic diseases including diabetes mellitus. The results of this systematic review and meta-analysis showed a global xerostomia prevalence of 42, 22% (CI of 95%: 33,97% –50,92%) in people with diabetes and a statistically significant association [47].

Box 50.3
Xerostomia in diabetic patients is not only conditioned by poor blood glucose control but also by the changes in saliva composition (high protein and potassium content) and autonomic neuropathy that will deteriorate glandular secretion

Frequent Mucosal Lesions in Diabetics

Candidiasis Diabetics are prone to fungal infections; this is frequent in our setting. These are produced by the excess growth of *Candida* in the mouth, the digestive tract, the vagina, and other tissues. These are skin-mucosa disorders that are sometimes systemic and produced by the *Candida* species (the most frequent type is *Candida albicans*). There are local factors, such as smoking and use of total dental prosthesis (Fig. 50.12), that can promote the appearance of

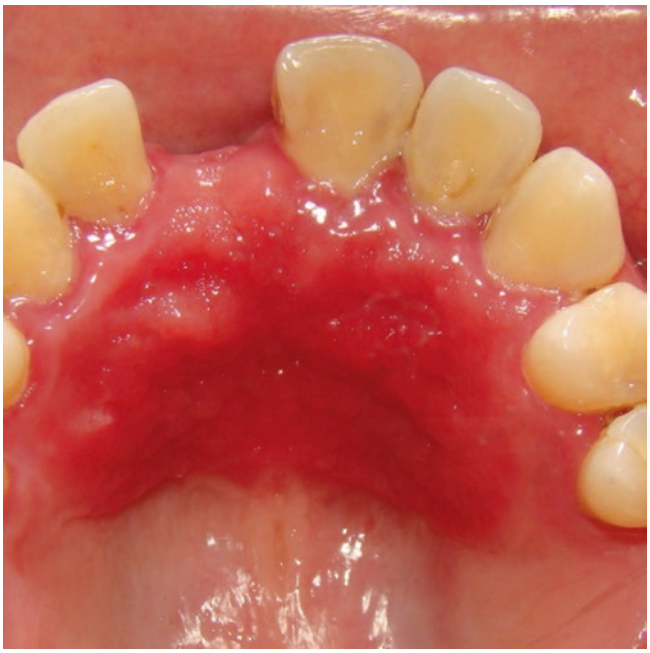


Fig. 50.12 Candidiasis associated with a movable prosthesis in a patient diagnosed with T2DM

candidiasis in the oral cavity as well as extended periods of hyposalivation in uncontrolled diabetics.

Poor metabolic control is responsible for more fungal infections in diabetic patients than in the rest of the population since the glucose level in saliva acts as a substrate for *candida*. Taking high doses of antibiotics or prolonged antibiotic use also increases the risk of oral candidiasis. Antibiotics destroy some of the healthy bacteria that prevent candida from proliferating too much.

Symptoms Oral candidiasis appears as velvety whitish lesions in the mouth and tongue. Under this whitish material, there is reddish tissue that can bleed easily. Ulcers may increase slowly in number and size.

Exams and Tests The physician or the dentist can often diagnose oral candidiasis by examining the mouth and tongue since ulcers have a distinctive appearance. If diagnosis is unclear, one of the following tests can be performed to look for candida organisms.

Culture of Oral Lesions

Microscopic Test of Oral Scrapings

Treatment For oral candidiasis in babies, treatment is often not necessary since it clears on its own after a couple of weeks. If it is a mild case of oral candidiasis, taking antibiotics, eating yoghurt, or taking over-the-counter acidophilus capsules may help. Use a soft bristle toothbrush, and rinse with a hydrogen peroxide water solution at 3% several times a day. Good control of blood sugar levels in people with diabetes can eliminate an oral candidiasis infection. The doctor can prescribe an antifungal mouthwash (nystatin) or chewable tablets (clotrimazole) if the oral candidiasis is severe or if there is a weakened immune system. These products are generally used for 5–10 days. If they don't work, other drugs can be prescribed [48].

Wound healing and changes in the mucosa Diabetic patients have impaired scarring. There are several theories that try to explain this phenomenon, like poor vascularization, decrease in platelet activity, or disorders in collagen synthesis [49]. Diabetes makes scarring or wounds slower and more difficult than normal. Diabetic patients not only have impaired scarring in acute wounds and slower closure of tissue making them more prone to chronic wounds. This is caused by an early inhibited or impaired inflammatory reaction and by a decrease in the ability to release growth factors and cytokines, the intercellular communication substances with several beneficial functions. When repair cell migration is interrupted, cell repair is hindered therefore decreasing the quality of the granulation status (scarring from the bottom to the top).

There is also diabetic microangiopathy present in the lower limbs, thus reducing the transport and repair capacity of tissue through the blood.

Diabetic patients often develop odontalgia with pulpitis, and its genesis is justified by the microangiopathic processes, the frequent appearance of oral ulcers with a delay in wound healing, fissured tongue, and angular cheilitis; one of the most frequent and striking manifestations is reddening and atrophy of the mucosa.

Candidiasis is a frequent disorder in diabetics. Poor metabolic control is responsible for the fungal infections in diabetic patients more than in the rest of the population.

Healthcare Protocol of Diabetics in the Dental Office, Dental Management, Clinical History, and Patient's Level of Control

If we consider the statistics published by the WHO in 2014, the world prevalence of diabetes was 9% among adults over 18 years old. It is calculated that 1.5 million people died as a direct consequence of diabetes in 2012. More than 80% of

the diabetes-related deaths were recorded in low- and medium-income countries.

According to WHO forecasts, diabetes will be the seventh cause of mortality in 2030, it is very likely that this type of patients will seek a dentist's consultation, and these patients may have an asymptomatic disease therefore going undiagnosed.

Clinical Management of Diabetic Patients in the Dental Office

It is very important for the dentist to be prepared to provide dental treatment to the diabetic patient. This includes an appropriate diagnosis of the prediabetic or the diabetic condition, as well as of the oral status of said patient. A full assessment should be performed including a medical and dental history, essential for an accurate diagnosis to create a treatment plan and to manage the patient's condition appropriately. It is important to specify the type of diabetes, the duration, the treatment modality, diet, exercise, oral drugs, or insulin (type and frequency of administration); patients who use insulin with a subcutaneous pump should be properly identified since they are often at risk of developing hypoglycemia since they have tighter control of the blood glucose levels.

Every dental office should have a glucose monitor, and the staff should be familiar with its use in order to measure the patient's capillary blood glucose (whether the patient has a diabetes mellitus diagnosis or not), before any procedure. However, sometimes it is recommended that the patients bring their own glucose monitor to the dental office if they have one at home, to avoid significant variations in the measurements. All the information on the blood glucose levels and HbA_{1C} should be included in the patient's medical record.

Practical Recommendations

1. It is important to highlight the importance of preserving oral health in diabetics. Patients should be instructed on oral self-examination in front of a mirror and if they find an abnormal condition to consult the dentist.
2. What to do before the dental consultation? Blood glucose control should be at appropriate levels. The medication prescribed by the attending physician should not be suspended. When going to the dentist's office, bring a record of the last blood glucose measurements and medication and therapies used and information of the attending physician.
3. During the consultation, we must consider that stress causes changes in the body increasing the blood glucose levels. The dentist consultation generates stress; as dentists are aware of that, the consult is given early in the day, and we recommend the patients not to change their diet or medication.
4. We highlight that the dentist will provide a detailed explanation of the patient's oral condition. He will perform prophylaxis and will instruct the patient on the use of oral hygiene instruments and will provide the next appointment. We recommend diabetic patients to visit the dentist every 4 months for a routine assessment and detection of possible infection foci.
5. If treatment is surgery, what to do before, during, and after the procedure. Before surgery, work with your dentist to create the safest surgery plan for you. Focus more on your diabetes control weeks before the surgery. The dentist will examine and talk to you about your health. It is important to know all the drugs you are taking.
6. During surgery. You will see your dentist before surgery to discuss the control plan for your blood sugar during surgery.
7. After surgery, the dentist or the nursing staff will monitor your blood glucose level frequently. You may have more problems to control it if you have problems to eat, if you are stressed after surgery, or if you have pain or discomfort.

   Be aware of the signs of infection such as fever and and a wound that is red or warm to the touch, swollen, and with more pain or if oozing. We recommend being prepared to call the dentist if any questions arise [50].
8. Diabetic patients should be informed that they are at greater risk of developing periodontitis and if they develop it, blood glucose control will be more complicated having a greater risk of developing diabetes-associated complications like cardiovascular and kidney disease.
9. Patients diagnosed with T1DM, T2DM, or gestational diabetes should have a comprehensive oral examination that includes a periodontal assessment.
10. If periodontitis is diagnosed, it should be managed appropriately, if there is no periodontitis, the patient should follow a preventive program to monitor periodontal changes.
11. Diabetic patients that have extensive tooth loss should be encouraged to have dental rehabilitation in order to have proper mastication and nutrition. When a patient loses all their teeth, intake of fibrous food becomes difficult thus having to change to a softer food diet.
12. Annual oral exams are recommended in children and adolescents diagnosed with diabetes starting at age 6.
13. Patients who are not diagnosed with diabetes but who have obvious risk factors for T2DM and signs of periodontitis should be informed they are at risk of developing diabetes; we suggest using a HbA1C test and refer them to the doctor for diagnosis.

Antibiotics and Antimicrobial Prophylaxis

The main objective of dental treatment is to eradicate infectious processes and then maintain dental and periodontal health. Controlled diabetic patients are treated the same way nondiabetic patients are; therefore it is unnecessary to adjust the doses or modify the use of routine drugs in the dentist's consultation. It is important that before the consultation, patients continue their normal diet and their drugs according to the medical prescription. Emergencies and acute infectious processes (with a prior medical interconsultation) should be treated only in uncontrolled diabetic patients; routine treatments should be postponed until blood glucose levels are under control. It is important to consider the presence of organ damage (cardiomyopathy, kidney failure, cirrhosis, emphysema or alcoholism) since special pharmacological considerations have to be given.

There is no scientific evidence to support that controlled diabetic patients are prone to postoperative infections when undergoing uncomplicated dentoalveolar surgery; therefore, it is not justified to prescribe antibiotics in these cases; however, if there is a picture of disseminated infection (fever, trismus, lymphadenitis, general discomfort, cellulitis), it is necessary to apply the principles of infection treatment (drainage, eliminate the etiological factor, empirical administration of antibiotics, and reassessment).

Antibiotic prophylaxis should not be given routinely to diabetic patients (unless the patient presents another systemic condition that requires it). Routine treatments should be avoided in uncontrolled diabetic patients who have blood glucose levels greater than 250 mg/dL. If an emergency surgical procedure is necessary, appropriate antibiotic prophylaxis is warranted (even though there is no evidence to support it), following the same AHA principles to prevent infectious endocarditis (2 g of amoxicillin 1 hour before the procedure). Infections in these patients should be treated aggressively regardless of blood glucose levels.

Guidelines the Physician Should Be Aware of to Suspect an Oral Disease

Given that there is a high risk of developing periodontitis and other oral disorders, in a consensus carried out between the American Association of Periodontology and the European Federation of Periodontology on diabetes and periodontitis, the following clinical recommendations were made for physicians and other healthcare professionals:

1. Diabetic patients should be informed that they are at greater risk of developing periodontitis, and if they develop it, blood glucose control will be more complicated, thus making them at risk of developing complications associated with diabetes such as cardiovascular and kidney disease.
2. As part of the initial evaluation, patients diagnosed with T1DM, T2DM, or gestational diabetes should receive an oral and a periodontal examination.
3. Patients diagnosed with T1DM and T2DM should undergo an oral and a periodontal examination annually (even if they don't have an initial diagnosis of periodontitis).
4. Diabetic people who present clinical signs of periodontitis like tooth mobility, dental separation, or gingival oozing should receive immediate dental care.
5. Diabetic patients who present extensive tooth loss should be encouraged to undergo dental rehabilitation for proper mastication and adequate nutrition.
6. All diabetic patients should receive dental education.
7. We recommend oral examinations every year in children and adolescents diagnosed with diabetes starting at age 6.
8. Diabetic patients should be informed that they may present xerostomia and burning mouth and that they are at greater risk of developing candidiasis unlike nondiabetic patients.

Conclusions

Diabetes mellitus has a profound effect in the overall health of patients. Many clinical manifestations are seen in the oral cavity compromising quality of life. When infections are odontogenic, blood sugar control becomes difficult in these patients. That is why there should be a close relationship between the attending physician, the dentist, and other members of the interdisciplinary team that will provide specialized control of any risk factor that may influence the natural history of diabetes.

Concluding Remarks

- Oral health is an essential component of good health, and it is a basic human right.
- Poor oral health can have severe repercussions in overall health.
- Periodontal disease is a highly prevalent infection that increases among diabetic patients.
- Periodontal disease increases the frequency and severity in diabetics with more systemic complications.
- Periodontal treatment can help to lower blood glucose levels.
- It is essential that the attending physician promote oral health in diabetic patients.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Do oral health and quality of life have any relationship in diabetic people?
   (a) Yes, because treatments constitute 5–10% of the health expense.
   (b) Only if patients do not control their blood glucose levels.
   (c) They don't have any relationship.
   (d) Yes, because if the mouth is healthy, the person feels well.
   (e) It depends on the type of diabetes.
2. How is the infectious process that affects support tissue of teeth and characterized by the destruction of teeth called?
   (a) Gingivitis
   (b) Periodontitis
   (c) Dental abscess
   (d) Gingival abscess
   (e) Periodontal abscess
3. It is one of the main bacteria associated with periodontitis
   (a) *S. mutans*
   (b) *S. sanguis*
   (c) *P. gingivalis*
   (d) *S. aureus*
   (e) *L. acidophilus*
4. Dental caries is an infection that as it advances, it causes the formation of dental abscesses that should be treated in diabetics only when:
   (a) There is no blood sugar control.
   (b) They should always be treated to avoid dissemination of bacteria.
   (c) When purulent abscesses are formed and there is fever.
   (d) When they go to a specialized hospital.
   (e) They shouldn't always be treated; it depends on the depth of the caries.
5. Diabetics are prone to fungal infections such as candidiasis for the following reasons:
   (a) Because the germ is opportunistic.
   (b) Because they are immunosuppressed and they have blood glucose that serves as a substrate for candida.
   (c) For smoking and having little saliva.
   (d) From the effects of the drugs taken by diabetics.
   (e) Due to the poor blood sugar control, the hyposalivation and glucose in the saliva that serves as a substrate for candida.
6. Xerostomia is present in 40–60% of diabetic patients, and the causes are:
   (a) The increase in diuresis and the presence of infection foci.
   (b) The decreased platelet activity or the changes in the collagen synthesis.
   (c) The increase in diuresis and changes in the microcirculation of salivary glands.
   (d) The periodontal disease and cervical cavities present in the oral cavity.
   (e) That diabetics are thirsty constantly.
7. What is periodontal phase 1?
   (a) To perform surgical procedures to eradicate infectious foci.
   (b) Eliminate the causal agent in a nonsurgical manner and control risk factors.
   (c) To perform tooth cleaning.
   (d) To use antibiotics to eliminate infectious foci.
8. What is the effect of periodontal therapy in HbA1c levels?
   (a) They are maintained the same.
   (b) They increase after periodontal treatment.
   (c) They decrease but not significantly.
   (d) They decrease up to 0.5
9. What do we recommended the diabetic patient to do before, during, and after the dentist's consultation?
   (a) Do not suspend medication for going to the dentist, and have records of the attending physician and recent blood glucose levels.
   (b) Have a dental card.
   (c) Have the attending physician's telephone number and all the prescriptions of drugs taken.
   (d) Take the last appointment of the day to avoid any stress.
   (e) Fast before the appointment without brushing their teeth so that the dentist can see the oral condition.
10. Diabetic patients should take prophylactic medication when they present infection in the oral cavity.
    (a) It is always necessary.
    (b) Never.
    (c) Only if they have type 1 diabetes.
    (d) Only elderly patients.
11. An inflammatory process associates to bacterial plaque characterized by an increase in gingival volume, bleeding on probing and reversible when the bacterial plaque is eliminated
    (a) Periodontitis
    (b) Gingivitis
    (c) Candidiasis
    (d) Linear gingival erythema
    (e) Periodontal abscess

Correct Answers

1. (d) Yes, because if the mouth is healthy, the person feels well
2. (b) Periodontitis
3. (c) *P. gingivalis*

4. (b) They should always be treated to avoid dissemination of bacteria
5. (e) Due to the poor blood sugar control, the hyposalivation and glucose in the saliva that serves as a substrate for candida
6. (c) The increase in diuresis and changes in the microcirculation of salivary glands
7. (b) Eliminate the causal agent in a non-surgical manner and control risk factors
8. (d) They decrease up to 0.5
9. (a) Do not suspend medication for going to the dentist, have records of the attending physician and recent blood glucose levels
10. (b) Never
11. (b) Gingivitis

References

1. Organización Mundial de la Salud. The World Oral Health Report 2003. Geneva: OMS; 2003. Disponible en: http://www.who.int/mediacentre/news/releases/2004/pr15/es/.
2. Visión de la FDI 2020. Delinear el futuro de la Salud Bucal. Disponible en: http://www.fdiworldental.org/oral-health/vision-2020/shaping-the-future-of-oral-health.aspx.
3. Hassel TM. Tissues and cells of the periodontium. Periodontol. 1993;3:9–38.
4. Payne WA, Page RC, Olgivie AL, Hall WB. Histopathologic features of the initial and early stages of experimental gingivitis in man. J Periodontal Res. 1975;10:51–64.
5. Löe H, Theilade E, Jensen SB. Experimental gingivitis in man. J Periodontol. 1965;36:177–87.
6. Mariotti A. Dental plaque-induced gingival diseases. Ann Periodontol. 1999;4:7–17.
7. Drisko CL. Periodontal self-care: evidence-based support. Periodontol 2000. 2013;62:243–55.
8. Haffajee AD, Teles RP, Socransky SS. The effect of periodontal therapy on the composition of the subgingival microbiota. Periodontol 2000. 2006;42:219–58.
9. Ledder RG, Gilbert P, Huws SA, Arons L, Ashley MP, Hull PS, McBain AJ. Molecular analysis of the subgingival microbiota in health and disease. Appl Environ Microbiol. 2007;73:516–23.
10. Gemmell E, Yamazaki K, Seymour GJ. Destructive periodontitis lesions are determined by the nature of the lymphocyte response. Crit Rev Oral Biol Med. 2002;13:17–34.
11. Phipps KR, Stevens VJ. Relative contribution of caries and periodontal disease in adult tooth loss for an HMO dental population. J Public Health Dent. 1995;55:250–2.
12. Brecx M, Fro¨licher I, Gehr P, Lang NP. Stereological observations on long term experimental gingivitis in man. J Clin Periodontol. 1988;15:621–7.
13. Darveau RP, Tanner A, Page RC. The microbial challenge in periodontitis. Periodontol 2000. 1997;14:12–32.
14. Gemmell E, Marshall RI, Seymour GJ. Cytokines and prostaglandins in immune homeostasis and tissue destruction in periodontal disease. Periodontol 2000. 1997;14:112–43.
15. Schwartz Z, Goulyschin J, Dean DD, Boyan BD. Mechanisms of alveolar bone destruction in periodontis. Periodontol 2000. 1997;14:158–72.
16. Eke PI, Dye BA, Wei L, Thornton-Evans GO, Genco RJ; on behalf of the participating members of the CDC periodontal. Disease surveillance workgroup. Prevalence of periodontitis in adults in the United States: 2009 and 2010. J Dent Res. 2012:91:914–20.
17. Khader YS, Albashaireh ZS, Alomari MA. Periodontal diseases and the risk of coronary heart and cerebrovascular diseases: a meta-analysis. J Periodontol. 2004;75:1046–53.
18. Mealey BL, Rose LF. Diabetes mellitus and inflammatory periodontal disease. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes. 2008;5:135–41.
19. Löe H. Periodontal disease. The sixth complication of diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1993;16:329–34.
20. The American Academy of Periodontology. Parameter on periodontitis associated with systemic conditions. J Periodontol. 2000;71:876–8.
21. Taylor GW, Manz MC, Borgnakke WS. Diabetes, periodontal disease, dental caries, and tooth loss: a review of the literature. Comp Cont Edu Dent. 2004;25:179–84.
22. Katz J. Elevates blood glucose levels in patients with severe periodontal disease. J Clin Periodontol. 2001;28:710–2.
23. Castellanos JL, Díaz LM, Gay O. Medicina en odontología en Manejo dental de pacientes con enfermedades sistémicas. México. El Manual Moderno 1996;8:270–283.
24. Tsai C, Hayes C, Taylor GW. Glycemic control of type 2 diabetes and severe periodontal disease in the US adult population. Community Dent Oral Epidemiol. 2002;30:182–92.
25. Taylor GW, Burt BA, Becker MP, Genco RJ, Shlossman M, Knowler WC, Pettitt DJ. Non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus and alveolar bone loss progression over 2 years. J Periodontol. 1998;69:76–83.
26. Schmidt AM, Weidman E, Lalla E, Yan SD, Hori O, Cao R, Brett JG, Lamster IB. Advanced glycation end products (AGEs) induce oxidant stress in the gingiva: a potential mechanism underlying accelerated periodontal disease associated with diabetes. J Periodontal Res. 1996;31:508–15.
27. Katz J, Bhattacharyya I, Farkhondeh-Kish F, Perez FM, Caudle RM, Heft MW. Expression of the receptor of advanced glycation end products in gingival tissues of type 2 diabetes patients with chronic periodontal disease: a study utilizing immunohistochemistry and RT-PCR. J Clin Periodontol. 2005;32:40–4.
28. Page RC. The pathobiology of periodontal diseases may affect systemic diseases: inversion of a paradigm. Ann Periodontol. 1998;3:108–20.
29. Kinane DF, Riggio MP, Walker KF, MacKenzie D, Shearer B. Bacteraemia following periodontal procedures. J Clin Periodontol. 2005;32:708–13.
30. Li X, Kolltveit KM, Tronstad L, Olsen I. Systemic diseases caused by oral infection. Cain Microbiol Rev. 2000;13:547–58.
31. Elter JR, Hinderliter AL, Offenbacher S, Beck JD, Caughey M, Brodala N, Madianos PN. The effects of periodontal therapy on vascular endothelial function: a pilot trial. Am Heart J. 2006;15:47.
32. Teeuw WJ, Gerdes VE, Loos BG. Effect of periodontal treatment on glycemic control of diabetic patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:421–7.
33. Diaz-Romero RM, Casanova-Roman G, Robles-Andrade MS. Association of uncontrolled glycemia with periodontal, urinary tract and cervical vaginal infections in a group of type 2 diabetic women during pregnancy and during the postnatal period. Int J Diabetes Clin Res. 2016;3:052–7.
34. Borgnakke WS, Ylostalo PV, Taylor GW, Genco RJ. Effect of periodontal disease on diabetes: systematic review of epidemiologic observational evidence. J Clin Periodontol. 2013;40:135–52. (Suppl 14).
35. Engebretson S, Kocher T. Evidence that periodontal treatment improves diabetes outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Periodontol. 2013;40:153–63. (Suppl 14).
36. Engebretson S, Kocher T. Evidence that periodontal treatment improves diabetes outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Periodontol. 2013;40(Suppl. 14):S153–63.

37. Armitage GC. Learned and unlearned concepts in periodontal diagnostics: a 50-year perspective. Periodontol 2000. 2013;62:20–36.
38. Lisa JAHM, Lang NP. Surgical and nonsurgical periodontal therapy. Learned and unlearned concepts. Periodontology 2000. 2013;62:218–31.
39. Cortellini P, Tonetti MS. Clinical and radiographic out- comes of the modified minimally invasive surgical technique with and without regenerative materials: a randomized-controlled trial in intrabony defects. J Clin Periodontol. 2011;38:365–73.
40. Moreira AR, Passos IA, Sampaio FC, Soares MSM, Oliveira RJ. Flow rate, pH and calcium concentration of saliva of children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes mellitus. Braz J Med Biol Res. 2009;42(8):707–11.
41. Malickaa B, Kaczmareka U, Katarzyna Skośkiewicz-Malinowska B. Prevalence of xerostomia and the salivary flow rate in diabetic patients. Adv Clin Exp Med. 2014;23(2):225–33.
42. Sánchez-Pérez L, Sáenz-Martínez L, Luengas-Aguirre I, Irigoyen Camacho E, Álvarez Castro AR, Farmacologia A-GE. Stimulated saliva flow rate analysis and its relation to dental decay. A six years follow-up. Rev ADM. 2015;72(1):33–7.
43. Díaz-Romero RM, Robles-Andrade MS, Ortega-González C. Diabetes mellitus en Farmacología y Terapéutica en Odontología. Espinosa Meléndez 1ª.Edición. México: Editorial: Medica Panamericana 2012. 251–255.
44. Díaz-Romero RM, Agami_Gorinstein C, Ovadia-Rafel R, Villegas-Álvarez F. Xerostomia, hiposalivación y diabetes. Diabetes hoy para el médico y profesional de la salud 2008;IX(4):2061–2064.
45. Leo M Sreebny DDS, Albert Yu MD, Andrew Green MD, Anthony Valdini MD+. Author affiliations. Xerostomia in diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 1992;15:900–4.
46. Edwards JE Jr. Candida species. In: Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors. Principles and practice of infectious diseases. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone; 2009. chap 257.
47. Affoo RH, Foley N, Garrick R, Siqueira WL, Martin RE. Meta-analysis of salivary flow rates in young and older adults. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2015;63:2142–51.
48. Sanz-Sánchez I, Bascones-Martínez A. Diabetes mellitus: Su implicación en la patología oral y periodontal. Av Odontoestomatol [Internet]. 2009 Oct [citado 2016 Jun 27];25(5):249–263. Disponible en: http://scielo.isciii.es/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0213128520090005000003&lng=es.
49. Domek N, Dux K, Pinzur M, Weaver F, Rogers T. J Foot Ankle Surg. 2016;20(16):30064–3.
50. Chapple ILC, Genco R, and on behalf of working group 2 of the joint EFP/AAP workshop. Diabetes and periodontal diseases: consensus report of the joint EFP/AAP workshop on periodontitis and systemic diseases. J Clin Periodontol 2013;40(Suppl. 14):S106–S112.

Renal Disease in Diabetes

51

Carlos A. Garza-García, Virgilia Soto-Abraham, and Magdalena Madero

History

Urinary anomalies in diabetic patients have long been described; many long-standing historical documents refer, for example, to the characteristic sweet taste or smell in the urine of these population. The first description of renal anomalies in diabetic patients goes back to the 1700s, when Domenico Cotugno de Bari described proteinuria in this population [1]. Next century, Claude Bernard found nephromegaly in diabetic kidneys in 1840 [2], and it was not until 1936 that Kimmelstiel and Wilson described nodular-fibrotic lesions in the glomeruli and diabetic nephropathy, a syndrome characterized by hypertension, proteinuria, and loss of kidney function. Later, in 1969, Harry Keen did a landmark discovery in diabetic nephropathy with the description of albuminuria in diabetic patients and established it as a surrogate for glomerular damage. With all the former discoveries, Mogensen et al. proposed the clinical picture of the natural history for diabetic nephropathy in 1983 [3]. As of today, Mogensen's sequence of diabetic nephropathy continues to be the accepted paradigm with some new features being considered.

Epidemiology of Diabetic Nephropathy

As it is widely known, diabetes has epidemic proportions with a global estimated prevalence of 8.3% in 2014, corresponding to an approximate of 387 million people worldwide [4], and it is expected to increase to 592 million of affected individuals by 2035 [5], likely a reflect of worldwide obesity pandemia. Another inherent partner of this world-expected increase in diabetes mellitus is diabetic kidney disease (DKD). For type 1 diabetes, DKD develops in approximately 30% of patients [6] and in about 40% of those with type 2 diabetes. Diabetic population, both type 1 and 2, accounts for 30–45% of chronic kidney disease (CKD) patients, but since DKD diagnosis is based on the presence of albuminuria as diagnostic criteria, DKD is probably more prevalent when ophthalmologic examination, estimated glomerular filtration rate, and kidney biopsies are included as additional diagnostic criteria.

Pathophysiology

Even though hyperglycemia plays a major role in the development of DKD, other mechanisms have been proposed [7]. Hemodynamic, metabolic, inflammatory pathways, autophagy, and enhanced sodium-glucose transporter 2 (SGLT-2) expression have also been involved in the DKD progression.

Hemodynamic Pathway

Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS) activation, mainly through angiotensin II and endothelin-1, produces a vasoconstriction effect on the efferent arteriole and leads to the widely known hyperfiltration phenomenon. Along with this hemodynamic effect, both molecules enhance mesangial cell hypertrophy and proliferation, extracellular matrix deposition, hypertension, endothelial dysfunction, inflammation, and fibrosis [8].

Metabolic Pathway

First described in 2001 by Brownlee [9], he showed that hyperglycemia activates superoxide, which inhibits glycolysis last enzymatic step at GADPH (glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase) preventing formation of 1,3-diphosphoglycerate. The former increases upstream

C. A. Garza-García · V. Soto-Abraham · M. Madero (✉)
Instituto Nacional de Cardiología Ignacio Chávez, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_51

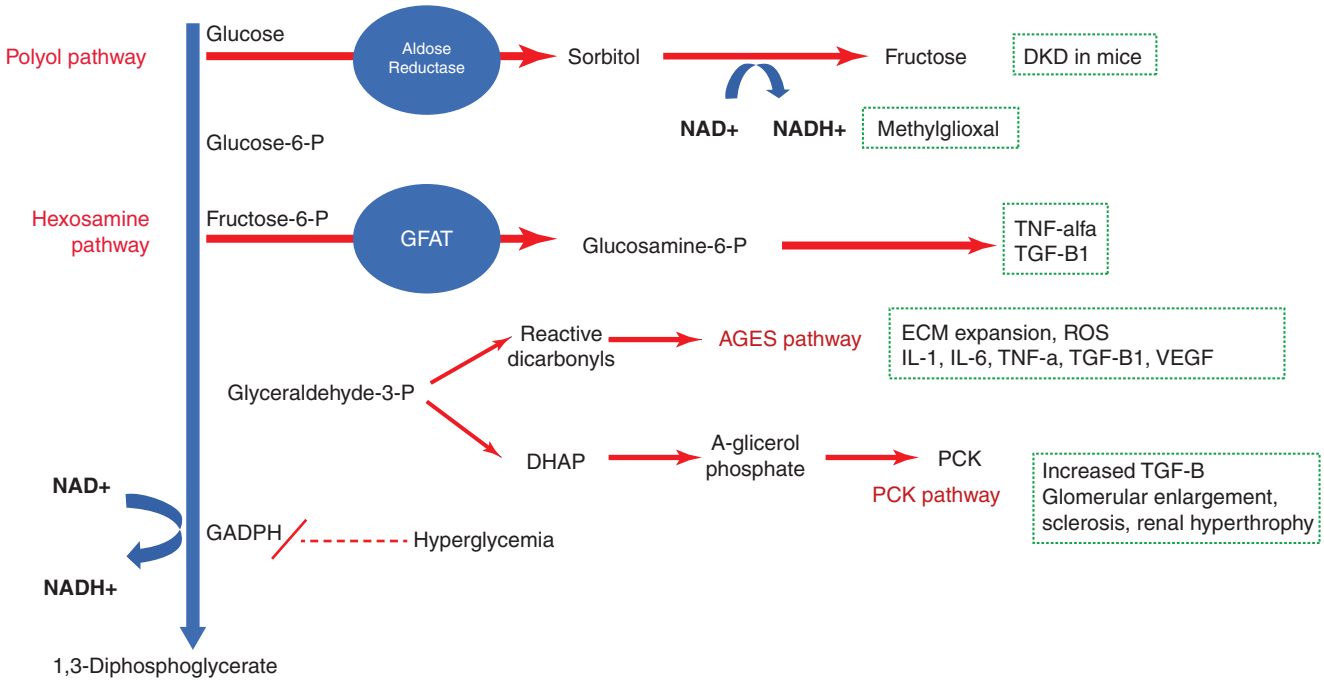


Fig. 51.1 Glycolysis in hyperglycemia. (Glycolysis biochemistry is altered by hyperglycemia; it inhibits GADPH and increases upstream pathways, end products of such pathways)

metabolic steps which end up in increased polyol pathway, hexosamine pathway, advanced glycation end products (AGES), and protein kinase C (PKC) (Fig. 51.1).

Polyol Path

Glucose is converted to sorbitol and into fructose afterward. Sorbitol production decreases intracellular NADPH, which ends up in less available glutathione that increases cellular stress and apoptosis. Oxidation of sorbitol leads to fructose generation, which increases NADPH to NAD proportion. This particular change enhances glycolysis inhibition by blockade of GADPH activity. Fructose generated by polyol pathway has shown to be nephrotoxic in mice models [8]; it increases glomerular and tubular damage along with proteinuria and decreases glomerular filtration rate (GFR).

Hexosamine Pathway

This track starts with fructose-6-phosphate which is then converted into glucosamine-6-phosphate, a transcription inducer of inflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-a) and transforming growth factor beta 1 (TGF-B1). The latter has well-known pathogenic effects such as mesangial matrix expansion and renal cell hypertrophy.

Advanced Glycation End Products (AGES) Pathway

AGES is a generic name for a group of products generated during hyperglycemia due to aberrant glycolysis. The process starts in glyceraldehyde-3-P and ends up in products such as glyoxal and methylglyoxal. These end products damage cells by impairing and/or modifying function of intra- and extracellular proteins, such as laminin and type IV collagen of the Glomerular basement membrane (GBM) and increases permeability and thereby proteinuria [10–12]. Also AGES increase the expression of profibrotic molecules such as fibronectin and collagen type I and IV, leading to extracellular matrix expansion. AGES by themselves have the property of binding to pro-inflammatory receptors and induce expression of IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-a (tumoral growth factor alpha), TGF-B1 (transforming growth factor beta 1), connective tissue growth factor (CTGF), and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) [11, 13–15].

Protein Kinase C Pathway

Similar to AGES, the protein kinase C pathway (PKC) metabolism begins with glyceraldehyde-3-P; hyperglycemia leads to dihydroacetone phosphate (DHAP) and ultimately diacylglycerol (DAG). This last element contributes to the activation of PKC, which in turn upregulates prostaglandin E2 and nitric oxide in the afferent arteriole leading to vasodilation and increases angiotensin II over the efferent arteriole ending in vasoconstriction at this point. These vascular phenomenon increases glomerular pressure and corresponds to what is known as glomerular hyperfiltration [16–19]. PKC also mediates VEGF, leading to increased permeability of GBM, and induces CTGF and TFG-B1 which favor thickening of GBM and deposition of extracellular matrix [16].

Inflammatory Pathway

Chronically activated immune system and persistent low-grade inflammation in diabetes have been proposed as a contributor to DKD, latter through an inflammatory transcription factor, NF-kappa beta (NFKB), which is present in human kidney cells along glomerulus and tubule-interstitium. Hyperglycemia induces NFKB, which correlates with interstitial inflammation and proteinuria. Proteinuria by itself further enhances NFKB expression closing a positive feedback loop with hyperglycemia [20–25]. Inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-alpha, IL-1, IL-6, and IL-8 are much more expressed in renal tissue of diabetic models when compared to nondiabetic controls [26, 27]. Inflammatory cytokines correlate positively with the degree of albuminuria in diabetic patients. Also, contribution to GBM thickening, increase in endothelial permeability, apoptosis, and direct toxic effect to renal cells have been proposed as potential pathogenic mechanisms [7].

Autophagy

Autophagy is considered a protective phenomenon that allows cells to maintain homeostasis during starvation or oxidative stress [28, 29]. It allows cells to degradate intracellular proteins and organelles to self-sustain [29, 30]. Podocytes usually have a high level of autophagy. In vitro studies of podocyte exposure to hyperglycemia have shown impairment of this phenomenon and subsequent cellular injury [31–33].

SGLT-2

Hyperglycemia upregulates SGLT-2 in the kidney. This mechanism had been initially considered an evolutionary benefit for glucose claiming and energy storage; however, it has been now shown to have deleterious effects in diabetic patients by further contributing to hyperglycemic state and activation of all the physiopathologic pathways and autophagy impairment [34, 35].

Albuminuria

Emphasis on albuminuria across the scientific literature is explained by its correlation with the loss of glomerular filtration rate and increased cardiovascular risk [1, 2, 36]. Albuminuria is the consequence of a wide, and still not completely understood, interaction within functional (reversible) forces and histopathologic (irreversible) changes [37]. Functional forces are systemic and glomerular hemodynamic disturbances that lead the anatomical structures (Glomerular basement membrane, podocyte, and mesangium) to develop irreversible changes. Nonetheless, neither is completely responsible for albuminuria. High hemodynamic pressure over non-damaged structures may not end up in albuminuria, as hemodynamic control over structurally damaged nephrons may not lead to albuminuria either. It has been proposed that the link that regulates interaction between the hemodynamic forces and anatomical structures is the endothelial glycocalyx. Endothelial glycocalyx receives sheer stress, hypertension forces, hyperglycemia, and inflammation, among other factors that ultimately end up in glycocalyx degeneration and, with it, the loss of mechanical and electrical sieving that allows albuminuria.

Natural History of Diabetic Nephropathy: The Clinical Picture

From a clinical standpoint, DKD is the dynamic result of multiple risk factors divided as demographic (older age, gender, ethnicity), hereditary (family history for DKD, genetic conditions), systemic conditions (hyperglycemia, obesity, hypertension), kidney injuries (acute kidney injuries, toxins, smoking), and dietary factors (high protein intake). The former lead to a sequence of susceptibility, initiation, and progression of DKD. The last two stages of this sequence (initiation and progression) correspond to the known and now changing natural history of DKD. Even though the description of DKD natural history involves mainly type 1 diabetics, it is widely accepted for both type 1 and 2 scenarios. A five-stage continuum through time is the result of two main variables, glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and albuminuria (Fig. 51.2).

Early Hypertrophy and Hyperfunction (Hyperfiltration)

Structural, biochemical, and renal function changes are described. Within the structural anomalies, the most remarkable is the increased growth of both kidneys. Such phenomenon is a consequence of tubular hypertrophy and interstitial expansion related to SGLT-2 increase glucose reabsorption along with sodium and water. Hyperglycemia enhances nitric oxide, TFG-B1, CTGF, VEGF, and angiotensin II [1]. Such biochemical environment dilates the afferent arteriole and closes the efferent arteriole, leaving the glomerulus without appropriate autoregulation. The latter allows an elevated intra-glomerular pressure with an enforced 20–40% increase in GFR, phenomenon known as renal hyperfiltration [2, 3]. Aside from hyperfiltration, dilation of afferent arteriole allows systemic arterial pressure to reflect directly on the glomerulus, further increasing glomerular stress and hyperfiltration effect.

Stage	Timeline	Histology	GFR	Baseline albumin excretion	Blood pressure	Reversible	Comments
I. Hyperfiltration	At diagnosis	Nephron hypertrophy	Increase 20 to 40%	Normal excretion	Normal	Yes	Reversable
II. Silent nephropathy	After 2 years	Increase in BM Mesangial expansion	Increase 20–30%	Normal excretion	Normal	Structural Unknown Albuminuria Yes	Progress to clinically overt in 30–40% patients
III. Incipient nephropathy	After 10–15 years	Not well defined	Increase 20–30%	Moderatly increased	Incipient increase	Structural Unknown Albuminuria Yes	Manage risk factors
IV. Overt nephropathy	After 15–20 years	Nodular sclerosis Capsular drops Arteriolar hyalinosis	Decline 1ml/month	Severe and progressive Increase	Hypertensive	No	Delay progression
V. End stage renal disease	After 25–30 years Final outcome	Glomerular global esclerosis	<15 ml/min	Slight decline	Hypertensive	No	Renal replacement

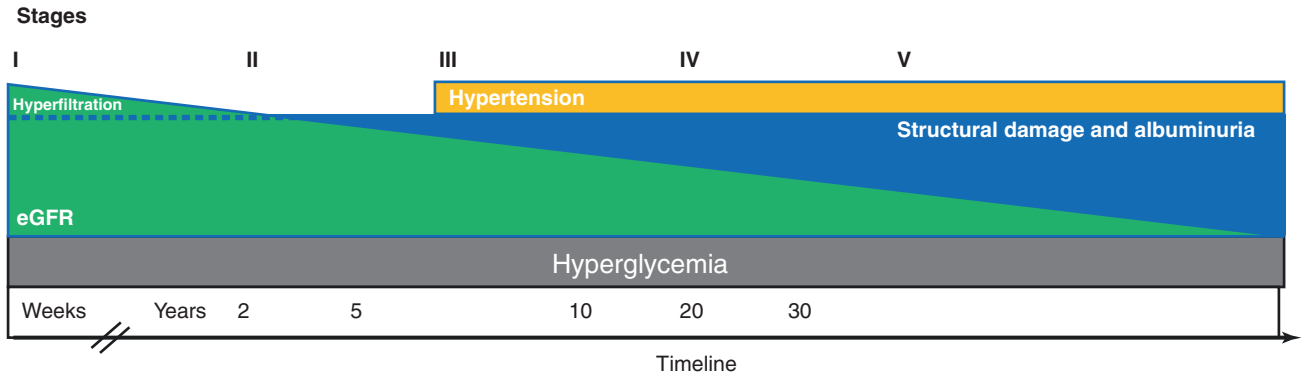


Fig. 51.2 Diabetic nephropathy. (Adapted and modified from Mogensen et al. [3])

All the above mentioned mechanisms are clinically silent since the main clinical features used to diagnose DKD (GFR and albuminuria) are absent at this stage. Nonetheless, when diabetic patients at this stage of nephropathy exercise with in ≥55% of the maximum expected heart rate (MEHR), they develop albuminuria, a lower threshold when compared to nondiabetic healthy individual, where ≥65% of MEHR is needed to start with some degree of albuminuria [3].

Up to this stage of nephropathy, hyperfiltration- and exercise-induced albuminurias are reversible by glycemic control within 6 days [3]. A fact that further emphasizes that kidney damage from diabetes comes from a long-standing process.

Silent Nephropathy (Glomerular Lesion Without Clinical Disease)

Diabetic patients remain in this stage for many years, without decrease in GFR of development of albuminuria in a steady state. Nonetheless, 30–40% of this group of patients will progress to overt diabetic nephropathy due to multiple histopathologic anomalies established through the glomeruli, tubule-interstitium, and blood vessels. Most remarkable modifications are thickening of the Glomerular basement membrane, mesangial expansion, glomerulosclerosis, interstitial inflammation, and fibrosis [2].

Incipient Diabetic Nephropathy

Timeline for this stage corresponds to approximately 10–15 years of diabetic disease, and it is expected in about 1/3 of diabetic patients. The main characteristic of this phase is the onset and consistency of moderately increased albuminuria in the range between 30 and 300 mg/day. Likewise, steady increase of blood pressure adds on to the development of albuminuria at a rate of about 3 mmHg/year until overt hypertension is detected [2]. Type 1 diabetic patients with mild (<30 mg/day), moderate (30–300 mg/day), and severe (>300 mg/day) albuminuria have a prevalence of hypertension of 42%, 52%, and 79%, respectively. For type 2 diabetic patients, the same categories have a hypertension prevalence of 71%, 90%, and 93% [36].

When albuminuria is found within the first 5 years on new-onset diabetes in the absence of diabetic retinopathy and in the presence of nephrotic syndrome or accelerated

loss of kidney function, a biopsy should be considered to rule out other causes of kidney disease other than diabetes.

Evolution of diabetic nephropathy up to this stage is most often accompanied by obesity, hyperuricemia, tobacco use, and noncontrolled hypertension. Treatment of the former entities along with glycemic control may lead to reverse albuminuria and its associated cardiovascular risk.

Overt Diabetic Nephropathy

This phase describes what it is now known as diabetic nephropathy syndrome: decreased GFR, increased proteinuria, and systemic hypertension. This stage's timeline is about 15–20 years after the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus and 30–40% of patients with diabetic renal involvement will progress to this point. Structural and functional anomalies are irreversible, systemic hypertension is usually present and is the most damaging entity to kidney function, and there is a progressive decline of GFR at an approximate rate of 1 ml/min/month without medical treatment.

End-Stage Renal Failure

Within 25–30 years of diabetes mellitus evolution, end-stage renal disease is expected in those patients who had renal involvement. Clinical picture is not different from any other patient in this stage of kidney disease.

New Findings in the Natural History of Diabetic Nephropathy

The evolution of diabetic nephropathy has now changed. Most patients do not evolve without medical and pharmacological interventions seeking to control progression of disease. The most dramatic change in the natural history described by Moguensen et al. is the possibility to retard the progression of albuminuria levels, from mild to moderate or severe, even when the former and the latter are established, and to achieve complete remission [38, 39]. Albuminuria evolution has changed since the widespread use of ACE inhibitors and ARBs; further body of knowledge is growing in the field of SGLT-2 receptor antagonists. However despite the absence of albuminuria, some patients continue to lose GFR through time. A new phenotype of diabetic nephropathy has been postulated, the non-albuminuric diabetic nephropathy (Fig. 51.3). Approximately 20–50% of type 2 diabetics with a GFR less than 60 ml/min correspond to this group [38].

Natural History and KDIGO Classification

The KDIGO classification is the most widely used and accepted CKD classification. We propose an overlapping figure merging Moguensen's described natural history and KDIGO CKD progression (Fig. 51.4).

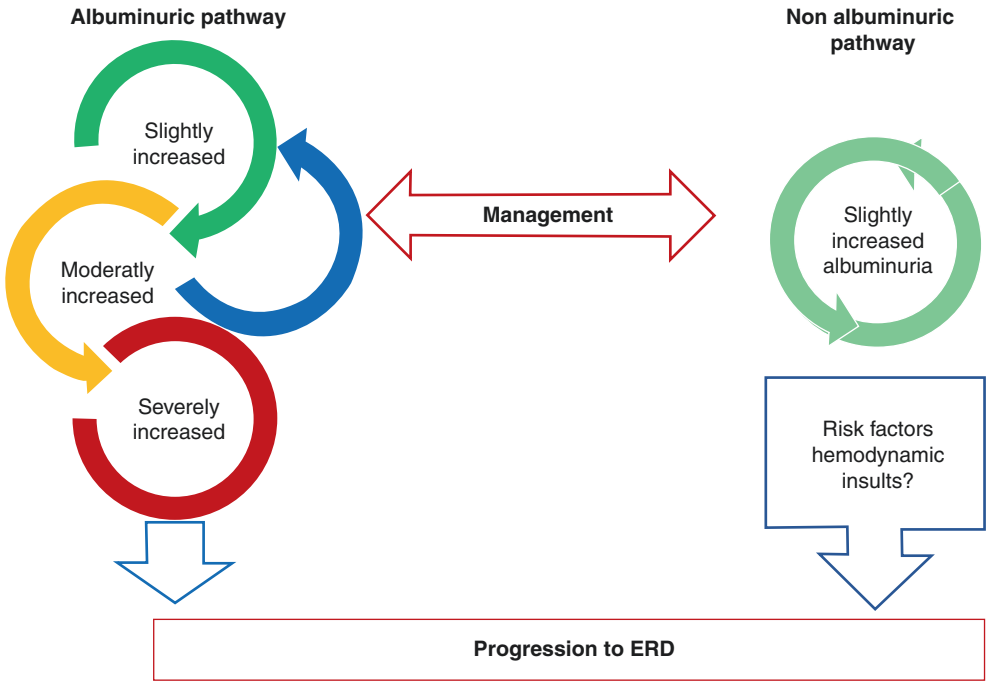


Fig. 51.3 New paradigm of diabetic nephropathy. (Adapted and modified from Pugliese [38])

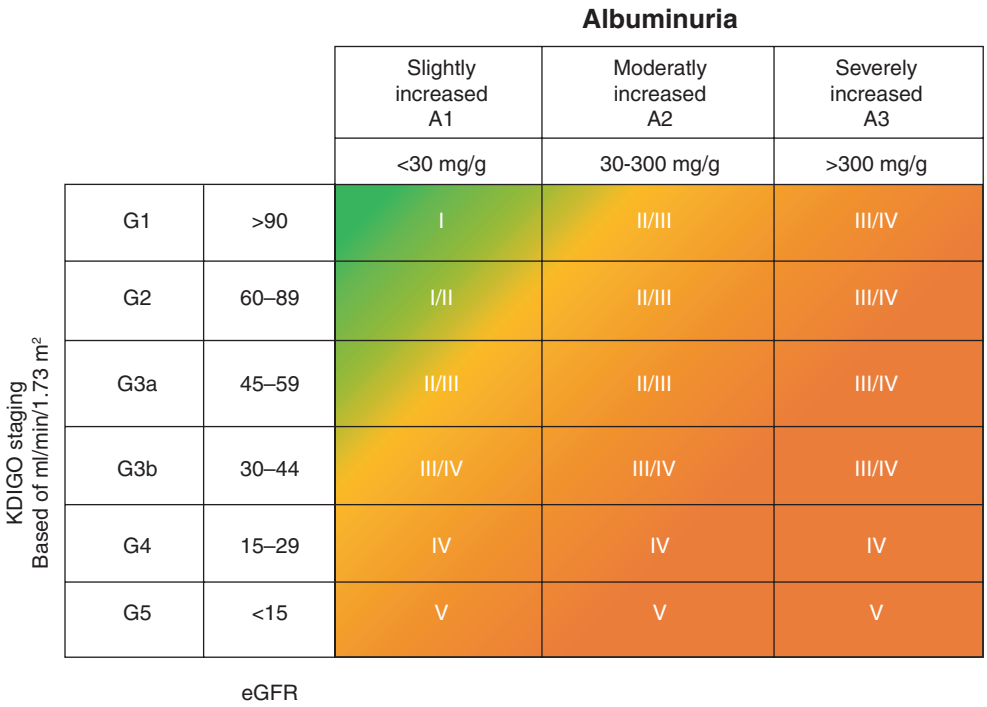


Fig. 51.4 Overlap between KDIGO CKD classification Mogensen's diabetic kidney disease natural history. (M Mogensen classification stage, G KDIGO CKD staging, A Albuminuria; Adapted and modified: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) CKD Work Group [40])

Nephropathology

Biopsy Adequacy

As for elemental histopathology recommendations, biopsy core should contain at least 12 full glomeruli. For light microscopy, tissue section must be within 2–3 micrometers thick; two slides must be assigned to H&E, two more for PAS stain, one for Masson trichrome, and one for Jone's silver methenamine. As for direct immunofluorescence, non-fixated tissue is recommended to perform frozen sections and incubate with immunoreactants: IgG, IgA, IgM, C1q, C3c, C4c, fibrinogen, albumin, kappa, and lambda. Finally, a small cortex fraction should be fixed in 2.5% glutaraldehyde for electron microscopy. This last technique is quite useful to characterize and differentiate within nondiabetic lesion on top of diabetic damage.

Histology

According to the Renal Pathology Society [39, 41], diabetic nephropathy is described by light microscopy, through four glomerular stages (Table 51.1); interstitial and vascular affection are also described (Table 51.2).

As for the mentioned stages and findings, we consider the following:

Table 51.1 Glomerular classification of diabetic nephropathy based on light microscopy

Class	Description	Criteria
I	Mild or nonspecific changes and EM-proven GBM thickening	Biopsy does not meet criteria for any other class below GBM in EM is >395 nm in females and >430 nm in males[a]
IIa	Mild mesangial expansion	Biopsy does not meet criteria for classes III and IV Mild mesangial expansion in >25% of the observed mesangium
IIb	Severe mesangial expansion	Biopsy does not meet criteria for classes III and IV Severe mesangial expansion in >25% of the observed mesangium
III	Nodular Sclerosis (Kimmelstiel-Wilson lesion)	Biopsy does not meet criteria for class IV At least one convincing Kimmelstiel-Wilson lesion
IV	Advanced diabetic glomerulosclerosis	Global glomerulosclerosis in >50% of glomeruli Lesion from classes I to III must be present

EM electron microscopy, *GBM* Glomerular basement membrane
As described by: Tervaert et al. [39]
[a]Individuals must be 9 years old or older

Table 51.2 Interstitial and vascular lesions of diabetic nephropathy described by light microcopy

Lesion	Criteria	Score
Interstitial lesion	No IFTA	0
	<25% IFTA	1
	25–50% IFTA	2
	>50% IFTA	3
Interstitial inflammation	Absent	0
	Infiltration only in IFTA	1
	Infiltration outside IFTA	2
Vascular lesions		
Arterial hyalinosis	Absent	0
	A least 1 area of arteriolar hyalinosis	1
	More than 1 area of arteriolar hyalinosis	2
Presence of large vessel	Yes/no	
Arteriolosclerosis (score by worst artery)	No intimal thickening	0
	Intimal thickening less than thickness of media	1
	Intimal thickening greater than thickness of media	2

As described by: Tervaert et al. [39]

- Stage 1. Early morphologic changes develop within the first 5 years of disease, affect Glomerular basement membrane but can only be recognized at EM level. These findings correspond to simultaneous thickening and scarring of GBM, tertiary podocyte processes effacement, and some focal podocytopenia. As diabetes continues to evolve, GBM accumulate type IV collagen, laminin, and fibronectin leading to double or triple length of its original width, the former thickening damage filtration barrier by direct endothelial damage and fenestral loss. Fibrin and fibrinogen begin to deposit in the subendothelium. At this point, first light microscopy findings are visible through PAS and Jone's methenamine stains, which reveal the important thickening of GBM. Simultaneously, microaneurisms and membrane remodeling as folding and laminated areas, even focally duplicated membranes start developing.
- Stage 2. After damage has been stablished at GBM, as a result of direct AGEs effect, mesangium begins to accumulate extracellular matrix and leads to mesangiosclerosis. Early mesangioslcerosis is focal and involves only some glomerular segments; progression leads to global and diffuse mesangium replacement which ends up in increased size and hyperlobulation.
- Stage 3. Most characteristic diabetic kidney disease histologic findings correspond to this stage. Kimmelstiel-Wilson's nodular lesions are appreciated. These lesions are the result of diffuse mesangiosclerosis and microthrombi within the endothelium of dysfunctional microaneurisms. Microthrombi are constantly and chronically produced and reabsorbed, leading to collagen deposits in a laminated manner which finally generates a typical peripheral acellular nodule in the glomerular tuft. It is also common to find in former microaneurism areas, foam appearance endothelial and endocapillary cells. Such findings are known as "insudative lesions," a result of intracapillary pressure that manifests as "subcapsular drops," "fibrotic caps," and areas of hyalinosis, all of which share the same physiopathologic nature.
- Stage 4. Global sclerosis, nodular structures, and areas of hyalinosis characterize this stage. When more than 90% of the glomeruli present the mentioned findings, advanced interstitial fibrosis and tubular atrophy (IFTA), along with vascular damage, are common. This is the final stage of cumulative damage, resulting not only because of metabolic injury but also from chronic ischemia after vessels develop nodular hyalinosis, sclerosis, tunica media hypertrophy and tunica intima fibrotic obliteration.

Nowadays, immunofluorescence and immunohistochemistry are considered as part of routine assessment of kidney biopsy. As previously stated, 5 mm samples of non-fixed renal cortex are desirable for frozen cuts. If this is not feasible, the study can be performed from tissue out of the paraffin block, which even though is useful, it must be pointed out that such technique is less sensitive than frozen cuts without fixation.

Tissue out of paraffin block can also be used for indirect immunoperoxidase technique, although with the paramount disadvantage of a less sensitive study.

Diabetic kidney disease continuum implies that histopathologic lesions will not be all at the same stage. A collage of microscopic lesions, from incipient to advanced, will be found. Classification of diabetic kidney disease depends on histologic findings and clinical picture considering an orderly mannered approach by glomerular, interstitial and vascular findings. It should be emphasized that, being diabetes mellitus such a common entity, it is not uncommon to describe diabetic nephropathy on top of many other nondiabetic entities.

Advanced IFTA is considered the histologic manifestation of end-stage renal disease. As to vessel histology, even though the Renal Pathology Society classification does not make distinction between afferent and efferent arteriolar hyalinosis, it is considered that efferent arteriolar hyalinosis is the most specific vessel finding for diabetic nephropathy, since involvement of the afferent arteriole (afferent arterial hyalinosis) might be present in other entities.

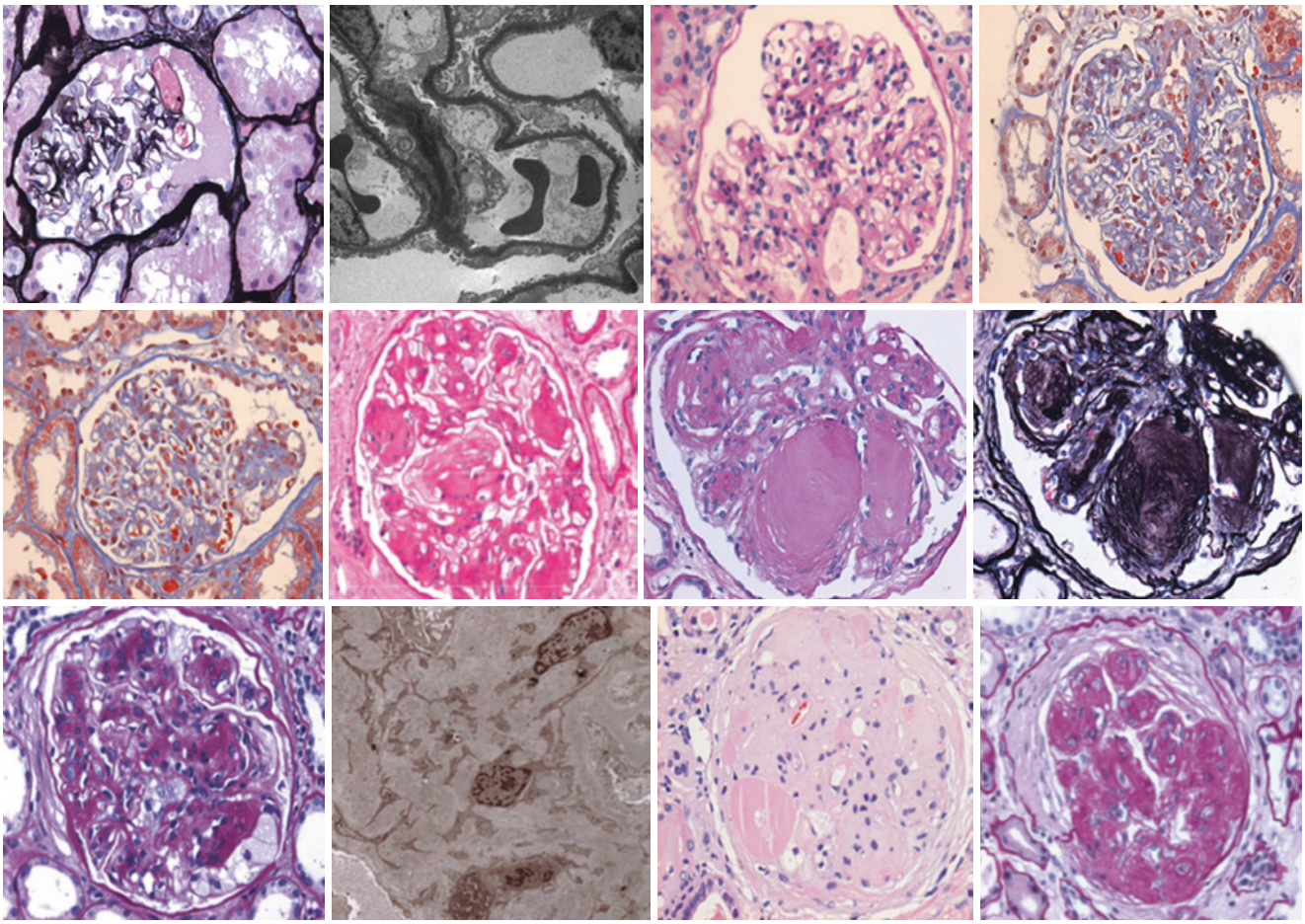


Image 51.1 Microphotography showing the different types of diabetic glomerular damage, based on RPS classification. (**a**) Jone's methenamine 40× illustrates glomeruli with basal membrane irregularities and a microaneurism. (**b**) Electron microscopy at 2000×, diffuse and homogenous thickening of basal glomerular membrane (RPS Class I). (**c**) PAS 40×, low-moderate expansion of mesangial matrix generating mesangioesclerosis (Class IIA, RPS). (**d**) Masson trichrome 40×, diffuse and homogeneous mesangial thickening, causing glomerular hyperlobulation (Class IIB, RPS). (**d**, **e**, and **f**) Microphotography with Masson's trichrome, PAS [2], and Jone's methenamine, respectively. Each at 40×, different stages of acellular collagen forming nodular structures (Class III RPS). (**f**) Residual microaneurisms with endothelial edema within capillary loops, a frequent type of damage in advanced stages of DM. (**g**) Electron microscopy with diffuse collagen deposits within mesangium, characteristic finding in diabetic damage. (**e** and **i**) H&E and PAS staining, each at 40×, globally sclerosed glomeruli with presence of hyaline nodules, this findings correspond to DM. When found in most of the glomeruli, corresponds to Class IV RPS (Advanced sclerosis)

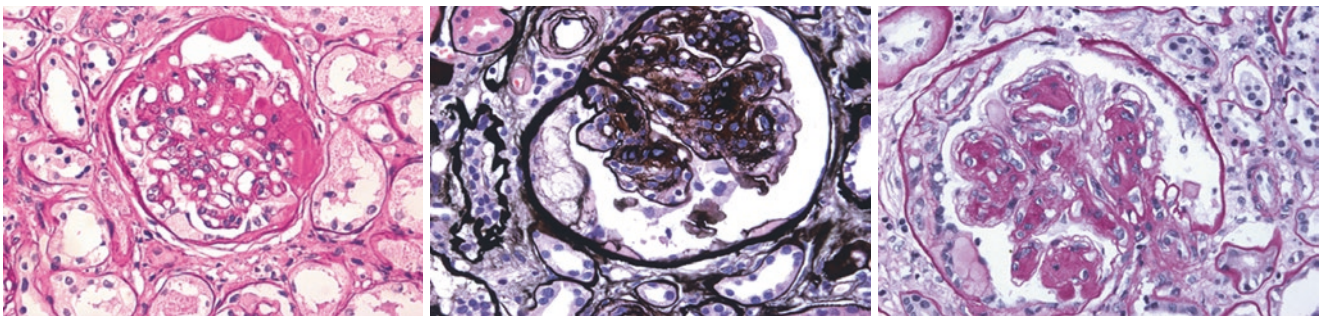


Image 51.2 Tubulo-interstitial lesions, part of diabetic nephropathy with outmost relevance for renal function prognosis. (**a**, **b**) PAS and Masson trichrome 10×, tubulo-interstitial fibrosis with loss of tubular "back-to-back" pattern; small-caliber arteries present fibrotic damage within arterial intima. (**c**) PAS 40×, lamination and thickening of tubular basal membranes along with atrophic changes. (**d**, **e**, and **f**) Microvascular lesions in arterioles, PAS, H&E, and Masson trichrome, respectively, each at 40×. Advanced arteriolopathy with complete occlusion of vascular lumen. This finding often leads to chronic ischemic glomerular damage and vessel wall hyalinosis, on top of diabetic damage

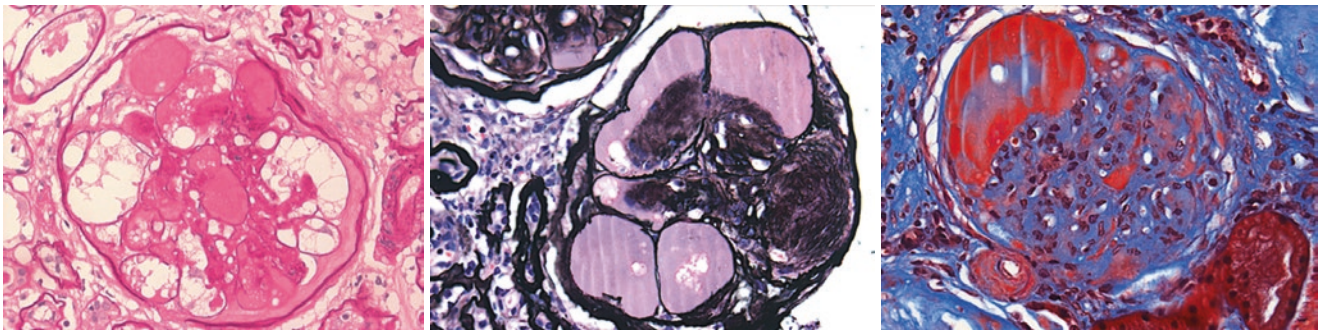


Image 51.2 (continued)

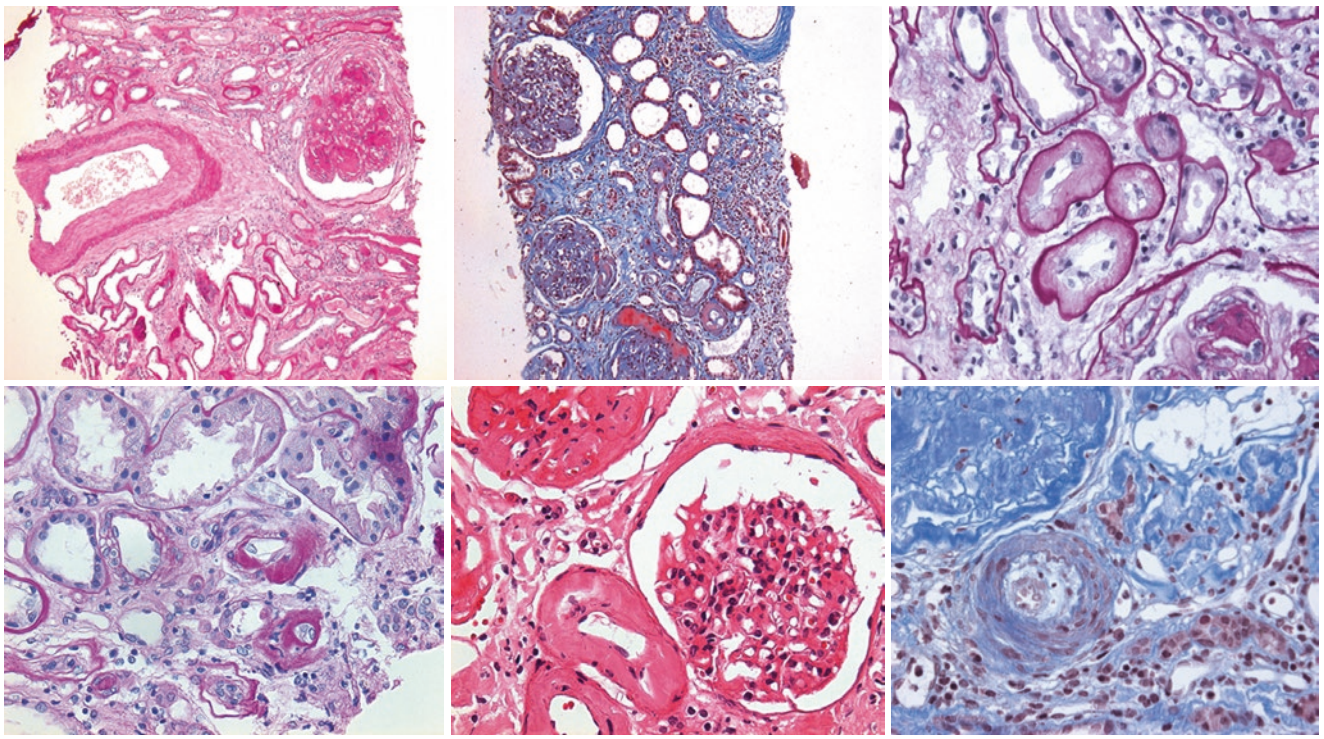


Image 51.3 Glomerular insudative lesion. Frequently found in diabetic nephropathy: (**a**) PAS 40×, subcapsular gout, Bowman's capsule-dependent lesion. (**b**, **c**) PAS 40×, fibrous casquet. (**d**, **e** and **f**) PAS, Jone's methenamine, and Masson trichrome, respectively. Each at 40× showing glomerular hyalinosis

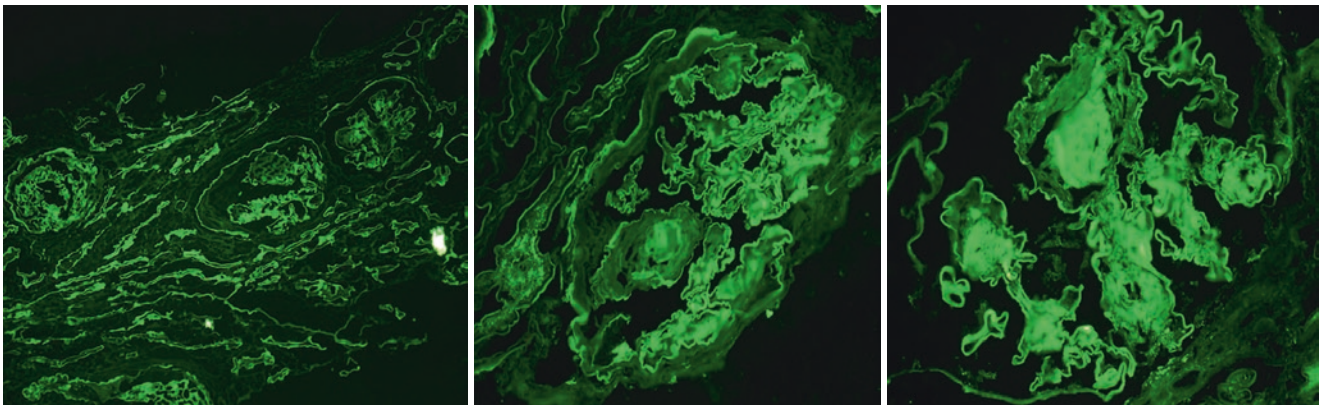


Image 51.4 Direct immunofluorescence in diabetic nephropathy: (**a**, **b**, and **c**) Albumin 10× and 40× and IgG 40×, respectively. Hyperfiltration generates linear positivity in glomerular and tubular basal membranes. Albumin shows tubular cytoplasmic reabsorption vacuoles

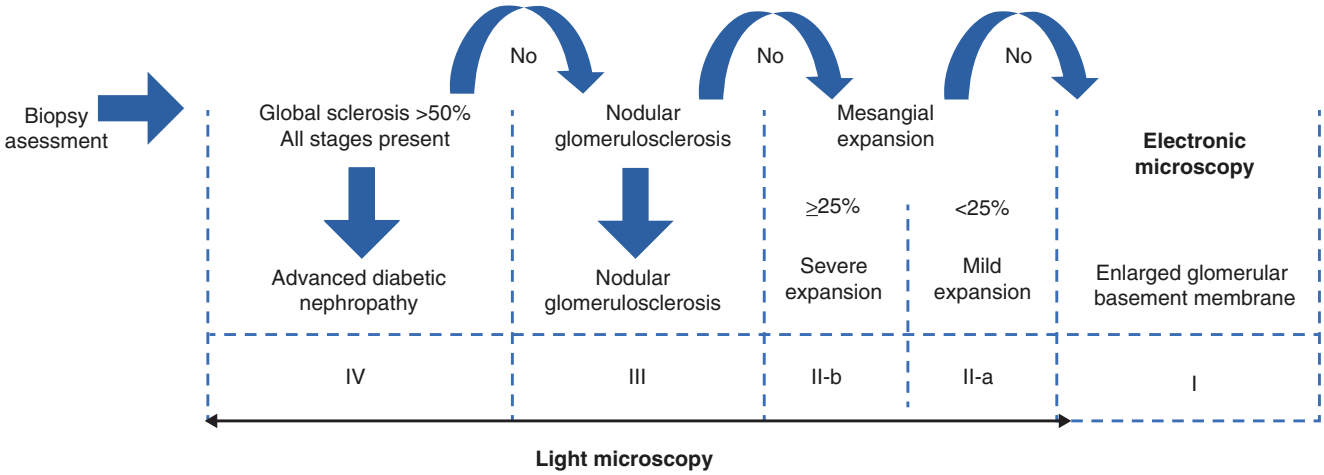


Fig. 51.5 Proposed assessment of kidney biopsy in diabetic nephropathy. (Adapted and modified from: As described by: Tervaert et al. [39])

Proposed flow chart for evaluation of DKD in kidney biopsy (Fig. 51.5),

Prevention of Diabetic Nephropathy

Avoiding the development of diabetic nephropathy involves treatment of diabetes per se. Glycemic control, antihypertension therapy, and dyslipidemia management are common and comorbid entities that directly impact on the evolution to diabetic nephropathy. However this is beyond the scope of this chapter, and we will focus specifically on DKD management.

Treatment of Diabetic Nephropathy

Non-pharmacologic Intervention

Salt Intake

Salt intake is associated with increased blood pressure, and therefore it is considered a risk factor for uncontrolled hypertension and end organ damage with DKD progression. In a systematic review and meta-analysis by pooling studies with salt reduction in type 1 and type 2 diabetes patients, 13 trials and 254 individuals were included. Mean duration of salt restriction was 1 week for both types of diabetic patients, and median reduction of urinary sodium was 11.9 g/day for type

1 diabetic patients and 7.3 g/day for type 2 diabetic patients. Blood pressure was reduced by −7.11 systolic and −3.13 diastolic mmHg in individuals with type 1 diabetes and −6.90 systolic and −2.87 diastolic mmHg in individuals with type 2 diabetes. The impact of this intervention was considered as effective as the use of one antihypertension medication, and as such, it should be applied to all diabetic patients [42].

Besides salt restriction effect on hypertension, renal and cardiovascular benefits have been described for reduced salt intake in addition to RAAS blockade. The former was described in a pooled analysis of type 2 diabetic patients of RENAAL and IDNT trials. The former analysis included 1177 participants with established DKD assigned to angiotensin receptor blocker therapy, losartan for RENAAL or irbesartan for IDNT populations, or non-RAAS inhibitors (non-RAASi) and further stratified them according to urine sodium/creatinine ratio into tertiles of <121 mmol/g (<2.78 g of sodium, <6.05 g of salt), 121–153 mmol/g (2.78–3.51 g of sodium, 6.05–7.65 g of salt), and equal or ≥153 mmol/g. Renal outcomes were defined as a composite of doubling serum creatinine from baseline, serum creatinine ≥6.0 mg/dL, the need for chronic dialysis or transplantation. Cardiovascular outcomes were defined as a composite of death, myocardial infarction, stroke, hospitalization for heart failure, or revascularization procedures. Within ARB and RAASi groups, renal outcomes for ARB therapy in the lower tertile of sodium/creatinine urine ratio had a HR 0.57 (95% CI 0.39–0.84) vs non-RAASi in higher tertile with HR 1.37 (95% CI 0.96–1.96), P <0.001. Same groups for cardiovascular outcomes reported HR 0.65 (95% CI 0.43–0.92) vs HR 1.25 (95% CI 0.89–1.75), P = 0.021. Significant difference for renal and cardiovascular endpoints disappeared between groups when comparing high urine sodium/creatinine ratio tertiles [43].

The former illustrates sodium restriction enhances the renal and cardiovascular benefits of angiotensin receptor antagonism on type 2 diabetic population with DKD.

Protein Restriction

Protein overload hastens renal decline by different mechanisms. The pancreas responds to protein ingestion by increasing glucagon secretion; glucagon generates afferent arteriole vasodilation and increases systemic hemodynamics over the glomerulus. Along with the former, filtrated amino acids are reabsorbed by the proximal convoluted tube with sodium and chloride, which reduces the chloride available to the juxtaglomerular apparatus. The latter leads to absence of tubuloglomerular feedback further increasing afferent arteriole dilation. Finally, protein overload to the renal parenchyma, in a low renal mass stage, increases profibrotic cytokines, such as transforming growth factor beta-1 and platelet-derived growth factor [44].

Due to the former mentioned mechanisms of action, low-protein diet (LPD, 0.6–0.8 grams/kg of body weight/day) was proposed as a therapeutic intervention and proved to be effective in animal models along with nondiabetic kidney disease clinical trials [45]. Therefore, recommendation of LPD was extended to DKD by KDIGO guidelines [45]. Evidence is not conclusive for diabetic kidney disease evidence. Clinical trials and pooled meta-analys have been published in support and against LPD as an effective intervention to slow the decline in kidney function [44, 45]. Currenntly, a definitive evidence-based recommendation cannot be established.

Interesting proposals are being considered such as starting LPD in eGFR higher than 30 ml/min/1.73 m^2 to preserve eGFR in earlier stages and to avoid malnourishment frequently seen in advance CKD due to protein energy wasting. In addition it has been proposed that maintaining or increasing caloric intake and switching carbohydrates, protein, and fat proportions could be of further benefit [44–47].

Pharmacologic Interventions

Renin-Angiotensin-Aldosterone System (RAAS)

There is a large body of evidence to back up the use of RAS blockade in DKD being the cornerstone of DKD therapy. ACE inhibitors and ARBs have earned this position due to their positive effect on glomerular filtration preservation, reduction in the development and progression of proteinuria along with lowering interstitial fibrosis. ACE inhibitors and ARBs are used indistinctly as their effect on the RAS system is directed toward decreasing its activation, even though most of the available evidence for ACE inhibitors is related to type 1 diabetes and for ARBs to type 2 diabetes.

Physiologic explanation of their benefit comes from their effect in systemic and glomerular hemodynamics, by decreasing not only systemic blood pressure but also vasoconstriction on efferent arteriole and reducing direct pressure over the glomerulus. The former effect reduces the hyperfiltration phenomenon and clinically translates into GFR preservation and avoidance of proteinuria development, progression, or even regression.

The former was demonstrated in type 1 diabetics in the collaborative study group, where 207 patients received captopril 25 mg 3 times a day and 202 patients placebo, to a blood pressure goal of ≤140/90 mmHg with a 3-year follow-up. Inclusion criteria corresponded to proteinuria (defined as ≥500 mg per day) and serum creatinine (SCr) of ≤2.5 mg/dL; the primary outcomes were doubling of the serum creatinine. By the end of study, 25 patients in the captopril group and 43 patients in the placebo group had reached the primary outcome, with 48% risk reduction for the captopril group. Subgroup analysis demonstrated that the effect of captopril on outcomes was higher in individuals with increased serum

creatinine concentration, 76% for mean SCr 2.0 mg/dL, 55% for mean SCr 1.5 mg/dL, and 17% for 1.0 mg/dL. From the eGFR standpoint, decline in creatinine clearance was 11+/−21% in captopril group and 17+/−20% in the placebo group ($p = 0.03$) [48].

As for anti-proteinuric effect, a systematic review and meta-analysis that included 646 type 1 diabetic patients (10 clinical trials) with normotensive and moderately increased albuminuria DKD evaluated ACE inhibitor therapy against placebo for this outcome. Reduction in progression to severe albuminuria was reported with an odds ratio of 0.38 (95% CI 0.25 to 0.57) and regression to low-level albuminuria by 3.07 (95% CI 2.15 to 4.44). Follow-up at 2 years found 50.5% lower albuminuria in ACE inhibitor-treated patients, compared to placebo ($p < 0.001$) with effect not entirely explained by blood pressure control [49].

In type 2 diabetes, effect of RAS blockade by ARBs also demonstrated reduction in development and progression of proteinuria along with reduction in GFR decline. The preventing microalbuminuria in type 2 diabetes study (BENEDICT Trial) assessed onset and development of moderately increased albuminuria (primary endpoint) in normoalbuminuric, hypertensive, type 2 diabetic patients. The intervention consisted in a combination of ACEI (trandopirl) and calcium channel blocker (verapamil), either ACEI or calcium channel blocker alone, or placebo. Target blood pressure for all participants was 120/80 mmHg, and other antihypertensive medications were allowed to goal. The trial recruited 1204 participants, with a median follow-up of 3.6 years; primary outcome (moderately increased albuminuria) was reached by 5.7% of participants in the combined treatment group, 6.0% in only ACEI group, 11.9% of those receiving calcium channel blocker alone, and 10% of participant in the placebo group.

In established DKD, a multicentric, randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled trial with irbesartan recruited 590 patients with type 2 diabetes and moderately increased albuminuria and assigned groups to placebo, irbesartan 150 mg/day, or irbesartan 300 mg/day, with a 2-year follow-up for a primary outcome of severely increased albuminuria or at least 30% increase from baseline. In the intervention arms, 5.2% of patients (10/194) for the 300 mg irbesartan group and 9.7% of patients (9/195) for the 150 mg irbesartan group reached primary outcome, as compared to 14.9% of patients (30/201) in the placebo arm resulting in 70% reduction in albuminuria progression for intervention groups [50]. Regarding GFR, the RENAAL study gathered 1513 patients with type 2 diabetes randomized to losartan 50 mg, 100 mg, or placebo on top of conventional antihypertensive medication, for a 3.4-year follow-up. Primary outcome was a composite of doubling serum creatinine, development of end-stage renal disease, or death. Secondary outcomes were a composite of morbidity and mortality from cardiovascular causes, proteinuria, and the rate of progression of renal disease. Primary composite was reduced by 16%, double of serum creatinine by 25%, development of end-stage renal disease by 28%, and proteinuria by 35% in the losartan groups. There was no effect on mortality [51].

Given the former mentioned data, and many other studies sustaining similar results, double blockade with ACE inhibitor and ARB was explored to obtained more effective results on renal outcomes. The ONTARGET study disregarded the benefit of combined therapy. Such treatment proved increased adverse effects as a composite of need for acute dialysis, double of serum creatinine, and death. The first two endpoints of the composite were sustained in the individual analysis [52].

Another study to assess the benefit from double blockade in DKD was the Combined Angiotensin Inhibition for the Treatment of Diabetic Nephropathy (VA Nephron-D), which assigned standard baseline therapy of losartan 100 mg per day and randomized participants to lisinopril 10–40 mg per day or placebo. Primary endpoint was eGFR decline, ESRD, and death, secondary endpoint was defined as first occurrence of eGFR decline or ESRD, and safety outcomes were mortality, hyperkalemia, and acute kidney injury. A total of 1448 type 2 diabetic patients with severely increased albuminuria and an eGFR within 30 and 89.9 ml/min/1.73m^2 were included and followed for median of 2.2 years. The study was stopped early for significant increased adverse effects in double RAS inhibition groups: hyperkalemia (6.3 events/100 person-years vs 2.6 events/100 person-years, $p < 0.001$) and acute kidney injury (12.2 vs 6.7 events/100 person-years, $P < 0.001$) [53].

Aldosterone antagonism has become a valuable tool in management of chronic kidney disease, for up to 53% of patients on conventional RAS blockade will develop aldosterone escape phenomenon by the end of 1 year therapy [54]. Compared to ACE inhibitors or ARBs alone, nonselective aldosterone blockade (spironolactone) on top of ACE inhibitors or ARBs significantly reduced proteinuria in 24 hours [55]. With respect to DKD, a systematic review and meta-analysis of 7 trials (287 patients) compared ACEI or ARB vs combination therapy of MRA (spironolactone or eplerenone) plus ACEI or ARB. The results showed significant reductions in albuminuria excretion of 69.38% (95% CI −103.53 to −35.22, $p < 0.0001$). Regarding blood pressure, the comparison of 296 patients with combined MRA RAS blockade therapy vs 281 patients with RAS blockade alone, showed significant decreases for systolic and diastolic blood pressure, with mean differences of −5.61 (95% CI −9.38 to −1.84, $p = 0.004$) for systolic and −2.17 (95% CI −4.23 to −0.11, $p = 0.04$) for diastolic blood pressure [55]. In 11 trials pooling within this meta-analysis, GFR did not improve, and as expected hyperkalemia developed much more (16 studies, 1684 patients) with relative risk of 3.74 (95% CI 2.30 to 6.09, $p < 00001$) [54].

Summarizing the former evidence, RAS blockade, for which ACEI and ARB have been used interchangeably, is the cornerstone therapy for diabetic kidney disease both in type 1 and 2 diabetes. RAS blocking therapy impacts on reduction of albuminuria, preservation of GFR, and lowering of fibrotic remodeling. MRA on top of RAS blockade compensates for aldosterone breakthrough, and its major effect is reflected over proteinuria and blood pressure control.

Novel Therapies

Sodium-Glucose Transporters

Hyperglycemia induces the proximal convoluted tubule to increase glucose claim; the former is performed in company of sodium, by means of sodium-glucose transporter 1 and 2 (SGLT-1 and SGLT-2, respectively). This leads to a lesser available sodium to be sensed downstream by the macula densa, and as a result afferent glomerular arteriole is dilated, exposing the glomerulus to direct blood pressure damage while enhancing hyperfiltration phenomenon. Inhibition of sodium-glucose transporters leads to glucosuria and downstream sodium overflow, allowing actual caloric/glucose loss as a desired effect for diabetes treatment in addition to activation of tubule-glomerular feedback.

If we combine RAS blockade with SGLT-2 therapy, we obtain the exact opposite glomerular hemodynamics of diabetic kidney disease pathophysiology where the renal hemodynamics go from dilated afferent and narrowed efferent arterioles, with increased exposure to systemic blood pressure and hyperfiltration on the glomerulus, to a narrow afferent and dilated efferent arteriole, with the opposite effect.

The benefit from the former hypothesis was tested in the EMPA-REG OUTCOME trial where type 2 diabetic patients with established cardiovascular disease and eGFR equal or greater than 30 ml/min/1.73 m^2 of BSA were randomly assigned to receive placebo or empaglifozine 10 mg/day or 25 mg/day for a median duration of treatment of 2.6 years and median observation time of 3.1 years. RAS blockade, by means of ACEI or ARB, was present in 80.7% of study population at baseline. As for renal outcomes, incident or worsening nephropathy (progression to severely increased albuminuria) occurred in 12.7% in empaglifozine groups vs 18.8% in the placebo group, 0.61 (95% CI 0.53 to 0.70, $P \leq 0.001$). Doubling of serum creatinine with a decrease of eGFR to ≤45 ml/min/1.73 m^2 BSA was 1.5% vs 2.6% in empaglifozine and placebo, respectively, with a relative risk reduction of 44%. Renal replacement therapy was initiated in 13 of 4687 patients in empaglifozine and 14 of 2333 patients in the placebo group, with a relative risk reduction of 55%. Regarding incident albuminuria, there was no difference between medication and placebo groups. The composite of incident or worsening nephropathy or cardiovascular death had a HR for empaglifozine of 0.61 (95% CI 0.55–0.69, $p < 0.001$) [56].

Estimated GFR lowered during the first 4-week period trial in the empaglifozine arms to a mean of −0.82+/−0.04 ml/min/1.73 m^2 of BSA for the 25 mg/day and was less evident for the 10 mg/day dose. Estimated GFR remained stable after such period, and mean eGFR annual decline for intervention groups was 0.19+/−0.11 ml/min/1.73 m^2 BSA compared to 1.67+/−0.13 ml/min/1.73 m^2 BSA in the placebo group, p <0.001. After cessation of trial medication, empaglifozine groups increased eGFR up to 0.55+/−0.04 ml/min/1.73 m^2 BSA, making evident the hemodynamic effect of the medication [56].

The Canaglifozin and Cardiovascular Events in Type 2 Diabetes (the CANVAS Program), another trial for SGLT-2 inhibition, included two sister trials, the CANVAS and CANVAS-R. Both studies were multicentric, double-blinded, randomized, and placebo-controlled. 10,142 DKD participants were assigned to canaglifozin 300 mg/day or 100 mg/day or placebo for CANVAS and canaglifozin 100 mg/day (with option to increase up to 300 mg/day) or placebo for CANVAS-R. Primary outcome was a composite of death from cardiovascular cause, nonfatal myocardial infarction, and nonfatal stroke. Secondary outcomes included death from any cause, death from cardiovascular cause, progression of albuminuria (30% increase from baseline and category upgrade between normoalbuminuria and moderately or severely increased albuminuria) and another composite of death from cardiovascular cause and hospitalization for heart failure; mean follow up was 188.2 weeks. Patients in the canaglifozin group had statistically significant less composite risk of death from cardiovascular cause, nonfatal myocardial infarction and non fatal stroke, 26.9 participants per 1000 patients-years vs 31.5 for placebo (HR 0.86, 95% CI 0.75–0.97, $P < 0.001$ non-inferiority and $p = 0.02$ for superiority). Regarding renal outcomes, albuminuria progression was less frequent in intervention groups, 89.4 events per 1000 patient-years vs 128.7 for placebo (HR 0.73, 95% CI 0.67 to 0.79), along with regression of albuminuria, with 293.4 patients per 1000 patient-years for intervention groups vs 187.5 for placebo (HR 1.70, 95% CI 1.51–1.91). Renal composite of sustained 40% reduction in eGFR, need for renal replacement therapy, or death from renal causes occurred less in intervention groups, 5.5 in canaglifozin vs 9.0 in placebo per 1000 patient-years (HR 0.60, 95% CI, 0.47 to 0.77). Death from any cause was not different between canaglifozin and placebo groups [57].

DAPA-CKD is an ongoing trial to evaluate renal and cardiovascular outcomes for the use of dapagliflozin, another available SGLT-2 inhibitor. This trial will evaluate sustained decline in eGFR, reaching of ESRD, along with renal or cardiovascular death.

Considerations as to adverse effects of SGLT-2 inhibitors as a group include an increased risk for euglycemic ketoacidosis, genitourinary tract infections, hypotension, and acute kidney injury. Medication-specific adverse effects have been described, as in canaglifozin-treated patients, increased incidence for bone fracture, and mid foot/toe amputations. Amputations occur more often in patients with lower extremity peripheral artery disease and/or diabetic foot.

Endothelin Receptor Antagonists

Endothelins enhance renal cellular injury, hypertrophy, proteinuria, inflammation, and fibrosis. Endothelin-1 is an endothelin isoform that activates endothelin A receptor (ETaR) and endothelin B receptor (ETbR). ETaR promotes podocyte and mesangial cell proliferation, leading to albuminuria and renal dysfunction [58]. Endothelin receptor antagonists (ERAs) are being considered as a therapeutic target to treat DKD. A systematic review and meta-analysis of ERAs vs placebo for DKD pooled 5 adequately randomized controlled trials included 2034 patients receiving avosentan, atrasentan or bosentan. Four of these trials, including 1956 patients, measured the risk of cardiovascular events, defined as coronary artery disease, nonfatal acute myocardial infarction, stroke or congestive heart failure. Cardiovascular events occurred in 146/1367 (10.7%) patients in the treatment groups and 48/589 (8.1%) in placebo groups (p = 0.02), with RR of 1.45 (95% CI 1.07–1.97). As for renal outcomes, albuminuria was reported in five trials (n = 2034 patients) and significantly ($p < 0.00001$) decreased in treatment groups, 0.66 (95% CI 0.56–0.76). This difference was not statistically significant when a >40% reduction in albuminuria cutoff was used (two trials, n = 300). Regarding eGFR, three trials (1889 patients) reported a statistically significant (p = 0.0009) increase, 0.23 (95% CI 0.51–1.95). In subgroup analysis, and increased benefit in eGFR only was found for avosentan 25 mg/d and 50 mg/d. In the safety outcomes analysis, adverse events defined as edema, hypervolemia, hypotension, anemia, or dyspnea were reported in all the trials; 68.1% of the patients in the treatment groups (n = 965) reported at least one adverse effect and 63.5% in the placebo groups (n = 392). Statistically significant differences for adverse effects between groups were not documented [58].

Endothelin receptor antagonists are still being explored. The Study of Diabetic Nephropathy with Atrasentan (SONAR) is being conducted, with atrasentan vs placebo on top of maximum tolerated daily dose of RAS inhibition. The design of the study is powered for renal outcome, doubling of serum creatinine or onset of ESRD in addition to cardiovascular events, cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction or stroke endpoints.

Finerenone

As previously mentioned, MRAs proved reduction in albuminuria for diabetic and nondiabetic CKD. Finerenone (FRN) is a more selective MRA than spironolactone, with more affinity than eplerenone. Finerenone was evaluated for DKD in the ARTS-DN study, a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel group, phase 2B trial in which finerenone at different doses (1.25 mg/day, 2.5 mg/day, 5 mg/day, 7.5 mg/day, 10 mg/day, 15 mg/day, 25 mg/day) or placebo was administered to patients with DKD already on RAS blockade. Eligibility criteria were type 2 diabetes patients already on RAS blockade, with at least moderately increased albuminuria, eGFR ≥30 ml/min/1.73 m^2, first visit serum potassium concentration ≤4.8 mmol/L, and 4-week or longer stable non-potassium-sparing diuretic use. Endpoints were evaluation of albuminuria reduction at the end of the 90-day period and adverse effects such as hyperkalemia and eGFR reduction. Effect on albuminuria excretion rate (AER) was noticed in an increasing dose-dependent effect starting on finerenone 7.5 mg/d. Placebo-corrected mean ratios of AER according to dose were FRN 7.5 mg/d, 0.79 (90% CI 0.68–0.91, p = 0.004), FRN 10 mg/d, 0.76 (90% CI 0.65–0.88, $p = 0.001$), FRN 15 mg/d 0.67 (90% CI 0.58–0.77, $p < 0.001$), and FRN 20 mg/d 0.62 (90% CI 0.54–0.72, $p < 0.001$). Hyperkalemia was reported for the 7.5,15, and 20 mg/d groups in 2.1%, 3.2%, and 1.7%, respectively. There was no difference in eGFR decrease rate of ≥30% [59].

This study suggests the potential benefit from finerenone as another MRA with a lesser adverse effect and dose-dependent effect on reducing albuminuria. Nonetheless, it must be noticed that on the trial, 60% of patients had eGFR of 60 ml/min/1.73 m^2 or more, and serum potassium higher than 4.8 mmol/L was considered an exclusion criteria. Hard endpoints such as cardiovascular events, progression to end-stage renal disease, and dialysis requirement are currently being explored.

An ongoing phase III clinical trial, FIGARO DKD, is designed to assess cardiovascular composite of death or non-fatal cardiovascular events in a population with mild and moderately increased albuminuria. In addition FIDELIO DKD is designed for patients with severely increased albuminuria, powered to asses renal outcomes, such composite of onset of kidney failure, sustained decrease of eGFR ≥40% from baseline, and sustained for at least 4 weeks or renal death.

Pentoxifylline

Pentoxifylline is a methylxanthine derivate and nonspecific phosphodiesterase inhibitor with anti-inflammatory, antiproliferative, and anti-fibrotic properties. It was evaluated in

DM2 patients with established DKD, eGFR stages 3 and 4, on maximally tolerated RAS blockade. The PREDIAN Trail was an open-label, prospective, and randomized study that assigned participants to pentoxifylline (1200 mg/day) and RAS blockade with ACEI or ARB (intervention) or RAS blockade alone (control). A total of 169 participants (82 for intervention and 87 for control group), all Caucasian and hypertensive subjects, were included, mean age 69.8+/−9.2 years, mean duration of diabetes 15+/−3.4 years, mean eGFR 37.4+/−12.1 ml/min per 1.73 m^2, and median albuminuria excretion 1100 mg/dL. No significant differences for metabolic or demographic variables were described from the beginning to the end of a 23.6+/−1.7-month follow-up. Loss of >25% of eGFR with respect to baseline was lower in pentoxifylline group 3.8% vs 26.8% ($p < 0.001$). Albuminuria excretion rate in control group significantly increased from 1000 mg/dL (IQR 600–1800 mg/dL) to 1117 mg/dL (IQR 584–1762 mg/dL, $p = 0.02$), 5.7% from baseline. Statistically significant adverse effects were reported in intervention group for gastrointestinal symptoms such as abdominal discomfort, flatus, dyspepsia, nausea, and vomiting [60].

The former study demonstrated benefit from pentoxifylline treatment on top of RAS blockade in stage 3 and 4 DKD patients. Outcome in eGFR reached statistical significance after 1 year of treatment; as for albuminuria excretion rate, significant changes could be found from the sixth month of treatment.

Baricitinib

In recent years, signaling pathways and networks not previously considered in DKD pathophysiology have been described. Among them, the Janus kinase-signal transducer and activator of transcription (JAK-STAT) pathway and its numerous isoforms have been found to be increasingly expressed in glomerulus and in tubule-interstitium across DKD timeline, tubulo-interstitial expression with an inverse correlation with eGFR. JAK-2 expression in diabetic mice models proved markedly increased albuminuria, mesangial expansion, reduction in podocyte density, glomerulosclerosis, and thickening of Glomerular basement membrane. The former features had improvement with JAK-2 inhibition in the same mice models.

Early phase trials with baricitinib, a JAK-1 and JAK-2 selective inhibitor, in DKD patients on RAS blockade showed a decrease in albuminuria during follow-up (6 months) along with a potential sustained benefit for such effect after a washout period (1 month). The former attributed to anti-inflammatory properties of the drug. Further trials on baricitinib and JAK-STAT pathway inhibition are needed, as a potential new intervention line [61].

Conclusions

Diabetic kidney disease remains the main cause of end-stage kidney failure in the world. Although mechanisms of disease are now better understood, the only accepted medical treatment for DKD is RAS inhibition. Despite this treatment, many patients still progress to kidney failure. Double RAS inhibition is no longer recommended based on two randomized trials. Newer agents such as SGLT2 inhibitors are novel and promising therapies; ongoing trials will provide data as whether this is a class or a specific medication effect. Ongoing trials with endothelin antagonists and MRA have been powered and designed to look at hard outcomes such as CVD mortality and kidney disease progression. It is possible that targeting different pathways of disease would improve DKD in the next decade.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Which of the following structures must become damaged in order to develop albuminuria?
   (a) Distal collecting duct
   (b) Glycocalyx
   (c) Juxtaglomerular apparatus
   (d) Urea countercurrent mechanism
2. The following pathway is responsible for the hyperfiltration mechanism:
   (a) Hexosamine pathway
   (b) Metabolic pathway
   (c) Hemodynamic pathway
   (d) Autophagy
3. Hyperfiltration develops in diabetic nephropathy by effect of which of the following?
   (a) Afferent arteriole vasoconstriction
   (b) Efferent arteriole vasoconstriction
   (c) Juxtaglomerular apparatus dysfunction
   (d) Glomerular basement membrane thickening
4. Nephropathology description of diabetic nephropathy is based on:
   (a) Electron microscopy description
   (b) Immunofluorescence description
   (c) Light microscopy description
   (d) Kimmelstiel-Wilson nodules
5. Earliest nephropatologic findings in diabetic nephropathy
   (a) Mesangial expansion
   (b) Tubular atrophy
   (c) Interstitial fibrosis
   (d) Glomerular basement membrane thickening
6. Most effective treatment for established diabetic nephropathy is based on:
   (a) Endothelin receptor blockade
   (b) Protein restriction
   (c) Diuretic use

(d) Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system blockade

7. SGLT-2 inhibitors treatment produces which of the following hemodynamic effects in the glomerulus?
   (a) Vasoconstriction of afferent arteriole
   (b) Vasodilation of afferent arteriole
   (c) Vasodilation of efferent arteriole
   (d) Vasoconstriction of efferent arteriole
8. Mineralocorticoid antagonist therapy should be considered to compensate for which of the following?
   (a) Hyperfiltration phenomenon
   (b) Albuminuria
   (c) Aldosterone breakthrough
   (d) Diuretics hypokalemia effect
9. Overt diabetic nephropathy without treatment leads to glomerular filtration rate loss of:
   (a) 1 ml/min month
   (b) 1 ml/min week
   (c) 1 ml/min year
   (d) 50% of baseline within first 6 months
10. Which of the following findings must be considered to perform kidney biopsy in diabetic patients
   (a) Development of albuminuria within the first 5 years of diabetes diagnosis
   (b) Development of albuminuria in absence of diabetic retinopathy
   (c) Development of nephrotic syndrome
   (d) All of the above

Correct Answers

1. (b) Glycocalyx
2. (c) Hemodynamic pathway
3. (b) Efferent arteriole vasoconstriction
4. (c) Light microscopy description
5. (d) Glomerular basement membrane thickening
6. (d) Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system blockade
7. (a) Vasoconstriction of afferent arteriole
8. (c) Aldosterone breakthrough
9. (a) 1 ml/min month
10. (d) All of the above

References

1. Turner N, Lamiere N, Goldsmith DJ. Oxford textbook of clinical nephrology. 4th ed. Oxford, Reino Unido: Oxford University Press; 2016.
2. Mogensen CE. Microalbuminuria, blood pressure and diabetic renal disease: origin and development of ideas. Diabetologia. 1999;42(3):263–85.
3. Mogensen CE, Christensen CK, Vittinghus E. The stages in diabetic renal disease. With emphasis on the stage of incipient diabetic nephropathy. Diabetes. 1983;32:64–78.
4. Narres M, Claessen H, Droste S, Kvitkina T, Koch M, Kuss O, et al. The incidence of end-stage renal disease in the diabetic (compared to the non-diabetic) population: a systematic review. PLoS One. 2016;11(1):1–28.
5. Harjutsalo V, Groop P-H. Epidemiology and risk factors for diabetic kidney disease. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis. Elsevier Ltd. 2014;21(3):260–6.
6. Alicic RZ, Rooney MT, Tuttle KR. Diabetic kidney disease: challenges, progress, and possibilities. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2017;12:2032–45.
7. Toth-Manikowski S, Atta MG. Diabetic kidney disease: pathophysiology and therapeutic targets. J Diabetes Res. Hindawi Publishing Corporation. 2015;2015.
8. Benz K, Amann K. Endothelin in diabetic renal disease. Contrib Nephrol. 2011;172:139–48.
9. Brownlee M. Biochemistry and molecular cell biology of diabetic complications. Nature. 2001;414(6865):813–20.
10. Walton HA, Byrne J, Robinson GB. Studies of the permeation properties of glomerular basement membrane: cross-linking renders glomerular basement membrane permeable to protein. Biochim Biophys Acta. 1992;1138(3):173–83.
11. Forbes JM, Cooper ME, Oldfield MD, Thomas MC. Role of advanced glycation end products in diabetic nephropathy. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2003;14(8 Suppl 3):S254–8.
12. Raabe HM, Höpner JH, Notbohm H, Sinnecker GHG, Kruse K, Müller PK. Biochemical and biophysical alterations of the 7S and NC1 domain of collagen IV from human diabetic kidneys. Diabetologia. 1998;41(9):1073–9.
13. Fukami K, Yamagishi S-I, Ueda S, Okuda S. Role of AGEs in diabetic nephropathy. Curr Pharm Des. 2008;14(10):946–52.
14. Yang CW, Vlassara H, Peten EP, He CJ, Striker GE, Striker LJ. Advanced glycation end products up-regulate gene expression found in diabetic glomerular disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1994;91(20):9436–40.
15. Vlassara H, Striker LJ, Teichberg S, Fuh H, Li YM, Steffes M. Advanced glycation end products induce glomerular sclerosis and albuminuria in normal rats. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1994;91(24):11704–8.
16. Nagahama T, Hayashi K, Ozawa Y, Takenaka T, Saruta T. Role of protein kinase C in angiotensin II-induced constriction of renal microvessels. Kidney Int. 2000;57(1):215–23.
17. Ruan X, Arendshorst WJ. Role of protein kinase C in angiotensin II-induced renal vasoconstriction in genetically hypertensive rats. Am J Phys. 1996;270(6 Pt 2):F945–52.
18. Williams B, Schrier RW. Glucose-induced protein kinase C activity regulates arachidonic acid release and eicosanoid production by cultured glomerular mesangial cells. J Clin Invest. 1993;92(6):2889–96.
19. Noh H, King GL. The role of protein kinase C activation in diabetic nephropathy. Kidney Int Suppl. 2007;72(106):S49–53.
20. García-García PM, Getino-Melián MA, Domínguez-Pimentel V, Navarro-González JF. Inflammation in diabetic kidney disease. World J Diabetes. 2014;5(4):431–43.
21. Pickup JC. Inflammation and activated innate immunity in the pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(3):813–23.
22. García-García PM. Inflammation in diabetic kidney disease. World J Diabetes. 2014;5(4):431.
23. Sanz AB, Sanchez-Niño MD, Ramos AM, Moreno JA, Santamaria B, Ruiz-Ortega M, et al. NF-kappaB in renal inflammation. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2010;21(8):1254–62.
24. Mezzano S, Aros C, Droguett A, Burgos ME, Ardiles L, Flores C, et al. NF-kappaB activation and overexpression of regulated genes in human diabetic nephropathy. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2004;19(10):2505–12.

25. Ohga S, Shikata K, Yozai K, Okada S, Ogawa D, Usui H, et al. Thiazolidinedione ameliorates renal injury in experimental diabetic rats through anti-inflammatory effects mediated by inhibition of NF-kappaB activation. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol. 2007;292(4):F1141–50.
26. Navarro JF, Milena FJ, Mora C, León C, García J. Renal pro-inflammatory cytokine gene expression in diabetic nephropathy: effect of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibition and pentoxifylline administration. Am J Nephrol. 2006;26(6):562–70.
27. Sekizuka K, Tomino Y, Sei C, Kurusu A, Tashiro K, Yamaguchi Y, et al. Detection of serum IL-6 in patients with diabetic nephropathy. Nephron. 1994;68(2):284–5.
28. Ha H, Hwang I-A, Park JH, Lee HB. Role of reactive oxygen species in the pathogenesis of diabetic nephropathy. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2008;82:S42–5.
29. Kroemer G, Mariño G, Levine B. Autophagy and the integrated stress response. Mol Cell. 2010;40(2):280–93.
30. Kume S, Yamahara K, Yasuda M, Maegawa H, Koya D. Autophagy: emerging therapeutic target for diabetic nephropathy. Semin Nephrol. 2014;34(1):9–16.
31. Fang L, Zhou Y, Cao H, Wen P, Jiang L, He W, et al. Autophagy attenuates diabetic glomerular damage through protection of hyperglycemia-induced podocyte injury. Rastaldi MP, editor. PLoS One. 2013;8(4):e60546.
32. Singh R, Kaushik S, Wang Y, Xiang Y, Novak I, Komatsu M, et al. Autophagy regulates lipid metabolism. Nature. 2009;458(7242):1131–5.
33. Yoshizaki T, Kusunoki C, Kondo M, Yasuda M, Kume S, Morino K, et al. Autophagy regulates inflammation in adipocytes. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2012;417(1):352–7.
34. Vlotides G, Mertens PR. Sodium-glucose cotransport inhibitors: mechanisms, metabolic effects and implications for the treatment of diabetic patients with chronic kidney disease. Nephrol Dial Transplant. 2015;30(8):1272–6.
35. Kanai Y, Lee WS, You G, Brown D, Hediger MA. The human kidney low affinity Na+/glucose cotransporter SGLT2. Delineation of the major renal reabsorptive mechanism for D-glucose. J Clin Invest. 1994;93(1):397–404.
36. Skorecki K, Chertow GM, Marsden P. Brenner & Rector's the kidney. 10th ed. Filadelfia: Elsevier; 2016.
37. Rabelink TJ, de Zeeuw D. The glycocalyx—linking albuminuria with renal and cardiovascular disease. Nat Rev Nephrol. Nature Publishing Group. 2015;11(Box 1):1–10.
38. Pugliese G. Updating the natural history of diabetic nephropathy. Acta Diabetol. 2014;51(6):905–15.
39. Tervaert TWC, Mooyaart AL, Amann K, Cohen AH, Cook HT, Drachenberg CB, et al. Pathologic classification of diabetic nephropathy. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2010;21(4):556–63.
40. Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) CKD Work Group. KDIGO 2012 clinical practice guideline for the evaluation and management of chronic kidney disease. Kidney Int Suppl. 2013;3:1–150.
41. Chang A, Gibson IW, Cohen AH, Weening JJ, Jennette JC, Fogo AB. A position paper on standardizing the nonneoplastic kidney biopsy report. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol. 2012;7(8):1365–8.
42. Suckling RJ, He FJ, Macgregor GA. Altered dietary salt intake for preventing and treating diabetic kidney disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2010;(12):CD006763.
43. Heerspink HJL, Holtkamp FA, Parving H-H, Navis GJ, Lewis JB, Ritz E, et al. Moderation of dietary sodium potentiates the renal and cardiovascular protective effects of angiotensin receptor blockers. Kidney Int. 2012;82(3):330–7.
44. Otoda T, Kanasaki K, Koya D. Low-protein diet for diabetic nephropathy. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14(9):523.
45. Klahr S, Levey AS, Beck GJ, Caggiula AW, Hunsicker L, Kusek JW, et al. The effects of dietary protein restriction and blood-pressure control on the progression of chronic renal disease. N Engl J Med. 1994;330(13):877–84.
46. Robertson LM, Waugh N, Robertson A. Protein restriction for diabetic renal disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2007;(4):CD002181.
47. Shah BV, Patel ZM. Role of low protein diet in management of different stages of chronic kidney disease – practical aspects. BMC Nephrol. 2016;17(1):156.
48. Lewis EJ, Hunsicker LG, Bain RP, Rohde RD. The effect of angiotensin-converting-enzyme inhibition on diabetic nephropathy. N Engl J Med. 1993;329(20):1456–62.
49. ACE Inhibitors in Diabetic Nephropathy Trialist Group. Should all patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus and microalbuminuria receive angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors? A meta-analysis of individual patient data. Ann Intern Med. 2001;134(5):370–9.
50. Parving HH, Lehnert H, Bröchner-Mortensen J, Gomis R, Andersen S, Arner P, et al. The effect of irbesartan on the development of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(12):870–8.
51. Brenner BM, Cooper ME, de Zeeuw D, Keane WF, Mitch WE, Parving H-H, et al. Effects of losartan on renal and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes and nephropathy. N Engl J Med. 2001;345(12):861–9.
52. Mann JF, Schmieder RE, McQueen M, Dyal L, Schumacher H, Pogue J, et al. Renal outcomes with telmisartan, ramipril, or both, in people at high vascular risk (the ONTARGET study): a multicentre, randomised, double-blind, controlled trial. Lancet. 2008;372(9638):547–53.
53. Fried LF, Emanuele N, Zhang JH, Brophy M, Conner TA, Duckworth W, et al. Combined angiotensin inhibition for the treatment of diabetic nephropathy. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(20):1892–903.
54. Sun L, Sun Y, Shan J, Jiang G. Effects of mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists on the progression of diabetic nephropathy. J Diabetes Investig. 2017;8(4):609–18.
55. Bolignano D, Palmer SC, Navaneethan SD, Strippoli GF. Aldosterone antagonists for preventing the progression of chronic kidney disease. In: Strippoli GF, editor. Cochrane database of systematic reviews. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2014. p. 542–51.
56. Wanner C, Inzucchi SE, Lachin JM, Fitchett D, von Eynatten M, Mattheus M, et al. Empagliflozin and progression of kidney disease in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2016;375(4):323–34.
57. Neal B, Perkovic V, Mahaffey KW, de Zeeuw D, Fulcher G, Erondu N, et al. Canagliflozin and cardiovascular and renal events in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2017;377(7):644–57.
58. Yuan W, Li Y, Wang J, Li J, Gou S, Fu P. Endothelin-receptor antagonists for diabetic nephropathy: a meta-analysis. Nephrology. 2015;20(7):459–66.
59. Bakris GL, Agarwal R, Chan JC, Cooper ME, Gansevoort RT, Haller H, et al. Effect of finerenone on albuminuria in patients with diabetic nephropathy. JAMA. 2015;314(9):884.
60. Navarro-Gonzalez JF, Mora-Fernandez C, Muros de Fuentes M, Chahin J, Mendez ML, Gallego E, et al. Effect of pentoxifylline on renal function and urinary albumin excretion in patients with diabetic kidney disease: the PREDIAN trial. J Am Soc Nephrol. 2015;26(1):220–9.
61. Brosius FC, Tuttle KR, Kretzler M. JAK inhibition in the treatment of diabetic kidney disease. Diabetologia. 2016;59(8):1624–7.

Peripheral Diabetic Neuropathies

52

Gergely Feher

Introduction

More than 25% of the US population aged ≥65 years has diabetes, and the aging of the overall population is a significant driver of the diabetes epidemic. The epidemic is chiefly of type 2 diabetes and also the associated conditions known as "diabesity" and "metabolic syndrome". In conjunction with genetic susceptibility, particularly in certain ethnic groups, type 2 diabetes is brought on by environmental and behavioural factors such as a sedentary lifestyle, overly rich nutrition, and obesity. The prevention of diabetes and control of its micro- and macrovascular complications will require an integrated, international approach if we are to see significant reduction in the huge premature morbidity and mortality it causes [1]. Diabetic neuropathies (DN) encompass a wide range of nerve abnormalities and are common, with prevalence rates reported between 5% and 100% depending on the diagnostic criteria. Diabetic peripheral neuropathy (DPN) is associated with considerable morbidity, increased mortality, and diminished quality of life, causing a tremendous economic burden [2]. Duration and severity of hyperglycaemia, presence of dyslipidaemia, hypertension, and smoking are major risk factors for the development of diabetic polyneuropathy [3]. The different mechanisms involved in different pain sensations are still poorly understood, but there is ample evidence that abnormal discharges from diseased somatosensory neurons are responsible. Spontaneous activity in the peripheral nociceptor system may also trigger central nervous system changes responsible for hyperalgesia and allodynia [1].

Epidemiology

Diabetic peripheral neuropathy (DPN) is a common complication of both type I and type II diabetes. Despite the different pathophysiology, there has been a longstanding assumption that the mechanism leading to DPN is shared. Type 2 DM is much more common (90–95%) but has a slightly lower lifetime incidence of neuropathy (45%) compared with the 54–59% associated with type 1 DM [4]. The primary risk factor for DPN is hyperglycaemia. Whereas treating hyperglycaemia in type 1 DM can significantly reduce the incidence of neuropathy by up to 60–70%, glucose control in type 2 DM has only a marginal 5–7% reduction in the development of neuropathy estimated to affect 30–50% of individuals with diabetes. Many recent studies have implicated cardiovascular risk factors include age, duration of disease, cigarette smoking, hypertension, elevated triglycerides, higher BMI, alcohol consumption, and taller height in the background of DN [1, 4]. Interestingly, between 25% and 62% of patients with idiopathic peripheral neuropathy are reported to have prediabetes, and among individuals with prediabetes, 11–25% are thought to have peripheral neuropathy, and 13–21% have neuropathic pain. Population-based studies suggest a gradient for the prevalence of neuropathy, being highest in patients with manifest diabetes mellitus, followed by individuals with impaired glucose tolerance and then impaired fasting glucose and least in those with normoglycemia [4].

Pathophysiology

It is generally believed that oxidative stress is the key pathological process inducing nerve damage in diabetes. Oxidative stress, possibly triggered by vascular abnormalities and associated microangiopathy in the nerve, is a key pathological process inducing nerve damage in diabetes in humans and experimental models. Diabetes-induced oxidative stress in animal models of in type 1, type 2, and prediabetes in sensory

G. Feher (✉)
Centre for Occupational Medicine, Medical School, University of Pécs, Pécs, Baranya, Hungary
e-mail: feher.gergely@pte.hu

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_52

neurons and peripheral nerve is demonstrated by increased production of reactive oxygen species (ROS), lipid peroxidation and protein nitrosylation, and diminished levels of reduced glutathione and ascorbate. Treatment with antioxidants such as α-lipoic acid, γ-linolenic acid, and aldose reductase inhibitors prevent many indices of neuropathy in STZ-diabetic rats. The neurons and Schwann cells do initiate protective mechanisms involving upregulation of antioxidant pathways; however, the neurodegenerative outcome is energy failure in the nerve, observed as a decrease in high-energy intermediates (e.g. phosphocreatine), impaired axonal transport of proteins and sub-optimal ion pumping [1, 5] (Fig. 52.1).

Polyol pathway hyperactivity Metabolic disorders are the primary cause of diabetic neuropathy. Hyperglycaemia, induced through decreased of insulin secretion or insulin resistance, is responsible for the enhanced of the polyol pathway activity. The rate-limiting first enzyme of this pathway aldose reductase catalyses the formation of sorbitol from glucose, with the oxidation of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) to NADP+. Sorbitol is further oxidized to fructose by sorbitol dehydrogenase, which is coupled with the reduction of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD+) to NADH. It is described that during hyperglycaemic states, the affinity of aldose reductase for glucose is higher, generating intracellular osmotic stress due to accumulation of sorbitol, since sorbitol does not cross cell membranes. Interesting, the nerve damage following the diabetic state seems not to be due to this osmotic stress since it has been reported insignificant sorbitol concentrations in the nerves of diabetic patients [6]. However, the current accepted hypothesis states that polyol pathway hyperactivity is pathogenic primarily by increasing the turnover of cofactors such as NADPH and NAD+, which leads to a decrease in the reduction and regeneration of glutathione, as well as to an increase of advanced glycation end products (AGEs) production and activation of diacylglycerol and protein kinase C (PKC) isoforms. Depletion of glutathione could be the primary cause of oxidative stress and be related to the accumulation of toxic species [7]. In fact, aldose reductase inhibitors are effective in preventing the development of diabetic neuropathy in animal models, but they have demonstrated disappointing results and dose-limiting toxicity in human trials [6] (Figs. 52.1 and 52.2).

Oxidative stress and mitochondria Hyperglycaemia induces activation of classical pathways like AGE, PKC, hexosamine, and polyol pathways to mediate cellular damage [9]. Generation of superoxide from mitochondrial electron transport chain is known to contribute towards hyperglycaemia initiated various aetiological pathways. Hyperglycaemia enhances the reducing equivalents to electron transport chain (ETC) and the electrochemical potential across the inner mitochondrial membrane and hence increases superoxide production [9]. Superoxide inhibits glyceraldehyde phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) either directly or indirectly through PARP-mediated NADH+ depletion [9]. Inhibition of GAPDH by ROS leads to accumulation of glycolytic intermediates upstream of this enzyme and redirected to initiate cellular pathways like AGE formation. Once the AGEs are formed, they bind to RAGE and activate many other crucial pathways like NF-κB and PARP. PKC pathway is activated through dihydroxyacetone phosphate-mediated diacylglycerol (DAG) activation. Hexosamine pathway is activated through enhanced flux of fructose-6-phosphate and polyol pathway by elevated glucose levels. This, in turn, leads to osmotic stress in the cells which further takes the cell towards necrotic cell death. Enhanced activity of Mn-SOD, a mitochondrial form of

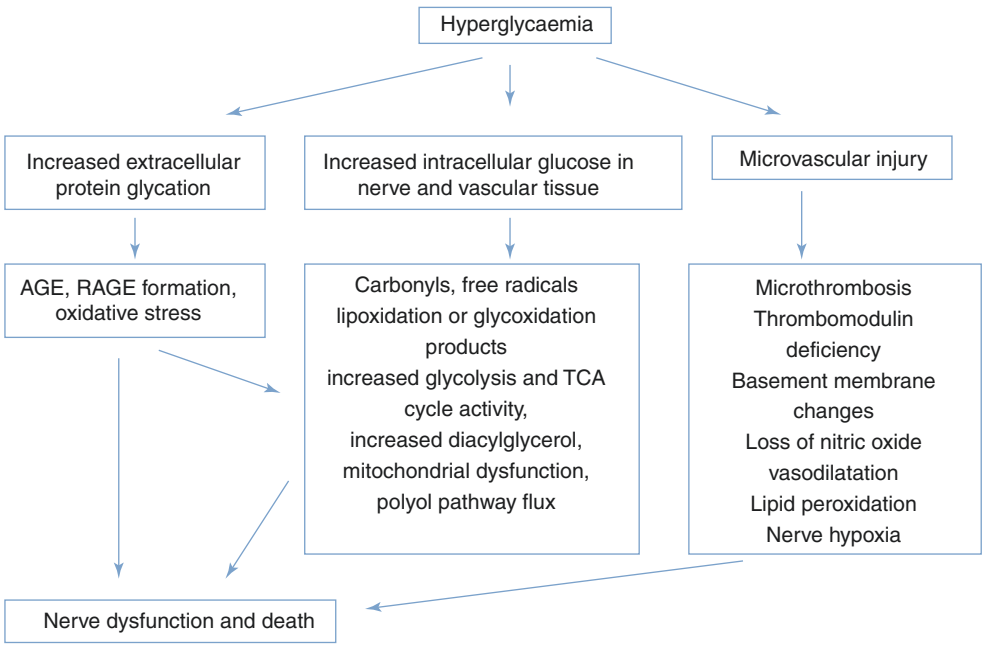


Fig. 52.1 The pathogenesis of diabetic neuropathy. ((Taken from Deli et al. [1], with permission). AGE advanced glycation end product, RAGE receptors for AGEs, TCA tricarboxylic acid)

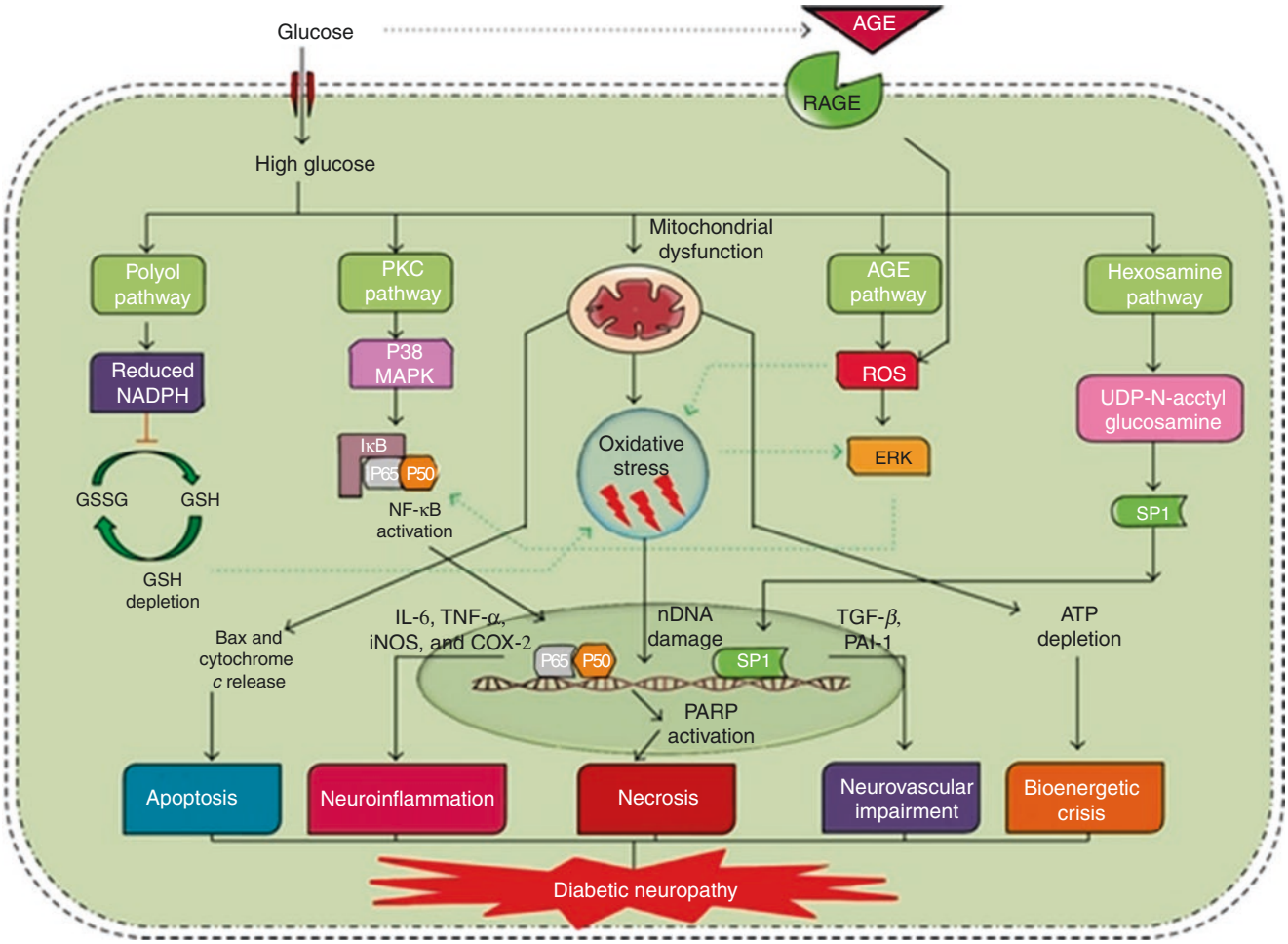


Fig. 52.2 Pathophysiology of diabetic neuropathy. Hyperglycaemia activates numerous metabolic pathways like polyol pathway, protein kinase c (PKC) pathway, advanced glycation end products (AGE) pathway, and hexosamine pathway. All these pathways are known to integrate through hyperglycaemia-mediated mitochondrial ROS production. Oxidative stress and these classical pathways in combination activate transcription factors such as nuclear factor kappa enhancer of B cells (NF-κB) and speciality protein-1 (SP-1), resulting in neuroinflammation and vascular impairment. Further, these pathways combined with dysfunctional mitochondria-mediated apoptosis or bioenergetic depletion can lead to neuronal damage lading to DN. Poly-ADP ribose polymerase (PARP)-mediated NADH/ATP depletion can lead to neuronal dysfunction due to failure of various energy dependent processes in neurons. (ERK extracellular-related kinase, IL-6 interleukin-6, iNOS inducible nitric oxide synthase, COX-2 cyclooxygenase-2, TGF-β transforming growth factor-β, and PAI-1 plasminogen activator inhibitor-1). (Taken from Sandireddy et al. [8], with permission)

superoxide dismutase (SOD) or overexpression of uncoupling proteins (UCP-1) in experimental diabetic animals, prevents the development of vascular complications in the animals and also reduced oxidative stress-mediated neuronal damage. The mechanism for this neuroprotective effect can be the reduction of mitochondrial ROS generation and the clearance of the notorious ROS from the cells. In addition to the above theory, mitochondrial abnormalities and mitochondria-associated oxidative stress stand at a central position in the pathogenesis of diabetic neuropathy. It has been noticed that defects in functioning of ETC chain components compromises ATP production and enhances the generation of free radicals. The free radicals generated causes damage to mitochondrial DNA (mt DNA) and nuclear DNA (n DNA) which in turn aggravates mitochondrial damage. This vicious cycle developed inside mitochondria produces intense oxidative stress and drives the cell towards apoptotic/necrotic death. It is an established fact that diabetes is known to affect the respiratory capacity of ETC functional complexes and thus alters ATP production (Fig. 52.1). Mainly complex I and complex III are known to be affected, which turn out to be electron leakage centres and thus inflate ROS production [6]. Various experimental observations point towards the critical role of mitotoxicity in the pathophysiology of diabetic neuropathy (Figs. 52.1 and 52.2).

Microvascular changes DNP is frequently associated with microvascular impairment [1, 6]. In clinical and preclinical studies, it was found that peripheral perfusion is reduced, not

only in the nervous tissue, but also in the skin, being an important physiological evidence of microvasculature alteration. As a result, nerve ischemia occurs, caused by raise in wall thickness and hyalinization of the basal lamina of vessels that nurse peripheral nerves, together with luminal reduction. These alterations are caused by plasma protein escape of capillary membrane to endoneurium, promoting swelling and augmented interstitial pressure in the nerves, accompanied by higher capillary pressure, deposition of fibrin, and thrombus development. Hyperglycaemia per se can evoke nerve hypoxia, especially in sensory nerves, altering their electrical stability. Apparently controversial data from clinical studies described that diabetic patients suffering from the DNP presented higher levels of intravascular oxygen and augmented blood flow in the lower limbs than painless patients. As a result of nerve ischemia, both diabetic patients and animals have shown a progressive nerve loss in proximal and distal segments, resulting in reduction of intraepidermal nerve fibre density. Consequently, axonal degeneration and regeneration also occur but more frequently in patients that do not experience pain. Besides axonal retraction and regeneration, another structural modification related to hyperglycaemia is myelin sheath alteration. The observed demyelinization can be related to Schwann cells altered capacity to support normal myelin sheath [6] (Figs. 52.1 and 52.2).

Nerve excitability Sensing ongoing spontaneous pain and paroxysmal shooting pain in the absence of any external stimulus is caused by ectopic impulse generation within the nociceptive pathways [1, 9]. The enhanced excitability can result from altered ion channel function, such as an increase in persistent sodium currents. Persistent sodium currents can be reliably estimated using threshold tracking. In peripheral neuropathy, persistent sodium currents usually increase possibly due to overexpression of sodium channels associated with axonal regeneration and could be responsible for ectopic firings. In diabetic neuropathy, the activation of the polyol pathway mediated by an enzyme, aldose reductase, leads to reduced Na(+)/K(+) pump activity and intra-axonal sodium accumulation; sodium currents are reduced presumably due to decreased trans-axonal sodium gradient [1, 9]. In addition to voltage-gated sodium channels, several other ion channels probably undergo alterations after a nerve lesion, such as voltage-gated potassium channels, which might also contribute to changes in membrane excitability of nociceptive nerves [1, 9] (Fig. 52.3).

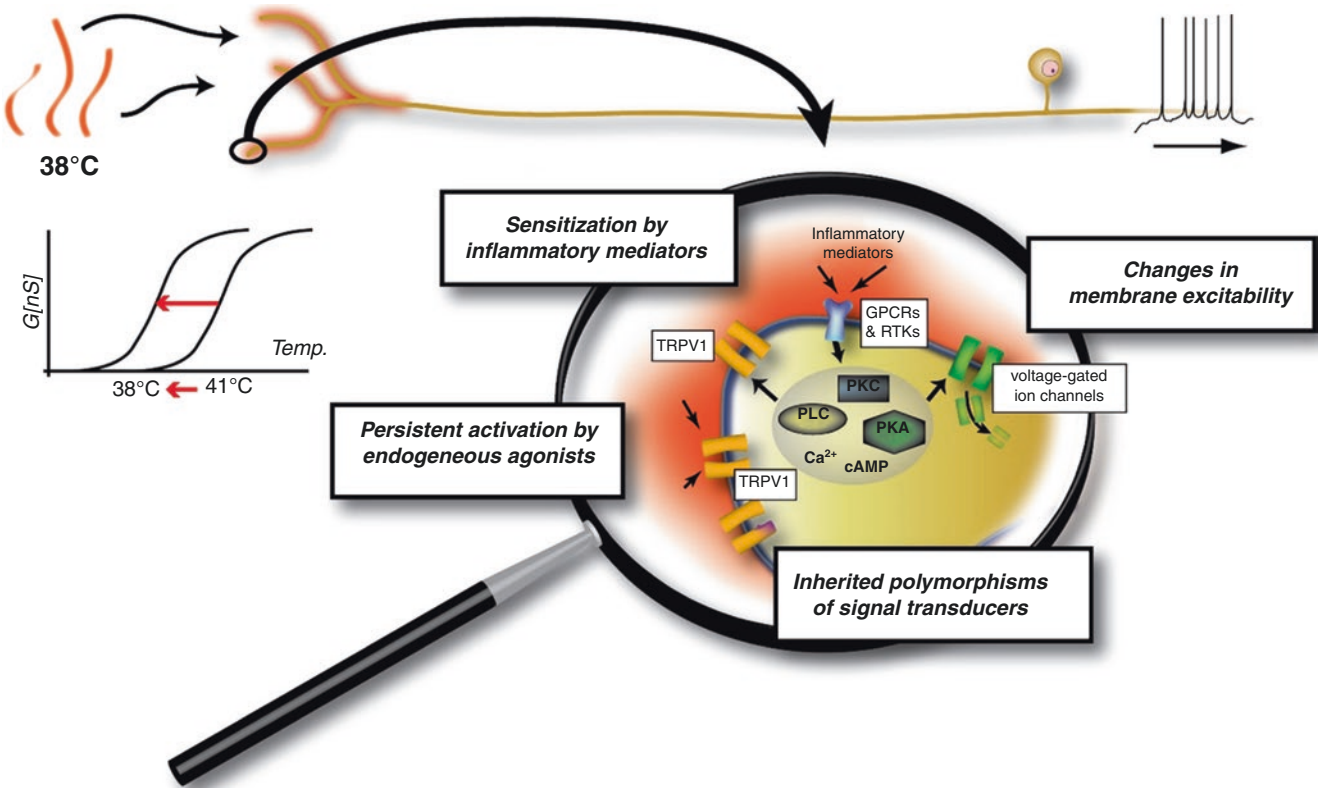


Fig. 52.3 Peripheral sensitization changes in the sensitivity of the peripheral terminals of nociceptors to stimuli can contribute to evoked pain. This can occur through inflammatory mediators sensitizing signal transducer proteins, persistent activation of transducer proteins by endogenous agonists, inherited polymorphisms of transducer proteins, or an increase in membrane excitability. (Taken from von Hehn et al. [10] with permission)

Nerve injury also induces upregulation of various receptor proteins such as the transient receptor potential V1 (TRPV1), which is activated by heat at about 41 °C [1]. In neuropathic condition TRPV1 is downregulated on affected/injured fibres but upregulated on uninjured C-fibres, thereby causing spontaneous nerve activity induced by normal body temperature.

Central sensitization Central sensitization might develop as a consequence of ectopic activity in primary nociceptive afferent fibres, and structural damage within the CNS itself might not be necessarily involved. Spinal cord microglia are also strongly activated after nerve injury, the activated microglia not only exhibit increased expression of microglial markers CD 11 b and Iba 1 but also display elevated phosphorylation of p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase. Inhibition of spinal cord p38 has been shown to attenuate neuropathic and postoperative pain, as well as morphine-induced antinociceptive tolerance. Activation of p38 in spinal microglia results in increased synthesis and release of the neurotrophin brain-derived neurotrophic factor and the proinflammatory cytokines interleukin-1β, interleukin-6, and tumour necrosis factor-α. Phosphorylation of NMDA and AMPA receptors or expression of voltage-gated sodium channels is also involved both in the spinal cord and supraspinal structures. These mediators can powerfully modulate spinal cord synaptic transmission, leading to increased excitability of dorsal horn neurons, that is, central sensitization, partly via suppressing inhibitory synaptic transmission [1, 6, 9]. Further potent inhibitory neurons, such as descending pathways originating in the brainstem, contribute to modulation of pain processing. Lesions that affect these opiodergic and monoaminergic systems also lead to pain exacerbation via disinhibition [9] (Fig. 52.4).

"Chronic Pain Hurts the Brain"

The pain matrix is composed of several interacting networks. A nociceptive matrix receiving spinothalamic projections (mainly posterior operculoinsular areas) ensures the bodily specificity of pain and is the only one whose destruction entails selective pain deficits. Transition from cortical nociception to conscious pain relies on a second-order network, including posterior parietal, prefrontal, and anterior insular areas. Second-order regions are not nociceptive-specific; focal stimulation does not evoke pain, and focal destruction does not produce analgesia, but their joint activation is necessary for conscious perception, attentional modulation, and control of vegetative reactions. The ensuing pain experience can still be modified as a function of beliefs, emotions, and expectations through activity of third-order areas, including the orbitofrontal and perigenual/limbic networks. The pain we remember results from continuous interaction of these subsystems, and substantial changes in the pain experience can be achieved by acting on each of them. Neuropathic pain (NP) is associated with changes in each of these levels of integration. The most robust abnormality in NP is a functional depression of thalamic activity, reversible with therapeutic manoeuvres, and associated with rhythmic neural bursting. Neuropathic allodynia has been associated with enhancement of ipsilateral over contralateral insular activation and lack of reactivity in orbitofrontal/perigenual areas. Although lack of response of perigenual cortices may be an epiphenomenon of chronic pain, the enhancement of ipsilateral activity may reflect disinhibition of ipsilateral spinothalamic pathways due to depression of their contralateral counterpart. This in turn may bias perceptual networks and contribute to the subjective painful experience [11].

In addition to functional changes, morphological alterations at spinal and supraspinal levels have been reported in

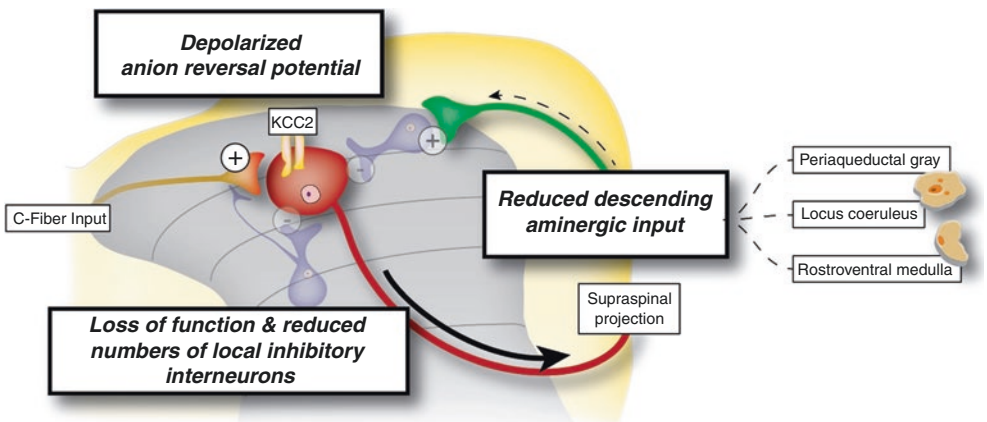


Fig. 52.4 Spinal disinhibition: excitatory nociceptive signals are enhanced after nerve injury by a reduction in normal inhibitory regulation through a loss of local inhibitory interneurons, a depolarized anion reversal potential, and reduced descending inhibition. (Taken from von Hehn et al. [10] with permission)

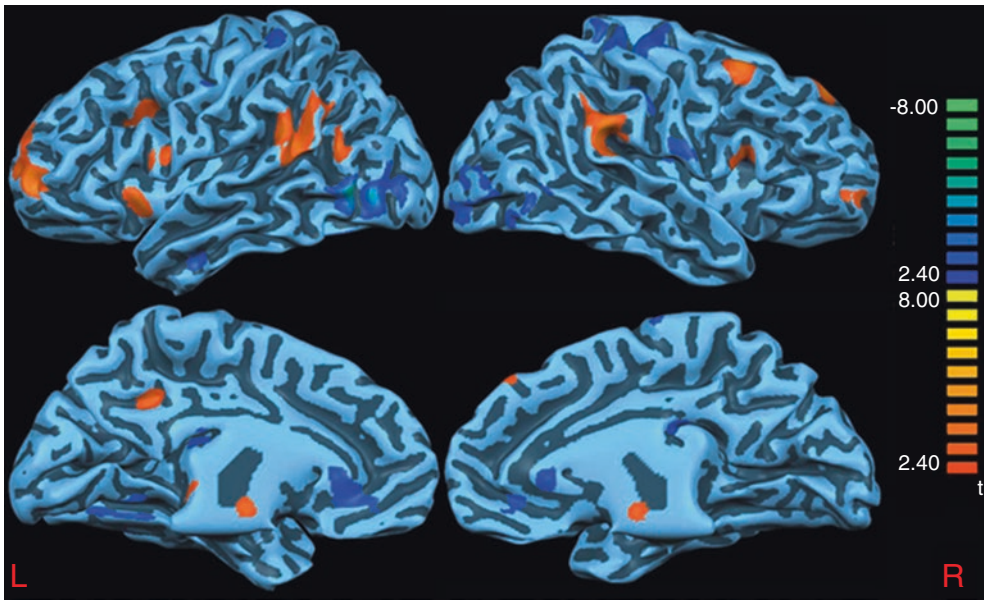


Fig. 52.5 DMN differences between controls and patients. Surface-rendered projection results of a two-sample t-test contrasting the Default Mode Network in the healthy group vs. the pain group. The blue foci indicate the areas that showed significantly less correlational activity in the pain group than in the healthy group. Vice versa the yellow/red foci indicate the areas that showed significantly more correlational activity in the pain group than in the healthy group. (Taken from Cauda et al. [13], with permission)

chronic pain. Neuropathic pain is accompanied by apoptosis of spinal cord cells, sprouting of nerve terminals in somatosensory cortex, grey matter density decrease in PFC associated with reduced cognitive abilities, and thalamic atrophy. Morphometric analysis showed that chronic pain particularly in patients with a neuropathic pain component is associated with 5–10% of brain grey matter atrophy in the prefrontal cortex and thalamus. A decrease in grey matter was also found in the brainstem, temporal lobe, and somatosensory cortex in addition to PFC in patients with chronic pain; cortical changes were more pronounced in the right hemisphere. It remains to be determined if reduced grey matter density is related exclusively or predominantly to a specific cell population (projection neurons, inhibitory interneurons, and microglia) or if different cell types are affected equally. Nerve injury-induced apoptosis in the spinal dorsal horn caused a loss of GABAergic inhibitory interneurons and a decrease in inhibitory synaptic transmission. Microglia was hyperactivated at the spinal level after nerve injury but possibly inhibited in cortical areas in chronic pain [12].

In a revolutionary study by Cauda et al., functional connectivity analyses revealed a cortical network consisting of two anticorrelated patterns: one includes the left fusiform gyrus, the left lingual gyrus, the left inferior temporal gyrus, the right inferior occipital gyrus, the dorsal anterior cingulate cortex bilaterally, and the pre- and postcentral gyrus bilaterally, in which its activity is correlated negatively with pain and positively with the controls; the other includes the left precuneus, dorsolateral prefrontal, frontopolar cortex (both bilaterally), right superior frontal gyrus, left inferior frontal gyrus, thalami, both insulae, inferior parietal lobule, right mammillary body, and a small area in the left brainstem, in which its activity is correlated positively with pain and negatively with the controls. Furthermore, a power spectra analyses revealed group differences in the frequency bands wherein the spatial independent component analysis (sICA) signal was decomposed: patients' spectra are shifted towards higher frequencies [13] (Fig. 52.5).

Diagnosis

As it has been previously shown, prediabetes can also be associated with neuropathy. Based on the recent ADA guidelines, diabetes can be diagnosed on the results of HbA1C, fasting plasma glucose (FPG) or 2 h postprandial glucose (PG) levels. This statement recommended the use of the A1C test to diagnose diabetes, with a threshold of ≥6.5%. The established glucose criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes (FPG ≥ 7 mmol/l or 2-h PG ≥ 11.1 mmol/l) remained valid as well [14].

Prediabetes can be defined as having impaired fasting glucose (IFG) (FPG levels 5.6–6.9 mmol/l) or impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) (2-h PG values in the oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) of 7.8–11.0 mmol/l). It should be noted that the World Health Organization (WHO) and a number of other diabetes organizations define the cutoff for IFG at 110 mg/dl (6.1 mmol/l) [1]. Hence, it is reasonable to consider an A1C range of 5.7–6.4% as identifying individuals with high risk for future diabetes, a state that may be referred to as prediabetes [1, 14]. As with glucose measurements, the continuum of risk is curvilinear – as A1C rises, the risk of diabetes rises disproportionately.

Accordingly, interventions should be most intensive and follow-up particularly vigilant for those with A1Cs above 6.0%, who should be considered to be at very high risk. Standards of lifestyle and medical care can also be found in this guideline [14].

In DPN, sensory deficits usually overshadow motor nerve dysfunction and appear first in the distal portions of the extremities and progress proximally in a "stocking-glove" distribution with increasing duration or severity of diabetes [1]. In the typical form, the large nerve fibres are damaged later than the small ones [15]. The signs and symptoms of DPN vary depending on fibre type involved, with large fibre disease impairing proprioception and light touch. Small fibre disease impairs pain and temperature perception, leading to paresthesias, dysesthesias, and/or neuropathic pain [2] (Table 52.1). Distal weakness occurs only in the most severe cases. Diminished or absent deep tendon reflexes, particularly the Achilles tendon reflex, often indicates mild and otherwise asymptomatic DPN. More advanced asymptomatic neuropathy may first present with late complications such as ulceration or neuroarthropathy (Charcot's joints) of the foot [1, 15].

For diagnosis of DN, bedside examination should include assessment of muscle power, sensations of pinprick, joint position, touch, and temperature. Vibration test should be done by tuning fork of a 128 Hz. For touch sensation monofilament of 1 g is recommended [1]. A number of questionnaires have been developed to help practitioners diagnose neuropathic pain [1, 15, 16]. The DN4 questionnaire is of particular interest, as it can be rapidly completed, is easy to use, and has a good diagnostic performance: for a score $\geq$ 4/10, it has a sensitivity of 83% and a specificity of 90% for diagnosing neuropathic pain [15, 16]. The main advantage of screening tools is to identify potential patients with NP, particularly by nonspecialists. However, these tools fail to identify 10–20% of patients with clinician diagnosed NP, showing that they cannot replace careful clinical judgement [16] (Table 52.1).

Electrophysiological tests may have no place in the diagnosis of chronic sensorimotor diabetic neuropathy, as they can be normal when only small diameter fibres are damaged, but is a reliable procedure in the case of mononeuropathies or radiculopathies to exclude any other aetiology (demyelinizating polyneuropathies, etc.). Such procedures should be performed only when the clinical presentation is atypical and the diabetic origin uncertain (asymmetrical symptoms or involvement of the upper limbs) [15, 16].

Among laboratory tests, laser-evoked potentials (LEPs) are the best tool for assessing Aδ pathway dysfunction (small fibre neuropathy) and skin biopsy for assessing neuropathies with distal loss of unmyelinated nerve fibres [1, 16].

Table 52.1 Definition and assessment of negative and positive sensory symptoms and signs in patients with neuropathic pain

Negative signs and symptoms		
Symptom	*Sign*	*Assessment*
	Reduced sensation:	Touch skin with:
Hypoesthesia	To non-painful stimuli	Painter's brush, cotton swab
Pallhypoesthesia	To vibration	Tuning fork
Hypoalgesia	To painful stimuli	Pinprick
Thermohypoesthesia	To cold or warm stimuli	Objects of 10 and 45 °C
Spontaneous sensations/pain		
Symptom	*Sign*	*Assessment*
Paraesthesia	Non-painful ongoing sensation	Number per episode
Paroxysmal pain	Painful, shooting electrical attacks for seconds	Grade intensity (0–10) Threshold for evocation Area in cm^2
Superficial pain	Painful ongoing sensation	
Evoked pain		
Symptom	*Sign*	*Assessment*
Mechanical dynamic allodynia	Normally non-painful stimuli on skin evoke pain	Stroking skin with painter's brush, etc.
Mechanical static allodynia	Normally non-painful pressure stimuli on skin evoke pain	Manual gentle mechanical pressure to the skin
Mechanical punctate or pinprick hyperalgesia	Normally stinging-but-not-painful stimuli evoke pain	Manual gentle pricking of the skin
Temporal summation	Repetitive application of identical single noxious stimuli is perceived as increasing pain sensation	Pricking the skin with safety pin at <3 s intervals for 30 s
Cold allodynia	Normally non-painful cold stimuli evoke pain	Touch skin with objects of 20 °C
Heat allodynia	Normally non-painful heat stimuli evoke pain	Touch skin with objects of 40 °C
Mechanical deep somatic allodynia	Normally non-painful pressure on deep somatic tissues evokes pain	Manual light pressure at joints or muscle

Taken from Deli et al. [1], with permission

Clinical Forms of Diabetic Neuropathy

Several fairly distinct clinical syndromes of diabetic neuropathy have been delineated: the most common as noted is a distal, symmetrical, primarily sensory polyneuropathy affecting feet and legs in a chronic, slowly progressive manner; the others are acute ophthalmoplegia that affects the third, and less often the sixth, cranial nerve on one side; acute mononeuropathy of limbs or trunk including a painful thoracolumbar radiculopathy; an acute or subacute painful,

asymmetrical, predominantly motor multiple neuropathy affecting the upper lumbar roots and the proximal leg muscles ("diabetic amyotrophy"); a more symmetrical, proximal motor weakness and wasting, usually without pain and with variable sensory loss, pursuing a subacute or chronic course; and an autonomic neuropathy involving bowel, bladder, sweating, and circulatory reflexes. These forms of neuropathy often coexist or overlap, particularly the autonomic and distal symmetrical types and the subacute proximal neuropathies (Tables 52.2 and 52.3).

Sensorimotor Neuropathy

Distal Sensory Diabetic Polyneuropathy This is the most common presentation of neuropathy in diabetes, and up to 50% of patients may experience symptoms, most frequently burning pain, electrical or stabbing sensations, parasthesiae, hyperasthesiae, and deep aching pain [1]. These symptoms are generally worse at night and disturb sleep. Together with painful symptoms during the day, this often leads to a reduction in individual's ability to perform daily activities [17].

Examination of the lower limb usually reveals sensory loss of vibration, pressure, pain, and temperature perception (mediated by small and large fibres) and absent ankle reflexes [15–17]. Muscle weakness is usually mild, but in some patients a distal sensory neuropathy is combined with a proximal weakness and wasting [1, 15–17].

Interestingly, as up to half of the patients may be asymptomatic, a diagnosis may only be made on examination or, in some cases, when the patient presents with a painless foot ulcer [1].

About 10% of diabetic patients experience persistent pain (so-called painful diabetic neuropathy) [17]. Some patients develop predominantly small fibre neuropathy manifesting with pain and paresthesia early in the course of diabetes that may be associated with insulin therapy (insulin neuritis) [18].

Acute Diabetic Mononeuropathies Cranial neuropathy in diabetic patients most commonly involves the oculomotor nerve followed by trochlear and facial nerve in order of frequency. Third nerve palsy with pupillary sparing is the hallmark of diabetic oculomotor palsy and is attributed to nerve infarction [15–18].

Isolated involvement of practically all the major peripheral nerves has been described in diabetes (e.g. carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS) is three times more common in diabetic patients than the normal population and CTS is the second most common neuropathic disease in diabetic patients), but the ones most frequently affected are the femoral, sciatic, and peroneal nerves, in that order [10, 19, 20]. Rarely is a nerve in the upper extremity affected. In these cases nerve entrapment seems to be commoner than nerve infarction [15–18].

Mononeuropathies often emerge during periods of transition in the diabetic illness, for example, after an episode of hyper- or hypoglycaemia, when insulin treatment is initiated or adjusted, or when there has been rapid weight loss [1, 15–18].

Diabetic Multiple Mononeuropathies and Radiculopathies This category overlaps with the mononeuropathies. A syndrome of painful unilateral or asymmetrical multiple neuropathies tends to occur in older patients with relatively mild or even unrecognized diabetes. Multiple nerves are affected in a random distribution (mononeuritis multiplex). As in mononeuropathy the onset is abrupt in one nerve and occurs earlier than the other nerves, which are involved sequentially or irregularly. Nerve infarctions occur because of occlusion of vasa nervosum and should be differentiated from systemic vasculitis [15–18].

There are characteristic diabetic syndromes, which present subacutely with pain followed by weakness, that affect primarily patients with mild diabetes called radiculoplexus neuropathies (Table 52.3). Three main types can occur, alone or in combination, and include diabetic cervical radiculoplexus neuropathy (DCRPN), diabetic thoracic radiculoneuropathy (DTRN), and diabetic lumbosacral radiculoplexus neuropathy (DLRPN) [15–18].

Diabetic lumbosacral radiculoplexus neuropathy (DLRPN) occurs in approximately 1% of diabetic patients and probably is the form of diabetic neuropathy that causes the most morbidity [20]. It has been variably known by different names, including diabetic amyotrophy, Bruns-Garland syndrome, diabetic mononeuritis multiplex, diabetic polyradiculopathy, proximal diabetic neuropathy, and others [1]. Pain, which can be severe, begins in the low back or hip and spreads to the thigh and knee on one side; the discomfort has a deep, aching character with superimposed lancinating jabs, and there is a propensity for pain to be most severe at night. Although pain is initially the worse symptom, weakness and atrophy become the main problem, which are mainly evident in the pelvic girdle and thigh muscles, although the distal muscles of the leg may also be affected [15, 18].

Diabetic thoracic radiculopathies are a rare, but important complication of diabetes mellitus. These typically present with severe pain and dysesthesias along the trunk, chest, or abdominal wall and often prompt extensive workups for underlying chest or abdominal pathology [1]. They can be symmetric and can involve multiple dermatomes [15–18]. While DLRPN is a much more familiar branch of the DRPN

Table 52.2 The main features of different patterns of disabling neuropathies in patients with diabetes

	Pains	Distal symmetrical sensory loss	Weakness	Sensory ataxia	Autonomic dysfunction	Progression	CSF Protein	Electrophysiological test	Nerve biopsy
Length dependent polyneuropathy	Frequent in distal limbs	Length dependent predominates on pain and temperature sensations	Minor, distal symmetrical	Rare	Common	Years	Variable	Axonal pattern, distal symmetrical	Massive axonal loss
CIDP in diabetic patients	Occasional	Variable – predominateson proprioception	Common, often severe proximal and distal	Common	Uncommon	Weeks or months	Increased	Mixed axonal and demyelinative	Variable axon loss and demyelination
Focal/multifocal diabetic neuropathy	Present in most cases	Variable	Common – asymmetrical – nerve or root territory	Uncommon	Uncommon	Weeks or months	Increased	Axonal pattern, multifocal	Variable

Taken from Deli et al. [1], with permission
CIDP chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, *CSF* cerebrospinal fluid

Table 52.3 First-line treatment of neuropathic pain

Drug	Mode of action	Cautions	Major side effects	Other benefits	NNT	NNH	NNMH
TCA	Inhibition of reuptake of serotonin and/or norepinephrine, block of sodium channels, anticholinergic	Postinfarct states, arrhythmias	Sedation, anticholinergic effects	Improvement of depression and sleep disturbance	1.3–2.4	2.7–6	15–28
SNRI	Inhibition of both serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake	Hepatic dysfunction, renal insufficiency, alcoholism, cardiac disease	Nausea	Improvement of depression	3.1–6	9.6	17–21
Gabapentin	Decreases release of glutamate, norepinephrine, and substance P, with ligands on α2-δ subunit of voltage-gated calcium channel	Renal insufficiency	Sedation, dizziness, peripheral oedema	No clinically significant drug interactions	3.3–5.8	2.7–3.7	11–23
Pregabalin	See above	See above	See above	See above plus improvement of sleep disturbance and anxiety	2.9–5	3.7	11–23
Opioids	μ-receptor agonism, inhibition of norepinephrine, and serotonin reuptake	History of substance abuse, suicide risk, driving impairment, concomitant use of SSNRI, tricyclic antidepressant (serotonin syndrome)	Nausea/vomiting, constipation, dizziness	No systemic side effects and rapid onset of analgesic effect	2.6–4.3	3.6	7.8

Taken from Deli et al. [1], with permission
TCA tricyclic antidepressant, *SNRI* serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor, *NNT* number needed to treat, *NNH* number needed to harm, *NNMH* number needed to major harm)

spectrum, the cervical segment can also be involved, but it is very rare [18].

Insulin neuritis In a seemingly paradoxical relationship, both poor glucose control and rapid treatment of hyperglycaemia can be associated with an increased risk of neuropathy. A clinically distinct form of neuropathy that deserves mention is treatment-induced neuropathy in diabetes (TIND). This underdiagnosed iatrogenic small fibre neuropathy is defined as the ‘‘acute onset of neuropathic pain and/or autonomic dysfunction within 8 weeks of a large improvement in glycaemic control specified as a decrease in glycosylated HbA1c of more than 2% points over 3 months’’ [18]. TIND was first recognized soon after the introduction of insulin and named “insulin neuritis” [1, 8, 10, 18, 21]. For many decades, “insulin neuritis” was considered a rare cause for acute neuropathy. However, recently published data suggest that it is much more common and clinically relevant. It is most common in type 1 diabetes mellitus (DM) treated with insulin, although rapid glucose correction can occur in both types of diabetes as a result of either insulin or, less frequently, oral agents. In a study by Gibbons and Freeman, a surprising 10.9% of 954 subjects with diabetes met criteria for TIND, and the risk of developing TIND was associated with the magnitude and rate of HbA1c change [21]. Similar to DPN, the neuropathy of TIND generally follows a length-dependent pattern, but, in contrast, the pain and autonomic symptoms are more extensive and less responsive to opioids. The underlying pathophysiology is poorly understood, although it has been suggested that rapid glycaemic control both with and without insulin leads to hemodynamic changes (arteriovenous shunting) resulting in endoneurial hypoxia of small fibres [8, 10, 18, 21].

Diabetes-Associated Chronic Inflammatory Demyelinating Polyneuropathy (CIDP)

Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (CIDP), as the name implies, is an autoimmune disorder of unknown aetiology in two thirds of the patients; however, in remaining one third, an aetiological cause might be found. Some currently described aetiologies include gammopathies including monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS), multiple myeloma, Castleman’s disease, and Waldenstrom gammopathy; also, other concurrent disorders like inflammatory bowel disorders, cutaneous melanoma, and Hodgkin’s lymphoma have been implied [7]. CIDP has typical and atypical phenotypic variants. Only half of CIDP patients have typical CIDP, which exhibits symmetrical sensory and motor symptoms. The remainder has atypical disease, which presents with predominantly focal, sensory, motor, distal, or asymmetrical symptoms. Despite increased efforts to identify a biomarker, there is no definitive diagnos-

tic marker for CIDP, and recognition of CIDP is not straightforward in some cases due to its heterogeneous nature [19]. For further details see the excellent review by Nelligan et al. [20].

Simultaneous occurrence of CIDP and diabetes mellitus (DM) (diabetic CIDP or CIDP-DM) is frequently seen in clinical practice; however, it is ambiguous whether the two disorders are pathogenetically correlated. It is of utmost importance to be familiar with CIDP occurring in diabetics for the reason that contrasting to diabetic polyneuropathy, it may be treatable [7].

There is an increasing body of literature suggesting that the prevalence of CIDP tends to be higher in diabetic patients, especially in those of older age. A recent retrospective health insurance administrative claims database study suggested that the prevalence of CIDP in a nondiabetic population is 6 per 100,000 persons, while the prevalence of CIDP in a patient population with DM is ninefold higher at 54 per 100,000 persons. The association of CIDP with DM remains controversial, as both diseases have increased prevalence in patients over age 50 years. It is a challenge to identify CIDP in a diabetic population due to concomitant axonal damage. Although some patients with CIDP and DM respond to treatment, it is difficult to predict response. Because of the rising prevalence of DM throughout the world, there is a need to differentiate CIDP from DPN accurately [19].

The diagnosis of CIDP relies on a combination of clinical and electrophysiological criteria. A number of criteria have been proposed. The European Federation of Neurological Societies (EFNS)/Peripheral Nerve Society (PNS) guidelines were developed for clinical and research use [22]. The criteria combine clinical features and electrophysiological evidence to define CIDP, with supportive criteria including elevated cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) protein, gadolinium enhancement of nerve roots or plexus on MRI, or nerve biopsy findings providing supplemental diagnostic evidence. Electrodiagnostic evidence of peripheral nerve demyelination in motor nerves is required for diagnosis, including distal latency prolongation, reduction of motor conduction velocity, prolongation of F-wave latency, and partial motor conduction block and must be identified in at least two nerves for a diagnosis of "definite" CIDP. It should be noted that in some cases of pure sensory CIDP where routine motor conduction studies are normal, the EFNS/PNS guidelines may fail to diagnose the condition as CIDP. In these cases, if CIDP is suspected, the proximal region of the peripheral sensory nervous system should be carefully interrogated using sensory evoked potentials. Although other criteria have been proposed, the EFNS/PNS criteria have good sensitivity and specificity for CIDP diagnosis and are currently the most commonly used [22].

Treatment of Diabetic Neuropathy

In diabetic patients the risk of DPN and autonomic neuropathy can be reduced with improved blood glucose control, and the improvement of lipid and blood pressure indexes and the avoidance of cigarette smoking and excess alcohol consumption are already recommended for the prevention of other complications of diabetes [1].

Preventive Treatment

Based on the aetiology of diabetic neuropathy, several agents have been tested to halt its progression (after the onset of subjective symptoms, only palliative treatments are currently available), thereby improving clinical outcome [23]. An analysis of the literature on experimental peripheral diabetic neuropathy suggests that, to date, all of the pharmacological agents shown to counteract one or several manifestations of painful or insensate neuropathy also have efficacy against nerve conduction velocity deficit [23]. Animal studies using pharmacological and genetic approaches revealed important roles of increased aldose reductase, protein kinase C, and poly(ADPribose) polymerase activities, advanced glycation end products and their receptors, oxidative-nitrosative stress, growth factor imbalances, and C-peptide deficiency in both painful and insensate neuropathy [23].

Treatment with aldose reductase inhibitors was suggested not only due to improving impaired conduction velocity but also improving a variety of subjective symptoms based on recent studies [24]. These findings may support the hypothesis that the polyol pathway plays a central role in the onset and progress of diabetic neuropathy in human subjects. On the other hand, a Cochrane meta-analysis including 32 trials found no overall significant difference between the treated and control groups (SMD -0.25, 95% CI -0.56 to 0.05), although one subgroup analysis (four trials using tolrestat) favoured treatment [24]. There was no overall benefit on nerve conduction parameters (27 studies) or foot ulceration (one study). Quality of life was not assessed in any of the studies. While most adverse events were infrequent and minor, three compounds had dose-limiting adverse events that lead to their withdrawal from human use: severe hypersensitivity reactions with sorbinil, elevation of creatinine with zenarestat, and alteration of liver function with tolrestat [24].

Alpha lipoic acid is also a potent antioxidant in experimental models, reported to reduce diabetic microvascular and macrovascular complications in animal models [25]. Four trials (ALADIN I, ALADIN III, SYDNEY, NATHAN II) comprised $n = 1258$ patients (α-lipoic acid $n = 716$; placebo $n = 542$) were included in the first meta-analysis based on the intention-to-treat principle. The results of this meta-

analysis provided evidence that treatment with α-lipoic acid (600 mg/day i.v.) over 3 weeks is safe and significantly improves both positive neuropathic symptoms and neuropathic deficits to a clinically meaningful degree in diabetic patients with symptomatic polyneuropathy [25]. This statement was also included in the ADA guidelines as a Level I, Grade A evidence [1]. On the other hand, this meta-analysis did not fulfil the requirements of the Cochrane Collaboration [25]. In an economical point of view, standard symptomatic treatment seems to be much more cheaper in Europe [1, 25]. The combination of parenteral (600 mg daily for 3 weeks) and oral therapy (600 mg three times daily for 6 months) administered over a total of 7 months failed to translate into significant improvements [1]. The 4-year follow-up Nathan 1 trial also led to this neutral result [1, 25]. A recent meta-analysis confirmed the above-mentioned findings [1, 25]. The current AAN and EFNS guidelines do not support the use of this drug in neuropathic conditions [1].

Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) or of angiotensin receptor blockers (ARB) are widely used in diabetic patients to manage blood pressure, prevent, or treat cardiovascular disease and nephropathy. Large-scale studies of the effects of ACE inhibitors or ARBs have not been done, although some small studies and prospective assessments have been performed with positive impact on neuropathy [1].

Symptomatic Treatment: Painful Diabetic Neuropathy

Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) These are so-called early antidepressant medications. These first-generation medications were effective in the treatment of depression because they enhanced serotonergic or noradrenergic mechanisms or both. They also were the first medication category that proved effective for neuropathic pain in placebo-controlled trials [26]. Unfortunately, the TCAs also blocked histaminic, cholinergic, and alpha1-adrenergic receptor sites, and this action brought about unwanted side effects such as weight gain, dry mouth, constipation, drowsiness, and dizziness [26]. The cardiovascular effects of TCAs are well characterized and include orthostatic hypotension, slowed cardiac conduction, type 1A antiarrhythmic activity, and increased heart rate. Although, much of them are temporary and mild effect, and they are generally well tolerated. Based on a Cochrane analysis for diabetic neuropathy, the number needed to treat (NNT) for effectiveness was 1.3 (95% CI 1.2–1.5), the number needed to harm (NNH) for minor adverse effects was 6 (95% CI 4.2–10.7), and number needed to harm (NNH) for major adverse effects defined as an event leading to withdrawal from a study was 28 (95% CI 17.6–68.9) [27]. Comparison meta-analysis of TCAs and SSRIs showed beneficial safety profiles (but the key effects differed between the drug classes) [1, 27]. On the other hand, their use should be avoided in postinfarct states and in the case of conduction disturbances and cardiac arrhythmias (IA antiarrhythmic effect) [1] (Table 52.3).

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) The SSRIs are increasingly being used to treat a spectrum of depressed patients, including the elderly. As a class, SSRIs have comparable efficacy to TCAs against depression but are generally better tolerated [27]. Despite of their widely use, there is still limited evidence for the role of classical SSRIs in the treatment of painful diabetic neuropathy [27].

The class of serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs) now comprises three medications: venlafaxine, milnacipran, and duloxetine. These drugs block the reuptake of both serotonin (5-HT) and norepinephrine with differing selectivity. Whereas milnacipran blocks 5-HT and norepinephrine reuptake with equal affinity, duloxetine has a tenfold selectivity for 5-HT and venlafaxine a 30-fold selectivity for 5-HT. All three SNRIs are efficacious in treating a variety of anxiety disorders [28, 29].

Venlafaxine (three studies) has an NNT of 3.1 (95% CI 2.2–5.1). The NNH for minor adverse effects 9.6 (95% CI 3.5–13) and the number needed to harm (NNH) for major adverse effects defined as an event leading to withdrawal from a study 16.2 (95% CI 8–436) for venlafaxine [1].

Duloxetine at 60 mg daily was also effective in treating painful diabetic peripheral neuropathy in the short-term to 12 weeks with a risk ratio (RR) for 50% pain reduction at 12 weeks of 1.65 (95% confidence interval (CI) 1.34–2.03) and number needed to treat (NNT) 6 (95% CI 5–10) [28]. In a side effect analysis, it was generally safe and well tolerated, with the three most commonly reported adverse events were nausea, somnolence, and constipation. Modest changes in glycemia were associated with duloxetine. Aspartate transaminase/alanine transaminase increases were transient and not considered predictive of more severe outcomes [28, 29] (Table 52.3).

Antiepileptic drugs Antiepileptic drugs (AEDs) have a long history of effectiveness in the treatment of neuropathic pain, dating back to case studies of the treatment of trigeminal neuralgia with phenytoin in 1942 and carbamazepine in 1962 [1, 30–33]. Since 1993, nine new AEDs (felbamate, gabapentin, pregabalin, lamotrigine, topiramate, tiagabine, levetiracetam, oxcarbazepine, and zonisamide) have received Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval for the adjunctive treatment of partial seizures [30–33]. In addition to providing efficacy against epilepsy, these new AEDs may also be effective in neuropathic pain. For example, spontaneous activity in regenerating small-calibre primary afferent nerve fibres may be quelled by sodium channel blockade,

and hyperexcitability in dorsal horn spinal neurons may be decreased by the inhibition of glutamate release [30–33].

Gabapentin is an effective agent in the treatment of diabetic neuropathy, the NNT for effective pain was 2.9 (95% CI 2.2–4.3), and the NNH for minor harm was 3.7 (95% CI 2.4–5.4). Persons taking gabapentin can expect to suffer dizziness (21%), somnolence (16%), peripheral oedema (8%), and gait disturbance (9%). Serious adverse events (4%) were no more common than with placebo [30–33] (Table 52.3).

Pregabalin at doses of 300 mg, 450 mg, and 600 mg daily was effective in patients with postherpetic neuralgia, painful diabetic neuropathy, central neuropathic pain, and fibromyalgia (19 studies, 7003 participants). Pregabalin at 150 mg daily was generally ineffective [1]. The best (lowest) NNT for each condition for at least 50% pain relief over baseline (substantial benefit) for 600 mg pregabalin daily compared with placebo was 5.0 (4.0–6.6) for painful diabetic neuropathy. With 600 mg pregabalin, daily somnolence typically occurred in 15–25%, and dizziness occurred in 27–46%. The proportion of participants reporting at least one adverse event was not affected by dose nor was the number with a serious adverse event, which was not more than with placebo [30–33] (Table 52.3).

The efficacy of valproic acid and lamotrigine is doubtful; they are not recommended routinely [33]. Using the Cochrane criteria, carbamazepine seems to be effective; on the other hand, no trial was longer than 4 weeks, of good reporting quality, using outcomes equivalent to at least moderate clinical benefit. In these circumstances, caution is needed in interpretation, and meaningful comparison with other interventions is not possible [1, 30–33]. The efficacy of topiramate is also neutral in this condition [1, 30–33].

Narcotic agents Short-term studies provide only equivocal evidence regarding the efficacy of opioids in reducing the intensity of neuropathic pain, whereas intermediate-term studies demonstrate significant efficacy of opioids over placebo, which is likely to be clinically important [34]. The opioids studied were classified as weak (tramadol, propoxyphene, codeine) or strong (morphine, oxycodone) [34]. Weak and strong opioids outperformed placebo for pain and function in all types of neuropathic pain based on the result of a recent meta-analysis [34]. Other drugs produced better functional outcomes than opioids, whereas for pain relief they were outperformed only by strong opioids. Dropout rates averaged 33% in the opioid groups and 38% in the placebo groups [34]. Among the side effects of opioids, only constipation and nausea were clinically and statistically significant.

Benzodiazepines Agonists at the benzodiazepine-binding site of ionotropic gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA(A)) receptors are in clinical use as hypnotics, anxiolytics, and anticonvulsants since the early 1960. Analgesic effects of classical benzodiazepines have occasionally been reported in certain subgroups of patients suffering from chronic pain or after spinal delivery through intrathecal catheters. However, these drugs are generally not considered as analgesics. Recent evidence from genetically modified mice now indicates that agents targeting only a subset of benzodiazepine (GABA(A)) receptors should provide pronounced antihyperalgesic activity against inflammatory and neuropathic pain. Several such compounds have been developed recently, which exhibit significant antihyperalgesia in mice and rats and appear to be devoid of the typical side effects of classical benzodiazepines [35].

Other agents Local lidocaine and capsaicin cream have been shown to be effective in the treatment of neuropathic conditions. They are included as potential therapeutic options in the recent AAN guidelines. Acupuncture, but not traditional Chinese herbal medicine, seems to be slightly effective. Transcutaneous electric nerve stimulation (TENS) should also be considered in the treatment of painful diabetic neuropathy [1].

Comparison In random-effect and fixed-effect analyses of duloxetine (DLX), pregabalin (PGB) and gabapentin (GBP), all were superior to placebo for all efficacy parameters, with some tolerability trade-offs. Indirect comparison of DLX with PGB found no differences in 24 h pain severity, but significant differences in subjective global improvement, favouring PGB, and in dizziness, favouring DLX, were apparent. Comparing DLX and GBP, there were no statistically significant differences [36]. In three head-to-head trials, there was no difference between gabapentin and tricyclic antidepressants for achieving pain relief (RR 0.99, 95% CI 0.76–1.29) [37]. In a recent network meta-analysis, all interventions remained effective in comparison with placebo (mean difference in change of pain from baseline compared with placebo, amitriptyline, −12.58 [95% CI -16.66 to −8.50]; capsaicin, −9.40 [95% CI -13.92 to −4.88]; gabapentin, −10.22 [95% CI –17.25 to −3.19]; and pregabalin, −10.53 [95% CI -14.74 to −6.32] [36–38]). Based on these results, 5% lidocaine medicated plaster was comparable with the previously mentioned medications [38].

Combination therapy Unfortunately there are too few controlled studies (complying with modern requirements for EBM) on combination therapy for neuropathic pain [39]. Based on pharmacological, and pharmacokinetical profile, SNRIs and TCAs cannot be combined because of the high possibility of serotonin syndrome. TCAs and gabapentin, pregabalin, or SNRI in combination with the abovementioned agents are good possibilities. Opioids can be combined with each of these drugs. Based on the recent AAN guidelines, venlafaxine may be added to gabapentin for a better response,

and the EFNS guidelines prefer the combination therapy of TCA-gabapentin and gabapentin-opioids [1].

The recently published COMBO-DN multicentre, double-blind, parallel-group study in diabetic peripheral neuropathic pain addressed whether, in patients not responding to standard doses of duloxetine or pregabalin, combining both medications is superior to increasing each drug to its maximum recommended dose [39]. For initial 8-week therapy, either 60 mg/day duloxetine (groups 1, 2) or 300 mg/day pregabalin (groups 3, 4) was given. Thereafter, in the 8-week combination/high-dose therapy period, only nonresponders received 120 mg/day duloxetine (group 1), a combination of 60 mg/day duloxetine and 300 mg/day pregabalin (groups 2, 3), or 600 mg/day pregabalin (group 4). Eight hundred four patients were evaluated for initial therapy and 339 for combination/high-dose therapy. Fifty-percent response rates were 52.1% for combination and 39.3% for high-dose monotherapy ($P = 0.068$). In exploratory analyses of the initial 8-week therapy uncorrected for multiple comparisons, 60 mg/day duloxetine was found superior to 300 mg/day pregabalin ($P < 0.001$) [39]. Although not significantly superior to high-dose monotherapy, combination therapy was considered to be effective, safe, and well tolerated.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Consequences of peripheral diabetic neuropathy:
   (a) Morbidity
   (b) Discapacity
   (c) Mortality
   (d) Diminished quality of life
   (e) All of the above
2. Prevalence of peripheral neuropathy in patients with prediabetes:
   (a) Zero, it is exclusive of patients with diabetes.
   (b) 5–10%
   (c) 11–25%
   (d) 26–40%
   (e) 41–55%
3. The key pathological process inducing nerve damage in diabetes:
   (a) Trauma
   (b) Oxidative stress
   (c) Ischemia
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
4. Diabetic peripheral neuropathy initially affects:
   (a) One extremity
   (b) Several extremities, asymmetrically
   (c) The proximal portions of the extremities
   (d) The distal portions of extremities, symmetrically
   (e) The distal portions of extremities, asymmetrically
5. The percentage of patients with asymptomatic distal sensory diabetic neuropathy is:
   (a) 100%
   (b) 75%
   (c) 50%
   (d) 25%
   (e) 10%
6. Acute diabetic mononeuropathies are frequently associated:
   (a) With adequate metabolic control
   (b) With viral infections
   (c) With emotional stress
   (d) With periods of transitions of the disease
   (e) None of the above
7. Effective doses of pregabalin for the treatment of painful diabetic neuropathy:
   (a) 75 mg/day
   (b) 150 mg/day
   (c) 300 mg/day
   (d) 450 mg/day
   (e) 600 mg/day
8. Traditional benzodiazepines are effective analgesics.
   (a) True
   (b) False
9. The evidence regarding the efficacy of opioids in reducing the intensity of neuropathic pain shows that:
   (a) They should be standard therapy
   (b) They are superior to tricyclic antidepressants
   (c) They are equally effective to pregabalin
   (d) They are only superior to placebo, and the evidence is equivocal
   (e) They should not be used
10. In patients with diabetic peripheral pain, the COMBO-DN study showed:
    (a) That combination therapy with duloxetine and pregabalin is superior to high-dose monotherapy
    (b) That 300 mg pregabalin is superior to 60 mg duloxetine
    (c) That 60 mg duloxetine is superior to 300 mg pregabalin
    (d) That both medications have similar rates of effectiveness and safety
    (e) That doses of duloxetine could be decreased

Correct Answers

1. (e) All of the above
2. (c) 11–25%
3. (b) Oxidative stress
4. (d) The distal portions of extremities, symmetrically
5. (c) 50%
6. (d) With periods of transitions of the disease

7. (c–e)
8. (b) False
9. (d) They are only superior to placebo, and the evidence is equivocal
10. (c) That 60 mg duloxetine is superior to 300 mg pregabalin

References

1. Deli G, Bosnyak E, Pusch G, Komoly S, Feher G. Diabetic neuropathies: diagnosis and management. Neuroendocrinology. 2013;98(4):267–80.
2. Yang CP, Lin CC, Li CI, Liu CS, Lin WY, Hwang KL, Yang SY, Chen HJ, Li TC. Cardiovascular risk factors increase the risks of diabetic peripheral neuropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: the Taiwan diabetes study. Medicine (Baltimore). 2015;94(42):e1783.
3. Popescu S, Timar B, Baderca F, Simu M, Diaconu L, Velea I, Timar R. Age as an independent factor for the development of neuropathy in diabetic patients. Clin Interv Aging. 2016;11:313–8.
4. Juster-Switlyk K, Smith AG. Updates in diabetic peripheral neuropathy. F1000Res. 2016;5. pii: F1000 Faculty Rev-738.
5. Zherebitskaya E, Akude E, Smith DR, Fernyhough P. Development of selective axonopathy in adult sensory neurons isolated from diabetic rats: role of glucose-induced oxidative stress. Diabetes. 2009;58(6):1356–64.
6. Schreiber AK, Nones CF, Reis RC, Chichorro JG, Cunha JM. Diabetic neuropathic pain: physiopathology and treatment. World J Diabetes. 2015;6(3):432–44.
7. Fatehi F, Nafissi S, Basiri K, Amiri M, Soltanzadeh A. Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy associated with diabetes mellitus. J Res Med Sci. 2013;18(5):438–41.
8. Sandireddy R, Yerra VG, Areti A, Komirishetty P, Kumar A. Neuroinflammation and oxidative stress in diabetic neuropathy: futuristic strategies based on these targets. Int J Endocrinol. 2014;2014:674987.
9. Baron R, Binder A, Wasner G. Neuropathic pain: diagnosis, pathophysiological mechanisms, and treatment. Lancet Neurol. 2010;9(8):807–19.
10. von Hehn CA, Baron R, Woolf CJ. Deconstructing the neuropathic pain phenotype to reveal neural mechanisms. Neuron. 2012;73(4):638–52.
11. Garcia-Larrea L, Peyron R. Pain matrices and neuropathic pain matrices: a review. Pain. 2013;154(Suppl 1):S29–43.
12. Neugebauer V, Galhardo V, Maione S, Mackey SC. Forebrain pain mechanisms. Brain Res Rev. 2009;60(1):226–42.
13. Cauda F, Sacco K, Duca S, Cocito D, D'Agata F, Geminiani GC, Canavero S. Altered resting state in diabetic neuropathic pain. PLoS One. 2009;4(2):e4542.
14. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes - 2011. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(Suppl 1):S11–61.
15. Hartemann A, Attal N, Bouhassira D, Dumont I, Gin H, Jeanne S, Said G, Richard JL, Working Group on the Diabetic Foot from the French-speaking Society of Diabetology. Painful diabetic neuropathy: diagnosis and management. Diabetes Metab. 2011;37(5):377–88.
16. Tesfaye S, Boulton AJ, Dyck PJ, Freeman R, Horowitz M, Kempler P, Lauria G, Malik RA, Spallone V, Vinik A, Bernardi L, Valensi P, Toronto Diabetic Neuropathy Expert Group. Diabetic neuropathies: update on definitions, diagnostic criteria, estimation of severity, and treatments. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(10):2285–93.
17. Tesfaye S, Selvarajah D. Advances in the epidemiology, pathogenesis and management of diabetic peripheral neuropathy. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2012;28(Suppl 1):8–14.
18. Hurley RW, Adams MC, Benzon HT. Neuropathic pain: treatment guidelines and updates. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol. 2013;26(5):580–7.
19. Bril V, Blanchette CM, Noone JM, Runken MC, Gelinas D, Russell JW. The dilemma of diabetes in chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy. J Diabetes Complicat. 2016;30(7):1401–7.
20. Neligan A, Reilly MM, Lunn MP. CIDP: mimics and chameleons. Pract Neurol. 2014;14(6):399–408.
21. Gibbons CH, Freeman R. Treatment-induced diabetic neuropathy: a reversible painful autonomic neuropathy. Ann Neurol. 2010;67(4):534–41.
22. Mathey EK, Park SB, Hughes RA, Pollard JD, Armati PJ, Barnett MH, Taylor BV, Dyck PJ, Kiernan MC, Lin CS. Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy: from pathology to phenotype. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2015;86(9):973–85.
23. Obrosova IG. Diabetic painful and insensate neuropathy: pathogenesis and potential treatments. Neurotherapeutics. 2009;6(4):638–47.
24. Chalk C, Benstead TJ, Moore F. Aldose reductase inhibitors for the treatment of diabetic polyneuropathy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2007;4:CD004572.
25. Mijnhout GS, Alkhalaf A, Kleefstra N, Bilo HJ. Alpha lipoic acid: a new treatment for neuropathic pain in patients with diabetes? Neth J Med. 2010;68(4):158–62.
26. Feighner JP. Mechanism of action of antidepressant medications. J Clin Psychiatry. 1999;60(Suppl 4):4–11.
27. Saarto T, Wiffen PJ. Antidepressants for neuropathic pain: a Cochrane review. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2010;81(12):1372–3.
28. Stahl SM, Grady MM, Moret C, Briley M. SNRIs: their pharmacology, clinical efficacy, and tolerabil ity in comparison with other classes of antidepressants. CNS Spectr. 2005;10(9):732–47.
29. Lunn MP, Hughes RA, Wiffen PJ. Duloxetine for treating painful neuropathy or chronic pain. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009;4:CD007115.
30. Vinik A. Clinical review: use of antiepileptic drugs in the treatment of chronic painful diabetic neuropathy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2005;90(8):4936–45.
31. Moore RA, Wiffen PJ, Derry S, McQuay HJ. Gabapentin for chronic neuropathic pain and fibromyalgia in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2011;3:CD007938.
32. Moore RA, Straube S, Wiffen PJ, Derry S, McQuay HJ. Pregabalin for acute and chronic pain in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009;3:CD007076.
33. Smith HS, Argoff CE. Pharmacological treatment of diabetic neuropathic pain. Drugs. 2011;71(5):557–89.
34. Furlan AD, Sandoval JA, Mailis-Gagnon A, Tunks E. Opioids for chronic noncancer pain: a meta-analysis of effectiveness and side effects. CMAJ. 2006;174(11):1589–94.
35. J Zeilhofer HU, Witschi R, Hösl K. Subtype-selective GABA(A) receptor mimetics - novel antihyperalgesic agents? Mol Med (Berl). 2009;87(5):465–9.
36. Quilici S, Chancellor J, Löthgren M, Simon D, Said G, Le TK, Garcia-Cebrian A, Monz B. Meta-analysis of duloxetine vs. pregabalin and gabapentin in the treatment of diabetic peripheral neuropathic pain. BMC Neurol. 2009;9:6.
37. Chou R, Carson S, Chan BK. Gabapentin versus tricyclic antidepressants for diabetic neuropathy and post-herpetic neuralgia: discrepancies between direct and indirect meta-analyses of randomized controlled trials. J Gen Intern Med. 2009;24(2):178–88.
38. Wolff RF, Bala MM, Westwood M, Kessels AG, Kleijnen J. 5% lidocaine medicated plaster in painful diabetic peripheral neuropathy (DPN): a systematic review. J Swiss Med Wkly. 2010;140(21–22):297–306.
39. Tesfaye S, Wilhelm S, Lledo A, Schacht A, Tölle T, Bouhassira D, Cruccu G, Skljarevski V, Freynhagen R. Duloxetine and pregabalin: high-dose monotherapy or their combination? The "COMBO-DN study" - a multinational, randomized, double-blind, parallel-group study in patients with diabetic peripheral neuropathic pain. Pain. 2013;154(12):2616–25.

Diabetic Cardiac Autonomic Neuropathy

53

Viktoria Serhiyenko and Alexandr Serhiyenko

Abbreviations

ABPM	Ambulatory blood pressure monitoring
BP	Blood pressure
BRS	Baroreflex sensitivity
CAD	Coronary artery disease
CAN	Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy
CARTs	Cardiovascular autonomic reflex tests
CHD	Coronary heart disease
CVD	Cardiovascular diseases
DLP	Dyslipidemia
DM	Diabetes mellitus
HR	Heart rate
HRT	Heart rate turbulence
HRV	Heart rate variability
LV	Left ventricular
MI	Myocardial infarction
MSNA	Muscle sympathetic nerve activity
OH	Orthostatic hypotension
QTi	QT interval
SMI	Silent myocardial ischemia
T1DM	Type 1 diabetes mellitus
T2DM	Type 2 diabetes mellitus
α-LA	α-lipoic acid
ω-3 PUFA	ω-3 Polyunsaturated fatty acids

Chapter Objectives

Core tip: Cardiac autonomic neuropathy (CAN) is a serious complication of diabetes mellitus that is strongly associated with increased risk of cardiovascular mortality. CAN manifests in a spectrum of things, ranging from resting tachycardia, fixed heart rate and arrhythmias, intraoperative cardiovascular instability, and orthostatic hypotension to development of "silent" myocardial ischemia and "silent" myocardial infarction.

Diabetic patients should be screened for CAN due to the possibility of reversal of cardiovascular denervation in the early stages of the disease. Cardiovascular reflex tests and Holter-derived time- and frequency-domain measurements are frequently used for the diagnosis. Therapeutic approaches are promising and may hinder or reverse the progression of CAN when initiated during the early stages.

Introduction

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a global epidemic affecting at least 8.3% of the population and 371 million people worldwide with a significant proportion (50%) remaining undiagnosed. It is estimated that almost one of six people are currently at risk of developing diabetes-related complications [5, 6, 41].

The majority of patients with long-term course of DM [mainly type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM)] are diagnosed with coronary heart disease (CHD) due to coronary vessels arterial sclerotic disease. Often the course of CHD is complicated by combination of hypertension, specific kidney arterial involvement, and eyes and lower limbs affection. Metabolic alterations in the myocardium are combined with early coronary atherosclerosis. All these changes in the heart which occur out of prolonged duration of DM among middle age and elderly patients [coronary vessels affection, myocardium changes, diabetic cardiac autonomic neuropathy

V. Serhiyenko (✉) · A. Serhiyenko
Ostrozskogo str. Department of Endocrinology, Lviv National Medical University named after Danylo Galytskiy, Lviv, Ukraine

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_53

(CAN), and arterial sclerotic disease] are associated with the term "diabetic heart or diabetic cardiomyopathy" [95, 100].

Cardiac autonomic neuropathy among T2DM patients is characterized by lesion of nerve fibers in the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions of the autonomic nervous system, is diagnosed unsatisfactorily and may be accompanied by severe orthostatic hypotension (OH), decreased tolerance to the physical loadings, and causes cardiac arrhythmias, ischemia of coronary vessels, "silent" *myocardial infarction (MI)*, and "sudden" death syndrome [52].

Definition of CAN

Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy is defined as the impairment of autonomic control of the cardiovascular system in the setting of diabetes after exclusion of other causes [80]. CAN is caused by damage to the autonomic nerve fibers that innervate the heart and blood vessels and leads to abnormalities in cardiovascular dynamics [92]. CAN is usually documented by using several cardiovascular autonomic reflex tests (CARTs) [7, 44, 74].

Epidemiology of CAN

CAN is a common chronic complication of type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1DM) and T2DM and is associated with higher morbidity and mortality level among patients with DM. The prevalence of confirmed CAN in unselected people with T1DM and T2DM is around 20%, but figures as high as 65% are reported with increasing age and diabetes duration. Because many studies were hospital based, referral bias cannot be excluded (classes II and III). Clinical correlates or risk markers for CAN are age, diabetes duration, poor glycemic control, microvascular complications (peripheral polyneuropathy, retinopathy, and nephropathy), hypertension, and dyslipoproteinemia (classes I and II). Established risk factors for CAN are glycemic control in T1DM (class I) and a combination of hypertension, dyslipoproteinemia (DLP), obesity, and glycemic control in T2DM (class II) [74].

Screening for CAN should be performed in asymptomatic T2DM at diagnosis and T1DM after 5 years of disease, in particular those at greater risk for CAN due to a history of poor glycemic control [*hemoglobin* A_{1c} (Hb A_{1c}) > 7%], or the presence of one major cardiovascular risk factor (among hypertension, DLP, and smoking), or the presence of macro- or microangiopathic complications (level B). CAN screening may be also required in asymptomatic patients for preoperative risk assessment before major surgical procedures (level C) [45, 74].

Pathogenesis of CAN

Diabetic CAN is eventually caused by complex interactions among a number of pathogenic pathways. Hyperglycemia is the leading cause of the initiation of this pathogenic process [59, 91]. The pathogenesis of diabetic CAN is multifactorial, including increased mitochondrial production of free radicals due to hyperglycemia-induced oxidative/nitrosative stress. Neuronal activity, mitochondrial function, membrane permeability, and endothelial function are impaired by advanced glycosylation end product formation, polyol aldose reductase signaling, protein kinase C and poly (ADP ribose) polymerase activation, and the alteration of the Na^+/K^+-ATPase pump function. Neuronal apoptotic processes are precipitated by endoplasmic reticulum stress induced by hyperglycemia, along with impaired nerve perfusion, DLP, alterations in redox status, low-grade inflammation, and disturbance in Ca^{2+} balance [3, 9, 58].

Clinical Impact of CAN

Clinical Manifestations of CAN

Symptomatic manifestations of CAN include sinus tachycardia, exercise intolerance, and orthostatic hypotension. Orthostatic hypotension (OH) was present in 6–32% of diabetic patients depending on diagnostic cutoffs for fall in systolic blood pressure (20 or 30 mmHg) and the diabetic populations studied [28, 74, 84]. Symptoms of orthostatic intolerance were present in 4–18% of diabetic patients [74, 84]. Orthostatic symptoms, such as light-headedness, dizziness, blurred vision, fainting, or pain in the neck or shoulder when standing, may be worse in the early morning, after meals, during a rise in core temperature, during prolonged standing, or with physical activity [49, 50]. Symptoms may be disabling, are often a barrier to an effective antihypertensive treatment, and may lead to falls in the elderly.

Table 53.1 Abnormalities associated with cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy at the level of cardiovascular system and peripheral vascular function [74]

Cardiovascular system	Peripheral vascular function
Perioperative instability	↑ Peripheral blood flow and warm skin
Resting tachycardia	↑ Arteriovenous shunting and swollen veins
Loss of reflex heart rate variations	↑ Venous pressure
Hypertension	Leg and foot edema
Exercise intolerance	Loss of protective cutaneous vasomotor reflexes
Orthostatic hypotension	Loss of venoarteriolar reflex with microvascular damage
Postprandial hypotension	↑ Transcapillary leakage of macromolecules
Silent myocardial ischemia	↑ Medial arterial calcification
Left ventricular dysfunction and hypertrophy	–
QT interval prolongation	–
Impaired baroreflex sensitivity	–
Non-dipping, reverse dipping	–
Sympathovagal imbalance	–
Dysregulation of cerebral circulation	–
↓ Sympathetically mediated vasodilation of coronary vessels	–
↑ Arterial stiffness	–

A number of other cardiovascular abnormalities were found in association with CAN [89, 100]. These may play a role in excess mortality and morbidity and contribute to the burden associated with CAN (Table 53.1).

Morbidity and Mortality in Cardiac Autonomic Neuropathy [92]

CAN is a significant cause of morbidity and mortality associated with a high risk of cardiac arrhythmias and sudden death, possibly related to "silent" myocardial ischemia (SMI). Cardiovascular disease remains the main cause of excess mortality among patients with T1DM and T2DM. Reduced heart rate variability (HRV) as a marker of autonomic dysfunction has been shown to have dire consequences in terms of morbidity (e.g., progression of coronary atherosclerosis) and mortality independent of cardiovascular risk factors in various populations, including those with prediabetes and DM [92]. In T1DM patients, there is a fourfold increase risk of death [56, 92, 99]. CAN is significantly associated with overall mortality [52, 74, 91] and in some but not all studies with morbidity, such as SMI, coronary artery disease (CAD), stroke, diabetic nephropathy progression, and perioperative morbidity. In the Detection of Ischemia in Asymptomatic Diabetic Subjects (DIAD) study, a diminished Valsalva heart rate (HR) ratio (a measure of CAN) was strongly associated with SMI, independent of more traditional risk factors including sex, age, hypertension, and smoking [74, 93]. In the European Epidemiology and Prevention of Diabetes (EURODIAB) study, autonomic dysfunction was present in one-third of T1DM patients and was strongly associated with coexisting cardiovascular disease (CVD) after adjustment to age, HbA_{1c}, and duration of diabetes [92]. Results from the Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) trial again confirmed the association of CAN and mortality. These investigators showed that the individuals in this trial with baseline CAN were 1.55–2.14 times as likely to die as individuals without CAN [59, 74]. Furthermore, CAN in the presence of peripheral neuropathy was the highest predictor of CVD mortality. Indeed, combining indexes of autonomic dysfunction have been shown to be associated with the higher risk of mortality [52, 74, 99]. There is also strong evidence, based on studies in patients with T1DM and patients with T2DM with a mean follow-up of 9.2 years, that QT interval (QTi) prolongation is an independent predictor of mortality for all-cause and cardiovascular deaths [52, 74, 86, 89, 99]. Thus, CAN assessment can be used for cardiovascular risk stratification in patients with and without established CVD, as a marker for patients requiring more intensive monitoring during the perioperative period and other physiological stresses, and as an indicator for more intensive pharmacotherapeutic and lifestyle management of comorbid conditions. There is definitive evidence for a predictive value of CAN on overall mortality (class I). There is some evidence of a predictive value of CAN on morbidity (class II). Orthostatic hypotension, when due to advanced CAN, is associated with an additional increase in mortality risk over that driven by HRV abnormalities (class III). Some cardiovascular abnormalities, closely linked to CAN, are associated with increased mortality: tachycardia (class II), QTi prolongation (class II), and non-dipping status (class III) [74, 44, 100].

CAN is a risk marker of mortality (level A), as well as a risk marker and likely a risk factor for cardiovascular morbidity (level B), and possibly a progression promoter of diabetic nephropathy (level C). Orthostatic hypotension is associated with a worse prognosis than cardiovagal neuropathy (level C). QTi prolongation has prognostic value in diabetes (level B). Non-dipping status is associated with an adverse cardiovascular prognosis in diabetes (level C). Non-dipping status predicts the progression from micro- and macroalbuminuria to renal failure in T2DM (level C) [74].

CAN Assessment

Methods of CAN assessment in clinical practice include assessment of symptoms and signs, *cardiovascular reflex tests* based on HR and blood pressure (BP), and ambulatory blood pressure monitoring (ABPM).

Assessment of Symptoms

Questionnaires have been developed to investigate orthostatic symptoms and their severity in dysautonomic conditions, although they have not been specifically validated for CAN, and validated translations in different languages are lacking. In the Rochester Diabetic Neuropathy Study, the correlation between the autonomic symptoms and the autonomic deficits was weak in T1DM and absent in T2DM patients [49, 50, 74]. Orthostatic symptoms were poorly related to fall in systolic BP on standing. For their clinical impact, orthostatic symptoms should be looked for regularly together with other dysautonomic symptoms in diabetic patients [74].

Assessment of Signs

Resting tachycardia Whereas abnormalities in HRV are early findings of CAN, resting tachycardia and a fixed HR are characteristic late findings in diabetic patients with vagal impairment. Resting HR of 90–100 b.p.m. and occasional HR increments up to 130 b.p.m. occur. The highest resting HR have been found in patients with parasympathetic damage, occurring earlier in the course of CAN than sympathetic nerve dysfunction; in those with evidence for combined vagal and sympathetic involvement, the rate returns toward normal but remains elevated. A fixed HR that is unresponsive to moderate exercise, stress, or sleep indicates almost complete cardiac denervation. A blunted HR response to adenosine receptor agonists was described in both patients with DM and patients with metabolic syndrome and attributed to earlier stages of CAN [35, 92]. Higher resting HR (>78 b.p.m.) compared with lower resting HR (<58 b.p.m.) and a rise in HR with time has been shown to be powerful, independent risk predictors for all-cause and CVD mortality in several prospective cohorts [92]. The prognostic value of resting HR is a useful tool for cardiovascular risk stratification and as a therapeutic target in high-risk patients [74, 91, 92].

Exercise intolerance In diabetic patients without evidence of heart disease, but with asymptomatic cardiac vagal neuropathy, exercise capacity and HR, BP, and cardiac stroke volume responses to exercise were diminished. A further decrease in exercise capacity and BP response was seen in patients with both vagal neuropathy and orthostatic hypotension. It is generally recommended that diabetic patients suspected to have CAN should be tested with a cardiac stress test before undertaking an exercise program. The severity of CAN correlated inversely with maximal HR increase during exercise, suggesting CAN contribution to diminished exercise tolerance [74, 92].

Orthostatic hypotension Orthostatic hypotension is defined as a fall in BP (i.e., >20 mmHg or more stringent criteria is >30 mmHg for systolic or >10 mmHg for diastolic BP) in response to postural change, from supine to standing [92]. In patients with diabetes, OH is usually a result of damage to the efferent sympathetic vasomotor fibers, particularly in the splanchnic vasculature [50, 92]. Patients with OH are typically represented with light-headedness and presyncopal symptoms. Symptoms, such as dizziness, weakness, fatigue, visual blurring, and neck pain, also might be a result of orthostatic hypotension. Many patients, however, remain asymptomatic despite significant falls in BP. Orthostatic symptoms can also be misjudged as hypoglycemia and can be aggravated by a number of drugs, including vasodilators, diuretics, phenothiazines, and particularly tricyclic antidepressants and insulin [89, 92].

QTi prolongation QTi prolongation has been defined as a QTc (corrected QT for heart rate) ≥460 ms in women and ≥450 ms in men, although in most studies less strict criteria were used. The pathogenesis of QTi prolongation is multifactorial and includes imbalance in cardiac sympathetic innervation, intrinsic metabolic and electrolytic myocardial changes, left ventricular (LV) hypertrophy, and CAD, and genetic factors could lead to QTi prolongation [86]. The day-night modulation of the QT/relative risk relation—on 24-h ECG recordings—was altered in CAN patients free of CAD, LV dysfunction, or hypertrophy, with a reversed day-night pattern and an increased nocturnal QT rate dependence [83]. Reversible QTi prolongation may be induced by hyperinsulinemia in healthy subjects, by hyperglycemia, and by acute hypoglycemia in both healthy and diabetic subjects [61, 65, 86]. In T1DM patients, prolonged QTc was shown to occur frequently during overnight hypoglycemia and was associated with cardiac rate/rhythm disturbances. These findings support an arrhythmic basis for the "dead in bed" syndrome and possibly a provocative role of hypoglycemia-induced sympathetic activation in cardiovascular events [24, 74]. In a meta-analysis of 17 studies including 4584 diabetic patients, QTc prolongation (>441 ms) was a specific (86%) albeit insensitive (28%) index of CAN [74].

Impaired HRV The earliest clinical indicator of CAN is a decrease in HRV. Variability in the instantaneous beat-to-beat HR intervals is a function of sympathetic and parasympathetic activity that regulates the cardiac functional response to the body's level of metabolic activity. In normal individuals the HR has a high degree of beat-to-beat variability and HRV fluctuates increasing with inspiration and decreasing with expiration. Initially, clinical relevance of HRV was identified through observations that fetal distress is preceded by alterations in beat-to-beat intervals before any appreciable change occurs in HR itself. The serious

implications of abnormal HRV became apparent only in the late 1980s, when it was confirmed that HRV was a strong, independent predictor of mortality after acute *myocardial infarction* [58, 89].

Non-dipping and reverse dipping At night, health subjects exhibit a predominance of vagal tone and decreased sympathetic tone, associated with reduction in nocturnal BP. In diabetic CAN this pattern is altered, resulting in sympathetic predominance during sleep and subsequent nocturnal hypertension. This is associated with a higher frequency of LV hypertrophy and both fatal and severe nonfatal cardiovascular events in diabetic CAN subjects [58, 74].

Ambulatory blood pressure monitoring is a standard tool in hypertension research and management with regard to diagnostic, prognostic, and therapeutic issues [51]. It allows the assessment of the diurnal BP pattern, which is mainly regulated by sleep-awake changes in the autonomic cardiovascular function. ABPM may be used for research purposes to:

- Evaluate the circadian BP pattern and its abnormalities (e.g., non-dipping, nocturnal hypertension, extreme dipping, morning surge)
- Study its relationship with autonomic dysfunction, sleep disturbances, and kidney function
- Assess the 24-h BP response to treatment
- Evaluate the longer-term prognostic implications of circadian BP abnormalities

Non-dipping and reverse dipping patterns were associated with CAN, which was the major determinant of the circadian variation in blood pressure. Several observations in both diabetic and nondiabetic patients linked non-dipping to a disruption of the circadian variation in sympathovagal activity, i.e., a diminished increase in vagal activity and a sympathetic predominance during the night. The day-night difference in systolic BP was a moderately accurate diagnostic tool for CAN and reverse dipping as a specific (95%)—albeit insensitive (25%)—marker of CAN [74]. In clinical practice, ABPM in the general population is useful for diagnostic purposes and provides unique and additional information for risk stratification with regard to hypertension-related organ damage and cardiovascular events and for the extent of BP response to treatment [51, 74]. The European Society of Hypertension acknowledges that ABPM may improve predictions of cardiovascular risk in hypertensive patients and recommends that 24-h ABPM should be considered in the presence of either noticeable variability of office BP values or a marked discrepancy between office and home BP values and in case of resistance to drug treatment or suspected hypotensive episodes [51, 74]. Thus, in patients with CAN, ABPM may be particularly useful in detecting non-dipping or reverse dipping conditions, daytime postural BP changes, and postprandial hypotension and in achieving BP control for the whole 24-h period. Conversely, in clinical practice, the presence of reverse dipping in ABPM may suggest the presence of CAN and thus require CAN testing [74].

"Silent" myocardial ischemia/cardiac denervation syndrome The presence of both symptomatic and asymptomatic CAD is increased in diabetic patients, and subclinical neuropathy is an important cause of SMI in patients with diabetes. Five of the 12 studies showed a statistically significant increased frequency of SMI in those with CAN compared with those without CAN [74]. "Silent" ischemia in diabetic patients can either result from CAN, from autonomic dysfunction attributable to CAD itself, or from both. The mechanisms of painless myocardial ischemia are, however, complex and not fully understood. Altered pain thresholds, subthreshold by ischemia not sufficient to induce pain, and dysfunction of the afferent cardiac autonomic nerve fibers have all been suggested as possible mechanisms [69, 92]. Features of a MI in patients with CAN are silence, cough, nausea and vomiting, dyspnea, tiredness, and ECG changes. Reduced appreciation for ischemic pain can impair timely recognition of myocardial ischemia or infarction, thereby delaying appropriate therapy. Thus, patients with CAN warrant more careful attention, and cardiovascular autonomic function testing might be an important component in the risk assessment of diabetic patients with CAD [92].

Intraoperative cardiovascular lability Perioperative cardiovascular morbidity and mortality are increased two- to threefold in patients with diabetes. Compared with nondiabetic subjects, diabetic patients undergoing general anesthesia might experience a greater degree of decline in HR and BP during induction of anesthesia and less of an increase after tracheal intubation and extubation. Vasopressor support is required more often in diabetic individuals with CAN than in those without CAN [18, 92]. The normal autonomic response of vasoconstriction and tachycardia does not completely compensate for the vasodilating effects of anesthesia. There is an association between CAN and more severe intraoperative hypothermia that can result in decreased drug metabolism and impaired wound healing. Reduced hypoxic-induced ventilatory drive [92] requires preoperative CAN screening for loss of HRV. Preoperative cardiovascular autonomic screening might provide useful information for anesthesiologists planning the anesthetic management of diabetic patients and identify those at greater risk of intraoperative complications [89, 92].

Thus, resting HR is not a specific sign of CAN (class IV). After exclusion of other causes, OH suggests an advanced CAN that should be confirmed by CARTs (class I). Orthostatic hypotension (class III), QTi prolongation (class II), and reverse dipping on ABPM are specific but insensitive indices of CAN (class III) [92].

In terms of recommendations, it may be advised that the presence of symptoms and/or signs is not a sufficient criterion for CAN diagnosis but should provide the motivation to perform CAN testing to get a definite diagnosis (level B). Screening of orthostatic symptoms is advisable in any diabetic patient (level B). Regardless of the presence of orthostatic symptoms, the OH test is recommended yearly, in particular in patients over the age of 50 and in hypertensive diabetic patients (level B). CAN testing offers a useful tool to identify patients with potentially poor exercise performance and to prevent adverse outcomes when patients are introduced to exercise training programs (level C). Diabetic patients with unexplained tachycardia should undergo CAN testing (level C). Resting HR may be used in clinical practice for cardiovascular risk stratification (level C). QTi prolongation alone is an insufficient measure of CAN but should prompt further testing (level B). QTc may be used for cardiovascular risk stratification (level B).

ABPM should not be routinely employed for the diagnosis of CAN (level C). However, it is a reliable research tool to explore 24-h BP patterns in different conditions (level B). In the presence of reverse dipping, referral for CAN testing is advisable (level C). ABPM may be useful in patients with CAN to detect non-dipping, to determine risk stratification for cardiovascular mortality and nephropathy progression, and to adjust antihypertensive treatment (level C) [92].

Cardiovascular Autonomic Reflex Tests

Autonomic balance involves complex interactions with several physiological mechanisms that act to maintain heart rate and BP within normal limits. Recent investigations have suggested that autonomic dysfunction (e.g., heightened activity of the sympathetic nervous system and suppressed activity of the parasympathetic nervous system) impairs the ability of the *autonomic nervous system* to regulate the cardiovascular system. Thus, autonomic imbalance might be a key component involved in both the etiology and the clinical course of CVD. What is also emerging is that one needs to distinguish the difference between autonomic imbalance and clear evidence of autonomic neuropathy. Autonomic imbalance produces a number of interesting and trying clinical situations, such as orthostatic tachycardia, orthostatic bradycardia, and OH, and can be responsible for predisposition to arrhythmias and "sudden" death [90, 92]. CARTs assess cardiovascular autonomic function through time-domain HR response to deep breathing, Valsalva maneuver, and postural change and by measuring the end-organ response, that is, HR and BP changes, although indirect autonomic measures are considered the gold standard in autonomic testing. Heart rate variations during deep breathing, Valsalva maneuver, and lying-to-standing (HR tests) are indices mainly of parasympathetic function, whereas the OH, the BP response to a Valsalva maneuver, and sustained isometric muscular strain provide indices of sympathetic function. These tests are noninvasive, safe, clinically relevant (they correlate with tests of peripheral nervous system function), easy to carry out, sensitive, specific, reproducible, and standardized, and therefore they are considered consolidated, gold standard measures of autonomic function [92].

Table 53.2 Cardiovascular autonomic reflex tests [17, 28]

Test	Technique	Normal response and values
Beat-to-beat HRV	With the patient at rest and supine, heart rate is monitored by ECG while the patient breathes in and out at six breaths per minute, paced by a metronome or similar device	A difference in HR of >15 beats per minute is normal and <10 beats per minute is abnormal. The lowest normal value for the expiration-to-inspiration ratio of the R-R interval decreases with age: age 20–24 years, 1.17; 25–29, 1.15; 30–34, 1.13; 35–39, 1.12; 40–44, 1.10; 45–49, 1.08; 50–54, 1.07; 55–59, 1.06; 60–64, 1.04; 65–69, 1.03; and 70–75, 1.02
Heart rate response to standing	During continuous ECG monitoring, the R-R interval is measured at beats 15 and 30 after standing	Normally, a tachycardia is followed by reflex bradycardia. The 30:15 ratio should be >1.03, borderline 1.01–1.03
Heart rate response to the Valsalva maneuver	The subject forcibly exhales into the mouthpiece of a manometer to 40 mmHg for 15 s during ECG monitoring	Healthy subjects develop tachycardia and peripheral vasoconstriction during strain and an overshoot bradycardia and rise in BP with release. The normal ratio of longest R-R to shortest R-R is >1.2, borderline 1.11–1.2
Systolic blood pressure response to standing	Systolic BP is measured in the supine subject. The patient stands, and the systolic BP is measured after 2 min	Normal response is a fall of <10 mmHg, borderline fall is a fall of 10–29 mmHg, and abnormal fall is a decrease of >30 mmHg
Diastolic blood pressure response to isometric exercise	The subject squeezes a handgrip dynamometer to establish a maximum. Grip is then squeezed at 30% maximum for 5 min	The normal response for diastolic BP is a rise of >16 mmHg in the other arm, borderline 11–15 mmHg

Diagnostic tests of CAN are summarized in Table 53.2.

The Toronto Consensus [74] has concluded the following regarding diagnosis of CAN:

- The following CARTs are the gold standard for clinical autonomic testing: HR response to deep breathing, stand-

ing and Valsalva maneuver, and BP response to standing (class II evidence).
- These CARTs are sensitive, specific, reproducible, easy to carry out, safe, and standardized (classes II and III).
- The Valsalva maneuver is not advisable in the presence of proliferative retinopathy and when there is an increased risk of retinal hemorrhage (class IV).
- CARTs are subject to a number of confounding or interfering factors (class III).
- Age is the most relevant factor affecting HR tests (class I).
- A definite diagnosis of CAN and CAN staging requires more than one HR test and the OH test (class III).

The main clinical indications of the autonomic reflex tests are the following [63, 73, 74]:

- Diagnosis and staging of CAN in T2DM patients (at diagnosis and annually thereafter).
- Diagnosis and staging of CAN in T1DM patients (5 years after diagnosis and annually thereafter).
- Stratification of cardiovascular risk: in pre-operatory testing, pre-physical activity, indication of selective beta-blocker, and suspected silent ischemia.
- Differential diagnosis of other manifestations of CAN (regardless of DM duration): assess whether gastroparesis, erectile dysfunction, OH, dizziness, syncope, or tachycardia in diabetic persons are due to dysautonomia.
- Evaluate the progression of autonomic failure and monitor response to therapy (e.g., continuous infusion of insulin, posttransplants, and use of antioxidants).
- Differential diagnosis of other causes of neuropathy such as autoimmune autonomic neuropathy (chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, celiac disease, amyotrophy) or toxic-infectious neuropathy (alcohol, primary neuritic *Hansen's* disease, human immunodeficiency virus) as well as in cases where the presence of autonomic neuropathy is disproportionate to the sensorimotor neuropathy.

The most sensitive and specific diagnostic tests currently available to evaluate CAN in clinical research are (1) HRV, (2) baroreflex sensitivity (BRS), (3) muscle sympathetic nerve activity (MSNA), (4) plasma catecholamines, and (5) heart sympathetic imaging [13, 14].

Heart Rate Variability

Heart rate is never completely stable. Continuous tonic, phasic, and transient external and internal stimuli of multiple origins affect HR to a variable but measurable extent. Five different mechanisms have been described: (1) sympathetic and parasympathetic differences to the sinus node, (2) neurohumoral influences (e.g., catecholamines, thyroid hormones), (3) stretch of the sinus node, (4) changes in local temperature, and (5) ionic changes in the sinus node. Under resting conditions, it can be assumed that the short-term HRV is essentially determined by the first and third factors. The sympathetic and parasympathetic stimuli directly influence HR and are responsible for a physiologic variation in the heart rate, or HRV. The HRV can be evaluated in the time and frequency domains [13, 14, 74].

Time-domain measures of the normal R-R intervals include the difference between the longest and shortest R-R intervals, the standard deviation of 5-min average of normal R-R intervals (SDANN), and the root-mean-square of the difference of successive R-R intervals (rMSSD). Longer recordings (e.g., 24 h) allow the calculation of additional indices, as the number of instances per hour in which two consecutive R-R intervals differ by more than 50 ms over 24 h (pNN50). Essentially, all these indices explore the parasympathetic activity.

In the frequency domain, the use of spectral analysis of R-R interval (and other cardiovascular and respiratory signals) allows a precise description of the different fluctuations. The components of the HRV obtained by spectral analysis provide information about both the sympathetic and parasympathetic influences on the heart [14, 74]. Based on studies using acceptable techniques, there is evidence of reduced parasympathetic modulation of HR in diabetes and also reduced modulation of systolic BP in the low-frequency region [53, 74] particularly after sympathetic stimulation in response to tilting or in the microcirculation. As most of the CARTs essentially explore the parasympathetic activity, there is no other simple test of sympathetic activity capable of identifying early (functional or anatomic) autonomic sympathetic abnormality [14]. CARTs are considered the gold standard for CAN testing. Impaired HRV time- and frequency-domain indices have been reported in diabetic patients before CARTs abnormalities arise. However, the few studies that assessed the diagnostic accuracy against the reference standard of CARTs found only fair results. Time- and frequency-domain analysis of 24-h ECG recordings has documented an abnormal nocturnal sympathetic predominance in diabetic patients that was linked to BP non-dipping. In obese patients weight loss was associated with an improvement in global HRV and in parasympathetic HRV indices [14, 52].

In this way, HRV testing is a clinically relevant measure in addition to CARTs and provides key information about autonomic—parasympathetic and sympathetic—modulation of the cardiovascular system. Analysis of HRV can be done using statistical indices in the time and frequency domains. Time-domain indices of global HRV and total spectral power of HRV represent the index of parasympathetic activity, as well as the HRV spectral power in the high-frequency region, while the relative proportion (not the absolute power) in the low frequencies of HRV provides a relative measure of sym-

pathetic modulation. This interpretation should be made with cautions if respiratory artifacts (slow breaths) cannot be excluded. Application of the technique is critically dependent upon understanding of the underlying physiology, the mathematical analyses used, and the many confounders and possible technical artifacts [14].

In this way, misinterpretation of power spectrum takes place due to irregular respiratory pattern and verbalization during breathing, creating artifactual low frequencies and false "sympathetic overactivity."

Use of the absolute power of R-R interval low-frequency spectral data as evidence of sympathetic activity. In case of very low HRV (2–4% of total variability found in healthy subjects), the interpretation of spectral components is affected by the presence of non-autonomic components in the respiratory range. Other confounding factors (such as drugs) similar as those reported for CARTs [14]:

Recommendations [14]

- The best approach to HRV testing involves the analysis of ECG recordings in conjunction with respiration and beat-to-beat BP recordings (level C). When respiration cannot be recorded, breathing rate should be controlled (15 breaths/min) and hyperventilation or slow deep breathing avoided (level B). The subjects must not speak during recordings (level C). The optimal recording time is 4–5 min during well-controlled rest. Longer times (7 min) may be preferable if fast Fourier transform methods are used and if frequent ectopics are to be edited. Long uncontrolled recording times should be avoided (level C). When testing is done under stable conditions, autoregressive or fast Fourier transform methods can be used. When fast changes are to be expected (e.g., during interventions), autoregressive algorithms are preferred or alternatively special time-varying techniques.
- Age-related reference curve should be obtained for the healthy population in the same environment, and using the methodology adopted, construct 95% confidence limits (level B).
- Other recommendations on confounding factors are similar as those reported for CARTs.
- Used with the appropriate methodology, HRV has an increasingly important role in clinical research and therapeutic trials.

During 24-h recordings

- If the goal is to define the circadian pattern of autonomic activity, long-duration spectra (e.g., 1 h) and autoregressive algorithms are preferable.
- If the goal is to define relatively faster modifications, shorter time windows (e.g., 5 min) are preferable. Special time-varying techniques can provide beat-to-beat autonomic changes.

Heart Rate Turbulence

Another Holter-based technique for evaluating CAN is the HR turbulence (HRT). HRT refers to sinus rhythm cycle length fluctuations following isolated premature ventricular beats. After an initial acceleration, the sinus rate decelerates after a premature ventricular beat. There are two components of HRT: turbulence onset and turbulence slope. A transient vagal inhibition triggers the mentioned initial acceleration in HR as a response to the missed baroreflex afferent input due to hemodynamically ineffective ventricular contraction. The successive deceleration in heart rate is caused by a sympathetically mediated overshoot of arterial pressure through vagal recruitment. HRT evaluation can be used in the risk assessment after acute MI and in the monitoring of disease progression in heart failure and CAN [9, 11]. A turbulence slope of below 3.32 msec/R-R is 97% sensitive and 71% specific for the diagnosis of CAN as detected by the CARTs in patients with T2DM [9].

Baroreflex Sensitivity

The BRS is an interesting approach as it combines information derived from both HR and blood pressure. The measurement of the cardiac vagal arm BRS can be done with several methods: drugs or physical maneuvers can be applied to modify BP; alternatively, spontaneous blood pressure variations can be used. In all cases the response in heart rate to the changes in BP is quantified. None of the BRS tests available today—based on drug-induced or physically induced changes in BP, spontaneous BP fluctuations with the sequences technique, or spectral analysis—have shown so far a definite advantage over the others or a clinically relevant difference.

Longitudinal studies have demonstrated that BRS has important independent prognostic value in cardiac patients [13, 14, 46] and in diabetic patients. Although some observations in diabetic patients support an early impairment of BRS before CARTs abnormalities, very few studies have evaluated so far the diagnostic accuracy of BRS measures as compared with the reference standard of CARTs with inconsistent results. Thus, no definite conclusion is possible on the diagnostic characteristics for CAN of BRS assessment, in particular on its sensitivity. In patients without CAN, an early stage of functional BRS abnormalities [14, 64] still responsive to lifestyle intervention—physical training or dietary improvement and weight reduction—has been documented. BRS assessment may warrant use for identifying subjects at risk for CAN and also in clinical trials [14].

In this way, cardiac vagal BRS assessment is an important component of autonomic testing as it combines information derived from both HR and blood pressure. Cardiac vagal BRS is a widely recognized independent prognostic index for cardiovascular mortality and morbidity in the general—mainly cardiac and the diabetic—population (class II). No definite conclusion is possible on the diagnostic characteristics of BRS assessment (classes III–IV). The

presence of early abnormalities with respect to CARTs and their reversibility with appropriate treatments warrant the clinical use of BRS in identifying subjects at risk for CAN and to test potential therapeutic approaches (classes II–III). Pharmacological methods allow assessment of BRS across a range of physiologically relevant BP and when used with microneurography—measurement of the sympathetic baroreflex. But this invasive technique is limited to research purposes. The methodology of BRS (in particular spontaneous BRS) is simple and fast. All BRS techniques require a dedicated beat-to-beat noninvasive blood pressure monitor. None of the BRS tests today available have shown a definite advantage over the others nor a clinically relevant difference (class II) [14].

Fluctuations are induced by drifts of the noninvasive blood pressure monitors. Most methods need a large number of arbitrary constraints imposed by the calculations that may affect the results. Respiratory pattern: although BRS measures in general do not need a strict control of respiratory pattern, slow breathing increases BRS and reduces sympathetic efferent drive; therefore, some feedback from respiration is necessary to correctly interpret the results. Age-related reduction in BRS. Other confounding factors (e.g., drugs) are similar as those for CARTs [14].

If the spontaneous approach is adopted, it is suggested to use a battery of methods based on the simplest single 5-min recording procedure (spontaneous BRS) and present the results in terms of a central measure (average or median) (level C) [14]:

- Recording should be performed during spontaneous breathing for 4–5 min, under monitored respiration, or during controlled breathing at 15 breaths/min (level C).
- Pre-filtering of the data improves the agreement between methods and provides a more robust estimate of BRS (level C).
- The recording time should be kept between 4 and 5 min of well-controlled rest. Avoid long uncontrolled recording times (level C).
- The subjects must not speak during recordings (level C).
- Age-related reference curves should be obtained from the healthy population in the same environment and for the methodology adopted and construct 95% confidence limits (level B).
- Other recommendations on confounding factors are similar as those reported for CARTs.

Muscle Sympathetic Nerve Activity

Increased resting MSNA and blunted responsiveness to physiological hyperinsulinemia or glucose ingestion have been described in T2DM having neuroadrenergic autonomic dysfunction and resembles insulin-resistant states and obesity. MSNA abnormalities in these conditions reverse with weight loss [13, 14]. In contrast, T1DM is associated with a significant decrease in the number of bursts by about half [39]. Although reproducibility is similar to nondiabetic subjects, obtaining good-quality recordings is much more difficult in patients with diabetic polyneuropathy than in nondiabetic subjects [13, 14], presumably as a result of a reduction in the conducting sympathetic nerve fibers.

In this way, the MSNA is the only method allowing direct and continuous measurement of sympathetic nerve traffic (class I). MSNA is the only method that can directly assess the sympathetic vascular arm of the arterial or cardiopulmonary baroreflex (class I). Type 1 diabetes appears to be associated with a reduction of MSNA (class IV). In early T2DM, resting MSNA might be increased, possibly due to hyperinsulinemia (class IV). The technique is difficult, invasive, and time-consuming, requires specialized trained operator, and cannot be repeated often in the same subject (class II) [14].

Confounders BP variation, large inter-individual variations, food intake, age, posture, hypoxia, hydration, exercise, female reproductive hormones, arousal, sleep, mental stress, and ethnicity [14].

Recommendations MSNA should not be routinely employed for the diagnosis of CAN (level C). MSNA should be employed with standard CARTs or for specific tests aimed at measuring vascular sympathetic modifications (e.g., glycemic clamps) (level C) [14].

Catecholamine Assessment and Cardiovascular Sympathetic Tests

Norepinephrine plasma appearance rate is in principle the biochemical equivalent of MSNA. Norepinephrine plasma appearance rate and clearance have been determined in idiopathic autonomic neuropathy as well as in diabetic CAN. While norepinephrine clearance is low in idiopathic autonomic neuropathy, this was not the case in CAN, and accordingly in diabetic CAN no additional diagnostic power was added by the inclusion of [^{3}H]-norepinephrine kinetic studies [14, 38]. Thus, catecholamine kinetics is an interesting technique which may give more information about catecholamine production and clearance across different regions but is unsuitable to be used as a diagnostic tool yet. Plasma dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA) is not related to sympathetic neuropathy and has a mixed neuronal and non-neuronal origin. Plasma 3,4-dihydroxyphenylglycol (DHPG) may be a more sensitive marker of overall sympathetic innervation than supine plasma norepinephrine [14], and simultaneous measurement of norepinephrine and DHPG yields more information than measurement of either alone. Catecholamine assessment in diabetes showed in general lower than normal responses to postural changes, exercise, hypoglycemia, and

CARTs. A subnormal orthostatic increment in plasma norepinephrine is a specific but not sensitive index of baroreflex-sympathoneural failure or sympathetic noradrenergic denervation [14].

Highlights Clinical investigations including catecholamine determinations have contributed significantly to the understanding of the pathophysiology of CAN (class III). In the diagnostic context, the significance has been less prominent, partly due to the limited inclusion of the essays in clinical evaluations. Plasma catecholamine concentrations can indicate sympathetic noradrenergic and adrenomedullary hormonal system activity. Because levels of catecholamines are extremely responsive to lifestyle factors such as posture, temperature, dietary intake, medications, distress, and comorbidities, the clinical diagnostic value of plasma levels of catecholamines depends importantly on controlling or monitoring these factors (class III). Whole-body plasma norepinephrine and epinephrine respond rather slowly (minutes) to different physiological maneuvers. During turnover studies, different regional norepinephrine and epinephrine activities are "diluted" into a large plasma pool, contributing to blunted responses. Standardization of experimental conditions is to a large extent prohibitive for clinical routine purposes. In general, there is no neurochemical index that specifically assesses cardiac sympathetic innervation or function. This requires measurement of rates of entry of norepinephrine into the venous drainage of the heart, in turn requiring right heart catheterization, measurement of coronary sinus blood flow, and infusion of tracer-labeled norepinephrine [14].

Confounders Plasma norepinephrine concentrations increase with age. Thus, age matching is mandatory for comparisons. Smoking increases sympathetic nervous activity and catecholamine concentrations—24 h tobacco abstention is required for comparisons. Posture, emotional stress, and ambient temperature all affect catecholamine concentrations and should thus be standardized [14].

Recommendations In a number of experimental conditions, plasma catecholamine measurements are mandatory. For clinical routine diagnosis and staging of CAN, the usefulness of plasma catecholamine concentrations is less obvious (level C). Plasma norepinephrine, epinephrine, and DHPG concentrations should be measured when whole-body sympathetic activity is assessed together with other relevant physiological parameters (HR, BP, cardiac output, hormonal and metabolic events) [14].

Heart Sympathetic Imaging and Heart Function Tests

Direct assessment of cardiac sympathetic innervation is possible using radiolabeled catecholamines or sympathomimetic amines that are actively taken up by sympathetic nerve terminals. Although in principle, it is possible to directly assess the integrity of both the parasympathetic as well as the sympathetic nervous system, there has been a paucity of research on parasympathetic imaging of the heart. Cardiac sympathetic neuroimaging, before and after administration of particular pharmacologic probes, can assess specific aspects of neuronal function. This combination has rarely been used [14].

Four tracers have been utilized to visualize the sympathetic nervous innervation of the heart: [^{123}I]-*meta*-iodobenzylguanidine (MIBG), [^{11}C]-*meta*-hydroxyephedrine (HED), 6-[^{18}F] dopamine, and [^{11}C]-epinephrine [14, 31, 56, 67].

The washout rates from the myocardium of [^{11}C]-epinephrine or 6-[^{18}F]-dopamine can give information on vesicular integrity. In subjects with T1DM and CAN, the washout rates of [^{11}C]-epinephrine parallels those of [^{11}C]-HED, suggesting regional differences in vesicular uptake or retention. Causes of defective tracer uptake or increased washout from the heart are a matter of current research [14, 21].

The interpretation of findings using sympathetic neurotransmitter analogues is complicated by the fact that alterations in sympathetic nervous system tone may also affect the retention of these tracers, and this fact is often not considered as an explanation for the clinical findings. In the isolated rat heart model, elevated norepinephrine concentrations in the perfusion increased neuronal HED clearance rates consistent with the concept that neuronal "recycling" of HED can be disrupted by increased synaptic norepinephrine levels. Alternatively at high norepinephrine concentrations, non-neuronal uptake of HED into myocardial cells and impaired retention may be an interfering factor [14].

Additionally, interpretation of early myocardial [^{123}I]-MIBG retention is complicated by increased body mass index and diastolic BP which have been reported to reduce myocardial MIBG uptake. Moreover, difficulties and delays in acquisition of utilizable images can complicate the interpretation of the measurement obtained. The delivery of tracers is critically influenced by myocardial perfusion, so myocardial retention of tracers should be performed with a quantitative analysis of myocardial blood flow. This can be performed using positron emission tomography in order to derive a myocardial retention index [4, 14]. However, although regional perfusion deficiencies can be excluded using single-photon emission computed tomography, quanti-

tative analysis of regional myocardial perfusion cannot be performed. Additionally, myocardial ischemia or damage is also known to result in cardiac denervation which may occur in the absence of alterations in CARTs [56, 76], whereas CAN is associated with impaired vasodilatory capacity in response to adenosine. Anoxic ischemia severely decreases the efficiency of vesicular sequestration and thus accelerates the loss of radioactivity, giving the false impression of denervation. Left ventricular dysfunction in DM has also been reported to reduce [^{123}I]-MIBG retention and increased washout rate [14].

Highlights Scintigraphic tracers directly assess the structural integrity of the sympathetic nervous system supply to the heart (class III). [^{123}I]-MIBG scanning and single-photon emission computed tomography are widely used and available at most secondary care institutions; however, MIBG scanning is approved and reimbursed for evaluation of pheochromocytoma and so far not for evaluation of cardiac sympathetic innervation. Most data relate to the evaluation of cardiac sympathetic integrity; few studies evaluate the respiratory system. The relationships of deficits in tracer uptake/washout to sympathetic neuronal integrity and function are poorly understood: current tracers may not be the most optimum. Combined neuroimaging-pharmacologic approaches are required. Scintigraphic data correlates with HRV testing but have greater sensitivity to detect changes in sympathetic neuronal structure and/or function [14, 32] (class III). Scintigraphic data correlate with indices of myocardial perfusion and LV dysfunction in T1DM (class III). Limited studies demonstrate that decreased "uptake" and excessive "washout" of MIBG-derived radioactivity is an adverse prognostic finding in a spectrum of conditions including DM and that scintigraphic data are affected by the quality of glucose control (class III). Cost of scintigraphic studies is considerable [14, 56, 67].

Confounders Parasympathetic tracers are not yet generally available. [^{11}C]-HED and 6-[^{18}F]-dopamine positron emission tomography have limited availability and are not reimbursed. Damage to the myocardium and LV dysfunction interferes with tracer uptake and washout independently of changes in CARTs. Regional myocardial [^{123}I]-MIBG "uptake" is semiquantitative and not a clean index of neuronal uptake, which occurs extremely rapidly. [^{123}I]-MIBG retention is affected by body mass index, diastolic BP, and local factors which influence the tracer uptake and retention. Delivery of tracers is critically influenced by myocardial perfusion (myocardial retention of tracers should be performed with quantitative analysis of myocardial blood flow) [14].

The effects of the following on the kinetics of myocardial tracer retention are poorly understood: age (except for 6-[^{18}F]-dopamine), gender, glucose, insulin, DLP, hypertension, and vasoactive agents. Methodology for the assessment of sympathetic integrity is not standardized. Normative values have not been developed [14].

Recommendations [14]

- Scintigraphic studies should not be routinely employed for the diagnosis of CAN and should be utilized in concert with standard CARTs (level C).
- Scintigraphic studies are extremely valuable in the identification of sympathetic noradrenergic denervation as a mechanism of neurogenic orthostatic hypotension (level B).
- [^{123}I]-MIBG single-photon emission computed tomography offers semiquantitative assessment, and [^{11}C]-HED, 6-[^{18}F]-dopamine, and [^{11}C]-epinephrine positron emission tomography offer quantitative assessment of cardiac sympathetic integrity (level B).
- There is no standardized methodology for scintigraphic assessment of cardiac sympathetic integrity, and only limited data on the reproducibility exist (level C).
- Scintigraphic tracer uptake is affected by myocardial perfusion, and tracer retention is affected by available energy for the active neuronal and vesicular uptake transporters (level C).
- The results of scintigraphy should be compared with an appropriate control population (level C).
- Scintigraphic studies offer good sensitivity to detect sympathetic neuronal loss in the heart (level C).
- Scintigraphy is appropriate to explore the effects of sympathetic denervation on cardiac physiology, metabolism, and function (level C).
- Scintigraphy is useful as a marker of cardiac sympathetic denervation in cross-sectional and longitudinal research studies (level C).

Diagnostic Criteria for CAN

No unanimous criteria for diagnosis of CAN have been adapted to date. A single abnormal result among the two or three heart rate tests actually performed was considered a sufficient criterion for early CAN diagnosis. However, the presence of abnormalities in more than one test on several occasions was indicated as preferable for diagnosis [17, 74]. In addition, the presence of two or three abnormal results (two for borderline, three for definite) among the seven autonomic cardiovascular indices (including the five standard CARTs and other time- and frequency-domain

indices of HRV) was recommended as a criterion for CAN diagnosis [97].

The Toronto Consensus established four reasons why the diagnosis of CAN is relevant to clinical practice [74]:

- For diagnosing and staging the different clinical forms of CAN: initial, definite, and advanced or severe.
- For the differential diagnosis of clinical manifestations (e.g., resting tachycardia, OH, and dyspnea upon exercise) and their respective treatment.
- For stratifying the degree of cardiovascular risk and the risk of other diabetic complications (nephropathy, retinopathy, and "silent" myocardial ischemia).
- To adapt the goal of HbA_{1c} in each patient: for example, those with severe CAN should have a less aggressive glycemic control due to the risk of asymptomatic hypoglycemia in these patients, while patients with initial stages of CAN should have a more intensive glycemic control.

CARTs are the gold standard clinical tests for cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy [74]. Following the 8th International Symposium on Diabetic Neuropathy in 2010, criteria for diagnosis and staging of CAN are defined in the CAN Subcommittee of the Toronto Consensus Panel statement [26, 74]. Accordingly, only one abnormal CARTs result is sufficient to diagnose possible or early CAN; among the seven autonomic function analysis (five CARTs, time-domain, and frequency-domain HRV tests), two or three abnormal tests indicate definite or confirmed CAN; and severe/advanced CAN can be indicated by concurrent orthostatic hypotension [9, 74].

Staging of CAN

Ewing et al. proposed a classification based on "early involvement" (one abnormal result on HR test or two borderline results), "definite involvement" (two or more abnormal results on HR tests), and "severe involvement" (presence of OH) [28]. An "autonomic neuropathy score"—obtained by scoring the results of CARTs—has been used with the dual advantage of quantifying the progression of CAN and providing an overall quantitative result [74]. While an abnormal OH test result generally occurs late in diabetes and subsequent to abnormalities in the HR tests, no chronological order or a markedly different prevalence of abnormalities among the HR tests has been found [74, 97]. Considering progression from an early to an advanced involvement, instead of from parasympathetic to sympathetic neuropathy, would appear to be the most appropriate approach to CAN staging, although OH may on rare occasions precede abnormalities in HR tests [28, 74]. The available information regarding the duration required to progress from an earlier to a later stage of CART impairment is scant, and it is not documented that a progression to OH and symptomatic forms invariably occurs in all patients. The combination of CARTs with tests for sudomotor function may provide a more accurate diagnosis of diabetic autonomic neuropathy [74].

Conclusions [74]

- The following CARTs are the gold standard for clinical autonomic testing: HR response to deep breathing, standing, and Valsalva maneuver and BP response to standing (class II).
- These CARTs are sensitive, specific, reproducible, easy to perform, safe, and standardized (classes II and III).
- The Valsalva maneuver is not advisable in the presence of proliferative retinopathy and when there is an increased risk of retinal hemorrhage (class IV).
- CARTs are subject to a number of confounding or interfering factors (class III). Age is the most relevant factor affecting heart rate tests (class I).
- A definite diagnosis of CAN and CAN staging requires more than one HR test and the OH test (class III).

Recommendations [74]

- Diagnosis of CAN is based on the use of CARTs for HR response to deep breathing, standing, and Valsalva maneuver and for BP response to standing (level A).
- For the diagnosis and monitoring of CAN, more than one HR test and the OH test are required (level B).
- Performance of CARTs should be standardized and the influence of confounding variables minimized (level A).
- Age-related normal ranges of HR tests are strictly required (level A).
- CAN diagnosis and staging: (1) the presence of one abnormal cardiovagal test result identifies the condition of possible or early CAN, to be confirmed over time; (2) at least two abnormal cardiovagal results are required for a definite or confirmed diagnosis of CAN; and (3) the presence of OH in addition to HR test abnormalities identifies severe or advanced CAN (level B).
- CARTs allow CAN staging from early to advanced involvement (level C).
- Progressive stages of CAN are associated with increasingly worse prognosis (level B).

Management of CAN

Intensive Glycemic Control and Multifactorial Risk Intervention

Compensation state of T2DM is recognized as a primary goal in the prevention of development and/or progression of CVD [5, 6, 41]. Insulin resistance (IR) is a defining feature in most cases of T2DM and plays a key role in the pathogenesis of

myocardial alternations. Obviously, pharmacological agents that are used in the treatment of diabetes should have positive qualities for correction of functional and structural disorders of the cardiovascular system [89, 88]. Theoretically, pharmacological agents that improve insulin sensitivity [metformin, thiazolidinediones (TZD)] appear to be the most appropriate in this regard. It is established that metformin has a positive effect on glucose metabolism; Ca^{2+} concentration in cardiomyocytes, but metformin, unlike TZD, does not show any positive effect on optimization of glucose metabolism in the myocardium [68, 95]. TZD stimulate receptor transcription factors, activated by peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ (PPAR-γ), which improves insulin sensitivity and reduces the level of circulating free fatty acids (FFA). It is likely that TZD, despite the absence of the myocardium PPAR-γ type receptors, improve the functional state of the myocardium by reducing the content of FFA. However, the use of TZD among patients with CVD is limited due to the possibility of fluid retention and/or development of edema [85].

In the Steno 2 study, an intensive multifactorial cardiovascular risk intervention reduced the progression or the development of CAN among T2DM patients with microalbuminuria [33]. However, the beneficial effect of intensive glycemic control on CAN in T2DM has not been specifically proven [74].

Lifestyle Modification

Nutrition and physical activity. Correction of obesity. Limit salt intake to 2–4 g/d. Limit smoking, alcohol, and foods that contain caffeine. It has been established that compliance with recommended lifestyle modifications (exercise, weight loss, etc.) helps improve insulin sensitivity level. Sedentary lifestyle (less than 1000 kcal/wk) is accompanied by the risk of mortality three times higher than when living an active lifestyle. Dosed physical activity reduces hyperinsulinemia and encourages the tendency to normalize lipid metabolism in addition to body weight decrease. Physical activity is associated with higher HRV and lower HR, therefore may be a predictor of positive changes in HRV indices [71]. Obtaining the necessary amount of energy combined with physiologic food ration forms the dietary principles. The traditional Mediterranean diet (Greece and Southern Italy) is associated with longevity and/or low mortality due to CVD complications, decreased incidence of T2DM, and low frequency of wide range of chronic diseases, including rheumatoid arthritis, Parkinson's disease, and others [23, 52, 87].

Treatment of Dyslipoproteinemia

For DLP pharmacotherapy using statins, fibrates, bile acid sequestrants, nicotinic acid and its derivatives, products of long-chain ω-3 and ω-6 polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA), or as an alternative-their combination with cholesterol absorption inhibitors [94].

Statins Statins (along with lifestyle changes) should be prescribed to patients with T2DM aged over 40 where there is at least one of the risk factors for CVD (regardless of basic lipid levels); prescription of statins among patients with T2DM aged under 40 years without diagnosed CVD should be considered when low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol level exceeds 2.6 mmol/L [8, 68]. Achievement of LDL level in the blood <1.8 mmol/L or reduction by 30–40% compared with initial level (in case of failure to achieve value targets in the course of the prescription of the maximum tolerable dose statin) is suitable for patients at high risk of CVD, particularly patients with T2DM. However, statins are often ineffective when used for treatment of atherogenic DLP as pharmacological agents to achieve reduction in triglycerides (TG) and increase high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol; statin use (even at high doses) only partially solves the problem of the risk of CVD [15, 82].

Fibrates Fibrates limit the availability of substrates for the synthesis of TG in the liver, encourage lipoprotein lipase effects, increase LDL receptor/ligand interaction, stimulate cholesterol secretion with bile, stimulate reverse cholesterol transport that is accompanied by reduction of TG and very LDL (VLDL) cholesterol levels, and improve insulin sensitivity. Possible mechanisms that help fibrates improve insulin sensitivity are fibrate binding to receptors that activate PPAR-β enhances fatty acids oxidation in the liver and, consequently, causes increase of insulin sensitivity; fibrates are involved in the regulation of adipokine expression [adiponectin, leptin, tumor necrosis-α (TNF-α), resistin, etc.], accompanied by the increase of insulin sensitivity [12].

Bile acid sequestrants Bile acid sequestrants are safe lipid-lowering medicaments, however often causing gastrointestinal adverse reactions. The second-generation bile acid sequestrants, including colesevelam, bind bile acids with higher affinity and better tolerance. It is used as a supplement to diet therapy and physical activity to reduce the concentration of LDL cholesterol among patients with primary DLP, during monotherapy and/or in combination therapy with statins, and to improve glycemic control among patients with T2DM. In addition, it is important that the bile acid sequestrants reduce the concentration of glucose and HbA_{1c} in the blood (approximately 0.9%) [75] and thus may be useful in the treatment of hypercholesterolemia among patients with T2DM.

Niacin Niacin is the most efficient pharmacological agent for raising HDL cholesterol level and, to a lesser extent, to

reduce the concentration of TG and LDL cholesterol. It is reported that the therapeutic effect of prolonged forms of niacin on lipid profile occurs with the medicament intake in the dose range 0.5–2.0 g. A common reason for not using niacin, which significantly affects patient's susception and accurate application, is the problem of "flushing." Current approach to this issue is the use of combined prolonged form of niacin with laropiprant, an inhibitor of prostaglandin D_2 [2].

Long-chain ω-3 PUFAs The use of long-chain ω-3 PUFAs due to their effects on glucose homeostasis and IR (IR reduction in muscle > adipose tissue >> liver) presumably inhibits insulin secretion and delays the development of T2DM) influences the state of lipid metabolism (decrease TG concentrations, presumably increase the concentration of HDL cholesterol, improve lipid profile among patients with T2DM and DLP), moderately reduces BP, improves endothelial function, reduces the inflammation, and improves antioxidant protection [22, 68].

Ezetimibe Ezetimibe is used as a nutrition and exercise supplement to reduce the concentration of LDL cholesterol, total cholesterol (TC), and treatment of homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia. Despite some reservations, ezetimibe remains the medicine of first choice among other pharmacological agents in the absence of target specific level of LDL cholesterol using statin monotherapy [29].

Combined treatment Therapy of first choice for T2DM in case of lipid profile correction is usage of statins to achieve specific target of LDL cholesterol level < 2.6 mmol/L for primary prevention and < 1.8 mmol/L for secondary prevention of CVD. Failure to get this target is the indication to combine statins with other lipid-lowering agents of other pharmacological groups. A number of international guidelines as a compulsory component of CVD risk monitoring recommend to control apolipoprotein B level on the first-priority basis [29].

Correction of Metabolic Abnormalities in the Myocardium

Correction of metabolic abnormalities in the myocardium is the basis of pharmacotherapy that aims at optimization of the energy metabolism of the myocardium. Pharmacological impact system includes the following main aspects: use of metabolism regulators; energy-saving solutions; activators of endogenic high-energy compounds and O_2 transportation; inhibitors of metabolic acidosis; membrane's protection (inhibition of lipid peroxidation membranes of cardiomyocytes); and stabilization of lysosomal membranes, neutralization of membranotropic action of humoral agents of lysosomal proteases, and others. Medicaments that enhance cell energy state (means of potential energy supply survival of ischemic myocardium). Deterioration of intracellular reserves of carbohydrates needs to be replenished by use of glycolysis activation measures. The use of macroergic phosphates (ATP, etc.) as a direct energy source is problematic, as the therapeutic effect of ATP in case of ischemia probably has less to do with disposing of its macroergic bonds but more with involving products of catabolism of ATP into energy metabolism of cardiomyocytes [68, 95].

Modulators of metabolism Insulin resistance affects myocardial function by reducing glucose transportation and oxidation of carbohydrates, enhancing the use of free fatty acids, inhibition of Ca^{2+} transportation in the sarcolemma, violation of the structure, and function of regulatory contractile proteins of myofibrils. In case of DM the reduction of myocardial energy formation leads to inhibition of glucose oxidation and preferential oxidation of fatty acids in the myocardium and skeletal muscle, which increases sensitivity to myocardial ischemia and leads to significant disturbances of Ca^{2+} homeostasis and deterioration of diastolic and systolic myocardial function. The presence of CAD among patients with diabetes worsens the disease and significantly increases cardiovascular mortality. It is considered that even the initial stages of glycemic profile violations may influence the myocardial metabolism and contribute to the development of cardiomyopathy [95]. It is important that myocardial dysfunction is a suppositive stage of chronic hyperglycemia elaboration. Thus, dysfunction of cells metabolism, rather than systemic hyperglycemia, is the reason for the elaboration of cardiac malfunction [78, 95].

Metabolic medicaments Optimization of myocardial energy metabolism is based on increased myocardial glucose oxidation, which enhances cardiac function and protects myocardial fibers from ischemic and reperfusion injuries. Myocardial use of glucose in case of chronic disease may be improved due to intake of the medicines that can improve fatty acid metabolism and inhibit their oxidation. New therapeutic approach has been implemented after advent of trimetazidine—the first representative of a new class of metabolic agents—inhibitors of 3-ketoacyl coenzyme A thiolase. *Trimetazidine* reduces oxidation of fatty acids; stimulates glucose intake; restores the link between glycolysis and carbohydrate oxidation, which leads to the formation of ATP, reducing O_2 consumption; redirects fatty

acids toward phospholipids; increases cell tolerance to ischemic and reperfusion injuries; and increases the oxidation of glucose and the activity of Na^+, K^+-ATPase, and Ca^{2+}-pumps in the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Anti-ischemic properties of trimetazidine do not depend on changes in hemodynamics and are associated with a distinct recovery of mechanical function after ischemia, which makes it recognized as cardiocytoprotective agent. Trimetazidine prescription improves glucose metabolism, reduces endothelin-1 among patients with diabetic cardiomyopathy, is accompanied by a significant positive changes in ejection fraction parameters among patients with heart failure, and improves quality of life parameters and NYHA functional class [30]. Another pharmacological agent that facilitates the inhibition of metabolism of fatty acids is *perhexiline.* Perhexiline prescription to patients with heart failure significantly contributes to the improvement of EF, VO_2max, and quality of life. Unfortunately, the clinical use of this medicament is limited because of the risk of hepatotoxicity and peripheral neuropathy [48]. *Ranolazine* is the third antianginal pharmacological agent with a potential of metabolism modificator. However, the following factors do not allow to implement its use: the degree of inhibition of fatty acid metabolism is limited by physiological indicators; ranolazine prescription associates with the possibility of QTi interval prolongation [54].

Limitation of extracellular Ca^{2+} into the cell: Blockers of Ca^{2+}-channels show a protective effect on myocardium in case of ischemia. In terms of correction of cell power, the most pathogenetically efficient option is the use of Ca^{2+} blockers; however they only eliminate secondary dysfunction links of oxidative phosphorylation in mitochondria. Prescription of β-adrenergic receptor blockers for T2DM with CAD and CAN has significant pathogenetic grounds as high sympathetic activity that is followed by CAN, accelerates the development of CVD, and significantly affects prognosis. In addition, several studies demonstrated the ability of β-blockers to reduce the incidence of SMI episodes and improve prognosis among these patients. However, adrenergic receptors and β-blockers negatively affect the performance of glycemic profile; increase the risk of hypoglycemia, showing a negative effect on blood lipid profile; and can provoke acute heart failure. The above-described events occur with prescription of nonselective β-blockers. Selective β-adrenergic receptor blockers, including metoprolol, are free of side effects, including the effectiveness of metoprolol in the treatment of CVD demonstrated in numerous controlled studies. *Metoprolol* has cardioprotective properties, improves prognosis among patients with CAD, and has a fair tolerance in case of prolonged use. Cardioselective β-blockers can also balance the effects of autonomic dysfunction; in particular by resisting sympathetic stimulation, they can restore parasympathetic/sympathetic balance. However, traditional antianginal agents that affect hemodynamic parameters (β-blockers, Ca^{2+} antagonists, etc.) have lower tolerance among elderly due to the high risk of the interaction of pharmacological agents with a significant incidence of side effects [78, 95].

Total HRV has been shown to be increased and parasympathetic/sympathetic balance improved by angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibition in patients with mild autonomic neuropathy through increases in nerve blood flow [17]. Prostaglandin analogues have been shown to be effective through the same mechanism [17, 70]. Cardioselective beta-blockers are considered to have positive effects on autonomic dysfunction. For example, the addition of metoprolol to ramipril therapy in patients with type 1 diabetes resulted in recovery of HRV parameters [80, 81]. Furthermore, bisoprolol improved HRV in heart failure [96]. In a study including individuals with long-term diabetes and diabetic neuropathy, the combination of ACE inhibition and angiotensin-receptor blockade improved autonomic neuropathy [92]. In addition, showed that losartan therapy significantly improved HRV in patients with ischemic cardiomyopathy [57]. Similarly, sympathovagal imbalance in heart failure patients was improved following the administration of spironolactone along with enalapril, furosemide, and digoxin [62]. Such evidence reveals that combination therapies appear to provide better results than monotherapies [9].

Medicaments that contain micro- and macro-elements, primarily Mg^{2+}. One of the risk factors that can decrease insulin sensitivity is hypomagnesaemia. It is suggested that Mg^{2+} deficiency plays a significant role in increasing the risk of diabetic macro- and microvascular complications and, especially, the risk of CAD [79, 95].

Thrombosis Prevention and Treatment

Platelets obtained from patients with T2DM and tested in vitro are characterized by a real ability to aggregate under the influence of ADP, adrenaline, collagen, arachidonic acid, and thrombin. Aggregation of platelets is significantly increased in the second, irreversible phase, which depends on the transformation of arachidonic acid into labile prostacyclin and thromboxane. Thus, the possibility of ADP receptors of platelet membrane blocking is a pathogenetically justified measure. Prescription of antiplatelet agents, namely, acetylsalicylic acid (ASA), clopidogrel, and others, can help prevent blood clots, stenocardia, and development of MI. The active clopidogrel metabolite irreversibly binds to ADP receptor on the platelet membrane, which leads to inhibition of adenylate cyclase, inhibition of ADP-dependent secretion of platelet granules, and inhibition of ADP-dependent process of binding fibrinogen receptor to the platelet membrane, does not affect the expression of receptors directly, blocks

myointimal proliferation in case of vascular damage, and unlike ASA does not affect the activity of cyclooxygenase. Effect of clopidogrel and ASA synergy is demonstrated in the study of platelet ex vivo. However, clopidogrel is a more effective pharmacological agent within the frames of the combined risk of MI, stroke, and the syndrome of "sudden death" reduction [25, 68].

Aldose Reductase Inhibitors

*Aldose reductase inhibitors (*ARI) inhibit the *polyol* pathway for *glucose metabolism*, preventing the reduction of the redox potentials. Analysis of the double-blind, placebo-controlled study established that tolrestat contributes to the improvement of independent test results and vibration sensitivity among patients with symmetric diabetic peripheral neuropathy (DPN). *Zenarestat* prescription for 12 months was accompanied by dose-dependent changes in the spissitude of nerve tissue, increased the velocity of nerve impulses, and improved myocardial systolic function. *Zopolrestat* and *ranirestat*—medicaments of a new generation of ARI group—showed sufficient efficacy in experimental studies [66].

While the use of aldose reductase inhibitors (epalrestat, fidarestat, and AS-3201), which reduce nerve sorbitol, had a positive influence on HRV in patients with mild abnormalities, they were ineffective in advanced CAN patients [9, 17].

Replacement Therapy with the Help of Myoinositol

Several individual clinical trials were conducted for the study of myoinositol efficacy in the treatment of diabetic neuropathy. The results are quite positive, but the future clinical double-blind, placebo-controlled trials are needed [58, 59].

Aminoguanidine

Aminoguanidine improves capacity of nerve velocity, increases blood flow, inhibits the formation of advanced glycation end products, and delays the emergence and development of albuminuria. Analysis of controlled trials confirmed quite aminoguanidine high efficiency among patients with diabetic neuropathy, but the development of a number of side effects terminated their application. The use of aminoguanidine derivatives is accompanied by clinical efficacy and lack of adverse side effects [19, 52]. The results are promising, but need further clinical double-blind, placebo-controlled studies.

Neurotrophic Therapy

Inhibition of nerve growth factor (NGF) expression and its receptors suppresses NGF axonal retrograding transport and reduces the activity of small unmyelinated neurons and their neuropeptides, including substance P and gene-linked calcitonin peptide. The use of recombinant human NGF normalizes neuropeptide concentration and prevents the development of sensory neuropathy in the experiment. However, the results of clinical placebo-controlled studies deny the positive impact of recombinant human NGF among patients with diabetic neuropathy [19, 52].

Antineural Autoimmunity Human Immunoglobulin for Intravenous Use

Intravenous human immunoglobulin prescription is recommended for patients with diabetic peripheral neuropathy (DPN), which have signs of antineural autoimmunity symptoms. The side effects include headache, and the main danger could be the development of an anaphylactic reaction; however, it affects mainly patients with deficiency of immunoglobulin A [19, 52].

Endoneural Perfusion Inhibition with the Development of Hypoxia

Experimental and clinical studies have shown benefit in the efficiency of vasodilators when used for improvement of nerve flow velocity, but there is not enough information about the impact of vasodilators on the course of DPN during clinical double-blind placebo-controlled studies. The research results of characteristics that impact the angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors on heart rate variability parameters among diabetic patients with CAN appeared to show diametrically opposed results. In particular, prescription of *quinapril* for 3 months was accompanied by statistically significant increased parasympathetic activity, and the use of trandolapril for 12 months did not affect the performance of autonomic myocardial function. However, most of these pharmacological agents have no proven clinical and electrophysiological positive effects and have certain limitations and contraindications [19, 89].

Activation of Free Radical Stress

Considering that one of the major pathogenetic mechanisms of neuropathy is oxidative stress, the need for antioxidant prescription is obvious. Great therapeutic potential is observed in α-lipoic acid (α-LA) and creates pathogenic evi-

dence for the use of this pharmacological agent [20, 44]. Mechanism of α-LA action is not fully developed, but specific attention should be paid to two hypotheses. Firstly, α-LA phenomenon causes dose-dependent proliferation of neuroblastoma cultured cells. Changes in the membrane fluidity that are mediated through sulfhydryl groups α-LA are considered to cause this effect. This is confirmed by the following results of several studies, including experimental neuropathy induced by acrylamide, followed by a significant inhibition of proliferation of the above phenomenon; overlay and/or progression of experimental distal neuropathy, mainly caused by a decrease of content of substances in axons containing sulfhydryl groups (e.g., glutathione); α-LA in vivo and in vitro enhances spontaneous processes of expansion and improvement of the structural and functional nerve terminals membranes state; and prescription of α-LA stimulates the regeneration of nerve terminals in case of the partial denervation, as well as experimental hexacarbon neuropathy. Secondly, and the most probable mechanism, is the ability of α-LA to function as a radical binder ("cleaner") [40, 68, 98].

Vitamins with Antioxidant Properties [a Liposoluble Vitamin B_1 (Benfotiamine)], Combined Medications

There are enough experimental and clinical results of studies that suggest that the hyperinsulinemia, IR, and chronic hyperglycemia in T2DM have a negative impact on the metabolism of thiamine particularly due to the inhibition of the functional state of the thiamine transporter-1 and thiamine transporter-2, responsible for the reabsorption of vitamin in the proximal tubules of the kidneys, and transketolase (TK) activity, which can lead to the congestion of intermediates in the initial stages of glycolysis [glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate (GA3P), fructose-6-phosphate (F6P), and dihydroxyacetone-phosphate]. Congestion of intermediates in case of chronic hyperglycemia increases the production of free radicals in the mitochondria, followed by inhibition of glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH). Increased concentrations of GA3P, F6P, and GAPDH can initiate induced hyperglycemia, metabolic fates that favor the overlay of vascular injury, including activation of protein kinase C, accumulation of advanced glycation end products (AGEs), hexosamine biosynthetic fates activation, and dicarbonyl compounds. Activation with dicarbonyl compounds is followed by further stimulation of the AGEs formation, which is also associated with functional impaired and structural state of cardiomyocytes [1, 34, 77].

It is clear that the correction of thiamin deficiency must be performed using exogenous vitamin B_1, or benfotiamine (monophosphate S-benzoyl-thiamine, high-bioavailable liposoluble vitamin B_1 derivatives). Results of experimental and clinical studies suggest a positive effect of benfotiamine prescription on prevention of diabetic vascular disease progression. Benfotiamine broad therapeutic potential has a good efficiency on medications containing soluble thiamine derivatives for the purpose of regulating the activity of free radical processes, correction of endothelial dysfunction in case of CVD, and stabilization of clinical and antioxidant effects [44].

Benfotiamine can promote neuronal and vascular deficiency correction through the participation of nitrogen oxide processes, which have a significant therapeutic potential for the treatment of CVD. The use of thiamine and α-LA combination has a great significance in the treatment of diabetic angio-neuropathy. In particular, it demonstrated that prescription of benfotiamine and α-LA to patients with T1DM was followed by normalization of hyperglycemia, and for 4 weeks it promoted the normalization of prostacyclin synthase suppressed by diabetes and increase of TK activity in monocytes in two to three times [37, 55].

Fatty Acid Metabolism Disorders (γ-Linolenic Acid, Acetyl-L-Carnitine)

Vasoactive prostanoids, metabolites, and dihomo-γ-linolenic acid (DGLA), including prostaglandins and other eicosanoids, are necessary for the physiological behavior of nerve conductivity and blood flow. The results of double-blind, placebo-controlled studies showed that prescription of DGLA to patients with DPN is followed by positive dynamics in clinical course, as well as increase in the speed of nerve conductivity. L-carnitine's main function is to strengthen the metabolism of fatty acids, but there is experimental evidence of L-carnitine's ability to activate glucose metabolism. It is believed that T2DM is characterized by malfunction of L-carnitine exchange in the mitochondria. The results of several studies showed that prescription of L-carnitine helps to improve energy supplies and LV function. It is established that propionyl-L-carnitine improves the functional status, used as glucose energy oxidation in the rat's affected myocardium (despite the increased level of fatty acids). Nutrition of diabetic mice with obesity with L-carnitine addition increases the level of acyl-carnitine in the blood, muscle, liver, and adipose tissue and increases levels of pyruvate dehydrogenase activity in the muscles; and prescription of zinc-carnitine mixture reduces hyperglycemia and improves glucose tolerance. L-carnitine infusion with the help of hyperinsulinemic-euglycemic clamp improves glucose profile control and reduces the concentration of circulating lipids. L-carnitine prescription for 3 or 6 months for newly diagnosed patients with T2DM with lipid metabolism disorders is followed by a statistically significant decrease in lipoprotein(a) [Lp(a)] levels. The results of double-blind, placebo-controlled studies among patients with verified

hyperLP(a) established that L-carnitine (2 g/d) encouraged a significant decrease in the concentration of Lp(a) levels; L-carnitine incorporation into nutrition of patients with newly diagnosed T2DM is followed by similar changes; and combined L-carnitine with simvastatin (20 mg/d) treatment is much more efficient in decreasing the concentration of lipids, including TG and Lp(a) than statin monotherapy. Thus, L-carnitine can be used as one of the components for lipid-modifying therapy among patients with T2DM [60, 72].

ω-3 PUFAs Medications

A fundamentally new approach to assessing the biological role of eicosapentaenoic (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) is associated with long-term epidemiological study results among Inuits, which established a small percentage of CVD. The Greenlandic Inuits were observed to have an increased bleeding duration; lower levels of TC, TG, and VLDL-cholesterol; and a significant increase in TC lipid membranes of EPA and DHA contents, arachidonic acid concentration reduction, and linoleic acid. For the first time, these results allowed to express a reasonable assumption about the protective effect of DHA and especially EPA from the damaging effects on the internal vessel wall capable of inducing experiment CAD—a phenomenon of TC activation and high blood viscosity—and enhancing the cyclic endoperoxide synthase, including prostaglandin H_2, thromboxane A_2 (TXA_2) activation of endothelial cell proliferation, hypercholesterolemia, and hypertriglyceridemia. Prescription of EPA and DHA is followed by a decrease in the "rigidity" of red blood cells, which is obviously associated with labilization of erythrocyte plasmalemma based on rapid and intensive incorporation of long-chain ω-3 PUFAs phospholipids into membrane and decreased synthesis of vasoconstrictor active ingredients.

The ability of exogenous EPA and DHA to incorporate phospholipid blood cell membranes and membrane phospholipids of endothelial cells blood vessels affects the fundamental plasmalemma properties and receptor function for the perception and processing of extracellular information. Accumulating long-chain polyenes acids labilizes plasmalemma, changing the microviscosity of its lipid matrix, which causes the transformation of the basic plasmalemma properties-permeability, generation of biopotentials, and ion transit. Changes in the lipid environment of receptor structures affect their functional activity and enzyme systems control in the cell, which primarily relates to the corpuscular adenylate cyclase, whose function is related to the metabolism of phospholipids [10, 27].

Analysis of experimental and clinical studies proves that ω-3 PUFAs inhibit the absorption of cholesterol in the intestine and its synthesis in the liver, lead to increased clearance of lipoproteins in the blood, prevent the development of IR in experimental diabetes, decrease level of BP, dose dependently prevent the development of diabetes, improve the sensitivity of platelets to ADP and collagen, contribute to positive changes in the parameters of coagulation and endothelial cells migration, and inhibit the proliferation of smooth muscle cells. However, the studies aimed to investigate the features of ω-3 PUFAs in T2DM are numerically small, and obtained results do not always testify to their effectiveness [36, 42, 43]. In particular, the results of the ORIGIN trial demonstrated that administration of 1 g ω-3 PUFAs did not reduce the rate of death caused by cardiovascular reasons or their outcomes during a period of 6 years among patients with dysglycemia and additional cardiovascular risk factors. In this trial the dose of ω-3 PUFAs was not chosen on the basis of any estimate of its effect on TG levels; nevertheless, a significant reduction in the TG level was shown. However, this study did not apply to treatment of CAN, and it was decided to continue the study for a few more years [16]. In the same time, American Diabetes Association (ADA, 2005) recommend the prescription of α-LA and ω-3 PUFAs in algorithms of DPN treatment [17] and in ADA recommendations (2014) and results of some trials-prescription of ω-3 PUFAs in DLP treatment among patients with T2DM and cardiovascular diseases [5, 42].

Symptomatic Treatment of Orthostatic Hypotension

Orthostatic hypotension syndrome is manifested by dizziness and possibility of loss of consciousness. Hypovolemia and sympathoadrenal disorders are the most common characteristic features among patients with DM and orthostatic hypotension. Orthostatic hypotension among most diabetic patients progresses asymptomatically and, therefore, does not require correction. However, in severe cases, it is key traumatic factor.

Treatment of OH is required only when symptomatic with the therapeutic goal to minimize postural symptoms rather than to restore normotension. The first step encompasses non-pharmacological measures with the attempt to (1) identify other causes of OH, e.g., volume depletion, and avoid, when possible, drugs exacerbating postural symptoms, such as psychotropic drugs, diuretics, and α-adrenoreceptor antagonists; (2) educate patients regarding behavioral strategies such as gradual staged movements with postural change, mild isotonic exercise, head-up bed position during sleep, physical counter-maneuvers (e.g., leg-crossing, stooping, squatting, and tensing muscles), use of portable folding chairs, increased fluid and salt intake if not contraindicated, drinking water rapidly, and avoidance of large meals rich in carbohydrates; and (3) use of elastic garment over the legs and abdomen. If symptoms persist despite these measures, a pharmacological treatment should be considered [74].

Treatment of symptomatic postural hypotension among patients with CAN is very complicated because of the need to achieve a balance between changes in BP in the vertical and horizontal position. The increase of peripheral venous inflow is achieved through the use of elastic tightening body linen. It is inappropriate to prescribe psychotropic and diuretic drugs, and eliminate the possibility of electrolyte disorders and/or reduce the fluid volume [74].

The peripheral selective α_1-adrenergic agonist *midodrine* is a first-line drug that exerts a pressor effect through both arteriolar constriction and venoconstriction of the capacitance vessels. The dosing should be individually tailored (up to two to four times 10 mg/day, with the first dose taken before arising and use avoided several hours before planned recumbency particularly in patients with documented supine hypertension). Adverse events are pilomotor reactions, pruritus, supine hypertension, bradycardia, gastrointestinal symptoms, and urinary retention. *Midodrine* is the only medication approved by the Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of symptomatic orthostatic hypotension [74].

The *9-α-fluorohydrocortisone* is a first-choice drug that acts through sodium retention, a direct constricting effect on partially denervated vessels, and an increase in the water content of the vessel wall leading to a reduced distensibility. Possible adverse effects include supine hypertension, hypokalemia, congestive heart failure, and peripheral edema. The initial dose should be 0.05–0.1 mg daily with individual titration to 0.1–0.3 mg daily [32, 74].

Erythropoietin was proposed to increase standing blood pressure via several mechanisms: (1) increasing red cell mass and central blood volume, (2) correcting the anemia frequently associated with severe CAN, and (3) neurohumoral effects on the vascular wall and vascular tone regulation. It can be administered in diabetic patients with hemoglobin levels under 11 g/dL subcutaneously or intravenously at doses between 25 and 75 U/kg three times/week with an hemoglobin target of 12 g/dL followed by lower maintenance doses [32, 74].

Other possible treatments include (1) *desmopressin acetate*, a vasopressin analogue useful to correct nocturnal polyuria and morning orthostatic hypotension; (2) *somatostatin analogues* aimed at inhibiting the release of vasoactive gastrointestinal peptides, enhancing cardiac output, and increasing forearm and splanchnic vascular resistance, with severe cases of hypertension as possible adverse events in diabetic patients; and (3) *caffeine* and (4) *acarbose*, both useful in attenuating postprandial hypotension in autonomic failure [32, 47, 74].

While pharmacological treatments, such as midodrine, clonidine, octreotide, fludrocortisone acetate, erythropoietin, nonselective beta-blockers, and pyridostigmine bromide, appear promising, all have mild to severe side effects, including hypertension [9, 58].

The Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy concluded the following in relation to CAN treatment [74]:

- Intensive diabetes therapy retards the development of CAN in T1DM (level A).
- Intensive multifactorial cardiovascular risk intervention retards the development and progression of CAN in T2DM (level B).
- Lifestyle intervention might improve HRV in prediabetes (level B) and diabetes (level B).
- Symptomatic orthostatic hypotension might be improved by non-pharmacological measures (level B) and by midodrine (level A) and/or fludrocortisone (level B).

The recommendations from the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy are as follows:

- Diabetes therapy in patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes should consider the individual risk profile and comorbidities (class I).
- Lifestyle intervention should be offered as a basic preventive measure (class I).
- Given the limited evidence from very few large-scale randomized clinical trials, recommendations cannot be given for pharmacological and non-pharmacological treatments of CAN.
- Drugs that might reduce HRV should be avoided in patients with CAN (class III).
- Resting tachycardia associated with CAN can be treated with cardioselective beta-blockers (class I).
- The first therapeutic approach in symptomatic orthostatic hypotension should consider the exclusion of drugs exacerbating orthostatic hypotension, correction of volume depletion (class I), and other non-pharmacological measures (class IIa).
- Pharmacotherapy of symptomatic orthostatic hypotension should include midodrine (class I) or fludrocortisones, or a combination of both in nonresponders to monotherapy (class IIa);
- Because of the limited evidence, the potential risk of any pharmacological treatment should be thoroughly weighed against its possible benefit (class I);
- CARTs should be used as end points in prospective observational and clinical trials.

Concluding Remarks

Cardiac autonomic neuropathy is a serious complication of diabetes mellitus that is strongly associated with increased risk of cardiovascular mortality.

Screening for CAN must be performed to asymptomatic patients with type 2 diabetes at diagnosis and type 1 diabetic patients after 5 years of disease, in particular those (but not only) at greater risk for CAN.

Diagnosis of CAN is based on the use of CARTs, which are considered as the gold standard for clinical autonomic testing: the presence of one abnormal cardiovagal test result identifies the condition of possible or early CAN, to be confirmed over time; (2) at least two abnormal cardiovagal results are required for a definite or confirmed diagnosis of CAN; and (3) the presence of OH in addition to HR test abnormalities identifies severe or advanced CAN.

Lifestyle intervention is a basic preventive measure and may improve HRV. Intensive diabetes therapy retards the development of CAN in type 1 diabetes and intensive multifactorial cardiovascular risk intervention retards the development and progression of CAN in type 2 diabetes. Resting tachycardia by CAN can be treated with cardioselective β-blockers. Pharmacotherapy of symptomatic orthostatic hypotension should include midodrine or fludrocortisone or a combination of both in nonresponders to monotherapy.

The promising methods include research and use of tools that increase blood flow through the vasa vasorum, including butaprost (prostacyclin analogue), TXA_2 blockers, and drugs that contribute into strengthening and/or normalization of Na^+, K^+-ATPase (cilostazol, a potential phosphodiesterase inhibitor), α-LA, DGLA, and ω-3 PUFAs and the simultaneous prescription of α-LA, ω-3 PUFA, and DGLA [62, 81, 88, 96]. In addition, the combination of α-LA, ω-3 PUFAs, DGLA, and ARI is the most rational pathogenetically justified use.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. At what timepoint screening for CAN must be performed?
   (a) Asymptomatic patients with T2DM at diagnosis and patient with T1DM after 5 years of disease.
   (b) Asymptomatic patients with T2DM after 5 years of disease and type 1 diabetic patients at diagnosis.
   (c) Only patients with clinical signs of CAN.
   (d) Only patients with the history of poor glycemic control.
   (e) Screening for CAN shouldn't be performed.
2. Which risk factors are known for the development of CAN?
   (a) Diabetes duration
   (b) Poor glycemic control
   (c) Microvascular complications
   (d) Combination of hypertension, dyslipidemia, and obesity
   (e) All listed above
3. What method is considered as a gold standard for CAN diagnosis?
   (a) CARTs
   (b) Orthostatic hypotension
   (c) QTc prolongation on ECG
   (d) Reverse dipping on ABPM
   (e) Resting tachycardia by physical assessment
4. What result based on the use of CARTs could confirm definite CAN?
   (a) At least two abnormal results of cardiovascular tests/or two for borderline and three for definite
   (b) At least three abnormal results of cardiovascular tests/or three for borderline and four for definite
   (c) At least one abnormal result of cardiovascular tests/or two for borderline
   (d) At least four abnormal results of cardiovascular tests
   (e) Orthostatic hypotension
5. What signs are needed to undergo CAN testing?
   (a) Orthostatic hypotension
   (b) Resting tachycardia
   (c) QTc prolongation
   (d) Reverse dipping by ABPMA
   (e) All of above
6. List a definition that is true for CAN management and prevention.
   (a) Lifestyle intervention is a basic preventive measure.
   (b) Resting tachycardia can be treated with cardioselective β-blockers.
   (c) Intensive diabetes therapy retards the development of CAN in type 1 diabetes, and intensive multifactorial cardiovascular risk intervention retards the development and progression of CAN in type 2 diabetes.
   (d) Symptomatic orthostatic hypotension should be treated with midodrine or fludrocortisone or a combination of both in nonresponders to monotherapy.
   (e) All answers are correct**.**
7. Patient complains (suffers) from tachycardia and exercise intolerance. After examination anemia was diagnosed. Despite this patient was directed to CAN testing, and CARTs were performed. Results: the deep breathing test—borderline, all others normal. Check the correct answer.
   (a) Possible early CAN
   (b) Definite confirmed CAN
   (c) Severe advanced CAN
   (d) Symptomatic CAN
   (e) Insufficient information for CAN diagnosis
8. By performing the screening of orthostatic symptoms to asymptomatic type 2 diabetic patient, a fall in systolic

blood pressure of 30 mmHg and diastolic of 11 mmHg was found. The patient didn't have any other specific conditions that could lead to orthostatic hypotension. Patient was referred for CAN screening and CARTs were performed: three heart rate test abnormalities were found. What stage of CAN patient suffers from?
(a) Possible early CAN.
(b) Definite confirmed CAN.
(c) Severe advanced CAN.
(d) Symptomatic CAN.
(e) CAN is excluded.

9. Patient with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes mellitus and arterial hypertension had undergone ABPM test. It is also known that patient suffers from obesity and dyslipidemia. The results had shown the presence of reverse dipping. Should this patient be referred for CAN testing?
(a) Of course patient should be referred.
(b) CAN testing is inappropriate.
(c) Yes, he should but in 5 years.
(d) Just if he has clinical signs of CAN.
(e) Yes, but after the normalization of blood pressure profile.
10. Which drugs should include pharmacotherapy of symptomatic orthostatic hypotension by CAN?
(a) Midodrine and/or fludrocortisone
(b) Erythropoietin
(c) Desmopressin acetate
(d) Somatostatin analogues
(e) Nonselective β-blockers

Correct Answers

1. (a) Asymptomatic patients with T2DM at diagnosis and patient with T1DM after 5 years of disease
According to the Consensus of the CAN Subcommittee of the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy, screening for CAN must be performed to asymptomatic patients with type 2 diabetes at diagnosis and type 1 diabetic patients after 5 years of disease, in particular those (but not only) at greater risk for CAN (level B). Screening for CAN may be also required for preoperative risk assessment before major surgical procedure (level C).
2. (e) All listed above
Risk markers for CAN are age, diabetes duration, poor glycemic control, microvascular complications (nephropathy, peripheral polyneuropathy, retinopathy), hypertension, and dyslipidemia (classes I and II). For type 1 diabetic patients, the established risk factor for CAN development is poor glycemic control (class I) and for type 2 is the combination of hypertension, dyslipidemia, obesity, and poor glycemic control (class II).
3. (a) CARTs
Resting tachycardia may reflect diabetic autonomic dysfunction, but it also can reflect sympathetic hyperactivity and/or vagal impairment by some cardiovascular diseases, low physical activity, anemia, and other conditions. Orthostatic hypotension suggests advanced CAN that should be confirmed by CARTs (class I) but after exclusion of other pathophysiological conditions (hypovolemia, deconditioning, influence of some drugs). QTc could be prolonged due to imbalance in cardiac sympathetic innervation, intrinsic metabolic and electrolytic changes, CAD, and genetic factors. Non-dipping and reverse dipping patterns are associated with CAN, as by these conditions vagal activity is impaired with sympathetic predominance during the night and disrupted circadian variation. So resting heart rate is not a specific sign of CAN (class IV), orthostatic hypotension (class III), QTc prolongation (class II), and reverse dipping on ABPM (class III) which are specific but insensitive indices for CAN and require CAN testing. Diagnosis of CAN is based on the use of CARTs, which are considered as the gold standard for clinical autonomic testing: heart rate response to deep breathing (standing), Valsalva maneuver, and blood pressure response to standing (class II, level A).
4. (a) At least two abnormal results of cardiovascular tests/or two for borderline and three for definite
According to the Consensus of the CAN Subcommittee of the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy, the definite or confirmed diagnosis of CAN requires the presence of at least two abnormal cardiovagal test results/or two for borderline and three for definite.
5. (e) All of above
According to the Consensus of the CAN Subcommittee of the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy, all of the listed above clinical findings can alert on the presence of CAN. Especially, orthostatic hypotension suggests an advanced CAN that should be confirmed by CARTs (class I); resting tachycardia is not a specific sign of CAN (class IV), but patients with unexplained tachycardia should undergo CAN testing (level C). Qtc prolongation (class II) alone, as a reverse dipping on ABPM (class III), is an insufficient measure of CAN but should be sign to referral for CAN testing (level B and C accordingly).
6. (e) All answers are correct
According to the existing data, all definitions are correct. Lifestyle intervention is a basic preventive measure (class I) and may improve HRV (level B). Resting tachycardia by CAN can be treated with cardioselective β-blockers (class I). Intensive diabetes therapy retards the development of CAN in type 1 diabetes (level A),

and intensive multifactorial cardiovascular risk intervention retards the development and progression of CAN in type 2 diabetes (level B). Pharmacotherapy of symptomatic orthostatic hypotension should include midodrine (class I, level A) or fludrocortisone (level B) or a combination of both in nonresponders to monotherapy (class II A).

7. (e) Insufficient information for CAN diagnosis
Patient complaints could be explained by anemia. The presence of one abnormal cardiovagal test result identifies the condition of possible or early CAN that should be confirmed over time (level B). As the result was on borderline, it is insufficient for CAN diagnosis. So, patient should undergo CAN testing after treatment of anemia.
8. (c) Severe advanced CAN
According to the Consensus of the CAN Subcommittee of the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy, after exclusion of other causes, orthostatic hypotension suggests an advanced CAN that should be confirmed by CARTs (class I); the presence of orthostatic hypotension in addition to abnormal heart rate test (two or more) identifies severe or advanced CAN.
9. (a) Of course patient should be referred
This patient should be referred to CAN diagnostic tests. There are several reasons to perform screening for CAN: (1) he has established risk factors for CAN development, combination of hypertension, dyslipidemia, and obesity in type 2 diabetes mellitus (class II); (2) diabetes mellitus type 2 is newly diagnosed (level B); and (3) in the presence of reverse dipping, referral for CAN testing is advisable (level C).
10. (a) Midodrine and/or fludrocortisone
Pharmacotherapy of symptomatic orthostatic hypotension should include midodrine (class I) or fludrocortisones or a combination of both in nonresponders to monotherapy (class IIa).

    The first-line medication by orthostatic hypotension is the peripheral selective α_1-adrenergic agonist midodrine (class I, level A). The dosing regimen should be individually tailored (the usual starting dose is 2.5 mg three times daily; most patients are controlled at or below 30 mg per day given in three or four (up to six) divided doses, but a total daily dose of 30 mg should not be exceeded. Fludrocortisone could be the first-choice drug that acts through sodium retention, a direct constricting effect on partially denervated vessels and an increase in the water content of the vessel wall leading to a reduced distensibility. In nonresponders to monotherapy, the combination of midodrine and fludrocortisone should be prescribed.

Glossary

Cardiac autonomic neuropathy chronic complication of diabetes mellitus, is defined as the impairment of autonomic control of the cardiovascular system in the setting of diabetes after exclusion of other causes and is usually documented by using several cardiovascular autonomic reflex tests.

Cardiovascular autonomic reflex tests these tests are considered the gold standard in autonomic testing. Heart rate variations during deep breathing, Valsalva maneuver, and lying-to-standing (HR tests) are indices mainly of parasympathetic function, whereas the orthostatic hypotension, the blood pressure response to a Valsalva maneuver, and sustained isometric muscular strain provide indices of sympathetic function.

Orthostatic hypotension is defined as a fall in BP (i.e., >20 mmHg or more stringent criteria is >30 mmHg for systolic or >10 mmHg for diastolic BP) in response to postural change, from supine to standing.

Non-dipping status a fall in average sleeping blood pressure < 10% from baseline.

Reverse dipping nocturnal hypertension.

References

1. AdaikalakoteswaAri A, Rabbani N, Waspadji S, Tjokroprawiro A, Kariadi SH, Adam JM, Thornalley PJ. Disturbance of B-vitamin status in people with type 2 diabetes in Indonesia-link to renal status, glycemic control and vascular inflammation. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2012;95:415–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.diabres.2011.10.042. PMid:22133652.
2. AIM-HIGH Investigators. The role of niacin in raising high-density lipoprotein cholesterol to reduce cardiovascular events in patients with atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease and optimally treated low-density lipoprotein cholesterol: baseline characteristics of study participants. The Atherothrombosis Intervention in Metabolic syndrome with low HDL/high triglycerides: impact on Global Health outcomes (AIM-HIGH) trial. Am Heart J. 2011;161:538–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ahj.2010.12.007. PMid:21392609 PMCid:PMC3120223.
3. Albers JW, Pop-Busui R. Diabetic neuropathy: mechanisms, emerging treatments, and subtypes. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep. 2014;14:473. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11910-014-0473-5. PMid:24954624.
4. Allman KC, Stevens MJ, Wieland DM, Hutchins GD, Wolfe ER Jr, Greene DA, Schwaiger M. Noninvasive assessment of cardiac diabetic neuropathy by C-11 hydroxyephedrine and positron emission tomography. J Am Coll Cardiol. 1993;22:1425–32. https://doi.org/10.1016/0735-1097(93)90553-D.
5. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes-2014. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(Suppl 1):14–80. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc14-S014. PMid:24357209.
6. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes-2016. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(Suppl 1):1–2. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc16-S001.
7. Anonymous. Assessment: clinical autonomic testing report of the therapeutics and technology assessment Subcommittee of the

American Academy of Neurology. Neurology. 1996;46:873–80. PMid:8618715.
8. Ascaso JF. Advances in cholesterol-lowering interventions. Endocrinol Nutr. 2010;57:210–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.endonu.2010.03.008. PMid:20451478.
9. Balcıoğlu AS, Müderrisoğlu H. Diabetes and cardiac autonomic neuropathy: clinical manifestations, cardiovascular consequences, diagnosis and treatment. World J Diabetes. 2015;6(1):80–91. https://doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v6.i1.80. PMid:25685280 PMCid:PMC4317320.
10. Bang HO, Dyerberg J. The bleeding tendency in Greenland Eskimos. Dan Med Bull. 1980;27:202–5. PMid:7438807.
11. Bauer A, Malik M, Schmidt G, Barthel P, Bonnemeier H, Cygankiewicz I, et al. Heart rate turbulence: standards of measurement, physiological interpretation, and clinical use: international society for holter and noninvasive electrophysiology consensus. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2008;52:1353–65. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2008.07.041. PMid:18940523.
12. Belfort R, Berria R, Cornell J, Cusi K. Fenofibrate reduces systemic inflammation markers independent of its effects on lipid and glucose metabolism in patients with the metabolic syndrome. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2010;95:829–36. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2009-1487. PMid:20061429 PMCid:PMC2840858.
13. Bernardi L. Clinical evaluation of arterial baroreflex activity in diabetes. Diabetes Nutr Metab. 2000;13(6):331–40. 11232758.
14. Bernardi L, Spallone V, Stevens M, Hilsted J, Frontoni S, Pop-Busui R, et al. Methods of investigation for cardiac autonomic dysfunction in human research studies. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2011;27:654–64. https://doi.org/10.1002/dmrr.1224. PMid:21695761.
15. Blum A, Shamburek R. The pleiotropic effects of statins on endothelial function, vascular inflammation, immunomodulation and thrombogenesis. Atherosclerosis. 2009;203:325–30. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2008.08.022. PMid:18834985.
16. Bosch J, Gerstein HC, Dagenais GR, Díaz R, Dyal L, Jung H, et al. n-3 fatty acids and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with dysglycemia. N Engl J Med. 2012;367:309–18. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1203859. PMid:22686415.
17. Boulton AJ, Vinik AI, Arezzo JC, Bril V, Feldman EL, Freeman R, et al. Diabetic neuropathies: a statement by the American Diabetes Association. Diabetes Care. 2005;28:956–62. https://doi.org/10.2337/diacare.28.4.956. PMid:15793206.
18. Burgos LG, Ebert TJ, Assiddao C, Turner LA, Pattison CZ, Wang-Cheng R, Kampline JP. Increased intraoperative cardiovascular morbidity in diabetics with autonomic neuropathy. Anesthesiology. 1989;70:591–7. https://doi.org/10.1097/00000542-198904000-00006. PMid:2929996.
19. Callaghan BC, Cheng HT, Stables CL, Smith AL, Feldman EL. Diabetic neuropathy: clinical manifestations and current treatments. Lancet Neurol. 2012;11:521–34. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1474-4422(12)70065-0.
20. Csányi G, Miller FJ. Oxidative stress in cardiovascular disease. Int J Mol Sci. 2014;15:6002–8. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms15046002. PMid:24722571 PMCid:PMC4013610.
21. DeGrado TR, Hutchins GD, Toorongian SA, Wieland DM, Schwaiger M. Myocardial kinetics of carbon-11-meta-hydroxyephedrine (HED): retention mechanisms and effects of norepinephrine. J Nucl Med. 1993;34:1287–93. PMid:8326386.
22. De Roos B, Mavrommatis Y, Brouwer IA. Long-chain n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids: new insights into mechanisms relating to inflammation and coronary heart disease. Br J Pharmacol. 2009;158:413–28. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1476-5381.2009.00189.x. PMid:19422375 PMCid:PMC2757681.
23. Derosa G, Limas CP, Macías PC, Estrella A, Maffioli P. Dietary and nutraceutical approach to type 2 diabetes. Arch Med Sci. 2014;10:336–44. https://doi.org/10.5114/aoms.2014.42587. PMid:24904670 PMCid:PMC4042055.
24. Desouza CV, Bolli GB, Fonseca V. Hypoglycemia, diabetes, and cardiovascular events. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:1389–94. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc09-2082. PMid:20508232 PMCid:PMC2875462.
25. Dhule SS, Gawali SR. Platelet aggregation and clotting time in type II diabetic males. Natl J Physiol Pharm Pharmacol. 2014;4:121–3. https://doi.org/10.5455/njppp.2014.4.290920131.
26. Dimitropoulos G, Tahrani AA, Stevens MJ. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in patients with diabetes mellitus. World J Diabetes. 2014;6(2):245–58. https://doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.17.
27. Ebbesson SO, Devereux RB, Cole S, Ebbesson LO, Fabsitz RR, Haack K, et al. Heart rate is associated with red blood cell fatty acid concentration: the Genetics of Coronary Artery Disease in Alaska Natives (GOCADAN) study. Am Heart J. 2010;159:1020–5. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ahj.2010.03.001. PMid:20569715 PMCid:PMC2897142.
28. Ewing DJ, Martyn CN, Young RJ, Clarke BF. The value of cardiovascular autonomic function tests: 10 years experience in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1985;8:491–8. https://doi.org/10.2337/diacare.8.5.491. PMid:4053936.
29. Fleg JL, Mete M, Howard BV, Umans JG, Roman MJ, Ratner RE, et al. Effect of statins alone versus statins plus ezetimibe on carotid atherosclerosis in type 2 diabetes: the SANDS (Stop Atherosclerosis in Native Diabetics Study) trial. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2008;52:2198–205. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2008.10.031. PMid:19095139 PMCid:PMC2854549.
30. Fragasso G, Palloshi A, Puccetti P, Silipigni C, Rossodivita A, Pala M, et al. A randomized clinical trial of trimetazidine, a partial free fatty acid oxidation inhibitor, in patients with heart failure. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2006;48:992–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2006.03.060. PMid:16949492.
31. Freeman MR, Newman D, Dorian P, Barr A, Langer A. Relation of direct assessment of cardiac autonomic function with metaiodobenzylguanidine imaging to heart rate variability in diabetes mellitus. Am J Cardiol. 1987;80(2):247–50. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0002-9149(97)00337-8.
32. Freeman R. Clinical practice. Neurogenic orthostatic hypotension. N Engl J Med. 2008;358:615–24. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMcp074189. PMid:18256396.
33. Gaede P, Lund-Andersen H, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Effect of a multifactorial intervention on mortality in type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358:580–91. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0706245. PMid:18256393.
34. González-Ortiz M, Martínez-Abundis E, Robles-Cervantes JA, Ramírez-Ramírez V, Ramos-Zavala MG. Effect of thiamine administration on metabolic profile, cytokines and inflammatory markers in drug-naïve patients with type 2 diabetes. Eur J Nutr. 2011;50:145–9. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00394-010-0123-x. PMid:20652275.
35. Hage FG, Iskandrian AE. Cardiovascular imaging in diabetes mellitus. J Nucl Cardiol. 2011;18:959–65. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12350-011-9431-7. PMid:21785921.
36. Harris WS. Omega-3 fatty acids and cardiovascular disease: a case for omega-3 index as a new risk factor. Pharmacol Res. 2007;55:217–23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phrs.2007.01.013. PMid:17324586 PMCid:PMC1899522.
37. Haupt E, Ledermann H, Köpcke W. Benfotiamine in the treatment of diabetic polyneuropathy-a three-week randomized, controlled pilot study (BEDIP study). Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther. 2005;43:71–7. https://doi.org/10.5414/CPP43071. PMid:15726875.
38. Hilsted J. Catecholamines and diabetic autonomic neuropathy. Diabet Med. 1995;12(4):296–7. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1464-5491.1995.tb00479.x. PMid:7600741.

39. Hoffman RP, Sinkey CA, Anderson EA. Microneurographically determined muscle sympathetic nerve activity levels are reproducible in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. J Diabetes Complicat. 1998;12(6):307–10. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1056-8727(98)00010-5.
40. Ibrahimpasic K. Alpha lipoic acid and glycaemic control in diabetic neuropathies at type 2 diabetes treatment. Med Arch. 2013;67:7–9. https://doi.org/10.5455/medarh.2013.67.7-9. PMid:23678828.
41. International Diabetes Federation. IDF Diabetes Atlas. 7th ed. Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2015.
42. Jeppesen C, Schiller K, Schulze MB. Omega-3 and omega-6 fatty acids and type 2 diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2013;13:279–88. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11892-012-0362-8. PMid:23325534.
43. Kandasamy N, Joseph F, Goenka N. The role of omega-3 fatty acids in cardiovascular disease, hypertriglyceridaemia and diabetes mellitus. Br J Diabet Vasc Dis. 2008;8:121–8. https://doi.org/10.1177/1474651408008030301.
44. Kempler P, editor. Neuropathies. Nerve dysfunction of diabetic and other origin. Budapest: Springer; 1997.
45. Ko SH, Park SA, Cho JH, Song KH, Yoon KH, Cha BY, et al. Progression of cardiovascular autonomic dysfunction in patients with type 2 diabetes: a 7-year follow-up study. Diabetes Care. 2008;31:1832–6. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc08-0682. PMid:18509202 PMCid:PMC2518354.
46. La Rovere MT, Pinna GD, Maestri R, Robbi E, Caporotondi A, Guazzotti G, et al. Prognostic implications of baroreflex sensitivity in heart failure patients in the beta-blocking era. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2009;53(2):193–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2008.09.034. PMid:19130988.
47. Lahrmann H, Cortelli P, Hilz M, Mathias CJ, Struhal W, Tassinari M. EFNS guidelines on the diagnosis and management of orthostatic hypotension. Eur J Neurol. 2006;13:930–6. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1468-1331.2006.01512.x. PMid:16930356.
48. Lee L, Campbell R, Scheuermann-Freestone M, Taylor R, Gunaruwan P, Williams L, et al. Metabolic modulation with perhexiline in chronic heart failure: a randomized, controlled trial of short-term use of a novel treatment. Circulation. 2005;112:3280–8. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.105.551457. PMid:16301359.
49. Low PA. Prevalence of orthostatic hypotension. Clin Auton Res. 2008;18(Suppl 1):8–13. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10286-007-1001-3. PMid:18368301.
50. Low PA, Walsh JC, Huang CY, McLeod JC. The sympathetic nervous system in diabetic neuropathy. A clinical and pathological study. Brain. 1975;98:341–56. https://doi.org/10.1093/brain/98.3.341.
51. Mancia G, De Backer G, Dominiczak A, Cifkova R, Fagard R, Germano G, et al. ESH-ESC Guidelines for the management of arterial hypertension: the task force for the management of arterial hypertension of the European Society of Hypertension (ESH) and of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). J Hypertens. 2007;25(6):1105–87. https://doi.org/10.1097/HJH.0b013e3281fc975a. PMid:17563527.
52. Maser RE, Lenhard MJ. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy due to diabetes mellitus: clinical manifestations, consequences, and treatment. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2005;90:5896–903. https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2005-0754. PMid:16014401.
53. Mogensen UM, Jensen T, Kober L, Kelbaek H, Mathiesen AS, Dixen P, et al. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy and subclinical cardiovascular disease in normoalbuminuric Type 1 diabetic patients. Diabetes. 2012;61:1822–30. https://doi.org/10.2337/db11-1235. PMid:22498696 PMCid:PMC3379682.
54. Morrow DA, Scirica BM, Karwatowska-Prokopczuk E, Murphy SA, Budaj A, Varshavsky S, et al. Effects of ranolazine on recurrent cardiovascular events in patients with non-ST-elevation acute coronary syndromes: the MERLIN-TIMI 36 randomized trial. JAMA. 2007;297:1775–83. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.297.16.1775. PMid:17456819.
55. Moss CJ, Mathews ST. Thiamin status and supplementation in the management of diabetes mellitus and its vascular comorbidities. Vitam Miner. 2013;2:111. https://doi.org/10.4172/vms.1000111.
56. Nagamachi S, Jinnouchi S, Kurose T, Ohnishi T, Flores LG 2nd, Nakahara H, Futami S, Tamura S, Matsukura S. 123I-MIBG myocardial scintigraphy in diabetic patients: relationship with 201Tl uptake and cardiac autonomic function. Ann Nucl Med. 1998;12(6):323–31. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03164921. PMid:9972369.
57. Orchard TJ, LLoyd CE, Maser RE, Kuller LH. Why does diabetic autonomic neuropathy predict IDDM mortality? An analysis from the Pittsburgh Epidemiology of Diabetes Complications Study. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 1996;34(Suppl):S165–71. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-8227(96)90025-X.
58. Ozdemir M, Arslan U, Türkoğlu S, Balcioğlu S, Cengel A. Losartan improves heart rate variability and heart rate turbulence in heart failure due to ischemic cardiomyopathy. J Card Fail. 2007;13:812–7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cardfail.2007.08.002. PMid:18068613.
59. Pop-Busui R. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in diabetes. A clinical perspective. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:434–41. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc09-1294. PMid:20103559 PMCid:PMC2809298.
60. Pop-Busui R, Evans GW, Gerstein HC, Fonseca V, Fleg JL, Hoogwerf BJ, et al. Effects of cardiac autonomic dysfunction on mortality risk in the action to control cardiovascular risk in diabetes (ACCORD) trial. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:1578–84. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc10-0125. PMid:20215456 PMCid:PMC2890362.
61. Power RA, Hulver MW, Zhang JY, Dubois J, Marchand RM, Ilkayeva O, et al. Carnitine revisited: potential use as adjunctive treatment in diabetes. Diabetologia. 2007;50:824–32. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-007-0605-4. PMid:17310372.
62. Prince CT, Secrest AM, Mackey RH, Arena VC, Kingsley LA, Orchard TJ. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy, HDL cholesterol, and smoking correlate with arterial stiffness markers determined 18 years later in type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:652–7. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc09-1936. PMid:20040653 PMCid:PMC2827525.
63. Rhee SY, Kim YS, Chon S, Oh S, Woo JT, Kim SW, Kim JW. Long-term effects of cilostazol on the prevention of macrovascular disease in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2011;91:11–4. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.diabres.2010.09.009. PMid:20934769.
64. Rolim LC, de Souza JST, Dib SA. Tests for early diagnosis of cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy: critical analysis and relevance. Front Endocrinol (Lausanne). 2014;4:173. https://doi.org/10.3389/fendo.2013.00173.
65. Rosengård-Bärlund M, Bernardi L, Fagerudd J, Mäntysaari M, Af Björkesten CG, Lindholm H, FinnDiane Study Group, et al. Early autonomic dysfunction in type 1 diabetes: a reversible disorder? Diabetologia. 2009;52(6):1164–72. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-009-1340-9. PMid:19340407.
66. Santini V, Ciampittiello G, Gigli F, Bracaglia D, Baroni A, Cocconetti E, et al. QTc and autonomic neuropathy in diabetes: effects of acute hyperglycaemia and n-3 PUFA. Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis. 2007;17:712–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.numecd.2006.09.006. PMid:17324562.
67. Schemmel KE, Padiyara RS, D'Souza JJ. Aldose reductase inhibitors in the treatment of diabetic peripheral neuropathy: a review. J Diabetes Complicat. 2010;24:354–60. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jdiacomp.2009.07.005. PMid:19748287.
68. Schnell O, Muhr D, Weiss M, Dresel S, Haslbeck M, Standl E. Reduced myocardial 123I-metaiodobenzylguanidine uptake in newly diagnosed IDDM patients. Diabetes. 1996;45:801–5. https://doi.org/10.2337/diab.45.6.801. PMid:8635656.

69. Serhiyenko VA, Serhiyenko AA. Diabetic cardiac autonomic neuropathy: do we have any treatment perspectives? World J Diabetes. 2015;6(2):245–58. https://doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v6.i2.245. PMid:25789106 PMCid:PMC4360418.
70. Shakespeare CF, Katritsis D, Crowther A, Cooper IC, Coltart JD, Webb-Peploe MV. Differences in autonomic nerve function in patients with silent and symptomatic myocardial ischaemia. Br Heart J. 1994;71:22–9. https://doi.org/10.1136/hrt.71.1.22. PMid:8297687 PMCid:PMC483603.
71. Shin S, Kim KJ, Chang HJ, Lee BW, Yang WI, Cha BS, Choi D. The effect of oral prostaglandin analogue on painful diabetic neuropathy: a double-blind, randomized, controlled trial. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2013;15:185–8. https://doi.org/10.1111/dom.12010. PMid:22974254.
72. Soares-Miranda L, Sandercock G, Vale S, Santos R, Abreu S, Moreira C, Mota J. Metabolic syndrome, physical activity and cardiac autonomic function. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2012;28:363–9. https://doi.org/10.1002/dmrr.2281.
73. Solfrizzi V, Capurso C, Colacicco AM, D'Introno A, Fontana C, Capurso SA, et al. Efficacy and tolerability of combined treatment with L-carnitine and simvastatin in lowering lipoprotein(a) serum levels in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Atherosclerosis. 2006;188:455–61. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2005.11.024. PMid:16384561.
74. Spallone V, Bellarvere F, Scionti L, Maule S, Quadri R, Bax G, et al. Recommendations for the use of cardiovascular tests in diagnosing diabetic autonomic neuropathy. Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis. 2011;21:69–78. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.numecd.2010.07.005. PMid:21247746.
75. Spallone V, Ziegler D, Freeman R, Bernardi L, Frontoni S, Pop-Busui R, et al. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy in diabetes: clinical impact, assessment, diagnosis, and management. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2011;27:639–53. https://doi.org/10.1002/dmrr.1239. PMid:21695768.
76. Staels B. A review of bile acid sequestrants: potential mechanism(s) for glucose-lowering effects in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Postgrad Med. 2009;121(Suppl 1):25–30. https://doi.org/10.3810/pgm.2009.05.suppl53.290. PMid:19494475.
77. Stevens MJ, Dayanikli F, Raffel DM, Allman KC, Sandford T, Feldman EL, et al. Scintigraphic assessment of regionalized defects in myocardial sympathetic innervation and blood flow regulation in diabetic patients with autonomic neuropathy. J Am Coll Cardiol. 1998;31:1575–84. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0735-1097(98)00128-4.
78. Stracke H, Gaus W, Achenbach U, Federlin K, Bretzel RG. Benfotiamine in diabetic polyneuropathy (BENDIP): results of a randomised, double blind, placebo-controlled clinical study. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes. 2008;116:600–5. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-2008-1065351. PMid:18473286.
79. Sytze Van Dam P, Cotter MA, Bravenboer B, Cameron NE. Pathogenesis of diabetic neuropathy: focus on neurovascular mechanisms. Eur J Pharmacol. 2013;719:180–6. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2013.07.017. PMid:23872412.
80. Tandon N, Ali MK, Narayan KM. Pharmacologic prevention of microvascular and macrovascular complications in diabetes mellitus: implications of the results of recent clinical trials in type 2 diabetes. Am J Cardiovasc Drugs. 2012;12:7–22. https://doi.org/10.2165/11594650-000000000-00000. PMid:22217193.
81. Tesfaye S, Boulton AJM, Dyck PJ, Freeman R, Horowitz M, Kempler P, et al. Diabetic neuropathies: update on definitions, diagnostic criteria, estimation of severity, and treatments. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:2285–93. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc10-1303. PMid:20876709 PMCid:PMC2945176.
82. Tesfaye S, Selvarajah D. Advances in the epidemiology, pathogenesis and management of diabetic peripheral neuropathy. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2012;28(Suppl 1):8–14. https://doi.org/10.1002/dmrr.2239. PMid:22271716.
83. Tomassini JE, Mazzone T, Goldberg RB, Guyton JR, Weinstock RS, Polis A, et al. Effect of ezetimibe/simvastatin compared with atorvastatin on lipoprotein subclasses in patients with type 2 diabetes and hypercholesterolaemia. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2009;11:855–64. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1463-1326.2009.01061.x. PMid:19508464.
84. Valensi P, Johnson NB, Maison-Blanche P, Extramania F, Motte G, Coumel P. Influence of cardiac autonomic neuropathy on heart rate dependence of ventricular repolarization in diabetic patients. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:918–23. https://doi.org/10.2337/diacare.25.5.918. PMid:11978691.
85. Valensi P, Pariès J, Attali JR, French Group for Research and Study of Diabetic Neuropathy. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in diabetic patients: influence of diabetes duration, obesity, and microangiopathic complications-the French multicenter study. Metabolism. 2003;52:815–20. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0026-0495(03)00095-7.
86. Valensi P, Extramiana F, Lange C, Cailleau M, Haggui A, Maison Blanche P, et al. Influence of blood glucose on heart rate and cardiac autonomic function. The DESIR study. Diabet Med. 2011;28:440–9. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1464-5491.2010.03222.x. PMid:21204961.
87. Veglio M, Chinaglia A, Cavallo-Perin P. QT interval, cardiovascular risk factors and risk of death in diabetes. J Endocrinol Investig. 2004;27:175–81. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03346265. PMid:15129815.
88. Vincent AM, Calabek B, Roberts L, Feldman EL. Biology of diabetic neuropathy. Handb Clin Neurol. 2013;115:591–606. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-444-52902-2.00034-5. PMid:23931804.
89. Vinik AI, Erbas T. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy. In: Buijs RM, Swaab DF, editors. Handbook of clinical neurology, vol. 117. Edinburgh/London/New York/etc: Elsevier; 2013. p. 279–94. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-444-53491-0.00022-5.
90. Vinik AI, Ziegler D. Diabetic cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy. Circulation. 2007;115:387–97. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.106.634949. PMid:17242296.
91. Vinik AI, Maser RE, Ziegler D. Neuropathy: the crystal ball for cardiovascular disease? Diabetes Care. 2010;33:1688–90. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc10-0745. PMid:20587730 PMCid:PMC2890382.
92. Vinik AI, Maser RE, Ziegler D. Autonomic imbalance: prophet of doom or scope for hope. Diabet Med. 2011;28:643–51. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1464-5491.2010.03184.x. PMid:21569084 PMCid:PMC3123705.
93. Vinik AI, Erbas T, Casellini CM. Diabetic cardiac autonomic neuropathy, inflammation and cardiovascular disease. J Diabetes Investig. 2013;4(1):4–18. https://doi.org/10.1111/jdi.12042. PMid:23550085 PMCid:PMC3580884.
94. Wackers FJ, Young LH, Inzucchi SE, Chyun DA, Davey JA, Barrett EJ, et al. Detection of silent myocardial ischemia in asymptomatic diabetic dubjects: the DIAD study. Diabetes Care. 2004;27:1954–61. https://doi.org/10.2337/diacare.27.8.1954. PMid:15277423.
95. Wanders D, Plaisance EP, Judd RL. Pharmacological effects of lipid-lowering drugs on circulating adipokines. World J Diabetes. 2010;1(4):116–28. https://doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v1.i4.116. PMid:21537437 PMCid:PMC3083894.
96. Witteles RM, Fowler MB. Insulin-resistant cardiomyopathy clinical evidence, mechanisms, and treatment options. J Am Coll Cardiol. 2008;51:93–102. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2007.10.021. PMid:18191731.
97. Ziegler D. Can diabetic polyneuropathy be successfully treated? MMW Fortschr Med. 2010;152:64–8. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03366224. PMid:20384102.
98. Ziegler D, Gries FA, Mühlen H, Rathmann W, Spuler M, Lessmann F. Prevalence and clinical correlates of cardiovascular autonomic

and peripheral diabetic neuropathy in patients attending diabetes centers. Diabete Metab. 1993;19:143–51. PMid:8314418.

99. Ziegler D, Schatz H, Conrad F, Gries FA, Ulrich H, Reichel G. Effects of treatment with the antioxidant alpha-lipoic acid on cardiac autonomic neuropathy in NIDDM patients. A 4-month randomized controlled multicenter trial (DEKAN Study). Diabetes Care. 1997;20:369–73. https://doi.org/10.2337/diacare.20.3.369. PMid:9051389.

100. Ziegler D, Zentai CP, Perz S, Rathmann W, Haastert B, Döring A, Meisinger C. Prediction of mortality using measures of cardiac autonomic dysfunction in the diabetic and nondiabetic population: the MONICA/KORA Augsburg Cohort Study. Diabetes Care. 2008;31:556–61. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc07-1615. PMid:18086873.

Autonomic Visceral Neuropathy and Gastrointestinal Disorders

54

Anne Mohr Drewes, Christina Brock, and Asbjørn Mohr Drewes

Chapter Objectives

- The autonomic nervous system consists of the enteric, parasympathetic and sympathetic nerve systems. In the early stages of autonomic neuropathy, the vagal nerve seems to be the most vulnerable consequently compromising its function.
- Autonomic neuropathy is one of the most burdensome symptoms in patients with diabetes mellitus. It is, however, frequently under-diagnosed.
- In patients with long-standing diabetes, up to 40% suffer from gastrointestinal symptoms.
- Symptoms induced by visceral neuropathy cover the entire gastrointestinal tract and include nausea and vomiting, bloating, early satiety, diarrhoea and constipation.
- Both hyperglycaemic and hypoglycaemic episodes coalesce to form a cumulative indirect cascade which initiates and maintains neuroinflammation in diabetic autonomic neuropathy.

Introduction

The brain-gut axis is a bidirectional nexus of the sensory input from the gastrointestinal (GI) tract and efferent pathways, which is involved in secretion of digestive hormones, homeostatic regulation and gut motility. This axis comprises among others the autonomic nervous system (ANS), comprising the enteric nervous system (ENS) and parasympathetic and sympathetic branches, which have a delicate regulatory interaction. Therefore, the ANS has an essential role, and any dysfunction leads to impaired mediation of visceral regulation. Consequently, damage to the ANS such as development of diabetic autonomic neuropathy (DAN) is one of the most burdensome complications to diabetes, yet frequently under-diagnosed. These complications cause symptoms in the GI tract such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea and constipation; see Fig. 54.1. It is difficult to diagnose DAN, but it may be defined as impaired functions of the involved nerves controlling the involuntary body functions such as the cardiovascular, urinary, pulmonary and digestive systems [1]. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy is a measureable impaired regulation of the heart function, leading to dysrhythmias such as atrial fibrillation, tachycardia and even cardiac arrest [2]. Patients with cardiac autonomic neuropathy develop an impaired adaptability of the heart rate, assessed as reduced heart rate variability [3]; see Chap. 59 for further elaboration. In this chapter we focus upon autonomic gastrointestinal neuropathy in patients with diabetes, explaining the underlying pathophysiology and the symptomatology in the GI tract.

Diabetic autonomic neuropathy could be defined as impaired functions of nerves controlling involuntary body functions.

A. M. Drewes (✉)
Department of Rheumatology, Aarhus University Hospital, Aarhus, Denmark
e-mail: anne@drewes.dk

C. Brock
Department of Rheumatology, Aarhus University Hospital, Aarhus, Denmark

Mech-Sense, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology and Clinical Institute, Aalborg University Hospital, Aalborg, Denmark

A. M. Drewes
Mech-Sense, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology and Clinical Institute, Aalborg University Hospital, Aalborg, Denmark

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_54

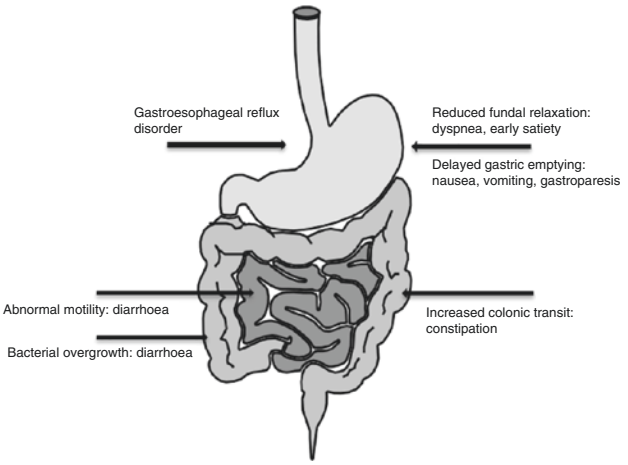


Fig. 54.1 Gastrointestinal disorders related to autonomic neuropathy

Neuropathy in Diabetes Mellitus

Neuropathy can objectively be demonstrated in 40–50% of who are diagnosed with diabetes for >20 years [4]. Recent research has shown that structural changes in endoneuronal capillary morphology and vascular reactivity exist prior to neuropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes [5]. Furthermore, such endoneuronal hypoxia was associated with reductions in nerve conduction velocities. The pathophysiology underlying these findings is however complex and multifactorial and includes neuronal changes within Schwann cells, axons and the microvascular compartment [6]. In addition, several biochemical mechanisms triggered by, e.g. hyperglycaemia or hypoglycaemia also lead to neuropathy, which will be elaborated in this chapter; see Fig. 54.2.

The ENS innervates the gastrointestinal tract, gallbladder and pancreas with motor neurons, sensory neurons and interneurons. ENS controls the fluid transport between the gut and its lumen, local blood flow as well as the gut motility. These functions are maintained as the ENS receive and integrate the incoming information leading to efferent transmission, which regulate the digestive system from the brainstem. Thus, there is a close connection to the central nervous system (CNS) in order to balance physiological demands. Due to the enormous amount of neurones that corresponds closely to the number in CNS, the ENS is by some recognized as the second brain [7, 8]. All these neurones and their interconnections are vulnerable to DAN [9].

The neuronal tissue in the brain might undergo changes as well [10, 11]. Animals where diabetes has been induced showed changes in the CNS. Furthermore, functional brain imaging and electroencephalographic recordings in patients with diabetes confirm functional and structural brain changes [3]. The imaging studies demonstrated mainly microstructural changes in brain areas involved in visceral sensory processing in patient with diabetes and GI symptoms. The encephalographic studies indicated that altered insular processing of sensory stimuli could be the key player in symptom generation. In particular one study found that the deeper the insular electrical source was located, the more GI symptoms the patients experienced [12]. These studies with electroencephalography were often conducted in combination with quantitative sensory testing, and mostly it was found that stimulation of the GI organs induced hyposensitivity. This is in line with patients suffering from somatic diabetic neuropathy where pain and other sensations typically are associated with hypoalgesia to stimulation of the skin. The imaging findings and electrophysiological changes within the brain were associated with GI symptoms in patients with diabetes; therefore they might represent a biomarker for disease severity and hence be a new therapeutic target for neuromodulation or pharmacological therapy [3]. In Fig. 54.3 a conceptual model illustrating the different nerve pathways that may contribute to the GI symptoms in DM is shown.

In the early stages of DAN, alterations in the ENS are masked and difficult to detect. However, the vagal nerve due to its length and widespread appearance is most vulnerable to impaired function, and thus most work regarding DAN characterizes the vagal function [13]. The vagal nerve is the longest of the cranial nerves, and among other functions, it transmits signals from the gut wall receptors, sensitive to chemical and mechanical stimuli, controlling gut motility, secretion and feeding behaviour [14]. Patients with diabetes and GI symptoms experience gastric retention and a delay in transit with segmentation of barium column within the small intestine, which was similar to changes found in patients with vagotomy [15, 16]. It has been shown in animal studies that the presence of glucose-responsive neurons has been identified in the CNS which may alter the vagal efferent activity [17]. Therefore, the systemic changes in blood glucose experienced in both hyper- and hypoglycaemic episodes might have a direct effect on the parasympathetic tone. Increased blood glucose level increases the level of oxidative stress and pro-inflammatory cytokines involved in neuroinflammation. Recent studies have shown that both electrical and pharmacological stimulation of the vagal nerve reduces the level of pro-inflammatory cytokines in both healthy subjects as well as experimental inflammatory and autoimmune diseases [18, 19]. Hence, enhanced vagal tone might activate the cholinergic anti-inflammatory reflex and may have the potential to modulate the immune system [20, 21]. Therefore, it is plausible that enhanced vagal activity might have a protective function on diabetes-induced neuroinflammation. Taken together, the multifaceted mechanisms linked to ENS and ANS explain the variety of symptoms underlying DAN [22].

Fig. 54.2 Structural changes and biochemical mechanism triggered by, e.g. hyperglycaemia or hypoglycaemia may induce visceral neuropathy

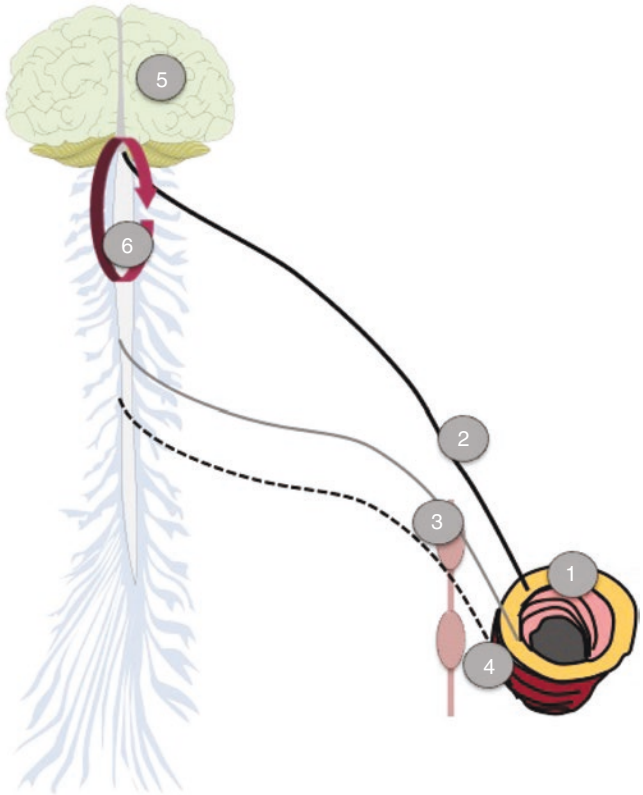


Fig. 54.3 Nerve pathways and mechanisms that may contribute to gastrointestinal symptoms in patients with diabetes mellitus: (1) biochemical, vascular and degenerative changes in the enteric nervous system; autonomic neuropathy that may affect (2) the vagal nerve (black line) and (3) sympathetic pathways (grey line) and indirectly modulate sensations from the gut; (4) affection of visceral (and somatic in case the peritoneum is involved) afferents (dotted line) mediating sensations such as pain; and (5) structural and functional changes in the brain (and spinal cord), together with (6) affection of spino-bulbo-spinal loops

In experimental models of diabetes, reduced levels of neurotrophic support, including insulin-like growth factor and nerve growth factor, have been found. These findings have implicated reduced endoneuronal blood flow and thereby causing neuronal damage. The consequence of such impairment in blood flow also leads to alteration of the nitric oxide metabolism and the Na^+/K^+ ATPase activity [23]. Furthermore, animal studies indicated that a changed Na+/K+ pump function may occur as a result of C-peptide deficiency. This may cause shunting glucose through the polyol pathway leading to increased levels of sorbitol and alteration of nerve excitability recovery cycle, which ultimately leads to neuronal damage [24, 25]. A last mechanism to mention is nerve damage through complement activation, as it has been reported in several peripheral neuropathies [26, 27]. A study on chronic peripheral neuropathy in children found a cell surface deficiency of the protein CD59, which is a complement regulatory protein. Furthermore, sural nerve biopsies from patients with diabetes have shown presence of activated complement proteins and membrane attack complex neoantigen [26]. Complement activation might be a potential new area to investigate when explaining autonomic neuropathy.

The Hyperglycaemia Hypothesis

Consequences of hyperglycaemia are increased intracellular glucose level and cellular toxicity. This glucotoxicity alters cell function in different ways causing increased level of diacylglycerol (which in turn activates protein kinase C) and synthesis of polyols and hexosamines that accumulate intracellularly [28–30]. These metabolic pathways are summarized in Fig. 54.4 and are shortly explained in the following:

A minor branch of glycolysis is the hexosamine biosynthesis pathway, where fructose-6-phosphate converts to glucosamine-6-phosphate, which is a rate-limited enzyme. Hexosamine accumulates intracellularly causing oxidative stress. Secondly, another intracellular metabolic pathway is the polyol. When the polyol pathway is activated, it may cause reduction of Na^+/K^+ ATPase activity and osmotic damage and intracellular oxidative stress [31]. Thirdly, increase in diacylglycerol and protein kinase C pathways is believed to increase the activity of cytosolic phospholipase A2 and produce prostaglandin E_2 as well as other pro-inflammatory mediators, which inhibits cellular (Na^+/K^+) ATPase [32, 33].

The exact mechanism by which these pathways lead to altered cell function is not fully understood, but taken together they coalesce to induce oxidative stress [34]. In the mitochondria, levels of free radicals, such as nitrogen species and superoxide, rise. However, the ability to gather free radicals is reduced because of a reduction of the proton donor nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide [29]. Additionally this mechanism may activate an enzyme, poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase, of great importance to deoxyribonucleic acid

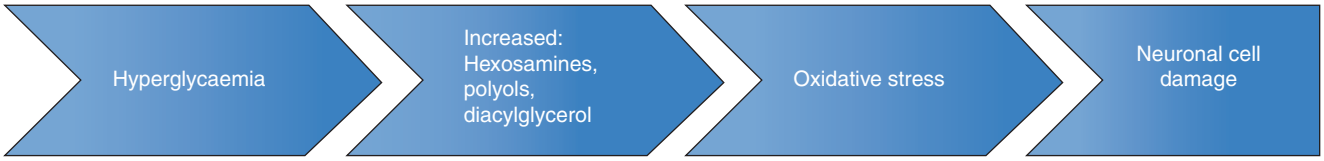


Fig. 54.4 Hyperglycaemia induces an increased level of hexosamines, polyols and diacylglycerol within the cell, which may cause oxidative stress inducing cell damage

repair, and this activation may cause breakup of the deoxyribonucleic acid strands. The consequence of this mechanism is critically low level of adenosine triphosphate in, e.g. Schwann cells, possibly leading to neuronal death [35].

When superoxide level rises, an inhibition of the key enzyme in glycolysis (glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase) is manifest, resulting in enhanced activity in the involved biochemical pathways including further production of polyols, hexosamines, poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase and advanced glycation end products and thereby closing the loop of a vicious cycle [36]. For further reading the following references are recommended: [35–37].

It has been found that the hyperglycaemia theory may be more valid for patients with type 1 than type 2 diabetes. Additionally, a Cochrane review found that improved glucose control prolongs the onset of peripheral sensorimotor neuropathy in type 1 DM, whereas it only had a modest, non-significant relative risk reduction in patients with type 2 DM after a follow-up period of 4 years. On the contrary, when the follow-up period was 15 years for the same cohort, the effect of increased glucose control showed significant risk reduction [38–40]. Even though these studies were conducted on peripheral axons, similar mechanisms are likely present in other nerve tissues, such as the ANS.

Finally the formation of advanced glycation end products contributes to the intracellular non-enzymatic glycation of proteins, in which the extracellular matrix interacts with various receptors and possibly leads to pro-inflammatory gene expression that further amplifies the process [37].

The Influence of Severe Hypoglycaemia

Prolonged and severe hypoglycaemia may result in increased release of excitatory amino acids, which may cause uncontrolled triggering calcium influx. This again activates proteolytic enzymes that are known to cause neuronal damage [41]. Furthermore hypoglycaemic levels of glucose may be counter-regulated through hormones inducing an acute rise in blood viscosity and haematocrit levels, which influences capillary blood flow especially when structural changes of the metabolic pathways and vessel of the neurons are already present [42].

Taken together, the biochemical pathways induced by hyperglycaemia and consequences of hypoglycaemia coalesce to form a cumulative indirect cascade that can initiate and summate neuroinflammation, as is observed in DAN.

Table 54.1 Possible diabetic neuropathy-induced gastrointestinal symptoms

Diabetic neuropathy-induced symptoms
Nausea
Vomiting
Reflux
Gastroparesis
Bloating
Constipation
Diarrhoea

Gastrointestinal Disorders in Diabetes Patients

Diabetic neuropathy may induce gastrointestinal symptoms, which will be elaborated in the following section (see Table 54.1). In several studies patients with diabetes have reported more symptoms originating from the GI tract in comparison to people without diabetes [43–45]. Up to 20% of patients with diabetes have diarrhoea, and up to 60% suffered from constipation [15, 46]. One study reported that long-term type 1 DM was accompanied by increased frequency of upper GI symptoms [47, 48]. On the other hand another study found the prevalence of upper gastrointestinal symptoms, abdominal pain and constipation was not significantly increased [49]. The prevalence of these symptoms varied which could have different explanations. However, due to lack of consensus, the assessment of GI symptoms varies, and thus to ensure consistency between study sites, it has been suggested to use the Diabetes Bowel Symptom Questionnaire in future epidemiological and clinical studies [50].

Gastrointestinal Reflux Disease

Patients with diabetes often suffer from nausea and vomiting [51]. One reason may be autonomic neuropathy-induced gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD), where gastric content into the oesophagus causes complications or symptoms. Symptoms include heartburn and regurgitation.

Clinical findings in GORD may also include laryngitis, chronic cough and bronchospasm [52]. GORD could be seen in patients with DAN due to a hyperglycaemia induced lower oesophageal sphincter pressure and increased amount of transient lower oesophageal sphincter relaxations. Furthermore, studies report that impaired relaxation of the gastric fundus might cause early satiety and dyspeptic symptoms that also influence the symptom pattern in GORD [53].

Patients experiencing reflux should in many cases undergo endoscopy possibly accompanied by biopsy. Acidic and non-acidic content in the oesophagus can be assessed with pH-impedance monitoring, and the swallowing and sphincter functions can be investigated with oesophageal high-resolution manometry, which is especially relevant in diabetic patients where neuropathy is suspected.

Reflux treatment is individual and determined by severity and progress. First of all it is important to avoid provoking factors such as large meals, coffee and alcohol. Symptoms caused by reflux can be treated with proton-pump inhibitors, but occasionally antacids, H_2 blockers or foaming agents are used. However symptoms such as nausea and vomiting are mainly controlled from the brain; therefore it is mandatory to consider dysfunction of the CNS when other causes are ruled out [3]. It is expected that the alterations in the CNS system persist even long after the primary cause (if any) is ruled out.

Gastroparesis

The most common cause of gastroparesis is diabetes, and of all cases of gastroparesis, about one-third originates from diabetes-induced gastroparesis [54, 55]. The cumulative incidence for gastroparesis is approximately 5% for patients with type 1 DM and 1% for type 2 DM [56]. Even though gastroparesis proceeds with the presence of delayed gastric emptying, most research have focused on this topic, as it is present in 30–50% with long-lasting diabetes [57]. The typical patient experiencing symptomatic gastroparesis has a long history of insulin-dependent diabetes and poor glycaemic control lasting for several years. In some cases recent onset of gastroparesis is the only diabetic complication experienced by the patient. Other symptoms may include nausea, vomiting, bloating, early satiety and epigastric pain [58]. Furthermore, gastroparesis predisposes for small intestinal dysfunction in up to 80% of those presented with clinical symptoms, which may lead to small intestinal bacterial overgrowth or interaction between host and gut microbiota [59]. One study investigating the microbiome in patients with type 1 diabetes even indicated that the patients had a decreased diversity, reduced stability and more classified members in their microbiome compared with healthy controls [60].

The detailed anamnesis is crucial when diagnosing a patient with gastroparesis, and validated questionnaires such as the PAGI-SYM are used to assess the patient-reported symptoms [61], from which the Gastroparesis Cardinal Symptom Index (GSCI) can be calculated. To investigate a gastroparetic patient, gastroscopy is often needed to rule out differential diagnosis such as celiac disease, ulcers and cancer. If symptoms resemble those seen after truncal vagotomy (mild gastric dilation, poor to no peristalsis, residual gastric secretions despite a prolonged fast, atonic duodenal bulb and open pylorus), then the diagnosis is straightforward. However a proportion of these patients have no such gastroscopic symptomatology [15, 62]. In such cases motility investigations such as scintigraphy or radiopaque markers are needed [63]. Scintigraphy is in most laboratories the "gold standard" to assess gastric emptying time, where retention of a meal labelled with ^{99m}Tc sulphur colloid is compared to normal reference values [57]. Recently, the wireless motility capsule (such as the SmartPill), which consists of a portable receiver, a wireless transmitting capsule and displaying software, has been taken into use. Following consumption of a standard meal, the participant swallows the capsule, which samples and transmits pressure, pH and temperature data, from which segmental transit times (including gastric emptying time) can be derived [64, 65].

Alternative tests to assess gastric emptying include breath tests which measure the non-radioactive isotope ^{13}C-labelled digestible substance and measure the metabolized isotope in the breath, emptying of radiopaque markers from the stomach by use of fluoroscopy, ultrasonography, ultrasound and the paracetamol absorption test which is valid for gastric emptying of liquid meals [57, 63, 66–69].

The treatment of gastroparesis is challenging, but patients should be encouraged to focus on glycaemic control. Constipation – if present – should also be adequately treated. Furthermore symptoms can be diminished by use of pharmacological agent that increases motility such as erythromycin or (off-label) prucalopride. In theory patients with concomitant functional disorders or bloating may benefit from low fermentable oligo-, di- and monosaccharides and polyol diet (low FODMAP) diet [70]. It is a dietary intervention under investigation in dysmotility disorders, which is why it might benefit diabetic patients with neuropathy-induced dysmotility [71]. Avoidance of these carbohydrates should be global and not individual in order to reduce symptoms, and it is important to recognize that ingestions of FODMAPs are not the cause of the disease but limited intake may represent an opportunity to reduce the patients' symptoms [70]. Another dietary intervention has been studied by Olausson et al. [72]. In this study patients with diabetes mellitus and gastroparesis were to eat a small particle diet. They found that patients on this diet improved in key symptoms such as nausea and vomiting. Furthermore, gastric electrical stimulation has been approved by the US Food and Drug Administration to alleviate symptoms in gastroparesis. The underlying mechanisms are debated, and a growing body of evidence points towards alteration of the

sympatico-vagal balance rather than enhancing gastric motility [73]. Nonetheless, the procedure has shown to decrease both symptom frequency and severity [74]. A potentially new method is stimulation of the vagal nerve during the skin together with deep breathing. This has been shown to increase gastric contractions in healthy volunteers [75], but to date no studies in diabetes exist.

Diarrhoea

Diarrhoea is observed in up to 20% of patients. Diarrhoea can be present as episodic, loose stool consistency and periods with normal bowel function alternating with constipation [15, 59]. The cause of idiopathic diabetic diarrhoea is not known; however the most recognized explanation is shifted sympatico-vagal balance as both sympathectomy and truncal vagotomy can cause diarrhoea. It may be caused by rapid transit or slow transit together with bacterial overgrowth [59, 76]. Even though autonomic neuropathy often induces prolonged transit times, it may also indirectly cause diabetic diarrhoea [15]. Furthermore, a study found that long-standing diabetes was associated with a decrease in number of interstitial cells of Cajal as well as decreased inhibitory innervation and an increase in excitatory innervation causing diarrhoea [77].

Abnormal and dis-coordinated motility of the small bowel may also lead to small intestinal bacterial overgrowth, which potentially also causes diarrhoea [78]. Thirdly faecal incontinence due to *anorectal dysfunction* can be present due to a weakened internal anal sphincter and lowered rectal sensory threshold [79]. Finally, as insulin is a trophic hormone for the acinar and ductal cells in the pancreas, *pancreatic exocrine insufficiency* must be considered, especially when steatorrhoea is found, and as a parallel, patients with pancreatitis may have demolished the visceral nerves [80]. Appropriate test with pancreatic enzyme therapy or pancreatic function tests are recommended.

Diagnosis of neuropathy-induced diarrhoea serves to exclude differential diagnosis that can lead to chronic watery diarrhoea, for example, microscopic colitis or irritable bowel syndrome. If differential diagnosis can be excluded, the diagnosis of idiopathic diabetic diarrhoea can be made (non-specific radiological findings and clinical symptoms) [15].

In order to treat patients with severe and long-lasting diabetic neuropathy-induced diarrhoea, there are four important targets: (1) hydration, nutrient deficiency and correction of electrolyte deficiencies; (2) symptomatic treatment with, e.g. codeine or loperamide, as antidiarrhoeal medication by prolonging transit time and reduction of peristalsis; (3) treatment of underlying causes such as bacterial overgrowth with probiotics/antibiotics; or (4) enzyme supplementation in case of exocrine pancreas insufficiency [81].

Constipation

Motility disorders, more specifically reduced colonic transit time due to dysfunction of the ENS and ANS, lead to constipation [53, 82]. A study investigating the prevalence of constipation in diabetics showed that 60% reported constipation, and thus it is the most commonly reported symptom. Furthermore the same study reported that 76% of the patients suffered from at least one GI symptom [15]. Furthermore reduced bowel motility may result in specific constipation that occasionally leads to overflow incontinence that influences the clinical picture [81]. Of note, 80% of patients with diabetic diarrhoea also suffered from periods with constipation.

Constipation can be evaluated with radiopaque markers, scintigraphy or different capsules as mentioned above and recently reviewed in [64]. In patients with functional gastrointestinal disorders, a reduction in caecal and colonic contractility as well as bloating and distension was associated with excessive fermentation in the caecum assessed as a higher pH drop across the ileocaecal junction [83]. A recent study found that patients with type 1 diabetes had prolonged small bowel transit, colonic transit, gastric emptying and whole-gut transit time compared with healthy controls. Furthermore prolonged colonic transit time in association with an increased fall in pH across the ileocaecal junction was found [65].

Similar findings were shown in a recent paper where the wireless motility capsule was used to show pan-enteric prolongation of gastrointestinal transit times and a more acidic caecal pH, which may represent heightened caecal fermentation in diabetics [65].

Constipation could be due to alterations in the microbiota - or vice versa - however the exact mechanism on how alterations in microbiota influences the colonic motility is unknown. One study indicates that the breakdown of short-chain fatty acids induces acidic milieu and thus modifies motility rhythm in the hindgut [84]. In support of this, animals who received antibiotics were shown to modulate their gut microbiota, which consequently improved their glucose tolerance and sensitivity to insulin [85]. Similar mechanisms are plausible in humans but need yet to be investigated in further detail.

Constipation may be treated conservatively with regular exercise, increased intake of dietary fibres and focus on hydration. Medical interventions may include bulk fibres or osmotic laxatives. Frequently osmotic active drugs are also

used in combination with enemas. The reader is referred to an article by Rao S.C. for further detail [86].

In chronic constipation due to autonomic neuropathy and slow transit, newer drugs such as prucalopride, a selective 5-HT receptor agonist, may prove to be useful as it enhances colonic transit. Furthermore, lubiprostone stimulates secretion of electrolyte secretion and colonic water through activating of type 2 chloride channels in enterocytes. Another plausible target in the future is altering the composition of the microbiota through dietary alterations or faecal transplantation.

Diagnosis of Diabetic Autonomous Neuropathy

The clinician should ideally investigate the GI symptoms as described in section "Constipation" of this chapter. Additionally when gut symptoms arise in patients with diabetes, autonomic neuropathy should always be suspected, especially if the patient also suffers from distal symmetric polyneuropathy. Conventional measures of the autonomic function are indirect methods that rely on cardiovascular reflexes. However the detection of early and subtle abnormalities in the parasympathetic system remains controversial, as the methods are relatively insensitive to sympathetic deficits [1, 87]. Classically, the ANS function has been correlated to recordings of the peroneal nerve [1, 88]. However, these methods are unspecific, invasive and time consuming, which could explain why the most popular and the most utilized are time-domain-derived parameters of heart rate variability or sudomotor reflex testing. One way to measure real-time brainstem vagal efferent activity known as cardiac vagal tone is with the NeuroScope, a non-invasive measurement using ECG electrodes to detect phase shift in the beat-to-beat RR interval, which is described in detail elsewhere [89]. However, diagnosing DAN may be complicated as there is poor association between autonomic function testing and experienced GI symptoms [1].

There is no consensus regarding the optimal test parameters [90–92], and the shortcomings of each method and their interpretation are responsible for the lack of formal diagnosing of DAN. Thus, such diagnosis is frequently delayed, the causes of which are most certainly multifactorial but arguably include the non-specificity of presenting symptoms, the lack of clinician appreciation and the limited availability of specialized diagnostic services. Nevertheless, diagnosis of DAN is important as it has a pivotal role in the pathophysiology of a number of diabetes-induced complications.

Concluding Remarks

Manifest DAN is one of the most burdensome symptoms, yet frequently under-diagnosed. The autonomic neuropathy induces symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, bloating, early satiety, diarrhoea and constipation, which undoubtedly compromise quality of life in these patients. The frequent presence of GI symptoms in patients with diabetes should make the clinician focus on DAN. Conservative and symptomatic treatment should accompany the suspicion of DAN, and if possible the underlying cause should be treated. Ideally treatment should be individualized as the symptom complex differs between patients. New emerging therapies are in pipeline, and future research will undoubtedly result in improvement of the armamentarium clinicians have available for treatment of the severe complications associated with DAN.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. In patients diagnosed with diabetes for >20 years neuropathy can be demonstrated in:
   (a) 0–10%
   (b) 10–20%
   (c) none
   (d) 40–50%
   (e) 70–80%
2. The autonomic nervous system comprises
   (a) The sympathetic, parasympathetic branch
   (b) The enteric nervous system and parasympathetic and sympathetic branches
   (c) The sympathetic branch
   (d) The parasympathetic and enteric nervous system
   (e) The brain, the so-called second brain "the enteric nervous system" and the sympathetic branch
3. In patients with long-standing diabetes, up to how many percentage of the patients suffer from GI symptoms such as nausea and vomiting?
   (a) 10%
   (b) 12%
   (c) 20%
   (d) 25%
   (e) 40%
4. Which part of the gastrointestinal tract can be affected by visceral neuropathy?
   (a) The upper GI tract
   (b) The lower GI tract
   (c) The bowel
   (d) Only the anorectal part of the GI tract

(e) It is possible that the neuropathy cover the entire gastrointestinal tract causing symptoms such as nausea and vomiting, bloating, early satiety, diarrhoea and constipation

5. In order to treat patients with reflux, which statement is most correct?
   (a) The only treatment is avoiding provoking factors such as large meals.
   (b) The only treatment is medical including combinations of antacids and proton-pump inhibitors.
   (c) First of all it is important to avoid provoking factors such as large meals, coffee and alcohol. Symptoms caused by reflux can be treated with antacids, H_2 blockers, proton-pump inhibitors or foaming agents
   (d) Constipation treatment should be the first option.
   (e) Currently no treatment exists.
6. The typical patient experiencing symptomatic gastroparesis is
   (a) A newly diagnosed type 1 diabetic
   (b) A patient with a long history of insulin-dependent diabetes and poor glycaemic control lasting for several years
   (c) A diabetic with extreme alcohol abuse
   (d) A newly diagnosed type 2 diabetic
   (e) A patient with a long history of well-controlled diabetes
7. Hypoglycaemia has been shown to cause cell damage but how?
   (a) It increases levels of NO in the entire body.
   (b) Unhealthy levels of calcium leave the cell.
   (c) Reduction in release of excitatory amino acids protecting the cell
   (d) Increased release of excitatory amino acids, which may cause uncontrolled triggering calcium influx. This again activates proteolytic enzymes that are known to cause neuronal damage
   (e) The production of reactive oxygen species is limited.
8. In order to treat patients with diabetes and diarrhoea, which statement is most correct?
   (a) Hydration, nutrient deficiency and correction of electrolyte, antidiarrhoeal medication to prolonging transit time and reducing peristalsis as well as reducing faecal volume in order to control symptoms. Treatment of underlying cause
   (b) Antidiarrhoeal medication for 1 week
   (c) Hydration, nutrient deficiency and correction of electrolyte and treatment of underlying cause such as bacterial overgrowth which should be treated with antibiotics
   (d) Hydration, nutrient deficiency and correction of electrolyte and treatment of underlying cause such as anorectal dysfunction
   (e) Surgery of the intestines
9. Which of the following statements about the pathophysiological explanation behind visceral neuropathy is most correct?
   (a) Hyperglycaemia is the only main player in inducing oxidative stress.
   (b) Hypoglycaemia is the only main player in pro-inflammatory mechanism.
   (c) Hyperglycaemia and hypoglycaemia are the only main players in inducing neuronal damage.
   (d) Peripheral and autonomic neurons, as well as their interconnections, are particularly vulnerable to hyperglycaemia. It is obvious that any increase in glucose is associated with increased risk of injury to the organ including neuropathy
   (e) Hyperlipidaemia is the main player alone to induce oxidative stress and pro-inflammatory mechanisms.
10. The measurements of GI symptoms have varied in many studies. What should the researcher be aware of in future studies?
   (a) Every patient with gut symptoms should be offered an upper endoscopy locating symptoms.
   (b) Every patient with gut symptoms should be offered an upper endoscopy as well as an colonoscopy to investigate the entire gastrointestinal tract.
   (c) In future epidemiological and clinical studies, the Diabetes Bowel Symptom Questionnaire is suggested as a consistent method to measure GI symptoms
   (d) A computed tomography scan of the body should be conducted in order to cover every symptom in patients with diabetes.
   (e) The variation is unavoidable and must be accepted.

Correct Answers

1. (d) 40–50%
2. (b) The enteric nervous system and parasympathetic and sympathetic branches
3. (e) 40%
4. (e) It is possible that the neuropathy cover the entire gastrointestinal tract causing symptoms such as nausea and vomiting, bloating, early satiety, diarrhoea and constipation
5. (c) First of all it is important to avoid provoking factors such as large meals, coffee and alcohol. Symptoms caused by reflux can be treated with antacids, H_2 blockers, proton-pump inhibitors or foaming agents
6. (b) A patient with a long history of insulin-dependent diabetes and poor glycaemic control lasting for several years

7. (d) Increased release of excitatory amino acids, which may cause uncontrolled triggering calcium influx. This again activates proteolytic enzymes that are known to cause neuronal damage
8. (a) Hydration, nutrient deficiency and correction of electrolyte, antidiarrhoeal medication to prolonging transit time and reducing peristalsis as well as reducing faecal volume in order to control symptoms. Treatment of underlying cause
9. (d) Peripheral and autonomic neurons, as well as their interconnections, are particularly vulnerable to hyperglycaemia. It is obvious that any increase in glucose is associated with increased risk of injury to the organ including neuropathy
10. (c) In future epidemiological and clinical studies, the Diabetes Bowel Symptom Questionnaire is suggested as a consistent method to measure GI symptoms

References

1. Brock C, Brock B, Pedersen AG, Drewes AM, Jessen N, Farmer AD. Assessment of the cardiovascular and gastrointestinal autonomic complications of diabetes. World J Diabetes. 2016;7(16):321–32.
2. Dimitropoulos G, Tahrani AA, Stevens MJ. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in patients with diabetes mellitus. World J Diabetes. 2014;5(1):17–39.
3. Drewes AM, Søfteland E, Dimcevski G, Farmer AD, Brock C, Frøkjær JB, et al. Brain changes in diabetes mellitus patients with gastrointestinal symptoms. World J Diabetes [Internet]. 2016;7(2):14–26. Available from: http://www.pubmedcentral.nih.gov/articlerender.fcgi?artid=4724575&tool=pmcentrez&rendertype=abstract.
4. Sandireddy R, Yerra VG, Areti A, Komirishetty P, Kumar A. Neuroinflammation and oxidative stress in diabetic neuropathy: futuristic strategies based on these targets. Int J Endocrinol. 2014;2014:674987.
5. Ostergaard L, Finnerup NB, Terkelsen AJ, Olesen RA, Drasbek KR, Knudsen L, et al. The effects of capillary dysfunction on oxygen and glucose extraction in diabetic neuropathy. Diabetologia. 2015;58(4):666–77.
6. Vinik AI, Park TS, Stansberry KB, Pittenger GL. Diabetic neuropathies. Diabetologia. 2000;43(8):957–73.
7. Grundy D, Schemann M. Enteric nervous system. Curr Opin Gastroenterol. 2005;21(2):176–82.
8. Powley TL. Vagal input to the enteric nervous system. Gut. 2000;47(Suppl 4):iv30–2; discussion iv36
9. Rudchenko A, Akude E, Cooper E. Synapses on sympathetic neurons and parasympathetic neurons differ in their vulnerability to diabetes. J Neurosci. 2014;34(26):8865–74.
10. Lelic D, Brock C, Softeland E, Frokjaer JB, Andresen T, Simren M, et al. Brain networks encoding rectal sensation in type 1 diabetes. Neuroscience. 2013;237:96–105.
11. Brock C, Softeland E, Gunterberg V, Frokjaer JB, Lelic D, Brock B, et al. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy affects symptom generation and brain-gut axis. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(11):3698–705.
12. Brock C, Graversen C, Frokjaer JB, Softeland E, Valeriani M, Drewes AM. Peripheral and central nervous contribution to gastrointestinal symptoms in diabetic patients with autonomic neuropathy. Eur J Pain. 2013;17(6):820–31.
13. Schönauer M, Thomas A, Morbach S, Niebauer J, Schönauer U, Thiele H. Cardiac autonomic diabetic neuropathy. Diab Vasc Dis Res. 2008;5(4):336–44.
14. Yuan H, Silberstein SD. Vagus nerve and vagus nerve stimulation, a comprehensive review: part III. Headache. 2016;56(3):479–90.
15. Feldman M, Schiller LR. Disorders of gastrointestinal motility associated with diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med [Internet]. 1983;98(3):378–84. Available from: http://www.embase.com/search/results?subaction=viewrecord&from=export&id=L13158511; http://sfxhosted.exlibrisgroup.com/medtronic?sid=EMBASE&issn=00034819&id=doi:&atitle=Disorders+of+gastrointestinal+motility+associated+with+diabetes+mellitus&stitle=ANN.+I.
16. Bennett WA, Berge KG, Sprague RG. The intestinal tract in diabetic diarrhea; a pathologic study. Diabetes. 1956;5(4):289–94.
17. Mizuno Y, Oomura Y. Glucose responding neurons in the nucleus tractus solitarius of the rat: in vitro study. Brain Res. 1984;307(1–2):109–16.
18. Brock C, Brock B, Aziz Q, Moller HJ, Pfeiffer Jensen M, Drewes AM, et al. Transcutaneous cervical vagal nerve stimulation modulates cardiac vagal tone and tumor necrosis factor-alpha. Neurogastroenterol Motil. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1111/nmo.12999.
19. Olofsson PS, Rosas-Ballina M, Levine YA, Tracey KJ. Rethinking inflammation: neural circuits in the regulation of immunity. Immunol Rev. 2012;248(1):188–204.
20. Koopman FA, Chavan SS, Miljko S, Grazio S, Sokolovic S, Schuurman PR, et al. Vagus nerve stimulation inhibits cytokine production and attenuates disease severity in rheumatoid arthritis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A [Internet]. 2016;113(29):8284–9. Available from: http://www.pnas.org/lookup/doi/10.1073/pnas.1605635113; http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27382171; http://www.pubmedcentral.nih.gov/articlerender.fcgi?artid=PMC4961187.
21. Bonaz B, Sinniger V, Pellissier S. Anti-inflammatory properties of the vagus nerve: potential therapeutic implications of vagus nerve stimulation. J Physiol. 2016;594(20):5781–90.
22. Russell JW, Zilliox LA. Diabetic neuropathies. Continuum (Minneap Minn). 2014; 20(5 Peripheral Nervous System Disorders):1226–40.
23. Ekberg K, Johansson B-L. Effect of C-peptide on diabetic neuropathy in patients with type 1 diabetes. Exp Diabetes Res. 2008;2008:457912.
24. Krishnan AV, Kiernan MC. Altered nerve excitability properties in established diabetic neuropathy. Brain. 2005;128(Pt 5):1178–87.
25. Wahren J, Ekberg K, Johansson J, Henriksson M, Pramanik A, Johansson BL, et al. Role of C-peptide in human physiology. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab. 2000;278(5):E759–68.
26. Ghosh P, Sahoo R, Vaidya A, Chorev M, Halperin JA. Role of complement and complement regulatory proteins in the complications of diabetes. Endocr Rev [Internet]. 2015;36(3):272–88. Available from:. https://doi.org/10.1210/er.2014-1099.
27. Flyvbjerg A. Diabetic angiopathy, the complement system and the tumor necrosis factor superfamily. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2010;6(2):94–101.
28. Chowdhury SKR, Smith DR, Fernyhough P. The role of aberrant mitochondrial bioenergetics in diabetic neuropathy. Neurobiol Dis. 2013;51:56–65.
29. Tomlinson DR, Gardiner NJ. Glucose neurotoxicity. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2008;9(1):36–45.
30. Hosseini A, Abdollahi M. Diabetic neuropathy and oxidative stress: therapeutic perspectives. Oxid Med Cell Longev. 2013;2013:168039.
31. Williamson JR, Chang K, Frangos M, Hasan KS, Ido Y, Kawamura T, et al. Hyperglycemic pseudohypoxia and diabetic complications. Diabetes. 1993;42(6):801–13.
32. Cameron NE, Cotter MA, Jack AM, Basso MD, Hohman TC. Protein kinase C effects on nerve function, perfusion, Na(+),

K(+)-ATPase activity and glutathione content in diabetic rats. Diabetologia. 1999;42(9):1120–30.
33. Koya D, King GL. Protein kinase C activation and the development of diabetic complications. Diabetes. 1998;47(6):859–66.
34. Koppen B, Stanton B. Berne & Levy physiology. 6th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby; 2010.
35. Obrosova IG, Drel VR, Pacher P, Ilnytska O, Wang ZQ, Stevens MJ, et al. Oxidative-nitrosative stress and poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) activation in experimental diabetic neuropathy: the relation is revisited. Diabetes. 2005;54(12):3435–41.
36. Edwards JL, Vincent AM, Cheng HT, Feldman EL. Diabetic neuropathy: mechanisms to management. Pharmacol Ther. 2008;120(1):1–34.
37. Sytze Van Dam P, Cotter MA, Bravenboer B, Cameron NE. Pathogenesis of diabetic neuropathy: focus on neurovascular mechanisms. Eur J Pharmacol. 2013;719(1–3):180–6.
38. Callaghan BC, Little AA, Feldman EL, RAC H. Enhanced glucose control for preventing and treating diabetic neuropathy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;6:CD007543.
39. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. The effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the development and progression of long-term complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 1993;329(14):977–86.
40. Linn T, Ortac K, Laube H, Federlin K. Intensive therapy in adult insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus is associated with improved insulin sensitivity and reserve: a randomized, controlled, prospective study over 5 years in newly diagnosed patients. Metabolism. 1996;45(12):1508–13.
41. Perros P, Deary IJ, Sellar RJ, Best JJ, Frier BM. Brain abnormalities demonstrated by magnetic resonance imaging in adult IDDM patients with and without a history of recurrent severe hypoglycemia. Diabetes Care. 1997;20(6):1013–8.
42. Brands AMA, Kessels RPC, de Haan EHF, Kappelle LJ, Biessels GJ. Cerebral dysfunction in type 1 diabetes: effects of insulin, vascular risk factors and blood-glucose levels. Eur J Pharmacol. 2004;490(1–3):159–68.
43. Ricci JA, Siddique R, Stewart WF, Sandler RS, Sloan S, Farup CE. Upper gastrointestinal symptoms in a U.S. national sample of adults with diabetes. Scand J Gastroenterol. 2000;35(2):152–9.
44. Spangeus A, El-Salhy M, Suhr O, Eriksson J, Lithner F. Prevalence of gastrointestinal symptoms in young and middle-aged diabetic patients. Scand J Gastroenterol. 1999;34(12):1196–202.
45. Bytzer P, Talley NJ, Hammer J, Young LJ, Jones MP, Horowitz M. GI symptoms in diabetes mellitus are associated with both poor glycemic control and diabetic complications. Am J Gastroenterol. 2002;97(3):604–11.
46. Vinik AI, Maser RE, Mitchell BD, Freeman R. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(5):1553–79.
47. Schvarcz E, Palmer M, Ingberg CM, Aman J, Berne C. Increased prevalence of upper gastrointestinal symptoms in long-term type 1 diabetes mellitus. Diabet Med. 1996;13(5):478–81.
48. Mjornheim A-C, Finizia C, Blohme G, Attvall S, Lundell L, Ruth M. Gastrointestinal symptoms in type 1 diabetic patients, as compared to a general population. A questionnaire-based study. Digestion. 2003;68(2–3):102–8.
49. Janatuinen E, Pikkarainen P, Laakso M, Pyorala K. Gastrointestinal symptoms in middle-aged diabetic patients. Scand J Gastroenterol. 1993;28(5):427–32.
50. Quan C, Talley NJ, Cross S, Jones M, Hammer J, Giles N, et al. Development and validation of the diabetes bowel symptom questionnaire. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2003;17(9):1179–87.
51. Quigley EM, Hasler WL, Parkman HP. AGA technical review on nausea and vomiting. Gastroenterology. 2001;120(1):263–86.
52. Patti MG. An evidence-based approach to the treatment of gastroesophageal reflux disease. JAMA Surg. 2016;151(1):73–8.
53. Yarandi SS, Srinivasan S. Diabetic gastrointestinal motility disorders and the role of enteric nervous system: current status and future directions. Neurogastroenterol Motil. 2014;26(5):611–24.
54. Camilleri M, Parkman HP, Shafi MA, Abell TL, Gerson L. Clinical guideline: management of gastroparesis. Am J Gastroenterol. 2013;108(1):18–37; quiz 38.
55. Parkman HP, Hasler WL, Fisher RS. American Gastroenterological Association technical review on the diagnosis and treatment of gastroparesis. Gastroenterology. 2004;127(5):1592–622.
56. Jung H-K, Choung RS, Locke GR 3rd, Schleck CD, Zinsmeister AR, Szarka LA, et al. The incidence, prevalence, and outcomes of patients with gastroparesis in Olmsted County, Minnesota, from 1996 to 2006. Gastroenterology. 2009;136(4):1225–33.
57. Ma J, Rayner CK, Jones KL, Horowitz M. Diabetic gastroparesis: diagnosis and management. Drugs. 2009;69(8):971–86.
58. Waseem S, Moshiree B, Draganov PV. Gastroparesis: current diagnostic challenges and management considerations. World J Gastroenterol. 2009;15(1):25–37.
59. Phillips LK, Rayner CK, Jones KL, Horowitz M. An update on autonomic neuropathy affecting the gastrointestinal tract. Curr Diab Rep. 2006;6(6):417–23.
60. Giongo A, Gano KA, Crabb DB, Mukherjee N, Novelo LL, Casella G, et al. Toward defining the autoimmune microbiome for type 1 diabetes. ISME J. 2011;5:82–91.
61. Revicki DA, Rentz AM, Dubois D, Kahrilas P, Stanghellini V, Talley NJ, et al. Development and validation of a patient-assessed gastroparesis symptom severity measure: the gastroparesis cardinal symptom index. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2003;18(1):141–50.
62. Zitomer BR, Gramm HF, Kozak GP. Gastric neuropathy in diabetes mellitus: clinical and radiologic observations. Metabolism. 1968;17(3):199–211.
63. Olausson EA, Brock C, Drewes AM, Grundin H, Isaksson M, Stotzer P, et al. Measurement of gastric emptying by radiopaque markers in patients with diabetes: correlation with scintigraphy and upper gastrointestinal symptoms. Neurogastroenterol Motil. 2013;25(3):e224–32.
64. Gronlund D, Poulsen JL, Sandberg TH, Olesen AE, Madzak A, Krogh K, et al. Established and emerging methods for assessment of small and large intestinal motility. Neurogastroenterol Motil. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1111/nmo.13008.
65. Farmer AD, Pedersen AG, Brock B, Jakobsen PE, Karmisholt J, Mohammed SD, et al. Type 1 diabetic patients with peripheral neuropathy have pan-enteric prolongation of gastrointestinal transit times and an altered caecal pH profile. Diabetologia. 2017;60(4):709–18.
66. Saad RJ, Hasler WL. A technical review and clinical assessment of the wireless motility capsule. Gastroenterol Hepatol (N Y). 2011;7(12):795–804.
67. Lee JS, Camilleri M, Zinsmeister AR, Burton DD, Kost LJ, Klein PD. A valid, accurate, office based non-radioactive test for gastric emptying of solids. Gut. 2000;46(6):768–73.
68. Medhus AW, Lofthus CM, Bredesen J, Husebye E. Gastric emptying: the validity of the paracetamol absorption test adjusted for individual pharmacokinetics. Neurogastroenterol Motil. 2001;13(3):179–85.
69. Sangnes DA, Søfteland E, Biermann M, Gilja OH, Thordarson H, Dimcevski G. [Gastroparesis - causes, diagnosis and treatment]. Tidsskr den Nor lægeforening Tidsskr Prakt Med ny række [Internet]. 2016;136(9):822–6. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27221182.
70. Gibson PR, Shepherd SJ. Evidence-based dietary management of functional gastrointestinal symptoms: the FODMAP approach. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2010;25(2):252–8.
71. Parrish CR. Nutritional considerations in the patient with gastroparesis. Gastroenterol Clin North Am [Internet]. 2015;44(1):83–95. Available from:. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gtc.2014.11.007.
72. Olausson EA, Storsrud S, Grundin H, Isaksson M, Attvall S, Simren M. A small particle size diet reduces upper gastrointesti-

nal symptoms in patients with diabetic gastroparesis: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Gastroenterol. 2014;109(3):375–85.
73. Frokjaer JB, Ejskjaer N, Rask P, Andersen SD, Gregersen H, Drewes AM, et al. Central neuronal mechanisms of gastric electrical stimulation in diabetic gastroparesis. Scand J Gastroenterol. 2008;43(9):1066–75.
74. Buckles DC, Forster J, McCallum RW. The treatment of gastroparesis in the age of the gastric pacemaker: a review. MedGenMed. 2003;5(4):5.
75. Frokjaer JB, Bergmann S, Brock C, Madzak A, Farmer AD, Ellrich J, et al. Modulation of vagal tone enhances gastroduodenal motility and reduces somatic pain sensitivity. Neurogastroenterol Motil. 2016;28(4):592–8.
76. Drewes VM. Mechanical and electrical activity in the duodenum of diabetics with and without diarrhea. Pressures, differential pressures and action potentials. Am J Dig Dis. 1971;16(7):628–34.
77. He CL, Soffer EE, Ferris CD, Walsh RM, Szurszewski JH, Farrugia G. Loss of interstitial cells of cajal and inhibitory innervation in insulin-dependent diabetes. Gastroenterology. 2001;121(2):427–34.
78. Rezaie A, Pimentel M, Rao SS. How to test and treat small intestinal bacterial overgrowth: an evidence-based approach. Curr Gastroenterol Rep. 2016;18(2):8.
79. Wald A. Incontinence and anorectal dysfunction in patients with diabetes mellitus. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 1995;7(8):737–9.
80. Poulsen JL, Olesen SS, Malver LP, Frokjaer JB, Drewes AM. Pain and chronic pancreatitis: a complex interplay of multiple mechanisms. World J Gastroenterol. 2013;19(42):7282–91.
81. Krishnan B, Babu S, Walker J, Walker AB, Pappachan JM. Gastrointestinal complications of diabetes mellitus. World J Diabetes. 2013;4(3):51–63.
82. Camilleri M, Malagelada JR. Abnormal intestinal motility in diabetics with the gastroparesis syndrome. Eur J Clin Invest. 1984;14(6):420–7.
83. Arora Z, Parungao JM, Lopez R, Heinlein C, Santisi J, Birgisson S. Clinical utility of wireless motility capsule in patients with suspected multiregional gastrointestinal dysmotility. Dig Dis Sci. 2015;60(5):1350–7.
84. Jones KL, Russo A, Stevens JE, Wishart JM, Berry MK, Horowitz M. Predictors of delayed gastric emptying in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2001;24(7):1264–9.
85. Carvalho BM, Guadagnini D, Tsukumo DML, Schenka AA, Latuf-Filho P, Vassallo J, et al. Modulation of gut microbiota by antibiotics improves insulin signalling in high-fat fed mice. Diabetologia. 2012;55(10):2823–34.
86. Rao SSC. Constipation: evaluation and treatment of colonic and anorectal motility disorders. Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am. 2009;19(1):117–39.
87. Wieling W, Borst C, van Dongen Torman MA, van der Hofstede JW, van Brederode JF, Endert E, et al. Relationship between impaired parasympathetic and sympathetic cardiovascular control in diabetes mellitus. Diabetologia. 1983;24(6):422–7.
88. Ewing DJ, Burt AA, Williams IR, Campbell IW, Clarke BF. Peripheral motor nerve function in diabetic autonomic neuropathy. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 1976;39(5):453–60.
89. Farmer AD, Coen SJ, Kano M, Naqvi H, Paine PA, Scott SM, et al. Psychophysiological responses to visceral and somatic pain in functional chest pain identify clinically relevant pain clusters. Neurogastroenterol Motil. 2014;26(1):139–48.
90. Spallone V, Ziegler D, Freeman R, Bernardi L, Frontoni S, Pop-Busui R, et al. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy in diabetes: clinical impact, assessment, diagnosis, and management. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2011;27(7):639–53.
91. Tesfaye S, Boulton AJM, Dyck PJ, Freeman R, Horowitz M, Kempler P, et al. Diabetic neuropathies: update on definitions, diagnostic criteria, estimation of severity, and treatments. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(10):2285–93.
92. Bernardi L, Spallone V, Stevens M, Hilsted J, Frontoni S, Pop-Busui R, et al. Methods of investigation for cardiac autonomic dysfunction in human research studies. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2011;27(7):654–64.

Further/Suggested Reading

Brock C, Brock B, Pedersen AG, Drewes AM, Jessen N, Farmer AD. Assessment of the cardiovascular and gastrointestinal autonomic complications of diabetes. World J Diabetes 2016;7(16):321–32. This article is recommend as further reading if one is interested in knowing more about the cardiovascular system and the gastrointestinal tract in relation to DAN.

Feldman M, Schiller LR. Disorders of gastrointestinal motility associated with diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med 1983;98(3):378–84. Provides an overview of gastrointestinal symptoms in patients with diabetes.

Rayner CK, Samsom S, Jones KL, Horowitz M. Relationships of upper gastrointestinal motor and sensory function with glycemic control. Diabetes Care 2001;24(2):371–81. A great article to read if you wish to know more about the effect of acute change in blood glucose toward the upper gastrointestinal tract.

Sangnes DA, Søfteland E, Biermann M, Gilja OH, Thordarson H, Dimcevski G. Gastroparesis- causes, diagnosis and treatment. Tidsskr Nor Laegeforen 2016; 136(9):822–6. https://doi.org/10.4045/tidsskr.15.0503. This article provides a thorough knowledge about gastroparesis including in relation to diabetes.

Urologic Complications in Patients with Diabetes

55

Stephania Casco, Jose Carlos Arroyo-Kuribreña, and Elena Soto-Vega

Introduction

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a group of metabolic diseases associated with high glucose levels that cause systemic long-term damage, dysfunction, and failure of several tissues [2]. Among the consequences of this chronic hyperglycemic state, patients with DM suffer several urologic complications that involve endothelial and neural damage all along the genitourinary tract with significant economical and quality of life costs.

The worldwide incidence of urologic complications associated with DM is increasing because of the high incidence of obesity in the entire world [64]. The effect of obesity in our society is growing at a worrying rate, and it is associated with an increasing risk of non-insulin-dependent diabetes. Clinicians have the opportunity to prevent, diagnose, and change the evolution of these urologic complications among patients with diabetes by maintaining a proper weight [57].

Diabetes has been associated with an earlier presentation and increased severity of urologic complications [46]. DM leads to nerve function disturbance, loss of innervation of neuromuscular nerve terminals, abnormal immune response, and altered sympathetic/parasympathetic innervation [13]. Therefore, peripheral accumulations of fat in the abdominal region of patients with diabetes have been associated with an increased risk of urologic complications such as urinary incontinence, erectile dysfunction, benign prostatic hyperplasia, and urinary tract infections and possibly with cancer [57].

S. Casco
Departamento de Ciencias de la Salud, Universidad Popular Autónoma del Estado de Puebla, Puebla, Mexico

J. C. Arroyo-Kuribreña
Hospital Ángeles de Puebla, Puebla, Mexico

E. Soto-Vega (✉)
Departamento de Ciencias de la Salud, Universidad Popular Autónoma del Estado de Puebla, Puebla, Mexico

Centro de Investigación Oncológica, Una Nueva Esperanza-UPAEP, Puebla, Mexico
e-mail: elena.soto01@upaep.mx

Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction

Bladder Dysfunction (BD) and Cystopathy

Some bladder symptoms occurring in patients with DM are known as diabetic bladder dysfunction or diabetic cystopathy, which include lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS), and are characterized by increased post-voiding residual volume due to inadequate bladder emptying, causing an increased bladder capacity, worsened by reduced bladder sensation and contraction [34].

Almost half of patients with DM suffer from different degrees of BD (74% men and 59.26% women), which causes an increased post-void residual urine and urinary incontinence, causing infections, bladder stones, or eventually kidney damage [47]. In men, bladder disorders are worsened by the age-associated increase in prostate volume.

Obese and diabetic women are expected to have more pelvic floor disorders, such as stress urinary incontinence and overactive bladder [46] which could be related to increased abdominal pressure by the abdominal panniculus exerting unwanted pressure on the pelvic organs, uterus, bladder, urethral sphincters, and vagina [57], peripheral neuropathy, and loss of bladder support. Insulin treatment of women with DM increases the risk of urge incontinence, in comparison with women treated with metformin, which does not have any effect on incontinence [11, 45].

Bladder hypersensitivity is reported as the most frequent finding, ranging from 39% to 61% in DM patients in numerous clinical studies [34]. Even more, an important predictor of bladder dysfunction is the presence of peripheral neuropathy, nephropathy, and the association of metabolic syndrome [46].

Pathophysiology

During the early stages of diabetic cystopathy, there is an increase in bladder storage capacity, which affects its compliance or ability to adapt to the building pressure as the bladder fills [51]. Several mechanisms that induce abnormalities in bladder function have been described at the level of the detru-

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_55

sor muscle, including changes in intracellular connections and excitability, density of muscarinic receptors, genetic traits, and changes in intracellular signaling (Zhengyong et al. 2015). All of these contributing factors result in diminished contractility and increase of the post-void residual volume. Compensatory bladder hypertrophy causes further bladder instability that diminishes its contraction strength because of collagen deposits, making tightening of the detrusor muscle ineffective [51]. Another theory is the associated increase in diuresis due to the hyperglycemic status resulting in neural and endothelial damage, which can collectively lead to hypertrophy of the detrusor muscle in an attempt to adapt to these changes. On the other hand, abnormalities in the calcium and potassium cellular wall channels increase the activity of the detrusor muscle and further overactivity [20]. In addition, rabbit models have shown that aldose reductase overexpression and increase in lipid peroxidation products result in diminished detrusor contractility [16].

Another issue influencing bladder hypertrophy could be an increase in oxidative stress, associated with further damage to the bladder muscles [65] or induced by an axonal transport deficiency of neural growth factor (NGF). Bladder tissue remodeling is also associated with downregulation of tissue growth factor (TGF) and collagen mRNA levels, which induce an increase in elastin synthesis. These factors may result in an increase in bladder compliance in patients with diabetes associated with reduction in collagen synthesis [38].

Neuronal control of bladder function consists of an interaction between autonomic sympathetic and parasympathetic, and somatic afferent and efferent pathways. Patients with diabetic cystopathy present somatic and autonomic neuropathy. Furthermore, cells under long periods of exposure to hyperglycemia undergo accumulation of oxidative stress products, causing axonal degeneration and nerve damage, decreasing nerve conduction, and triggering diabetic cystopathy and erectile dysfunction [7]. In addition, decreased sensation of bladder filling, produced by nerve damage, may cause over-distention and further hypocontractility of the bladder wall in diabetic patients. Diabetic cystopathy also involves neuropathic changes, produced by hyperexcitability of urethral afferent reflex, leading to dysfunction of the external urethral sphincter and reducing urethral smooth muscle relaxation with obstruction to the outflow of urine.

Long-standing diabetes also affects the peristaltic function of the ureters by interfering with ureteral muscle cells and nerve function, causing upper urinary tract dysfunction, urine stasis, and eventually formation of kidney stones [13]. The micturition reflex is a neural stimulus controlled by M2 and M3 receptors. Patients with diabetes have higher numbers of muscarinic receptors in the urothelium which increase the sensory nerve activity, modifying the detrusor contraction, causing further bladder dysfunction and urine stasis [20].

Clinical Manifestations

In the early stages of diabetic bladder, compensatory changes maintain the capacity to sustain a normal dieresis. In later stages, decreased micturition pressure and increasing urethral obstruction lead to larger volumes of post-void residual urine, producing a wide variety of symptoms which vary from urge micturition and incontinence (a sensation of imminent urine outflow) (risk of 40–80%) to the most severe expression of overflow incontinence (in which the bladder empties because of excessive residual urine without the patient's control) [12]. Diabetic patients complain of lower urinary tract symptoms, including urgency; difficulties to begin, maintain, and finish micturition; inadequate emptying or sensation of residual urine; frequent micturitions during the day- and nighttime; and slow or diminished urine flow of different levels of severity. Consequently, voiding reflexes seem to be diminished or inactive causing progressive asymptomatic increase in bladder capacity, which can eventually cause urinary retention, bladder stone formation, diverticula, infection, upper urinary tract dilation, and kidney damage. In contrast, diabetic bladder dysfunction can also present as overactive bladder syndrome with the corresponding frequent bladder emptying during the day- and at nighttime, urgency, and lower urinary tract symptoms. Hypersensitivity and hypercontractility of the bladder are more common than hypocontractility [34].

Diabetic cystopathy and bladder dysfunction are common in long-standing diabetic patients. They could be asymptomatic or manifest a broad spectrum of clinical symptoms, ranging from voiding complaints due to overactive bladder and urge incontinence due to decreased bladder sensation to overflow incontinence and acute urinary retention [46]. Bladder symptoms can be divided into irritative and obstructive. Irritative symptoms involve overexcited detrusor muscle, causing urgency, pollakiuria, nocturia, and urgency incontinence, known as overactive bladder syndrome. Obstructive symptoms include decreased size and strength of the voiding flow, terminal dribbling, decreased sensation of a full bladder, and high post-void residual urine. Obstructive symptoms are related to a pseudo-obstructive bladder, represent the last phase of visceral diabetic neuropathy, and are associated with low urine flow that can be demonstrated with uroflowmetry, high post-mictional residue, and urodynamic studies, which show an hypotonic bladder in the cystometry caused by a myogenic alteration of the neuronal and microvasculature [23, 51].

Diagnosis

The study approach of diabetic cystopathy depends on individual patient symptoms, severity, renal function, and impact on quality of life. In patients with symptoms of bladder dysfunction, clinicians should perform a detailed clinical history including the international prostate symptom score in males, physical examination with neurologic reflex, and rectal exam,

followed by laboratory work-up tests to assess renal function (serum creatinine), infections (urine exam), and clinical chemistry. Urodynamic evaluation is an essential component of examination. Although not indicated in all cases, includes cystometrogram, simultaneous studies of flow and pressure, sphincter electromyography and post-void residue measurement [34]. Diabetic women have significantly higher nocturia scores in lower urinary tract symptom questionnaires, with weaker urinary streams, reduced voided volumes, increased residual urine volumes, and lower maximal flow rates by uroflowmetry [46].

Treatment

The first step in the management of any type of diabetes complications is blood glucose control. Treatment for diabetic cystopathy depends on the severity of symptoms, but in early stages, it is basically conservative, and in case of complications, they should be treated accordingly [52]. In patients complaining of urgency, different types of first-line therapy are available, in order to control the hyperactivity of the detrusor, including oral muscarinic drugs and more uroselective anticholinergics with less adverse effects (oxybutynin, tolterodine, darifenacin, or solifenacin). Infiltration of the detrusor muscle with botulinum toxin has proven to diminish urgency incontinence. A surgical approach could be offered in severe cases of urgency incontinence not resolved with muscarinic selective anticholinergics, which includes bladder denervation, myomectomy, and bladder augmentation with ileal cystoplasty. All of them are associated with the risk of increasing post-void volume, urinary tract infection, kidney damage, and stone formation [52].

In males with added bladder outlet obstruction associated with prostate enlargement, initial treatment includes the use of alpha-blockers such as terazosin, tamsulosin, and alfuzosin. In advanced stages, transurethral resection of the prostate could be considered. A recently approved β3 adrenergic agonist (mirabegron) which increases the urine storage capacity, through direct detrusor smooth muscle relaxation, can be used to provide a rapid relief of symptoms [1, 17].

In cases of failure of bladder emptying, frequent clean intermittent catheterization is the best option to avoid the permanent use of indwelling catheters, because of the risk of increased infection rate, lower urinary tract lithiasis, and epidermoid bladder carcinoma [25]. In patients with urinary urge incontinence as the main symptom, anticholinergics, schedule voiding, and Kegel exercises to strengthen pelvic floor muscles may improve the quality of life.

Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia (BPH) and Urethral Obstruction

Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) is an age-related phenomenon that affects up to 50% of men aged 60–69 years and almost 90% at age 90 [69]. DM is frequently associated with BPH due to the same age of incidence [6]. BPH has been largely associated with metabolic disorders including diabetes, metabolic syndrome, obesity, and hypertension. Preclinical and clinical studies have shown that increased plasma insulin levels are positive independent predictors of BPH, as well as high fasting glucose level and hyperlipidemia; all of them have shown a positive correlation to the progression of BPH [18, 19, 31].

Pathophysiology

Several theories have been proposed in the pathogenesis of BPH. The most convincing however is that prolonged chronic ischemia and repeated ischemia-reperfusion injury in the bladder could generate oxidative stress, which increases sympathetic nerve activity and vascular damage; further hypoxia of the bladder and prostate; and abnormal cell proliferation, in addition to an increase of lower urinary tract symptoms [69]. Endothelial dysfunction and nitric oxide (NO) deficiency are among the most important factors in the development of diabetic complications, affecting the lower urinary tract as well. Relaxation of the urethral sphincter is partially affected by NO, which in turn causes outflow obstruction and hyperexcitability of afferent neurons associated with progression of diabetes [72]. All these factors, in addition to the increased risk of overactive bladder in diabetic patients, are closely related to peripheral nerve irritation [75]. Another possible explanation for the presence of BPH in diabetic patients involves insulin-like growth factor (IGF). Beta cells of patients with type 2 diabetes secrete higher concentrations of insulin; the resulting hyperinsulinemia stimulates IGF synthesis. Activation of the prostate IGF receptors may also cause prostate growth [44, 74] which could be explained because of homology of insulin and IGF receptors [73] and cross-activity to insulin action [29, 50].

The pathogenesis of BPH is multifactorial and characterized by basal cell hypertrophy, secretory alterations of laminal cells, infiltration of lymphocytes with production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, stromal proliferation, diminished apoptosis, trans-differentiation and extracellular matrix production, abnormal autonomous innervation, and modification of the neuroendocrine cell function among others [69]. Disturbances in fatty acid metabolism are also influential in the progression of BPH, including inflammation, oxidative stress, peroxidation of lipids and accumulation of 8-hydroxy-2′-deoxyguanosine, and increased androgen synthesis [68].

Clinical Manifestations

Initially, patients with BPH complain of symptoms of LUTS (which already mentioned includes nocturia, frequency, urgency, weakened stream, hesitancy, intermittency, straining, and a sense of incomplete emptying) [27]. Progressive evolution toward complications in the urinary tract is more

important than symptoms related to micturition. They are significant and include bleeding, lithiasis, renal insufficiency, and infections [54], but the most serious and painful manifestation is acute urinary retention, the inability to urinate, characterized by intense pain in the pelvis [41].

Diagnosis

Evaluation of BPH in diabetic patients includes a detailed medical history, including LUTS questions, severity, and influence in their quality of life. The American Urological Association Symptoms Index (AUA-SI) is a questionnaire that allows physicians to quantify symptoms at diagnosis and over time in response to treatment. Digital rectal examination should be included in the physical examination. PSA (prostate-specific antigen), urinalysis, and frequency/volume chart may be filled as well as uroflowmetry, post-void residual ultrasound, and renal ultrasound in order to diagnose complications [27].

Treatment

To avoid complications, effective and conservative drug treatment for BPH is currently available. Patients with a small prostate are routinely treated with alpha-1 blocker monotherapy as first-line therapy, either with nonselective blockers such as doxazosin and terazosin or uroselective blockers like tamsulosin, alfuzosin, and silodosin. All of them have similar effectiveness but diverse side effect profiles. Characteristic side effects include postural hypotension, dizziness, rhinitis, asthenia, sexual dysfunction, and abnormal ejaculation. Storage and voiding symptoms improve briefly after initiation of treatment. Alpha-1 blockers do not prevent BPH progression [54]. For that reason, prostate volume and symptom progression should be monitored during the follow-up of the patient [27, 56].

In patients with a small prostate associated with voiding symptoms, the diagnosis of overactive bladder should be considered and treated as previously mentioned with anticholinergics, keeping in mind the need to monitor by dynamic bladder ultrasound the possibility of urinary retention, even though the risk is low.

In patients with enlarged prostate (over 30–40gr), the use of alpha-1 blockers in combination with an alpha 5 reductase inhibitor (finasteride or dutasteride) that blocks the conversion of dihydrotestosterone from testosterone is highly recommended, in order to diminish the prostate volume at long term with a faster effect on the relaxation of the bladder neck. In case of failure with all these therapies, the surgical approach is the next option. Transurethral resection of the prostate is the gold standard, but newer techniques such as bipolar resection and the use of laser vaporization, botox infiltration, cryotherapy, and high-intensity focused ultrasound among others, represent less invasive approaches than open adenomectomy [41, 56].

Sexual Dysfunction

Men and women with diabetes are affected by sexual dysfunctions, which are defined as the inability to achieve or maintain an adequate sexual response to complete a sexual encounter or intercourse resulting in a satisfactory orgasmic sensation. Sexual dysfunctions include disorders of libido, ejaculatory problems, orgasmic abnormalities, and erectile dysfunction. The reported prevalence of sexual dysfunction in men with type 2 diabetes is up to 46%. Sexual dysfunction in women is harder to diagnose, but it has been proposed that its prevalence in type 1 diabetes is 71% and 42% in females with type 2 diabetes [28, 61].

Almost half of non-sexually active men and women with type 2 diabetes report that their sexual life does not fulfill their sexual needs, suggesting that they are more concerned and even more distressed than sexually active patients. Commonly women argue that lack of sexual activity is related to a number of reasons, including lack of interest, physical problems that make it difficult or unpleasant, absence of partner, or having a partner with physical limitations [5].

Sexual dysfunctions involve a group of alterations that affect significantly the quality of life of these patients and include reduced desire, decreased arousal, orgasmic abnormalities, and painful intercourse [26].

Leading risk factors that further affect diabetic men and women include age, length of diabetes [5], co-medications, obstetric history, neurogenic and vascular complications, and infections among others.

Erectile Dysfunction (ED)

It is defined as a long-term, persistent inability to achieve or maintain an adequate rigid erection in order to have a satisfactory sexual encounter, and it is the third most frequent complication of diabetes and considered as one of the most significant complains affecting quality of life [48]. Manifestations usually appear after 10–12 years after the onset of diabetes, because of diabetic endothelial and neural damage associated with persistent high serum glucose levels [71].

ED affects approximately 18 million men in the United States, with an estimated prevalence of 35–90% in patients with diabetes [53]. Diabetic male patients generally have a greater prevalence and an earlier onset of erectile dysfunction than men without diabetes. Erectile dysfunction in diabetics is directly associated with poor glycemic control as well as greater duration and severity of diabetes [35]. Moreover, it has been demonstrated that ED is an early sign of cardiovascular events, particularly coronary heart disease. Prevention of cardiovascular disease through screening and management of cardiovascular risk factors in men with ED is very important [53].

Pathophysiology

Men with erectile dysfunction have diminished vasodilating responses causing less relaxation of the vascular smooth muscle tissue, due to deficient production of NO (nitrate oxide) in non-adrenergic, non-cholinergic neurons and in the endothelium [58]. These abnormalities are associated with important accumulation of advanced glycation products [15] and altered expression of arginase, a competitor of the NO synthase for its substrate L-arginine [8, 66]. All of these abnormalities cause a tendency toward vasoconstriction, such as that caused by phenylephrine and endothelin-1, resulting in lack of vasodilatation and inadequate penile erection.

Numerous mechanisms play important roles in the pathophysiology of erectile dysfunction in diabetic males; one of them is the polyol pathway, which forms sorbitol, by action of the enzyme aldose reductase. Sorbitol accumulates inside the cells, causing diminished myoinositol levels (a precursor of the phosphatidylinositol), required for the adequate functioning of the Na-K ATPase pump. Increased sorbitol concentrations additionally produce progressive peripheral nerve damage [59].

Regarding vascular component, endothelial damage is a central issue in ED, because in comparison with healthy males, diabetic male patients have a diminished arterial inflow, which has been observed microscopically with reduced diameter and deficient morphology of the vascular wall [37]. Contraction of cavernosal smooth muscle cells is also affected by hyperglycemia, which results in an increased forced response to vasoconstrictors. This could be partially explained because of sensitization in protein kinase C and Rho A-Rho kinase Ca2+ pathways, which may cause a tendency toward a flaccid stage and modify the responses to NO [21]. All of these mechanisms are further compromised by other factors that impact erectile function including apoptosis or atrophy of the cavernous smooth muscle, due to diminished expression of blc2, intracellular release of Ca2+, increased connective tissue proliferation due to tumor growth factor beta causing fibrosis and a deficient response to NO in the cavernous and sinusoidal artery, with a decrease in neuronal and endothelial levels of NO synthetase. In brief, there are several components that take place in the endothelial and neural damage in the periphery and central nervous system, which globally impact on ED in patients with DM.

Diagnosis

The International Index for Erectile Function Questionnaire helps to determine the degree of erectile dysfunction and to evaluate the progression or response to medical treatment. In certain cases, in which a more precise evaluation of vascular flows is needed, an echo-Doppler could be performed to determine cavernous artery flux and morphology. In selected cases, other studies to determine the degree of damage of myelinated pudendal somatosensory fibers and unmyelinated fibers can be done. Additional studies include assessment of nocturnal penile tumescence and electrostimulation. Most of these studies, however, are more commonly used in research protocols than in everyday clinical practice [24].

Treatment

Approximately 20% of patients with ED received pharmacological treatment; for that reason, clinicians should broadly evaluate sexuality among DM patients, trying to improve the sexual activity of patients and consequently their quality of life [5].

The first line of treatment are oral medications (phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors), followed by intracavernosal injection (alprostadil), and finally penile prosthesis.

The daily use of phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors can improve not only sexual function but also diminishes urinary tract symptoms associated with prostate enlargement. Meta-analysis has confirmed that phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors are effective treatments of ED in patients with diabetes [4].

Sildenafil citrate, tadalafil, udenafil, and vardenafil hydrochloride are the oral agents for the treatment of erectile dysfunction. They all share the same mechanism of action, which involves the hydrolysis of guanosine monophosphate to guanosine 5′-monophosphate, diminishing it, causing an increase in the relaxation of the cavernosal smooth muscle mediated by NO, increasing the blood flow into the corpus cavernosum, and causing penile erection [9].

Common side effects of phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors are headache, dyspepsia, bluish eye sight, and facial flushing; lumbar musculoskeletal pain has been found in patients receiving tadalafil and mirodenafil [4].

Vacuum erection devices cause blood flow to be directed into the penis, and when a satisfactory erection is obtained, a compressive device is applied at the base of the penis in order to prevent blood return and lose the erection. Side effects include cold penis due to non-circulating blood, loss or diminished sensation due to nerve compression, and the uncomfortable process to obtain the erection using the device [49]. External support devices that hold the flaccid penis to allow penetration have been designed, but the use of these instruments has not gained acceptance among patients and their partners.

Other medical options are intraurethral suppositories of prostaglandin E-1 which are injected into the urethra. In men with diabetes, their reported efficiency rate to achieve satisfactory intercourse is 60%, although in clinical practice they have not proved to be as effective [30, 43]. Injections of prostaglandin E-1 directly into the corpus cavernosum have a direct effect on blood vessels, causing immediate penile erections, with a reported response rate above 83% [42]. Main limitations include the need of injection prior to the sexual encounter, its impact on the spontaneity of sexual

intercourse, and adverse effects including penile pain, hematomas, infection, fibrosis and priapism, and prolonged and painful erections [62].

Patients not responding to medical therapy and unsatisfied with side effects or patients who prefer a permanent solution should consider a penile prosthesis implant (PPI). PPI improves flaccidity and rigidity and male satisfaction and correlates positively with satisfaction of the sexual partner. The rate of complications related to penile implantation is lower than 5%; they may be catastrophic, however, and include misplacement, migration, perforation, and a low risk of infection (less than 1.8%) using antibiotic prophylaxis, antibiotic impregnation, or hydrophobic-coated prosthesis [3].

Urinary Tract Infections

The worldwide prevalence of urinary tract infections (UTI) is around 150 million persons per year [67]. DM patients have a higher incidence of infections in general, and UTI are not the exception. The variety of UTI patients with diabetes ranges from asymptomatic bacteriuria to cystitis, pyelonephritis, renal abscess, and xanthogranulomatous pyelonephritis, to severe urosepsis [60]. DM is also associated with severe cutaneous infections of the genitals such as Fournier's gangrene. Asymptomatic bacteriuria is more prevalent in women, due to the anatomical length of the urethra, and it is closer to the warm, moist, vulvar, and perianal areas that are commonly colonized by enteric bacteria [60]. DM female patients frequently suffer bacterial cystitis with higher prevalence of both asymptomatic bacteriuria and symptomatic UTI added to recurrent complications, compared to healthy women [67].

Bacterial cystitis is frequently suffered by diabetic patients; it is more common in women than in men, especially in those with type 2 DM. Diabetic women have a higher prevalence of asymptomatic bacteriuria than healthy women, and they have a greater tendency for developing symptomatic UTI and recurrent complications with higher incidence of more serious complications [32, 33].

Type 2 DM is more than a risk factor for community-acquired UTI and is a high predisposition for healthcare-associated UTI, such as catheter-associated UTI, post-renal transplant recurrent UTI, and catheter-associated UTI [60]. Hospitalization due to pyelonephritis occurs more frequently in diabetic patients, and they are at higher risk of developing acute pyelonephritis, which could progress to renal abscess, pyelitis, or emphysematous cystitis or pyelonephritis and bacteriemia [60, 70].

Pathophysiology

The increased frequency of UTI in patients with diabetes might be associated with nerve damage caused by hyperglycemia, affecting the capacity of bladder to sense the presence of urine and leading to stagnation of urine for a long time or inadequate bladder emptying due to ineffective detrusor contraction, increasing the probability of infections [67]. In addition, higher renal parenchymal glucose levels create a favorable atmosphere for multiplication of many microorganisms [60].

DM results in abnormalities in the host immune defense system that may result in higher risk of developing infection. Immunologic impairments such as defective migration and phagocytes alterations of chemotaxis in polymorphonuclear leukocytes are common in DM patients [22]. Additionally, certain cytokines such as IL-6, IL-8, and other pro-inflammatory cytokines are diminished in the urine in comparison to healthy women [14, 60]. Diminished neutrophil responses and lower levels of cytokines and leukocytes facilitate adhesion of microorganisms to uroepithelial cells and the development of infections [40].

Clinical Manifestations

UTI in DM patients can be the origin of severe complications that can end up in sepsis, organ failure, and death. Therefore, it is important to be vigilant of the usual clinical manifestations such as urinary urgency, frequency, bad urine odor, pain, dysuria, tenesmus, incomplete emptying, and incontinence for lower UTI and costovertebral angle pain or tenderness, fever, and chills for upper UTI [60].

Premenopausal and postmenopausal women have a double risk of developing the UTI [10]. Another risk factor is sexual intercourse, which is the most important risk factor in patients with type 1 diabetes [32, 33].

Diagnosis

Frequent and early screening for UTI should be performed in DM patients with suggestive symptoms, in order to establish the appropriate early treatment and to avoid complications.

As soon as the clinical diagnosis of UTI is suspected, a midstream urine sample must be examined, looking for the presence of leukocytes (more than 10 leukocytes/mm^3) or a positive dipstick leukocyte esterase test to detect pyuria. Microscopic or macroscopic hematuria is sometimes observed [60], associated with positive nitrites and the presence of bacteriuria.

Before the initiation of antimicrobial treatment, a urine culture should be obtained from voided, clean-catch midstream urine. In case this method is impossible, a culture through a sterile urinary catheter should be done [60]. Despite the fact that *Escherichia coli* is the most frequent bacteria in patients with urinary tract infections, unusual, multidrug-resistant and aggressive pathogens are more prevalent in DM patients, including *Klebsiella*, gram-negative rods, enterococci, group B streptococci, *Pseudomonas*, and *Proteus mirabilis* [63]. Type 2 DM is a risk factor for fungal UTI, such as candida; these patients are more predisposed to be infected by resistant pathogens, including extended spectrum β-lactamase-positive *Enterobacteriaceae*, fluoroquinolone-resistant uro-

pathogens, carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae*, and vancomycin-resistant *Enterococci* [60].

Treatment

Glycemic control is helpful in the control of UTI [67], and treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria is not indicated [60]. The use of cotrimoxazole for 3 days is recommended for the treatment of uncomplicated cystitis as first-line therapy [39]. Strategies to prevent recurrent UTI include postcoital antibiotics or prophylactic antimicrobials, taken on a regular basis at bedtime. The use of trimethoprim, cotrimoxazole, or nitrofurantoin is considered as the standard regimen of antibiotic therapy [36].

Conclusions

Patients with diabetes are highly susceptible to urologic complications. They may be serious and life-threatening and affect quality of life. It is important to take into account these comorbidities in the management of diabetes and to understand their pathogenesis to prevent systemic dissemination. Many patients with diabetes accept these comorbidities are part of their disease, but clinicians should be aware, interrogate, and screen for these complications in order to indicate the adequate treatment.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Urologic complications in people with diabetes are associated with:
   (a) Nerve function disturbances
   (b) Loss of innervations of neuromuscular terminals
   (c) Abnormal immune responses
   (d) Altered sympathetic/parasympathetic innervations
   (e) All of the above
2. Peripheral accumulations of fat in the abdominal region of DM patients have been associated with an increased risk of urologic complications including:
   (a) Urinary incontinence
   (b) Erectile dysfunction
   (c) Benign prostatic hyperplasia
   (d) Urinary tract infections
   (e) Cancer
3. Diabetic cystopathy is characterized by:
   (a) Urinary incontinence
   (b) Increased post voiding residual volume
   (c) Urinary tract infection
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
4. Bladder symptoms of diabetic cystopathy include:
   (a) Pollakiuria
   (b) Decreasing caliber and strength of the voiding flow
   (c) Terminal dribbling
   (d) Urgency incontinence
   (e) High post-void residual urine
5. Infiltration of the detrusor muscle can be achieved with:
   (a) Oxybutynin
   (b) Solifenacin
   (c) Botulinum toxin
   (d) Darifenacin
   (e) Tolterodine
6. Positive predictive predictors of benign prostatic hyperplasia:
   (a) Urinary tract infection
   (b) Plasma insulin levels
   (c) Dysuria
   (d) Urinary urgency
   (e) Fasting blood glucose
7. Patients with benign prostatic hypertrophy and enlarged prostate should be treated with:
   (a) Non-selective alpha-1 blockers
   (b) Selective alpha-1 blockers
   (c) Alpha reductase inhibitors
   (d) Alpha-1 blockers combined with 5 alpha reductase inhibitors
   (e) Surgical management is the only option
8. The reported prevalence of sexual dysfunction in men with type 2 diabetes:
   (a) 18%
   (b) 37%
   (c) 46%
   (d) 53%
   (e) 71%
9. The reported prevalence of sexual dysfunction in women with type 1 diabetes is:
   (a) 18%
   (b) 37%
   (c) 46%
   (d) 53%
   (e) 71%
10. Erectile dysfunction:
    (a) Is a minor complain of men with diabetes
    (b) Has not been quantified
    (c) Is usually present at diagnosis
    (d) Is the third most common chronic complication and the most significantly affecting quality of life
    (e) Is common but less relevant regarding quality of life

Correct Answers

1. (e) All of the above
2. (a–e)
3. (a–c)
4. (a, d)
5. (c) Botulinum toxin

6. (d) Urinary urgency
7. (d) Alpha-1 blockers combined with 5 alpha reductase inhibitors
8. (c) 46%
9. (e) 71%
10. (d) Is the third most common chronic complication and the most significantly affecting quality of life

References

1. Aizawa N, Homma Y, Igawa Y. Effects of mirabegron, a novel b3-adrenoceptor agonist, on primary bladder afferent activity and bladder microcontractions in rats compared with the effects of oxybutynin. Eur Urol. 2012;62:1165–73.
2. American Diabetes Association. Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(1):S62–9.
3. Antonini G, Busetto GM, De Berardinis E, Giovannone R, Vicini P, Del Giudice F, Perito PE. Minimally invasive infrapubic inflatable penile prosthesis implant for erectile dysfunction: evaluation of efficacy, satisfaction profile and complications. Int J Impot Res. 2016;28(1):4–8.
4. Balhara YPS, Sarkar S, Gupta R. Phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors for erectile dysfunction in patients with diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2015;19(4):451.
5. Bjerggaard M, Charles M, Kristensen E, Lauritzen T, Sandbæk A, Giraldi A. Prevalence of sexual concerns and sexual dysfunction among sexually active and inactive men and women with screen-detected type 2 diabetes. Sex Med. 2015;3(4):302–10.
6. Berger P, Deibl M, Halpern EJ, Lechleitner M, Bektic J, Horninger W, Fritsche G, Steiner H, Pelzer A, Bartsch G, Frauscher F. Vascular damage induced by type 2 diabetes mellitus as a risk factor for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Diabetologia. 2005;48:784–9.
7. Beshay E, Carrier S. Oxidative stress plays a role in diabetes-induced bladder dysfunction in a rat model. Urology. 2004;64:1062.
8. Bivalacqua TJ, Hellstrom WJ, Kadowitz PJ, Champion HC. Increased expression of arginase II in human diabetic corpus cavernosum: in diabetic- associated erectile dysfunction. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2001;283:923–7.
9. Boulton AJ, Selam JL, Sweeney M, Ziegler D. Sildenafil citrate for the treatment of erectile dysfunction in men with type II diabetes mellitus. Diabetologia. 2001;44:1296–301.
10. Boyko EJ, Fihn SD, Scholes D, Chen CL, Normand EH, Yarbro P. Diabetes and the risk of acute urinary tract infection among postmenopausal women. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:1778–83.
11. Brown JS, Nyberg LM, Kusek JW, Diokno AC, Foldspang FNH, Herzog AR, Hunskarr S, Milsom I, Nygaard I, Subak LL, Thom DH. Proceedings of the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases International Symposium on epidemiologic issues in urinary incontinence in women. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2003;188:S77–88.
12. Brown JS, Barrett-Connor E, Nyberg LM, Kusek JW, Orchard TJ, Ma Y. Incontinence in women with impaired glucose tolerance: results of the diabetes prevention program. J Urol. 2004;171:325–6.
13. Canda AE, Dogan H, Kandemir O, Atmaca AF, Akbulut Z, Balbay MD. Does diabetes affect the distribution and number of interstitial cells and neuronal tissue in the ureter, bladder, prostate, and urethra of humans? Cent European J Urol. 2014;67(4):366.
14. Caqueiro J, Casqueiro J, ALves C. Infections in patients with diabetes mellitus: a review of pathogenesis. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2012;16(Suppl1):S27–36.
15. Cartledge JJ, Eardley I, Morrison JF. Advanced glycation end-products are responsible for the impairment of corpus cavernosal smooth muscle relaxation seen in diabetes. BJU Int. 2001;87:402–7.
16. Changolkar AK, Hypolite JA, Disanto M, Oates PJ, Wein AJ, Chacko S. Diabetes induced decrease in detrusor smooth muscle force is associated with oxidative stress and overactivity of aldose reductase. J Urol. 2005;173:309–13.
17. Chapple C, Nitti V, Khullar V, Wyndaele J, Herschom S, Van Kerrebroeck P, Beth M, Siddiqui E. Onset of action of the b3-adrenoceptor agonist, mirabegron, in phase II and III clinical trials in patients with overactive bladder. World J Urol. 2014; https://doi.org/10.1007/s00345-014-1244-2.
18. Chen KC, Sung SY, Lin YT, Hsieh CL, Shen KH, Peng CC, Peng RY. Benign prostatic hyperplasia complicated with T1DM can be alleviated by treadmill exercise—evidences revealed by the rat model. BMC Urol. 2015a;15(1):113.
19. Chen Z, Miao L, Gao X, Wang G, Xu Y. Effect of obesity and hyperglycemia on benign prostatic hyperplasia in elderly patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes. Int J Clin Exp Med. 2015b;8(7):11289.
20. Cheng JT, Yu BC, Tong YC. Changes of M3-muscarinic receptor protein and mRNA expressions in the bladder urothelium and muscle layer of streptozotocin induced diabetic rats. Neurosci Lett. 2007;423:1–5.
21. Chitaley K, Wingard CJ, Clinton Webb R, Branam H, Stopper VS, Lewis RW, Mills TM. Antagonism of Rho-kinase stimulates rat penile erection via a nitric oxide-independent pathway. Nat Med. 2001;7:119–22.
22. Dalal S, Nicolle L, Marrs CF, Zhang L, Harding G, Foxman B. Long-term escherichia coli asymptomatic bacteriuria among women with diabetes mellitus. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49(4):491–7.
23. Daneshgari F, Liu G, Birder L, Hanna-Mitchell AT, Chacko S. Diabetic bladder dysfunction: current translational knowledge. J Urol. 2009;182:S18–26.
24. Dean RC, Lue TF. Physiology of penile erection and pathophysiology of erectile dysfunction. Urol Clin North Am. 2005;32(4):379–95. v.
25. Deli G, Bonsbyak E, Pusch G, Komoly S, Feher G. Diabetic neuropathies: diagnosis and management. Neuroendocrinology. 2013;98(4):267–80.
26. Doruk H, Akbay E, Çayan S, Akbay E, Bozlu M, Acar D. Effect of diabetes mellitus on female sexual function and risk factors. Arch Androl. 2005;51(1):1–6.
27. Elterman DS, Barkin J, Kaplan SA. Optimizing the management of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Ther Adv Urol. 2012; https://doi.org/10.1177/1756287212437361.
28. Enzlin P, Mathieu C, Van den Bruel A, Bosteels J, Vanderschueren D, Demyttenaere K. Sexual dysfunction in women with type 1 diabetes: a controlled study. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:672–7.
29. Frasca F, Pandini G, Sciacca L, Pezzino V, Squatrito S, Belfiore A, Vigneri R. The role of insulin receptors and IGF-I receptors in cancer and other diseases. Arch Physiol Biochem. 2008;114(1):23–37.
30. Fulgham PF, Cochran JS, Denman JL, Feagins BA, Gross MB, Kadesky KT, Adesky MC, Clark AR, Roehrborn CG. Disappointing initial results with transurethral alprostadil for erectile dysfunction in a urology practice setting. J Urol. 1998;160:2041–6.
31. Gacci M, Corona G, Vignozzi L, Salvi M, Serni S, De Nunzio C, Maggi M. Metabolic syndrome and benign prostatic enlargement: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJU Int. 2015;115(1):24–31.
32. Geerlings SE, Stolk RP, Camps MJ, Netten PM, Collet TJ, Hoepelman AI. Risk factors for symptomatic urinary tract infection in women with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2000a;23:1737–41.
33. Geerlings SE, Stolk RP, Camps MJ, Netten PM, Hoekstra JB, Bouter PK, Braveboer B, Collet TJ, Jansz AR, Hoepelman AM. Asymptomatic bacteriuria can be considered a diabetic complication in women with diabetes mellitus. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2000b;485:309–14.
34. Golbidi S, Laher I. Bladder dysfunction in diabetes mellitus. Front Pharmacol. 2010;1:136.
35. Goldstein I, Jones LA, Belkoff LH, Karlin GS, Bowden CH, Peterson CA, Day WW. Avanafil for the treatment of erectile

dysfunction: a multicenter, randomized, double-blind study in men with diabetes mellitus. In: Mayo Clinic Proceedings (Vol. 87, No. 9). Elsevier; 2012. p. 843–852
36. Grabe M, Bishop MC, Bjerklund-Johansen TE, Botto H, Cek M, Lobel B, Naber KG, Palou J, Tenke P, Wagenlehner F. Guidelines on urological infections. Eur Assoc Urol. 2009:1–108. http://www.uroweb.org/online-guidelines/.
37. Grant P, Jackson G, Baig I, Quin J. Erectile dysfunction in general medicine. Clin Med. 2013;13(2):136–40.
38. Gray MA, Wang CC, Sacks MS, Yoshimura N, Chancellor M, Nagatomi J. Time dependent alterations of select genes in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rat bladder. Urology. 2008;71:1214–9.
39. Grigoryan L, Zoorob R, Wang H, Trautner BW. Low concordance with guidelines for treatment of acute cystitis in primary care. In: Open forum infectious diseases (Vol. 2, No. 4). United States, Oxford University Press; 2015. p. ofv159.
40. Hamdan HZ, Kubbara E, Adam AM, Hassan OS, Suliman SO, Adam I. Urinary tract infections and antimicrobial sensitivity among diabetic patients at Khartoum, Sudan. Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob. 2015;14(1):1.
41. He LY, Zhang YC, He JL, Li LX, Wang Y, Tang J, et al. The effect of immediate surgical bipolar plasmakinetic transurethral resection of the prostate on prostatic hyperplasia with acute urinary retention. Asian J Androl. 2016;18(1):134.
42. Heaton JP, Lording D, Liu SN, Litonjua AD, Guangwei L, Kim SC, Kim JJ, Zhi-Zhou S, Israr D, Niazi D, Rajatanavin R, Suyono S, Benard F, Casey R, Brock G, Belanger A. Intracavernosal alprostadil is effective for the treatment of erectile dysfunction in diabetic men. Int J Impot Res. 2001;13:317–21.
43. Huang SA, Lie JD. Phosphodiesterase-5 (PDE5) inhibitors in the management of erectile dysfunction. PT. 2013;38(7):407:414–419.
44. Ikeda K, Wada Y, Foster HE, Wang Z, Weiss RM, Latifpour J. Experimental diabetes-induced regression of the rat prostate is associated with an increased expression of transforming growth factor-beta. J Urol. 2000;164(1):180–5.
45. Jackson RA, Vittinghoff E, Kanaya AM, Resnick HE, Kritchevsky S, Miles T, Simonsick E, Brown JS. Aging and body composition. Obstet Gynecol. 2004;104:301–7.
46. Karoli R, Bhat S, Fatima J, Priya S. A study of bladder dysfunction in women with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2014;18(4):552.
47. Kebapci N, Yenilmez A, Efe B, Entok E, Demirustu C. Bladder dysfunction in type 2 diabetic patients. Neurourol Urodyn. 2007;26(6):814–9.
48. Latini DM, Penson DF, Lubeck DP, Wallace KL, Henning JM, Lue TF. Longitudinal differences in disease specific quality of life in men with erectile dysfunction: results from the exploratory comprehensive evaluation of erectile dysfunction study. J Urol. 2003;169:1437–42.
49. Levine LA, Dimitriou RJ. Vacuum constriction and external erection devices in erectile dysfunction. Urol Clin North Am. 2001;28:335–41.
50. Liu JL. Does IGF-I stimulate pancreatic islet cell growth? Cell Biochem Biophys. 2007;48(2–3):115–25.
51. Liu G, Daneshgari F. Temporal diabetes- and diuresis-induced remodeling of the urinary bladder in the rat. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol. 2006;291:R837.
52. Liu G, Daneshgari F. Diabetic bladder dysfunction. Chin Med J. 2014;127(7):1357.
53. Malavige LS, Wijesekara P, Ranasinghe P, Levy JC. The association between physical activity and sexual dysfunction in patients with diabetes mellitus of European and South Asian origin: The Oxford Sexual Dysfunction Study. Eur J Med Res. 2015;20(1):1–7.
54. Marks LS, Roehrborn CG, Andriole GL. Prevention of benign prostatic hyperplasia disease. J Urol. 2006;176(4):1299–306.
55. McVary KT, Rathnau CH, McKenna KE. Sexual dysfunction in the diabetic BB/WOR rat: a role of central neuropathy. Am J Phys. 1997;272:R259–67.
56. Mcvary KT, Roehrborn CG, Avins AL, Barry MJ, Bruskewitz RC, Donell RF, Foster HE Jr, Gonzalez CM, Kaplan SA, Penson DF, Ulchaker JC, Wei JT. Updateon AUA guideline on the management of benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol. 2011;185(5):1793–803.
57. Mobley D, Baum N. The obesity epidemic and its impact on urologic care. Rev Urol. 2015;17(3):165.
58. Morano S. Pathophysiology of diabetic sexual dysfunction. J Endocrinol Invest. 2003;26(3 Suppl):65–9.
59. Neves D. Advanced glycation end-products: a common pathway in diabetes and age-related erectile dysfunction. Free Radic Res. 2013;47(Suppl 1):49–69.
60. Nitzan O, Elias M, Chazan B, Saliba W. Urinary tract infections in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: review of prevalence, diagnosis, and management. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes. 2015;8:129.
61. Owiredu WK, Amidu N, Alidu H, Sarpong C, Gyasi-Sarpong CK. Determinants of sexual dysfunction among clinically diagnosed diabetic patients. Reprod Biol Endocrinol. 2011;9:70.
62. Perimenis P, Gyftopoulos K, Athanasopoulos A, Barbalias G. Diabetic impotence treated by intracavernosal injections: high treatment compliance and increasing dosage of vaso-active drugs. Eur Urol. 2001;40:398–402.
63. Ronald A. The etiology of urinary tract infection: traditional and emerging pathogens. Am J Med. 2002;113:14–9.
64. Rull JA, Aguilar-Salinas CA, Rojas R, Rios-Torres JM, Gómez-Pérez FJ, Olaiz G. Epidemiology of type 2 diabetes in Mexico. Arch Med Res. 2005;36(3):188–96.
65. Satriano J. Kidney growth, hypertrophy and the unifying mechanism of diabetic complications. Amino Acids. 2007;33:331–9.
66. Seftel AD, Vaziri ND, Ni Z, Razmjouei K, Fogarty J, Hampel N, Polak J, Wang RZ, Ferguson K, Block C, Haas C. Advanced glycation end products in human penis: elevation in diabetic tissue, site of deposition, and possible effect through iNOS or eNOS. Urology. 1997;50(6):1016–26.
67. Sewify M, Nair S, Warsame S, Murad M, Alhubail A, Behbehani K, Tiss A. Prevalence of urinary tract infection and antimicrobial susceptibility among diabetic patients with controlled and uncontrolled Glycemia in Kuwait. J Diabetes Res. 2016;2016:6573215.
68. Shankar E, Bhaskaran N, MacLennan GT, Liu G, Daneshgari F, Gupta S. Inflammatory signaling involved in high-fat diet induced prostate diseases. J Urol Res. 2015;2:1–16.
69. Shimizu S, Tsounapi P, Shimizu T, Honda M, Inoue K, Dimitriadis F, Saito M. Lower urinary tract symptoms, benign prostatic hyperplasia/benign prostatic enlargement and erectile dysfunction: are these conditions related to vascular dysfunction? Int J Urol. 2014;21(9):856–64.
70. Stapleton A. Urinary tract infections in patients with diabetes. Am J Med. 2002;113(suppl 1A):80S–4S.
71. Sun P, Cameron A, Seftel A, Shabsigh R, Niederberger C, Guay A. Erectile dysfunction-an observable marker of diabetes mellitus? A large national epidemiological study. J Urol. 2007;117(4):1588.
72. Torimoto K, Fraser MO, Hirao Y, De Groat WC, Chancellor MB, Yoshimura N. Urethral dysfunction in diabetic rats. J Urol. 2004;171:1959–64.
73. Ullrich A, Gray A, Tam AW, Yang-Feng T, Tsubokawa M, Collins C, Henzel W, Le Bon T, Kathuria S, Chen E. Insulin-like growth factor I receptor primary structure: comparison with insulin receptor suggests structural determinants that define functional specificity. EMBO J. 1986;5(10):2503–12.
74. Vikram A, Jena GB, Ramarao P. Increased cell proliferation and contractility of prostate in insulin resistant rats: linking hyperinsulinemia with benign prostate hyperplasia. Prostate. 2010;70(1):79–89.
75. Wei-Chia L. The impact of diabetes on the lower urinary tract dysfunction. JTUA. 2009;20:155–61.

Musculoskeletal Complications of Diabetes Mellitus

56

Rajiv Singla, Deep Dutta, Meha Sharma, and Aarti Sharma

Introduction

Musculoskeletal complications of diabetes are a diverse set of disorders which are associated with significant impairment of the quality of life in affected patients. Lack of awareness among patients and also perhaps among the caregivers contributes to increased morbidity due to this complications among patients with diabetes.

In contrast to the extensively studied microvascular and macrovascular complications of DM, data and evidence on the musculoskeletal complications of diabetes mellitus (DM) are largely derived from observational studies. Pathogenic mechanisms for many of these conditions are yet to be fully elucidated. An important aspect of the musculoskeletal complication of DM is that their occurrence is not limited to individuals with diabetes. Such conditions are also known to occur in a diverse set of non-diabetes disorders. The only exception to this rule is perhaps the diabetic muscle infarction (DMI)/myonecrosis, which is believed to occur exclusively among patients with DM [1].

In a study from Kerala, the prevalence of rheumatologic and musculoskeletal disorders was observed to be very common in patients with diabetes having a prevalence of 42.58% in a cohort of 310 individuals. With the exponential increase in the burden of diabetes, especially in India, the burden of patients with musculoskeletal complication of diabetes is also going to increase many fold [2]. Some of the unique challenges with type 2 diabetes in India are the nearly two-decade earlier onset in Indians as compared to the rest of the globe, a greater insulin resistance, systemic inflammation, a more severe beta-cell impairment, greater central adiposity, increased body fat percent, and a more rapid progression from prediabetes to diabetes [2]. Duration as well as severity of diabetes has been often linked with increased occurrence and severity of the musculoskeletal complication of diabetes [1]. In this chapter, a review of the major musculoskeletal complications of diabetes has been done, highlighting their pathophysiology, treatment modalities, and outcomes (Table 56.1).

Table 56.1 Musculoskeletal involvement in diabetes mellitus

Conditions occurring more frequently in DM
Shoulder capsulitis
Limited joint mobility
Dupuytren's disease
Stenosing flexor tenosynovitis (trigger finger)
Neuropathic Charcot arthropathy
Calcific shoulder periarthritis
Carpal tunnel syndrome
Conditions unique to DM
Diabetic muscle infarction
Condition sharing risk factors of DM and metabolic syndrome
Diffuse idiopathic skeletal hyperostosis
Crystal-induced arthritis
Osteoarthritis
Miscellaneous
Bone health and osteoporosis

Musculoskeletal manifestations can be divided largely into three categories:

1. Bone effects of diabetes
2. Muscle effects of diabetes
3. Joint and connective tissue effects of diabetes

R. Singla
Department of Endocrinology, Kalpavriksh Healthcare, Dwarka, New Delhi, India

D. Dutta (✉)
Department of Endocrinology, Diabetology & Metabolic Disorders, Venkateshwar Hospitals, Dwarka, New Delhi, India

M. Sharma
Department of Rheumatology, Venkateshwar Hospitals, Dwarka, New Delhi, India

A. Sharma
Department of Rheumatology, All India Institute of Medical Sciences, New Delhi, India

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_56

Bone Effects of Diabetes: Bone Density and Fracture Risk

The effect of diabetes on bone health is quite complex and interesting. The effect varies with types of diabetes and with site of skeletal system. Both type 1 and type 2 diabetes are associated with poor bone health and increased fracture rate, but their effect on bone mineral density varies. Type 1 diabetes is associated with decreased bone density in majority of studies done. Uncontrolled type 1 diabetes may, in fact, prevent an adolescent from acquiring peak bone mass. When assessed in midlife, most of the studies show bone mineral density to be decreased. Low body mass index and lower lean mass contribute to lower BMD in patients with T1DM. Different studies have consistently shown that fracture risk is increased by around two times, at lumber spine, hip, and distal radius in patients with type 1 diabetes. Major pathophysiologic factor responsible for decreased bone density in type 1 diabetes is lack of insulin that, otherwise, acts as an anabolic agent for the bone. Raised blood glucose in uncontrolled diabetes also deteriorates bone quality by formation of nonenzymic glycated collagen cross-links which are much weaker than, usually formed, enzymatic pyrilodine cross-links. Another important factor predisposing to poor bone health in this population is low body mass index. Only measure, which is effective, for prevention and recovery is adequate glycemic control as that would signify normal blood glucose levels with optimum insulinization [3].

Situation in type 2 diabetes is much more complex as these patients often have associated hyperinsulinism. Bone mineral density in type 2 diabetes can vary from low to normal to some patients even increased, depending on the disease state and the clinical scenario. Raised BMI in obese type 2 DM patients has a trophic effect on BMD. However it must be highlighted that even in patients with normal to increased BMI in T2DM, the fracture rates have been consistently demonstrated to be increased in T2DM. This can be attributed to the poor bone quality in such patients, secondary to glycation of bone matrix secondary to persistent hyperglycemia in patients with T2DM. The authors have observed in a cohort of type 2 diabetes patients that it's the lean mass which has the maximum impact on bone health in diabetes. A greater lean mass leads to a greater dynamic loading of the bones, which has a trophic effect on bone health and density. Sarcopenia due to any cause is associated with low bone density in diabetes.

Apart from weakening of the bone, accumulation of advanced glycosylation end products (AGEs) in the organic bone matrix by nonenzymatic glycation interferes with normal osteoblast development, function, and attachment to the collagen matrix. In type 2 diabetes, a differential effect at trabecular and cortical sites has also been noted with preservation of trabecular bone and loss of cortical bone mass. There are clinical studies which show that in T2DM, most of the fractures occur at sites that are rich in cortical bone. Risk factors other than bone density also need to be kept in mind in patients with diabetes, most notable being microvascular complication (esp. neuropathy and retinopathy), macrovascular complications, and muscle weakness.

Smoking, use of glucocorticoids, and associated inflammatory diseases like inflammatory arthropathy all are associated with poorer bone mineral density and bone health in diabetes. Bone health is often a neglected aspect of diabetes management. It would be a good clinical practice from a clinician's point of view to avoid medications which are associated with impaired bone health in patients of diabetes with established low bone mineral density. Pioglitazone and SGLT2 inhibitors have been linked to adverse bone mineral outcomes in diabetes. Pioglitazone (thiazolidinediones) inhibits bone formation directly, by diverting mesenchymal stem cell precursors from the osteoblast to the adipocyte lineage. SGLT2 inhibitor use has been linked to increased phosphate resorption from the kidneys. Increased phosphate resorption and increased circulating phosphorous lead to secondary hyperparathyroidism and increased circulating levels of phosphatonins, all of which have an adverse impact on bone mineral density. The high prevalence of vitamin D deficiency also contributes to impaired bone mineral health and peak bone mass in adulthood.

Muscle Effects of Diabetes

The muscles are a major user of insulin-mediated glucose uptake. In face of insulin resistance in type 2, proteomics studies have revealed weakened metabolic flexibility, i.e., difficulty in switching between glucose metabolism and fatty acid utilization with preferential oxidative-to-glycolytic shift. There are altered mitochondrial function, reduced lipid oxidation, increased cellular stress response, and enhanced detoxification mechanisms [3]. All these metabolic changes result in changes in contractile proteins and altered cytoskeletal proteins. All these metabolic changes result in feeling of fatigue and tiredness.

Acute and chronic neuropathies associated with diabetes can lead to muscle atrophy and weakness. For example, carpal tunnel syndrome (discussed in sections ahead) can lead to atrophy of hand muscles, and distal polyneuropathy can lead to loss of small muscles of the foot. Primary diseases of muscles seen in diabetics include diabetic myonecrosis and amyotrophy.

Diabetic Myonecrosis

Spontaneous infarction of the muscle in diabetic patients is a rare but well-known entity. Approximately 200 cases have been reported in literature so far. The pathophysiology for

diabetic myonecrosis has not been fully elucidated, but it is proposed to be ischemic in nature without any obvious atheroembolism or vascular occlusion of any major artery. It is more commonly seen in patients who are dependent on insulin and already have underlying microvascular complications.

Clinically, the disease has a slight male preponderance, and patients usually present with a disabling and constant pain involving quadriceps muscles. Other areas which can be involved in minority of cases include calf muscles, upper limb, and neck muscles. There may be an apparent swelling at site of involvement. Asymmetry is a hallmark of this disease. Bilateral involvement occurs in one third of patients. Blood investigation reveals raised levels of ESR and CRP, while creatine kinase may be raised or normal during early or late stage of presentation, respectively. Leucocyte count and temperature are normal and help in differentiation from infective pathology. Sonography reveals diffuse or focal muscle edema and is invaluable in ruling out deep vein thrombosis or major arterial thrombosis. Magnetic resonance imaging is the investigation of choice in such cases; the involved muscle shows hyperintensity on T2-weighted sequences, and addition of contrast differentiates nonenhancing infarcted muscle from surrounding inflammation or edema. Additional findings on MRI can be subcutaneous edema, subfascial fluid, and loss of the normal fatty intramuscular septa. Biopsy is not generally indicated but reveals muscle edema and infarction along with evidence of microangiopathy.

Disease generally resolves on its own by 6–12 weeks. Rest and pain relief are mainstay of therapy. But as there is evidence of microangiopathy and association with other microvascular complications, antiplatelets are generally advised. Constant vigil, however, is required as some of the cases can be complicated by compartment syndrome. Moreover, recurrence rate is very high, and half of the cases would have recurrence. The mean mortality rate associated with DMI is 10% within 2 years of initial diagnosis, predominantly as a result of macrovascular complications.

Diabetic Amyotrophy

Amyotrophy or diabetic lumbosacral plexopathy has overlapping clinical presentation with diabetic myonecrosis. But, amyotrophy occurs predominantly in type 2 patients who are fairly controlled or has recently been diagnosed. It also present with acute onset proximal leg pain followed by muscle weakness. Disease is usually unilateral at onset, but bilateral involvement eventually occurs in majority of patients. About one third of patients may have distal onset of disease. This condition is also associated with distal and proximal sensory loss. New-onset autonomic symptoms may occur in up to half of the patients, and more than 80% patients would report loss of at least 10% body weight. Rarely, muscles of the upper limb and thorax can be involved [1, 3].

Underlying pathophysiology is not clear (e.g., ischemic, metabolic, and/or inflammatory), though there is general consensus that ischemic injury due to nonsystemic microvasculitis is most likely the cause. Electrodiagnostic studies, in the presence of typical features, are sufficient to clinch the diagnosis. Abnormalities are localized to lumbosacral plexus and peripheral nerves of lower limb. HIV and cytomegalovirus can cause similar disease with same electrodiagnostic findings. Inflammatory myopathies like polymyositis and dermatomyositis should always be ruled out. Associated classical cutaneous manifestations make it easy for dermatomyositis to be ruled out. Polymyositis is classically associated with elevated levels of creatine phosphokinase (CPK) in the blood which is not seen in amyotrophy.

Disease usually runs a self-limited course with spontaneous resolution, but some residual problem remains in large majority in form of either weakness or persistent pain. The course of disease can run over months. Treatment is only symptomatic. No evidence exists to favor treatment with steroids, immunosuppressants, or immunoglobulins.

Joint and Connective Tissue Effects of Diabetes

Joint and connective tissue diseases are more common in people with diabetes (Table 56.2). There is no single mechanism that has been shown to account for the development of joint and connective tissue effects of diabetes, viz., limited joint mobility (LJM), shoulder adhesive capsulitis, stenosing flexor tenosynovitis, and Dupuytren's contracture among others. However, the shared cause of these conditions seems to involve abnormal connective tissue deposition around joints, in tendon sheaths, and in the palmar fascia, respectively [4].

Accumulation of advanced glycation end products (AGEs) with cross-linking of collagen and other macromolecules has been proposed as a potential pathogenetic mechanism. It is likely that poorer glycemic control over time with resulting AGE formation influences the development of hand and shoulder problems among patients with DM.

Table 56.2 Prevalence of joint and connective tissue diseases in people with and without diabetes

Musculoskeletal disorder	With diabetes (%)	Without diabetes (%)
Shoulder capsulitis	11–30	2–10
Limited joint mobility	8–50	0–26
Dupuytren's disease	20–63	5–10
Carpal tunnel syndrome	11–16	2–5
Stenosing flexor tenosynovitis	10–12	<1
Diffuse idiopathic skeletal hyperostosis	13–50	2–15

Adhesive Capsulitis of the Shoulder (Frozen Shoulder Syndrome, Shoulder Periarthritis)

The prevalence of adhesive capsulitis is 11–29% in patients with T2DM, as compared to only 2–3% in healthy euglycemic individuals. Risk factors for adhesive capsulitis include older age, increased duration of diabetes, history of myocardial infarction, and presence of peripheral neuropathy and nephropathy. Adhesive capsulitis usually presents as painful progressive restriction of range of shoulder movement, especially on abduction and external rotation. Its natural history can be divided into three phases: pain, stiffness, and recovery. The length of the recovery phase depends on the duration of the stiffness phase, with symptoms lasting for an average of 30 months. Adhesive capsulitis can involve any of the large joints in diabetes. Frozen shoulder syndrome is perhaps the most common type of adhesive capsulitis (Table 56.2). Shoulder adhesive capsulitis is more likely to develop in older individuals with either type of DM and in those with longer duration of disease among patients with type 1 DM, history of myocardial infarction, associated nephropathy, and/or neuropathy [3, 4].

Analgesics physical therapy and intra-articular corticosteroid injection are first-line therapies during the initial painful phase of shoulder adhesive capsulitis. Intra-articular injections, early in the course of the disease, have been linked to improved outcomes and better mobility in the long run. It must be highlighted that oral corticosteroids have a limited role and should be used routinely in patients with adhesive capsulitis. Oral glucocorticoids are not associated with improved mobility outcomes in the long run. Plus oral glucocorticoids would have a greater adverse impact in the glycemic control of the patient. Intensive physiotherapy including stretching and mobilization also has a key role in improving clinical outcomes. Arthroscopic capsular release has been an effective treatment modality for refractory shoulder adhesive capsulitis in a few patients. Radiographic-guided hydrodilatation and manipulation under anesthesia have been tried in refractory patients with mixed long-term outcomes [5].

Limited Joint Mobility (Diabetic Cheiroarthropathy)

Limited joint mobility (LJM) also known as "diabetic cheiroarthropathy" is characterized by stiff hands. The skin is markedly thick, tight, and waxy especially on the dorsal aspects of the hands which are usually symmetrically affected, mimicking scleroderma [6].

Patients with LJM have limited extension of the metacarpophalangeal, proximal interphalangeal, and distal interphalangeal joints, usually beginning in the ulnar digits and spreading radially. Screening for LJM can be done by simple physical examination signs. The prayer (preachers) sign involves the patient holding the hands opposed to one another vertically with elbows flexed and wrists extended. A positive sign is observed by an inability of the patient to completely approximate the palmar surface of the digits.

In the table top sign, the patient places the palms flat on a hard surface with the digits spread. Normally, the entire palmar surface of the digits should contact the table. If the test is positive, the digits and palm will not lie flat. Both these tests can also be positive with Dupuytren's contracture. The prayer sign is also useful for staging of LJM as follows:

- Stage 0: Normal findings on prayer sign examination
- Stage 1: Involvement of one or two interphalangeal joints bilaterally
- Stage 2: Inability to approximate three or more interphalangeal joints bilaterally
- Stage 3: Hand deformity at rest

The prevalence of LJM in diabetes varies from 8% to 50%. The frequency of LJM in diabetics increases with increasing diabetes duration. The importance of LJM can be highlighted by the fact that its presence is an indicator for other associated more grave microvascular and macrovascular complications of diabetes. An association with microvascular complications (retinopathy, microalbuminuria) has been shown, both in type 1 and in type 2 diabetes. LJM increases the risk for microvascular disease in type 1 diabetes. There is an 83% risk for microvascular complications after 16 years of diabetes in the presence of LJM, compared with a 25% risk in the absence of LJM. Patients with LJM may be at higher risk for foot ulceration because of concomitant limited joint mobility at the hallux.

Treatment of LJM is not very satisfactory. Physiotherapy to increase the range of motion in the hand joints is fundamental. This involves active and passive mobilization and use of corrective splints. Glucocorticoids injection of flexor tendon sheaths leads to resolution of finger contractures in every two out of three patients with LJM. At a more practical level, optimization of glycemic control is believed to be vital for the management of LJM.

Dupuytren's Contracture (DD)

DD is a progressive fibro-proliferative disorder resulting in abnormal scar-like tissue in the palmar fascia leading to irreversible, permanent, painless, and progressive contracture of the involved digits. DD is commonly bilateral, and "Dupuytren-like" fibrotic tissue can occur on the dorsum of the hand over the knuckles (Garrod's pads), feet (Lederhose's disease), and penis (Peyronie's disease). The ring finger is

the most frequently involved, followed by the little finger, and then middle finger; the index finger and thumb are rarely involved.

The incidence of DD also increases with concurrent patient clinical conditions or factors such as diabetes, smoking, chronic alcoholism, seizures, and infection. Microvascular changes in smokers may play a role. Hand examination also reveals palpable palmar nodule or nodules.

The prevalence of DC in diabetes ranges between 20% and 63%, considerably higher than among nondiabetic subjects (13%). DC in diabetic subjects is associated with diabetes duration, long-term poor metabolic control, and presence of microvascular complications. LJM and DC may coexist in the same patient [5].

DD must be distinguished from several other conditions that affect the hand, including trigger finger, stenosing tenosynovitis, a ganglion cyst, or a soft-tissue mass. Unlike DC, trigger finger typically involves pain with flexion followed by the inability to extend the affected digit. Stenosing tenosynovitis may be distinguished from DD by pain and a history of overuse or trauma. A small, movable nodule that is tender to palpation at the metacarpophalangeal joint is likely a ganglion cyst. Treatment of DC involves optimized glycemic control and physiotherapy. Topical steroid injection and surgery are reserved for the more severe cases. Surgery yields satisfactory results.

Calciphylaxis

Calciphylaxis is a form of small vessel vasculitis. It has been reported in patients with renal failure as well as diabetes. Clinically they present as small tender areas on the skin, initially red in color, which then become subcutaneous nodules, leading to poorly healing necrotizing skin ulcers. Key to treatment involves ensuring a good glycemic control and analgesics for pain relief.

Stenosing Flexor Tenosynovitis (Trigger Finger)

Stenosing flexor tenosynovitis typically presents with locking (or "triggering") of fingers in flexion, extension, or both, most commonly involving the thumb, middle, and ring fingers. At clinical examination, locking is reproducible on active or passive finger flexion. Moreover, a nodule is palpable at the base of the affected finger. The prevalence of stenosing flexor tenosynovitis ranges between 5% and 36% among patients with type 1 and 2 DM, as compared with 2% in the general population. Compared with nondiabetics, patients with DM are more likely to have multiple fingers involved simultaneously by stenosing flexor tenosynovitis [6].

In diabetic subjects, it is associated with diabetes duration, long-term poor metabolic control, and presence of microvascular complications. Additionally, it has been suggested as an indicator of glucose dysmetabolism that should prompt glucose measurement and oral glucose tolerance test in the general population. Treatment of stenosing flexor tenosynovitis includes modification of activities to avoid triggering of digits, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug therapy, splinting, corticosteroid injection into the tendon sheath, and surgical release. Corticosteroid injections into the tendon sheath have been especially found to be beneficial in patients with disease duration of less than 6 months and having nodular type of disease. In these patients, the success rate of a single injection is as high as 96%.

Calcific Shoulder Periarthritis (Tendinitis)

Calcific tendinitis is a painful condition most commonly affecting the shoulder in which calcium hydroxyapatite crystals deposit predominantly in periarticular areas. In the shoulder, these crystals may also deposit within the tendons of the rotator cuff. The incidence of calcific shoulder periarthritis is increased among patients with DM. Calcific tendinitis may coexist with adhesive capsulitis in the shoulder [5].

Carpal Tunnel Syndrome (CTS)

Carpal tunnel syndrome is a common compression neuropathy of the median nerve associated with many conditions including diabetes. Classically these patients present with the wasting of the muscles of the thenar eminence (abductor pollicis brevis, extensor pollicis longus, and extensor pollicis brevis).The typical presentation is hand paresthesia involving the median nerve distribution. Paresthesia and pains are usually exacerbated in the night. Apart from diabetes, CTS is also associated with rheumatoid arthritis, pregnancy, and obesity. Diabetes may induce structural alterations of tendon, increase obesity, and produce metabolic abnormalities that result in proliferation or fibrosis of the connective tissues surrounding the nerve. Transforming growth factor-beta has a key role in the pathogenesis of CTS. Increased TGFb is seen in TGF which is associated with increased localized inflammation and collagen deposition. The prevalence of CTS in diabetes has been reported at 11–25%, and it is more common in women. Conversely, 5–8% of patients with carpal tunnel syndrome may have diabetes. Two classic signs, Tinel's sign and Phalen's test, are very helpful in establishing the diagnosis. A positive Tinel's sign refers to the elicitation of paresthesia and/or pain in the hand (mainly thenar and thumb area) by tapping over the median nerve on the volar aspect of the wrist. Phalen's test is positive if similar

symptoms are produced when the patient flexes both wrists completely and opposes the dorsal surfaces of the hands to each other [6].

Management focuses on analgesics and splints, while topical steroid injection and surgery may be indicated in more severe cases. Endoscopic tendon release procedures are increasingly being used in CTS to relieve the median nerve from compression with good clinical outcomes.

Reflex Sympathetic Dystrophy

Also known as algodystrophy, Sudeck's atrophy, and chronic regional pain syndrome type 1, this disorder is characterized by pain, swelling, trophic changes, and vasomotor disturbances with impaired mobility of the body part involved. The development of the condition is usually preceded by a trauma, which may range from trivial injury to a surgery or a fracture. Apart from diabetes, reflex sympathetic dystrophy is also seen in hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, and type IV hyperlipidemia. A large variety of treatment options have been used in reflex sympathetic dystrophy ranging from analgesics, physiotherapy, intravenous bisphosphonates, calcitonin, oral corticosteroids, to sympathetic ganglion blocks. Clinical outcomes are usually good. In rare patients it may lead to contractures [5, 6].

Diffuse Idiopathic Skeletal Hyperostosis (Dish): Forestier's Disease

Diffuse idiopathic skeletal hyperostosis (DISH) is a condition characterized by ossification of spinal ligaments associated with large bridging osteophytes between vertebral bodies. Obesity, hyperlipidemia, hyperuricemia, hypertension, hyperinsulinemia, and diabetes are thought to be associated with DISH.

The diagnosis of DISH is based on radiologic features. Radiographic criteria for the diagnosis of DISH include the presence of "flowing" osteophytes along the anterolateral aspects of at least four contiguous vertebral bodies, the preservation of intervertebral disk spaces, and the absence of changes of degenerative spondylosis or spondyloarthropathy. Analgesics, heat application, exercise, and local corticosteroid injections have been used to treat patients with DISH.

Crystal-Induced Arthritis and Gout

Calcific tendinitis is clearly associated with diabetes. Similar calcific processes certainly occur in blood vessels of diabetic patients as well as in spinal ligaments in DISH. Metabolic changes, consequent to chronic high glucose and insulin levels, may produce important changes in connective tissues that might predispose to pathologic calcification.

Gout is an inflammatory arthropathy characterized by increased deposition of monosodium urate crystals in the joint. Gout is more common in Caucasians where it affects 1–2% of the population. Risk factors for gout include hyperuricemia, male sex, renal impairment, alcohol use, and increased consumption of meat. Insulin resistance, which is very common in type 2 diabetes, is associated with decreased uric acid excretion and hence is associated with hyperuricemia. Serum urate concentration and gout are strongly associated with central adiposity and insulin resistance. Few meta-analyses have showed that the prevalence of gout in type 2 diabetes may be as high as 25%. It must be highlighted that among the anti-hypertension medicines and anti-lipid medication, losartan and fenofibrate have urate lowering effects. Hence special consideration should be given to these drugs when type 2 diabetes patients with hyperuricemia/gout are planned to be put on hypertension or lipid medications [1, 4].

Osteoarthritis

Osteoarthritis is the most common form of arthritis in adults and as such would frequently co-occur with diabetes by chance alone. Clear clinical evidence that diabetes predisposes to premature or severe osteoarthritis is lacking. The fact that obesity is a common risk factor for both osteoarthritis and diabetes makes epidemiologic studies difficult. Peripheral neuropathy may also adversely affect joints and increase the risk of advanced, aggressive forms of osteoarthritis. There seems to be propensity for diabetic patients to have more severe pain and radiographic changes both preoperatively and postoperatively, an increased risk of deep-tissue infection, as well as an increased revision rate compared with nondiabetic controls. Whether insulin resistance worsens or not when therapeutic doses of oral glucosamine are used to treat osteoarthritis remains controversial [3].

Charcot Arthritis

Charcot arthropathy is a form of destructive arthritis. It's seen in diabetes usually in association with peripheral neuropathy. It is a debilitating condition observed in 0.4% of patients with diabetes and is associated with limb deformity, gait instability and ulcers and may lead to limb amputation also. Four different stages of Charcot arthropathy have been described. In the earliest stage (Stage 0), the patient usually complains of pain in the joint. The joint may or may not have swelling. X-rays of the joint are normal at

this stage. MRI is the most sensitive tool for diagnosis at this stage where it can pick up marrow edema, subchondral cysts, and microfractures. In Stage 1, the X-rays of the joint now start showing varying degrees of osteolysis, bone fragmentation, and architectural destruction. Stages 0 and 1 are the clinically active stages of the disease characterized by joint pain, swelling, redness, and localized increase in skin temperature. In Stage 2, the clinical signs of local inflammation usually resolve, and coalescence starts which may be visible on joint X-rays. Stage 3 is known as the reconstructive stage, where fusion or ankylosis of the bones occurs. Stages 0 and 1 usually last up to 6 months, whereas stages 2 and 3 last up to 24 months [1, 3].

Charcot arthropathy most commonly involves the foot. Altered architecture of the foot as a result of the deformity leads to abnormal foot pressure distributions, leading to increased risk of foot ulcers at the high pressure points. Tarsometatarsal followed by the midtarsal joint involvements are the two most common types of Charcot arthropathy. After the foot, the knees, elbows, and shoulder joints are the most commonly affected by Charcot arthropathy.

The pathogenesis of Charcot arthropathy is yet to be fully elucidated. Localized joint inflammation and osteoclast activation are central to the pathogenesis of Charcot arthropathy. Increased local levels of tumor necrosis factor alpha, interleukins (IL-1, IL6), and RANK ligand have been documented in Charcot arthropathies. Abnormal weight bearing due to diabetic neuropathy leads to small microtrauma to the foot, which leads to foot inflammation and hyperemia which sets up a vicious cycle of joint inflammation and damage resulting to Charcot arthropathy.

The most important aspect of managing Charcot arthropathy, especially in the acute stage, is joint immobilization and absolute cessation of weight bearing. Nonweight bearing total contact cast (TCC) is the treatment of choice for managing Charcot foot. This leads to significant reduction in joint inflammation and reduces the risk of deformity also. Bisphosphonates (pamidronate, alendronate, zoledronate) have been demonstrated to be useful in reducing joint inflammation and hastening recovery in patients with Charcot arthropathy, both in observational studies and randomized controlled trials. Small studies have also showed the beneficial effects of RANK ligand inhibitors (denosumab) in the management of Charcot arthropathy. Surgery has no role in the management of Charcot arthropathy in the active stage. Surgery has a role in inactive or burnt-out stage of the disease, where it helps in joint stabilization and helps in improving the pressure distribution of the joint, which would help in preventing ulcers. Therapeutic footwears have an important role in improving foot pressure distribution in patients with Charcot foot, healing of foot ulcers, and also providing limited mobility to the patients.

Diabetic Foot

One of the most devastating complications of diabetes is diabetic foot. Foot problems in diabetes occur due to combination of abnormalities affecting vascularity, peripheral nerves, skin, and musculoskeletal system [3, 4].

Foot problems in diabetes can be largely divided into infective and noninfective complications.

Charcot foot is characterized by destruction of small foot joints and complete disorganization of the anatomy of the foot. Neuropathy is the main contributor in this condition with both peripheral and autonomic neuropathies playing significant roles. Peripheral neuropathy makes the insensate foot take repeated trauma and also to transmit pressure in not-so-optimal way. This creates false pressure points and puts undue stress on small joints of foot. Autonomic neuropathy, on the other hand, impairs regulation of blood flow to foot and thus exposing bones of foot to excessive bone loss during periods of increased blood flow. Charcot foot is a great danger to health of any diabetic as this condition cannot be reversed and puts patient at grave risk of foot ulcer and infections. It can present early on as an acute inflammatory process which is frequently mistaken for gout, osteomyelitis, or injury and then develops into chronic arthritis with severe deformities. It is always a clinical challenge to differentiate between Charcot foot and osteomyelitis. Systemic signs of infection (fever, leucocytosis), breach in the skin of the foot, positive probe test, and positive-labelled leucocyte scan favor a diagnosis of osteomyelitis. MRI and Tc bone scan have also been used to differentiate between the two.

Proper foot care education to the patient to avoid further deterioration and to prevent ulcers is of paramount importance. Nonweight bearing and immobilization of the affected limb have been the mainstays of therapy. Bisphosphonates have also been reported to be useful for the acute phase of Charcot arthropathy.

Detailed discussion on ulceration and infective complications of foot in diabetes is beyond the scope of this chapter. However, general principles for wound care remain the same. There are two ways in which diabetic foot is at disadvantage. One, diabetic foot is more predisposed to trauma. Any skeletal abnormality in foot in patient with diabetes predisposes them to increased risk of trauma because of sensory loss. Diabetic patients with minor trauma to foot are more likely to ignore because of lack of pain. Insensate foot also alters proprioception and thus makes these patients more prone to falls and major trauma while walking. Moreover, neuropathy further contributes to deformity of the foot, e.g., atrophy of mid-foot muscles causes clawing. Associated autonomic neuropathy results in dry skin and more risk of fissures. Secondly, altered blood supply to the foot, due to vasculopathy, makes these

trauma and infection difficult to heal. Moreover, delivery of antibiotics is also hampered. And because of this reason, patent vasculature is a must for a normal foot in diabetics. In the presence of vascular adequacy, even if minor wounds are sustained, they would heal with basic care.

Conclusion

Musculoskeletal complications of diabetes hence are a large number of diverse set of disorders. In contrast to other complications of diabetes, a good clinical eye has a key role in the diagnosis of these disorders. Many a times, these complications are missed in a busy clinic practice, as most of these complications are not severe and life-threatening, although lack of their diagnosis and timely treatment may lead to significant morbidity in the patients.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Anti-diabetes medications linked with adverse impact on bone health include:
   (a) Sulfonylureas
   (b) Insulin
   (c) SGLT2 inhibitors
   (d) DPP-4 inhibitors
   (e) Glitazones
2. All of the following are true regarding diabetic myonecrosis except:
   (a) Painful.
   (b) ESR is raised.
   (c) Spontaneously resolving.
   (d) Recurrence rates are low.
   (e) Asymmetrical.
3. All of the following are true regarding diabetic amyotrophy except:
   (a) Asymmetrical.
   (b) Predominantly motor involvement and muscle wasting.
   (c) Spontaneously resolving.
   (d) Definitive role of immunosuppressive and glucocorticoids in management.
   (e) Sensory involvement is absent.
4. Most commonly involved joints in adhesive capsulitis in patients with diabetes:
   (a) Knee
   (b) Shoulder
   (c) Hips
   (d) Elbow
   (e) Metacarpophalangeal
5. Carpel tunnel syndrome leads to wasting of the following small muscles of the hand except:
   (a) Abductor pollicis brevis
   (b) Abductor pollicis longus
   (c) Extensor pollicis brevis
   (d) Extensor pollicis longus
   (e) Opponens pollicis
6. Carpel tunnel syndrome is due to the involvement of the following nerve:
   (a) Ulnar nerve
   (b) Median nerve
   (c) Radial nerve
   (d) Cutaneous nerve of the forearm
   (e) Superficial peroneal nerve
7. Antihypertensive medications with uric acid-lowering effects include:
   (a) Amlodipine
   (b) Ramipril
   (c) Lisinopril
   (d) Olmesartan
   (e) Losartan
8. Anti-lipid medication with uric acid-lowering properties:
   (a) Fibrates
   (b) Statins
   (c) Bile acid-binding resins
   (d) PCSK9 inhibitors
   (e) Ezetimibe
9. Medications acting on bone metabolism found to be beneficial in Charcot arthropathy include:
   (a) Teriparatide
   (b) Bisphosphonates
   (c) Calcitonin
   (d) Denosumab
   (e) Saracatanib
10. Pathogenesis of Charcot arthropathy involve all except:
    (a) Increased inflammatory cytokines
    (b) Increased osteoclast activation
    (c) Decreased RANK ligand expression
    (d) Increased osteoblast activation
    (e) Increased local hyperemia

Correct Answers

1. (c and e)
2. (d) Recurrence rates are low.
3. (d and e)
4. (b) Shoulder
5. (b and e)
6. (b) Median nerve
7. (e) Losartan
8. (a) Fibrates
9. (b and d)
10. (c and d)

Box 56.1: Adhesive Capsulitis of the Shoulder
Painful progressive restriction of shoulder motion
30 months: average duration of symptoms
10–29% prevalence among diabetics
Treatment: analgesics, physiotherapy, intra-articular corticosteroid injection, and arthroscopic capsular release

Box 56.2: Limited Joint Mobility
Collagen disease seen only in diabetes
Prevalence 8–50%
Stiff hands with thick, tight, and waxy skin
Asymptomatic
Harbinger of microvascular disease

References

1. Serban AL, Udrea GF. Rheumatic manifestations in diabetic patients. J Med Life. 2012;5(3):252–7.
2. Maisnam I, Dutta D, Mukhopadhyay S, Chowdhury S. Lean mass is the strongest predictor of bone mineral content in type-2 diabetes and normal individuals: an eastern India perspective. J Diabetes Metab Disord. 2014;13(1):90.
3. Silva MBG, Skare TL. Musculoskeletal disorders in diabetes mellitus. Rev Bras Reumatol. 2012;52(4):594–609.
4. Lebiedz-Odrobina D, Kay J. Rheumatic manifestations of diabetes mellitus. Rheum Dis Clin N Am. 2010;36:681–99.
5. Mathew AJ, Nair JB, Pillai SS. Rheumatic-musculoskeletal manifestations in type 2 diabetes mellitus in South India. Int J Rheum Dis. 2011;14:55–60.
6. Papana N, Maltezos E. The diabetic hand: a forgotten complication? J Diabetes Complicat. 2010;24:154–62.

Diabetes and the Skin

57

Justine Mestdagh, J. Damman, and H. Bing Thio

Chapter Objectives

- There are several skin manifestations in diabetes mellitus; some of them occur frequently.
- Some of these are specific for type 1 diabetes mellitus, others for type 2, and some occur in both.
- Medications used to treat diabetes mellitus may also cause skin adverse effects.

Introduction

Many diabetes mellitus patients develop skin manifestations during the course of the disease, and children are no exception [1, 2]. Prevalence rates range from 30% to 80% [2, 3]. However we should keep in mind that diabetes is a highly prevalent disease and therefore should remain critical toward studies trying to determine a direct relationship without being aware of possible confounding factors. Our skin is a large organ of the human body and is directly visible to the outside world. Because of this patients tend to care a lot about their skin, sometimes more than clinicians realize [4].

Skin manifestations of diabetes mellitus are diverse and range from cosmetic concerns to severe conditions more frequently seen in long-standing disease. Recognizing these is a rewarding clinical skill to master, since some of them may be important diagnostic clues as well as markers of advanced disease [5]. Some diabetes-related skin defects can be a port of entry for later infections. Several medications can affect the skin shortly after intake. Some skin manifestations are more specific for diabetes than others. Besides evaluating the skin for establishing a diagnosis of diabetes, it can also be a help for evaluating treatment success, study results, and glucose levels.

Pathogenesis

Pathogenesis of the skin involvement in diabetes mellitus can be seen as a collaborative phenomenon of biochemical, vascular, neurological, immune-mediated, and metabolic changes with long-standing hyperglycemia as its key player. Diabetics with hemoglobin A1c values <8 mmol/ml tend to have less cutaneous involvement than those with hemoglobin A1c values >8 mmol/ml [2].

Increased oxidative stress and chronic high levels of circulating glucose lead to a nonenzymatical chemical reaction between glucose and proteins, lipids, and nucleic acids. The chemical reactions between amino acids and the carbonyl group of glucose are called a Maillard reaction. First reversible Schiff's bases are formed followed by the conversion to stable products. Finishing transforming chemical reaction lead to the formation of advanced glycation end products (AGE) which bind to specific receptor on many cell surfaces initiating numerous intracellular signaling cascades leading to diabetic complications [6]. Due to formation of AGE and oxidative stress, vascular damages appear [7]. Neuropathy leads to hypo- or even anhidrosis, vascular dilation causing erythema, and hyposensation. Vascular and neurological changes are responsible for loss of sensation, impaired blood supply, and failure of homeostatic regulatory mechanism in end organs such as the skin.

Hyperglycemia increases the flux through to polyol and hexosamine pathways with activation of protein kinase C, NF-kappa b, mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), and others [8]. Consequently this leads to endothelial proliferation and basement membrane thickening with deposition of periodic acid-Schiff stain positive (PAS+) material with narrowing of arterioles, capillaries, and venules.

J. Mestdagh · H. B. Thio (✉)
Department of Dermatology, Erasmus University Medical Center, Rotterdam, The Netherlands
e-mail: h.thio@erasmusmc.nl

J. Damman
Department of Pathology, Erasmus University Medical Center, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_57

Keratinocyte function is frequently altered which leads to an impaired epidermal barrier function and delayed wound healing [9–11]. Decreased hydration might play a role. pH values of the skin are higher than in nondiabetic patients leading to an increase in bacterial colonization.

Skin Manifestations of Diabetes Mellitus

Certain skin manifestations are specific for type 1 diabetes mellitus, others for type 2, and some occur in both. In the following text, diseases appear in alphabetical order. Whether they occur predominantly in type 1 diabetes mellitus, 2, or both will be mentioned.

Acanthosis Nigricans

Acanthosis nigricans consists of velvety hyperpigmented plaques in the intertriginous areas of the skin. Frequently skin tags are found within these lesions. Most patients are asymptomatic although maceration, malodor, and discomfort have been reported. It is the most frequent skin condition in diabetes; almost all type 2 diabetic patients develop acanthosis nigricans to a certain extent. It is more frequently seen in Hispanics and native as well as African Americans; men and women are equally affected. Besides diabetes, acanthosis nigricans can also appear in obese individuals, patients with insulin resistance (both independently associated), and less frequently in patients with acromegaly, Cushing syndrome, and leprechaunism. It is sometimes observed in malignancies (especially those of the stomach) and associated with certain medications, for example, nicotinic acid, corticosteroids, and rarely repetitive insulin injections. Lastly it can appear in healthy individuals as well [12, 13].

Histopathology of the affected skin reveals hyperkeratosis, papillomatosis, mild acanthosis, and sometimes hyperpigmentation of the basal layer. There is usually no dermal inflammation. The hyperkeratosis causes the darkened aspect, and papillomatosis causes accentuation of skin markings. High levels of circulating insulin bind the tyrosine kinase growth factor receptors (e.g., insulin-like growth factor 1receptor) on fibroblasts and keratinocytes. This stimulates these cells to grow, causing the typical skin manifestations.

People with extensive acanthosis nigricans seem to have higher fasting plasma insulin levels [14, 15].

Weight reduction, exercise, and if necessary glucose-lowering treatment in combination with lipid-lowering drugs may reduce insulin resistance and improve acanthosis nigricans. If patients experience discomfort, ointments containing salicylic acid, urea, lactic acid, or retinoids may reduce the hyperkeratotic lesions. Systemic retinoids have been used in severe cases. Recurrence is often seen after discontinuation of therapy (Figs. 57.1 and 57.2).

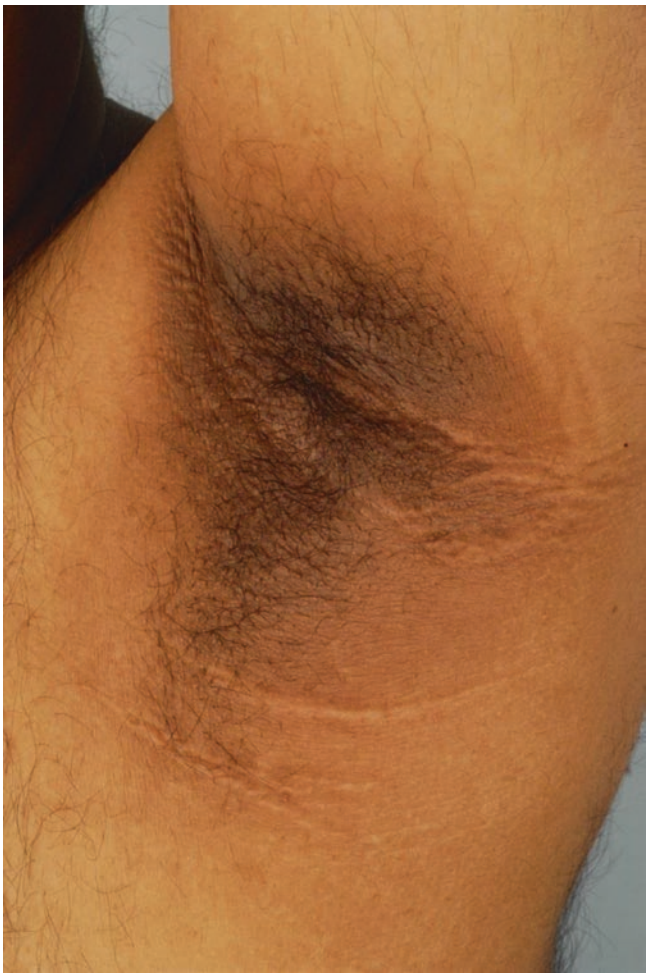


Fig. 57.1 Acanthosis nigricans

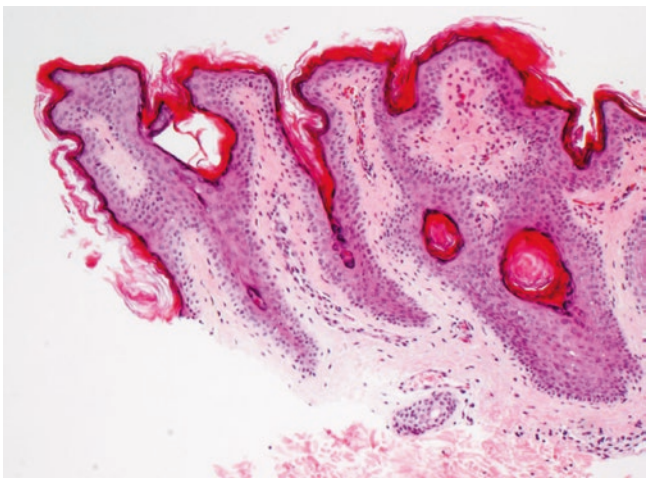


Fig. 57.2 Acanthosis nigricans. Acanthosis nigricans: the lesion shows hyperkeratosis and papillomatosis usually without dermal inflammation

Acrochordon

Acrochordon, also called fibroma molle, fibroepithelial polyp, or skin tag, is a soft pedunculated flesh colored papule in the axillae, neck, eyelids, and in the inframammary region. Patients are asymptomatic apart from possible cosmetic concerns and rarely experience pain or irritation when the fibroma contains nerve endings.

There is a slight female predisposition and prevalence increases with age. The association between acrochordon and obesity is well established, but they are also an independent marker for diabetes, especially type 2 [16]. Skin tags have been detected in 23% of diabetic patients compared to 8% in a healthy control group. Though there is some controversy regarding the total amount of skin tags per individual and the associated risk of diabetes, current literature seems to show that the higher the number, the higher the risk for diabetes mellitus. Patients with over 30 skin tags are especially at risk. A positive correlation has also been found between the total number of skin tags and mean fasting plasma glucose [17, 18] making skin tags an even more sensitive cutaneous marker for diabetes than acanthosis nigricans. Clinicians should be aware of this association when taking note of multiple acrochordons. As mentioned earlier, high levels of circulating insulin stimulate keratinocytes to grow, which could help explain the higher prevalence of skin tags in diabetics. Treatment is not necessary, but if patients want them to be removed, they can be excised. Electrodessication and cryotherapy are two valid alternatives (Figs. 57.3 and 57.4).

Acquired Perforating Dermatosis

Acquired perforating dermatosis presents with scaly highly pruritic follicular hyperkeratotic dome-shaped papules and nodules, often with central umbilication or a central keratotic plug on the extensor surfaces of the lower extremities and in some cases also on the face, trunk, and dorsal area of the hands.

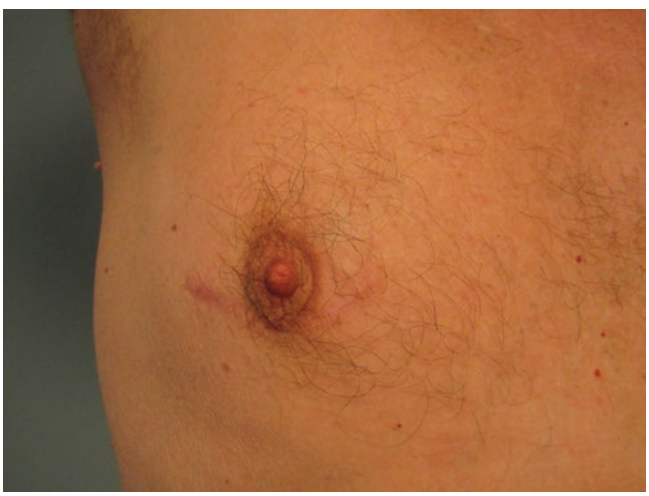


Fig. 57.3 Acrochordon in the right axilla

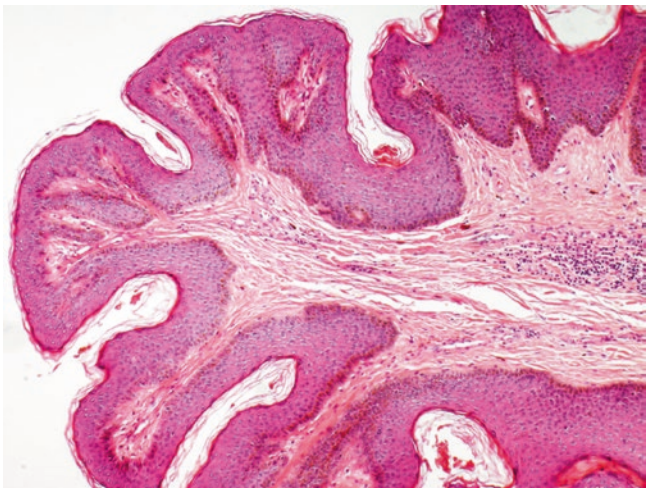


Fig. 57.4 Acrochordon or fibroepithelial polyp: the papules show a fibrovascular core covered by the epidermis showing hyperplasia sometimes resembling seborrheic keratosis. The stroma often shows loosely arranged collagen, an increased number of blood vessel and (in larger lesions) fat cells

This chronic disease is rare but more frequently seen in Afro-Americans with diabetes (both type 1 and 2) and chronic kidney disease or hemodialysis (as high as 10%). However it can also occur in diabetics with normal kidney function [19–21].

Skin conditions to be included in the differential diagnosis are prurigo nodularis, folliculitis, arthropod bites, multiple keratoacanthomas, psoriasis vulgaris, and lichen planus. Pathologic examination shows a hyperplastic invaginating epidermis containing parakeratosis, degenerated connective tissue, and cellular debris, following the transepidermal elimination of dermal collagen and elastin.

The cause is probably a multifactorial interplay between glycation of collagen, Koebner phenomenon, microvasculopathy, and inflammatory reaction to altered dermal collagen or deposition of substances which are not removed by dialysis. It is unclear whether the abnormality appears first in the dermis or epidermis; pruritus is probably rather the cause of these changes than the effect. Acquired perforating dermatosis is difficult to treat. Treating the pruritus is the main goal. Coexisting disease should be treated according to current standards though dialysis does not improve the disease course. Topical glucocorticoids, antihistamines, topical and systemic retinoids, doxycycline, allopurinol, cryotherapy, and phototherapy are all used for symptom relief (Figs. 57.5, 57.6, and 57.7).

Bullosis Diabeticorum

Patients suffering from bullosis diabeticorum present with uni- to bilateral spontaneous tense noninflammatory bullae on normal appearing skin of the dorsolateral sides of the lower

extremities and sometimes of the hands. Though it is thought to be a distinct marker for diabetes, it is the rarest skin manifestation in diabetes occurring in 0.5% of all diabetic patients.

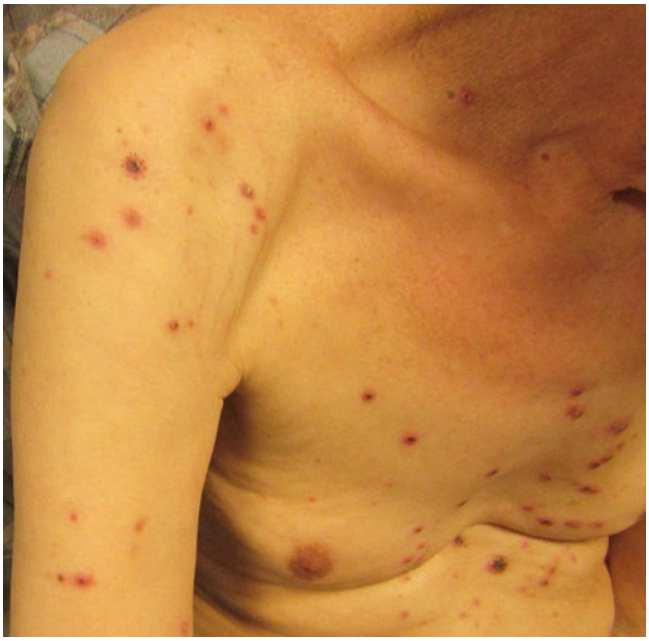
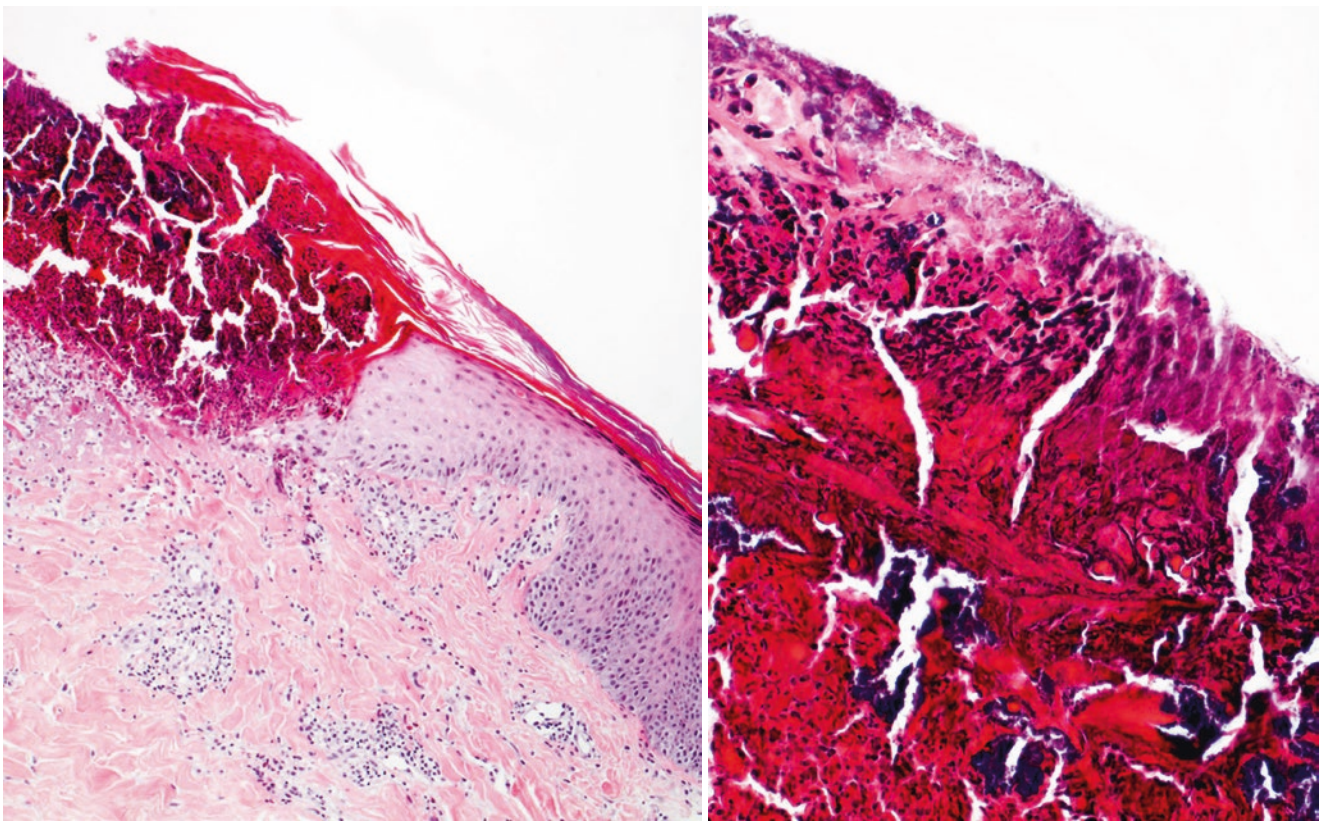


Fig. 57.5 Acquired perforating dermatosis

No large population studies have confirmed this, so its frequency might be higher. It does occur more in men with long-standing poorly controlled type 1 diabetes mellitus with peripheral neuropathy [22, 23].

There are three known subtypes. In the first, "classic" type the cleavage level of the bullae is intraepidermal [24], the fluid in these bullae is clear and sterile, and the surrounding epidermis shows spongiosis. There is no pain. These bullae resolve spontaneously without scars in a few weeks, but recurrence is possible. Histopathological examination shows a subepidermal blister with early reepithelialization. The second type consists of bullae filled with hemorrhagic fluid. The cleavage level lies below the dermoepidermal junction. Healing comes with scarring and atrophy. The third type appears on tanned skin, and its cleavage level lies within the lamina lucida of the dermoepidermal junction. Healing leaves no scars. The differential diagnosis of bullosis diabeticorum includes primary autoimmune blistering such as pemphigus, bullous pemphigoid, erythema multiforme, epidermolysis bullosa acquisita, and porphyria cutanea tarda. Immunofluorescence tests are negative. Bullosis diabeticorum is associated with high blood glucose levels, but venous pressure elevation may also play a role. Microangiopathic vessels offer less blood to the skin which then becomes more prone to acantholysis and thus blister



Figs. 57.6 and 57.7 Acquired perforating dermatosis. The lesion shows an invaginating epidermis containing a parakeratotic plug with degenerated connective tissue fibers and cellular debris

formation. Other possible causes are autoimmune phenomena, exposure to UV light, and alterations in calcium and magnesium levels [22, 25, 26]. Spontaneous resolution is seen within 2–5 weeks [27]. No treatment is needed besides the prevention of complications, e.g., chronic ulcers and bacterial infections. In cases of major discomfort, aspiration can be considered. Nevertheless recurrence of bullae is frequent.

Diabetic Cheiroarthropathy (Diabetic Stiff Hand or Limited Joint Mobility Syndrome)

People with diabetic cheiroarthropathy have a thickened waxy skin and bilateral limited joint mobility of the hands and fingers leading to flexion contractures (e.g., Dupuytren's disease). This process starts at the fifth digit and progresses radially. It can extend to the wrists, elbows, ankles, knees, toes, and cervicothoracic spine. Clinical examination can reveal a prayer sign, which is the inability to approximate the palmar surfaces of the hands and fingers. Some patients have Huntley papules, which are multiple tiny papules grouped on the dorsal sides of the fingers or periungally. On histologic examination, a hyperkeratotic epidermis and dermal papillary hypertrophy are noticed. Up to 30% of diabetics have diabetic cheiroarthropathy. Incidence increases with disease duration but not with diabetes control. Although it is more common in patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes mellitus than in other individuals, the disease can occur in people without diabetes. If presenting in diabetic patients, it is a predictor of other complications (especially retinopathy and nephropathy). In children with type 1 diabetes, it is the earliest clinically apparent long-term complication [1].

Differences in the collagen household of the skin such as increased glycosylation of collagen lead to irreversible cross-linking of collagen and other proteins and decreased collagen degradation. Other possible contributing factors are microangiopathy, neuropathy [28, 29], and accumulation of AGE which, after binding their receptors, would stimulate inflammatory and fibrogenic growth factor receptors and cytokines via protein kinase C.

Diabetic cheiroarthropathy is not yet treatable, but control of diabetes and physiotherapy are likely to be helpful. Phototherapy, radiotherapy, prostacyclin, penicillin, cyclosporin, factor XIII, and sorbinil have been applied without spectacular results. Research in animals is currently underway, investigating drugs blocking the protein cross-linking or blocking interactions between AGE and their receptors in the early stages of the disease.

Diabetic Dermopathy

Lesions of diabetic dermopathy or so-called shin spots are dynamic; various stages can present in the same patient at the same time. They are usually asymmetrical, 0,5 to 1 cm large red to brown hyperpigmented spots ranging from atrophic macules to plaques. Plaques are more frequently recognized. These appear bilateral on the extensor parts of the legs but can rarely occur elsewhere and are usually asymptomatic. It is one of the most common skin manifestations in diabetes (type 1 and 2) with a prevalence up to 70%, although it is rare in children [1]. It is more frequent in men aged 50 and over and patients with poorly controlled diabetes. Although the association is strong, it is not entirely specific for diabetes mellitus since 20% on nondiabetic people have similar lesions [3]. Patients presenting with this dermopathy should be screened for diabetes especially if they present with four or more shin spots because they are thought to represent postinflammatory hyperpigmentation and cutaneous atrophy in the setting of poor vascular supply and microtrauma [30].

Shin spots may precede abnormal glucose metabolism but may also be a marker for microangiopathic complications such as retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy as well as macroangiopathic complications, especially coronary artery disease [30, 31]. Differential diagnosis with dermatophytosis should be made. Diabetic dermopathy should be a clinical diagnosis, and there is no need for skin biopsy. If performed, a specific histopathologic findings are seen such as hyperpigmentation of the epidermal basal layer, hemosiderin, and melanin in the dermis and thickening of the arteriolar basement membrane. There is no effective treatment, but some lesions resolve spontaneously in 18–24 months on average though atrophic hypopigmented scars are seen afterward. Infection prevention can be indicated and new lesions may always arise.

Disseminated Granuloma Annulare

Granuloma annulare is a rare benign inflammatory disease. The main efflorescences are erythematous papules which slowly expand centrifugally and resolve centrally to reveal annular plaques with superficial scaling. The back of the hands and arms is usually affected. Patients are usually asymptomatic but can experience pruritus. The disease can occur at any age but is mostly seen in children and adolescents. Multiple subtypes exist. Its relation to diabetes has been the subject of many discussions over the years, and now only the disseminated form is believed to be associated with diabetes, and even this correlation is only based on retrospective studies, and currently no case control studies are available [32, 33]. Generalized granuloma annulare can also be seen in malignancies, thyroid dysfunction, hepatitis B and C, and HIV infections [34–38]. Histology reveals a granulomatous reaction pattern showing palisading of histiocytes (and sometimes giant cells) and lymphocytes surrounding an area of necrobiotic/collagenolytic collagen (complete type). The necrobiotic areas show deposition of mucin. The incomplete type shows interstitial inflammation with histiocytes (sometimes admixed with giant cells)

and lymphocytes, and also mucin deposition can be found (incomplete/interstitial form). Pathologists sometimes have difficulties differentiating this disease from necrobiosis lipoidica because both present with infiltrating palisaded histiocytes and collagen degeneration in the dermis. In the disseminated form, inflammation may be mild, and the areas of inflammation are often found in the papillary dermis as seen in lichen nitidus. Also, necrobiosis and mucin deposition might be less profound. Not only pathologists have a hard time differentiating these diseases, they are also clinically resembling and might even coexist. Some authors suggest that generalized granuloma annulare is an early phase of necrobiosis lipoidica [39], although in the former, no epidermal atrophy or yellow discoloration is seen.

In contrast to localized forms, generalized granuloma annulare only rarely resolves spontaneously. A protracted and relapsing course is usually seen with often therapy-resistant lesions. Many different types of treatment have been used including cryotherapy, topical, intralesional or systemic corticosteroids, phototherapy (UVA1 and PUVA), chlorambucil, pentoxifylline, cyclosporine, fumaric acid ester derivatives, potassium iodide, niacinamide, etanercept, infliximab, adalimumab, efalizumab, hydroxychloroquine, and dapsone (Figs. 57.8 and 57.9).

Eruptive Xanthomas

Eruptive xanthomas are small (1–2 mm) yellow papules with erythematous border appearing in weeks to months, mostly asymptomatic but sometimes tender. They appear most frequently on the extensor surfaces of the limbs and the buttocks. Lesions often occur as a result of Koebner phenomenon on pressure sites. The yellow discoloration is due to foamy macrophages in the dermal inflammatory infiltrate of lymphocytes and neutrophils. They are associated with elevated eruptive triglycerides in the blood of patients with poorly controlled diabetes (especially type 2), in familial hypertriglyceridemia, and in patients using excessive amounts of alcohol. Insulin stimulates the activity of lipoprotein lipase and plays a role in the metabolism of triglycerides. This leads to a decreased clearance of very low-density lipoproteins and chylomicrons. This can be aggravated further by polyphagia caused by glycosuria [20, 40]. Clinicians should be aware of a significantly elevated risk of pancreatitis [41]. Only 0.1% of patients with diabetes will develop eruptive xanthomas. The main treatment objective is controlling the hypertriglyceridemia and to be aware of other problems related to this condition. Control of diabetes and hyperlipidemia leads to swift disappearance of the xanthomas. Local therapeutic options are application of trichloroacetic acid, excision, curettage, and CO2 laser therapy.

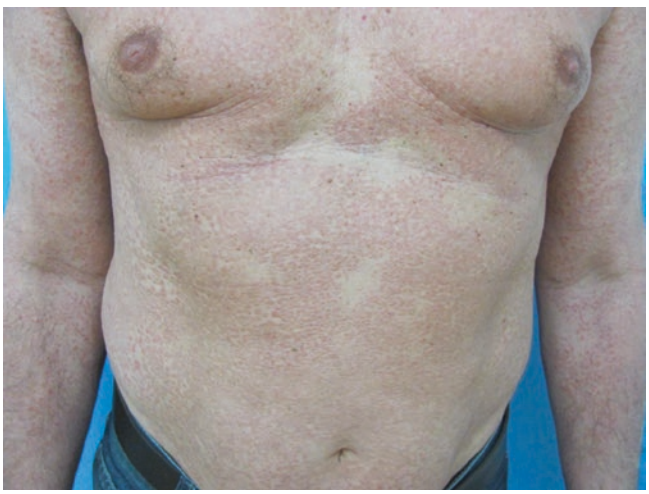


Fig. 57.8 Disseminated granuloma annulare

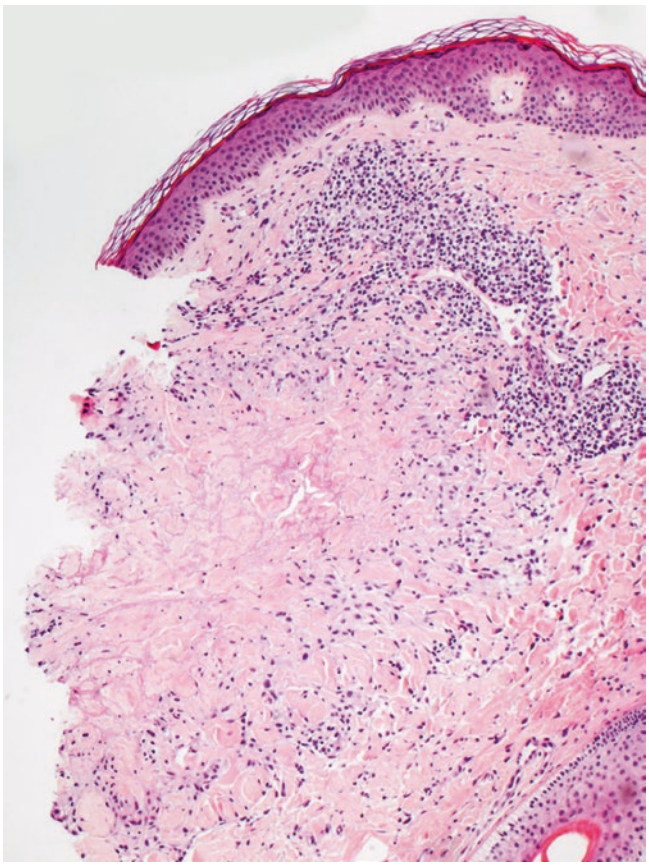


Fig. 57.9 Disseminated granuloma annulare. Granuloma annulare: areas of necrobiosis are surrounded by palisading histiocytes and lymphocytic inflammation. Although the histopathological features can be identical to classical granuloma annulare, disseminated granuloma annulare often shows a mild infiltrate located in the papillary dermis

Infections

Recurrent skin infections may be the presenting feature of diabetes. Bacterial and fungal infections appear more

frequently, more severe, and atypical. Skin infections occur in 20–50% of diabetic patients, more frequently in type 2, and are associated with poor glycemic control. Patients with well-controlled diabetes are not at higher risk of infections. Viral infection on the contrary is not more frequent. For further details we refer to Chap. 66, Infections.

Lichen Planus

Lichen planus is a chronic inflammatory disease of the skin, mucous membranes, scalp, and nails. Lesions are pruritic and present as flat-topped polygonal violaceous papules. Wickham striae can be visible on oral mucosa only and consist of a fine reticular network of white arborizing lines, but lichen planus can also affect genital mucosa. Four P's (pruritic, purple, polygonal, and papules or plaques) can be used as a mnemonic. The exact pathogenesis of lichen planus is not clear, but it has been postulated to be a T-cell-mediated autoimmune process, resulting in damage of keratinocytes [42–44]. Microscopic examination of a skin specimen reveals specific changes consisting of a lichenoid lymphocytic infiltrate with liquefactive degeneration. Half of the patients with lichen planus have impaired glucose metabolism, and approximately 25% suffer from diabetes. The reverse relationship has been examined much less, and the association is still controversial. Prevalence ranges from 0.9% to 1.4% in the general population vs. 2–4% in patients with either type 1 or 2 diabetes [45–47]. Although the disease is usually self-limiting, patients are frequently treated. Topical corticosteroids should be tried first. If necessary other options include oral corticosteroids, oral retinoids, cyclosporine, and phototherapy which have all shown efficacy (Figs. 57.10 and 57.11).

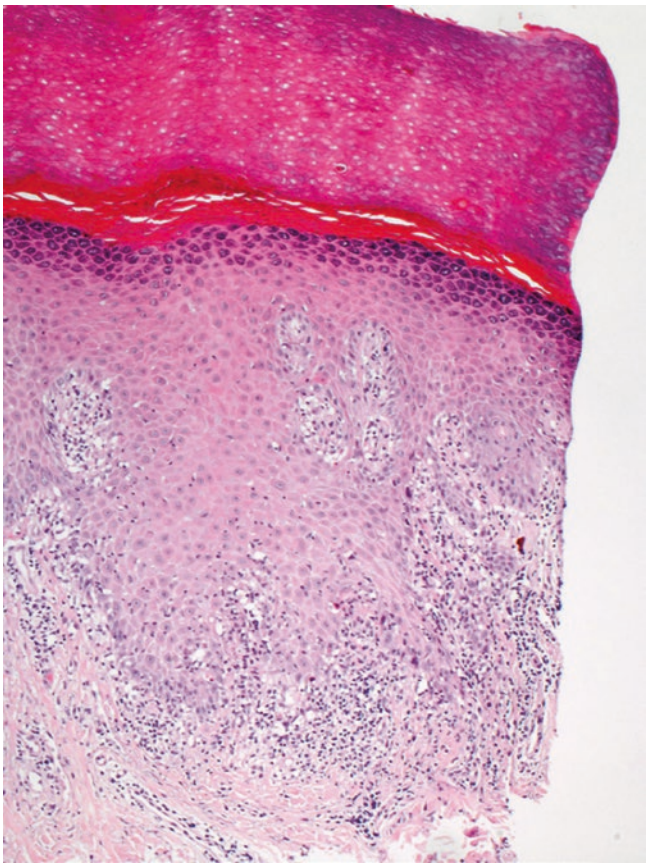


Fig. 57.10 Lichen planus: the lesion shows hyperkeratosis, acanthosis, and a lichenoid interface dermatitis with scattered apoptotic cells along the basement membrane

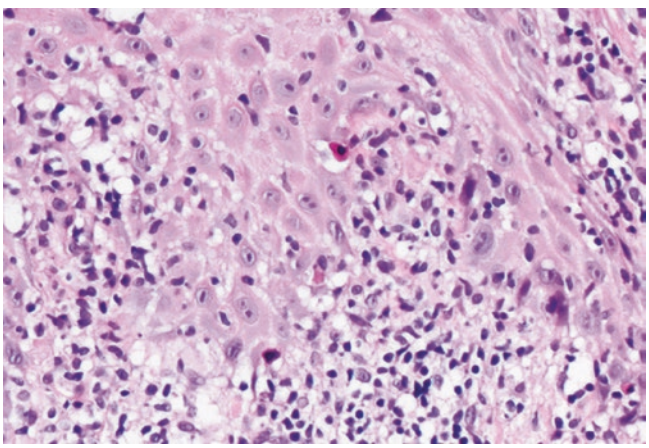


Fig. 57.11 Lichen planus: an interface dermatitis is noted with scattered apoptotic keratinocytes along the basal layer

Necrobiosis Lipoidica

Necrobiosis lipoidica is a chronic inflammatory skin disorder of collagen degeneration with a granulomatous response, thickening of the blood vessel walls, and fat deposition [48]. A small clinical study determined that patients with necrobiosis lipoidica had a higher proportion of natural antibodies against such as actin, myosin, keratin, and desmin when compared to patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus and healthy control subjects [49, 50]. The disease is typically seen in patients in the third to fourth decade. Normally patients are asymptomatic though pain and pruritus can occur. Necrobiosis lipoidica starts with bilateral non-scaling red papules mostly seen on the pretibial regions though other regions can be involved. Red-brown rims may indicate disease activity. There is a centrifugal spreading pattern. Red papules slowly turn into atrophic lesions with central yellow discoloration possibly due to underlying dermal fibrosis and lipid excess in the dermis or due to the formation of advanced glycation end products, especially 2-(2-furoyl)-4[5]-(2-furanyl)-1H-imidazole which has a yellow hue. Telangiectasia can be seen through the translucent plaque. In advanced disease large plaques can be seen, and 35% of the

lesions show ulceration. It should be known that chronic ulceration is a risk factor for the development of squamous cell carcinomas. Necrobiosis lipoidica is thought to be the best recognized skin associated disease of diabetes although it is rare. Prevalence ranges from 0,3 to 1,2% of all diabetics to 2–3% in the insulin-dependent subtype and even higher rates in female patients. Patients with type 1 diabetes develop the disease earlier than those with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes usually proceed the onset of necrobiosis lipoidica by 10 years, although simultaneous and reverse patterns can be seen [51]. The association is less strong if the skin disease presents on other body parts than the legs. Whether the severity of diabetes and the activity of necrobiosis lipoidica are correlated is still uncertain. Its presence is worth mentioning given the higher prevalence of retino- and nephropathy. Histology shows a dermal infiltrate which usually affects the entire thickness of the dermis. The infiltrate tends to be horizontally orientated showing intervening layers of granulomatous inflammation and horizontal layers of layers of necrobiosis (sandwich), in areas showing palisading of histiocytes surrounding necrobiosis. The deep dermis often shows admixture with lymphocytes and plasma cells. Whether microangiopathy, neuropathy, trauma, immunoglobulin deposition causing vasculitis, or a combination of these forms, the origin of the collagen matrix destruction is still under discussion. Necrobiosis lipoidica is very hard to treat, but sometimes slow healing occurs. No positive effect of glycemic control has been demonstrated so far [52, 53]. Topical steroids (if necessary under occlusion) are a therapeutic option but can also worsen the atrophy. If an active border is seen, intralesional steroids may be of help. Topical calcineurin inhibitors and compression therapy might be effective. Systemic treatment is possible with chloroquine, fumaric acid ester derivatives, mycophenolate mofetil, cyclosporine, anti-TNF-alpha, and psoralen with ultraviolet As radiation (PUVA). Lesions tend to relapse with therapy cessation. Spontaneous resolution is seen in 13–19% of patients after 6–12 years [20] (Figs. 57.12 and 57.13).

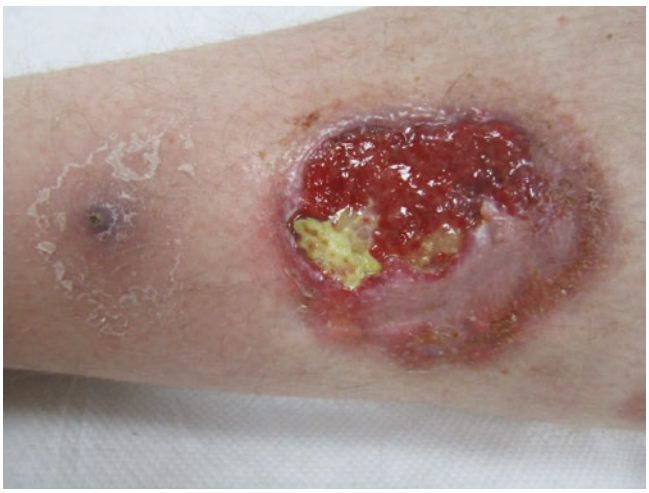


Fig. 57.12 Necrobiosis lipoidica

Psoriasis Vulgaris

Psoriasis is a chronic immune-mediated inflammatory disease of the skin. Patients present with erythematous scaly papules and plaques occurring most frequently in areas of friction [50]. It is common, the prevalence worldwide is estimated to be 1–3% [54]. The association between these two diseases has been made, but up until now, no consensus was made. Patients with diabetes may present with a more edematous inflammatory course of psoriasis as well as more therapy-resistant psoriasis [55]. Treatment consists of topical (e.g., calcipotriol, corticosteroids, and tacrolimus) or systemic immunomodulators as well as UV light [50] (Fig. 57.14).

Pruritus, Xerosis Cutis, and Keratosis Pilaris

Xerosis cutis, xeroderma, or dry skin is one of the earliest and most frequent skin signs in diabetes, found in almost half the diabetic population. Dry mucous membranes, for example, laryngitis scleroticans sicca can be observed as well. Xerosis can be demonstrated in diabetics by measuring transepidermal

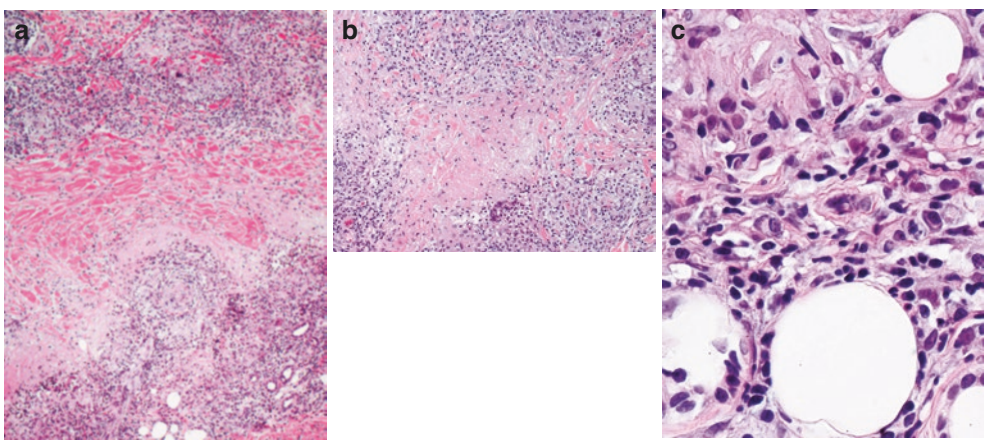


Fig. 57.13 Necrobiosis lipoidica . The infiltrate shows horizontal "sandwich" layering (**a**) of granulomatous inflammation and necrobiosis (**b**) and fibrosis. The deep dermis often shows a surrounding lymphocytic infiltrate admixed with plasma cells (**c**)

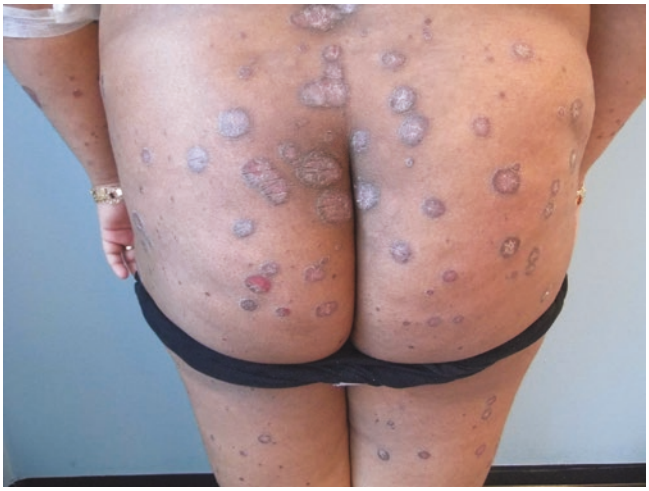


Fig. 57.14 Psoriasis vulgaris

water loss and high-frequency conductance of the forearm [51]. We should keep in mind that both xerosis cutis and diabetes mellitus are very common. The presence of xerosis cutis increases the risk of complications, including infection and ulceration [50]. Pruritus is the main complaint patients present with. In atopic patients, the prevalence of xerosis cutis is higher.

Xerosis cutis is believed to result from sympathetic and sensory neuropathy and also vasculopathy. Sweat gland dysfunction starts with thermoregulatory dysfunction of the extremities and later on the entire body (global anhidrosis) although the reverse can occur (e.g., postprandial gustatory sweating on the face, neck, and chest). Chronic generalized pruritus can be a sign of undiagnosed diabetes as well as truncal pruritus, burning feet syndrome, pruritus vulvae, and anogenital pruritus although the latter may be secondary to candidiasis or streptococci infection. Clinicians should keep in mind that underlying illness and drug reactions also cause pruritus. Regular use of emollients helps to prevent this skin problem.

Keratosis pilaris consists of rough follicular papules and variable erythema on the extensor surfaces of the extremities and sometimes on the face, buttocks, and trunk. It flares up in wintertime. 11.7% of children with type 1 diabetes have keratosis pilaris, but it is very common in nondiabetic patients as well. Xerosis cutis certainly plays a role in this disease. Treatment is difficult and not strictly necessary, but emollients as well as keratolytic agents, retinoids, and topical corticosteroids of low potency can be helpful.

Rubeosis Faciei: Palmar Erythema and Periungual Telangiectasia

Acral erythema is an erysipelas-like erythema of the hands (especially the thenar and hypothenar region) and feet and has a mostly patchy distribution due to microangiopathy [56]. It differs from physiological erythema caused by warmth, emotional state, hand elevation, and external pressure in its distribution and aspect of the erythema.

Table 57.1 Fitzpatrick scale of skin phototypes [61]. Different skin types are divided based on skin color and response to ultraviolet irradiation

Skin phototype	Skin color	Response to UV irradiation
1	White	Always burns, does not tan
2	White	Burns easily, tans with difficulty
3	Beige	Mild burns, tans gradually
4	Brown	Rarely burns, tans easily
5	Dark brown	Very rarely burns, tans very easily
6	Black	Never burns, tans very easily

Rubeosis faciei is a relatively common chronic flushed appearance of the face, neck, and upper extremities. It is more easily to notice in Fitzpatrick skin types one and two.

These two asymptomatic skin signs both result from small vessel occlusive disease with compensatory hyperemia of superficial blood vessels or from decreased vascular tone. Described prevalence in patients with type 1 and 2 diabetes range from less than 10% to over 60% [57–60]. This might be due to confounding factors such as Fitzpatrick skin type (Table 57.1), severity of disease, and inpatient status. It is associated with vessel engorgement which contributes to visual impairment in diabetics. The erythema is directly related to disease duration. Improvement is seen with adequate control of blood sugar levels, but these phenomena flare up with concomitant use of vasodilating therapies or vasodilators such as caffeine and alcohol.

Periungual telangiectasia is clinically visible dilated capillary veins due to loss of capillary loops and dilation of other surrounding capillaries. It is seen in 40–50% of all patients with diabetes. It can also be seen in connective tissue diseases such as scleredema and dermatomyositis. It is highly likely that nail folds show erythema and that cuticles are ragged (this should not be confused with paronychia caused by infection). Some patients are asymptomatic, while others experience discomfort in their fingertips. No treatment is necessary [50] (Fig. 57.15).

Skin Thickening and Scleredema Diabeticorum

Skin thickening and scleredema diabeticorum are associated with long-term disease progression and diabetic neuropathy ($P < 0.05$) [62] and are a cutaneous marker for other microvascular complications.

There are three subtypes of skin thickening. The first subtype there is a benign asymptomatic thickening which is only measurable with ultrasonography. This type is seen in nearly 25% of all diabetic patients. The second type of skin thickening is clinically noticeable. Phenotypes range from Huntley

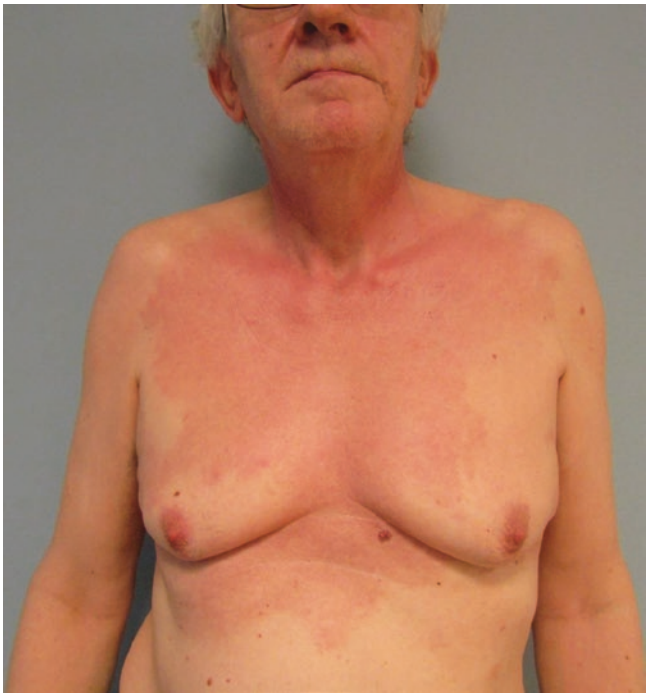


Fig. 57.15 Erythema

papules to diabetic hand syndrome in 8–50% of diabetic patients [63, 64]. The initial complaints in diabetic hand syndrome consist of stiffness and progresses to limited joint mobility and possibly Dupuytren's contracture (caused by shortening of skin anchoring ligaments).

Scleredema diabeticorum is a rare asymptomatic diffuse ill-defined erythematous induration of the upper back and neck possibly extending to the deltoid and lumbar region. Acral regions are spared. The skin can have a peau d'orange aspect. Reduced elasticity of the skin can result in reduced joint mobility and thus stiffness frequently coexists. Two and a half to fourteen percent of patients with diabetes suffer from this condition. Men and obese patients with long-lasting type 2 diabetes are at higher risk. Pathology reports show an unaffected epidermis and a homogenous thickened dermis with activated fibroblasts and enlarged collagen bundles separated by mucin deposition. It is import to take a full-thickness excisional biopsy. An excess of blood glucose leads to collagen synthesis by fibroblasts and retarded collagen degradation and glycosaminoglycan depositions. Scleredema is also seen in rheumatoid arthritis, hyperparathyroidism, Sjögren's syndrome, and seldom in IgG paraproteinemia or malignancy.

Scleredema diabeticorum and classic scleredema are clinically difficult to distinguish but appear to have distinct light and electron microscopic features [65]. Scleredema diabeticorum does not improve with glycemic control although this measure is believed to be an important preventive tool. Treatment is often difficult and includes UVA (psoralen UVA as well as UVA1) and systemic therapy such as oral corticosteroids, cyclosporine, and cyclophosphamide. In severe cases radiotherapy could give some relief [66–69].

Ulcers

See Chap. 65, foot complications.

Vitiligo

In vitiligo depigmented maculae are seen which are slowly progressive. The extent of affected skin ranges from localized to generalized and even universal and is mostly seen on the face, hands, and genitals. Histopathology shows the absence of melanocytes in the basal layer after Melan A staining. It is possible that some melanocytes are seen around the hair follicles. The depigmentation is the result of immune-mediated melanocyte loss or function loss, and tyrosinase is the main antigen recognized. One in three patients has a positive family history of vitiligo. One to seven percent of insulin-dependent diabetics suffer from vitiligo [2] compared to a 0.2–1% prevalence in the global population making it the most common depigmenting disorder [5]. Due to the high number of type 2 diabetics, these patients will be seen more often with vitiligo, though it is relatively more prevalent in type 1 diabetes. The combination of type 1 diabetes and vitiligo is suggestive for polyglandular autoimmune syndrome. This is a rare immune-mediated endocrinopathy with at least two affected endocrine glands. In these cases vitiligo is often more difficult to treat. Patients should avoid sun exposure. Topical corticosteroids of high potency can give satisfying results if applied early on (with or without narrowband ultraviolet B). Topical calcineurin inhibitors have shown some benefit. PUVA and 8-methoxypsoralen lotion can be used as well. In generalized vitiligo, treatment with ultraviolet B light may be an option as well. Camouflage therapy is an option if patients have cosmetic concerns (Figs. 57.16, 57.17, and 57.18).

Yellow Skin

The yellow skin of some diabetic patients consists of an orange to yellow discoloration of the skin, most obvious on the palms and soles. The sclerae are spared in contrast to patients suffering from jaundice. Yellow nails affects up to 40% of diabetic patients, especially the elderly. The yellow color is best visible at the distal part of the nails, and these discolored nails have a slower growth rate and appear more

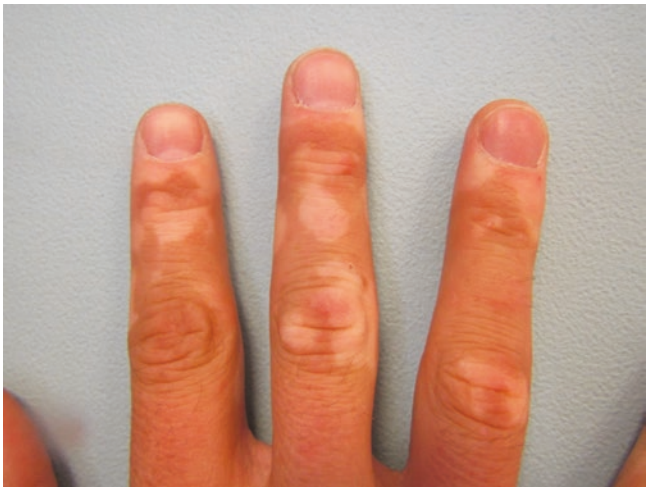


Fig. 57.16 Vitiligo

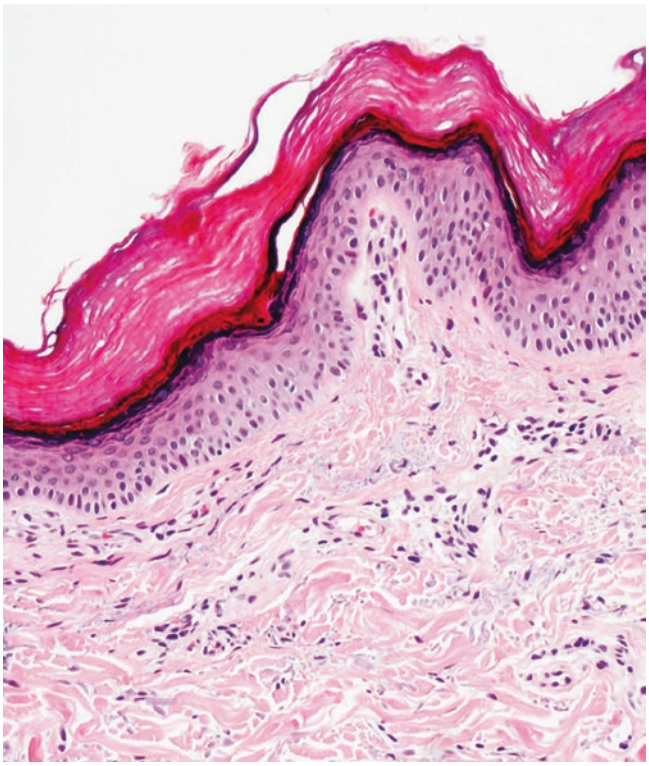


Fig. 57.17 Vitiligo: absence of melanocytes (HE stain)

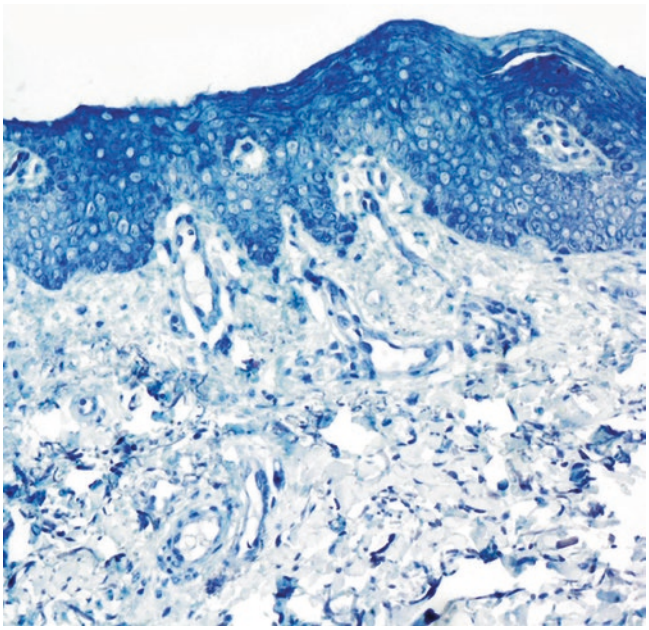


Fig. 57.18 Vitiligo: absence of melanocytes (Melan A stain)

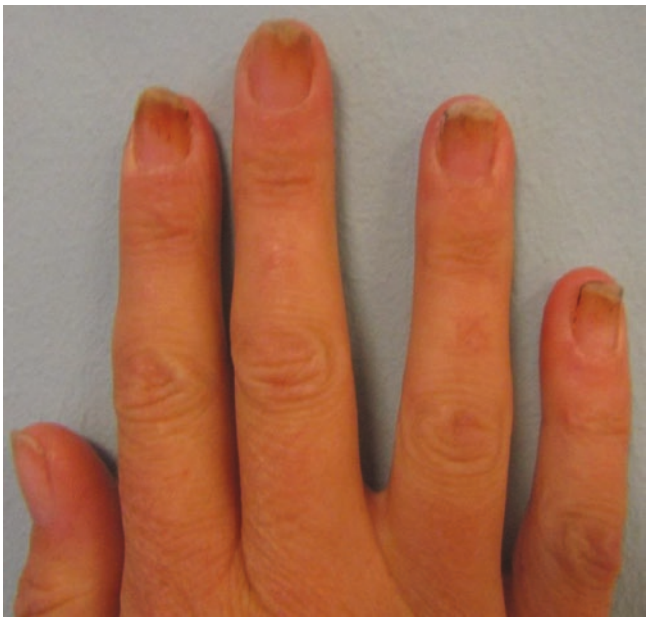


Fig. 57.19 Yellow nails

curved due to poor vascularization of the nail matrix. Differential diagnosis includes physiological processes in the elderly, onychomycosis, yellow nail syndrome, yellow nails due to lymphedema, or respiratory tract disease [70].

The relationship of both discolorations to diabetes mellitus is questionable. Some believe that diabetic patients are exposed to higher levels of carotene in their diet rich of fruits and vegetables, which together with an impaired hepatic conversion leads to carotenemia and thus yellow discoloration of skin and nails. Differential diagnosis of carotenemia includes jaundice hypothyroidism, hypogonadism, hypopituitarism, bulimia, and anorexia nervosa [12].

Another possibility is the formation of advanced glycation end products, especially 2-(2-furoyl)-4[5]-(2-furanyl)-1H-imidazole which has a yellow hue as mentioned before. There is currently no treatment available (Fig. 57.19).

Side Effects of Medication

Side Effects of Insulin

Insulin Lipodystrophy

Atrophy and hypertrophy of the skin might both occur although they are less frequently seen since the use of more pure insulins and synthetic analogues. Hypertrophy used to be present in two thirds of insulin-dependent patients, but this number has been reduced to 1–2%. It is characterized by a localized hypertrophy of subcutaneous fat. In these hypertrophic areas, insulin absorption is delayed; therefore, patients should rotate the injection site. Hypertrophy resolves spontaneously.

Atrophy at the insulin injection sites is due to an immunological reaction including IgM, IgE, and C3 in dermal blood vessels initiating a signal cascade that inhibits adipocyte differentiation [71]. Duration of exposure and depot formation play a role in the onset of atrophy. Substitution with fast-acting insulin has been suggested as therapy [3]. It is unknown why women are more likely to develop atrophy and why men suffer from lipohypertrophy more often.

Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion with the latest type of infusion materials does not frequently induce local infections, although allergy to tape and certain tubing constituents can be seen.

Allergic reactions to insulin are seen in approximately 2.4% of insulin-dependent diabetics. They can be classified into four categories (immediate local, generalized, delayed, and biphasic). Immediate local reactions range from erythema to urticaria and are assumed to be IgE mediated. Peak intensity is reached in 15–30 minutes and resolves within the hour. The immediate local reaction may progress to generalized erythema and urticaria. Anaphylaxis is rare. Delayed forms (4–24 hours after injection appearing 2 weeks after the start with insulin therapy [3, 10] present most frequently with itchy nodules at the injection site. Biphasic reactions are rare and consist of a combination of an immediate and a delayed local reaction in a patient with symptoms resembling serum sickness. Treatment with topical corticosteroids is almost always successful.

Oral Hypoglycemic Medication

A wide range of quit frequently appearing cutaneous drug reactions to oral antidiabetic agents have been described ranging from pruritus, photosensitivity, allergic reactions, erythema multiforme, erythema nodosum, urticarial, and pruritus to lichenoid and morbilliform eruptions.

- Sulfonylurea has the most skin-related side effects, as approximately 1–5% of patients develop cutaneous reactions within 2 months of treatment. Maculopapular eruptions are the most common. Other cutaneous side effects include erythema, urticaria, erythema multiforme, exfoliative dermatitis, erythema nodosum, pemphigus vulgaris, psoriasiform, and lichenoid drug eruptions. Most sulfonylureas can induce photosensitivity. Even with a negative patch, test oral antidiabetic therapies should be switched.

  Approximately 20% develop an alcohol flush with symptoms of redness, warmth, headache, tachycardia, and seldom dyspnea within 15 minutes after alcohol consumption and disappearing within the hour. Second-generation sulfonylureas present with less cutaneous side effects.
- Meglitinides or glinides rarely cause cutaneous reactions (<0.01%). If present they usually consist of pruritus, rash, urticaria, or generalized reactions such as anaphylaxis shock.
- Biguanides such as metformin cause cutaneous side effects ranging from psoriasiform drug eruptions and leukocytoclastic vasculitis to phototoxic reactions and erythema multiforme.
- Thiazolidinediones glitazones can seldom cause edema.
- Dipeptidyl peptidase IV inhibitors give dose-dependent necrotic skin lesions in monkeys. Increased rates of angioedema are noted only if they are used together with ace inhibitors due to inhibition of the degradation of bradykinin and substance P. Case reports show severe skin reactions such as bullous pemphigoid, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrosis.
- Alpha glucosidase inhibitors like acarbose have been responsible for acute generalized exanthematous pustulosis and erythema multiforme.
- Injection of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist (or incretinomimetics) can cause local granulomatous reactions (e.g. eosinophilic sclerosing lipogranulomas).

Concluding Remarks

The skin is often involved in diabetes mellitus as well as in side effects of medications used to treat diabetes. Some of those skin diseases are more specific for diabetes than others, and some are more frequent in type 1, others in type 2, or both types of diabetes mellitus.

The intensity ranges from mild to severe. Recognizing these skin conditions may be of great value since they can be the presenting symptom in diabetes mellitus, port of entry for infection or sign of advanced disease.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Which statement is false?
   (a) Circa 10% of all patients with diabetes mellitus develop skin manifestations.
   False, 30–80% of all patients with diabetes mellitus develop skin manifestations.
   (b) Patients care a lot about the appearance of their skin.
   (c) Disseminated granuloma annulare can be observed in diabetes mellitus patients, malignancies, thyroid dysfunction, hepatitis B and C, and HIV infections.
   (d) Skin manifestations of diabetes mellitus can be present before the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus.
   (e) Some of the skin manifestations of diabetes mellitus are linked to neuropathy and angiopathy.
2. What is true about acanthosis nigricans?
   (a) Acanthosis nigricans can only occur in patients with diabetes mellitus.
   (b) Acanthosis nigricans is highly disabling.
   (c) Acanthosis nigricans occurs in the intertriginous areas
   Correct, especially in the neck, armpits, and groins.
   (d) After treatment no recurrence is possible.
   (e) It occurs more often in the Caucasian race.
3. Acquired perforating dermatosis is (Fig. 57.20)
   (a) Easy to treat
   (b) A frequently appearing dermatosis
   (c) Is most frequently seen on the flexor areas of the lower extremities
   (d) A highly pruritic skin disease
   Correct. It presents with scaly highly pruritic follicular hyperkeratotic papules and nodules.
   (e) More frequently seen in Caucasian people

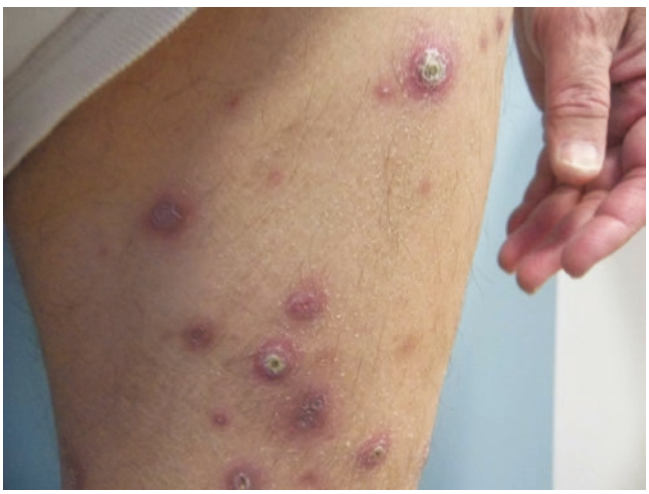


Fig. 57.20 Acquired perforating dermatosis

4. Which statement about bullosis diabeticorum is false?
   (a) There are three known subtypes.
   (b) All subtypes heal without scarring.
   False, the cleavage level of the second subtype lies below the dermoepidermal junction, so healing leaves scars.
   (c) It occurs more frequently in men with long-standing poorly controlled type 1 diabetes.
   (d) No treatment is needed.
   (e) Primary autoimmune blistering should be excluded.
5. Diabetic dermopathy is
   (a) A synonym for shin spots
   Correct, these are asymmetric red to brown hyperpigmented spots.
   (b) A synonym for diabetic stiff hands
   (c) No reason to screen for diabetes mellitus
   (d) A skin manifestation that never precedes diabetes mellitus
   (e) A unilateral appearing dermatosis
6. Which statement concerning eruptive xanthomas is false?
   (a) Patients with eruptive xanthomas are usually asymptomatic.
   (b) There is a correlation with elevated blood triglycerides.
   (c) There is an elevated risk of pancreatitis.
   (d) Systemic treatment is indicated.
   False, the main treatment objective is controlling the hypertriglyceridemia. Local therapeutics can be used.
   (e) 10% of all diabetes mellitus patients develop eruptive xanthomas.
7. Which statement on granuloma annulare is false?
   (a) Granuloma annulare is a rare benign inflammatory disease.
   (b) This disease usually occurs on the hands and arms.
   (c) All forms occur more frequently in patients with diabetes mellitus.
   False, only the disseminated form occurs more frequently in diabetes mellitus patients.
   (d) It is sometimes histopathologically difficult to distinguish from necrobiosis lipoidica.
   (e) Multiple subtypes exist.
8. Which statement on lichen planus is true?
   (a) Lichen planus is a chronic inflammatory disease due to overactivity of the B-cells.
   (b) Lichen planus only occurs on the oral mucous membrane.
   (c) The relationship to diabetes mellitus is completely clear.
   (d) Lichen planus only occurs on the skin.
   (e) Four P's can be used as a mnemonic.

Correct, it stands for pruritic, purple, polygonal, papules, or plaques.

9. What is true about necrobiosis lipoidica?
   (a) It is important to diagnose.
   Correct, prevalence of retinopathy and nephropathy is higher in this subgroup of patients.
   (b) Never precedes diabetes mellitus.
   (c) Occurs in the first and second decade.
   (d) This skin condition never heals.
   (e) This skin condition is easy to treat.
10. Which statement on vitiligo is false?
   (a) Patients with vitiligo should avoid sun exposure.
   (b) After melan A staining, no melanocytes are observed on histopathological examination.
   (c) It occurs more often in type 2 diabetes.
   False, vitiligo occurs more frequently in type 1 diabetes. Both are autoimmune diseases.
   (d) Ultraviolet B light may be of help in the treatment of this disease.
   (e) Topical corticosteroids and calcineurin inhibitors are used in the treatment of vitiligo.

Correct Answers

1. (a) Circa 10% of all patients with diabetes mellitus develop skin manifestations
   False, 30–80% of all patients with diabetes mellitus develop skin manifestations
2. (c) Acanthosis nigricans occurs in the intertriginous areas
   Correct, especially in the neck, armpits, and groins
3. (d) A highly pruritic skin disease
   Correct. It presents with scaly highly pruritic follicular hyperkeratotic papules and nodules.
4. (b) All subtypes heal without scarring
   False, the cleavage level of the second subtype lies below the dermoepidermal junction, so healing leaves scars
5. (a) A synonym for shin spots
   Correct, these are asymmetric red to brown hyperpigmented spots
6. (d) Systemic treatment is indicated
   False, the main treatment objective is controlling the hypertriglyceridemia. Local therapeutics can be used
7. (c) All forms occur more frequently in patients with diabetes mellitus
   False, only the disseminated form occurs more frequently in diabetes mellitus patients
8. (e) Four P's can be used as a mnemonic
   Correct, it stands for pruritic, purple, polygonal, papules, or plaques
9. (a) It is important to diagnose
   Correct, prevalence of retinopathy and nephropathy is higher in this subgroup of patients
10. (c) It occurs more often in type 2 diabetes
   False, vitiligo occurs more frequently in type 1 diabetes. Both are autoimmune diseases

Glossary

Atrophy a loss of tissue from the epidermis, dermis, or subcutaneous tissues. There may be fine wrinkling and increased translucency if the process is superficial.

Erythema redness of the skin produced by vascular congestion or increased perfusion.

Koebner phenomenon the onset of new inflammatory skin lesions after minor trauma such as scratching.

Macula a circumscribed alteration in the color of the skin.

Nodule a solid mass in the skin, which can be observed as an elevation or can be palpated. It is more than 0.5 cm in diameter. It may involve the epidermis and dermis, dermis and subcutis, or subcutis alone. It may consist of fluid, other extracellular material (e.g., amyloid), inflammatory, or neoplastic cells.

Papule a circumscribed palpable elevation, less than 0.5 cm in diameter. By careful examination, it is often possible to determine whether the thickening involves predominantly the epidermis or the dermis and what type of pathological process is concerned. The only distinction between a papule and a nodule is the size, and this is artificial; some lesions characteristically occur at the smaller size of a papule, whereas others typically enlarge from a papule to become a nodule. Recording a finite size is more useful.

Plaque an elevated area of the skin, usually defined as 2 cm or more in diameter. It may be formed by the extension or coalescence of either papules or nodules as in psoriasis and granuloma annulare, respectively. Small plaque is sometimes used for such lesions 0.5–2 cm in diameter.

Sclerosis diffuse or circumscribed induration of the subcutaneous tissues. It may also involve the dermis, when the overlying epidermis may be atrophic. It is characteristically seen in scleroderma but may occur as a sequel to or in association with many different processes.

Ulcer a loss of the dermis and epidermis, often with loss of the underlying tissues.

Vesicles and bullae visible accumulation of fluid within or beneath the epidermis. Vesicles are small (less than 0.5 cm in diameter) and often grouped. Bullae, which may be of any size over 0.5 cm, should be subdivided as multilocular (due to coalesced vesicles, typically in eczema) or unilocular [72].

References

1. Baselga Torres E, Torres-Pradilla M. Manifestaciones cutáneas en ninos con diabetes mellitus y obesidad. Actas Dermosifiliogr. 2014;105:546–57.
2. Van Hattem S, Bootsma AH, Thio HB. Skin manifestations of diabetes. Cleve Clin J Med. 2008;75(11):772–87.
3. Demirseren DD, Emre S, Akoglu G, et al. Relationship between skin diseases and extracutaneous complications of diabetes mellitus : clinical analysis of 750 patients. Am J Clin Dermatol. 2014;15:65–70.
4. Han G. A new appraisal of dermatologic manifestations of diabetes mellitus. Cutis. 2014;94(1):E21–6.
5. Duff M, Demidova O, Blackburn S, et al. Cutaneous manifestations of diabetes mellitus. Clin Diabetes. 2015;33:40–8.
6. Halban PA, Polonsky KS, Bowden DW, Hawkins MA, Ling C, Mather KJ, et al. Beta-cell failure in type 2 diabetes: postulated mechanisms and prospects for prevention and treatment. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(6):1751–8.
7. Brownlee M. The pathobiology of diabetic complications: a unifying mechanism. Diabetes. 2005;54:1615–25.
8. Barlovic DP, Soro-Paavonen A, Jandeleit-Dahm KA. RAGE biology, atherosclerosis and diabetes. Clin Sci (Lond). 2011;121(2):43–55.
9. Wertheimer E, Trebicz M, Eldar T, et al. Differential roles of insulin receptor and insulin-like growth factor-1 receptor in differentiation of murine skin keratinocytes. J Invest Dermatol. 2000;115:24–9.
10. Benoliel AM, Kahn-Perles B, Imbert J, et al. Insulin stimulates haptotactic migration of human epidermal keratinocytes through activation of NF-kappa B transcription factor. J Cell Sci. 1997;110:2089–97.
11. Tsao MC, Walthall BJ, Ham RG. Clonal growth of normal human epidermal keratinocytes in a defined medium. J Cell Physiol. 1982;110:219–29.
12. Ahmed I, Goldstein B. Diabetes mellitus. Clin Dermatol. 2006;24(4):237–46.
13. Murphy-Chutorian B, Han G, Cohen SR. Dermatologic manifestations of diabetes mellitus: a review. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am. 2013;42(4):869–98.
14. Brockow K, Steinkraus V, Rinninger F, Abeck D, Ring J. Acanthosis nigricans: a marker for hyperinsulinemia. Pediatr Dermatol. 1995;12:323–6.
15. Stuart CA, Gilkison CR, Smith MM, Bosma AM, Keenan BS, Nagamani M. Acanthosis nigricans as a risk factor for non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus. Clin Pediatr. 1998;37:73–9.
16. Kahana M, Grossman E, Feinstein A, et al. Skin tags: a cutaneous marker for diabetes mellitus. Acta Derm Venereol Suppl (Stockh). 1986;67:175–7.
17. Rasi A, Soltani-Arabshahi R, Shahbazi N. Skin tag as a cutaneous marker for impaired carbohydrate metabolism: a case-control study. Int J Dermatol. 2007;46:1155–9.
18. Sudy E, Urbina F, Maliqueo M, Sir T. Screening of glucose/insulin metabolic alterations in men with multiple skin tags on the neck. JDDG. 2008;6(10):852–6.
19. Levy L, Zeichner JA. Dermatologic manifestations of diabetes. J Diabetes. 2012;4:68–76.
20. Ferringer T, Miller F. Cutaneous manifestations of diabetes mellitus. Dermatol Clin. 2002;20:483–92.
21. Farrel AM. Acquired perforating dermatosis in renal and diabetic patients. Lancet. 1997;349:895–6.
22. Lipsky BA, Baker PD, Ahroni JH. Diabetic bullae: 12 cases of a purportedly rare cutaneous disorder. Int J Dermatol. 2000;39:196–200.
23. Oursler JR, Goldblum OM. Blistering eruption in a diabetic. Bullosis diabeticorum. Arch Dermatol. 1991;127:247–50.
24. Perez MI, Kohn SR. Cutaneous manifestations of diabetes mellitus. J Am Acad Dermatol. 1994;30:519–31.
25. James WD, Odom RB, Goette DK. Bullous eruption of diabetes mellitus. A case with positive immunofluorescence microscopy findings. Arch Dermatol. 1980;116:1119–92.
26. Derighetti M, Hohl D, Krayenbuhl BH, Panizzon RG. Bullosis diabeticorum in a newly discovered type 2 diabetes mellitus. Dermatology. 2000;200:366–7.
27. Martinez DP, Diaz JO, Bobes CM. Eruptive xanthomas and acute pancreatitis in a patient with hypertriglyceridemia. Int Arch Med. 2008;1:6.
28. Hollister DS, Brodell RT. Finger ‘pebbles’. A dermatologic sign of diabetes mellitus. Postgrad Med. 2000;107:209–10.
29. Quondamatteo F. Skin and diabetes mellitus: what do we know? Cell Tissue Res. 2014;355(1):1–21.
30. Morgan AJ, Schwartz RA. Diabetic dermopathy: a subtle sign with grave implications. J Am Acad Dermatol. 2008;58(3):447–51.
31. Romano G, Moretti G, Di Benedetto A, et al. Skin lesions in diabetes mellitus: prevalence and clinical correlations. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 1998;39:101–6.
32. Yun JH, Lee JY, Kim MK, et al. Clinical and pathological features of generalized granuloma annulare with their correlation: a retrospective multicenter study in Korea. Ann Dermatol. 2009;21(2):113–9.
33. Dabski K, Winkelmann RK. Generalized granuloma annulare: clinical and laboratory findings in 100 patients. J Am Acad Dermatol. 1989;20:39–47.
34. Toro JR, Chu P, Yen TS, et al. Granuloma annulare and human immunodeficiency virus infection. Arch Dermatol. 1999;135:1341–6.
35. Goucha S, Khaled A, Kharfi M, et al. Granuloma annulare. G Ital Dermatol Venereol. 2008;143:359–63.
36. Granel B, Serratrice J, Rey J, et al. Chronic hepatitis C virus infection asscociated with a generalized granuloma annulare. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol. 2006;20:186–9.
37. Ma HJ, Zhu WY, Yue XZ. Generalized granuloma annulare and malignant neoplasms. Am J Dermapathol. 2003;25:113–6.
38. Li A, Hogan DJ, Sanusi ID, et al. Granuloma annulare and malignant neoplasms. Am J Dermapathol. 2003;25:113–6.
39. Marchetti F, Geraduzzi T, Longo F, Faleschini E, Ventura A, Tonini G. Maturity-onset diabetes of the young with necrobiosis lipoidica and granuloma annulare. Pediatr Dermatol. 2006;23:247–50.
40. Parker F. Xanthomas and hyperlipidemias. J Am Acad Dermatol. 1985;13:1–30.
41. Kala J, Mostow EN. Images in clinical medicine. Eruptive xanthoma. N Engl J Med. 2012;366(9):835.
42. Gorouhi F, Davari P, Fazel N. Cutaneous and mucosal lichen planus: a comprehensive review of clinical subtypes, risk factors, diagnosis and prognosis. Sci World J. 2014;2014:742826.
43. Iijima W, Ohtani H, Nakayama T, et al. Infiltrating CD8+ T cells in oral lichen planus predominantly express CCR5 and CXCR3 and carry respective chemokine ligands RANTES/CCL5 and IP-10/CXCL10 in their cytolytic granules: a potential self-recruiting mechanism. Am J Pathol. 2003;163:261–8.
44. Usatine RP, Tinitigan M. Diagnosis and treatment of lichen planus. Am Fam Physician. 2011;84:53–60.
45. Seyhan M, Ozcan H, Sahin I, et al. High prevalence of glucose metabolism disturbance in patients with lichen planus. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2007;77:198–202.
46. Puri N. A study on cutaneous manifestations of diabetes mellitus. Our Dermatol Online. 2012;3:83–6.
47. Mahajan S, Koranne RV, Sharma SK. Cutaneous manifestations of diabetes mellitus. Indian J Dermatol Venereol Leprol. 2003;69:105–8.
48. Wake N, Fang JC. Images in clinical medicine. Necrobiosis lipoidica diabeticorum. N Engl J Med. 2006;355:e20.
49. Haralambous S, Blackwell C, Mappouras DG, et al. Increased natural autoantibody activity to cytoskeleton proteins in sera from patients with necrobiosis lipoidica, with or without insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Autoimmunity. 1995;20:267–75.

50. Horton B, Boler L, Subauste AR. Diabetes mellitus and the skin: recognition and management of cutaneous manifestations. South Med J. 2016;109(10):636–46.
51. Den Hollander JC, Hajdarbegovic E, Thio B, van der Leest RJT. Cutaneous manifestations of diabetes mellitus. In: Hall JC, Hall BJ, editors. Hall's manual of skin as a marker of underlying disease. Shelton: PMPH-USA; 2011. p. 245–59.
52. O'Toole EA, Kennedy U, Nolan JJ, et al. Necrobiosis lipoidica: only a minority of patients have diabetes mellitus. Br J Dermatol. 1999;140(2):283–6.
53. Cohen O, Yaniv R, Karasik A, Trau H. Necrobiosis lipoidica and diabetic control revisited. Med Hypotheses. 1996;46:348–50.
54. Non Arunachalam M, Dragoni F, Colucci R, et al. Non-segmental vitiligo and psoriasis comorbidity - a case-control study in Italian patients. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol. 2014;28(4):433–7.
55. Köstler E, Porst H, Wollina U. Cutaneous manifestations of metabolic diseases: uncommon presentations. Clinic Dermatol. 2005;23:457–64.
56. Yamaoka H, Sasaki H, Yamasaki H, et al. Truncal pruritus of unknown origin may be a symptom of diabetic polyneuropathy. Diabetes Care. 2010;33:150–5.
57. Singh R, Barden A, Mori T, et al. Advanced glycation end- products: a review. Diabetogia. 2001;44:129–46.
58. Young RJ, Hannan WJ, Frier BM, et al. Diabetic lipohypertrophy delays insulin absorption. Diabetes Care. 1984;7(5):479–80.
59. Naf S, Esmatjes E, Recasens M, et al. Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion to resolve an allergy to human insulin. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:634–5.
60. Huntley A. Diabetes mellitus: review. Dermatol Online J. 1995;1(2). http://dermatology.cdlib.org/DOJvol1num2/diabetes/dmreview.html. Accessed July 30,2008.
61. Lieverman LS, Rosenbloom AL, Riley WJ, et al. Reduced skin thickness with pump administration of insulin. N Engl J Med. 1980;303:940–1.
62. High AH, Tomasini CF, Argenziano G, Zalaudek I. Basic prinicples of dermatology. In: Bolognia JL, Jorizzo JL, Schaffer JV, editors. Dermatology. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders; 2012. p. 1–42.
63. Brik R, Berant M, Vardi P. The scleroderma-like syndrome of insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Metab Rev. 1991;7:121–8.
64. Collier A, Matthews DM, Kellett HA, et al. Change in skin thickness associated with cheiroarthropathy in insulin dependent diabetes mellitus. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed). 1986;292:936.
65. Krasagakis K, Hettmannsperger U, Trautmann C, et al. Persistent scleredema of Buschke in a diabetic: improvement with high-dose penicillin. Br J Dermatol. 1996;134:597–8.
66. Eberlein-Konig B, Vogel M, Katzer K, et al. Successful UVA1 phototherapy in a patient with scleredema adultorum. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol. 2005;19:203–4.
67. Hager CM, Sobhi HA, Hunzelmann N, et al. Bath-PUVA therapy in three patients with scleredema adultorum. J Am Acad Dermatol. 1998;38:240–2.
68. Bowen AR, Smith L, Zone JJ. Scleredema adultorum of Buschke treatment with radiation. Arch Dermatol. 2003;139:780–4.
69. Konemann S, Hesselmann S, Bolling T, et al. Radiotherapy of benign diseases-scleredema adultorum Buschke. Strahlenther Onkol. 2004;180:811–4.
70. de Berker D, Richert B, Baran R. Acquired disorders of the nails and nail unit. In: Griffiths C, Barker J, Bleiker T, Chalmers R, Creamer D, editors. Rook's textbook of dermatology ninth edition. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons Inc; 2016. p. 95.1–95.65.
71. Blanco M, Hernández MT, Strauss KW, Amaya M. Prevalence and risk factors of lipohypertrophy in insulin-injecting patients with diabetes. Diabetes Metab. 2013;39(5):445–53.
72. Coulson IH, Benton EC, Ogden S. Diagnosis of skin disease. In: Griffiths C, Barker J, Bleiker T, Chalmers R, Creamer D, editors. Rook's textbook of dermatology ninth edition. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons Inc; 2016. p. 4.1–4.26.

Suggested Further Reading

Behm B, Schreml S, Landthaler M, Babilas P. Skin signs in diabetes mellitus. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol. 2012;26(10):1203–11.
Makrantonaki E, Jiang D, Hossini AM, et al. Diabetes mellitus and the skin. Rev Endocr Metab Disord. 2016;17(3):269–82.

Foot Complications

58

Lawrence B. Harkless, Jarrod Shapiro, and Lisa D. Breshars

Introduction

Patient C was a 50-year-old diabetic male truck driver. He presented to the emergency department with red, hot, painful, swollen right foot and lower leg. There were no open lesions with unilateral edema and diffuse erythema. A venous duplex ultrasound was negative for deep venous thrombosis. Laboratory data showed no leukocytosis. The patient was admitted, placed on broad-spectrum IV antibiotics, and discharged 3 days later. He returned to the emergency department 3 days after discharge with the same complaint of persistent redness and swelling. A second venous ultrasound was negative for thrombosis, and he was discharged home with a new oral antibiotic and a referral to the podiatry clinic. After a 2-week delay in obtaining an appointment, the patient noted his right foot had changed shape and was flatter in the arch than the contralateral foot. The deformity progressed to ulceration requiring surgical intervention. This unfortunate outcome in which the correct diagnosis of acute Charcot neuroarthropathy was missed resulted in considerable patient morbidity and increased healthcare utilization.

Diabetic foot complications are serious events in the lives of patients with diabetes. Historically pedal complications were underappreciated by the general medical community; however, international efforts have improved the recognition of this very serious problem. All health professionals involved with diabetic patients should be well informed about the potential complications of diabetic foot syndrome. This chapter will discuss diabetic foot complications with an emphasis on a conceptual framework of the epidemiology, risk, and wound healing concepts underlying these complications. A detailed discussion of diabetic foot ulcerations, infections (including skin and soft tissue structure infections and osteomyelitis), Charcot neuroarthropathy, and the role of targeted partial foot amputations will provide healthcare professionals with an understanding of this detrimental disease.

Diabetes is highly common with an estimated 194 million diabetics worldwide [1]. It has also been estimated that 344 million people will be diabetic by 2030 [1]. Of this number of affected people, 15% will develop a diabetic foot ulcer at some time [2], which corresponds to 2–6% of diabetics yearly with an estimated 6.9 million that will be affected in 2030 [2]. Diabetes has a significant and often catastrophic effect on patients' lives with global health implications. It is estimated that diabetic patients overall have a 15% risk of lower limb amputation [3]. Of this number 85% are preceded by an ulcer [2]. Patients who develop an ulcer have a 34% risk of developing another wound within 1 year of healing the index ulcer and a 70% chance at 5 years [4].

Patients often fair poorly with the onset of foot ulceration. Diabetic foot ulcers that progress to lower limb amputation set off a catastrophic chain of events with a 50% risk of contralateral foot ulceration and a 50% rate of contralateral limb amputation within 2–5 years [5]. Mortality rates are significantly worsened when considering diabetic foot complications. Five-year mortality rates are 45%, 18%, and 55% for patients with neuropathic, neuroischemic, and ischemic ulcerations, respectively [6]. Limb amputations have similarly dismal survival outcomes. Mayfield et al. reviewed Veterans Affairs discharge documents of 5180 patients who underwent some type of lower limb amputation. They found a 56% 5-year mortality rate after transtibial and 70% mortality after transfemoral amputation [7]. Hoffman and colleagues found similar poor prognoses after major limb amputation with 1-, 3-, 5-, and 10-year survival rates of 78%, 61%, 44%, and 19%, respectively [8].

The addition of Charcot neuroarthropathy worsens yet the prognosis of these patients. Sohn et al. found a 59% incidence of foot ulceration in those with Charcot foot (538 of 911 patients). Of these, 66% were treated for foot ulcer at the

L. B. Harkless (✉)
College of Podiatric Medicine, Western University of Health Sciences, Pomona, CA, USA
e-mail: lharkless@westernu.edu

J. Shapiro · L. D. Breshars
College of Podiatric Medicine, Western University of Health Sciences, Pomona, CA, USA

Chino Valley Medical Center, Chino, CA, USA

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_58

time of Charcot diagnosis [9]. They also found the relative risk of amputation for patients with foot ulcer and Charcot was 12 times higher than those with Charcot alone [9].

The cost of diabetic foot complications may also be catastrophic. Ramsey and colleagues retrospectively reviewed 8905 patients from a health maintenance organization and found the cost for a 40- to 65-year-old diabetic male with a new foot ulcer in 1999 was $27,987 over a 2-year period [2]. With inflation this corresponds in 2016 to $40,003 [10].

These figures demand a specific set of conclusions. The first is that the majority of diabetic foot ulcers and major limb amputations are preventable. When they occur, a foot ulcer greatly increases the risk of further complications such as soft tissue and bone infection and must be treated aggressively. Third, limb amputation is preceded by foot ulceration that becomes secondarily infected with limb amputation as the end result. Finally, the costs associated with diabetic foot complications are extraordinary and place a very large burden on the world's healthcare system.

This has led some to consider how diabetic foot complications compare with other diseases. Armstrong et al. compared the 5-year mortality rates of neuropathic ulcers and amputations with various types of cancer [6]. They found 5-year mortality rates of neuropathic ulcers and amputations to be equivalent to colon cancer and worse than Hodgkin's disease, breast cancer, and prostate cancer (Fig. 58.1). This has prompted the concept of *malignant diabetes* in which diabetic foot complications are markers for a diabetic process that has advanced to a severity equivalent to (and sometimes worse than) cancer (courtesy Jeff Robbins, DPM, personal communication).

With this background in mind, it is possible to consider a conceptual pathological framework for diabetic foot complications with an emphasis on healing concepts, risk assessment, and psychosocial aspects that play an important role in this process.

At a macroscopic level, the continuum of diabetic foot ulceration to infection to amputation is clearly understood. The hyperglycemic process leads to peripheral neuropathy (discussed below) and loss of large and small sensory fibers. This loss of protective sensation reduces or eliminates the capacity to sense low-grade repetitive or single high-grade traumatic pressures to specific aspects of the foot. Low-grade microtrauma is mediated by the presence of structural deformity or limited joint motion [11, 12] (Fig. 58.2). As pressures continue to wear away the epidermis, deeper layers become exposed creating the neuropathic ulcer. If the ulcer remains exposed, the likelihood to become colonized with opportunistic skin flora with contamination cellulitis and infection is high. Chronic or acute infection may lead to osteomyelitis of the nearby bone with possible amputation.

Treating pedal complications successfully requires an understanding of the normal wound healing process. Aberrant healing associated with diabetic foot complications is discussed later in this chapter. Initial wound healing begins with the hemostatic inflammatory phase, mediated by neutrophils, which diminish in number after the first 24 h and is replaced with macrophages and lymphocytes. The proliferative repair phase occurs between several days after injury to the first few weeks, with steadily increasing fibroblasts and endothelial cells. It is at this stage that the typical diabetic foot ulcer healing process stalls. The final phase, remodeling, occurs

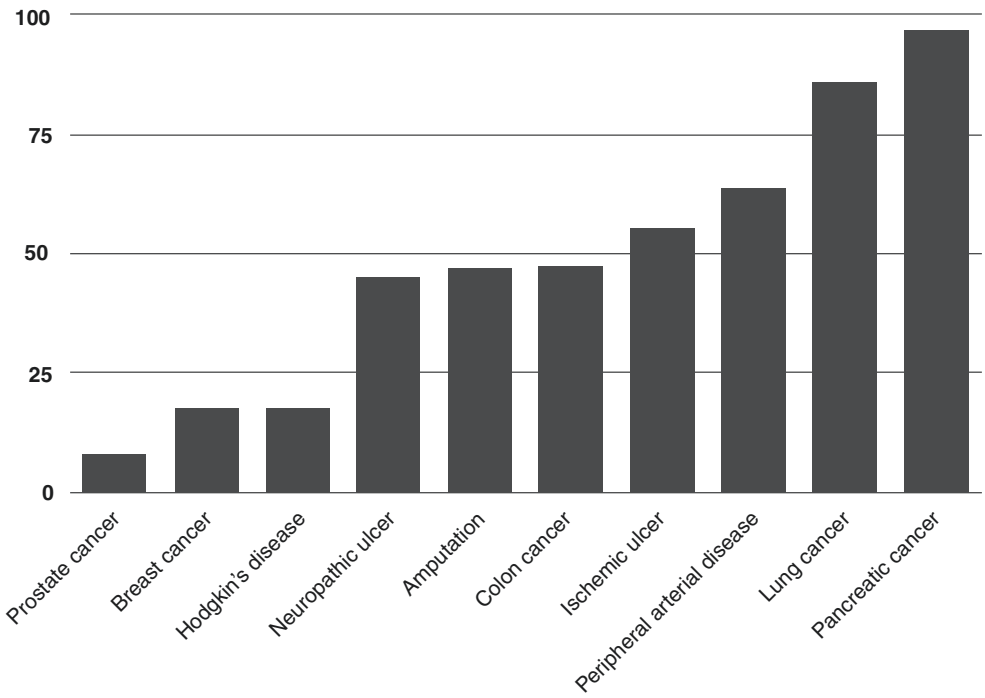


Fig. 58.1 Five-year mortality percentages comparing neuropathic ulceration and amputation with other common malignant diseases. (Armstrong et al. with permission)

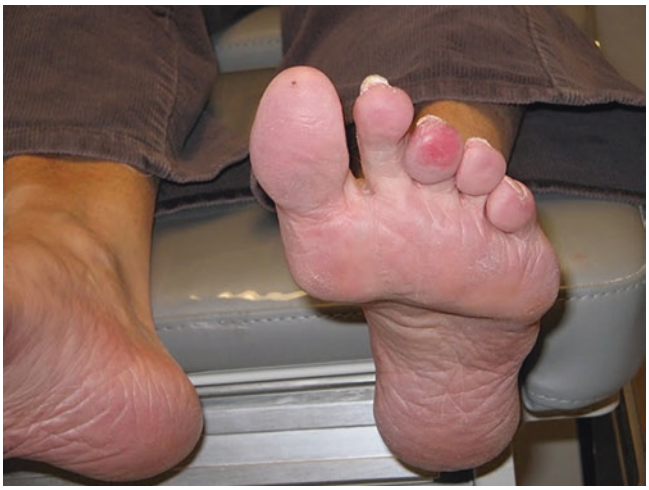


Fig. 58.2 Preulcerative digital erythema due to chronic repetitive low-grade pressures caused by hammertoe deformity

after several weeks with type 1 collagen replacing the prior epidermal type III collagen, leaving a healed skin surface with approximately 80% of its original tensile strength [13]. During the proliferative phase, three mechanisms occur: connective tissue deposition (described above), contraction (mediated by myofibroblasts), and epithelialization [13]. Each of these phases is mediated by various cytokines and cell signaling pathways. Diabetic foot ulcers will successfully heal by a variable combination of these three methods.

Peripheral vascular disease has a profound effect on the assessment, treatment, and prognosis of diabetic foot complications. Diabetics with peripheral arterial disease (PAD) are at significantly greater risk for poor outcomes. Jude and colleagues examined the relationship between diabetes and PAD severity and outcomes by examining the lower-extremity angiograms and medical records of 58 patients with diabetes and 78 without. The results of their analysis depicted that patients with diabetes had greater PAD severity in the profunda femoris and all arterial segments below the knee ($P \leq 0.02$). Furthermore, diabetes was associated with a risk for amputation that was five times greater than that for nondiabetic patients (41.4% vs 11.5%, odds ratio [OR] 5.4, $P < 0.0001$) and mortality that was double that for nondiabetic patients (51.7% vs 25.6%, OR 3.1, $P = 0.002$) [14].

When considering the risk spectrum of peripheral arterial disease in the diabetic patient, it is efficacious to consider an organized approach using the patient's medical history. Harkless and Holmes created a vascular risk spectrum from patient historical data [15]. Table 58.1 lists the pertinent components of this risk spectrum. The clinician obtains the appropriate history, including the listed components, and determines a low, medium, or high risk for the presence of peripheral arterial disease. This system has not been validated but provides the clinician with a basis in which to understand the presence of PAD and order further testing.

Table 58.1 Vascular risk spectrum

Risk type	Historical component
Macrovascular disease	CAD, CVA/TIA, intermittent claudication
Microvascular disease	Retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy
Functional microvascular disease	Gastroparesis, impotence
Metabolic syndrome	Impaired glucose tolerance (IGT), prediabetes, insulin resistance (IR), HTN, hyperlipidemia, obesity, smoking
Family history	History of DM and complications

Each of the risk components described above cumulatively increases the risk for peripheral arterial disease and an increased chance of poor outcomes when combined with other complications such as neuropathic ulceration, Charcot arthropathy, or infection. The UKPDS trial found for each 1 percent increase in glycosylated hemoglobin there was a 28% increase in peripheral arterial disease at 6 years after diagnosis. Additionally, each 10 mmHg increase in systolic blood pressure increased the risk by 25%, and smoking, prior diagnosis of coronary artery disease, and dyslipidemia were also independent risk factors for PAD [16].

The significance of this vascular risk spectrum is compounded by the concept of metabolic memory in which diabetes complications persist and progress after glycemic control is established. The converse of this, in which intensive glycemic control has a prolonged protective effect despite later reversion to conventional therapy, was termed the "legacy effect" after the UKPDS trial [17]. Increasing research evidence demonstrates that microvascular complications such as retinopathy and nephropathy in diabetics may be mediated by epigenetic DNA methylation, thus modifying gene expression [18]. The presence of advanced glycation end products (via cross-linking and irreversibly altering protein function) and oxidative stress (through creation of reactive oxygen species and subsequent tissue damage) have also been implicated [19, 20]. Experimental evidence for this process was noted during the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) [21] in which a continued retinopathy effect was noted in the conventional treatment group despite later enrollment and intensive glycemic treatment during the EDIC trial [22]. This process may be logically extrapolated from retinopathy and nephropathy to peripheral neuropathy since these three complications are intimately linked. Further research needs to delineate the mechanisms and biological effects of metabolic memory as they pertain to peripheral neuropathy and diabetic foot complications.

Diabetic pedal complications are made more challenging by patient psychosocial aspects. Nonadherence to medical instruction is highly common in this population with significant lower-extremity effects. Armstrong et al. performed a prospective study of 20 diabetic patients with plantar ulcers. They placed a pedometer on the hip and in a removable cast boot and tracked ambulatory activity. Only 28% of walking

activities at home were performed while wearing the removable cast boot, and the highest utilizers were the boot only 60% of the time [23]. In a similar study, patients were prescribed prescription shoes with a pedometer to track usage to prevent ulceration. Eighty-five percent of patients wore the shoes outside the home, but only 15% wore them when inside the home, which correlated with more steps per day out of the shoes [24]. Additionally, other studies have demonstrated improved ulcer healing outcomes when protocols were utilized that eliminated the chance of noncompliance [25–28].

Charcot Neuroarthropathy

Charcot neuroarthropathy is a well-documented but poorly understood catastrophic imbalanced inflammatory reaction that in developed countries occurs most often in the diabetic population. This disorder was originally described in patients with tertiary neurosyphilis and knee joint destruction and has generally poor outcomes if not recognized early and treated properly [29–31].

Charcot arthropathy appears clinically as a mild to moderately painful joint destructive disease, but at the molecular level, it has been hypothesized as due to an imbalance in pro-inflammatory cytokines responsible for bone growth regulation [32]. Jeffocoate and colleagues offer the most current description of this disorder as being initiated by an insult to the foot or ankle which then stimulates osteoclast formation by activating nuclear transcription factor **κ**B (NF-**κ**B) which leads to a significant osteoclastic and lytic process with subsequent bone destruction. This molecule is itself activated by receptor activator of NF-**κ**B ligand (RANKL) and has been implicated as an etiologic factor of blood vessel tunica media calcification [33]. Further research will help elucidate this process and will likely lead to medications that will reduce the effects of this devastating disease.

Clinically, Charcot arthropathy presents in two forms: (1) acute and (2) chronic. In the acute phase, the affected foot or ankle presents most commonly with moderate to severe edema, erythema, calor, and variable pain. Patients will present a variable history with or without a known traumatic episode. Due to peripheral neuropathy with loss of sensation, diabetic patients may feel limited pain in comparison with a fully sensate person and may have no recollection of trauma. A low-grade chronic trauma or a more significant injury may be the inciting event.

Charcot arthropathy in which no ulcerations are present create a diagnostic dilemma. One must consider the broad differential diagnosis of an erythematous, edematous foot, including acute gouty arthropathy, cellulitis, osteomyelitis, occult or overt trauma, and deep venous thrombosis. This clinical dilemma may be difficult for the physician to sort out and is best handled with emergent referral of a lower-extremity specialist. The index of suspicion for each of these differentials may be lowered with appropriate laboratory and imaging studies. However, one must maintain a high index of suspicion for osteomyelitis in a patient with this presentation. Cellulitis and osteomyelitis may be ruled out based on the understanding that the vast majority of foot infections occur via contiguous spread infection (skin surface bacteria entering the deeper tissues through a breach in the skin) rather than hematogenously. Hematogenous spread osteomyelitis in the diabetic foot is an extremely rare occurrence. However we have seen several patients with bacteremia seed a Charcot joint. A search of the literature demonstrates no case studies of hematogenous spread osteomyelitis to the diabetic foot. This may be due in part to the smaller number of long bones in the foot and lack of open growth plates as is found in the more common pediatric hematogenous osteomyelitis of the tibia and femur. In cases where there is ulceration with Charcot changes, ruling out osteomyelitis becomes much more difficult.

A careful physical examination should be undertaken, looking for any open lesions in the typically edematous, erythematous foot with warmth and variable pain to palpation [30]. Early stages may show no morphological changes to foot structure; however later in the disease, after joint destruction has occurred, the classic rocker-bottom foot is easily witnessed (Figs. 58.3, 58.4 and 58.5). Charcot arthropathy may occur at any joint of the foot and ankle; however the tarsometatarsal joint is most commonly involved. Though slightly less common, ankle Charcot is potentially devastating in its poor outcomes [29].

Temperature differences have been shown to assist with diagnosis of Charcot arthropathy and monitor resolution of the acute phase. A greater than 2 °C temperature difference using an infrared dermal thermometer is helpful in diagnosing acute Charcot and in monitoring progression out of the acute and into the coalescence phase [34, 35]. Thermometry

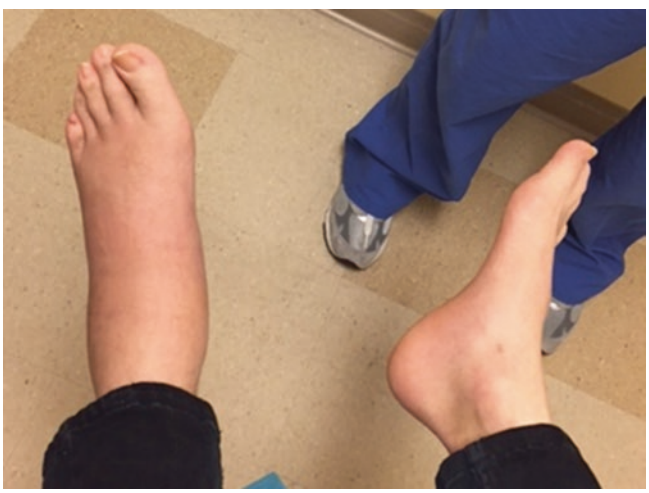


Fig. 58.3 Acute Charcot left foot. Note the edema and subtle erythema. The left foot was warmer than the right. Radiographs at this stage were negative for joint destruction or dislocation

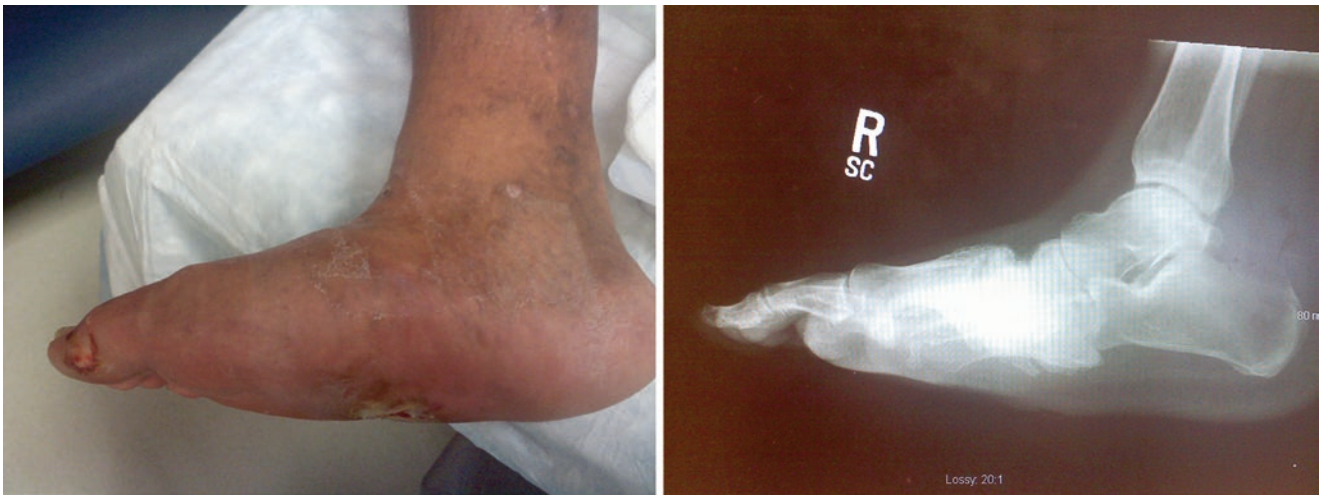


Fig. 58.4 Classic rocker-bottom foot deformity secondary to Charcot midfoot collapse. Radiograph of same patient demonstrating Lisfranc and naviculocuneiform collapse

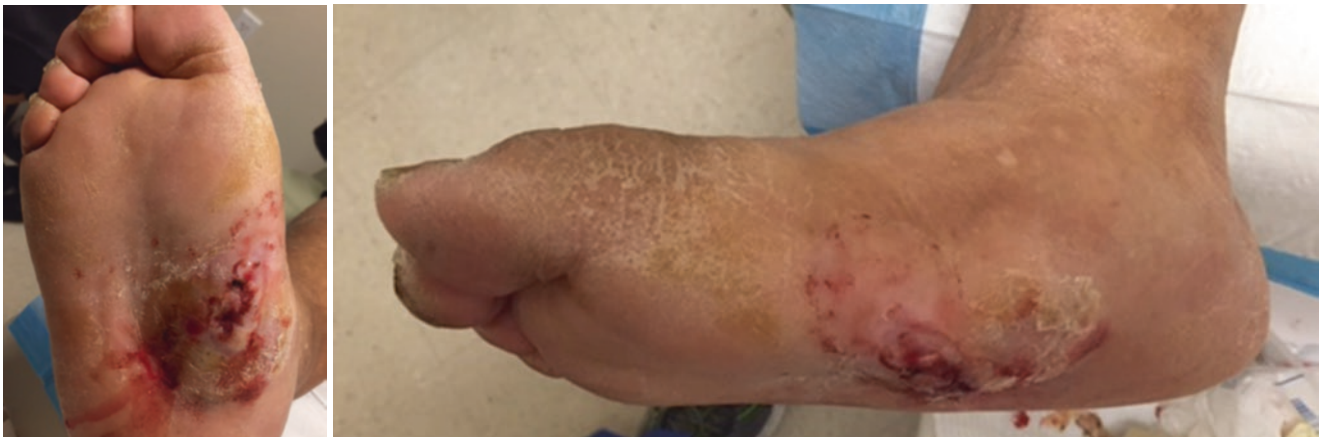


Fig. 58.5 Chronic Charcot of the right midfoot with collapse and rocker-bottom appearance. Note the medial arch ulceration due to increased focal plantar pressures

should be used 15 minutes after cast and dressings are removed, and the thermometer should be accurate to ±0.1 °C [36].

Laboratory studies are often inconclusive with either a demonstrable leukocytosis or elevated nonspecific inflammatory markers such as erythrocyte sedimentary rate (ESR) and C-reactive protein (CRP), or these values may also be found to be in the normal reference range [34, 37]. It has been shown that the acute local inflammation is dissociated from the systemic inflammatory response in these patients [34], and this lack of a systemic response may help providers in differentiating this disorder from infection. Other laboratory values may demonstrate elevations in glycemic indicators and renal dysfunction. No definitive validated laboratory markers for the specific diagnosis of Charcot neuroarthropathy exist outside of limited research studies.

Typical imaging studies begin with foot and/or ankle radiographs depending on the suspected joint involvement. The earliest stages of Charcot radiographs may demonstrate no abnormal findings other than increased soft tissue density and volume. Later stages will be clearly evident on plain film radiographs with joint destruction, fragmentation, dislocation (during the development phase) and progressive sclerosis, ankylosis, and rounding of bone fragments (during the coalescence and remodeling phases) (Figs. 58.6 and 58.7).

Charcot neuroarthropathy of the foot progresses through four primary stages that blend intimately making it difficult to determine if a patient has progressed to the next stage. The modified Eichenholtz classification [38, 39] is most commonly used to stage the disorder. Stage 0 is the most acute (inflammatory) stage with the classic "red, hot, and swollen" appearance. Radiographs are the most often utilized initial imaging modality [40] and commonly show no joint destructive changes in the earliest stage. Stage 1 is the development phase, which also appears as a foot with warmth, erythema,

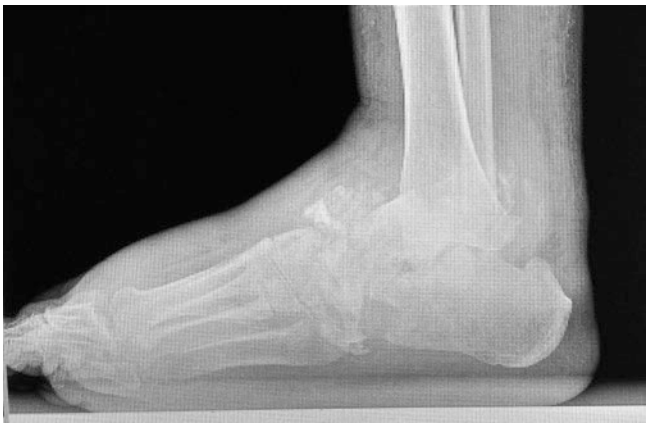


Fig. 58.6 Acute Charcot arthropathy involving the midtarsal and subtalar joints

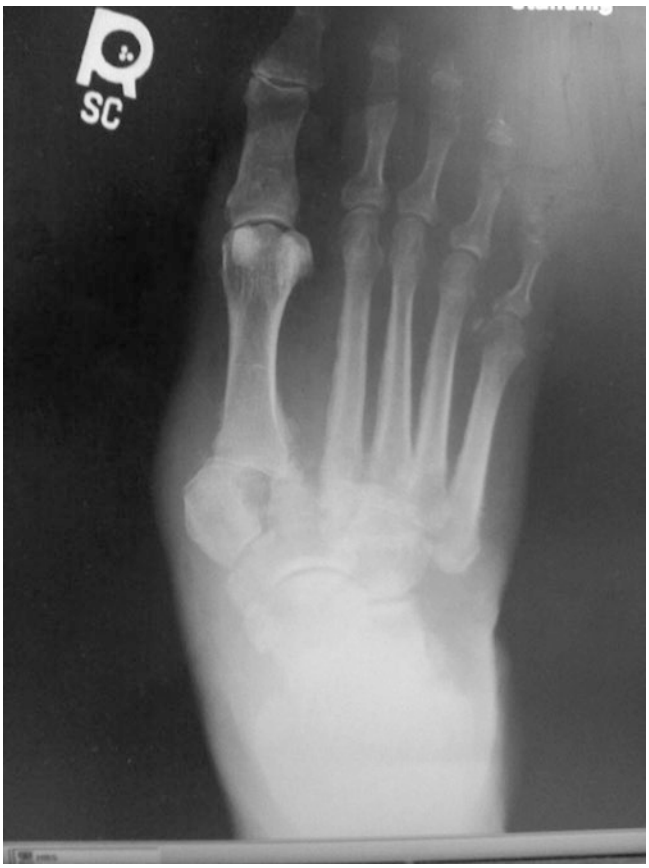


Fig. 58.7 Late development-early coalescent Charcot arthropathy involving the Lisfranc and intercuneiform joints

and variable edema. Radiographs may show early mild destruction and joint diastasis. Stage 2 is the coalescence phase in which the inflammatory process subsides with clinical normalization and radiographic changes that appear more chronic in nature with sclerosis of prior lucent bone and a blunting or smoothed appearance to bony fragments. The final third stage is termed remodeling which demonstrates a more chronic appearance similar to stage 2. The timeline of each of these stages varies.

An anatomic classification has also been proposed by Sanders and Frykberg [41]. They defined the location of the Charcot destruction coupled with the frequency of complications as follows:

- Pattern I: Forefoot = 15%
- Pattern II: Tarsometatarsal joint = 40%
- Pattern III: Naviculocuneiform, talonavicular, calcaneocuboid joints = 30%
- Pattern IV: Ankle and/or subtalar joint = 10%
- Pattern V: Calcaneus = 5%

Other imaging modalities, though useful for other pathologic entities, do not provide significant diagnostic assistance. Computed tomography may assist with diagnosing early nondisplaced fractures [40]. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) in most cases is not necessary and may in fact create a diagnostic dilemma. Joint fragmentation, fracture, and bone marrow edema involving multiple joints, the typical Charcot appearance on MRI, may be difficult to differentiate from osteomyelitis, acute exacerbations of chronic osteoarthritis, or gouty arthropathy. In situations where ulceration is present, radiologists will be unable to rule out osteomyelitis. Bone scintigraphy should be avoided due to its lack of specificity [42]. Any inflammatory condition may appear as increased radiotracer uptake, even on delayed phases and white blood cell-labeled studies. The reader is cautioned to take careful consideration of the results for all advanced imaging studies for the diagnosis of Charcot neuroarthropathy.

Treatment of the Charcot foot varies based on the acuity of the presentation. Acute Charcot arthropathy management consists of stabilization of any comorbid disorders such as establishing appropriate glycemic control, hydration, and intravenous antimicrobials if infection is suspected. Additionally, local wound care is important if ulceration is identified concurrently with arthropathy. Sharp debridement removes bacterial contamination, while most wound care must be established. In cases of abscess formation, operative incision and drainage and, rarely, amputation may be necessary.

The cornerstone of treatment for acute Charcot neuroarthropathy is protected offweighting with total contact casting. The patient must remain completely nonweightbearing on the affected limb using any manner that will guarantee patient adherence. This may be accomplished via crutches, roller cart, or wheelchair depending on patient psychosocial capabilities and available resources.

Clinicians should be aware of the protracted time frame for the acute phase to transition into the coalescent phase where protected weightbearing is possible. Sinacore studied 30 subjects with 35 acute-onset presentations of Charcot of the foot and ankle. The midfoot was most commonly involved (46 patients), followed by the hindfoot (23 patients), forefoot (20 patients), and ankle (11 patients). All patients were treated with total contact casting, and the healing

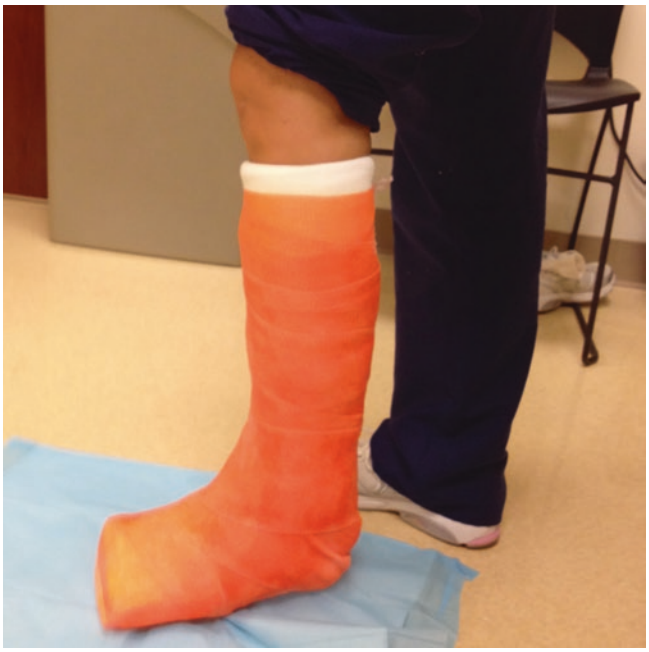


Fig. 58.8 Total contact cast for treatment of acute Charcot neuroarthropathy

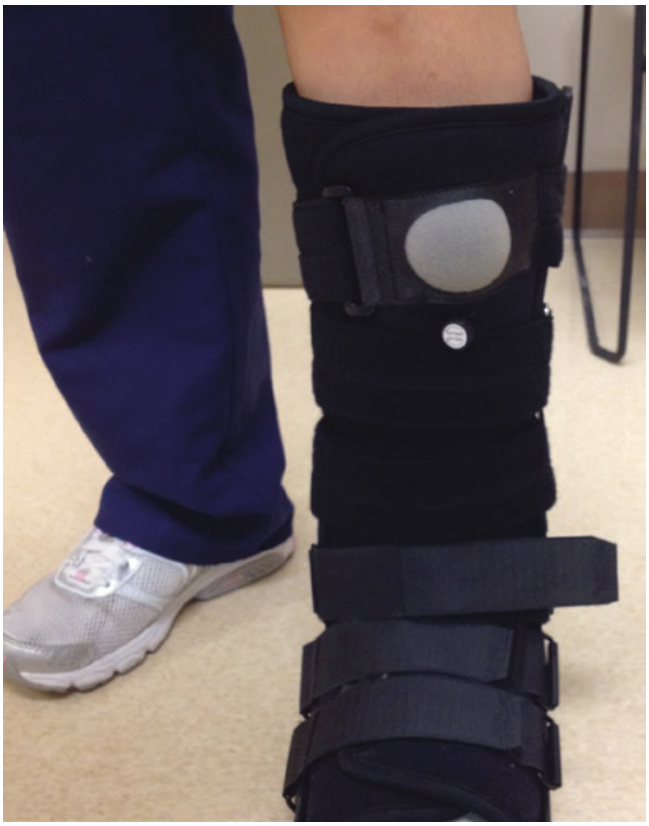


Fig. 58.9 Removable cast walker as an alternative to total contact casting

endpoint was defined as discontinuation of the necessity for TCC as determined by the treating physician. In 100% of cases, the average healing time was 86 +/− 45 days [43]. Providers may take from this a rule-of-thumb of 1 to 2 months for transitioning out of the acute Charcot phase (Fig. 58.8).

Total contact casting (TCC) is a modified method of below-the-knee cast that involves applying minimal undercast padding to the extremity and using a cast that conforms to the shape of the leg and foot. This device attempts to maintain the shape of the foot during the acute destructive process of Charcot. The patient should be maintained in the TCC until the acute phase of destruction has resolved with cast changes weekly at first until the initial edema resolves. The TCC requires considerable training to appropriately apply and if placed incorrectly may result in abrasions, ulcerations, and an increased potential for limb amputation. This device should be applied only by trained specialists. Pinzur and colleagues found patients were able to safely bear weight in a TCC with biweekly changes lasting an average of 5.8 weeks. Patients were considered safe for transition into prescription shoes at an average of 12 weeks [44]. In the emergency department, an appropriate alternative is to apply a removable cast walker to the patient with instructions not to remove (Fig. 58.9).

Charcot arthropathy involving the ankle joint is somewhat different in outcomes compared with pedal joints and often involves a surgical approach. Schon and colleagues found an improved overall outcome of this disorder when treated surgically as opposed to nonsurgically with casting and bracing. They found a greater loss of correction with nonsurgical care and improved success rates with surgical intervention [45].

The effect of bisphosphonate therapy for the treatment of acute Charcot arthropathy has revealed conflicting and controversial results. Jude et al. in 2001 randomized 39 patients with acute Charcot to either a single intravenous dose of pamidronate 90 mg or placebo (saline) in a double-blind manner. Patients were then followed for 12 months during which skin temperature, bone-specific alkaline phosphatase, and deoxypyridinoline cross-links were measured. Patients given the pamidronate were observed to have an initial reduction in bone turnover as compared with placebo with similar levels at the end of the study [46]. This was the first study to examine a potentially definitive treatment for Charcot arthropathy. Subsequently several studies examined the outcomes of bisphosphonate therapy on acute Charcot with one study finding increased time to clinical resolution with zoledronic acid and possibly extending the time to resolution [47].

Significant methodological flaws in this body of research demonstrate low experimental numbers, various treatment methods (e.g., intravenous versus oral formulations and different experimental drugs), and lack of long-term follow-up [48, 49]. Two systematic reviews have stated that skin temperature and inflammatory markers decrease with bisphosphonate therapy, but studies have failed to demonstrate improved clinical outcomes and might even prolong the resolution phase [50, 51]. Due to the lack of long-term outcomes and questionable results, we currently recommend against the use of bisphosphonates for acute Charcot neuroarthropathy.

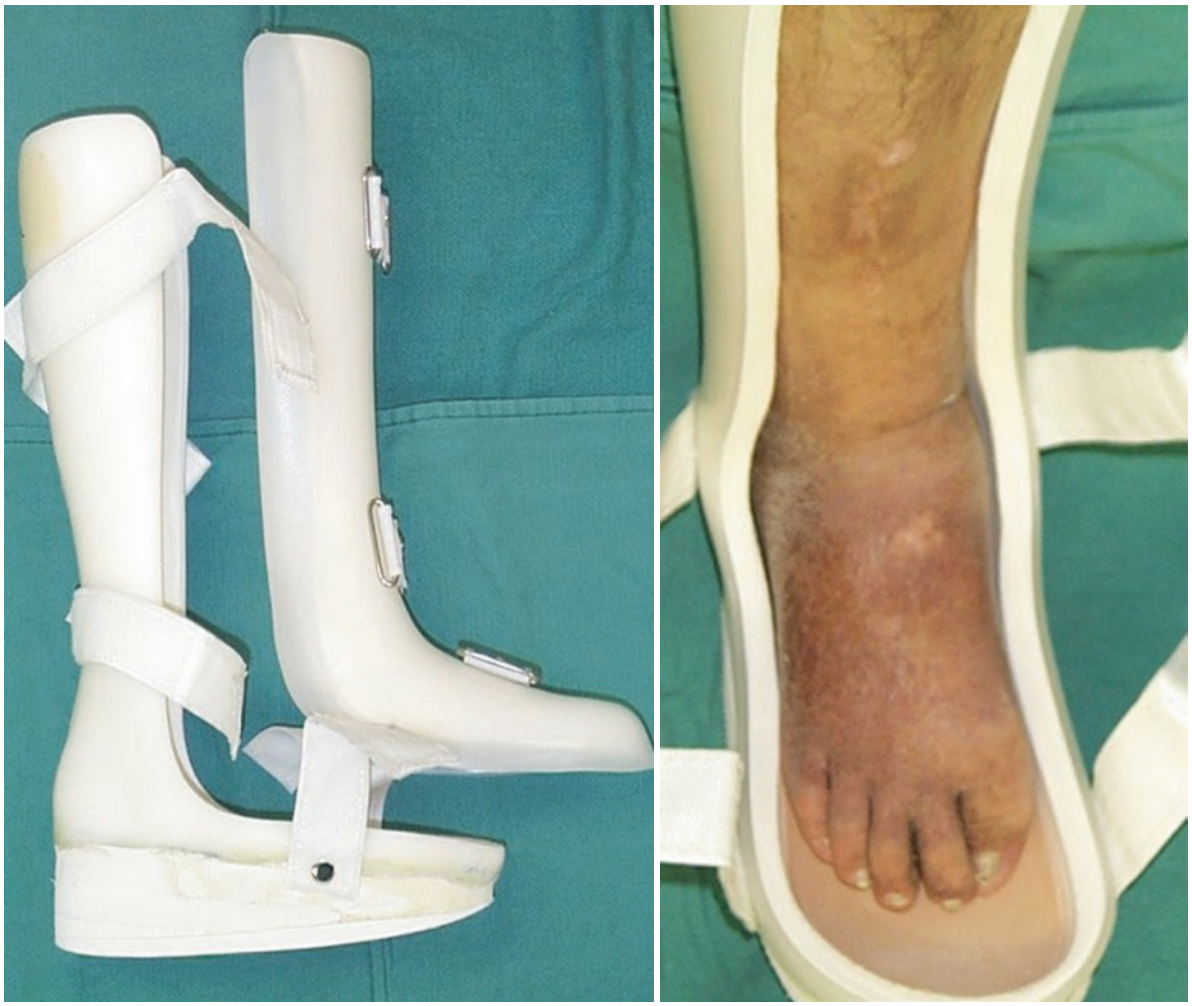


Fig. 58.10 Custom-made Charcot restraint orthotic walker (CROW) for offweighting the Charcot foot

Currently, the joint destruction and subsequent deformity of Charcot are irreversible. Thus, long-term care consists of shoe gear modifications, sometimes requiring custom shoes, custom foot orthoses, and regular serial observation by a foot specialist. Some physicians prefer to place these patients into a Charcot restraint orthotic walker (CROW), which is a custom-molded below the knee brace that attempts to redistribute plantar pressures (Fig. 58.10). The primary goal is prevention of ulceration and amputation.

In certain situations surgical intervention may be necessary, including demonstrated instability, preulcerative callus formation, and ulceration. Surgical options are beyond the scope of this chapter but generally include tendoachilles lengthening to reduce forefoot pressures, ostectomy procedures to reduce bony prominence, realignment arthrodesis to create a more functionally stable and plantigrade foot, and limb amputation. Each of these reconstructive procedures should be considered salvage methods in an attempt to avoid amputation.

Outcomes for patients with Charcot arthropathy of the foot vary. When considering the risk of amputation, it is clear that patients with mild joint destruction and minimal to no subsequent deformity are at relatively low risk. Sohn and associates retrospectively reviewed a Veterans' Affairs national cohort of 911 patients with incident Charcot arthropathy and 15,117 patients with diabetic foot ulcers (without amputations). They found the overall amputation rate for patients with Charcot was not significantly different from the overall diabetic population with foot ulcers. However, patients with both Charcot and the presence of a foot ulcer were 12 times more likely to undergo a limb amputation, and patients with ulcer alone were 7 times more likely to undergo a limb amputation than those with Charcot alone [9]. This demonstrates that Charcot alone does not increase the risk of amputation, but when coupled with a foot ulcer, the risks are much higher.

When considering mortality the risk profile is different. Sohn et al. examined a cohort of 1050 patients with Charcot arthropathy and compared them to diabetic patients with foot ulcer and those with diabetes alone. During a 5-year follow-up, they found 18.8% of patients with diabetes alone died, 37.0% with foot ulcer died, and 28.3% of the Charcot patients died. These researchers found the presence of Charcot independently and significantly increased the mortality rate of these patients [52].

These findings show that Charcot arthropathy is a complex and serious disease with a high rate of complications and potential morbidity and mortality. Physicians should maintain a very high index of suspicion in any diabetic patient with an acute presentation of erythema, edema, warmth, and new-onset pain, despite the presence or absence of ulceration. A low threshold for acute splinting or casting with strict nonweightbearing protocols is the best current treatment to prevent long-term deformity and complications. Further research will be necessary to better elucidate the etiology and treatment of Charcot arthropathy.

Foot Amputation

Amputation is often the final stage of a long process, and in the diabetic, this may often be considered a failure of prior care. However, a modified view of this concept may be appropriate to better understand the role of amputations in the foot. As discussed in the introduction to this chapter, major limb amputation (transtibial and transfemoral levels) has significant associated morbidity and mortality in the diabetic population. This may be observed through several lenses. First, these patients already have significant comorbidities, including advanced cardiovascular disease, among others.

Additionally, major limb amputation leads to a greater energy expenditure during walking. Waters and colleagues performed a seminal study in 1976 in which they compared several gait parameters in patients with above the knee, below the knee, and Syme's ankle disarticulation amputations to a control group of normal subjects. They found improved gait velocity, cadence, stride length, oxygen uptake, maximum aerobic activity, and heart rate in patients with the more distal amputations [53]. Similarly, Gailey and colleagues compared transtibial amputee oxygen consumption, heart rate, and self-selected walking speed with a non-amputee control group. They also found increased metabolic costs in the amputee group. However, when stratifying the amputee group by length of amputation, they found a significant improvement in these parameters with increased amputation stump length [54].

However, it has been shown that length of the residual limb also correlates with mortality. There are no studies that show amputation itself leads directly to increased mortality. This correlation is likely complex and may be hypothesized as a population with significant comorbidities, especially cardiovascular, with the additional physiologic stressor of the amputation (increased energy expenditure and decreased ambulatory capability) accelerating the rate of development of the already present comorbidities.

Several research studies, though, have demonstrated improved mortality when comparing partial foot amputations to major limb amputations [7, 55, 56]. Table 58.2 shows a synthesis of studies that compared mortality by level of amputation: digital, below the knee, and above the knee levels. As shown, the 1- and 5-year mortality trends are decreased in favor of those that involve only the forefoot as compared with the leg.

Table 58.2 Mortality percentages by level of lower limb amputation demonstrating improvements with increasingly distal amputations [7, 55, 56]

Amputation level	30-day mortality %	1-year mortality %	5-year mortality %
Toe	1.7	6.6	46
TMA	2.7	8.5	45
BKA	7.0	25.5	56
AKA	11.1	49.4	70

With this general trend toward improved outcomes with more distal amputations, it is important to strongly consider partial foot amputations as significant tools to help patients maintain an active life and, potentially, improve life expectancy.

It is the intention of this section to provide clinicians with general information about the options available for pedal amputations. Interested surgeons should refer to other textbooks for procedure specifics. A variety of pedal amputations exist, all of which spare the remaining portions of the foot with variable success, most of which prevent major limb amputation.

The choice of which amputation to perform is highly patient specific and depends on therapy goals, reason for amputation (cellulitis, abscess, gas gangrene, osteomyelitis, malignancy, or gangrene secondary to peripheral arterial disease). A detailed work-up must be performed including obtaining an appropriate history, physical, and laboratory and imaging data. Additionally, the preoperative functional status and psychosocial history must be evaluated to appreciate the anticipated postoperative level of function.

Peripheral arterial disease is a major risk factor for failure of partial foot amputations [57]. Patients with peripheral arterial disease should undergo a comprehensive evaluation with noninvasive vascular testing, angiography, and consultation with a vascular surgeon. Revascularization should be performed before amputation unless an acute infection necessitates incision and drainage with debridement. It is sometimes necessary to stage the definitive amputation after emergent debridement and subsequent revascularization. Very little evidence is available to assist caregivers in determining the best timing of amputation after revascularization.

Caselli and associates attempted to answer this question by retrospectively reviewing 23 diabetic patients with ischemic foot ulcers who underwent successful transluminal percutaneous angioplasty (PTA) and 20 patients who underwent unsuccessful PTA. They used transcutaneous oxygen pressure measurement (TcPO2) on the dorsal surface of the foot before and after PTA at 1, 7, 14, 21, and 28 days postoperative as a marker of improved perfusion. In the successful revascularization group, TcPO2 measurements progressively improved and peaked at 4 weeks, while the unsuccessful group saw no significant rise in TcPO2. These researchers

suggested waiting 3–4 weeks for the definitive amputation when delay is possible [58]. Currently, timing of amputation after revascularization is determined anecdotally based on clinician experience rather than via sound research-based evidence. Clearly, further research with well-designed prospective methodology is necessary.

Digital Amputation

Indications for digital amputation in the diabetic foot most commonly include isolated gangrene of a toe, osteomyelitis, and severe soft tissue infection. Amputation of a single digit may be performed along any portion of the length of the digit including the distal or proximal interphalangeal joint or at the metatarsophalangeal joint. When possible it is preferable to leave as much of the digit as possible. The remaining stump acts as to prevent the contiguous digits from falling into the space previously occupied by the amputated digit. Hammertoe contractures, though, must be taken into consideration as this may cause the remaining post-amputation portion of the toe to be plantar flexed with increased distal pressures and future ulceration (Figs. 58.11 and 58.12).

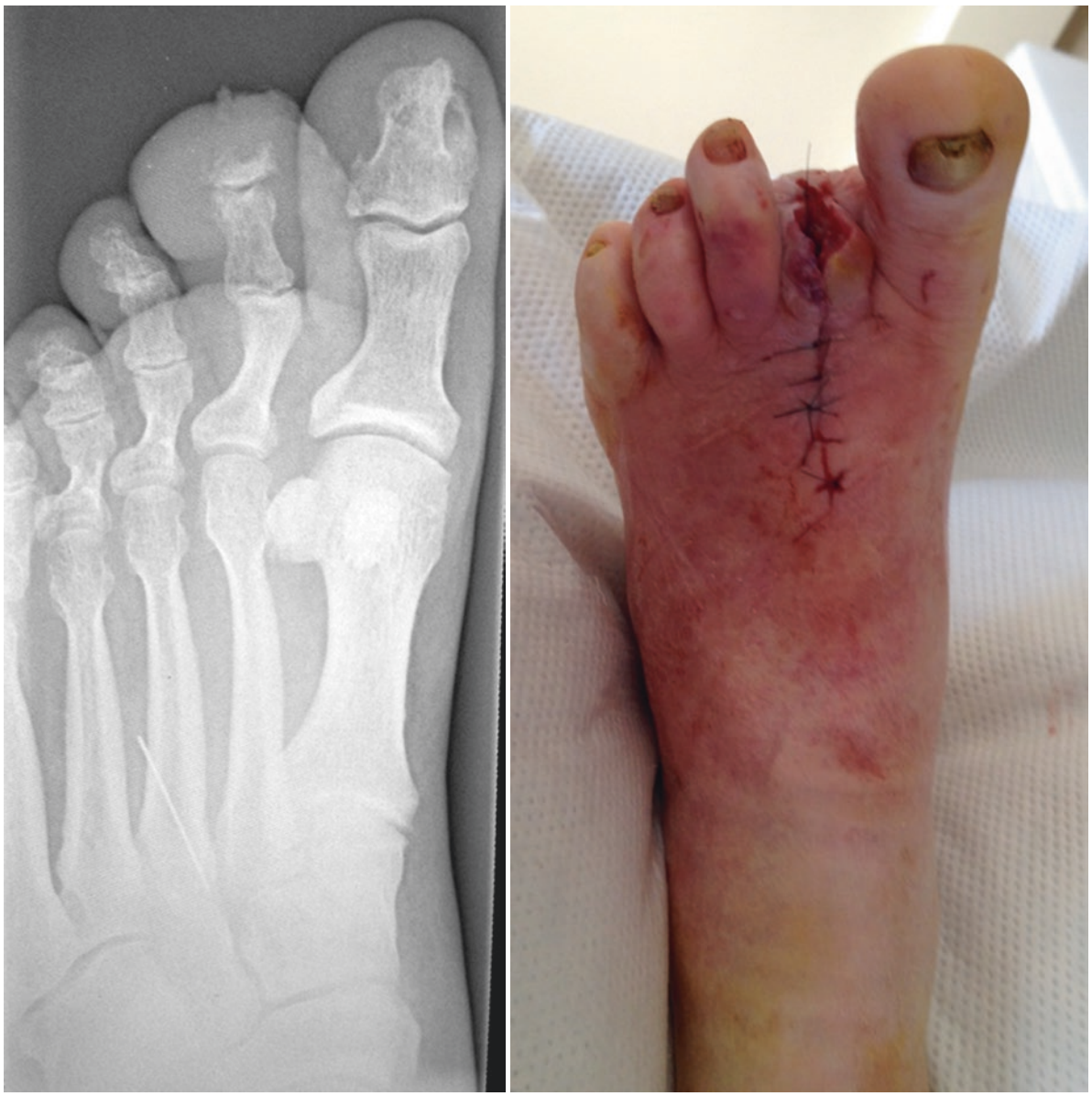


Fig. 58.11 Digital amputation with disarticulation at the metatarsophalangeal joint on patient with second toe distal phalangeal osteomyelitis and necrotizing abscess formation. Partial closure immediately with delayed primary closure 3 days later

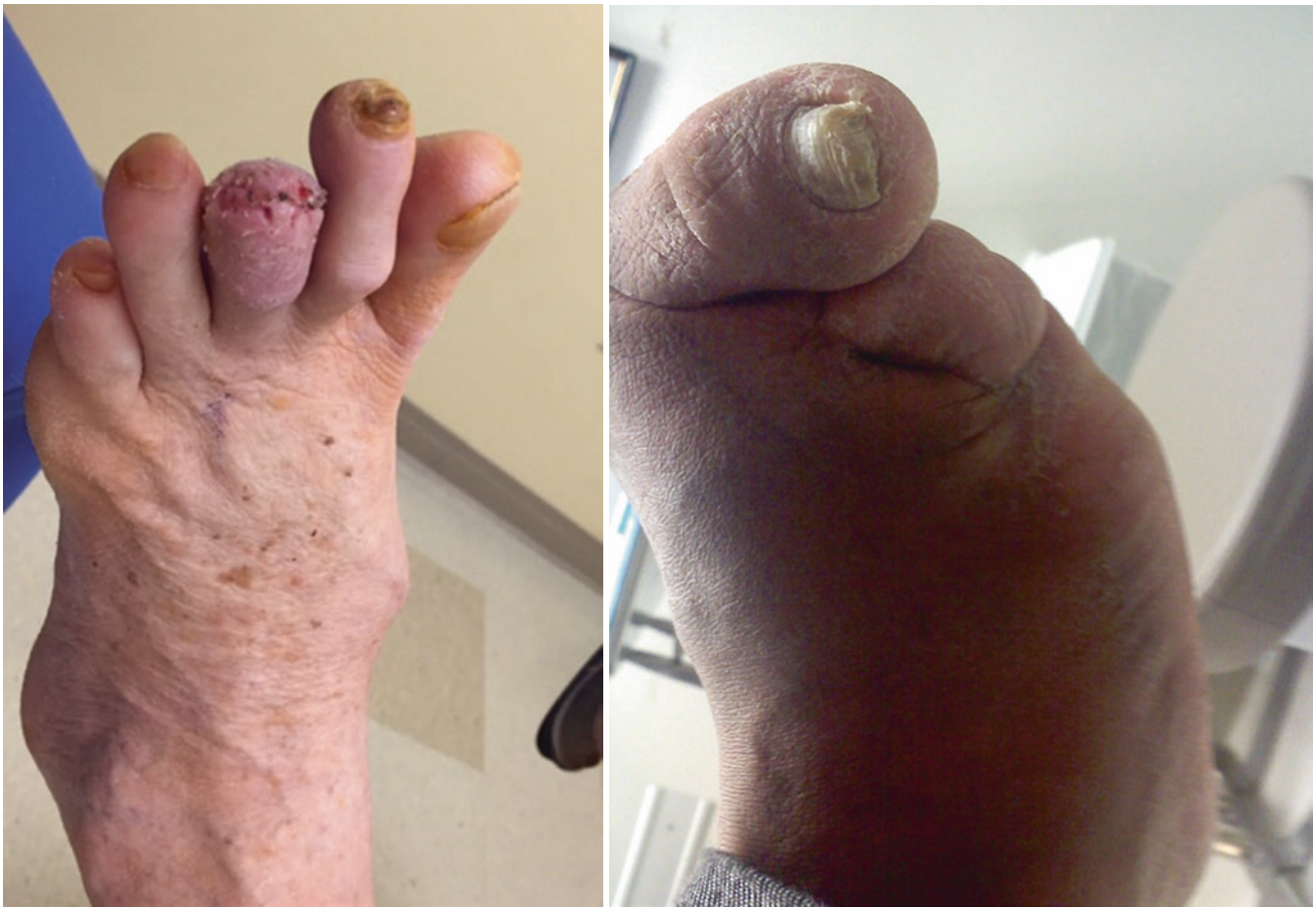


Fig. 58.12 Partial toe amputations. Left: 2 weeks postoperative with uneventful healing. Note buttressing effect the residual toe provides. Right: dislocation of first metatarsophalangeal joint with almost 90-degree hallux abduction due to prior lesser toe amputations and loss of lateral buttress

Ray Amputation

Amputation of a toe and part or all of the associated metatarsal is another common procedure that is commonly performed on patients with osteomyelitis of a digit that extends into the metatarsophalangeal joint or abscess of the affected ray. Due to firm fascial septa that separate the individual rays, it is often possible to resect a ray in an isolated manner. This procedure is easily performed with a racket-type incision that extends proximally along the metatarsal to the necessary amputation level (Fig. 58.13).

Transmetatarsal Amputation

Amputation of all toes and a portion of their associated metatarsals, the transmetatarsal amputation, is a powerful and highly useful procedure in the diabetic foot. This procedure is indicated in forefoot gangrene, osteomyelitis, abscess, or forefoot tumor (*see images*). Due to increased plantar pressures and altered gait kinematics [59], percutaneous Achilles tendon lengthening is commonly performed with this procedure to prevent postoperative plantar stump ulceration. This procedure has a high success rate, allowing

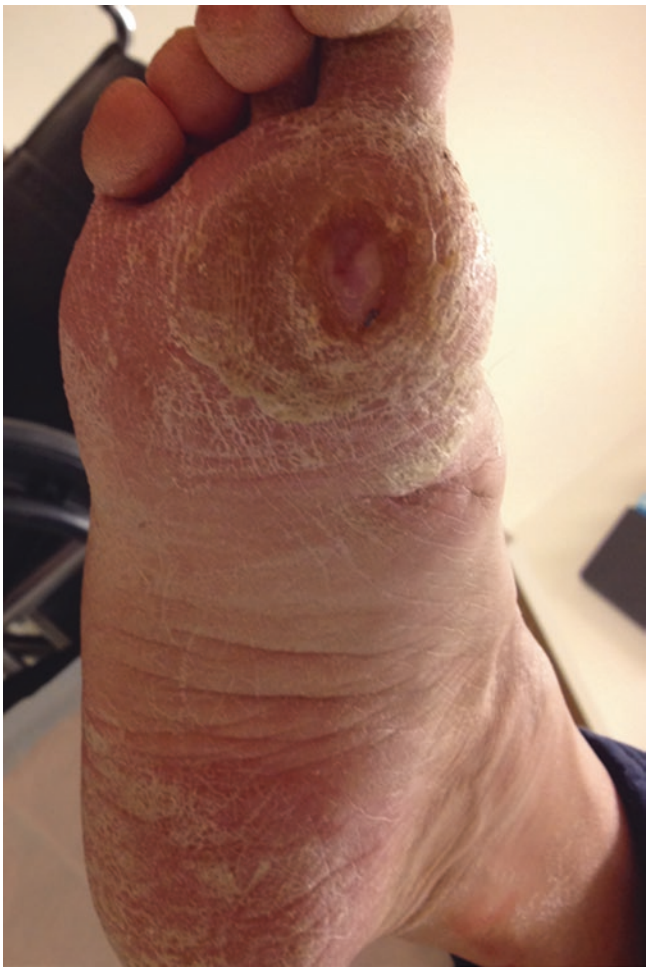


Fig. 58.13 Recurrent neuropathic ulcer status post partial first-ray amputation. Note the lesser hammertoe contractures and ulceration secondary to transfer pressure

patients to ambulate with minimal shoe modifications (Figs. 58.14 and 58.15).

Isolated and Panmetatarsal Head Resection

Although not considered true amputations, removal of an isolated metatarsal head or removal of all of the metatarsal heads (panmetatarsal head resection) may be important alternative tissue-sparing procedures useful in specific situations. These include neuropathic plantar ulcers and isolated or multiple metatarsal head osteomyelitis without extended bone or soft tissue involvement. A retrospective review of 34 panmetatarsal head resection procedures with average follow-up of 20.9 months revealed an overall success rate of 97% with 1 ulcer recurrence and no amputations [60].

Figure __ demonstrates the utility of this procedure. Patient SR was a 48-year-old long-term diabetic male with a chronic right foot plantar neuropathic ulcer that did not respond to several offweighting modalities. The patient had previously undergone second and third metatarsal head resections with resultant rigid deformity. Due to peripheral arterial disease, the patient underwent a femoral to posterior tibial bypass and 1 month later panmetatarsal head resection. At 5 years follow-up, the patient remained ulcer-free. Internally offweighting the forefoot successfully resolved this patient's ulcer (Fig. 58.16).

Tarsometatarsal (Lisfranc) Midtarsal (Chopart) Amputations

These more proximal foot amputations have historically been less utilized due to increased long-term complications, especially plantar reulceration [61]. Previously this was due to a less biomechanically stable foot with focal plantar pressures and the absence of adequate prosthetic devices. When possible a more distal amputation such as the transmetatarsal level is preferable. However, in cases of more significant tissue loss where limb salvage is attempted, these procedures have an important role. Preservation of the bases of the first and fifth metatarsals when possible retains their respective tendon insertions with improved outcomes. Accessary soft tissue balancing techniques improve the mechanical function of the residual foot. These include gastrocnemius recession, Achilles tendon lengthening, Achilles tenotomy or tenectomy, tibialis anterior transfer, peroneus brevis transfer, and posterior tibial tenotomy [61, 62] (Figs. 58.17 and 58.18).

The partial foot amputations outlined above have variable outcomes. The majority of clinical studies are retrospective

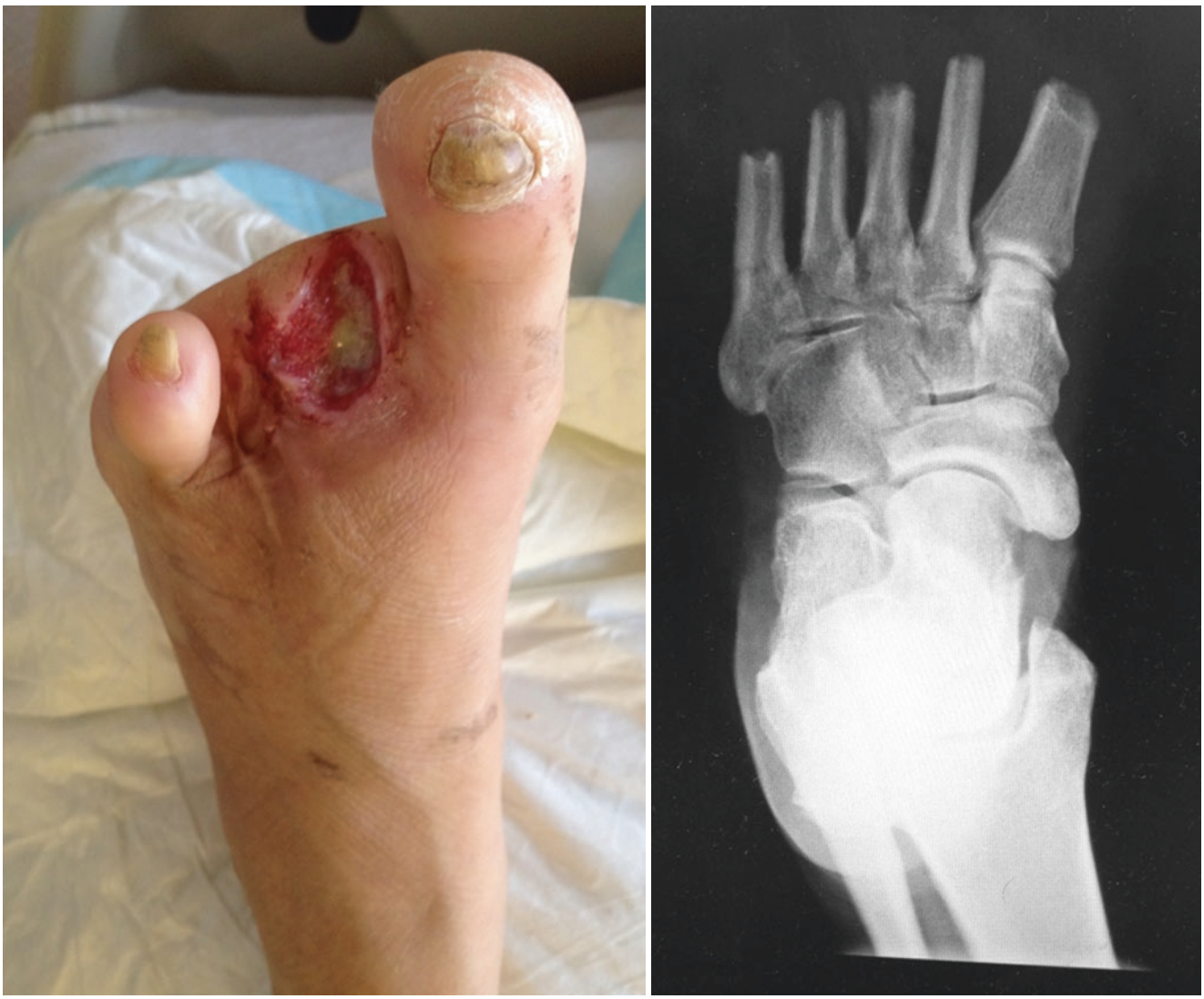


Fig. 58.14 Series of a patient who underwent transmetatarsal amputation after multiple prior digital and partial ray amputations with osteomyelitis of the second metatarsal head and a nonfunctional forefoot. Left: preoperative clinical appearance with visible second metatarsal head. Middle: preoperative dorsoplantar radiograph with second metatarsal head fracture and osteomyelitis. Right: postoperative dorsoplantar radiograph after successful transmetatarsal amputation

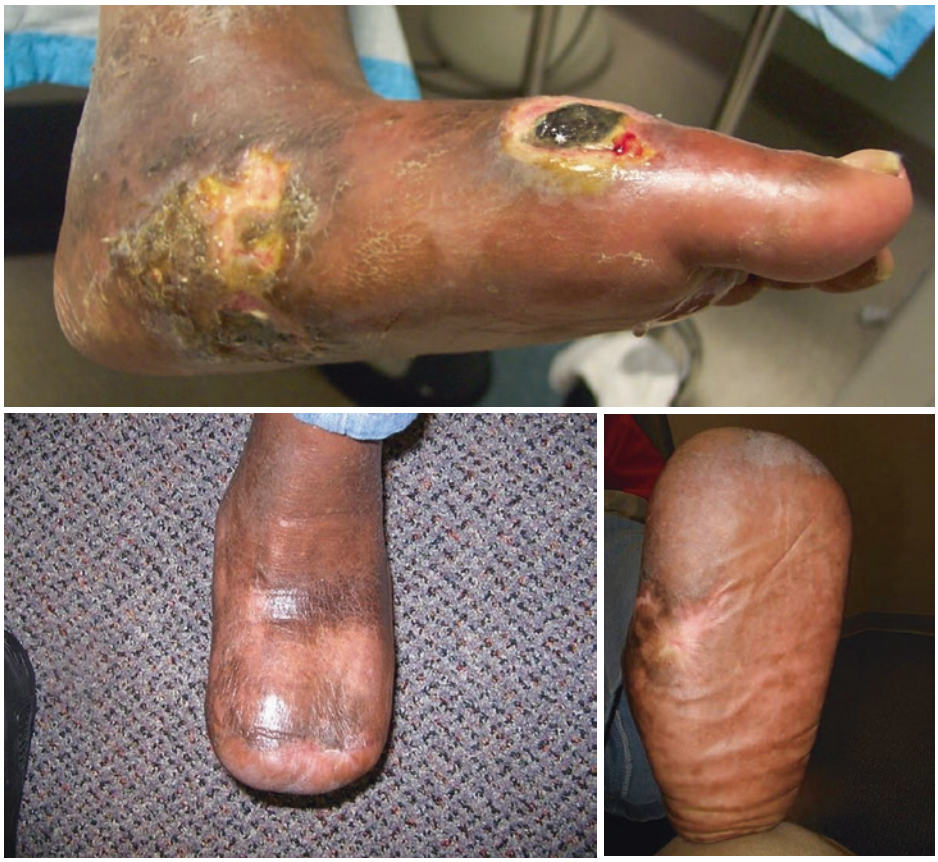


Fig. 58.15 Diabetic male with severe peripheral arterial disease and critical limb ischemia (top image). Patient underwent endovascular intervention and staged transmetatarsal amputation with Achilles tendon lengthening. Dorsal weightbearing view (bottom left) with plantar view (bottom right) demonstrating successful healing without recurrent ulceration

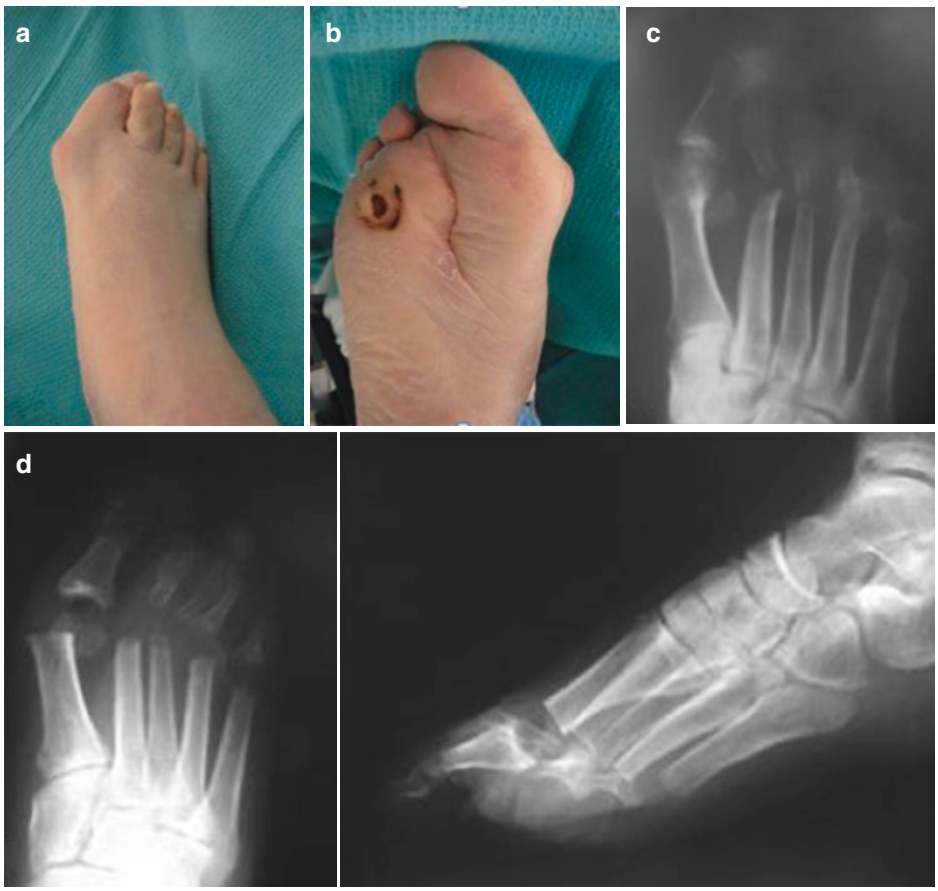


Fig. 58.16 Clinical and radiographic image series of patient SR who underwent panmetatarsal head resection after revascularization for nonhealing plantar neuropathic ulceration. Images (**a**–**c**) preoperative clinical and radiographic appearance. (**d**) postoperative radiographic appearance. (**e**) 5-year follow-up clinical appearance. Note ulcer-free appearance. Bottom row shows E-med pressure sensing system with preoperative (left) and postoperative (right) pressures (red = highest pressures, black = lowest). Note the significant long-term pressure reductions

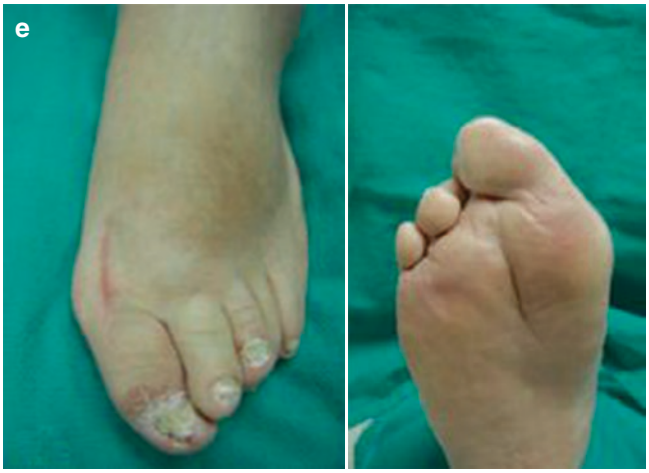


Fig. 58.16 (continued)

in nature, and further well-designed prospective comparative studies are necessary. Given this limitation there is a relative consensus that isolated partial or total digital amputations generally have positive results. However, amputation of the hallux or first ray is a unique situation that may have variably poor outcomes. In 1997 Murdoch and colleagues retrospectively reported on a 10-year cohort of diabetic patients who underwent either great toe or partial first-ray amputations. Sixty percent of these patients eventually underwent a second amputation, 17% underwent a later below the knee amputation, and 11% had a transmetatarsal amputation on the same extremity. The mean time to second amputation was 10 months from the index procedure [63]. Kadukammakal et al. retrospectively reviewed 48 patients who underwent 50 partial first-ray amputations between 2003 and 2009 and found 24 cases required further surgical intervention with 12

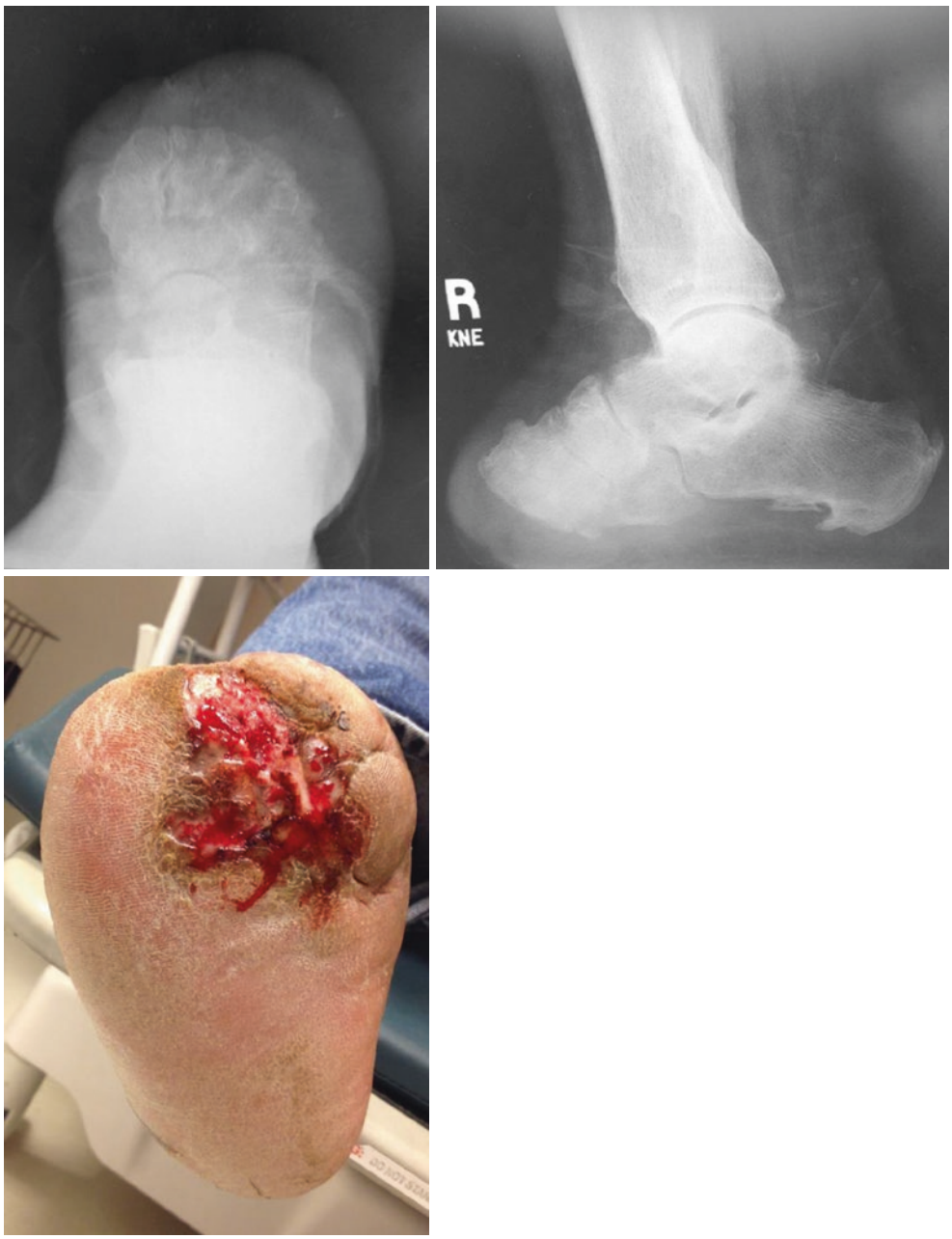


Fig. 58.17 Right foot Lisfranc amputation with removal of fifth metatarsal base and peroneus brevis attachment. Altered biomechanics led to varus foot position with lateral overload and recurrent plantar ulceration

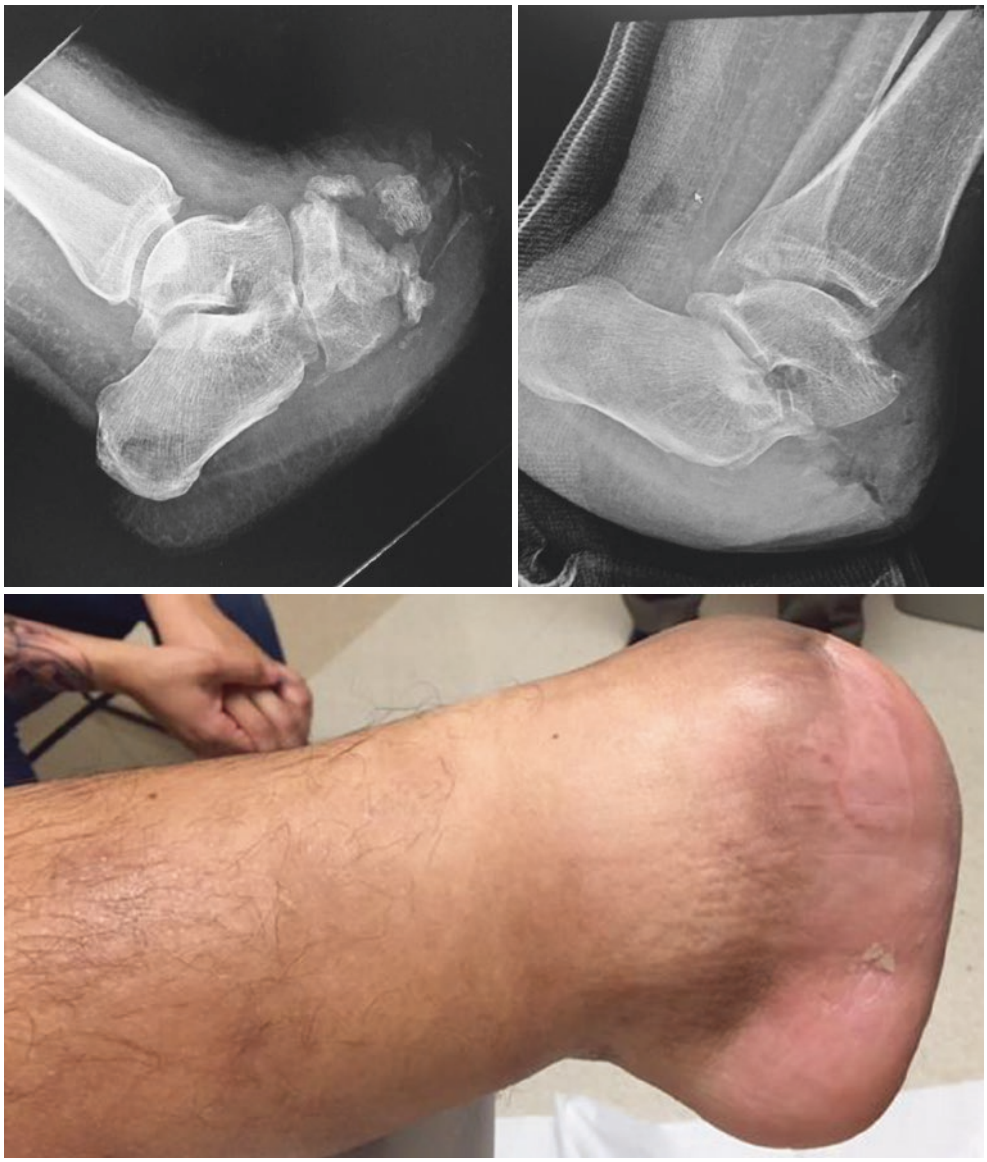


Fig. 58.18 Chopart amputation for lesser tarsal osteomyelitis after failed Lisfranc amputation. Preoperative radiograph (left). Postoperative radiograph (right) and clinical appearance (bottom) after successful Chopart amputation and Achilles tendon lengthening

Table 58.3 Ipsilateral limb amputation rates by level of original amputation level [66]

Level of index amputation	1 year (%)	3 years (%)	5 years (%)
Toe	22.8	39.6	52.3
Ray	28.7	41.2	50
Transmetatarsal	18.8	33.3	42.9
Major limb	4.7	11.8	13.3

of those converted to a transmetatarsal amputation with a mean time of 9 months to definitive amputation [64].

Similarly, Izumi and associates in 2006 retrospectively analyzed a population of 277 diabetic patients who underwent a first-time amputation. They looked at repeat amputation after first amputation at 1, 3, and 5 years [65]. They found the reamputation rates noted in Table 58.3. As indicated in the table, these researchers found an increasing trend in future amputations over time. However, the rate of change decreased when comparing toe and ray amputations to the transmetatarsal level, indicating the inherent problematic long-term success of the more minor pedal amputations. This increased complication rate is due to the altered biomechanics of the residual foot in otherwise ambulatory patients. For example, after partial first-ray amputation, it is highly predictable to see hammertoe contractures of the remaining toes and altered weightbearing plantar pressures. These deformities then predispose the neuropathic patient to further ulceration, infection, and subsequent amputation.

The transmetatarsal amputation has gained popularity as an increasingly successful forefoot amputation. The aforementioned studies demonstrate the decreased reamputation rates versus hallux and partial first-ray amputation. This was shown early in a retrospective cohort study of 53 patients undergoing first-time amputation with a success rate of 37.1% in patients undergoing partial first-ray amputations and 93.3% in patients undergoing transmetatarsal amputation [66].

Conclusion

All interventions discussed herein rely fully on involvement of the patient and adherence to treatment regimens. Unfortunately, this may be difficult in practice. Nonadherence in patients with diabetic foot complications is high.

Depression has a significant effect on the diabetic patient and has been shown to decrease health-related quality of life, decrease self-foot care, and increase number and severity of diabetes-related complications [67, 68]. Major depression has been linked with a twofold increased risk of incident ulcers [69] and a fivefold increased risk of ulcer recurrence [70]. Depression also increases the amputation risk with a 33% increased risk of major amputation and 12% increased risk of any amputation (major or minor) [71].

Specialists caring for patients with diabetic foot complications must be cognizant of the home and social environment as well as any individual factors that may involuntarily increase nonadherence to medical therapy. Time should be taken to educate the patient about his or her situation and the steps necessary for care, and it must be determined if the patient is cognitively able to understand the various needs to effect positive outcomes.

The complications associated with the diabetic foot are highly significant and require greater focus to improve patient outcomes. Due to the complexity of the diabetic patient, no single medical provider can successfully perform all of the necessary interventions. Thus, a team approach is integral to appropriate care. The team approach, in which all providers involved with limb preservation participate in the joint care of patients, has become increasingly common with designated amputation prevention centers to focus on all aspects of the diabetic foot. Figure __ lists the possible members of the amputation prevention service [72], but it must be understood that at the center of this team is the patient (Table 58.4).

Several recent studies have demonstrated both improved outcomes and decreased healthcare costs with this team approach. Van Gils and colleagues reported on the outcomes of a collaborative approach between podiatry and vascular surgery services in a Veterans' Affairs population. During a 55-month follow-up, they found an 86.5% limb loss avoidance rate at 3 years which remained 83% at 5 years [73]. Similarly, a collaborative approach including vascular surgery, orthopedics, endocrinology, plastic surgery, and nursing in a Turkish limb preservation service found an overall amputation rate of 39.4% with 30% below knee amputations [74], an improvement in the rate of major amputations. Driver and associates, reporting on the outcomes of a multispecialty limb preservation service, found an 82% decrease in any lower limb amputations over a 4-year period despite a rising number of diabetic patients [75].

In conclusion, diabetic foot complications were a previously poorly understood phenomenon that today has demonstrated significant improvements in outcomes. When understood properly and treated with a comprehensive interprofessional care model, diabetic foot ulcers, Charcot neuroarthropathy, and infections such as osteomyelitis may be successfully treated with improved patient ambulatory activity and quality of life.

Table 58.4 Potential members of an amputation prevention service

Certified diabetes educator
Endocrinologist
General surgeon
Infectious disease specialist
Internist
Nephrologist
Nurse
Nutritionist
Podiatrist/orthopedist
Pedorthotist/orthotist/prosthetist
Psychologist/psychiatrist
Vascular surgeon

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Five-year mortality rate for patients with neuropathic foot ulcers:
   (a) 30%
   (b) 35%
   (c) 40%
   (d) 45%
   (e) 50%
2. Diabetic foot ulcers:
   (a) Are not preventable
   (b) Are mostly not preventable
   (c) Are mostly preventable
   (d) Are unavoidable
   (e) None of the above
3. Compared with some types of cancer, 5-year mortality rates from neuropathic ulcers and amputations:
   (a) Are higher
   (b) Are lower
   (c) Are equal
   (d) Have not been compared
   (e) Are not comparable
4. A crucial initial event on the development of diabetic foot ulcers:
   (a) Low-grade microtrauma
   (b) Loss of protective sensation
   (c) Lower limb ischemia
   (d) Infection
   (e) Structural deformities

5. The stage at which the typical foot ulcer healing process stalls:
   (a) The hemostatic inflammatory phase
   (b) The proliferative phase
   (c) The remodeling phase
6. Compared to patients without diabetes, the risk of amputation in patients with diabetes and peripheral artery disease is:
   (a) Two times higher
   (b) Three times higher
   (c) Four times higher
   (d) Five times higher
   (e) Six times higher
7. Historical components of the vascular risk spectrum include:
   (a) Macrovascular disease
   (b) Microvascular disease
   (c) Functional microvascular disease
   (d) A and B are correct
   (e) A, B, and C are correct
8. According to the UKPDS trial, each 1 percent increase in glycosylated hemoglobin increases the risk of peripheral artery disease by:
   (a) 12%
   (b) 28%
   (c) 34%
   (d) 43%
   (e) 51%
9. Independent risk factors for peripheral artery disease include all of the following, except:
   (a) Hyperglycemia
   (b) Smoking
   (c) Systolic blood pressure
   (d) Diastolic blood pressure
   (e) Dyslipidemia
10. Different studies have shown that a team approach reduces the risk of lower limb amputations by approximately:
   (a) 30%
   (b) 40%
   (c) 50%
   (d) 80%
   (e) Compared to traditional management, no reduction has been demonstrated

Correct Answers

1. (d) 45%
2. (c) Are mostly preventable
3. (a) Are higher
4. (b) Loss of protective sensation
5. (b) The proliferative phase
6. (d) Five times higher
7. (e) A, B, and C are correct
8. (b) 28%
9. (d) Diastolic blood pressure
10. (d) 80%

References

1. Wild S, et al. Global prevalence of diabetes: estimates for the year 2000 and projections for 2030. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(5):1047–53.
2. Ramsey S, et al. Incidence, outcomes, and cost of foot ulcers in patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1999;22(3):382–7.
3. Reiber GE, Boyko EJ, Smith DG. Lower extremity foot ulcers and amputation in diabetes. In: Harris MI, Cowie CC, Stern MP, et al., editors. Diabetes in America. 2nd ed. Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office; 1995.
4. Apelquist J, et al. Long-term prognosis for diabetic patients with foot ulcers. J Intern Med. 1993;233(6):485–91.
5. Larsson J, et al. Long term prognosis after healed amputation in patients with diabetes. Clin Orthop Relat Res. 1998;350:149–58.
6. Moulik P, et al. Amputation and mortality in new-onset diabetic foot ulcers stratified by etiology. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(2):491–4.
7. Mayfield J, et al. Survival following lower-limb amputation in a veteran population. J Rehabil Res Dev. 2001;38(3):341–5.
8. Hoffman M, et al. Survival of diabetes patients with major amputation is comparable to malignant disease. Diab Vasc Dis Res. 2015;12(4):265–71.
9. Sohn M, et al. Lower-extremity amputation risk after Charcot arthropathy and diabetic foot ulcer. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(1):98–100.
10. US Inflation Calculator. Coinnews Media Group. http://www.usinflationcalculator.com/. Accessed Apr 2016.
11. Young MJ, et al. The effect of callus removal on dynamic plantar foot pressures in diabetic patients. Diabet Med. 1992;9(1):55–7.
12. Ledoux W, et al. Relationship between foot type, foot deformity, and ulcer occurrence in the high-risk diabetic foot. J Rehabil Res Dev. 2005;42(5):665–72.
13. Cho CY, Lo JS. Dressing the part. Excision and repair. Dermatol Clin. 1998;16(1):25–47.
14. Jude EB, Oyibo SO, Chalmers N, Boulton AJM. Peripheral arterial disease in diabetic and nondiabetic patients. A comparison of severity and outcome. Diabetes Care. 2001;24:1433–7.
15. Harkless L, Holmes C. Linking risk factors: the role of history in predicting outcome. Diabet Foot. 2004;7(3):116–22.
16. Adler A, et al. UKPDS 59: hyperglycemia and other potentially modifiable risk factors for peripheral vascular disease in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2002;25(1):894–9.
17. White NH, Sun W, Cleary PA, Danis RP, Davis MD, Hainsworth DP, et al. Prolonged effect of intensive therapy on the risk of retinopathy complications in patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus: 10 years after the diabetes control and complications trial. Arch Ophthalmol. 2008;126:1707–15.
18. El-Osta A, Brasacchio D, Yao D, Pocai A, Jones PL, Roeder RG, et al. Transient high glucose causes persistent epigenetic changes and altered gene expression during subsequent normoglycemia. J Exp Med. 2008;205:2409–17.
19. Zong H, Ward M, Stitt AW. AGEs, RAGE, and diabetic retinopathy. Curr Diab Rep. 2011;11(August):244–52.
20. Kowluru RA, Chan PS. Oxidative stress and diabetic retinopathy. Exp Diabetes Res. 2007;2007:43603.
21. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. The effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the development and

progression of long-term complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med. 1993;329(September (14)):977–86.
22. Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications (EDIC). Design, implementation, and preliminary results of a long-term follow-up of the diabetes control and complications trial cohort. Diabetes Care. 1999;22(1):99–111.
23. Armstrong DG, et al. Activity patterns of patients with diabetic foot ulceration. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(9):2595–7.
24. Armstrong DG, et al. Continuous activity monitoring in persons at high risk for diabetes-related lower-extremity amputation. J Am Podiatr Med Assoc. 2001;91(9):451–5.
25. Armstrong DG, et al. Efficacy of fifth metatarsal head resection for treatment of chronic diabetic foot ulceration. J Am Podiatr Med Assoc. 2005;95(4):353–6.
26. Armstrong DG, et al. Off-loading the diabetic foot wound: a randomized clinical trial. Diabetes Care. 2001;24(6):1019–22.
27. Piaggesi A, et al. Conservative surgical approach versus non-surgical management for diabetic neuropathic foot ulcers: a randomized trial. Diabet Med. 1998;15:412–7.
28. Waaijmann R, et al. Adherence to wearing prescription custom-made footwear in patients with diabetes at high risk for plantar foot ulceration. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:1613–8.
29. Pakarinen TK, et al. Long-term outcome and quality of life in patients with Charcot foot. Foot Ankle Surg. 2009;15(4):187–91.
30. Milne T, et al. Developing an evidence-based clinical pathway for the assessment, diagnosis and management of acute Charcot neuro-arthropathy: a systematic review. J Foot Ankle Res. 2013;6(30):1–12.
31. Sochocki M, et al. Health related quality of life in patients with Charcot arthropathy of the foot and ankle. Foot Ankle Surg. 2008;14:11–5.
32. Jeffocoate W, et al. The role of proinflammatory cytokines in the cause of neuropathic osteoarthropathy (acute Charcot foot) in diabetes. Lancet. 2005;366:2058–61.
33. Hofbauer L, Schoppet M. Clinical implications of the osteoprotegrin/RANK/RANKL system for bone and vascular diseases. J Am Med Assoc. 2004;292(4):490–5.
34. Petrova N, et al. Is there a systemic inflammatory response in the acute Charcot foot? Diabetes Care. 2007;30(4):997–8.
35. Armstrong D, Lavery L. Monitoring healing of acute Charcot's arthropathy with infrared dermal thermometry. J Rehabil Res Dev. 1997;34(3):317–21.
36. Bharara M, et al. Thermography and thermometry in the assessment of diabetic neuropathic foot: a case for furthering the role of thermal techniques. Int J Low Extrem Wounds. 2006;5(4):250–60.
37. Judge M. Infection and neuroarthropathy: the utility of C-reactive protein as a screening tool in the Charcot foot. J Am Podiatr Med Assoc. 1998;98(1):1–6.
38. Rosenbaum A. Classifications in brief: Eichenholtz classification of Charcot arthropathy. Clin Orthop Relat Res. 2015;473(3):1168–71.
39. Shibata T, et al. The results of arthrodesis of the ankle for leprotic neuroarthropathy. J Bone Joint Surg. 1990;72-A(5):749–56.
40. Aliabadi P, et al. Imaging of neuropathic arthropathy. Semin Musculoskelet Radiol. 2003;7(3):217–25.
41. Sanders LJ, Frykberg RG. Diabetic neuropathic osteoarthropathy: the Charcot foot. In: Frykberg RG, editor. The high risk foot in diabetes mellitus. New York: Churchill Livingston; 1991. p. 297–338.
42. Fosbøl M. Three-phase bone scintigraphy for diagnosis of Charcot neuropathic osteoarthropathy in the diabetic foot – does quantitative data improve diagnostic value? Clin Physiol Funct Imaging. 2017;37(1):30–6.
43. Sinacore D. Acute Charcot arthropathy in patients with diabetes mellitus: healing times by foot location. J Diabetes Complicat. 1998;12:287–93.
44. Pinzur M, et al. Treatment of Eichenholz stage I Charcot foot arthropathy with a weight-bearing total contact cast. Foot Ankle Int. 2006;27(56):324–9.
45. Schon LC, et al. Charcot neuroarthropathy of the foot and ankle. Clin Orthop Relat Res. 1998;349:116–31.
46. Jude EB, et al. Bisphosphonates in the treatment of Charcot neuroarthropathy: a double-blind randomized controlled trial. Diabetologia. 2001;44(11):2032–7.
47. Pakarinen TK, et al. The effect of zoledronic acid on the clinical resolution of Charcot neuroarthropathy. Diabetes Care. 2011;34:1514–6.
48. Pitocco D, et al. Six-month treatment with aledronate in acute Charcot neuroarthropathy. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(5):1214–5.
49. Anderson J, et al. Bisphosphonates for the treatment of Charcot neuroarthropathy. J Foot Ankle Surg. 2004;43(5):285–9.
50. Richard JL, et al. Treatment of acute Charcot foot with bisphosphonates: a systematic review of the literature. Diabetologia. 2012;55(5):1258–64.
51. Al-Nammari SS, et al. A surgeon's guide to advances in the pharmacological management of acute Charcot neuroarthropathy. Foot Ankle Surg. 2013;19(4):212–7.
52. Sohn MW, et al. Mortality risk of Charcot arthropathy compared with that of diabetic foot ulcer and diabetes alone. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(5):816–21.
53. Waters R, et al. Energy cost of walking of amputees: the influence of level of amputation. J Bone Joint Surg. 1976;58-A(1):42–6.
54. Gailey S, et al. Energy expenditure of trans-tibial amputees during ambulation at self-selected pace. Prosthetics Orthot Int. 1994;18(2):84–91.
55. Izumi Y, et al. Mortality of first-time amputees in diabetics: a 10 year observation. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2009;83:126–31.
56. Brown M, et al. Partial foot amputations in patients with diabetic foot ulcers. Foot Ankle Int. 2012;33(9):707–16.
57. Nerone V, et al. Reamputation after minor foot amputation in diabetic patients: factors leading to limb loss. J Foot Ankle Surg. 2013;52(2):184–7.
58. Caselli A, et al. Transcutaneous oxygen tension monitoring after successful revascularization in diabetic patients with ischaemic foot ulcers. Diabet Med. 2005;22(4):460–5.
59. Garbalosa JB, et al. Foot function in diabetic patients after partial amputation. Foot Ankle Int. 1996;17(1):43–8.
60. Giurini JM, et al. Panmetatarsal head resection. A viable alternative to the transmetatarsal amputation. J Am Podiatr Med Assoc. 1993;83(2):101–7.
61. Garwood C, Steinberg G. Soft tissue balancing after partial foot amputations. Clin Podiatr Med Surg. 2016;33(1):99–111.
62. Schweinberger M, Roukis T. Soft-tissue and osseous techniques to balance forefoot and midfoot amputations. Clin Podiatr Med Surg. 2008;25(4):623–39.
63. Murdoch D, et al. The natural history of great toe amputations. J Foot Ankle Surg. 1997;36(3):204–8.
64. Kadukammakal J, et al. Assessment of partial first-ray resections and their tendency to progress to transmetatarsal amputations. J Am Podiatr Med Assoc. 2012;102(5):412–6.
65. Izimi Y, et al. Risk of reamputation in diabetic patients stratified by limb and level of amputation: a 10 year observation. Diabetes Care. 2006;29(3):566–70.
66. Cohen M, et al. Panmetatarsal head resection and transmetatarsal amputation versus solitary partial first ray resection in the neuropathic foot. J Foot Surg. 1991;30(1):29–33.
67. Simon G, et al. Diabetes complications and depression as predictors of health service costs. Gen Hosp Psychiatry. 2005;27:344–51.
68. Egede L, et al. The effect of depression on self-care behaviors and quality of care in a national sample of adults with diabetes. Gen Hosp Psychiatry. 2009;31:422–7.
69. Williams LH. Depression and incident diabetic foot ulcers: a prospective cohort study. Am J Med. 2010;123(8):748–54.
70. Monami M, et al. The diabetic person beyond a foot ulcer: healing, recurrence, and depressive symptoms. J Am Podiatr Med Assoc. 2008;98(2):130–6.

71. Williams LH, et al. Depression and incident lower limb amputations in veterans with diabetes. J Diabetes Complications. 2011;25(3):175–82.
72. Rogers L, et al. Toe and flow: essential components and structure of the amputation prevention team. J Am Podiatr Med Assoc. 2010;100(5):342–8.
73. Van Gils CC, et al. Amputation prevention by vascular surgery and podiatry collaboration in high-risk diabetic and nondiabetic patients. The operation desert foot experience. Diabetes Care. 1998;22(5):678–83.
74. Aksoy DY, et al. Change in the amputation profile in diabetic foot in a tertiary reference center: efficacy of team working. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes. 2004;112(9):526–30.
75. Driver VR, et al. Reducing amputation rates in patients with diabetes at a military medical center: the limb preservation service model. Diabetes Care. 2005;28(2):248–53.

Diabetes and Cancer

59

Joanna Krajewska (Wojciechowska), Wojciech Krajewski, and Tomasz Zatoński

Chapter Objectives

- The prevalence of diabetes mellitus type 2 and cancers of various sites is dramatically increasing nowadays. It was established that diabetes mellitus (mainly type 2 diabetes mellitus) predisposes do oncogenesis in various human organs.
- The main factors leading to neoplastic transformation in diabetics are hyperinsulinemia, hyperglycaemia and chronic inflammation induced by excessive adipose tissue.
- Antidiabetic medications interfere with the risk of neoplastic transformation – some of them elevate the risk, some reduce the risk, and some express inconsistent activity.
- Certain antidiabetic medications express potential usefulness in improving effectiveness of conventional chemotherapy.
- Diabetics with T2DM and coexisting neoplasm have worse disease-free and overall survival than patients with neoplasm but without T2DM.

Introduction

Diabetes mellitus (DM), one of the most common diseases all around the world, is a large group of metabolic disorders. DM is characterized by persistent hyperglycaemia caused by inaccurate function of insulin or its reduced excretion from pancreatic beta cells. Long-lasting hyperglycaemia results in damage and improper function of various organs. The morbidity of T2DM is rapidly increasing especially in middle-aged people (45–65 years). Interestingly, recent evidences imply that there is a significant correlation between DM and neoplastic transformation [1–5]. The association was observed for type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1DM) and type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), nevertheless the majority of studies concern T2DM [6]. It was found that DM (especially T2DM) increases the risk of various cancers incidence including pancreatic, liver, genitourinary system cancers as well as non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Up to now, little is known about the links between T1DM and carcinogenesis. Nevertheless, it was observed that T1DM enhances the risk of endometrium, cervix, stomach, squamous cell skin cancers and acute lymphatic leukaemia [6, 7]. The strongest association between DM and carcinogenesis is observed for pancreatic and liver cancers in patients with T2DM [8]. Additionally, according to the current knowledge, there is also a relationship between neoplastic transformation and antidiabetic medications [5]. However, the exact mechanisms leading to this connection need further investigation [1, 9].

Historical Facts

The first description of diabetes (a state of polyuria) was described on *Ebers Papyrus* in 1552 BC by the Egyptian physician Hesy-Ra. This description was made by the Egyptologist Georg Ebers in Thebes (Egypt) in 1862 AD. The term "diabetes" comes from a Greek term meaning "siphone" and was introduced by Areteus from Cappadocia (81–138 AD) who described the main symptoms of this disease [10, 11]. The main differences between two most common types of DM (type 1 and type 2) were observed and described in 1936 [12].

Epidemiology

The global prevalence of diabetes mellitus in 2015 estimated by the International Diabetes Federation (IDF) among adults (aged 20–79 years) reached 415 million people. Nevertheless,

J. Krajewska (Wojciechowska) (✉) · T. Zatoński
Department and Clinic of Otolaryngology, Head and Neck Surgery, Wrocław Medical University, Wrocław, Poland

W. Krajewski
Department and Clinic of Urology, Wrocław Medical University Hospital, Wrocław, Poland

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_59

approximately 50% of DM cases remain undiagnosed. IDF estimates that in 2040, the number of diabetics will exceed 462 million.

It is also known that cancers are the second leading cause of death worldwide. In 2012 tumours led to 8.2 millions of deaths. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), the annual incidence of new cancer cases will reach 22 million in the following two decades.

Types of Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetes is a group of disease entities that can be classified as follows:

1. T1DM (previously known as "insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus") is caused by autoimmune or idiopathic process of autoaggression leading to rapid destruction of pancreatic β-cells. As a result, the level of insulin, a pancreatic hormone, is minimal or undetectable. T1DM usually appears as ketoacidosis with its main symptoms including polyuria, polydipsia, nausea, vomiting, stomachache, weakness, acetone breath and Kussmaul breathing. T1DM concerns 5–10% of all cases of diabetes. The autoimmune process is characterized by the presence of four types of antibodies: ICA (islet cell antibodies), IAA (insulin autoantibodies), anti-GAD (anti-glutamic acid decarboxylase), IA-2 and IA-2B (tyrosine phosphatase-related islet antibodies). These antibodies can be detected months or even years before first symptoms of the disease. Generally, T1DM is not an inherited disease; however, there is a proven genetic predisposition determined by HLA (human leukocyte antigens). The highest susceptibility to T1DM occurs in patients with haplotype HLA-DRB1*03 (DR3) or HLA-DRB1*04 (DR4) with DQB1*03:02 (DQ8) [13]. On the contrary, HLA-DQ6 haplotype is considered to protect from T1DM incidence. T1DM may appear at any age but is usually diagnosed in the childhood (under age of 30). The exception is LADA (latent autoimmune diabetes of adults) that occurs in adults. T1DM treatment is based on permanent injections of exogenous insulin preparations.
2. T2DM (previously known as "non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus") is the most common form of diabetes (up to 95% of all cases). T2DM is generally characterized by insulin resistance of insulin-dependent tissues (adipose tissue, liver and muscle cells) leading to improper, excessive secretion of insulin and hyperinsulinemia [14]. Insulin insensitivity causes a decreased glucose uptake of target tissues and increased serum glucose level [12]. Other pathologies in T2DM comprise increased amount of circulating inflammatory cytokines, adipokines, lipotoxic-free fatty acids or amyloid deposits in pancreatic islet cells [15]. Risk factors of T2DM include genetic, inherited predisposition, sedentary lifestyle, obesity, ageing, cigarettes smoking and/or excessive alcohol consumption. This type commonly affects middle-aged or older people. Genetic susceptibility to T2DM is more significant than observed in T1DM. Confirmed positive family history is associated with 2–4 times increased risk of T2DM [15]. Recently discovered genes connected with high risk of developing T2DM are insulin receptor, potassium channels, proteases or transcription factors genes [12, 15]. The onset and early stages of T2DM are usually asymptomatic and progressive, and slow development of the disease leads to delayed diagnosis. Diabetics presenting lack of symptoms are more prone to develop macrovascular or microvascular complications [14]. Management in T2DM is based on proper diet, lifestyle modification and drug administration [16–18]. Reducing body weight and physical activity is the first step in therapy and is essential in every stage of treatment. Pharmacotherapy must be patient-adjusted and includes variety of glucose-lowering drugs such as biguanides (metformin), sulfonylureas, glinides, α-glucosydase inhibitors, thiazolidinediones (TZD), dipeptidyl peptidase four inhibitors (DPP-4-i), glucagon-like peptide-1 agonists (GLP-1) and sodium-glucose co-transporter 2 inhibitors (SGLT2 inhibitors). If all mentioned methods are insufficient, insulin injections are required. Insulin may be used in monotherapy or in combination with other antidiabetic drugs.

   Another type of DM is MODY (maturity onset diabetes of the young), previously classified in T2DM group. It is inherited, monogenetic form caused by autosomal dominant gene. The pathophysiology of this type is based on improper beta-cell secretion of insulin with preserved insulin function [14]. MODY begins in childhood (under age of 25). This type is characterized by hyperglycaemia, hypoinsulinemia and mild clinical symptoms. Insulin resistance is not observed in MODY. Therapy in this type is based on diet and antidiabetic and sometimes insulin injections.
3. Diabetes of known aetiology includes genetic defects of beta-cells and insulin function, diabetes caused by drugs or other chemicals, infections, endocrinopathies, diseases of exocrine pancreas or genetic syndromes.
4. The last type is gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM), a state of glucose intolerance that begins or is diagnosed for the first time during pregnancy. GDM is caused by insulin resistance during gestation and affects up to 7% of pregnant women. Insulin resistance that develops in pregnant women with GDM is higher than in healthy

ones, probably because of chronic insulin resistance observed in the first group [19]. Moreover, during pregnancy, levels of hormones that are opponent to insulin (placental lactogen, oestrogen, progesterone and prolactin) are elevated, leading to excessive insulin secretion. The risk factors of GDM include obesity, GDM in previous pregnancies, positive family history of diabetes, current glucosuria and macrosomia in previous infant. The management in GDM is based on diet and exercises, and if this management is insufficient, insulin injections are supplied. In some cases GDM continues after delivering baby as T2DM [20].

*Besides various types of diabetes mellitus, the majority of studies concerning diabetes and cancer analyse T2DM***.**

Diabetes Mellitus and Oncogenesis: The Main Correlation

The association between DM and carcinogenesis was described for the first time in 1910 by Maynard and Pearson [21]. The majority of studies on DM-cancer correlation concern T2DM. It is presumably the result of the significantly higher prevalence of T2DM than T1DM. According to a consensus report presented by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and American Cancer Society (ACS) in 2010, possible factors linking diabetes and cancer may be divided into three main groups including modifiable risk factors, non-modifiable risk factors and biological links between DM and cancer [21].

Links between DM and oncogenesis according to ADA and ACS (2010):

- Modifiable risk factors:
  - Overweight (BMI >25 and <30) and obesity (BMI >30)
  - Physical activity (at least 5 days a week for 30 minutes a day reduces the probability of T2DM development)
  - Smoking
  - Alcohol abuse
- Non-modifiable risk factors:
  - Sex (men are more prone than women)
  - Age (adults aged between 55 and 60 years and older are more prone)
  - Race (African Americans are more prone than Caucasians)
- Biological links:
  - Hyperinsulinemia (the effect of resistance to endogenous insulin or by exogenous insulin used as a medication)
  - Hyperglycaemia
  - Fat-induced chronic inflammation

Biological Linking Factors (Hyperinsulinemia, Hyperglycaemia, Fat-Induced Chronic Inflammation)

- The role of *hyperinsulinemia* in cancer biology

In general, the pro-neoplastic features of insulin are induced by activation of its receptors (insulin receptor [IR] and insulin-like growth factor receptor [IGF-R]), as well as via insulin-like growth factor (IGF). Insulin is able to activate IGF-R because of approximately 60% structural homology of IGF-R and IR [22]. Similarly, IR may be stimulated by insulin and by both insulin-like growth factors, IGF-1 and IGF-2 [23]. Ligand-induced IR autophosphorylation triggers intracellular mechanisms. The most important one is activation of PI3K/Akt/mTOR (phosphoinositide 3-kinase/protein kinase B/mammalian target of rapamycin) signalling pathway. Stimulation of PI3K/Akt/mTOR signalling pathway pays critical role in oncogenesis [24]. Interestingly, activation of IGF-R (by both insulin and IGF) results in more significant pro-neoplastic effects than activation of IR. IR and IGF-R are critical in tumorigenesis also because of the fact that their concentration in various cancer cells is higher than in normal cells; thus the effect of insulin and IGF on neoplastic cells is enhanced [25, 26].

*Indirect effects of hyperinsulinemia on cancer biology***:**
- Upregulation of bioavailable IGF-1 by hyperinsulinemia-induced downregulation of IGF-binding protein 1 and 2 and IGF-binding protein-3. IGF-binding proteins are crucial in IGF serum transfer and activity. IGF bound to IGF-binding proteins does not exert its biological effects (biological inactivity) [25, 27].
- Upregulation of IGF-1 in growth hormone (GH)-dependent manner (*explanation:* Insulin stimulates growth hormone receptors (GHR) located in the liver leading to elevated release of GH. Subsequently, GH promotes IGF-1 synthesis) [28].
- Upregulation of leptin, a pro-neoplastic adipokine [29].
- Reduced synthesis of sex-hormone-binding protein (SHBG) in the liver.
- (*Explanation:* SHBG plays an important role in transfer and activity of sex hormones (testosterone, oestrogen). Reduced amount of SHBG leads to high bioavailability of sex hormones that presumably results in development of hormone-related cancers (e.g. endometrial, breast cancers) [30].

- The role of *hyperglycaemia* in cancer biology

It was established that cancer cells require high glucose levels to grow and survive. Cancer cells are more sensitive to

high serum glucose levels than normal cells because of their elevated concentration of glucose receptors (GLUT-1, GLUT-3). These cells are characterized by rapid development and metabolism; thus they require great glucose resources [31]. It was established that hyperglycaemia enables neoplastic transformation via stimulation of cells' quick growth and development, suppression of apoptosis and metastasis promotion [32].

Mechanisms leading to proliferative activity of hyperglycaemia [32, 33]:
- Elevated expression of PPAR α and γ (peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor) (*Explanation:* PPAR α and γ interfere with lipid metabolic pathways and speed up neoplastic cells development.)
- Elevated expression of glucose receptors (GLUT-1, GLUT-3) leading to increased cellular glucose intake
- Elevated expression of EFG (epithelial growth factor) that activates neoplastic pathways via binding to its receptor EGFR (epithelial growth factor receptor)
- Decreased amounts of ROS (reactive oxygen species) and increased level of SOD (superoxide dismutase) resulting in oxidative stress induction (*Explanation:* Oxidative stress is a critical triggering factor of insulin resistance, a tumour-promoting factor. In addition, it induces glucose-mediated inflammation and increased synthesis of transcriptional factors including NF-κB, activating protein-1 and early growth response-1. These mechanisms lead to tumour growth and metastasis.)

Mechanisms leading to anti-apoptotic activity of hyperglycaemia [32]:
- Reduced amount of PDH (prolyl hydroxylase) resulting in increased level of HIF-α (hypoxia-inducible factor α)
- (*Explanation*: The majority of energy in tumour cells are produced in hypoxic environment, via aerobic glycolysis. HIF-α is a critical factor involved in cancer cell existence in hypoxic milieu; thus hyperglycaemia-induced high amount of HIF-α promotes tumour cell growth and survival).

Mechanisms leading to hyperglycaemia-mediated metastasis [32, 34]:
- Increased zinc intake resulting in cancer cells dislocation
- (*Explanation:* Increased zinc intake is caused by hyperglycaemia-induced high expression of zinc receptors. Zinc is an intracellular signalling molecule, able to convert extracellular impulses to intracellular processes and to mediate interaction between cells.)
- Upregulation of urokinase plasminogen activator (uPA), a critical mediator in cancer cells displacement
- Stimulation of ETM (epithelial to mesenchymal transition) process, a mechanism that enables cancer cells to metastasize

Moreover, hyperglycaemia induces epigenetic changes resulting in constant activation of oncogenic pathways, a phenomenon called "hyperglycaemic memory". Oncogenic pathways' activation is regulated by overexpression of well-known neoplastic mediators, nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB) and neuregulin-1 (Nrg1) [32].

- The role of obesity and *fat-induced chronic inflammation* in cancer biology

The vast majority of patients with T2DM are obese or overweight. Besides being a risk factor for T2DM and various cardiovascular disorders, obesity reveals pro-neoplastic activity [35]. Nowadays, the correlation between obesity and carcinogenesis is widely discussed. It was reported that adiposity promotes breast, endometrial, pancreatic, colorectal and oesophageal cancer development [35]. Obesity presumably exerts its pro-neoplastic activities in various ways. It interferes with sex hormones physiology, induces chronic inflammation and changes profile of adipose tissue polypeptide hormones (adipokines) [30, 35]. Adipose tissue is a crucial endocrine organ and in condition of abundance leads to dysregulation of endocrine mechanisms. Excessive adipose tissue expresses high amounts of aromatase, enzyme critical in converting androgens to oestrogens. That leads to high concentration of oestrogens, which accompanied by low concentration of progesterone increases risk of oestrogen-related breast and endometrial cancers [30]. Obesity-induced chronic inflammation is characterized by increased production of pro-inflammatory cytokines including interleukin-6, resistin and TNF-alpha (tumour necrosis factor-alpha) [30]. Moreover, excessive adipose tissue secretes high amount of VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor) and MMP (matrix metalloproteinases) leading to tumour growth and metastasis, respectively [30]. Adipokines that have a significant impact on carcinogenesis are two antagonists, adiponectin and leptin. The level of adiponectin is reduced, and the level of leptin is increased in patients with excessive adipose tissue. Adiponectin sensitizes cells to insulin, suppresses cell growth and metabolism and exerts pro-apoptotic mechanisms, whereas leptin stimulates proliferation of cancer cells [35]. In clinical studies, adiponectin inhibited tumour development in in vitro breast cancer cell lines and in animals afflicted by sarcomas [36, 37]. Contradictory, leptin elevates insulin resistance and induces tumour-promoting processes. It stimulates angiogenesis and tumour proliferation and prevents apoptosis [35].

DM and the Correlation with Oncogenesis in Particular Organs

Various studies emphasize that DM may induce neoplastic transformation [5]. Nevertheless, the exact influence of DM

on carcinogenesis in particular organs has not been fully elucidated, and the results of different studies remain conflicting. The positive correlation between DM and tumorigenesis was observed for organs of digestive system (pancreas, colon and liver), genitourinary system (bladder, kidney, endometrium), head and neck region and breast [38, 39]. The negative, inverse correlation was found only for prostate cancer. The majority of the recent studies concern pancreatic and liver cancers thus these two entities would be discussed more precisely than others.

The current knowledge of the association between DM and cancers of particular organs is discussed below.

Pancreatic Cancer

The correlation between DM and increased risk of pancreatic cancer (PaC) was confirmed by various researches [40]. However, the association between diabetes and PaC remains unclear, because of two-way relationship. PaC may lead to increased glucose level insulin followed by abnormal glucose metabolism, and abnormal glucose metabolism may cause neoplastic transformation in pancreatic cells.

Huxley et al. presented 50% increased risk of PaC in patients with T2DM history shorter than 5 years [41]. Elena et al. suggested that diabetics are involved in 40% higher risk of PaC than nondiabetic ones. The highest risk was observed in patients with DM lasting for 2–8 years. DM of 9 or more years was not associated with increased risk of PaC and may by possibly caused by hypoinsulinemia that develops with the DM duration [42]. Contradictory, elevated risk of PC in long-lasting DM was found in another research [43]. It was also proven that obesity observed in T2DM, results in 54% increased risk of PaC [42]. On the other hand, Grote et al. observed statistically significant increased risk of PaC in patients with HbA (1c) ≥6.5% compared with ≤5.4%, independently of obesity or insulin resistance [44]. It was found that diabetics with T2DM are more prone to suffer from PaC because of high serum concentration of insulin and its precursors. The authors did not find significant association between T1DM and PaC [6]. On the other hand, another study presented two times higher risk of PaC in T1DM or MODY than in nondiabetics [45]. There are also studies implying genetic predisposition to PaC in individuals with diabetes [46, 47]. Interestingly, Prinzment et al. checked ten different SNPs (single nucleotide polymorphisms) related to DM and found the positive association between PaC incidence and DM only for one of the examined SNPs – GCKR rs780094 (glucokinase gene which rises plasma fasting glucose level) [46]. Additionally, it is known that GCKR rs780094 is involved in increased risk of T2DM and PSA-detected prostate cancer [48]. Another research examining genetic susceptibility to PaC in diabetics found higher PaC risk in patients with glucose-rising allele of MADD rs11039149, FTO rs8050136 and MTNR1B rs1387153 variants. The inverse association was observed for BCL11A rs243021 [47].

Liver Cancer

It was established that T2DM and T2DM-related metabolic disorders stimulate tumorigenesis in hepatic cells. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most frequently observed primary malignant cancer in the liver and is also commonly present in diabetics [49]. In 1986 Lawson reported for the first time the positive association between higher prevalence of HCC in diabetics. Other authors accordingly confirmed this finding [49–52]. Besides being observed in diabetics, HCC frequently occurs in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and in those with obesity and insulin resistance [53]. NAFLD is a condition commonly seen in individuals with T2DM and is critically correlated with adiposity. NAFLD as well as T2DM and obesity stimulates tumorigenesis in liver cells via various mechanisms including modified adipokine profile (increased leptin level and decreased adiponectin level), oxidative stress (imbalance between antioxidant and prooxidant factors) and lipotoxicity (malfunction or death of non-adipose tissue cells caused by accumulation of excess lipids). The liver is exposed to circulation of high amounts of insulin because of its portal vessels. Constantly high insulin levels, via elevated production of IGF-1, lead to multiplication and apoptosis suppression in hepatic cells [54]. According to the meta-analysis of 25 cohort studies, incidence of HCC is significantly increased in both men and women with DM [52]. Other authors received consistent results [49, 51, 55]. It has not been established yet whether T2DM is an independent risk factor for HCC or whether T2DM leads to HCC via inducing other liver disorders namely NAFLD, steatosis, alcohol abuse, cirrhosis and HCV/HBV infections [49, 56]. Therefore, the exact association between DM and HCC remains unclear [1].

Colon/Colorectal Cancer

A variety of studies established that T2DM predisposes to colon and colorectal cancers (CRC). A meta-analysis conducted by Larsson et al. revealed that DM is a significant risk factor for CRC. The relative risk in diabetics was approximately 30% higher than in nondiabetics and was similar in both genders. Total mortality of CRC is approximately 1,5 times higher in diabetics than in nondiabetics [57]. The positive association between T2DM and colon/colorectal cancer was also described in another study. The cancer incidence was similar in colon and in rectum, with no statistically significant difference between genders [58]. Another meta-analysis revealed 1,22-fold increased relative risk of CRC in diabetics [39]. Similar results were presented in other studies [38, 59].

Bladder Cancer

According to current knowledge, there is also positive association between T2DM and oncogenesis in bladder cells [60, 61]. The association was observed for both female and male diabetics. Woolcott et al. found increased risk of bladder cancer in diabetics suggesting higher risk in female individuals [62]. Contradictory, another author presented statistically significant increased risk but especially in men with T2DM [63].

Kidney Cancer

The clear association between renal cell cancer (RCC) and DM has not been fully elucidated. Various studies received conflicting results. A prospective study of women with T2DM conducted by Hee-Kyung et al. revealed increased risk of renal cell cancer (RCC) in this group [64]. Similar association was described in Japanese men and in Czech diabetics [65, 66]. No such correlation was found in another study [67]. Qayyum et al. suggested that DM is not an independent risk factor of RCC, but when combined with obesity or hypertension, it increased the risk of RCC [68]. Another study did not confirm that DM is a risk factor for RCC; however, it revealed increased risk of death from RCC in diabetics [69].

Endometrial Cancer

A significant role of DM in endometrial carcinogenesis was emphasized by a number of authors. It was also strongly implied that DM is an independent risk factor of endometrial carcinogenesis [70]. Lindemann et al. established three-times increased risk of endometrial cancer (EC) in diabetic women [71]. Two-times increased risk of EC in diabetic women was found in another study. Interestingly, the risk of EC is more than six times higher in obese diabetics in comparison with nonobese nondiabetics [27]. The investigation of the influence of elevated serum glucose level on EC development revealed that both elevated serum glucose level caused by impaired glucose metabolism and DM increased the risk of EC [72]. It was suggested that DM might predispose to EC via hyperinsulinemia-dependent reduced level of adiponectin and via obesity-related decreased concentration of SHBG. Reduced level of SHBG leads to elevated bioavailable oestrogen and testosterone amounts and eventually stimulates endometrial oncogenesis [35, 73].

Breast Cancer

The significant correlation between DM and elevated risk of oncogenesis in breast tissues has been widely discussed in the literature and is now well established [74, 75].

The revealed causes of breast carcinogenesis in DM include [74–76]:

- Activation of IR or IGF-R through IGF
- Overexpression of IR in breast tissue
- Activation of insulin-dependent IP3-K/AKT/mTOR pathway
- Hyperglycaemia
- Insulin-induced increased level of bioavailable IGF-1
- Insulin-induced increased concentration of leptin
- Insulin-induced reduced level of adiponectin
- Insulin-induced reduced level of SHBG resulting in increased amount of bioavailable estradiol

The correlation between DM and breast cancer is mainly observed in postmenopausal women [74]. Nondiabetic postmenopausal obese women with hyperinsulinemia are in higher risk of BC incidence in comparison with normoinulinemic ones [77]. The presumed inequalities in the prevalence of BC in post- and premenopausal diabetic females may be induced by different oestrogen concentrations (modified indirectly by insulin) observed in these populations [21].

The correlation between T2DM and BC incidence was also studied in MKR (MKR is a mouse model of T2DM, which has genetically modified IGF-1 receptor). Authors of this study presented positive relationship between BC and high insulin concentration in MKR female mice with hyperinsulinemia. Hyperinsulinemic milieu in MKR led to proliferation and oncogenesis in breast cells. Subsequently, specimens of tumour and breast tissues from examined mice were taken for further research. The obtained tissues presented elevated level of IR and increased IR/IGF-1R activation that resulted in insulin-dependent metabolic effects and proliferation of mammary gland [78]. Overexpression of IGF-1R in breast tissue in transgenic mice and its influence on BC incidence was also emphasized in another study [79].

Head and Neck Cancers

Studies investigating the association between DM and head and neck cancers (HNCs) are sparse with conflicting results. Some authors reported positive association, some reported negative, inverse association and some found no correlation. The majority of precise studies focus on particular organs of the head and neck area. In general, HNCs' incidence was weakly associated with T2DM or no significant relationship was revealed [80, 81]. On the other hand, there is also a presumption that head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC) is slightly inversely associated with T2DM [82].

Laryngeal Cancer

Japanese men with diabetes presented significantly elevated risk of laryngeal cancer independently of smoking status [83]. Other studies on Japanese population of diabetics found increased risk of laryngeal cancer in both genders [65, 84]. Contradictory, chance of laryngeal cancer incidence was decreased in a large group of US veterans with T2DM [85]. No significant association between these two diseases was observed in another study [86].

Pharyngeal Cancer

Significantly elevated risk of oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal cancers was reported in Taiwanese individuals with T2DM [3]. The risk of pharyngeal cancer is higher in those with long-lasting T2DM compared to those with a short history of T2DM [86].

Oral Cancer

The increased risk of oral cancer incidence in diabetics was also described [3, 86].

Prostate Cancer

According to current knowledge, prostate cancer (PC) is the only neoplasm that is conversely related to DM [87]. A number of researches observed significant protective influence of DM on PC incidence [87–89]. This association is presumably a result of hyperglycaemia-induced low concentration of testosterone and hypoinsulinemia detected in T1DM or long-lasting T2DM. Physiologically, insulin inhibits liver synthesis of IGF-1-binding protein leading to increased bioavailability of IGF-1, which subsequently may induce prostate cells' proliferation. Hypoinsulinemia in T1DM or long-lasting T2D consequently results in low-circulating IGF-1 and suppresses prostate cells' multiplication.

Opposite results implying that DM promotes the development of advanced PC were found in western population [90]. It was presented that diabetics aged 40–64 years had significantly increased relative risk of PC incidence. Men older than 40–64 years had also elevated PC risk, but the risk was lower than in younger patients [91].

Antidiabetic Medications and Their Influence on Neoplastic Transformation

It was widely discussed that via intervening in mechanisms of cell cycle and cellular survival, antidiabetic medications have a potential impact on carcinogenesis [5]. Presumably, the main linking factor between oncogenesis and antidiabetic medications is various insulin concentrations they elicit.

- Antidiabetic medications that decrease insulin level:
  - Metformin
  - Thiazolidinediones (TZD)
- Antidiabetic medications that increase insulin level:
  - Sulfonylureas
  - Exogenous insulin
- Antidiabetic medications able to diminish insulin resistance:
  - Metformin
  - TZD

On the other hand, there is a study implying that glucose-lowering therapy for T2DM does not interfere with the risk of cancer incidence in diabetics with T2DM [92].

Because of the fact that hyperglycaemia and hyperinsulinemia are well-known carcinogenesis-promoting factors, normalizing serum glucose and insulin concentrations may presumably prevent neoplastic transformation. The majority of studies of the association between antidiabetic medications and oncogenesis concern metformin; thus this drug will be discussed in detail.

Metformin: Mechanism of Action and Influence on Carcinogenesis

Metformin is a member of biguanide family with an activity of insulin sensitizer. Current recommendations consider metformin as a first-line medication for T2DM therapy [17]. It was established that metformin suppresses oncogenesis in systemic (indirect, interfering in serum levels of glucose and insulin) and cellular (direct, pointed at tumour cells) matter [25, 93, 94].

Indirect impact of metformin on neoplastic transformation [5, 93, 95]:

- Reduction of the serum glucose concentration via:
  - Inhibition of hepatic gluconeogenesis (in LKB1/AMPK-dependent and/or LKB1/AMPK-independent way)
  - Inhibition of hepatic glycogenolysis
  - Prevention of glucagon-dependent release of glucose from liver cells by accumulating AMP
  - Suppression of gastrointestinal absorption of glucose
- Reduction of the serum insulin concentration.
- Suppression of inflammatory response by inhibiting the activation of NF-κB. (*Explanation*: NF-κB is a critical factor in inflammatory response. Chronic inflammation stimulates oncogenesis [96].)
- Inhibition of metastatic progression by interfering in cancer stem cells biology. (*Explanation*: Cancer stem cells are capable of undergoing epithelial to mesenchymal transition (EMT), a crucial process in metastasis, and a marker of unfavourable prognosis and cancer aggressiveness. Metformin is able to inhibit metastasis by damaging cancer stem cells [97–99].)
- Stimulation of the immune system, leading to CD8 T-cells production, by modifying fatty acid metabolism [100].
- Suppression of UPR (unfolded protein response) leading to activation of apoptosis [25].
- High local concentration of metformin after oral intake reduces the risk of oncogenesis (observed for colon cancer) [101].

Direct impact of metformin on neoplastic transformation:
- Reduction of ATP synthesis leading to inhibition of the formation of factors crucial for cancer cell survival
- (*Explanation:*
- *Metformin ➔ modifications in respiratory complex-I ➔ energetic stress ➔ reduced production of ATP ➔activation of AMPK ➔ inhibition o mTOR pathway ➔ antiproliferative and energy saving mechanisms, inhibition of growth factor formation (insulin, IGF-1, glucose, leptin), inhibition of proteins and fatty acids formation)*
- Inhibition of mTOR pathway in AMPK-independent manner by decreasing insulin and IGF-1 concentrations
- Activation of LKB1-dependent signalling resulting in suppression of oncogenesis (LKB1, *liver kinase B1*, is a well-known neoplastic suppressor)
- Reduction of the reactive oxygen species (ROS) formation
- Suppression of VEGF, a critical factor of tumour vascularity formation
- Suppression of HIF-1, a critical factor of tumour cells perseverance in hypoxic milieu
- Cell cycle arrest and apoptosis induction via activation of cell cycle inhibitory components (p53, p21, cyclin D1)
- Modification of multidrug resistance 1 gene (MDR1 gene) and microRNA encoding P-glycoprotein (*Explanation*: Tumour cells are characterized by high expression of P-glycoprotein. Because of the fact that P-glycoprotein has the ability to eliminate hydrophobic chemotherapeutics from cancer cell, high concentration of P-glycoprotein in tumour cells reduces the effectiveness of chemotherapy.)

Effects of Metformin on Neoplasms of Digestive System

1. *Pancreatic cancer:* Studies present that metformin users have significantly decreased risk of pancreatic cancer in comparison to non-users and in those on insulin administration [102, 103].
2. *Liver cancer:* The risk of liver cancer incidence is also significantly reduced in diabetics on metformin therapy [104, 105].
3. *Colorectal cancer:* Researches examining the effect of metformin on colorectal cancer presented conflicting results. Whereas some of them observed protective activity of metformin on CRC, others received opposite outcomes [105–107].

Effects of Metformin on Neoplasms of Genitourinary System

1. *Prostate cancer:* It was established that antidiabetic therapy based on metformin reduces the risk of prostate cancer (up to 44% reduction in Caucasians) [108]. Other studies consistently reported decreased risk of prostate cancer in metformin users [109, 110]. Interestingly, metformin users had also significantly decreased risk of advanced prostate cancer. The antineoplastic effect of metformin increased with the duration on metformin therapy [111].
2. *Kidney cancer:* In vitro study on human kidney cancer cell lines 786-O revealed that metformin-mediated increased expression of microRNA-26a, a regulatory RNA critical in cell diversification, led to suppression of 786-O cells proliferation and oncogenesis [112].
3. *Ovarian cancer:* Various authors described that metformin reduced the risk of ovarian cancer incidence in women with T2DM undergoing metformin therapy. Metformin also improved overall survival and extended disease-free period in females with ovarian cancer [113, 114]. In vitro study conducted on epithelial ovarian cancer cell lines OVCAR-3 and OVCAR-4 presented metformin-mediated anti-oncogenic results. Moreover, chemotherapy for ovarian cancer revealed better antineoplastic effects of cisplatin when enriched with metformin usage [115].
4. *Breast cancer*: Besides being helpful in chemotherapy for ovarian cancer, metformin revealed its usefulness in chemotherapy for breast cancer. Metformin was able to damage BC stem cells refractory to chemotherapy based on doxorubicin. Such treatment schedule enabled destruction of BC stem cells (using metformin) and BC non-stem cells (using doxorubicin) [98]. Metformin also improved antineoplastic effects of chemotherapy for BC based on trastuzumab and on taxane [116, 117].

Effects of Metformin on Lung Cancer

It has been shown that the use of metformin may lead up to 45% decrease in lung cancer incidence [118]. Metformin enhanced effectiveness and final outcomes of chemotherapy for advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) in individuals with T2DM [119].

Effects of Metformin on Head and Neck Cancers

According to sparse studies on the association between metformin and HNSCC in individuals with T2DM, metformin may presumably reduce the risk of HNSCC incidence. The statistically significant decrease was observed for nasopharyngeal and oropharyngeal cancers [120]. This antidiabetic drug was also able to suppress the proliferation of HNSCC cells and to decrease the probability of HNSCC recurrence and metastasis [121, 122]. It led to better overall condition in diabetics with HNSCC, especially in those with laryngeal cancer [123]. On the other hand, there is also a report of no substantial interference of metformin in HNSCC risk in diabetics [81].

Sulfonylureas: Mechanism of Action and Influence on Carcinogenesis

The most important sulfonylureas used as antidiabetic medications are glibenclamide, glimepiride, glipizide and glyburide. Their main mechanism of action is regulation of insulin secretion by closing potassium channel located in pancreatic β-cells. Sulfonylureas-induced potassium channels closure results in elevated insulin efflux and increased postprandial and fasting insulin level. Whereas potassium channel closure presumably induce anti-tumorigenic mechanisms, sulfonylureas-stimulated hyperinsulinemia promotes tumorigenesis [124]. Nevertheless, the exact effect of sulfonylureas on oncogenesis and cancer biology has not been fully elucidated yet [125]. Results of various studies on this issue remain conflicting. In addition, particular sulfonylureas presumably have different influence on carcinogenesis. Significantly elevated risk of cancer incidence in individuals with T2DM undergoing sulfonylureas therapy was reported by a variety of authors [102, 126, 127]. Diabetics on sulfonylureas had increased risk of liver and colon cancer and decreased risk of prostate cancer [128, 129]. According to clinical reports, gliclazide was able to reduce the risk of neoplasm development in diabetics, whereas glibenclamide reduced the risk in some studies and increased in others [130–132]. Until today, the relationship between glimepiride, glipizide and oncogenesis has not been described [131].

Exogenous Insulin: Influence on Carcinogenesis

The group of exogenous insulins comprise human insulin and insulin analogues. The vast majority of studies investigating the association between exogenous insulin and oncogenesis imply tumour-promoting effects of exogenous insulin [126, 133]. Patients on long-acting insulin analogues (glargine and detemir) are more prone to undergo carcinogenesis in comparison with non-insulin users [95, 134]. Nevertheless, the risk is lesser than observed in human insulin users [135]. Diabetics on insulin revealed increased risk of liver, pancreatic, renal, stomach, liver and respiratory tumours and reduced risk of prostate cancer [129, 136]. Studies focusing on glargine effect on cancer biology present conflicting results. Diabetics on glargine had increased risk of breast, prostate and pancreatic cancers incidence and reduced risk of colon and colorectal cancers [137–139]. In in vitro investigation, glargine suppressed apoptosis and presented tumour-promoting activity in human endometrioid endometrial carcinoma, breast adenocarcinoma and CRC cells [140–142]. No significant correlation between glargine and oncogenesis was observed in another study [143].

Thiazolidinediones: Mechanism of Action and Influence on Carcinogenesis

Thiazolidinediones are a group of PPARγ agonists currently used in T2DM treatment. The main components of this group are pioglitazone, rosiglitazone, troglitazone, netoglitazone, ciglitazone and efatutazone. TZD-induced stimulation of PPARγ sensitizes insulin-dependent tissues to insulin that leads to better glycaemic regulation. The speculation that TZD may presumably have an impact on cancer biology was made after finding that a variety of neoplasms are characterized by elevated expression of PPARγ. Nevertheless, the possible influence of TZDs on oncogenesis may be induced in PPARγ-dependent and PPARγ-independent manner. TZD-mediated activation of PPARγ in cancer cells interfered with cell cycle and led to cell cycle arrest and apoptosis [144].

*PPARγ-independent a*ntineoplastic activity *of TZD* [144, 145]:

- Suppression of anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 (B-cell leukaemia/lymphoma)/Bcl-xL function resulting in apoptosis of cancer cells
- Inhibition of androgen activation by interfering in gene encoding androgen receptor
- Degradation of specificity protein 1 (Sp1) resulting in reduction of survivin (an apoptosis inhibitor), EGFR (epidermal growth factor) and intercellular and vascular cell adhesion molecules ICAM-1 and VCAM-1
- (*Explanation:* Specificity protein 1 is a critical protein in cell cycle. This protein is able to modify genes encoding cell cycle and vascular endothelial growth factor. Such ability enables Sp1 to interfere with development, metabolism and metastasis of cancer cells.)
- Downregulation of various well-established cancer-promoting molecules including β-catenin, cyclin D1 and FLIP (FLICE-like inhibitory protein)

The majority of studies suggested that TZDs have antineoplastic activity and reduce the risk of various cancer incidence [127, 146, 147]. On the other hand, there are reports indicating that these drugs may also reveal tumour-promoting features. It was observed that TZDs as a group decreased the risk of breast, lung and colorectal cancers [148]. Pioglitazone and rosiglitazone were able to reduce the risk of liver cancer, pioglitazone but not rosiglitazone reduced the risk of breast cancer, and rosiglitazone reduced the risk of colorectal cancer [147, 149]. Netoglitazone revealed antineoplastic activity against human pancreatic cancer cells, colorectal cancer cells, multiple myeloma and prostate cancer cells (mainly androgen-irrespective prostate cancer cells) [150–152]. Efatutazone suppressed colon cancer development in mice and suppressed in vitro anaplastic thyroid carcinoma cell lines [153]. Suppressed proliferation of ovarian, prostate and

lung cancer cells was observed after troglitazone administration [153]. Possibly, TZDs may also improve the efficacy of chemotherapy. Chemotherapy for breast and pancreatic cancer cells was improved after rosiglitazone administration. Rosiglitazone presumably reduced chemoresistance in neoplastic cells [154]. Additionally, TZDs enhanced the effectiveness of antineoplastic therapy for soft tissue sarcoma and thyroid cancer [155].

On the other hand, there are also studies implying that TZDs as a group may induce pro-neoplastic effects. Such significant correlation was found in diabetic women undergoing rosiglitazone treatment [156]. Several studies suggested that diabetics on Pioglitazone therapy had increased risk of bladder cancer, NHL and melanoma [17, 157–160].

Incretin-Based Medications: Mechanisms of Action and Influence on Carcinogenesis

Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors (DDP-4-i) and glucagon-like peptide 1 agonists (GLP-1 agonists) are antidiabetic medications used in T2DM that interact with incretin system.

Dipeptidyl Peptidase-4 Inhibitors (DDP-4-i)

Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors (DDP-4-i) include sitagliptin, saxagliptin vildagliptin, alogliptin and linagliptin. Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors' main function is based on inhibiting the enzyme dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DDP-4) that is critical in destruction of glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1). Consequently, suppression of DDP-4 leads to increased serum concentration of GLP-1. Unlikely GLP-1 agonists, DDP-4-i do not delay the gastric emptying rate and do not promote the sensation of satiety. A variety of studies found that DDP-4-i users were more prone to suffer from pancreatic cancer. However, the risk was significantly lesser than observed in diabetics on sulfonylureas and comparable in individuals on TZDs [161–164]. No pro-neoplastic activity of DDP-4-i was found in mice and in human individuals with T2DM [92, 165]. On the other hand, the laboratory study on rats revealed diminished colon tumorigenesis and reduced reactive oxygen species in long-term administration of sitagliptin [166]. In addition, sitagliptin enhanced engraftment of umbilical cord blood transplantation in adults with haematological neoplasms [167].

Glucagon-Like Peptide 1 Agonists (GLP-1 Agonists)

Glucagon-like peptide 1 agonists (GLP-1 agonists) include liraglutide and exenatide. GLP-1 agonists elevate glucose-mediated insulin synthesis and its efflux in pancreatic β-cells in a precise and controlled way. They reduce glycogenolysis and glucagon secretion. GLP-1 agonists slow down the gastrointestinal motility leading to delayed absorption of carbohydrates and lesser increase in serum glucose level [18]. Additionally, they promote satiety via interfering in central nervous system. Whereas several studies found decreased risk of oncogenesis in GLP-1 agonist users, other researches received opposite results. Exenatide was able to suppress the development of human prostate cancer cells and murine CT26 colon cancer cells [168, 169]. Moreover, it presented antineoplastic activity against breast cancer cells [170]. Liraglutide-induced stimulation of GLP-1R (GLP-1 receptors) suppressed neoplastic transformation and metastasis in human pancreatic cancer cells in in vitro and in vivo investigation. The antineoplastic activity was a result of suppression of PI3K/Akt pathway [171]. On the other hand, GLP-1 agonists elicited tumorigenesis in rodent thyroid C-cells, but not in human thyroid C-cells nor in thyroid gland in diabetics [172, 173]. The proliferation observed in rodent C-cells might be caused by GLP-1 receptor-mediated excretion of calcitonin [174]. Presumably, mainly various levels of GLP-1 receptors in humans and in rodents caused this difference. There are also reports implying elevated risk of pancreatic cancer incidence in GLP-1 agonist users [162, 164].

Alpha-Glucosidase Inhibitors (AGIs): Mechanisms of Action and Influence on Carcinogenesis

The main components of this group are acarbose, voglibose and miglitol. AGIs slow down digestion and absorption of polysaccharides in gastrointestinal tract by inhibiting enzymes sacharase and maltase in proximal small intestine. That leads to delayed increase in postprandial serum glucose level and better glycaemic control. AGIs elevated intestinal hormones activity and enhanced intestinal microbiota [175].

Reports of the influence of AGIs on oncogenesis are scarce. According to current knowledge, AGIs may reduce the risk of colorectal, lung and gastric cancers [118, 176, 177]. The risk of kidney cancer is presumably elevated in diabetics undergoing AGIs therapy [178]. Contradictory, no significant influence of AGIs on both carcinogenesis and cancer-related mortality was revealed in another study [179].

Sodium-Glucose Co-transporter 2 Inhibitors (SGLT2 Inhibitors): Mechanism of Action and Influence on Carcinogenesis

SGLT2 inhibitors are a new class of antidiabetic medications used in T2DM treatment. The main components of this group

are empagliflozin, canagliflozin and dapagliflozin. SGLT2 is a glucose transporter situated in the proximal renal tubules. The main role of SGLT2 is glucose reabsorption. It is responsible for approximately 90% of renal glucose reabsorption. Consequently, SGLT2 inhibitors are able to significantly lower the serum glucose level via enhancing glucose excretion in kidneys. Additionally, SGLT2 inhibitors elevate insulin sensitivity, improve insulin secretion from pancreatic beta cells and decrease gluconeogenesis [180]. As SGLT2 inhibitors are quite novel drugs, the precise association between them and oncogenesis has not been established yet. The correlation between these two entities has already been observed; nevertheless, it is based on sparse researches done so far. There are studies assessing the correlation between dapagliflozin and bladder cancer. It was observed that dapagliflozin might elevate the risk of oncogenesis in bladder cells; however, the founding did not reach statistical significance. No increase in neoplastic transformation in the bladder was found for mice and rats on dapagliflozin, and for in vitro human bladder transitional cell carcinoma (TCC) cell lines [181]. Moreover, dapagliflozin presumably did not increase the risk of breast cancer [181]. Studies also presented that canagliflozin did not elevate the risk of neoplastic transformation in the bladder, breast and kidneys [181]. On the other hand, a novel study on SGLT2-expressing neoplasms (pancreatic and prostate cancers) found that dapagliflozin and canagliflozin significantly reduced tumour growth and enhanced death of tumour cells [182]. This finding should draw attention to the potential antineoplastic role of SGLT2 inhibitors in SGLT2-expressing tumours. Tumour-suppressing activity of canagliflozin was also observed for prostate and lung cancer cells. The antineoplastic role in this study was presumably induced by inhibiting mitochondrial complex-I supported respiration that resulted in limitation of cellular proliferation [183]. Nevertheless, these observations of potential antineoplastic activities of SGLT2 inhibitors require further investigation.

Summary

The prevalence of diabetes mellitus type 2 and cancers of various sites is dramatically increasing nowadays. Both entities are important causes of death all over the world. A number of studies proved that DM increases the risk of oncogenesis in various organs. The association was predominantly observed in T2DM possibly because of potential T2DM-induced tumour-promoting factors. The mechanisms linking DM and neoplastic transformation in various types of organs are probably different and have not been clearly explained yet. The vast majority of attention is put on three groups of linking factors, including modifiable, non-modifiable and biological risk factors**.** Modifiable risk factors are excessive body mass, pure physical activity, smoking and alcohol abuse. Non-modifiable risk factors comprise age between 55 and 60 years or more, male gender and African American race. The biological risk factors include hyperinsulinemia, insulin resistance, hyperglycaemia and chronic inflammation induced by excessive adipose tissue. According to current knowledge, the most significant factor linking T2DM and oncogenesis is obesity. Moreover, several studies suggested that there is also correlation between DM duration and the risk of carcinogenesis; however, the results of these investigations are inconsistent. It was established that many tumours overexpress receptors for insulin leading to higher susceptibility to both metabolic and mitogenic activity of insulin in tumour cells. Furthermore, diabetics with T2DM and coexisting neoplasm have worse disease-free and overall survival than patients with neoplasm but without T2DM. In accordance with collected data, individuals with DM are more prone to suffer from cancers of digestive tract system (liver, pancreatic, colon/colorectal cancers) and genitourinary system (bladder and endometrial cancers). Breast cancer is also more commonly observed in diabetic women than in nondiabetic ones. The correlation between DM and renal cancer and HNC is not clear. Data investigating association between DM and HNC are lacking. Current knowledge imply that DM increases the risk of both oral cavity cancer and pharyngeal cancer incidence. It was also established that DM predisposes to perineural invasion in patients with oral squamous cell cancer. In addition, the prognosis in patients with oral cavity cancer and DM is worse than in those without DM. The relationship between DM and laryngeal cancer is inconsistent. Some authors suggested increased, some decreased and some no relationship between these diseases. Contradictorily, several studies observed protective, antineoplastic effect of DM on prostate cancer, presenting significant inverse association between PC and DM. This protective association is presumably a result of hyperglycaemia-induced low concentration of testosterone and hypoinsulinemia detected in T1DM or long-lasting T2DM. Nevertheless, there are also authors indicating increased risk of prostate carcinogenesis; thus this potentially protective effect of DM on prostate cancer requires further investigation.

Furthermore, novel studies present that antidiabetic drugs may modify the risk of oncogenesis in diabetics. However, the results of studies examining the influence of antidiabetic therapy on oncogenesis are inconsistent. Some drugs presumably increase the risk, whereas others reduce the risk of tumorigenesis. The majority of studies on this matter concern metformin, a drug of choice in T2DM. It was suggested that metformin, may reduce the risk of cancer incidence and

improve overall survival in diabetics. Favourable effect of metformin was observed in a wide variety of cancers including breast, pancreatic, liver, colon, prostate, lungs and ovaries. Several authors revealed also inhibitory effect of metformin on human renal cancer cell lines 786-O. According to few studies available in the literature examining the influence of metformin on HNC, metformin decreased the risk of HNC (the most significant reduction was found for oro- and nasopharyngeal cancers) and improved overall survival in patients with laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma. It was also suggested that a group of novel antidiabetic drugs, SGLT2 inhibitors, express potential antineoplastic activity. Nevertheless, studies assessing such correlation are sparse. The influence of other antidiabetic medications including sulfonylureas, exogenous insulin, TZDs, alpha-glucosidase inhibitors and incretin-based drugs (GLP-1 agonists and DDP-4-i) on cancer incidence and prognosis remains inconsistent.

Based on the above information, it can be assumed that diabetes mellitus and oncogenesis are presumably combined entities. Greater attention should be devoted to screen patients with diabetes mellitus, especially those with T2DM. These patients require precise, regular follow-up in order not to omit any neoplastic transformation. Careful screening should also be performed in individuals on antidiabetic drugs.

The correlation between DM/antidiabetic medications and carcinogenesis requires further investigation to establish exact, general and cell-intrinsic mechanisms linking these entities. Attention should also be drawn to potential antineoplastic activities of particular antidiabetic drugs.

Concluding Remarks

- Diabetics (mainly with T2DM) are more prone to suffer from cancers of digestive tract system (liver, pancreatic, colon/colorectal cancers) and genitourinary system (bladder and endometrial cancers). Breast cancer is also more commonly observed in diabetic women than in nondiabetic ones.
- Prostate cancer risk is presumably inversely associated with diabetes mellitus.
- Metformin may reduce the risk of cancer incidence and improve overall survival in diabetics. Favourable effect of metformin was observed in a wide variety of cancers including breast, pancreatic, liver, colon, prostate, lung and ovarian. Its potential usefulness in chemotherapy is promising and still studied.
- SGLT2 inhibitors express potential antineoplastic activity. The influence of sulfonylureas, exogenous insulin, TZDs, alpha-glucosidase inhibitors and incretin-based drugs (GLP-1 agonists and DDP-4-i) on cancer incidence and prognosis remains inconsistent.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. The linking factors between diabetes mellitus and oncogenesis are:
   (a) Hyperglycaemia
   (b) Hypoinsulinemia
   (c) Hyperinsulinemia
   (d) a, c (The biological factors linking DM and oncogenesis include hyperinsulinemia, insulin resistance, hyperglycaemia and chronic inflammation induced by excessive adipose tissue. According to current knowledge, the most significant factor linking T2DM and oncogenesis is obesity.)
   (e) a, b, c
2. Fat-induced chronic inflammation leading to oncogenesis is characterized by:
   (a) Increased level of adiponectin and decreased level of leptin
   (b) Increased level of leptin and decreased level of adiponectin
   (c) Increased production of pro-inflammatory cytokines including IL-6, resistin and TNF-alpha
   (d) b, c (Excessive adipose tissue interferes with sex hormones physiology (high amounts of aromastase converting oestrogens to androgens), induces chronic inflammation and changes profile of adipose tissue polypeptide hormones (adipokines). Obesity-induced chronic inflammation is characterized by increased production of pro-inflammatory cytokines including interleukin-6, resistin and TNF-alpha (tumour necrosis factor-alpha). The level of adiponectin is reduced and the level of leptin is increased in patients with excessive adipose tissue. Adiponectin sensitizes cells to insulin, suppresses cells growth and metabolism and exerts pro-apoptotic mechanisms, whereas leptin stimulates proliferation of cancer cells)
   (e) All answers are false
3. Pro-neoplastic features of insulin are induced by activation of:
   (a) Insulin receptor
   (b) Insulin-like growth factor receptor
   (c) Growth hormone receptor
   (d) a, b, c
   (e) a, b (The pro-neoplastic features of insulin are induced by activation of its receptors (insulin receptor and insulin-like growth factor receptor), as well as via insulin-like growth factor. Ligand-induced IR autophosphorylation triggers intracellular mechanisms. The most important one is activation of PI3K/Akt/mTOR (phosphoinositide 3-kinase/protein kinase B/mammalian target of rapamycin) signalling pathway. Stimulation of PI3K/Akt/mTOR

signalling pathway plays a critical role in oncogenesis. Activation of IGF-R results in more significant pro-neoplastic effects than activation of IR.)

4. Indirect effects of hyperinsulinemia on cancer biology:
   (a) Increased level of growth hormone (GH) leading to elevated concentration of insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1). (Insulin stimulates growth hormone receptors (GHR) located in liver leading to elevated release of GH. Subsequently, GH promotes IGF-1 synthesis. IGF-1 is a mitogenic factor.)
   (b) Increased concentration of pro-neoplastic adipose tissue hormone –adiponectin
   (c) Increased concentration of antineoplastic adipose tissue hormone – leptin
   (d) a, b, c
   (e) All answers are false
5. Tumour-promoting mechanism of hyperglycaemia:
   (a) Reduced expression of glucose transporters (GLUT-1 and GLUT-3)
   (b) Reduced level of hypoxia-inducible factor α (HIF-α), a critical antineoplastic factor
   (c) Increased expression of PPAR α and γ (peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor) (PPAR α and γ interfere with lipid metabolic pathways and speed up neoplastic cells development.)
   (d) a, b, c
   (e) b, c
6. Which statements are correct?
   (a) Diabetes mellitus type 2 elevates the risk of endometrial cancer.
   (b) Diabetes mellitus type 2 elevates the risk of prostate cancer via reducing testosterone levels.
   (c) The risk of hepatocellular carcinoma is increased in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus.
   (d) a, b, c.
   (e) a, c (It is suggested that DM might predispose to EC via hyperinsulinemia-dependent reduced level of adiponectin and via obesity-related decreased concentration of SHBG. Reduced level of SHBG leads to elevated bioavailable oestrogen and testosterone amounts and eventually stimulates endometrial oncogenesis.

      The liver is exposed to circulation of high amounts of insulin because of its portal vessels. Constantly high insulin levels, via elevated production of IGF-1, lead to multiplication and apoptosis suppression in hepatic cells.

      According to current knowledge, prostate cancer (PC) is the only neoplasm that is conversely related to DM. This association is presumably a result of hyperglycaemia-induced low concentration of testosterone and hypoinsulinemia detected in T1DM or long-lasting T2DM.)
7. Antineoplastic features of metformin comprise:
   (a) Reduction of the serum insulin concentration
   (b) Reduction of the serum glucose concentration via inhibition of gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis in the liver
   (c) Stimulation of mTOR pathway, a critical antineoplastic pathway
   (d) a, b, c
   (e) a, b (answer c is false because metformin inhibits mTOR pathway in AMPK-independent manner by decreasing insulin and IGF-1 concentrations. mTOR pathway plays a critical role in oncogenesis.)
8. Choose the correct statement:
   (a) Metformin reduces the risk of liver cancer
   (b) Metformin reduces the risk pancreatic cancer
   (c) Metformin reduces the risk of ovarian cancer
   (d) All answers are correct
   (e) All answers are false
9. Antidiabetic medications that influence the risk of neoplastic transformation are:
   (a) Metformin
   (b) Thiazolidinediones
   (c) Sulfonylureas
   (d) Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors
   (e) a, b, c, d (A majority of studies present that metformin reduces the risk of neoplastic transformation. The influence of sulfonylureas, thiazolidinediones and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors on cancer incidence and prognosis remains inconsistent.)
10. Diabetes mellitus type 2 promotes oncogenesis via:
    (a) Activation of insulin-dependent IP3-K/AKT/mTOR pathway
    (b) Insulin-induced increased level of bioavailable IGF-1
    (c) Insulin-induced increased concentration of leptin
    (d) Insulin-induced reduced level of SHBG resulting in increased amount of bioavailable estradiol
    (e) a, b, c, d

Correct Answers

1. (d) a, c (The biological factors linking DM and oncogenesis include hyperinsulinemia, insulin resistance, hyperglycaemia and chronic inflammation induced by excessive adipose tissue. According to current knowledge, the most significant factor linking T2DM and oncogenesis is obesity.)
2. (d) b, c (Excessive adipose tissue interferes with sex hormones physiology (high amounts of aromastase converting oestrogens to androgens), induces chronic inflammation and changes profile of adipose tissue polypeptide hormones (adipokines). Obesity-induced

chronic inflammation is characterized by increased production of pro-inflammatory cytokines including interleukin-6, resistin and TNF-alpha (tumour necrosis factor-alpha). The level of adiponectin is reduced and the level of leptin is increased in patients with excessive adipose tissue. Adiponectin sensitizes cells to insulin, suppresses cells growth and metabolism and exerts pro-apoptotic mechanisms, whereas leptin stimulates proliferation of cancer cells)

3. (e) a, b (The pro-neoplastic features of insulin are induced by activation of its receptors (insulin receptor and insulin-like growth factor receptor), as well as via insulin-like growth factor. Ligand-induced IR autophosphorylation triggers intracellular mechanisms. The most important one is activation of PI3K/Akt/mTOR (phosphoinositide 3-kinase/protein kinase B/mammalian target of rapamycin) signalling pathway. Stimulation of PI3K/Akt/mTOR signalling pathway plays a critical role in oncogenesis. Activation of IGF-R results in more significant pro-neoplastic effects than activation of IR.)
4. (a) Increased level of growth hormone (GH) leading to elevated concentration of insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1). (Insulin stimulates growth hormone receptors (GHR) located in liver leading to elevated release of GH. Subsequently, GH promotes IGF-1 synthesis. IGF-1 is a mitogenic factor.)
5. (c) Increased expression of PPAR α and γ (peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor) (PPAR α and γ interfere with lipid metabolic pathways and speed up neoplastic cells development.)
6. (e) a, c (It is suggested that DM might predispose to EC via hyperinsulinemia-dependent reduced level of adiponectin and via obesity-related decreased concentration of SHBG. Reduced level of SHBG leads to elevated bioavailable oestrogen and testosterone amounts and eventually stimulates endometrial oncogenesis.

   The liver is exposed to circulation of high amounts of insulin because of its portal vessels. Constantly high insulin levels, via elevated production of IGF-1, lead to multiplication and apoptosis suppression in hepatic cells.

   According to current knowledge, prostate cancer (PC) is the only neoplasm that is conversely related to DM. This association is presumably a result of hyperglycaemia-induced low concentration of testosterone and hypoinsulinemia detected in T1DM or long-lasting T2DM.)
7. (e) a, b (answer c is false because metformin inhibits mTOR pathway in AMPK-independent manner by decreasing insulin and IGF-1 concentrations. mTOR pathway plays a critical role in oncogenesis.)
8. (d) All answers are correct
9. (e) a, b, c, d (A majority of studies present that metformin reduces the risk of neoplastic transformation. The influence of sulfonylureas, thiazolidinediones and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors on cancer incidence and prognosis remains inconsistent.)
10. (e) a, b, c, d

Glossary

Hyperinsulinemia increased serum insulin level

Hyperglycaemia increased serum glucose level

Pro-neopastic promoting neoplastic transformation

PI3K/Akt/mTOR signalling pathway (phosphoinositide 3-kinase/protein kinase B/mammalian target of rapamycin signalling pathway) critical pathway in oncogenesis

IGF-binding proteins proteins crucial in IGF serum transfer and bioavailability

Urokinase plasminogen activator (uPA) a critical mediator in cancer cell displacement

ETM (epithelial to mesenchymal transition process) a mechanism that enables cancer cells to metastasize

Adipokines adipose tissue polypeptide hormones, e.g. leptin and adiponectin

SNPs (single nucleotide polymorphisms) a sequence in a single nucleotide that is observed at a specific position in the genome

NAFLD (non-alcoholic fatty liver disease) a condition of fat deposits accumulation not induced by alcohol abuse. NAFLD is associated with metabolic syndrome and insulin resistance

Lipotoxicity malfunction or death of non-adipose tissue cells caused by accumulation of excessive lipids

Oxidative stress imbalance between antioxidant and pro-oxidant factors

Oncogenesis, tumorigenesis, and carcinogenesis a group of mechanisms leading to transformation of normal cells to cancer cell

Milieu a setting in which something happens (environment, surrounding)

Gluconeogenesis a process of glucose biosynthesis

Glycogenolysis a process of biochemical degradation of glycogen to glucose

NF-κB a factor controlling transcription of DNA and cells survival

OVCAR epithelial ovarian cancer cell lines

Stem cell undifferentiated cells which have ability to differentiate into specialized cells and to divide to synthesize more stem cells

References

1. Giovannucci E, Harlan DM, Archer MC, Bergenstal RM, Gapstur SM, Habel LA, et al. Diabetes and cancer: a consensus report. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(7):1674–85.
2. Jee SH, Ohrr H, Sull JW, Yun JE, Ji M, Samet JM. Fasting serum glucose level and cancer risk in Korean men and women. JAMA. 2005;293(2):194–202.
3. Tseng KS, Lin C, Lin YS, Weng SF. Risk of head and neck cancer in patients with diabetes mellitus: a retrospective cohort study in Taiwan. JAMA Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 2014;140(8):746–53.
4. Noto H, Tsujimoto T, Sasazuki T, Noda M. Significantly increased risk of cancer in patients with diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Endocr Pract. 2011;17(4):616–28.
5. Wojciechowska J, Krajewski W, Bolanowski M, Krecicki T, Zatonski T. Diabetes and cancer: a review of current knowledge. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes. 2016;124(5):263–75.
6. Zendehdel K, Nyren O, Ostenson CG, Adami HO, Ekbom A, Ye W. Cancer incidence in patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus: a population-based cohort study in Sweden. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2003;95(23):1797–800.
7. Shu X, Ji J, Li X, Sundquist J, Sundquist K, Hemminki K. Cancer risk among patients hospitalized for type 1 diabetes mellitus: a population-based cohort study in Sweden. Diabet Med. 2010;27(7):791–7.
8. Vigneri P, Frasca F, Sciacca L, Pandini G, Vigneri R. Diabetes and cancer. Endocr Relat Cancer. 2009;16(4):1103–23.
9. Decensi A, Puntoni M, Goodwin P, Cazzaniga M, Gennari A, Bonanni B, et al. Metformin and cancer risk in diabetic patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Cancer Prev Res. 2010;3(11):1451–61.
10. Ahmed AM. History of diabetes mellitus. Saudi Med J. 2002;23(4):373–8.
11. Loriaux DL. Diabetes and the Ebers Papyrus: 1552 B.C. Endocrinologist. 2006;16(2):55–6.
12. Olokoba AB, Obateru OA, Olokoba LB. Type 2 diabetes mellitus: a review of current trends. Oman Med J. 2012;27(4):269–73.
13. Nguyen C, Varney MD, Harrison LC, Morahan G. Definition of high-risk type 1 diabetes HLA-DR and HLA-DQ types using only three single nucleotide polymorphisms. Diabetes. 2013;62(6):2135–40.
14. American Diabetes A. Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care. 2012;35(Suppl 1):S64–71.
15. Stumvoll M, Goldstein BJ, van Haeften TW. Type 2 diabetes: principles of pathogenesis and therapy. Lancet. 2005;365(9467):1333–46.
16. Moore H, Summerbell C, Hooper L, Cruickshank K, Vyas A, Johnstone P, et al. Dietary advice for treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2004;3:CD004097.
17. Brunetti L, Kalabalik J. Management of type-2 diabetes mellitus in adults: focus on individualizing non-insulin therapies. P T. 2012;37(12):687–96.
18. Nathan DM, Buse JB, Davidson MB, Ferrannini E, Holman RR, Sherwin R, et al. Medical management of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy: a consensus statement of the American Diabetes Association and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(1):193–203.
19. Buchanan TA, Xiang AH. Gestational diabetes mellitus. J Clin Invest. 2005;115(3):485–91.
20. Perkins JM, Dunn JP, Jagasia SM. Perspectives in gestational diabetes mellitus: a review of screening, diagnosis, and treatment. Clin Diabetes. 2007;25(2):57–62.
21. Gallagher EJ, LeRoith D. Diabetes, cancer, and metformin: connections of metabolism and cell proliferation. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2011;1243:54–68.
22. Del Barco S, Vazquez-Martin A, Cufi S, Oliveras-Ferraros C, Bosch-Barrera J, Joven J, et al. Metformin: multi-faceted protection against cancer. Oncotarget. 2011;2(12):896–917.
23. Kiselyov VV, Versteyhe S, Gauguin L, De Meyts P. Harmonic oscillator model of the insulin and IGF1 receptors' allosteric binding and activation. Mol Syst Biol. 2009;5:243.
24. Cui Y, Andersen DK. Diabetes and pancreatic cancer. Endocr Relat Cancer. 2012;19(5):F9–F26.
25. Kourelis TV, Siegel RD. Metformin and cancer: new applications for an old drug. Med Oncol. 2012;29(2):1314–27.
26. Belfiore A. The role of insulin receptor isoforms and hybrid insulin/IGF-I receptors in human cancer. Curr Pharm Des. 2007;13(7):671–86.
27. Friberg E, Mantzoros CS, Wolk A. Diabetes and risk of endometrial cancer: a population-based prospective cohort study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2007;16(2):276–80.
28. Baxter RC, Brown AS, Turtle JR. Association between serum insulin, serum somatomedin and liver receptors for human growth hormone in streptozotocin diabetes. Horm Metab Res. 1980;12(8):377–81.
29. Somasundar P, Yu AK, Vona-Davis L, McFadden DW. Differential effects of leptin on cancer in vitro. J Surg Res. 2003;113(1):50–5.
30. van Kruijsdijk RC, van der Wall E, Visseren FL. Obesity and cancer: the role of dysfunctional adipose tissue. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2009;18(10):2569–78.
31. Vander Heiden MG, Cantley LC, Thompson CB. Understanding the Warburg effect: the metabolic requirements of cell proliferation. Science. 2009;324(5930):1029–33.
32. Ryu TY, Park J, Scherer PE. Hyperglycemia as a risk factor for cancer progression. Diabetes Metab J. 2014;38(5):330–6.
33. Li D. Diabetes and pancreatic cancer. Mol Carcinog. 2012;51(1):64–74.
34. Fukada T, Yamasaki S, Nishida K, Murakami M, Hirano T. Zinc homeostasis and signaling in health and diseases: zinc signaling. J Biol Inorg Chem. 2011;16(7):1123–34.
35. Renehan AG, Zwahlen M, Egger M. Adiposity and cancer risk: new mechanistic insights from epidemiology. Nat Rev Cancer. 2015;15(8):484–98.
36. Grossmann ME, Nkhata KJ, Mizuno NK, Ray A, Cleary MP. Effects of adiponectin on breast cancer cell growth and signaling. Br J Cancer. 2008;98(2):370–9.
37. O'Rourke RW. Obesity and cancer: at the crossroads of cellular metabolism and proliferation. Surg Obes Relat Dis. 2014;10(6):1208–19.
38. Sun L, Yu S. Diabetes mellitus is an independent risk factor for colorectal cancer. Dig Dis Sci. 2012;57(6):1586–97.
39. Wu L, Yu C, Jiang H, Tang J, Huang HL, Gao J, et al. Diabetes mellitus and the occurrence of colorectal cancer: an updated meta-analysis of cohort studies. Diabetes Technol Ther. 2013;15(5):419–27.
40. Balasubramanyam M. Diabetic oncopathy--one more yet another deadly diabetic complication! Indian J Med Res. 2014;140(1):15–8.
41. Huxley R, Ansary-Moghaddam A, Berrington de Gonzalez A, Barzi F, Woodward M. Type-II diabetes and pancreatic cancer: a meta-analysis of 36 studies. Br J Cancer. 2005;92(11):2076–83.
42. Elena JW, Steplowski E, Yu K, Hartge P, Tobias GS, Brotzman MJ, et al. Diabetes and risk of pancreatic cancer: a pooled analysis from the pancreatic cancer cohort consortium. Cancer Causes Control. 2013;24(1):13–25.
43. Hsu C, Saif MW. Diabetes and pancreatic cancer. Highlights from the "2011 ASCO Annual Meeting". Chicago, IL, USA; June 3-7, 2011. JOP. 2011;12(4):330–3.

44. Grote VA, Rohrmann S, Nieters A, Dossus L, Tjonneland A, Halkjaer J, et al. Diabetes mellitus, glycated haemoglobin and C-peptide levels in relation to pancreatic cancer risk: a study within the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC) cohort. Diabetologia. 2011;54(12):3037–46.
45. Stevens RJ, Roddam AW, Beral V. Pancreatic cancer in type 1 and young-onset diabetes: systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Cancer. 2007;96(3):507–9.
46. Prizment AE, Gross M, Rasmussen-Torvik L, Peacock JM, Anderson KE. Genes related to diabetes may be associated with pancreatic cancer in a population-based case-control study in Minnesota. Pancreas. 2012;41(1):50–3.
47. Pierce BL, Austin MA, Ahsan H. Association study of type 2 diabetes genetic susceptibility variants and risk of pancreatic cancer: an analysis of PanScan-I data. Cancer Causes Control. 2011;22(6):877–83.
48. Murad AS, Smith GD, Lewis SJ, Cox A, Donovan JL, Neal DE, et al. A polymorphism in the glucokinase gene that raises plasma fasting glucose, rs1799884, is associated with diabetes mellitus and prostate cancer: findings from a population-based, case-control study (the ProtecT study). Int J Mol Epidemiol Genet. 2010;1(3):175–83.
49. Davila JA, Morgan RO, Shaib Y, McGlynn KA, El-Serag HB. Diabetes increases the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in the United States: a population based case control study. Gut. 2005;54(4):533–9.
50. Lawson DH, Gray JM, McKillop C, Clarke J, Lee FD, Patrick RS. Diabetes mellitus and primary hepatocellular carcinoma. Q J Med. 1986;61(234):945–55.
51. Dyson J, Jaques B, Chattopadyhay D, Lochan R, Graham J, Das D, et al. Hepatocellular cancer: the impact of obesity, type 2 diabetes and a multidisciplinary team. J Hepatol. 2014;60(1):110–7.
52. Wang C, Wang X, Gong G, Ben Q, Qiu W, Chen Y, et al. Increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies. Int J Cancer. 2012;130(7):1639–48.
53. Noureddin M, Rinella ME. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, diabetes, obesity, and hepatocellular carcinoma. Clin Liver Dis. 2015;19(2):361–79.
54. Wiencke JK. Impact of race/ethnicity on molecular pathways in human cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2004;4(1):79–84.
55. El-Serag HB, Hampel H, Javadi F. The association between diabetes and hepatocellular carcinoma: a systematic review of epidemiologic evidence. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2006;4(3):369–80.
56. Gao C, Yao SK. Diabetes mellitus: a "true" independent risk factor for hepatocellular carcinoma? Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int. 2009;8(5):465–73.
57. Larsson SC, Orsini N, Wolk A. Diabetes mellitus and risk of colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2005;97(22):1679–87.
58. Yang YX, Hennessy S, Lewis JD. Type 2 diabetes mellitus and the risk of colorectal cancer. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2005;3(6):587–94.
59. Jiang Y, Ben Q, Shen H, Lu W, Zhang Y, Zhu J. Diabetes mellitus and incidence and mortality of colorectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies. Eur J Epidemiol. 2011;26(11):863–76.
60. Xu X, Wu J, Mao Y, Zhu Y, Hu Z, Xu X, et al. Diabetes mellitus and risk of bladder cancer: a meta-analysis of cohort studies. PLoS One. 2013;8(3):e58079.
61. Larsson SC, Orsini N, Brismar K, Wolk A. Diabetes mellitus and risk of bladder cancer: a meta-analysis. Diabetologia. 2006;49(12):2819–23.
62. Woolcott CG, Maskarinec G, Haiman CA, Henderson BE, Kolonel LN. Diabetes and urothelial cancer risk: the Multiethnic Cohort study. Cancer Epidemiol. 2011;35(6):551–4.
63. Zhu Z, Wang X, Shen Z, Lu Y, Zhong S, Xu C. Risk of bladder cancer in patients with diabetes mellitus: an updated meta-analysis of 36 observational studies. BMC Cancer. 2013;13:310.
64. Joh HK, Willett WC, Cho E. Type 2 diabetes and the risk of renal cell cancer in women. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(7):1552–6.
65. Inoue M, Iwasaki M, Otani T, Sasazuki S, Noda M, Tsugane S. Diabetes mellitus and the risk of cancer: results from a large-scale population-based cohort study in Japan. Arch Intern Med. 2006;166(17):1871–7.
66. Svacina S. Tumours of kidneys, urinary bladder and prostate in obesity and diabetes. Vnitr Lek. 2008;54(5):464–7.
67. Zucchetto A, Dal Maso L, Tavani A, Montella M, Ramazzotti V, Talamini R, et al. History of treated hypertension and diabetes mellitus and risk of renal cell cancer. Ann Oncol. 2007;18(3):596–600.
68. Qayyum T, Oades G, Horgan P, Aitchison M, Edwards J. The epidemiology and risk factors for renal cancer. Current Urol. 2013;6(4):169–74.
69. Washio M, Mori M, Khan M, Sakauchi F, Watanabe Y, Ozasa K, et al. Diabetes mellitus and kidney cancer risk: the results of Japan Collaborative Cohort Study for Evaluation of Cancer Risk (JACC Study). Int J Urol. 2007;14(5):393–7.
70. Lucenteforte E, Bosetti C, Talamini R, Montella M, Zucchetto A, Pelucchi C, et al. Diabetes and endometrial cancer: effect modification by body weight, physical activity and hypertension. Br J Cancer. 2007;97(7):995–8.
71. Lindemann K, Vatten LJ, Ellstrom-Engh M, Eskild A. Body mass, diabetes and smoking, and endometrial cancer risk: a follow-up study. Br J Cancer. 2008;98(9):1582–5.
72. Lambe M, Wigertz A, Garmo H, Walldius G, Jungner I, Hammar N. Impaired glucose metabolism and diabetes and the risk of breast, endometrial, and ovarian cancer. Cancer Causes Control. 2011;22(8):1163–71.
73. Soliman PT, Wu D, Tortolero-Luna G, Schmeler KM, Slomovitz BM, Bray MS, et al. Association between adiponectin, insulin resistance, and endometrial cancer. Cancer. 2006;106(11):2376–81.
74. Liao S, Li J, Wei W, Wang L, Zhang Y, Li J, et al. Association between diabetes mellitus and breast cancer risk: a meta-analysis of the literature. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev. 2011;12(4):1061–5.
75. Larsson SC, Mantzoros CS, Wolk A. Diabetes mellitus and risk of breast cancer: a meta-analysis. Int J Cancer. 2007;121(4):856–62.
76. Schernhammer ES, Holly JM, Pollak MN, Hankinson SE. Circulating levels of insulin-like growth factors, their binding proteins, and breast cancer risk. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2005;14(3):699–704.
77. Gunter MJ, Hoover DR, Yu H, Wassertheil-Smoller S, Rohan TE, Manson JE, et al. Insulin, insulin-like growth factor-I, and risk of breast cancer in postmenopausal women. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2009;101(1):48–60.
78. Novosyadlyy R, Lann DE, Vijayakumar A, Rowzee A, Lazzarino DA, Fierz Y, et al. Insulin-mediated acceleration of breast cancer development and progression in a nonobese model of type 2 diabetes. Cancer Res. 2010;70(2):741–51.
79. Jones RA, Moorehead RA. The impact of transgenic IGF-IR overexpression on mammary development and tumorigenesis. J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia. 2008;13(4):407–13.
80. Stott-Miller M, Chen C, Chuang SC, Lee YC, Boccia S, Brenner H, et al. History of diabetes and risk of head and neck cancer: a pooled analysis from the international head and neck cancer epidemiology consortium. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2012;21(2):294–304.
81. Becker C, Jick SS, Meier CR, Bodmer M. Metformin and the risk of head and neck cancer: a case-control analysis. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2014;16(11):1148–54.
82. Stott-Miller M, Chen C, Schwartz SM. Type II diabetes and metabolic syndrome in relation to head and neck squamous

cell carcinoma risk: a SEER-Medicare database study. Cancer Epidemiol. 2013;37(4):428–33.
83. Nakamura K, Wada K, Tamai Y, Tsuji M, Kawachi T, Hori A, et al. Diabetes mellitus and risk of cancer in Takayama: a population-based prospective cohort study in Japan. Cancer Sci. 2013;104(10):1362–7.
84. Kuriki K, Hirose K, Tajima K. Diabetes and cancer risk for all and specific sites among Japanese men and women. Eur J Cancer Prev. 2007;16(1):83–9.
85. Atchison EA, Gridley G, Carreon JD, Leitzmann MF, McGlynn KA. Risk of cancer in a large cohort of U.S. veterans with diabetes. Int J Cancer. 2011;128(3):635–43.
86. Bosetti C, Rosato V, Polesel J, Levi F, Talamini R, Montella M, et al. Diabetes mellitus and cancer risk in a network of case-control studies. Nutr Cancer. 2012;64(5):643–51.
87. Kasper JS, Giovannucci E. A meta-analysis of diabetes mellitus and the risk of prostate cancer. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2006;15(11):2056–62.
88. Waters KM, Henderson BE, Stram DO, Wan P, Kolonel LN, Haiman CA. Association of diabetes with prostate cancer risk in the multiethnic cohort. Am J Epidemiol. 2009;169(8):937–45.
89. Bansal D, Bhansali A, Kapil G, Undela K, Tiwari P. Type 2 diabetes and risk of prostate cancer: a meta-analysis of observational studies. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis. 2013;16(2):151–8, S1.
90. Li Q, Kuriyama S, Kakizaki M, Yan H, Sone T, Nagai M, et al. History of diabetes mellitus and the risk of prostate cancer: the Ohsaki Cohort Study. Cancer Causes Control. 2010;21(7):1025–32.
91. Tseng CH. Diabetes and risk of prostate cancer: a study using the National Health Insurance. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(3):616–21.
92. Simo R, Plana-Ripoll O, Puente D, Morros R, Mundet X, Vilca LM, et al. Impact of glucose-lowering agents on the risk of cancer in type 2 diabetic patients. The Barcelona case-control study. PLoS One. 2013;8(11):e79968.
93. Rattan R, Ali Fehmi R, Munkarah A. Metformin: an emerging new therapeutic option for targeting cancer stem cells and metastasis. J Oncol. 2012;2012:928127.
94. Evans JM, Donnelly LA, Emslie-Smith AM, Alessi DR, Morris AD. Metformin and reduced risk of cancer in diabetic patients. BMJ. 2005;330(7503):1304–5.
95. Rosta A. Diabetes and cancer risk: oncologic considerations. Orv Hetil. 2011;152(29):1144–55.
96. Hirsch HA, Iliopoulos D, Struhl K. Metformin inhibits the inflammatory response associated with cellular transformation and cancer stem cell growth. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2013;110(3):972–7.
97. Mani SA, Guo W, Liao MJ, Eaton EN, Ayyanan A, Zhou AY, et al. The epithelial-mesenchymal transition generates cells with properties of stem cells. Cell. 2008;133(4):704–15.
98. Hirsch HA, Iliopoulos D, Tsichlis PN, Struhl K. Metformin selectively targets cancer stem cells, and acts together with chemotherapy to block tumor growth and prolong remission. Cancer Res. 2009;69(19):7507–11.
99. Hollier BG, Evans K, Mani SA. The epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition and cancer stem cells: a coalition against cancer therapies. J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia. 2009;14(1):29–43.
100. Pearce EL, Walsh MC, Cejas PJ, Harms GM, Shen H, Wang LS, et al. Enhancing CD8 T-cell memory by modulating fatty acid metabolism. Nature. 2009;460(7251):103–7.
101. Pollak M. Potential applications for biguanides in oncology. J Clin Invest. 2013;123(9):3693–700.
102. Bodmer M, Becker C, Meier C, Jick SS, Meier CR. Use of antidiabetic agents and the risk of pancreatic cancer: a case-control analysis. Am J Gastroenterol. 2012;107(4):620–6.
103. Li D, Yeung SC, Hassan MM, Konopleva M, Abbruzzese JL. Antidiabetic therapies affect risk of pancreatic cancer. Gastroenterology. 2009;137(2):482–8.
104. Zhang ZJ, Zheng ZJ, Shi R, Su Q, Jiang Q, Kip KE. Metformin for liver cancer prevention in patients with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012;97(7):2347–53.
105. Lee MS, Hsu CC, Wahlqvist ML, Tsai HN, Chang YH, Huang YC. Type 2 diabetes increases and metformin reduces total, colorectal, liver and pancreatic cancer incidences in Taiwanese: a representative population prospective cohort study of 800,000 individuals. BMC Cancer. 2011;11:20.
106. Singh S, Singh H, Singh PP, Murad MH, Limburg PJ. Antidiabetic medications and the risk of colorectal cancer in patients with diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2013;22(12):2258–68.
107. Bodmer M, Becker C, Meier C, Jick SS, Meier CR. Use of metformin is not associated with a decreased risk of colorectal cancer: a case-control analysis. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev. 2012;21(2):280–6.
108. Wright JL, Stanford JL. Metformin use and prostate cancer in Caucasian men: results from a population-based case-control study. Cancer Causes Control. 2009;20(9):1617–22.
109. Preston MA, Riis AH, Ehrenstein V, Breau RH, Batista JL, Olumi AF, et al. Metformin use and prostate cancer risk. Eur Urol. 2014;66(6):1012–20.
110. Kato H, Sekine Y, Furuya Y, Miyazawa Y, Koike H, Suzuki K. Metformin inhibits the proliferation of human prostate cancer PC-3 cells via the downregulation of insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2015;461:115.
111. Murtola TJ, Tammela TL, Lahtela J, Auvinen A. Antidiabetic medication and prostate cancer risk: a population-based case-control study. Am J Epidemiol. 2008;168(8):925–31.
112. Yang FQ, Wang JJ, Yan JS, Huang JH, Li W, Che JP, et al. Metformin inhibits cell growth by upregulating microRNA-26a in renal cancer cells. Int J Clin Exp Med. 2014;7(10):3289–96.
113. Febbraro T, Lengyel E, Romero IL. Old drug, new trick: repurposing metformin for gynecologic cancers? Gynecol Oncol. 2014;135(3):614–21.
114. Dilokthornsakul P, Chaiyakunapruk N, Termrungruanglert W, Pratoomsoot C, Saokeaw S, Sruamsiri R. The effects of metformin on ovarian cancer: a systematic review. Int J Gynecol Cancer. 2013;23(9):1544–51.
115. Gotlieb WH, Saumet J, Beauchamp MC, Gu J, Lau S, Pollak MN, et al. In vitro metformin anti-neoplastic activity in epithelial ovarian cancer. Gynecol Oncol. 2008;110(2):246–50.
116. Vazquez-Martin A, Oliveras-Ferraros C, Del Barco S, Martin-Castillo B, Menendez JA. The anti-diabetic drug metformin suppresses self-renewal and proliferation of trastuzumab-resistant tumor-initiating breast cancer stem cells. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2011;126(2):355–64.
117. Jiralerspong S, Palla SL, Giordano SH, Meric-Bernstam F, Liedtke C, Barnett CM, et al. Metformin and pathologic complete responses to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in diabetic patients with breast cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(20):3297–302.
118. Lai SW, Liao KF, Chen PC, Tsai PY, Hsieh DP, Chen CC. Antidiabetes drugs correlate with decreased risk of lung cancer: a population-based observation in Taiwan. Clin Lung Cancer. 2012;13(2):143–8.
119. Tan BX, Yao WX, Ge J, Peng XC, Du XB, Zhang R, et al. Prognostic influence of metformin as first-line chemotherapy for advanced nonsmall cell lung cancer in patients with type 2 diabetes. Cancer. 2011;117(22):5103–11.
120. Yen YC, Lin C, Lin SW, Lin YS, Weng SF. Effect of metformin on the incidence of head and neck cancer in diabetics. Head Neck. 2015;37(9):1268–73.
121. Sikka A, Kaur M, Agarwal C, Deep G, Agarwal R. Metformin suppresses growth of human head and neck squamous cell

carcinoma via global inhibition of protein translation. Cell Cycle. 2012;11(7):1374–82.
122. Rego DF, Pavan LM, Elias ST, De Luca CG, Guerra EN. Effects of metformin on head and neck cancer: a systematic review. Oral Oncol. 2015;51(5):416–22.
123. Sandulache VC, Hamblin JS, Skinner HD, Kubik MW, Myers JN, Zevallos JP. Association between metformin use and improved survival in patients with laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma. Head Neck. 2014;36(7):1039–43.
124. Yasukagawa T, Niwa Y, Simizu S, Umezawa K. Suppression of cellular invasion by glybenclamide through inhibited secretion of platelet-derived growth factor in ovarian clear cell carcinoma ES-2 cells. FEBS Lett. 2012;586(10):1504–9.
125. Noto H, Goto A, Tsujimoto T, Osame K, Noda M. Latest insights into the risk of cancer in diabetes. J Diabetes Investig. 2013;4(3):225–32.
126. Chang CH, Lin JW, Wu LC, Lai MS, Chuang LM. Oral insulin secretagogues, insulin, and cancer risk in type 2 diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012;97(7):E1170–5.
127. Onitilo AA, Engel JM, Glurich I, Stankowski RV, Williams GM, Doi SA. Diabetes and cancer II: role of diabetes medications and influence of shared risk factors. Cancer Causes Control. 2012;23(7):991–1008.
128. Hsieh MC, Lee TC, Cheng SM, Tu ST, Yen MH, Tseng CH. The influence of type 2 diabetes and glucose-lowering therapies on cancer risk in the Taiwanese. Exp Diabetes Res. 2012;2012:413782.
129. Gonzalez-Perez A, Garcia Rodriguez LA. Prostate cancer risk among men with diabetes mellitus (Spain). Cancer Causes Control. 2005;16(9):1055–8.
130. Yang X, So WY, Ma RC, Yu LW, Ko GT, Kong AP, et al. Use of sulphonylurea and cancer in type 2 diabetes-the Hong Kong diabetes registry. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2010;90(3):343–51.
131. Pasello G, Urso L, Conte P, Favaretto A. Effects of sulfonylureas on tumor growth: a review of the literature. Oncologist. 2013;18(10):1118–25.
132. Monami M, Lamanna C, Balzi D, Marchionni N, Mannucci E. Sulphonylureas and cancer: a case-control study. Acta Diabetol. 2009;46(4):279–84.
133. Blin P, Lassalle R, Dureau-Pournin C, Ambrosino B, Bernard MA, Abouelfath A, et al. Insulin glargine and risk of cancer: a cohort study in the French National Healthcare Insurance Database. Diabetologia. 2012;55(3):644–53.
134. Buchs AE, Silverman BG. Incidence of malignancies in patients with diabetes mellitus and correlation with treatment modalities in a large Israeli health maintenance organization: a historical cohort study. Metab Clin Exp. 2011;60(10):1379–85.
135. Dejgaard A, Lynggaard H, Rastam J, Krogsgaard Thomsen M. No evidence of increased risk of malignancies in patients with diabetes treated with insulin detemir: a meta-analysis. Diabetologia. 2009;52(12):2507–12.
136. Karlstad O, Starup-Linde J, Vestergaard P, Hjellvik V, Bazelier MT, Schmidt MK, et al. Use of insulin and insulin analogs and risk of cancer - systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. Curr Drug Saf. 2013;8(5):333–48.
137. Colmers IN, Bowker SL, Tjosvold LA, Johnson JA. Insulin use and cancer risk in patients with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. Diabetes Metab. 2012;38(6):485–506.
138. Stammberger I, Essermeant L. Insulin glargine: a reevaluation of rodent carcinogenicity findings. Int J Toxicol. 2012;31(2):137–42.
139. Lim S, Stember KG, He W, Bianca PC, Yelibi C, Marquis A, et al. Electronic medical record cancer incidence over six years comparing new users of glargine with new users of NPH insulin. PLoS One. 2014;9(10):e109433.
140. Teng JA, Hou RL, Li DL, Yang RP, Qin J. Glargine promotes proliferation of breast adenocarcinoma cell line MCF-7 via AKT activation. Horm Metab Res. 2011;43(8):519–23.
141. Aizen D, Sarfstein R, Bruchim I, Weinstein D, Laron Z, Werner H. Proliferative and signaling activities of insulin analogues in endometrial cancer cells. Mol Cell Endocrinol. 2015;406:27–39.
142. Qin J, Teng JA, Zhu Z, Chen JX, Wu YY. Glargine promotes human colorectal cancer cell proliferation via upregulation of miR-95. Horm Metab Res. 2015;47(11):861–5.
143. Bordeleau L, Yakubovich N, Dagenais GR, Rosenstock J, Probstfield J, Chang Yu P, et al. The association of basal insulin glargine and/or n-3 fatty acids with incident cancers in patients with dysglycemia. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(5):1360–6.
144. Wei S, Yang J, Lee SL, Kulp SK, Chen CS. PPARgamma-independent antitumor effects of thiazolidinediones. Cancer Lett. 2009;276(2):119–24.
145. Weng JR, Chen CY, Pinzone JJ, Ringel MD, Chen CS. Beyond peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma signaling: the multi-facets of the antitumor effect of thiazolidinediones. Endocr Relat Cancer. 2006;13(2):401–13.
146. Govindarajan R, Ratnasinghe L, Simmons DL, Siegel ER, Midathada MV, Kim L, et al. Thiazolidinediones and the risk of lung, prostate, and colon cancer in patients with diabetes. J Clin Oncol. 2007;25(12):1476–81.
147. Monami M, Dicembrini I, Mannucci E. Thiazolidinediones and cancer: results of a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. Acta Diabetol. 2014;51(1):91–101.
148. Colmers IN, Bowker SL, Johnson JA. Thiazolidinedione use and cancer incidence in type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Diabetes Metab. 2012;38(6):475–84.
149. Chang CH, Lin JW, Wu LC, Lai MS, Chuang LM, Chan KA. Association of thiazolidinediones with liver cancer and colorectal cancer in type 2 diabetes mellitus. Hepatology. 2012;55(5):1462–72.
150. Kumagai T, Ikezoe T, Gui D, O'Kelly J, Tong XJ, Cohen FJ, et al. RWJ-241947 (MCC-555), a unique peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma ligand with antitumor activity against human prostate cancer in vitro and in beige/nude/X-linked immunodeficient mice and enhancement of apoptosis in myeloma cells induced by arsenic trioxide. Clin Cancer Res. 2004;10(4):1508–20.
151. Yamaguchi K, Lee SH, Eling TE, Baek SJ. A novel peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma ligand, MCC-555, induces apoptosis via posttranscriptional regulation of NAG-1 in colorectal cancer cells. Mol Cancer Ther. 2006;5(5):1352–61.
152. Min KW, Zhang X, Imchen T, Baek SJ. A peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor ligand MCC-555 imparts anti-proliferative response in pancreatic cancer cells by PPARgamma-independent up-regulation of KLF4. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol. 2012;263(2):225–32.
153. Joshi H, Pal T, Ramaa CS. A new dawn for the use of thiazolidinediones in cancer therapy. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2014;23(4):501–10.
154. Feng YH, Velazquez-Torres G, Gully C, Chen J, Lee MH, Yeung SC. The impact of type 2 diabetes and antidiabetic drugs on cancer cell growth. J Cell Mol Med. 2011;15(4):825–36.
155. Frohlich E, Wahl R. Chemotherapy and chemoprevention by thiazolidinediones. Biomed Res Int. 2015;2015:845340.
156. Ramos-Nino ME, MacLean CD, Littenberg B. Association between cancer prevalence and use of thiazolidinediones: results from the Vermont diabetes information system. BMC Med. 2007;5:17.
157. Ferwana M, Firwana B, Hasan R, Al-Mallah MH, Kim S, Montori VM, et al. Pioglitazone and risk of bladder cancer: a meta-analysis of controlled studies. Diabet Med. 2013;30(9):1026–32.
158. Jin SM, Song SO, Jung CH, Chang JS, Suh S, Kang SM, et al. Risk of bladder cancer among patients with diabetes treated with a 15 mg pioglitazone dose in Korea: a multi-center retrospective cohort study. J Korean Med Sci. 2014;29(2):238–42.
159. Turner RM, Kwok CS, Chen-Turner C, Maduakor CA, Singh S, Loke YK. Thiazolidinediones and associated risk of bladder

cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2014;78(2):258–73.
160. Ferrara A, Lewis JD, Quesenberry CP Jr, Peng T, Strom BL, Van Den Eeden SK, et al. Cohort study of pioglitazone and cancer incidence in patients with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(4):923–9.
161. Gokhale M, Buse JB, Gray CL, Pate V, Marquis MA, Sturmer T. Dipeptidyl-peptidase-4 inhibitors and pancreatic cancer: a cohort study. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2014;16(12):1247–56.
162. Butler AE, Galasso R, Matveyenko A, Rizza RA, Dry S, Butler PC. Pancreatic duct replication is increased with obesity and type 2 diabetes in humans. Diabetologia. 2010;53(1):21–6.
163. Tella SH, Rendell MS. DPP-4 inhibitors: focus on safety. Expert Opin Drug Saf. 2015;14(1):127–40.
164. Tseng CH, Lee KY, Tseng FH. An updated review on cancer risk associated with incretin mimetics and enhancers. J Environ Sci Health C Environ Carcinog Ecotoxicol Rev. 2015;33(1):67–124.
165. Kissow H, Hartmann B, Holst JJ, Viby NE, Hansen LS, Rosenkilde MM, et al. Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) receptor agonism or DPP-4 inhibition does not accelerate neoplasia in carcinogen treated mice. Regul Pept. 2012;179(1–3):91–100.
166. Femia AP, Raimondi L, Maglieri G, Lodovici M, Mannucci E, Caderni G. Long-term treatment with Sitagliptin, a dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitor, reduces colon carcinogenesis and reactive oxygen species in 1,2-dimethylhydrazine-induced rats. Int J Cancer. 2013;133(10):2498–503.
167. Farag SS, Srivastava S, Messina-Graham S, Schwartz J, Robertson MJ, Abonour R, et al. In vivo DPP-4 inhibition to enhance engraftment of single-unit cord blood transplants in adults with hematological malignancies. Stem Cells Dev. 2013;22(7):1007–15.
168. Nomiyama T, Kawanami T, Irie S, Hamaguchi Y, Terawaki Y, Murase K, et al. Exendin-4, a GLP-1 receptor agonist, attenuates prostate cancer growth. Diabetes. 2014;63(11):3891–905.
169. Koehler JA, Kain T, Drucker DJ. Glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor activation inhibits growth and augments apoptosis in murine CT26 colon cancer cells. Endocrinology. 2011;152(9):3362–72.
170. Ligumsky H, Wolf I, Israeli S, Haimsohn M, Ferber S, Karasik A, et al. The peptide-hormone glucagon-like peptide-1 activates cAMP and inhibits growth of breast cancer cells. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2012;132(2):449–61.
171. Zhao H, Wang L, Wei R, Xiu D, Tao M, Ke J, et al. Activation of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor inhibits tumourigenicity and metastasis of human pancreatic cancer cells via PI3K/Akt pathway. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2014;16(9):850–60.
172. Samson SL, Garber A. GLP-1R agonist therapy for diabetes: benefits and potential risks. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes. 2013;20(2):87–97.
173. Nauck MA, Friedrich N. Do GLP-1-based therapies increase cancer risk? Diabetes Care. 2013;36(Suppl 2):S245–52.
174. Hegedus L, Moses AC, Zdravkovic M, Le Thi T, Daniels GH. GLP-1 and calcitonin concentration in humans: lack of evidence of calcitonin release from sequential screening in over 5000 subjects with type 2 diabetes or nondiabetic obese subjects treated with the human GLP-1 analog, liraglutide. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2011;96(3):853–60.
175. Joshi SR, Standl E, Tong N, Shah P, Kalra S, Rathod R. Therapeutic potential of alpha-glucosidase inhibitors in type 2 diabetes mellitus: an evidence-based review. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2015;16(13):1959–81.
176. Tseng YH, Tsan YT, Chan WC, Sheu WH, Chen PC. Use of an alpha-glucosidase inhibitor and the risk of colorectal cancer in patients with diabetes: a Nationwide, Population-Based Cohort Study. Diabetes Care. 2015;38(11):2068–74.
177. Chen YL, Cheng KC, Lai SW, Tsai IJ, Lin CC, Sung FC, et al. Diabetes and risk of subsequent gastric cancer: a population-based cohort study in Taiwan. Gastric Cancer. 2013;16(3):389–96.
178. Lai SW, Liao KF, Lai HC, Tsai PY, Sung FC, Chen PC. Kidney cancer and diabetes mellitus: a population-based case-control study in Taiwan. Ann Acad Med Singap. 2013;42(3):120–4.
179. Wu L, Zhu J, Prokop LJ, Murad MH. Pharmacologic therapy of diabetes and overall cancer risk and mortality: a meta-analysis of 265 studies. Sci Rep. 2015;5:10147.
180. Malhotra A, Kudyar S, Gupta AK, Kudyar RP, Malhotra P. Sodium glucose co-transporter inhibitors - a new class of old drugs. Int J Appl Basic Med Res. 2015;5(3):161–3.
181. Lin HW, Tseng CH. A review on the relationship between SGLT2 inhibitors and Cancer. Int J Endocrinol. 2014;2014:719578.
182. Scafoglio C, Hirayama BA, Kepe V, Liu J, Ghezzi C, Satyamurthy N, et al. Functional expression of sodium-glucose transporters in cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2015;112(30):E4111–9.
183. Villani LA, Smith BK, Marcinko K, Ford RJ, Broadfield LA, Green AE, et al. The diabetes medication Canagliflozin reduces cancer cell proliferation by inhibiting mitochondrial complex-I supported respiration. Mol Metab. 2016;5(10):1048–56.

Suggested/Further Reading

Decensi A, Puntoni M, Goodwin P, Cazzaniga M, Gennari A, Bonanni B, et al. Metformin and cancer risk in diabetic patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Cancer Prev Res. 2010;3(11):1451–61. – a systemic review with meta-analysis presenting the inverse association between metformin and cancer risk.

Feng YH, Velazquez-Torres G, Gully C, Chen J, Lee MH, Yeung SC. The impact of type 2 diabetes and antidiabetic drugs on cancer cell growth. J Cell Mol Med. 2011;15(4):825–36. – another study assessing the influence of anti-diabetic medications on cancer biology.

Giovannucci E, Harlan DM, Archer MC, Bergenstal RM, Gapstur SM, Habel LA, et al. Diabetes and cancer: a consensus report. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(7):1674–85. – a clear and comprehensive consensus report on the correlation between diabetes mellitus and oncogenesis.

Pollak M. Potential applications for biguanides in oncology. J Clin Invest. 2013;123(9):3693–700. – a study on potential usefulness of biguanides (metformin with its antineoplastic activities) in oncology.

Renehan AG, Zwahlen M, Egger M. Adiposity and cancer risk: new mechanistic insights from epidemiology. Nat Rev Cancer. 2015;15(8):484–98. – a study presenting increased risk of cancer incidence in patients with adiposity (adiposity is significantly correlated with type 2 diabetes mellitus).

Ryu TY, Park J, Scherer PE. Hyperglycemia as a risk factor for cancer progression. Diabetes Metab J. 2014;38(5):330–6. – a study explaining the tumor-promoting activity of hyperglycemia.

Tsilidis KK, Kasimis JC, Lopez DS, Ntzani EE, Ioannidis JP. Type 2 diabetes and cancer: umbrella review of meta-analyses of observational studies. BMJ. 2015;350:g7607. – a comprehensive meta-analysis on the correlation between type 2 diabetes mellitus and cancer.

Wojciechowska J, Krajewski W, Bolanowski M, Krecicki T, Zatonski T. Diabetes and cancer: a review of current knowledge. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes. 2016;124(5):263–75. – a review article written by the authors of this chapter. The chapter is based on this article. The article, similarly to this chapter, analyse the association between diabetes mellitus (mainly type 2 diabetes mellitus) and cancer risk and cancer biology. The article also present the association between diabetes mellitus and antidiabetic medications.

Wu L, Zhu J, Prokop LJ, Murad MH. Pharmacologic therapy of diabetes and overall cancer risk and mortality: a meta-analysis of 265 studies. Sci Rep. 2015;5:10147. – a meta-analysis assessing the association between anti-diabetic pharmacotherapy and cancer risk and mortality.

Part X

Diabetes in Special Populations

Diabetes in Children and Adolescents

60

América Liliana Miranda Lora, Martha Beauregard Paz, and Miguel Klünder Klünder

Chapter Objectives

- Identify the forms of diabetes mellitus that can affect children and adolescents.
- Provide information about diagnostic tests to identify the etiology of diabetes mellitus in children and adolescents.
- Describe the epidemiology, risk factors, clinical presentation, treatment, and follow-up for comorbidities in pediatric patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes.

Introduction

Diabetes mellitus is one of the most common chronic diseases in pediatric patients. The prevalence of diabetes in adolescents from 12 to 19 years of age in the United States during 2005–2014 was 0.8%, of which 28.5% was undiagnosed, and the prevalence of prediabetes was 17.7% [1].

Several decades ago, type 1 diabetes was considered to occur only in children, and type 2 diabetes only in adults. However, an increasing proportion of patients with type 1 diabetes are adults, and the incidence of type 2 diabetes is increasing in children and young adults. Given the current obesity epidemic, distinguishing between type 1 and type 2 diabetes in children can be difficult. Currently, excessive weight is common in children with type 1 diabetes, whereas autoantibodies and ketosis may be present in patients with type 2 diabetes. However, the identification of the type of diabetes is important for the choice of treatment, educational approach, nutritional program, and prevention of complications.

A. L. Miranda Lora · M. Beauregard Paz
Research Unit of Evidence-Based Medicine, Mexico Children's Hospital Federico Gómez, Mexico City, Mexico

M. Klünder Klünder (✉)
Mexico Children's Hospital Federico Gómez, Mexico City, Mexico

There are unique aspects of the care and management of children and adolescents with diabetes, such as the following: (1) changes in insulin sensitivity related to growth and sexual development; (2) dependency care; and (3) neurological susceptibility to changes in glucose levels. A multidisciplinary team of specialists in pediatric diabetes should provide care to these patients. It is important to provide family and individual management education to achieve a balance between adult supervision and independent self-care [2].

Definition and Diagnostic Tests for Diabetes in Children

The term "diabetes mellitus in children" describes a group of disorders of abnormal carbohydrate metabolism that result in hyperglycemia in patients ≥10 and <18 years of age [3]. The diagnostic criteria for diabetes mellitus and increased risk of diabetes (prediabetes) of the Expert Committee of the American Diabetes Association are essentially the same in children and adults [4].

Diagnostic Tests for Diabetes [4]

- Fasting plasma glucose ≥126 mg/dL with no caloric intake for at least 8 h.[1]
- 2-h plasma glucose ≥200 mg/dL during an oral glucose tolerance test using a glucose load containing 1.75 g of anhydrous glucose per kg body weight dissolved in water, with a maximum of 75 g of anhydrous glucose.[1]
- HbA1c ≥6.5% using a method certified and standardized to the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) assay.[1] However, the studies that formed the basis for this recommendation included only adults, and it remains

[1] *In the absence of unequivocal hyperglycemia, results should be confirmed by repeat testing*

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_60

unclear whether the same HbA1c cutoff point should be used to diagnose diabetes in children and adolescents. The American Diabetes Association has suggested that this criterion underestimates the prevalence of prediabetes and diabetes in obese children and adolescents [5, 6].

- A random plasma glucose ≥200 mg/dL in a patient with classic symptoms of hyperglycemia or hyperglycemia crisis.

Diagnostic Tests for Increased Risk of Diabetes (Prediabetes) [4]

- Impaired fasting glucose: fasting plasma glucose 100–125 mg/dL
- Impaired glucose tolerance: 2-h plasma glucose 140–199 mg/dL during an oral glucose tolerance test
- HbA1c: 5.7–6.4%

Etiologic Classification

There are difficulties in distinguishing among types of diabetes in all groups at onset, and the true diagnosis becomes more obvious over time. The diabetes mellitus classification of the American Diabetes Association, which depends on causation, distinguishes the following types [4]:

- *Type 1 diabetes mellitus.* This form is characterized by an absolute insulin deficiency, usually as a result of the autoimmune destruction of pancreatic beta cells (type 1A) or secondary to defects in insulin secretion from inherited defects in pancreatic beta cell glucose sensing (type 1B).
- *Type 2 diabetes mellitus***.** This form is characterized by insulin resistance resulting from defects in the action of insulin on its target tissues and is associated with varying and usually progressive failure of beta cell secretion.
- *Genetic defects of beta cell function (monogenic diabetes).* This type of diabetes is characterized by impaired insulin secretion by pancreatic beta cells caused by a single gene mutation. This genetically heterogeneous group includes the following: neonatal diabetes, mitochondrial diabetes, and maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY). These forms of diabetes represent less than 5% of patients with diabetes and are generally characterized by onset before age 25 years. The diagnosis of monogenic diabetes should be considered in children with the following [4, 7]:
  - Diabetes in the first 6 months of life
  - Strong family history of diabetes but without typical features of type 2 diabetes (nonobese, low-risk ethnic group)
  - Mild fasting hyperglycemia (100–150 mg/dL), especially if young and nonobese
  - Diabetes with negative associated autoantibodies and without clinical features of type 2 diabetes
    - *Neonatal diabetes*. This rare disorder has an incidence of 1:300,000–1:400,000 live births [8]. It presents in the first 6 months of life and can be either transient or permanent. Almost 50% of cases are permanent, and the most common cause is an autosomal dominant defect in *KNJ11* or *ABCC8*, which encode the Kir6.2 and SUR1 subunits of the ATP-sensitive potassium channel, respectively. Additionally, missense mutations in the *INS* gene have been identified in permanent cases of neonatal diabetes. Patients with the permanent form can be treated with sulfonylureas, rather than insulin. Sulfonylureas trigger beta cell membrane depolarization, electrical activity, calcium influx, and insulin release. Patients with neonatal diabetes require 0.5 mg/kg/day on average, although some patients may need higher doses, up to 2.3 mg/kg/day [9].

      Transient neonatal diabetes mellitus is a rare imprinting disorder characterized by intrauterine growth retardation and diabetes mellitus that usually presents within the first 6 weeks of life and resolves by the age of 18 months [10]. However, these patients have an increased risk of type 2 diabetes later in life [4]. The most common genetic defect in the transient disease is a defect on *ZAC/HYAMI* imprinting on chromosome 6q24, although mutations in *KCNJ11* or *ABCC8* can also cause the transient form [10].
    - *Mitochondrial diabetes*. Some mitochondrial DNA mutations are strongly associated with diabetes, with the most common mutation being the A3243G mutation in the mitochondrial DNA-encoded tRNA gene. A gradual development of pancreatic beta cell dysfunction upon aging, rather than insulin resistance, is the main mechanism of glucose intolerance development. This mutation affects insulin secretion and may involve an attenuation of cytosolic ADP/ATP levels, leading to a resetting of the glucose sensor in the pancreatic beta cells. Unlike MODY-2, mitochondrial diabetes shows a pronounced age-dependent deterioration of pancreatic function. In clinical practice, a suspicion of mitochondrial diabetes is provided by a strong familial clustering of diabetes, and mitochondrial diabetes can be discriminated from MODY based on the presence of maternal transmission in conjunction with a bilateral hearing impairment in most carriers, although the final proof is provided by genetic analysis [11].

- *MODY*. This is the most common form of monogenic diabetes and is caused by the autosomal dominant transmission of a genetic defect in insulin secretion. MODY is characterized by impaired insulin secretion with minimal or no defects in insulin action. The clinical characteristics of these patients are heterogeneous, and MODY is often misdiagnosed as type 1 or type 2 diabetes mellitus. There are many MODY subtypes (Table 60.1). MODY-2 is the most common type seen during childhood, and MODY-3 is the most common after puberty [12, 13].

  MODY should be considered in the following situations [4, 7]:
- Individuals who have mild stable fasting hyperglycemia
- Multiple family members who have diabetes without type 1 characteristics (no islet autoantibodies; low or no insulin requirements 5 years after diagnosis) or type 2 diabetes (marked obesity; acanthosis nigricans)

These individuals should be referred for further evaluation and genetic testing confirmation. Some forms of MODY are sensitive to sulfonylureas, such as *HNF1A* and *HNF4A*. Mild fasting hyperglycemia due to CGK is not progressive during childhood, does not develop complications, and does not respond to low-dose insulin or oral agents, so these patients should not receive treatment [4, 7].

- *Genetic defects in insulin action*. There are rare genetic abnormalities in the insulin receptor or in signal transduction. One of them is Donohue syndrome (leprechaunism), a genetic autosomal recessive disorder that results from the presence of homozygous or compound heterozygous mutations in the insulin receptor gene (*INSR*; 19p13.3-p13.2). The incidence of this pathology is ~1:1,000,000 births. The characteristics of this syndrome include the following: severe intrauterine and postnatal growth retardation, multiple endocrine dysfunction, hypertrichosis, virilization, emaciation, acanthosis nigricans, lipoatrophy, genitomegaly, postprandial hyperglycemia, fasting hypoglycemia, insulin resistance, hyperinsulinemia, and eventual ketoacidosis. Infants with Donohue syndrome also have distinctive characteristics, with elfin facies, low birth weight, skin abnormalities, and large, low-set ears. The diagnosis is based on the combination of typical dysmorphic characteristics and clinical evaluation supported by glycemic and insulin results and genetic analysis. The treatment of these patients is supportive and requires a multidisciplinary team. For instance, blood glucose levels

Table 60.1 Classification of MODY

MODY type	Gene and locus	Age at diagnosis	Primary defect	Associated features	Severity of diabetes
1	*HNF-4a* 20q	Postpuberty	Gene transcription defects in beta cells	Macrosomia and/or neonatal hypoglycemia	Severe
2	*GCK* 7p	Childhood	Impairment of beta cell sensitivity to glucose and defect in hepatic glycogenesis	Reduced birth weight. This is the most common cause in the absence of symptoms or marked hyperglycemia	Mild
3	*HNF-1a* 12q	Postpuberty	Similar to MODY-1	Renal glycosuria	Severe
4	*PDF1 (IPF-1)* 13q	Early adulthood	Defects in transcription factors during embryogenesis lead to abnormal beta cell development and function	–	Mild
5	*HNF-1b* 17cen-q21.3	Postpuberty	Similar to MODY-1 and MODY-3	Glomerulocystic kidney disease, female genital malformations, hyperuricemia, abnormal liver function tests	Mild
6	*NeuroD1/ BETA2* 2	Early adulthood	Abnormal development and function of beta cells	–	Unknown
7	*KLFA11* 2p25	Early adulthood	Reduced glucose sensitivity of beta cells	Phenotype similar to T2D	Unknown
8	*CEL* 9q24	<20 years	Impaired endocrine and exocrine pancreatic function	Exocrine pancreatic dysfunction	Unknown
9	*PAX4* 7q32	<20 years	Impaired transcription of apoptosis- and proliferation-related genes in pancreatic beta cells	–	Diabetic ketoacidosis is possible
10	*INS* 11p15.5	<20 years	Loss of beta cell mass through apoptosis	–	Unknown
11	*BLK* 8p23	<20 years	Decreased insulin synthesis and secretion in response to glucose	Higher incidence in obese individuals	Unknown

Adapted from Refs. [7, 13]

may be maintained with frequent or continuous feeds and complex carbohydrates. Currently, treatment with recombinant insulin-like growth factor 1 has demonstrated effectiveness, and a combination with insulin-like growth factor-binding protein 3 resulted in an increased life span. The prognosis for this disorder is complicated and fatal; most affected fetuses are either aborted or die within the first year of life [14].

- *Endocrinopathies***.** Several hormones, such as cortisol, growth hormone, epinephrine, and glucagon, antagonize the action of insulin. Their oversecretion can result in glucose intolerance or diabetes mellitus [15].
- *Drug- or chemical-induced diabetes***.** Drugs may induce hyperglycemia through different mechanisms, including alterations in insulin secretion and sensitivity, direct cytotoxic effects on pancreatic cells, and increases in glucose production. The drugs included in this list are the following: antihypertensive drugs, lipid-modifying agents, protease inhibitors, nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, phenytoin, valproic acid, second-generation antipsychotics, antidepressant agents, glucocorticoids, chemotherapeutic agents, some oral contraceptives, growth hormone, and somatostatin analogs [16].
- *Cystic fibrosis-related diabetes*. Diabetes is the most common comorbidity in patients with cystic fibrosis, occurring in approximately 20% of adolescents and 40–50% of adults. Insulin insufficiency is the primary defect, although genetically determined beta cell function and insulin resistance associated with infection and inflammation may also contribute. Annual screening for cystic fibrosis-related diabetes with an oral glucose tolerance test beginning by age 10 years is recommended (HbA1c is not recommended). Patients with cystic fibrosis should be treated with insulin. For patients with impaired glucose tolerance, prandial insulin therapy should be considered to maintain weight [4].

The main types of diabetes mellitus are type 1 and type 2; these will be discussed in detail below.

Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

Epidemiology

Type 1 diabetes is one of the most common chronic diseases of childhood and affects males and females equally, with a slight male predominance in younger children. Type 1 diabetes has increased in recent years in all sex, age, and race/ethnic subgroups, except for those with the lowest prevalence (age 0–4 years and American Indians) [17]. The incidence and prevalence of type 1 diabetes mellitus vary by the following:

- Age. The highest incidence occurs between 10 and 14 years of age [18].
- Season. Type 1 diabetes appears mostly in autumn and winter [18].
- Geographic location. The lowest incidence was reported in Pakistan and Venezuela (0.1 per 100,000 per year) and the highest in Finland and Sardinia [19].
- Racial and ethnic groups. In the United States, the prevalence of type 1 diabetes has been increasing, from 1.48 per 1000 in 2001 to 1.93 per 1000 in 2009. The highest prevalence was in white youths and the lowest in American Indian youths [17].

It has been estimated that type 1 diabetes mellitus has been growing at an annual rate of approximately 2.8% [19]. The rising incidence of type 1 diabetes in children across the world over a short period cannot be explained by genetic factors; it has been suggested that environmental risk factors have contributed to the increasing trend in incidence. Several risk factors have been associated with type 1 diabetes mellitus (such as infections, dietary factors, air pollution, and vaccines); however, most of them have been inconclusive [20].

Pathogenesis of Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

Type 1 diabetes is an autoimmune disease. The pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes begins with the appearance of beta cell autoimmunity, which is primarily directed against insulin, glutamic acid decarboxylase, or both. Subsequently, other autoantibodies against islet antigen-2 or the ZnT8 transporter may also appear. Dysglycemia and the symptoms of diabetes appear later [21].

The rate of beta cell destruction is quite variable, but it is usually faster in infants and children than adults. Pediatric patients may present with ketoacidosis as the first manifestation of the disease; other patients have modest hyperglycemia, which may increase with infection or other stresses. In contrast, adults may retain sufficient beta cell function to prevent ketoacidosis and eventually become dependent on insulin [4].

Progress to diabetes occurred in 14–44% of children with persistent single insulin autoantibodies or GAD autoantibodies within 10 years. The progression in children with multiple islet autoantibodies was 50–70% within 10 years and 84% within 15 years. The progression to type 1 diabetes was faster for children younger than 3 years, children with the human leukocyte antigen genotype DR3/DR4-DQ8, and girls [22, 23]. Although there is currently a lack of accepted screening programs for type 1 diabetes, one should consider referring relatives of patients with type 1 diabetes for antibody testing. Individuals who test positive will be counseled about the risk of developing diabetes [4].

Genetic Risk Factors for Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

The primary risk factor for beta cell autoimmunity is genetic and mainly occurs in individuals with HLA-DR3-DQ2 and/or HLA-DR4-DQ8 haplotypes. The region encoding HLA contributes approximately 50% of the genetic risk. Although non-HLA genetic factors have a slight individual effect, 58 genomic regions show substantial genome-wide evidence of a type 1 diabetes association. Some candidate genes with likely functional effects are *IL27*, *BAD*, *CD69*, *PRKCQ*, *CLEC16A*, *ERBB3*, and *CTSH* [21].

Environmental Risk Factors for Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

The increase in the incidence of type 1 diabetes mellitus can be explained by changes in environment or lifestyle. A trigger from the environment in an autoimmunity-genetically susceptible individual is generally needed. These factors may be present in both prenatal and postnatal life. Candidate triggers with the strongest evidence include maternal or postnatal enteroviral infection, older maternal age, infant weight gain, serious life events, overweight or increased height velocity, puberty, insulin resistance, and psychological stress. Other suggested triggers include the following: congenital rubella; cesarean section; higher birthweight; low maternal intake of vegetables; frequent respiratory or enteric infections; abnormal microbiome; early exposure to cereals, root vegetables, eggs, or cow milk; persistent or recurrent enteroviral infections; high-glycemic load, fructose intake, dietary nitrates, or nitrosamines; and steroid treatment [24].

In contrast, there is evidence that higher omega-3 fatty acids is a postnatal protective factor, and it has also been suggested that higher maternal vitamin D intake or concentrations in late pregnancy, probiotics in the first month of life, and the introduction of solid food while breastfeeding after age 4 months are protective factors [24].

Clinical Presentation

Children with type 1 diabetes typically present with symptoms of polyuria, polydipsia, and diabetic ketoacidosis. However, children often do not present with the classical signs and symptoms of diabetes. Physicians should be aware of other presentations, such as the following: bedwetting in children who previously did not wet the bed during the night, unintended weight loss, irritability and other mood changes, fatigue, weakness, blurred vision, candida diaper dermatitis, and vaginal yeast infection.

The prevalence of diabetic ketoacidosis in youths with type 1 diabetes is nearly 30%, and higher prevalence has been associated with younger age at diagnosis, minority race/ethnicity, and low income [25]. The frequency of diabetic ketoacidosis at diagnosis ranges from 12.8% to 80% among countries. This variation may be explained, at least in part, by different levels of disease awareness and health-care provision [26].

Management of Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support

The treatment of patients with diabetes can only be effective if the family is able to implement it. Health-care providers must be capable of evaluating individual and family psychosocial factors to overcome barriers to treatment plans. In addition, it is necessary to involve other people who participate in the patient's care. As a large portion of a child's day is spent in school, communication and cooperation with school personnel is essential for optimal diabetes management [2].

Pediatric patients and caregivers should receive culturally sensitive and developmentally appropriate individualized diabetes education [27].

Glycemic Control

Glycemic control needs to be of a sufficient degree to prevent diabetes-related complications; however, strict glucose levels carry the risk of hypoglycemia. Although it was previously thought that young children were at risk of cognitive impairment after episodes of hypoglycemia, current data have not confirmed this notion. For that reason, current standards recommend lowering glucose to the safest possible level to prevent chronic complications. Actually, the blood glucose and HbA1c goals for type 1 diabetes across all pediatric age groups are the following [2]:

- Blood glucose goal range before meals: 90–130 mg/dL
- Bedtime/overnight: 90–150 mg/dL
- HbA1c: <7.5%

Goals should be individualized, and lower goals may be reasonable if they can be achieved without excessive hypoglycemia. Blood glucose goals should be modified in children with frequent hypoglycemia or hypoglycemia unawareness [2].

Blood Glucose Monitoring

Glucose monitoring enables patients, parents, and clinicians to evaluate the efficacy of current therapy, make treatment adjustments, and ensure that glucose levels are in safety goal

ranges [28–30]. Glucose monitoring allows decisions about the dose of insulin in patients with intensive management. Sleep is a time of particular risk of severe and asymptomatic hypoglycemia; because of this, routine testing is recommended overnight [31].

Increased daily frequency of self-monitoring of blood glucose is associated with lower HbA1c (−0.2% per additional test per day) and fewer acute complications. When children are old enough, they should be encouraged to auto-self-monitor their glucose levels [28].

Capillary blood glucose monitoring and continuous glucose monitoring enable patients to detect the impacts of diet, exercise, illness, stress, and medications on glucose levels. Both types of device allow patients to recognize hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. Continuous glucose monitoring has become a standard of care in patients with type 1 diabetes. The advantages of using this technology are the number of glucose readings per day (up to 288), the alert when the blood glucose threshold has been crossed, and the impact on glucose (lower HbA1c, less hypoglycemia, and more time in the target range) [32].

Insulin Therapy

Patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus lack sufficient insulin to maintain normoglycemia. The insulin requirements of children 9 months to 2 years of age are 0.25–0.5 units/kg/day; for children between 1 and 6 years of age, they are 0.5–0.6 units/kg/day; for children ≥7 years until the onset of puberty, they are 0.75 units/kg/day; and in children starting puberty, they range from 0.75 to 1.5 units/kg/day. For patients with diabetic ketoacidosis, it may be necessary to start at 1 unit/kg/day. Insulin dose adjustments are based on blood glucose [30]. The pharmacokinetic parameters of insulin commonly used in pediatric patients are shown in Table 60.2.

Intensive management with the use of multiple-dose insulin and/or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion in children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes mellitus showed marked declines in HbA1c and chronic complications [33].

The primary goal of treatment is to mimic natural insulin secretion. For this, patients require the following [30, 31]:

1. Basal insulin to maintain near-normal blood glucose levels to prevent starvation between meals and suppress hepatic glucose production. Patients can use continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion or intermediate- or long-acting insulin to mimic basal insulin secretion.
2. Short-acting insulin to cover the carbohydrates consumed during meals and normalize blood glucose levels by intermittent injections based on glycemic corrections and carbohydrate foods throughout the day. Since a normal daily diet includes three meals per day, short-acting insulin should be administered at least three times daily. Patients using this regimen need to establish the following parameters:
   - How many units of rapid-acting insulin should be injected per gram of carbohydrates (insulin: carbohydrate ratio).
   - The amount of glucose that decreases with 1 unit of rapid-acting insulin (sensitivity factor).

Insulin pumps have become increasingly available to patients with diabetes, and experts highlight their use as the chosen treatment option for many people across all age groups living with type 1 diabetes. In adolescents, continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion use was associated with lower rates of retinopathy (OR 0.66, 95% CI 0.045–0.95) and peripheral nerve abnormality (OR 0.63, 95% CI 0.42–0.95), suggesting an apparent benefit of continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion over multiple daily injections independent of glycemic control [34]. More information about this topic can be found in Chap. 39.

Table 60.2 Pharmacokinetic parameters of insulin commonly used in pediatric patients

	Action profile		
Insulin	Onset	Peak	Duration
Rapid-acting			
Lispro	15–30 min	30–90 min	3–6 h
Aspart	10–20 min	40–50 min	3–5 h
Glulisine	20–30 min	30–90 min	3–4 h
Short-acting			
Regular	30 min–1 h	2–5 h	5–8 h
Intermediate-acting			
NPH	2–4 h	4–12 h	12–18 h
Long-acting			
Glargine	1–1.5 h	No peak	20–24 h
Detemir	1–2 h	No peak	14–24 h

Adapted from Ref. [30]

Nutritional Management

Nutritional management is one of the fundamental elements of care and education in type 1 diabetes and should be provided at diagnosis and reviewed at least annually to increase dietary knowledge and adherence [35]. This management should focus on interventions to ensure normal growth and development, maintain ideal body weight, promote lifelong healthy eating habits, optimize glycemic control, and prevent associated complications [35, 36]. To establish a nutritional program, health-care providers should consider an individual's energy needs and insulin regimen. In addition, nutritional education should be individualized and adapted to cultural and ethnic traditions and include the entire family.

It is important that healthy eating principles targeting an increased consumption of fruit and vegetables and a decreased saturated fat intake underlie education so that the aim of improving diabetes outcomes and reducing

cardiovascular risk is achieved [35, 36]. Matching insulin to carbohydrate intake for patients on intensive insulin therapy requires comprehensive education in carbohydrate counting. Regular dietetic assessments are necessary to adapt nutritional advice to growth, diabetes management, and lifestyle changes and to permit the identification and treatment of disordered eating patterns [35].

Patients with type 1 diabetes require specialized dietetic support, especially when eating disorders and celiac disease occur, which are more common in type 1 diabetes mellitus [35, 36].

Key dietary behaviors have been associated with improved glycemic outcomes, such as the following [35]:

- Adherence to an individualized meal plan, particularly carbohydrate intake recommendations
- Avoidance of frequent snacking episodes or large snacks without adequate insulin coverage
- Regular meals and avoidance of skipping meals
- Avoidance of overtreatment of hypoglycemia and insulin boluses before meals

At diagnosis, appetite and energy intake are often high to compensate for catabolic weight loss; however, energy intake should be reduced when appropriate weight is restored to prevent overweight or obesity. Energy intake should be sufficient to achieve optimal growth and maintain an ideal body weight [35, 36].

The total daily energy intake should be distributed as follows [35, 36]:

- Carbohydrate 45–65%:
  - Moderate sucrose intake (up to 10% of total energy)
- Fat 30–35%:
  - <10% saturated fat + trans-fatty acids; no more than 7% when hyperlipidemia management is required
  - <10% polyunsaturated fat
  - >10% monounsaturated fat (up to 20% of total energy)
- Protein 15–25%

Carbohydrate intake should not be restricted, as it is essential for growth. With a lower carbohydrate intake, children tend to consume more saturated fat. Carbohydrate intake should come predominantly from wholegrain breads and cereals, legumes, fruits, vegetables, and low-fat dairy foods (except for children <2 years). Children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes require education regarding the amount, type, and distribution of carbohydrates over the day. Day-to-day consistency in carbohydrate intake using serving sizes or 15-gram carbohydrate exchanges is encouraged for those receiving fixed mealtime insulin doses. A more flexible carbohydrate intake can be achieved using an insulin-to-carbohydrate ratio for those on intensive insulin therapy [35, 36].

Carbohydrate counting is a key nutritional intervention for patients with an intensive insulin regimen; it enables adjustment of the prandial insulin dose according to carbohydrate consumption [35]. Nutrition education programs should also consider the glycemic index of foods. This is a ranking of foods based on their acute glycemic impact. The use of the glycemic index has been shown to provide additional benefit to glycemic control over that observed when carbohydrate amount is considered alone. Low-glycemic-index foods decrease postprandial glucose excursion compared to carbohydrates with a higher glycemic index.

It is becoming increasingly recognized that fat and protein also contribute to postprandial hyperglycemia. Fat and protein have been found to increase the delayed postprandial glucose rise. Consideration of the impact of fat and protein on glucose levels involves the application of advanced nutritional concepts that are best taught after basic carbohydrate counting skills have been established.

The primary goal regarding dietary fat intake in clinical practice is usually to decrease the intake of total fat, saturated fat, and trans-fatty acids. Saturated fat is the principal dietary determinant of plasma low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol. These types of fats are found in full-fat dairy products, fatty meats, and high-fat snacks, which should be avoided. Trans-fatty acids are formed when vegetable oils are processed and solidified, and they are found in margarines, deep-frying fat, cooking fat, and manufactured products. Conversely, monounsaturated fatty acids and polyunsaturated fatty acids can be used as substitutes to improve the lipid profile.

Recommendations for protein intake decrease during childhood, from approximately 2 grams/kg/day in early infancy to 1 gram/kg/day for a 10-year-old and to 0.8–0.9 grams/kg/day in later adolescence. Protein promotes growth only when sufficient total energy is available. High-protein diets (>25% total energy) are not generally advised for children with type 1 diabetes as they may impact growth and vitamin and mineral intake. Sources of vegetable protein, such as legumes, should be encouraged, as well as sources of animal protein, such as fish, lean cuts of meat, and low-fat dairy products [36, 37].

Children with type 1 diabetes have the same vitamin and mineral requirements as healthy children [36], so their intake should be as recommended in nutritional guidelines for the general pediatric population [38]. There is no clear evidence of benefit from vitamin or mineral supplementation in children diagnosed with type 1 diabetes who do not have underlying deficiencies [36].

Antioxidants are strongly recommended for young people with type 1 diabetes for cardiovascular protection. Many fresh fruits and vegetables are naturally rich in antioxidants (tocopherols, carotenoids, vitamin C, and flavonoids), so their intake should be encouraged [36].

Estimates of dietary fiber intake in children in many countries are lower than recommended (3.3 g of fiber per megajoule or 14 g/1000 kcal in children >1 year of age). Intake of a variety of fiber-containing foods, such as legumes, vegetables, fruits, and whole-grain cereals, should be encouraged as it promotes healthy bowel function, is helpful to reduce lipid levels, and may be useful in enhancing protection against cardiovascular disease. Fiber-containing foods may also help to improve satiety and replace more energy-dense foods. Processed foods tend to be lower in fiber; for that reason, unprocessed fresh foods should be encouraged. Fiber in the diet should be increased slowly to prevent abdominal discomfort, and any increase in fiber intake should be accompanied by an increase in fluid intake [35].

Exercise Management in Type 1 Diabetes

Regular exercise is important because it improves health and well-being and can help patients achieve their target lipid profile, body composition, fitness, and glycemic goals. However, there are barriers to exercise, including fear of hypoglycemia, loss of glycemic control, and inadequate knowledge around exercise management [39].

The physical activity targets for toddlers (1–2 years) and preschoolers (3–4 years) are a minimum of 180 min of physical activity of any intensity throughout the day with an emphasis on movement-developing skills and varied activities through the day. Preschool physical activity should progress toward at least 60 min of energetic play near the age of 5 years. The recommendations for children (5–11 years) and youths (12–17 years) are a minimum of 60 min of moderate- to vigorous-intensity physical activity daily to achieve health benefits (at least 420 min/week of exercise); vigorous-intensity aerobic activities at least 3 days/week, with ≤2 consecutive days between aerobic activities; and muscle- and bone-strengthening activities (resistance training) at least 3 days/week in the absence of contraindications [40–42].

Sedentary time should also be minimized to achieve health benefits. Recreational screen time (television, computer, and video games) is not recommended for infants and toddlers, should be limited to <1 h/day for preschoolers, and should not exceed 2 h/day for older children. Patients should also minimize the time spent indoors, prolonged sitting, and sedentary transport [43].

To avoid hypoglycemia, patients should take the following precautions [39]:

- If patients are not able to lower their insulin levels through exercise, they should consider increasing their carbohydrate intake at a rate of ~0.5 grams/kg/h of activity.
- If patients are able to lower their insulin, they should consider the timing of exercise relative to their last meal.
  - If activity occurs ≤3 h after a meal, they should consider bolus insulin reduction. In case of <60 min duration, the reduction will depend on the exercise intensity: light 25%, moderate 50%, or heavy 75%. In case of ≥60 min duration, they should consider a 50% reduction in light intensity and 75% in moderate/heavy intensity.
  - If activity occurs >3 h after a meal, patients must consider basal insulin reduction. Patients with multiple-dose insulin should consider a 20% reduction in basal insulin on days with prolonged activity. Patients with continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion may reduce basal insulin by 50–90% 60–90 min before the start of exercise until the exercise ends or even consider pump suspension at the start of exercise.
- Aerobic exercise may require an initial carbohydrate intake (15–20 grams). The response to a downward trend in glucose during exercise should be the ingestion of 8–20 grams of rapidly acting carbohydrate.
- Consider an overnight basal rate reduction of 10–40% on evenings after prolonged aerobic exercise or resistance training.

The Effect of Treatment on the Honeymoon Period in Type 1 Diabetes

A beneficial effect of intensive early insulin therapy to protect pancreatic beta cell function in newly diagnosed type 1 diabetes mellitus has been demonstrated [44, 45]. The protection of pancreatic beta cell function results in better glycemic control and fewer complications [44, 46]. Early small doses of insulin have been observed to be effective to prevent beta cell failure in slowly progressive type 1 diabetes, and they have been recommended for patients with positive antibodies [47, 48]. During the honeymoon phase, the insulin requirement decreases, and basal insulin 0.2–0.6 units/grams/day during this phase may preserve beta cell function [30].

Immunomodulators have been used to preserve beta cell function, with promising results reported for anti-CD3, Diapep277, oral insulin, and GAD65 treatments. The possibility of preservation of beta cell function (high residual C-peptide secretion) in individuals within the first months of diagnosis has been shown in clinical trials with these immunomodulators [45, 46, 48, 49].

Glucagon

Intensive insulin treatment in type 1 diabetes reduces the incidence of complications but has an increased risk of hypoglycemia and weight gain. The main goal of type 1 diabetes treatment has been the simulation of physiologic insulin secretion in healthy people. However, type 1 diabetes is a dual-hormone disease, and the combination of insulin and

glucagon might be more appropriate. Glucagon substitution in response to hypoglycemia as an alternative to carbohydrate consumption could potentially reduce the risk of weight gain. Closed-loop dual-hormone treatment could potentially benefit the treatment of type 1 diabetes. Until now, the use of glucagon has been limited by the need for reconstitution immediately before use. However, it can be expected that stable compounds available for dual-hormone treatment in the future will improve metabolic control for patients with type 1 diabetes [50, 51].

Islet Transplantations and Stem Cell Therapy

The only possible cure for patients with type 1 diabetes is the possibility of replacement pancreatic beta cells. For that reason, transplantation strategies have gained much interest. Research into the replacement of beta cells has had significant advances in islet isolation, engraftment, and immunosuppressive strategies. However, the main remaining limitations are the insufficient supply of human tissue and the need for lifelong immunosuppression therapy [52, 53]. In an effort to find sources of insulin-producing beta cells, alternatives such as nonhuman donor cells (mainly porcine beta cells) or the possibility of deriving pluripotent stem cells from somatic cells have been encouraged. Cell reprogramming and differentiation to obtain patient-specific beta cells have opened up the possibility of cell therapy without immunosuppression [53]. More information about this topic can be found in Chap. 65.

Addition of Metformin for Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus Children

Frequently, the metabolic control of patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus worsens during adolescence secondary to increases in weight and insulin resistance as a result of puberty hormones. Therefore, the use of metformin to improve insulin sensitivity in this group of patients has been considered. In a recent meta-analysis (six clinical trials, $n = 325$), it was observed that the addition of metformin in the treatment of pediatric patients with type 1 diabetes resulted in a modest decrease in total insulin daily dose (mean difference = −0.15 unit/kg/day, 95% CI, −0.24, 0.06) and body mass index (mean difference: –1.46, 95% CI –2.54, 0.38). In addition, metformin was not superior to placebo in other metabolic control variables, such as HbA1c, lipid profile, and ketoacidosis events. The authors noted that current evidence does not support the use of metformin in type 1 diabetes mellitus in pediatric patients to improve HbA1c, and future studies are needed to evaluate the long-term durability of the total insulin daily dose and body mass index reduction achieved by adding metformin to insulin [54].

Management of Hypoglycemia in Children and Adolescents with Diabetes

Hypoglycemia is the most common acute complication of type 1 diabetes and is the major barrier to achieving optimal glycemic control [29, 55].

Hypoglycemia is defined as a decrease in the blood glucose level that exposes a patient to potential harm. A blood glucose level <65 mg/dL has been often accepted as the level for defining hypoglycemia. However, a threshold of 70 mg/dL is used to start treatment because of the possibility of further decreases [29, 56].

Hypoglycemia is also classified as symptomatic or asymptomatic. The signs and symptoms in children are the following [29]:

- *Autonomic*: shakiness, sweatiness, trembling, palpitations, and pallor
- *Neuroglycopenic*: poor concentration, blurred or double vision, disturbed color vision, difficulty hearing, slurred speech, poor judgment and confusion, problems with short-term memory, dizziness and unsteady gait, loss of consciousness, seizure, and death
- *Behavioral*: irritability, erratic behavior, agitation, nightmares, and inconsolable crying
- *Non-specific symptoms*: hunger, headache, nausea, and tiredness

Symptoms of hypoglycemia may occur at a higher glucose level in children compared to adults, and the thresholds may be altered by chronic hypoglycemia. Children have a higher risk of severe hypoglycemia than adults. In this age group, severe hypoglycemia is most often defined as an event associated with a seizure or loss of consciousness [29].

Common precipitants of hypoglycemia are the following: excess insulin, missed meals, exercise, alcohol ingestion, and sickness [29].

Milder hypoglycemia should be treated with 10–15 grams of oral glucose (approximately 0.3 g/kg) to increase blood glucose to approximately 54–70 mg/dL. This can be achieved by glucose tablets or sweetened fluids, such as juice. After initial treatment, blood glucose should be retested in 10–15 min. In case of an inadequate response, treatment should be repeated, and blood glucose retested in another 10–15 min to confirm that a glucose level of 100 mg/dL has been reached. In some circumstances, this should be followed by additional complex carbohydrates (fruit, bread, cereal, or milk) to prevent the recurrence of hypoglycemia [29].

Severe hypoglycemia requires urgent treatment. In a hospital setting, patients should be treated with intravenous glucose. The recommended dose is 10–30%, for a total of 200–500 mg/kg of glucose (10% glucose, 2–3 ml/kg). Rapid administration or excessive concentration (i.e., glucose 50%)

may result in an excessive rate of osmotic change and risk of cerebral edema [29].

Out of the hospital, intramuscular or subcutaneous glucagon should be given (<12 years 0.5 mg, >12 years 1.0 mg, or 10–30 mcg/kg body weight). Caregivers should have glucagon available and receive training in using it [29].

Hypoglycemia should be prevented because it is associated with psychosocial dysfunction and, in rare cases, leads to permanent long-term sequelae and may be potentially life-threatening. Diabetes education is critical for preventing hypoglycemia. Patients, parents, and caregivers should be alert to situations in which increased glucose monitoring is required and when treatment regimens need to be changed. They should be alert to recognize the early signs of hypoglycemia, have a glucometer available for confirmation, and provide some source of glucose. Children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes should wear some form of identification to alert others of their diabetes. If unexplained hypoglycemia occurs frequently, evaluation for unrecognized celiac and Addison's disease should be considered [29].

Management During Sickness

Children and adolescents whose diabetes is under good metabolic control should not experience more illness or infections than children without diabetes. However, when any illness occurs in someone with diabetes, the potential for hyperglycemia, hyperglycemia with ketosis, hyperglycemia with ketoacidosis, or hypoglycemia exists, and education and treatment are required to prevent exacerbation or even possible death [57, 58].

Many illnesses are associated with higher levels of stress hormones, which promote gluconeogenesis and insulin resistance. Severe illness increases ketone body production because of the inadequate provision of insulin under such circumstances and thus can contribute to acidosis, nausea and vomiting, and furthering dehydration and ultimately compromise the acid-base balance, producing metabolic decompensation, ketoacidosis, coma, and death. Illnesses associated with vomiting and diarrhea, such as gastroenteritis, often lower blood glucose levels rather than causing hyperglycemia while simultaneously producing a type of starvation ketosis, which exacerbates the situation [57].

Education about the effects of sick days is a critical component of diabetes management at home. There are general sick day diabetes management principles, such as the following [57, 58]:

- More frequent blood glucose and ketone (urine or blood) monitoring, at least every 3–4 h and sometimes every 1–2 h, including through the night.
- During sick days, do not stop insulin, even in the fasting state.
- During sick days, the insulin dose may need to be temporarily increased or decreased.
- When vomiting occurs, it should always be considered a sign of insulin deficiency until proven otherwise.
- Monitor and maintain salt and water balance.
- Treat the underlying precipitating illness.
- Sick day guidelines, including insulin adjustment, should be taught soon after diagnosis and reviewed at least annually with patients and family members with a goal of minimizing and/or avoiding diabetic ketoacidosis and similarly minimizing and/or avoiding illness-associated hypoglycemia.

In case of loss of appetite, replacing meals with easily digestible food and sugar-containing fluids provides energy (carbohydrates) and may help prevent further ketosis. Necessary sick day management supplies at home include glucose tablets, sweets, or candies, as well as dried fruit to prevent hypoglycemia; clean, cool water to provide hydration and prepare salty soups, sugar- and electrolyte-containing fluids, such as sports drinks, or electrolyte mixtures to provide hydration, glucose, and salts; and easy-to-digest carbohydrates, such as crackers or rice [57, 58].

Additional doses of short–/rapid-acting insulin are required with careful monitoring to reduce blood glucose, prevent ketoacidosis, and avoid hospital admission. The dose and frequency of injection will depend on the level and duration of hyperglycemia as well as the severity of ketosis (Table 60.3). Such supplemental doses are usually given subcutaneously but may also be given intramuscularly with health-care professional advice.

In the case of a patient who is pump user, the previously mentioned key points of sick day management are the same as for a patient on insulin injections; however, specific management is recommended as follows [58]:

Hyperglycemia with negative ketones:

- Give correction bolus with pump and test blood glucose hourly.
- Drink low-carbohydrate fluids or salty liquids.
- If blood glucose is lower after 1 h, recheck again in 1–2 h to decide whether another bolus is needed.
- If blood glucose is not lower, then give bolus by syringe or pen.

Hyperglycemia with blood ketones >0.6 mmol/L or positive urine ketones:

- Give sick day bolus by injection with pen or syringe using Table 60.3 guidelines.
- Change the catheter and check to be sure pump is working.
- Re-establish insulin infusion with new set and cannula with temporary basal rate increase of 120–150%.

Table 60.3 Fast-acting insulin dose calculation on sick days

Ketones		Blood glucose				
Blood (mmol/L)	Urine ketones	<100 mg/dL	100–180 mg/dL	180–250 mg/dL	250–400 mg/dL	400 mg/dL
<0.6	Negative or trace	Do not give extra insulin	No need to worry	Increase dose of insulin for next meal if blood glucose is still elevated	Give extra 5% of total daily dose or 0.05 U/kg	Give extra 10 of total daily dose or 0.1 U/kg. Repeat if needed
0.6–0.9	Trace or small	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed	Give extra 5% of total daily dose or 0.05 U/kg	Give extra 5–10% of total daily dose or 0.05–0.1 U/kg	Give extra 10% of total daily dose or 0.1 U/kg. Repeat if needed
1.0–1.4	Small or moderate	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed	Extra carbohydrate and fluid are needed. Give ordinary bolus dose	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed. Give 5–10% of total daily dose or 0.05–0.1 U/kg	Give extra 5–10% of total daily dose or 0.05–0.1 U/kg	Give extra 10% of total daily dose or 0.1 U/kg. Repeat if needed
1.5–2.9	Moderate or high	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed. Give 5% of total daily dose or 0.05 U/kg. Repeat when blood glucose has risen	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed. Give 10% of total daily dose or 0.1 U/kg	Give extra 10–20% of total daily dose or 0.1 U/kg. Repeat dose after 2 h if ketones do not decrease	Consider evaluation at emergency department
>3.0	High	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed. May need IV glucose if child cannot eat or drink	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed. Give 5% of total daily dose or 0.05 U/kg. Repeat when blood glucose has risen	Extra carbohydrates and fluid are needed. Give 10% of total daily dose or 0.1 U/kg	Give extra 10–20% of total daily dose or 0.1 U/kg. Repeat dose after 2 h if ketones do not decrease	Consider evaluation at emergency department

Adapted from Ref. [58]

- Monitor blood glucose hourly and recheck ketones at least every 4 h.
- Drink extra high-carbohydrate fluids if ketones are elevated and blood glucose is low or low-carbohydrate fluids if blood glucose is elevated with or without elevated ketones.
- If blood glucose remains high; ketones persist; nausea, vomiting, or abdominal pain develops; or confusion or problems staying awake and alert develop, proceed to the hospital for assessment.

If hypoglycemia (<65–70 mg/dL) and nausea or food refusal persists, a "mini glucagon treatment" (if available) may reverse the hypoglycemia and enable oral fluid intake. The recommended doses are the following [58]:

- <2 years old = 0.02 mg = 2 units on insulin syringe
- 2–15 years old = 0.01 mg per years of age = 1 unit on insulin syringe per years of age
- >15 years old = 0.15 mg = 15 units on insulin syringe

Surgery

When children with diabetes require surgery or other procedures requiring sedation or anesthesia, optimal management should maintain adequate hydration and nearly normal glycemia while minimizing the risk of hypoglycemia [57]. The safe management of patients with type 1 diabetes in the perioperative period requires a consideration of each child's specific treatment, glycemic control, intended surgery, and anticipated postoperative course [59].

The pre-surgical assessment should be performed several days before surgery to allow an assessment of glycemic control, electrolyte status, and ketones. If glycemic control is known to be poor and surgery is not urgent, the procedure should be delayed until glycemic control has improved. If surgery cannot be delayed, consider admission to the hospital before surgery for stabilization of glycemic control [59].

Intravenous access, infusion of glucose, and frequent blood glucose monitoring are essential whenever general anesthesia is given. Glucose 5% is usually sufficient; glucose 10% may be necessary when there is an increased risk of hypoglycemia. To minimize the risk of hypoglycemia, children should receive a glucose infusion when fasting for more than 2 h before general anesthesia [57, 59].

The glucose target during surgical procedures is 90–180 mg/dL. The appropriate glycemic targets during the perioperative period remain controversial and are less clear than the surgery or postoperative control; however, studies in adults have not demonstrated any adverse effects of maintaining perioperative glycemic levels between 90 and 200 mg/dL [57, 59].

The stress of surgery leads to a complex neuroendocrine stress response characterized by hyperglycemia and a catabolic state [59]. Additionally, hyperglycemia has been associated with an increased risk of postoperative infection, so it needs to be avoided. To achieve optimal glycemic control, the insulin dosage may need to be increased on the day of major surgery and for approximately 2 days after surgery. This is best achieved by continuous IV insulin infusion even after the resumption of oral feeding [57, 59].

Before emergency surgery, always check blood glucose, blood ß-hydroxybutyrate (if available) or urinary ketone concentration, serum electrolytes, and blood gases if ketone or blood glucose levels are high. If ketoacidosis is present, follow the established treatment protocol for diabetic ketoacidosis and delay surgery, if possible, until circulating volume and electrolyte deficits are corrected. If there is no ketoacidosis, start IV fluids and insulin management as for elective surgery [59].

Pediatric patients with type 1 diabetes need insulin, even while fasting, to avoid ketoacidosis and require careful blood glucose monitoring (hourly) before the procedure to detect hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. At least 2 h before surgery, start an IV insulin infusion (dilute 50 units regular [soluble] insulin in 50 ml of normal saline; 1 unit = 1 ml) and glucose 5% (10% if there is concern about increased risk of hypoglycemia). If blood glucose is high (>250 mg/dL), use 0.45 or 0.9% NaCl without glucose and increase insulin supply, but add 5% dextrose when blood glucose falls below 250 mg/dl. Start infusion at 0.025 ml/kg/h if blood glucose is <100–140 mg/dL, 0.05 ml/kg/h if 141–215 mg/dL, 0.075 ml/kg/h if between 220 and 270 mg/dL, and 0.1 U/kg/h if >270 mg/dL [57].

Blood glucose should be monitored every 30–60 min during the operation and until the child recovers from anesthesia. Adjust dextrose infusion and insulin to maintain blood glucose in the range 90–180 mg/dL. Do not stop the insulin infusion if blood glucose is <90 mg/dL as this will cause rebound hyperglycemia; instead, reduce the rate of infusion. The IV insulin infusion may be stopped temporarily if blood glucose <55 mg/dL, but only for 10–15 min [57, 59].

The patient may initially receive an intravenous (IV) infusion without dextrose for minor surgery or procedures lasting for less than 2 h if treated with basal/bolus insulin regimen or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion, and they should initially receive an IV infusion with dextrose for major surgery or procedures (lasting for at least 2 h) or if treated with NPH insulin [59].

Once the child is able to resume oral nutrition, continue the child's usual diabetes treatment regimen. Give short- or rapid-acting insulin (based on the child's usual insulin: carbohydrate ratio and correction factor), if needed, to reduce hyperglycemia or to match food intake [59].

Diabetic Ketoacidosis

Diabetic ketoacidosis results from a deficiency of circulating insulin and increased levels of counter-regulatory hormones. There are several risk factors for diabetic ketoacidosis in newly diagnosed cases, such as younger age patients (<2 years), delayed diagnosis, lower socioeconomic status, and countries with low prevalence of type 1 diabetes. In the case of patients with a known diagnosis, the risk factors include insulin omission, poor metabolic control, previous episodes of diabetic ketoacidosis, gastroenteritis with persistent vomiting and inability to maintain hydration, psychiatric and eating disorders, challenging social and family circumstances, peri-pubertal and adolescent girls, limited access to medical services, and failures in insulin pump therapy [60].

The combination of absolute or relative insulin deficiency and high counter-regulatory hormone concentrations results in an accelerated catabolic state with increased glucose production, resulting in hyperglycemia and hyperosmolality; it also increases lipolysis and ketogenesis and causes ketonemia and metabolic acidosis. If this cycle is not interrupted by exogenous insulin and fluid and electrolyte therapy, fatal dehydration and metabolic acidosis will ensue [60].

The clinical signs of diabetic ketoacidosis include the following: dehydration, tachycardia, tachypnea, deep respiration (Kussmaul respiration), ketone smell on the breath (odor of nail polish remover or rotten fruit), nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain (which may mimic an acute abdominal condition), confusion, drowsiness, progressive reduction in the level of consciousness, and, eventually, loss of consciousness [60].

The biochemical criteria for the diagnosis of diabetic ketoacidosis are the following [60]:

- Hyperglycemia (blood glucose >200 mg/dL)
- Venous pH < 7.3 or bicarbonate <15 mmol/L
- Ketonemia and ketonuria

The criteria for hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state include the following [60]:

- Plasma glucose concentration >600 mg/dL
- Venous pH > 7.25; arterial pH > 7.30
- Serum bicarbonate >15 mmol/L
- Low ketonuria and absent-to-mild ketonemia
- Effective serum osmolality >320 mOsm/kg
- Altered consciousness (e.g., obtundation, combativeness) or seizures

Emergency assessment should follow the general guidelines for Pediatric Advanced Life Support and includes the following: immediate measurement of blood glucose, blood or urine ketones, serum electrolytes, blood gases, and full

blood count and assessment of the severity of dehydration and level of consciousness. A second peripheral IV catheter should be inserted [60].

The goals of therapy are to correct dehydration, correct acidosis and reverse ketosis, slowly correct hyperosmolality and restore blood glucose to near normal, monitor for complications of diabetic ketoacidosis and its treatment, and identify and treat any precipitating event. Management should be conducted in centers experienced in the treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis in children and adolescents and where vital signs, neurological status, and laboratory results can be monitored frequently [60].

Fluid replacement should begin before starting insulin therapy. Expand the volume, as required, to restore peripheral circulation. For patients who are severely volume depleted but not in shock, volume expansion should begin with 0.9% saline with 10–20 ml/kg doses over 1–2 h, and it may need to be repeated until tissue perfusion is adequate. In patients with diabetic ketoacidosis in shock, rapidly restore circulatory volume with isotonic saline in 20 ml/kg boluses infused as quickly as possible [60].

The subsequent rate of fluid administration, including the provision of maintenance fluid requirements, aiming to replace the estimated fluid deficit evenly over 48 h should be calculated. Subsequent fluid management should include an isotonic solution for at least 4–6 h. Deficit replacement after 4–6 h should be with a solution with tonicity ≥0.45% saline with added potassium [60].

Insulin therapy should begin with 0.05–0.1 U/kg/h 1–2 h after starting fluid replacement therapy. In HHS, insulin administration should begin at a dose of 0.025–0.05 U/kg/h once plasma glucose is no longer declining at a rate of at least 3 mmol/L (50 mg/dL) per hour with fluid alone [60].

During volume expansion and after commencing insulin therapy, the plasma glucose concentration typically decreases. To prevent a rapid decrease and hypoglycemia, 5% glucose should be added to the IV fluid when the plasma glucose falls to approximately 250–300 mg/dL, or sooner if the rate of decrease is precipitous. It may be necessary to use 10% or even 12.5% dextrose to prevent hypoglycemia while continuing to infuse insulin to correct the metabolic acidosis [60].

If the patient is hyperkalemic, defer potassium replacement therapy until urine output is documented. Otherwise, begin with 40 mmol potassium/L in the infusate or 20 mmol potassium/L in the patient receiving fluid at a rate >10 ml/kg/h [60].

Bicarbonate administration is not recommended, except for treatment of life-threatening hyperkalemia. The warning signs and symptoms of cerebral edema should be monitored; they include headache and slowing of heart rate, a change in neurological status (restlessness, irritability, increased drowsiness, or incontinence), specific neurological signs, rising blood pressure, and decreased oxygen saturation. In patients with multiple risk factors for cerebral edema, mannitol or hypertonic saline should be available at the bedside and the dose to be given calculated beforehand. If neurologic status deteriorates acutely, hyperosmolar therapy should be given immediately [60].

Management of an episode of DKA is not complete until an attempt has been made to identify and treat the cause so it could be prevented. Recurrent DKA without a preceding febrile or vomiting illness is almost always the result of psychosocial problems and failure to take insulin [60]. More details about diabetic ketoacidosis are in Chap. 44.

Autoimmune Conditions

Patients with type 1 diabetes have an increased frequency of other autoimmune diseases. Autoimmune thyroid disease is the most common (17–30%). At the time of diagnosis, ~25% of patients have thyroid autoantibodies, and their presence is predictive of thyroid dysfunction (most commonly hypothyroidism). Thyroid dysfunction can alter glycemic control and linear growth rate. Therefore, thyroid function tests should be performed soon after a period of metabolic stability. It is recommended to test for antithyroid peroxidase and antithyroglobulin antibodies and to measure thyroid-stimulating hormone concentrations. If normal, consider rechecking every 1–2 years or sooner if the patient presents symptoms of thyroid dysfunction, goiter, abnormal growth rate, or unexplained glycemic variation [2].

Celiac disease occurs in 1.6–16.4% of patients with type 1 diabetes. Screening by measuring serum levels of IgA and anti-tissue transglutaminase antibodies is recommended. In cases of IgA deficiency, measuring IgG tissue transglutaminase antibodies or IgG deamidated gliadin peptide antibodies at the time of diagnosis, and repeating within 2–5 years thereafter is recommended. These recommendations should also be considered in patients with a first-degree relative with celiac disease, growth failure, weight loss, failure to gain weight, gastrointestinal symptoms (diarrhea, flatulence, abdominal pain, or signs of malabsorption), unexplained hypoglycemia, or uncontrolled glycemia. The diagnosis could be confirmed with small bowel biopsy, and patients should be placed on a gluten-free diet to reduce symptoms and rates of hypoglycemia [2].

Psychosocial Issues

Type 1 diabetes places a substantial behavioral and psychological burden on young people and their families. Approximately one-third of adolescents with type 1 diabetes

need mental health support, and their parents are also at increased risk of psychological distress [61]. Diabetes management in pediatric patients places challenges requiring family teamwork to maintain adherence and glycemic control. During follow-up, health-care providers should be alert to psychosocial issues and stresses that could affect adherence to treatment. Diabetes can impact mental health problems, such as distress, fear of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia, anxiety, disordered eating behaviors, or depression [2]. In case of hospitalization, children with type 1 diabetes have higher odds (3.5) of being discharged from the hospital with a comorbid mood or anxiety disorder compared with other children [62]. These psychosocial factors are related to nonadherence, poor glycemic control, and quality of life and diabetes complications. Thus, screening for psychosocial distress and mental health problems is important, and referrals to trained mental health professionals, as integral members of the pediatric diabetes multidisciplinary team, should be provided to ensure optimal clinical care and long-term outcomes for these children [2].

Vaccination

Patients with diabetes mellitus are more susceptible to infections; immune system deficiency could be a reason. It is recommended to provide routine vaccinations for children with diabetes, as for the general population, according to age [63]. However, the antibody responses to pertussis, diphtheria, tetanus, mumps, and hepatitis B vaccines are similar between patients with and without diabetes, although the response to measles and rubella vaccinations could be lower [27].

Pregnancy Prevention

Prepregnancy counseling is an important tool in chronic endocrine conditions to reduce the risk to the mother and fetus. The management of pregnancies complicated by diabetes mellitus requires coordination among the team of obstetricians, endocrinologists, dietitians, and psychologists. The prevention of unintended pregnancies among teens with diabetes mellitus is critically important because these patients are as likely to be sexually involved as are healthy teens, in whom 83% pregnancies are unintended. Implants and intrauterine devices represent the most effective, safest, and most successful contraceptive options for adolescents [64].

Management of Cardiovascular Risk Factors

Pediatric patients with type 1 diabetes are at higher risk of early adult-onset cardiovascular disease. Adolescents with type 1 diabetes exhibit early changes in blood pressure, peripheral vascular function, and left ventricular myocardial deformation indices, and detection could benefit from early therapeutic interventions [65].

Hypertension

Blood pressure should be measured at each consultation using an appropriate-size cuff with the patient seated and relaxed. The result should be compared with normal levels for age, sex, and height. Children with high-normal blood pressure (≥90th percentile) or hypertension (≥95th percentile) should have blood pressure confirmed on 3 separate days. Initial treatment includes dietary modification, increased exercise, and weight control. If high-normal blood pressure persists for 3–4 months or in cases of hypertension, pharmacological treatment should be considered with angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACE inhibitors) or angiotensin receptor blockers if ACE inhibitor is not tolerated, with the patient advised of the potential teratogenic effects of both types of drug. The goal of treatment is blood pressure consistently in the <90th percentile [2].

Dyslipidemia

The atherosclerotic process begins in childhood, and youths with type 1 diabetes may have subclinical cardiovascular disease abnormalities within the first decade of diagnosis. It has been estimated that 14–45% of children with type 1 diabetes have two or more cardiovascular risk factors, and the prevalence increases with age. For that reason, it is recommended to obtain a fasting lipid profile in children ≥10 years of age soon after the diagnosis after glucose control has been established. If lipids are abnormal, annual monitoring is recommended. In the opposite scenario, if LDL cholesterol is lower than 100 mg/dL, a lipid profile is suggested every 3–5 years.

The first step of therapy consists of optimizing glucose control and medical nutrition therapy with saturated fat restricted to 7% of total calories and dietary cholesterol restricted to 200 mg/day, which is safe and does not interfere with normal growth and development. A 6-month trial of dietary counseling or lifestyle intervention involving exercise produces a significant improvement in lipid levels. For patients aged >10 year, the addition of statin is suggested if, despite medical nutrition therapy and lifestyle changes, the patient continues to have LDL cholesterol >160 mg/dL or LDL cholesterol >130 mg/dL and one or more cardiovascular disease risk factors (the American Heart Association categorizes children with type 1 diabetes in the highest tier for cardiovascular risk). The goal of therapy is an LDL cholesterol value <100 mg/dL [2].

Nephropathy

Diabetic nephropathy (such as albuminuria) most commonly occurs after the onset of puberty and after 5–10 years of

diabetes duration. Good glycemic and blood pressure control, mainly as the diabetes duration increases, is important to reduce the risk of nephropathy. Routine screening is important to ensure timely detection and treatment. It is recommended to estimate the glomerular filtration rate using equations for serum creatinine, height, age, and sex at baseline; this should be repeated as indicated based on clinical status. Treatment with an ACE inhibitor should be considered when an elevated urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio (>30 mg/g) is documented with at least two of three urine samples, and these should be obtained every 6 months [2].

Retinopathy

Diabetic retinopathy (such as nephropathy) most commonly occurs after the onset of puberty and after 5–10 years of diabetes duration; however, it has been reported in prepubertal children and after a diabetes duration of only 1–2 years [2]. There may exist an early subclinical retinopathy that can be detected through corneal confocal microscopy by the identification of corneal cellular pathology (lower epithelial and endothelial density and higher keratocyte density) and small nerve fiber pathology in young patients with type 1 diabetes [66].

It is recommended to refer patients to an eye care professional with expertise in diabetic retinopathy at the age ≥10 years or after puberty has started in patients with a diabetes duration of 3–5 years. After that, routine follow-up is recommended annually or less frequently on the advice of an eye care professional [2].

Neuropathy

Diabetic neuropathy rarely occurs in prepubertal children or after 1–2 years of diabetes. A foot inspection at each medical visit is important to educate youths regarding the importance of foot care. A comprehensive foot exam, including an assessment of symptoms of neuropathic pain, inspection, palpation of pulses, assessment of reflexes, and determination of proprioception, vibration, and monofilament sensation, should be performed annually at the start of puberty or at age ≥ 10 years [2].

Smoking

Smoking is a well-recognized cardiovascular disease risk, and in youths with diabetes, it is important to avoid additional cardiovascular disease risk factors. Smoking increases microvascular and macrovascular complications. For those reasons, smoking avoidance (including secondhand smoke) is important to prevent microvascular and macrovascular complications and should be part of routine diabetes care [2].

Quality of Life

Although the health-related quality of life of children/adolescents with type 1 diabetes may not be adversely affected compared to siblings without diabetes [67], there have been reports of burdens imposed on children and their parents by a diagnosis of type 1 diabetes mellitus, which affects their health-related quality of life [68]. In general, type 1 diabetes is associated with lower health-related quality of life, higher unemployment, and additional sick leave in adults [69]. Health-related quality of life is a critical diabetes outcome, yet discrepancies exist between youth and parent-proxy reports in Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory scores. Parents often underestimate their child's health-related quality of life, except in the youngest children. Although examining both reports is optimal, the youth report should be prioritized, particularly for young children and adolescents [70]. Although there may not be a correlation between metabolic control and health-related quality of life in children, lower numbers of hypo- and hyperglycemic episodes were associated with an increase in psychosocial health scores and physical health scores [68].

Type 2 Diabetes

Over the last three decades, the incidence and prevalence of type 2 diabetes has markedly increased in the pediatric population. Before the 1990s, type 2 diabetes was rare in children and adolescents in the United States. However, by 1994, type 2 diabetes represented up to 16% of new cases of diabetes in children in urban areas; after 1999, the range of new cases of type 2 diabetes was 8–45%, mainly among minority populations [71]. In the United States, the prevalence of type 2 diabetes in youths was 0.34 per 1000 in 2001 and had increased to 0.46 per 1000 in 2009, with significant increases in both sexes, all age groups and in white, Hispanic, and African American youths; however, there were no significant changes in Asian Pacific Islanders and American Indians. Adjusted for completeness of ascertainment, there was a 30.5% overall increase in type 2 diabetes [17]. The projections of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention assume a 2.3% annual increase in the prevalence of type 2 diabetes in people under 20 years of age, which will quadruple in 40 years [4].

The diagnosis of childhood type 2 diabetes is based on the presence of diabetes mellitus in a child who typically shows the following characteristics:

- Overweight or obese (body mass index ≥85th to 94th percentile and >95th percentile for age and gender, respectively)
- A strong family history of type 2 diabetes
- Residual insulin secretory capacity at diagnosis (reflected by normal or elevated insulin and C-peptide concentrations)
- Insidious onset of disease
- Demonstrated insulin resistance, including polycystic ovarian syndrome or acanthosis nigricans

- Lacking evidence of diabetic autoimmunity
- Higher likelihood of having hypertension and dyslipidemia

Although diabetic ketoacidosis is more frequent in type 1 diabetes, patients with type 2 diabetes may occasionally have this presentation [25].

Testing to detect prediabetes or type 2 diabetes should be considered in the following cases [4]:

- Children and adolescents age 10 years or at onset of puberty (if it occurs at a younger age)
- Children and adolescents who are overweight or obese (body mass index >85th percentile for age and sex, weight for height >85th percentile, or weight >120% of ideal for height)
- Children and adolescents who have two or more of the following additional risk factors for diabetes:
  - Family history of type 2 diabetes in first- or second-degree relatives
  - Native American, African American, Latino, Asian American, or Pacific Islander
  - Signs of insulin resistance or conditions associated with insulin resistance (acanthosis nigricans, hypertension, dyslipidemia, polycystic ovary syndrome, or small-for-gestational-age birth weight)
- Maternal history of diabetes or gestational diabetes mellitus during the child's gestation

Pathophysiology of Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

Insulin resistance in the muscle, fat, and liver with progressive beta cell failure and ongoing loss of insulin secretion in response to glucose characterizes type 2 diabetes mellitus. The following risk factors associated with this disorder can affect individuals beginning in childhood.

- *Obesity and insulin resistance*. Insulin resistance produces hyperinsulinism, and when compensation by increased insulin secretion fails, glucose intolerance and type 2 diabetes mellitus result [72].
- *Intrauterine environment*. There is an association between poor intrauterine growth and the subsequent development of metabolic syndrome and type 2 diabetes. The effects of poor nutrition in early life produce changes in glucose-insulin metabolism, such as reduced capacity for insulin secretion and insulin resistance [73].
- *Exposition to gestational diabetes*. Maternal gestational diabetes is independently associated with a subsequent risk of type 2 diabetes in offspring in the first 30 years of life; the risk is approximately threefold higher than among offspring of mothers without diabetes [74].
- *Ethnicity*. Ethnic differences in diabetes prevalence persist, even after adjusting for lifestyle and other risk factors. Diabetes mellitus is more likely (relative to Caucasians) among Asians, Native Americans, and Hispanics [75]. In 2009, the prevalence of type 2 diabetes was 1.20 per 1000 among American Indian youths (95% CI, 0.96–1.51); 1.06 per 1000 among black youths (95% CI, 0.93–1.22); 0.79 per 1000 among Hispanic youths (95% CI, 0.70–0.88); and 0.17 per 1000 among white youths (95% CI, 0.15–0.20) [13].
- *Gender and puberty*. Puberty represents a state of insulin resistance. In this developmental stage, there is a 30% decrease in insulin sensitivity and a compensatory increase in insulin secretion. The mean age at diagnosis of type 2 diabetes in children is between 12 and 16 years, corresponding to the peak of adolescent growth. Girls are 1.5- to 3-fold more likely than boys to develop type 2 diabetes as children or adolescents [76].
- *Family history*. Between 74% and 100% of children with T2D have a first- or second-degree relative with type 2 diabetes. The lifetime risk is 40% if one parent is affected and 70% if both parents are affected [77].
- *Genetics*. The identification of the genetic factors involved in pediatric T2D has been a great challenge. In adults, several association studies have been conducted in which numerous SNPs have been shown to contribute to the risk of the disease; however, these SNPs currently account for only ~ 20% of heritability. In contrast, only a very small number of studies have involved pediatric patients, in whom the early onset of the disease may be due in part to greater genetic susceptibility, which makes them less tolerant of environmental aggressors. In this sense, a strong familial history of the disease suggests the involvement of genetic factors. We reported that the heritability of pediatric-onset T2D in Mexican youths was as high as 0.50 [78]. Likewise, the most important diabetes susceptibility variants reported to date are SNPs in the *TCF7L2* gene, which have strong associations with T2D in multiple ethnic populations [79]. Dabelea et al. identified *TCF7L2* variants associated with an increased risk of T2D among African-American youths [80]. Additionally, we recently reported an association between SNPs in *SLC16A11* (rs13342232) and pediatric-onset T2D in the Mexican population. Additionally, our research group reported that SNPs previously associated with obesity, such as *ADORA/rs903361*, *CADM2/rs13078807*, *GNPDA2/rs10938397*, *VEGFA/rs6905288*, and *FTO/rs9939609*, were associated with an increased risk of pediatric-onset type 2 diabetes in the Mexican population [81].

Treatment

The treatment goals for type 2 diabetes are the same as those for type 1 diabetes. In addition to blood glucose control, treatment must include attention to metabolic disorders, such as obesity, hypertension, and dyslipidemia [2]. Lifestyle changes should be initiated at the time of diagnosis of type 2 diabetes [82]. Education should focus on behavioral changes (diet and activity) as well as education on the administration of oral hypoglycemic agents and insulin as needed. The education and treatment team for a patient with type 2 diabetes should ideally include a nutritionist, psychologist and/or social worker, and exercise physiologist [3, 82].

The entire family will need education to understand the principles of the treatment of type 2 diabetes and the critical importance of lifestyle changes for the entire family to successfully manage a youth with type 2 diabetes [82].

Nutritional and Exercise Management

The aims of nutritional management must be focused on achieving normal glycemia and HbA1c, preventing further weight gain in patients with a body mass index in the 85th–95th percentile or achieving weight loss for those with a body mass index in the >95th percentile while maintaining normal linear growth [35, 36].

The entire family should be included in the education, since caregivers influence the child's food intake and physical activity. The dietary recommendations should target dietary modifications and should be culturally appropriate, sensitive to family resources, and provided to all caregivers [35, 36, 82]. The dietary modifications should include the following:

- Eliminating sugar-containing soft drinks and juices and substitution of water, diet soft drinks, and other calorie-free beverages, which can result in substantial weight loss [82, 83]. FDA-approved non-nutritive sweeteners can be used as they may help consumers limit their carbohydrate and energy intake as a tactic to manage blood glucose and/or weight [84].
- Increasing fruit and vegetable intake, which is known to confer several health benefits [82, 85].
- Reducing the use of processed, prepackaged, and convenience foods, as well as reducing the intake of foods made from refined, simple sugars, such as processed candy and high-fructose corn syrup [82].
- Control portions. Food and snacks should be served in a plate or bowl and not eaten directly from a box or can [82].
- Reducing meals eaten away from home [82].
- Changing staple foods from enriched white rice and white flour to brown rice and whole-grain items with a lower glycemic index to promote gradual and sustainable energy elevations with meals [82].
- Changing family diet behaviors: limiting the availability of high-fat, high-caloric-density foods and drinks in the home; teaching families to interpret nutrition fact labels; emphasizing healthy parenting practices related to diet and activity; encouraging positive reinforcement of all goals achieved and avoiding blame for failure; and promoting that meals should be eaten on schedule, in one place, preferably as a family unit, and with no other activities (such as television, computer, or studying) [82].

In addition to following the above recommendations, an individualized meal plan incorporating low-fat energy choices and carbohydrate management, as well as the substitution of high-glycemic-index foods for low-glycemic-index foods, may assist with the control of appetite, weight loss, blood glucose targets, and lipid levels [36].

Increasing daily physical activity to 60 min of moderate-to-vigorous exercise is an important component of treatment and a key strategy to increase energy expenditure; promoting physical activity as a family event, including daily efforts to be more physically active, such as using stairs instead of elevators, walking or bicycling to school and shopping, and doing house and yard work, can help promote adherence to the plan. Limiting sedentary behaviors, such as television viewing and computer use, to <2 h a day has been shown to be an effective way to increase daily physical activity and help maintain or achieve a healthy weight in children [36, 82].

Smoking and Tobacco Use

Cigarette smoking is damaging to all youths, but patients with diabetes are especially vulnerable to the negative health costs of smoking as a result of their compromised health status and disease, as well as treatment-related complications [82, 85].

Additional research is needed to develop and study the efficacy of interventions specifically targeting smoking among youths with type 2 diabetes within health-care settings. Patients should be asked at each visit if they smoke and counseled against beginning smoking. Youths who do smoke should be counseled on the importance of smoking cessation and provided resources for support [82].

Glycemic Monitoring

There is limited evidence that self-monitored blood glucose has an impact on glycemic control in individuals with type 2 diabetes. Blood glucose self-monitoring should be performed regularly, and the frequency should be individualized and include a combination of fasting and postprandial glucose measurements with a regularity based on the degree of

glycemic control and available resources. Once glycemic goals have been achieved, limited at-home testing is needed; at most, several fasting and postprandial values per week are satisfactory. If values consistently exceed the target range, more frequent testing should be recommended due to the possible need for a change in therapy. During acute illness or when symptoms of hyper- or hypoglycemia occur, patients should perform more frequent testing and be in contact with their diabetes care team for advice [82].

Pharmacological Treatment

The goal of initial treatment should be maintaining HbA1c <6.5%. This can usually be accomplished with metformin and basal insulin, alone or in combination. The particulars of the initial treatment modality are determined by symptoms, severity of hyperglycemia, and presence or absence of ketosis/ketoacidosis [57, 82].

Patients with ketosis, ketoacidosis, or a glucose concentration ≥250 mg/dL or HbA1c >9% require a period of insulin therapy until glycemia has been restored to near normal [2]. These patients require basal insulin (0.25–0.5 units/kg). Metformin can be started at the same time as insulin unless acidosis is present. Once the patient is stabilized, a transition to metformin monotherapy can be safely achieved over 2–6 weeks [82].

Metformin is currently the only oral hypoglycemic agent approved for use in children with type 2 diabetes; however, in the Treatment Options for Type 2 Diabetes in Adolescents and Youth (TODAY) study, metformin alone provided durable glycemic control. In type 2 diabetes, support for lifestyle modifications (balanced diet, maintaining a normal weight, and physical activity) is crucial [86].

Metformin monotherapy treatment should begin at 500 mg daily. The dose should be titrated by 500 mg once per week over 3–4 weeks to the maximal dose of 1000 mg twice daily. Blood glucose self-monitoring should be performed regularly and should be individualized based on the degree of glycemic control and available resources [82].

For children on oral treatment, it is recommended to discontinue metformin 24 h before major surgery (lasting at least 2 h) and on the day of surgery for minor surgery. Monitor blood glucose hourly. If it is greater than 180 mg/dl, treat with IV insulin (as for elective surgery) to normalize levels or with subcutaneous insulin if the patient is undergoing a minor procedure [57, 59].

If the patient fails to achieve a target HbA1c of <6.5% within 3–4 months on metformin monotherapy, the addition of basal insulin should be considered. If the target is not achieved on a combination of metformin and basal insulin (up to 1.2 units/kg), prandial insulin should be initiated and titrated to reach target HbA1c <6.5% [82].

There are other available pharmacologic agents, such as sulfonylurea and meglitinides, that may not be approved for use in children and adolescents in all countries. There are other pharmacologic agents that are widely used in adults but are not approved for use in children and adolescents, such as thiazolidinedione, α-glucosidase inhibitors, incretin mimetics, DPP-4 inhibitors, and SGLT-2 inhibitors. However, there are limited studies on the use of other pharmacologic agents, and they are generally not approved in this population [82].

Bariatric Surgery

Bariatric surgery has been shown to improve glucose metabolism in adolescents and adults with morbid obesity, which seems to be independent of weight loss, suggesting a direct hormonal effect [87].

The combination of severe obesity and the existence of comorbidities should be present to medically justify an operation to treat obesity [88]. In fact, the selection criteria for adolescent bariatric surgery include having a BMI ≥35 kg/m^2 and a severe comorbidity that has marked short-term effects on health, such as severe obstructive sleep apnea, type 2 diabetes mellitus, pseudotumor cerebri, or severe and progressive steatohepatitis [87]. Thus, metabolic surgery may be considered for adolescents with obesity-related type 2 diabetes [89]. Recent results have demonstrated the remission of type 2 diabetes and other comorbidities in nearly all youths with bariatric surgery [88–90], with attainment of HbA1c targets exceeding that observed with medical therapy [91].

All bariatric procedures have an effect on glucose metabolism. The mechanisms responsible for improved glycemic control after bariatric surgery are thought to be associated with decreased nutritional intake, weight loss, and/or hormonal changes. The metabolic abnormalities associated with type 2 diabetes mellitus can be reversed by bariatric surgery in the majority of patients [87]. Roux-en-Y gastric bypass, the traditional surgical procedure for weight loss, can have significant morbidity and mortality; however, newer techniques, which appear to be safer, include gastric banding and sleeve gastrectomy [82, 90].

Comorbidities

In children and adolescents with type 2 diabetes and insulin resistance, the presence of multiple cardiovascular risk factors is likely to be associated with earlier severe complications [36]; thus, regular follow-up is essential to monitor weight and glycemic control and to prevent and address the development of diabetes-related complications, such as hypertension and dyslipidemia [35, 36]. Hyperglycemia, dyslipidemia, and hypertension are contributors to the acceleration of atherosclerosis in type 2 diabetes, along with oxidative stress, glycation of vascular proteins, and abnormalities in platelet function and coagulation. Endothelial dysfunction

is an early sign of increased risk of cardiovascular disease, is predictive of cardiovascular events, and occurs in obese children relative to their level of obesity and degree of insulin resistance [82].

Blood pressure measurements, lipid panel, albumin excretion, and dilated eye examinations should be performed at diagnosis because comorbidities may already be present at the time of diagnosis in youths with type 2 diabetes. Then, the screening guidelines and treatment recommendations are similar to those for patients with type 1 diabetes. Additionally, patients with type 2 diabetes may need attention to other disorders, including polycystic ovary disease, obesity, sleep apnea, hepatitis steatosis, orthopedic disorders, and psychosocial concerns [2].

Obesity

Weight loss and exercise both improve insulin resistance and glycemia, so the assessment of body mass index and pattern of weight gain should be considered a routine part of monitoring in youths with type 2 diabetes since obesity has deleterious associations with morbidity independent of insulin resistance and diabetes [82].

Hypertension

Hypertension is associated with endothelial dysfunction, arterial stiffness, and increased risk of both cardiovascular and kidney disease [92]. According to the TODAY study [93], hypertension was present in 13.6% of 699 US youths at a median diabetes duration of 7 months. Higher rates have been reported in Australia, with 36% of youths with type 2 diabetes having hypertension within 1.3 years of diagnosis [94].

Several recommendations should be followed, such as measuring blood pressure with an appropriate-sized cuff at every clinic visit and normalizing the results for sex, height, and age. The initial treatment for blood pressure consistently ≥95th percentile at three visits should consist of efforts at weight loss, restriction of dietary salt, and increased physical activity [82]. If after 6 months blood pressure is still ≥95th percentile, the initiation of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor therapy should be considered to achieve blood pressure values that are less than the 90th percentile [95]. If the angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor is not tolerated due to adverse effects, an angiotensin receptor blocker is often used as a second-line therapy [82].

Nephropathy

Early diabetic kidney disease (microalbuminuria and renal hyperfiltration) is common in adolescents with type 2 diabetes and carries a higher risk of being progressive than adult onset. Diabetic kidney disease is characterized by a long period with no signs of disease. One challenge in preventing this disease is the difficulty in identifying it at an early stage [96].

Albuminuria should be evaluated at diagnosis and annually thereafter. The definition of microalbuminuria used by the American Diabetes Association is either an albumin-to-creatinine ratio (ACR) of 30–299 mg/g in a spot urine or timed overnight sample or 24-h collections with an albumin excretion rate of 20–199 mcg/min. An elevated value may be secondary to exercise, smoking, menstruation, or orthostasis [82].

Therefore, the diagnosis of persistent abnormal microalbumin excretion requires the documentation of two of three consecutive abnormal values obtained on different days [82].

Non-diabetes-related causes of renal disease should be excluded and consultation obtained, especially if macroalbuminuria (ACR >300 mg/g) is present [82].

Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors are the agents of choice because of their beneficial effects on preventing diabetic nephropathy, even if blood pressure is normal [76].

Albumin excretion should be monitored at 3–6-month intervals and therapy titrated to achieve as normal an albumin-to-creatinine ratio as possible [82].

Dyslipidemia

Hypertriglyceridemia and decreased HDL cholesterol are hallmarks of dyslipidemia, which is characteristic of insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents. Testing for dyslipidemia should be performed soon after diagnosis when blood glucose control has been achieved and annually thereafter. The target levels are as follows [82]:

- LDL cholesterol <100 mg/dL (2.6 mmol/L)
- HDL cholesterol >35 mg/dL (0.91 mmol/L)
- Triglycerides <150 mg/dL (1.7 mmol/L)

In the case of persistent dyslipidemia despite dietary and exercise counseling, pharmacotherapy may be initiated. Statin therapy has been shown to be as safe and effective in children as in adults and should be the first pharmacologic intervention beginning with the lowest available dose. Treatment with a fibric acid medication should also be considered when fasting triglycerides are >400–600 mg/dL [82].

Polycystic Ovarian Syndrome

Polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS) is increasingly recognized in adolescents as part of insulin resistance syndrome. Adolescents with PCOS had a ~40% reduction in insulin-stimulated glucose disposal compared to body composition-matched non-hyperandrogenic control subjects [97]. There are limited data on the precise prevalence of PCOS in youths with type 2 diabetes, but a study of 157 adult women of reproductive age with type 2 diabetes found a high PCOS prevalence of 8.3% [98].

Reducing insulin resistance with weight loss, exercise, and metformin improves ovarian function and increases

fertility. A menstrual history should be obtained from every girl with type 2 diabetes at diagnosis and at each visit. Girls receiving diabetes treatment should also be counseled that fertility may improve as a result, and proper birth control should be used to prevent pregnancy when desired [82].

Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease

Hepatic steatosis is present in 25–50% of adolescents with type 2 diabetes, and more advanced forms of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), such as nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), are increasingly common and associated with progression to cirrhosis, portal hypertension, and liver failure. NAFLD is now the most frequent cause of chronic liver disorders among obese youths [82].

Weight loss improves NAFLD, and metformin has been shown to improve liver enzymes and liver steatosis in insulin-resistant adolescents [99]. Type 2 diabetes therapies that improve insulin resistance appear to improve NAFLD and are therefore the standard approach to youths with both NAFLD and type 2 diabetes. However, due to the potential for progression to NASH, fibrosis, and cirrhosis, ongoing monitoring of liver enzymes is recommended in youths with type 2 diabetes. Referral for biopsy is recommended if enzymes remain markedly elevated despite weight loss and/or diabetes therapies [82].

Obstructive Sleep Apnea

Obstructive sleep apnea is common in obese youths, but its prevalence in pediatric type 2 diabetes has not yet been well documented. However, it is likely high, as the prevalence in adults is between 70% and 90% [100, 101]. Obstructive sleep apnea not only causes poor sleep quality and daytime sleepiness but has clinical consequences, including hypertension, left ventricular hypertrophy, and increased risk of renal and cardiovascular disease [82].

Youths with type 2 diabetes can be screened for obstructive sleep apnea by questioning them about snoring, sleep quality, apnea, morning headaches, daytime sleepiness, and enuresis. If symptoms are suggestive, a diagnosis is made through a formal sleep study and referral to a sleep specialist [82].

Depression

Youths with type 2 diabetes are at increased risk of major clinical depression, which is associated with poor adherence to diabetic treatment recommendations. Signs include depressed mood, markedly diminished interest or pleasure, increased or decreased appetite, insomnia or hypersomnia, psychomotor agitation or retardation, fatigue or loss of energy, feelings of worthlessness, and recurrent thoughts of death [82].

Youths with type 2 diabetes should be assessed for depression at diagnosis and periodically thereafter, particularly in those with frequent emergency department visits or poor glycemic control [82]. Patients identified as depressed should be referred to appropriate mental health-care providers experienced in addressing depression in youths [102].

Additional Health Problems Related to Obesity and Type 2 Diabetes

All patients with type 2 diabetes may have additional health problems related to the disease, such as orthopedic problems resulting in diminishing physical activity, pancreatitis, cholecystitis, pseudotumor cerebri, and deep tissue ulcers. These additional health problems should be screened at diagnosis and rescreened periodically [82].

Transition from Pediatric to Adult Care

The care and close supervision of diabetes management are increasingly shifted from parents and other adults to the youth with type 1 or type 2 diabetes over the course of childhood and adolescence [103]. The shift from pediatric to adult health care is inevitable, and there is no age when the transition is the smoothest. However, in some places, more than half of patients continued to receive pediatric care even after the age of 30 [104].

The transition often occurs abruptly as the older teen enters the next developmental stage, referred to as emerging adulthood, and a lack of consistent care may follow the transition in 30–40% of patients [57, 103]. The transition is a period associated with deterioration in glycemic control; increased occurrence of acute complications, psychosocial, emotional, and behavioral challenges; and the emergence of chronic complications [57, 103].

During this period, youths with type 1 diabetes often struggle with becoming fully responsible for their diabetes care; therefore, discussion about the transition during the several visits before it occurs may help prepare the patient [57, 103]. Health-care providers and families should begin to prepare youths with diabetes in early- to mid-adolescence and at least 1 year before the transition to adult health care, and both pediatricians and adult health-care providers should assist in providing support for the teen and emerging adult [103].

Concluding Remarks

- The pathophysiology and diagnostic criteria for diabetes mellitus are the same in children and adults.
- However, there are issues specific to early childhood diabetes: changes in insulin sensitivity due to growth and development, dependence on care, and neurological susceptibility to changes in glucose.
- The younger age of presentation of diabetes in pediatric patients causes a longer duration of exposure, with the

development of chronic complications at an early age; therefore, close surveillance is required.
- Children are not small adults; thus, treatment should be adapted to age-related physiological changes.
- The only pharmacological treatments approved for children and adolescents are insulin for type 1 diabetes mellitus, metformin, and insulin for type 2 diabetes mellitus and sulfonylureas for some types of neonatal diabetes.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. What is the most common type of diabetes mellitus in children and adolescents?
   (a) Type 1 diabetes mellitus
   (b) Type 2 diabetes mellitus
   (c) Monogenic diabetes
   (d) MODY
   (e) Neonatal diabetes
2. Which of the following clinical features makes one suspect monogenic diabetes?
   (a) Diabetic ketoacidosis in a school-age child
   (b) A random plasma glucose level ≥200 mg/dL in a child with obesity, acanthosis nigricans, and a family history of type 2 diabetes
   (c) Diabetes in the first 6 months of life, a strong family history of type 2 diabetes in a nonobese patient or low-risk ethnic group, and fasting glycemia of 100–150 mg/dl
   (d) Neonatal hyperglycemia in infants with elfin facies, low birth weight, and skin abnormalities
   (e) Diabetes mellitus associated with autoantibodies
3. What are the blood glucose and HbA1c goals for type 1 diabetes mellitus across all pediatric age groups?
   (a) Blood glucose before a meal 100–150 mg/dL and at bedtime/overnight 100–125 mg/dL and HbA1c <8.5% in infants, <8.0% in schoolchildren, and <7.5% in adolescents
   (b) Blood glucose before a meal 90–130 mg/dL and at bedtime/overnight 90–150 mg/dL and HbA1c <7.5% across all pediatric age groups
   (c) Blood glucose before a meal <100 mg/dL, after a meal <140 mg/dL, and at bedtime/overnight 100–125 mg/dL and HbA1c <6.5% across all pediatric age groups
   (d) The lowest HbA1c possible regardless of the degree of hypoglycemia
   (e) Blood glucose after a meal <200 mg/dL and HbA1c <8.5% across all pediatric age groups
4. In an oral glucose tolerance test, what is the glucose load used to diagnose diabetes mellitus in children and adolescents?
   (a) 1.75 g of anhydrous glucose per kg body weight, with a maximum of 50 g
   (b) 1.50 g of anhydrous glucose per kg body weight, with a maximum of 75 g
   (c) 1.50 g of anhydrous glucose per kg body weight, with a maximum of 50 g
   (d) 1.75 g of anhydrous glucose per kg body weight, with a maximum of 65 g
   (e) 1.75 g of anhydrous glucose per kg body weight, with a maximum of 75 g
5. Which of the following is the best treatment option for mild hypoglycemia in pediatric patients with type 1 diabetes?
   (a) Intravenous 10% glucose, 2–3 ml/kg
   (b) 10–15 grams of oral glucose using complex carbohydrates
   (c) 10–15 grams of oral glucose using simple carbohydrates
   (d) Glucagon 10–30 mcg/kg body weight
   (e) Switch off the insulin pump
6. Which treatment has been observed to be effective at preventing beta cell failure in the honeymoon phase?
   (a) Insulin
   (b) Glucagon
   (c) Metformin
   (d) Sulfonylureas
   (e) None of the above
7. Which of the following is true regarding insulin therapy in patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus?
   (a) The insulin requirements are the same across all age groups (0.5 units/kg/day).
   (b) Treatment regimens with two doses of insulin, multiple doses of insulin, or continuous infusion are equally effective.
   (c) To avoid hypoglycemia, the short-acting dose of insulin should consider the amount of food to be consumed without taking into account glucose levels.
   (d) The insulin pump is indicated only in patients for whom control with multiple injections is not achieved.
   (e) The insulin scheme should mimic natural production, with basal insulin to maintain glucose levels between meals and with rapid insulin to cover carbohydrates and normalize glucose.
8. How should the total energy intake be distributed in the management of type 1 diabetes mellitus?
   (a) Restricted energy intake with carbohydrate 50%, fat 30%, and protein 20%
   (b) Normal energy intake with a low-carbohydrate intake of 20% to prevent hyperglycemia
   (c) Normal energy intake with low fat to prevent ketosis

(d) Normal energy intake with carbohydrate 45–65%, fat 30–35%, and protein 15–25%
(e) Restricted energy intake with carbohydrate 60%, fat 25%, and protein 15%

9. Which pharmacologic treatment(s) is/are approved to treat type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents?
   (a) Sulfonylurea, metformin, and insulin
   (b) Thiazolidinedione and metformin
   (c) Same as adults
   (d) Insulin only
   (e) Metformin and insulin
10. Which of the following is true about follow-up for pediatric patients with type 2 diabetes?
   (a) Nutritional management must be focused on achieving normal glycemia regardless of the body mass index.
   (b) Moderate-to-vigorous exercise for 15–30 min twice per week is recommended.
   (c) The examination of comorbidities should be performed at diagnosis.
   (d) Patients with type 2 diabetes do not need to self-monitor their blood glucose levels.
   (e) The target levels for dyslipidemia are LDL-C < 200 mg/dL, HDL-C > 35 mg/dL, and triglycerides <150 mg/dL.

Correct Answers

1. (a) Type 1 diabetes mellitus

   Although type 2 diabetes is occurring more frequently in pediatric patients, and other forms, such as neonatal diabetes, are unique to this age range, type 1 diabetes is the predominant form in this age group.
2. (c) Diabetes in the first 6 months of life, a strong family history of type 2 diabetes in a non-obese patient or low-risk ethnic group, and fasting glycemia of 100-150 mg/dl.

   Monogenic diabetes is characterized by impaired insulin secretion by pancreatic beta cells caused by a single gene mutation. These forms of diabetes represent less than 5% of patients with diabetes and are characterized by onset generally before age 25 years, without clinical features of insulin resistance in type 2 diabetes and with negative associated autoantibodies.
3. (b) Blood glucose before a meal 90-130 mg/dL and at bedtime/overnight 90-150 mg/dL; and HbA1c <7.5% across all pediatric age groups.

   Glycemic control needs to be of a sufficient degree to prevent diabetes-related complications; however, strict glucose levels carry the risk of hypoglycemia. Although it was previously thought that young children were at risk of cognitive impairment after episodes of hypoglycemia, current data have not confirmed this notion. For that reason, current standards recommend lowering glucose to the safest possible level to prevent chronic complications.
4. (e) 1.75 g of anhydrous glucose per kg body weight, with a maximum of 75 g.

   The loading of anhydrous glucose in the oral glucose tolerance test must be calculated per body weight, with a maximum adult load of 75 g. In the absence of unequivocal hyperglycemia, results should be confirmed by repeat testing.
5. (c) 10 to 15 grams of oral glucose using simple carbohydrates

   Milder hypoglycemia should be treated with 10–15 grams of oral glucose in the form of simple carbohydrates, such as glucose tablets or sweetened fluids, such as juice. Subsequently, blood glucose should be retested in 10–15 min. In case of an inadequate response, treatment should be repeated and blood glucose retested in another 10–15 min to confirm that a glucose level of 100 mg/dL has been reached. In some circumstances, this should be followed by additional complex carbohydrates to prevent the recurrence of hypoglycemia. Intravenous glucose and glucagon are used in more severe hypoglycemia.
6. (a) Insulin

   Early small doses of insulin have been observed to be effective at preventing beta cell failure in slowly progressive type 1 diabetes, and they have been recommended for patients with positive antibodies. During the honeymoon phase, the insulin requirement decreases, and basal insulin 0.2–0.6 units/grams/day during this phase may preserve beta cell function.
7. (e) The insulin scheme should mimic natural production, with basal insulin to maintain glucose levels between meals and with rapid insulin to cover carbohydrates and normalize glucose.

   Insulin requirements vary from 0.25 to 1.5 units/kg/day, according to age and pubertal development. Intensive management with the use of multiple-dose insulin and/or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion in children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes mellitus showed a marked decline in HbA1c and chronic complications. The primary goal of the treatment is to mimic natural insulin secretion, with basal insulin to maintain near-normal blood glucose levels between meals and short-acting insulin to cover the carbohydrates consumed during meals and normalize blood glucose levels. Insulin pumps have become increasingly available to patients with diabetes, and experts highlight their use as the chosen treatment option for many people across all age groups living with type 1 diabetes.
8. (d) Normal energy intake with carbohydrate 45-65%, fat 30-35%, and protein 15-25%.

Energy intake should be sufficient to achieve optimal growth and maintain an ideal body weight. The total daily energy intake should be distributed as follows: carbohydrate 45–65%, fat 30–35%, and protein 15–25%. Carbohydrates should not be restricted, as they are essential for growth.

9. (e) Metformin and insulin

Metformin is the only oral hypoglycemic agent approved for daily use in children with type 2 diabetes. Metformin monotherapy treatment should begin at 500 mg daily. The dose should be titrated by 500 mg once per week over 3–4 weeks to the maximal dose of 1000 mg twice daily. If the patient fails to achieve a target HbA1c of <6.5% within 3–4 months on metformin monotherapy, the addition of basal insulin should be considered.

10. (c) The examination of comorbidities should be performed at diagnosis.

Nutritional management must be focused on achieving normal glycemia and HbA1c levels, preventing further weight gain or achieving weight loss while maintaining normal linear growth. Patients should increase their daily physical activity to 60 min of moderate-to-vigorous exercise. Blood pressure measurements, lipid panel, albumin excretion, and dilated eye examinations should be performed at diagnosis because comorbidities may already be present at that time. Blood glucose self-monitoring should be performed regularly. The target levels for dyslipidemia are LDL-C <100 mg/dL, HDL-C >35 mg/dL, and triglycerides <150 mg/dL.

References

1. Menke A, Casagrande S, Cowie CC. Prevalence of diabetes in adolescents aged 12 to 19 years in the United States, 2005-2014. JAMA. 2016;316(3):344–5.
2. American Diabetes Association. 11. Children and Adolescents. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(Suppl 1):S86–93.
3. Springer SC, Silverstein J, Copeland K, Moore KR, Prazar GE, Raymer T, et al. Management of type 2 diabetes mellitus in children and adolescents. Pediatrics. 2013;131(2):e648–64.
4. American Diabetes Association. 2. Classification and diagnosis of diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(Suppl 1):S13–S22
5. Nowicka P, Santoro N, Liu H, Lartaud D, Shaw MM, Goldberg R, et al. Utility of hemoglobin A(1c) for diagnosing prediabetes and diabetes in obese children and adolescents. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(6):1306–11.
6. Buse JB, Kaufman FR, Linder B, Hirst K, El Ghormli L, Willi S. Diabetes screening with hemoglobin A(1c) versus fasting plasma glucose in a multiethnic middle-school cohort. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(2):429–35.
7. Rubio-Cabezas O, Hattersley AT, Njolstad PR, Mlynarski W, Ellard S, White N, et al. ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014. The diagnosis and management of monogenic diabetes in children and adolescents. Pediatr Diabetes. 2014;15(Suppl 20):47–64.
8. Polak M, Cave H. Neonatal diabetes mellitus: a disease linked to multiple mechanisms. Orphanet J Rare Dis. 2007;2:12.
9. Ashcroft FM, Puljung MC, Vedovato N. Neonatal diabetes and the KATP channel: from mutation to therapy. Trends Endocrinol Metab. 2017;28:377. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tem.2017.02.003.
10. Greeley SA, Naylor RN, Philipson LH, Bell GI. Neonatal diabetes: an expanding list of genes allows for improved diagnosis and treatment. Curr Diab Rep. 2011;11(6):519–32.
11. Maassen JA, T Hart LM, Van Essen E, Heine RJ, Nijpels G, Jahangir Tafrechi RS, et al. Mitochondrial diabetes: molecular mechanisms and clinical presentation. Diabetes. 2004;53(1):S103–9.
12. Shields BM, Hicks S, Shepherd MH, Colclough K, Hattersley AT, Ellard S. Maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY): how many cases are we missing? Diabetologia. 2010;53(12):2504–8.
13. Ergun-Longmire B, Maclaren NK. De Groot LJ, Chrousos G, Dungan K, et al., editors. Management of type-1 and type-2 diabetes mellitus in children. South Dartmouth: MDTextcom, Inc; 2000- Last Update: December 9, 2013.
14. Nijim Y, Awni Y, Adawi A, Bowirrat A. Classic case report of Donohue Syndrome (Leprechaunism; OMIM *246200): the impact of consanguineous mating. Medicine (Baltimore). 2016;95(6):e710.
15. Resmini E, Minuto F, Colao A, Ferone D. Secondary diabetes associated with principal endocrinopathies: the impact of new treatment modalities. Acta Diabetol. 2009;46(2):85–95.
16. Fathallah N, Slim R, Larif S, Hmouda H, Ben Salem C. Drug-induced hyperglycaemia and diabetes. Drug Saf. 2015;38(12):1153–68.
17. Dabelea D, Mayer-Davis EJ, Saydah S, Imperatore G, Linder B, Divers J, et al. Prevalence of type 1 and type 2 diabetes among children and adolescents from 2001 to 2009. JAMA. 2014;311(17):1778–86.
18. Roche EF, McKenna AM, Ryder KJ, Brennan AA, O'Regan M, Hoey HM. Is the incidence of type 1 diabetes in children and adolescents stabilising? The first 6 years of a National Register. Eur J Pediatr. 2016;175(12):1913–9.
19. DIAMOND Project Group. Incidence and trends of childhood type 1 diabetes worldwide 1990-1999. Diabet Med. 2006;23(8):857–66.
20. Butalia S, Kaplan GG, Khokhar B, Rabi DM. Environmental risk factors and type 1 diabetes: past, present, and future. Can J Diabetes. 2016;40i(6):586–93.
21. Pociot F, Lernmark A. Genetic risk factors for type 1 diabetes. Lancet. 2016;387(10035):2331–9.
22. Giannopoulou EZ, Winkler C, Chmiel R, Matzke C, Scholz M, Beyerlein A, et al. Islet autoantibody phenotypes and incidence in children at increased risk for type 1 diabetes. Diabetologia. 2015;58(10):2317–23.
23. Ziegler AG, Rewers M, Simell O, Simell T, Lempainen J, Steck A, et al. Seroconversion to multiple islet autoantibodies and risk of progression to diabetes in children. JAMA. 2013;309(23):2473–9.
24. Rewers M, Ludvigsson J. Environmental risk factors for type 1 diabetes. Lancet. 2016;387(10035):2340–8.
25. Dabelea D, Rewers A, Stafford JM, Standiford DA, Lawrence JM, Saydah S, et al. Trends in the prevalence of ketoacidosis at diabetes diagnosis: the SEARCH for diabetes in youth study. Pediatrics. 2014;133(4):e938–45.
26. Usher-Smith JA, Thompson M, Ercole A, Walter FM. Variation between countries in the frequency of diabetic ketoacidosis at first presentation of type 1 diabetes in children: a systematic review. Diabetologia. 2012;55(11):2878–94.
27. Dashti AS, Alaei MR, Musavi Z, Faramarzi R, Mansouri F, Nasimfar A. Serological response to vaccines in children with diabetes. Roum Arch Microbiol Immunol. 2015;74(3–4):112–7.
28. American Diabetes Association. 5. Glycemic Targets. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(Suppl 1):S39–46.

29. Ly TT, Maahs DM, Rewers A, Dunger D, Oduwole A, Jones TW. ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014. Assessment and management of hypoglycemia in children and adolescents with diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes. 2014;15(Suppl 20):180–92.
30. Beck JK, Cogen FR. Outpatient management of pediatric type 1 diabetes. J Pediatr Pharmacol Ther. 2015;20(5):344–57.
31. Phillips A. Advances in infusion sets and insulin pumps in diabetes care. Br J Community Nurs. 2016;21(3):124–7.
32. Haviland N, Walsh J, Roberts R, Bailey TS. Update on clinical utility of continuous glucose monitoring in type 1 diabetes. Curr Diab Rep. 2016;16(11):115.
33. Downie E, Craig ME, Hing S, Cusumano J, Chan AK, Donaghue KC. Continued reduction in the prevalence of retinopathy in adolescents with type 1 diabetes: role of insulin therapy and glycemic control. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(11):2368–73.
34. Zabeen B, Craig ME, Virk SA, Pryke A, Chan AK, Cho YH, et al. Insulin pump therapy is associated with lower rates of retinopathy and peripheral nerve abnormality. PLoS One. 2016;11(4):e0153033.
35. Smart C. Nutritional management of diabetes in childhood. In: Koletzko B, Bhatia J, Bhutta ZA, Cooper P, Makrides M, Uauy R, et al., editors. Pediatric nutrition in practice. 2nd ed: Switzerland: Karger; 2015.
36. Smart CE, Annan F, Bruno LPC, Higgins LA, Acerini CL. ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014 Compendium. Nutritional management in children and adolescents with diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes. 2014;15(S20):135–53.
37. Nations FaAOotU, Organization WH, University UN. Energy and protein requirements. Estimates of energy and protein requirements of adults and children. Geneva: World Health Organization; 1985.
38. Organization WH, Nations FaAOotU. Vitamin and mineral requirements in human nutrition. 2nd ed. Hong Kong: World Health Organization; 2004.
39. Riddell MC, Gallen IW, Smart CE, Taplin CE, Adolfsson P, Lumb AN, et al. Exercise management in type 1 diabetes: a consensus statement. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1016/S2213-8587(17)30014-1.
40. Pivovarov JA, Taplin CE, Riddell MC. Current perspectives on physical activity and exercise for youth with diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes. 2015;16(4):242–55. https://doi.org/10.1111/pedi.12272.
41. Tremblay MS, Warburton DE, Janssen I, Paterson DH, Latimer AE, Rhodes RE, et al. New Canadian physical activity guidelines. Appl Physiol Nutr Metab. 2011;36(1):36–46; 7-58.
42. Tremblay MS, Leblanc AG, Carson V, Choquette L, Connor Gorber S, Dillman C, et al. Canadian physical activity guidelines for the early years (aged 0-4 years). Appl Physiol Nutr Metab. 2012;37(2):345–69.
43. Tremblay MS, Carson V, Chaput JP, Connor Gorber S, Dinh T, Duggan M, et al. Canadian 24-hour movement guidelines for children and youth: an integration of physical activity, sedentary behaviour, and sleep. Appl Physiol Nutr Metab. 2016;41(6 Suppl 3):S311–27.
44. Brown RJ, Rother KI. Effects of beta-cell rest on beta-cell function: a review of clinical and preclinical data. Pediatric Diabetes. 2008;9(3pt2):14–22.
45. Herold KC, Gitelman SE, Masharani U, Hagopian W, Bisikirska B, Donaldson D, et al. A Single Course of Anti-CD3 Monoclonal Antibody hOKT3Î³1(Ala-Ala) Results in Improvement in C-Peptide Responses and Clinical Parameters for at Least 2 Years after Onset of Type 1 Diabetes. Diabetes. 2005;54(6):1763–9.
46. Raz I, Elias D, Avron A, Tamir M, Metzger M, Cohen IR. β-cell function in new-onset type 1 diabetes and immunomodulation with a heat-shock protein peptide (DiaPep277): a randomised, double-blind, phase II trial. The Lancet. 2001;358(9295):1749–53. https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0140673601068015?via%3Dihub.
47. Ryan EA, Imes S, Wallace C. Short-term intensive insulin therapy in newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2004;27(5):1028–32.
48. Agardh C-D, Cilio CM, Lethagen ÁL, Lynch K, Leslie RDG, Palmér M, et al. Clinical evidence for the safety of GAD65 immunomodulation in adult-onset autoimmune diabetes. J Diabetes Complications. 2005;19(4):238–46. https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1056872705000036?via%3Dihub.
49. Alleva DG, Gaur A, Jin L, Wegmann D, Gottlieb PA, Pahuja A, et al. Immunological characterization and therapeutic activity of an altered-peptide ligand, NBI-6024, based on the immunodominant type 1 diabetes autoantigen insulin B-Chain (9–23) peptide. Diabetes. 2002;51(7):2126–34.
50. Reiband HK, Schmidt S, Ranjan A, Holst JJ, Madsbad S, Norgaard K. Dual-hormone treatment with insulin and glucagon in patients with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2015;31(7):672–9.
51. Davidson JA, Holland WL, Roth MG, Wang MY, Lee Y, Yu X, et al. Glucagon therapeutics: dawn of a new era for diabetes care. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2016;32(7):660–5.
52. Xiang H, Yang C, Xiang T, Wang Z, Ge X, Li F, et al. Residual beta-cell function predicts clinical response after autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Stem Cells Transl Med. 2016;5(5):651–7.
53. Pellegrini S, Cantarelli E, Sordi V, Nano R, Piemonti L. The state of the art of islet transplantation and cell therapy in type 1 diabetes. Acta Diabetol. 2016;53(5):683–91.
54. Al Khalifah RA, Alnhdi A, Alghar H, Alanazi M, Florez ID. The effect of adding metformin to insulin therapy for type 1 diabetes mellitus children: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Pediatr Diabetes. 2017;10 https://doi.org/10.1111/pedi.12493.
55. Juvenile Diabetes Research Foundation Continuous Glucose Monitoring Study Group. Prolonged nocturnal hypoglycemia is common during 12 months of continuous glucose monitoring in children and adults with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2010;33(5):1004–8.
56. Seaquist ER, Anderson J, Childs B, Cryer P, Dagogo-Jack S, Fish L, et al. Hypoglycemia and diabetes: a report of a workgroup of the American Diabetes Association and the Endocrine Society. Diabetes Care. 2013;36(5):1384–95.
57. International Diabetes Federation, International Society for Pediatric and Adolescent Diabetes. Global IDF/ISPAD guideline for diabetes in childhood and adolescence. Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2011. Available from: https://www.idf.org/sites/default/files/Diabetes-in-Childhood-and-Adolescense-Guidelines.pdf.
58. Brink S, Joel D, Laffel L, Lee WWR, Olsen B, Phelan H, et al. ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014. Sick day management in children and adolescents with diabetes. Pediatr Diabetes. 2014;15(S20):193–202.
59. Rhodes ET, Gong C, Edge JA, Wolfsdorf JI, Hanas R. ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014. Management of children and adolescents with diabetes requiring surgery. Pediatr Diabetes. 2014;15(S20):224–31.
60. Wolfsdorf JI, Allgrove J, Craig M, Edge JA, Glaser N, Jain V, et al. ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014 Compendium. Diabetic ketoacidosis and hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state. Pediatr Diabetes. 2014;15(Suppl. 20):154–79.
61. Hagger V, Trawley S, Hendrieckx C, Browne JL, Cameron F, Pouwer F, et al. Diabetes MILES Youth-Australia: methods and sample characteristics of a national survey of the psychological aspects of living with type 1 diabetes in Australian youth and their parents. BMC Psychol. 2016;4(1):42.
62. Sztein DM, Lane WG. Examination of the comorbidity of mental illness and somatic conditions in hospitalized children in the United States using the kids' inpatient database, 2009. Hosp Pediatr. 2016;6(3):126–34.

63. American Diabetes Association. 3. Foundations of care and comprehensive medical evaluation. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(Suppl1):S23–35.
64. Hillard PJ. Prevention and management of pregnancy in adolescents with endocrine disorders. Adolesc Med State Art Rev. 2015;26(2):382–92.
65. Bradley TJ, Slorach C, Mahmud FH, Dunger DB, Deanfield J, Deda L, et al. Early changes in cardiovascular structure and function in adolescents with type 1 diabetes. Cardiovasc Diabetol. 2016;15(10):31.
66. Szalai E, Deak E, Modis L Jr, Nemeth G, Berta A, Nagy A, et al. Early corneal cellular and nerve fiber pathology in young patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus identified using corneal confocal microscopy. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci. 2016;57(3):853–8.
67. Mills SA, Hofman PL, Jiang Y, Anderson YC. Health-related quality of life of Taranaki children with Type 1 Diabetes. N Z Med J. 2015;128(1427):25–32.
68. Caferoglu Z, Inanc N, Hatipoglu N, Kurtoglu S. Health-related quality of life and metabolic control in children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes mellitus. J Clin Res Pediatr Endocrinol. 2016;8(1):67–73.
69. Nielsen HB, Ovesen LL, Mortensen LH, Lau CJ, Joensen LE. Type 1 diabetes, quality of life, occupational status and education level - A comparative population-based study. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2016;121:62–8.
70. Yi-Frazier JP, Hilliard ME, Fino NF, Naughton MJ, Liese AD, Hockett CW, et al. Whose quality of life is it anyway? Discrepancies between youth and parent health-related quality of life ratings in type 1 and type 2 diabetes. Qual Life Res. 2016;25(5):1113–21.
71. Pinhas-Hamiel O, Zeitler P. Clinical presentation and treatment of type 2 diabetes in children. Pediatr Diabetes. 2007;8(Suppl 9):16–27.
72. Druet C, Tubiana-Rufi N, Chevenne D, Rigal O, Polak M, Levy-Marchal C. Characterization of insulin secretion and resistance in type 2 diabetes of adolescents. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2006;91(2):401–4.
73. Hales CN, Barker DJ. The thrifty phenotype hypothesis. Br Med Bull. 2001;60:5–20.
74. Sellers EA, Dean HJ, Shafer LA, Martens PJ, Phillips-Beck W, Heaman M, et al. Exposure to Gestational Diabetes Mellitus: Impact on the Development of Early-Onset Type 2 Diabetes in Canadian First Nation and Non-First Nation Offspring. Diabetes Care. 2016;39:2240–6.
75. Rosenbaum M, Fennoy I, Accacha S, Altshuler L, Carey DE, Holleran S, et al. Racial/ethnic differences in clinical and biochemical type 2 diabetes mellitus risk factors in children. Obesity (Silver Spring). 2013;21(10):2081–90.
76. American Diabetes Association. Type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents. Diabetes Care. 2000;23(3):381–9.
77. Valdez R, Greenlund KJ, Khoury MJ, Yoon PW. Is family history a useful tool for detecting children at risk for diabetes and cardiovascular diseases? A public health perspective. Pediatrics. 2007;120(2):S78–86.
78. Miranda-Lora AL, Vilchis-Gil J, Molina-Díaz M, Flores-Huerta S, Klünder-Klünder M. Heritability, parental transmission and environment correlation of pediatric-onset type 2 diabetes mellitus and metabolic syndrome-related traits. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2017;126(4):151–9.
79. Peng S, Zhu Y, Lü B, Xu F, Li X, Lai M. TCF7L2 gene polymorphisms and type 2 diabetes risk: a comprehensive and updated meta-analysis involving 121 174 subjects. Mutagenesis. 2013;28(1):25–37.
80. Dabelea D, Dolan LM, D'Agostino R Jr, Hernandez AM, McAteer JB, Hamman RF, et al. Association testing of TCF7L2 polymorphisms with type 2 diabetes in multi-ethnic youth. Diabetologia. 2011;54(3):535–9.
81. Miranda-Lora AL, Cruz M, Aguirre-Hernández J, Molina-Díaz M, Gutiérrez J, Flores-Huerta S, et al. Exploring single nucleotide polymorphisms previously related to obesity and metabolic traits in pediatric-onset type 2 diabetes. Acta Diabetol. 2017;54(7):653–62.
82. Zeitler P, Fu J, Tandon N, Nadeau K, Urakami T, Bartlett T, et al. ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014 Compendium. Type 2 diabetes in the child and adolescent. Pediatr Diabetes. 2014;15(Suppl. 20):26–46.
83. Barlow SE. Expert committee recommendations regarding the prevention, assessment, and treatment of child and adolescent overweight and obesity: summary report. Pediatrics. 2007;120(Supplement 4):S164–S92.
84. Fitch C, Keim KS. Position of the academy of nutrition and dietetics: use of nutritive and nonnutritive sweeteners. J Acad Nutr Diet. 2012;112(5):739–58.
85. Mays D, Streisand R, Walker LR, Prokhorov AV, Tercyak KP. Cigarette smoking among adolescents with type 1 diabetes: strategies for behavioral prevention and intervention. J Diabetes Complications. 2012;26(2):148–53.
86. Kelsey MM, Geffner ME, Guandalini C, Pyle L, Tamborlane WV, Zeitler PS, et al. Presentation and effectiveness of early treatment of type 2 diabetes in youth: lessons from the TODAY study. Pediatr Diabetes. 2016;17(3):212–21.
87. Brandt ML, Harmon CM, Helmrath MA, Inge TH, McKay SV, Michalsky MP. Morbid obesity in pediatric diabetes mellitus: surgical options and outcomes. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2010;6(11):637–45.
88. Kelly AS, Barlow SE, Rao G, Inge TH, Hayman LL, Steinberger J, et al. Severe Obesity in Children and Adolescents: Identification, Associated Health Risks, and Treatment Approaches. A Scientific Statement From the American Heart Association. Circulation. 2013;128(15):1689–712.
89. Inge TH, Zeller M, García VF, Daniels SR. Surgical approach to adolescent obesity. Adolesc Med Clin. 2004;15:429–53.
90. Bondada S, Jen HC, DeUgarte DA. Outcomes of bariatric surgery in adolescents. Curr Opin Pediatr. 2011;23(5):552–6.
91. Michalsky MP, Inge TH, Teich S, Eneli I, Miller R, Brandt ML, et al. Adolescent bariatric surgery program characteristics: The Teen Longitudinal Assessment of Bariatric Surgery (Teen-LABS) study experience. Semin Pediatr Surg. 2014;23(1):5–10.
92. Williams CL, Hayman LL, Daniels SR, Robinson TN, Steinberger J, Paridon S, et al. Cardiovascular health in childhood. A statement for health professionals from the Committee on Atherosclerosis, Hypertension, and Obesity in the Young (AHOY) of the Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, American Heart Association. Circulation. 2002;106(1):143–60.
93. Copeland KC, Zeitler P, Geffner M, Guandalini C, Higgins J, Hirst K, et al. Characteristics of adolescents and youth with recent-onset type 2 diabetes: the TODAY cohort at baseline. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol. 2011;96(1):159–67.
94. Eppens MC, Craig ME, Cusumano J, Hing S, Chan AKF, Howard NJ, et al. Prevalence of diabetes complications in adolescents with type 2 compared with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2006;29(6):1300–6.
95. Batisky DL. What is the optimal first-line agent in children requiring antihypertensive medication? Curr Hypertens Rep. 2012;14(6):603–7.
96. Bjornstad P, Cherney DZ, Maahs DM, Nadeau KJ. Diabetic kidney disease in adolescents with type 2 diabetes: new insights and potential therapies. Curr Diab Rep. 2016;16(2):11.
97. Norman RJ, Dewailly D, Legro RS, Hickey TE. Polycystic ovary syndrome. Lancet. 2007;370(9588):685–97.

98. Amini M, Horri N, Farmani M, Haghighi S, Sattari G, Pornaghshband Z, et al. Prevalence of polycystic ovary syndrome in reproductive-aged women with type 2 diabetes. Gynecol Endocrinol. 2008;24(8):423–7.
99. Nadeau KJ, Zeitler PS, Bauer TA, Brown MS, Dorosz JL, Draznin B, et al. Insulin resistance in adolescents with type 2 diabetes is associated with impaired exercise capacity. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol. 2009;94(10):3687–95.
100. Rice TB, Foster GD, Sanders MH, Unruh M, Reboussin D, Kuna ST, et al. The relationship between obstructive sleep apnea and self-reported stroke or coronary heart disease in overweight and obese adults with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Sleep. 2012;35(9):1293–8.
101. Foster GD, Sanders MH, Millman R, Zammit G, Borradaile KE, Newman AB, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea among obese patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2009;32(6):1017–9.
102. Walders-Abramson N. Depression and quality of life in youth-onset type 2 diabetes mellitus. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14(1):449.
103. American Diabetes Association. 8. Pharmacologic approaches to glycemic treatment. Diabetes Care. 2017;40(Suppl 1):S64–74.
104. Onda Y, Nishimura R, Morimoto A, Sano H, Utsunomiya K, Tajima N. Age at transition from pediatric to adult care has no relationship with mortality for childhood-onset type 1 diabetes in Japan: Diabetes Epidemiology Research International (DERI) Mortality Study. PLoS One. 2016;11i(3):e0150720.

Suggested Reading

American Diabetes Association. 12. Children and Adolescents. Diabetes Care. 40(Supplement 1):S105–13. In this document, the American Diabetes Association provides the components of diabetes care for children and adolescents as well as a system to grade the quality of scientific evidence supporting recommendations for health care in pediatric patients.

ISPAD Clinical Practice Consensus Guidelines 2014. https://www.ispad.org/?page=ispadclinicalpract. This compendium of consensus guidelines contains updates about significant advances in scientific knowledge and clinical care for pediatric and adolescent patients with diabetes mellitus.

Pregnancy: Pregestational and Gestational Management

61

María Isabel García-Argueta
and Maricela González-Espejel

Introduction

Gestational diabetes (GD) is defined as an alteration in carbohydrate metabolism diagnosed for the first time in the second or third trimester of gestation, it being clear that the diagnosis of same during the first trimester indicates preexisting type 1 or 2 diabetes. The growing index of obesity is a global problem, where the main factors that unleash it are bad eating habits and sedentary lifestyle. Obesity in pregnancy is a risk factor for developing diabetes, which goes hand in hand with an increased maternal and fetal risk and hypertensive disorders. Women of a reproductive age are not the exception in regard to obesity; the US National Health and Nutrition Survey (1999–2008) reveals that more than one-third of the women of reproductive age are obese, and 7.6% of these women are extremely obese, with body mass indices (BMIs) equal or greater than 40; the percentage of pregnant women with obesity is estimated between 18% and 38% [1, 2]. In regard to Mexico, we have one of the highest prevalence of overweight, obesity, and diabetes in the world. Studies based on the Encuesta Nacional de Salud y Nutrición (ENSANUT, National Health and Nutrition Survey) 2012 show that in the last decades, an increase has been observed in body mass and waist perimeter in the population, with a higher prevalence among young Mexican women of reproductive age, compared with other populations [3], and these changes evidently have attention-getting metabolic repercussions, above all because the female reproductive population is implicated. In consequence, pregnancy-associated diabetes is more and more frequent, and it is estimated that it significantly complicates around 1–16% of all births worldwide, depending on the population studied. The prevalence of GD has a variation directly proportional to the prevalence of type 1 diabetes (T1D) and type 2 diabetes (T2D), depending on the population under study. Other estimates indicate that 6–7% of pregnancies are complicated by this disease and that approximately 90% of the cases are represented by women with T1D and T2D. It has also been established that the highest prevalence is found among Hispanics, Afro-Americans, and natives of America, Asia, and the Pacific islands [4]. Suffering GD significantly increases the risk of adverse results of the pregnancy compared with normal pregnancy: congenital malformations in 5% against 2% in the general population, perinatal mortality in 2.7% against 0.72%, premature birth in 25% against 6%, and fetal macrosomia in 54% against 10% [5]. This pregnancy complication is a growing problem for public health, with genetic, environmental, and social determinants, but obesity has a major importance as a risk factor. It exists the hypothesis that the fetal overnutrition during maternal exposure GD is associated with the increased overall abdominal adiposity, and a more central fat distribution pattern in 6- to 13-year-old children from a multiethnic population [6]. Therefore, the combination of diabetes and pregnancy is not a desirable situation due to the possible complications it incurs, so that it is necessary to detect and treat it in a timely fashion. Recent evidence suggests that there is an intrauterine programming related with hyperglycemia during pregnancy, which could explain the increased risk of metabolic alterations, obesity, and diabetes among the offspring of mothers who had a pregnancy associated with diabetes [7]. Expertise in this subject on the part of health personnel who care of pregnant women is primordial and is fundamental for reducing maternal and fetal morbimortality in the pregnant diabetic. It is of vital importance to identify, from the first level of care, patients with risk factors and to implement strategies that include preconception and dietary counseling, promoting lifestyle changes that combat a sedentary lifestyle and timely medical intervention with the various alternatives available [8]. Luckily the current panorama for the gestating individual has improved dramatically, since in the past, a pregnant woman with diabetes was inconceivable. The discovery of insulin in 1921 by the investigators Banting, MacLeod, and Bets from the University of Toronto radically changed the prognosis for

M. I. García-Argueta (✉) · M. González-Espejel
72 Regional Hospital, Mexican Institute of Social Services, Mexico City, Mexico

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_61

those ill with diabetes, as well as for gestating diabetes. Likewise, the use of glyburide and metformin during pregnancy, accepted in recent years, is one more tool in the treatment of pregestational and gestational diabetes. However, the pregnant woman with diabetes is exposed to high obstetric risk and elevated perinatal morbimortality, so it has not ceased to be a health problem.

Classification and Diagnosis

For many years, GD has been defined as an alteration in glucose metabolism, first recognized during pregnancy. In the 2016 publication of the American Diabetes Association (ADA), classification is described in four general categories of diabetes [9, 10]. This new classification, in contrast to the old classification by White, has greater clinical usefulness, since it is concrete, easy to remember, and applicable to diabetes during pregnancy.

1. Type 1 diabetes (T1D) which is secondary to the destruction of the beta cells of the pancreas and in general leads to absolute insulin deficiency
2. Type 2 diabetes (T2D) due to a progressive loss of insulin secretion
3. GD, which is diabetes diagnosed in the second or third trimester of pregnancy and which is clearly not a previously manifested diabetes
4. Specific diabetes, which is due to other causes, such as monogenic diabetes syndrome (such as the neonatal appearance and that in young adults – MODY), diseases of the exocrine pancreas (like cystic fibrosis), and diabetes induced by chemical products (use of glucocorticoids after transplant or drugs for treating HIV/AIDS)

In this category, it is given as fact that both T1D and T2D may be preexisting or preestablished in pregnancy and that in both types there may or may not be vascular complications such as chronic hypertension, retinopathy, or nephropathy.

GD carries risks for the mother and neonate, and these risks increase with the levels of maternal glycemia after the period of preconception and throughout the pregnancy. GD is diagnosed based on the general criteria of the World Health Organization (WHO) of plasma glucose, or better the fasting plasma glucose and plasma glucose 2-hour postprandial, or with the glucose tolerance test after ingesting 75 grams of glucose orally or with the criteria of glycosylated hemoglobin (Table 61.1).

Fasting is understood as null consumption of foods for a period of 8 hours; the glucose intolerance test is performed with 75 grams of anhydrous glucose dissolved in water. In regard to the determination of A1c, it is worth noting that it requires standardized methods and certification for this determination

Table 61.1 WHO criteria for diagnosing diabetes

Criteria	
Fasting plasma glucose	Equal or greater than 126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L)
Plasma glucose 2-hour postprandial	Equal or greater than 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L)
Glycosylated hemoglobin (A1c)	Equal or greater than 6.5% (48 mmol/L)
Random plasma glucose	Equal or greater than 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L)

Table 61.2 IADPSG 2010 criteria for GD diagnosis during a glucose tolerance test with 75 grams of glucose anhydrate dissolved in water

Baseline or fasting glucose	≥92 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L)
First-hour glucose	≥180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L)
Glucose at 2 hours	≥153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L)

One or more of these values should be equal or greater to establish the diagnosis of diabetes

The ADA recommends a selective screening in the first prenatal visit, where the patient risk of developing GD is stratified. The risk criteria are the following: over 25 years of age, weight above normal, first-degree family history of diabetes, background of glucose tolerance disorders, background of adverse obstetric events such as stillbirths, premature, or macrosomic birth, and belonging to racial-ethnic groups at high risk for diabetes (Hispano-Americans). Patients with high risk should submit to an oral glucose tolerance test. In the case of not agreeing with the diagnosis at that time, the test should be repeated between 24 and 28 weeks of gestation.

The Hyperglycemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcomes (HAPO) study in 2008 showed evidence that the increase in just one standard deviation in fasting glucose and 2-hour postprandial levels is associated with a higher risk of birth weight above the 90 percentile, cesarean birth, neonatal hypoglycemia, blood levels of C-peptide above the 90 percentile (related with fetal hyperinsulinemia and neonatal hypoglycemia), birth before 37 weeks, shoulder dystocia or damage to the newborn, requiring intensive neonatal care, hyperbilirubinemia, and preeclampsia [11]. Consequently, the International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups (IADPSG 2010) and ADA proposed reducing the parameters in plasma glucose levels for the diagnosis of diabetes and a universal screening where in the first prenatal evaluation baseline glucose, glycosylated hemoglobin or casual glycemia should be determined for early detection of diabetes not recognized previously, and to start treatment and follow-up as done with previously recognized diabetes (Tables 61.2 and 61.3). It should be mentioned that ADA and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) support the two-step strategy proposed by the

Table 61.3 Two-step strategy for the diagnosis of GD

Step 1. Perform the glucose tolerance test between weeks 24 and 28 of gestation with 50 grams, without considering fasting, with determination of glucose at 1 hour, in women not previously diagnosed with diabetes
1 hour ≥140 mg/dL[a] (7.8 mmol/L), proceed to glucose tolerance curve with 100 grams of glucose
Step 2. Glucose tolerance curve considering fasting, with 100 rams of glucose and determinations of the first, second, and third hour
Fasting 95–105 mg/dL (5.3–5.8 mmol/L)
1 hour 180–190 mg/dL (10.0–10.6 mmol/L)
2 hour 155–165 mg/dL (8.6–9.2 mmol/L)
3 hours 140–145 mg/dL (7.8–8.0 mmol/L)
The diagnosis is established when at least two of the four values are equal or greater.

[a]The ACOG recommends levels below 135 mg/dL (7.5 mmol/L) in populations ethnically at high risk for GD; some experts recommend values of at least 130 mg/dL (7.2 mmol/L)

National Institutes of Health (NIH) in 2013, which consists of performing a first glucose tolerance test with 50 grams and in positive cases a second test with 100 grams of oral glucose.

It is clear that in diagnosis systems, there are differences regarding glucose levels, but they all allow us to make a diagnosis of diabetes. Meta-analysis studies that compare diagnostic criteria show similar associations in both systems. But it is evident that with the IADPSG criteria, more patients are diagnosed with GD, which may lead to an overdiagnosis and overtreatment. Putting the differences to one side, we do not adhere to the recommendations of ADA and IADPSG 2010, where it is established that every patient that receives prenatal care should be investigated from the first prenatal visit regarding diabetes, preferably during the first trimester of gestation, since patients at low risk of developing GD represent barely a low percentage of the population and repeating the plasma glucose test between weeks 24 and 28 if the diagnosis is not established previously [12–14]. It is obvious that its practice will have a benefit in results that favor the pregnant woman.

Recommendations for the Diagnosis of Diabetes in the Pregnant Woman [15]

1. Perform on every pregnant woman in her first visit for prenatal control a determination of fasting glucose using the standard diagnostic criteria, above all in pregnancies with risk factors in which there is not a previous diagnosis of T2D.
2. Test for a diagnosis of diabetes between weeks 24 and 28 of gestation in pregnant women not known to have previous diabetes.
3. Screen with a glucose tolerance test between weeks 6 and 12 postpartum for all women who had GD, with the object of detecting persistence of hyperglycemia and establishment of T2D.
4. Women with background of GD should have a permanent follow-up for developing diabetes or prediabetes at least every 3 years, since it is estimated that a considerable percentage (15–50%) of women that suffer GD develop T2D in a period of no more than 10 years.
5. All women with established history of GD or a prediabetic condition should receive interventions to change lifestyle or to use metformin to prevent or delay the development of diabetes.

Changes in Carbohydrate Metabolism in the Pregnant Woman

The metabolic changes natural in pregnancy have the object of creating an environment that allows embryogenesis, the growth of the fetus, its maturity and survival. In a normal pregnancy, directly or indirectly, the growth of the fetal placental unit increases levels of cortisol, growth hormone, and human placental lactogens, estrogens, progesterone, and prolactin. In the first week of gestation, the increase in the production of estrogens and progesterone produces hyperplasia of the β cells of the pancreas, followed by an increase in the production of insulin and increased tissue sensitivity to same. This anabolism is translated into an increase in the response to insulin, which leads to fasting hypoglycemia, increased plasma lipids, hypoaminoacidemia and a marked sensitivity to starvation. During the second half of pregnancy (particularly weeks 24–28), carbohydrate metabolism is affected by the increased production of human placental chorionic gonadotropin, tumor necrosis factor α, prolactin, cortisol, and glucagon. These changes contribute to improved glucose tolerance, greater insulin resistance, reduced reserves of hepatic glycogen, and increased hepatic glycogenesis. As the gestation progresses, this response comes to be inadequate, and insulin resistance is presented, which promotes a lipolysis and fasting ketonemia, as well as postprandial hyperglycemia, in which there is a greater supply of nutrients for the fetus. Placental transport of glucose is carried out through facilitated diffusion, so that maternal serum levels determine fetal levels; in a pregnancy with diabetes, there is elevated fetal insulin, promoting the growth of same with increased fatty tissue and increased reserves of hepatic glycogen, which is associated with macrosomia, lipogenesis, organomegaly, polyhydramnios, etc. [16, 17]. Recently, there has been talk of leptin, which is a hormone produced mainly by fatty tissue cells, and its circulating levels are proportionate to adipose tissue mass; in the second and third trimesters of pregnancy, its levels increase substantially; its role is related with mitogenic and angiogenic processes, in the

regulation of immune response and in the transportation of nutrients, all important processes during placentation and embryonic development [18].

Treatment

The handling of diabetes should comprise a preventive focus in all senses; that is why it is determinant that all women of reproductive age have access to health services, information regarding reproductive health, a family planning method, and methods to prevent sexually transmitted diseases and that they are informed of the risk a pregnancy implies in association with overweight and obesity, nutritional advice during pregnancy, and the promotion of breastfeeding since abandoning this practice increases the risk of maternal overweight and obesity. Weight gain during pregnancy should be inversely proportional to the body mass index (BMI) previous to the pregnancy, so the intervention of nutritionists and dieticians is recommended in nutritional advice to achieve objectives regarding expected weight gain during pregnancy (Table 61.4).

In patients with pregestational diabetes, it is of vital importance that the pregnancy occurs in a euglycemic environment to avoid fetal complications that accompany periconception hyperglycemia, congenital malformations, and miscarriages being frequent. In the patient that debuts with diabetes in pregnancy, education regarding self-monitoring of glucose and the presence of ketonuria is primordial, as well as educating families in the identification of hypoglycemia data. Opportune treatment of GD will significantly reduce perinatal complications such as fetal death, congenital malformations, fetal macrosomia, shoulder dystocia, bone fractures secondary to obstetric trauma, nerve lesions, and newborns with delayed intrauterine growth; it will even be a factor that will influence the future reduction in risk of juvenile obesity in the children of mothers with diabetes. The main objective in treatment is the strict control of blood glucose levels; Table 61.5 lists the main care to which every patient with preexisting diabetes should have access. It is worth mentioning that if the health care model is applied by levels, the first contact doctors are in charge of detecting those patients of reproductive age with risk factors, especially patients with preexisting diabetes (T1D or T2d) susceptible to getting pregnant, so the pregnancy is in conditions of metabolic control, and they are referred timely to second- or third-level care for its management.

Table 61.4 Expected weight gain during pregnancy in relation to BMI

Total gain at the end of pregnancy	BMI
12–18 kg (28–40 lb)	<18.5
11.5–16 kg (25 a 35 lb)	18.5 a 25
6.8–11 kg (15 a 25 lb)	25 a 30
5–9 kg (11 a 20 lb)	>30

Table 61.5 Pregestational and antenatal care in women with preexisting diabetes

Pregestational
Prophylactic folic acid 3–5 mg a day
Optimization of glucose levels
Retina examination
Urine examination in search of albuminuria
Blood pressure control in the case of hypertension
Advice regarding the increase in the incidence of fetal morphological malformations and increase in the risk of severe hypoglycemia events during the first trimester of gestation
Antenatal
Adequate glucose control during pregnancy
Advice for optimum weight gain during the pregnancy, based on the mother's body mass index
Ultrasound examination in search of fetal malformations between weeks 12 and 14 and around 20 weeks
Evaluation of fetal growth (cephalic and abdominal circumference) every 4 weeks after 20 weeks and every 2 weeks after 28 weeks. Determinations of amniotic fluid
Advice on the incidence of fetal movement (perceived by the mother)
Determination of the time and birth type based on gestational age, glucose control, and estimated fetal weight

Table 61.6 Therapeutic goals in the management of GD in Mexico

Fasting glucose	60–90 mg/dL (3.3–5 mmol/L)
1-hour postprandial	≤140 mg/dL (7.7 mmol/L)
2-hour postprandial	≤120 mg/dL (6.6 mmol/L)
If fetal growth is equal to or greater than the 90 percentile, glycemia goals will be more strict:	
Fasting	≤80 mg/dL (4.4 mmol/L)
2-hour postprandial	≤110 mg/dL (6.1 mmol/L)

In regard to Mexico, it has been established that its women form part of an intermediate risk group, from an ethnic point of view, for developing diabetes, and therapeutic goals have been established for the treatment of GD, recommended in the Clinical Practice Guides (Guías de Práctica Clínica 2009 [19]), where the objective is to achieve the blood glucose levels described in Table 61.6. The implementation of the GPC in recent years in Mexico has the goal of unifying medical criteria in the diagnosis and treatment of various pathologies.

ADA, in its publication in 2016 [15], proposes the following general recommendations for the management of patients with diabetes:

1. Offer preconception advice that covers the importance of glycemia control as normally and safely as possible; ideally A1c should be <6.5% with the object of reducing the risk of congenital anomalies. For the area of pregnancy in the periconception period and an adequate prenatal control, the gynecologist and obstetrician should recommend to the woman with pregestational type 1 and type 2 diabetes,

Table 61.7 Dietary portions in relation with BMI

Caloric portion	BMI
36–40 Kcal /kg of current weight	<19.8
30 Kcal/kg of current weight	19.8–26
24 Kcal/Kg of current weight	26–29
And should be personalized	>29

Of the total kilocalories, 40–45% should correspond to carbohydrates, 20–25% proteins, and 40% or less fats, of which less than 10% should be saturated fats

fasting glucose levels ≤90 mg/dL (5.0 mmol/L), in the first postprandial hour ≤130 to 140 mg/dL (7.2–7.8 mmol/L) and at 2-hours postprandial ≤120 mg/dL (6.7 mmol/L).

2. Family planning is an obligatory subject, prescribing a safe, efficient anti-conceptive method until the woman is prepared and ready to be pregnant.
3. Women with preexisting type 1 or type 2 diabetes who plan to get pregnant or are pregnant should be advised of the risk of developing and/or the progression of diabetic retinopathy. Vision examinations before the pregnancy or in the first trimester of gestation, then every trimester, every year after the birth, and as suggested by the specialist according to the degree of retinopathy.
4. Change in lifestyle is an essential component in the management of GD and can be the first pattern for treatment.
5. Medications should be added if necessary with the goal of reaching glycemic objectives. The pharmaceuticals broadly accepted in GD are insulin and metformin; glyburide can be used, but it has a higher rate of neonatal hypoglycemia and macrosomia compared with insulin or metformin. Other agents have not been adequately studied. The majority of the oral agents cross the placenta, and all lack long-term safety data.
6. The change in lifestyle means reducing to a minimum the sedentary lifestyle and promoting adequate diet. It is of vital importance to have nutritional counseling for the patient with preexisting diabetes or diabetes which is manifested during pregnancy, since in the majority of cases, it can be sufficient to reach adequate control of glucose levels. Nutritional counseling is not exclusive to a nutritionist, since from the first office visit the doctor or prenatal nurse can orient the pregnant patient, whether or not she has diabetes. And when conditions allow it, every pregnant patient with diabetes or risk factors should be referred to a nutritionist. The recommended dietary portions are the following (Table 61.7):

Insulin

Insulin does not cross the placental barrier and has been, for many decades, the basis of treatment for glycemic control in pregnant women, and it has the consensus of various international organizations such as the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACGO), the American Diabetes Association (ADA), and the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). It is the pharmacological intervention of first choice in GD, accepted by various organizations and countries. The insulins approved for use during pregnancy are immediate and rapid (INPH and IR), along with short-action analogues such as lispro and aspart. Not approved for use during pregnancy are long-term insulin analogues such as glargine and detemir. Insulin schema may be somewhat complex to indicate to the patient, and the success of their administration depends on various factors, among them the ability of the patient and skill given before application. The total dose may vary from patient to patient, which is calculated by kilo of weight per day; if the patient is thin, 0.1–0.3 IU per kilo of weight per day is considered, and if obese 0.4–0.7 IU per kilo of weight per day. At the start of pharmacotherapy, it is important to start with the lower dosage, in order to avoid unexpected hypoglycemia. One common strategy for dosing consists in dividing the total dose into two applications in which 2/3 will be applied in the morning before breakfast and 1/3 before dinner. IR is added when the therapeutic goal of postprandial glycemia is not reached, in which case the morning 2/3 dose would be INPH and 1/3 rapid action, and at dinner it would be ½ INPH and ½ rapid action. This schema can be adjusted with dosage up to 1.5 IU/Kg of weight/day, according to the evolution of the patient and the time of gestation, since in the second and third trimester a greater need for insulin is expected due to the resistance found in this stage of pregnancy [19].

The Use of Oral Hypoglycemic Drugs in Pregnancy

In the United States, oral hypoglycemic drugs have not been specifically approved by the FDA for treatment in GD. However, in the last decade, there has been growing scientific evidence in favor of oral hypoglycemic drugs, which, compared with insulin, have the advantage of not requiring multiple injections and therefore fewer events of hypoglycemia, as well as a lower cost. Their use during pregnancy is increasing, above all in women with GD and preexisting T2D, and especially in women with excess weight. Glyburide and metformin are within group B of the FDA as medications for use during pregnancy. This means that reproduction studies in animals have not demonstrated risks to the fetus. There are no studies in pregnancies, but their use has been approved in pregnancy. Before prescribing any oral hypoglycemic drugs, one should remember that they cross the fetal placental barrier, and, although no adverse effects to the fetus have been reported, long-term studies are scarce. Therefore, we will concentrate on the details of only two oral hypoglycemic drugs: glyburide and metformin.

Glyburide

Glyburide is a potent antidiabetic agent belonging to the second generation of sulfonylureas and also known as glybenclamide. Its hypoglycemic drug action is due to stimulation of beta cells in the pancreatic islets that cause an increase in the secretion of insulin. Also considered a secretagogue, it is absorbed orally and does not depend on food; it is metabolized in the liver and reaches maximum concentrations in approximately 3 hours, with a half-life of 8 hours. Sulfonylureas join the receptors in the ATP-dependent potassium channels, reducing the passage of potassium and producing depolarization of the membrane. This depolarization stimulates the entry of calcium through the calcium channels, increasing intracellular calcium concentrations, which in turn induces the secretion and/or exocytosis of insulin. For this drug to be effective, it requires a minimum number of viable beta cells. Prolonged administration of glyburide also causes extra-pancreatic effects that contribute to its hypoglycemic drug activity, such as reduction of hepatic glucose production and improved insulin sensitivity in peripheral tissues, the latter due to an increase in the number of insulin receptors and more efficient union of insulin with its receptor. Glyburide reduces the circulating levels of glucose by 20% and is most efficient in patients with normal weight or slight overweight. It was the first oral hypoglycemic drugs tested and used prospectively to manage GD, and its effectiveness is similar to insulin. In comparison with insulin, it is less likely to experience maternal hypoglycemia, and only 1–15% experience symptomatic hypoglycemia. The most common side effects are at the gastrointestinal level and include slight nausea, epigastric burning, or the sensation of fullness and dermatological ones such as a slight itch or rash and increasement in hepatic function tests that are rarely associated with icterus. The current recommended dosage is 2.5–5 mg a day or twice a day, with a maximum dose of 20 mg. Its use is not recommended if the patient is lactating, although this is not an indication for suspending lactation since lactation at the maternal breast has many benefits for both fetus and mother [20].

Metformin

This is a biguanide that has the effect of reducing insulin sensitivity. Like glyburide, metformin and other biguanides require residual function of the pancreatic β cells in order to be effective. It reduces fasting and postprandial glucose. It acts through three mechanisms: (1) it reduces hepatic production of glucose by inhibiting gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis, (2) in muscle it increases insulin sensitivity and improves the capture of peripheral glucose, as well as its use, and (3) it delays intestinal absorption of glucose. It does not stimulate insulin secretion, so it does not provoke hypoglycemia. It is used alone or in combination with glybenclamide or with insulin. The dose is 1000–2000 mg a day, divided into two doses with food or after it. The commonly reported side effects are nausea, vomiting, and increase in intestinal movement. Its widespread use in women with pregestational diabetes, with polycystic ovary syndrome and low fertility, marked the pattern for its use in pregnant patient with diabetes. When metformin use continued into the end of the third trimester, no side effects were observed to mother or fetus associated with its consumption. Recent studies have evaluated glycemic control in women with GD treated with metformin vs. insulin and have demonstrated that metformin is an effective agent for adequate glycemic control; it was also observed that women treated with metformin have less weight gain during pregnancy [21]. Meta-analysis studies have established that metformin has efficacy and safety similar to insulin in terms of neonatal hypoglycemia, the frequency of products with higher weight for gestational age, newborn entry into phototherapy, respiratory stress syndrome, and perinatal death. Metformin is safe in regard to incidence of peaks in hypoglycemia. However, it is necessary to state that there is a need for additional studies, with greater sample sizes that evaluate the long-term effect on children born to women with GD treated with metformin [22, 23]. Metformin is excreted in human mother's milk. No adverse effects have been observed in newborns or breastfed babies. However, as there is only limited data available, breastfeeding is not recommended during treatment with metformin. Each individual case should be decided as to interruption of breastfeeding, taking into account that the benefits of maternal breastfeeding are greater compared with the potential risk of adverse effects in the breastfed.

Management of Pregnancy

To date there is no consensus regarding how to solve pregnancy of the patient with diabetes, and most are based on recommendations and points of good practice. Every patient with GD should be referred for its control and treatment from the moment this diagnosis is known, to a second- or third-level hospital that has a multidisciplinary team that includes the services of obstetrics, perinatology, endocrinology, nutrition and diet, social work, psychology, etc. Structural ultrasound should be performed between weeks 18 and 22, to discard fetal malformations, and series of ultrasounds every 4 weeks with measurement of fetal abdominal perimeter at the start of the third trimester to identify fetuses with greater risk of macrosomia. At week 32 of gestation, cardiotocographic tests should start without stress once a week and increase to twice a week from week 36. There should be evaluations by ultrasound of amniotic fluid levels, estimated weight, and fetal abdominal perimeter. There is no evidence-based medication regarding the decision to induce labor or keep waiting, but this is a decision that worries the obstetrician since in these patients there is a

higher rate of intrauterine fetal death and higher risk of shoulder dystocia associated with fetal macrosomia. In addition, the fetus may have greater weight for gestational age, situation that can cause confusion at the time of deciding the time for interruption and conditions a premature birth that has hyaline membrane and respiratory stress. These patients have four times more mortality compared with nondiabetic pregnancy. Scheduling the birth by cesarean to avoid obstetric trauma is normally offered to patients with GD in order to prevent cases of obstetric trauma in newborns with macrosomia. Induced labor at term may have a success rate of 80%, but with a significantly higher rate of cesareans compared with uncomplicated pregnancies. Studies recommend the induction of labor at 39 weeks of gestation for women with glucose levels controlled with insulin or oral hypoglycemic drugs [24, 25]. During labor in patients with preexisting or gestational diabetes, glucose levels should be monitored and maintained at a range between 70 and 110 mg/dL (3.6–6.1 mm/L), ranges that are recommended by ACOG and the American College of Endocrinology (ACE) [26], since high levels of glucose during labor have been associated with a greater risk of neonatal hypoglycemia. Achieving this goal requires glucose intravenous solutions and continuous insulin infusions or else rapid action insulin previous to capillary glucose medication. The demands for glucose as a source of energy increase during labor, contrary to the many institutions that restrict caloric consumption due to the risk of maternal aspiration. Women with T1D require glucose supplements to maintain adequate blood values in order to reduce ketoacidosis. Women with T2D and GD may have sufficient reserves of glycogen to maintain glucose levels around 70 mg/dl, during the latent phase of labor, without the need for glucose supplementation. However, glucose requirements increase during the prolonged induction of labor, active labor, and during the expulsion phase. Neonate should be monitored regarding hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia, and hyperbilirubinemia. In the post-labor phase, women should be able to restart normal diet. After birth, the hyperglycemic effects of placental hormones quickly disappear, and plasma glucose levels return to normal, but it is recommended to test glucose concentrations for the first 24–72 hours with capillary glucose to exclude persistent hyperglycemia in the post-birth period. Women with a background of GD should have follow-up for the next 6–12 weeks' post-birth with a glucose tolerance test to discard diabetes or carbohydrate intolerance, since it is estimated that 70% of these women have a risk of developing T2D up to 10 years later [27]. Maternal breastfeeding alone for the first 6 months and complementary until 2 years offers benefits that prolong the effects of intrauterine hyperglycemic environment in newborns and infants of mothers with obesity or diabetes; likewise, it has benefits in maternal glucose metabolism that prevents or delays the establishment of metabolic syndrome or T2D [28, 29].

Conclusions

Women in whom GD is diagnosed should be treated with nutrition therapy and, when necessary, medication for both fetal and maternal benefit. The insulin and oral hipoglucemic drugs are equivalent in efficacy, and either can be an appropriate first-line therapy in GD. In the first trimester of gestation, all pregnant should be screened for GD, whether by the patients' medical history, clinical risk factors, or laboratory screening test results determine blood glucose levels. Women with GD should be counseled regarding the option of scheduled cesarean delivery when the estimated fetal weight is 4500 grams or more. Women with GD with good glycemic control and no other complications can be managed expectantly. In most cases, women with good glycemic control who are receiving medical therapy do not require delivery before 39 weeks of gestation. Postpartum screening at 6–12 weeks is recommended for all women who had GD to identify women with T2D, impaired fasting glucose, or glucose tolerance test repeat testing at least every 3 years.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Gestational diabetes is defined as:
   (a) The lipid metabolism disorder during all of pregnancy
   (b) Carbohydrate metabolism alteration first diagnosed in the second or third trimester of gestation
   (c) Amino acid metabolism alteration after the second half of pregnancy
   (d) Carbohydrate metabolism alteration first diagnosed in the first or second trimester of gestation
   (e) Carbohydrate metabolism alteration first diagnosed in the third trimester of gestation
2. The growing index of obesity is a global problem; bad dietary habits and sedentary lifestyle are the main factors unleashing the development of GD.
   (a) False
   (b) True
   (c) Only obesity is a factor
   (d) Only bad dietary habits
   (e) Only sedentary lifestyle
3. What percentage of pregnancies are complicated by diabetes?
   (a) 6–7%
   (b) 50%
   (c) 1%
   (d) 90%
   (e) 20%
4. In GD, it is known that there is a risk factor related with ethnicity. Which populations are most susceptible to suffering GD?

(a) Hispanics, Afro-Americans, Native Americans, Asians, and Pacific Islanders
(b) Nordics and Africans
(c) Asians, French, and Russians
(d) Muslims

5. The following is true in regard to the classification of diabetes, as published by ADA 2016.
   (a) Type 1 diabetes (T1D) is secondary to the destruction of the beta cells of the pancreas and leads to absolute insulin deficiency
   (b) Type 2 diabetes (T2D) is due to a progressive loss of insulin secretion
   (c) GD is diabetes diagnosed in the second or third trimester of pregnancy which is not a clearly manifested diabetes
   (d) Specific diabetes is due to other causes, such as monogenic diabetes syndrome (such as neonatal appearance diabetes and in youths – MODY), diseases of exocrine pancreas (such as cystic fibrosis), and diabetes induced by chemical products (use of glucocorticoids after transplant or drugs for HIV/AIDS)
   (e) All of the above
6. What are the risk factors for developing GD?
   (a) Age under 25 years, weight below normal, and family history of breast cancer
   (b) Age over 35 years, history of stillbirth, and sterility
   (c) Age over 25 years, weight above normal, first-degree family history of diabetes, background of glucose intolerance, history of adverse obstetric events such as stillbirth, prematurity or macrosomias, and belonging to ethno-racial groups at high risk for diabetes (Hispano-Americans)
   (d) Background of previous pregnancies with fetal microsomia
   (e) Background of previous births with intrauterine death
7. What percentage of women that suffer GD develop type 2 diabetes in a lapse of no more than 10 years?
   (a) 15–50%
   (b) 1%
   (c) 0%
   (d) 100%
   (e) 3%
8. Diagnosis criteria for GD during a glucose tolerance test with 75 grams of glucose dissolved in water of the IADPSG 2010:
   (a) Fasting glucose equal or greater than 200 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L), glucose at the first hour equal or greater than 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L), glucose at 2 hours equal or greater than 153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L), one or more of these values to establish diagnosis
   (b) Fasting glucose equal or greater than 92 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L), glucose at 1 hour equal or greater than 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L), glucose at 2 hours equal or greater than 153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L), one or more of these values to establish the diagnosis
   (c) Fasting glucose equal or greater than 300 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L), glucose at 1 hour equal or greater than 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L), glucose at 2 hours equal or greater than 153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L), one or more of these values to establish diagnosis
   (d) Fasting glucose equal or greater than 400 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L), glucose at 1 hour equal or greater than 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L), glucose at 2 hours equal or greater than 153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L), one or more of these values to establish diagnosis
   (e) Fasting glucose equal or greater than 500 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L), glucose at 1 hour equal or greater than 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L), glucose at 2 hours equal or greater than 153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L), one or more of these values to establish diagnosis
9. The insulin dose for GD is:
   (a) The total dose may vary from patient to patient, which is calculated for kilo of weight per day, if the patient is thin use 0.1–0.3 IU per kilo of weight per day and if obese, 0.4–0.7 IU per kilo of weight per day
   (b) The total dose may vary from patient to patient, which is calculated for kilo of weight per day; if the patient is thin, use 1–2 IU per kilo of weight per day and if obese, 0.4–0.7 IU per kilo of weight per day
   (c) The total dose may vary from patient to patient, which is calculated for kilo of weight per day; if the patient is thin, use 0.1–0.3 IU per kilo of weight per day and if obese, 1–2 IU per kilo of weight per day
   (d) The total dose may vary from patient to patient, which is calculated for kilo of weight per day; if the patient is thin, use 3 IU per kilo of weight per day and if obese, 4 IU per kilo of weight per day
   (e) The total dose may vary from patient to patient, which is calculated for kilo of weight per day; if the patient is thin, use 5 IU per kilo of weight per day and if obese, 3 IU per kilo of weight per day
10. Of oral hypoglycemic drugs, the following is false:
   (a) In the last decade, there is growing scientific evidence in favor of oral hypoglycemic drugs to manage GD, which in comparison with insulin have the advantage of not requiring multiple injections; there are fewer events of hypoglycemia and the cost is lower
   (b) Glyburide is a potent antidiabetic agent belonging to a second generation of sulfonylureas and also known as glybenclamide. It is a biguanide that reduces insulin sensitivity

(c) Like glyburide, metformin and other biguanides require residual function of the beta cells of the pancreas to be effective in managing GD and T2D
(d) The current recommended dose of glyburide is 2.5–5 mg a day or twice a day, with a maximum dose of 20 mg. The recommended dose of metformin is 1000–2000 mg a day, divided into two doses with food or after same
(e) No oral hypoglycemic drugs should be used in treating GD

Correct Answers

1. (b) Carbohydrate metabolism alteration first diagnosed in the second or third trimester of gestation.
2. (b) True
3. (a) 6–7%
4. (a) Hispanics, Afro-Americans, Native Americans, Asians and Pacific Islanders
5. (e) All of the above
6. (c) Age over 25 years, weight above normal, first-degree family history of diabetes, background of glucose intolerance, history of adverse obstetric events such as stillbirth, prematurity or macrosomies and belonging to ethno-racial groups at high risk for diabetes (Hispano-Americans)
7. (a) 15–50%
8. (b) Fasting glucose equal or greater than 92 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L), glucose at one hour equal or greater than 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L), glucose at 2 hours equal or greater than 153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L), one or more of these values to establish the diagnosis
9. (a) The total dose may vary from patient to patient, which is calculated for kilo of weight per day, if the patient is thin use 0.1–0.3 IU per kilo of weight per day and if obese, 0.4–0.7 IU per kilo of weight per day
10. (e) No oral hypoglycemic drugs should be used in treating GD

Glossary

ACOG The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists.
ADA The American Diabetes Association.
BMI Is the result of dividing the weight of a person in kilograms by the square of his height in meters.
Congenital malformations are anatomic alterations that occur in the intrauterine stage and may be alterations in organs, extremities or systems, due to environmental, genetic factors, deficiencies in nutrient capture, or consumption of noxious substances.
ENSANUT 2012 National Health and Nutrition Survey 2012 (Mexico).
FDA The Food and Drug Administration.
Fetal macrosomia Traditionally, fetal macrosomia has been defined as arbitrary weight at birth, such as 4000, 4100, 4500, or 4536 grams. It is currently defined as a fetus that is large for gestational age (> 90 percentile).
GD Gestational diabetes, which is defined as alteration in carbohydrate metabolism diagnosed for the first time in the second or third trimester of gestation.
HAPO Study Hyperglycemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcomes study.
IADPSG The International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups.
Insulin From the Latin "isla." It is a polypeptide hormone formed by 51 amino acids, produced and secreted by the beta cells of the Islets of Langerhans of the pancreas. Discovered by Frederick Grant Banting, Charles Best, James Collip, and J.J.R. Macleod of the University of Toronto, Canada in 1921.
NIH National Institutes of Health.
Obesity Obesity and overweight are defined as abnormal or excessive accumulation of fat that may prejudice health. A simple way to measure obesity is the body mass index (BMI), which is the weight of a person divided by height in meters squared. A person with BMI equal or above 30 is considered obese and with a BMI equal or greater than 25 is considered overweight.
Oral hypoglycemic drugs Antidiabetic drugs which are classified as sulfonylureas, biguanides, alpha-glucosidase inhibitors, meglitinides (repaglinide, nateglinide) and thiazolidinediones.
Perinatal mortality is the fetus and newborn risk of dying as a consequence of the reproductive process.
Premature birth According to WHO, birth that occurs after week 20 and before 37 complete weeks.
T1D Type 1 diabetes, which is secondary to the destruction of the beta cells of the pancrease, and in general leads to absolute insulin deficiency.
T2D Type 2 diabetes, which is due to a progressive loss of insulin secretion.
WHO World Health Organization.
Women of reproductive age Women between 15 and 44 years.

References

1. Liat S, Cabrero L, Hod M, Yogev Y. Obesity in obstetrics. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet and Gynaecol. 2015;29: 79–90.
2. Aviram A, Hod M, Yogev Y. Maternal obesity: implications for pregnancy outcome and long-term risks—a link to maternal nutrition. Int J Gynecol Obstet. 2011;115(Suppl 1):S6–S10.

3. Albrecht SS, Barquera S, Popkin BM. Exploring secular changes in the association between BMI and waist circumference in Mexican-Origin and White women: a comparison of Mexico and the United States. Am J of Hum Biol. 2014;26:627–34.
4. ACOG. Committee on Practice Bulletins-Obstetrics. Practice Bulletin No. 137: Gestational diabetes mellitus. Obstet Gynecol. 2013;122(2 Pt 1):406–16.
5. McCance DR. Diabetes in pregnancy. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol. 2015;29:685–99.
6. Lawrence JM. Women with diabetes in pregnancy: different perceptions and expectations. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol. 2011;25:15–24.
7. Crume TL, Ogden L, West NA, et al. Association of exposure to diabetes in utero with adiposity and fat distribution in a multiethnic population of youth: The Exploring Perinatal Outcomes among Children (EPOCH) Study. Diabetologia. 2011;54:87–92.
8. Hadar E, Ashwal E, Hod M. The preconceptional period as an opportunity for prediction and prevention of non-communicable disease. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol. 2015;29:54–62.
9. American Diabetes Association. Classification and diagnosis of diabetes. Sec. 2. In standards of medical care in diabetes 2016. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(Suppl. 1):S13–22.
10. Sacks DA, Metzger BE. Classification of diabetes in pregnancy. Time to reassess the alphabet. Obstet Gynecol. 2013;121(2):345–8.
11. The HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group. Hyperglycemia and adverse pregnancy outcomes. N Engl J Med. 2008;358(19):1991–2002.
12. Ogunyemi DA, Fong A, Rad S, Fong S, Kjos SL. Attitudes and practices of health care providers regarding gestational diabetes: results of a survey conducted at the 2010 meeting of the International Association of Diabetes in Pregnancy Study Group (IADPSG). Diabet Med. 2011;28(8):976–86.
13. Wendland EM, Torloni MR, Falavigna M, et al. Gestational diabetes and pregnancy outcomes – a systematic review of the World Health Organization (WHO) and the International Association of Diabetes in Pregnancy Study Groups (IADPSG) diagnostic criteria. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth. 2012;12:23. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2393-12-23.
14. McIntyre HD, Metzger BE, Coustan DR, et al. Counterpoint: establishing consensus in the diagnosis of GDM following the HAPO study. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14:497.
15. American Diabetes Association. Management of diabetes in pregnancy. Sec. 12. In standards of medical care in diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(Suppl 1):S94–8.
16. Buchanan TA. Intermediary metabolism durin pregnancy: implication for diabtes mellitus. En: Le Roith D, Olefsky JM, Tyalor SI. Diabetes mellitus: a fundamental and clinical text (3). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health; 2003. Pro Quest Library. pp. 1237–50.
17. Buchanan TA. Effects of maternal diabetes mellitus on intrauterine development. En: Le Roith D, Olefsky JM, Tyalor SI. Diabetes mellitus: a fundamental and clinical text (3). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health; 2003. Pro Qeust ebrary. pp. 1251–64.
18. Tessier DR, Ferraro ZM, Gruslin A. Role of leptin in pregnancy: consequences of maternal obesity. Placenta. 2013;34:205–11.
19. Guía de Práctica Clínica. Diagnóstico y Tratamiento de la Diabetes en el Embarazo. México: Secretaria de Salud; 2009.
20. Berggren EK, Boggess KA. Oral agents for the management of gestational diabetes. Clinical Obstet GynecolLippincott Williams and Wilkins. 2013;56(4):827–36.
21. Spaulonci CP, Bernardes LS, Trindade TC, et al. Randomized trial of metformin vs insulin in the management of gestational diabetes. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2013;209:34. e1–7.
22. Zhao LP, Sheng XY, Zhou S, Yang T, Ma LY, Zhou Y, Cui YM. Metformin versus insulin for gestational diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2015;80(5):1224–34.
23. Singh AK, Singh R. Metformin in gestational diabetes: an emerging contender. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2015;19(2):236–44.
24. Korkmazer E, Solak N, Tokgöz VY. Gestational diabetes: screening, management, timing of delivery. Curr Obstet Gynecol Rep. 2015;4:132–8.
25. Benhalima K, Devlieger R, Van Assche A. Screening and management of gestational diabetes. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol. 2015;29:339–49.
26. Garrison EA, Jagasia S. Inpatient management of women with gestational and pregestational diabetes in pregnancy. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14:457.
27. Theodoraki A, Baldeweg SE. Symposium on diabetes. Gestational diabetes mellitus. Br J Hosp Med. 2008;69(10):562–7.
28. Gunderson EP. Breastfeeding after gestational diabetes pregnancy. Diabetes Care ProQuest. 2007;30(S2):S161–8.
29. Trout KK, Averbuch T, Barowski M. Promoting breastfeeding among obese women and women with gestational diabetes mellitus. Curr Diab Rep. 2011;11(7):7–12.

The Elderly with Diabetes

62

Willy Marcos Valencia-Rodrigo

Introduction

Clinicians managing diabetes in any adult, woman, or child need to implement a chronic disease approach, understanding the connections and impact between the person and the disease. For the older population, we require to magnify these considerations, providing a team effort that engages the older patient (and family/caregivers as applicable) while offing a geriatrics approach to the individual, not just the disease. To successfully accomplish this goal, we need to incorporate the four geriatric domains (medical, functional, mental, and social), which are intertwined, impacting each other, modifying clinical and personal factors that will impact the decisions for individualized targets and strategic interventions. This chapter addresses the complex scenario of diabetes in the older adult, the need for a comprehensive geriatric assessment, geriatric domains associated with diabetes, and patient-centered outcomes that are relevant to the older population with diabetes.

Diabetes in Older Adults

Diabetes is chronic and progressive, with increasing prevalence in older age groups [1]. Moreover, with longer disease duration, there is greater risk to develop its complications. In parallel, aging itself increases the risk for age-related or age-dependent chronic diseases, such as cardiovascular [2], cancer [3], depression [4], dementia [5], and frailty (increased vulnerability and poor health outcomes) [6]. Ultimately, the scenario of diabetes in the older adult is more complex and complicated than in younger age groups, with heterogeneous presentations at the real clinic setting, even for subjects of the same age and similar comorbidities [7].

There will be 2 billion people older than 60 by the year 2050, from which 434 million will be older than 80, and about 1 out of 4 will have diabetes [8]. Therefore, we need to increase our understanding and dissemination toward better, safer, effective, and efficient approaches to this group.

To accomplish this goal, it is necessary to enhance the understanding of diabetes and aging in the older population. Figure 62.1 offers a magnified visual perspective, aiming to summarize the multiple factors that ought to be considered when evaluating an older patient with diabetes.

First image, the prevalence of chronic diseases increases in the older population [9]. Beyond the traditional diabetes-related complications, older adults with diabetes will also have a variety of multiple other chronic diseases, increasing their pharmacologic needs and regimens, the risk for drug-to-drug and drug-to-disease interactions. Thus, their diabetes care will start at higher level of burden, complexity, and impact to their lives.

Second image, a simplified yet powerful depiction on how function changes, and declines, throughout the lifespan of a person (slide courtesy of Hermes Florez, based on literature from Verbrugge et al. [10]). Younger patients will usually be considered as independent and able to compensate for the disease burden (granted there will be a spectrum of reactions). In this setting, providers would usually give for granted the young patients' ability to take care for themselves. On the other hand, with accumulating/worsening chronic diseases, all human beings go through an aging process that culminates with certain death. Excluding those who may suffer an acute fatal event (e.g., sudden cardiac death or accidents), the rest will go through a progressive

W. M. Valencia-Rodrigo (✉)
ABIM Internal Medicine, Geriatric Medicine, Endocrinology, Diabetes & Metabolism, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Miami VA Healthcare System – Geriatric Research, Education and Clinical Center (GRECC), Miami, FL, USA

Florida International University – Department of Humanities, Health and Society, Miami, FL, USA

University of Miami Miller School of Medicine – Department of Public Health Sciences, Miami, FL, USA
e-mail: willy.valencia-rodrigo@va.gov

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_62

course of functional decline (some earlier, others later). Clinicians must recognize that these processes are very heterogeneous, and for those unable to compensate, there will be a loss of the ability to carry the instrumental activity of daily living (or IADLs), which include managing medications.

Third image, the additive effects of diabetes, aging, and multimorbidity can be associated with a variety of geriatric syndromes, further increasing the risk for progressive functional decline and disability [slide courtesy of Hermes Florez, based on literature from Laiteerapong et al. [11]]. Hence, considering the physical/mental decline, in the setting

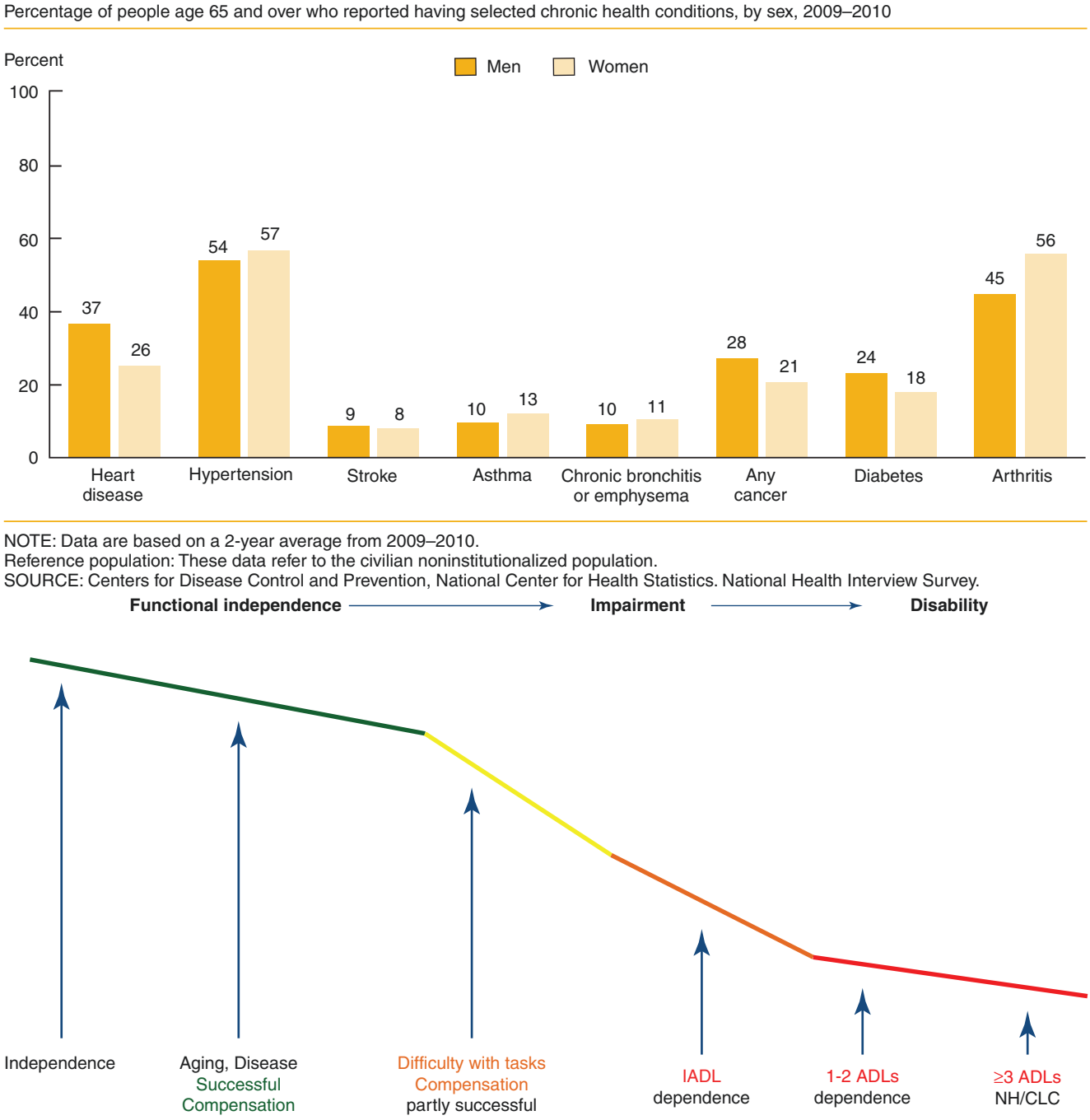
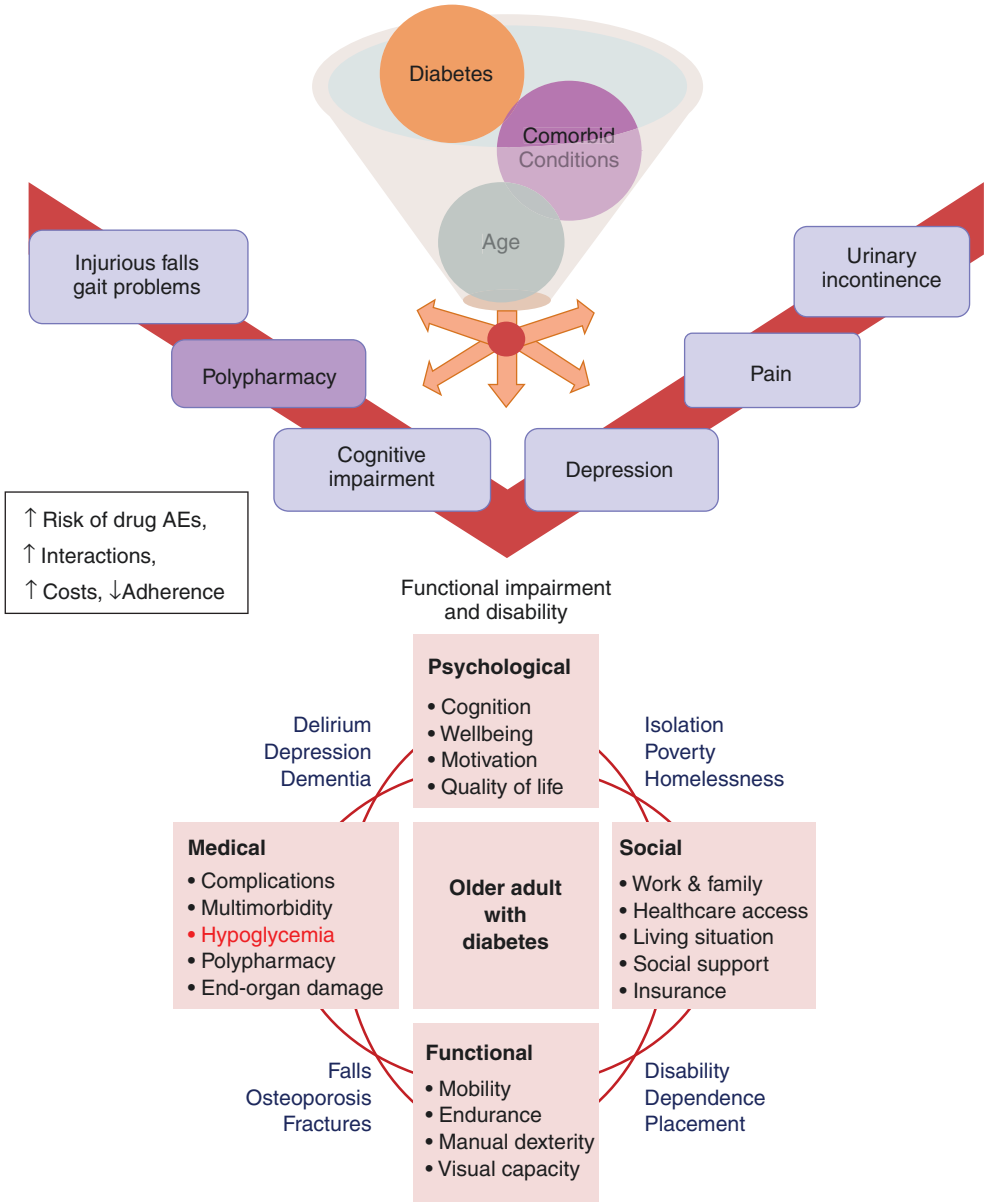


Fig. 62.1 A geriatrics approach to understanding diabetes in the older adult

Fig. 62.1 (continued)



of multiple diseases and complex regimens, the negative consequences also include greater risks for adverse complications (e.g., hypoglycemia), poor quality of life, and increased social and economic burden [12].

Finally, fourth image, a previously presented visual summary of our geriatrics approach to the older adult with diabetes [7]. The four geriatric domains are intertwined, especially in the setting of this chronic disease, causing complications of its own (within the medical domain), and also interacting with the functional, mental/psychological, and social domains. The arrows go on both directions. From one side, diabetes fosters new medical issues (e.g., diabetes leading to depression leading to poor motivation and poor quality of life) and, on the other direction, situations that hinder diabetes management (e.g., poor family support leading to social isolation leading to poor diabetes control).

In summary, the clinical scenario of an older adult with diabetes, and multimorbidity, impaired physical and cognitive function (both a consequence from diabetes itself and associated with age-related diseases), will have implications and consequences for diabetes self-management and self-efficacy, quality of life, and increasing vulnerability [13], hence the need to implement strategies that can counter the challenges while adjusting therapeutic targets and interventions. To do so, provider caring for older adults with diabetes will benefit from gaining insights to the "geriatrics field."

Geriatric Considerations in the Management of Diabetes in the Older Adult

The guidelines from the American Diabetes Association (ADA, Chap. 11) [14] provide multiple recommendations and considerations to expand the approach to diabetes especially for this age group. Notably, this approach was built upon a consensus by experts from both the ADA and the American Geriatrics Society (AGS) [15]. What might the most valuable contribution is the framework to stratify patients according to their health status and disease burden (summarized in the form of a table), which was then adopted by the ADA guidelines.

The framework (presented as a table) provides clinicians with a practical framework on how to stratify their patients and, from there, individualize targets and therapies. This approach offers a tool to disseminate the need for individualization of targets and therapies based on factors that go beyond the presence of macrovascular complications.

Nevertheless, while there can be other suggested approaches, including those for specific settings such as long-term care [16], we recommend clinicians to take advantage from this framework, especially intended to those teams without formal training in geriatrics.

The approach stratifies patients in three settings. A reasonable approach to present this information would be as follows:

The healthy older adult As long as there are no major multiple and/or life-threatening diseases, and in the absence of functional or cognitive deficit, these older adults could potentially benefit from approaches similar to those of younger age. We recommend considering factors such as life expectancy, in addition to patient-centered discussions for preferences and feasibility of implementing escalating strategies to achieve the desired targets. As with everything in geriatrics, the principle of "start low and go slow" will also apply in this setting. On the other hand, having such patient with uncontrolled diabetes and not providing further interventions would be consistent with clinical inertia, which can also be observed in this population.

The older adult with severely complex health scenario This is the third situation, in which older patients are enduring multiple severe chronic diseases, with impairment in physical function (activities of daily living) and memory disorders. Many are already in long-term care, or palliative care, or are eligible for those services.

Then, the scenario in between, defined for older patients with chronic diseases but still independent, without severe physical or cognitive dysfunction, and preserved activities of daily living, but might have issues with instrumental activities of daily living (which include management of medications).

One of the most striking points from this framework is that geriatric syndromes (falls and urinary incontinence) are determinant factors and need to be incorporate in the assessment and plan. Note that clinicians need not become geriatricians but rather incorporate some geriatric approaches to the care of the older patients with diabetes.

Geriatric Syndromes and Assessments for Older Patients with Diabetes

In order to effectively apply the framework from ADA/AGS as discussed in the prior section, we need to expand the description of geriatric syndromes and the comprehensive geriatric assessment. Noteworthy, addressing, assessing, and incorporating these factors into the care of an older patient with diabetes will be feasible to conduct, even at a busy clinic setting.

As previously established, older age and the aging process lead to greater risk for developing chronic medical diseases, functional and cognitive decline, and, then, the geriatric syndromes. These geriatric syndromes, while being syndromes, can have multifactorial etiologies but usually share common risk factors and pathophysiologic mechanisms. Screening and detection is a key factor for management, even if the final diagnosis is not ultimately defined [17].

Considering the setting of diabetes, we can map them all to the heightened burden produce by long-standing disease, especially if complications presented. The geriatric syndromes include polypharmacy, urinary incontinence, impaired mobility, falls, frailty, persistent pain, cognitive impairment, and depression, and they add further complexity to older patient with diabetes [17–19]. Progression in these syndromes leads to poor quality of life and loss of independence, a situation where patients will require assistance to care for themselves and even transition to institutionalization of different types (assisted living facilities, community living centers, or nursing homes).

The connection between diabetes and geriatric syndromes has been described. For example, a French study of 987 older patients (age ≥70) with diabetes found that both macrovascular [20] and microvascular [21] complications were associated with cognitive function, nutritional risk, and evidence for self-care deficit. The authors highlighted the multiple and potential bidirectional pathways between cardiovascular disease and geriatric syndromes.

Table 62.1 presents a distribution of geriatric syndromes within each of the four geriatric domains. This operationalization is solely for practical purposes, since in reality, there will be significant overlap (one syndrome connected to more than one domain), related to pathophysiology and outcomes.

Table 62.1 Geriatric syndromes within the four geriatric domains

Medical	Functional	Psychological	Social
Polypharmacy	Impaired mobility	Dementia	Social isolation
Multimorbidity	Falls	Depression	Homelessness
Malnutrition	Urinary incontinence	Poor quality of life	Food insecurity
	Frailty		
	Self-care deficit		

Medical Domain

Polypharmacy There are several ways to define polypharmacy (based on the total number of medications, the number of medications for one condition, and the use of medications that are not justified by benefits over risks) [22]. However, it is easy to understand how an older person with diabetes and diabetes-associated complications will likely meet the first two definitions, just by following the standard-of-care treatment [23]. The issue is that as these medications accumulate, polypharmacy leads to increased costs and nonadherence [24], and nonadherence leads to uncontrolled glycemic control. Moreover, increased economic costs lead to mental preoccupation/anxiety as well as socioeconomic burden.

Each visit is an opportunity to review the medication profile and ensure (1) patient knowledge and justification for each medication, (2) advise against non-required over the counter, and (3) promptly adjust therapeutic interventions, striving to reduce medications when there is no certainty that the benefits outweigh the risks. Moreover, the patient can be further engaged in self-management as improvements in lifestyle could be clinically significant enough and warrant fewer medications, ultimately improving diabetes and patient-centered goals.

Unfortunately, polypharmacy will be quite prevalent in the older population with diabetes and will often be related to other geriatric syndromes such as falls [25, 26], which will be further review in a subsequent section. Additionally, a vast majority of older patients with diabetes will have an indication for an antihypertensive medication, with indications ranging from primary/secondary prevention of diabetic nephropathy in normotensive patients all the way to established hypertension, heart disease, and others. The key factor will be to ensure the patients do not have orthostatic hypotension and to adjust pharmacologic therapies accordingly. Most notably, these changes can greatly benefit the patient. Decreasing psychotropic agents and polypharmacy reduce the risk for falls [27, 28].

Multimorbidity The accumulation of multiple chronic diseases is a common scenario in the older patient [29], but not always associated with non-disease-based physical limitations [30]. Hence, their presentation and impact are highly variable, leading to different health status, between individuals and over time. Most notably, different older persons with similar conditions may present with different clinical status. Researchers have modeled the disease clusters from 750 aging patients and found that older patients with established cardiovascular disease and highest burden of comorbidities (≥6 per their study) will benefit less from intensive regimens [31]. From our standpoint, we agree with this concept, consistent with the different strata presented in the ADA/AGS framework, but emphasize that the "paper can be deceiving." Before meeting a new patient, most clinicians review the clinical information available in medical records, and we have found a very heterogeneous presentation of health status, beyond the records, based on physical and cognitive function. Notwithstanding, chronic medical conditions might impact daily functioning and health-related quality of life (HRQOL). Older adults with longer disease duration or uncontrolled disease, with complications, will be at greater risk for impaired daily functioning and poor HRQOL.

Nutritional Status While this is not a geriatric syndrome per se, we need to unveil, even if only briefly, on the associated syndromes of frailty with sarcopenic obesity. Diabetes is associated with obesity as we age [32]. Many older patients with diabetes, as they age, and as they develop functional impairment due to the diabetes and its complications and other age-related problems, then remain with increased weight but endure changes in body composition, with loss of lean mass. Obesity itself affects all four geriatric domains and, if left untreated, leads to a vicious cycle of progressive deterioration of physical activity and function, worsening of diseases, further weight gain, and further worsening of this "setting" [33]. Consequently, the success on diabetes management will be challenged by the persistence of such negative scenarios in the geriatric population.

Malnutrition On the other hand, despite the obesity epidemic and the clear relationship between obesity, insulin resistance, and diabetes, the proportion of risk of malnutrition risk is similar in subjects with diabetes than in others in the community [34] and in the hospital [35]. In other words, older patients with obesity may suffer from macro- and micronutrient deficiency. Moreover, in connection to the aging process and concomitant chronic diseases, the risks for malnutrition are greater in this age group. It has even been shown that diabetes in stroke patients is a risk factor for malnutrition, probably due to dietary restriction and higher rate of dysphagia [36]. Thus, oral health and swallowing capacities must be checked. Particularly, oral candidiasis must be searched and treated and patient referred to dentist surgeon. Nutritional interventions and lifestyle changes need to be adapted to individualized nutritional risks.

Functional Domain

Diabetes is associated with early declines in physical function [37]. Hence, older patients with long-standing disease have been exposed to diabetes-related decline, separate to the "expected" age-related decline.

Moreover, the dexterity and physical capacity are needed to perform diabetes self-management (for instance, visual loss can impair the ability to read glucose results and inject insulin units). Tools such as the insulin delivery systems, with training for those with visual impairment, can be implemented to allow the person maintain independence in the management of diabetes.

Within this domain, we assess the geriatric syndromes of falls, impaired mobility, functional decline, vision loss, and hearing loss are among the most common geriatric syndromes. More recently, the frailty syndrome continues gaining increasing attention, and the future might have evidence to support that frailty ought to be included in the framework as well as falls and urinary incontinence.

Impaired Mobility The most common risk factors are older age, low physical activity, strength or balance impairment, and chronic diseases such as obesity, diabetes, and osteoarthritis [38]. Hence, unsurprisingly, mobility impairment is common in older adults. Unfortunately, with diabetes and other diseases sharing mutual risk factors, and in itself, counter the potential for disease prevention. Clinicians need to assess and understand the impact from impaired mobility, dexterity, and function to define the most appropriate plan of care.

Self-Care Deficit and Functional Decline The assessment of instrumental activities of daily living (IADLs) [39] explores capacities to live in an autonomous way at home. These activities include shopping, cooking, household cleaning/laundry, telephone use, managing medications, finances, and driving/using public transportation. The inability to carry at least two or more IADLs would place a patient in the second category from the ADA guidelines. Nevertheless, limitations on these IADLs can be supplemented through informal (family/friends) or formal support (e.g., home health nurse to assist with medication management). The assessment of activities of daily living (ADLs) [40] explores the actions to take care of basic needs without help. These include dressing, toileting, bathing, eating, and getting around the home. Limitations in two or more ADLs are consistent with the highest complexity in the ADA model, and glycemic targets are further increased. These limitations are also consistent with nursing home level of care. However, again, these limitations can be supplemented by formal or informal support, with the main objective to keep the patient at home. Often, structural modifications are helpful.

The dependency in IADLs is mainly associated with cognitive troubles. Particular attention should be given to the capacities to self-manage medications. Care plan can be adjusted based on the outcomes from this assessment. Sensory loss, particularly but not only visual loss, can impact diabetes self-management and self-efficacy. When detected, referral to specialist and subsequent intervention may facilitate the management of diabetes in the older person.

Falls Due to the strong connection between diabetes and falls, we decided to expand this section. Falls are generally driven by a combination of intrinsic factors (the person's characteristics) and extrinsic (exogenous, the environment). Falls risk is already increased by age (without diabetes), due to age-related decline in gait, balance, proprioception, and sarcopenia [41, 42]. In addition, there are multiple mechanisms by which diabetes and its complications increase the risk for falls. Diabetes can contribute in several ways to the intrinsic factors, impairing gait (diabetic peripheral polyneuropathy, diabetic peripheral vascular disease and amputations, neuropathic pain), vision (diabetic retinopathy), judgment (dementia in diabetes), balance (autonomic dysfunction), and the combination of impaired judgment and balance (pharmacotherapy and hypoglycemia) [43–47]. Ultimately, the combination of older age and diabetes increases falls risk by 17-fold [42, 48], while the involved diabetes-related factors will have an additive effect and worsen this risk [49].

Falls are terribly under detected, and it is imperative to understand its definition. A true fall is defined as a person coming to rest inadvertently on a level below their prior location [50]. Falling from a standing position to the ground is not the only scenario. An older patient might try to go from supine to sitting and from sitting to standing, and they might go back to supine or sitting, respectively, and these will qualify as falls too. Even without considering those scenarios (which are severely under-detected), "traditional" falls are more prevalent in older people, and this is the age group at the greatest risk for serious injury or even death [51], constituting a public health problem that is largely preventable [52]. Unfortunately, less than half of providers know that their patients are falling [53]. Furthermore, the quality of bone in diabetes is affected, making them more vulnerable for fragility fractures [54]. Patients receiving insulin therapy are at greater risk for falls (requiring hospitalization) compared to those without diabetes [55]. Additionally, a fall can be the presentation of hypoglycemia, requiring the clinician to purposely inquire about the occurrence of previous falls. It cannot be overstated how important this matter is, especially since it may lead to a life-changing injury [56]. Those at high risk for hypoglycemia should be screened for falls as a routine CGA to be added to the CDE. Then, a comprehensive fall risk assessment may follow if falls occur more than once per year or if there are issues with gait and balance [57].

Urinary Incontinence Urinary incontinence is frequent in older people with diabetes. It can worsen quality of life, depression, disability, morbidity, and mortality [58, 59]. Similar to

other geriatric syndromes, it is rarely due to a single disease. Older patients with diabetes are exposed to diabetes-related factors, such as uncontrolled diabetes with hyperglycemia, leading to glycosuria, polyuria, and, from there, urinary incontinence, which can then become a hazard if the patient has other detrimental ongoing issues, such as impaired mobility or falls risk. In addition, the pharmacology of sodium glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors would increase the risk for urinary incontinence and also increase the risk for urinary infections, which are also associated with urinary incontinence.

A study of community-dwelling older adults with diabetes identified geriatric factors (e.g., inability to ambulate or transfer independently) as important predictors for urinary incontinence in the setting of diabetes and frailty [60].

The intervention is to inquire about symptoms, incorporate those into the clinical decisionmaking, and refer the patient to the corresponding specialists. Nevertheless, we recommend ensuring that reversible factors are considered, such as glycemic control.

Psychological Domain

Depression, delirium, and dementia are the classic most common geriatric syndromes. Notably, personality disorders and addictions are increasing in prevalence in this age group. In addition, we incorporate the sphere of poor quality of life within this domain.

Dementia Both obesity and diabetes are recognized as risk factors for cognitive decline [61]. While there is no clear pathophysiologic pathway (most likely, it is multifactorial), the epidemiological links between diabetes and dementia are quite strong. The current understanding of cognitive decline and dementia puts them closer with diabetes and cardiometabolic dysfunction. Alzheimer's disease is the sixth leading cause of death in the United States and is the fifth leading cause among people aged 65 years and over [62]. Compared to those without diabetes, older adults with diabetes are 50–100% more likely to develop dementia, and the risk is greater with longer diabetes duration, poorer glycemic control, and coexistent chronic vascular complications [63]. Furthermore, as another example of the interconnection between geriatric domains, patients with dementia are at greater risk for falls [64].

Thus, the evaluation of cognitive function in older adults with diabetes is warranted, especially for the oldest and those with longer duration of disease [65]. We would suggest additional interest for those patients who volunteer symptoms of memory dysfunction or who volunteer having issues managing their pharmacologic interventions for diabetes. Quite often, clinicians are used to developing very accurate and complex insulin regimens but must realize that as plan of care that is not feasible to be effectively implemented, will not be efficacious, and will only look good on paper. Hence, understanding the cognitive function of the older patient with diabetes will facilitate strategizing targets and interventions. Notably, an earlier detection and diagnosis of dementia will provide additional benefits and opportunities, such as to address proper resources and support, and increase the understanding by providers and family to start dealing with the dementia disease.

Depression The incidence of depression in diabetes is double than in the general population [66], and it becomes a greater problem in the older population. This is not only due to diabetes-related issues, such as the impact from diabetic complications [67], but also because of age-related issues, such as advancing age, personal loss of function, and loss of friends and family support. Furthermore, depression as a separate disease in and on itself will often require pharmacologic therapy, which will further increase the complexity of the case, and negatively impacts diabetes outcomes, such as glycemic control [68], self-care [69], and greater risk for diabetes complications, creating a vicious cycle. Moreover, a study evaluating a survival analysis between younger and older adults with diabetes (and controlling for covariables) found that depression increased mortality risk in the group aged 65 and older (78% greater than in those without depression), while there was no major difference in the younger group [70].

Poor Quality of Life Older adults have an increased prevalence of multimorbidity and lower QOL [71]. They also present greater coexistence of diabetes and depression [72], which, as discussed, negatively impacts HRQOL, diabetes itself, and its outcomes [73].

The Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) trial compared intensive versus standard glycemic control. They used SF-36 to evaluate HRQOL and found intensive glycemic control did not lead to QOL benefits (no change) [74].

Social Domain

Elder abuse, social isolation, poverty, and lack of family or social support are common scenarios affecting the older person. The social network of people decreases, as family and friends may age and die or become ill and dependent themselves, so that they are no longer part of the support system. In the general population with diabetes, the economic costs from diabetes are composed of direct (management-related costs) and indirect (work absenteeism, reduced productivity at work and at home, reduced labor force participation from chronic disability, and premature mortality) [75]. In the geriatric older person with diabetes, it is possible that the latter may be less frequent (since many have already retired). However, the costs of management may actually be higher than in younger patients, if we consider the natural history of the disease, which may require a greater number of medications to achieve control, as well as the development of complications and the

increase in life expectancy [76–78]. The economic situation can be a major constrain for those who are depending on insurance status and family support, an important resource that could be lacking more in this age group.

Food Insecurity While it appears that this scenario is gaining more prevalence, it is possible that what has increased is the detection and awareness for this social issue. Food insecurity increases the older patients' vulnerability and risk to develop hypoglycemia. A study reported that patients with limited income have 40% greater risk of having food insecurity and inadequate glucose control [79]. Another study evaluated food insecurity in patients with homelessness, and of those who screened positive and had diabetes, 43.5% reported hypoglycemia symptoms [80].

Special Consideration for Diabetes Management in Older Adults

This book offers separate chapters addressing lifestyle, nutrition and exercise, obesity, and pharmacologic interventions. We would emphasize the consideration for modest intentional weight loss as a desirable outcome, as long as it is compatible with the broad comprehensive plan of care for the management of an older patient with diabetes [33]. Exercise interventions in this age group are effective and feasible to implement, providing multiple health benefits beyond diabetes control [81].

Most notably, there are no large randomized clinical trials aiming to proof or disproof the expert-based recommendations (as summarized in this chapter) for the individualized care (targets and strategies) for older adults with diabetes, at different levels of disease burden and health status [82].

Prevention of hypoglycemia is a major priority that should be addressed as soon as detected, through an adjustment of the therapy required to accomplish the established target. Nevertheless, treatment intensification should not be neglected, as macrovascular and microvascular complications should still be prevented in this age group.

Regarding geriatric syndromes, we do not suggest that all practices taking care of diabetes perform a complete geriatrics assessment. First of all, we recommend awareness to this geriatric issues, and then provide a few practical suggestions to address these issues (Table 62.2).

Table 62.2 Addressing geriatric syndromes in the assessment of older patients with diabetes

Domain	Syndrome	Assessment and intervention
Medical	Polypharmacy	Medication reconciliation at each visit. For each prescription, ask yourself the question: does the patient benefit from this medication (dose, frequency) at this moment?
	Multimorbidity	Older patients are at greater risk for new disease or complications. A patient could have been in the healthy category by the last visit but now present after a stroke. Then, his targets and approaches need to be adjusted accordingly
	Malnutrition	Involve the nutritionist team
Functional	Impaired mobility	Consider if the patient has the functional ability to carry the proposed plan of care
	Falls	Ask if the patient has fallen in the past year Observe gait and balance while the patient walks into the office If these issues are present, and the patient has falls risk, refer to the local geriatrician or falls clinic In addition, adjust the glycemic regimen. Avoid hypoglycemia. Avoid regimens with increased risk for hypoglycemia
	Urinary incontinence	Ask if the patient has any issues with urinary incontinence Offer referrals to the geriatrician, urologist, and gynecologist Avoid hyperglycemia Consider caution with medications that increase glycosuria
	Frailty	If the patient reports involuntary weight loss, fatigue, weakness, and muscle loss, decrease the intensity of the glycemic regimen, avoid hypoglycemia, and refer the patient to a geriatrician
	Self-care deficit	If the patient has ≥2 limitations for IADLs, suggested HbA1c target is between 7.5% and 8% If the patient has ≥2 limitations for ADLs, suggested HbA1c target is between 8% and 8.5% Ensure the primary care or geriatrician is involved, to facilitate support at home or living situation Adjust pharmacologic regimens accordingly. Especially, if the patient has issues with medication management, consider regimens compatible with home health nurse services
	Dementia	Counsel the patient on the potential role for diabetes, but once the dementia disease is established, the priorities shift toward patient safety and avoidance of hypoglycemia Refer the patient to the neurologist or geriatrician for further assessment
	Depression	Refer the patient to the geriatric psychiatrist team, aiming to improve depression, as its relationship with glycemic control is bidirectional
	Food insecurity	Adjust glycemic targets, avoiding agents with the highest risk for hypoglycemia. Counsel on strategies to decrease antihyperglycemic medications if eating less and/or losing weight. Refer the patient to the primary care team and social worker team, to address potential community resources

Hypoglycemia in Older Adults: Primary and Secondary Prevention

Hypoglycemia is associated with cognitive impairment, both acute (erratic and irrational behavior, confusion, impaired vision, and balance, which can result in falls or accidents) and chronic (leading to dementia) [83]. A prospective cohort study that followed 16,667 patients with diabetes without dementia at study entry found that severe hypoglycemia was associated with greater risk of dementia [84]. However, in frail, elderly patients with diabetes, avoidance of hypoglycemia, hypotension, and drug interactions due to polypharmacy is of even greater concern [85].

Hypoglycemia events require a clear understanding of their etiology to avoid a recurrence. Details on the history may reveal that the patient accidentally injected the correct dose twice because of forgetting an earlier dose or that the patient was interrupted during a meal that remained unfinished. In both scenarios, the regimen may remain effective and safe if the events are isolated and conditions do not change. However, recurrent events can be a sign of cognitive decline or early self-care deficits. Regardless of this, glycemic targets need to be adjusted, and further coordination of services (formal or informal) will be required in order to deliver the injectable therapeutic plan and to avoid hypoglycemia.

Secondary Prevention While one isolated event of hypoglycemia due to a very specific and likely isolated scenario (e.g., patient describes that skipped a meal due to an urgent phone call, which ultimately led to a hypoglycemic event), then it is feasible to continue the same regimen and emphasize education to prevent any future events.

However, if there is evidence for recurrent events, the team needs to address:

- Patient-related factors
- Modifications to the pharmacologic regimen
- Reassess glycemic targets

Primary Prevention We recommend especial care for those patients at the highest risk (older, on insulin or sulfonylurea, low HbA1c). Considering the potential devastating consequence from one even (e.g., hypoglycemia leading to a fall, hip fracture, institutionalization, death), we recommend providers to consider strategies to identify patients in whom hypoglycemia has yet to present but remain at high risk. Our Miami VA team collaborates with the leaders in diabetes care for the Veterans Administration in the United States, fostering the use of electronic tools to detect patients at high risk and avoid overtreatment [86]. While this specific approach might only apply to our healthcare system, the concept could be translated to other healthcare systems.

Pharmacotherapy

Finally, Table 62.3 will present a summary of considerations regarding specific pharmacologic agents and strategies for the management of diabetes in the older patient.

Table 62.3 Special considerations for pharmacologic therapy of diabetes in older adults [7, 14–16, 87]

Order of priority	Pharmacologic agents	Advantages	Disadvantages
Standard First Line	*Metformin*	No hypoglycemia Safe and effective Lowers CV and cancer risk	GI side effects are easily countered by always taking with meals Risk of vitamin B12 deficiency: monitor and supplement The risk for lactic acidosis is actually very low
1	*Dipeptidyl-4 inhibitors* (sitagliptin, vildagliptin, saxagliptin, linagliptin, alogliptin)	Low hypoglycemia risk Weight neutral Safe and effective (especially when aiming for less than strong reductions in HbA1c)	CV and heart failure risk (saxagliptin) Increased upper respiratory infections Expensive Limited long-term data in older adults
1	*Sulfonylureas* (glimepiride, glipizide)	Effective Long-term experience in this age group Lowers CV risk	Moderate risk hypoglycemia (glyburide is contraindicated) Weight gain Patients losing weight or doing exercise require close monitoring (increased risk for hypoglycemia)
1	*Sodium glucose co-transporter 2 inhibitors* (canagliflozin, empagliflozin, dapagliflozin)	Low hypoglycemia risk Lowers weight Lowers systolic blood pressure Improve CV risk/mortality (empagliflozin, canagliflozin), renal (empagliflozin)	High cost GU infections and urinary incontinence, especial care is required in this age group Risk for volume depletion, orthostatic hypotension, possibly falls Limited long-term data in older adults

(continued)

Table 62.3 (continued)

Order of priority	Pharmacologic agents	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	*Glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists* (exenatide, liraglutide, albiglutide, dulaglutide, lixisenatide)	Low hypoglycemia risk Lower weight Reduce CV risk (liraglutide) Convenient formulation (daily or weekly)	High cost GI side effects Risk for acute pancreatitis (exenatide and liraglutide) Risk for acute kidney injury (exenatide)
2	*Long-acting insulin* (glargine, detemir, degludec)	Effective Long-term experience in this age group	Hypoglycemia risk Weight gain
2	*GLP-1RA and insulin fixed combinations* (insulin glargine + lixisenatide, insulin degludec + liraglutide)	Effective Convenient formulation (daily or qod)	Moderate hypoglycemia risk High cost Not applicable to all subjects (e.g., not for those who require high dosages)
3	*Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors* (acarbose, miglitol)	Mild to moderate hypoglycemia risk Effective (especially when aiming for less than strong reductions in HbA1c)	Frequent dosing schedule GI side effects might not be countered easily Contraindication with chronic renal failure (miglitol)
3	*Thiazolidinediones* (pioglitazone, rosiglitazone)	Low hypoglycemia risk Convenient formulation (daily)	Suspected CV risk, heart failure exacerbation Suspected risk for bladder cancer
4	*Intermediate-acting insulin* (NPH)	Long-term experience in this age group	High risk for hypoglycemia Weight gain Schedule requires at least two injections per day to cover basal needs
4	*Premix insulin* 70/30 (NPH + regular, NPH + aspart) 75/25 (lispro protamine+lispro)	Long-term experience in this age group	High risk for hypoglycemia Risk for BID regimens would leave lunch time uncovered

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Geriatric syndromes in diabetes management:
   (a) Are of exclusive competency of geriatricians
   (b) Are determinant and essential in the assessment and plan
   (c) Are only secondary to glycemic control
   (d) Are uncommon and irrelevant for the clinical outcomes
2. Geriatric syndromes include all of the following except:
   (a) Polypharmacy
   (b) Type 2 diabetes
   (c) Persistent pain
   (d) Urinary incontinence
   (e) Falls
3. Macrovascular and microvascular diabetes complications are associated with:
   (a) Cognitive function
   (b) Nutritional risk
   (c) Self-care deficit
   (d) All of the above
   (e) None of the above
4. Polypharmacy:
   (a) Is an expected consequence of aging
   (b) Represents a geriatric syndrome by itself
   (c) Supports the use of multiple antidiabetic medications in this age group
   (d) Is essential to address patients' needs
   (e) Increases costs and nonadherence
5. Each medical visit is an opportunity to address the following aspect of drug treatment:
   (a) Patients' compliance with medical orders
   (b) Striving to reduce medications when there is no certainty that benefits outweigh the risks
   (c) The opportunity to add new medications
   (d) The adequate use of over-the-counter medications
   (e) Encourage the use of high cost medications that these patients can afford
6. Patients who will benefit less from intensive regimens:
   (a) Are extremely rare
   (b) Are less years of education
   (c) Are the ones with less comorbidities
   (d) Are the ones with six or more comorbidities
   (e) Are the ones with cardiovascular disease
7. Diabetes in older patients is a risk factor of:
   (a) Malnutrition
   (b) Falls
   (c) Dehydration
   (d) Peripheral artery disease
   (e) All of the above
8. The functional domain in the elderly includes all of the following except:
   (a) Intelligence
   (b) Eating

(c) Vision loss
(d) Hearing loss
(e) Cooking

9. The following factors account for the increased risk of falls in elderly with diabetes
   (a) Impaired gait
   (b) Loss of vision
   (c) Cognitive impairment
   (d) Polypharmacy
   (e) All of the above
10. Intensive glycemic control in the elderly clearly and remarkably improves quality of life in the elderly with diabetes:
   (a) True
   (b) False

Correct Answers

1. (b) Are determinant and essential in the assessment and plan
2. (b) Type 2 diabetes
3. (d) All of the above
4. (b) Represents a geriatric syndrome by itself
5. (b) Striving to reduce medications when there is no certainty that benefits outweigh the risks
6. (d) Are the ones with six or more comorbidities
7. (a) Malnutrition
8. (a) Intelligence
9. (e) All of the above
10. (b) False

References

1. Ford ES, Giles WH, Dietz WH. Prevalence of the metabolic syndrome among US adults: findings from the third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. JAMA. 2002;287(3):356–9.
2. Bonora E, Kiechl S, Willeit J, et al. Insulin resistance as estimated by homeostatis model assessment predicts incident symptomatic cardiovascular disease in caucasian subjects from the general population: the Bruneck study. Diabetes Care. 2007;30(2):318–24.
3. Djioque S, Nwabo Kamdje AH, Vecchio L, et al. Insulin resistance and cancer: the role of insulin and IGFs. Endocr Relat Cancer. 2013;20(1):R1–R17.
4. Stuart MJ, Baune BT. Depression and type 2 diabetes: inflammatory mechanisms of a psychoneuroendocrine comorbidity. Neurosci Biobehav Rev. 2012;36(1):658–76.
5. De Felice FG, Ferreira ST. Inflammation, defective insulin signaling, and mitochondrial dysfunction as common molecular denominators connecting type 2 diabetes to Alzheimer disease. Diabetes. 2014;63(7):2262–72.
6. Espinoza SE, Jung I, Hazuda H. Frailty transitions in the San Antonio Longitudinal Study of Aging. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2012;60(4):652–60.
7. Valencia WM, Florez H. Pharmacological treatment of diabetes in older people. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2014;16:1192–203.
8. World Health Organization. Ageing and health. Fact sheet N404 (2015). Available from http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs404/en/. Accessed on 1 May 2018.
9. Federal Interagency Forum on Aging-Related Statistics. Older Americans 2012. https://agingstats.gov/docs/PastReports/2012/OA2012.pdf, Accessed on 1 May 2018.
10. Verbrugge LM, Yang L-S. Aging with disability and disability with aging. J Disability Policy Studies. 2002;12(4):253–37.
11. Laiteerapong N, Karter AJ, Liu JH, et al. Correlates of quality of life in older adults with diabetes. The Diabetes & Aging Study. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(8):1749–53.
12. Redekop WK, Koopmanschap MA, Stolk RP, Rutten GE, Wolffenbuttel BH, Niessen LW. Health-related quality of life and treatment satisfaction in Dutch patients with type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:458–63.
13. Valencia WM, Palacio A, Tamariz L, Florez H. Metformin and ageing. Diabetologia. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-017-4349-5.
14. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes–2018. Diabetes Care. 2018;41(Suppl 1):S1–159.
15. Kirkman SM, Briscoe VJ, Clark N, et al. Diabetes in older adults. Diabetes Care. 2012;35:2650–64.
16. Munshi MN, Florez H, Huang ES, et al. Management of diabetes in long-term care and skilled nursing facilities: a position statement of the American Diabetes Association. Diabetes Care. 2016;39(2):308–18.
17. Inouye SK, Studenski S, Tinetti ME, Kuchel GA. Geriatric syndromes : clinical, research and policy implications of a core geriatric concept. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2007;55(5):780–91.
18. Munshi M. Managing the "geriatric syndrome" in patients with type 2 diabetes. Consult Pharm. 2008;23(Suppl B):12–6.
19. Sinclair A, Dunning T, Rodriguez-Manas L. Diabetes in older people: new insights and remaining challenges. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol. 2015;3(4):275–85.
20. Bauduceau B, Doucet J, Le Floch JP, et al. Cardiovascular events and geriatric scale scores in elderly (70 years old and above) type 2 diabetic patients at inclusion in the GERODIAB cohort. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(1):304–11.
21. Le Floch JP, Doucet J, Bauduceau B, et al. Retinopathy, nephropathy, peripheral neuropathy and geriatric scale scores in elderly people with type 2 diabetes. Diabet Med. 2014;31(1):107–11.
22. Valencia WM, Danet M, Florez H, Bourdel-Marchasson I. Assessment procedures including comprehensive geriatric assessment. In: Sinclair A, Dunning T, Rodríguez Mañas L, Munshi M, editors. Diabetes in old age. 4th ed: Wiley-Blackwell; 2017. https://doi.org/10.1002/9781118954621.ch5.
23. Karter AJ, Laiteerapong N, Chin MH, et al. Ethnic differences in geriatric conditions and diabetes complications among older, insured adults with diabetes: the diabetes and aging study. J Aging Health. 2015;27(5):894–918.
24. Barat I, Andrease F, Damsgaard EM. Drug therapy in the elderly: what doctors believe and patients actually do. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2001;25:861–70.
25. Woolcott JC, Richardson KJ, Wiens MO, Patel B, Marin J, Khan KM, Marra CA. Meta-analysis of the impact of 9 medication classes on falls in elderly persons. Arch Intern Med. 2009;169:1952–60.
26. Peron EP, Ogbonna KC. Antidiabetic medications and polypharmacy. Clin Geriatr Med. 2015;31:17–27.
27. Lloyd BD, Williamson DA, Singh NA, Hansen RD, Diamond TH, Finnegan TP, Allen BJ, Grady JN, Stavrinos TM, Smith EU, Diwan AD, Fiatarone Singh MA. Recurrent and injurious falls in the year following hip fracture: a prospective study of incidence and risk factors from the Sarcopenia and Hip Fracture study. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2009;64:599–609.
28. Hanlon JT, Boudreau RM, Roumani YF, Newman AB, Ruby CM, Wright RM, Hilmer SN, Shorr RI, Bauer DC, Simonsick EM,

Studenski SA. Number and dosage of central nervous system medications on recurrent falls in community elders: the Health, Aging and Body Composition study. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2009;64:492–8.
29. Boyd CM, Darer J, Boult C, Fried LP, Boult L, Wu AW. Clinical practice guidelines and quality of care for older patients with multiple comorbid diseases: implications for pay for performance. JAMA. 2005;294:716–24.
30. Rothrock NE, Hays RD, Spritzer K, Yount SE, Riely W, Cella D. Relative to the general US population, chronic diseases are associated with poorer health-related quality of life as measured by the Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System (PROMIS). J Clin Epidemiol. 2010;63(11):1195–204.
31. Laiteerapong N, Iveniuk J, John PM, Laumann EO, Huang ES. Classification of older adults who have diabetes by comorbid conditions, United States, 2005-2006. Prev Chronic Dis. 2012;9:E100.
32. Tyrovolas S, Koyanagi A, Garin N, et al. Diabetes mellitus and its association with central obesity and disability among older adults: a global perspective. Exp Gerontol. 2015;64:70–7.
33. Valencia WM, Stoutenberg M, Florez H. Weight loss and physical activity for disease prevention in obese older adults: an important role for lifestyle management. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14:539–49.
34. Farre TB, Formiga F, Ferrer A, et al. Risk of being undernourished in a cohort of community-dwelling 85-year-olds: the Octabaix study. Geriatr Gerontol Int. 2014;14:702–9.
35. Vischer UM, Perrenoud L, Genet C, et al. The high prevalence of malnutrition in elderly diabetic patients: implications for antidiabetic drug treatments. Diabet Med. 2010;27:918–24.
36. Finestone HM, Greene-Finestone LS, Wilson ES, et al. Malnutrition in stroke patients on the rehabilitation service and at follow-up: prevalence and predictors. Arch Phys Med Rehabil. 1995;76:310–6.
37. Fritschi C, Bronas UG, Park CG, Collins EG, Quinn L. Early declines in physical function among aging adults with type 2 diabetes. J Diabetes Complicat. 2017;31(2):347–52.
38. Brown CJ, Flood KL. Mobility limitation in the older patient. A clinical review. JAMA. 2013;310:1168–77.
39. Lawton MP, Brody EM. Assessment of older people: self-maintaining and instrumental activities of daily living. Gerontologist. 1969;9:179–86.
40. Katz S, Downs TD, Cash HR, et al. Progress in development of the index of ADL. Gerontologist. 1970;10:20–30.
41. Richardson JK, Hurvitz EA. Peripheral neuropathy: a true risk factor for falls. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 1995;50:M211–5.
42. Lord S, Sherrington C, Menz H, Close J. Falls in older people: risk factors and strategies for prevention. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 2007.
43. Cavanagh PR, Derr JA, Ulbrecht JS, Maser RE, Orchard TJ. Problems with gait and posture in neuropathic patients with insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Diabet Med. 1992;9:469–74.
44. Schwartz AV, Hillier TA, Sellmeyer DE, et al. Older women with diabetes have a higher risk of falls: a prospective study. Diabetes Care. 2002;25:1749–54.
45. Schwartz AV, Vittinghoff E, Sellmeyer DE, et al. Diabetes-related complications, glycemic control, and falls in older adults. Diabetes Care. 2008;31:391–6.
46. Berlie HD, Garwood CL. Diabetes medications related to an increased risk of falls and fall-related morbidity in the elderly. Ann Pharmacother. 2010;44:712–7.
47. Pijpers E, Ferreira I, de Jongh RT, et al. Older individuals with diabetes have an increased risk of recurrent falls: analysis of potential mediating factors: the Longitudinal Ageing Study Amsterdam. Age Ageing. 2012;41:358–65.
48. Vinik AL, Vinik EJ, Colberg SR, Morrison S. Falls risk in older adults with type 2 diabetes. Clin Geriatr Med. 2015;31:89–99.
49. Vinik AI, Camacho P, Reddy S, et al. Aging, diabetes and falls. Endocr Pract. 2017;23(9):1117–39.
50. Gibson MJ, Andres K, Isaacs B, et al. Prevention of falls in later life. Dan Med Bull. 1987;34(Suppl b):1–24.
51. World Health Organization. Falls. Fact sheet N344. Published in October 2012. Available online http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs344/en/, Accessed on 1 May 2018.
52. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Falls among older adults: an Overview. Published on Sep 2014. Available online http://www.cdc.gov/HomeandRecreationalSafety/Falls/adultfalls.html, Accessed on 1 May 2018.
53. Stevens JA, Ballesteros MF, Mack KA, Rudd RA, DeCaro E, Adler G. Gender differences in seeking care for falls in the aged Medicare Population. Am J Prev Med. 2012;43:59–62.
54. Gonnelli S, Caffarelli C, Giordano N, Nuti R. The prevention of fragility fractures in diabetic patients. Aging Clin Exp Res. 2015;27(2):115–24.
55. Yau RK, Strotmeyer ES, Resnick HE, et al. Diabetes and risk of hospitalized fall injury among older adults. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:3985–91.
56. Seaquist ER, Anderson J, Childs B, et al. Hypoglycemia and diabetes: a report of a workgroup of the American Diabetes Association and the Endocrine Society. Diabetes Care. 2013;36:1384–95.
57. American Geriatrics Society and British Geriatrics Society. Summary of the Updated American Geriatrics Society/British Geriatrics Society Clinical Practice Guideline for prevention of falls in older persons. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2011;59(1):148–57.
58. Aguilar-Navarro S, Navarrete-Reyes AP, Grados-Chavarria BH, Garcia-Lara JM, Amieva H, Avila-Funes JA. The severity of urinary incontinence decreases health-related quality of life among community-dwelling elderly. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2012;67(11):1266–71.
59. Khatutsky G, Walsh EG, Brown DW. Urinary incontinence, functional status, and health-related quality of life among Medicare beneficiaries enrolled in the program for all-inclusive care for the elderly and dual eligible demonstration special needs plans. J Ambul Care Manage. 2013;36(1):35–49.
60. Hsu A, Conell-Price J, Stijacic Cenzer I, et al. Predictors of urinary incontinence in community-dwelling frail older adults with diabetes mellitus in a cross-sectional study. BMC Geriatr. 2014;14:137.
61. Alosco ML, Gunstad J. The negative effects of obesity and poor glycemic control on cognitive function: a proposed model for possible mechanisms. Curr Diab Rep. 2014;14:495.
62. Tejada-Vera B. Mortality from Alzheimer's disease in the United States: data for 2000 and 2010. NCHS data brief, no 116. Hyattsville: National Center for Health Statistics; 2013. Available on http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/databriefs/db116.htm. Accessed 1 May 2018.
63. Mayeda ER, Whitmer RA, Yaffe K. Diabetes and cognition. Clin Geriatr Med. 2015;31:101–15.
64. van Dijk PT, Meulenberg OG, van de Sande HJ, Habbema JD. Falls in dementia patients. Gerontologist. 1993;33:200–4.
65. Barbagallo M, Dominguez LJ. Type 2 diabetes mellitus and Alzheimer's disease. World J Diabetes. 2014;5(6):889–93.
66. Anderson RJ, Freedland KE, Clouse RE, Lustman PJ. The prevalence of comorbid depression in adults with diabetes: a meta-analysis. Diabetes Care. 2001;24:1069–78.
67. De Groot M, Anderson R, Freedland KE, Closue RE, Lustam PJ. Association of depression and diabetes complications: a meta-analysis. Psychosom Med. 2001;63:619–30.
68. Lustman PJ, Anderson RJ, Freland KE, de Groot M, Carney RM, Clouse RE. Depression and poor glycemic control: a meta-analytic review of the literature. Diabetes Care. 2000;23:9347–2.
69. Gonzalez JS, Peyrot M, McCarl LA, et al. Depression and diabetes treatment nonadherence: a meta-analysis. Diabetes Care. 2008;31:2398–403.
70. Kimbro LB, Mangione CM, Steers WN, et al. Depression and all-cause mortality in persons with diabetes: are older adults at

higher risk? Results from the Translating Research Into Action for Diabetes Study. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2014;62:1017–22.
71. Martin M, Battegay E, Rocke C. Editorial: quality of life in multimorbidity. Gerontology. 2014;60(3):247–8. https://doi.org/10.1159/000358797.
72. Amato L, Paolisso G, Cacciatore F, et al. Non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus is associated with a greater prevalence of depression in the elderly. Diabete Metab. 1996;22:314–8.
73. Goldney RD, Phillips PJ, Fisher LJ, Wilson DH. Diabetes, depression, and quality of life: a population study. Diabetes Care. 2004;27:1066–70.
74. Anderson RT, Narayan KM, Feeney P, et al. Effect of intensive glycemic lowering on health-related quality of life in type 2 diabetes. ACCORD trial. Diabetes Care. 2011;34(4):807–12. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc10-1926.
75. American Diabetes Association (ADA) - Economic costs of diabetes in U.S. in 2007. Diabetes Care. 2008;31(3):596–695.
76. Redekop WK, Koopmanschap MA, Rutten GE, Wolffenbuttel BH, Stolk RP, Niessen LW. Resource consumption and costs in Dutch patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Results from 29 general practices. Diabet Med. 2002;19(3):246–53.
77. Bourdel-Marchasson I. Diabetes Mellitus care models for older people, The European perspective. In: Sinclair AJ, editor. Diabetes in old age. Chichester, West Sussex UK: Wiley-Blackwell; 2009. p. 453–8.
78. Romon I, Rey G, Mandereau-Bruno L, et al. The excess mortality related to cardiovascular diseases and cancer among adults pharmacologically treated for diabetes - the 2001-2006 ENTRED cohort. Diabet Med. 2014;31:946–53.
79. Waitman J, Caeiro G, Romero Gonzalez SA, et al. Social vulnerability and hypoglycemia among patients with diabetes. Endocrinol Diabetes Nutr. 2017;64(20):92–9.
80. O'Toole TP, Roberts CB, Johnson EE. Screening for food insecurity in six veteran administration clinics for the homeless, June-December 2015. Prev Chronic Dis. 2017;14:160375.
81. Mora JC, Valencia WM. Exercise and older adults. Clin Geriatr Med. 2018;34:145–62.
82. Huang ES. Management of diabetes mellitus in older people with comorbidities. BMJ. 2016;353:i2200.
83. Frier BM. Hypoglycaemia in diabetes mellitus: epidemiology and clinical implications. Nat Rev Endocrinol. 2014;10:711–22.
84. Whitmer RA, Karter AJ, Yaffe K, Quesenberry CP Jr, Selby JV. Hypoglycemic episodes and risk of dementia in older patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. JAMA. 2009;301(15):1565–72.
85. Ligthelm RJ, Kaiser M, Vora J, Yale JF. Insulin use in elderly adults: risk of hypoglycemia and strategies for care. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2012;60:1564–70.
86. Wright SM, Hedin SC, McConnell M, et al. Using shared decision-making to address possible overtreatment in patients at high risk for hypoglycemia : the Veterans Health Administration's Choosing Wisely Hypoglycemia Safety Initiative. Clin Diabetes. 2018;36(2):120–7.
87. Aroda VR, Rosenstock J, Wysham C, et al. Efficacy and safety of LixiLan, a titratable fixed-ratio combination of insulin glargine plus lixisenatide in type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled on basal insulin and metformin: the LixiLan-L randomized trial. Diabetes Care. 2016;39:1972–80.

Part XI

Novel Therapeutic Approaches: Evidence-Based and Others

The Artificial Pancreas

63

Barry H. Ginsberg and Richard Mauseth

Objectives

- Describe the need for an artificial pancreas.
- Describe the history of artificial pancreas.
- Describe the components of an artificial pancreas.
- Describe the algorithms used in an artificial pancreas.
- Describe the clinical testing of an artificial pancreas.
- Describe the current and future devices.

Introduction

The artificial pancreas is an imprecise term that can mean a bioengineered product, such as an islet cell transplant, gene therapy to replace the pancreas, or the combination of a continuous glucose sensor, an insulin pump (with or without a glucagon pump), and a computer with an algorithm to control the delivery of insulin. In this chapter, we will consider only the last. This is an exciting topic with products being developed by an unusual consortium of academics, the JDRF, the NIH, the FDA, the Helmsley Foundation, and medical device companies. The first artificial pancreas was approved by the FDA in October of 2016 and was first marketed in June 2017 [1].

History

The first attempt at an artificial pancreas was a hybrid external device that measured venous glucose and delivered IV insulin. It was created by Kadish and colleagues in 1964 [2]

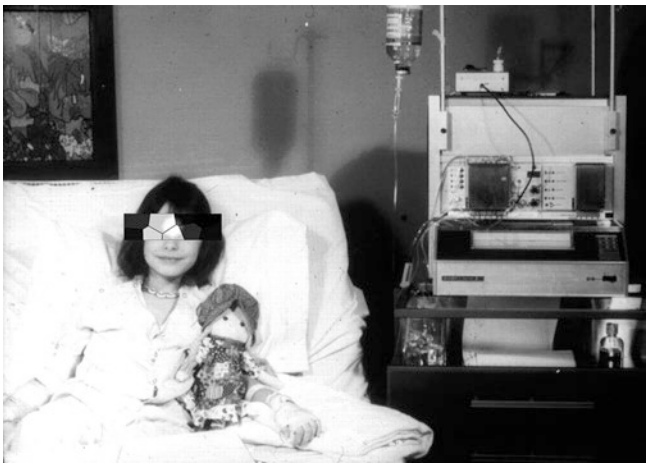


Fig. 63.1 The Biostator, the first commercially available artificial pancreas. (Courtesy of William Clarke, University of Virginia)

and was followed over the next 10 years by a series of five hybrid devices, one of which, the Biostator, was commercially available [3, 4]. The Biostator worked with a complex, expensive dual lumen catheter, measuring venous glucose and delivering IV insulin. It drew some blood into its tubing, mixed with reagents, and measured the glucose. It used the glucose value with an algorithm to deliver insulin and control the blood glucose. It did this very well. The Biostator was a tremendous research tool and had some medical therapy applications but was too big, too complicated, too invasive, and too expensive and used too much blood to be used long-term by individual patients (Fig. 63.1).

The pathway of development soon split, with some working on an implantable device, whereas others worked on a totally external device (Fig. 63.2). Implantable devices got an early start with the development of implantable insulin pumps by Infusaid, Siemens, and MiniMed (1980–1981). In 1986 a fully automated artificial pancreas with an IV glucose monitor was tested by MiniMed. Because of multiple problems including frequent catheter blockage, sensor fouling,

B. H. Ginsberg (✉)
Diabetes Technology Consultants, Wyckoff, NJ, USA

R. Mauseth
Dose Safety, Seattle, WA, USA

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_63

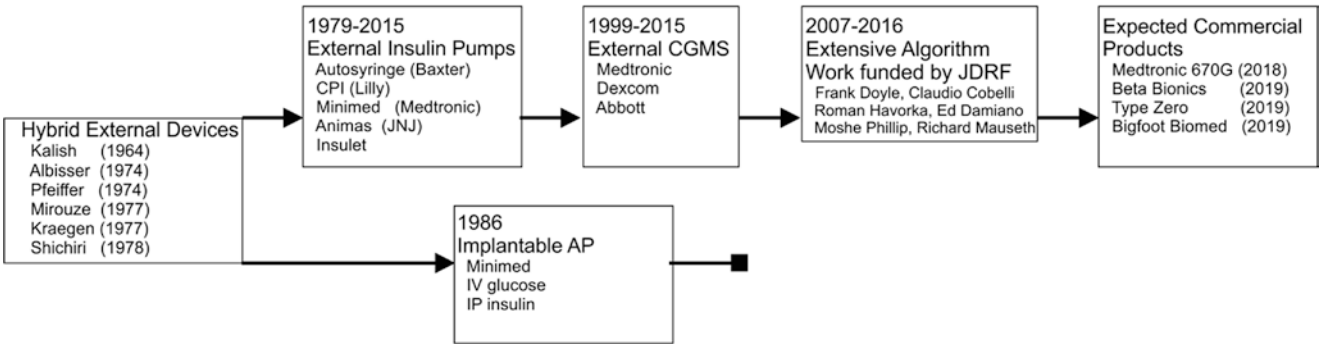


Fig. 63.2 Timeline of development of the artificial pancreas

and the invasiveness of the system, further work on the project was suspended.

Work on an external artificial pancreas progressed slowly, as the individual components, the insulin pump, and the subcutaneous continuous glucose monitor progressed. A major stimulus to the development was the decision by the Juvenile Diabetes Research Foundation in 2007 to extensively fund research on artificial pancreas algorithms. The project led by Aaron Kowalski set up eight major artificial pancreas centers and funded research on three different types of algorithms: proportional integral derivative (PID), model predictive controller (MPC), and fuzzy logic systems. With their funding for the basic science and clinical studies and their coordination with the major stakeholders, the field progressed rapidly, and the first artificial pancreas was approved in September 2016. Special thanks for helping this development should also go to the NIH which had multiple special award cycles for the artificial pancreas and to the FDA which set up a special committee to coordinate regulation of the artificial pancreas.

The Medtronic 670G, first marketed in June 2017 is the first artificial pancreas, but many new systems are on their way with additions of a modular approach (TypeZero), addition of glucagon (Beta Bionics), and a leasing approach (Bigfoot). Second-generation system using better insulins and smaller devices and extending the wear time is also in development.

Technology

Components of an Artificial Pancreas

Insulin Pump

An artificial pancreas consists of at least three components, an insulin pump, a continuous glucose monitoring system, and a computer, running an AP algorithm (Fig. 63.3). To understand the artificial pancreas, you need to fully understand an insulin pump, continuous glucose monitoring (CGMS), and intensive insulin therapy. You should review those chapters before proceeding here.

Modern insulin pumps are fully digital. The digital motors are capable of infusion rates as low as 0.05 U/minutes and as high as 10 U/minutes with about 5% inaccuracy. They need to communicate with the controller, and for an artificial pancreas, they also need to communicate with the computer/smartphone and generally do so with Bluetooth 4.0 or later. In practice, they also often communicate with the CGMS system. The pumps can work without the artificial pancreas algorithm, and should the AP fail, the patient can use the pump as an open-loop system.

Continuous Glucose Monitoring

Continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) has been available in some form for almost 20 years but has only become very accurate in 2015. These systems monitor glucose frequently (every 1–5 minutes) rather than continuously, and they do not measure blood glucose but rather the glucose in the interstitial space which lags blood glucose by 5–15 minutes. The best current systems work well in an artificial pancreas. They report glucose every 5 minutes, have median errors of about 10%, and can connect to a controller with Bluetooth 4 or later. Appropriate systems are available as a needle catheter lasting 1–2 weeks and an implantable system that lasts 6–12 months are in development.

Most interesting is the development of a CGMS system built around the needle of an insulin pump catheter, expected to be released sometime in 2020.

Computer

Early experimental systems used laptop computers. As computers got smaller, some system used netbook computers. Most algorithms for an artificial pancreas do not require extensive computing power and can easily be run by the best of current smartphones. There are experimental systems that run on the Apple iOS and others that run on the Google Android operating system. Additional advantages of running on a smartphone include availability of broadband internet connections and the ability to transmit directly over cellular networks (like texting). There are now smartphones with dual SIMs, so that the personal telephone

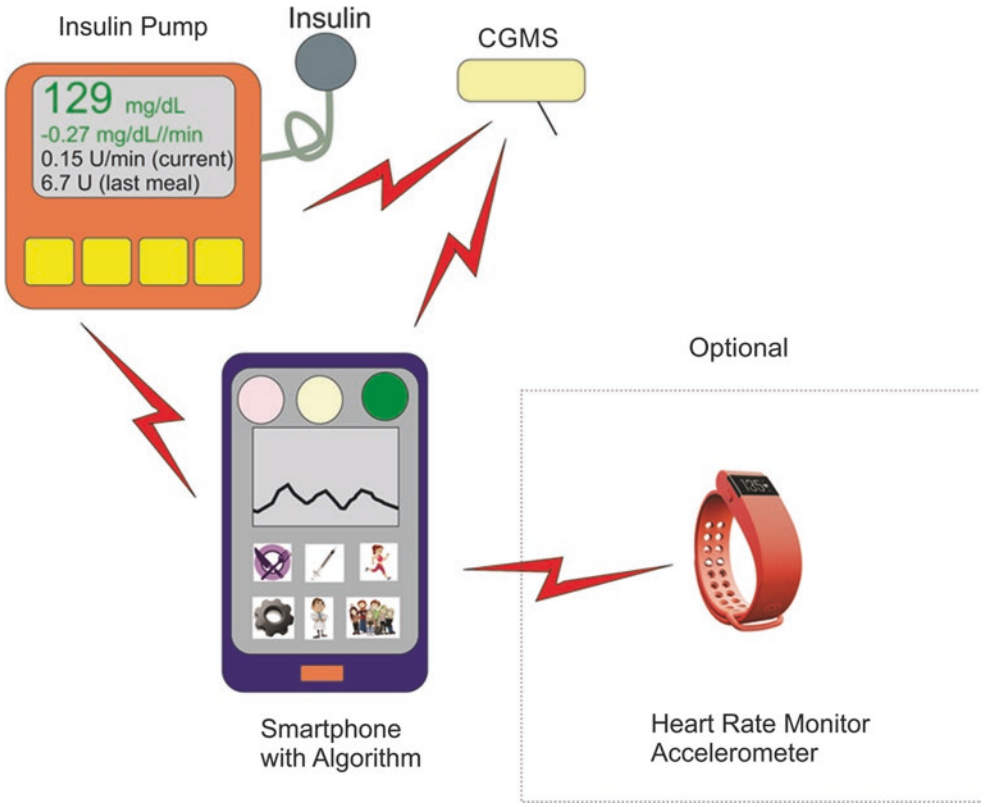


Fig. 63.3 Components of an artificial pancreas system

system and the operating system of the AP are separate. The Medtronic 670G has the computer built into the insulin pump. Cybersecurity is an issue. but there are now standards for it.

Algorithms

For an artificial pancreas, there are three common types of algorithms [5]. They differ in their basic approach to calculating the amount of insulin needed at any point.

PID The first controllers for modern artificial pancreas systems are the PID or proportional, integral, derivative controllers. These controllers, well established in industrial processes, assess the error in the system, i.e., the difference between the current glucose and the desired glucose using three terms, as seen in Fig. 63.4.

The first term is *proportional*, a function of the difference between the current glucose (in red) and the desired glucose (in green), shown in the figure as a black two-headed arrow. The greater the discrepancy from the desired glucose, the more insulin the controller will suggest.

The second term is *integral*, a function of the length of time the glucose has been different than the desired glucose. This term is a function of the area under (or if hypoglycemic, above) the curve, i.e., the integral of the difference over the past time (shown in yellow). The higher this term, the more insulin the controller will suggest.

The last term is *derivative*, a function of the slope of the glucose curve (shown in orange). The more rapidly the current glucose is approaching the desired glucose, the less insulin the controller will suggest (if approaching from above).

Thus, the PID controller evaluates the current glucose (proportional), the past glucose (integral), and the future glucose (derivative).

PID controllers are very stable and have been incorporated into the first implanted artificial pancreas and the currently only FDA-approved artificial pancreas, the Medtronic 670G.

Model Predictive Controller Model predictive controllers are also very stable "industrial" controllers. Figure 63.5 shows a block diagram of a simple MPC, adapted from Lunze et al. [6]. In this controller, the glucose is separately evaluated to optimize the model parameter and to compare to the current glucose target. These feedback to the controller, which is based upon model of diabetes with various food, glucose and insulin compartments (glucagon too in some), and parameters for the movement among them. The MPC controller generates an insulin infusion rate, which is tested for safety then applied to the patient, altering the glucose value and the process repeats. Variations on this basic approach use glucagon, are modular, or learn from previous days.

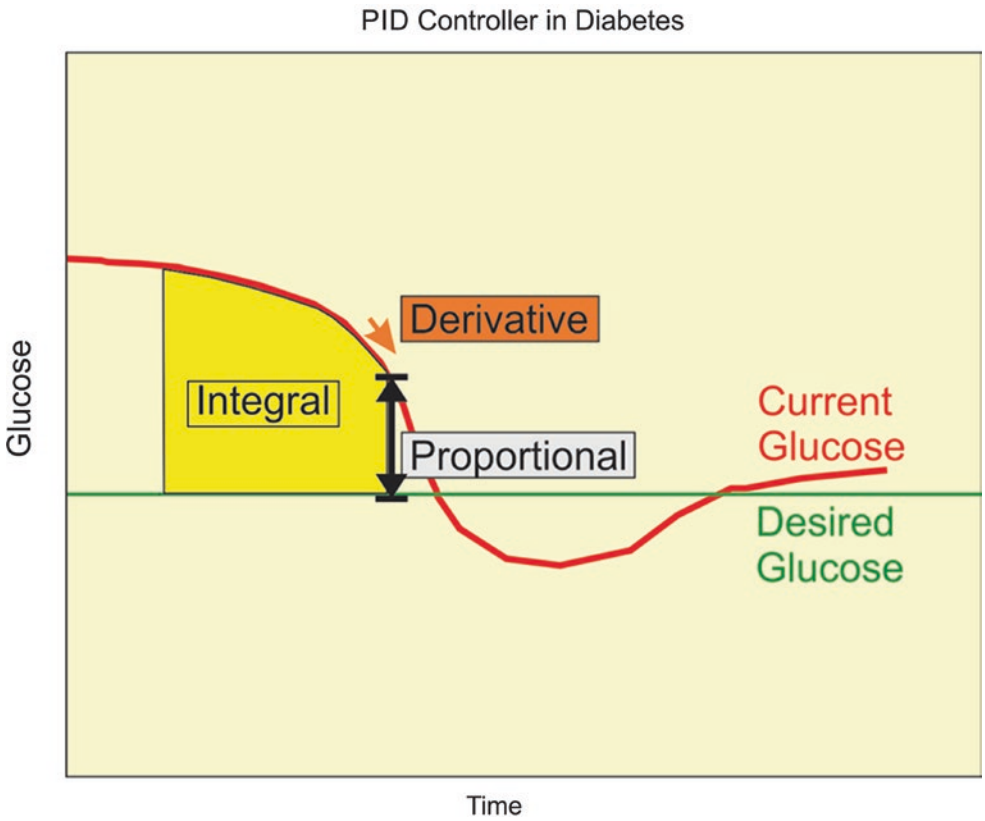


Fig. 63.4 PID control of glucose

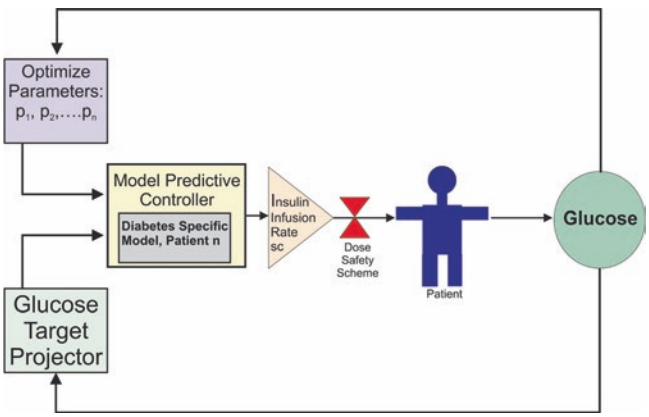


Fig. 63.5 Block diagram of a simple MPC

Fuzzy Logic Fuzzy logic controllers use analog processes and fuzzy logic principles to mimic the approach a skilled diabetes caregiver would use to manage glucose levels. The MD-Logic Artificial Pancreas was the first approved algorithm for an artificial pancreas, being cleared by the European Union in 2015, but there was no hardware approved with it, so there was no product. Another major fuzzy logic system is currently under development by Dose Safety.

Clinical Testing

Evaluating an Artificial Pancreas

Clinical Trial Structure

Clinical trials of the artificial pancreas go through two stages after individual components are validated. The first part is feasibility, usually done in three parts. The first trials are always done in a clinical research facility with medical personnel always readily available. The second set of trials is often done at a hotel or a diabetes summer camp with medical personnel nearby. The subjects can participate in activities of daily living although a nurse will generally accompany them the first time. The last part is usually a short home trial of 2–4 weeks. The subjects are often remotely monitored, and medical personnel are available by phone at all times. Most of these trials will have 15–30 subjects. The second part is the pivotal trial, usually done at home. Twenty five to 100 subjects are followed at home for 3–6 months.

Safety

Mild hypoglycemia is common in type 1 diabetes with about 20,000 to 40,000 episodes occurring daily in the USA [7]. Serious hypoglycemia occurs about once every 2 years in these patients. Thus, the most important safety feature of an

artificial pancreas is no increase in hypoglycemia (a reduction in hypoglycemia would be considered an effectiveness outcome). Similarly, ketoacidosis occurs in about 2–4% of patients with type 1 diabetes each year, and we would expect this and episodes of hyperglycemia to be no higher with an artificial pancreas [8].

Effectiveness

Tests of effectiveness are tricky. The gold standard for effectiveness is hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c). This marker, however, is improved by hypoglycemia. Thus, a new therapy could eliminate hypoglycemia and result in an increased HbA1c. Thus, the time in the normal range, as determined by CGMS, is also important. Most clinical trials have reported normal values as time in range (TIR) of 70–140 mg/dL or 70–180, low values as time <70 and high values at time >180 as well as the number and severity of hypoglycemia and the number of hyperglycemic events.

Clinical Trials of Artificial Pancreas Devices

The clinical trials of the devices being currently tested are remarkably similar. All eliminate most of the hypoglycemic episodes in the tested patients. Hemoglobin A1c has generally fallen slightly, but glucose time in range 70–180 mg/dL has increased, generally to the 70–80% range. This achievement is dramatic, since the trials are generally done in patients who are already in very good glucose control.

Available Devices

As of August 1, 2017, only a single device has to be cleared by the FDA and marketed to patients with type 1 diabetes, the Medtronic 670G. The AP uses a Medtronic insulin pump and CGMS and a PID algorithm that is built into the pump.

The major clinical trial had 124 participants who used the device for 3 months. The trial demonstrated a difference in the average glucose values and a decrease in HbA1c from 7.4 to 6.9. There was a dramatic decrease in hypoglycemia and time in hypoglycemia and an increase in time in range 70–140 and a corresponding decrease in time >140. Overall it was an impressive demonstration of the power of the artificial pancreas, even compared to patients already using an insulin pump and a CGMS.

Future Devices

Other groups are close to market. TypeZero, a company commercializing the algorithms of the University of Virginia group, has taken a modular approach. They have built each part of the controller into a separate module. Thus, they test each module for safety and effectiveness and add new modules to the system as they are approved. The system is designed to be run on an Android phone but is otherwise hardware independent. Much like devices that work with your computer, every device that works with the TypeZero device will have a "driver" to allow the device to communicate with the algorithm. Some devices may also need a module to ensure proper use of the device.

Beta Bionics, a company commercializing the algorithms of Boston University, is developing a system using two pumps, delivering insulin and glucagon. Because there is currently no stable liquid glucagon formulation, their first device will be an insulin only device.

The third company is Bigfoot Biomedical. They have been using a proprietary algorithm developed by the company. Their commercial model, unique in many ways, is to lease the device and all disposables for a single monthly fee. This simplifies the usage of the device and the reimbursement.

Cybersecurity

A few years ago, it became clear the insulin pumps could be "hacked" and forced to deliver a lethal dose of insulin. The risk is much higher with an artificial pancreas. The Diabetes Technology Society set standards for diabetes medical devices to prevent such attacks. Using the Common Criteria, they suggested at least a level 4 security was needed. This level of security needs to be designed with the device and built into it. It cannot be added on later. Thus far, none of the companies creating an artificial pancreas had used these standards [9].

Concluding Remarks

- The artificial pancreas is now available after 20 years of promises.
- Current devices are hybrid devices. The patient still needs to enter information about diet and exercise.
- More systems are on their way with better algorithms and a larger choice of devices.

Questions

1. What are the components of an artificial pancreas?
2. What types of algorithms are available? How do they work?
3. Describe currently available devices.
4. How are AP systems clinically tested?
5. What are the advantages of an AP?

Glossary

AP Artificial pancreas
CGMS Continuous glucose monitoring system
FDA US Food and Drug Administration
HbA1c Hemoglobin A11c
iOS Apple operating system
MPC Model predictive control. A controller algorithm
PID Proportional integral derivative. A controller algorithm

Further Reading

1. Weinzimer SA. Closed-loop systems: diversity and natural selection. Diabetes Care. 2012;35(11):2111–2.
2. Kadish AH. Automation control of blood sugar. I. A servomechanism for glucose monitoring and control. Am J Med Electron. 1964;3:82–6.
3. Cobelli C, Renard E, Kovatchev B. Artificial pancreas: past, present, future. Diabetes. 2011;60(11):2672–82.
4. Albisser AM, Leibel BS, Ewart TG, Davidovac Z, Botz CK, Zingg W. An artificial endocrine pancreas. Diabetes. 1974;23:389–96.
5. Doyle FJ III, Huyett LM, Lee JB, Zisser HC, Dassau E. Closed-loop artificial pancreas systems: engineering the algorithms. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(5):1191–7.
6. Lunze K, Singh T, Walter M, Brendel M, Leonhardt S. Blood glucose control algorithms for type 1 diabetic patients: a methodological review. Biomed Signal Process Control. https://doi.org/10.2016/j.bspc.2012.9.003. Accessed 12/30/2016.
7. Donnelly LA, Morris AD, Frier BM, Ellis JD, Donnan PT, Durrant R, Band MM, Reekie G, Leese P. Frequency and predictors of hypoglycaemia in type 1 and insulin-treated type 2 diabetes: a population-based study. Diabet Med. 2005;22:749–55.
8. FDA. The Content of Investigational Device Exemption (IDE) and Premarket Approval (PMA) Applications for Artificial Pancreas Device Systems. 2012.
9. Yuan S, Fernando A, Klonoff DC. Standards for Medical Device Cybersecurity in 2018. https://doi.org/10.1177/1932296818763634. Accessed 25 April 2019.

Unproven Therapies for Diabetes

64

Jothydev Kesavadev, Lakshmy Ramachandran, and Sanjay Kalra

Introduction

Prevalence and History of Diabetes

There has been a pronounced upsurge in worldwide diabetes prevalence during the past few decades, more notably in developing countries, owing to the rapid globalisation and changing lifestyles. Diabetes-associated complications, such as coronary artery and peripheral vascular disease, stroke, diabetic neuropathy, amputations, renal failure, and blindness, also add to this burden. According to the recent IDF estimates, 1 in 11 adults is affected by diabetes. Diabetes-related deaths (5 million) were also higher than the total number of deaths caused by HIV (1.5 million), tuberculosis (1.5 million), and malaria (0.6 million) combined. Nearly 415 million people worldwide are estimated to have diabetes, and IDF has raised the concern that by 2040 almost 642 million people, or 1 adult in 10, will have diabetes [1, 2].

History of diabetes dates back to 3500 years ago where the first ever mentioning of clinical features similar to diabetes mellitus is found to have been made in greatest Egyptian medical document *Ebers Papyrus* in 1500 BC (Ebbell 1937). Descriptions of this devastating disease have also been found in ancient Indian and Chinese medical literature, as well as in the work of ancient Greek and Arab physicians [3]. Indian physicians named the condition 'madhumeha' or 'honey urine' observing that the urine from diabetes-affected individuals attracted ants and flies [4]. Apollonius of Memphis is believed to have coined the term 'diabetes' in 230 BC, meaning 'to pass through', and it was Aretaeus of Cappadocia (second century AD) who provided the first accurate description of diabetes [5]. Later on the Indian physicians, Sushruta and the surgeon Charaka (400–500 AD) differentiated between the two types of diabetes primarily based on their occurrence in lean or overweight individuals [5, 6].

Remarkable advancements in understanding and management of diabetes took place in the nineteenth century, mostly attributable to the significant progress achieved in various scientific disciplines. Until the discovery of insulin in the 1920s by Banting and colleagues, diabetes treatments mostly adapted highly crude methods for which the success rates were extremely poor [5], and physicians of those times used to make interesting recommendations such as 'oil of roses, dates, raw quinces and gruel, jelly of viper's flesh, broken red coral, sweet almonds, and fresh flowers of blind nettles' which represented a variety of beliefs and practices of the times [7]. There are also mentions of opium being prescribed liberally [7, 8] (probably for easing the symptoms of complications like gangrene). Of note, in 1897, the average life expectancy for a 10-year-old child diagnosed with diabetes was 1.3 years, compared with 4.1 years for a 30 years old [9].

The first ever scientific remedy, discovered in 1922, and awarded with the Nobel Prize in 1923, insulin turned out to be a major advancement in treating diabetes and enabled patients to live near normal life [3, 10]. The first ever oral scientific remedy sulphonylurea was added to the treatment armamentarium, only in the 1950s. Consequently, other oral scientific remedies with diverse mechanisms of action such as metformin, glucosidase inhibitors, and insulin sensitizers were discovered, enabling better management of the disease. Currently, our treatment armamentarium consists of a vast array of technologies and therapeutic options to make individualised treatment more of a reality. Depending on the type of diabetes and its aetiology, patients may be treated with oral drugs or injectables or sometimes, a combination of both. For absolutely insulin-deficient T1DM patients, insulin pump therapy or multiple daily insulin injections are the only scientifically recognised modalities of therapy in the absence of which, subjects are likely to die. With such advances in modern medicine, a dramatic improvement in life expectancy has been noted

J. Kesavadev (✉) · L. Ramachandran
Jothydev's Diabetes Research Center, Trivandrum, Kerala, India

S. Kalra
Department of Endocrinology, Barthi Hospital, Karnal, India

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0_64

after 1940. As per WHO, the average lifespan of a child born in 2015 is predicted to be 71.4 years, whereas earlier estimates of global life expectancy were 30.9 years in 1900, 46.7 in 1940, and 61.13 in 1980 [11, 12].

Complementary and Alternative Medicine

Definition and Epidemiology

According to National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health (NCCIH), a subsidiary of the National Institutes of Health (NIH), USA, Complementary and Alternative Medicine (CAM) are those healthcare approaches that have developed outside the realm of conventional medicine. Types of complementary and alternative health approaches fall into one of the two subgroups, viz. natural products or mind and body practices. Natural products (available widely and often sold as dietary supplements) consist of herbs (or botanicals), vitamins and minerals, and probiotics. Mind and body practices include a variety of procedures or techniques administered or taught by a trained practitioner or teacher (e.g. yoga, chiropractic and osteopathic manipulation, meditation, massage therapy, acupuncture, relaxation techniques, tai chi, etc.). However, some approaches may not neatly fit into either of these groups, e.g. the practices of traditional healers, Ayurvedic medicine, traditional Chinese medicine, homoeopathy, and naturopathy [13].

Of the various demographic descriptors and characteristics of users documented for an inclination towards CAM, more consistent ones include being female, more highly educated, wealthier, employed, and having private health insurance [14–17]. Research has also demonstrated that individuals who possess positive health behaviours and exhibit fewer health risk factors are more frequent CAM users [18].

According to the statistics from 2012 National Health Interview Survey (NHIS), 33.2% of US adults and 11.6% of US children aged 4 to 17 used complementary health approaches. The most commonly used approach was natural products (dietary supplements other than vitamins and minerals). Of the mind and body approaches, most commonly used by adults included yoga, chiropractic or osteopathic manipulation, meditation, and massage therapy. The popularity of such practices might definitely increase in coming years as evident from the data on the percentage of adults who practise yoga. Percentage of followers of this system of practice was found to be increased substantially, from 5.1% in 2002 to 6.1% in 2007 and 9.5% in 2012. As per the survey, nearly 59 million Americans spend money out-of-pocket on complementary health approaches, and their annual spending totalled around 30 billion dollars [19, 20].

Possible Reasons Towards CAM Popularity

A vast majority of patients opt for CAM therapies as a complement to conventional care rather than as an alternative choice [21]. In a US-based study, total visits to complementary medical practitioners (629 million) exceeded total visits to US primary care physicians (386 million) [22]. Traditional CAM practices are extremely popular in South-Asian countries, where modern conventional medicines are often inaccessible and unaffordable to the majority of the individuals. Therefore despite the perception about the efficacy of modern medicines, traditional medicine continues to relish acceptance among these populations [23].

Several factors have been noted as reasons for the extensive use of these rather scientifically unproven methods of CAM therapies (Table 64.1). Dissatisfaction arising from conventional therapies, at times, clubbed with higher treatment expenses, concern over side effects of drugs, an urge to have a grip on the course of the disease, and a notion of CAM therapies being compatible with patient's values and beliefs [17, 24–27], are some of them. Patient's expectations of their efficacy [27, 28], advanced stage of the disease [29, 30], experiences with conventional healthcare professionals and complementary medicine practitioners, and 'healthcare pluralism' are also identified as the reasons for this widespread acceptability of CAM therapies. The latter term describes the fact that when people become ill, they can opt for seeking assistance and treatment advice from diverse sources ranging from friends/ family, conventional/CAM practitioner, etc. which essentially will have an impact on their treatment choices [31, 32]. Analysis of 2002 National Health Interview Survey pointed out that around 6 million American adults had opted CAM therapies predominantly because they found conventional medical treatments unaffordable. Among 63% of the individuals who faced such cost constraints, herbal remedies were found to be the most popular approach [33].

Table 64.1 Reasons for CAM popularity

Belief that CAM practices are devoid of any side effects and are totally safe
Noninvasive nature
Easy accessibility
Advanced stage of the disease and unpleasant experiences with conventional healthcare professionals
As recommended by someone close (family members, friends, etc.)
Pleasant therapeutic experience
Modern conventional medicines being inaccessible and unaffordable
Dissatisfaction arising from conventional therapies
Poor doctorpatient relationship
Insufficient time with doctor
Concern over side effects of drugs
An urge to have a grip on the course of disease
Notion of CAM therapies being compatible with patient's values and beliefs

CAM Therapies for Diabetes Management

Many Antidiabetic Medications Have a Natural Origin

Many of the standard conventional drugs have a history of natural origin. However, administering them in their natural form may not be of much benefit. Phytochemicals or compounds present in the natural sources often serve as 'lead' molecules for the synthesis of bioactive compounds, and also newer analogues could be derived from some of them. This search for novel bioactive from nature – plants, animals, or microflora – still continues to widen our treatment armamentarium. Estimates suggest that around one-half of all licenced drugs that were registered worldwide in the 25-year period prior to 2007 were either natural products or their synthetic derivatives [34, 35].

Over 400 traditional plant treatments for diabetes have been reported, and only a few of them have undergone valid scientific scrutiny to prove their safety and efficacy [36]. Metformin, a popular antidiabetic drug and widely accepted first-line agent, was derived from a traditional antidiabetic plant *Galega officinalis* (goat's rue or French lilac) [37] whose active ingredient was found to be glargine or isoamylene guanidine. While guanidine and certain derivatives were found to have toxic effects, the biguanides (two linked guanidine rings) turned out beneficial and were available for therapeutic use since the 1950s [38]. Further research confirmed the antihyperglycaemic efficacy of metformin without causing overt hypoglycaemia or weight gain. Metformin in addition to its antihyperglycaemic properties also stands out for its effects beyond glycaemic control such as improvements in endothelial dysfunction, haemostasis and oxidative stress, insulin resistance, lipid profiles, and fat redistribution [39, 40]. The UK Prospective Diabetes Study demonstrated that early use of metformin reduced cardiovascular mortality and increased survival in overweight and obese T2DM patients beyond that expected for the prevailing level of glycaemic control [41]. This proven efficacy, safety, beneficial cardiovascular and metabolic effects, and its capacity to be associated with other antidiabetic agents make metformin the first line of choice for T2DM patients [42] and is included in the World Health Organization (WHO) list of essential medicines [43]. Phlorizin, isolated from the bark of apple trees, was found to cause glycosuria [44] but later led to the discovery of better analogues with SGLT2-inhibiting activity such as dapagliflozin, empagliflozin, and canagliflozin [45, 46].

Likewise, exenatide and highly accepted insulin with antidiabetic activities have their origin from animals. The discovery of insulin by Frederick Banting and Charles Best in 1921 was indeed a major breakthrough in the treatment of diabetes, and it all began with a murky concoction of canine pancreas extract [34, 47]. Exenatide, a glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) agonist is a synthetic version of exendin-4, a hormone found in the venom of Gila monster *Heloderma suspectum* which was isolated by Dr John Eng in 1992 [48, 49]. This drug has been approved for use in T2DM management [50].

Apart from antidiabetic compounds of plant and animal origin, some have been derived from microbes. Examples include acarbose (from *Actinoplanes* sp.), miglitol (from *Bacillus* and *Streptomyces* sp.), voglibose (from *Streptomyces hygroscopicus* subsp. *limoneus*) [46], etc. The alpha-glucosidase inhibitor acarbose used in T2DM is a pseudo-oligosaccharide isolated from the culture broths of various actinomycetes [51]. It is probably the most widely used digestive enzyme inhibitor for the treatment of T2DM, acting on α-glucosidase, α-amylase, sucrase, and maltase but without insulinotropic properties [52]. With regulated research and controlled clinical trials, there is a higher probability that many more natural agents could be incorporated into the modern stream of medicine.

Prevalence and Patterns of CAM Use Among Diabetes Patients

According to Villa-Caballero and colleagues, the presence of diabetes is a predictor of CAM use, and ethnicity determines the types of CAM followed. Of the different CAM modalities, biologically based practices (e.g. dietary supplements, herbal products, and botanical products) are the most commonly used and studied for treating diabetes [53, 54] which is probably due to their wider and cheaper availability and also being inherent in the cultures and ancestral beliefs of the individuals. Egede et.al using the data from 1996 Medical Expenditure Panel Survey compared the prevalence and pattern of use of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) in individuals with and without diabetes and identified factors associated with CAM use. Analysis revealed that diabetes-affected individuals were 1.6 times more likely to use CAM than those without diabetes, and the most commonly used CAM therapies among diabetes patients were found to be, in the order of importance, nutritional advice and lifestyle diets, spiritual healing, herbal remedies, massage therapy, and meditation training [55]. Another study from Israel reported that almost every fourth patient with diabetes uses CAM [56]. India, a country with a rich history of traditions, rituals, and healing practices, has a very high CAM use of 67% among its diabetic population of which majority (97%) used naturopathy, which often included herbalism [57]. An ethnographic research conducted in Kerala revealed that the patient's perceptions of disease as well as its management are influenced by their cultural background and environmental resources. Many of them

frequently used Ayurvedic and traditional herbal medicines as supplements to conventional therapy [58].

The National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM now renamed as NCCIH) conducted an analysis of the data from the National Center for Health Statistics, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), and demonstrated that, among adults with T2DM, 30.9% used complementary medicine for any reason, but only 3.4% used complementary medicine to treat or manage their T2DM versus 7.1% of those with T1DM. Almost 77% of the T2DM patients, who used complementary medicine to treat/manage their disease, used it in conjunction with their conventional prescription medicine. Furthermore, individuals with more severe diabetes were predicted to be more likely to use complementary medicine. The most prevalent types of complementary medicine therapies followed included diet-based interventions and non-vitamin/non-mineral dietary supplements [30]. In a study that determined the nature and prevalence of dietary supplement use among chronically ill children, 60% of the patients with T1DM reported using supplements to manage their disease and 31% admitted non-prescribed use [59].

Concerns with CAM Therapies

Widespread use of CAM practices poses several risk factors (see Table 64.2) such as the patients getting overloaded with consecutive unsuccessful therapeutic measures owing to false diagnosis, running into life-threatening situations, adverse effects, and hidden costs of treatment. Opting for these unconventional practices might delay the initiation of effective modern conventional treatments and thereby increase the chances of treatment failures and unbearable treatment expenses [60–64]. Drug-herb interactions, which compromise the quality of products due to adulteration or presence of inappropriate amounts of active ingredients, lack of proper regulations on various CAM practices and CAM practitioners, underdeveloped research, poor quality of clinical trials, false claims and fake publicity, absence of proper communication with health practitioners, etc., are all known to be contributing risk factors towards the failure of CAM therapies [65–68].

Table 64.2 General concerns associated with CAM therapies

Adverse drug interactions
Patient's belief of receiving optimum therapy and finally running into life-threatening conditions and increased treatment costs
CAM products not meeting quality standards due to reasons such as:
Products being adulterated with conventional medicines to achieve/enhance the efficacy
Inadvertent incorporation of unintended constituents due to errors with herb selection, good manufacturing procedures, etc.
Intra and inter-product variations
Mislabelling of the contents
Poor quality of the clinical trials making it difficult to arrive at a definite conclusion regarding efficacy and safety of CAM practices
Patient's prejudice that CAM therapies are natural and safe, which increases their tendency towards self-treatment practices and use of over-the-counter products
Lack of proper communication between the patients and health practitioners regarding CAM use
Polypharmacy with CAM and conventional treatments resulting in decreased medication adherence and more negative quality of life
Lack of stringent regulations to guard against quackery in CAM practices

Compromised Quality of CAM Products

Lack of proper adherence to manufacturing, marketing, and storage protocols might lead to deterioration in product quality, viz. contamination with undesirable substances, intra-product and inter-product variations, mislabelling of the contents, misidentification, etc., which leaves us highly unsure regarding their safety and efficacy [61, 69–71]. Considering the example of herbs, they do not have a consistent, standardised composition, and different plant parts have a different profile of constituents. Furthermore, several factors such as climate, growing conditions, time of harvesting, and post-harvesting issues such as storage conditions and processing are all known to influence the content and concentration of constituents. Although standardisation of many of these products has been implemented, it may not be always feasible since active constituents of many botanicals are still unknown [31]. In a meta-analysis conducted, high variability in ginsenoside levels in ginseng across different source parameters, viz. ginseng type, assay technique, and ginsenoside type, was shown to result in high variability in their efficacy. This is a warning signal that the reported safety and efficacy data of a particular product may highly differ when compared to other over-the-counter batches, preparations, varieties, and species of the herb [72].

Many US-manufactured and Indian-manufactured Ayurvedic medicines that were sold over the Internet were adulterated with unacceptable levels of lead, mercury, or arsenic [73], and serious consequences were also reported with the use of 'herbal' products that contained 'hidden' active drug compounds or heavy metal contaminants [74–78]. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), USA, had reported lead intoxication from Ayurvedic medications among pregnant women [79]. Since 2007, the FDA has imposed an import alert on certain Ayurvedic products to prevent such products from entering the United States [80]. Accidental or intentional contamination of CAM products with conventional drugs (e.g. corticosteroids) or poisonous substances (e.g. heavy metals, pesticide residues) and microorganisms are also reported [81, 82]. Chinese 'herbal' creams were found to contain corticosteroids [83], and some

Indian Ayurvedic remedies contained heavy metals [74]. Likewise, deterioration in the quality of 'homoeopathic' remedies [84, 85] as well as that of therapeutic essential oils [86] is also a major concern. Another classic example is 'Chinese herb nephropathy', where weight-reduction pills supposed to contain the herb *Stephania tetrandra* were inadvertently contaminated with nephrotoxic herb *Aristolochia fangchi*, causing nephropathy and/or cancer in women attending a slimming clinic in Belgium [87–89].

Complications from Drug Interactions

When CAM products such as herbal medicines or dietary supplements are used concomitantly with conventional drugs, a very common practice, there may be a potential for drug-product interactions. Product-product interactions may also occur when many of these products are used concurrently [90]. These interactions often alter the pharmacokinetics or pharmacodynamics of conventional drugs, thereby altering their absorption, distribution, metabolism, and/or excretion [66, 67]. Herbs possessing hypoglycaemic activity like ginseng, garlic, and bitter melon are all reported to have additive effects in patients taking oral hypoglycaemics or insulin [72, 91–93]. In contrast, dietary gums (e.g. gum guar) usually prescribed to overcome postprandial hyperglycaemia were found to reduce the absorption of hypoglycaemic agents like metformin and glibenclamide by prolonging gastric retention [92, 94, 95]. Since diabetes patients are often burdened with many other comorbidities, the majority of them would require lifelong polypharmacotherapy (multiple medications) and hence stands at increased risk of such harmful drug interactions [96].

Underdeveloped Research and Poor Quality of Clinical Trials

Unlike conventional medicine, CAM in general lacks an established research infrastructure, and therefore many of the already available scientific evidence are methodologically weak, or outright flawed [97–101]. Measures such as the implementation of CONSORT guidelines [102, 103] for reporting and the establishment of a 'field' for CAM in Cochrane database [104] have allowed us to make a more reliable assessment of the safety and efficacy of these systems of medicinal practices [101].

False Claims and Fake Publicity

Alternative medicine is widely promoted among the public, and some of them even claim these therapies to be highly effective with no side effects [105]. The inherent notion among the public that these therapies are 'natural' and hence 'completely safe' enables easier exploitation by advertisers and commerce. The absence of stringent regulations in many countries can allow exaggerated claims to be made, and this is more pronounced in areas of commerce that are difficult to control, for example, products sold over the Internet [106]. It is often seen that the lay literature and even certain 'professional' texts based on some CAM practices make unsubstantiated medical claims as well as encourage self-treatment for even some serious conditions [31, 107]. In India, 'The Drugs and Magic Remedies (Objectionable Advertisements) Act', 1954, controls the advertising of drugs and restricts advertisements of such 'wonder drugs or remedies' [108].

Lack of Proper Regulations and Policies

Among WHO's 191 countries, only 25 have a national policy on TM/CAM, and only 64 countries regulate herbal medicines [109]. The WHO has published a series of technical guidelines and reviewed regulations on herbal medicines in the document *Regulatory Situation of Herbal Medicines: A Worldwide Review* [110]. In the United States, national non-governmental organisations, such as the Accreditation Commission for Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine, the American Board of Medical Acupuncture, the Council of Chiropractic Education, etc., accredit education in some of them, while most other nations are devoid of these [68]. In the United States prior to 1994, CAM supplements were classified as either foods or drugs depending on the intended use, and later Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act (DSHEA 1994) framed a better definition for 'dietary supplement'. It effectively took out any product containing a vitamin, mineral, herb, or amino acid marketed as a supplement to the normal diet, from obtaining USFDA approval. This legislation allows such products to forego the stringent approval processes and does not require any proof of their safety and efficacy before being marketed. However, this has led to the situation where many of them are available over-the-counter even in grocery stores [61, 111].

Similar is the situation of CAM practitioners in many countries where they are not regulated in any manner. There are no systems in place to evaluate the training or expertise of these practitioners [68, 112–114]. In rural areas where timely access to treatment is challenging, this poses a major problem. Many of the times, local practitioners become the primary point of approach, and thus the lack of authentic therapists can aggravate the situation [68, 114]. Therefore, imposing restrictions on CAM practitioners without any acceptable educational qualifications and adopting standards of practice should be given due priority to minimise such practice risks [115].

Absence of Proper Communication with Health Practitioners

When the extent of patients' utilisation of complementary medicine and their knowledge and attitude regarding the same were studied by Giveon et al., more than half of the respondents believed that natural drugs are safe with no side effects. Users may not relate their symptoms to CAM and not disclose its use to their physician, leading to complications such as delayed diagnosis and treatment, delaying or replacing a more effective form of treatment or even compromise the efficacy of certain conventional drugs. The situation becomes even worse when CAM users are advised by the healers to discontinue the use of prescription drugs, particularly in those with chronic disease conditions [116]. CAM practitioners usually do not encourage inquiries regarding the constituents of their preparations, and most patients are least interested to know about the same as they consider such preparations to be 'natural' otherwise, 'safe'. Healthcare professionals are mostly unaware of CAM use by their patients and are not consulted prior to their use [117]. Unfortunately, there are also instances where, even when the physicians are aware of their patients using such unproven remedies, they may not be trained to recognise potentially serious side effects [33]. Therefore, it becomes practically impossible to apprehend whether CAM therapy played any significant contributory role towards the efficacy or failure of conventional treatment [118].

In its Position Statement on 'Unproven Therapies', ADA raises the concern that most patients do not disclose the use of alternative medicine, and hence conventional practitioners need to specifically ask their patients about the same. ADA continuously evaluates the usefulness of different CAM therapies, their potential risks to the patients, and so on to characterise the effectiveness of such treatment modalities. They, however, do not recommend the use of any such unless their safety and efficacy has been established by current standards [119]. In the United Kingdom, The House of Lords' Select Committee on Science and Technology's report on CAM recommended statutory regulation of CAM practitioners and recommended regulatory bodies of healthcare professionals to develop guidelines on CAM competence and training. By this regulation, conventional healthcare professionals are expected to have a basic knowledge of such therapies, and conventional health providers may have interactions with state registered CAM practitioners [120].

Concerns with Other CAM Therapies

Homoeopathy, for example, even though accepted widely, the methodological quality of the trials based on this system of therapy is found to be very poor. Arguments are still on in the view whether homoeopathy is superior to the placebo as a treatment concept [121–123]. Adverse effects can occur if the remedies are not highly diluted since most but not all homoeopathic remedies are devoid of active molecules. Many of the homoeopathic prescriptions include remedies containing arsenic or other highly poisonous substances, and in case such a remedy is used in its undiluted form by any chance, it could result in life-threatening consequences [124]. Therapies involving mechanical techniques might cause detrimental effects. Chiropractors, for example, apply a controlled force to a spinal joint and can cause vertebral arterial dissection after upper spinal manipulation [125]. Acupuncture (stimulate specific points on the body by inserting thin needles through the skin) can cause complications like pneumothorax [126, 127], cardiac tamponade [128–130], and central nervous system injuries [131]. Serious infectious complications (like hepatitis, HIV, subacute bacterial endocarditis, etc.) can also arise when the practitioners are not concordant with aseptic techniques [132, 133].

Impact of CAM on Diabetes Treatment Outcomes

In a recent survey conducted among participants of SEARCH for Diabetes in Youth, patients who followed a 'CAM diet' reported a better quality of life (QOL), whereas supplement use and stress reduction activities resulted in decreased QOL. Moreover, children who did not follow any CAM practices experienced lesser treatment barriers [134]. In another study among patients with T2DM and/or cardiovascular disease, higher CAM use was to be highly correlated with a decreased quality of life in. This was attributed to the negative effects of using multiple therapies where some of them could, in fact, interfere with conventional care [135]. CAM use was also found to decrease the adherence towards prescribed medications in different patient populations [136] including those with diabetes. Patients with T2DM who used CAM were almost 6.16 times less adherent to their prescribed diabetes medication than the non-CAM-using counterpart [137, 138]. One of the major reasons postulated towards this diminished adherence is that CAM users are both logistically and psychologically burdened and may need to sacrifice part or all of their prescribed diabetes medication so as to continue using CAM. Another reason pointed out was that the patients believed in CAM healers more than the conventional practitioners [136].

In spite of branding 'natural' and a long history of use, most of these traditional medicines are not necessarily safe. As noted earlier, use of CAMs may delay the use of effective modern conventional treatments and cause adverse effects. Health risks can arise from issues such as drug-herb interactions, adulteration of the products, or presence of inappropriate amounts of active ingredients in the products etc.

[65–67]. Diabetic patients frequently undergo treatment for associated diseases such as hypertension, neuropathy, cardiovascular disease, and such. While evaluating the effect of CAMs, it is important to understand drugs and drug interactions in depth, and the failure to record the present history of CAM use may lead to problems with other medicines that the patient uses [65, 139]. Instances such as renal failure with the use of the dietary supplement chromium picolinate, hepatotoxicity with ingestion of sheep bile, and poor outcomes in a group of patients after abrupt stopping of insulin injections to initiate various CAM therapies have been documented [140]. Another very common drawback noted with CAM products used in diabetes is that when combined with insulin or secretagogues, the patient may experience additive hypoglycaemia due to drug interactions [53]. Herbal medications that claimed to treat diabetes were found to illegitimately incorporate modern medicines with chlorpropamide [141], glibenclamide [142], etc. with a view to enhancing their efficacy and finally resulted in undesirable outcomes. Lead poisoning from herbal remedies is another grave concern [143, 144]. Furthermore, CAM practitioners, as well as manufacturers of such ethnic herbal remedies, even provide patients with fatal advice such as urging them to stop all medicines of diabetes and injections while following CAM therapies which makes the situation even worse [142, 145]. Nutritional advice and lifestyle modifications form essential components of diabetes management, and such recommendations are also often prescribed by many of the CAM providers. The risk lies with the fact that such advice often differs from those endorsed by conventional diabetes care providers and even does not adhere to the guidelines of ADA for diabetes management. Whether these additional nutritional advice and lifestyle diets complement and reinforce ADA guidelines or conflict with conventional system is another matter of debate [55]. American Diabetes Association's Standards of Medical Care do not support the use of vitamin, mineral, or herbal supplements for diabetes management, due to the lack of sufficient evidence [146].

Several systematic reviews have been published that weighed the impact and efficacy of various CAM therapies on preventing and treating diabetes. Recently, the effect of Ayurveda on treating diabetes mellitus was studied by Sridharan et al., and effect of Chinese herbal medicines on impaired glucose tolerance or impaired fasting blood glucose was assessed by Grant et al. Both these reviews pointed out the benefits of following these traditional systems of medicine in treating diabetes or prediabetic conditions. The authors, however, stop short of recommending such practices citing the biased nature of certain studies and lack of sufficient evidence [99, 147]. An overview of beneficial and adverse effects identified with some of the widely used herbs, herbal products, and supplements for diabetes management is provided in Table 64.3.

Table 64.3 Commonly used herbs and supplements for diabetes management [53, 64, 69, 95, 148–151]

Name of herb, herbal product, or supplement	Beneficial effects/hypothesised mechanism of action	Side effects/drug interactions and contradictions
Cinnamomum zeylanicum	Increases insulin sensitivity by increasing PPAR (alpha and gamma) expression, increases cellular glucose entry by enhanced insulin receptor phosphorylation and translocation of GLUT4 glucose transporter to the plasma membrane, promotes glycogen synthesis	Skin irritations if used topically; interacts with secretagogues and causes hypoglycaemia; coumarins possess anticoagulant, carcinogenic, and hepatotoxic properties
Gymnema sylvestre	Insulin secretagogue; increases glucose uptake promoting enzymes; stimulates and increases beta cell number	May cause hypoglycaemia when combined with secretagogues
Bitter melon (*Momordica charantia*)	Hypoglycaemic action; insulin mimetic; enhances glucose uptake by tissues; inhibition of glucose-producing enzymes; enhances glucoseoxidation (G6PDH pathway)	Gastrointestinal discomfort, hypoglycaemic coma, favism, haemolytic anaemia in persons with G-6PDH deficiency, abortifacient activity of α and β momorcharin, hypoglycaemia when used with sulfonylureas
Fenugreek (*Trigonella foenum- graecum*)	Insulin secretagogue; hypoglycaemic activity; lipid-lowering effects; increases HDL cholesterol; slows carbohydrate absorption and delays gastric emptying; inhibits glucose transport; increases insulin receptors; improves utilisation of peripheral glucose	Diarrhoea, gas, uterine contractions, allergic reactions, drug interaction with hypoglycaemic agents, anticoagulant drugs, MAO inhibitors, contraindicated in pregnancy
Guar gum	Alters gastrointestinal transit and delays glucose absorption; lipid-lowering effects by decreasing its absorption and increasing bile excretion	Gastrointestinal upset; may delay the absorption of drugs; possibility of hypoglycaemia when combined with secretagogues; additive lipid lowering when used along with antihyperlipidemic agents

(continued)

Table 64.3 (continued)

Name of herb, herbal product, or supplement	Beneficial effects/hypothesised mechanism of action	Side effects/drug interactions and contradictions
Chromium	Lipid-lowering effects; insulin-sensitising effect by decreasing tyrosine phosphatase activity or direct effect on insulin receptor by increasing tyrosine kinase activity at the insulin receptor; may promote glucose transport	Renal toxicity and dermatological reactions; potential hypoglycaemia with secretagogues; steroids may decrease chromium levels; vitamin C may increase chromium absorption
Alpha-lipoic acid	Improves insulin resistance and increases glucose effectiveness	Can affect thyroid function in patients with thyroid disease; might produce allergic skin reactions, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, and vertigo
Omega-3 fatty acid/fish oil	Lowers triglycerides; anti-inflammatory; anti-platelet; hypotensive; slight increase in blood glucose	High intake might cause bleeding; fish meat to be eaten with caution due to contamination with high levels of methyl mercury; may increase LDL; drug interactions with anticoagulant; and anti-hypertension drugs

Evidence regarding the use of other systems of CAM for diabetes is also in its infancy, and in fact, the available little evidence cautions the patients and the practitioners regarding their safe and effective use. Studies assessing acupuncture are methodologically problematic mainly due to reasons such as the procedure having no adequate control condition, treatments in daily practice being mostly individualised, short duration of the studies, etc. [152–154]. None of the trials conducted in diabetes patients could provide convincing evidence on acupuncture for treating conditions like insulin resistance [154], diabetic gastroparesis [155], and diabetic peripheral neuropathy [156]. Practitioners and patients who support acupuncture for diabetic neuropathy may also bear in mind the increased risk of acupuncture needle site infection with high blood glucose levels [157]. Opting for acupuncture after discontinuing conventional therapy recently led to the death of a 30-year-old T1DM individual in India [158]. 'Sweet therapy' is another peculiar diabetes treatment practised in Kerala, which claims to stimulate the sleeping pancreas to secrete insulin by intake of glucose-rich foods such as sweet desserts. However, the long-term serious implications of such modalities on the health of the patients are not documented.

Trials that investigated the effects of tai chi [159–163] and qi gong [152, 164] on diabetes also could not reach any definitive conclusions. Such mind-body therapies which involve movements can at best be considered as alternative modes of exercise [165, 166]. Perceived advantage of these therapies is that they can be performed at almost any level of exercise tolerance when compared to traditional exercise and thus might be helpful for increasing movement and activity especially for some persons with diabetes such as older and obese individuals [152]. They might also be helpful in imparting behavioural and psychological changes and thereby help patients to cope with the disease and increase their quality of life [167]. However, neither yoga [168, 169] nor tai chi [170–172] has been shown to have any significant impact on improving the glycaemic status. In diabetes patients who follow practices such as massage; Therapeutic Touch, Healing Touch, and Reiki; appropriate blood glucose monitoring; and titration of antidiabetes medications should be recommended when blood glucose levels become lower as pain and discomfort decrease. During energy therapy, catecholamines like epinephrine and norepinephrine get released which can increase lipolysis and thermogenesis, leading to increasing energy expenditure and weight changes [157].

Recommendations for a Prospective CAM Use

Proper Patient-Physician Fit and Judicious Choice of Therapies

The current hypothesis is that treatment settings influence a patient's mindset and even influence the effects of interventions. This speaks volumes regarding the importance of maintaining a positive relationship between patient and the carer in achieving commendable treatment efficacy [121]. Unfortunately, most of the times, patients following conventional medicine were dissatisfied with the manner of communication by the practitioners, were worried about side effects of pharmacotherapy, and also felt the lack of a holistic treatment approach. On the other hand, CAM seemed to reinforce a patient's own self-healing capacity. Alternative therapists tend to spend more time with their patients which help to develop a good patient-physician fit, and many of the patients appreciated this approach [173].

CAM use often remains under-reported, and thus a lack of proper communication between patients and healthcare provider can often end up in treatment failures or adverse events. Care providers should put in their efforts to understand the motivations behind a patient's CAM use and be prepared to counsel such patients, when needed, about the options available and should be able to assess as well as present information to the patients regarding the expected risks, side effects, benefits, and choices regarding self-management and its cost to the patient, helping them to make an informed choice [53, 136, 174]. In patients who persist on following

CAM, it is advisable to identify the effects of each of the components of these medications so that patients can be counselled regarding any contraindications to any of the constituents. Patients should be adequately monitored and warned of the potential side effects, and healthcare practitioners should be aware of the potential interactions between the active components of the alternative medications and other prescribed medications [175]. For individuals exploring supplements, FDA's documents such as 'Tips for the Savvy Supplement User', 'Tips for Older Dietary Supplement Users', 'Questions and Answers on Dietary Supplements, etc. might turn helpful (accessible at http://www.fda.gov). A database of natural medicine available at 'www.prescribersletter.therapeuticresearch.com' provides necessary information regarding the usage of herbs and supplements and their safety issues [176]. The American Diabetes Association in two of its articles – 'A Step-by-Step Approach to Complementary Therapies' and 'Guidelines for Using Vitamin, Mineral, and Herbal Supplements' – has offhandedly acknowledged the popularity of CAM for diabetes and provides a set of approaches that could be undertaken in order to safely integrate complementary therapies into an individual's healthcare plan [177, 178]. In its position statement, ADA proposes to evaluate each questionable diagnostic or therapeutic modalities and recommends to provide new and innovative, but unproven, diagnostic and therapeutic measures for patients based on certain preset criteria and also encourage the healthcare providers to ask patients about their alternative therapy practices [179].

Proper Regulations and Well-Conducted Research

Although antidiabetic drugs used in modern medicine have a natural origin [34], administering them in their natural form may not be of much benefit. Randomised clinical trials of herbal medicine interventions too often under-report the crucial characteristics of the intervention, thereby deviating from the standards set by Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials (CONSORT) [180, 181]. However, with regulated research, there is a higher probability that many more of the natural agents could be used in modern medicine. Experts recommend that CAM and dietary supplements should be subject to a scrutiny similar to conventional medicines by organisations such as the NIH and FDA. Any measure to bypass these may render the healthcare system inefficient, incapable, and dangerous [182, 183]. Adequate or accepted research methodology for evaluating these healthcare practices need to be developed. Consideration should also be given to increase the overall quality of research, avoid publication bias, protect intellectual property, and also certify authentic CAM products and practices from illegitimate ones [184].

Table 64.4 Recommendations for a prospective CAM use

Developing a proper patient-physician fit that can encourage patients to openly communicate regarding CAM use:
Healthcare providers should try to understand patient's motivations behind CAM use so as to choose an optimal treatment plan
Healthcare providers can take efforts to assess, as well as present necessary information to the patients regarding different aspects of CAM use and thus help them make a more informed choice
Validating the safety and efficacy of CAM therapies through well-planned clinical trials that meet quality research standards
Impose proper regulations and scrutiny on CAM practices, products, and practitioners to ensure their safety, quality, and efficacy
Integration of CAM and conventional medical systems by giving emphasis to patient's expectations and needs, without altering the accepted standards of medical and scientific principles.

Integrating CAM into Conventional Care

Although CAM practices lack sufficient evidence, the popularity of such practices is ever increasing, and its integration into mainstream healthcare is much looked at. In certain regions, CAM practices are included under health insurance coverage, and certain 'integrated' delivery systems have also been established [15, 185]. While considering the integration of medical systems, apart from emphasizing patient's expectations and needs, it should be prioritised that accepted standards of medical and scientific principles of practice remain unaltered [186]. With such integration, patients are believed to get benefited at multiple levels such as better decision-making, enhanced physical and emotional well-being, and gaining knowledge on health-promoting practices (Furnham, 1996). Healthcare providers can also get benefitted in terms of greater satisfaction through learning new treatment strategies and developing skills to implement them [187]. Thus a more integrated system is expected to facilitate discussion and collaboration between the two systems of medicine to improve healthcare delivery [188]. A snapshot of the recommendations suggested towards a prospective CAM use is provided in Table 64.4.

Conclusion

Even with the advancements achieved in modern conventional medicine, a lot many patients still continue to follow traditional CAM practices due to a variety of reasons such as their perceived safety and efficacy, easy availability or matching with their cultural beliefs and practices, and so on. However, the risk-benefit ratio of these CAM practices on the disease outcomes especially the chronic ones like diabetes still remains unproven. Conventional healthcare providers in most of the cases are not aware of their patients following such modes of therapies and also are not in a position to comment on regarding the same. They should put in efforts to maintain a good rapport with the patients so as to

enable an open communication regarding CAM use so as to help them make a judicious choice of such therapies. Imposing stringent rules and regulations as well as conducting clinical trials that meet quality research standards can in no doubt reveal the true potential of at least some of these age-old practices. With that achieved, a successful integration of reliable and safe CAM practices into mainstream healthcare can be thought of in order to improve the overall treatment experience and outcomes.

Multiple-Choice Questions

1. Complementary and alternative medicines:
   (a) Are essential additional elements of diabetes management
   (b) Are healthcare approaches developed outside the realm of conventional medicine
   (c) Are exclusively medicines
   (d) Include surgical interventions
   (e) Are evidence-based
2. Complementary health approaches:
   (a) Are rarely used
   (b) Are largely used by people with low economic resources
   (c) Are used by 33.2% of adults in the United States
   (d) Are used mostly by men
   (e) Represent a minimal amount of healthcare costs
3. Reasons for the popularity of complementary alternative medications include all of the following, except:
   (a) Easy accessibility
   (b) Dissatisfaction with conventional medical care
   (c) Belief of safety
   (d) High costs
   (e) Poor doctor-patient relationship
4. Many currently approved antidiabetic medications have a natural origin.
   (a) True
   (b) False
5. Examples of antidiabetic drugs with natural origin:
   (a) Insulin
   (b) Sulfonylureas
   (c) Metformin
   (d) SGLT2 inhibitors
   (e) GLP-1 agonists
6. The percentage of patients with type 2 diabetes using complementary medicine in addition to conventional prescriptions:
   (a) 15%
   (b) 27%
   (c) 48%
   (d) 60%
   (e) 77%
7. The use of complementary alternative medications has several risks, including:
   (a) Adverse effects
   (b) Hidden costs
   (c) Overload with unsuccessful therapies
   (d) Lack of proper regulations
   (e) All of the above
8. The hypothesised mechanism of action of chromium:
   (a) Insulin secretagogue
   (b) Insulin sensitising agent
   (c) Insulin mimetic
   (d) Inhibits glucose transport
   (e) Alters gastrointestinal transit
9. The hypothesised mechanism of action of guar gum:
   (a) Insulin secretagogue
   (b) Insulin sensitising agent
   (c) Insulin mimetic
   (d) Inhibits glucose transport
   (e) Alters gastrointestinal transit
10. Recommendations for the prospective use of complementary alternative medications involve:
    (a) Recognition as essential elements of management
    (b) Learning about their effectiveness
    (c) Judicious choice of therapies
    (d) Combination with standard therapies
    (e) Discourage their use by patients

Correct Answers

1. (b) Are healthcare approaches developed outside the realm of conventional medicine
2. (c) Are used by 33.2% of adults in the United States
3. (d) High costs
4. (a) True
5. (c–e)
6. (e) 77%
7. (e) All of the above
8. (b) Insulin sensitising agent
9. (b and e)
10. (c) Judicious choice of therapies

References

1. IDF diabetes atlas. Brussels: International Diabetes Federation; 2015.
2. Hirschler B. Diabetes now kills more than HIV, tuberculosis and malaria combined: The Huggington Post, The Times of India; 2015 [cited 2016 11.06.16]. Available from: http://www.huffingtonpost.com/entry/diabetes-deaths_us_5643e784e4b08cda348777bf?section=india.
3. Karamanou M, Protogerou A, Tsoucalas G, Androutsos G, Poulakou-Rebelakou E. Milestones in the history of diabetes mellitus: the main contributors. World J Diabetes. 2016;7(1):1.

4. Papaspyros NS. The history of diabetes mellitus. Stuttgart: G. Thieme; 1964.
5. Poretsky L. Principles of diabetes mellitus. Boston: Springer US; 2010.
6. Frank LL. Diabetes mellitus in the texts of old Hindu medicine (Charaka, Susruta, Vagbhata). Am J Gastroenterol. 1957;27(1):76–95.
7. Lakhtakia R. The history of diabetes mellitus. Sultan Qaboos Univ Med J. 2013;13(3):368.
8. Allan FN. The writings of Thomas Willis, MD: diabetes three hundred years ago. Diabetes. 1953;2(1):74–8.
9. MacCracken J, Hoel D, Jovanovic L. From ants to analogues: puzzles and promises in diabetes management. Postgrad Med. 1997;101(4):138–50.
10. Ahmed AM. History of diabetes mellitus. Saudi Med J. 2002;23(4):373–8.
11. Life expectancy increased by 5 years since 2000, but health inequalities persist. Geneva: World Health Organization, Observatory GH; 2016. 19 May 2016 Report No.
12. Mishra S. Does modern medicine increase life-expectancy: quest for the moon rabbit? Indian Heart J. 2016;68(1):19–27.
13. Complementary, alternative, or integrative health: What's in a name? USA: National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health; 2016 [updated June 2016 cited 2016 27.09.16]. Available from: https://nccih.nih.gov/health/integrative-health.
14. MacLennan AH, Wilson DH, Taylor AW. The escalating cost and prevalence of alternative medicine. Prev Med. 2002;35(2):166–73.
15. O'Brien K. Complementary and alternative medicine: the move into mainstream health care. Clin Exp Optom. 2004;87(2):110–20.
16. Lloyd P, Lupton D, Wiesner D, Hasleton S. Choosing alternative therapy: an exploratory study of sociodemographic characteristics and motives of patients resident in Sydney. Aust N Z J Public Health. 1993;17(2):135–44.
17. Astin JA. Why patients use alternative medicine: results of a national study. JAMA. 1998;279(19):1548–53.
18. Nahin RL, Dahlhamer JM, Taylor BL, Barnes PM, Stussman BJ, Simile CM, et al. Health behaviors and risk factors in those who use complementary and alternative medicine. BMC Public Health. 2007;7(1):217.
19. Nahin R, Barnes P, Stussman B. Expenditures on complementary health approaches: United States, 2012. Natl Health Stat Rep. 2016;(95):1.
20. Clarke TC, Black LI, Stussman BJ, Barnes PM, Nahin RL. Trends in the use of complementary health approaches among adults: United States, 2002–2012. Natl Health Stat Rep. 2015;(79):1.
21. Barnes PM, Bloom B, Nahin RL. Complementary and alternative medicine use among adults and children: United States, 2007. Hyattsville: US Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Health Statistics; 2008.
22. Eisenberg DM, Davis RB, Ettner SL, Appel S, Wilkey S, Van Rompay M, et al. Trends in alternative medicine use in the United States, 1990–1997: results of a follow-up national survey. JAMA. 1998;280(18):1569–75.
23. Amin F, Islam N, Gilani A. Traditional and complementary/alternative medicine use in a South-Asian population. Asian Pacific J Health Sci. 2015;2:36–42.
24. Barnes PM, Powell-Griner E, McFann K, Nahin RL. Complementary and alternative medicine use among adults: United States, 2002. Semin Integr Med. 2004;2(2):54–71.
25. Naja F, Mousa D, Alameddine M, Shoaib H, Itani L, Mourad Y. Prevalence and correlates of complementary and alternative medicine use among diabetic patients in Beirut, Lebanon: a cross-sectional study. BMC Complement Altern Med. 2014;14(1):1.
26. Verhoef MJ, Balneaves LG, Boon HS, Vroegindewey A. Reasons for and characteristics associated with complementary and alternative medicine use among adult cancer patients: a systematic review. Integr Cancer Ther. 2005;4(4):274–86.
27. Ernst E. The role of complementary and alternative medicine. Br Med J. 2000;321(7269):1133.
28. Bauml JM, Chokshi S, Schapira MM, Im EO, Li SQ, Langer CJ, et al. Do attitudes and beliefs regarding complementary and alternative medicine impact its use among patients with cancer? A cross-sectional survey. Cancer. 2015;121(14):2431–8.
29. Kim SH, Shin DW, Nam Y-S, Kim SY, Yang H-k, Cho BL, et al. Expected and perceived efficacy of complementary and alternative medicine: a comparison views of patients with cancer and oncologists. Complement Thr Med. 2016;28:29–36.
30. Nahin RL, Byrd-Clark D, Stussman BJ, Kalyanaraman N. Disease severity is associated with the use of complementary medicine to treat or manage type-2 diabetes: data from the 2002 and 2007 National Health Interview Survey. BMC Complement Altern Med. 2012;12:193.
31. Barnes J. Quality, efficacy and safety of complementary medicines: fashions, facts and the future. Part I. Regulation and quality. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2003;55(3):226–33.
32. Furnharm A. Why do people choose and use complementary therapies? In complementary medicine an objective appraisal. Edited by: Ernst E. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1996.
33. Tu H, Hargraves J. High cost of medical care prompts consumers to seek alternatives. Data Bulletin (Center for Studying Health System Change). 2004;(28):1.
34. Osadebe PO, Odoh EU. Natural products as potential sources of antidiabetic drugs. Br J Pharm Res. 2014;4(17):2075.
35. Newman DJ, Cragg GM. Natural products as sources of new drugs over the last 25 years. J Nat Prod. 2007;70(3):461–77.
36. Bailey CJ, Day C. Traditional plant medicines as treatments for diabetes. Diabetes Care. 1989;12(8):553–64.
37. Oubre A, Carlson T, King S, Reaven G. From plant to patient: an ethnomedical approach to the identification of new drugs for the treatment of NIDDM. Diabetologia. 1997;40(5):614–7.
38. Schäfer G. Biguanides. A review of history, pharmacodynamics and therapy. Diabete Metab. 1982;9(2):148–63.
39. Bailey CJ, Day C. Metformin: its botanical background. Pract Diabet Int. 2004;21(3):115–7.
40. Goodarzi MO, Bryer-Ash M. Metformin revisited: re-evaluation of its properties and role in the pharmacopoeia of modern antidiabetic agents. Diabetes Obes Metab. 2005;7(6):654–65.
41. Group UPDS. Effect of intensive blood-glucose control with metformin on complications in overweight patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 34). Lancet. 1998;352(9131):854–65.
42. Rojas LBA, Gomes MB. Metformin: an old but still the best treatment for type 2 diabetes. Diabetol Metab Syndr. 2013;5(1):6.
43. WHO model lists of essential medicines [updated April 2015]. 19. Available from: http://www.who.int/medicines/publications/essentialmedicines/en/.
44. Ehrenkranz JR, Lewis NG, Kahn CR, Roth J. Phlorizin: a review. Diabetes Metab Res Rev. 2005;21(1):31–8.
45. White JR. Apple trees to sodium glucose co-transporter inhibitors: a review of SGLT2 inhibition. Clin Diabet. 2010;28(1):5–10.
46. Ríos JL, Francini F, Schinella GR. Natural products for the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Planta Med. 2015;81(12/13):975–94.
47. Karamitsos DT. The story of insulin discovery. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2011;93:S2–8.
48. Eng J, Kleinman W, Singh L, Singh G, Raufman J-P. Isolation and characterization of exendin-4, an exendin-3 analogue, from Heloderma suspectum venom. Further evidence for an exendin receptor on dispersed acini from guinea pig pancreas. J Biol Chem. 1992;267(11):7402–5.

49. Furman BL. The development of Byetta (exenatide) from the venom of the Gila monster as an anti-diabetic agent. Toxicon. 2012;59(4):464–71.
50. Nathan DM, Buse JB, Davidson MB, Ferrannini E, Holman RR, Sherwin R, et al. Medical Management of Hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy. A consensus statement of the American Diabetes Association and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2009;27(1):4–16.
51. Leroux-Stewart J, Rabasa-Lhoret R, Chiasson J-L. α-Glucosidase inhibitors. International textbook of diabetes mellitus. Chichester: Wiley Blackwell; 2015. p. 673–85.
52. Wehmeier U, Piepersberg W. Biotechnology and molecular biology of the α-glucosidase inhibitor acarbose. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol. 2004;63(6):613–25.
53. Birdee GS, Yeh G. Complementary and alternative medicine therapies for diabetes: a clinical review. Clin Diabet. 2010;28(4):147–55.
54. Villa-Caballero L, Morello CM, Chynoweth ME, Prieto-Rosinol A, Polonsky WH, Palinkas LA, et al. Ethnic differences in complementary and alternative medicine use among patients with diabetes. Complement Thr Med. 2010;18(6):241–8.
55. Egede LE, Ye X, Zheng D, Silverstein MD. The prevalence and pattern of complementary and alternative medicine use in individuals with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 2002; 25(2):324–9.
56. Koren R, Lerner A, Tirosh A, Zaidenstein R, Ziv-Baran T, Golik A, et al. The use of complementary and alternative medicine in hospitalized patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in Israel. J Altern Complement Med. 2015;21(7):395–400.
57. Kumar D, Bajaj S, Mehrotra R. Knowledge, attitude and practice of complementary and alternative medicines for diabetes. Public Health. 2006;120(8):705–11.
58. Chacko E. Culture and therapy: complementary strategies for the treatment of type-2 diabetes in an urban setting in Kerala. India Soc Sci Med. 2003;56(5):1087–98.
59. Ball SD, Kertesz D, Moyer-Mileur LJ. Dietary supplement use is prevalent among children with a chronic illness. J Am Diet Assoc. 2005;105(1):78–84.
60. Niggemann B, Grüber C. Unconventional and conventional medicine: who should learn from whom? Pediatr Allergy Immunol. 2003;14(3):149–55.
61. Ventola CL. Current issues regarding complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) in the United States: part 2: regulatory and safety concerns and proposed governmental policy changes with respect to dietary supplements. Pharm Ther. 2010;35(9):514.
62. Boström H, Rössner S. Quality of alternative medicine—complications and avoidable deaths. Int J Qual Health Care. 1990;2(2):111–7.
63. Sadikot SM, Das AK, Wilding J, Siyan A, Zargar AH, Saboo B, et al. Consensus recommendations on exploring effective solutions for the rising cost of diabetes. Diabetes Metab Syndr. 2017;11:141–7.
64. Kesavadev J, Saboo B, Sadikot S, Das AK, Joshi S, Chawla R, et al. Unproven therapies for diabetes and their implications. Adv Ther. 2017;34:60–77.
65. Guthrie D, Guthrie R. Management of diabetes mellitus: a guide to the pattern approach. 6th ed. New York: Springer Publishing Company, LLC; 2008. 544 p.
66. Marchetti S, Mazzanti R, Beijnen JH, Schellens JH. Concise review: clinical relevance of drug–drug and herb–drug interactions mediated by the ABC transporter ABCB1 (MDR1, P-glycoprotein). Oncologist. 2007;12(8):927–41.
67. Rehman US, Choi MS, Choe K, Yoo HH. Interactions between herbs and antidiabetics: an overview of the mechanisms, evidence, importance, and management. Arch Pharm Res. 2015;38(7):1281–98.
68. Debas HT, Laxminarayan R, Straus SE. Complementary and alternative medicine. In: Jamison DT, Breman JG, Measham AR, editors. Disease control priorities in developing countries. 2nd ed. Washington, D.C.: Co-published by Oxford University Press, New York; 2006.
69. Shane-McWhorter L. Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) supplement use in people with diabetes: a clinician's guide: American Diabetes Association; 2007.
70. Ko RJ. Adulterants in Asian patent medicines. N Engl J Med. 1998;339(12):847.
71. Grant KL. Patient education and herbal dietary supplements. Am J Health Syst Pharm. 2000;57(21):1997–2003.
72. Vuksan V, Sievenpiper JL. Herbal remedies in the management of diabetes: lessons learned from the study of ginseng. Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis. 2005;15(3):149–60.
73. Saper RB, Phillips RS, Sehgal A, Khouri N, Davis RB, Paquin J, et al. Lead, mercury, and arsenic in US-and Indian-manufactured Ayurvedic medicines sold via the internet. JAMA. 2008;300(8):915–23.
74. Ernst E. Toxic heavy metals and undeclared drugs in Asian herbal medicines. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2002;23(3):136–9.
75. Goudie AM, Kaye JM. Contaminated medication precipitating hypoglycaemia. Med J Aust. 2001;175(5):256.
76. Huang WF, Wen KC, Hsiao ML. Adulteration by synthetic therapeutic substances of traditional Chinese medicines in Taiwan. J Clin Pharmacol. 1997;37(4):344–50.
77. Ries CA, Sahud MA. Agranulocytosis caused by Chinese herbal medicines: dangers of medications containing aminopyrine and phenylbutazone. JAMA. 1975;231(4):352–5.
78. Shaw D, Leon C, Kolev S, Murray V. Traditional remedies and food supplements. Drug Saf. 1997;17(5):342–56.
79. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Lead poisoning in pregnant women who used Ayurvedic medications from India — New York City, 2011–2012. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2012;61:641–6.
80. FDA. Use caution with Ayurvedic products USA. U.S. Food and Drug Administration; 2008 [updated 07/15/2015]. Available from: http://www.fda.gov/ForConsumers/ConsumerUpdates/ucm050798.htm.
81. Barnes J, Anderson LA, Phillipson JD. Herbal medicines: a guide for healthcare professionals. London: Pharmaceutical Press; 2003.
82. Bisset NG. Herbal drugs and phytopharmaceuticals: a handbook for practice on a scientific basis. Stuttgart: Medpharm Scientific Publishers. xvi, 566p. ISBN 3887630254 En Originally published in German (1984).(EBBD, 190000550); 1994.
83. MKeane F, Munn S, Du Vivier A, Taylor N, Higgins E. Analysis of Chinese herbal creams prescribed for dermatological conditions. BMJ. 1999;318(7183):563–4.
84. Kerr HD, Saryan LA. Arsenic content of homeopathic medicines. J Toxicol Clin Toxicol. 1986;24(5):451–9.
85. Morice A. Adulterated. Lancet. 1986;327(8485):862–3.
86. Tisserand R, Young R. Essential oil safety: a guide for health care professionals. London: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2013.
87. Cosyns J-P, Jadoul M, Squifflet J-P, Wese F-X, van Ypersele de Strihou C. Urothelial lesions in Chinese-herb nephropathy. Am J Kidney Dis. 1999;33(6):1011–7.
88. Nortier JL, Martinez M-CM, Schmeiser HH, Arlt VM, Bieler CA, Petein M, et al. Urothelial carcinoma associated with the use of a Chinese herb (Aristolochia fangchi). N Engl J Med. 2000;342(23):1686–92.
89. Cosyns J-P. Aristolochic acid and 'Chinese herbs nephropathy'. Drug Saf. 2003;26(1):33–48.

90. Barnes J. Quality, efficacy and safety of complementary medicines: fashions, facts and the future. Part II: efficacy and safety. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2003;55(4):331–40.
91. Gardiner P, Phillips R, Shaughnessy AF. Herbal and dietary supplement-drug interactions in patients with chronic illnesses. Am Fam Physician. 2008;77(1):73–8.
92. Izzo AA. Herb–drug interactions: an overview of the clinical evidence. Fundam Clin Pharmacol. 2005;19(1):1–16.
93. Aslam M, Stockley I. Interaction between curry ingredient (karela) and drug (chlorpropamide). Lancet. 1979;313(8116):607.
94. Gin H, Orgerie M, Aubertin J. The influence of guar gum on absorption of metformin from the gut in healthy volunteers. Horm Metab Res. 1989;21(02):81–3.
95. Neugebauer G, Akpan W, Abshagen U. Interaction of guar with glibenclamide and bezafibrate. Beitr Infusionther Klin Ernahr. 1983;12:40.
96. Caughey GE, Roughead EE, Vitry AI, McDermott RA, Shakib S, Gilbert AL. Comorbidity in the elderly with diabetes: identification of areas of potential treatment conflicts. Diabetes Res Clin Pract. 2010;87(3):385–93.
97. Hardy ML, Coulter I, Venuturupalli S, Roth EA, Favreau J, Morton SC, et al. Ayurvedic interventions for diabetes mellitus: a systematic review: summary. Evid Rep Technol Assess (Summ). 2001;41:2.
98. Elder C. Ayurveda for diabetes mellitus: a review of the biomedical literature. Altern Ther Health Med. 2004;10(1):44.
99. Sridharan K, Mohan R, Ramaratnam S, Panneerselvam D. Ayurvedic treatments for diabetes mellitus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2011;(12):CD008288.
100. Linde K, Jonas WB, Melchart D, Willich S. The methodological quality of randomized controlled trials of homeopathy, herbal medicines and acupuncture. Int J Epidemiol. 2001;30(3):526–31.
101. Ernst E, Cohen M, Stone J. Ethical problems arising in evidence based complementary and alternative medicine. J Med Ethics. 2004;30(2):156–9.
102. Begg C, Cho M, Eastwood S, Horton R, Moher D, Olkin I, et al. Improving the quality of reporting of randomized controlled trials: the CONSORT statement. JAMA. 1996;276(8):637–9.
103. Moher D, Jones A, Lepage L, Group C. Use of the CONSORT statement and quality of reports of randomized trials: a comparative before-and-after evaluation. JAMA. 2001;285(15):1992–5.
104. Ezzo J, Berman BM, Vickers AJ, Linde K. Complementary medicine and the Cochrane Collaboration. JAMA. 1998;280(18):1628–30.
105. Misra A, Gulati S, Luthra A. Alternative medicines for diabetes in India: maximum hype, minimum science. Lancet Diabet Endocrinol. 2016;4(4):302–3.
106. Mukherjee PK, Houghton PJ. Evaluation of herbal medicinal products: perspectives on quality, safety and efficacy. London: Pharmaceutical Press; 2009.
107. Vickers A, Stevensen C, Van Toller S. Massage and aromatherapy: a guide for health professionals. New York: Springer; 2013.
108. Drugs and Magic Remedies (Objectionable Advertisements) Act, Stat. 21 (30th April 1954, 1954).
109. Wold Health Organization. Research guidelines for evaluating the safety and efficacy of herbal medicines. Manila: WHO Regional Office for the Western Pacific; 1993.
110. Zhang X. Regulatory situation of herbal medicines a worldwide review. Geneva: World Health Organization; 1998. p. 26.
111. Berman JD, Straus SE. Implementing a research agenda for complementary and alternative medicine. Annu Rev Med. 2004;55:239–54.
112. Mills SY. Regulation in complementary and alternative medicine. Br Med J. 2001;322(7279):158.
113. World Health Oranization. Centre for Health Development. WHO Global Atlas of Traditional, Complementary and Alternative Medicine. Kobe Japan, 2005.
114. Ries NM, Fisher KJ. Increasing involvement of physicians in complementary and alternative medicine: considerations of professional regulation and patient safety. Queens Law J. 2013–2014;39(1):273–300.
115. Myers SP, Cheras PA. The other side of the coin: safety of complementary and alternative medicine. Med J Aust. 2004;181(4):222–5.
116. Giveon SM, Liberman N, Klang S, Kahan E. Are people who use "natural drugs" aware of their potentially harmful side effects and reporting to family physician? Patient Educ Couns. 2004;53(1):5–11.
117. Tan AC, Mak JC. Complementary and alternative medicine in diabetes (CALMIND)--a prospective study. J Complement Integr Med. 2015;12(1):95–9.
118. Ezuruike UF, Prieto JM. The use of plants in the traditional management of diabetes in Nigeria: pharmacological and toxicological considerations. J Ethnopharmacol. 2014;155(2):857–924.
119. American Diabetes A. Unproven therapies. Diabetes Care. 2004;27 Suppl 1:S135.
120. House of Lords. Science and technology – Sixth report. London: United Kingdom Parliament; 2000.
121. Shang A, Huwiler-Müntener K, Nartey L, Jüni P, Dörig S, Sterne JAC, et al. Are the clinical effects of homoeopathy placebo effects? Comparative study of placebo-controlled trials of homoeopathy and allopathy. Lancet. 2005;366(9487):726–32.
122. Linde K, Clausius N, Ramirez G, Melchart D, Eitel F, Hedges LV, et al. Are the clinical effects of homoeopathy placebo effects? A meta-analysis of placebo-controlled trials. Lancet. 1997;350(9081):834–43.
123. Jonas WB, Anderson RL, Crawford CC, Lyons JS. A systematic review of the quality of homeopathic clinical trials. BMC Complement Altern Med. 2001;1(1):12.
124. Ernst E. The risks of homeopathy? 2012 [cited 2017 03 February]. Available from: http://edzardernst.com/2012/12/the-risks-of-homeopathy/.
125. Ernst E. Life-threatening complications of spinal manipulation. Stroke. 2001;32(3):809–10.
126. Brettel H. Akupunktur als Todesursache. Munch Med Wochenschr. 1981;123(3):97–8.
127. Mazal DA, King T, Harvey J, Cohen J. Bilateral pneumothorax after acupuncture. N Engl J Med. 1980;302(24):1365.
128. Cheng TO. Cardiac tamponade following acupuncture. Chest J. 2000;118(6):1836–7.
129. Kataoka H. Cardiac tamponade caused by penetration of an acupuncture needle into the right ventricle. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg. 1997;114(4):674–6.
130. Kirchgatterer A, Schwarz CD, Holler E, Punzengruber C, Hartl P, Eber B. Cardiac tamponade following acupuncture. Chest J. 2000;117(5):1510–1.
131. Peuker ET, White A, Ernst E, Pera F, Filler TJ. Traumatic complications of acupuncture: therapists need to know human anatomy. Arch Fam Med. 1999;8(6):553.
132. Ernst E, White A. Life-threatening adverse reactions after acupuncture? A systematic review. Pain. 1997;71(2):123–6.
133. Rampes H, James R. Complications of acupuncture. Acupunct Med. 1995;13(1):26–33.
134. McCarty RL, Weber WJ, Loots B, Breuner CC, Vander Stoep A, Manhart L, et al. Complementary and alternative medicine use and quality of life in pediatric diabetes. J Altern Complement Med. 2010;16(2):165–73.
135. Spinks J, Johnston D, Hollingsworth B. Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) use and quality of life in people with type

2 diabetes and/or cardiovascular disease. Complement Thr Med. 2014;22(1):107–15.
136. Owen-Smith A, Diclemente R, Wingood G. Complementary and alternative medicine use decreases adherence to HAART in HIV-positive women. AIDS Care. 2007;19(5):589–93.
137. Alfian S, Sukandar H, Arisanti N, Abdulah R. Complementary and alternative medicine use decreases adherence to prescribed medication in diabetes patients. Ann Trop Med Public Health. 2016;9(3):174–9.
138. Haque M, Emerson SH, Dennison CR, Levitt NS, Navsa M. Barriers to initiating insulin therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in public-sector primary health care centres in Cape Town. S Afr Med J. 2005;95(10):798–802.
139. White JR Jr, Hartman J, Campbell RK. Drug interactions in diabetic patients. The risk of losing glycemic control. Postgrad Med. 1993;93(3):131–2, 5–9
140. Yeh GY, Eisenberg DM, Davis RB, Phillips RS. Use of complementary and alternative medicine among persons with diabetes mellitus: results of a national survey. Am J Public Health. 2002;92(10):1648–52.
141. Wood D, Athwal S, Panahloo A. The advantages and disadvantages of a 'herbal' medicine in a patient with diabetes mellitus: a case report. Diabet Med. 2004;21(6):625–7.
142. Kulambil Padinjakara RN, Ashawesh K, Butt S, Nair R, Patel V. Herbal remedy for diabetes: two case reports. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes. 2009;117(1):3–5.
143. Roche A, Florkowski C, Walmsley T. Lead poisoning due to ingestion of Indian herbal remedies. N Z Med J. 2005;118(1219):U1587.
144. Keen RW, Deacon AC, Delves HT, Moreton JA, Frost PG. Indian herbal remedies for diabetes as a cause of lead poisoning. Postgrad Med J. 1994;70(820):113–4.
145. Gill G, Redmond S, Garratt F, Paisey R. Diabetes and alternative medicine: cause for concern. Diabet Med. 1994;11(2):210–3.
146. American Diabetes A. Standards of medical care in diabetes – 2014. Diabetes Care. 2014;37(Suppl 1):S14–80.
147. Grant SJ, Bensoussan A, Chang D, Kiat H, Klupp NL, Liu JP, et al. Chinese herbal medicines for people with impaired glucose tolerance or impaired fasting blood glucose. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009;(4):CD006690.
148. Geil P, Shane-McWhorter L. Dietary supplements in the management of diabetes: Potential risks and benefits. J Acad Nutr Diet. 2008;108(4):S59–65.
149. Medagama AB, Bandara R. The use of complementary and alternative medicines (CAMs) in the treatment of diabetes mellitus: is continued use safe and effective? Nutr J. 2014;13:102.
150. Chang H-Y, Wallis M, Tiralongo E. Use of complementary and alternative medicine among people living with diabetes: literature review. J Adv Nurs. 2007;58(4):307–19.
151. D'Huyvetter K. Complementary and alternative medicine in diabetes. In: Handbook of diabetes management. New York: Springer; 2006. p. 257–71.
152. DiNardo MM, Gibson JM, Siminerio L, Morell AR, Lee ES. Complementary and alternative medicine in diabetes care. Curr Diab Rep. 2012;12(6):749–61.
153. Ahn AC, Bennani T, Freeman R, Hamdy O, Kaptchuk TJ. Two styles of acupuncture for treating painful diabetic neuropathy–a pilot randomised control trial. Acupunct Med. 2007;25(1–2):11–7.
154. Liang F, Koya D. Acupuncture: is it effective for treatment of insulin resistance? Diabetes. Obes Metab. 2010;12(7):555–69.
155. Camilleri M, Parkman HP, Shafi MA, Abell TL, Gerson L. Clinical guideline: management of gastroparesis. Am J Gastroenterol. 2013;108(1):18–37.
156. Bo C, Xue Z, Yi G, Zelin C, Yang B, Zixu W, et al. Assessing the quality of reports about randomized controlled trials of acupuncture treatment on diabetic peripheral neuropathy. PLoS One. 2012;7(7):e38461.
157. Guthrie DW, Gamble M. Energy Therapies and diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Spectr. 2001;14(3):149–53.
158. Assary G. Youth with congenital diabetes died after stopping insulin on a dubious prescription. Deccan Chronicle. 2014 August 19.
159. Lee MS, Choi T-Y, Lim H-J, Ernst E. Tai chi for management of type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review. Chin J Integr Med. 2011;17(10):789–93.
160. Kan Y, Zhao Y, Shao H. Affect the insulin sensitivity of tai chi exercise for obesity with type 2 diabetic patients. J Tradit Chin Med Chin Mater Med Jilin (Chin). 2004;24:11.
161. Wang J, Cao Y. Effects of tai chi exercise on plasma neuropeptide y of type 2 diabetes mellitus with geriatric obesity. J Sports Sci. 2003;24:67–8.
162. Wang P, Han Q, Li G, Liang R. Evaluation of varying aerobics interferential effects on type 2 diabetes patients in community. China Med Herald. 2009;6:34–5.
163. Song R-Y, Lee E-O, Bae S-C, Ahn Y-H, Lam P, Lee I-O. Effects of Tai Chi self-help program on glucose control, cardiovascular risks, and quality of life in type II diabetic patients. J Muscle Joint Health. 2007;14(1):13–25.
164. Xin L, Miller YD, Brown WJ. A qualitative review of the role of qigong in the management of diabetes. J Altern Complement Med. 2007;13(4):427–34.
165. Chao Y-FC, Chen S-Y, Lan C, Lai J-S. The cardiorespiratory response and energy expenditure of Tai-Chi-Qui-Gong. Am J Chin Med. 2002;30(04):451–61.
166. Hagins M, Moore W, Rundle A. Does practicing hatha yoga satisfy recommendations for intensity of physical activity which improves and maintains health and cardiovascular fitness? BMC Complement Altern Med. 2007;7(1):1.
167. Ospina M, Bond K, Karkhaneh M, Tjosvold L, Vandermeer B, Liang Y, et al. Meditation practices for health: state of the research. Rockville: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality; AHRQ Publication No. 07-E010; 2007.
168. Aljasir B, Bryson M, Al-shehri B. Yoga practice for the management of type II diabetes mellitus in adults: a systematic review. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med. 2010;7(4):399–408.
169. Innes KE, Vincent HK. The influence of yoga-based programs on risk profiles in adults with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med. 2007;4(4):469–86.
170. Lam P, Dennis SM, Diamond TH, Zwar N. Improving glycaemic and BP control in type 2 diabetes: the effectiveness of tai chi. Aust Fam Physician. 2008;37(10):884.
171. Lee M, Pittler M, Kim MS, Ernst E. Tai chi for type 2 diabetes: a systematic review. Diabet Med. 2008;25(2):240–1.
172. Tsang T, Orr R, Lam P, Comino EJ, Singh MF. Health benefits of Tai Chi for older patients with type 2 diabetes: the "move it for diabetes study" – a randomized controlled trial. Clin Interv Aging. 2007;2(3):429.
173. White P. What can general practice learn from complementary medicine? Br J Gen Pract. 2000;50(459):821–3.
174. MCNZ. Statement on complementary and alternative medicine 2011. 13-09-2016; (March). Available from: https://www.mcnz.org.nz/assets/News-and-Publications/Statements/Complementary-and-alternative-medicine.pdf.
175. Miller LG. Herbal medicinals: selected clinical considerations focusing on known or potential drug-herb interactions. Arch Intern Med. 1998;158(20):2200–11.
176. Childs B, Cypress M, Spollett G. Complete Nurse's guide to diabetes care. Alexandria: American Diabetes Association; 2009.

177. Guidelines for using vitamin, mineral, and herbal supplements. Diabetes Spectr. 2001;14(3):160.
178. A step-by-step approach to complementary therapies. Diabetes Spectr. 2001;14(4):225.
179. American Diabetes Association. Unproven therapies. Diabetes Care. 2003;26(Suppl 1):s142.
180. Gagnier JJ, Moher D, Boon H, Beyene J, Bombardier C. Randomized controlled trials of herbal interventions underreport important details of the intervention. J Clin Epidemiol. 2011;64(7):760–9.
181. Gagnier JJ, Boon H, Rochon P, Moher D, Barnes J, Bombardier C, et al. Recommendations for reporting randomized controlled trials of herbal interventions: explanation and elaboration. J Clin Epidemiol. 2006;59(11):1134–49.
182. Cohen K, Cerone P, Ruggiero R. Complementary/alternative medicine use: responsibilities and implications for pharmacy services. P T. 2002;27(9):440–7.
183. Kwan D, Hirschkorn K, Boon H. US and Canadian pharmacists' attitudes, knowledge, and professional practice behaviors toward dietary supplements: a systematic review. BMC Complement Altern Med. 2006;6(1):1.
184. Sarris J. Current challenges in appraising complementary medicine evidence. Med J Aust. 2012;196(5):310–1.
185. Barrett B. Alternative, complementary, and conventional medicine: is integration upon us? J Altern Complement Med. 2003;9(3):417–27.
186. Frenkel MA, Borkan JM. An approach for integrating complementary–alternative medicine into primary care. Fam Pract. 2003;20(3):324–32.
187. Mann D, Gaylord SA, Norton SK. Integrating complementary & alternative therapies with conventional care. Program on Integrative Medicine, Chapel Hill: Department of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation, UNC School of Medicine; 2004.
188. O'Connell BS. Complementary and integrative medicine: emerging therapies for diabetes, part 2: preface. Diabetes Spectr. 2001;14(4):196–7.

Index

J. Rodriguez-Saldana (ed.), *The Diabetes Textbook*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11815-0

T